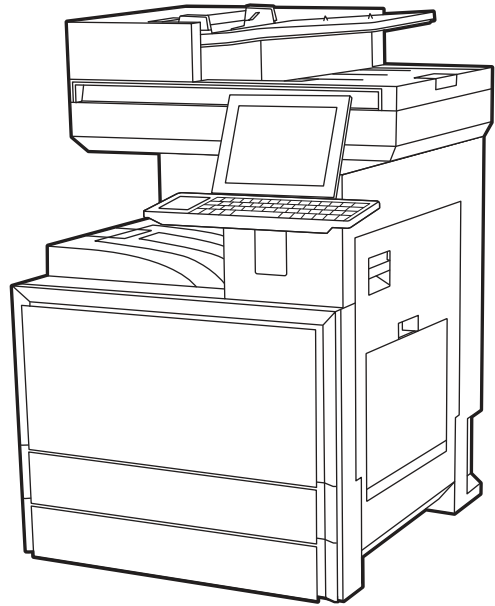
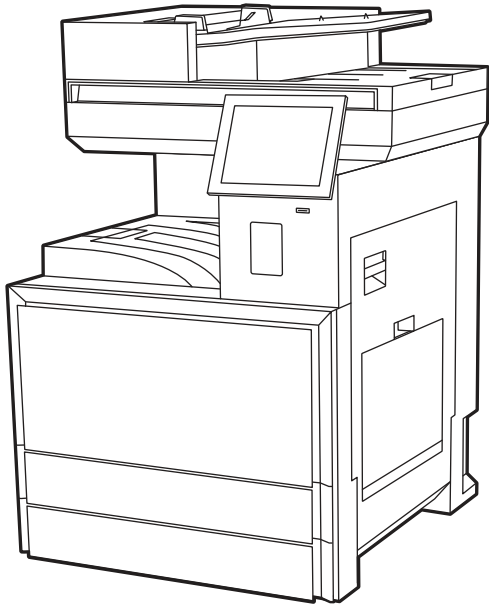




HP LaserJet Managed MFP E731 Series
HP LaserJet Managed MFP E73130, E73135, E73140
HP LaserJet Managed Flow MFP E73130, E73135, E73140

Service Manual



www.hp.com/support/ljE731mfp



HP LaserJet Managed MFP E731, E73130, E73135, E73140 - Service Manual

SUMMARY

This guide provides theory of operation, troubleshooting, and repair information.

Legal information

Copyright and License

© Copyright 2023 HP Development Company, L.P.

Reproduction, adaptation, or translation without prior written permission is prohibited, except as allowed under the copyright laws.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice.

The only warranties for HP products and services are set forth in the express warranty statements accompanying such products and services. Nothing herein should be construed as constituting an additional warranty. HP shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions contained herein.

Edition 2.3, 01/2023

Revision History

View a list of document revisions.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice. The only warranties for HP products and services are set forth in the express warranty statements accompanying such products and services. Nothing herein should be construed as constituting an additional warranty. HP shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions contained herein.

Table Revision History

Revision Number	Revision Date	Revision Notes
2.3	January 2023	Removed mention of Drum MEMS PCA per portal request 236, and added part numbers for all CMF panel colors per portal request 238.
2.2	January 2023	Added control panel diagnostic button note per HPPK PR228. See Control panel - 10.1 inch on page 94 .
2.1	January 2023	
2.0	January 2023	Updated image of the screw caps in the remove-replace > rear upper cover section per HPPK portal request #220.
1.2	December 2022	Added keyboard overlay part numbers (theory/parts chapters) per HPPK portal ticket 205.
1.1	November 2022	Updated/corrected formatter part number (portal request 197).
1.0	September 2022	Service manual initial release

Conventions used in this guide

Learn about the conventions used in this publication.



TIP: Tips provide helpful hints or shortcuts.



NOTE: Notes provide important information to explain a concept or to complete a task.



CAUTION: Cautions indicate procedures that you should follow to avoid losing data or damaging the product.



WARNING! Warnings alert you to specific procedures that you should follow to avoid personal injury, catastrophic loss of data, or extensive damage to the product.

Table of contents

1 Product information, configurations, and specifications	1
Printer views.....	1
Printer front view.....	1
Printer back view.....	2
Interface ports view.....	3
Control-panel view.....	4
Specifications.....	6
Basic specifications.....	6
Supported operating systems.....	6
Mobile printing solutions.....	8
Printer dimensions.....	8
Operating-environment range.....	9
General specifications.....	9
Print specifications.....	9
Scan specifications.....	10
Copy specifications.....	11
Paper handling specifications.....	11
Supplies.....	13
Maintenance parts (Long Life Consumables (LLC)).....	14
Network and software specifications.....	14
Network interface.....	14
Options.....	16
Optional input and output devices configuration.....	16
Option specifications.....	19
Color skin configuration.....	24
2 Product installation and maintenance	26
Product installation.....	26
Maintenance.....	26
PM table (Preventive Maintenance).....	26
Cleaning.....	27
Cleaning the paper dust stick.....	27
Cleaning the CTD sensor.....	29
Cleaning the scanner glass.....	30
Cleaning the ADF CIS (Contact Image Sensor).....	30
Inspection procedures.....	31
Maintenance (remove and replace).....	33
Counter reset after LLC replacement.....	33
3 Theory of operation	35
Base printer.....	35
Covers.....	35
Covers.....	36

Feeding system.....	38
Feeding system overview.....	38
Feeding system workflow.....	38
Feeding system roller.....	39
Feeding system sensors.....	40
Feeding system motors and solenoids.....	41
Tray 1 unit.....	42
Tray 1 unit overview.....	42
Tray 1 unit operation.....	44
Tray 1 unit driving.....	46
Tray 2/3 unit.....	47
Tray 2/3 unit overview.....	47
Tray 2/3 operation.....	54
Tray 2/3 driving.....	56
Registration unit and loop sensing.....	57
Registration unit and loop sensing overview.....	57
Registration unit operation.....	59
Registration unit driving.....	60
Exit unit.....	60
Exit unit overview.....	60
Second exit unit (Optional).....	62
Job separator (optional).....	63
Exit unit operation.....	64
Exit unit driving.....	65
Second exit unit driving.....	66
Duplex unit.....	66
Duplex unit overview.....	66
Duplex unit operation.....	68
Duplex unit driving.....	69
Toner flow system.....	69
Toner flow overview.....	69
Toner flow workflow.....	69
Toner flow sensors.....	70
Toner flow motors.....	71
Toner flow system.....	71
Toner cartridge.....	71
Toner duct.....	74
Toner Collection Unit (TCU).....	76
Image creation.....	79
Image creation overview.....	79
Image creation workflow.....	79
Image creation sensors.....	80
Image creation motors.....	81
Laser Scanning Unit (LSU).....	82
Laser Scanning Unit (LSU) overview.....	82
Laser Scanning Unit (LSU) operation.....	83
Developer and drum unit.....	84
Developer and drum unit overview.....	84
Developer and drum unit operation.....	86

Developer and drum unit driving.....	87
Second Transfer (T2) unit.....	87
Color Toner Density (CTD) & Second Transfer (T2) unit overview.....	87
Color Toner Density(CTD) sensor operation.....	88
Fuser unit.....	88
Fuser unit overview.....	88
Fuser unit temperature control.....	90
Fuser gap sensor operation.....	91
Fuser driving.....	91
Environmental sensor, fan, switch.....	91
Environmental sensor, fan, switch overview.....	92
Control panel.....	94
Control panel - 10.1 inch.....	94
Control panel - 8 inch.....	96
Hardware configuration.....	97
PCA overview.....	97
Formatter.....	99
Trusted Platform Module (TPM).....	103
Riser card.....	103
Riser card for HDD.....	104
Riser card for HDD and USB ports (optional).....	104
Riser card for HDD, USB ports, and accelerator board (optional).....	105
Accelerator (optional).....	105
Storage.....	106
Hard disk drive.....	106
eMMC.....	107
USB hub PCA.....	107
Island Of Data (IOD).....	108
Echo PCA.....	109
Power key PCA.....	109
Keyboard PCA.....	110
Toner Collection Unit full sensor PCA.....	112
Paper size sensor PCA.....	112
Drum CRUM PCA.....	113
Toner cartridge CRUM PCA.....	113
Eraser PCA.....	114
Fuser CRUM PCA.....	114
Control panel PCA.....	115
Control panel base PCA.....	115
Control panel PCA - 10.1 inch.....	116
Control panel PCA - 8 inch.....	116
High Voltage Power Supply (HVPS).....	117
Lower Voltage Power Supply (LVPS).....	118
Fuser Drive Board (FDB).....	119
Integrated Scan Asset.....	120
Automatic document feeder system: 200sh Flow ADF, 200sh ADF.....	120
ADF cover.....	121
ADF unit.....	121

ADF system overview	122
200-sheet ADF workflow.....	122
ADF sensors.....	123
ADF system motor / solenoid / roller	124
Lift plate unit.....	125
Pickup unit.....	126
Deskew unit.....	128
Scan and exit unit.....	129
Document feeder simplex operation.....	130
Deskew operation	132
Document feeder hinges operation	133
ADF image scanner cleaning	134
ADF PCA.....	134
Automatic document feeder system: 100sh Flow ADF, 100sh ADF.....	135
ADF cover	135
ADF unit	136
ADF system overview	137
ADF workflow	137
ADF sensors.....	137
ADF system motor / roller.....	138
Lift plate unit.....	139
Pickup unit.....	140
Scan and exit unit.....	140
Document feeder simplex operation.....	141
Deskew operation	142
Document feeder hinges operation	143
ADF image scanner cleaning	144
ADF PCA.....	144
Scanner system: Tarot Platen.....	145
Scanner workflow	145
Cover	146
Sensor, motor	147
Image scanner and flat-bed glass cleaning	147
PCA	148
Scanner system: CIS Platen	148
Cover	148
CIS platen sensors and motors	149
Image scanner and flat-bed glass cleaning	149
PCA	150
Input devices.....	151
Workgroup stand.....	151
Workgroup Dual Cassette Feeder (DCF, Tray 4, 5).....	152
DCF (Tray 4, 5) covers.....	152
DCF (Tray 4, 5) feeding system workflow	153
DCF (Tray 4, 5) unit.....	154
DCF (Tray 4, 5) roller.....	154
DCF (Tray 4, 5) sensors	155
DCF (Tray 4, 5) motors.....	157

DCF (Tray 4, 5) operation.....	158
DCF (Tray 4, 5) motor operation.....	159
DCF (Tray 4, 5) PCA.....	160
Workgroup High Capacity Input tray (HCI, Tray 4).....	160
HCI (Tray 4) cover	160
HCI (Tray 4) workflow	161
HCI (Tray 4) unit.....	162
HCI (Tray 4) roller	163
HCI (Tray 4) sensors	164
HCI (Tray 4) motor	165
HCI (Tray 4) operation	167
HCI (Tray 4) motor operation.....	168
HCI (Tray 4) PCA	169
HCI (Tray 4) sub PCA	170
Output devices	171
Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker.....	171
Detailed Specifications	171
Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker covers.....	177
Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker unit overview	179
Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker workflow	179
Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker sensors	180
Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker motors and solenoids.....	185
Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker rollers.....	188
Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker PCAs.....	189
Bridge unit.....	190
Bridge unit overview.....	190
Stapler-stacker finisher	191
Entrance unit.....	191
Punch unit (optional).....	193
Tray diverter unit	196
Top exit unit	199
Top output tray unit	200
Main exit unit	202
Paddle unit.....	204
End fence unit	207
Tamper unit	209
Stapler unit.....	212
Ejector unit	216
Main output tray unit.....	219
Paper holding unit	221
Buffer unit	225
Booklet maker	230
Booklet entrance unit.....	230
Booklet paddle unit	232
Booklet end fence unit.....	233
Booklet presser unit.....	235
Booklet tamper unit	237
Booklet stapler unit.....	239

Booklet fold unit.....	242
Booklet diverter unit.....	247
Booklet exit unit	249
Booklet output tray unit	250
PCA	253
Finisher main PCA.....	253
Booklet maker PCA	256
Manual staple PCA.....	257
Inner finisher	258
Detailed specifications.....	258
Cover	262
Inner finisher overview	264
Inner finisher workflow.....	264
Inner finisher sensor	265
Inner finisher motor and solenoid.....	266
Inner finisher roller	267
Inner finisher PCA	268
Punch unit (optional).....	269
Punch unit overview	269
Punch unit operation.....	272
Entrance unit.....	272
Entrance unit overview.....	272
Diverter unit.....	274
Diverter unit overview	274
Diverter unit operation	275
Exit unit.....	276
Exit unit overview.....	276
Paper support unit.....	278
Paper support unit overview.....	278
Paper support unit operation	279
Paddle unit.....	280
Paddle unit overview	280
Paddle unit operation	282
End fence unit.....	283
End fence unit overview	283
End fence unit operation.....	284
Tamper unit	285
Tamper unit overview	285
Tamper unit operation.....	286
Stapler unit.....	287
Stapler unit overview.....	287
Staple and staple cartridge.....	289
Stapler unit operation.....	290
Ejector unit	291
Ejector unit overview	291
Ejector unit operation.....	293
Output tray and paper holding unit	294
Output tray and paper holding unit overview	294
Output tray and paper holding unit operation	297

PCA	298
Inner finisher main PCA.....	298
Inner finisher rear joint PCA.....	300
4 Problem solving.....	302
General troubleshooting guide.....	302
Troubleshooting process	302
Determine the problem source.....	302
Power subsystem.....	302
Control panel checks.....	305
Individual component diagnostics	310
Tools for troubleshooting	313
Problem-solving checklist	313
Step 1: Check that the printer power is on	313
Step 2: Check the control panel for error messages.....	313
Step 3: Test print functionality	313
Step 4: Test copy functionality.....	314
Step 5: Test the fax sending functionality.....	314
Step 6: Test the fax receiving functionality.....	314
Step 7: Try sending a print job from a computer	314
Step 8: Test the Plug and Print USB Drive printing functionality.....	314
Factors that affect printer performance.....	315
Print menu map.....	315
Print current settings pages	315
Additional tools for troubleshooting.....	316
Remote Admin	316
Required software and network connection.....	316
Connect a remote connection.....	318
Disconnect a remote connection.....	323
Clear paper jams	324
Paper jam locations.....	324
Auto-navigation for clearing paper jams.....	325
Experiencing frequent or recurring paper jams?.....	326
31.13.yz jam error in the document feeder	326
13.A1 jam error in tray 1 (multipurpose tray).....	328
13.A2, 13.A3, 13.A4 jam errors in tray 2, tray 3, or the optional 2 x 520-sheet trays.....	329
13.E1 jam error in the output bin	331
13.B9, 13.B2, 13.FF jam errors in the right door and fuser area.....	331
HP service and support	332
How to search for printer documentation.....	334
How to search WISE for printer documentation.....	334
Accessing WISE for HP channel partners (CSDP).....	335
Accessing WISE for HP channel partners (HP Partner Portal).....	337
Control panel messages document (CPMD)	339
Error codes (types and structure)	339
Image-quality troubleshooting guide (IQTG).....	341
5 Control panel menus.....	342

Pre-boot menu options	342
Open the Pre-boot menu from a touchscreen control panel.....	342
Cold reset using the Pre-boot menu from a touchscreen control panel.....	344
Remote Admin.....	352
Required software and network connection	352
Telnet client.....	352
Network connection.....	353
Connect a remote connection.....	354
Start the telnet server function at the printer.....	354
Start the telnet client function at the remote computer	356
Disconnect a remote connection.....	358
Reports menu	359
Settings menu	361
Copy menu.....	397
Scan menu	406
Fax menu (when a fax option is installed).....	434
Print menu	438
Supplies menu	438
Trays menu.....	439
Support Tools menu.....	439
Service menu.....	439
Event Log	440
Counts	441
Scanner Settings.....	442
Serial Number	443
Service ID.....	443
Cold Reset Paper	444
Low Alerts.....	444
Reset Supplies Level	444
Consumables Access Control.....	445
Software Version	445
Service Reports.....	446
Print Adjustment	446
Buckle Adjustment	447
Finisher Adjustment	448
Reset Engine NVM	456
Engine NVM Read/Write	457
Sensors	458
Component tests.....	466
TR Control Mode	471
Low-temperature Idling Mode.....	472
Altitude Adjustment.....	472
Humidity	473
Footer	474
PTT Test Mode	474
Test Support.....	474

Part Replacement Count	474
Reset Supplies.....	475
Fax V.29 Speed.....	475
Maintenance menu	475
Backup/Restore.....	476
Import/Export.....	476
OPC Cleaning.....	476
Custom Color	476
Auto Tone Adjustment.....	476
CTD Sensor Cleaning.....	477
Manual Tone Adjustment	477
Calibrate Scanner.....	477
USB Firmware Upgrade.....	477
License Management	477
Troubleshooting menu	480
Configuration/Status Pages	480
Fax Reports.....	481
Other Pages	481
Fax T.30 Trace Report.....	481
Fax V.34.....	482
JBIG Compression.....	482
Fax Speaker Mode.....	482
Fax Service Log.....	482
PQ Troubleshooting Pages.....	482
Advanced Print Quality Pages	485
Event Log	485
Paper Path Page.....	485
Run Fax Test.....	485
Retrieve Diagnostic Data.....	485
Retrieve Fax Diagnostic Data.....	486

6 Remove and replace..... 487

Before servicing.....	487
Order parts by authorized service providers	487
Ordering	487
Orderable parts	487
How to use parts lists and diagrams.....	487
ESD precautions	488
Service approach.....	488
Precautions when replacing parts.....	488
Before performing service.....	489
After performing service.....	489
Post-service test.....	490
Print-quality test	490
Copy-quality test.....	490
Fax-quality test.....	490
Parts removal order	490
Base printer	490
Covers.....	490

Base covers.....	490
Removal and replacement: Rear upper cover	490
Removal and replacement: Rear lower cover	494
Removal and replacement: Controller cover	497
Removal and replacement: Exit rear cover.....	499
Removal and replacement: Left top cover	503
Removal and replacement: Left upper cover	504
Removal and replacement: Left cover	508
Removal and replacement: Middle upper cover	512
Removal and replacement: Right upper cover	513
Removal and replacement: Right rear cover.....	519
Removal and replacement: Right front cover	521
Removal and replacement: Right middle cover assembly.....	524
Removal and replacement: Right middle cover.....	528
Removal and replacement: Power key	532
Removal and replacement: Hardware integration pocket (HIP) cover.....	537
Removal and replacement: Middle left cover	539
Removal and replacement: Exit cover stacker	541
Removal and replacement: Inner cover	543
Removal and replacement: Front lower cover.....	551
Removal and replacement: Front cover assembly.....	554
Removal and replacement: Tie stoppers	556
Removal and replacement: Front cover assembly - CMF panel.....	558
Removal and replacement: Tray 2, 3 color panel.....	561
Removal and replacement: Exit stacker upper cover.....	563
Feeding system.....	567
Right door assembly	567
Removal and replacement: Right door assembly.....	567
Removal and replacement: Right door front link.....	571
Removal and replacement: Right door front damper	576
Tray 1 unit	582
Removal and replacement: Tray 1 unit.....	582
Removal and replacement: Tray 1 paper empty sensor	593
Removal and replacement: Tray 1 clutch.....	605
Removal and replacement: Tray 1 roller kit (pickup/forward/reverse).....	617
Tray 2-3 units.....	620
Removal and replacement: Tray 2 or Tray 3.....	620
Removal and replacement: Tray 2 pickup assembly.....	622
Removal and replacement: Tray 2, 3 roller kit (pickup/forward/reverse).....	630
Removal and replacement: Tray 2 empty and stack height sensors.....	633
Removal and replacement: Tray 2 open and paper size sensor	642
Removal and replacement: Tray 2 pickup drive assembly	646
Removal and replacement: Tray 2 pickup motor.....	650
Removal and replacement: Tray 3 pickup drive assembly	654
Removal and replacement: Tray 3 pickup motor	659
Removal and replacement: Tray 3 pickup assembly	663
Removal and replacement: Tray 3 empty and stack height sensors.....	670
Removal and replacement: Tray 3 open and paper size sensor	678
Removal and replacement: Tray heater	681

Removal and replacement: Main drive assembly.....	685
Removal and replacement: Feed regi MP motor	694
Removal and replacement: Tray Feed 2 sensor	704
Removal and replacement: Tray Feed 3 sensor	709
Removal and replacement: Feed clutch	713
Registration unit and loop sensing unit.....	725
Removal and replacement: Registration unit.....	725
Removal and replacement: Registration sensor.....	732
Removal and replacement: Registration clutch.....	741
Removal and replacement: Secondary transfer (T2) unit.....	753
Removal and replacement: CTD sensor	758
Removal and replacement: Right door exit assembly	764
Removal and replacement: Fuser out sensor	769
Removal and replacement: Paper dust holder assembly.....	777
Exit unit.....	779
Removal and replacement: Exit unit	779
Removal and replacement: Output bin full sensor	781
Removal and replacement: Actuator-bin full exit	784
Removal and replacement: Lever-actuator bin full exit and spring TS.....	788
Removal and replacement: Exit stack guide.....	792
Duplex unit.....	794
Removal and replacement: Duplex assembly	794
Removal and replacement: Duplex jam sensor.....	800
Removal and replacement: Duplex motor	809
Toner flow	815
Toner cartridge.....	815
Removal and replacement: Toner dispense motor assembly.....	815
Removal and replacement: Toner dispense motor	828
Removal and replacement: Toner cartridge (control panel method).....	843
Removal and replacement: Toner cartridge (disassemble method).....	844
Removal and replacement: Toner CRUM modular jack harness.....	858
Removal and replacement: Toner guide unit K.....	871
Duct unit.....	884
Removal and replacement: Duct unit K.....	884
Removal and replacement: Toner duct motor assembly.....	899
Removal and replacement: Toner duct motor (Y, M).....	911
Toner collection unit	924
Removal and replacement: Toner collection unit (TCU).....	924
Removal and replacement: Toner collection unit (TCU) full sensor	926
Removal and replacement: Toner collection unit (TCU) detection sensor.....	934
Removal and replacement: Toner collection unit (TCU) drive assembly.....	943
Removal and replacement: Toner collection unit (TCU) motor	952
Image creation.....	961
Laser scanner unit (LSU)	961
Removal and replacement: Laser scanner unit (LSU).....	961
Developer and drum.....	966
Removal and replacement: Drum unit.....	966
Removal and replacement: Developer unit.....	971
Removal and replacement: Developer powder.....	976

Removal and replacement: Drum motor	986
Removal and replacement: Developer motor	994
Fuser unit.....	1002
Removal and replacement: Fuser unit	1002
Removal and replacement: Fuser and exit drive assembly.....	1008
Removal and replacement: Fuser motor.....	1013
Removal and replacement: Exit motor	1017
Environmental sensor, switch, and fan.....	1021
Base sensor, switch, and fan.....	1021
Removal and replacement: Outer temperature humidity sensor assembly, sensor and holder	1021
Removal and replacement: LVPS FDB fan assembly	1028
Removal and replacement: Developer fan assembly.....	1032
Removal and replacement: Right door fan	1036
Removal and replacement: LSU fan.....	1044
Removal and replacement: Front door switch assembly.....	1049
Removal and replacement: Right door switch assembly.....	1058
Control panel	1062
Base control panel.....	1062
Removal and replacement: Control panel.....	1062
PCAs.....	1065
Main PCA	1065
Removal and replacement: Formatter	1065
Removal and replacement: Riser card and cradle.....	1071
Removal and replacement: Rivet-HDD	1077
Removal and replacement: Cradle	1079
Removal and replacement: Riser card and cradle.....	1085
Removal and replacement: Hard disk 500GB	1091
Sub PCAs.....	1095
Removal and replacement: Accelerator card (optional).....	1095
Removal and replacement: USB hub PCA.....	1099
Removal and replacement: Island of data (IOD).....	1103
Removal and replacement: Echo PCA and rivet	1107
Removal and replacement: Power key	1111
Removal and replacement: Keyboard (Flow models)	1116
Removal and replacement: Fax card (optional).....	1121
Power supply PCAs	1124
Removal and replacement: High-voltage power supply (HVPS).....	1124
Removal and replacement: Low-voltage power supply (LVPS).....	1129
Removal and replacement: Fuser-drive board (FDB).....	1134
Integrated scanner asset (ISA).....	1139
Whole unit.....	1139
200-Sheet ISA for z and dn bundles	1139
Removal and replacement: Integrated scanner for z and dn bundle (5QK36A/5QK35A).....	1139
100-Sheet ISA	1143
Removal and replacement: Integrated scanner for Flex-build (5QK34A)	1144
ADF (Automatic document feeder).....	1147
200-Sheet ADF for dn bundle	1147
Removal and replacement: ADF (200sh).....	1147

Removal and replacement: ADF CMF panel.....	1154
Removal and replacement: ADF white backing kit (200sh).....	1157
Removal and replacement: ADF pickup roller kit (200sh)	1162
Removal and replacement: ADF image scanner.....	1166
Removal and replacement: ADF PCA (200sh)	1168
Removal and replacement: ADF flat-flexible cable (200sh).....	1174
Removal and replacement: ADF power cable (200sh).....	1180
Removal and replacement: ADF hinge kit (200sh).....	1186
Removal and replacement: ADF hinge damper module (200sh).....	1194
100-Sheet ADF	1201
Removal and replacement: ADF CMF panel (100sh).....	1201
Removal and replacement: ADF pickup roller kit (100sh)	1203
Removal and replacement: ADF PCA (100sh)	1206
Removal and replacement: ADF flat-flexible cable (100sh).....	1213
Removal and replacement: ADF power cable (100sh).....	1218
Removal and replacement: ADF hinge kit (100sh).....	1223
Removal and replacement: ADF white backing kit (110sh).....	1228
Flatbed Scanner (Tarot).....	1233
Whole unit	1233
Removal and replacement: Flatbed scanner whole unit	1234
Covers	1241
Removal and replacement: Flatbed scanner rear cover	1241
PCA, harness, and sensor	1243
Removal and replacement: Flatbed scanner PCA assembly.....	1243
Removal and replacement: Flatbed scanner FFC 50 pin	1247
Removal and replacement: Flatbed scanner FFC 68 pin	1252
Removal and replacement: Flatbed scanner discrete power cable	1256
Removal and replacement: Flatbed scanner flatbed open sensor	1261
Flatbed Scanner (CIS).....	1264
Whole unit	1264
Removal and replacement: Flatbed scanner whole unit	1264
Covers	1270
Removal and replacement: Flatbed scanner rear cover	1270
PCA, harness, and sensor	1272
Removal and replacement: Flatbed scanner PCA assembly.....	1272
Removal and replacement: Flatbed scanner discrete power cable	1275
Removal and replacement: Flatbed scanner FFC 68 pin	1279
Input device (workgroup)	1283
DCF device (workgroup).....	1283
Covers	1283
Removal and replacement: DCF (Tray 4, 5) right cover	1283
Removal and replacement: DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover.....	1285
Removal and replacement: DCF (Tray 4, 5) left cover.....	1286
Removal and replacement: DCF (Tray 4, 5) right door	1288
Removal and replacement: Tray 4, 5 CMF panels	1291
Removal and replacement: Caster wheel	1294
Removal and replacement: Holder wheel kit.....	1296
Unit	1299

Removal and replacement: Tray 4, 5 cassettes.....	1299
Roller.....	1301
Removal and replacement: DCF roller kit	1301
Sensor	1304
Removal and replacement: Tray 4, 5 paper size sensors.....	1304
Removal and replacement: Tray 4 pickup assembly	1306
Removal and replacement: Tray 4 paper empty and stack height sensors.....	1312
Removal and replacement: DCF feed 4, 5 sensor	1315
Removal and replacement: Tray 5 pickup assembly	1320
Removal and replacement: Tray 5 paper empty and stack height sensors.....	1327
Motor	1330
Removal and replacement: DCF pickup drive assembly.....	1330
Removal and replacement: Tray 4 pickup motor	1333
Removal and replacement: Tray 5 pickup motor	1336
Removal and replacement: DCF feed drive assembly.....	1338
Removal and replacement: DCF (Tray 4, 5) feed motor.....	1341
PCA and harness.....	1343
Removal and replacement: Tray heater	1344
Removal and replacement: DCF (Tray 4, 5) PCA.....	1348
Removal and replacement: DCF (Tray 4, 5) right door open switch holder assembly.....	1351
Removal and replacement: DCF IF harness	1354
Removal and replacement: DCF motor harness.....	1357
Removal and replacement: DCF sensor harness.....	1359
Removal and replacement: DCF size harness.....	1366
HCI (workgroup)	1369
Covers	1369
Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) right cover	1369
Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) rear cover	1371
Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) left cover.....	1373
Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) right door.....	1375
Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) front CMF panel.....	1377
Removal and replacement: Caster wheel.....	1379
Removal and replacement: Holder wheel kit.....	1381
Unit.....	1383
Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) unit	1383
Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) cassette.....	1386
Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) pickup assembly.....	1388
Roller.....	1392
Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) roller kit.....	1392
Sensor	1395
Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) feed sensor	1395
Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) paper empty and stack height sensors.....	1401
Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) knockup home and shift tray end sensors.....	1406
Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) shift tray empty and home sensors	1411
Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) shift tray level sensor 1 and 2	1414
Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) tray open sensor	1418
Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) gate solenoid home sensor.....	1421
Removal and replacement: HCI right door open switch holder assembly.....	1424
Motor	1428

Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) shift and lift motors	1428
Removal and replacement: Shift plate.....	1432
Removal and replacement: Knockup plate assembly	1437
Removal and replacement: Paper gate.....	1440
Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) feed motor drive assembly.....	1443
Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) pickup motor drive assembly.....	1446
Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) shift gate solenoid.....	1448
PCA and harness	1452
Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) PCA.....	1452
Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) sub PCA.....	1455
Removal and replacement: HCI main IF harness	1459
Removal and replacement: HCI motor IF (pick and feed).....	1462
Removal and replacement: HCI inner drawer.....	1466
Output device	1469
Stapler/stacker and (or) Booklet finisher	1469
Cover	1469
Removal and replacement: Front door	1469
Removal and replacement: Caster cover	1472
Removal and replacement: Left lower cover	1474
Removal and replacement: Left upper cover	1482
Removal and replacement: Booklet output tray	1492
Removal and replacement: Top output tray	1494
Removal and replacement: Main output tray.....	1497
Removal and replacement: Rear cover	1499
Removal and replacement: Front cover.....	1501
Removal and replacement: Punch cover	1506
Removal and replacement: Top cover	1508
Removal and replacement: Top door	1510
Removal and replacement: Right upper cover	1514
Removal and replacement: Front lower left cover	1517
Removal and replacement: Front lower right cover	1522
Removal and replacement: Shaft hinge - door	1524
Removal and replacement: Caster.....	1526
Removal and replacement: Caster fix nut.....	1529
Removal and replacement: Booklet front cover	1531
Bridge unit.....	1533
Removal and replacement: Bridge unit.....	1534
Removal and replacement: Bridge door sensor.....	1537
Removal and replacement: Bridge entrance sensor	1541
Removal and replacement: Bridge exit sensor.....	1546
Removal and replacement: Bridge motor.....	1552
Entrance unit.....	1557
Removal and replacement: Entrance sensor	1557
Removal and replacement: Entrance motor assembly	1572
Removal and replacement: Entrance motor.....	1576
Punch unit.....	1580
Removal and replacement: Punch unit.....	1580
Tray diverter unit	1582

Removal and replacement: Top jam cover assembly	1582
Removal and replacement: Tray diverter	1586
Removal and replacement: Top door open switch	1590
Removal and replacement: Tray diverter cam	1594
Removal and replacement: Tray diverter home sensor	1602
Top exit unit.....	1609
Removal and replacement: Top exit sensor	1610
Removal and replacement: Exit motor assembly	1619
Removal and replacement: Exit motor	1623
Top output tray unit	1626
Removal and replacement: Top lower feed assembly.....	1626
Removal and replacement: Tray extension.....	1635
Removal and replacement: Top output tray paper full sensor	1638
Main exit unit	1645
Removal and replacement: Main exit sensor.....	1645
Removal and replacement: Main exit cam motor assembly.....	1652
Removal and replacement: Main exit cam home sensor	1657
Removal and replacement: Main exit cam motor	1662
Removal and replacement: Front door switch	1667
Paddle unit	1673
Removal and replacement: Paddle.....	1673
Removal and replacement: Paddle motor assembly	1683
Removal and replacement: Paddle home sensor.....	1688
Removal and replacement: Paddle motor.....	1694
End fence unit.....	1699
Removal and replacement: End fence home sensor	1699
Removal and replacement: End fence motor assembly.....	1713
Removal and replacement: End fence motor.....	1718
Removal and replacement: Main output tray top of stack switch guide.....	1723
Removal and replacement: Main output tray top of stack switch lower guide.....	1732
Tamper unit	1741
Removal and replacement: Front tamper	1741
Removal and replacement: Front tamper home sensor	1752
Removal and replacement: Front tamper motor	1763
Removal and replacement: Rear tamper	1774
Removal and replacement: Rear tamper home sensor	1784
Removal and replacement: Rear tamper motor	1795
Stapler unit.....	1807
Removal and replacement: Stapler unit	1807
Removal and replacement: Staple cartridge.....	1813
Removal and replacement: Stapler front sensor.....	1815
Removal and replacement: Stapler mid-front and mid-rear sensors	1822
Removal and replacement: Manual staple sensor	1829
Removal and replacement: Stapler position motor	1835
Ejector unit	1843
Removal and replacement: Ejector unit.....	1843
Removal and replacement: Ejector sensor	1856
Removal and replacement: Ejector 1 home sensor	1873
Removal and replacement: Ejector 1 motor sensor	1888

Removal and replacement: Ejector 2 motor sensor	1903
Main output tray unit	1918
Removal and replacement: Main output tray	1918
Removal and replacement: Main output tray top of stack sensor	1920
Removal and replacement: Main output tray lower limit sensor	1932
Removal and replacement: Main output tray motor sensor	1944
Removal and replacement: Main output tray motor drive assembly	1948
Removal and replacement: Main output tray top of stack switch	1951
Paper holding unit	1961
Removal and replacement: Front and rear paper holding sensor	1961
Removal and replacement: Paper holding home sensor	1974
Removal and replacement: Paper holding motor drive assembly	1986
Buffer unit	1998
Removal and replacement: Buffer solenoid assembly	1998
Removal and replacement: Buffer motor	2005
Booklet finisher (only)	2009
Booklet maker	2010
Removal and replacement: Booklet maker	2010
Removal and replacement: Harness guide	2019
Booklet entrance unit	2031
Removal and replacement: Booklet entrance unit	2031
Removal and replacement: Booklet entrance sensor	2043
Removal and replacement: Booklet entrance-presser motor assembly	2056
Removal and replacement: Booklet entrance motor	2060
Booklet paddle unit	2071
Removal and replacement: Booklet paddle home sensor	2071
Removal and replacement: Booklet paddle motor assembly	2074
Removal and replacement: Booklet paddle motor	2078
Booklet end fence unit	2083
Removal and replacement: Booklet end fence home sensor	2083
Removal and replacement: Booklet end fence motor	2095
Booklet presser unit	2106
Removal and replacement: Booklet presser home sensor	2106
Removal and replacement: Booklet tamper	2111
Removal and replacement: Booklet tamper home sensor	2128
Removal and replacement: Booklet tamper motor	2145
Removal and replacement: Booklet tamper sensor	2162
Booklet stapler unit	2180
Removal and replacement: Booklet stapler	2180
Removal and replacement: Booklet staple cartridge	2197
Booklet fold unit	2199
Removal and replacement: Booklet c-fold blade assembly	2199
Removal and replacement: Booklet c-fold blade home sensor	2211
Removal and replacement: Booklet c-fold blade motor assembly	2217
Removal and replacement: Booklet c-fold blade motor	2222
Removal and replacement: Booklet blade home sensor	2228
Removal and replacement: Booklet blade motor	2244
Removal and replacement: Booklet fold motor assembly	2249
Removal and replacement: Booklet fold motor	2253

Booklet diverter unit.....	2257
Removal and replacement: Booklet diverter.....	2257
Removal and replacement: Booklet diverter home sensor.....	2273
Removal and replacement: Booklet diverter motor assembly.....	2279
Removal and replacement: Booklet diverter motor.....	2285
Booklet output tray unit.....	2291
Removal and replacement: Booklet output tray.....	2291
Removal and replacement: Booklet output tray sensor.....	2293
PCA.....	2301
Removal and replacement: Main PCA.....	2301
Removal and replacement: PCA.....	2306
Miscellaneous parts.....	2316
Removal and replacement: Finisher mounting brackets.....	2316
Inner finisher.....	2318
Whole unit and rail.....	2319
Removal and replacement: Inner finisher.....	2319
Removal and replacement: Guide rails.....	2322
Cover.....	2326
Removal and replacement: Front cover assembly.....	2326
Removal and replacement: Top cover assembly.....	2330
Removal and replacement: Middle cover assembly.....	2336
Removal and replacement: Punch cover assembly.....	2342
Removal and replacement: Output tray assembly.....	2346
Removal and replacement: PCA cover.....	2350
Removal and replacement: Finisher sub stay assembly.....	2353
Removal and replacement: Rear cover - base.....	2363
Removal and replacement: Rear cover - punch.....	2366
Removal and replacement: Lock release handle.....	2368
Removal and replacement: Main interface harness.....	2370
Removal and replacement: Exit bin full.....	2381
Punch unit.....	2384
Removal and replacement: Hole punch.....	2384
Removal and replacement: Punch waste full sensor.....	2389
Entrance unit.....	2399
Removal and replacement: Entrance sensor.....	2399
Removal and replacement: Entrance motor assembly.....	2404
Removal and replacement: Entrance motor.....	2414
Removal and replacement: Entrance motor timing belt.....	2424
Removal and replacement: Entrance roller.....	2429
Removal and replacement: Middle roller.....	2440
Exit unit.....	2447
Removal and replacement: Exit roller assembly.....	2447
Removal and replacement: Exit sensor.....	2456
Removal and replacement: Exit sensor actuator.....	2466
Removal and replacement: Exit motor assembly.....	2476
Removal and replacement: Exit motor.....	2480
Paper support unit.....	2485
Removal and replacement: Rear paper support.....	2485
Removal and replacement: Paper support home sensor.....	2492

Removal and replacement: Paper support motor assembly	2500
Removal and replacement: Paper support motor	2508
Removal and replacement: Front paper support.....	2516
Paddle unit.....	2523
Removal and replacement: Main paddle assembly	2523
Removal and replacement: Sub paddle assembly	2532
Removal and replacement: Main paddle home sensor	2539
Removal and replacement: Main paddle motor assembly	2546
End fence unit.....	2550
Removal and replacement: End fence sensor	2550
Tamper unit	2561
Removal and replacement: Front tamper	2561
Removal and replacement: Front tamper motor	2568
Removal and replacement: Front tamper home sensor	2575
Removal and replacement: Rear tamper.....	2582
Removal and replacement: Rear tamper motor	2588
Removal and replacement: Rear tamper home sensor	2595
Stapler unit.....	2602
Removal and replacement: Stapler assembly	2602
Removal and replacement: Staple cartridge.....	2606
Removal and replacement: Stapler position sensor	2608
Removal and replacement: Stapler position motor	2620
Ejector unit	2629
Removal and replacement: Ejector	2629
Output tray and paper holding unit	2637
Removal and replacement: Output tray motor assembly	2637
Removal and replacement: Output tray motor	2643
Removal and replacement: Output tray motor sensor	2649
Removal and replacement: Output tray lower limit switch assembly.....	2655
Removal and replacement: Output tray top of stack sensor kit	2661
Removal and replacement: Paper holding actuator	2672
Removal and replacement: Paper holding kit.....	2683
Removal and replacement: Paper holding solenoid	2693
Removal and replacement: Paper holding sensor	2704
PCA and switch	2715
Removal and replacement: PCA.....	2715
Removal and replacement: Rear joint PCA.....	2726
Removal and replacement: Front cover switch.....	2736
Removal and replacement: Top cover switch.....	2747
Removal and replacement: Docking sensor	2751

7 Parts and diagrams 2755

Base printer	2755
Covers.....	2755
Parts and diagrams: Covers.....	2755
Tray 1.....	2758
Parts and diagrams: Tray 1.....	2758
Tray 2, 3.....	2759
Parts and diagrams: Tray 2, 3	2760

Registration and loop sensors.....	2761
Parts and diagrams: Registration and Tray 2 unit.....	2761
Exit unit.....	2763
Parts and diagrams: Exit unit (1 of 2).....	2763
Parts and diagrams: Exit unit (2 of 2).....	2765
Toner cartridge.....	2765
Parts and diagrams: Toner.....	2765
Duct assembly.....	2766
Parts and diagrams: Duct assembly.....	2766
Toner collection unit (TCU).....	2767
Parts and diagrams: Toner Collection Unit.....	2767
Laser scanner unit (LSU).....	2768
Parts and diagrams: Laser Scanner Unit.....	2768
Imaging unit (drum and developer).....	2769
Parts and diagrams: Imaging unit (drum and developer).....	2769
Fuser.....	2770
Parts and diagrams: Fuser.....	2770
Sensor and fan.....	2771
Parts and diagrams: Sensor and fan.....	2771
PCA.....	2772
Parts and diagrams: PCA.....	2772
ADF / Image scanner assembly.....	2774
Image scanner assembly (ISA).....	2774
Parts and diagrams: ISA.....	2775
200sh ADF.....	2777
Parts and diagrams: 200sh ADF (1 of 2).....	2777
Parts and diagrams: 200sh ADF (2 of 2).....	2778
100sh ADF.....	2779
Parts and diagrams: 100sh ADF (1 of 2).....	2779
Parts and diagrams: 100sh ADF (2 of 2).....	2780
Tarot platen.....	2780
Parts and diagrams: Tarot platen.....	2780
CIS platen.....	2781
Parts and diagrams: CIS platen.....	2782
Input devices.....	2782
Workgroup Dual cassette feeder (DCF, Tray 4, 5).....	2784
Parts and diagrams: DCF (1 of 2).....	2784
Parts and diagrams: DCF (2 of 2).....	2786
Workgroup High Capacity Input tray (HCI, Tray 4).....	2788
Parts and diagrams: HCI (1 of 2).....	2788
Parts and diagrams: HCI (2 of 2).....	2790
Output device.....	2791
Inner finisher.....	2792
Parts and diagrams: Inner finisher (1 of 5).....	2792
Parts and diagrams: Inner finisher (2 of 5).....	2793
Parts and diagrams: Inner finisher (3 of 5).....	2795
Parts and diagrams: Inner finisher (4 of 5).....	2797
Parts and diagrams: Inner finisher (5 of 5).....	2799

Stapler/Stacker finisher	2801
Parts and diagrams: Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4)	2801
Parts and diagrams: Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4)	2803
Parts and diagrams: Stapler/Stacker finisher (3 of 4)	2805
Parts and diagrams: Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4)	2806
Booklet finisher	2808
Parts and diagrams: Booklet finisher (1 of 5)	2808
Parts and diagrams: Booklet finisher (2 of 5)	2810
Parts and diagrams: Booklet finisher (3 of 5)	2812
Parts and diagrams: Booklet finisher (4 of 5)	2814
Parts and diagrams: Booklet finisher (5 of 5)	2815
Alphabetical parts list	2817
Base printer	2755
Covers	2755
Parts and diagrams: Covers	2755
Tray 1	2758
Parts and diagrams: Tray 1	2758
Tray 2, 3	2759
Parts and diagrams: Tray 2, 3	2760
Registration and loop sensors	2761
Parts and diagrams: Registration and Tray 2 unit	2761
Exit unit	2763
Parts and diagrams: Exit unit (1 of 2)	2763
Parts and diagrams: Exit unit (2 of 2)	2765
Toner cartridge	2765
Parts and diagrams: Toner	2765
Duct assembly	2766
Parts and diagrams: Duct assembly	2766
Toner collection unit (TCU)	2767
Parts and diagrams: Toner Collection Unit	2767
Laser scanner unit (LSU)	2768
Parts and diagrams: Laser Scanner Unit	2768
Imaging unit (drum and developer)	2769
Parts and diagrams: Imaging unit (drum and developer)	2769
Fuser	2770
Parts and diagrams: Fuser	2770
Sensor and fan	2771
Parts and diagrams: Sensor and fan	2771
PCA	2772
Parts and diagrams: PCA	2772
ADF / Image scanner assembly	2774
Image scanner assembly (ISA)	2774
Parts and diagrams: ISA	2775
200sh ADF	2777
Parts and diagrams: 200sh ADF (1 of 2)	2777
Parts and diagrams: 200sh ADF (2 of 2)	2778
100sh ADF	2779
Parts and diagrams: 100sh ADF (1 of 2)	2779

Parts and diagrams: 100sh ADF (2 of 2).....	2780
Tarot platen	2780
Parts and diagrams: Tarot platen.....	2780
CIS platen.....	2781
Parts and diagrams: CIS platen.....	2782
Input devices.....	2782
Workgroup Dual cassette feeder (DCF, Tray 4, 5).....	2784
Parts and diagrams: DCF (1 of 2).....	2784
Parts and diagrams: DCF (2 of 2).....	2786
Workgroup High Capacity Input tray (HCI, Tray 4).....	2788
Parts and diagrams: HCI (1 of 2).....	2788
Parts and diagrams: HCI (2 of 2).....	2790
Output device.....	2791
Inner finisher	2792
Parts and diagrams: Inner finisher (1 of 5).....	2792
Parts and diagrams: Inner finisher (2 of 5).....	2793
Parts and diagrams: Inner finisher (3 of 5).....	2795
Parts and diagrams: Inner finisher (4 of 5).....	2797
Parts and diagrams: Inner finisher (5 of 5).....	2799
Stapler/Stacker finisher	2801
Parts and diagrams: Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4).....	2801
Parts and diagrams: Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4).....	2803
Parts and diagrams: Stapler/Stacker finisher (3 of 4).....	2805
Parts and diagrams: Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4).....	2806
Booklet finisher	2808
Parts and diagrams: Booklet finisher (1 of 5).....	2808
Parts and diagrams: Booklet finisher (2 of 5).....	2810
Parts and diagrams: Booklet finisher (3 of 5).....	2812
Parts and diagrams: Booklet finisher (4 of 5).....	2814
Parts and diagrams: Booklet finisher (5 of 5).....	2815
Numerical parts list.....	2837
Base printer	2755
Covers	2755
Parts and diagrams: Covers.....	2755
Tray 1.....	2758
Parts and diagrams: Tray 1.....	2758
Tray 2, 3.....	2759
Parts and diagrams: Tray 2, 3.....	2760
Registration and loop sensors.....	2761
Parts and diagrams: Registration and Tray 2 unit.....	2761
Exit unit.....	2763
Parts and diagrams: Exit unit (1 of 2).....	2763
Parts and diagrams: Exit unit (2 of 2).....	2765
Toner cartridge.....	2765
Parts and diagrams: Toner.....	2765
Duct assembly.....	2766
Parts and diagrams: Duct assembly.....	2766
Toner collection unit (TCU).....	2767

Parts and diagrams: Toner Collection Unit	2767
Laser scanner unit (LSU)	2768
Parts and diagrams: Laser Scanner Unit.....	2768
Imaging unit (drum and developer).....	2769
Parts and diagrams: Imaging unit (drum and developer).....	2769
Fuser	2770
Parts and diagrams: Fuser	2770
Sensor and fan.....	2771
Parts and diagrams: Sensor and fan	2771
PCA	2772
Parts and diagrams: PCA.....	2772
ADF / Image scanner assembly.....	2774
Image scanner assembly (ISA).....	2774
Parts and diagrams: ISA.....	2775
200sh ADF	2777
Parts and diagrams: 200sh ADF (1 of 2).....	2777
Parts and diagrams: 200sh ADF (2 of 2).....	2778
100sh ADF	2779
Parts and diagrams: 100sh ADF (1 of 2).....	2779
Parts and diagrams: 100sh ADF (2 of 2).....	2780
Tarot platen	2780
Parts and diagrams: Tarot platen.....	2780
CIS platen.....	2781
Parts and diagrams: CIS platen	2782
Input devices.....	2782
Workgroup Dual cassette feeder (DCF, Tray 4, 5).....	2784
Parts and diagrams: DCF (1 of 2).....	2784
Parts and diagrams: DCF (2 of 2).....	2786
Workgroup High Capacity Input tray (HCI, Tray 4).....	2788
Parts and diagrams: HCI (1 of 2).....	2788
Parts and diagrams: HCI (2 of 2).....	2790
Output device	2791
Inner finisher	2792
Parts and diagrams: Inner finisher (1 of 5)	2792
Parts and diagrams: Inner finisher (2 of 5).....	2793
Parts and diagrams: Inner finisher (3 of 5)	2795
Parts and diagrams: Inner finisher (4 of 5)	2797
Parts and diagrams: Inner finisher (5 of 5)	2799
Stapler/Stacker finisher	2801
Parts and diagrams: Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4).....	2801
Parts and diagrams: Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4).....	2803
Parts and diagrams: Stapler/Stacker finisher (3 of 4).....	2805
Parts and diagrams: Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4).....	2806
Booklet finisher	2808
Parts and diagrams: Booklet finisher (1 of 5)	2808
Parts and diagrams: Booklet finisher (2 of 5)	2810
Parts and diagrams: Booklet finisher (3 of 5)	2812
Parts and diagrams: Booklet finisher (4 of 5)	2814

Parts and diagrams: Booklet finisher (5 of 5).....	2815
8 Electrical mechanical relationships (EMR) diagrams.....	2857
Base printer	2857
EMR diagrams: Tray 1.....	2857
EMR diagrams: Tray 2/3.....	2858
EMR diagrams: Registration and T2 Unit	2860
EMR diagrams: Exit unit.....	2861
EMR diagrams: Toner cartridge.....	2863
EMR diagrams: Toner Duct.....	2864
EMR diagrams: Toner collection unit	2865
EMR diagrams: LSU	2866
EMR diagrams: Drum and Developer.....	2867
EMR diagrams: CTD	2868
EMR diagrams: Fuser	2869
EMR diagrams: Sensor and fan.....	2870
EMR diagrams: PCA	2872
Input devices.....	2880
EMR diagrams: Input devices.....	2880
Output devices	2881
EMR diagrams: Inner finisher	2881
EMR diagrams: Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet finisher	2891
Appendix A Certificate of Volatility	2910
Certificate of Volatility	2910
Glossary of terms	2913
Index.....	2923

List of videos

View a video that demonstrates how to load paper in a way that reduces the number of paper jams.....	326
View a video of how to clear a jam in the document feeder.....	326
View a video of how to clear a jam in tray 1.....	328
View a video of how to clear a jam in tray 2, tray 3, and the optional trays.....	329
View a video of how to clear a jam in the output bin.....	331
View a video of how to clear a jam in the right door and fuser area.....	331
View a video of how to use the HP Partner First Portal to access WISE.....	332
View a video of how to access WISE for internal HP users.....	333
View a video of how to use WISE to find technical support videos (model number search).....	334
View a video of ow to use WISE to find technical support videos (Product detail page [PDP] search).....	334
View a video of how to access WISE (HP channel partners).....	339
View a video of removing and replacing the controller cover.....	497
View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 1 roller kit.....	617
View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 3 pickup drive assembly.....	654
View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 3 pickup assembly.....	663
View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 3 open and paper size sensor.....	678
View a video of removing and replacing the feed drive assembly.....	685
View a video on how to remove tray feed 2 sensor.....	704
View a video on how to remove tray feed 3 sensor.....	709
View a video of removing and replacing the T2 unit.....	753
View a video of removing and replacing the toner dispense motor assembly.....	815
View a video on how to remove the tonor dispense motor.....	828
View a video of removing and replacing the toner cartridges using the control panel.....	843
View a video of removing and replacing the duct unit K.....	884
View a video of removing and replacing the toner duct motor assembly.....	899
View a video on how to remove the TCU.....	924
View a video of removing and replacing the toner collection unit full sensor.....	926
View a video of removing and replacing the toner collection unit detection sensor.....	934
View a video of removing and replacing the LSU.....	961

View a video of removing and replacing the fuser and exit drive assembly.....	1008
View a video of removing and replacing the fuser motor.....	1013
View a video of removing and replacing the exit motor.....	1017
View a video of removing and replacing the front door switch.....	1049
View a video on how to remove the formatter.....	1065
View a video of removing and replacing the riser card and cradle.....	1071
View a video of installing the ISA.....	1139
View a video of installing the ISA.....	1144

1 Product information, configurations, and specifications

You will learn more about the product information, configurations, and specifications.

Printer views

Learn more specifically about the different views of the printer.

Printer front view

Locate features on the front of the printer.

Figure 1-1 Printer front view

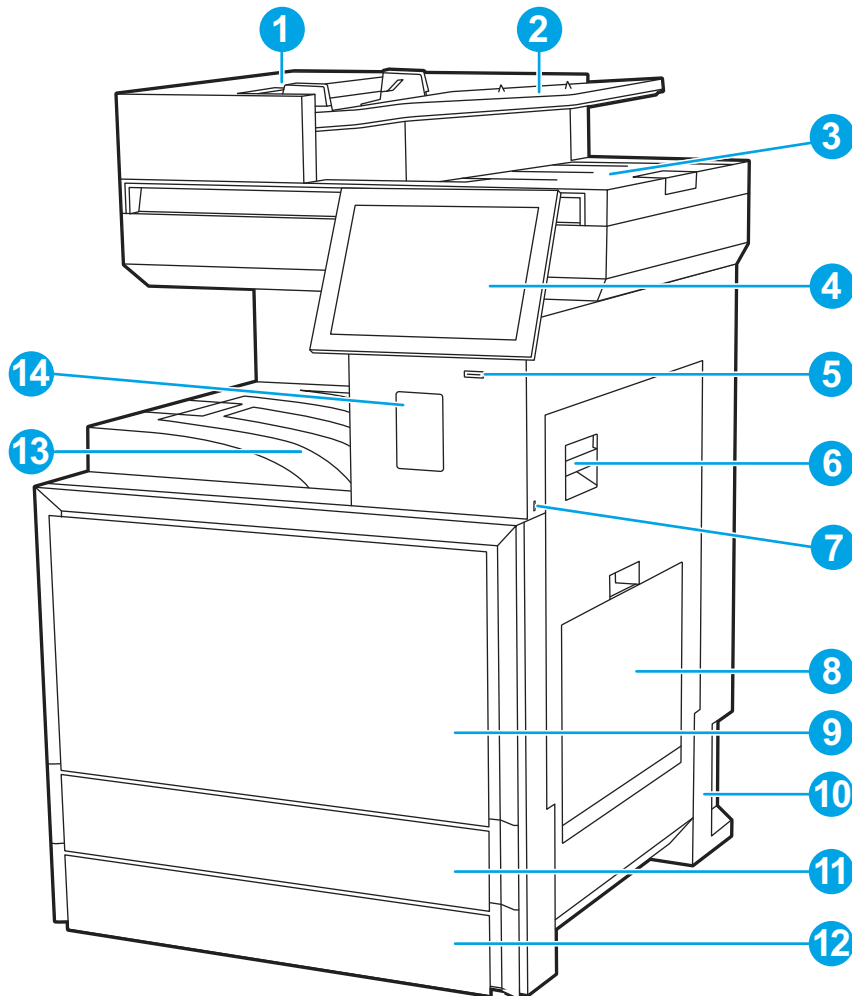


Table 1-1 Front view part description

Item	Description
1	Automatic document feeder cover, for access for clearing jams
2	Automatic document feeder input tray
3	Automatic document feeder output tray
4	Control panel with color touchscreen display (tilts up for easier viewing)
5	On/off button
6	Right door, for access for clearing jams
7	Easy-access USB port Insert a USB flash drive for printing or scanning without a computer or to update the printer firmware. NOTE: An administrator must enable this port before use.
8	Tray 1 (multipurpose tray)
9	Front door, for access to the toner cartridges
10	Power connection
11	Tray 2
12	Tray 3
13	Output bin
14	Hardware integration pocket (HIP), for connecting accessory and third-party devices



NOTE: Not shown: A pull-out keyboard is included under the control panel for z models only.

Printer back view

Locate features on the back of the printer.

Figure 1-2 Printer back view

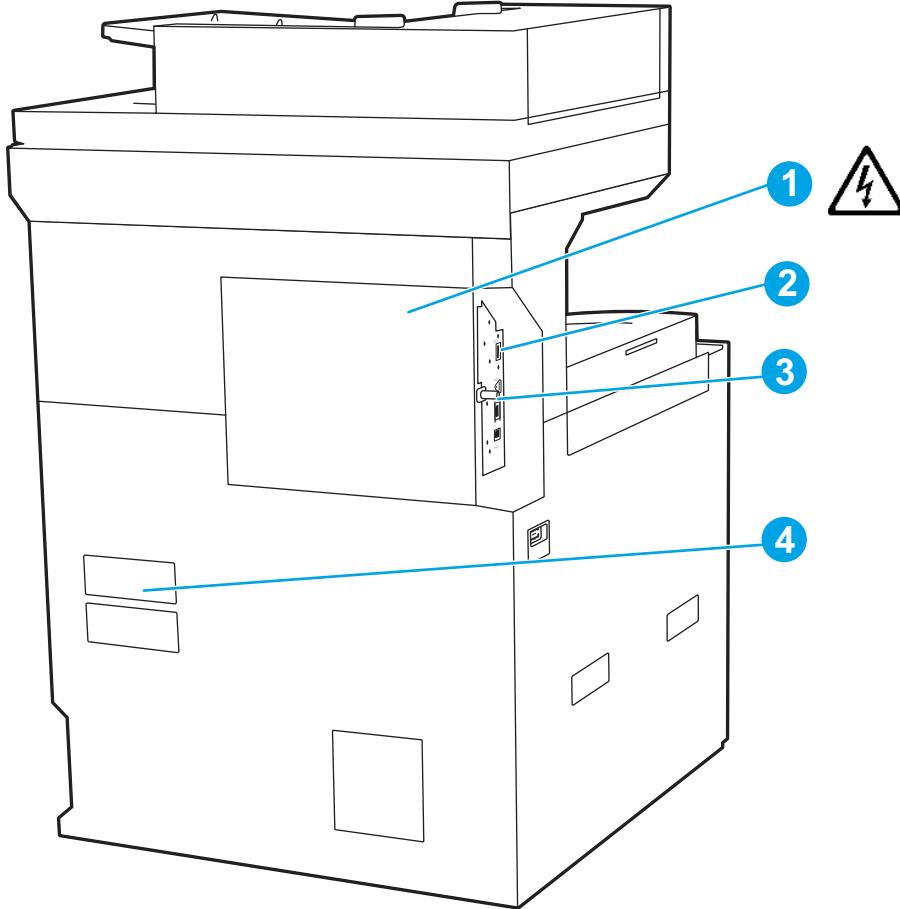



Table 1-2 Back View Part Description

Item	Description
1	Back cover CAUTION:  There is risk of electric shock. This cover should only be opened by a qualified service technician.
2	Interface ports
3	Thumbscrew CAUTION: The thumbscrew should be tightened with a tool after both initial installation and subsequent access to the formatter cover.
4	Serial number and product number label

Interface ports view

Locate the interface ports on the printer formatter.

Figure 1-3 Interface ports view

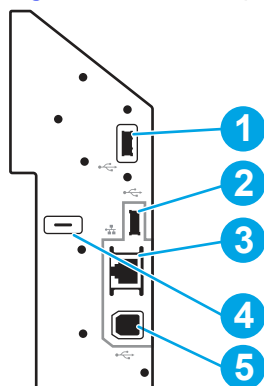



Table 1-3 Interface ports view

Item	Description
1	Hi-speed USB 2.0 host port for connecting external USB devices (this port might be covered) NOTE: For easy-access USB printing, use the USB port near the control panel.
2	SuperSpeed USB 3.0 host port for connecting external USB devices (this port might be covered)
3	Local area network (LAN) Ethernet (RJ-45) network port
4	Slot for a cable-type security lock
5	SuperSpeed USB 3.0 printing port

Control-panel view

The control panel provides access to the printer features and indicates the current status of the printer.

 **NOTE:** Tilt the control panel for easier viewing.

The Home screen provides access to the printer features and indicates the current status of the printer.


 **NOTE:** The features that appear on the Home screen can vary, depending on the printer configuration.

Figure 1-4 Control-panel view

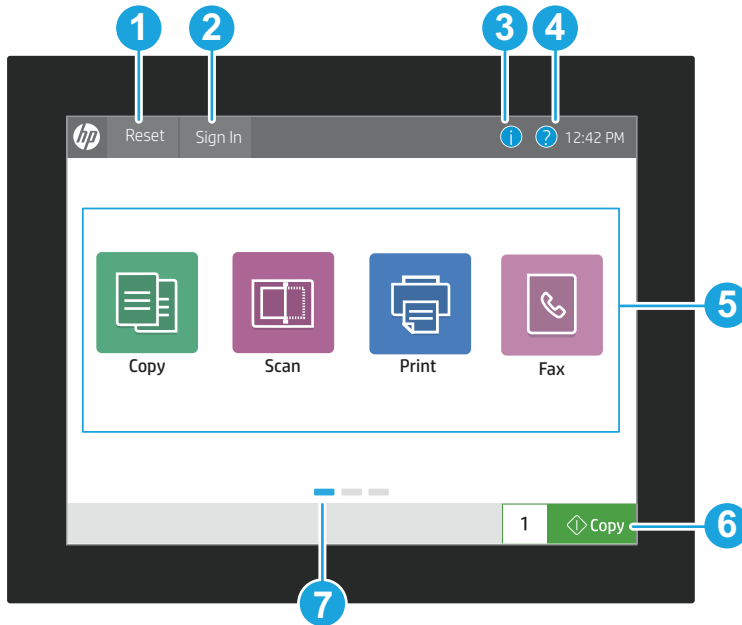





Table 1-4 Control-panel view

Item	Control	Description
1	Reset button	<p>The Reset button returns the printer to default settings and is always present if users are not logged in.</p> <p>The Reset button is not present when the Sign Out button is present.</p> <p>Touch the Reset button to resume and release jobs from the previous pause state and interrupt mode, reset the quick copy count in the copy count field, exit special modes, reset the display language and the keyboard layout.</p>
2	Sign In or Sign Out button	<p>Touch the Sign In button to access secured features.</p> <p>Touch the Sign Out button to sign out of the printer. The printer restores all options to the default settings.</p> <p>NOTE: This button displays only if the administrator has configured the printer to require permission for access to features.</p>

Table 1-4 Control-panel view (continued)

Item	Control	Description
3	Information button 	<p>Touch the information button to access a screen that provides access to several types of printer information. Touch the buttons at the bottom of the screen for the following information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Display Language: Change the language setting for the current user session. • Sleep Mode: Place the printer into sleep mode. • Wi-Fi Direct: View information for how to connect directly to the printer using a phone, tablet, or other device with Wi-Fi (only available when the optional wireless accessory is installed). • Wireless: View or change wireless connection settings (only available when the optional wireless accessory is installed). • Ethernet: View or change Ethernet connection settings. • HP Web Services: View information to connect and print to the printer using HP Web Services (ePrint).
4	Help button 	<p>Touch the Help button to open the embedded help system.</p> <p>The status line provides information about the overall printer status.</p>
5	Applications area	<p>Touch any of the icons to open the application. Swipe the screen sideways to access more applications.</p> <p>NOTE: The available applications vary by printer. The administrator can configure which applications appear and the order in which they appear.</p> <p>On Flow printers the Scan button is replaced by the Scan+ button .</p> <p>Touch the Scan+ button to send a scan job to multiple destinations at once, including email, SharePoint, network folder, USB drive, fax, or printed hard copy. It also includes a preview mode that supports simple editing.</p>
6	Copy button	Touch the Copy button to start a copy job.
7	Home-screen page indicator	Indicates the number of pages on the Home screen or in an application. The current page is highlighted. Swipe the screen sideways to scroll between pages.

Specifications

Learn about the specifications.

Basic specifications

Learn about the basic specifications of the printer.

Supported operating systems

Learn about supported operating systems.

The following information applies to the Printer-Specific Windows PCL 6 and HP print drivers for macOS and to the software installer.

Windows: The HP Software Installer can be downloaded from the printer support website for this printer and installs the correct "HP PCL 6" print driver, depending on the Windows operating system, along with optional software when using the software installer. Download the "HP PCL 6" print driver from the printer-support website for this printer: www.hp.com/support.

macOS: Mac computers are supported with this printer. Download HP Easy Start either from 123.hp.com or from the Printer Support page, and then use HP Easy Start to install the HP print driver. HP Easy Start is not included in the HP Software Installer.

1. Go to 123.hp.com/LaserJet.
2. Follow the steps provided to download the printer software.

Linux: For information and print drivers for Linux, go to www.hp.com/go/linuxprinting.


UNIX: For information and print drivers for UNIX®, go to www.hp.com/go/unixmodelscripts.

Table 1-5 Supported operating systems and print drivers

Operating system	Print driver installed (from the software on the web)
Windows 7, 32-bit and 64-bit	The "HP PCL 6" printer-specific print driver is installed for this operating system as part of the software installation.
Windows 10, 32-bit, 64-bit, and ARM64	The "HP PCL-6" printer-specific print driver is installed for this operating system as part of the software installation.
Windows 11, 64-bit, and ARM64	The "HP PCL-6" printer-specific print driver is installed for this operating system as part of the software installation.
Windows Server 2008 R2, 64-bit	The "HP PCL 6" printer-specific print driver is available for download from the printer-support website. Download the driver, and then use the Microsoft Add Printer tool to install it.
Windows Server 2012, 64-bit	The "HP PCL 6" printer-specific print driver is available for download from the printer-support website. Download the driver, and then use the Microsoft Add Printer tool to install it.
Windows Server 2012 R2, 64-bit	The "HP PCL 6" printer-specific print driver is available for download from the printer-support website. Download the driver, and then use the Microsoft Add Printer tool to install it.
Windows Server 2016, 64-bit	The "HP PCL 6" printer-specific print driver is available for download from the printer-support website. Download the driver, and then use the Microsoft Add Printer tool to install it.
Windows Server 2019, 64-bit	The "HP PCL 6" printer-specific print driver is available for download from the printer-support website. Download the driver, and then use the Microsoft Add Printer tool to install it.
Windows Server 2022, 64-bit	The "HP PCL 6" printer-specific print driver is available for download from the printer-support website. Download the driver, and then use the Microsoft Add Printer tool to install it.
macOS 12 (Monterey), macOS 11 (Big Sur), macOS 10.15 (Catalina)	To install the print driver, download HP Easy Start from 123.hp.com . Follow the steps provided to install the printer software and print driver.

Table 1-5 Supported operating systems and print drivers (continued)

Operating system	Print driver installed (from the software on the web)
Debian 10,11, OpenSuse 15.1,15.2,15.3, Fedora 31,32,33,34,35, RHEL 6,7,8, Ubuntu 20.04,20.10,21.04,21.10, linuxmint 20.1,20.2, ManjaroLinux 20.2,21.0.7, Zorin 15,16 Mxlinux 21, Elementary 6P	Print drivers are available at specific operating system web sites.

 **NOTE:** Supported operating systems can change. For a current list of supported operating systems, go to support.hp.com for HP's all-inclusive help for the printer.


 **NOTE:** For details on client and server operating systems and for HP Smart UPD driver support for this printer, go to www.hp.com/go/smartupd. Under **Additional information**, click the links.

Table 1-6 Minimum system requirements

Windows	macOS
<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Internet connection• Dedicated USB 1.1 or 2.0 connection or a network connection• 2 GB of available hard-disk space	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Internet connection• 1 GB of available hard-disk space

Mobile printing solutions

Learn what HP offers for mobile printing solutions.

HP offers multiple mobile solutions to enable easy printing to an HP printer from a laptop, tablet, smartphone, or other mobile device. To see the full list and to determine the best choice, go to [HP Customer Support - Knowledge Base](#).

- Apple AirPrint
- Mopria Certified
- WiFi Direct Printing
- NFC Touch to Print
- ePrintIT PrinterOn

Printer dimensions

Learn about the printer dimensions.

Table 1-7 Printer dimensions

Item	Specification
Size, dn model (Base engine size)	566 x 646 x 668 mm (22.3 x 25.4 x 26.3 in)
Size, dn model (Integrated engine size)	585 x 646 x 858* mm (23 x 25.4 x 33.8* in) (*Maximum, could change depending on configuration)
Size, z model (Base engine size)	566 x 646 x 668 mm (22.3 x 25.4 x 26.3 in)

Table 1-7 Printer dimensions (continued)

Item	Specification
Size, z model (Integrated engine size)	585 x 646 x 858* mm (23 x 25.4 x 33.8* in) (*Maximum, could change depending on configuration)
Weight, dn model (standard)	63.8 kg (140.7 lbs)
Weight, z model (standard)	64.5 kg (142.2 lbs)

Operating-environment range

In order to operate properly, the printer must be in an environment that meets certain specifications.

Table 1-8 Operating-environment specifications

Environment	Recommended	Storage
Temperature	17° to 25°C (62.6° to 77°F)	10 to 32.5°C (50 to 90.5°F)
Relative humidity	30% to 70% relative humidity (RH)	10% to 80% relative humidity (RH)

General specifications

Learn about general specifications for printer models.

Table 1-9 General specifications

Item	Specification
ASIC	GigaTron Quad 1.6 GHz ARM A72 + Dual 1.4 GHz ARM A53
Memory	6 GB
Storage	500 GB HDD
Connectivity (I/O standard)	Gigabit LAN USB 3.2 Gen1 (USB 3.0) Device USB 3.2 Gen1 (USB 3.0)/2.0 Host ports TPM
Power Requirement	Input voltage: 110 to 127Vac (+/- 10%), 220 to 240Vac (+/- 10%), 50/60 Hz (+/- 3%)
Sound Power Level	Blue Angel UZ-205 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 30ppm: ≤7.1 Bel(A) 35ppm: ≤7.2 Bel(A) 40ppm: ≤7.3 Bel(A) ISO, Idle Sound Pressure Level ≤30dB(A)

Print specifications

Learn about the print specifications.

Table 1-10 Print specifications

Item	Specification
Print speed (normal, A4/letter)	E73130: 30 ppm E73135: 35 ppm E73140: 40 ppm
Resolution	600 dpi
Print Languages	HP PCL 6, HP Postscript level 3 emulation, PDF (v 1.7), AirPrint™ compatible
Supported Network Protocols	IPv4/IPv6: Apple Bonjour Compatible (Mac OS 10.2.4 or higher), SNMPv1/v2c/v3, HTTP, HTTPS, FTP, TFTP, Port 9100, LPD, WS Discovery, IPP, Secure-IPP, IPsec/Firewall IPv6: DHCPv6, MLDv1, ICMPv6 IPv4: Auto-IP, SLP, Telnet, IGMPv2, BOOTP/DHCP, WINS, IP Direct Mode, WS Print Other: NetWare NDS, Bindery, ePrint
USB printing	Yes

Scan specifications

Learn about the scan specifications.

Table 1-11 Scan specifications

Item	Specification
Scan Speed (normal, A4)	E786/E731 dn models ADF: Simplex 90 ipm/Duplex 180 ipm E786/E731 z models ADF: Simplex 120 ipm/Duplex 240 ipm
Input Capacity	E786/E731 dn models ADF: 75 gsm/200 sheets E786/E731 z models ADF: 75 gsm/200 sheets
Grayscale Levels	256
Scan File Format	Digital Send: PDF, Hi-Compression PDF, JPEG, TIFF, MTIFF, XPS, PDF/A Scan to easy access USB: Hi-Compression PDF, PDF, JPEG, TIFF, MTIFF, XPS, PDF/A Print from easy access USB: PDF, PS, JPEG, TIFF, PNG, Print Ready files (.prn, .pd, .cht)
Scan Size Maximum	ADF: 297 x 437 mm (11.7 x 17.2 in) Flatbed: 297 x 437 mm (11.7 x 17.2 in)
Scan Size Minimum	ADF: 148 x 210 mm (5.5 x 8.5 in)
Standard Media Size (ADF)	Legal, Oficio, Executive, Statement, Ledger, A3, A4, A4R, A5, B4, B5, 16K <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Width: 148 - 297 mm (5.8 - 11.7 in) • Length: 148 - 432 mm (5.8 - 17 in)

Table 1-11 Scan specifications (continued)

Item	Specification
Media Weights (ADF)	Feeding: 45 to 200 g/m ² (12 to 53 lb) IQ: 45 to 120 g/m ² (12 to 32 lb)

Copy specifications

Learn about the copy specifications.

Table 1-12 Copy specifications

Item	Specification
Copy Speed (Normal, A4, default rate from flatbed or ADF)	E73130: 30 cpm
	E73135: 35 cpm
	E73140: 40 cpm
Copy Speed (Normal, letter, default rate from flatbed or ADF)	E73130: 30 cpm
	E73135: 35 cpm
	E73140: 40 cpm
Copy Speed (Normal, A3, default rate from flatbed or ADF)	E73130: 16 cpm
	E73135: 19 cpm
	E73140: 22 cpm
Copy Speed (Duplex, A3)	E73130: 11 ipm
	E73135: 12 ipm
	E73140: 14 ipm
Copy Resolution	Black Text: Up to 600 x 600 dpi
	Color Text and Graphics: Up to 600 x 600 dpi
Copier Reduce/enlarge	Flatbed: 25 to 400%
	ADF: 25 to 400%

Paper handling specifications

Learn about the paper handling specifications.

Table 1-13 Paper handling specifications

Item	Specification
Input Capacity	Tray 1: 100 sheets (80 gsm)
	Tray 2: 520 sheets (80 gsm)
	Tray 3: 520 sheets (80 gsm)

Table 1-13 Paper handling specifications (continued)

Item	Specification
Custom Media Sizes (metric)	<p>Tray 1: 98 x 148 mm (3.9 x 5.8 in) to 297 x 432 mm (11.7 x 17 in)</p> <p>Tray 2: 148 x 210 mm (5.8 x 8.3 in) to 297 x 364 mm (11.7 x 14.3 in)</p> <p>Tray 3: 148 x 210 mm (5.8 x 8.3 in) to 297 x 432 mm (11.7 x 17 in)</p>
Standard Media Sizes	<p>Tray 1:</p> <p>A3, A4, A4R, A5, A5R, A6, RA4, SRA4, B4 (JIS), B5 (JIS), B6 (JIS), 10x15cm, Oficio, 8K, 16k, Postcard (JIS), Dpostcard (JIS), Envelope B5, Envelope C5, Envelope C6, Envelope DL</p> <p>Tray 2:</p> <p>A5, A4, B4, B5 (JIS), B5 (ISO), Statement, Letter, Legal, Folio, Oficio, 16K</p> <p>Custom (148 x 210 mm (5.8 x 8.3 in) to 297 x 364 mm (11.7 x 14.3 in))</p> <p>Tray 3:</p> <p>A5, A4, A3, B4, B5 (JIS), B5 (ISO), Statement, Letter, Ledger, Legal, Oficio, Folio, 8K, 16K</p> <p>Custom (148 x 210 mm (5.8 x 8.3 in) to 297 x 432 mm (11.7 x 17 in))</p>
Media types supported	<p>Tray 1:</p> <p>Thin, Plain, Thin, Thick, Heavy weight, Extra Heavy weight, Envelope, Label, Transparency</p> <p>Tray 2, 3:</p> <p>Thin, Plain, Thin, Thick, Heavy weight, Extra heavy weight</p>
Media Weights	<p>Tray 1:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Thin: 60~70 g/m² • Plain: 71~90 g/m² • Thick: 91~105 g/m² • Heavy weight: 106~130 g/m² • Extra Heavy weight 1: 131~175 g/m² • Envelope: 75~90 g/m² • Label : 120~150 g/m² • Transparency : 138~146 g/m² <p>Tray 2, 3:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Thin: 60~70 g/m² • Plain: 71~90 g/m² • Thick: 91~105 g/m² • Heavy weight: 106~175 g/m² • Extra Heavy weight: 176~220 g/m²
Standard Media Sizes (duplex)	148 x 210 mm (5.8 x 8.3 in) to 297 x 432 mm (11.7 x 17 in)
Media Weights (duplex)	60 to 176 g/m ²

Table 1-13 Paper handling specifications (continued)

Item	Specification
Media types supported (duplex)	Plain, Thin, Bond, Hole Punched, Pre-Printed, Recycled, Thin CardStock, Letterhead, Thick, Cotton, Colored, Archive, Thin Glossy, Heavy weight

Table 1-14 Paper trays and accessories

Trays and accessories	Availability
Tray 1 (100-sheet capacity)	✓
Tray 2 (520-sheet capacity)	✓
Tray 3 (520-sheet capacity)	✓
2 x 520-sheet paper feeder	Optional
2,000-sheet high-capacity input tray	Optional
3,000-sheet side-mount high-capacity input tray	Optional
Printer stand	Optional
Stapler/stacker finishing accessory	Optional
Booklet maker finishing accessory	Optional
Inner finisher accessory	Optional
2/3 hole punch accessory	Optional
2/4 hole punch accessory	Optional
Swedish hole punch accessory	Optional
HP Job separator	Optional
HP Second exit	Optional


Supplies


Learn about the supplies.

Table 1-15 Supplies

Item	Product number	Average yield
Black toner cartridge ¹ Standard	W9064MC	Approx. 24,000 pages
Black toner cartridge ¹ High capacity	W9065MC	Approx. 48,000 pages
Toner collection unit (TCU)	6SB84A	200,000 pages

¹Print cartridge life is approximate, based on average A4 /Letter-size page count with ISO coverage. Declared cartridge yield value in accordance with ISO/IEC 19752. Actual yields vary considerably based on images printed and other factors. For more information, visit www.hp.com/go/learnaboutsupplies.

 **NOTE:** Depending on the print pattern and job mode used, the lifespan of the consumable can vary.

 **IMPORTANT:** Toner cartridges or other supplies must be purchased in the same country/region as the printer being used. Otherwise, new toner cartridges or other supplies will be incompatible with the printer. This is due to differing configurations of toner cartridges and other supplies according to the conditions of a specific country/region.

Maintenance parts (Long Life Consumables (LLC))


Learn about the printer maintenance parts.

HP recommends replacing the following maintenance parts at specific intervals to make sure the printer produces quality copies and to extend the service life of the printer.

Some of the printer parts have a shorter lifespan than the life of the printer.

Table 1-16 Maintenance parts

Item	Product number	Life
Developer unit	5PN67A	600,000 pages
Imaging drum	W9066MC	Approx. 300,000 pages
Fuser unit (100V)	5PN51A	300,000 pages
NOTE: Only for Japan		
Fuser unit (110V)	5PN68A	300,000 pages
Fuser unit (220V)	5PN69A	300,000 pages
Transfer roller	5PN70A	300,000 pages
Pickup/ Forward/ Reverse (separation) roller (for Tray 2-X)	5PN66A	300,000 pages
Tray 1 (MP) Pickup/ Forward/ Reverse (separation) Roller	5RC02A	200,000 pages
ADF roller kit	J8J95A	150,000 pages

 **NOTE:** Depending on print patterns and the job mode used, maintenance part lifespans vary. See *Replacing the maintenance part* for further instructions.

Network and software specifications

Learn about the network and software specifications.

Network interface

Learn about the network interface.

Network OS

Windows

- Windows 7
- Windows 10
- Windows 11
- Windows Server 2008 R2
- Windows Server 2012
- Windows Server 2012 R2
- Windows Server 2016
- Windows Server 2019

Mac

- macOS 12(Monterey)
- macOS 11(Big Sur)
- macOS 10.14(Mojave)
- macOS 10.15(Catalina)

Linux

- CentOS 8, 64-bit
- Ubuntu 20.04.2.0 LTS
- Fedora 33
- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8

Others

- Unix (HP-UX, Solaris, SunOS, SCO)

Table 1-17 Network interfaces

Type	Protocol	Details
Network Protocol	TCP/IP	TCP/IPv4, HTTP, SNMPv1/v2c/v3, LDAP, SMTP, SSL/TLS, IPSec, DNS, WINS, SLP, Bonjour, SSDP, DDNS, DHCP/BOOTP, IPv6
Network Protocol	NetBIOS over TCP/IP	Supported
Network Protocol	Others	HTTPS, IPSec, 802.1x
IP Addressing	Static IP	Supported
IP Addressing	Auto IP	Supported
IP Addressing	BOOTP	Supported
IP Addressing	DHCP	Supported
SNMP/MIB Access	MIB-2 (RFC 1213)	Supported
SNMP/MIB Access	Host Resource MIB (RFC 2790)	Supported

Table 1-17 Network interfaces (continued)

Type	Protocol	Details
SNMP/MIB Access	Printer MIB (RFC 3805)	Supported
SNMP/MIB Access	Finisher MIB (RFC 3806)	Supported
SNMP/MIB Access	HP Compatibility	Supported partially
SNMP/MIB Access	SNMP Trap	Supported
Printing Protocols	Windows Printing (SMB)	Not supported
Printing Protocols	LPR/LPD	Supported
Printing Protocols	IPP	Supported
Printing Protocols	Port 9100	Supported
Device Discovery	DNS	Supported
Device Discovery	Dynamic DNS	Supported
Device Discovery	Multicast DNS (Bonjour)	Supported
Device Discovery	WSD (including Print and Scan)	Supported (Print and Scan)
Device Discovery	SLP	Supported
Device Discovery	uPNP (SSDP)	Supported

Options

Learn about printer options and accessories.

Optional input and output devices configuration

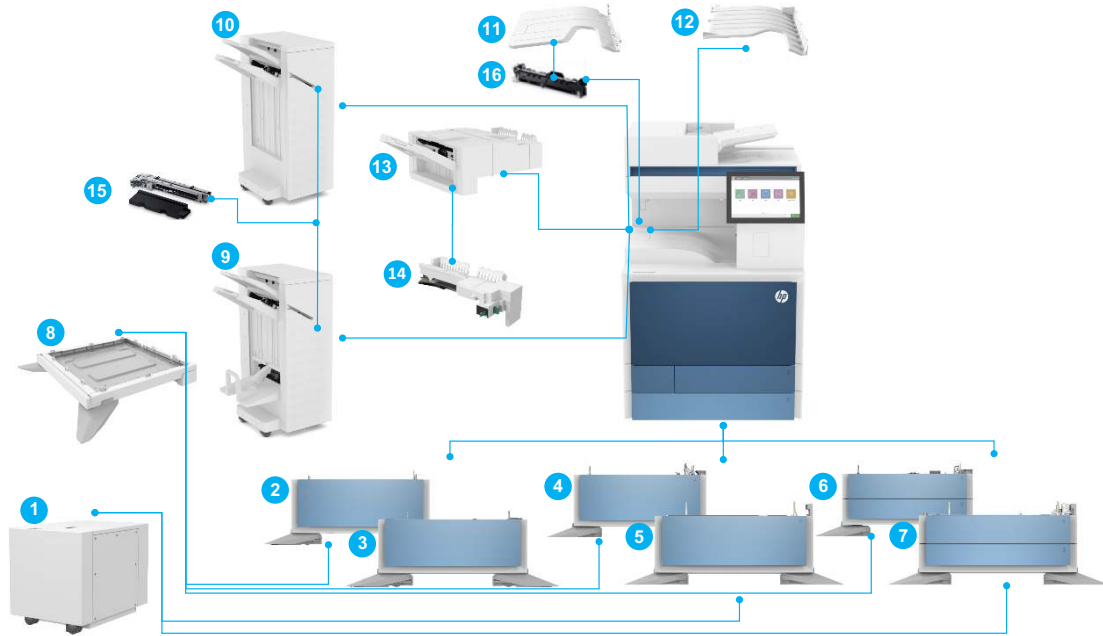
Learn about the optional input and output devices configuration.

The E877, E826, E786, E731, E785 and E730 series have optional input devices and output devices.



NOTE: The figure below is representational only. Individual devices might appear different from what is shown in the following figure.

Figure 1-5 Optional input and output devices configuration



NOTE: There may be a difference between the appearance of your printer and the photo.

Table 1-18 Optional input and output devices configuration

#	Description	Part number	E877 series	E826 series	E786 series	E731 series	E785 series	E730 series
1	HP High Capacity Input Tray Side (sHCI)	6GW56A	✓	✓	Not available	Not available	Not available	Not available
2	HP LaserJet Workgroup Cabinet	6GW54A	Not available	Not available	✓	✓	✓	✓
3	HP LaserJet Department Cabinet	6GW53A	✓	✓	Not available	Not available	Not available	Not available
4	HP LaserJet Workgroup 2000 Sheet High Capacity Input Tray (HCI)	6GW48A	Not available	Not available	✓	✓	Not available	Not available
5	HP LaserJet 2000 Sheet High Capacity Tray Department (HCI)	6GW57A	✓	✓	Not available	Not available	Not available	Not available
6	HP LaserJet Workgroup Dual Cassette Feeder (DCF)	6GW46A	Not available	Not available	✓	✓	✓	✓
7	HP LaserJet Dual Cassette Department Feeder (DCF)	6GW47A	✓	✓	Not available	Not available	Not available	Not available
8	HP LaserJet Spacer NOTE: This option is required if installing the Stapler/Stacker or Booklet finisher.	6GW58A	Not available	Not available	Not available	✓	Not available	Not available

Table 1-18 Optional input and output devices configuration (continued)

#	Description	Part number	E877 series	E826 series	E786 series	E731 series	E785 series	E730 series
9	<p>HP LaserJet Booklet Finisher</p> <p>NOTE: The following options are available:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 15 HP LaserJet Hole Punch 2/3 Accessory - Y1G10A • 15 HP LaserJet Hole Punch 2/4 Accessory - Y1G11A • 15 HP LaserJet Hole Punch Swedish Accessory - Y1G12A • Y1G14A - HP LaserJet Stapler/Stacker Finisher Refill Staple Cartridge (not shown) • Y1G13A - HP LaserJet Inner Finisher and Booklet Maker Finisher Refill Staple Cartridge (not shown) 	6GW51A	✓	✓	✓	✓	Not available	Not available
10	<p>HP LaserJet Stapler/Stacker Finisher</p> <p>NOTE: The following options are available:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 15 HP LaserJet Hole Punch 2/3 Accessory - Y1G10A • 15 HP LaserJet Hole Punch 2/4 Accessory - Y1G11A • 15 HP LaserJet Hole Punch Swedish Accessory - Y1G12A • Y1G14A - HP LaserJet Stapler/Stacker Finisher Refill Staple Cartridge (not shown) 	6GW55A	✓	✓	✓	✓	Not available	Not available
11	HP LaserJet Workgroup Job Separator	6GW52A	Not available	Not available	✓	✓	✓	✓
12	HP LaserJet Department Job Separator	6GW50A	✓	✓	Not available	Not available	Not available	Not available

Table 1-18 Optional input and output devices configuration (continued)

#	Description	Part number	E877 series	E826 series	E786 series	E731 series	E785 series	E730 series
13/14	<p>HP LaserJet Inner Finisher</p> <p>NOTE: The following options are available:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 14 HP LaserJet Inner Finisher Hole 2/3 Punch - 155P7A 14 HP LaserJet Inner Finisher Hole 2/4 Punch - 155P8A 14 HP LaserJet Inner Finisher Swedish Punch - 155P9A Y1G13A - HP LaserJet Inner Finisher and Booklet Maker Finisher Refill Staple Cartridge (not shown) <p>NOTE: Inner finisher supports up to 60 ppm.</p>	6GW49A	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
15	HP LaserJet Hole Punch 2/3 Accessory	Y1G10A	✓	✓	✓	✓	Not available	Not available
15	HP LaserJet Hole Punch 2/4 Accessory	Y1G11A	✓	✓	✓	✓	Not available	Not available
15	HP LaserJet Hole Punch Swedish Accessory	Y1G12A	✓	✓	✓	✓	Not available	Not available
16	<p>HP LaserJet Second Exit</p> <p>NOTE: This option is required if installing the Stapler/stacker, Booklet Finisher, Inner Finisher, or job separator.</p>	Y1G23A	Not Available	Not Available	✓	✓	✓	✓

Option specifications

Learn about option specifications.

Table 1-19 HP LaserJet Dual Cassette Department Feeder option specifications

Item	Specification
Part number	6GW46A
Capacity	520 x 2 sheets
Media sizes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Tray 4: 139.7 mm x 210 mm – 297 mm x 431.8 mm (5.5 in x 8.27 in – 11.69 in x 17 in) Tray 5: 139.7 mm x 210 mm – 297 mm x 431.8 mm (5.5 in x 8.27 in – 11.69 in x 17 in)
Media types	Thin/Plain/Thick/Heavy Weight/Extra Heavy Weight/Letterhead/Pre-Printed/Hole Punched/Colored/Bond/Recycled

Table 1-19 HP LaserJet Dual Cassette Department Feeder option specifications (continued)

Item	Specification
Media weight	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Thin paper: 60-70 grams per square meter (16-18.5 lb) (duplex) Plain paper: 71-90 grams per square meter (18.5-24 lb) (duplex) Thick paper: 91-105 grams per square meter (25-28 lb) (duplex) Heavyweight paper: 106-130 grams per square meter (28.2-34.5 lb) (duplex) Extra Heavyweight paper: 131-175 grams per square meter (34.8-46.5 lb) (duplex) Letterhead: 71-90 grams per square meter (18.5-24 lb) (duplex) Preprinted: 71-90 grams per square meter (18.5-24 lb) (duplex) Hole-punched paper: 71-90 grams per square meter (18.5-24 lb) (duplex) Colored: 71-90 grams per square meter (18.5-24 lb) (duplex) Bond paper: 105-120 grams per square meter (28-32 lb) (duplex) Recycled: 60-90 grams per square meter (16-24 lb) (duplex)
Sensing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> H/W install detect: Yes Paper empty and low level detect: Yes Paper type detect: No Paper size detect: Yes
Dimensions	566 mm x 630 mm x 308.2 mm (22.3 in x 24.8 in x 12.1 in)
Weight	Net 20.35 kg (55.9 lb), packing 20.35 kg (44.9 lb)

Table 1-20 HP LaserJet 2000 Sheet High Capacity Tray Department option specifications

Item	Specification
Part number	6GW48A
Capacity	2000 sheets at 80 grams per square meter (20 lb)
Media sizes	A4, letter
Media types	Plain paper, thin paper, thick paper, punched paper
Media weight	60 to 220 grams per square meter
Sensing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> H/W install detect: Yes Paper empty and low level detect: Yes Paper type detect: No Paper size detect: Yes

Table 1-21 HP High Capacity Input Tray Side (sHCI) option specifications

Item	Specification
Part number	6GW56A

Table 1-21 HP High Capacity Input Tray Side (sHCI) option specifications (continued)

Item	Specification
Capacity	3000 sheets at 80 grams per square meter (20 lb)
Media sizes	A4, letter
Media types	Plain paper, thin paper, thick paper, punched paper
Media weight	60 to 300 grams per square meter
Sensing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • H/W install detect: Yes • Paper empty and low level detect: Yes • Paper type detect: No • Paper size detect: Yes

Table 1-22 HP LaserJet Department Cabinet option specifications

Item	Specification
Part number	6GW54A
Dimensions	566 mm x 630 mm x 266 mm (22.28 in x 24.80 in x 10.47 in)
Weight (net)	14 kg 30.86 lbs

Table 1-23 HP LaserJet Job Separator Department option specifications

Item	Specification
Part number	6GW50A
Capacity	125 sheets at 80 grams per square meter

Table 1-24 HP LaserJet Inner Finisher option specifications

Item	Specification
Part number	6GW49A
Capacity	500 sheets stacking, internal
Staple cartridge capacity	5000 staples/cartridge
Stacking	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Top tray: 50 sheets (A4/LT at 80 grams per square meter) • Finishing tray: 500 sheets (A4/LT at 80 grams per square meter)
Stapling	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Maximum number of sheets: 50 sheets stapling with 90 grams per square meter sheet • Stapling positions: Front flat and corner (45), dual, rear flat and corner (45)
Saddle stapling	N/A
Offline stapling	N/A
Offset at non-staple job	Yes

Table 1-24 HP LaserJet Inner Finisher option specifications (continued)

Item	Specification
Offset at staple job	N/A
Output stacking	Face down

Table 1-25 HP LaserJet Stapler/Stacker Finisher option specifications

Item	Specification
Part number	6GW55A
Capacity	65 sheets stapling, 3,250 sheets stacking
Staple cartridge capacity	5000 staples/cartridge
Stacking	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Top tray: 250 sheets (A4/LT at 80 grams per square meter) • Finishing tray: 3000 sheets (A4/LT at 80 grams per square meter)
Stapling	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Maximum number of sheets: 65 sheets stapling with 90 grams per square meter sheet • Stapling positions: 2 corners (single, 45 degree), center (double)
Offline stapling	Yes
Offset at non-staple job	Yes
Offset at staple job	Yes
Output stacking	Face down

Table 1-26 HP LaserJet Booklet Finisher option specifications

Item	Specification
Part number	6GW51A
Capacity	65 sheets stapling, 2000 sheets stacking
Staple cartridge capacity	5000 staples/cartridge
Stacking	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Top tray: 250 sheets (A4/LT at 80 grams per square meter) • Finishing tray: 2000 sheets (A4/LT at 80 grams per square meter)
Stapling	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Maximum number of sheets: 65 sheets stapling with 90 grams per square meter sheet • Stapling positions: 2 corners (single), center (double)
Saddle stapling	Maximum number of sheets: 25 sheets stapling with 80 grams per square meter sheet
Offline stapling	Yes
Offset at non-staple job	Yes
Offset at staple job	Yes
Output stacking	Face down

Table 1-27 HP LaserJet Hole Punch Accessory option specifications

Item	Specification
Part number	HP LaserJet Hole Punch 2/3 Accessory: Y1G10A HP LaserJet Hole Punch 2/4 Accessory: Y1G11A HP LaserJet Hole Punch Swedish Accessory: Y1G12A
Available unit	Auto change 2/3 hole or auto change 2/4 hole, Swedish 4
Media weight	52-300 grams per square meter

Table 1-28 HP LaserJet Inner Finisher Hole Punch option specifications

Item	Specification
Part number	HP LaserJet Inner Finisher Hole 2/3 Punch: 155P7A HP LaserJet Inner Finisher Hole 2/4 Punch: 155P8A HP LaserJet Inner Finisher Swedish Punch: 155P9A
Available unit	Auto change 2/3 hole or auto change 2/4 hole, Swedish 4
Media weight	52-256 grams per square meter

Table 1-29 Other options

Part	Part number
HP LaserJet Paper Tray Heaters Accy	Y1G22A
HP LaserJet Second Exit Accy	Y1G23A
HP Accessibility Assistant	478C2A
HP Removable Hard Drive Enclosure	2NR12A
HP Accessibility Kit	478C2A
HP JetDirect 3100w BLE/NFC/Wireless Accy	3JN69A
HP Legic Reader	3JN69A
HP Internal USB Ports	4XN67A
HP MFP Analog Dual Fax 810 Accessory	5QK14A
HP LaserJet Workflow Accelerator Card(z model only)	6HN30A
HP Secure Ultimate Performance TAA Hrd Disk Drive	6HN31A
HP MFP Analog Dual Fax 811 Accessory (BBU only)	7ZA07A
HP MFP Analog Single Fax 800 Accessory	7ZA08A
HP MFP Analog Single Fax 801 Accessory (BBU only)	7ZA09A
HP Jetdirect LAN Accessory	8FP31A
HP Secure Ultimate Performance Hard Disk Drive	9EQ11A
HP Foreign Interface Harness	B5L31A

Table 1-29 Other options (continued)

Part	Part number
HP SmartCard NIPRNet Solution for US Government	CC543B
HP SmartCard SIPRNet Solution for US Government	F8B30A
HP USB Universal Card Reader	X3D03A
HP HIP2 Keystroke Reader	Y7C05A
HP SIM for HID iClass for HIP2 Reader	Y7C07A

Color skin configuration

Learn about the color skin configuration.

The E877, E826, E786, E731, E785 and E730 series provides various color skins to satisfy customer's needs.



NOTE: The figure below is representational only. Individual devices might appear different from what is shown in the following figure.

Figure 1-6 Color skin configuration



Table 1-30 Color skin configuration

No	Color type	Description	E877 series	E826 series	E786 series	E731 series	E785 series	E730 series
1	Mineral gray	Printer cover set (Scanner front cover, Front door, Cover for tray 2, 3)	190A2A	190A3A	190A0A	190A1A	190A0A	190A1A
		Dual Cassette Feeder (DCF) cover panel	190A4A	190A4A	190A6A	190A6A	190A6A	190A6A
		High Capacity Input (HCI) tray cover panel	190A5A	190A5A	190A7A	190A7A	190A7A	190A7A
		Cabinet cover panel	190A8A	190A8A	190A9A	190A9A	190A9A	190A9A
2	Persimmon	Printer cover set (Scanner front cover, Front door, Cover for tray 2, 3)	190B2A	190B3A	190B0A	190B1A	190B0A	190B1A

Table 1-30 Color skin configuration (continued)

No	Color type	Description	E877 series	E826 series	E786 series	E731 series	E785 series	E730 series
		Dual Casset Feeder (DCF) cover panel	190B4A	190B4A	190B6A	190B6A	190B6A	190B6A
		High Capacity Input (HCI) tray cover panel	190B5A	190B5A	190B7A	190B7A	190B7A	190B7A
		Cabinet cover panel	190B8A	190B8A	190B9A	190B9A	190B9A	190B9A
3	Green	Printer cover set (Scanner front cover, Front door, Cover for tray 2, 3)	190C2A	190C3A	190C0A	190C1A	190C0A	190C1A
		Dual Casset Feeder (DCF) cover panel	190C4A	190C4A	190C6A	190C6A	190C6A	190C6A
		High Capacity Input (HCI) tray cover panel	190C5A	190C5A	190C7A	190C7A	190C7A	190C7A
		Cabinet cover panel	190C8A	190C8A	190C9A	190C9A	190C9A	190C9A
4	Mellow yellow	Printer cover set (Scanner front cover, Front door, Cover for tray 2, 3)	190D2A	190D3A	190D0A	190D1A	190D0A	190D1A
		Dual Casset Feeder (DCF) cover panel	190D4A	190D4A	190D6A	190D6A	190D6A	190D6A
		High Capacity Input (HCI) tray cover panel	190D5A	190D5A	190D7A	190D7A	190D7A	190D7A
		Cabinet cover panel	190D8A	190D8A	190D9A	190D9A	190D9A	190D9A
5	Purple reign	Printer cover set (Scanner front cover, Front door, Cover for tray 2, 3)	190F2A	190F3A	190F0A	190F1A	190F0A	190F1A
		Dual Casset Feeder (DCF) cover panel	190F4A	190F4A	190F6A	190F6A	190F6A	190F6A
		High Capacity Input (HCI) tray cover panel	190F5A	190F5A	190F7A	190F7A	190F7A	190F7A
		Cabinet cover panel	190F8A	190F8A	190F9A	190F9A	190F9A	190F9A

2 Product installation and maintenance

You will learn more about product installation and maintenance.

Product installation

For more information about hardware, engine, and accessory installation for the printer, review the following document.

[HP LaserJet Managed MFP - Installation Guides](#)

Maintenance

Learn about preventive maintenance and printer cleaning procedures.

PM table (Preventive Maintenance)

HP recommends cleaning and checking the following maintenance items at the specified intervals.

Some easy items are strongly recommended to be executed during every visit, regardless of the page count, to make sure the printer produces quality copies and to extend the service life of the printer. Also, HP recommends inspecting consumable parts and replacing if needed to reduce the visit count. After replacing, a counter reset should be done to make sure the next replacement window is clear.



NOTE:

- Depending on the printing patterns and the job mode used, consumable part lifespans vary.
- Toner cartridges and the Toner Collection Unit are excluded from this table because they are classified as supplies, not long life consumables (LLCs).

In the table below, the following abbreviations are used:

- **C:** Clean
- **I:** Inspect
- **R:** Replace

The counts below indicate the recommended engine counter value for each item (Engine life 1,200K).

Table 2-1 Preventative Maintenance

Type	Item	300K	600K	900K	1200K	Notes
Clean/Inspect	Paper dust holder	C	C	C	C	Recommended at every visit
Clean/Inspect	CTD Sensor	C	C	C	C	Recommended at every visit
Clean/Inspect	Scanner glass	C	C	C	C	Recommended at every visit

Table 2-1 Preventative Maintenance (continued)

Type	Item	300K	600K	900K	1200K	Notes
Clean/Inspect	ADF CIS (Contact Image Sensor)	C	C	C	C	Recommended at every visit
Clean/Inspect	Paper guide adjustment check in Trays	I	I	I	I	Recommended at every visit
Consumable check	K OPC	I/R	I/R	I/R	I/R	
Consumable check	Transfer roller	I/R	I/R	I/R	I/R	
Consumable check	Fuser	I/R	I/R	I/R	I/R	
Consumable check	K Deve units		I/R		I/R	
Consumable check	Roller kit for Tray 1	I/R	I/R	I/R	I/R	Recommended at every visit
Consumable check	Roller kit for Tray 2-x	I/R	I/R	I/R	I/R	Recommended at every visit
Consumable check	ADF Roller kit	I/R	I/R	I/R	I/R	Recommended at every visit

Cleaning

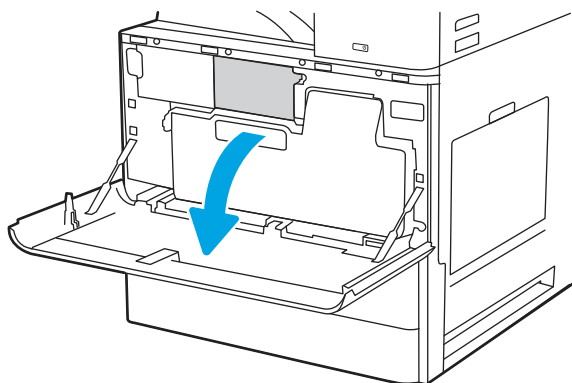
Use the procedures below to carry out regular cleaning procedures.

Cleaning the paper dust stick

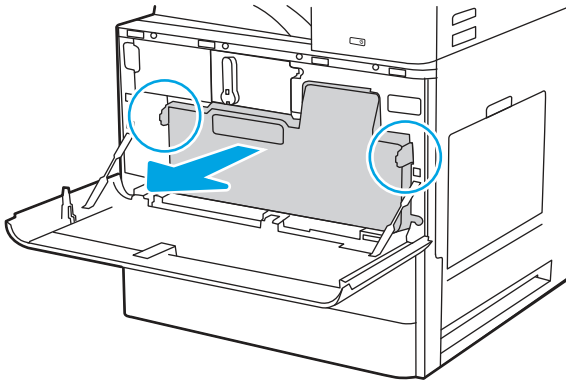
Learn about cleaning the paper dust stick.


It is recommended that the paper dust stick be cleaned at every visit. There is no message on the control panel when it is time for the paper dust stick to be cleaned, so technicians need to carry out this task proactively. Use the following procedure to complete this task.

1. Open the front door.

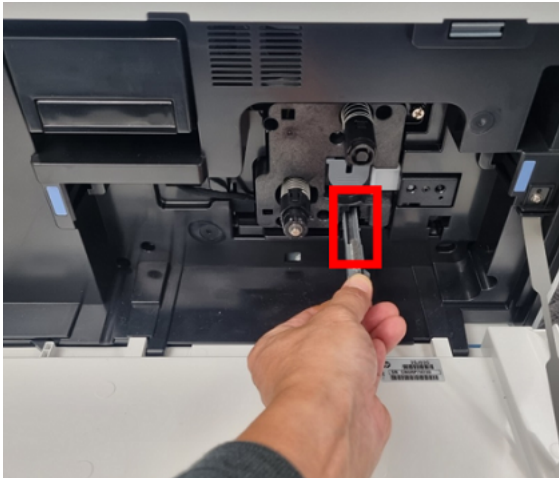


2. Pull on both sides of the toner collection unit (TCU) to release the tabs, and then pull it straight out of the printer.



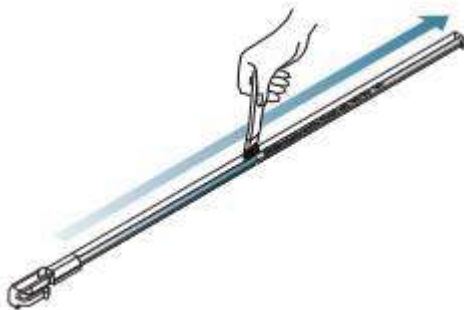
 **NOTE:** Maintain the position of the TCU as you pull it out from the printer. This will ensure that you do not spill any waste toner in the printer. Once the TCU is fully removed, do not place it on its side. Place the unit in an upright position.

3. Pull out the paper dust stick.



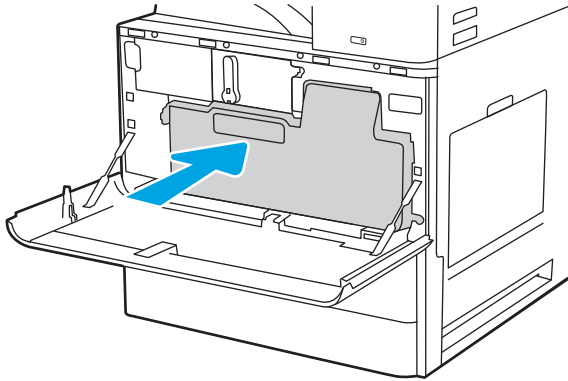
4. Remove the paper dust.

Figure 2-1 Remove the paper dust

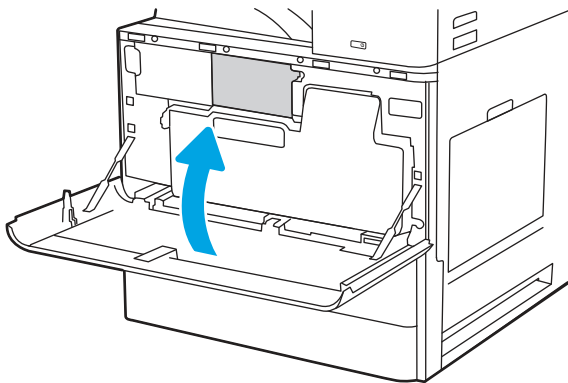


5. Insert the paper dust stick back into the slot.

6. Reinstall the TCU by pushing in on both sides until the tabs snap into place.



7. Close the front door.

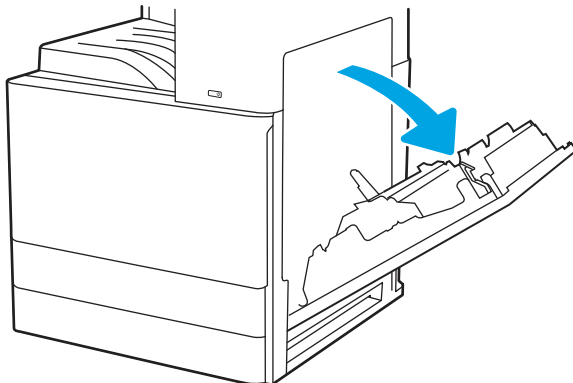


Cleaning the CTD sensor

Use the following procedure to clean the CTD sensor.

The CTD sensor is designed to be cleaned automatically by the paper pass. However, we strongly recommend manual cleaning is implemented at every visit to maintain quality copies.

1. Open the right door.



2. While lifting the lever up, clean the sensor using a lint-free cloth.

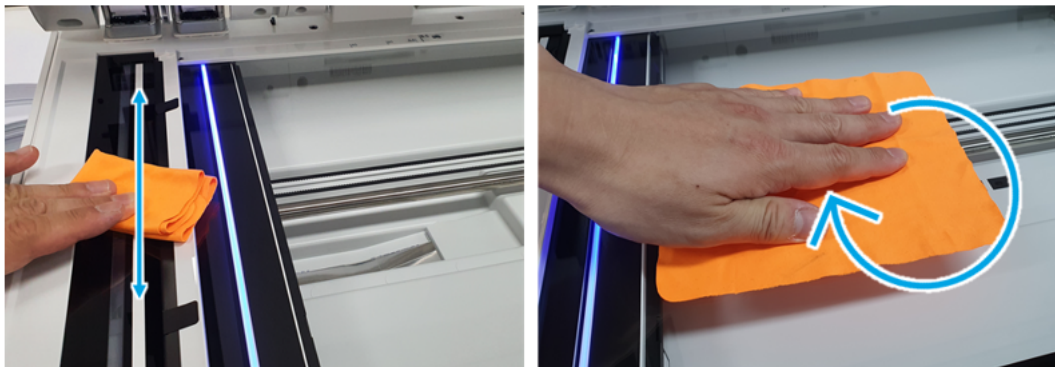


3. Close the right door.

Cleaning the scanner glass

It is recommended that the scanner glass be cleaned during every maintenance visit. Use the following procedure to complete this task.

1. Open the ADF by lifting it up.
2. Clean the image scanner area and flat-bed glass using a lint-free cloth.



3. Close the ADF.

Cleaning the ADF CIS (Contact Image Sensor)

It is recommended that the ADF CIS (Contact Image Sensor) be cleaned during every maintenance visit. Use the following procedure to complete this task.

1. Open the ADF by lifting it up.

2. Clean the CIS scanning area, located underneath ADF, using a lint-free cloth.



3. Close the ADF.

Inspection procedures

Use the following procedures to inspect the printer during maintenance visits.

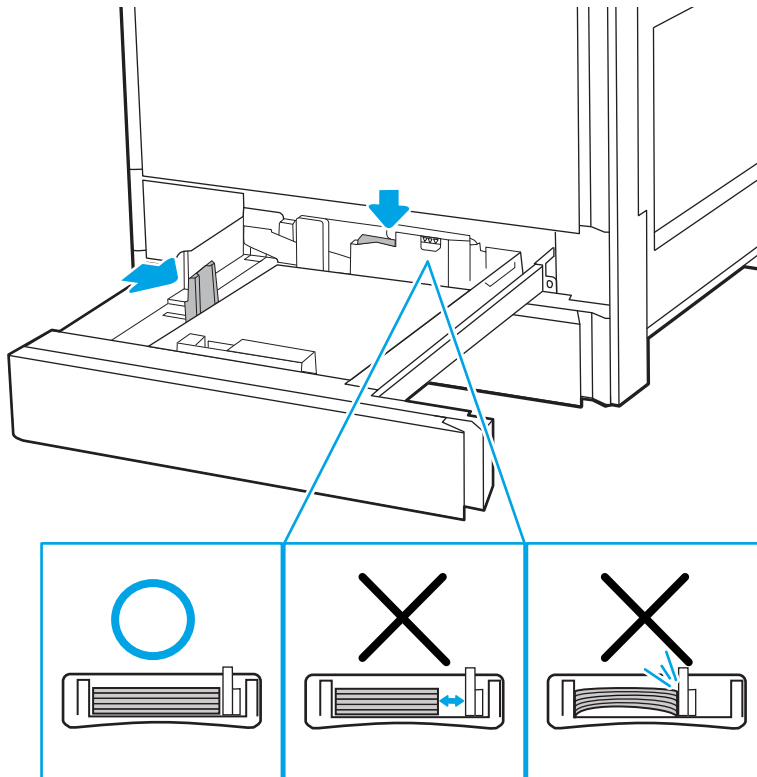
Inspect paper guide adjustment in trays

Checking paper guide adjustment and paper loading status is recommended during every visit. This is important in order to reduce paper jams. Many paper jams occur due to incorrect paper stacking in the trays.

1. Fan the paper.



2. Load the paper. Make sure the paper guides are correctly adjusted.



Inspect consumables (LLC life remaining)

The check of consumable life remaining is recommended at every visit so that the LLC is replaced at the proper time, and does not exceed its end of life. Active replacement is recommended if the LLC life remaining low. This will maintain the expected print quality and, also help to reduce extra visits.

Find the Print Supplies information report by using the following control panel menu navigation:

1. Select the following control panel menus:
 - [Support tools](#)
 - [Service](#) (Enter Pin: 03073122)
 - [Advanced service](#)
 - [Service reports](#)
2. Select [Supplies information report](#) and click the [Print](#) button.

Check the life remaining for each LLC in the Supplies information report. Refer to the following LLC (Long life consumable) list.

Table 2-2 Long life consumables (LLCs)

Item	Part number	Life	Remark
Black OPC (drum unit)	W9066MC	300,000 pages	
Transfer roller	5PN70A	300,000 pages	Manual counter reset
Fuser unit (100V)	5PN51A	300,000 pages	Only for Japan

Table 2-2 Long life consumables (LLCs) (continued)

Item	Part number	Life	Remark
Fuser unit (110V)	5PN68A	300,000 pages	
Fuser unit (220V)	5PN69A	300,000 pages	
Black developer unit	5PN67A	600,000 pages	Manual counter reset
Pickup/Forward/Separation roller (for Tray 2-x)	5PN66A	300,000 pages	Manual counter reset
Pickup/Forward/Separation roller (for Tray1)	5RC02A	200,000 pages	Manual counter reset
ADF roller kit (for 200 sheets dn/z bundles)	J8J95A	150,000 pages	Manual counter reset
ADF roller kit (for 100 sheets Flex bundle)	5RC01A	75,000 pages	Flex-build bundle only Manual counter reset

 **NOTE:** Maintenance part lifespans will vary depending upon printing patterns and the job mode used.

Maintenance (remove and replace)

Use the following links to see removal and replacement procedures for long-life consumables (LLCs).

- [Remove the black drum unit on page 606](#)
- [Removal and replacement: Secondary transfer \(T2\) unit on page 753](#)
- [Removal and replacement: Fuser unit on page 1002](#)
- [Removal and replacement: Developer unit on page 971](#)
- [Removal and replacement: Tray 1 roller kit \(pickup/forward/reverse\) on page 617](#)
- [Removal and replacement: Tray 2, 3 roller kit \(pickup/forward/reverse\) on page 630](#)
- [Removal and replacement: DCF roller kit on page 1301](#)
- [Removal and replacement: HCI \(Tray 4\) roller kit on page 1392](#)
- [Removal and replacement: ADF pickup roller kit \(100sh\) on page 1203](#)
- [Removal and replacement: ADF pickup roller kit \(200sh\) on page 1162](#)

Counter reset after LLC replacement

The LLCs listed below require their counter reset manually after replacement. LLCs not listed here have EEPROM/CRUM counters that are reset automatically.

- Transfer roller (**use steps 1 and 2**)
- Black developer unit (**use steps 1 and 2**)
- Pickup/Forward/Separation roller (for Tray 2-x) (**use steps 1 and 2**)
- Pickup/Forward/Separation roller (for Tray1) (**use steps 1 and 2**)

- ADF roller kit (for 200-sheet dn/z bundles ADF or 100-sheet Flex ADF) (**use steps 3 and 4**)

Reset the counter from the control panel using the following instructions.

1. **For all LLCs except the ADF roller kit:** Select the following menus:
 - [Support tools](#)
 - [Service](#) (Enter Pin: 03073122)
 - [Reset supplies](#)
2. Select the LLC being replaced, and then click the [Reset](#) button.
3. **For the ADF roller kit LLC only:** Select the following menus:
 - [Settings](#)
 - [Manage Supplies](#)
 - [Reset supplies](#)
4. Select the [Document Feeder Kit](#) item, and then click the [Reset](#) button.

3 Theory of operation

You will learn more about theory of operation.

Base printer

Learn about the theory of operation for the base printer.

Covers

Learn about the printer covers.

Figure 3-1 Covers

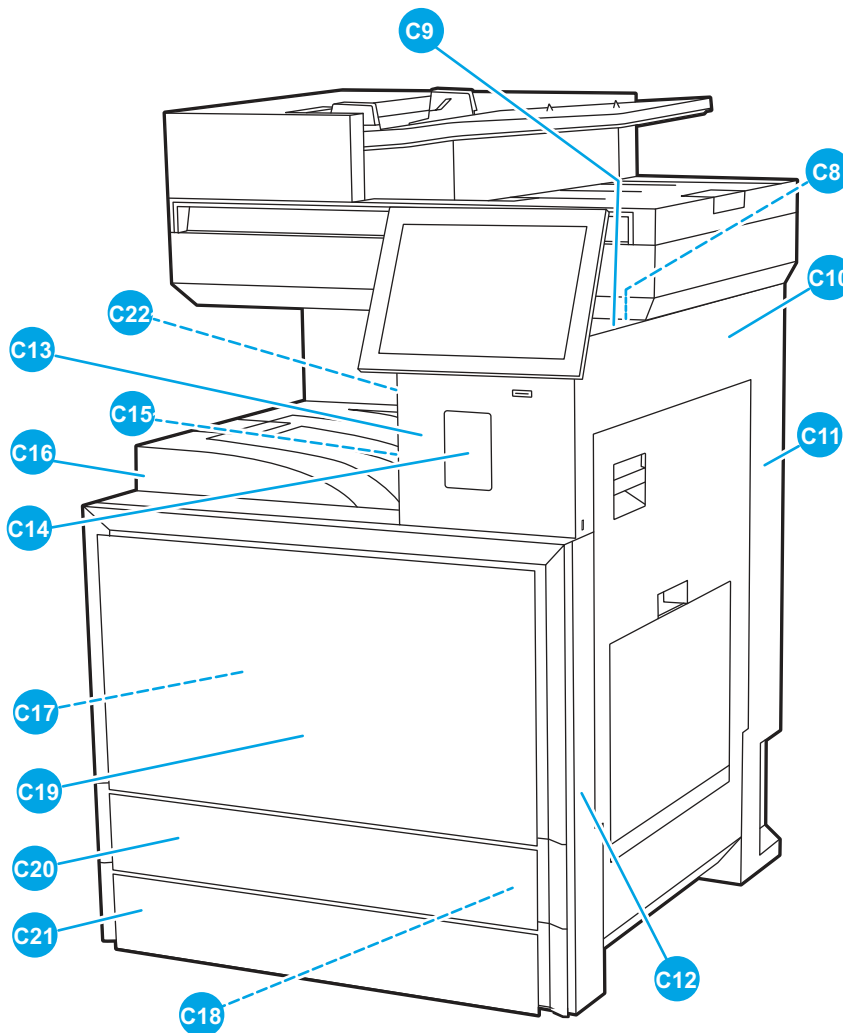


Table 3-1 Covers

Callout	Part name	Part number
C1	Rear upper cover	6EQ94-40014

Table 3-1 Covers (continued)

Callout	Part name	Part number
C2	Rear lower cover	6EQ94-40004
C3	Controller cover	6ER04-61005
C4	Exit rear cover	6EQ94-40009
C5	Left top cover	JC63-04534B
C6	Left upper cover	6EQ94-40012
C7	Left cover	5QJ98-60104
C8	Middle cover	6EQ94-40028
C9	Middle upper cover	6EQ94-40017
C10	Right upper cover	6EQ94-40015
C11	Right rear cover	6EQ94-40023
C12	Right front cover	6EQ94-40022
C13	Right middle cover assembly	5QJ90-60114
C14	HIP cover	6EQ94-40032
C15	Middle left cover	6EQ94-40031
C16	Exit cover stacker	5QJ90-60116
C17	Inner cover	5QJ98-60105
C18	Front lower cover	6EQ94-40011
C19	Front cover assembly	5QJ98-60106
C20	Tray2 cover - CMF panel	5QJ90-40022
C21	Tray 3 cover - CMF panel	5QJ94-40016
C22	Exit stacker upper cover	6EQ94-40010

Covers

Learn about the printer covers.

Figure 3-2 Covers

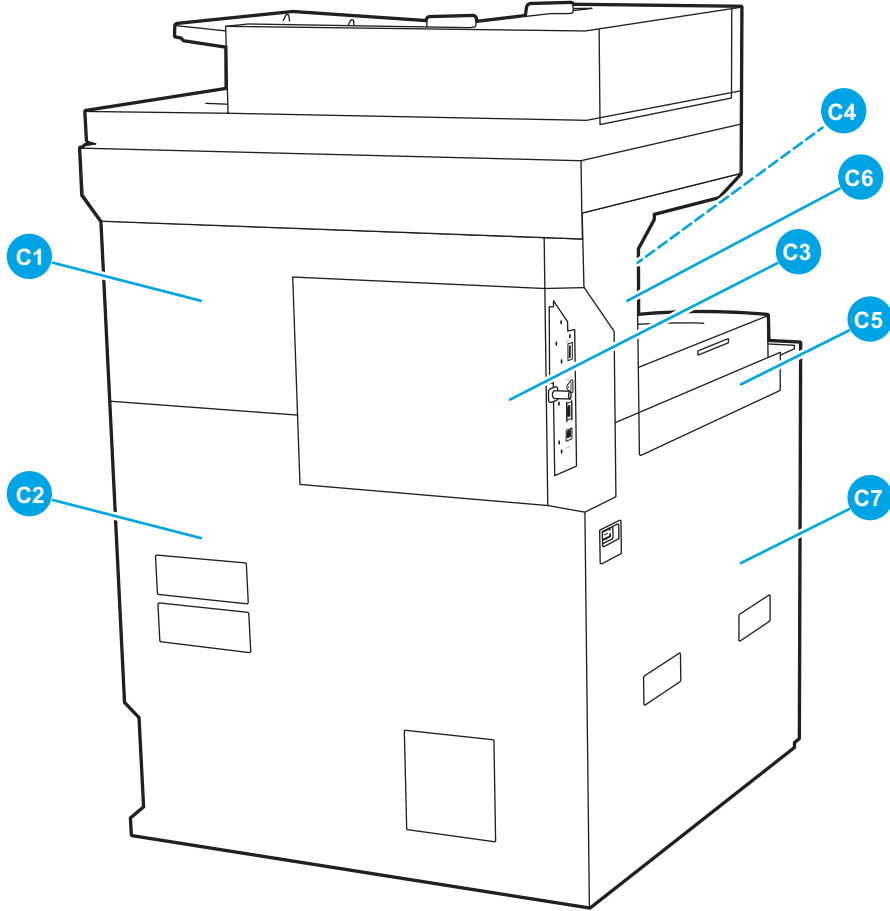


Table 3-2 Covers

Callout	Part name	Part number
C1	Rear upper cover	6EQ94-40014
C2	Rear lower cover	6EQ94-40004
C3	Controller cover	6ER04-61005
C4	Exit rear cover	6EQ94-40009
C5	Left top cover	JC63-04534B
C6	Left upper cover	6EQ94-40012
C7	Left cover	5QJ98-60104
C8	Middle cover	6EQ94-40028
C9	Middle upper cover	6EQ94-40017
C10	Right upper cover	6EQ94-40015
C11	Right rear cover	6EQ94-40023
C12	Right front cover	6EQ94-40022
C13	Right middle cover assembly	5QJ90-60114
C14	HIP cover	6EQ94-40032

Table 3-2 Covers (continued)

Callout	Part name	Part number
C15	Middle left cover	6EQ94-40031
C16	Exit cover stacker	5QJ90-60116
C17	Inner cover	5QJ98-60105
C18	Front lower cover	6EQ94-40011
C19	Front cover assembly	5QJ98-60106
C20	Tray2 cover - CMF panel	5QJ90-40022
C21	Tray 3 cover - CMF panel	5QJ94-40016
C22	Exit stacker upper cover	6EQ94-40010

Feeding system

Learn about the feeding system.

Feeding system overview

Learn about the feeding system overview.

The feeding system is responsible for the process ranging from picking up paper from the trays to ejecting it out of the machine. This system is mainly composed of Tray 1, Tray 2, Tray 3, registration unit, loop sensing unit, exit unit, and duplex unit.

Feeding system workflow

Learn about the feeding system workflow.

Figure 3-3 Feeding system workflow

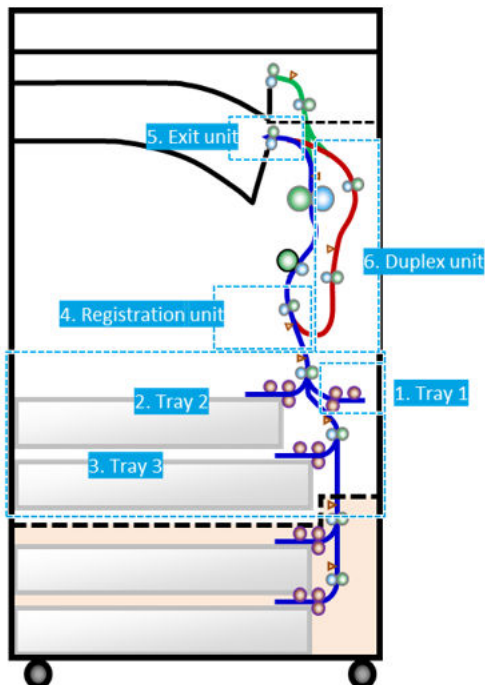


Table 3-3 Feeding system workflow

Callout	Part name	Description
1	Tray 1	Picks up paper and delivers it to the registration unit
2	Tray 2	Stores paper for printing and picks up and transfers the paper to the registration unit
3	Tray 3	Stores paper for printing and picks up and transfers the paper to the registration unit
4	Registration unit	Arranges the paper moved from the tray
5	Exit unit	Discharges the paper to the outside of the product or moves the paper path to the duplex unit for duplex printing
	Duplex unit	Allows paper to move from the exit unit to the registration unit for duplex printing

Feeding system roller

Learn about the feeding system roller.

Figure 3-4 Feeding system roller

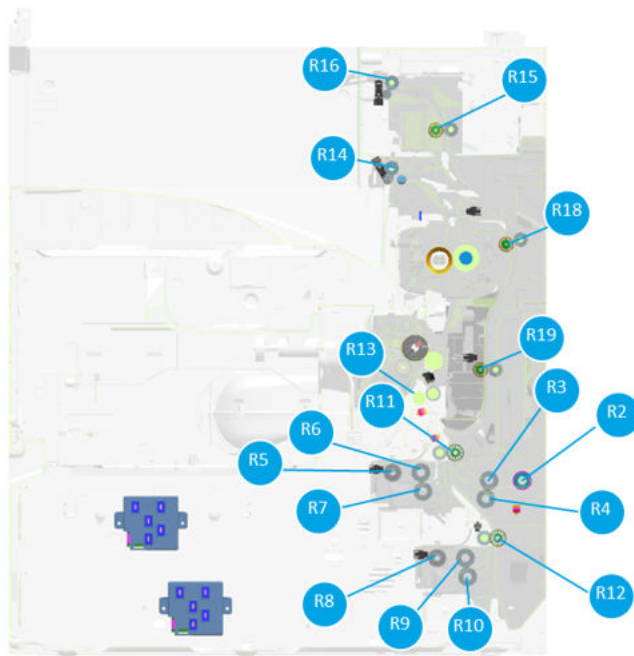


Table 3-4 Feeding system roller

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
R2	Tray 1 pickup roller	JC93-01721A	Picks up paper on the tray
R3	Tray 1 forward roller	JC93-01726A	Moves paper inside the machine
R4	Tray 1 reverse roller	JC93-01726A	Prevents multiple papers from feeding into the machine
R5	Tray 2 pickup roller	5QJ90-60128	Picks up paper from the knock-up plate of the tray
R6	Tray 2 forward roller	JC93-01726A	Moves paper to the feed roller
R7	Tray 2 reverse roller	JC93-01726A	Prevents multiple papers from feeding into the machine
R8	Tray 3 pickup roller	5QJ90-60128	Picks up paper from the knock-up plate of the tray

Table 3-4 Feeding system roller (continued)

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
R9	Tray 3 forward roller	JC93-01726A	Moves paper to the feed roller
R10	Tray 3 reverse roller	JC93-01726A	Prevents multiple papers from feeding into the machine
R11	Tray 2 feed roller	NA	Moves paper to the registration roller
R12	Tray 3 feed roller	NA	Moves paper to the registration roller
R13	Registration roller	NA	Arranges paper moved from the tray and moves the paper to the ITB - second transfer roller
R14	Exit roller	NA	Moves paper to the exit unit
R15	Exit 2 feed roller (optional)	NA	Moves paper to the exit 2 unit
R16	Exit 2 roller (optional)	NA	Moves paper to the exit 2 unit
R18	Duplex 1 roller	NA	Moves paper to the duplex unit during duplex printing
R19	Duplex 2 roller	NA	Moves paper to the registration roller

Feeding system sensors

Learn about the feeding system sensors.

Figure 3-5 Feeding system sensors

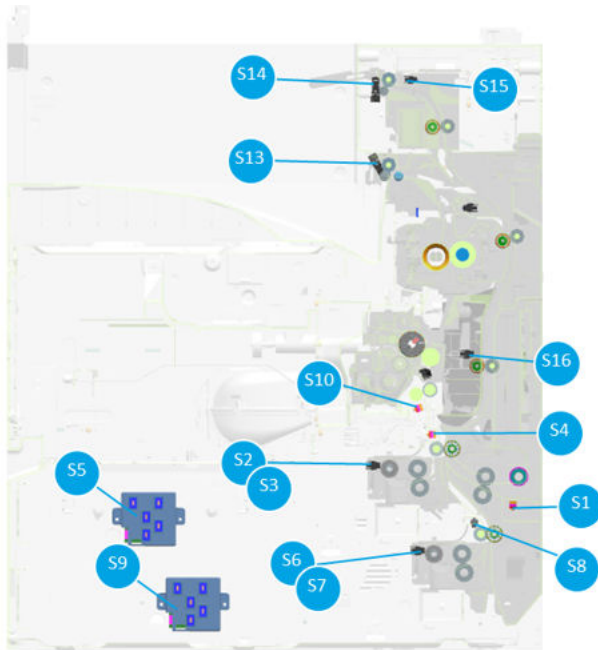


Table 3-5 Feeding system sensors

Callout	Part name	Part number	Sensor type	Description
S1	Tray 1 paper empty sensor	0604-001381	Photo interrupter (reflect)	Check whether a paper is on the Tray 1
S2	Tray 2 empty sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sensing)	Check whether a paper is on the Tray 2

Table 3-5 Feeding system sensors (continued)

Callout	Part name	Part number	Sensor type	Description
S3	Tray 2 stack height sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sensing)	Set the proper height of paper to make a contact with the pickup roller
S4	Tray 2 feed sensor	0604-001381	Photo interrupter (reflect)	Check whether the paper correctly comes from the Tray 2
S5	Tray 2 open, paper size sensor	JC93-01408A	-	Check whether the tray is closed, make signals to identify the paper size
S6	Tray 3 empty sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sensing)	Check whether a paper is on the Tray 3
S7	Tray 3 stack height sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sensing)	Set the proper height of paper to make a contact with the pickup roller
S8	Tray 3 feed sensor	0604-001490	Photo interrupter (reflect)	Check whether the paper correctly comes from the Tray 3
S9	Tray 3 open, paper size sensor	JC93-01408A	-	Check whether the tray is closed, make signals to identify the paper size
S10	Registration sensor	0604-001381	Photo interrupter (reflect)	Check whether the paper comes into the registration unit
S13	Out bin 1 full sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sensing)	Check whether the paper correctly goes out on the output bin, and it is loaded up to the maximum capacity
S14	Out bin 2 full sensor (optional)	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sensing)	Check whether the paper goes out on the output bin correctly, and it is loaded up to the maximum capacity.
S15	Duplex jam 1 sensor (optional)	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sensing)	Move a paper to the duplex unit during duplex printing
S16	Duplex jam 2 sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sensing)	Check whether the paper goes through the duplex unit

Feeding system motors and solenoids

Learn about the feeding system motors and solenoids.

Figure 3-6 Feeding system motors and solenoids

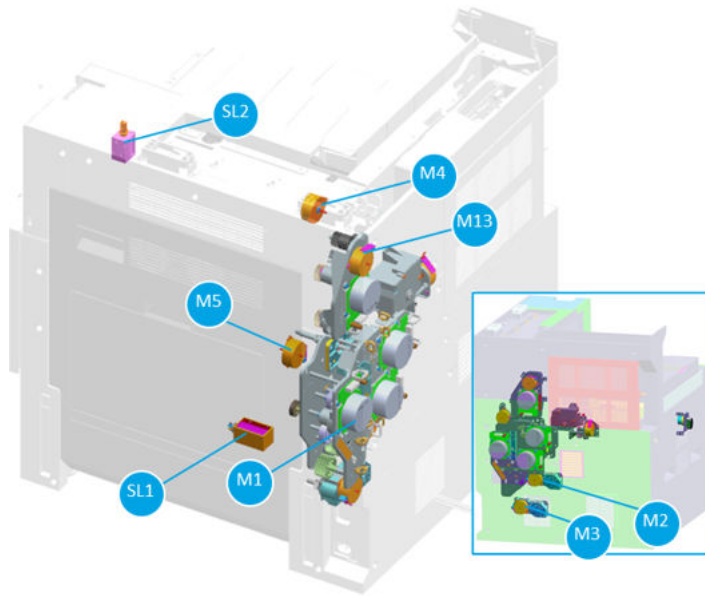


Table 3-6 Feeding system motors and solenoids

Callout	Part name	Part number	Motor type	Description
M1	Feed, registration, and tray 1 motor	JC31-00123B	BLDC motor	Drives the Tray1 rollers, feed rollers, and trans roller
M2	Tray 2 pickup motor	5QJ90-64002	Stepping motor	Drives the Tray 2 pickup, forward, and reverse rollers or knock-up plate
M3	Tray 3 pickup motor	5QJ90-64002	Stepping motor	Drives the Tray 3 pickup, forward, and reverse rollers or knock-up plate
M13	Exit motor	JC93-01686A	Stepping motor	Drives the exit roller
M4	Exit 2 motor	JC93-00336A	Stepping motor	Drives the exit 2 roller (optional)
M5	Duplex 1 motor	JC93-01687A	Stepping motor	Drives the duplex 1, 2 rollers
SL1	Tray 1 pickup solenoid	JC33-00029B	Solenoid	Moves the pickup roller up and down
SL2	Return gate solenoid (optional)	JC33-00031B	Solenoid	Changes the paper path to the second exit unit

Tray 1 unit

Learn about the Tray 1 unit.

Tray 1 unit overview

Learn about Tray 1 unit overview.

The Tray 1 unit picks up the paper and delivers to the registration unit.

To ensure that the paper is placed on the Tray 1, a reflective type of tray empty sensor is placed on the side of the paper doorway. The Tray 1 unit is equipped with three rollers to pull a paper and push it into the inside of the printer, each called pickup, forward, and reverse roller. The pickup roller moves downward to pull the paper, which is controlled by the Tray 1 solenoid. The Tray 1 pickup clutch controls the timing of three rollers' rotation coming from the registration and Tray 1 motor. The Tray 1 feed roller is mounted to move the pulled paper into the registration unit. The Tray 1 clutch controls the timing of the Tray 1 feed roller's rotation coming from the registration and Tray 1 motor.

Figure 3-7 Overview of Tray 1 unit

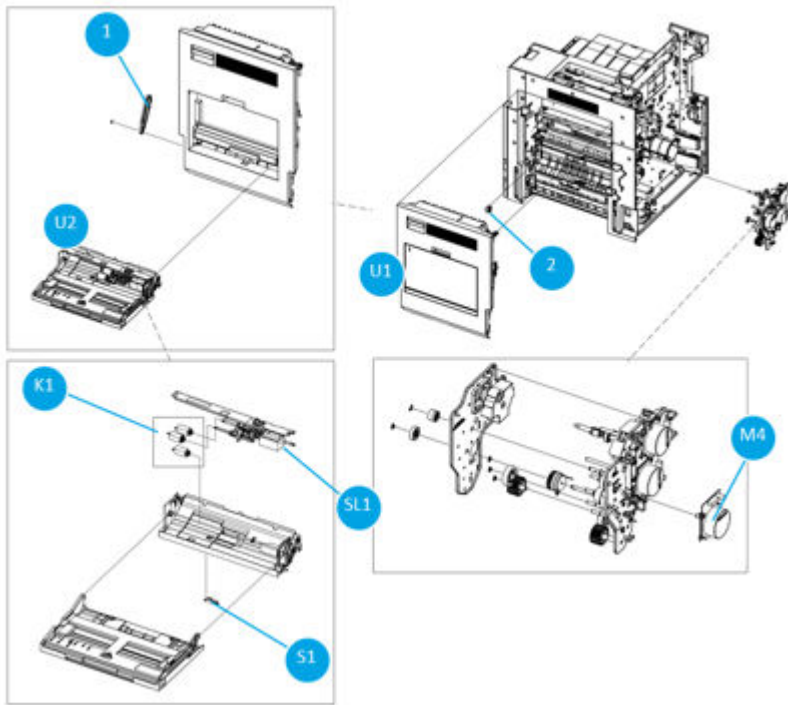


Figure 3-8 Detail view of Tray 1 unit (1 of 3)

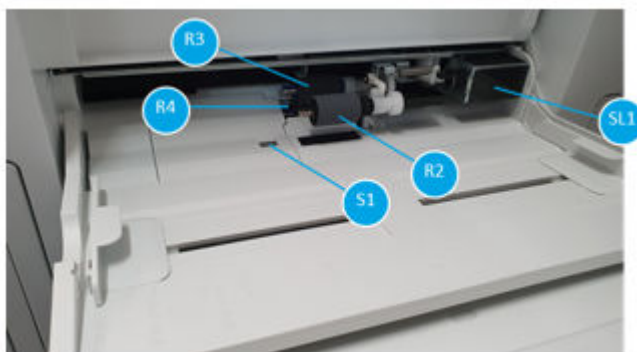


Figure 3-9 Detail view of Tray 1 unit (2 of 3)

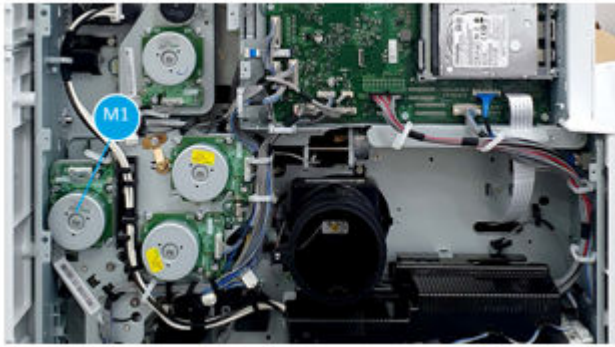


Figure 3-10 Detail view of Tray 1 unit (3 of 3)

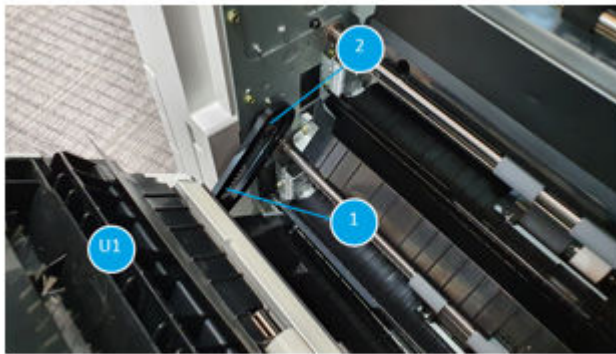


Table 3-7 Parts information for Tray 1 unit

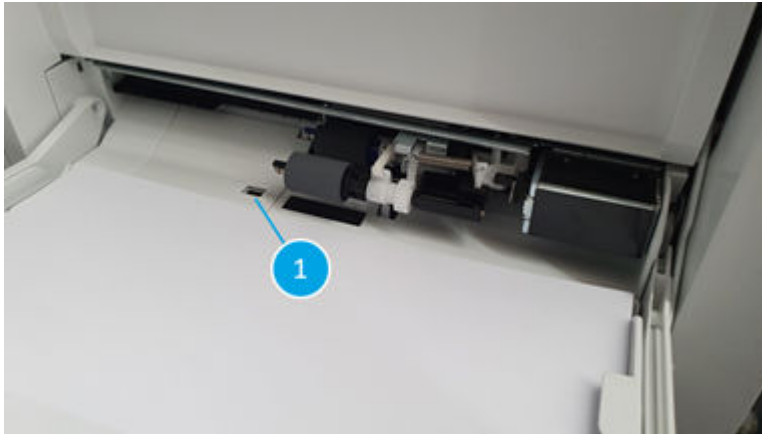
Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U2	Tray 1 unit	JC90-01844A	Picks up paper and delivers it to registration unit
M1	Feed, Registration and Tray 1 motor	JC31-00123B	Drives the Tray 1 feed roller, and pickup/forward/reverse rollers
CL1	Tray 1 clutch	JC47-00037A	Controls the timing of Tray 1 feed roller's rotation coming from the registration motor
K1	Tray 1 roller kit	5RC02-67001	Includes pickup, forward, and reverse rollers
R2	Tray 1 pickup roller	JC93-01721B	Picks up paper on the Tray 1
R3	Tray 1 forward roller	5QJ90-67001	Moves paper inside the printer
R4	Tray 1 reverse roller	5QJ90-67001	Prevents multiple papers from feeding into the printer
SL1	Tray 1 solenoid	JC33-00029B	Moves the pickup roller up and down
S1	Tray 1 paper empty sensor	0604-001381	Checks whether paper is on Tray 1
U1	Right door assembly	JC95-02260A	
1	Right door front link	JC66-03235A	
2	Right door front damper	JC66-01425A	

Tray 1 unit operation

Learn about Tray 1 unit operation.

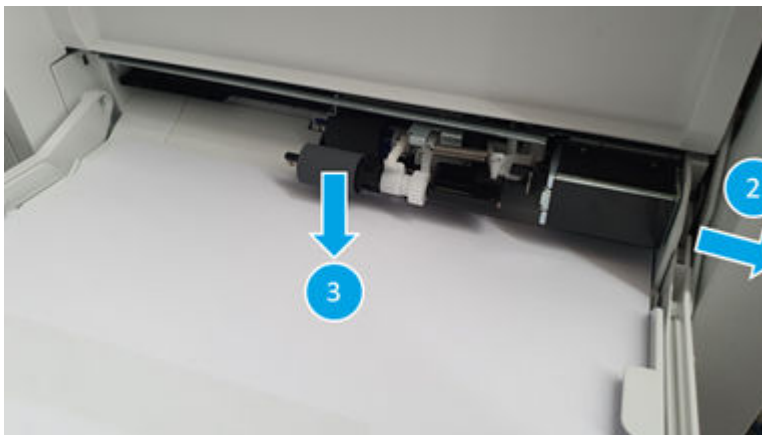
1. The paper empty sensor detects whether a paper on Tray 1.

Figure 3-11 Tray 1 operation, view 1



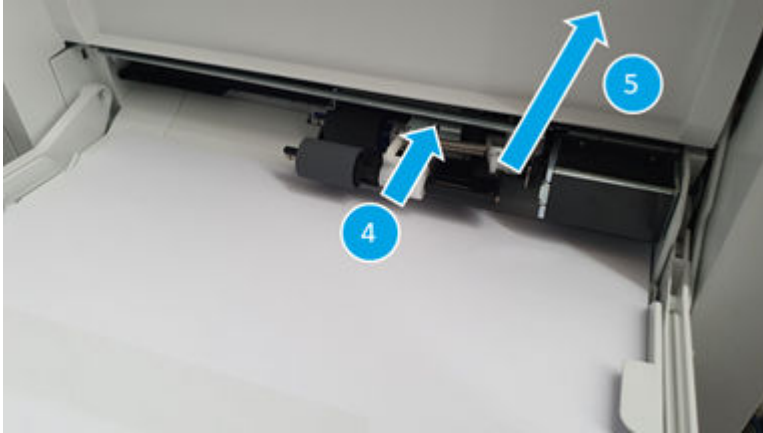
2. The Tray 1 solenoid moves rightward.
3. Step 2 makes Tray 1 pickup roller moves downward until it touches the paper on the tray.

Figure 3-12 Tray 1 operation, view 2



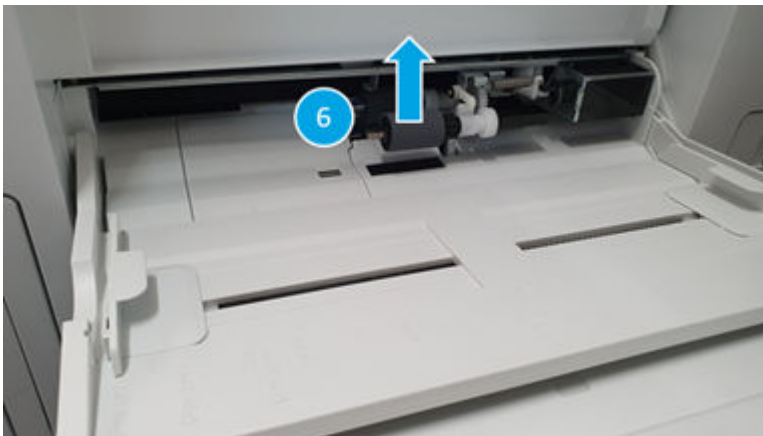
4. The Tray 1 pickup roller moves the paper to the Tray 1 forward and reverse rollers (callout 4).
5. The Tray 1 forward roller moves the paper to the registration unit (callout 5).

Figure 3-13 Tray 1 operation, view 3



- 6. The Tray 1 pickup roller returns to the original position to wait for the next printing job (callout 6).

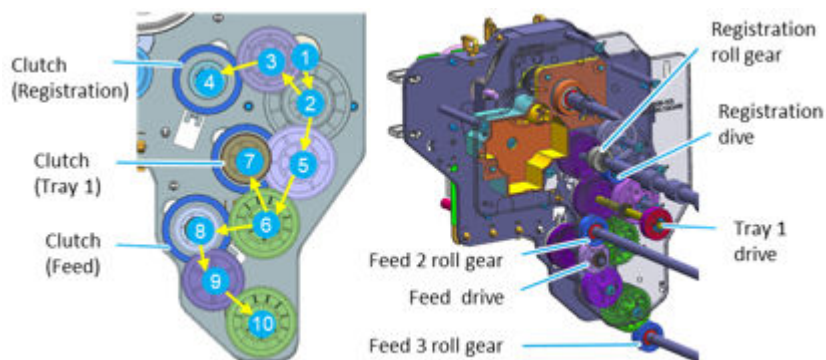
Figure 3-14 Tray 1 operation, view 4



Tray 1 unit driving

Learn about Tray 1 unit driving.

Figure 3-15 Tray 1 unit driving



- Tray 1 driving: 1 feed, registration and Tray 1 motor > 2 gear > 5 gear > 7 clutch/gear, Tray 1 pickup roller, Tray 1 forward roller


Tray 2/3 unit

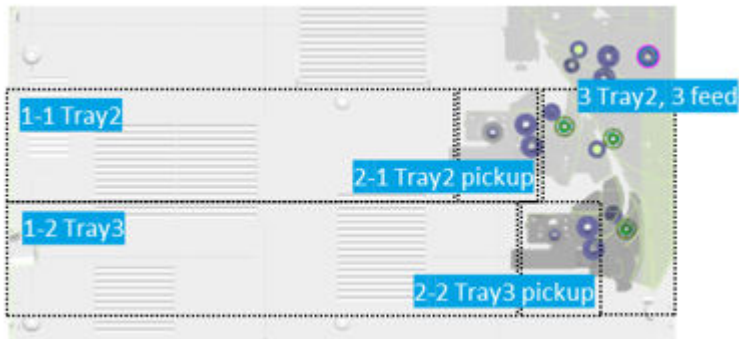
Learn about the Tray 2/3 unit.

Tray 2/3 unit overview

Learn about the Tray 2/3 unit overview.

The Tray 2/3 units store paper. The Tray 2/3 pickup assembly picks up and transfers the paper to the feed roller. Then the feed roller sends the paper to the registration unit.

 **NOTE:** The initial setting of the Tray 2/3 unit is based on ISO216 standard. In countries where letter size paper is used as the base, the tray guide must be adjusted to store the paper correctly before printing.



Tray 2/3 cassette

Learn about Tray 2/3 cassette operation.

In the tray cassette section, there are a front guide and a rear guide to properly load the paper that is adjustable for the paper to fit. And inside, there is a knock-up plate operated by the pickup motor, which serves to lift the paper for the pickup process.

Figure 3-16 Overview of Tray 2/3 cassettes

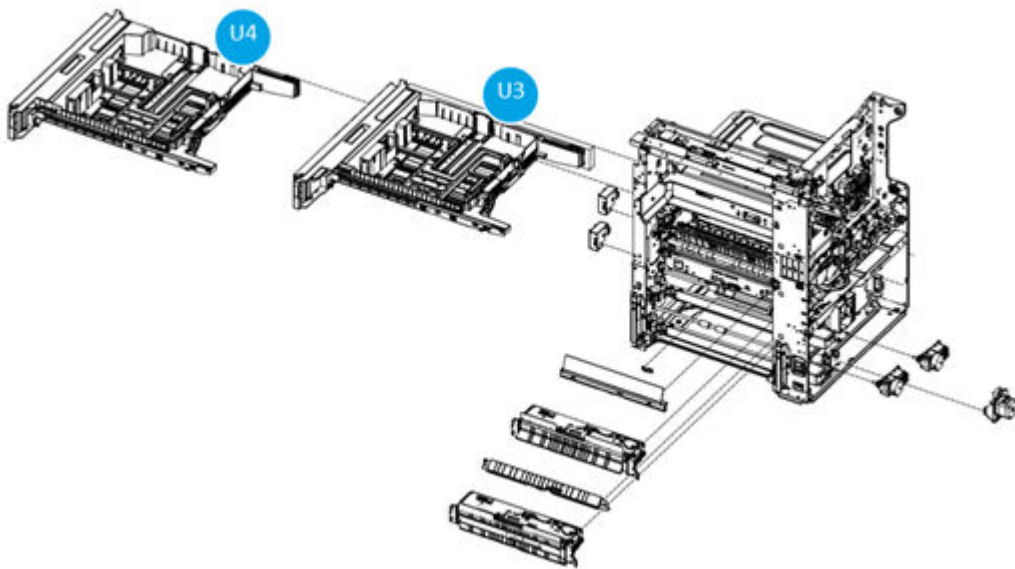


Table 3-8 Overview of Tray 2/3 cassette

Number	Part name	Part number	Description
U3	Tray 2 cassette	5QJ90-60111	Stores paper
U4	Tray 3 cassette	5QJ90-60119	Stores paper

Figure 3-17 Detail view of Tray 2 cassette

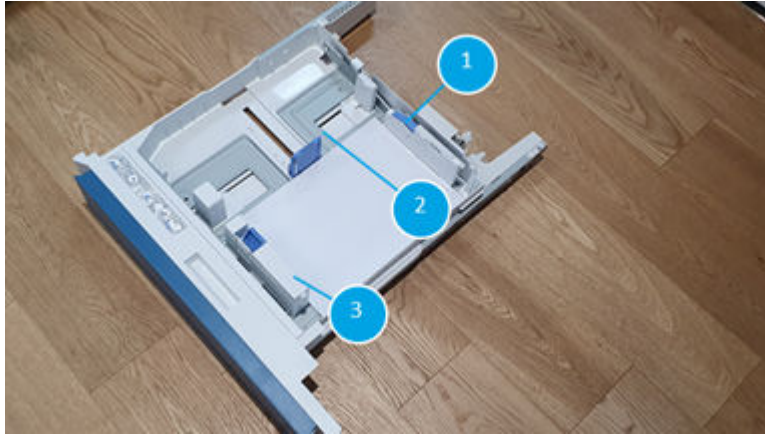


Table 3-9 Detail view of Tray 2 cassette

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Rear guide	NA	Guide to keep the paper well organized and settled
2	Knock-up plate	NA	Raise the leading edge of the paper for pickup process
3	Front guide	NA	Guide to keep the paper well organized and settled

Figure 3-18 Detail view of Tray 3 cassette

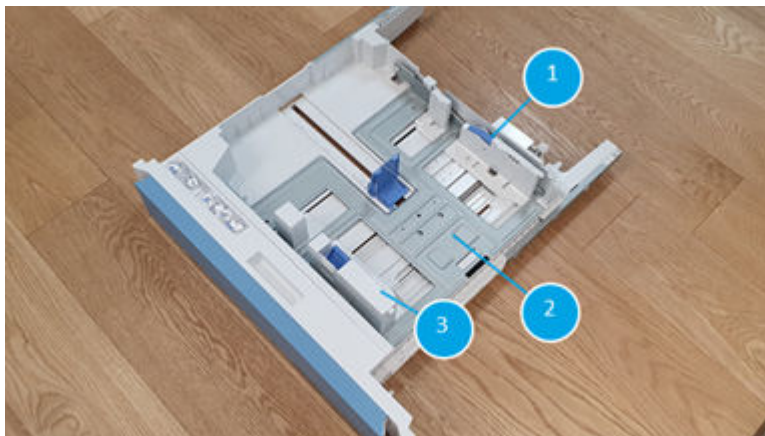


Table 3-10 Detail view of Tray 3 cassette

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Rear guide	NA	Guide to keep the paper well organized and settled
2	Knock-up plate	NA	Raise the leading edge of the paper for pickup process
3	Front guide	NA	Guide to keep the paper well organized and settled

Tray 2/3 pickup assembly

Learn about Tray 2/3 pickup assembly.

The Tray 2/3 pickup sections have a pickup roller, a forward roller, and a reverse roller that pulls the paper from the tray.

The Tray 2 empty sensor checks whether a paper is loaded on the tray. The stack height sensor detects the proper height to raise the knock-up plate to a position where it can be picked up. When the appropriate pressure is formed between the pickup roller and the paper, and the pickup roller and the forward roller are driven by the pickup motor, the paper is picked up and the reverse roller prevents a multiple paper feeding. The feed sensors detect whether the paper leading edge is on the pickup roller or the forward roller during pickup process.

Figure 3-19 Overview of Tray 2 pickup assembly

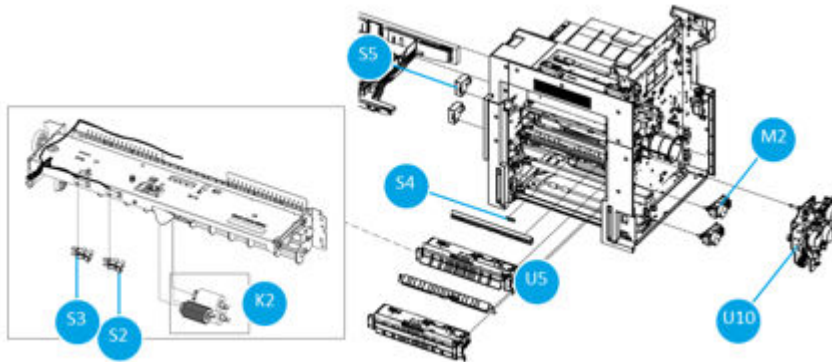


Table 3-11 Overview of Tray 2 pickup assembly

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U5	Tray 2 pickup assembly	JC93-01728A	-
K2	Tray 2 roller kit	5PN66-67001	Roller kit for Tray 2 or Tray 3 includes pickup, forward and reverse roller
R5	Tray 2 pickup roller	5QJ90-60128	Pick up a paper from the knock-up plate of the tray
R6	Tray 2 forward roller	JC93-01726A	Move a paper to the registration roller
R7	Tray 2 reverse roller	JC93-01726A	Move a paper to the registration roller
S2	Tray 2 empty sensor	0604-001393	Check whether the tray is empty
S3	Tray 2 stack height sensor	0604-001393	Check how much paper is loaded in the tray
S4	Tray 2 feed sensor	0604-001490	Check whether picking up a paper is properly processed
S5	Tray 2 open, paper size sensor	JC93-00018B	Check whether the tray is closed, make signals to identify the paper size
M2	Tray 2 pickup motor	5QJ90-64002	Drive the Tray 2 pickup, forward, and reverse roller or the knock-up plate

Figure 3-20 Detail view of Tray 2 pickup assembly

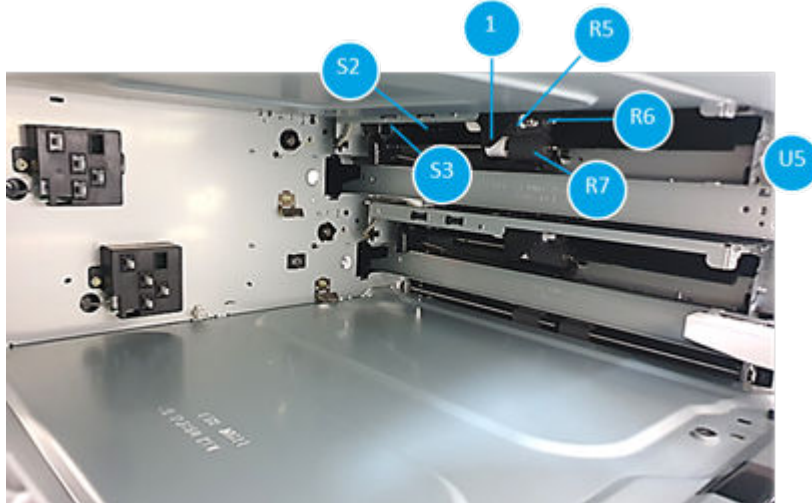


Table 3-12 Parts information for Tray 2 pickup assembly

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U5	Tray 2 pickup assembly	JC93-01728A	-
R5	Tray 2 pickup roller	5QJ90-60128	Pick up a paper from the knock-up plate of the tray
R6	Tray 2 forward roller	JC93-01726A	Move a paper to the registration roller
R7	Tray 2 reverse roller	JC93-01726A	Move a paper to the registration roller
1	Tray 2 empty sensor actuator	NA	Check whether the tray is empty
S2	Tray 2 empty sensor	0604-001393	Check whether the tray is empty
S3	Tray 2 stack height sensor	0604-001393	Check how much paper is loaded in the tray

Figure 3-21 Detail view of Tray 2 cassette, side view

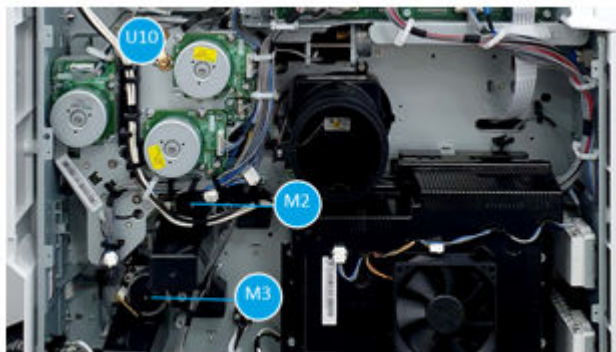


Table 3-13 Parts information for Tray 2 pickup assembly, side view

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U10	Tray 2 pickup drive assembly	5QJ90-64001	-
M2	Tray 2 pickup motor	5QJ90-64002	Drive the Tray 2 pickup, forward, and reverse roller or the knock-up plate

Table 3-13 Parts information for Tray 2 pickup assembly, side view (continued)

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
M3	Tray 2 pickup motor	5QJ90-64002	Drive Tray 3 pickup, forward, and reverse roller or the knock-up plate

Figure 3-22 Overview of Tray 3 pickup assembly

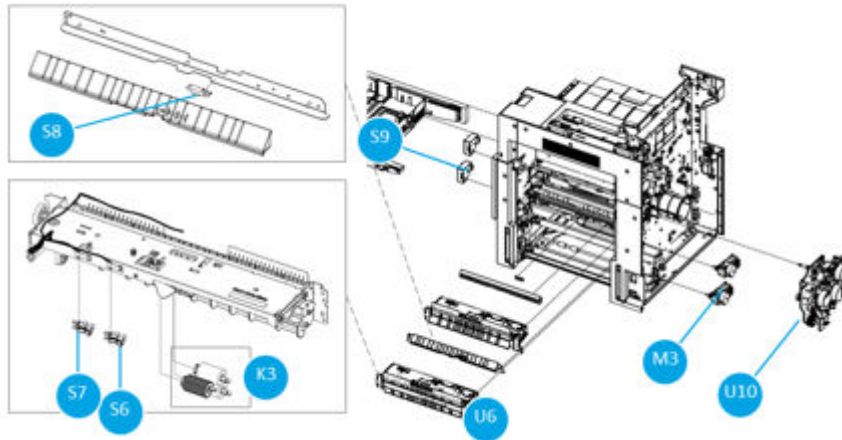


Table 3-14 Overview of Tray 3 pickup assembly

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U6	Tray 3 pickup assembly	JC93-01729A	-
K3	Tray 3 roller kit	5PN66-67001	Roller kit for Tray 2 or Tray 3 includes pickup, forward and reverse roller
R8	Tray 3 pickup roller	5QJ90-60128	Pick up a paper from the knock-up plate of the tray
R9	Tray 3 forward roller	JC93-01726A	Move a paper to the registration roller
R10	Tray 3 reverse roller	JC93-01726A	Move a paper to the registration roller
S6	Tray 3 empty sensor	0604-001393	Check whether the tray is empty
S7	Tray 3 stack height sensor	0604-001393	Check how much paper is loaded in the tray
S8	Tray 3 feed sensor	0604-001490	Check whether picking up a paper is properly processed
S9	Tray 3 open, paper size sensor	JC93-00018B	Check whether the tray is closed, make signals to identify the paper size
U10	Tray 3 pickup drive assembly	5QJ90-64001	-
M3	Tray 3 pickup motor	5QJ90-64002	Drive Tray 3 pickup, forward, and reverse roller or the knock-up plate

Figure 3-23 Detail view of Tray 3 pickup assembly

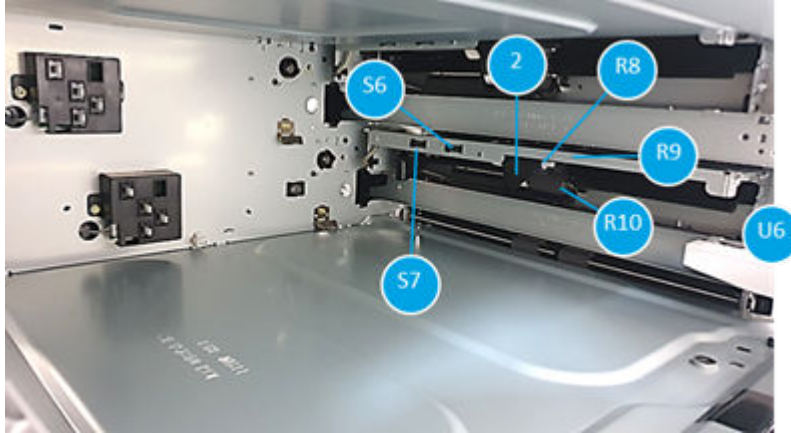


Table 3-15 Parts information for Tray 3 pickup assembly

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U6	Tray 3 pickup assembly	JC93-01729A	-
R8	Tray 3 pickup roller	5QJ90-60128	Pick up a paper from the knock-up plate of the tray
R9	Tray 3 forward roller	JC93-01726A	Move a paper to the registration roller
R10	Tray 3 reverse roller	JC93-01726A	Move a paper to the registration roller
2	Tray 3 empty sensor actuator	NA	Check whether the tray is empty
S6	Tray 3 empty sensor	0604-001393	Check whether the tray is empty
S7	Tray 3 stack height sensor	0604-001393	Check how much paper is loaded in the tray

Figure 3-24 Detail view of Tray 3 pickup assembly, side view

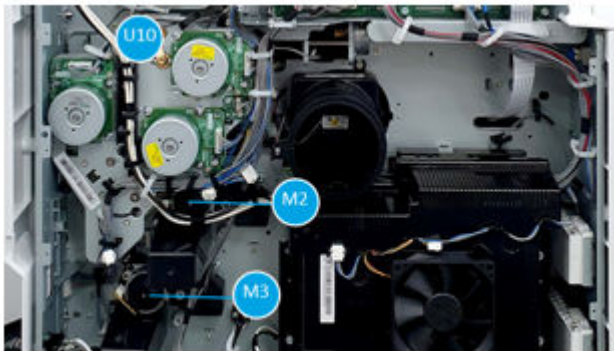


Table 3-16 Parts information for Tray 3 pickup assembly, side view

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U10	Tray 3 pickup drive assembly	5QJ90-64001	-
M2	Tray 3 pickup motor	5QJ90-64002	Drive the Tray 2 pickup, forward, and reverse roller or the knock-up plate
M3	Tray 3 pickup motor	5QJ90-64002	Drive Tray 3 pickup, forward, and reverse roller or the knock-up plate

Tray 2/3 paper size sensor, tray heater

Learn about Tray 2/3 paper size sensor, tray heater.

The Tray 2/3 paper size sensor recognizes the paper size, at the same time the tray open sensor detects whether the tray is opened or closed. The tray heater can be installed to prevent image defects or curling of printed paper. This part is available as an option.

Figure 3-25 Detail view of Tray 2/3 paper size sensor, tray heater



Table 3-17 Parts information for Tray 2/3 paper size sensor, tray heater

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
S5	Tray 2 open, paper size sensor	JC93-00018B	-
S9	Tray 2 open, paper size sensor	JC93-01408A	-
U7	Tray heater 110V	Y1G22-67901	Dry the damp paper with heating pipe
U8	Tray heater 220V	Y1G22-67902	Dry the damp paper with heating pipe
c	Tray heater connector	NA	Supply power to the tray heater

Tray 2/3 feed sensor, roller, motor

Learn about Tray 2/3 feed sensor, roller, motor.

The paper from the Tray 2 goes through the Tray 2 feed roller to the registration unit. The feed 2 roller detects whether a paper is correctly comes from the tray. The paper from Tray 3 goes through the Tray 3 feed roller and feed 2, 3 sensor to the registration unit. The feed roller is driven by the feed motor.

Figure 3-26 Detail view of Tray 2/3 feed sensor, roller, motor

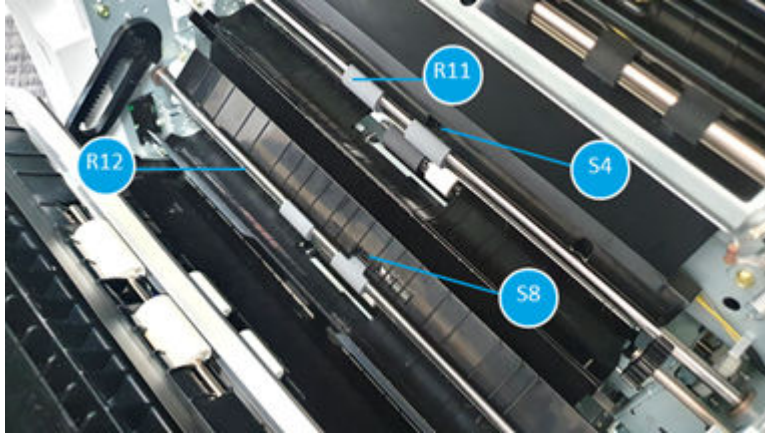


Table 3-18 Parts information for Tray 2/3 feed sensor, roller, motor

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
R11	Tray 2 feed roller	NA	Move a paper to the registration roller
R12	Tray 3 feed roller	NA	Move a paper to the registration roller
S4	Tray 2 feed sensor	0604-001490	Check whether the paper correctly comes from Tray 2
S8	Tray 3 feed sensor	0604-001490	Check whether the paper correctly comes from Tray 3

Figure 3-27 Detail view of Tray 2/3 feed sensor, roller, motor, side view

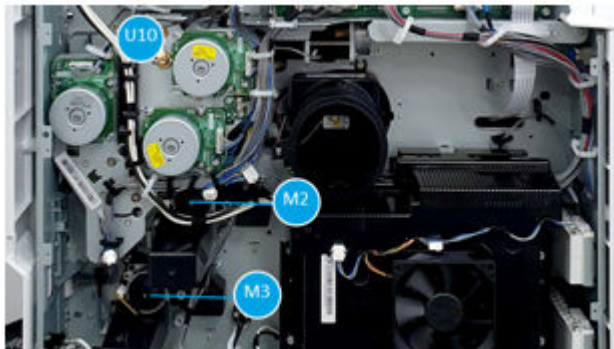


Table 3-19 Parts information for Tray 2/3 feed sensor, roller, motor, side view

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U10	Main drive assembly	JC93-01676A	
M2	Feed, registration, tray 1 motor	JC31-00123B	Drive the rollers of Tray1 and the feed rollers

Tray 2/3 operation

Learn about Tray 2/3 operation.

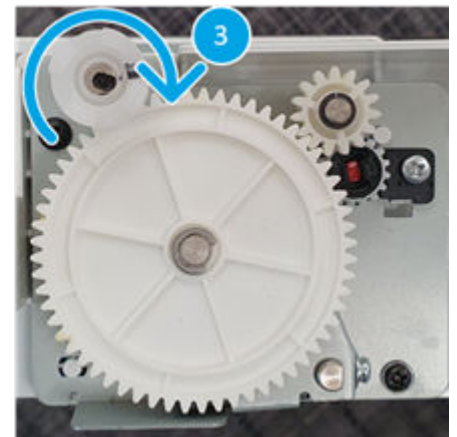
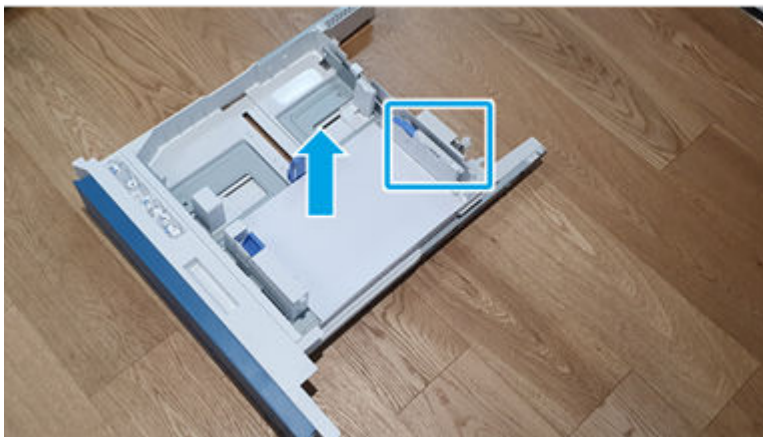
1. When the tray is closed, the tray input lever is pushed.

Figure 3-28 Tray 2/3 operation, view 1



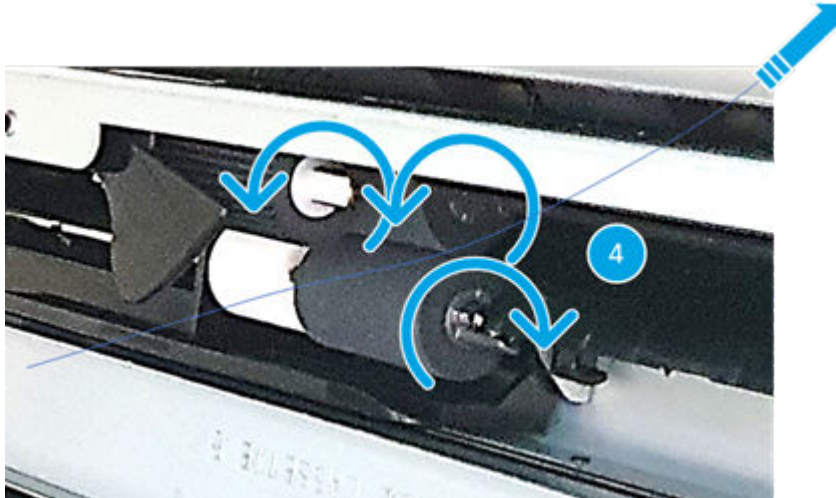
2. The pickup roller moves down to contact the surface of the paper.
3. The Tray 2 or Tray 3 motor drives the knock-up plate to move upward to the paper to the pickup roller.

Figure 3-29 Tray 2/3 operation, view 2



4. The pickup roller moves the paper forward. The forward roller makes the paper move into registration roller, and the reverse roller prevents multiple sheets of paper from being lifted at once.

Figure 3-30 Tray 2/3 operation, view 3

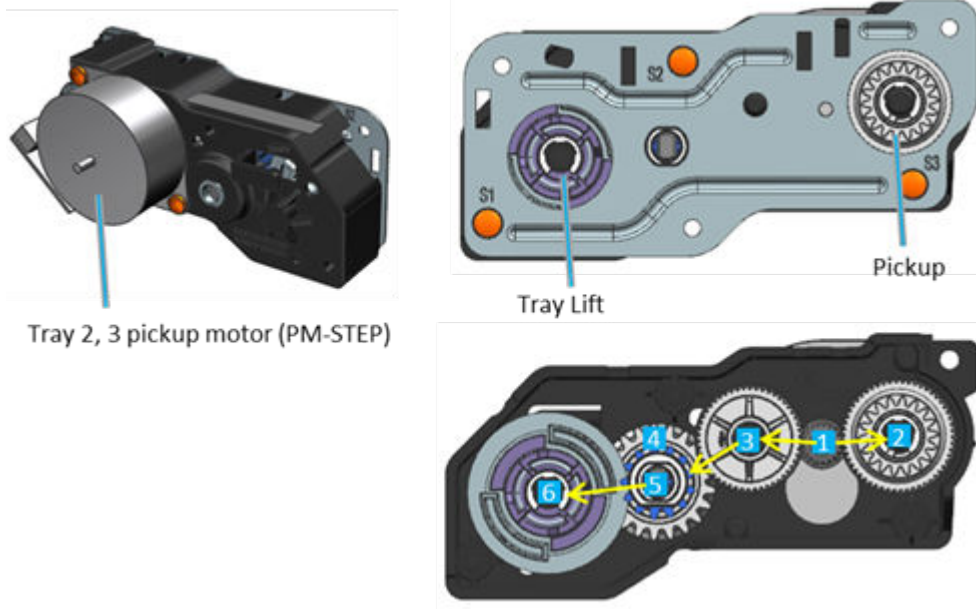


5. The feed roller moves one sheet of paper to the registration roller.

Tray 2/3 driving

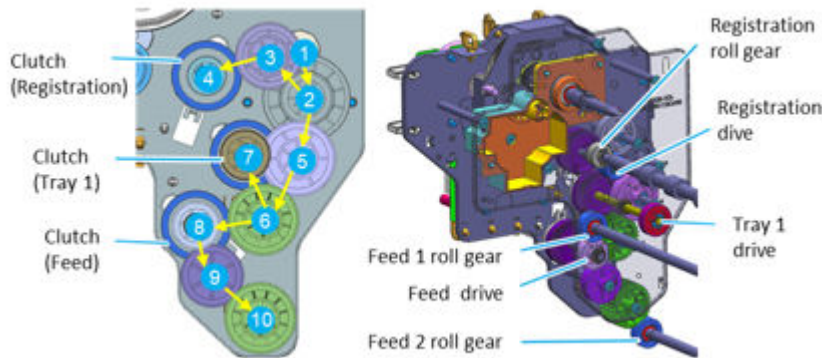
Learn about Tray 2/3 driving.

Figure 3-31 Tray 2/3 driving, view 1



- Pickup: Tray 2/3 pickup motor > clockwise rotation > 1 gear > 2 gear (Tray 2/3 pickup roller)
- Tray lift: Tray 2/3 pickup motor > counterclockwise rotation > 1 gear > 3 gear > 4 gear > 5 gear > 6 gear and coupler (lift plate)

Figure 3-32 Tray 2/3 driving, view 2



- Feed 1 driving: 1 feed motor > 2 gear > 5 gear > 6 gear > 8 clutch, gear
- Feed 2 driving: 1 feed motor > 2 gear > 5 gear > 6 gear > 8 clutch, gear > 9 gear > 10 gear

Registration unit and loop sensing

Learn about registration and loop sensing.

Registration unit and loop sensing overview

Learn about registration unit and loop sensing.

The paper out of the tray passes through the registration unit, then it moves toward the fuser unit and the output tray.

A paper moves to the registration unit after pickup process. The paper stops at the registration unit for a very short period and aligns with the leading edge of the paper correctly. The feed, registration, tray 1 motor and registration clutch drive the registration roller so that the paper goes between the second transfer roller and the drum surface. The paper passing through the fuser goes out through the fuser out and the paper moves toward the exit unit.

Figure 3-33 Overview of the registration and loop sensing unit

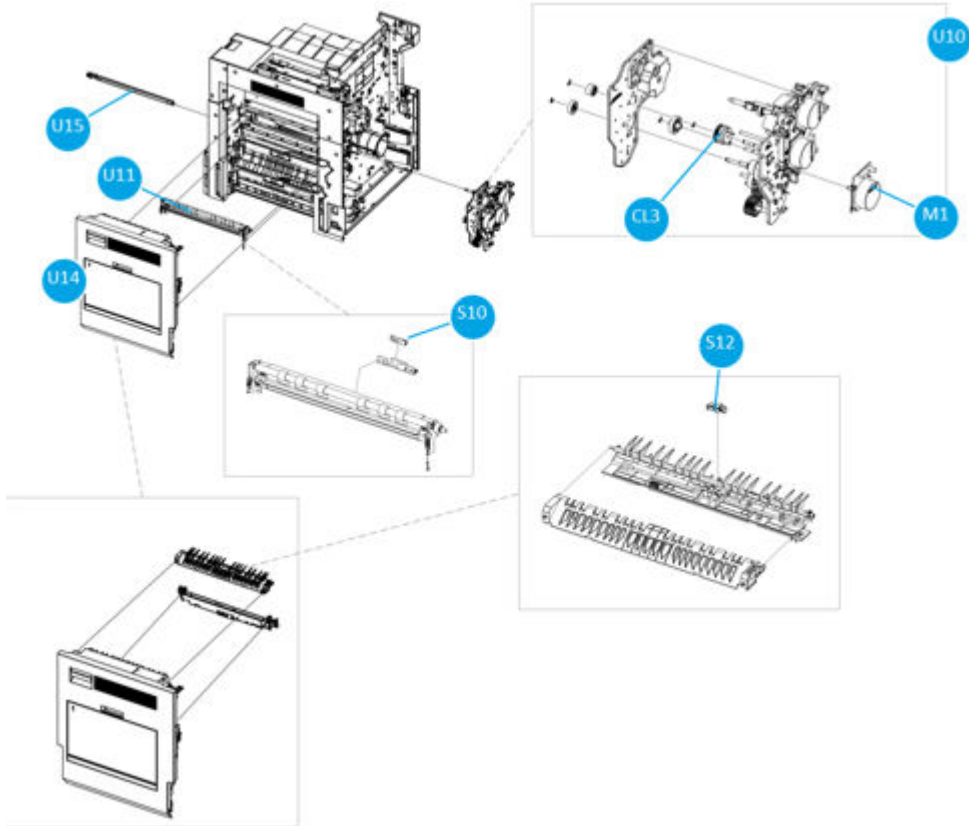


Figure 3-34 Registration unit detailed view (1 of 3)

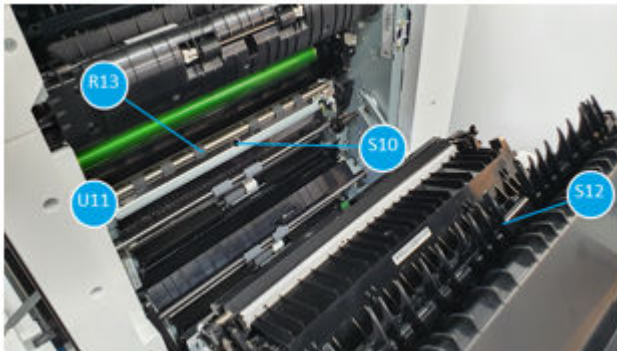


Figure 3-35 Registration unit detailed view (2 of 3)

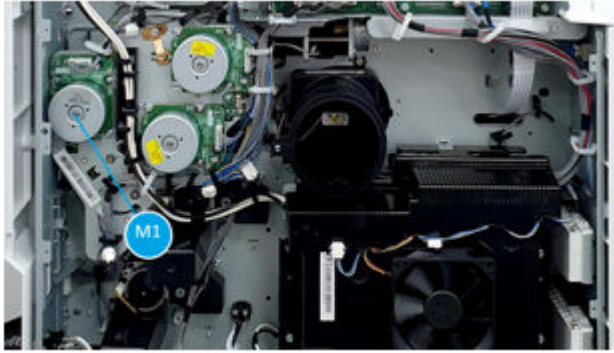


Figure 3-36 Registration unit detailed view (3 of 3)



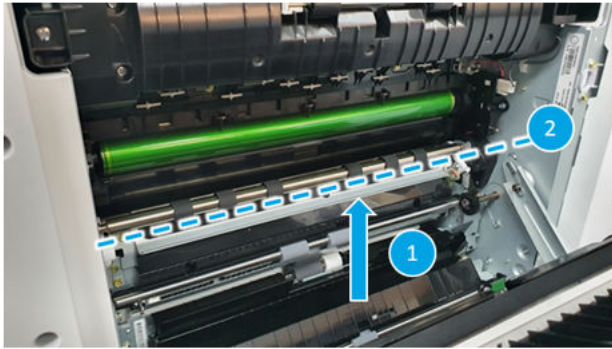
Table 3-20 Part information of registration unit

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U11	Registration unit	5QJ90-60129	Arranges the paper moved from the tray
S10	Registration sensor	0604-001381	Checks whether the paper comes into the registration unit
R13	Registration roller	NA	Aligns with the leading edge straight, moves the paper to the drum and second transfer roller
S12	Fuser out sensor	0604-001393	Checks whether the paper moves out from the fuser without a paper jam
U10	Main drive assembly	JC93-01676A	
M1	Feed, Registration, and Tray 1 motor	JC31-00123B	Drives registration roller
CL3	Registration clutch	JC47-00037A	Drives registration roller
U15	Paper dust holder assembly	JC93-00078C	Removes and stores dust from the paper


Registration unit operation

Learn about registration unit operation.

1. The paper is moved into the registration until it reaches the registration roller.



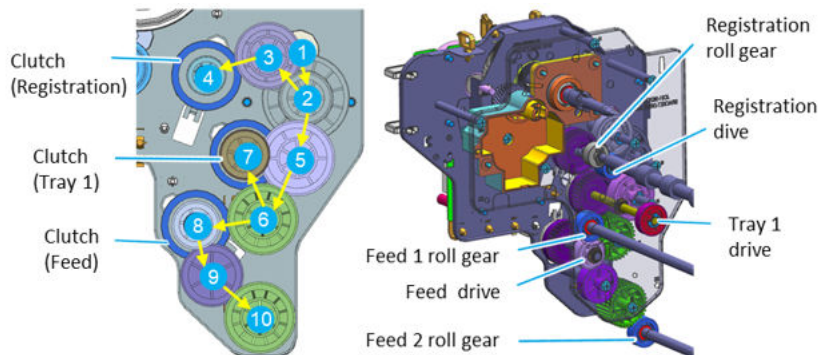
2. The registration roller keeps moving the paper toward the roller for a short period of time to align with the leading edge straight.
3. The registration roller moves the paper to the drum and second transfer roller.

 **NOTE:** Problems such as skew may occur due to the incorrect alignment of the paper. To correct this, Service Tools has a function to adjust the timing of the registration roller's resume operation.

Registration unit driving

Learn about registration unit driving.

Figure 3-37 Registration unit driving



- **Registration unit driving: 1 registration motor > 2 gear > 3 gear > 4 clutch/gear**

Exit unit

Learn about the exit unit.

Exit unit overview

Learn about the exit unit.

The exit unit is the last step of printing, and it discharges the paper to the outside of the product or moves the paper through the paper path so that the it can be moved toward the duplex unit for duplex printing.

The exit works a role of discharging the paper to the out bin. It is composed of an output bin 1 full sensor that checks whether the paper is correctly discharged to the output bin and the stacked paper exceeds the maximum capacity. In case of duplex printing, before discharging the paper, reverse the direction of

rotation of the roller to move the paper to the duplex unit. The exit roller to move the paper to the out bin or duplex unit is driven by the exit motor.

Figure 3-38 Overview of the exit unit

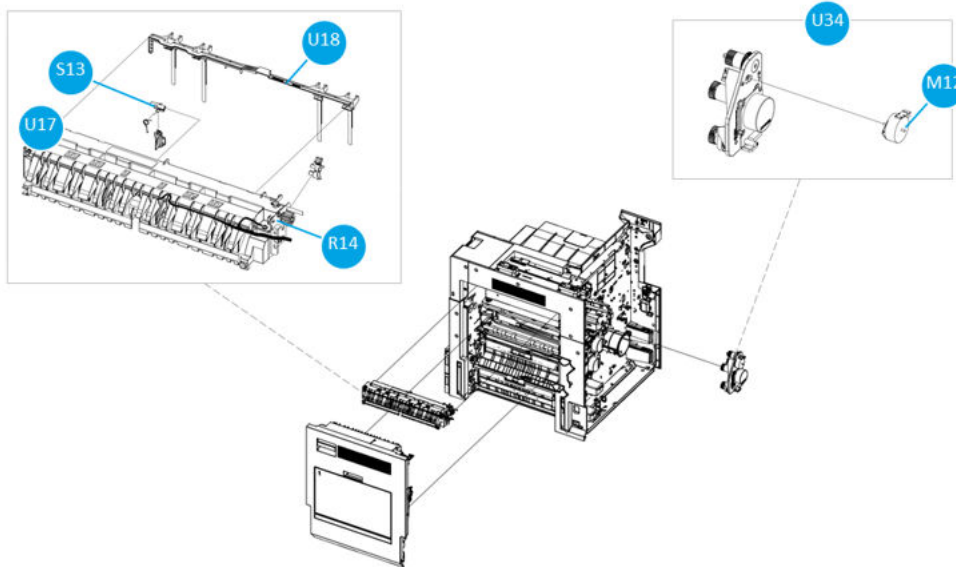


Figure 3-39 Detail view of exit unit (1 of 2)



Figure 3-40 Detail view of exit unit (2 of 2)



Table 3-21 Part information of the exit unit

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U17	Second exit unit (Optional)	Y1G23-67001	An accessory to increase duplex printing speed, essential for the finisher installment

Table 3-21 Part information of the exit unit (continued)

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U16	Job separator (Optional)	6GW52-67901	Second tray
U18	Exit unit	JC90-01856A	-
S13	Out bin 1 full sensor	0604-001393	Checks whether the paper correctly goes out on the output bin and is loaded up to the maximum capacity
R14	Exit 1 roller	NA	Moves paper to the out bin 1 or the duplex unit
U19	Exit stack guide	JC90-01864A	Guides the paper to sit well on the tray
M13	Exit motor	JC93-01686A	Drives the rollers in the exit unit to move the paper from the fuser unit to the exit unit or from the exit unit to the duplex unit

Second exit unit (Optional)

Learn about the second unit overview.

Second exit unit is an accessory that is installed to make the duplex speed reduction when only the exit 1 unit is used equal to the simplex printing speed. In particular, this unit must be installed when installing the inner finisher, stapler-stacker finisher or booklet finisher.

The out bin full 2 sensor is installed to check whether the paper is discharged to out bin 2, and at the same time to check whether the out bin 2 is full. There is a duplex jam 1 sensor to check if the paper has entered the duplex part correctly when printing duplex.

The exit 2 motor works for transferring paper to out bin 2 or in case of duplex printing operate opposite direction so that the paper moves to the duplex unit. In this case, return gate solenoid moves so that the paper path moves to the duplex unit direction.

Figure 3-41 Overview of the second exit unit

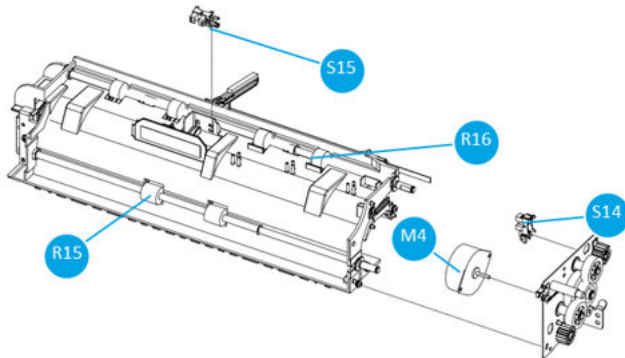


Figure 3-42 Detail view of second exit unit (1 of 2)

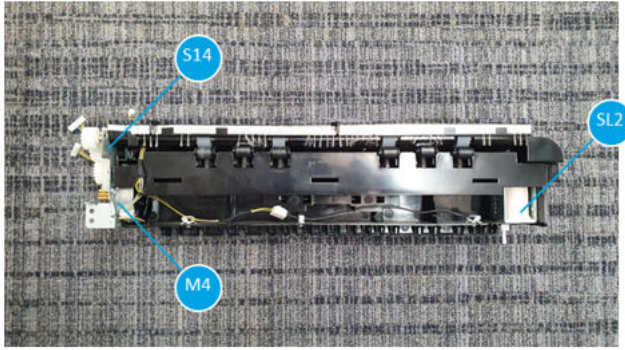


Figure 3-43 Detail view of second exit unit (2 of 2)

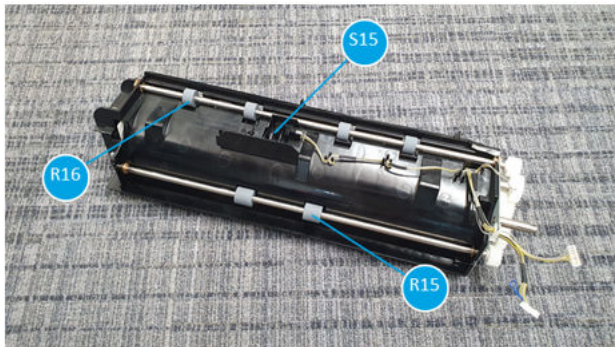


Table 3-22 Part information for the second exit unit

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U17	Second exit unit	Y1G23-67001	-
SL2	Return gate solenoid	JC33-00031B	Open or closes the paper path in case of printing to the out bin 2
S14	Out bin 2 full sensor	0604-001393	Checks whether the paper correctly goes out on the output bin, and it is loaded up to the maximum capacity (Optional, included in job separator)
M4	Exit 2 motor	JC93-00802A	Drives the exit 2 feed roller and exit 2 roller
S16	Duplex jam 1 sensor	0604-001393	Checks whether the paper correctly moves to the duplex unit
R15	Exit 2 feed roller	NA	Moves paper to the exit 2 roller
R16	Exit 2 roller	NA	Moves paper to the exit 2 or the duplex unit

Job separator (optional)

Learn about the job separator.

Figure 3-44 Job Separator (Optional)

Job separator is an output accessory which is installed at the exit 2 unit in the exit unit for storing paper discharged to the out bin 2.

Figure 3-45 Overview of job separator

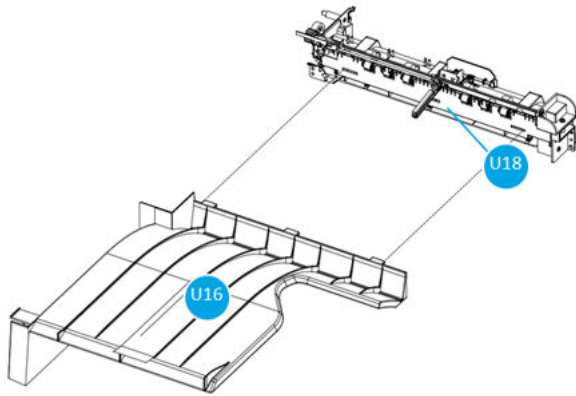


Table 3-23 Overview of job separator

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U18	Second exit	Y1G23-67001	Required when installing the job separator
U16	Job separator	5QK03-61008	

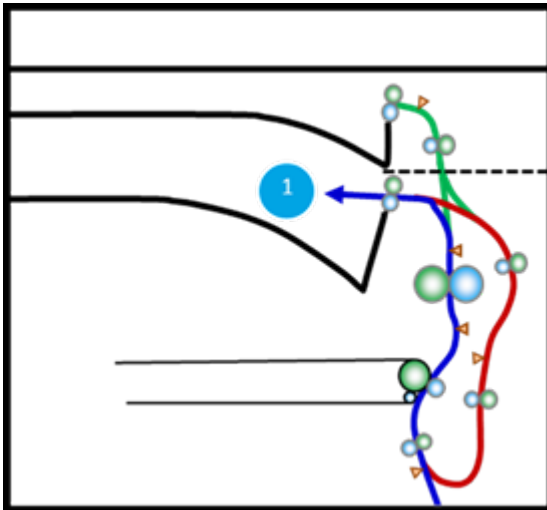
Exit unit operation

Learn about the exit unit operation.

Figure 3-46 Exit unit operation

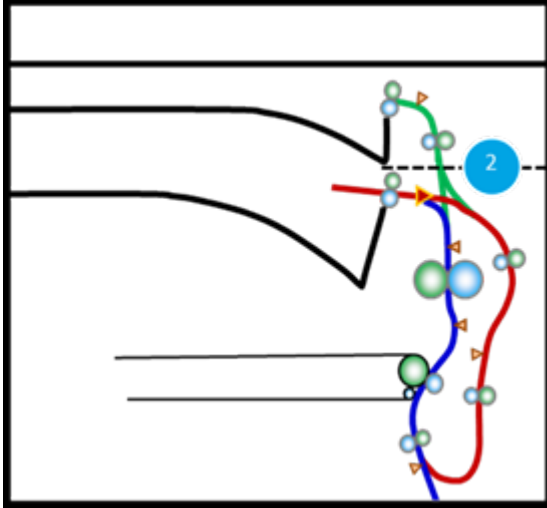
1. In case of simplex printing to out bin 1, a paper flows through the paper path (callout 1).

Figure 3-47 Exit unit operation, view 1



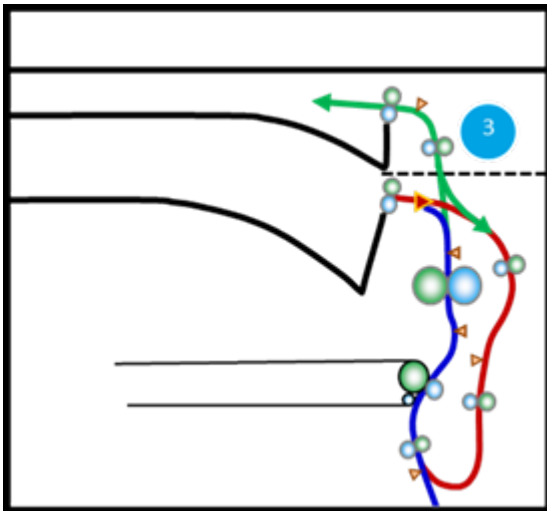
2. In case of duplex printing, the exit motor rotates opposite direction to move the paper to the duplex unit (callout 2).

Figure 3-48 Exit unit operation, view 1



3. When using the optional exit 2 unit, return gate solenoid moves to the direction of the arrow (callout 3) so that the paper moves to the out bin 2 direction.

Figure 3-49 Exit unit operation, view 1

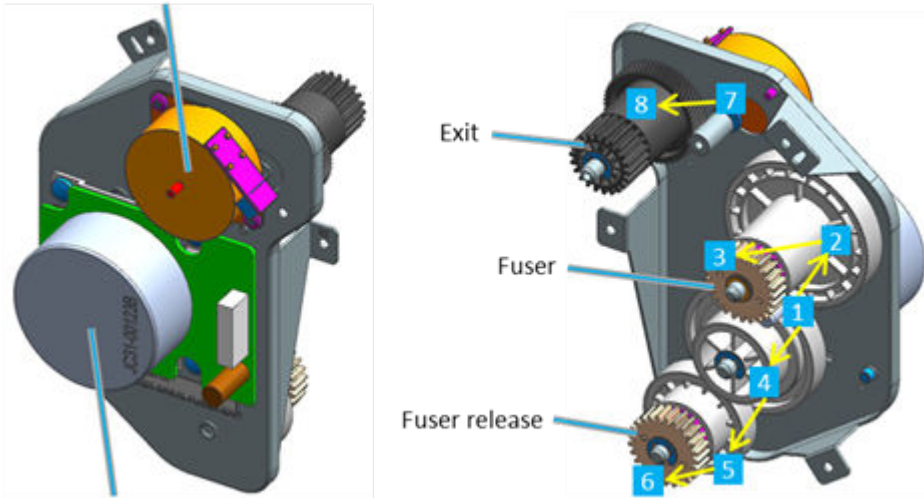


Exit unit driving

Learn about the exit unit driving.

Figure 3-50 Exit unit driving

Exit motor (PM-STEP)



Fuser motor (BLDC)

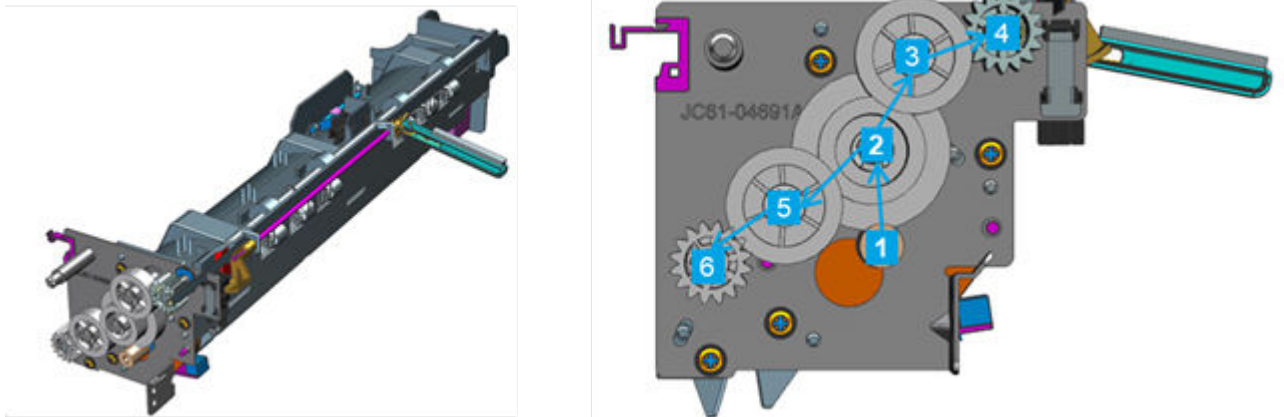
Exit driving: 7 exit motor > clockwise rotation > 8 gear

Duplex driving: 7 exit motor > counterclockwise rotation > 8 gear

Second exit unit driving

Learn about the second exit unit driving.

Figure 3-51 Second exit unit driving



Second exit driving: 1 exit 2 motor > 2 gear > 3 gear > 4 gear

Duplex roller: 1 exit 2 motor > 2 gear > 5 gear > 6 gear

Duplex unit

Learn about the duplex unit.

Duplex unit overview

Learn about the duplex unit.

Duplex unit is a device that allows paper to move from the exit unit to the registration unit for duplex printing.

The paper returned from the exit unit or second exit unit moves through this unit mounted on the right door. Duplex jam 2 sensor is applied in the middle of the duplex unit paper path to check whether the paper flows through the duplex unit correctly. The operation of this unit is run by the duplex motor mounted on the back of the right door unit.

Figure 3-52 Overview of the duplex unit

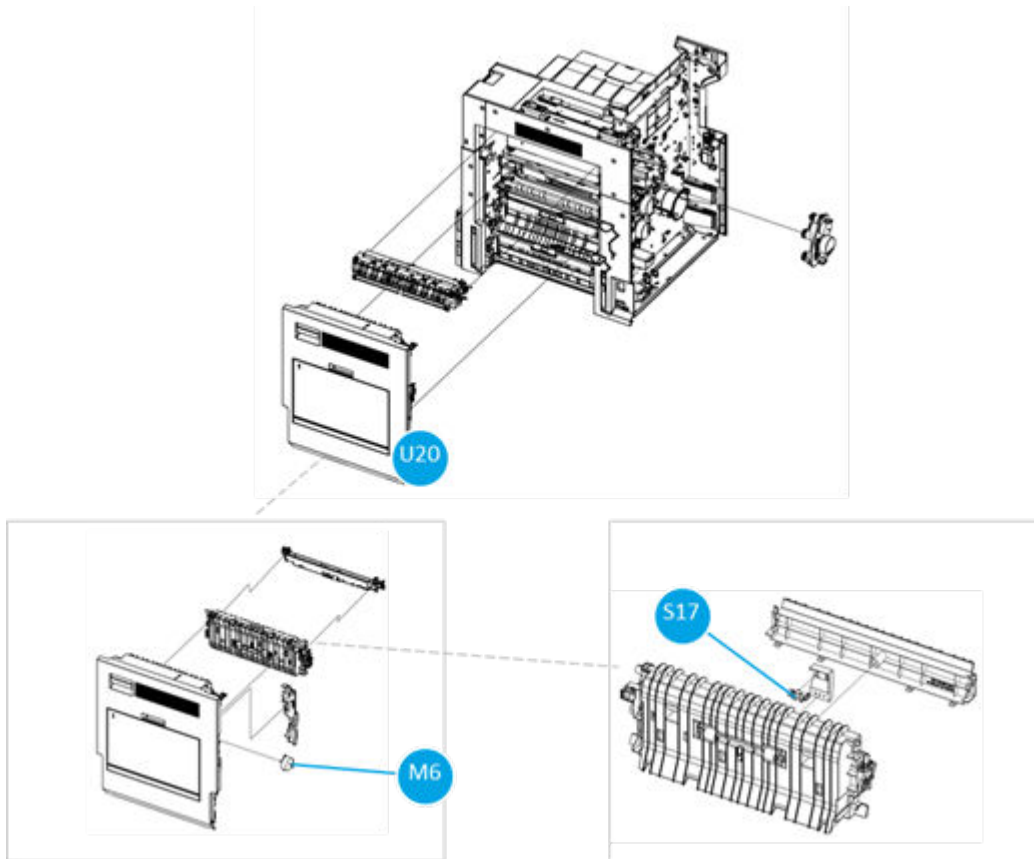


Figure 3-53 Detail view of the duplex unit

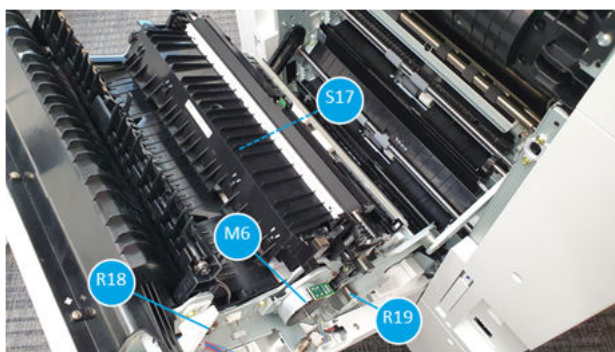


Table 3-24 Overview of the duplex unit

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U20	Duplex assembly	JC95-02261A	-

Table 3-24 Overview of the duplex unit (continued)

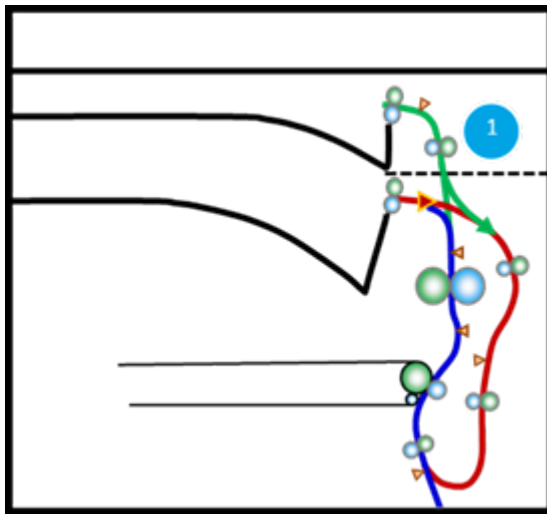
Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
S17	Duplex jam 2 sensor	0604-001393	Checks whether the paper goes through the duplex unit
M6	Duplex motor	JC93-01687A	Drives rollers to move the paper from the exit unit to the registration unit
R18	Duplex 1 roller	NA	Moves paper to the duplex 2 roller
R19	Duplex 2 roller	NA	Moves paper to the registration roller

Duplex unit operation

Learn about duplex unit operation.

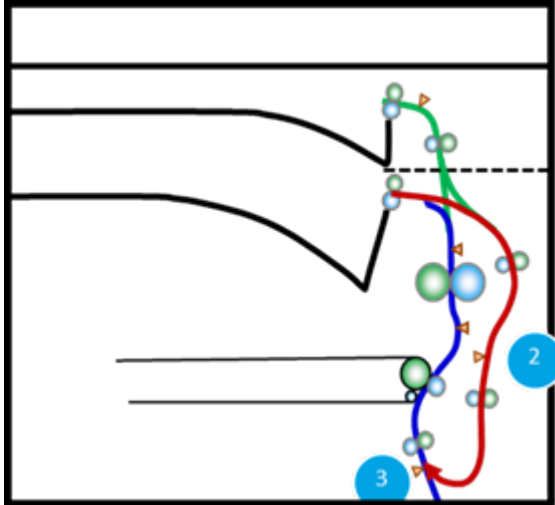
1. In case of duplex printing, a paper turns back and moves to the duplex unit from the exit unit or the second exit unit (callout 1).

Figure 3-54 Duplex unit operation, view 1



2. Duplex motor drives feeding rollers so that the paper goes through the duplex unit (callout 2).

Figure 3-55 Duplex unit operation, view 2

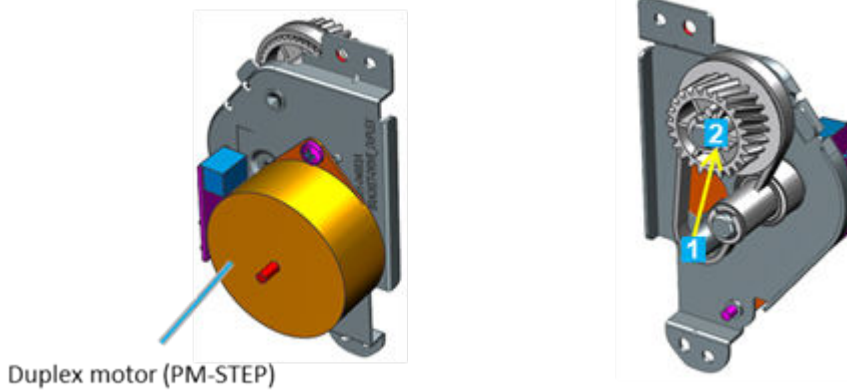


- 3. The paper arrived at the registration roller starts the next printing (callout 3).

Duplex unit driving

Learn about duplex unit driving.

Figure 3-56 Duplex unit driving



- Duplex unit driving: 1 duplex motor > 2 gear

Toner flow system

Learn about the toner flow system.

Toner flow overview

Learn about the toner flow overview.

Toner flow workflow

Learn about the toner flow workflow.

Figure 3-57 Toner flow workflow

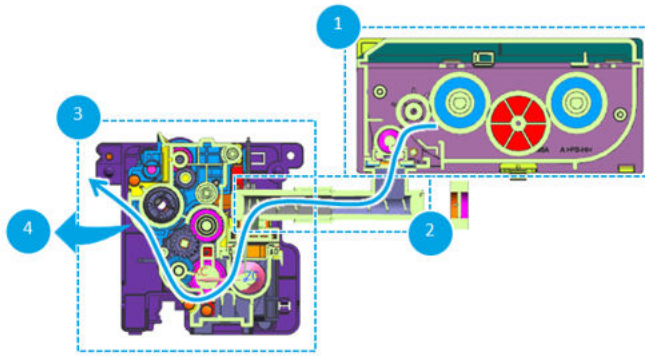


Table 3-25 Toner flow workflow

Callout	Part name	Description
1	Toner cartridge	Stores the toner and moves the toner to the toner reservoir when printing
2	Toner duct	Moves the toner to the developer unit
3	Image creation	Forms images and transfers toner to the paper to print out
4	Toner collection unit	Receives discarded toner from drum and ITB and store it

Toner flow sensors

Learn about the toner flow sensors.

Figure 3-58 Toner flow sensors

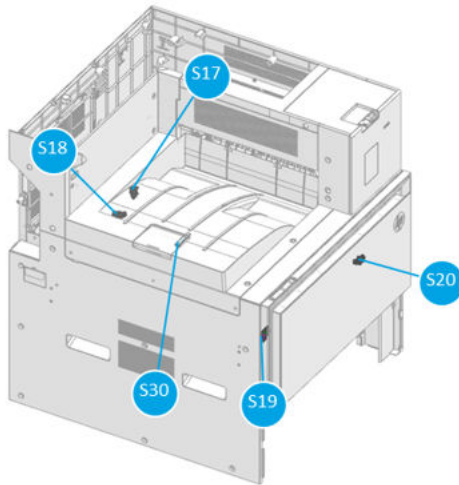


Table 3-26 Toner flow sensors

Callout	Part name	Part number	Sensor type	Description
S17	Toner dispense motor sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sensing)	Checks the operation of toner dispense motor
S18	Toner duct motor sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sensing)	Checks the operation of toner duct motor

Table 3-26 Toner flow sensors (continued)

Callout	Part name	Part number	Sensor type	Description
S19	Toner collection unit full sensor	JC93-00492A	Photo interrupter (sensing)	Detects whether the toner collection unit is full
S20	Toner collection unit detection sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sensing)	Detects whether toner collection unit is installed
S30	Toner residual amount sensor	JC32-00024A	Inductance sensor	Detect the toner level in the cartridge

Toner flow motors

Learn about the toner flow motors.

Figure 3-59 Toner flow motors

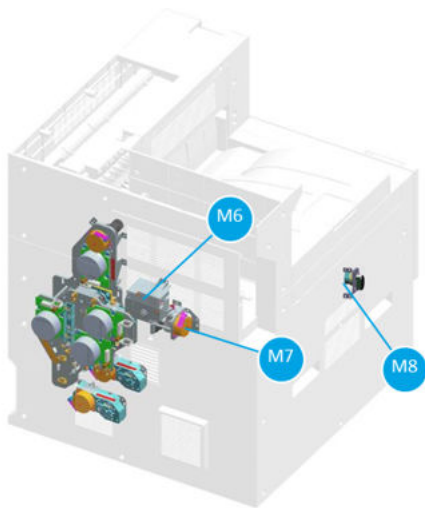


Table 3-27 Toner flow motors

Callout	Part name	Part number	Motor type	Description
M6	Toner dispense motor	JC31-00094A	Stepping motor	Drives the toner cartridge
M7	Toner duct motor	JC93-01686A	Stepping motor	Transfers toner from the toner cartridge to the developer unit
M8	Toner collection unit motor	JC31-00166A	Stepping motor	Drives the toner collection unit auger

Toner flow system

Learn about the toner flow system.

Toner cartridge

Learn about the toner cartridge.

Toner cartridge overview

Learn about the toner cartridge overview.

The toner cartridge is a unit that safely stores toner for printing and supplies toner in the duct direction during printing.

When the toner cartridge is mounted on the product, the toner shutter opens to create a passage for the toner to flow to the toner duct. The toner is transferred to the toner duct unit by driving the toner dispense motor. Through the auger inside the toner cartridge, the toner moves toward the toner shutter and falls into the toner duct by gravity. The toner dispense motor sensor checks the motor rotation so that it detects whether the motor is defective as well as calculates how much toner is supplied to the developer.

Figure 3-60 Overview of the toner cartridge

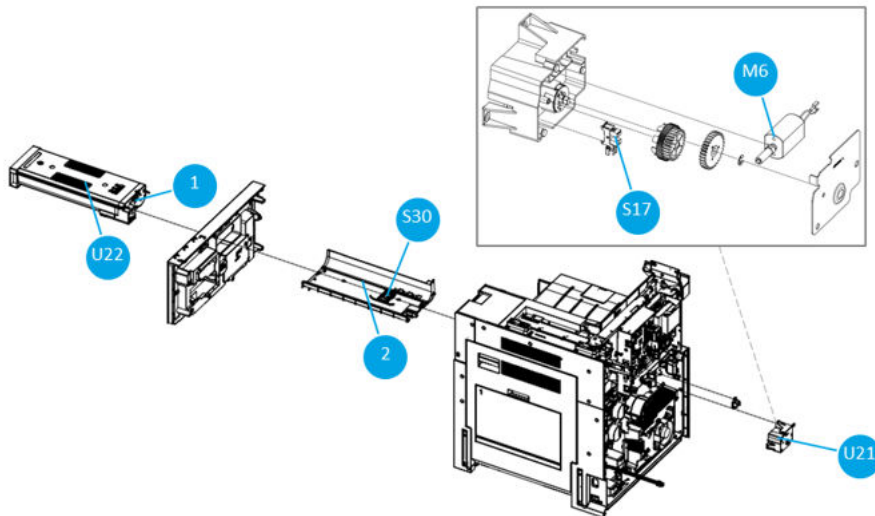


Figure 3-61 Detail view of the toner cartridge, view 1

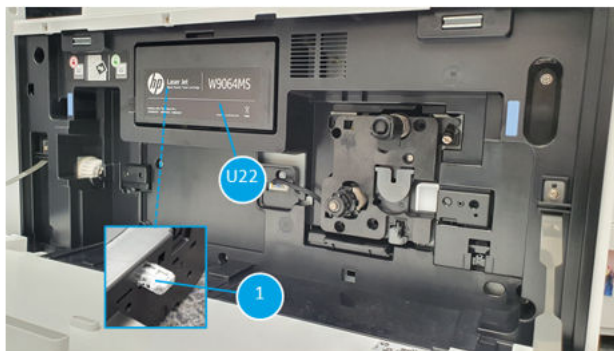


Figure 3-62 Detail view of the toner cartridge, view 2

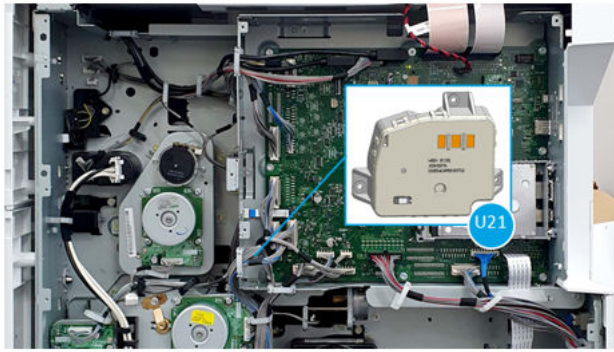


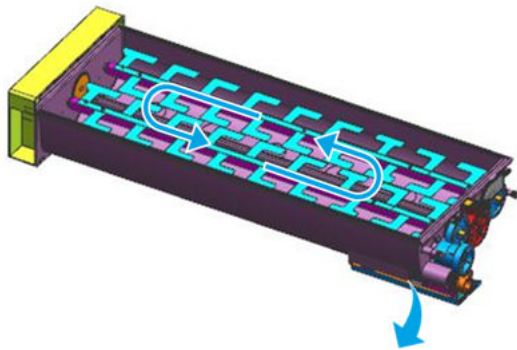
Table 3-28 Parts information for the toner cartridge

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U21	Toner dispense motor assembly	JC93-01681A	-
M6	Toner dispense motor	JC31-00094A	Drives toner cartridge to supply black toner to the toner duct
S17	Toner dispense motor sensor	0604-001393	Checks whether the toner dispense motor rotates and use the signal to calculate
U22-1	Black toner cartridge - standard yield	W9064-67004	Stores black toner
U22-2	Black toner cartridge - high yield	W9065-67007	Stores black toner
1	Toner CRUM module assembly	5QJ94-50001	Part where the toner cartridge plug is connected
2	Toner guide unit	JC93-01789A	-
S30	Toner residual amount sensor	JC32-00024A	Detects the toner level in the cartridge

Toner cartridge operation

Learn about toner cartridge operation.

Figure 3-63 Toner cartridge operation



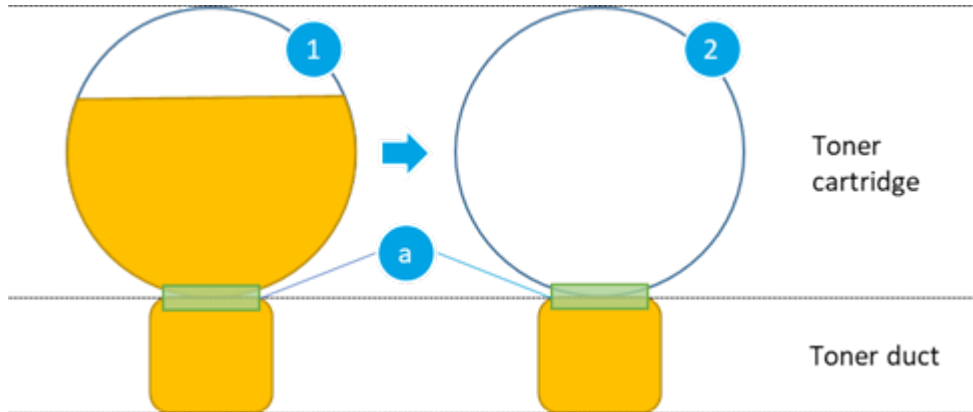
The toner dispense motor drives when toner concentration sensor requires to supply the toner to the developer unit. Toner auger drives, toner moves to the direction of arrow, then at the end of the toner cartridge, toner moves toward the developer unit.

Toner residual amount sensor operation

Learn about the toner residual amount sensor operation.

1. When the toner is left enough in the toner cartridge, toner consumption is calculated by an algorithm.

Figure 3-64 Toner residual amount sensor operation

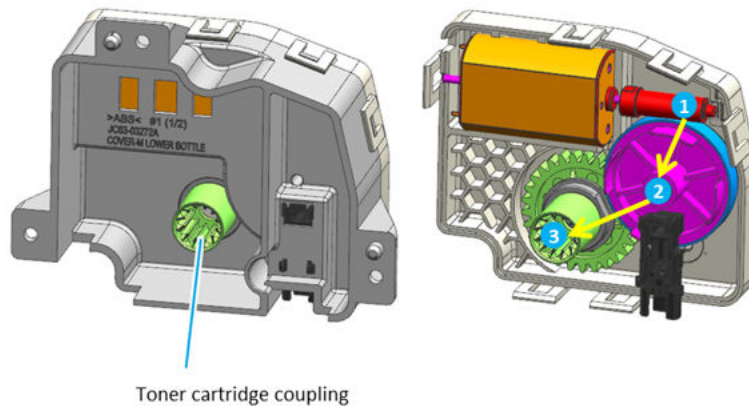


2. If toner in the toner cartridge runs out, the toner residual amount sensor (callout a) detects the toner level in the cartridge by checking carrier amount and displays a toner with very low message.

Toner dispense driving

Learn about toner dispense driving.

Figure 3-65 Toner dispense driving



- Toner dispense driving: 1 DC motor > 2 gear > 3 gear

Toner duct

Learn about the toner duct.

Toner duct overview

Learn about the toner duct overview.

The toner duct unit serves to receive toner from the toner cartridge and transfers it to the developer unit. Toner flow is operated by the toner duct motor and at the same time toner duct motor sensor detects whether the toner duct motor rotates properly.

Figure 3-66 Overview of toner duct

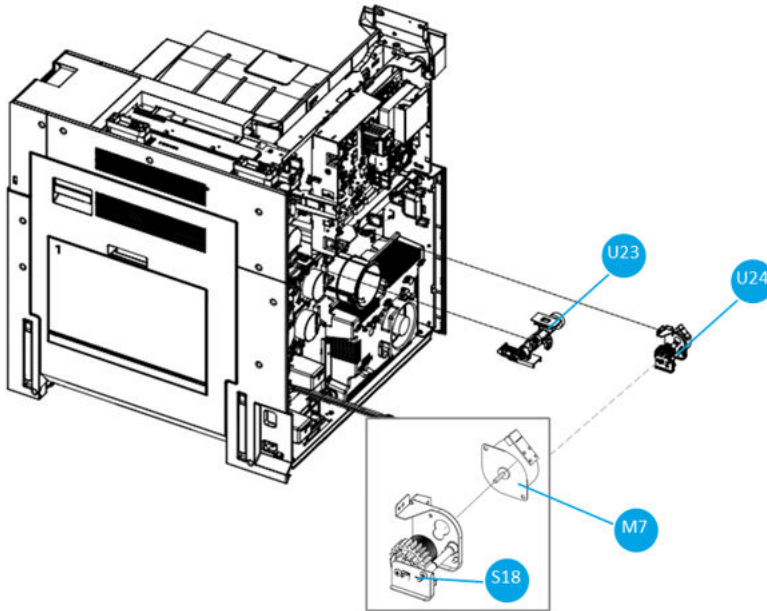


Figure 3-67 Detail view of the toner duct

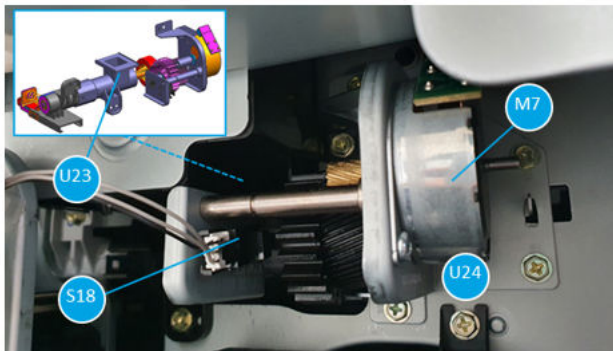


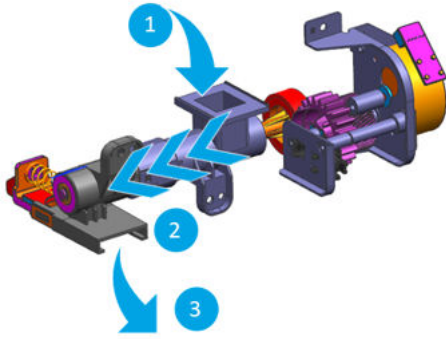
Table 3-29 Part information for the toner duct

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U23	Toner duct unit	JC93-00917A	Toner passage from the toner cartridge to the developer unit
U24	Toner duct motor assembly	JC93-01685A	-
M7	Toner duct motor	JC93-01686A	Transfers toner from the toner cartridge to the developer unit
S18	Toner duct motor sensor	0604-001393	Checks whether the toner duct motor operates properly

Toner duct operation

Learn about the toner duct operation.

Figure 3-68 Toner duct operation

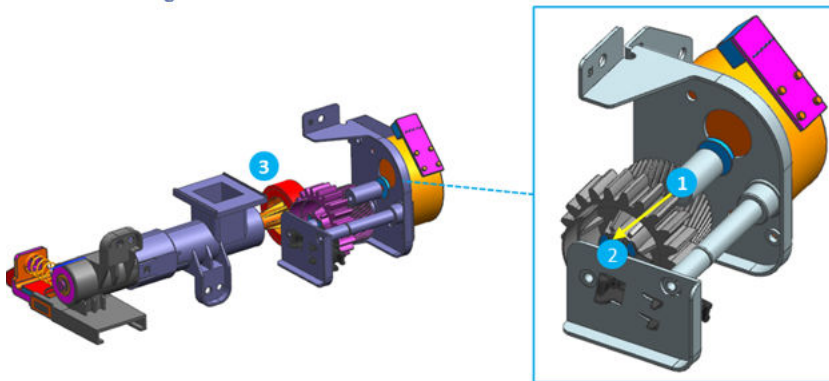


1. Toner comes from the toner cartridge when the toner concentration sensor checks toner is very low for creating the images at the developer unit.
2. Toner from the toner cartridge move to the toner duct unit.
3. Toner moves to the developer unit by the auger which is operated by the toner duct motor.

Toner duct driving

Learn about toner duct driving.

Figure 3-69 Toner duct driving



- Toner duct driving: 1 PM-STEP > 2 gear > 3 duct gear

Toner Collection Unit (TCU)

Learn about the Toner Collection Unit (TCU).

Toner Collection Unit (TCU) overview

Learn about the Toner Collection Unit (TCU).

The toner collection unit receives and stores waste toner from developer unit, drum unit and ITB unit.

When the toner collection unit is installed, the toner collection unit detection sensor identifies that whether the toner collection unit is correctly attached. As waste toners accumulate in this unit, a toner collection motor and an auger connected to it help to load the toner flat into the unit. When the waste

toner becomes full inside the toner collection unit, the toner collection unit full sensor detects it and displays a warning message, which guides the customer to replace the unit at an appropriate time.


 **NOTE:** The Toner Collection Unit (TCU) is interchangeably used with the Waste Toner Bottle (WTB). These are synonymous for related parts or terms.

Figure 3-70 Overview of the toner collection unit

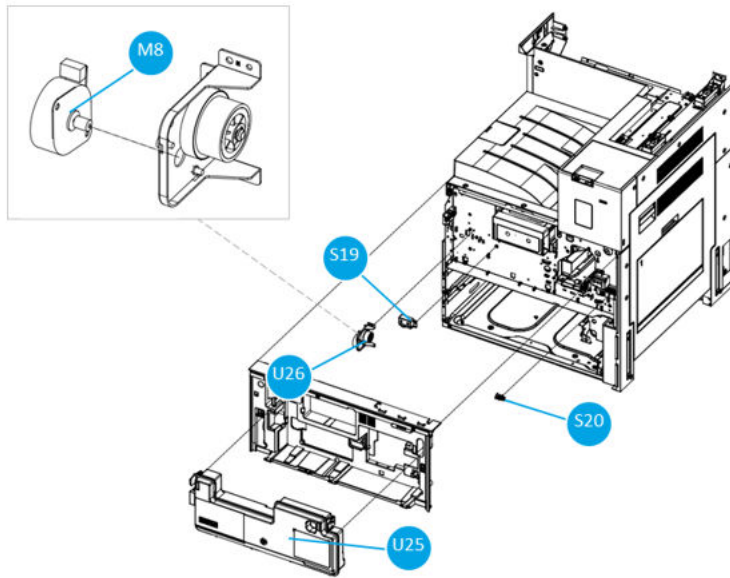


Figure 3-71 Detail view of the toner collection unit, view 1

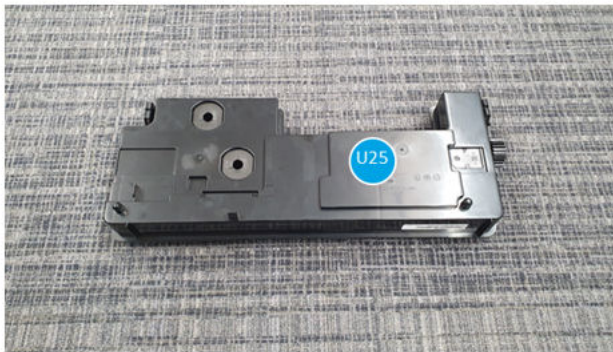


Figure 3-72 Detail view of the toner collection unit, view 2

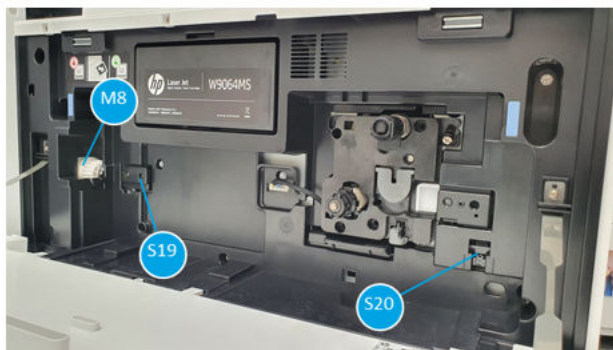


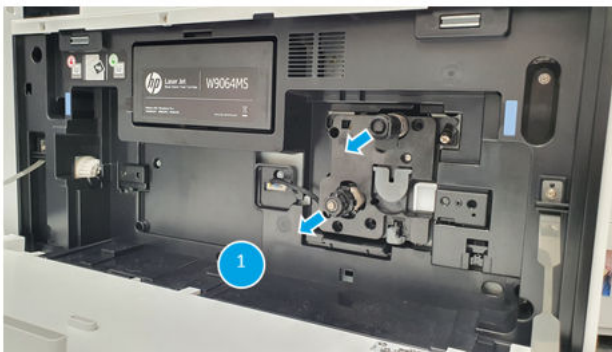
Table 3-30 Overview of the toner collection unit

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U25	Toner collection unit	6SB84-67001	Stores the toner waste
S20	Toner collection unit detection sensor	0604-001393	Detects whether the toner collection unit is installed
U24	Toner collection unit drive assembly	JC93-00445A	-
M7	Toner collection unit motor	JC31-00166A	Moves the auger so that the waste toner is stored flat inside the unit
S19	Toner collection unit full sensor	JC93-00492A	Detects whether the toner collection unit is full

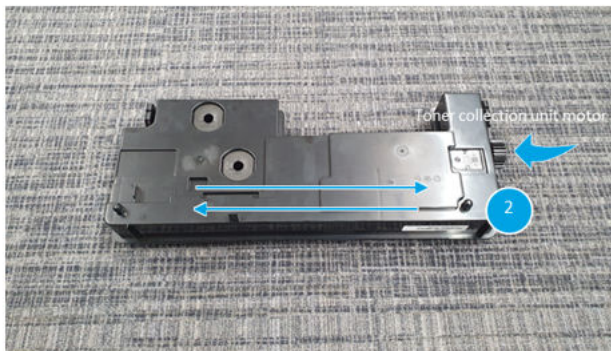
Toner collection unit operation

Learn about the toner collection unit operation.

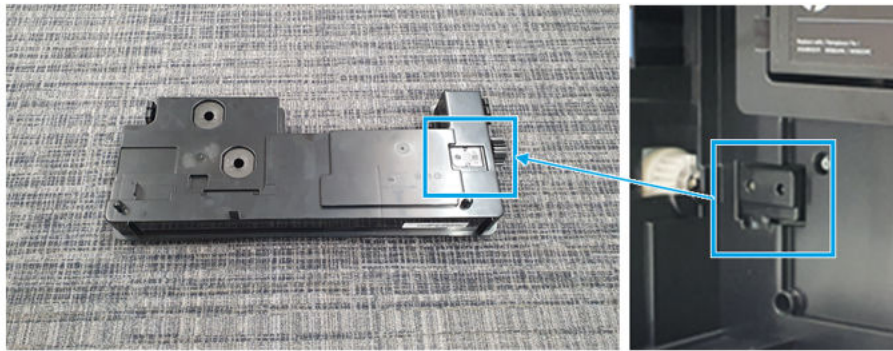
1. After printing, the remaining toner moves from the developer and drum to the toner collection unit.



2. The waste toners accumulated inside the toner collection unit are spread flat by an auger operated by the toner collection unit motor.



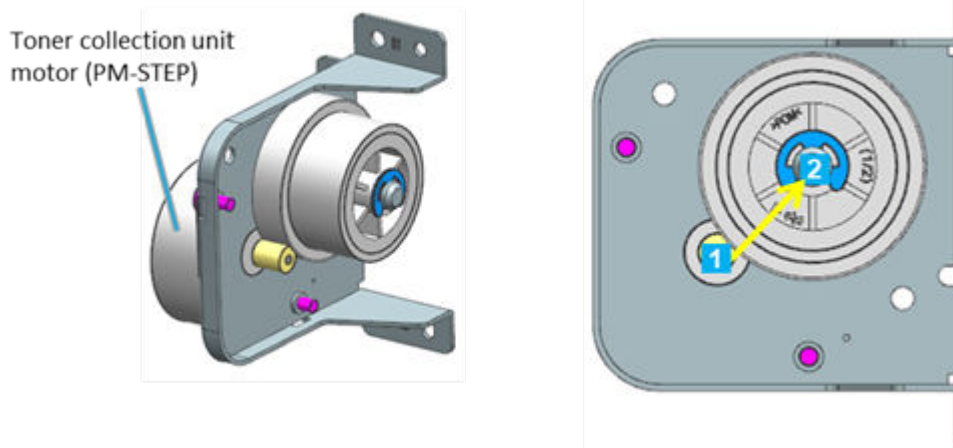
3. The toner collection unit full sensor transmits LED beam, then receives the reflected value from the toner collection unit so that it checks whether the toner collection unit is full.



Toner collection unit driving

Learn about toner collection unit driving.

Figure 3-73 Toner collection unit driving



- Toner collection driving: 1 toner collection unit motor > 2 gear

Image creation

Learn about image creation.

Image creation overview

Learn about the image creation overview.

Image creation workflow

Learn about the image creation workflow.

Figure 3-74 Image creation workflow

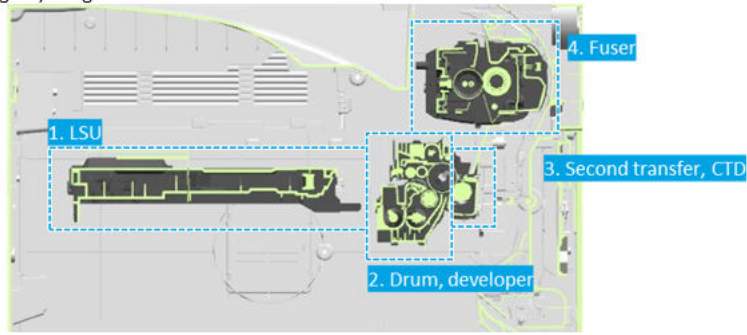


Table 3-31 Image creation workflow

Callout	Part name	Description
1	Laser Scanning Unit (LSU)	Constructs a latent image by removing electric charges by a laser on the surface of the drum
2-1	Developer	Receives toner from reservoir unit and makes toner have electrical properties
2-2	Drum	Receives toner from the developer unit and creates the image
3-1	Color Toner Density (CTD)	Calibrates toner density
3-2	Second transfer unit	Transfer the image from drum unit onto the paper
4	Fuser	Applies heat and pressure to the toner particles to adhere to the paper

Image creation sensors

Learn about the toner flow sensors.

Figure 3-75 Image creation sensors

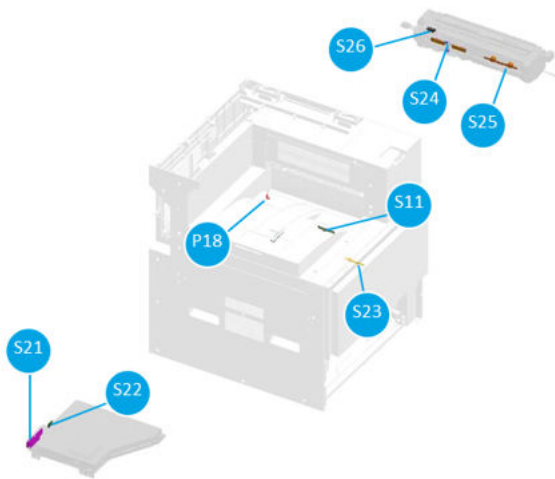


Table 3-32 Image creation sensors

Callout	Part name	Part number	Sensor type	Description
S21	LSU LD power	NA	-	Generates the laser
S22	LSU Hsync	NA	-	Decides the starting point of a line.

Table 3-32 Image creation sensors (continued)

Callout	Part name	Part number	Sensor type	Description
P18	Eraser	NA	-	Converts drum surface potential to the initial state
S23	Toner concentration sensor	NA	Density sensor	Measures toner concentration in the black developer unit to control the amount of supplying toner
S11	CTD sensor	JC32-00015A	Density sensor	Detects rear side image density
S24	Thermistor	NA	Non-contact type	Measures the surface temperature of the fuser belt by 2 non-contact type thermistors
S25	Thermostat	NA	-	Cuts off the power supply to the halogen lamp by opening the circuit when the fusing belt becomes abnormally hot
S26	Fuser gap home sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter(Sensing)	Checks and operates the fuser roller and the pressure roller pressurized and released

Image creation motors

Learn about the image creation motors.

Figure 3-76 Image creation motors

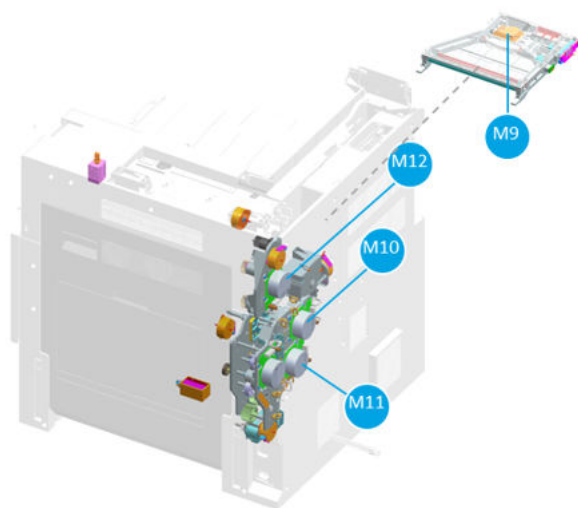


Table 3-33 Image creation motors

Callout	Part name	Part number	Motor type	Description
M9	LSU motor	NA	Polygon motor	Applies the laser to the drum surface as a line
M10	Drum motor	JC31-00123A	BLDC motor	Drives the drum unit
M11	Developer motor	JC31-00123A	BLDC motor	Drives the developer
U34	Fuser and exit drive assembly	JC93-01679A	-	-

Table 3-33 Image creation motors (continued)

Callout	Part name	Part number	Motor type	Description
M12	Fuser motor	JC31-00123B	BLDC motor	Drives the fuser unit, the fuser pressurization, and the release operation

Laser Scanning Unit (LSU)

Learn about the Laser Scanning Unit (LSU).

Laser Scanning Unit (LSU) overview

Learn about the Laser Scanning Unit (LSU) overview.

The Laser Scanning Unit (LSU) constructs a latent image by removing electric charges by a laser on the surface of the drum.

The LSU Laser Diode (LD) power makes a laser, driving the LSU motor to expose the laser on the drum as a line through the two F-theta lens. The laser beam is detected by the LSU PD PCA at the scanning start point and creates the horizontal sync signal.


 **NOTE:** When the LSU is replaced or re-installed, CPR reference adjustment in ServiceTools is recommended.

Figure 3-77 Overview of the laser scanning unit

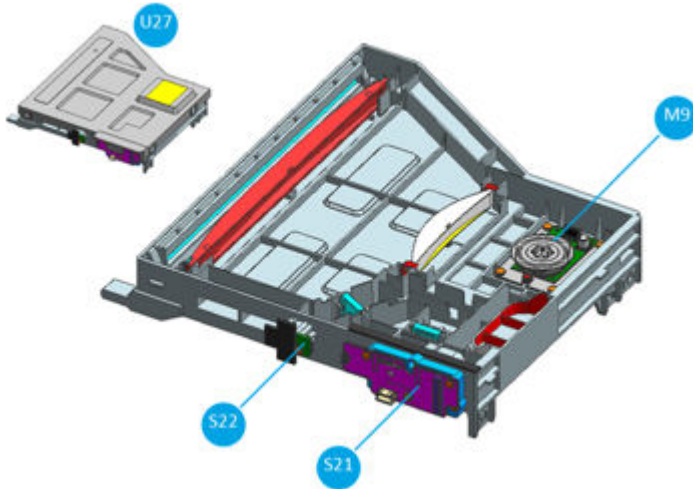


Figure 3-78 Detail view of the laser scanning unit

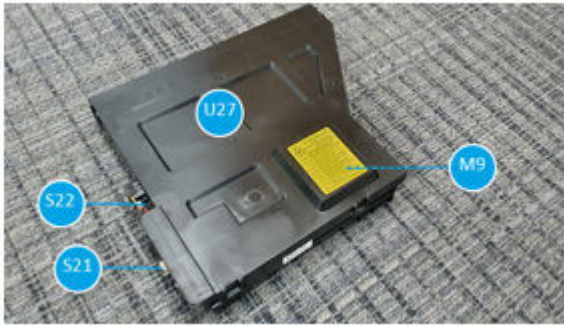


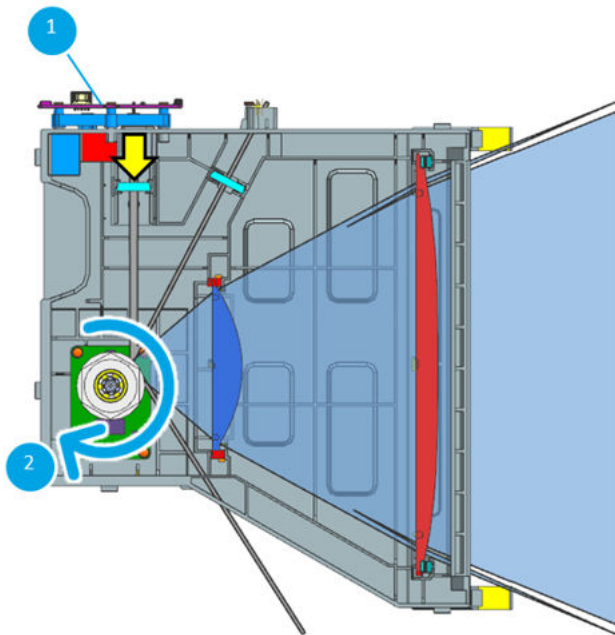
Table 3-34 Overview of the laser scanning unit

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U27	LSU unit	5QK18-60001	Develops an image on the drum surface
M9	LSU motor	NA	Applies the laser to the drum surface as a line
S21	LSU LD power	NA	Generates the laser
S22	LSU Hsync	NA	Decides the starting point of a line

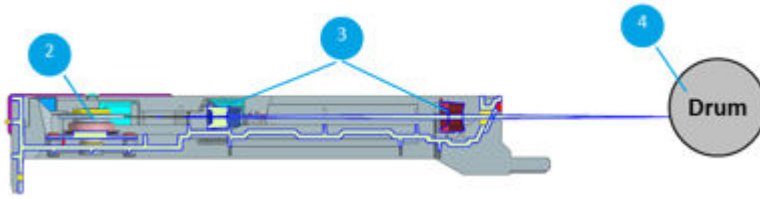
Laser Scanning Unit (LSU) operation

Learn about the Laser Scanning Unit (LSU) operation.

1. LSU LD PCA generates a laser beam(Callout 1), then the polygon motor rotates to reflect the laser beam to the F-theta lens to create image as a line(Callout 2).



2. The horizontal lines reaches the surface of the drum unit(Callout 4) through the 2 F-theta lens(Callout 3)



Developer and drum unit

Learn about the developer and drum unit.

Developer and drum unit overview

Learn about the developer and the drum unit.

The developer unit receives toner from the reservoir unit and creates images by the toner with the drum unit.

The toner concentration sensor determines whether the toner in the developer unit is insufficient. In this case, the developer unit receives the toner from the toner cartridge through the toner duct unit. The newly supplied toner is evenly mixed with the existing toner by the mixing auger. At this time, the developer unit's roller and auger are driven by the developer motor. The end of the developer unit is connected to the toner collection unit, the wasted toner after developing process is thrown away.

The drum unit receives toner from the developer unit and develops the image, and remaining toners that are not relocated on the paper are separated from the drum by the cleaning blade and moved to the toner collection unit.

The drum unit is driven by the drum motor and the developer unit is rotated by the developer motor independently.

Figure 3-79 Overview of the developer and drum unit

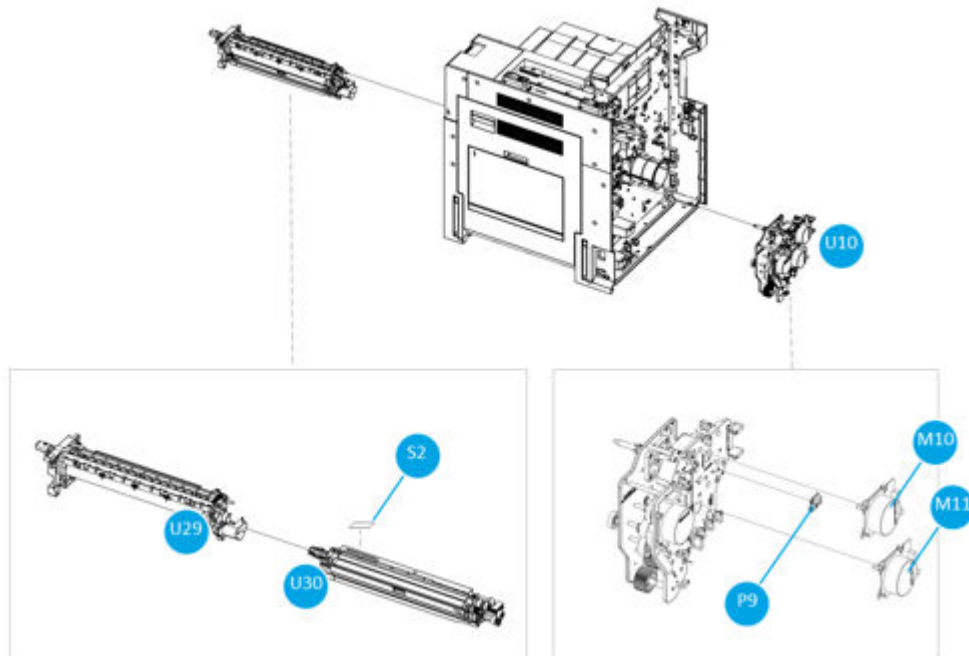


Figure 3-80 Detail view of the developer and drum, view 1

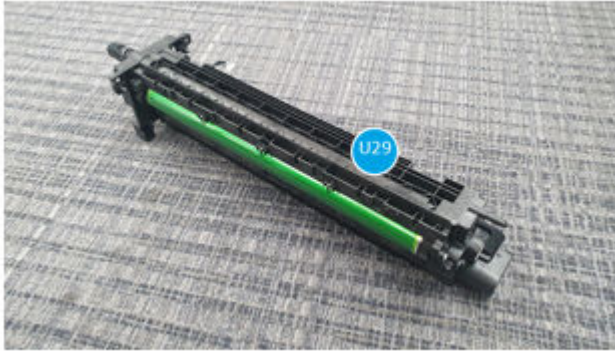


Figure 3-81 Detail view of the developer and drum, view 2

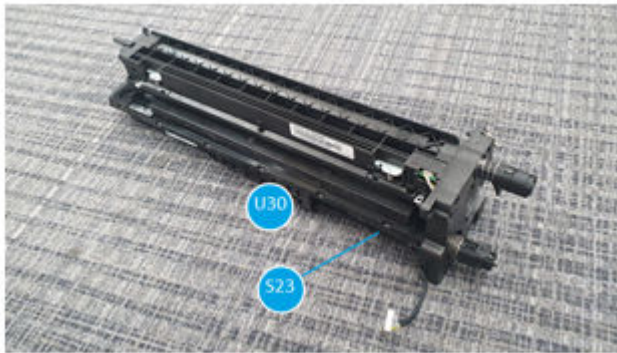


Figure 3-82 Detail view of the developer and drum, view 3

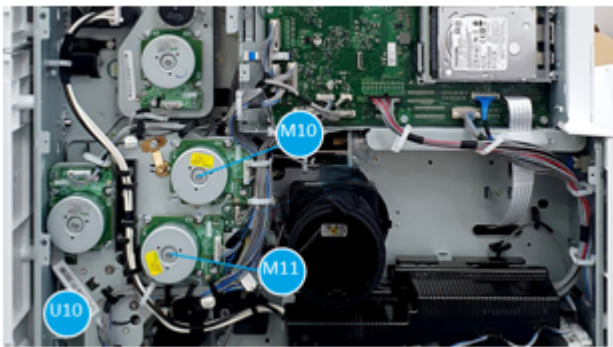


Table 3-35 Parts information for developer and drum unit

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U29	Drum unit	W9066-67001	Receive toner from the developer unit and create the image
U30	Developer unit	5PN67-67001	Mixes and charges the toner with the carrier and delivers them to the drum unit
K4	Developer powder kit	5QJ90-60106	-
S23	Toner concentration sensor	NA	Measures toner concentration in the developer unit to control the amount of supplying toner
U10	Main drive assembly	JC93-01676A	-
M11	Developer motor	JC31-00123A	Drives the developer unit

Table 3-35 Parts information for developer and drum unit (continued)

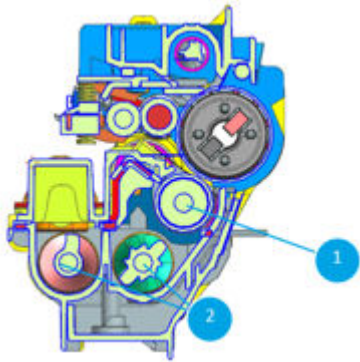
Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
M10	Drum motor	JC31-00123A	Drives the drum unit

Developer and drum unit operation

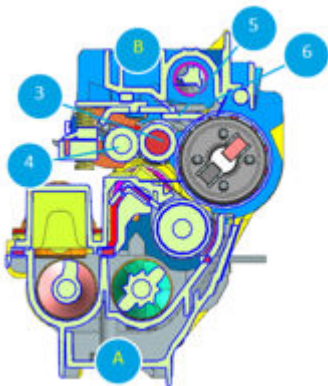
Learn about the developer and drum unit operation.

Figure 3-83 Developer and drum unit operation

1. The developer powder is supplied to the development roller(Callout 1) by the two mixing augers(Callout 2). The development unit has a Toner Carrier (TC) sensor, it is used for controlling the operating range of the toner density of the printing image.



2. The drum surface is charged with a negative voltage and exposed to the light from the Laser Scanning Unit(LSU). The light creates a latent image by discharging on the surface. The negative-charged toner particles are attached to the latent image on the drum and transferred on the paper by positive bias applied to the transfer roller.
3. The developed toner moves to the drum unit(Callout B) from the developer unit(Callout A). The drum unit has a charge roller(Callout 3) to charge the drum surface and a cleaning roller(Callout 4) to clean the charge roller after the toner transfer process. The cleaning blade(Callout 5) and the eraser(Callout 6) removes the toner particles remining on the drum surface and initializes drum surface for the next printing.

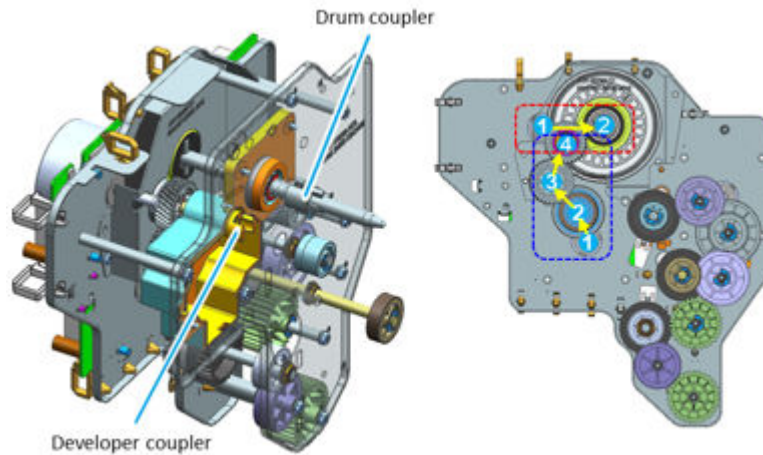


4. There is a security chip(CRUM) at the drum unit which stores the count information and other operating configuration with security algorithm.

Developer and drum unit driving

Learn about developer and drum unit driving.

Figure 3-84 Developer and drum unit driving



1. Developer drive: 1 developer motor > 2 gear > 3 gear > 4 gear and coupler
2. Drum unit: 1 drum unit > 2 gear and coupler

Second Transfer (T2) unit

Learn about the Second Transfer (T2) unit.

Color Toner Density (CTD) & Second Transfer (T2) unit overview

Learn about the Color Toner Density (CTD) & Second Transfer (T2) unit overview.

Color Toner Density (CTD) is a series of operations that correct the color density that changes depending on time and environment. Second transfer roller moves the paper from the registration unit to the fuser contacting with the drum unit, and it works electrically to transfer the toner particles from the drum surface to the paper.

Figure 3-85 Overview of the Color Toner Density (CTD) unit

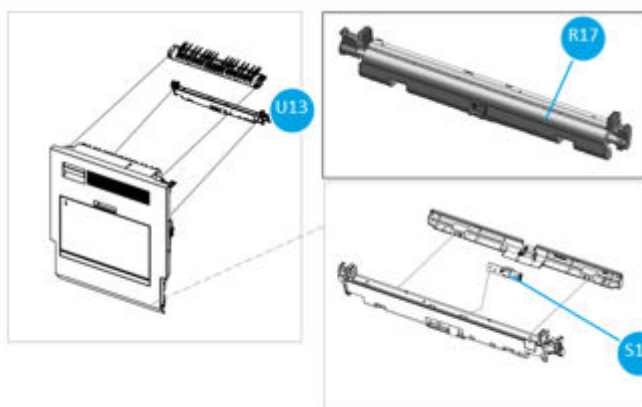


Figure 3-86 Detail view of the Color Toner Density (CTD) unit

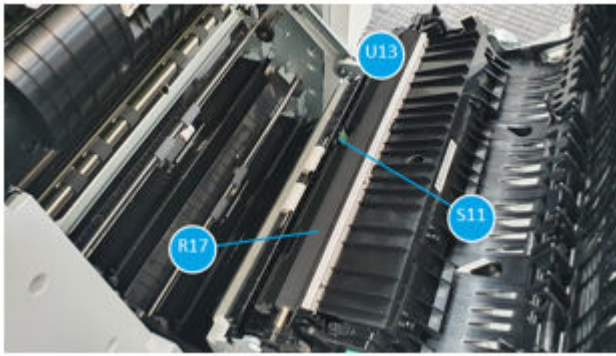


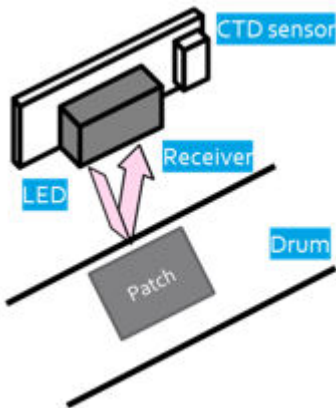
Table 3-36 Overview of the second transfer unit

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U13	Second Transfer assembly	5PN70-67001	-
S11	Color Toner Density(CTD) sensor	JC32-00025A	Measures toner density from a patch on the drum surface
R17	Second transfer roller	NA	Moves the paper to the fuser unit and helps image transferring from drum surface to the paper

Color Toner Density(CTD) sensor operation

Learn about the Color Toner Density(CTD) sensor operation

Figure 3-87 Color Toner Density(CTD) sensor operation



Fuser unit

Learn about the fuser unit.

Fuser unit overview

Learn about the fuser unit.

The fuser unit applies heat and pressure to the toner particles to adhere to the paper. The fuser unit is composed of fuser section and fuser/exit driving section.

Figure 3-88 Overview of the fuser unit

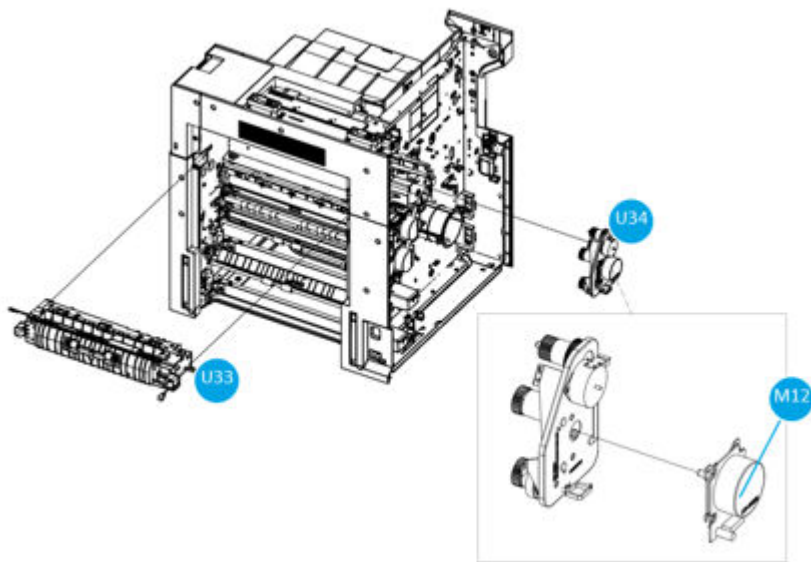


Figure 3-89 Detail view of the fuser unit, view 1

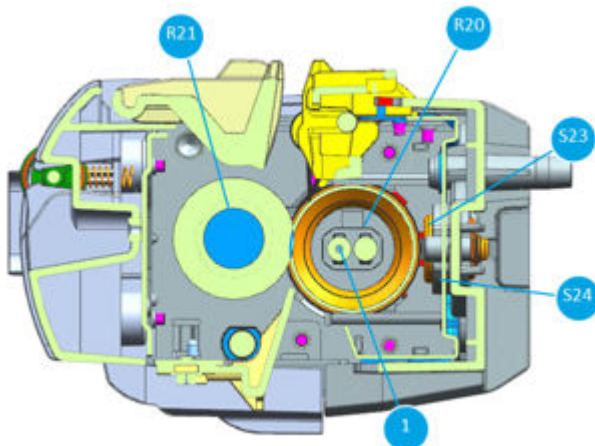


Figure 3-90 Detail view of the fuser unit, view 2

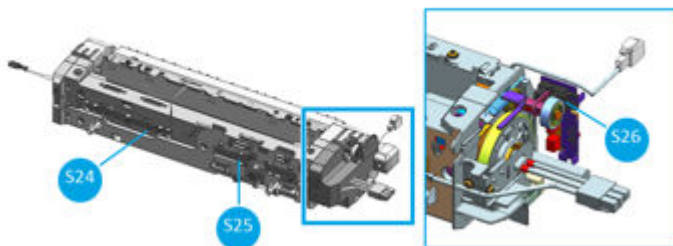


Figure 3-91 Detail view of the fuser unit, view 3

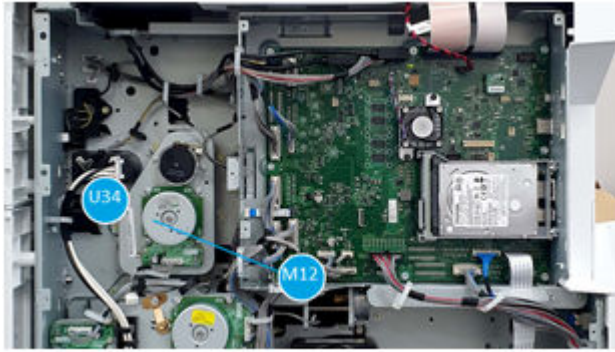


Table 3-37 Parts information for the fuser unit

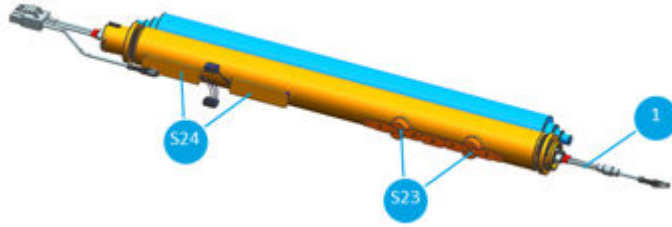
Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U33-1	Fuser unit 100V	5PN51-67001	-
U33-2	Fuser unit 110V	5PN68-67001	-
U33-3	Fuser unit 220V	5PN69-67001	-
R20	Fuser roller	NA	Receives heat from the halogen lamp and transfers it to the toner and paper
R21	Fuser pressure roller	NA	Makes contact with the fuser belt to transfer heat and pressure on the paper and the toner and moves the paper to the exit unit
S24	Thermostat	NA	Cuts off the power supply to the halogen lamp by opening the circuit when the fusing belt becomes abnormally hot
S25	Thermistor	NA	Measures the surface temperature of the fuser belt by 4 non-contact type thermistors
U34	Fuser, exit motor assembly	JC93-01679A	-
M12	Fuser motor	JC31-00123B	Drives the fuser pressure roller and fuser exit roller
S26	Fuser gap home sensor	0604-001383	Checks and controls the pressurized location of fuser roller and the pressure roller status
1	Halogen lamp	NA	Create heat to the fuser belt to adhere the toner to the paper

Fuser unit temperature control

Learn about the fuser unit temperature control.

Figure 3-92 Fuser unit temperature control

1. Two thermistors detect the fuser roller surface temperature. In case of narrow-width paper printing, the thermistors effectively identify differences in the surface temperature, and control how to turn on the halogen lamp not to be over-heated.



2. In case of abnormal temperature increment without control, the thermostat cuts off the circuit forcibly not to prevent abnormal operation.

Fuser gap sensor operation

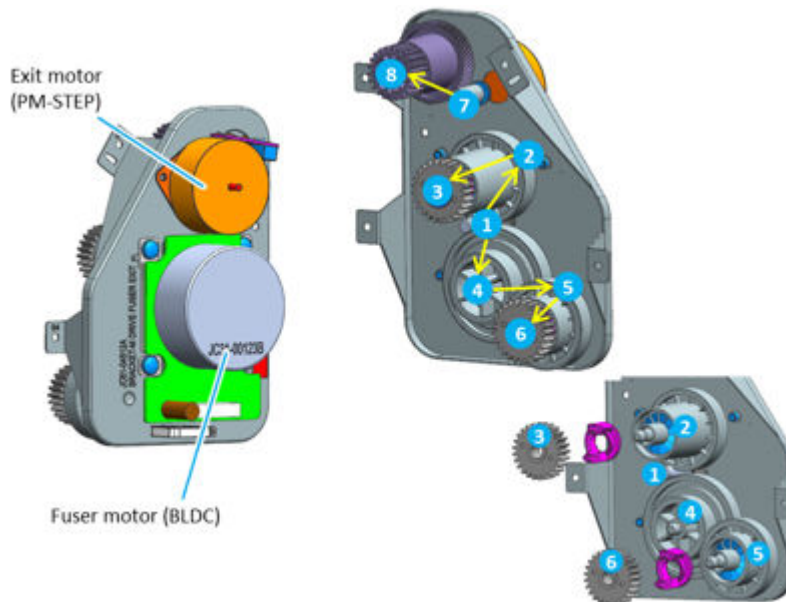
Learn about the fuser gap sensor operation.

When starting a printing job, the fuser drives counterclockwise so that the fuser roller is pressurized from the pressure roller by fuser gap home sensor signal. Then after finishing a printing job, the fuser motor rotates to the same direction so that the fuser belt is released.

Fuser driving

Learn about fuser driving.

Figure 3-93 Fuser driving



- Fuser driving: 1 fuser motor > clockwise rotation > 2 gear > 3 gear
- Fuser releasing: 1 fuser motor > counterclockwise rotation > 4 gear > 5 gear > 6 gear

Environmental sensor, fan, switch

Learn about the environmental sensor, fan and switch.

Environmental sensor, fan, switch overview

Learn about the environmental sensor, fan and switch overview.

To accurately implement the operation algorithm of the product according to the environment, an internal temperature sensor, an external temperature sensor, and a humidity sensor are installed inside the device.

As the product is used, the temperature of the internal main parts or the inner parts of the machine rises, which can degrade the product's performance. To prevent this, fans are installed to make outside air enter various areas.

Two switches are equipped to read the opening and closing of the front door and the right door.

Figure 3-94 Overview of the temperature and humidity measurement sensor

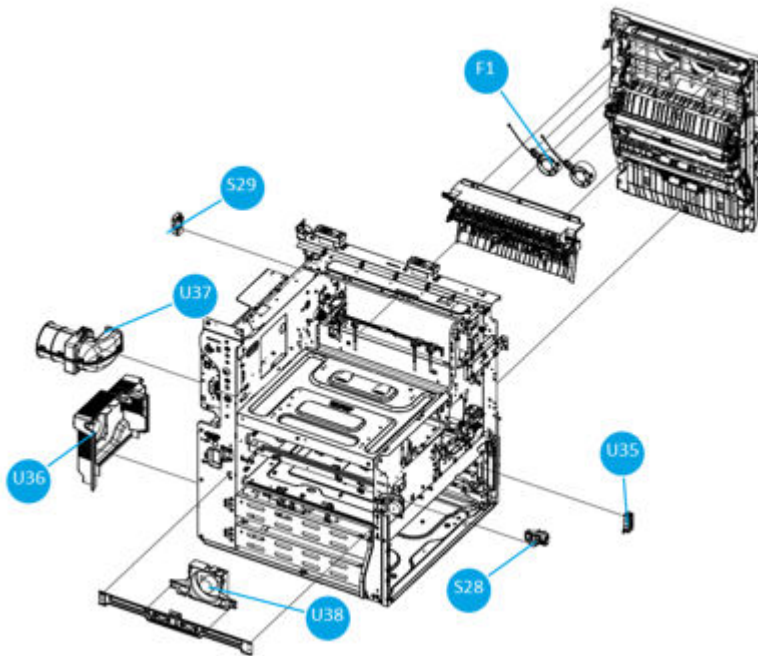


Figure 3-95 Detail view of the temperature and humidity measurement sensor, view 1

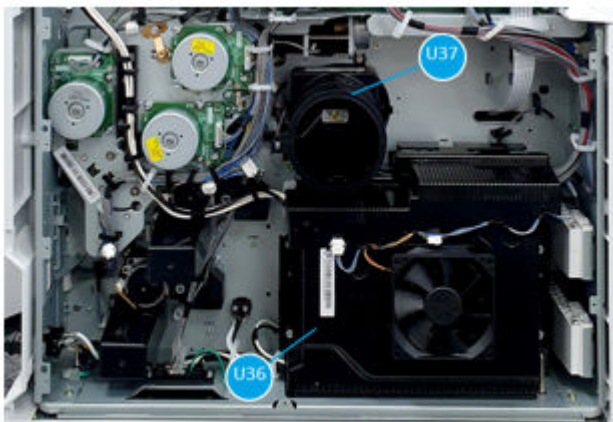


Figure 3-96 Detail view of the temperature and humidity measurement sensor, view 2



Figure 3-97 Detail view of the temperature and humidity measurement sensor, view 3



Figure 3-98 Detail view of the temperature and humidity measurement sensor, view 4



Table 3-38 Overview of the temperature and humidity measurement sensor

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U35	Outer temperature, humidity sensor assembly	5QJ90-40002	Detects the external temperature of the printer

Table 3-38 Overview of the temperature and humidity measurement sensor (continued)

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
S27	Outer temperature, humidity sensor	JC32-00015A	-
1	Holder outer temperature, humidity sensor	JC61-08680A	-
U36	LVPS and FDB fan assembly	JC93-01786A	Dissipates heat generated by the LVPS and FDB
F1	Right door fan	5QJ98-40052	Dissipates heat generated around paper path
U36	Developer fan assembly	JC31-00160C	Dissipates heat generated by the image creation process
U37	LSU fan assembly	8GR90-40008	Dissipates heat generated by the LSU
S28	Front door switch	JC93-00466A	Checks whether the front door is open
S29	Right door switch	JC93-01467A	Checks whether the right door is open

Control panel

Learn about the control panel.

Control panel - 10.1 inch

Learn about the control panel - 10.1 inch.

The control panel consists of the LCD to show UI, touch sensor for user to set the device from UI, and audio codec/speaker for sound. This control panel uses the 10.1 inch capacitive type touch sensor and 1280x800 WXGA LCD.

- Control panel - 10.1 inch part number: 5QK42-60101



NOTE:

- **Control panel - 8 inch**
 - The diagnostic button always works.
- **Control panel - 10 inch**
 - The diagnostic button works when the printer is in Sleep mode or when the control panel is physically disconnected from the formatter.
 - When the printer is in Ready mode, pressing the diagnostic button stops control panel operation. To reactivate the control panel, press the button again (or do nothing for 10 seconds).

Figure 3-99 Overview of the control panel - 10.1 inch

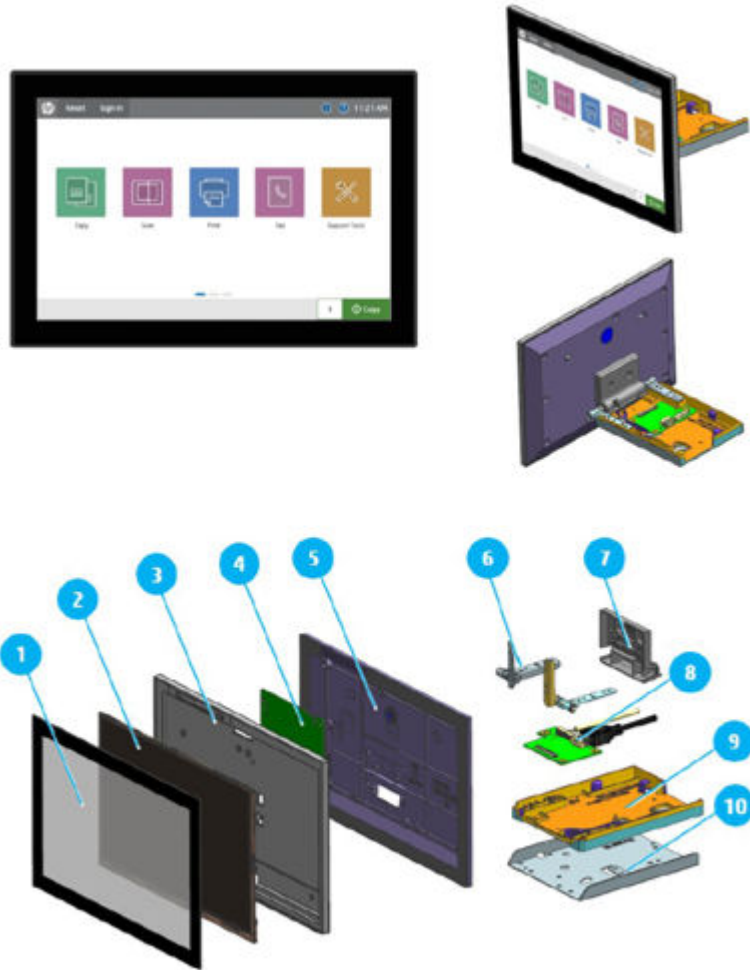


Table 3-39 Overview of the control panel - 10.1 inch

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U59	Control panel - 10.1 inch	5QK42-60101	-
1	Touch sensor	NA	OGS (One glass solution) type capacitive touch sensor
2	LCD	NA	10.1 inches 1280x800 WXGA LCD
3	Control panel front cover	NA	-
4	Control panel PCA	NA	Control panel PCA
5	Control panel rear cover	NA	-
6	Hinge	NA	-
7	Control panel hinge cover	NA	-
8	Interface PCA	NA	Interface PCA between formatter and LCD PCA
9	Hinge holder	NA	-
10	Control panel hinge bracket	NA	-

Control panel – 8 inch

Learn about the control panel – 8 inch.

The control panel consists of the LCD to show UI, touch sensor for user to set the device from UI, and audio codec/speaker for sound. This control panel uses the 8 inch capacitive type touch sensor and 1024x768 XGA LCD.

- Control panel – 8 inch part number: 3SJ15-60101

Figure 3-100 Overview of the control panel – 8 inch

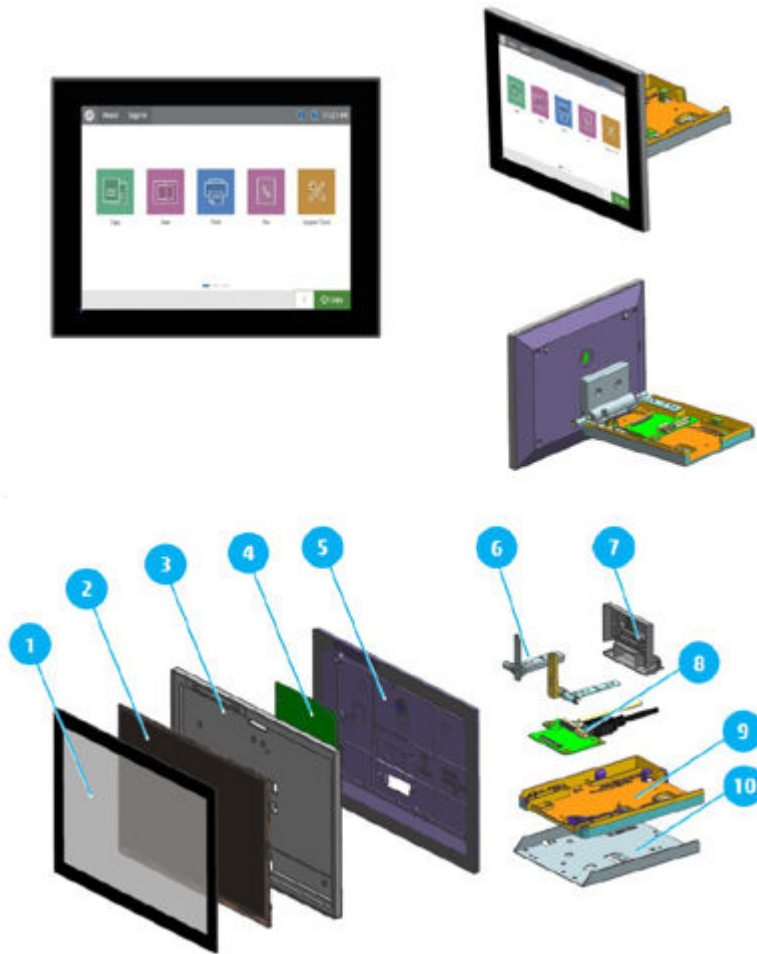


Table 3-40 Overview of the control panel – 8 inch

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U60	Control panel – 8 inch	3SJ15-60101	-
1	Touch sensor	NA	OGS (One glass solution) type capacitive touch sensor
2	LCD	NA	8 inches 1024x768 WGA LCD
3	Control panel front cover	NA	-
4	Control panel PCA	NA	Control panel PCA
5	Control panel rear cover	NA	-
6	Hinge	NA	-

Table 3-40 Overview of the control panel – 8 inch (continued)

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
7	Control panel hinge cover	NA	-
8	Interface PCA	NA	Interface PCA between formatter and LCD PCA
9	Hinge holder	NA	-
10	Control panel hinge bracket	NA	-

Hardware configuration

Learn about the hardware configuration.

PCA overview

Learn about the PCA overview.

Figure 3-101 Overview of the PCAs

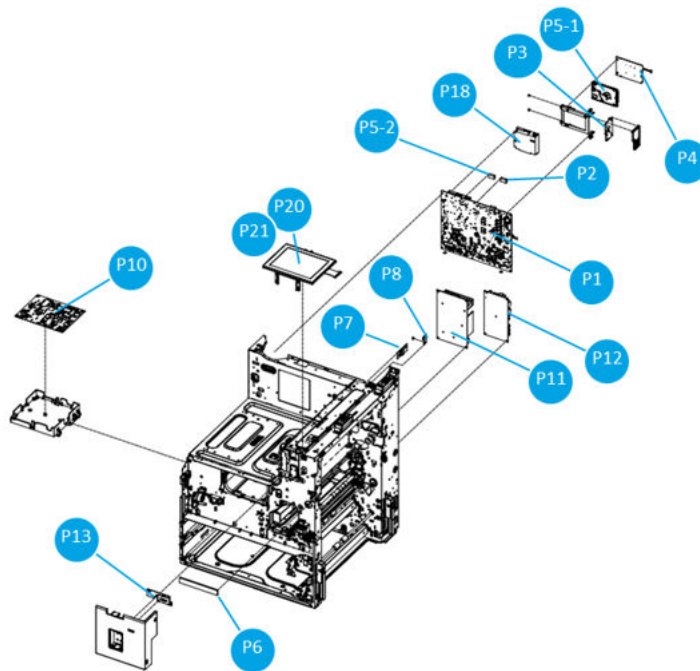


Table 3-41 Overview of the PCAs

No.	Part name	Part number	Description
P1	Formatter	6CF14-67004	Handles the video controller, engine controller and scan controller
P2	Trusted platform module (TPM)	3SJ03-60001 (not orderable)	Stores and generates encryption keys that can be used for device authentication
P3-1	Riser card for HDD	3SJ01-60001	Connects the hard disk to the formatter
P3-2	Riser card for HDD, and two USB type C	4XN67-60001	Connects the hard disk to the formatter

Table 3-41 Overview of the PCAs (continued)

No.	Part name	Part number	Description
P3-3	Riser card for HDD and two USB type C, and accelerator board	3SJ02-60001	Connects the hard disk and the accelerator to the formatter
P4	Accelerator	6HN30-67001	Accelerates DSP (Digital Signal Processing) and OCR (Optical Character Recognition) performance supporting the z-bundle
P5-1	Hard disk drive	933853-011	Stores operating system and machine data to operate the printer system
P5-2	eMMC	B5L32-60004	Stores operating system and machine data to operate the printer system
P6	USB hub	3SJ04-60001	Interfaces with the Main PCA, USB device, and HIP2 options
P7	Island of data (IOD)	3SJ06-60001	Stores the machine configuration and the engine control data
P8	Echo	T3U64-60001	Collects internal acoustics information via microphone for system diagnosis
S19	Toner collection unit full sensor	JC92-02471A	Detects the waste toner level of the toner collection unit
P10	High voltage power supply (HVPS)	JC44-00237D	Generate high-voltage channels for EP process
P11	Low voltage power supply (LVPS)	(110V) 5QJ90-60014 (220V) 5QJ90-60015	Supplies electric power to the main board and other boards. The voltage provided includes +5 V, and +24 V from a 110 V/220 V power input. It has safety protection modes for over current and overload.
P12	Fuser drive board (FDB)	(110V) JC44-00210F (220V) JC44-00211F	Supplies the voltage to fuser AC, heater, and main PCA
P13	Power key	3SJ33-60007	Turns on or off the printer
P14	Keyboard	5QK47-60001	Connects the keypad with the formatter
P18-1	Single FAX card	7ZA08-67001	Optional fax kit card
P18-2	Single FAX card - BBU	7ZA09-67001	Optional fax kit card - BBU
P18-3	Dual FAX card	5QK14-67001	Optional fax kit card
P18-4	Dual FAX card - BBU	7ZA07-67001	Optional fax kit card - BBU
U60-1	Keyboard assembly - US English	JC93-01742A	Physical keyboard
U60-2	Keyboard assembly - UK English	JC93-01743A	Physical keyboard
Not shown	Keyboard overlay kit (FR, IT, RU, DE,ES,UK Kybd)	5851-6019	Language specific keyboard overlay
Not shown	Keyboard overlay kit (FR-CN, ES-LA, ES,US Kybd)	5851-6020	Language specific keyboard overlay
Not shown	Keyboard overlay kit (FR-SW, DE-SW, DA,UK Kybd)	5851-6021	Language specific keyboard overlay

Table 3-41 Overview of the PCAs (continued)

No.	Part name	Part number	Description
Not shown	Keyboard overlay kit (ZHTW, ZHCN)	5851-6022	Language specific keyboard overlay
Not shown	Keyboard overlay kit (ES, PT)	5851-6023	Language specific keyboard overlay
Not shown	Keyboard overlay kit (JA-KG, JA-KT)	5851-6024	Language specific keyboard overlay
Not shown (S5)	Tray 2 open, paper size sensor	JC93-00018B	Detects the size of the paper in the tray
Not shown (S9)	Tray 3 open, paper size sensor	JC93-00018B	Detects the size of the paper in the tray
Not shown (P15)	Drum CRUM	NA	Includes an IC chip for drum unit operation and life cycle counting
Not shown (P16)	Eraser	NA	Erases the negative charges on the surface of the drum after printing
Not shown (P17)	Fuser CRUM	NA	Includes an IC chip for maintaining the fuser unit life cycle counting, and provides a connection interface for the fuser gap sensor operation
Not shown (P19)	Toner cartridge CRUM PCA	NA	Includes an IC chip for toner cartridge operation and life cycle counting
Not shown (P20)	Control panel base PCA	3SJ15-60001	-
Not shown (P21-1)	Control panel PCA 10.1 in	5QK42-60001	-
Not shown (P21-2)	Control panel PCA 8 in	3SJ15-60002	-

Formatter

Learn about the formatter.

The formatter handles the video controller, engine controller and scan controller. This PCA receives print data from the host through the network or USB port, and it receives copy data from the Scan Controller. It takes this information and generates printable video bitmap data. It controls all modules required to print: LSU, HVPS, FAN, Fuser, etc.

The formatter consists of the main processor, memory (DDR4 6GB), 1G Ethernet PHY, Micom (Power control), Video/CP/FAX signal interface connection, motor driving IC, Engine signal interface connection, and power interface.

The main processor (Quad Core 1.6GHz CPU) of the formatter controls video, engine, CP display and communicates with various devices. The hard disk is connected to the formatter by the riser, or eMMC is installed for the system operation.

- Formatter part number: 6CF14-67004 (P1)

Figure 3-102 Formatter

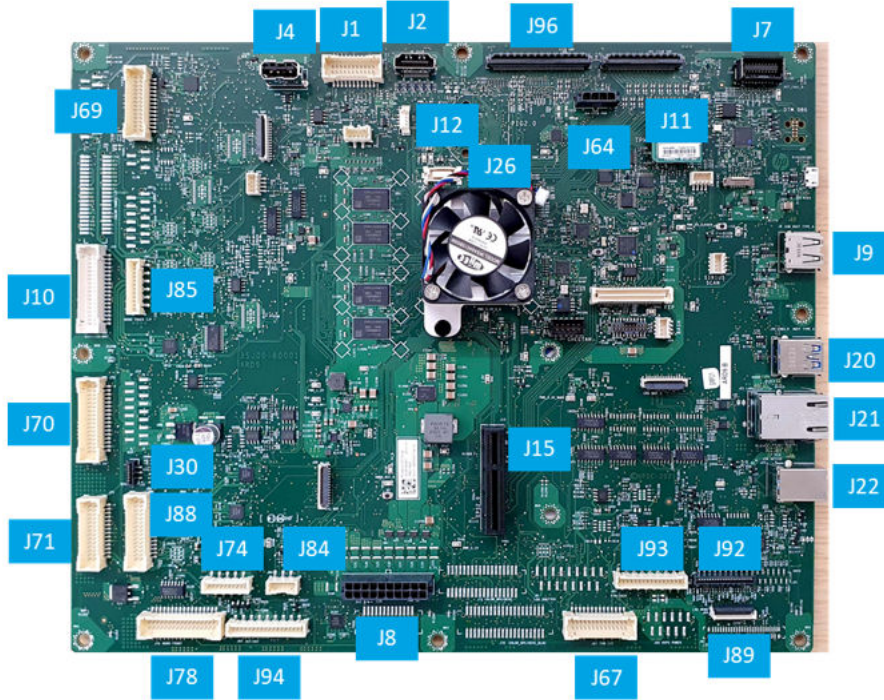


Table 3-42 Formatter connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
Main-J1	Control panel Power key PCA	22pin	JC39-02781A
Main-J2	Control panel	19pin HDMI	JC39-02780A
Main-J4	Control panel USB host	4pin USB	JC39-02780A
Main-J7	FAX	20pin	Dual Fax 810: 5QK14A Dual Fax 811: 7ZA07A Single Fax 800: 7ZA08A Single Fax 801: 7ZA09A
Main-J8	LVPS-CN2, LVPS-CN3	20pin	JC39-02778A
Main-J9	USB host	-	-

Table 3-42 Formatter connections (continued)

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
Main-J10	Outbin 1 full sensor Second exit motor Return gate solenoid Duplex jam 2 sensor Outbin 2 full sensor Right door open switch Fuser fan ITB engage sensor Island of data (IOD)	36pin	JC39-02786A
Main-J11	Trusted platform module (TPM)	20pin PCA	3SJ03-60001 (not orderable)
Main-J12	CPU Fan	4pin	1205-1597 (not orderable)
Main-J15	Riser-HDD	64pin PCA	Riser for HDD: 3SJ01-60001 Riser for HDD, USB ports: 4XN67-60001 Riser for HDD, USB ports, Accelerator: 3SJ02-60001
Main-J20	USB host	9pin USB	-
Main-J21	Network	12pin RJ45	-
Main-J22	USB port	9pin USB	-
Main-J26	CPU	-	-
Main-J30	Echo PCA	6pin PCA	3SJ11-60108
Main-J64	SSA-J3 Platen power outlet	4pin	3SJ11-50006
Main-J67	LVPS-CN4 FDB-CN9 Developer fan Tray 2 paper size sensor Tray 3 paper size sensor LVPS fan	28pin	JC39-02779A

Table 3-42 Formatter connections (continued)

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
Main-J69	Fuser CRUM Fuser gap sensor Thermistor Fuser wrap jam sensor Fuser motor Exit motor	28pin	JC39-02786A
Main-J70	Feed, registration, tray 1 motor Tray 2 feed sensor Registration sensor Registration clutch Tray 1 clutch Feed clutch Drum motor	34pin	JC39-02786A
Main-J71	Tray 2 paper empty sensor Tray 2 stack height sensor Tray 2 pickup motor Feed motor Tray 3 paper empty sensor Tray 3 stack height sensor Tray 3 pickup motor Feed 2 sensor	28pin	5QK02-50004
Main-J74	Developer motor	10pin	JC39-02793A
Main-J85	Toner duct motor Toner duct motor	12pin	JC39-02787A
Main-J88	Tray 1 paper empty sensor Tray1 solenoid Duplex motor Fuser out sensor Duplex fan Loop sensor 1 Loop sensor 2 Duplex 2 jam sensor	30pin	JC39-02787A
Main-J89	LSU	26pin	5QJ98-50001


Table 3-42 Formatter connections (continued)

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
Main-J92	HVPS	20pin	5QJ90-50002
Main-J93	Finisher	16pin	JC39-02072A
Main-J94	DCF HCI	18pin	5QK02-50002
Main-J95	SSA-J9 Platen interface 2	50pin FFC	3SJ11-50021
Main-J96	SSA-J4 Platen interface 1	68pin FFC	3SJ11-50022

Trusted Platform Module (TPM)

Learn about the Trusted Platform Module (TPM).

Trusted Platform Module (TPM) is a hardware-based encryption device. It stores and/or generates encryption keys that can be used for device authentication.

 **NOTE:** When the formatter needs to be replaced, the TPM should be re-installed to the new formatter after reset password for retain key security credentials.

- Trusted platform module part number: 3SJ03-60001 (P2) (not orderable)

Figure 3-103 Trusted Platform Module (TPM)



Table 3-43 Trusted Platform Module (TPM) connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
TPM-J1	Main-J11	PCA	3SJ03-60001 (not orderable)

Riser card

Learn about the riser card.

The riser card is a connecting board between the formatter and the data storage. There are 3 types of riser card depending on the storage type and the accelerator installation.

Riser card for HDD

Learn about the riser card for HDD.

- Riser card for HDD part number: 3SJ01-60001 (P3-1)

Figure 3-104 Riser card for HDD

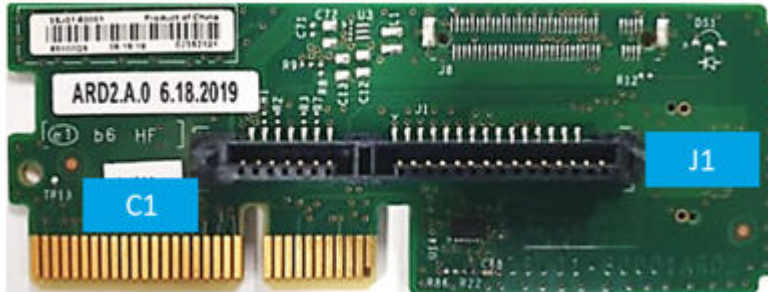


Table 3-44 Riser card for HDD connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
Riser1-J1	HDD	500gb HDD	500GB hard disk drive 933853-010
Riser1-C1	Main-J15	PCA	3SJ01-60001

Riser card for HDD and USB ports (optional)

Learn about the riser card for HDD and USB ports.

- Riser card for HDD and two USB Type C ports part number: 4XN67-60001 (P3-2)

Figure 3-105 Riser card for HDD and two USB Type C ports



Table 3-45 Riser card for HDD and two USB Type C ports connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
Riser2-J1	HDD	HDD	500GB hard disk drive 933853-010
Riser2-J4	USB port	-	-
Riser2-J5	USB port	-	-

Table 3-45 Riser card for HDD and two USB Type C ports connections (continued)

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
Riser2-J7	NA	-	-
Riser2-C1	Main-J15	PCA	4XN67-60001

Riser card for HDD, USB ports, and accelerator board (optional)

Learn about the riser card for HDD, USB ports, and accelerator board.

- Riser card for HDD, two USB Type C ports, and accelerator board part number: 3SJ02-60001 (P3-3)

Figure 3-106 Riser card for HDD, two USB Type C ports, and accelerator board



Riser card for HDD, two USB Type C ports, and accelerator board

Table 3-46 Riser card for HDD, two USB Type C ports, and accelerator board connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
Riser3-J1	HDD	HDD	500GB hard disk drive 933853-010
Riser3-J4	USB port	-	-
Riser3-J5	USB port	-	-
Riser3-J7	ACC-C1	PCA	3SJ30-60001
Riser3-C1	Main-J15	PCA	3SJ02-60001

Accelerator (optional)

Learn about the accelerator.

The accelerator enhances DSP (Digital Signal Processing) and OCR (Optical Character Recognition) performance supporting the z-bundle. This module interfaces with the riser card.

- Accelerator part number: 6HN30-67001 (P4)

Figure 3-107 Accelerator

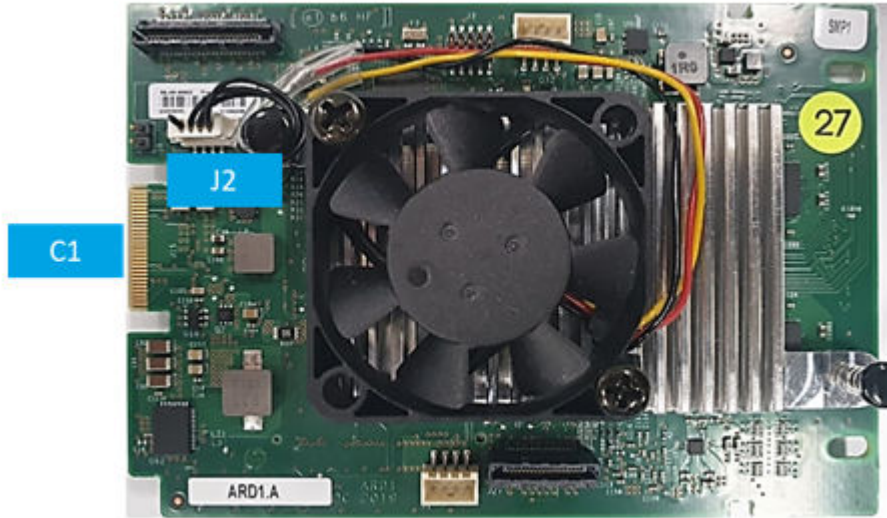


Table 3-47 Accelerator connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
Acc-J2	Fan	-	-
Acc-C1	Riser3-J7	PCA	3SJ02-60001

Storage

Learn about the storage.

Hard disk drive

Learn about the hard disk drive.

A 500GB hard disk drive is initially installed in the machine to save operating system and machine data which operates the printer system.

- Hard disk drive part number: 933853-010 (P5-1)

Figure 3-108 Hard disk, 933853-010 (Toshiba)



Hard disk, 933853-010 (Toshiba)

Table 3-48 Hard disk connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
Hard disk	Riser1-J1	-	-
	Riser2-J1	-	-
	Riser3-J1	-	-

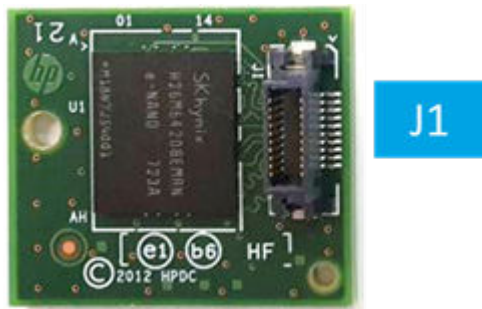
eMMC

Learn about the eMMC.

In the case of dn bundle, a 32 GB eMMC that stores system files and information necessary for product operation such as firmware is installed instead of a hard disk drive.

- eMMC part number: B5L32-60004(32GB, P5-2)

Figure 3-109 eMMC



eMMC

Table 3-49 eMMC connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
eMMC	Main-J26	-	-

USB hub PCA

Learn about the USB hub PCA.

USB Hub PCA is used to interface with the formatter, wakeup USB port, HIP2 and keyboard options. It interfaces through USB2.0 communication.

- USB hub PCA part number: 3SJ04-60002 (P6)

Figure 3-110 Hub Board PCA



Table 3-50 USB hub PCA connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
USB-J1	Main-J4 (MX3/4) Main-J9 (MX7)	USB2.0 Type-B	JC39-02780A (MX3) 5QJ94-50002 (MX4) 5QK03-50006 (MX7)
USB-J2	HIP2 (MX4)	USB2.0 Mini-B	
USB-J3	Walkup USB port	USB2.0 Type-A	
USB-J4	HIP2 (MX7)	USB2.0 Mini-B	
USB-J5	Keyboard-J1	USB2.0 Type-A	5QK03-50017

Island Of Data (IOD)

Learn about the Island Of Data (IOD).

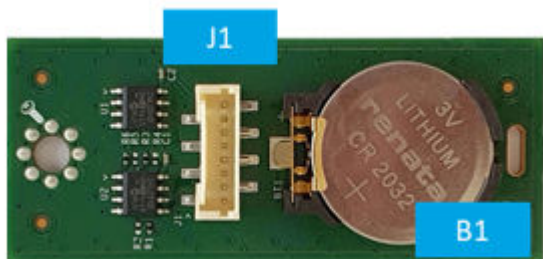
The IOD PCA has two EEPROMs and one RTC battery.

One EEPROM stores the machine configuration data and the engine control data. These data are used for all system operation (system parameter, device status, tech information, and service information). The RTC battery supplies power to store time information even when the machine power is turned off. The RTC battery (CR2032) needs to be replaced when the time information of the machine is not saved.

- Island Of Data (IOD) part number: 3SJ06-60001 (P7)

NOTE: If IOD is removed from Formatter by replacing IOD or Formatter, the date and time of the product stored in Formatter will be deleted. In this case, be sure to set the date and time again after restarting the product.

Figure 3-111 Island Of Data (IOD)



Island Of Data (IOD)

Table 3-51 Island Of Data (IOD) connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
IOD-J1	Main-J10	8pin	JC39-02756A
IOD-B1	Battery	CR2032	-

Echo PCA

Learn about the echo PCA.

The echo PCA is used for Smart Device Service (SDS). This PCA collects internal acoustics information via microphone for the system diagnosis.

- Echo PCA part number: T3U64-60001 (P8)
- Rivet echo PCA part number: 6ER04-40034 (Callout 1)

Figure 3-112 Echo PCA

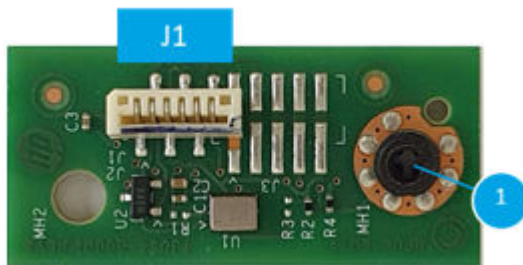


Table 3-52 Echo PCA connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
Echo-J1	Main-J30	6pin	3SJ11-60108

Power key PCA

Learn about the power key PCA.

The power key PCA is used to implement the soft-power switch.

- Power key PCA part number: 3SJ33-60007 (P13)

Figure 3-113 Power key PCA

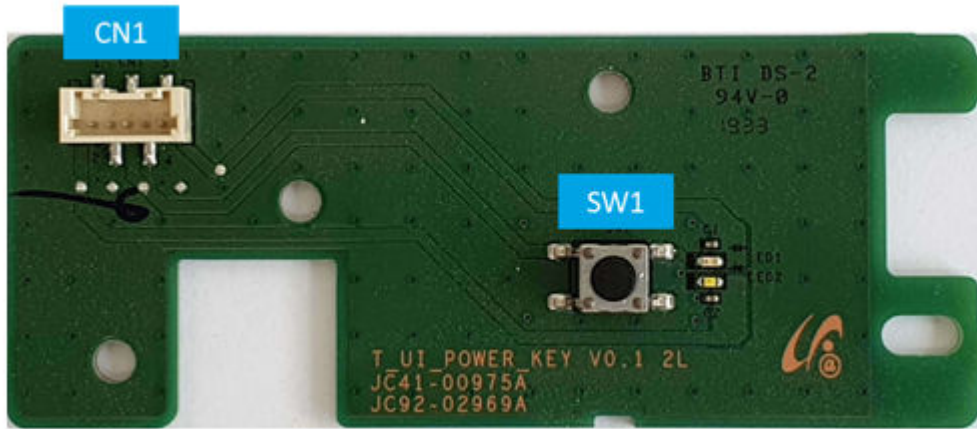


Table 3-53 Power key PCA connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
Power-CN1	Main-J1	5pin	JC39-02781A
Power-SW1	-	Switch	-

Keyboard PCA

Learn about the keyboard PCA.

The keyboard PCA an optional part which is used to connect with the keyboard assembly and the printer. It interfaces with the USB hub PCA through USB mini communication.

- Keyboard PCA part number: 5QK47-60001 (P13)
- Keyboard assembly - US English: JC93-01742A (U60-1)
- Keyboard assembly - UK English: JC93-01743A (U60-2)

Figure 3-114 Keyboard PCA

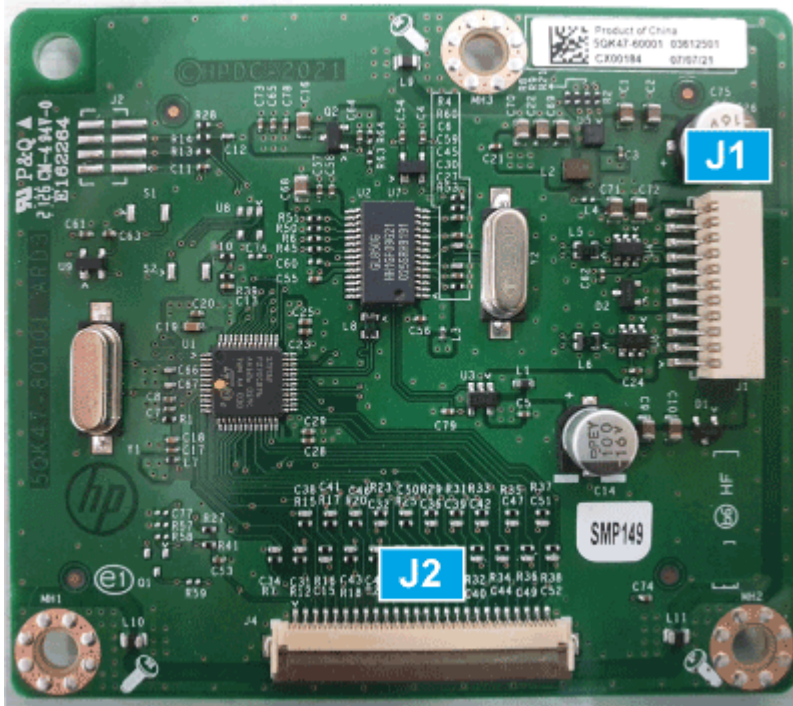


Table 3-54 Keyboard PCA

CN-number	Connection	Type	Harness part number
-	USB-J4		
Key-J1			
Key-J2	Keypad	26 pin (FFC)	5851-6603 (Keypad-US) 5851-6604 (Keypad-UK)

Figure 3-115 Keyboard assembly



Table 3-55 Keyboard PCA connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
Key-J1	USB-J4	11pin	5QK03-50010
Key-J4	Keypad	FFC 26pin	5851-6603 (Keypad-US) 5851-6604 (Keypad-UK)

Toner Collection Unit full sensor PCA

Learn about the Toner Collection Unit full sensor PCA.

The Toner Collection Unit full sensor PCA detects the waste toner level of the toner collection unit.

- TCU full sensor PCA part number: JC93-00492A (S24)

Figure 3-116 TCU full sensor PCA

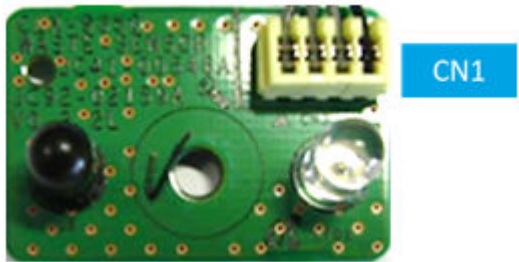


Table 3-56 TCU full sensor PCA connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
TCU-CN1	Main-J80	4pin	JC39-02753A

Paper size sensor PCA

Learn about the Paper size sensor PCA.

The paper size sensor PCA is used to detect the size of the paper in the tray.

- Paper size sensor PCA part number: JC93-00018B

Figure 3-117 Paper size sensor PCA



Table 3-57 Paper size sensor PCA connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
Paper-CN3	Main-J67	4pin	JC39-02779A

Drum CRUM PCA

Learn about the drum CRUM PCA.

The drum CRUM PCA includes an IC chip for drum unit operation and life cycle counting.

- Drum CRUM PCA part number: 3SJ07-60001 (P15)

Figure 3-118 Drum CRUM PCA



Table 3-58 Drum CRUM PCA connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
DCRUM-J1	Main-J75	4pin	JC39-02772A

Toner cartridge CRUM PCA

Learn about the toner cartridge CRUM PCA.

The toner cartridge CRUM PCA includes an IC chip for toner cartridge operation and cycle counting.

- Toner cartridge CRUM PCA part number: 3SJ07-60002

Figure 3-119 Toner cartridge CRUM PCA

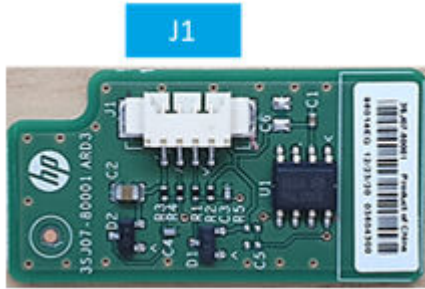


Table 3-59 Toner cartridge CRUM PCA connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
DCRUM-J1	Main-J86	4pin	JC39-02757A

Eraser PCA

Learn about the eraser PCA.

The eraser PCA has one LED. The LED is used for erasing the negative charges on the surface of the drum after printing.

- Eraser PCA part number: JC92-02744A (P16)

Figure 3-120 Eraser PCA



Table 3-60 Eraser PCA connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
Eraser-J1	Main-J75	4pin	J39-02772A 5QJ90-50008

Fuser CRUM PCA

Learn about the fuser CRUM PCA.

The fuser CRUM PCA includes an IC chip for maintaining the fuser unit life cycle counting. It also provides a connection interface for the fuser gap sensor.

- Fuser CRUM PCA part number: 6CF14-60001

Figure 3-121 Fuser CRUM PCA

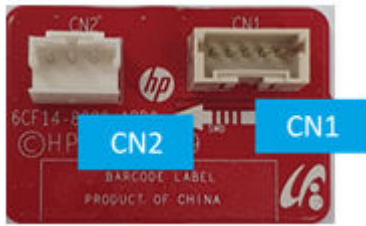


Table 3-61 Fuser CRUM PCA connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
Fuser-CN1	Fuser EEPROM, fuser gap sensor interface	5pin	NA
Fuser-CN2	Fuser gap sensor	3pin	NA

Control panel PCA

Learn about the control panel PCA.

The control panel PCA manages the control panel operation communicating with the formatter.

- Control panel base PCA part number: 3SJ15-60001
- Control panel - 10.1 inch PCA part number: 5QK42-60001
- Control panel - 8 inch PCA part number: 3SJ15-60002

Control panel base PCA

Learn about the control panel base PCA.

Figure 3-122 Control panel base PCA

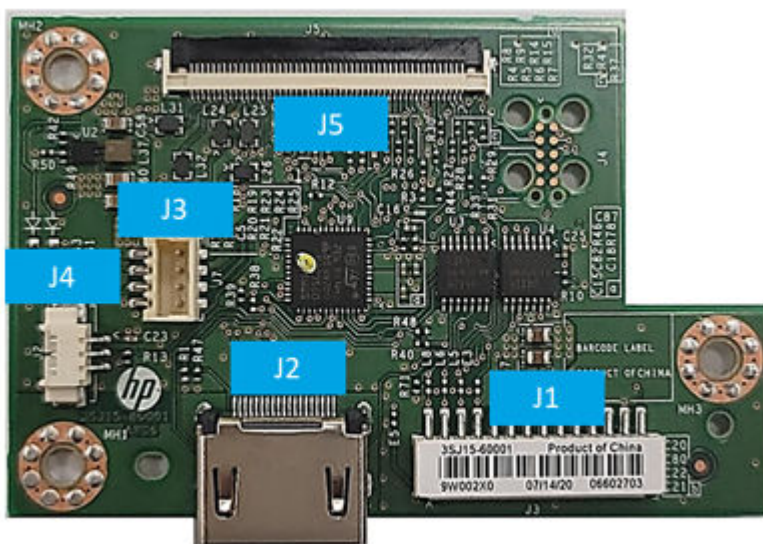


Table 3-62 Control panel base PCA connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
CP-J1	Main-J1	14pin	5QJ94-50003
CP-J2	Main-J2	19pin	5QJ94-50002
CP-J3	Micom (STM32)	10pin	NA
CP-J4	RFID CP10.1-J1	3pin	NA
CP-J5	CP8-J1	50pin	NA

Control panel PCA - 10.1 inch

Learn about the control panel PCA - 10.1 inch.

Figure 3-123 Control panel PCA - 10.1 inch

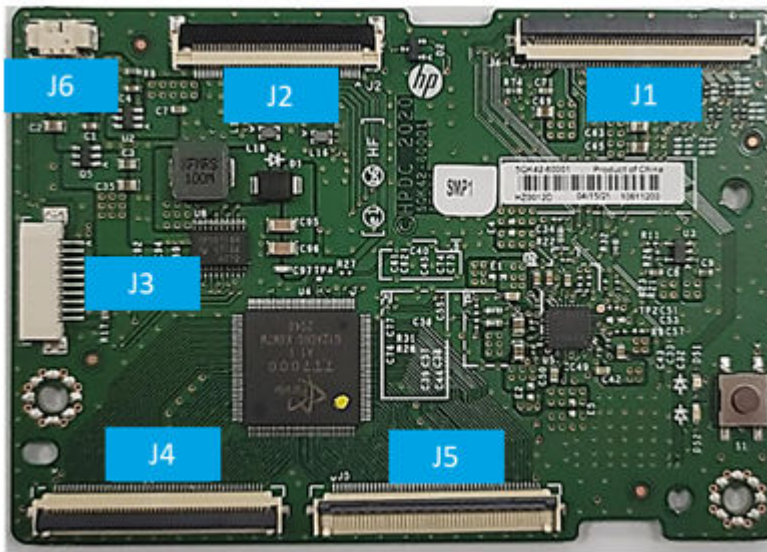


Table 3-63 Control panel PCA connections - 10.1 inch

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
CP10.1-J1	CP-J5	50pin	NA
CP10.1-J2	LCD	40pin	NA
CP10.1-J3	Touch IC	10pin	NA
CP10.1-J4/J5	Touch screen panel	50pin	NA
CP10.1-J6	Speaker	2pin	NA

Control panel PCA - 8 inch

Learn about the control panel PCA - 8 inch.

Figure 3-124 Control panel PCA - 8 inch

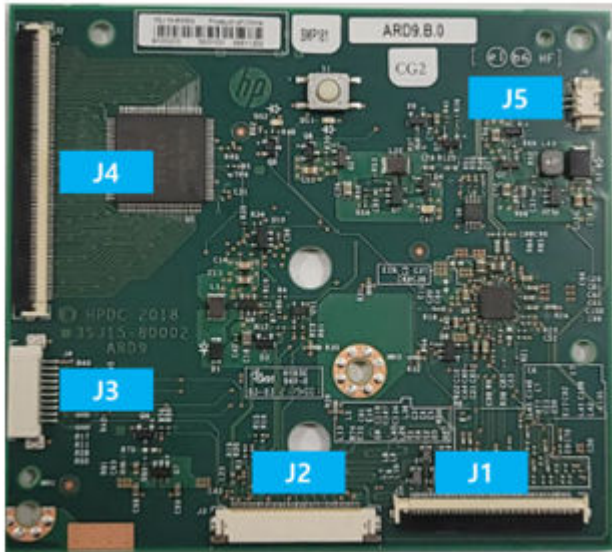


Table 3-64 Control panel PCA connections - 8 inch

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
CP8-J1	CP-J5	50pin	NA
CP8-J2	LCD	40pin	NA
CP8-J3	Touch IC	10pin	NA
CP8-J4	TSP	80pin	NA
CP8-J5	Speaker	2pin	NA

High Voltage Power Supply (HVPS)

Learn about the High Voltage Power Supply (HVPS).

The High Voltage Power Supply (HVPS) PCA generates high-voltage channels, which include Developer, Second transfer, Drum, Fuser, and saw.

- High voltage power supply(HVPS): JC44-00237D (P10)

Figure 3-125 High Voltage Power Supply (HVPS)

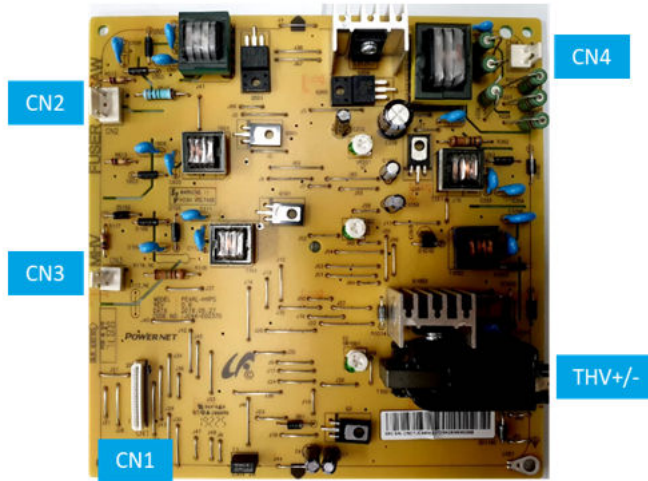


Table 3-65 HVPS PCA connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number	Error when disconnected
HVPS-CN1	Main-J92	20pin, FFC	5QJ90-50002	
HVPS-CN2	Fuser, saw	2pin	-	
HVPS-CN3	Charter Drum	2pin	-	
HVPS-CN4	Developer	2pin	-	
HVPS-THV+/-	Transfer	2pin	-	

Lower Voltage Power Supply (LVPS)

Learn about the Lower Voltage Power Supply (LVPS).

The Lower Voltage Power Supply (LVPS) board supplies the electric power to the main board and other boards. The voltage provided includes +5 V, and +24 V from a 110 V/220 V power input. It has safety protection modes for over current and overload.

- Lower voltage power supply(LVPS) part number: (110V) 5QJ90-60014 (P11-2), (220V) 5QJ90-60015 (P11-1)

Figure 3-126 Lower Voltage Power Supply (LVPS)



Table 3-66 LVPS type6 PCA connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number	Error when disconnected
LVPS-CN1	FDB-CN7	2pin	JC39-02818A	
LVPS-CN2	Main-J8	9pin	JC39-02778A	
LVPS-CN3	Main-J8	11pin	JC39-02778A	
LVPS-CN4	Main-J67	3pin	JC39-02779A	

Fuser Drive Board (FDB)

Learn about the Fuser Drive Board (FDB).

The Fuser Drive Board (FDB) supplies voltage to the fuser AC, the heater, and the formatter.

- Fuser Drive Board (FDB) part number: (110V) JC44-00210F (P12-2), (220V) JC44-00211F (P12-1)

Figure 3-127 Fuser Drive Board (FDB)

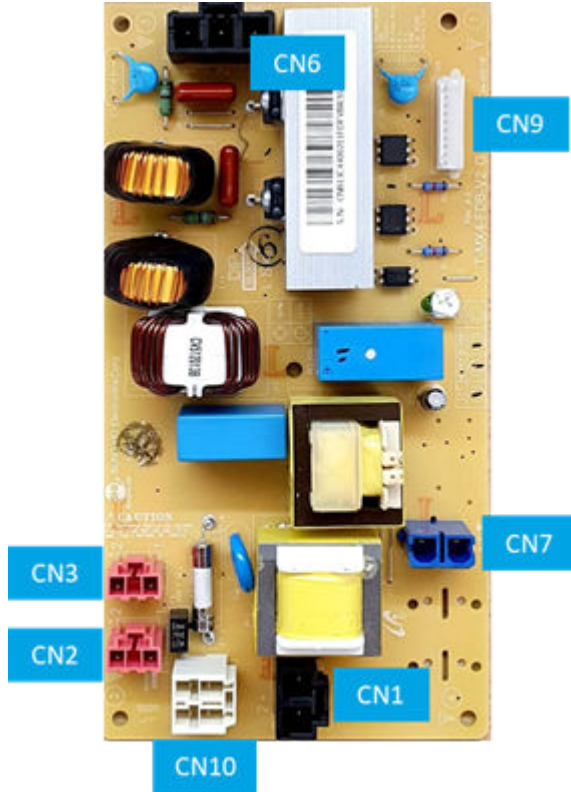


Table 3-67 Fuser Drive Board (FDB) PCA connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number	Error when disconnected
FDB-CN1	AC inlet	2pin	JC39-01581A	No power supply
FDB-CN2	Base printer tray heater	2pin	JC39-01584A	
FDB-CN3	DCF, HCI tray heater	2pin	JC39-02187A	
FDB-CN6	Fuser heating lamp	3pin	5QK02-50001	50.FF.01
FDB-CN7	LVPS-CN1	2pin	JC39-01585A	No pwer supply
FDB-CN9	Main-J67	10pin	JC39-02779A	50.FF.0E
FDB-CN10	Tray heater switch	4pin	JC39-01583A	


Integrated Scan Asset

You will learn more about the integrated scan asset (ISA).

Integrated scan asset (ISA) is a device that scans a user's document and allows it to be saved to a file or printed. This machine consists of an Auto Document Feeder (ADF) that can scan a large batch of documents automatically, and a Platen that scans documents one by one from the flatbed.

Automatic document feeder system: 200sh Flow ADF, 200sh ADF

You will learn more about Automatic document feeder system: 200sh Flow ADF, 200sh ADF.

 **NOTE:** The 200sh Flow ADF is only for the E7xxx series printers. The E826/E877 series printers do not support the 200sh Flow ADF.

The E826/E877 series printers use the 300sh Flow ADF to support flow features.

ADF cover

Learn about the ADF cover.

Figure 3-128 ADF cover



Table 3-68 ADF cover

Callout	Part name	Part number
C601	ADF front cover	NA
C602	ADF rear cover	NA
C603	ADF top cover	NA
C604	ADF input tray	NA
C605	ADF CMF panel	5QJ90-40056

ADF unit

Learn about the ADF unit.

Figure 3-129 ADF unit, view 1

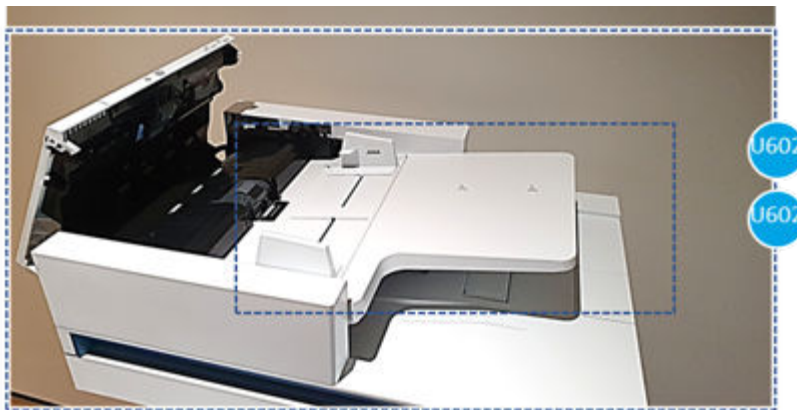


Table 3-69 ADF unit, view 1

Callout	Part name	Part number
U602	200-sheet ADF ²	5QJ90-67011

Figure 3-130 ADF unit, view 2

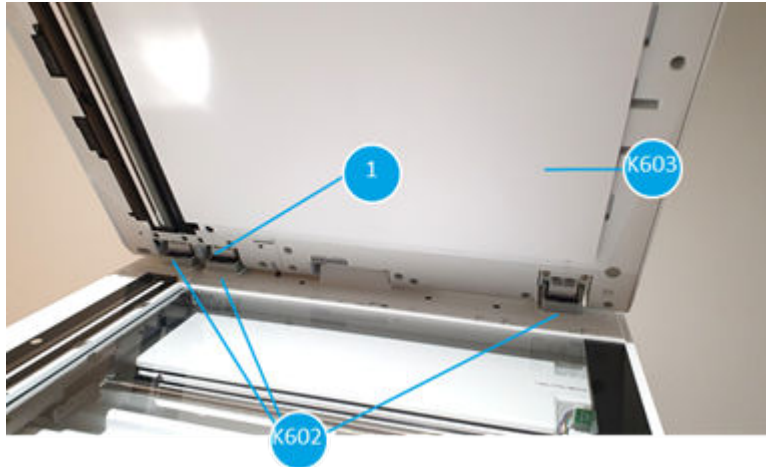



Table 3-70 ADF unit, view 2

Callout	Part name	Part number
K602	ADF hinge kit	5QJ90-67004
1	ADF hinge damper module	5QJ90-67006
K603	ADF white backing kit	5QJ90-67005

 **NOTE:** The 200-sheet Flow ADF¹ and 200-sheet ADF² are all the same except for the ADF multi-feeding sensor installation.

¹200-sheet flow ADF: ADF multi-feeding sensor is installed

²200-sheet ADF: ADF multi-feeding sensor is not installed

ADF system overview

You will learn more about ADF system overview.

200-sheet ADF workflow

Learn about the ADF workflow.

Figure 3-131 ADF workflow

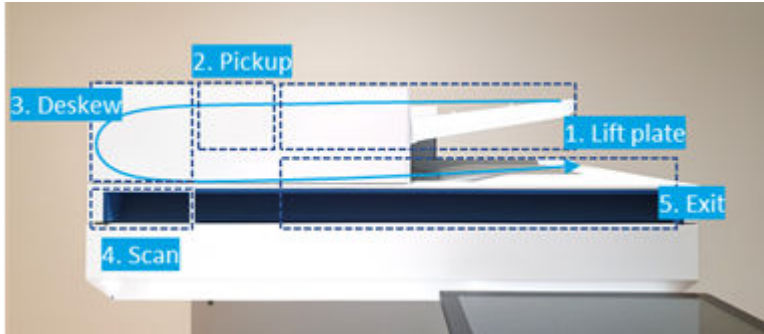


Table 3-71 ADF workflow

Callout	Unit name	Description
1	Lift plate	Moves an original document upward so that it is on the pickup paper path
2	Pickup	Picks up an original document to the deskew unit inside the ADF
3	Deskew	Adjusts the skew of the original document
4	Scan	Scan an original document
5	Exit	Discard scanned documents to the ADF out-bin

ADF sensors

Learn about the ADF sensors.

Figure 3-132 ADF sensors



Table 3-72 ADF sensors

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
S601	ADF paper long size sensor	NA	Checks the size of a paper in length
S602	ADF paper short size sensor	NA	Checks the size of a paper in length
S603	ADF paper width sensor	NA	Checks the size of a paper in width
S604	ADF lift sensor	NA	Checks the pickup ready position of a paper
S605	ADF paper present sensor	NA	Checks whether there is paper on lift plate
S606	ADF multi feed sensor	NA	Checks the multi feeding of paper
S607	ADF deskew sensor	NA	Checks the paper arrival at the deskew roller and sets the time to start the deskew roller

Table 3-72 ADF sensors (continued)

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
S608	ADF top of page sensor	NA	Checks whether the paper arrived at the sensor. Then determines the starting point of the document scanning
S609	ADF image scanner	NA	Scans the back side of the paper
S610	ADF cover sensor	NA	Checks whether the ADF cover is open or closed

ADF system motor / solenoid / roller

Learn about the ADF system motor / solenoid / roller.

Figure 3-133 ADF system motor / solenoid / roller, view 1

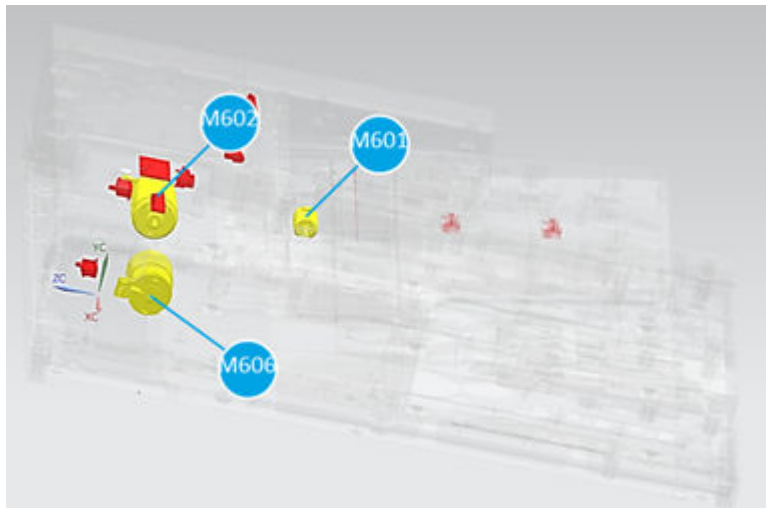


Table 3-73 ADF system motor / solenoid / roller, view 1

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
M601	ADF lift plate motor	NA	Moves the lift plate up and down
M602	ADF feed motor	NA	Drives the pickup roller, the forward roller, the separation roller, the scan roller, and the exit roller
M606		NA	

Figure 3-134 ADF system motor / solenoid / roller, view 2

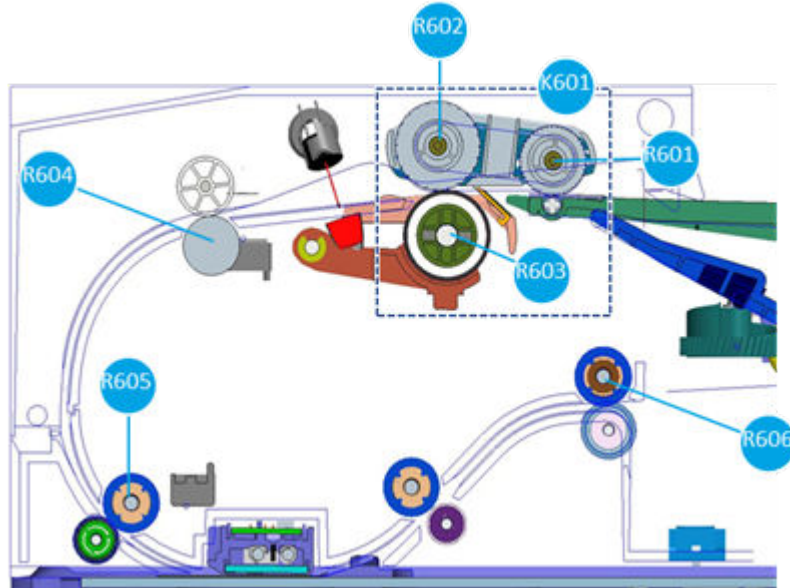


Table 3-74 ADF system motor / solenoid / roller, view 2

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
K601	ADF roller kit	5851-7202	Pickup, forward, and separation roller
R601	ADF pickup roller	NA	Pick up a paper
R602	ADF forward roller	NA	Move a paper out of the pickup roller to the inside of the ADF
R603	ADF separation roller	NA	Prevent multiple papers from feeding in contact with the forward roller
R604	ADF deskew roller	NA	Align the leading edge straight, move the paper to the scan area
R605	ADF scan roller	NA	Send the paper out of the deskew roller to the exit roller
R606	ADF exit roller	NA	Discharge the paper

Lift plate unit

Learn about the lift plate unit.

The lift plate unit is the place to store the original documents and lifts a paper up to touch the pickup roller.

When original documents are stacked on the tray, at first the paper present sensor checks whether there is no paper. Then the paper short size sensor, the paper long size sensor and the paper width sensor detects what size of paper is loaded on the tray. As scanning continues, the feed motor moves the lift plate up to ensure that the paper is picked up stably. When all of the paper runs out, the tray returns to the initial position.

Figure 3-135 Detail view of lift plate unit

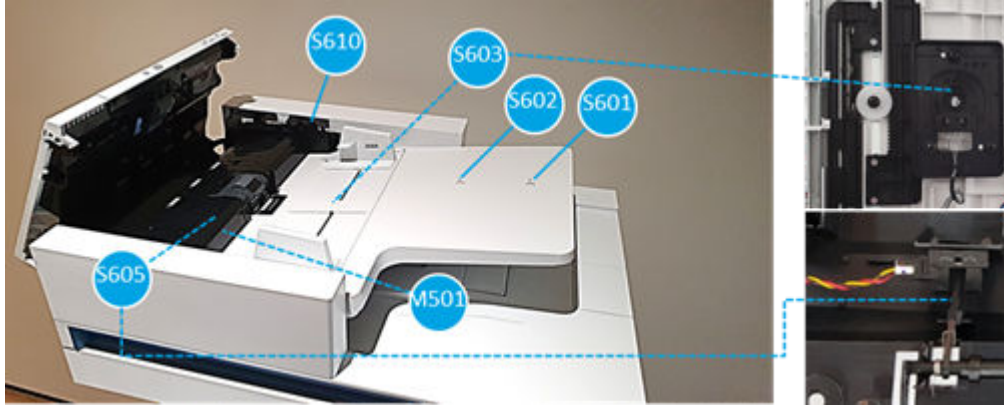


Table 3-75 Detail view of lift plate unit

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
S601	ADF paper long size sensor	NA	Checks the size of paper in length
S602	ADF paper short size sensor	NA	Checks the size of paper in length
S603	ADF paper width sensor	NA	Checks the size of paper in width
S605	ADF paper present sensor	NA	Checks whether there is paper on the lift plate
M501	ADF feed motor	NA	Moves the lift plate up and down
S610	ADF cover sensor	NA	Checks whether the ADF cover is open or closed

Pickup unit

Learn about the pickup unit.

The pickup unit takes a paper out of the lift plate and moves it to the deskew roller.

The pick-up down clutch moves the pickup roller downward. The paper rises by the movement of the lift plate, and for a certain period, the pickup roller moves upward so as not to touch the paper. The lift sensor detects where the pickup roller is located, then the lift plate stops. The pickup roller, the forward roller, and the separation roller are rotated by the feed motor and make the paper to move forward. At this moment, the forward roller and the separation roller rotate in the opposite directions of each other to prevent from multi-feeding.

The paper moves through the multi feed sensor to the deskew roller. During this process, the multi feed sensor detects whether a multiple page of paper come from the pickup unit. If a multi-feeding error comes up, it returns to the lift plate to be picked up again.

Figure 3-136 Detail view of pickup unit, view 1

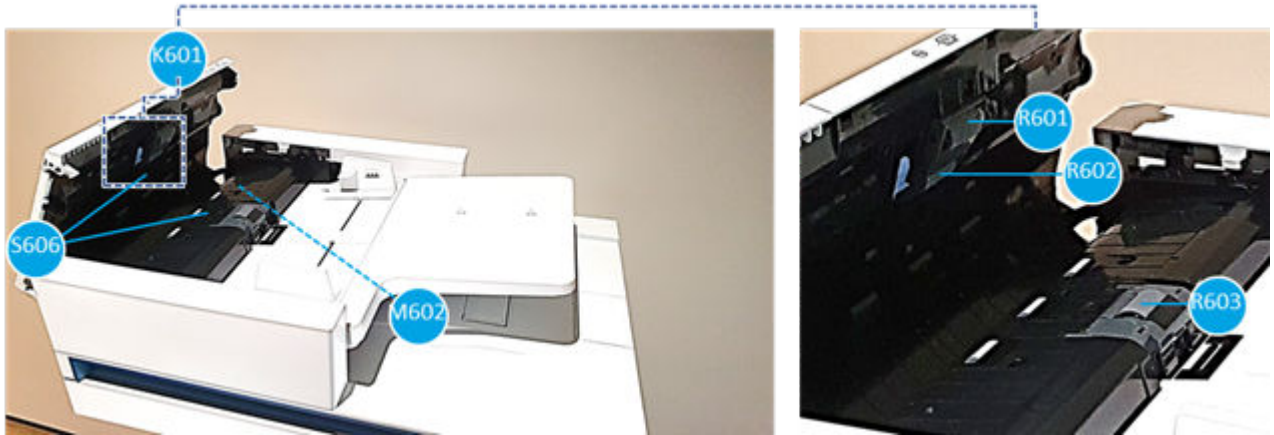


Table 3-76 Detail view of pickup unit, view 1

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
K601	ADF roller kit	5851-7202	Includes the pickup roller, the forward roller, and the separation roller
R601	ADF pickup roller	NA	Picks up paper
R602	ADF forward roller	NA	Moves paper from the pickup roller to the ADF inside
R603	ADF	NA	Prevents multiple pages from feeding in contact with the forward roller
M602	ADF feed motor	NA	Drives the separation roller
S606	ADF multi feed sensor (only for 200sh flow ADF)	NA	Checks the multi-feeding of paper

Figure 3-137 Detail view of pickup unit, view 2

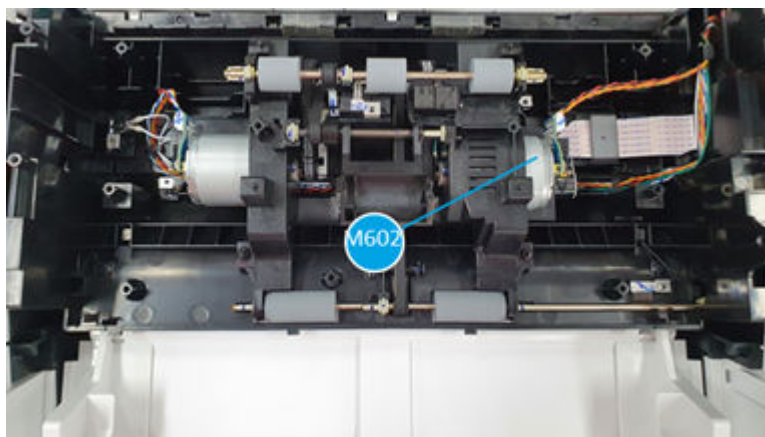


Table 3-77 Detail view of pickup unit, view 2

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
M602	ADF feed motor	NA	Drives the separation roller

Figure 3-138 Detail view of pickup unit, view 3

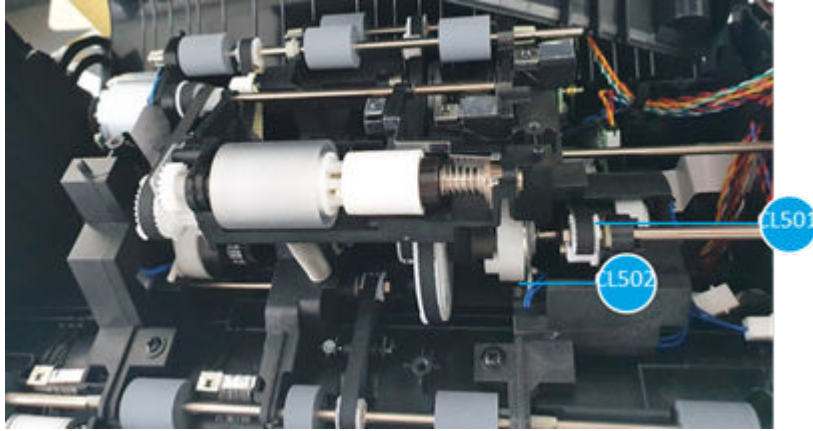


Table 3-78 Detail view of pickup unit, view 3

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
CL501	ADF pickup up, down clutch	NA	Makes the pickup roller go down to contact with paper
CL502	ADF pickup clutch	NA	Connects the driving force from the feed motor to the pickup roller and the forward roller

Deskew unit

Learn about the deskew unit.

The deskew unit receives a page that has passed through the multi-feeding sensor, aligns the page in the width direction and sends it to the scan roller. When paper enters the deskew sensor, the deskew roller rotates after a certain period. The leading edge of the paper is aligned by the deskew roller since the forward roller sorts the paper with the stuck roller. During this process, the deskew motor and the deskew clutch rotate the deskew roller.

Figure 3-139 Detail view of deskew unit, view 1

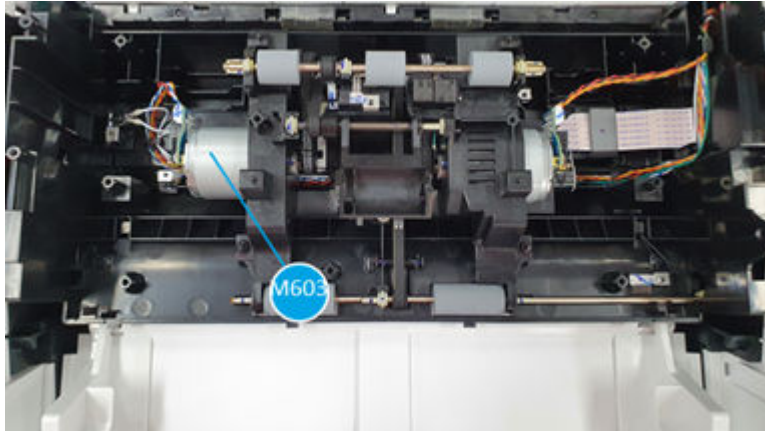


Table 3-79 Detail view of deskew unit, view 1

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
M603	ADF deskew motor	NA	Drives the pickup roller, the forward roller, and the deskew roller

Figure 3-140 Detail view of deskew unit, view 2

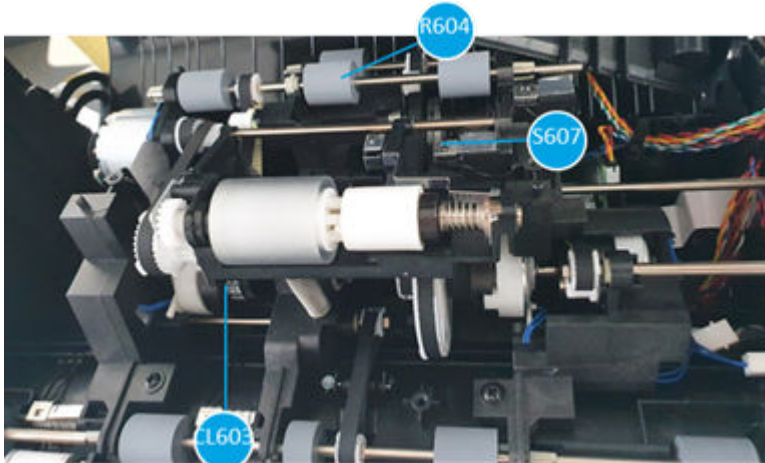


Table 3-80 Detail view of deskew unit, view 2

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
CL603	ADF deskew clutch	NA	Connects driving force from the deskew motor to the deskew roller
R604	ADF deskew roller	NA	Aligns the leading edge straight and move the paper to the scan area.
S607	ADF deskew sensor	NA	Checks the paper arrival at the deskew roller. And it sets the time to start the deskew roller.

Scan and exit unit

Learn about the scan and exit unit.

The scan and exit unit receives a page from the deskew roller, and then scans the image from the paper and discharges it to the out-bin.

Paper passes through the scan roller rotated by the feed motor. The top of page sensor detects whether the paper is correctly located and determines the starting point of the scanning. After the scanning process, the paper is discharged by the exit roller which is rotated by the exit motor.

Figure 3-141 Detail view of scan and exit unit

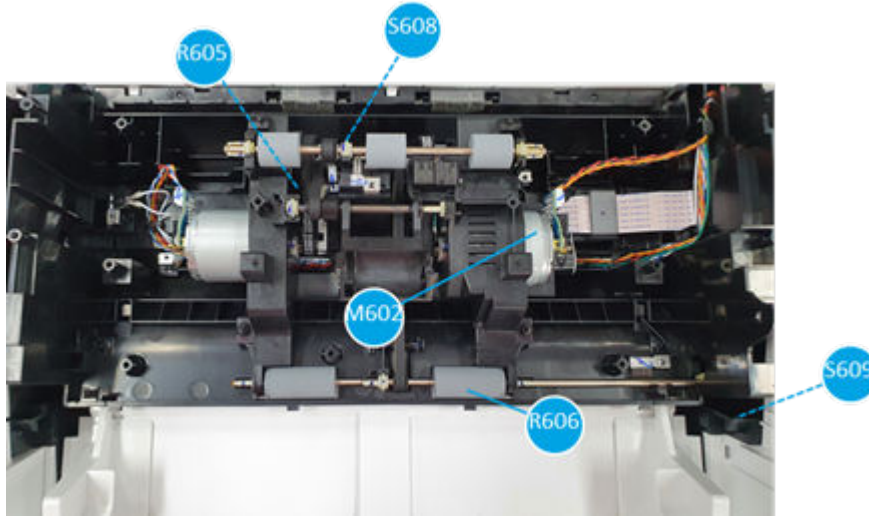


Table 3-81 Detail view of scan and exit unit

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
M602	ADF feed motor	NA	Drives the scan roller and the exit roller
R605	ADF scan motor	NA	Sends paper from the deskew roller to the exit roller
S608	ADP top of page sensor	NA	Checks whether the paper arrived at the sensor, and then decides to start scanning
S609	ADF image scanner	NA	Scans the back side of the paper
R606	ADF exit roller	NA	Discharges the paper to the output bin

Document feeder simplex operation

Learn about the document feeder simplex operation.

The following is the basic sequence of operation for a document feeder job.

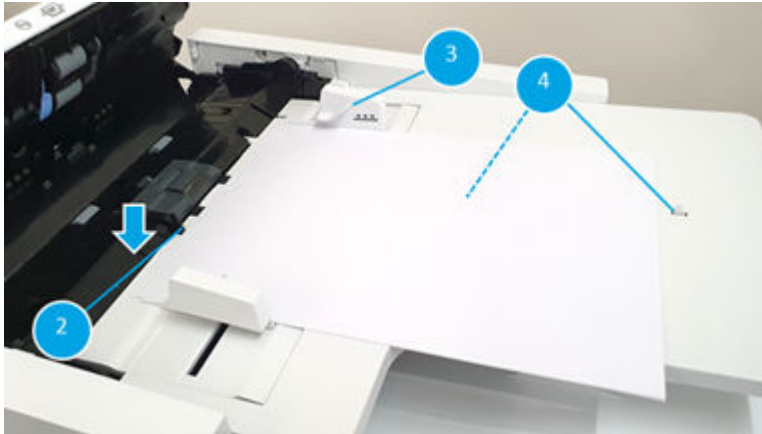
1. The ADF cover sensor (callout 1) detects when the cover door is in the closed position.

Figure 3-142 Document feeder simplex operation, view 1



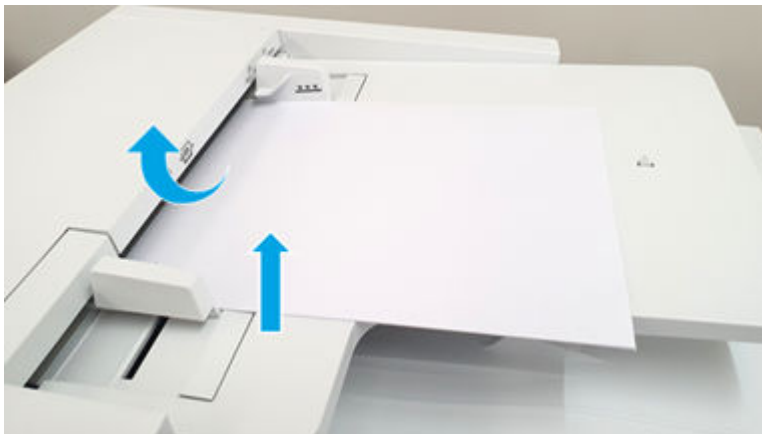
- The ADF paper present sensor (callout 2) activates when paper is loaded onto the input tray. Then the paper length sensors (callout 4) and the paper width guide (callout 3) identify the paper size.

Figure 3-143 Document feeder simplex operation, view 2



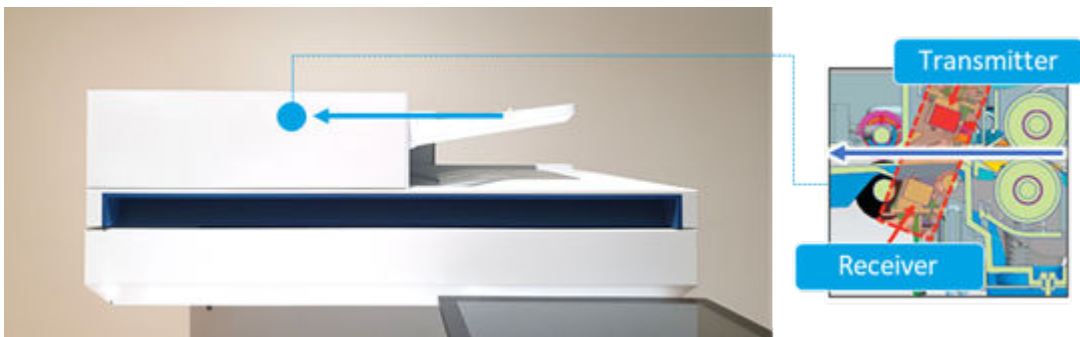
- The ADF lift plate motor rotates to raise the lift plate, and the pickup roller starts to pick up the loaded paper.

Figure 3-144 Document feeder simplex operation, view 3



- The ADF multi feed (ultrasonic) sensor is activated when the leading edge of the media is driven past the sensor.

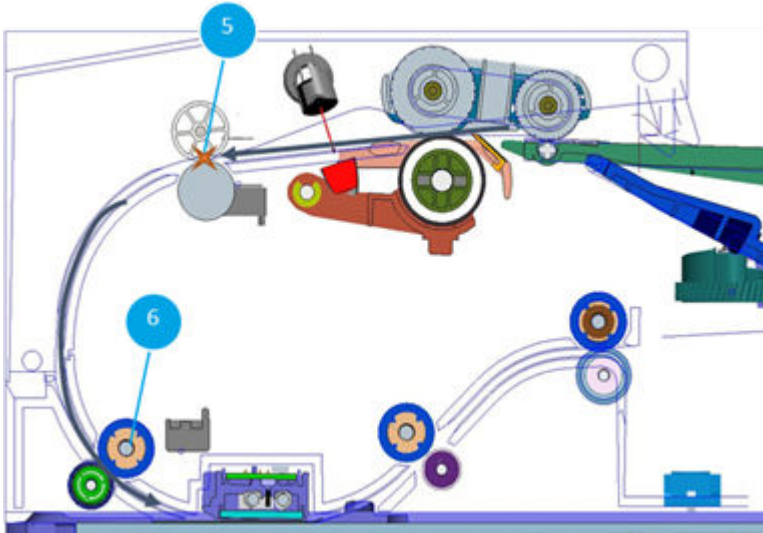
Figure 3-145 Document feeder simplex operation, view 4



- The ADF deskew sensor activates when the leading edge of the paper passes it.

6. The leading edge of the paper drives into the nip point of the deskew drive roller and the deskew pinch rollers. This creates a curl at the leading edge of the paper (callout 5).

Figure 3-146 Document feeder simplex operation, view 5



7. The deskew motor rotates the deskew roller to pull the paper into the scan roller.
8. The pickup clutch stops the turning and allows both the pickup and forward roller to turn freely while the paper is pulled in by the deskew roller.
9. The feed motor drives the leading edge of the paper into the top of page sensor (callout 6). The scanner begins the scanning and the data retrieval process (callout 7).
10. The ADF multi feeding (ultrasonic) sensor is deactivated when the trailing edge of the paper passes the sensor.
11. Paper is discharged to the output bin. The scanner ends the scanning and the data retrieval process.
12. If the copy job is completed, the ADF paper present sensor is deactivated. The ADF pickup clutch raises the pick roller or if the copy job is not completed, the ADF paper present sensor still operates. The printer firmware detects additional pages in the input tray and the process repeats.

Deskew operation

Learn about the deskew operation.

Sliding side guides on the input tray make sure that the paper stack is correctly aligned at the center of the input tray when the paper is loaded in the tray. The correct position of the loaded paper is parallel with the direction of travel into the document feeder paper path.

The document feeder further reduces paper skew due to an improper loading of the paper in the input tray by buckling the paper to create a paper buffer.


The document feeder aligns with the leading edge of the paper, parallel with the deskew drive rollers before it is driven further into the document feeder paper path.

Figure 3-147 Deskew operation



Document feeder hinges operation

Learn about the document feeder hinges operation.

 **NOTE:** The left and the right document feeder hinges are different parts. During repairs, they must be clearly identified and installed in the correct orientation. The parts are essential so they should not be installed in the wrong position.

The document feeder hinges allow positioning the assembly vertically above the scanner glass to accommodate the placement of books and other objects up to 25 mm (1.0 in) in height on the scanner glass. The document feeder still closes (the bottom of the document feeder is kept parallel to the scanner glass) and allows the printer to operate.

The document feeder hinges provide the height adjustment of 25 mm (1.0 in) when a maximum downward force of 4.5 kg (10 lb) is applied at the front edge of the assembly, with the fulcrum (such as the spine of a book) centered on the scanner glass and parallel to its long axis.

The document feeder will withstand a downward force of at least 4.5 kg (10 lb) applied at the front edge center of the assembly—when the fulcrum (such as the spine of a book) is located anywhere on the scanner glass and parallel to its long axis—without breaking, deforming, detaching or experiencing performance degradation.

The document feeder hinges support the assembly in the open position and prevent the document feeder from suddenly closing with a damaging or in a loud manner.

The hinges can hold the document feeder static in all positions higher than 100 mm (3.93 in); measured at the front of the assembly. Less than 2.3 kg (5 lb) of force is required to open or close the document feeder.

The hinges allow the document feeder to open to an angle of between 60° and 80° from the horizontal position (this angle will not allow the printer to tip over).

Figure 3-148 Document feeder open (book mode)

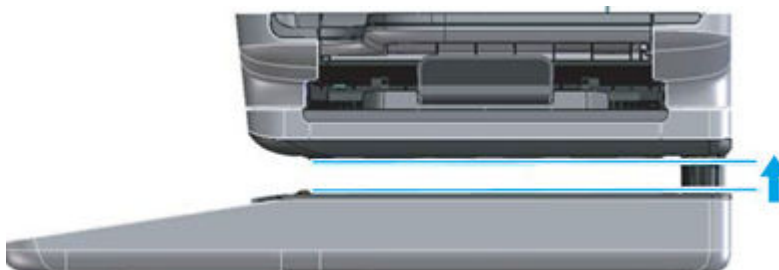


Figure 3-149 Document feeder open (60° to 80°)



ADF image scanner cleaning

Learn about cleaning the ADF image scanner.

Wipe the image scanner area with a soft cloth or microfiber. To maintain optimal document scanning performance without scanning image quality problems, the image scanner area should be cleaned periodically.

Figure 3-150 ADF image scanner cleaning



ADF PCA

Learn about the ADF PCA.

- 200sh Flow ADF PCA part number: 5QJ90-67008
- 200sh ADF PCA part number: 5QJ90-67013

Figure 3-151 ADF PCA connections

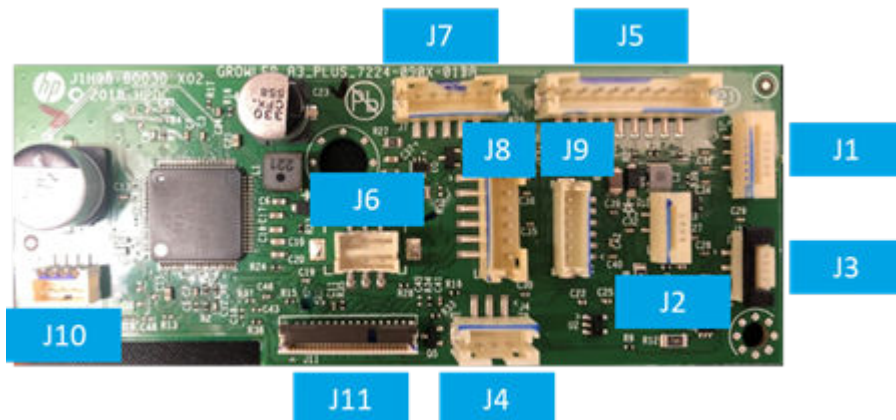


Table 3-82 ADF PCA connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
ADFG-J1	ADFG lift plate motor	FFC 6pin	NA
ADFG-J2	ADFG top of page sensor	FFC 4pin	NA
ADFG-J3	ADFG deskew sensor	FFC 4pin	NA
ADFG-J4	ADFG paper width sensor	3pin	NA
ADFG-J5	ADFG cover open sensor ADFG multi feed sensor - receiver ADFG lift sensor	9pin	NA
ADFG-J6	ADFG paper long size sensor ADFG paper short size sensor	6pin	NA
ADFG-J7	ADFG multi feed sensor - transmitter ADFG paper present sensor	5pin	NA
ADFG-J8	ADFG feed motor	6pin	NA
ADFG-J9	ADFG deskew motor	6pin	NA
ADFG-J10	ADFG power inlet	4pin	NA
ADFG-J11	Connecting with the platen	FFC 30pin	NA

Automatic document feeder system: 100sh Flow ADF, 100sh ADF

You will learn more about Automatic document feeder system: 100sh Flow ADF, 200sh ADF.

ADF cover

Learn about the ADF cover.

Figure 3-152 ADF cover



Table 3-83 ADF cover

Callout	Part name	Part number
C601	ADF front cover	NA
C602	ADF rear cover	NA
C603	ADF top cover	NA
C604	ADF input tray	NA
C605	ADF CMF panel	5QJ90-40056

ADF unit

Learn about the ADF unit.

Figure 3-153 ADF unit, view 1

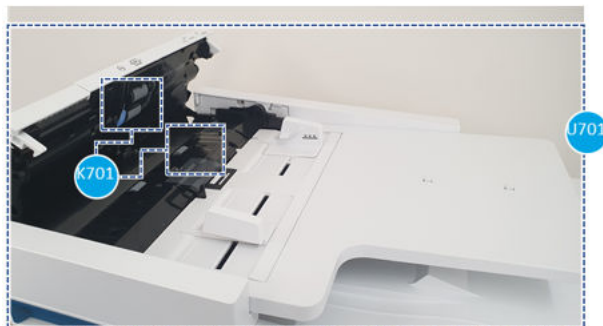


Figure 3-154 ADF unit, view 2

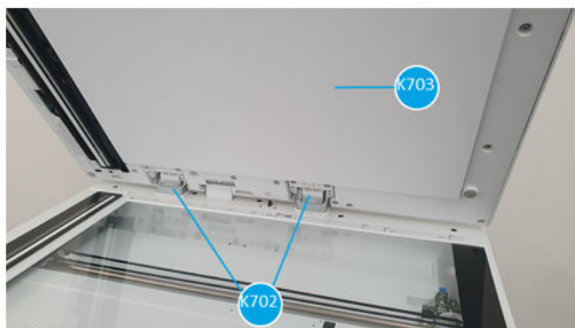


Table 3-84 ADF unit

Callout	Part name	Part number
U701	100-sheet ADF	5QJ90-40056
K701	ADF roller kit	5QJ83-67002
K702	ADF hinge kit	5QJ83-67003
K703	ADF white backing kit	5QJ90-67005

ADF system overview

You will learn more about ADF system overview.

ADF workflow

Learn about the ADF workflow.

Figure 3-155 ADF workflow

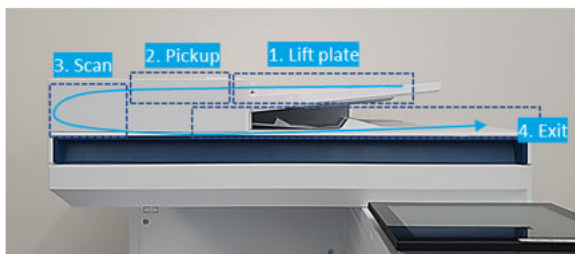


Table 3-85 ADF workflow

Callout	Unit name	Description
1	Lift plate	Moves an original document upward so that it is on the pickup paper path
2	Pickup	Picks up an original document to the deskew unit inside the ADF
3	Scan	Scans an original document
4	Exit	Discards scanned documents to the ADF out-bin

ADF sensors

Learn about the ADF sensors.

Figure 3-156 ADF sensors

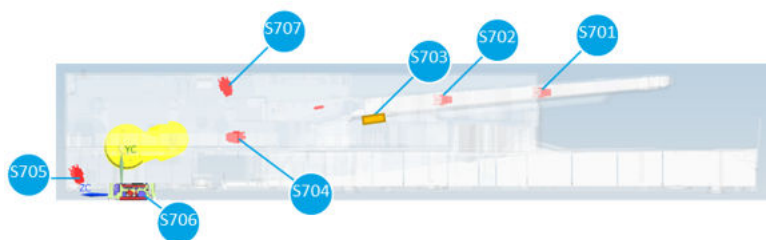


Table 3-86 ADF sensors

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
S701	ADF paper long size sensor	NA	Checks the size of a paper in length
S702	ADF paper short size sensor	NA	Checks the size of a paper in length
S703	ADF paper width sensor	NA	Checks the size of a paper in width
S704	ADF paper present sensor	NA	Checks whether there is no paper on lift plate
S705	ADF top of page sensor	NA	Checks whether the paper is arrived at the sensor. Then determines the starting point of the document scanning
S706	ADF image scanner	NA	Scans the back side of the paper
S707	ADF cover sensor	NA	Checks whether the ADF cover is open or closed

ADF system motor / roller

Learn about the ADF system motor / roller.

Figure 3-157 ADF system motor / roller, view 1

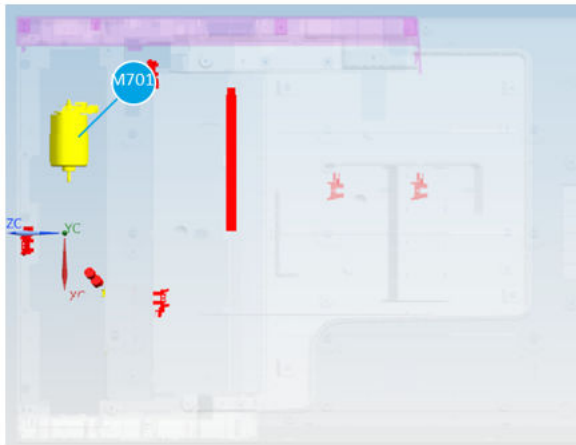


Figure 3-158 ADF system motor / roller, view 2

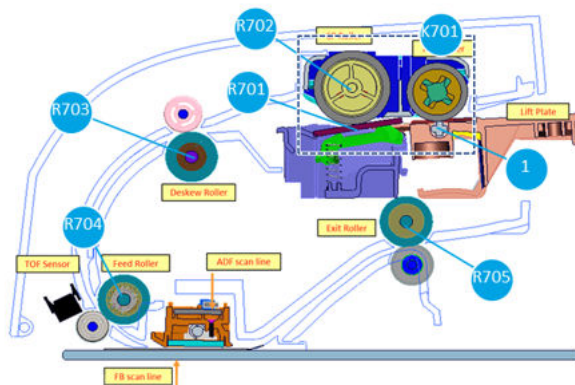


Table 3-87 ADF system motor / roller

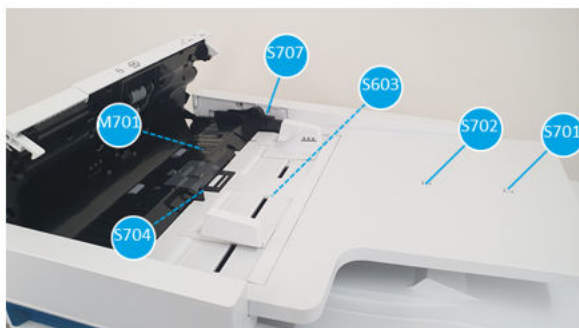
Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
M701	Main motor	NA	Drives the pickup roller, the forward roller, the deskew roller, the scan roller, and the exit roller
R701	ADF pickup roller	NA	Picks up a paper
R702	ADF forward roller	NA	Moves a paper out of the pickup roller to the inside of the ADF
R703	Deskew roller	NA	Moves paper out of the forward roller to the scan roller
R704	Feed roller	NA	Sends the paper out of the deskew roller to the exit roller
R705	Exit roller	NA	Discharges the paper
K701	ADF roller kit	5QJ83-67002	Includes the pickup, forward rollers and the friction pad
1	Friction pad	NA	Prevents multiple paper feeding in contact with the forward roller

Lift plate unit

Learn about the lift plate unit.

The lift plate unit is the place to store the original documents and lifts a paper up to touch the pickup roller.

When original documents are stacked on the tray, at first the paper present sensor checks whether there is no paper. Then the paper short size sensor, the paper long size sensor and the paper width sensor detects what size of paper is loaded on the tray. As scanning continues, the feed motor moves the lift plate up to ensure that the paper is picked up stably. When all of the paper runs out, the tray returns to the initial position.

Figure 3-159 Detail view of lift plate unit**Table 3-88 Detail view of lift plate unit**

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
S701	ADF paper long size sensor	NA	Checks the size of paper in length
S702	ADF paper short size sensor	NA	Checks the size of paper in length
S703	ADF paper width sensor	NA	Checks the size of paper in width
S704	ADF paper present sensor	NA	Checks whether there is no paper on the lift plate
S706	ADF cover sensor	NA	Checks whether the ADF cover is open or closed

Pickup unit

Learn about the pickup unit.

The pickup unit takes a paper out of the lift plate and moves it to the deskew roller.

The pick-up down clutch moves the pickup roller downward. The pickup roller, and the forward roller are rotated by the ADF main motor and make the paper is moved forward. At this moment, the friction pad makes a resistance with the paper to prevent from multi-feeding.

Figure 3-160 Detail view of pickup unit

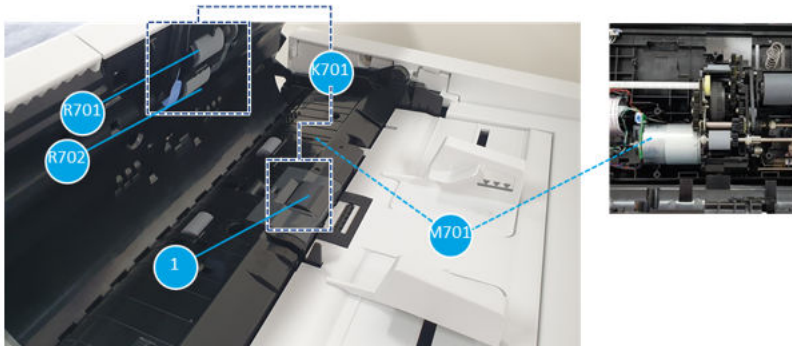


Table 3-89 Part information of pickup unit

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
K701	ADF roller kit	5QJ83-67002	Includes in the pickup roller, the forward roller, and the retard roller
R701	ADF pickup roller	NA	Picks up a paper
R702	ADF forward roller	NA	Moves the paper out of the pickup roller to the ADF inside
1	Friction pad	NA	Prevents multiple paper from feeding in contact with the forward roller
M701	ADF main motor	NA	Drives the pickup roller and the forward roller

Scan and exit unit

Learn about the scan and exit unit.

Scan and exit receive paper from the deskew roller, scan it, and then exit. The scan roller is driven by the main motor. Paper passes through the scan rollers and the top of page sensor. The top of page sensor detects the paper position and determines the starting timing of the scan. The scanned paper is discharged by the exit roller driven by the main motor.

The scan and exit unit receive a paper from the deskew roller, and then scan the image from the paper and discharge it to the out-bin.

The top of page sensor detects whether the paper is correctly located and determines the starting point of the scanning. After the scanning process, the paper is discharged by the exit roller which rotates by the ADF main motor.

Figure 3-161 Detail view of scan and exit unit

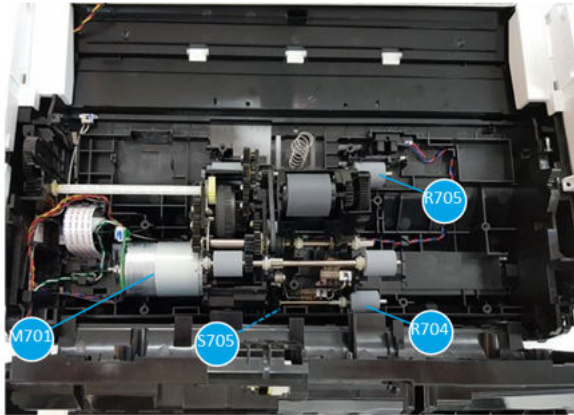


Table 3-90 Detail view of scan and exit unit

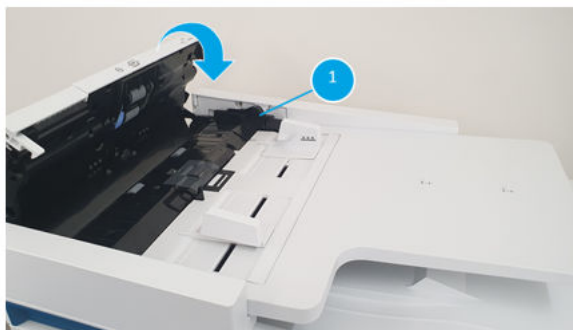
Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
M701	ADF feed motor	NA	Drives the feed roller and the exit roller
R704	ADF feed roller	NA	Sends paper out of the deskew roller to the exit roller
S705	ADF top of page sensor	NA	Checks whether the paper is arrived at the sensor, and then decides to start scanning
S706	ADF image scanner	NA	Scans the back side of the paper
R705	ADF exit roller	NA	Discharges the paper to the out-bin

Document feeder simplex operation

Learn about the document feeder simplex operation.

The following is the basic sequence of operation for a document feeder job.

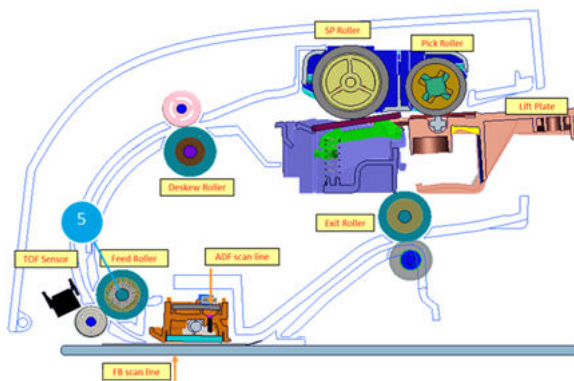
1. The ADF cover sensor detects (callout 1) when the cover door is in the closed position.



2. The ADF paper present sensor (callout 2) activates when paper is loaded onto the input tray. Then the paper length sensors (callout 4) and the paper width guide (callout 3) identify the paper size.



3. The ADF main motor rotates, the pickup roller starts to pick up the loaded paper..
4. The ADF deskew sensor activates when the leading edge of the paper passes it.
5. The ADF main motor rotates the deskew roller to pull the paper into the feed roller.
6. 6. The pickup clutch stops the turning and allows both the pickup and forward roller to turn freely while the paper is pulled in by the deskew roller.
7. The ADF main motor drives the leading edge of the paper into the top of page sensor(Callout 6). The scanner begins the scanning and the data retrieval process.



8. Paper is discharged to the output bin. The scanner ends the scanning and the data retrieval process.
9. If the copy job is completed, the ADF paper present sensor is deactivated. The ADF pickup up down clutch raises the pick roller or if the copy job is not completed, the ADF paper present sensor still operates. The printer firmware detects additional pages in the input tray and the process repeat.

Deskew operation

Learn about the deskew operation.

Sliding side guides on the input tray make sure that the paper stack is correctly aligned at the center of the input tray when the paper is loaded in the tray. The correct position of the loaded paper is parallel with the direction of travel into the document feeder paper path.

The document feeder further reduces paper skew due to an improper loading of the paper in the input tray by buckling the paper to create a paper buffer.


The document feeder aligns with the leading edge of the paper, parallel with the deskew drive rollers before it is driven further into the document feeder paper path.

Figure 3-162 Deskew operation



Document feeder hinges operation

Learn about the document feeder hinges operation.

 **NOTE:** The left and the right document feeder hinges are different parts. During repairs, they must be clearly identified and installed in the correct orientation. The parts are essential so they should not be installed in the wrong position.

The document feeder hinges allow positioning the assembly vertically above the scanner glass to accommodate the placement of books and other objects up to 25 mm (1.0 in) in height on the scanner glass. The document feeder still closes (the bottom of the document feeder is kept parallel to the scanner glass) and allows the printer to operate.

The document feeder hinges provide the height adjustment of 25 mm (1.0 in) when a maximum downward force of 4.5 kg (10 lb) is applied at the front edge of the assembly, with the fulcrum (such as the spine of a book) centered on the scanner glass and parallel to its long axis.

The document feeder will withstand a downward force of at least 4.5 kg (10 lb) applied at the front edge center of the assembly—when the fulcrum (such as the spine of a book) is located anywhere on the scanner glass and parallel to its long axis—without breaking, deforming, detaching or experiencing performance degradation.

The document feeder hinges support the assembly in the open position and prevent the document feeder from suddenly closing with a damaging or in a loud manner.

The hinges can hold the document feeder static in all positions higher than 100 mm (3.93 in); measured at the front of the assembly. Less than 2.3 kg (5 lb) of force is required to open or close the document feeder.

The hinges allow the document feeder to open to a maximum angle of 65° from the horizontal position (this angle will not allow the printer to tip over).

Figure 3-163 Document feeder open (book mode)

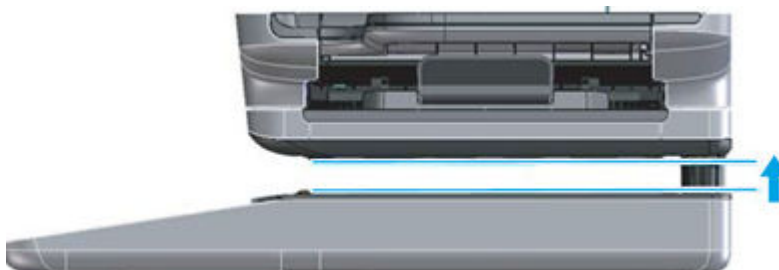


Figure 3-164 Document feeder open (maximum 65°)



ADF image scanner cleaning

Learn about the ADF image scanner cleaning.

Wipe the image scanner area with a soft cloth or microfiber. To maintain optimal document scanning performance without scanning image quality problems, the image scanner area should be cleaned periodically.

Figure 3-165 ADF image scanner cleaning



ADF PCA

Learn about the ADF PCA.

- 100sh Flow ADF PCA part number: 5QK34-67001

Figure 3-166 ADF PCA connections

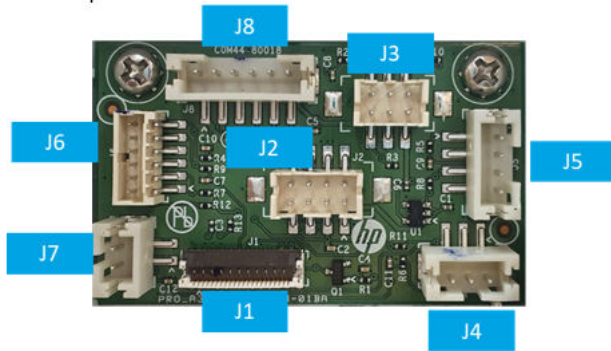


Table 3-91 ADF PCA connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
ADFP-J1	Connecting with the platen	FFC 22pin	NA
ADFP-J2	ADF power inlet	8pin	NA
ADFP-J3	ADF paper width sensor ADF paper present sensor	6pin	NA
ADFP-J4	ADF top of page sensor	3pin	NA
ADFP-J5	ADF cover open sensor	3pin	NA
ADFP-J6	ADF paper long size sensor ADF paper short size sensor	6pin	NA
ADFP-J7	LED	2pin	NA
ADFP-J8	ADF main motor	6pin	NA

Scanner system: Tarot Platen

You will learn more about the scanner system: Tarot Platen.

Scanner workflow

Learn about the scanner workflow.

The scanner converts an original document image into data. To scan an original document, the scanner uses a CIS image sensor which stores and transfers the converted image data to the storage space or transfers it to the printer engine for copy.

Figure 3-167 Tarot platen workflow

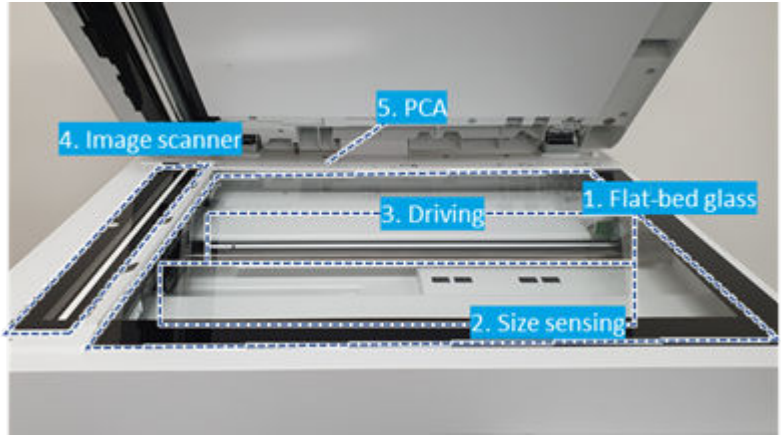


Table 3-92 Tarot platen workflow

Callout	Unit name	Part number	Description
U811	Tarot platen	3SJ11-60103	-
1	Flat-bed glass	NA	The glass that places the original document when performing single-sided scanning
2	Size sensing	NA	Detects the original document size
3	Driving	NA	Moves the image scanner to scan the original document
4	Image scanner	NA	Scans the original image and convert it to data
5	PCA	Y6V12-60035	Interfaces with the formatter and the ADF

Cover

Learn about the cover.

Figure 3-168 Tarot platen cover

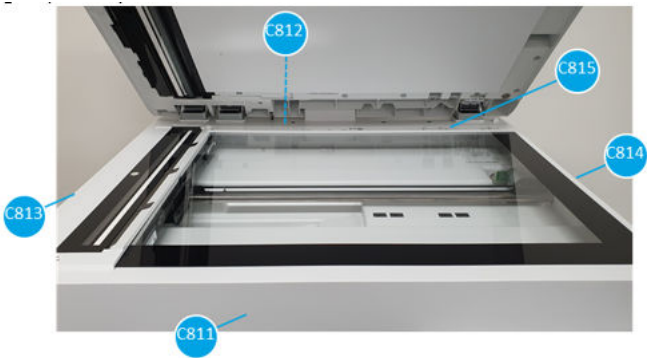


Table 3-93 Tarot platen cover

Callout	Unit name	Part number
C811	Tarot platen front cover	NA
C812	Tarot platen rear cover	3SJ11-40008
C813	Tarot platen left cover	NA
C814	Tarot platen right cover	NA

Table 3-93 Tarot platen cover (continued)

Callout	Unit name	Part number
C815	Tarot platen upper cover	NA

Sensor, motor

Learn about the sensor and motor.

Figure 3-169 Tarot platen sensor, motor

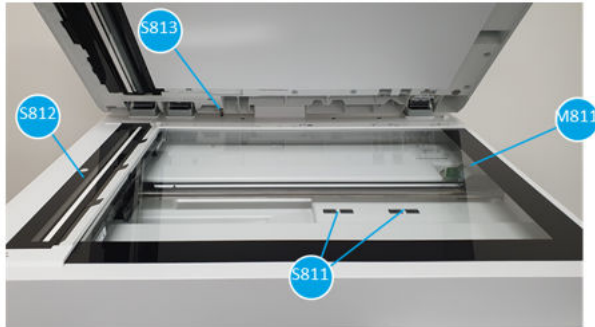


Table 3-94 Tarot platen sensor, motor

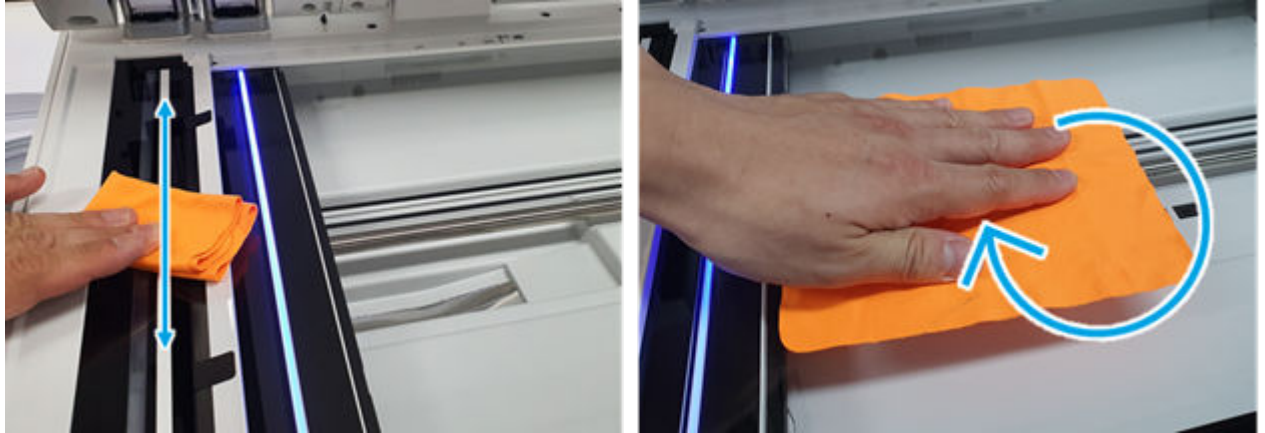
Callout	Unit name	Part number	Description
M811	Tarot motor	NA	Moves the image scanner to scan the original document
S811	Paper size detection sensor	NA	Detects the original document size
S812	Image scanner	NA	Scans the original image and convert it to data
S813	ADF open sensor	NA	Detects whether the ADF is open

Image scanner and flat-bed glass cleaning

Learn about cleaning the Tarot high speed (HS) platen image scanner and flat-bed glass.

Wipe the image scanner area with a soft cloth or microfiber. To maintain optimal document scanning performance without scanning image quality problems, the image scanner area should be cleaned periodically.

Figure 3-170 Image scanner and flat-bed glass cleaning



PCA

Learn about the PCA.

- Tarot platen PCA part number: Y6V12-60035 (P811)

Figure 3-171 Tarot platen PCA connections

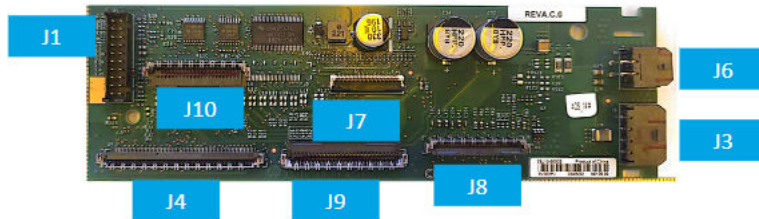


Table 3-95 Tarot platen PCA connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
SSAt-J1	Tarot motor, paper size detection sensor 1, 2, ADF open sensor	-	3SJ11-50023
SSAt-J3	Power inlet	4pin	3SJ11-50006
SSAt-J4	Formatter interface 1	68pin FFC	3SJ11-50022
SSAt-J6	Power outlet to ADF	-	NA
SSAt-J7	ADF interface	-	NA
SSAt-J8	ADF scanner	-	NA
SSAt-J9	Formatter interface 2	50pin FFC	3SJ11-50021
SSAt-J10	Image scanner	40pin FFC	3SJ11-50020

Scanner system: CIS Platen

You will learn more about the scanner system: CIS Platen.

Cover

Learn about the cover.

Figure 3-172 CIS platen cover

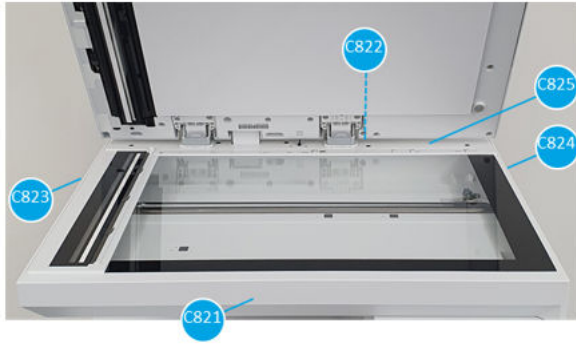


Table 3-96 CIS platen cover

Callout	Unit name	Part number
C821	CIS platen front cover	NA
C822	CIS platen rear cover	5QJ83-40020
C823	CIS platen left cover	NA
C824	CIS platen right cover	NA
C825	CIS platen upper cover	NA

CIS platen sensors and motors

Learn about the sensors and motors.

Figure 3-173 CIS platen sensor, motor

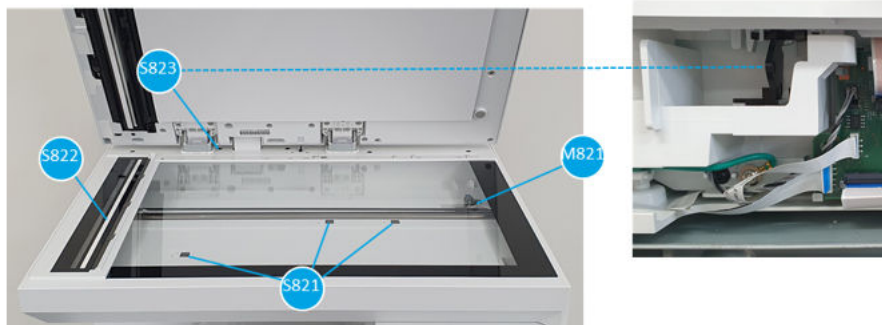


Table 3-97 CIS platen sensor, motor

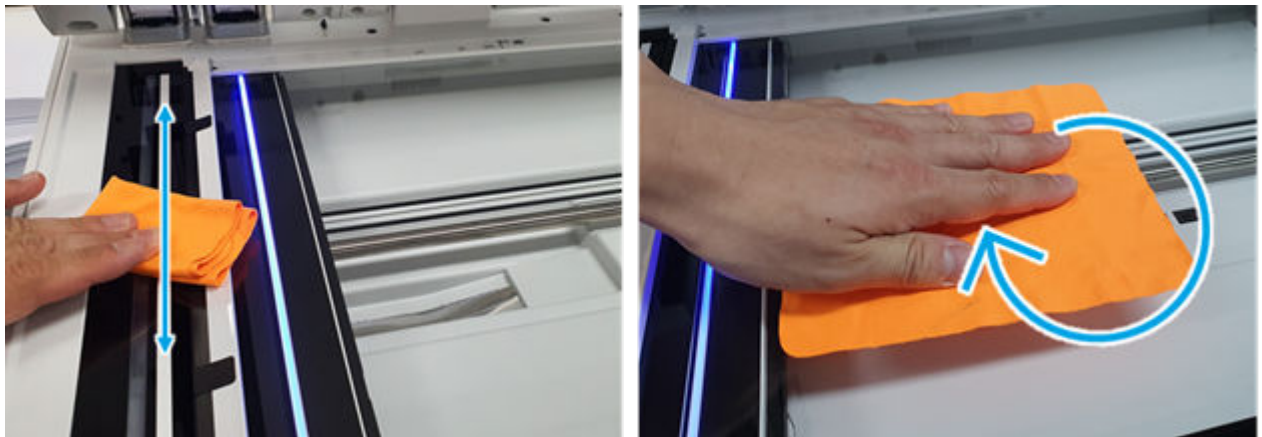
Callout	Unit name	Part number	Description
M821	CIS motor	NA	Moves the image scanner to scan the original document
S821	Paper size detection sensor	NA	Detects the original document size
S822	Image scanner	NA	Scans the original image and converts it to data
S823	ADF open sensor	NA	Detects whether the ADF is open

Image scanner and flat-bed glass cleaning

Learn about cleaning the Tarot high speed (HS) platen image scanner and flat-bed glass.

Wipe the image scanner area with a soft cloth or microfiber. To maintain optimal document scanning performance without scanning image quality problems, the image scanner area should be cleaned periodically.

Figure 3-174 Image scanner and flat-bed glass cleaning



PCA

Learn about the PCA.

- Tarot platen PCA part number: 3SJ00-60109 (P821)

Figure 3-175 CIS platen PCA connections

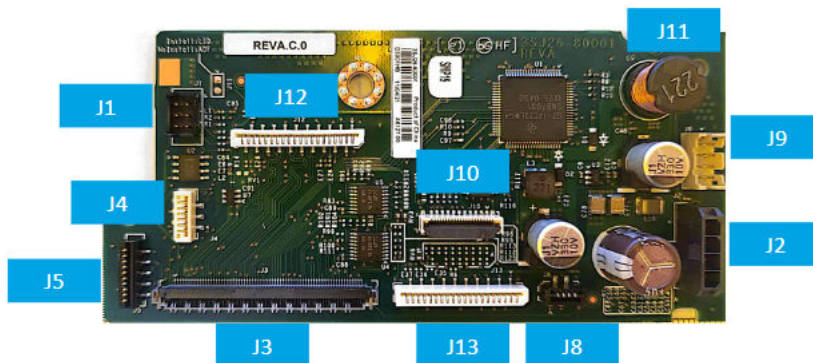


Table 3-98 CIS platen PCA connections

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
SSAc-J1	ADF open sensor	-	3SJ00-50009
SSAc-J2	Power inlet	4pin	3SJ11-50006
SSAc-J3	Formatter interface	68pin FFC	3SJ00-50010
SSAc-J4	CIS platen motor	-	3SJ00-50008
SSAc-J5	Paper size detection sensor 1, 2	-	3SJ00-50007
SSAc-J8	Paper size detection sensor 3	4pin FFC	3SJ00-50012
SSAc-J9	Power outlet to ADF	-	NA
SSAc-J10	ADF Interface	-	NA
SSAc-J11	Unused	-	-

Table 3-98 CIS platen PCA connections (continued)

CN Number	Connection	Type	Harness Part number
SSAc-J12	Image scanner	20pin FFC	3SJ26-50001
SSAc-J13	Length sensor 3	-	NA

Input devices

Learn about the input devices that are available for these printers.

Workgroup stand

Learn about the workgroup stand.

Stand is an optional part that supports the base printer and serves to store ancillary items.

Figure 3-176 Workgroup stand, view 1

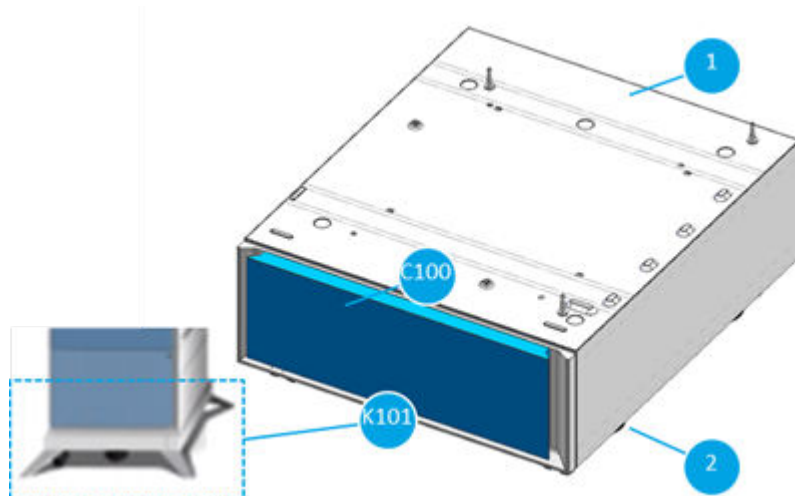


Table 3-99 Workgroup stand, view 1

Callout	Part name	Part number
1	Stand	6GW54A
C100	Stand CMF panel	NA
2	Caster wheel	6109-001138
K101	Holder wheel kit (for the front side only)	6GW46-40011

NOTE: When installing a stand, there is an empty space between the base printer and the stand. Additional part is in operation to prevent rodents from entering inside the product.

- Cover side lower blocker Part number: X3A76-40004
- Sheet side lower blocker Part number: X3A76-40005

Empty space between the base printer and the stand and cover/sheet side lower blocker (Callout 3 & Callout 4)

Figure 3-177 Workgroup stand, view 2

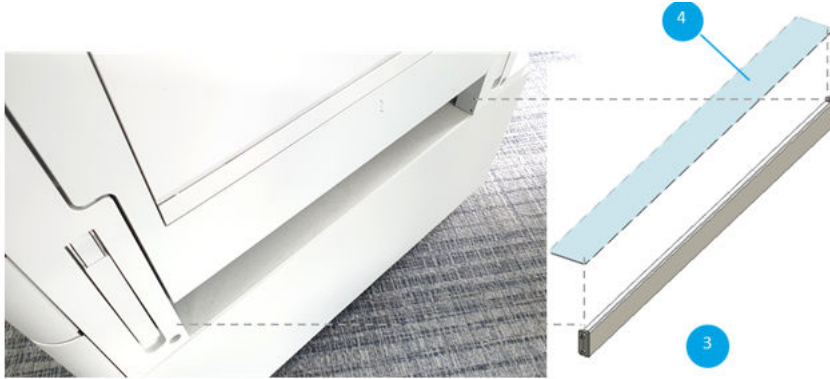


Table 3-100 Workgroup stand, view 2

Callout	Part name	Part number
3	Cover side lower blocker	X3A64-40004
4	Sheet side lower blocker	X3A64-40005

Workgroup Dual Cassette Feeder (DCF, Tray 4, 5)

The Dual Cassette Feeder (DCF) is optional, and provides additional paper capacity for the printer.

DCF (Tray 4, 5) covers

Learn about the DCF (Tray 4, 5) covers.

Figure 3-178 DCF (Tray 4, 5) covers

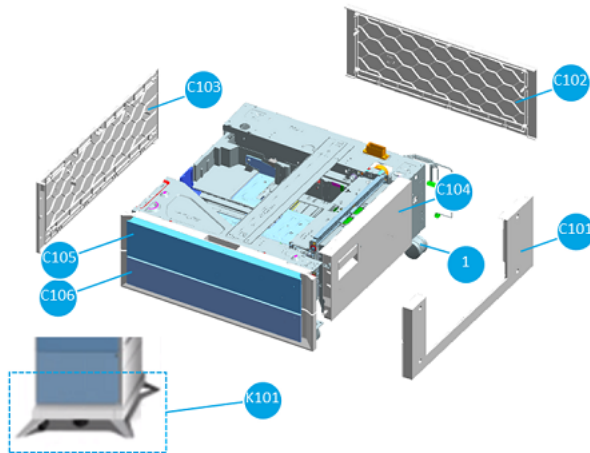


Table 3-101 DCF (Tray 4, 5) covers

Callout	Part name	Part number
C101	DCF (Tray 4, 5) right cover	5QJ98-40015
C102	DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover	5QJ98-40014
C103	DCF (Tray 4, 5) left cover	5QJ98-40017
C104	DCF (Tray 4, 5) right door	5QJ98-61006

Table 3-101 DCF (Tray 4, 5) covers (continued)

Callout	Part name	Part number
C105	Tray 4 CMF panel	5QK03-40033
C106	Tray 5 CMF panel	5QK03-40035
1	Caster wheel	6109-001138
K101	Holder wheel kit (for the front side only)	6GW46-40011

DCF (Tray 4, 5) feeding system workflow

Learn about the DCF (Tray 4, 5) feeding system workflow.

Figure 3-179 Overview of DCF (Tray 4, 5) feeding system workflow

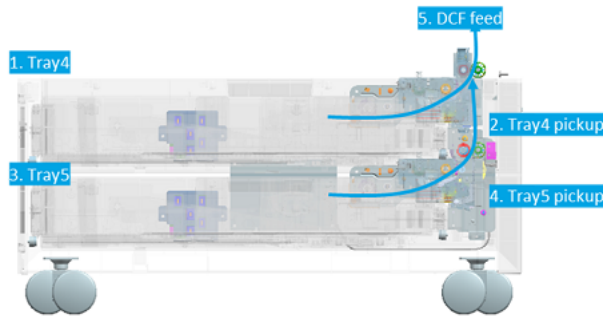


Figure 3-180 Detail view of DCF (Tray 4, 5) feeding system workflow



Table 3-102 Detail view of DCF (Tray 4, 5) feeding system workflow

Callout	Part name	Description
1	Tray 4	Stores paper
2	Tray 4 pickup unit	Picks up paper to the DCF feed roller
3	Tray 5	Stores paper
4	Tray 5 pickup unit	Picks up paper to the DCF feed roller
5	DCF feed unit	Moves paper to the base printer

DCF (Tray 4, 5) unit

Learn about the DCF (Tray 4, 5) unit.

Figure 3-181 Overview of DCF (Tray 4, 5) unit

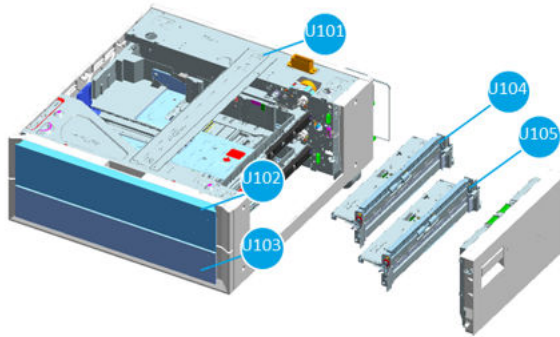


Table 3-103 Overview of DCF (Tray 4, 5) unit

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U101	DCF (Tray4, 5) unit	6GW46-67001	-
U102	Tray 4 cassette	5QJ98-61009	Stores paper
U103	Tray 5 cassette	5QJ98-61007	Stores paper
U104	Tray 4 pickup assembly	8GR90-60007	-
U105	Tray 5 pickup assembly	8GR90-60007	-

DCF (Tray 4, 5) roller

Learn about the DCF (Tray 4, 5) roller.

Figure 3-182 Overview of DCF (Tray 4, 5) roller

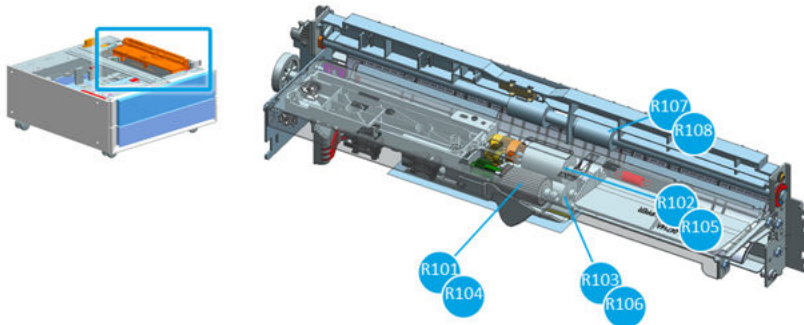


Figure 3-183 Detail view of DCF(Tray 4, 5) roller

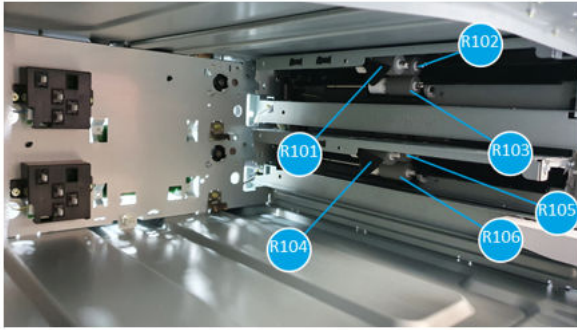


Figure 3-184 Detail view of DCF(Tray 4, 5) roller

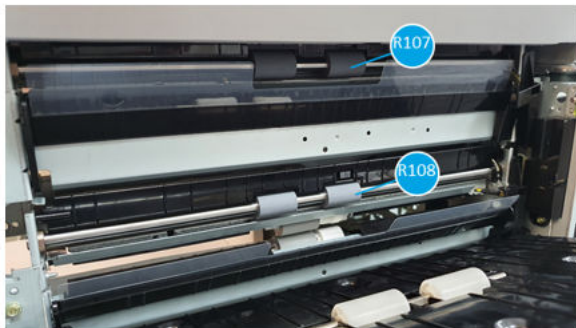


Table 3-104 Overview of DCF (Tray 4, 5) roller

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
K101	DCF roller kit	5PN66-67001	-
R101	Tray 4 pickup roller	5QJ90-60128	Picks up a paper from the Tray 4
R102	Tray 4 forward roller	JC93-01726A	Moves a paper to the Tray 4 feed roller
R103	Tray 4 reverse roller	JC93-01726A	Prevents multi paper feeding
K101	DCF roller kit	5PN66-67001	-
R104	Tray 5 pickup roller	5QJ90-60128	Picks up a paper from the Tray 5
R105	Tray 5 forward roller	JC93-01726A	Moves a paper to the Tray 5 feed roller
R106	Tray 5 reverse roller	JC93-01726A	Prevents multi paper feeding
R107	Tray 4 feed roller	NA	Moves a paper to the base printer
R108	Tray 5 feed roller	NA	Moves a paper to the Tray 4 feed roller

DCF (Tray 4, 5) sensors

Learn about the DCF (Tray 4, 5) sensors.

Figure 3-185 Overview of DCF (Tray 4, 5) sensors

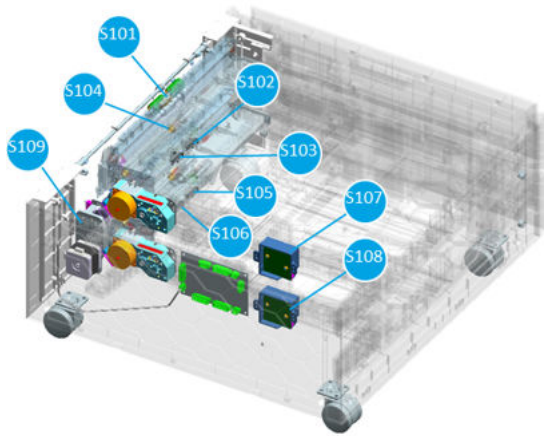


Figure 3-186 Detail view of DCF (Tray 4, 5) sensors 1 of 2

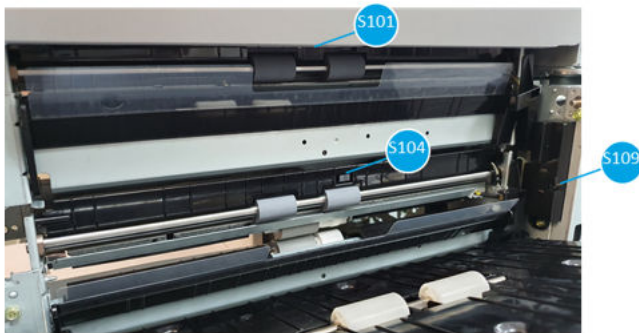


Figure 3-187 Detail view of DCF (Tray 4, 5) sensors 2 of 2

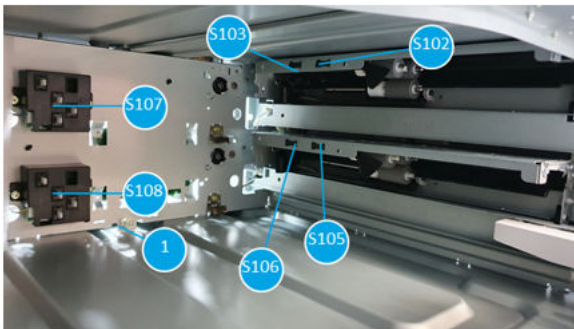


Table 3-105 Parts information of DCF (Tray 4, 5) sensors

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
S101	Tray 4 feed sensor	0604-001490	Checks whether a paper comes from the tray correctly
S102	Tray 4 paper empty sensor	0604-001393	Checks whether the tray has no paper
S103	Tray 4 stack height sensor	0604-001393	Sets the proper height of paper to make a contact with the pickup roller
S104	Tray 5 feed sensor	0604-001490	Keeps the proper distance between papers on the paper path
S105	Tray 5 paper empty sensor	0604-001393	Checks whether the tray has no paper

Table 3-105 Parts information of DCF (Tray 4, 5) sensors (continued)

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
S106	Tray 5 stack height sensor	0604-001393	Sets the proper height of paper to make a contact with the pickup roller
S107	Tray 4 paper size sensor	JC93-00018B	Checks the opening and closing of the tray and signals to identify the paper size
S108	Tray 5 paper size sensor	JC93-00018B	Check the opening and closing of the tray and the signals to identify the paper size
1	Tray heater connector	NA	Connects the tray heater
S109	DCF (Tray4, 5) right door open switch	JC39-01696A	Checks whether the tray 4, 5 right door is open
U7	Tray heater 110V	Y1G22-67901	Dries damp paper with a heating pipe
U8	Tray heater 220V	Y1G22-67902	Dries damp paper with a heating pipe

DCF (Tray 4, 5) motors

Learn about the DCF (Tray 4, 5) motors.

Figure 3-188 Overview of DCF (Tray 4, 5) motors

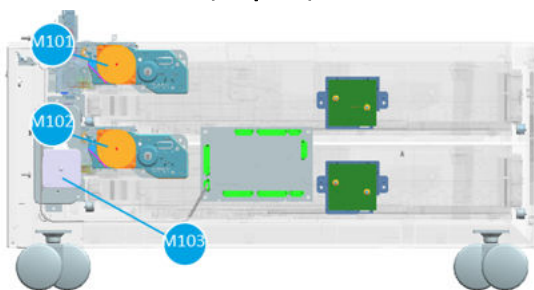


Figure 3-189 Detail view of DCF motors

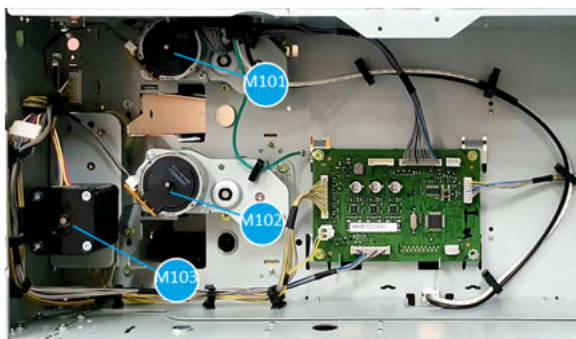


Table 3-106 Parts information of DCF (Tray 4, 5) motors

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
M101	DCF (Tray 4) pickup motor	5QJ90-64002	Drives the Tray 4 pickup, forward, and reverse rollers or knock-up plate
M102	DCF (Tray 5) pickup motor	5QJ90-64002	Drives the Tray 5 pickup, forward, and reverse rollers or knock-up plate

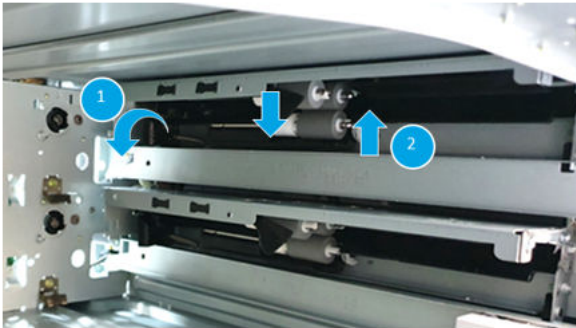
Table 3-106 Parts information of DCF (Tray 4, 5) motors (continued)

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
M103	DCF (Tray 4, 5) feed motor	5QJ90-60023	Drives the Tray 4, 5 feed roller

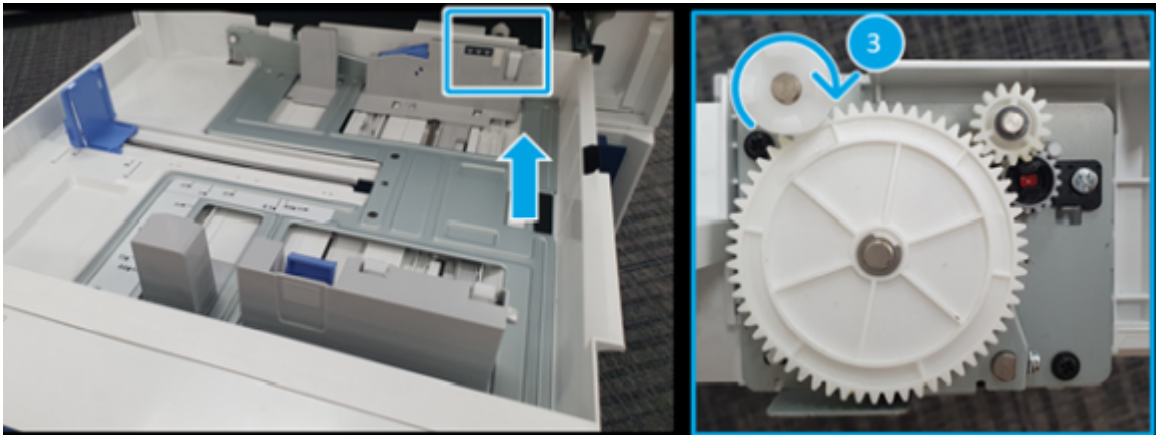
DCF (Tray 4, 5) operation

Learn about the DCF (Tray 4, 5) operation.

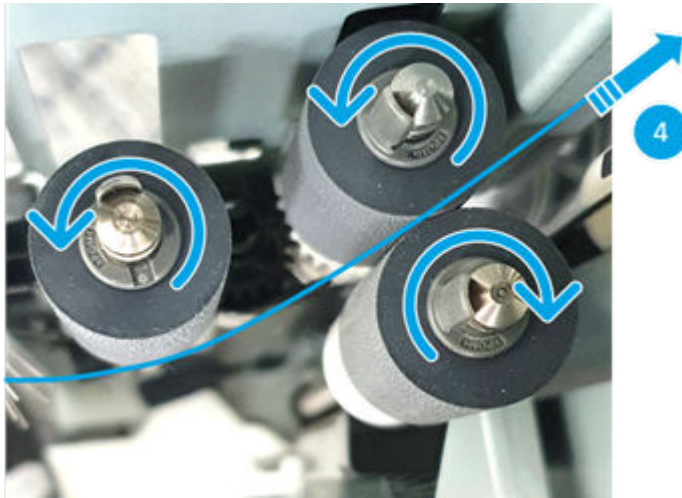
1. When the tray is closed, tray input lever is pushed (callout 1).
2. The pickup roller moves down to contact with the surface of the paper, and the reverse roller moves upward to make a contact with the forward roller (callout 2).



3. Tray motor drives the knock-up plate to move paper upward to the pickup roller (callout 3).



4. The pickup roller moves the paper forward. The forward roller makes paper move into the feed roller. The reverse roller prevents the printer from multi-feeding (callout 4).

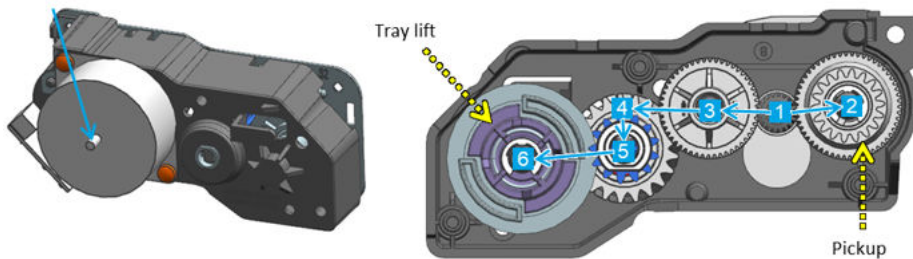


- 5. The feed roller sends the paper to the trans roller.

DCF (Tray 4, 5) motor operation

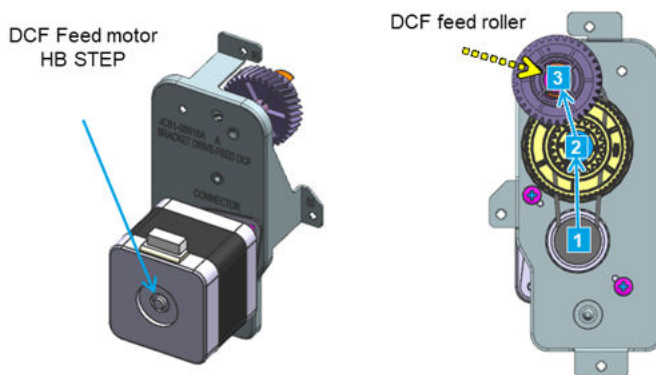
Learn about the DCF (Tray 4, 5) motor operation.

Figure 3-190 DCF (Tray 4, 5) motor operation, view 1



- Pickup: Tray 4, 5 pickup motor > clockwise rotation > 1 gear > 2 gear (pickup roller, forward roller)
- Tray lift: Tray 4, 5 pickup motor > counterclockwise rotation > 1 gear > 3 gear > 4 gear > 5 gear > 6 gear & coupler (knock-up plate)

Figure 3-191 DCF (Tray 4, 5) motor operation, view 2



- DCF feed driving: 1 DCF feed motor > 2 pulley and gear > 3 gear & coupler (feed roller, trans roller)

DCF (Tray 4, 5) PCA

Learn about the DCF (Tray 4, 5) PCA.

DCF (Tray 4, 5) PCA connects to the formatter to control the DCF operation.

- DCF (Tray 4, 5) PCA part number: 6GW46-60001 (P101)

Figure 3-192 DCF (Tray 4, 5) PCA

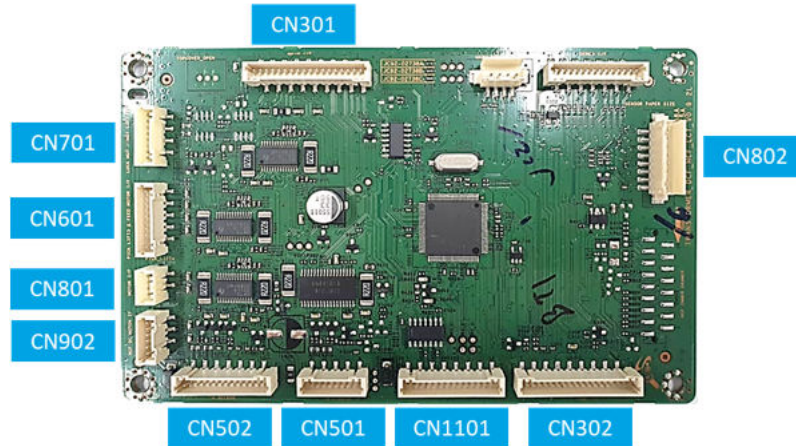


Table 3-107 DCF (Tray 4, 5) PCA

CN number	Connection	Type	Harness part number
DCF-CN3	DCF right door open switch	2pin	JC39-01696A
DCF-CN5	Tray 4 pickup motor Tray 5 pickup motor Feed motor	17pin	JC39-01691A
DCF-CN6	Tray 4 paper empty sensor Tray 4 stack height sensor Tray 5 paper empty sensor Tray 5 stack height sensor	18pin	JC39-01692A JC39-01693A
DCF-CN7	Main-J94	18pin	5QK02-50002
DCF-CN9	Tray 4 open, paper size sensor Tray 5 open, paper size sensor	8pin	JC39-01695A

Workgroup High Capacity Input tray (HCI, Tray 4)

Learn more about Workgroup High Capacity Input tray (HCI, Tray 4).

The High Capacity Input (HCI) device is optional. It provides additional paper capacity for the printer. The HCI consists of the shift tray that stores excess paper, the lift tray that supplies paper to the pickup, and the feeding system that supplies paper to the base printer.

HCI (Tray 4) cover

Learn about the HCI (Tray 4) cover.

Figure 3-193 HCI (Tray 4) cover

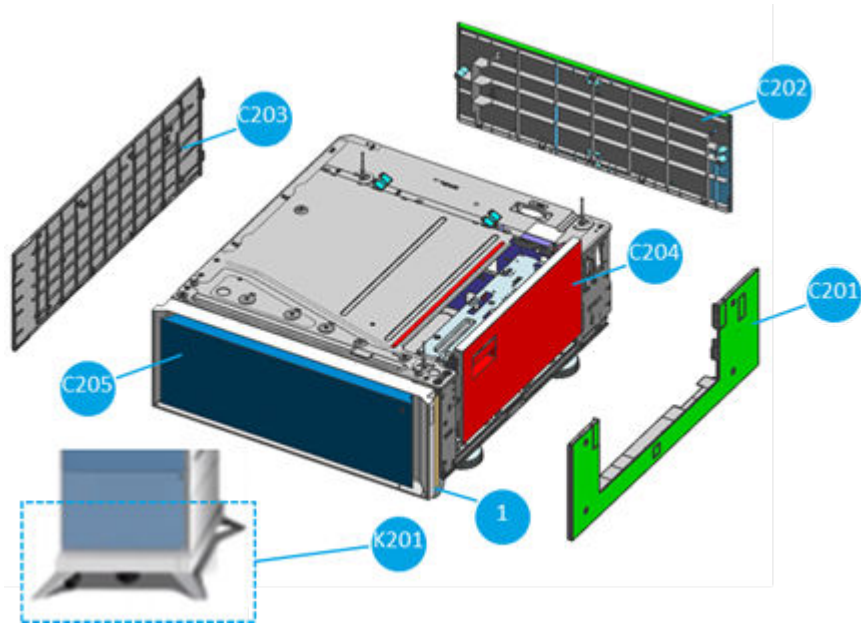


Table 3-108 HCI (Tray 4) cover

Callout	Part name	Part number
C201	HCI (Tray 4) right cover	5QJ98-40024
C202	HCI (Tray 4) rear cover	5QJ98-40014
C203	HCI (Tray 4) left cover	5QJ98-40025
C204	HCI (Tray 4) right door	5QJ98-61014
C205	HCI (Tray 4) front CMF panel	5QK09-40024
1	Caster wheel	6109-001138
K201	Holder wheel kit (for the front side only)	6GW46-40011

HCI (Tray 4) workflow

Learn about the HCI (Tray 4) workflow.

Figure 3-194 Overview of HCI (Tray 4) workflow

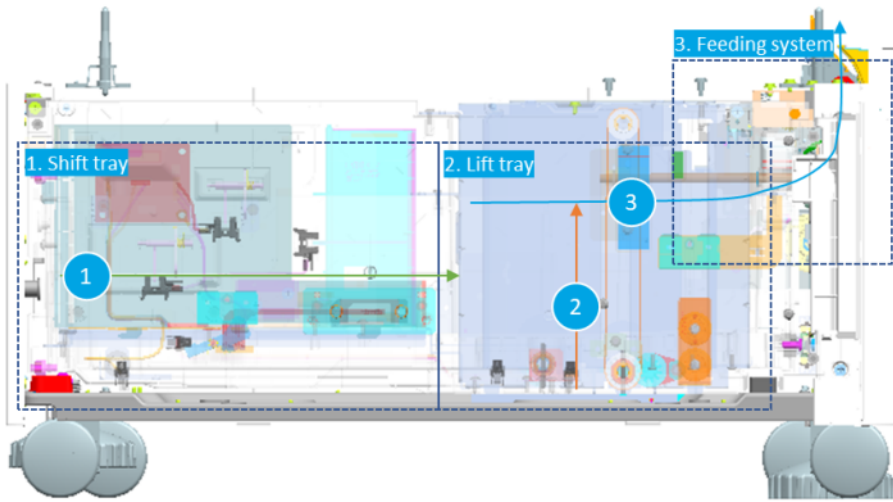


Figure 3-195 Detail view of HCI (Tray 4) workflow

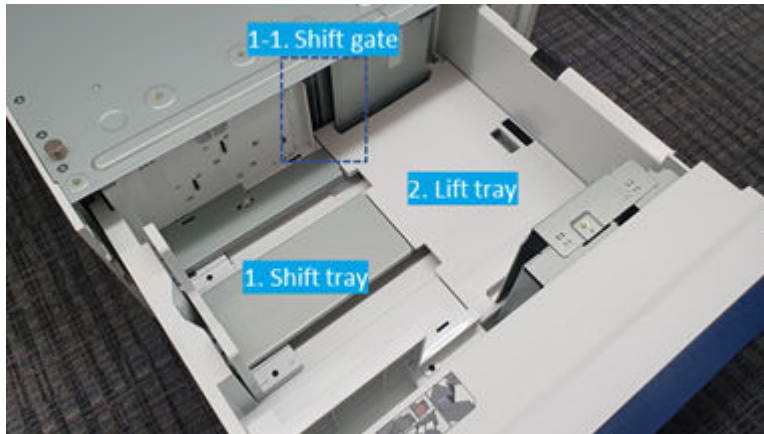


Table 3-109 Detail view of HCI (Tray 4) workflow

Callout	Part name	Description
1	Shift tray	Loads an excess number of papers for printing, and when the lift tray runs out of paper, it moves the paper to the lift tray
1-1	Shift gate	Arranges the paper and opens the gate to move the paper to the lift tray during the shifting process
2	Lift tray	Stores paper for printing

HCI (Tray 4) unit

Learn about the HCI (Tray 4) unit.

Figure 3-196 Overview of HCI (Tray 4) unit

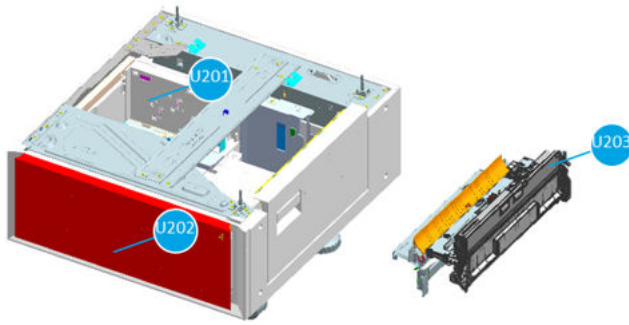


Table 3-110 Overview of HCI (Tray 4) unit

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
U201	HCI (Tray 4) unit	6GW48-67001	-
U202	HCI (Tray 4) cassette	5QJ98-61015	Stores paper
U203	HCI (Tray 4) pickup assembly	8GR90-60001	-

HCI (Tray 4) roller

Learn about the HCI (Tray 4) roller.

Figure 3-197 Overview of HCI (Tray 4) roller

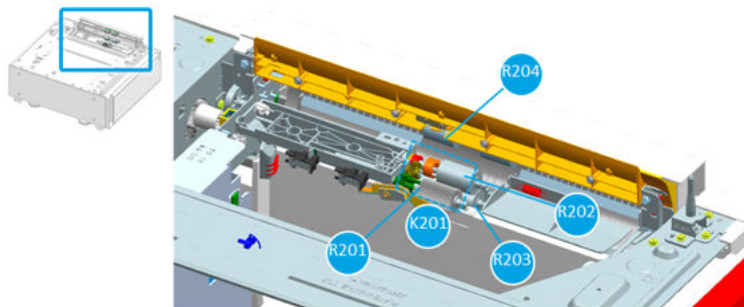


Figure 3-198 Detailed view of HCI tray 4 roller (1 of 2)

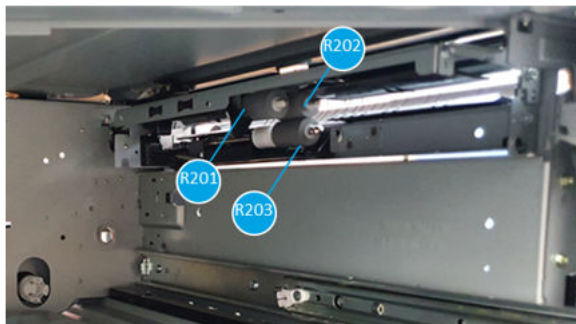


Figure 3-199 Detailed view of HCI tray 4 roller (2 of 2)

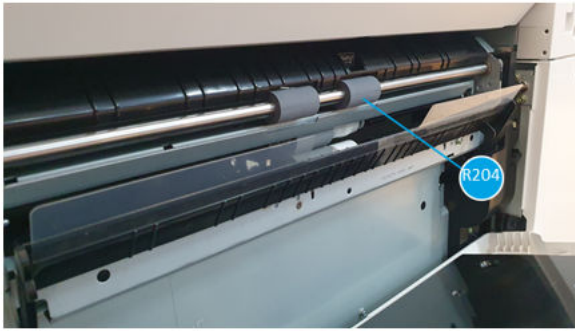


Table 3-111 Overview of HCI (Tray 4) roller

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
K201	HCI (Tray 4) roller kit	5PN66-67001	-
R201	HCI (Tray 4) pickup roller	5QJ90-60128	Picks up a paper from the lift tray
R202	HCI (Tray 4) forward roller	JC93-01726A	Moves a paper to the Tray 4 feed roller
R203	HCI (Tray 4) reverse roller	JC93-01726A	Prevents multi paper feeding
R204	HCI (Tray 4) feed roller	NA	Moves a paper to the tray 4 trans roller

HCI (Tray 4) sensors

Learn about the HCI (Tray 4) sensors.

Figure 3-200 Overview of HCI (Tray 4) sensors (1 of 2)

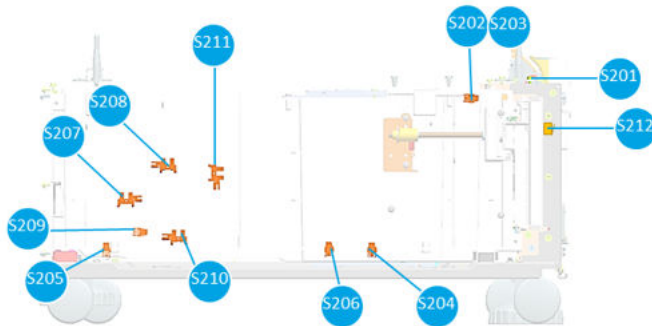


Figure 3-201 Overview of HCI (Tray 4) sensors (2 of 2)

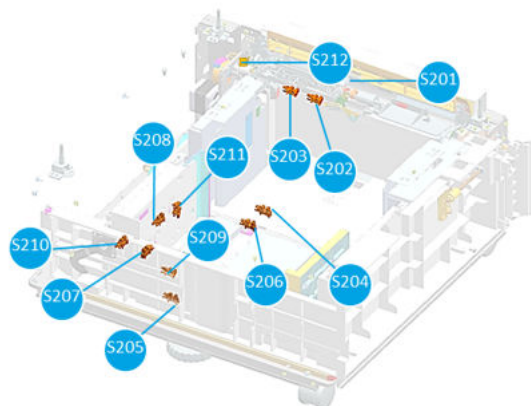


Table 3-112 Overview of HCI (Tray 4) sensors

Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
S201	HCI(Tray 4) feed sensor	0604-001490	Checks whether paper is ready to move to the base printer
S202	HCI(Tray 4) paper empty sensor	0604-001393	Checks whether the tray has paper
S203	HCI (Tray 4) stack height sensor	0604-001393	Sets the proper height of the paper to make contact with the pickup roller
S204	HCI(Tray 4) knock-up home sensor	0604-001393	Detects the home location of the knock-up plate
S205	HCI(Tray 4) shift tray home sensor	0604-001393	Detects the home location of the shift tray
S206	HCI(Tray 4) shift tray end sensor	0604-001393	Detects the end location of the shift tray
S207	HCI(Tray 4) shift tray level sensor 1	0604-001393	Detects the amount of paper on the shift tray
S208	HCI(Tray 4) shift tray level sensor 2	0604-001393	Detects the amount of paper on the shift tray
S209	HCI(Tray 4) shift tray empty sensor	0604-001393	Checks whether paper is loaded on the shift tray
S210	HCI(Tray 4) tray open sensor	0604-001393	Checks whether the tray is open
S211	HCI(Tray 4) shift gate solenoid home sensor	0604-001393	Detects whether the shift gate is closed
S212	HCI(Tray 4) right door open sensor	JC90-01385A	Checks whether the right door is open

HCI (Tray 4) motor

Learn about the HCI (Tray 4) motor.

Figure 3-202 Overview of HCI (Tray 4) motor

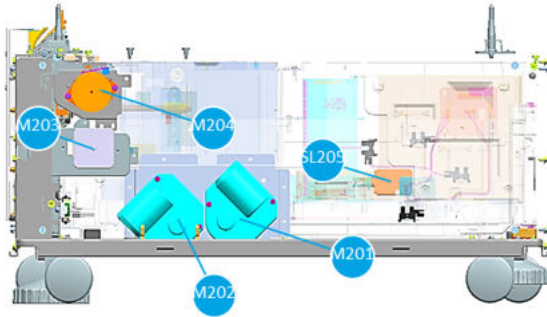


Figure 3-203 Detailed view of HCI motor (1 of 3)

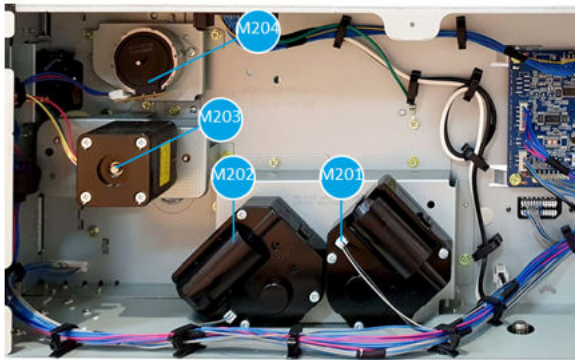


Figure 3-204 Detailed view of HCI motor (2 of 3)



Figure 3-205 Detailed view of HCI motor (3 of 3)

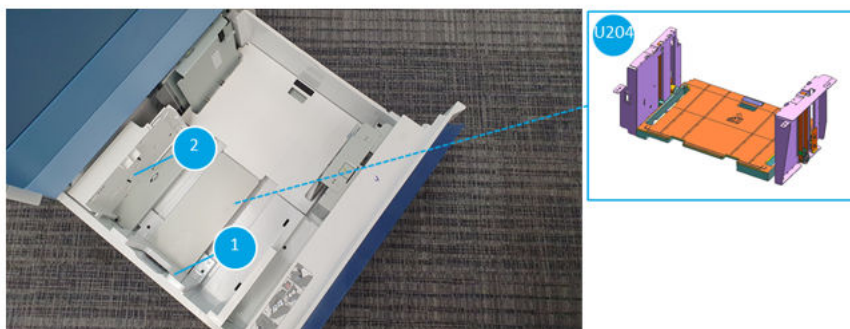


Table 3-113 Overview of HCI (Tray 4) motor

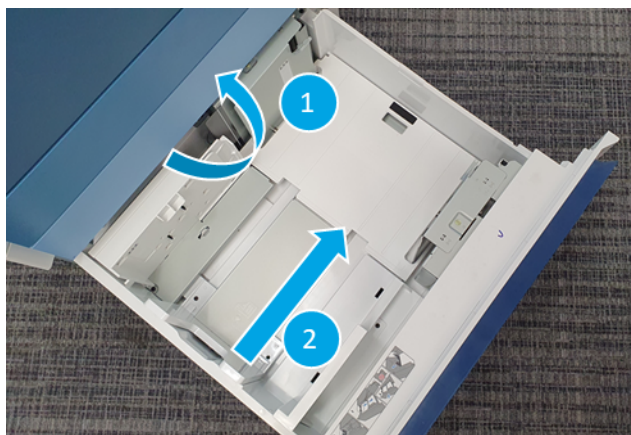
Callout	Part name	Part number	Description
M201	HCI (Tray 4) paper shift motor	JC31-00125A	Moves the shift tray to the lift tray
1	Shift plate	JC81-07481B	-
M202	HCI (Tray 4) tray lift motor	JC31-00109A	Moves the lift tray upward so that a paper is picked up
U204	Knock-up plate assembly	6GW48-60003	-
3	Paper gate	JC81-07478B	
M203	HCI(Tray 4) feed motor	5QJ90-60023	Drives HCI(Tray4) feed and trans roller
M204	HCI(Tray 4) pickup motor	5QJ90-64002	Picks up paper
SL201	HCI(Tray 4) shift gate solenoid	JC33-00031B	Drives the shift gate

HCI (Tray 4) operation

Learn about the HCI (Tray 4) operation.

1. When a paper on the lift tray runs out, the paper on the shift unit moves to the lift tray. The HCI (Tray 4) shift gate solenoid moves so that the shift gate opens to make paper move to the lift tray.

Figure 3-206 HCI (Tray 4) operation, view 1



2. The HCI (Tray 4) shift motor operates, moving the shift tray to the lift tray side. The HCI (Tray 4) shift tray home and end sensor control how much the shift motor is operating. After the tray shifting process, the shift tray moves back to the original position and the shift gate solenoid turns back to the initial location.
3. If the HCI (Tray 4) tray is closed by the HCI (Tray 4) tray open sensor, knock-up plate moves upward until paper reaches the HCI (Tray 4) stack height sensor.

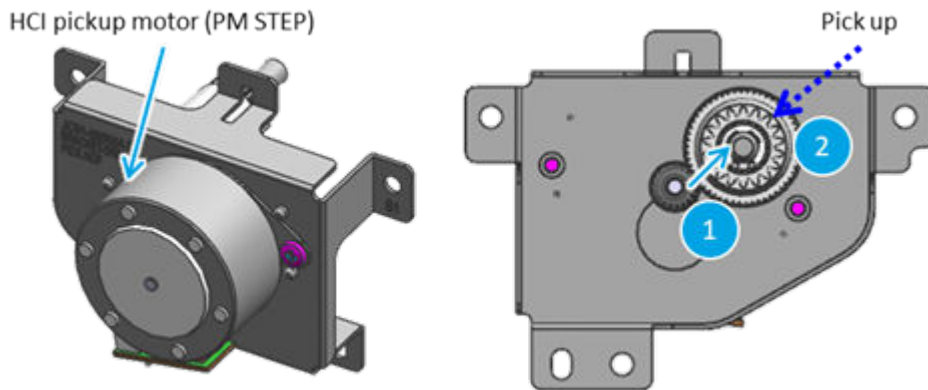
Figure 3-207 HCI (Tray 4) operation, view 2



HCI (Tray 4) motor operation

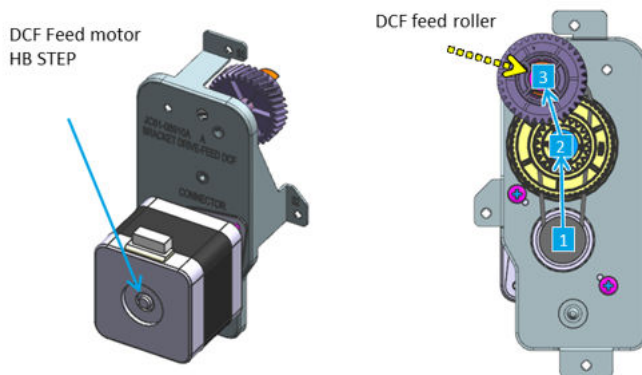
Learn about the HCI (Tray 4) motor operation.

Figure 3-208 HCI (Tray 4) motor operation, view 1



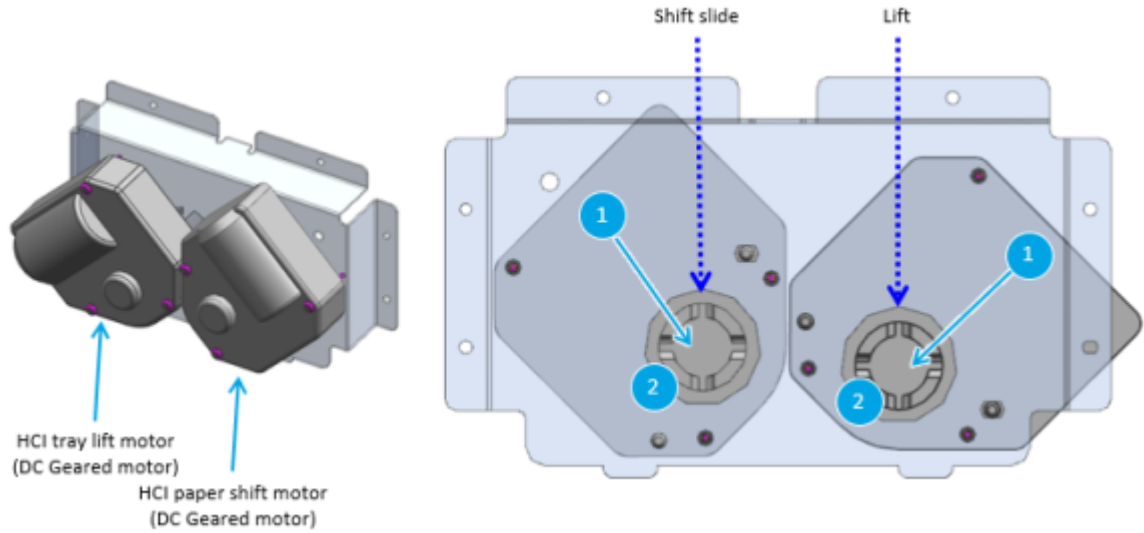
- HCI (Tray 4) pickup driving: 1 HCI (Tray 4) pickup motor > 2 gear (pickup roller, reverse roller)

Figure 3-209 HCI (Tray 4) motor operation, view 2



- HCI (Tray 4) feed driving: 1 HCI (Tray 4) feed motor > 2 pulley & gear (feed roller) > 3 gear & coupler (trans roller)

Figure 3-210 HCI (Tray 4) motor operation, view 3



- HCI (Tray 4) paper shift driving: 1 HCI (Tray 4) paper shift motor > 2 coupler (shift plate)
- HCI (Tray 4) tray lift motor: 1 HCI (Tray 4) tray lift motor > 2 coupler (knock-up plate)

HCI (Tray 4) PCA

Learn about the HCI (Tray 4) PCA.

HCI (Tray 4) PCA connects to the formatter to control the HCI operation.

- HCI (Tray 4) PCA part number: 6GW48-60001 (P201)

Figure 3-211 HCI (Tray 4) PCA

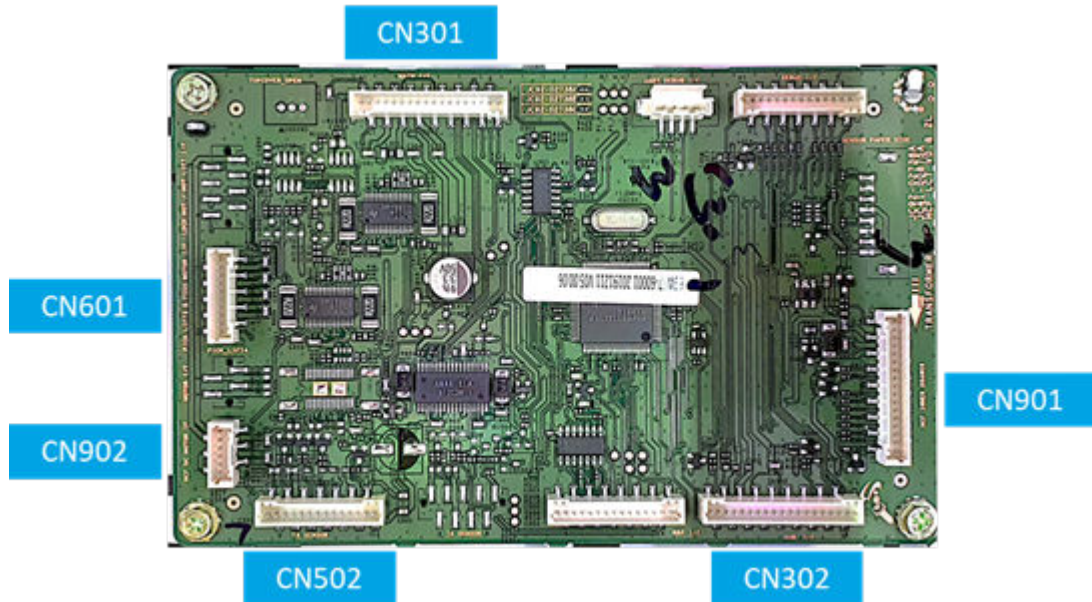


Table 3-114 HCI (Tray 4) PCA

CN number	Connection	Type	Harness part number
HCI-CN301	Main-J56	18pin	JC39-02605A

Table 3-114 HCI (Tray 4) PCA (continued)

CN number	Connection	Type	Harness part number
HCI-CN302	sHCI-CN301	18pin	JC39-02604A
HCI-CN502	Tray 4 paper empty sensor Tray 4 stack height sensor Prefeed 4 sensor Tray 4 feed sensor	-	JC39-02280A JC39-02602A
HCI-CN601	Tray 4 pickup motor Tray 4 feed motor Tray 4 right door open sensor	10pin	JC39-02601A
HCI-CN901	HCIsub-CN5 HCI tray open sensor	17pin	JC39-02286A JC39-02356A
HCI-CN902	Tray 4 lift motor Tray 4 shift motor	6pin	JC39-02282A

HCI (Tray 4) sub PCA

Learn about the HCI (Tray 4) sub PCA.

The HCI sub PCA is a joint board to communicate with the sensors inside the shift tray and the HCI PCA.

- HCI (Tray 4) sub PCA part number: JC92-02792A (P202)

Figure 3-212 HCI (Tray 4) sub PCA

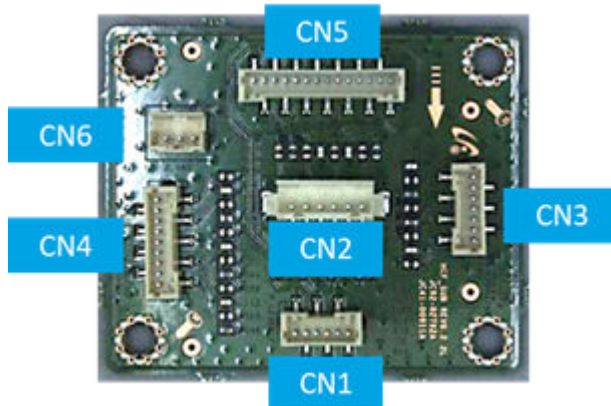


Table 3-115 HCI (Tray 4) sub PCA

CN number	Connection	Type	Harness part number
HCIsub-CN1	Tray 4 shift tray level sensor 1 Tray 4 shift tray level sensor 2	6pin	JC39-02351A
HCIsub-CN2	Tray 4 shift tray home sensor Tray 4 shift tray end sensor	6pin	JC39-02352A

Table 3-115 HCl (Tray 4) sub PCA (continued)

CN number	Connection	Type	Harness part number
HClsub-CN3	Tray 4 shift tray empty sensor	7pin	JC39-02352A
	Tray 4 knock-up home sensor		
HClsub-CN4	Tray 4 shift tray solenoid home sensor	9pin	JC39-02355A
HClsub-CN5	HCl-CN302	14pin	JC39-02356A
HClsub-CN6	Tray 4 shift gate solenoid	3pin	-

Output devices

You will learn more about output devices.

Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker

You will learn more about the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker.

Detailed Specifications

Learn about the detailed specifications of the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker.

Stapler-stacker finisher

Table 3-116 Stapler-stacker finisher detailed specifications

Item		Stapler-stacker finisher	Booklet maker
Speed	PPM	18.3~70,(70ppm)	18.3~70,(70ppm)
Stack Capacity (A4/Letter 80gsm)	Main	3,000 sheets	2,000 sheets
	Top	250 sheets	250 sheets
Paper Size	Main	Statement SEF ~ 320 x 457	Statement SEF ~ 320 x 457
	Top	98 x 148 ~ 13" x 19.2" (330×1200)	98 x 148 ~ 13" x 19.2" (330×1200)
Paper Weight	Main	52 ~ 350 gsm	52 ~ 350 gsm
	Top	52 ~ 300 gsm	52 ~ 300 gsm
Offset (Non Staple)		15mm(minimum)	15mm(minimum)
※Exception SRA3 and larger size.			
Staple	Clinching position	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Front/Rear Corner(45°,Flat) Dual 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Front/Rear Corner(45°,Flat) Dual
	Paper weight	52~256 gsm	52~256 gsm
	Capacity	65 sheets (90gsm)	65 sheets (90gsm)
	Cartridge Capacity	5,000 clinching/cartridge	5,000 clinching/cartridge
	Offline	Yes	Yes

Table 3-116 Stapler-stacker finisher detailed specifications (continued)

Item		Stapler-stacker finisher	Booklet maker
Hole Punch	Paper weight	52 ~ 300 gsm	52 ~ 300 gsm
	available unit (Auto change)	NA2/3, EU2/4, Swedish	NA2/3, EU2/4, Swedish

Booklet maker

Table 3-117 Booklet maker specifications

Item		Description
Set Speed	PPM	18.3~70(70ppm)
Paper size		B5 SEF ~ 12" x 18"
Paper weight		60 ~ 120 gsm
Staple + Fold Capacity(80gsm)		25 sheets
Fold Capacity(80gsm)		5 sheets
Tray Capacity		5 sets / 25 sheets
Staple Cartridge Capacity		5,000 clinching/cartridge
C - Folding		3 sheets Letter SEF, A4 SEF (52~90gsm)

Physical

Table 3-118 Physical

Module	Option	Size	Module Weight	Packed Weight
	(Reference)	W X D X H [mm]	[Kg]	[Kg]
Stapler-stacker		751.7 x 610 x 1016.4	40	62
Booklet maker		751.7 x 610 x 1016.4	62	84.5
	Hole punch	80 x 485 x 235	2.8	4.1

Paper size

Table 3-119 Paper size specification

Name	Paper size		Orientation	Output			Staple position			Punch				Booklet Maker	C-Folding		
	mm	Inches		direction	Main tray		Top tray	Corner		DUAL	NA 2/3		EU 2/4H			Swedish 4H	
					52-350g	Offset	52-300g	45°	Flat		2H	3H	2H				4H
A5	210 X148	8.3X5.8	LEF	O	O	O	X	F/R	O	O	X	O	X	O	X	X	
Statement	216 X140	8.5X5.5	LEF	O	O	O	X	F/R	O	O	X	O	X	O	X	X	
Letter	279 X216	11X8.5	LEF	O	O	O	F/R	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	X	X	
A4	297 X210	8.3X11.7	LEF	O	O	O	F/R	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	X	X	
B5(JIS)	257 X182	101×7.2	LEF	O	O	O	F/R	X	O	O	O	O	X	O	X	X	
B5(ISO)	250 X176	9.8×6.9	LEF	O	O	O	F/R	X	O	O	O	O	X	O	X	X	
Executive	267 X184	10.5X7.3	LEF	O	O	O	F/R	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	X	X	
No 9 Env	98X225	3.9X8.9	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
Monarch Env	98.4×190.5	3.9×7.5	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
Postcard 4x6	101.6×152.4	4.0×6.0	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
A6	105 X148	4.1X5.8	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
No 10 Env	105×241	4.1×9.5	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
DL Env	110×220	4.3×8.7	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
C6 Env	114×162	4.5×6.4	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
B6	128 x182	5.0x7.2	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	

Table 3-119 Paper size specification (continued)

Name	Paper size		Orientation	Output			Staple position			Punch				Booklet Maker	C- Folding		
	mm	Inches		direction	Main tray		Top tray	Corner		DUAL	NA 2/3		EU 2/4H			Swedish 4H	
					52-350g	Offset	52-300g	45°	Flat		2H	3H	2H				4H
Statement	140 X216	5.5X8.5	SEF	O	X	O	X	X	X	O	X	O	X	O	X	X	
A5	148 X210	5.8X8.3	SEF	O	X	O	X	X	X	O	X	O	X	O	X	X	
C5 Env	162 x229	6.4x9.0	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
B5(ISO)	176x250	6.9x9.8	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R	X	O	X	O	X	O	X	X	
B5(JIS)	182 X257	7.2X10.1	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R	X	O	X	O	X	O	O	X	
Executive	184 X267	7.3X10.5	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R	X	O	X	O	X	O	O	X	
16k	195 X270	7.7X10.6	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R	O	O	X	O	X	O	O	X	
A4	210 X297	8.3X11.7	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R	O	O	X	O	X	O	O	O	
Legal	216 X356	8.5X14	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R	O	O	X	O	X	O	O	X	
Letter	216 X279	8.5X11	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R	O	O	X	O	X	O	O	O	
Folio	216 X330	8.5X13	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R	O	O	X	O	X	O	O	X	
Oficio	215.9x342.9	8.5x13.5	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R	O	O	X	O	X	O	O	X	
C4 Env	229 x324	9.1X12.8	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
Tabloid	254 X374	10 X14.7	SEF	O	O	O	F/R	X	O	O	O	O	X	O	O	X	

Table 3-119 Paper size specification (continued)

Name	Paper size		Orientation	Output			Staple position			Punch				Booklet Maker	C-Folding		
	mm	Inches		direction	Main tray		Top tray	Corner		DUAL	NA 2/3		EU 2/4H			Swedish 4H	
					52-350g	Offset	52-300g	45°	Flat		2H	3H	2H				4H
B4	257 X364	10X14.3	SEF	O	O	O	F/R	X	O	O	O	X	O	O	O	X	
8K	270 X390	10.6X15.4	SEF	O	O	O	F/R	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	X	
Ledger	279 X432	11X17	SEF	O	O	O	F/R	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	X	
A3	297 X420	11.7X16.5	SEF	O	O	O	F/R	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	X	
Tabloid Extra	304.8x457.2	12x18	SEF	O	X	O	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	O	X	
SRA3	320x450	12.6x17.7	SEF	O	X	O	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
13"x19.2"	330x487	13x19.2	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
Custom	W98-320 L139.7-457.2	W3.86-12.59 L5.5-18	-	X	NA	O	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	

* "F/R" means front side and rear side can be supported.

Media performance

Table 3-120 Media performance

Paper Type	Function						
	Main Tray	Top Tray	Staple	HP	BM		
					Cover	Content	C-Fold
Plain (71-90 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
Thick (91-105 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O	O	X	X
Heavy weight (106-175 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O	O	X	X

Table 3-120 Media performance (continued)

Paper Type	Function						
	Main Tray	Top Tray	Staple	HP	BM		
					Cover	Content	C-Fold
Extra Heavy weight 1 (176-216 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O	O	X	X
Extra Heavy weight 2 (217-256 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O	O	X	X
Extra Heavy weight 3 (257-300 g/m ²)	O	O	X	O	O	X	X
Extra Heavy weight 4 (301-325 g/m ²)	O	X	X	X	X	X	X
Thin (60-70 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
Cotton (75-90 g/m ²)	O	O	X	X	X	X	X
Colored (75-90 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
Pre-Printed (75-90 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
Recycled (60-90 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
Bond	O	O	O	O	O	O	X
Archive (75-105 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O	O	O	X
Letterhead	O	O	O	O	O	O	X
Pre-Punched	O	O	O	X	X	X	X
Thin Cardstock (105-163 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O	X	X	X
Thick Cardstock (170-216 g/m ²)	O	O	O	X	X	X	X
Heavy Cardstock (217-256 g/m ²)	O	O	O	X	X	X	X
Extra Heavy Cardstock 1(257-300 g/m ²)	O	O	X	X	X	X	X
Extra Heavy Cardstock 2(301-325 g/m ²)	O	X	X	X	X	X	X
Thin Glossy (106-169 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O	O	X	X
Thick Glossy (170-216 g/m ²)	O	O	O	X	O	X	X
Heavy Glossy (217-256 g/m ²)	O	O	O	X	O	X	X
Envelope (75-90 g/m ²)	X	O	X	X	X	X	X
Thick Envelope (217-256 g/m ²)	X	O	X	X	X	X	X
Transparency (138~146 gsm)	O	O	X	X	X	X	X
Labels (120~150 gsm)	X	O	X	X	X	X	X
Tab	O	O	X	O	X	X	X

Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker covers

Learn about the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker covers.

Figure 3-213 Front-left view of the stapler-stacker finisher

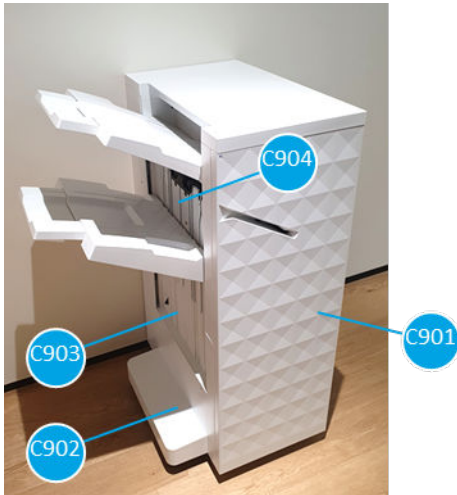


Table 3-121 Front-left view of the stapler-stacker finisher

Callout	Part name	Part number
C901	Front doors	5QK09-60106
C902	Caster cover	JC63-04985B
C903	Left lower cover (stapler-stacker)	5QK09-40041
C904	Left upper cover	5QK09-40040

Figure 3-214 Front-left view of the booklet maker

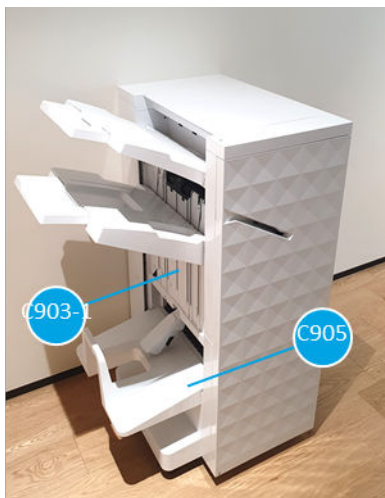


Table 3-122 Front-left view of the booklet maker

Callout	Part name	Part number
C903-1	Left lower cover (booklet maker)	8GS05-60124
C905	Booklet maker output tray	8GS05-60126

Figure 3-215 Rear-right view of the bookler maker

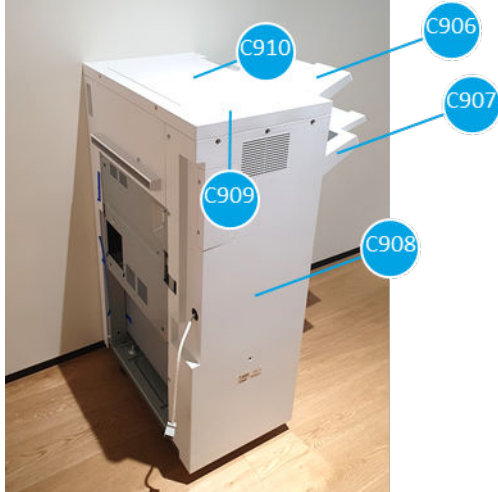


Table 3-123 Rear right view of the booklet maker

Callout	Part name	Part number
C906	Top output tray	5QK09-40027, 5QK09-40029
C907	Main output tray	5QK09-40028, 5QK09-40029
C908	Rear cover	5QK09-40021
C909	Top cover	5QK09-60108
C910		

Figure 3-216 Front view of the bookler maker

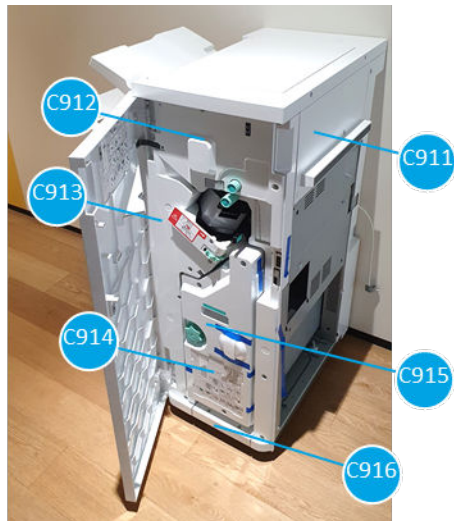


Table 3-124 Front view of the booklet maker

Callout	Part name	Part number
C911	Right uppercover	5QK09-60109
C912	Front cover	5QK09-40019
C913	Front lower cover L	5QK09-40021

Table 3-124 Front view of the booklet maker (continued)

Callout	Part name	Part number
C914	Booklet front cover	5QK09-60105
C915	Front lower cover R	5QK09-40022
C916	Front lower cover	5QK09-40020

Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker unit overview

You will learn more about the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker unit overview.

Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker workflow

Learn about the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker workflow.

Figure 3-217 Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker workflow

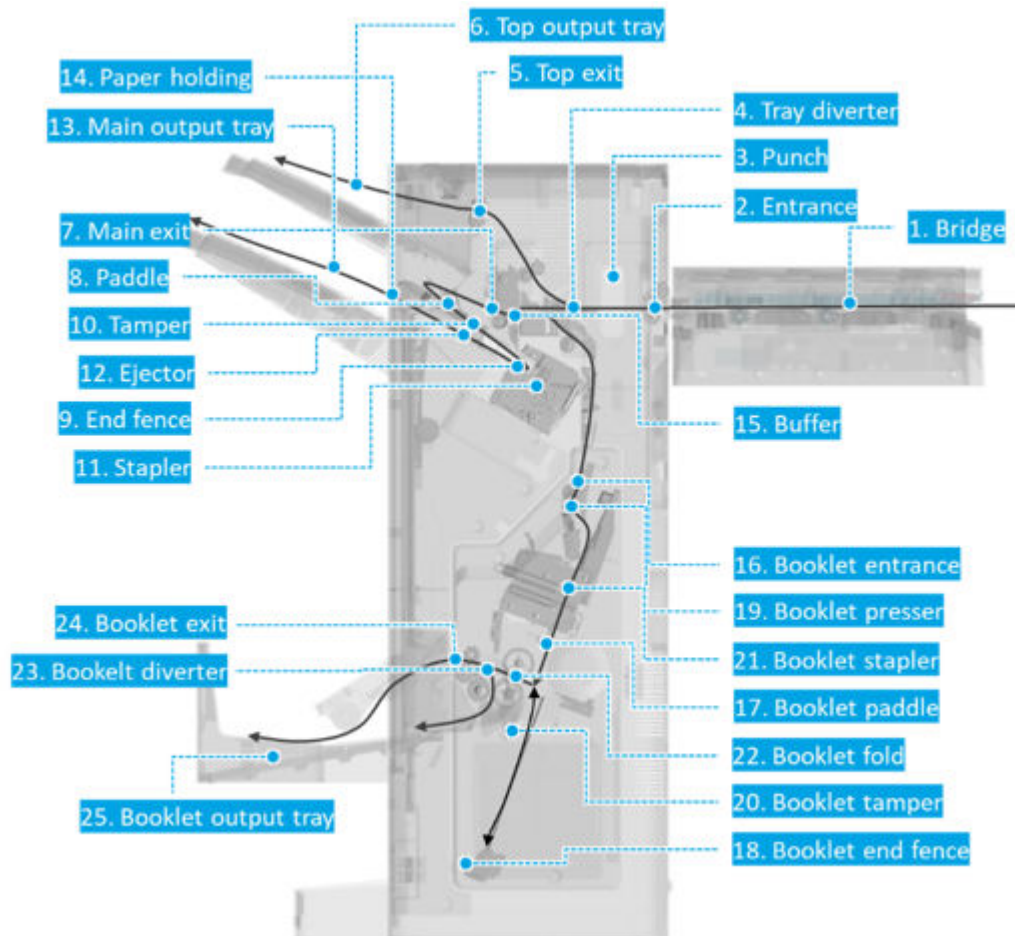


Table 3-125 Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker workflow

Item	Unit	Description
1	Bridge unit	Moves paper from the printer to the finisher
2	Entrance unit	Allows the paper to move into the finisher
3	Punch unit (optional)	Makes the holes in a specific location on the paper

Table 3-125 Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker workflow (continued)

Item	Unit	Description
4	Tray diverter unit	Changes the paper direction to the main output tray or top output tray
5	Top exit unit	Moves the paper from the diverter to the top output tray
6	Top output tray unit	Loads paper that has completed its printing job
7	Main exit unit	Move sthe paper from the diverter unit to the ejector unit with forward direction or to the buffer unit with backward direction
8	Paddle unit	Pushes to the end fence to be aligned towards top and bottom of the paper
9	End fence unit	Sets the standard position of the paper to be aligned towards top and bottom of the paper
10	Tamper unit	Aligns the paper on the right and left side
11	Stapler unit	Staples a bundle of an aligned documents
12	Ejector unit	Transfers the stapled paper loaded at the end fence unit to the output bin
13	Main output tray unit	Loads paper that has completed its printing job
14	Paper holding unit	Keeps the paper stable when ejecting to the output bin and controls the output bin movement
15	Buffer unit	Maintains the paper inside the unit for a while or moves it to the booklet maker
16	Booklet entrance unit	Moves paper into the booklet maker
17	Booklet paddle unit	Moves paper to the booklet end fence
18	Booklet end fence unit	Moves paper to the designated position for folding and stapling
19	Booklet presser unit	Presses the paper that enters to the booklet tamper unit to prevent paper being shuffled
20	Booklet tamper unit	Aligns the paper on the right and left side to make a booklet
21	Booklet stapler unit	Staples a bundle of aligned documents to make a booklet
22	Booklet fold unit	Folds a bundle of aligned documents as a booklet
23	Booklet diverter unit	Changes the paper direction to the booklet exit unit or the location to make a C-fold
24	Booklet exit unit	Moves paper to the booklet output bin
25	Booklet output tray unit	Loads a bundle of booklets

Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker sensors

Learn about the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker sensors.

Figure 3-218 Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker sensors, view 1

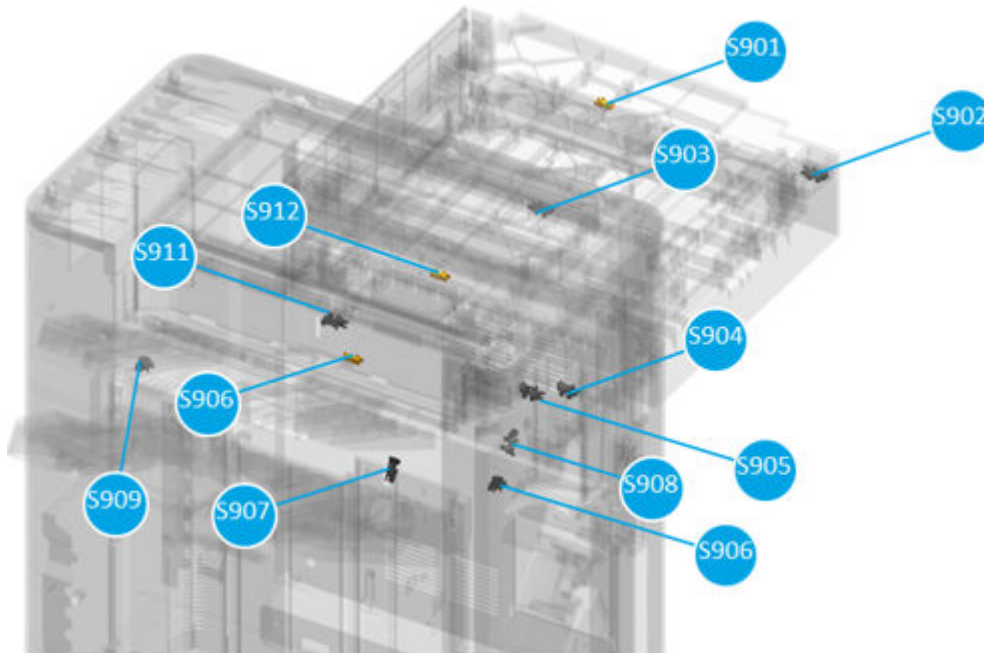


Table 3-126 Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker sensors, view 1

No	Name	Part number	Type	Description
S901	Bridge entrance sensor	JC32-00020A	Paper sensor	Checks whether paper comes to the bridge entrance unit
S902	Bridge door sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the bridge door is open
S903	Bridge exitsensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Checks whether paper comes to the bridge exit unit
S904	Tray diverter home sensor	0604-001415	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the tray diverter sets at the home position
S905	Main exit CAM home sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Checkss whether the main exit CAM sets at the home position
S906	Front tamperhome sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the front tamper sets at the home position
S907	End fence home sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the end fence sets at the home position
S908	Paddle homesensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the paddle sets at the home position
S909	Rear tamperhome sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the rear tamper sets at the home position
S910	Main exit sensor	JC32-00020A	Paper sensor	Checks whether paper comes to the main exit unit
S911	Top exit sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Checks whether paper comes to the top exit unit
S912	Entrance sensor	JC32-00020A	Paper sensor	Checks whether paper comes to the entrance unit

Figure 3-219 Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker sensors, view 2

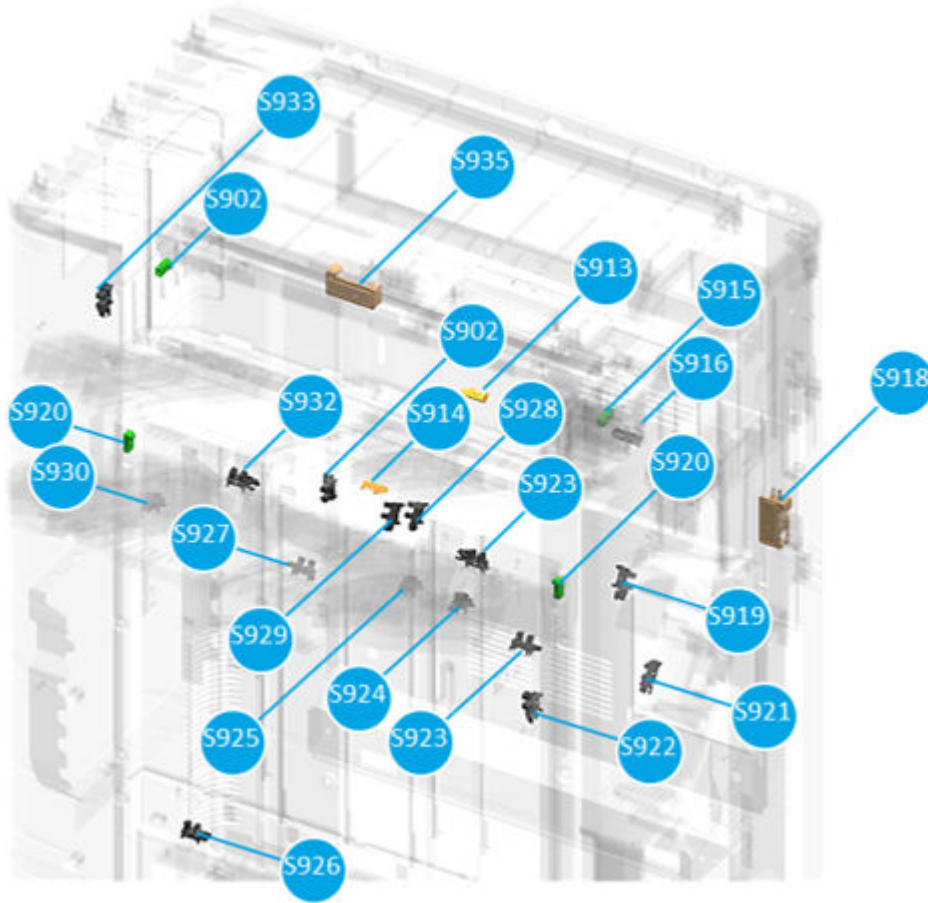


Table 3-127 Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker sensors, view 2

No	Name	Part number	Type	Description
S913	Buffer sensor	JC32-00020A	Paper sensor	Checks whether paper exits the buffer unit
S914	Ejector sensor	JC32-00020A	Paper sensor	Checks whether paper is on the ejector or not
S915	Top output tray paper full sensor	JC82-01039A	LED IR, Photo TR	Checks whether the top output tray is full or not
S916	Buffer home sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the buffer roller and the idle roller are attached or detached
S917	Front paper holding sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Checks the location of the paper holding actuator for controlling the position of the main output tray
S918	Front door switch	JC39-02309A	Switch	Checks whether the front door is open
S919	Manual staple sensor	0604-001415	Photo interrupter	Checks whether paper comes to the manual staple position
S920	Main output tray top of stack sensor	JC82-01039A	LED IR, Photo TR	Checks whether the main output tray reaches the top of stack
S921	Stapler front sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Places the stapler in the manual stapling position
S922	Paper holding home sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the paper holding actuator sets at the home position

Table 3-127 Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker sensors, view 2 (continued)

No	Name	Part number	Type	Description
S923	Ejector 2 motor sensor	0604-001415	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the ejector 2 motor is operational
S924	Stapler mid front sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Places the stapler at the exact stapling position
S925	Stapler mid rear sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Places the stapler at the exact stapling position
S926	Main output tray lower limit sensor	0604-001415	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the output tray is full
S927	Ejector1 motor sensor	0604-001415	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the ejector1 motor is operational
S928	Ejector1 end sensor	0604-001415	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the ejector1 sets at the end position
S929	Ejector1 home sensor	0604-001415	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the ejector1 sets at the home position
S930	Stapler rear sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the stapler sets at the home (rear) position
S931	Rear paper holding sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Checks the location of the paper holding actuator for controlling the position of the main output tray
S932	Ejector2 home sensor	0604-001415	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the ejector2 sets at the home position
S933	Main output tray motor sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the main output tray motor is operational
S934	Main output tray top of stack switch	JC39-02316A	Switch	Checks whether the main output tray reaches at the top of stack
S935	Top door switch	JC39-02310A	Switch	Checks whether the top door is open

Figure 3-220 Booklet maker sensors

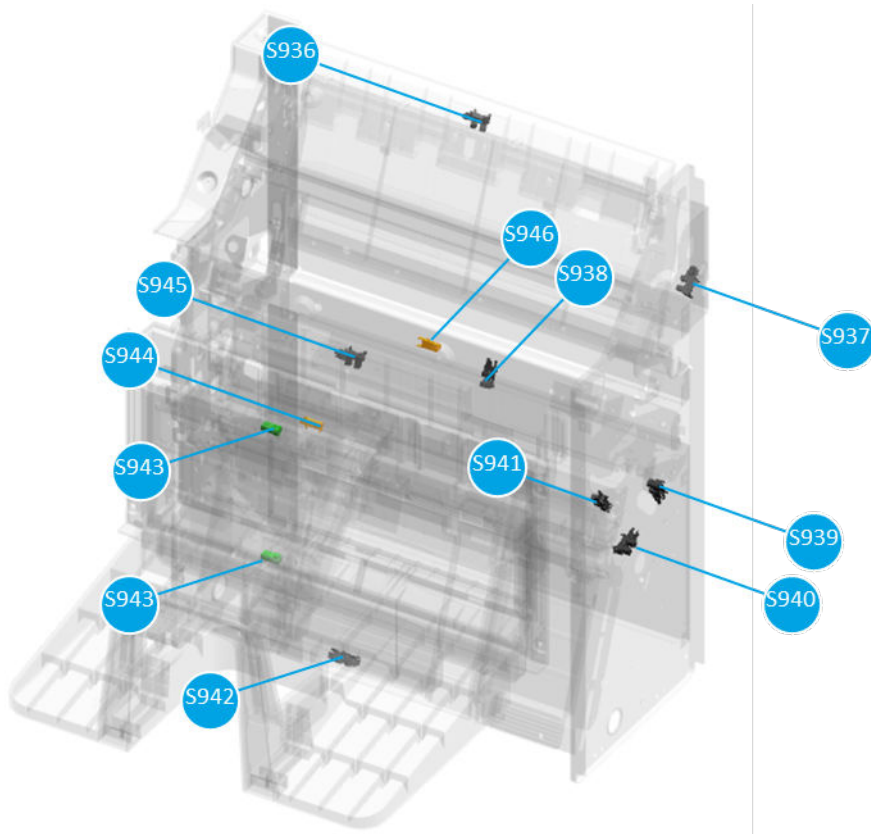


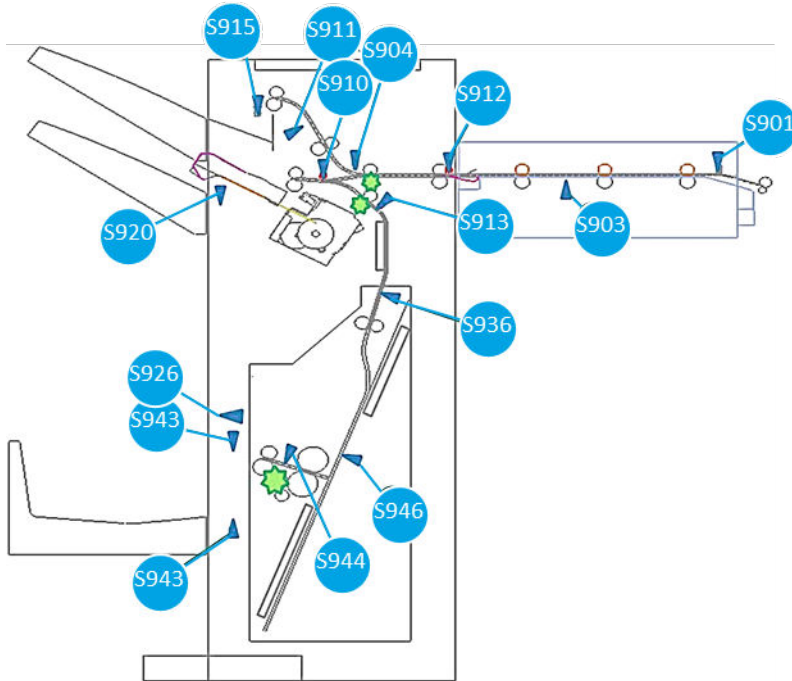
Table 3-128 Booklet maker sensors

No	Name	Part number	Type	Description
S936	Booklet entrance sensor	0604-001415	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the paper comes to the bridge entrance unit
S937	Booklet presser home sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the booklet presser sets at the home position
S938	Booklet tamper home sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the booklet tamper sets at the home position
S939	Booklet C-fold blade home sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the booklet C-fold blade sets at the home position
S940	Booklet diverter home sensor	0604-001415	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the booklet diverter sets at the home position
S941	Booklet paddle home sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the booklet paddle sets at the home position
S942	Booklet end fence home sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the booklet end fence sets at the home position
S943	Booklet output tray sensor	JC82-01039A	LED IR, Photo TR	Checks whether the paper goes to the booklet output bin
S944	Booklet exit sensor	JC32-00020A	Paper sensor	Checks whether the paper goes to the booklet exit unit
S945	Booklet blade home sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Checks whether the booklet blade sets at the home position

Table 3-128 Booklet maker sensors (continued)

No	Name	Part number	Type	Description
S946	Booklet tamper sensor	JC32-00020A	Paper sensor	Checks whether the paper comes to the booklet tamper unit

Figure 3-221 Paper path sensors



Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker motors and solenoids

Learn about the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker motors and solenoids.

Figure 3-222 Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker motors and solenoids

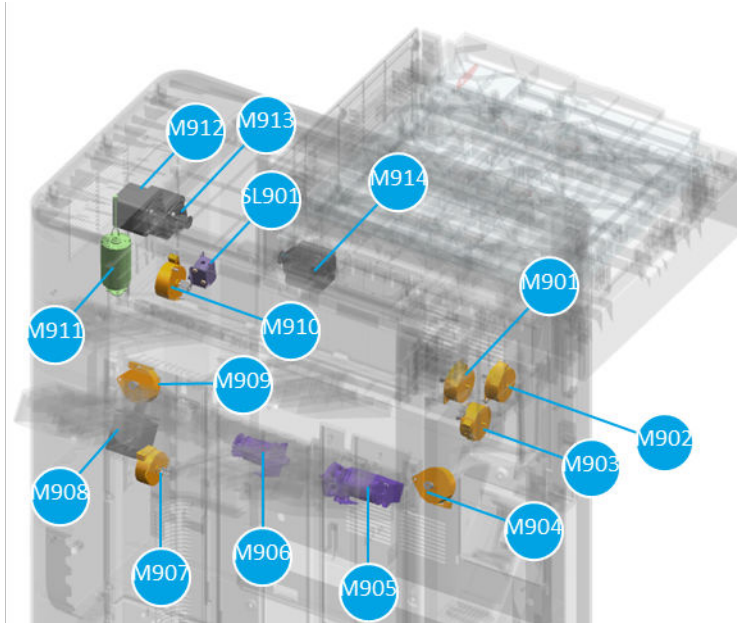


Table 3-129 Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker motors and solenoids

No	Name	Part number	Type	Description
M901	Paddle motor	JC93-01001A	Stepping motor	Rotates the paddle and moves the paddle pusher up and downward at the same time
M902	Main exit cam motor	JC93-01155A	Stepping motor	Rotates the main exit cam to detach the exit roller from the exit idle roller
M903	End fence motor	JC93-01001A	Stepping motor	Moves the front and rear end fence depending on paper size (width) so that paper is correctly arranged at the end fence
M904	Front tamper motor	JC93-01001A	Stepping motor	Moves the front tamper unit
M905	Ejector 2 motor	JC93-01168A	DC motor	Moves the ejector 2 and grabs paper
M906	Ejector 1 motor	JC93-01168A	DC motor	Moves the ejector 1 forward and backward
M907	Paper holding motor	8GS05-60104	Stepping motor	Moves paper holding actuator up when paper goes out to the output bin
M908	Stapler position motor	JC31-00163A	Hybrid Stepping motor	Moves the stapler
M909	Rear tamper motor	JC93-01001A	Stepping motor	Moves the rear tamper unit
SL901	Buffer solenoid	JC33-00038A	Solenoid	Holds paper so that it does not to fall out to the booklet maker during the buffering task
M910	Buffer motor	JC93-01152A	Stepping motor	Moves paper to the buffer space or the booklet maker
M911	Main output tray motor	JC31-00178B	DC motor	Moves the main output bin up and down
M912	Entrance motor	3SJ19-80501	Hybrid Stepping motor	Operates the entrance roller, middle roller, and top middle roller when driving forward and moves the diverter cam when driving backward

Table 3-129 Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker motors and solenoids (continued)

No	Name	Part number	Type	Description
M913	Exit motor	3SJ19-80501	Hybrid Stepping motor	Rotates the main exit roller and the top exit roller
M914	Bridge motor	3SJ19-80501	Hybrid Stepping motor	Rotates the bridge entrance roller, the bridge middle roller, and the bridge exit roller

Figure 3-223 Booklet maker motors and solenoids

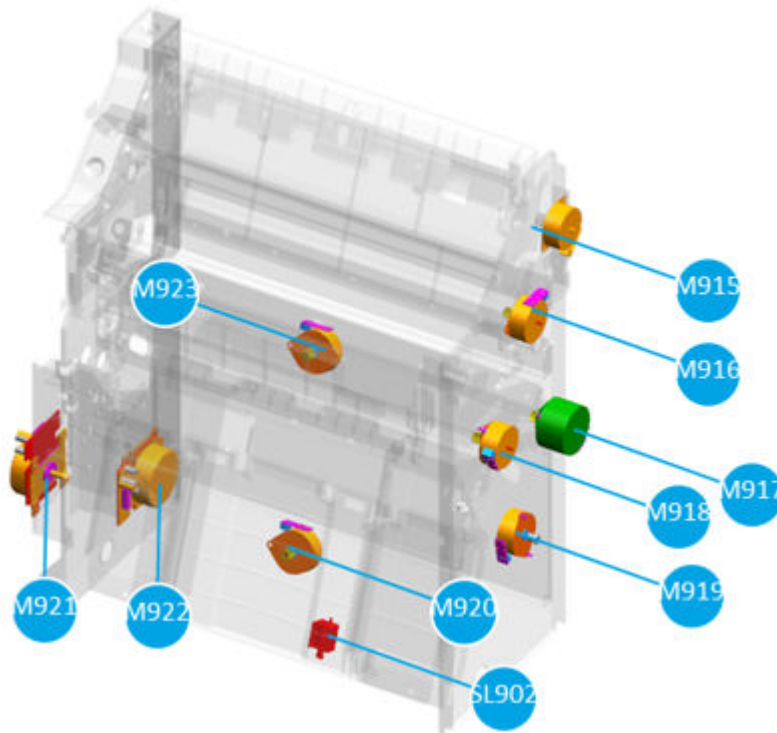


Table 3-130 Booklet maker motors and solenoids

No	Name	Part number	Type	Description
M915	Booklet entrance motor	JC93-01152A	Stepping moto	Rotates the booklet entrance roller
M916	Booklet presser motor	JC93-01155A	Stepping moto	Operates the booklet presser
M917	Booklet C-fold blade motor	JC93-01154A	Stepping moto	Drives the booklet C-fold blade and the moving guide
M918	Booklet diverter motor	JC93-01153A	Stepping moto	Drives the booklet diverter
M919	Booklet paddle motor	JC93-01001A	Stepping moto	Rotates the booklet paddle
M920	Booklet end fence motor	JC93-01155A	Stepping moto	Moves the booklet end fence up and down
M921	Booklet fold motor	JC31-00144A	BLDC motor	Rotates the booklet fold roller, the booklet C-fold roller, and the booklet exit roller

Table 3-130 Booklet maker motors and solenoids (continued)

No	Name	Part number	Type	Description
M922	Booklet blade motor	JC31-00144A	BLDC motor	Drives the booklet blade
M923	Booklet tamper motor	JC93-01155A	Stepping motor	Moves the booklet tamper unit
SL902	Booklet end fence solenoid	JC33-00038A	Solenoid	Operates the gripper of the booklet end fence to grip paper that comes to the booklet end fence

Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker rollers

Learn about the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker roller.

Figure 3-224 Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker rollers

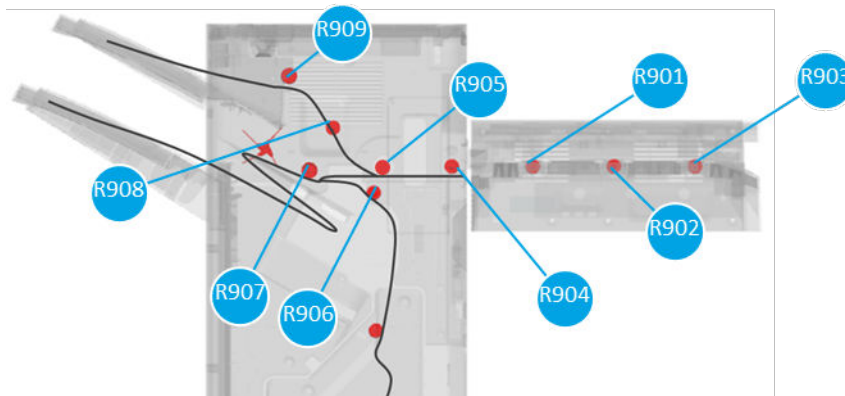


Table 3-131 Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker rollers

No	Name	Part number	Description
R901	Bridge exit roller	JC66-04732A	Moves paper from the machine to the bridge unit
R902	Bridge middle roller	JC66-04732A	Moves paper from the machine to the bridge unit
R903	Bridge entrance roller	JC66-04733A	Moves paper from the machine to the bridge unit
R904	Entrance roller	JC66-04722A	Moves paper from the machine to the exit unit
R905	Middle roller	JC66-04724A	Moves paper from the machine to the exit unit
R906	Buffer roller	JC66-05161A	Moves paper to the booklet maker and makes the gap between the buffer roller and the idle roller so that the paper remains there for the buffering process
R907	Main exit roller	JC66-04726A	Moves paper to the ejector unit or the buffer unit and makes the gap between the main exit roller and the idle roller so that paper remains there for the buffering process
R908	Top middle roller	JC66-04725A	Moves paper to the top output bin
R909	Top exit roller	JC66-04727A	Moves paper to the top output bin

Figure 3-225 Booklet maker rollers

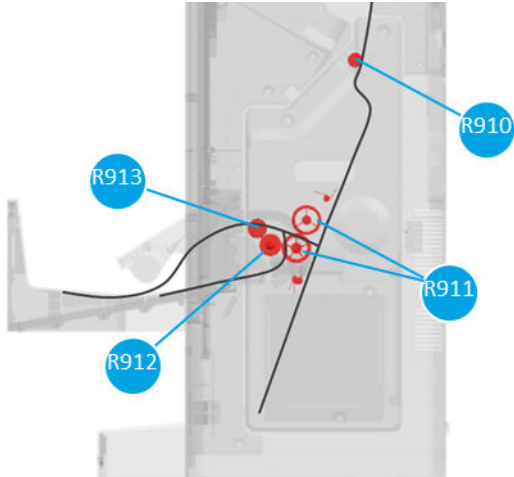


Table 3-132 Booklet maker rollers

No	Name	Part number	Description
R910	Booklet entrance roller	JC66-04717A	Moves paper from the machine to the bridge unit
R911	Booklet fold roller	JC66-04748A	Presses a stack of paper to fold completely
R912	Booklet c-fold roller	JC66-04744A	In case of C-fold, presses a stack of paper to fold completely
R913	Booklet exit roller	JC66-04721A	Moves paper to the booklet output tray unit

Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker PCAs

Learn about the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker PCAs.

Figure 3-226 Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker PCAs

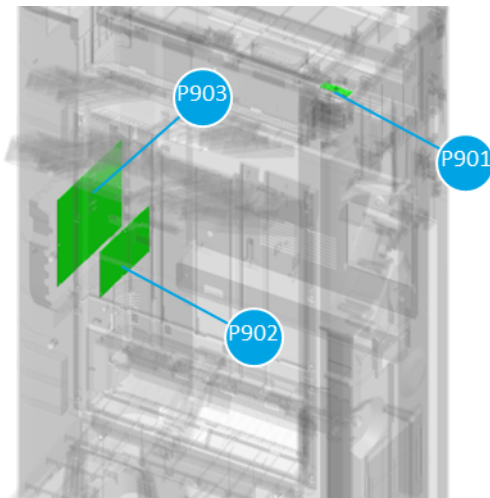


Table 3-133 Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker PCAs

No	Name	Part number	Description
P901	Manual staple PCA	JC92-02789B	Shows the manual stapling condition and accepts the button input for manual staple

Table 3-133 Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker PCAs (continued)

No	Name	Part number	Description
P902	Booklet maker PCA	6GW51-60001	Controls the booklet maker module and consists of the micro-controller and driver ICs
P903	Finisher main PCA	6GW55-60001	Controls the finisher modules and consists of the micro-controller and driver ICs
Not shown	Hole punch PCA	-	Controls the hole punch module and consists of the micro-controller and driver ICs

Bridge unit

You will learn more about the bridge unit.

Bridge unit overview

Learn about the bridge unit.

The bridge unit is the unit that transfers paper from the base printer to the finisher.

The bridge entrance sensor detects whether a paper enters into the bridge unit from the base printer. In the same way, the bridge exit sensor checks whether the paper leaves from the bridge unit to the finisher inside. The bridge motor drives the bridge entrance roller, bridge middle roller, and bridge exit roller. It makes the paper moves through the bridge unit. The jam removal door locating at the front side of the unit helps user to remove the jammed paper.

Figure 3-227 Overview of the bridge unit

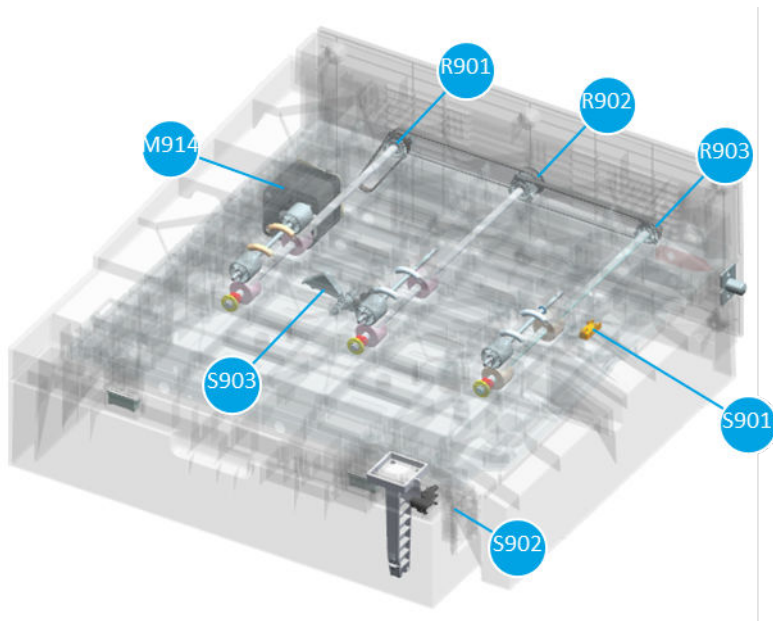


Table 3-134 Overview of the bridge unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S902	Bridge door sensor	0604-001393	Detects if the bridge door is open
S901	Bridge entrance sensor	JC32-00020A	Checks whether paper comes to the bridge entrance unit
S903	Bridge exit sensor	0604-001393	Checks whether paper moves out of the bridge unit

Table 3-134 Overview of the bridge unit (continued)

No	Part name	Part number	Description
M914	Bridge motor	3SJ19-80501	Rotates the bridge entrance roller, the bridge middle roller, and the bridge exit roller
R903	Bridge entrance roller	JC66-04733A	Moves paper from the printer to the bridge unit
R902	Bridge middle roller	JC66-04732A	Move paper from the printer to the bridge unit
R901	Bridge exit roller	JC66-04732A	Moves paper from the printer to the finisher entrance unit

Figure 3-228 Detail view of the bridge unit

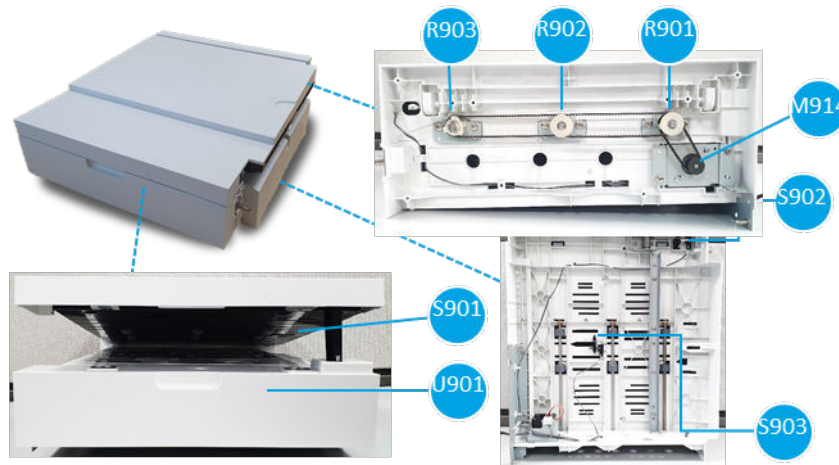


Table 3-135 Detail view of the bridge unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
U901	Bridge unit	5QK09-60110	Moves paper from the printer to the finisher
S902	Bridge door sensor	0604-001393	Detects if the bridge door is open
S901	Bridge entrance sensor	JC32-00020A	Checks whether paper comes to the bridge entrance unit
S903	Bridge exit sensor	0604-001393	Checks whether paper moves out of the bridge unit
M914	Bridge motor	3SJ19-80501	Rotates the bridge entrance roller, the bridge middle roller, and the bridge exit roller
R903	Bridge entrance roller	JC66-04733A	Moves paper from the printer to the bridge unit
R902	Bridge middle roller	JC66-04732A	Moves paper from the printer to the bridge unit
R901	Bridge exit roller	JC66-04732A	Moves paper from the printer to the finisher entrance unit

Stapler-stacker finisher

You will learn more about the stapler-stacker finisher.

Entrance unit

You will learn more about the entrance unit of the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet finisher.

Entrance unit overview

Learn about the entrance unit overview.

Entrance unit moves a paper from the bridge unit to the finisher inside. The entrance sensor installed at the right side of the unit senses whether the paper enters into the finisher. The entrance motor rotates forward to drive the entrance roller and the middle roller to move the paper from the entrance unit to the exit area.

Figure 3-229 Overview of the entrance unit

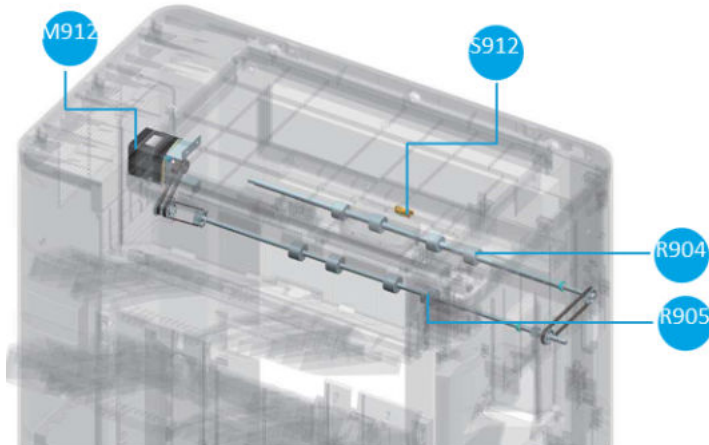


Table 3-136 Overview of the entrance unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S912	Entrance sensor	JC32-00020A	Detects whether paper enters at the entrance unit
M912	Entrance motor	3SJ19-80501	Operates the entrance roller and middle roller when driving forward
R904	Entrance roller	JC66-04722A	Moves paper from the entrance unit to the exit unit
R905	Middle roller	JC66-04724A	Moves paper from the entrance unit to the exit unit

Figure 3-230 Detail view of the entrance unit, view 1

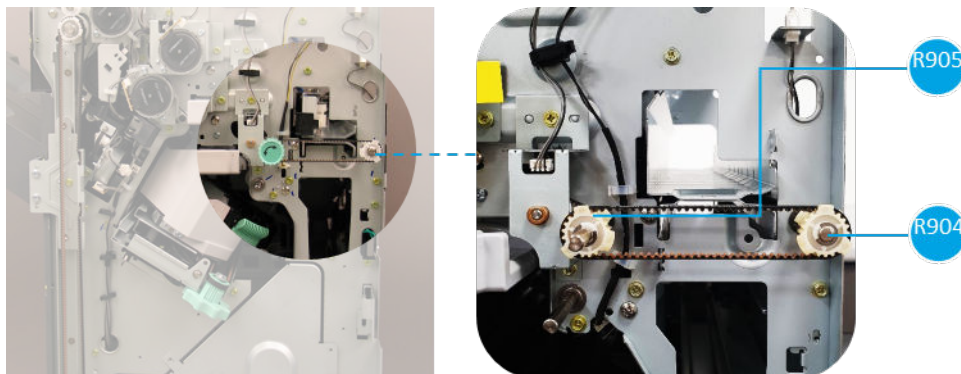


Table 3-137 Detail view of the entrance unit, view 1

No	Part name	Part number	Description
R904	Entrance roller	JC66-04722A	Moves paper from the entrance unit to the exit unit
R905	Middle roller	JC66-04724A	Moves paper from the entrance unit to the exit unit

Figure 3-231 Detail view of the entrance unit, view 2

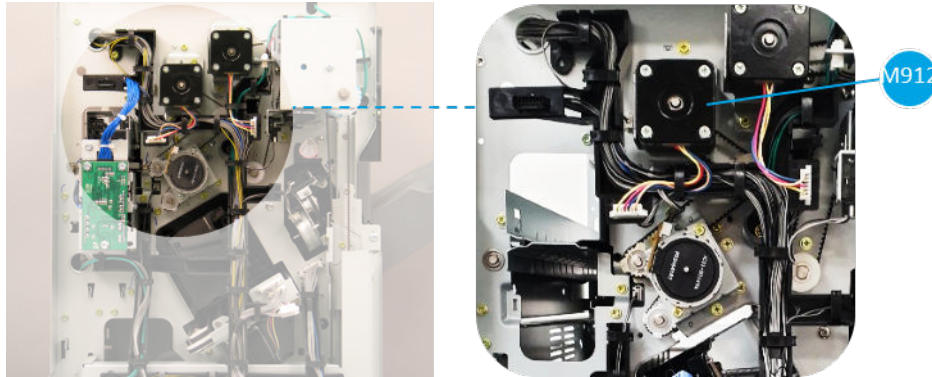


Table 3-138 Detail view of the entrance unit, view 2

No	Part name	Part number	Description
M912	Entrance motor	3SJ19-80501	Operates the entrance roller and middle roller when driving forward

Figure 3-232 Detail view of the entrance unit, view 3



Table 3-139 Detail view of the entrance unit, view 3

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S912	Entrance sensor	JC32-00020A	Detects whether paper enters at the entrance unit

Punch unit (optional)

You will learn more about the punch unit of the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet finisher.

Punch unit overview

Learn about the punch unit overview.

The punch unit is an optional device that punches the holes in a specific location on a sheet of paper. The punch unit is positioned right after the entrance unit.

In case of 2/3 hole punch, the 5 hole-punches are mounted in the punch unit. As the punch motor rotates forward, the inner gear moves to the right and the 3 hole-punches are moved downward to make the holes on the paper. When making 2 holes, the motor rotates in the backward direction and the inner gear

rotates to the left to drill two holes. The travel distance and position of the hole-punches are detected and controlled by the 3 punch position sensors.


 **NOTE:** Puncher types are various depending on the country.

Figure 3-233 Overview of the punch unit

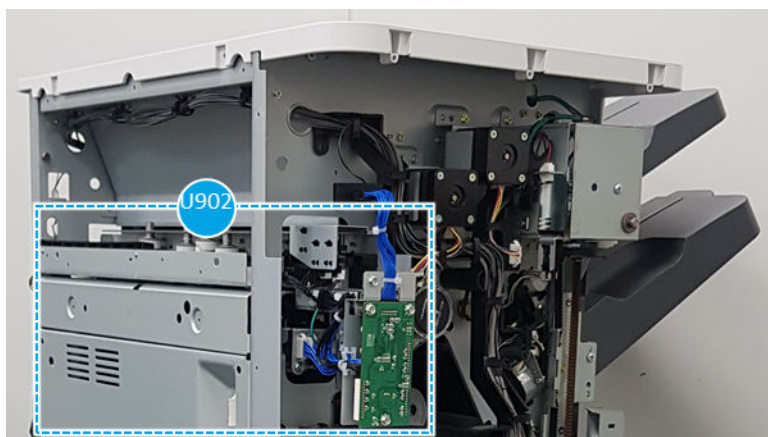


Table 3-140 Overview of the punch unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
U902-1	2-3 hole punch unit	Y1G10-67901	-
U902-2	2-4 hole punch unit	Y1G11-67901	-
U902-3	Swedish hole punch unit	Y1G12-67901	-

Figure 3-234 Detail view of the punch unit

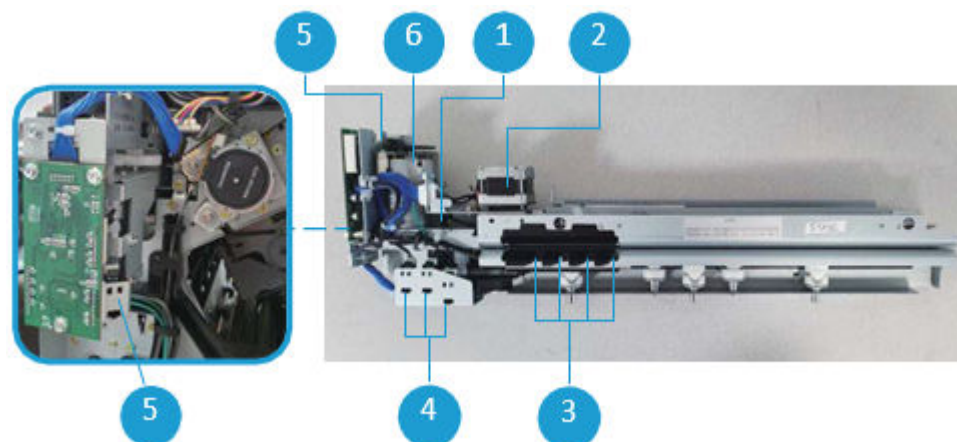


Table 3-141 Detail view of the punch unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Punch scan home sensor	NA	Detects the home position of the punch unit
2	Punch scan motor	NA	Transmits the force to move the punch unit in the horizontal direction
3	Punch scan edge sensor	NA	Checks the paper width to make hole on the right position of paper

Table 3-141 Detail view of the punch unit (continued)

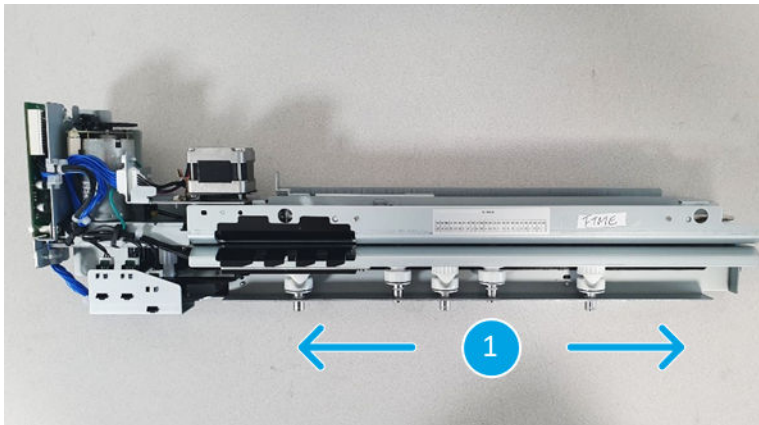
No	Part name	Part number	Description
4	Punch position sensor	NA	Detects the travel distance and position of the hole-punches
5	Punch motor sensor	NA	Checks whether the punch motor is operational
6	Punch motor	NA	Transmits the force to make holes on the paper

Punch unit operation

Learn about the punch unit operation.

1. A paper comes into the punch unit, and it is aligned to drill holes. The motor rotates forward or backward (callout 1), then the punch rail in the punch unit moves in order to move the punch hole makers.

Figure 3-235 Punch unit operation, view 1

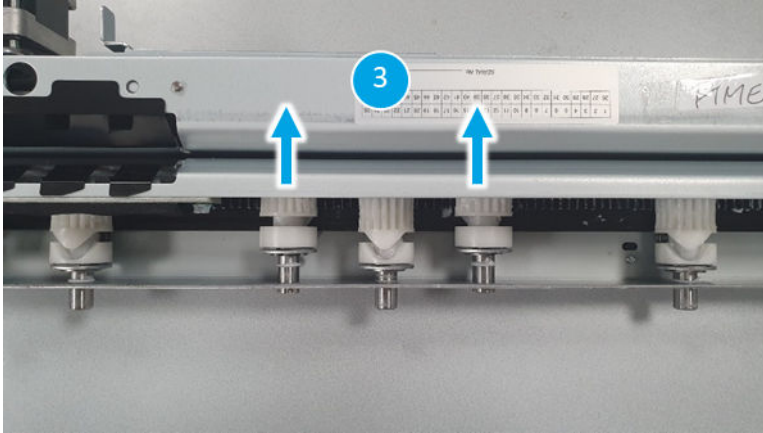


2. The punch position sensors determine the punch rail location (callout 2). It drives the punch hole makers up and down to make holes (callout 3).

Figure 3-236 Punch unit operation, view 2

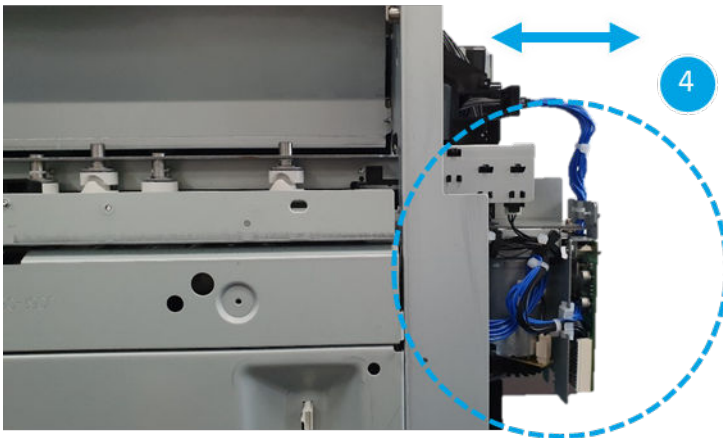


Figure 3-237 Punch unit operation, view 3



3. In some paper sizes, paper might be jammed in a place where punch hole maker is located. Therefore, the punch unit moves left and right (callout 4).

Figure 3-238 Punch unit operation, view 4



Tray diverter unit

You will learn more about the tray diverter unit of the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet finisher.

Tray diverter unit overview

Learn about the tray diverter unit overview.

The tray diverter unit is responsible for determining the paper feed direction so that paper can be ejected to the main output tray or top output tray

The entrance motor rotates this unit. When the entrance motor rotates backward, the phase of the diverter CAM changes so that the paper path direction changes. The tray diverter home sensor (S4) checks whether the tray diverter is located at the home position or not.

Figure 3-239 Overview of the tray diverter unit

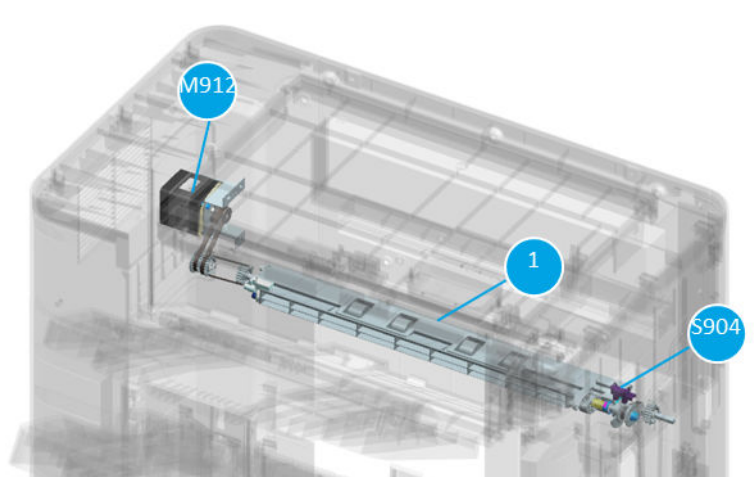


Table 3-142 Overview of the tray diverter unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Tray diverter	JC61-07205A	Selects the paper path of either the main output tray or the top output tray
S904	Tray diverter home sensor	0604-001415	Checks whether home position of the tray diverter
M912	Entrance motor	3SJ19-80501	Operates the tray diverter cam when driving in the backward direction

Figure 3-240 Detail view of the tray diverter unit, view 1

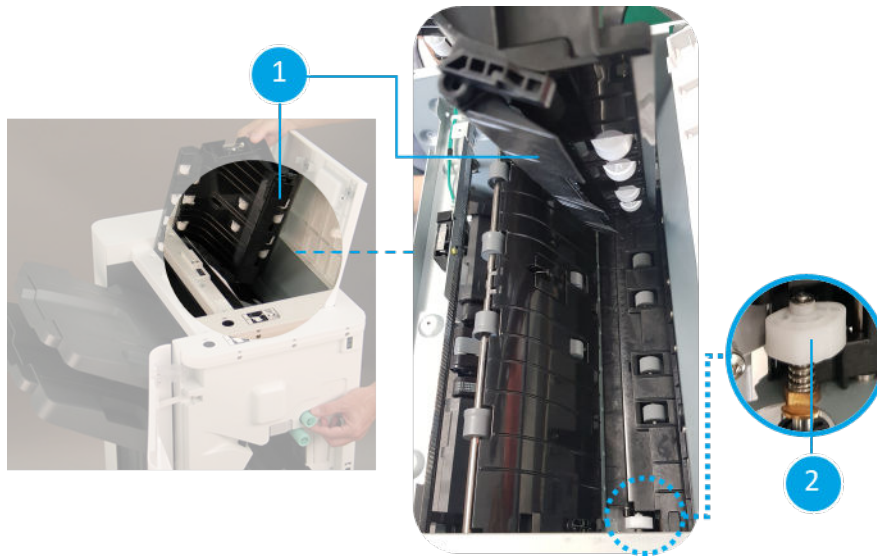


Table 3-143 Detail view of the tray diverter unit, view 1

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Tray diverter	JC61-07205A	Selects the paper path of either the main output tray or the top output tray
2	Tray diverter cam	JC66-04560A	Changes the paper path

Figure 3-241 Detail view of the tray diverter unit, view 2

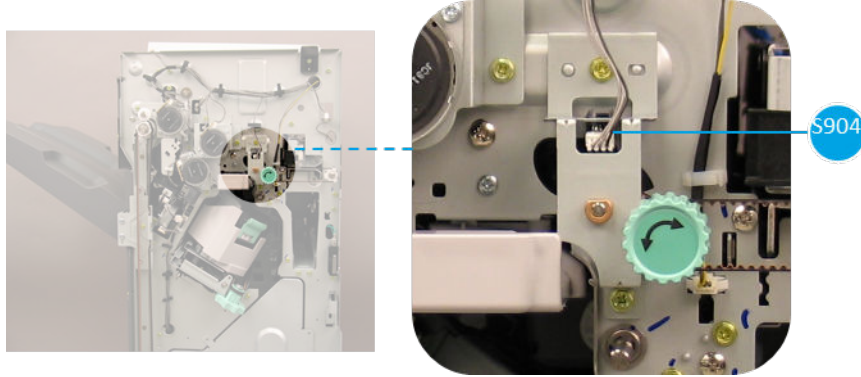


Table 3-144 Detail view of the tray diverter unit, view 2

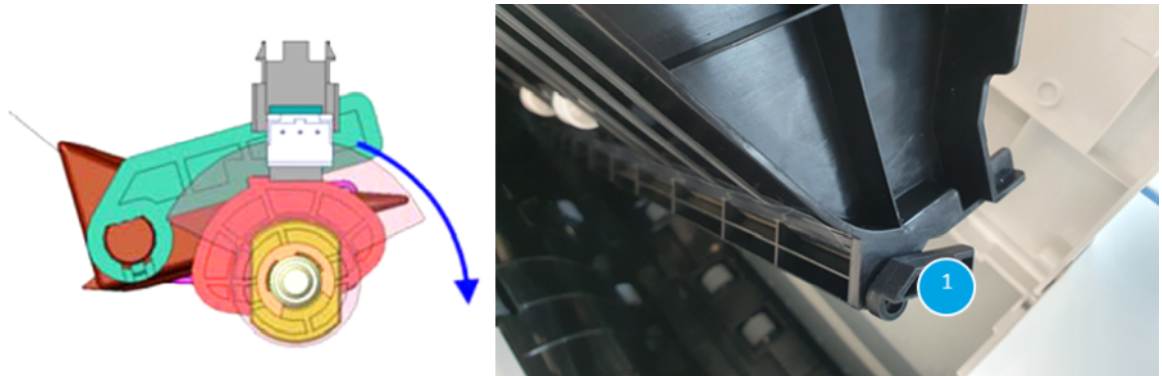
No	Part name	Part number	Description
S904	Tray diverter home sensor	0604-001415	Checks whether home position of the tray diverter

Tray diverter unit operation

Learn about the tray diverter unit operation.

1. When printing out the document to the main output tray, the entrance motor rotates (callout 1) so that the tray diverter moves downwards to move the paper out to the main output tray.

Figure 3-242 Tray diverter unit operation, view 1



2. In case of top output tray, the diverter cam moves. The tray diverter moves upwards (callout 2) so that the paper moves out to the top output tray.

Figure 3-243 Tray diverter unit operation, view 2



Top exit unit

You will learn more about the top exit unit of the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet finisher.

Top exit unit overview

Learn about the top exit unit overview.

The top exit unit sends paper from the tray diverter unit to the top output tray unit.

The top exit sensor detects paper entry into the top exit unit. The entrance motor drives the top middle roller, and the exit motor transmit the force to rotate the top exit roller so that paper moves to the top output tray unit.

Figure 3-244 Overview of the top exit unit

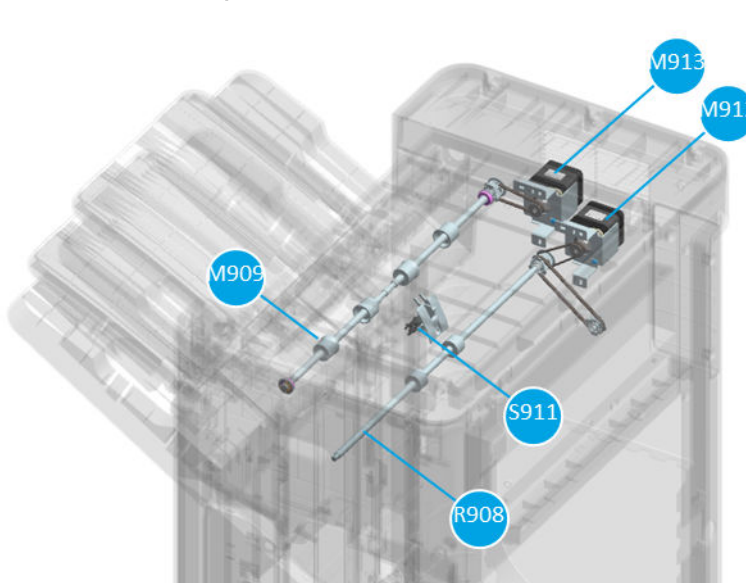


Table 3-145 Overview of the top exit unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S911	Top exit sensor	0604-001393	Check whether the paper has entered at the top exit unit
M912	Entrance motor	3SJ19-80501	Rotate the top middle roller when driving in the forward direction
M913	Exit motor	3SJ19-80501	Rotate the top exit roller

Table 3-145 Overview of the top exit unit (continued)

No	Part name	Part number	Description
R908	Top middle roller	JC66-04725A	Move the paper to the top output tray
R909	Top exit roller	JC66-04725A	Move the paper to the top output tray

Figure 3-245 Detail view of the top exit unit

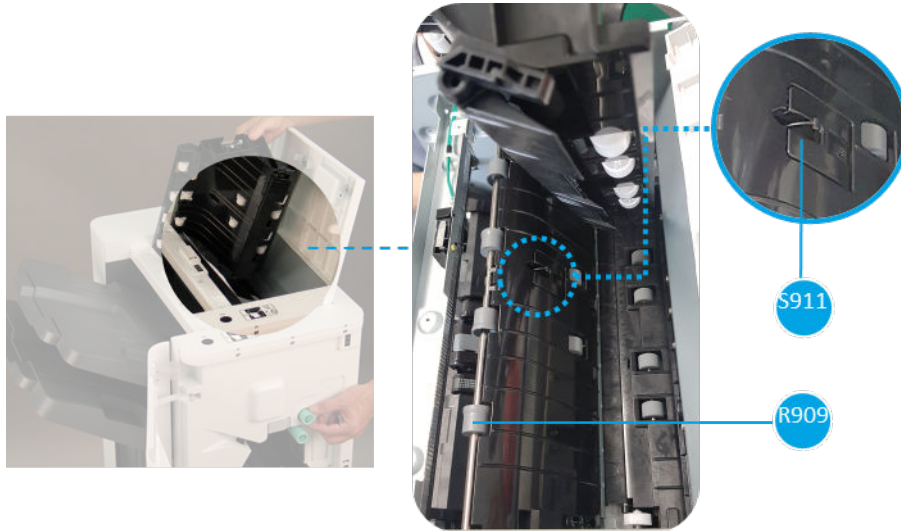


Table 3-146 Detail view of the top exit unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S911	Top exit sensor	0604-001393	Check whether the paper has entered at the top exit unit
R909	Top exit roller	JC66-04725A	Move the paper to the top output tray

Top output tray unit

You will learn more about the top output tray unit of the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet finisher.

Top output tray unit overview

Learn about the top output tray unit overview.

The top output tray unit loads discharged paper from the finisher. It has the paper pull sensor to detect whether the tray is full with the paper.

Figure 3-246 Overview of the top output tray unit

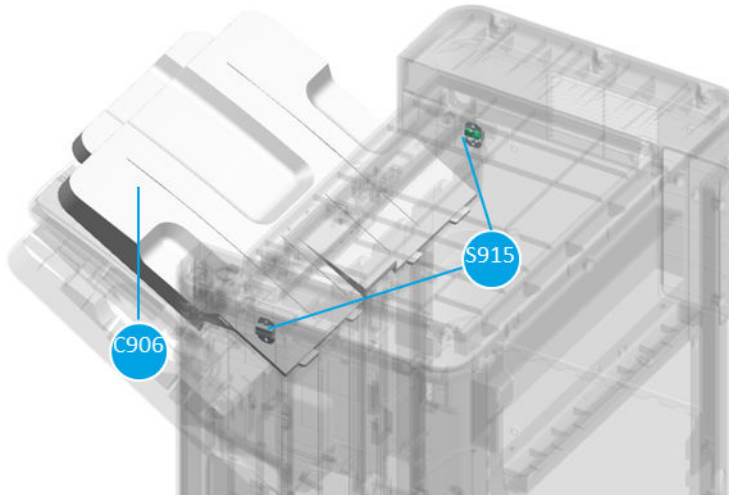


Table 3-147 Overview of the top output tray unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Top output tray	5QK09-40027 5QK09-40029	Load the ejected paper
S915	Top output tray paper full sensor	JC82-01039A	Detect whether the tray is full

Figure 3-247 Detail view of the top output tray unit

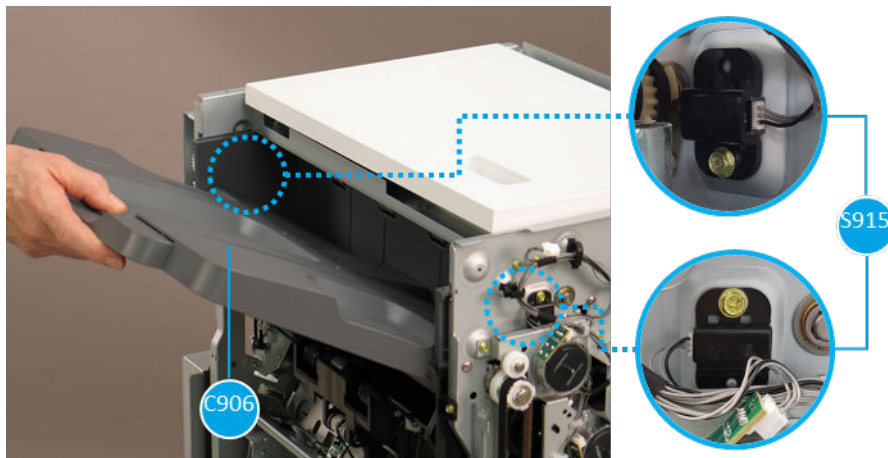


Table 3-148 Detail view of the top output tray unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Top output tray	5QK09-40027 5QK09-40029	Load the ejected paper
S915	Top output tray paper full sensor	JC82-01039A	Detect whether the tray is full

Main exit unit

You will learn more about the main exit unit of the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet finisher.

Main exit unit overview

Learn about the main exit unit overview.

The main exit unit delivers paper from the tray diverter unit to the ejector unit or buffer unit.

The main exit sensor detects whether paper comes in from main exit unit. The exit motor drives the main exit roller to send the paper to the ejector unit or buffer unit.

Figure 3-248 Overview of the main exit unit

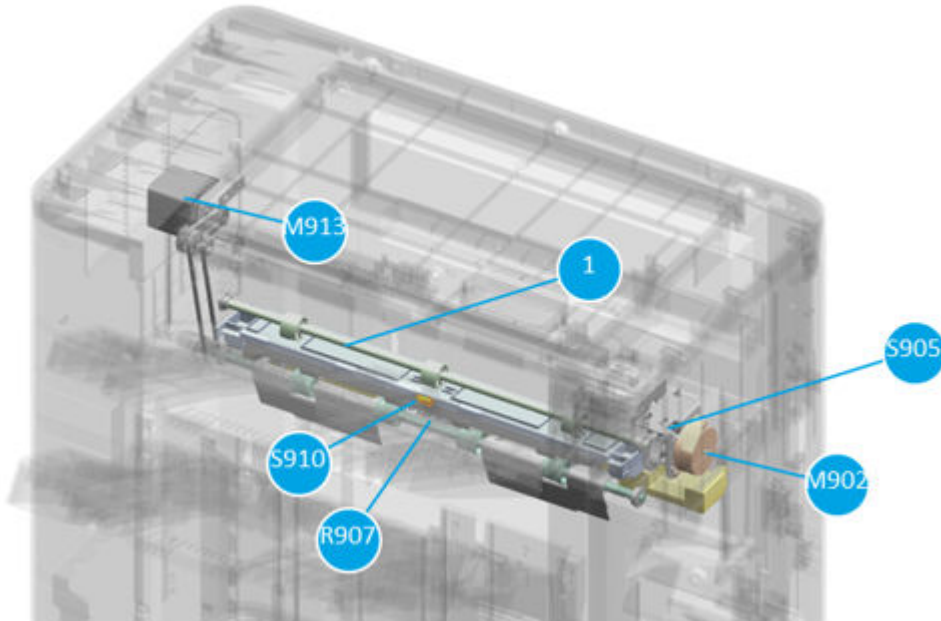


Table 3-149 Overview of the main exit unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S910	Main exit sensor	JC32-00020A	Detect whether the paper entered at the main exit unit
M913	Exit motor	3SJ19-80501	Rotate the main exit roller
R907	Main exit roller	JC66-04726A	Move the paper to the ejector unit or the buffer unit
1	Main exit cam	-	Adjust the gap between the main exit roller and the idle roller for the buffering
S905	Main exit cam home sensor	0604-001393	Detect the home position of the main exit cam
M902	Main exit cam motor	JC93-01155A	Rotate the main exit cam

Figure 3-249 Detail view of the main exit unit, view 1

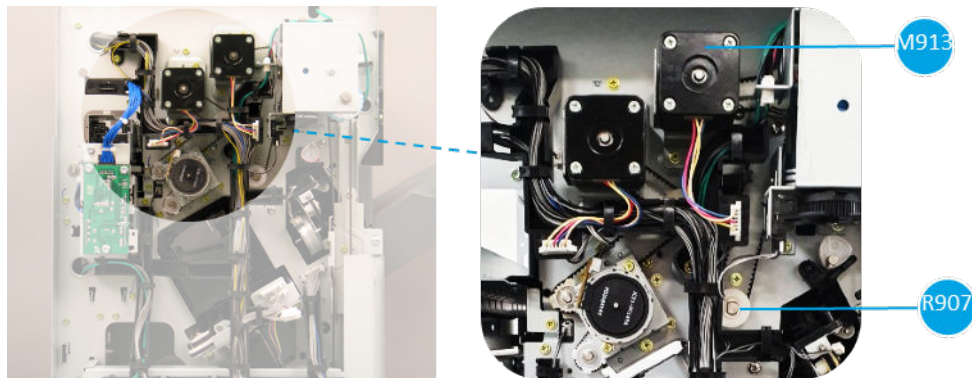


Table 3-150 Detail view of the main exit unit, view 1

No	Part name	Part number	Description
M913	Exit motor	3SJ19-80501	Rotate the main exit roller
R907	Main exit roller	JC66-04726A	Move the paper to the ejector unit or the buffer unit

Figure 3-250 Detail view of the main exit unit, view 2

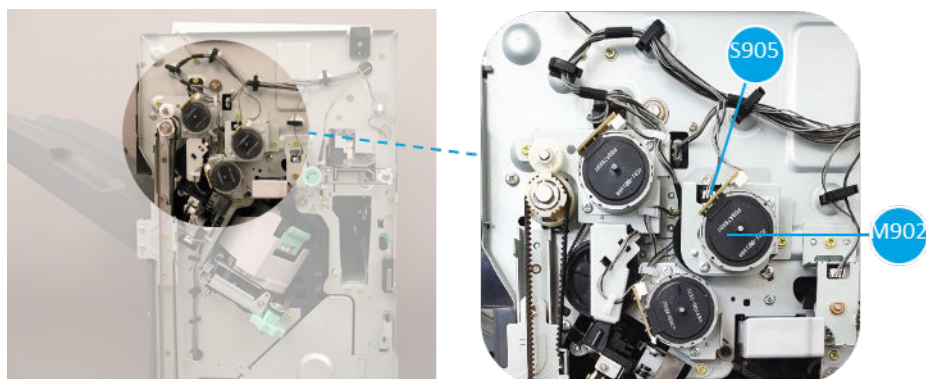


Table 3-151 Detail view of the main exit unit, view 2

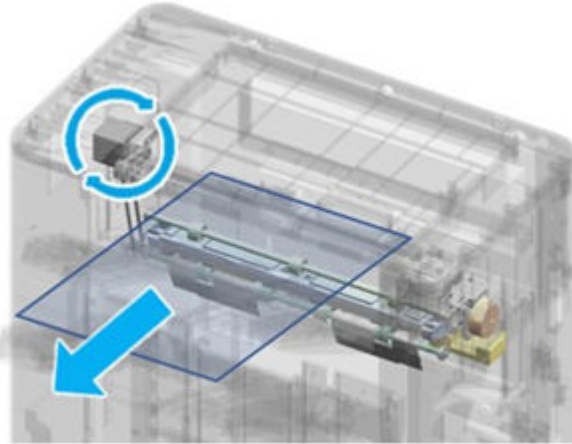
No	Part name	Part number	Description
S905	Main exit cam home sensor	0604-001393	Detect the home position of the main exit cam
M902	Main exit cam motor	JC93-01155A	Rotate the main exit cam

Main exit unit operation

Learn about the main exit unit operation.

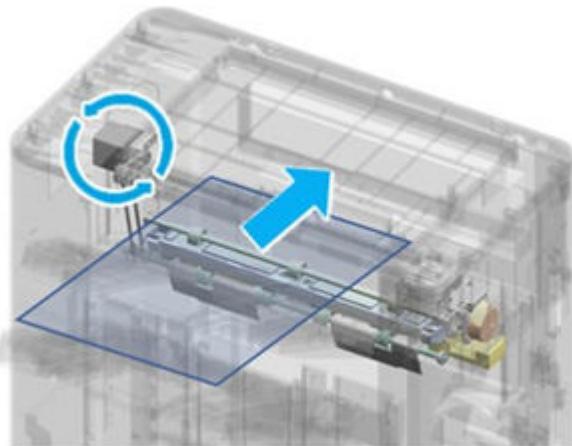
1. The exit motor drives forward so that paper will moves towards the ejector unit.

Figure 3-251 Main exit unit operation, view 1



2. If the exit motor rotates backwards paper moves towards the buffer unit.

Figure 3-252 Main exit unit operation, view 2



Paddle unit

You will learn more about the paddle unit of the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet finisher.

Paddle unit overview

Learn about the paddle unit overview.

The paddle unit rotates the rubber paddles mounted on the shaft to move paper to the end fence unit, allowing paper to be arranged well for the next job. The paddle presser is mounted behind the rubber paddles and presses the end of paper to help paper be stacked well at the end fence unit. The paddle home sensor checks the home position to drive the paddles. And the paddle motor drives the paddle and paddle presser.

Figure 3-253 Overview of the paddle unit

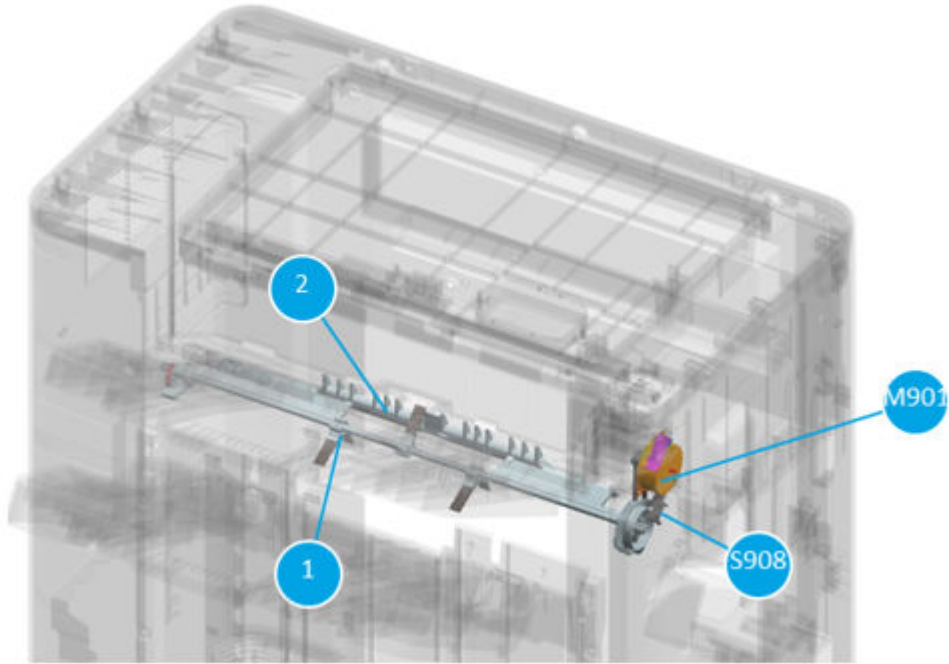


Table 3-152 Overview of the paddle unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Paddle	JC90-01480A	Moves paper into the end fence unit
2	Paddle presser	JC61-07206A	Presses the end of bent paper helps paper to be loaded well at the end fence unit
S908	Paddle home sensor	0604-001393	Detect the home position of the paddle
M901	Paddle motor	JC93-01001A	Rotates the paddle, and moves the paddle presser up and downward at the same time

Figure 3-254 Detail view of the paddle unit, view 1

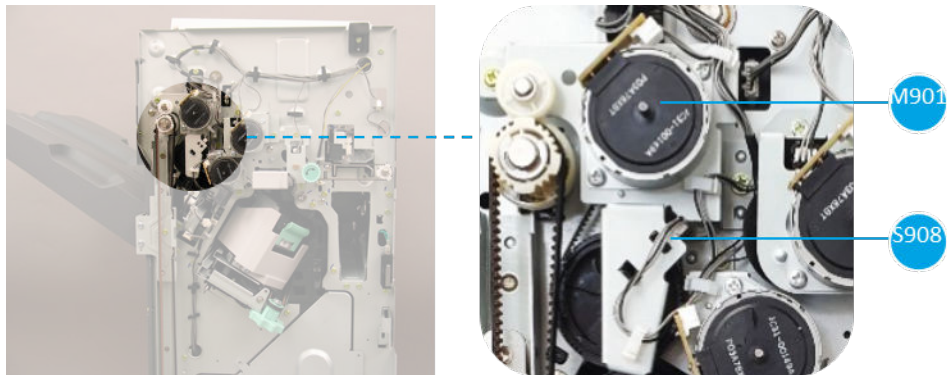


Table 3-153 Detail view of the paddle unit, view 1

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S908	Paddle home sensor	0604-001393	Detect the home position of the paddle

Table 3-153 Detail view of the paddle unit, view 1 (continued)

No	Part name	Part number	Description
M901	Paddle motor	JC93-01001A	Rotates the paddle, and moves the paddle presser up and downward at the same time

Figure 3-255 Detail view of the paddle unit, view 2

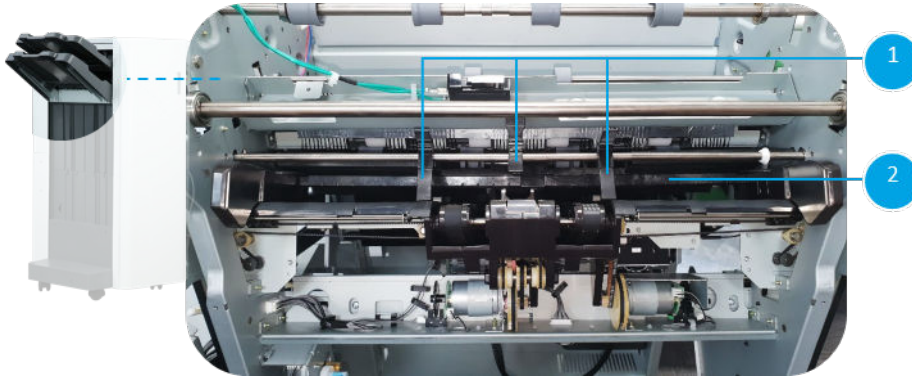


Table 3-154 Detail view of the paddle unit, view 2

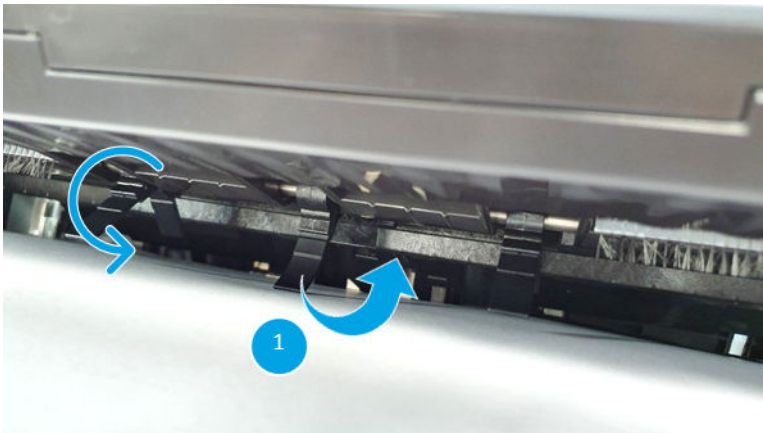
No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Paddle	JC90-01480A	Moves paper into the end fence unit
2	Paddle presser	JC61-07206A	Presses the end of bent paper helps paper to be loaded well at the end fence unit

Paddle unit operation

Learn about the paddle unit operation.

1. A paper falls downward through the exit unit. The paddles rotate to make the paper moves into the end fence unit.

Figure 3-256 Paddle unit operation, view 1



2. The paddle presser pushes the end of the paper so as not to be scattered around the paddle unit.

Figure 3-257 Paddle unit operation, view 2



End fence unit

You will learn more about the end fence unit of the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet finisher.

End fence unit overview

Learn about the end fence unit overview.

The end fence unit sets the standard position of the paper to be aligned towards top and bottom of the paper. End fence motor operates the two end fences and adjust width of them to stack a bunch of paper correctly. The end fence home sensor detects the home position of the end fence.

Figure 3-258 Overview of the end fence unit

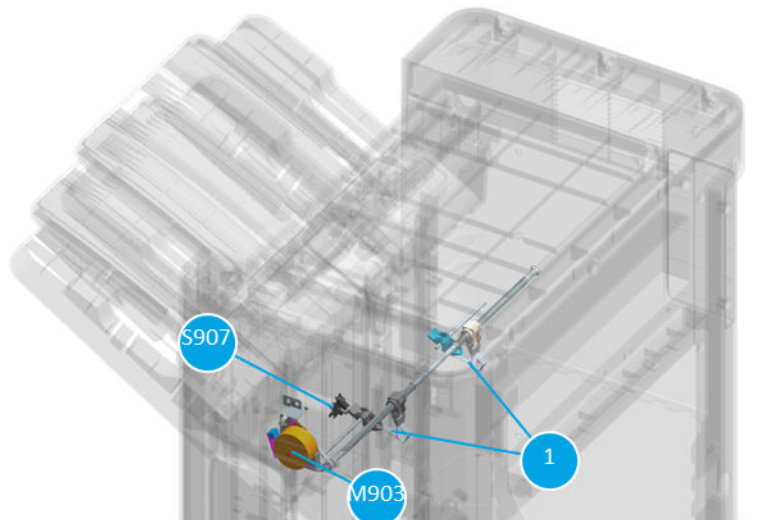


Table 3-155 Overview of the end fence unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	End fence	NA	Aligns top and bottom side of paper
S907	End fence home sensor	0604-001393	Detects the home position of the end fence
M903	End fence motor	JC93-01001A	Moves front and rear end fence depending on paper size (width) so that paper sits correctly at the end fence

Figure 3-259 Detail view of the end fence unit, view 1

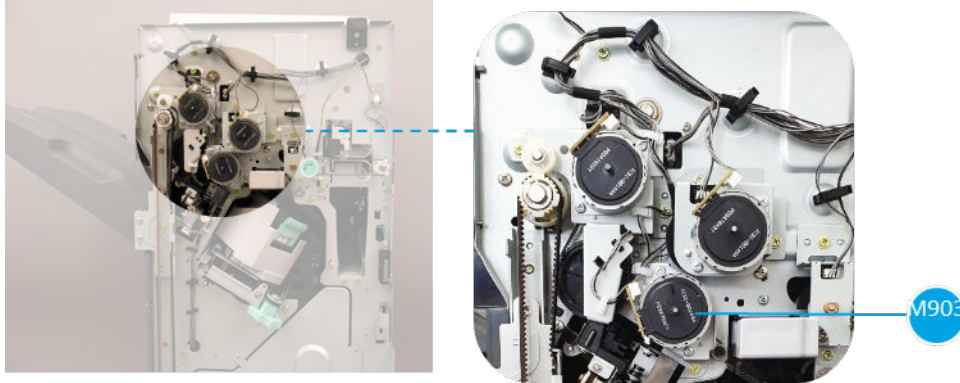


Table 3-156 Detail view of the end fence unit, view 1

No	Part name	Part number	Description
M903	End fence motor	JC93-01001A	Moves front and rear end fence depending on paper size (width) so that paper arranged well at the end fence

Figure 3-260 Detail view of the end fence unit, view 2

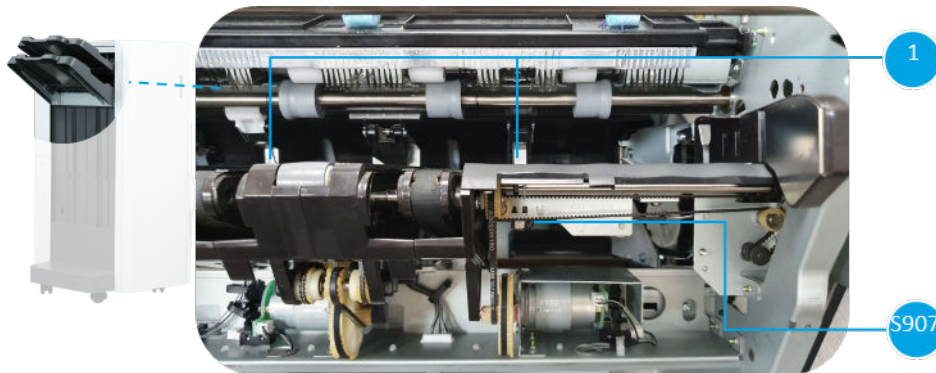


Table 3-157 Detail view of the end fence unit, view 2

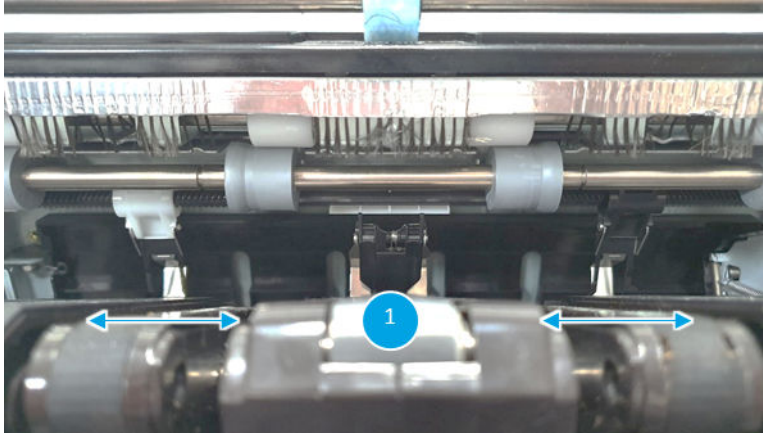
No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	End fence	NA	Aligns top and bottom side of paper
S907	End fence home sensor	0604-001393	Detect the home position of the end fence

End fence unit operation

Learn about the end fence unit operation.

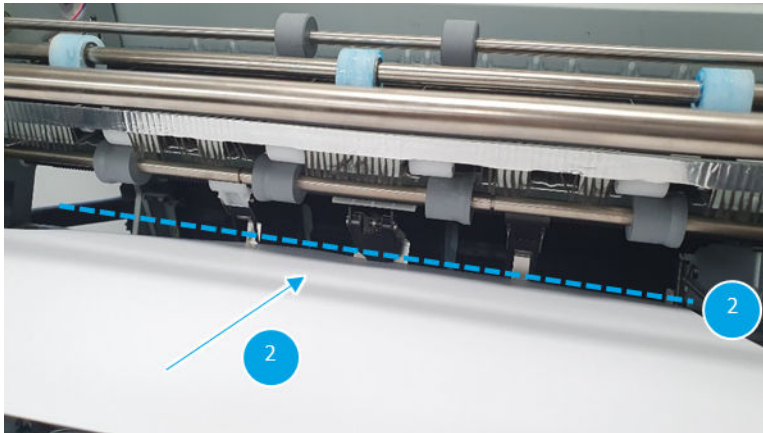
1. The end fence motor moves the front and rear end fences in the arrow direction (callout 1) depending on paper width.

Figure 3-261 End fence unit operation, view 1



2. A paper goes into the end fence unit by the paddle unit (callout 2). At the same time the end fence unit aligns the paper to the direction of blue line (callout 3).

Figure 3-262 End fence unit operation, view 2



Tamper unit

You will learn more about the tamper unit of the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet finisher.

Tamper unit overview

Learn about the tamper unit overview.

The tamper unit functions to align the left and right sides of a bundle of paper. When a certain amount of paper is collected after printing, the tamper unit hits the left and right ends of the paper to align the paper correctly. Each tamper has a motor on the back side that delivers driving force to move. The tamper home sensors are mounted on the back side of the unit to check the home position of the tamper unit.

Figure 3-263 Overview of the tamper unit

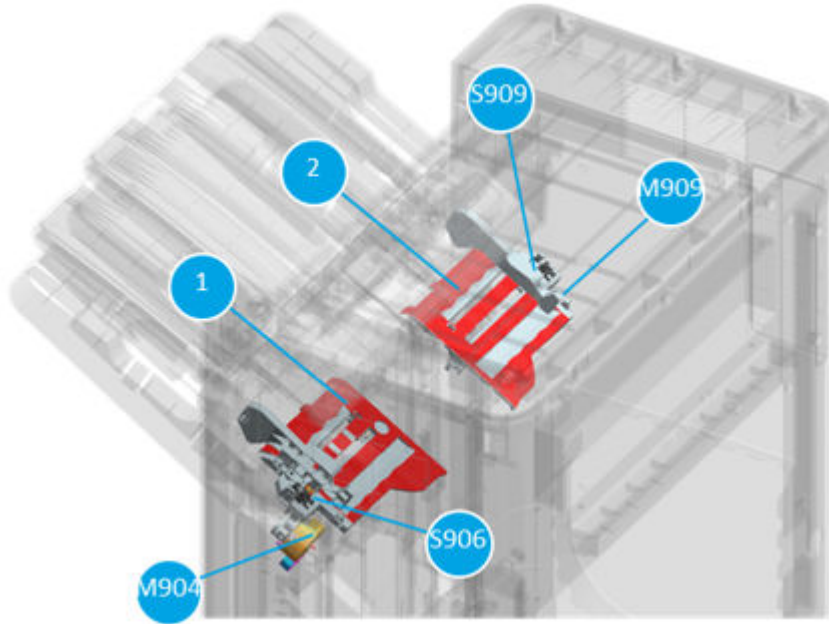


Table 3-158 Overview of the tamper unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Front tamper	JC82-00901A	Align left and right side of the paper
S906	Front tamper home sensor	0604-001393	Detect the home position of the tamper unit
M904	Front tamper motor	JC93-01001A	Move the front tamper unit
2	Rear tamper	JC82-00898A	Align left and right side of the paper
S909	Rear tamper home sensor	0604-001393	Detect the home position of the tamper unit
M909	Rear tamper motor	JC93-01001A	Move the front tamper unit

Figure 3-264 Detail view of the tamper unit, view 1

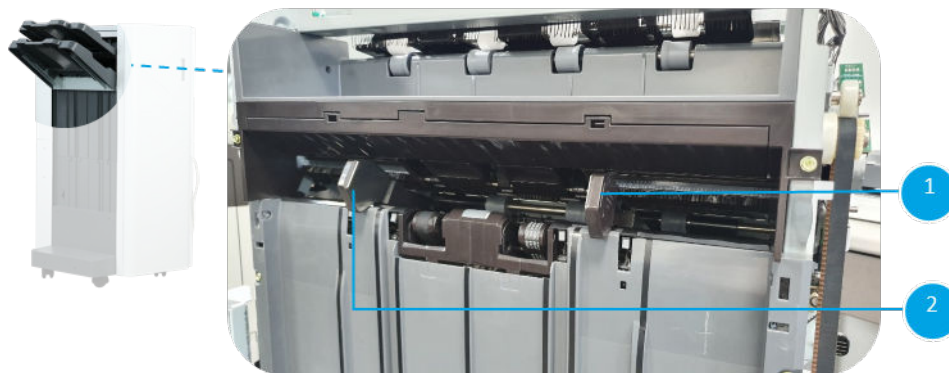


Table 3-159 Detail view of the tamper unit, view 1

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Front tamper	JC82-00901A	Align left and right side of the paper
2	Rear tamper	JC82-00898A	Align left and right side of the paper

Figure 3-265 Detail view of the tamper unit, view 2

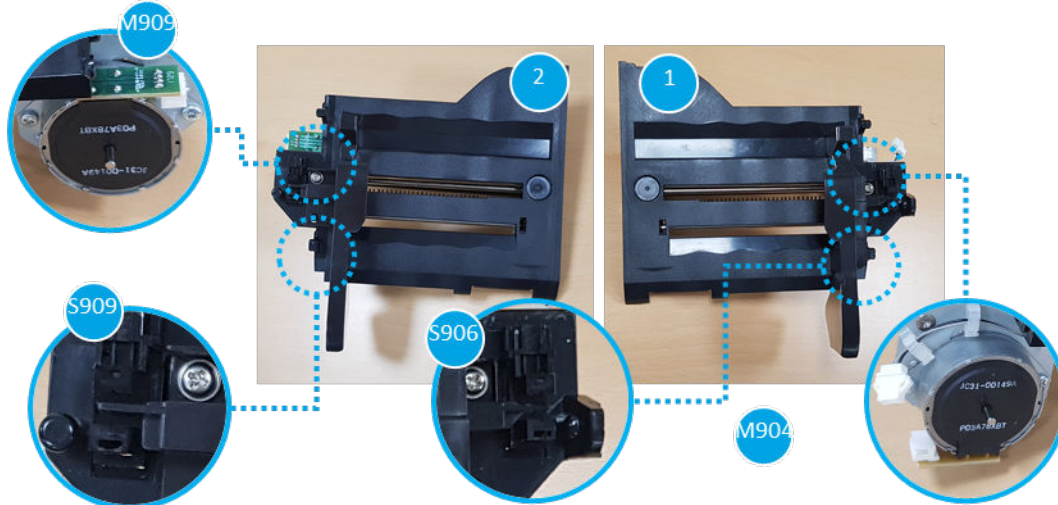


Table 3-160 Detail view of the tamper unit, view 2

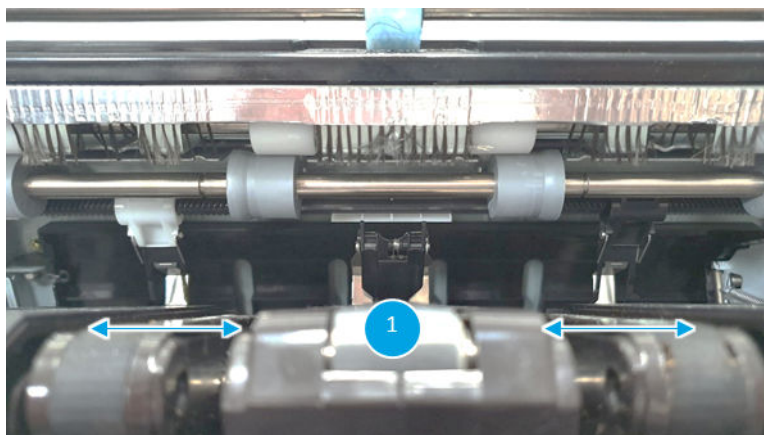
No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Front tamper	JC82-00901A	Align left and right side of the paper
S906	Front tamper home sensor	0604-001393	Detect the home position of the tamper unit
M904	Front tamper motor	JC93-01001A	Move the front tamper unit
2	Rear tamper	JC82-00898A	Align left and right side of the paper
S909	Rear tamper home sensor	0604-001393	Detect the home position of the tamper unit
M909	Rear tamper motor	JC93-01001A	Move the front tamper unit

Tamper unit operation

Learn about the tamper unit operation.

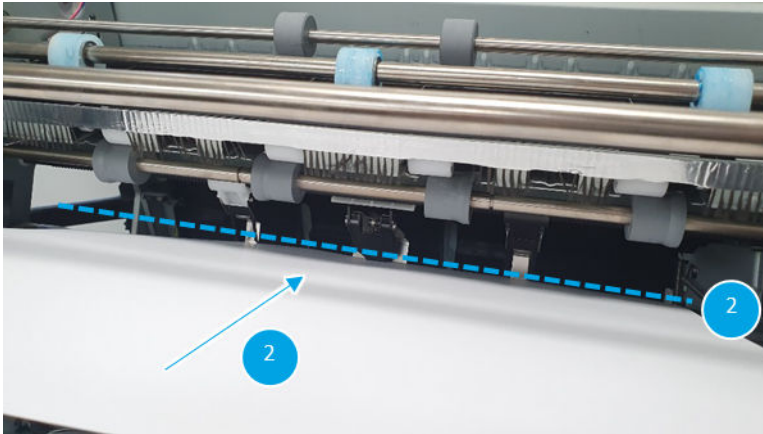
1. A stack of paper is arranged at the end fence unit though end fence unit operation. Then the left and right tampers arrange both side of the paper.

Figure 3-266 Tamper unit operation, view 1



2. In case of offset printing, the tamper unit moves slightly different from the previous bundles location so that the next bunch of paper could be shifted.

Figure 3-267 Tamper unit operation, view 2



Stapler unit

You will learn more about the stapler unit of the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet finisher.

Stapler unit overview

Learn about the stapler unit overview.

The stapler unit is a device installed inside the finisher that staples a bundle of aligned documents. Documents are collected as a bundle by the tamper unit and the end fence unit for stapling, then the stapler assembly staples the bundle. There are six options to make a bundle.

Figure 3-268 Stapling options



The stapler unit moves using the stapler motor installed inside. The one home sensor and two position sensors are mounted so that the stapler can be positioned in the exact stapling position whether it is stapled on the left, the right, or at the center of the document. Stapling is done by the motor inside the stapler assembly.

In addition, a manual staple feature is available on the front-upper side of the finisher. The manual staple sensor detects whether a stack of paper comes into the manual staple location or not. The front sensor makes the stapler move to the manual staple location.

Figure 3-269 Overview of the stapler unit

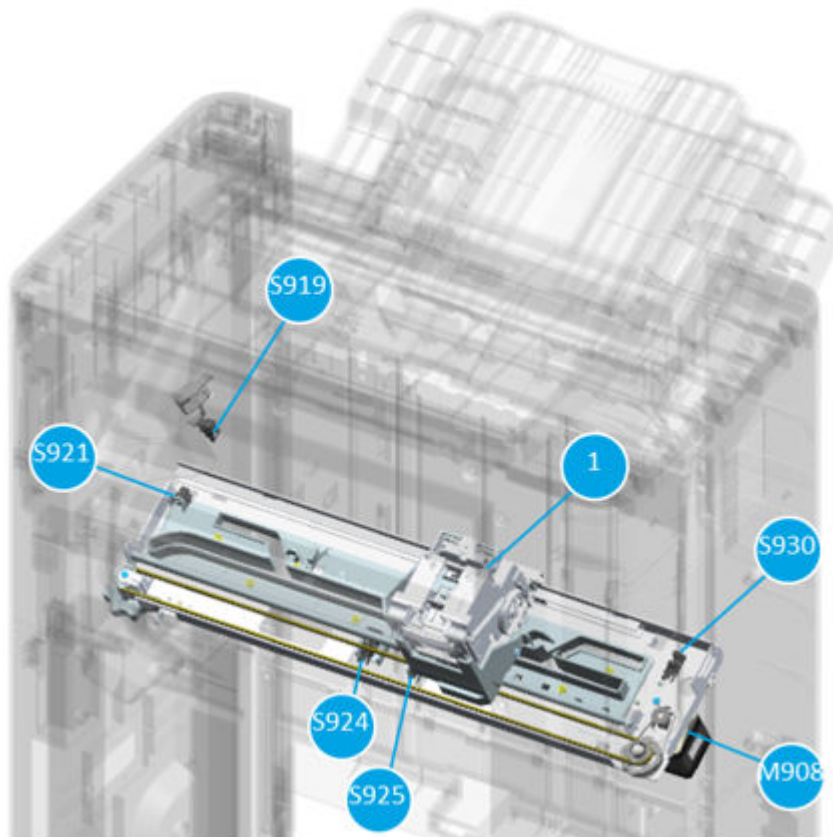


Table 3-161 Overview of the stapler unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Stapler unit	8GS05-60116	Staple a bundle of paper
S921	Stapler front sensor	0604-001393	Detect the stapler at the manual stapling position
S924	Stapler mid-front	0604-001393	Detect the stapler location
S925	Stapler mid-rear sensor	0604-001393	Detect the stapler location
S930	Stapler rear sensor	0604-001393	Detect the home position of the stapler
S919	Manual staple sensor	0604-001415	Detect paper when manual stapling
M908	Stapler position motor	JC31-00163A	Move the stapler

Figure 3-270 Detail view of the stapler unit, view 1

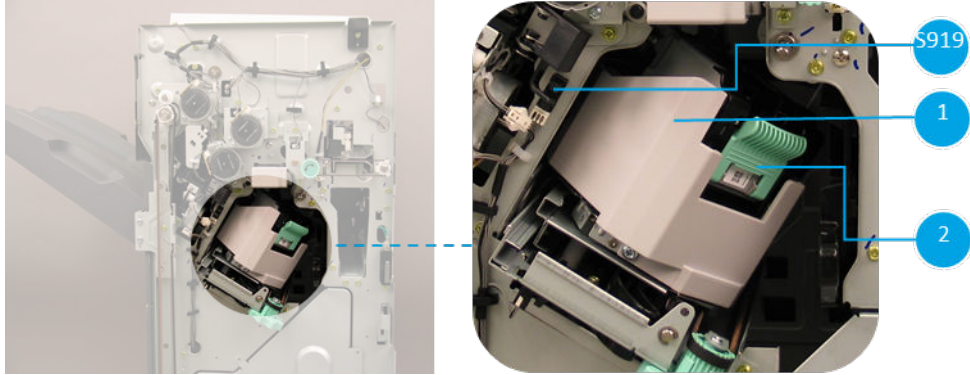


Table 3-162 Detail view of the stapler unit, view 1

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Stapler unit	8GS05-60116	Staple a bundle of paper
2	Staple cartridge	JC81-09882A	Staple cartridge
S919	Manual staple sensor	0604-001415	Detect paper when manual stapling

Figure 3-271 Detail view of the stapler unit, view 2

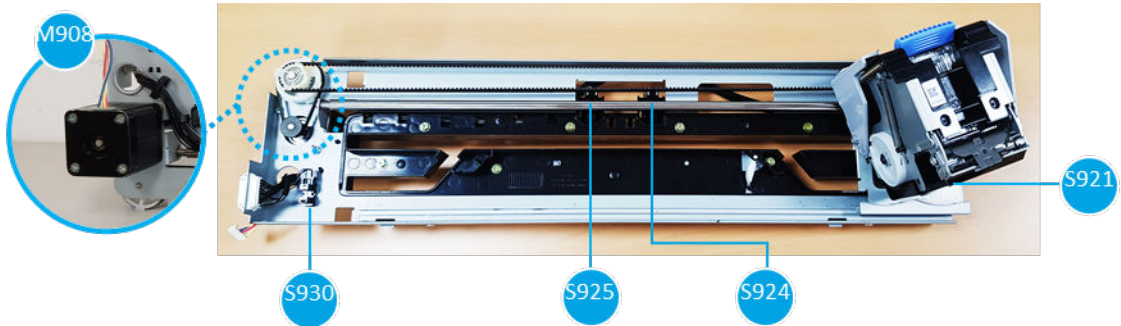


Table 3-163 Detail view of the stapler unit, view 2

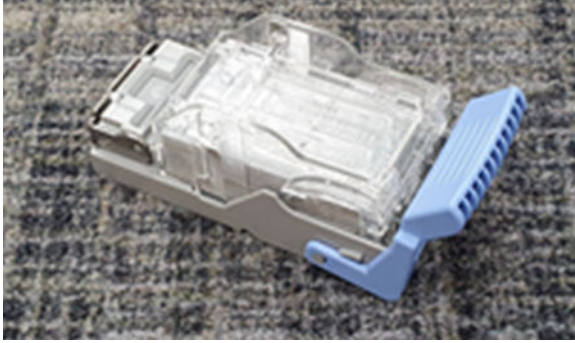
No	Part name	Part number	Description
S921	Stapler front sensor	0604-001393	Detect the stapler at the manual stapling position
S924	Stapler mid-front	0604-001393	Detect the stapler location
S925	Stapler mid-rear sensor	0604-001393	Detect the stapler location
S930	Stapler rear sensor	0604-001393	Detect the home position of the stapler
M908	Stapler position motor	JC31-00163A	Move the stapler


Staple and staple cartridge

Learn about the staple and staple cartridge.

1. Staple cartridge: JC81-09882B. Initial staples included.

Figure 3-272 Staple cartridge for stapler unit



 **NOTE:** Staple handle color may vary (blue or green color).

2. Staple: Y1G14-67901. 3 EA in 1 box.

Figure 3-273 Staple for stapler unit

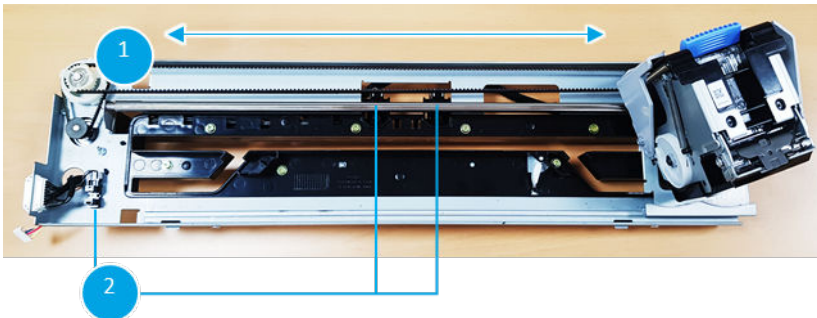


Stapler unit operation

Learn about the stapler unit operation.

1. The stapler position motor drives the stapler assembly to direction 1. During this process the stapler assembly moves through the rail using three stapler position sensors (callout 2) and staples a stack of paper.

Figure 3-274 Stapler unit operation, view 1



2. In case of staple cartridge replacement, the stapler moves to direction 3. During manual stapling, the stapler moves in direction 4.

Figure 3-275 Stapler unit operation, view 2



Ejector unit

You will learn more about the ejector unit of the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet finisher.

Ejector unit overview

Learn about the ejector unit overview.

The ejector unit ejects a bundle of paper out to the main output tray which consists of the ejector 1 and the ejector 2. The ejector 1 moves a stapled paper loaded at the end fence unit to the ejector 2 unit. During this process, the ejector 1 motor transmits the driving force to the ejector1 unit. And ejector 1 motor sensor checks the ejector 1 motor operation. And the ejector 1 home sensor detects the home position of the ejector 1. The ejector 1 end sensor detects the end position of the ejector 1. When the paper arrives at the ejector 2 unit, the ejector 2 grabs a stack of paper and ejects it onto the main output tray. The ejector 2 motor is responsible for this process, and the ejector 2 motor sensor helps it to be controlled correctly. In addition, the ejector2 home sensor checks the location of the ejector 2.

Figure 3-276 Overview of the ejector unit

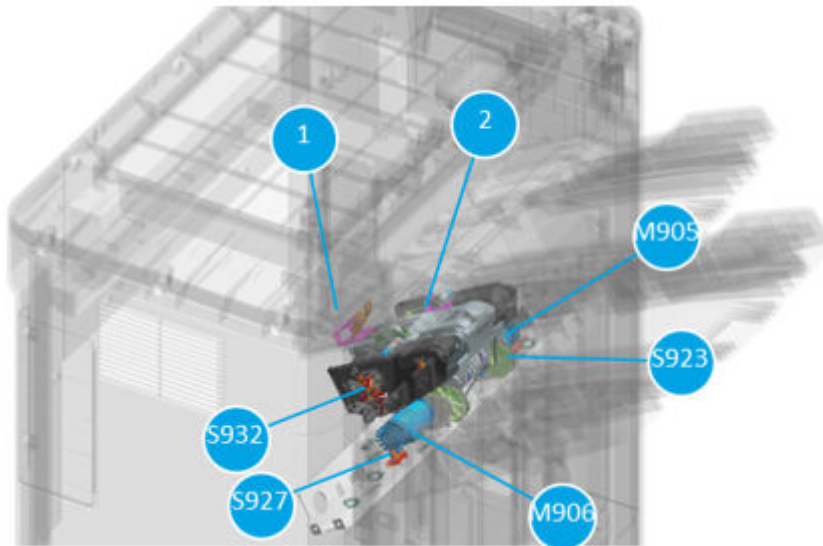


Table 3-164 Overview of the ejector unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
-	Ejector unit	JC90-01824A	
S14	Ejector sensor	JC32-00020A	Detects whether the paper is on the ejector or not
1	Ejector 1		Moves the stack of paper from the end fence to the ejector 2
S927	Ejector 1 motor sensor	0604-001415	Detects whether the ejector1 motor rotates

Table 3-164 Overview of the ejector unit (continued)

No	Part name	Part number	Description
M906	Ejector 1 motor	JC93-01168A	Moves the ejector 1 forward and backward
2	Ejector 2		Moves the paper from the ejector 1 to the main output tray
S932	Ejector 2 home sensor	0604-001415	Detects the home position of the ejector 2
S923	Ejector 2 motor sensor	0604-001415	Detects the ejector 2 motor rotation
M905	Ejector 2 motor	JC93-01168A	Moves the ejector 2 and grabs the paper

Figure 3-277 Detail view of the ejector unit, view 1

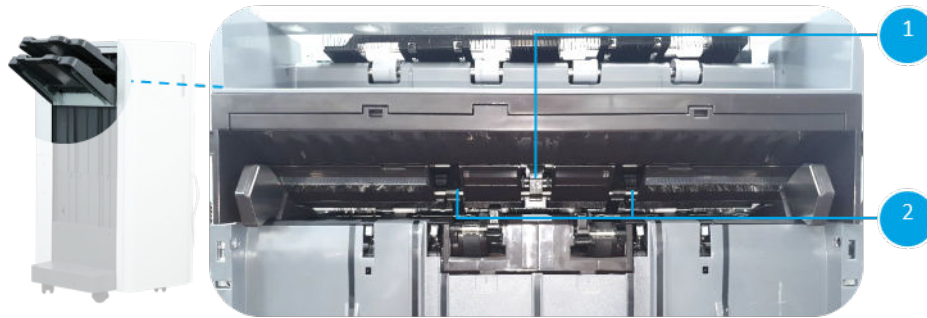


Table 3-165 Detail view of the ejector unit, view 1

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Ejector 1		Moves the stack of paper from the end fence to the ejector 2
2	Ejector 2		Moves the paper from the ejector 1 to the main output tray

Figure 3-278 Detail view of the ejector unit, view 2

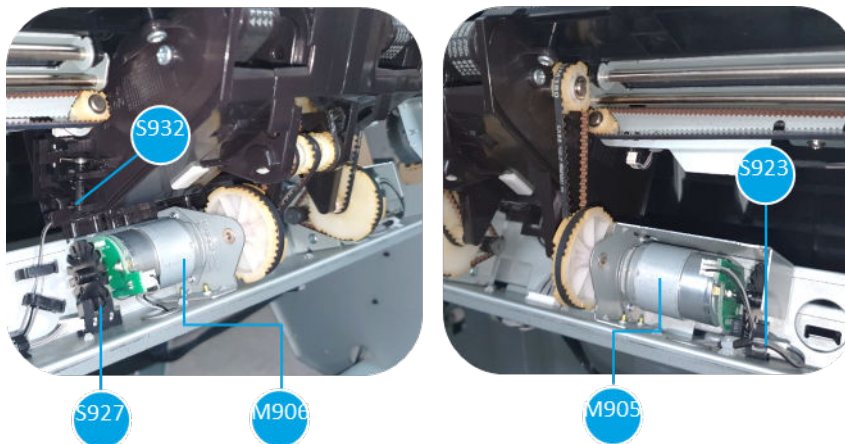


Table 3-166 Detail view of the ejector unit, view 2

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S927	Ejector 1 motor sensor	0604-001415	Detects whether the ejector1 motor rotates
M906	Ejector 1 motor	JC93-01168A	Moves the ejector 1 forward and backward

Table 3-166 Detail view of the ejector unit, view 2 (continued)

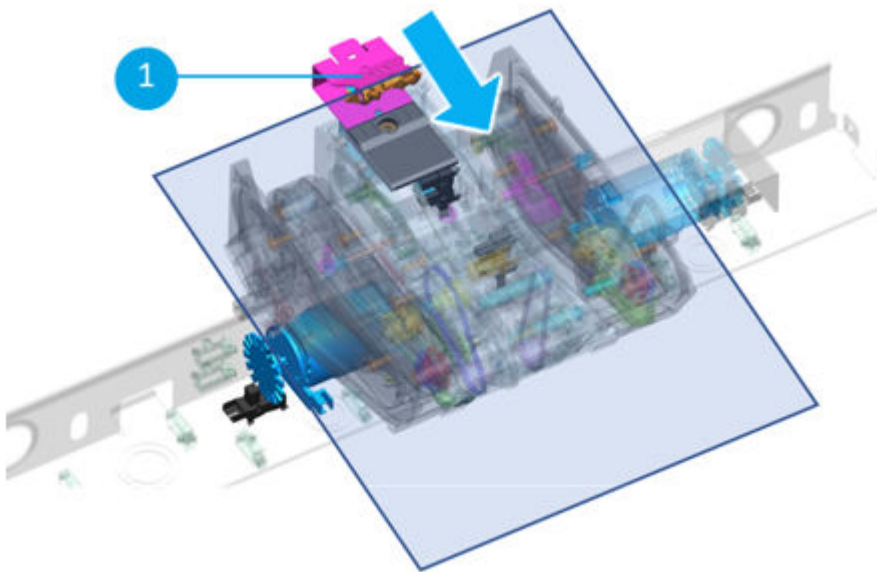
No	Part name	Part number	Description
S932	Ejector 2 home sensor	0604-001415	Detects the home position of the ejector 2
S923	Ejector 2 motor sensor	0604-001415	Detects the ejector 2 motor rotation
M905	Ejector 2 motor	JC93-01168A	Moves the ejector 2 and then grabs the paper

Ejector unit operation

Learn about the ejector unit operation.

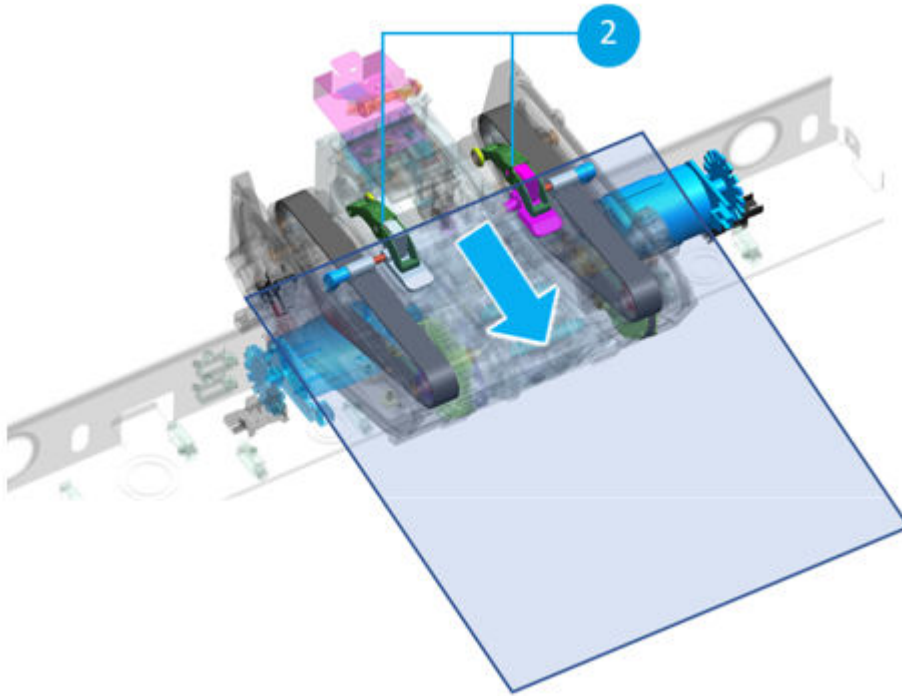
1. The ejector 1 (callout 1) pushes aligned paper at the end fence unit to ejector 2 unit.

Figure 3-279 Ejector unit operation, view 1



2. The ejector 2 (callout 2) picks up paper, then moves forward to the main output tray direction.

Figure 3-280 Ejector unit operation, view 2



Main output tray unit

You will learn more about the main output tray unit of the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet finisher.

Main output tray unit overview

Learn about the main output tray unit overview.

Printouts are stacked on the main output tray. The main output tray moves up and down along the rails inside the finisher, and the main output tray motor controls those movements according to the signals of the front & rear paper holding sensor. Main output tray motor sensor checks whether the main output tray motor rotates properly.

When main output tray hits the lower limit sensor of the main output tray, the machine detects that paper tray is full. The main output tray top of stack sensor detects that the main output tray is on the top.

Figure 3-281 Overview of the main output tray unit

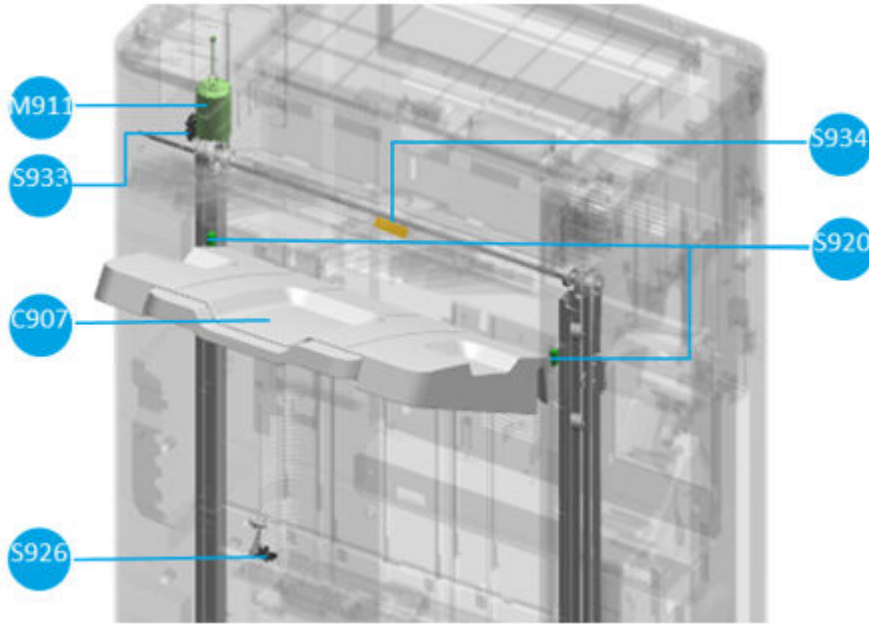


Table 3-167 Overview of the main output tray unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
C907	Main output tray	5QK09-40028	Stacking plate for ejected paper
S920	Main output tray top of stack sensor (receiver, led)	JC82-01039A	Checks the upper limit of main output tray
S926	Main output tray lower limit	0604-001415	Detects the lowest position of the output tray
S933	Main output tray motor	0604-001393	Detects whether the main output tray motor rotates
M911	Main output tray motor	JC90-01415B	Moves the main output tray up and down
S934	Main output tray top of stack switch	JC39-02316A	Checks the upper limit of main output tray so that detects abnormal movement of output tray

Figure 3-282 Detail view of the main output tray unit, view 1

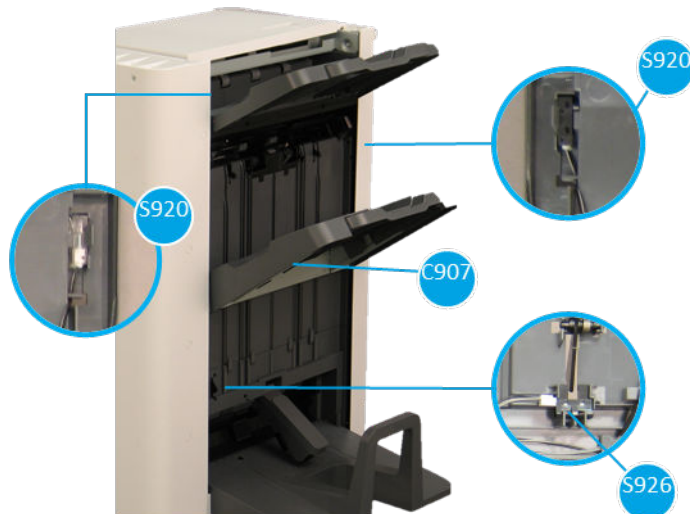


Table 3-168 Detail view of the main output tray unit, view 1

No	Part name	Part number	Description
C907	Main outputtray	5QK09-40028	Stacking plate for ejected paper
S920	Main outputtraytopof stack sensor (receiver, led)	JC82-01039A	Checks the upper limit of main output tray
S926	Main outputtraylower limit	0604-001415	Detects the lowest position of the output tray

Figure 3-283 Detail view of the main output tray unit, view 2

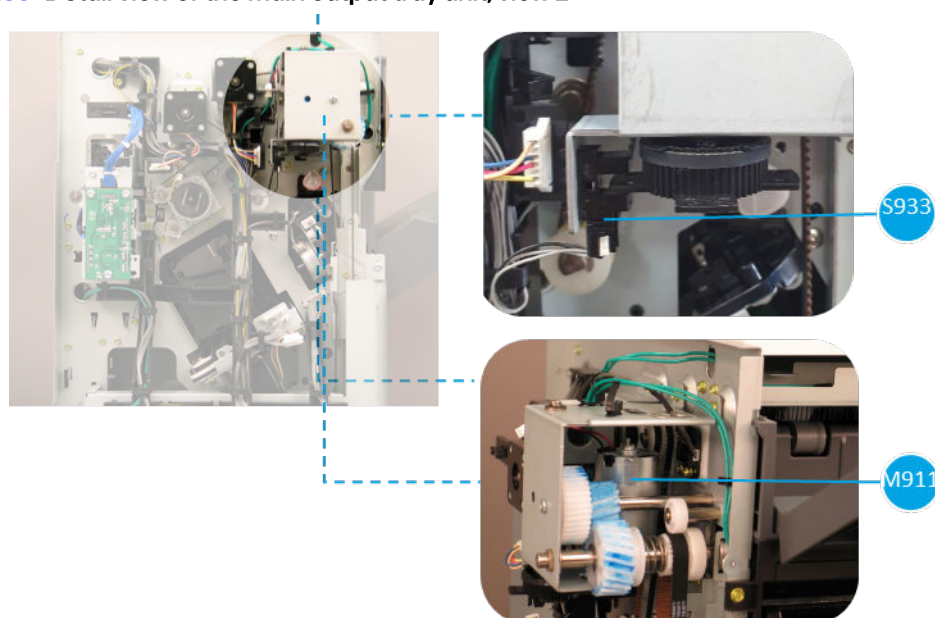


Table 3-169 Detail view of the main output tray unit, view 2

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S933	Main output tray motor	0604-001393	Detects whether the main output tray motor rotates
M911	Main output tray motor	JC90-01415B	Moves the main output tray up and down

Paper holding unit

You will learn more about the paper holding unit of the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet finisher.

Paper holding unit overview

Learn about the paper holding unit overview.

The paper holding unit holds printouts on the main output tray. It has a sensor that detects the height of stacked paper so that the output tray moves up and down to stack paper in a stable manner.

The paper holding motor lifts the paper holding actuator when printouts come out to the main output tray. The paper holding home sensor detects the location of paper holding actuator at the home position. The front and rear paper holding sensor checks the volume of printouts on the main output tray and makes the main output tray move downward.

Figure 3-284 Overview of the paper holding unit

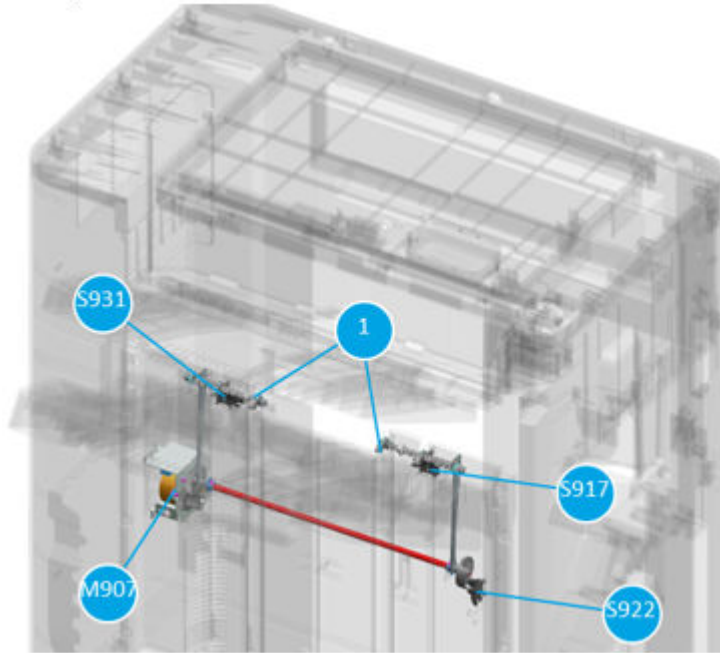


Table 3-170 Overview of the paper holding unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Paper holding actuator	-	Control the height of the main output tray and hold printouts so as not to be scattered
S917	Front paper holding sensor	0604-001393	Detects stacked paper position
S931	Rear paper holding sensor	0604-001393	Detects stacked paper position
S922	Paper holding home sensor	0604-001393	Detects the home position of paper holding actuator
M907	Paper holding motor	8GS05-60104	Lift paper holding actuator up when printouts delivered to the main output tray

Figure 3-285 Detail view of the paper holding unit, view 1

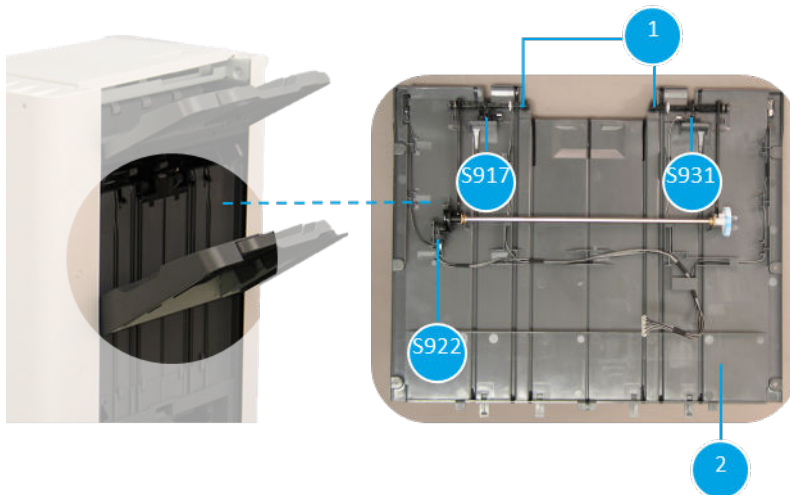


Table 3-171 Detail view of the paper holding unit, view 1

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Paper holding actuator	-	Control the height of the main output tray and hold printouts so as not to be scattered
S917	Front paper holding sensor	0604-001393	Detects stacked paper position
S931	Rear paper holding sensor	0604-001393	Detects stacked paper position
S922	Paper holding home sensor	0604-001393	Detects the home position of paper holding actuator
2	Left upper cover	5QK09-40040	-

Figure 3-286 Detail view of the paper holding unit, view 2

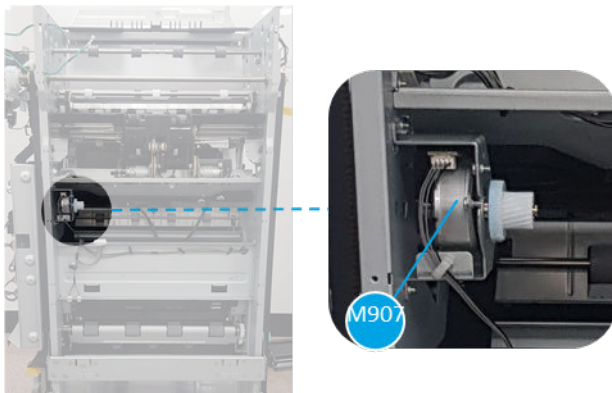


Table 3-172 Detail view of the paper holding unit, view 2

No	Part name	Part number	Description
M907	Paper holding motor	8GS05-60104	Lift paper holding actuator up when printouts delivered to the main output tray

Paper holding unit operation

Learn about the paper holding unit operation.

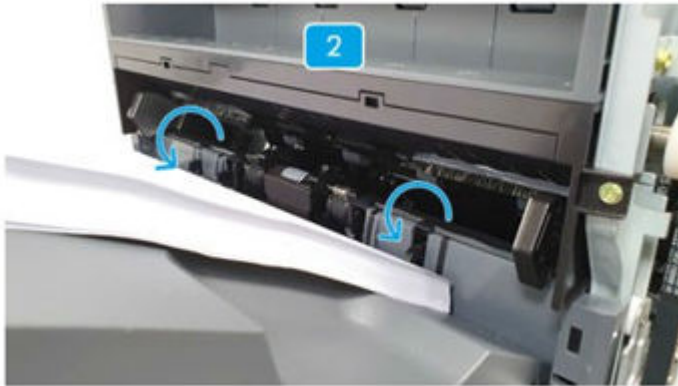
1. When printouts are delivered to the main output tray, a paper holding motor moves paper holding actuator upward to create a paper path to prevent jam (callout 1).

Figure 3-287 Paper holding unit operation, view 1



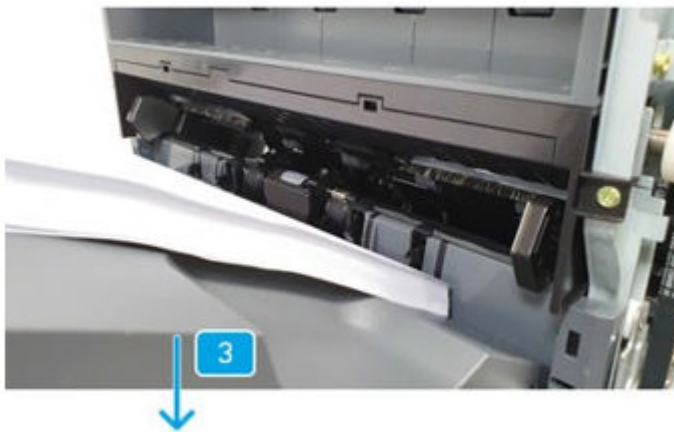
2. When printouts are stacked on top of the main output tray, the paper holding actuator goes down to hold them (callout 2).

Figure 3-288 Paper holding unit operation, view 2



3. As paper stacks up on the main output tray, the paper holding actuator is lifted by papers. The front & rear paper holding sensors make the main output tray moves downward to store more printouts (callout 3).

Figure 3-289 Paper holding unit operation, view 3



4. As printouts are stacked on the main output tray, the tray goes down. When it reaches at the end of its moving range (callout 4), the main output tray touches the lower limit sensor. The sensor detects that the main output tray is full of printouts.

Figure 3-290 Paper holding unit operation, view 4



Buffer unit

You will learn more about the buffer unit of the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet finisher.

Buffer unit overview

Learn about the buffer unit overview.

The buffer unit keeps paper inside the unit or moves them to the booklet maker. The buffer diverter creates a paper path so that paper can move to the buffer unit, and the buffer sensor detects whether paper moved out from the buffer unit. The buffer motor controls buffer roller, and buffer home sensors checks the location of buffer rollers. The buffer solenoid holds papers so that they do not fall into the booklet maker while buffering.


 **NOTE:** Buffering: It is to maintain print speed when users print multiple copies continuously. The first page of a print job stays in the buffer unit for a moment while the previous job is being ejected. After the previous print job was ejected, the first and second page of the job move to the ejector unit together.

Figure 3-291 Overview of the buffer unit

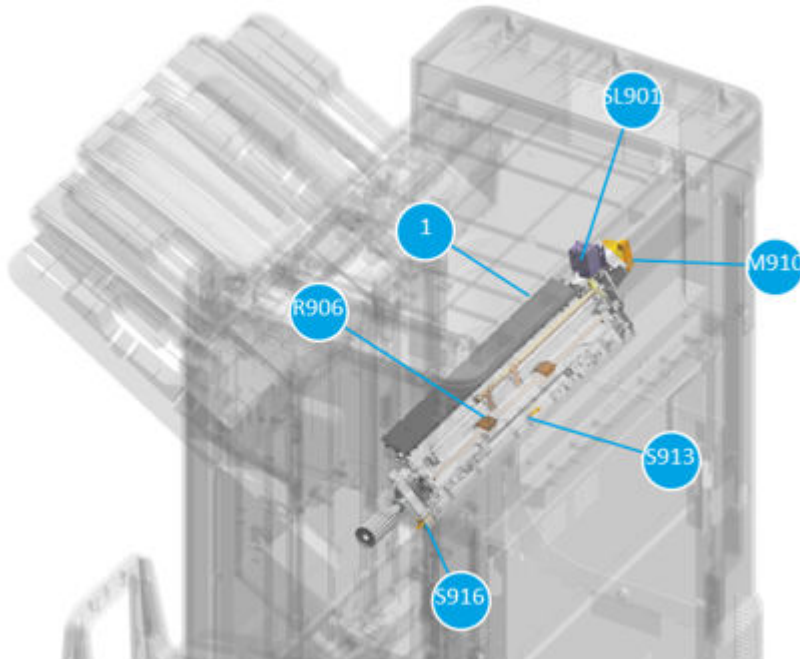


Table 3-173 Overview of the buffer unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Buffer diverter	JC61-07204A	Make the way to the buffer space
S913	Buffer sensor	JC32-00020A	Detect whether paper has moved out from the buffer unit
S916	Buffer home sensor	0604-001393	Detect the home position of the buffer roller
M910	Buffer motor	JC93-01152A	Move the paper to the buffer space or the booklet maker
SL901	Buffer solenoid	JC33-00038A	Hold the paper to prevent them from falling out to the booklet maker during buffering
R906	Buffer roller	JC66-05161A	Move the paper to the booklet maker or makes the gap so that paper stays in this space

Figure 3-292 Detail view of the buffer unit, view 1

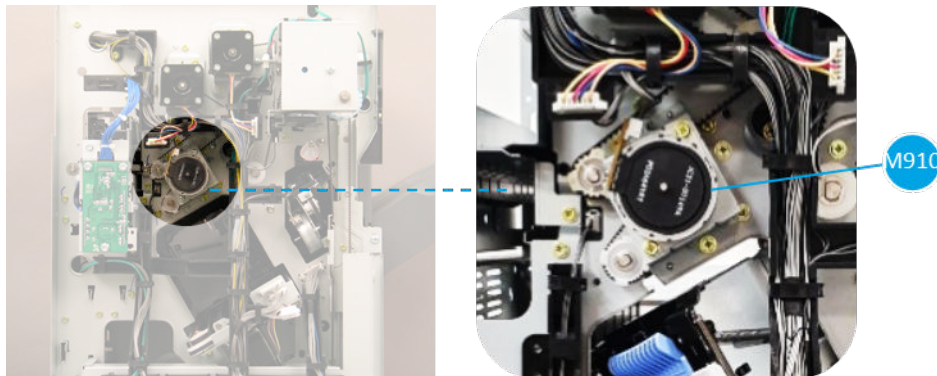


Table 3-174 Detail view of the buffer unit, view 1

No	Part name	Part number	Description
M910	Buffer motor	JC93-01152A	Move the paper to the buffer space or the booklet maker

Figure 3-293 Detail view of the buffer unit, view 2

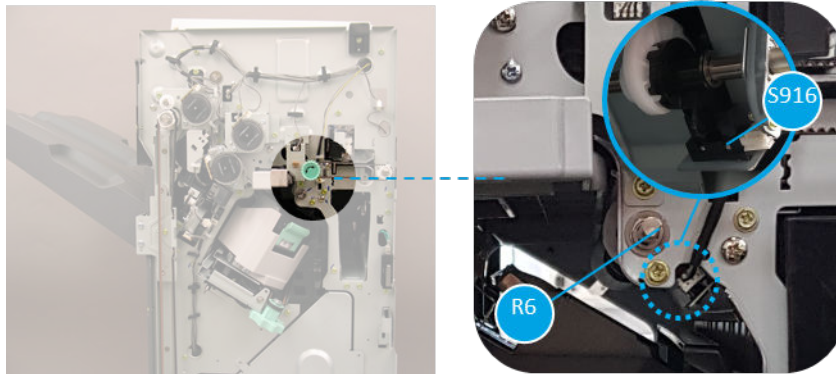


Table 3-175 Detail view of the buffer unit, view 2

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S916	Buffer home sensor	0604-001393	Detect the home position of the buffer roller
R906	Buffer roller	JC66-05161A	Move the paper to the booklet maker or makes the gap so that paper stays in this space

Figure 3-294 Detail view of the buffer unit, view 3

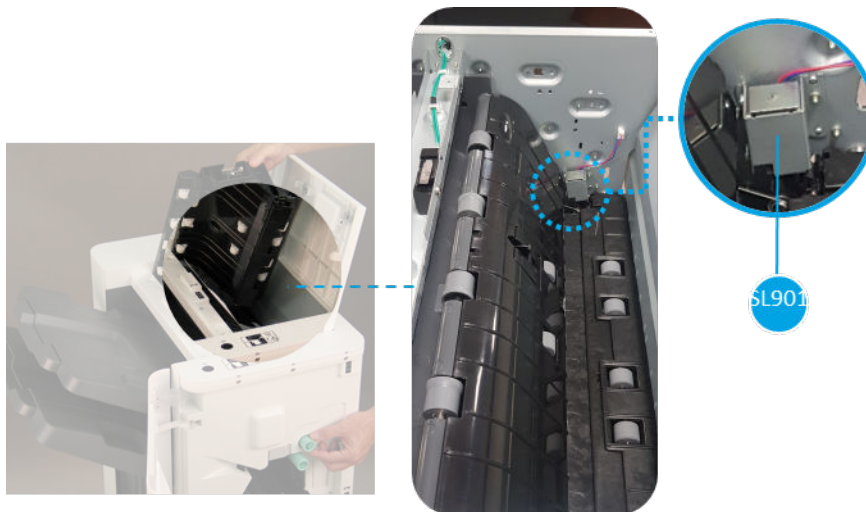


Table 3-176 Detail view of the buffer unit, view 3

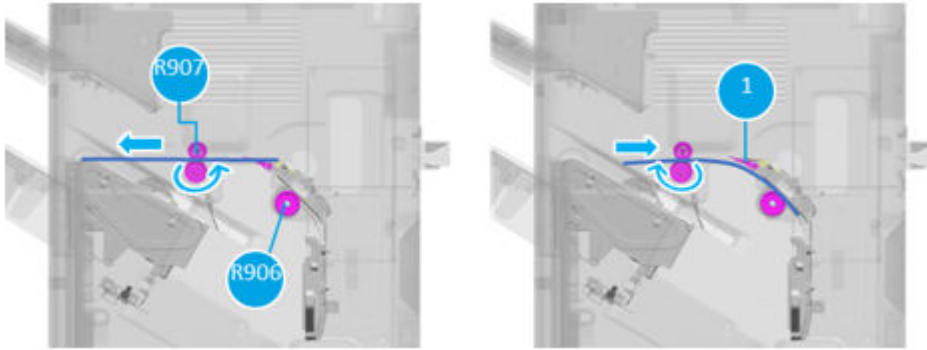
No	Part name	Part number	Description
SL901	Buffer solenoid	JC33-00038A	Hold the paper to prevent them from falling out to the booklet maker during buffering

Buffer unit operation

Learn about the buffer unit operation.

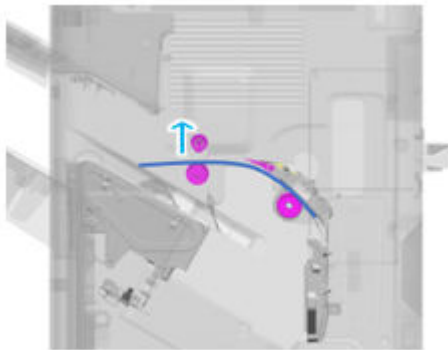
1. When the buffer motor rotates backward to move the cam, the buffer roller makes a gap so that a paper can stay inside the buffer unit.
 - a. When the exit motor rotates backward to drive the main exit roller (R907), paper moves to the buffer unit through the buffer diverter (callout 1).

Figure 3-295 Buffer unit operation, view 1



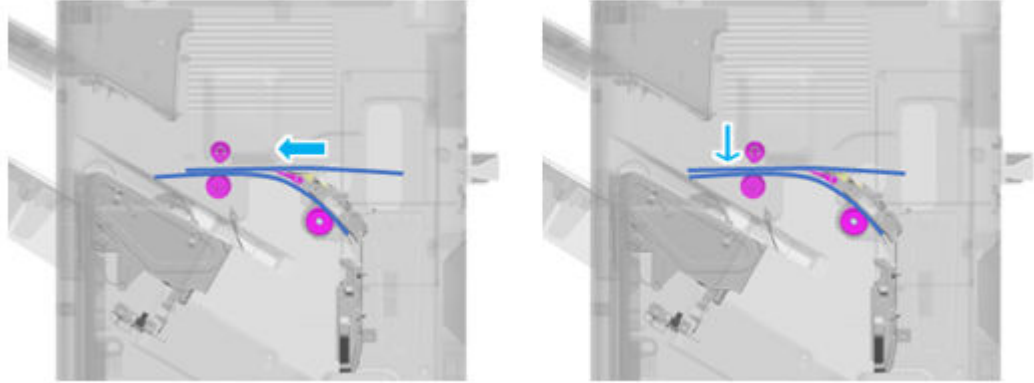
- b. The main exit cam motor moves the main exit cam so that the main exit roller (R907) is separated with the idle roller to have a gap, and then paper can stay in this place for a while.

Figure 3-296 Buffer unit operation, view 2



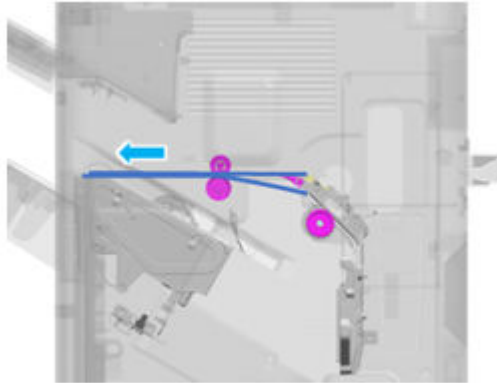
- c. When the next sheet comes to the main exit unit, the main exit motor turns the main exit cam so that the main exit roller is attached to the idle roller.

Figure 3-297 Buffer unit operation, view 3



- d. The exit motor rotates forward and operates the main exit roller. It makes two paper moves to the ejector together.

Figure 3-298 Buffer unit operation, view 4



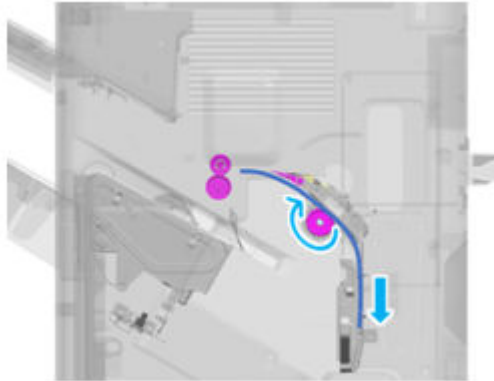
- 2. In case of booklet making job, the buffer unit moves paper to the booklet maker.
 - a. The buffer motor rotates, the buffer roller (R906) is attached to the idle roller.
 - b. When paper arrives at the main exit unit, the exit motor rotates backward and moves the main exit roller (R907) so that paper moves to the buffer unit through the buffer diverter.

Figure 3-299 Buffer unit operation, view 5



- c. The buffer motor rotates the buffer roller to move paper to the booklet maker.

Figure 3-300 Buffer unit operation, view 6



Booklet maker

You will learn more about the booklet maker.

Booklet entrance unit

You will learn more about the booklet entrance unit of the booklet maker.

Booklet entrance unit overview

Learn about the booklet entrance unit overview.

The booklet entrance unit receives paper into the booklet maker. The entrance sensor detects whether a paper enters the entrance unit. The entrance motor drives the booklet entrance roller to move the paper.

Figure 3-301 Overview of the booklet entrance unit

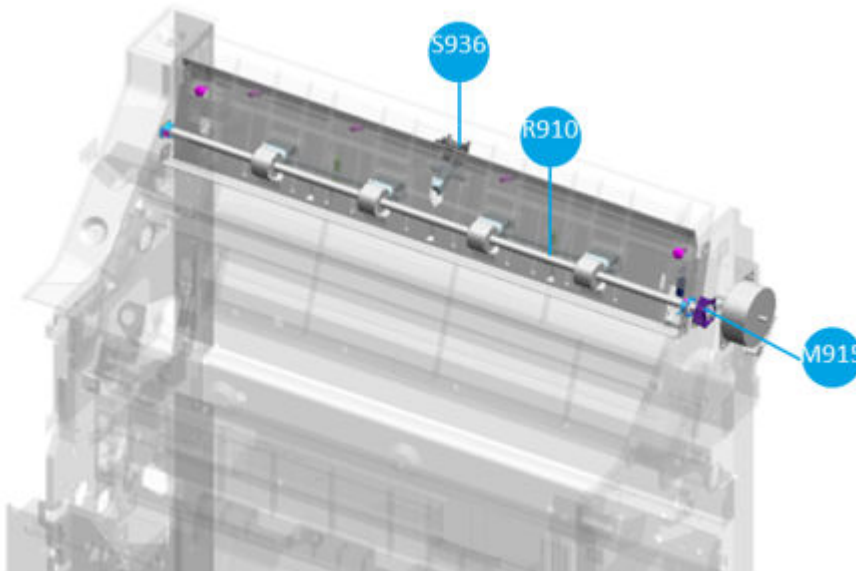


Table 3-177 Overview of the booklet entrance unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S936	Booklet entrance sensor	0604-001415	Detects whether paper has come into the booklet entrance unit
M915	Booklet entrance motor	JC93-01152A	Drives the booklet entrance roller

Table 3-177 Overview of the booklet entrance unit (continued)

No	Part name	Part number	Description
R910	Booklet entrance roller	JC66-04717A	Moves paper into the booklet maker

Figure 3-302 Detail view of the booklet entrance unit

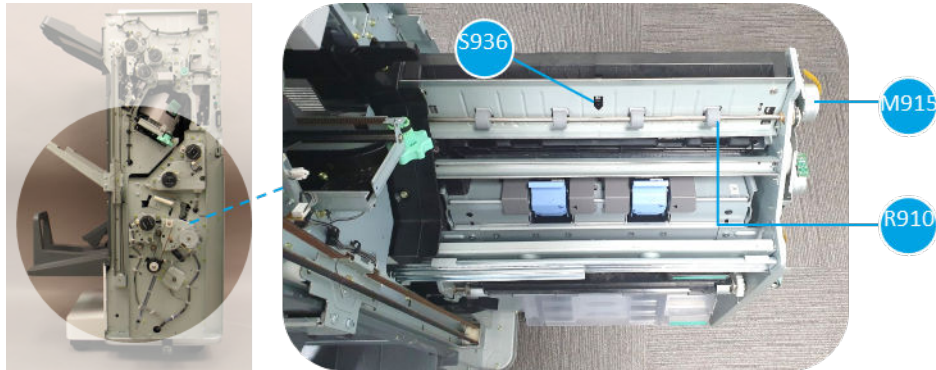


Table 3-178 Detail view of the booklet entrance unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S936	Booklet entrance sensor	0604-001415	Detects whether paper has come into the booklet entrance unit
M915	Booklet entrance motor	JC93-01152A	Drives the booklet entrance roller
R910	Booklet entrance roller	JC66-04717A	Moves paper into the booklet maker

Figure 3-303 Detail view of the entrance unit, view 2

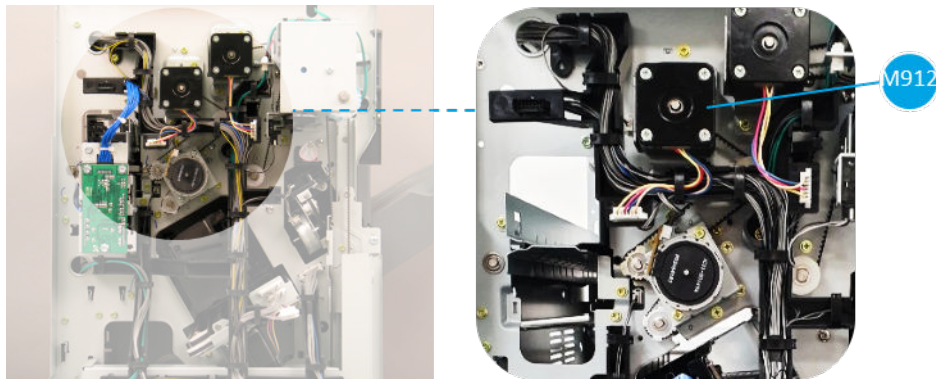


Table 3-179 Detail view of the entrance unit, view 2

No	Part name	Part number	Description
M12	Entrance motor	3SJ19-80501	Operates the entrance roller and middle roller when driving forward

Figure 3-304 Detail view of the entrance unit, view 3

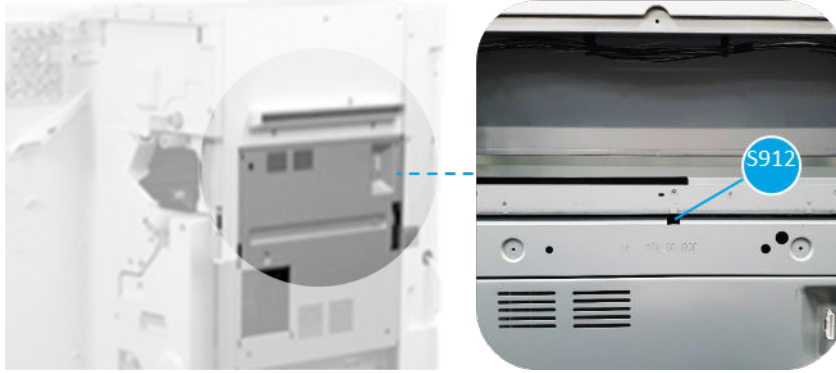


Table 3-180 Detail view of the entrance unit, view 3

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S12	Entrance sensor	JC32-00020A	Detects whether paper enters at the entrance unit

Booklet paddle unit

You will learn more about the booklet paddle unit of the booklet maker.

Booklet paddle unit overview

Learn about the booklet paddle unit overview.

The booklet paddle unit pushes paper to the booklet end fence by rotating the rubber paddles. The booklet paddle motor rotates two booklet paddles, and the booklet paddle home sensor connected to the lower booklet paddle checks the home position of the booklet paddle.

Figure 3-305 Overview of the booklet paddle unit

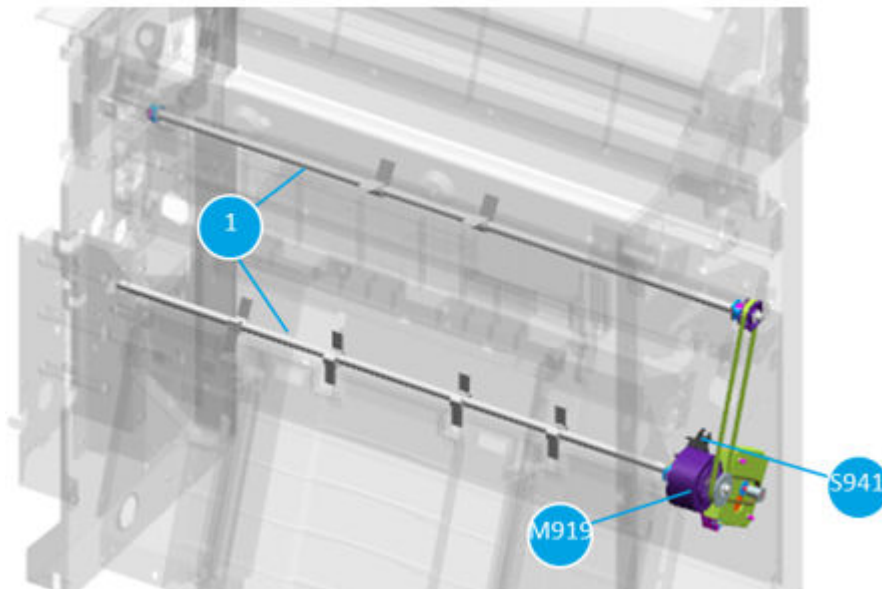


Table 3-181 Overview of the booklet paddle unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Upper booklet paddle	JC66-04718A	Moves paper to the booklet end fence unit

Table 3-181 Overview of the booklet paddle unit (continued)

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Lower booklet paddle	JC90-01429A, JC61-07225A, JC66-04719A	Moves paper to the booklet end fence unit
S941	Booklet paddle home sensor	0604-001393	Check the home position of the booklet paddle
M919	Booklet paddle motor	JC93-01001A	Drives two booklet paddles

Figure 3-306 Detail view of the booklet paddle unit

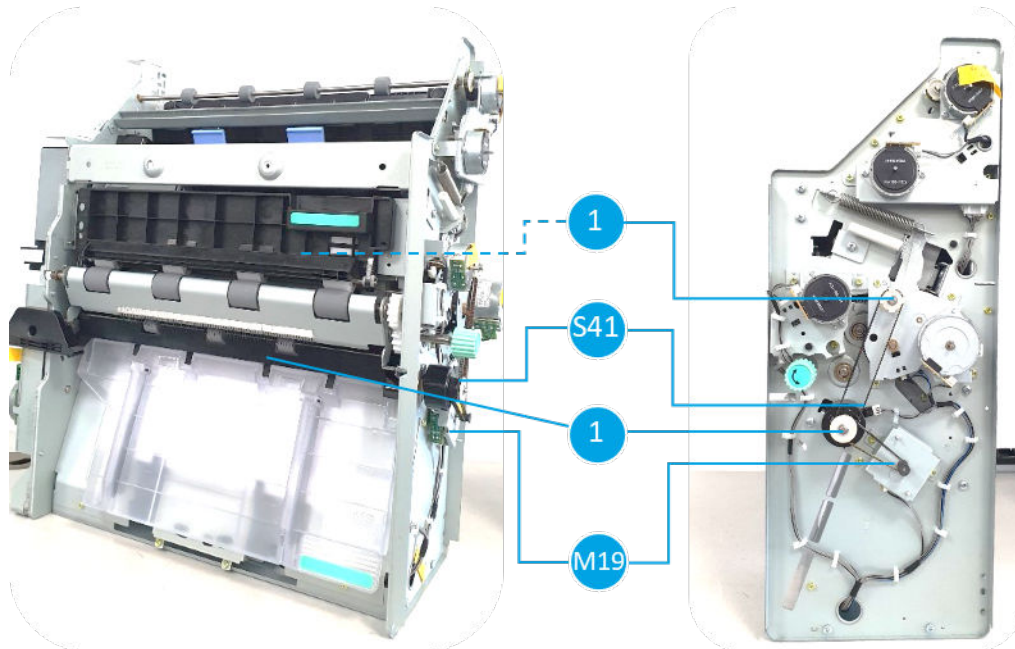


Table 3-182 Detail view of the booklet paddle unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Upper booklet paddle	JC66-04718A	Moves paper to the booklet end fence unit
1	Lower booklet paddle	JC90-01429A, JC61-07225A, JC66-04719A	Moves paper to the booklet end fence unit
S941	Booklet paddle home sensor	0604-001393	Check the home position of the booklet paddle
M919	Booklet paddle motor	JC93-01001A	Drives two booklet paddles

Booklet end fence unit

You will learn more about the booklet end fence unit of the booklet maker.

Booklet end fence unit overview

Learn about the booklet end fence unit overview.

The booklet end fence unit supports paper that enters from the booklet paddle unit, then moves paper to the designated position for folding and stapling. The booklet end fence motor moves the booklet end

fence up and down. The booklet end fence home sensor checks the home position of the booklet end fence. The booklet end fence solenoid drives the clamp to hold paper that comes into the booklet end fence.

Figure 3-307 Overview of the booklet end fence unit

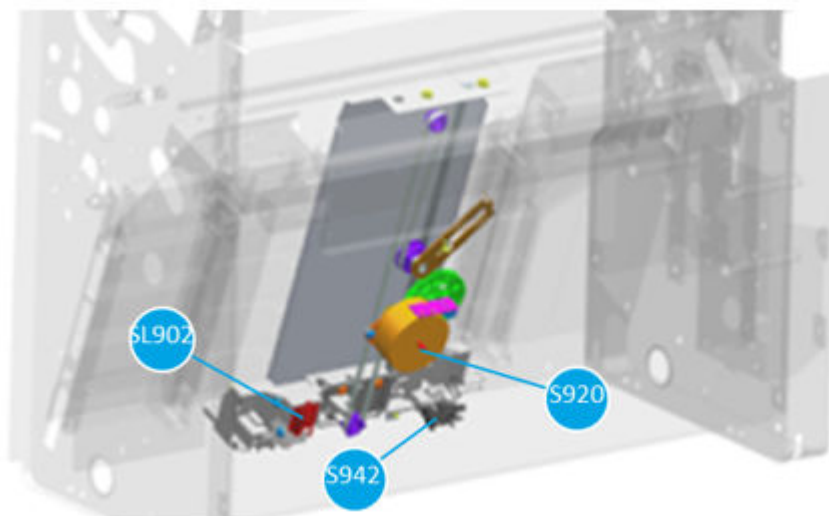


Table 3-183 Overview of the booklet end fence unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Booklet end fence	JC90-01432A	Supports paper, then moves it to the designated location to fold or staple
S942	Booklet end fence home sensor	0604-001393	Checks the home position of the booklet end
M920	Booklet end fence motor	JC93-01155A	Moves the booklet end fence up and down
SL902	Booklet end fence solenoid	JC33-00038A	Drives the clamp to hold paper that comes into the booklet end fence

Figure 3-308 Detail view of the booklet end fence unit

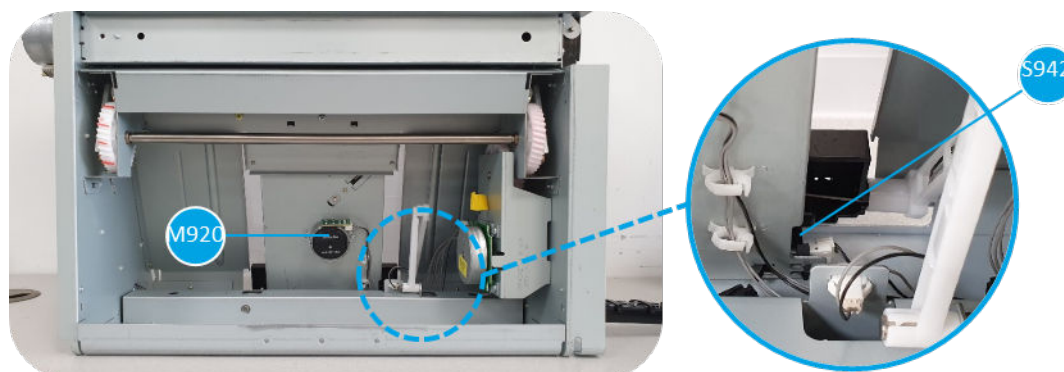


Table 3-184 Detail view of the booklet end fence unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S942	Booklet end fence home sensor	0604-001393	Checks the home position of the booklet end

Table 3-184 Detail view of the booklet end fence unit (continued)

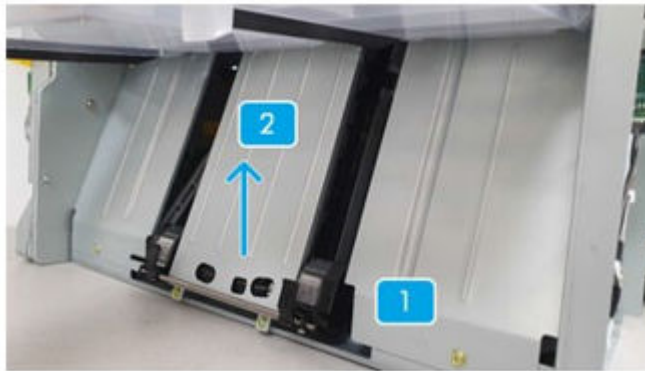
No	Part name	Part number	Description
M920	Booklet end fence motor	JC93-01155A	Moves the booklet end fence up and down

Booklet end fence unit operation

Learn about the booklet end fence unit operation.

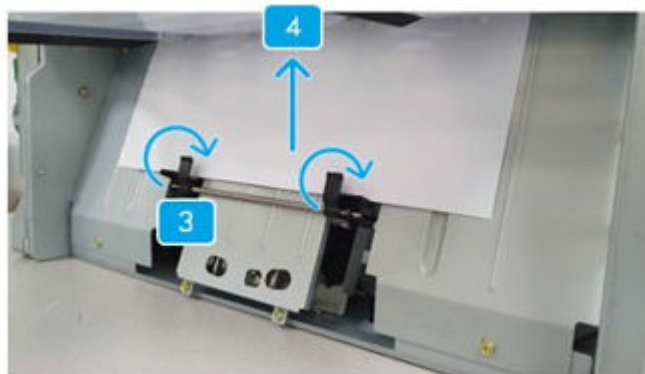
1. The booklet end fence is located at the home position (callout1). When the booklet maker starts its job, the end fence goes to the direction 2.

Figure 3-309 Booklet end fence unit operation, view 1



2. The booklet end fence unit supports paper comes from the booklet paddle unit and holds paper so as not to be scattered (callout3). Then it moves to the certain location to fold or staple it (callout 4).

Figure 3-310 Booklet end fence unit operation, view 2



Booklet presser unit

You will learn more about the booklet presser unit of the booklet maker.

Booklet presser unit overview

Learn about the booklet presser unit overview.

The booklet presser unit sort print pages that enter to the booklet maker in order. The Booklet presser motor moves the booklet presser, and the booklet presser home sensor checks whether the booklet presser is at the home position.

Figure 3-311 Overview of the booklet presser unit

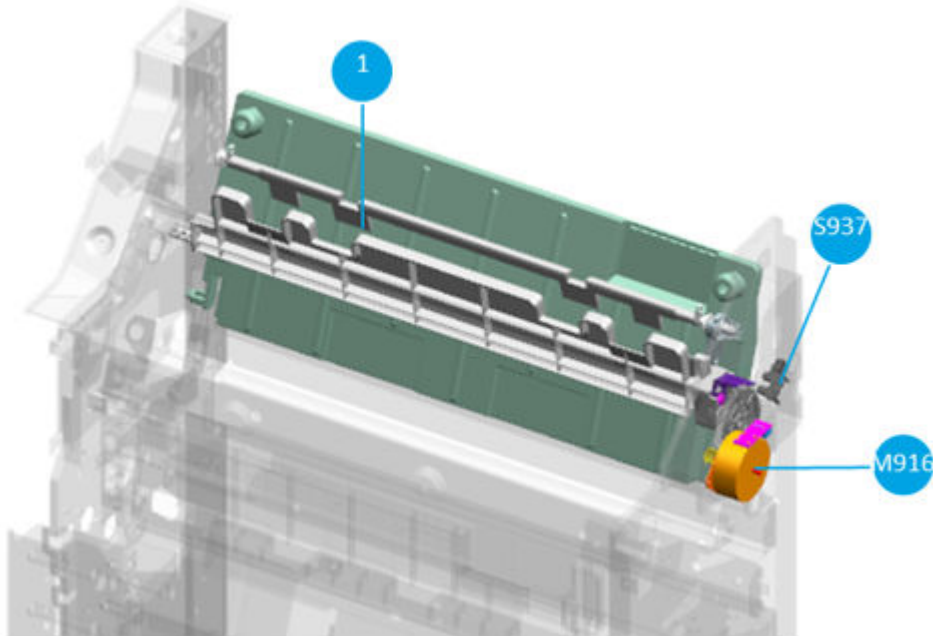


Table 3-185 Overview of the booklet presser unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Booklet presser	JC61-07237A	Accumulates paper from the entrance unit not to be shuffled
S937	Booklet presser home sensor	0604-001393	Checks the home position of the booklet presser
M916	Booklet presser motor	JC93-01155A	Drives the booklet presser

Figure 3-312 Detail view of the booklet presser unit

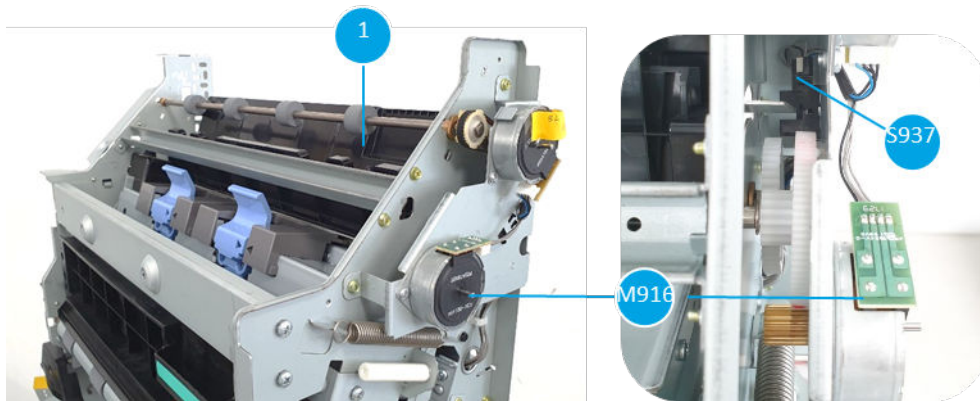


Table 3-186 Detail view of the booklet presser unit

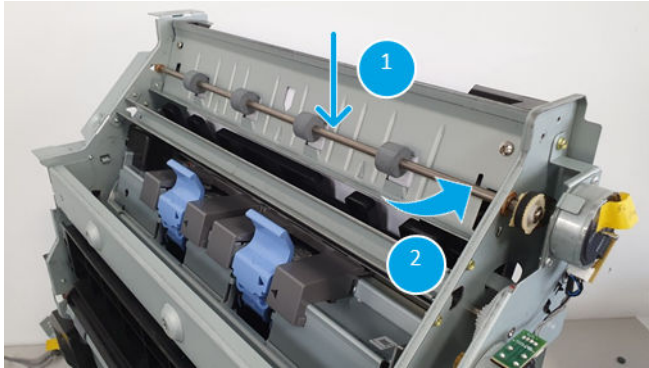
No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Booklet presser	JC61-07237A	Accumulates paper from the entrance unit not to be shuffled
S937	Booklet presser home sensor	0604-001393	Checks the home position of the booklet presser
M916	Booklet presser motor	JC93-01155A	Drives the booklet presser

Booklet presser unit operation

Learn about the booklet presser unit operation.

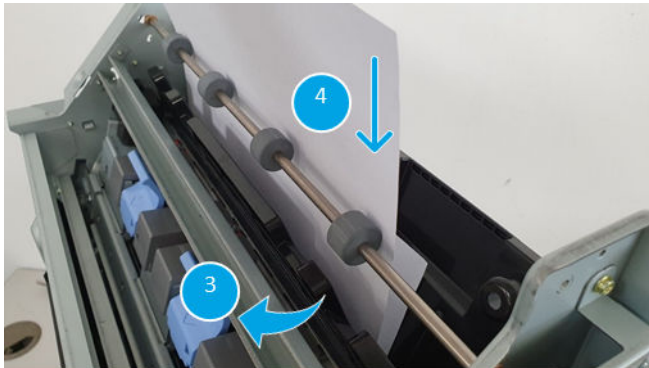
1. Paper comes into the booklet presser unit (callout 1). When the training edge of the paper exits the booklet entrance unit, the presser hits the paper to be bent to the direction of the arrow (callout 2).

Figure 3-313 Booklet presser unit operation, view 1



2. When a next sheet arrives, the presser turns back to the original position (callout 3) so that the paper falls on the left side of the previous sheet pushed by the booklet presser (callout 4).

Figure 3-314 Booklet presser unit operation, view 2



Booklet tamper unit

You will learn more about the booklet tamper unit of the booklet maker.

Booklet tamper unit overview

Learn about the booklet tamper unit overview.

The booklet tamper unit aligns the left and right side of documents for stapling or folding.

The booklet tamper motor adjusts the booklet tampers' width according to paper size. The booklet tamper home sensor checks the home position of the booklet tamper.

Figure 3-315 Overview of the booklet tamper unit

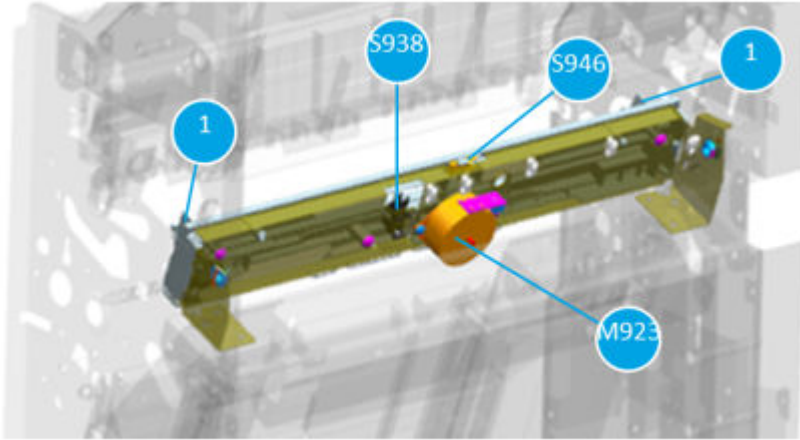


Table 3-187 Overview of the booklet tamper unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Booklet tamper	JC90-01431A	Aligns documents for stapling or folding
S938	Booklet tamper home sensor	0604-001393	Checks the home position of the booklet
M923	Booklet tamper motor	JC93-01155A	Drives the booklet tamper
S946	Booklet tamper sensor	JC32-00020A	-

Figure 3-316 Detail view of the booklet tamper unit, view 1

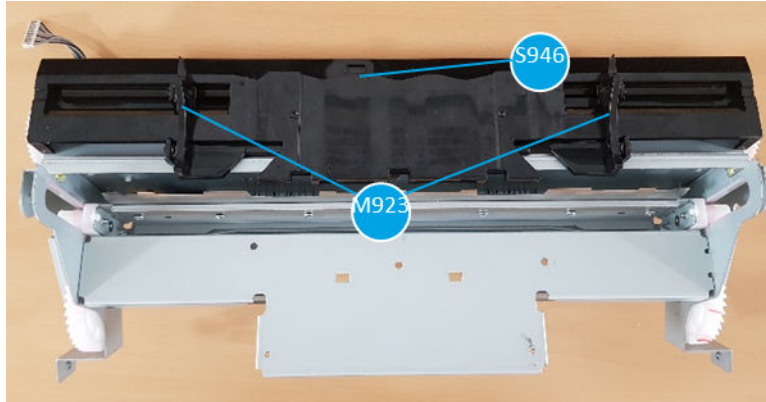


Table 3-188 Detail view of the booklet tamper unit, view 1

No	Part name	Part number	Description
M923	Booklet tamper motor	JC93-01155A	Drives the booklet tamper
S946	Booklet tamper sensor	JC32-00020A	-

Figure 3-317 Detail view of the booklet tamper unit, view 2

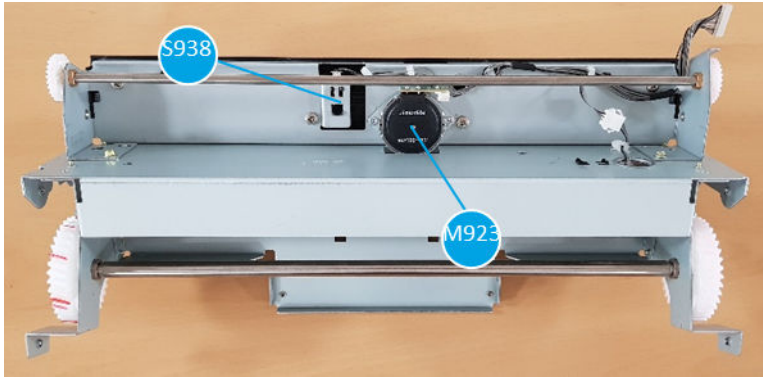


Table 3-189 Detail view of the booklet tamper unit, view 2

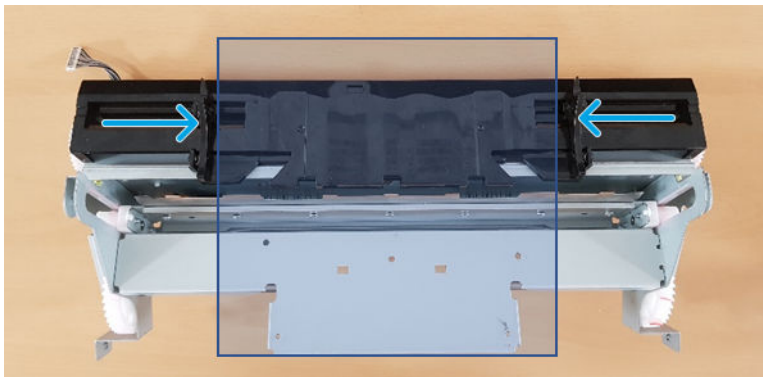
No	Part name	Part number	Description
S938	Booklet tamper home sensor	0604-001393	Checks the home position of the booklet
M923	Booklet tamper motor	JC93-01155A	Drives the booklet tamper

Booklet tamper unit operation

Learn about the booklet tamper unit operation.

When a certain amount of paper is collected, the booklet tamper unit hits the left and right sides of the paper so that it is aligned correctly for the next process such as stapling or folding.

Figure 3-318 Booklet tamper unit operation



Booklet stapler unit

You will learn more about the booklet stapler unit of the booklet maker.

Booklet stapler unit overview

Learn about the booklet stapler unit overview.

Booklet stapler unit is a device installed inside the booklet maker that staples a bundle of aligned documents as a booklet.

There is only one option to make a bundle. If the user selects the option, this unit staples at the two location in the middle of stacks.

Figure 3-319 Overview of the booklet stapler unit

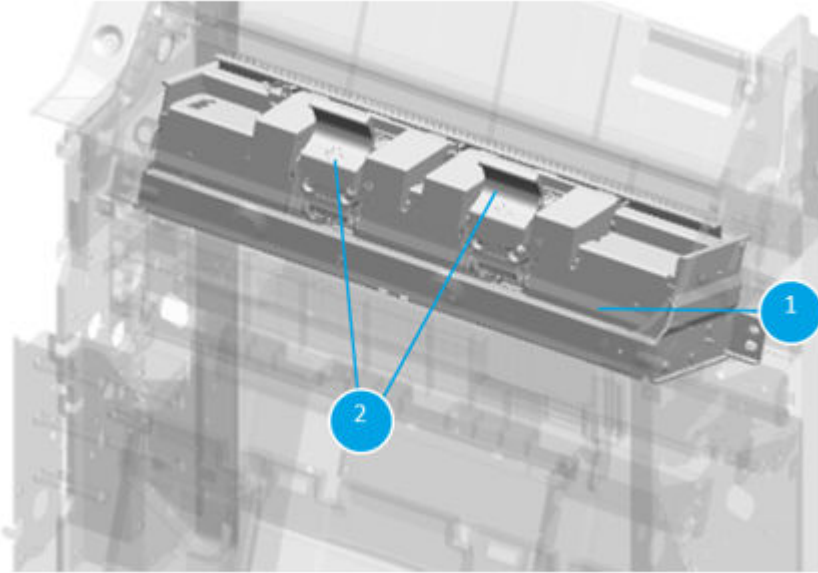


Table 3-190 Overview of the booklet stapler unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Booklet stapler	6GW41-40001	
2	Booklet stapler cartridge	JC81-09881A	

Figure 3-320 Detail view of the booklet stapler unit

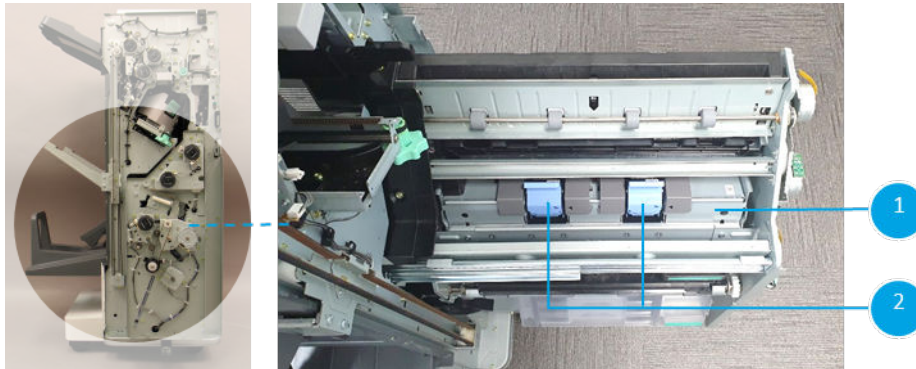


Table 3-191 Detail view of the booklet stapler unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Booklet stapler	6GW41-40001	
2	Booklet stapler cartridge	JC81-09881A	


Staple and staple cartridge

Learn about the staple and staple cartridge.

1. Staple cartridge: JC81-09881B. Initial staples included.

Figure 3-321 Staple cartridge for the booklet stapler unit



 **NOTE:** Staple handle color may vary (blue or green color).

2. Staple: Y1G13-67901. 3 EA in 1 box.

Figure 3-322 Staple for the booklet stapler unit

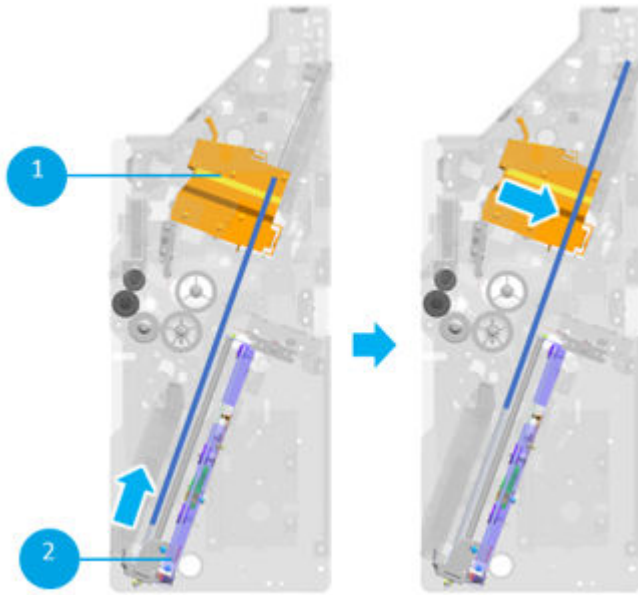


Booklet stapler unit operation

Learn about the booklet stapler unit operation.

1. When a stack of sheets is collected in booklet end fence unit, the booklet end fence (callout 2) changes its location to be stapled.
2. The booklet stapler (callout 1) staples at the middle of stacks.

Figure 3-323 Booklet stapler unit operation



Booklet fold unit

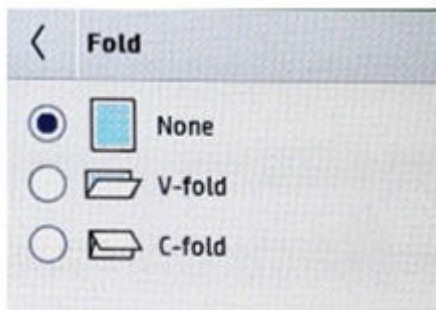
You will learn more about the booklet fold unit of the booklet maker.

Booklet fold unit overview

Learn about the booklet fold unit overview.

The booklet fold unit is a device installed inside the booklet maker that folds a bundle of aligned documents as a. This unit consists of two types of blades: blade and c-fold blade. It creates two types of output.

Figure 3-324 Fold options



The booklet blade motor drives the booklet blades and lightly folds the stack of paper. The folded paper passes through the booklet fold rollers to be fully folded. The booklet blade home sensor checks the home position of the booklet blade, and the booklet fold motor drives the rollers that enable folding

In case of c-fold, the booklet c-fold blade motor drives the booklet c-fold blade and lightly folds the stack of paper once more. The folded paper passes through the booklet c-fold roller to be fully folded. The booklet c-fold blade home sensor checks the home position of the c-fold blade.

Figure 3-325 Overview of the booklet fold unit, view 1

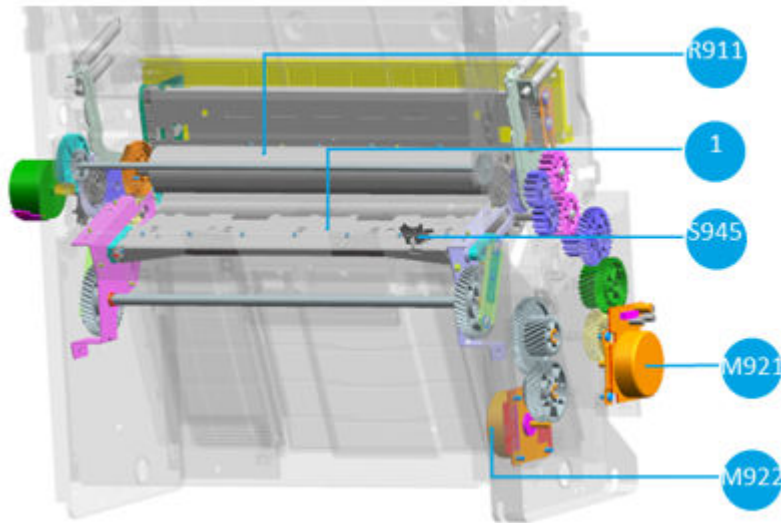


Table 3-192 Overview of the booklet fold unit, view 1

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Booklet blade	JC93-01163A	Pushes a stack of paper to fold
S945	Booklet blade home sensor	0604-001393	Checks the home position of the booklet blade
M922	Booklet blade motor	JC31-00144A	Drives the booklet blade
M921	Booklet fold motor	JC31-00144A	Drives the booklet roller and c-fold blade
R911	Booklet fold roller	JC66-04748A	Presses a stack of paper to be fully folded

Figure 3-326 Overview of the booklet fold unit, view 2

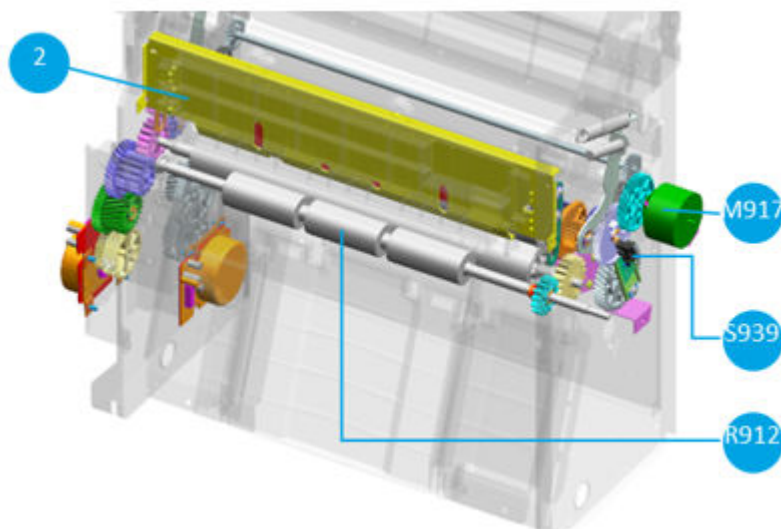


Table 3-193 Overview of the booklet fold unit, view 2

No	Part name	Part number	Description
2	Booklet c-fold blade	JC61-07366A	Pushes a stack of paper to fold for the c-fold task

Table 3-193 Overview of the booklet fold unit, view 2 (continued)

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S939	Booklet c-fold blade home sensor	0604-001393	Checks the home position of the booklet c-fold blade
M917	Booklet c-fold blade motor	JC93-01154A	Drives the booklet c-fold blade
R912	Booklet c-fold roller	JC66-04744A	In case of c-fold, presses a stack of paper to fold completely

Figure 3-327 Detail view of the booklet fold unit, view 1

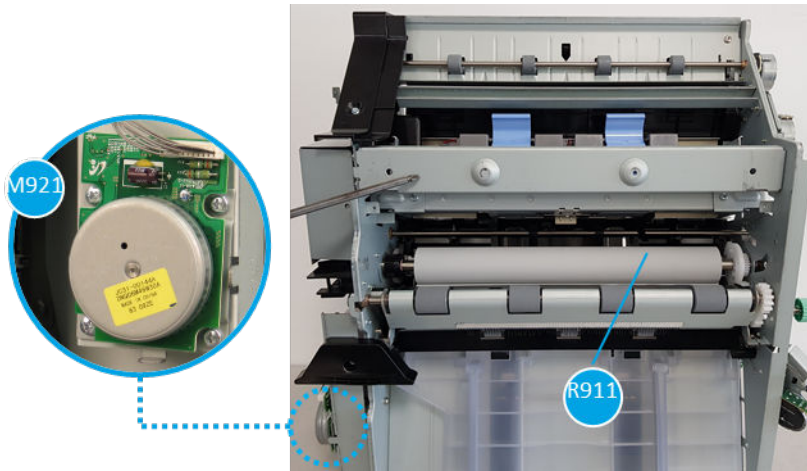


Table 3-194 Detail view of the booklet fold unit, view 1

No	Part name	Part number	Description
M921	Booklet fold motor	JC31-00144A	Drives the booklet roller and c-fold blade
R911	Booklet fold roller	JC66-04748A	Presses a stack of paper to be fully folded

Figure 3-328 Detail view of the booklet fold unit, view 2

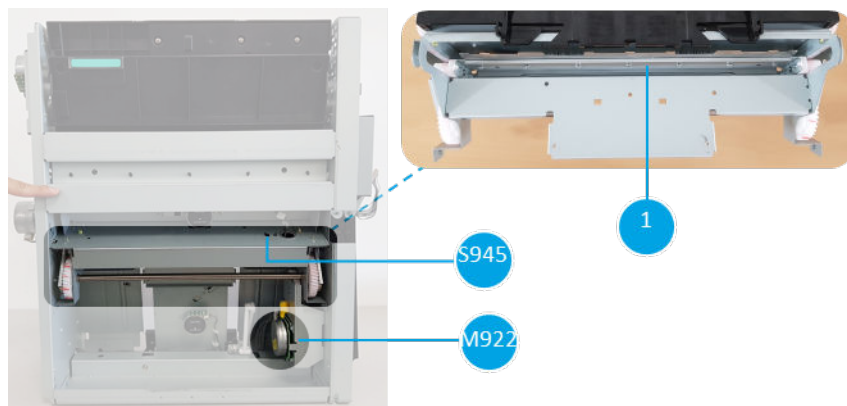


Table 3-195 Detail view of the booklet fold unit, view 2

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Booklet blade	JC93-01163A	Pushes a stack of paper to fold
S945	Booklet blade home sensor	0604-001393	Checks the home position of the booklet blade

Table 3-195 Detail view of the booklet fold unit, view 2 (continued)

No	Part name	Part number	Description
M922	Booklet blade motor	JC31-00144A	Drives the booklet blade

Figure 3-329 Detail view of the booklet fold unit, view 3

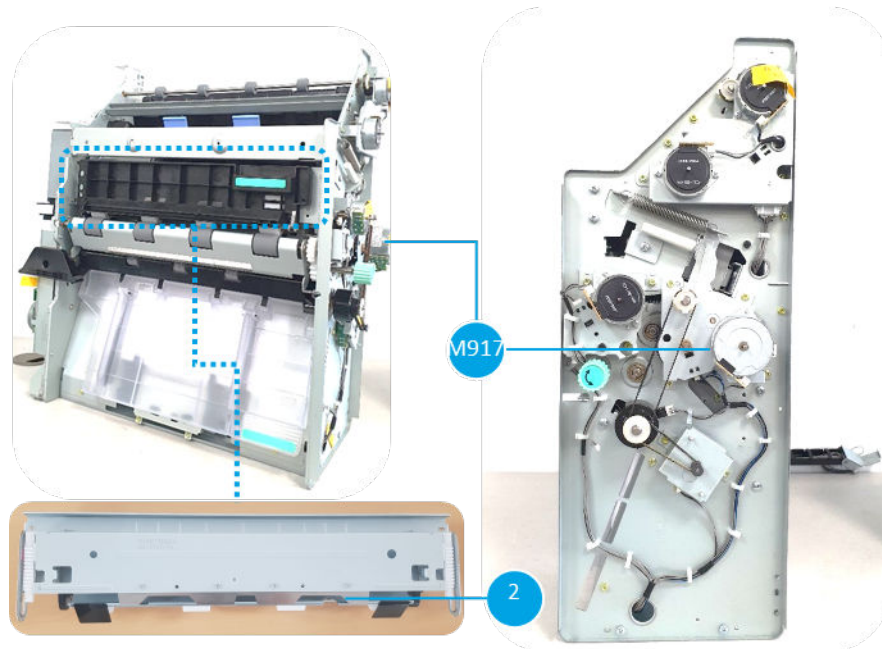


Table 3-196 Detail view of the booklet fold unit, view 3

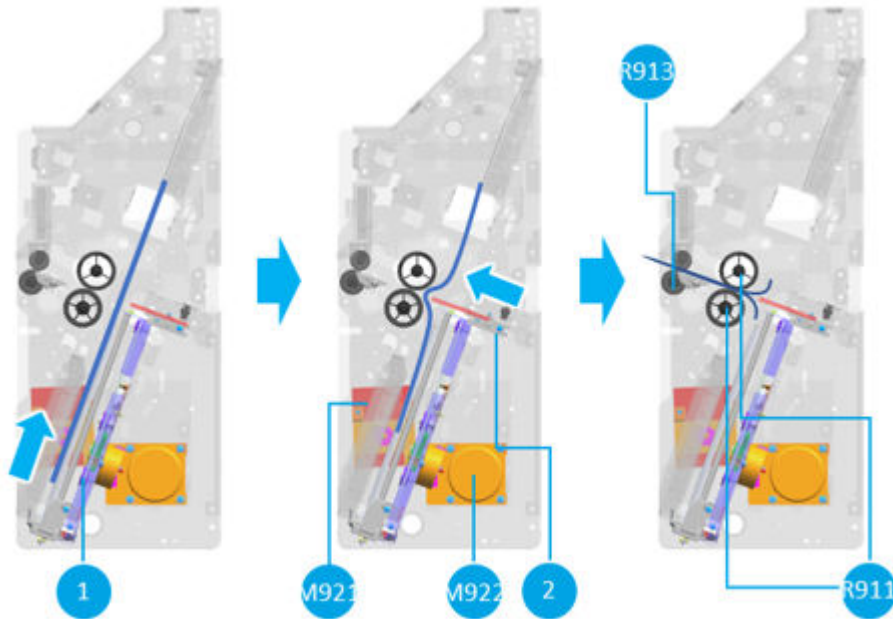
No	Part name	Part number	Description
2	Booklet c-fold blade	JC61-07366A	Pushes a stack of paper to fold for the c-fold task
M917	Booklet c-fold blade motor	JC93-01154A	Drives the booklet c-fold blade

Booklet fold unit operation

Learn about the booklet fold unit operation.

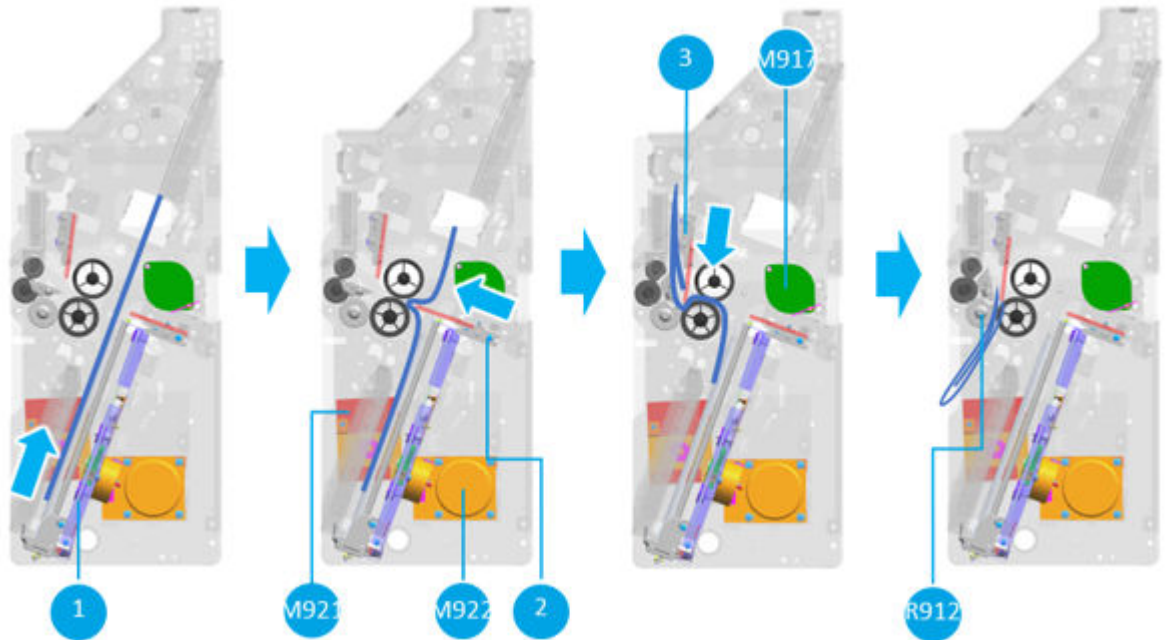
1. In case of v-fold.

Figure 3-330 Booklet fold unit operation, v-fold



- a. After a stack of paper is collected at a booklet end fence unit, the booklet end fence (callout 1) moves to a designated location.
 - b. The booklet blade motor (M922) drives the booklet blade (callout 2) to push the center of paper.
 - c. Paper enters between the booklet fold rollers (R911) by the booklet blade and it is completely folded between the rollers.
 - d. The folded paper stack is discharged to the booklet output tray via the booklet exit roller (R913).
2. In case of c-fold.

Figure 3-331 Booklet fold unit operation, c-fold



- a. After a stack of paper is collected at a booklet end fence unit, the booklet end fence (callout 1) is moved to a designated location.
- b. The booklet blade motor (M22) drives the booklet blade (callout 2) to push one-third of paper.
- c. The paper enters between the booklet fold rollers (R11) by the booklet blade and it is completely folded between the rollers.
- d. The folded sheets move to a location where they will be c-folded by a booklet diverter.
- e. The booklet c-fold blade motor (M17) drives the booklet c-fold blade (callout 3), pokes two-thirds of paper.
- f. Paper enters between the booklet c-fold roller (R12) and the booklet fold roller by the booklet c-fold blade and it is completely folded between the rollers.

Booklet diverter unit

You will learn more about the booklet diverter unit of the booklet maker.

Booklet diverter unit overview

Learn about the booklet diverter unit overview.

The booklet diverter unit determines a paper path to allow the stack of folded paper to exit to the booklet output tray during the v-fold. In case of c-fold, it makes another paper path so the folded sheets can move to a location that can be c-folded. The booklet diverter motor drives the booklet diverter, and the booklet diverter home sensor (S940) checks whether the booklet diverter is at the home position.

Figure 3-332 Overview of the booklet diverter unit, view 1

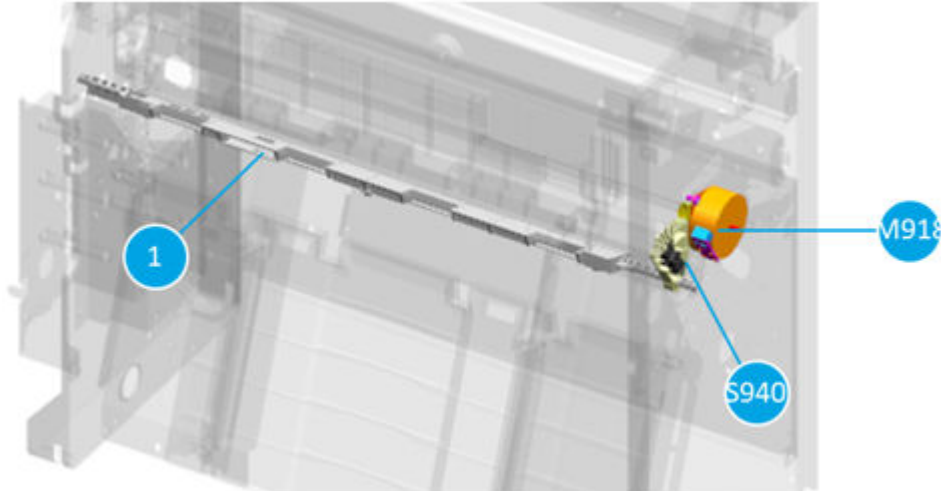


Table 3-197 Overview of the booklet diverter unit, view 1

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Booklet diverter	JC90-01398A	Determines the paper path for either the booklet exit unit or the location for c-fold
S940	Booklet diverter home sensor	0604-001415	Checks the home position of the booklet diverter
M918	Booklet diverter motor	JC93-01153A	Drives the booklet diverter

Figure 3-333 Overview of the booklet diverter unit, view 2

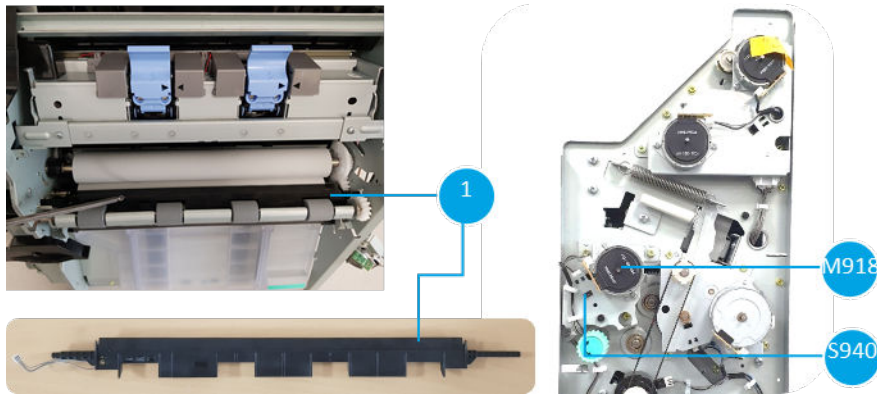


Table 3-198 Overview of the booklet diverter unit, view 2

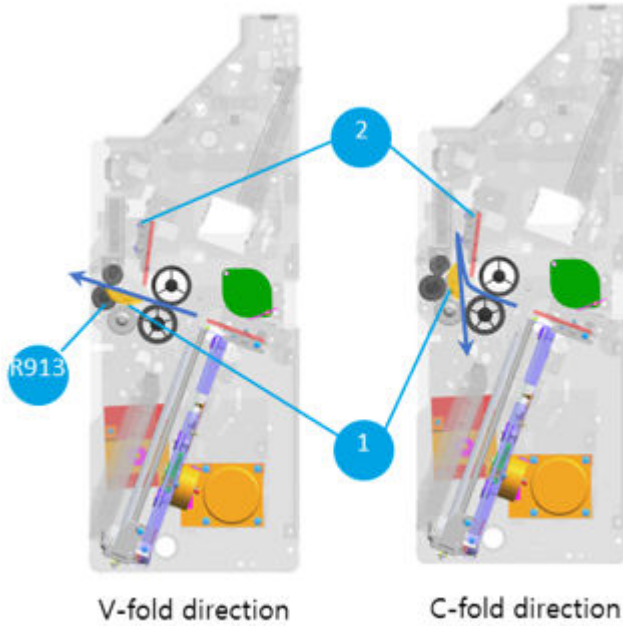
No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Booklet diverter	JC90-01398A	Determines the paper path for either the booklet exit unit or the location for c-fold
S940	Booklet diverter home sensor	0604-001415	Checks the home position of the booklet diverter
M918	Booklet diverter motor	JC93-01153A	Drives the booklet diverter

Booklet diverter unit operation

Learn about the booklet diverter unit operation.

1. In case of v-fold, the booklet diverter (callout 1) determines the paper path so that the folded sheets exit to the booklet exit unit and into the booklet output tray.

Figure 3-334 Booklet diverter unit operation



2. On the other hand, in c-fold, it makes another paper path to fold it by c-fold blade (callout 2).

Booklet exit unit

You will learn more about the booklet exit unit of the booklet maker.

Booklet exit unit overview

Learn about the booklet exit unit overview.

The booklet exit unit ejects a stack of v-fold paper to the booklet output tray unit. The booklet exit sensor detects paper entry into the booklet exit unit, and the booklet fold motor drives the booklet exit roller to discharge paper.

Figure 3-335 Overview of the booklet exit unit

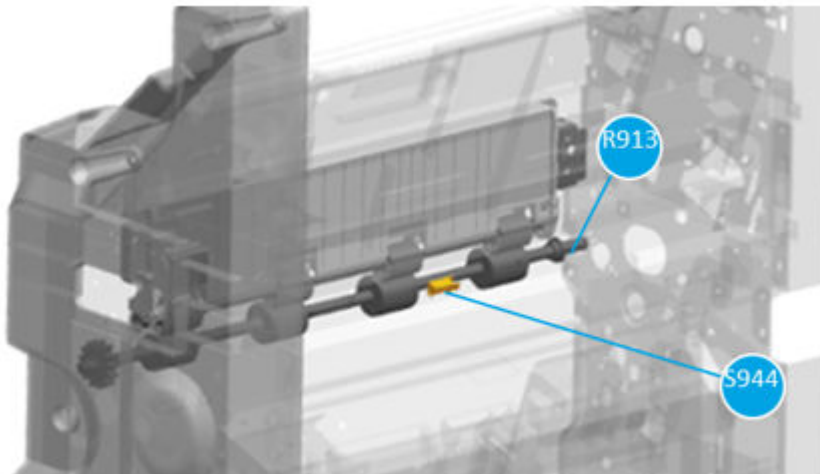


Table 3-199 Overview of the booklet exit unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S944	Booklet exit sensor	JC32-00020A	Check whether paper has come into the booklet unit
M921	Booklet fold motor	JC31-00144A	Drives the booklet exit roller
R913	Booklet exit roller	JC66-04721A	Moves paper to the booklet output tray unit

Figure 3-336 Detail view of the booklet exit unit

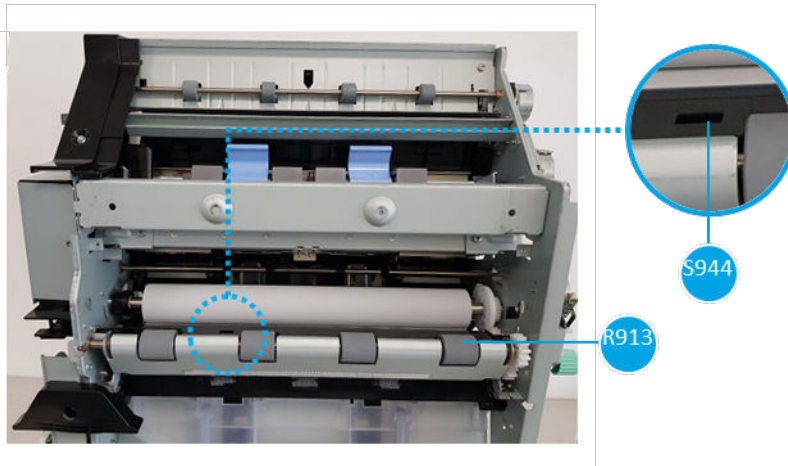


Table 3-200 Detail view of the booklet exit unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S944	Booklet exit sensor	JC32-00020A	Check whether paper has come into the booklet unit
R913	Booklet exit roller	JC66-04721A	Moves paper to the booklet output tray unit

Booklet output tray unit

You will learn more about the booklet output tray unit of the booklet maker.

Booklet output tray unit overview

Learn about the booklet output tray unit overview.

The booklet output tray unit is the place where the ejected paper is stacked. The booklet output tray sensor detects whether paper is on the booklet output tray or not.

Figure 3-337 Overview of the booklet output tray unit

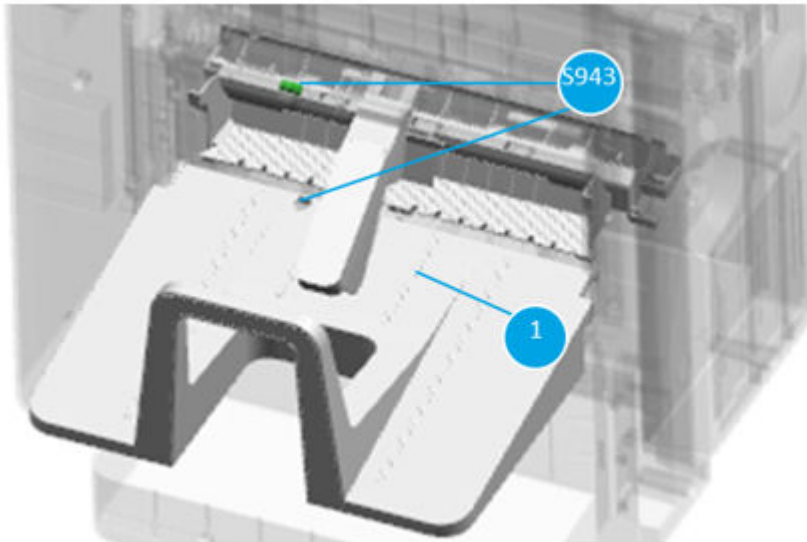


Table 3-201 Overview of the booklet output tray unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Booklet output tray	5QK09-40017, 5QK09-40015	Stores paper stacks from the booklet exit unit
S943	Booklet output tray sensor	JC82-01039A	Detects whether paper is on the booklet output tray

Figure 3-338 Detail view of the booklet output tray unit

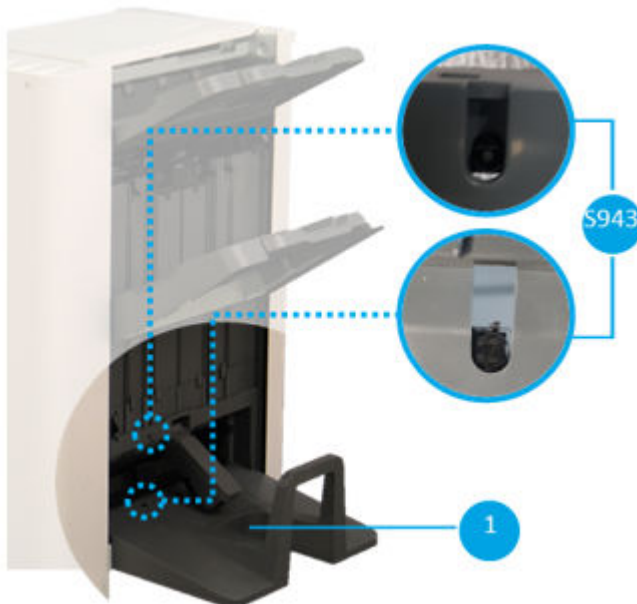


Table 3-202 Detail view of the booklet output tray unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Booklet output tray	5QK09-40017, 5QK09-40015	Stores paper stacks from the booklet exit unit

Table 3-202 Detail view of the booklet output tray unit (continued)

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S943	Booklet output tray sensor	JC82-01039A	Detects whether paper is on the booklet output tray

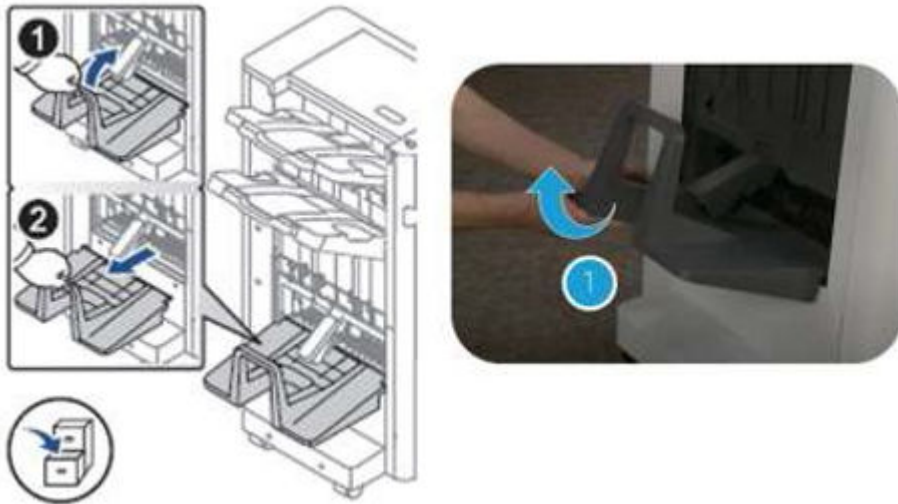
Booklet output tray unit operation: loading a large number of booklets

Learn about the booklet output tray unit operation.

Y1G07A Booklet finisher is support available to print a large number of booklets.

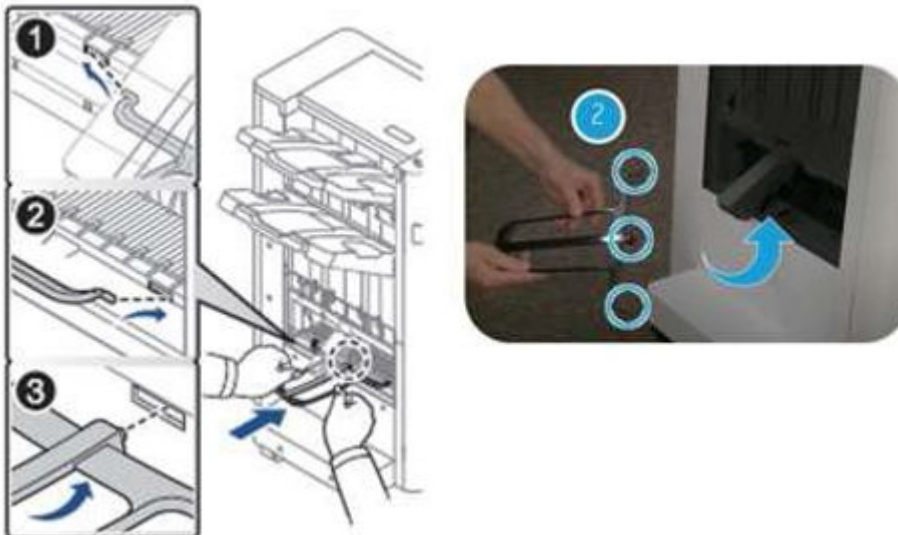
1. Remove the booklet output tray (callout 1).

Figure 3-339 Booklet output tray unit operation, view 1



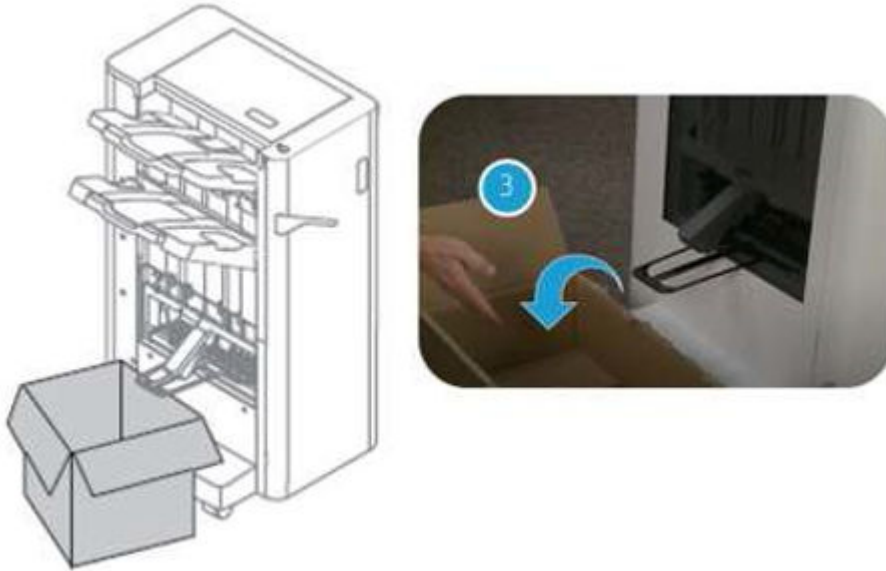
2. Install the booklet sub tray at the booklet output (callout 2)

Figure 3-340 Booklet output tray unit operation, view 2



3. Install a box to store printouts (callout 3).

Figure 3-341 Booklet output tray unit operation, view 3



PCA

You will learn more about the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker PCA.

Finisher main PCA

Learn about the finisher main PCA.

The stapler-stacker finisher and booklet finisher main PCA controls operation of the finishers by communicating with the printer main PCA.

- Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet finisher main PCA part number: 6GW55-60001

Figure 3-342 Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker finisher main PCA connectors

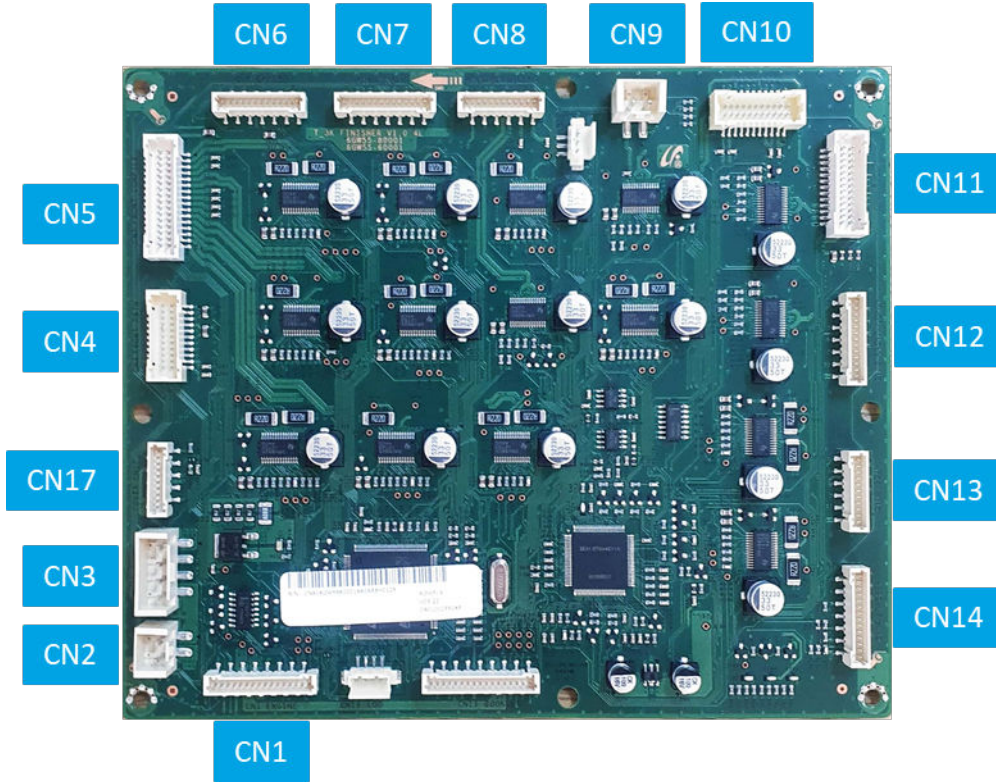


Table 3-203 Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker finisher main PCA connectors

CN number	Connection	Type	Harness part number	Error code when disconnected
SS-CN1	Mainboard	16pin	JC39-02308A	
SS-CN2	Door	2pin	JC39-02309A	
SS-CN3	Cover Buffer sensor Entrance sensor Diverter home sensor	4pin	JC39-02631A	
SS-CN4	Entrance motor Tray diverter home sensor Top exit sensor Main exit sensor Rear tamper motor Entrance motor	22pin	JC39-02313A	

Table 3-203 Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker finisher main PCA connectors (continued)

CN number	Connection	Type	Harness part number	Error code when disconnected
SS-SN5	Paddle motor End fence motor Front tamper home sensor Paddle home sensor Top output tray paper full sensor Manual staple op board Rear tamper home sensor Bridge feed motor Bridge entrance sensor	32pin	JC39-02313A	
SS-CN6	Bridge door sensor Bridge exit sensor	18pin	6GW51-50001	
SS-CN7	Punch option Exit motor Main output tray motor	14pin	JC39-02314A	
SS-CN8	Main output tray motor sensor Top output tray paper full sensor	12pin	JC39-02312A	
SS-CN9	Main output tray top of stack sensor Stapler head motor Stapler position motor	2pin	JC39-02316A	
SS-CN10	Stapler mid-rear sensor Stapler front-rear sensor Stapler rear sensor Ejector 2 motor Ejector 1 motor Ejector 2 motor sensor Ejector 1 motor sensor	22pin	JC39-02315A	

Table 3-203 Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker finisher main PCA connectors (continued)

CN number	Connection	Type	Harness part number	Error code when disconnected
SS-CN11	Ejector 2 home sensor Ejector sensor Ejector 1 end sensor Ejector 1 home sensor Front tamper motor Manual staple sensor	26pin	JC39-02317A	
SS-CN12	End fence home sensor Stapler front sensor Paper holding motor	13pin	JC39-02318A	
SS-CN13	Booklet output tray full sensor Main output tray lower limit sensor Main output tray top of stack sensor (LED) Rear paper holding sensor	11pin	JC39-02319A	
SS-CN14	Paper holding home sensor Front paper holding sensor Main output tray top of stack sensor (receiver) Buffer home sensor	14pin	JC39-02319A	
SS-CN17	Buffer motor Buffer solenoid	10pin	JC39-02575A	

Booklet maker PCA

Learn about the booklet maker PCA.

The booklet maker PCA controls operation of the booklet maker by communicating with the booklet maker finisher main PCA.

- Booklet maker PCA part number: 6GW51-60001

Figure 3-343 Booklet maker PCA connectors

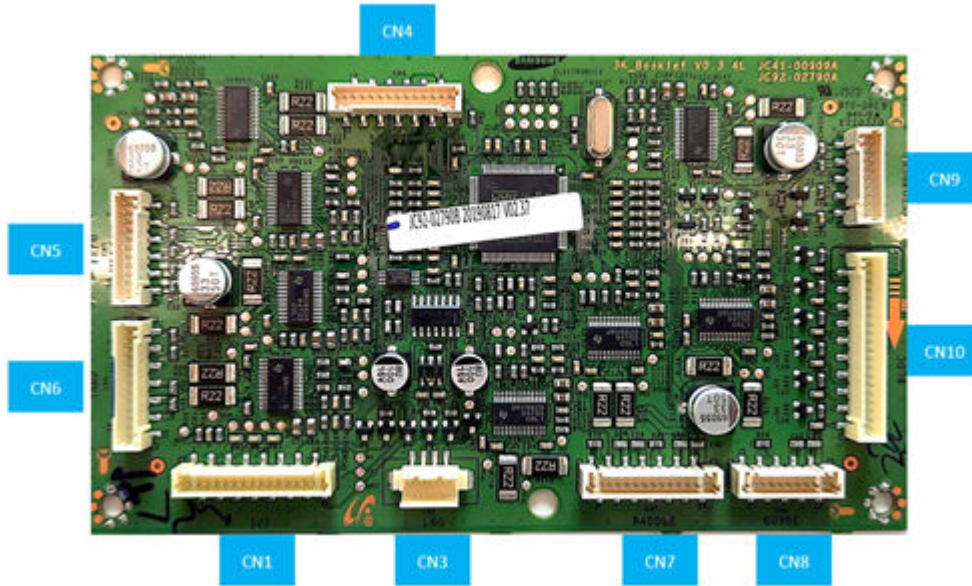


Table 3-204 Booklet maker PCA connectors

CN number	Connection	Type	Harness part number	Error code when disconnected
BM-CN1	Finisher main PCA	16pin	JC39-02296A	
BM-CN3	Log	4pin		
BM-CN4	Stapler	13pin	JC39-02301A	
BM-CN5	Feed	11pin	JC39-02298A	
BM-SN6	Tamp	13pin	JC39-02298A	
BM-CN7	Paddle	14pin	JC39-02304A	
BM-CN8	Guide	10pin	JC39-02304A	
BM-CN9	Stopper	9pin	JC39-02305A	
BM-CN10	BLDC	20pin	JC39-02305A	

Manual staple PCA

Learn about the manual staple PCA.

The manual staple PCA communicates with the finisher main PCA

Figure 3-344 Manual staple PCA connectors



Table 3-205 Manual staple PCA connectors

CN number	Connection	Type	Harness part number	Error code when disconnected
MS-CN1	Finisher main PCA	4pin	JC39-02345A	

Inner finisher

You will learn more about the inner finisher.

Detailed specifications

Learn about the detailed specifications of the inner finisher.

Table 3-206 General specifications

Item	Description
Capacity	550 Sheets (Main 500, Top 50) @ 80gsm
Sensing	Paper Jam/Tray Sensing/Stapler/Cover Open
Media Sizes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Main: 98mm - 320mm x 139.7mm - 457.2mm (3.86in - 12.59in x 5.5in - 18in) Top: 98mm - 320mm x 148.0mm - 430.0mm (3.86in - 12.59in x 5.83in - 16.93in)
Media types	Plain/Thick/Heavy weight/Thin/Cotton/Colored/Recycled/Bond/Archive/Pre-Punched/Cardstock/Glossy/Envelope
Media Weight	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Main: 52-256 gsm (13.9-68.3 lb.) Top: 52-325 gsm (13.9-86.7 lb.)
Number of Bin	2 (Main/Top)
Dimension (W X D X H)	458 x 491 x 173 mm (18.0 X 19.3 X 6.8 inch)
Weight	Net weight: 15 kg (33 lb.) Packing weight: 18.39 kg (40.53 lb.)
Tray 1 Finishing Capacity	50 Sheets @ 80gsm
Tray 1 Finishing Mode	Stapling (Left, Right, Dual)/Punch (2/3, 2/4, Swedish)
Tray 2 Finishing Capacity	500 Sheets @ 80 gsm

Table 3-207 Paper Size Specification

Name	Paper size		Orientation	Output			Staple position		
	mm	Inches	Direction	Main tray		Top tray	Corner		DUAL
				52-256 g	Offset	52-325 g	45°	Flat	
A5	210 x 148	8.3 x 5.8	LEF	O	O	O	X	F/R ¹	O
Statement	216 x 140	8.5 x 5.5	LEF	O	O	O	X	F/R ¹	O
Lt	279 x 216	11 x 8.5	LEF	O	O	O	F/R ¹	X	O
A4	297 x 210	8.3 x 11.7	LEF	O	O	O	F/R ¹	X	O
B5(JIS)	257 x 182	10.1 x 7.2	LEF	O	O	O	F/R ¹	X	O
B5(ISO)	250 x 176	9.8 x 6.9	LEF	O	O	O	F/R ¹	X	O
Executive	267 x 184	10.5 x 7.3	LEF	O	O	O	F/R ¹	X	O
No 9 Env	98 x 225	3.9 x 8.9	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X

Table 3-207 Paper Size Specification (continued)

Name	Paper size		Orientation	Output			Staple position		
	mm	Inches	Direction	Main tray		Top tray	Corner		DUAL
				52-256 g	Offset	52-325 g	45°	Flat	
Monarch Env	98.4 x 190.5	3.9 x 7.5	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
PostCard 4X6	101.6 x 152.4	4.0 x 6.0	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
A6	105 x 148	4.1 x 5.8	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
No 10 Env	105 x 241	4.1 x 9.5	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
DL Env	110 x 220	4.3 x 8.7	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
C6 Env	114 x 162	4.5 x 6.4	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
B6	128 x 182	5.0 x 7.2	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
Statement	140 x 216	5.5 x 8.5	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
A5	148 x 210	5.8 x 8.3	SEF	O	X	O	X	X	X
C5 Env	162 x 229	6.4 x 9.0	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
B5(ISO)	176 x 250	6.9 x 9.8	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R ¹	X
B5(JIS)	182 x 257	6.9 x 9.8	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R ¹	X
Executive	184 x 267	7.3 x 10.5	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R ¹	X
16k	195 x 270	7.7 x 10.6	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R ¹	O
A4	210 x 297	8.3 x 11.7	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R ¹	O
Legal	216 x 356	8.5 x 14	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R ¹	O
Letter	216 x 279	8.5 x 11	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R ¹	O
Folio	216 x 330	8.5 x 13	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R ¹	O
Oficio	215.9 x 342.9	8.5 x 13.5	SEF	O	O	O	X	F/R ¹	O
C4	229 x 324	9.1 x 12.8	SEF	X	X	O	X	X	X
Tabloid	254 x 374	10 x 14.7	SEF	O	O	O	F/R ¹	X	O
B4	257 x 364	10 x 14.3	SEF	O	O	O	F/R ¹	X	O
8K	270 x 390	10.6 x 15.4	SEF	O	O	O	F/R ¹	X	O
Ledger	279 x 432	11 x 17	SEF	O	O	O	F/R ¹	X	O
A3	297 x 420	11.7 x 16.5	SEF	O	O	O	F/R ¹	X	O
Tabloid Extra	304.8 x 457.2	12 x 18	SEF	O	X	X	X	X	X
SRA3	320 x 450	12.6 x 17.7	SEF	O	X	X	X	X	X

Table 3-207 Paper Size Specification (continued)

Name	Paper size		Orientation	Output			Staple position		
	mm	Inches	Direction	Main tray		Top tray	Corner		DUAL
				52-256 g	Offset	52-325 g	45°	Flat	
Custom	W 98-320 ~ L 140-1200	W3.9-12.6 ~ L 5.5-47.2	–	O	X	O (W 98-297 ~ L 140-1200)	X	X	X

¹ "F/R" means front side and rear side can be supported.

Table 3-208 Punch specifications

Name	Paper size		Orientation	Punch				
	mm	Inches	Direction	NA 2/3		EU 2/4H		Swedish
				2H	3H	2H	4H	4H
A5	210 x 148	8.3 x 5.8	LEF	O	X	O	X	O
Statement	216 x 140	8.5 x 5.5	LEF	O	X	O	X	O
Lt	279 x 216	11 x 8.5	LEF	O	O	O	O	O
A4	297 x 210	8.3 x 11.7	LEF	O	O	O	O	O
B5 (JIS)	257 x 182	10.1 x 7.2	LEF	O	O	O	X	O
B5 (ISO)	250 x 176	9.8 x 6.9	LEF	O	O	O	X	O
Executive	267 x 184	10.5 x 7.3	LEF	O	O	O	O	O
No 9 Env	98 x 225	3.9 x 8.9	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
Monarch Env	98.4 x 190.5	3.9 x 7.5	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
PostCard 4X6	101.6 x 152.4	4.0 x 6.0	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
A6	105 x 148	4.1 x 5.8	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
No 10 Env	105 x 241	4.1 x 9.5	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
DL Env	110 x 220	4.3 x 8.7	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
C6 Env	114 x 162	4.5 x 6.4	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
B6	128 x 182	5.0 x 7.2	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
Statement	140 x 216	5.5 x 8.5	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
A5	148 x 210	5.8 x 8.3	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
C5 Env	162 x 229	6.4 x 9.0	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
B5(ISO)	176 x 250	6.9 x 9.8	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
B5(JIS)	182 x 257	6.9 x 9.8	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
Executive	184 x 267	7.3 x 10.5	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
16k	195 x 270	7.7 x 10.6	SEF	O	X	O	X	O

Table 3-208 Punch specifications (continued)

Name	Paper size		Orientation	Punch				
	mm	Inches	Direction	NA 2/3		EU 2/4H		Swedish
				2H	3H	2H	4H	4H
A4	210 x 297	8.3 x 11.7	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
Legal	216 x 356	8.5 x 14	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
Letter	216 x 279	8.5 x 11	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
Folio	216 x 330	8.5 x 13	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
Oficio	215.9 x 342.9	8.5 x 13.5	SEF	O	X	O	X	O
C4	229 x 324	9.1 x 12.8	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
Tabloid	254 x 374	10 x 14.7	SEF	O	O	O	X	O
B4	257 x 364	10 x 14.3	SEF	O	O	O	X	O
8K	270 x 390	10.6 x 15.4	SEF	O		O	O	O
Ledger	279 x 432	11 x 17	SEF	O	O	O	O	O
A3	297 x 420	11.7 x 16.5	SEF	O	O	O	O	O
Tabloid Extra	304.8 x 457.2	12 x 18	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
SRA3	320 x 450	12.6 x 17.7	SEF	X	X	X	X	X
Custom	W 98-320 ~ L 140-1200	W3.9-12.6 ~ L 5.5-47	-	X	X	X	X	X

Table 3-209 Media performance

Paper Type	Function			
	Main Tray	Top Tray	Staple	Punch
Plain (71-90 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O
Thick (91-105 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O
Heavy weight (106-175 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O
Extra Heavy weight 1 (176-216 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O
Extra Heavy weight 2 (217-256 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O
Extra Heavy weight 3 (257-300 g/m ²)	X	O	X	X
Extra Heavy weight 4 (301-325 g/m ²)	X	O	X	X
Thin (60-70 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O
Cotton (75-90 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O
Colored (75-90 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O
Pre-Printed (75-90 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O
Recycled (60-90 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O

Table 3-209 Media performance (continued)

Paper Type	Function			
	Main Tray	Top Tray	Staple	Punch
Bond	O	O	O	O
Archive (75-105 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O
LetterHead	O	O	O	O
Pre-Punched	O	O	O	X
Thin Cardstock (105-163 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O
Thick Cardstock (170-216 g/m ²)	O	O	O	X
Heavy Cardstock (217-256 g/m ²)	O	O	O	X
Extra Heavy Cardstock 1(257-300 g/m ²)	X	O	X	X
Extra Heavy Cardstock 2(301-325 g/m ²)	X	O	X	X
Thin Glossy (106-169 g/m ²)	O	O	O	O
Thick Glossy (170-216 g/m ²)	O	O	O	X
Heavy Glossy (217-256 g/m ²)	O	X	X	X
Envelope (75-90 g/m ²)	X	O	X	X
Thick Envelope (217-256 g/m ²)	O	X	X	X
Tab	O	X	X	O

Cover

Learn about the front view and rear view of the inner finisher.

Figure 3-345 Front view of the inner finisher

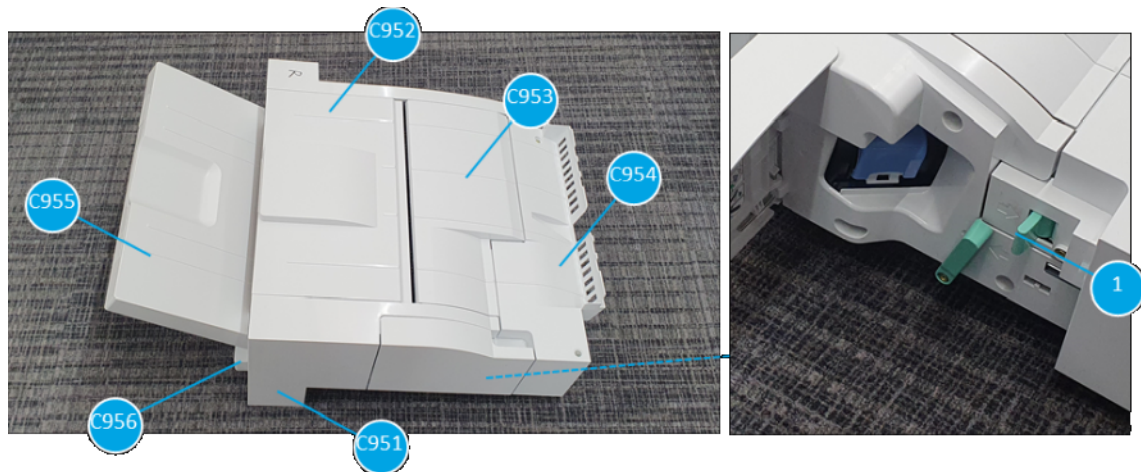


Table 3-210 Front view of the inner finisher

Callout	Part name	Part number
C951	Front cover	5QK09-60123

Table 3-210 Front view of the inner finisher (continued)

Callout	Part name	Part number
C952	Top cover	5QK09-60124
C953	Middle cover	5QK09-60125
C954	Punch cover	8GS05-60114
C955	Output tray	5QK09-60118
C956	PCA tray	5QK09-40004
1	Lock release handle	JC66-04233A
Not shown	Exit bin full	JC90-01546A

Figure 3-346 Rear view of the inner finisher



Table 3-211 Rear view of the inner finisher

Callout	Part name	Part number
C957	Left cover	8GS05-60113
C958	Rear cover	5QK09-40037
C959	Low cover	5QK09-40018
2	Main interface harness	JC39-02169A
Not shown	Exit bin full	JC90-01546A

NOTE: An exit bin full is included in the product box. This assembly is used for only E877 and E826 series which should be installed at the second exit unit output area.

Figure 3-347 Exit bin full



Inner finisher overview

You will learn more about the inner finisher overview.

Inner finisher workflow

Learn about the inner finisher workflow.

Figure 3-348 Inner finisher workflow

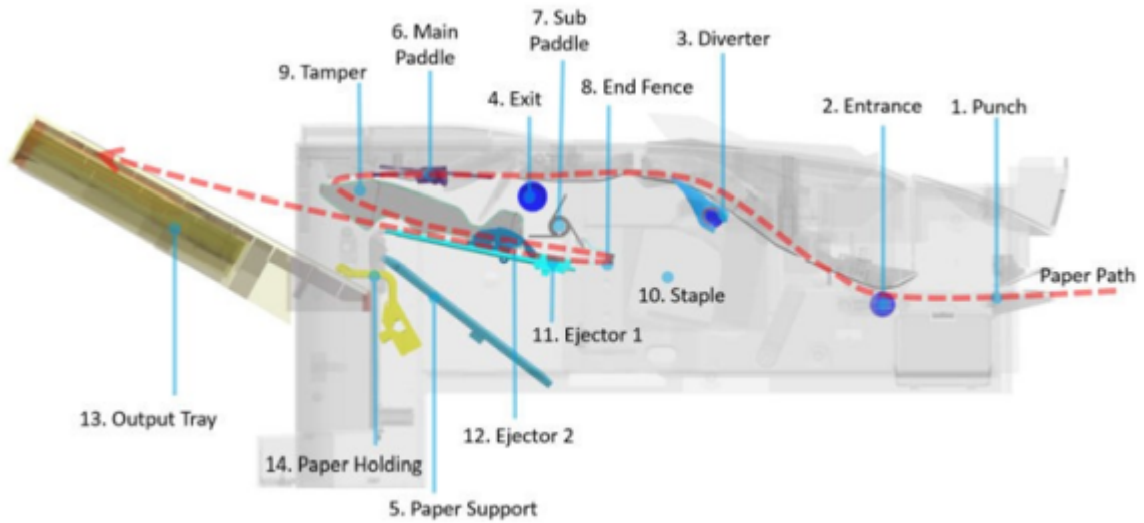


Table 3-212 Inner finisher workflow

Item	Unit	Description
1	Punch unit	Make holes in a specific location on a sheet of paper
2	Entrance unit	Allow a paper to move into the finisher
3	Diverter unit	Hold the paper so that the newly printed paper can stay out for seconds while the stapled bundle of paper moves to the output tray
4	Exit unit	Move the paper from the diverter unit to the ejector unit
5	Paper support unit	Prevent the paper from being fell down or bent when the long length paper such as A3 is ejected from the exit unit
6	Main paddle unit	Move the paper to the sub paddle
7	Sub paddle unit	Move the paper to the end fence
8	End fence unit	Set the standard position of the paper to be aligned towards top and bottom of the paper
9	Tamper unit	Align the paper on the right and left side of the paper

Table 3-212 Inner finisher workflow (continued)

Item	Unit	Description
10	Stapler unit	Perform stapling to a bundle of aligned documents
11	Ejector 1 unit	Transfer the stapled paper loaded at the end fence unit to the ejector 2 unit
12	Ejector 2 unit	Grip a stack of paper up and ejects it onto the output tray
13	Output tray unit	Stack the job ended paper
14	Paper holding unit	Control the output tray movement

Inner finisher sensor

Learn about the inner finisher sensor.

Figure 3-349 Inner finisher sensor

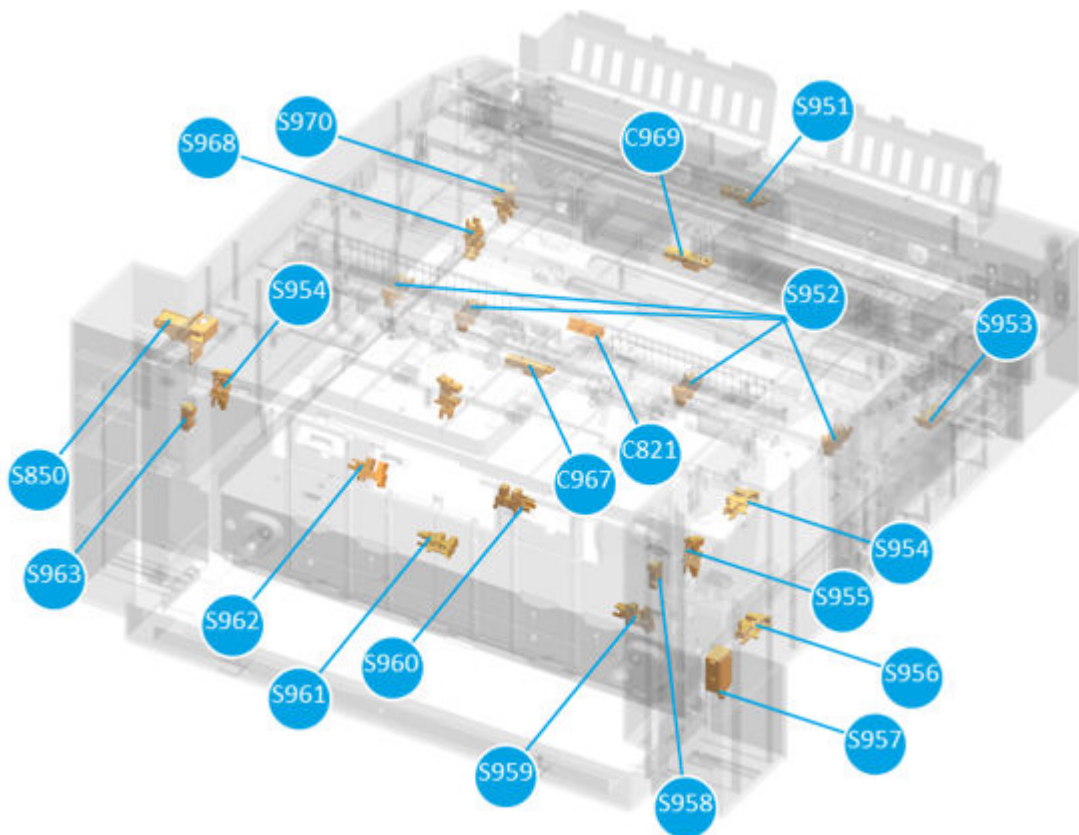


Table 3-213 Inner finisher sensor

No	Name	Part number	Type	Description
S951	Entrance sensor	0604-001381	Photo interrupter (reflect)	Check a paper comes into the entrance unit
S952	Stapler position sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sensing)	Make the stapler be positioned in the exact stapling position
S953	Front cover switch	JC39-01610A	Switch	Check whether the front cover is closed or opened

Table 3-213 Inner finisher sensor (continued)

No	Name	Part number	Type	Description
S954	Main paddle home sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sensing)	Check the main paddle locates at the home position
S955	Front tamper home sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sensing)	Check the front tamper locates at the home position
S956	Output tray motor sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sensing)	Check the output tray motor is operational
S957	Output tray lower limit switch	JC90-01320A	Switch	Check the lower limit (=Output tray is full) of the output tray
S958	Output tray top of stack sensor (receiver)	0603-001309	Photo TR	Check the upper limit of output tray
S959	Paper holding sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sensing)	Check the location of the paper holding actuator
S960	Ejector 2 home sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sensing)	Check the ejector 2 locates at the home position
S961	Ejector 2 motor sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sensing)	Check the ejector 2 motor is operational
S962	Paper support home sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sensing)	Check the paper support locates at the home position
S963	Output tray top of stack sensor (transmitter)	0601-003440	LED IR	Check the upper limit of output tray
S964	Rear tamper home sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sensing)	Check the rear tamper locates at the home position
S965	Top cover switch	JC39-01610A	Switch	Check whether the top cover is closed or opened
S966	Ejector 1 home sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sensing)	Check the ejector 1 locates at the home position
S967	End fence sensor	0604-001381	Photo interrupter (reflect)	Check paper comes into the end fence unit
S968	Punch waste box sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sensing)	Detect the punch waste box is installed
S969	Punch waste full sensor	0604-001381	Photo interrupter (reflect)	Check the punch waste box is full
S970	Finisher docking sensor	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (sensing)	Check the finisher is installed
S971	Exit sensor	0604-001415	Photo interrupter (reflect)	Check paper comes into the exit unit

Inner finisher motor and solenoid

Learn about the inner finisher motor and solenoid.

Figure 3-350 Inner finisher motor and solenoid

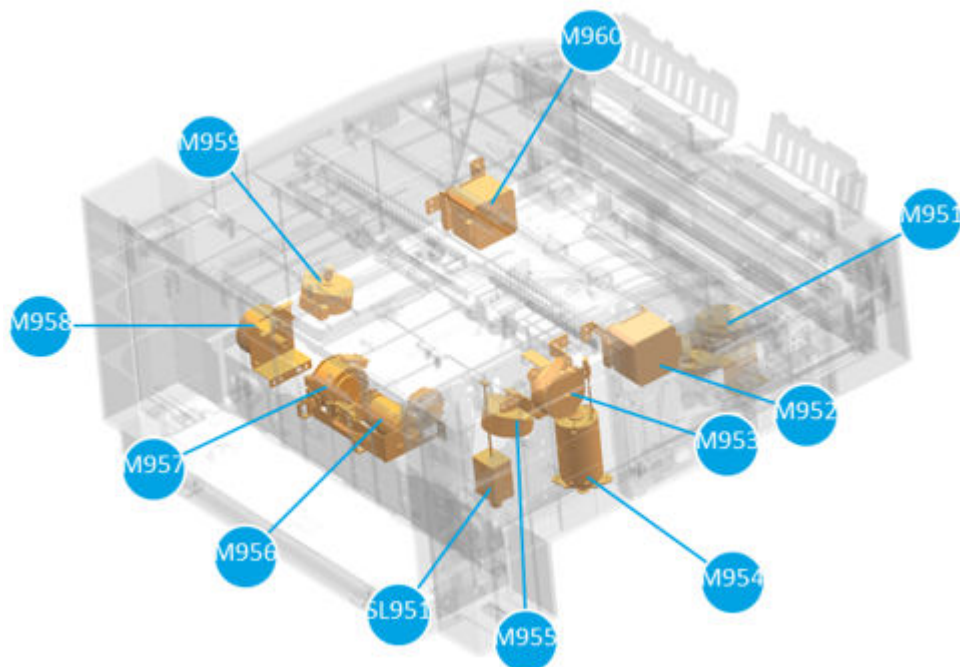


Table 3-214 Inner finisher motor and solenoid

No	Name	Part number	Type	Description
M951	Stapler position motor	JC93-00999A	Stepping motor	Drive the stapler unit
M952	Exit motor	JC31-00169B	Stepping motor	Drive the exit roller and the sub paddle unit
M953	Main paddle motor	JC93-01001A	Stepping motor	Drive the main paddle unit
M954	Output tray motor	JC90-01334B	DC motor	Drive the output tray unit
M955	Rear tamper motor assembly	JC93-01001A	Stepping motor	Drive the rear tamper unit
M956	Ejector 2 motor	JC93-01168A	DC motor	Drive the ejector 2 unit
M957	Ejector 1 motor	JC93-00998A	Stepping motor	Drive the ejector 1 unit
M958	Paper support motor	JC93-00802B	Stepping motor	Drive paper support unit
M959	Front tamper motor	JC93-01001A	Stepping motor	Drive the front tamper unit
M960	Entrance motor	JC31-00169B	Stepping motor	Drive the entrance roller
SL951	Paper holding solenoid	JC33-00037A	Solenoid	Move the paper holding actuator

Inner finisher roller

Learn about the inner finisher roller.

Figure 3-351 Inner finisher roller

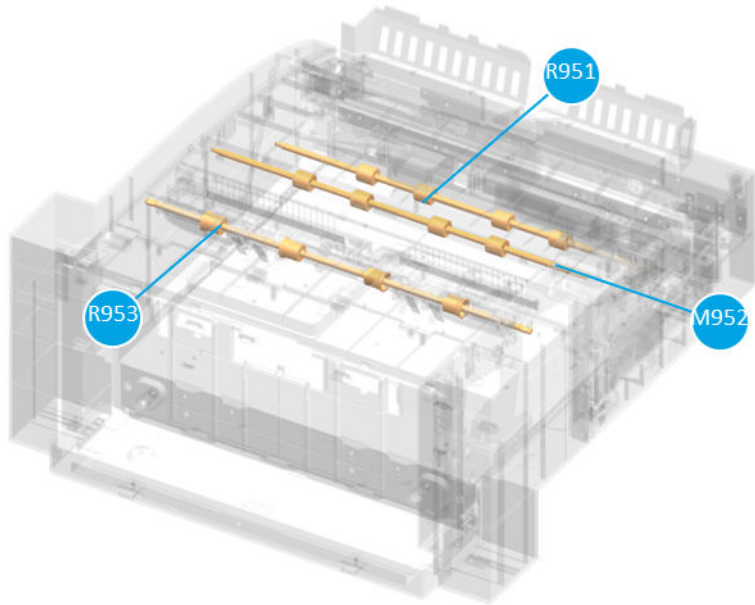


Table 3-215 Inner finisher roller

No	Name	Part number	Description
R951	Entrance roller	JC66-04243A	Move the paper to the finisher inside
R952	Middle roller	JC66-04243A	Move the paper to the exit unit
R953	Exit roller	JC66-04244A	Move the paper to the out bin tray

Inner finisher PCA

Learn about the inner finisher PCA.

Figure 3-352 Inner finisher PCA

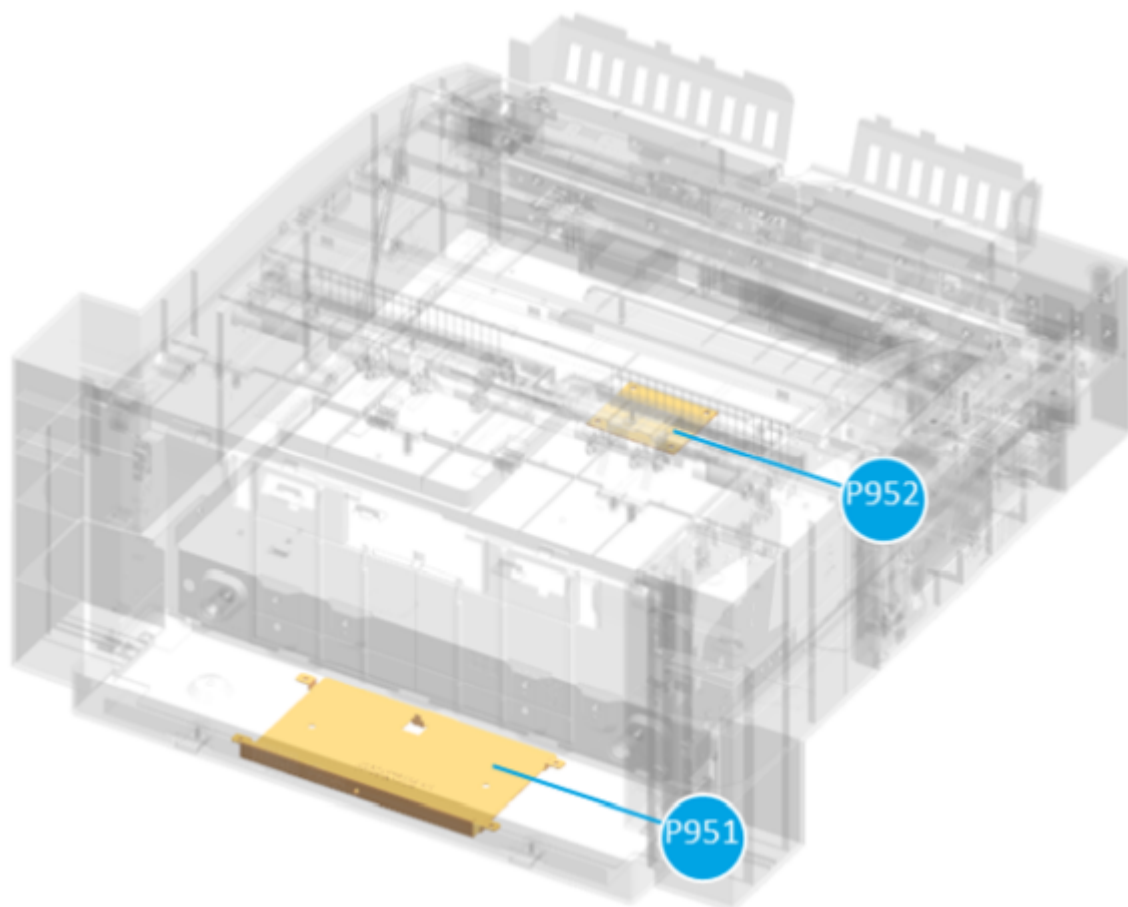


Table 3-216 Inner finisher PCA

No	Name	Part number	Description
P951	Finisher main PCA	6GW49-60001	-
P952	Rear joint PCA	JC92-02780A	Joint PCA between main PCA and several parts such as punch, stapler, entrance, and front door switch

Punch unit (optional)

You will learn more about the punch unit of the inner finisher.

Punch unit overview

Learn about the punch unit overview.

The punch unit is a device that punches holes in a specific location on a sheet of paper. The punch unit is located immediately before the entrance unit and punches holes in a paper.

- HP LaserJet Inner Finisher Hole 2/3 Punch: 155P7-67001
- HP LaserJet Inner Finisher Hole 2/4 Punch: 155P8-67001

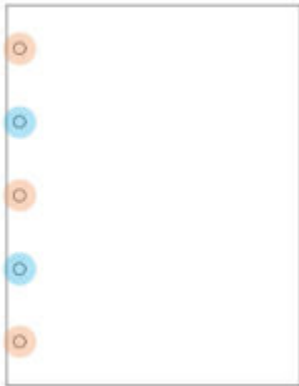
- HP LaserJet Inner Finisher Swedish Punch: 155P9-67001



NOTE: Puncher types vary depending on the country or region.

In case of 2/3 hole punch, the 5 hole-punches are mounted in the punch unit. As the punch motor rotates clockwise, the inner gear moves to the right and the 3 hole-punches are moved downward to make holes. When making 2 holes, the motor rotates in the counterclockwise direction and the inner gear rotates to the left to drill two holes. The travel distance and position of the motor are detected and controlled by the hole punch home sensor and the hole punch motor sensor.

Figure 3-353 Punch unit overview, view 1



For more information, go to the HP WISE support portal and search for *HP LaserJet Managed MFP - How to use the hole punch* (c05450959).

Figure 3-354 Punch unit overview, view 2

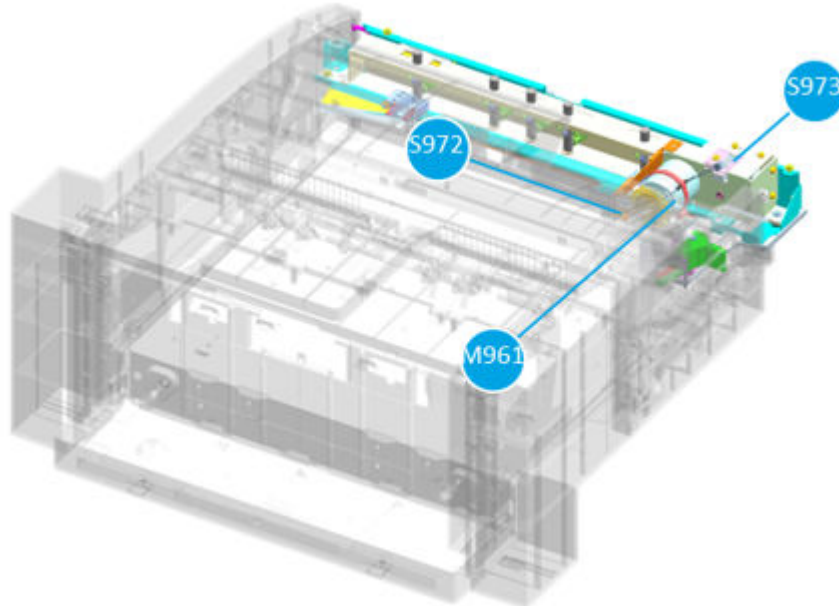


Table 3-217 Punch unit overview, view 2

No	Part name	Part number	Description
U952-1	2/3 hole punch unit	155P7-67001	-
U952-2	2/4 hole punch unit	155P8-67001	-
U952-3	Swedish punch	155P9-67001	-

Table 3-217 Punch unit overview, view 2 (continued)

No	Part name	Part number	Description
M961	Punch motor	NA	Drive the entrance roller connected by a belt
S972	Punch motor sensor	NA	Detect whether the punch motor moves correctly
S973	Punch home sensor	NA	Detect home position of the punch head
P953-1	2/3 hole punch PCA	JC92-02773A	-
P953-2	2/4 hole punch PCA	JC92-02773B	-
P953-3	Swedish hole punch PCA	155P9-67001	-
U953	Punch cover assembly	8GS05-60114	Dummy cover instead of the punch unit
S	Punch waste full sensor	0604-001381	Detect whether the punch waste box is full

Figure 3-355 Punch unit overview, view 3

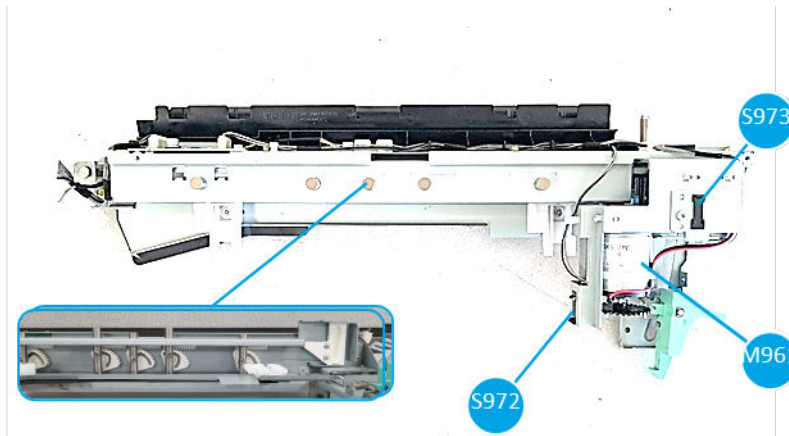


Table 3-218 Punch unit overview, view 3

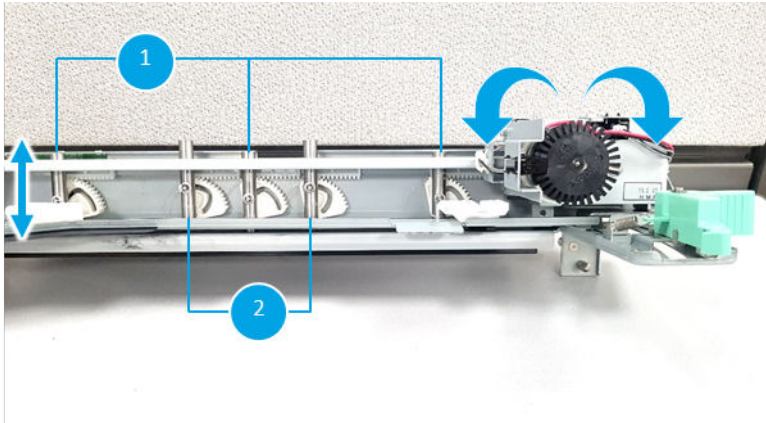
No	Part name	Part number	Description
U952-1	2/3 hole punch unit	155P7-67001	-
U952-2	2/4 hole punch unit	155P8-67001	-
U952-3	Swedish punch	155P9-67001	-
M961	Punch motor	NA	Drive the entrance roller connected by a belt
S972	Punch motor sensor	NA	Detect whether the punch motor moves correctly
S973	Punch home sensor	NA	Detect home position of the punch head
P953-1	2/3 hole punch PCA	JC92-02773A	-
P953-2	2/4 hole punch PCA	JC92-02773B	-
P953-3	Swedish hole punch PCA	155P9-67001	-
U953	Punch cover assembly	8GS05-60114	Dummy cover instead of the punch unit
S	Punch waste full sensor	0604-001381	Detect whether the punch waste box is full

Punch unit operation

Learn about the punch unit operation.

The punch unit is driven by a punch motor and two associated sensors which are the punch motor sensor and the punch home sensor. When the motor rotates clockwise (callout 1), the 3 punch hole heads move and punch 3 holes in the paper. Conversely, when the motor runs counterclockwise (callout 2), the two punch hole heads move and punch two holes in the paper.

Figure 3-356 Punch unit operation, view 1



Entrance unit

You will learn more about the entrance unit of the inner finisher.

Entrance unit overview

Learn about the entrance unit overview.

The entrance unit is located right after the punch unit. This unit is driven by entrance motor which is installed on the rear of the finisher. This motor is connected to the entrance roller by a belt to transfer driving force to move paper from the base printer exit unit to the finisher inside. If an error such as paper jam occurs in the entrance unit, the entrance sensor detects the error and generates an event code (13.60.xx).

Figure 3-357 Entrance unit overview, view 1

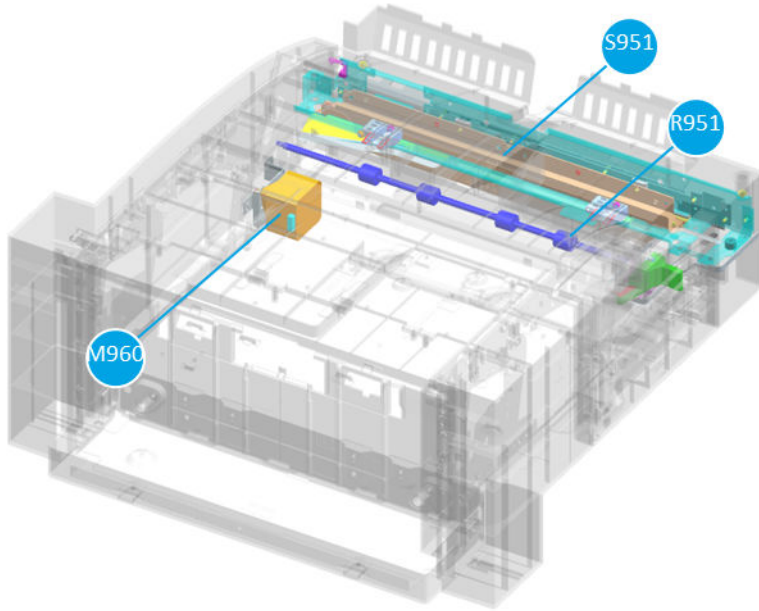


Table 3-219 Entrance unit overview, view 1

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S951	Entrance sensor	0604-001381	Detect a paper whether it comes from the base printer exit unit correctly
M960	Entrance motor	5QK09-60128	Drive the entrance roller to make the paper moved to the finisher inside
R951	Entrance roller	JC66-04243A	Move the paper to the finisher exit unit

Figure 3-358 Entrance unit overview, view 2

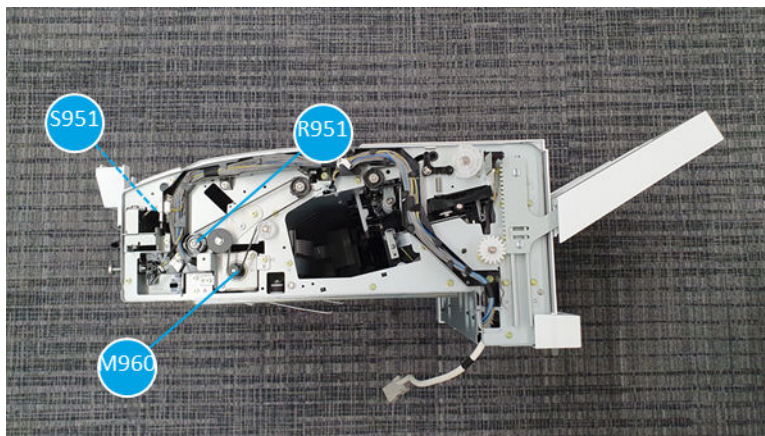


Table 3-220 Entrance unit overview, view 1

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S951	Entrance sensor	0604-001381	Detect a paper whether it comes from the base printer exit unit correctly
M960	Entrance motor	5QK09-60128	Drive the entrance roller to make the paper moved to the finisher inside

Table 3-220 Entrance unit overview, view 1 (continued)

No	Part name	Part number	Description
R951	Entrance roller	JC66-04243A	Move the paper to the finisher exit unit

Diverter unit

You will learn more about the diverter unit of the inner finisher.

Diverter unit overview

Learn about the diverter unit overview.

Figure 3-359 Diverter unit overview, view 1

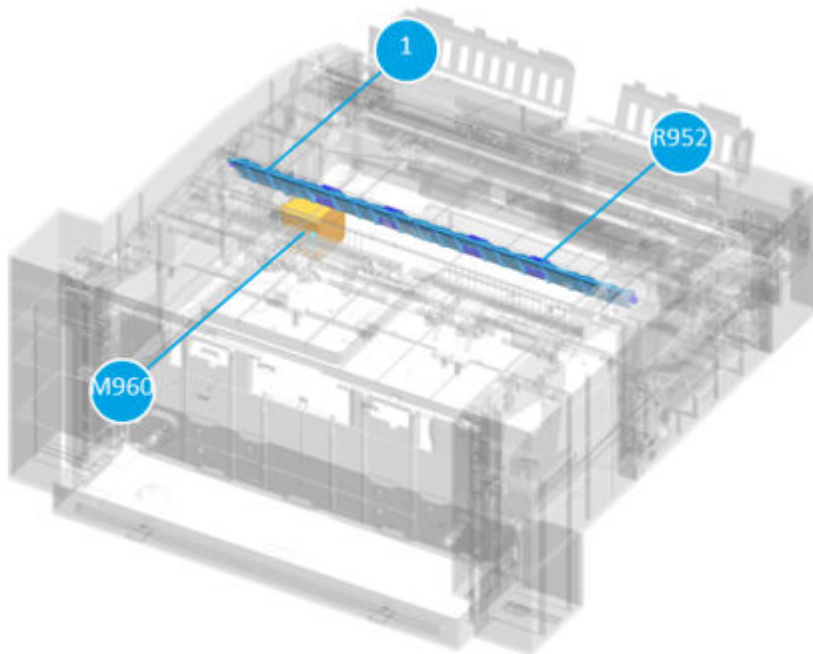


Table 3-221 Diverter unit overview, view 1

No	Part name	Part number	Description
M960	Entrance motor	5QK09-60128	Drive the feed roller connected by a belt
R952	Middle roller	JC66-04243A	Drive the paper forward installed in front of the diverter
1	Diverter	JC61-06392A	Change paper path when a paper goes backward

Figure 3-360 Diverter unit overview, view 2

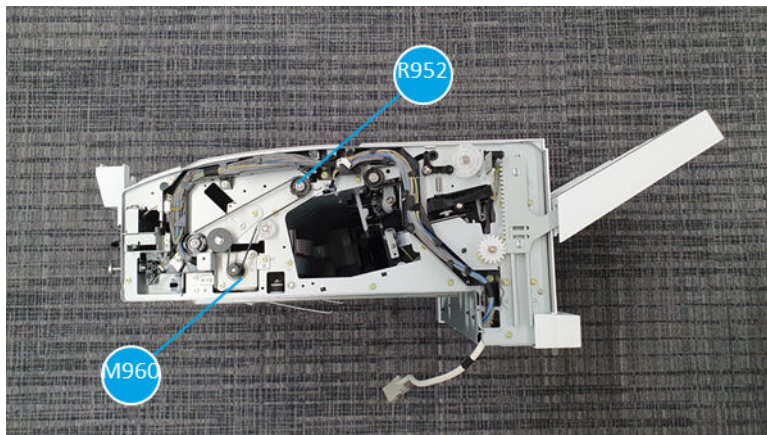


Table 3-222 Diverter unit overview, view 2

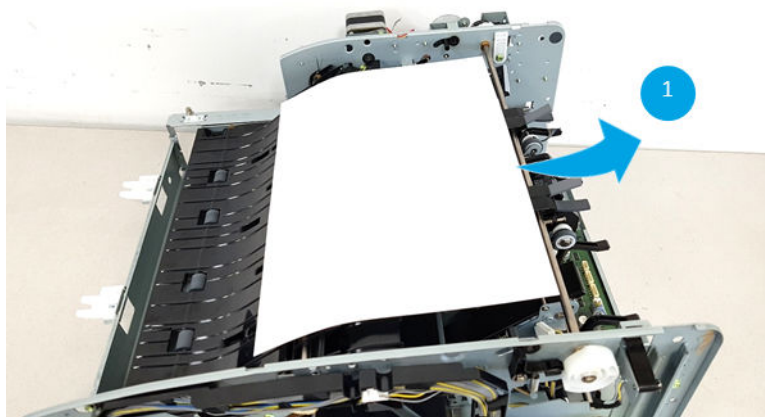
No	Part name	Part number	Description
M960	Entrance motor	5QK09-60128	Drive the feed roller connected by a belt
R952	Middle roller	JC66-04243A	Drive the paper forward installed in front of the diverter

Diverter unit operation

Learn about the diverter unit operation.

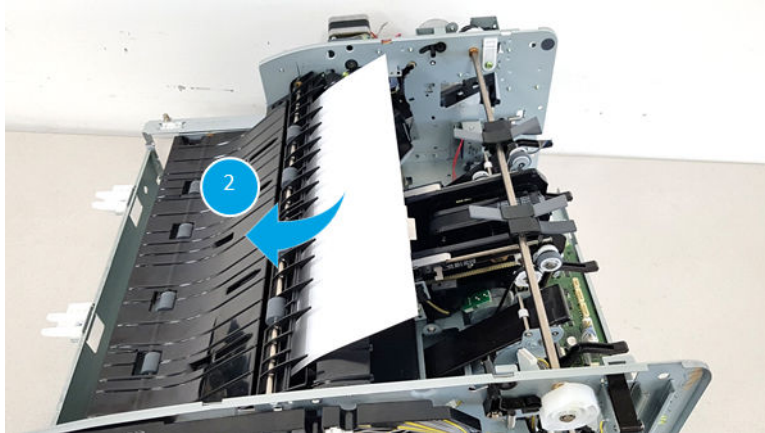
1. The paper goes forward to the output tray, then the exit roller stops.

Figure 3-361 Diverter unit operation, view 1



2. The paper turns towards the diverter unit, then comes down. It waits for a while until the stapling operation is finished.

Figure 3-362 Diverter unit overview, view 2



3. The paper goes out to the output bin with the stapled paper at the same time.

Exit unit

You will learn more about the exit unit of the inner finisher.

Exit unit overview

Learn about the exit unit overview.

The exit unit is the part that moves the paper from the diverter unit to the ejector unit. The exit unit is powered by an exit motor installed on the front of the finisher. The motor and the exit roller are connected by a single belt. The exit motor rotates counterclockwise so that the paper moves forwards. The exit sensor is installed right in front of exit roller, it detects whether the paper comes from the entrance unit correctly.

Figure 3-363 Exit unit overview, view 1

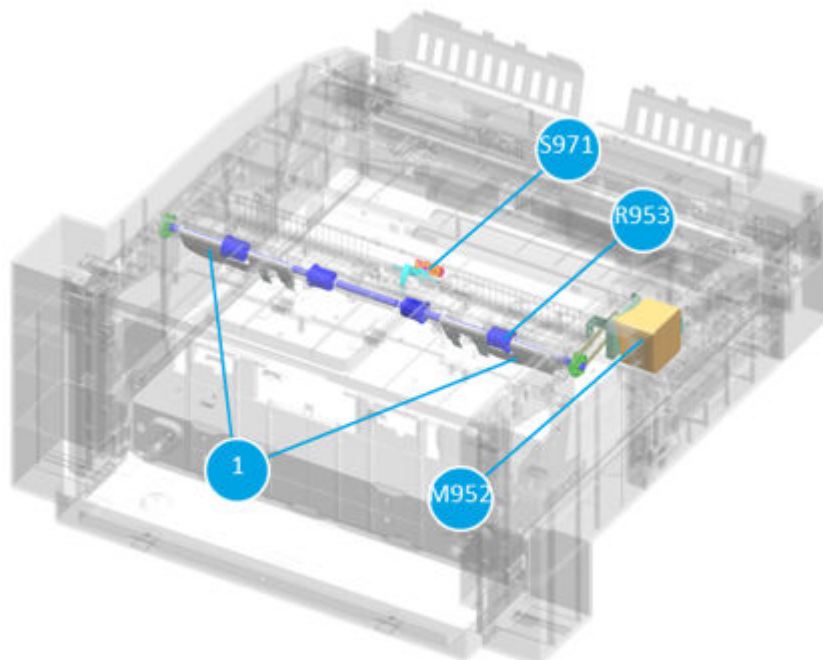


Table 3-223 Exit unit overview, view 1

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S971	Exit sensor	0604-001415	Check whether the passes through the exit unit
M952	Exit motor	JC90-01331A	Drive the exit roller connected by a belt
R953	Exit roller	JC66-04244A	Move the paper to the ejector unit
1-1	Rear compile guide	JC61-07450A	Guide to help paper move through the paper path
1-2	Front compile guide	JC61-07449A	Guide to help paper move through the paper path

Figure 3-364 Exit unit overview, view 2

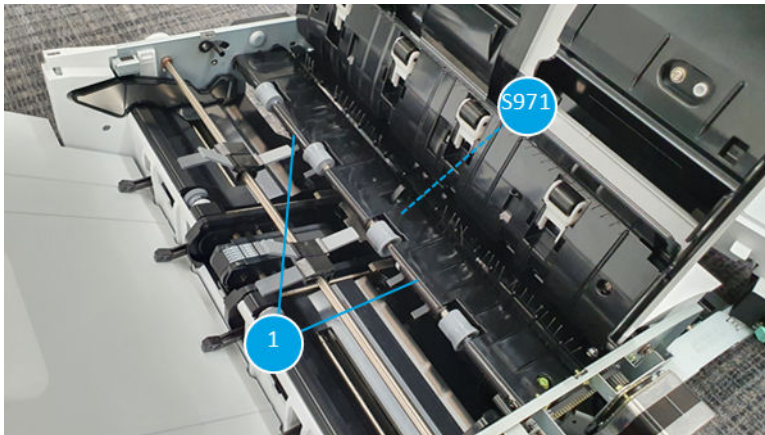


Table 3-224 Exit unit overview, view 2

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S971	Exit sensor	0604-001415	Check whether the passes through the exit unit
1-1	Rear compile guide	JC61-07450A	Guide to help paper move through the paper path
1-2	Front compile guide	JC61-07449A	Guide to help paper move through the paper path

Figure 3-365 Exit unit overview, view 3

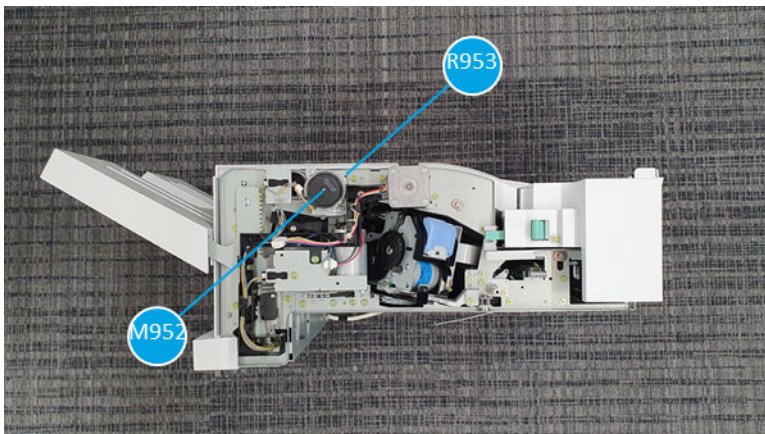


Table 3-225 Exit unit overview, view 3

No	Part name	Part number	Description
M952	Exit motor	JC90-01331A	Drive the exit roller connected by a belt
R953	Exit roller	JC66-04244A	Move the paper to the ejector unit

Paper support unit

You will learn more about the paper support unit of the inner finisher.

Paper support unit overview

Learn about the paper support unit overview.

Figure 3-366 Paper support unit overview, view 1

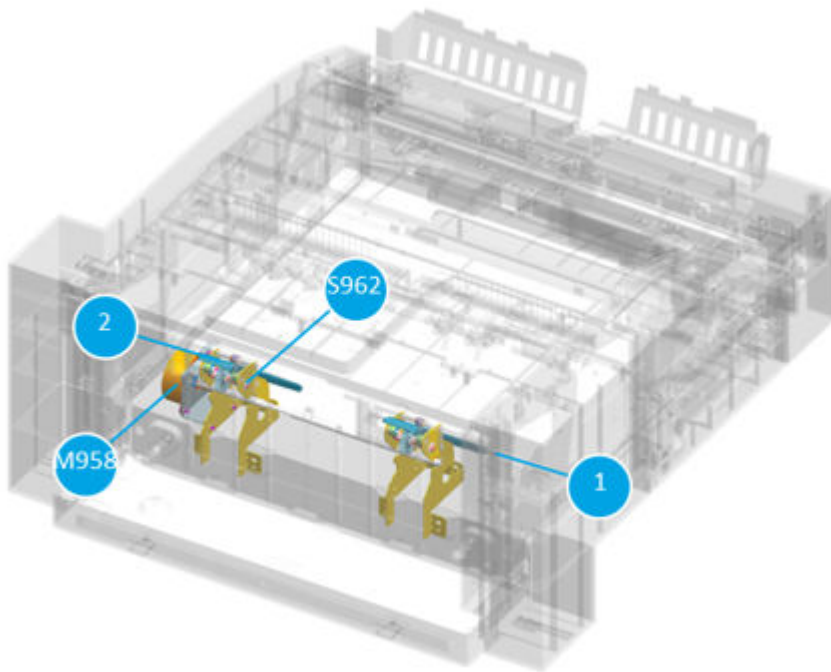


Table 3-226 Paper support unit overview, view 1

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S962	Paper support home sensor	0604-001393	Detect the paper support guides locate at the home
M958	Paper support motor	JC93-00802B	Detect the paper support guides locate at the home
1	Front paper support	JC90-01310A	Support the paper not to be bended downwards
2	Rear paper support	JC90-01311A	Support the paper not to be bended downwards

Figure 3-367 Paper support unit overview, view 2

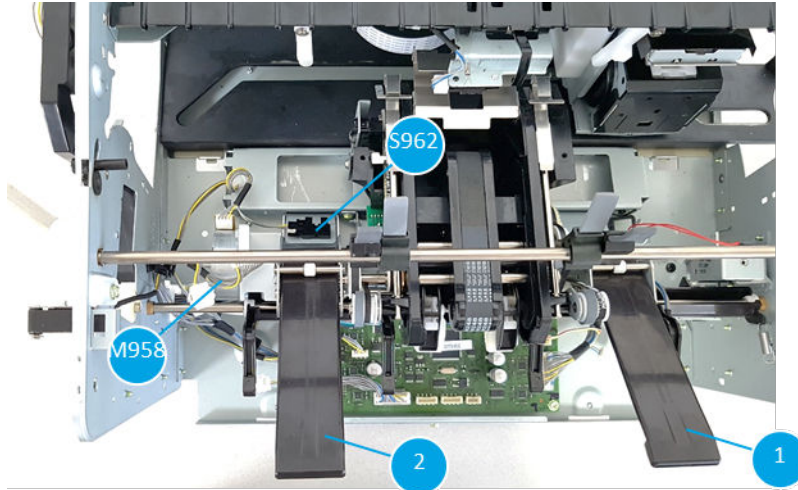


Table 3-227 Paper support unit overview, view 2

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S962	Paper support home sensor	0604-001393	Detect the paper support guides locate at the home
M958	Paper support motor	JC93-00802B	Detect the paper support guides locate at the home
1	Front paper support	JC90-01310A	Support the paper not to be bended downwards
2	Rear paper support	JC90-01311A	Support the paper not to be bended downwards

Paper support unit operation

Learn about the paper support unit operation.

1. When a paper goes out to the output tray direction, the paper might be bent to downwards (callout 1) if the paper is longer than the paper guide.

Figure 3-368 Paper support unit operation, view 1



2. In order to properly eject the paper without disturbing the already stacked paper, two guides extend in the direction of the arrow (callout 2). As a result, the long paper can be stacked stably without being pushed toward the tray.

Figure 3-369 Paper support unit operation, view 2



Paddle unit

You will learn more about the paddle unit of the inner finisher.

Paddle unit overview

Learn about the paddle unit overview.

Figure 3-370 Overview of the paddle unit, view 1

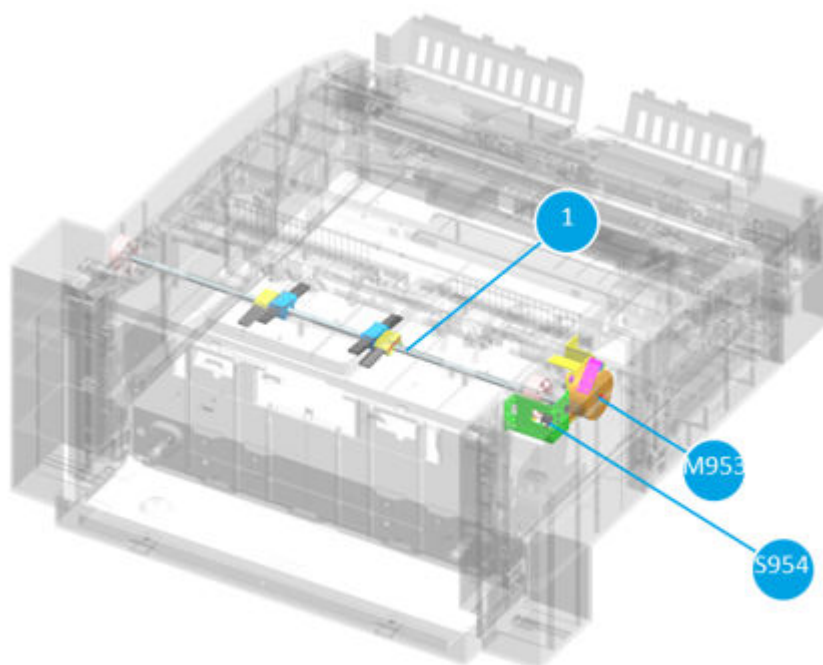


Table 3-228 Overview of the paddle unit, view 1

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S954	Main paddle home sensor	0604-001393	Detect the home position of the main paddle
M953	Main paddlemotor	JC90-01331A	Drive the main paddle unit connected by a belt
1	Main paddle	JC90-01327A	Move the paper to the sub paddle unit

Figure 3-371 Overview of the paddle unit, view 2

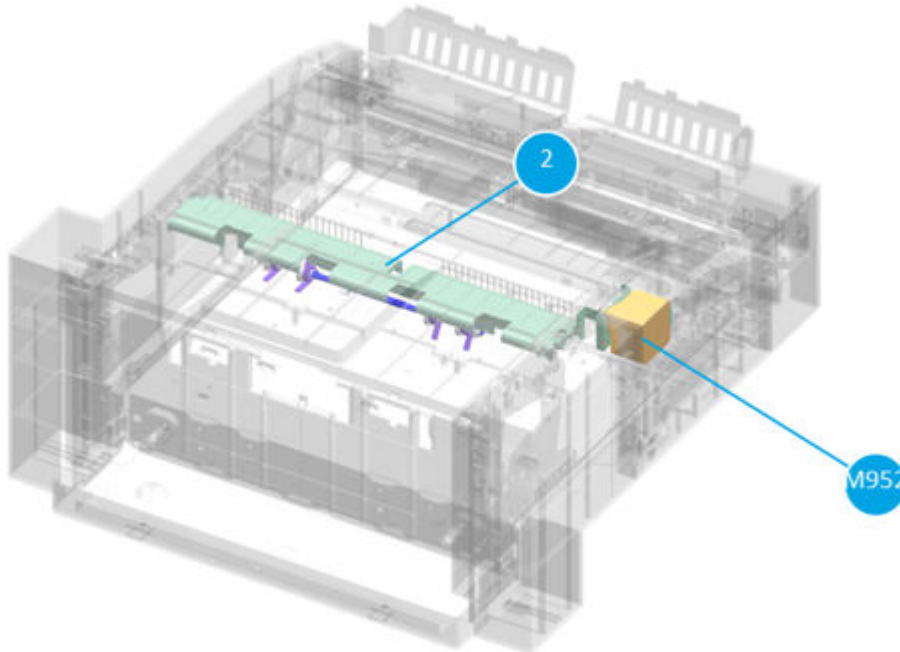


Table 3-229 Overview of the paddle unit, view 2

No	Part name	Part number	Description
M952	Exit motor	JC31-00169B	Drive the sub paddle unit connected by a belt
2	Sub paddle	JC90-01336A	Get the paper move to the end fence and arrange them to be stapled correctly

Figure 3-372 Detail view of the paddle unit, view 1

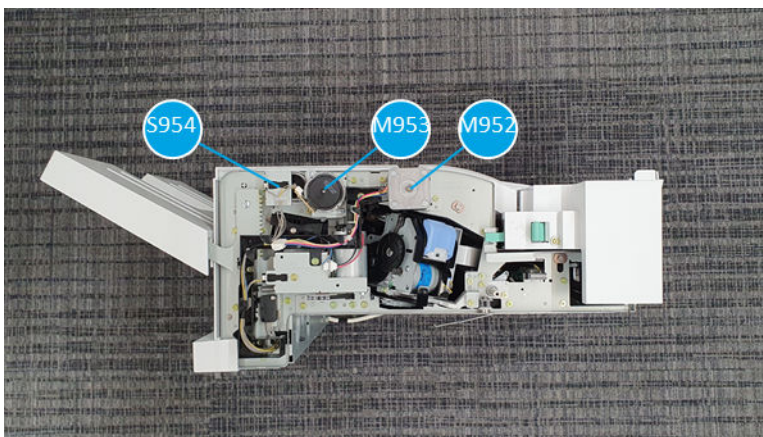


Table 3-230 Detail view of the paddle unit, view 1

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S954	Main paddle home sensor	0604-001393	Detect the home position of the main paddle
M953	Main paddlemotor	JC90-01331A	Drive the main paddle unit connected by a belt
M952	Exit motor	JC31-00169B	Drive the sub paddle unit connected by a belt

Figure 3-373 Detail view of the paddle unit, view 2

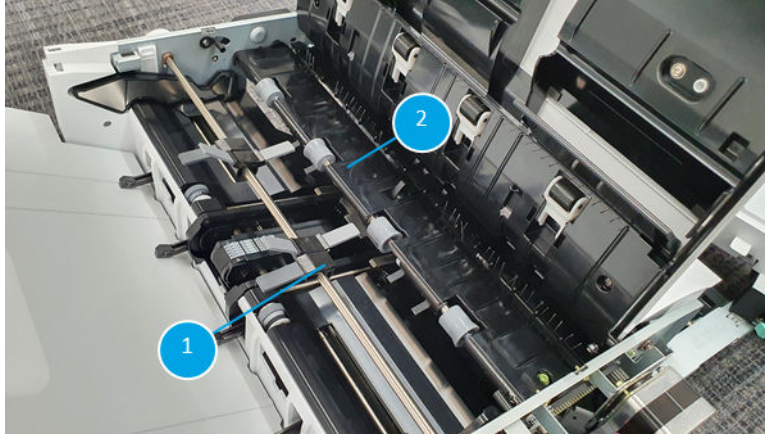


Table 3-231 Detail view of the paddle unit, view 2

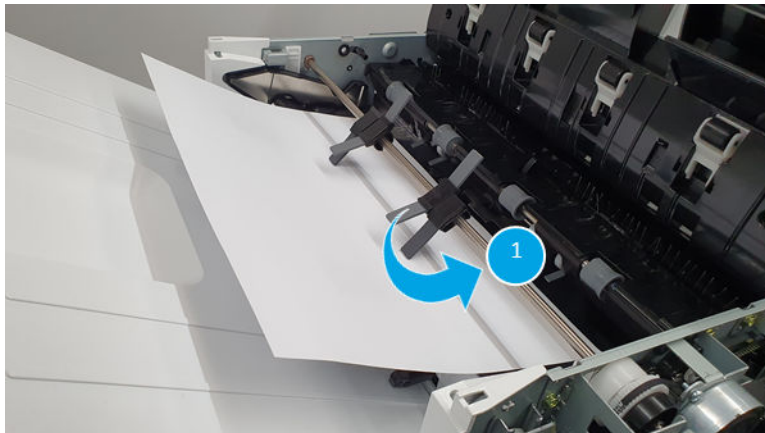
No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Main paddle	JC90-01327A	Move the paper to the sub paddle unit
2	Sub paddle	JC90-01336A	Get the paper move to the end fence and arrange them to be stapled correctly

Paddle unit operation

Learn about the paddle unit operation.

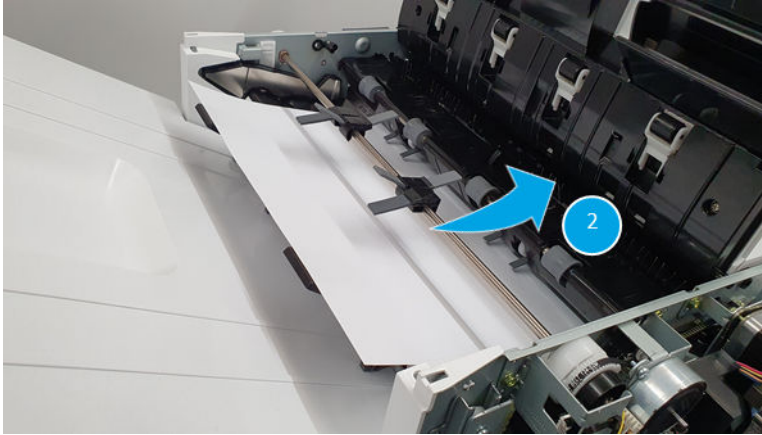
1. A paper drops down from the exit unit, then it moves inside the sub paddle unit by the main paddle unit which is rotated by the main paddle motor.

Figure 3-374 Paddle unit operation, view 1



2. The sub paddle rotates so that the paper goes into the end fence unit. Repeat this process to collect a certain amount of paper and store it inside the end fence unit.

Figure 3-375 Paddle unit operation, view 2



End fence unit

You will learn more about the end fence unit of the inner finisher.

End fence unit overview

Learn about the end fence unit overview.

Figure 3-376 Overview of the end fence unit

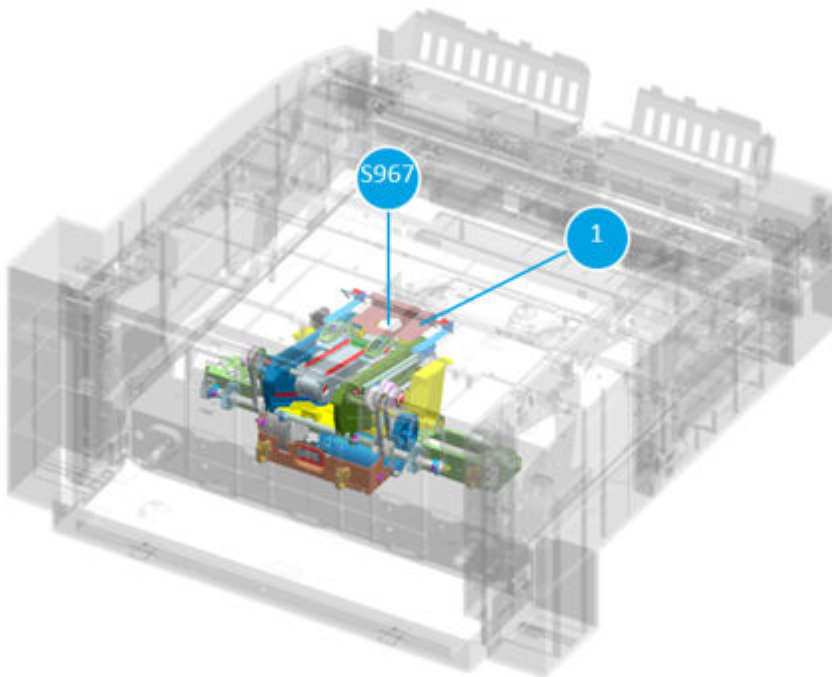


Table 3-232 Overview of the end fence unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	End fence	JC61-06428A	Align a paper toward top and bottom direction
S967	End fence sensor	0604-001381	Check the paper is properly loaded into the end fence unit for paper alignment.

Figure 3-377 Detail view of the end fence unit

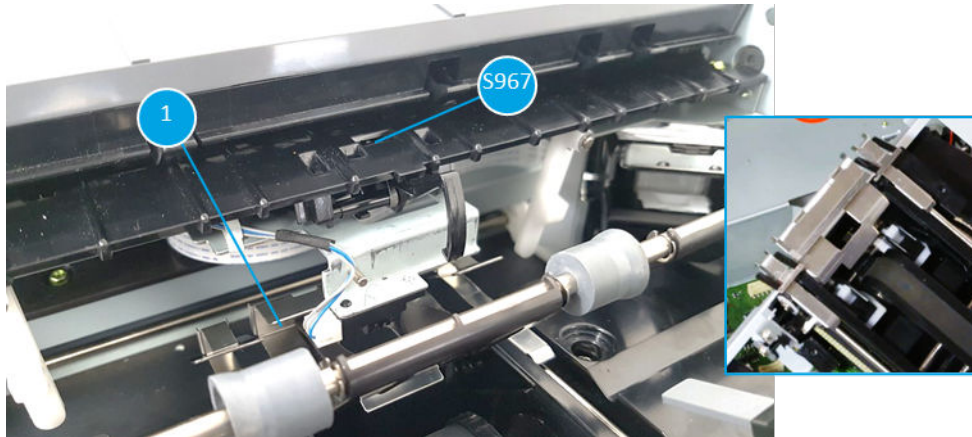


Table 3-233 Overview of the end fence unit

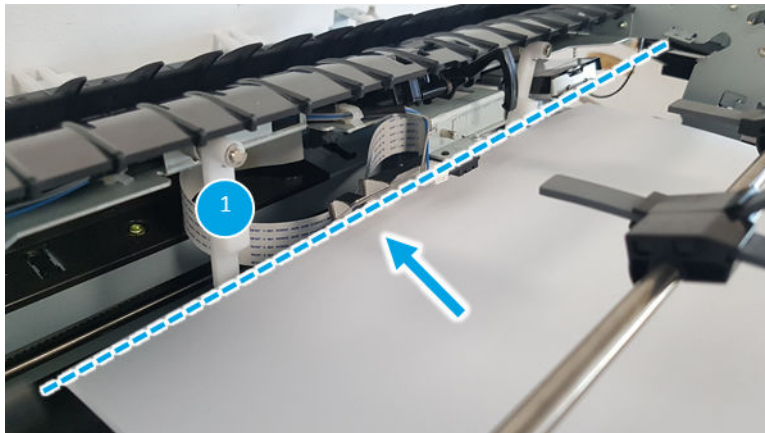
No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	End fence	JC61-06428A	Align a paper toward top and bottom direction
S967	End fence sensor	0604-001381	Check the paper is properly loaded into the end fence unit for paper alignment.

End fence unit operation

Learn about the end fence unit operation.

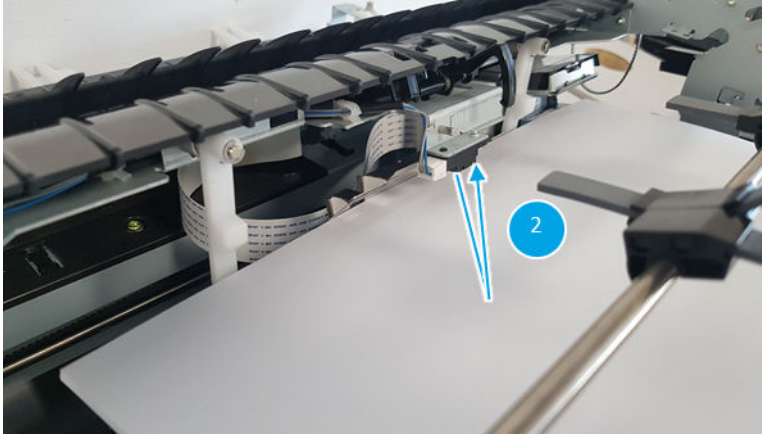
1. A paper goes into the end fence unit through the main paddle unit and sub paddle unit. At the same time the end fence unit is aligned the paper to the direction of line (callout 1).

Figure 3-378 End fence unit operation, view 1



2. The end fence sensor is checking whether the paper goes into the end fence sensor properly.

Figure 3-379 End fence unit operation, view 2



Tamper unit

You will learn more about the tamper unit of the inner finisher.

Tamper unit overview

Learn about the tamper unit overview.

The tamper unit functions to align the left and right sides of a bundle of paper in order to staple it to the correct position. When a certain amount of paper for stapling is collected after printing, the tamper unit hits the left and right ends of the paper to align the paper correctly. Each tamper has a motor on the back side that delivers driving force to move. The tamper unit sensors are mounted on the back side of the unit, to check the position of the tamper unit.

Figure 3-380 Overview of the tamper unit

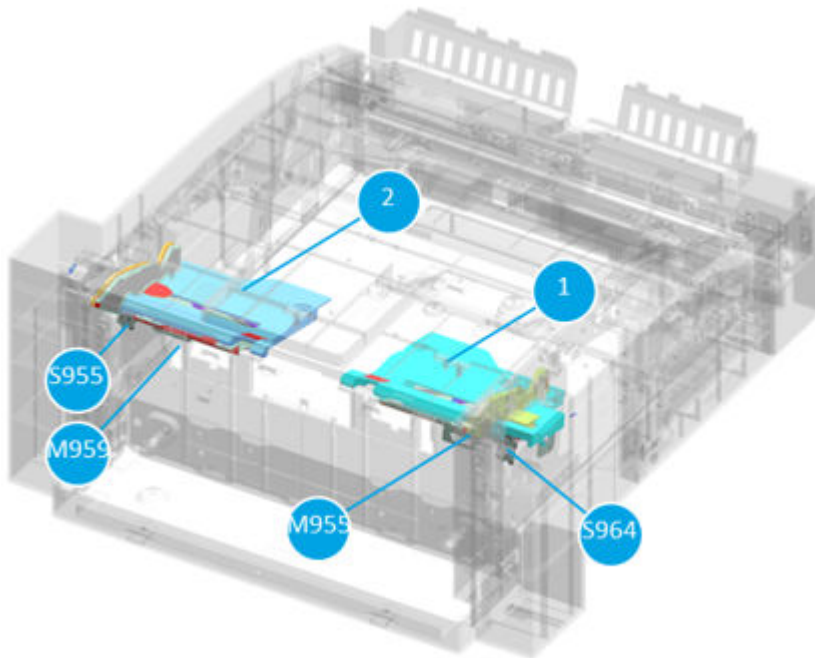


Table 3-234 Overview of the tamper unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Front tamper	JC82-00899A	Align left and right side of paper
2	Rear tamper	JC82-00900A	Align left and right side of paper
M955	Rear tamper motor	JC93-01001A	Drive the rear tamper unit
S964	Rear tamper home sensor	0604-001393	Detect the reference position of the tamper unit
M959	Front tamper motor assembly	JC93-01001A	Drive the front tamper unit
S955	Front tamper home sensor	0604-001393	Detect the reference position of the tamper unit

Figure 3-381 Detail view of the tamper unit

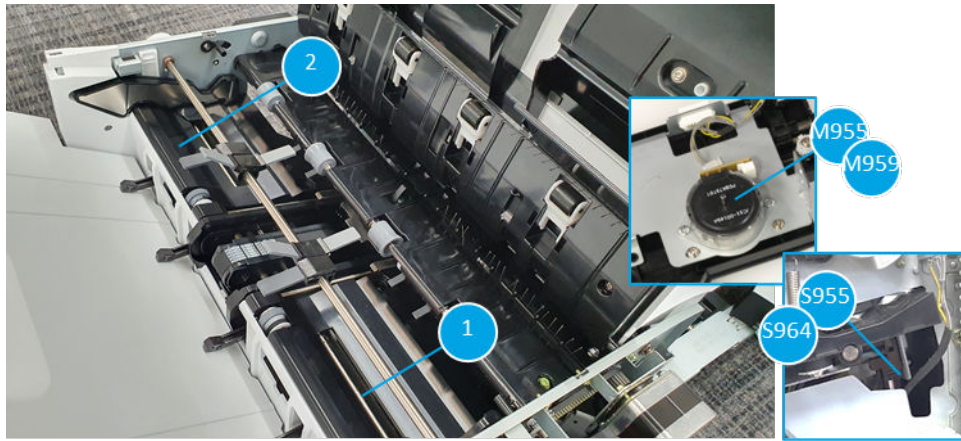


Table 3-235 Overview of the tamper unit

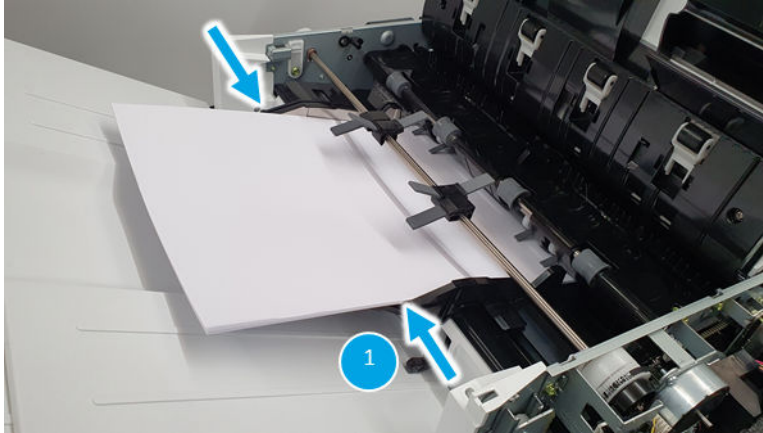
No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Front tamper	JC82-00899A	Align left and right side of paper
2	Rear tamper	JC82-00900A	Align left and right side of paper
M955	Rear tamper motor	JC93-01001A	Drive the rear tamper unit
S964	Rear tamper home sensor	0604-001393	Detect the reference position of the tamper unit
M959	Front tamper motor assembly	JC93-01001A	Drive the front tamper unit
S955	Front tamper home sensor	0604-001393	Detect the reference position of the tamper unit

Tamper unit operation

Learn about the tamper unit operation.

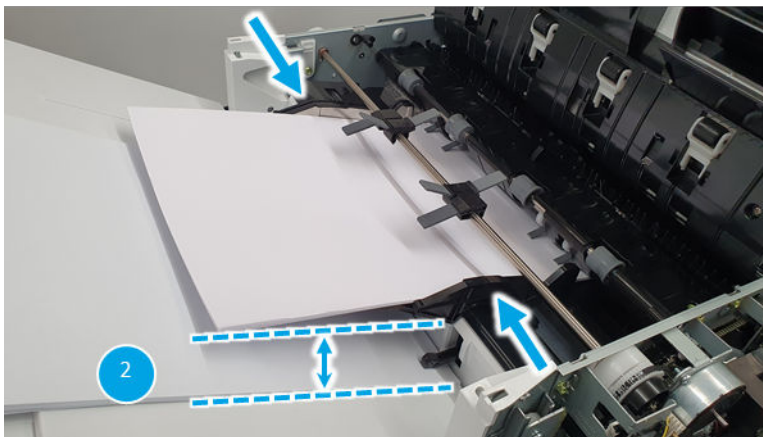
1. The paper is arranged at the end fence unit, then front and rear tamper arrange both left and right side of the paper.

Figure 3-382 Tamper unit operation, view 1



2. In case of offset printing, move the tamping position to the left or right rather than the center of the output tray. Due to this, the stacking position of the paper is different for each copy.

Figure 3-383 Tamper unit operation, view 2



Stapler unit

You will learn more about the stapler unit of the inner finisher.

Stapler unit overview

Learn about the stapler unit overview.

Stapler unit is a device installed inside the finisher that staples a bundle of aligned documents. Documents are collected as a bundle by the tamper unit and the end fence unit for stapling, then stapler assembly staples the bundle. There are six options to make a bundle.

Figure 3-384 Stapling location



The stapler unit moves using the stapler motor installed inside. The four stapler position sensors are mounted so that the stapler can be positioned in the exact stapling position whether it is stapled on the left, the right, or at the center of the document. Stapling is done by the motor inside the stapler assembly.

Figure 3-385 Overview of the stapler unit, view 1

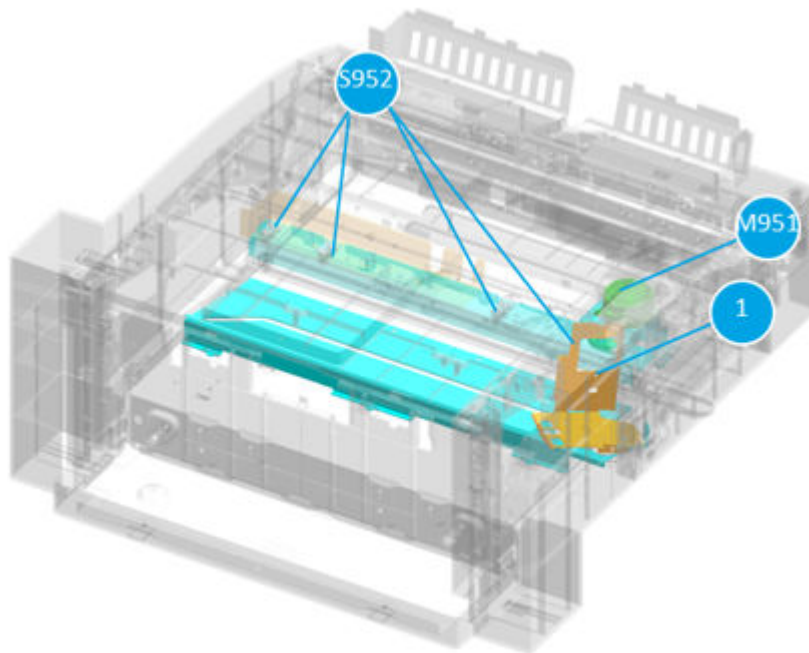


Table 3-236 Overview of the stapler unit, view 1

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Stapler assembly	6GW49-40001	Staple a bundle of paper
S952	Stapler position sensor	0604-001393	Detect and moves the staple assembly position to make a bundle of paper at the exact location
M951	Stapler position motor	JC93-00999A	Get the staple assembly move toward top and down direction of paper

Figure 3-386 Detail view of the stapler unit, view 1

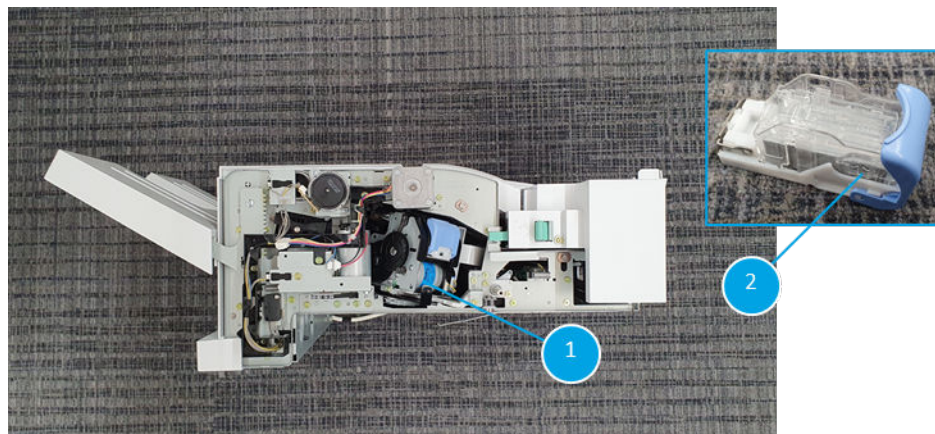


Table 3-237 Overview of the stapler unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Stapler assembly	6GW49-60003	Staple a bundle of paper
2	Staple cartridge	6GW49-40001	Staple cartridge

Figure 3-387 Detail view of the stapler unit, view 2

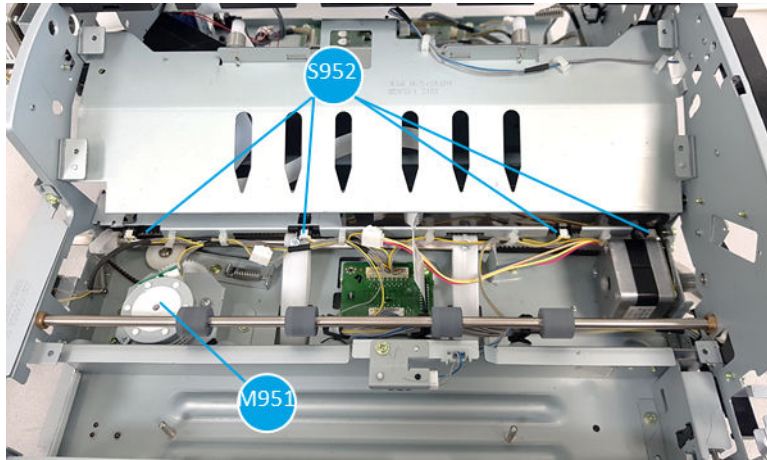


Table 3-238 Overview of the stapler unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S952	Stapler position sensor	0604-001393	Detect and moves the stapler assembly position to make a bundle of paper at the exact location
M951	Stapler position motor	JC93-00999A	Get the stapler assembly move toward top and down direction of paper


Staple and staple cartridge

Learn about the stapler and staple cartridge.

1. Staple cartridge: JC81-07408B. Initial staples included

Figure 3-388 Staple cartridge for stapler unit



 **NOTE:** Staple handle color may vary (blue or green color).

2. Staple: Y1G13-67901. 3 EA in 1 box.

Figure 3-389 Staple for stapler unit

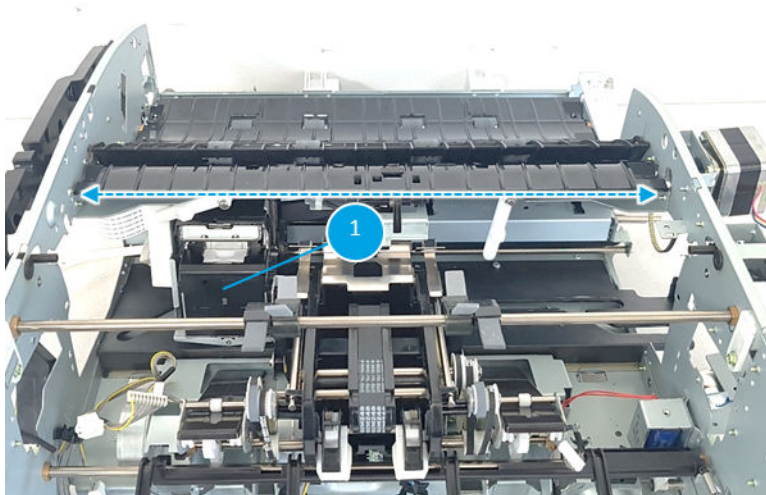


Stapler unit operation

Learn about the stapler unit operation.

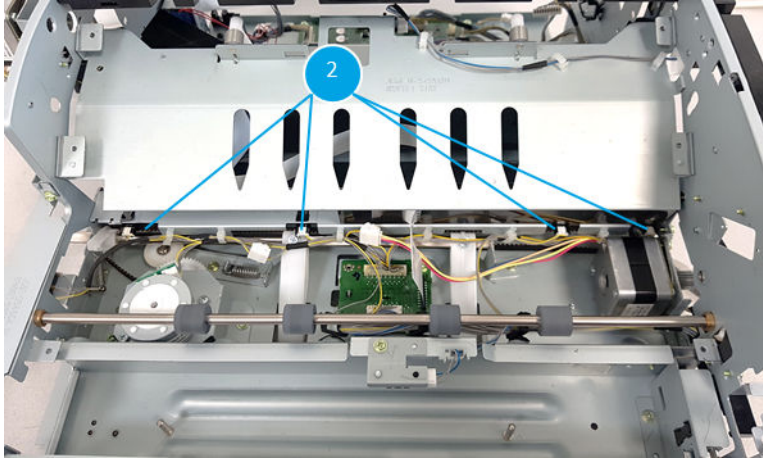
1. The stapler position motor delivers the stapler assembly (callout 1) to the horizontal direction.

Figure 3-390 Stapler unit operation, view 1



2. The stapler assembly checks front and rear home position and moves where the stapler position sensors are located depending on stapling types.

Figure 3-391 Stapler unit operation, view 2



Ejector unit

You will learn more about the ejector unit of the inner finisher.

Ejector unit overview

Learn about the ejector unit overview.

The ejector unit moves a bundle of stapled paper out to the output tray direction. The ejector unit consists of ejector 1 and ejector 2. The ejector 1 transfers a stapled paper loaded at the end fence unit to the ejector 2 unit. During this process, the ejector 1 motor transmits the driving force to the ejector 1 unit. And the ejector 1 home position sensor controls the movement of the ejector 1. When the paper arrives at the ejector 2 unit, the ejector 2 grabs a stack of paper and ejects it onto the output tray. The ejector 2 motor is responsible for this process, and the ejector 2 motor sensor helps it to be controlled correctly. In addition, the ejector 2 home position sensor is mounted to check the location of the ejector 2.

Figure 3-392 Overview of the ejector unit

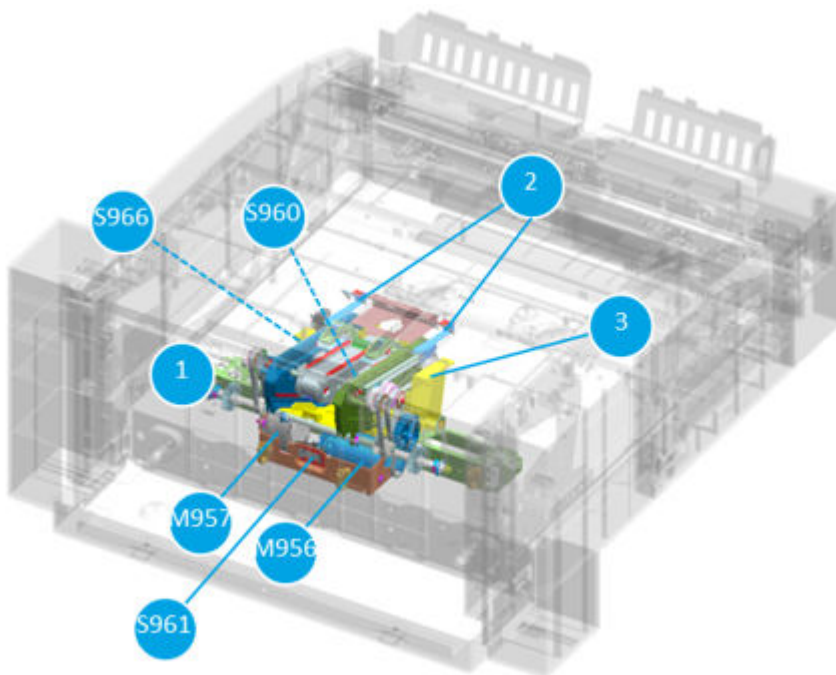


Table 3-239 Overview of the ejector unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Ejector	SS456-61001	
2	Ejector 1	NA	Moves the stack of paper from the end fence to the ejector 2
3	Ejector 2	NA	Moves the paper from the ejector 1 to the output tray
S960	Ejector 2 home sensor	0604-001393	Detects the home position of the ejector 2
S966	Ejector 1 home sensor	0604-001393	Detects the home position of the ejector 1
M956	Ejector 2 motor	JC93-01168A	Moves the ejector 2 forward and backward
S961	Ejector 2 motor sensor	0604-001393	Detects the ejector 2 motor rotation
M957	Ejector1 motor	JC93-00998A	Grabs a stack of paper, then moves it to the output tray

Figure 3-393 Detail view of the ejector unit

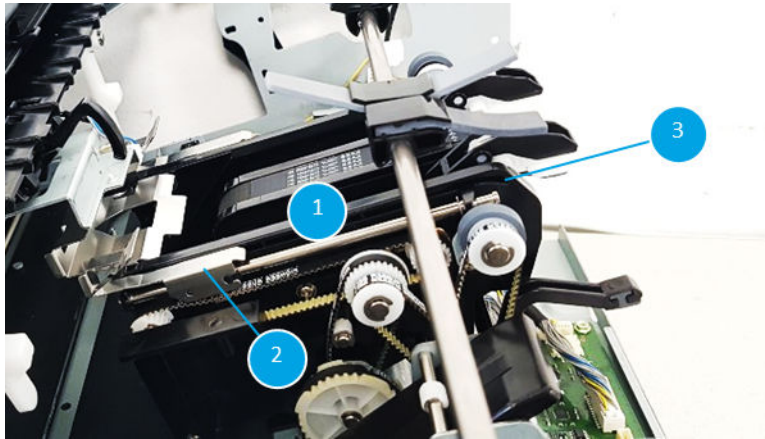


Table 3-240 Detail view of the ejector unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Ejector	SS456-61001	
2	Ejector 1	NA	Moves the stack of paper from the end fence to the ejector 2
3	Ejector 2	NA	Moves the paper from the ejector 1 to the output tray
S960	Ejector 2 home sensor	0604-001393	Detects the home position of the ejector 2

Figure 3-394 Parts information of the ejector unit

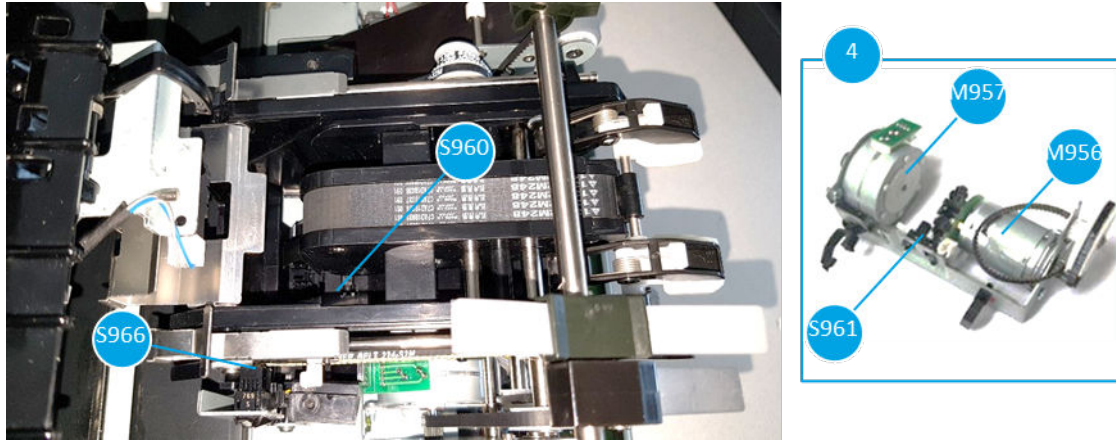


Table 3-241 Parts information of the ejector unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
S960	Ejector 2 home sensor	0604-001393	Detects the home position of the ejector 2
S966	Ejector 1 home sensor	0604-001393	Detects the home position of the ejector 1
4	Ejector motor assembly	JC90-01309A	Moves the ejector 1 and ejector 2
M956	Ejector 2 motor	JC93-01168A	Moves the ejector 2 forward and backward
S961	Ejector 2 motor sensor	0604-001393	Detects the ejector 2 motor rotation
M957	Ejector1 motor	JC93-00998A	Grabs a stack of paper, then moves it to the output tray

Ejector unit operation

Learn about the ejector unit operation.

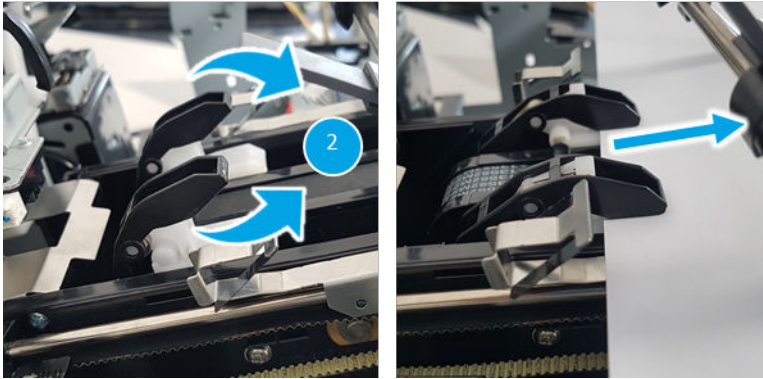
1. The ejector 1 pushes aligned paper at the end fence unit to ejector 2 unit.

Figure 3-395 Ejector unit operation, view 1



2. The ejector 2 grabs paper, then moves forward to the output tray unit direction, then drops the paper on the output tray.

Figure 3-396 Ejector unit operation, view 2



Output tray and paper holding unit

You will learn more about the output tray and paper holding unit of the inner finisher.

Output tray and paper holding unit overview

Learn about the output tray and paper holding unit overview.

The output tray moves up and down along the rails inside the finisher, and the output tray motor controls those movement according to the signals sent from the paper holding sensor. As paper stacks up on the output tray, the paper holding unit is lifted by papers. When the paper holding sensor is touched, the output tray moves downward.

The machine detects when the output tray is full as the output tray hits the lower limit switch. The output tray top of stack sensor is mounted on both left and right sides for the case that the paper holding sensor breaks down.

The paper holding solenoid lifts the paper holding actuator up when a new bundle of paper come to the output tray.

Figure 3-397 Overview of the output tray unit

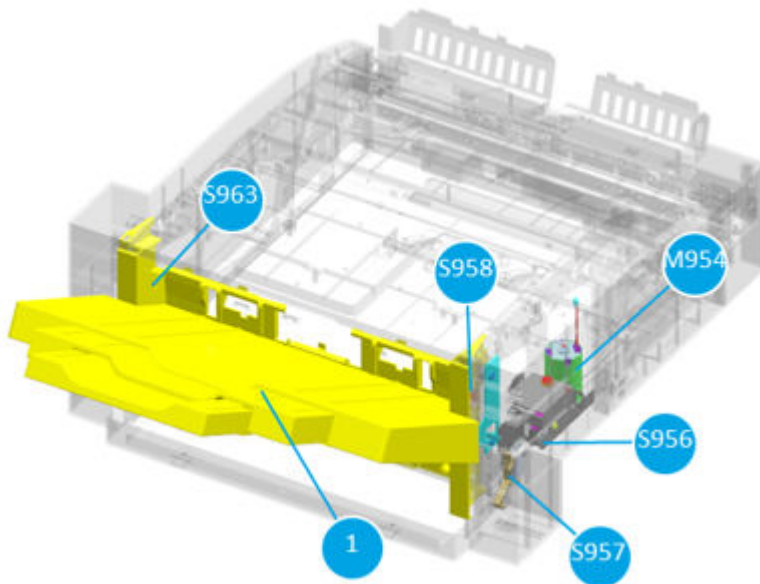


Table 3-242 Overview of the output tray unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Output tray	5QK09-60118	Stores paper
M954	Output tray motor assembly	JC90-01334B	Move the output tray up and down
S956	Output tray motor sensor	0604-001393	Detect whether the output tray motor is operational
S957	Output tray lower limit switch	JC90-01320A	Detects the lowest position of the output tray
2	Output tray top of stack sensor kit	JC82-01039A	Detect abnormal movement of output tray (output tray top of stack sensor receiver + led)
S958	Output tray top of stack sensor receiver	NA	-
S963	Output tray top of stack sensor transmitter	NA	-

Figure 3-398 Detail view of the output tray unit

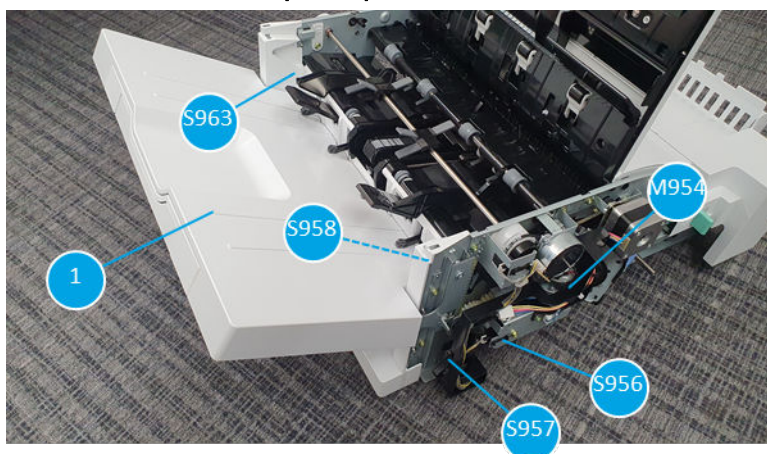


Table 3-243 Detail view of the output tray unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Output tray	5QK09-60118	Stores paper
M954	Output tray motor assembly	JC90-01334B	Move the output tray up and down
S956	Output tray motor sensor	0604-001393	Detect whether the output tray motor is operational
S957	Output tray lower limit switch	JC90-01320A	Detects the lowest position of the output tray
2	Output tray top of stack sensor kit	JC82-01039A	Detect abnormal movement of output tray (output tray top of stack sensor receiver + led)
S958	Output tray top of stack sensor receiver	NA	-
S963	Output tray top of stack sensor transmitter	NA	-

Figure 3-399 Overview of the paper holding unit

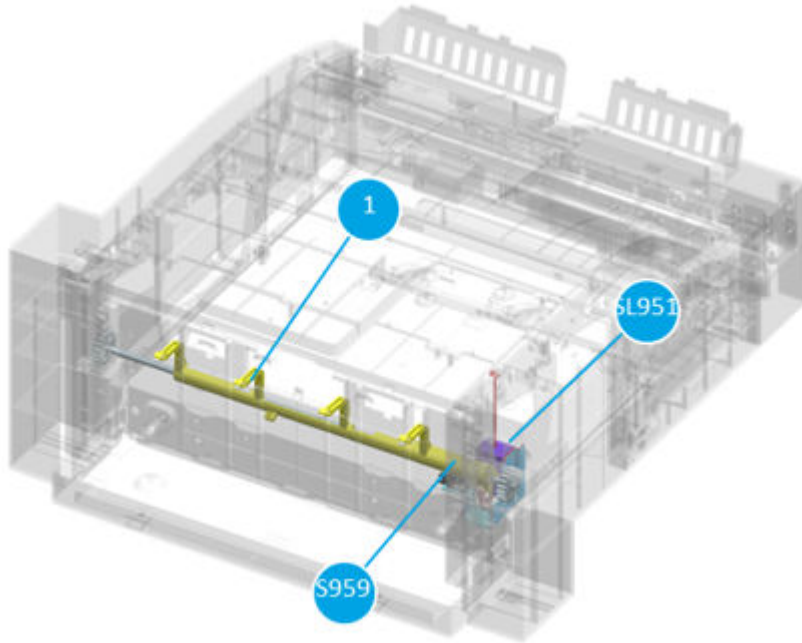


Table 3-244 Overview of the paper holding unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Paper holding actuator	JC90-01313A	Control the output tray height, and grabs stacked paper not to be scattered
SL951	Paper holding solenoid	JC33-00037A	Move paper holding actuator up when paper goes out to the output tray
S959	Paper holding sensor	0604-001393	Detect stacked paper position

Figure 3-400 Detail view of the paper holding unit

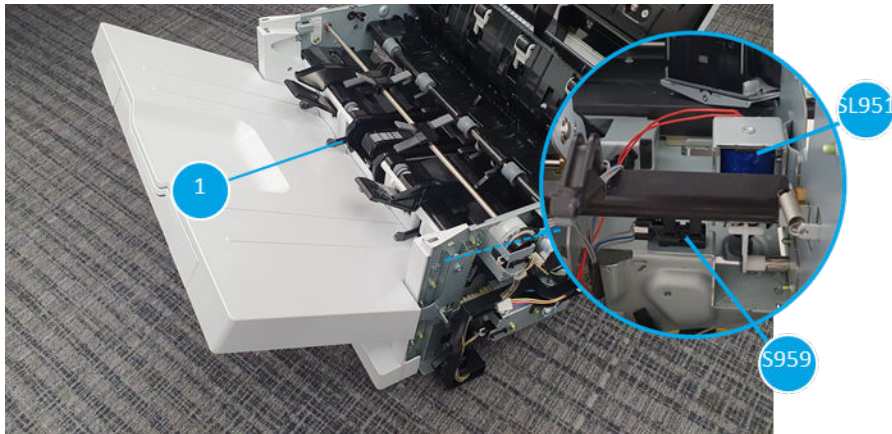


Table 3-245 Detail view of the paper holding unit

No	Part name	Part number	Description
1	Paper holding actuator	JC90-01313A	Control the output tray height, and grabs stacked paper not to be scattered

Table 3-245 Detail view of the paper holding unit (continued)

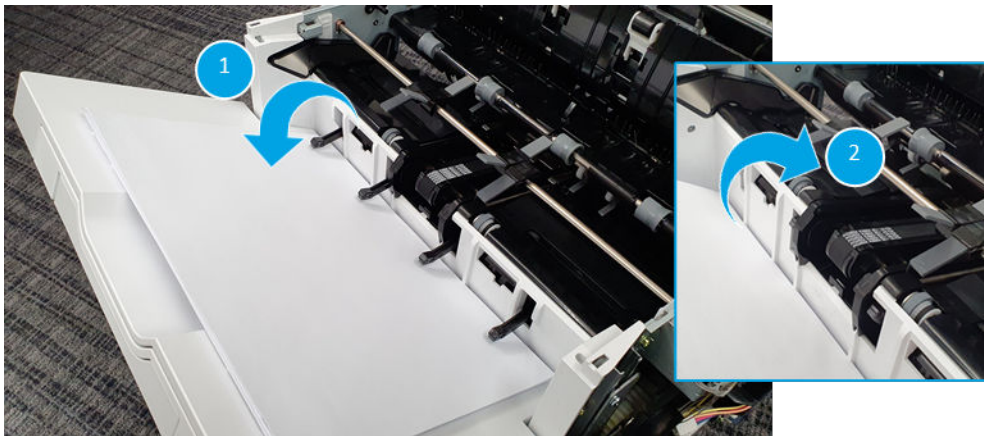
No	Part name	Part number	Description
SL951	Paper holding solenoid	JC33-00037A	Move paper holding actuator up when paper goes out to the output tray
S959	Paper holding sensor	0604-001393	Detect stacked paper position

Output tray and paper holding unit operation

Learn about the output tray and paper holding unit operation.

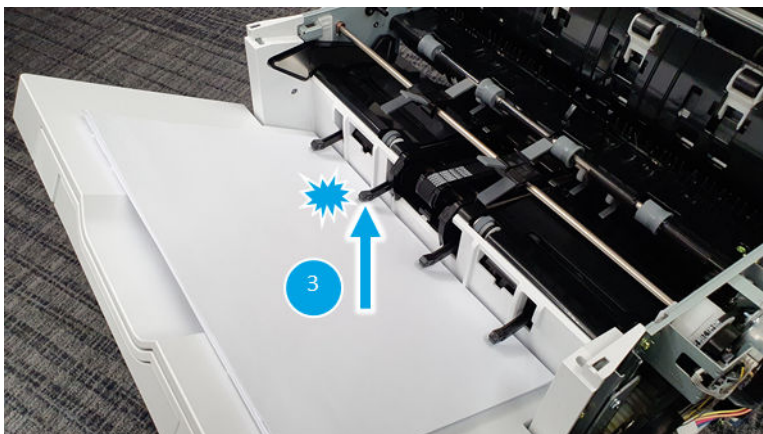
1. The paper holding actuator helps the paper stay stable on the output tray by pushing the paper (callout 1). When ejecting the paper, it moves to the inside of the left cover so that the paper properly stacks on the output tray (callout 2).

Figure 3-401 Output tray and paper holding unit operation, view 1



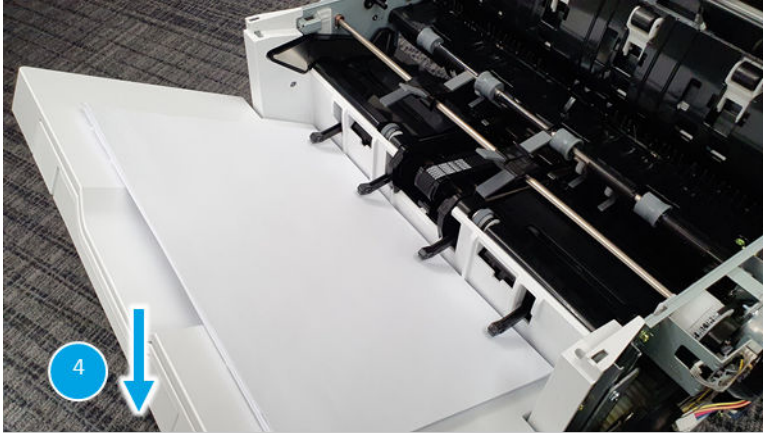
2. As the paper piles up on the tray, it touches the paper holding actuator to upwards (callout 3) and changes the paper holding sensor signal.

Figure 3-402 Output tray and paper holding unit operation, view 2



3. Recognizing this, the output tray motor lowers the position of the output tray to the bottom (callout 4), allowing more paper to be stacked.

Figure 3-403 Output tray and paper holding unit operation, view 3



4. When it reaches the end of the moving range, the output tray lower limit switch is pressed (callout 5), and the finishing job stops with the output tray full message.

Figure 3-404 Output tray and paper holding unit operation, view 4



5. In the event of an abnormal loading of paper, for example overflow due to a very severe curl, the signal from the top of stack sensor is changed by being obscured by the paper. Recognizing this, the machine forcibly terminates printing and displays an error message.

PCA

You will learn more about the inner finisher PCA.

Inner finisher main PCA

Learn about the inner finisher main PCA.

The inner finisher main PCA controls operation of the inner finisher as well as communicate with the main PCA.

- Inner finisher main PCA part number: 6GW49-60001 (P951)

Figure 3-405 Inner finisher main PCA

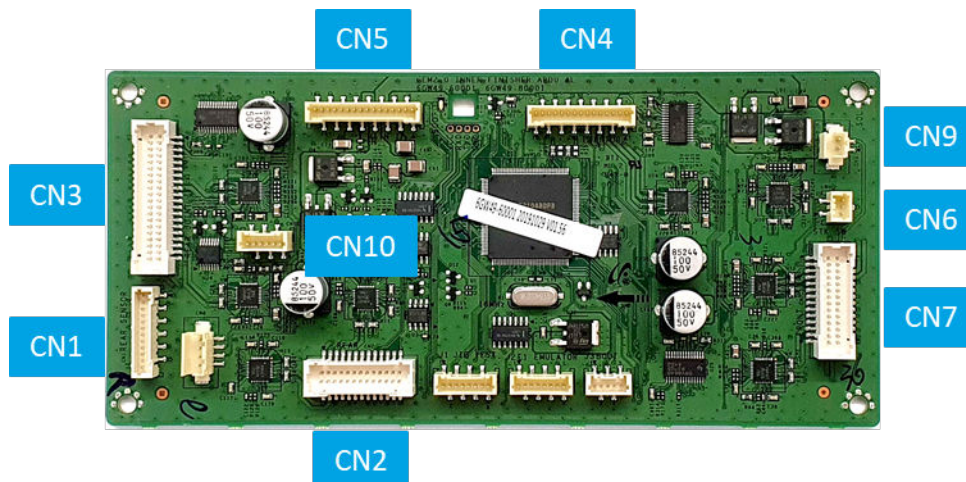


Table 3-246 Inner finisher main PCA

CN number	Connection	Type	Harness part number
IF-CN1	Punch wastebbox sensor Finisher docking sensor	12pin	JC31-02174A
IF-CN2	Rear tamper home sensor Output tray top of stack sensor Exit sensor end fence sensor Paper support home sensor Rear tamper motor Paper support motor	26pin	JC39-02176A
IF-CN3	Stapler low sensor Stapler ready sensor Stapler home sensor Stapler motor Stapler position motor Entrance motor Front cover switch Punch motor Stapler position sensor (front home) Stapler position sensor (rear home) Punch waste full sensor Punch motor sensor Punch home sensor	40pin	JC39-02173A

Table 3-246 Inner finisher main PCA (continued)

CN number	Connection	Type	Harness part number
IF-CN4	Ejector 2 motor Ejector 1 motor Ejector 2 motor sensor Ejector 2 home sensor Ejector 1 home sensor	15pin	JC39-02165A
IF-CN5	Main PCA	16pin	JC39-02169A
IF-CN6	Output tray lower limit switch	3pin	JC39-02178A
IF-CN7	Exit motor Main paddle motor Output tray motor Front tamper motor Output tray motor sensor Main paddle home sensor Front tamper home sensor Paper holding sensor Output tray top of stack sensor	28pin	JC39-02168A
IF-CN9	Paper holding solenoid	2pin	-
IF-CN10	Stapler position sensor (mid front) Stapler position sensor (mid rear)	6pin	JC39-02173A

Inner finisher rear joint PCA

Learn about the inner finisher rear joint PCA.

Inner finisher rear joint PCA locates inside the inner finisher so that it communicates with the inner finisher mainPCA and transfer signals and commands to the stapler motor, sensor, top door switch, and the entrance motor.

- Inner finisher rear joint PCA part number: JC92-02780A (P952)

Figure 3-406 Inner finisher rear joint PCA

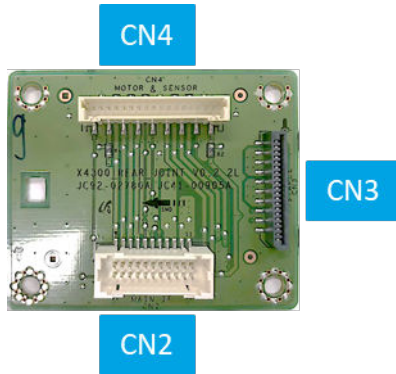


Table 3-247 Inner finisher rear joint PCA

CN number	Connection	Type	Harness part number
IFsub-CN2	IF-CN3	22pin	JC39-02173A
IFsub-CN3	Stapler assembly	20Pin FFC	JC39-02164, JC39-02177A
IFsub-CN4	Stapler position motor Front stapler position sensor Rear stapler position sensor Top door switch Entrance moto	18pin	JC39-02172A

4 Problem solving

Learn about problem solving.

General troubleshooting guide

Learn about general troubleshooting.

Troubleshooting process

Learn about the troubleshooting process.

Determine the problem source

When the printer malfunctions or encounters an unexpected situation, the printer control panel alerts you to the situation. This section contains a pre-troubleshooting checklist to filter out many possible causes of the problem. A troubleshooting flowchart helps you diagnose the root cause of the problem. The remainder of this chapter provides steps for correcting problems.

- Use the troubleshooting flowchart to pinpoint the root cause of hardware malfunctions. The flowchart guides you to the section of this chapter that contains steps for correcting the malfunction.

Before beginning any troubleshooting procedure, check the following issues:

- Are supply items within their rated life?
- Are supply items Genuine HP supplies?
- Does the configuration page reveal any configuration errors?



NOTE: The customer or service provider is responsible for checking supplies and for using supplies that are in good condition.

Power subsystem

Learn about the power subsystem.

Power-on checks

The basic printer functions should start up when the printer is connected into an electrical outlet and the power switch is pushed to the *on* position. If the printer does not start, use the information in this section to isolate and solve the problem.

If the control-panel display remains blank, random patterns display, or asterisks remain on the control-panel display, perform power-on checks to find the cause of the problem.

Power-on troubleshooting overview

If the control panel is blank 1 minute after turning on the printer, check the following items:

During normal operation, a cooling fan begins to spin briefly after the printer power is turned on. Place your hand over the vents at the rear of the printer, next to the formatter, or on the rear of the

scanner. If the fan is operating, you will feel air passing out of the printer. You can lean close to the printer and hear the fan operating.

A fan begins to blow on the right door (fuser), and then the control panel goes through a series of set up functions. The main motor turns on (unless the left door or cartridge access door is open, a jam condition is sensed, or the paper-path sensors are damaged). You might be able to visually and audibly determine if the main motor is turned on.

If the fan and main motor are operating correctly, the next troubleshooting step is to isolate print engine, formatter, and control panel problems.

1. Make sure that the printer is connected directly into an active electrical outlet (not a power strip) that delivers the correct voltage.
2. Make sure that the power switch is in the *on* position, and then verify that the LED is on.
3. Make sure that the fan runs briefly, which indicates that the power supply is operational.
4. Depress the button on the back of the control panel to test the control panel functionality.
5. Make sure that the control-panel display wire harness is connected.
6. Remove any external solutions, and then try to turn the printer on again.

Troubleshooting a blank display, black display, no display, or no power situation

Customers usually report that the control-panel display is not showing anything. It is very important to collect as much information as possible from the customer about the issue to help resolve it.

Following are some printer behaviors the customer might encounter:

- The control panel is completely blank (no LEDs or back light).
- The control panel is blank, but there might be LEDs illuminated.
- The control panel is blank (LEDs are on or flashing) and the back light is on (but no text visible).

Following are some possible causes of a blank control-panel display:

- No power to the printer.
- The control panel contrast setting is not correctly adjusted.
- The formatter connector(s) are not fully seated into the connector(s) on the DC controller, or the connectors are not fully seated on the formatter.
- A faulty component is installed on the formatter (for example a memory DIMM, fax PCA, network PCA, USB device, or other component).
- The formatter is defective.
- The control panel connector is not fully seated, or the control panel is defective.
- The DC controller is defective.

Following are some questions to ask the customer:


- Was the printer newly install or has the printer been properly functioning?
 - For a new install, investigate to see if there was any shipping damage to the printer.


- Did the customer notice any damage to the shipping box or any visible damage to the printer?
- What happened just prior to the control panel going blank?
 - Was the printer serviced recently, a power outage occurred?
 - Has a lightning storm recently occurred?
 - Did the customer recently add a memory DIMM or install a third-party component?
- Make sure to get a complete description of the failure.
 - Is the control-panel display completely blank (might be faint text and no back light)?
 - Is the control-panel display back light on?
 - Has a print job been sent to the printer? The customer might report that their print jobs seemed to print but when they go to the printer the control-panel display is blank.

Recommended actions


If the control-panel display is completely blank (no LEDs illuminated or no back light) check to see if the printer is getting power. Listen for fans or any printer initialization sounds when the power is turned on.

If there are no signs of power, then perform the following:


1. Make sure that the printer is plugged directly into an active electrical outlet (not a power strip or interruptible power supply) that delivers the correct voltage.
-
-  **TIP:** Try using a different power cable if possible.
-
2. Turn the printer power on, and make sure that the fan(s) run briefly (this indicates that the power supply is operational).
 3. Check if the yellow LED on formatter is flashing. If so, there is a communication issue between the formatter and the control panel.
 4. Turn the printer power off.
 5. Make sure that the control-panel display wire harness (and/or flat cable) is properly connected (and fully seated), and then turn the printer power on again.
 6. Check control panel diagnostics by pressing the button on the back of the control panel to run different diagnostic tests.
 7. Verify the status LEDs are illuminated, but the control-panel display is blank. If applicable: Check if the contrast setting is adjusted to very low. If so, try turning the contrast knob to see if the control-panel display becomes visible.
 8. From a host computer, send a print job to the printer.

 **NOTE:** If the print job correctly prints, then the problem is most likely to a defective control panel.


9. Turn the printer power off, and then make sure that the memory DIMM is installed in the correct slot and is fully seated.

 **NOTE:** For some printers, there may be more than one memory DIMM installed. Some printers have third-party solutions/applications or fonts that use memory.

10. Remove all of the components/accessories installed on the formatter (for example, hard drive, solid-state drive, memory DIMM(s), fax PCA, network PCA, USB devices, or other devices).
 - Make sure that the formatter is fully seated.

 **IMPORTANT:** This is important because the formatter or a component on the formatter might be defective or shorted, which causes the printer to lose power.

11. Reinstall the formatter. Make sure that it makes a good connection and is fully seated.
Make sure that all of the connectors on the formatter are correctly connected and fully seated.
12. Turn the printer power on, and then check the control-panel display.
13. If the printer control panel is properly working, replace each removed component (one at a time) to determine which one is causing the problem.

 **CAUTION:** Turn the printer power off, and then on again, after replacing a component on the formatter.

14. If the control-panel display is still blank after performing the above troubleshooting steps, and the control panel diagnostics do not function, replace the control panel. If the control panel diagnostics are functioning, then replace the formatter.

Control panel checks

Learn about the control panel checks.

Control panel diagnostic flowcharts

Learn about the control panel diagnostic flowcharts.

Use the flowcharts in this section to troubleshoot the following control panel problems.

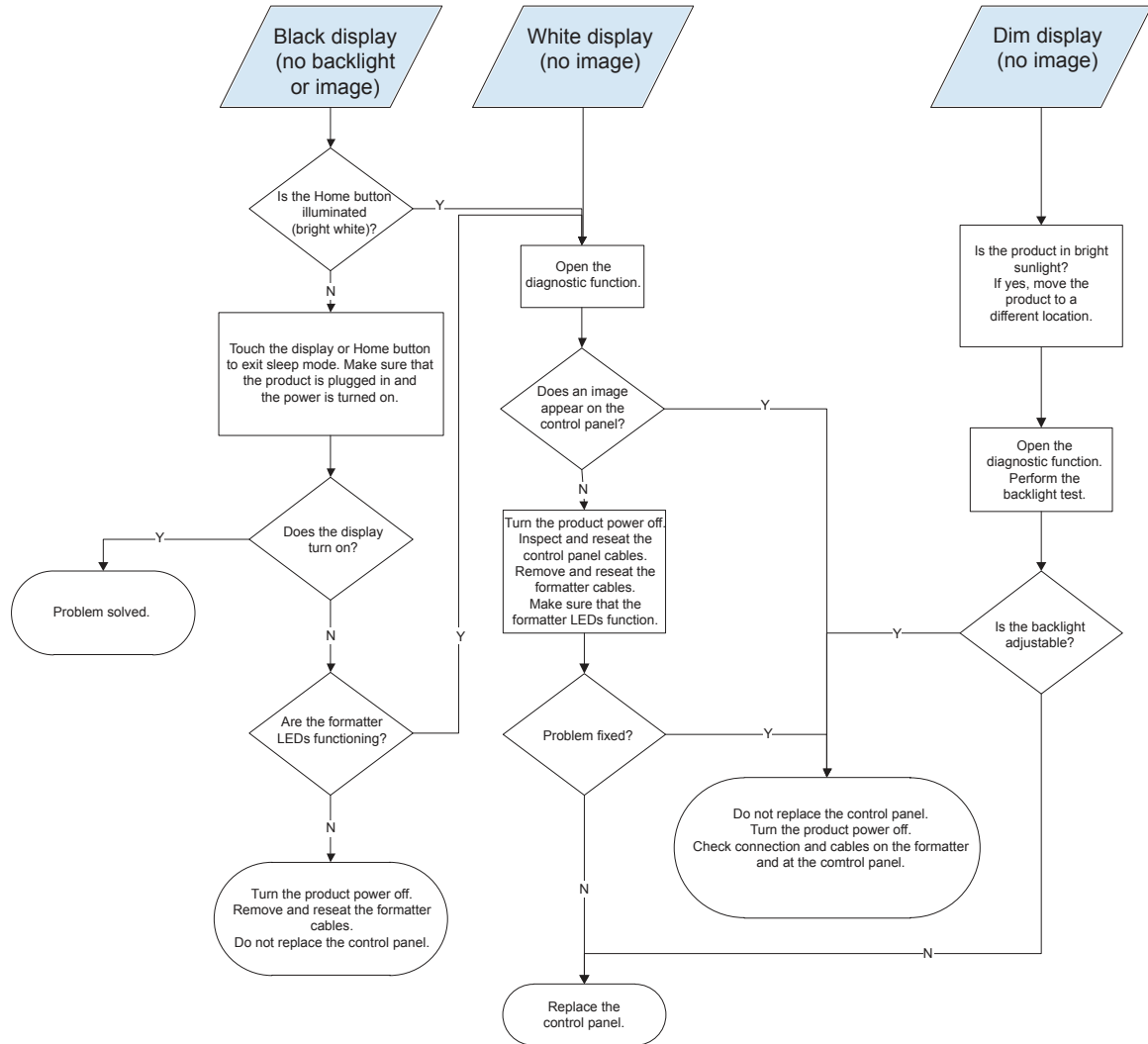
- Touchscreen is blank, white, or dim (no image).
- Touchscreen is slow to respond or requires multiple presses to respond.
- Touchscreen has an unresponsive zone.
- No control panel sound.
- [Home](#) button is unresponsive.
- Hardware integration pocket (HIP) is not functioning (control panel functional).

Touchscreen black, white, or dim (no image)

Learn about the touchscreen black, white, or dim (no image).

 **NOTE:** To open the diagnostic function, press the button on the back of the control panel.

Figure 4-1 Touchscreen blank, white, or dim (no image)

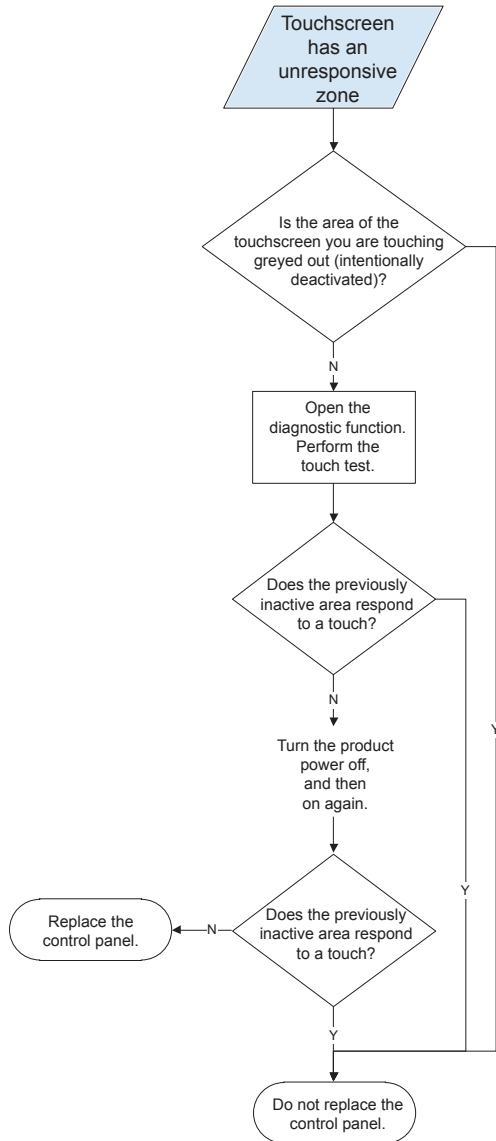


Touchscreen has an unresponsive zone

Learn about how the touchscreen has an unresponsive zone.

NOTE: To open the diagnostic function, press the button on the back of the control panel.

Figure 4-2 Touchscreen has an unresponsive zone



No control panel sound

Learn what to do when there is no control panel sound.


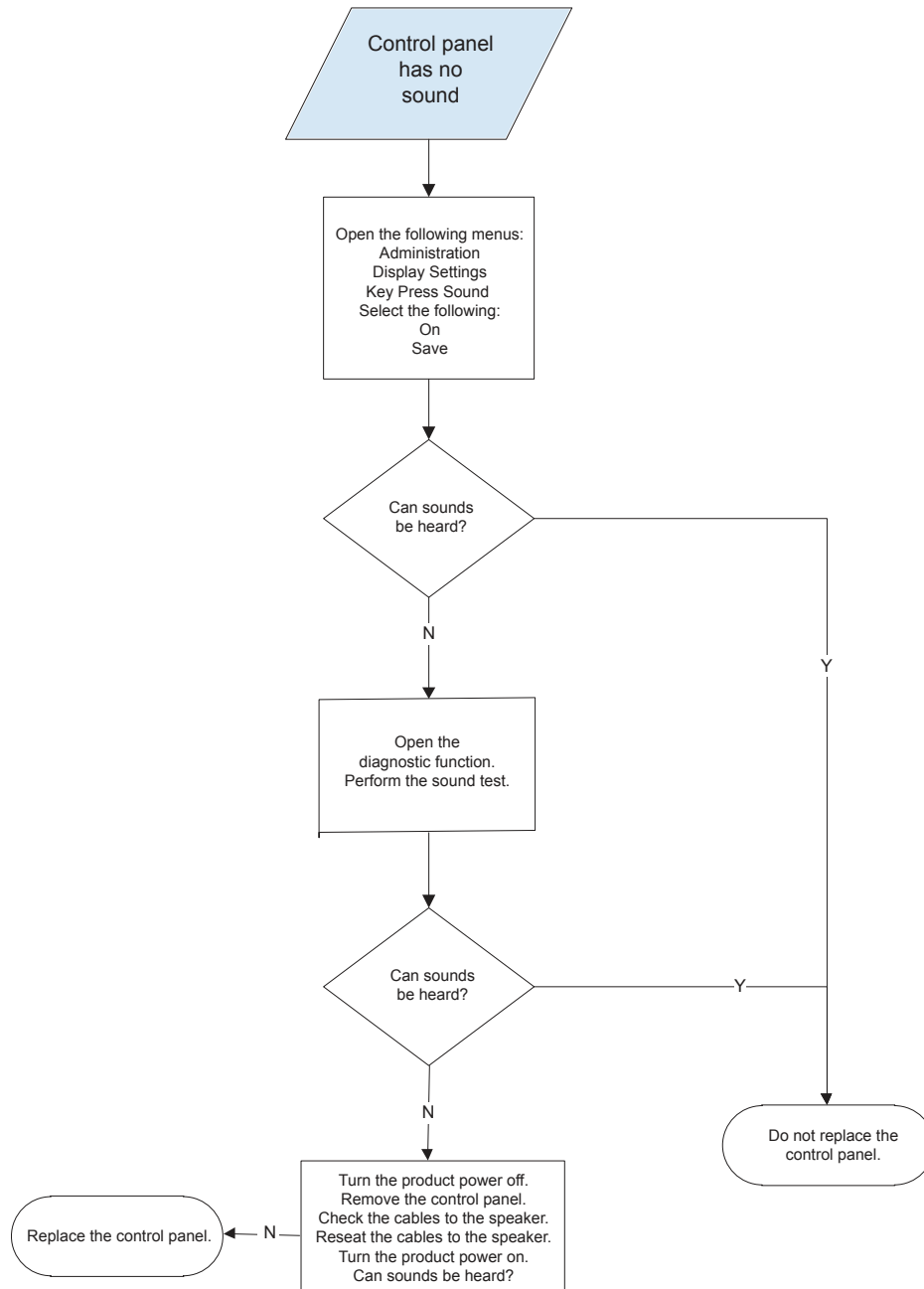
 **NOTE:** To open the diagnostic function, press the button on the back of the control panel.

Figure 4-3 No control panel sound



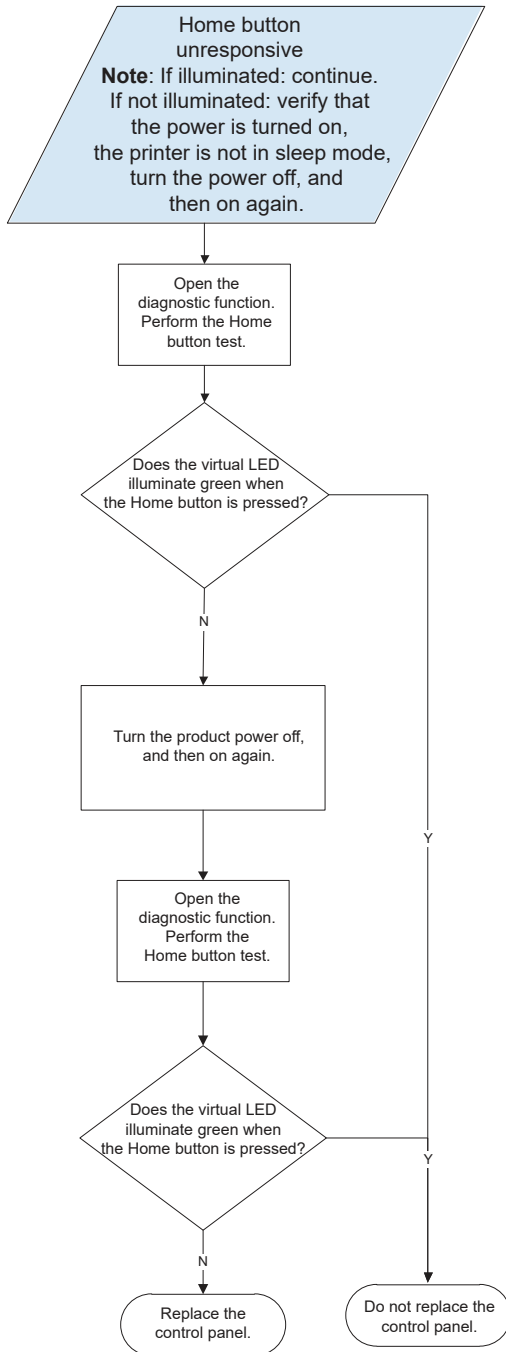
Home button is unresponsive

Learn what to do when the home button is unresponsive.



NOTE: To open the diagnostic function, press the button on the back of the control panel.

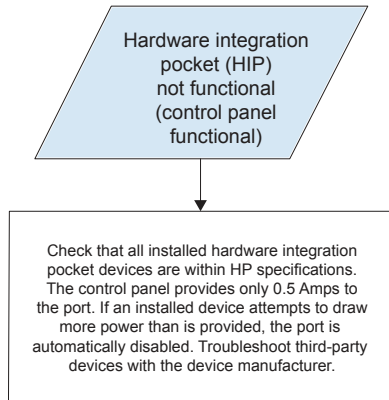
Figure 4-4 Home button is unresponsive



Hardware integration pocket (HIP) is not functioning (control panel functional)

Learn about when the hardware integration pocket (HIP) is not functioning (control panel functional).

Figure 4-5 Hardware integration pocket (HIP) is not functioning (control panel functional)



Individual component diagnostics

Learn about individual component diagnostics.

Tools for troubleshooting: LED diagnostics

LED, engine, and individual diagnostics can identify and troubleshoot printer problems.

Understand lights on the formatter

Three LEDs on the formatter indicate that the printer is functioning correctly.

Figure 4-6 LEDs

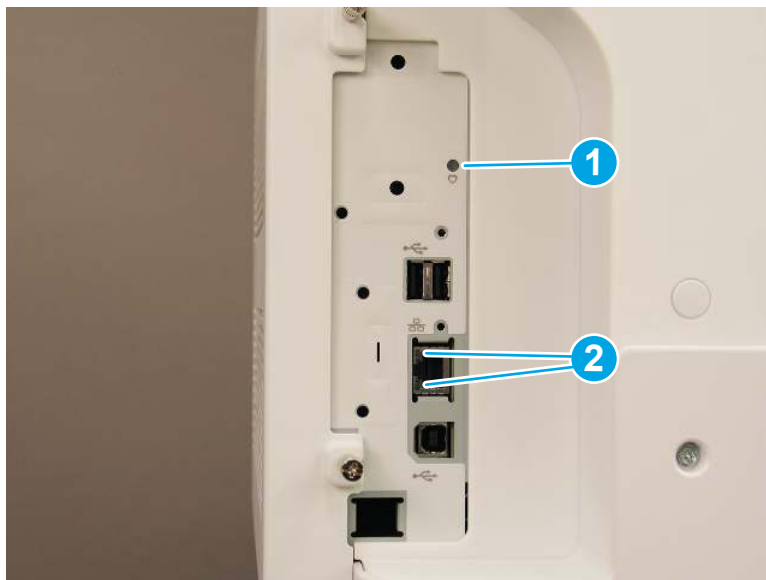


Table 4-1 LEDs

Item	Description
1	Heartbeat LED
2	HP Jetdirect LEDs

HP Jetdirect LEDs

Learn about the HP Jetdirect LEDs.

The embedded HP Jetdirect print server has two LEDs. The yellow LED indicates network activity, and the green LED indicates the link status. A blinking yellow LED indicates network traffic. If the green LED is off, a link has failed.

For link failures, check all the network cable connections. In addition, try to manually configure the link settings on the embedded print server by using the printer control-panel menus.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, select **Settings**.
2. Open the following menus:
 - **Networking**
 - **Ethernet**
 - **Link Speed**
3. Select the appropriate link speed, and then select **OK**.


Tools for troubleshooting: Engine diagnostics

The printer contains extensive internal engine diagnostics that help in troubleshooting print quality, paper path, noise, assembly, and timing issues.

Defeating interlocks

Different tests can be used to isolate different types of issues. For assembly or noise isolation, run the diagnostic test when the toner cartridge door or right door is open.

Defeating the door interlocks allows observation of the paper pick operation (and view the page enter registration).

 **WARNING!** Be careful when performing printer diagnostics to avoid risk of injury. Only trained service personnel should open and run the diagnostics with a door open. Never touch any of the power supplies when the printer is turned on.

Defeat the toner cartridge door interlock

Learn how to defeat the toner cartridge door interlock.

1. Open the toner cartridge door.
2. Insert a folded piece of paper into the slot.


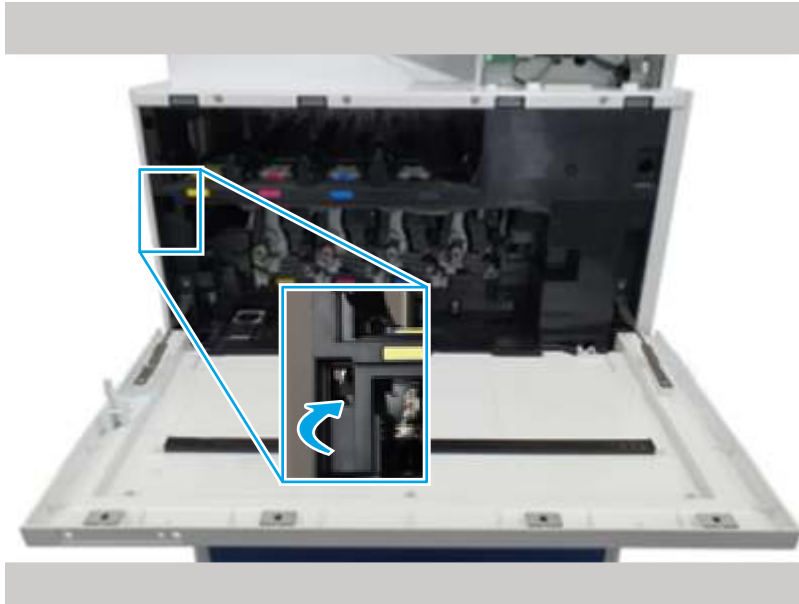
 **TIP:** Fold a stiff piece of paper, for example a business card or index card, into two 10 mm (.375 in) strips, and insert the strips into the slot for the cartridge door logic switches.

Figure 4-7 Defeat the toner cartridge door interlock



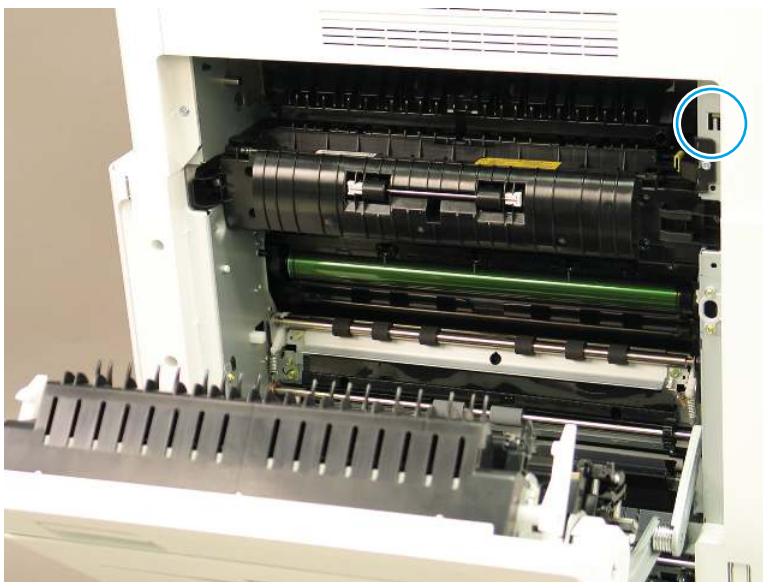
Defeat the right door interlock

Learn how to defeat the right door interlock.

1. Open the right door.
2. Insert a folded piece of paper into the slot.

TIP: Fold a stiff piece of paper, for example a business card or index card, into two 10 mm (.375 in) strips, and insert the strips into the slot for the front door logic switches.

Figure 4-8 Defeat the right door interlock



Tools for troubleshooting

Use the procedure below to test various printer mechanical and electromechanical assemblies.

Individual component diagnostics (special-mode test)

Learn about the individual component diagnostics (special-mode test).

This test activates individual parts independently to isolate problems.

Each component test can be performed once or repeatedly.

Each component test can be performed once or repeatedly.



NOTE: The cartridge door interlocks must be defeated to run the component tests.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the [Support Tools](#) button.
2. Select one of the following tests:
 - [Continuous Scan](#)
 - [Run Fax Test](#)
3. Select the component test options for the test.

Tools for troubleshooting

Learn about tools for troubleshooting.

Problem-solving checklist

Follow these steps when trying to solve a problem with the printer.

Step 1: Check that the printer power is on

Learn how to check that the printer power is on.

1. Make sure that the printer is plugged in and turned on. The power button should be lit with a white light. If it is not, press the power button. If the power button does not light up, check the following conditions.
 - Make sure that the power cable is connected to the printer and the outlet.
 - Check the power source by connecting the power cable to a different outlet.
2. If the printer motors do not rotate, make sure that the toner cartridges are installed and that the doors are all closed. The control panel displays messages to indicate these problems.

Step 2: Check the control panel for error messages

Learn how to check the control panel for error messages.

The control panel should indicate ready status. If an error message appears, resolve the error.

Print a supplies status page to ensure that the supplies are not at or over end of life.



NOTE: HP long-life consumable and maintenance kit life specifications are estimations. Actual individual life or yield during normal use will vary depending on usage, environment, media, and other factors. Estimated life is not an implied warranty.

Step 3: Test print functionality

Learn how to test print functionality.

1. From the control panel Home screen, touch the [Reports](#) button.
2. Open the [Reports](#) menu, touch the [Configuration/Status Pages](#) menu, select the [Configuration Page](#) item, and then touch the [Print](#) button to print the report.
3. If the report does not print, make sure that paper is loaded in the tray, and check the control panel to see if paper is jammed inside the printer.



NOTE: Make sure that the paper in the tray meets specifications for this printer.

Step 4: Test copy functionality

Learn how to test copy functionality.

1. Place the configuration page into the ADF and make a copy. If paper does not feed smoothly through the ADF, you might need to clean the ADF rollers and separation pad. Make sure that the paper meets specifications for this printer.
2. Place the configuration page onto the scanner glass and make a copy.
3. If the print quality on the copied pages is not acceptable, clean the scanner glass and the small glass strip.

Step 5: Test the fax sending functionality

Learn how to test the fax sending functionality.

1. From the control panel Home screen, touch the [Support Tools](#) button.
2. Open the [Troubleshooting](#) menu, and then open the [Diagnostics Tools](#) menu. Touch the [Run Fax Test](#) button to test the fax functionality.
3. Touch the [Fax](#) on the printer control panel, and then touch the [Start Fax](#) button.

Step 6: Test the fax receiving functionality

Learn how to test the fax receiving functionality.

1. From the control panel Home screen, touch the [Support Tools](#) button.
2. Touch the [Troubleshooting](#) menu, and then open the [Diagnostics Tests](#) menu. Touch the [Run Fax Test](#) button to test the fax functionality.
3. Use another fax machine to send a fax to the printer.
4. Review and reset the printer fax settings.

Step 7: Try sending a print job from a computer

Learn how to try sending a print job from a computer.

1. Use a word-processing program to send a print job to the printer.
2. If the job does not print, make sure that you selected the correct printer driver.
3. Uninstall and then reinstall the printer software.

Step 8: Test the Plug and Print USB Drive printing functionality

Learn how to test the plug and print USB drive printing functionality.

1. Load a .PDF document or .JPEG photo onto a USB flash drive, and insert it in the USB port near the control panel.
2. The [USB Flash Drive](#) menu opens. Try printing the document or photo.
3. If no documents are listed, try a different type of USB flash drive.

Factors that affect printer performance

Several factors affect the time it takes to print a job:


- The software program that you are using and its settings
- The use of special paper (such as heavy paper or custom-size paper)
- Printer processing and download time
- The complexity and size of graphics
- The speed of the computer you are using
- The USB or network connection
- Whether the printer is printing in color or in monochrome
- The type of USB drive, if you are using one
- Environmental factors, such as low temperature or high humidity

Print menu map

Learn how to print the menu map.

To more easily navigate individual settings, print a report of the complete [Reports](#) menu.

1. From the [Home](#) screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the [Reports](#) button.
2. Open the [Configuration/Status Pages](#) menu.
3. Select the [Settings Menu Map](#) option.
4. Touch the [Print](#) button to print the report.

 **TIP:** Multiple report pages can be selected, and then printed together.

Print current settings pages

Learn how to print current settings pages.

Printing the current settings page provides a map of the user configurable settings that might be helpful in the troubleshooting process.

1. From the [Home](#) screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the [Reports](#) button.
2. Open the [Configuration/Status Pages](#) menu.
3. Select the [Current Settings Page](#) option.

4. Touch the [Print](#) button to print the report.



TIP: Multiple report pages can be selected, and then printed together.

Additional tools for troubleshooting

Find additional troubleshooting topics.

Use the links below to go to additional troubleshooting tools topics.

- Pre-boot menu options
See [Pre-boot menu options on page 342](#).
- Event log (display and print)
See [Event Log on page 485](#).

Remote Admin

The Remote Admin feature allows remote access the printer Pre-boot menu (BIOS environment). The printer functions as a telnet server which uses the telnet networking protocol to transmit text data. Any computer (with telnet installed and enabled) can function as the telnet client to remotely display and interact with the Pre-boot menu.



IMPORTANT: While the Remote Admin function allows remote access the Pre-boot menu, for security reasons the Remote Admin connection must be initiated by a person that is physically present at the printer.

This section describes the following Remote Admin items.

Required software and network connection

Before using the Remote Admin feature, make sure that the telnet network protocol is installed, and enabled, on the remote telnet client computer.



NOTE: This section describes enabling and configuring the telnet feature for computers using a Windows® operating system.

HP recommends that the telnet client computer be a Windows based system, however, there are other operating systems that support the telnet network protocol. For information about enabling and configuring the telnet network protocol for other operating systems, see the owner's manual for that operating system.

Telnet client

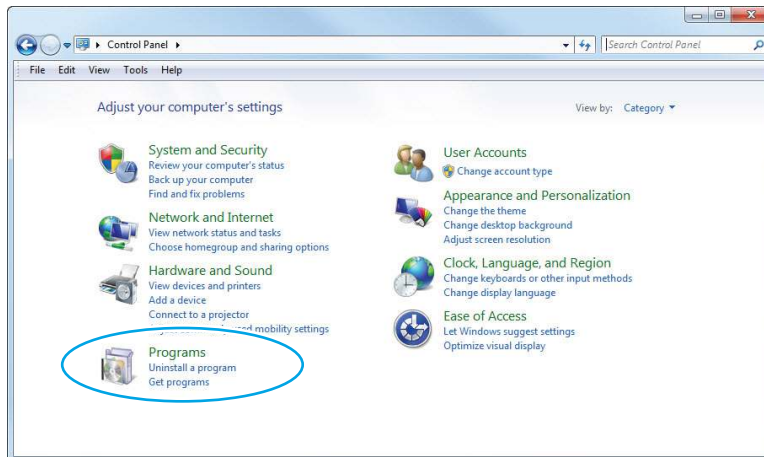
All computers using the Windows operating system have the telnet client installed, however, the telnet client function might not be enabled by default.



NOTE: The figures and menus in this section are for the Windows 7 Enterprise® operating system. Screens and menu selections might vary slightly for other operating systems.

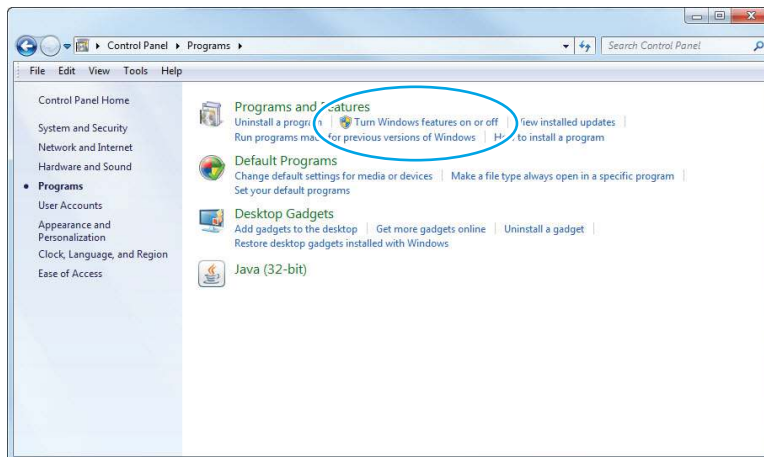
1. Use the **Start** menu to open the **Control Panel**, and then click the **Programs** item to select it.

Figure 4-9 Open the Control Panel



2. Click the **Turn Windows features on or off** item to select it.

Figure 4-10 Turn Windows features on or off

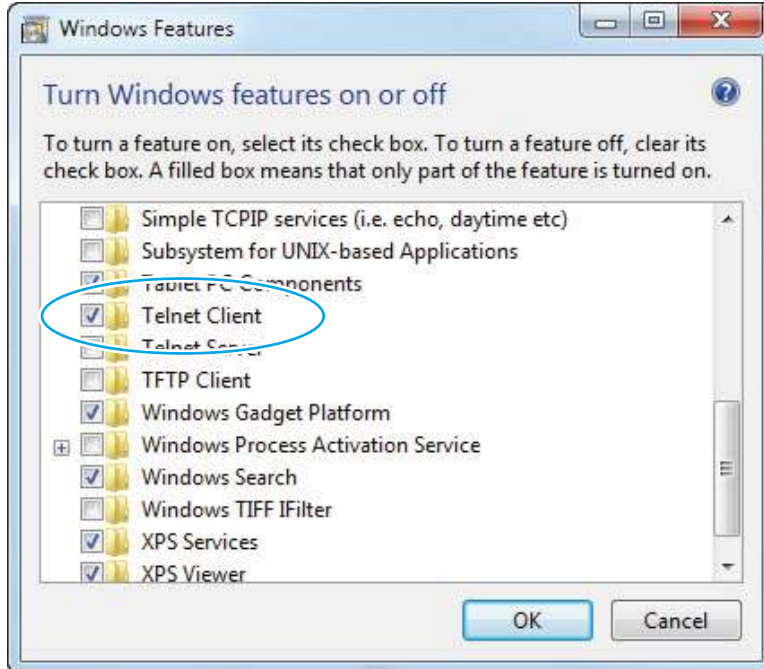


3. In the **Windows Features** box, scroll down to **Telnet Client**. If the check box is not checked, click the box to select it, and then click the **OK** button.



TIP: If the check box is already checked then the telnet client function is already enabled. Click the **Cancel** button.

Figure 4-11 Enable the telnet client feature



Network connection

The remote telnet client computer must have direct network access to the printer for the Remote Admin function to operate. This means that the telnet client computer must be on the same network as the printer. The Remote Admin function cannot be accessed through a network firewall or other remote access network security programs.


If a private network is not accessible, ask the network administrator to set up a virtual private network (VPN) connection to the network.

Connect a remote connection

Learn how to connect a remote connection using telnet.

Start the telnet server function at the printer

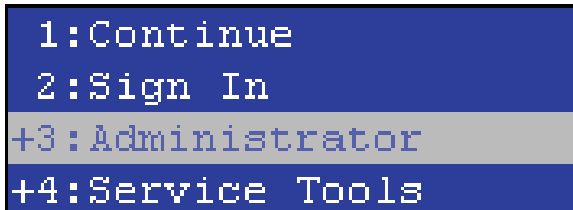
For security reasons the Remote Admin feature must be initiated by a person that is physically present at the printer. The following steps must be performed by a person that is physically present at the printer.

 **NOTE:** This person might need to sign in with an administrator or service password depending on how the printer is configured.

1. Turn the printer on.
2. The HP logo displays on the printer control panel. When a "1/8" with an underscore displays, touch the middle of the screen to open the [Pre-boot](#) menu.

- Use the arrow buttons on the touchscreen to scroll down and highlight the **+3:Administrator** item, and then touch the **OK** button to select it.

Figure 4-12 Select the **+3:Administrator** item



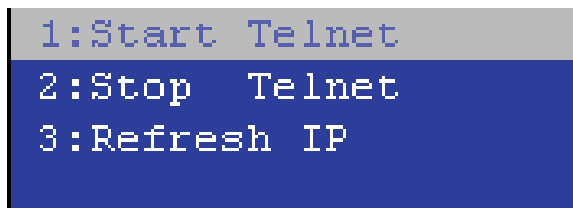
- Use the arrow buttons on the touchscreen to scroll down and highlight the **+A:Remote Admin** item, and then touch the **OK** button to select it.

Figure 4-13 Select the **+A:Remote Admin** item



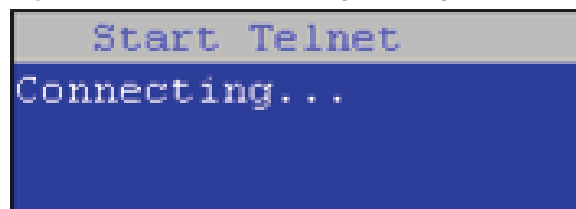
- Use the arrow buttons on the touchscreen to scroll down and highlight the **1:Start Telnet** item, and then touch the **OK** button to select it.

Figure 4-14 Select the **1:Start Telnet** item



- Do one of the following
 - If a connecting message displays briefly, go to step vii..

Figure 4-15 Telnet connecting message



- If an error message displays, use the steps below to identify the problem.

Figure 4-16 Telnet error message

```
Start Telnet
Unable to connect
Contact network
administrator.
```

- a. The printer network cable is not correctly connected.
 - b. The BIOS LAN settings are incorrect.
 - o The printer should be configured to use a static IP address, but is configured to use DHCP instead.
 - o The printer is configured to use a static IP address, but the IP address is incorrect.
 - c. The printer is correctly configured to use DHCP, but the DHCP server is not turned on or is malfunctioning.
7. When the printer telnet server function is initialized, the following screen appears. Use the information on this screen to connect the remote telnet client computer to the printer.



NOTE: The printer is now ready to receive remote telnet client commands.

- **IP:** The static or dynamically allocated IP address for the printer.
- **Port:** The standard telnet port (23).
- **Pin:** A randomly generated 4-digit personal identification number (PIN).

Figure 4-17 Telnet server function initialized

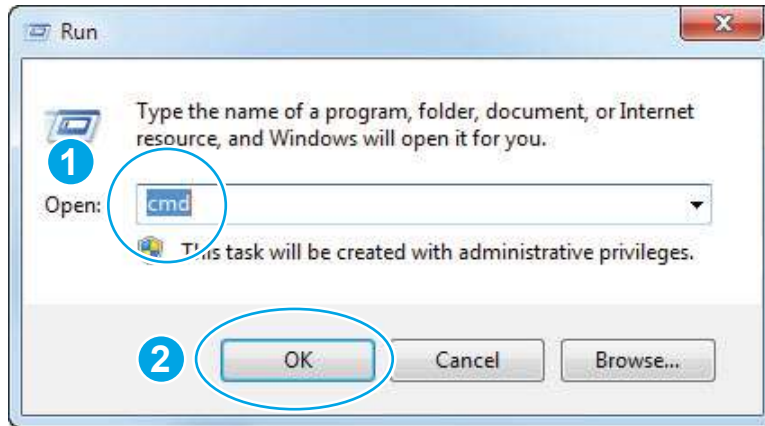
```
Start Telnet
IP: 16.88.109.66
Port: 23
Pin : 4031
```

Start the telnet client function at the remote computer

The following steps establish a Remote Admin connection from a remote computer to the printer.

1. From the **Start** menu click **Run** to open a dialog box, type `cmd` in the **Open** field, and then click the **OK** button to open a Windows command window.

Figure 4-18 Open a command window




2. From any displayed directory, type `telnet` at the prompt, and then press the **Enter** key.

Figure 4-19 Start a telnet session



3. Type `<IP ADDRESS>` at the telnet prompt, and then press the **Enter** key.

 **NOTE:** For `<IP ADDRESS>`, substitute the IP address that was displayed in step vii. in [Start the telnet server function at the printer on page 318](#).


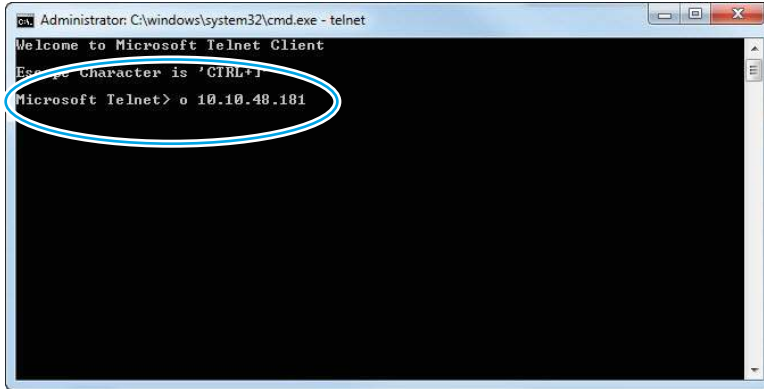
 **TIP:** If the telnet connection fails to establish a connection, the printer is probably behind a firewall or on a different network than the remote telnet client computer. See [Network connection on page 318](#).

Figure 4-20 Establish a telnet connection



4. Type the PIN that was displayed in step vii. in [Start the telnet server function at the printer on page 318](#) at the prompt, and then press the **Enter** key.


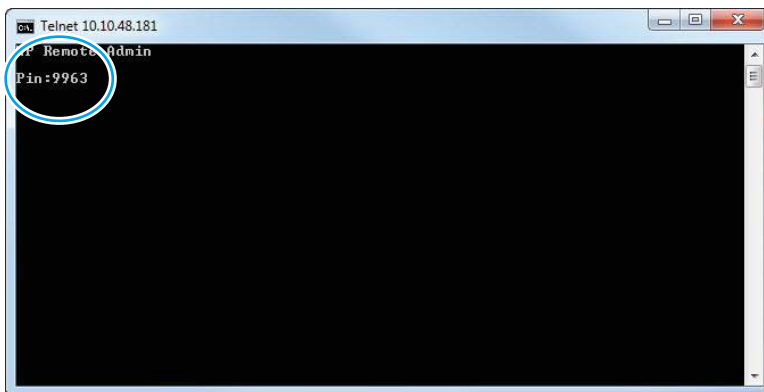

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure to type the PIN correctly. After five incorrect PIN entries, the printer terminates the Remote Admin connection. The Remote Admin feature must be re-initiated at the printer. See [Start the telnet server function at the printer on page 318](#).

Figure 4-21 Enter the PIN

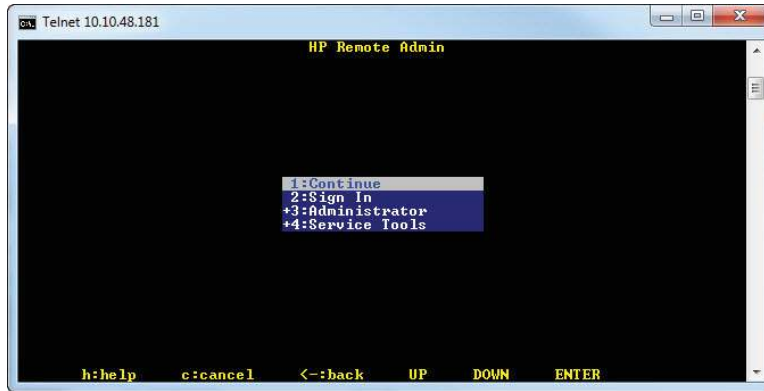


5. The following screen displays when the correct PIN is entered and the Remote Admin connection is successful. For information about the Pre-boot menu and options, see [Pre-boot menu options on page 342](#).

 **NOTE:** Because a Remote Admin connection is an unsecure telnet network protocol connection, the following Pre-boot menu items are disabled for the remote telnet client computer.

- The **+3:Administrator** menu **4:Change Password** item.
- The **+3:Administrator** menu **5:Clear Password** item.
- The **+3:Administrator** menu **6:Disk Manage** item.


Figure 4-22 Remote Admin window



Disconnect a remote connection

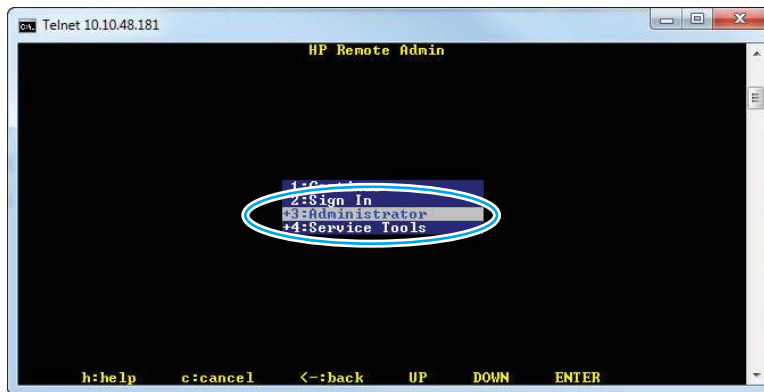
Learn how to disconnect a remote connection.

The Remote Admin connection can be terminated from the printer control panel or the remote telnet client computer.

 **NOTE:** The following procedure describes terminating a Remote Admin connection from the remote telnet client computer.

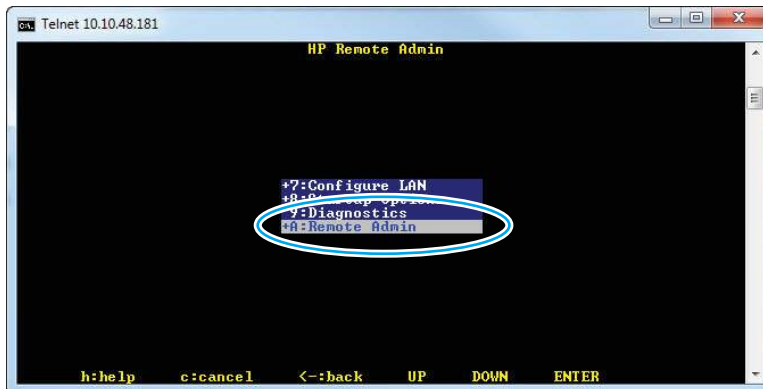
1. From the Pre-boot main menu, use the arrow buttons on the keyboard to scroll down to the **+3:Administrator** item, and then press the **Enter** key.

Figure 4-23 Access the administrator menu




- Use the arrow buttons on the keyboard to scroll down to the **+A:Remote Admin** item, and then press the **Enter** key.

Figure 4-24 Access the remote admin menu

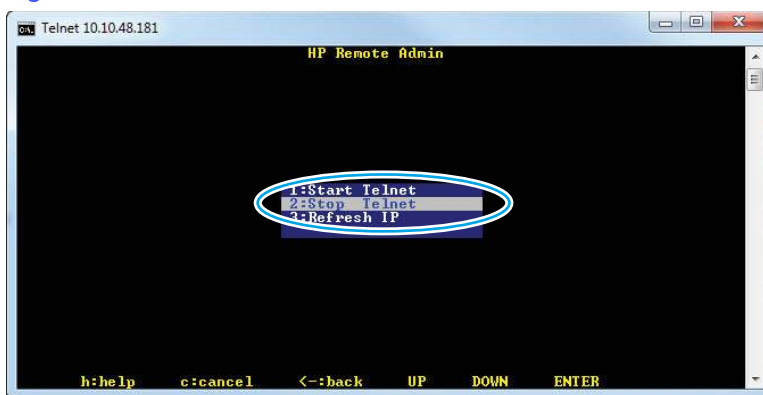


- Use the arrow buttons on the keyboard to scroll down to the **2:Stop Telnet** item, and then press the **Enter** key. The Remote Admin connection between the printer and the remote telnet client computer terminates.

 **IMPORTANT:** The printer remains in the Pre-boot menu. Have the person that is physically present at the printer do the following:

- Touch the **Home** button to return to the main Pre-boot menu and highlight the **1:Continue** item, and then touch the **OK** button. The printer will continue to initialize.

Figure 4-25 Terminate the telnet connection



Clear paper jams

Use the procedures in this section to clear jammed paper from the printer paper path.

Paper jam locations

Jams can occur in these locations.

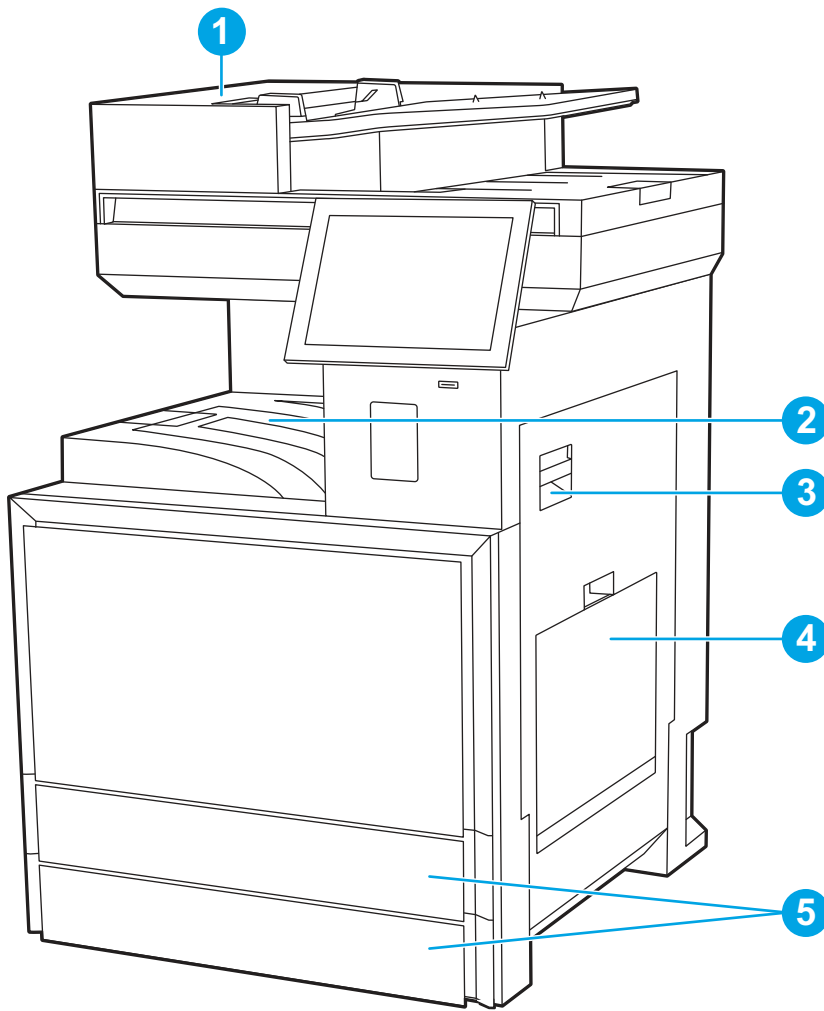


Table 4-2 Jam Locations

Item	Description
1	Document feeder
2	Output bin
3	Right door and fuser area
4	Tray 1 (multipurpose tray)
5	Tray 2 and Tray 3

Auto-navigation for clearing paper jams

Learn about printer jam clearing auto-navigation.

The auto-navigation feature assists in clearing jams by providing step-by-step instructions on the control panel.

When you complete a step, the printer displays instructions for the next step until you have completed all steps in the procedure.

Experiencing frequent or recurring paper jams?

To reduce the number of paper jams, try these solutions.



[View a video that demonstrates how to load paper in a way that reduces the number of paper jams](#)

1. Use only paper that meets HP specifications for this printer.
2. Use paper that is not wrinkled, folded, or damaged. If necessary, use paper from a different package.
3. Use paper that has not previously been printed or copied on.
4. Make sure the tray is not overfilled. If it is, remove the entire stack of paper from the tray, straighten the stack, and then return some of the paper to the tray.
5. Make sure the paper guides in the tray are adjusted correctly for the size of paper. Adjust the guides so they are touching the paper stack without bending it.
6. Make sure that the tray is fully inserted in the printer.
7. If you are printing on heavy, embossed, or perforated paper, use the manual feed feature and feed sheets one at a time.
8. Open the **Trays** menu on the printer control panel. Verify that the tray is configured correctly for the paper type and size.
9. Make sure the printing environment is within recommended specifications.

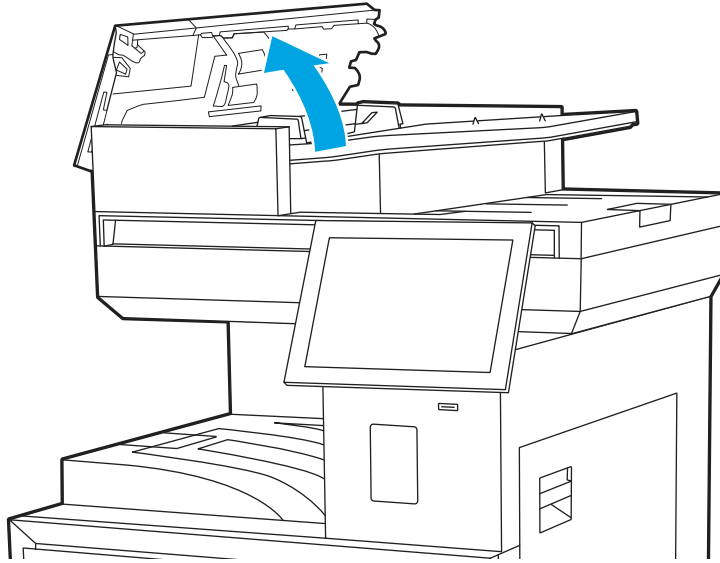
31.13.yz jam error in the document feeder

The following information describes how to clear paper jams in the document feeder. When a jam occurs, the control panel displays an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

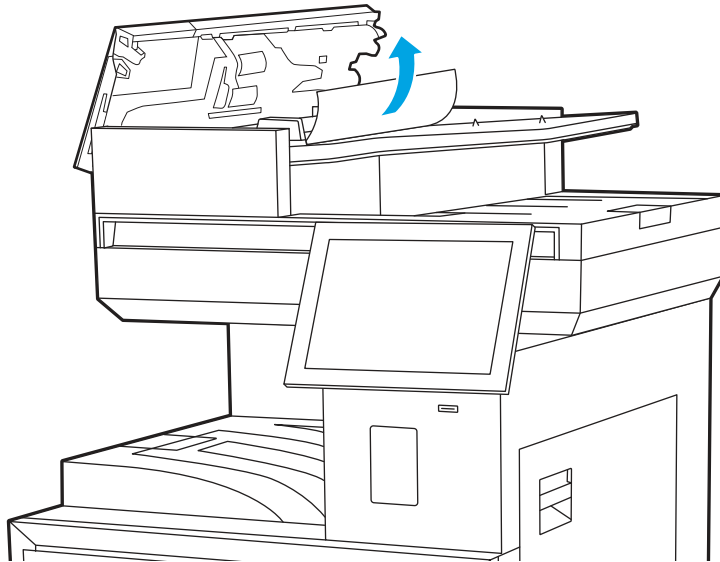


[View a video of how to clear a jam in the document feeder](#)

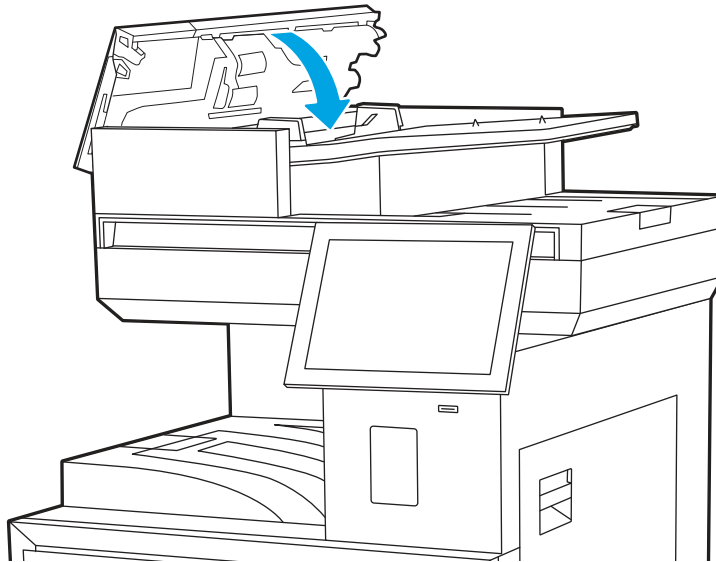
1. Open the document-feeder cover.





2. Remove any jammed paper.



3. Close the document-feeder cover.



 **NOTE:** To avoid jams, make sure the guides in the document-feeder input tray are adjusted against the document, without bending the document. To copy narrow documents, use the flatbed scanner. Remove all staples and paper clips from original documents.

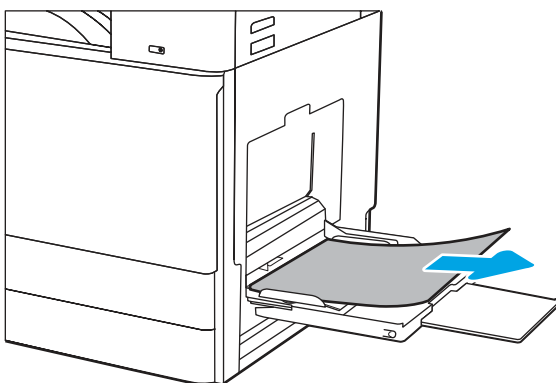
 **NOTE:** Original documents that are printed on heavy, glossy paper can jam more frequently than originals that are printed on plain paper.

13.A1 jam error in tray 1 (multipurpose tray)

Use the following procedure to clear paper jams in Tray 1. When a jam occurs, the control panel displays an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

 [View a video of how to clear a jam in tray 1](#)

1. Gently remove the jammed paper.



2. Open and then close the front door to resume printing.

13.A2, 13.A3, 13.A4 jam errors in tray 2, tray 3, or the optional 2 x 520-sheet trays

Use the following procedure to check for paper in all possible jam locations related to Tray 2 or Tray 3. When a jam occurs, the control panel might display a message and an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

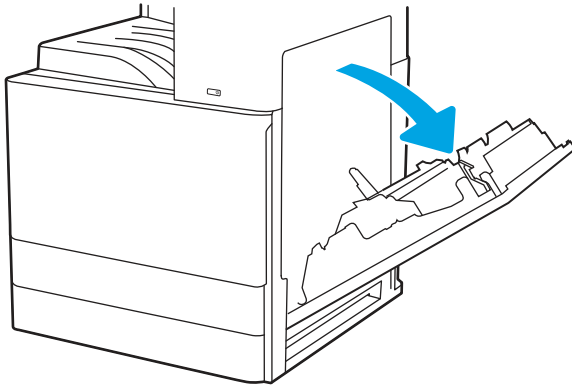


[View a video of how to clear a jam in tray 2, tray 3, and the optional trays](#)

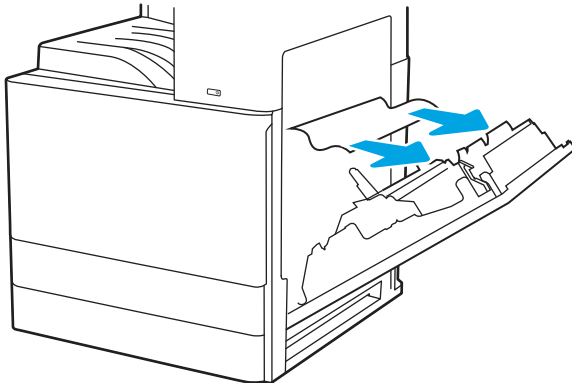
CAUTION: The fuser can be hot while the printer is in use. Wait for the fuser to cool before handling it.

NOTE: The procedure to clear a paper jam in Tray 3 is the same as for Tray 2. Only Tray 2 is shown here.

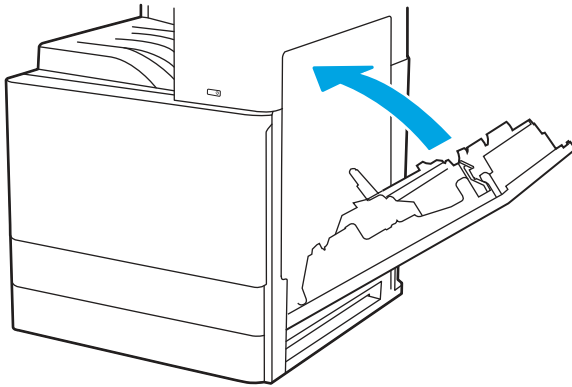
1. Open the right door.



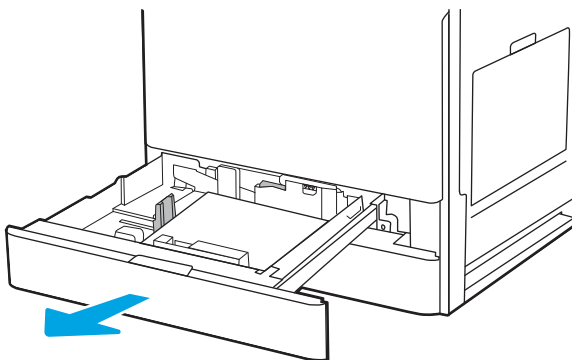
2. Gently remove any jammed paper.



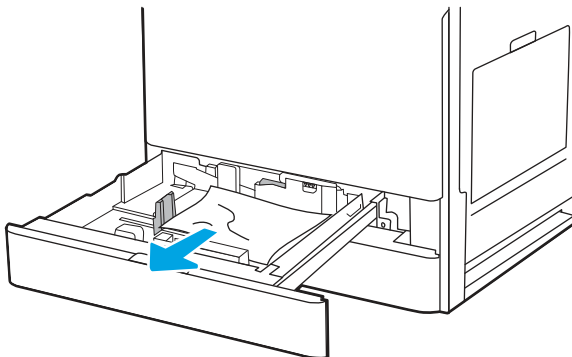
3. Close the right door.



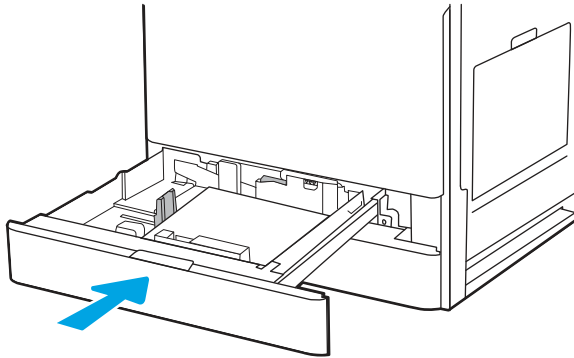
4. Open the tray.



5. Gently remove any jammed paper.



6. Close the tray. Printing automatically resumes.

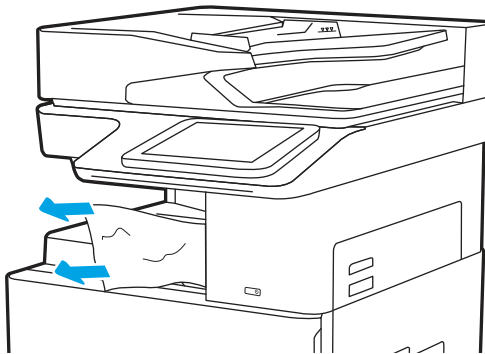


13.E1 jam error in the output bin

Use the following procedure to check for paper in all possible jam locations in the output bin. When a jam occurs, the control panel displays an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

 [View a video of how to clear a jam in the output bin](#)


- If paper is visible in the output bin, grasp the leading edge and remove it.



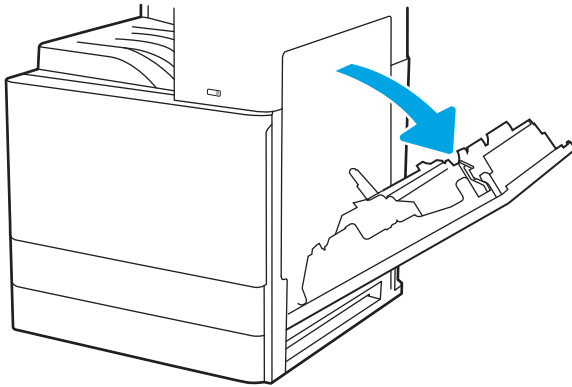
13.B9, 13.B2, 13.FF jam errors in the right door and fuser area

Use the following procedure to clear paper jams in the right door and fuser area. When a jam occurs, the control panel displays an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

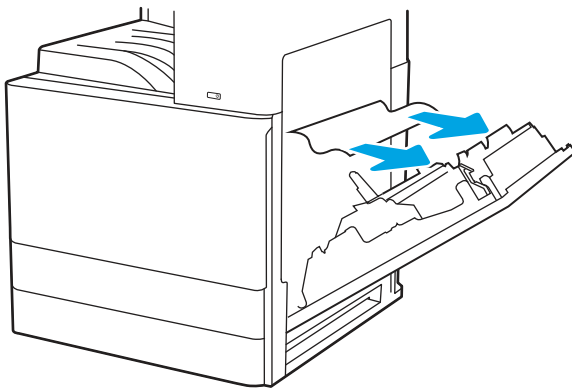
 [View a video of how to clear a jam in the right door and fuser area](#)

 **NOTE:** The fuser is hot while the printer is in use. Wait for the fuser to cool before clearing jams.

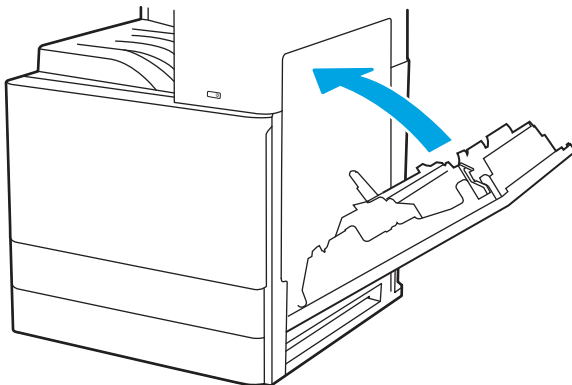
1. Open the right door.



2. Gently remove any jammed paper.



3. Close the right door.



HP service and support

Learn about HP access to additional service and support information.

Additional service and support for channel partners

Channel partners go to partner.hp.com, and then use the steps below to access the HP Web-based Interactive Search Engine (WISE).



[View a video of how to use the HP Partner First Portal to access WISE.](#)

Access WISE for Channel partners

1. Select [Services & Support](#) (near the top of the screen).
2. Under [Services Delivery](#), select [Technical Support](#).
3. Select [Technical Documentation](#).

Find information about the following topics

- Service manuals
- Service advisories
- Up-to-date control panel message (CPMD) troubleshooting
- Solutions for printer issues and emerging issues
- Remove and replace part instructions and videos
- Install and configure
- Printer specifications
- Warranty and regulatory information

Additional service and support for HP internal personnel

HP internal personnel, go to one of the following Web-based Interactive Search Engine (WISE) sites:



[View a video of how to access WISE for internal HP users.](#)

Americas (AMS)

- [WISE - English](#)
- [WISE - Spanish](#)
- [WISE - Portuguese](#)
- [WISE - French](#)

Asia Pacific / Japan (APJ)

- [WISE - English](#)
- [WISE - Japanese](#)
- [WISE - Korean](#)
- [WISE - Chinese \(simplified\)](#)
- [WISE - Chinese \(traditional\)](#)
- [WISE - Thai](#)

Europe / Middle East / Africa (EMEA)

- [WISE - English](#)

Additional technical support WISE videos

The videos below provide additional ways to access printer information using WISE.



[View a video of how to use WISE to find technical support videos \(model number search\).](#)



[View a video of how to use WISE to find technical support videos \(Product detail page \[PDP\] search\).](#)

How to search for printer documentation

The CPMD, error codes, and other support documentation for each printer is found on the internal HP portals.

These portals are on WISE for Channel (please see [Accessing WISE for HP channel partners \(HP Partner Portal\) on page 337](#) below for instructions on how to navigate to the site) and [WISE](#). WISE for Channel is available to HP channel partners and WISE is available to call agents, service technicians, and other HP internal users. The level of detail available will depend on your access credentials. To learn how to find support content in WISE, [watch the video here](#).

How to search WISE for printer documentation

These instructions are for HP internal use by call agents, service technicians, and other internal users.

To learn how to find support content in WISE, watch the video here: [Finding Error Code and Control Panel Message Document in WISE](#).

To view a list of control panel message documents per printer, search for the following topic in **WISE**: HP LaserJet, OfficeJet, PageWide, ScanJet Enterprise - Control panel message document (CPMD) list.

How to search for specific error codes

Use WISE to quickly find error code troubleshooting procedures using the following steps.

1. Type the printer model number (for example, M609) in the dialog box search field.

Figure 4-26 WISE search box

hp Products

Welcome to WISE

Enter your product number or keywords

Example: "Laserjet P1102w driver" or "HP Pavilion 17-f002na will not turn on"

2. A drop-down list appears. Click on the full printer series name (for example, HP LaserJet Enterprise M609 series) in the list.

Figure 4-27 WISE drop-down list



3. Type the error code (for example, 13.E1.D3) in the keyword field. The error code troubleshooting content displays in the **All Search Results** area.


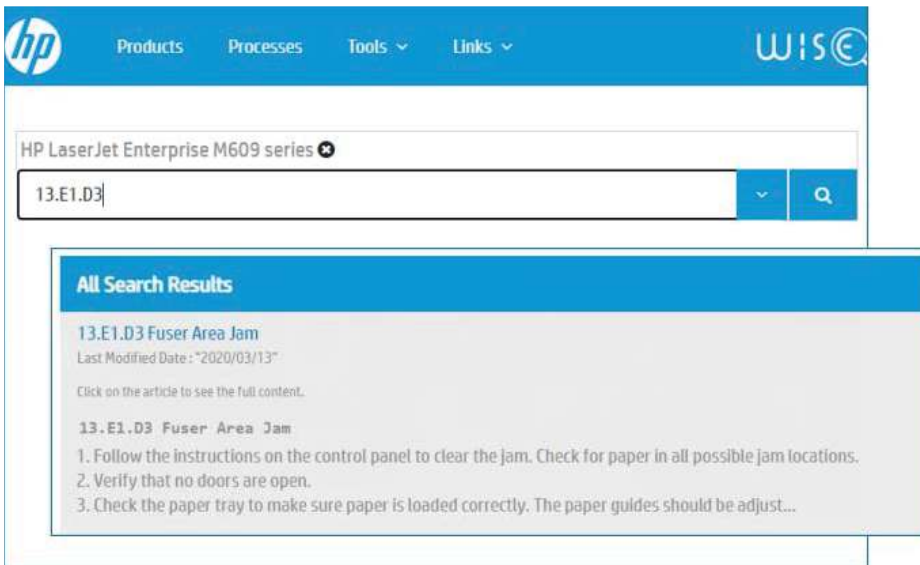

 **TIP:** Another method to find error code information is to use WISE to navigate to the printer detail page (PDP), and then search **Troubleshooting > Error Code Search**.

Figure 4-28 WISE search results



Accessing WISE for HP channel partners (CSDP)

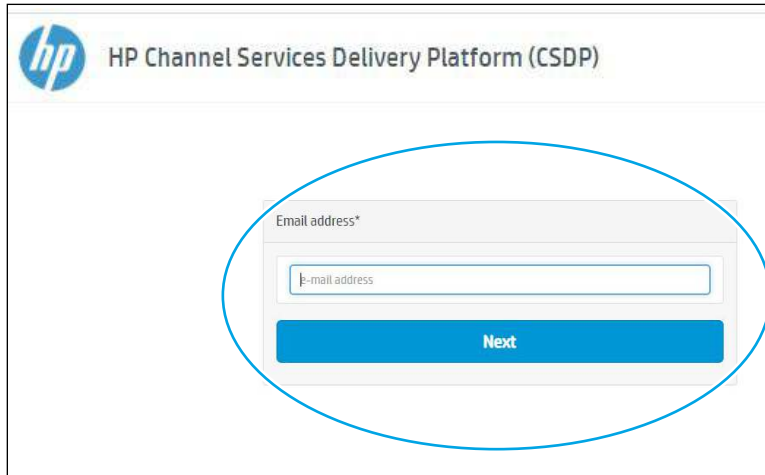
Learn how to access WISE by accessing the HP Channel Services Delivery Platform (CSDP) if you are an HP Channel Partner.

 **IMPORTANT:** A Partner Admin must requested access, via the CSDP portal, to create a new user before you can sign into the CSDP portal.

Use WISE to find printer information. For example:

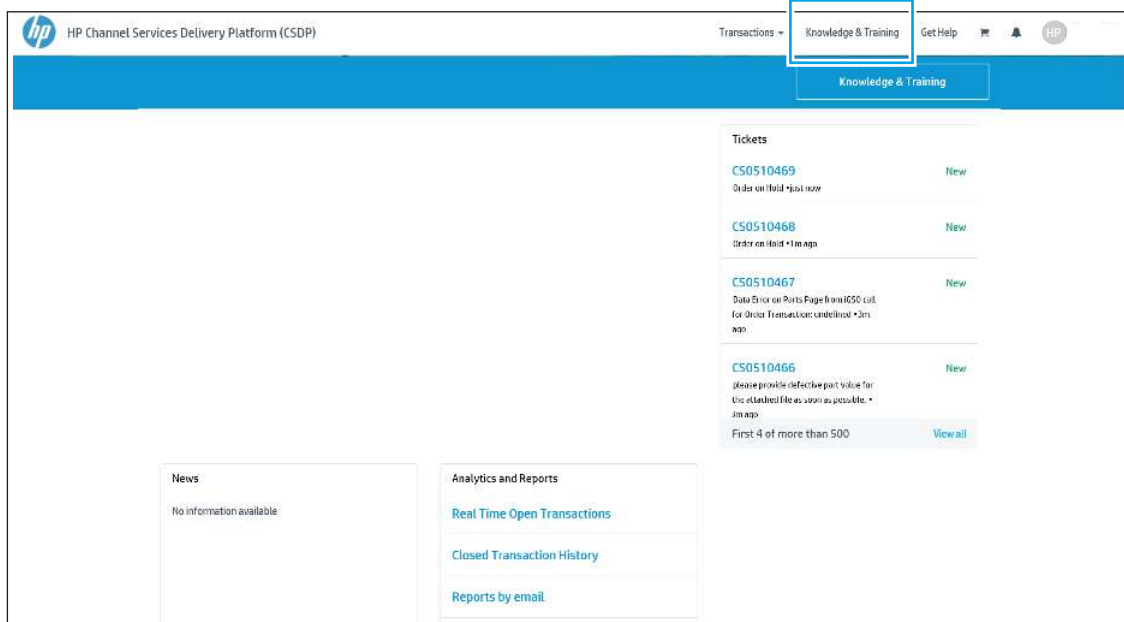
- User Guides
 - Service Manuals
 - Control Panel Message Documents (CPMDs)
 - Product Detail Pages (PDPs)
 - Certificate of Volatility (CoV)
1. Sign-in to the CSDP portal (click csdp.hp.com to access the sign in page).

Figure 4-29 CSDP sign in page



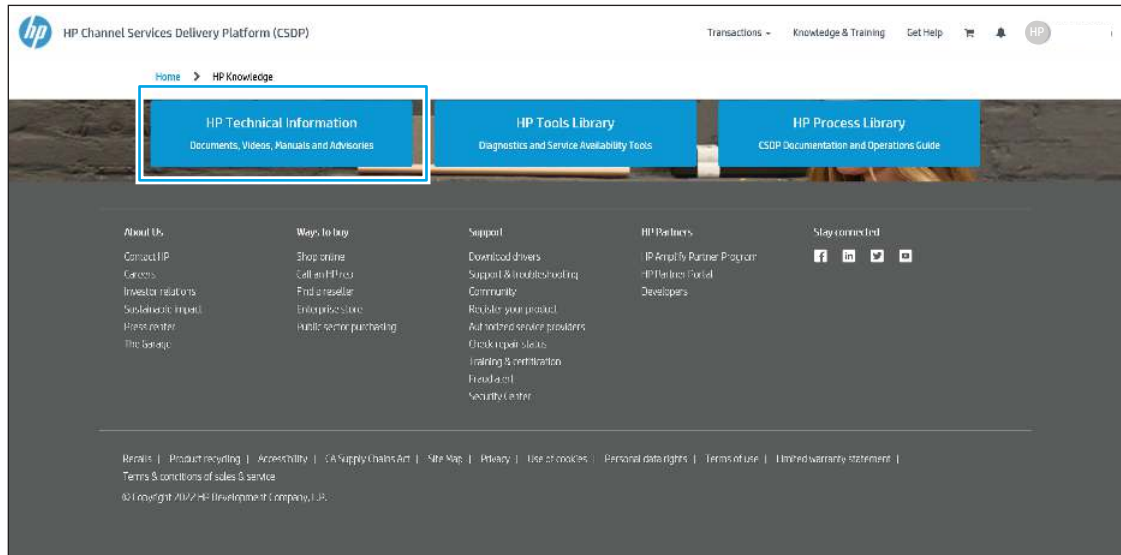
2. On the CSDP home page, click **Knowledge & Training**.

Figure 4-30 CSDP portal home page



3. Select **HP Technical Documentation** to open the WISE portal page.

Figure 4-31 CSDP portal HP Knowledge page




4. Use the WISE portal to search for printer information.

Figure 4-32 WISE portal page

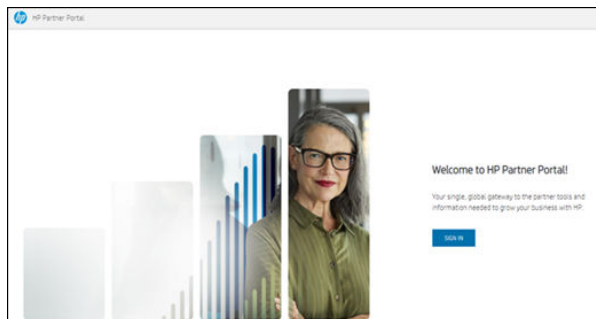


Accessing WISE for HP channel partners (HP Partner Portal)

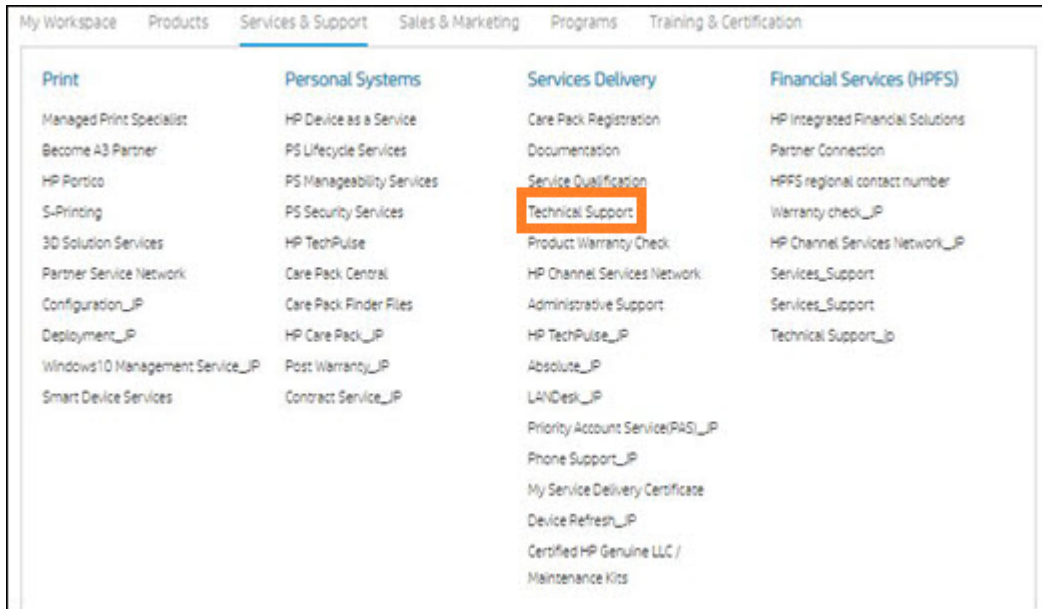
Learn how to access WISE by accessing the HP Partner Portal if you are an HP Channel Partner.

 **NOTE:** If this is your first visit to the HP Partner Portal, you will be asked to create an account. Follow the setup directions using your HP Partner credentials.

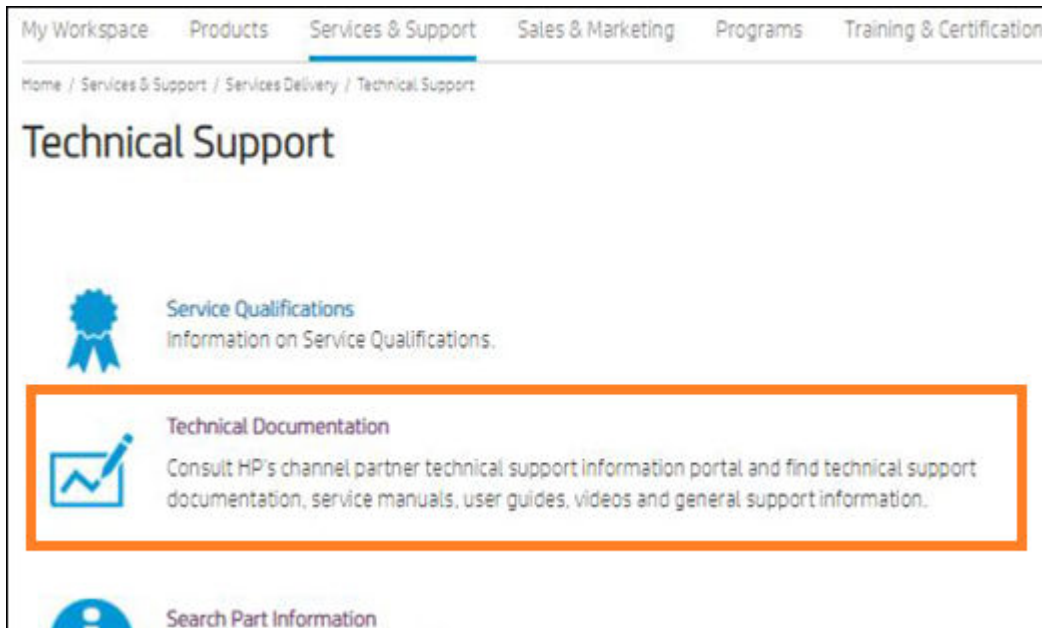
1. Open the HP Partner First Portal located at <https://partner.hp.com>.



2. Select the **Services & Support** tab, and then select **Technical Support**.



3. Select **Technical Documentation**.



4. You will be taken to the WISE portal.



Play the video:



[View a video of how to access WISE \(HP channel partners\)](#)

Control panel messages document (CPMD)

Learn about the printer control panel messages document (CPMD).



NOTE: A complete CPMD is not included in this service manual.

Check the HP Web Interactive Search Engine (WISE) for more information.

Error codes (types and structure)

Error codes and control-panel messages display on the printer control panel to indicate the current printer status or situations that might require action. Error codes are numerical, or alphanumerical, and have a set structure with six characters (example: 13.WX.YZ).

- The first two characters are numeric and represent the system component that is causing the error. For example, in error code 10 . 22 . 15, **10 = Supplies** for HP LaserJets.
- The remaining four characters (W, X, Y, and Z values) further define the error.

HP LaserJet and HP PageWide Enterprise error codes are documented in the control panel message document (CPMD) for each printer.

The CPMD is a comprehensive list of error codes, diagnostic and troubleshooting steps to clear or resolve the error, and other helpful information such as service mode pins and part numbers.

The CPMD is continually updated and republished with the latest information for the following error codes.

Table 4-3 ERROR CODES: The first two characters

Error code	System Component	System Error Description
10.WXYZ	Supplies (LaserJet)	Supply error or supply memory error.
11.WXYZ	Real-time clock	Internal error with the clock on the formatter.
13.WXYZ	Jam (LaserJet)	Paper jam or open door jam error.
15.WXYZ	Jam (PageWide)	Paper jam or open door jam error.
17.WXYZ	Supplies (PageWide)	Supply error or supply memory error.
20.WXYZ	Printer memory	Insufficient memory or buffering error.
21.WXYZ	Page	Page complexity causing a decompression error when trying to process job.
30.WXYZ	Scanner	Flatbed scanner error occurring inside the unit.
31.WXYZ	Document feeder	Document feeder, scanner, or jam error.
32.WXYZ	Backup, restore, or reset	Backup, restore, or reset notification or error.
33.WXYZ	Security	Backup, Disk, EFI BIOS, Firmware integrity (SureStart), or Trusted Platform Module (TPM) notification or error.

Table 4-3 ERROR CODES: The first two characters (continued)

Error code	System Component	System Error Description
40.WX.YZ	Input/Output (I/O)	Partition manager, secure erase, or USB accessory error.
41.WX.YZ	Fuser, Laser scanner, or Paper path	Miscellaneous error including general and misprint or mismatch errors typically involving (but not limited to) the fuser, the laser scanner, or the paper path.
42.WX.YZ	Firmware	Firmware failure involving the Event Log, Shell, System Manager, or other component.
44.WX.YZ	Firmware	Firmware failure involving a digital sending component.
45.WX.YZ	OXPd/Web Kit (PageWide)	Informational notifications involving the OXPd Web Kit (communications log).
46.WX.YZ	Engine (LaserJet)	Engine communication error.
47.WX.YZ	Firmware	Job parser or printer calibration error.
48.WX.YZ	Firmware	PJA job accounting, job management, or job pipeline error.
49.WX.YZ	Firmware	Firmware communication error.
50.WX.YZ	Fuser (LaserJet)	Fuser error.
51.WX.YZ	Laser scanner (LaserJet)	Laser scanner beam error.
52.WX.YZ	Laser scanner (LaserJet)	Laser scanner startup error.
54.WX.YZ	Sensor	Sensor error (not jam related).
55.WX.YZ	DC controller (LaserJet)	DC controller communication error.
56.WX.YZ	Paper handling (LaserJet)	Paper input/output or accessory error.
57.WX.YZ	Fan	Fan error.
58.WX.YZ	Sensor	Engine sensor failure.
59.WX.YZ	Motor (LaserJet)	Motor error.
60.WX.YZ	Tray motor error (LaserJet)	Tray lifting or pick up error.
61.WX.YZ	Engine (PageWide)	Print engine error with the 8-bit data package.
62.WX.YZ	System (LaserJet)	LaserJet internal system error.
	Print bar (PageWide)	PageWide print system error.
63.WX.YZ	Engine (LaserJet)	General engine error (electrical, communication, etc.).
65.WX.YZ	Connector	Output accessory connection error.
66.WX.YZ	Output accessory	Output accessory error.
67.WX.YZ	Input accessory	Input accessory connection error
69.WX.YZ	Duplexer	Duplexer error.
70.WX.YZ	DC controller (LaserJet)	DC controller firmware error.

Table 4-3 ERROR CODES: The first two characters (continued)

Error code	System Component	System Error Description
76.WX.YZ	DC controller (LaserJet)	Power supply fluctuations causes formatter and DC controller communication issue and results them not to be in synchronization.
80.WX.YZ	Managed device	Embedded Jetdirect error.
81.WX.YZ	Near Field Communication (NFC)	Wireless, Bluetooth or internal EIO error.
82.WX.YZ	Memory (hard disk, EMMC, etc.)	Disk hardware error.
90.WX.YZ	Internal diagnostics	Internal test of systems (i.e. disk, CPB, display) or interconnection error.
98.WX.YZ	Hard disk	Hard disk partition error.
99.WX.YZ	Firmware installer	Remote Firmware Upgrade (RFU), firmware install (engine or accessory), or disk error.

Image-quality troubleshooting guide (IQTG)

For more information about image-quality troubleshooting, see the following topic.



NOTE: A complete IQTG is not included in this service manual.

[Click here to see the Image Quality Troubleshooting Guide \(IQTG\) for this printer.](#)

5 Control panel menus

You can perform basic printer setup by using the [Settings](#) menu. Use the HP Embedded Web Server for more advanced printer setup. To open the HP Embedded Web Server, enter the printer IP address or host name in the address bar of a web browser.

Pre-boot menu options

The [Pre-boot](#) menus are available prior to the printer initializing.

⚠ CAUTION: The [Format Disk](#) option (printers with a hard-disk drive only) performs a disk initialization for the entire disk. The operating system, firmware files, and third party files (among other files) will be completely lost. HP does not recommend this action.

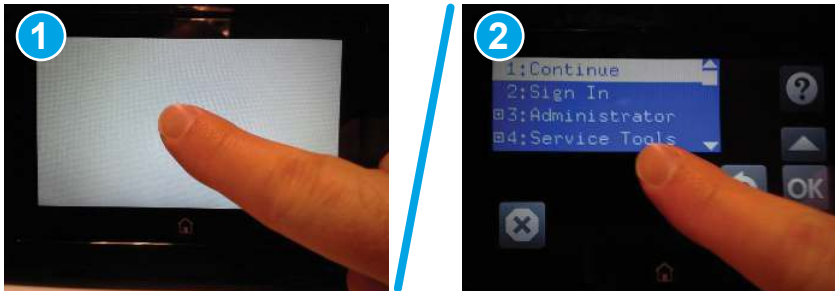
💡 TIP: The Pre-boot menu can be remotely accessed by using a telnet network protocol to establish an administration connection to the printer. See [Remote Admin on page 316](#).

Open the Pre-boot menu from a touchscreen control panel

Learn how to open the Pre-boot menu from a touchscreen control panel.

1. Touch the middle of the control-panel display when you see the [1/8](#) under the logo.

Figure 5-1 Open the Pre-boot menu



- On the **Pre-boot** menu screen, use the following buttons to navigate the tests.

Figure 5-2 Pre-boot menu

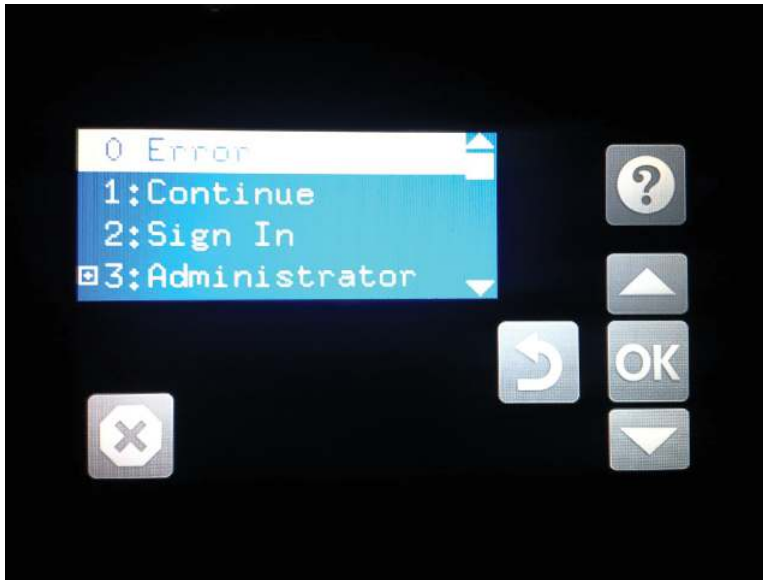









Table 5-1 Pre-boot screen buttons

	Use this button to see more information about a selected item.
	Use this button to scroll up through menu items.
	Use this button to select a highlighted menu item.
	Use this button to scroll down through menu items.
	Use this button to go back to the previous menu.
	Not used.
	Use this button to exit a diagnostic test.

3. Use the arrow buttons on the touchscreen to navigate the **Pre-boot** menu.
4. Touch the **OK** button to select a menu item.

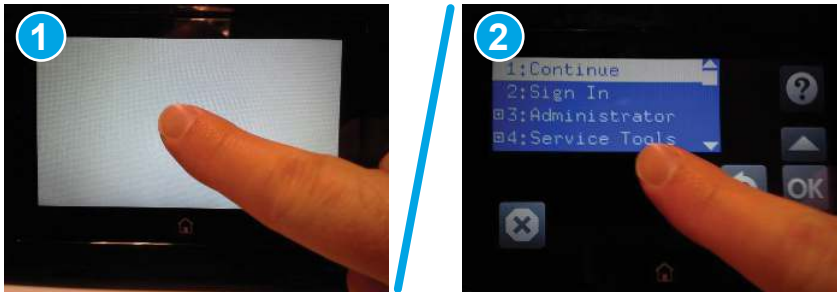
Cold reset using the Pre-boot menu from a touchscreen control panel

Learn how to cold reset using the Pre-boot menu from a touchscreen control panel.

CAUTION: This procedure resets all printer configurations and settings to factory defaults (customer configurations and settings are lost).

1. Touch the middle of the control-panel display when you see the **1/8** under the logo.

Figure 5-3 Open the Pre-boot menu



2. Use the ▼ button to highlight the **+3:Administrator** item, and then touch the **OK** button.
3. Use the ▼ button to highlight the **+8:Startup Options** item, and then touch the **OK** button.
4. Use the ▼ button to highlight the **2 Cold Reset** item, and then touch the **OK** button to select it.
5. Touch the Home button to return to the main **Pre-boot** menu and highlight the **1:Continue** item, and then touch the **OK** button.

NOTE: The printer will initialize.

NOTE: Some of the pre-boot options in the following tables are not supported by the current version of the printer firmware and are included for information only. Future versions of firmware will support these options.

Table 5-2 Pre-boot menu options (1 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Continue				<p>Selecting the Continue item exits the Pre-boot menu and continues the normal boot process.</p> <p>If a selection is not made in the initial menu within 30 seconds, the printer returns to a normal boot (the same as selecting Continue).</p> <p>If the user navigates to another menu, the timeout does not apply.</p>
Sign In				Enter the administrator PIN or service PIN if one is required to open the Pre-boot menu.

Table 5-2 Pre-boot menu options (1 of 7) (continued)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator				This item navigates to the Administrator submenus. If authentication is required (and the user is not already signed in) the Sign In prompt displays. The user is required to sign in.
	Download	Network USB USB Thumbdrive		This item initiates a Pre-boot firmware download process. A USB Thumbdrive option will work on all FutureSmart printers. USB or Network connections are not currently supported.
	Format Disk			This item reinitializes the disk and cleans all disk partitions. CAUTION: Selecting the Format Disk item removes all data. A delete confirmation prompt is not provided. The system is not bootable after this action and a 99.09.67 error displays on the control panel. A firmware download must be performed to return the system to a bootable state.
	Partial Clean			This item reinitializes the disk (removing all data except the firmware repository where the master firmware bundle is downloaded and saved). CAUTION: Selecting the Partial Clean item removes all data except the firmware repository. A delete confirmation prompt is not provided. CAUTION: This procedure resets all printer configurations and settings to factory defaults (customer configurations and settings are lost). This allows a user to reformat the disk by removing the firmware image from the active directory without having to download new firmware code (printer remains bootable).
	Change Password			Select this item to set or change the administrator password.
	Clear Password			Select the Clear Password item to remove a password from the Administrator menu. Before the password is actually cleared, a message will be shown asking to confirm that the password should be cleared. Press the OK button to confirm the action. When the confirmation prompt displays, press the OK button to clear the password.

Table 5-3 Pre-boot menu options (2 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator	Manage Disk	Clear disk		Select the Clear disk item to enable using an external device for job storage. Job storage is normally enabled only for the Boot device. This will be grayed out unless the 99.09.68 error is displayed.
		Lock Disk		Select the Lock Disk item to lock (mate) a new secure disk to this printer. The secure disk already locked to this printer will remain accessible to this printer. Use this function to have more than one encrypted disk accessible by the printer when using them interchangeably. The data stored on the secure disk locked to this printer always remains accessible to this printer.
		Leave Unlocked		Select the Leave Unlocked item to use a new secure disk in an unlocked mode for a single service event. The secure disk that is already locked to this printer will remain accessible to this printer and uses the old disk's encryption password with the new disk. The secure disk that is already locked to this printer remains accessible to this printer.
		Clear Disk Pwd		Select the Clear Disk Pwd item to continue using the non-secure disk and clear the password associated with the yet-to-be installed secure disk. CAUTION: Data on the missing secure disk will be permanently inaccessible.
		Retain Password		Select the Retain Password item to use the non-secure disk for this session only, and then search for the missing secure disk in future sessions.
		Boot Device	Secure Erase	Select the Secure Erase item to erase all of the data on the disk and unlock it if required. This might take a long time. NOTE: The system will be unusable until the system files are reinstalled. The ATA secure-erase command is a one-pass overwrite, which erases the entire disk including firmware. The disk remains an encrypted disk.
			Erase/Unlock	Select the Erase/Unlock item to cryptographically erase all data on the disk and unlock the disk to allow a user to gain access to it from any printer. NOTE: The system will be unusable until the system files are reinstalled. It erases the encryption key. The encryption key is erased, so the disk becomes a non-encrypted disk.
			Get Status	This item provides disk status information if any is available.

Table 5-4 Pre-boot menu options (3 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator	Manage Disk	Internal Device		Select the Internal Device item to erase the internal device or get a status about the internal device.
			Secure Erase	Select the Secure Erase item to erase all of the data on the disk and unlock it if required. This might take a long time. NOTE: The system will be unusable until the system files are reinstalled. The ATA secure-erase command erases the entire disk, including firmware. The disk remains an encrypted disk.
			Erase/Unlock	Select the Erase/Unlock item to cryptographically erase all of the data on disk and unlock the disk to allow the user to gain access to it from any printer. NOTE: The system will be unusable until the system files are reinstalled. The HP High Performance Secure Hard Disk is erased.
			Get Status	This item provides disk status information if any is available.
		External Device		Select the External Device item to erase the external device or get status about the external device.
			Secure Erase	Select the Secure Erase item to erase all of the data on the disk and unlock it if required. This might take a long time. NOTE: The system will be unusable until the system files are reinstalled. The ATA secure-erase command erases the entire disk, including firmware. The disk remains an encrypted disk.
			Erase/Unlock	Select the Erase/Unlock item to cryptographically erase all of the data on disk and unlock the disk to allow a user to gain access to it from any printer. NOTE: The system will be unusable until the system files are reinstalled. The encryption key is erased, so the disk becomes a non-encrypted disk.
			Get Status	This item provides disk status information if any is available.

Table 5-5 Pre-boot menu options (4 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator	Configure LAN NOTE: This configuration is only active when the Pre-boot menu is open.	IP Mode [DHCP]		The network can be configured to obtain the network settings from a DHCP server or as static. Use this item for automatic IP address acquisition from the DHCP server.

Table 5-5 Pre-boot menu options (4 of 7) (continued)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
		IP Mode [STATIC]		Use this item to manually assign the network addresses.
			IP Address	Use this item to manually enter the IP addresses.
			Subnet Mask	Use this item to manually enter the subnet mask.
			Default Gateway	Use this item to manually enter the default gateway.
			Save	Select the Save item to save the manual settings.

Table 5-6 Pre-boot menu options (5 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator	Startup Options			Select the Startup Options item to specify options that can be set for the next time the printer is turned on and initializes to the Ready state.
		Show Revision		Not currently functional: Select the Show Revision item to allow the printer to initialize and show the firmware version when the printer reaches the Ready state. Once the printer power is turned on the next time, the Show Revision item is unchecked so that the firmware revision is not shown.
		Cold Reset		Select the Cold Reset item to clear the IP address and all customer settings. (This item also returns all settings to factory defaults.) NOTE: Items in the Service menu are not reset.
		Skip Disk Load		Select the Skip Disk Load item to disable installed third-party applications.
		Skip Cal		Select the Skip Cal item to skip the printer calibration for the very next power-initialization cycle only.
		Lock Service		CAUTION: Select the Lock Service item to lock the Service menu access (both in the Pre-boot menu and the Device Maintenance menu). Service personnel must have the administrator remove the Lock Service setting before they can open the Service menu.
		Skip FSCK		Select the Skip FSCK item to disable Chkdisk/ScanVolume during startup.

Table 5-6 Pre-boot menu options (5 of 7) (continued)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
		First Power		<p>Not currently functional: This item allows the printer to initialize as if it is the first time it has been turned on.</p> <p>For example, the user is prompted to configure first-time settings like date/time, language, and other settings.</p> <p>Select this item so that it is enabled for the next time the printer power is turned on.</p> <p>When the printer power is turned on the next time, this item is unchecked so that the pre-configured settings are used during configuration, and the first-time setting prompt is not used.</p>
		Embedded Jetdirect Off		<p>Select the Embedded Jetdirect Off item to disable the embedded HP Jetdirect.</p> <p>By default this item is unchecked so that HP Jetdirect is always enabled.</p>
		WiFi Accessory		<p>Select the WiFi Accessory item to enable the wireless accessory.</p>

Table 5-7 Pre-boot menu options (6 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator	Diagnostics			<p>Diagnostic items are useful to diagnose hardware components and their interface connections. Use these items to troubleshoot specific hardware components, and the interface between them and other components.</p>
		Memory	Do Not Run	<p>Use the Do Not Run item to exclude the Memory diagnostic when executing multiple diagnostics.</p>
			Short	<p>Use the Short item to select a brief memory test.</p> <p>NOTE: This test requires about four minutes to execute.</p>
			Long	<p>Use the Long item to select an extended memory test.</p> <p>NOTE: This test requires about twenty minutes to execute.</p>

Table 5-7 Pre-boot menu options (6 of 7) (continued)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
		Disk	Do Not Run	Use the Do Not Run item to exclude the Disk diagnostic when executing multiple diagnostics.
			Short	Use the Short item to select a brief firmware self-test. NOTE: This test requires about two or three minutes to execute.
			Long	Use the Long item to select an extended firmware self-test. NOTE: This test requires about sixty minutes to execute.
			Optimized	Use the Optimized item to select a test that checks the active sectors on the disk. NOTE: This test requires about thirty minutes to execute.
			Raw	Use the Raw item to select a test that checks every sector on the disk. NOTE: This test requires about fifty minutes to execute.
			Smart	Use the Smart item to select a very brief test that checks the drive self-monitoring analysis and reporting technology (SMART) status—the drive detects and reports reliability indicators to help anticipate disk failures (SMART status).
		CPB		Use the CPB item to verify the integrity of the copy processor board (CPB) and the formatter PCA connections.

Table 5-7 Pre-boot menu options (6 of 7) (continued)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
		Interconnect		Use the Interconnect item to verify the integrity of the interconnect PCA (ICB) and its connections.
		Run Selected		Select the Run Selected item to execute a selected test. NOTE: If more than one test is selected, they are executed in sequence.

Table 5-8 Pre-boot menu options (7 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator	Remote Admin	Start Telnet		The Remote Admin item allows a service technician to access to the printer Pre-boot menu remotely, and to navigate the menu selections from a remote location. IMPORTANT: A Remote Admin connection must be initiated by a person that is physically present at the printer. This person will also need to provide a randomly generated PIN to the remote service technician. NOTE: For more information about using the Remote Admin function, see Remote Admin on page 316 .
		Stop Telnet		
		Refresh IP		
	System Triage	Copy Logs		If the device will not boot to the Ready state, or the diagnostic log feature found in the Troubleshooting menu is not accessible, then use the System Triage item to copy the diagnostic logs to a USB flash drive at the next printer start up. The files can then be sent to HP to help diagnose the problem.
	Change Svc PWD			Use this item to change the Service menu personal identification number (PIN).
	Reset Svc PWD			If the Service menu personal identification number (PIN) has been changed. Use this item to reset it to the original PIN.
Service Tools	Reset Password			Use this item to reset the Pre-boot administrator password.
	Subsystems			For manufacturing use only. Do not change these values.
Developer Tools	Netexec			

Remote Admin

The Remote Admin feature allows remote access the printer Pre-boot menu (BIOS environment). The printer functions as a telnet server which uses the telnet networking protocol to transmit text data. Any computer (with telnet installed and enabled) can function as the telnet client to remotely display and interact with the Pre-boot menu.

IMPORTANT: While the Remote Admin function allows remote access the Pre-boot menu, for security reasons the Remote Admin connection must be initiated by a person that is physically present at the printer.

This section describes the following Remote Admin items.

Required software and network connection

Before using the Remote Admin feature, make sure that the telnet network protocol is installed, and enabled, on the remote telnet client computer.

NOTE: This section describes enabling and configuring the telnet feature for computers using a Windows® operating system.

HP recommends that the telnet client computer be a Windows based system, however, there are other operating systems that support the telnet network protocol. For information about enabling and configuring the telnet network protocol for other operating systems, see the owner's manual for that operating system.

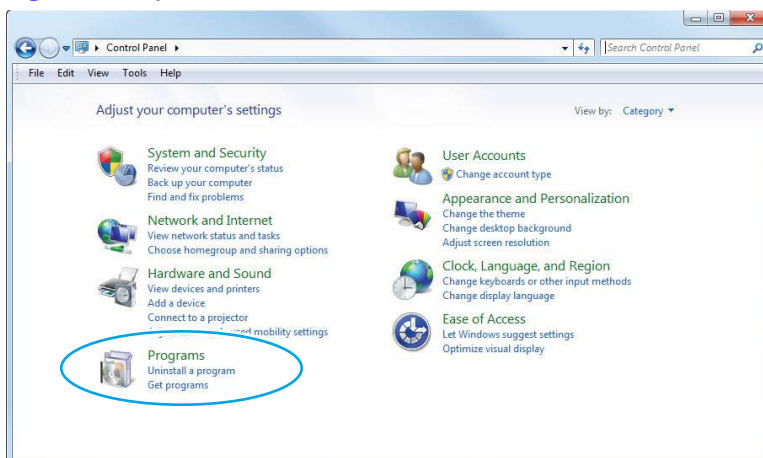
Telnet client

All computers using the Windows operating system have the telnet client installed, however, the telnet client function might not be enabled by default.

NOTE: The figures and menus in this section are for the Windows 7 Enterprise® operating system. Screens and menu selections might vary slightly for other operating systems.

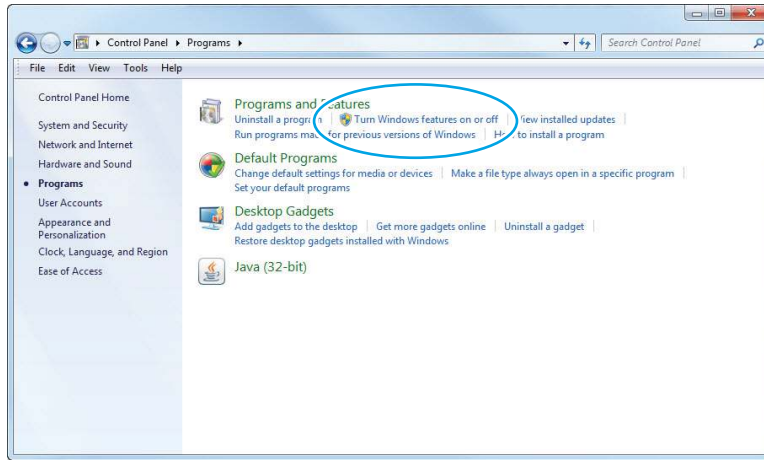
1. Use the **Start** menu to open the **Control Panel**, and then click the **Programs** item to select it.

Figure 5-4 Open the Control Panel



2. Click the **Turn Windows features on or off** item to select it.

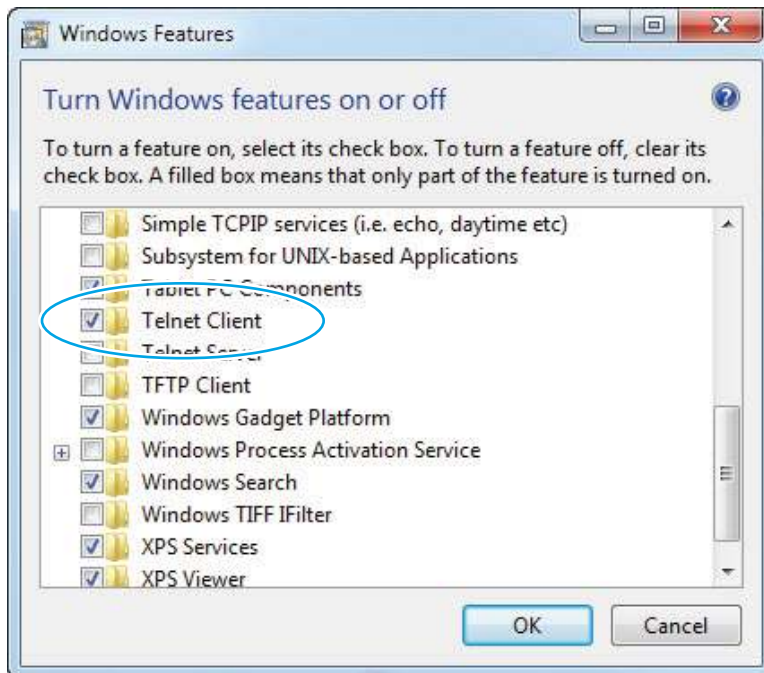
Figure 5-5 Turn Windows features on or off



3. In the **Windows Features** box, scroll down to **Telnet Client**. If the check box is not checked, click the box to select it, and then click the **OK** button.

TIP: If the check box is already checked then the telnet client function is already enabled. Click the **Cancel** button.

Figure 5-6 Enable the telnet client feature



Network connection

The remote telnet client computer must have direct network access to the printer for the Remote Admin function to operate. This means that the telnet client computer must be on the same network as the printer. The Remote Admin function cannot be accessed through a network firewall or other remote access network security programs.


If a private network is not accessible, ask the network administrator to set up a virtual private network (VPN) connection to the network.

Connect a remote connection

Learn how to connect a remote connection using telnet.

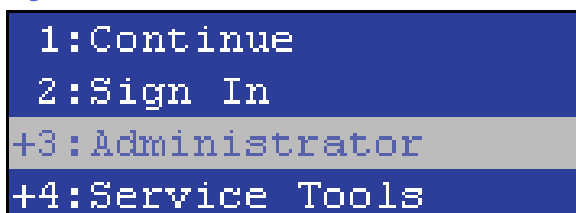
Start the telnet server function at the printer

For security reasons the Remote Admin feature must be initiated by a person that is physically present at the printer. The following steps must be performed by a person that is physically present at the printer.

 **NOTE:** This person might need to sign in with an administrator or service password depending on how the printer is configured.

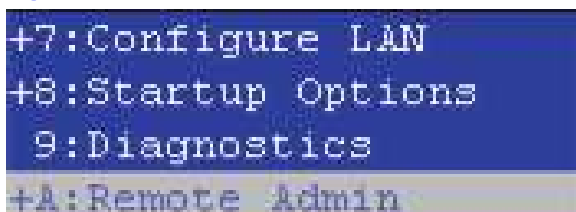
1. Turn the printer on.
2. The HP logo displays on the printer control panel. When a "1/8" with an underscore displays, touch the middle of the screen to open the [Pre-boot](#) menu.
3. Use the arrow buttons on the touchscreen to scroll down and highlight the **+3:Administrator** item, and then touch the [OK](#) button to select it.

Figure 5-7 Select the **+3:Administrator** item



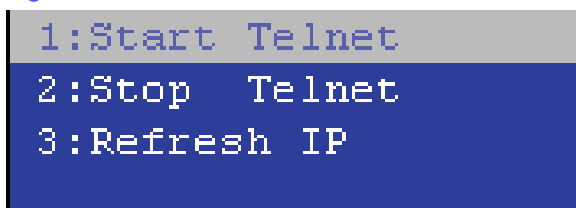
4. Use the arrow buttons on the touchscreen to scroll down and highlight the **+A:Remote Admin** item, and then touch the [OK](#) button to select it.

Figure 5-8 Select the **+A:Remote Admin** item



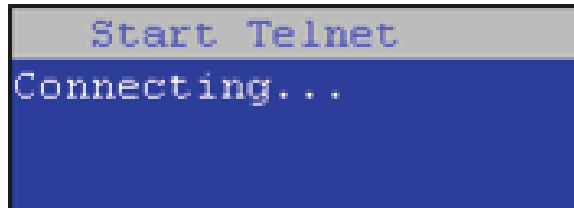
5. Use the arrow buttons on the touchscreen to scroll down and highlight the **1:Start Telnet** item, and then touch the [OK](#) button to select it.

Figure 5-9 Select the **1:Start Telnet** item



6. Do one of the following
 - If a connecting message displays briefly, go to step vii..

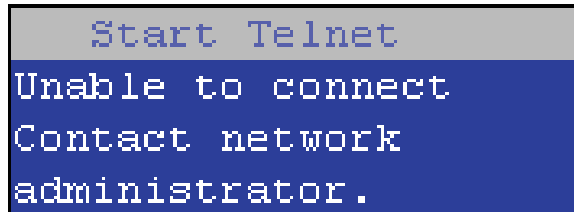
Figure 5-10 Telnet connecting message



```
Start Telnet
Connecting...
```


- If an error message displays, use the steps below to identify the problem.

Figure 5-11 Telnet error message



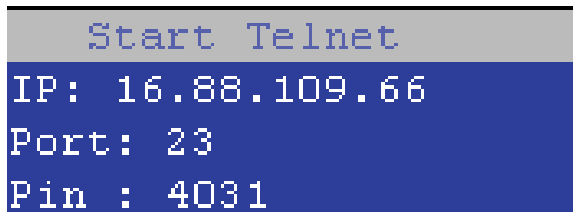
```
Start Telnet
Unable to connect
Contact network
administrator.
```

- a. The printer network cable is not correctly connected.
 - b. The BIOS LAN settings are incorrect.
 - The printer should be configured to use a static IP address, but is configured to use DHCP instead.
 - The printer is configured to use a static IP address, but the IP address is incorrect.
 - c. The printer is correctly configured to use DHCP, but the DHCP server is not turned on or is malfunctioning.
7. When the printer telnet server function is initialized, the following screen appears. Use the information on this screen to connect the remote telnet client computer to the printer.

 **NOTE:** The printer is now ready to receive remote telnet client commands.

- **IP:** The static or dynamically allocated IP address for the printer.
- **Port:** The standard telnet port (23).
- **Pin:** A randomly generated 4-digit personal identification number (PIN).

Figure 5-12 Telnet server function initialized



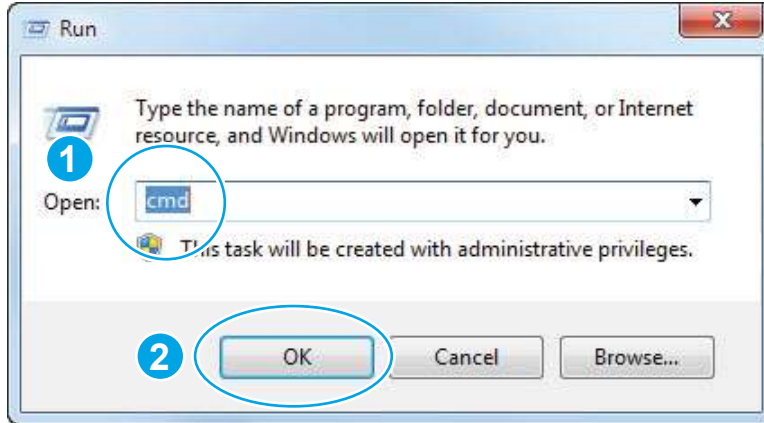
```
Start Telnet
IP: 16.88.109.66
Port: 23
Pin : 4031
```

Start the telnet client function at the remote computer

The following steps establish a Remote Admin connection from a remote computer to the printer.

1. From the **Start** menu click **Run** to open a dialog box, type `cmd` in the **Open** field, and then click the **OK** button to open a Windows command window.

Figure 5-13 Open a command window



2. From any displayed directory, type `telnet` at the prompt, and then press the **Enter** key.

Figure 5-14 Start a telnet session

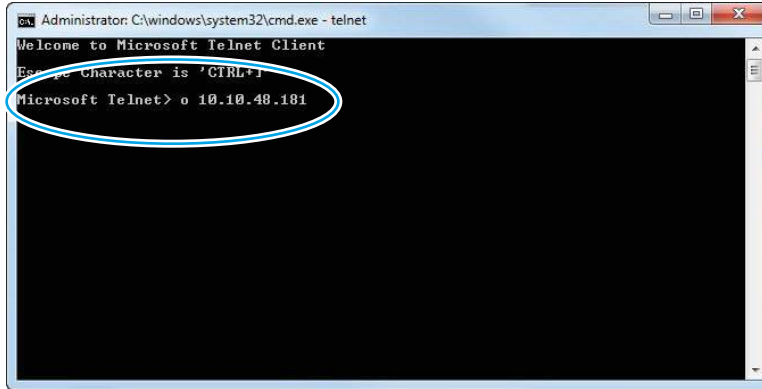


3. Type `<IP ADDRESS>` at the telnet prompt, and then press the **Enter** key.

NOTE: For `<IP ADDRESS>`, substitute the IP address that was displayed in step vii. in [Start the telnet server function at the printer on page 318](#).

TIP: If the telnet connection fails to establish a connection, the printer is probably behind a firewall or on a different network than the remote telnet client computer. See [Network connection on page 318](#).

Figure 5-15 Establish a telnet connection



4. Type the PIN that was displayed in step vii. in [Start the telnet server function at the printer on page 318](#) at the prompt, and then press the **Enter** key.


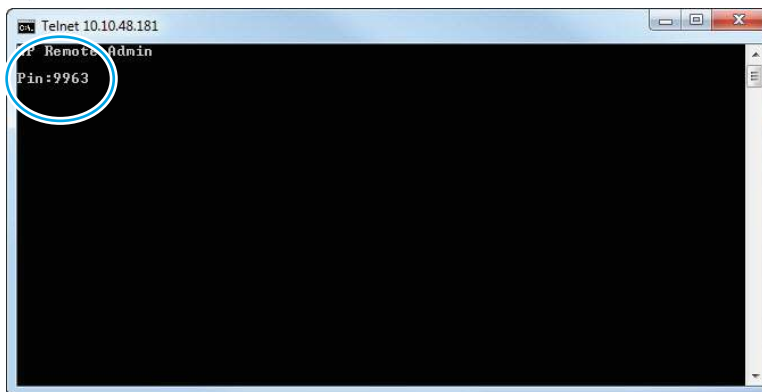

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure to type the PIN correctly. After five incorrect PIN entries, the printer terminates the Remote Admin connection. The Remote Admin feature must be re-initiated at the printer. See [Start the telnet server function at the printer on page 318](#).

Figure 5-16 Enter the PIN

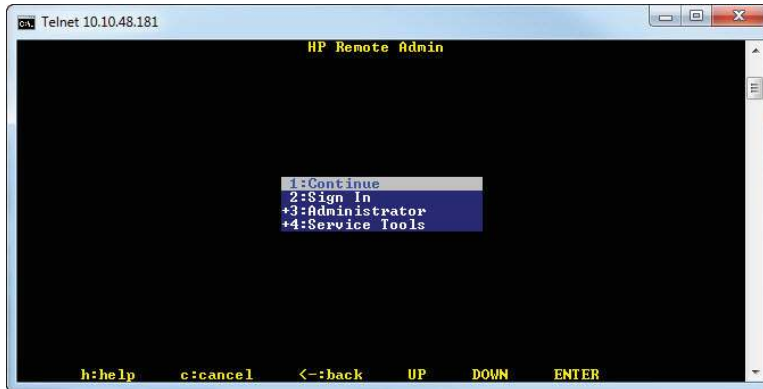


5. The following screen displays when the correct PIN is entered and the Remote Admin connection is successful. For information about the Pre-boot menu and options, see [Pre-boot menu options on page 342](#).

 **NOTE:** Because a Remote Admin connection is an unsecure telnet network protocol connection, the following Pre-boot menu items are disabled for the remote telnet client computer.

- The **+3:Administrator** menu **4:Change Password** item.
- The **+3:Administrator** menu **5:Clear Password** item.
- The **+3:Administrator** menu **6:Disk Manage** item.

Figure 5-17 Remote Admin window



Disconnect a remote connection

Learn how to disconnect a remote connection.

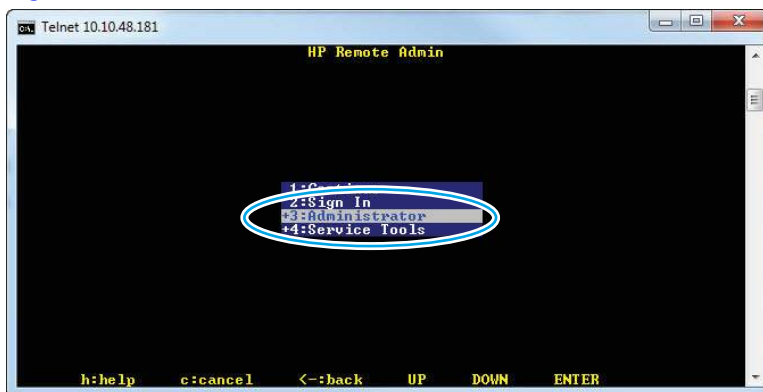
The Remote Admin connection can be terminated from the printer control panel or the remote telnet client computer.



NOTE: The following procedure describes terminating a Remote Admin connection from the remote telnet client computer.

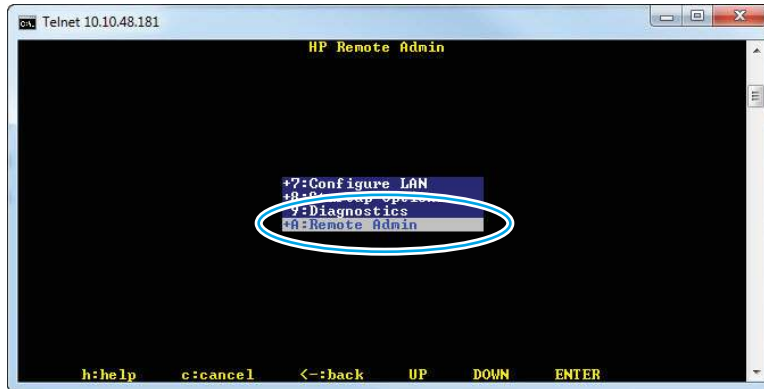
1. From the Pre-boot main menu, use the arrow buttons on the keyboard to scroll down to the **+3:Administrator** item, and then press the **Enter** key.

Figure 5-18 Access the administrator menu



- Use the arrow buttons on the keyboard to scroll down to the **+A:Remote Admin** item, and then press the **Enter** key.

Figure 5-19 Access the remote admin menu

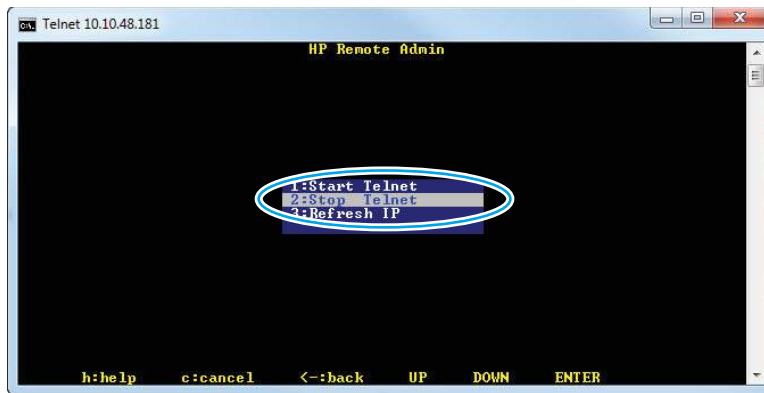


- Use the arrow buttons on the keyboard to scroll down to the **2:Stop Telnet** item, and then press the **Enter** key. The Remote Admin connection between the printer and the remote telnet client computer terminates.

IMPORTANT: The printer remains in the Pre-boot menu. Have the person that is physically present at the printer do the following:

- Touch the **Home** button to return to the main Pre-boot menu and highlight the **1:Continue** item, and then touch the **OK** button. The printer will continue to initialize.

Figure 5-20 Terminate the telnet connection



Reports menu

To display: At the printer control panel, select **Reports**.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 5-9 Reports menu

First level	Second level	Values	Description
Configuration/Status Pages	Settings Menu Map	Print View	Shows a map of the entire Settings menu and the selected values for each setting.

Table 5-9 Reports menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Values	Description
	Current Settings Page	Print View	Shows the current printer settings.
	Configuration Page	Print View	Shows the printer settings and installed accessories.
	How to Connect Page	Print View	Shows the IP address, the host name, and the hardware (MAC) address for the printer if it is connected to a network.
	Supplies Status Page	Print View	Shows the approximate remaining life for the supplies; reports statistics on total number of pages and jobs processed, serial number, page counts, and maintenance information. HP provides approximations of the remaining life for the supplies as a customer convenience. The actual remaining supply levels might be different from the approximations provided.
	Usage Page	Print View	Shows a count of all paper sizes that have passed through the printer; lists whether they were simplex, duplex, monochrome, or color; and reports the page count.
	File Directory Page	Print View	Shows the file name and folder name for files that are stored in the printer memory.
	Web Services Status Page	Print View	Shows the detected Web Services for the printer.
	HP Flex Build Configuration Page	Print View	Shows installed Flex Build components and replacement history. NOTE: 877/826/786/731 printers only.
	Event Log	Print View	Displays or prints event logs listing event code, date/time, cycles and repetitions on the printer.
	Paper Path Page	Print View	Shows paper path usage on the printer.
Fax Reports (MFP fax models only)	Fax Activity Log	Print View	Contains a list of the faxes that have been sent from or received by this printer.

Table 5-9 Reports menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Values	Description
	Billing Codes Report	Print View	Provides a list of billing codes that have been used for outgoing faxes. This report shows how many sent faxes were billed to each code.
	Blocked Fax List	Print View	Provides a list of phone numbers that are blocked from sending faxes to this printer.
	Fax Call Report	Print View	Provides a detailed report of the last fax operation, either sent or received.
Other Pages	PCL Font List	Print	Prints the available PCL fonts.
	PS Font List	Print	Prints the available PS fonts.
	Secure Drum Data Erase	Print	Prints the secure drum data erase pattern to overwrite any residual image data that might be left on the drum from the previous print job.

Settings menu

To display: At the printer control panel, select the [Settings](#) menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 5-10 Settings menu

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
General	Date/Time Settings	Date/Time Format	Date Format		DD/MMM/YYYY MMM/DD/YYYY YYYY/MMM/DD	Use the Date/Time Settings menu to specify the date and time and to configure date/time settings.
			Time Format		12 hour (AM/PM) 24 hours	Select the format that the printer uses to show the date and time, for example 12-hour format or 24-hour format.
		Date/Time	Date		Select the time zone from a list.	Select the time zone, date, and time that the printer uses.
			Time		Select the date from a pop-up calendar.	

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
			Time Zone		Select the time from a pop-up keypad.	
	Energy Settings	Sleep Schedule	A list of scheduled events displays.		+ (Add) Edit Delete	Use to configure the printer to automatically wake up or go to sleep at specific times on specific days. Using this feature saves energy. NOTE: You must configure the date and time settings before you can use this feature.
			New event	Event Type		Select whether to add or edit a Wake event or a Sleep event, and then select the time and the days for the wake or sleep event.
				Time		Set the wake or sleep event time parameters.
				Event Days	Select days of the week from a list.	Set the wake or sleep event day parameters.
		Sleep Settings	Sleep After Inactivity Shut Down		Range: 1 to 110 minutes Default = 0 minutes	Set the number of minutes after which the printer enters Sleep or Auto Off mode. Touch the existing number to open the virtual keypad, and then increase or decrease the number of minutes.
	Display Settings	Display Brightness	Manual		The Manual setting uses a slider to manually control the display brightness.	Use to specify the intensity of the LCD control panel display.
		System Sound			On* Off	Use to specify whether you hear a sound when you touch the screen or press buttons on the control panel.

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Language Settings	Language		Select from a list of languages that the printer supports.	Use to select a different language for control panel messages and specify the default keyboard layout. When you select a new language, the keyboard layout automatically changes to match the factory default for the selected language.
			Keyboard Layout Flow models only		Each language has a default keyboard layout. To change it, select from a list of layouts.	Select the default keyboard layout that matches the language you want to use.
		Information Screen			Show connection information* Hide connection information	Use this menu item to display or hide connection information on the Home screen.
		Display Date and Time			Yes* No	Select whether to display or hide the date and time on the control panel Home screen.
		Job Status Notifications			Fewer* More	Use this feature to control how many job status notifications appear while a job is proceeding <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the setting is Fewer, there will only be a notification to indicate the job has been added to the job queue (except Fa, which always indicates success or failure). If the setting is More, there will be status notifications while the job is proceeding including a completion notification.

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Inactivity Timeout			Range: 10-300 seconds Default = 60 seconds	Specifies the amount of time that elapses between any activity on the control panel and when the printer resets to the default settings. When the timeout expires, the control panel display returns to the Home menu, and any user signed in to the printer is signed out.
		Clearable Warnings			On Job*	Use this feature to set the period that a clearable warning displays on the control panel. If the On setting is selected, clearable warnings appear until the Clearable Warnings button is pressed. If the Job setting is selected, clearable warnings stay on the display during the job that generated the warning and disappear from the display when the next job starts.
		Continuable Events			Auto-continue (10 seconds)* Touch OK to continue	Use this option to configure the printer behavior when the printer encounters certain errors. If the Auto-continue (10 seconds) option is selected, the job will continue after 10 seconds. If the Touch OK to continue option is selected, the job will stop and require the user to touch the OK button before continuing.

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
	Enable Device USB				Enabled* Disabled	Use this feature to enable or disable the USB port, which allows connecting to a computer by using a USB device.
	Jam Recovery				Auto* Off On	<p>This printer provides a jam recovery feature that reprints jammed pages. Select one of the following options:</p> <p>Auto: The printer attempts to reprint jammed pages when sufficient memory is available. This is the default setting.</p> <p>Off: The printer does not attempt to reprint jammed pages. Because no memory is used to store the most recent pages, performance is optimal.</p> <p>NOTE: When using this option, if the printer runs out of paper and the job is being printed on both sides, some pages can be lost.</p> <p>On: The printer always reprints jammed pages. Additional memory is allocated to store the last few pages printed. This might cause a decrease in overall performance.</p>
	Auto Recovery				Enabled Disabled*	The printer attempts to reprint jammed pages when sufficient memory is available. This is the default setting.

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
	Enable AutoSend				Disabled Enabled*	Use the Enable AutoSend menu to enable or disable the AutoSend feature. The AutoSend feature enables your product to periodically send product configuration information including serial number, event logs, page usage counts, and supplies status information to HP web addresses (URLs), or email addresses. Information sent to HP is used to improve products and services, and to monitor the product if you have a relationship with HP that provides you services such as proactive cartridge replacement, pay-per-page contracts, support agreements, or usage tracking.
	Hold Off Print Job				Enabled* Disabled	Enable this feature if you want to prevent print jobs from starting while a user is initiating a copy job from the control panel. Held print jobs start printing after the copy job is finished, provided that no other copy job is in the print queue.
Copy/Print	Copy Settings	Image Preview				Display a preview of the image before printing it.
	Enable Print from USB Drive				Enabled Disabled*	Enables the printer to open a file from a USB drive.

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
	Manage Stored Jobs	Job Sort Order			Job Name* Date	This option allows you list the jobs either alphabetically or chronologically.
		Retain Temporary Jobs After Reboot			Do not retain* Personal jobs only All temporary jobs	Sets which temporary jobs will be retained in the event of a printer reboot.
		Temporary Job Storage Limit			1-300 Default = 32	Configure global settings for jobs that are stored in the printer memory. The Temporary Job Storage Limit feature specifies the number of temporary jobs that can be stored on the printer. The maximum allowed value is 300.
		Temporary Stored Job Retention			Off* 30 minutes 1 hour 4 hours 1 day 3 days 1 week 4 weeks	Configure global settings for jobs that are stored in the printer memory. The Temporary Stored Job Retention feature specifies the number of temporary jobs that can be stored on the printer. The maximum allowed value is 300.
		Standard Stored Job Retention			Off* 30 minutes 1 hour 4 hours 1 day 3 days 1 week 4 weeks	Configure global settings for jobs that are stored in the printer memory. The Temporary Stored Job Retention feature specifies the number of standard jobs that can be stored on the printer. The maximum allowed value is 300.

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
	Default Print Options	Number of Copies		Range: 1-32000 Default = 1	Sets the default number of copies for a copy job. This default applies when the Copy function or the Quick Copy function is initiated from the printer Home screen.	
		Paper Selection		Select from a list of sizes that the printer supports.	Configures the default paper size used for print jobs.	
		Default Custom Paper Size	X Dimension	Range: 3-8.5 inches Default = 8.5 inches	Configures the default paper size that is used when the user selects Custom as the paper size for a print job.	
			Y Dimension	Range: 5-14 inches Default = 14 inches		
			Use Inches	Enabled* Disabled		
		Output Sides			1-sided* 2-sided	Use to indicate whether the original document is printed on one or both sides, and whether the copies should be printed on one or both sides. For example, select the 1-sided original , 2-sided output option when the original is printed on one side, but you want to make two-sided copies.
		Fit to Page (PDF)			On Off*	Use this feature to reduce or enlarge the image/content of each page to fit the currently selected paper size.

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Fit to Page (TIFF, BMP, JPG, PNG)			On Off*	Use this feature to reduce or enlarge the image/content of each page to fit the currently selected paper size.
		Quality and Speed			Quick View Normal* Fine Lines	
	Envelope Rotate				Off* 90 Degrees 180 degrees	<p>Use this feature to enable rotation when printing on envelopes.</p> <p>Envelopes are usually loaded into the printer as short-edge feed. However, if the Envelope Rotate function is enabled, you can load envelopes as long-edge feed. The printer rotates the image to be printed so that it appears correctly on the envelopes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Off (default): Load envelopes in short-edge feed direction. • 90 degrees: Load envelopes in long-edge feed direction. • 180 degrees: Load envelopes in short-edge feed direction with the flap on the bottom side.
	PCL and PostScript Settings	Suppress Blank Pages			Off* On	When set to On, any blank pages will not be printed.

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Courier Font			Regular* Dark	Select which version of the Courier font you want to use. The factory default setting is Regular , which uses an average stroke width. The Dark setting can be used if a heavier Courier font is needed.
		Print PS Errors			Enabled Disabled*	Use this feature to select whether a PostScript (PS) error page is printed when the printer encounters a PS error.
		Print PDF Errors			Enabled Disabled*	Selects whether a PDF error page is printed when the printer encounters a PDF error.
		Personality			Auto* PCL PS PDF	Configures the default print language or personality for the printer. Normally you should not change the printer language. If you change the setting to a specific printer language, the printer does not automatically switch from one language to another unless specific software commands are sent to it.
		PCL	Font Settings	Font Source	Internal Disk resident	Selects the font source for the user-soft default font. The list of available options varies depending on the installed printer options.

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
				Font Number	Range: 0-110 Default = 0	Specifies the font number for the user-soft default font using the source that is specified in the Font Source menu. The printer assigns a number to each font and lists it on the PCL font list. The font number displays in the Font # column of the printout.
				Font Pitch	Range: 0.44-99.99 Default = 10	If the Font Source option and the Font Number setting indicate a contour font, then use this feature to select a default pitch (for a fixed-spaced font).
			PCL Settings	Form Length	Range: 5-128 Default = 60	Controls the PCL print-command options. PCL is a set of printer commands that HP developed to provide access to printer features. Use the Form Length feature to select the user-soft default vertical form length.
				Orientation	Portrait * Landscape	Select the orientation that is most often used for copy or scan originals. Select the Portrait option if the short edge is at the top or select the Landscape option if the long edge is at the top.

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
				Symbol Set	Select from a list of symbol sets.	Select any one of several available symbol sets from the control panel. A symbol set is a unique grouping of all the characters in a font. The factory default value for this option is PC-8. Either PC-8 or PC-850 are recommended for line-draw characters.
				Append CR to LF	No* Yes	Configure whether a carriage return (CR) is appended to each line feed (LF) encountered in backwards-compatible PCL jobs (pure text, no job control). Select Yes to append the carriage return. The default setting is No. Some environments, such as UNIX, indicate a new line by using only the line-feed control code. This option allows the user to append the required carriage return to each line feed.

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
				Media Source Mapping	Standard* Classic	Use to select and maintain input trays by number when you are not using the printer driver, or when the software program has no option for tray selection. The following options are available: Standard: Tray numbering is based on newer HP LaserJet models. Classic: Tray numbering is based on HP LaserJet 4 and older models.
	Print Quality	Adjust paper types			Select from a list of paper types Reset Paper Types	If print quality problems occur, use this menu to adjust the Print Mode for the paper type in use. If a user-defined type (enabled in the Embedded Web Server) has preprinted content that makes the sides of the paper different, set the paper type as Marked Paper .
		REt			On* Off	Use this feature to enable Resolution Enhancement technology (REt), which produces print output with smooth angles, curves, and edges.

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
	Manage Trays	Use Requested Tray			Exclusively* First	<p>Controls how the printer handles jobs that have specified a specific input tray. Two options are available:</p> <p>Exclusively: The printer never selects a different tray when the user has indicated that a specific tray should be used, even if that tray is empty.</p> <p>First: The printer pulls from another tray if the specified tray is empty, even though the user specifically indicated a tray for the job.</p>
		Manually Feed Prompt			Always* Unless loaded	<p>Indicate whether a prompt should appear when the type or size for a job does not match the specified tray and the printer pulls from the multipurpose tray instead. Two options are available:</p> <p>Always: A prompt always displays before using the multipurpose tray.</p> <p>Unless loaded: A message displays only if the multipurpose tray is empty.</p>

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Size/Type Prompt			Display* Do not display	<p>Controls whether the tray configuration message displays whenever a tray is closed. Two options are available:</p> <p>Display: Shows the tray configuration message when a tray is closed. The user is able to configure the tray settings directly from this message.</p> <p>Do not display: Prevents the tray configuration message from automatically appearing.</p>
		Use Another Tray			Allow* Do not allow	<p>Use to turn on or off the control panel prompt to select another tray when the specified tray is empty. Two options are available:</p> <p>Enabled: When this option is selected, the user is prompted either to add paper to the selected tray or to choose a different tray.</p> <p>Disabled: When this option is selected, the user is not given the option of selecting a different tray. The printer prompts the user to add paper to the tray that was initially selected.</p>

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Alternative Letterhead Mode			Off* On	Use to load letterhead or preprinted paper into the tray the same way for all print jobs, whether you are printing to one side of the sheet or to both sides of the sheet. When this option is selected, load the paper as you would for printing on both sides. See the user documentation that came with the printer for instructions about loading letterhead for printing on both sides. When this option is selected, the printer speed slows to the speed required for printing on both sides.
		Duplex Blank Pages			Automatic* Always	Controls how the printer handles two-sided jobs (duplexing). Two options are available: Auto: Enables Smart Duplexing, which instructs the printer not to process blank pages. Yes: Disables Smart Duplexing and forces the duplexer to flip the sheet of paper even if it is printed on only one side. This might be preferable for certain jobs that use paper types such as letterhead or prepunched paper.

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Image Rotation			Left to right* Right to left Alternate	The Image Rotation setting allows alternatives affecting how preprinted paper is loaded into the tray NOTE: For stapled print or copy jobs, make sure the Staple/ Collate setting matches the Image Rotation setting as to which side of paper (left or right) you want stapled. If these setting do not match each other, you will need to change the loading orientation of the paper so that the job is stapled in the correct spot.
		Override A4/Letter			Yes* No	Prints on letter-size paper when an A4 job is sent but no A4-size paper is loaded in the printer (or to print on A4 paper when a letter-size job is sent but no letter-size paper is loaded). This option will also override A3 with ledger-size paper and ledger with A3-size paper.

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Unsupported Size Behavior			Use default size automatically* Prompt for user response	<p>Use this feature to print documents that are on a paper size that the product does not support</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select Use default size automatically to use the paper size selected in Default Print Options. • Select Prompt for user response to be asked to use the size selected in Default Print Options or to cancel the job.

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		<p>Rotate Offset</p> <p>NOTE: When set to <i>Automatic</i>, rotation does not occur if:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The tray is specified in the job and the User Selected Tray setting is set to Exclusively. • The specified bin in the job does not support both orientations. • The job is uncollated. • The job is collated, but only has one sheet per copy. • The job has mixed paper size or type. • The user selects a different paper after the job has started. • A job setting works only with a specific orientation. • The Job Offset setting is available and set to On. 			<p>Automatic</p> <p>Off*</p>	<p>Use this feature to separate each copy by rotating its position in the output bin. Two options are available:</p> <p>Off: Jobs are printed normally with separating each copy.</p> <p>Automatic: Copies are rotated automatically.</p>
		Tray Priority			<p>Tray 4</p> <p>Tray 3</p> <p>Tray 2</p> <p>Tray 1</p>	<p>You can set the tray priority. If first setting is Tray 1, the printer automatically prints from Tray 1 after the current tray runs out of paper.</p>

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Tray Protection			<p>NOTE: You can select all but one of the trays. At least one tray must be unselected at all times</p> <p>Tray 4</p> <p>Tray 3</p> <p>Tray 2</p> <p>Tray 1</p>	When this option is chosen, the selected tray will be protected. This prevents paper from being fed if Use Another Tray is enabled. If you select Tray 1, for example, then Tray 1 is excluded when using another tray.
		Paper Out Action			<p>Auto Continue Time-Out</p> <p>Auto Continue Action</p>	Specify the action the printer will take when the paper configured for the print job does not match the paper loaded in the input tray
Scan/Digital Send	Scan+ Settings			Image Preview	<p>Make optional*</p> <p>Require preview</p> <p>Disable preview</p>	Use this menu to configure settings that affect scan apps.
	E-mail Settings	<p>E-mail Setup</p> <p>NOTE: Email Settings only</p>				<p>Use to configure settings that apply to sending documents through email or saving documents to a folder on the network or on a USB multi-drive.</p> <p>The E-mail Setup Wizard feature configures the printer to send scanned images as email attachments. To open the printer HP Embedded Web Server and set up the email notification server, enter the printer IP address into a Web browser.</p>

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Image Preview			Make optional* Require preview Disable preview	<p>Defines the default job options for each function. If you do not specify the job options when creating the job, the default options are used. For complete setup, go to the HP Embedded Web Server by typing the IP address of the printer into a Web browser.</p> <p>Use the Image Preview feature to scan a document and display a preview before completing the job. Select whether this feature is available on the printer.</p> <p>Make optional: The feature is optional, depending on the user who is signed in.</p> <p>Require preview Previews are required for all users.</p> <p>Disable preview: Previews are disabled for all users.</p>

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
	Network Folder Settings	Image Preview			Make optional* Require preview Disable preview	<p>Defines the default job options for each function. If you do not specify the job options when creating the job, the default options are used. For complete setup, go to the HP Embedded Web Server by typing the IP address of the printer into a Web browser.</p> <p>Use the Image Preview feature to scan a document and display a preview before completing the job. Select whether this feature is available on the printer.</p> <p>Make optional: The feature is optional, depending on the user who is signed in.</p> <p>Require preview Previews are required for all users.</p> <p>Disable preview: Previews are disabled for all users.</p>

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
	SharePoint Settings	Image Preview			Make optional* Require preview Disable preview	<p>Defines the default job options for each function. If you do not specify the job options when creating the job, the default options are used. For complete setup, go to the HP Embedded Web Server by typing the IP address of the printer into a Web browser.</p> <p>Use the Image Preview feature to scan a document and display a preview before completing the job. Select whether this feature is available on the printer.</p> <p>Make optional: The feature is optional, depending on the user who is signed in.</p> <p>Require preview Previews are required for all users.</p> <p>Disable preview: Previews are disabled for all users.</p>

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
	Scan to USB Drive Settings	Image Preview			Make optional* Require preview Disable preview	<p>Defines the default job options for each function. If you do not specify the job options when creating the job, the default options are used. For complete setup, go to the HP Embedded Web Server by typing the IP address of the printer into a Web browser.</p> <p>Use the Image Preview feature to scan a document and display a preview before completing the job. Select whether this feature is available on the printer.</p> <p>Make optional: The feature is optional, depending on the user who is signed in.</p> <p>Require preview Previews are required for all users.</p> <p>Disable preview: Previews are disabled for all users.</p>

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
	Digital Sending Software Setup	Allow Use of a DSS Server Allow Transfer to New DSS server			Disabled Enabled*	Configure how the printer interacts with the HP Digital Sending Software (DSS) server. HP DSS handles digital sending tasks, such as faxing, emailing, and sending scanned documents to a network folder or USB storage device. Use the Allow Use of a DSS Server and Allow Transfer to New DSS server options to configure the printer to use HP DSS.
Fax	Internal Fax Modem Setup	Line 1 Line 2				
	Fax Send Settings	Image Preview				
		Fax Dialing Settings	Line Monitor Volume		Off Low* High	These settings control how the fax modem dials the outgoing fax number when faxes are sent.
			Dialing Mode		Tone* Pulse	
			Redial Interval		1-5 Minutes Default = 5 minutes	
			Fax Send Speed		Fast* Medium Slow	
			Dialing Prefix			
			Detect Dial Tone			
			Redial on Error		Range: 0-9 Default = 2	

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
			Redial on No Answer		Range: 0-2 Default = 0	
			Redial on Busy		Range: 0-9 Default = 3	
		General Fax Send Settings	Fax Number Confirmation		Enabled Disabled*	If this feature is enabled, you must enter the fax number twice.
			Fax Line Selection		Automatic* Line 1 Line 2	
			PC Fax Send		Enabled* Disabled	Enables users who have the correct driver installed to send faxes through the printer from their computers.
			Error Correction Mode	Line 1* Line 2	Enabled* Disabled	When error-correction mode is enabled and an error occurs during fax transmission, the printer sends or receives the error portion again.
			Fax Header		Prepend* Overlay	Use to prepend or overlay the fax header page.

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Billing Code Settings	Enable Billing Codes		Off* On	<p>When billing codes are enabled, a prompt displays that asks the user to enter the billing code for an outgoing fax. This prompt does not appear if the Allow users to edit billing codes check box is not checked.</p> <p>You can also use the billing codes report in the Reports menu to view the list of the billing codes that have been used for faxes that have been sent from the printer. The list is grouped by billing code and also shows fax details. This feature can be used for billing or usage tracking.</p>
			Default Billing Code			Specify a default billing code for faxing. If you specify a default billing code, this code displays in the Billing Code field when the user sends an outgoing fax. If this field is blank, no default billing code is provided for the user.
			Minimum Length		Range: 1-16 Default = 1	Specify the required length of the billing code. Billing codes can be between 1 and 16 characters long.
			Allow users to edit billing codes		Off On*	
	Fax Receive Settings	Fax Receive Setup	Ring Volume		Off Low* High	Use to configure settings for receiving faxes.
			Rings To Answer		Range: 1-6 Default = 1	

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
			Fax Receive Speed		Fast* Medium Slow	
		Fax Printing Schedule			Always store faxes Always print faxes* Use Fax Printing Schedule	If you have concerns about the security of private faxes, use this feature to store faxes rather than having them automatically print. Open the Fax Printing Schedule sub-menu, and then you can choose to always store faxes, always print them, or you can set up a schedule for each day of the week.
			Schedule Touch this to set up a fax printing schedule if you selected the Use Fax Printing Schedule option.	+ (Add) Edit Delete (trash can)	Print incoming faxes Store incoming faxes Time Event Days	If you are using a fax printing schedule, use this menu to configure when to print faxes.

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Blocked Fax Numbers	Fax Number to Block			<p>The blocked fax list can contain up to 30 numbers. When the printer receives a call from one of the blocked fax numbers, it deletes the incoming fax. It also logs the blocked fax in the activity log along with job-accounting information.</p> <p>Add blocked numbers: Enter a fax number into the Fax Number to Block field, and then touch the arrow button to add a new number to the blocked fax list.</p> <p>To remove blocked numbers: Select a number and touch the Delete button to delete it from the blocked fax list.</p> <p>To clear all blocked numbers: Touch the Delete All button to clear all of the numbers from the blocked fax list.</p> <p>You also can use the Blocked Fax List report in the Information menu to view the list of the fax numbers that have been blocked on this printer.</p>

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
		Default Job Options	Notification		Do not notify* Notify when job completes Notify only if job fails	Configure to receive notification about the status of a sent document. Do not notify: Turns off this feature. Notify when job completes: Select to receive notification for this job only. Notify only if job fails: Select to receive notification only if the job is not sent successfully.
					Print E-mail*	E-mail: Select to receive the notification in an email. Touch the text box following Email Address, and then enter the email address for the notification.
				Include Thumbnail		NOTE: When sending an analog fax, select Include Thumbnail to receive a thumbnail image of the first page of the fax in your notification.
				Notification E-mail address		Touch this text field, provide the email address to which you want notifications sent, and then touch the OK button.
			Stamp Received Faxes		On Off*	Use this option to add the date, time, sender's phone number, and page number to each page of the faxes that this printer receives.

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
			Fit to Page		On* Off	Use to shrink faxes that are larger than Letter-size or A4-size so that they can fit onto a Letter-size or A4-size page. If this feature set to Disabled , faxes larger than Letter or A4 will flow across multiple pages.
			Paper Tray		Automatic* Select from a list of the trays.	
			Out Sides		1-sided* 2-sided Page flip up	Use to describe the layout for each side of the original document. First select whether the original document is printed on one side or both sides.
	Fax Forwarding	Enable Fax Forwarding			Disabled* Enabled	Use to forward received faxes to another fax machine.
			Type of Fax Job to Forward		All faxes Sent faxes Received faxes*	Use to select the type of fax jobs that you want forwarded.
			Fax Forwarding Method		IP Fax Internal Modem*	
			Fax Forwarding Number			Provide the forwarding phone number, and then touch the OK button.
	Clear Fax Activity Log					Clears all events from the fax activity log.
Manage Supplies	Low Warning Thresholds			Black Cartridge • ##% Document feeder kit • ##%		Set the estimated percentage at which the printer notifies you when a toner cartridge is very low.

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
	Low Warning Threshold Message				On Off	Displays a message on the control panel when a cartridge is very low.
	Very Low Behavior	Black Cartridge Document Feeder Kit			Stop Continue Prompt to continue	
		Staples			Stop Prompt to continue	
	Delay Very Low Message			Stop Continue	Black Cartridge 0 pages*	After a supply reaches the very low state, the warning message can be delayed by a specified page count.
	Store Usage Data				On supplies Not on supplies	The Store Usage Data provides a way to suppress the toner cartridges from storing most of the information gathered exclusively for the purpose of understanding the usage of the printer. Select the On supplies setting to store the data on the toner cartridge memory chip. Select the Not on supplies setting to suppress the information from being stored on the memory chip.
	Supply Protection				Off* Protect Supplies	Select to permanently protect cartridges so that they can be used only in this product or fleet of products.
	Cartridge Policy				Off* Authorized HP	Set Authorized HP to allow only genuine HP cartridges to be used in this product.

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
	Reset Supplies				Document Feeder Kit	After replacing a supply kit, select it from the list and touch "Reset."
Manage Stapler/Stacker	Job Offset				On Off	
Developer Options						Use this menu to configure developer settings for the product.
Networking	Ethernet	INFORMATION	PRINT SECURITY REPORT		YES NO*	Yes: Prints a page that contains the current security settings on the HP Jetdirect print server. No: A security settings page is not printed.
		TCP/IP	HOST NAME		Use the arrow buttons to edit the host name. NPXXXXXX*	An alphanumeric string, up to 32 characters, used to identify the printer. This name is listed on the HP Jetdirect configuration page. The default host name is NPxxxxxx, where xxxxxx is the last six digits of the LAN hardware (MAC) address.

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
			IPV4 SETTINGS	CONFIG METHOD	BOOTP DHCP* AUTO IP MANUAL	<p>Specifies the method that TCP/IPv4 parameters will be configured on the HP Jetdirect print server.</p> <p>Bootp (Bootstrap Protocol): Use for automatic configuration from a BootP server.</p> <p>DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol): Use for automatic configuration from a DHCPv4 server. If selected and a DHCP lease exists, the DHCP Release menu and the DHCP Renew menu are available to set DHCP lease options.</p> <p>Auto IP: Use for automatic link-local IPv4 addressing. An address in the form 169.254.x.x is assigned automatically.</p> <p>If you set this option to the Manual setting, use the Manual Settings menu to configure TCP/IPv4 parameters.</p>
				DHCP RELEASE	YES NO*	
				DHCP RENEW	YES NO*	
				PRIMARY DNS	RANGE: 0-255 DEFAULT = xxx.xxx.xxx	Specify the IP address (n.n.n.n) of a Primary Domain Name System (DNS) Server.
				S DNS	Range: 0-255 Default = 0.0.0.0	Specify the IP address (n.n.n.n) of a Secondary DNS Server.

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
			IPV6 SETTINGS	ENABLE	OFF ON*	Use this item to enable or disable IPv6 operation on the print server. Off: IPv6 is disabled. On: IPv6 is enabled.
				ADDRESS	MANUAL SETTINGS ENABLE ADDRESS	Use this item to enable and manually configure a TCP/IPv6 address.
				DHCPV6 POLICY	ROUTER SPECIFIED ROUTER UNAVAILABLE* ALWAYS	Router Specified: The stateful auto-configuration method to be used by the print server is determined by a router. The router specifies whether the print server obtains its address, its configuration information, or both from a DHCPv6 server. Router Unavailable: If a router is not available, the print server should attempt to obtain its stateful configuration from a DHCPv6 server. Always: Whether a router is available, the print server always attempts to obtain its stateful configuration from a DHCPv6 server.
				PRIMARY DNS	RANGE: 0-255 DEFAULT = xxx.xxx.xx.xx	Specify the IP address (n.n.n.n) of a Primary Domain Name System (DNS) Server.
				SECONDARY DNS	RANGE: 0-255 DEFAULT = 0.0.0.0	Specify the IP address (n.n.n.n) of a Secondary DNS Server.

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
			PROXY SERVER			<p>Specifies the proxy server to be used by embedded applications in the printer. A proxy server is typically used by network clients for Internet access. It caches Web pages, and provides a degree of Internet security for those clients.</p> <p>To specify a proxy server, enter its IPv4 address or fully-qualified domain name. The name can be up to 255 octets.</p> <p>For some networks, you might need to contact your Internet Service Provider (ISP) for the proxy server address.</p>
			PROXY PORT		DEFAULT = 00080	<p>Enter the port number used by the proxy server for client support. The port number identifies the port reserved for proxy activity on your network, and can be a value from 0 to 65535.</p>
			IDLE TIMEOUT		DEFAULT = 0270	<p>The time period, in seconds, after which an idle TCP print data connection is closed (default is 270 seconds, 0 disables the timeout).</p>
		SECURITY	SECURE WEB		HTTPS REQUIRED* HTTPS OPTIONAL	
			IPSEC		KEEP DISABLE*	
			FIREWALL		KEEP DISABLE*	

Table 5-10 Settings menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	Values	Description
			802.1X		RESET KEEP*	
			ANNOUNCE MENT AGENT		ENABLE* DISABLE	
			RESET SECURITY		YES NO*	
			FIPS		KEEP RESET & REBOOT DEVICE	
		LINK SPEED			AUTO* 10T HALF 10T FULL 10T AUTO 100TX HALF 100TX FULL 100TX AUTO 1000T FULL	
	I/O Timeout				15 seconds* Range: 5 to 300	

Copy menu

To display: At the printer control panel, select the [Copy](#) menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 5-11 Copy menu

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description	
Sides	Original Sides		1-sided* 2-sided	Use to indicate whether the original document is printed on one or both sides.	
	Output Sides		1-sided 2-sided	Use to indicate whether the copies should be printed on one or both sides.	
Quick Sets and Defaults			Load Save		

Table 5-11 Copy menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description	
Options	Sides	Original Sides	1-sided 2-sided		
		Output Sides	1-sided 2-sided		
	Watermark		None* Text Secure	Use this feature to add a watermark to the document <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Text: Text is placed at the center of the page. • Secure: Background text and pattern that is barely visible on the first copy of a document. 	
	Stamps		Top Left Top Center Top Right Bottom Left Bottom Center Bottom Right	Select up to six preset positions for a stamp and configure the content that will be printed there. Some positions might require selecting the stamp from a list of predefined options.	

Table 5-11 Copy menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description	
	Image Overlay		Add New Image None*	<p>Use this feature to add an image to each page of a copy job.</p> <p>After scanning and saving the desired image from the control panel, this image will be placed behind the content on each page of the copy job.</p> <p>NOTE: To use this feature, the images must be scanned from the scanner glass.</p> <p>Follow these steps to copy using an overlay image.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Touch Image Overlay, touch Add New Image, and then follow the on-screen instructions to scan the desired image from the scanner glass. 2. Select the saved image that you want to add to each page of the copy job. 3. Start the copy job, or select the Preview option to preview the output. <p>TIP: For best results, use the same paper size and the same orientation for the saved image and the copy job.</p>	

Table 5-11 Copy menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description	
	Staple		None* Top left angled Two left Two to Top right angled Two right Top left or right	Sets the position of the staple on the page.	
	Hole Punch		None* Three left Two left Three top Two top Three right Two right Two bottom Four left Four right Four left or top		
		C-fold	Max sheets folded together Inward fold; opens left or up Inward fold; opens right or down Outward fold; opens left or up Outward fold; opens right or down	Controls the C-fold action of the booklet maker.	
	Scan mode		Standard Document Book Mode 2-sided ID	Book Mode allows the user to scan pages from a book. 2-sided ID allows the user to scan both sides of an identification card onto one sheet.	

Table 5-11 Copy menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
	Reduce/Enlarge		<p>Automatic*</p> <p>Manual</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 25% • 50% • 63% (Letter to Statement) • 64% (11x17 to Letter) • 77% (11x17 to Legal) • 78% (Legal to Letter) • 85% (Letter to Exec) • 100% (Letter to Legal) • 105% (Exec to Letter) • 122% (Legal to 11x17) • 131% (Letter to 11x17) • 131% (Statement to Letter) • 150% • 200% • 400% • Custom1 • Custom2 	<p>Use to scale the size of the document up or down. Select one of the predefined percentages, or select the Scaling field and type a percentage between 25 and 400. The Auto option automatically scales the image to fit the paper size in the tray.</p> <p>NOTE: To reduce the image, select a scaling percentage that is less than 100. To enlarge the image, select a scaling percentage that is greater than 100.</p>
	Image Shift		<p>Off*</p> <p>Automatically center</p> <p>Manual</p>	<p>Use this feature to shift the content of the page. This is useful for moving the image away from punched holes, staples, folds, or binding edges.</p>
	Original Size		<p>Select from a list of sizes that the printer supports.</p>	<p>Describes the page size of the original document.</p>

Table 5-11 Copy menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description	
	Paper Selection		Paper Size Paper Type Paper Tray	For the best color and image quality, select the appropriate paper type from the control panel menu or from the print driver.	
	Booklet	Booklet Format	(Checkbox)	Use to copy two or more pages onto one sheet of paper so you can fold the sheets in the center to form a booklet. The printer arranges the pages in the correct order. For example, if the original document has eight pages, the printer prints pages 1 and 8 on the same sheet.	
	Content Orientation		Portrait* Landscape	For some features to work correctly, you must specify the way the content of the original document is placed on the page. Portrait orientation means the short edge of the page is along the top. Landscape orientation means the long edge of the page is along the top. In the Orientation area, select whether the original document has a portrait or landscape orientation.	
	Pages per Sheet		One (1) Two (2) Four (4)	Copies multiple pages onto one sheet of paper. NOTE: Before using this screen, use the Content Orientation screen to describe the original document orientation.	

Table 5-11 Copy menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description	
	Image Adjustment	Sharpness		Adjust the Sharpness setting to clarify or soften the image. For example, increasing the sharpness could make text appear crisper, but decreasing it could make photographs appear smoother.	
		Darkness		Use to improve the overall quality of the copy. Adjust the Darkness setting to increase or decrease the amount of white and black in the colors.	
		Contrast		Adjust the Contrast setting to increase or decrease the difference between the lightest and darkest color on the page.	
		Background Cleanup		Adjust the Background Cleanup setting if you are having trouble copying a faint image.	
		Automatic Tone			
		Auto Paper Color Removal			

Table 5-11 Copy menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description	
	Optimize Text/ Picture		Text Mixed* Printed picture Photograph	<p>Use this setting to optimize the output for a particular type of content.</p> <p>Use Text for documents that contain mostly text. This option is also best suited for scanning documents with highlighter marks.</p> <p>Use Mixed for documents that contain a mix of text and graphics.</p> <p>Use Printed picture for line drawings and preprinted images, such as magazine clippings or pages from books. If you see bands of irregular intensity on copies, try selecting Printed picture to improve the quality.</p> <p>Use Photograph for photographic prints.</p>	
	Erase Edges			<p>Front Side</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Top Edge • Bottom Edge • Left Edge • Right Edge <p>Back Side</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Top Edge • Bottom Edge • Left Edge • Right Edge 	Use this feature to remove blemishes, such as dark borders or staple marks, by cleaning the specified edges of the scanned image. In each of the text boxes enter the measurements, in millimeters or inches, for how much of the top edge, bottom edge, left edge, and right edge to clean.

Table 5-11 Copy menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
	Collate		<p>Collate on (Sets in page order)*</p> <p>Collate off (Pages grouped)</p>	<p>If you are making more than one copy, select the Collate on (Sets in page order) option to assemble the pages in the correct order in each set of copies.</p> <p>Select the Collate off (Pages grouped) option to group the same pages together. For example, if you are making five copies of an original document that has two pages, all five first pages would be grouped together and all five second pages would be grouped together.</p>
	Blank Page Suppression		<p>Off*</p> <p>Suppress Blank Pages</p>	<p>When enabled, blank pages found in the original document are not included in the output document.</p>
	Automatically Straighten		<p>Off*</p> <p>Automatically Straighten on</p>	<p>Enable this feature prior to scanning to automatically straighten the scanned image when pages are skewed during scanning.</p>
	Output Bin		<p>Automatically select</p> <p>Output bin 1</p> <p>Output bin 2</p> <p>Alternate bin</p> <p>Lower booklet bin</p> <p>Standard bin</p> <p>Upper bin</p> <p>Middle bin</p>	

Scan menu

To display: At the printer control panel, select the [Scan](#) menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 5-12 Scan menu

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Scan to Email	File Type and Resolution			<p>File Type</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PDF* • PDF/A • JPEG • TIFF • MTIFF • XPS <p>Resolution</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 600 dpi • 400 dpi • 200 dpi* • 150 dpi • 75 dpi <p>Quality and File Size</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Very Low (smaller file) • Low • Medium* • High • Very High (larger file) 	<p>Touch Options, and then touch File Type and Resolution to select the file format for the scanned image. Each file type has subsettings, some of which affect resolution and file size.</p> <p>NOTE: If restricted by your administrator, some file types will be unavailable.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PDF (Portable Document Format) provides good image and text quality, and is a good choice for most documents. • JPEG is a good choice for most graphics. Most computers have a browser that can view JPEG files. This file type produces one file per page. • TIFF/MTIFF TIFF (Tagged Image File Format) is a standard file format that many graphics programs support. This file type produces one file per page. MTIFF (Multi-page TIFF) saves multiple scanned pages in a single file. • XPS (XML Paper Specification) is a good choice for most types of printing. Viewing XPS documents requires a software program that is included with some operating systems.

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
	Original Sides			Auto (keep sides with content) 1-sided* 2-sided Pages Flip Up	Use this feature to describe the layout for each side of the original document Use 1-sided for originals that are printed on one side of the page. Use 2-sided for originals that are printed on both sides of the page. Select Pages Flip Up for originals that flip on the top/ bottom edge of the page, such as calendars.
	Color/Black			Automatically detect color or black* Automatically detect color or gray Color Black/Gray Black	Use this feature to enable or disable color scanning. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select Automatically detect color or black when trying to create smaller file sizes. When pages without color are detected, the product creates an image of the page in 1-bit black if other settings allow. If the other settings don't allow (File Type, for example), the image is in gray. • Select Automatically detect color or gray for the best image quality for non-color pages. • Select Color to scan all documents in color. • Select Black/Gray to scan documents in grayscale. • Select Black to scan documents in black and white with a compressed file size.
	Watermark			None* Text	Use this feature to add a watermark to the document Text: Text is placed at the center of the page.

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
	Stamps			Top Left Top Center Top Right Bottom Left Bottom Center Bottom Right	<p>Select up to six preset positions for a stamp and configure the content that will be printed there. Some positions might require selecting the stamp from a list of predefined options.</p>
	Scan Mode			Standard Document Book 2-sided ID Prompt for Additional Pages	<p>Use this feature to provide information about the type of document to be scanned and to change the format of the output.</p> <p>Use Standard Document to scan regular documents using default scan settings.</p> <p>Use Prompt for Additional Pages to create a single job from multiple scans without having to do a preview.</p> <p>Use Book to scan the pages of an open book and to print the pages on separate sheets of paper.</p> <p>Use 2-sided ID to scan both sides of an ID and print them on one side of a sheet of paper.</p>
	Original Size			Select from a list of sizes that the printer supports.	Describes the page size of the original document.
	Content Orientation			Automatically detect Portrait* Landscape	<p>For some features to work correctly, you must specify the way the content of the original document is placed on the page. Portrait orientation means the short edge of the page is along the top. Landscape orientation means the long edge of the page is along the top.</p> <p>Use Automatically detect when the format of the original document is known to specifically work with the Automatically detect setting. Using Automatically detect is not recommended in other circumstances.</p>

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
	Image Adjustment			Sharpness Darkness Contrast Background Cleanup	<p>Use this feature to improve the overall quality of the scanned image.</p> <p>Adjust the Darkness setting to increase or decrease the amount of white and black in the colors.</p> <p>Adjust the Contrast setting to increase or decrease the difference between the lightest and darkest color on the page.</p> <p>Adjust the Background Cleanup setting if you are having trouble copying a faint image.</p> <p>Adjust the Sharpness setting to clarify or soften the image. For example, increasing the sharpness could make text appear crisper, but decreasing it could make photographs appear smoother.</p>
	Optimize Text/Picture			Text Mixed* Printed Picture Photograph	<p>Use this setting to optimize the output for a particular type of content.</p> <p>Use Text for documents that contain mostly text. This option is also best suited for scanning documents with a highlighter.</p> <p>Use Mixed for documents that contain a mix of text and graphics.</p> <p>Use Printed Picture for line drawings and preprinted images, such as magazine clippings or pages from books. If you see bands of irregular intensity on copies, try selecting Printed Picture to improve the quality.</p> <p>Use Photograph for photographic prints.</p>

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
	Erase Edges			Front Side <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Top Edge • Bottom Edge • Left Edge • Right Edge Back Side <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Top Edge • Bottom Edge • Left Edge • Right Edge 	Use this feature to remove blemishes, such as dark borders or staple marks, by cleaning the specified edges of the scanned image. In each of the text boxes enter the measurements, in millimeters or inches, for how much of the top edge, bottom edge, left edge, and right edge to clean.
	Cropping Options			Do not crop* Crop to Paper Crop to Content	Use this menu item to specify a method to automatically crop the scan for digital sending. Use the Crop to Paper option to crop the scan to the edge of the document being scanned. Use the Crop to Content option to scan the smallest possible area that has detectable content. NOTE: The Crop to Paper option is effective only when you scan pages by using the document feeder. It has an unpredictable effect for pages that you scan from the glass.
	Automatically Straighten			Off* Automatically Straighten*	Enable this feature prior to scanning to automatically straighten the scanned image when pages are skewed during scanning.
	Blank Page Suppression			Off* Suppress Blank Pages	Use this feature to prevent blank pages in the original document from being included in the output document.

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
	Create Multiple Files			Off* Maximum Pages Per File	<p>Use this item to enable the product to separate scanned output into multiple files.</p> <p>Touch the Create Multiple Files checkbox. Enter the maximum number of pages for each output file in the Maximum Pages Per File field.</p> <p>When a file type that does not support multiple pages is selected, such as JPEG or TIFF, this feature is ignored. When scanning front and back sides, two pages are generated per original document.</p> <p>When scanning to email, the configuration option that specifies the maximum size of the email also interacts with this feature. In this case, the more restrictive of the two settings will take effect.</p>
	Notification			Do Not Notify* Notify When Job Completes Notify Only If Job Fails	<p>Use this feature to receive notification about the status of the sent document.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select Do Not Notify to turn off this feature • Select Notify When Job Completes to receive notification for this job only. • Select Notify Only If Job Fails to receive notification only if the job is not sent successfully
	Signing and Encryption			Signing Encrypt	<p>A digitally signed email ensures the recipient that you sent this email. An encrypted message can be opened only by the recipient.</p>
Scan to Network Folder	File Name				
	Folder Paths				
	Quick Sets and Defaults				

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
	Options	File Type and Resolution		File Type Resolution Quality and File Size High Compression (smaller file) PDF Encryption	
		Original Sides		1-sided* 2-sided Pages Flip Up	Use this feature to describe the layout for each side of the original document Use 1-sided for originals that are printed on one side of the page. Use 2-sided for originals that are printed on both sides of the page. Select Pages Flip Up for originals that flip on the top/bottom edge of the page, such as calendars.
		Stamps		Top Left Top Center Top Right Bottom Left Bottom Center Bottom Right	Select up to six preset positions for a stamp and configure the content that will be printed there. Some positions might require selecting the stamp from a list of predefined options.
		Scan Mode		Standard document* Book 2-sided ID <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Prompt for additional pages 	Use this feature to provide information about the type of document to be scanned and to change the format of the output Use Standard document to scan regular documents using the default scan settings. Use Prompt for additional pages to create a single job from multiple scans without having to do a preview. Use Book to scan the pages of an open book and to print the pages on separate sheets of paper. Use 2-sided ID to scan both sides of an ID and print them on one side of a sheet of paper.

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Original Size		Select from a list of supported sizes.	Use to describe the page size of the original document.
		Content Orientation	Orientation	Automatically Detect Portrait* Landscape	<p>For some features to work correctly, you must specify the way the content of the original document is placed on the page. Portrait orientation means the short edge of the page is along the top. Landscape orientation means the long edge of the page is along the top. In the Orientation area, select whether the original document has a portrait or landscape orientation.</p> <p>Use Automatically Detect when the format of the original document is known to specifically work with the Automatically Detect setting. Using Automatically Detect is not recommended in other circumstances.</p>
		Image Adjustment		Sharpness Darkness Contrast Background Cleanup Automatic Tone Auto Paper Color Removal	<p>Use to improve the overall quality of the copy. Adjust the darkness and sharpness, and you can use the Background Cleanup setting to remove faint images from the background or to remove a light background color.</p> <p>Adjust the Darkness setting to increase or decrease the amount of white and black in the colors.</p> <p>Adjust the Contrast setting to increase or decrease the difference between the lightest and darkest color on the page.</p> <p>Adjust the Background Cleanup setting if you are having trouble copying a faint image.</p> <p>Adjust the Sharpness setting to clarify or soften the image. For example, increasing the sharpness could make text appear crisper, but decreasing it could make photographs appear smoother.</p>

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
			Contrast		Adjust the Contrast setting to increase or decrease the difference between the lightest and darkest color on the page.
			Background Cleanup		Adjust the Background Cleanup setting if you are having trouble copying a faint image.
			Sharpness		Adjust the Sharpness setting to clarify or soften the image. For example, increasing the sharpness could make text appear crisper, but decreasing it could make photographs appear smoother.
			Automatic Tone		The printer automatically adjusts the Darkness , Contrast , and Background Cleanup settings to the most appropriate for the scanned document.
			Auto Paper Color Removal (Flow models only)		
			Default		Select this to make the selected Image Adjustment setting the default value.
		Optimize Text/Picture	Automatically detect (Flow models only) Text Mixed* Printed picture Photograph		Use this setting to optimize the output for a particular type of content. Use Text for documents that contain mostly text. This option is also best suited for scanning documents with highlighter marks. Use Mixed for documents that contain a mix of text and graphics. Use Printed picture for line drawings and preprinted images, such as magazine clippings or pages from books. If you see bands of irregular intensity on copies, try selecting Printed picture to improve the quality. Use Photograph for photographic prints.

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Erase Edges		Use inches Back side erase Front side erase	Use this menu item to remove blemishes, such as dark borders or staple marks, by cleaning the specified edges of the scanned image. In each of the text boxes enter the measurements, in millimeters or inches, for how much of the top edge, bottom edge, left edge, and right edge to clean.
		Cropping Options		Do not crop Crop to content Crop to paper	Use this menu item to automatically crop the scan for digital sending. Use the Crop to content option to scan the smallest possible area that has detectable content.
		Blank Page Suppression		Off* Suppress Blank	Use to prevent blank pages in the original document from being included in the output document.
		Automatically Straighten		Off* Automatically Straighten*	Enable this feature prior to scanning to automatically straighten the scanned image when pages are skewed during scanning.
		Multi-feed Detection		Off On* <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Automatically Retry (E877. E826 z bundles only) 	Use this feature to prevent multiple pages being fed through the document feeder during document scans.
		Create Multiple Files		Off* Maximum pages per file Blank page separator (E877. E826, E786, E731 z bundles only) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> White page Red/pink page Green page Yellow page Any color page Barcode page separator (E877. E826, E786, E731 z bundles only)	Use this item to enable the product to separate scanned output into multiple files. Touch the Create Multiple Files checkbox. Enter the maximum number of pages for each output file in the Maximum pages per file field. When a file type that does not support multiple pages is selected, such as JPEG or TIFF, this feature is ignored. When scanning front and back sides, two pages are generated per original document. When scanning to email, the configuration option that specifies the maximum size of the email also interacts with this feature. In this case, the more restrictive of the two settings will take effect.

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Notification		<p>Do not notify</p> <p>Notify When Job Completes</p> <p>Notify Only If Job Fails</p>	<p>Configure to receive notification about the status of a sent document.</p> <p>Do not notify: Turns off this feature.</p> <p>Notify When Job Completes: Select to receive notification for this job only.</p> <p>Notify Only If Job Fails: Select to receive notification only if the job is not sent successfully.</p>
Scan to USB Drive	Destination				
	File Name				
	Quick Set Defaults				
	Options	File Type and Resolution		<p>File Type</p> <p>Resolution</p> <p>Quality and File Size</p> <p>High Compression (smaller file)</p> <p>PDF Encryption</p>	
		Original sides		<p>1-sided</p> <p>2-sided</p>	<p>Use to describe the layout for each side of the original document. First select whether the original document is printed on one side or both sides. Then touch the Orientation setting to indicate whether the original has portrait or landscape orientation. If it is printed on both sides, also select the 2-sided format that matches the original document.</p>

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Color/Black		<p>Automatically detect color or black*</p> <p>Automatically detect color or gray</p> <p>Color</p> <p>Black/Gray</p> <p>Black</p>	<p>Use this feature to enable or disable color scanning.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select Automatically detect color or black when trying to create smaller file sizes. When pages without color are detected, the product creates an image of the page in 1-bit black if other settings allow. If the other settings don't allow (File Type, for example), the image is in gray. • Select Automatically detect color or gray for the best image quality for non-color pages. • Select Color to scan all documents in color. • Select Black/Gray to scan documents in grayscale. • Select Black to scan documents in black and white with a compressed file size.
		Original Size		Select from a list of supported sizes.	Use to describe the page size of the original document.
		Content Orientation		<p>Automatically detect</p> <p>Portrait*</p> <p>Landscape</p>	<p>For some features to work correctly, you must specify the way the content of the original document is placed on the page. Portrait orientation means the short edge of the page is along the top. Landscape orientation means the long edge of the page is along the top. In the Orientation area, select whether the original document has a portrait or landscape orientation.</p> <p>Use Automatically Detect when the format of the original document is known to specifically work with the Automatically Detect setting. Using Automatically Detect is not recommended in other circumstances.</p>

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Image Adjustment	Darkness	Sharpness Darkness Contrast Background Cleanup Automatic tone Auto Paper Color Removal	<p>Use to improve the overall quality of the copy. Adjust the darkness and sharpness, and you can use the Background Cleanup setting to remove faint images from the background or to remove a light background color.</p> <p>Adjust the Darkness setting to increase or decrease the amount of white and black in the colors.</p> <p>Adjust the Contrast setting to increase or decrease the difference between the lightest and darkest color on the page.</p> <p>Adjust the Background Cleanup setting if you are having trouble copying a faint image.</p> <p>Adjust the Sharpness setting to clarify or soften the image. For example, increasing the sharpness could make text appear crisper, but decreasing it could make photographs appear smoother.</p>
			Contrast		Adjust the Contrast setting to increase or decrease the difference between the lightest and darkest color on the page.
			Background Cleanup		Adjust the Background Cleanup setting if you are having trouble copying a faint image.
			Sharpness		Adjust the Sharpness setting to clarify or soften the image. For example, increasing the sharpness could make text appear crisper, but decreasing it could make photographs appear smoother.
			Automatic Tone		The printer automatically adjusts the Darkness , Contrast , and Background Cleanup settings to the most appropriate for the scanned document.

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
			Auto Paper Color Removal (Flow models only)		
			Default		Select this to make the selected Image Adjustment setting the default value.
		Optimize Text/Picture		Manually Adjust* Text Printed picture Photograph	Use to optimize the output for a particular type of content. You can optimize the output for text, printed pictures, or a mixture. Manually Adjust : Use to manually optimize the setting for text or for pictures. Text : Use to optimize the text portion of the copy when text and/or pictures are on the original. Printed picture : Use for line drawings and preprinted images, such as magazine clippings or pages from books. Photograph : Best suited for making copies of printed pictures.
		Erase Edges		Use inches Back side erase Front side erase	Use this menu item to remove blemishes, such as dark borders or staple marks, by cleaning the specified edges of the scanned image. In each of the text boxes enter the measurements, in millimeters or inches, for how much of the top edge, bottom edge, left edge, and right edge to clean.
		Cropping Options		Do not crop Crop to content Crop to paper	Use this menu item to automatically crop the scan for digital sending. Use the Crop to content option to scan the smallest possible area that has detectable content.
		Automatically Straighten		Off* Automatically Straighten*	Enable this feature prior to scanning to automatically straighten the scanned image when pages are skewed during scanning.
		Blank Page Suppression		Off* Suppress Blank Pages	Use to prevent blank pages in the original document from being included in the output document.

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Multi-feed Detection		Off On* <ul style="list-style-type: none">Automatically retry (E877, E826 z bundles only)	Use this feature to prevent multiple pages being fed through the document feeder during document scans.
		Create Multiple Files		Off* Maximum pages per file Blank page separator (E877, E826, E785, E731 z bundles only) <ul style="list-style-type: none">White pageRed/pink pageGreen pageYellow pageAny color page Barcode page separator (E877, E826, E785, E731 z bundles only)	Use this item to enable the product to separate scanned output into multiple files. Touch the Create Multiple Files checkbox. Enter the maximum number of pages for each output file in the Maximum pages per file field. When a file type that does not support multiple pages is selected, such as JPEG or TIFF, this feature is ignored. When scanning front and back sides, two pages are generated per original document. When scanning to email, the configuration option that specifies the maximum size of the email also interacts with this feature. In this case, the more restrictive of the two settings will take effect.
		Notification		Do not notify Notify When Job Completes Notify Only If Job Fails	Configure to receive notification about the status of a sent document. Do not notify : Turns off this feature. Notify When Job Completes : Select to receive notification for this job only. Notify Only If Job Fails : Select to receive notification only if the job is not sent successfully.
			Include Thumbnail		Select Include Thumbnail to receive a thumbnail image of the first page of the job in your notification.

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Scan to Job Storage	Sides			Original Sides <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1-sided • 2-sided Output Sides <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1-sided • 2-sided 	
	Scan Mode			Standard document* Book 2-sided ID	
	Reduce/Enlarge			Automatic* Manual	
	Image Shift			Off* Automatically center Manual	
	Original Size			Select from a list of supported sizes.	Use to describe the page size of the original document.
	Paper Selection			Paper Size Paper Type Paper Tray	
	Booklet			Booklet Format	
	Content Orientation			Automatically detect Portrait* Landscape	For some features to work correctly, you must specify the way the content of the original document is placed on the page. Portrait orientation means the short edge of the page is along the top. Landscape orientation means the long edge of the page is along the top. Use Automatically detect when the format of the original document is known to specifically work with the Automatically detect setting. Using Automatically detect is not recommended in other circumstances.
	Pages per Sheet			One Two Four (right, then down) Four (down, then right)	

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
	Image Adjustment			Sharpness Darkness Contrast Background Cleanup	
	Optimize Text/Picture			Automatically detect Text Mixed* Printed picture Photograph	
	Erase Edges			Front Side <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Top Edge • Bottom Edge • Left Edge • Right Edge Back Side <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Top Edge • Bottom Edge • Left Edge • Right Edge 	
	Collate			Collate* Collate off	
	Blank Page Suppression			Off* Suppress Blank Pages	
	Automatically Straighten			Off* Automatically Straighten on	
	Multi-feed Detection			Off On* <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Automatically Retry (E877, E826 z bundles only) 	Use this feature to prevent multiple pages being fed through the document feeder during document scans.

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Scan to Sharepoint	Save Settings				Use this feature to save the current settings as the default settings for an app or to create a new Quick Set. First configure the desired options. Then touch Save and choose to either save the current settings as the default settings for the app or as a new Quick Set.
	File Type and Resolution			File Type Resolution Quality and File Size High Compression (smaller file) PDF Encryption	
	Original Sides			1-sided* 2-sided Pages Flip Up	Use this feature to describe the layout for each side of the original document Use 1-sided for originals that are printed on one side of the page. Use 2-sided for originals that are printed on both sides of the page. Select Pages Flip Up for originals that flip on the top/bottom edge of the page, such as calendars.

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
	Color/Black			<p>Automatically detect color or balck*</p> <p>Automatically detect color or gray</p> <p>Color</p> <p>Black/Gray</p> <p>Black</p>	<p>Use this feature to enable or disable color scanning.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select Automatically detect color or black when trying to create smaller file sizes. When pages without color are detected, the product creates an image of the page in 1-bit black if other settings allow. If the other settings don't allow (File Type, for example), the image is in gray. Select Automatically detect color or gray for the best image quality for non-color pages. Select Color to scan all documents in color. Select Black/Gray to scan documents in grayscale. Select Black to scan documents in black and white with a compressed file size.
	Scan Mode			<p>Standard Document</p> <p>Book</p> <p>2-sided ID</p> <p>Prompt for Additional Pages</p>	<p>Use this feature to provide information about the type of document to be scanned and to change the format of the output.</p> <p>Use Standard Document to scan regular documents using default scan settings.</p> <p>Use Prompt for Additional Pages to create a single job from multiple scans without having to do a preview.</p> <p>Use Book to scan the pages of an open book and to print the pages on separate sheets of paper.</p> <p>Use 2-sided ID to scan both sides of an ID and print them on one side of a sheet of paper.</p>

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
	Content Orientation			Automatically detect Portrait* Landscape	<p>For some features to work correctly, you must specify the way the content of the original document is placed on the page. Portrait orientation means the short edge of the page is along the top. Landscape orientation means the long edge of the page is along the top.</p> <p>Use Automatically detect when the format of the original document is known to specifically work with the Automatically detect setting. Using Automatically detect is not recommended in other circumstances.</p>
	Image Adjustment			Sharpness Darkness Contrast Background Cleanup Automatic tone Auto Paper Color Removal	<p>Use this feature to improve the overall quality of the scanned image.</p> <p>Adjust the Darkness setting to increase or decrease the amount of white and black in the colors.</p> <p>Adjust the Contrast setting to increase or decrease the difference between the lightest and darkest color on the page.</p> <p>Adjust the Background Cleanup setting if you are having trouble copying a faint image.</p> <p>Adjust the Sharpness setting to clarify or soften the image. For example, increasing the sharpness could make text appear crisper, but decreasing it could make photographs appear smoother.</p> <p>If you select the Automatic Tone options, the product automatically adjusts the Darkness, Contrast, and Background Cleanup settings to the most appropriate for the scanned document.</p>

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
	Optimize Text/Picture			<p>Automatically detect</p> <p>Text</p> <p>Mixed*</p> <p>Printed picture</p> <p>Photograph</p>	<p>Use this setting to optimize the output for a particular type of content.</p> <p>Use Text for documents that contain mostly text. This option is also best suited for scanning documents with a highlighter.</p> <p>Use Mixed for documents that contain a mix of text and graphics.</p> <p>Use Printed picture for line drawings and preprinted images, such as magazine clippings or pages from books. If you see bands of irregular intensity on copies, try selecting Printed Picture to improve the quality.</p> <p>Use Photograph for photographic prints.</p>
	Erase Edges			<p>Front Side</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Top Edge • Bottom Edge • Left Edge • Right Edge <p>Back Side</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Top Edge • Bottom Edge • Left Edge • Right Edge 	<p>Use this feature to remove blemishes, such as dark borders or staple marks, by cleaning the specified edges of the scanned image. In each of the text boxes enter the measurements, in millimeters or inches, for how much of the top edge, bottom edge, left edge, and right edge to clean.</p>
	Cropping Options			<p>Do not crop*</p> <p>Crop to Paper</p> <p>Crop to Content</p>	<p>Use this menu item to specify a method to automatically crop the scan for digital sending. Use the Crop to Paper option to crop the scan to the edge of the document being scanned. Use the Crop to Content option to scan the smallest possible area that has detectable content.</p> <p>NOTE: The Crop to Paper option is effective only when you scan pages by using the document feeder. It has an unpredictable effect for pages that you scan from the glass.</p>

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
	Blank Page Suppression			Off* Suppress Blank Pages	Use this feature to prevent blank pages in the original document from being included in the output document.
	Create Multiple Files			Off* Maximum pages per file Blank page separator (E877, E826, E785, E731 z bundles only) Barcode page separator (E877, E826, E785, E731 z bundles only)	Use this item to enable the product to separate scanned output into multiple files. Touch the Create Multiple Files checkbox. Enter the maximum number of pages for each output file in the Maximum Pages Per File field. When a file type that does not support multiple pages is selected, such as JPEG or TIFF, this feature is ignored. When scanning front and back sides, two pages are generated per original document. When scanning to email, the configuration option that specifies the maximum size of the email also interacts with this feature. In this case, the more restrictive of the two settings will take effect.
	Notification			Do not notify* Notify When Job Completes Notify Only If Job Fails	Use this feature to receive notification about the status of the sent document. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select Do not notify to turn off this feature • Select Notify When Job Completes to receive notification for this job only. • Select Notify Only If Job Fails to receive notification only if the job is not sent successfully
Remote Scan Request					Use the Remote Scan Request app to scan and send documents requested by a remote computer. Remote scans are initiated on a computer with applications such as TWAIN Software or other AirPrint Compatible devices

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Scan+	Common	Scan Shortcuts		Redact and Sign OCR Document Separation Barcode Separation Sticky Notes and Envelopes 2-sided ID	<p>Scan Shortcuts can be used to quickly set up a job for specialty tasks.</p>
		Auto Sense Preset		Fastest Scan Speeds Best Productivity (Recommended)	<p>Auto Sense Presets make it easy to optimize a scan job for fastest scan speeds or best productivity.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fastest Scan Speeds disables some automatic features, which requires less image processing and allows scanning at the fastest speeds available. • Best Productivity enables several automatic features, including automatic sides, automatic content orientation, automatic image straightening, and automatic image optimization. <p>NOTE: Unlike Quick Sets, Auto Sense Preset presets do not affect destinations and recipients.</p>
		Watermark		None* Text	<p>Use this feature to add a watermark to the document</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Text: Text is placed at the center of the page.
		Stamps		Top Left Top Center Top Right Bottom Left Bottom Center Bottom Right	<p>Select up to six preset positions for a stamp and configure the content that will be printed there. Some positions might require selecting the stamp from a list of predefined options.</p>

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Notification		Do not notify* Notify When Job Completes Notify Only If Job Fails	Use this feature to receive notification about the status of the sent document. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select Do not notify to turn off this feature Select Notify When Job Completes to receive notification for this job only. Select Notify Only If Job Fails to receive notification only if the job is not sent successfully
	Scan	Color/Black		Automatically detect color or black Automatically detect color or gray Color Black/Gray Black	If Automatically detect color or black is selected and the current settings do not allow scanning in black, pages will be scanned in grayscale.
		Create Multiple Files		Off* Maximum pages per file Blank page separator Barcode page separator	Use this item to enable the product to separate scanned output into multiple files. Touch the Create Multiple Files check box. Enter the maximum number of pages for each output file in the Maximum Pages Per File field. When a file type that does not support multiple pages is selected, such as JPEG or TIFF, this feature is ignored. When scanning front and back sides, two pages are generated per original document. When scanning to email, the configuration option that specifies the maximum size of the email also interacts with this feature. In this case, the more restrictive of the two settings will take effect.
		Signing and Encryption		Signing Encrypt	A digitally signed email ensures the recipient that you sent this email. An encrypted message can be opened only by the recipient.

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Cropping Options		Do not crop* Crop to Paper Crop to Content	Use this menu item to specify a method to automatically crop the scan for digital sending. Use the Crop to Paper option to crop the scan to the edge of the document being scanned. Use the Crop to Content option to scan the smallest possible area that has detectable content. NOTE: The Crop to Paper option is effective only when you scan pages by using the document feeder. It has an unpredictable effect for pages that you scan from the glass.
	Copy	Number of Copies		Copies (1 to 9999)	Use this feature to set the number of printed copies.
		Output Sides		1-sided* 2-sided Pages flip-up	Use this feature to set the layout and format for the output. Select from the following options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use 1-sided for originals that are printed on one side of the page. • Use 2-sided for originals that are printed on both sides of the page. • Select Pages flip-up for originals that flip on the top/bottom edge of the page, such as calendars.
		Color/Black		Automatically detect* Color Black/Gray	Automatically detect : Prints color documents in color, and black and white documents in black and white. For mixed documents, the product will determine whether to print in color or black and white. Color : Prints documents in color. Black/Gray : Prints documents in grayscale.

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Paper Selection		Paper Size Paper Type Paper Tray	Use this feature to select the paper for the job. Use Paper Size or Paper Type to enable the printer to automatically find the selected paper size or type. Use Paper Tray to select a source tray. Depending on the administrator's setting, the product will either print from that tray first, or it will limit printing from that tray.
	Fax	Resolution		Standard (100 x 200dpi) Fine (200 x 200dpi) Superfine (300 x 300dpi)	Select the resolution for outgoing faxes. If you increase the resolution, faxes might be clearer but they could transmit more slowly.
	Auto Sense	Original Sides		Auto (keep sides with content) 1-sided* 2-sided Pages Flip Up	Use this feature to describe the layout for each side of the original document Use 1-sided for originals that are printed on one side of the page. Use 2-sided for originals that are printed on both sides of the page. Select Pages Flip Up for originals that flip on the top/bottom edge of the page, such as calendars.
		Original Size		Select from a list of supported sizes.	Use to describe the page size of the original document.
		Content Orientation		Portrait* Landscape	For some features to work correctly, you must specify the way the content of the original document is placed on the page. Portrait orientation means the short edge of the page is along the top. Landscape orientation means the long edge of the page is along the top.

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Image Adjustment		<p>Sharpness</p> <p>Darkness</p> <p>Contrast</p> <p>Background Cleanup</p> <p>Automatic Tone</p> <p>Auto Paper Color Removal</p>	<p>Use this feature to improve the quality of the scanned image.</p> <p>Adjusting Sharpness clarifies or softens the image. Increasing the sharpness could make text appear crisper, but decreasing it could make photographs appear smoother.</p> <p>Adjusting Darkness increases or decreases the amount of white and black in the colors.</p> <p>Adjusting Contrast increases or decreases the difference between the lightest and darkest color on the page.</p> <p>Adjust Background Cleanup to improve copying a faint image.</p> <p>Automatic Tone options automatically adjust the Darkness, Contrast, and Background Cleanup settings.</p> <p>The Auto Paper Color Removal option dynamically adjusts the color balance and lightness of the background. Slide left: Most white paper with normal brightness is output as white background in the scanned output. Slider right: Very colorful paper/background colors are converted to white in the scanned output.</p>

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Optimize Text/Picture		Automatically detect Text Mixed* Printed picture Photograph	Use this setting to optimize the output for a particular type of content. Use Text for documents that contain mostly text. This option is also best suited for scanning documents with a highlighter. Use Mixed for documents that contain a mix of text and graphics. Use Printed picture for line drawings and preprinted images, such as magazine clippings or pages from books. If you see bands of irregular intensity on copies, try selecting Printed Picture to improve the quality. Use Photograph for photographic prints.
		Automatically Straighten		Off* Automatically Straighten	Enable this feature prior to scanning to automatically straighten the scanned image when pages are skewed during scanning.
		Blank Page Suppression		Off* Suppress Blank Pages	Use this feature to prevent blank pages in the original document from being included in the output document.
	Advanced	File Type and Resolution		File Type Resolution Quality and File Size High Compression (smaller file) DF EncryptionP	Select File Type and Resolution to select the file format for the scanned image. Each file type has sub-settings, some of which affect resolution and file size.

Table 5-12 Scan menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Scan Mode		Standard Document Book 2-sided ID Prompt for Additional Pages	<p>Use this feature to provide information about the type of document to be scanned and to change the format of the output.</p> <p>Use Standard Document to scan regular documents using default scan settings.</p> <p>Use Prompt for Additional Pages to create a single job from multiple scans without having to do a preview.</p> <p>Use Book to scan the pages of an open book and to print the pages on separate sheets of paper.</p> <p>Use 2-sided ID to scan both sides of an ID and print them on one side of a sheet of paper.</p>
		Erase Edges		Front Side <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Top Edge • Bottom Edge • Left Edge • Right Edge Back Side <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Top Edge • Bottom Edge • Left Edge • Right Edge 	<p>Use this feature to remove blemishes, such as dark borders or staple marks, by cleaning the specified edges of the scanned image. In each of the text boxes enter the measurements, in millimeters or inches, for how much of the top edge, bottom edge, left edge, and right edge to clean.</p>

Fax menu (when a fax option is installed)

To display: At the printer control panel, select the [Fax](#) menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 5-13 Fax menu (fax models only)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
Dialing Prefix				
Fax Recipients				
Quick Sets and Defaults				

Table 5-13 Fax menu (fax models only) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
Options	Original Sides		1-sided* 2-sided	Use to describe the layout for each side of the original document. First select whether the original document is printed on one side or both sides. Then touch the Orientation setting to indicate whether the original has portrait or landscape orientation. If it is printed on both sides, also select the 2-sided format that matches the original document.
	Watermark		None* Text <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Watermark Text Text Font Text Size Text Color 	Use this feature to add a watermark to the document. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Text: Text is placed at the center of the page. NOTE: Flow models only.
	Stamps		None* Top Left Top Center Top Right Bottom Left Bottom Center Bottom Right	Select up to six preset positions for a stamp and configure the content that will be printed there. Some positions might require selecting the stamp from a list of predefined options. NOTE: Flow models only.
	Resolution		Standard (100 x 200dpi)* Fine (200 x 200dpi) Superfine (300 x 300dpi)	Select the resolution for outgoing faxes. If you increase the resolution, faxes might be clearer but they could transmit more slowly. Some file types, for example a file that will be processed with OCR, require a specific resolution. When these file types are selected, the Resolution setting might be automatically changed to a valid value.
	Original Size		Select from a list of sizes that the printer supports.	Use to describe the page size of the original document.

Table 5-13 Fax menu (fax models only) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
	Content Orientation	Orientation	Portrait* Landscape	<p>For some features to work correctly, you must specify the way the content of the original document is placed on the page.</p> <p>Portrait: This setting means the short edge of the page is along the top.</p> <p>Landscape: This setting means the long edge of the page is along the top.</p>
	Image Adjustment		Sharpness Darkness Contrast Background Cleanup Automatic tone Auto Paper Color Removal	<p>Use to improve the overall quality of the copy. Adjust the darkness and sharpness, and you can use the Background Cleanup setting to remove faint images from the background or to remove a light background color.</p> <p>Adjust the Darkness setting to increase or decrease the amount of white and black in the colors.</p> <p>Adjust the Contrast setting to increase or decrease the difference between the lightest and darkest color on the page.</p> <p>Adjust the Background Cleanup setting if you are having trouble copying a faint image.</p> <p>Adjust the Sharpness setting to clarify or soften the image. For example, increasing the sharpness could make text appear crisper, but decreasing it could make photographs appear smoother.</p>

Table 5-13 Fax menu (fax models only) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
	Optimize Text/Picture	Manually Adjust* Automatically detect NOTE: Flow models only.	Optimize For: Text Mixed Printed picture Photograph	Optimizes the output for a particular type of content. You can optimize the output for text, printed pictures, or a mixture. Manually Adjust: Use to manually optimize the setting for text or for pictures. Text: Use to optimize the text portion of the copy where text and/or pictures are on the original. Printed picture: Use for line drawings and preprinted images, such as magazine clippings or pages from books. Photograph: Best suited for making copies of printed pictures.
	Fax Line Selection		Automatic* Line 1 Line 2	HP MFP Analog Dual Fax 810 Accessory needs to be installed
	Blank Page Suppression		Disabled* Enabled	Prevents blank pages in the original document from being included in the output document.
	Automatically Straighten		Off* Automatically Straighten*	Enable this feature prior to scanning to automatically straighten the scanned image when pages are skewed during scanning.

Table 5-13 Fax menu (fax models only) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
	Notification		Do not notify* Notify when job completes Notify only if job fails	Use to receive notification about the status of a sent document. Do Not Notify: Turns off this feature. Notify When Job Completes: Select to receive notification for this job only. Notify Only If Job Fails: Select to receive notification only if the job is not sent successfully.

Print menu

To display: At the printer control panel, select the [Print](#) menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 5-14 Print Options menu

First level	Second level	Values	Description
Print from Job Storage	Stored Job to Print	Untitled Stored Faxes	Print a job stored on the printer.
Print from USB Drive	USB File to Print	Choose file to print on USB drive.	Print a job stored on a USB drive.
Fax Polling	Fax Polling Number		Use the Fax Polling app to print faxes sent to another fax machine.

Supplies menu

To display: At the printer control panel, select the [Supplies](#) menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 5-15 Supplies menu

First level	Values
Supplies Summary	

Table 5-15 Supplies menu (continued)

First level	Values
Black Cartridge	Status Order HP Part Pages Printed Approximate Pages Remaining
Toner Collection Unit Document Feeder Kit Stapler 1	Status Order HP Part

Trays menu

To display: At the printer control panel, select the [Trays](#) menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 5-16 Trays menu

First level	Second level	Values	Description
Tray 1 Tray 2-x	Size	Select paper size from a list of supported sizes.	Choose the paper size for the tray
	Type	Select paper type from a list of supported types.	Choose the paper type for the tray.

Support Tools menu

The menus under the [Support Tools](#) menu contain the options for maintaining the printer and troubleshooting printer problems. Learn about these menus and settings.

Service menu

Use this menu to access features for diagnosing, maintaining, and repairing the product. You might be required to sign in to gain access to the Service menu.

- Service Access Code: 03073122

Table 5-17 Service menu

First level	Second level	Third level
Event Log		
Counts		
Coverage Report		
Scanner Settings		
Serial Number		

Table 5-17 Service menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level
Service ID		
Cold Reset Paper		
MPS Settings	Low Alerts	
MPS Settings	Reset Supplies Level	
MPS Settings	Consumables Access Control	
Advanced Service	Software Version	
Advanced Service	Service Reports	
Advanced Service	ACS	ACS Page Adjustment
Advanced Service	Adjustment	Print Adjustment
Advanced Service	Adjustment	Buckle Adjustment
Advanced Service	Adjustment	Finisher Adjustment
Advanced Service	*Calibration/Cleaning	
	NOTE: Refer to the Maintenance menu map.	
Advanced Service	Advanced Diagnostics	Reset Engine NVM
Advanced Service	Advanced Diagnostics	Engine NVM Read/Write
Advanced Service	Advanced Diagnostics	Sensors
Advanced Service	Advanced Diagnostics	Component Tests
Advanced Service	Service Functions	TR Control Mode
Advanced Service	Service Functions	Drain
Advanced Service	Service Functions	Low-temperature Idling Mode
Advanced Service	Service Functions	Altitude Adjustment
Advanced Service	Service Functions	Humidity
Advanced Service	Service Functions	Footer
PTT Test Mode		
Test Support		
Part Replacement Count		
Reset Supplies		
Fax V.29 Speed		

Event Log

Use this menu to view or print a list of the most recent 50 events in the Event Log. For each event, the log shows the event code, cycle (approximate page count), and description.

Event Log						
Device Information						
Product: Serial Number: XXXXXXXXXX						
Number	Date and Time	Cycles	Event	Firmware	Description or Personality	Re
50	8/10/2021 3:15:25 PM	44	34.04	debug_release.debug.20210730_0102_245_2481684	Fax Modem 2 Failure	0
49	8/10/2021 3:15:25 PM	1396	44.34.03	debug_release.debug.20210730_0102_245_2481684	Fax Modem Failure	0
48	8/10/2021 1:34:25 PM	1396	48.A0.08	debug_release.debug.20210730_0102_245_2481684	The Usage Summary Data was Reset	0
47	8/10/2021 1:30:08 PM	1346	48.A0.08	debug_release.debug.20210730_0102_245_2481684	The Usage Summary Data was Reset	0
46	8/10/2021 1:22:48 PM	1246	48.A0.08	debug_release.debug.20210730_0102_245_2481684	The Usage Summary Data was Reset	0
45	8/10/2021 1:18:17 PM	1196	48.A0.08	debug_release.debug.20210730_0102_245_2481684	The Usage Summary Data was Reset	0
44	8/10/2021 1:05:28 PM	1100	48.A0.08	debug_release.debug.20210730_0102_245_2481684	The Usage Summary Data was Reset	0
43	8/10/2021 12:26:44 PM	1050	48.A0.08	debug_release.debug.20210730_0102_245_2481684	The Usage Summary Data was Reset	0
42	8/10/2021 12:22:22 PM	1050	13.89.A1	debug_release.debug.20210730_0102_245_2481684	Stopped at fuser jam. {0,5} (0x1334)	0
41	8/10/2021 11:56:06 AM	980	13.89.A1	debug_release.debug.20210730_0102_245_2481684	Stopped at fuser jam. {0,5} (0x1334)	0
40	8/10/2021 11:52:59 AM	950	48.A0.08	debug_release.debug.20210730_0102_245_2481684	The Usage Summary Data was Reset	0
39	8/10/2021 11:25:06 AM	890	10.99.40	debug_release.debug.20210730_0102_245_2481684	Genuine HP supplies installed	0
38	8/10/2021 11:24:46 AM	890	44.34.03	debug_release.debug.20210730_0102_245_2481684	Fax Modem Failure	0
37	8/10/2021 11:24:46 AM	890	44.34.04	debug_release.debug.20210730_0102_245_2481684	Fax Modem 2 Failure	0
36	8/10/2021 11:23:28 AM	0	33.02.02	debug_release.debug.20210730_0102_245_2481684	Save/Recover disabled	0
35	8/10/2021 11:05:55 AM	890	44.34.04	debug_release.debug.20210805_2357_245_2481692	Fax Modem 2 Failure	0
34	8/10/2021 11:05:55 AM	890	44.34.03	debug_release.debug.20210805_2357_245_2481692	Fax Modem Failure	0
33	8/10/2021 11:05:33 AM	890	33.02.02	debug_release.debug.20210805_2357_245_2481692	Save/Recover disabled	0
32	8/10/2021 11:05:33 AM	890	44.34.04	debug_release.debug.20210805_2357_245_2481692	Fax Modem 2 Failure	0
31	8/10/2021 11:05:33 AM	890	44.34.03	debug_release.debug.20210805_2357_245_2481692	Fax Modem Failure	0
30	8/10/2021 11:03:05 AM	890	44.34.04	debug_release.debug.20210805_2357_245_2481692	Fax Modem 2 Failure	0
29	8/10/2021 11:03:05 AM	890	44.34.03	debug_release.debug.20210805_2357_245_2481692	Fax Modem Failure	0
28	8/10/2021 11:02:52 AM	890	33.02.02	debug_release.debug.20210805_2357_245_2481692	Save/Recover disabled	0
27	8/9/2021 4:07:10 PM	890	44.34.04	debug_release.debug.20210805_2357_245_2481692	Fax Modem 2 Failure	0
26	8/9/2021 4:07:10 PM	890	44.34.03	debug_release.debug.20210805_2357_245_2481692	Fax Modem Failure	0

Counts

Use this menu to see the total number of pages that have been printed to-date by various product components. Typically, this is only required when a new formatter is installed.

Before replacing the formatter, print a configuration page to obtain the current counts.

- **Service Count:** Total sum of Mono Service Count.
- **Mono Service Count:** This count tracks all media picked from all media sources on the device. For jobs with blank sides or interpreted as mono at the time of media pickup, this count will increment +1 (simplex) or +2 (duplex).
- **Refurbish Count:** Use this item to record the page count when the printer was refurbished.
- **Document Feeder Kit Count:** Total number of pages since the document feeder kit was replaced.
- **Document Feeder Kit Interval:** Use this item to set the interval that causes the printer to prompt the customer to replace document feeder kit.
- **Clean Rollers Count:** Total number of pages since the document feeder rollers were cleaned.
- **Clean Rollers Interval:** Use this item to set the interval that causes the printer to prompt the customer to clean the document feeder rollers and separation pad.
- **ADF Count:** Total pages fed through the document feeder.

- **Flatbed Count:** Total pages scanned from the flatbed.
- **ADF Simplex Count:** Total single-sided pages fed through the document feeder.
- **ADF Duplex Count:** Total two-sided pages fed through the document feeder.
- **Copy Scan Count:** Total copy pages that have been scanned.
- **Send Scan Count:** Number of scanned pages sent to email.
- **Fax Scan Count:** Number of scanned pages that have been faxed.
- **Copy Pages Count:** Number of scanned pages that have been printed.

Scanner Settings

Use this menu to adjust Scanner setting value manually when a scanned area is inappropriate.

The [Clear All](#) button restores all scanner setting values to default.



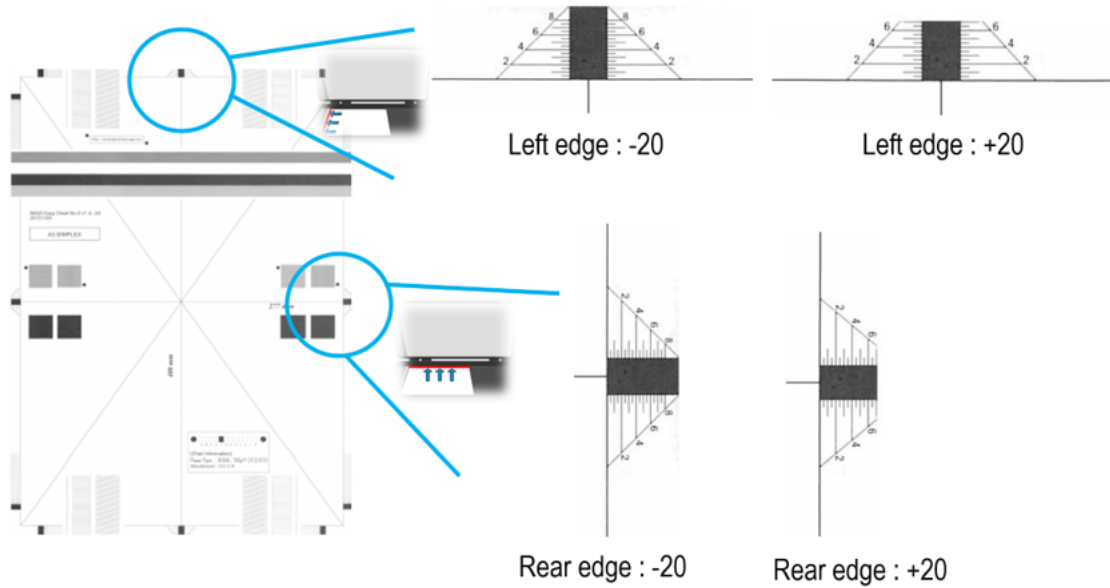
NOTE: Select the adjustable items on the control panel and adjust the values accordingly.

- **Glass – Left edge:** Default is 0. It can be adjusted from -20 to +20.
- **Glass – Rear edge:** Default is 0. It can be adjusted from -25 to +25.
- **ADF – Leading front edge:** Default is 0. It can be adjusted from -200 to +200.
- **ADF – Leading back edge:** Default is 0. It can be adjusted from -200 to +200.
- **ADF – Trailing front edge:** Default is 0. It can be adjusted from -200 to +200.
- **ADF – Trailing back edge:** Default is 0. It can be adjusted from -200 to +200.
- **ADF – Left side front:** Default is 0. It can be adjusted from -120 to +120.
- **ADF – Left side back:** Default is 0. It can be adjusted from -120 to +120.



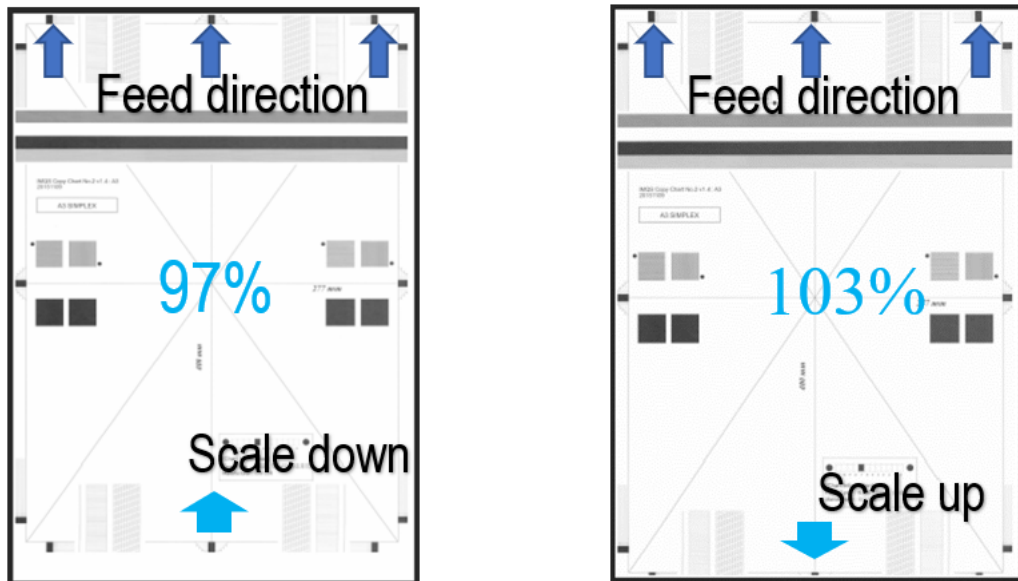
NOTE: Negative values crop the edge less and positive values crop the edge more.

Figure 5-21 Examples of scanner settings



- **ADF – Feed direction magnification:** Default is 100%. It can be adjusted from 97% to 103%.

Figure 5-22 Examples of Feed direction magnification settings



Serial Number

Use this menu to set the product serial number.



IMPORTANT: Modify the serial number only after replacing the formatter.

Service ID

Use this menu to display the date that the product was first used.

The Service ID menu eliminates the need to keep paper receipts for proof of warranty.

Cold Reset Paper

Use this menu to reset the default paper size after the replacement of a formatter board in a location using a different standard paper size.



NOTE: The product will restart automatically when this setting changes.

Low Alerts

Use this menu to enable or disable the Supplies Low message.

The Supplies Low message can be enabled or disabled in these locations:

- Control panel
- SNMP alerts
- Remote monitoring tools, such as the Embedded Web Server

Disabling low alerts has the following effects:

- Supplies Low messages are suppressed.
- Supplies Very Low messages still appear.
- The supplies status levels are visible in all locations.
- The control panel menu options for configuring the Low Message and the Low Threshold Settings are available, but they have no effect.

Reset Supplies Level

Use this menu to reset customized settings for Supplies Low and Supplies Very Low messages and alerts.



IMPORTANT: Use this menu for products that are under a service agreement with HP.

- **Reset to Level 1:** When this option is selected, standard menus for Supplies Very Low are available, and the Supplies Low Threshold is set to 0%. The Supplies Low messages are enabled and Low Alerts are enabled. Customer can modify the Supplies Low Threshold and the Low message behavior.
- **Reset to Level 2:** When this option is selected, standard menus for Supplies Very Low are available, and the Supplies Low Threshold is set to 0%. The Supplies Low messages are off and Low Alerts are enabled. Customer can modify the Supplies Low Threshold and the Low message behavior.
- **Reset to Level 3:** When this option is selected, standard menus for Supplies Very Low are available, and the Supplies Low Threshold is set to 0%. The Supplies Low messages are off and Low Alerts are disabled. Customer can modify the Supplies Low Threshold and Low Message settings are set to standard values for a product that is not under a service agreement with HP.
- **Set to non-HP managed mode:** When this option is selected, the menu for Supplies Very Low is removed. The Supplies Low Threshold and Low Message settings are set to standard values for a product that is not under a service agreement with HP.

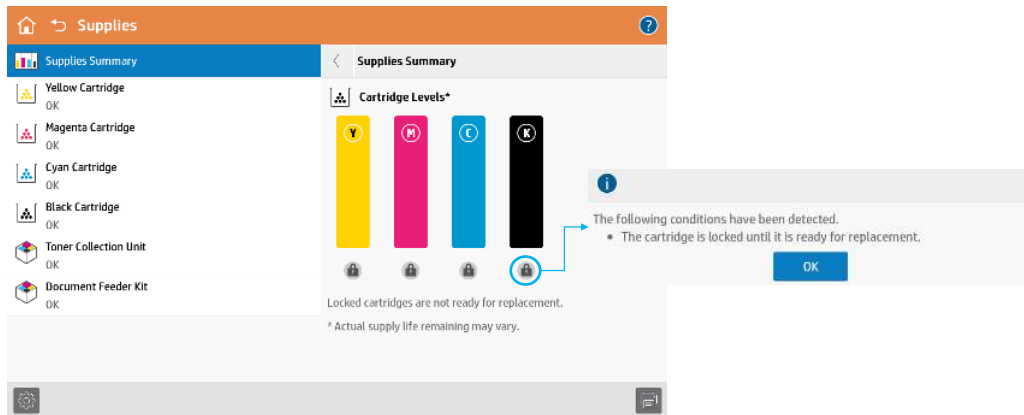
Consumables Access Control

Use this menu to lock toner cartridges into the product to help prevent early replacement.

Each cartridge will automatically unlock when it reaches the replacement threshold or encounters an error. Signing in with Admin or Service credentials will also unlock all cartridges for the duration of the session.

The settings are as follows:

- **Unchecked:** Disables this function. The **Eject** button is always selectable.
- **Checked:** Enables this function. If a toner cartridge is in the locked state, the **Eject** button is not selectable.



Software Version

Use this menu to see the following software versions.

- Engine Firmware Version
- Tray 2 Version
- Tray 3 Version
- Tray 4 Version (*Optional)
- Tray 5 Version (*Optional)
- Finisher Version (*Optional)
- Booklet Version (*Optional)
- Punch Version (*Optional)
- EP Version
- Toner Version
- TR Version
- Fuser Version

Service Reports

Use this menu to print the following reports.

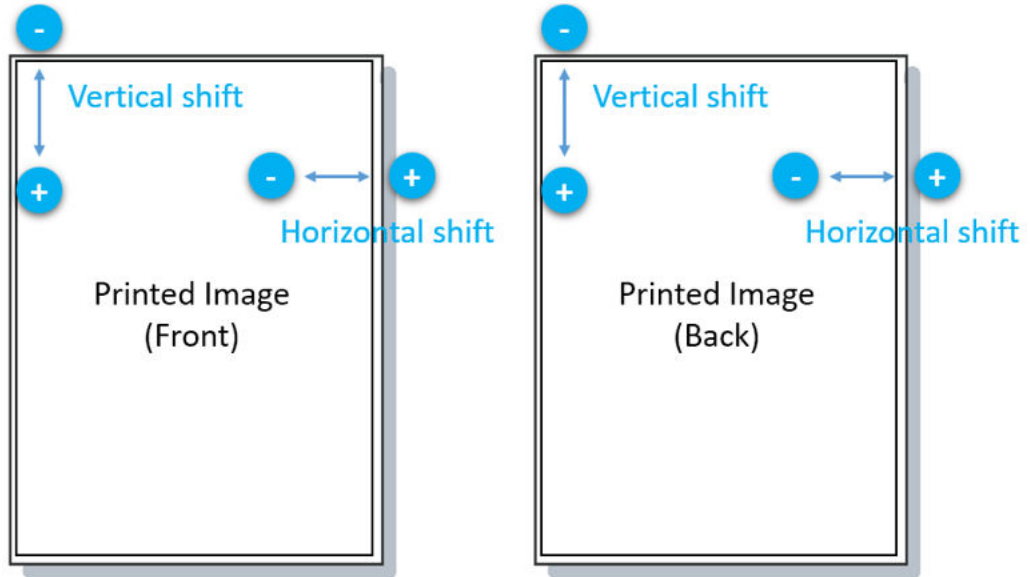
- Supplies Information Report
- Auto Toning History

Print Adjustment

Use this menu to adjust the image position manually and perform the Print Margin Test when the printed area is inappropriate, or the printed image is skewed to one side.

- Image Position
 - **Select Tray:** Select the tray that needs to be adjusted.
 - **Front-side Horizontal Shift:** Default is 0. It can be adjusted from -4 to +4.
 - +: The printed image will be shifted to the right.
 - : The printed image will be shifted to the left.
 - **Front-side Vertical Shift:** Default is 0. It can be adjusted from -4 to +4.
 - +: The printed image will be shifted downward.
 - : The printed image will be shifted upward.
 - **Back-side Horizontal Shift:** Default is 0. It can be adjusted from -4 to +4.
 - +: The printed image will be shifted to the right.
 - : The printed image will be shifted to the left.
 - **Back-side Vertical Shift:** Default is 0. It can be adjusted from -4 to +4.
 - +: The printed image will be shifted downward.
 - : The printed image will be shifted upward.
 - **Apply to all Trays:** If it is checked, all trays will be affected.


Figure 5-23 Examples of image position shifts



- Print Margin Test
 - **A3 Skew Pattern:** If this option is selected, the printer will print the A3 skew pattern.
 - **A4 Skew Pattern:** If this option is selected, the printer will print the A4 skew pattern.
 - **11x17 Skew Pattern:** If this option is selected, the printer will print the 11x17 skew pattern.
 - **Letter Skew Pattern:** If this option is selected, the printer will print the Letter skew pattern.

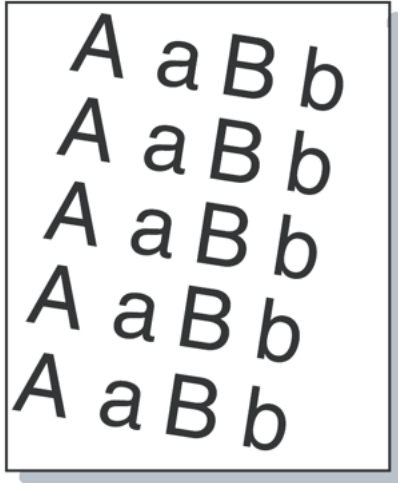
Buckle Adjustment

Use this menu to adjust the Registration Curl value when a printed image has a skew.

 **IMPORTANT:** Check the paper guide on the tray before performing the Buckle Adjustment.

- **Process Speed:** Default is [Full](#). Select the appropriate speed for the paper type.
- **Print Side:** Default is [Simplex](#). Select the appropriate print side.
- **Paper Source:** Default is [Tray 1](#). Select the appropriate tray.
- **Registration Curl:** Default is 0. It can be adjusted from -5 to +5.

Figure 5-24 Typical faulty image



Finisher Adjustment

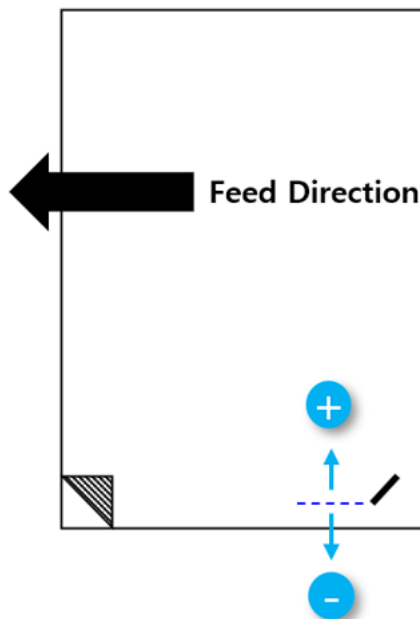
Use this menu to adjust settings related to the finisher, such as staple position, folding position, punch hole position, tamper position, and eject level.



NOTE: This menu will only be shown when a finisher is installed.

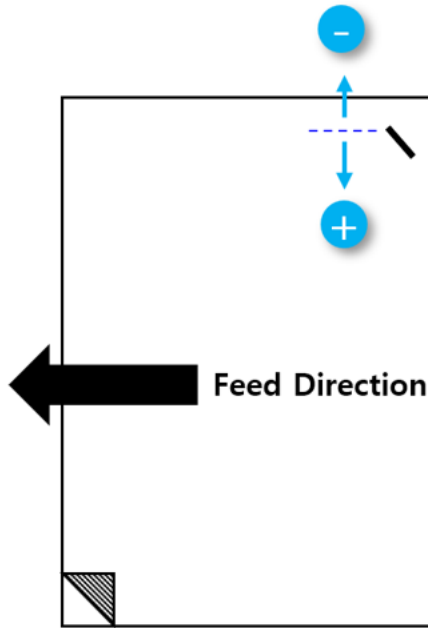
- **Staple position:** Use this menu adjust the staple position on the paper.
 - **Single Front Corner STS:** Use this feature to adjust the front corner staple position on the paper.
 - +: Move the staple position towards the center of the paper.
 - : Move the staple position towards the edge of the paper.

Figure 5-25 Front corner staple position



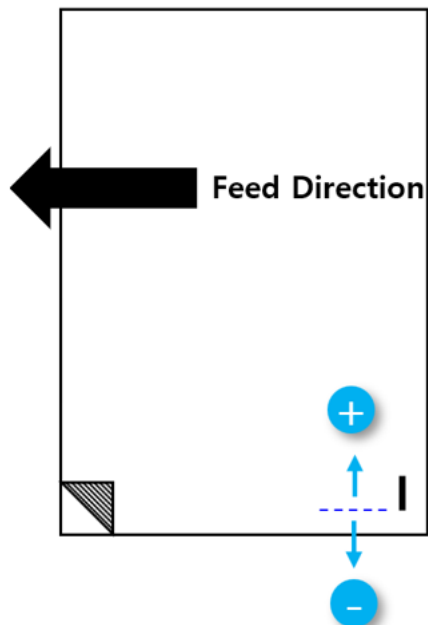
- **Single Rear Corner STS:** Use this feature to adjust the rear corner staple position on the paper.
 - +: Move the staple position towards the center of the paper.
 - : Move the staple position towards the edge of the paper.

Figure 5-26 Rear corner staple position



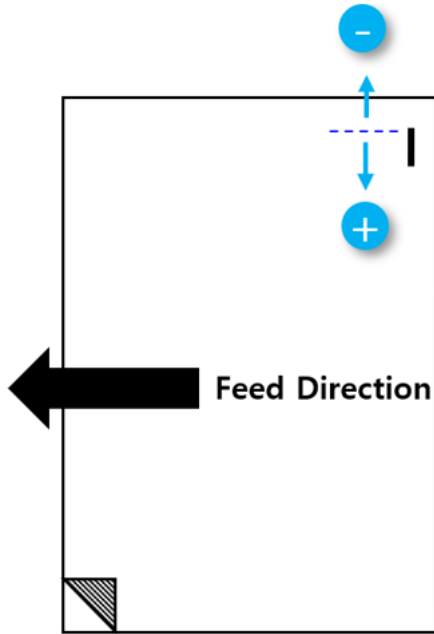
- **Single Front Flat STS:** Use this feature to adjust the front flat staple position on the paper.
 - +: Move the staple position towards the center of the paper.
 - : Move the staple position towards the edge of the paper.

Figure 5-27 Front flat staple position



- **Single Rear Flat STS:** Use this feature to adjust the rear flat staple position on the paper.
 - +: Move the staple position towards the center of the paper.
 - : Move the staple position towards the edge of the paper.

Figure 5-28 Rear flat staple position



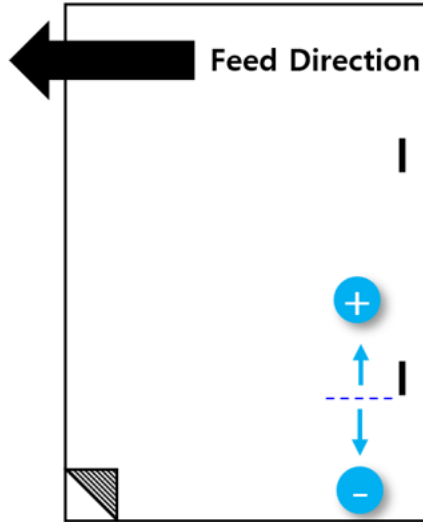
- **Dual Front STS:** Use this feature to adjust the front staple position of the dual staple on the paper



NOTE: This menu will only be shown when a booklet finisher or stapler/stacker finisher is installed.

- +: Move the staple position towards the center of the paper.
- : Move the staple position towards the edge of the paper.

Figure 5-29 Dual front staple position



- **Dual Rear STS:** Use this feature to adjust the rear staple position of the dual staple on the paper

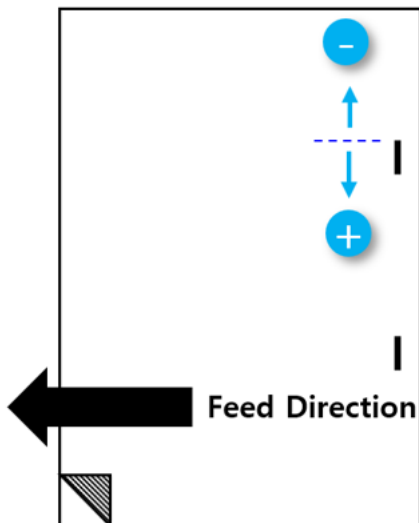


NOTE: This menu will only be shown when a booklet finisher or stapler/stacker finisher is installed.

+: Move the staple position towards the center of the paper.

-: Move the staple position towards the edge of the paper.

Figure 5-30 Dual rear staple position



- **Dual All STS:** Use this feature to adjust the dual staple position on the paper.

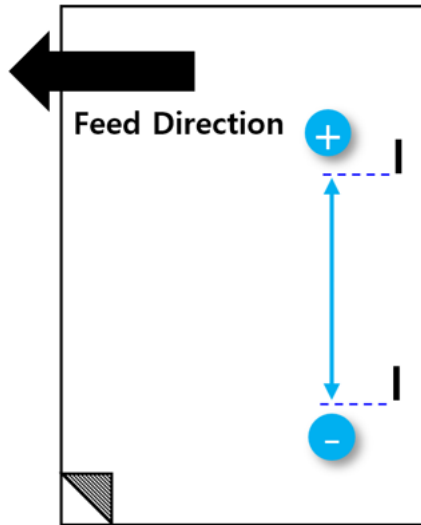


NOTE: This menu will only be shown when an inner finisher is installed


+: Move the staple position towards the center of the paper.

-: Move the staple position towards the edge of the paper.

Figure 5-31 Dual staple position



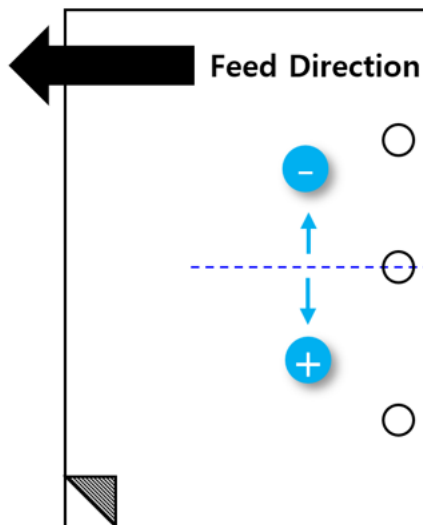
- **Punch Hole position:** Use this menu to adjust the position of punch holes on the paper.
 - **STS:** Use this feature to adjust the STS position of punched holes on the paper.

 **NOTE:** This menu will only be shown when a booklet finisher or staple/stacker finisher is installed with a punch unit.


+: Move the position of punched holes towards the front of the device.

-: Move the position of punched holes towards the rear of the device.

Figure 5-32 Punched holes position (up/down)



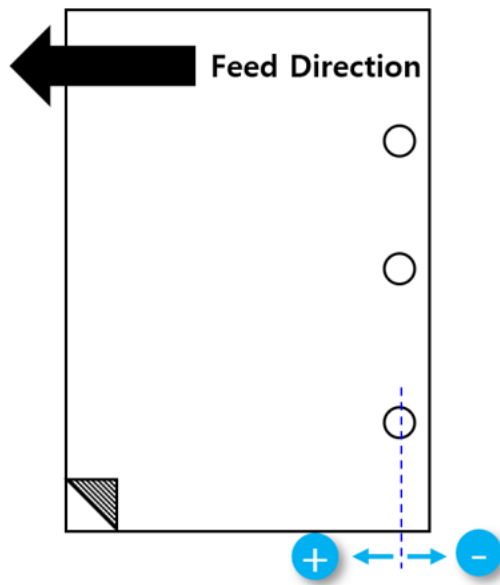
- **DOF:** Use this feature to adjust the DOF position of punched holes on the paper.

 **NOTE:** This menu will only be shown when a booklet finisher, stapler/stacker finisher, or inner finisher is installed with a punch unit.

+: Move the position of punched holes towards the center of the paper.

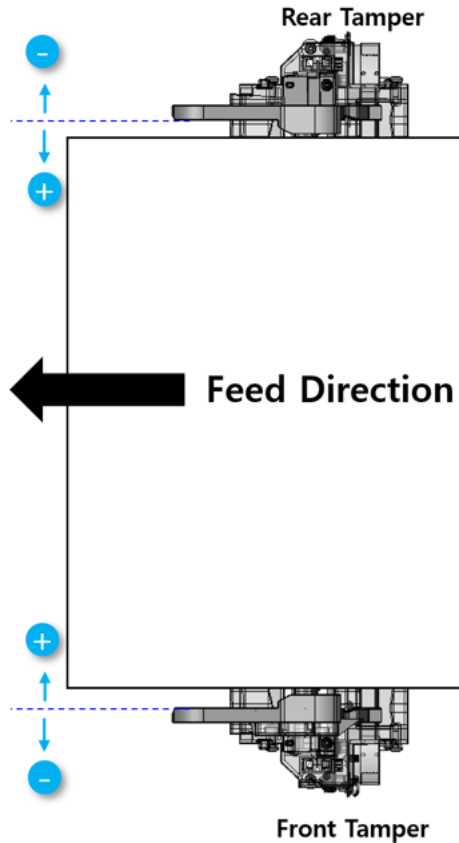
-: Move the position of punched holes towards the edge of the paper.

Figure 5-33 Punched holes position (left/right)




- **Enable Punch Scan:** Use this feature to enable the detection of leading edge of the paper when the punch is operating.
 - **On (default):** Detect the leading edge of the paper for every page.
 - **Off:** Detect the leading edge of the paper for the first page of the job.
- **Tamper Position:** Use this menu to adjust the tamper position.
 - **Front:** Use this feature to adjust the front tamper position.
 - **Rear:** Use this feature to adjust the rear tamper position.
 - +: Move toward the compile center (away from the tamper home).
 - : Move away from the compile center (toward the tamper home).

Figure 5-34 Tamper position



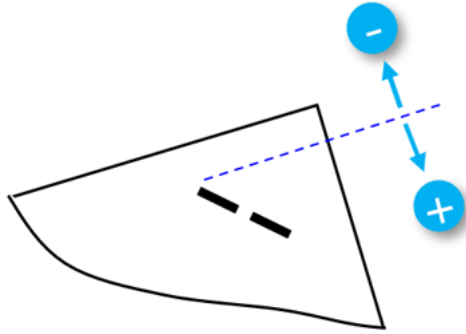
- **Finisher Eject Level:** Use this feature to adjust the eject level to reduce scattering.
+: Higher level (increased feed time).
-: Lower level (decreased feed time).
- **Disable Buffering Option:** Use this feature to align paper for stapling in staple jobs.
Off (default): The buffering function is enabled.
On: The buffering function is disabled. This will try to align the paper for stapling, but the job speed will be slower.
- **Manual Staple Position:** Use this feature to adjust the manual staple position.

 **NOTE:** This menu item will only be shown when a booklet finisher or stapler/stacker finisher is installed.


+: Move the staple position towards the center of the paper.


-: Move the staple position towards the edge of the paper.

Figure 5-35 Manual staple position



- **Booklet Staple Position:** Use this menu to adjust the staple position of printed booklets for supported paper sizes.

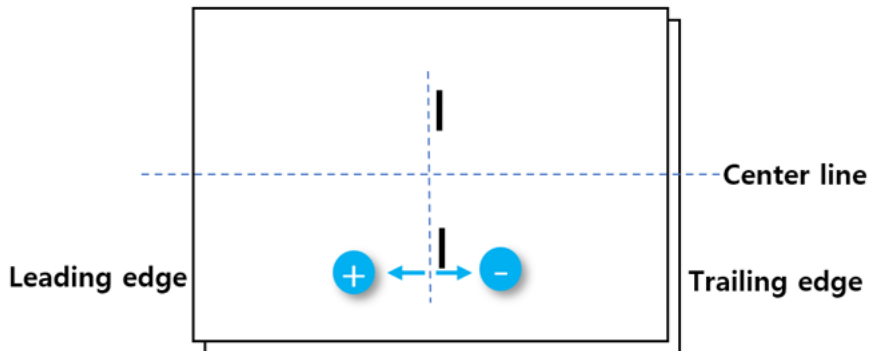
 **NOTE:** This menu item will only be shown when a booklet finisher is installed.

 **IMPORTANT:** Select paper size you want to use in the menu.


+: Move the staple position towards the leading edge of the paper.


-: Move the staple position towards the trailing edge of the paper.

Figure 5-36 Booklet staple position



- **Booklet Folding Position:** Use this menu to adjust the folding position of printed booklets for supported paper sizes.

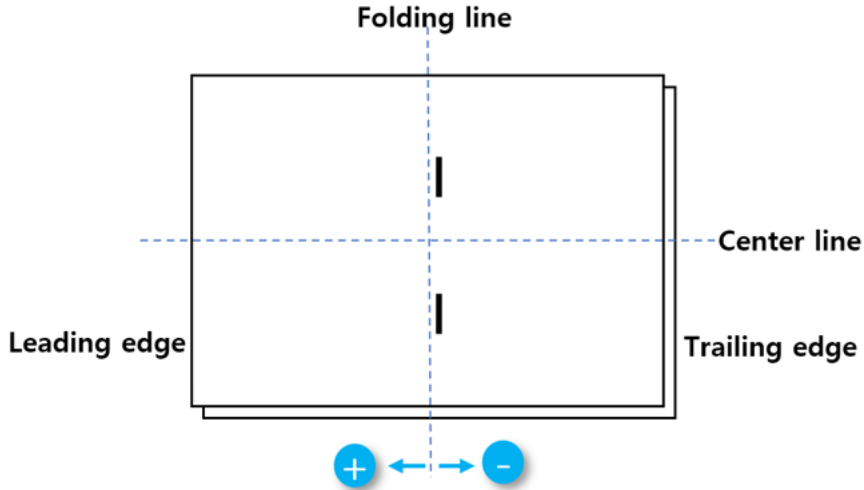
 **NOTE:** This menu will only be shown when a booklet finisher is installed.

 **IMPORTANT:** Select paper size you want to use in the menu.


+: Move the folding position towards the leading edge of the paper.


-: Move the folding position towards the trailing edge of the paper.

Figure 5-37 Booklet fold position



- **Booklet C-Folding Position:** Use this menu to adjust the c-folding of printed pages for supported paper sizes.

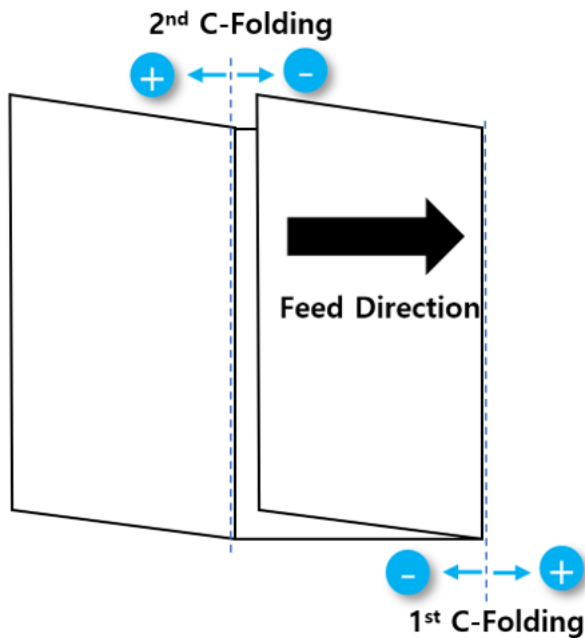
 **NOTE:** This menu will only be shown when a booklet finisher is installed.

 **IMPORTANT:** Select paper size you want to use in the menu.

+: Move the folding position towards the leading edge of the paper.

-: Move the folding position towards the trailing edge of the paper.

Figure 5-38 Booklet C-fold position



Reset Engine NVM

Use this menu to initialize the engine NVM (Non-Volatile Memory) read/write values to the default.

Engine NVM Read/Write

Use this menu to adjust the NVM configuration value for the printing engine operation.

Table 5-18 Engine NVM Read/Write values

Code	Name	Type	Default
109-0200	StandBy Center Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0201	StandBy Side Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0205	Warmup Center Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0206	Warmup Side Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0255	Light 60-74g Center Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0256	Light 60-74g Side Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0265	Plain Center Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0266	Plain Side Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0275	Heavy 111-130g Center Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0276	Heavy 111-130g Side Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0280	Extra Heavy 131-175g Center Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0281	Extra Heavy 131-175g Side Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0290	Cardstock Center Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0291	Cardstock Side Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0300	Envelope Center Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0301	Envelope Side Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0305	Labels Center Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0306	Labels Side Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0310	Mid-Weight 96-110g Center Temperature Offset	Read/Write	10
109-0311	Mid-Weight 96-110g Side Temperature Offset	Read/Write	10
109-0315	Recycled Center Temperature offset	Read/Write	10

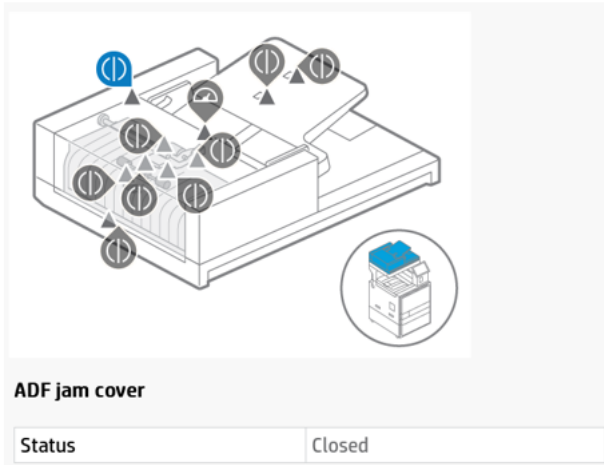
Table 5-18 Engine NVM Read/Write values (continued)

Code	Name	Type	Default
109-0316	Recycled Side Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0320	Special Center Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0321	Special Side Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0325	1200 dpi_light 60-74g Center Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0326	1200 dpi_light 60-74g Side Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0330	1200 dpi_plain Center Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0331	1200 dpi_plain Side Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0335	1200 dpi_mid-weight 96-110g Center Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0336	1200 dpi_mid-weight 96-110g Side Temperature offset	Read/Write	10
109-0340	XHvyGlossy 131-175g Center Temperature Offset	Read/Write	10
109-0341	XHvyGlossy 131-175g Side Temperature Offset	Read/Write	10
109-0345	Card Glossy 176-220g Center Temperature Offset	Read/Write	10
109-0346	Card Glossy 176-220g Side Temperature Offset	Read/Write	10
109-0350	Paperboard Center Temperature Offset	Read/Write	10
109-0351	Paperboard Side Temperature Offset	Read/Write	10
109-0355	Heavy Paperboard Center Temperature Offset	Read/Write	10
109-0356	Heavy Paperboard Side Temperature Offset	Read/Write	10

Sensors

Use this menu to check the status of sensors using each sensor's callout on the control panel.

Select the callout to display the status of the sensor.



NOTE: This image may differ from your control panel display.

IMPORTANT: Include this information when escalating related issues to the GBU engineer.

Table 5-19 Sensor types

Name	Reference table
Document Feeder Sensors	Document Feeder sensors
Flatbed Sensors	Flatbed sensors
ACR/CTD	ACR/CTD sensors
Finisher (Option)	Finisher (Option) sensors
Covers	Cover sensors
Developer	Developer sensors
Environment	Environmental sensors
Fuser	Fuser sensors
LSU	LSU sensors
Paper Path	Paper Path sensors
Power Supply	Power Supply sensors
TCU	TCU sensors
Toner	Toner sensors
Toner Residual Amount	Toner Residual Amount sensors
Tray	Tray sensors

Table 5-20 Document Feeder sensors

Name	Type	Status
ADF Top of Form Sensor	Input	High/Low
ADF Paper Path Deskew Sensor	Input	High/Low

Table 5-20 Document Feeder sensors (continued)

Name	Type	Status
ADF Paper Present Sensor	Input	High/Low
ADF Width Sensor	Input	Numeric
ADF Y Length (Short)	Input	High/Low
ADF Y Length (Long)	Input	High/Low
ADF Jam Cover Sensor	Input	High/Low
ADF Paper Path Pick Height Sensor	Input	High/Low
ADF Ultrasonic	Input	Numeric
ADF Pick Success Sensor	Input	High/Low
ADF Top of Form Sensor	Input	High/Low
ADF Paper Path Deskew Sensor	Input	High/Low
ADF Paper Present Sensor	Input	High/Low
ADF Width Sensor	Input	Numeric

Table 5-21 Flatbed sensors

Name	Type	Status
Flatbed Cover Sensor	Input	High/Low
Flatbed Y (length) short Sensor	Input	High/Low
Flatbed Y (length) long Sensor	Input	High/Low
Flatbed Cover Sensor	Input	High/Low

Table 5-22 ACR/CTD sensors

Code	Name	Type	Status
112-0340	Center ID Sensor - P Wave Value	Input	Numeric

Table 5-23 Finisher (Option) sensors

Item	Code	Name	Type	Status
Booklet End Fence	113-3000	Booklet End Fence Home Sensor	Input	High/Low
Booklet Entrance	113-3100	Booklet Entrance Sensor	Input	High/Low
Booklet Exit	113-3120	Booklet Exit Sensor	Input	High/Low
Booklet Fold	113-2202	Booklet Maker Detection	Input	Installed/Not installed

Table 5-23 Finisher (Option) sensors (continued)

Item	Code	Name	Type	Status
Booklet Fold	113-3040	Booklet Blade Home Sensor	Input	High/Low
Booklet Output Tray	113-2150	Booklet Output Tray Sensor	Input	High/Low
Booklet Paddle	113-3050	Booklet C-Fold Blade Home Sensor	Input	High/Low
Booklet Paddle	113-3060	Booklet Diverter Home Sensor	Input	High/Low
Booklet Paddle	113-3090	Booklet Paddle Home Sensor	Input	High/Low
Booklet Paddle	113-3130	Booklet Presser Home Sensor	Input	High/Low
Booklet Stapler	113-3010	Booklet Stapler Head Sensor	Input	High/Low
Booklet Stapler	113-3020	Booklet Front Stapler Cartridge Level Sensor	Input	High/Low
Booklet Stapler	113-3030	Booklet Rear Stapler Cartridge Level Sensor	Input	High/Low
Booklet Tamper	113-3080	Booklet Tamper Home Sensor	Input	High/Low
Booklet Tamper	113-3110	Booklet Tamper Sensor	Input	High/Low
Covers	113-0410	Front Cover Sensor	Input	High/Low
Covers	113-0420	Top Cover Sensor	Input	High/Low
Ejector	113-0461	Ejector1 Home Sensor	Input	High/Low
Ejector	113-0462	Ejector2 Home Sensor	Input	High/Low
Ejector	113-0463	Ejector2 Motor Sensor	Input	High/Low
End Fence	113-0361	End Fence Sensor	Input	High/Low
Entrance	113-0350	Entrance Sensor	Input	High/Low
Exit	113-0360	Exit Sensor	Input	High/Low
Finisher Connection	113-0351	Finisher Detection Sensor	Input	Installed/Not Installed
Output Tray	113-0470	Paper Holding Sensor	Input	High/Low
Output Tray	113-0471	Output Tray Top of Stack Sensor	Input	High/Low
Output Tray	113-0472	Output Tray Lower Limit Sensor	Input	High/Low
Output Tray	113-0473	Output Tray Motor Sensor	Input	High/Low
Paddle	113-0370	Paddle Home Sensor	Input	High/Low
Paper Support	113-0481	Paper Support Home Sensor	Input	High/Low

Table 5-23 Finisher (Option) sensors (continued)

Item	Code	Name	Type	Status
Punch	113-0610	Punch Motor Sensor	Input	High/Low
Punch	113-0612	Punch Home Sensor	Input	High/Low
Punch	113-0620	Punch Waste Box Sensor	Input	Installed/Not Installed
Punch	113-0621	Punch Waste Full Sensor	Input	High/Low
Stapler	113-0430	Stapler Head Sensor	Input	High/Low
Stapler	113-0440	Stapler Cartridge Level Sensor	Input	High/Low
Stapler	113-0451	Stapler Cartridge Detection Sensor	Input	High/Low
Stapler	113-0491	Stapler Front Sensor	Input	High/Low
Stapler	113-0492	Stapler Rear Sensor	Input	High/Low
Stapler	113-0493	Stapler Front Pos Sensor	Input	High/Low
Stapler	113-0494	Stapler Rear Pos Sensor	Input	High/Low
Tamper	113-0380	Rear Tamper Home Sensor	Input	High/Low
Tamper	113-0390	Front Tamper Home Sensor	Input	High/Low
Bridge	113-2070	Bridge Entrance Sensor	Input	High/Low
Bridge	113-2071	Bridge Exit Sensor	Input	High/Low
Bridge	113-2180	Bridge Door Sensor	Input	Closed/Open
Bridge	113-2200	Bridge Detection	Input	Installed/Not Installed
Buffer	113-2100	Buffer Sensor	Input	High/Low
Buffer	113-2210	Buffer Home Sensor	Input	High/Low
Manual Stapler	113-2160	Manual Staple Sensor	Input	High/Low
Manual Stapler	113-2161	Manual Staple Button Sensor	Input	High/Low
Punch Detection	113-2201	Punch Detection	Input	Installed/Not Installed
Punch Detection	113-4000	Punch Scan Home Sensor	Input	High/Low
Punch Detection	113-4060	Punch Type Detection1	Input	High/Low
Punch Detection	113-4061	Punch Type Detection2	Input	High/Low
SCU (Set Clam Unit)	113-2010	Paper Holding Home Sensor	Input	High/Low
SCU (Set Clam Unit)	113-2141	Front Paper Holding Sensor	Input	High/Low

Table 5-23 Finisher (Option) sensors (continued)

Item	Code	Name	Type	Status
SCU (Set Clam Unit)	113-2142	Rear Paper Holding Sensor	Input	High/Low

Table 5-24 Cover sensors

Code	Name	Type	Status
102-0352	DCF Feed Cover Open	Input	Closed/Open
102-0435	Front Cover Sensor	Input	Closed/Open
102-0436	Side Cover Sensor	Input	Closed/Open

Table 5-25 Developer sensors

Code	Name	Type	Status
111-0070	Black Toner Concentration Sensor	Input	Numeric

Table 5-26 Environmental sensors

Code	Name	Type	Status
109-0013	Outer Temperature Sensor	Input	Numeric
109-0014	Humidity Sensor	Input	Numeric

Table 5-27 Fuser sensors

Code	Name	Type	Status
109-0000	Fuser Temperature A Sensor	Input	Numeric
109-0010	Fuser Temperature B Sensor	Input	Numeric
109-0140	Fuser Gap Home Sensor	Input	High/Low
109-0141	Fuser Gap Home Sensor (through motor running)	Input	High/Low

Table 5-28 LSU sensors

Code	Name	Type	Status
110-0170	LSU HSync4 Sensor	Input	High/Low
110-0200	LSU Detection	Input	High/Low

Table 5-29 Paper Path sensors

Item	Code	Name	Type	Status
Feed	102-0293	Feed2 Sensor	Input	High/Low
Output	101-0190	Out-Bin Full Sensor	Input	High/Low
Output	101-0191	Out-Bin2 Full Sensor (Option)	Input	High/Low
Output Exit	102-0371	Exit2 Sensor	Input	High/Low
Duplex Jam 1	102-0380	Duplex Jam1 Sensor	Input	High/Low

Table 5-30 Power Supply sensors

Code	Name	Type	Status
109-0200	Fuser Relay Sensor	Input	High/Low
109-0210	Zero Cross Period	Input	Numeric
101-1000	Power 24V	Input	Numeric

Table 5-31 TCU sensors

Code	Name	Type	Status
100-0250	Waste Toner Full Sensor	Input	Numeric
104-0000	Waste Toner Detection Sensor	Input	Installed/Not Installed

Table 5-32 Toner sensors

Code	Name	Type	Status
111-0230	Black Toner Dispense Motor Sensor	Input	High/Low
111-0231	Black Toner Dispense Motor Sensor (through motor running)	Input	High/Low

Table 5-33 Toner Residual Amount sensors

Code	Name	Type	Status
111-0075	Black Toner Residual Amount Sensor	Input	Numeric

Table 5-34 Tray sensors

Item	Code	Name	Type	Status
Tray 1	102-0280	Tray 1 Paper Empty Sensor	Input	High/Low

Table 5-34 Tray sensors (continued)

Item	Code	Name	Type	Status
Tray 2	102-0000	Tray 2 Open Sensor	Input	Closed/Open
Tray 2	102-0010	Tray 2 Paper Empty Sensor	Input	High/Low
Tray 2	102-0041	Tray 2 Paper Size Sensor	Input	Numeric
Tray 2	102-0050	Tray 2 Stack Height Sensor	Input	High/Low
Tray 3	102-0070	Tray 3 Open Sensor	Input	Closed/Open
Tray 3	102-0080	Tray 3 Paper Empty Sensor	Input	High/Low
Tray 3	102-0111	Tray 3 Paper Size Sensor	Input	Numeric
Tray 3	102-0120	Tray 3 Stack Height Sensor	Input	High/Low
Tray 3	102-0301	Pre Feed3 Sensor	Input	High/Low
Tray 4 (Option)	102-0730	Tray 4 Knock Up Home Sensor	Input	High/Low
Tray 4 (Option)	102-0731	Tray 4 Shift Tray Paper Empty Sensor	Input	High/Low
Tray 4 (Option)	102-0732	Tray 4 Shift Tray Level Sensor1	Input	High/Low
Tray 4 (Option)	102-0733	Tray 4 Shift Tray Level Sensor2	Input	High/Low
Tray 4 (Option)	102-0734	Tray 4 Shift Plate Home Sensor	Input	High/Low
Tray 4 (Option)	102-0735	Tray 4 Shift Plate End Sensor	Input	High/Low
Tray 4 (Option)	102-0736	Tray 4 Gate Solenoid Home Sensor	Input	High/Low
Tray 4 (Option)	102-0140	Tray 4 Open Sensor	Input	Closed/Open
Tray 4 (Option)	102-0150	Tray 4 Paper Empty Sensor	Input	High/Low
Tray 4 (Option)	102-0181	Tray 4 Paper Size Sensor	Input	Numeric 3 digits
Tray 4 (Option)	102-0190	Tray 4 Stack Height Sensor	Input	High/Low
Tray 4 (Option)	102-0330	Tray 4 Door Open Sensor	Input	Closed/Open
Tray 4 (Option)	102-0320	Tray 4 Feed Sensor	Input	High/Low
Tray 5 (Option)	102-0210	Tray 5 Open Sensor	Input	Closed/Open
Tray 5 (Option)	102-0220	Tray 5 Paper Empty Sensor	Input	High/Low

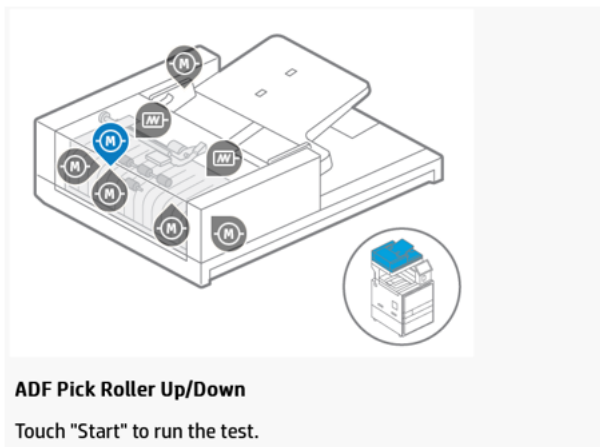
Table 5-34 Tray sensors (continued)

Item	Code	Name	Type	Status
Tray 5 (Option)	102-0251	Tray 5 Paper Size Sensor	Input	Numeric
Tray 5 (Option)	102-0260	Tray 5 Stack Height Sensor	Input	High/Low

Component tests

Use this menu to test components such as a motor, clutch, solenoid, fan, or bias, by selecting each component's callout on the control panel.

Select the callout and touch the **Start** button to run the component test.



NOTE: This image may differ from your control panel display.

IMPORTANT: Include this information when escalating related issues to the GBU engineer.

Table 5-35 Component types

Name	Reference table
Document Feeder Motors	Document Feeder Motor component tests
Scanner Motors	Scanner Motor component tests
Finisher (Option)	Finisher (Option) component tests
Developer	Developer component tests
Drum	Drum component tests
Fan	Fan component tests
Fuser	Fuser component tests
LSU	LSU component tests
Paper Path	Paper Path components tests
Power Supply	Power Supply component tests

Table 5-35 Component types (continued)

Name	Reference table
TCU	TCU component tests
Toner	Toner component tests
Trays	Tray component tests

Table 5-36 Document Feeder Motor component tests

Name	Type	Status
ADF Tray Lift Motor	Output	Start/Stop
ADF Feed Motor	Output	Start/Stop
ADF Deskew Motor	Output	Start/Stop
ADF Pickup Clutch	Output	Start/Stop
ADF Deskew Clutch	Output	Start/Stop
ADF Pick Roller Up/Down	Output	Start/Stop
ADF Retard Motor	Output	Start/Stop
ADF Exit Motor	Output	Start/Stop

Table 5-37 Scanner Motor component tests

Name	Type	Status
Scanner Motor	Output	Start/Stop

Table 5-38 Finisher (Option) component tests

Item	Code	Name	Type	Status
Booklet End Fence	113-3510	Booklet Fold Motor	Output	On/Off
Booklet End Fence	113-3520	Booklet End Fence Solenoid	Output	On/Off
Booklet End Fence	113-3530	Booklet End Fence Motor	Output	On/Off
Booklet Entrance	113-3500	Booklet Entrance Motor	Output	On/Off
Booklet Entrance	113-3510	Booklet Fold Motor	Output	On/Off
Booklet Entrance	113-3520	Booklet End Fence Solenoid	Output	On/Off
Booklet Entrance	113-3530	Booklet End Fence Motor	Output	On/Off
Booklet Fold	113-3590	Booklet C-Fold Blade Motor	Output	On/Off
Booklet Paddle	113-3560	Booklet Diverter Motor	Output	On/Off

Table 5-38 Finisher (Option) component tests (continued)

Item	Code	Name	Type	Status
Booklet Paddle	113-3570	Booklet Presser Motor	Output	On/Off
Booklet Paddle	113-3580	Booklet Paddle Motor	Output	On/Off
Booklet Stapler	113-3600	Booklet Stapler Head Motor	Output	On/Off
Booklet Tamper	113-3540	Booklet Tamper Motor	Output	On/Off
Booklet Tamper	113-3550	Booklet Blade Motor	Output	On/Off
Ejector	113-2530	Pre Ejector Motor	Output	On/Off
Ejector	113-2540	Post Ejector Motor	Output	On/Off
Entrance	113-2510	Paper Holding Motor	Output	On/Off
Entrance	113-2520	Entrance Motor - Diverter	Output	On/Off
Entrance	113-2570	Entrance Motor - Entrance	Output	On/Off
Exit	113-2500	Main Exit Cam Motor	Output	On/Off
Exit	113-2580	Exit Motor	Output	On/Off
Output Tray	113-2610	Main Output Tray Motor	Output	On/Off
Paddle	113-2600	Paddle Motor	Output	On/Off
Paper Support	113-0571	Paper Support Motor	Output	On/Off
Punch	113-0610	Punch Motor Sensor	Input	High/Low
Punch	113-0600	Punch Motor	Output	On/Off
Punch	113-4500	Punch Scan Motor	Output	On/Off
Stapler	113-0550	Stapler Head Motor	Output	On/Off
Stapler	113-0581	Stapler Position Motor	Output	On/Off
Stapler	113-2620	Stapler Position Motor	Output	On/Off
Stapler	113-2621	Stapler Head Motor	Output	On/Off
Tamper	113-0520	Rear Tamper Motor	Output	On/Off
Tamper	113-0530	Front Tamper Motor	Output	On/Off
Tamper	113-2630	Front Tamper Motor	Output	On/Off
Tamper	113-2640	Rear Tamper Motor	Output	On/Off
Bridge	113-2560	Bridge Motor	Output	On/Off
Buffer	113-2660	Buffer Motor	Output	On/Off
Buffer	113-2670	Buffer Solenoid	Output	On/Off
Covers	113-2650	Top Cover LED - Blue	Output	On/Off
Covers	113-2651	Top Cover LED - Red	Output	On/Off
End Fence	113-2590	End Fence Motor	Output	On/Off

Table 5-39 Developer component tests

Code	Name	Type	Status
111-0140	Black Toner Control Voltage	Output	On/Off
100-0071	Black Deve Motor	Input	High/Low

Table 5-40 Drum component tests

Code	Name	Type	Status
100-0049	Black Drum Motor	Input	High/Low
107-0169	Black Eraser	Input	High/Low

Table 5-41 Fan component tests

Code	Name	Type	Status
100-0270	SMPS Fan	Input	High/Low

Table 5-42 Fuser component tests

Code	Name	Type	Status
109-0034	Fuser Motor - Forward	Input	High/Low

Table 5-43 LSU component tests

Code	Name	Type	Status
110-0000	LSU Motor1	Input	High/Low

Table 5-44 Paper Path component tests

Item	Code	Name	Type	Status
Feed	100-0420	Tray 1 Feed Motor	Output	On/Off
Feed	101-0120	Tray 2 Feed Motor	Output	On/Off
Feed	101-0130	Tray 3 Feed Motor	Output	On/Off
Feed	100-0410	Registration Motor	Output	On/Off
Feed	101-0140	Tray 4 Feed Motor (Option)	Output	On/Off
Feed	101-0150	Tray 5 Feed Motor (Option)	Output	On/Off
Output	100-0430	Exit2 Motor - Forward	Output	On/Off
Output	100-0440	Exit2 Motor - Backward	Output	On/Off
Duplex	100-0140	Duplex Motor	Output	On/Off

Table 5-44 Paper Path component tests (continued)

Item	Code	Name	Type	Status
Duplex	101-0280	Return Gate Solenoid	Output	On/Off

Table 5-45 Power Supply component tests

Item	Code	Name	Type	Status
Transfer	107-0033	THV(-) Bias	Output	On/Off
Transfer	107-0034	THV CC Bias	Output	On/Off
Transfer	107-0035	THV CV Bias	Output	On/Off
Drum	105-0030	Black MHV Bias	Output	On/Off
Developer	106-0030	Black Developer Bias	Output	On/Off
Developer	106-0031	Black Developer AC Bias	Output	On/Off

Table 5-46 TCU component tests

Code	Name	Type	Status
100-0240	Waste Toner Motor	Output	On/Off
100-0241	Waste Toner LED	Output	On/Off

Table 5-47 Toner component tests

Code	Name	Type	Status
111-0030	Black Toner Dispense Motor	Output	On/Off
111-0430	Black Toner Unlock Motor	Output	On/Off

Table 5-48 Tray component tests

Item	Code	Name	Type	Status
Tray 1 Clutch	101-0270	Tray 1 Clutch	Output	On/Off
Tray 1	101-0271	Tray 1 Solenoid	Output	On/Off
Tray 2	100-0200	Tray 2 Pickup Motor - Lift	Output	On/Off
Tray 2	100-0370	Tray 2 Pickup Motor - Pickup	Output	On/Off
Tray 3	100-0210	Tray 3 Pickup Motor - Lift	Output	On/Off
Tray 3	100-0380	Tray 3 Pickup Motor - Pickup	Output	On/Off
Tray 4 (Option)	100-0220	Tray 4 Pickup Motor - Lift	Output	On/Off

Table 5-48 Tray component tests (continued)

Item	Code	Name	Type	Status
Tray 4 (Option)	100-0390	Tray 4 Pickup Motor - Pickup	Output	On/Off
Tray 4 (Option)	101-0101	Tray 4 Shift Gate Solenoid	Output	On/Off
Tray 4 (Option)	100-0232	Tray 4 Shift Motor	Output	On/Off
Tray 5 (Option)	100-0230	Tray 5 Pickup Motor - Lift	Output	On/Off
Tray 5 (Option)	100-0400	Tray 5 Pickup Motor - Pickup	Output	On/Off

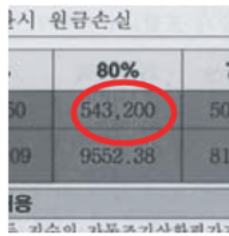
TR Control Mode

Use this menu to correct transfer related problems. This menu can be used to change the transfer value to optimize image quality for a certain type of paper.

Figure 5-39 Typical faulty images



[Blur]



[Poor Transfer]



[Re-Transfer]



[White Spot]



[OPC Cyclic Ghost]

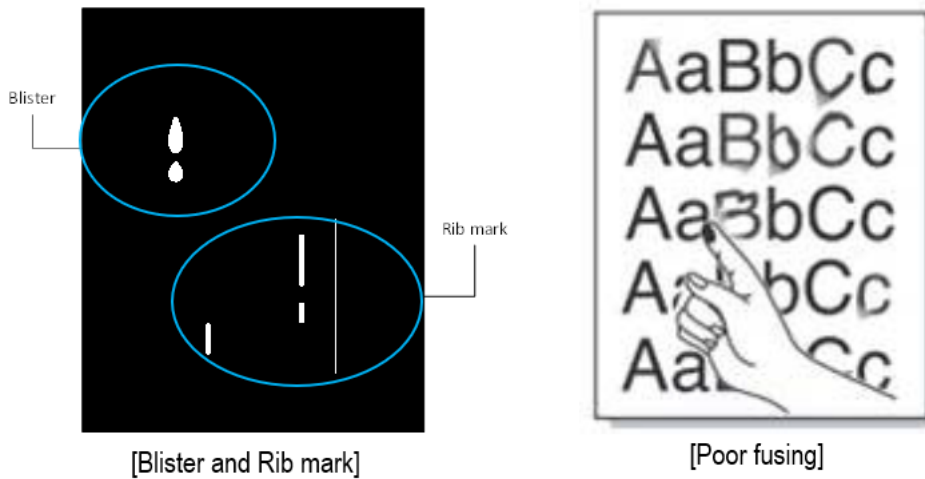
- T2 Control Mode
 - **T2 PWM:** Default is 0. It can be adjusted from -20 to +20. For example:
 - Blur: Increase T2 PWM value.

- Poor Transfer: Increase T2 PWM value.
- Re-Transfer: Decrease T2 PWM value.
- White Spot: Decrease T2 PWM value.
- OPC Cyclic Ghost: Decrease T2 PWM value.

Low-temperature Idling Mode

Use this menu to improve print quality in low temperatures (below 7°C/ (44.6 °F)). Environment quality issues include rib marks (duplex), blisters in the printed image, or poor fusing, as show below.

Figure 5-40 Typical faulty images



- **Off (default):** Disable this function.
- **On:** The printer will perform this function.



NOTE: When this function is enabled, the printer will perform the fuser idle for 4 to 10 minutes before printing, depending on the outside temperature (below 7°C/ (44.6 °F)). Printing speed is therefore slower than when this function is off.

Altitude Adjustment

Use this menu to choose the altitude of the place where the printer is located. The print quality is affected by atmospheric pressure, which is determined by the height of the machine above sea level.

Figure 5-41 Typical faulty images



[Loose toner]



[Light image]

- **Normal (default):** 0 ~ 1,000 m (3,280 ft)
- **High 1:** 1,000 m (3,280 ft) ~ 2,000 m (6,561 ft)
- **High 2:** 2,000 m (6,561 ft) ~ 3,000 m (9,842 ft)
- **High 3:** 3,000 m (9,842 ft) ~ 4,000 m (13,123 ft)
- **High 4:** 4,000 m (13,123 ft) ~ 5,000 m (16,404 ft)

Humidity

Use this menu to troubleshoot print quality issues such as paper curl, dog ears, and poor paper stacking in the stacker output bins.

Increase the Humidity level from High 1 to High 3 until the print quality issues are resolved.


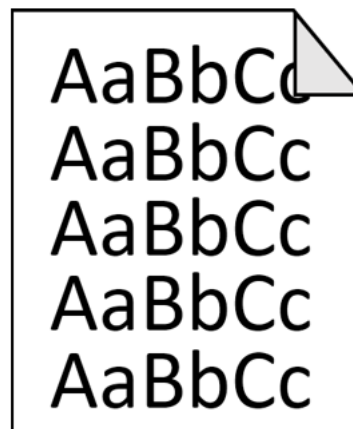
 **NOTE:** Printing speed will be slow when the Humidity level is set to High 3.

Figure 5-42 Typical faulty images



[Paper curl]



[Dog ears]

- **Normal (default)**

- **High 1:** Preheating Idling for 13 seconds before the first job and increased gap for paper transfer (150 mm (6 in), Simplex only)
- **High 2:** Preheating Idling for 18 seconds before the first job and increased gap for paper transfer (200 mm (7.9 in), Simplex only)
- **High 3:** Preheating Idling for 20 seconds before the first job, increased gap for paper transfer (65 mm (2.5 in), Simplex only), and 50% process speed slow-down

Footer

Use this menu to add printing information at the bottom of the printed page.

- **Off (default):** Disables this function.
- **On:** The printer performs this function.

PTT Test Mode

Use this menu to determine whether a fax transmission meets local standards.

Test Support

Use this menu to test the items listed below.

- Continuous Scan
- Continuous Copy
- Raw Scan
- Continuous Print From USB
- Automatic Calibrations
- Runtime Configuration

Part Replacement Count

Use this menu to display the number of parts replaced.

Table 5-49 Part Replacement Count items

Item
Black Cartridge
Black Drum
Black Developer Unit
Fuser Kit
Transfer Roller
Tray 1 Roller Kit
Tray 2 Roller Kit
Tray 3 Roller Kit
Tray 4 Roller Kit (Option)

Table 5-49 Part Replacement Count items (continued)

Item
Tray 5 Roller Kit (Option)

Reset Supplies

Use this menu to reset the supplies counters.


 **IMPORTANT:** After replacing a supply kit, use this function.

Table 5-50 Reset Supplies items

Item
Black Developer Unit
Transfer Roller
Tray 1 Roller Kit
Tray 2 Roller Kit
Tray 3 Roller Kit
Tray 4 Roller Kit (Option)
Tray 5 Roller Kit (Option)

Fax V.29 Speed

Use this menu to select Line 1 or 2 of V.29, which will transmit at 9600 bps for faxes over VoIP when the VoIP connection is failing.

Maintenance menu

Use this menu to access features for maintaining the printer.

Table 5-51 Maintenance menu

First level	Second level	Third level
Backup/Restore		
Import/Export		
Calibration/Cleaning	OPC Cleaning	Off* On
Calibration/Cleaning	Advanced Calibration Support	Custom Color
Calibration/Cleaning	Advanced Calibration Support	Auto Tone Adjustment
Calibration/Cleaning	Advanced Calibration Support	CTD Sensor Cleaning
Calibration/Cleaning	Advanced Calibration Support	Manual Tone Adjustment
Calibration/Cleaning	Toner Density Calibration	
Calibration/Cleaning	Calibrate Scanner	

Table 5-51 Maintenance menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level
USB Firmware Upgrade		
License Management		

Backup/Restore

Use this menu to create a backup copy of the product configuration and settings. Use the backup copy to restore settings when configuration recovery is necessary.

Import/Export

Use this menu to export files that can be used to configure other devices. Select which settings, contacts, or user accounts to include in the export. The files can be imported to other devices including those with different capabilities. Any imported settings that are not available on the target device will be ignored.

OPC Cleaning

Use this feature to improve image when a light or faded printing is occurred by a Talc ingredient of paper like Century Paper.

- **Off:** Disable this option.
- **On:** OPC cleaning will perform automatically for every entered cleaning period.

When using this feature, consider the following:

- The **OPC Cleaning Mode** is performed only when the paper width detected is A4 (long-edge feed) or A3
- The paper (including the toner band) will come out automatically when cleaning is finished.
- **OPC Cleaning Mode** is turned off by default. Select **Start** or **On** to enable cleaning mode.
- Using **OPC Cleaning Mode** frequently might shorten the life of toner cartridges and OPC drums.
- **OPC Cleaning Mode** will not begin if any printer error has occurred or there is no paper in the tray.

Custom Color

Use this menu to adjust the color density manually in order to meet the customer's needs.

- **Black:** Default is 0. It can be adjusted from -10 to +10.

Auto Tone Adjustment

Use this menu to adjust color tone automatically.

- **Off:** Disables this function.
- **On (Default):** The printer will perform this function when the following determined conditions have been met.
 - **After Pages Printed:** The printer will perform this function based on the count of printed pages since the last execution.

- **After Period of Inactivity (Minutes):** The printer will perform this function when the printer returns from a power save mode and the rest time exceed the configured value.
- **Adaptive:** Unchecked as a default.
- **Start:** The printer performs this function now.



NOTE: Select **Start** to manually perform this operation when the control panel displays sensor failure errors such as “CTD sensor calibration failure,” or when imaging parts such as the OPC drum, development unit, or ITB unit are replaced or reinstalled.

CTD Sensor Cleaning

Use this menu to calibrate the CTD sensor after cleaning the CTD and ACR sensor, when the control panel displays sensor errors such as “CTD sensor calibration failure” or “ACR sensor calibration failure.”

- **Start:** The printer performs this function immediately, and the sensor failure error message is cleared from the control panel.

Manual Tone Adjustment

Use this menu to adjust the color tone manually.

This function can adjust Highlights, Midtones, and Shadows.

- **Black:** Default is 0. It can be adjusted from -5 to +5.

Calibrate Scanner

Use this menu when messages on the control panel direct you to run the calibration process.

- **Start:** The printer performs this function immediately.

USB Firmware Upgrade

Use this menu to perform a firmware upgrade using a USB flash drive.

Insert the USB flash drive that contains a firmware upgrade bundle into the USB port, and then follow the on-screen instructions.

- **Install:** Executes the firmware upgrade.

License Management

Use this menu to install a speed license, which will configure the engine to print at an upgraded speed.

Use **one** of the following procedures to install the speed license.


- Install a speed license from the HP Cloud using the control panel.




IMPORTANT: When an inner finisher is installed, the printer cannot exceed 60 pages-per minute (ppm). Do not install a speed license higher than 60 ppm for a printer with an inner finisher installed.

1. Connect a network cable to the printer.
2. Turn the printer power on, and wait for it to initialize to the **Ready** state.


3. Verify that the printer has a valid IP address and a working internet connection.

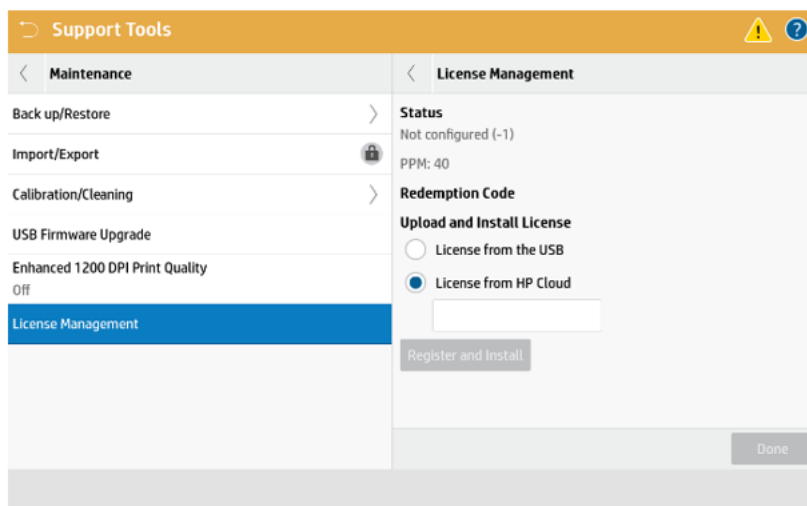
 **NOTE:** A proxy server might need to be configured now using the Embedded Web Server (EWS) or manually at the control panel.

4. At the printer Home screen, scroll to and then touch the Support Tools button.
5. Select the **License Management** menu in the left-side navigation pane.
6. Select **License from HP Cloud** under **Upload and Install License**.


 **IMPORTANT:** A redemption code must be obtained from the HP Printer License Activation and Management website. <https://activation.jamangement.hp.com>.

7. Type in the redemption code obtained from the HP Printer License Activation and Management website.
8. Select the Register and Install button.

 **NOTE:** The printer restarts as part of the installation process. Wait at least a few minutes after the printer initializes to the **Ready** state to allow the speed license installation process to finish completely.



- Install a speed license offline manually using the HP Printer License Activation and Management web site.

 **IMPORTANT:** When an inner finisher is installed, the printer cannot exceed 60 pages-per minute (ppm). Do not install a speed license higher than 60 ppm for a printer with an inner finisher installed.

1. Download the speed license file to the PC from the HP Cloud Server.
 - a. Open a browser and go to the HP Printer License Activation and Management website: <https://activation.jamangement.hp.com>.
 - b. Select the country/region and SIGN IN on the HP Partner Portal.
 - c. Select **Activation speed for new HP LaserJets** or select **Product Number**.

- d. Type the printer serial number in the **Device Serial Number** field.
- e. Use the drop-down menu to select the **Device Product Number**.
- f. Type in the redemption code in the **Redemption Code** field.



NOTE: A redemption code must be obtained from the HP Printer License Activation and Management website. <https://activation.jamanagement.hp.com>.

hp HP JetAdvantage Management Activation Sign Out

Register License Manage License Reports

Device Serial Number

Device Product Number
--- Select Device Product Number ---

Redemption Code

Register

- g. Click the **Register** button.
- h. When the registration is complete, download the speed license file to the computer, and then transfer it to a USB storage device.



CAUTION: The license file must be saved in the root directory of the USB device. Do not change the license file name.

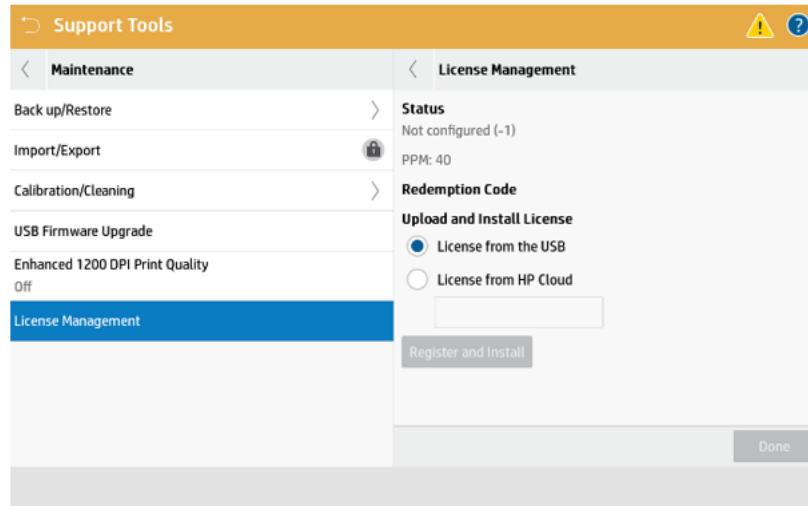
2. Use the steps below to manually install the speed license.
 - a. Turn the printer power on, and wait for it to initialize to the **Ready** state.
 - b. Insert the USB into the USB port on the printer.
 - c. At the printer Home screen, scroll to and then touch the **Support Tools** button.
 - d. Select **License from the USB** under **Upload and Install License**.
 - e. Touch the **Register and Install** button.



IMPORTANT: The printer installs the highest speed license among the license files on the USB device. Remove any license files for speeds above 60 ppm for a printer with an inner finisher installed. Speed upgrades cannot be downgraded.



NOTE: If the USB device is not detected, remove the USB device and turn the printer power off. Reinsert the USB device, and then turn the printer power on.



Troubleshooting menu

Use this menu to access features for troubleshooting the printer.

Table 5-52 Troubleshooting menu

First level	Second level
Reports	Configuration/Status Pages
Reports	Fax Reports
Reports	Other Pages
Fax Tools	Fax T.30 Trace Report
Fax Tools	Fax V.34
Fax Tools	JBIG Compression
Fax Tools	Fax Speaker Mode
Fax Tools	Fax Service Log
Print Quality Pages	PQ Troubleshooting Pages
Print Quality Pages	Advanced Print Quality Pages
Event Log	
Paper Path Page	
Diagnostic Tests	Run Fax Test
Retrieve Diagnostic Data	
Retrieve Fax Diagnostic Data	



Configuration/Status Pages

Use this menu to display (🖨️) or print (📄) the information listed below.

- Settings Menu Map

- Current Settings Page
- Configuration Page
- How to Connect Page
- Supplies Status Page
- Usage Page
- File Directory Page
- Web Services Status Page
- HP Flex Build Configuration Page

Fax Reports

Use this menu to display () or print () the information listed below.

- Fax Activity Log
- Billing Codes Report
- Blocked Fax List
- Fax Call Report

Other Pages

Use this menu to print () the information listed below.

- PCL Font List
- PS Font List

Fax T.30 Trace Report

Use this menu to print the Fax trace reports with the selected conditions on each Line 1 or Line 2.

The T.30 trace is a printed report which produces a record of all the communications between the sending and receiving fax machines for the last fax transmission or reception. The report has many technical details which are usually beyond the scope of most users. However, the report contains detailed error codes and other information that might be useful in troubleshooting a particular problem related to sending or receiving a fax. The report contents might be requested by an HP service representative when trying to determine the cause of a problem and will help to determine the appropriate action.

- **Never automatically print:** The printer does not print the fax trace report.
- **Print after every fax:** The printer will print the fax trace report after every fax job.
- **Print only after fax send jobs:** The printer will print the fax trace report after sending a fax job.
- **Print only after received faxes:** The printer will print the fax trace report after receiving a fax job.
- **Print only after fax send errors:** The printer will print the fax trace report when a fax sending error occurs.

- **Print only after fax receive errors:** The printer will print the fax trace report when a fax receiving error occurs.
- **Print only after any fax error:** The printer will print the fax trace report when any fax error occurs.
- **Print Now:** The printer prints the fax trace report immediately.

Fax V.34

Use this menu to resolve a fax sending or receiving problem on each Line 1 or Line 2.

The V.34 setting is the modem protocol that the printer uses to send faxes. It is the worldwide standard for full-duplex modems that send and receive data across telephone lines at up to 33,600 bits per second (bps). The factory-set default for the V.34 setting is On.

You should change the V.34 setting only if you are having trouble sending a fax to or receiving a fax from a particular device. Turning off the setting might be useful when you are trying to send a fax overseas, or receive one from overseas, or if you are using a satellite telephone connection.

- **Enable (default):** The Fax V.34 is activated.
- **Disable:** The Fax V.34 is not activated.

JBIG Compression

Use this menu to resolve a fax sending problem when another receiving fax device cannot support it.

JBIG compression can reduce fax transmission times significantly when enabled. When enabled, documents will be JBIG encoded when sending and receiving with another JBIG capable fax device. When a fax is sent to or received from a non-JBIG capable device, other compression algorithms will be used.

- **On:** JBIG compression is enabled.
- **Off (default):** JBIG compression is disabled.

Fax Speaker Mode

Use this menu to enable or disable the fax speaker mode.

- **Normal (default):** The fax modem speaker is turned on during dialing through the initial connection and then shuts off.
- **Diagnostic:** The speaker is turned on and remains on for all fax communications until the setting is returned to Normal mode.

Fax Service Log

Use this menu to print the detailed fax service log.


- **Print:** The printer prints the detailed fax service log.

PQ Troubleshooting Pages

Use this menu to check the print quality with a printed test page.

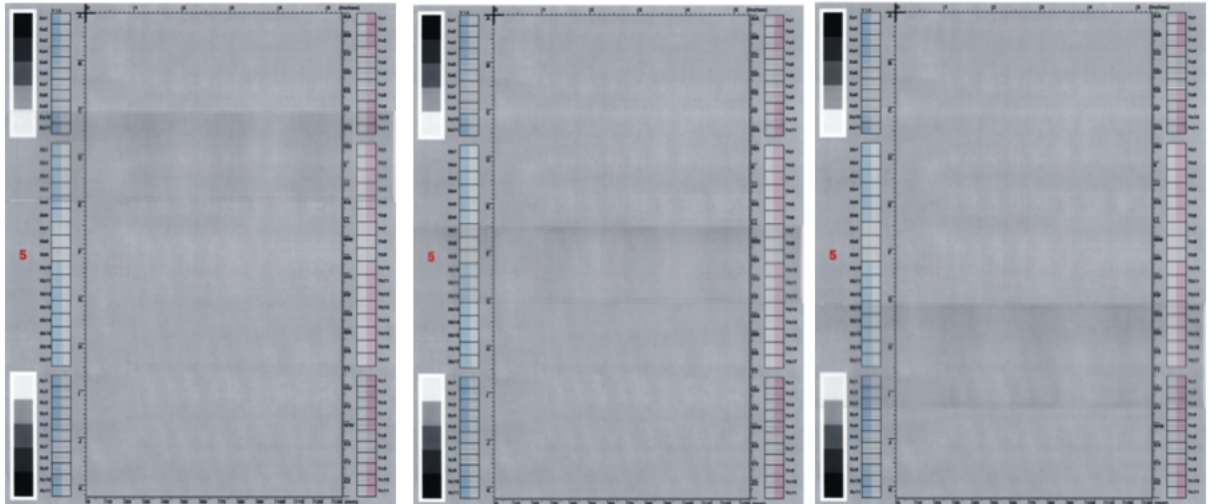
- **Print:** The printer prints the PQ troubleshooting pages.

The printer returns to the **Ready** state after printing the PQ troubleshooting pages. Review the PQ troubleshooting pages, and perform the corresponding troubleshooting procedure below.

 **NOTE:** The images below are only examples and may not exactly match your output. Black toner is being used for clarity.

Toner smear

As shown below, the issue may vary in location and appearance.



Description

A portion of the image is smeared in the feed (horizontal) direction. The section that is smeared may be a narrow or wide streak, and may extend across the entire page.

Most likely causes

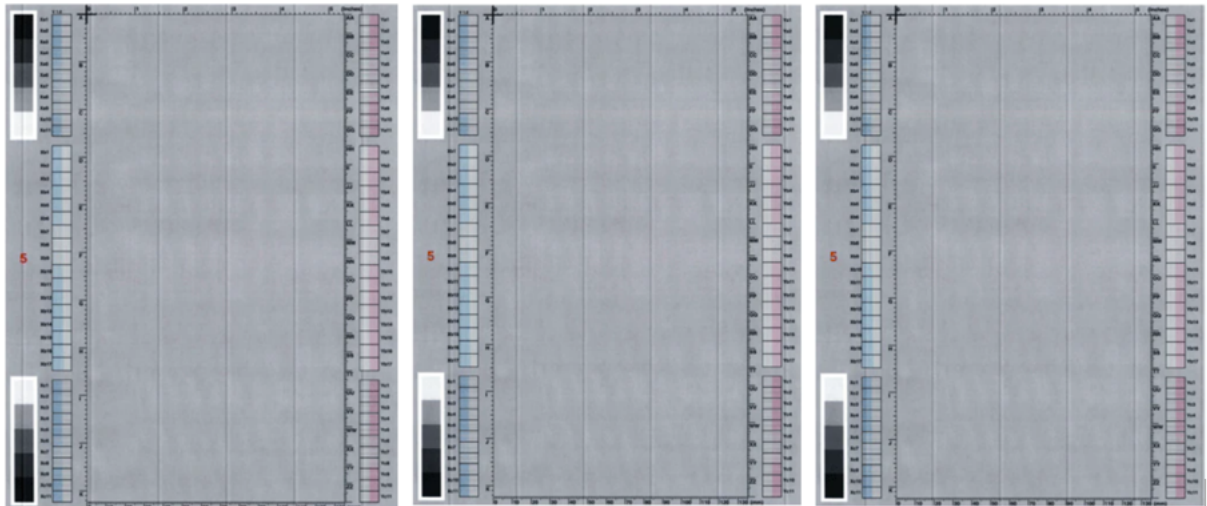
- Smears occur more commonly after a paper jam, or during the first daily printing in a high-temperature, high-humidity environment.

Troubleshooting and suggestions

1. If the smear was first observed after a paper jam, check the PTB unit for torn pieces of paper. Then go to the next step.
2. Print approximately 10 pages to see if the smear clears. If the toner smear still can be observed, go to the next step.
3. Replace the PTB unit.
4. After replacing the PTB unit, print another set of PQ troubleshooting pages.
5. Look at the new set of PQ troubleshooting test pages. If the issue is not resolved, contact HP.

Sharp banding repeating

As shown below, the issue may vary in location and appearance.



Description

Pages print with sharp, narrow, dark bands repeating.

Most likely causes

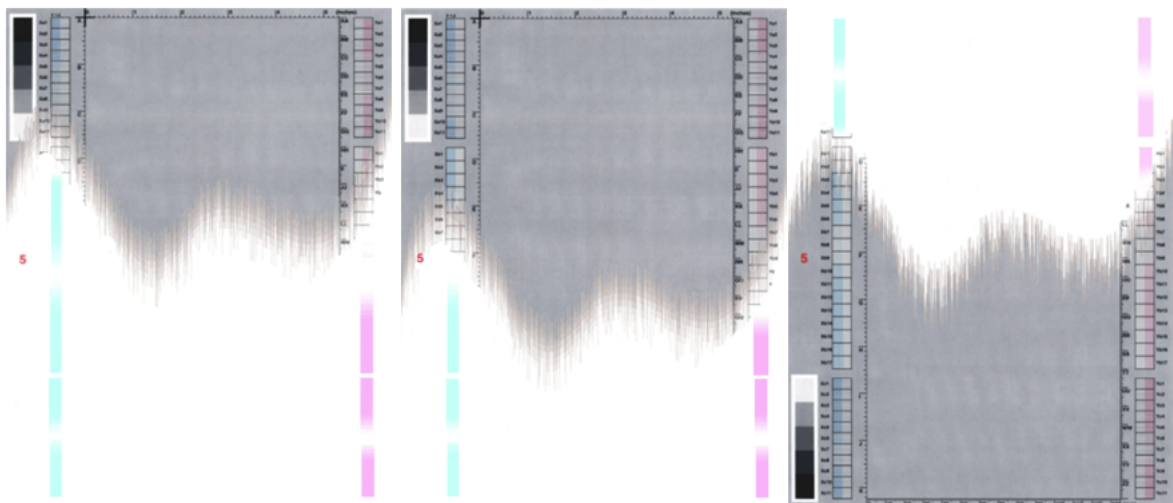
- The developer roller in the black image drum.

Troubleshooting and suggestions

1. Replace the black image drum.
2. After replacing the black image drum, print another set of PQ troubleshooting pages.
3. Look at the new set of test pages. If the issue is not resolved, contact HP.

Partial Missing color plane

As shown below, the issue may vary in location and appearance.



Description

The background color of the black test page is missing toner. The boundary between where the toner is present and not present creates a wavy pattern.

Most likely causes

- One of the transfer rollers in the intermediate-transfer belt unit does not have even pressure across the belt.

Troubleshooting and suggestions

1. Check the PTB unit to see whether the bushings are correctly positioned.
2. Print another set of PQ troubleshooting pages.
3. Look at the new set of test pages. If the issue is not resolved, then check the printer toner cartridge.
4. Print and examine another set of PQ troubleshooting pages.
5. If the issue is not resolved by the black image drum test procedure, contact HP.

Advanced Print Quality Pages

Use this menu to print test pages with the selected test page type.

- **Print:** The printer prints the selected quality test pages
 - EP Calibration Pattern2 Halftone
 - Tone Curve Int Calibration K Pattern
 - Engine K Pattern for Optical Density
 - Tone Curve Ext Measurement Page

Event Log

Use this menu to display and print event logs such as an event code, date/time, cycles and repetitions on the printer.

- **Print** (): The printer prints the event logs.

Paper Path Page

Use this menu to display and print a paper path usage on the printer.

- **Print:** The printer prints the paper path usage report.

Run Fax Test

Use this menu to perform tests on specific components within the product to determine whether the components are functioning correctly.

The printer prints a fax test report. The report contains the following possible results.

- **Pass:** The report contains all of the current fax settings. The printer is ready to send and receive faxes.
- **Fail:** The report indicates the nature of the error and contains information on how to resolve the issue.

Retrieve Diagnostic Data

Use this feature to generate debug data and to retrieve that diagnostic data from the product.

Select from the following options:

- [Create zipped debug information file](#): This option creates a .zip file that can be saved only to a USB device.
- [Create device data file](#): This option creates a device data file. By default it is sent to a USB drive. Select **Send to Email** to send the file as an email instead.

Retrieve Fax Diagnostic Data

Use this menu to export Fax diagnostic data from the printer using a USB drive.

Insert a USB drive into the USB port. Click the [Save](#) button.

6 Remove and replace

You will learn more about remove and replace.

Before servicing

Learn about ordering parts, using part lists, electrostatic precautions, and the HP service approach.

Order parts by authorized service providers

Find information about ordering parts and supplies for the printer.

Ordering

Order parts by authorized service providers.

Table 6-1 Ordering

Item or provider	Description
Order supplies and paper	www.hp.com/go/suresupply
Order parts from authorized service providers	www.hp.com/buy/parts or partsurfer.hp.com
Order through service or support providers	Contact an HP-authorized service or support provider.
Order using the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS)	To access, in a supported web browser on your computer, enter the printer IP address or host name in the address/URL field. The EWS contains a link to the HP SureSupply web site, which provides options for purchasing Original HP supplies.

Orderable parts

Not all of the parts shown in the exploded assembly diagrams are orderable parts.

Refer to the tables following the diagrams or the alphabetical/numerical parts lists to determine if a part is orderable.


How to use parts lists and diagrams

Learn how to use the parts lists and diagrams.

The figures in this chapter show the major sub-assemblies in the printer and their component parts. A parts list table follows each exploded view assembly diagram. The table lists the item number, the associated part number, and the description of each part. If a part is not listed in the table, then it is not a field replacement unit (FRU).





NOTE: Be sure to order the correct part. When looking for part numbers for electrical parts, pay careful attention to the voltage that is listed in the part description. Doing so will make sure that the selected part number is for the correct printer model.

 **NOTE:** The abbreviation “PCA” stands for “printed circuit-board assembly.” Components described as a PCA might consist of a single circuit board or a circuit board plus other parts, such as cables and sensors.

ESD precautions

Learn the importance of electrostatic discharge.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Look for the ESD reminder when removing printer parts. Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground *before* touching an ESD-sensitive assembly.

Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

Service approach

Learn more about the service approach.

Precautions when replacing parts

Learn about precautions when replacing parts.

Precautions when assembling and disassembling

- Use only HP approved replacement parts. Make sure that the part number, product name, voltage, and current or temperature ratings are correct. Failure to do so might result in damage to the machine, circuit overload, fire, or electric shock.
- Do not make unauthorized changes or additions to the printer. Unauthorized changes might cause the printer to malfunction and create electric shock or fire hazards.
- Use caution when dismantling the unit. Take note of the location of each screw or other part. This printer contains different kinds of screws. Using the wrong screw might lead to system failure, short circuit or electric shock.
- Do not disassemble the laser scanner assembly. Once the laser scanner assembly is disassembled, dust might enter the mirror chamber and will seriously degrade print quality. There are no serviceable parts inside the laser scanner assembly.
- Regularly check the condition of the power cable, plug and socket. Bad contacts might lead to overheating and fire. Damaged cables might lead to electric shock or unit malfunction.

Precautions when handling PCAs

Static electricity might damage a PCA. Use approved, anti-static precautions when handling or storing a PCA. Service personnel should use grounded ESD straps and/or mats when handling PCAs.

- Precautions when moving and storing a PCA
 - Keep PCA in a conductive case, anti-static bag, or wrapped in aluminum foil.
 - Do not store a PCA where it is exposed to direct sunlight.
- Precautions when replacing a PCA
 - Disconnect power cables before disconnecting other cables.

- Do not touch any soldered connections, connector terminals, or other electronic parts when handling insulated parts.
- Precautions when checking a PCA
 - Touch a grounded area of the printer chassis to discharge static electric charge before touching a PCA.
 - Do not touch a PCA with bare hands or metal objects. Doing so might create a short circuit or cause electric shock. Use caution when handling a PCA with moving parts such as sensors, motors, or lamps, as they might become very hot.
 - Use caution when fitting and removing screws. Watch for hidden screens. Make sure that the correct screw is used and make sure that when toothed washers are removed, they are refitted in their original positions.
 - Place the product on an ESD workstation or mat, or use an ESD strap (if one is available). If an ESD workstation, mat, or strap is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis *before* touching an ESD-sensitive part.

Releasing plastic latches

Many of the parts are held in place with plastic latches. The latches might easily break. Be careful when releasing them. To remove such parts, press the hook end of the latch away from the part to which it is latched.

Before performing service

Learn what to do before performing service.

- Press the power button on the front of the printer, and then turn off the power switch next to the power cable.
- Unplug the power cable and interface cable or cables.
- Remove any finishing devices and the side HCI, if they are installed.
- Place the product on an ESD workstation or mat, or use an ESD strap (if one is available). If an ESD workstation, mat, or strap is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis *before* touching an ESD-sensitive part.
- Remove the toner cartridges, if needed.

After performing service

Learn what to do after performing service.

- Verify that the service performed was successful.
- Verify that the most recent firmware is installed on the printer.
- Verify that all parts are correctly reinstalled and are properly working.
- Print any pages necessary to verify that the repair resolved the issue and did not create any new issues.
- Verify that the printer is in better condition than when you arrived, cosmetically and electrically.

Post-service test

Perform the following tests to verify that the repair or replacement was successful:

Print-quality test

Learn about the print-quality test.

1. Verify that you have completed the necessary reassembly steps.
2. Make sure that the tray contains clean, unmarked paper.
3. Attach the power cord and interface cable or interface cables, and then turn on the product.
4. Print a configuration page.
5. Print a print quality page, and then verify that there are no lines, streaks, banding, or other print quality defects.
6. Send a print job from the host computer, and then verify that the output meets expectations.

Copy-quality test

Learn about the copy-quality test.

1. Place the configuration page in the document feeder, print a copy job, and then verify the results.
2. Place the configuration page on the flatbed glass, print a copy job, and then verify the results

Fax-quality test

Learn about the fax-quality test.

1. Place the configuration page in the document feeder.
2. Type a valid fax number, and send the fax job.
3. Verify that the send quality and the receive quality meet expectations.

Parts removal order

For procedures and/or steps that require identifying the right, left, or rear side of the printer, face the front of the printer for correct orientation.

Base printer

Learn about base printer parts removal and replacement.

Covers

Learn about base printer cover replacement.

Base covers

Review the base cover removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Rear upper cover

Learn about removing and replacing the rear upper cover.

Mean time to repair: 4 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-2 Part information

Part number	Part description
6EQ94-40014	Rear upper cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

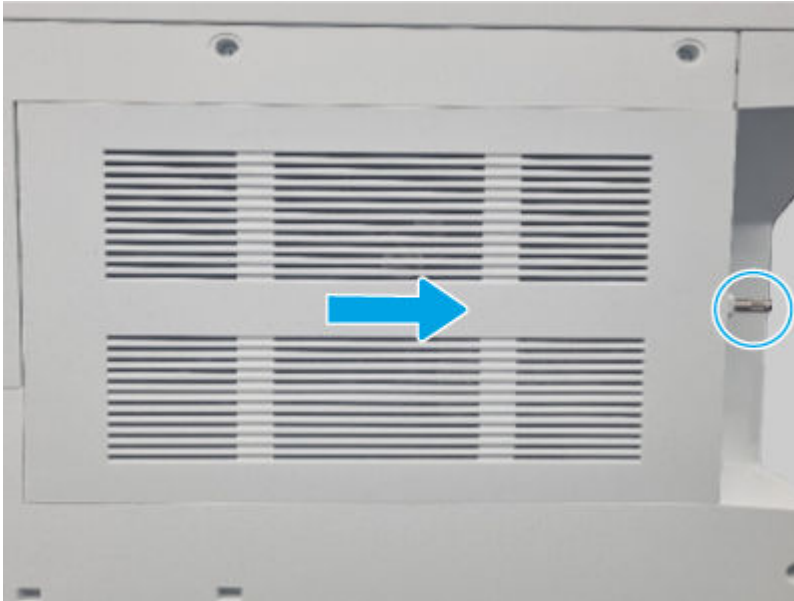
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-1 Remove the cover



2. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

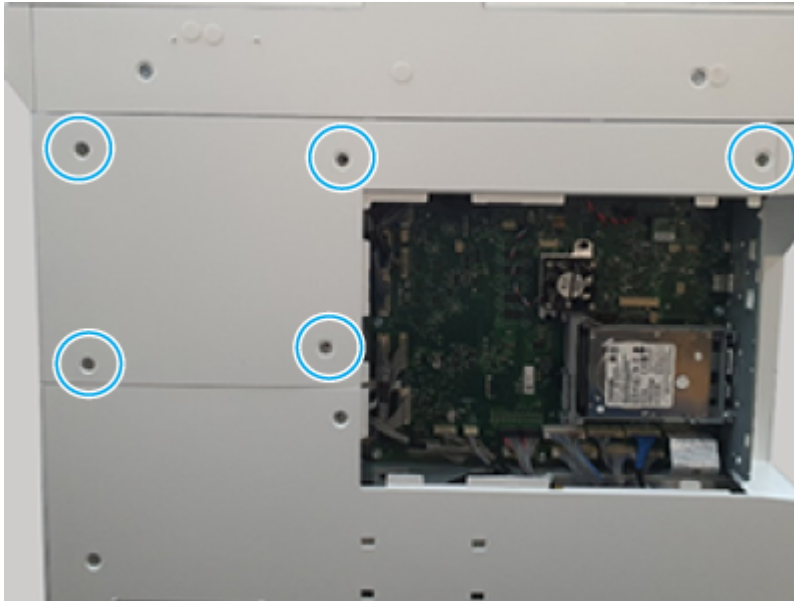
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-2 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-3 Remove the cover



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Rear lower cover

Learn about removing and replacing the rear lower cover.

Mean time to repair: 4 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-3 Part information

Part number	Part description
6EQ94-40021	Rear lower cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

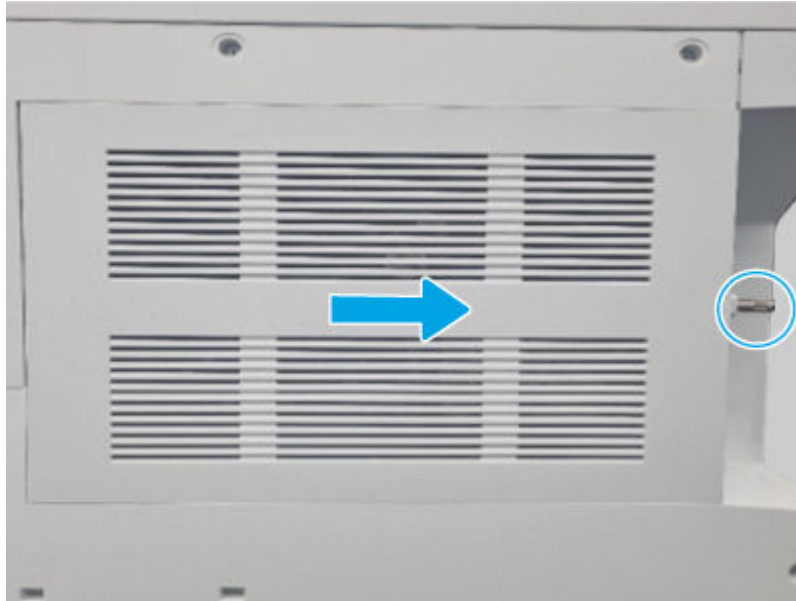
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-4 Remove the cover



Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

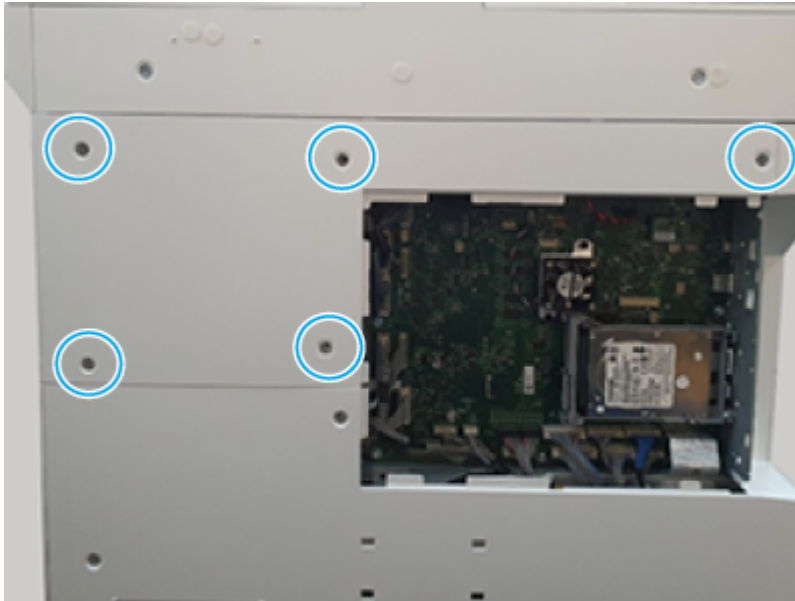
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-5 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-6 Remove the cover



Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove six screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-7 Remove the cover



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Controller cover

Learn about removing and replacing the controller cover.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the controller cover.](#)


Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-4 Part information

Part number	Part description
6ER04-61005	Controller cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

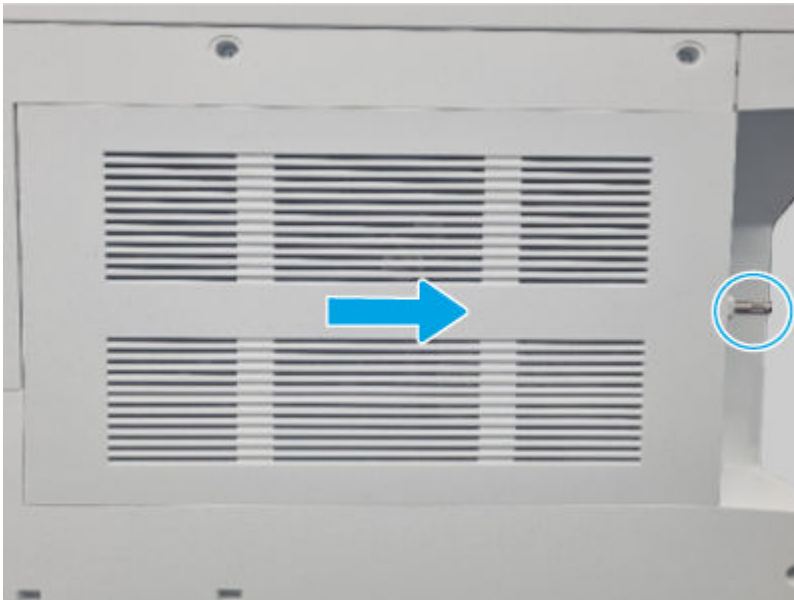
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-8 Remove the cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.


<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.




CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly.

Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Exit rear cover

Learn about removing and replacing the exit rear cover.


Mean time to repair: 4 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-5 Part information

Part number	Part description
6EQ94-40009	Exit rear cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

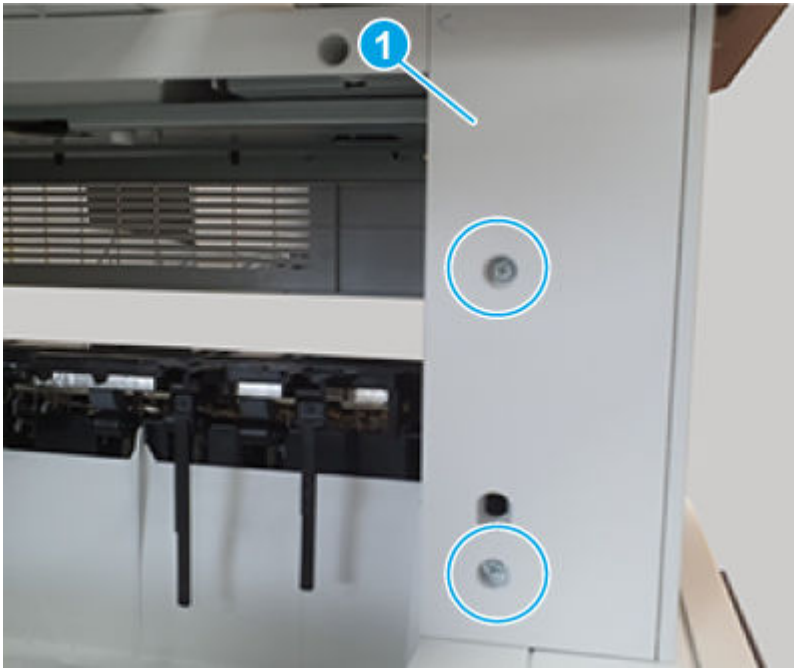
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the middle left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the middle left cover.

- Remove two screws, rotate the control panel into the upright position, and then remove the cover (callout 1).

Figure 6-9 Remove the cover



2. Remove the exit cover stacker

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the exit cover stacker.

- Remove two screw caps and remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the exit cover stacker (callout 2).

Figure 6-10 Remove the cover

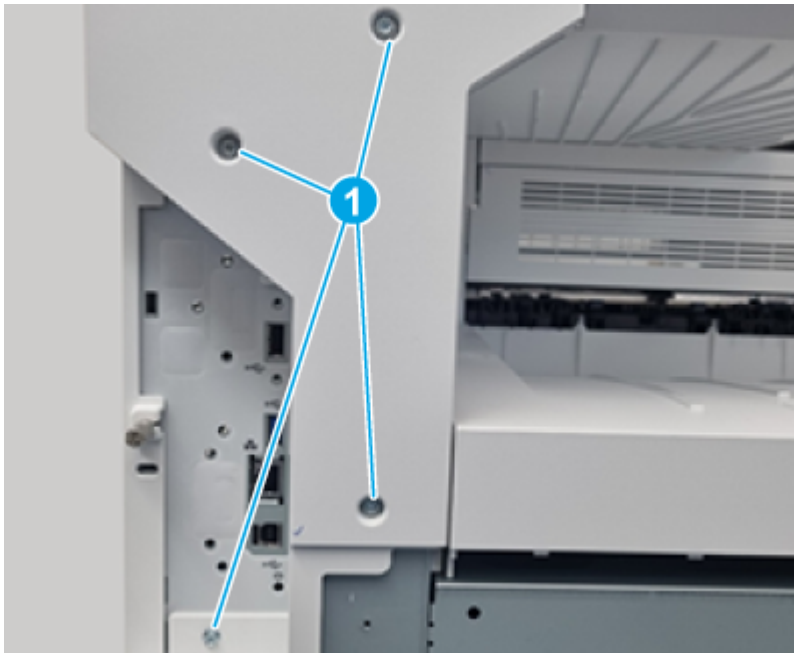


3. Remove the left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left top cover.

- Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-11 Remove the cover



4. Remove the exit rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the exit rear cover.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-12 Remove the cover



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Left top cover

Learn about removing and replacing the left top cover.


Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-6 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC63-04534B	Left top cover

Required tools

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the left top over

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left top cover.

- Use a pair of tweezers to carefully release the cover, and then pull straight out to remove the cover.


 **Reinstallation tip:** Position the cover on the printer, and then gently push it straight in to install it.

Figure 6-13 Remove the cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Left upper cover

Learn about removing and replacing the left upper cover.


Mean time to repair: 4 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-7 Part information

Part number	Part description
6EQ94-40012	Left upper cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the left top over

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left top cover.

- Use a pair of tweezers to carefully release the cover, and then pull straight out to remove the cover.

 **Reinstallation tip:** Position the cover on the printer, and then gently push it straight in to install it.

Figure 6-14 Remove the cover



2. Remove the left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left cover.

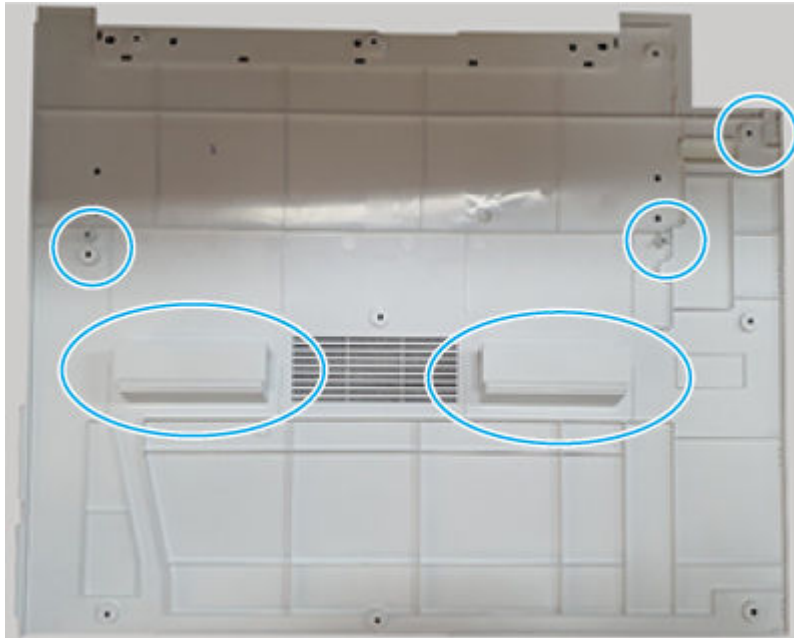
1. Open the front cover (door) and all installed trays.
2. Remove ten screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-15 Remove ten screws



3. Before proceeding, take note of the location of the mounting hooks on the inside of the cover.

Figure 6-16 Cover hook locations



4. Release the cover from the right to left side as shown below. Remove the cover.

Figure 6-17 Remove the cover

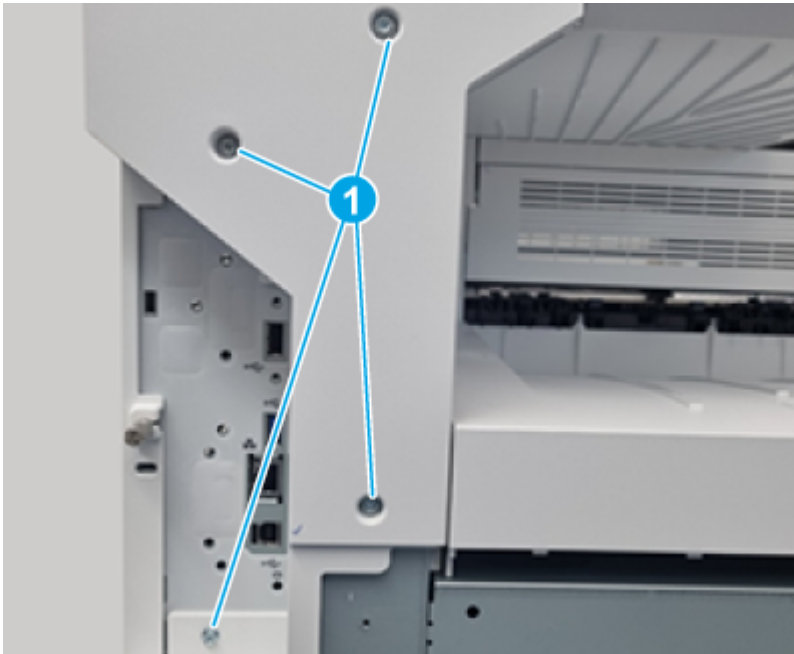


3. Remove the left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left top cover.

- Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-18 Remove the cover



Removal and replacement: Left cover

Learn about removing and replacing the left upper cover.

Mean time to repair: 4 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-8 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ98-60104	Left cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the left top over

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left top cover.

- Use a pair of tweezers to carefully release the cover, and then pull straight out to remove the cover.


 **Reinstallation tip:** Position the cover on the printer, and then gently push it straight in to install it.

Figure 6-19 Remove the cover



2. Remove the left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left cover.

1. Open the front cover (door) and all installed trays.

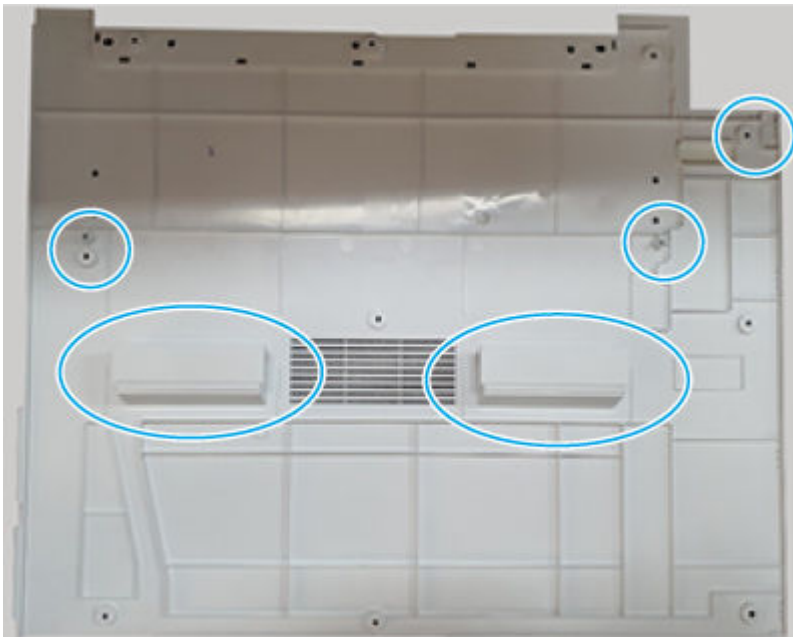
2. Remove ten screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-20 Remove ten screws



3. Before proceeding, take note of the location of the mounting hooks on the inside of the cover.

Figure 6-21 Cover hook locations



4. Release the cover from the right to left side as shown below. Remove the cover.

Figure 6-22 Remove the cover



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Middle upper cover

Learn about removing and replacing the middle upper cover.


Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-9 Part information

Part number	Part description
6EQ94-40017	Middle upper cover

Required tools

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

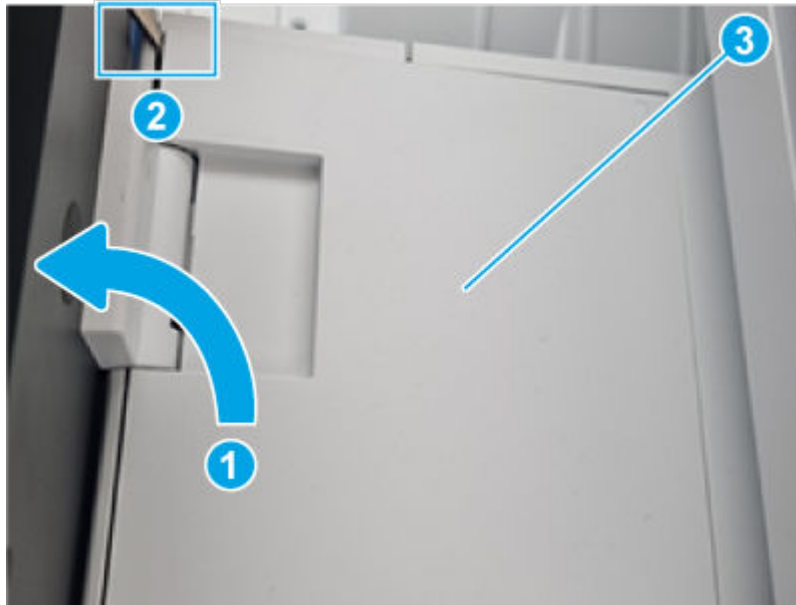
1. Remove the middle upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the middle upper cover.

- Do the following:
 - Rotate the control panel into the upright position (callout 1).
 - Use a pair of tweezers to release the cover (callout 2), and then remove the cover (callout 3).

 **Reinstallation tip:** Position the cover on the printer, and then gently push it straight in to install it.

Figure 6-23 Remove the cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Right upper cover

Learn about removing and replacing the right upper cover.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-10 Part information

Part number	Part description
6EQ94-40015	Right upper cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right middle cover assembly.

1. Remove two screws from the middle left cover as shown.

Figure 6-24 Remove two screws



2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-25 Remove one screw



3. Open the right door and remove one screw.

Figure 6-26 Open the right door and remove screw



4. Lay the control panel down, and then slide the cover as shown below to separate it from the printer.

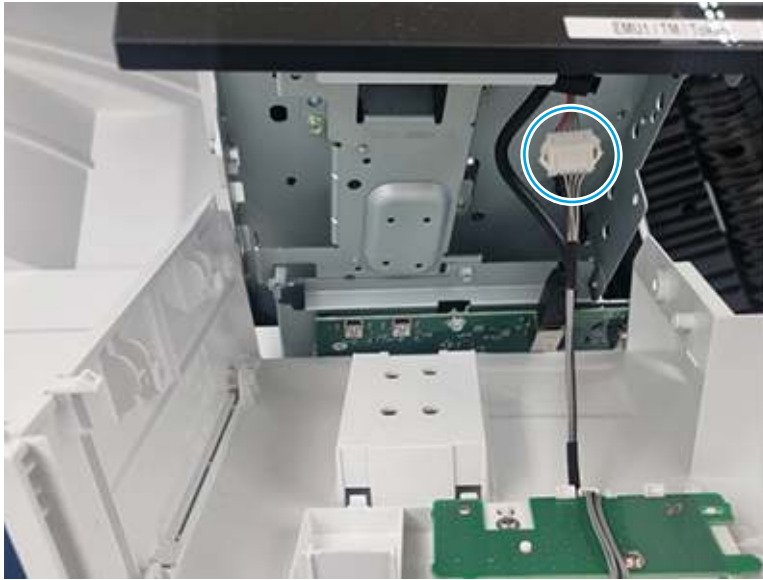
CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the cover. It is still attached to the printer by a wire harness.

Figure 6-27 Slide the cover



5. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the right middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-28 Disconnect the connector



2. Remove the right upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right upper cover.

1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-29 Remove four screws



3. Remove one screw (circled), and then carefully slide the cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-30 Remove the cover



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Right rear cover

Learn about removing and replacing the right rear cover.

Mean time to repair: 4 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-11 Part information

Part number	Part description
6EQ94-40023	Right rear cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right rear cover.

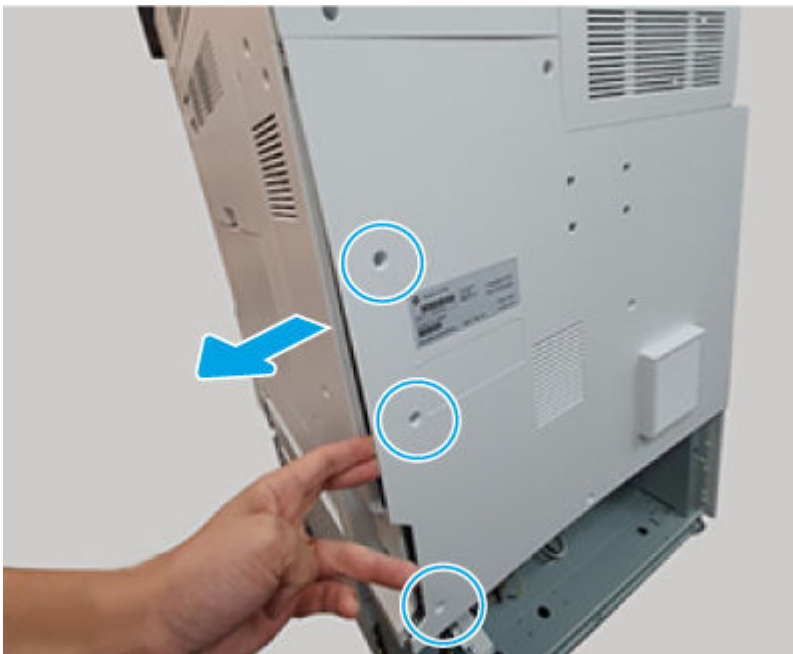
1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-31 Remove three screws



2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove three rear lower cover screws.
 - b. Slightly separate the rear lower cover from the printer.
 - c. Open the right door, and then remove the right rear cover.

Figure 6-32 Remove the cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Right front cover

Learn about removing and replacing the right front cover.

Mean time to repair: 4 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-12 Part information

Part number	Part description
6EQ94-40022	Right front cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right front cover.

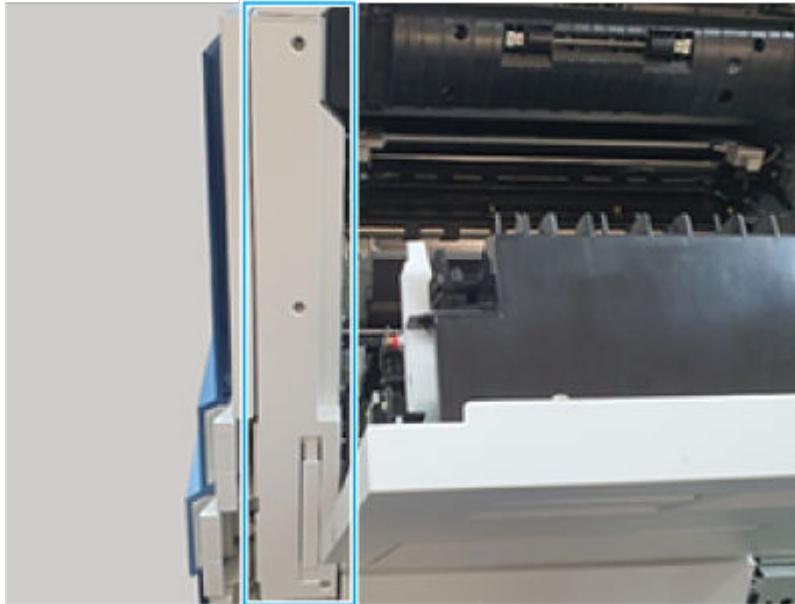
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-33 Remove three screws



2. Open the right door, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-34 Remove the cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Right middle cover assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the right middle cover assembly.

Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-13 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ90-60114	Right middle cover assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right middle cover assembly.

1. Remove two screws from the middle left cover as shown.

Figure 6-35 Remove two screws



2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-36 Remove one screw



3. Open the right door and remove one screw.

Figure 6-37 Open the right door and remove screw



4. Lay the control panel down, and then slide the cover as shown below to separate it from the printer.

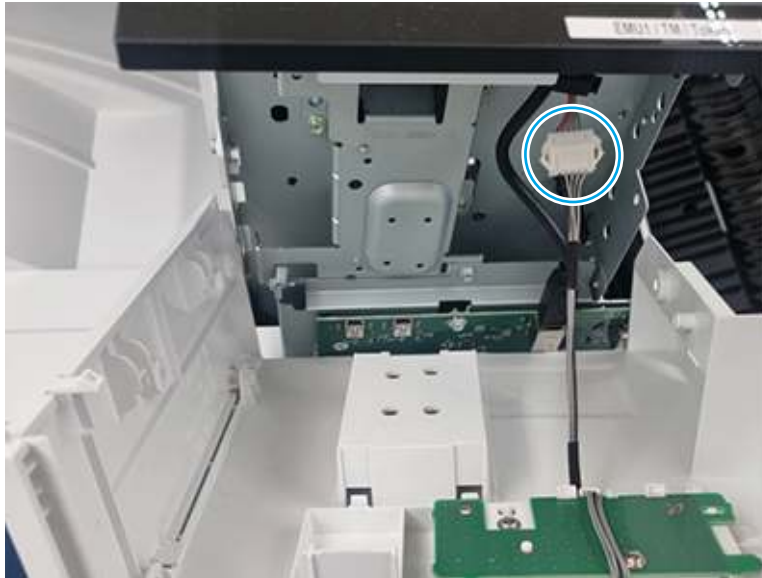
CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the cover. It is still attached to the printer by a wire harness.

Figure 6-38 Slide the cover



5. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the right middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-39 Disconnect the connector



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Right middle cover

Learn about removing and replacing the right middle cover.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-14 Part information

Part number	Part description
6EQ94-40013	Right middle cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right middle cover assembly.

1. Remove two screws from the middle left cover as shown.

Figure 6-40 Remove two screws



2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-41 Remove one screw



3. Open the right door and remove one screw.

Figure 6-42 Open the right door and remove screw



4. Lay the control panel down, and then slide the cover as shown below to separate it from the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the cover. It is still attached to the printer by a wire harness.

Figure 6-43 Slide the cover



5. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the right middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-44 Disconnect the connector



2. Remove the right middle cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right middle cover.

- Remove two screws, and then remove the right middle cover.

Figure 6-45 Remove the cover



3. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Power key

Learn about removing and replacing the power key.


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-15 Part information

Part number	Part description
6EQ94-40029	Power key

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right middle cover assembly.

1. Remove two screws from the middle left cover as shown.

Figure 6-46 Remove two screws



2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-47 Remove one screw



3. Open the right door and remove one screw.

Figure 6-48 Open the right door and remove screw



4. Lay the control panel down, and then slide the cover as shown below to separate it from the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the cover. It is still attached to the printer by a wire harness.

Figure 6-49 Slide the cover



5. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the right middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-50 Disconnect the connector



2. Remove the power key

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right middle cover assembly.

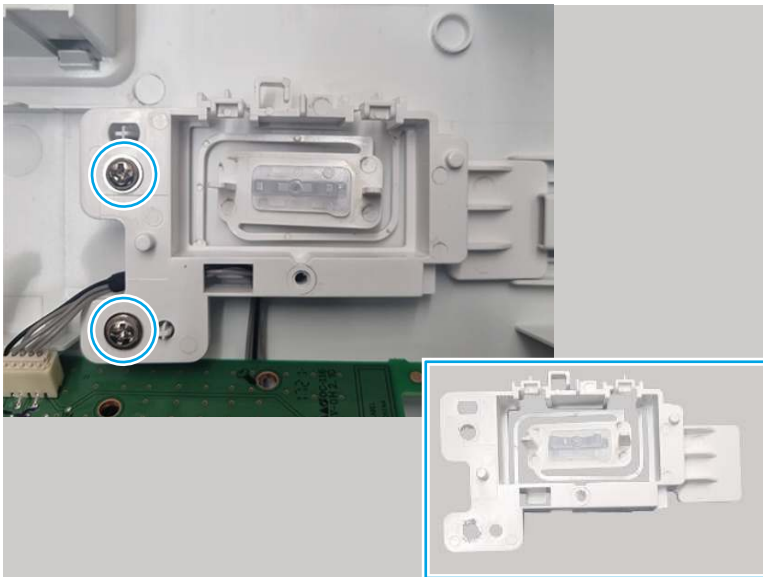
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-51 Remove one screw



2. Disconnect the power key PCA, remove two screws, and then remove the power key.

Figure 6-52 Remove the power key



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Hardware integration pocket (HIP) cover

Learn about removing and replacing the HIP cover.


Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-16 Part Information

Part number	Part description
6EQ94-40032	Hardware integration pocket (HIP) cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HIP cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HIP cover.

- Use a pair of tweezers to release the cover. Remove the cover.

 **TIP:** Position the tweezers as shown below.

 **Reinstallation tip:** Position the cover on the printer, and then gently push it straight in to install it.


Figure 6-53 Remove the cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Middle left cover

Learn about removing and replacing the middle left cover.


Mean time to repair: 4 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-17 Part Information

Part number	Part description
6EQ94-40031	Middle left cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the middle left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the middle left cover.

- Remove two screws, rotate the control panel into the upright position, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-54 Remove the cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Exit cover stacker

Learn about removing and replacing the exit cover stacker.

Mean time to repair: 4 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-18 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ90-60116	Exit cover stacker

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the middle left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the middle left cover.

- Remove two screws, rotate the control panel into the upright position, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-55 Remove the cover



2. Remove the exit cover stacker

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the exit cover stacker.

- Remove two screw caps and remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the exit cover stacker (callout 2).

Figure 6-56 Remove the cover



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Inner cover

Learn about removing and replacing the inner cover.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service



NOTE: Before turning the printer power off, use the control panel method to remove the toner cartridges. See the instructions in this section.

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-19 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ98-60105	Inner cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.
- Reinstall the toner cartridge.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the toner cartridge (control panel method)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the toner cartridge.

- At the printer control panel, do the following:
 - a. Select the [Sign In](#) item (located at the upper left corner of the control panel).
 - b. Select the [Service Access Code](#) item, and then enter the access code for the printer.
 - 03073122
 - c. Select the [Supplies](#) item.
 - d. Open the front door.
 - e. Select the [Eject](#) button  (located at the bottom right corner of the control panel).

2. Remove the right middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right middle cover assembly.

1. Remove two screws from the middle left cover as shown.

Figure 6-57 Remove two screws



2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-58 Remove one screw



3. Open the right door and remove one screw.

Figure 6-59 Open the right door and remove screw



4. Lay the control panel down, and then slide the cover as shown below to separate it from the printer.

CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the cover. It is still attached to the printer by a wire harness.

Figure 6-60 Slide the cover



5. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the right middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-61 Disconnect the connector



3. Remove the exit cover stacker

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the exit cover stacker.

- Remove two screw caps and remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the exit cover stacker (callout 2).

Figure 6-62 Remove the cover



4. Remove the front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the front cover.

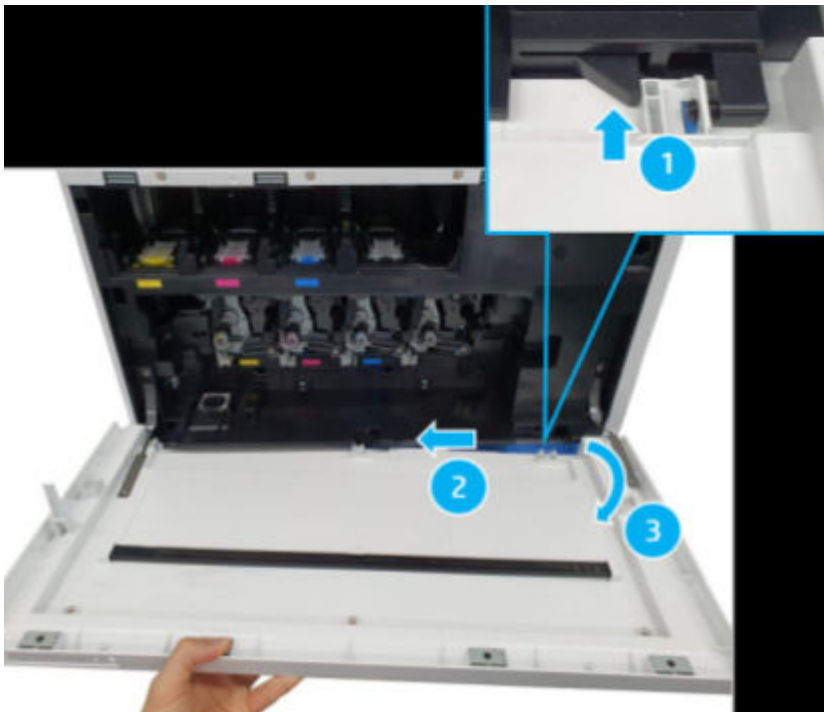
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-63 Remove two screws



2. Push in on the hook located at the right side of the cover (callout 1), and then remove the cover (callouts 2/3).

Figure 6-64 Remove the cover



5. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the TCU.

- Open the front door assembly. Push on each tab on the sides of the toner collection unit to release it, and then pull it straight out of the printer.

Figure 6-65 Remove the TCU

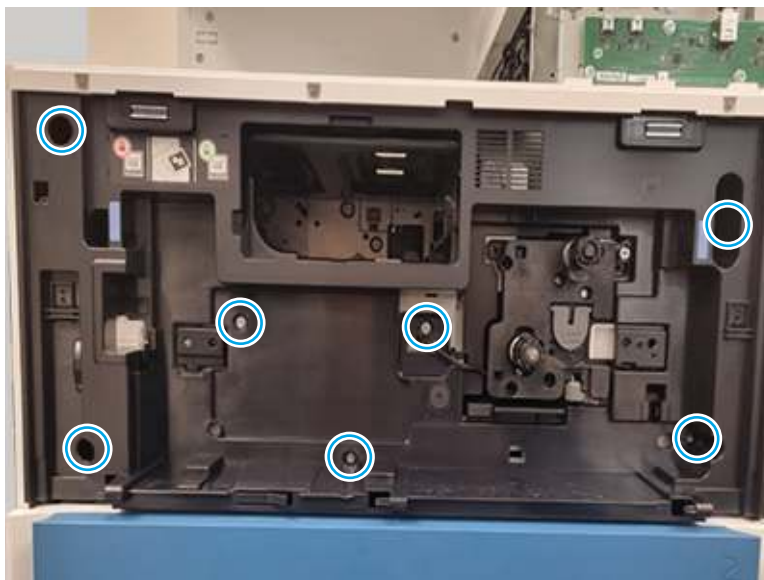


6. Remove the inner cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner cover.

1. Remove seven screws from the inner cover.


Figure 6-66 Remove seven screws



2. Remove the cover carefully, and disconnect the connector.

Figure 6-67 Disconnect the connector




 **NOTE:** Be careful not to damage the wire harness.

7. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Front lower cover

Learn about removing and replacing the front lower cover.

Mean time to repair: 4 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-20 Part information

Part number	Part description
6EQ94-40011	Front lower cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right front cover.

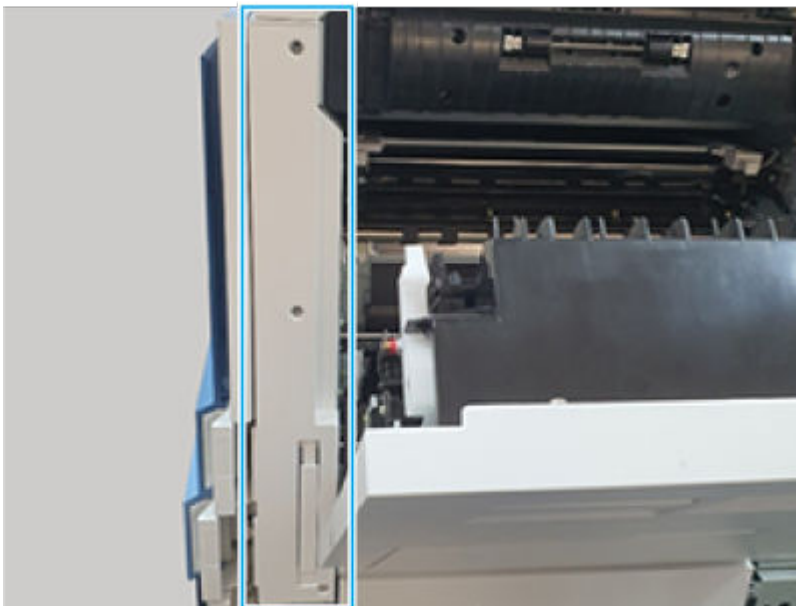
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-68 Remove three screws



2. Open the right door, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-69 Remove the cover



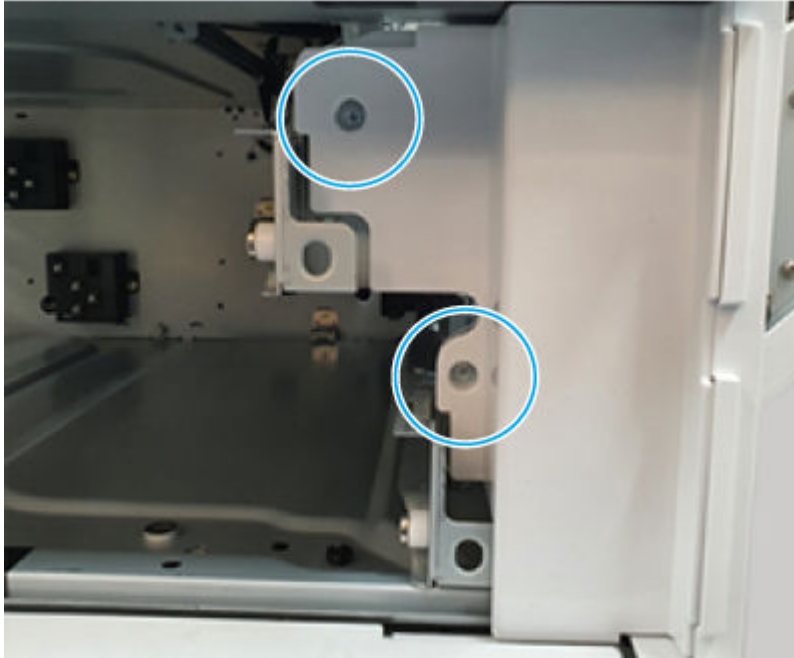
2. Remove the front lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the front lower cover.

1. If Tray 2 and Tray 3 are installed, remove them now.

2. Remove two screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-70 Remove the cover



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Front cover assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the front cover.

Mean time to repair: 4 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-21 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ98-60106	Front cover assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the front cover.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-71 Remove two screws



2. Push in on the hook located at the right side of the cover (callout 1), and then remove the cover (callout 2).

Figure 6-72 Remove the cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tie stoppers

Learn about removing and replacing the front door tie stoppers.


Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-22 Part Information

Part number	Part description
JC61-04626A	Tie stopper

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the tie stoppers

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the front cover tie stoppers.

- Remove the four screws that secure the tie stoppers, and then remove them from the printer.

Figure 6-73 Remove four screws



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.




IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using

disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Front cover assembly - CMF panel

Learn about removing and replacing the front cover CMF panel.


Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-23 Part Information

Part number	Part description
6EQ94-40018	Front cover - CMF panel

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the front cover.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-74 Remove two screws



2. Push in on the hook located at the right side of the cover (callout 1), and then remove the cover (callout 2).

Figure 6-75 Remove the cover



2. Remove the front cover - CMF panel

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the front cover CMF panel.

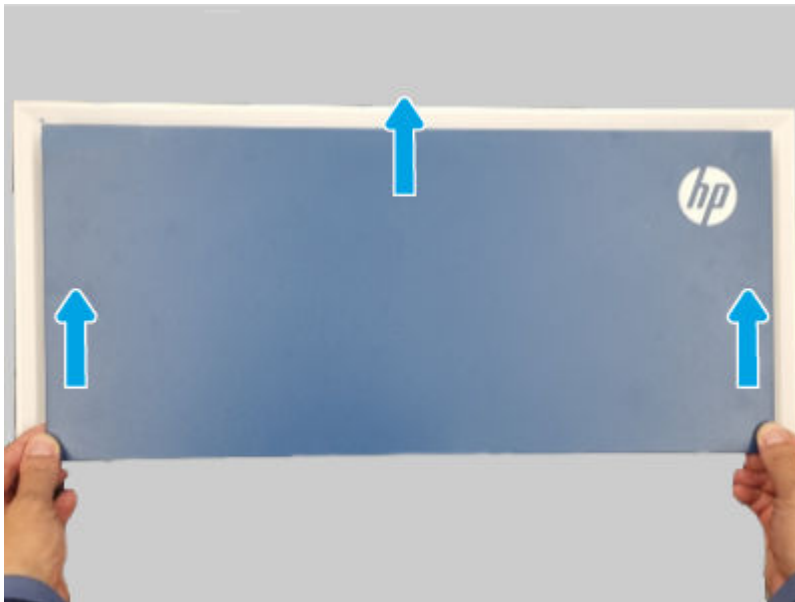
1. Turn the cover over, and then remove one screw.

Figure 6-76 Remove one screw



2. With the panel face up, grasp the panel corners, and then push it up to remove it.

Figure 6-77 Remove the panel



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 2, 3 color panel

Learn about removing and replacing the Tray 2 or Tray 3 color panel.


Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-24 Part Information

Part number	Part description
5QJ90-40022	Tray 2 color panel
5QJ94-40016	Tray 3 color panel

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

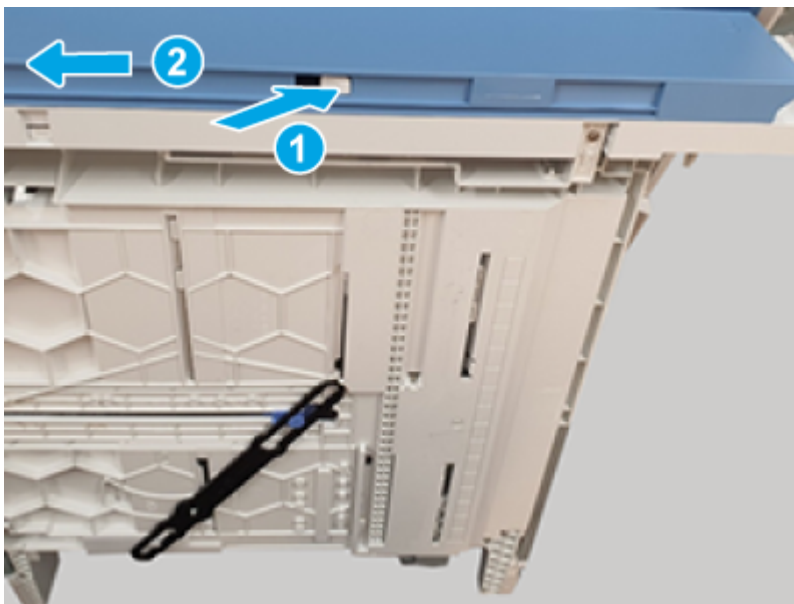
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the Tray 2, 3 color panel

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 2, 3 color panel.

1. Remove the Tray 2 or Tray 3 cassette from the printer.
2. Push in on the hook, and then slide the panel as shown below to release it. Remove the color panel.

Figure 6-78 Remove the panel



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.


<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.




CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Exit stacker upper cover

Learn about removing and replacing the exit stacker upper cover.


Mean time to repair: 4 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-25 Part Information

Part number	Part description
6EQ94-40010	Exit stacker upper cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right middle cover assembly.

1. Remove two screws from the middle left cover as shown.

Figure 6-79 Remove two screws



2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-80 Remove one screw



3. Open the right door and remove one screw.

Figure 6-81 Open the right door and remove screw



4. Lay the control panel down, and then slide the cover as shown below to separate it from the printer.

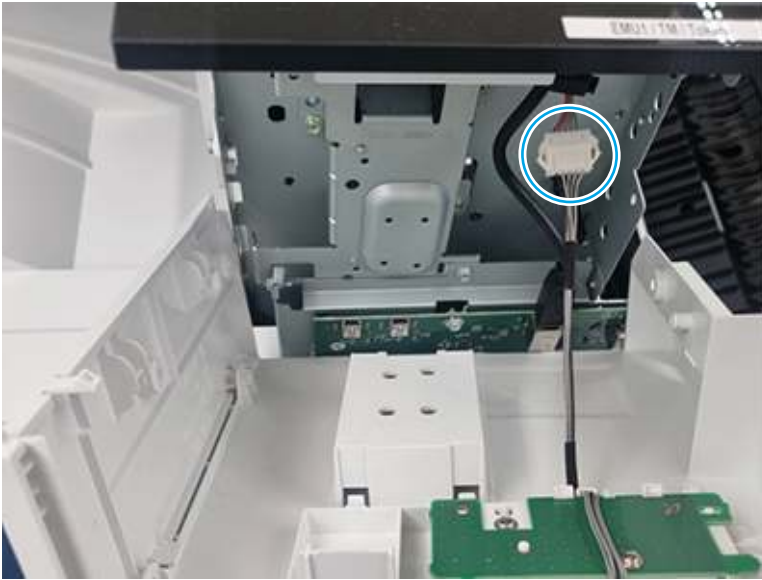
CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the cover. It is still attached to the printer by a wire harness.

Figure 6-82 Slide the cover



5. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the right middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-83 Disconnect the connector



2. Remove the exit stacker upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the exit stacker upper cover.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the exit stacker upper cover.

Figure 6-84 Remove the cover



3. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Feeding system

Learn about feeding system parts removal and replacement.

Right door assembly

Learn about feeding system right door parts removal and replacement.

Removal and replacement: Right door assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the right door assembly.


Mean time to repair: 4 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-26 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC95-02260A	Right door assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right rear cover.

1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-85 Remove three screws



2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove three rear lower cover screws.
 - b. Slightly separate the rear lower cover from the printer.
 - c. Open the right door, and then remove the right rear cover.

Figure 6-86 Remove the cover



2. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

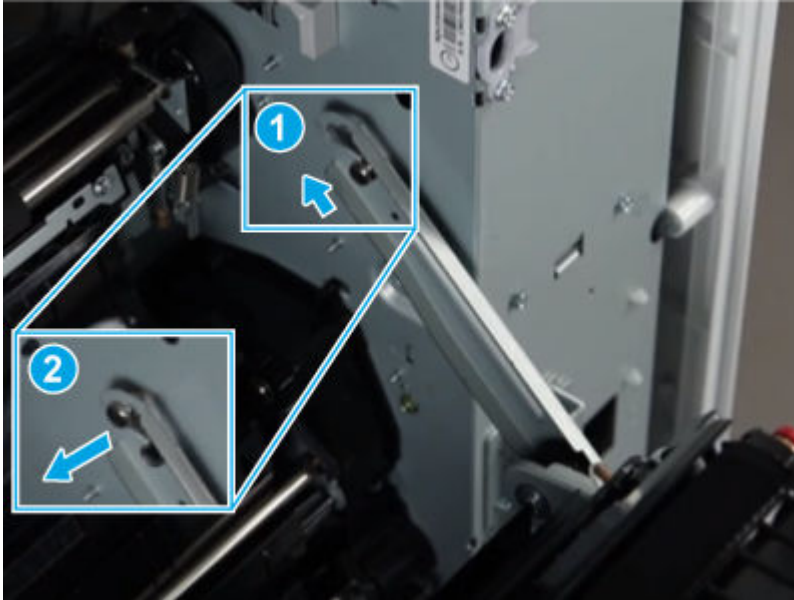
Figure 6-87 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

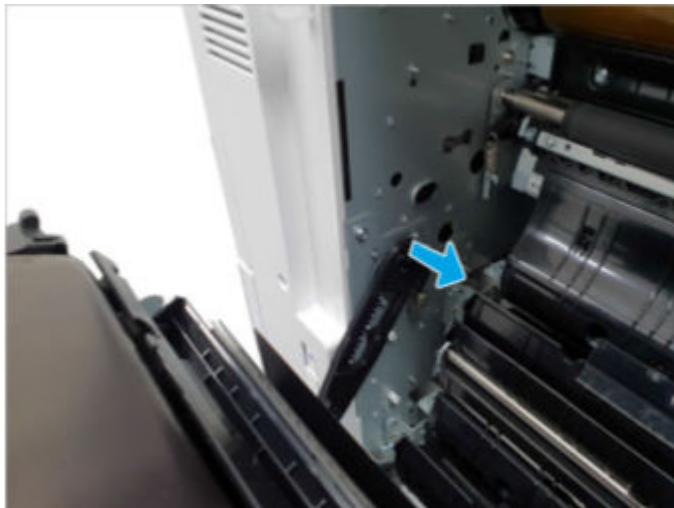
⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-88 Release the hinge



3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-89 Release the link



4. Remove the right door assembly.

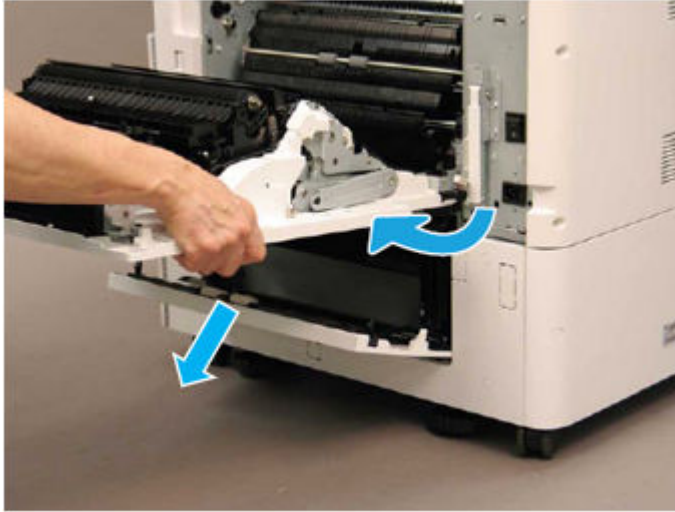


NOTE: If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.

CAUTION: To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-90 Remove the door



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Right door front link

Learn about removing and replacing the right door front link.

Mean time to repair: 4 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-27 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC66-03235A	Right door front link

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

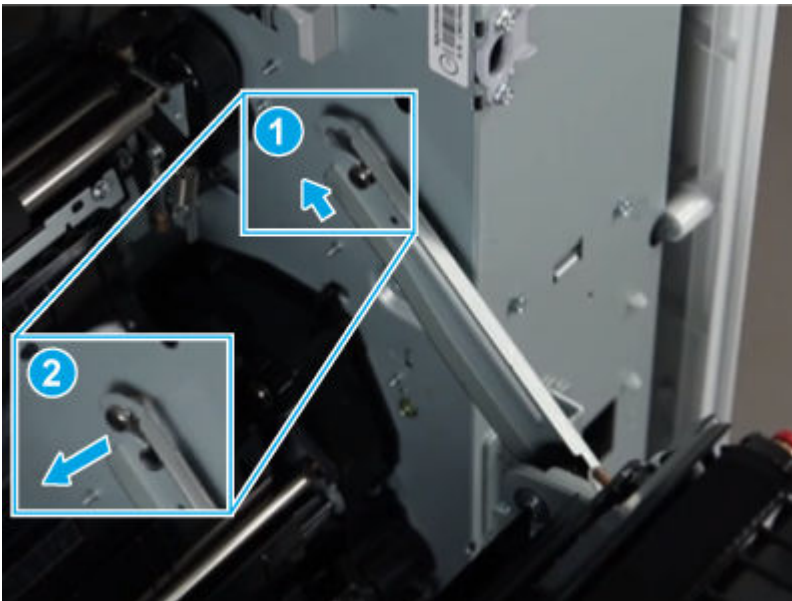
Figure 6-91 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

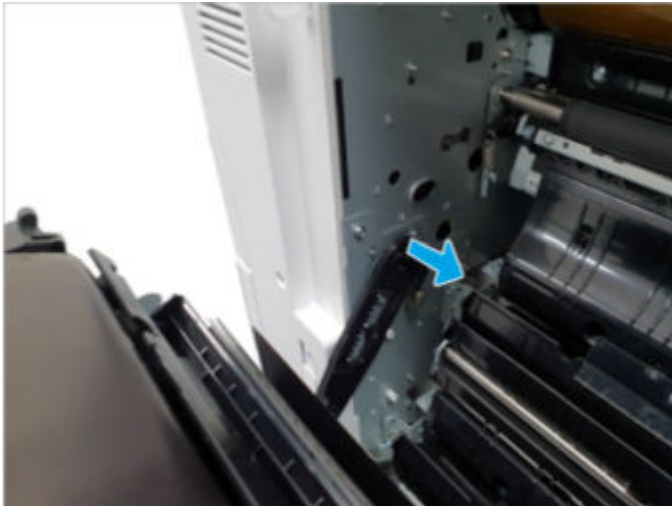
⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-92 Release the hinge



3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-93 Release the link



4. Remove the right door assembly.

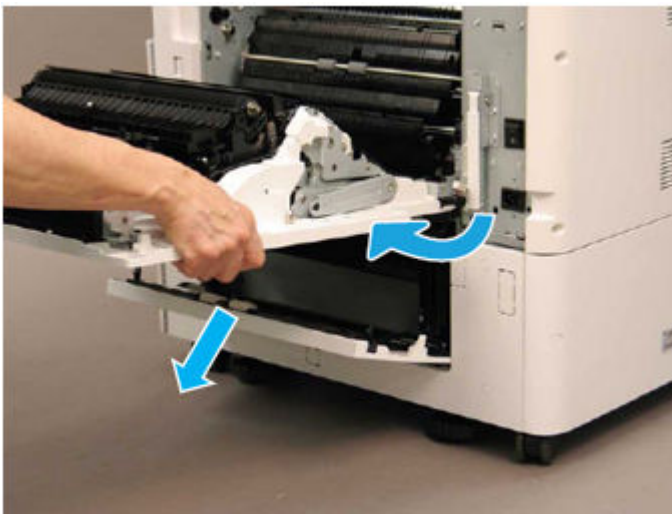


NOTE: If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.

CAUTION: To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-94 Remove the door

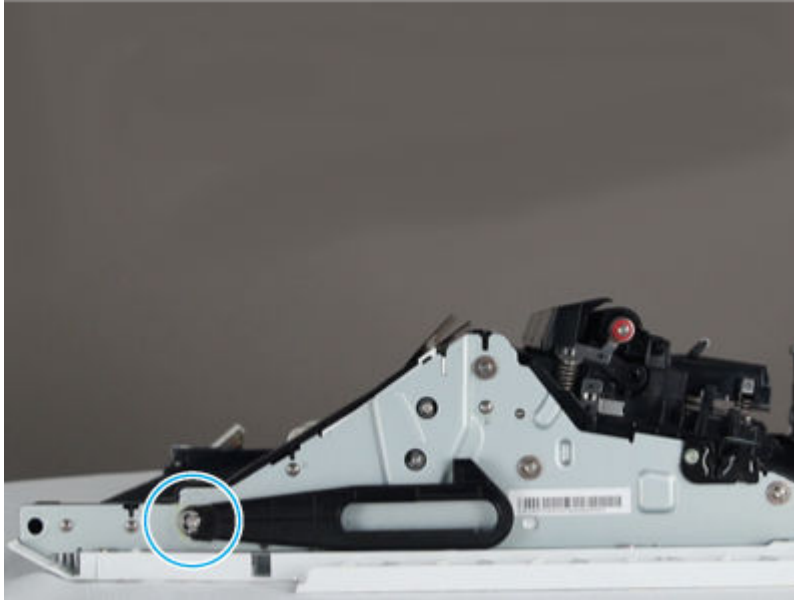


2. Remove the right door front link

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door front link.

- Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, and then remove the right door front link.

Figure 6-95 Remove the door link



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Right door front damper

Learn about removing and replacing the right door front damper.

Mean time to repair: 4 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-28 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC66-01425A	Right door front damper

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

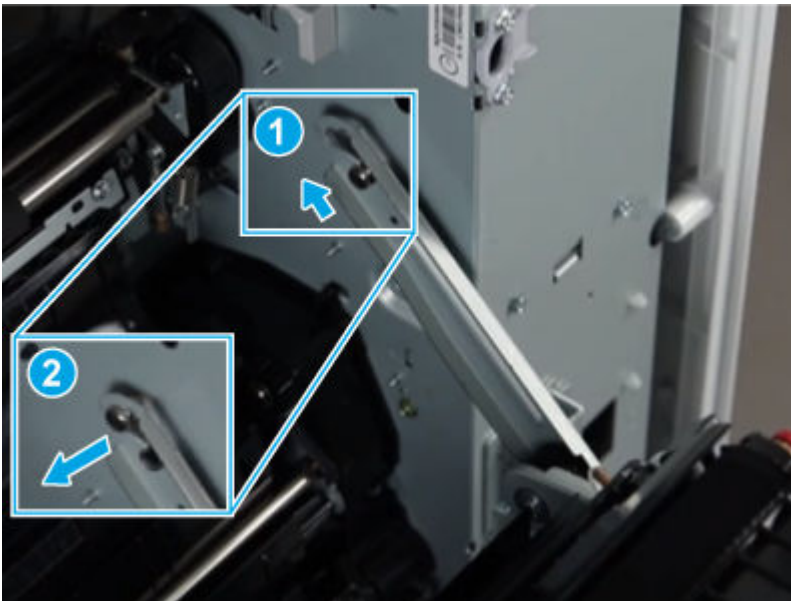
Figure 6-96 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

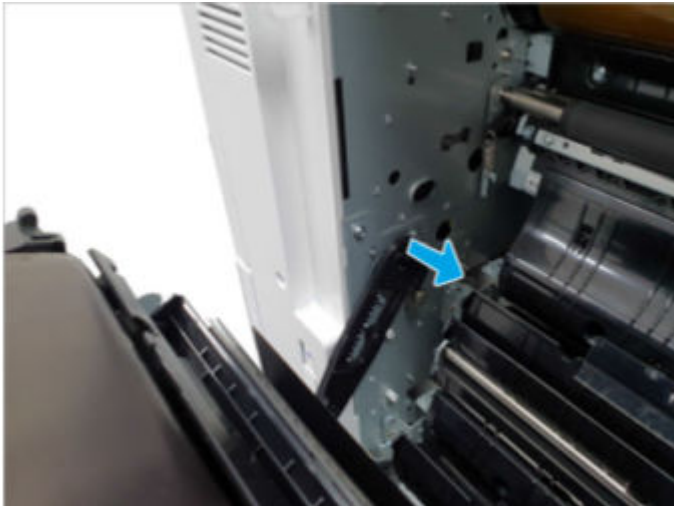
⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-97 Release the hinge



3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-98 Release the link



4. Remove the right door assembly.

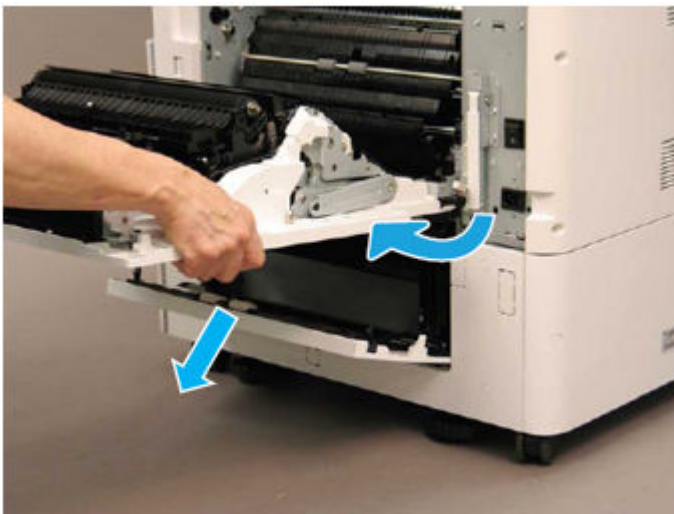


NOTE: If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.

CAUTION: To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-99 Remove the door



2. Remove the right front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right front cover.

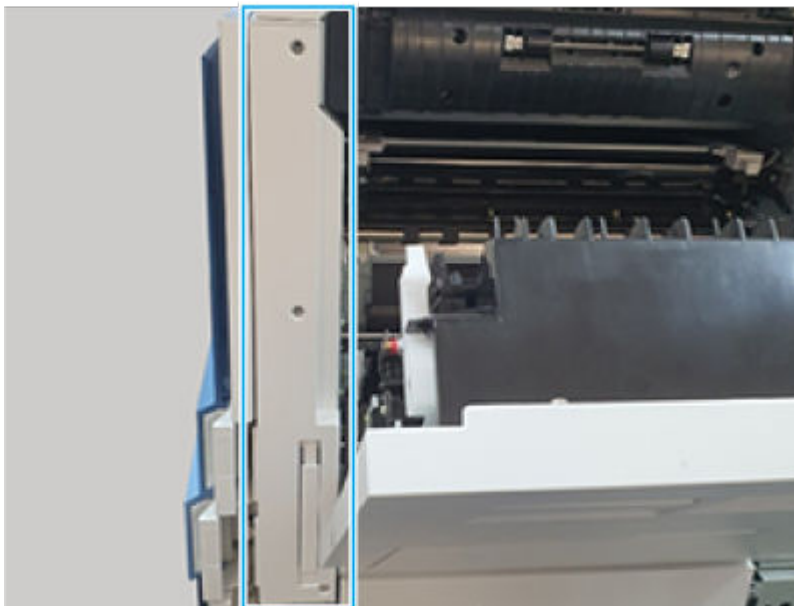
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-100 Remove three screws



2. Open the right door, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-101 Remove the cover



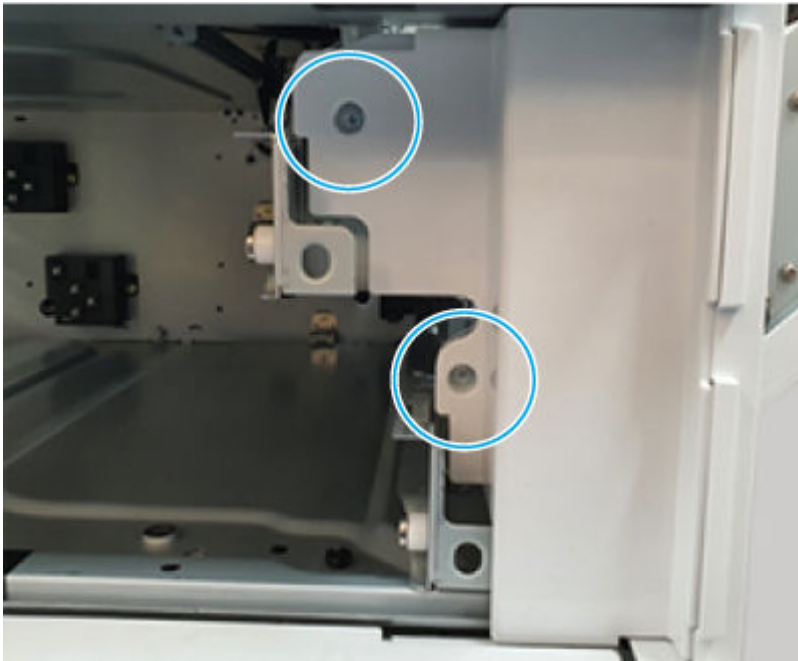
3. Remove the front lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the front lower cover.

1. If Tray 2 and Tray 3 are installed, remove them now.

2. Remove two screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-102 Remove the cover

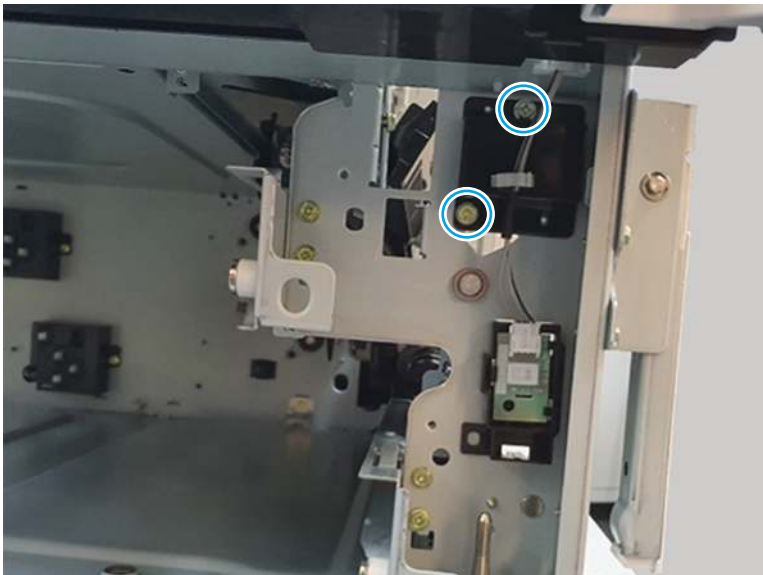


4. Remove the right door front damper

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door front damper.

1. Remove two screws to release the right door front damper.

Figure 6-103 Remove two screws



2. Remove the right door front damper.

Figure 6-104 Remove the right door front damper



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Tray 1 unit

Learn about feeding system Tray 1 unit parts removal and replacement.

Removal and replacement: Tray 1 unit

Learn about removing and replacing the Tray 1 unit.

Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-29 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01869A	Tray 1 unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

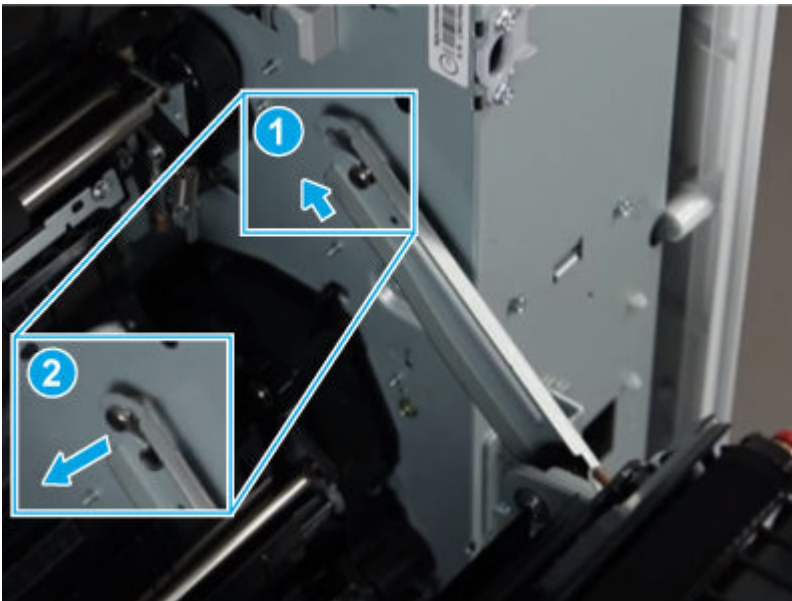
Figure 6-105 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

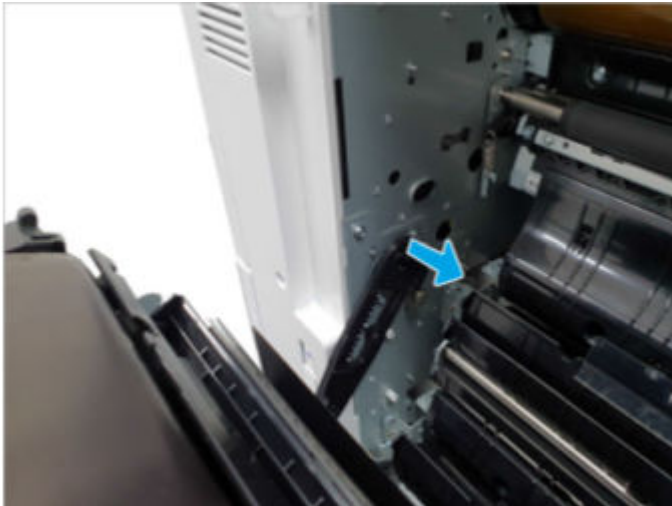
⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-106 Release the hinge



3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-107 Release the link



4. Remove the right door assembly.

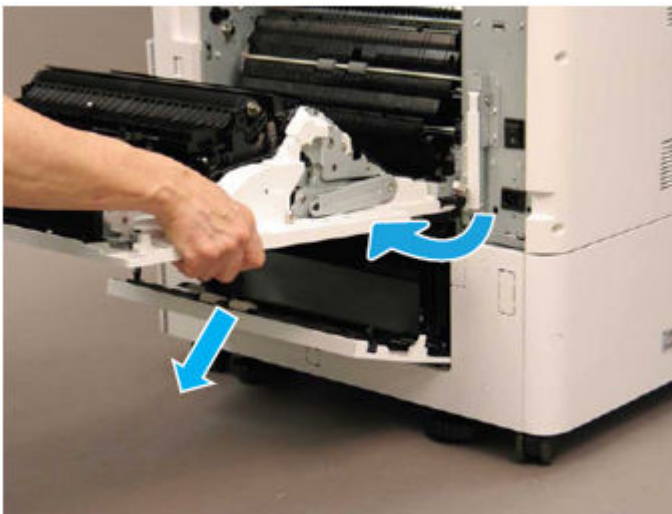


NOTE: If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.

CAUTION: To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-108 Remove the door

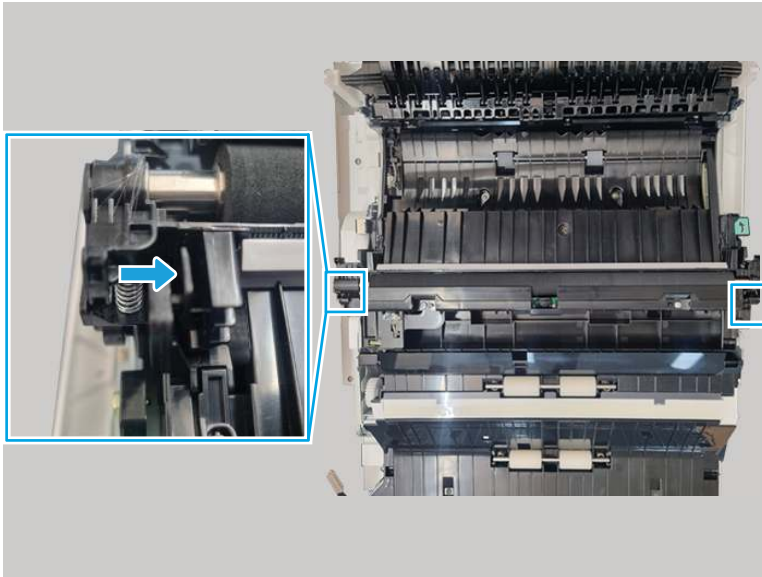


2. Remove the secondary transfer (T2) unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the T2 unit.

1. Lift up the T2 transfer assembly while pushing in the hooks at both ends of the assembly to release it.

Figure 6-109 Release the T2 assembly



2. Disconnect one connector on the back side of the T2 unit, and then remove the unit.



3. Remove the duplex assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the duplex assembly.

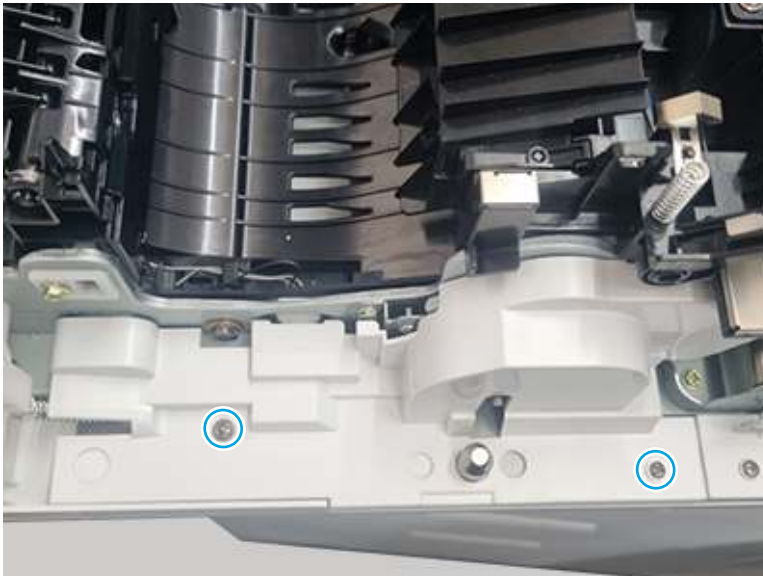
1. Remove one screw, and then remove the holder.

Figure 6-110 Remove one screw



2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-111 Remove two screws



3. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the duplex assembly.

Figure 6-112 Disconnect one connector

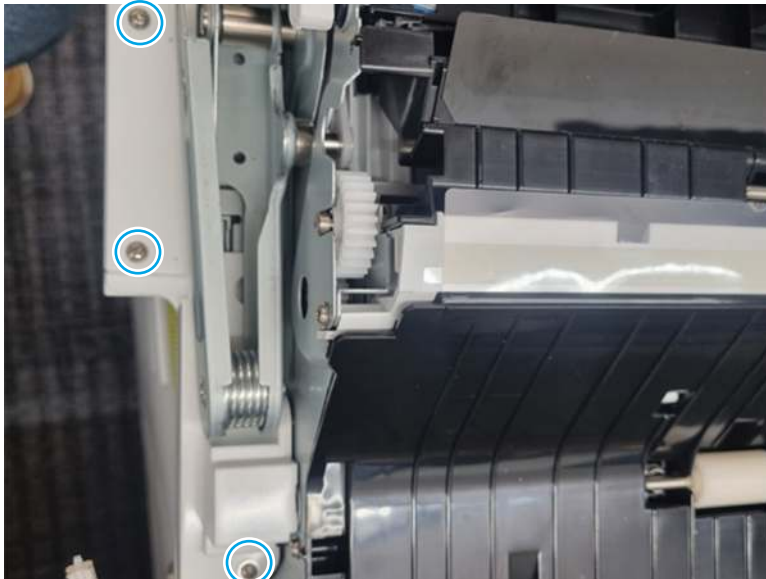


4. Remove the Tray 1 unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 1 unit.

1. Remove three screws and the cover.

Figure 6-113 Remove the cover



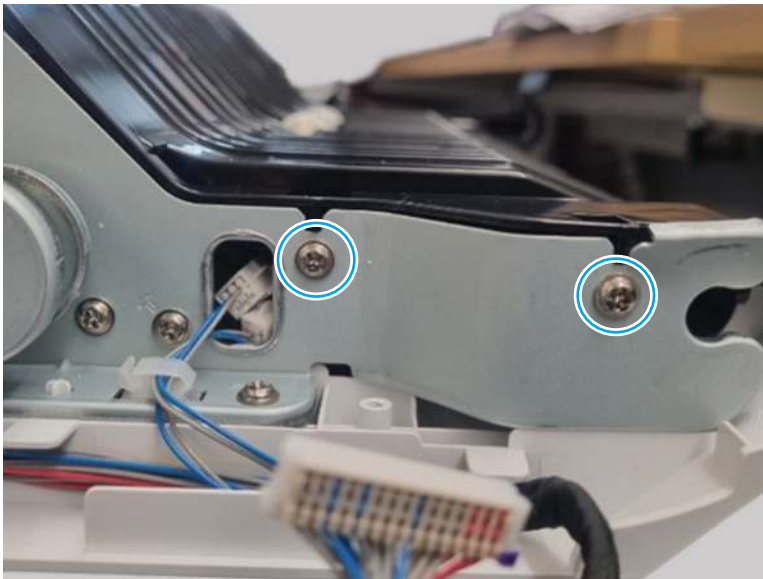
2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-114 Remove one screw



3. Remove four screws (two on each side), and then remove the duplex lower assembly.

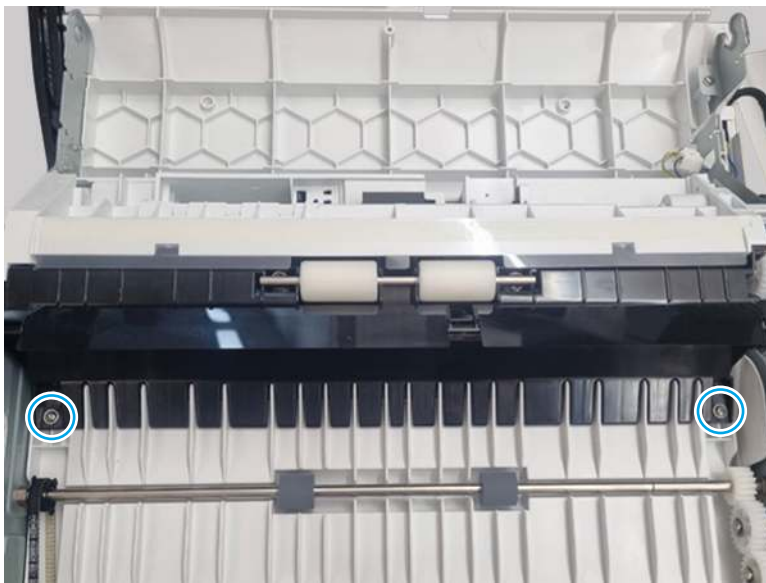
Figure 6-115 Remove four screws





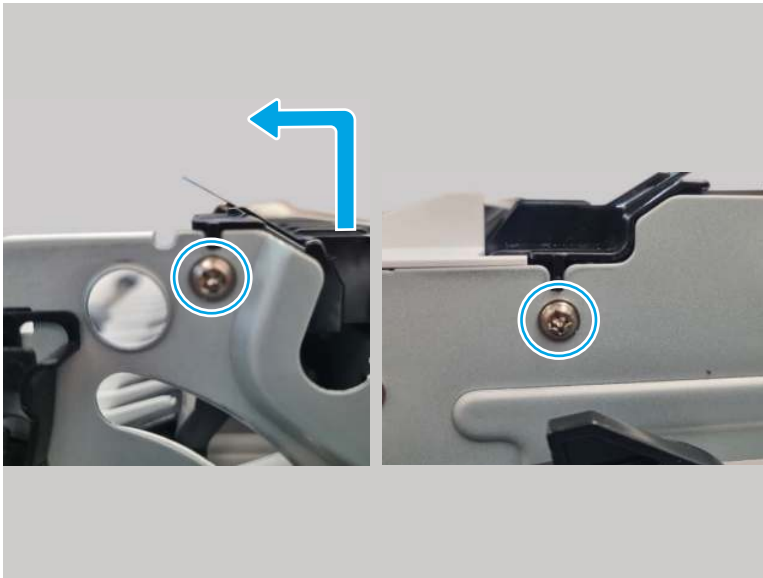
4. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-116 Remove two screws



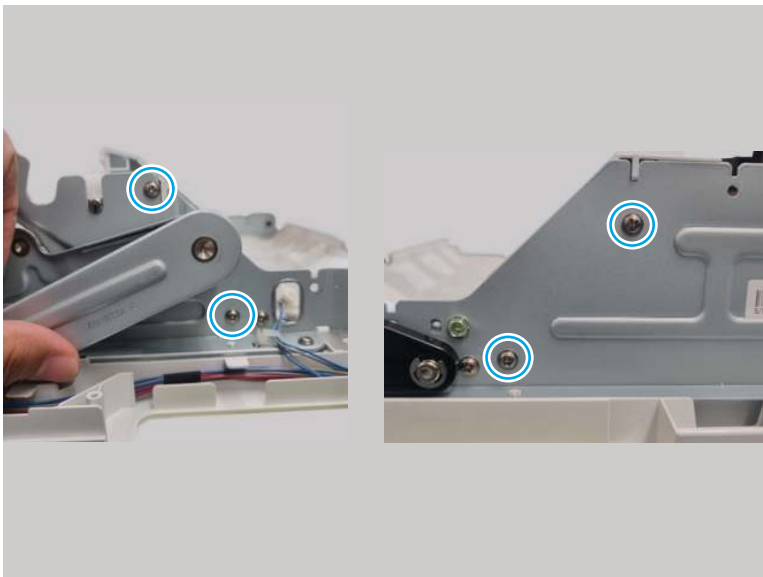
5. Remove two screws, and then remove the unit.

Figure 6-117 Remove two screws



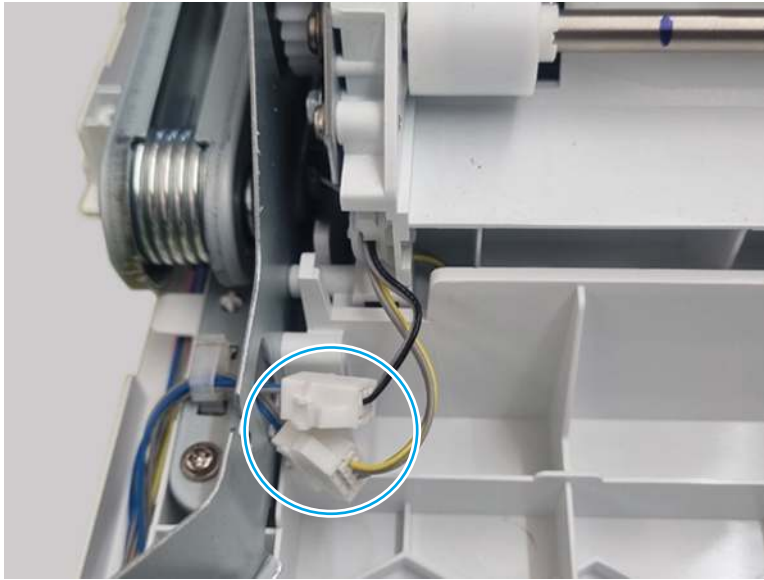
6. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-118 Remove four screws



7. Unplug two connectors.

Figure 6-119 Unplug two connectors



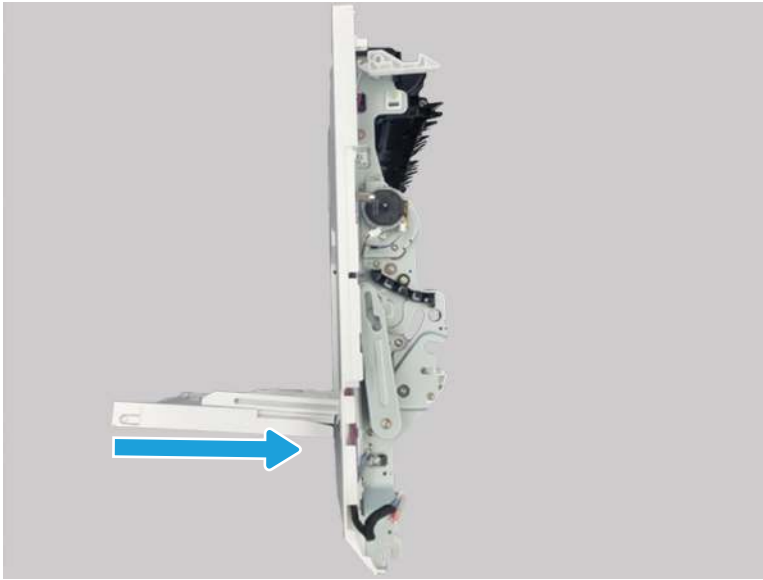
8. Turn over the right door assembly and release the hinge from the Tray 1 unit.

Figure 6-120 Release the hinge



9. Push the Tray 1 unit to the right, and then remove it.

Figure 6-121 Push the Tray 1 unit to the right



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 1 paper empty sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the Tray 1 paper empty sensor.

Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-30 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001381	Photo interrupter (Tray 1 paper empty sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

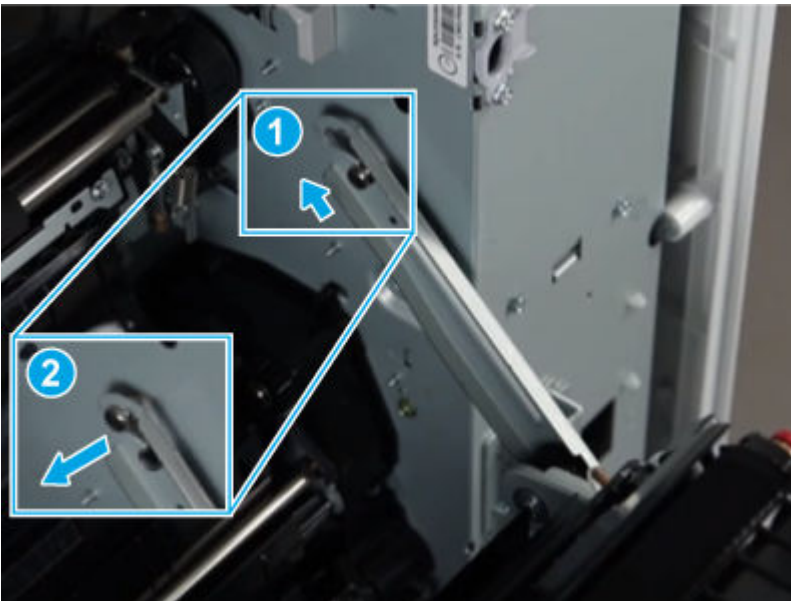
Figure 6-122 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

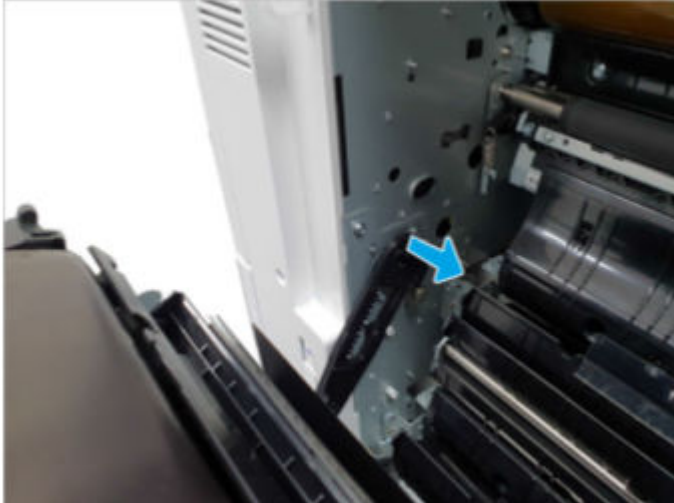
⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-123 Release the hinge




3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-124 Release the link



4. Remove the right door assembly.

 **NOTE:** If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.


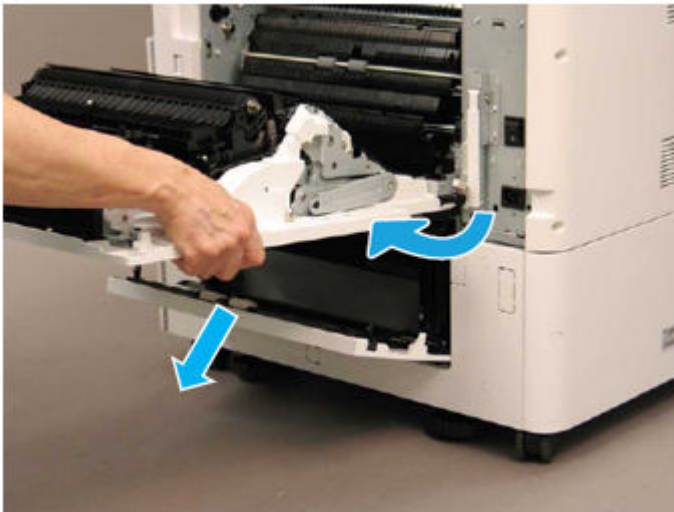
 **CAUTION:** To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-125 Remove the door

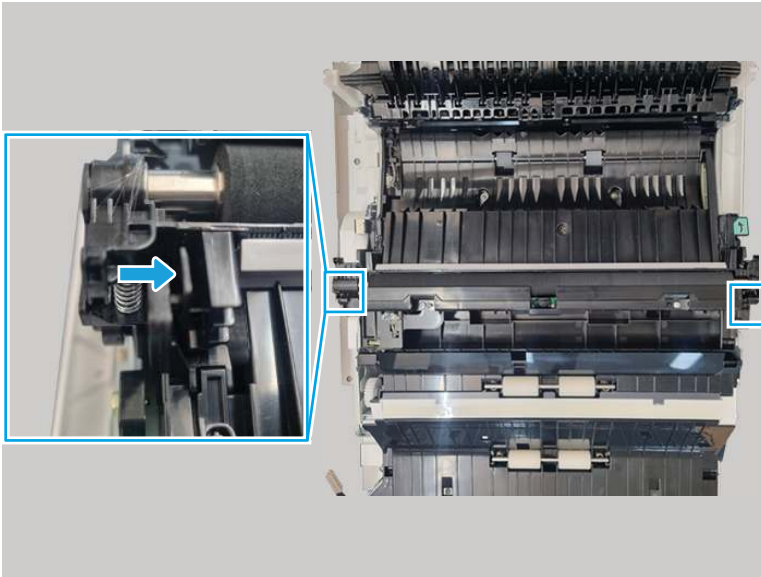


2. Remove the secondary transfer (T2) unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the T2 unit.

1. Lift up the T2 transfer assembly while pushing in the hooks at both ends of the assembly to release it.

Figure 6-126 Release the T2 assembly



2. Disconnect one connector on the back side of the T2 unit, and then remove the unit.



3. Remove the duplex assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the duplex assembly.

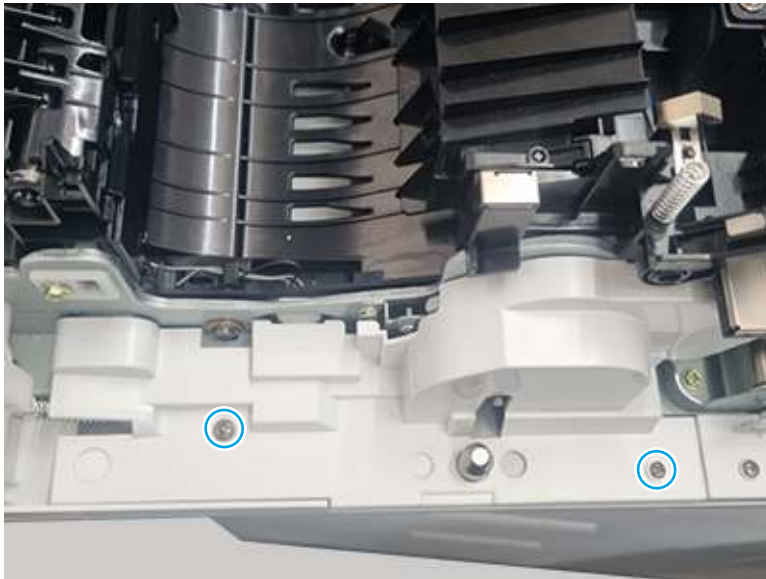
1. Remove one screw, and then remove the holder.

Figure 6-127 Remove one screw



2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-128 Remove two screws



3. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the duplex assembly.

Figure 6-129 Disconnect one connector

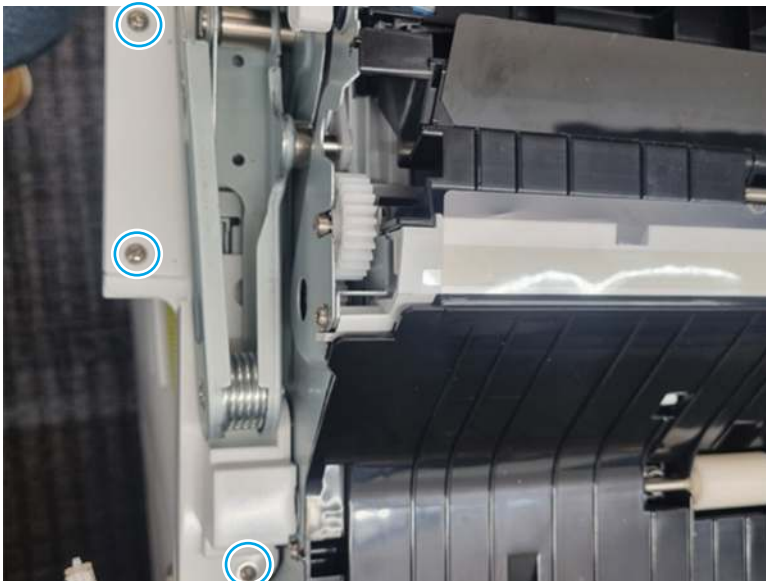


4. Remove the Tray 1 unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 1 unit.

1. Remove three screws and the cover.

Figure 6-130 Remove the cover



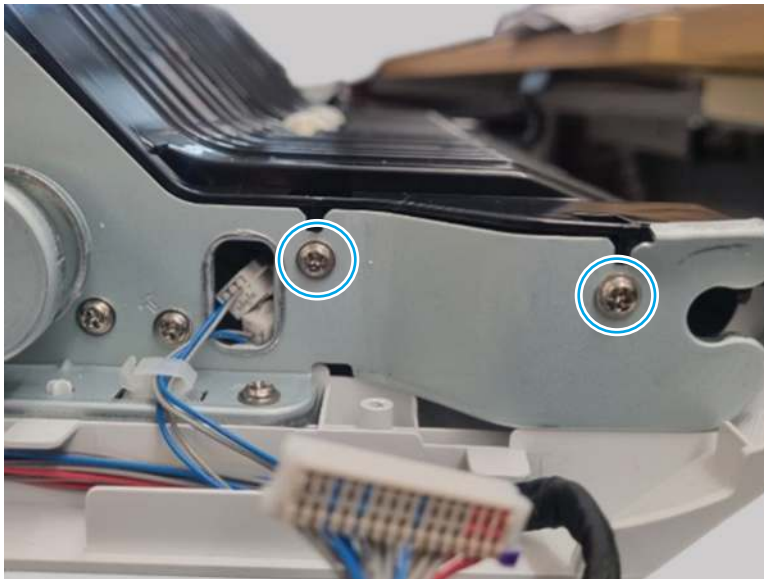
2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-131 Remove one screw



3. Remove four screws (two on each side), and then remove the duplex lower assembly.

Figure 6-132 Remove four screws





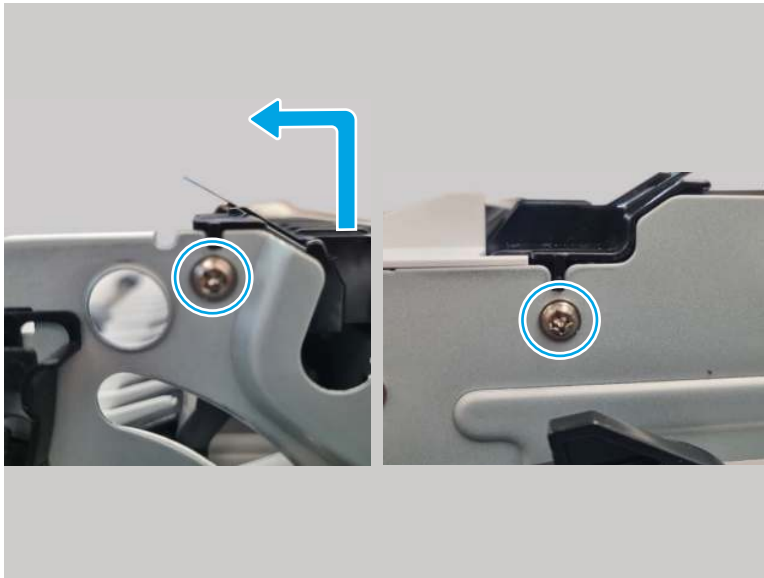
4. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-133 Remove two screws



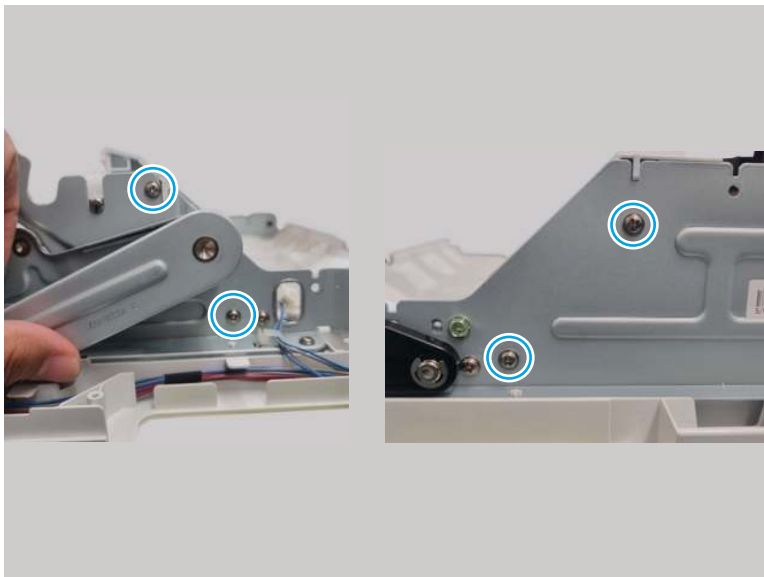
5. Remove two screws, and then remove the unit.

Figure 6-134 Remove two screws



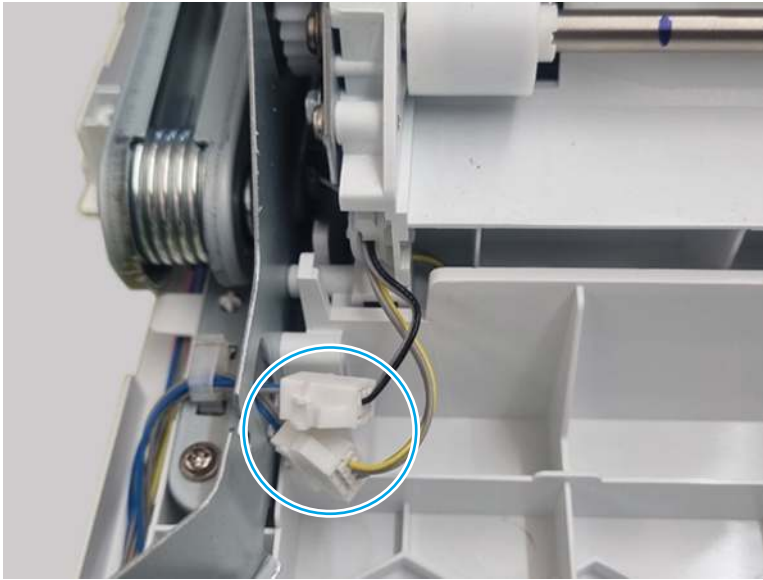
6. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-135 Remove four screws



7. Unplug two connectors.

Figure 6-136 Unplug two connectors



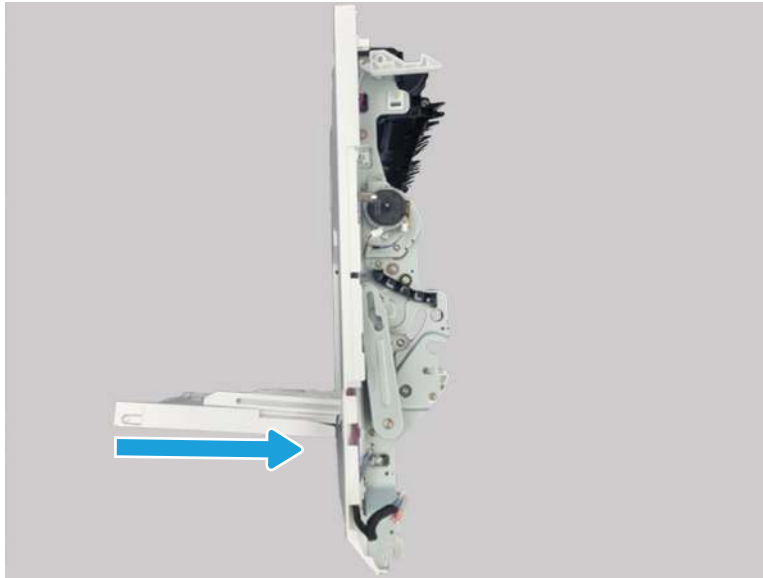
8. Turn over the right door assembly and release the hinge from the Tray 1 unit.

Figure 6-137 Release the hinge



9. Push the Tray 1 unit to the right, and then remove it.

Figure 6-138 Push the Tray 1 unit to the right

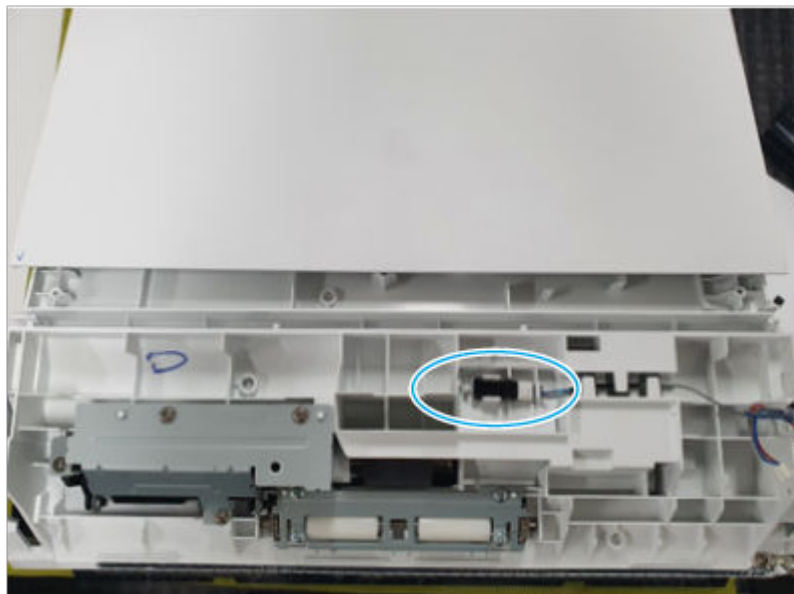


5. Remove the Tray 1 paper empty sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 1 paper empty sensor.

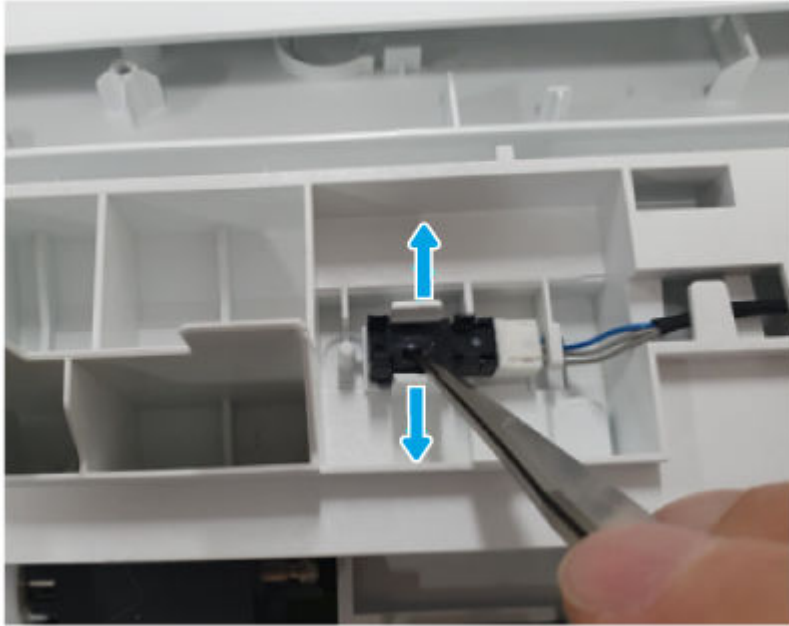
1. Locate the Tray 1 paper empty sensor.

Figure 6-139 Locate the sensor



2. Use a pair of tweezers to release two tabs, and then remove sensor.

Figure 6-140 Remove the sensor



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 1 clutch

Learn about removing and replacing the Tray 1 clutch.

Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-31 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC47-00037A	Tray 1 clutch

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the TCU.

- Open the front door assembly. Push on each tab on the sides of the toner collection unit to release it, and then pull it straight out of the printer.

Figure 6-141 Remove the TCU



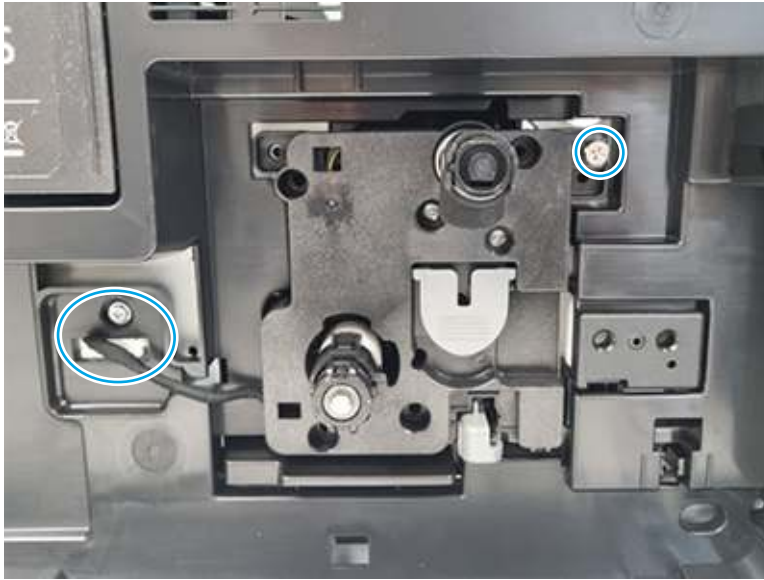
2. Remove the black drum unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the black drum unit.

1. Open the right door.

2. At the front of the printer, release one screw and unplug one connector.

Figure 6-142 Release one screw



3. Pull the drum unit out of the printer.


 **NOTE:** If the drum assembly is being removed to access other parts, skip the remaining steps. Those steps are for replacing the drum unit only.

Figure 6-143 Remove the unit



4. Set the drum unit down horizontally and remove six screws


Figure 6-144 Remove six screws



5. Disconnect one connector.

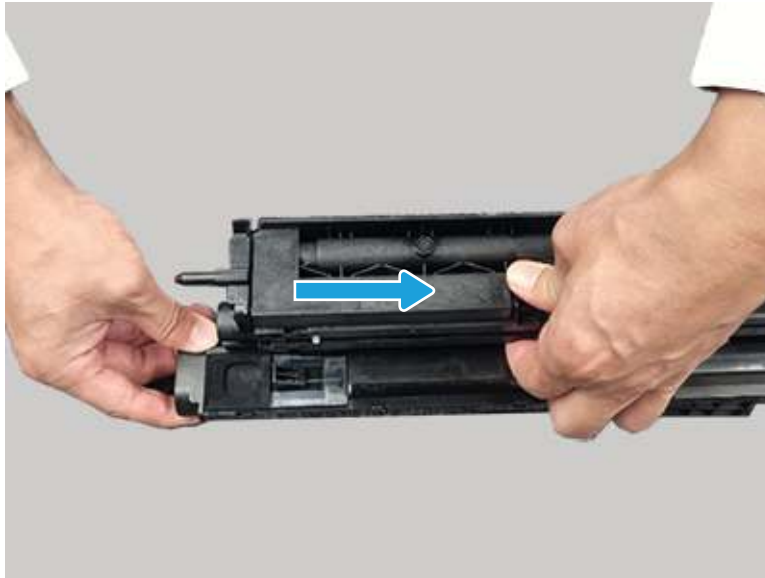
Figure 6-145 Disconnect one connector



 **Reinstallation tip:** Be sure to route the wire harness correctly when reinstalling this part.

6. Remove the drum cover.


Figure 6-146 Remove the drum cover



7. Remove the black drum unit.

Figure 6-147 Remove the drum unit



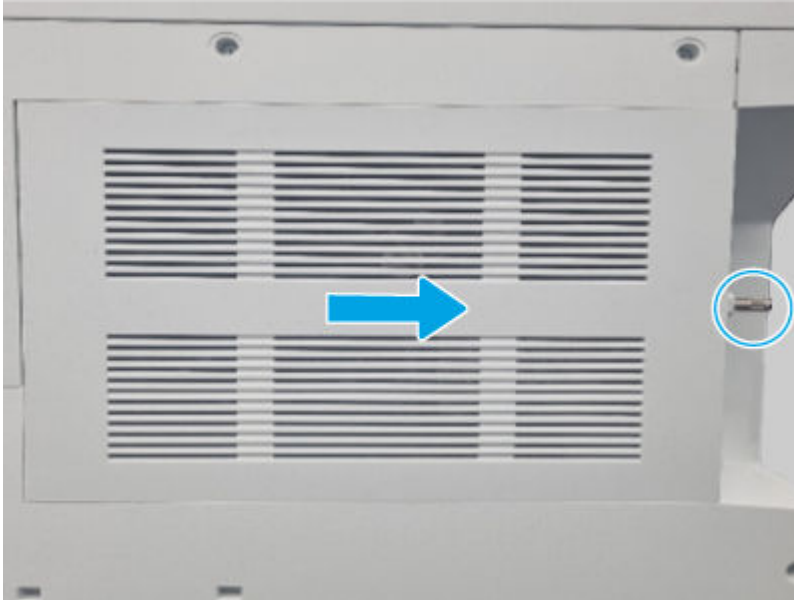
 **NOTE:** Be careful with spilled toner. If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

3. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-148 Remove the cover



4. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

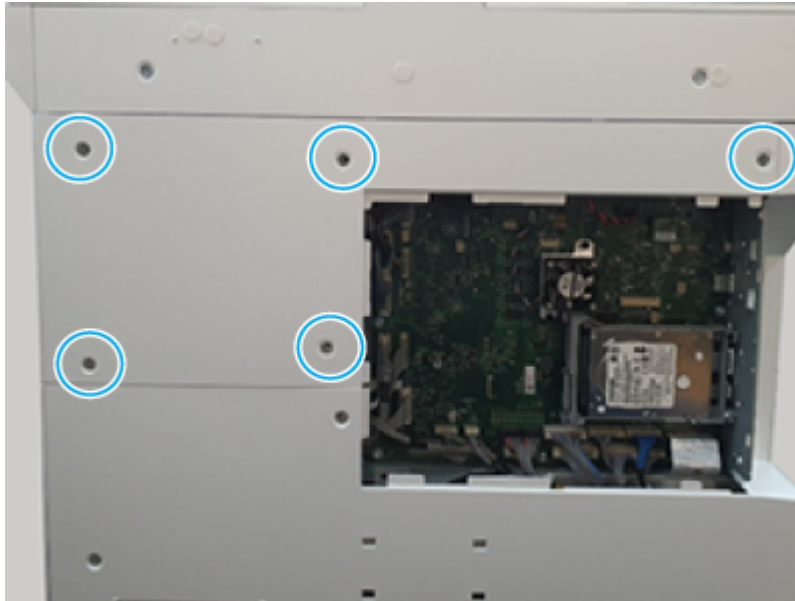
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-149 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-150 Remove the cover



5. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove six screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-151 Remove the cover

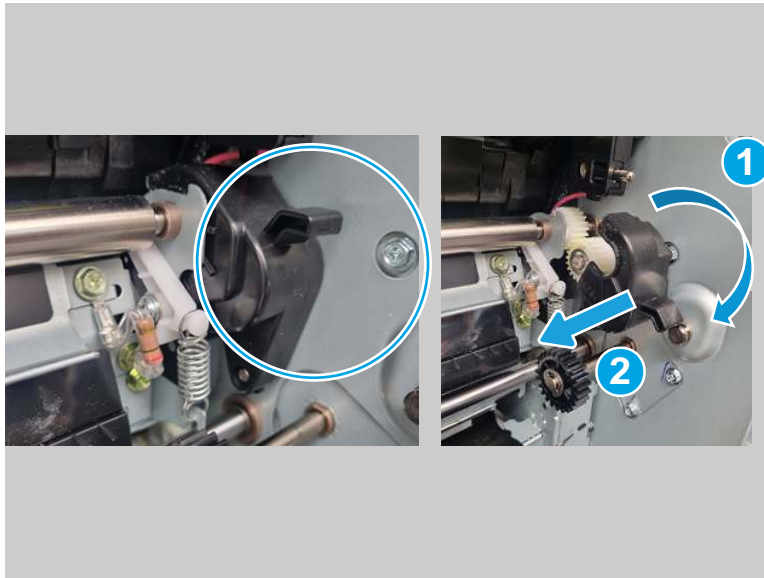


6. Remove the main drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the main drive assembly.

1. Remove the gear cover on the right side.

Figure 6-152 Remove the gear cover



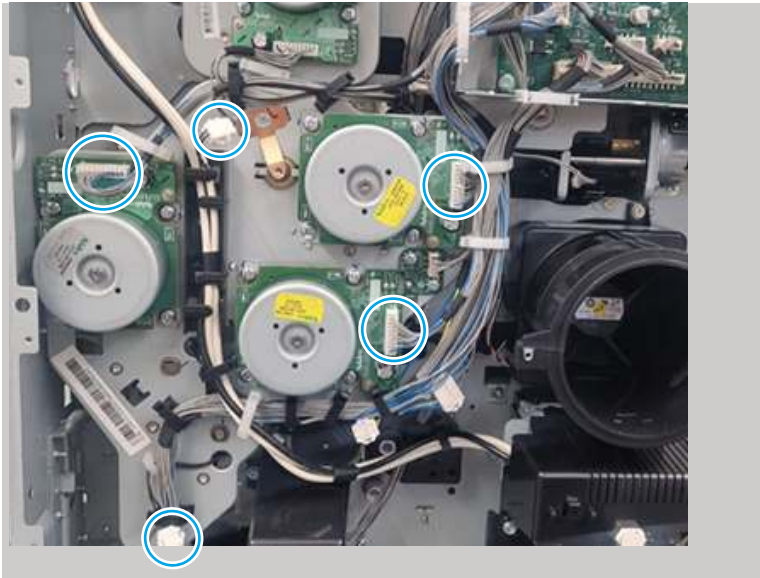
2. Unplug the connectors from the formatter.

Figure 6-153 Unplug the connectors



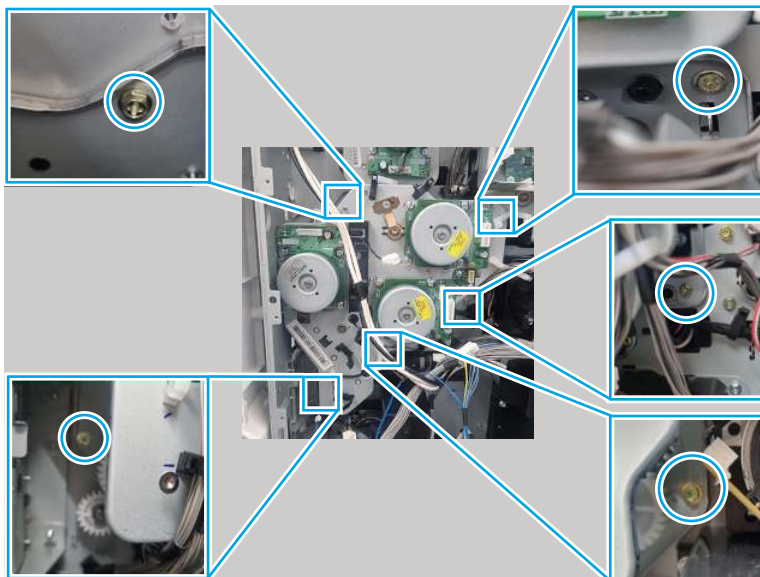
3. Disconnect five connectors linked to the main drive assembly.

Figure 6-154 Disconnect five connectors



4. Remove five screws, and then remove the feed drive assembly

Figure 6-155 Remove five screws

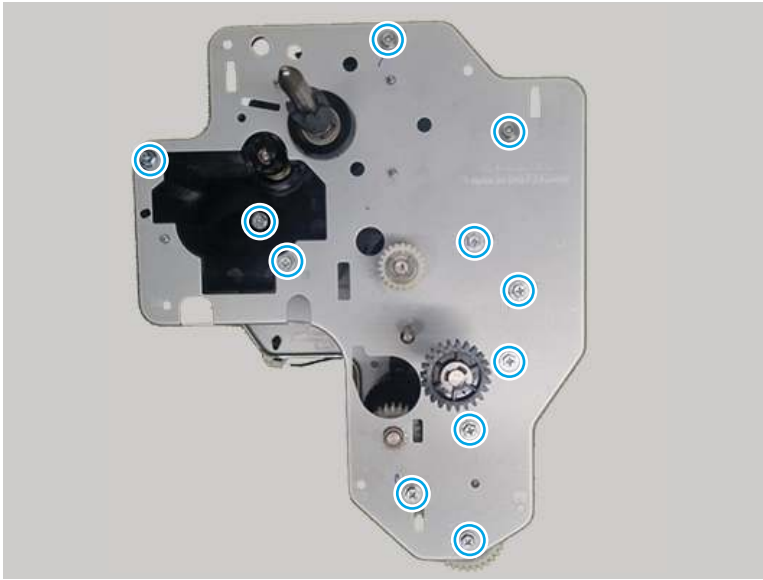


7. Remove the Tray 1 clutch

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 1 clutch.

1. Remove eleven screws.

Figure 6-156 Remove eleven screws



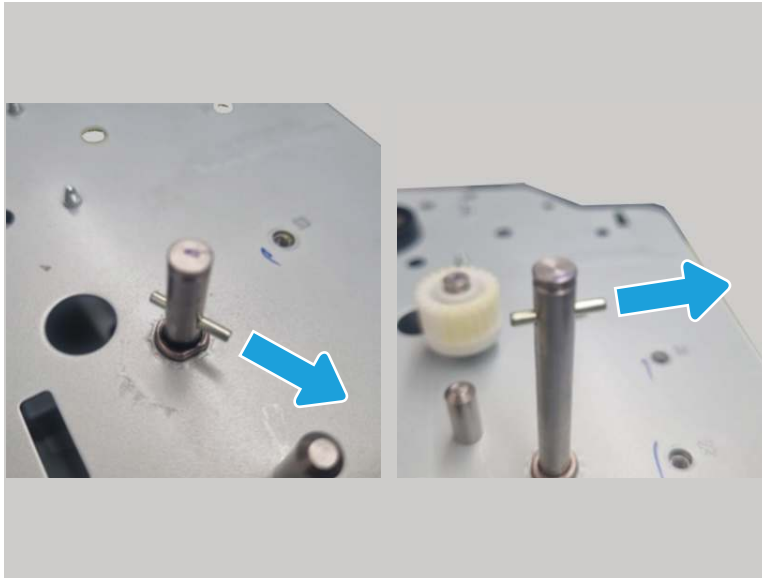
2. Remove two e-rings.


Figure 6-157 Remove two e-rings

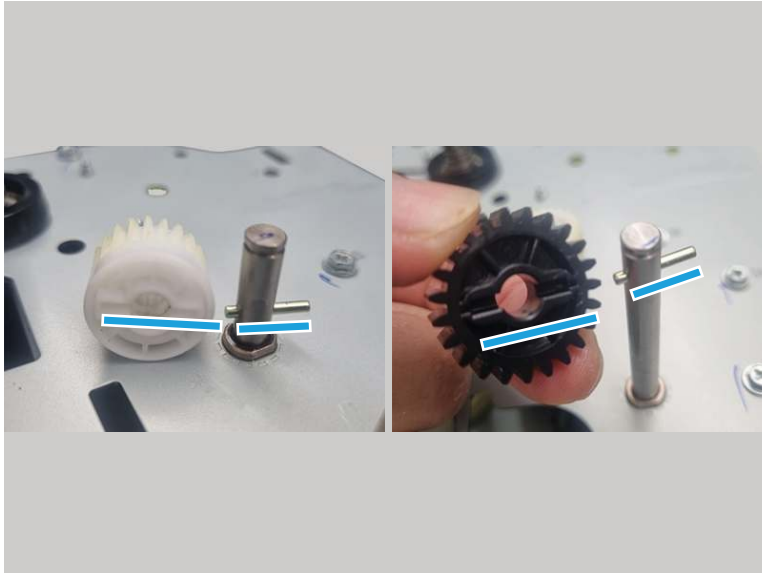


3. Remove two shafts.

Figure 6-158 Remove two shafts

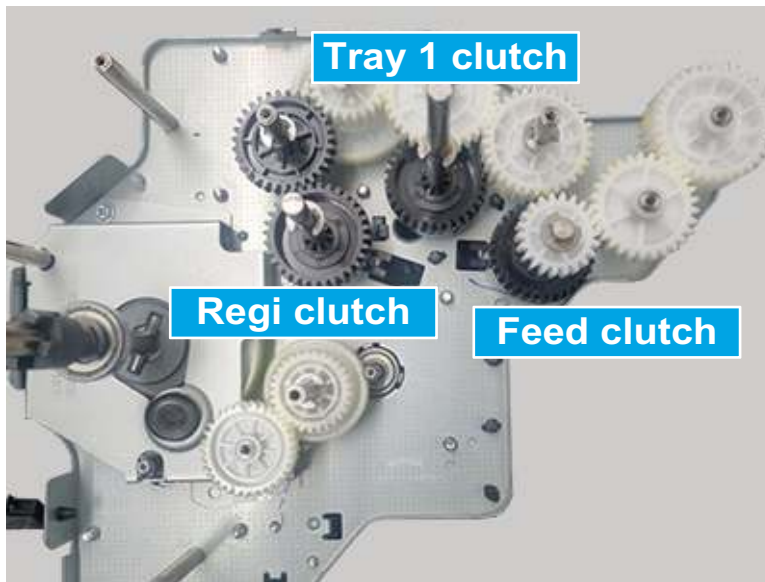


 **Reinstallation tip:** Pay attention to the shape of the gears when reinstalling.



4. Remove the plate of the Main drive assembly.

Figure 6-159 Remove the plate



5. Remove the Tray 1 clutch.


Figure 6-160 Remove the clutch



8. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 1 roller kit (pickup/forward/reverse)

Learn about removing and replacing the Tray 1 roller kit.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 1 roller kit.](#)


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-32 Part information

Part number	Part description
5SRC02-67001	Tray 1 roller kit

NOTE: This kit includes the pickup, forward, and reverse rollers.

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

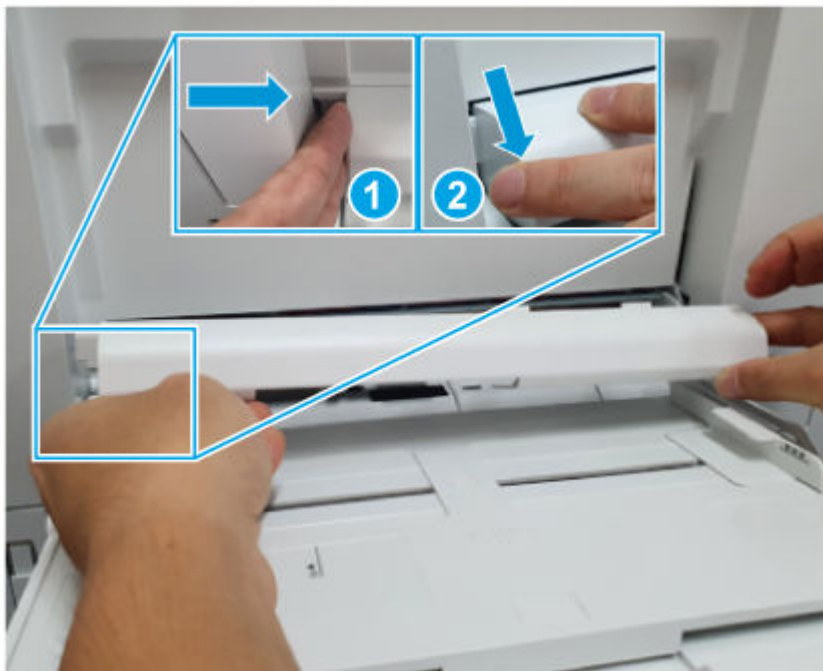
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the Tray 1 roller kit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 1 roller kit.

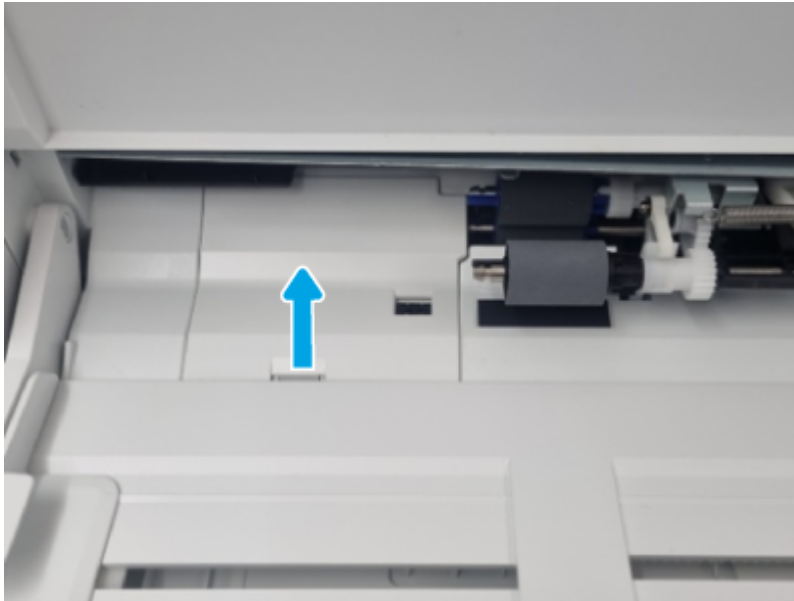
1. Release the right- and left side tabs, and then remove the Tray 1 roller cover.

Figure 6-161 Remove the cover



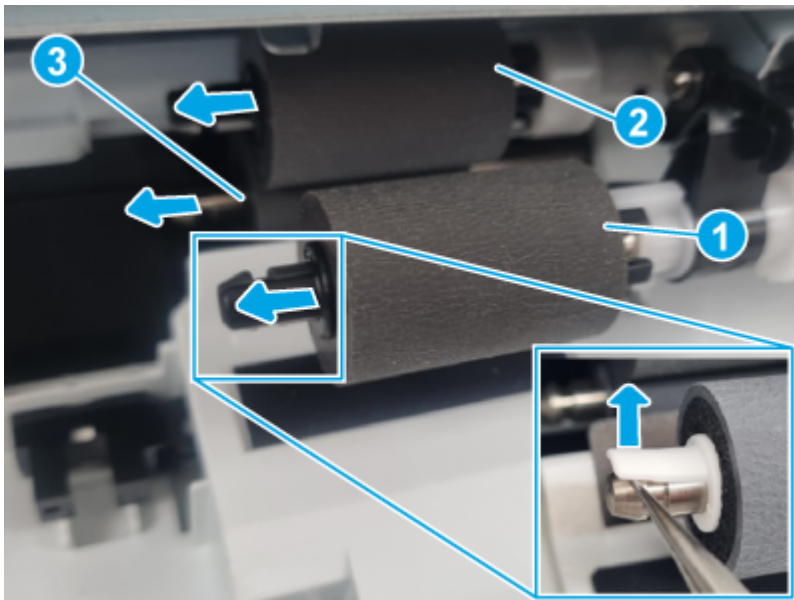
2. Release one tab, and then remove the sensor cover.

Figure 6-162 Remove the cover



3. Use a pair of tweezers to release the locking tab, and then slide the roller off the shaft to remove it.
 - **Pickup roller:** callout 1
 - **Forward roller:** callout 2
 - **Reverse roller:** callout 3

Figure 6-163 Remove the rollers



2. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Tray 2-3 units

Learn about feeding system Tray 2-3 units parts removal and replacement.

Removal and replacement: Tray 2 or Tray 3

Learn about removing and replacing Tray 2 or Tray 3.


Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-33 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ90-60111	Tray 2

Table 6-33 Part information (continued)

Part number	Part description
5QJ90-60119	Tray 3

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

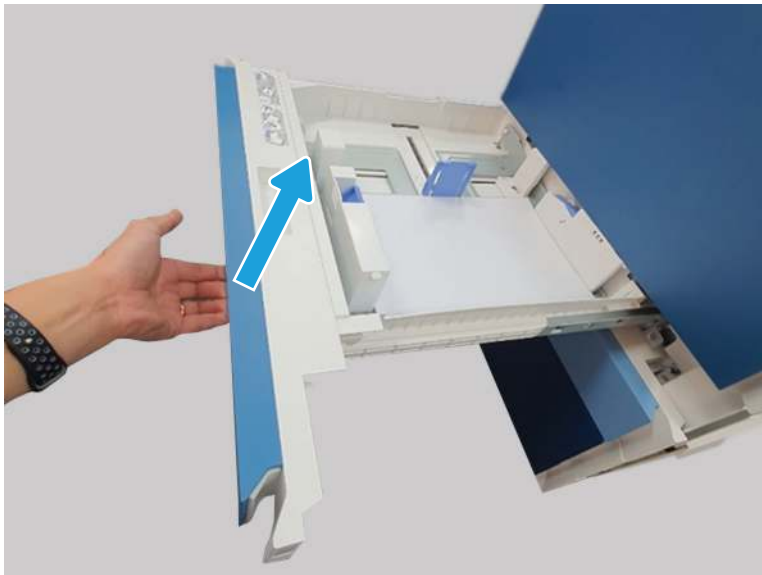
1. Remove Tray 2 or Tray 3

Use the following procedure to remove and replace Tray 2 or Tray 3.

 **NOTE:** Tray 2 is shown in the figure below. However, removing Tray 3 is identical to Tray 2.

- Pull the tray almost all of the way out of the printer, and then lift it up to remove it.


Figure 6-164 Remove the tray



2. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 2 pickup assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the Tray 2 pickup assembly.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-34 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01728A	Tray 2 pickup assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right rear cover.

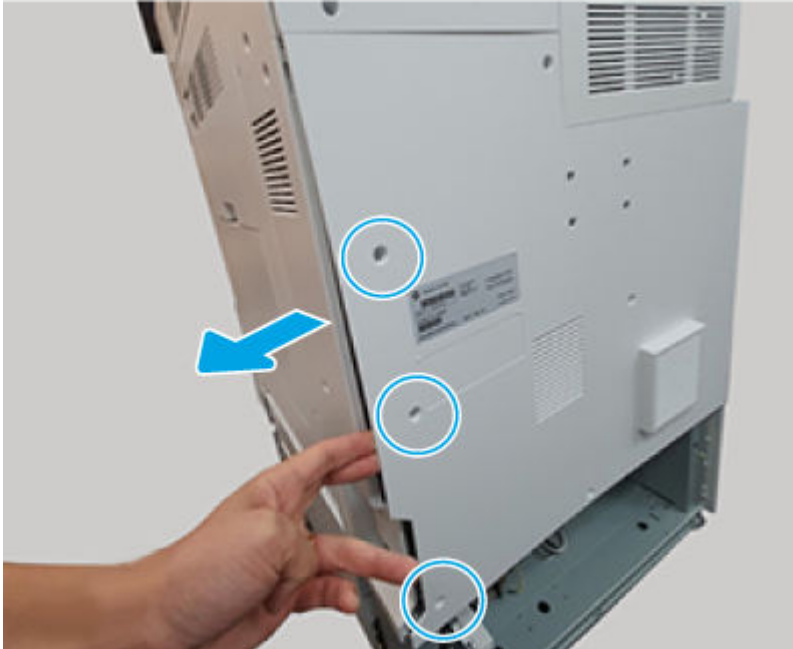
1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-165 Remove three screws



2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove three rear lower cover screws.
 - b. Slightly separate the rear lower cover from the printer.
 - c. Open the right door, and then remove the right rear cover.

Figure 6-166 Remove the cover



2. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

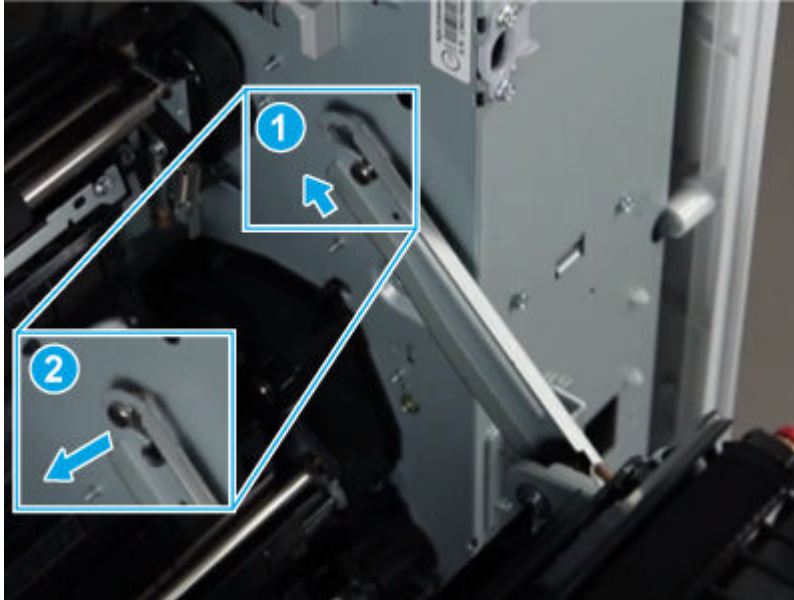
Figure 6-167 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

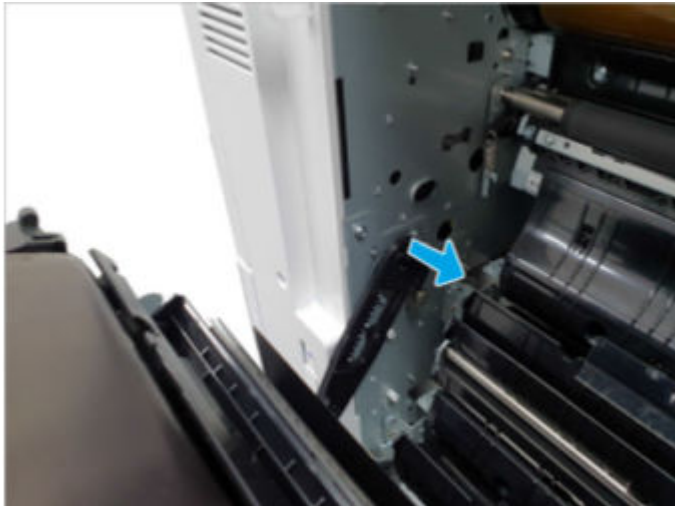
⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-168 Release the hinge




3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-169 Release the link



4. Remove the right door assembly.

 **NOTE:** If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.


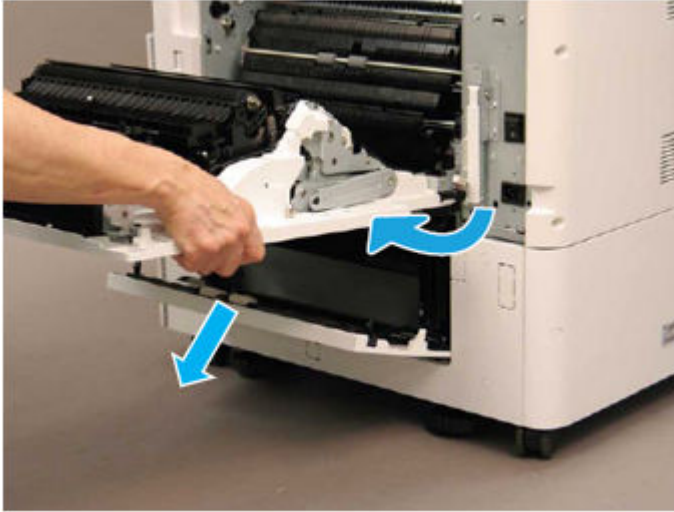

 **CAUTION:** To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-170 Remove the door



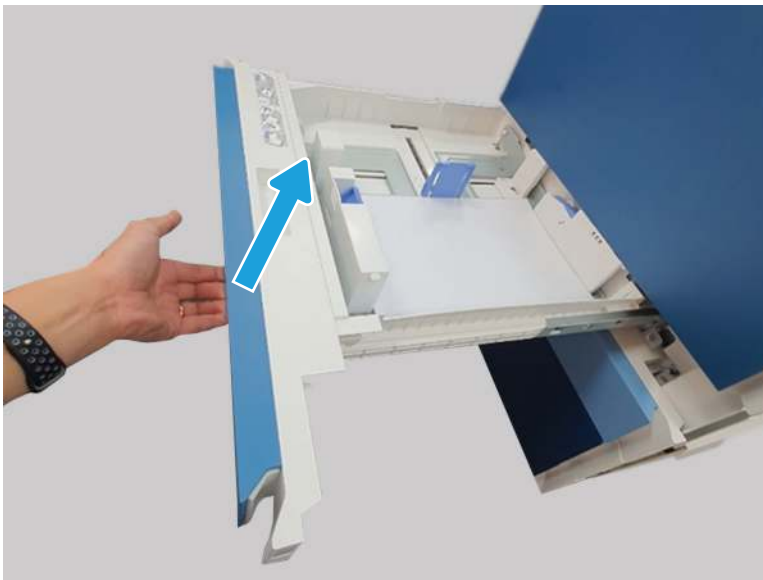
3. Remove Tray 2 or Tray 3

Use the following procedure to remove and replace Tray 2 or Tray 3.

 **NOTE:** Tray 2 is shown in the figure below. However, removing Tray 3 is identical to Tray 2.

- Pull the tray almost all of the way out of the printer, and then lift it up to remove it.

Figure 6-171 Remove the tray

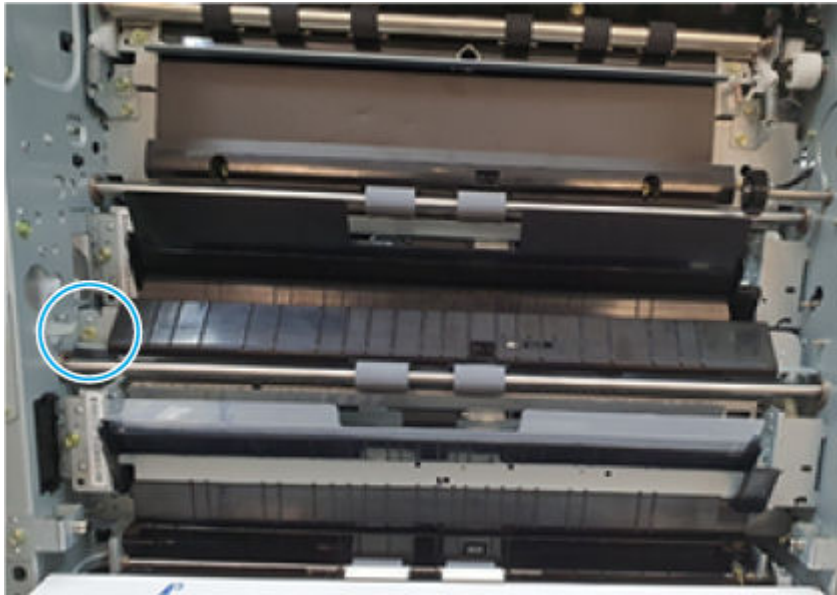


4. Remove the Tray 2 pickup assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 2 pickup assembly.

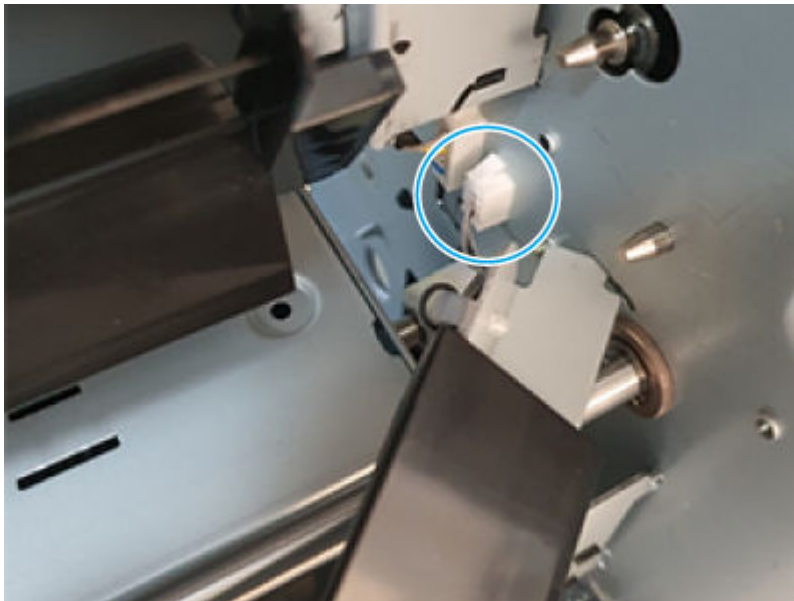
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-172 Remove one screw



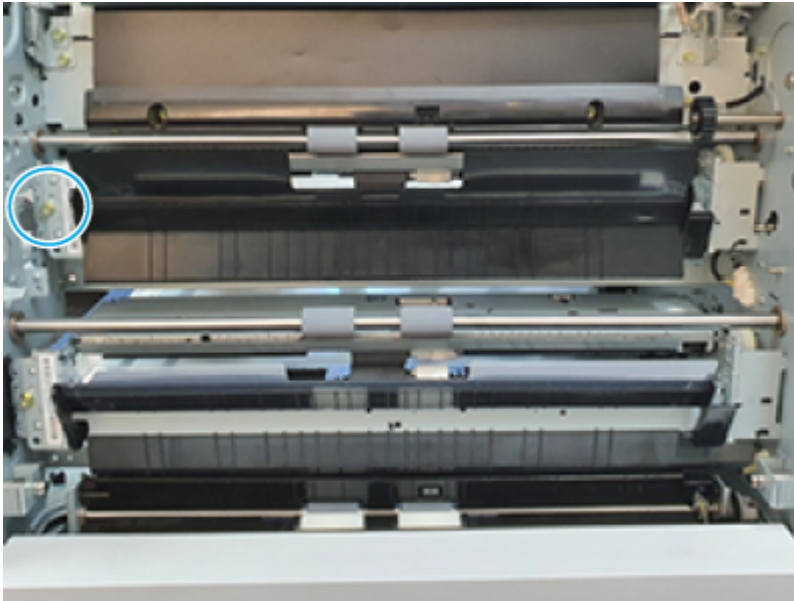
2. Rotate the left side of the assembly away from the printer, and then disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-173 Disconnect one connector



3. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-174 Remove one screw



4. Rotate the left side of the assembly away from the printer.

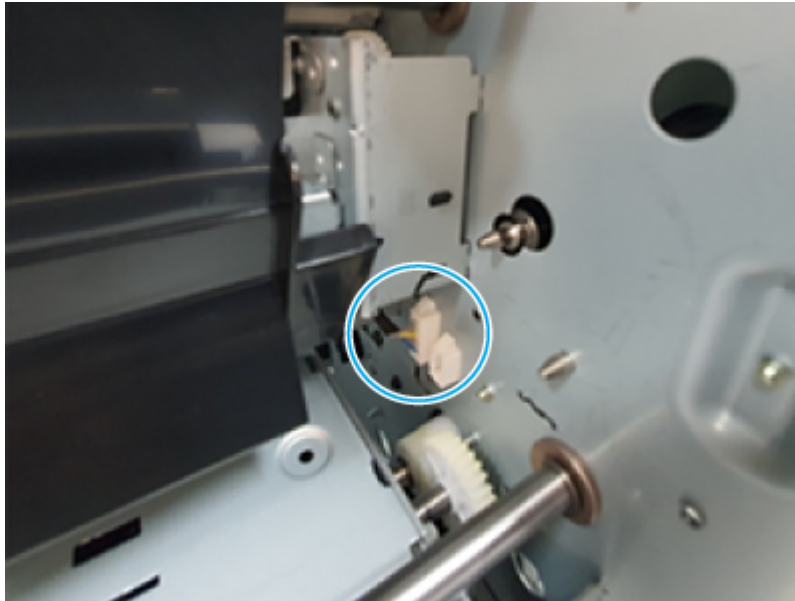
⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the assembly. It is still attached to the printer by a wire harness and connector.

Figure 6-175 Rotate the assembly away from the printer



5. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the assembly.

Figure 6-176 Remove the assembly



5. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 2, 3 roller kit (pickup/forward/reverse)

Learn about removing and replacing the Tray 2/3 roller kit.

Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-35 Part information

Part number	Part description
5PN66-67001	Tray 2/3 roller kit

NOTE: This kit includes the pickup, forward, and reverse rollers.

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove Tray 2 or Tray 3

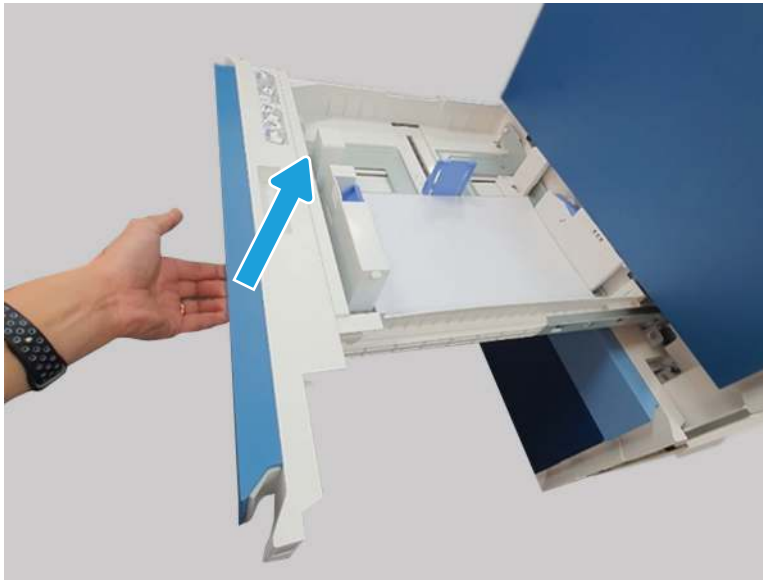
Use the following procedure to remove and replace Tray 2 or Tray 3.



NOTE: Tray 2 is shown in the figure below. However, removing Tray 3 is identical to Tray 2.

- Pull the tray almost all of the way out of the printer, and then lift it up to remove it.

Figure 6-177 Remove the tray



2. Remove the Tray 2/3 roller kit

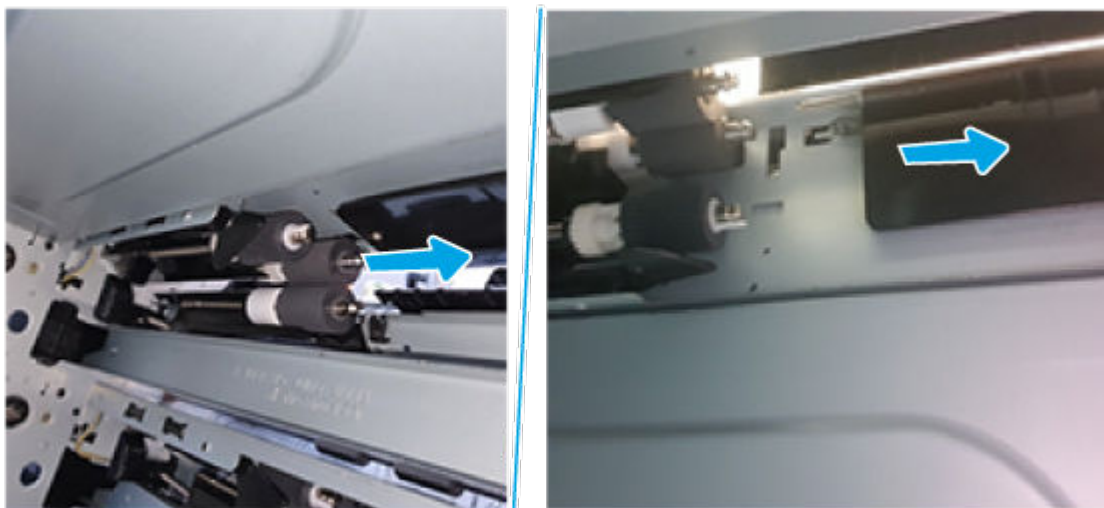
Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 2/3 roller kit.

1. Locate the return guide inside the tray opening, and then slide the black guide toward the front of the printer until it stops.

⚠ CAUTION: The black guide is spring loaded. Be careful when sliding the guide to avoid dislodging the spring.

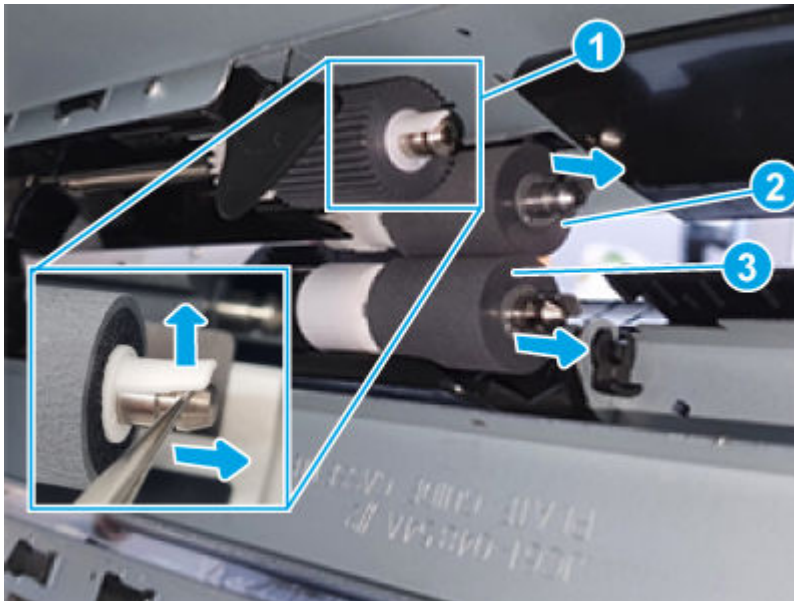
💡 Reinstallation tip: After installing replacement rollers, slightly slide the return guide towards the rear of the printer to prevent paper jams.

Figure 6-178 Slide the return guide



2. Use a pair of tweezers to release the locking tab, and then slide the roller off the shaft to remove it.
 - **Pickup roller:** callout 1
 - **Forward roller:** callout 2
 - **Reverse roller:** callout 3

Figure 6-179 Remove the rollers

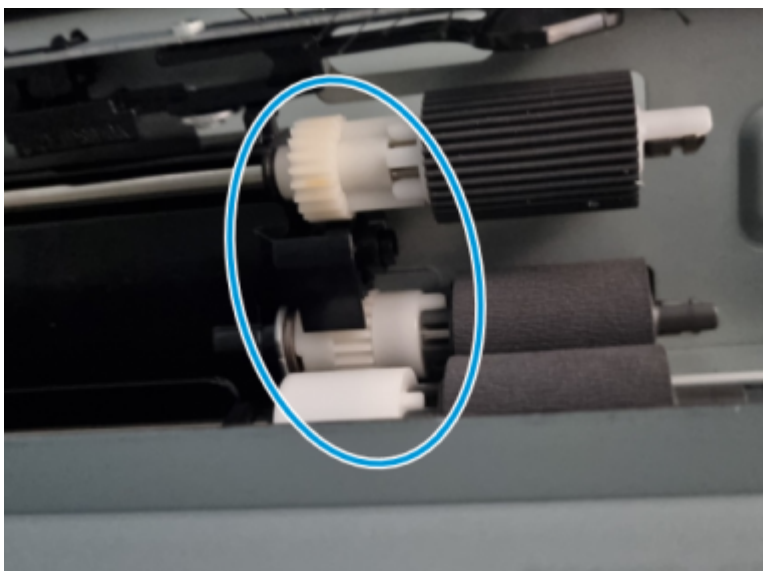


3. When the rollers are removed, be careful not to dislodge the couplers. If the couplers are dislodged, install them on the shafts as shown below.



NOTE: The figure below shows the pickup assembly removed to more clearly show the rollers and couplers.

Figure 6-180 Rollers and couplers installed



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 2 empty and stack height sensors

Learn about removing and replacing the Tray 2 empty and stack height sensors.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-36 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Tray 2 empty sensor)
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Tray 2 stack height sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right rear cover.

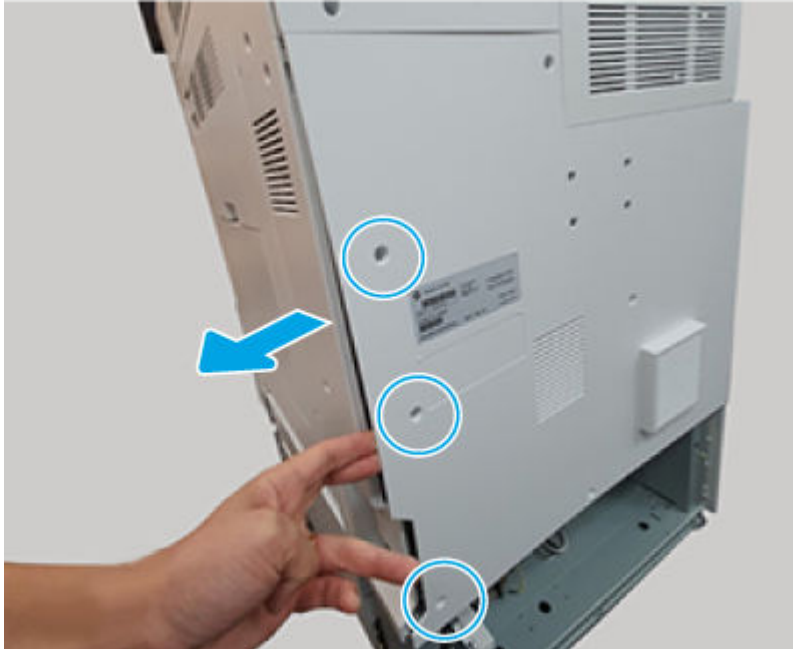
1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-181 Remove three screws



2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove three rear lower cover screws.
 - b. Slightly separate the rear lower cover from the printer.
 - c. Open the right door, and then remove the right rear cover.

Figure 6-182 Remove the cover



2. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

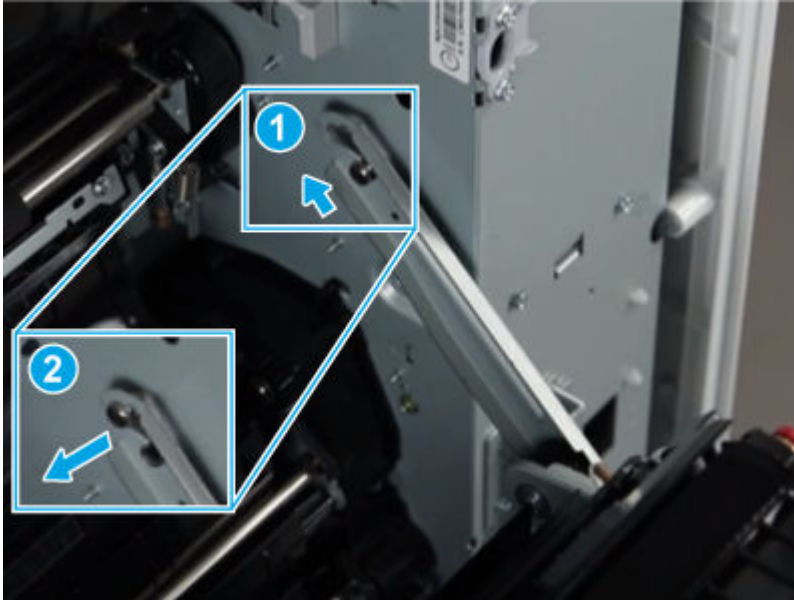
Figure 6-183 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-184 Release the hinge



3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-185 Release the link



4. Remove the right door assembly.



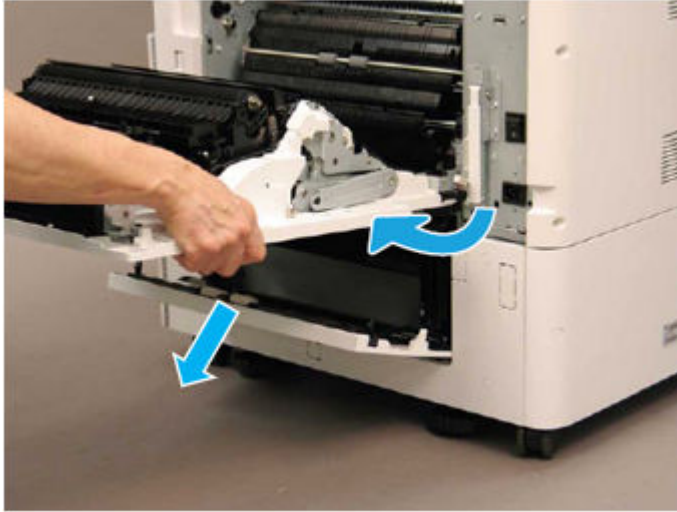
NOTE: If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.




CAUTION: To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-186 Remove the door



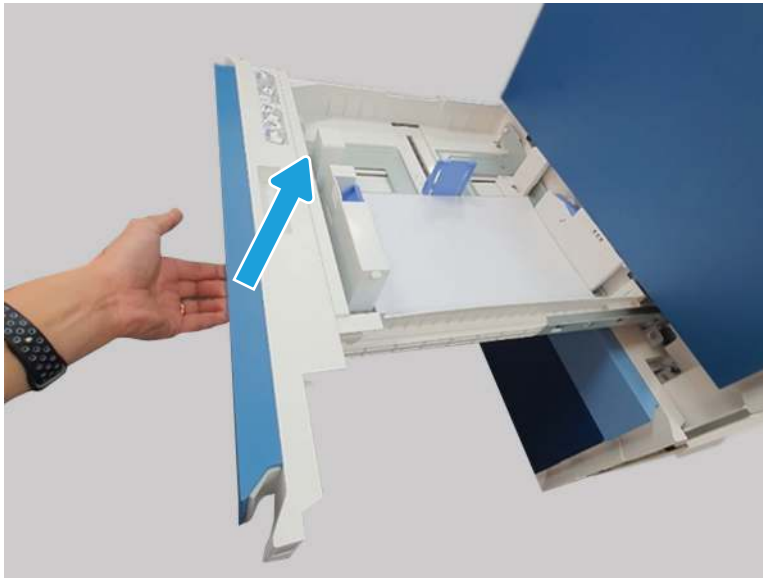
3. Remove Tray 2 or Tray 3

Use the following procedure to remove and replace Tray 2 or Tray 3.

 **NOTE:** Tray 2 is shown in the figure below. However, removing Tray 3 is identical to Tray 2.

- Pull the tray almost all of the way out of the printer, and then lift it up to remove it.

Figure 6-187 Remove the tray

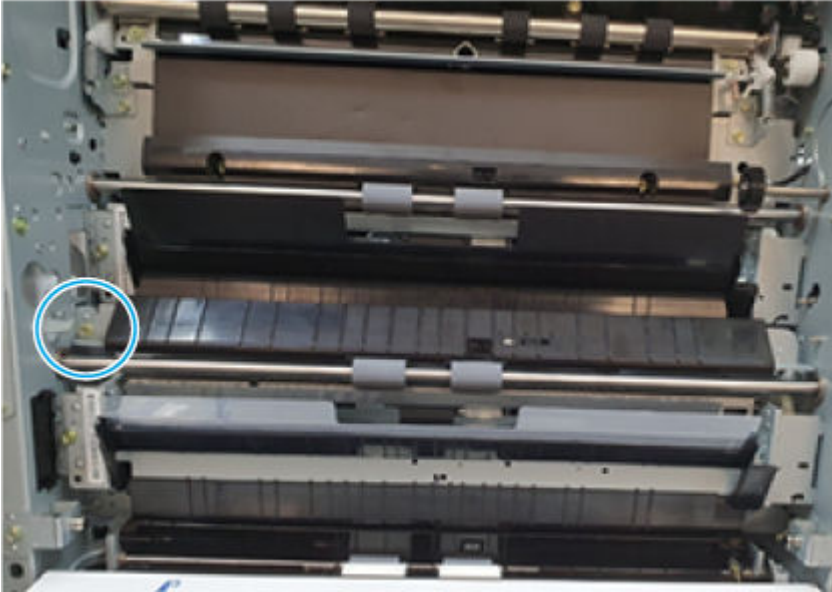


4. Remove the Tray 2 pickup assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 2 pickup assembly.

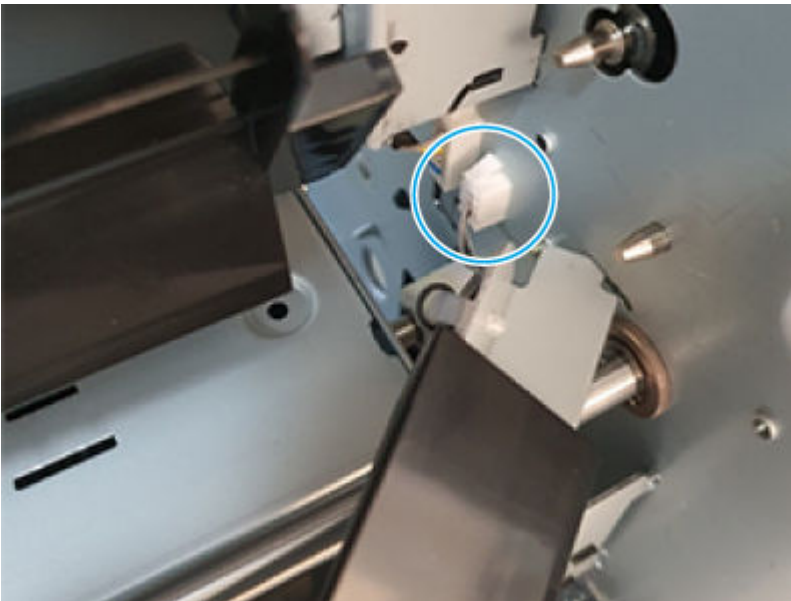
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-188 Remove one screw



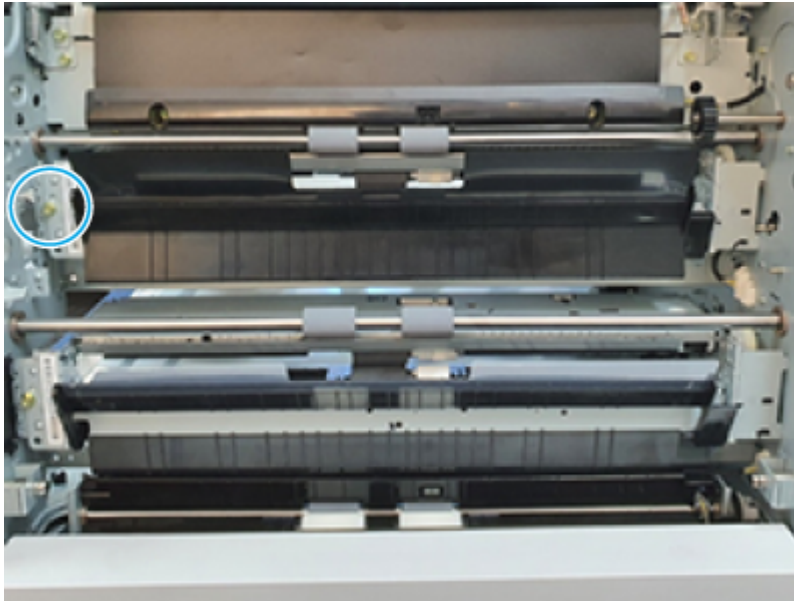
2. Rotate the left side of the assembly away from the printer, and then disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-189 Disconnect one connector



3. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-190 Remove one screw



4. Rotate the left side of the assembly away from the printer.

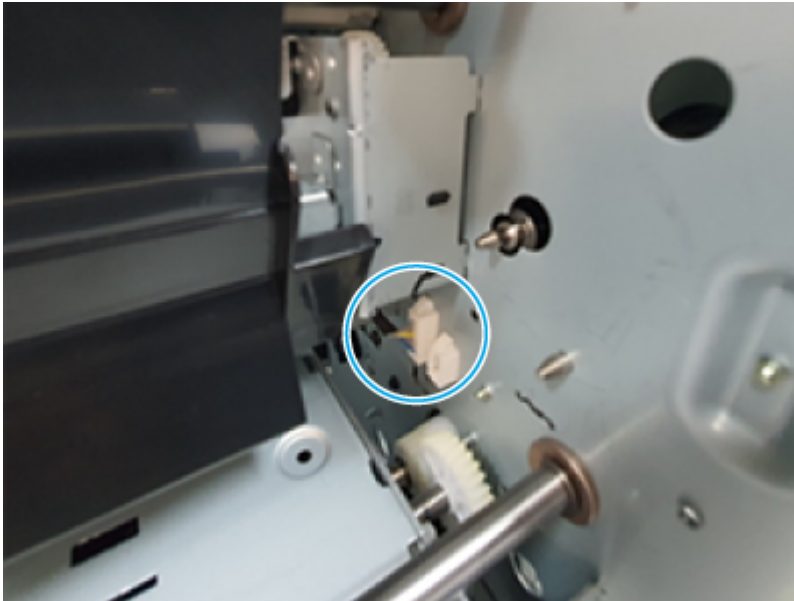
CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the assembly. It is still attached to the printer by a wire harness and connector.

Figure 6-191 Rotate the assembly away from the printer



5. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the assembly.

Figure 6-192 Remove the assembly

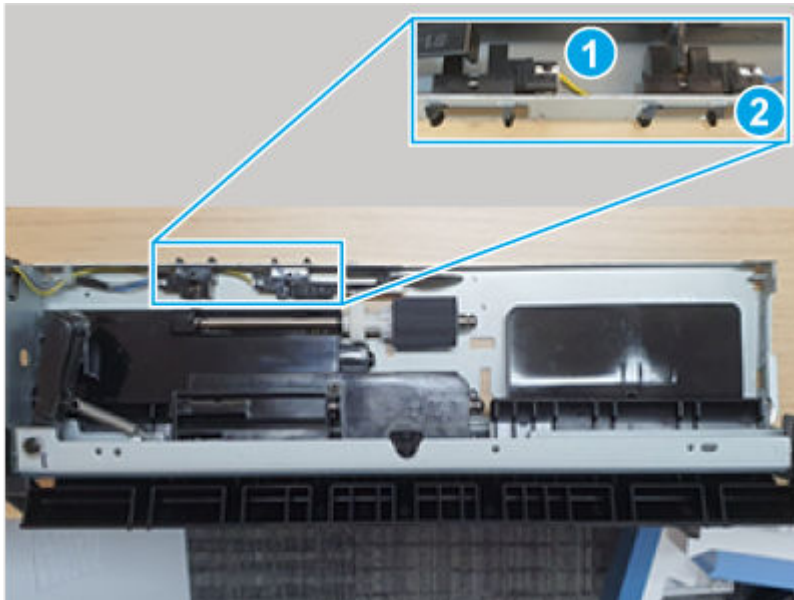


5. Remove the Tray 2 empty and stack height sensors


Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 2 empty and stack height sensors.

1. Locate the Tray 2 empty (callout 1) and stack height (callout 2) sensors on the pickup assembly.

Figure 6-193 Locate the sensors



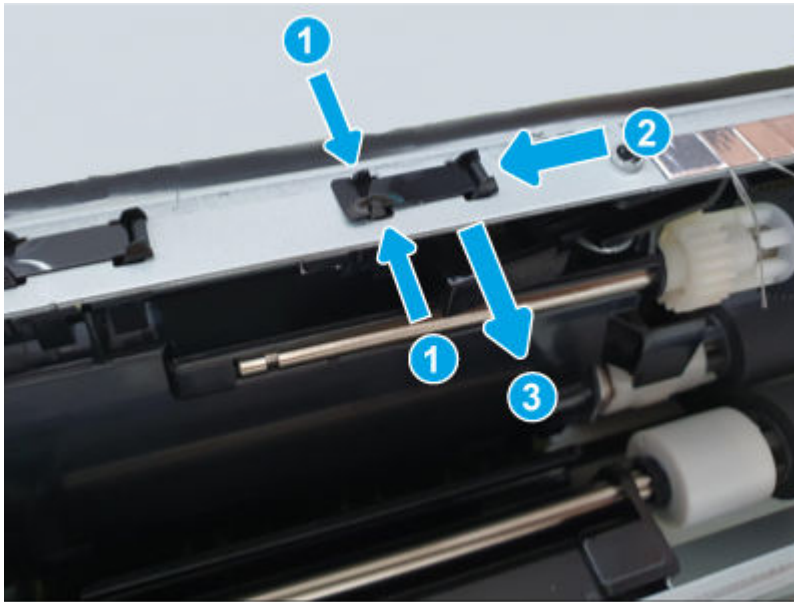
2. Do the following:

 **NOTE:** The black ESD insulator sheet does not need to be removed.

- Release the hooks (callout 1).

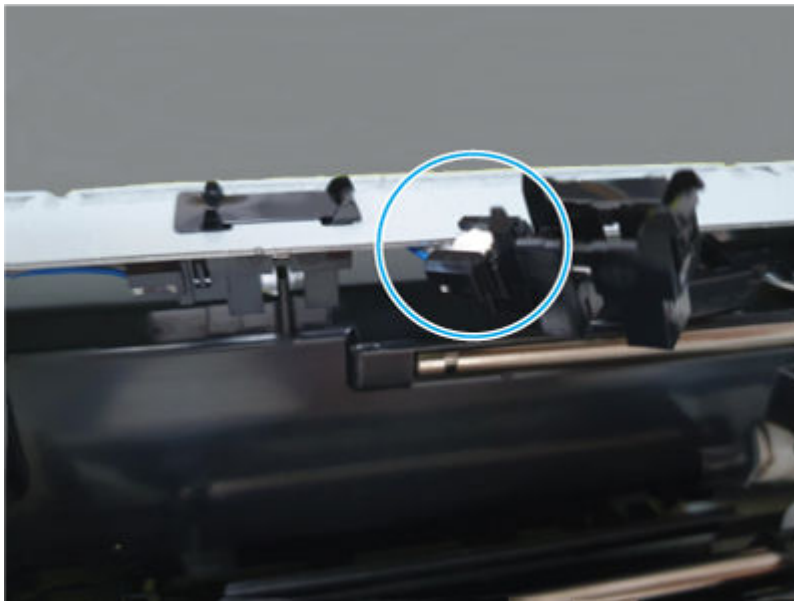
- Slide the sensor assembly to the left (callout 2).
- Push the sensor assembly as shown (callout 3) to release it.

Figure 6-194 Release the sensors



3. Disconnect the connector and remove the sensor assembly.

Figure 6-195 Remove the sensors



6. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 2 open and paper size sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the Tray 2 open and paper size sensor.

 **NOTE:** This procedure removes the front door for better access to the sensor.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-37 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-00018B	Tray 2 open and paper size sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove Tray 2 or Tray 3

Use the following procedure to remove and replace Tray 2 or Tray 3.

 **NOTE:** Tray 2 is shown in the figure below. However, removing Tray 3 is identical to Tray 2.

- Pull the tray almost all of the way out of the printer, and then lift it up to remove it.

Figure 6-196 Remove the tray



2. Remove the front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the front cover.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-197 Remove two screws



2. Push in on the hook located at the right side of the cover (callout 1), and then remove the cover (callout 2).

Figure 6-198 Remove the cover

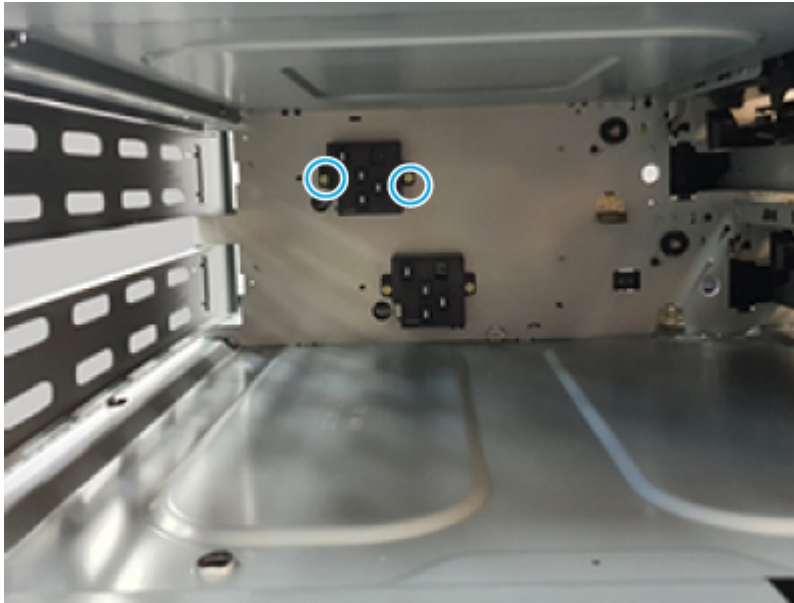


3. Remove the Tray 2 open and paper size sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 2 open and paper size sensor.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-199 Remove two screws



2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the sensor assembly.



NOTE: The sensor assembly is located far back in the tray cavity. Hold the sensor as shown below to easily disconnect (and reconnect at installation) the connector.

Figure 6-200 Remove the sensor



4. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 2 pickup drive assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the Tray 2 pickup drive assembly.


Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-38 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ90-64001	Tray 2 pickup drive assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

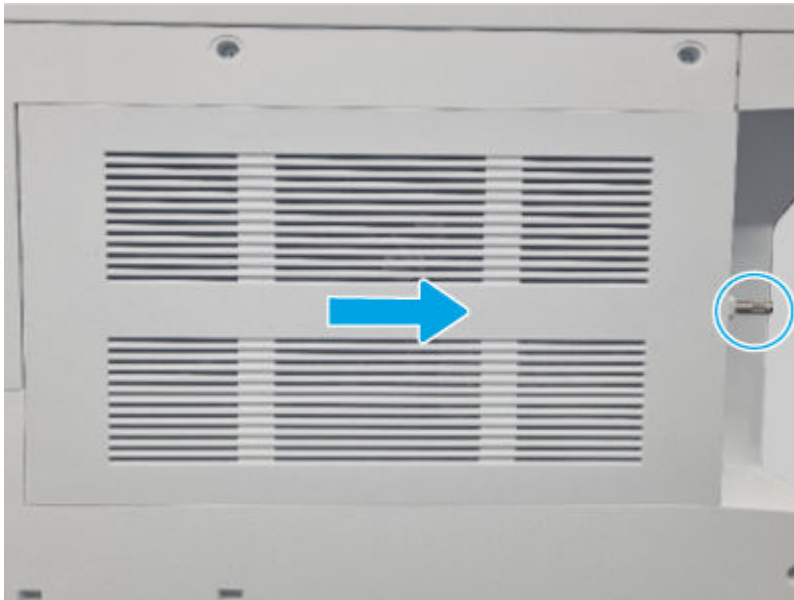
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-201 Remove the cover



2. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

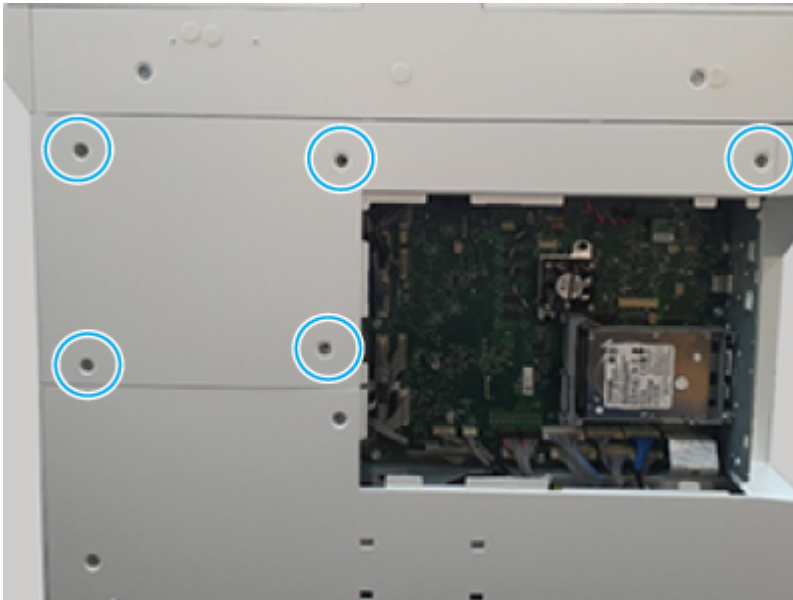
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-202 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-203 Remove the cover



3. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove six screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-204 Remove the cover

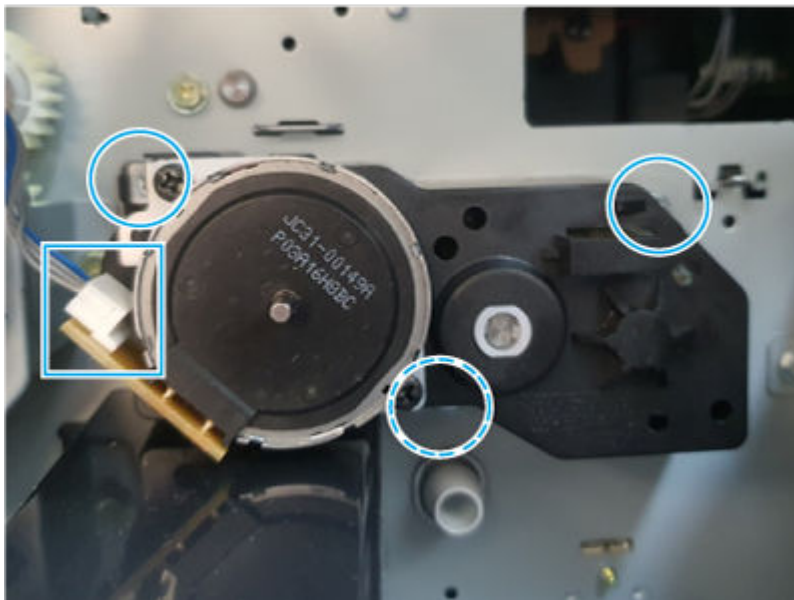


4. Remove the Tray 2 pickup drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 2 pickup drive assembly.

- Unplug one connector, remove three screws, and then remove the Tray 2 pickup drive assembly.


Figure 6-205 Remove the assembly





5. Unpack the replacement assembly


Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 2 pickup motor

Learn about removing and replacing the Tray 2 pickup motor.


Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-39 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ90-64002	Drive-motor, step (Tray 2 pickup motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

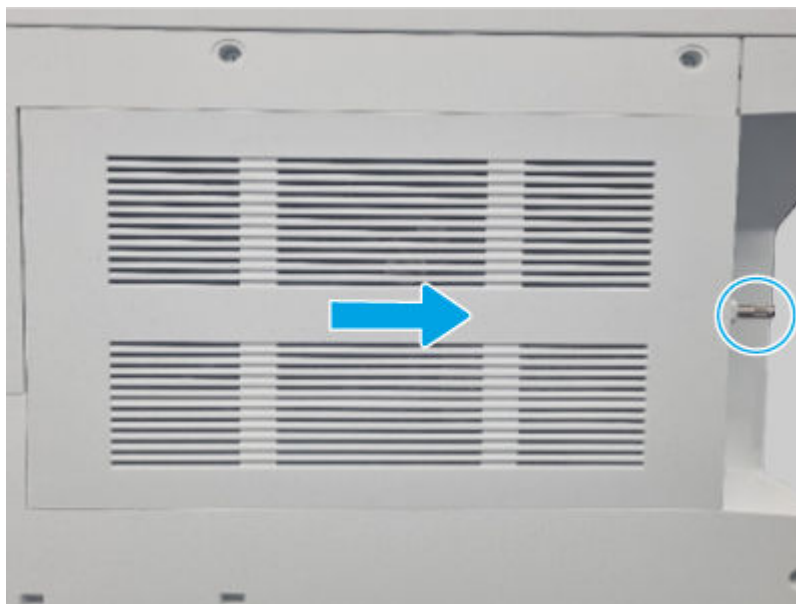
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-206 Remove the cover



2. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

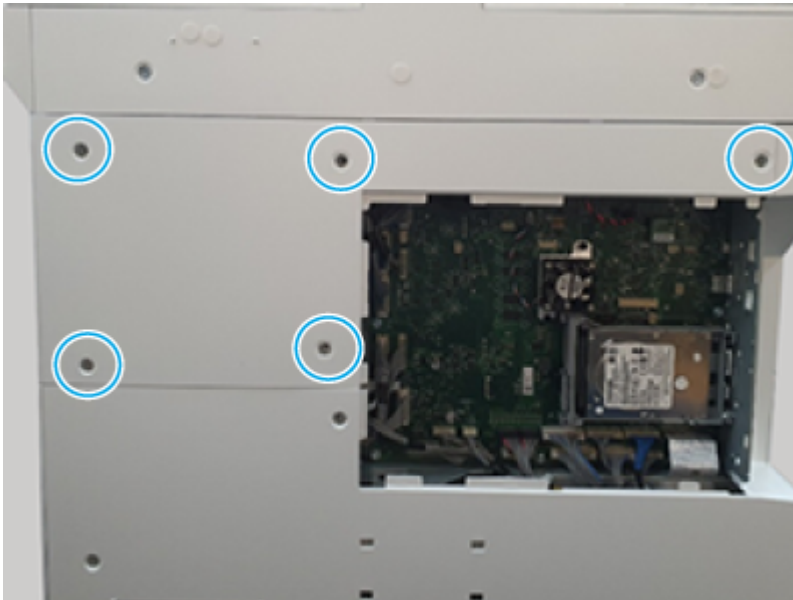
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-207 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-208 Remove the cover



3. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove six screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-209 Remove the cover

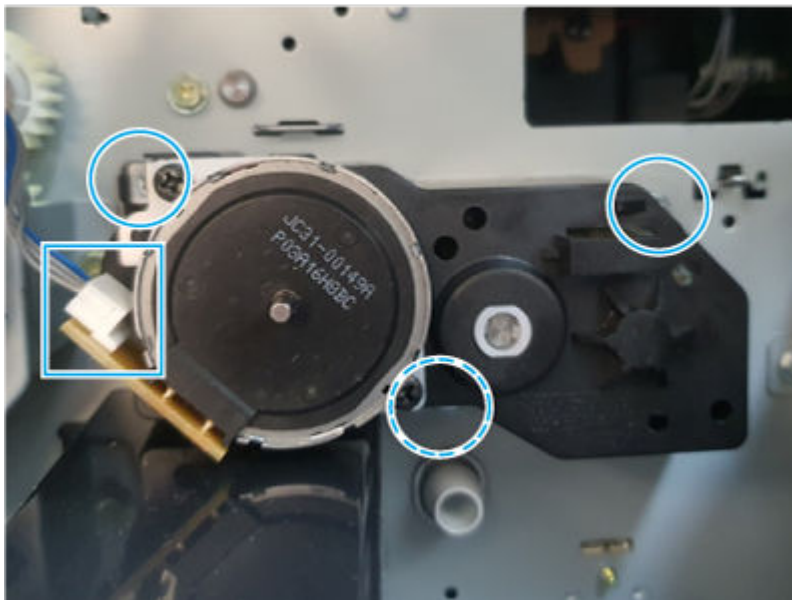


4. Remove the Tray 2 pickup drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 2 pickup drive assembly.

- Unplug one connector, remove three screws, and then remove the Tray 2 pickup drive assembly.

Figure 6-210 Remove the assembly

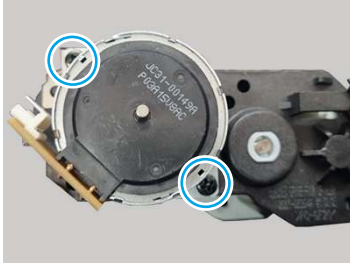


5. Remove the Tray 2 pickup motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 2 pickup motor.

- Remove two screws, and then remove the motor.

Figure 6-211 Remove the motor



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 3 pickup drive assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the Tray 3 pickup drive assembly.



[View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 3 pickup drive assembly.](#)

Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-40 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ90-64001	Tray 2 pickup drive assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

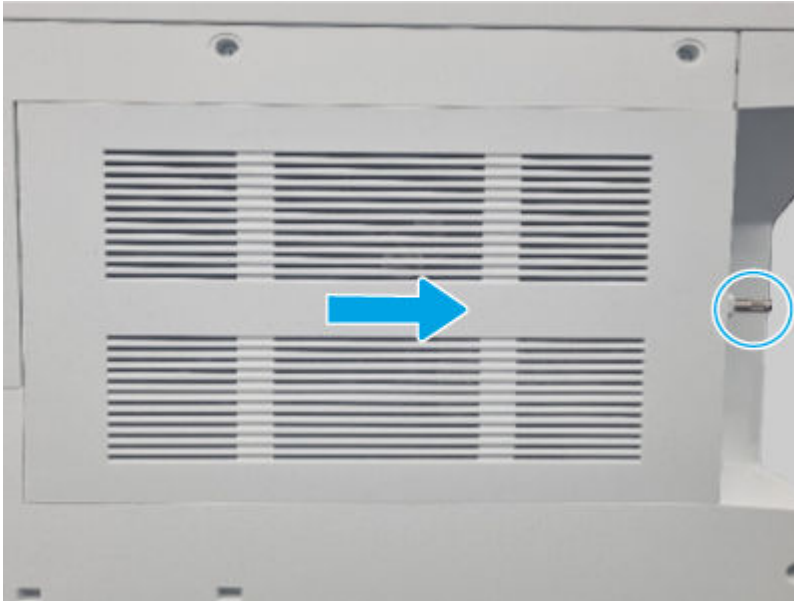
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-212 Remove the cover



2. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

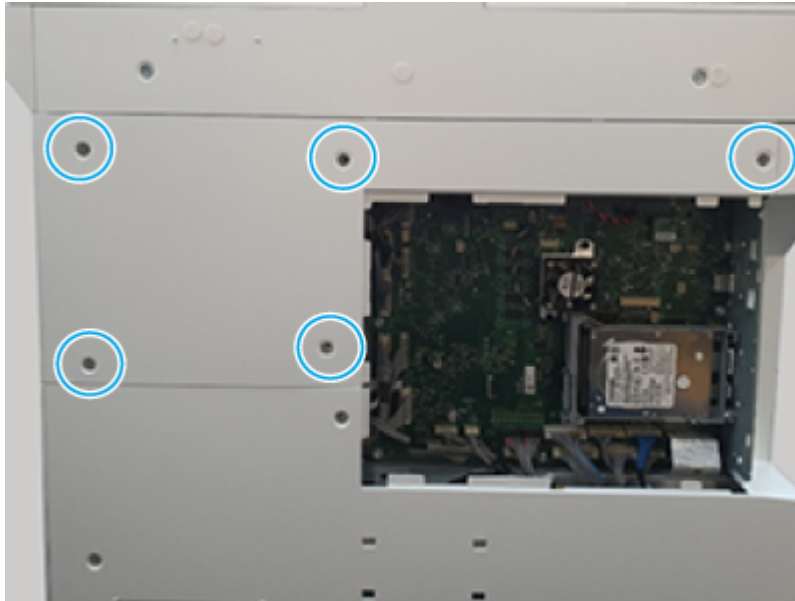
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-213 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-214 Remove the cover



3. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove six screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-215 Remove the cover



4. Remove the Tray 3 pickup drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 3 pickup drive assembly.

1. Unplug one connector and remove three screws.


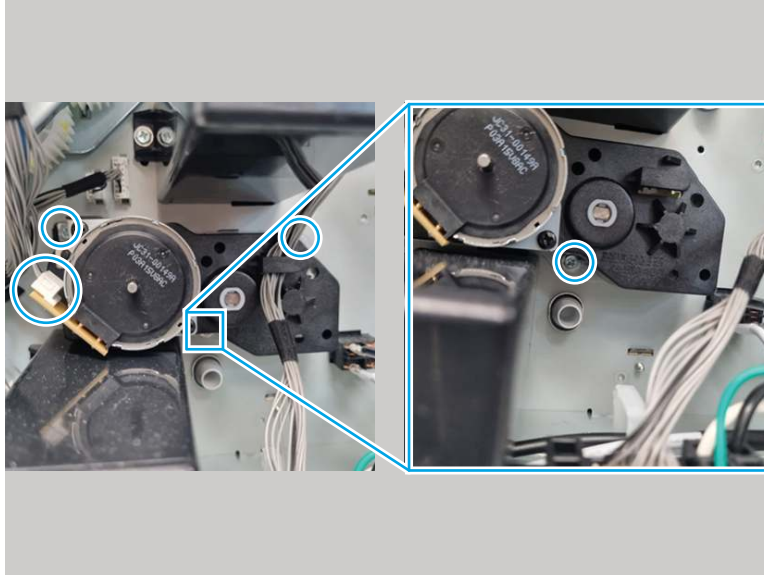
 **NOTE:** Release one wire harness from the retainer on the assembly.

Figure 6-216 Remove one connector and three screws



2. Remove the Tray 3 pickup drive assembly.

5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 3 pickup motor

Learn about removing and replacing the Tray 3 pickup motor.

Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-41 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ90-64002	Drive-motor, step (Tray 3 pickup motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

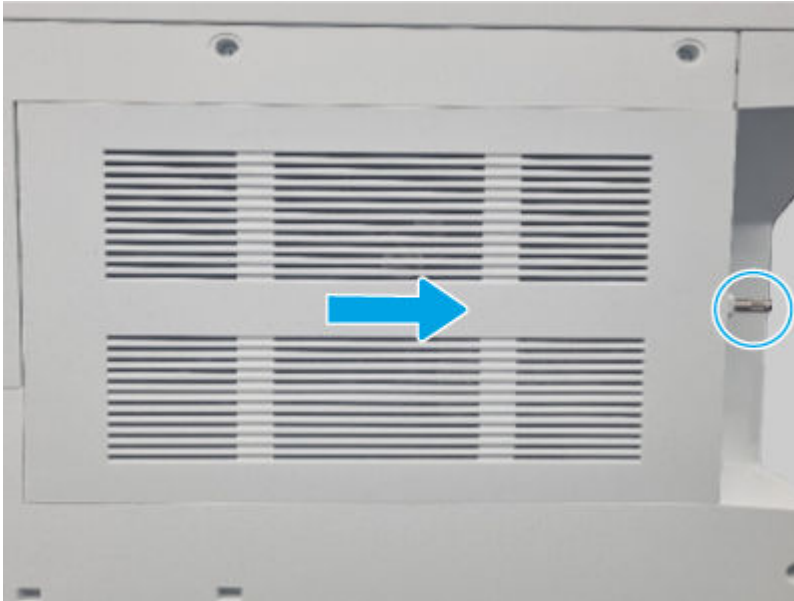
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-217 Remove the cover



2. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

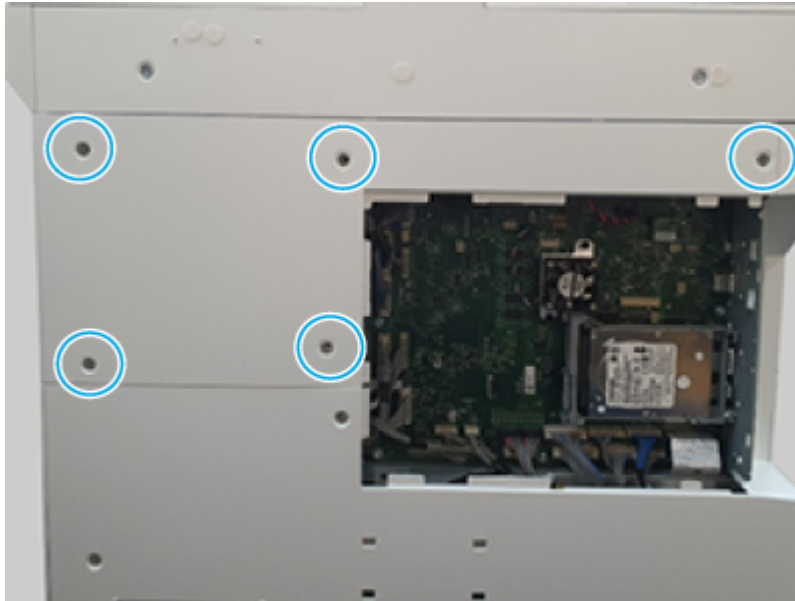
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-218 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-219 Remove the cover



3. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove six screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-220 Remove the cover



4. Remove the Tray 3 pickup drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 3 pickup drive assembly.

1. Unplug one connector and remove three screws.


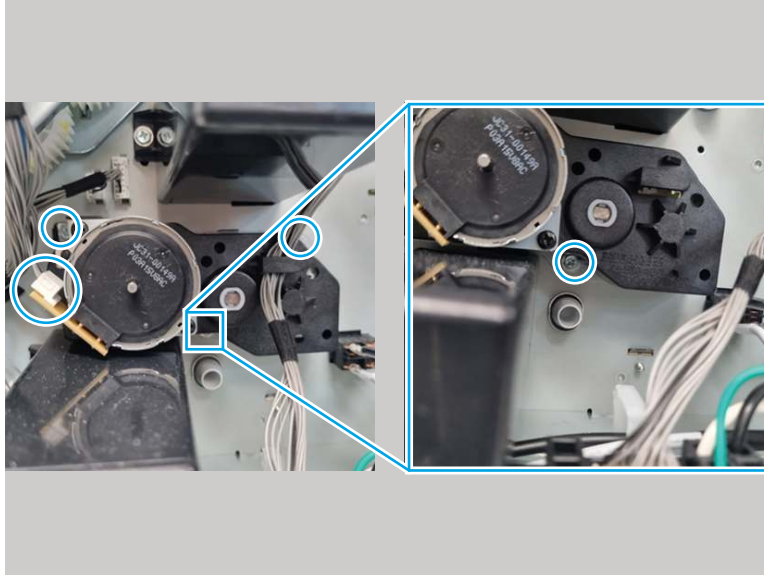
 **NOTE:** Release one wire harness from the retainer on the assembly.

Figure 6-221 Remove one connector and three screws



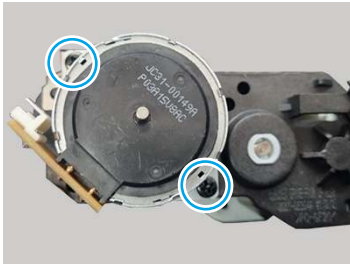
2. Remove the Tray 3 pickup drive assembly.

5. Remove the Tray 3 pickup motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 3 pickup motor.

- Remove two screws, and then remove the motor.

Figure 6-222 Remove the motor



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.


<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.




CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 3 pickup assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the Tray 3 pickup assembly.



[View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 3 pickup assembly.](#)


Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-42 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01729A	Tray3 pickup assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right rear cover.

1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-223 Remove three screws



2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove three rear lower cover screws.
 - b. Slightly separate the rear lower cover from the printer.
 - c. Open the right door, and then remove the right rear cover.

Figure 6-224 Remove the cover



2. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

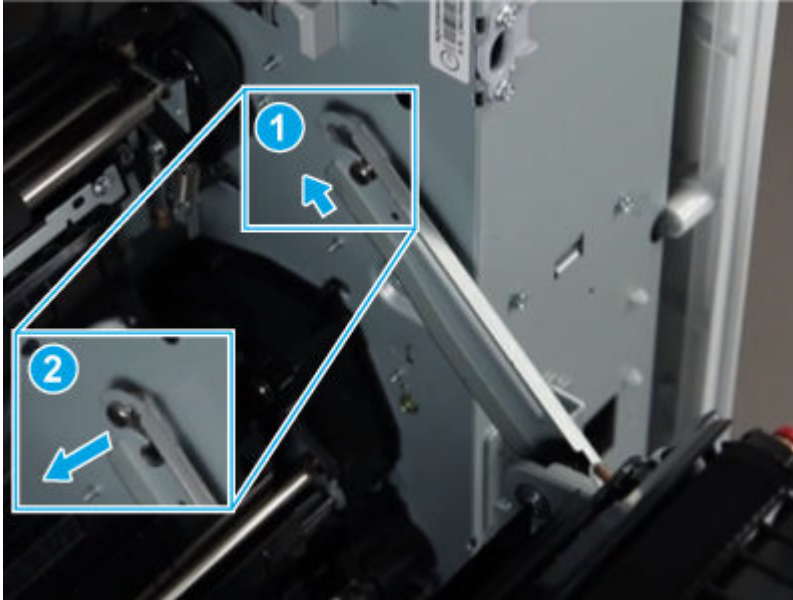
Figure 6-225 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

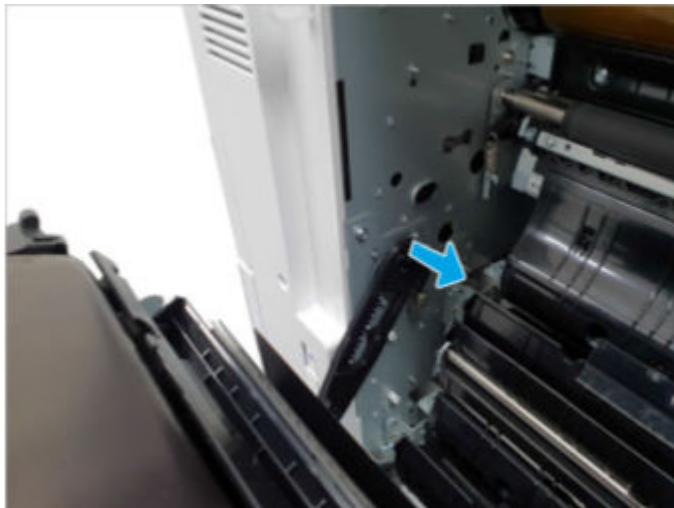
⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-226 Release the hinge



3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-227 Release the link



4. Remove the right door assembly.

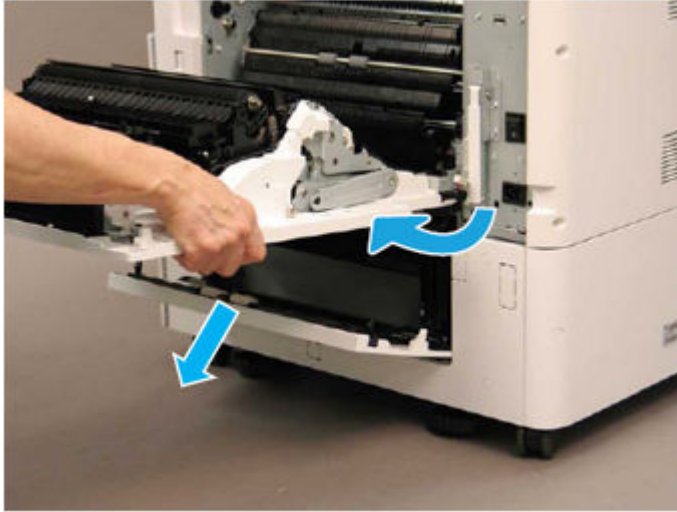


NOTE: If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.


CAUTION: To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-228 Remove the door



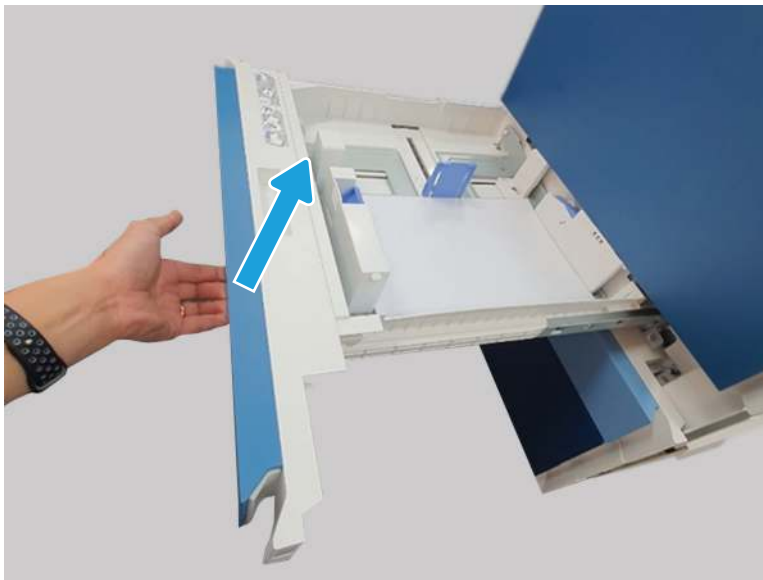
3. Remove Tray 2 or Tray 3

Use the following procedure to remove and replace Tray 2 or Tray 3.

 **NOTE:** Tray 2 is shown in the figure below. However, removing Tray 3 is identical to Tray 2.

- Pull the tray almost all of the way out of the printer, and then lift it up to remove it.

Figure 6-229 Remove the tray



4. Remove the Tray 3 pickup assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 3 pickup assembly.

1. Remove one screw.

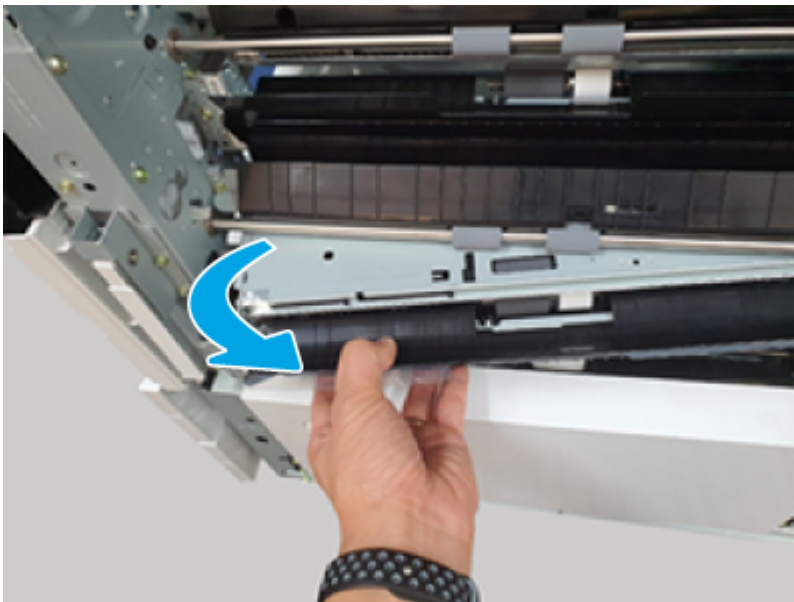
Figure 6-230 Remove one screw



2. Rotate the left side of pickup assembly away from the printer.

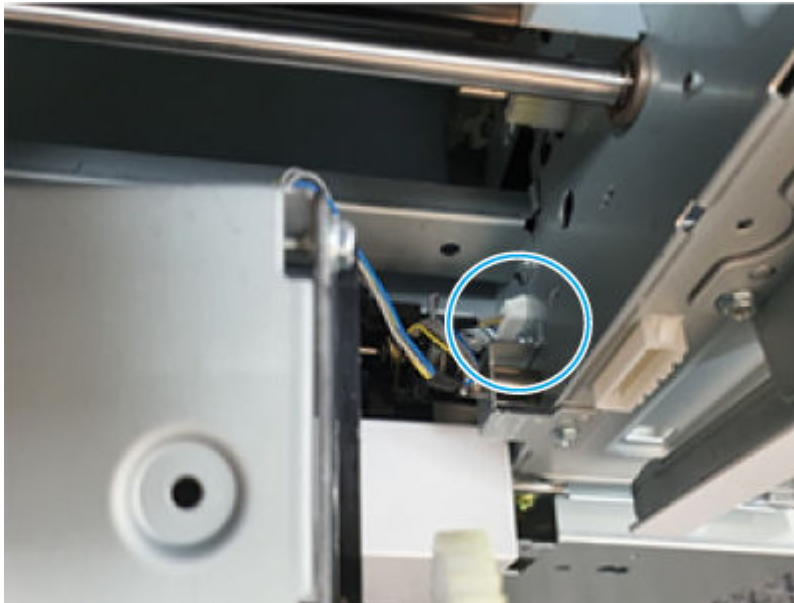
⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the assembly. It is still attached to the printer by a wire harness and connector.

Figure 6-231 Rotate the assembly away from the printer



3. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the assembly.

Figure 6-232 Remove the assembly



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 3 empty and stack height sensors

Learn about removing and replacing the Tray 3 empty and stack height sensors.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-43 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Tray 3 empty sensor)
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Tray 3 stack height sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right rear cover.

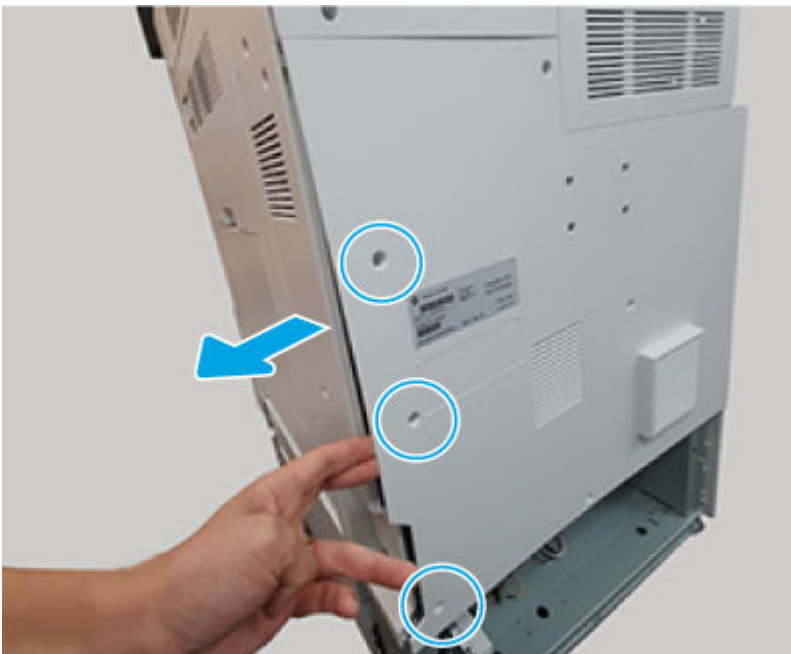
1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-233 Remove three screws



2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove three rear lower cover screws.
 - b. Slightly separate the rear lower cover from the printer.
 - c. Open the right door, and then remove the right rear cover.

Figure 6-234 Remove the cover



2. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

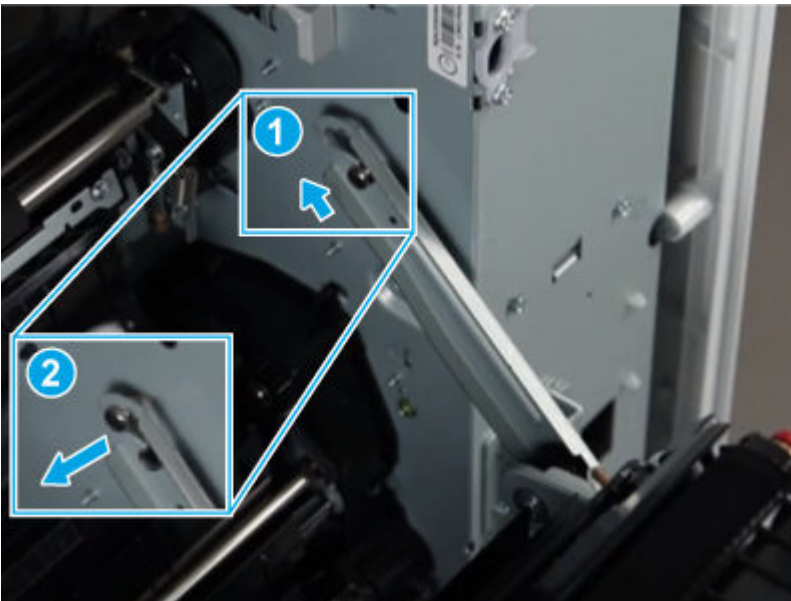
Figure 6-235 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

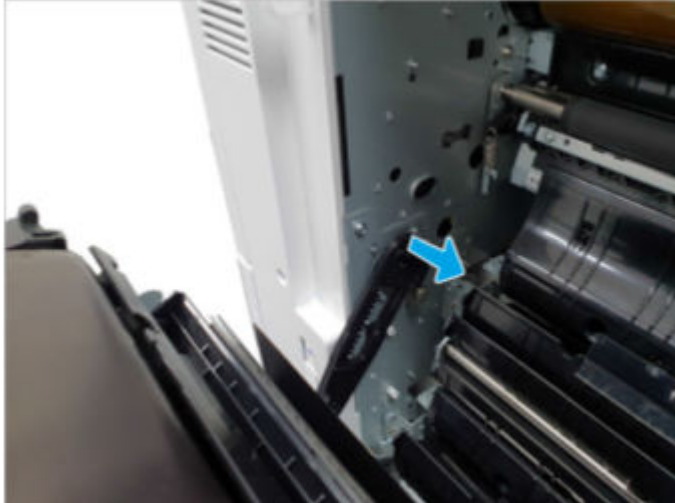
⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-236 Release the hinge




3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-237 Release the link



4. Remove the right door assembly.

 **NOTE:** If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.


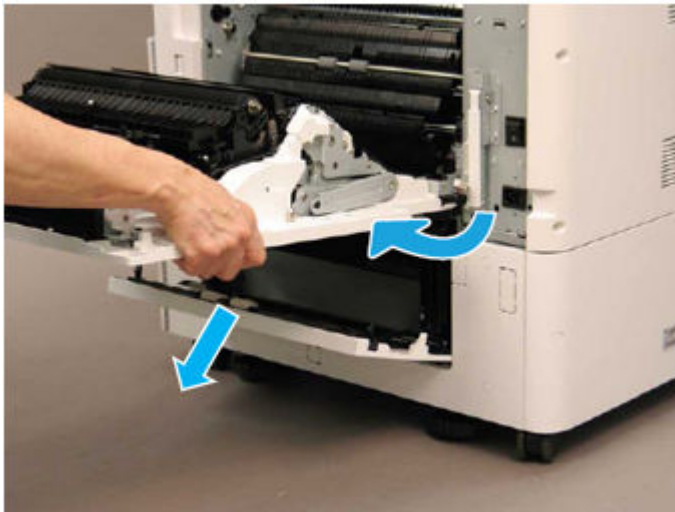

 **CAUTION:** To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-238 Remove the door



3. Remove Tray 2 or Tray 3

Use the following procedure to remove and replace Tray 2 or Tray 3.

 **NOTE:** Tray 2 is shown in the figure below. However, removing Tray 3 is identical to Tray 2.

- Pull the tray almost all of the way out of the printer, and then lift it up to remove it.

Figure 6-239 Remove the tray



4. Remove the Tray 3 pickup assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 3 pickup assembly.

1. Remove one screw.

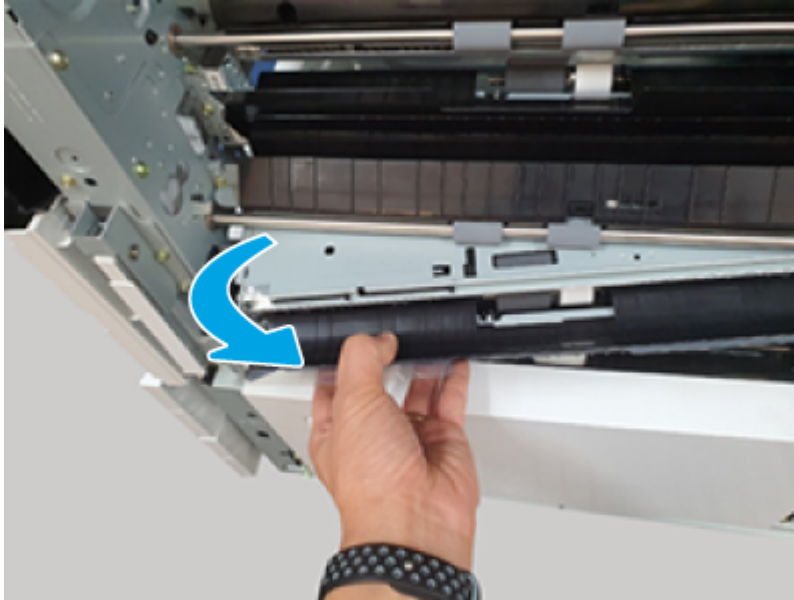
Figure 6-240 Remove one screw



2. Rotate the left side of pickup assembly away from the printer.

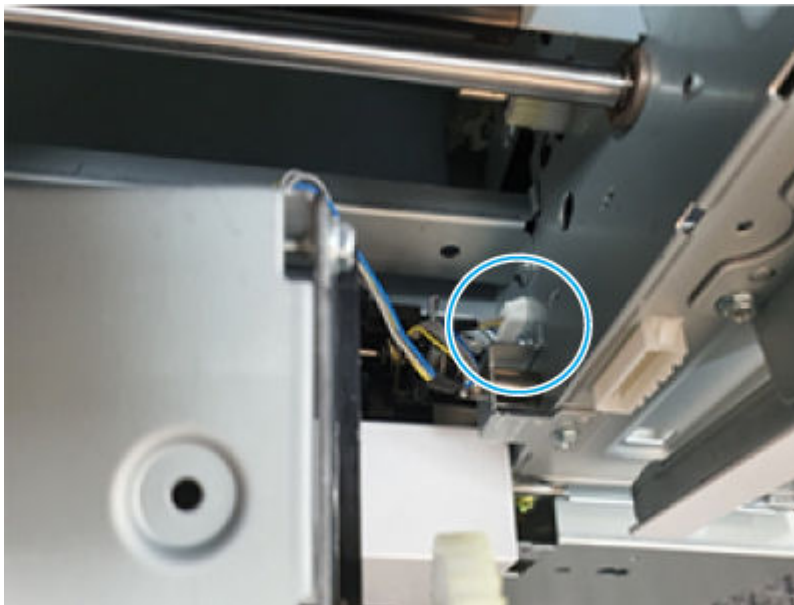
⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the assembly. It is still attached to the printer by a wire harness and connector.

Figure 6-241 Rotate the assembly away from the printer



3. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the assembly.

Figure 6-242 Remove the assembly

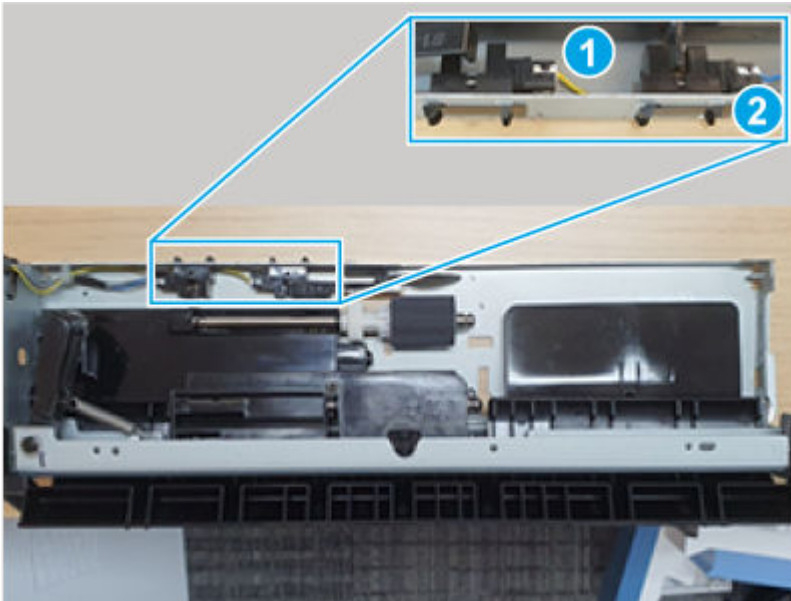


5. Remove the Tray 3 empty and stack height sensors

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 3 empty and stack height sensors.

1. Locate the Tray 3 empty (callout 1) and stack height (callout 2) sensors on the pickup assembly.

Figure 6-243 Locate the sensors



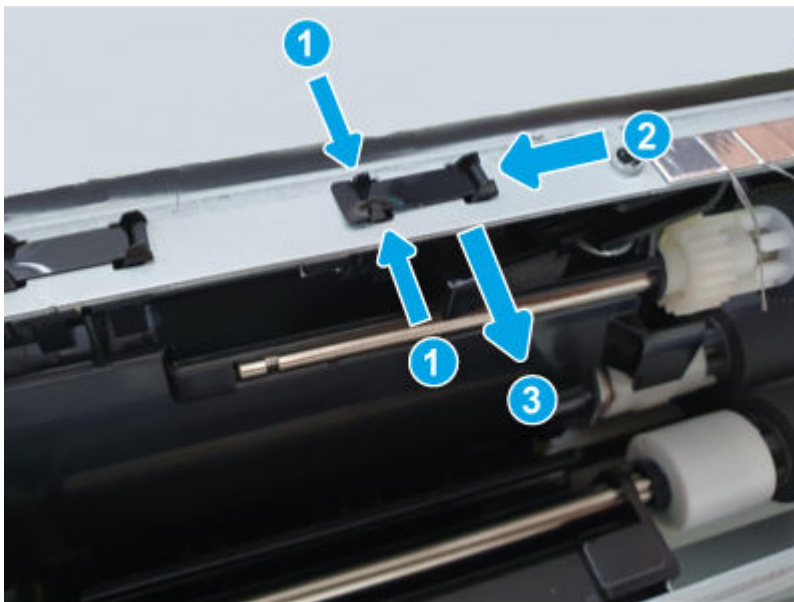
2. Do the following:



NOTE: The black ESD insulator sheet does not need to be removed.

- Release the hooks (callout 1).
- Slide the sensor assembly to the left (callout 2).
- Push the sensor assembly as shown (callout 3) to release it.

Figure 6-244 Release the sensors



3. Disconnect the connector and remove the sensor assembly.

Figure 6-245 Remove the sensors



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 3 open and paper size sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the Tray 3 open and paper size sensor.



NOTE: This procedure removes the front door for better access to the sensor.



[View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 3 open and paper size sensor.](#)

Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-44 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-00018B	Tray 3 open and paper size sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove Tray 2 or Tray 3

Use the following procedure to remove and replace Tray 2 or Tray 3.



NOTE: Tray 2 is shown in the figure below. However, removing Tray 3 is identical to Tray 2.

- Pull the tray almost all of the way out of the printer, and then lift it up to remove it.

Figure 6-246 Remove the tray



2. Remove the front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the front cover.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-247 Remove two screws



2. Push in on the hook located at the right side of the cover (callout 1), and then remove the cover (callout 2).

Figure 6-248 Remove the cover

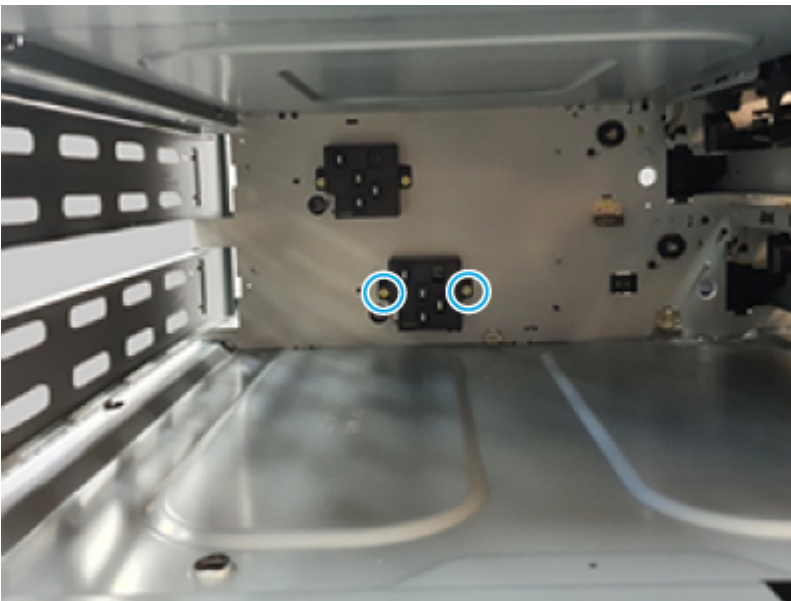


3. Remove the Tray 3 open and paper size sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 3 open and paper size sensor.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-249 Remove two screws



2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the sensor assembly.


 **NOTE:** The sensor assembly is located far back in the tray cavity. Hold the sensor as shown below to easily disconnect (and reconnect at installation) the connector.

Figure 6-250 Remove the sensor



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray heater

Learn about removing and replacing the tray heaters.


Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-45 Part information

Part number	Part description
Y1G22-67901	Tray heater 110V
Y1G22-67902	Tray heater 220V

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove Tray 2 or Tray 3

Use the following procedure to remove and replace Tray 2 or Tray 3.

 **NOTE:** Tray 2 is shown in the figure below. However, removing Tray 3 is identical to Tray 2.

- Pull the tray almost all of the way out of the printer, and then lift it up to remove it.

Figure 6-251 Remove the tray



2. Remove the Tray heater

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray heater.

1. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-252 Remove one screw



2. Do the following:
 - Slightly lift up on the front of the heater, and pull it toward the front of the printer.

CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the heater. It is still attached to the printer by a wire-harness connector.

- Disconnect one connector, and then remove the heater.

Figure 6-253 Remove the heater



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Main drive assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the main drive assembly.



[View a video of removing and replacing the feed drive assembly.](#)

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-46 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01676A	Main drive assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the TCU.

- Open the front door assembly. Push on each tab on the sides of the toner collection unit to release it, and then pull it straight out of the printer.

Figure 6-254 Remove the TCU



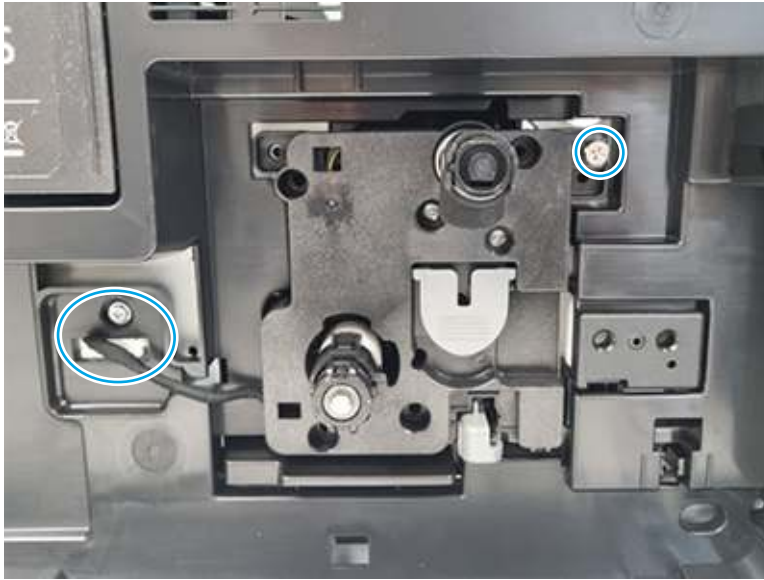
2. Remove the black drum unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the black drum unit.

1. Open the right door.

2. At the front of the printer, release one screw and unplug one connector.

Figure 6-255 Release one screw



3. Pull the drum unit out of the printer.


 **NOTE:** If the drum assembly is being removed to access other parts, skip the remaining steps. Those steps are for replacing the drum unit only.

Figure 6-256 Remove the unit



4. Set the drum unit down horizontally and remove six screws


Figure 6-257 Remove six screws



5. Disconnect one connector.

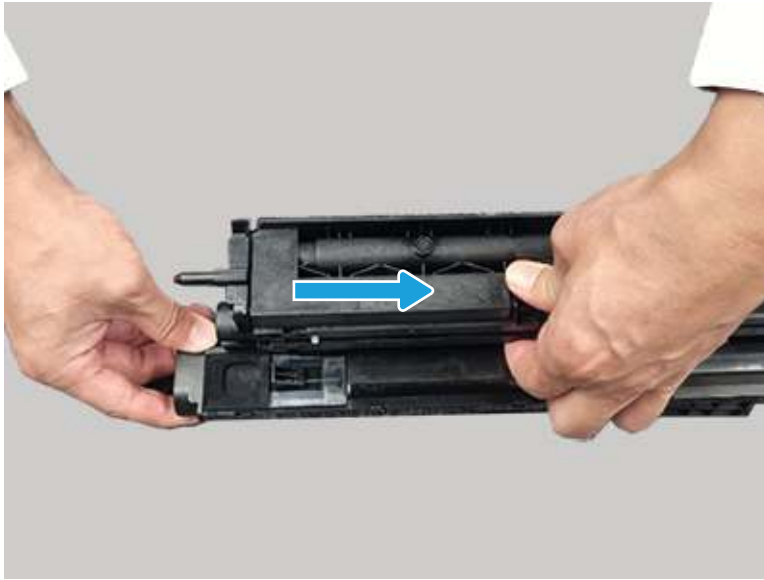
Figure 6-258 Disconnect one connector



 **Reinstallation tip:** Be sure to route the wire harness correctly when reinstalling this part.

6. Remove the drum cover.


Figure 6-259 Remove the drum cover



7. Remove the black drum unit.

Figure 6-260 Remove the drum unit



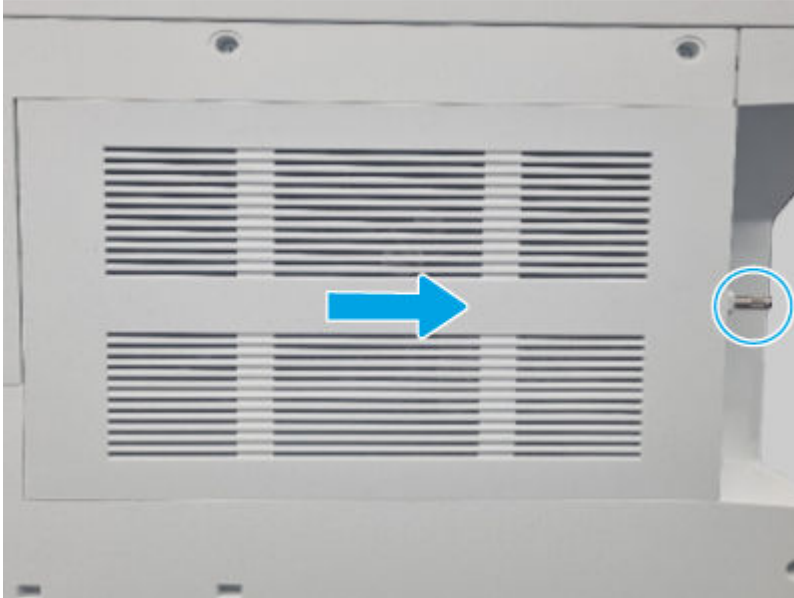
 **NOTE:** Be careful with spilled toner. If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

3. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-261 Remove the cover



4. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

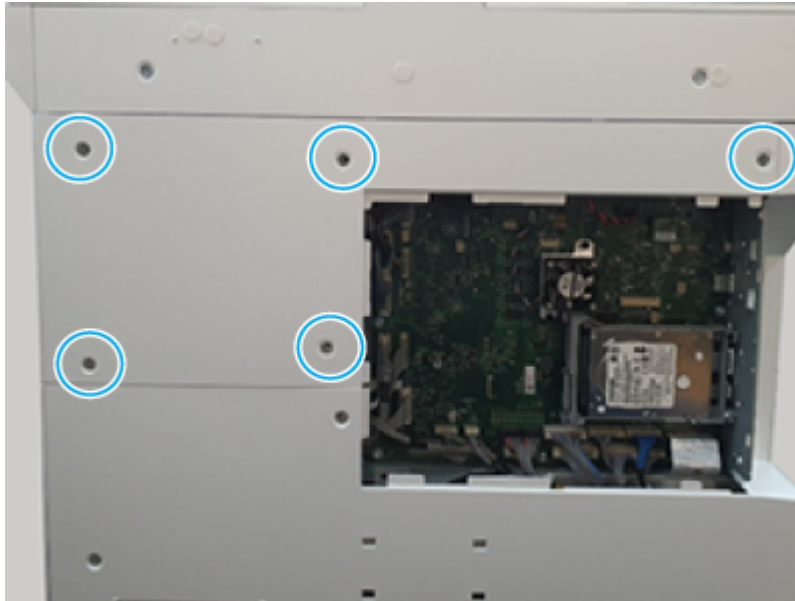
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-262 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-263 Remove the cover



5. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove six screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-264 Remove the cover

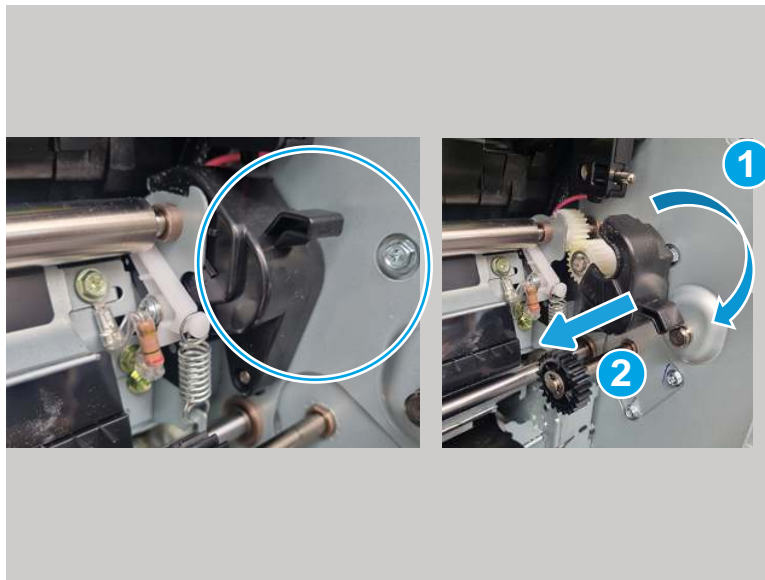


6. Remove the main drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the main drive assembly.

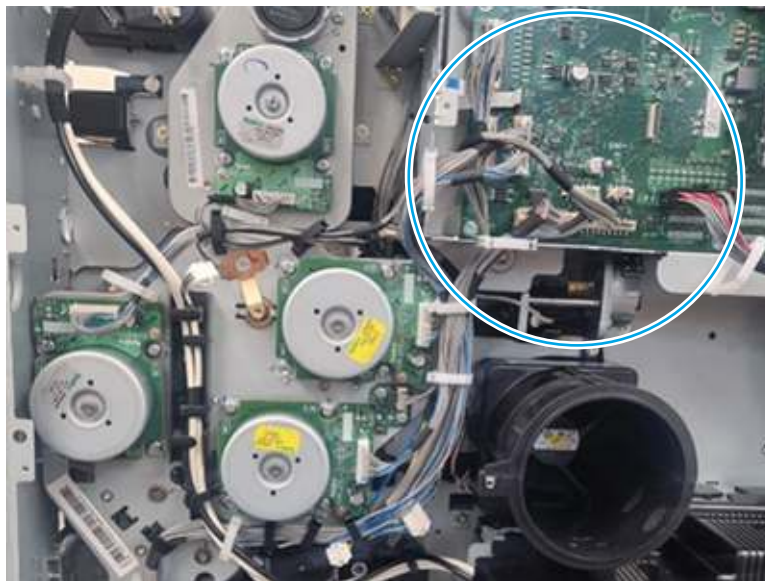
1. Remove the gear cover on the right side.

Figure 6-265 Remove the gear cover



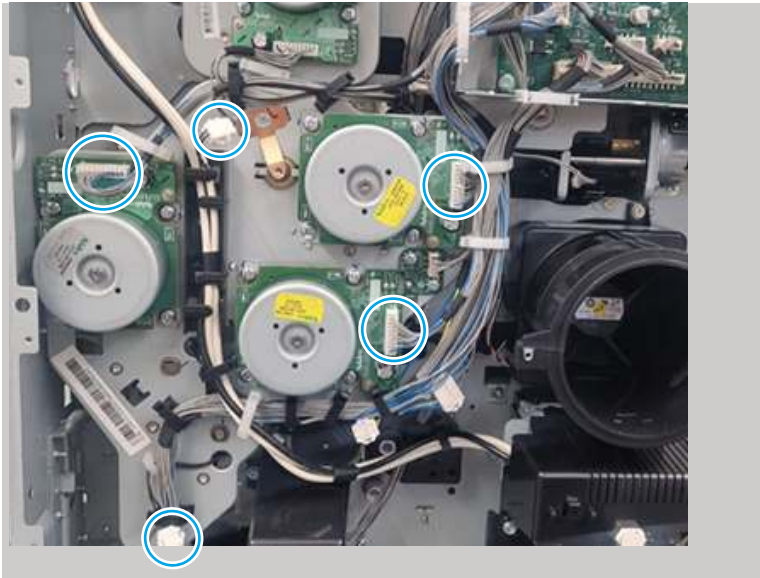
2. Unplug the connectors from the formatter.

Figure 6-266 Unplug the connectors



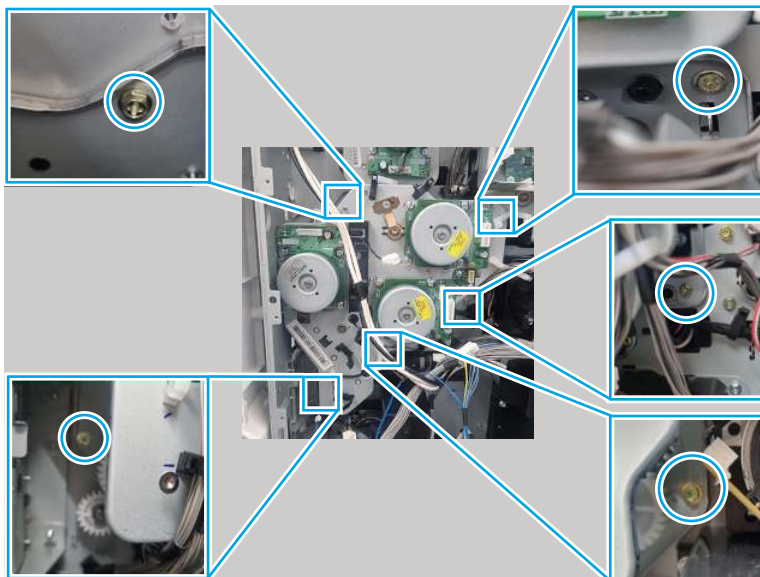
3. Disconnect five connectors linked to the main drive assembly.

Figure 6-267 Disconnect five connectors



4. Remove five screws, and then remove the feed drive assembly


Figure 6-268 Remove five screws





7. Unpack the replacement assembly


Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Feed regi MP motor

Learn about removing and replacing the feed regi MP motor.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-47 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00123B	Feed Regi MP motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the TCU.

- Open the front door assembly. Push on each tab on the sides of the toner collection unit to release it, and then pull it straight out of the printer.

Figure 6-269 Remove the TCU



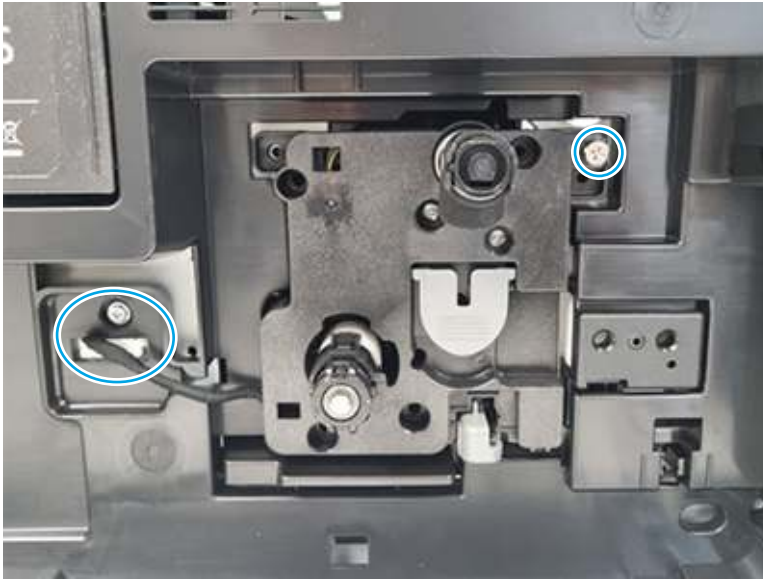
2. Remove the black drum unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the black drum unit.

1. Open the right door.

2. At the front of the printer, release one screw and unplug one connector.

Figure 6-270 Release one screw



3. Pull the drum unit out of the printer.


 **NOTE:** If the drum assembly is being removed to access other parts, skip the remaining steps. Those steps are for replacing the drum unit only.

Figure 6-271 Remove the unit



4. Set the drum unit down horizontally and remove six screws


Figure 6-272 Remove six screws



5. Disconnect one connector.

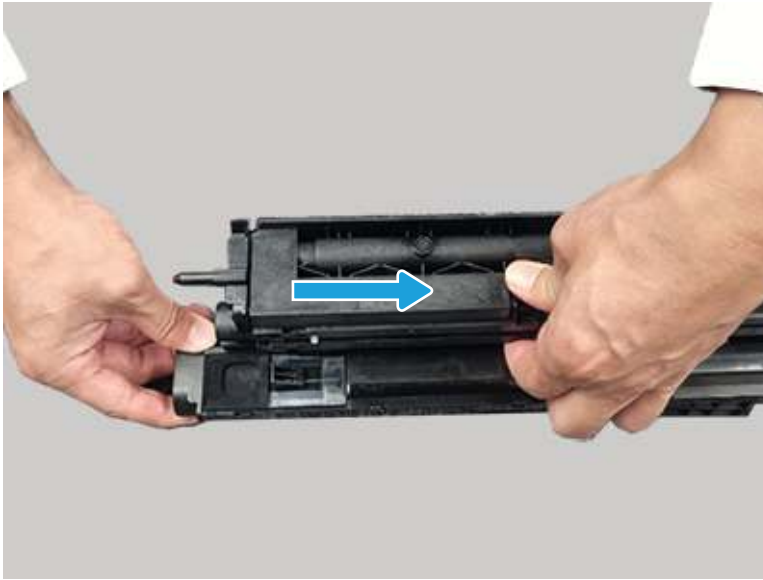
Figure 6-273 Disconnect one connector



 **Reinstallation tip:** Be sure to route the wire harness correctly when reinstalling this part.

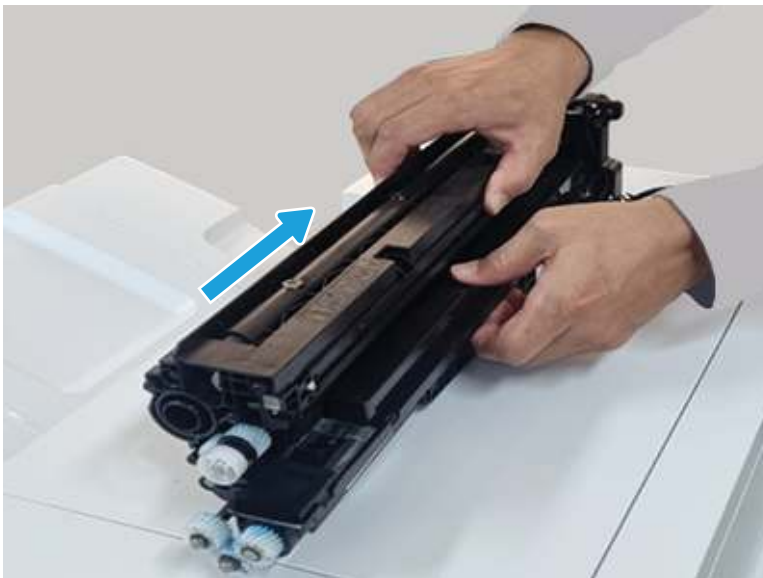
6. Remove the drum cover.


Figure 6-274 Remove the drum cover



7. Remove the black drum unit.

Figure 6-275 Remove the drum unit



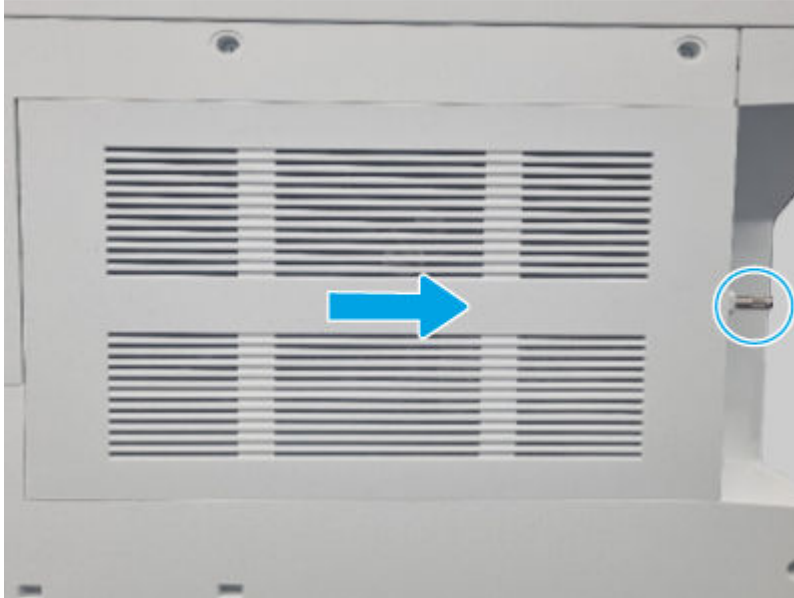
 **NOTE:** Be careful with spilled toner. If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

3. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-276 Remove the cover



4. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

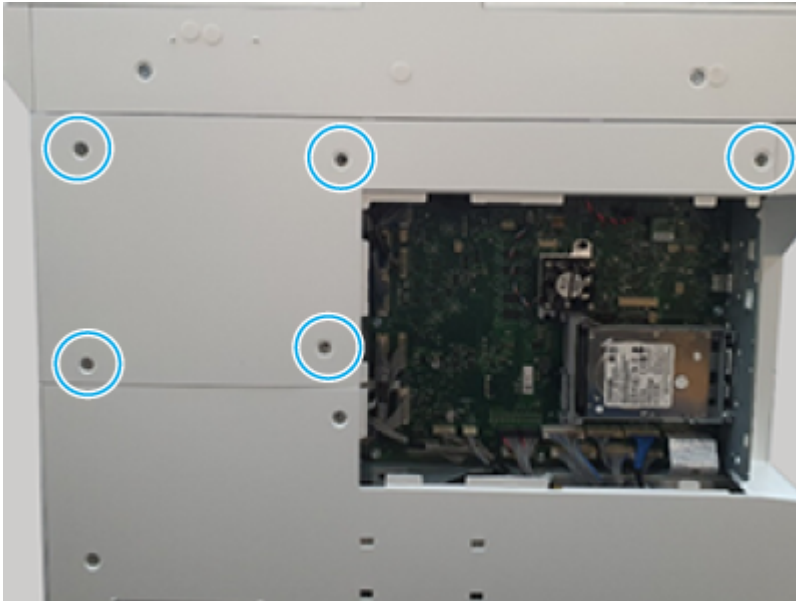
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-277 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-278 Remove the cover



5. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove six screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-279 Remove the cover

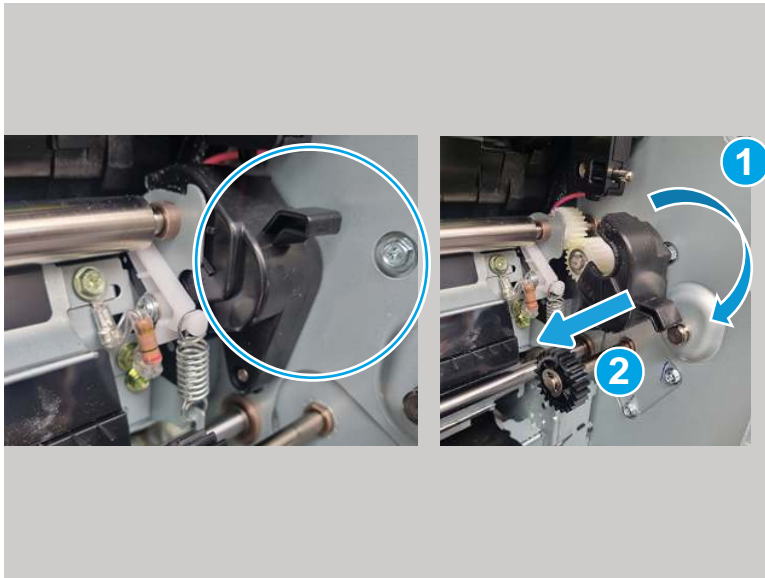


6. Remove the main drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the main drive assembly.

1. Remove the gear cover on the right side.

Figure 6-280 Remove the gear cover



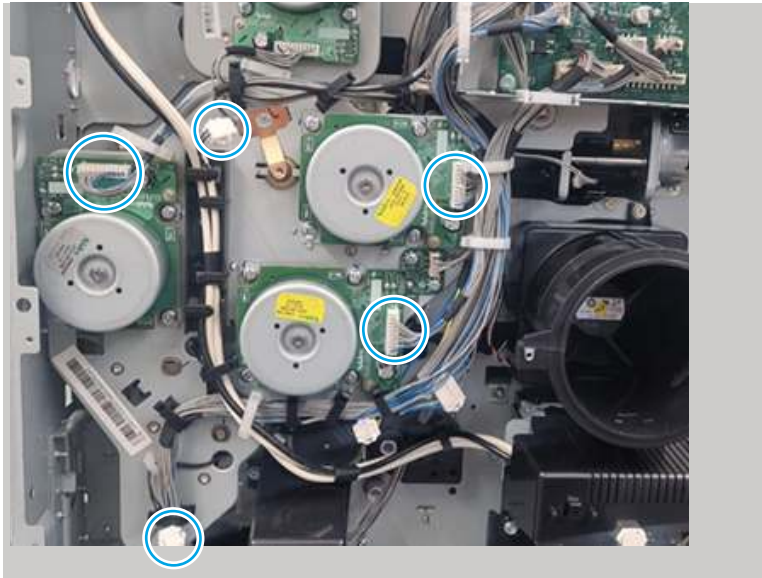
2. Unplug the connectors from the formatter.

Figure 6-281 Unplug the connectors



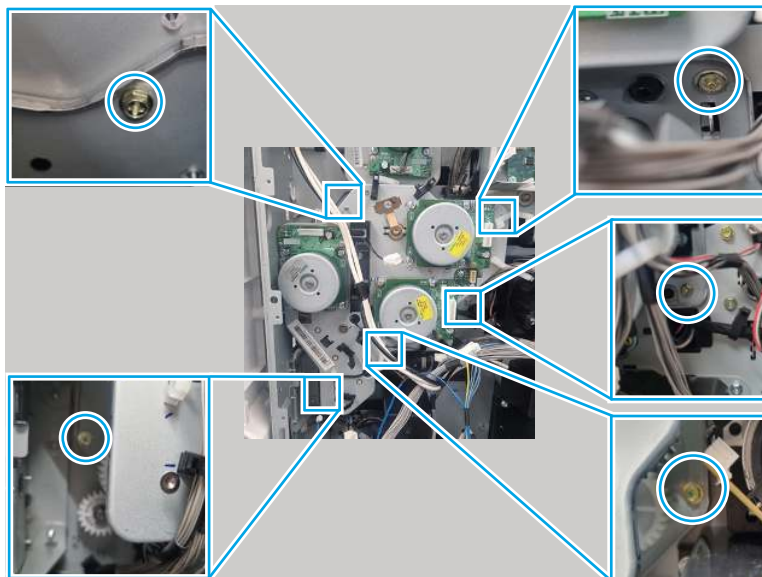
3. Disconnect five connectors linked to the main drive assembly.

Figure 6-282 Disconnect five connectors



4. Remove five screws, and then remove the feed drive assembly

Figure 6-283 Remove five screws



7. Remove the feed regi MP motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the feed regi MP motor.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the motor.

Figure 6-284 Remove four screws



8. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray Feed 2 sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the Tray 2 feed sensor.



[View a video on how to remove tray feed 2 sensor](#)

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-48 Part Information

Part number	Part description
0604-001381	Photo interrupter (Tray 2 feed sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right rear cover.

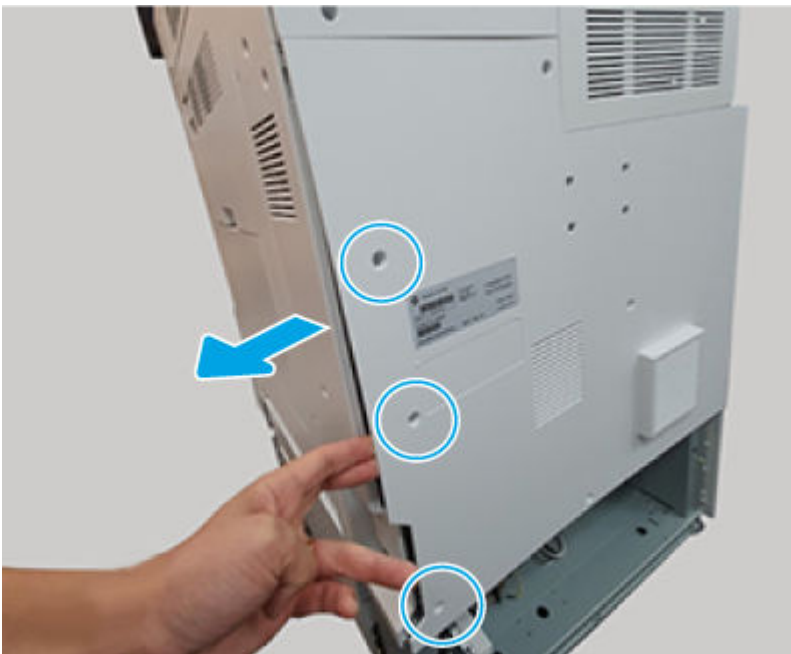
1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-285 Remove three screws



2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove three rear lower cover screws.
 - b. Slightly separate the rear lower cover from the printer.
 - c. Open the right door, and then remove the right rear cover.

Figure 6-286 Remove the cover



2. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

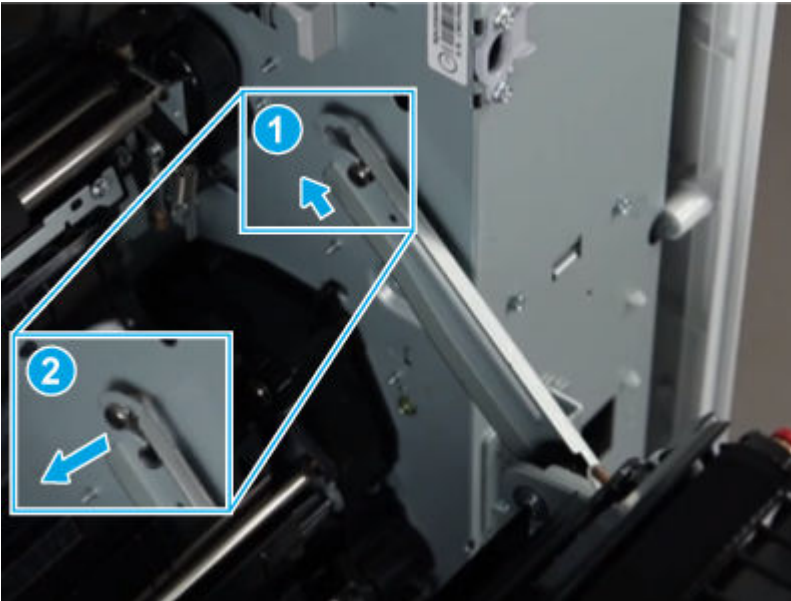
Figure 6-287 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

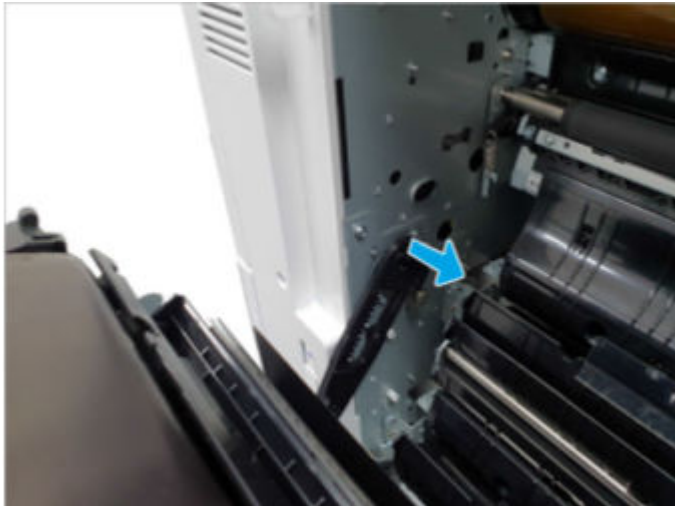
⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-288 Release the hinge




3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-289 Release the link



4. Remove the right door assembly.

 **NOTE:** If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.


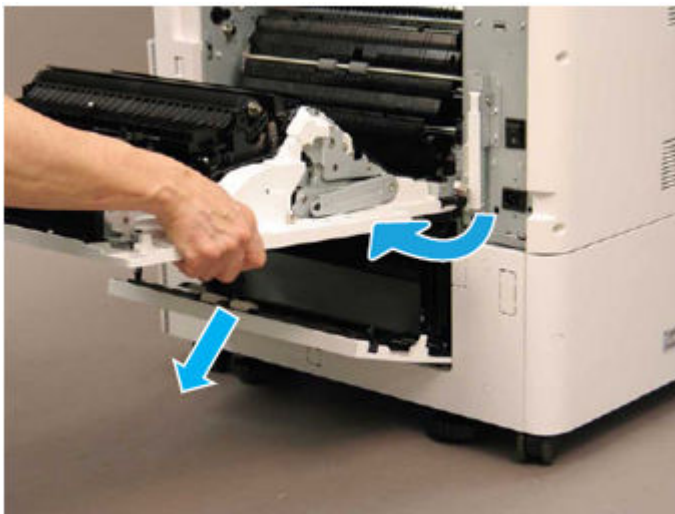
 **CAUTION:** To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-290 Remove the door



3. Remove the Tray 2 feed sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 2 feed sensor.

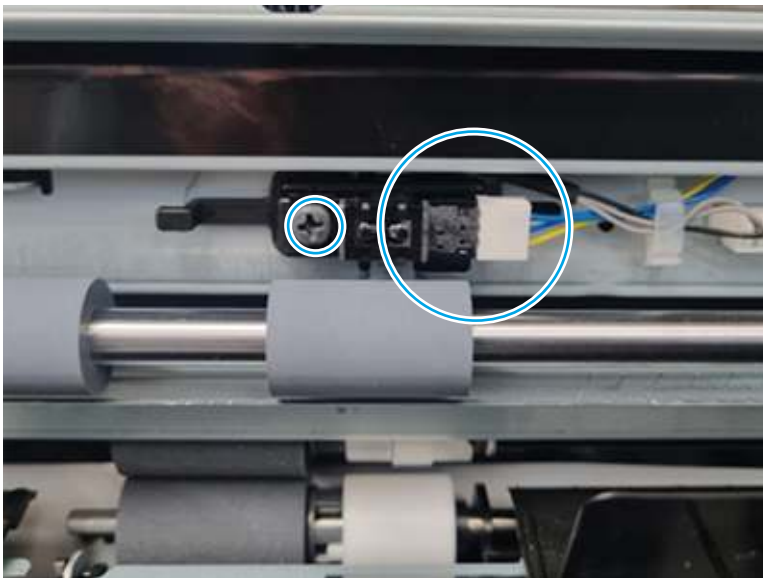
1. Remove two screws, and then remove the paper path guide.

Figure 6-291 Remove the guide



2. Remove one screw, disconnect one connector, and then remove the Tray 2 feed sensor.

Figure 6-292 Remove the sensor



4. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray Feed 3 sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the tray 3 feed sensor.

 [View a video on how to remove tray feed 3 sensor](#)


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-49 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001490	Photo interrupter (Tray 3 feed sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

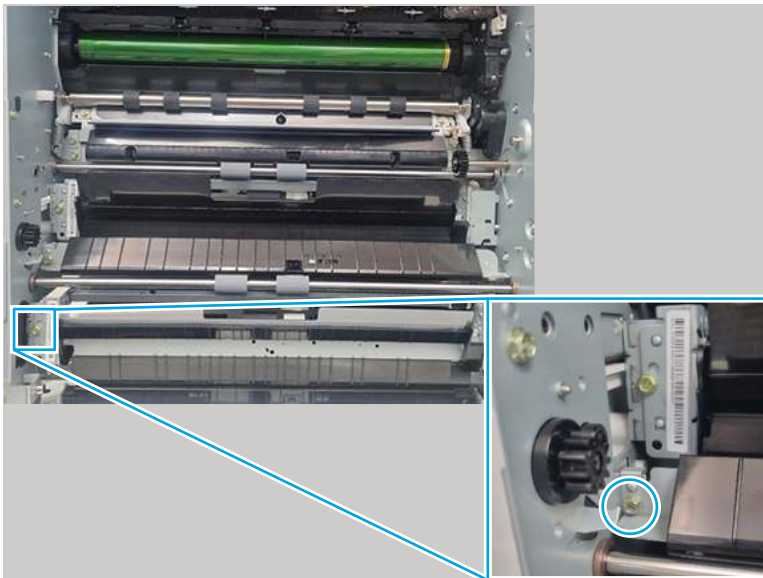
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the Tray 3 feed sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the Tray 3 feed sensor.

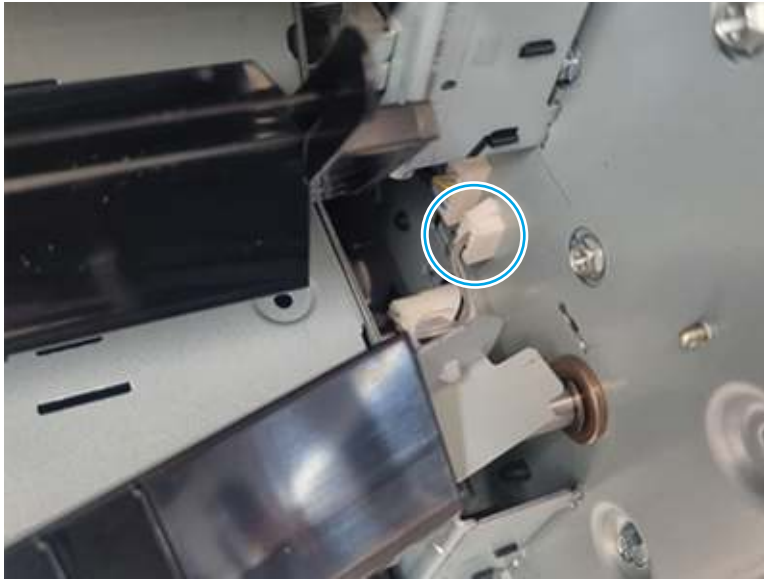
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-293 Remove one screw



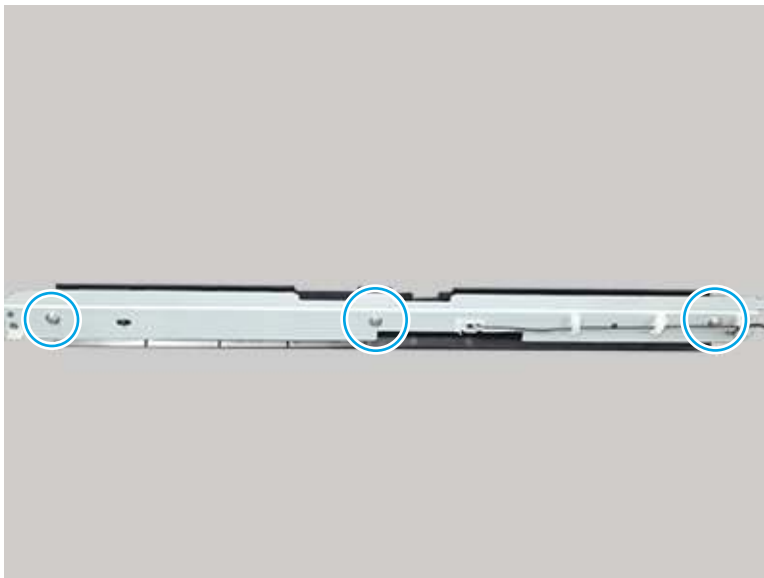
3. Rotate the left side of the assembly away from the printer, and then disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-294 Disconnect one connector



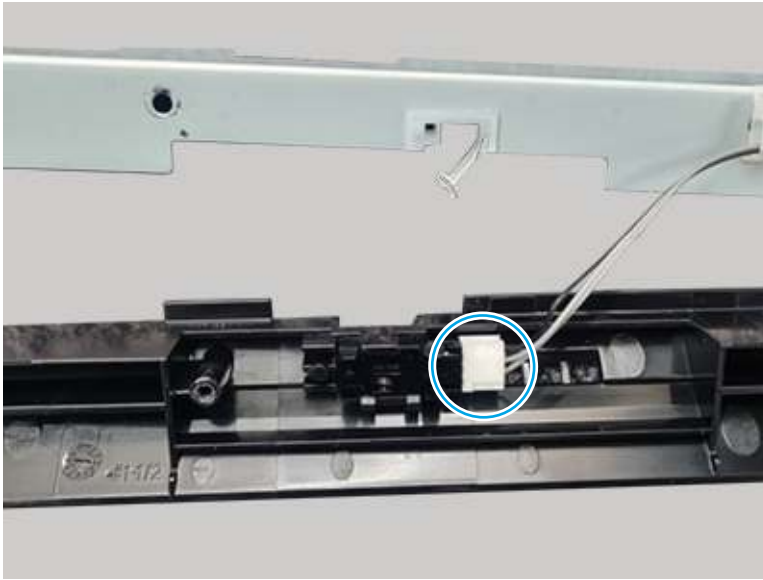
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-295 Remove three screws



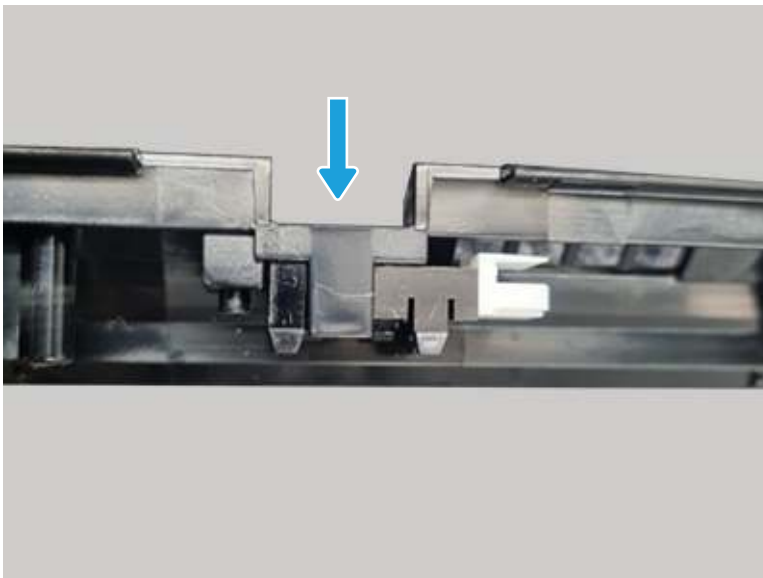
5. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-296 Disconnect one connector



6. Push the Tray 3 feed sensor down to remove it.


Figure 6-297 Remove the sensor



2. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Feed clutch

Learn about removing and replacing the feed clutch.


Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-50 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC47-00037A	Feed clutch

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the TCU.

- Open the front door assembly. Push on each tab on the sides of the toner collection unit to release it, and then pull it straight out of the printer.

Figure 6-298 Remove the TCU



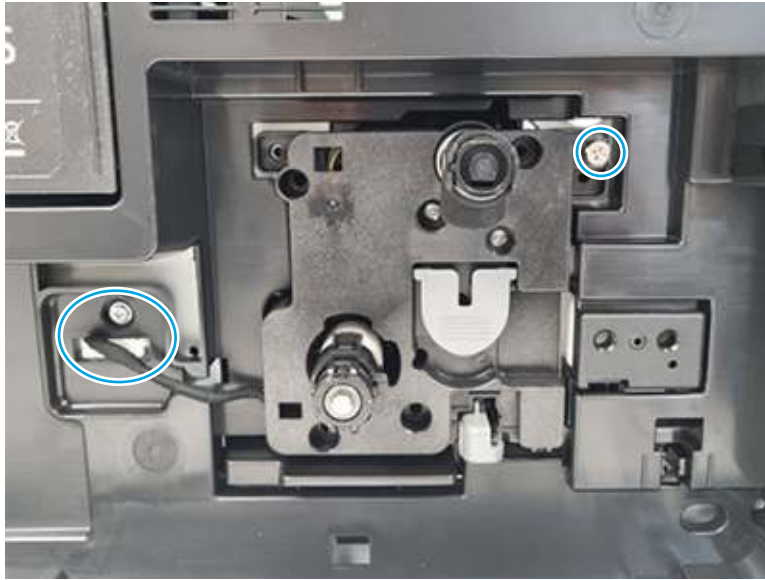
2. Remove the black drum unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the black drum unit.

1. Open the right door.

2. At the front of the printer, release one screw and unplug one connector.

Figure 6-299 Release one screw



3. Pull the drum unit out of the printer.


 **NOTE:** If the drum assembly is being removed to access other parts, skip the remaining steps. Those steps are for replacing the drum unit only.

Figure 6-300 Remove the unit



4. Set the drum unit down horizontally and remove six screws


Figure 6-301 Remove six screws



5. Disconnect one connector.

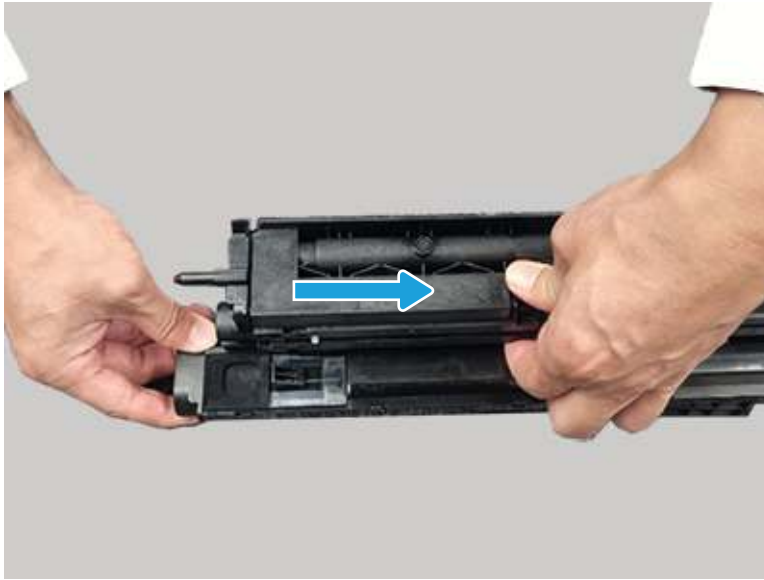
Figure 6-302 Disconnect one connector



 **Reinstallation tip:** Be sure to route the wire harness correctly when reinstalling this part.

6. Remove the drum cover.


Figure 6-303 Remove the drum cover



7. Remove the black drum unit.

Figure 6-304 Remove the drum unit



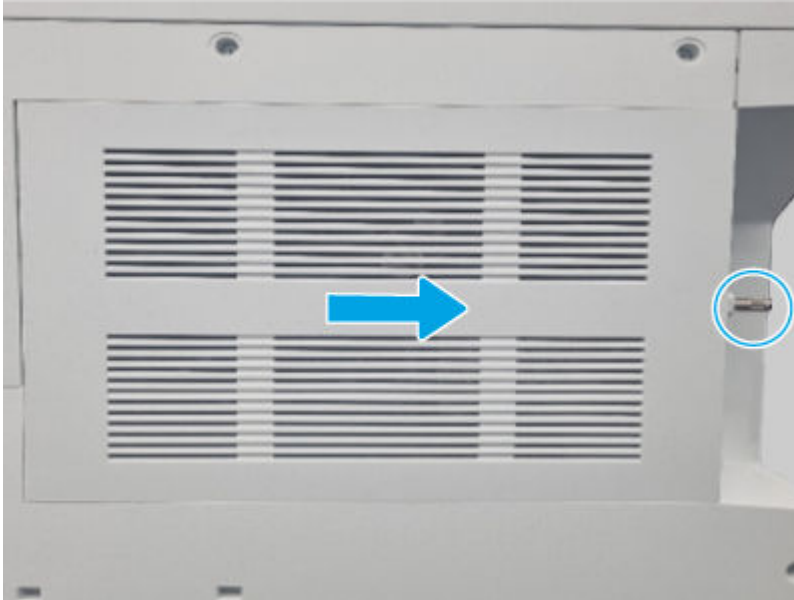
 **NOTE:** Be careful with spilled toner. If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

3. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-305 Remove the cover



4. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

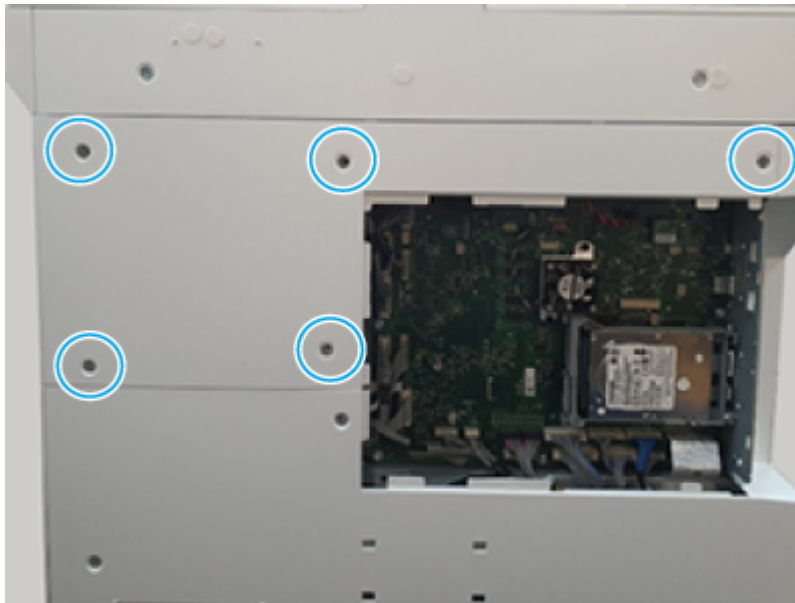
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-306 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-307 Remove the cover



5. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove six screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-308 Remove the cover

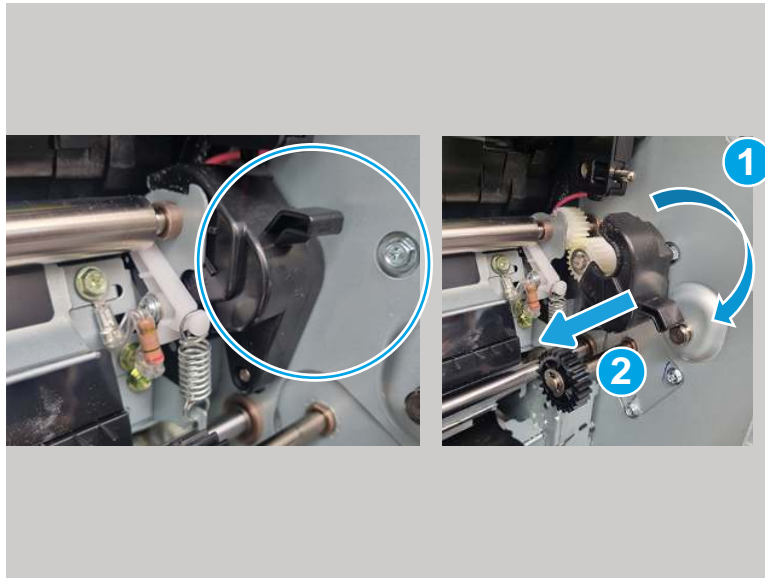


6. Remove the main drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the main drive assembly.

1. Remove the gear cover on the right side.

Figure 6-309 Remove the gear cover



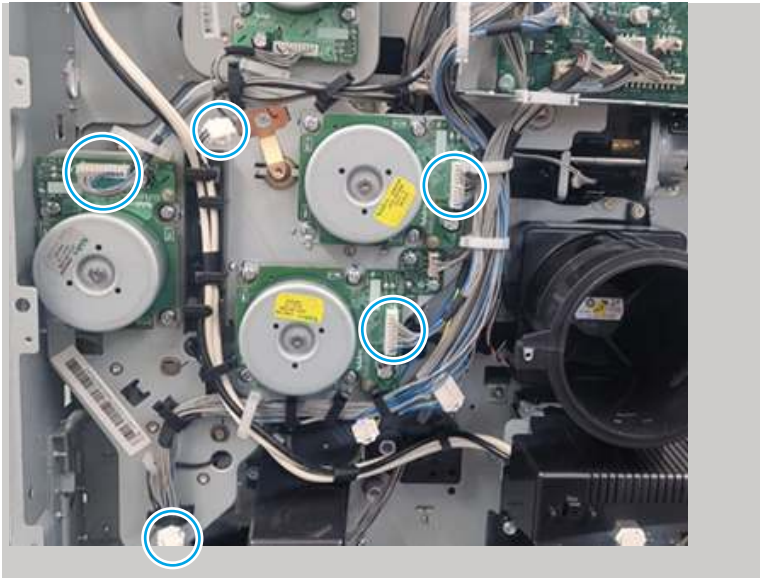
2. Unplug the connectors from the formatter.

Figure 6-310 Unplug the connectors



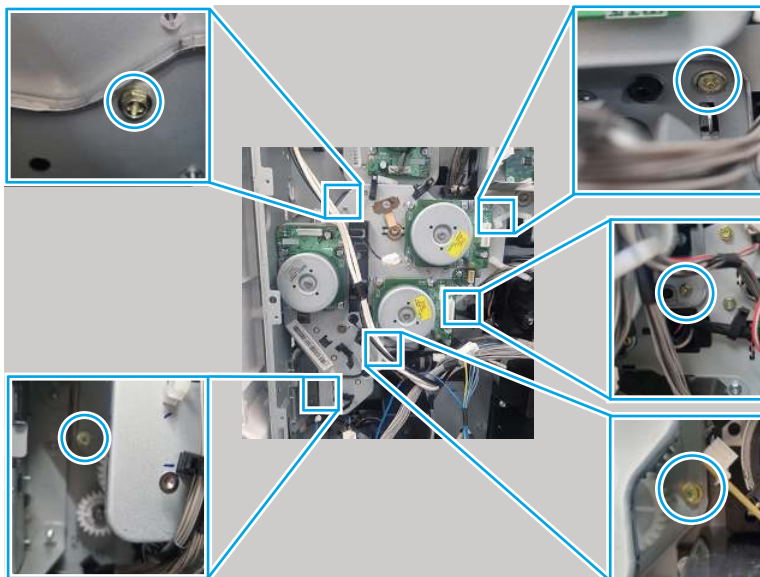
3. Disconnect five connectors linked to the main drive assembly.

Figure 6-311 Disconnect five connectors



4. Remove five screws, and then remove the feed drive assembly

Figure 6-312 Remove five screws

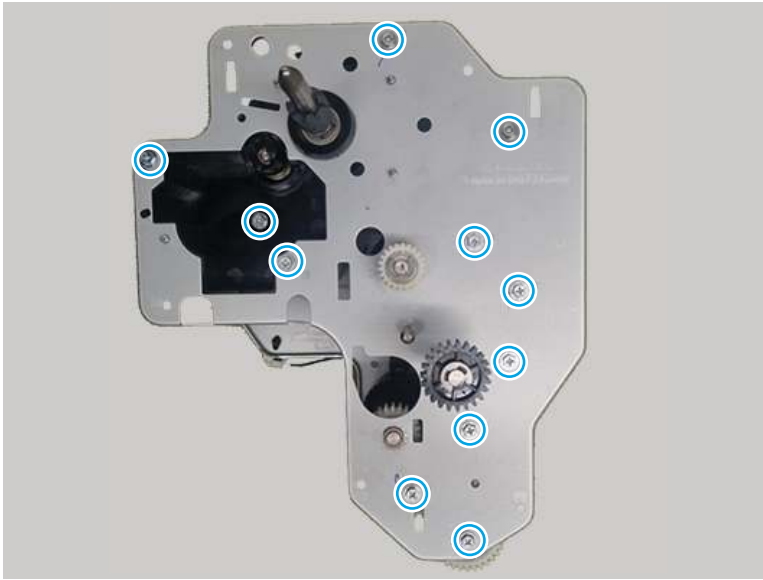


7. Remove the feed clutch

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the feed clutch.

1. Remove eleven screws.

Figure 6-313 Remove eleven screws



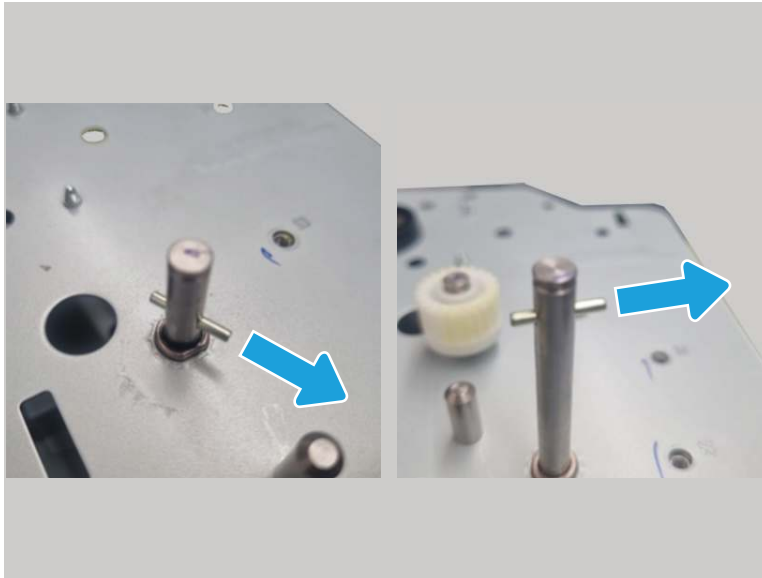
2. Remove two e-rings.


Figure 6-314 Remove two e-rings

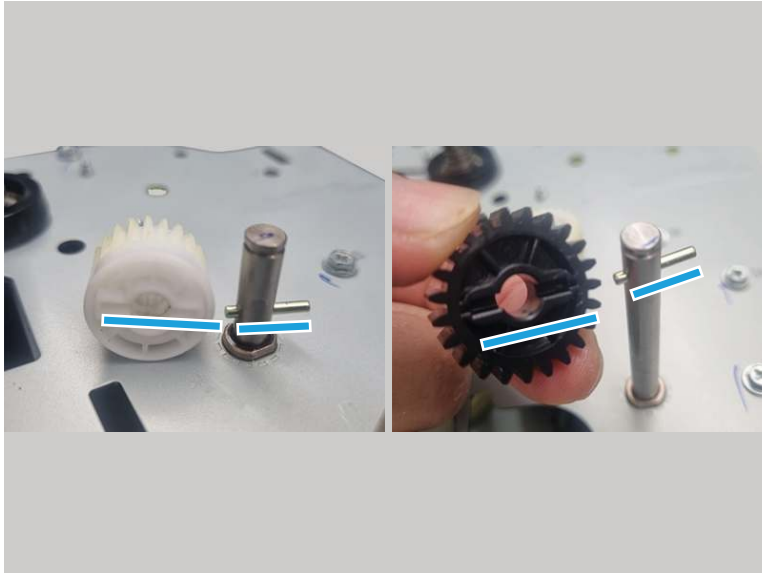


3. Remove two shafts.

Figure 6-315 Remove two shafts

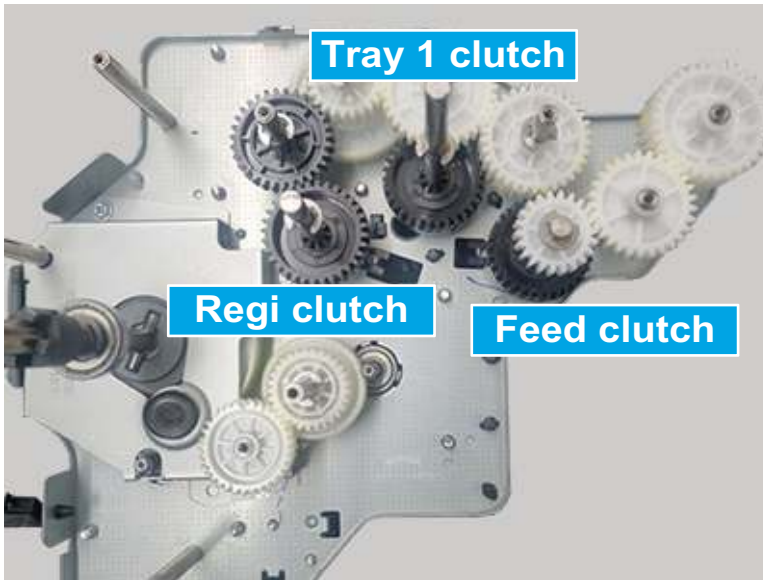


 **Reinstallation tip:** Pay attention to the shape of the gears when reinstalling.



4. Remove the plate of the Main drive assembly.

Figure 6-316 Remove the plate



5. Remove the feed clutch.

8. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Registration unit and loop sensing unit

Learn about registration unit and loop sensing unit parts removal and replacement.

Removal and replacement: Registration unit

Learn about removing and replacing the registration unit.


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-51 Part Information

Part number	Part description
5QJ90-60129	Registration unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right rear cover.

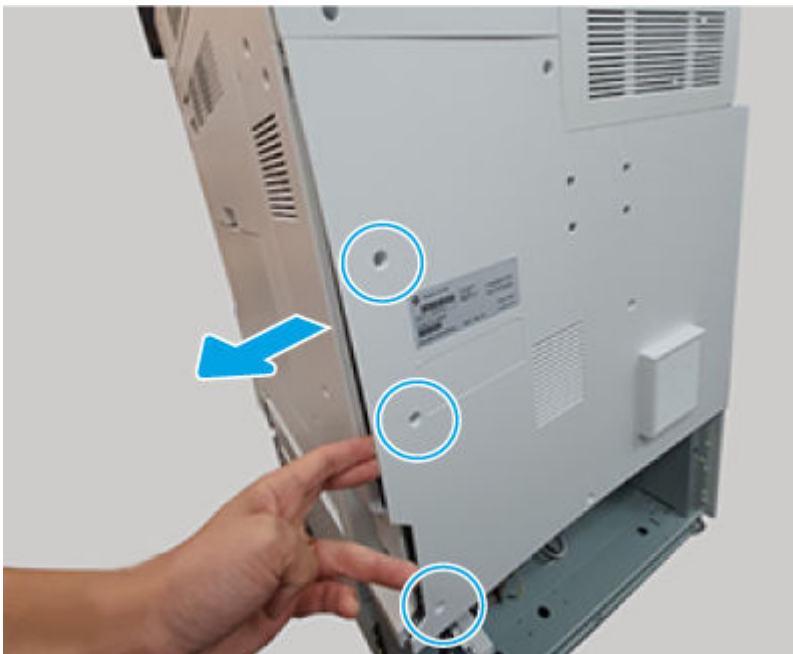
1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-317 Remove three screws



2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove three rear lower cover screws.
 - b. Slightly separate the rear lower cover from the printer.
 - c. Open the right door, and then remove the right rear cover.

Figure 6-318 Remove the cover



2. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

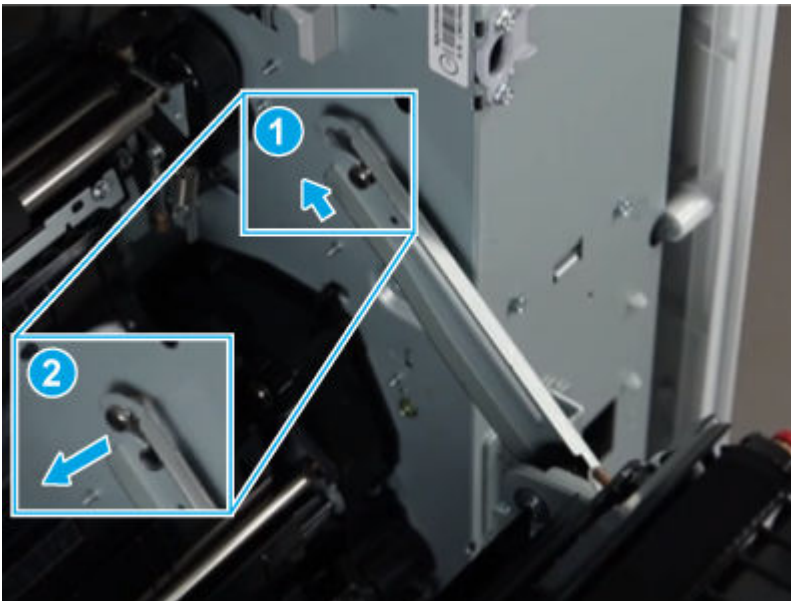
Figure 6-319 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

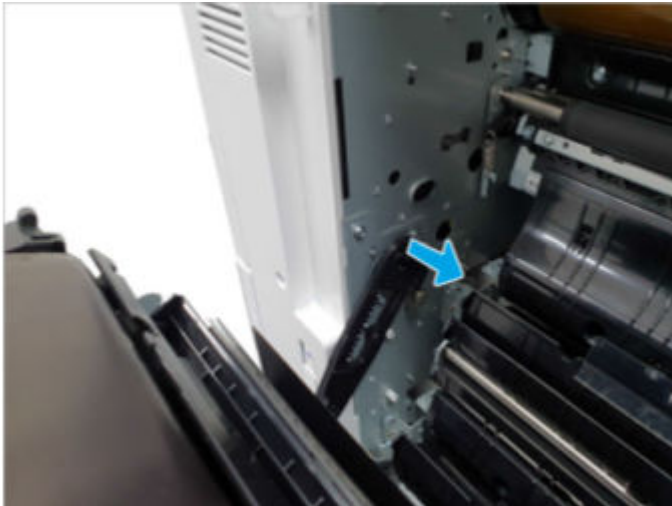
⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-320 Release the hinge



3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-321 Release the link



4. Remove the right door assembly.

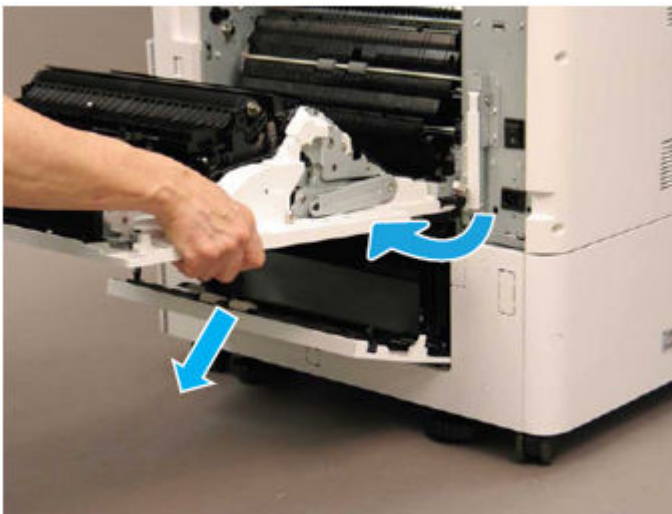


NOTE: If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.

CAUTION: To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-322 Remove the door

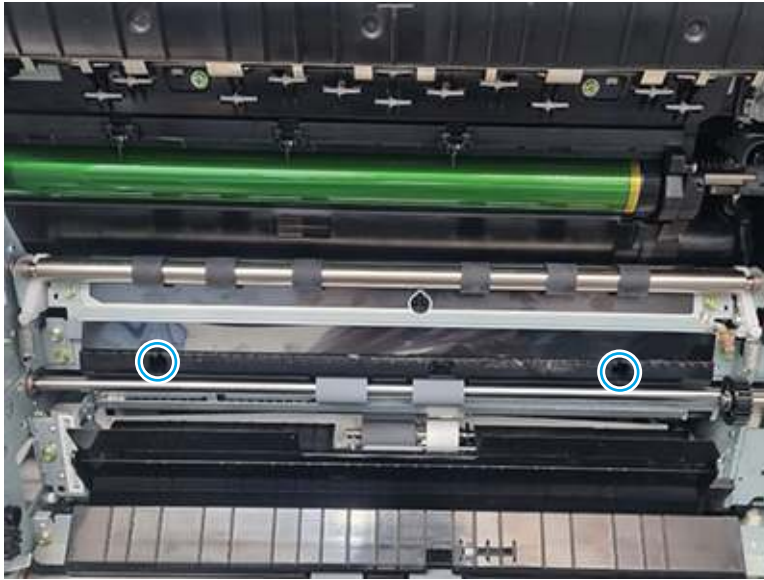


3. Remove the registration unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the registration unit.

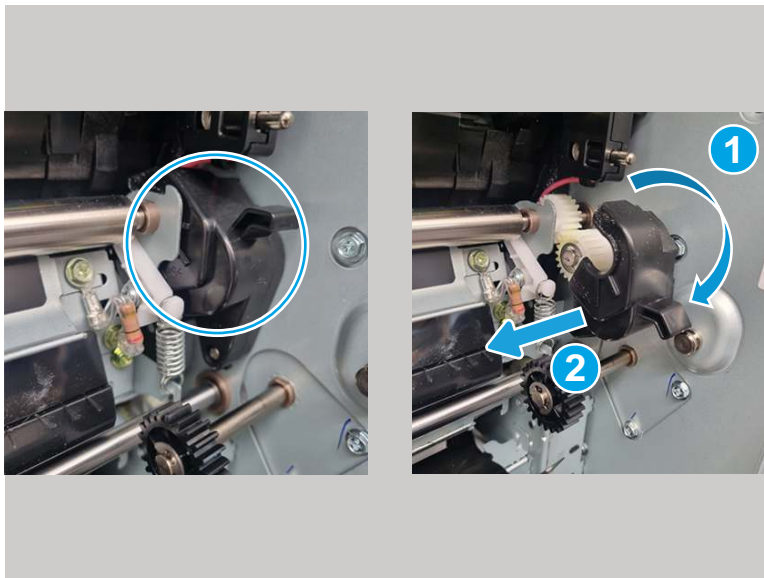
1. Remove two screws, and then remove the paper path guide.

Figure 6-323 Remove the guide



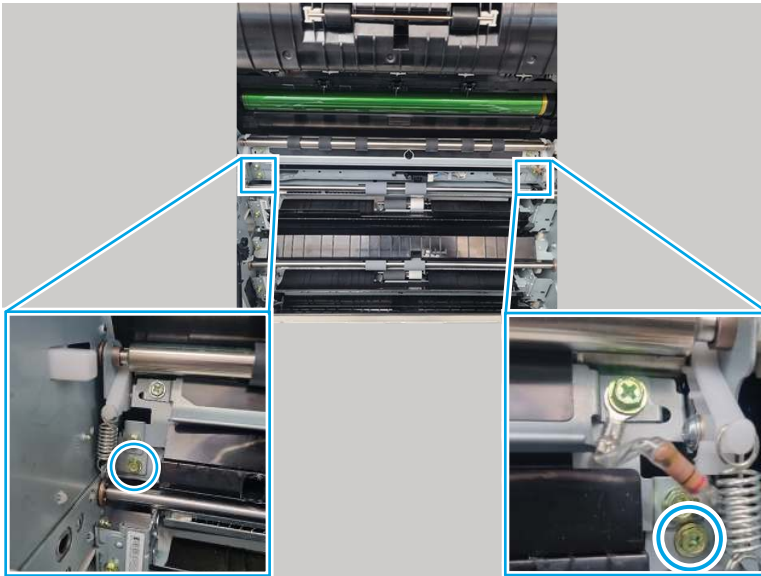
2. Remove the gear cover.

Figure 6-324 Remove the gear cover



3. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-325 Remove two screws



4. Release the left side of the registration unit, and then rotate it away from the printer.


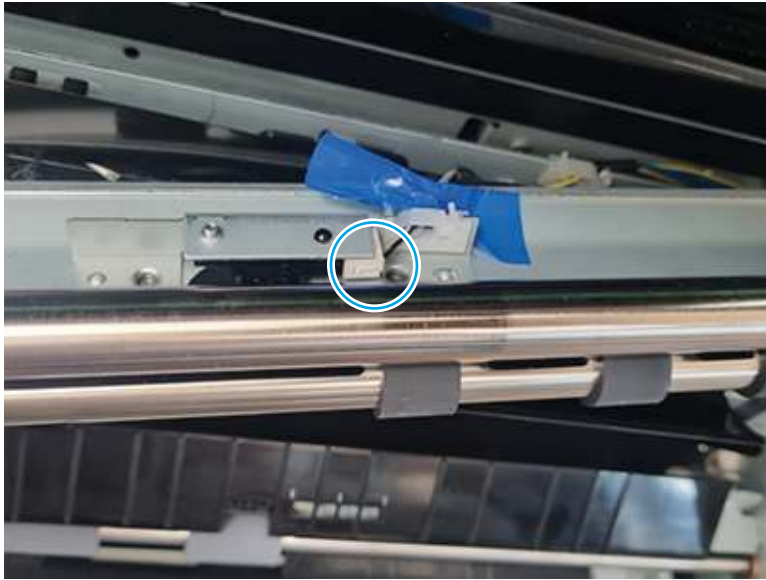
 **NOTE:** Do not attempt to completely remove the registration unit. It is still attached to the printer by a wire-harness connector.


Figure 6-326 Rotate the unit away from the printer

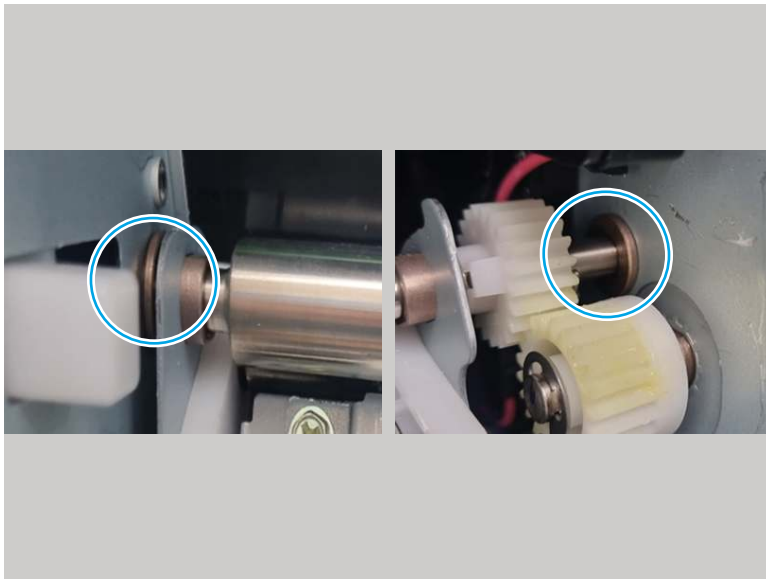


5. Unplug one connector, and then remove the registration unit.

Figure 6-327 Remove the unit



 **Reinstallation tip:** When replacing the registration unit, make sure that the bushings on either end are in the correct position, as shown below.



4. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Registration sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the registration sensor.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-52 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001381	Photo interrupter (Registration sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right rear cover.

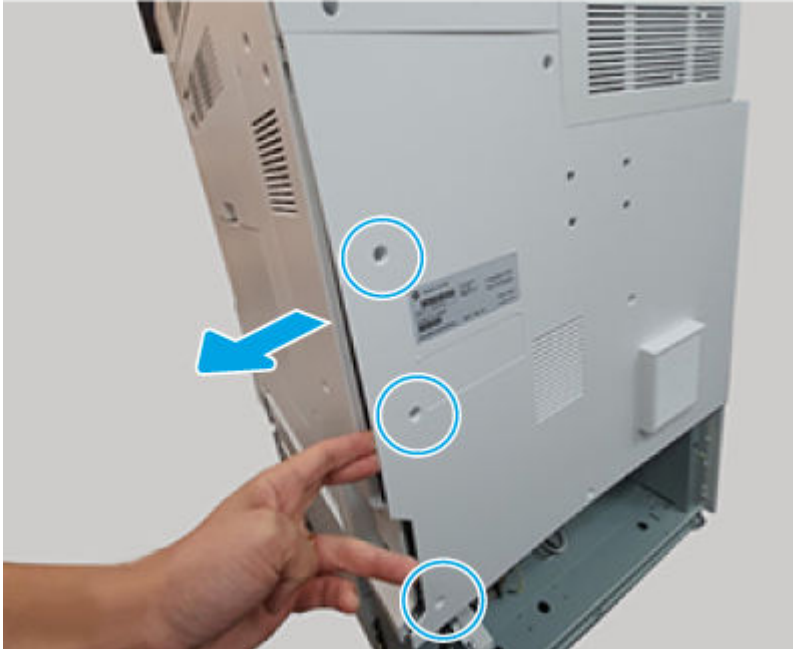
1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-328 Remove three screws



2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove three rear lower cover screws.
 - b. Slightly separate the rear lower cover from the printer.
 - c. Open the right door, and then remove the right rear cover.

Figure 6-329 Remove the cover



2. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

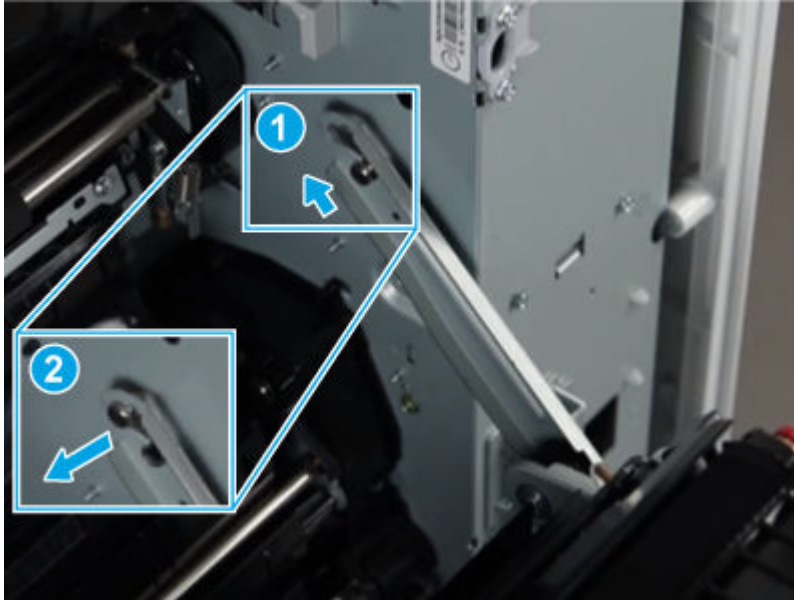
Figure 6-330 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

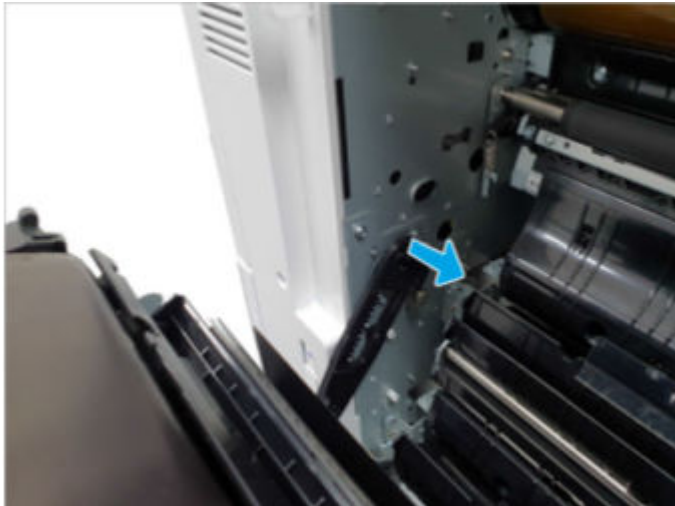
⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-331 Release the hinge




3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-332 Release the link



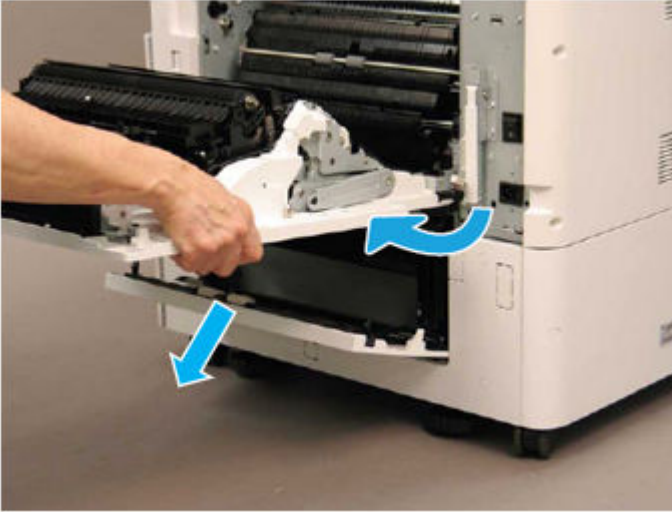
4. Remove the right door assembly.

 **NOTE:** If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.

 **CAUTION:** To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-333 Remove the door

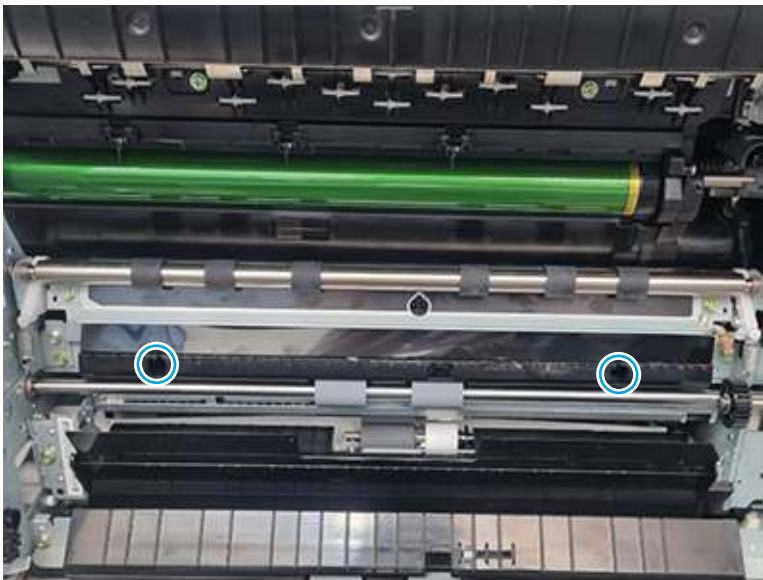


3. Remove the registration unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the registration unit.

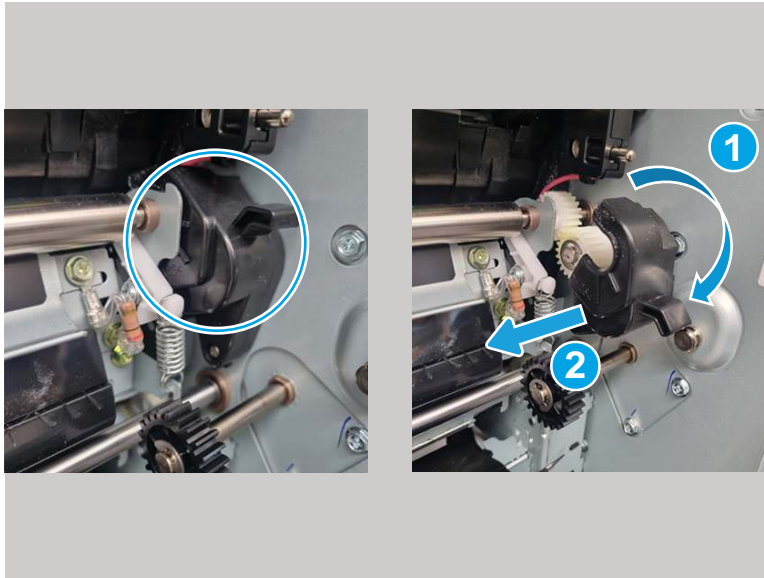
1. Remove two screws, and then remove the paper path guide.

Figure 6-334 Remove the guide



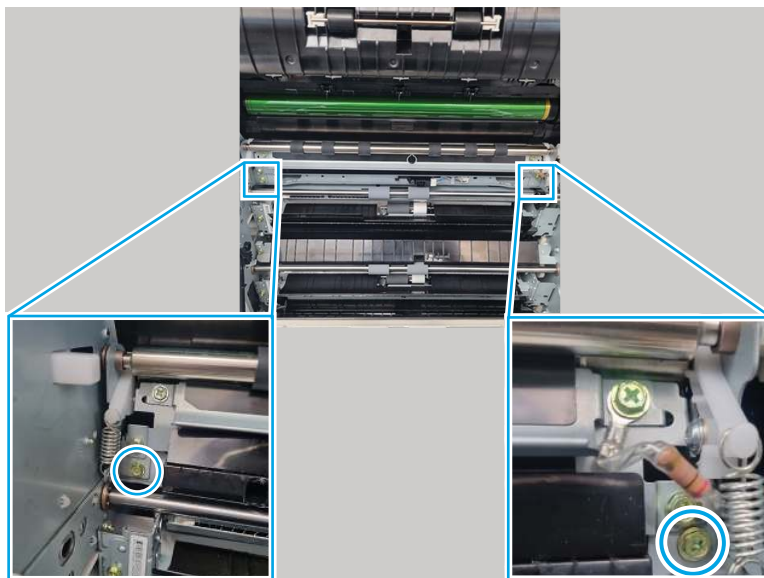
2. Remove the gear cover.

Figure 6-335 Remove the gear cover



3. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-336 Remove two screws



4. Release the left side of the registration unit, and then rotate it away from the printer.


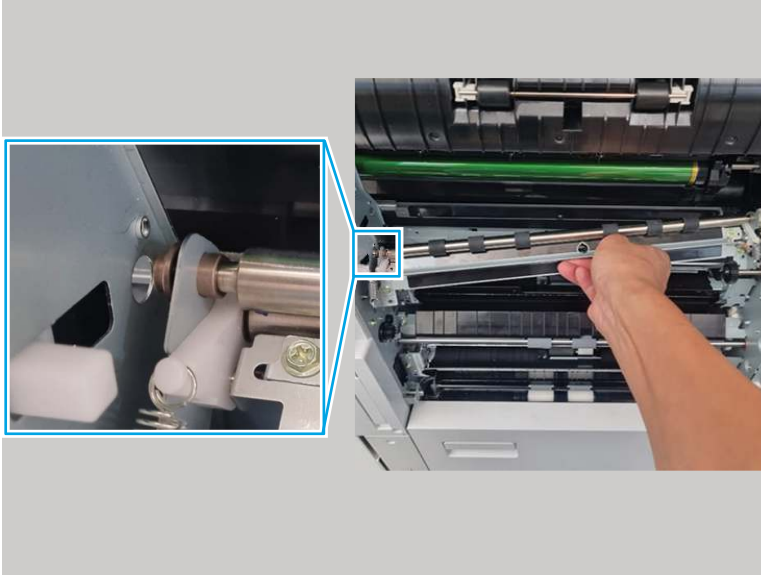
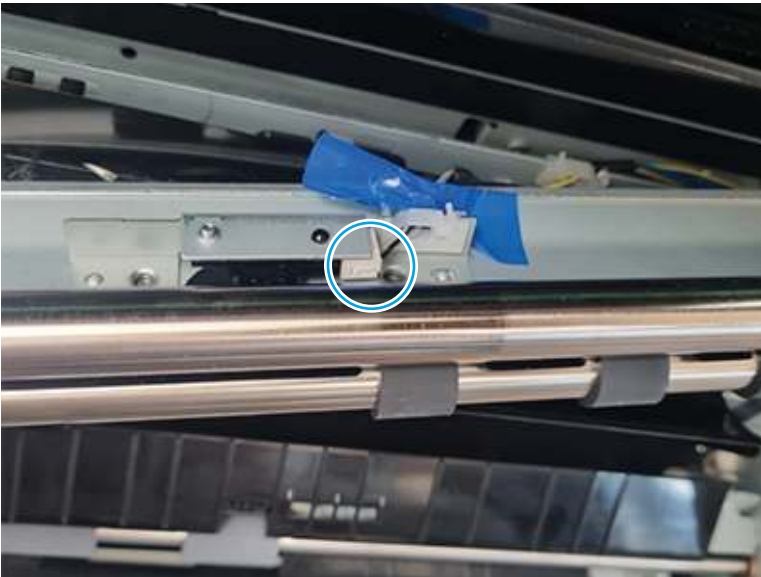
 **NOTE:** Do not attempt to completely remove the registration unit. It is still attached to the printer by a wire-harness connector.


Figure 6-337 Rotate the unit away from the printer

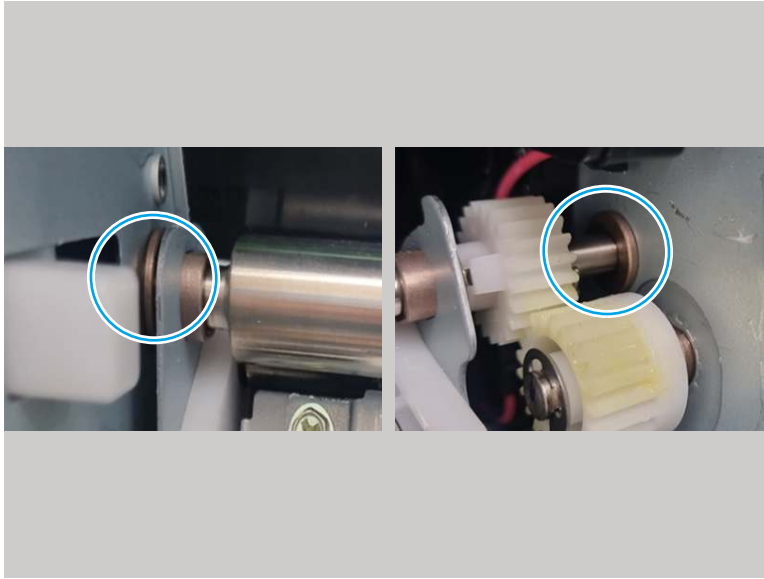


5. Unplug one connector, and then remove the registration unit.

Figure 6-338 Remove the unit



 **Reinstallation tip:** When replacing the registration unit, make sure that the bushings on either end are in the correct position, as shown below.



4. Remove the registration sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the registration sensor.

1. Remove two screws, and turn the sensor guide assembly over.

Figure 6-339 Remove two screws



2. Remove one screw, and then remove the registration sensor.


 **NOTE:** Disconnect connectors as necessary.

Figure 6-340 Remove the sensor



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Registration clutch

Learn about removing and replacing the registration clutch.

Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-53 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC47-00037A	Registration clutch

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the TCU.

- Open the front door assembly. Push on each tab on the sides of the toner collection unit to release it, and then pull it straight out of the printer.

Figure 6-341 Remove the TCU



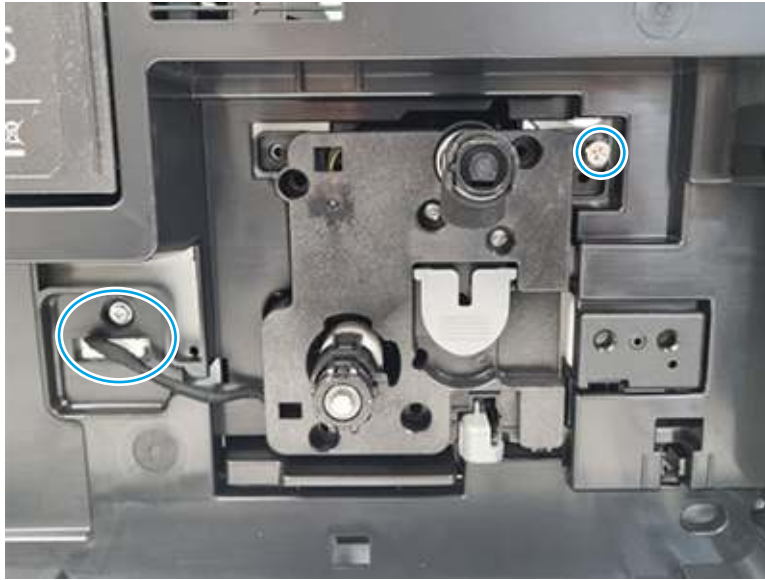
2. Remove the black drum unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the black drum unit.

1. Open the right door.

2. At the front of the printer, release one screw and unplug one connector.

Figure 6-342 Release one screw



3. Pull the drum unit out of the printer.


 **NOTE:** If the drum assembly is being removed to access other parts, skip the remaining steps. Those steps are for replacing the drum unit only.

Figure 6-343 Remove the unit



4. Set the drum unit down horizontally and remove six screws


Figure 6-344 Remove six screws



5. Disconnect one connector.

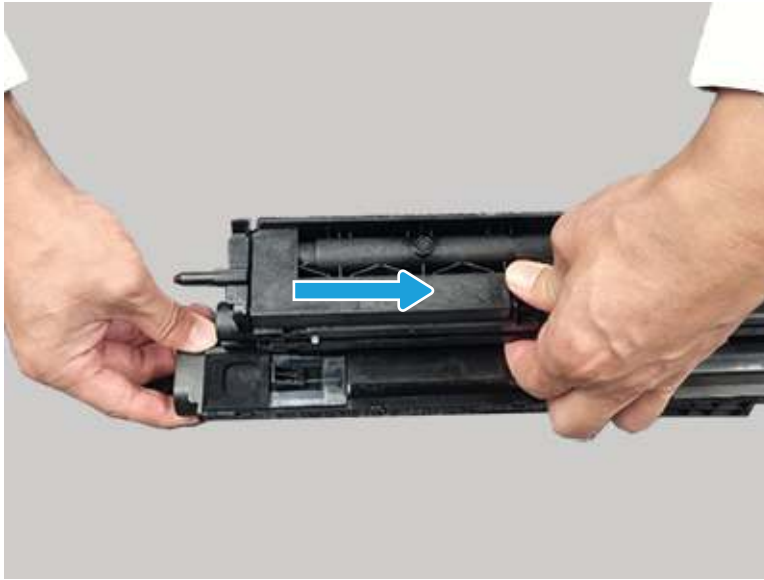
Figure 6-345 Disconnect one connector



 **Reinstallation tip:** Be sure to route the wire harness correctly when reinstalling this part.

6. Remove the drum cover.


Figure 6-346 Remove the drum cover



7. Remove the black drum unit.

Figure 6-347 Remove the drum unit



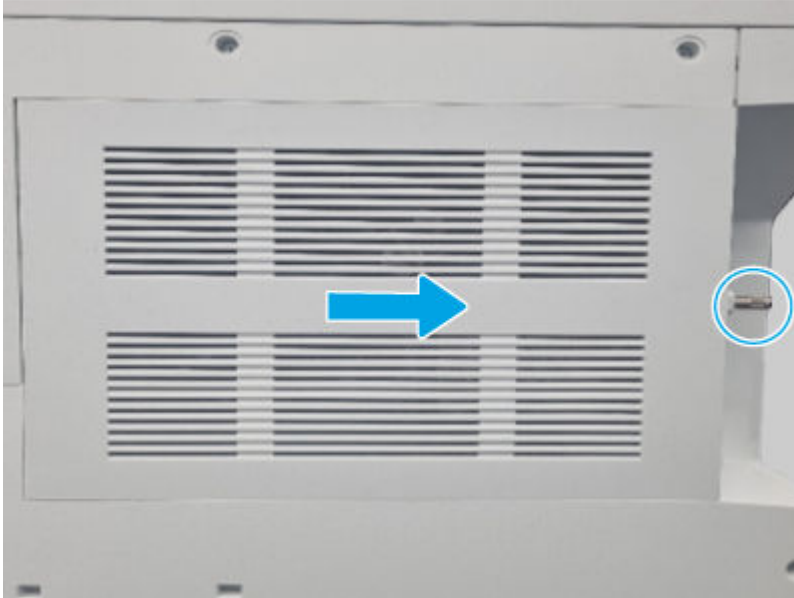
 **NOTE:** Be careful with spilled toner. If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

3. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-348 Remove the cover



4. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

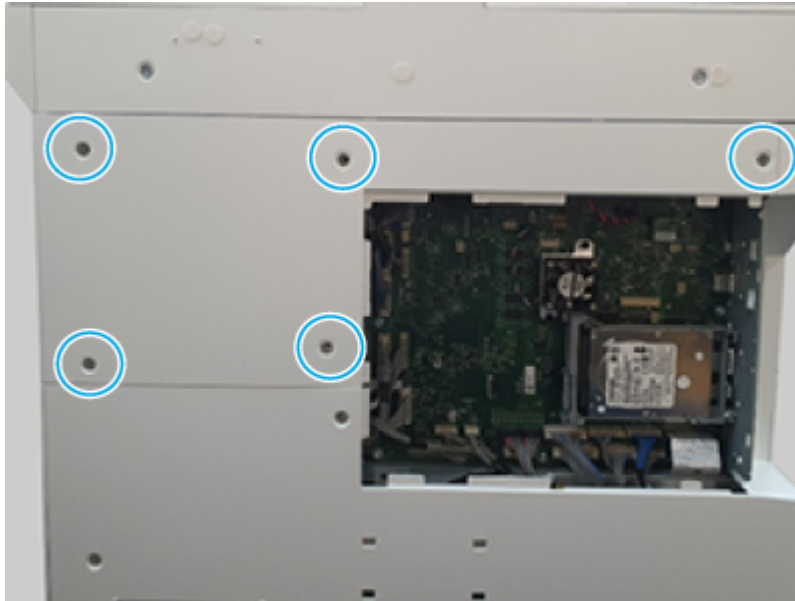
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-349 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-350 Remove the cover



5. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove six screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-351 Remove the cover

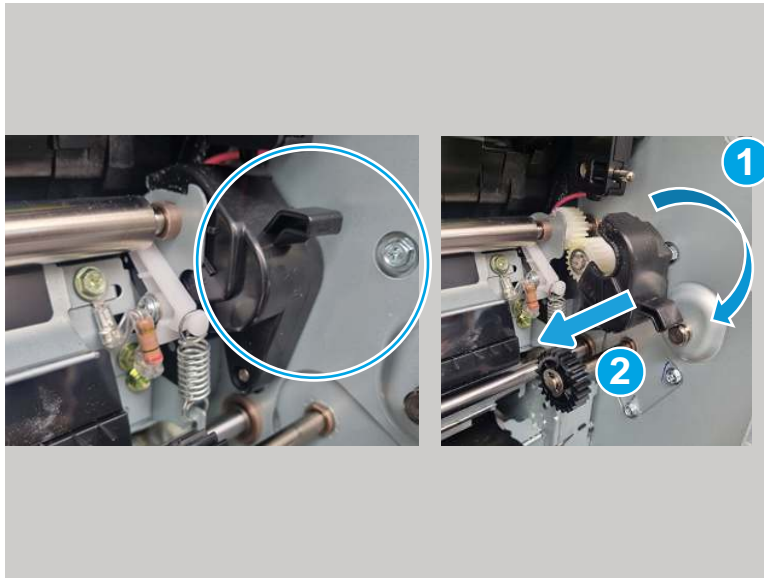


6. Remove the main drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the main drive assembly.

1. Remove the gear cover on the right side.

Figure 6-352 Remove the gear cover



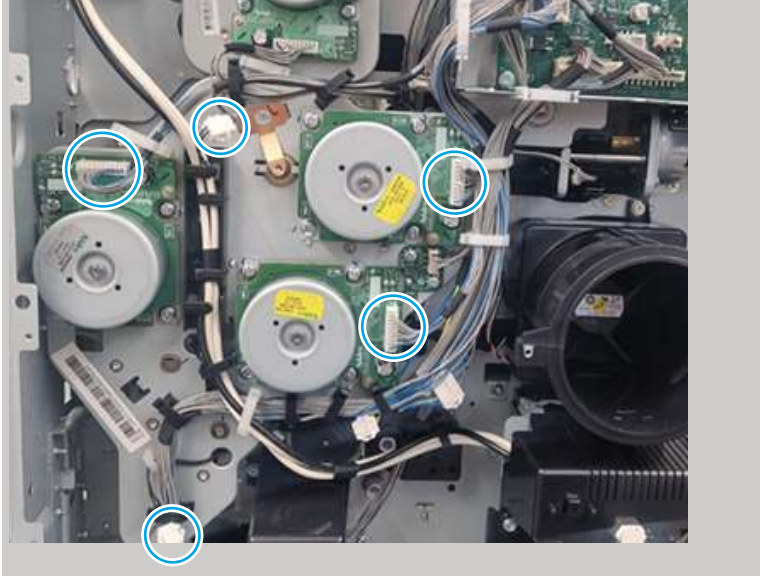
2. Unplug the connectors from the formatter.

Figure 6-353 Unplug the connectors



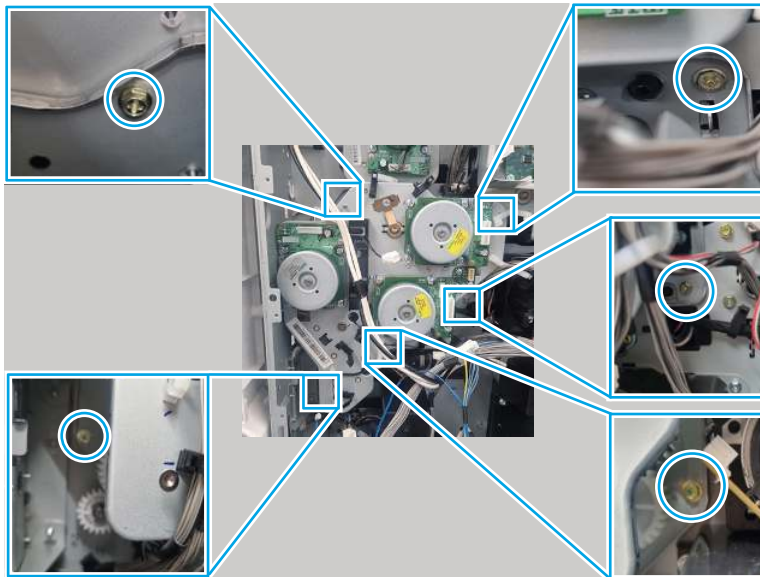
3. Disconnect five connectors linked to the main drive assembly.

Figure 6-354 Disconnect five connectors



4. Remove five screws, and then remove the feed drive assembly

Figure 6-355 Remove five screws

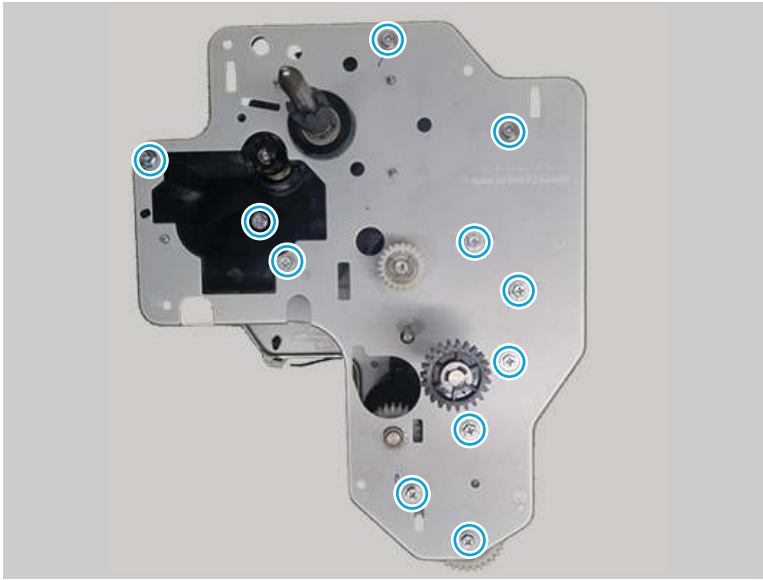


7. Remove the registration clutch

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the regi clutch.

1. Remove eleven screws.

Figure 6-356 Remove eleven screws



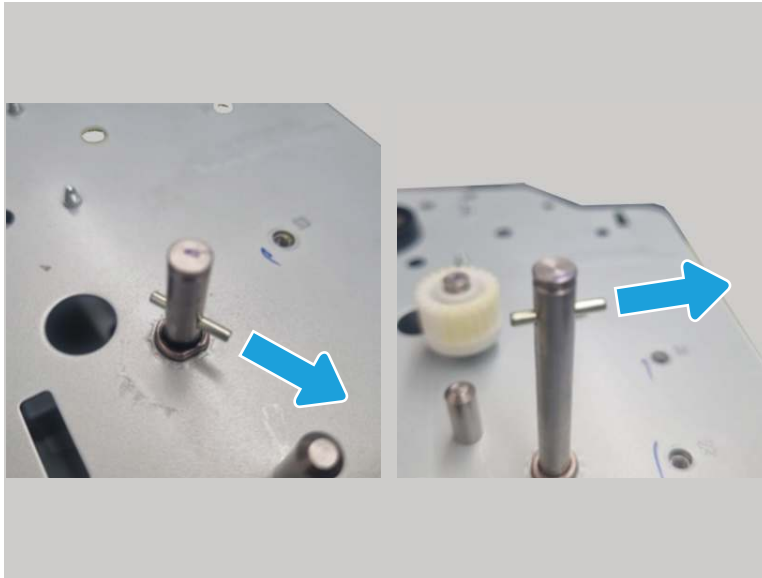
2. Remove two e-rings.


Figure 6-357 Remove two e-rings

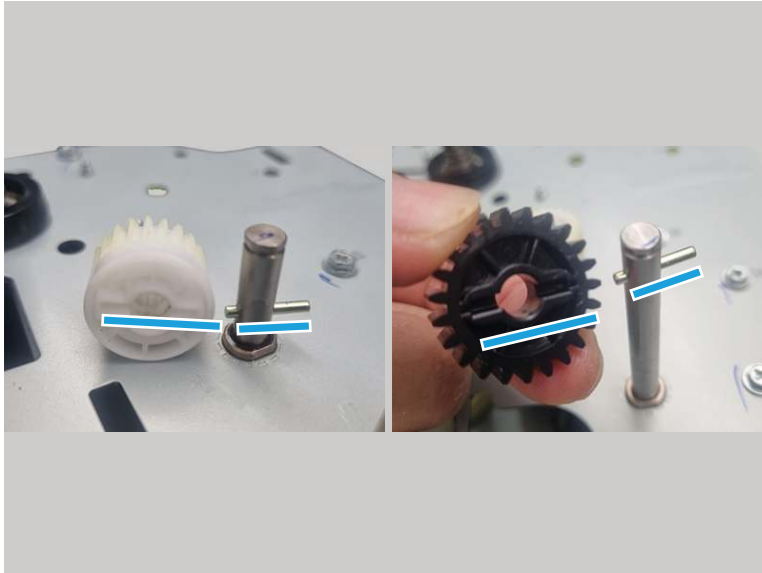


3. Remove two shafts.

Figure 6-358 Remove two shafts

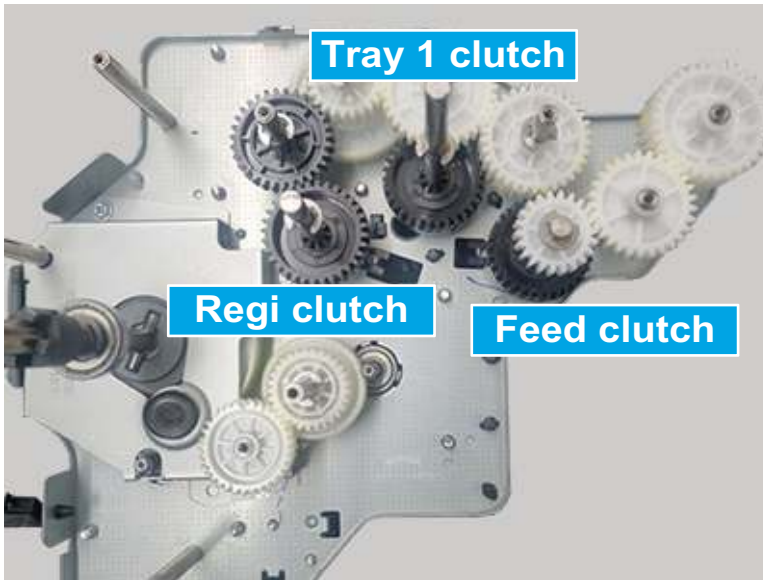


 **Reinstallation tip:** Pay attention to the shape of the gears when reinstalling.



4. Remove the plate of the main drive assembly.

Figure 6-359 Remove the plate



5. Remove the registration clutch.


 **NOTE:** Be careful not to dislodge any of the other gears when removing the registration clutch.

Figure 6-360 Remove the clutch



8. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Secondary transfer (T2) unit

Learn about removing and replacing the secondary transfer (T2) unit.



[View a video of removing and replacing the T2 unit.](#)

Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-54 Part information

Part number	Part description
5PN70-67001	Secondary transfer (T2) unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

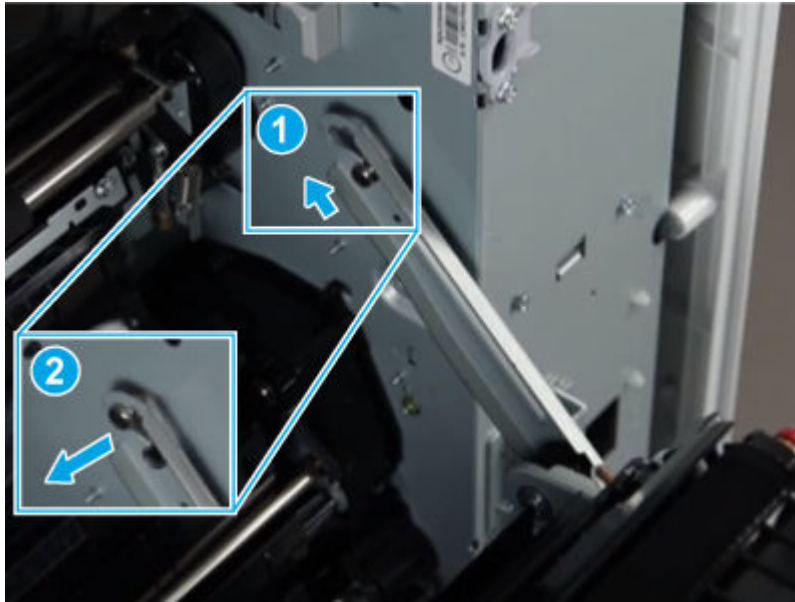
Figure 6-361 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

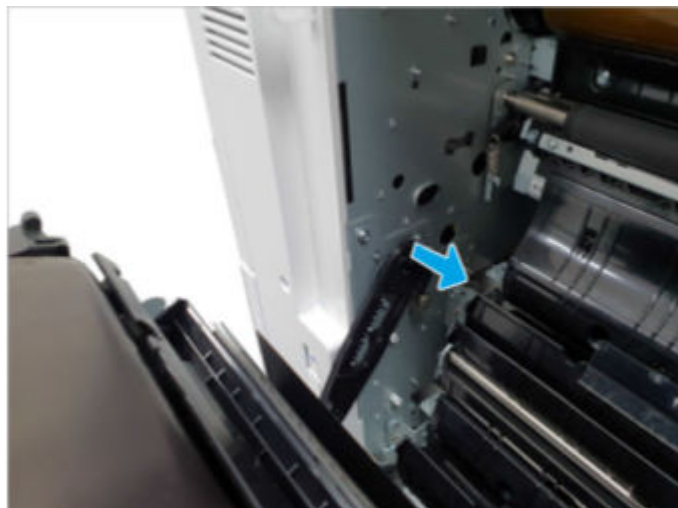
⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-362 Release the hinge




3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-363 Release the link



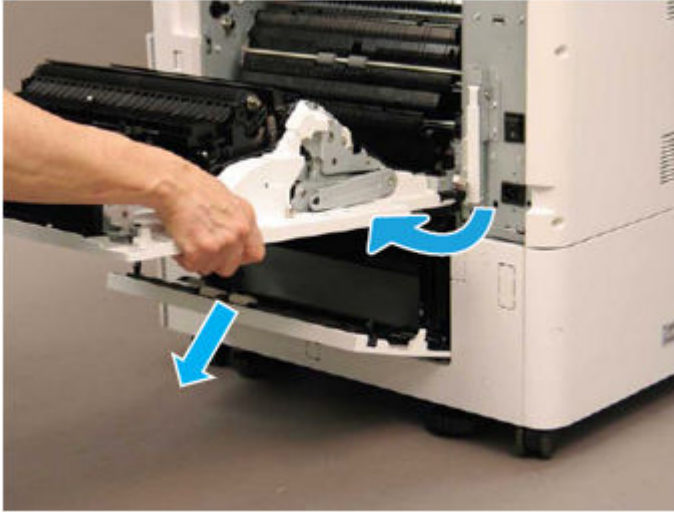
4. Remove the right door assembly.

 **NOTE:** If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.

 **CAUTION:** To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-364 Remove the door

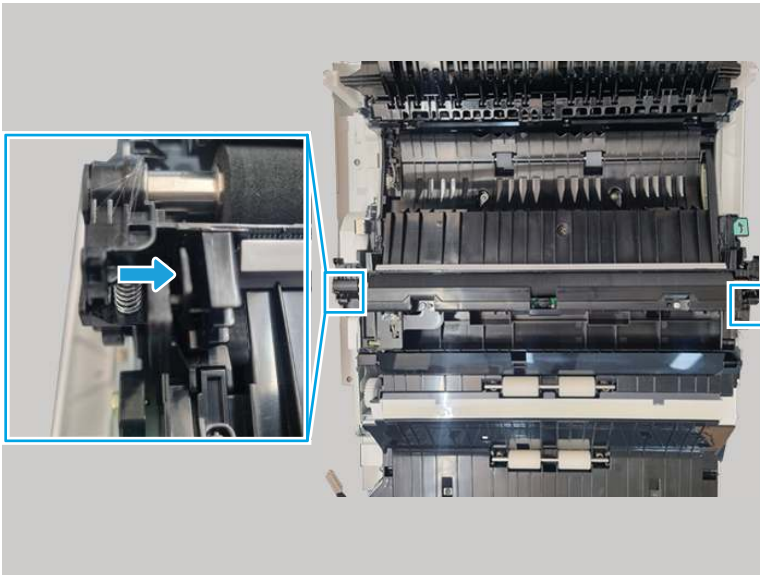


2. Remove the secondary transfer (T2) unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the T2 unit.

1. Lift up the T2 transfer assembly while pushing in the hooks at both ends of the assembly to release it.

Figure 6-365 Release the T2 assembly



2. Disconnect one connector on the back side of the T2 unit, and then remove the unit.



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: CTD sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the CTD sensor.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-55 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC32-00025A	CTD sensor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

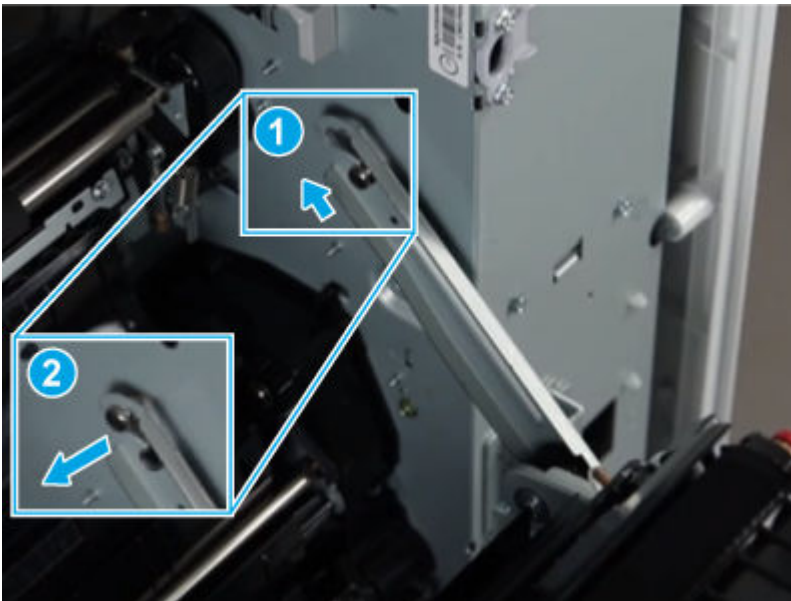
Figure 6-366 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

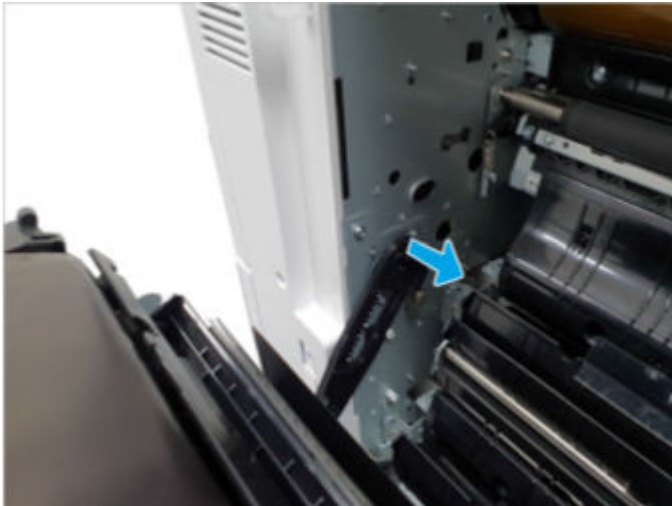
⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-367 Release the hinge



3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-368 Release the link



4. Remove the right door assembly.



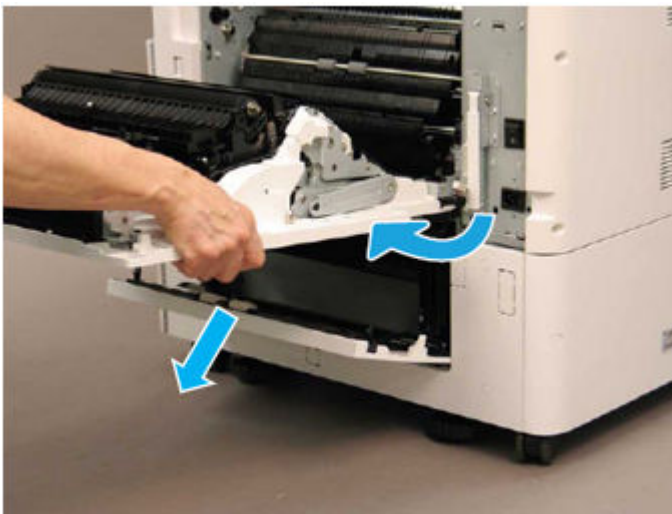
NOTE: If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.



CAUTION: To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-369 Remove the door

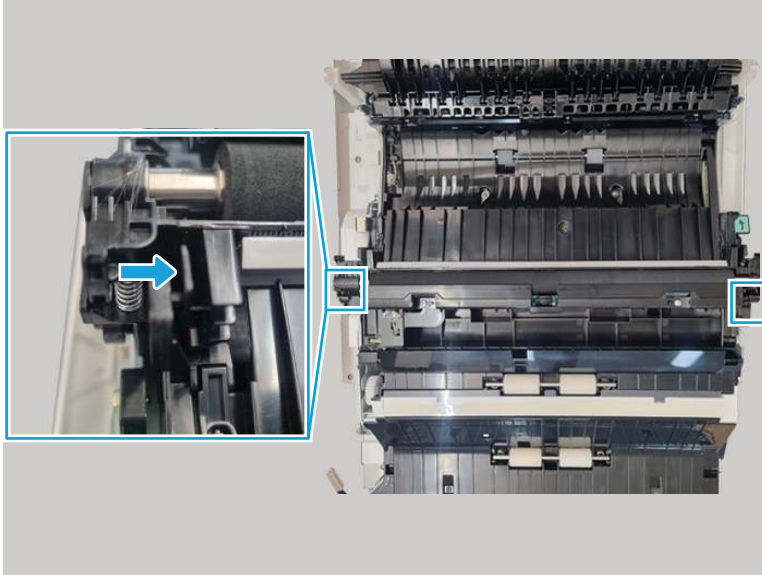


2. Remove the secondary transfer (T2) unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the T2 unit.

1. Lift up the T2 transfer assembly while pushing in the hooks at both ends of the assembly to release it.

Figure 6-370 Release the T2 assembly



2. Disconnect one connector on the back side of the T2 unit, and then remove the unit.

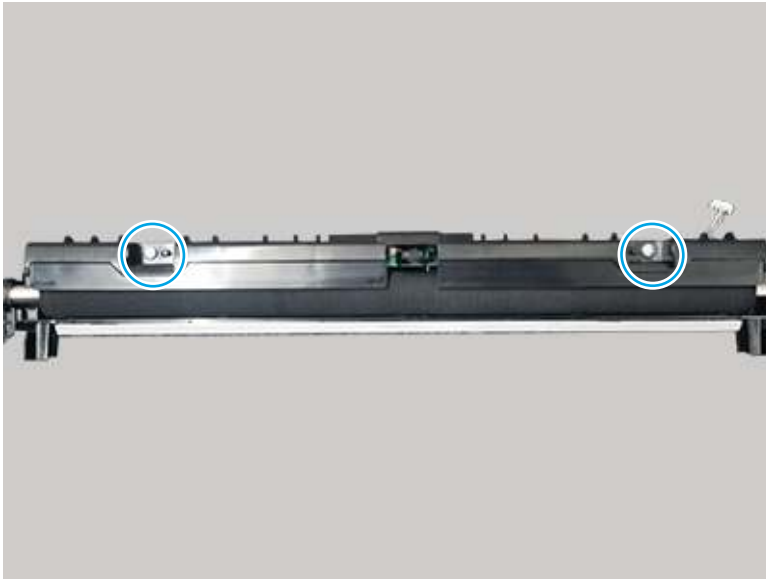


3. Remove the CTD sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the CTD sensor.

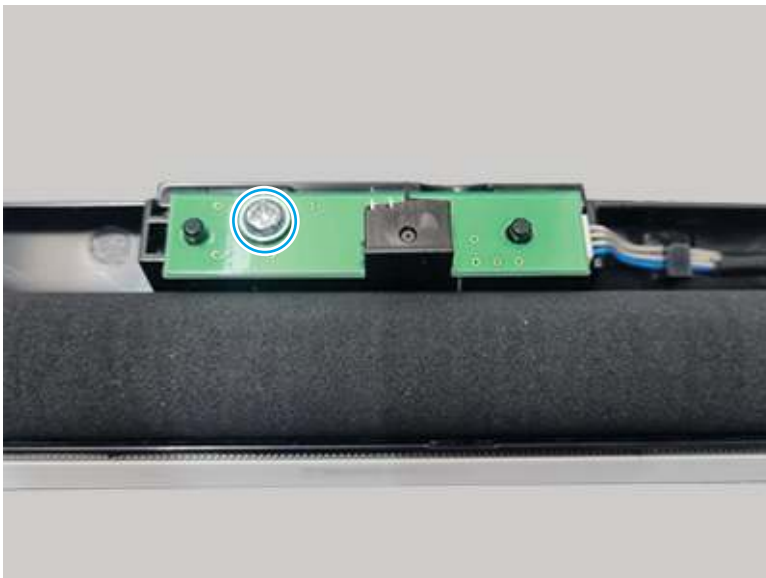
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-371 Remove two screws



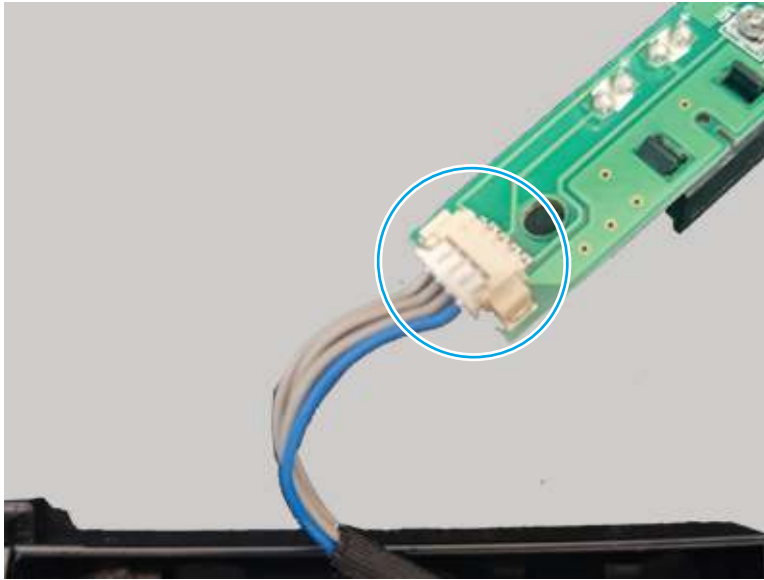
2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-372 Remove one screw



3. Disconnect the connector, and then remove the CTD sensor.

Figure 6-373 Remove the sensor



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Right door exit assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the right door exit assembly.

Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-56 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01877A	Right door exit assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right rear cover.

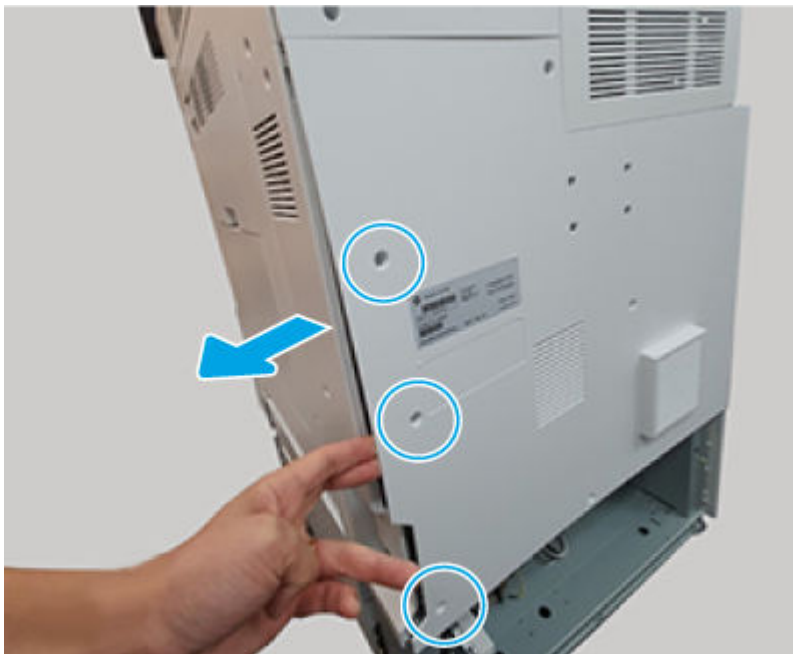
1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-374 Remove three screws



2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove three rear lower cover screws.
 - b. Slightly separate the rear lower cover from the printer.
 - c. Open the right door, and then remove the right rear cover.

Figure 6-375 Remove the cover



2. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

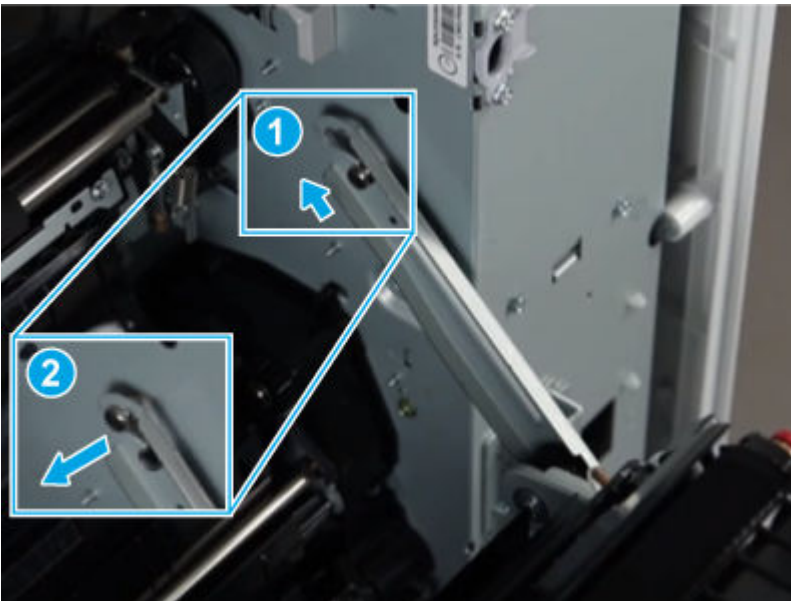
Figure 6-376 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-377 Release the hinge




3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-378 Release the link



4. Remove the right door assembly.

 **NOTE:** If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.


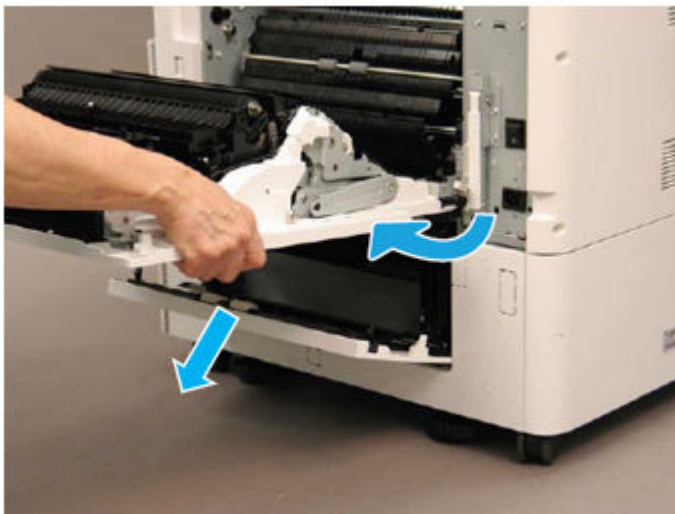
 **CAUTION:** To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-379 Remove the door



3. Remove the right door exit assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door exit assembly.

1. Open the right door.

2. Remove two screws and the white-plastic molded parts.

Figure 6-380 Remove the guide



3. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the right door exit assembly.

Figure 6-381 Remove the unit



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Fuser out sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the fuser out sensor.


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-57 Part Information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (fuser out sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right rear cover.

1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-382 Remove three screws



2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove three rear lower cover screws.
 - b. Slightly separate the rear lower cover from the printer.
 - c. Open the right door, and then remove the right rear cover.

Figure 6-383 Remove the cover



2. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

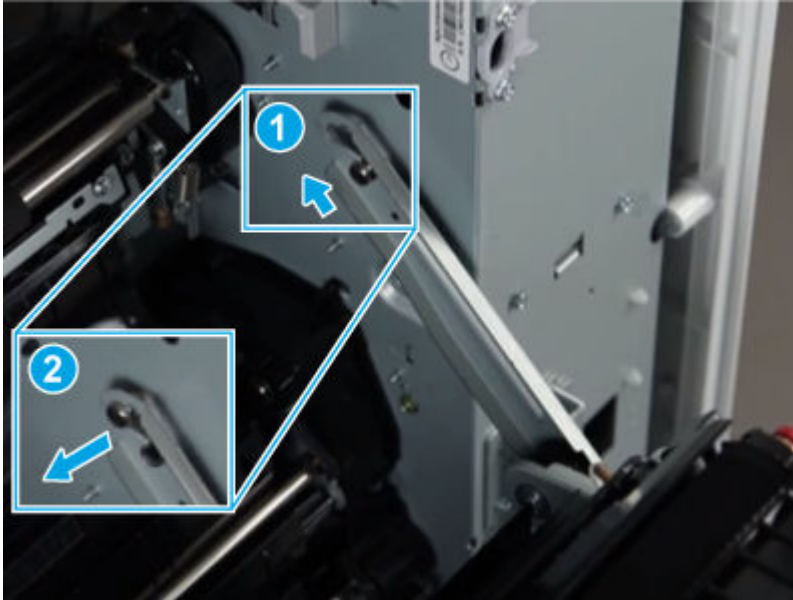
Figure 6-384 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-385 Release the hinge



3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-386 Release the link



4. Remove the right door assembly.

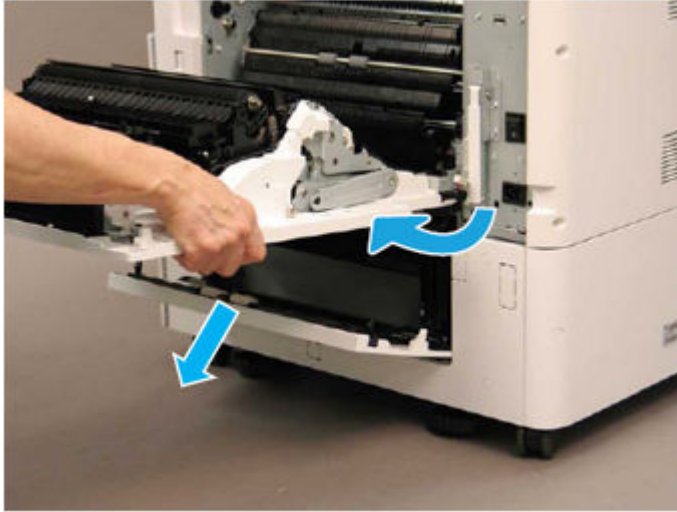


NOTE: If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.

CAUTION: To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-387 Remove the door



3. Remove the right door exit assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door exit assembly.

1. Open the right door.
2. Remove two screws and the white-plastic molded parts.

Figure 6-388 Remove the guide



3. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the right door exit assembly.

Figure 6-389 Remove the unit



4. Remove the fuser out sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the fuser out sensor.

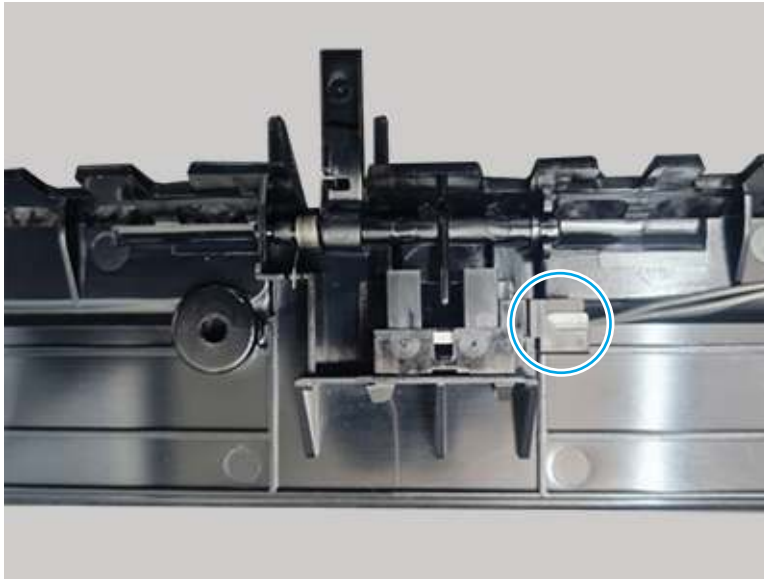
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-390 Remove three screws




2. Unplug one connector.

Figure 6-391 Unplug the connector



3. To remove the fuser out sensor, do the following:

 **NOTE:** The black ESD insulator sheet does not need to be removed.

- Release the hooks (callout 1).
- Slide the sensor assembly to the left (callout 2).
- Push the sensor assembly as shown (callout 3) to release it.

Figure 6-392 Release the sensor

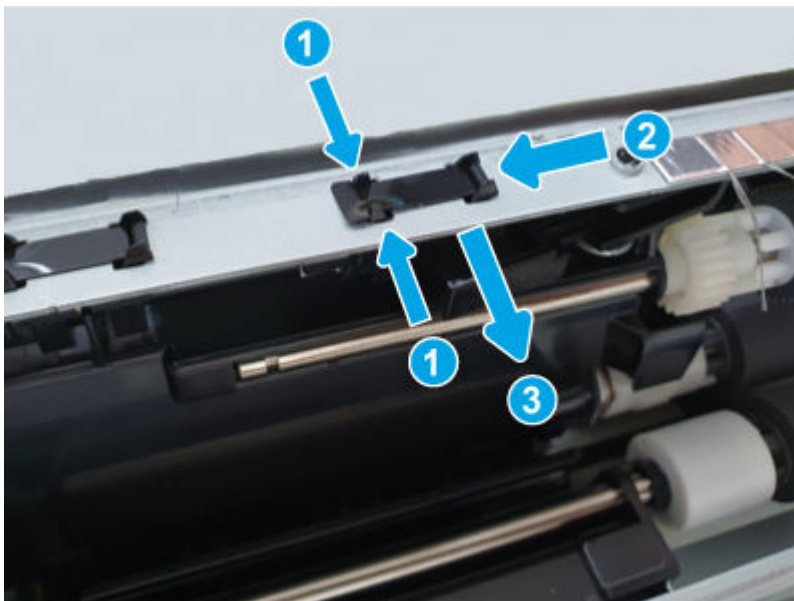
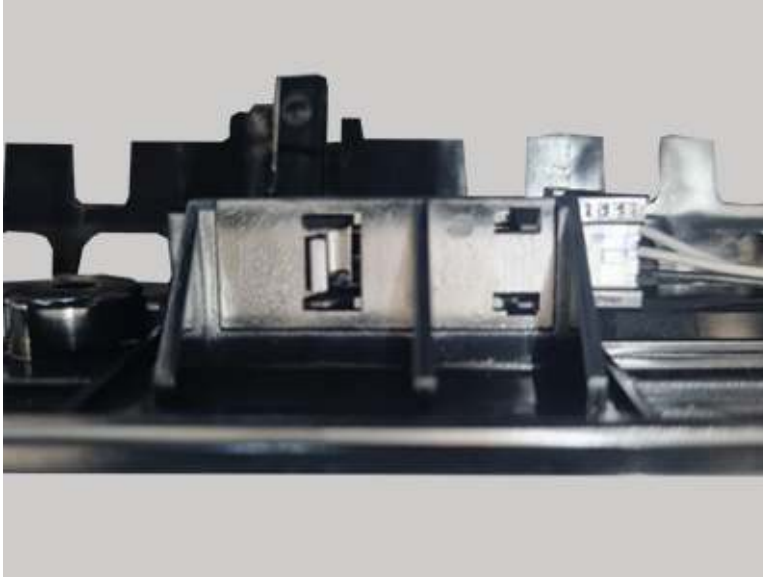


Figure 6-393 Remove the sensor



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Paper dust holder assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the paper dust holder.

Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

No action needed

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-58 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ98-40056	Paper dust holder

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

No action needed

1. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the TCU.

- Open the front door assembly. Push on each tab on the sides of the toner collection unit to release it, and then pull it straight out of the printer.

Figure 6-394 Remove the TCU



2. Remove the paper dust holder

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the paper dust holder.

- Grasp the lever, and then pull the paper dust holder straight out of the printer to remove it.

Figure 6-395 Remove the paper dust holder



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Exit unit

Learn about exit unit parts removal and replacement.

Removal and replacement: Exit unit

Learn about removing and replacing the exit unit.

Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-59 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01876A	Exit unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the exit unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the exit unit.

1. Open the right door.
2. Remove three screws and disconnect one connector. Then remove the exit unit.


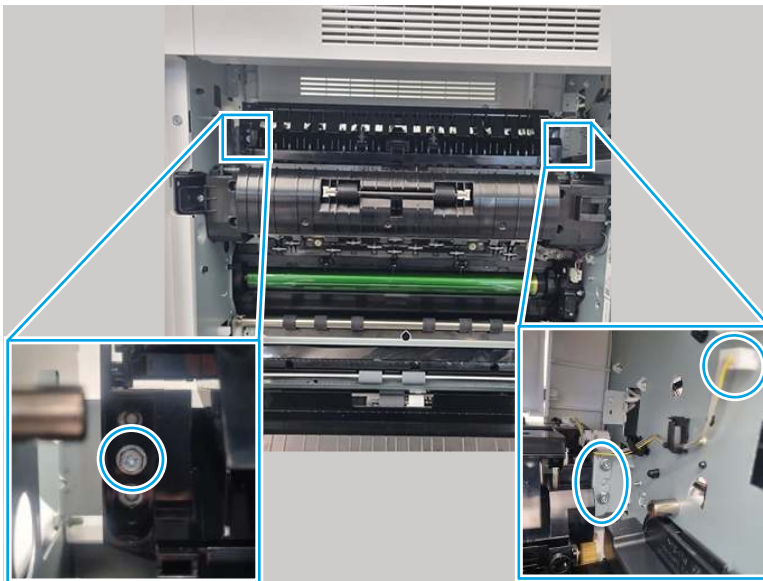
 **NOTE:** Release the wire harness retainers as necessary.


Figure 6-396 Remove three screws and one connector



2. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Output bin full sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the output bin full sensor.


Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-60 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (out bin full sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the exit unit

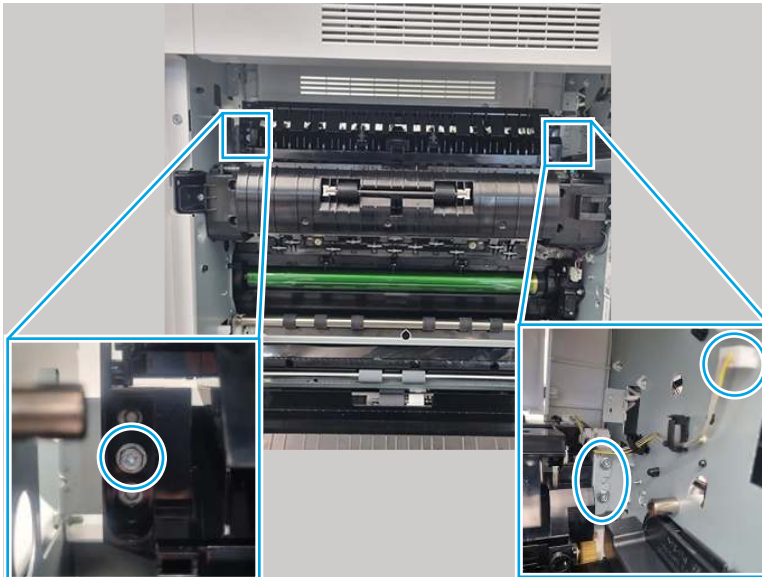
Use the following procedure to remove and replace the exit unit.

1. Open the right door.
2. Remove three screws and disconnect one connector. Then remove the exit unit.



NOTE: Release the wire harness retainers as necessary.

Figure 6-397 Remove three screws and one connector

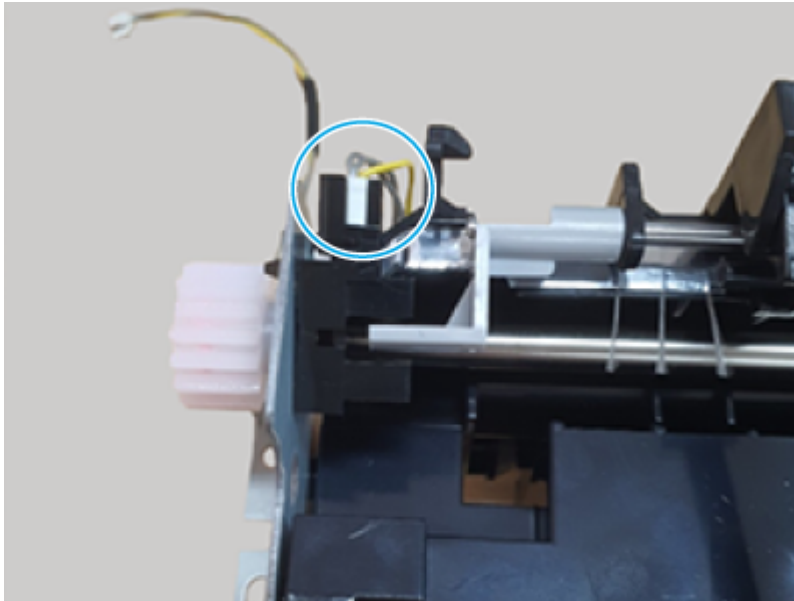


2. Remove the output bin 1 full sensor


Use the following procedure to remove and replace the output bin 1 full sensor.

1. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-398 Disconnect one connector

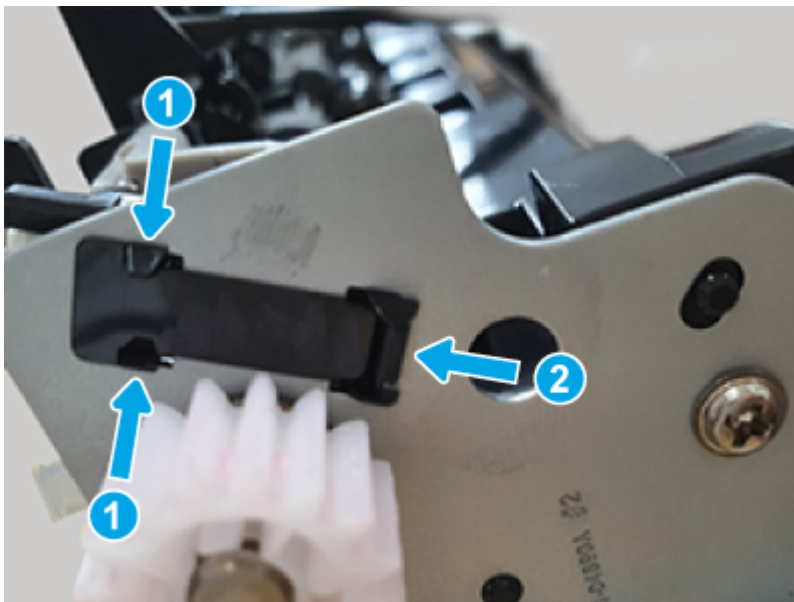


2. Do the following:

 **NOTE:** The black ESD insulator sheet does not need to be removed.

- Release the hooks (callout 1).
- Slide the sensor assembly as shown below (callout 2).
- Remove the output bin 1 full sensor.

Figure 6-399 Remove the sensor



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Actuator-bin full exit

Learn about removing and replacing the actuator-bin full exit.

Mean time to repair: 4 minutes

Service level: Easy

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-61 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC66-04339A	Actuator-bin full exit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

Post service test

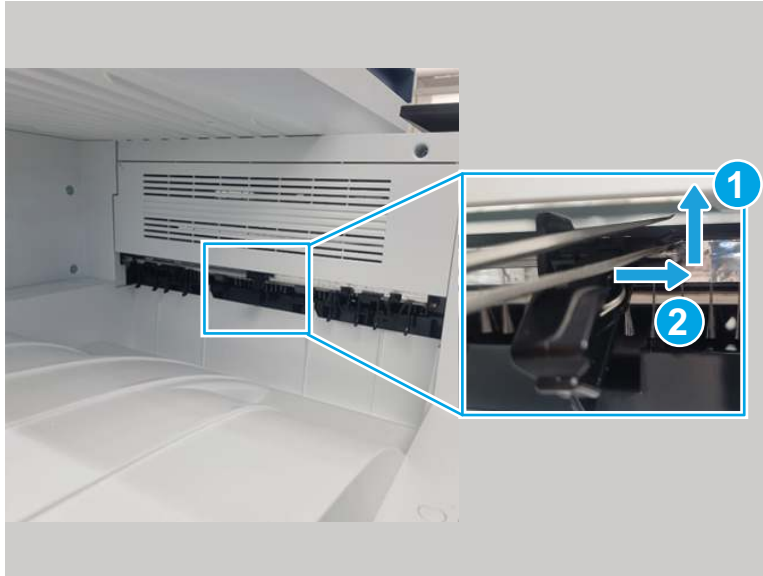
No post service test is available for this assembly.

1. Remove the actuator bin full exit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the actuator bin full exit.

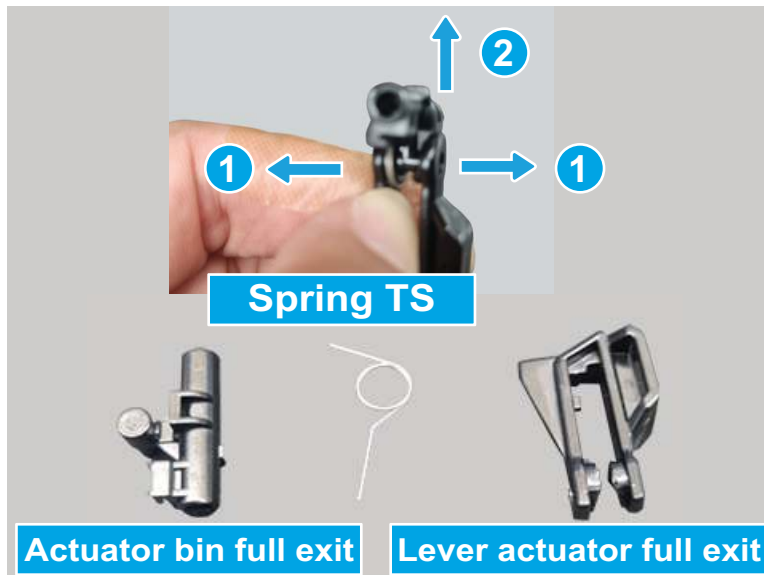
1. Lift the hook with tweezers, and then slide the actuator bin full exit to the right to remove it.

Figure 6-400 Remove the actuator



2. Disassemble the actuator bin full exit.

Figure 6-401 Parts of the actuator bin full exit



3. When reinstalling the actuator bin full exit, do the following:
 - Make sure that the spring is correctly installed on the actuator when reinstalling.

⚠ **CAUTION:** The spring can easily be dislodged when handling the actuator.

Figure 6-402 Check the spring



- Make sure the lever actuator full exit is in the correct orientation.

Figure 6-403 Actuator bin full exit orientation



- If necessary, use tweezers to adjust the orientation of the lever.

Figure 6-404 Adjust the orientation



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Lever-actuator bin full exit and spring TS

Learn about removing and replacing the lever-actuator bin full exit and spring TS.

Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Medium

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-62 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC66-02278A	Lever-actuator bin full exit
JC61-07185A	Spring TS

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

Post service test

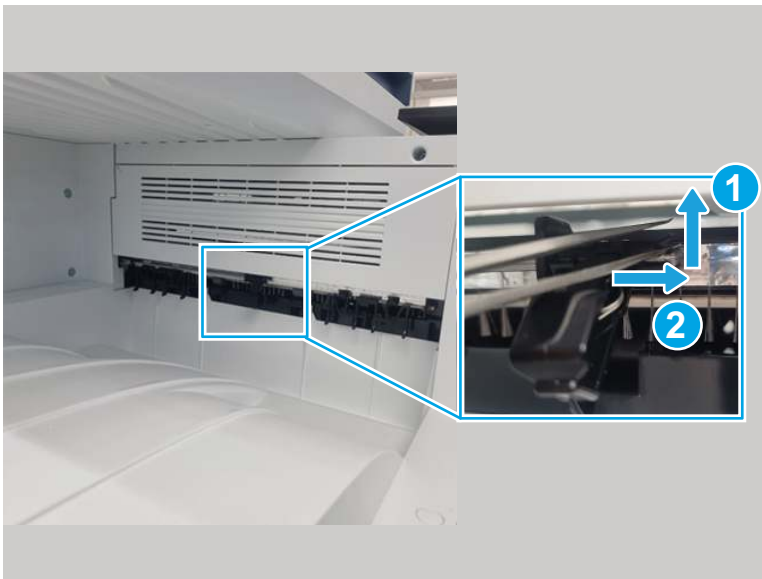
No post service test is available for this assembly.

1. Remove the actuator bin full exit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the actuator bin full exit.

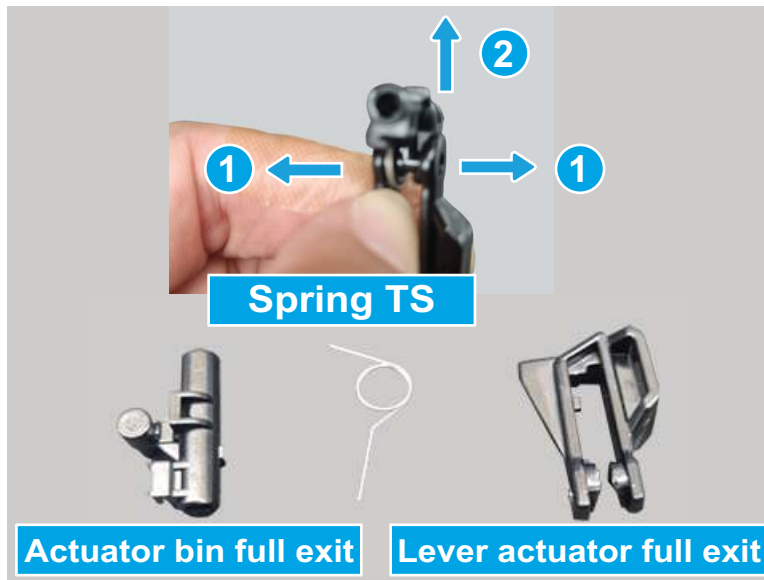
1. Lift the hook with tweezers, and then slide the actuator bin full exit to the right to remove it.

Figure 6-405 Remove the actuator



2. Disassemble the actuator bin full exit.

Figure 6-406 Parts of the actuator bin full exit



3. When reinstalling the actuator bin full exit, do the following:
 - Make sure that the spring is correctly installed on the actuator when reinstalling.

⚠ CAUTION: The spring can easily be dislodged when handling the actuator.

Figure 6-407 Check the spring



- Make sure the lever actuator full exit is in the correct orientation.

Figure 6-408 Actuator bin full exit orientation



- If necessary, use tweezers to adjust the orientation of the lever.

Figure 6-409 Adjust the orientation



2. Remove the lever-actuator bin full exit and TS spring

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the lever-actuator bin full exit and TS spring.

- Do the following:
 - Carefully release the lever-actuator bin full exit (callout 1) from the actuator-bin full exit assembly to remove it.
 - Remove the TS spring (callout 2).

Figure 6-410 Remove the lever and spring



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Exit stack guide

Learn about removing and replacing the exit stack guide.

Mean time to repair: 1 minute

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-63 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01874A	Exit stack guide

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the exit stack guide

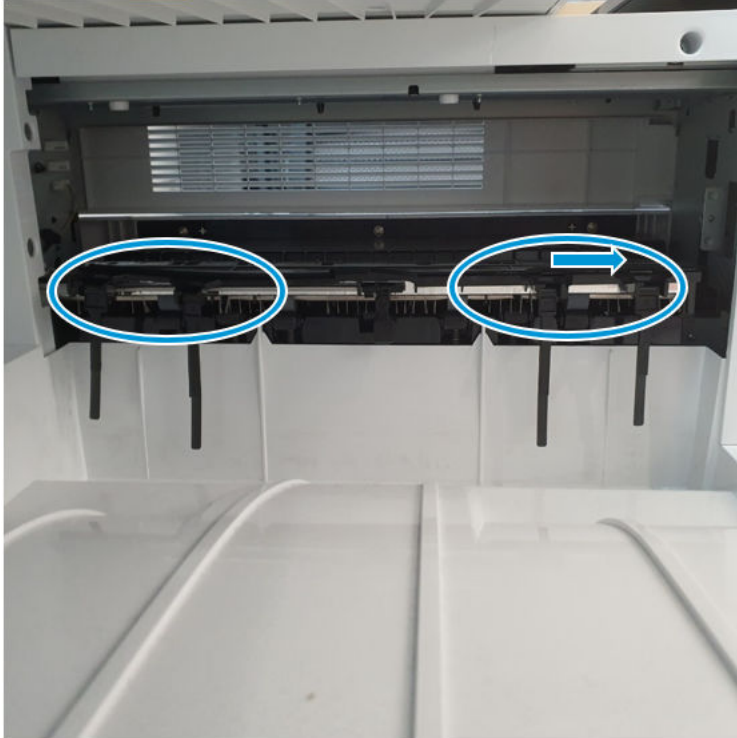
Use the following procedure to remove and replace the exit stack guide.

- Slide the exit stack guide to the right to remove it.



NOTE: It might take considerable force to slide the guide to the right.

Figure 6-411 Remove the guide




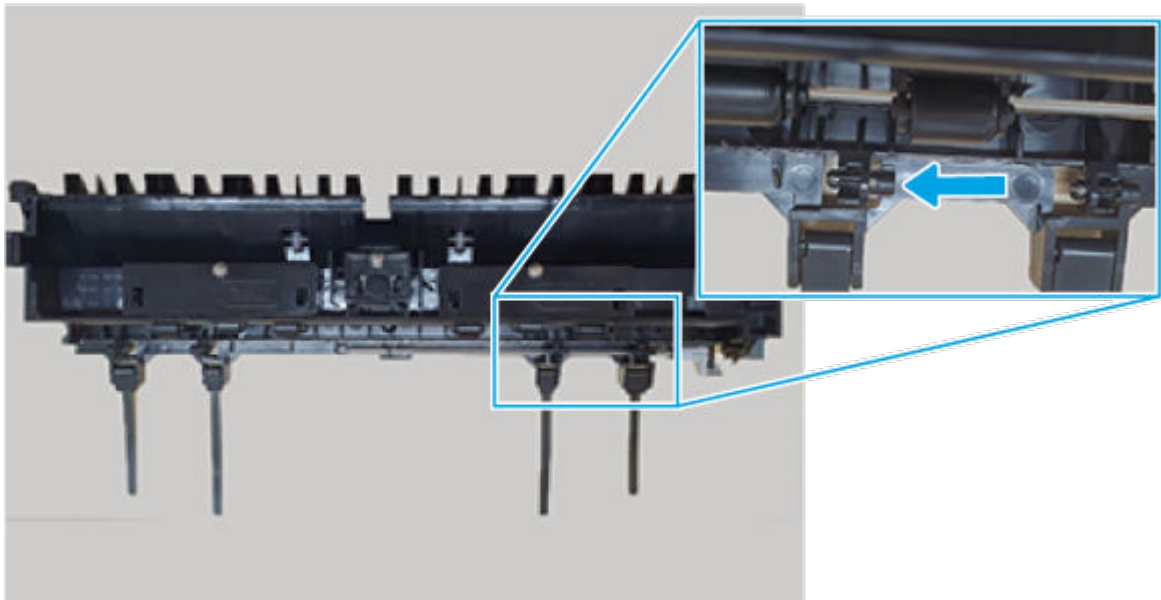
 **Reinstallation tip:** Position the guide over the holder, and then slide it from right to left to install it.

Figure 6-412 Reinstall the guide



2. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Duplex unit

Learn about duplex unit parts removal and replacement.

Removal and replacement: Duplex assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the duplex assembly.


Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-64 Part Information

Part number	Part description
JC95-02261A	Duplex assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

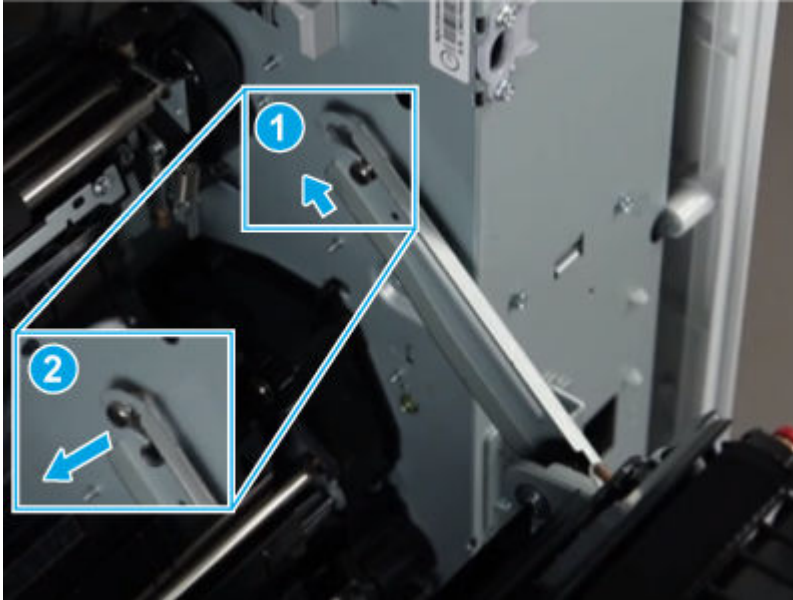
Figure 6-413 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

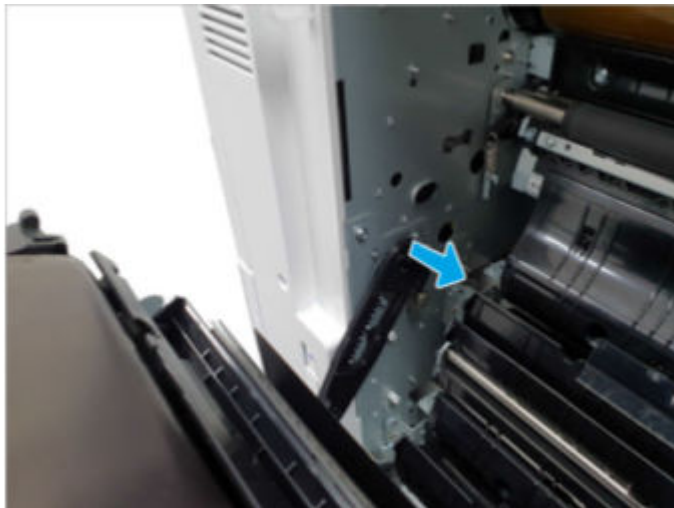
⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-414 Release the hinge



3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-415 Release the link



4. Remove the right door assembly.

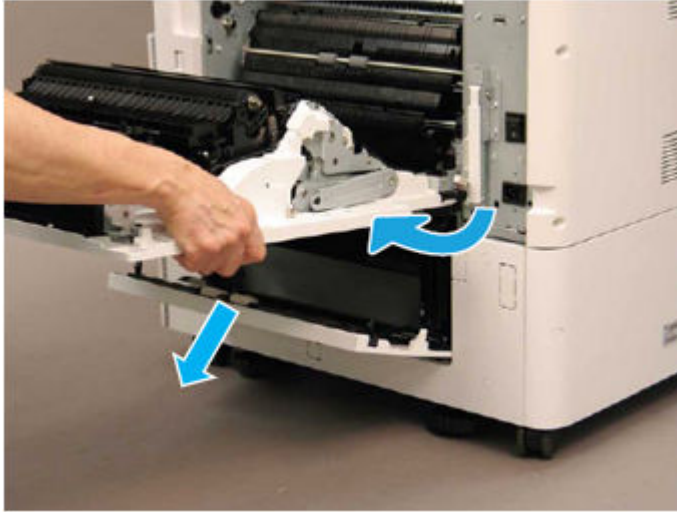


NOTE: If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.

CAUTION: To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-416 Remove the door

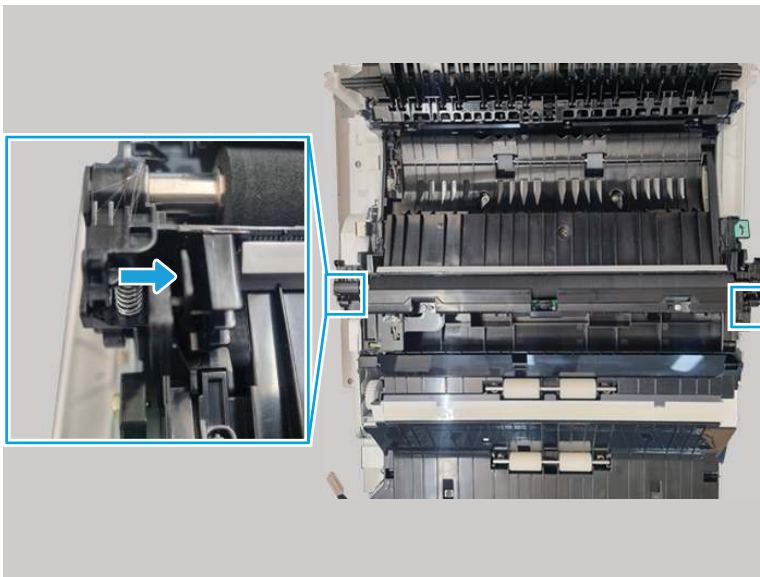


2. Remove the secondary transfer (T2) unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the T2 unit.

1. Lift up the T2 transfer assembly while pushing in the hooks at both ends of the assembly to release it.

Figure 6-417 Release the T2 assembly



2. Disconnect one connector on the back side of the T2 unit, and then remove the unit.



3. Remove the duplex assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the duplex assembly.

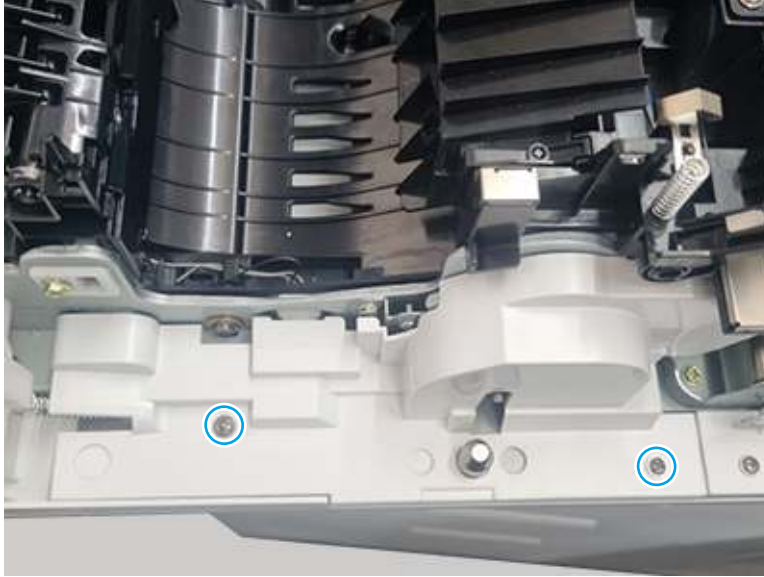
1. Remove one screw, and then remove the holder.

Figure 6-418 Remove one screw



2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-419 Remove two screws



3. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the duplex assembly.

Figure 6-420 Disconnect one connector



4. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Duplex jam sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the duplex jam sensor.


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-65 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (duplex jam sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

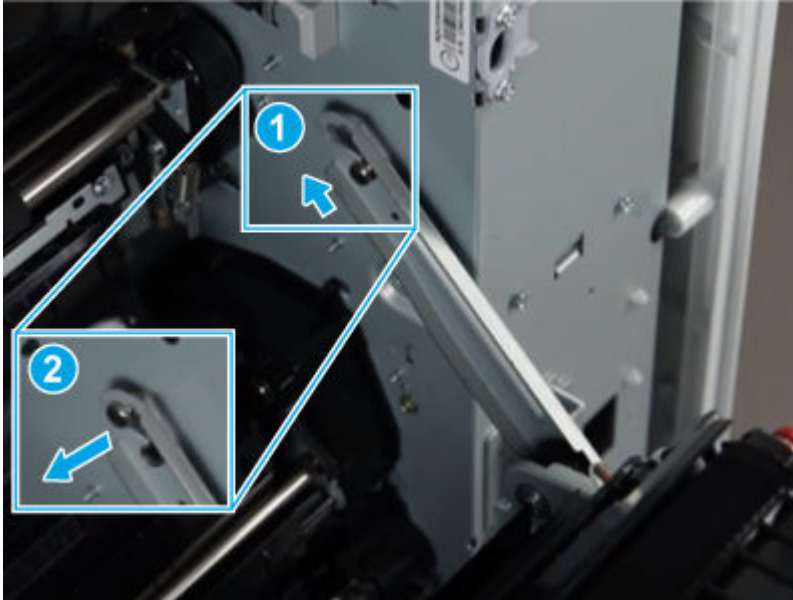
Figure 6-421 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-422 Release the hinge



3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-423 Release the link



4. Remove the right door assembly.

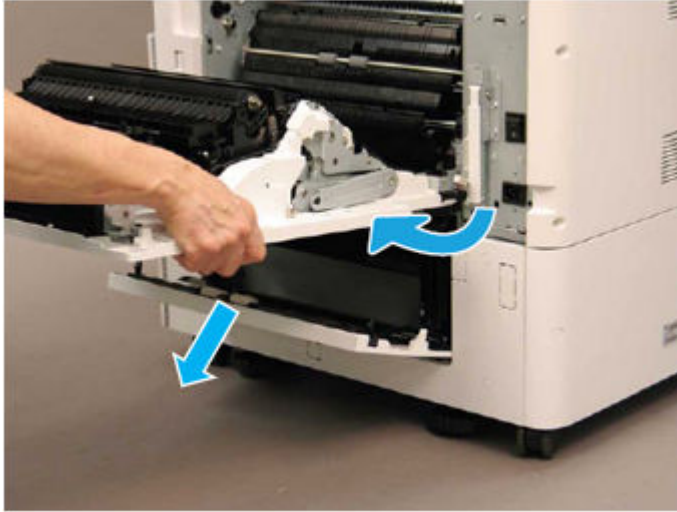


NOTE: If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.

CAUTION: To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-424 Remove the door

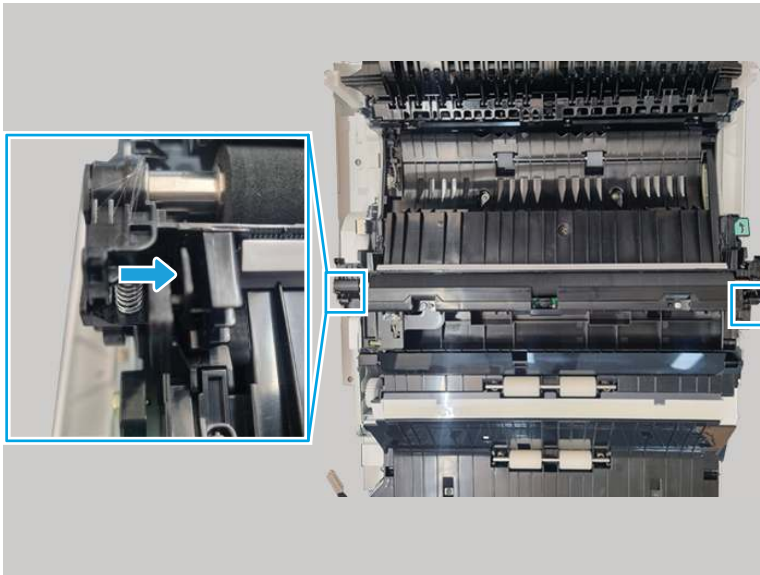


2. Remove the secondary transfer (T2) unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the T2 unit.

1. Lift up the T2 transfer assembly while pushing in the hooks at both ends of the assembly to release it.

Figure 6-425 Release the T2 assembly



2. Disconnect one connector on the back side of the T2 unit, and then remove the unit.



3. Remove the duplex assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the duplex assembly.

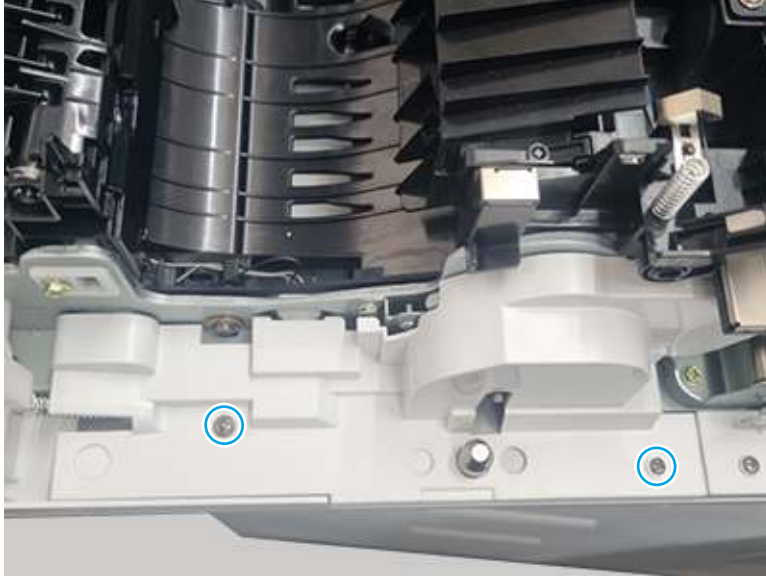
1. Remove one screw, and then remove the holder.

Figure 6-426 Remove one screw



2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-427 Remove two screws



3. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the duplex assembly.

Figure 6-428 Disconnect one connector

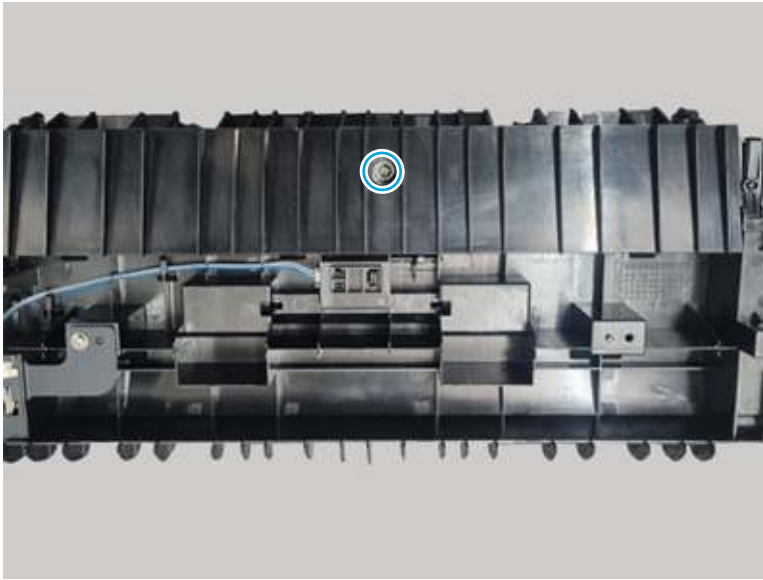


4. Remove the duplex jam sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the duplex jam sensor.

1. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-429 Remove one screw



2. Release four hooks to release the cover.

Figure 6-430 Release four hooks



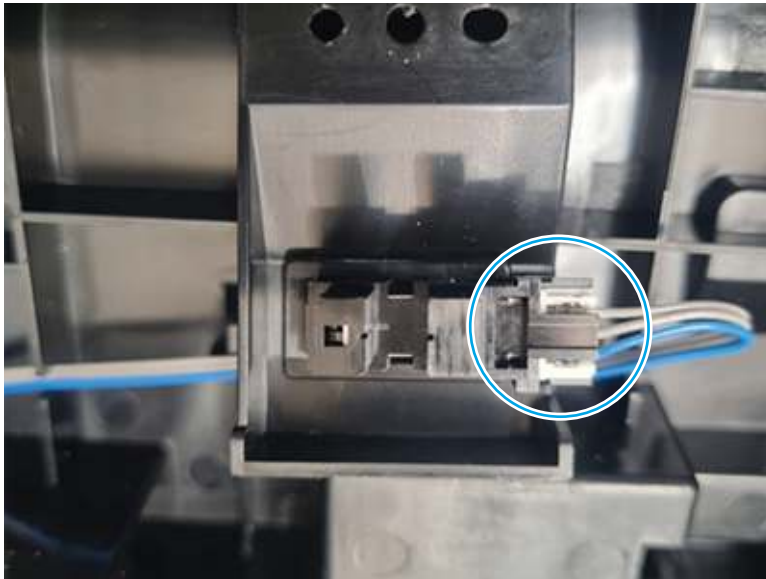
3. Remove one screw to release the sensor housing.

Figure 6-431 Remove one screw



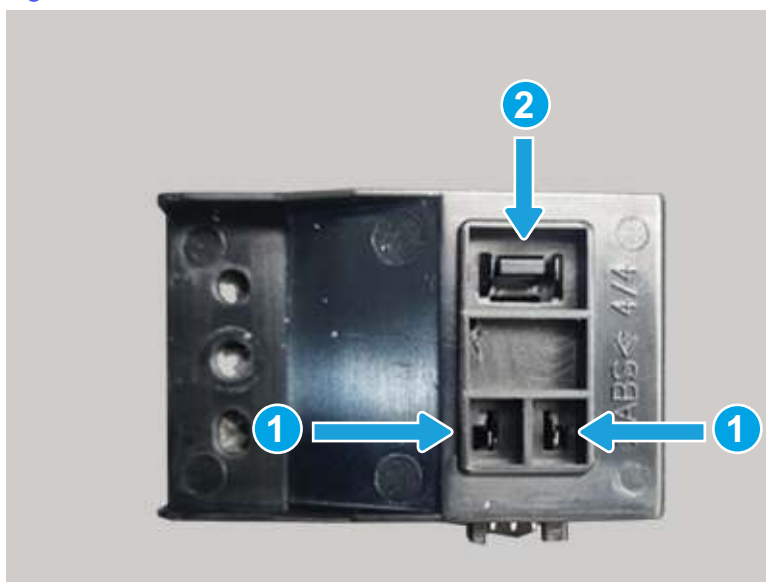
4. Disconnect the connector.

Figure 6-432 Disconnect the connector



5. Release three hooks to remove the duplex jam sensor.

Figure 6-433 Remove the sensor



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Duplex motor

Learn about removing and replacing the duplex motor.

Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-66 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01687A	Duplex motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right rear cover.

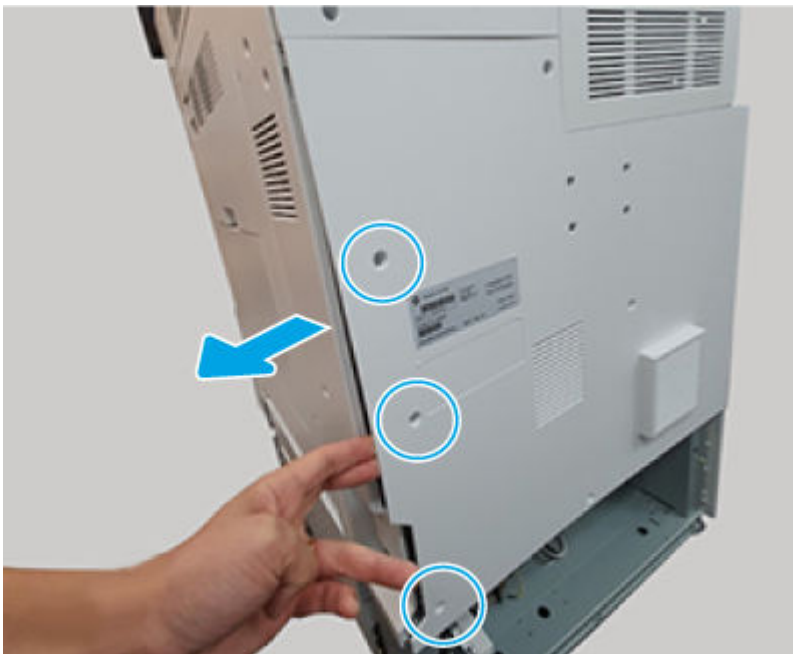
1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-434 Remove three screws



2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove three rear lower cover screws.
 - b. Slightly separate the rear lower cover from the printer.
 - c. Open the right door, and then remove the right rear cover.

Figure 6-435 Remove the cover



2. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

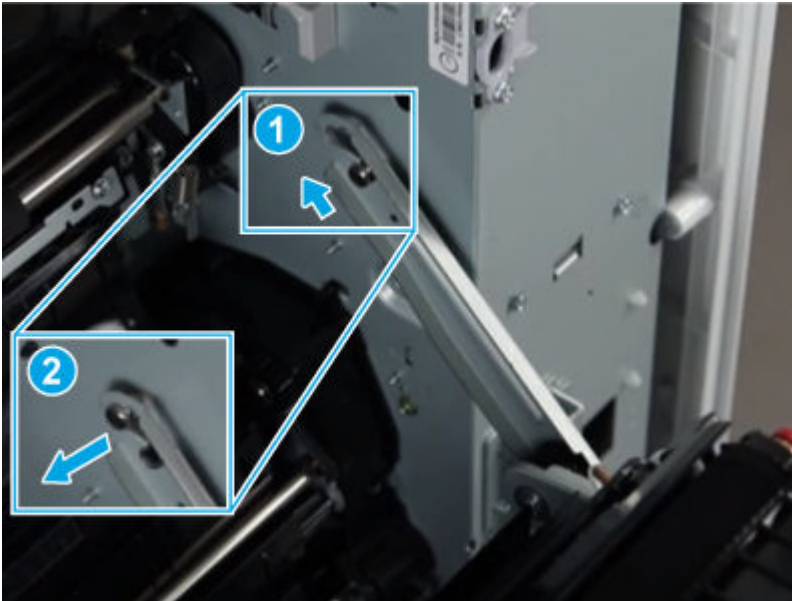
Figure 6-436 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

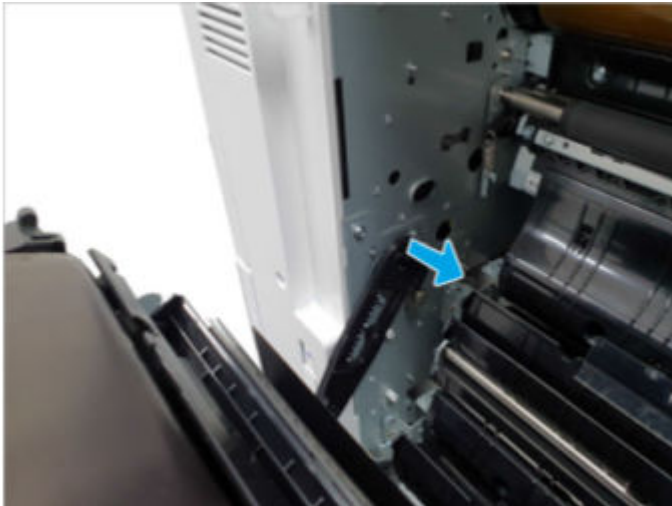
⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-437 Release the hinge



3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-438 Release the link



4. Remove the right door assembly.

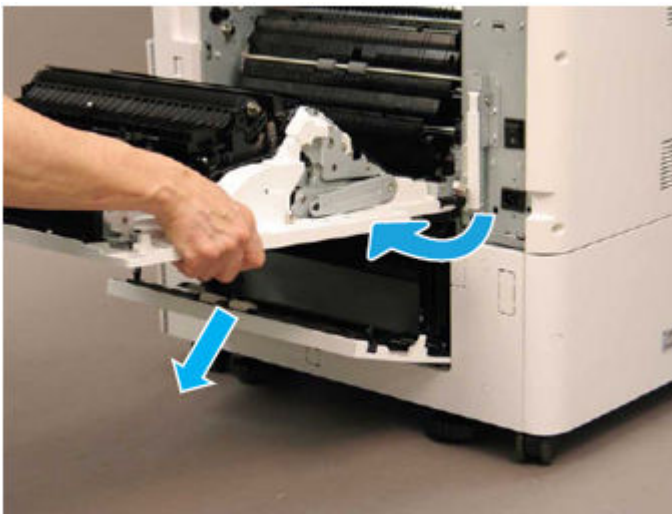


NOTE: If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.

CAUTION: To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-439 Remove the door

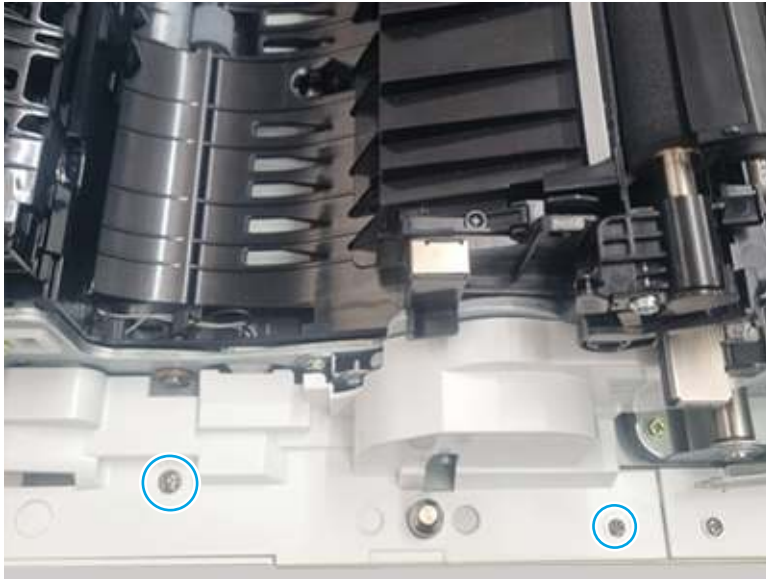


3. Remove the duplex motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the duplex motor.

1. Remove two screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-440 Remove two screws



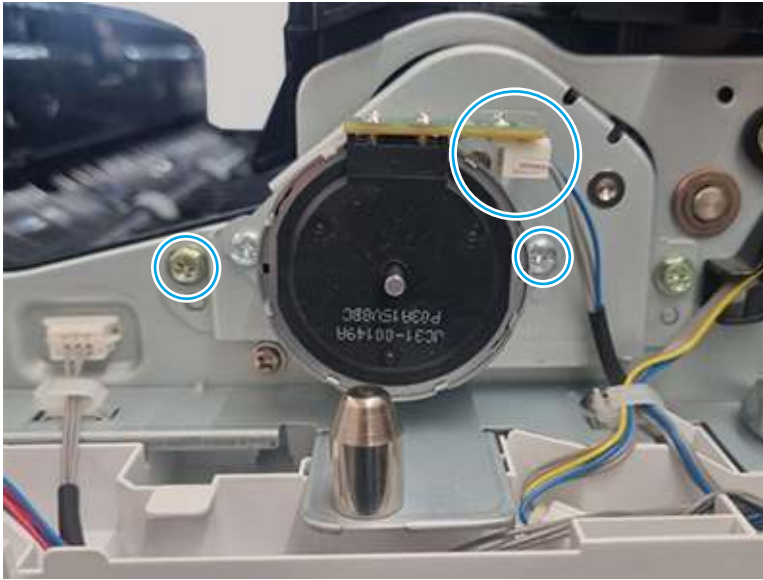
2. Lift up the duplex assembly in order to remove the motor.

Figure 6-441 Lift up the duplex assembly



3. Remove two screws, disconnect one connector, and then remove the duplex motor.

Figure 6-442 Remove the motor



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Toner flow

Learn about toner flow parts removal and replacement.

Toner cartridge

Learn about toner cartridge parts removal and replacement.

Removal and replacement: Toner dispense motor assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the toner dispense motor assembly.



[View a video of removing and replacing the toner dispense motor assembly.](#)

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-67 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01681A	Toner dispense motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the toner cartridge (control panel method)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the toner cartridge.

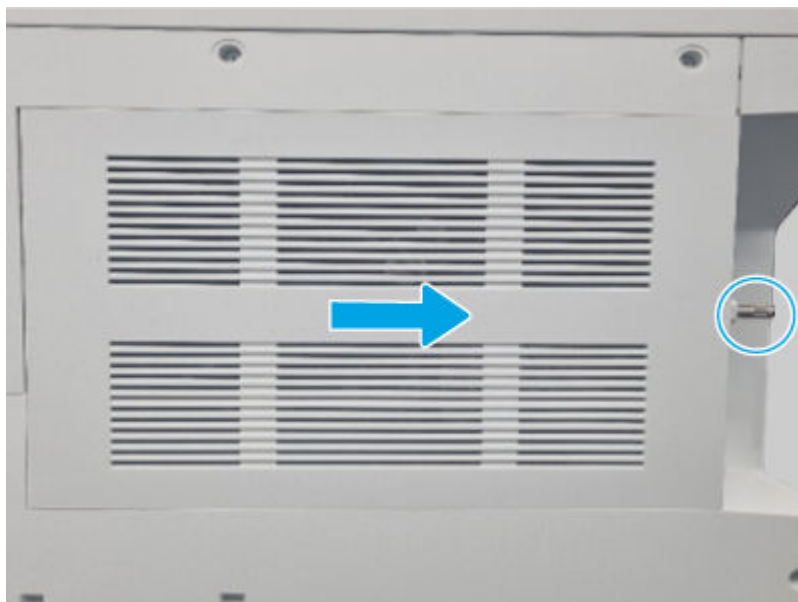
- At the printer control panel, do the following:
 - a. Select the [Sign In](#) item (located at the upper left corner of the control panel).
 - b. Select the [Service Access Code](#) item, and then enter the access code for the printer.
 - 03073122
 - c. Select the [Supplies](#) item.
 - d. Open the front door.
 - e. Select the [Eject](#) button  (located at the bottom right corner of the control panel).

2. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-443 Remove the cover



3. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

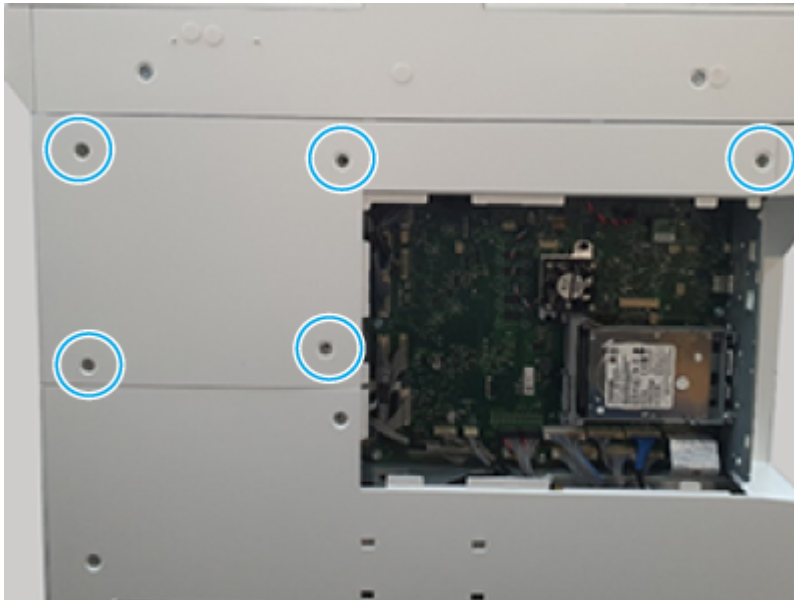
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-444 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-445 Remove the cover



4. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove six screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-446 Remove the cover



5. Remove the left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left cover.

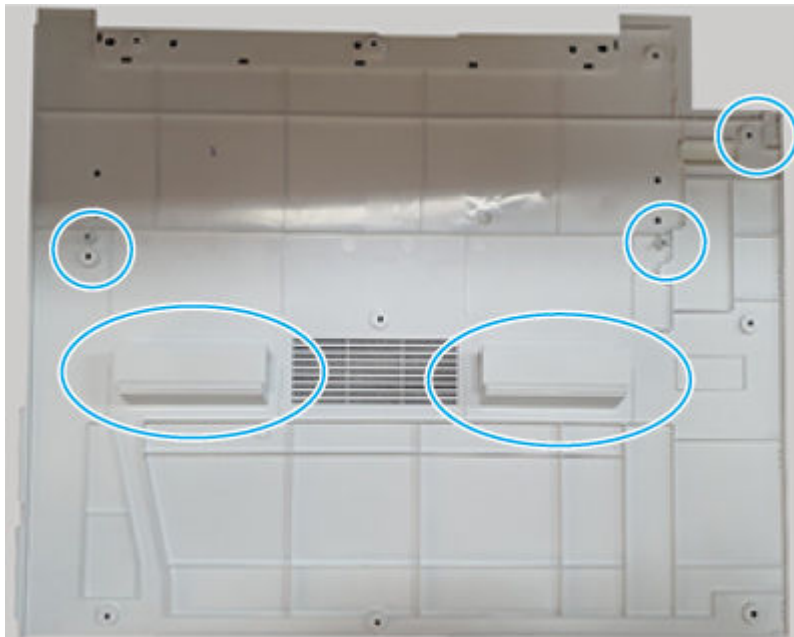
1. Open the front cover (door) and all installed trays.
2. Remove ten screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-447 Remove ten screws



3. Before proceeding, take note of the location of the mounting hooks on the inside of the cover.

Figure 6-448 Cover hook locations



4. Release the cover from the right to left side as shown below. Remove the cover.

Figure 6-449 Remove the cover

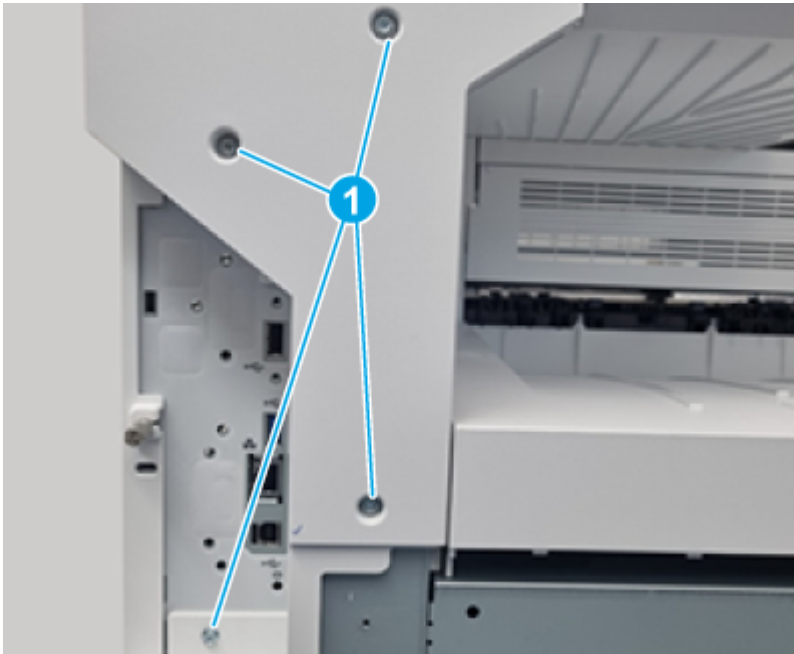


6. Remove the left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left top cover.

- Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-450 Remove the cover



7. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the TCU.

- Open the front door assembly. Push on each tab on the sides of the toner collection unit to release it, and then pull it straight out of the printer.

Figure 6-451 Remove the TCU

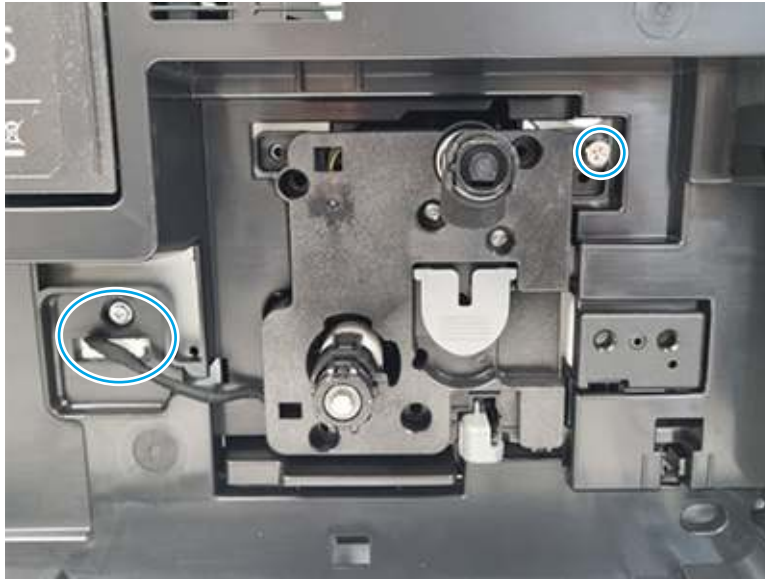


8. Remove the black drum unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the black drum unit.

1. Open the right door.
2. At the front of the printer, release one screw and unplug one connector.

Figure 6-452 Release one screw



3. Pull the drum unit out of the printer.


 **NOTE:** If the drum assembly is being removed to access other parts, skip the remaining steps. Those steps are for replacing the drum unit only.

Figure 6-453 Remove the unit



4. Set the drum unit down horizontally and remove six screws


Figure 6-454 Remove six screws



5. Disconnect one connector.

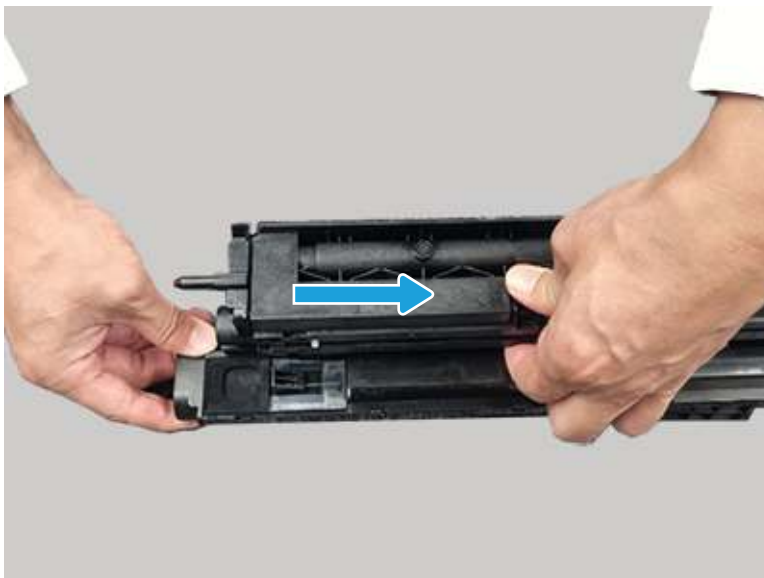
Figure 6-455 Disconnect one connector



 **Reinstallation tip:** Be sure to route the wire harness correctly when reinstalling this part.

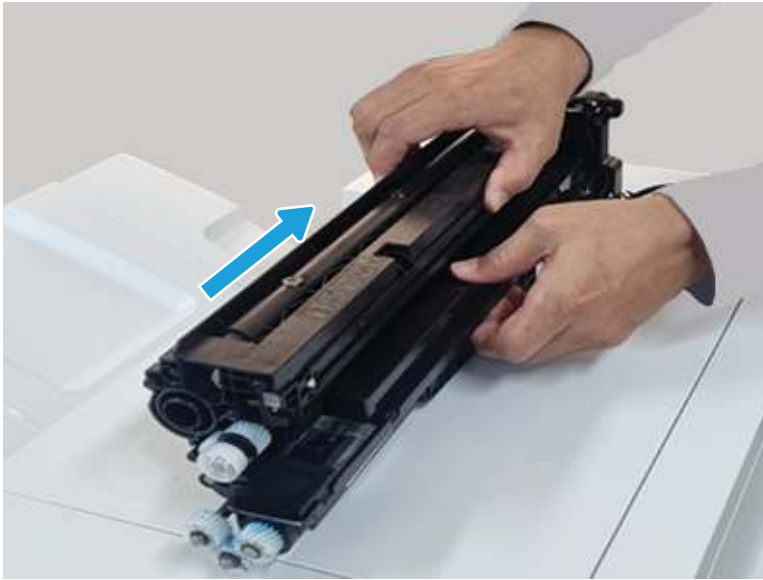
6. Remove the drum cover.


Figure 6-456 Remove the drum cover



7. Remove the black drum unit.

Figure 6-457 Remove the drum unit



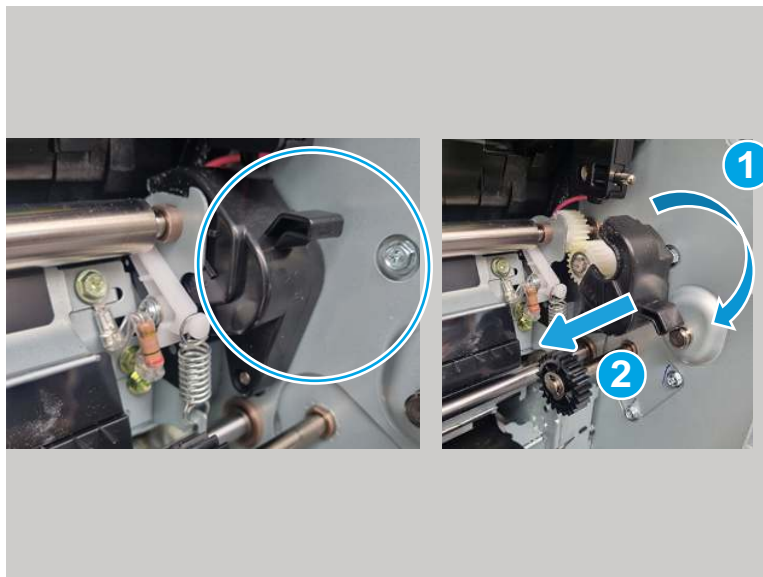
 **NOTE:** Be careful with spilled toner. If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

9. Remove the main drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the main drive assembly.

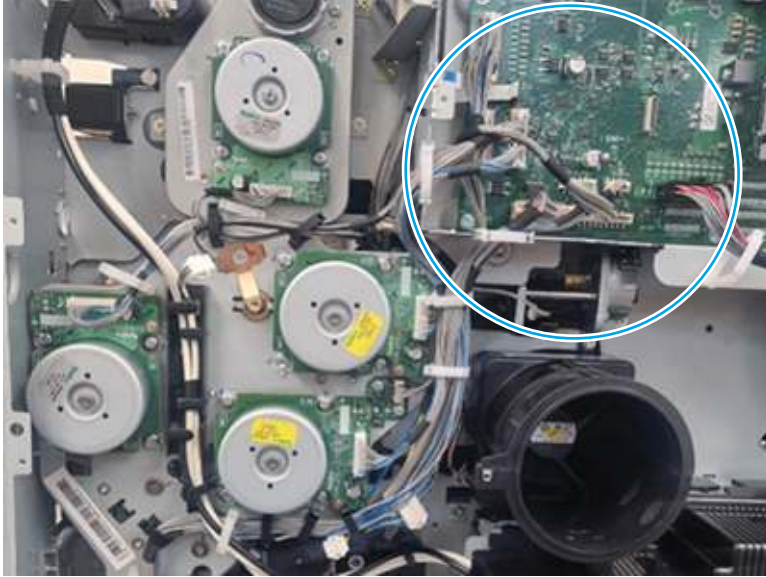
1. Remove the gear cover on the right side.

Figure 6-458 Remove the gear cover



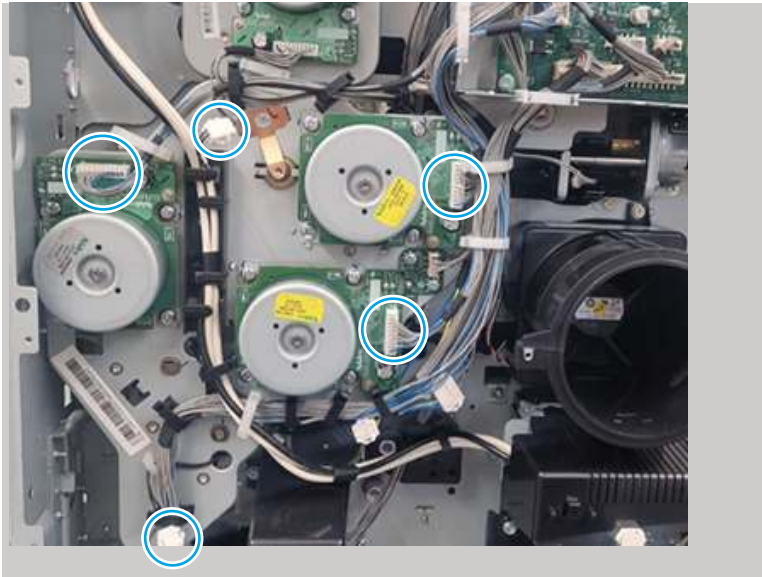
2. Unplug the connectors from the formatter.

Figure 6-459 Unplug the connectors



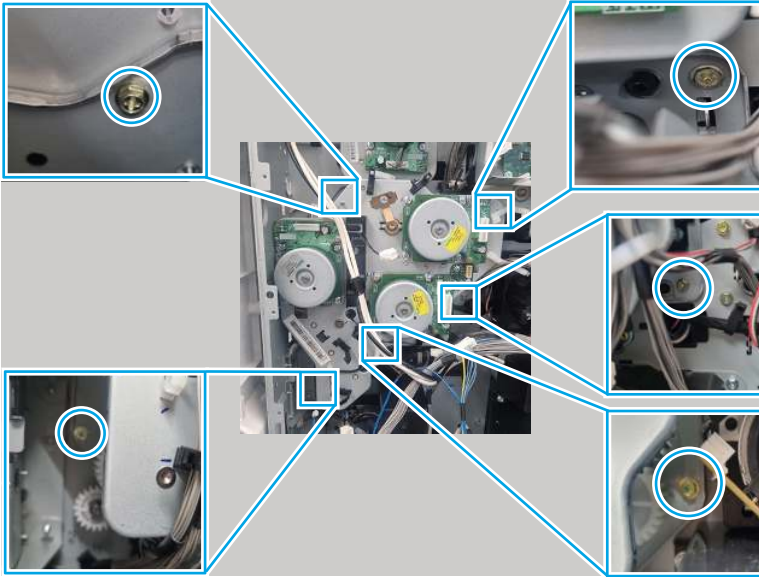
3. Disconnect five connectors linked to the main drive assembly.

Figure 6-460 Disconnect five connectors



4. Remove five screws, and then remove the feed drive assembly

Figure 6-461 Remove five screws

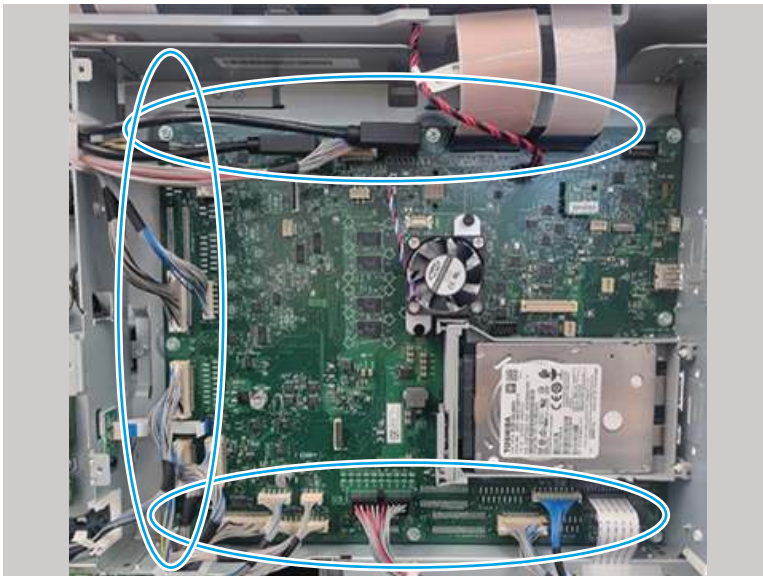


10. Remove the toner dispense motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the toner dispense motor assembly.

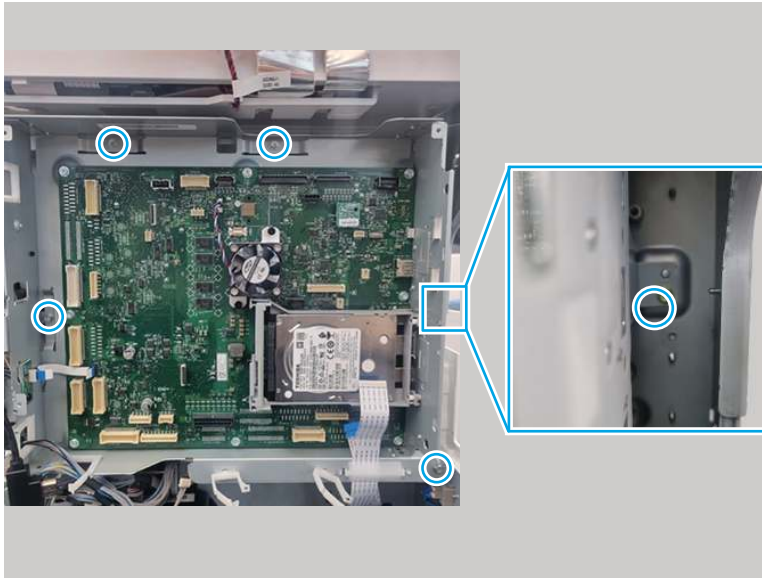
1. Unplug all of the connectors from the main PCA.

Figure 6-462 Remove the connectors



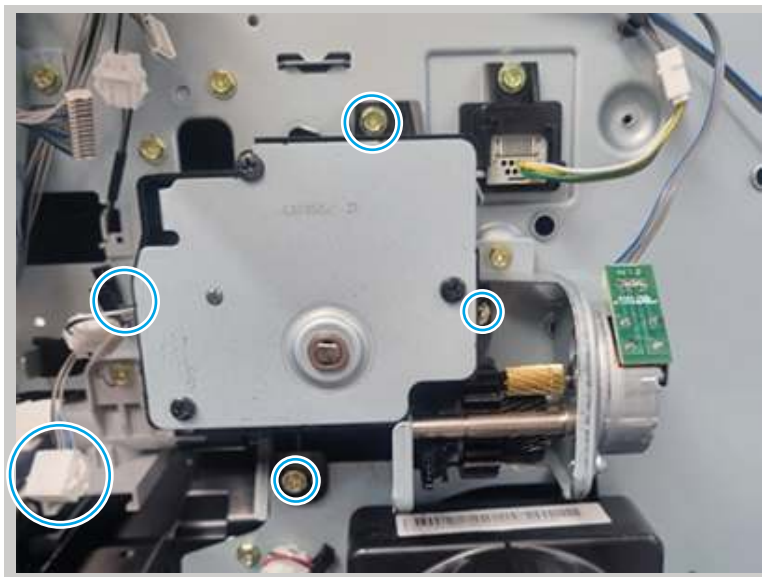
2. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-463 Remove five screws



3. Remove the formatter bracket.
4. Remove three screws, disconnect one connector, and then remove the dispense motor assembly.

Figure 6-464 Remove the assembly



11. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Toner dispense motor

Learn about removing and replacing the toner dispense motor assembly.

 [View a video on how to remove the toner dispense motor](#)


Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-68 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00094A	Toner dispense motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the toner cartridge (control panel method)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the toner cartridge.

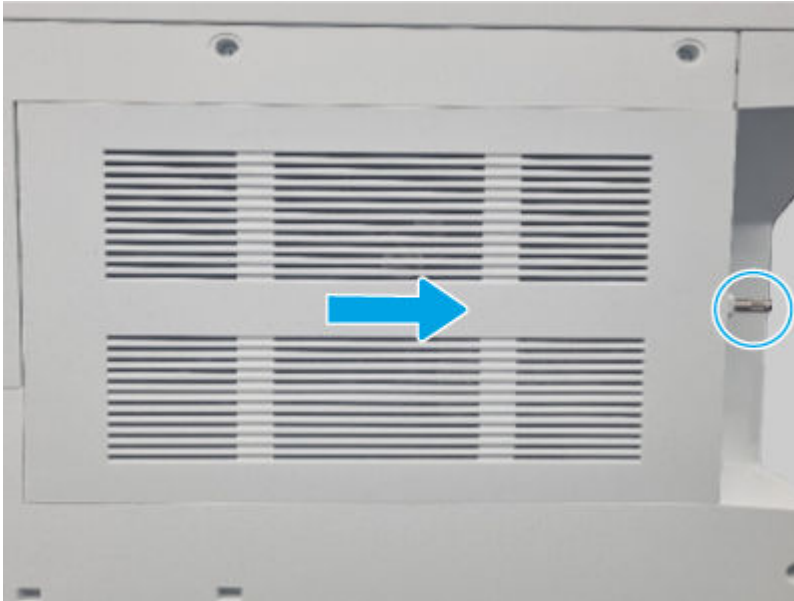
- At the printer control panel, do the following:
 - a. Select the [Sign In](#) item (located at the upper left corner of the control panel).
 - b. Select the [Service Access Code](#) item, and then enter the access code for the printer.
 - 03073122
 - c. Select the [Supplies](#) item.
 - d. Open the front door.
 - e. Select the [Eject](#) button  (located at the bottom right corner of the control panel).

2. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-465 Remove the cover



3. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

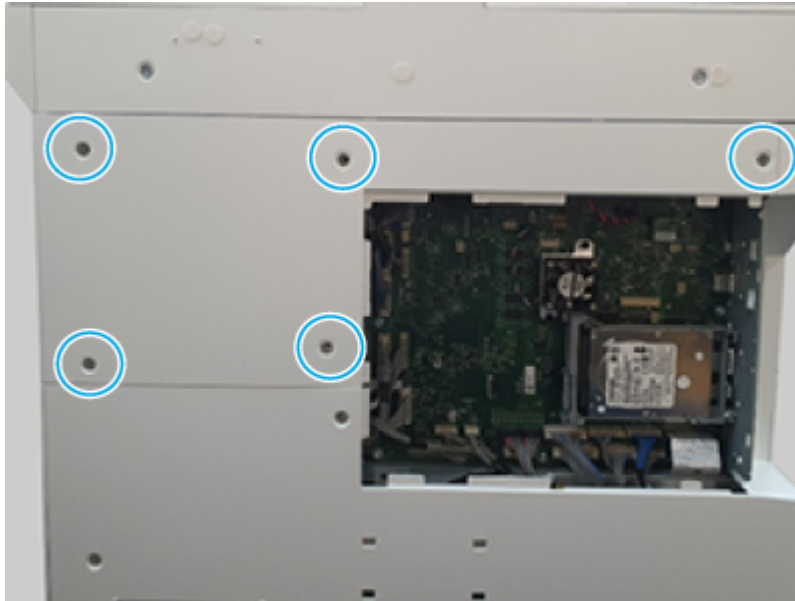
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-466 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-467 Remove the cover



4. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove six screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-468 Remove the cover



5. Remove the left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left cover.

1. Open the front cover (door) and all installed trays.

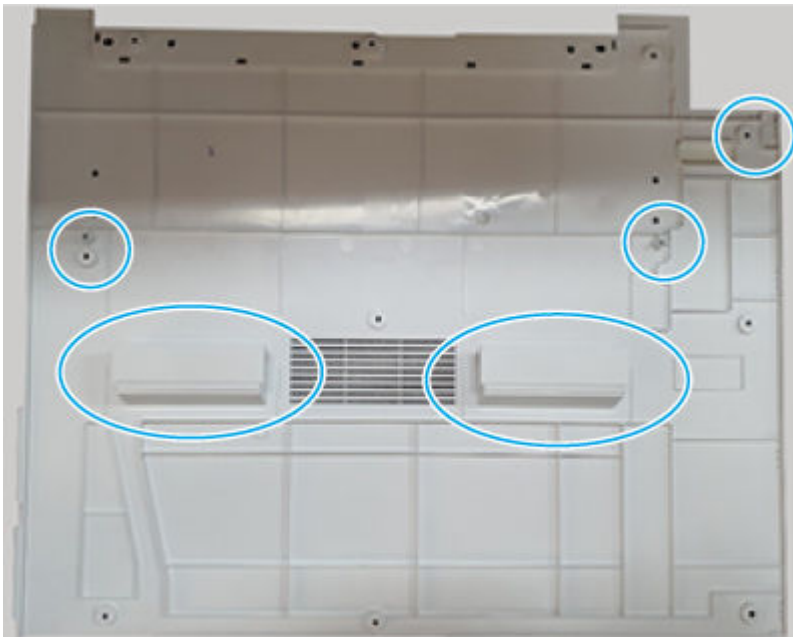
2. Remove ten screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-469 Remove ten screws



3. Before proceeding, take note of the location of the mounting hooks on the inside of the cover.

Figure 6-470 Cover hook locations



4. Release the cover from the right to left side as shown below. Remove the cover.

Figure 6-471 Remove the cover

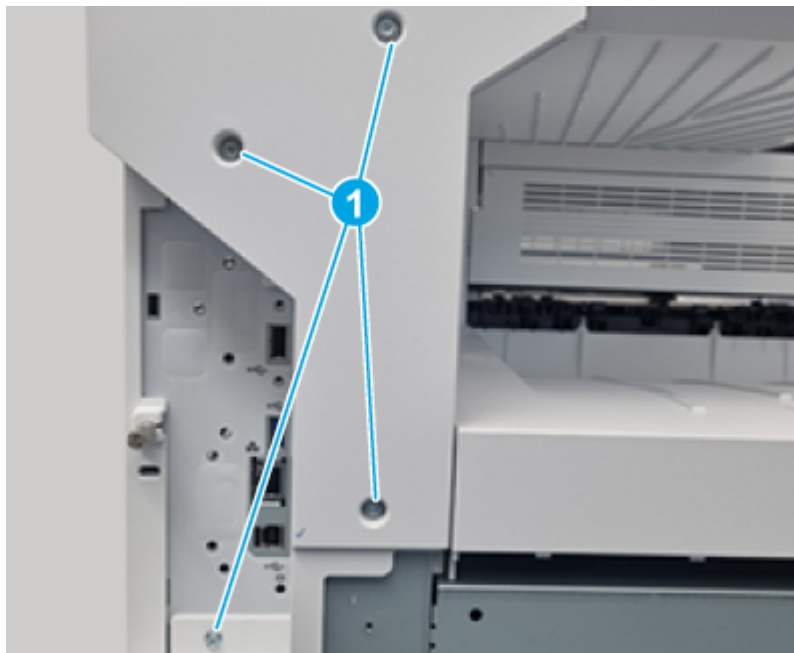


6. Remove the left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left top cover.

- Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-472 Remove the cover



7. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the TCU.

- Open the front door assembly. Push on each tab on the sides of the toner collection unit to release it, and then pull it straight out of the printer.

Figure 6-473 Remove the TCU



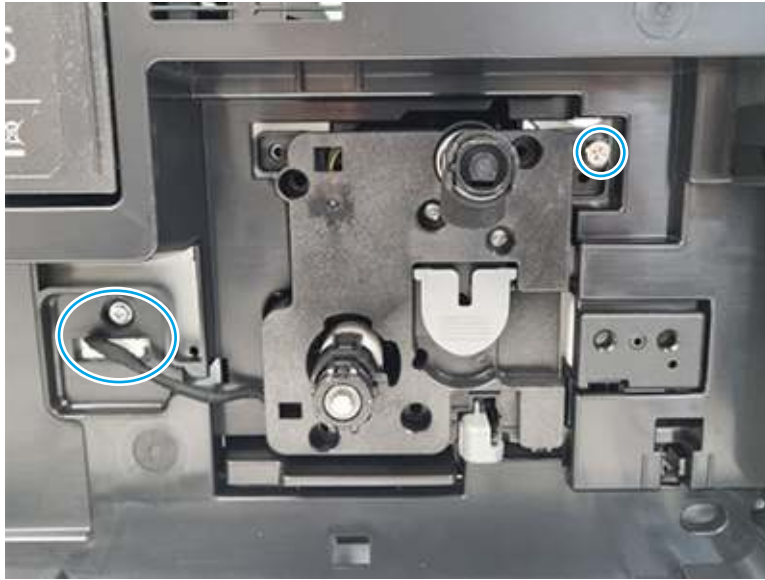
8. Remove the black drum unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the black drum unit.

1. Open the right door.

2. At the front of the printer, release one screw and unplug one connector.

Figure 6-474 Release one screw



3. Pull the drum unit out of the printer.


 **NOTE:** If the drum assembly is being removed to access other parts, skip the remaining steps. Those steps are for replacing the drum unit only.

Figure 6-475 Remove the unit



4. Set the drum unit down horizontally and remove six screws


Figure 6-476 Remove six screws



5. Disconnect one connector.

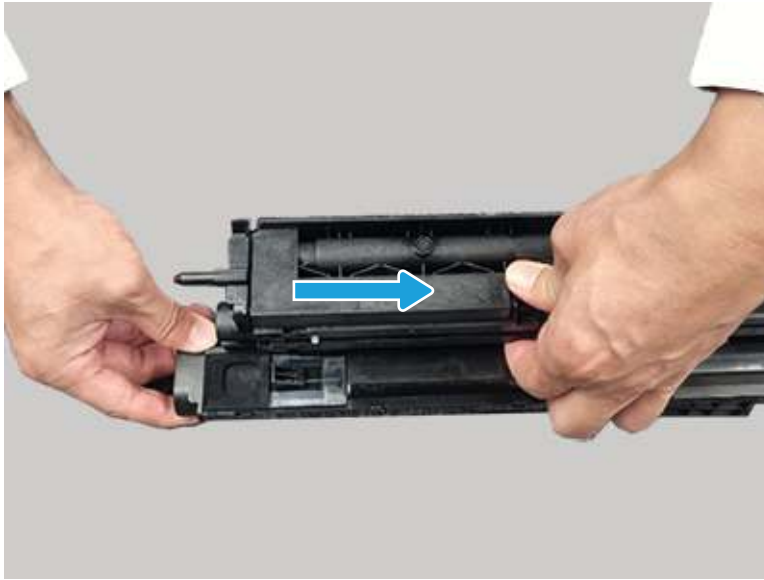
Figure 6-477 Disconnect one connector



 **Reinstallation tip:** Be sure to route the wire harness correctly when reinstalling this part.

6. Remove the drum cover.


Figure 6-478 Remove the drum cover



7. Remove the black drum unit.

Figure 6-479 Remove the drum unit



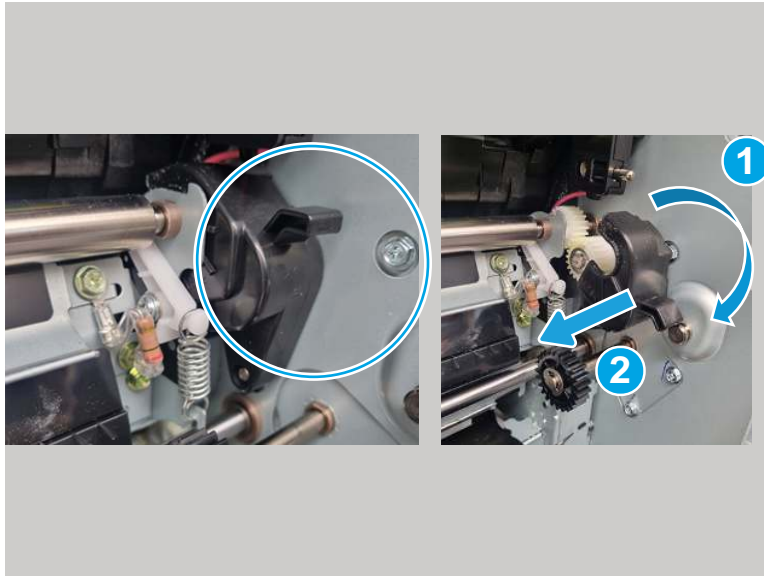
 **NOTE:** Be careful with spilled toner. If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

9. Remove the main drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the main drive assembly.

1. Remove the gear cover on the right side.

Figure 6-480 Remove the gear cover



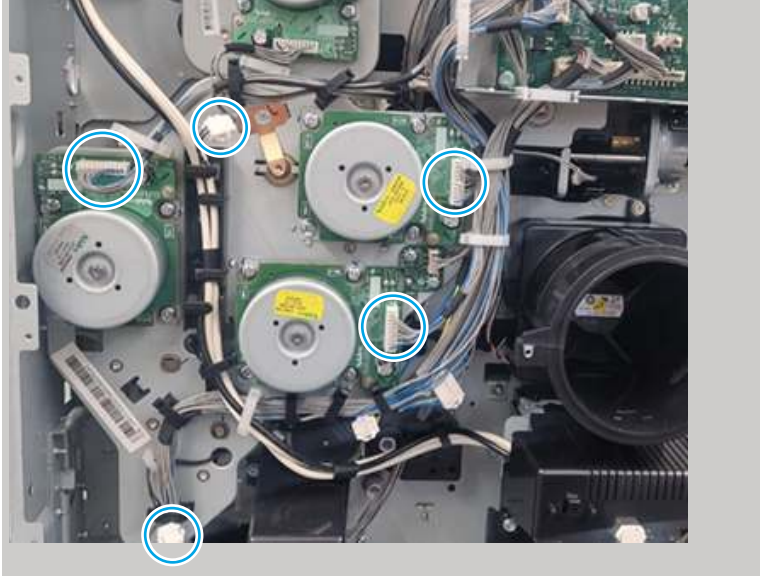
2. Unplug the connectors from the formatter.

Figure 6-481 Unplug the connectors



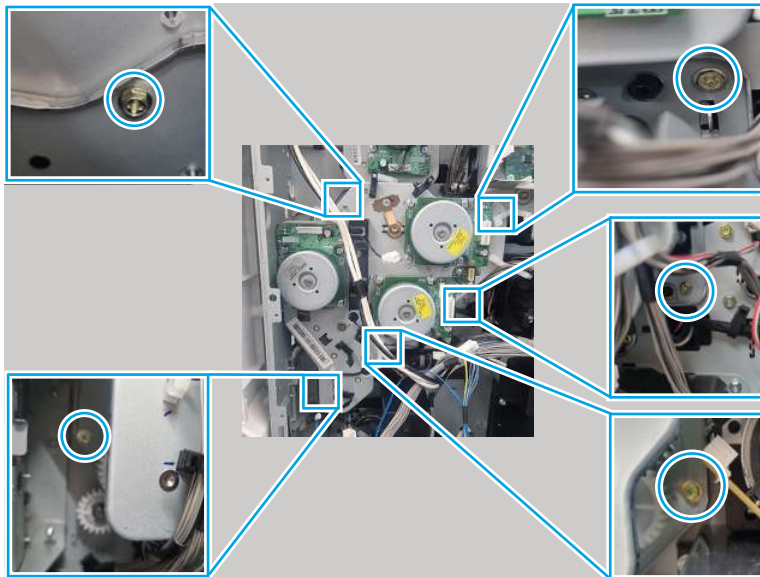
3. Disconnect five connectors linked to the main drive assembly.

Figure 6-482 Disconnect five connectors



4. Remove five screws, and then remove the feed drive assembly

Figure 6-483 Remove five screws

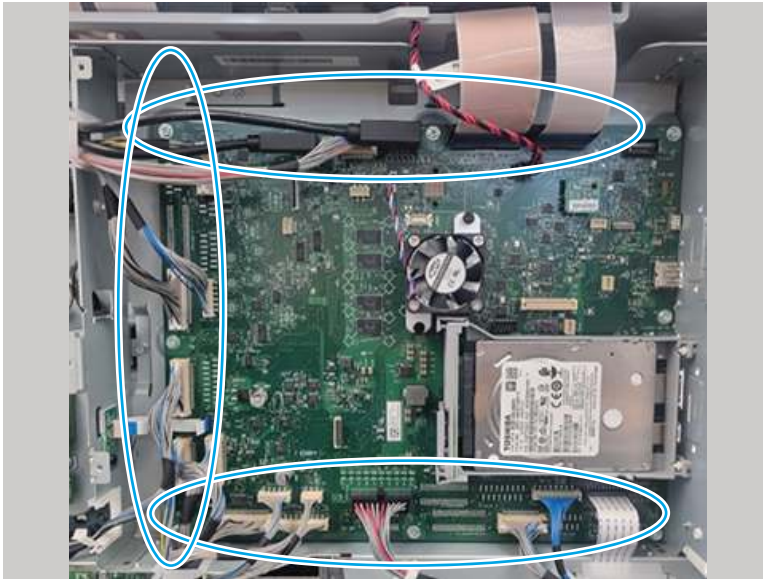


10. Remove the toner dispense motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the toner dispense motor assembly.

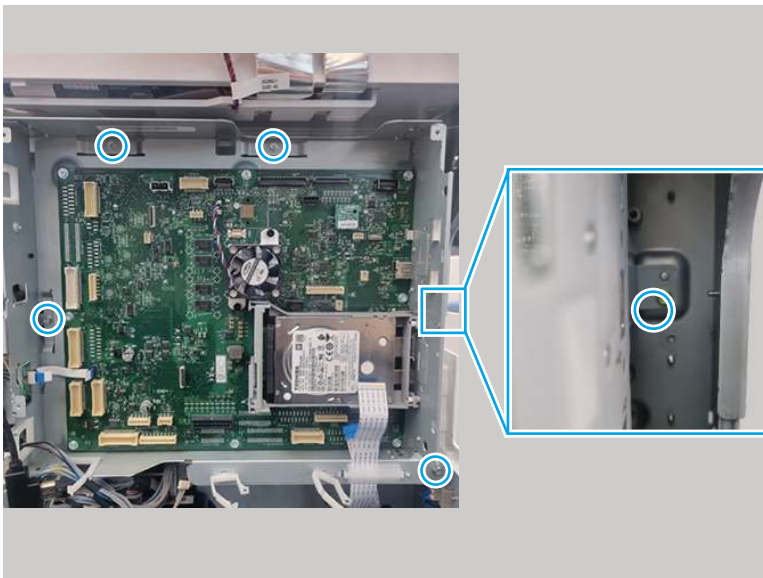
1. Unplug all of the connectors from the main PCA.

Figure 6-484 Remove the connectors



2. Remove five screws.

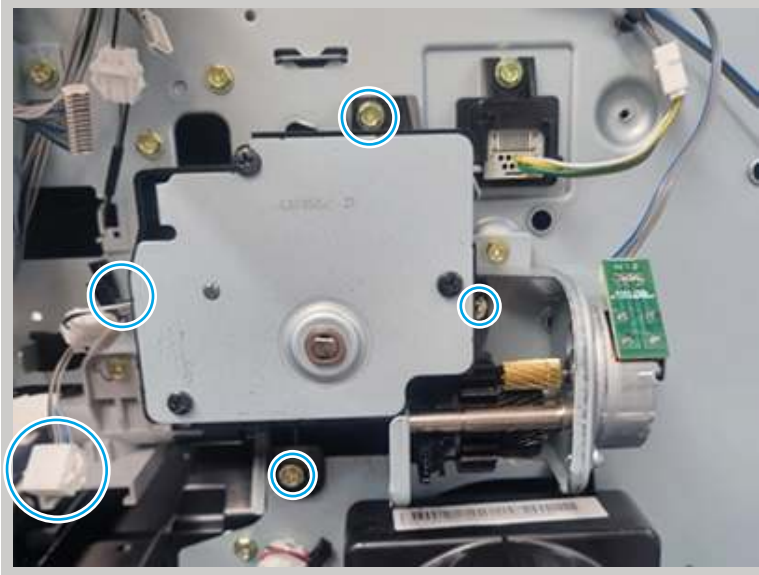
Figure 6-485 Remove five screws



3. Remove the formatter bracket.

4. Remove three screws, disconnect one connector, and then remove the dispense motor assembly.

Figure 6-486 Remove the assembly



11. Remove the toner dispense motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the toner dispense motor.

1. Disconnect one connector and release the wire harness.

Figure 6-487 Remove the wire harness



2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-488 Remove three screws



3. Remove the toner dispense motor from the housing.

Figure 6-489 Remove the motor



12. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Toner cartridge (control panel method)

Learn about removing and replacing the toner cartridge.



[View a video of removing and replacing the toner cartridges using the control panel.](#)

Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

No before performing service procedures required.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-69 Part information

Part number	Part description
W9064-67004	Toner cartridge - Standard yield
W9065-67007	Toner cartridge - High yield

Required tools


- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the toner cartridge (control panel method)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the toner cartridge.

- At the printer control panel, do the following:
 - a. Select the [Sign In](#) item (located at the upper left corner of the control panel).
 - b. Select the [Service Access Code](#) item, and then enter the access code for the printer.
 - 03073122
 - c. Select the [Supplies](#) item.
 - d. Open the front door.
 - e. Select the [Eject](#) button  (located at the bottom right corner of the control panel).

2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Toner cartridge (disassemble method)

Learn about removing and replacing the toner cartridge.

Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-70 Part information

Part number	Part description
W9064-67004	Toner cartridge - Standard yield
W9065-67007	Toner cartridge - High yield

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the toner cartridge (control panel method)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the toner cartridge.

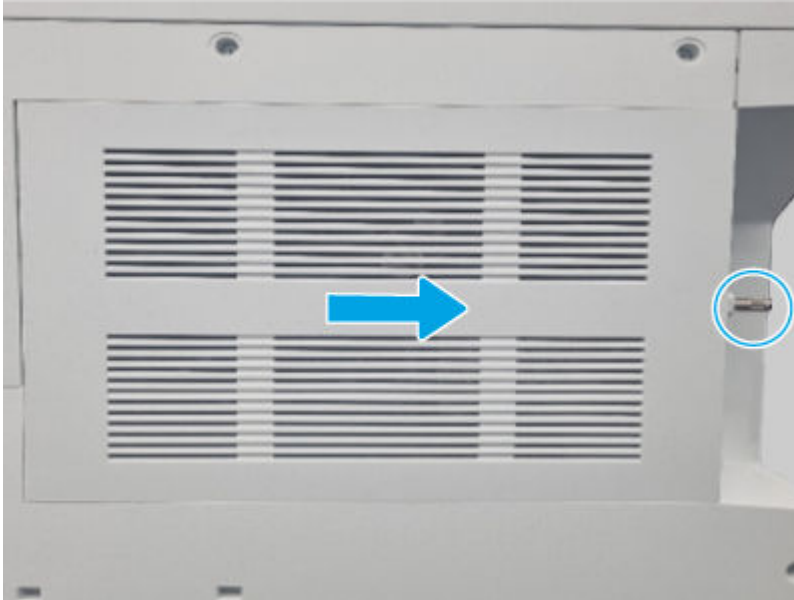
- At the printer control panel, do the following:
 - a. Select the [Sign In](#) item (located at the upper left corner of the control panel).
 - b. Select the [Service Access Code](#) item, and then enter the access code for the printer.
 - 03073122
 - c. Select the [Supplies](#) item.
 - d. Open the front door.
 - e. Select the [Eject](#) button  (located at the bottom right corner of the control panel).

2. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-490 Remove the cover



3. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

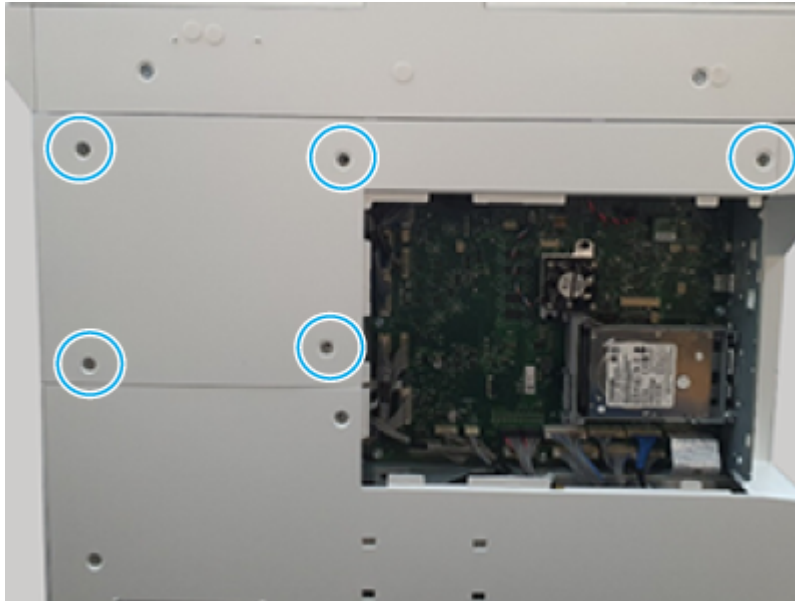
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-491 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-492 Remove the cover



4. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove six screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-493 Remove the cover



5. Remove the left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left cover.

1. Open the front cover (door) and all installed trays.

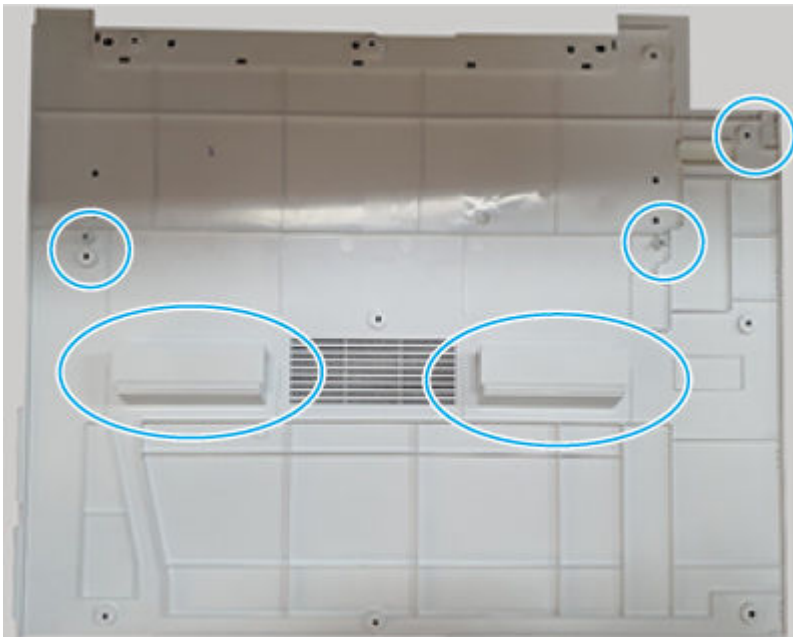
2. Remove ten screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-494 Remove ten screws



3. Before proceeding, take note of the location of the mounting hooks on the inside of the cover.

Figure 6-495 Cover hook locations



4. Release the cover from the right to left side as shown below. Remove the cover.

Figure 6-496 Remove the cover

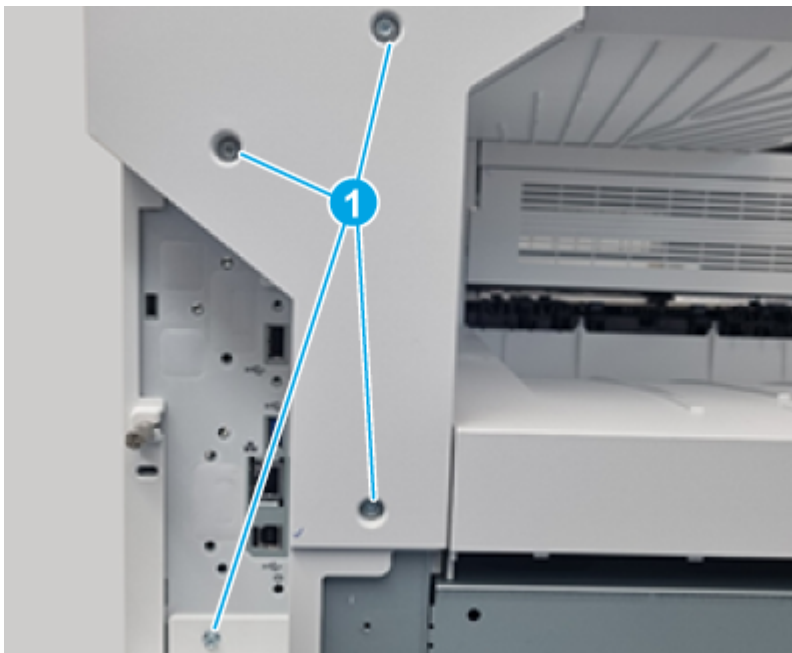


6. Remove the left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left top cover.

- Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-497 Remove the cover



7. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the TCU.

- Open the front door assembly. Push on each tab on the sides of the toner collection unit to release it, and then pull it straight out of the printer.

Figure 6-498 Remove the TCU



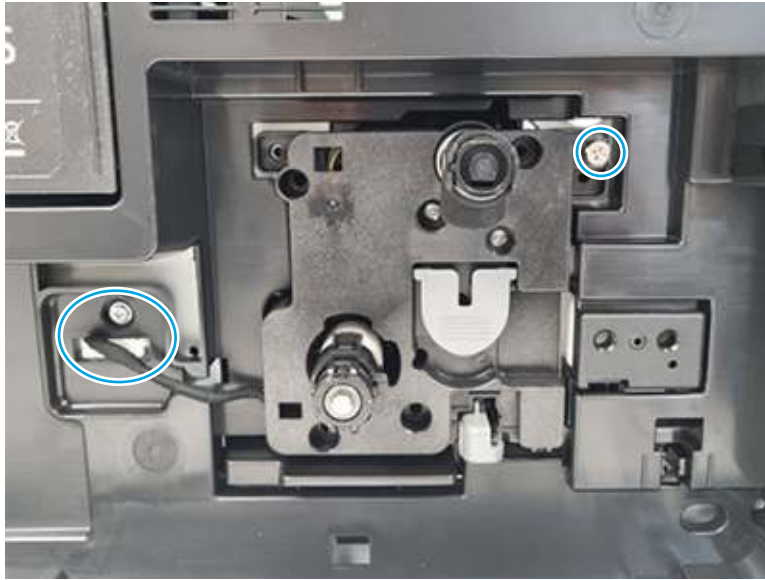
8. Remove the black drum unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the black drum unit.

1. Open the right door.

2. At the front of the printer, release one screw and unplug one connector.

Figure 6-499 Release one screw



3. Pull the drum unit out of the printer.


 **NOTE:** If the drum assembly is being removed to access other parts, skip the remaining steps. Those steps are for replacing the drum unit only.

Figure 6-500 Remove the unit



4. Set the drum unit down horizontally and remove six screws


Figure 6-501 Remove six screws



5. Disconnect one connector.

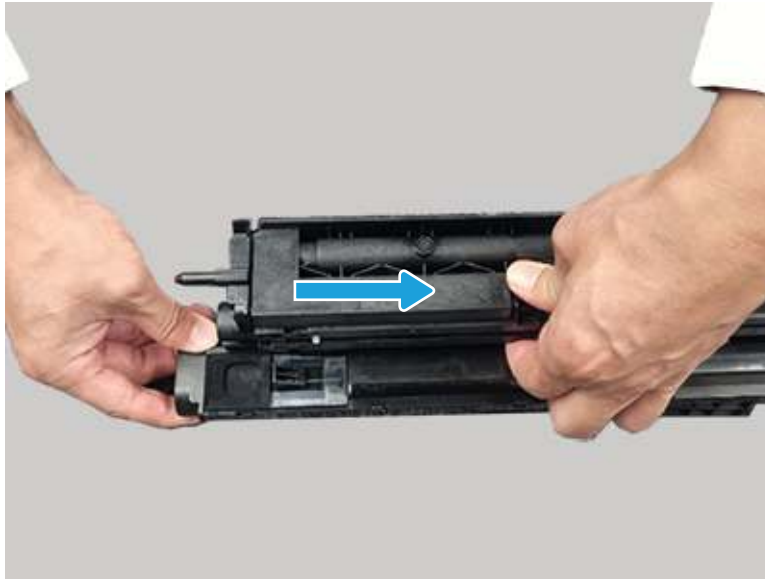
Figure 6-502 Disconnect one connector



 **Reinstallation tip:** Be sure to route the wire harness correctly when reinstalling this part.

6. Remove the drum cover.


Figure 6-503 Remove the drum cover



7. Remove the black drum unit.

Figure 6-504 Remove the drum unit



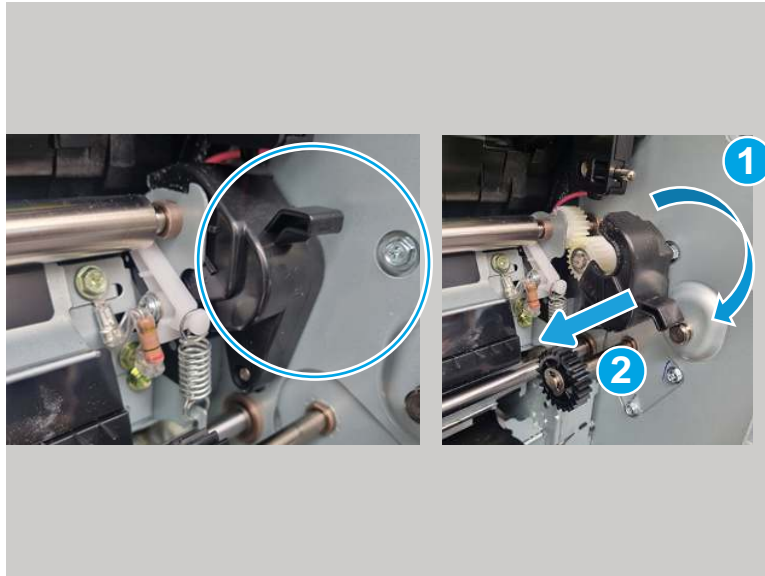
 **NOTE:** Be careful with spilled toner. If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

9. Remove the main drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the main drive assembly.

1. Remove the gear cover on the right side.

Figure 6-505 Remove the gear cover



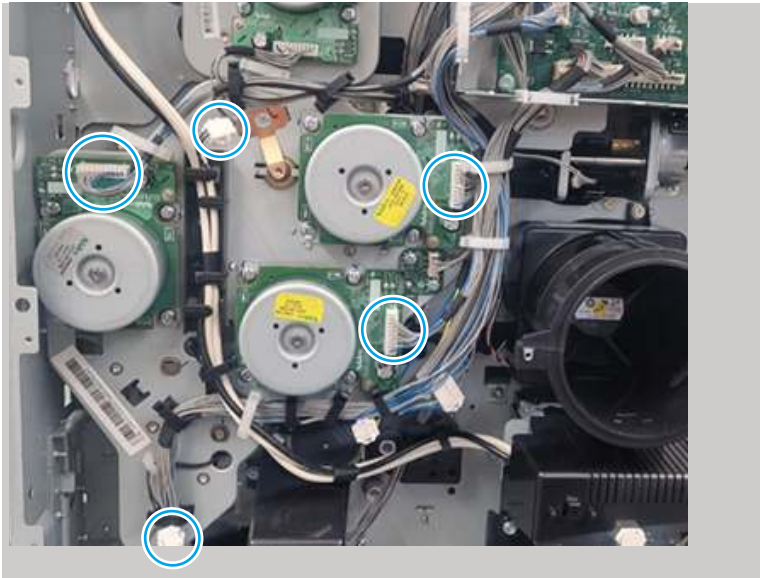
2. Unplug the connectors from the formatter.

Figure 6-506 Unplug the connectors



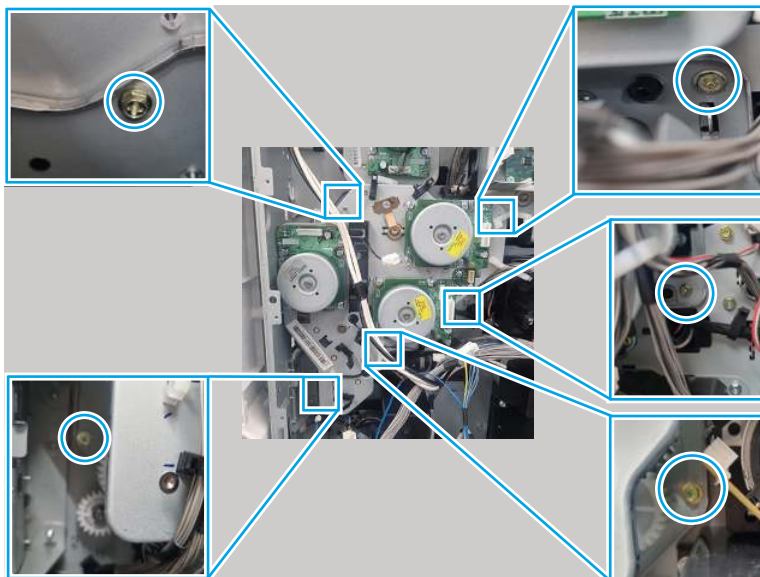
3. Disconnect five connectors linked to the main drive assembly.

Figure 6-507 Disconnect five connectors



4. Remove five screws, and then remove the feed drive assembly

Figure 6-508 Remove five screws

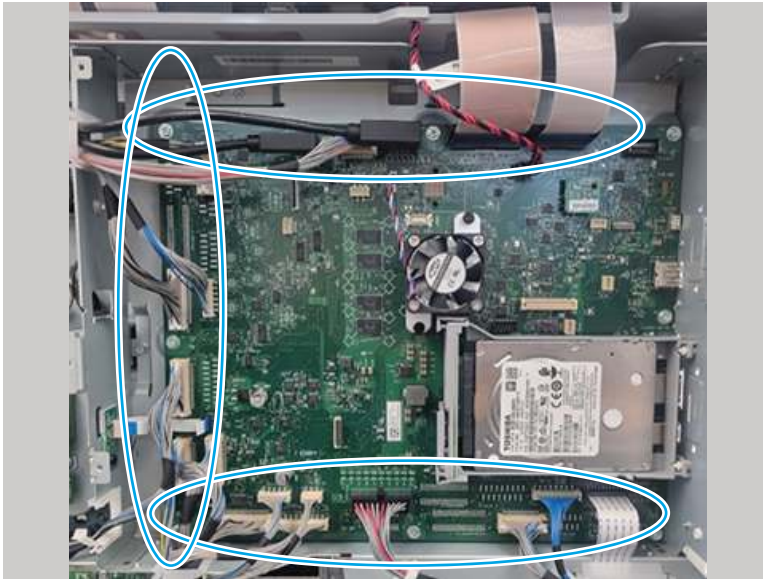


10. Remove the toner dispense motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the toner dispense motor assembly.

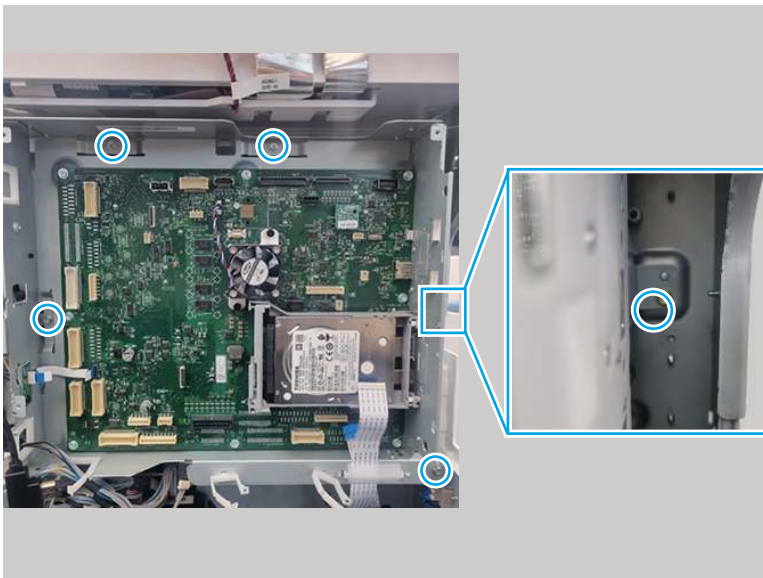
1. Unplug all of the connectors from the main PCA.

Figure 6-509 Remove the connectors



2. Remove five screws.

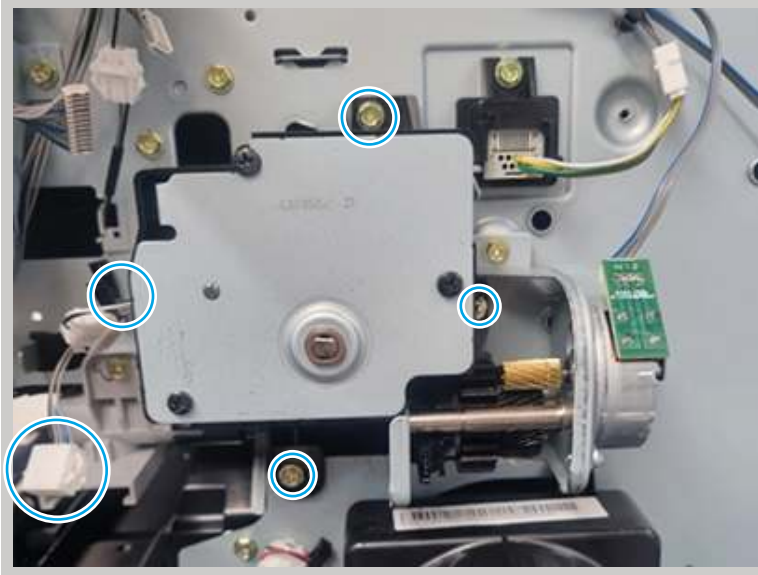
Figure 6-510 Remove five screws



3. Remove the formatter bracket.

4. Remove three screws, disconnect one connector, and then remove the dispense motor assembly.

Figure 6-511 Remove the assembly



11. Remove the toner cartridge (disassemble method)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the toner cartridge.

- Open the front cover, and then push in the toner cartridge to remove it.

Figure 6-512 Remove the cartridge



Removal and replacement: Toner CRUM modular jack harness

Learn about removing and replacing the toner CRUM modular jack harness.

Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-71 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ94-50001	Toner CRUM modular jack harness

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.


Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the toner cartridge (control panel method)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the toner cartridge.

- At the printer control panel, do the following:
 - a. Select the [Sign In](#) item (located at the upper left corner of the control panel).
 - b. Select the [Service Access Code](#) item, and then enter the access code for the printer.
 - 03073122
 - c. Select the [Supplies](#) item.
 - d. Open the front door.

- e. Select the **Eject** button  (located at the bottom right corner of the control panel).

2. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the TCU.

- Open the front door assembly. Push on each tab on the sides of the toner collection unit to release it, and then pull it straight out of the printer.

Figure 6-513 Remove the TCU



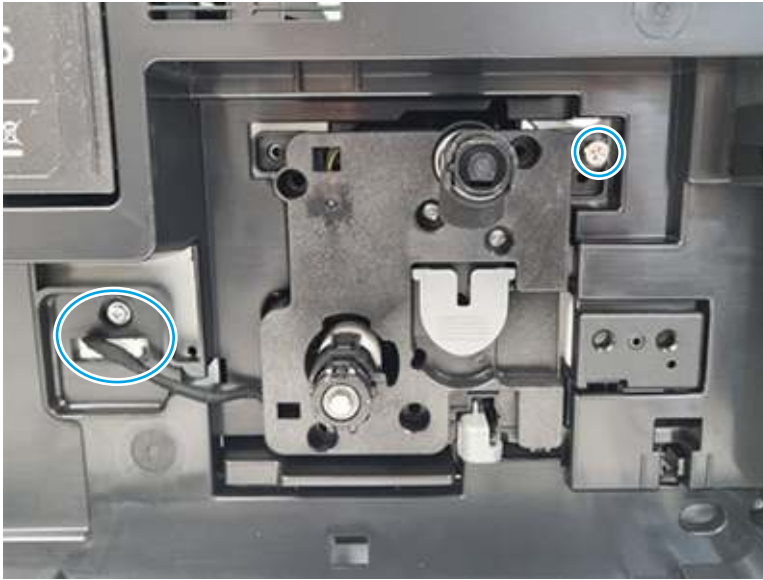
3. Remove the black drum unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the black drum unit.

1. Open the right door.

2. At the front of the printer, release one screw and unplug one connector.

Figure 6-514 Release one screw



3. Pull the drum unit out of the printer.


 **NOTE:** If the drum assembly is being removed to access other parts, skip the remaining steps. Those steps are for replacing the drum unit only.

Figure 6-515 Remove the unit



4. Set the drum unit down horizontally and remove six screws


Figure 6-516 Remove six screws



5. Disconnect one connector.

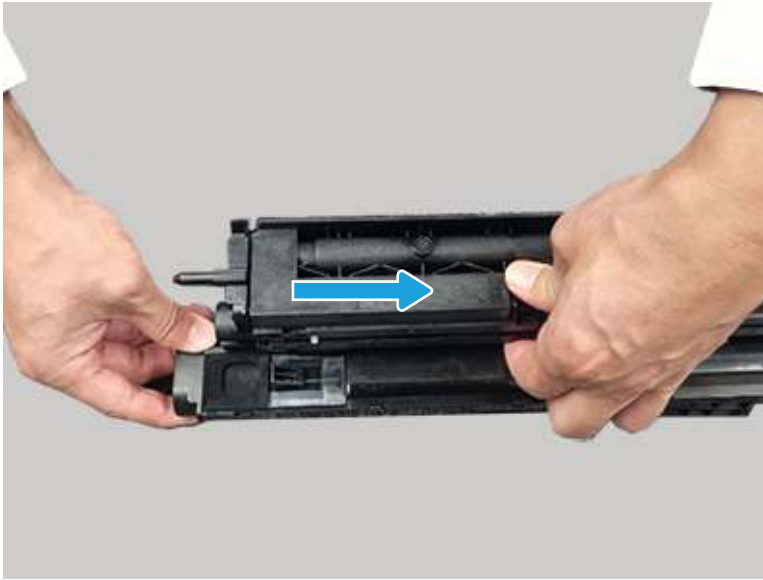
Figure 6-517 Disconnect one connector



 **Reinstallation tip:** Be sure to route the wire harness correctly when reinstalling this part.

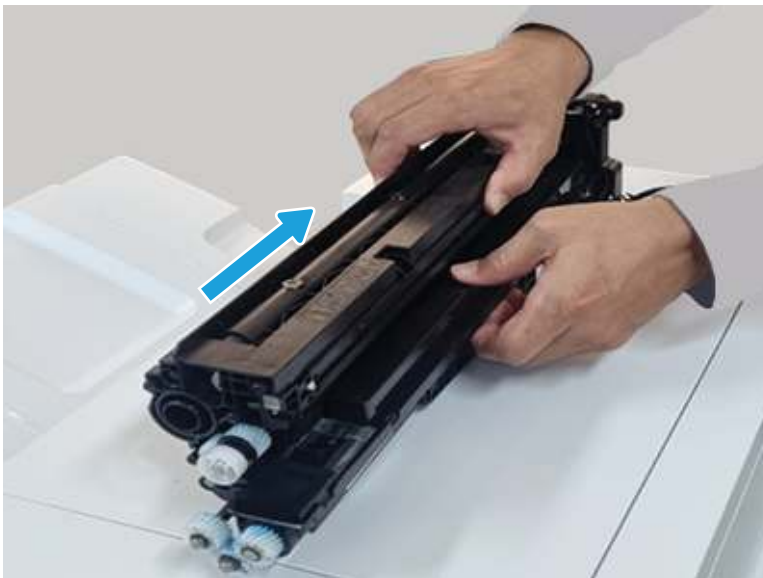
6. Remove the drum cover.


Figure 6-518 Remove the drum cover



7. Remove the black drum unit.

Figure 6-519 Remove the drum unit



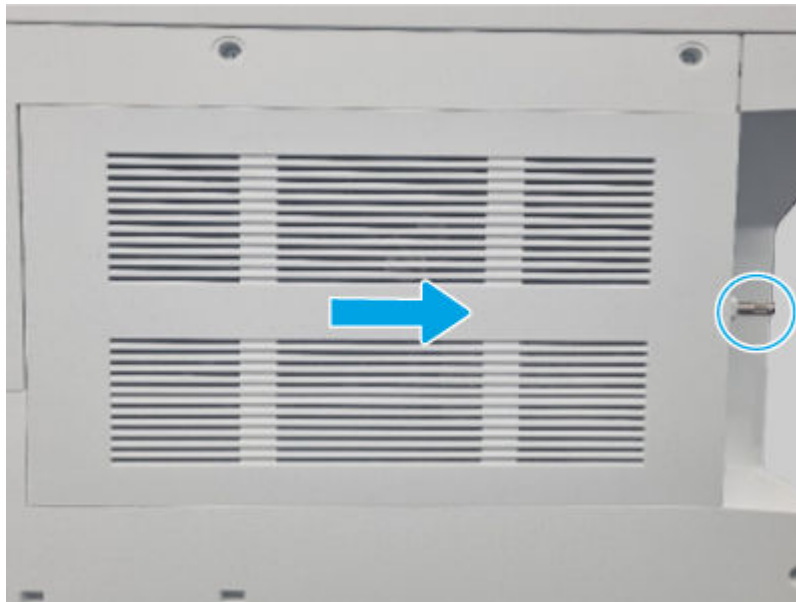
 **NOTE:** Be careful with spilled toner. If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

4. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-520 Remove the cover



5. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

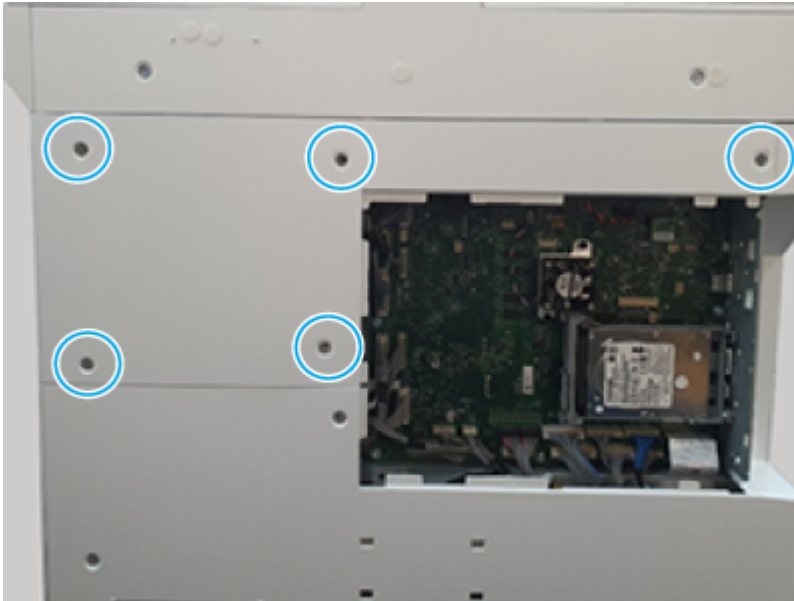
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-521 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-522 Remove the cover



6. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove six screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-523 Remove the cover



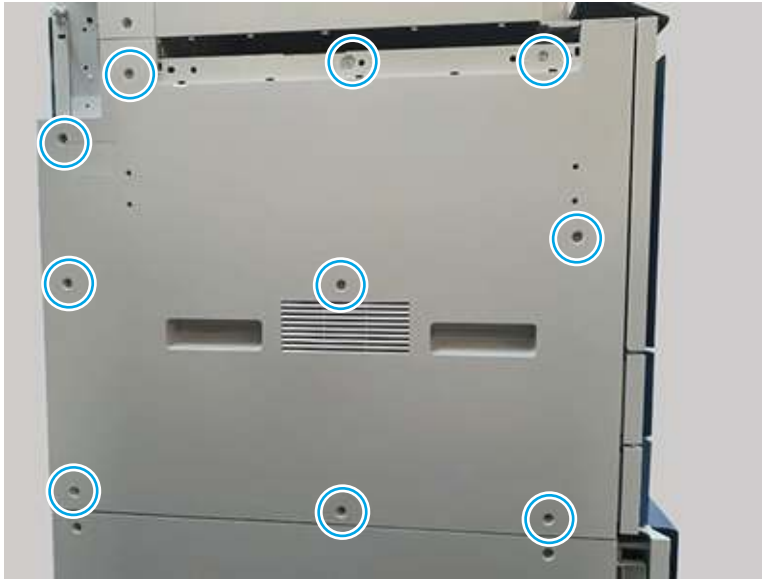
7. Remove the left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left cover.

1. Open the front cover (door) and all installed trays.

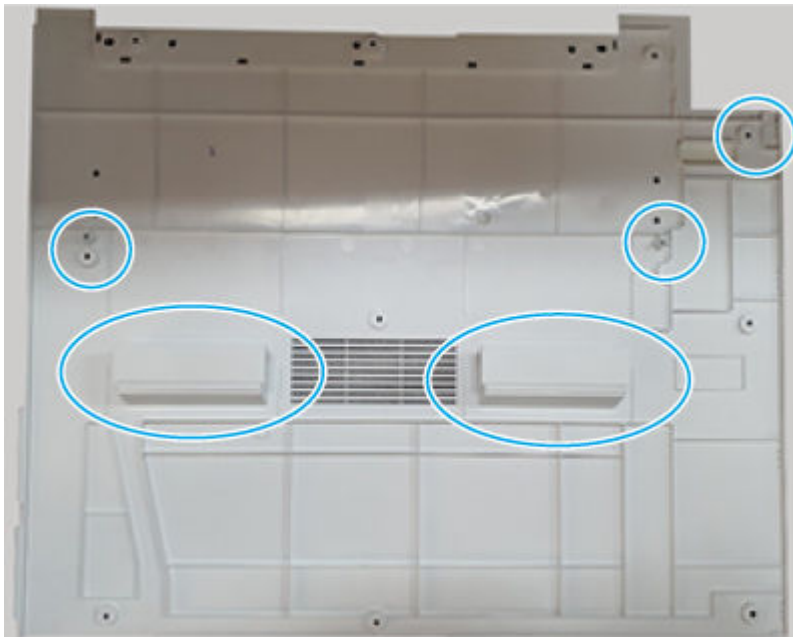
2. Remove ten screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-524 Remove ten screws



3. Before proceeding, take note of the location of the mounting hooks on the inside of the cover.

Figure 6-525 Cover hook locations



4. Release the cover from the right to left side as shown below. Remove the cover.

Figure 6-526 Remove the cover

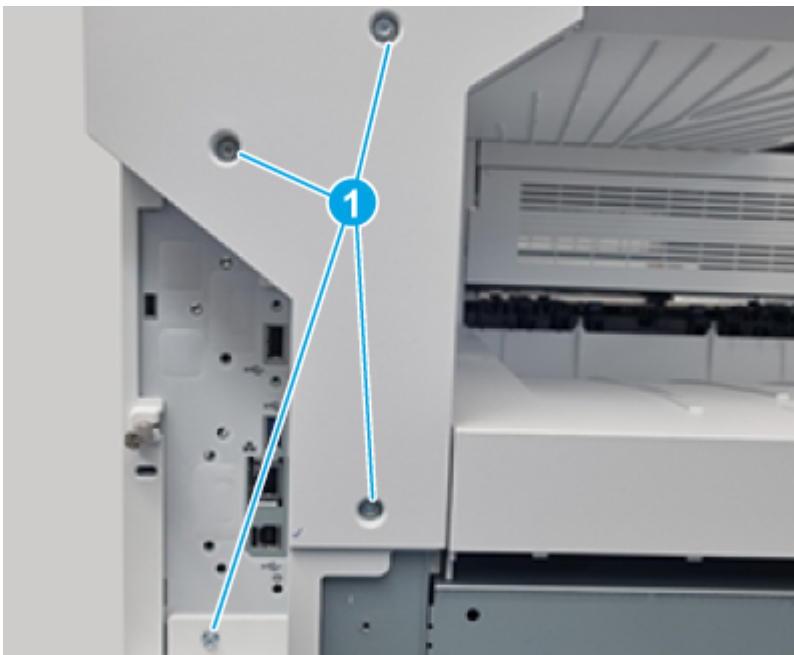


8. Remove the left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left top cover.

- Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-527 Remove the cover

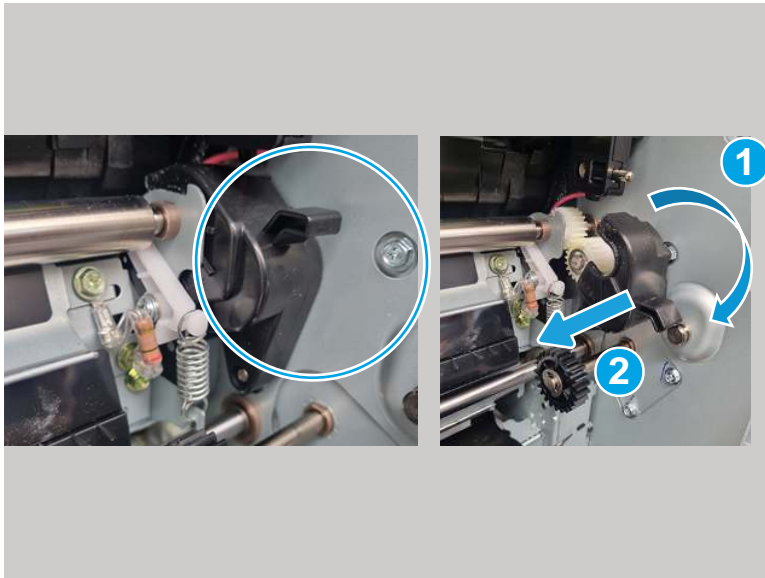


9. Remove the main drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the main drive assembly.

1. Remove the gear cover on the right side.

Figure 6-528 Remove the gear cover



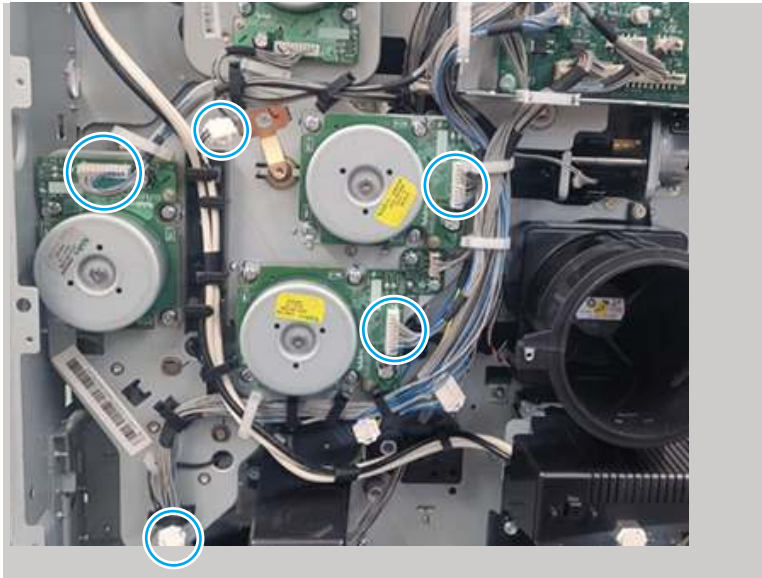
2. Unplug the connectors from the formatter.

Figure 6-529 Unplug the connectors



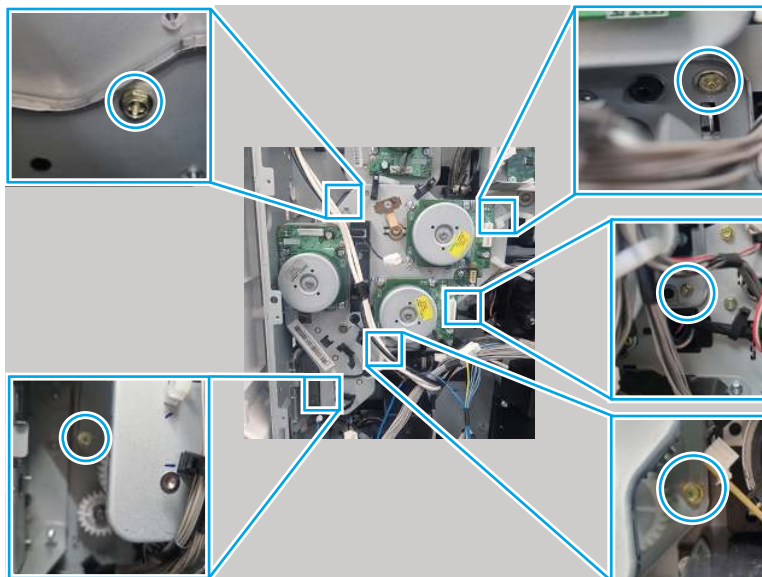
3. Disconnect five connectors linked to the main drive assembly.

Figure 6-530 Disconnect five connectors



4. Remove five screws, and then remove the feed drive assembly

Figure 6-531 Remove five screws

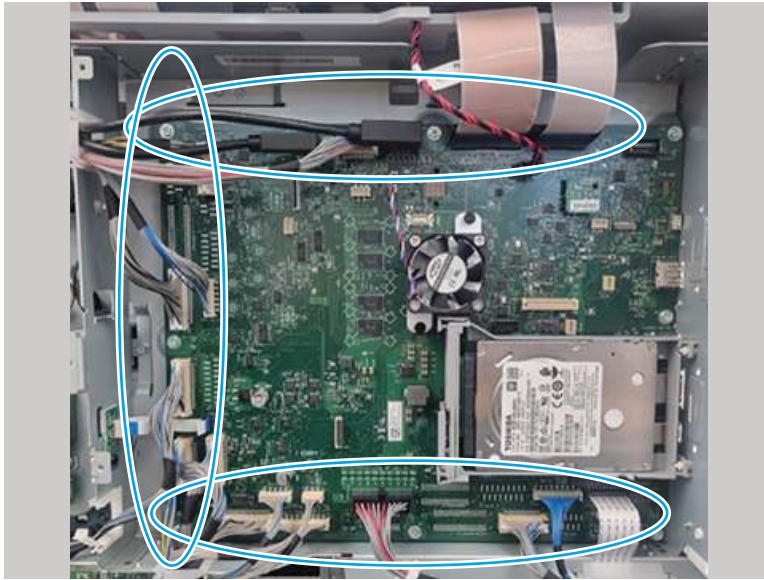


10. Remove the toner dispense motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the toner dispense motor assembly.

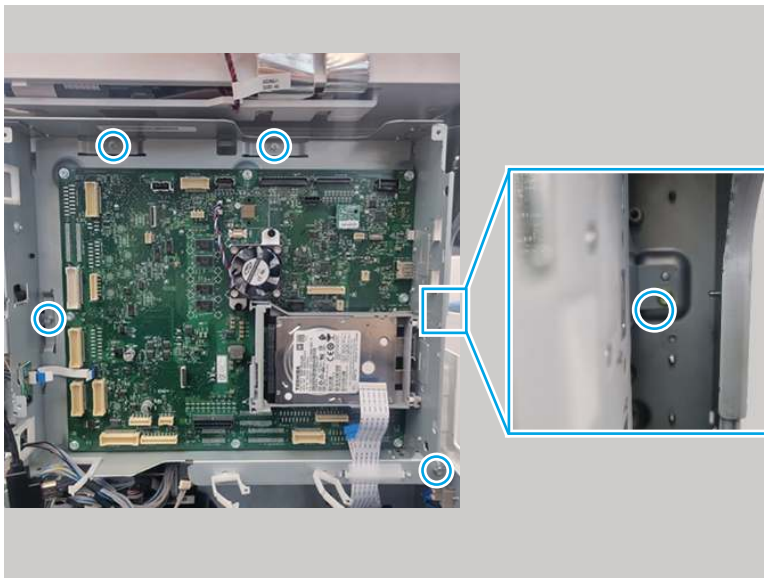
1. Unplug all of the connectors from the main PCA.

Figure 6-532 Remove the connectors



2. Remove five screws.

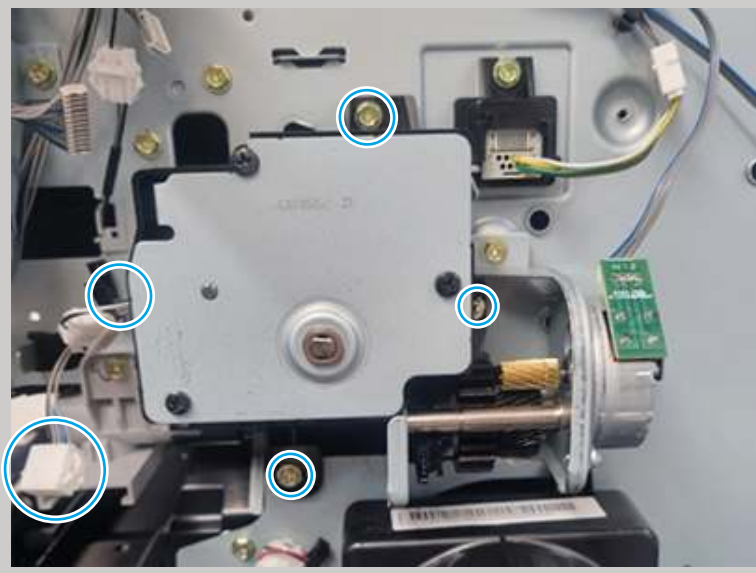
Figure 6-533 Remove five screws



3. Remove the formatter bracket.

4. Remove three screws, disconnect one connector, and then remove the dispense motor assembly.

Figure 6-534 Remove the assembly



11. Remove the toner CRUM modular jack harness

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the toner CRUM modular jack harness.

- Disconnect one connector, remove one screw, and remove the harness.

Figure 6-535 Remove the harness



12. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Toner guide unit K

Learn about removing and replacing the toner guide unit K.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-72 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ98-60034	Toner guide unit K

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the toner cartridge (control panel method)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the toner cartridge.

- At the printer control panel, do the following:
 - a. Select the [Sign In](#) item (located at the upper left corner of the control panel).
 - b. Select the [Service Access Code](#) item, and then enter the access code for the printer.
 - 03073122
 - c. Select the [Supplies](#) item.
 - d. Open the front door.
 - e. Select the [Eject](#) button  (located at the bottom right corner of the control panel).

2. Remove the right middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right middle cover assembly.

1. Remove two screws from the middle left cover as shown.

Figure 6-536 Remove two screws



2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-537 Remove one screw



3. Open the right door and remove one screw.

Figure 6-538 Open the right door and remove screw



4. Lay the control panel down, and then slide the cover as shown below to separate it from the printer.

CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the cover. It is still attached to the printer by a wire harness.

Figure 6-539 Slide the cover



5. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the right middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-540 Disconnect the connector



3. Remove the exit cover stacker

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the exit cover stacker.

- Remove two screw caps and remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the exit cover stacker (callout 2).

Figure 6-541 Remove the cover



4. Remove the front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the front cover.

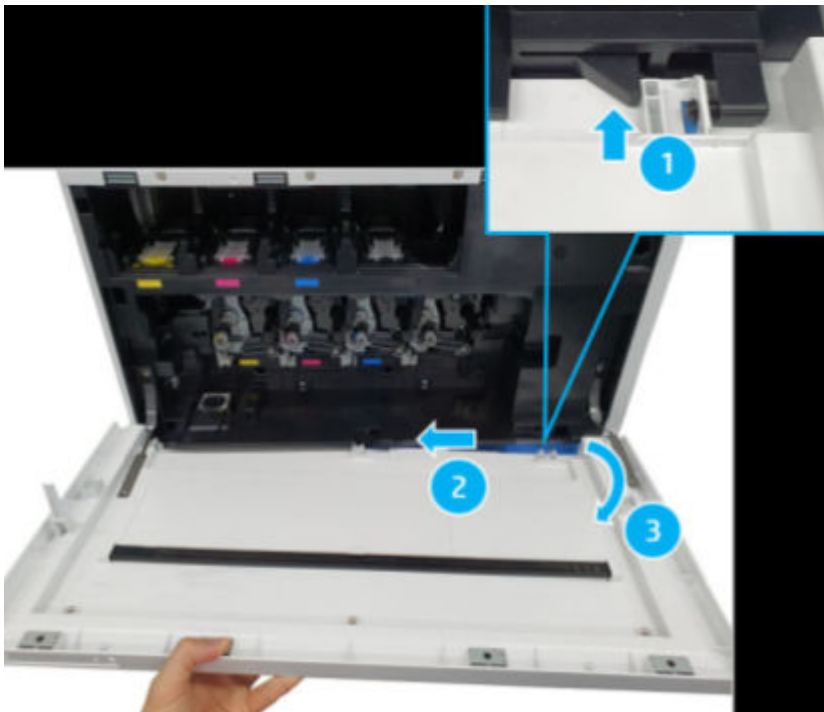
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-542 Remove two screws



2. Push in on the hook located at the right side of the cover (callout 1), and then remove the cover (callouts 2/3).

Figure 6-543 Remove the cover



5. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the TCU.

- Open the front door assembly. Push on each tab on the sides of the toner collection unit to release it, and then pull it straight out of the printer.

Figure 6-544 Remove the TCU

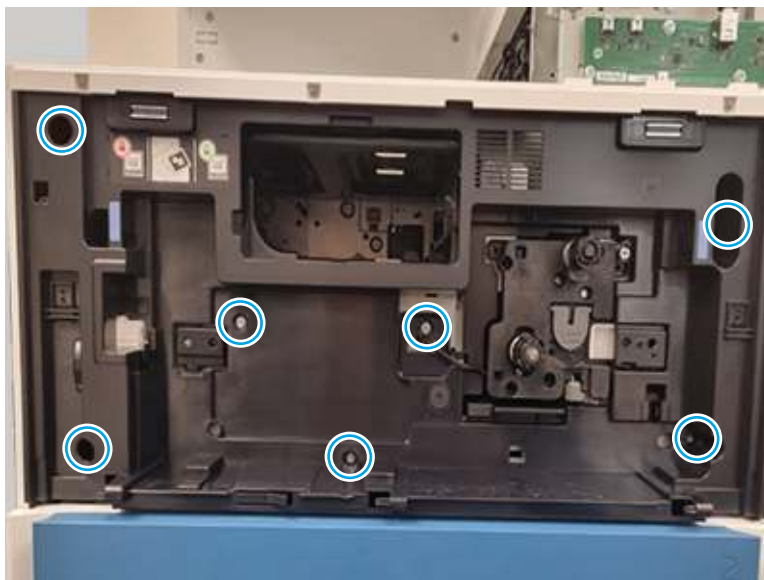


6. Remove the inner cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner cover.

1. Remove seven screws from the inner cover.


Figure 6-545 Remove seven screws



2. Remove the cover carefully, and disconnect the connector.

Figure 6-546 Disconnect the connector



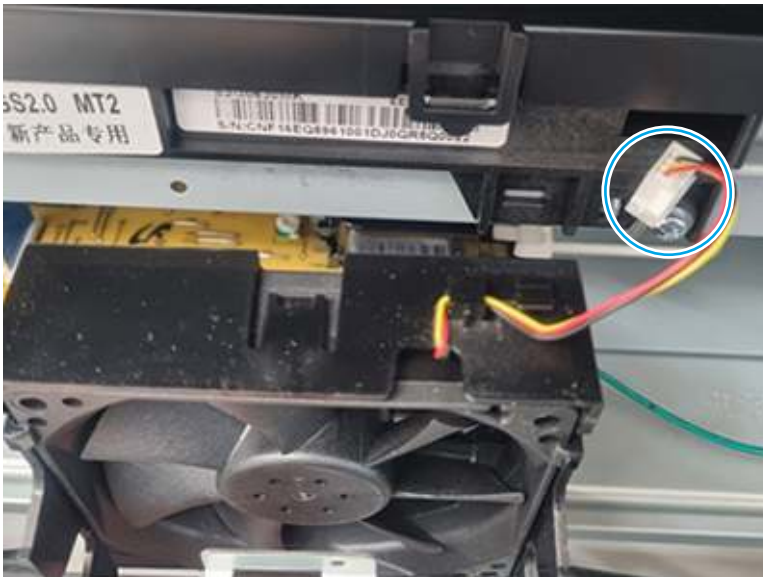
 **NOTE:** Be careful not to damage the wire harness.

7. Remove the LSU fan

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the LSU fan.

1. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-547 Disconnect one connector



2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-548 Remove two screws



3. Remove two screws, and then remove the LSU fan.

Figure 6-549 Remove the fan

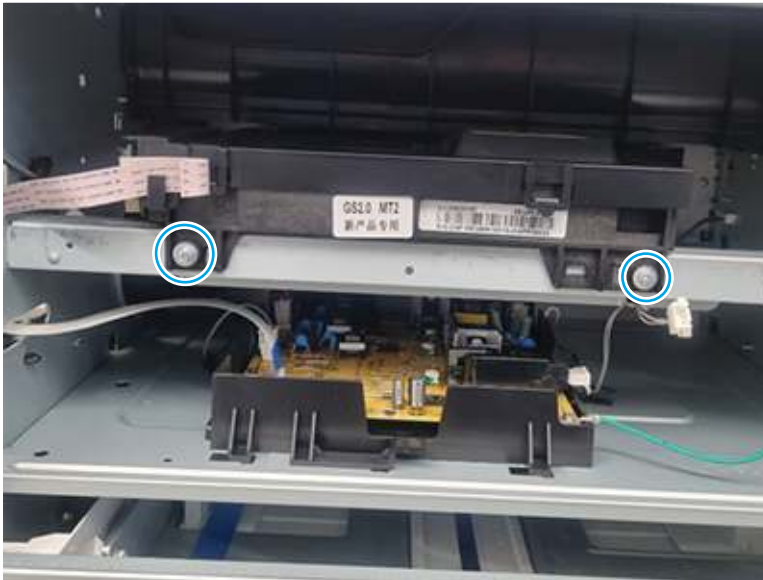


8. Remove the LSU

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the laser scanner unit (LSU).

1. Remove two screws

Figure 6-550 Remove two screws



2. Disconnect one FFC.


 **NOTE:** The FFC has a locking clip. Release the clip to disconnect the FFC.

Figure 6-551 Disconnect the FFC



3. Remove the LSU.


 **NOTE:** Use two hands to remove the LSU. It can be difficult to release from the printer.

Figure 6-552 Remove the LSU



9. Remove the toner guide unit K

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the toner guide unit K.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-553 Remove two screws



2. Remove one screw. This screw can be accessed from the left side of the printer, inside the left cover.

Figure 6-554 Remove one screw



3. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-555 Disconnect one connector



4. Release two tabs, and remove the toner guide unit K.

Figure 6-556 Remove the unit



10. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Duct unit

Learn about duct unit parts removal and replacement.

Removal and replacement: Duct unit K

Learn about removing and replacing the duct unit K.



[View a video of removing and replacing the duct unit K.](#)

Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-73 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-00917A	Duct unit K

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the toner cartridge (control panel method)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the toner cartridge.

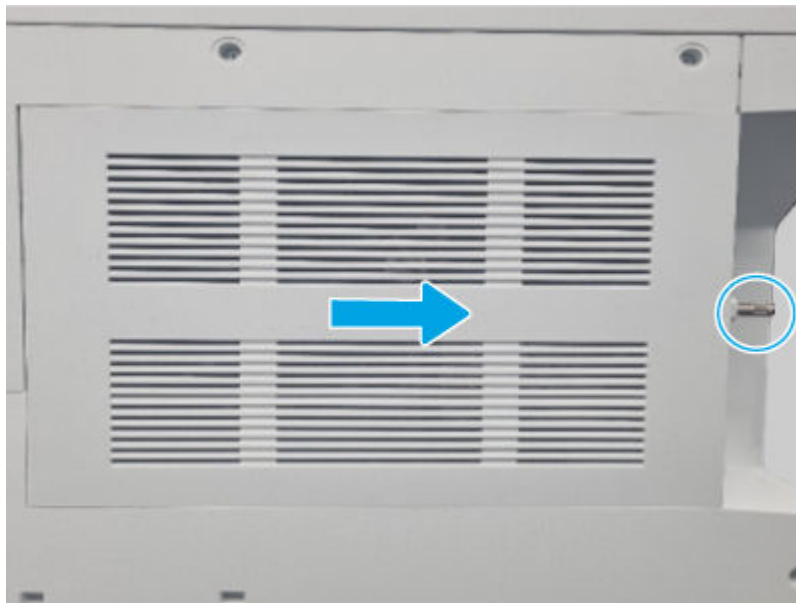
- At the printer control panel, do the following:
 - a. Select the [Sign In](#) item (located at the upper left corner of the control panel).
 - b. Select the [Service Access Code](#) item, and then enter the access code for the printer.
 - 03073122
 - c. Select the [Supplies](#) item.
 - d. Open the front door.
 - e. Select the [Eject](#) button  (located at the bottom right corner of the control panel).

2. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-557 Remove the cover



3. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

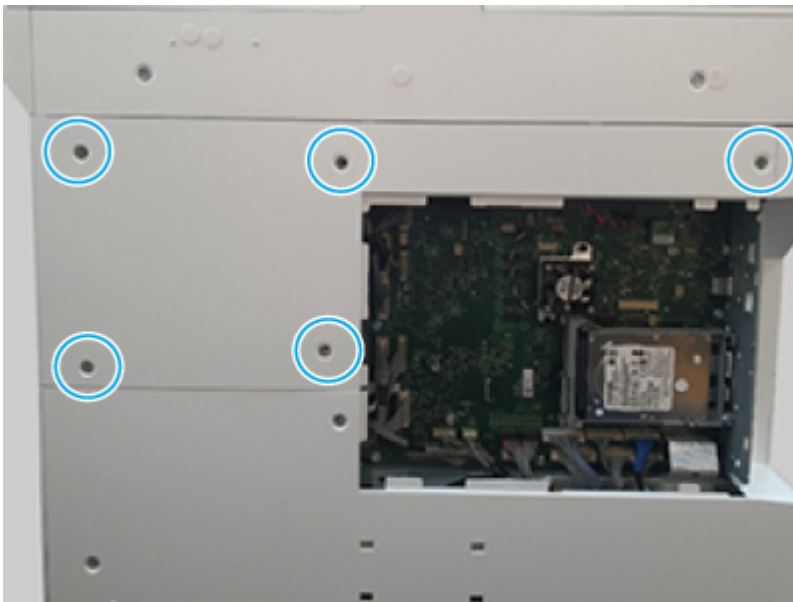
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-558 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-559 Remove the cover



4. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove six screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-560 Remove the cover



5. Remove the left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left cover.

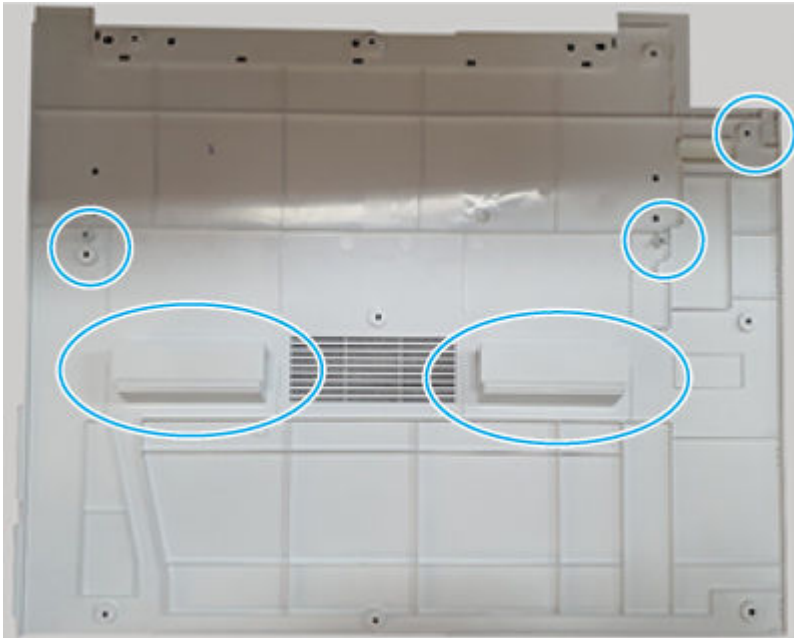
1. Open the front cover (door) and all installed trays.
2. Remove ten screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-561 Remove ten screws



3. Before proceeding, take note of the location of the mounting hooks on the inside of the cover.

Figure 6-562 Cover hook locations



4. Release the cover from the right to left side as shown below. Remove the cover.

Figure 6-563 Remove the cover

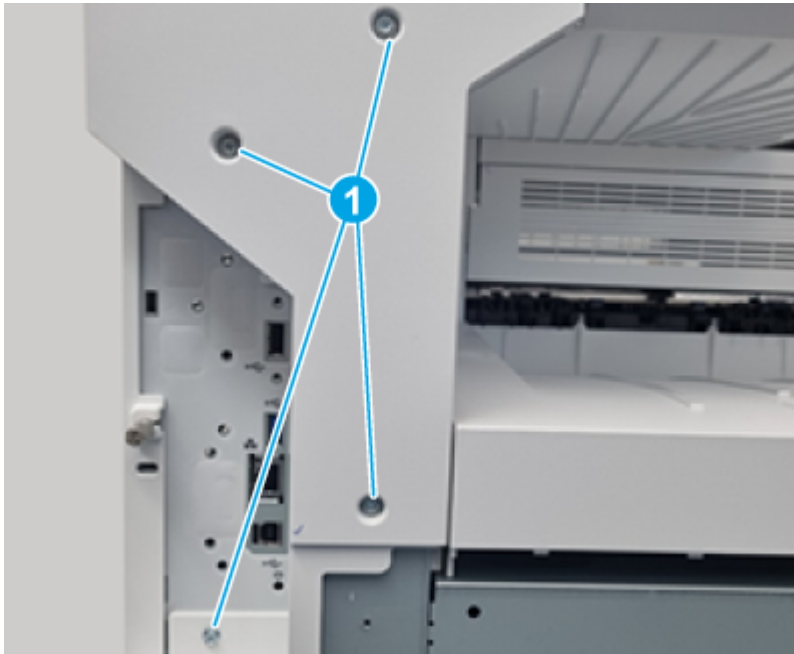


6. Remove the left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left top cover.

- Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-564 Remove the cover



7. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the TCU.

- Open the front door assembly. Push on each tab on the sides of the toner collection unit to release it, and then pull it straight out of the printer.

Figure 6-565 Remove the TCU

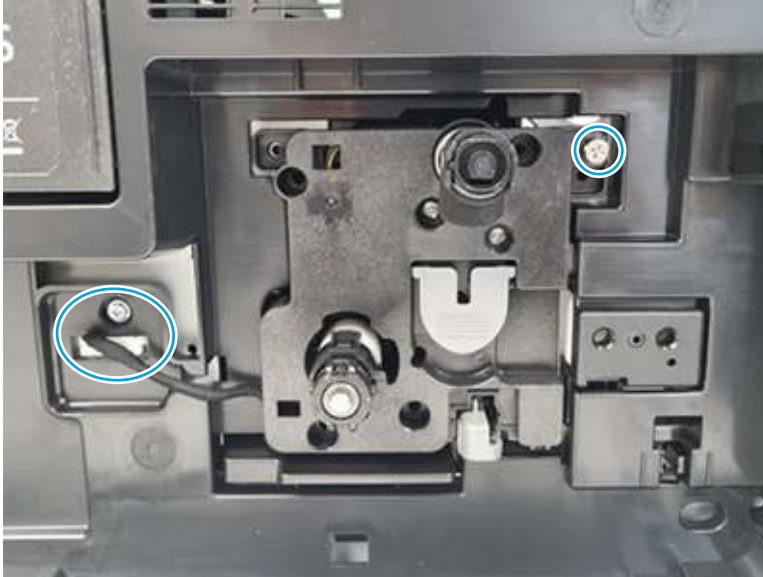


8. Remove the black drum unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the black drum unit.

1. Open the right door.
2. At the front of the printer, release one screw and unplug one connector.

Figure 6-566 Release one screw



3. Pull the drum unit out of the printer.



NOTE: If the drum assembly is being removed to access other parts, skip the remaining steps. Those steps are for replacing the drum unit only.

Figure 6-567 Remove the unit



4. Set the drum unit down horizontally and remove six screws

Figure 6-568 Remove six screws



5. Disconnect one connector.

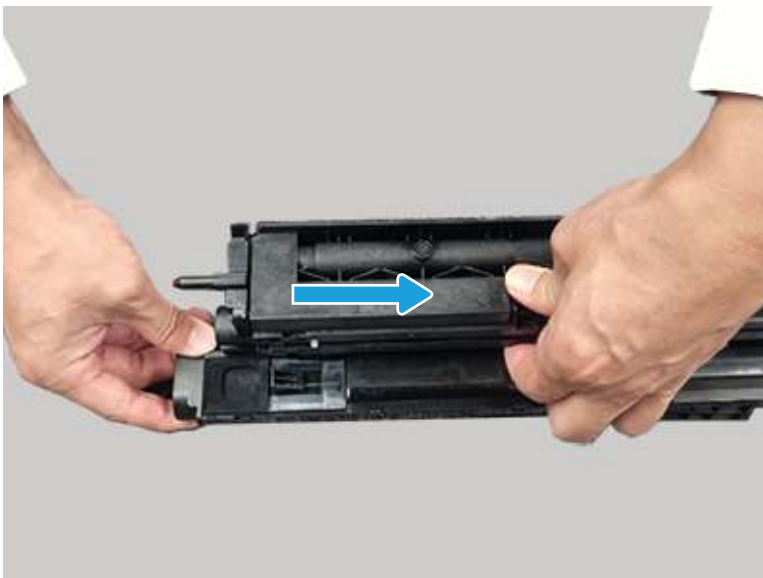
Figure 6-569 Disconnect one connector



 **Reinstallation tip:** Be sure to route the wire harness correctly when reinstalling this part.

6. Remove the drum cover.


Figure 6-570 Remove the drum cover



7. Remove the black drum unit.

Figure 6-571 Remove the drum unit



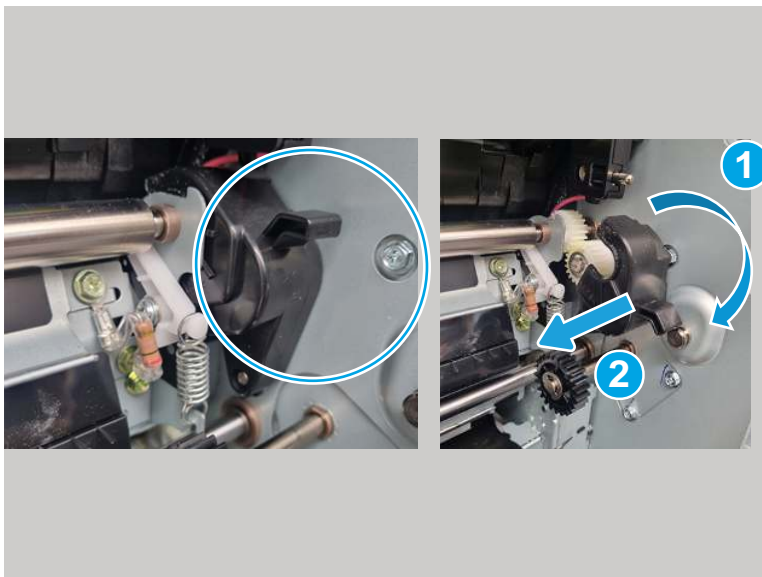
 **NOTE:** Be careful with spilled toner. If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

9. Remove the main drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the main drive assembly.

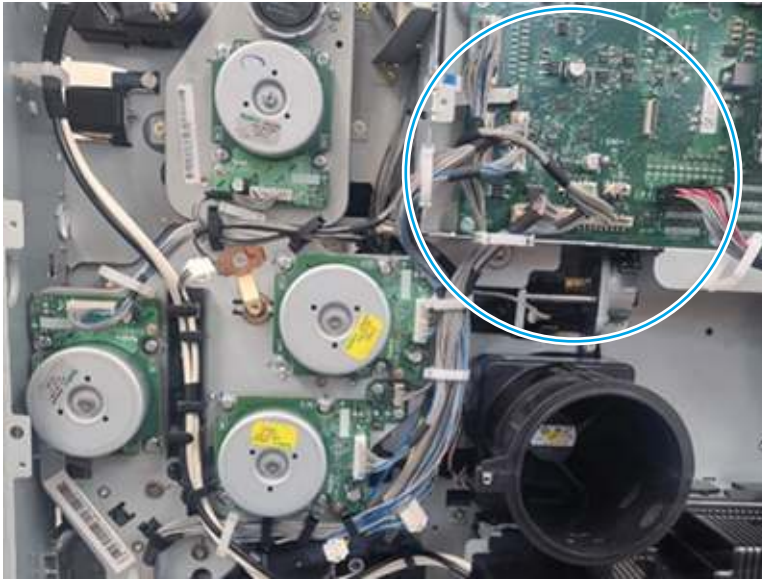
1. Remove the gear cover on the right side.

Figure 6-572 Remove the gear cover



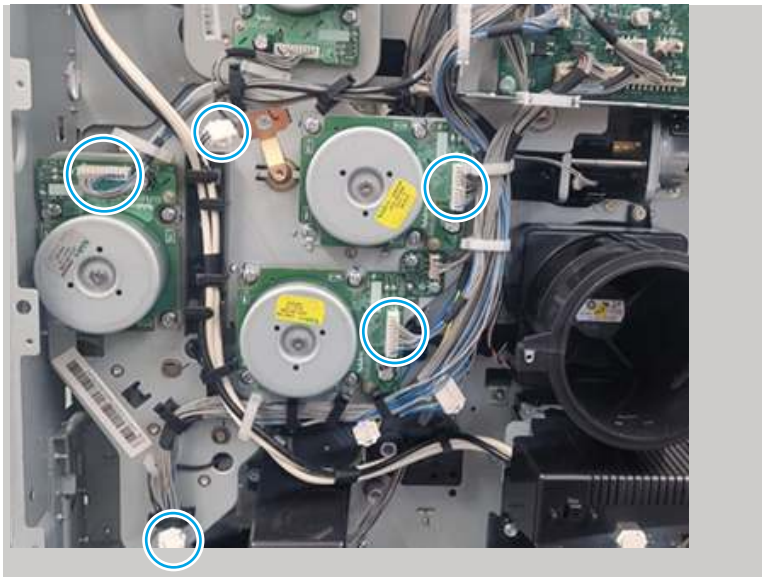
2. Unplug the connectors from the formatter.

Figure 6-573 Unplug the connectors



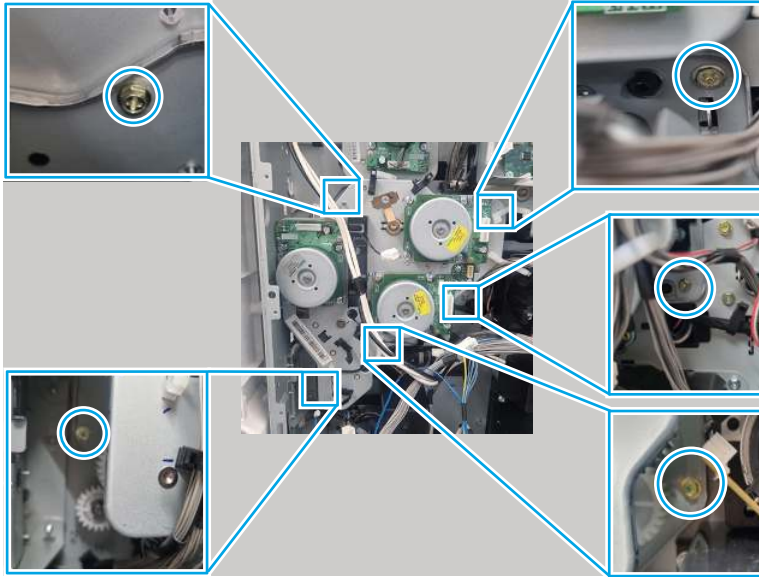
3. Disconnect five connectors linked to the main drive assembly.

Figure 6-574 Disconnect five connectors



4. Remove five screws, and then remove the feed drive assembly

Figure 6-575 Remove five screws

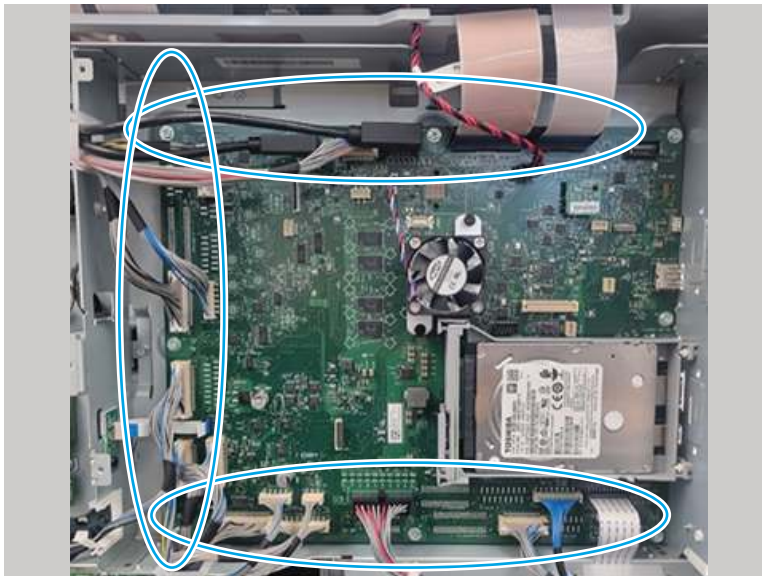


10. Remove the toner dispense motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the toner dispense motor assembly.

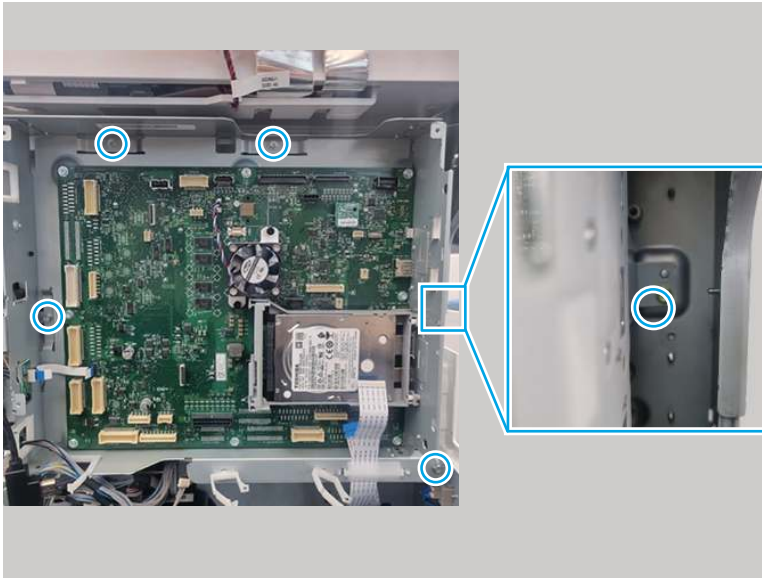
1. Unplug all of the connectors from the main PCA.

Figure 6-576 Remove the connectors



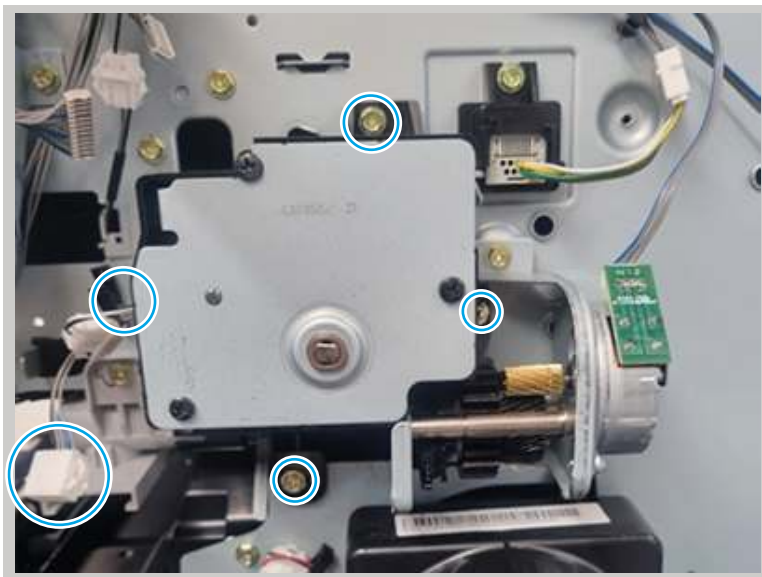
2. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-577 Remove five screws



3. Remove the formatter bracket.
4. Remove three screws, disconnect one connector, and then remove the dispense motor assembly.

Figure 6-578 Remove the assembly

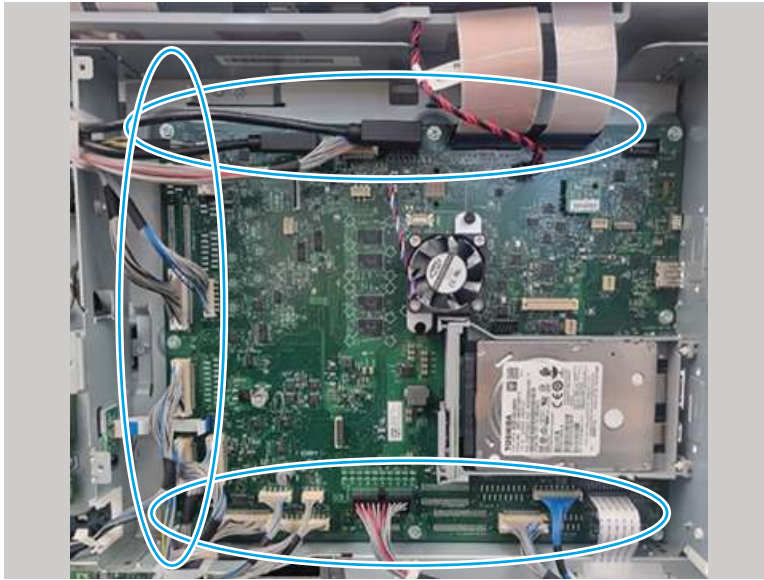


11. Remove the toner duct motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the toner dispense motor assembly.

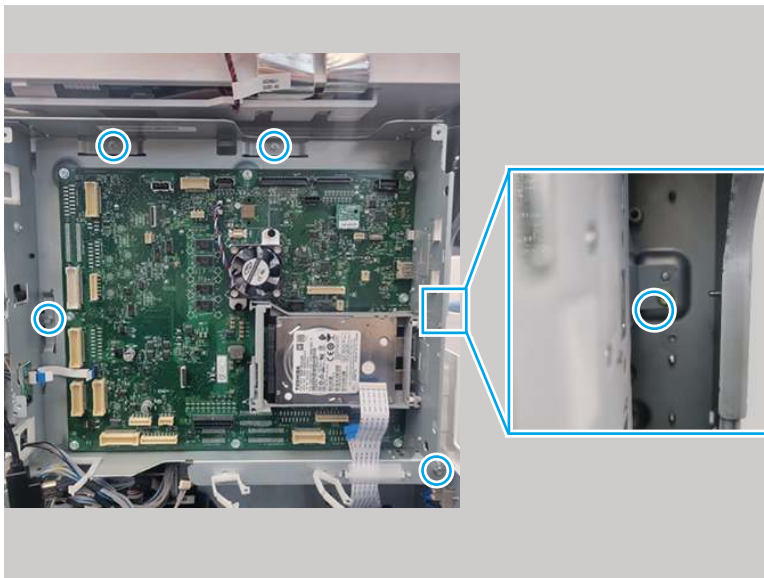
1. Disconnect all of the connectors from the main PCA.

Figure 6-579 Disconnect the connectors



2. Remove five screws.

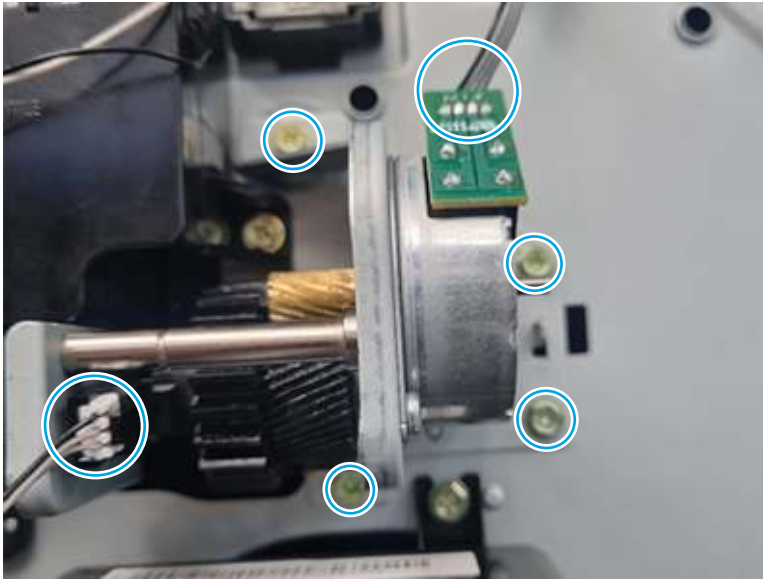
Figure 6-580 Remove five screws



3. Remove the formatter bracket.

4. Remove four screws, disconnect two connectors, and then remove the toner duct motor assembly.

Figure 6-581 Remove the assembly



12. Remove the duct unit K

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the toner duct unit K.

- Using two hands, grasp the lever and remove two screws. Then remove the duct unit K.

Figure 6-582 Remove the duct unit



13. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Toner duct motor assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the toner duct motor assembly.



[View a video of removing and replacing the toner duct motor assembly.](#)

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-74 Part Information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01685A	Toner duct motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the toner cartridge (control panel method)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the toner cartridge.

- At the printer control panel, do the following:
 - a. Select the [Sign In](#) item (located at the upper left corner of the control panel).
 - b. Select the [Service Access Code](#) item, and then enter the access code for the printer.
 - 03073122
 - c. Select the [Supplies](#) item.
 - d. Open the front door.
 - e. Select the [Eject](#) button  (located at the bottom right corner of the control panel).

2. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the TCU.

- Open the front door assembly. Push on each tab on the sides of the toner collection unit to release it, and then pull it straight out of the printer.

Figure 6-583 Remove the TCU



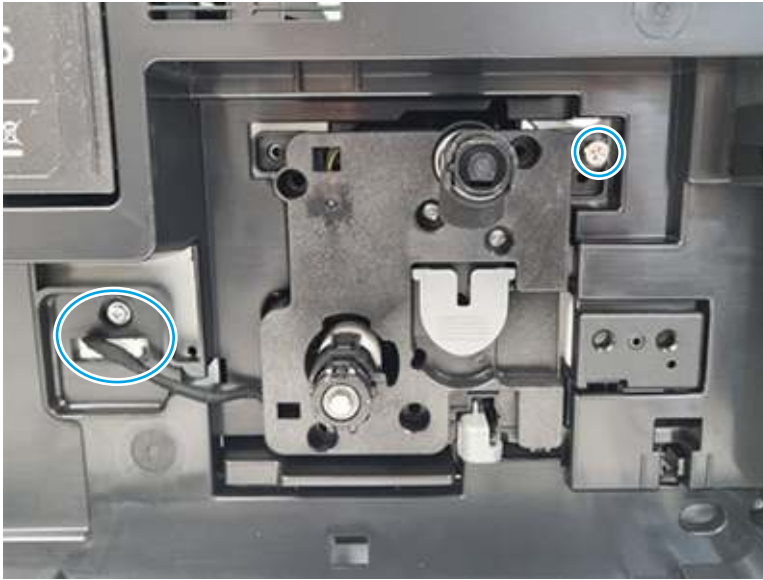
3. Remove the black drum unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the black drum unit.

1. Open the right door.

2. At the front of the printer, release one screw and unplug one connector.

Figure 6-584 Release one screw



3. Pull the drum unit out of the printer.


 **NOTE:** If the drum assembly is being removed to access other parts, skip the remaining steps. Those steps are for replacing the drum unit only.

Figure 6-585 Remove the unit



4. Set the drum unit down horizontally and remove six screws


Figure 6-586 Remove six screws



5. Disconnect one connector.

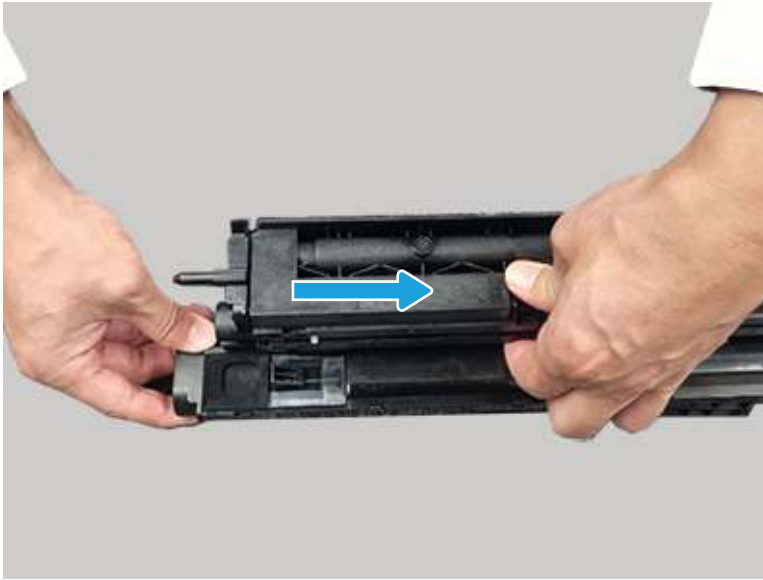
Figure 6-587 Disconnect one connector



 **Reinstallation tip:** Be sure to route the wire harness correctly when reinstalling this part.

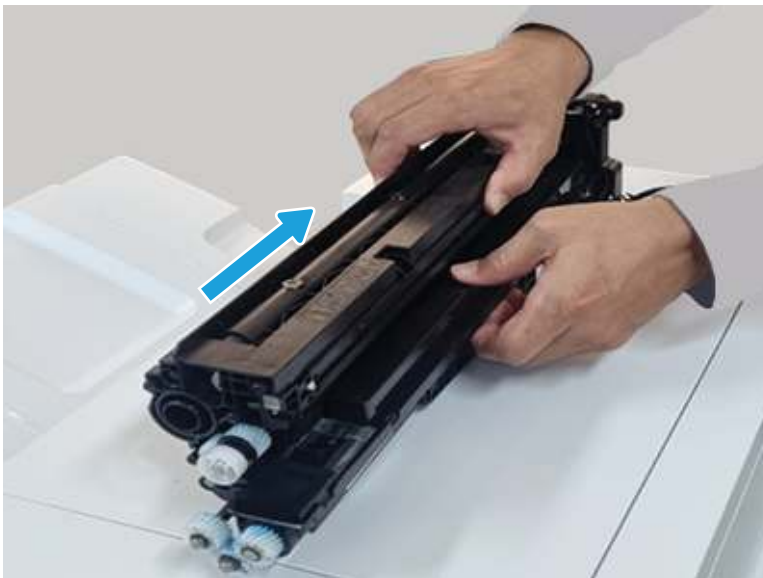
6. Remove the drum cover.


Figure 6-588 Remove the drum cover



7. Remove the black drum unit.

Figure 6-589 Remove the drum unit



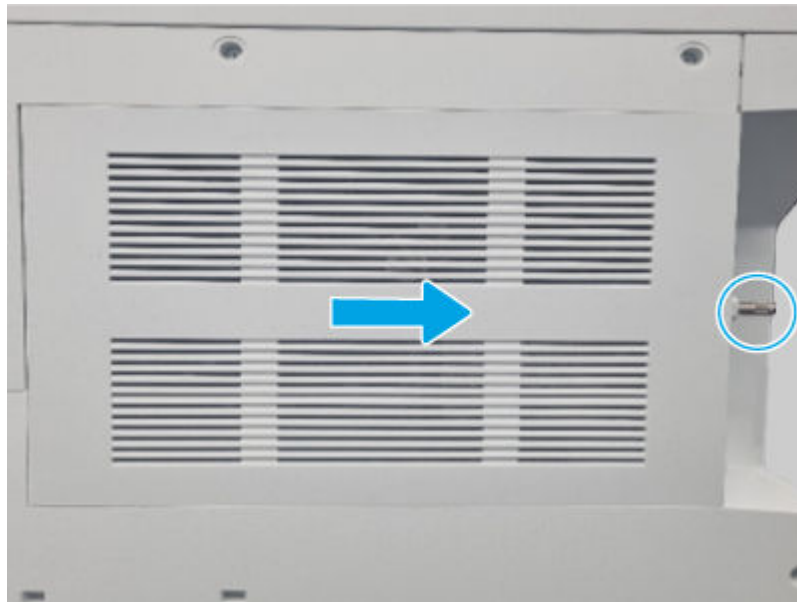
 **NOTE:** Be careful with spilled toner. If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

4. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-590 Remove the cover



5. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

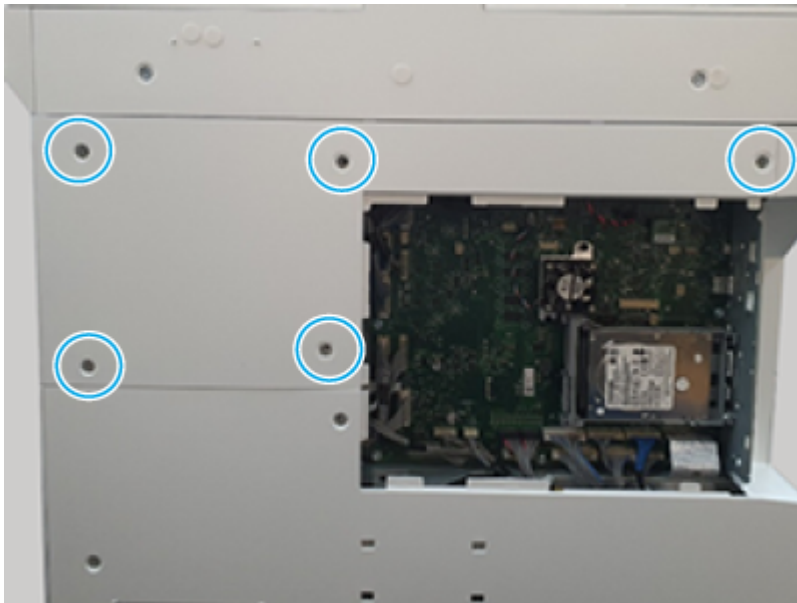
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-591 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-592 Remove the cover



6. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove six screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-593 Remove the cover

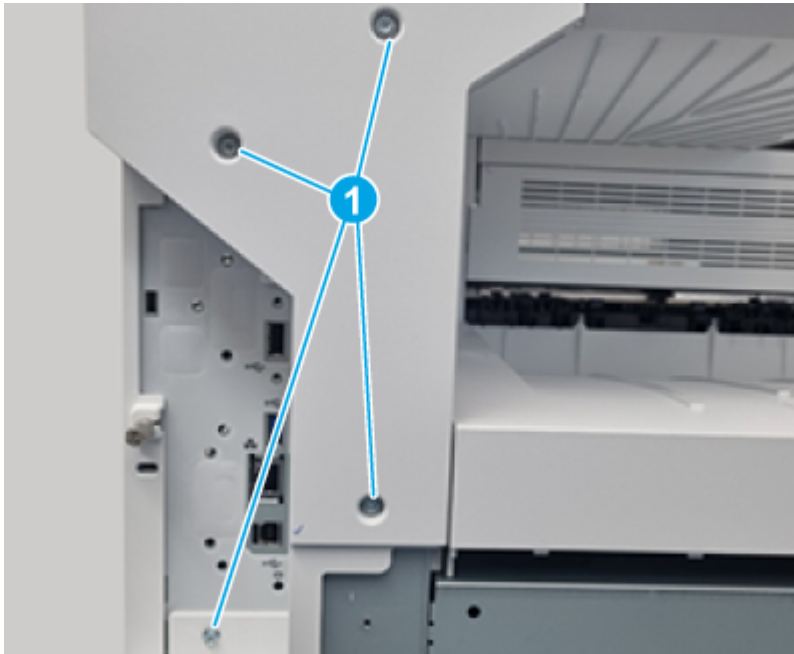


7. Remove the left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left top cover.

- Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-594 Remove the cover

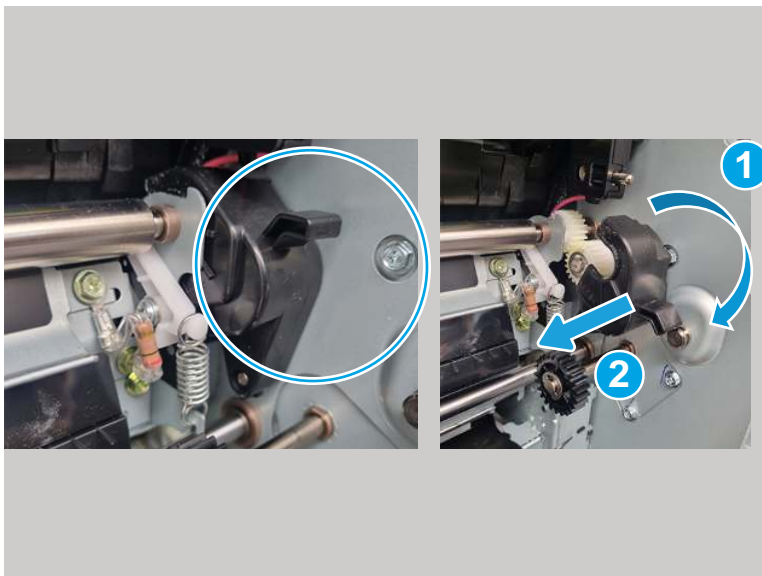


8. Remove the main drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the main drive assembly.

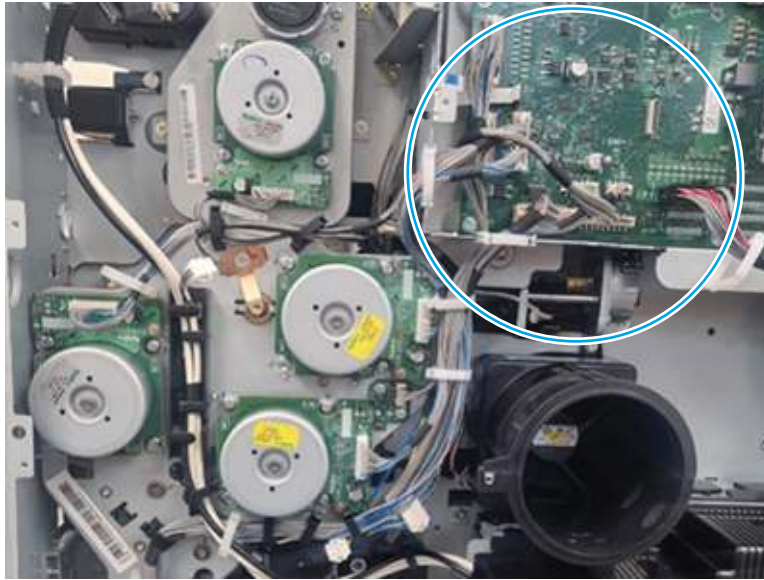
1. Remove the gear cover on the right side.

Figure 6-595 Remove the gear cover



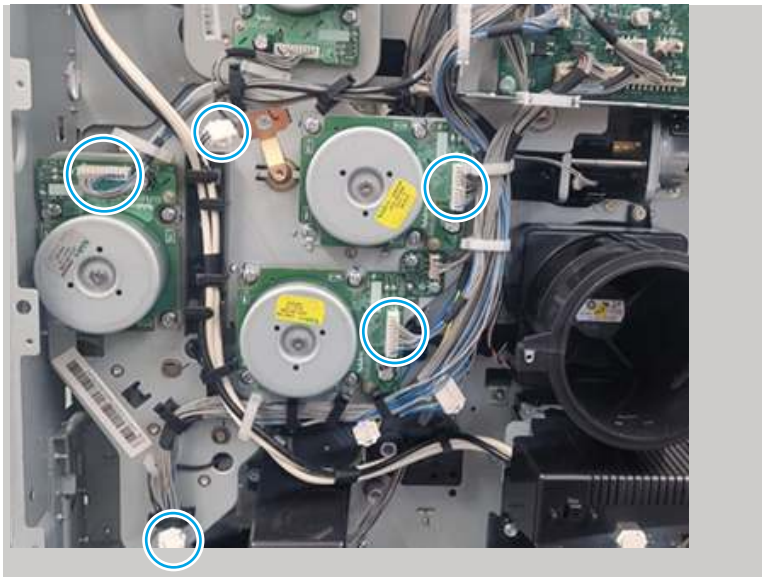
2. Unplug the connectors from the formatter.

Figure 6-596 Unplug the connectors



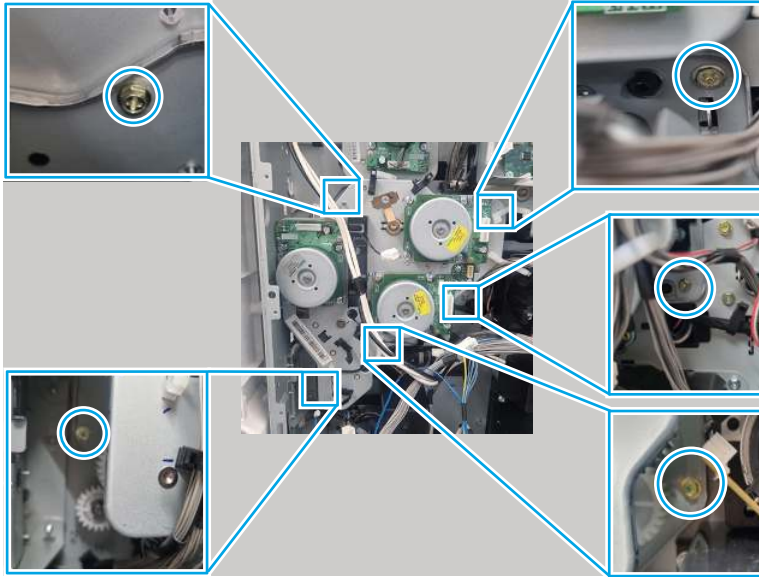
3. Disconnect five connectors linked to the main drive assembly.

Figure 6-597 Disconnect five connectors



4. Remove five screws, and then remove the feed drive assembly

Figure 6-598 Remove five screws

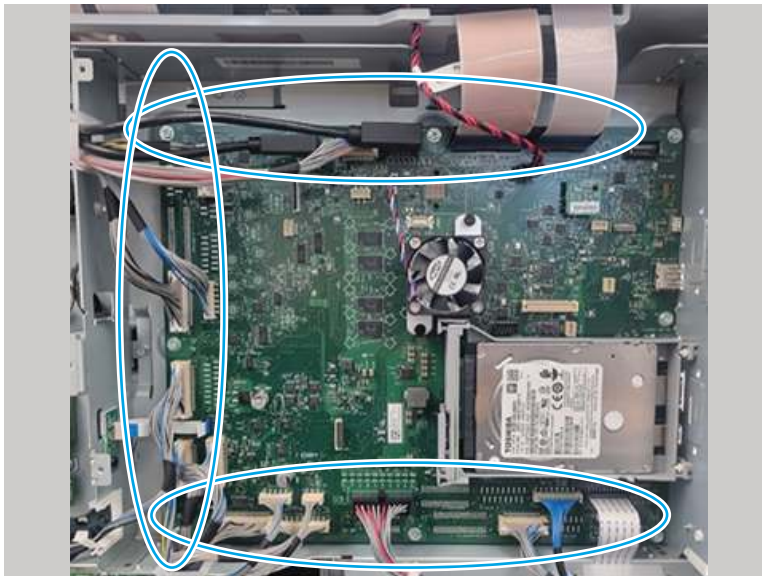


9. Remove the toner duct motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the toner dispense motor assembly.

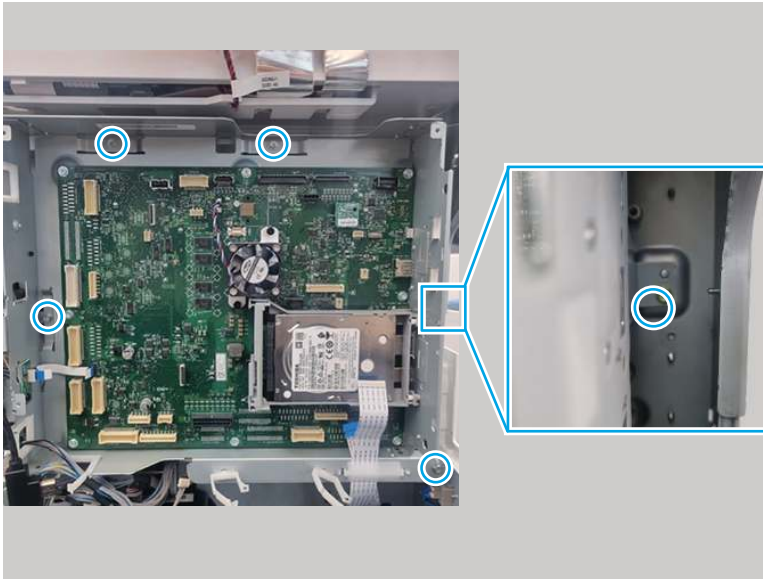
1. Disconnect all of the connectors from the main PCA.

Figure 6-599 Disconnect the connectors



2. Remove five screws.

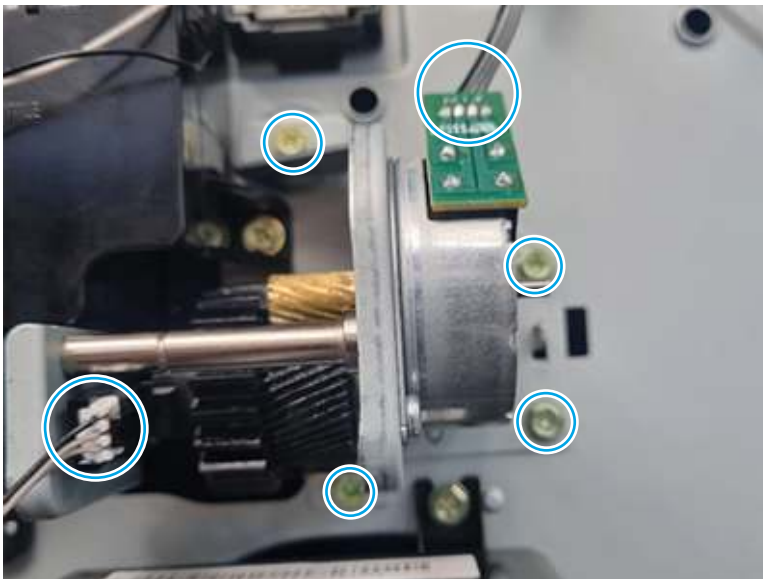
Figure 6-600 Remove five screws



3. Remove the formatter bracket.

4. Remove four screws, disconnect two connectors, and then remove the toner duct motor assembly.

Figure 6-601 Remove the assembly



10. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Toner duct motor (Y, M)

Learn about removing and replacing the toner duct motor.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-75 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01686A	Toner duct motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the toner cartridge (control panel method)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the toner cartridge.

- At the printer control panel, do the following:
 - a. Select the [Sign In](#) item (located at the upper left corner of the control panel).
 - b. Select the [Service Access Code](#) item, and then enter the access code for the printer.
 - 03073122
 - c. Select the [Supplies](#) item.
 - d. Open the front door.
 - e. Select the [Eject](#) button  (located at the bottom right corner of the control panel).

2. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the TCU.

- Open the front door assembly. Push on each tab on the sides of the toner collection unit to release it, and then pull it straight out of the printer.

Figure 6-602 Remove the TCU



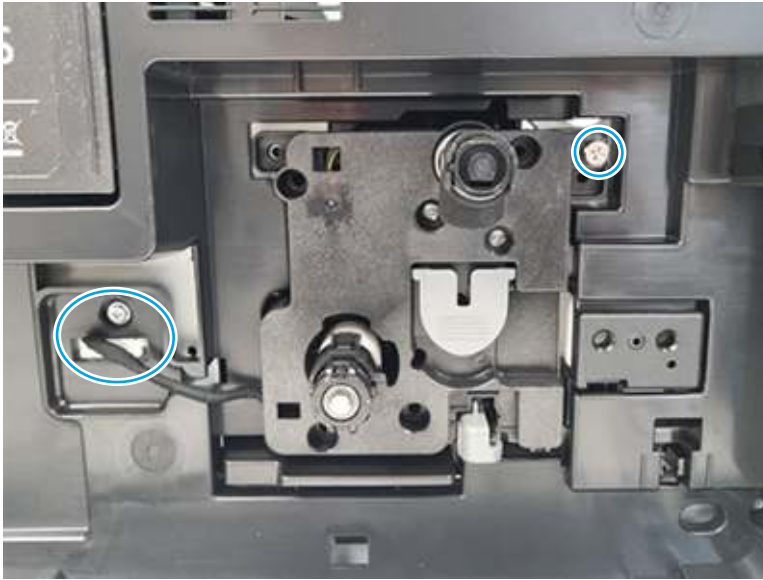
3. Remove the black drum unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the black drum unit.

1. Open the right door.

2. At the front of the printer, release one screw and unplug one connector.

Figure 6-603 Release one screw



3. Pull the drum unit out of the printer.


 **NOTE:** If the drum assembly is being removed to access other parts, skip the remaining steps. Those steps are for replacing the drum unit only.

Figure 6-604 Remove the unit



4. Set the drum unit down horizontally and remove six screws


Figure 6-605 Remove six screws



5. Disconnect one connector.

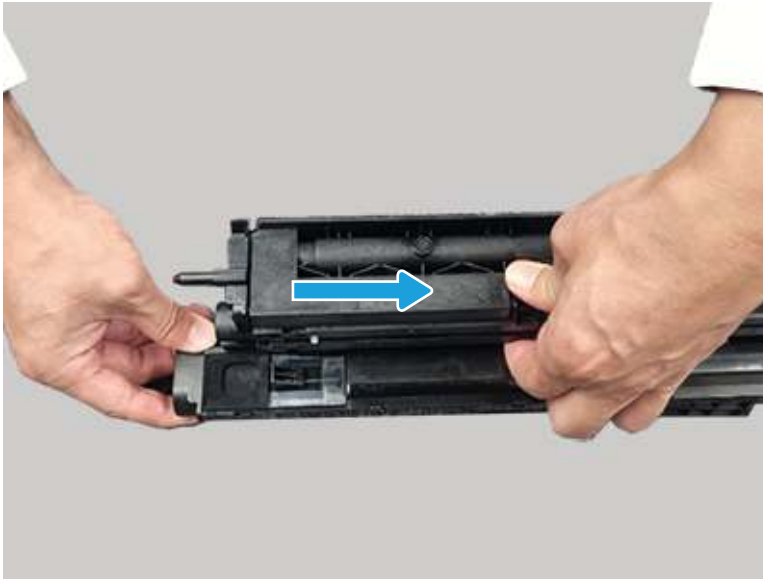
Figure 6-606 Disconnect one connector



 **Reinstallation tip:** Be sure to route the wire harness correctly when reinstalling this part.

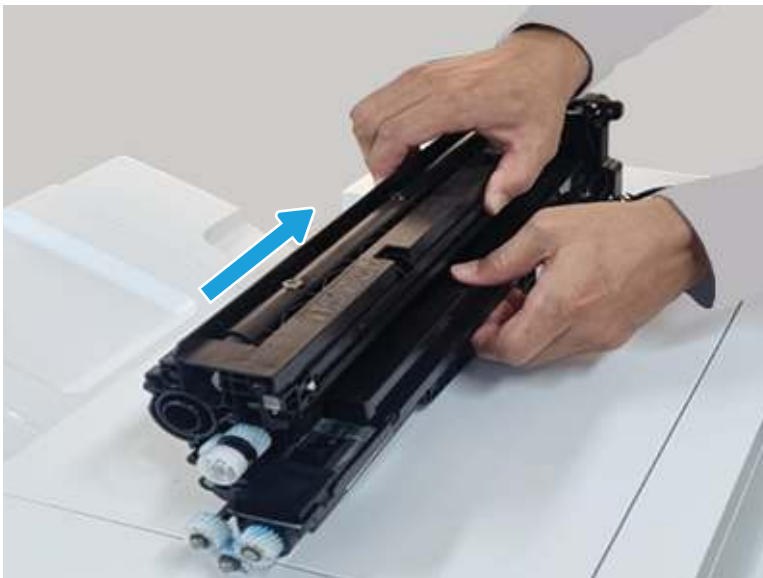
6. Remove the drum cover.


Figure 6-607 Remove the drum cover



7. Remove the black drum unit.

Figure 6-608 Remove the drum unit



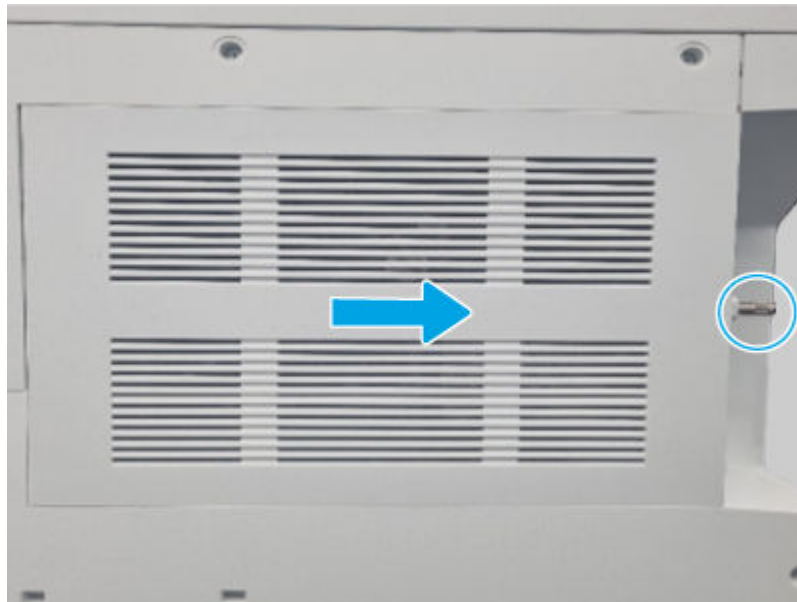
 **NOTE:** Be careful with spilled toner. If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

4. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-609 Remove the cover



5. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

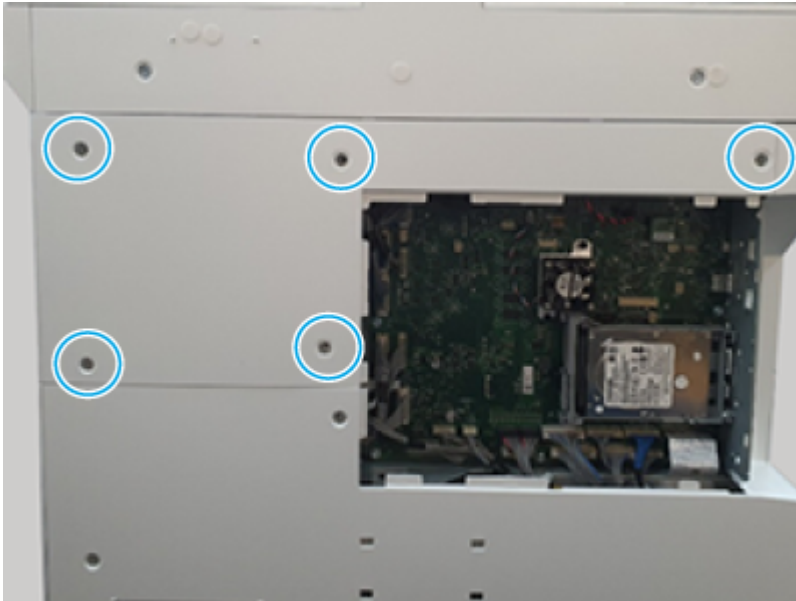
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-610 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-611 Remove the cover



6. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove six screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-612 Remove the cover

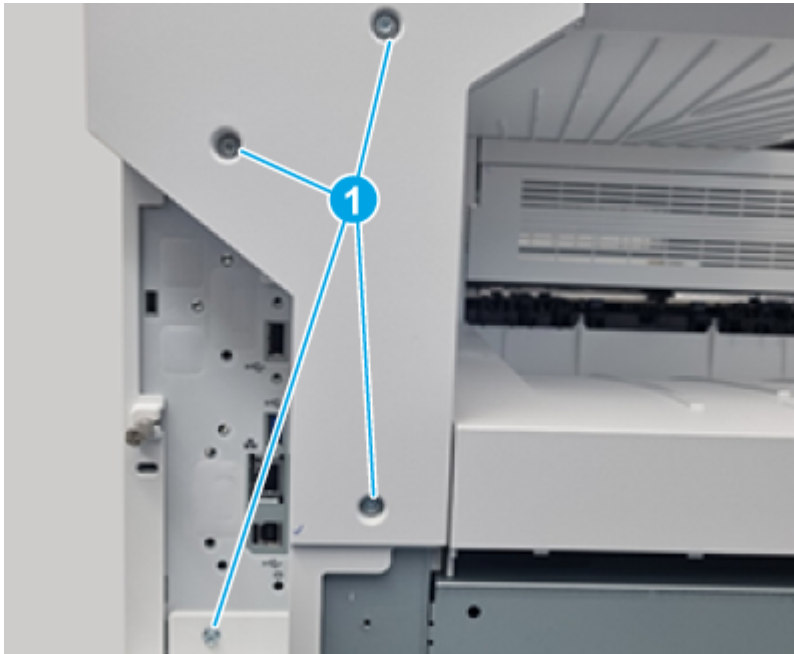


7. Remove the left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left top cover.

- Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-613 Remove the cover

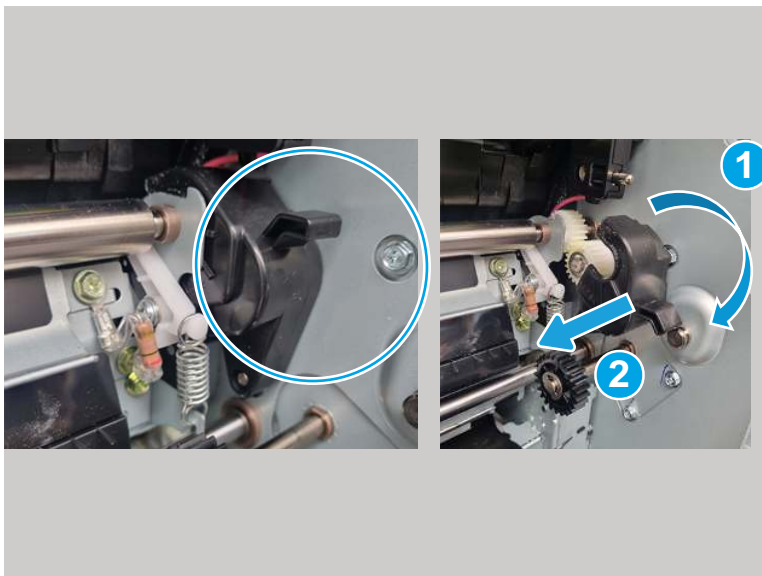


8. Remove the main drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the main drive assembly.

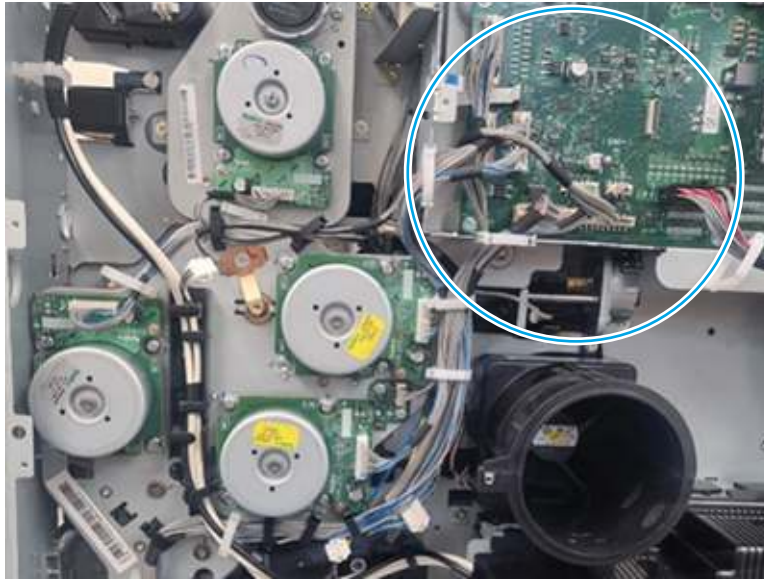
1. Remove the gear cover on the right side.

Figure 6-614 Remove the gear cover



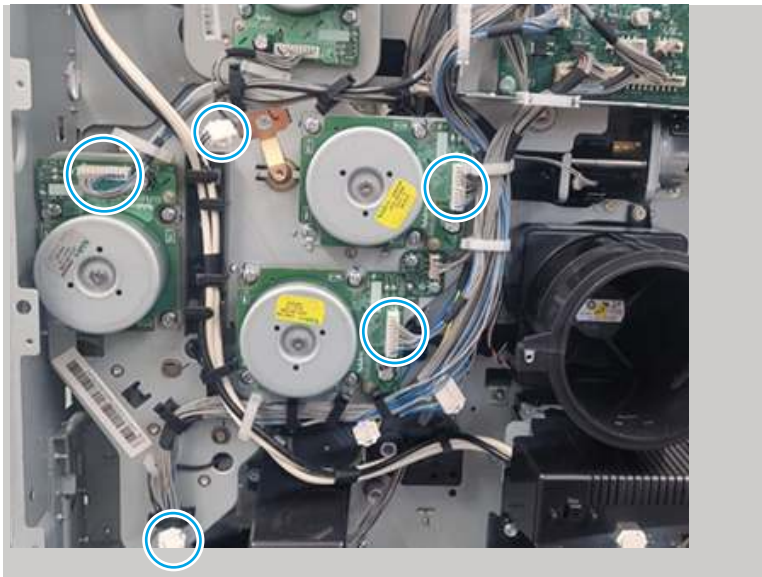
2. Unplug the connectors from the formatter.

Figure 6-615 Unplug the connectors



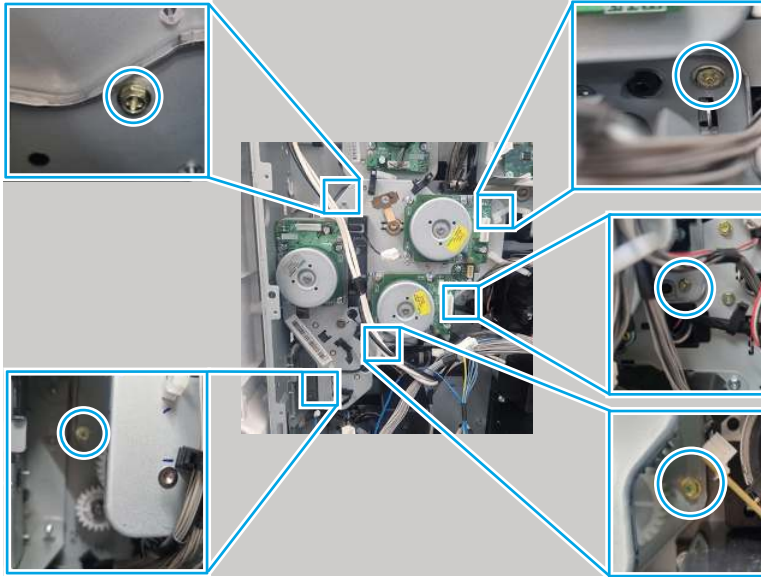
3. Disconnect five connectors linked to the main drive assembly.

Figure 6-616 Disconnect five connectors



4. Remove five screws, and then remove the feed drive assembly

Figure 6-617 Remove five screws

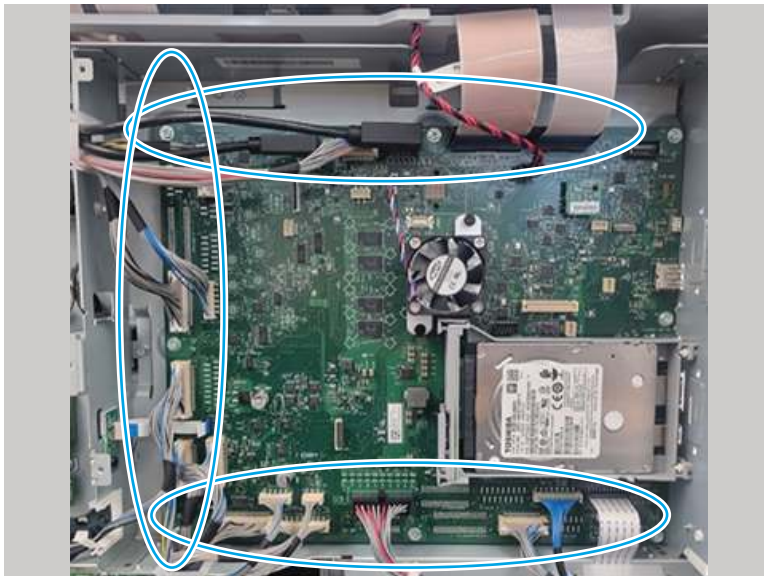


9. Remove the toner duct motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the toner dispense motor assembly.

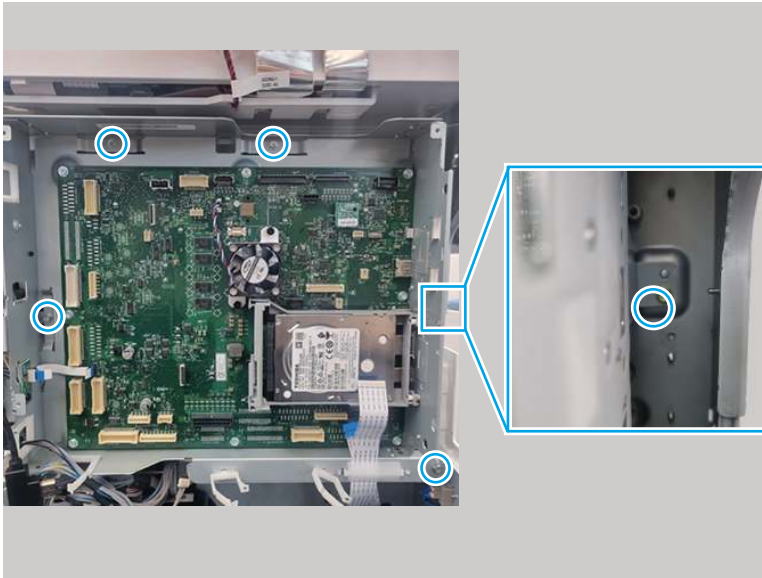
1. Disconnect all of the connectors from the main PCA.

Figure 6-618 Disconnect the connectors



2. Remove five screws.

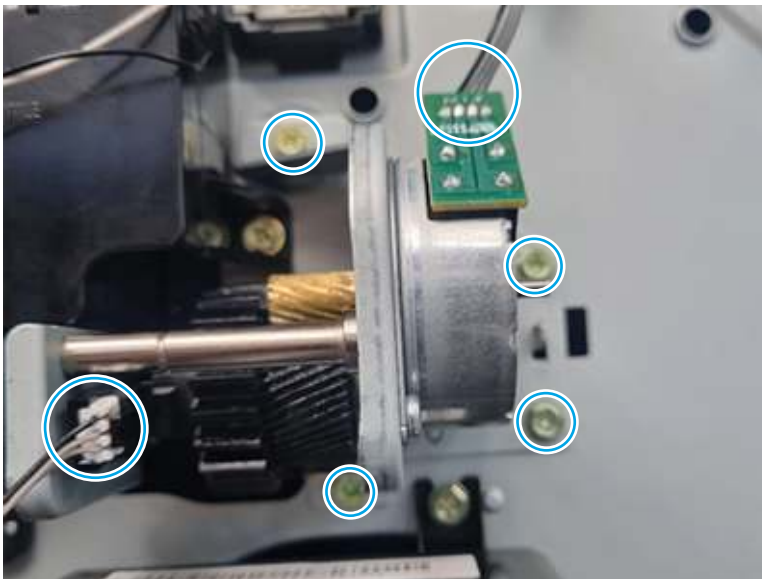
Figure 6-619 Remove five screws



3. Remove the formatter bracket.

4. Remove four screws, disconnect two connectors, and then remove the toner duct motor assembly.

Figure 6-620 Remove the assembly



10. Remove the toner duct motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the toner duct motor.

- Remove two screws, and then remove the toner duct motor.

Figure 6-621 Remove the motor



11. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Toner collection unit

Learn about toner collection unit parts removal and replacement.

Removal and replacement: Toner collection unit (TCU)

Learn about removing and replacing the TCU.



[View a video on how to remove the TCU](#)

Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-76 Part information

Part number	Part description
6SB84-67001	Toner collection unit (TCU)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the TCU.

- Open the front door assembly. Push on each tab on the sides of the toner collection unit to release it, and then pull it straight out of the printer.

Figure 6-622 Remove the TCU



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Toner collection unit (TCU) full sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the toner collection unit full sensor assembly.



[View a video of removing and replacing the toner collection unit full sensor.](#)

Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

This procedure requires removing the toner cartridges using the control panel method. Do this prior to turning the power off. For more information, see *Remove the toner cartridges (control panel method)* in this topic.

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-77 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-00492A	Toner collection unit full sensor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the toner cartridge (control panel method)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the toner cartridge.

- At the printer control panel, do the following:
 - a. Select the [Sign In](#) item (located at the upper left corner of the control panel).
 - b. Select the [Service Access Code](#) item, and then enter the access code for the printer.
 - 03073122
 - c. Select the [Supplies](#) item.
 - d. Open the front door.
 - e. Select the [Eject](#) button  (located at the bottom right corner of the control panel).

2. Remove the right middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right middle cover assembly.

1. Remove two screws from the middle left cover as shown.

Figure 6-623 Remove two screws



2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-624 Remove one screw



3. Open the right door and remove one screw.

Figure 6-625 Open the right door and remove screw



4. Lay the control panel down, and then slide the cover as shown below to separate it from the printer.

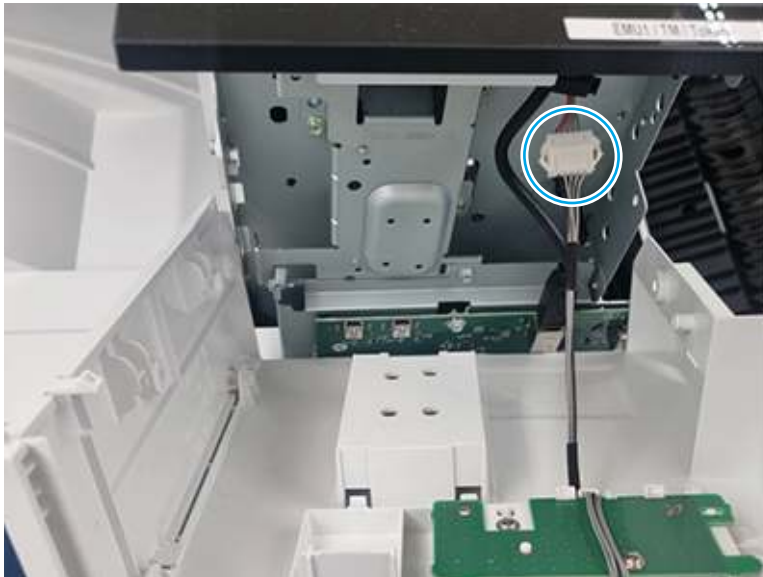
⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the cover. It is still attached to the printer by a wire harness.

Figure 6-626 Slide the cover



5. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the right middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-627 Disconnect the connector

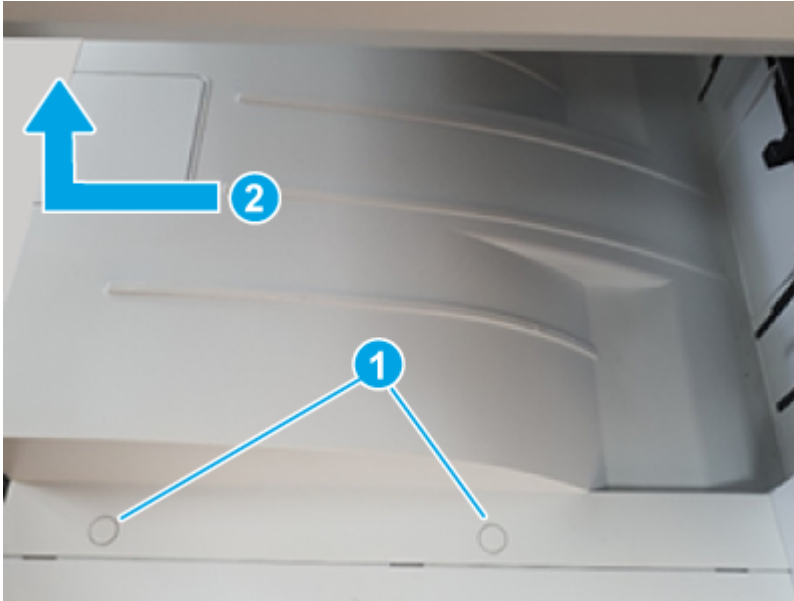


3. Remove the exit cover stacker

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the exit cover stacker.

- Remove two screw caps and remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the exit cover stacker (callout 2).

Figure 6-628 Remove the cover



4. Remove the front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the front cover.

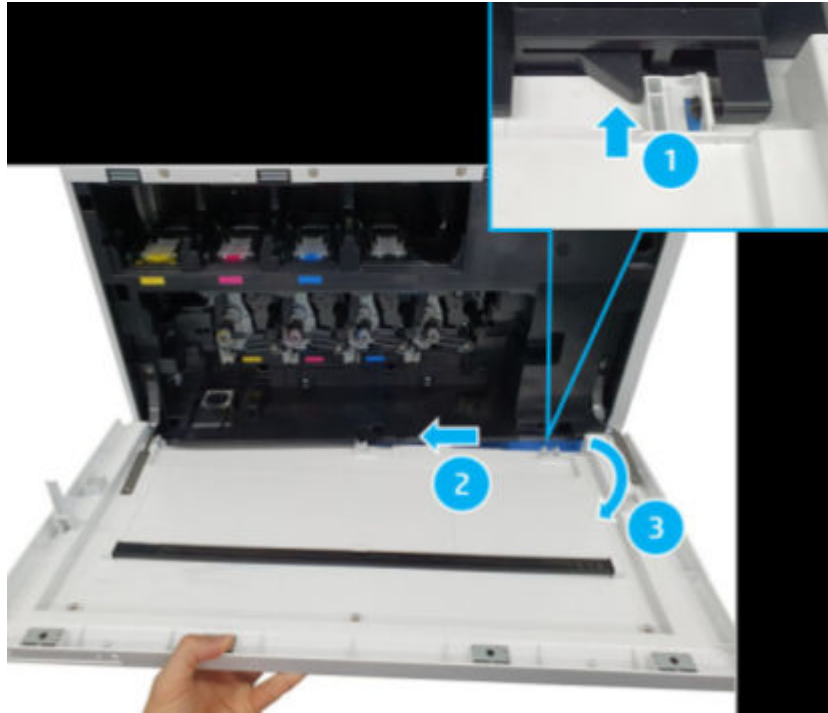
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-629 Remove two screws



2. Push in on the hook located at the right side of the cover (callout 1), and then remove the cover (callouts 2/3).

Figure 6-630 Remove the cover



5. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the TCU.

- Open the front door assembly. Push on each tab on the sides of the toner collection unit to release it, and then pull it straight out of the printer.

Figure 6-631 Remove the TCU

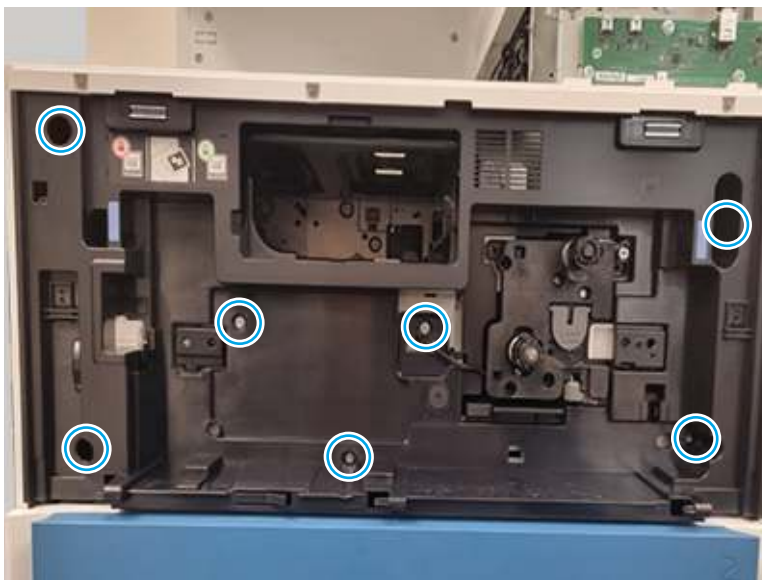


6. Remove the inner cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner cover.

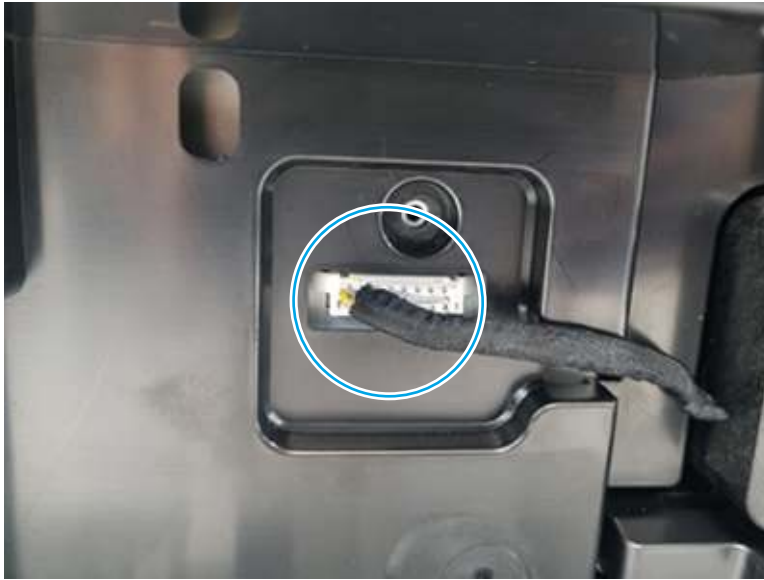
1. Remove seven screws from the inner cover.


Figure 6-632 Remove seven screws



2. Remove the cover carefully, and disconnect the connector.

Figure 6-633 Disconnect the connector



 **NOTE:** Be careful not to damage the wire harness.

7. Remove the TCU full sensor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the TCU full sensor assembly.

1. Open the right door.
2. Remove one screw, disconnect the connector, and then remove the sensor assembly from the printer.

Figure 6-634 Remove the sensor assembly



8. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Toner collection unit (TCU) detection sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the toner collection unit detection sensor.



[View a video of removing and replacing the toner collection unit detection sensor.](#)

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-78 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (toner collection unit detection sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the toner cartridge (control panel method)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the toner cartridge.

- At the printer control panel, do the following:
 - a. Select the [Sign In](#) item (located at the upper left corner of the control panel).
 - b. Select the [Service Access Code](#) item, and then enter the access code for the printer.
 - 03073122
 - c. Select the [Supplies](#) item.
 - d. Open the front door.
 - e. Select the [Eject](#) button  (located at the bottom right corner of the control panel).

2. Remove the right middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right middle cover assembly.

1. Remove two screws from the middle left cover as shown.

Figure 6-635 Remove two screws



2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-636 Remove one screw



3. Open the right door and remove one screw.

Figure 6-637 Open the right door and remove screw



4. Lay the control panel down, and then slide the cover as shown below to separate it from the printer.

CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the cover. It is still attached to the printer by a wire harness.

Figure 6-638 Slide the cover



5. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the right middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-639 Disconnect the connector



3. Remove the exit cover stacker

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the exit cover stacker.

- Remove two screw caps and remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the exit cover stacker (callout 2).

Figure 6-640 Remove the cover



4. Remove the front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the front cover.

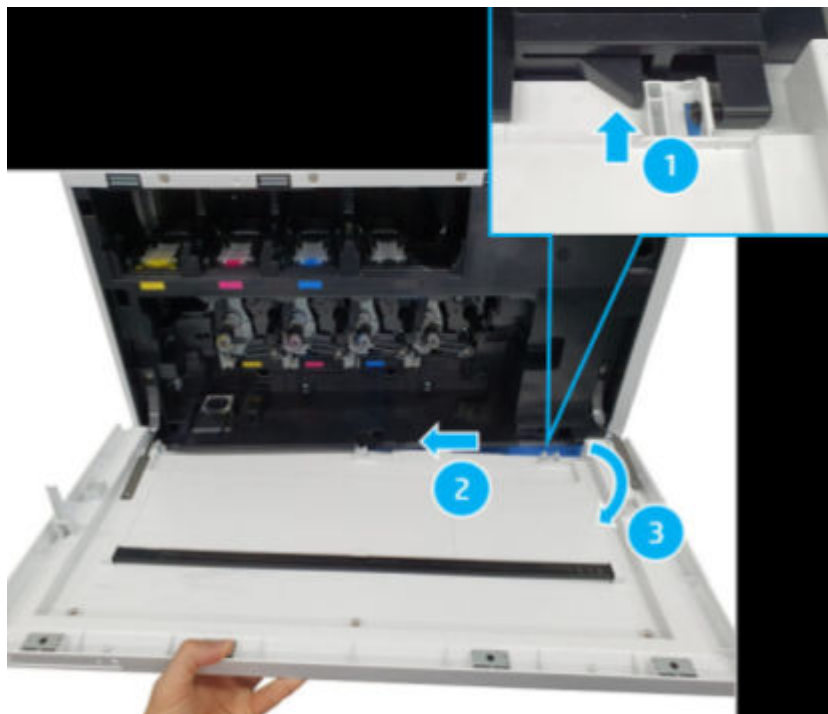
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-641 Remove two screws



2. Push in on the hook located at the right side of the cover (callout 1), and then remove the cover (callouts 2/3).

Figure 6-642 Remove the cover



5. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the TCU.

- Open the front door assembly. Push on each tab on the sides of the toner collection unit to release it, and then pull it straight out of the printer.

Figure 6-643 Remove the TCU

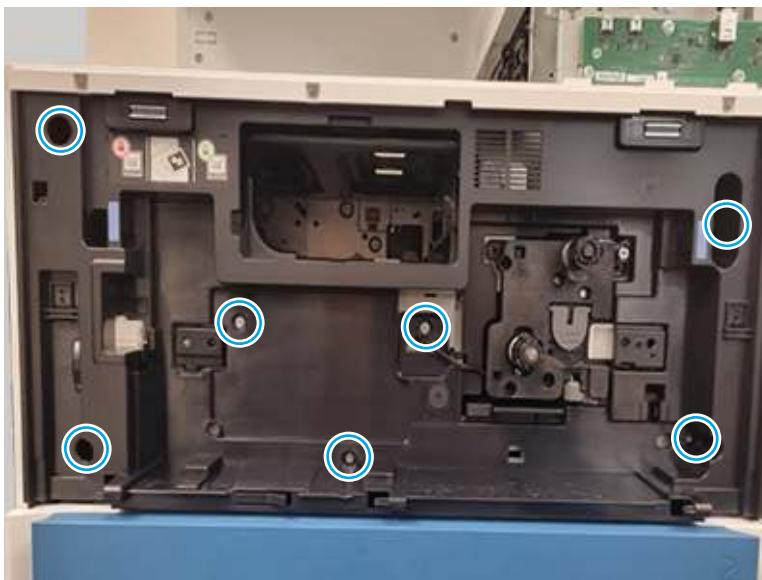


6. Remove the inner cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner cover.

1. Remove seven screws from the inner cover.


Figure 6-644 Remove seven screws



2. Remove the cover carefully, and disconnect the connector.

Figure 6-645 Disconnect the connector



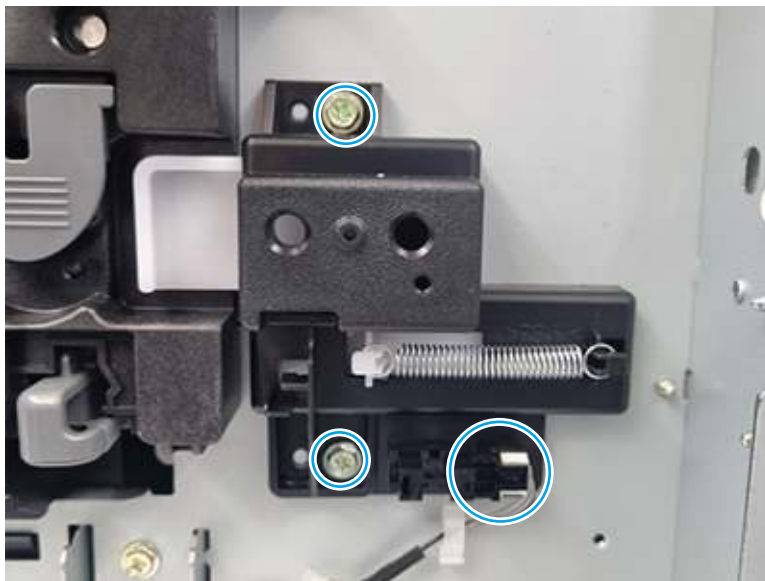
 **NOTE:** Be careful not to damage the wire harness.

7. Remove the TCU detection sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the TCU detection sensor.

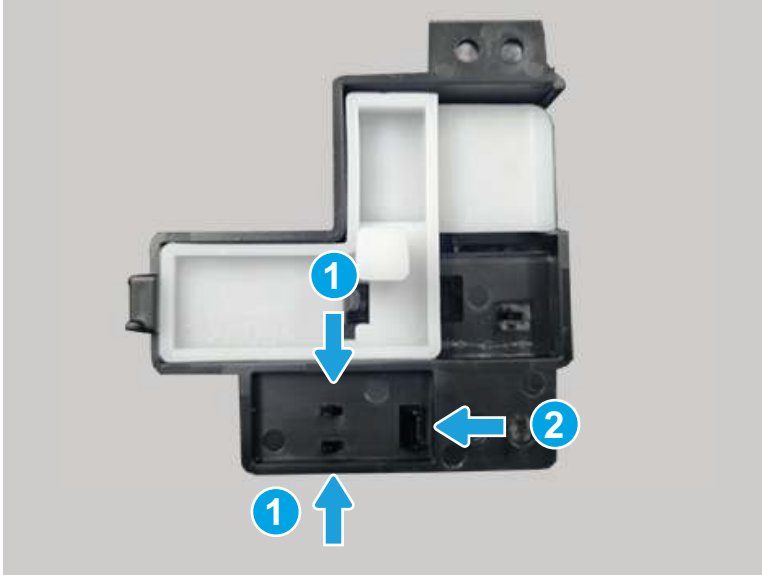
1. Open the right door.
2. Remove two screws, and then disconnect the connector. Remove the sensor assembly from the printer.

Figure 6-646 Remove two screws and disconnect the connector



3. To remove the sensor from the housing, do the following:
 - a. Release the hooks (callout 1).
 - b. Slide the sensor to the left (callout 2), and then remove the sensor.

Figure 6-647 Remove the sensor



8. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.




IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Toner collection unit (TCU) drive assembly


Learn about removing and replacing the toner collection unit drive assembly.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes


Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

 **NOTE:** This procedure requires removing the toner cartridges using the control panel method. Do this prior to turning the power off. For more information, see *Remove the toner cartridges (control panel method)* in this topic.

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-79 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-00445A	Toner collection unit drive assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the toner cartridge (control panel method)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the toner cartridge.

- At the printer control panel, do the following:
 - a. Select the [Sign In](#) item (located at the upper left corner of the control panel).
 - b. Select the [Service Access Code](#) item, and then enter the access code for the printer.
 - 03073122
 - c. Select the [Supplies](#) item.
 - d. Open the front door.
 - e. Select the [Eject](#) button  (located at the bottom right corner of the control panel).

2. Remove the right middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right middle cover assembly.

1. Remove two screws from the middle left cover as shown.

Figure 6-648 Remove two screws



2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-649 Remove one screw



3. Open the right door and remove one screw.

Figure 6-650 Open the right door and remove screw



4. Lay the control panel down, and then slide the cover as shown below to separate it from the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the cover. It is still attached to the printer by a wire harness.

Figure 6-651 Slide the cover



5. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the right middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-652 Disconnect the connector

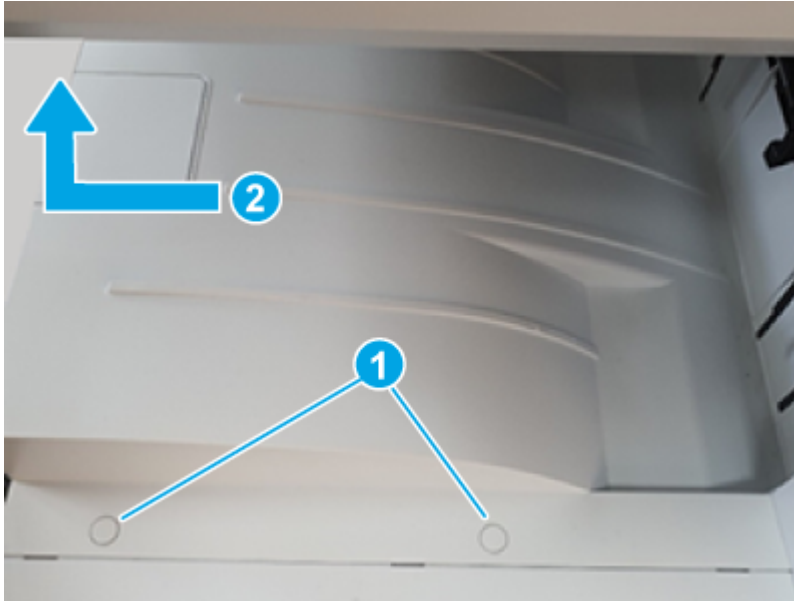


3. Remove the exit cover stacker

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the exit cover stacker.

- Remove two screw caps and remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the exit cover stacker (callout 2).

Figure 6-653 Remove the cover



4. Remove the front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the front cover.

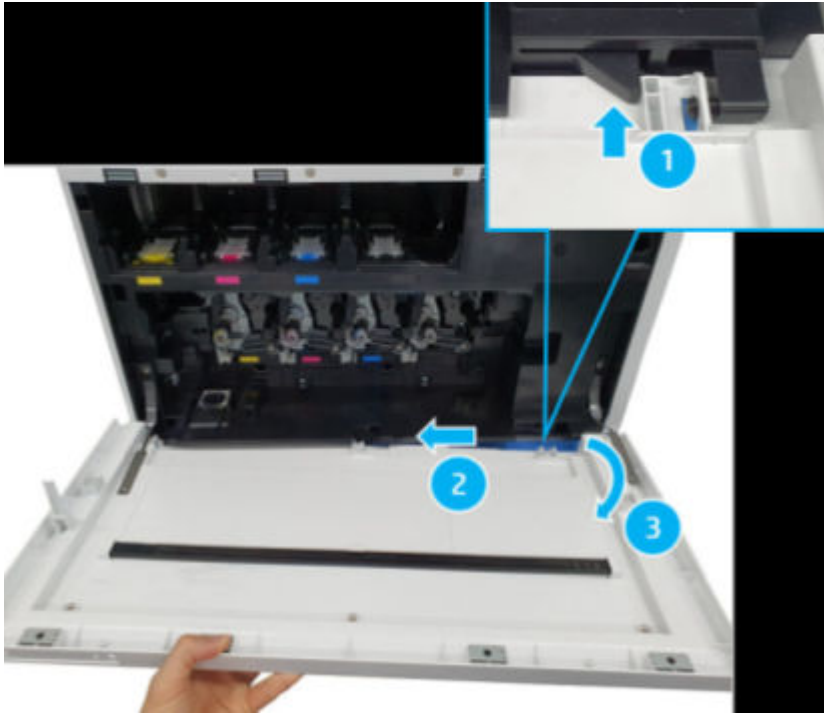
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-654 Remove two screws



2. Push in on the hook located at the right side of the cover (callout 1), and then remove the cover (callouts 2/3).

Figure 6-655 Remove the cover



5. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the TCU.

- Open the front door assembly. Push on each tab on the sides of the toner collection unit to release it, and then pull it straight out of the printer.

Figure 6-656 Remove the TCU

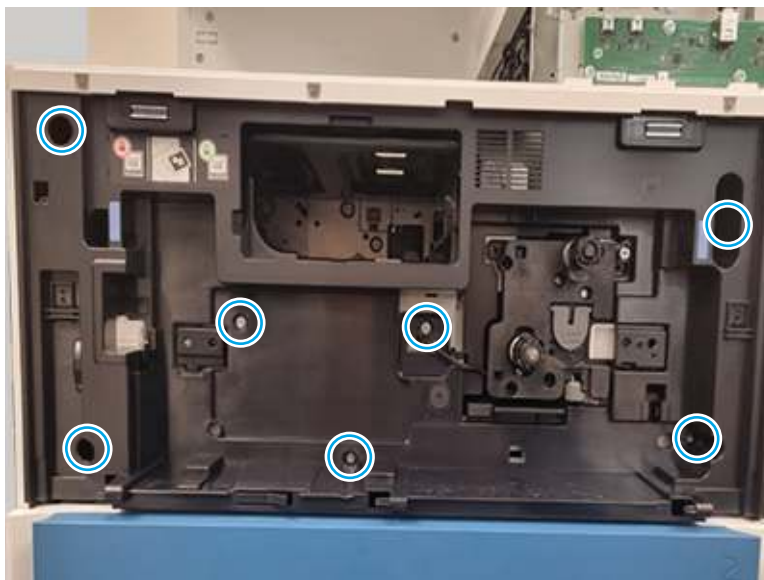


6. Remove the inner cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner cover.

1. Remove seven screws from the inner cover.


Figure 6-657 Remove seven screws



2. Remove the cover carefully, and disconnect the connector.

Figure 6-658 Disconnect the connector



 **NOTE:** Be careful not to damage the wire harness.

7. Remove the TCU drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the TCU drive assembly.

1. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-659 Disconnect one connector



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the TCU drive assembly.

Figure 6-660 Remove the assembly



8. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Toner collection unit (TCU) motor

Learn about removing and replacing the toner collection unit motor.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off



NOTE: This procedure requires removing the toner cartridges using the control panel method. Do this prior to turning the power off. For more information, see *Remove the toner cartridges (control panel method)* in this topic.

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-80 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00166A	Motor circuit step (toner collection unit motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the toner cartridge (control panel method)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the toner cartridge.

- At the printer control panel, do the following:
 - a. Select the [Sign In](#) item (located at the upper left corner of the control panel).
 - b. Select the [Service Access Code](#) item, and then enter the access code for the printer.
 - 03073122
 - c. Select the [Supplies](#) item.
 - d. Open the front door.
 - e. Select the [Eject](#) button  (located at the bottom right corner of the control panel).

2. Remove the right middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right middle cover assembly.

1. Remove two screws from the middle left cover as shown.

Figure 6-661 Remove two screws



2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-662 Remove one screw



3. Open the right door and remove one screw.

Figure 6-663 Open the right door and remove screw



4. Lay the control panel down, and then slide the cover as shown below to separate it from the printer.

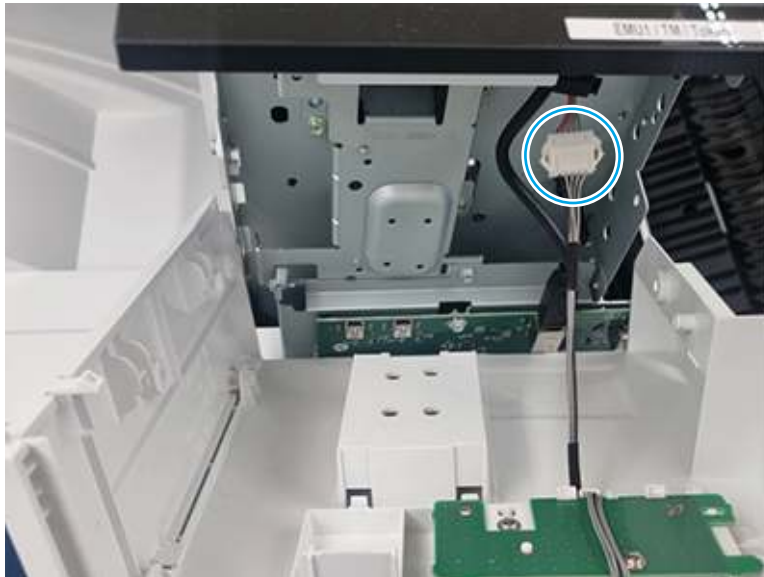
⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the cover. It is still attached to the printer by a wire harness.

Figure 6-664 Slide the cover



5. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the right middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-665 Disconnect the connector

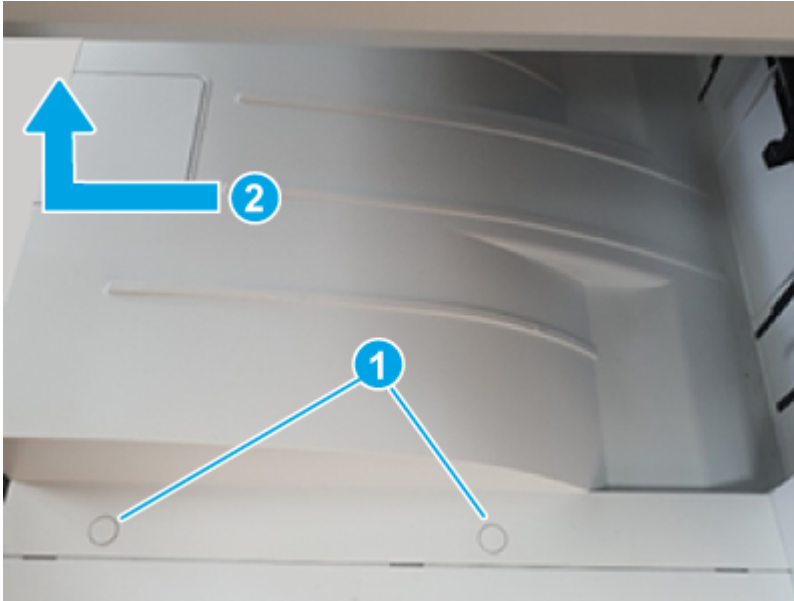


3. Remove the exit cover stacker

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the exit cover stacker.

- Remove two screw caps and remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the exit cover stacker (callout 2).

Figure 6-666 Remove the cover



4. Remove the front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the front cover.

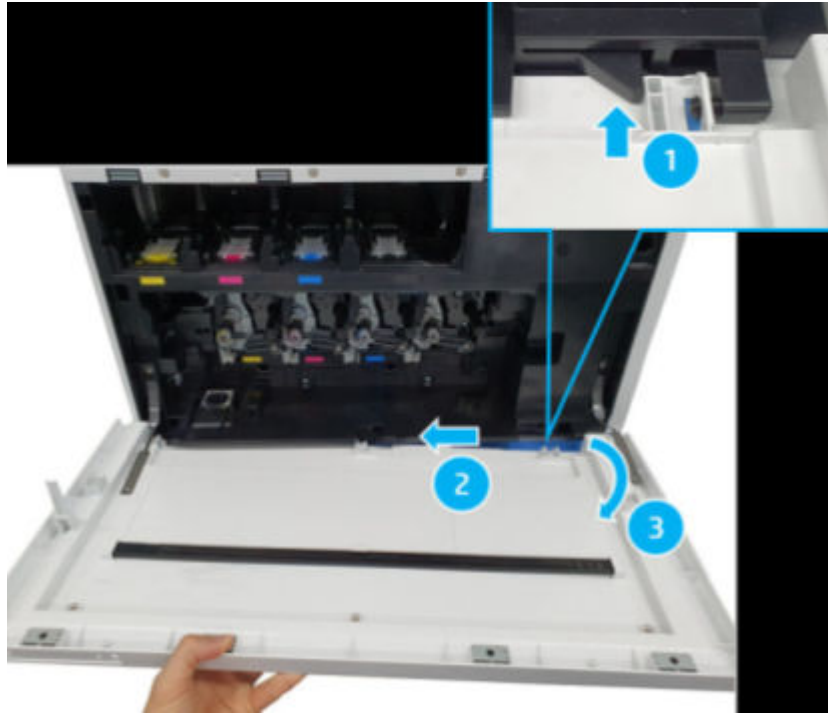
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-667 Remove two screws



2. Push in on the hook located at the right side of the cover (callout 1), and then remove the cover (callouts 2/3).

Figure 6-668 Remove the cover



5. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the TCU.

- Open the front door assembly. Push on each tab on the sides of the toner collection unit to release it, and then pull it straight out of the printer.

Figure 6-669 Remove the TCU

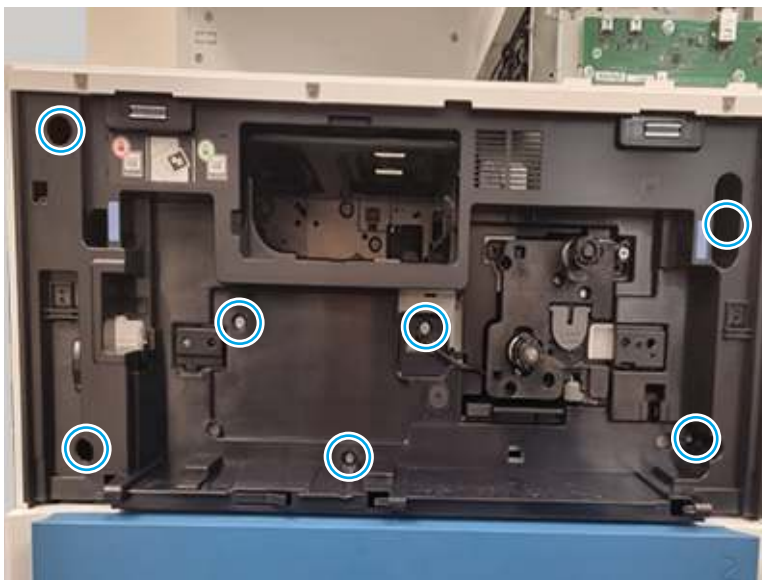


6. Remove the inner cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner cover.

1. Remove seven screws from the inner cover.


Figure 6-670 Remove seven screws



2. Remove the cover carefully, and disconnect the connector.

Figure 6-671 Disconnect the connector



 **NOTE:** Be careful not to damage the wire harness.

7. Remove the TCU drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the TCU drive assembly.

1. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-672 Disconnect one connector



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the TCU drive assembly.

Figure 6-673 Remove the assembly

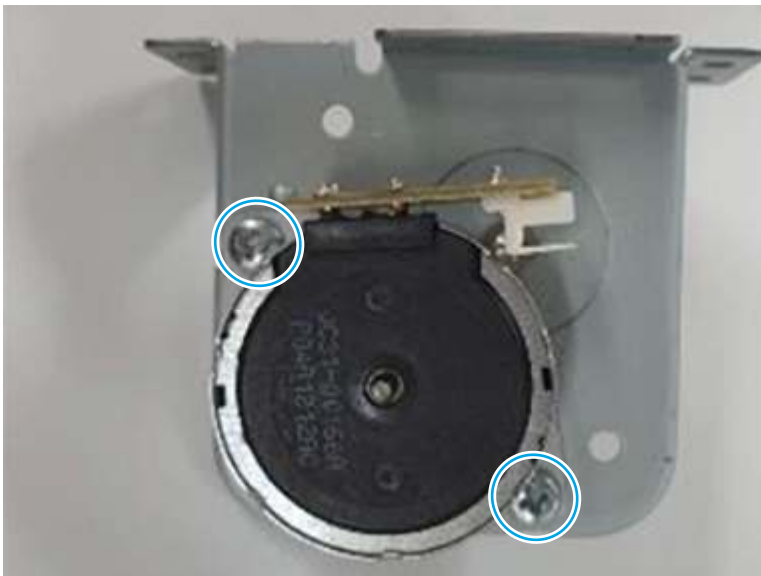


8. Remove the TCU motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the TCU motor.

- Remove two screws, and then remove the TCU motor.

Figure 6-674 Remove the motor



9. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Image creation

Learn about image creation parts removal and replacement.

Laser scanner unit (LSU)

Learn about laser scanner unit parts removal and replacement.

Removal and replacement: Laser scanner unit (LSU)

Learn about removing and replacing the LSU.



[View a video of removing and replacing the LSU.](#)

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-81 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK18-60001	Laser scanner unit (LSU)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

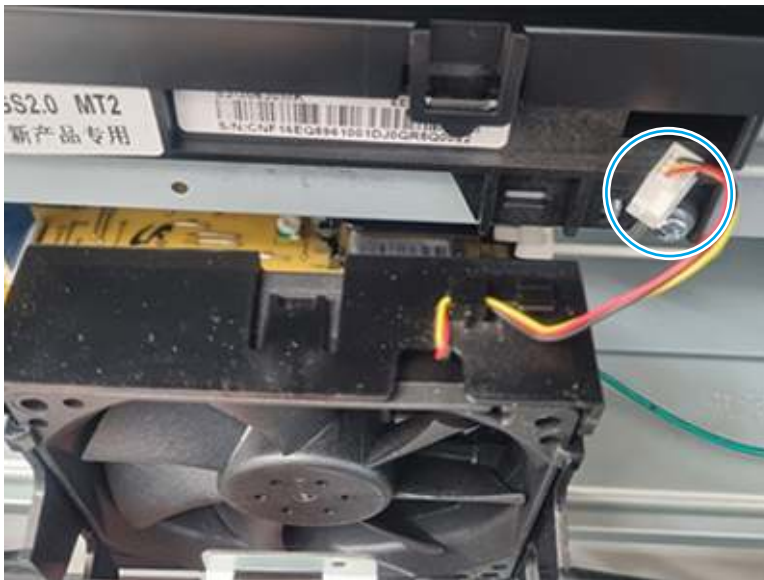
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the LSU fan

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the LSU fan.

1. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-675 Disconnect one connector



2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-676 Remove two screws



3. Remove two screws, and then remove the LSU fan.

Figure 6-677 Remove the fan

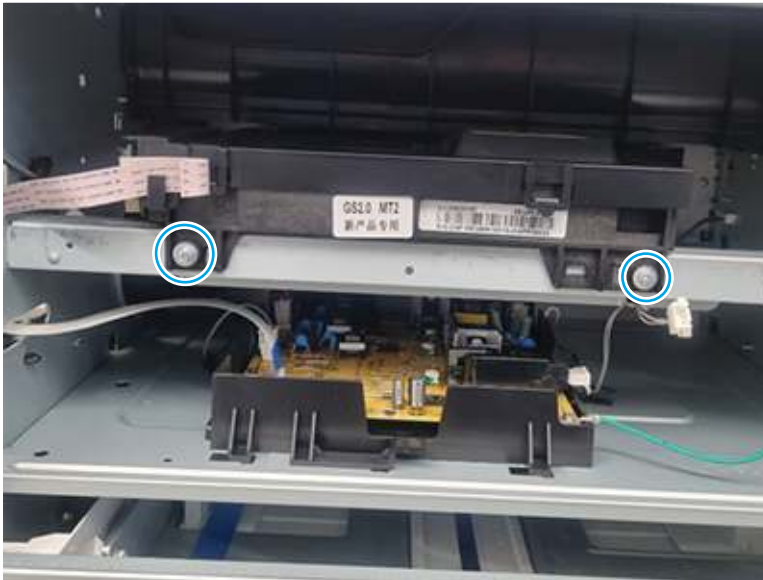


2. Remove the LSU

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the laser scanner unit (LSU).

1. Remove two screws

Figure 6-678 Remove two screws



2. Disconnect one FFC.


 **NOTE:** The FFC has a locking clip. Release the clip to disconnect the FFC.

Figure 6-679 Disconnect the FFC



3. Remove the LSU.


 **NOTE:** Use two hands to remove the LSU. It can be difficult to release from the printer.


Figure 6-680 Remove the LSU



3. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Developer and drum

Learn about developer and drum parts removal and replacement.

Removal and replacement: Drum unit

Learn about removing and replacing the drum unit.

Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-82 Part information

Part number	Part description
W9066-67001	Black drum unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the TCU.

- Open the front door assembly. Push on each tab on the sides of the toner collection unit to release it, and then pull it straight out of the printer.

Figure 6-681 Remove the TCU



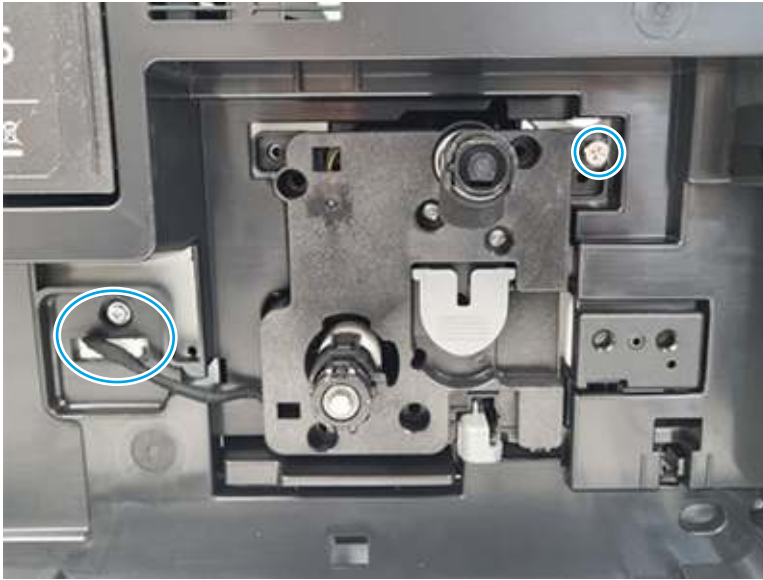
2. Remove the black drum unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the black drum unit.

1. Open the right door.

2. At the front of the printer, release one screw and unplug one connector.

Figure 6-682 Release one screw



3. Pull the drum unit out of the printer.


 **NOTE:** If the drum assembly is being removed to access other parts, skip the remaining steps. Those steps are for replacing the drum unit only.

Figure 6-683 Remove the unit



4. Set the drum unit down horizontally and remove six screws


Figure 6-684 Remove six screws



5. Disconnect one connector.

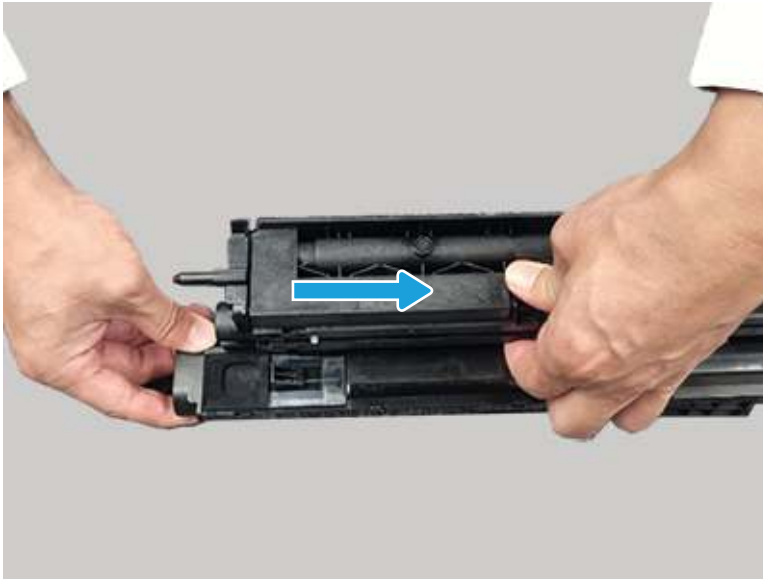
Figure 6-685 Disconnect one connector



 **Reinstallation tip:** Be sure to route the wire harness correctly when reinstalling this part.

6. Remove the drum cover.


Figure 6-686 Remove the drum cover



7. Remove the black drum unit.

Figure 6-687 Remove the drum unit



 **NOTE:** Be careful with spilled toner. If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Developer unit

Learn about removing and replacing the black developer unit.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-83 Part information

Part number	Part description
5PN67-67001	Black developer unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the TCU.

- Open the front door assembly. Push on each tab on the sides of the toner collection unit to release it, and then pull it straight out of the printer.

Figure 6-688 Remove the TCU



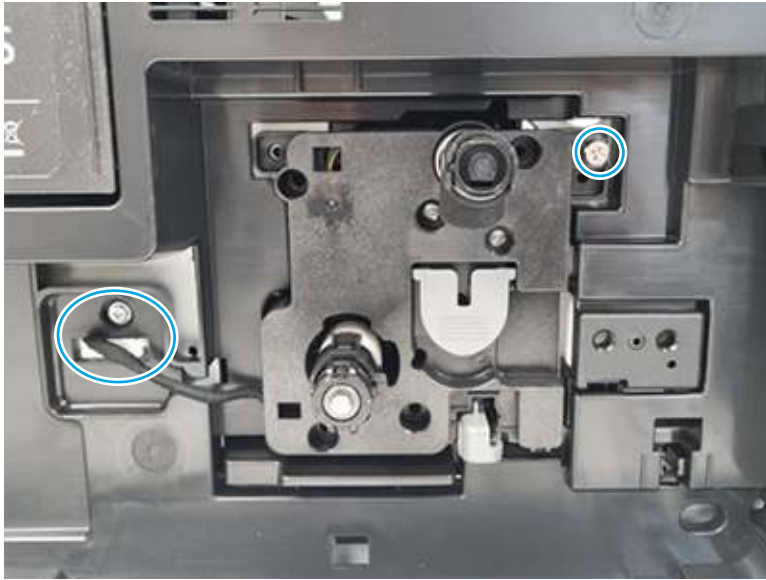
2. Remove the black developer unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the black developer unit.

1. Open the right door.

2. At the front of the printer, release one screw and unplug one connector.

Figure 6-689 Release one screw



3. Pull the drum/developer unit out of the printer.

Figure 6-690 Remove the unit



4. Set the drum unit down horizontally and remove six screws


Figure 6-691 Remove six screws



5. Disconnect one connector.

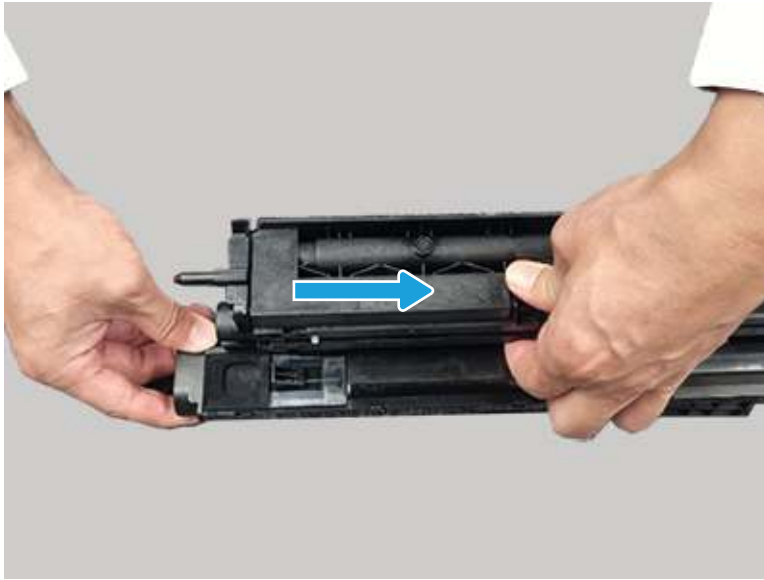
Figure 6-692 Disconnect one connector



 **Reinstallation tip:** Be sure to route the wire harness correctly when reinstalling this part.

6. Remove the drum cover.


Figure 6-693 Remove the drum cover



7. Remove the black developer unit.

Figure 6-694 Remove the developer unit



 **NOTE:** Be careful with spilled toner. If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Developer powder

Learn about filling or refilling the developer powder.



NOTE: Use this procedure to fill or refill an empty developer unit with developer powder.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-84 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ90-60106	Black developer powder kit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the TCU.

- Open the front door assembly. Push on each tab on the sides of the toner collection unit to release it, and then pull it straight out of the printer.

Figure 6-695 Remove the TCU

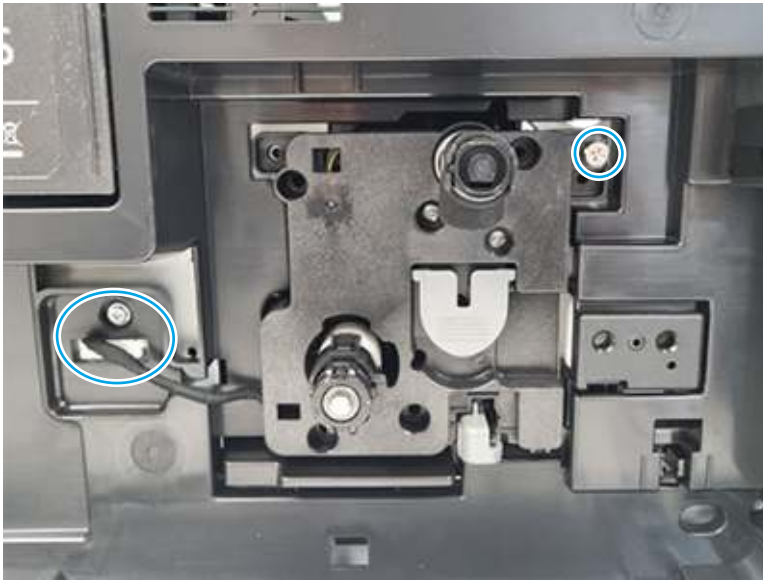


2. Remove the black developer unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the black developer unit.

1. Open the right door.
2. At the front of the printer, release one screw and unplug one connector.

Figure 6-696 Release one screw



3. Pull the drum/developer unit out of the printer.

Figure 6-697 Remove the unit



4. Set the drum unit down horizontally and remove six screws


Figure 6-698 Remove six screws



5. Disconnect one connector.

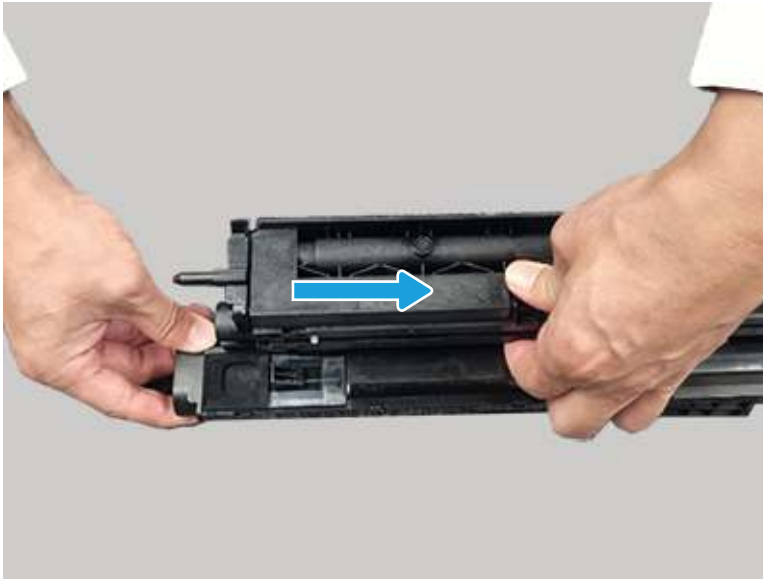
Figure 6-699 Disconnect one connector



 **Reinstallation tip:** Be sure to route the wire harness correctly when reinstalling this part.

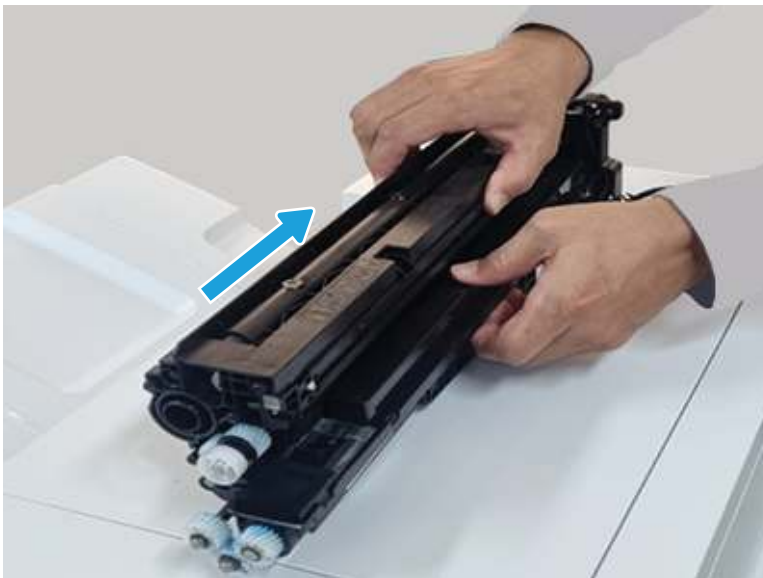
6. Remove the drum cover.


Figure 6-700 Remove the drum cover



7. Remove the black developer unit.


Figure 6-701 Remove the developer unit



 **NOTE:** Be careful with spilled toner. If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

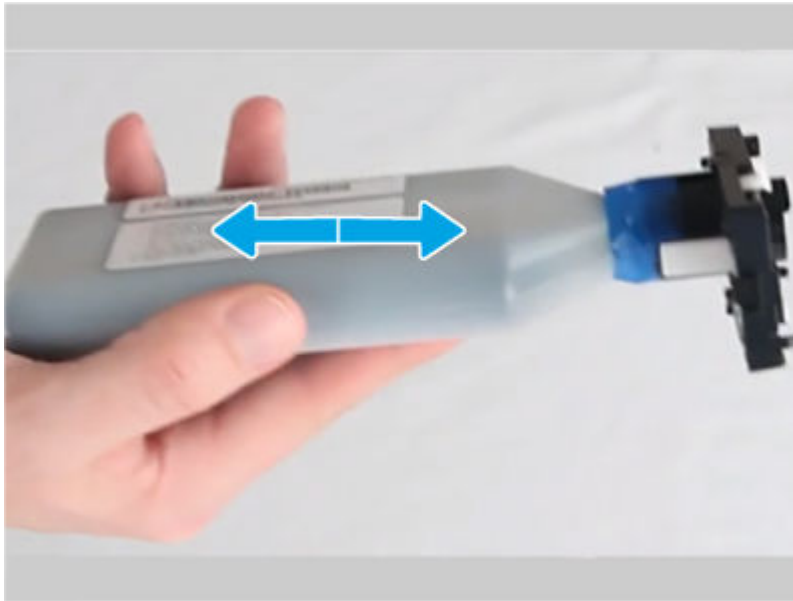
3. Fill or refill the developer unit with developer powder

Use the following procedure to fill or refill the developer powder in a developer unit.

 **TIP:** If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

1. Shake the developer powder bottle.

Figure 6-702 Shake the bottle



2. Do one of the following:
 - To **fill** a replacement developer unit: Skip this step.
 - To **refill** an in-service developer unit: Remove one cap from the developer unit.


 **NOTE:** Removing the cap might require considerable force.

Figure 6-703 Open the developer bottle



3. Remove the sealing strip from the developer bottle.

Figure 6-704 Remove the sealing strip



4. Pull the tab on the developer bottle to the side and then push it down to open the bottle.

Figure 6-705 Open the developer powder bottle



5. Attach the bottle to the developer unit.


 **NOTE:** Make sure that the bottle firmly hooks onto the developer unit.

Figure 6-706 Attach the bottle



6. Slightly raise the right end of the developer unit, and then carefully squeeze the bottle to start toner flowing into the developer unit. Continue this process until there is no toner remaining in the bottle.


 **TIP:** To check the level of powder in the bottle, hold it up to a light source.

Figure 6-707 Fill the developer



7. Install the cap (supplied in the kit) in the hole on the developer unit.


 **NOTE:** Installing the cap might require considerable force.

Figure 6-708 Install the cap



8. Shake the developer unit back and forth to evenly distribute the toner powder.

Figure 6-709 Distribute the toner powder



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Drum motor

Learn about removing and replacing the drum motor.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-85 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00123A	Drum motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the TCU.

- Open the front door assembly. Push on each tab on the sides of the toner collection unit to release it, and then pull it straight out of the printer.

Figure 6-710 Remove the TCU



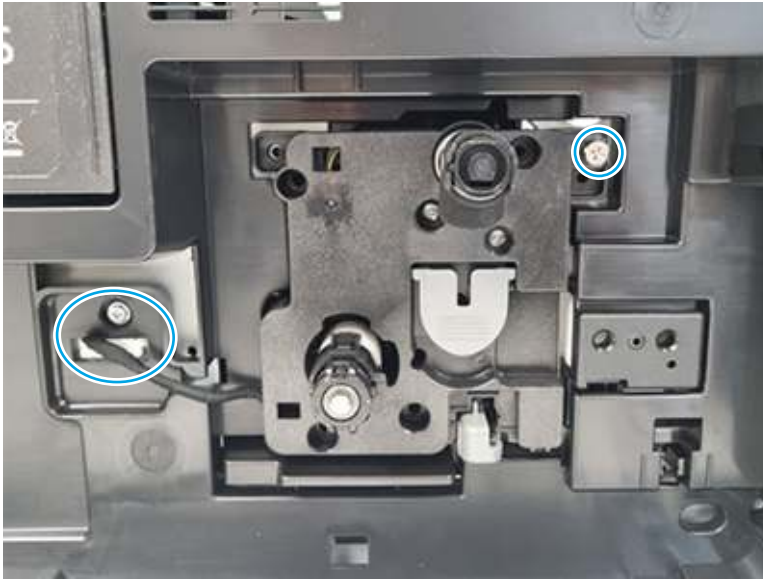
2. Remove the black drum unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the black drum unit.

1. Open the right door.

2. At the front of the printer, release one screw and unplug one connector.

Figure 6-711 Release one screw



3. Pull the drum unit out of the printer.


 **NOTE:** If the drum assembly is being removed to access other parts, skip the remaining steps. Those steps are for replacing the drum unit only.

Figure 6-712 Remove the unit



4. Set the drum unit down horizontally and remove six screws


Figure 6-713 Remove six screws



5. Disconnect one connector.

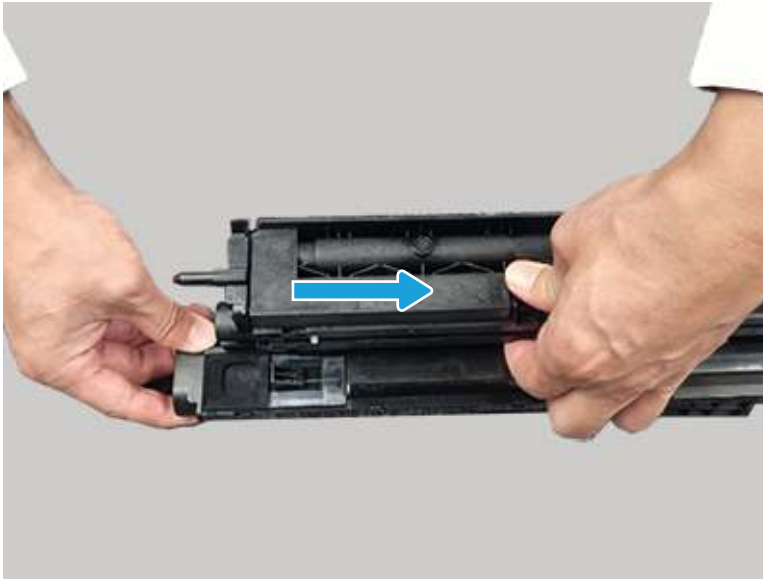
Figure 6-714 Disconnect one connector



 **Reinstallation tip:** Be sure to route the wire harness correctly when reinstalling this part.

6. Remove the drum cover.


Figure 6-715 Remove the drum cover



7. Remove the black drum unit.

Figure 6-716 Remove the drum unit



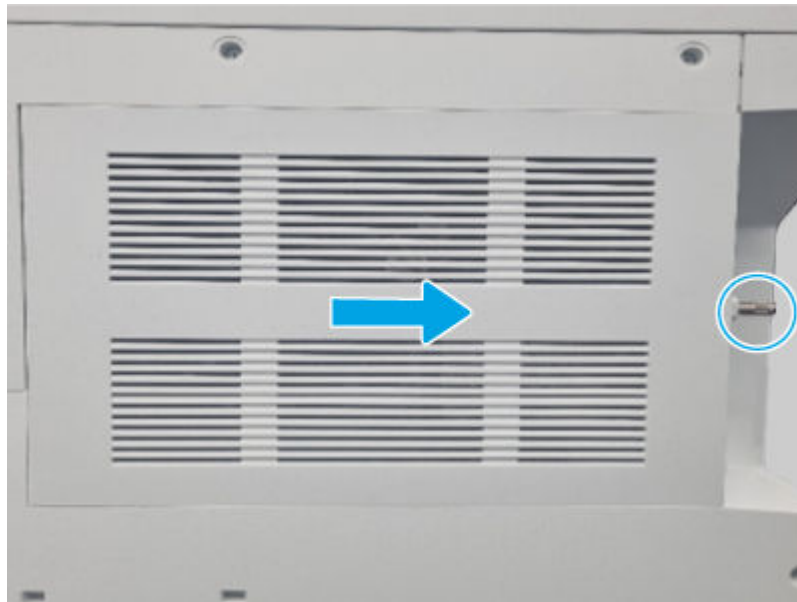
 **NOTE:** Be careful with spilled toner. If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

3. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-717 Remove the cover



4. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

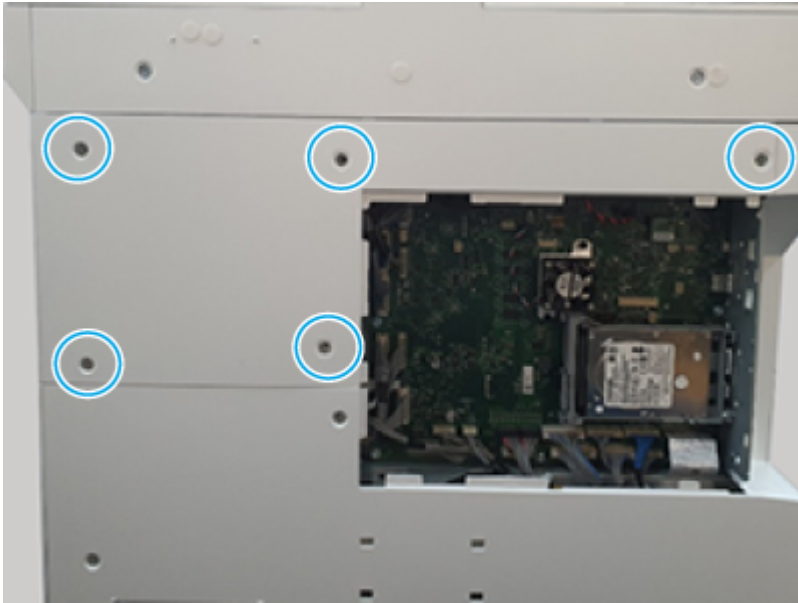
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-718 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-719 Remove the cover



5. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove six screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-720 Remove the cover

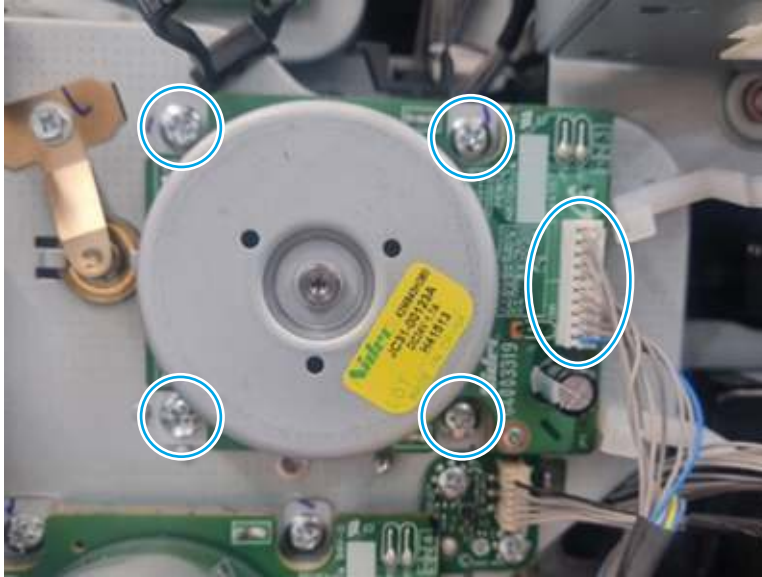


6. Remove the drum motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the drum motor.

- Disconnect one connector, remove four screws, and then remove the motor.

Figure 6-721 Remove the motor



7. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Developer motor

Learn about removing and replacing the developer motor.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-86 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00123A	Developer motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the TCU.

- Open the front door assembly. Push on each tab on the sides of the toner collection unit to release it, and then pull it straight out of the printer.

Figure 6-722 Remove the TCU



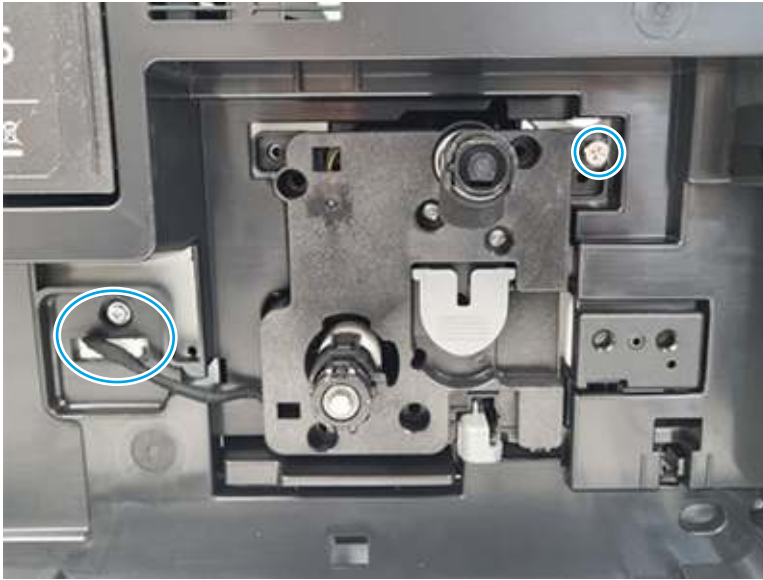
2. Remove the black drum unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the black drum unit.

1. Open the right door.

2. At the front of the printer, release one screw and unplug one connector.

Figure 6-723 Release one screw



3. Pull the drum unit out of the printer.


 **NOTE:** If the drum assembly is being removed to access other parts, skip the remaining steps. Those steps are for replacing the drum unit only.

Figure 6-724 Remove the unit



4. Set the drum unit down horizontally and remove six screws


Figure 6-725 Remove six screws



5. Disconnect one connector.

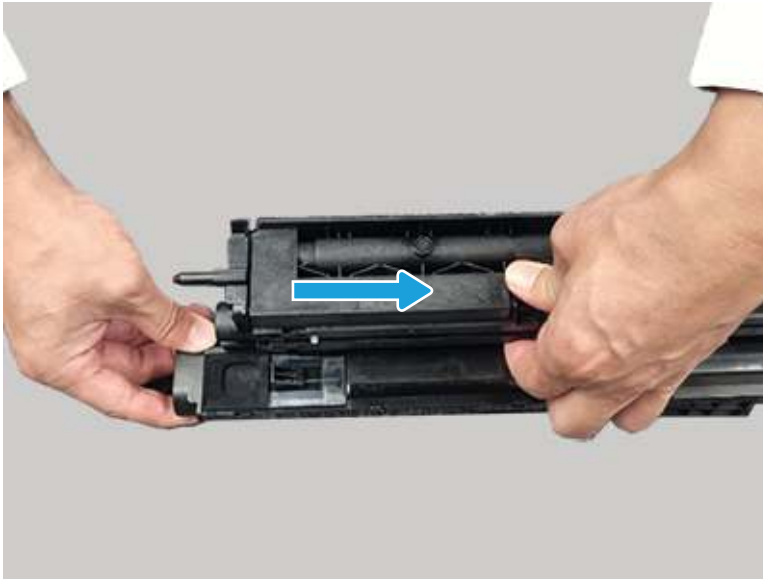
Figure 6-726 Disconnect one connector



 **Reinstallation tip:** Be sure to route the wire harness correctly when reinstalling this part.

6. Remove the drum cover.


Figure 6-727 Remove the drum cover



7. Remove the black drum unit.

Figure 6-728 Remove the drum unit



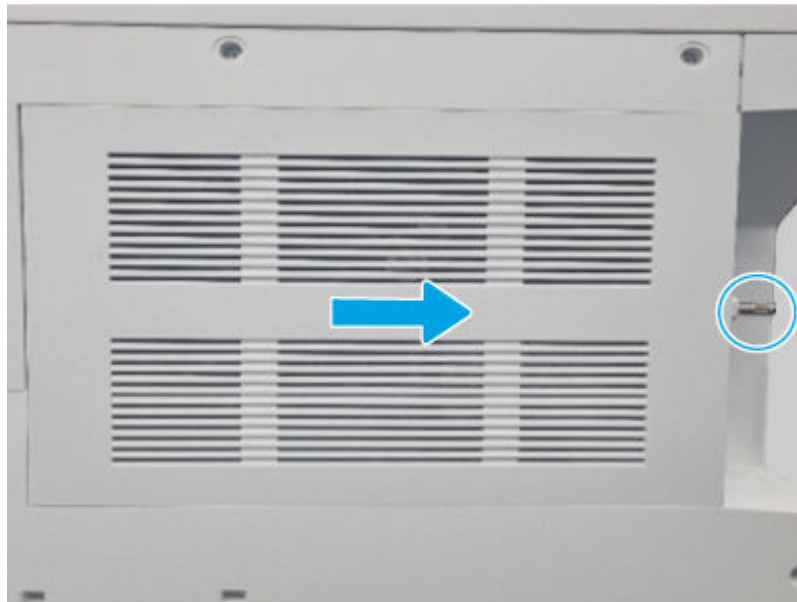
 **NOTE:** Be careful with spilled toner. If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

3. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-729 Remove the cover



4. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

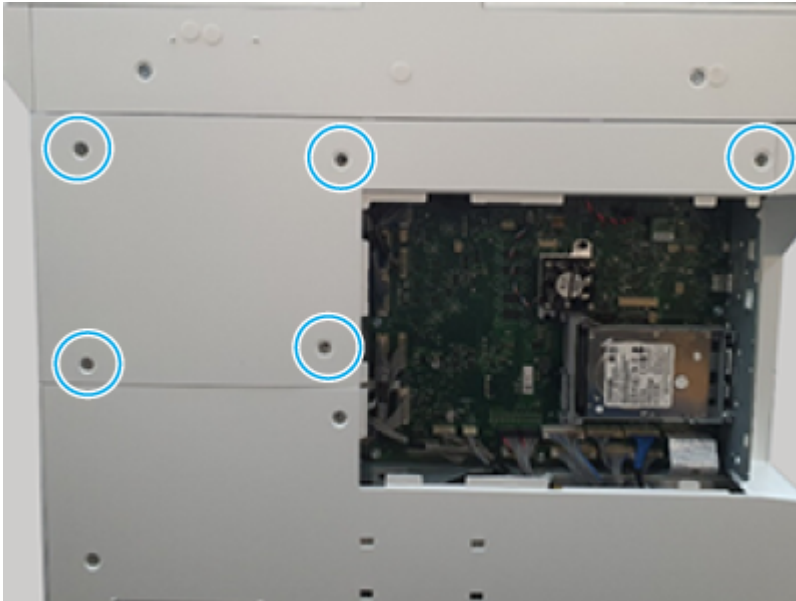
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-730 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-731 Remove the cover



5. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove six screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-732 Remove the cover

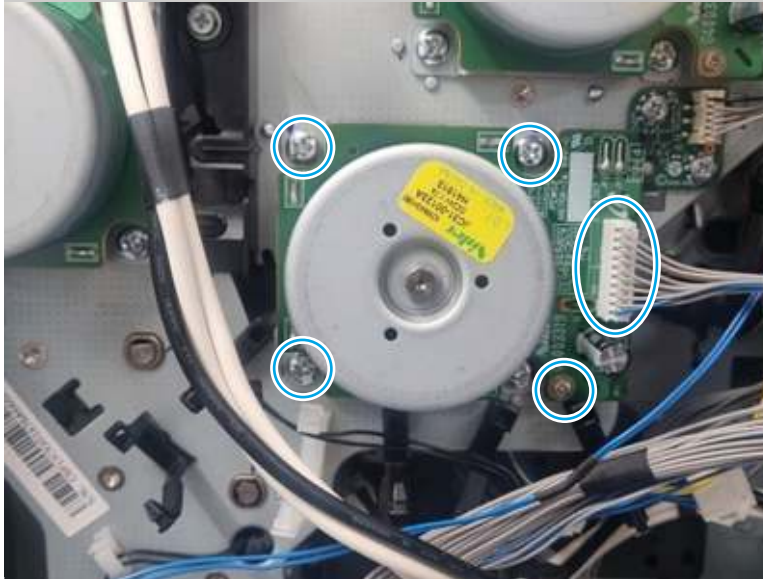


6. Remove the developer motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the developer motor.

- Remove four screws, disconnect one connector, and then remove the motor.

Figure 6-733 Remove the motor



7. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Fuser unit

Learn about fuser unit parts removal and replacement.

Removal and replacement: Fuser unit

Learn about removing and replacing the fuser unit.

Mean time to repair: 4 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-87 Part information

Part number	Part description
5PN51-67001	Fuser unit 100V
5PN68-67001	Fuser unit 110V
5PN69-67001	Fuser unit 220V

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right rear cover.

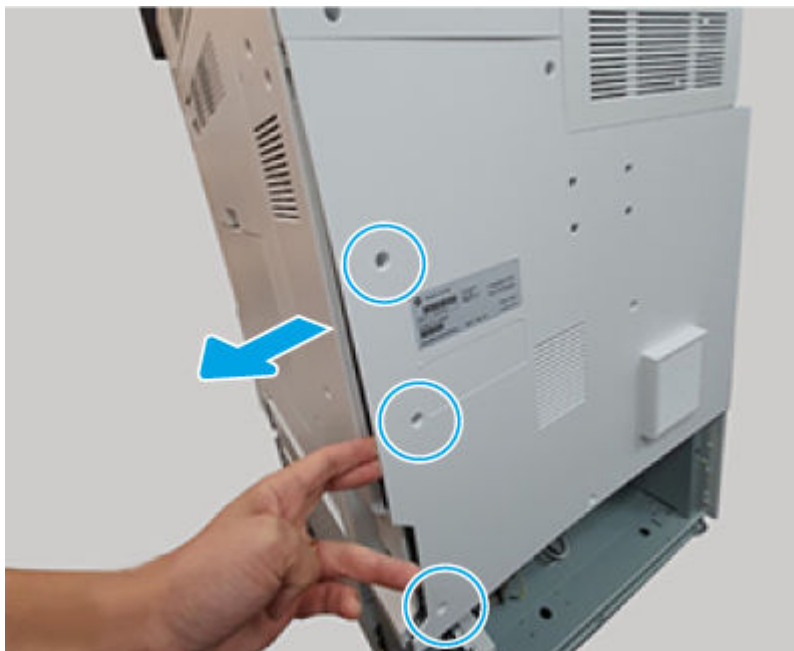
1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-734 Remove three screws



2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove three rear lower cover screws.
 - b. Slightly separate the rear lower cover from the printer.
 - c. Open the right door, and then remove the right rear cover.

Figure 6-735 Remove the cover



2. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

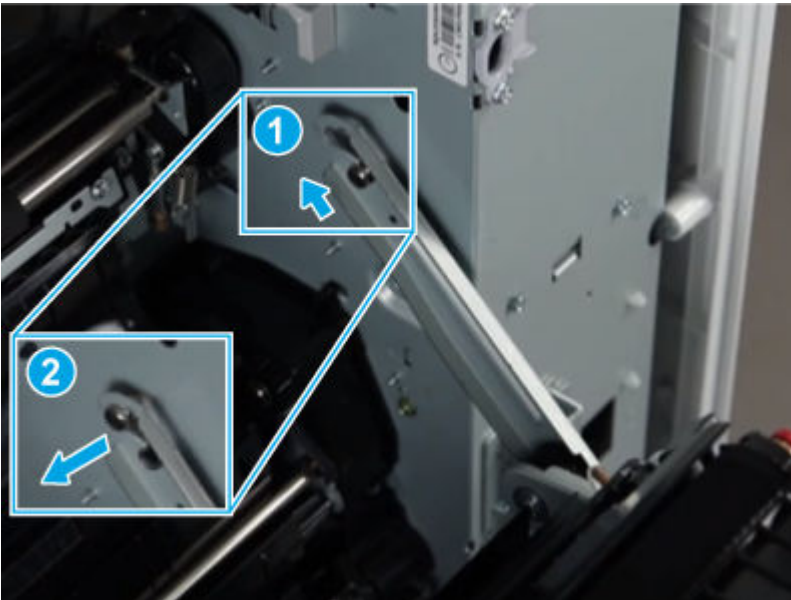
Figure 6-736 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-737 Release the hinge




3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-738 Release the link



4. Remove the right door assembly.

 **NOTE:** If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.


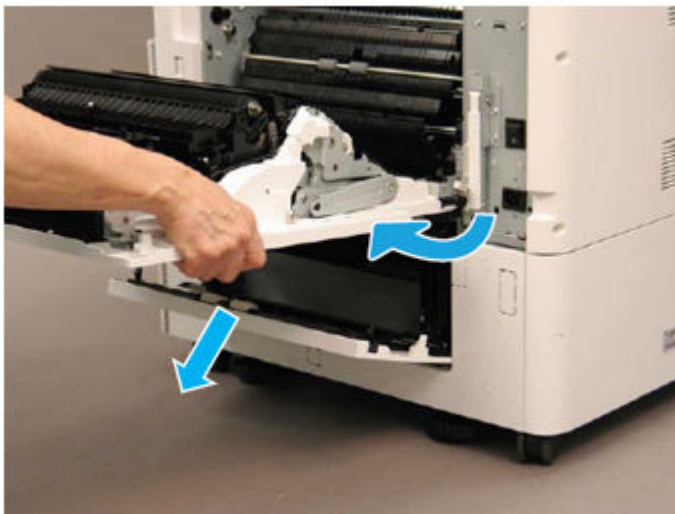
 **CAUTION:** To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-739 Remove the door

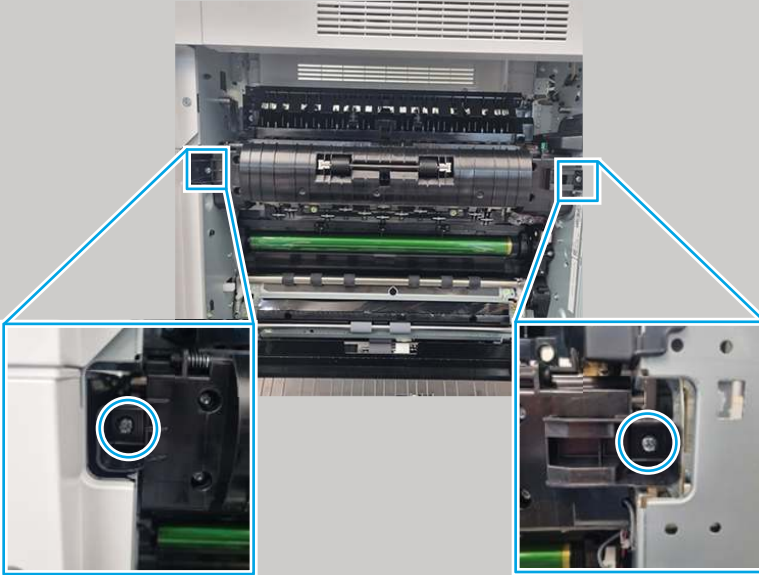


3. Remove the fuser unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the fuser unit.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-740 Remove two screws



2. Remove one screw above the fuser unit on the right.

Figure 6-741 Remove one screw



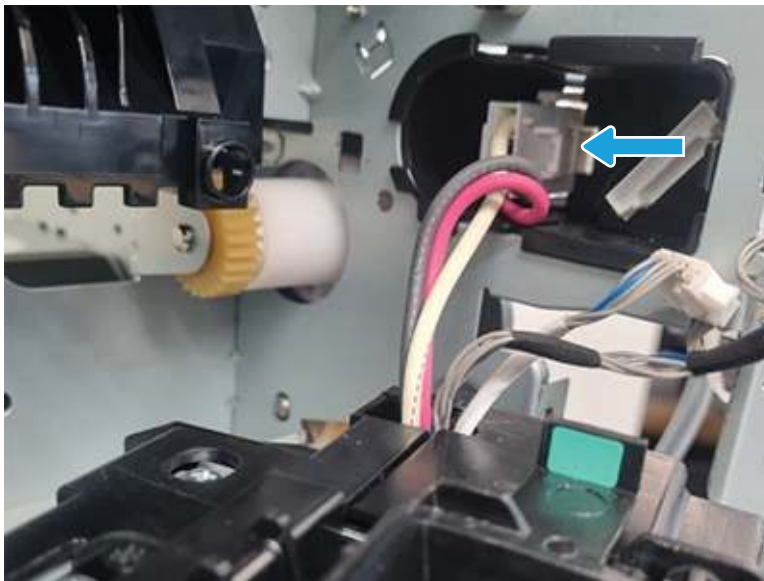
3. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-742 Disconnect one connector



4. Pull out the left edge of the fuser unit, disconnect one connector, and then remove the fuser unit.

Figure 6-743 Disconnect one connector



4. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Fuser and exit drive assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the fuser and exit drive assembly.

 [View a video of removing and replacing the fuser and exit drive assembly.](#)


Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-88 Part Information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01679A	Fuser and exit drive assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

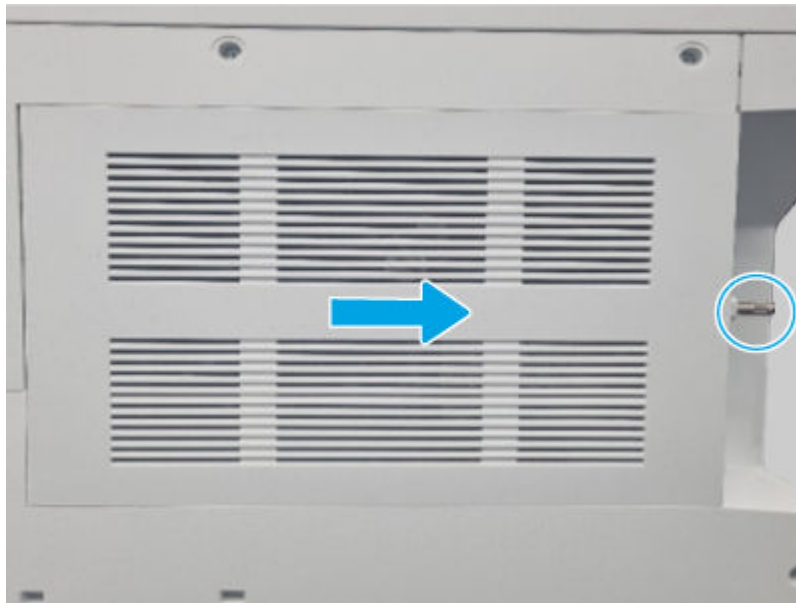
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-744 Remove the cover



2. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

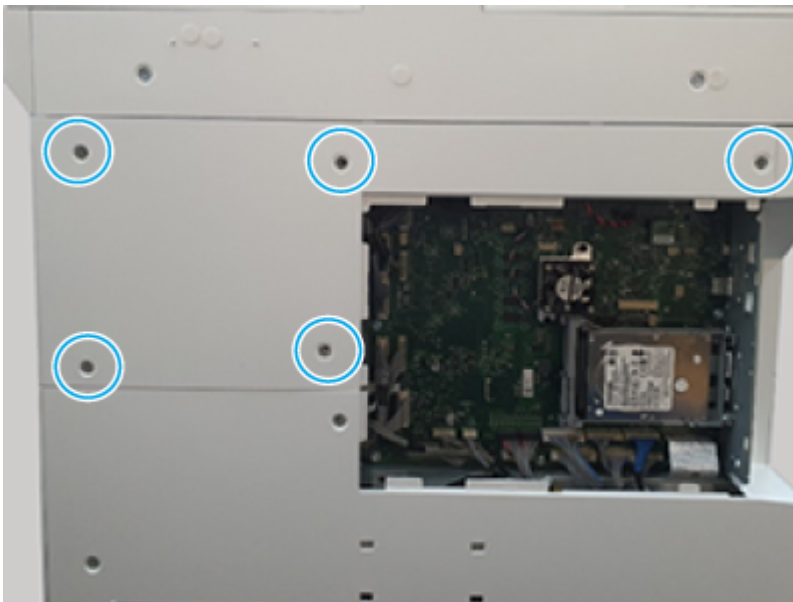
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-745 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-746 Remove the cover



3. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove six screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-747 Remove the cover

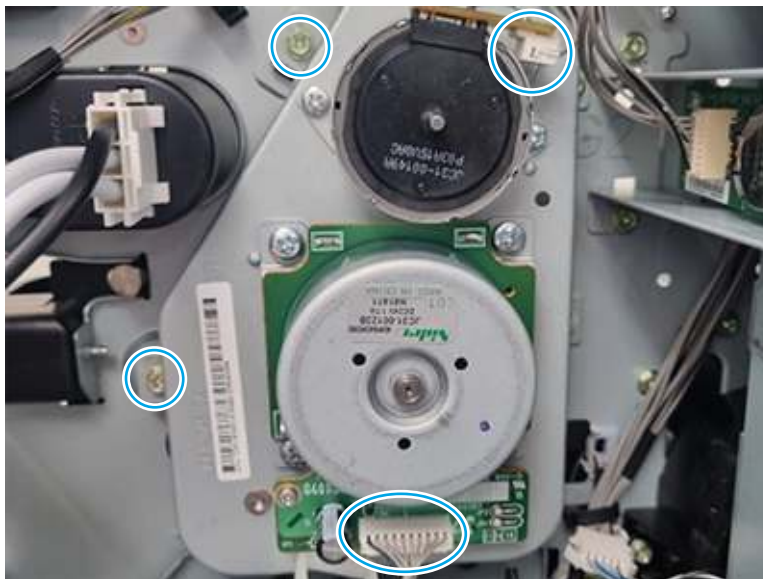


4. Remove the fuser and exit drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the fuser and exit drive assembly.

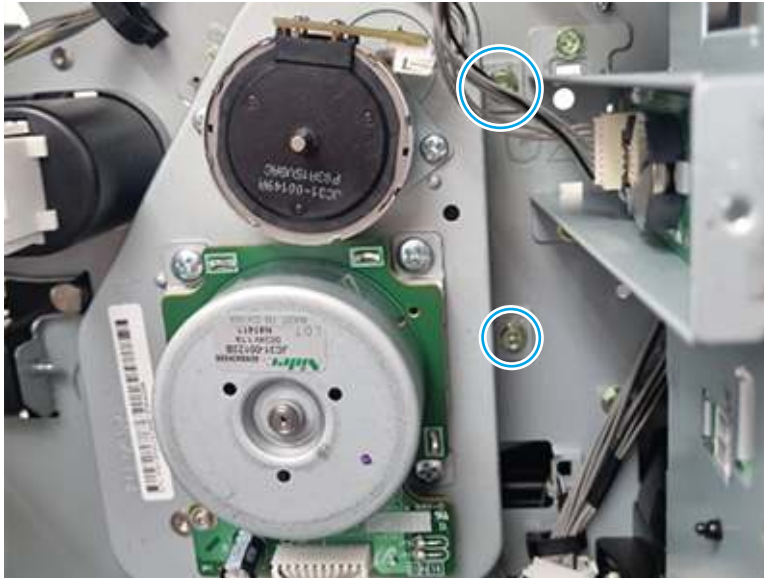
1. Disconnect two connectors, and remove two screws.

Figure 6-748 Disconnect two connectors and remove two screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the fuser and exit drive assembly.

Figure 6-749 Remove the assembly



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Fuser motor

Learn about removing and replacing the fuser motor.



[View a video of removing and replacing the fuser motor.](#)

Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-89 Part Information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00123B	Fuser motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

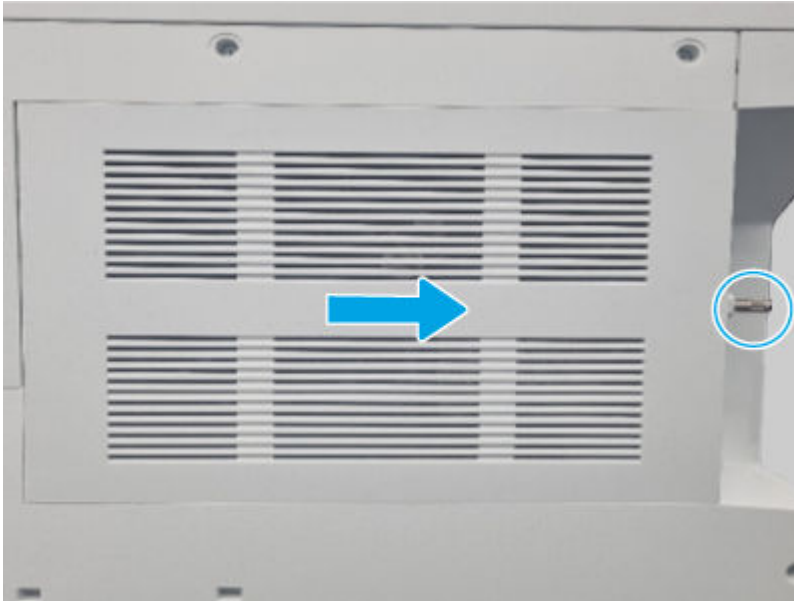
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-750 Remove the cover



2. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

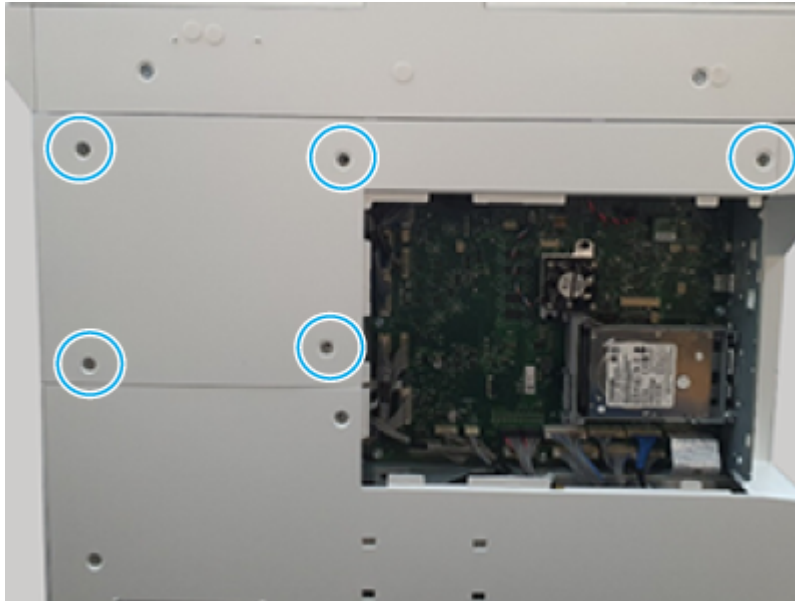
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-751 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-752 Remove the cover



3. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove six screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-753 Remove the cover

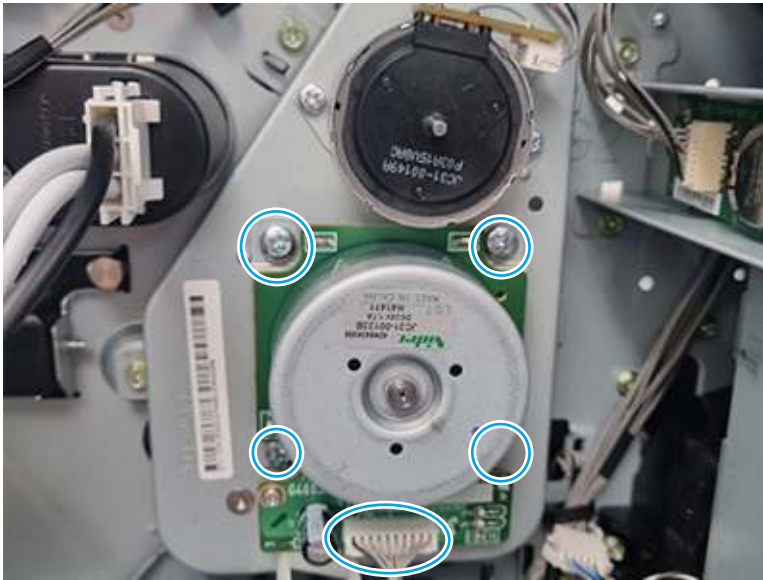


4. Remove the fuser motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the fuser motor.

- Disconnect one connector, remove four screws, and then remove the fuser motor.

Figure 6-754 Remove the motor



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Exit motor

Learn about removing and replacing the exit motor.



[View a video of removing and replacing the exit motor.](#)

Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-90 Part Information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01686A	Exit motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

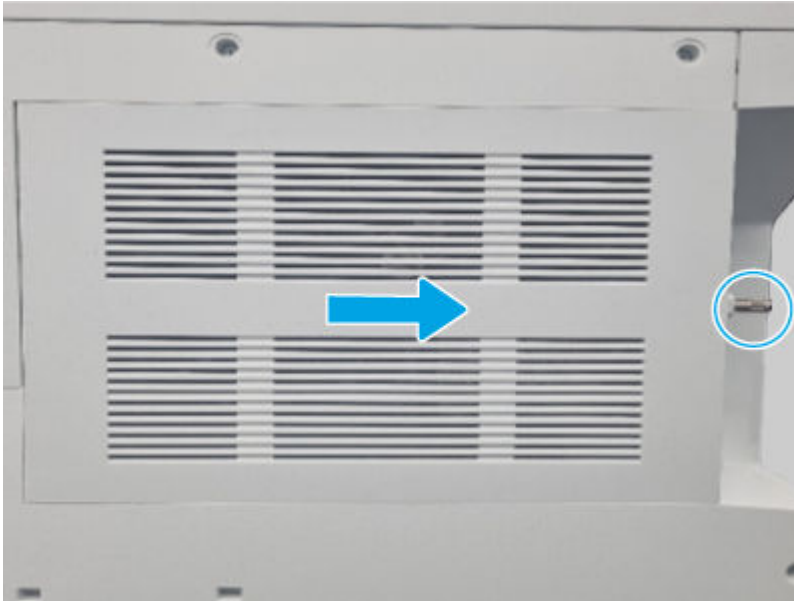
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-755 Remove the cover



2. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

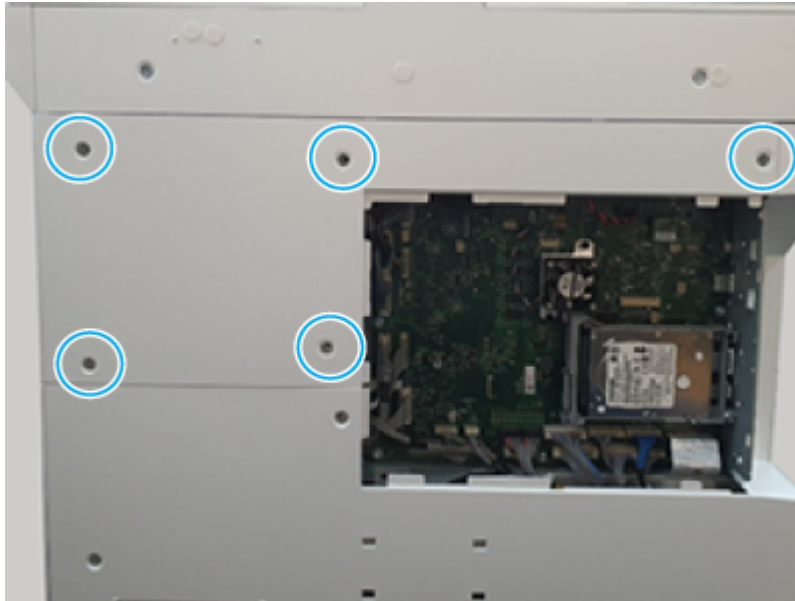
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-756 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-757 Remove the cover



3. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove six screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-758 Remove the cover

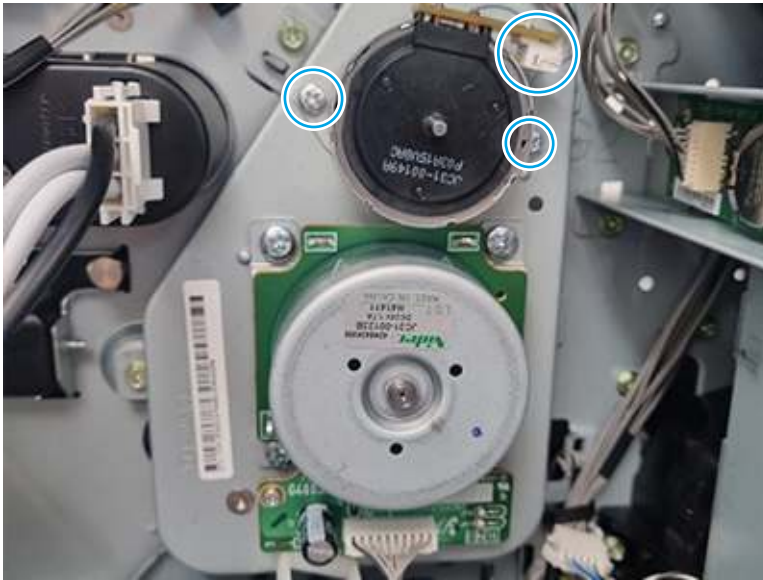


4. Remove the exit motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the exit motor.

- Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the exit motor.

Figure 6-759 Remove the motor



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Environmental sensor, switch, and fan

Learn about environmental sensor, switch, and fan parts removal and replacement.

Base sensor, switch, and fan

Review the base sensor, switch, and fan removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Outer temperature humidity sensor assembly, sensor and holder

Learn about removing and replacing the outer temperature humidity sensor assembly, sensor, and holder.

Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-91 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ90-40002	Outer temperature humidity sensor assembly
JC32-00015A	Outer temperature humidity sensor
JC61-08680A	Outer temperature humidity sensor holder

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right front cover.

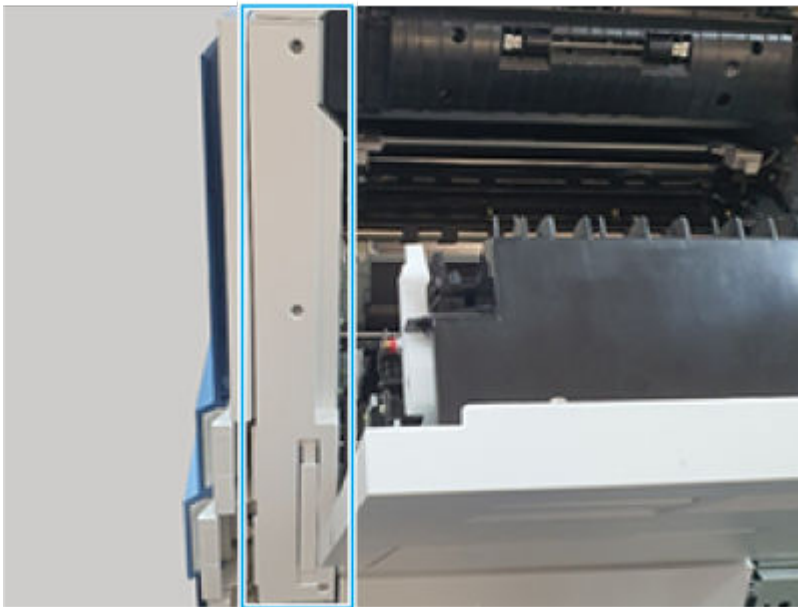
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-760 Remove three screws



2. Open the right door, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-761 Remove the cover

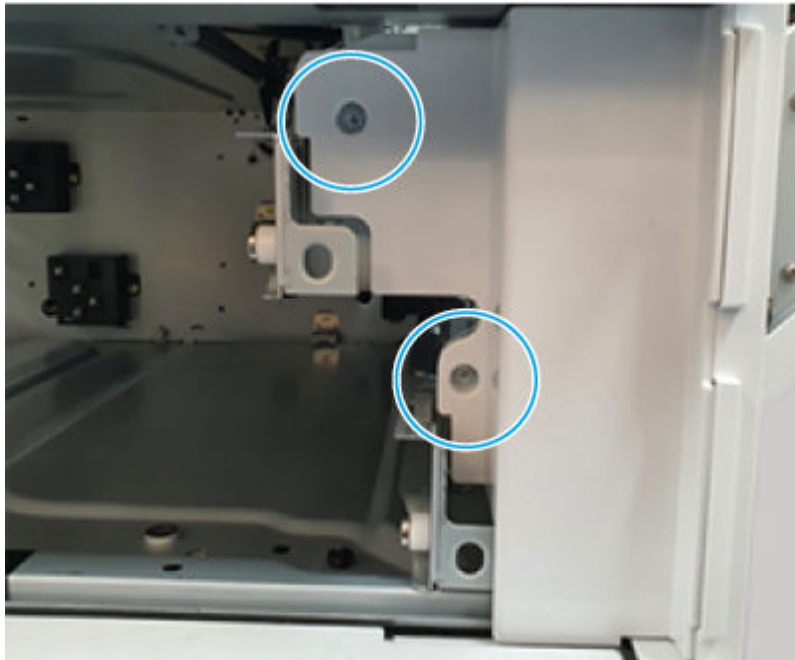


2. Remove the front lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the front lower cover.

1. If Tray 2 and Tray 3 are installed, remove them now.
2. Remove two screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-762 Remove the cover



3. Remove the right rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right rear cover.

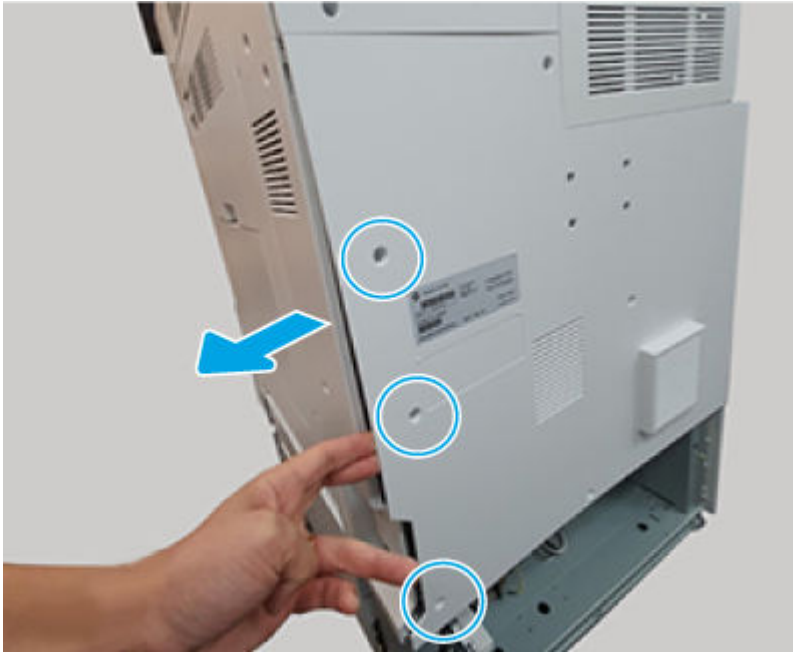
1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-763 Remove three screws



2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove three rear lower cover screws.
 - b. Slightly separate the rear lower cover from the printer.
 - c. Open the right door, and then remove the right rear cover.

Figure 6-764 Remove the cover



4. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

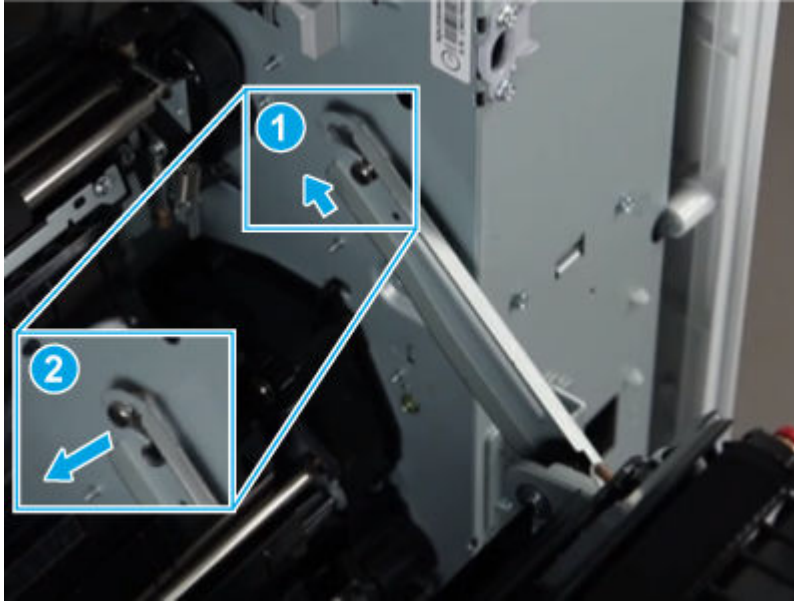
Figure 6-765 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

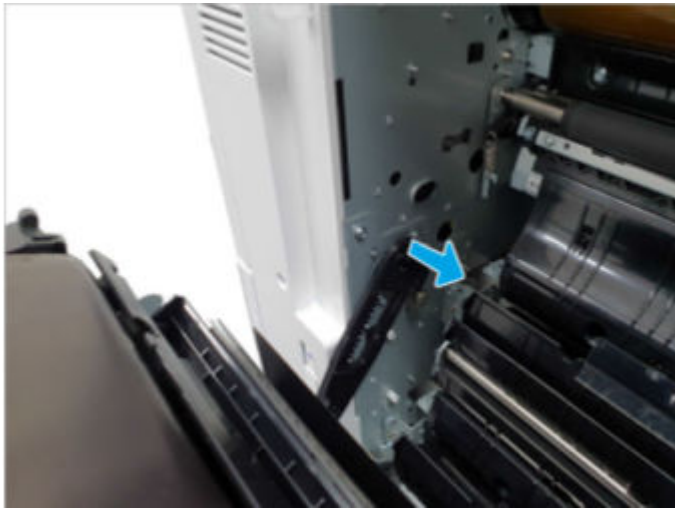
⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-766 Release the hinge



3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-767 Release the link



4. Remove the right door assembly.

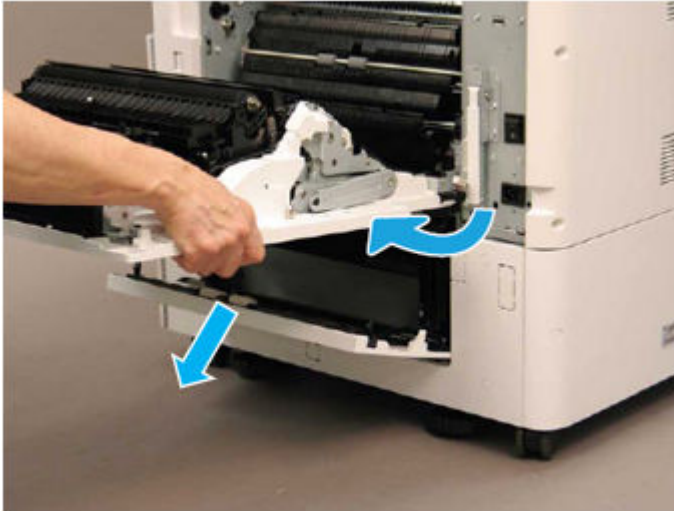
📝 NOTE: If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.

2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-768 Remove the door



5. Remove the outer temperature humidity sensor assembly, sensor, and holder

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the outer temperature humidity sensor assembly, sensor, and holder.

1. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-769 Disconnect one connector



2. Release two hooks at the back of the sensor assembly, and then remove the outer temperature humidity sensor assembly.


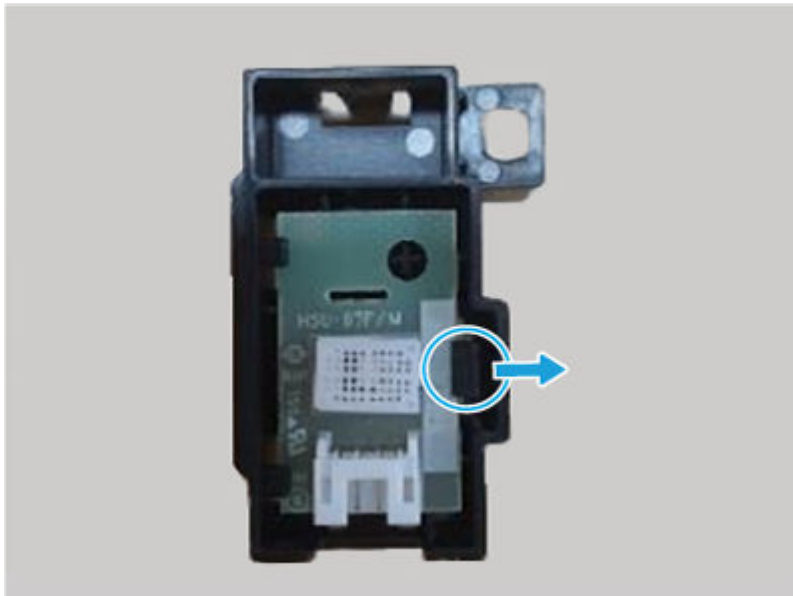
 **NOTE:** The view below is showing the back of the sensor assembly.

Figure 6-770 Remove the sensor assembly



3. **Optional step:** Release one hook, and then separate the sensor from the holder to remove it.

Figure 6-771 Remove the sensor from the holder



6. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: LVPS FDB fan assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the low-voltage power supply / fuser drive board (LVPS / FDB) fan.


Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-92 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01786A	LVPS / FDB fan assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

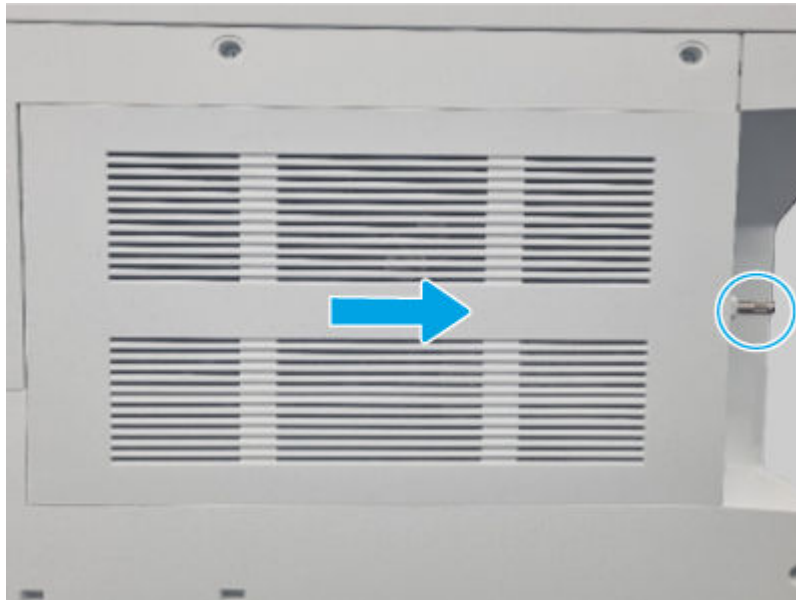
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-772 Remove the cover



2. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

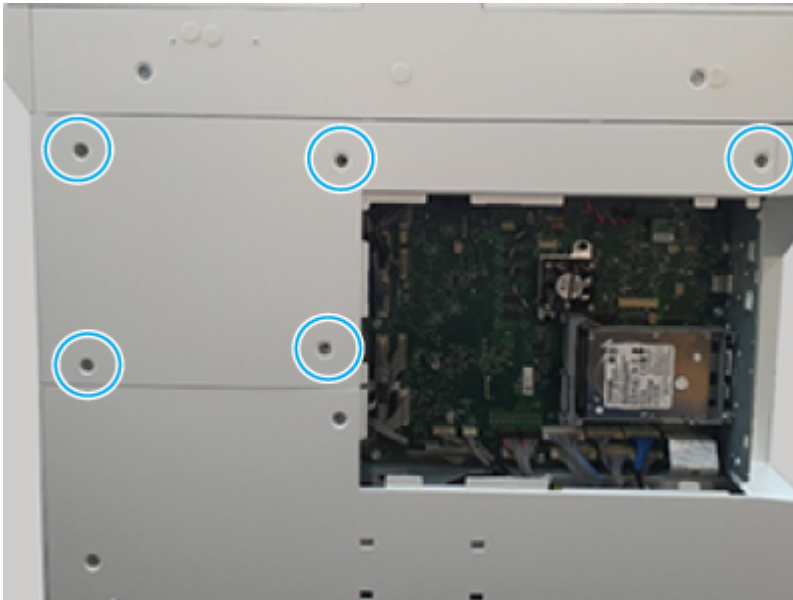
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-773 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-774 Remove the cover



3. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove six screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-775 Remove the cover

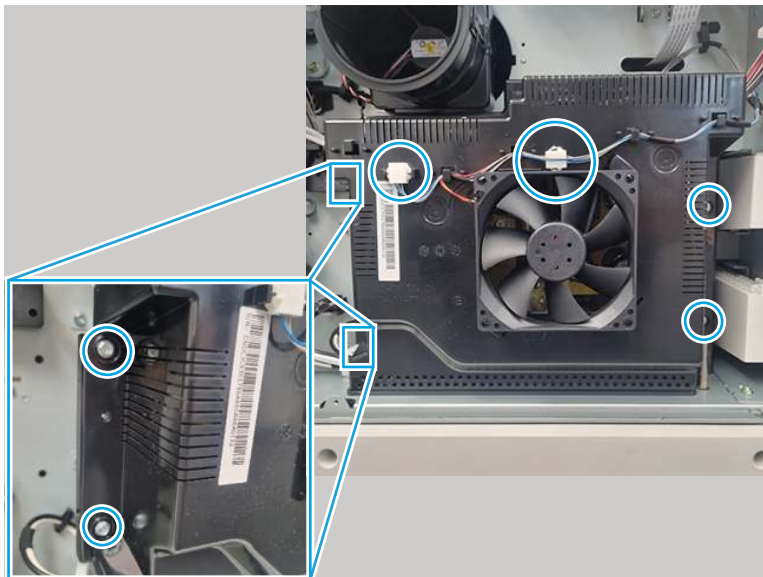


4. Remove the LVPS FDB fan assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the LVPS / FDB fan.

- Disconnect two connectors, remove four screws, and then remove the fan assembly.

Figure 6-776 Remove the fan assembly



5. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Developer fan assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the developer fan assembly.


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-93 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ98-40052	Developer fan assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

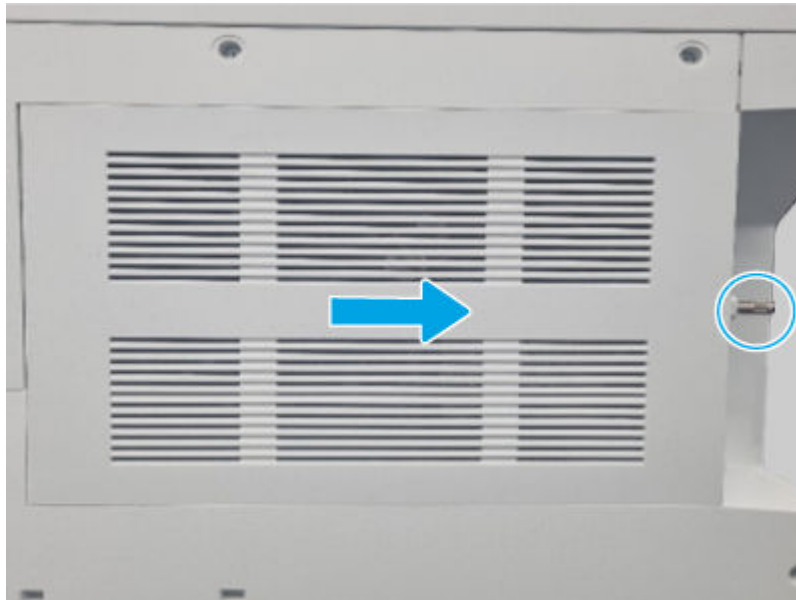
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-777 Remove the cover



2. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

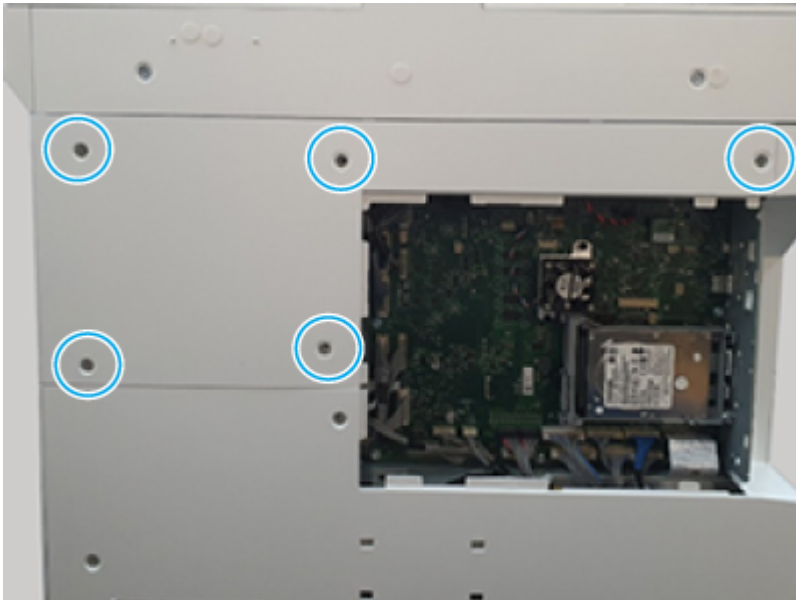
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-778 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-779 Remove the cover



3. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove six screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-780 Remove the cover

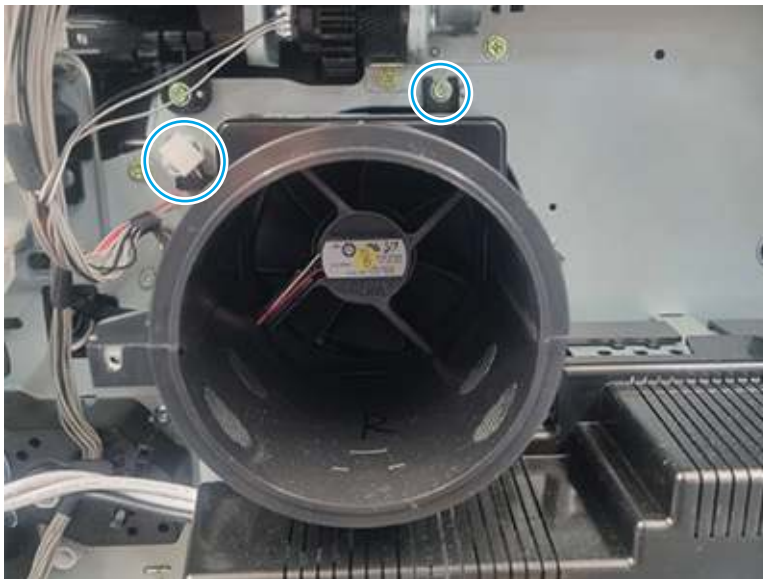


4. Remove the developer fan assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the developer fan assembly.

- Remove one screw and disconnect one connector. Then remove the developer fan assembly.


Figure 6-781 Remove the assembly



5. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Right door fan

Learn about removing and replacing the right door fan.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-94 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00160C	Right door fan

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right rear cover.

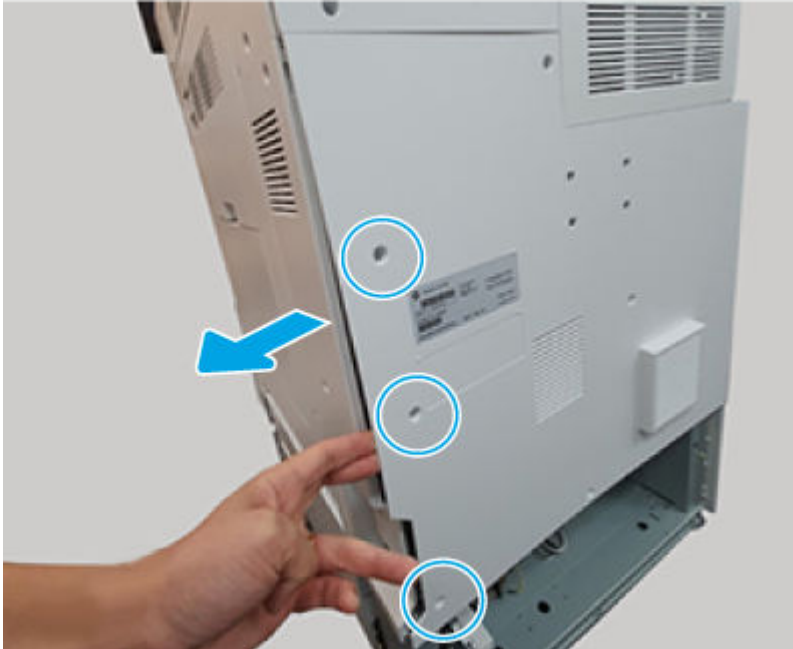
1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-782 Remove three screws



2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove three rear lower cover screws.
 - b. Slightly separate the rear lower cover from the printer.
 - c. Open the right door, and then remove the right rear cover.

Figure 6-783 Remove the cover



2. Remove the right door assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door.

1. Open the right door, and then disconnect one connector.

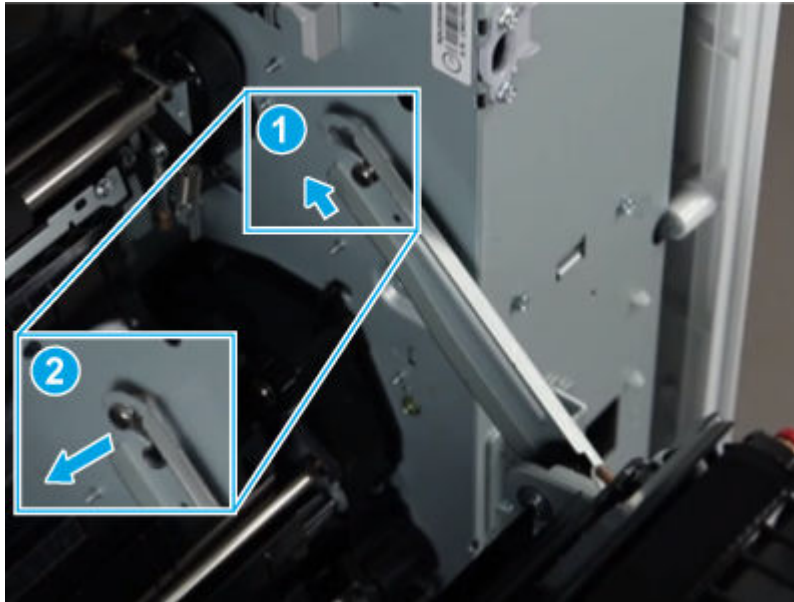
Figure 6-784 Disconnect one connector



2. Release the hinge.

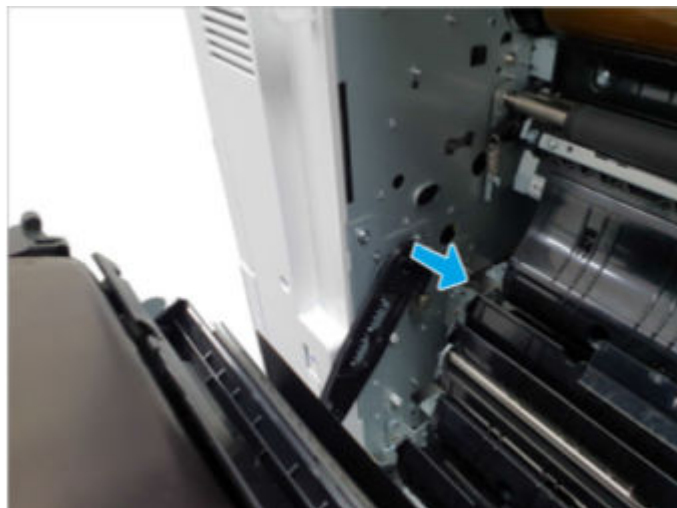
⚠ CAUTION: The right door hinge is under tension and can be dangerous. To avoid personal injury, be very careful when releasing the hinge.

Figure 6-785 Release the hinge




3. Release the right door front link.

Figure 6-786 Release the link



4. Remove the right door assembly.

 **NOTE:** If a 2x520 DCF or HCI accessory is installed, do the following:

1. Open the lower access door.
2. Open the right door to almost 90 degrees, and then rotate it clockwise to remove it.


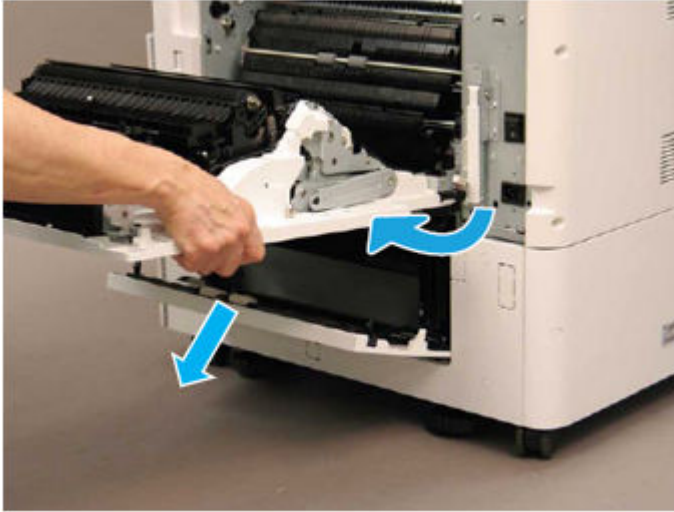
 **CAUTION:** To avoid damage to the door, **do not** lower it past 90 degrees when attempting to remove it.

Figure 6-787 Remove the door

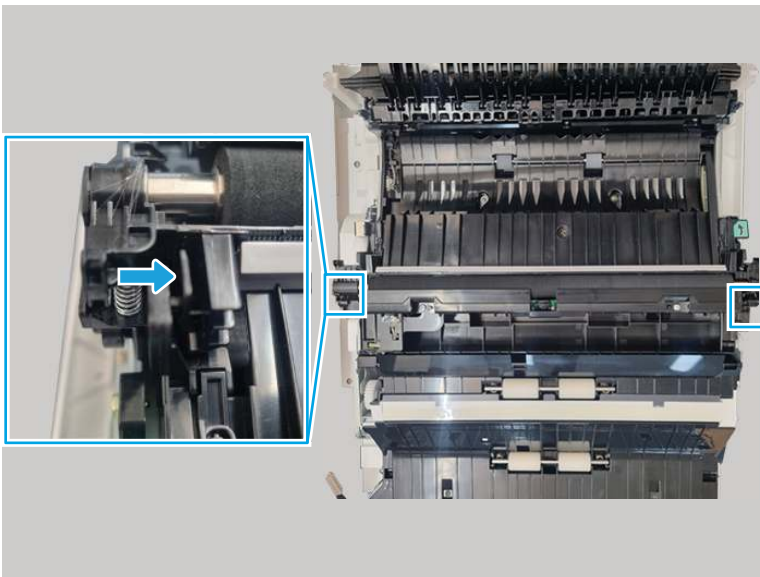


3. Remove the secondary transfer (T2) unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the T2 unit.

1. Lift up the T2 transfer assembly while pushing in the hooks at both ends of the assembly to release it.

Figure 6-788 Release the T2 assembly



2. Disconnect one connector on the back side of the T2 unit, and then remove the unit.



4. Remove the duplex assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the duplex assembly.

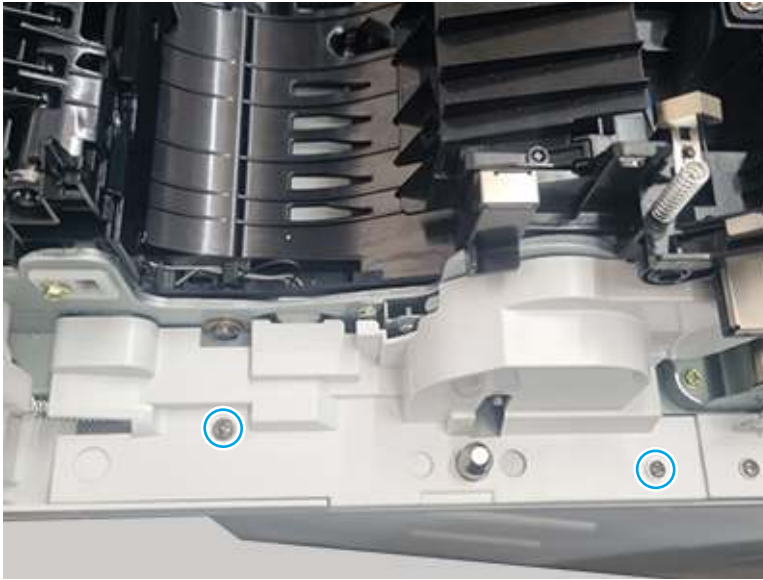
1. Remove one screw, and then remove the holder.

Figure 6-789 Remove one screw



2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-790 Remove two screws



3. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the duplex assembly.

Figure 6-791 Disconnect one connector

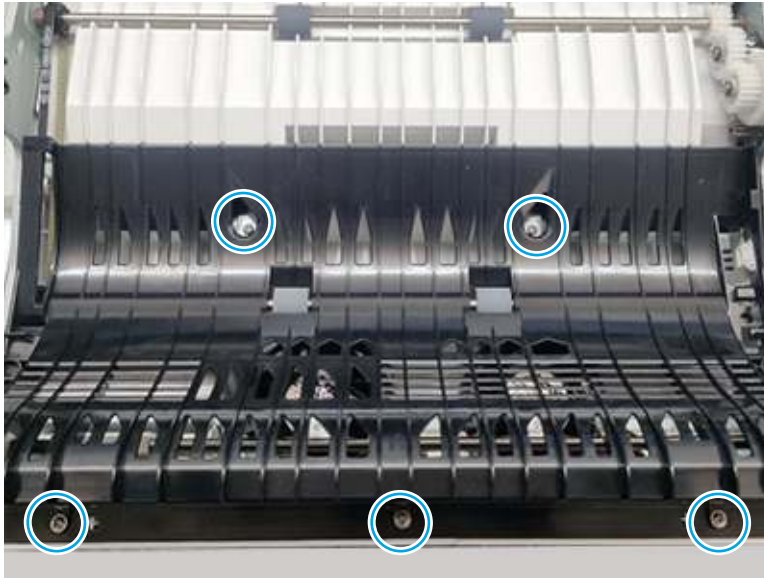


5. Remove the right door fan

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door fan.

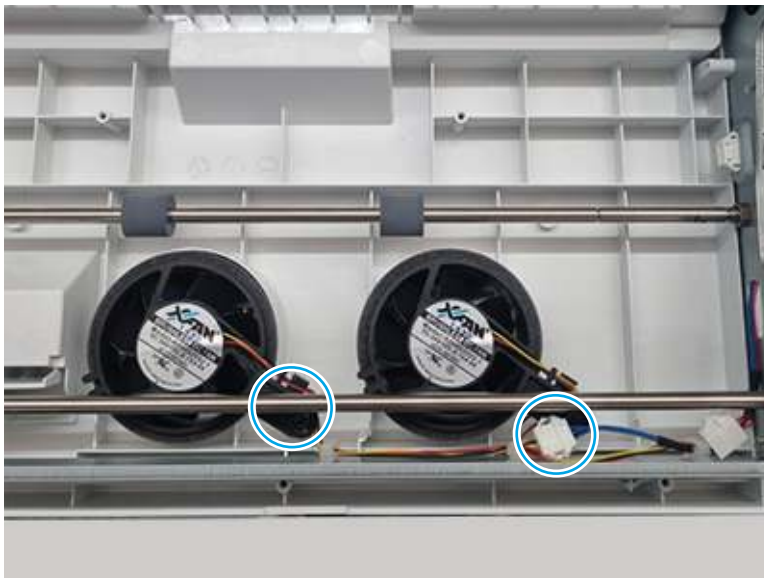
1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-792 Remove five screws



2. Remove one screw, unplug one connector, and then remove the right door fan.

Figure 6-793 Remove the fan



6. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: LSU fan

Learn about removing and replacing the laser scanner unit (LSU) fan.


Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-95 Part information

Part number	Part description
8GR90-40008	LSU fan

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the left top over

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left top cover.

- Use a pair of tweezers to carefully release the cover, and then pull straight out to remove the cover.


 **Reinstallation tip:** Position the cover on the printer, and then gently push it straight in to install it.

Figure 6-794 Remove the cover



2. Remove the left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the left cover.

1. Open the front cover (door) and all installed trays.

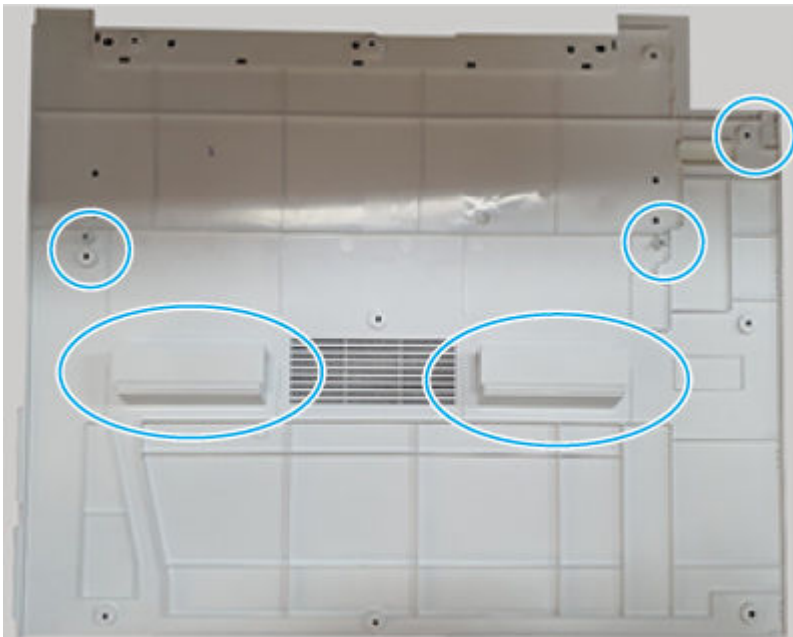
2. Remove ten screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-795 Remove ten screws



3. Before proceeding, take note of the location of the mounting hooks on the inside of the cover.

Figure 6-796 Cover hook locations



4. Release the cover from the right to left side as shown below. Remove the cover.

Figure 6-797 Remove the cover

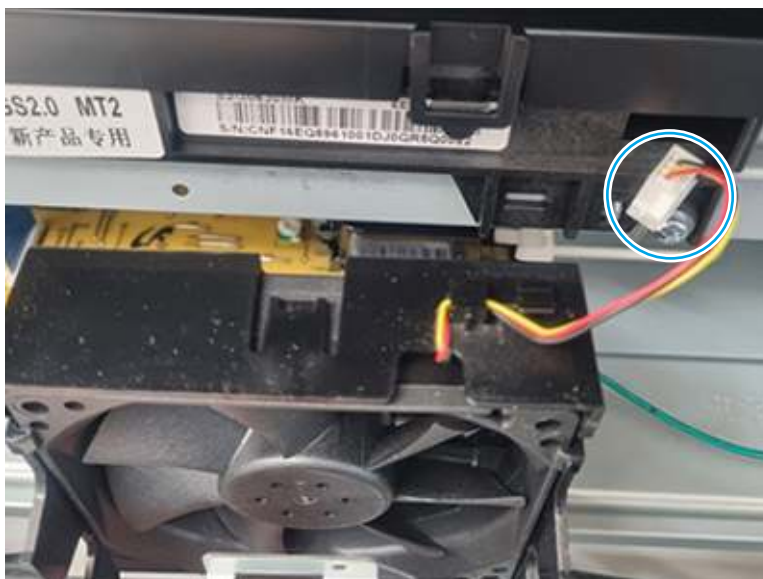


3. Remove the LSU fan

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the LSU fan.

1. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-798 Disconnect one connector



2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-799 Remove two screws



3. Remove two screws, and then remove the LSU fan.


Figure 6-800 Remove the fan



4. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Front door switch assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the front door switch.


 [View a video of removing and replacing the front door switch.](#)

Mean time to repair: 8 minutes


Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

 **NOTE:** This procedure requires removing the toner cartridges using the control panel method. Do this prior to turning the power off. For more information, see *Remove the toner cartridges (control panel method)* in this topic.

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-96 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-00466A	Front door open switch

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the toner cartridge (control panel method)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the toner cartridge.

- At the printer control panel, do the following:
 - a. Select the [Sign In](#) item (located at the upper left corner of the control panel).
 - b. Select the [Service Access Code](#) item, and then enter the access code for the printer.
 - 03073122
 - c. Select the [Supplies](#) item.
 - d. Open the front door.
 - e. Select the [Eject](#) button  (located at the bottom right corner of the control panel).

2. Remove the right middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right middle cover assembly.

1. Remove two screws from the middle left cover as shown.

Figure 6-801 Remove two screws



2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-802 Remove one screw



3. Open the right door and remove one screw.

Figure 6-803 Open the right door and remove screw



4. Lay the control panel down, and then slide the cover as shown below to separate it from the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the cover. It is still attached to the printer by a wire harness.

Figure 6-804 Slide the cover



5. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the right middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-805 Disconnect the connector

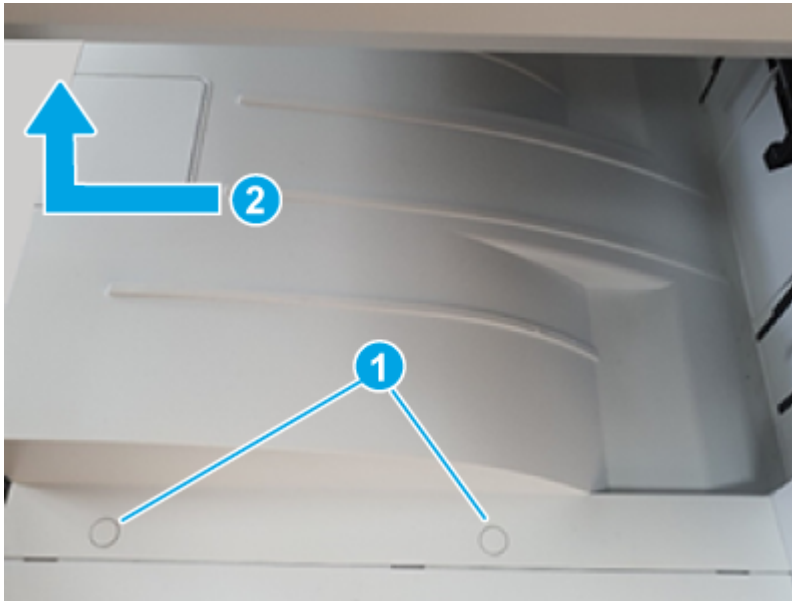


3. Remove the exit cover stacker

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the exit cover stacker.

- Remove two screw caps and remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the exit cover stacker (callout 2).

Figure 6-806 Remove the cover



4. Remove the front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the front cover.

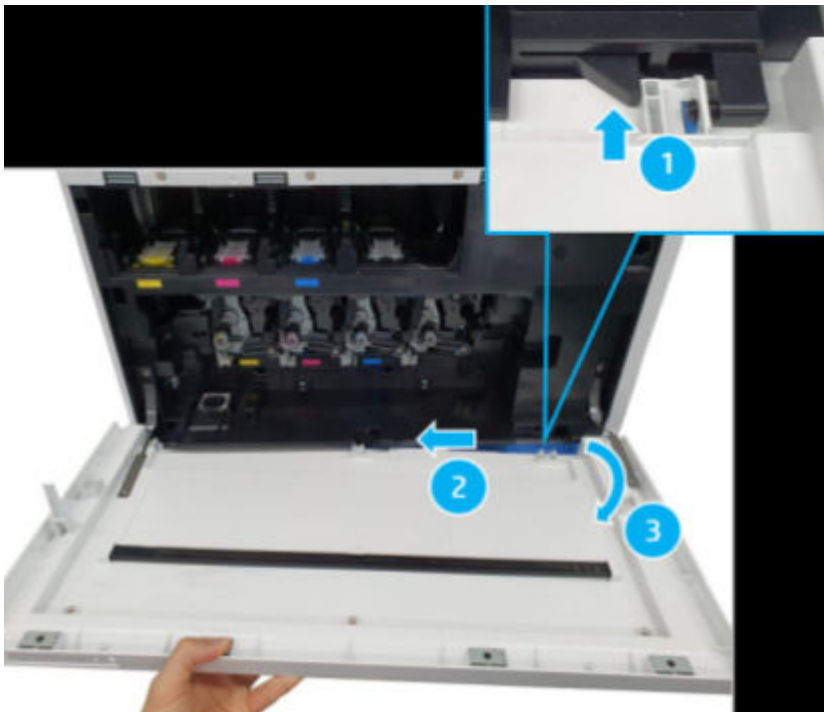
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-807 Remove two screws



2. Push in on the hook located at the right side of the cover (callout 1), and then remove the cover (callouts 2/3).

Figure 6-808 Remove the cover



5. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the TCU.

- Open the front door assembly. Push on each tab on the sides of the toner collection unit to release it, and then pull it straight out of the printer.

Figure 6-809 Remove the TCU

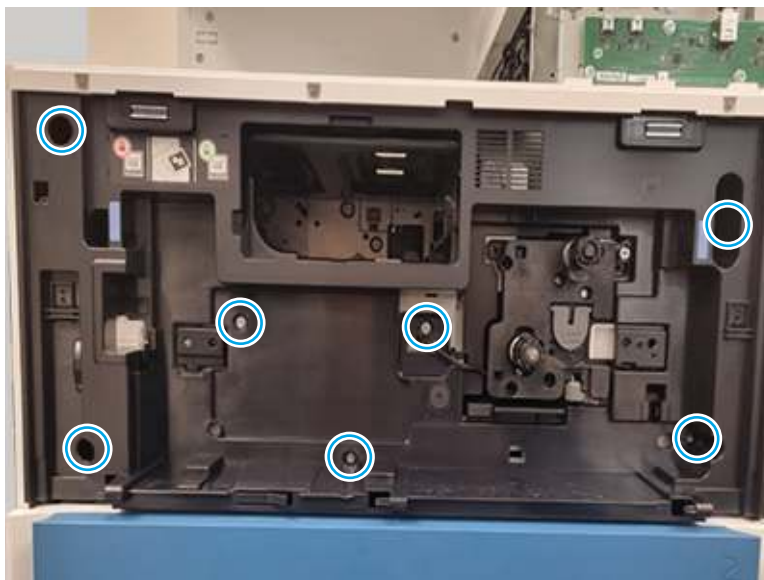


6. Remove the inner cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner cover.

1. Remove seven screws from the inner cover.


Figure 6-810 Remove seven screws



2. Remove the cover carefully, and disconnect the connector.

Figure 6-811 Disconnect the connector



 **NOTE:** Be careful not to damage the wire harness.

7. Remove the front door switch assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the front door switch assembly.

1. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-812 Remove one screw



2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the front door switch.

Figure 6-813 Remove the switch



8. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Right door switch assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the right door switch.

Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-97 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01467A	Switch (right door switch)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

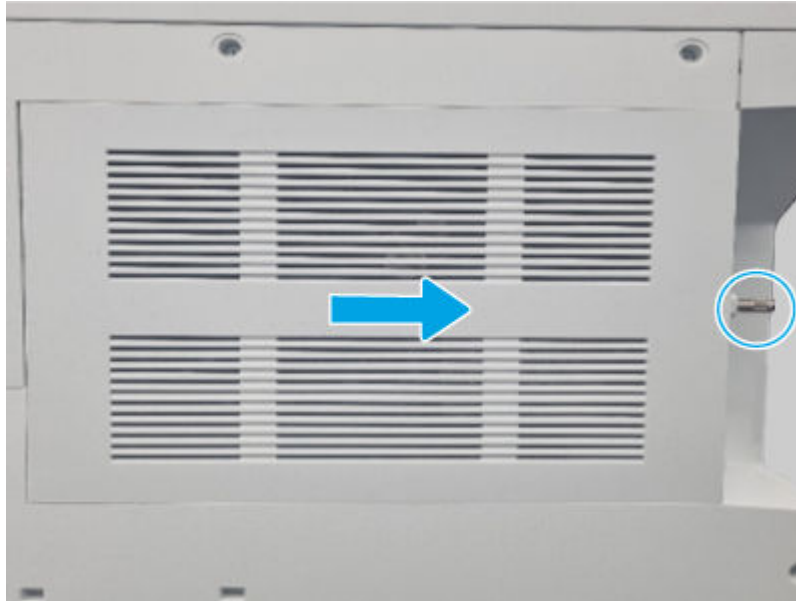
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-814 Remove the cover



2. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

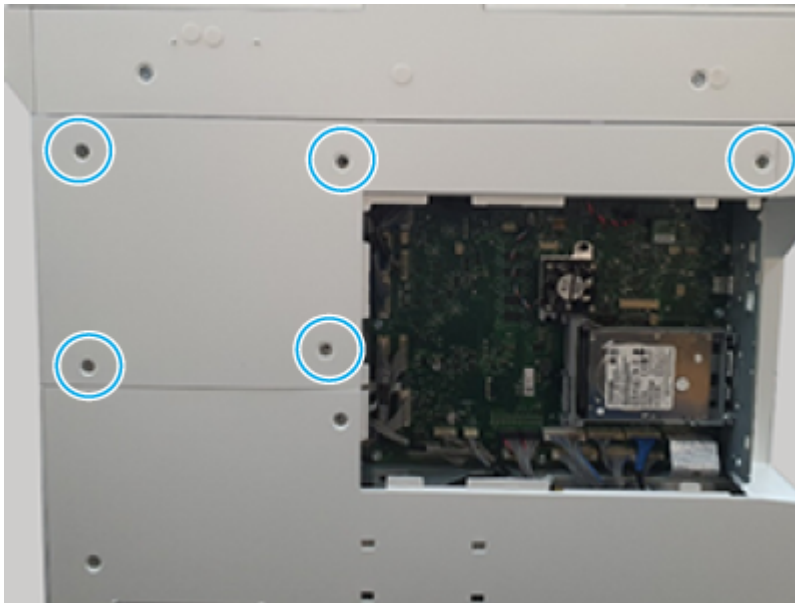
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-815 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-816 Remove the cover



3. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove six screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-817 Remove the cover



4. Remove the right door switch

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right door switch.

- Open the right door, disconnect one connector, remove one screw, and then remove the right door switch.


 **NOTE:** Release the wire harness from the retainer.


Figure 6-818 Remove the switch



5. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Control panel

Learn about control panel parts removal and replacement.

Base control panel

Review the base control panel removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Control panel

Learn about removing and replacing the control panel.

Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-98 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK42-60101	Control-panel assembly 25.6 cm (10.1 in)
3SJ15-60101	Control-panel assembly 20.3 cm (8 in)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the middle upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the middle upper cover.

- Do the following:
 - Rotate the control panel into the upright position (callout 1).
 - Use a pair of tweezers to release the cover (callout 2), and then remove the cover (callout 3).


 **Reinstallation tip:** Position the cover on the printer, and then gently push it straight in to install it.

Figure 6-819 Remove the cover



2. Remove the control panel

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the control panel.

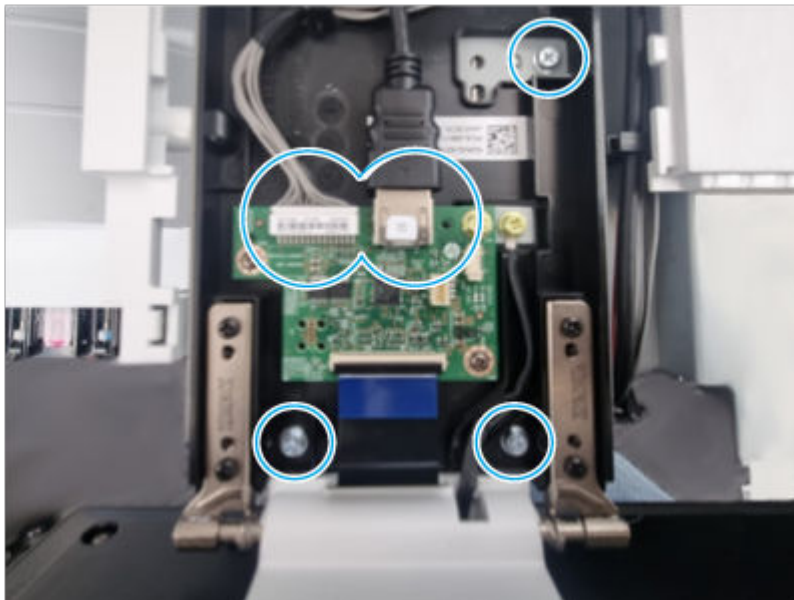
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-820 Remove one screw



2. Disconnect two connectors, remove three screws, and then remove the control panel.

Figure 6-821 Remove the control panel



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

PCAs

Learn about printed circuit assembly (PCA) parts removal and replacement.

Main PCA

Learn about main printed circuit assembly (PCA) parts removal and replacement.

Removal and replacement: Formatter

Learn about removing and replacing the formatter.

 [View a video on how to remove the formatter](#)


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-99 Part information

Part number	Part description
6CF14-67004	Formatter

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

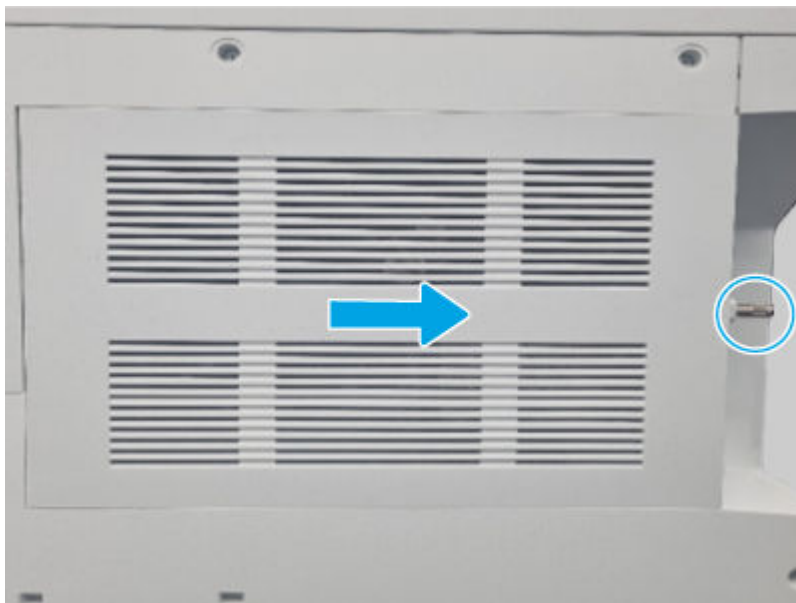
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-822 Remove the cover



2 Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

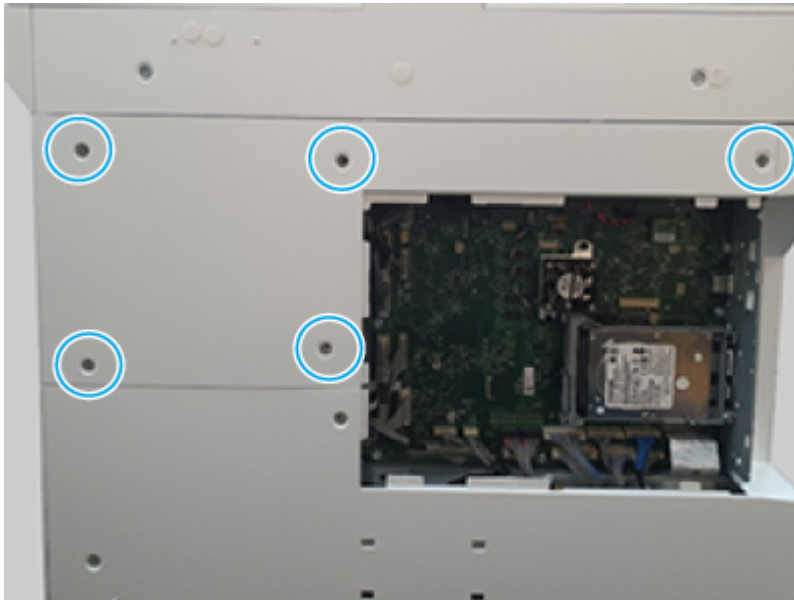
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-823 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-824 Remove the cover



3 Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove six screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-825 Remove the cover



4 Remove the rivet-HDD

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rivet-HDD.

- Locate the HDD rivets near the formatter interface ports, and then use a pair of tweezers to remove them.

Figure 6-826 Remove the rivets



5 Remove the hard disk

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HDD.

- Push in and lift up on the lever (callout 1) to release the hard disk, and then remove the hard drive and cradle together (callout 2).

Figure 6-827 Remove the HDD

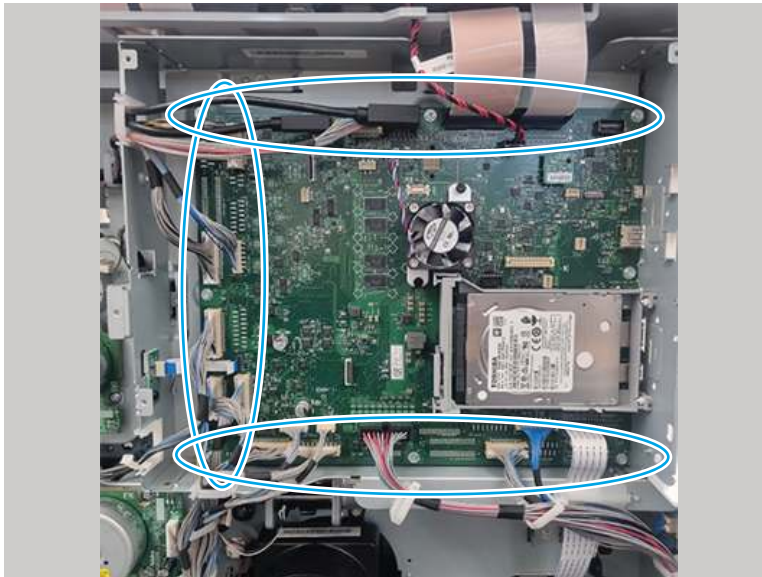


6 Remove the formatter

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the formatter.

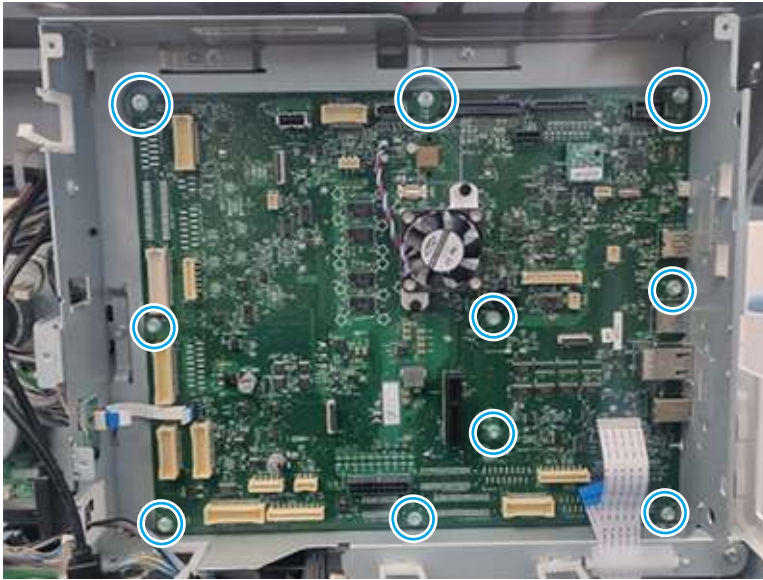
1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

Figure 6-828 Disconnect all connectors



2. Remove ten screws, and then remove the formatter.

Figure 6-829 Remove ten screws



3. **For replacement formatter installations:** The trusted platform module (TPM) is not a replaceable service part. Remove the TPM from the discarded formatter, and then install it on the replacement formatter.

Figure 6-830 Formatter TPM



7 **Unpack the replacement assembly**

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Riser card and cradle

Learn about removing and replacing the riser card and cradle.



[View a video of removing and replacing the riser card and cradle.](#)

Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-100 Part information

Part number	Part description
3SJ01-60001	Riser card-EPS2.0 Riser for HDD
4XN67-60001	Riser card-EPS Riser+USB

Table 6-100 Part information (continued)

Part number	Part description
3SJ02-60001	Riser card-EPS2.0 Riser for HDD+Internal USB Ports+Accelerator

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

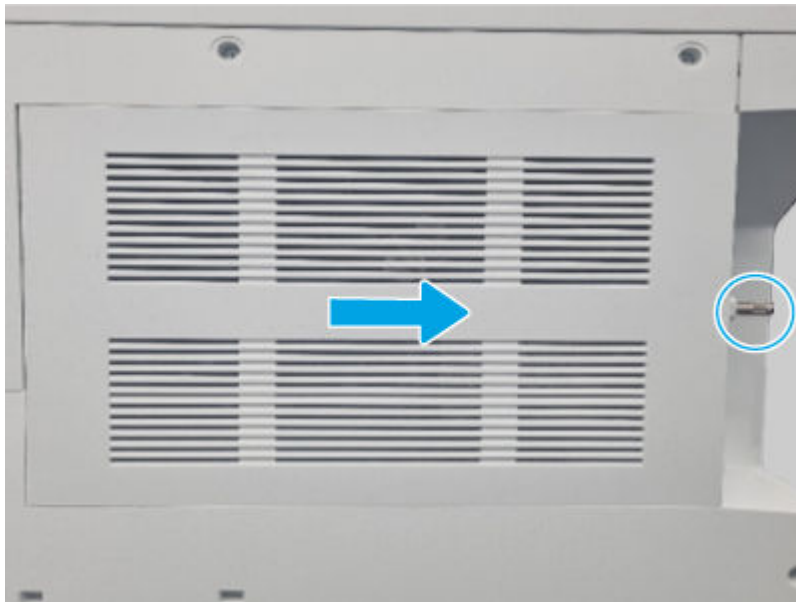
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-831 Remove the cover



2. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

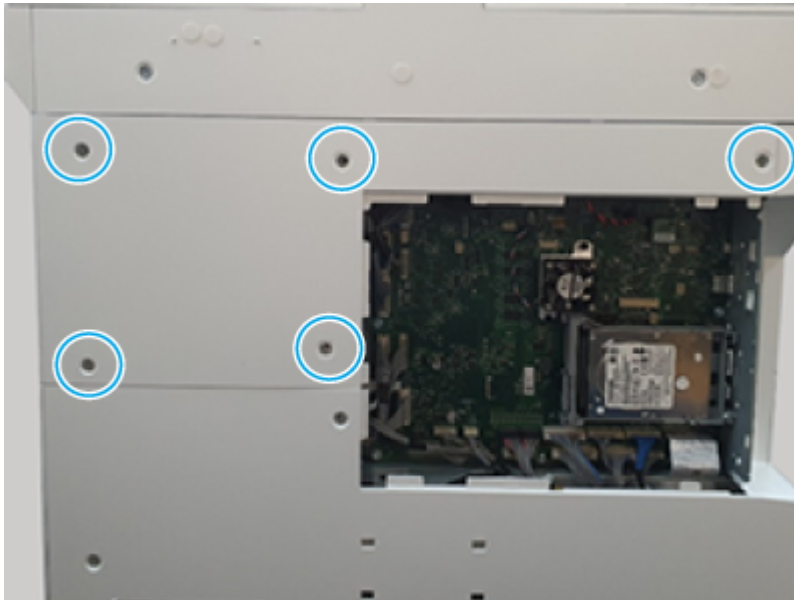
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-832 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-833 Remove the cover



3. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove six screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-834 Remove the cover



4. Remove the rivet-HDD

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rivet-HDD.

- Locate the HDD rivets near the formatter interface ports, and then use a pair of tweezers to remove them.

Figure 6-835 Remove the rivets



5. Remove the hard disk

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HDD.

- Push in and lift up on the lever (callout 1) to release the hard disk, and then remove the hard drive and cradle together (callout 2).

Figure 6-836 Remove the HDD

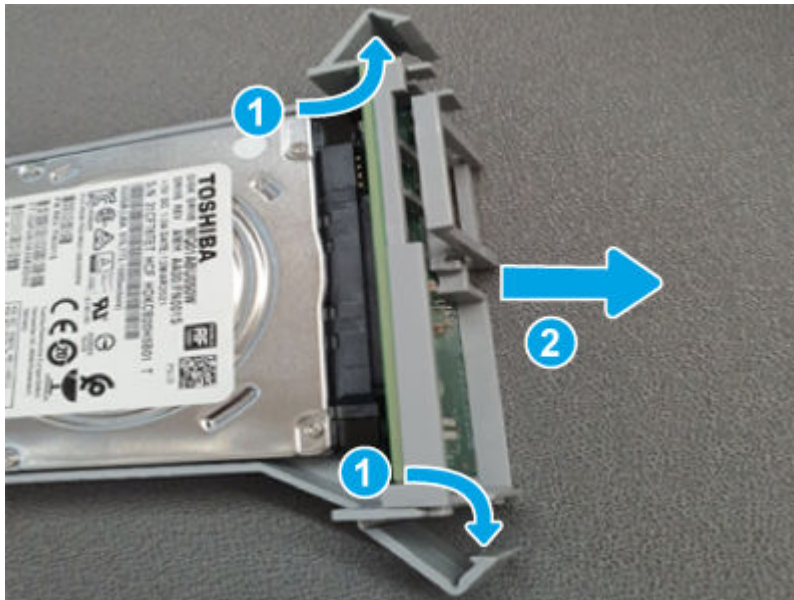


6. Remove the riser card and cradle

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the riser card and cradle.

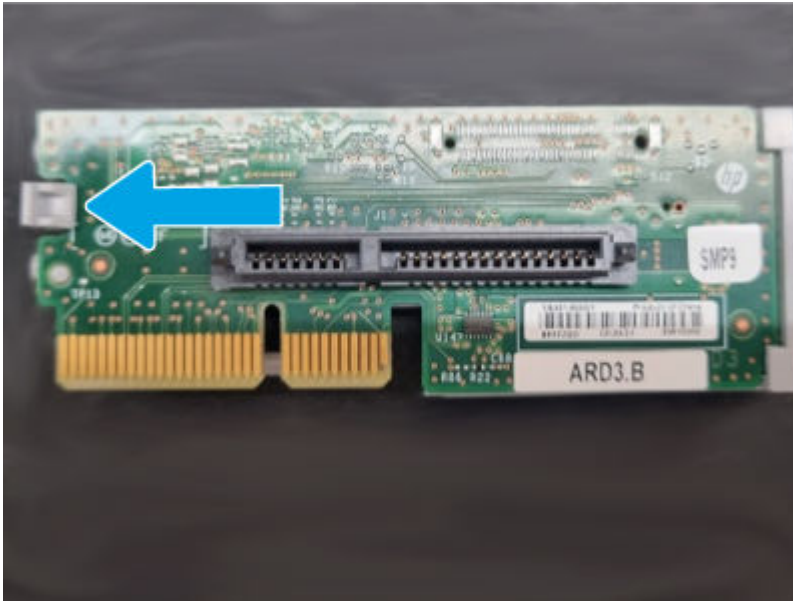
1. Release the clips on both ends of the cradle (callout 1), and then remove the riser card from the HDD callout 2).

Figure 6-837 Remove the riser card



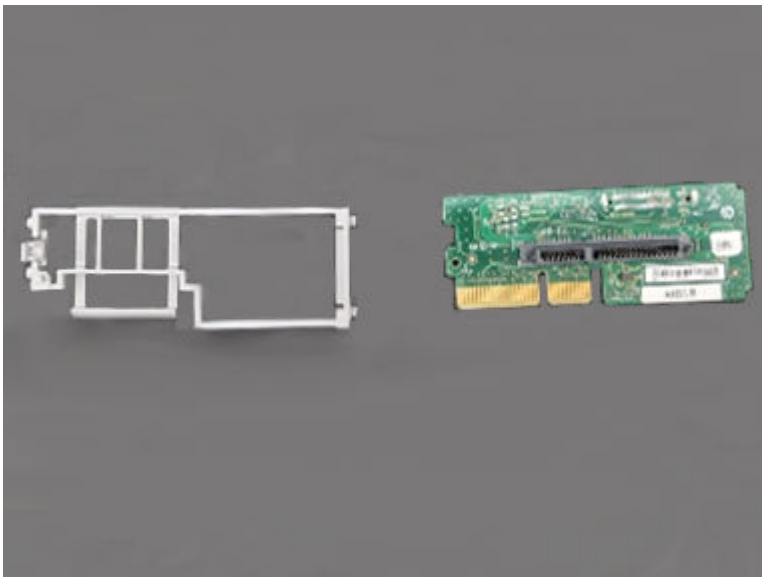
2. Release the hook.

Figure 6-838 Release the hook



3. Separate the riser card from the cradle.

Figure 6-839 Remove the riser card and cradle



7. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Rivet-HDD

Learn about removing and replacing the hard-disk drive rivet.


Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-101 Part information

Part number	Part description
6ER04-40035	Rivet-HDD

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the rivet-HDD

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rivet-HDD.

- Locate the HDD rivets near the formatter interface ports, and then use a pair of tweezers to remove them.

Figure 6-840 Remove the rivets



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.




CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Cradle

Learn about removing and replacing the hard disk cradle.


Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-102 Part Information

Part number	Part description
5851-7753	Cradle-HDD

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

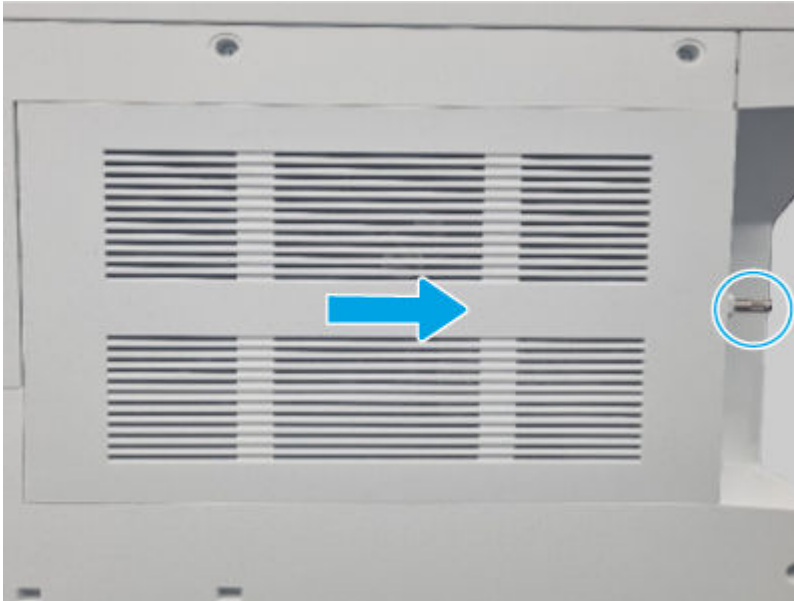
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-841 Remove the cover



2. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

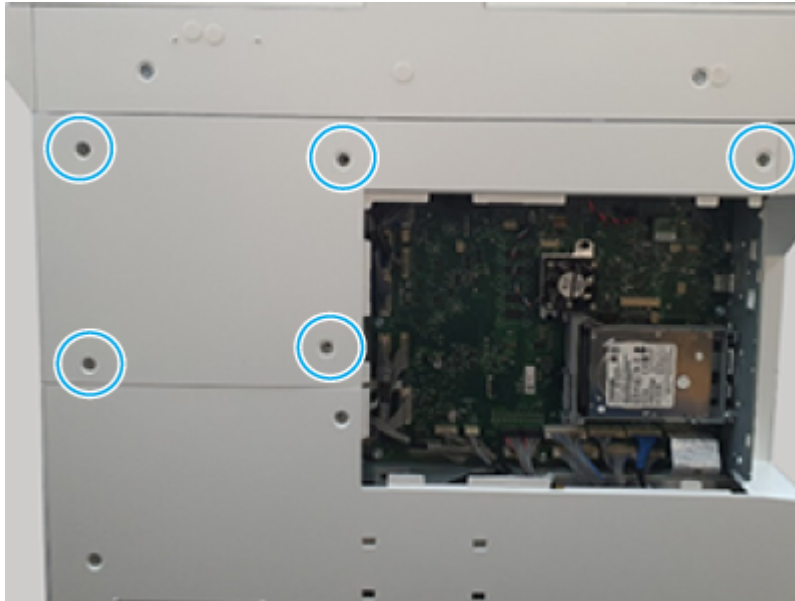
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-842 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-843 Remove the cover



3. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove six screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-844 Remove the cover



4. Remove the rivet-HDD

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rivet-HDD.

- Locate the HDD rivets near the formatter interface ports, and then use a pair of tweezers to remove them.

Figure 6-845 Remove the rivets



5. Remove the hard disk

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HDD.

- Push in and lift up on the lever (callout 1) to release the hard disk, and then remove the hard drive and cradle together (callout 2).

Figure 6-846 Remove the HDD

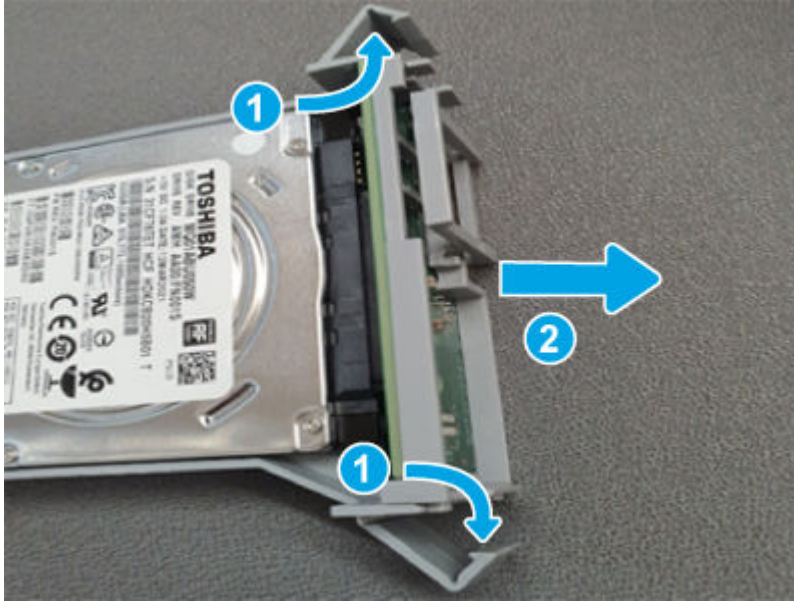


6. Remove the hard disk from the cradle

Use the following procedure to remove the HDD from the cradle.

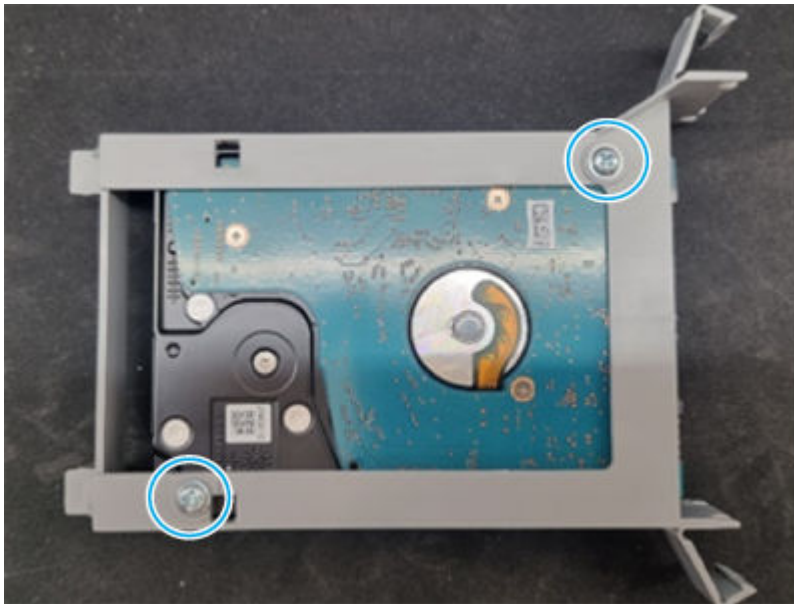
1. Release the clips on both ends of the cradle (callout 1), and then remove the riser card from the HDD (callout 2).

Figure 6-847 Remove the riser card



2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-848 Remove two screws



3. Separate the HDD from the cradle.

Figure 6-849 Remove the cradle



7. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Riser card and cradle

Learn about removing and replacing the riser card and cradle.

Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-103 Part information

Part number	Part description
5851-7754	Cradle-Riser card

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

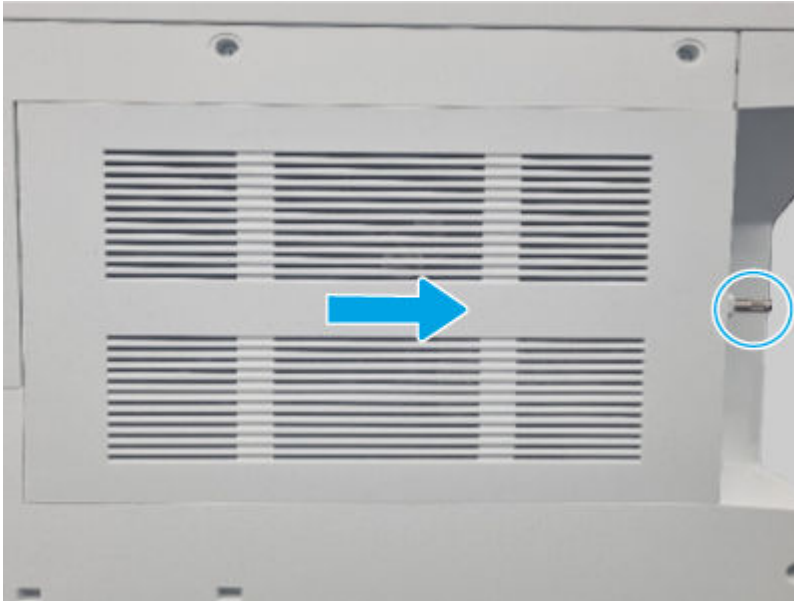
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-850 Remove the cover



2. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

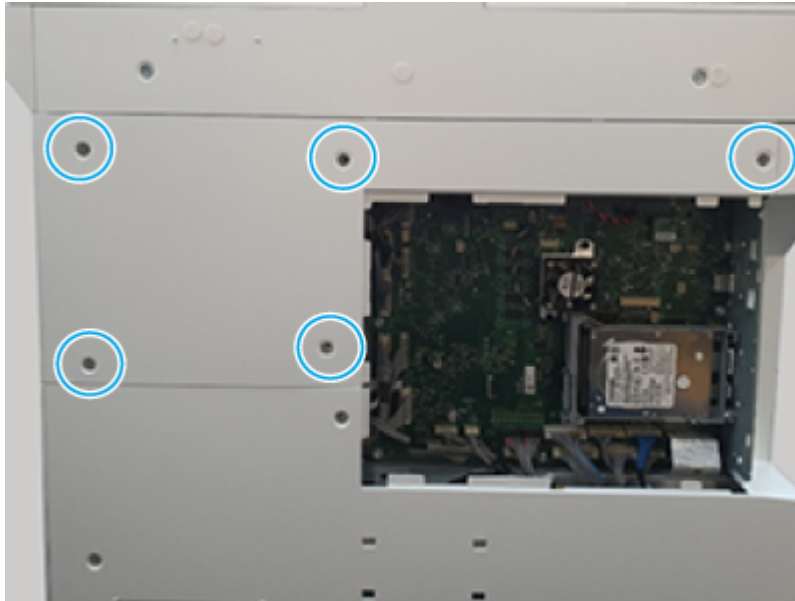
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-851 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-852 Remove the cover



3. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove six screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-853 Remove the cover



4. Remove the rivet-HDD

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rivet-HDD.

- Locate the HDD rivets near the formatter interface ports, and then use a pair of tweezers to remove them.

Figure 6-854 Remove the rivets

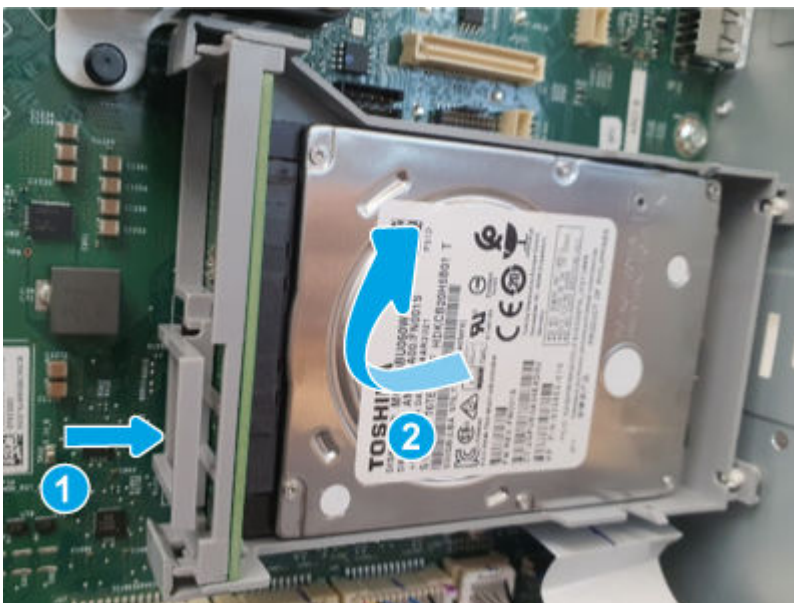


5. Remove the hard disk

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HDD.

- Push in and lift up on the lever (callout 1) to release the hard disk, and then remove the hard drive and cradle together (callout 2).

Figure 6-855 Remove the HDD

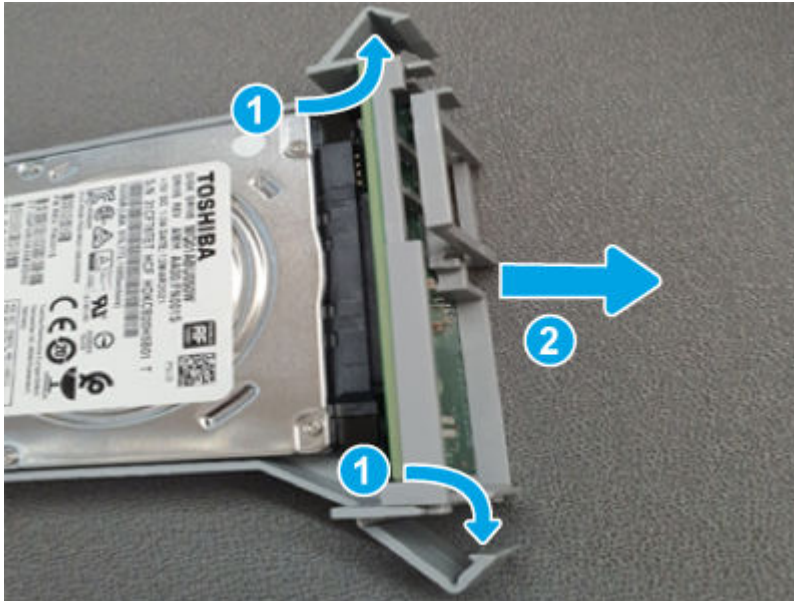


6. Remove the riser card and cradle

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the riser card and cradle.

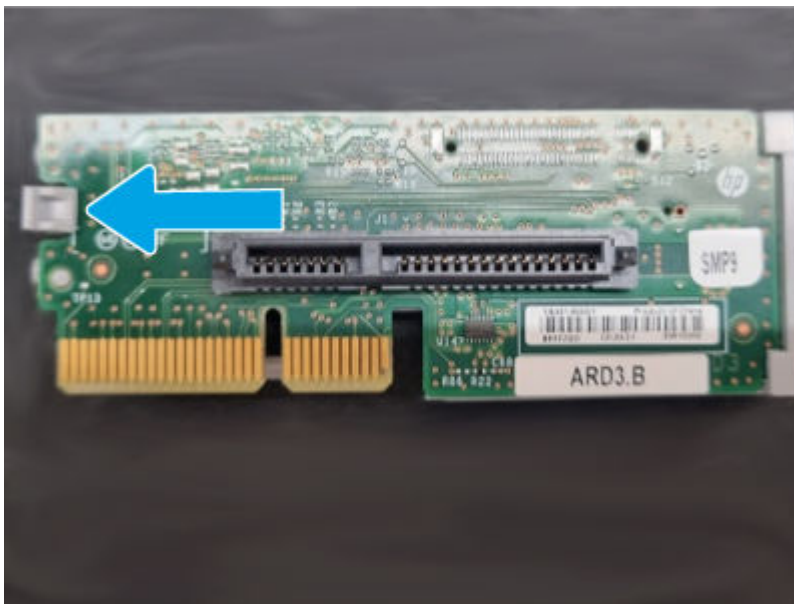
1. Release the clips on both ends of the cradle (callout 1), and then remove the riser card from the HDD callout 2).

Figure 6-856 Remove the riser card



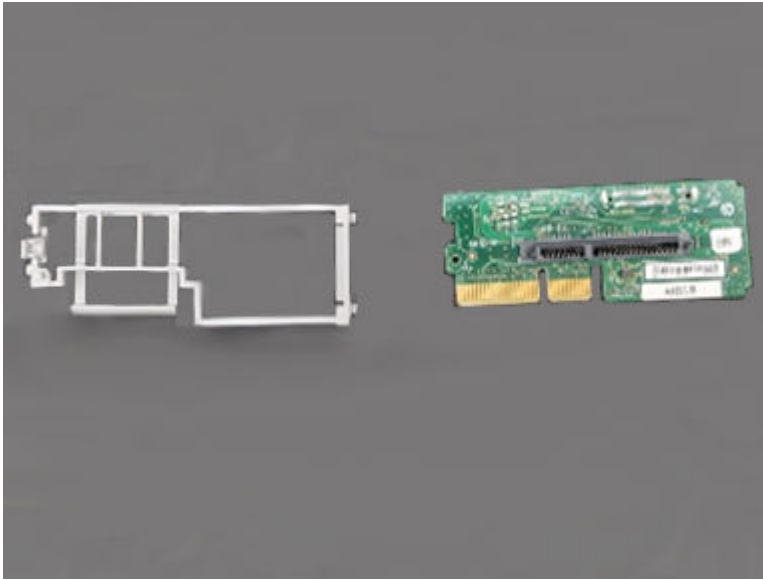
2. Release the hook.

Figure 6-857 Release the hook



3. Separate the riser card from the cradle.

Figure 6-858 Remove the riser card and cradle



7. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Hard disk 500GB

Learn about removing and replacing the hard disk.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-104 Part information

Part number	Part description
933853-010	HDD 500G SED

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

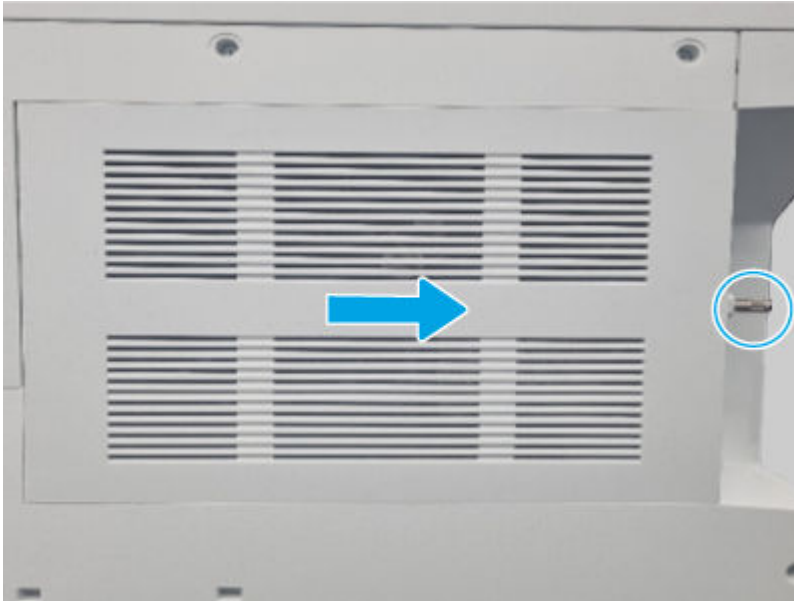
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-859 Remove the cover



2. Remove the rivet-HDD

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rivet-HDD.

- Locate the HDD rivets near the formatter interface ports, and then use a pair of tweezers to remove them.

Figure 6-860 Remove the rivets

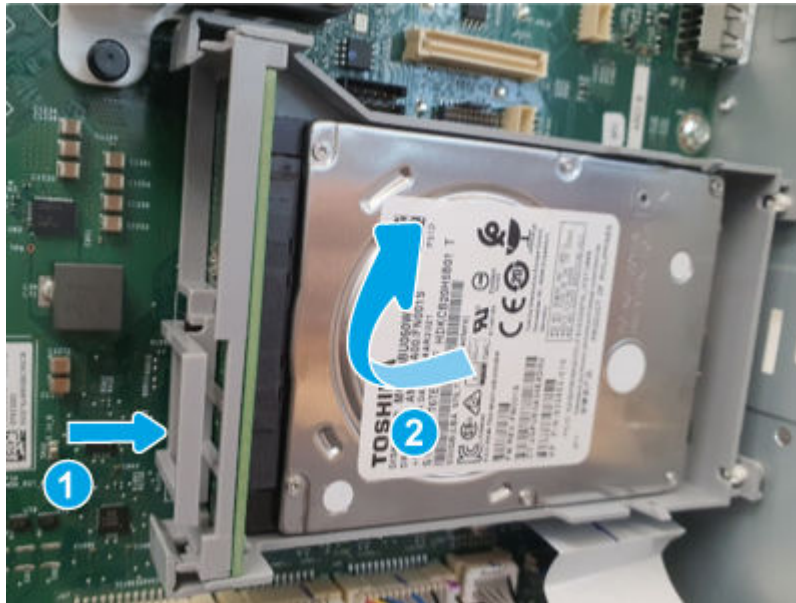


3. Remove the hard disk

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HDD.

- Push in and lift up on the lever (callout 1) to release the hard disk, and then remove the hard drive and cradle together (callout 2).

Figure 6-861 Remove the HDD

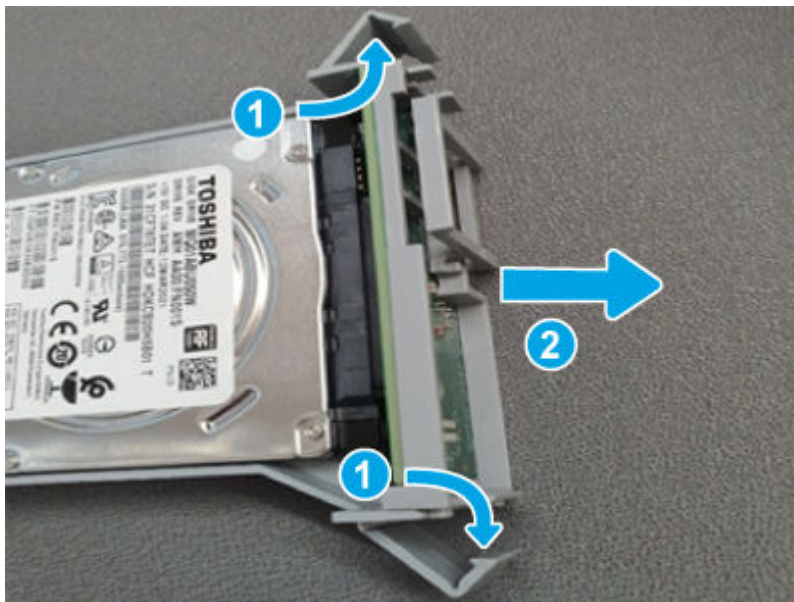


4. Remove the hard disk from the cradle

Use the following procedure to remove the HDD from the cradle.

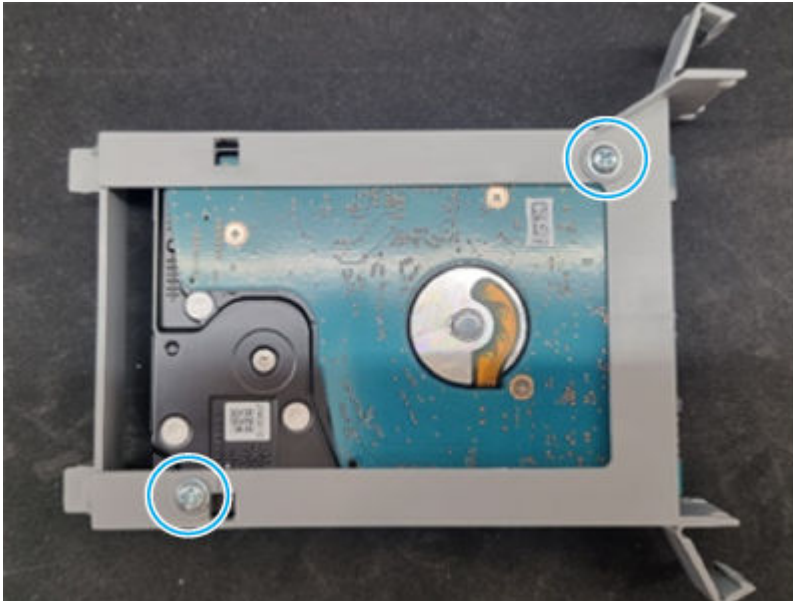
1. Release the clips on both ends of the cradle (callout 1), and then remove the riser card from the HDD (callout 2).

Figure 6-862 Remove the riser card



2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-863 Remove two screws



3. Separate the HDD from the cradle.

Figure 6-864 Remove the cradle



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Sub PCAs

Learn about sub printed circuit assembly (PCA) parts removal and replacement.

Removal and replacement: Accelerator card (optional)

Learn about removing and replacing the accelerator card.


Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-105 Part information

Part number	Part description
6HN30-67001	Accelerator card

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

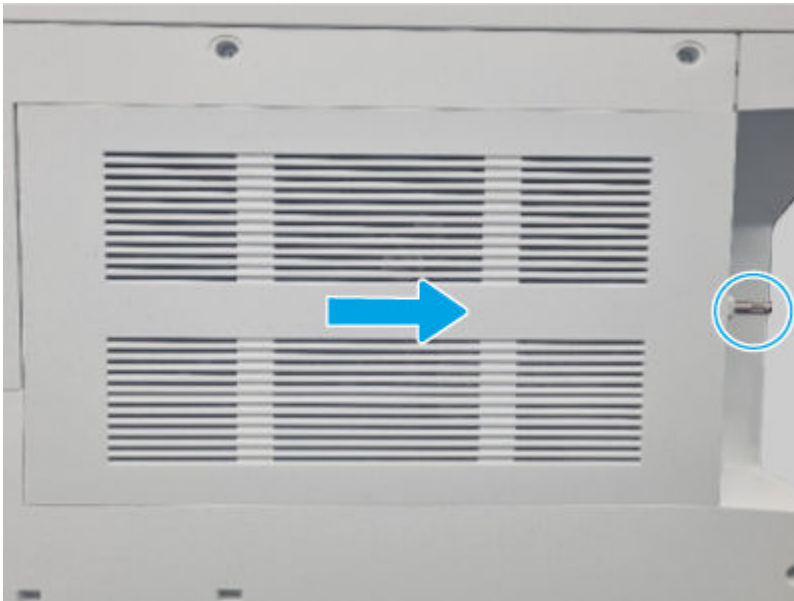
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-865 Remove the cover



2. Remove the rivet-HDD

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rivet-HDD.

- Locate the HDD rivets near the formatter interface ports, and then use a pair of tweezers to remove them.

Figure 6-866 Remove the rivets

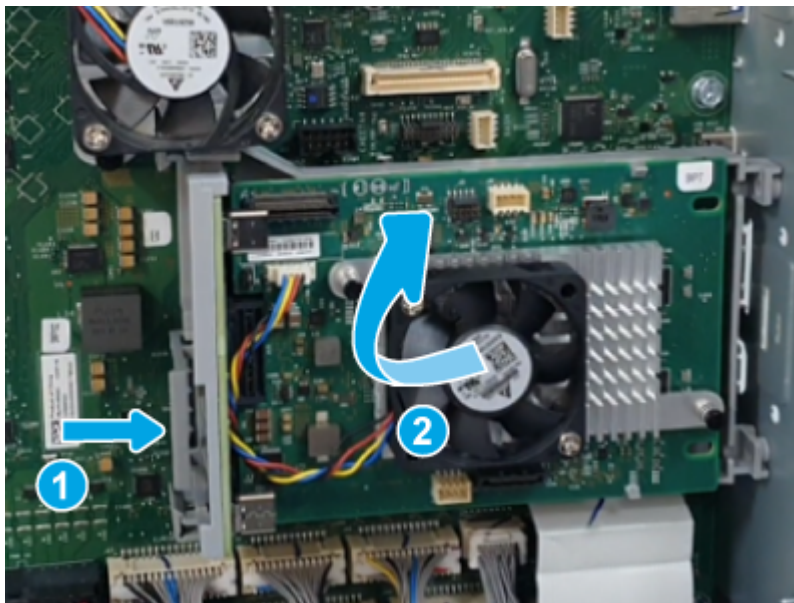


3. Remove the hard disk and accelerator card assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HDD and accelerator card assembly.

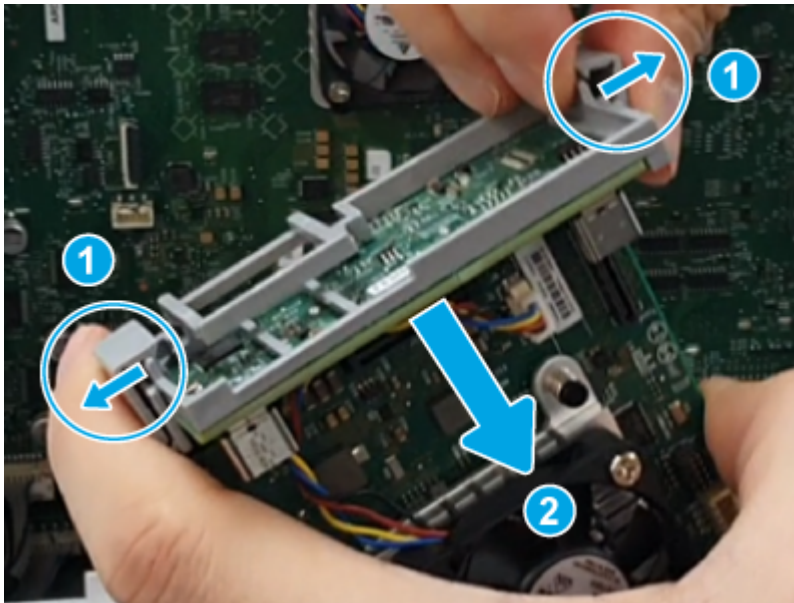
1. Push in and lift up on the lever (callout 1) to release the assembly, and then remove the hard drive and accelerator card together (callout 2).

Figure 6-867 Remove the HDD and accelerator card assembly



2. Release two clips (callout 1), and then separate the accelerator card from the riser card to remove it (callout 2).


Figure 6-868 Remove the accelerator card



4. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: USB hub PCA

Learn about removing and replacing the USB hub PCA.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-106 Part information

Part number	Part description
3SJ04-60001	USB hub PCA

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right middle cover assembly.

1. Remove two screws from the middle left cover as shown.

Figure 6-869 Remove two screws



2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-870 Remove one screw



3. Open the right door and remove one screw.

Figure 6-871 Open the right door and remove screw



4. Lay the control panel down, and then slide the cover as shown below to separate it from the printer.

CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the cover. It is still attached to the printer by a wire harness.

Figure 6-872 Slide the cover



5. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the right middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-873 Disconnect the connector

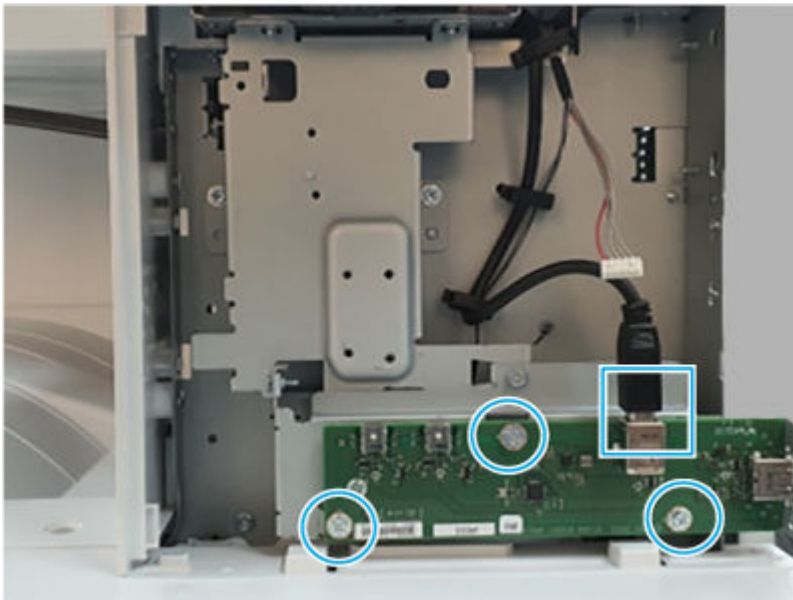


2. Remove the USB hub PCA

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the USB hub PCA.

- Disconnect one connector, remove three screws, and then remove the USB hub PCA.


Figure 6-874 Remove the PCA





3. Unpack the replacement assembly


Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Island of data (IOD)

Learn about removing and replacing the IOD.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-107 Part information

Part number	Part description
3SJ06-60001	Island of Data

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

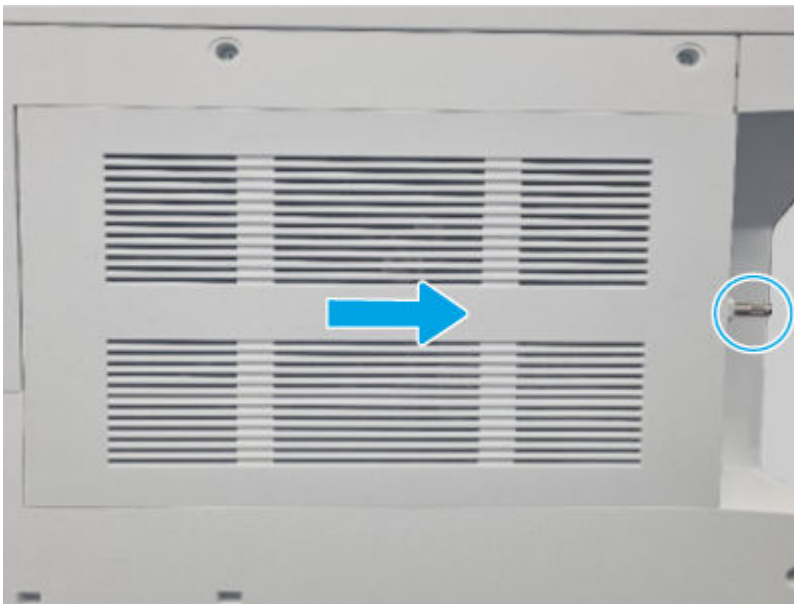
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-875 Remove the cover



2. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

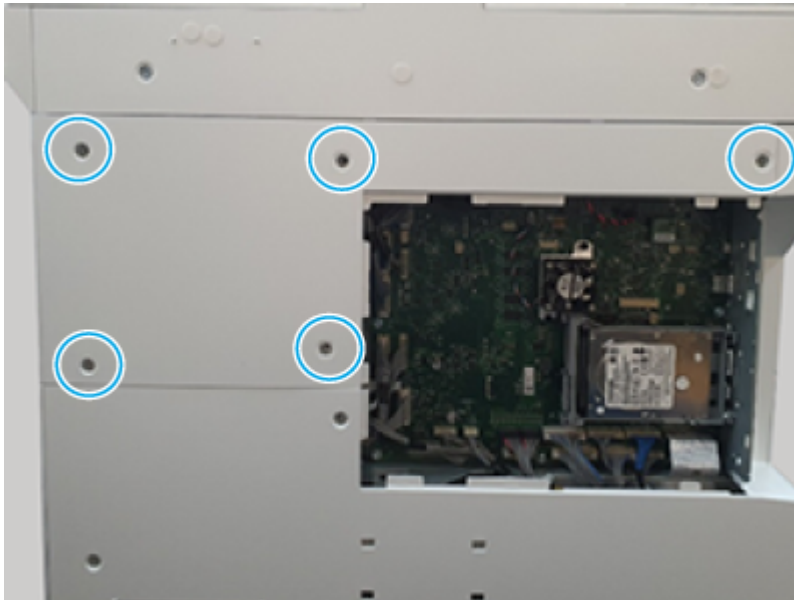
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-876 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-877 Remove the cover

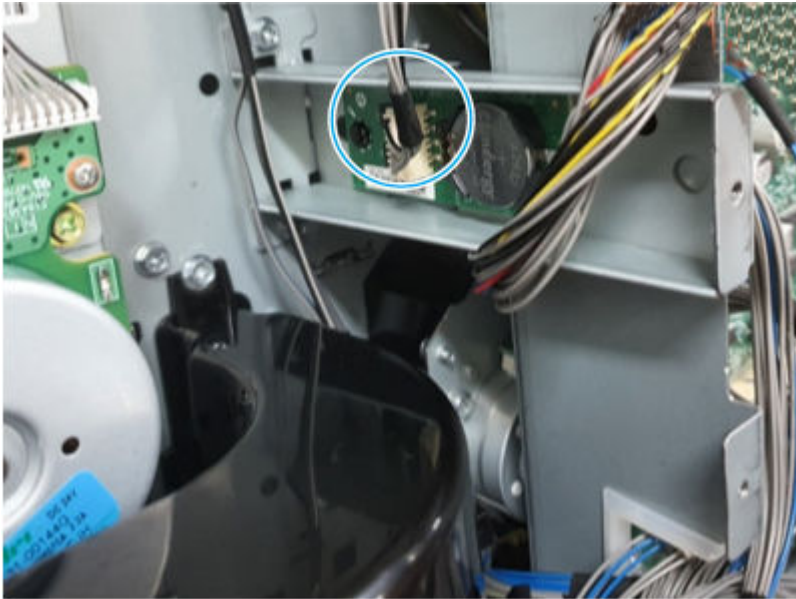


3. Remove the IOD

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the IOD.

1. Disconnect one connector.

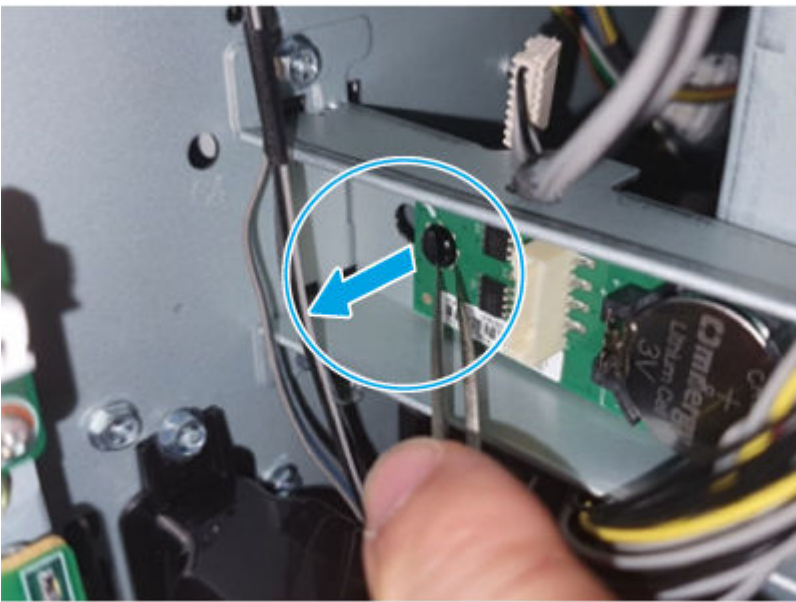
Figure 6-878 Disconnect one connector



2. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one rivet, and then remove the island of data.

⚠ CAUTION: Be careful when handling the rivet. Do not drop it into the printer engine.

Figure 6-879 Remove the PCA





4. Unpack the replacement assembly


Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.

📄 NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Echo PCA and rivet

Learn about removing and replacing the echo PCA.


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-108 Part information

Part number	Part description
T3U64-60001	Echo PCA
6ER04-40034	Rivet-Echo PCA

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

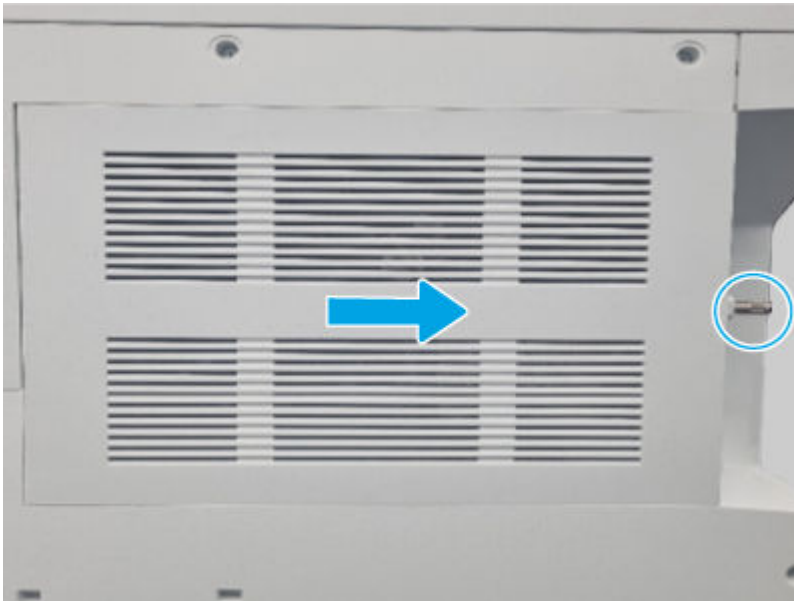
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-880 Remove the cover



2. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

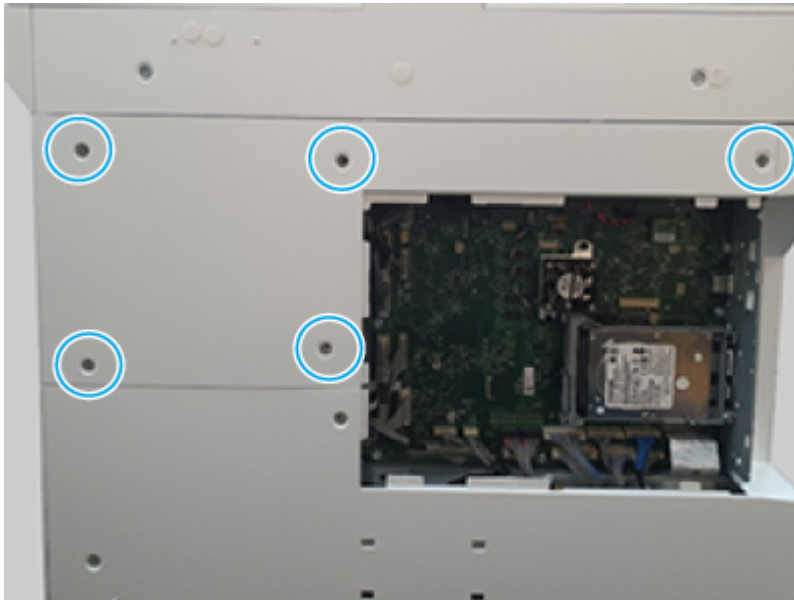
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-881 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-882 Remove the cover

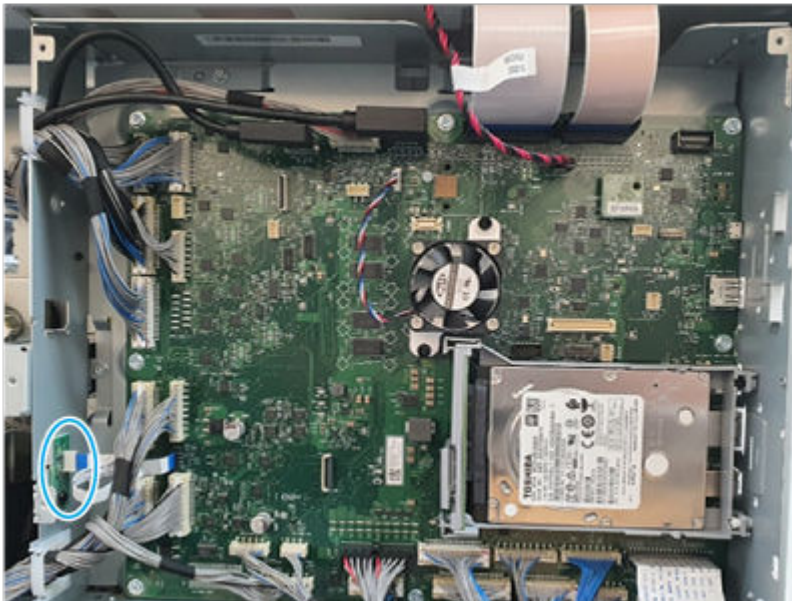


3. Remove the echo PCA

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the echo PCA.

1. Disconnect one connector.

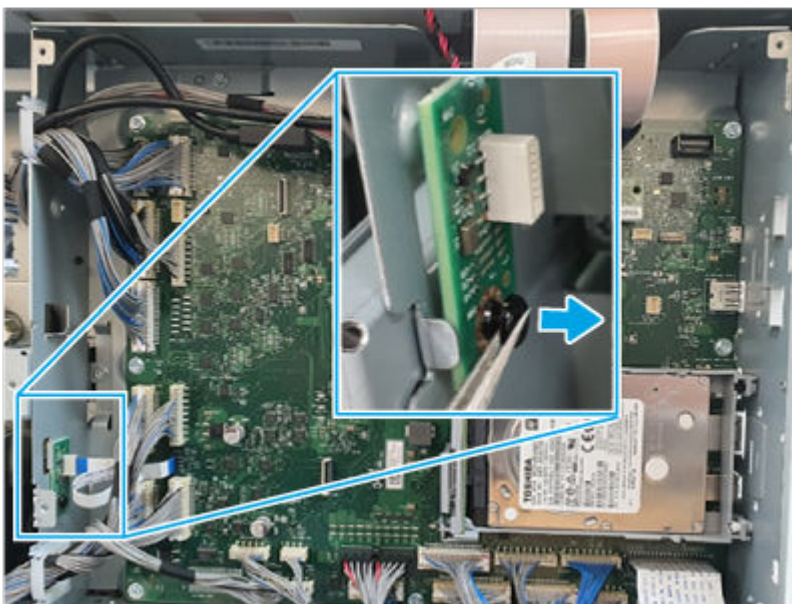
Figure 6-883 Disconnect one connector



2. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one rivet, and then remove the echo PCA.

⚠ CAUTION: Be careful when handling the rivet. Do not drop it into the printer engine.

Figure 6-884 Remove the PCA





4. Unpack the replacement assembly


Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.

📄 NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Power key

Learn about removing and replacing the power key PCA.


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-109 Part information

Part number	Part description
3SJ33-60007	Power key PCA

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the right middle cover assembly.

1. Remove two screws from the middle left cover as shown.

Figure 6-885 Remove two screws



2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-886 Remove one screw



3. Open the right door and remove one screw.

Figure 6-887 Open the right door and remove screw



4. Lay the control panel down, and then slide the cover as shown below to separate it from the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the cover. It is still attached to the printer by a wire harness.

Figure 6-888 Slide the cover



5. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the right middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-889 Disconnect the connector

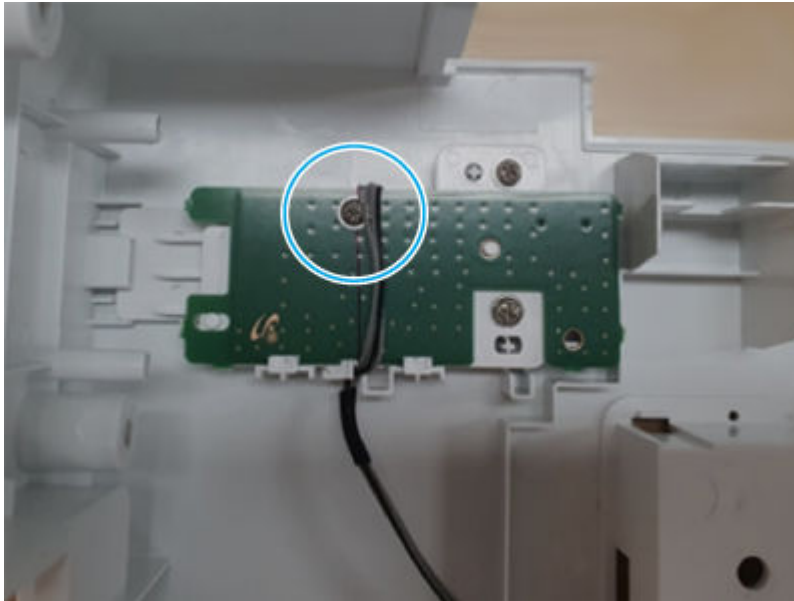


2. Remove the power key PCA

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the power key PCA.

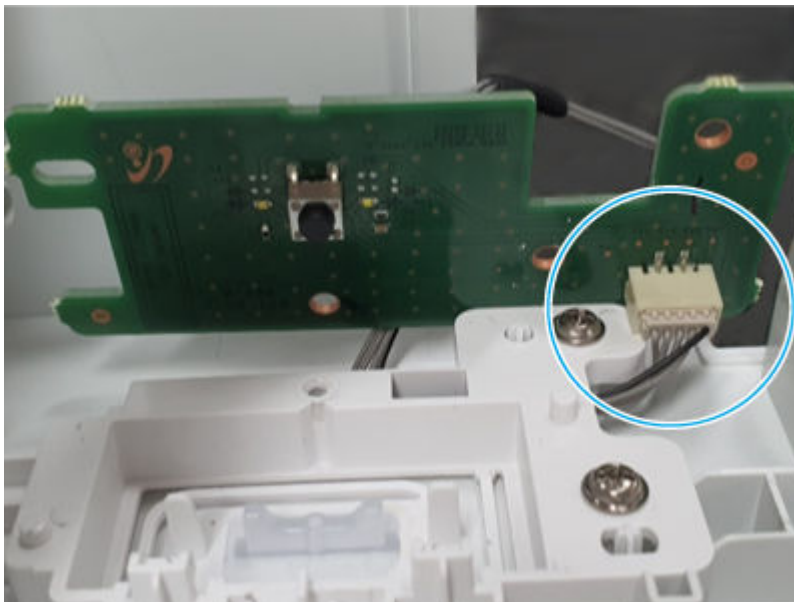
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-890 Remove one screw



2. Lift the PCA up, disconnect one connector, and then remove the power key PCA.

Figure 6-891 Remove the PCA



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Keyboard (Flow models)

Learn about removing and replacing the keyboard.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-110 Part Information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01742A	Keyboard Assy-US English
JC93-01743A	Keyboard Assy-UK English

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the keyboard

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the keyboard.

 **NOTE:** The optional keyboard is for flow models only. For all other models, skip this step.

1. Rotate the keyboard up and out of the way, and then use a pair of tweezers to remove one screw cap.

Figure 6-892 Remove one screw cap



2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-893 Remove one screw



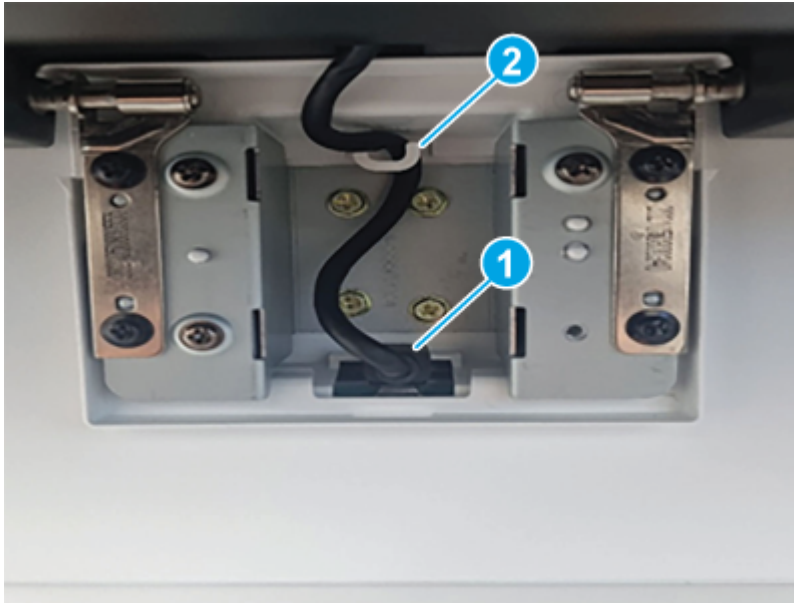
3. Remove the cover.

Figure 6-894 Remove the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the cable from the retainer (callout 2).

Figure 6-895 Disconnect one connector



5. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-896 Remove four screws



6. Remove the keyboard.

Figure 6-897 Remove the keyboard



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Fax card (optional)

Learn about removing and replacing the fax card.

Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

📝 NOTE: Fax card part numbers can vary by country/region. Check with your genuine HP parts supplier if you are unsure of the correct fax card part number for your country/region.

Table 6-111 Part information

Part number	Part description
7ZA08-67001	Single Fax 800 Accessory
5QK14-67001	Dual Fax 810 Accessory

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

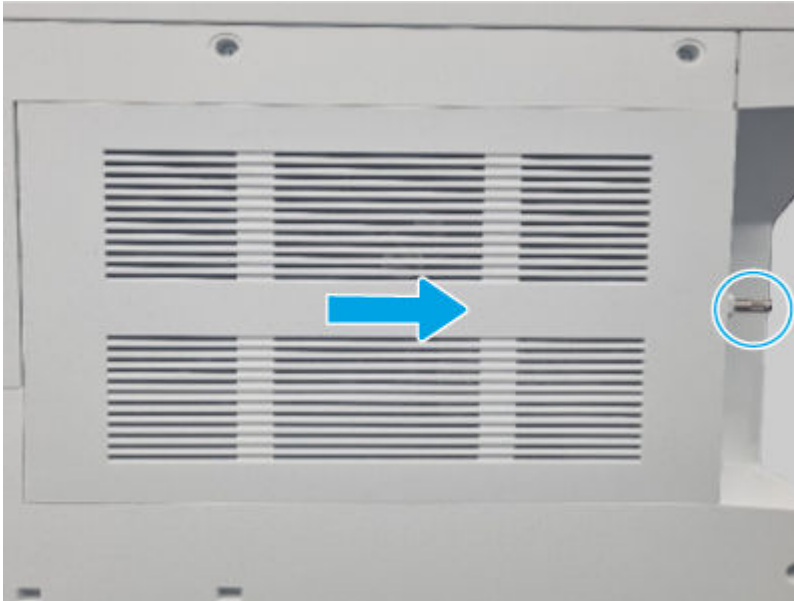
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-898 Remove the cover

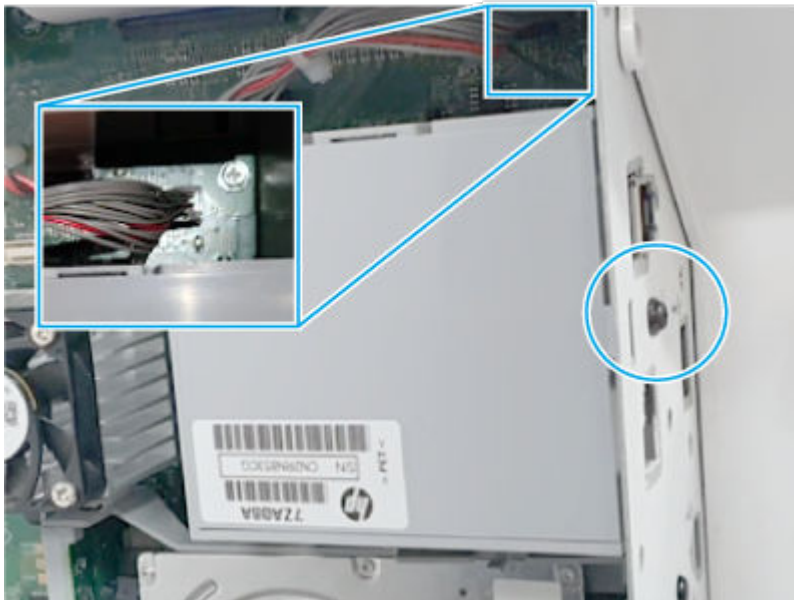


2. Remove the fax card assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the fax card.

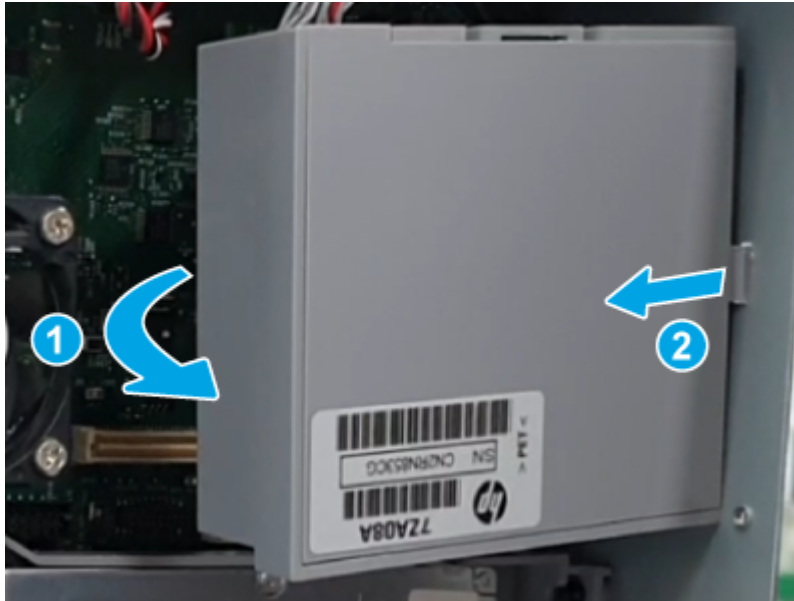
1. Disconnect one connector, and then remove one screw.

Figure 6-899 Release the fax card



2. Slightly rotate the fax card away from the formatter PCA (callout 1), and then slide it as shown (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 6-900 Remove the fax card



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Power supply PCAs

Learn about power supply printed circuit assembly (PCA) parts removal and replacement.

Removal and replacement: High-voltage power supply (HVPS)

Learn about removing and replacing the HVPS.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-112 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC44-00237D	High-Voltage Power Supply (HVPS)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

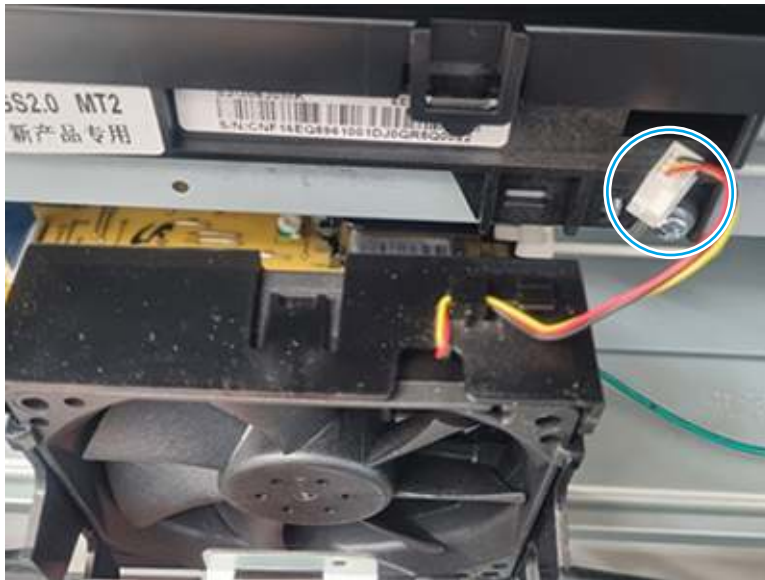
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the LSU fan

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the LSU fan.

1. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-901 Disconnect one connector



2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-902 Remove two screws



3. Remove two screws, and then remove the LSU fan.

Figure 6-903 Remove the fan

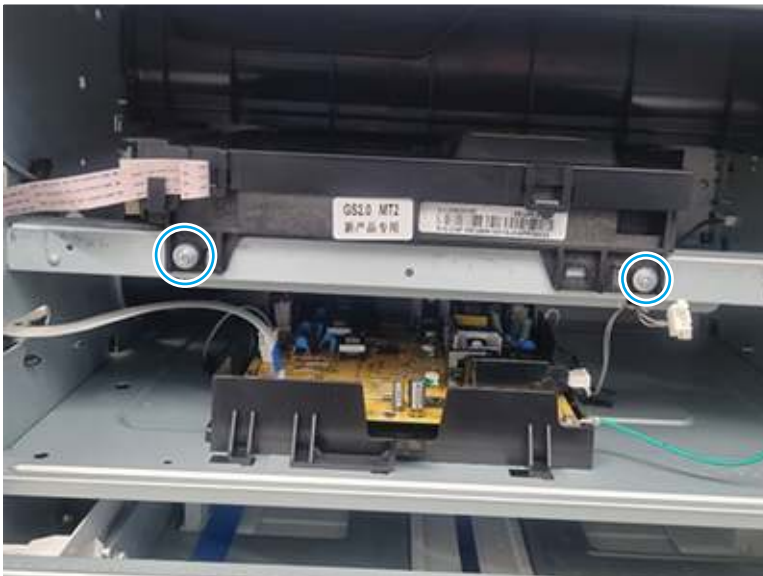


2. Remove the LSU

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the laser scanner unit (LSU).

1. Remove two screws

Figure 6-904 Remove two screws



2. Disconnect one FFC.


 **NOTE:** The FFC has a locking clip. Release the clip to disconnect the FFC.

Figure 6-905 Disconnect the FFC



3. Remove the LSU.


 **NOTE:** Use two hands to remove the LSU. It can be difficult to release from the printer.

Figure 6-906 Remove the LSU

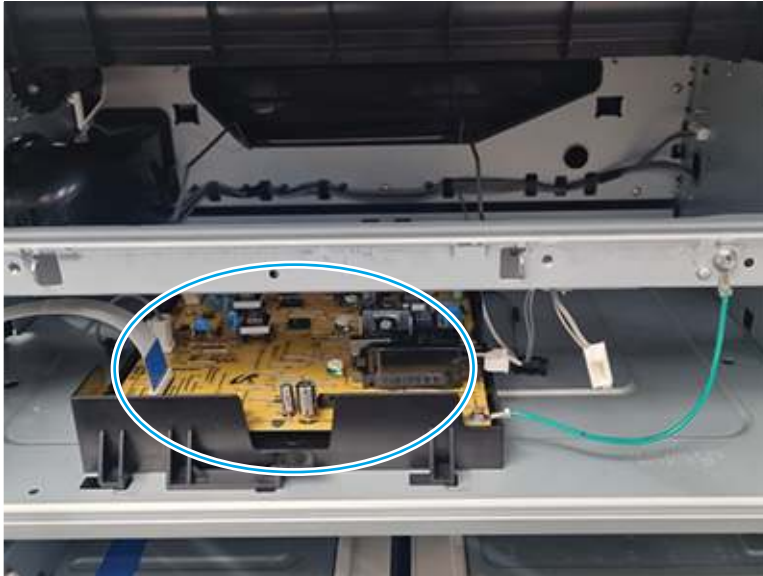


3. Remove the HVPS

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HVPS.

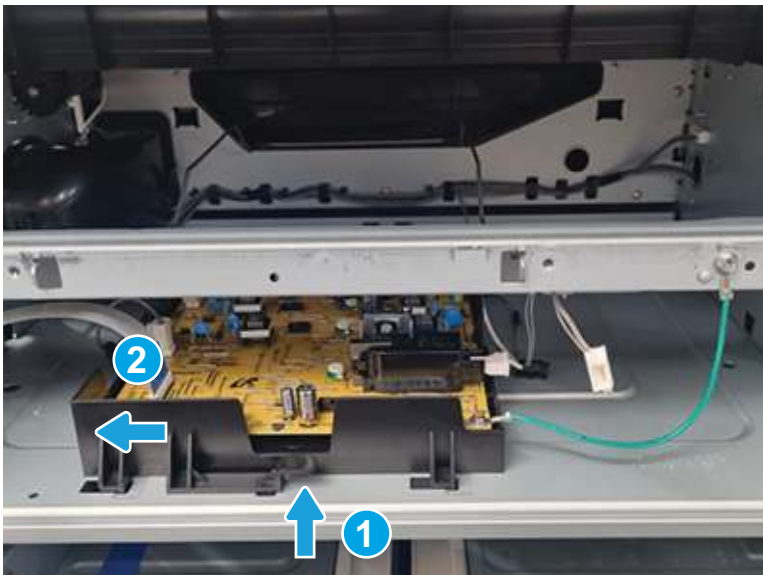
1. Disconnect the connectors attached to the HVPS.

Figure 6-907 Disconnect connectors



2. Lift lever and slide to remove the HVPS

Figure 6-908 Release the HVPS



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Low-voltage power supply (LVPS)

Learn about removing and replacing the LVPS.

Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-113 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ90-60014	Low-Voltage Power Supply (LVPS), 110V
5QJ90-60015	Low-Voltage Power Supply (LVPS), 220V

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

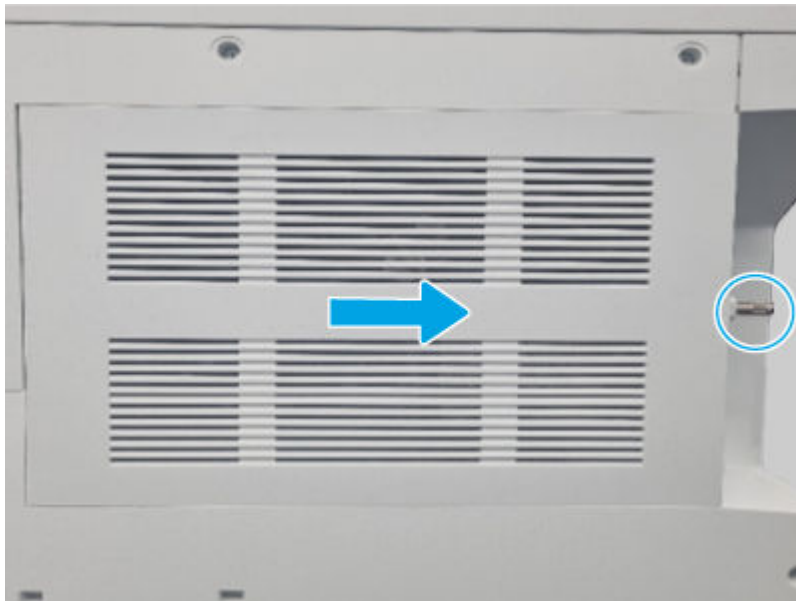
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-909 Remove the cover



2. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

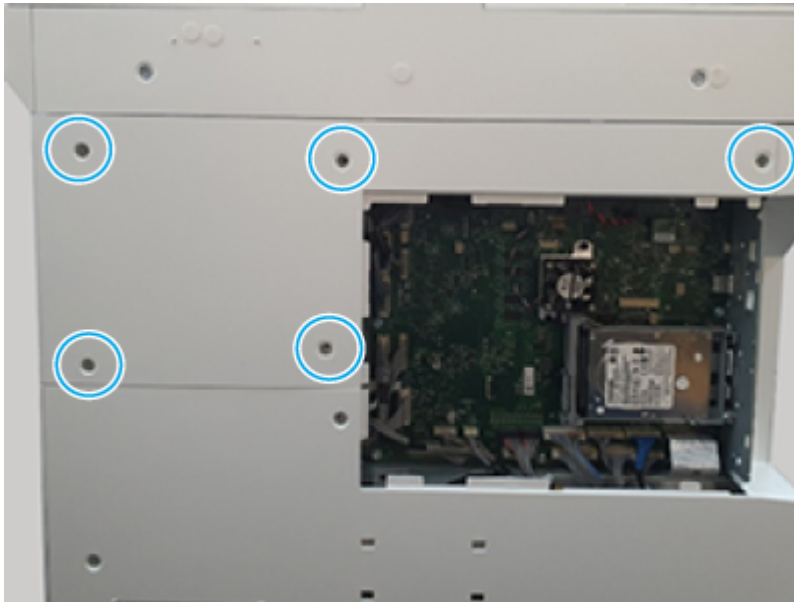
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-910 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-911 Remove the cover



3. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove six screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-912 Remove the cover

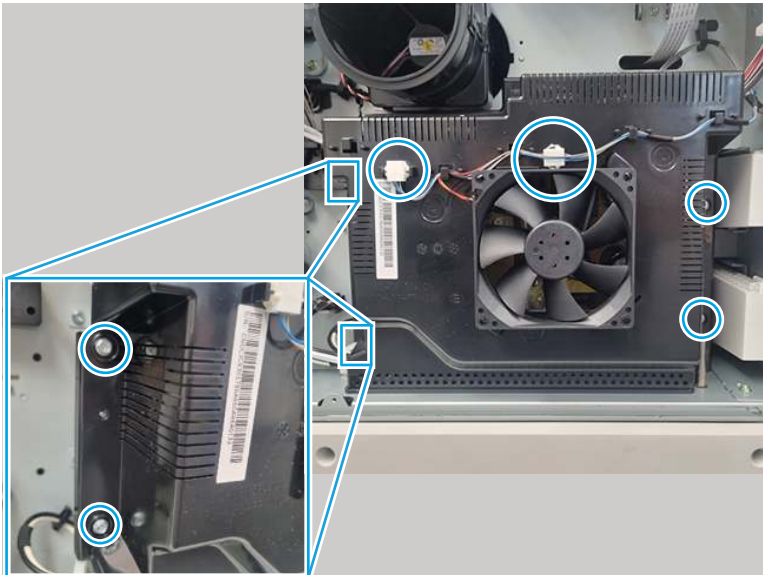


4. Remove the LVPS FDB fan assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the LVPS / FDB fan.

- Disconnect two connectors, remove four screws, and then remove the fan assembly.

Figure 6-913 Remove the fan assembly

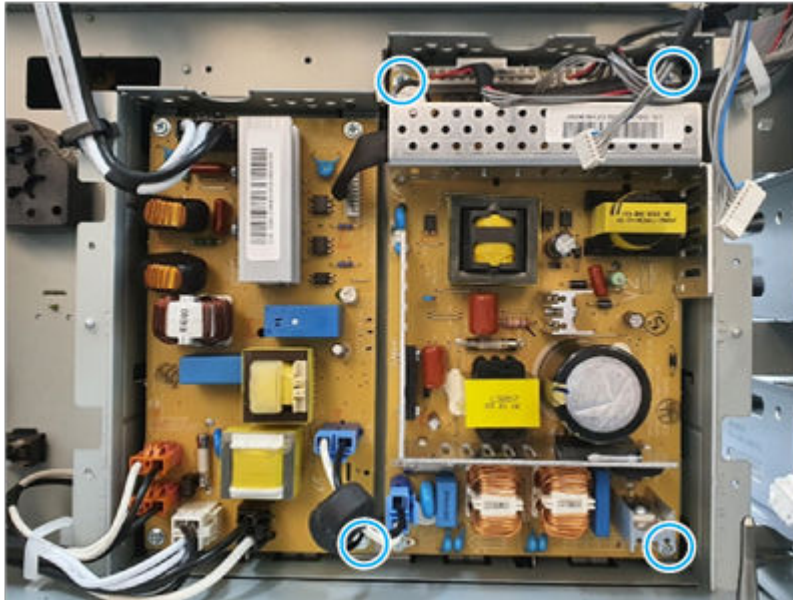


5. Remove the LVPS

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the LVPS.

- Do the following:
 - Disconnect all of the connectors on the LVPS.
 - Remove four screws.
 - Remove the LVPS.

Figure 6-914 Remove the PCA



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Fuser-drive board (FDB)

Learn about removing and replacing the FDB.

Mean time to repair: 8 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-114 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC44-00210F	Fuser-drive board (FDB), 110V
JC44-00211F	Fuser-drive board (FDB), 220V

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

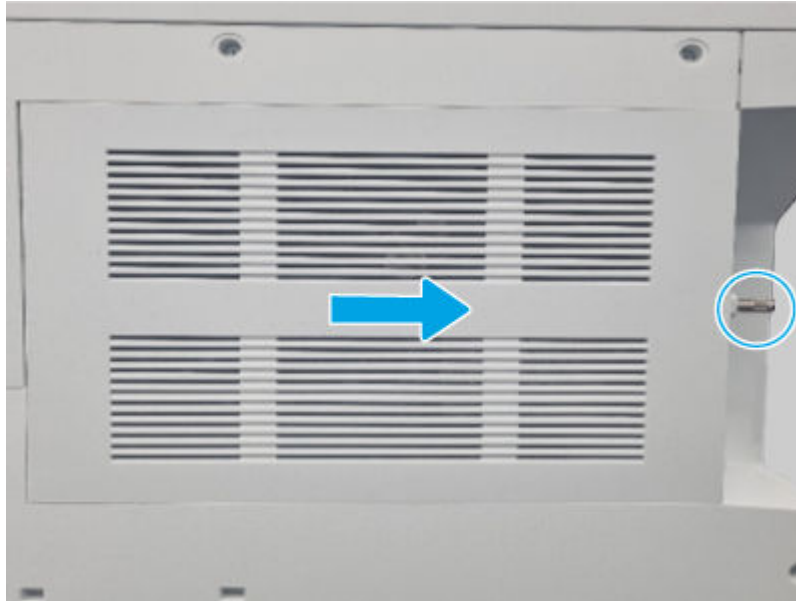
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-915 Remove the cover



2. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

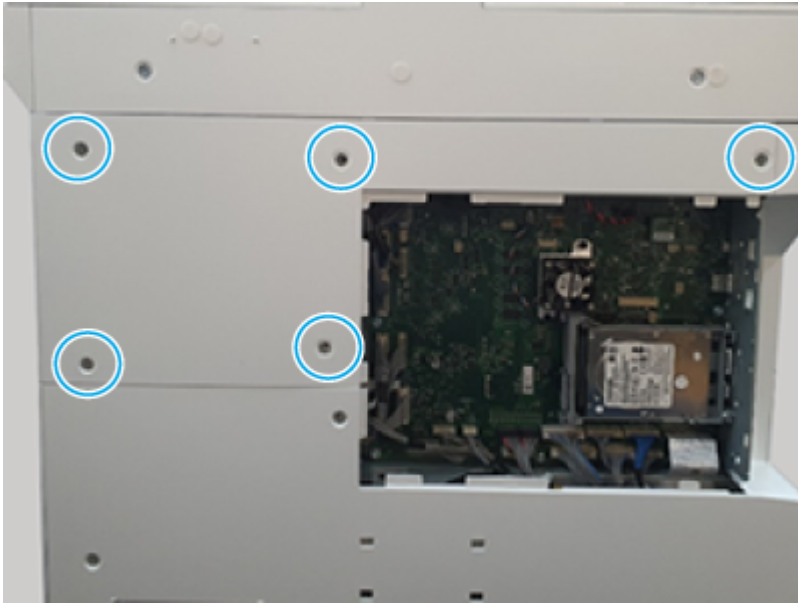
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-916 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-917 Remove the cover



3. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove six screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-918 Remove the cover

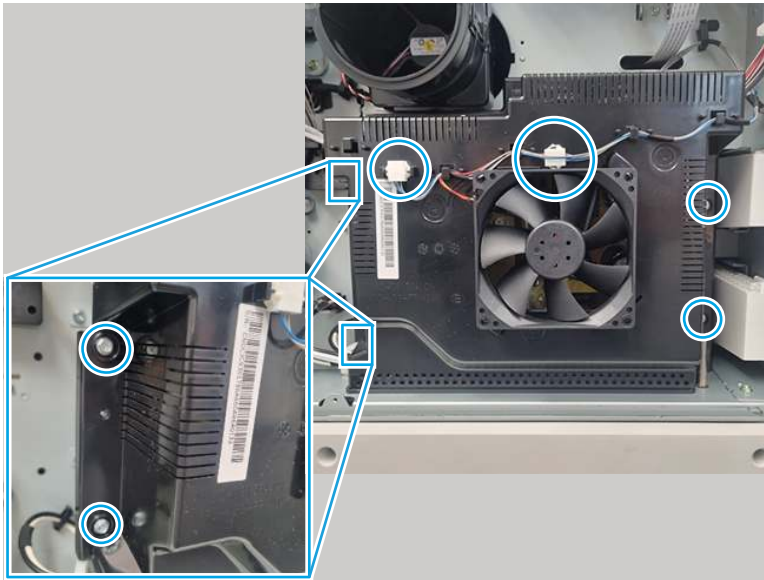


4. Remove the LVPS FDB fan assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the LVPS / FDB fan.

- Disconnect two connectors, remove four screws, and then remove the fan assembly.

Figure 6-919 Remove the fan assembly

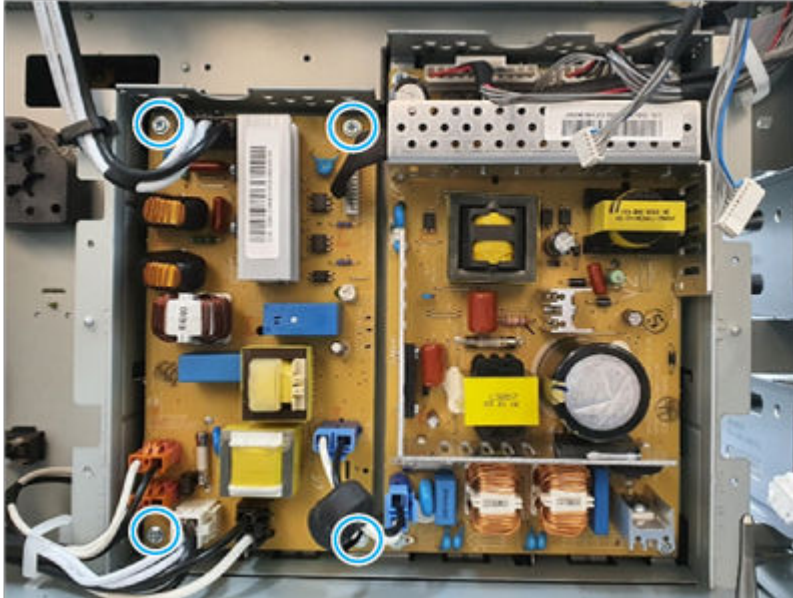


5. Remove the FDB

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the FDB.

- Do the following:
 - Disconnect all of the connectors and wire harness retainers on the FDB.
 - Remove four screws.
 - Remove the FDB.

Figure 6-920 Remove the PCA



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Integrated scanner asset (ISA)

Learn about ISA parts removal and replacement.

Whole unit

You will learn more about the ISA whole unit replacement.

200-Sheet ISA for z and dn bundles

Learn about ISA removal and replacement.


Removal and replacement: Integrated scanner for z and dn bundle (5QK36A/5QK35A)

Learn about removing and replacing the ISA.

 [View a video of installing the ISA.](#)

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes


Service level: Medium

 **NOTE:** This procedure removes the document feeder whole unit including the white backing.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-115 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK36-67001	HP LaserJet 240ipm 200-sheet Flow DADF scanner (z bundle)
5QK35-67001	HP LaserJet 180ipm 200-sheet DADF scanner (dn bundle)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

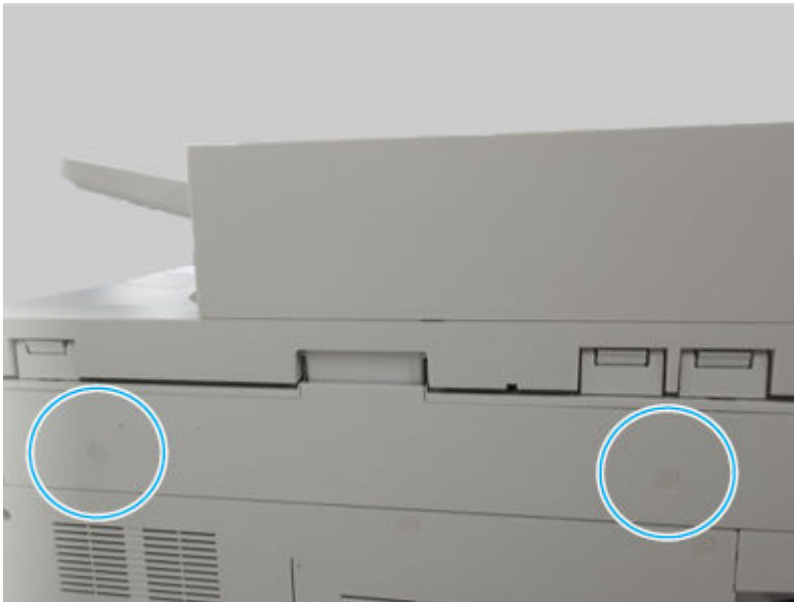
Use the flatbed glass to copy a page, and then verify that the document correctly copies, scans, or prints.

1. Remove the flatbed scanner rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the scan cover.

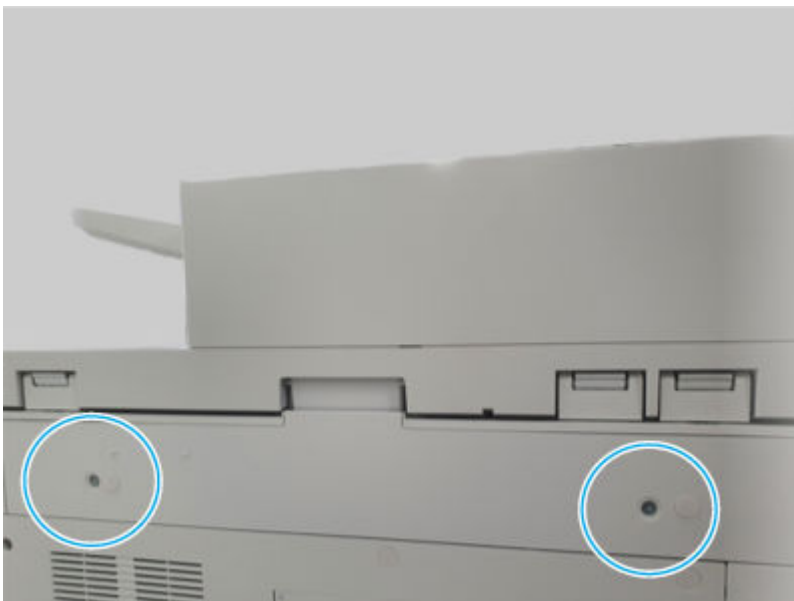
1. Remove two screw caps.

Figure 6-921 Remove two screw caps



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the scan cover.

Figure 6-922 Remove two screws and the cover



2. Remove the ISA

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the ISA.

1. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1).


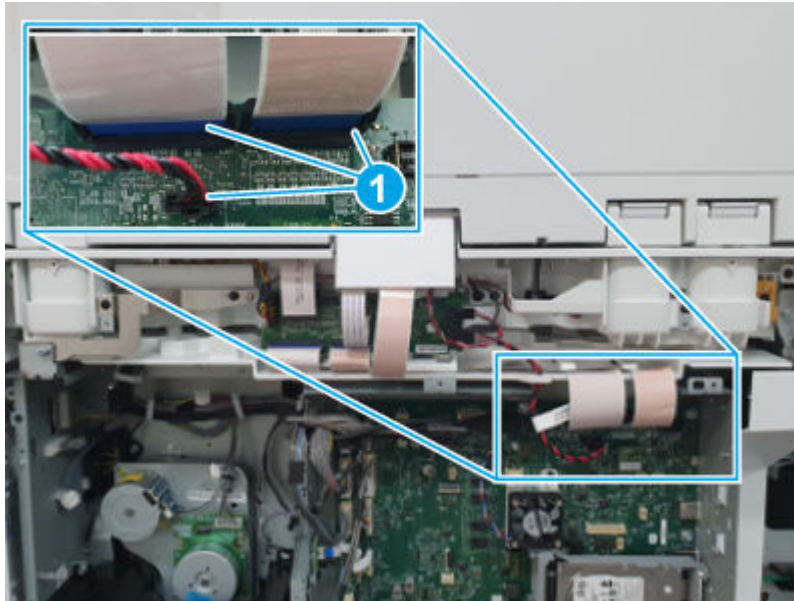
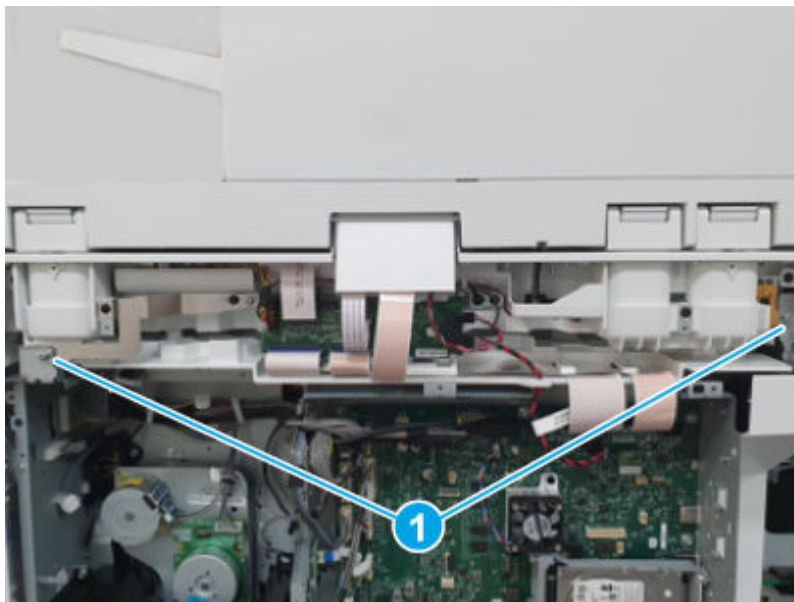
 **NOTE:** For the zero-force insertion (ZIF) flat-flexible cable (FFC) connectors, raise the locking clip to release the cable.

Figure 6-923 Disconnect three connectors



2. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-924 Remove two screws



- Slide the ISA towards the front of the printer until it stops to release it.


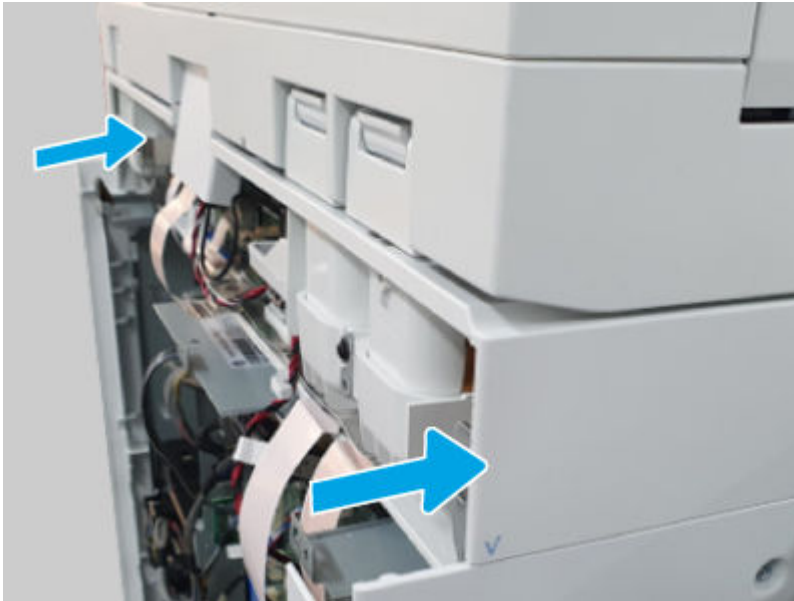
 **NOTE:** Sliding the ISA might require considerable force to release the mounting locks.

Figure 6-925 Slide the ISA



- Lift the ISA up and off of the printer to remove it.


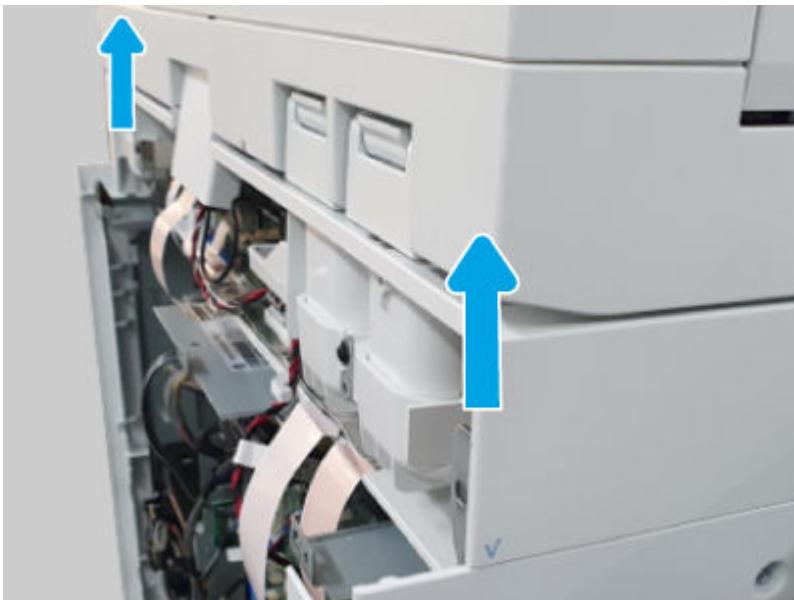
 **CAUTION:** The ISA is heavy. Always use safe lifting practices. HP recommends more than one person lift the ISA.

Figure 6-926 Remove the ISA

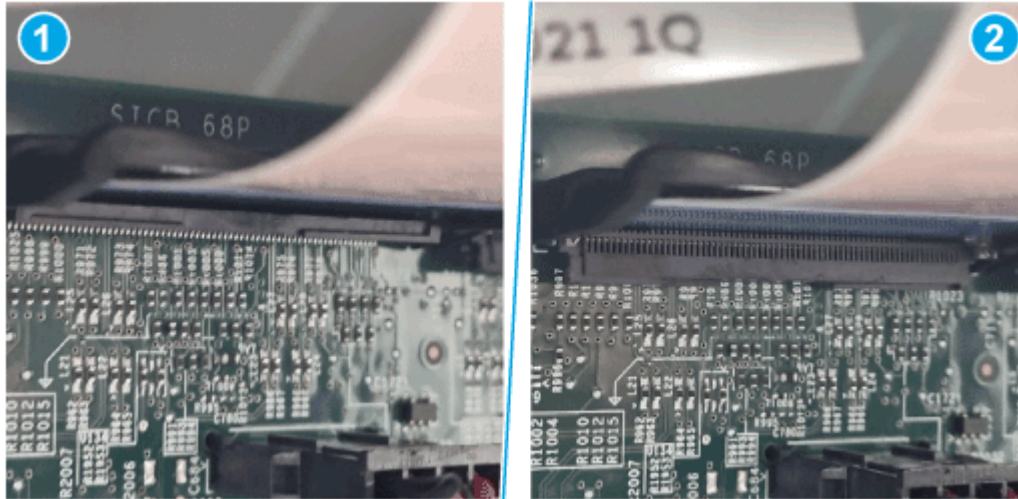


- When reinstalling the FFCs into the connectors, make sure to push down on the locking clip so that the connector firmly grasps the cable film.

- Callout 1:** Unlocked

- **Callout 2:** Locked

Figure 6-927 Lock the FFC connector clip



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

100-Sheet ISA

Learn about ISA removal and replacement.

Removal and replacement: Integrated scanner for Flex-build (5QK34A)

Learn about removing and replacing the ISA.



[View a video of installing the ISA.](#)

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium



NOTE: This procedure removes the document feeder whole unit including the white backing.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-116 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK34-67001	HP LaserJet 120ipm 100-sheet DADF scanner (flex bundle)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

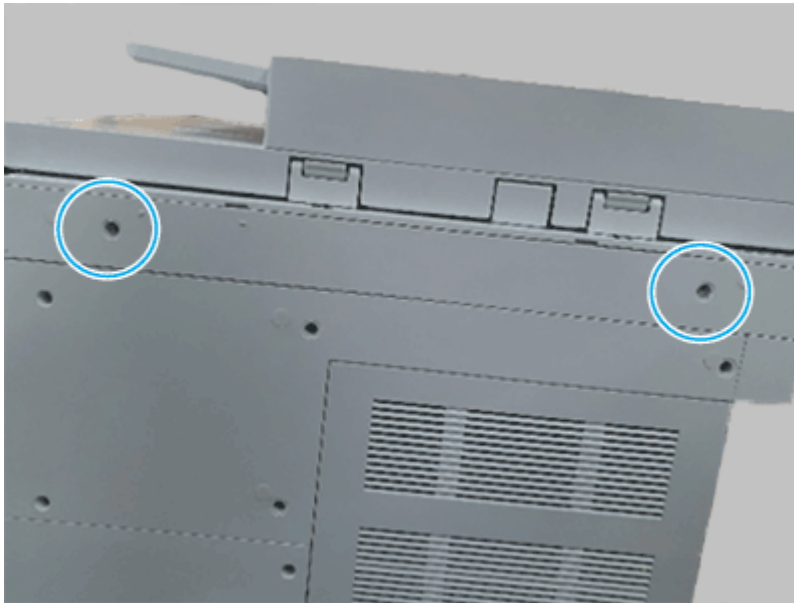
Use the flatbed glass to copy a page, and then verify that the document correctly copies, scans, or prints.

1. Remove the flatbed scanner rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the scan cover.


- Remove two screw caps, remove two screws, and then remove the scan cover.

Figure 6-928 Remove two screws and the cover



2. Remove the document feeder

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder.

 **NOTE:** This procedure removes the document feeder whole unit including the white backing.

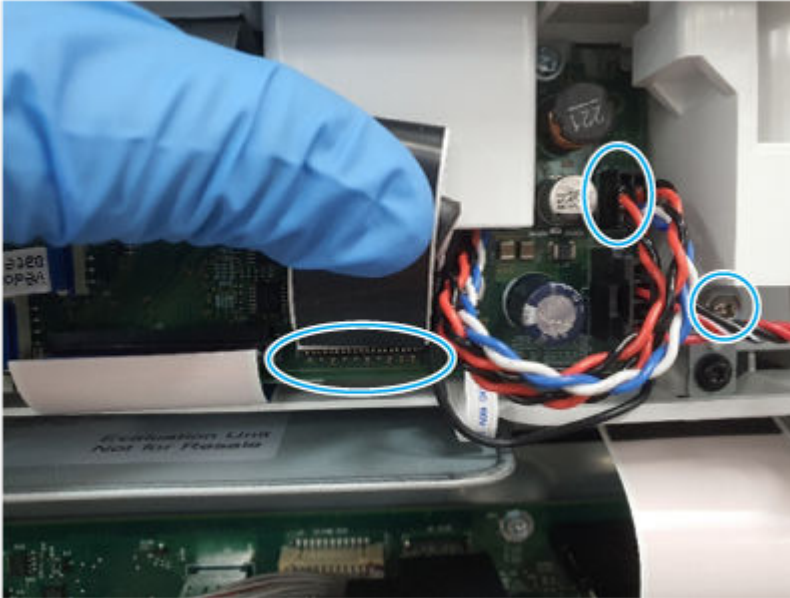
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-929 Remove two screws



2. Disconnect two connectors, remove one screw, and then remove the document feeder.


Figure 6-930 Remove the document feeder



3. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

ADF (Automatic document feeder)


Learn about ADF parts removal and replacement.

200-Sheet ADF for dn bundle

Learn about ADF parts removal and replacement.

Removal and replacement: ADF (200sh)

Learn about removing and replacing the document feeder.

 **IMPORTANT:** This procedure removes the document feeder whole unit (including the white backing plate).

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes


Service level: Medium

 **NOTE:** This procedure removes the document feeder whole unit including the white backing.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.


 **NOTE:** The whole unit replacement parts below include the Kit - white backing A3 (5QJ90-67005).

Table 6-117 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ90-67011	Automatic document feeder (ADF) (Growler + ENT)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

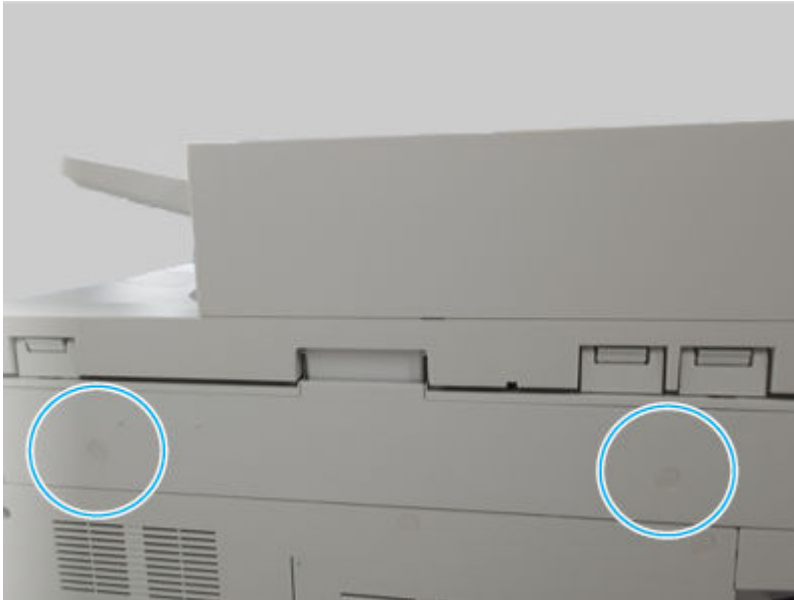
Use the document feeder to copy a page, and then verify that the document correctly copies, scans, or prints.

1. Remove the flatbed scanner rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the scan cover.

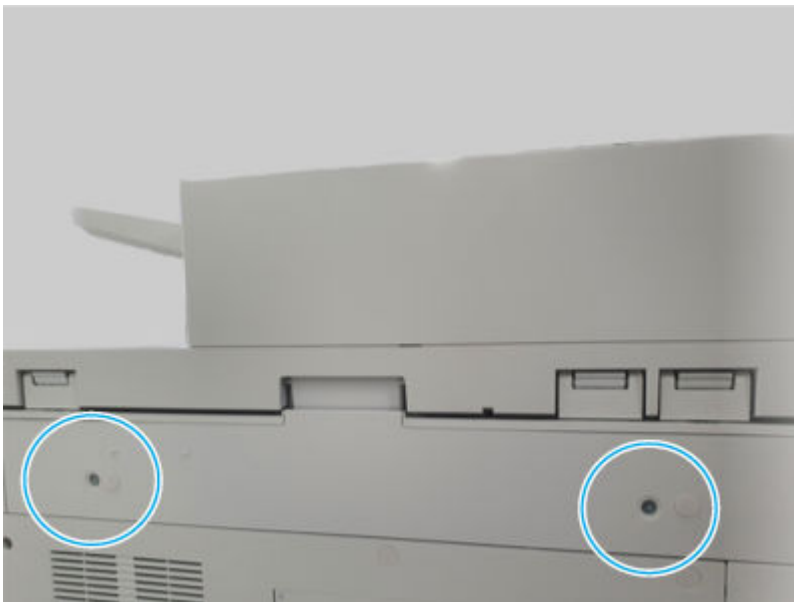
1. Remove two screw caps.

Figure 6-931 Remove two screw caps



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the scan cover.

Figure 6-932 Remove two screws and the cover

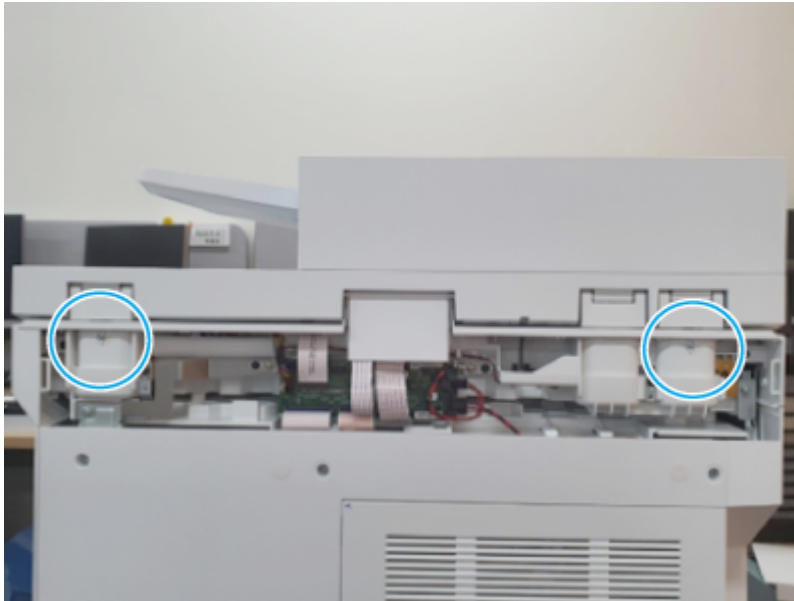


2. Remove the document feeder

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-933 Remove two screws



2. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1).


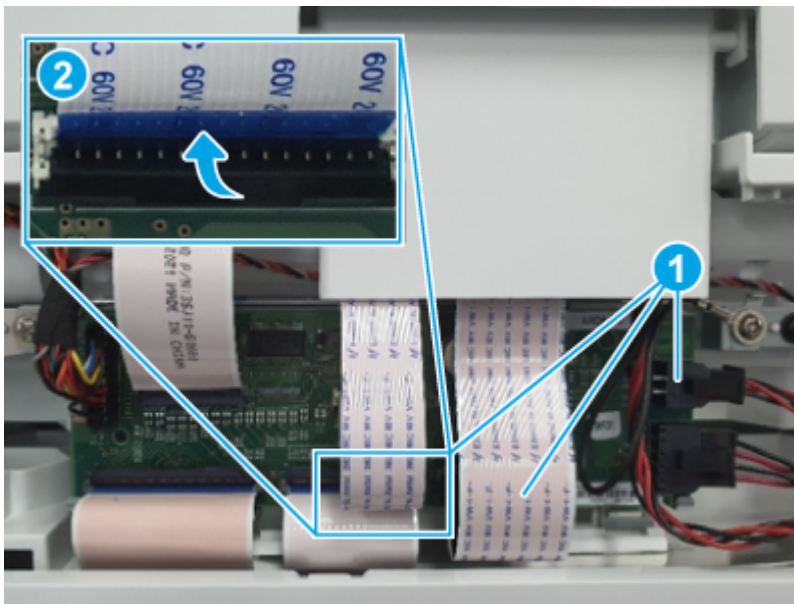
 **NOTE:** Release the retainer clip (callout 2) to disconnect one of the FFCs.


Figure 6-934 Remove the document feeder



3. Remove one screw to release a single-wire harness, and then lift the document feeder up to remove it.

Figure 6-935 Remove the document feeder assembly




 **IMPORTANT:** Special installation instructions are included at the end of this topic (after the unpack and recycle step).

To avoid damaging the ADF when it is reinstalled, make sure to carefully read and follow the installation instructions.

3. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

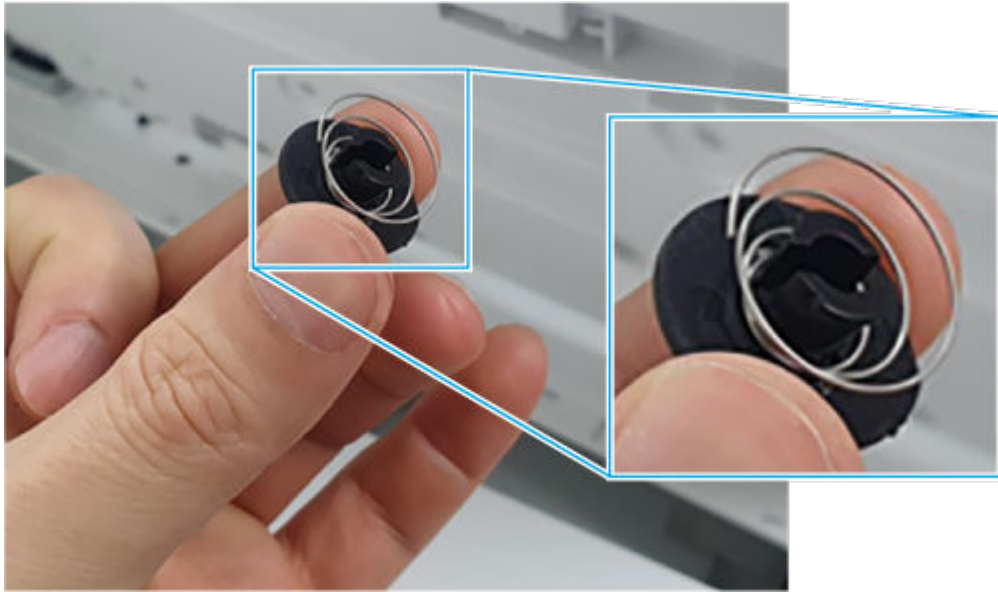
 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

4. Special installation instructions: White backing plate

Use the following instructions to install the white backing plate

1. If the spring and suspension clip have become separated during shipping, install the spring on the clip as shown below.

Figure 6-936 Spring installed on the suspension clip



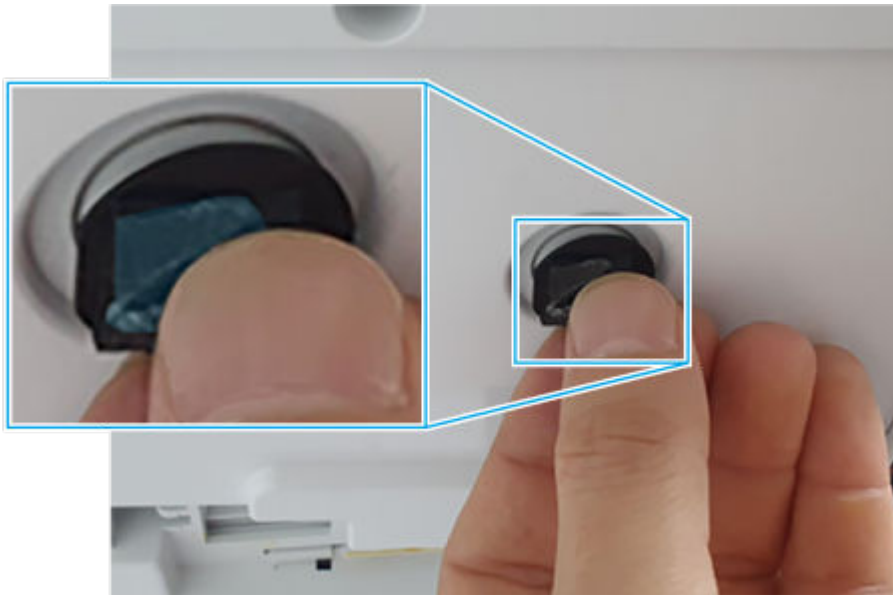
2. Position a suspension clip near the mounting feature on the document feeder, and then push it straight in to install it.

Figure 6-937 Install the suspension clip



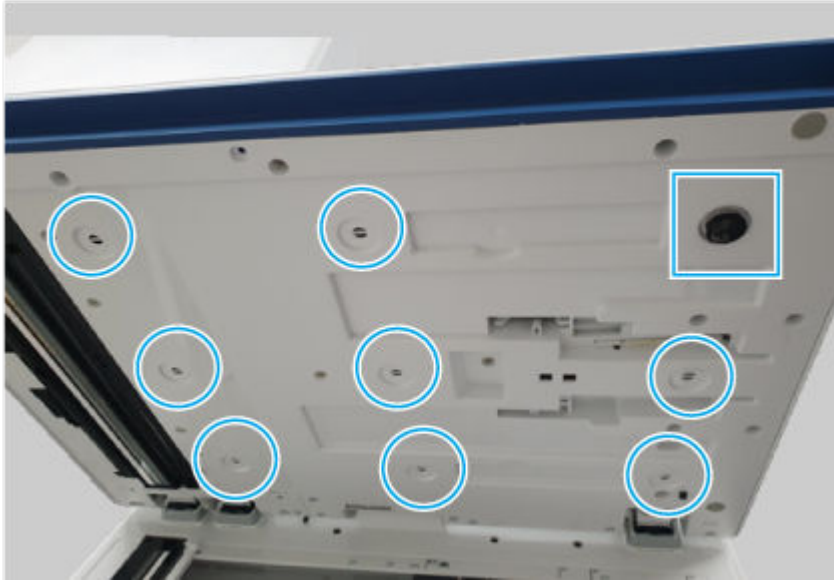
3. Remove the protective film from the double-sided tape on the suspension clip.

Figure 6-938 Expose the double-sided tape



4. Repeat these steps for the remaining eight suspension clips.

Figure 6-939 Install the remaining suspension clips



5. Place the white backing plate on the flatbed glass.


 **NOTE:** One corner of the white backing plate has an arrow embossed on it. Place that corner towards the rear left corner of the flatbed glass.

Figure 6-940 Place the white backing plate



6. Position the white backing plate so that the corner with the embossed arrow fits tightly up against the flatbed glass frame.


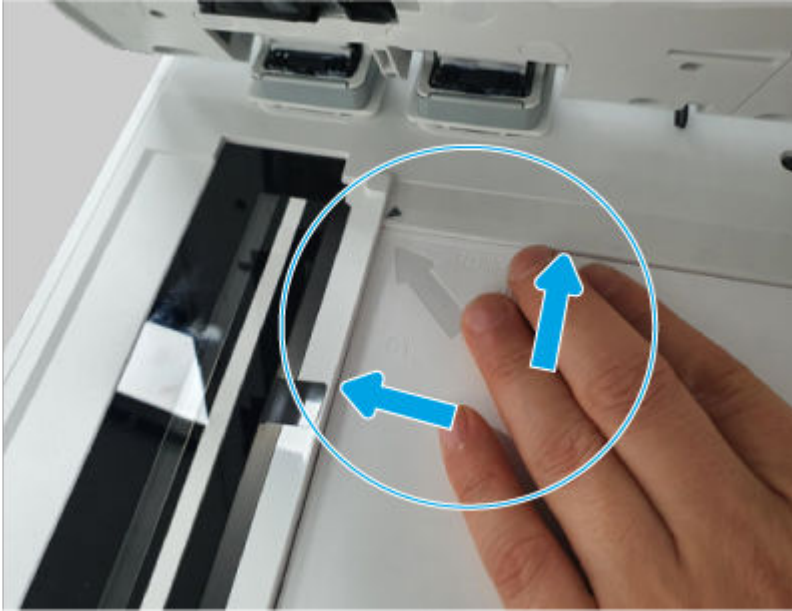
 **NOTE:** Make sure that the rear and left edges of the plate are firmly against the flatbed frame.

Figure 6-941 Register the white backing plate against the frame



7. Fully close the document feeder to install the white backing plate.



NOTE: Open the document feeder and make sure the white backing plate is firmly attached.

Figure 6-942 Close the document feeder



Removal and replacement: ADF CMF panel

Learn about removing and replacing the document feeder color panel.

Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-118 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ90-40056	ADF CMF panel

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Use the document feeder to copy a page, and then verify that the document correctly copies, scans, or prints.

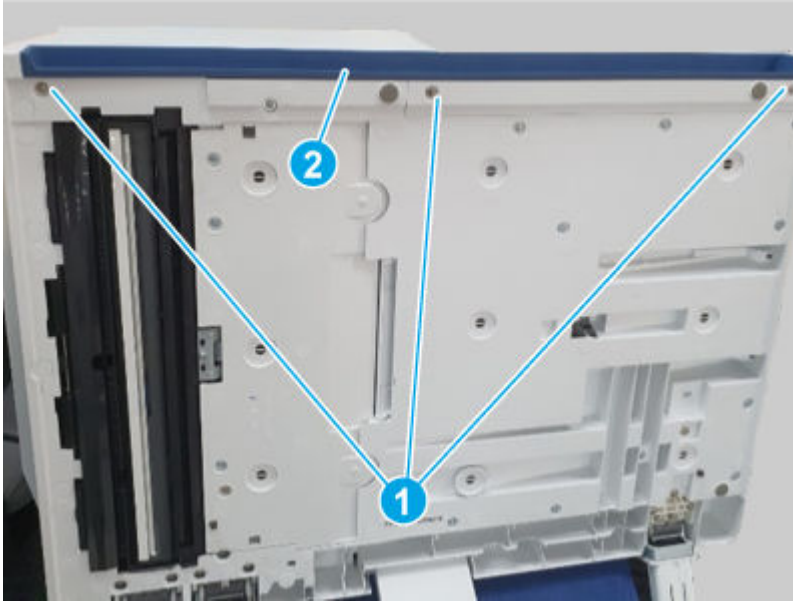
1. Remove the document feeder color panel

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder color panel.

1. Open the document feeder.

2. Remove three screws (callout 1), release four tabs, and then remove the document feeder color panel (callout 2).

Figure 6-943 Remove the color panel



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: ADF white backing kit (200sh)

Learn about removing and replacing the document feeder white backing plate.

Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-119 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ90-67005	Kit - white backing A3

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Use the document feeder to copy a page, and then verify that the document correctly copies, scans, or prints.

1. Remove the document feeder white backing

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder white backing.

1. Open the document feeder.

2. Disconnect nine hooks, and then remove the white backing.

Figure 6-944 Remove the white backing



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



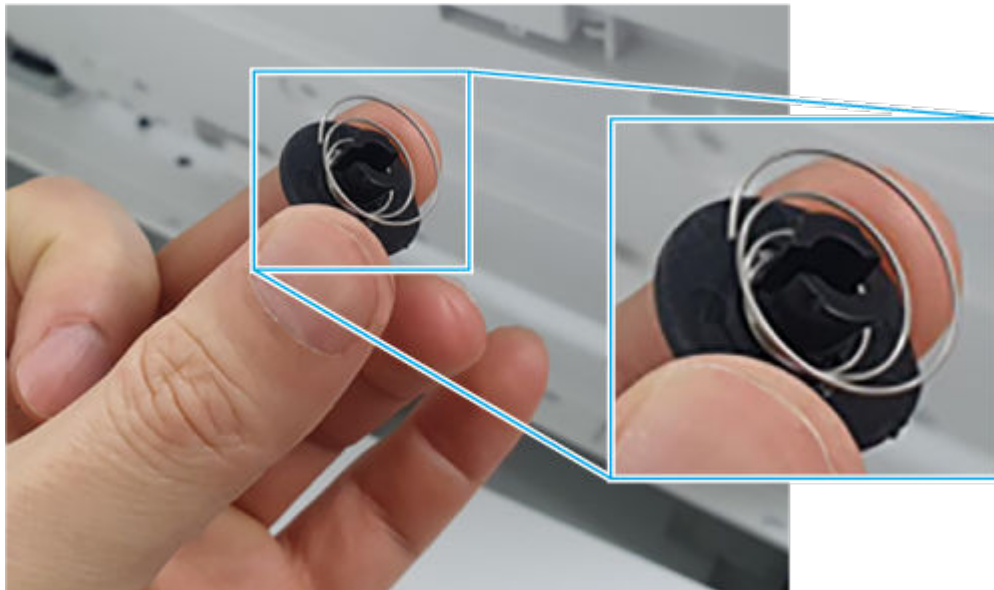
NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

3. Special installation instructions: White backing plate

Use the following instructions to install the white backing plate

1. If the spring and suspension clip have become separated during shipping, install the spring on the clip as shown below.

Figure 6-945 Spring installed on the suspension clip



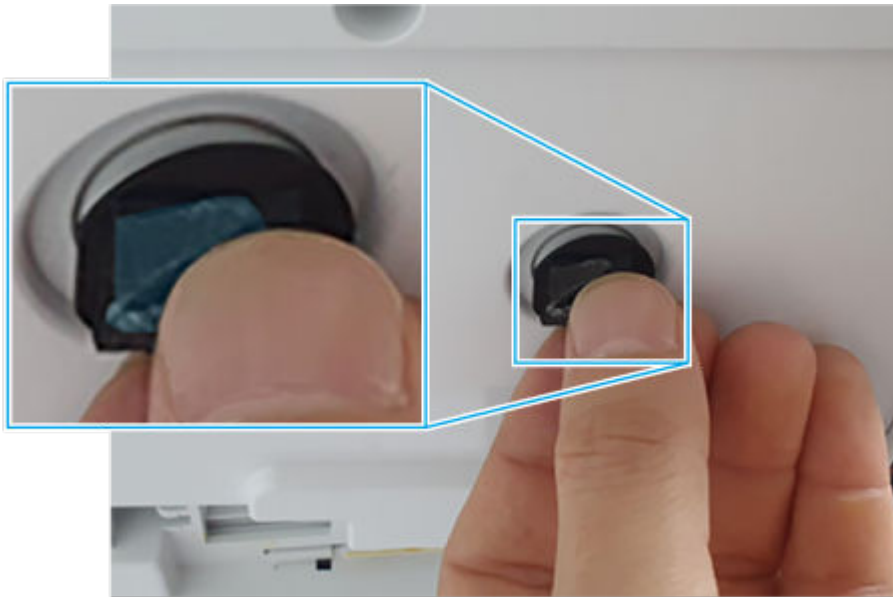
2. Position a suspension clip near the mounting feature on the document feeder, and then push it straight in to install it.

Figure 6-946 Install the suspension clip



3. Remove the protective film from the double-sided tape on the suspension clip.

Figure 6-947 Expose the double-sided tape



4. Repeat these steps for the remaining eight suspension clips.

Figure 6-948 Install the remaining suspension clips



5. Place the white backing plate on the flatbed glass.



NOTE: One corner of the white backing plate has an arrow embossed on it. Place that corner towards the rear left corner of the flatbed glass.

Figure 6-949 Place the white backing plate



6. Position the white backing plate so that the corner with the embossed arrow fits tightly up against the flatbed glass frame.


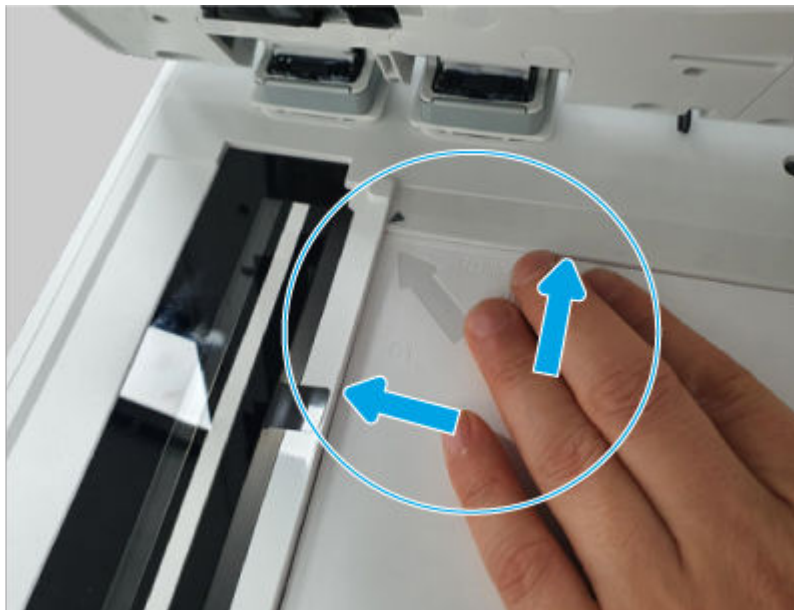
 **NOTE:** Make sure that the rear and left edges of the plate are firmly against the flatbed frame.

Figure 6-950 Register the white backing plate against the frame



7. Fully close the document feeder to install the white backing plate.


 **NOTE:** Open the document feeder and make sure the white backing plate is firmly attached.

Figure 6-951 Close the document feeder



Removal and replacement: ADF pickup roller kit (200sh)

Learn about removing and replacing the document feeder pickup roller kit.

Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-120 Part information

Part number	Part description
5851-7202	ADF roller kit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.

- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Use the document feeder to copy a page, and then verify that the document correctly copies, scans, or prints.

1. Remove the document feeder pickup roller kit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder pickup roller kit.

1. Release the latch, and then open the ADF top door.

Figure 6-952 Opne the cover



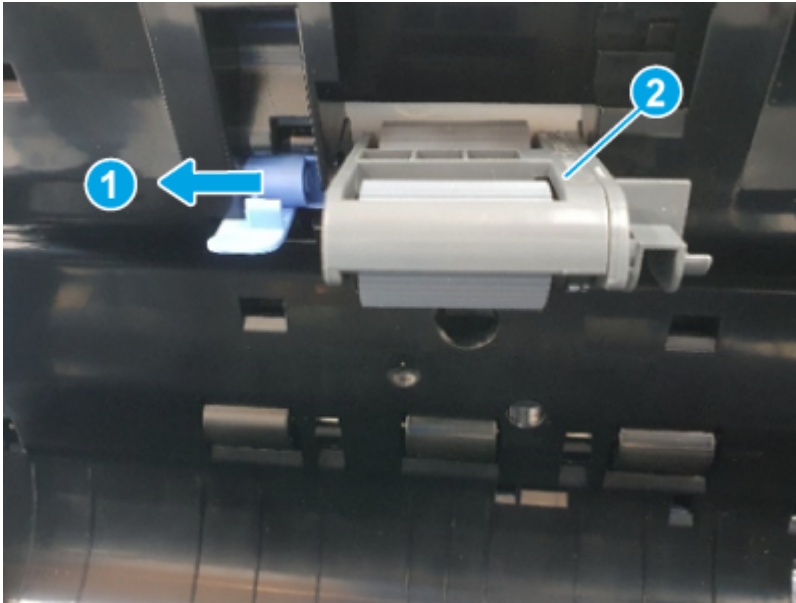
2. Rotate the blue locking lever down.

Figure 6-953 Rotate the lever



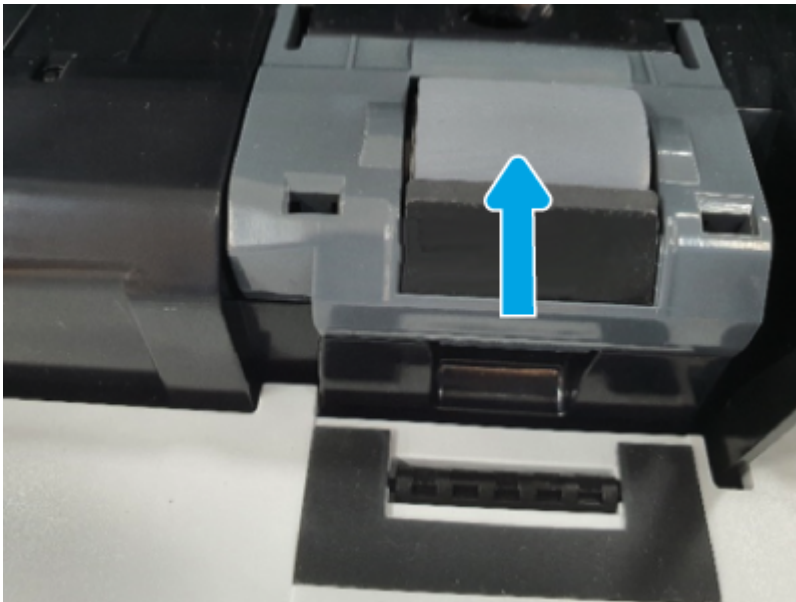
3. Slide the locking lever toward the front of the printer (callout 1), and then remove the pick roller assembly (callout 2).

Figure 6-954 Remove the roller assembly



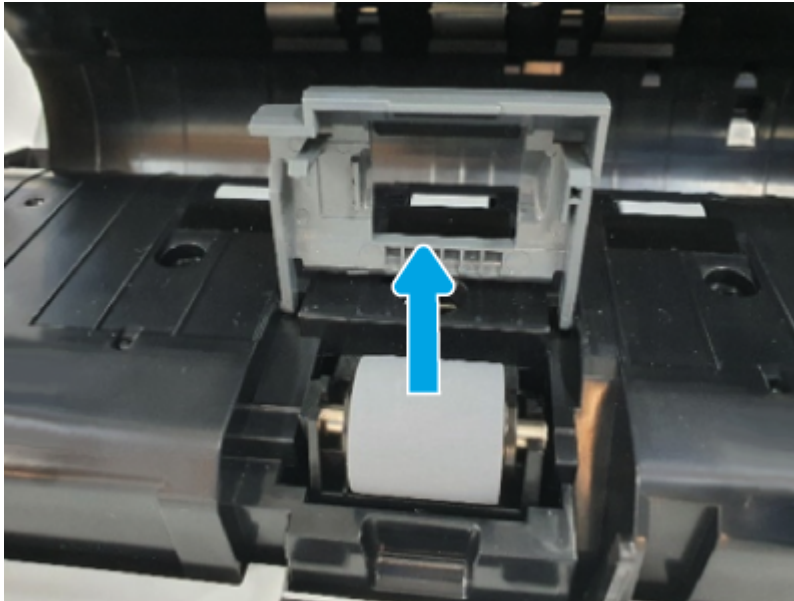
4. Open the separation roller cover.

Figure 6-955 Open the cover



5. Remove the separation roller.

Figure 6-956 Remove the roller



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: ADF image scanner

Learn about removing and replacing the document feeder image scanner.

Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-121 Part information

Part number	Part description
Z9Y05-60047	ADF image scanner

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Use the document feeder to copy a page, and then verify that the document correctly copies, scans, or prints.

1. Remove the document feeder image scanner

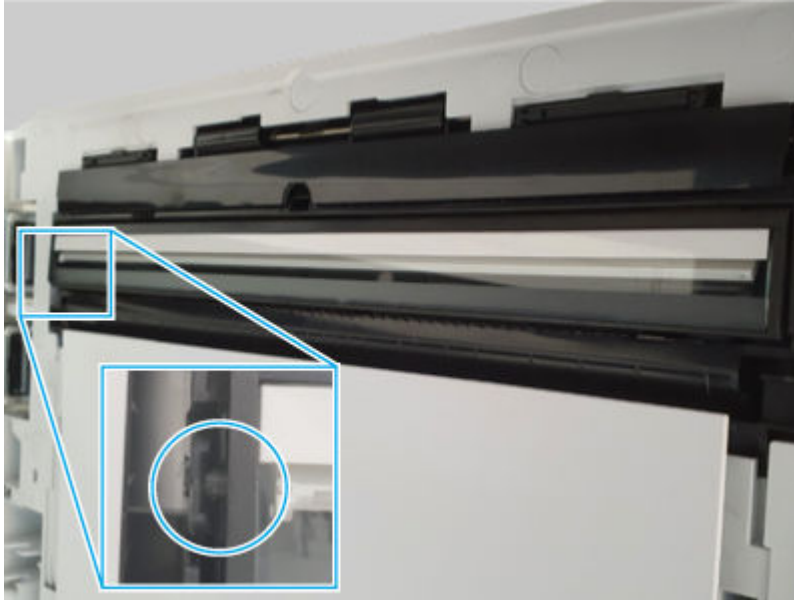
Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder image scanner.

1. Open the ADF top cover.
2. Release the document feeder image scanner, and then slightly separate it from the ADF.



NOTE: Do not attempt to completely remove the image scanner. It is still connected to the ADF by a flat-flexible cable (FFC).

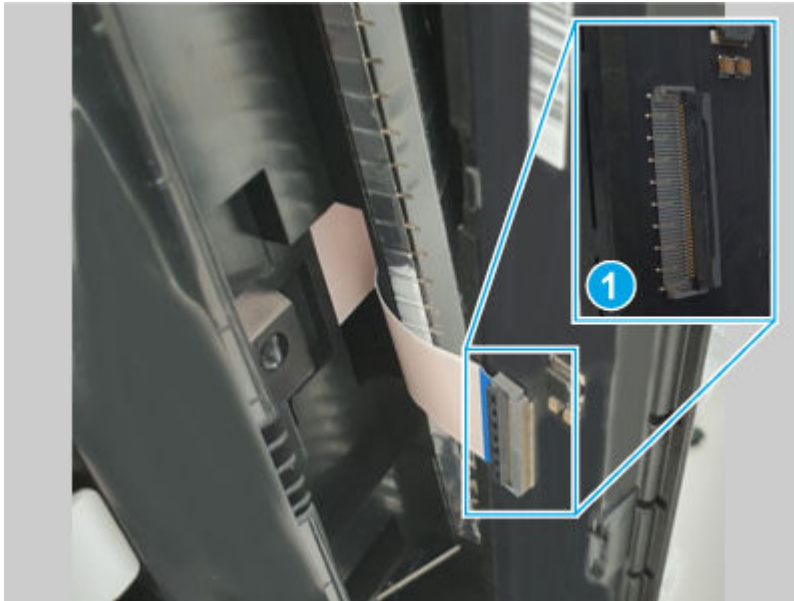
Figure 6-957 Release the image scanner



3. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the image scanner.

 **NOTE:** Release the connector locking clip (callout 2) to remove the FFC.


Figure 6-958 Remove the image scanner



2. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: ADF PCA (200sh)

Learn about removing and replacing the document feeder printed circuit assembly (PCA).


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-122 Part Information

Part number	Part description
5QJ90-67013	ADF PCA_ENT EASE board
5QJ90-67008	ADF PCA_WF EASE board (for flow)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

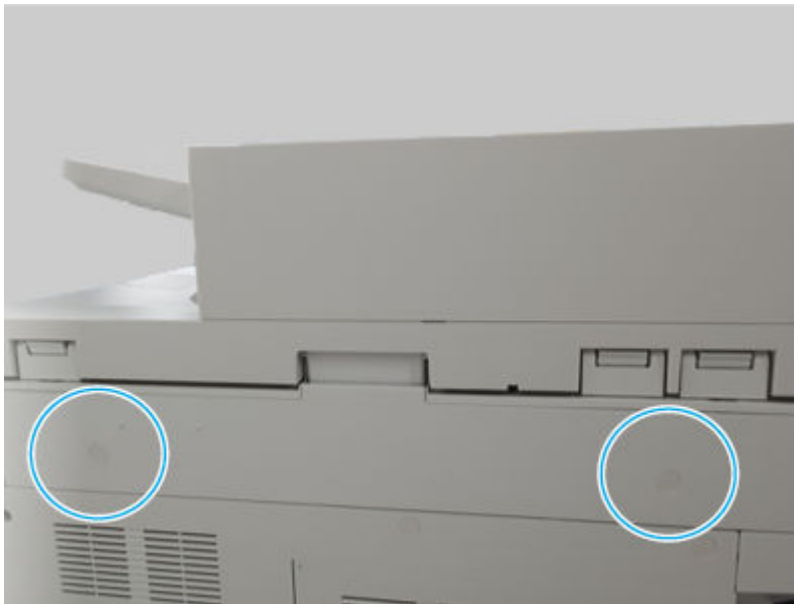
Use the document feeder to copy a page, and then verify that the document correctly copies, scans, or prints.

1. Remove the flatbed scanner rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the scan cover.

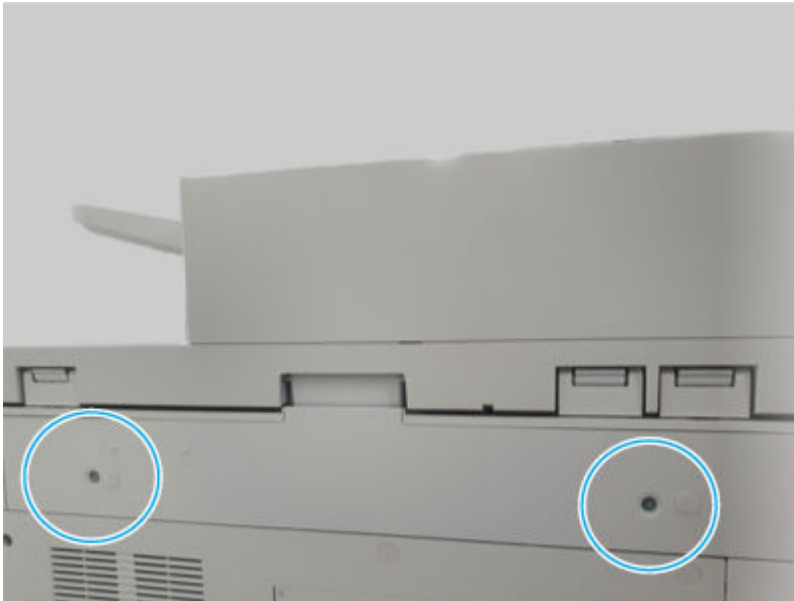
1. Remove two screw caps.

Figure 6-959 Remove two screw caps



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the scan cover.

Figure 6-960 Remove two screws and the cover

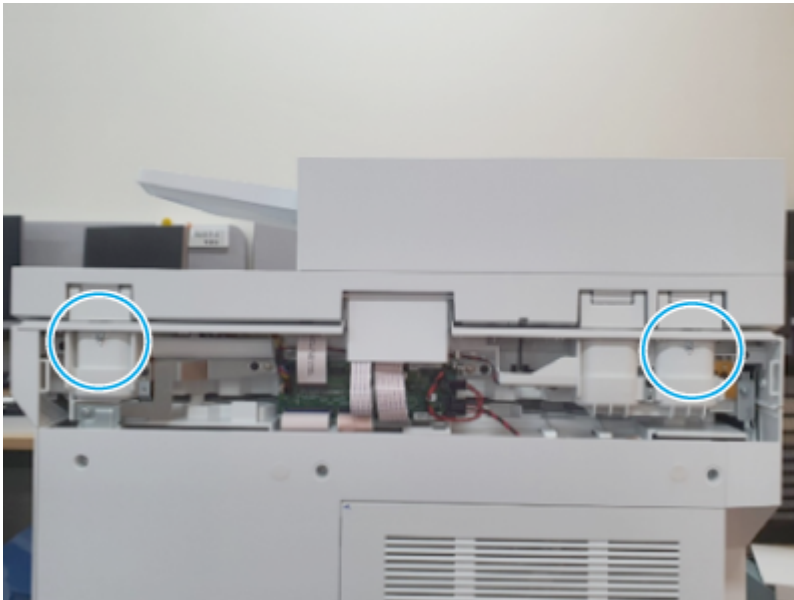


2. Remove the document feeder

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-961 Remove two screws



2. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1).


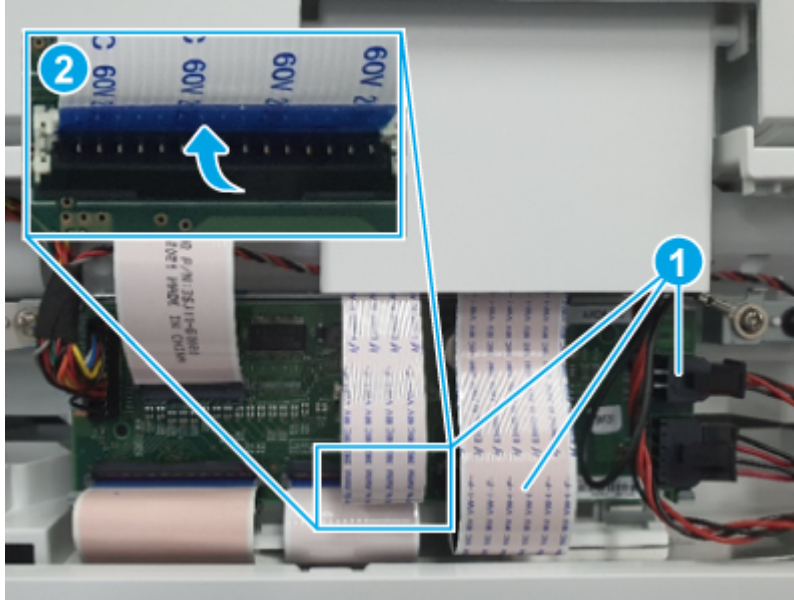
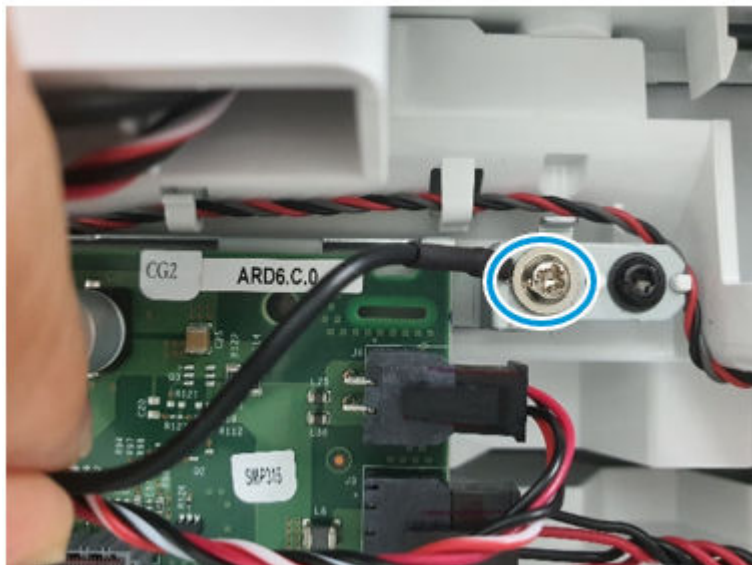
 **NOTE:** Release the retainer clip (callout 2) to disconnect one of the FFCs.


Figure 6-962 Remove the document feeder



3. Remove one screw to release a single-wire harness, and then lift the document feeder up to remove it.

Figure 6-963 Remove the document feeder assembly



 **IMPORTANT:** Special installation instructions are included at the end of this topic (after the unpack and recycle step).

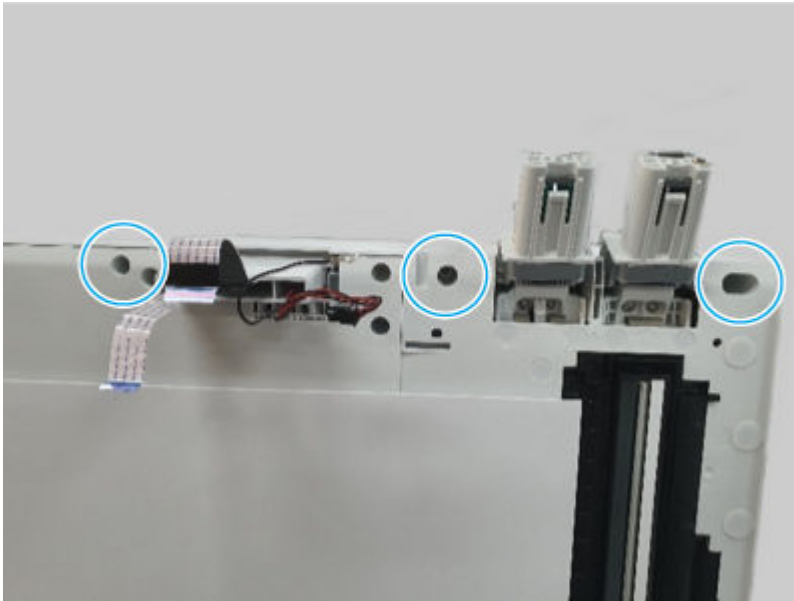
To avoid damaging the ADF when it is reinstalled, make sure to carefully read and follow the installation instructions.

3. Remove the document feeder rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder rear cover.

1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-964 Remove three screws



2. Open the ADF top cover, remove one screw, and then remove the ADF rear cover.

Figure 6-965 Remove the cover



4. Remove the document feeder PCA

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder PCA.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors.


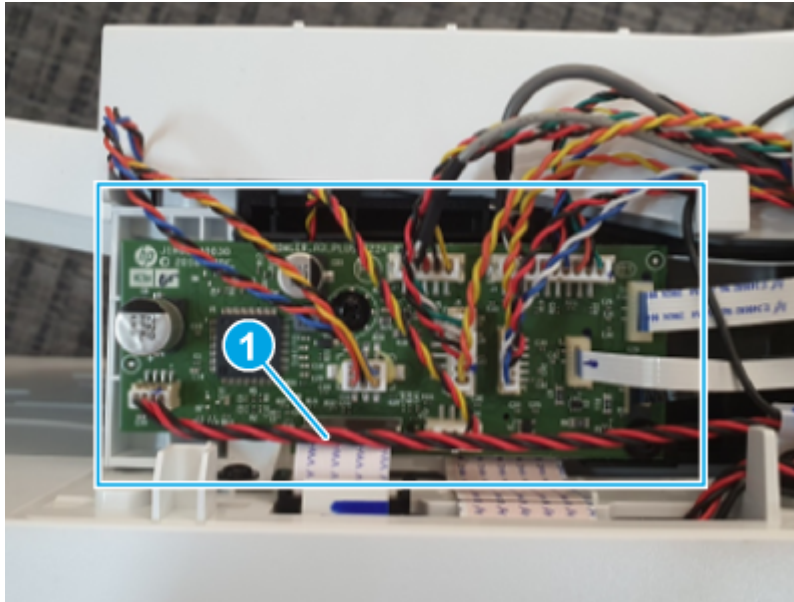
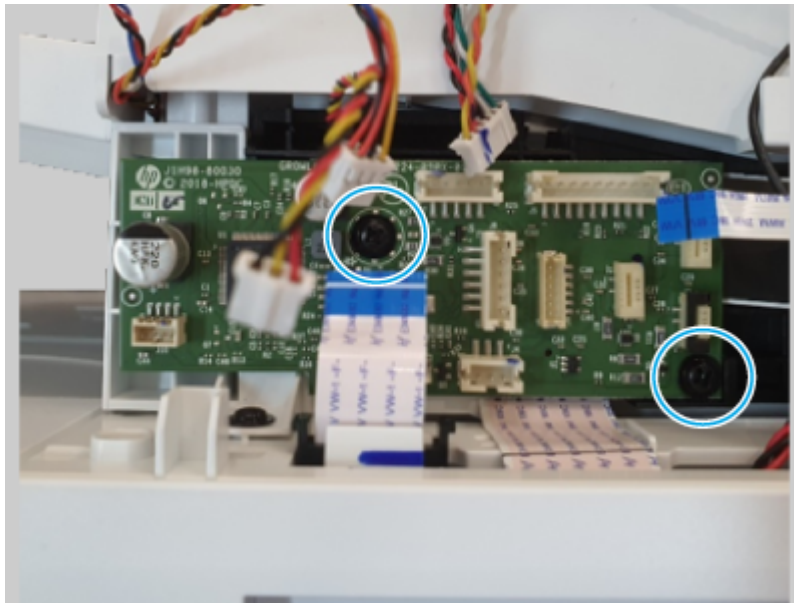
 **NOTE:** One flat-flexible cable (FFC; callout 1) is connected to the PCA with a zero-insertion force (ZIF) connector. Release the connector locking clip to remove the FFC.

Figure 6-966 Disconnect connectors



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the PCA

Figure 6-967 Remove the PCA



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: ADF flat-flexible cable (200sh)

Learn about removing and replacing the document feeder flat-flexible cable (FFC).


Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-123 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ90-67009	ADF flat-flexible cable

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Use the document feeder to copy a page, and then verify that the document correctly copies, scans, or prints.

1. Remove the flatbed scanner rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the scan cover.

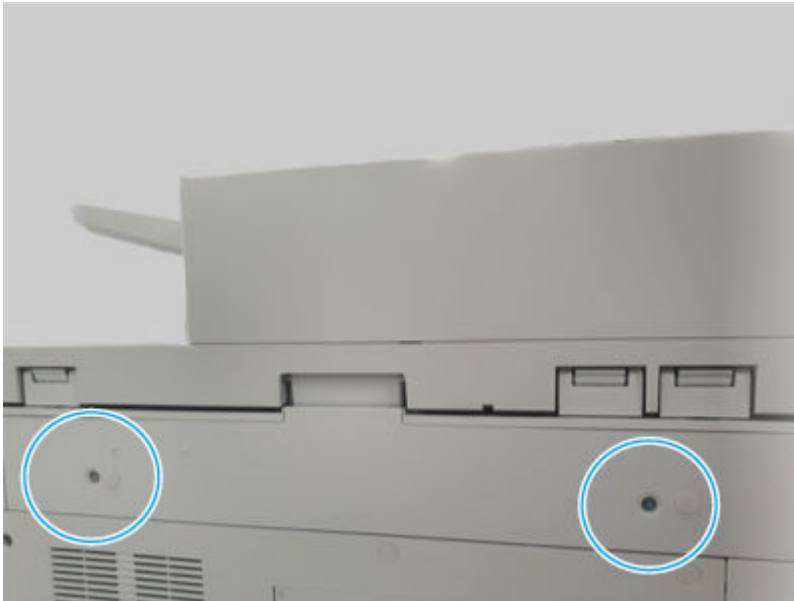
1. Remove two screw caps.

Figure 6-968 Remove two screw caps



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the scan cover.

Figure 6-969 Remove two screws and the cover

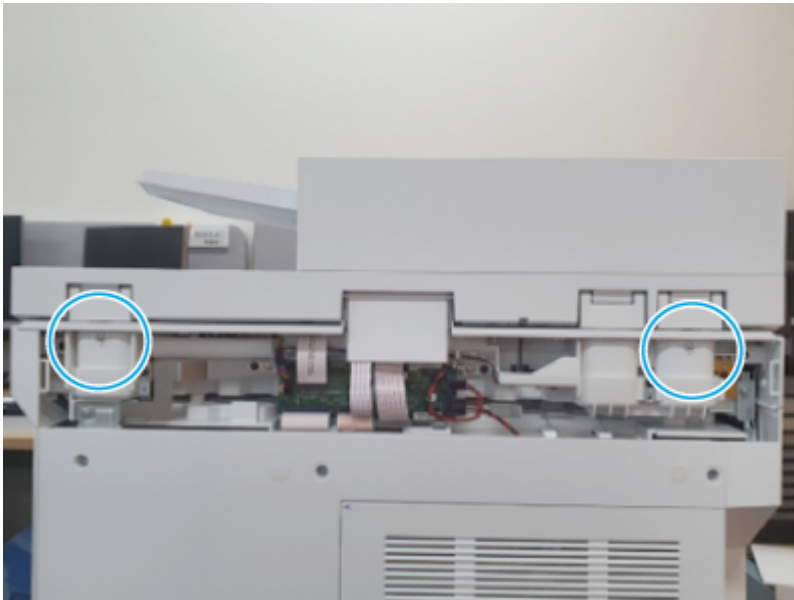


2. Remove the document feeder

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-970 Remove two screws



2. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1).


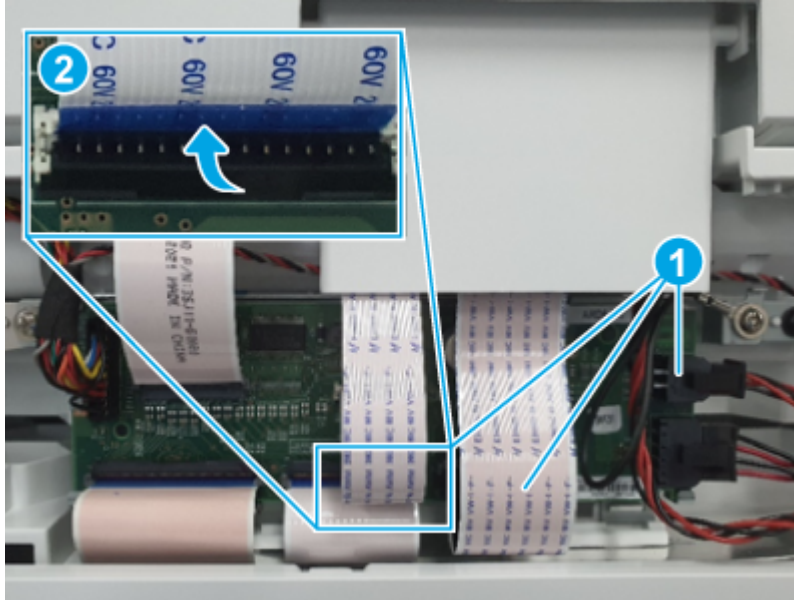
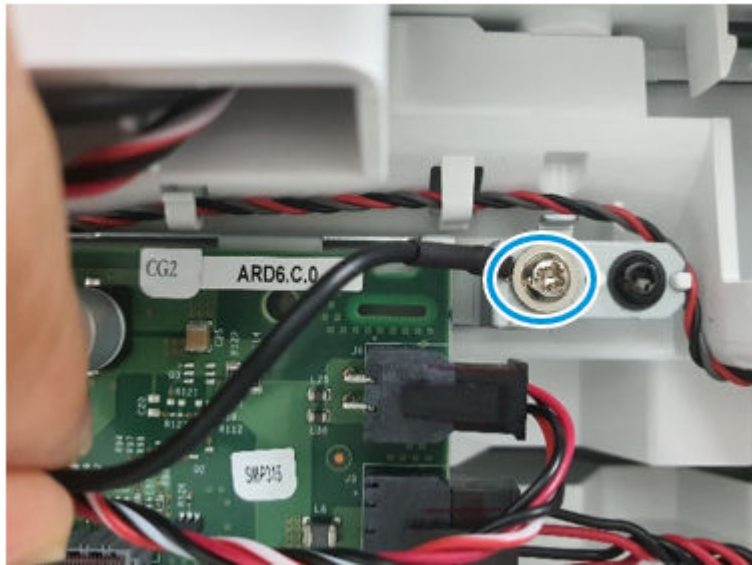
 **NOTE:** Release the retainer clip (callout 2) to disconnect one of the FFCs.


Figure 6-971 Remove the document feeder



3. Remove one screw to release a single-wire harness, and then lift the document feeder up to remove it.

Figure 6-972 Remove the document feeder assembly



 **IMPORTANT:** Special installation instructions are included at the end of this topic (after the unpack and recycle step).

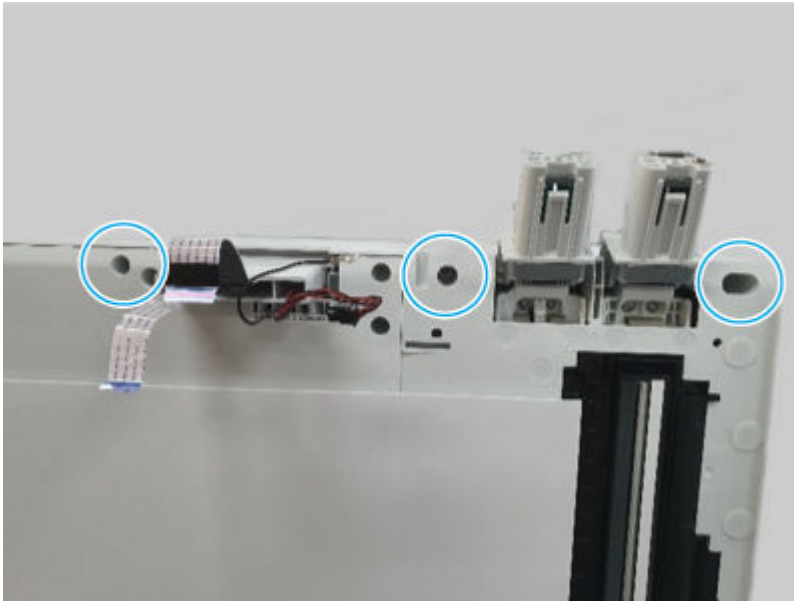
To avoid damaging the ADF when it is reinstalled, make sure to carefully read and follow the installation instructions.

3. Remove the document feeder rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder rear cover.

1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-973 Remove three screws



2. Open the ADF top cover, remove one screw, and then remove the ADF rear cover.

Figure 6-974 Remove the cover



4. Remove the document feeder FFC

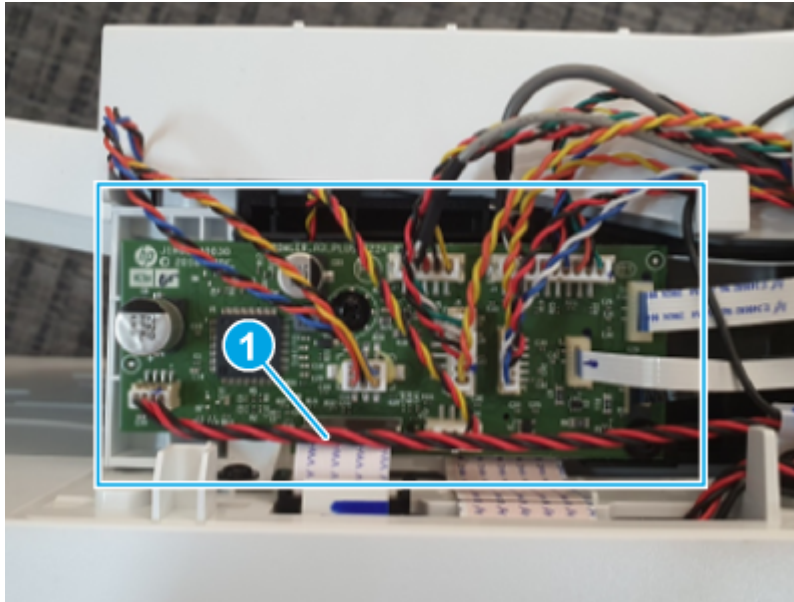
Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder FFC.

1. Disconnect the FFC.



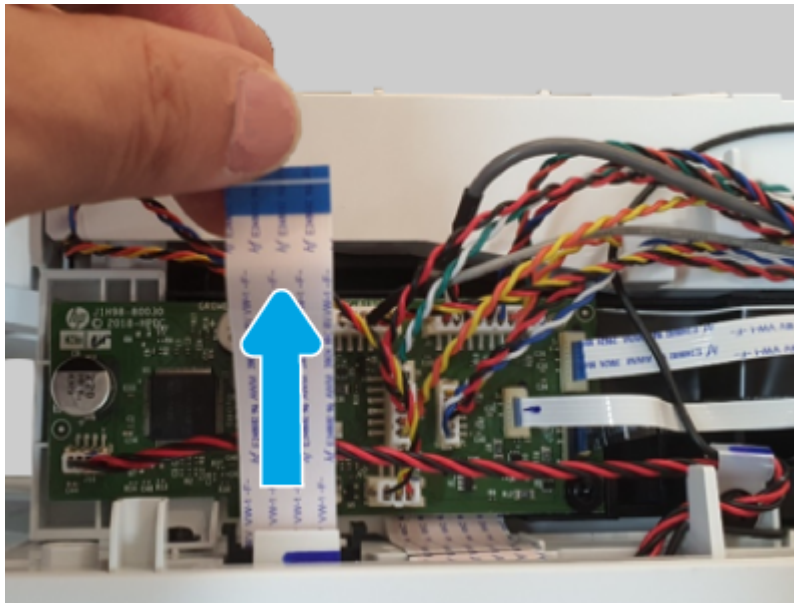
NOTE: The FFC (callout 1) is connected to the PCA with a zero-insertion force (ZIF) connector. Release the connector locking clip to remove the FFC.

Figure 6-975 Disconnect the FFC



2. Remove the FFC.

Figure 6-976 Remove the FFC



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: ADF power cable (200sh)

Learn about removing and replacing the document feeder power cable.


Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-124 Part Information

Part number	Part description
5QJ90-67010	ADF power cable

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

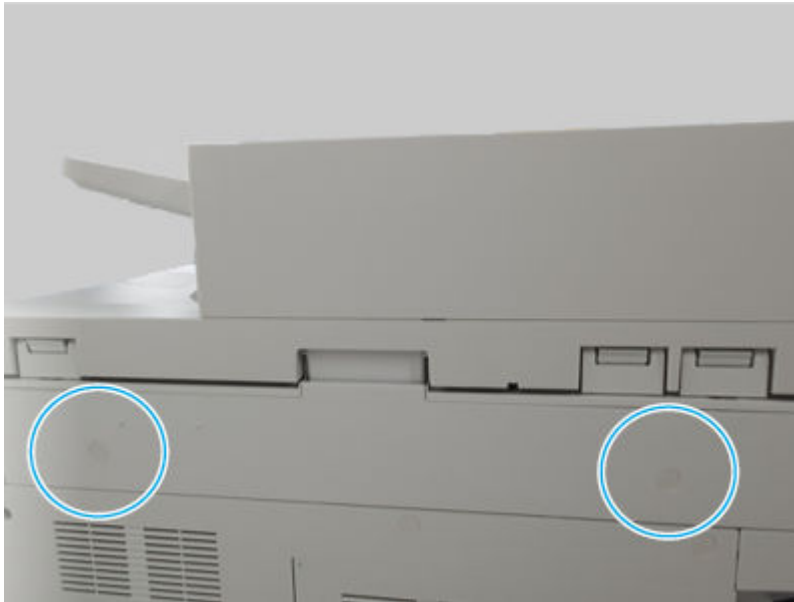
Use the document feeder to copy a page, and then verify that the document correctly copies, scans, or prints.

1. Remove the flatbed scanner rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the scan cover.

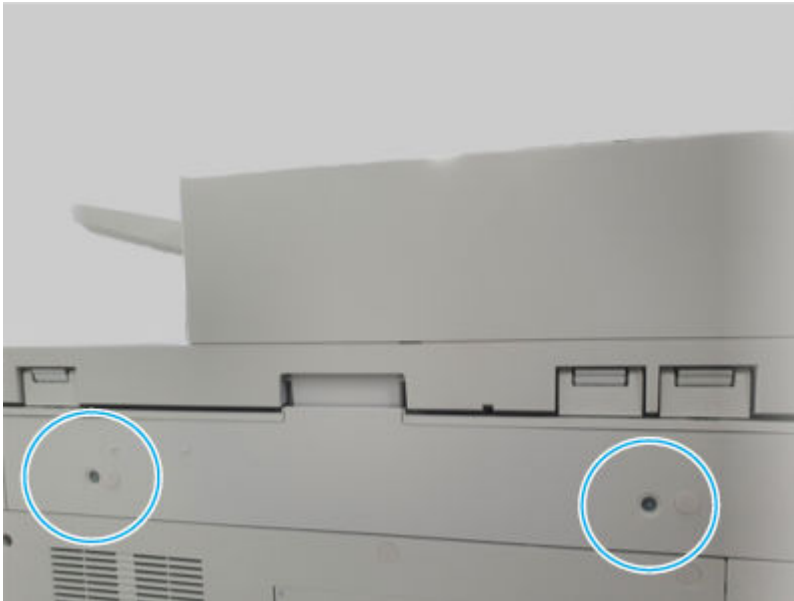
1. Remove two screw caps.

Figure 6-977 Remove two screw caps



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the scan cover.

Figure 6-978 Remove two screws and the cover

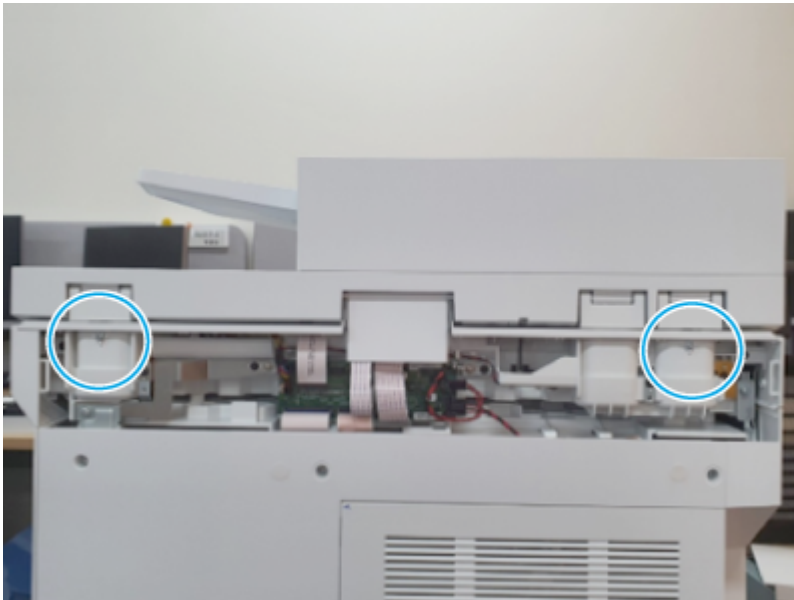


2. Remove the document feeder

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-979 Remove two screws



2. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1).


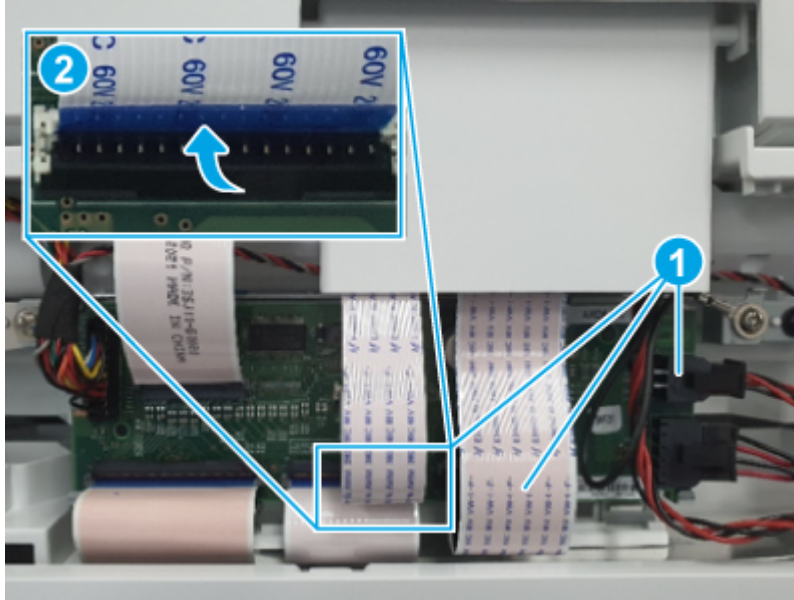
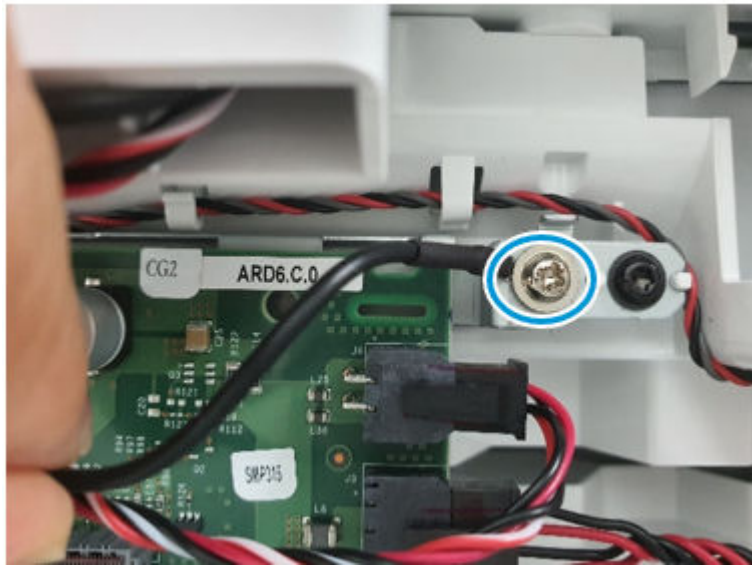
 **NOTE:** Release the retainer clip (callout 2) to disconnect one of the FFCs.


Figure 6-980 Remove the document feeder



3. Remove one screw to release a single-wire harness, and then lift the document feeder up to remove it.

Figure 6-981 Remove the document feeder assembly



 **IMPORTANT:** Special installation instructions are included at the end of this topic (after the unpack and recycle step).

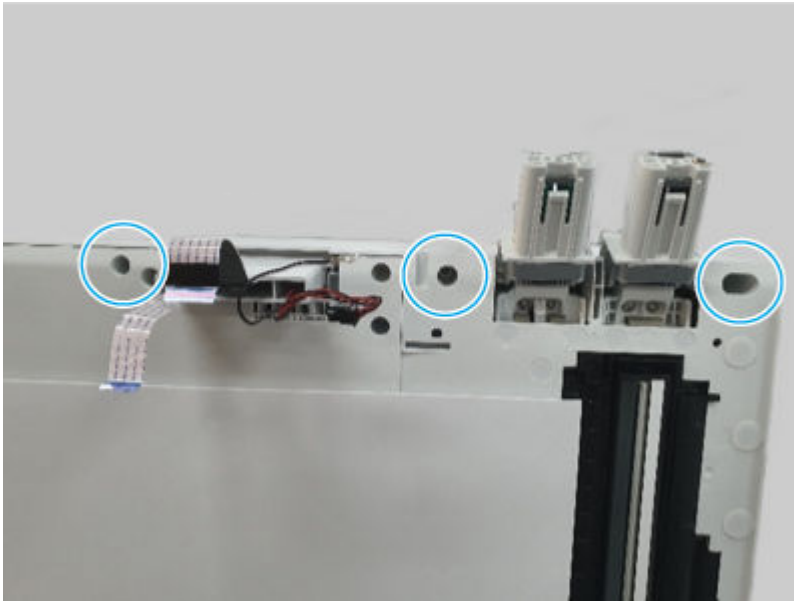
To avoid damaging the ADF when it is reinstalled, make sure to carefully read and follow the installation instructions.

3. Remove the document feeder rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder rear cover.

1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-982 Remove three screws



2. Open the ADF top cover, remove one screw, and then remove the ADF rear cover.

Figure 6-983 Remove the cover

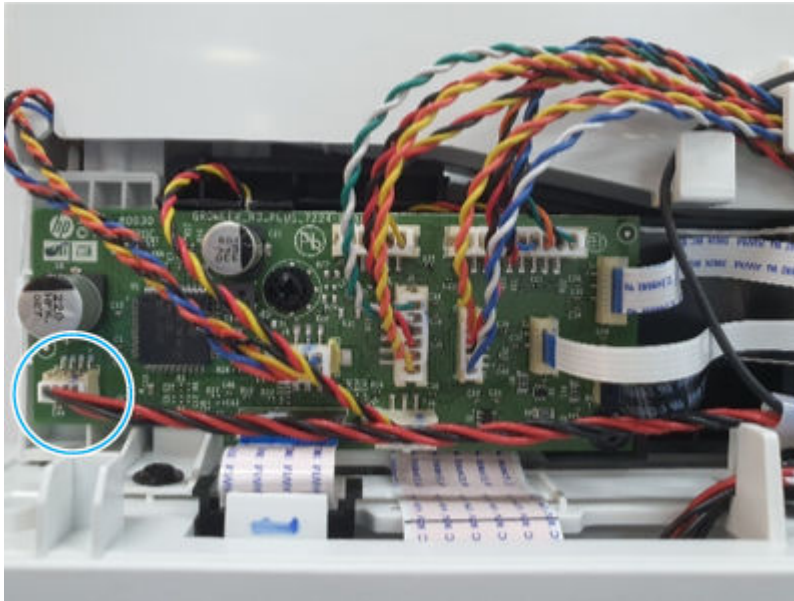


4. Remove the document feeder power cable

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder power cable.

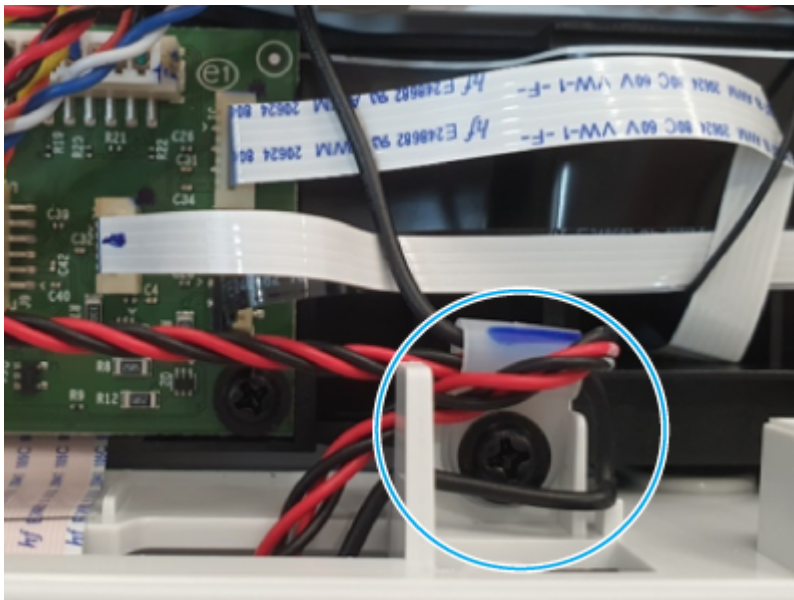
1. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-984 Disconnect one connector



2. Remove one screw, and then remove the cable.

Figure 6-985 Remove the cable



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: ADF hinge kit (200sh)

Learn about removing and replacing the document feeder hinge kit.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-125 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ90-67004	ADF hinge kit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

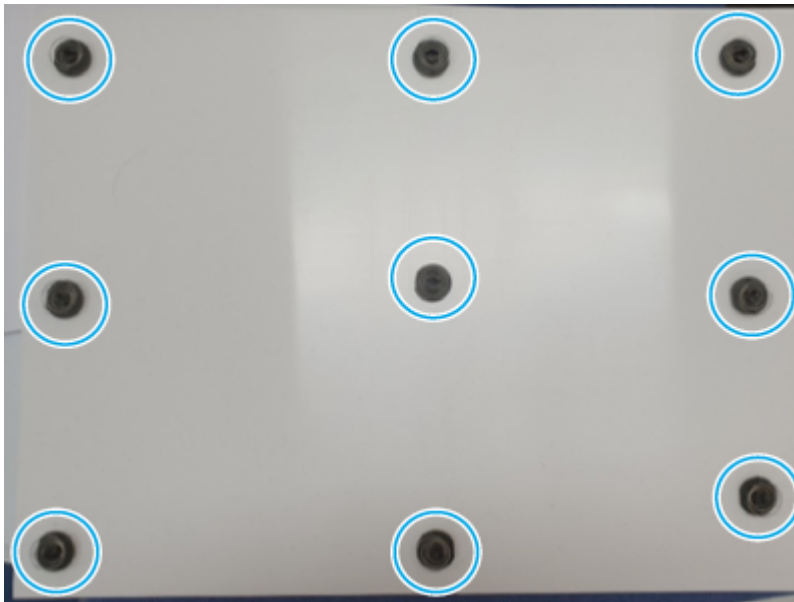
Use the document feeder to copy a page, and then verify that the document correctly copies, scans, or prints.

1. Remove the document feeder white backing

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder white backing.

1. Open the document feeder.
2. Before proceeding, take note of the location of the white backing mounting clips.

Figure 6-986 Locate the clips



3. Disconnect nine clips, and then remove the white backing.

Figure 6-987 Remove the white backing

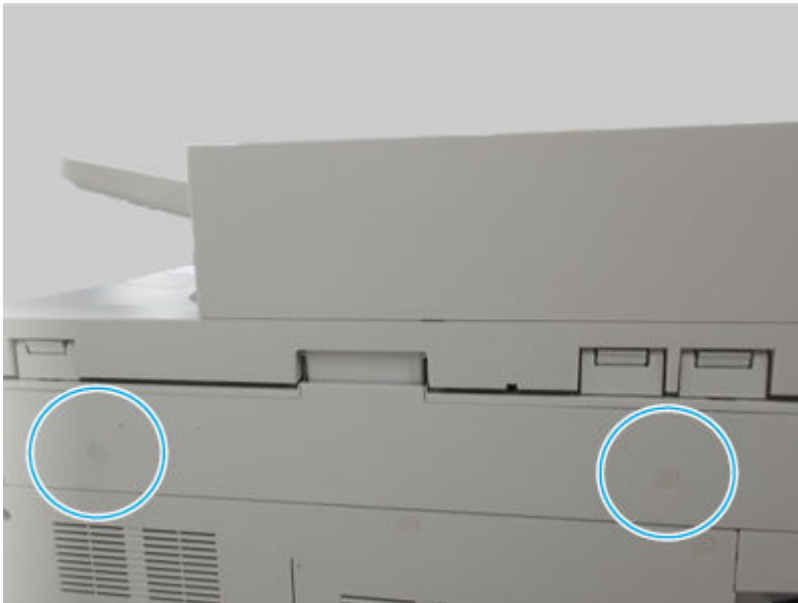


2. Remove the flatbed scanner rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the scan cover.

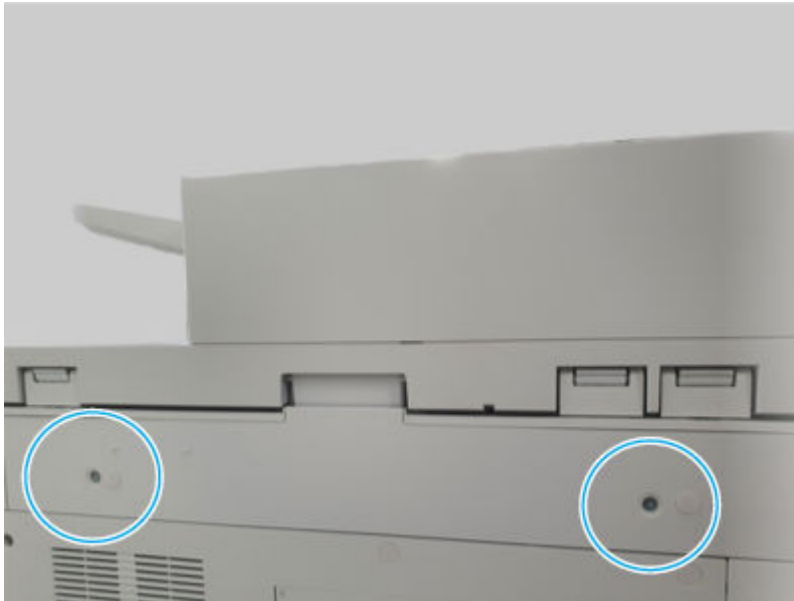
1. Remove two screw caps.

Figure 6-988 Remove two screw caps



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the scan cover.

Figure 6-989 Remove two screws and the cover

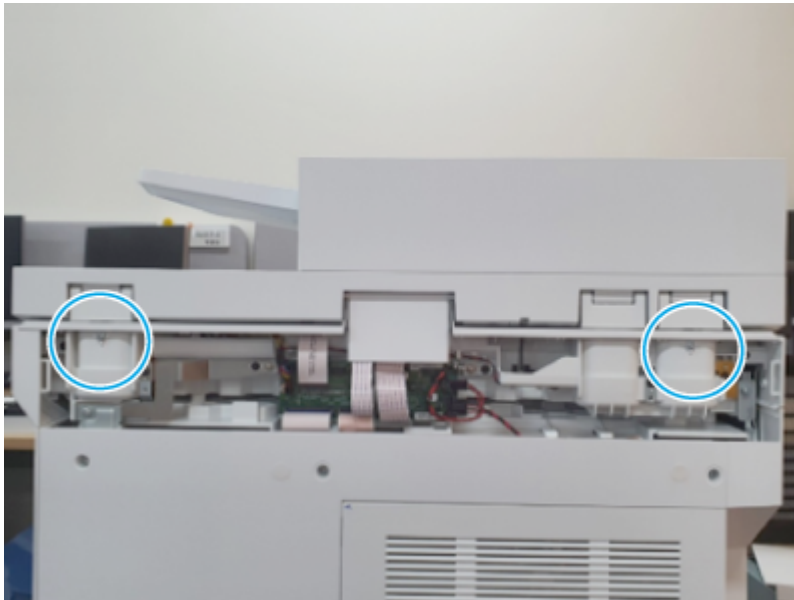


3. Remove the document feeder

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-990 Remove two screws

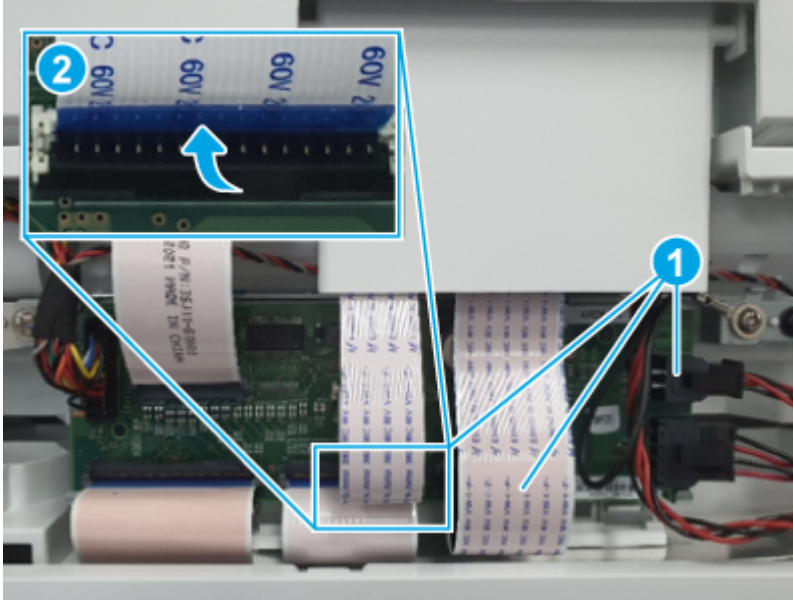


2. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1).



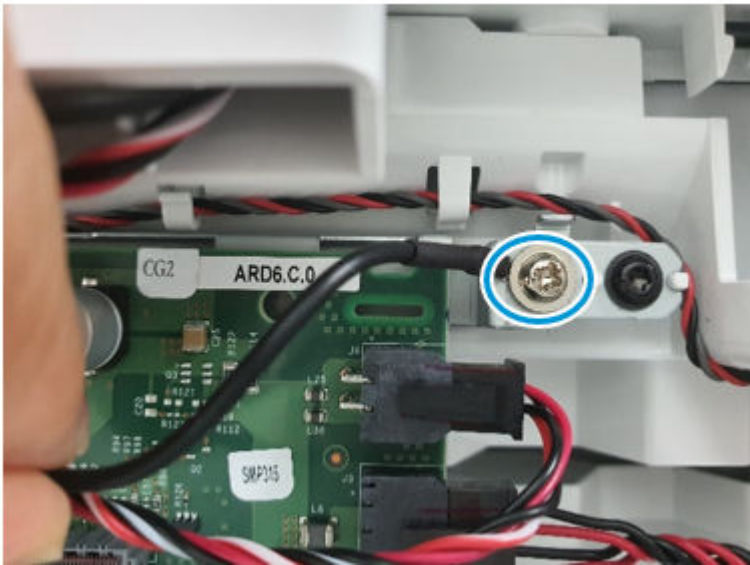
NOTE: Release the retainer clip (callout 2) to disconnect one of the FFCs.


Figure 6-991 Remove the document feeder



3. Remove one screw to release a single-wire harness, and then lift the document feeder up to remove it.

Figure 6-992 Remove the document feeder assembly



 **IMPORTANT:** Special installation instructions are included at the end of this topic (after the unpack and recycle step).

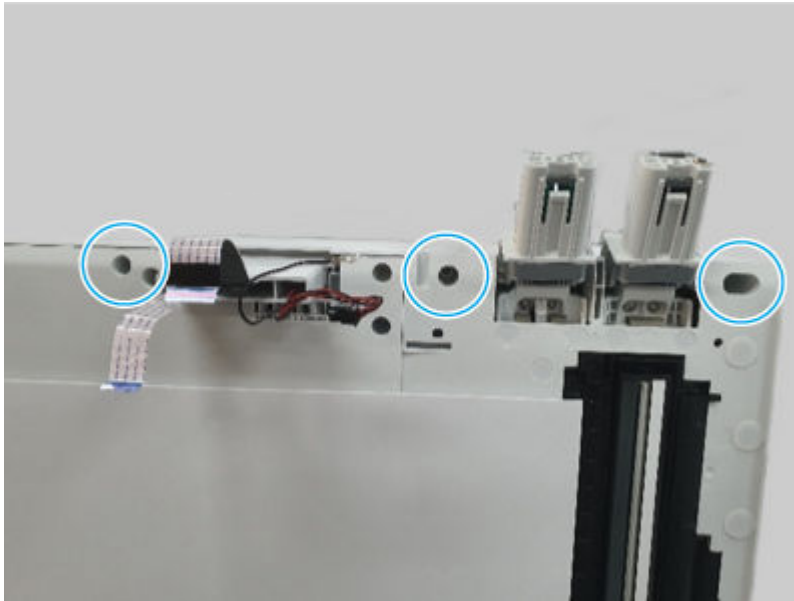
To avoid damaging the ADF when it is reinstalled, make sure to carefully read and follow the installation instructions.

4. Remove the document feeder rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder rear cover.

1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-993 Remove three screws



2. Open the ADF top cover, remove one screw, and then remove the ADF rear cover.

Figure 6-994 Remove the cover

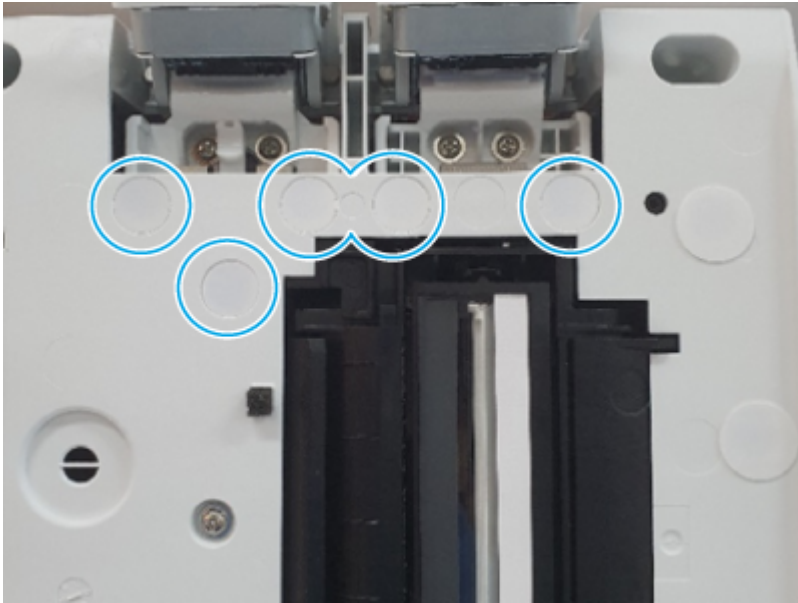


5. Remove the document feeder hinge kit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder hinge kit.

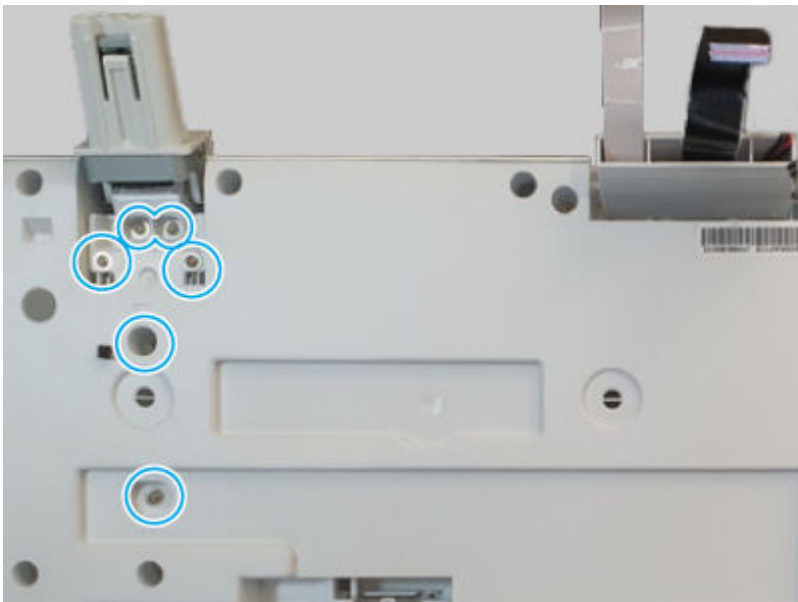
1. Remove five screw caps.

Figure 6-995 Remove five screw caps



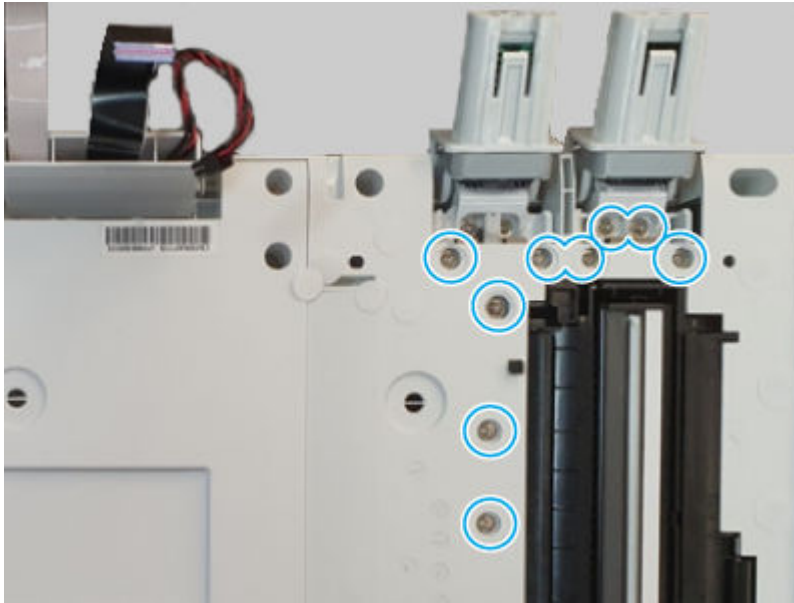
2. Remove six screws, and then remove the hinge.

Figure 6-996 Remove the hinge



3. Remove nine screws, and then remove the hinges.

Figure 6-997 Remove the hinges



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: ADF hinge damper module (200sh)

Learn about removing and replacing the document feeder damper module.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-126 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ90-67006	ADF hinge damper module

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Use the document feeder to copy a page, and then verify that the document correctly copies, scans, or prints.

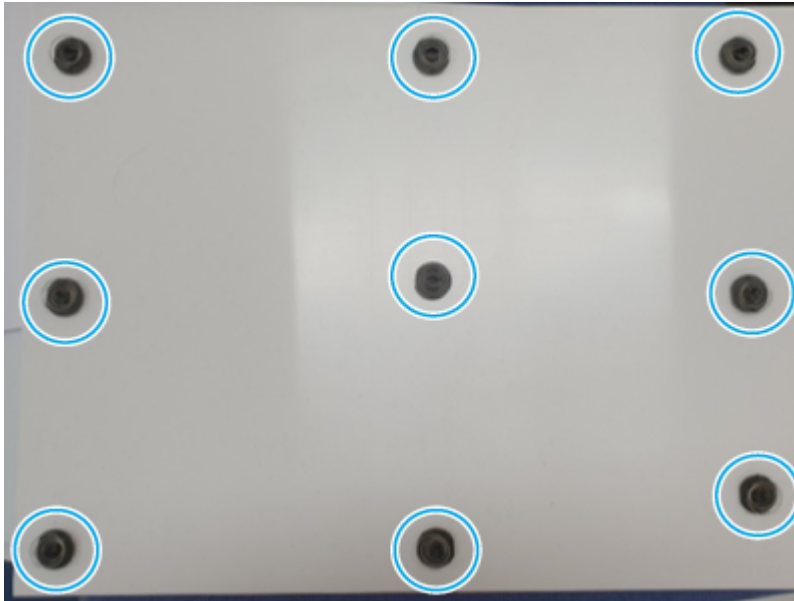
1. Remove the document feeder white backing

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder white backing.

1. Open the document feeder.

2. Before proceeding, take note of the location of the white backing mounting clips.

Figure 6-998 Locate the clips



3. Disconnect nine clips, and then remove the white backing.

Figure 6-999 Remove the white backing

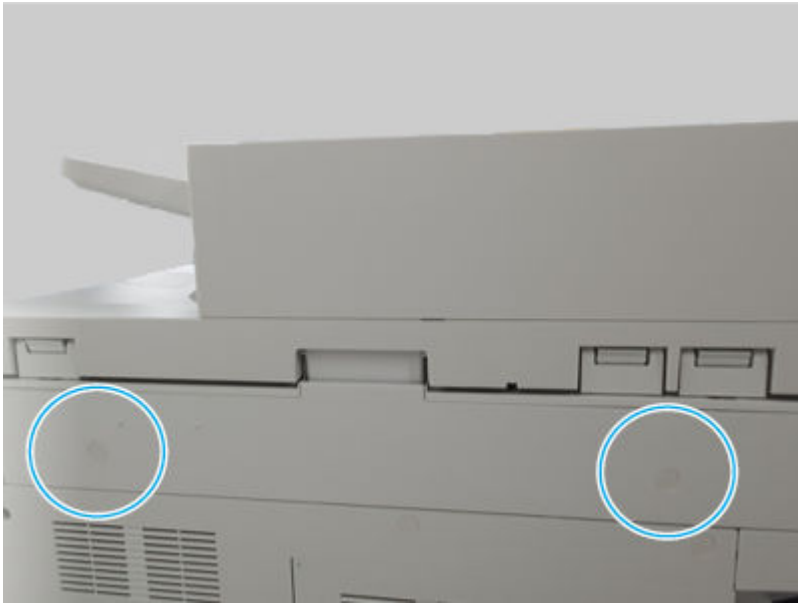


2. Remove the flatbed scanner rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the scan cover.

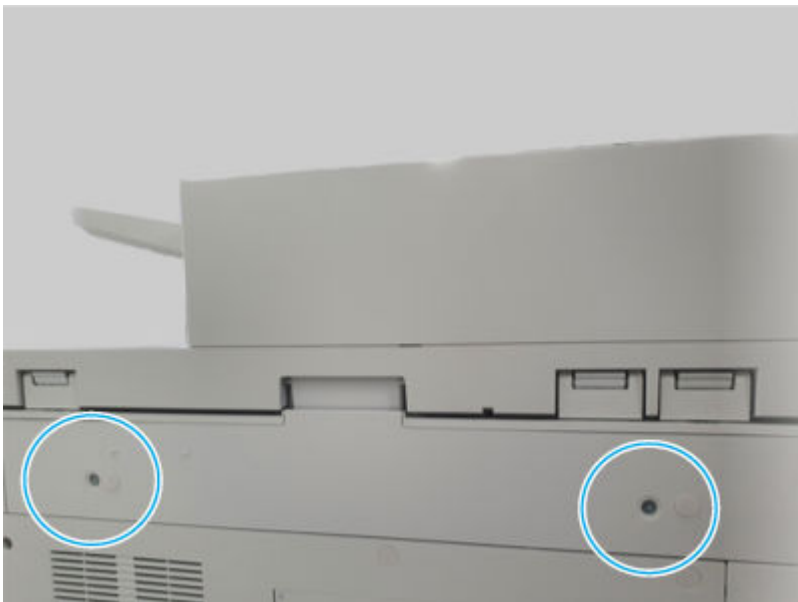
1. Remove two screw caps.

Figure 6-1000 Remove two screw caps



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the scan cover.

Figure 6-1001 Remove two screws and the cover

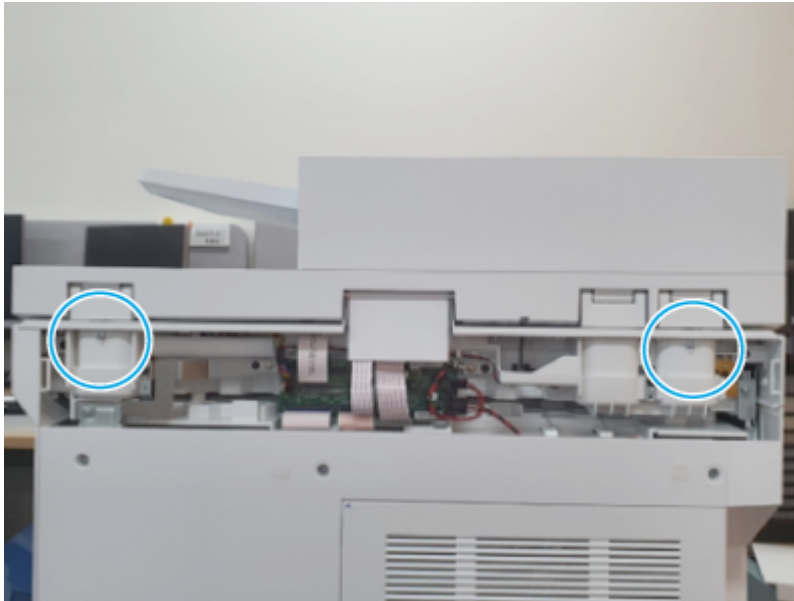


3. Remove the document feeder

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1002 Remove two screws



2. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1).


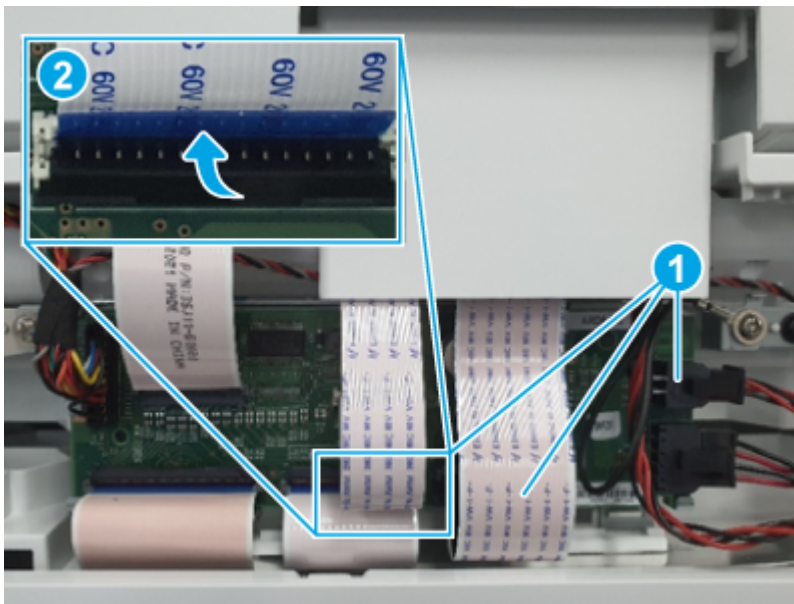
 **NOTE:** Release the retainer clip (callout 2) to disconnect one of the FFCs.


Figure 6-1003 Remove the document feeder



3. Remove one screw to release a single-wire harness, and then lift the document feeder up to remove it.

Figure 6-1004 Remove the document feeder assembly



 **IMPORTANT:** Special installation instructions are included at the end of this topic (after the unpack and recycle step).

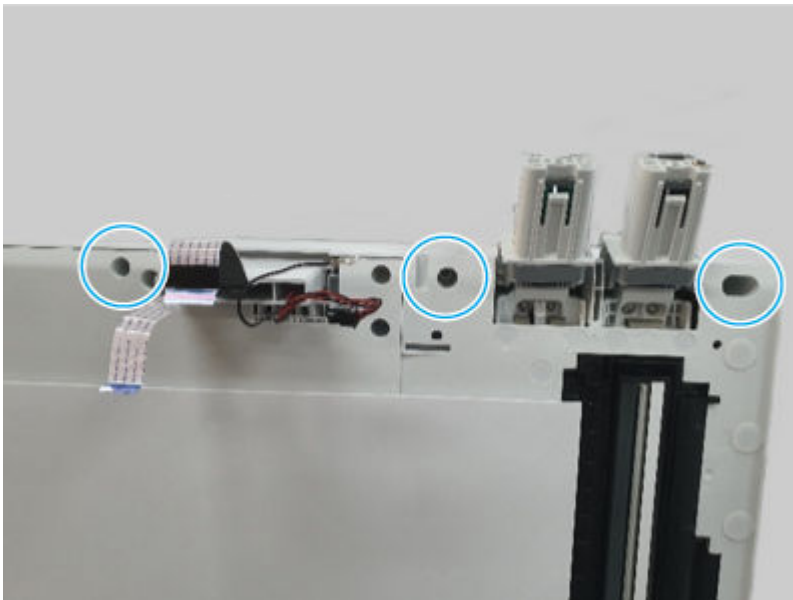
To avoid damaging the ADF when it is reinstalled, make sure to carefully read and follow the installation instructions.

4. Remove the document feeder rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder rear cover.

1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1005 Remove three screws



2. Open the ADF top cover, remove one screw, and then remove the ADF rear cover.

Figure 6-1006 Remove the cover



5. Remove the document feeder hinge damper module

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder hinge damper module.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1007 Remove two screws



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the hinge damper module.


Figure 6-1008 Remove the hinge damper module



6. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

100-Sheet ADF

Learn about ADF parts removal and replacement.

Removal and replacement: ADF CMF panel (100sh)

Learn about removing and replacing the document feeder color panel.


Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-127 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ90-40056	ADF CMF panel

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Use the document feeder to copy a page, and then verify that the document correctly copies, scans, or prints.

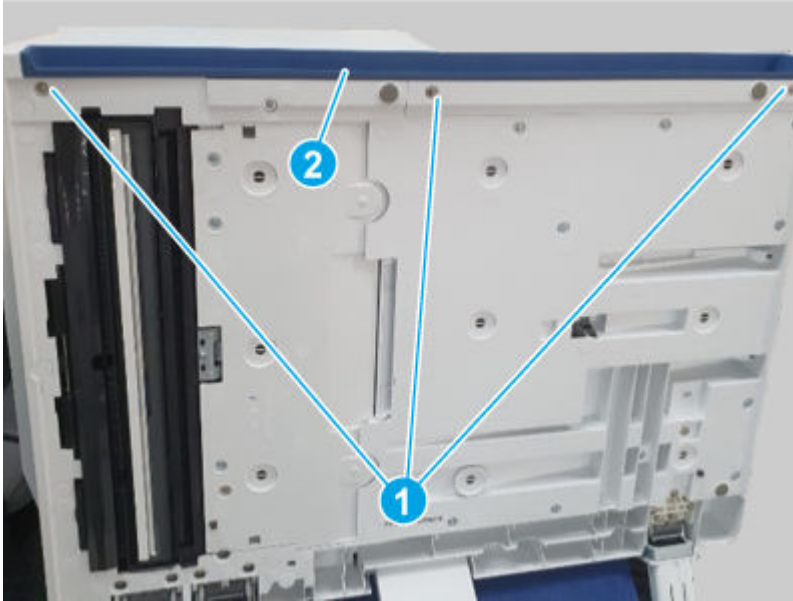
1. Remove the document feeder color panel

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder color panel.

1. Open the document feeder.

2. Remove three screws (callout 1), release four tabs, and then remove the document feeder color panel (callout 2).

Figure 6-1009 Remove the color panel



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: ADF pickup roller kit (100sh)

Learn about removing and replacing the document feeder pickup roller kit.

Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-128 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ83-67002	ADF roller kit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Use the document feeder to copy a page, and then verify that the document correctly copies, scans, or prints.

1. Remove the document feeder pickup roller kit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder pickup roller kit.

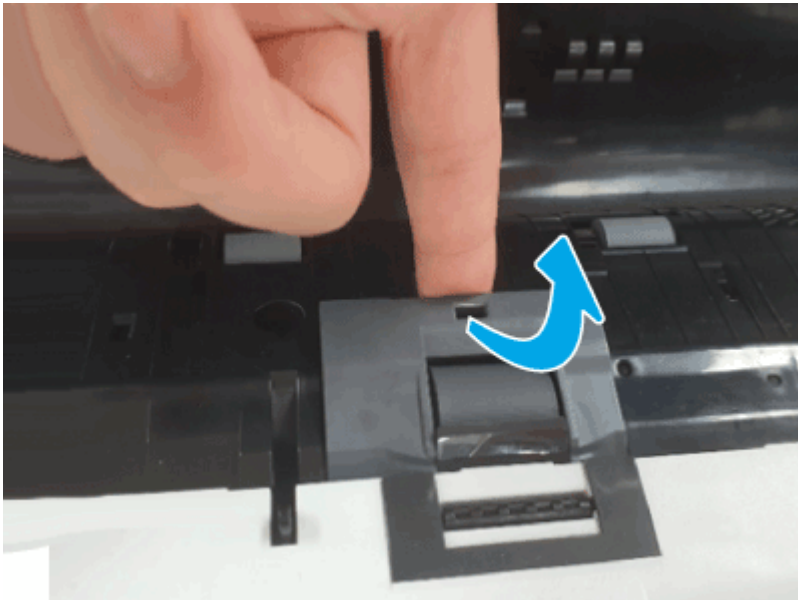
1. Release the latch, and then open the ADF top door.

Figure 6-1010 Opne the cover



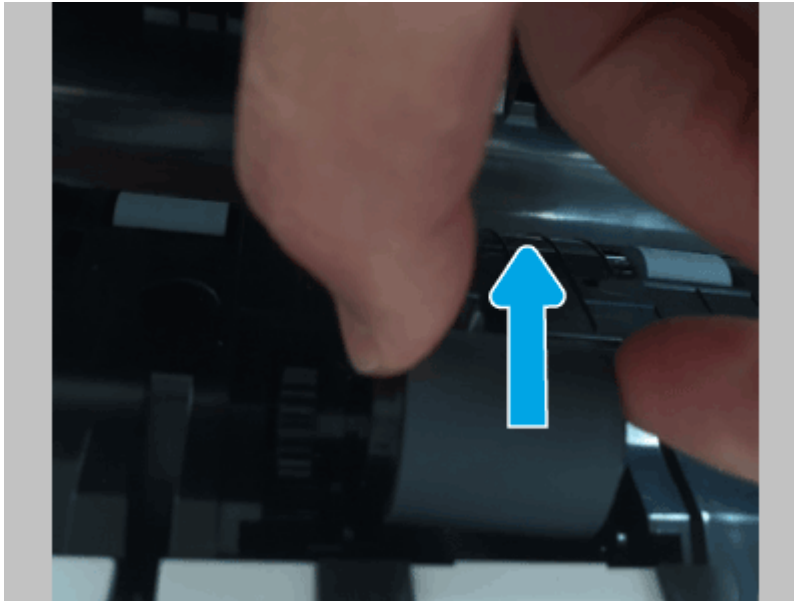
2. Remove the retard roller cover.

Figure 6-1011 Remove the retard roller cover



3. Remove the retard roller.

Figure 6-1012 Remove the roller



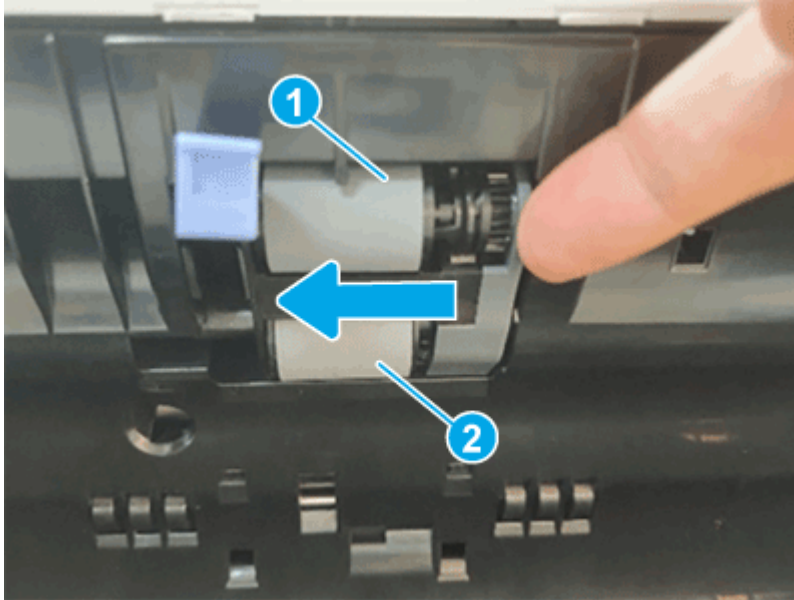
4. Release the pickup and forward roller retaining lever.

Figure 6-1013 Release the lever



5. Slide the roller assembly as shown below to remove it.
 - **Callout 1:** Pickup roller
 - **Callout 1:** Forward roller

Figure 6-1014 Remove the roller assembly



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: ADF PCA (100sh)

Learn about removing and replacing the document feeder printed circuit assembly (PCA).

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-129 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ83-67004	ADF PCA

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Use the document feeder to copy a page, and then verify that the document correctly copies, scans, or prints.

1. Remove the scan cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the scan cover.

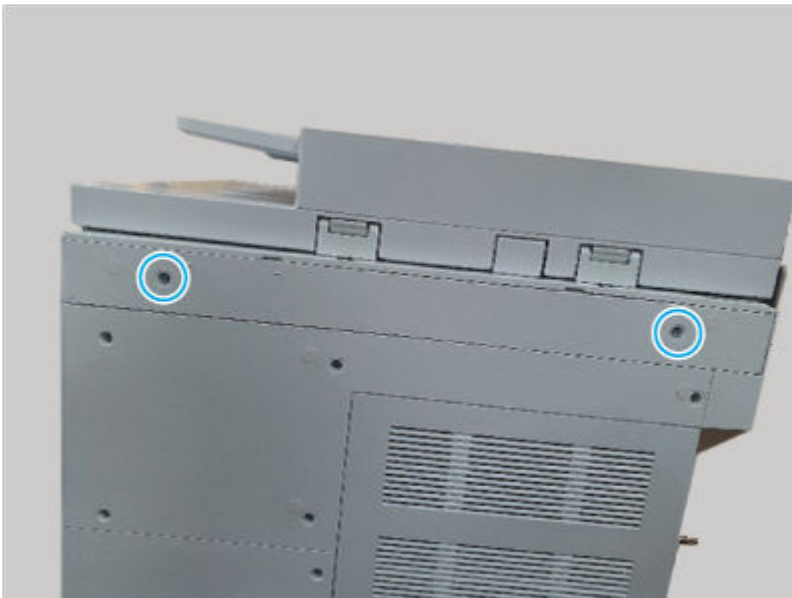
1. Remove two screw caps.

Figure 6-1015 Remove two screw caps




2. Remove two screws, and then remove the scan cover.

Figure 6-1016 Remove two screws and the cover



2. Remove the document feeder

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder.

 **NOTE:** This procedure removes the document feeder whole unit including the white backing.

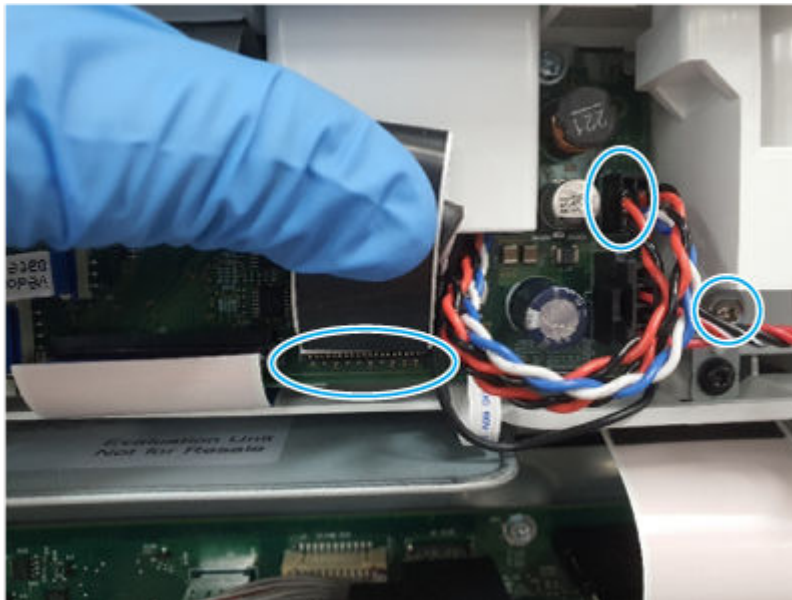
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1017 Remove two screws



2. Disconnect two connectors, remove one screw, and then remove the document feeder.

Figure 6-1018 Remove the document feeder



3. Remove the document feeder rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder rear cover.

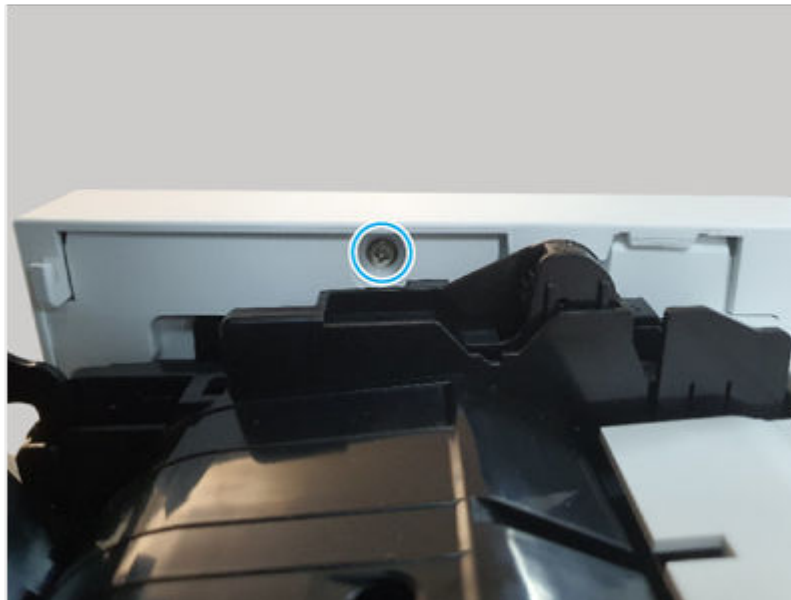
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1019 Remove three screws



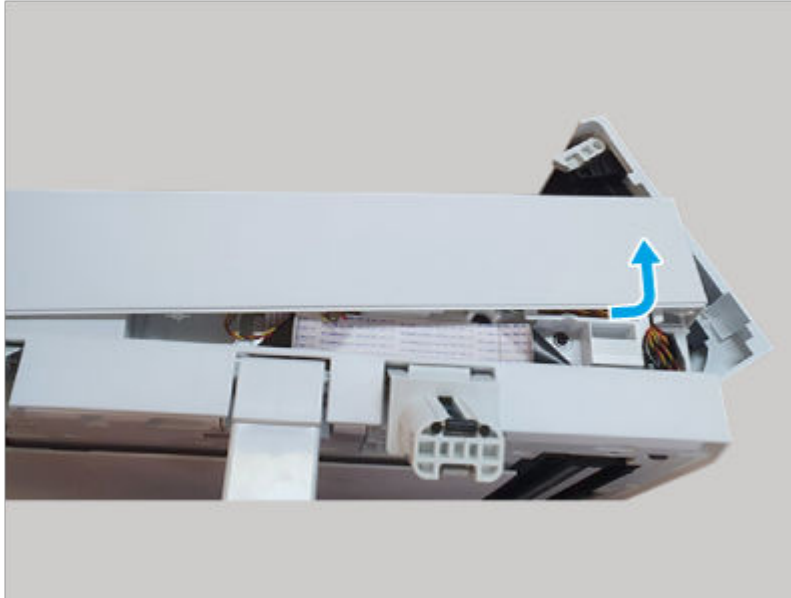
2. Open the ADF top cover, and then remove one screw.

Figure 6-1020 Remove the cover



3. Rotate the right end of the cover away from the ADF, and then remove the ADF rear cover.

Figure 6-1021 Remove the cover



4. Remove the document feeder PCA

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder PCA.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors.


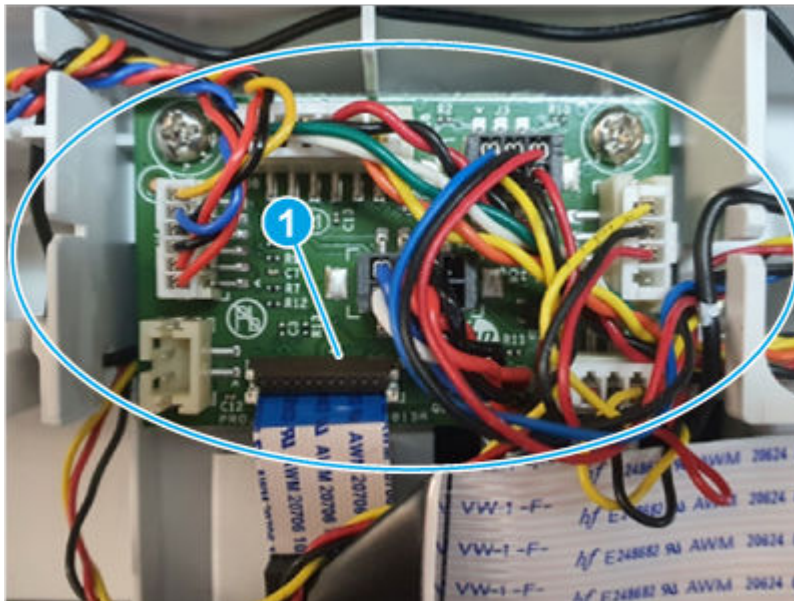
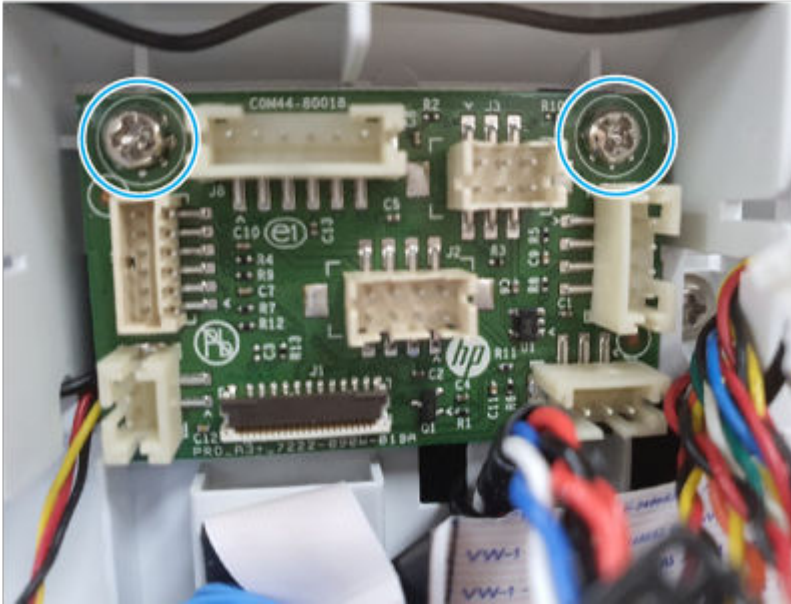
 **NOTE:** The flat-flexible cable (FFC; callout 1) is connected to the PCA with a zero-insertion force (ZIF) connector. Release the connector locking clip to remove the FFC.

Figure 6-1022 Disconnect connectors



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the PCA

Figure 6-1023 Remove the PCA



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: ADF flat-flexible cable (100sh)

Learn about removing and replacing the document feeder sensor flat-flexible cable (FFC).

Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-130 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ83-67005	ADF flat-flexible cable

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Use the document feeder to copy a page, and then verify that the document correctly copies, scans, or prints.

1. Remove the scan cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the scan cover.

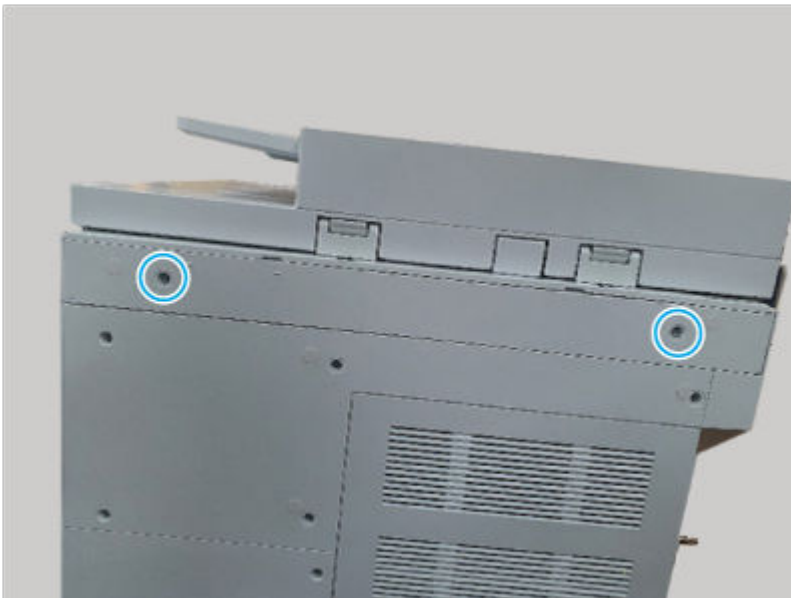
1. Remove two screw caps.

Figure 6-1024 Remove two screw caps




2. Remove two screws, and then remove the scan cover.

Figure 6-1025 Remove two screws and the cover



2. Remove the document feeder

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder.

 **NOTE:** This procedure removes the document feeder whole unit including the white backing.

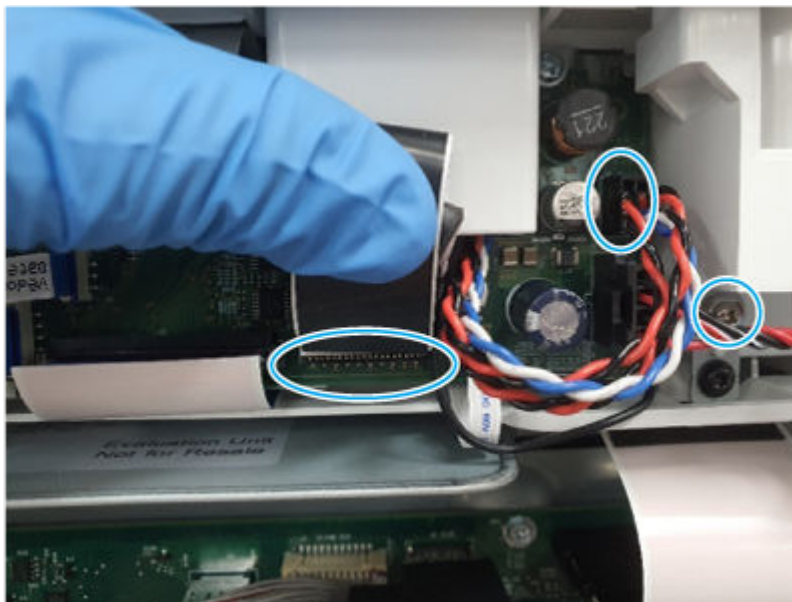
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1026 Remove two screws



2. Disconnect two connectors, remove one screw, and then remove the document feeder.

Figure 6-1027 Remove the document feeder



3. Remove the document feeder rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder rear cover.

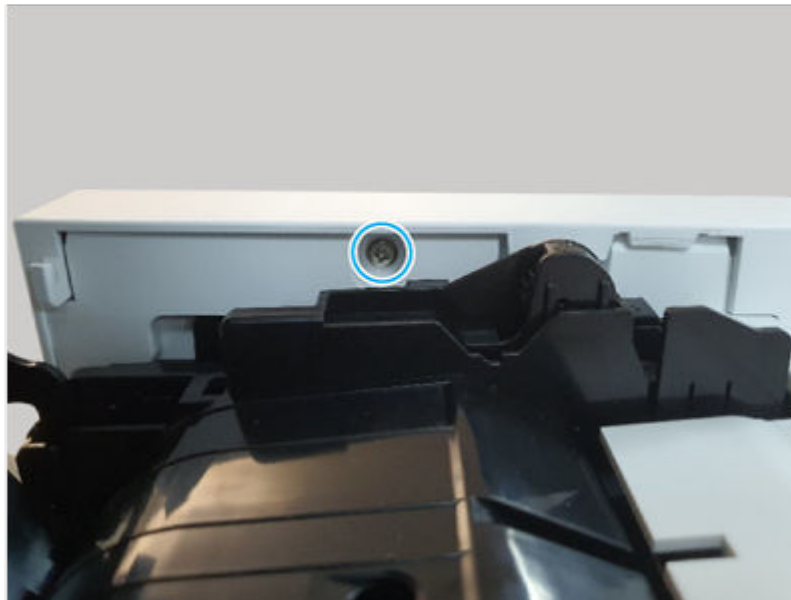
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1028 Remove three screws



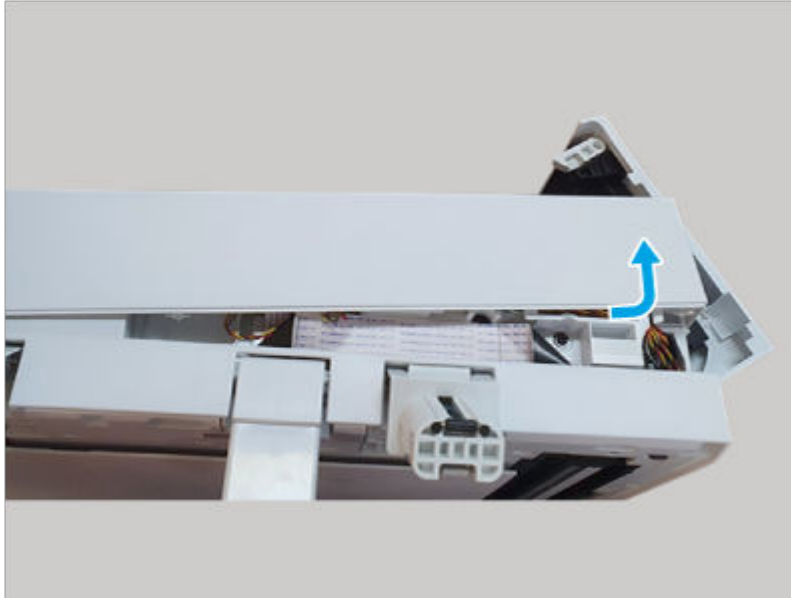
2. Open the ADF top cover, and then remove one screw.

Figure 6-1029 Remove the cover



3. Rotate the right end of the cover away from the ADF, and then remove the ADF rear cover.

Figure 6-1030 Remove the cover



4. Remove the document feeder ADF sensor FFC

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder ADF sensor FFC.

- Disconnect one connector, and then remove the ADF sensor FFC.


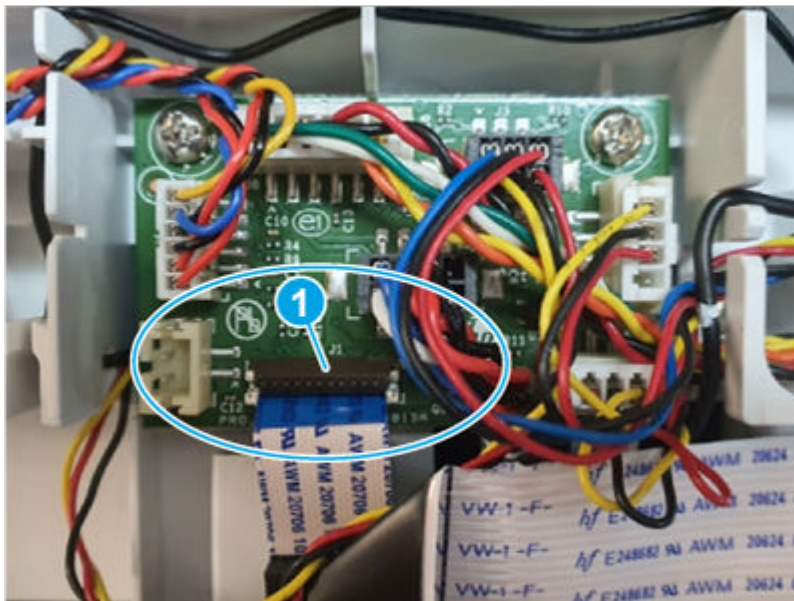
 **NOTE:** The flat-flexible cable (FFC) is connected to the PCA with a zero-insertion force (ZIF) connector (callout 1). Release the connector locking clip to remove the FFC.

Figure 6-1031 Remove the FFC



5. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: ADF power cable (100sh)

Learn about removing and replacing the document feeder power cable.


Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-131 Part information

Part number	Part description
55QJ83-67006	ADF power cable

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

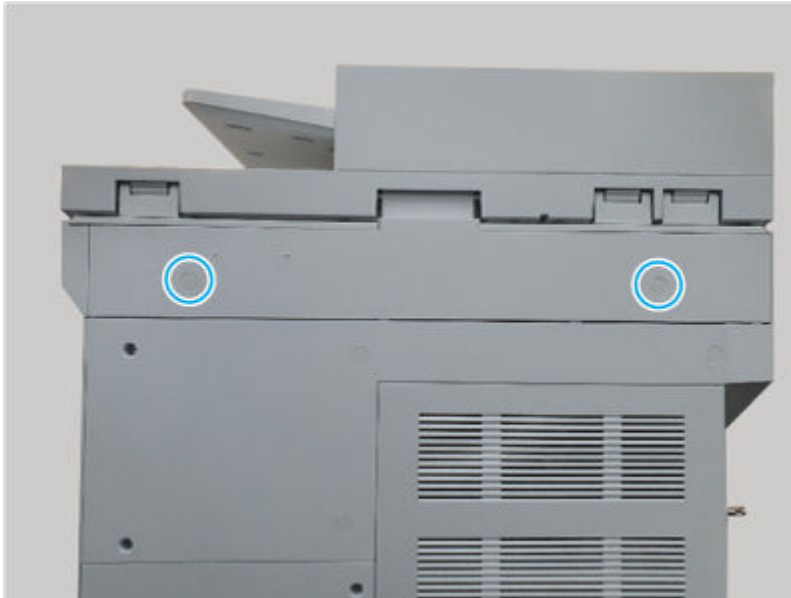
Use the document feeder to copy a page, and then verify that the document correctly copies, scans, or prints.

1. Remove the scan cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the scan cover.

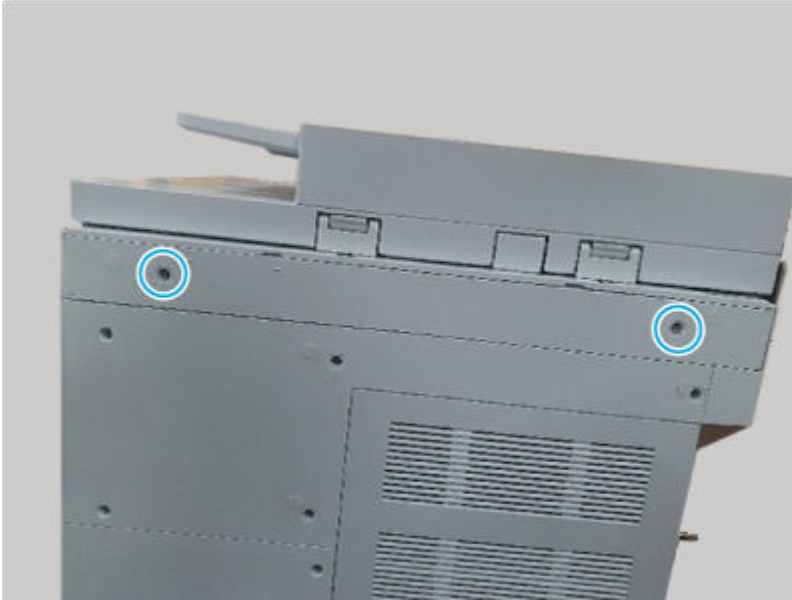
1. Remove two screw caps.

Figure 6-1032 Remove two screw caps




2. Remove two screws, and then remove the scan cover.

Figure 6-1033 Remove two screws and the cover



2. Remove the document feeder

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder.

 **NOTE:** This procedure removes the document feeder whole unit including the white backing.

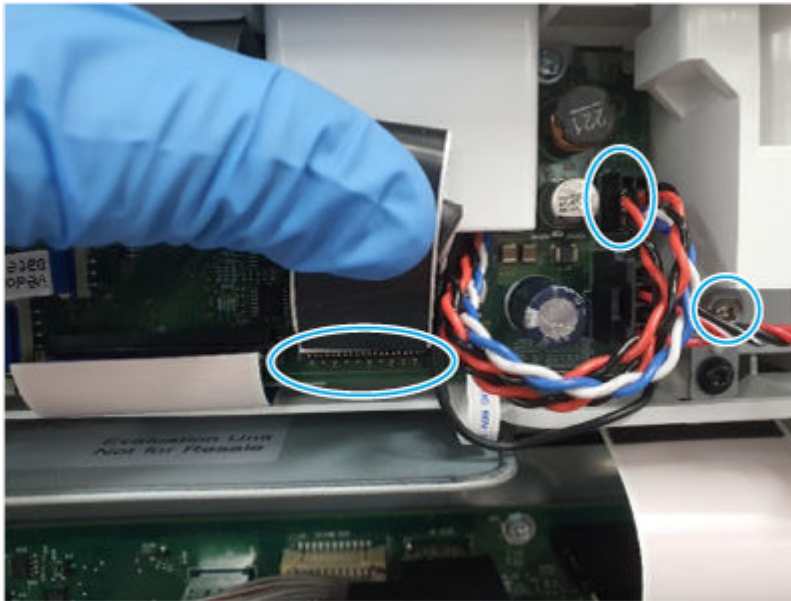
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1034 Remove two screws



2. Disconnect two connectors, remove one screw, and then remove the document feeder.

Figure 6-1035 Remove the document feeder



3. Remove the document feeder rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder rear cover.

1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1036 Remove three screws



2. Open the ADF top cover, and then remove one screw.

Figure 6-1037 Remove the cover



3. Rotate the right end of the cover away from the ADF, and then remove the ADF rear cover.

Figure 6-1038 Remove the cover



4. Remove the document feeder ADF power cable

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder ADF power cable.

- Disconnect one connector, and then remove the ADF power cable.


 **NOTE:** Release the cable from retainers as necessary.

Figure 6-1039 Remove the cable



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: ADF hinge kit (100sh)

Learn about removing and replacing the document feeder hinge kit.

Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-132 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ83-67003	ADF hinge kit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Use the document feeder to copy a page, and then verify that the document correctly copies, scans, or prints.

1. Remove the scan cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the scan cover.

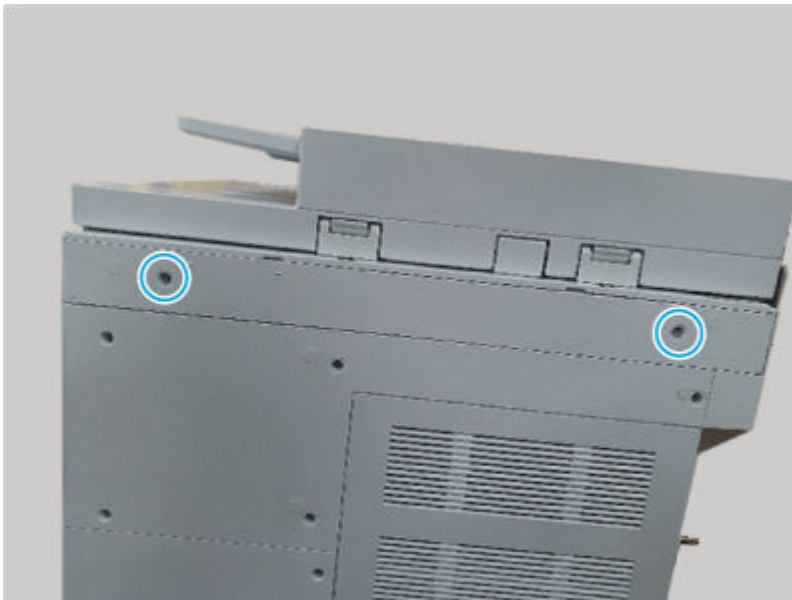
1. Remove two screw caps.

Figure 6-1040 Remove two screw caps




2. Remove two screws, and then remove the scan cover.

Figure 6-1041 Remove two screws and the cover



2. Remove the document feeder

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder.

 **NOTE:** This procedure removes the document feeder whole unit including the white backing.

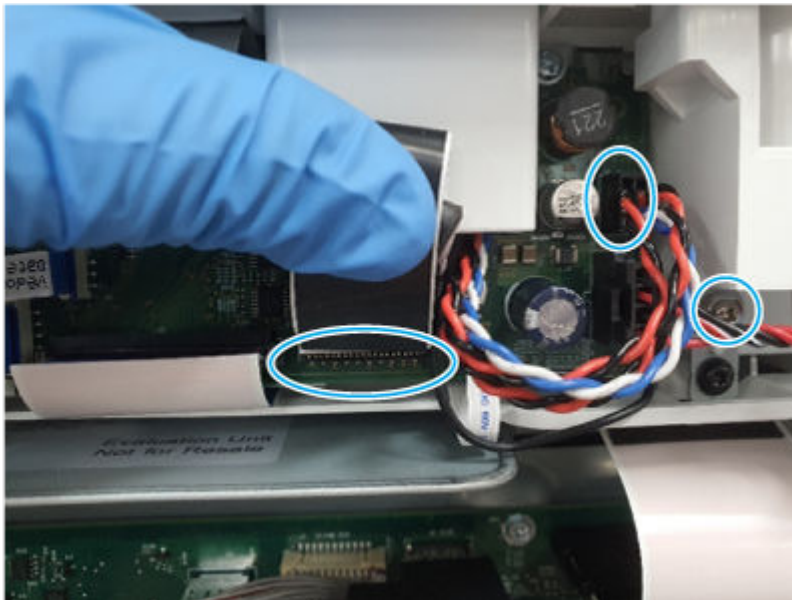
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1042 Remove two screws



2. Disconnect two connectors, remove one screw, and then remove the document feeder.

Figure 6-1043 Remove the document feeder

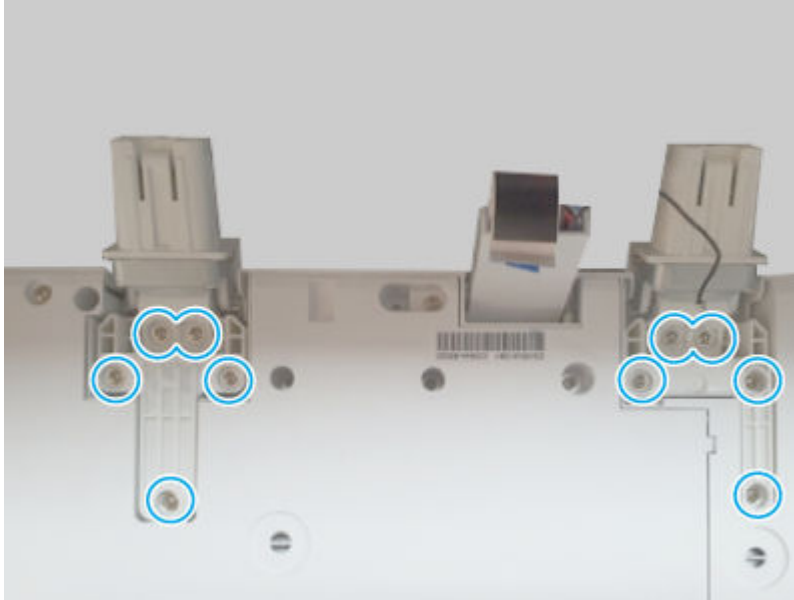


3. Remove the document feeder hinge kit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder hinge kit.

- Remove ten screws, and then remove the hinges.

Figure 6-1044 Remove the hinges



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: ADF white backing kit (110sh)

Learn about removing and replacing the document feeder white backing.

Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-133 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ90-67005	Kit - white backing A3

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Use the document feeder to copy a page, and then verify that the document correctly copies, scans, or prints.

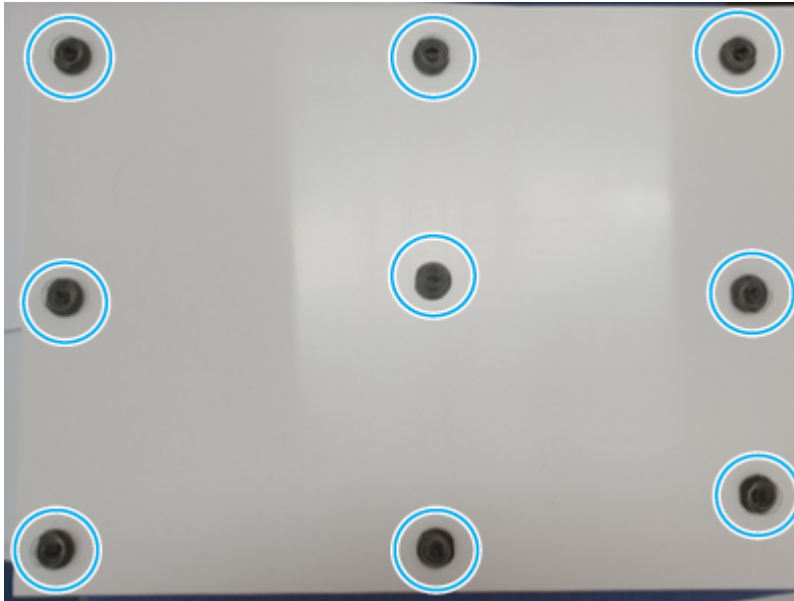
1. Remove the document feeder white backing

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder white backing.

1. Open the document feeder.

2. Before proceeding, take note of the location of the white backing mounting clips.

Figure 6-1045 Locate the clips



3. Disconnect nine clips, and then remove the white backing.


Figure 6-1046 Remove the white backing



2. Unpack the replacement assembly


Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT:  Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE:  If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

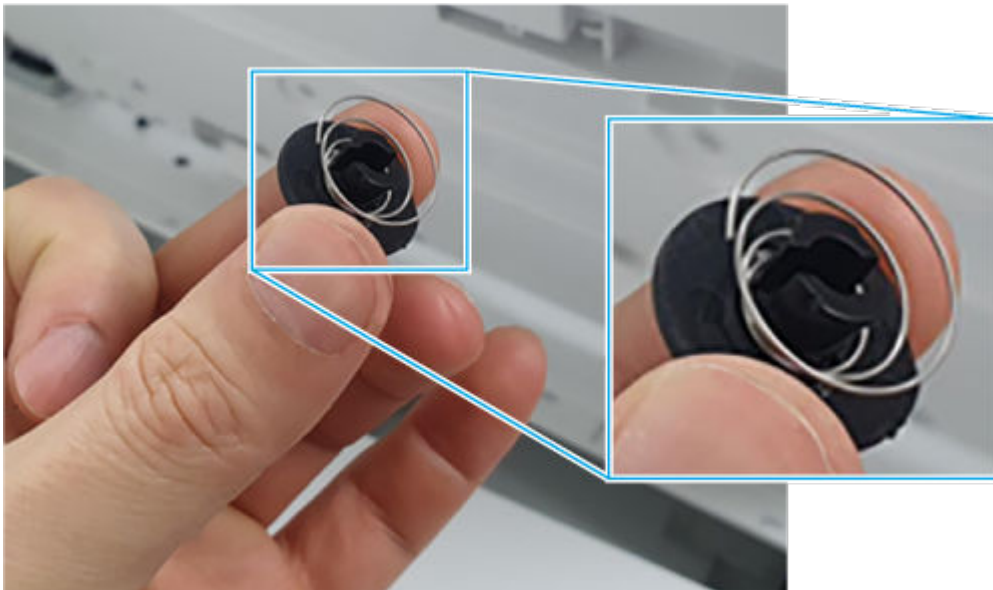
NOTE:  When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

3. Special installation instructions: White backing plate

Use the following instructions to install the white backing plate

1. If the spring and suspension clip have become separated during shipping, install the spring on the clip as shown below.

Figure 6-1047 Spring installed on the suspension clip



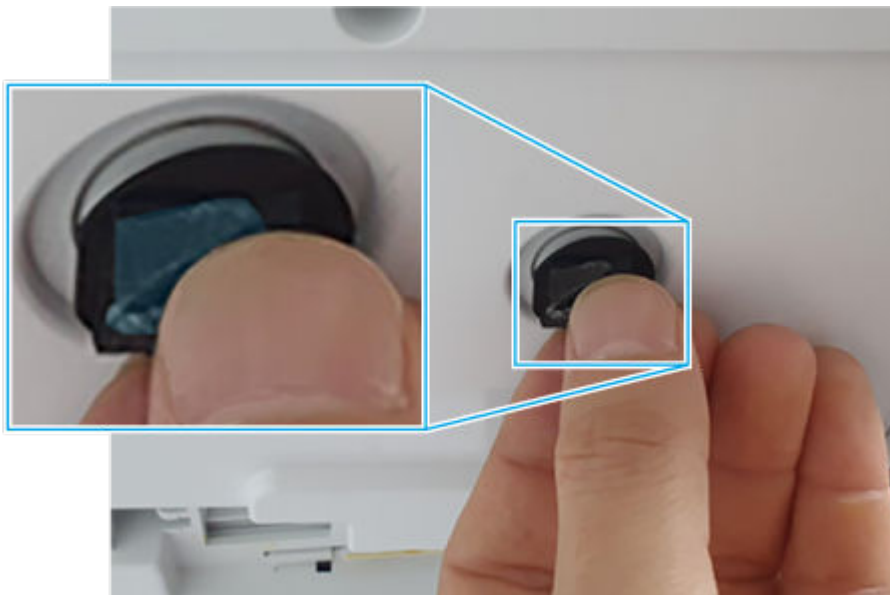
2. Position a suspension clip near the mounting feature on the document feeder, and then push it straight in to install it.

Figure 6-1048 Install the suspension clip



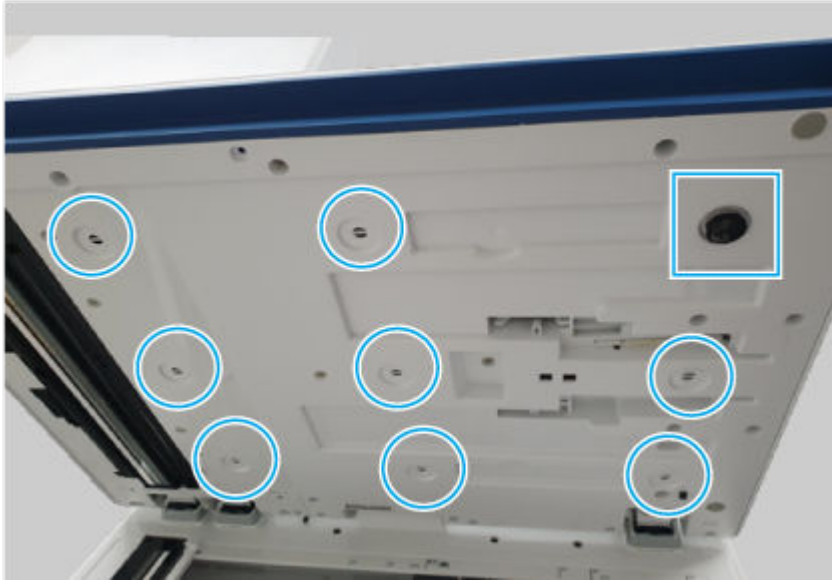
3. Remove the protective film from the double-sided tape on the suspension clip.

Figure 6-1049 Expose the double-sided tape



- Repeat these steps for the remaining eight suspension clips.

Figure 6-1050 Install the remaining suspension clips



- Place the white backing plate on the flatbed glass.


 **NOTE:** One corner of the white backing plate has an arrow embossed on it. Place that corner towards the rear left corner of the flatbed glass.

Figure 6-1051 Place the white backing plate



- Position the white backing plate so that the corner with the embossed arrow fits tightly up against the flatbed glass frame.


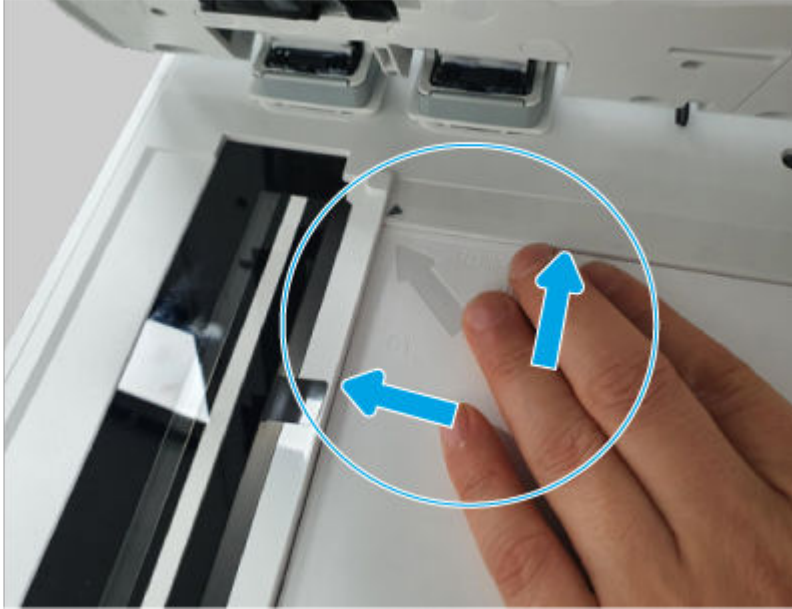
 **NOTE:** Make sure that the rear and left edges of the plate are firmly against the flatbed frame.

Figure 6-1052 Register the white backing plate against the frame



7. Fully close the document feeder to install the white backing plate.


 **NOTE:** Open the document feeder and make sure the white backing plate is firmly attached.

Figure 6-1053 Close the document feeder



Flatbed Scanner (Tarot)

Learn about flatbed scanner parts removal and replacement.

Whole unit

Learn about the flatbed scanner whole unit replacement.

Removal and replacement: Flatbed scanner whole unit

Learn about removing and replacing the flatbed whole unit.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-134 Part information

Part number	Part description
3SJ11-60103	Flatbed scanner (Tarot)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

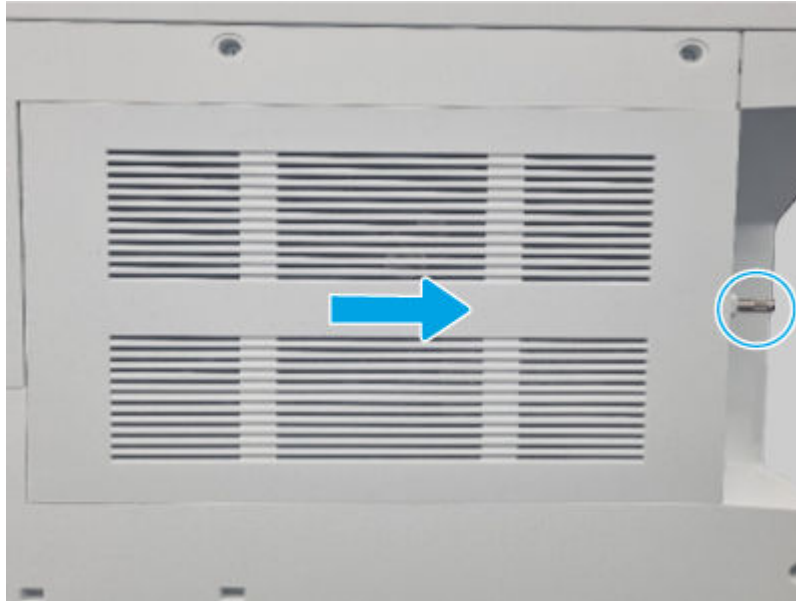
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-1054 Remove the cover



2. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

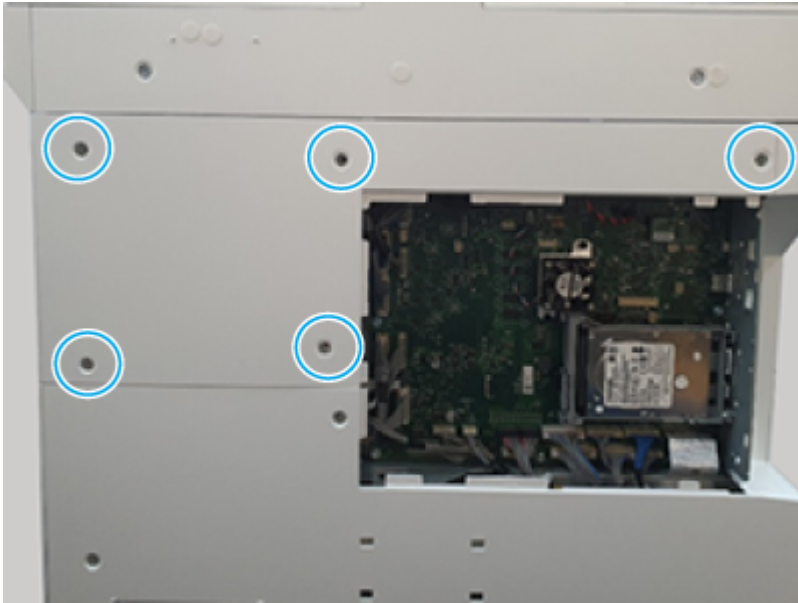
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-1055 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1056 Remove the cover

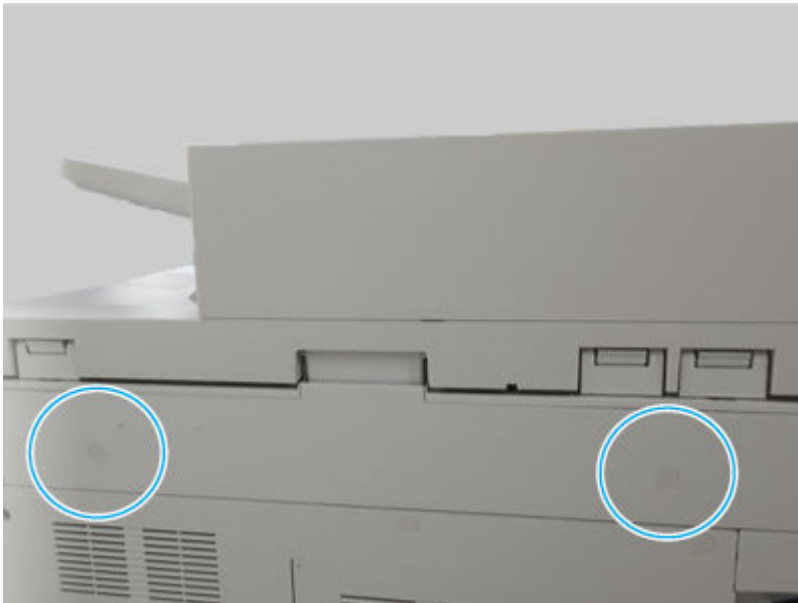


3. Remove the flatbed scanner rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the scan cover.

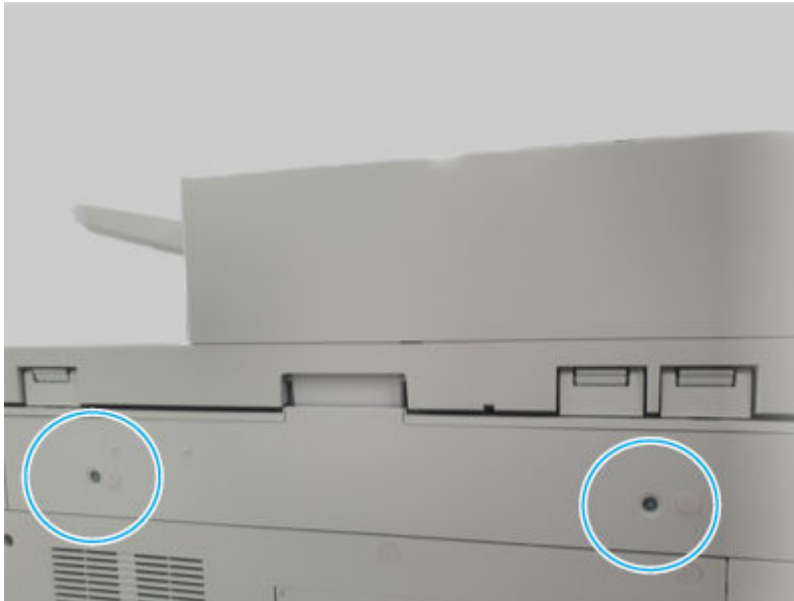
1. Remove two screw caps.

Figure 6-1057 Remove two screw caps



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the scan cover.

Figure 6-1058 Remove two screws and the cover

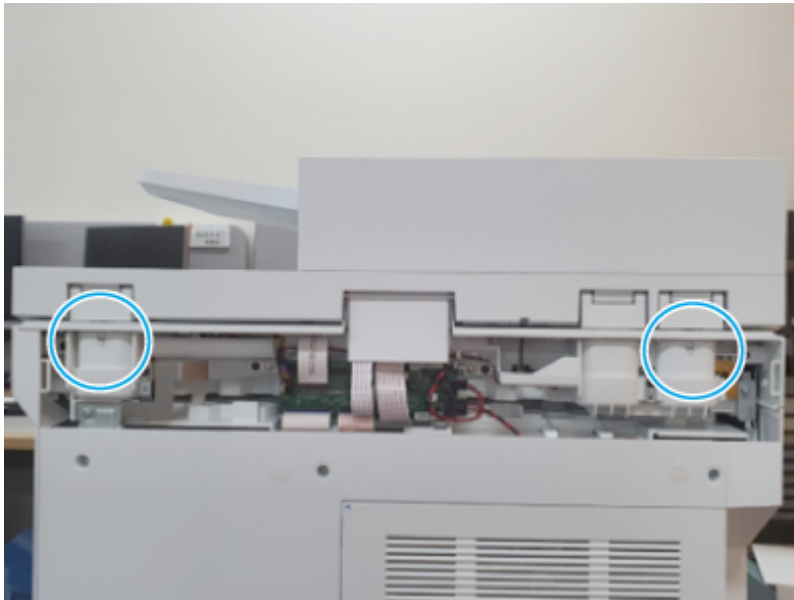


4. Remove the document feeder

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1059 Remove two screws



2. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1).


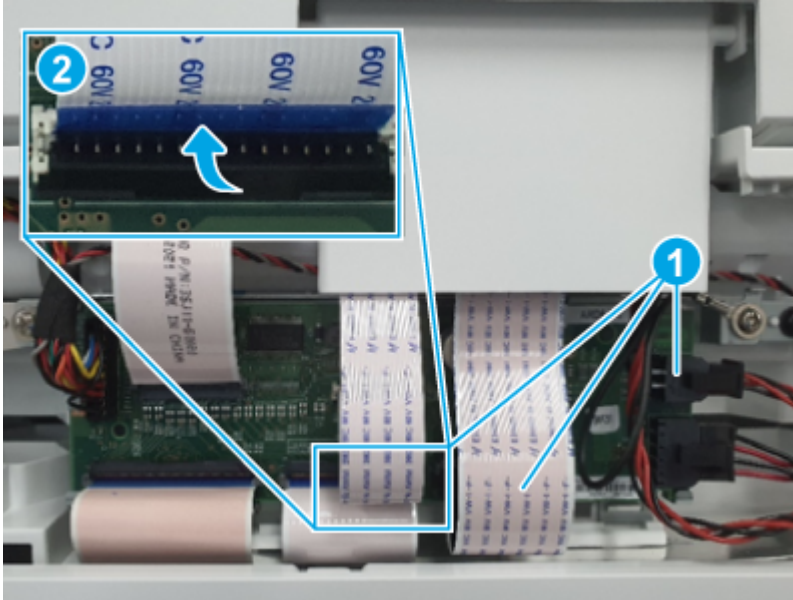
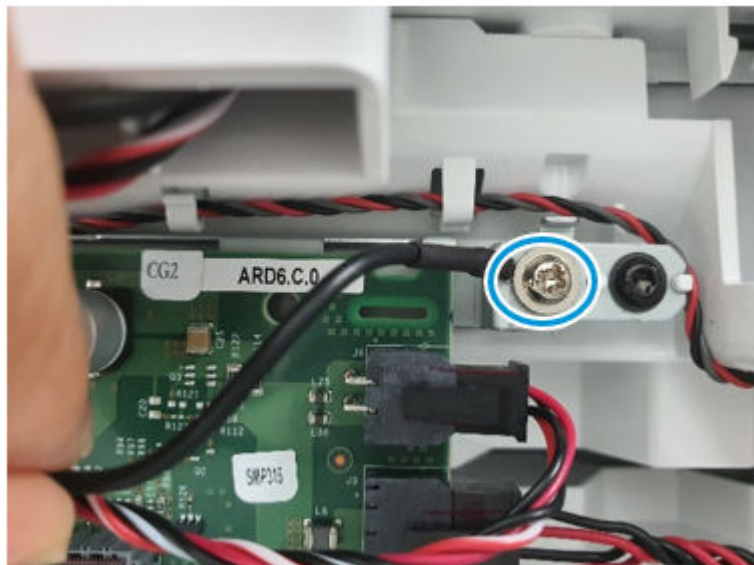
 **NOTE:** Release the retainer clip (callout 2) to disconnect one of the FFCs.


Figure 6-1060 Remove the document feeder



3. Remove one screw to release a single-wire harness, and then lift the document feeder up to remove it.

Figure 6-1061 Remove the document feeder assembly



 **IMPORTANT:** Special installation instructions are included at the end of this topic (after the unpack and recycle step).

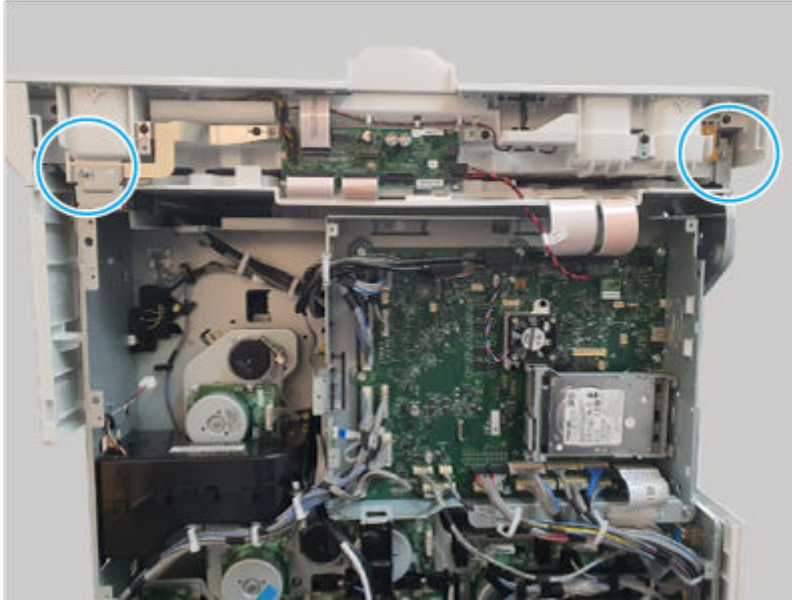
To avoid damaging the ADF when it is reinstalled, make sure to carefully read and follow the installation instructions.

5. Remove the flatbed scanner whole unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the flatbed scanner.

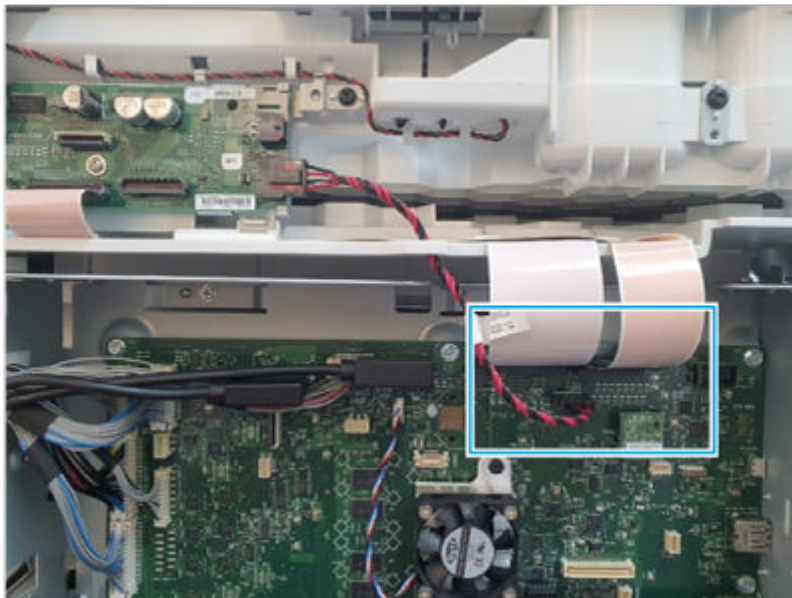
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1062 Remove two screws



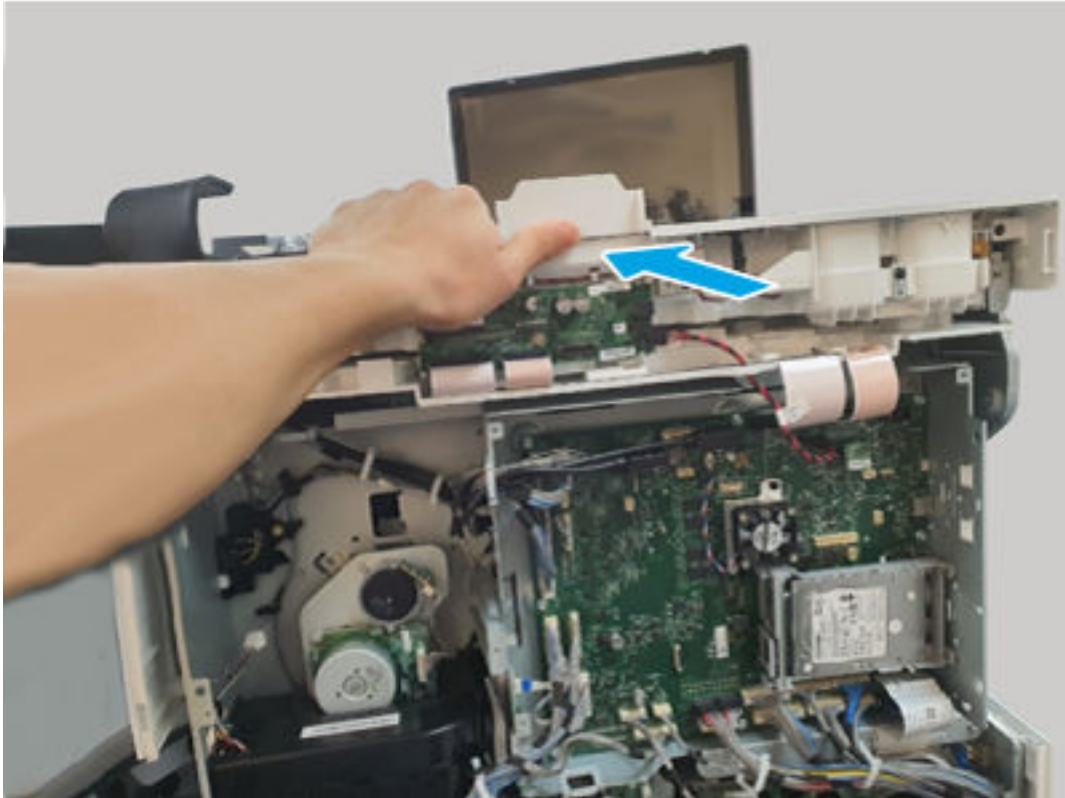
2. Disconnect three connectors.

Figure 6-1063 Disconnect three connectors



3. Push the flatbed towards the front of the printer to release it, and then remove the flatbed scanner whole unit.

Figure 6-1064 Remove the whole unit



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Covers

Learn about the flatbed scanner covers replacement.

Removal and replacement: Flatbed scanner rear cover

Learn about removing and replacing the flatbed rear cover.

Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-135 Part Information

Part number	Part description
3SJ1-40008	Rear cover (Flatbed Tarot)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

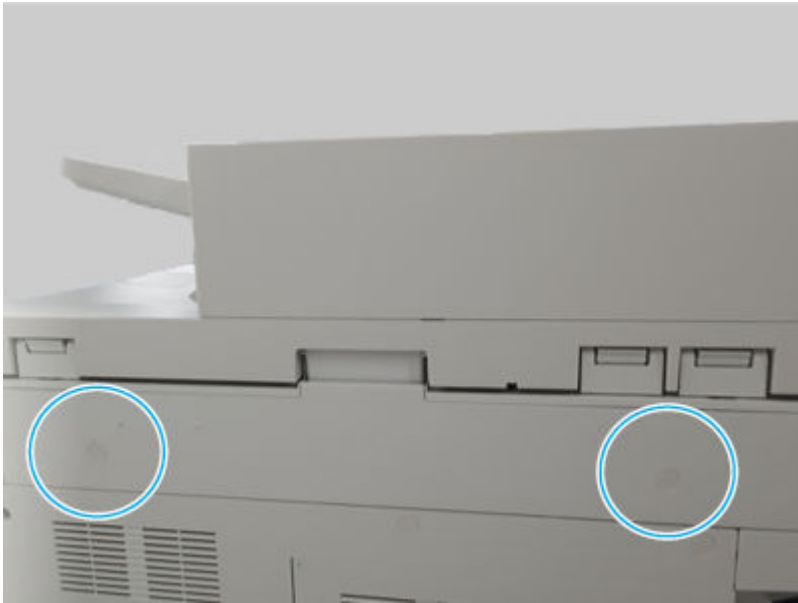
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the flatbed scanner rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the scan cover.

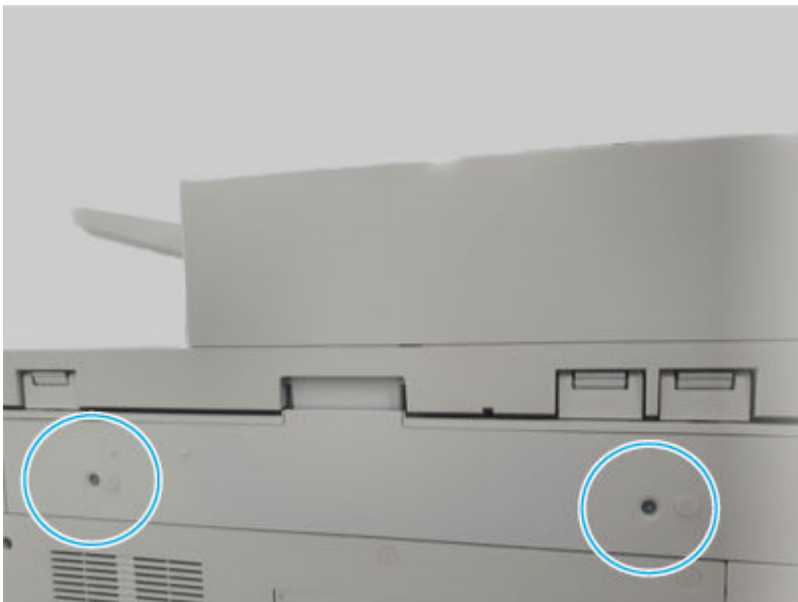
1. Remove two screw caps.

Figure 6-1065 Remove two screw caps



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the scan cover.

Figure 6-1066 Remove two screws and the cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

PCA, harness, and sensor

Learn about the flatbed scanner PCA, harness, and sensor replacement.

Removal and replacement: Flatbed scanner PCA assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the flatbed PCA.


Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-136 Part information

Part number	Part description
Y6V12-60035	Flatbed PCA

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the flatbed scanner rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the scan cover.

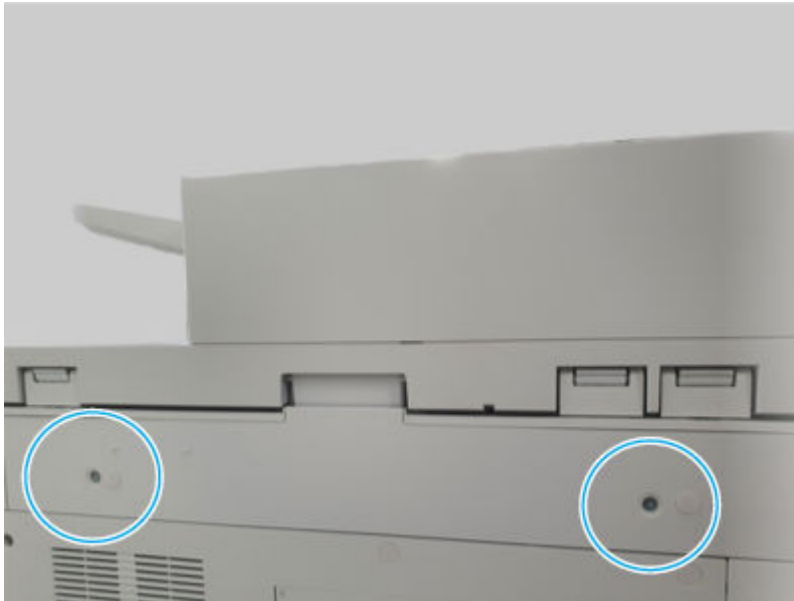
1. Remove two screw caps.

Figure 6-1067 Remove two screw caps



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the scan cover.

Figure 6-1068 Remove two screws and the cover

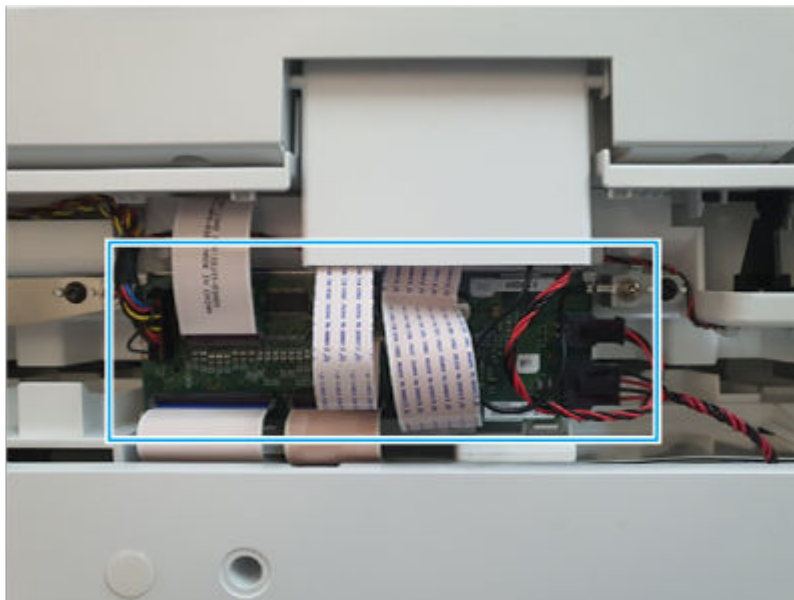


2. Remove the flatbed PCA

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the flatbed PCA.

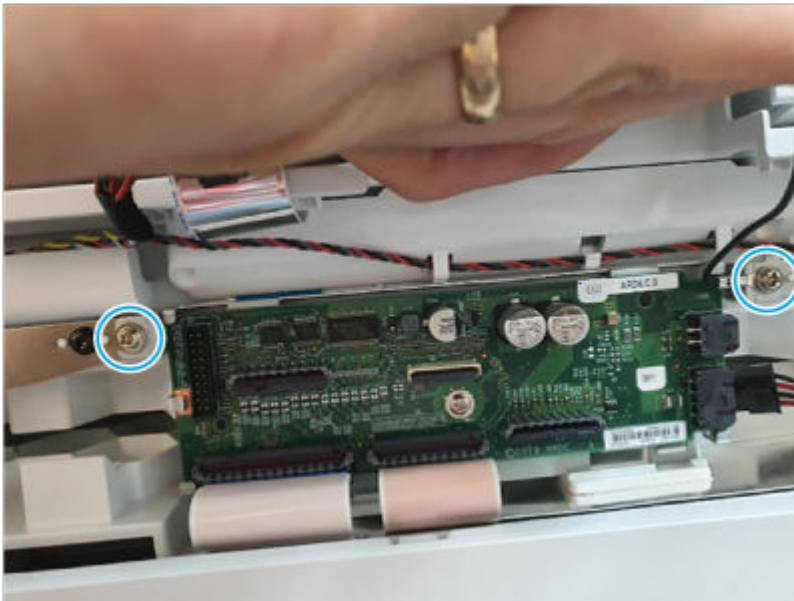
1. Disconnect all of the connectors.

Figure 6-1069 Disconnect all connectors



2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1070 Remove two screws



3. Remove the flatbed scanner PCA and bracket assembly.

Figure 6-1071 Remove the PCA



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Flatbed scanner FFC 50 pin

Learn about removing and replacing the flatbed FFC 50 pin.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-137 Part Information

Part number	Part description
3SJ1-50021	Flatbed FFC 50 pin

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

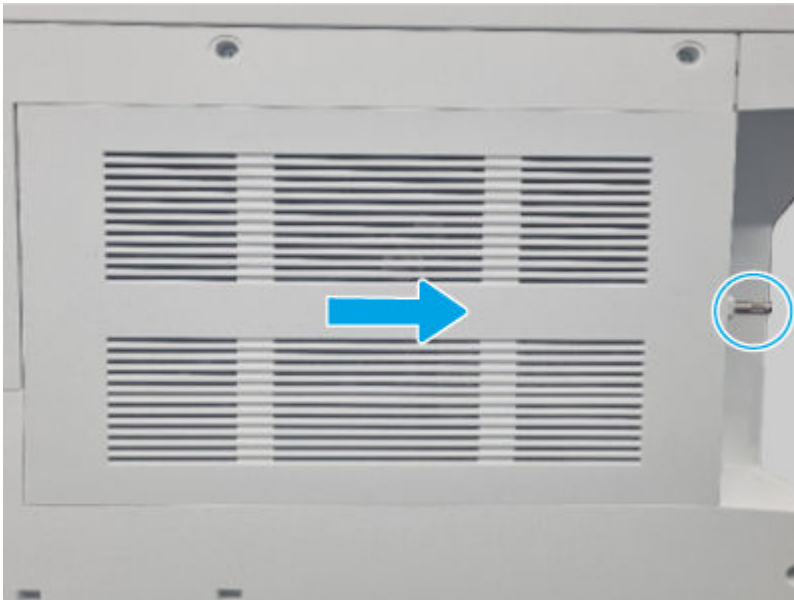
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-1072 Remove the cover



2. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

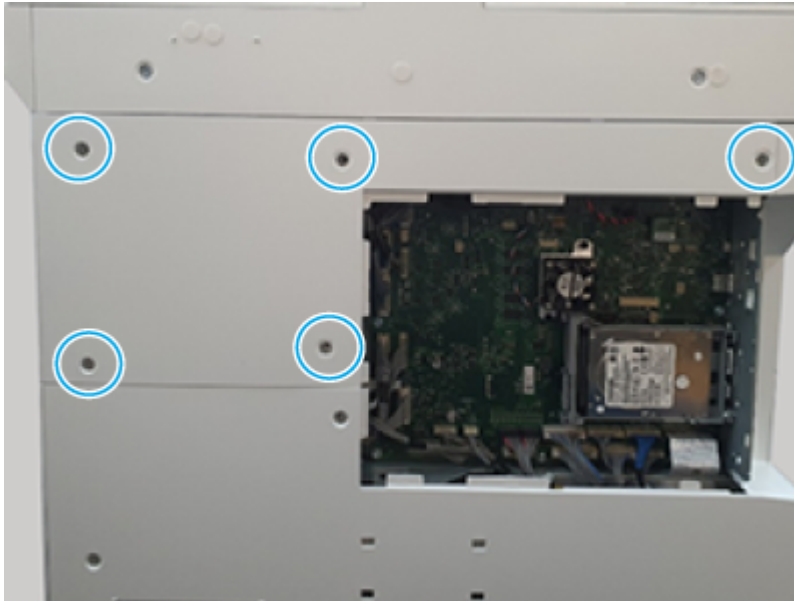
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-1073 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1074 Remove the cover



3. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove six screws (callout 1), and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1075 Remove the cover

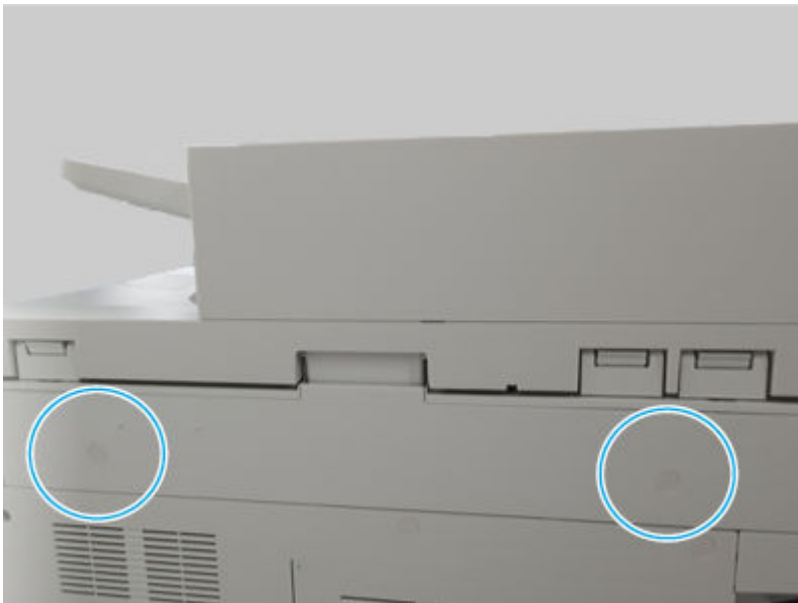


4. Remove the flatbed scanner rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the scan cover.

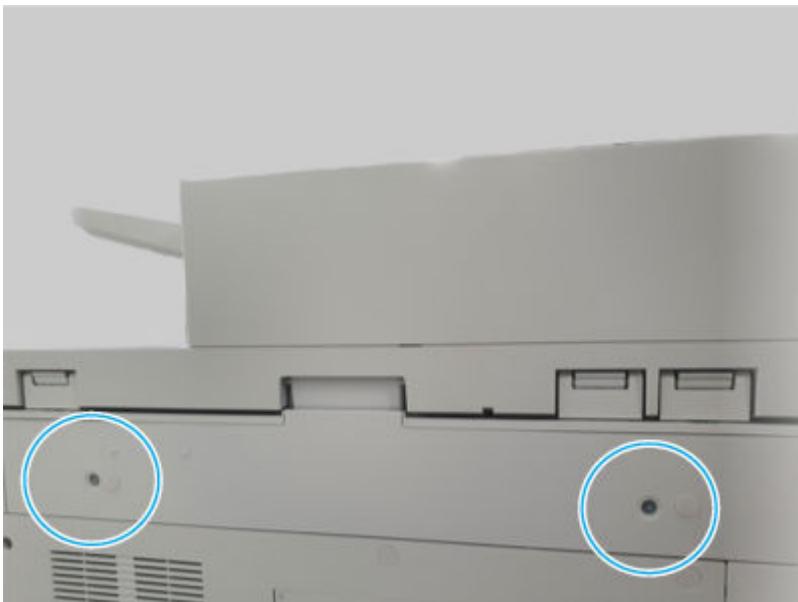
1. Remove two screw caps.

Figure 6-1076 Remove two screw caps



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the scan cover.

Figure 6-1077 Remove two screws and the cover

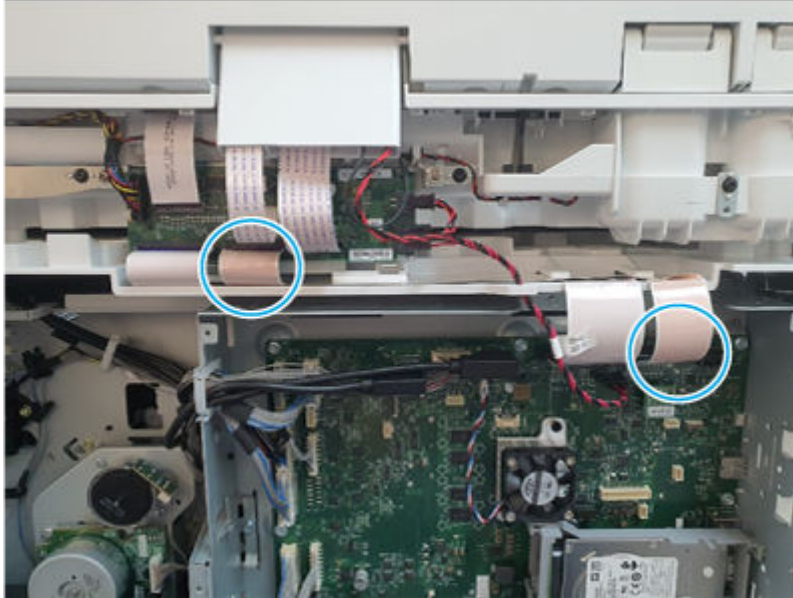


5. Remove the flatbed FFC 50 pin

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the flatbed FFC 50 pin.

- Disconnect two connectors, and then remove the flatbed FFC 50 pin..


Figure 6-1078 Remove the FFC



6. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Flatbed scanner FFC 68 pin

Learn about removing and replacing the flatbed FFC 68 pin.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-138 Part information

Part number	Part description
3SJ11-50022	Flatbed FFC 68 pin

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

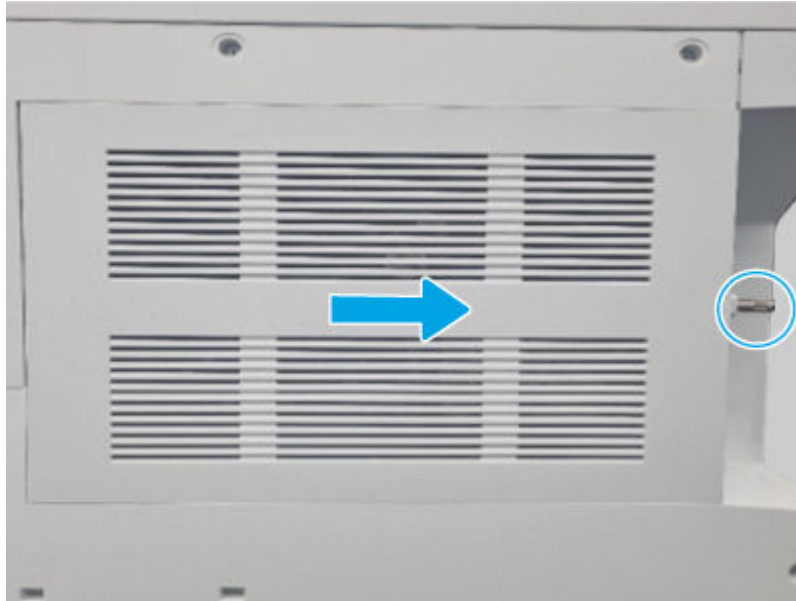
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-1079 Remove the cover



2. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

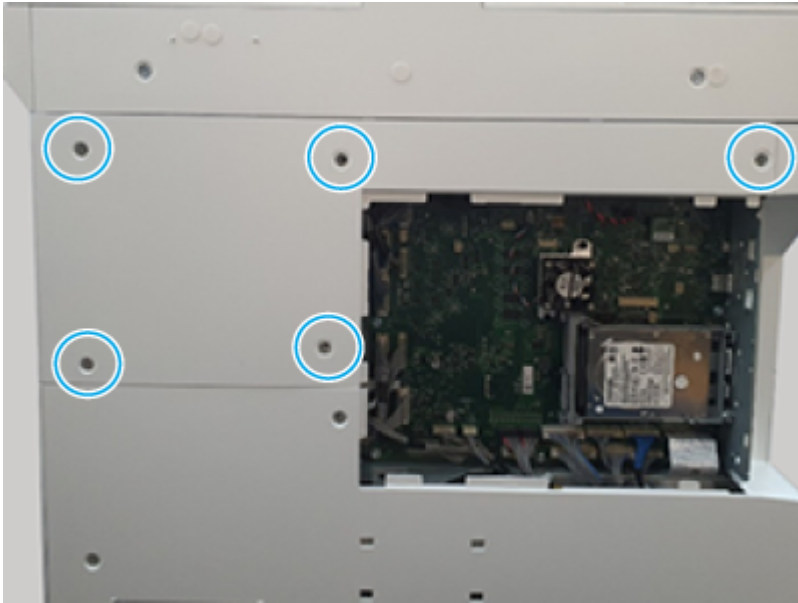
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-1080 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1081 Remove the cover

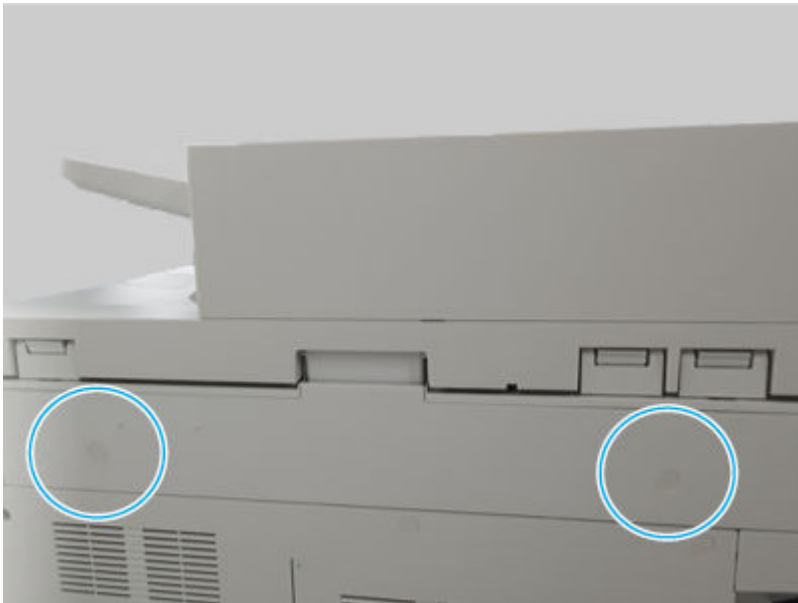


3. Remove the flatbed scanner rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the scan cover.

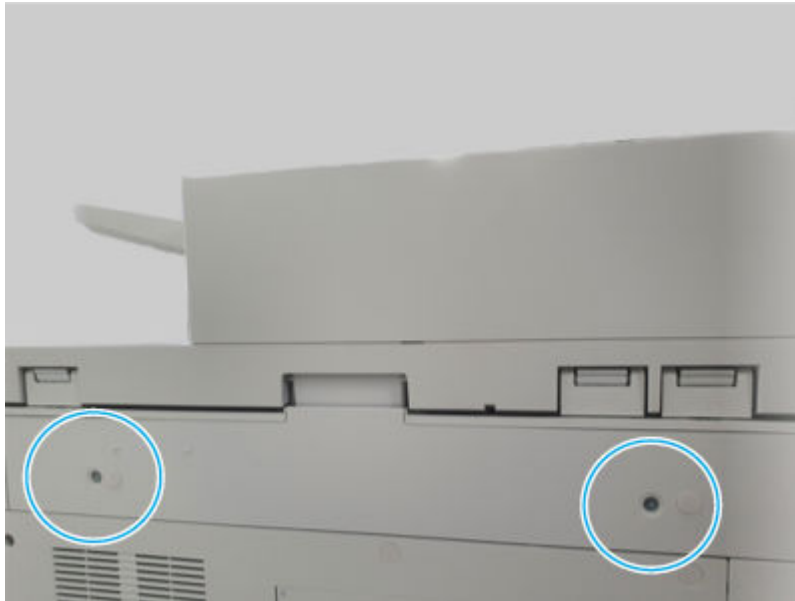
1. Remove two screw caps.

Figure 6-1082 Remove two screw caps



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the scan cover.

Figure 6-1083 Remove two screws and the cover

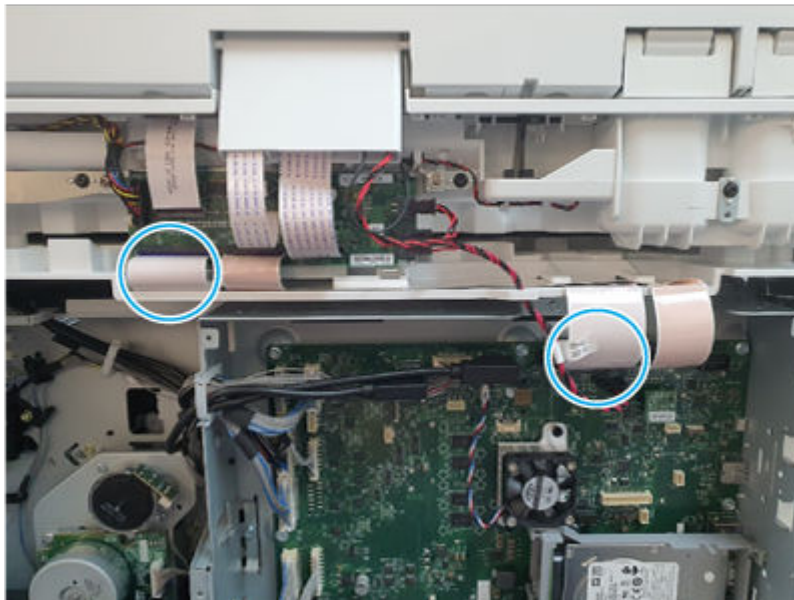


4. Remove the flatbed FFC 68 pin

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the flatbed FFC 68 pin.

- Disconnect two connectors, and then remove the flatbed FFC 68 pin.

Figure 6-1084 Remove the FFC



5. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Flatbed scanner discrete power cable

Learn about removing and replacing the flatbed power cable.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-139 Part information

Part number	Part description
3SJ11-50006	Flatbed discrete power cable

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

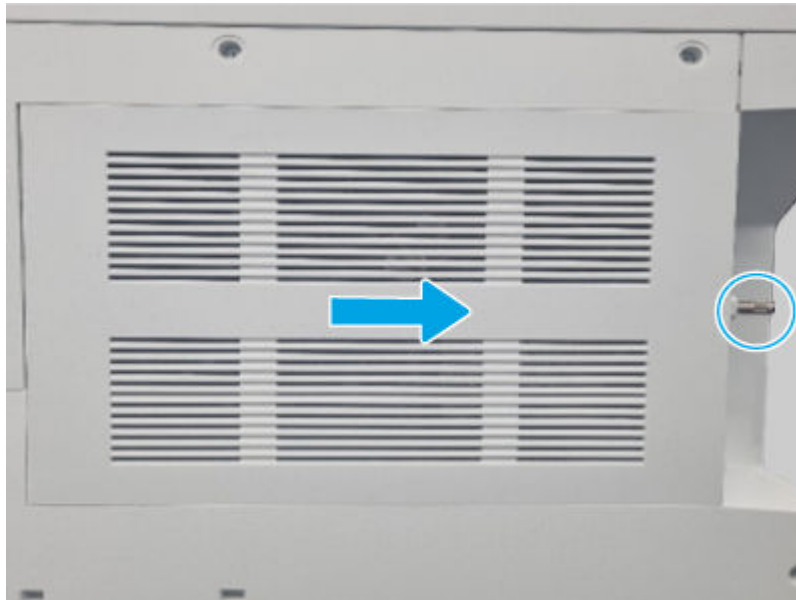
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-1085 Remove the cover



2. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

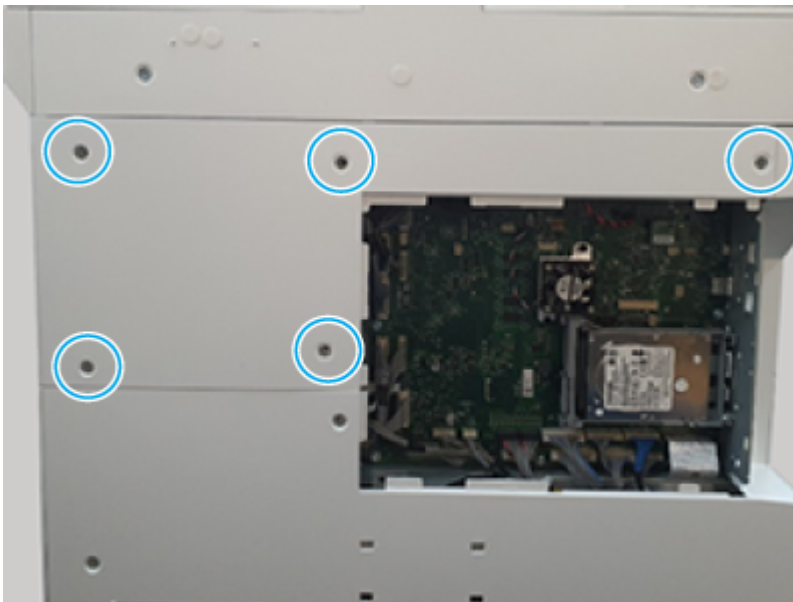
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-1086 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1087 Remove the cover

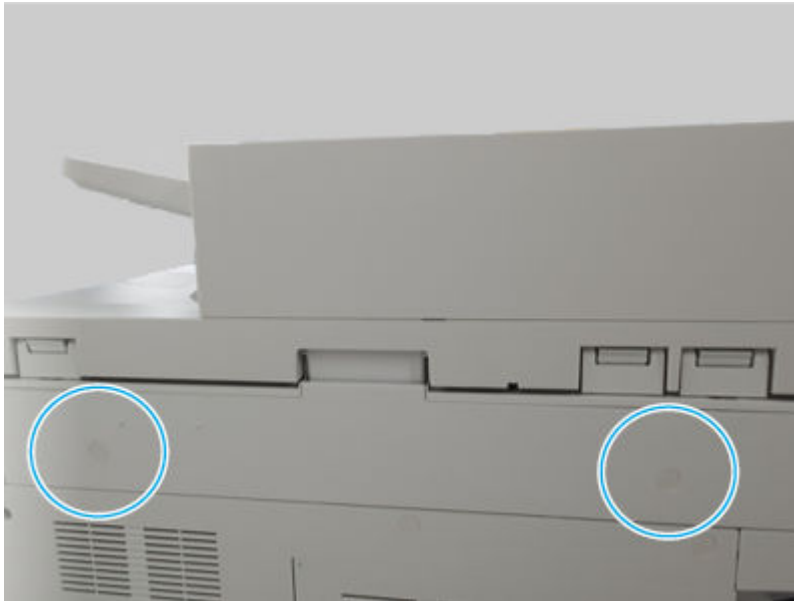


3. Remove the flatbed scanner rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the scan cover.

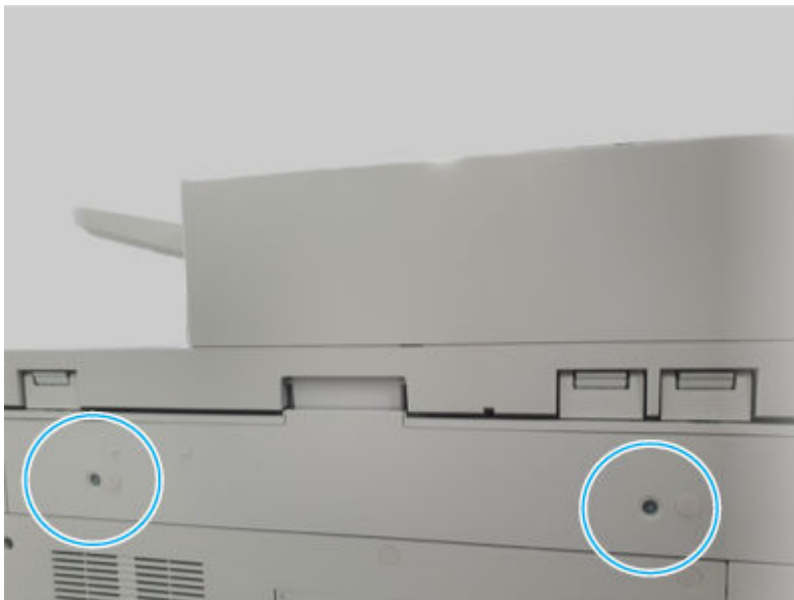
1. Remove two screw caps.

Figure 6-1088 Remove two screw caps



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the scan cover.

Figure 6-1089 Remove two screws and the cover

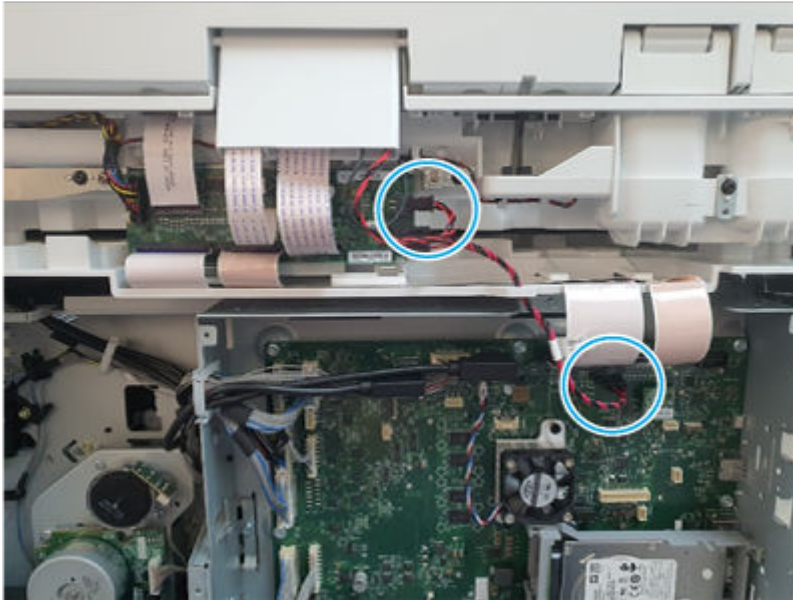


4. Remove the flatbed power cable

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the flatbed power cable.

- Disconnect two connectors, and then remove the flatbed power cable.

Figure 6-1090 Remove the cable



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Flatbed scanner flatbed open sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the flatbed open sensor.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-140 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (flatbed open sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

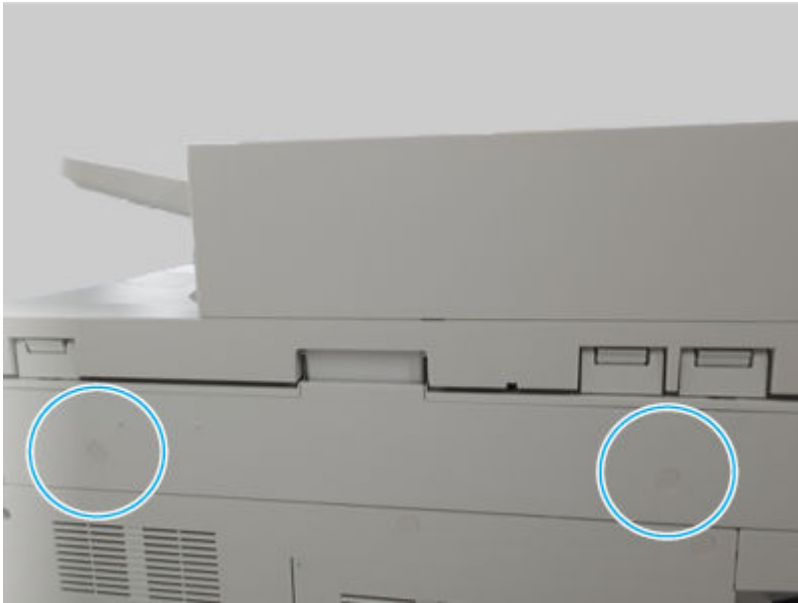
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the flatbed scanner rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the scan cover.

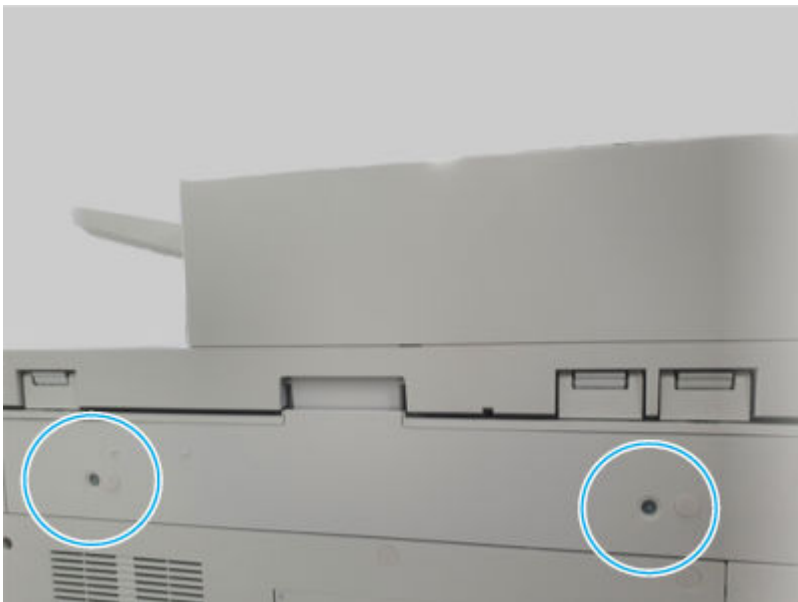
1. Remove two screw caps.

Figure 6-1091 Remove two screw caps



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the scan cover.

Figure 6-1092 Remove two screws and the cover



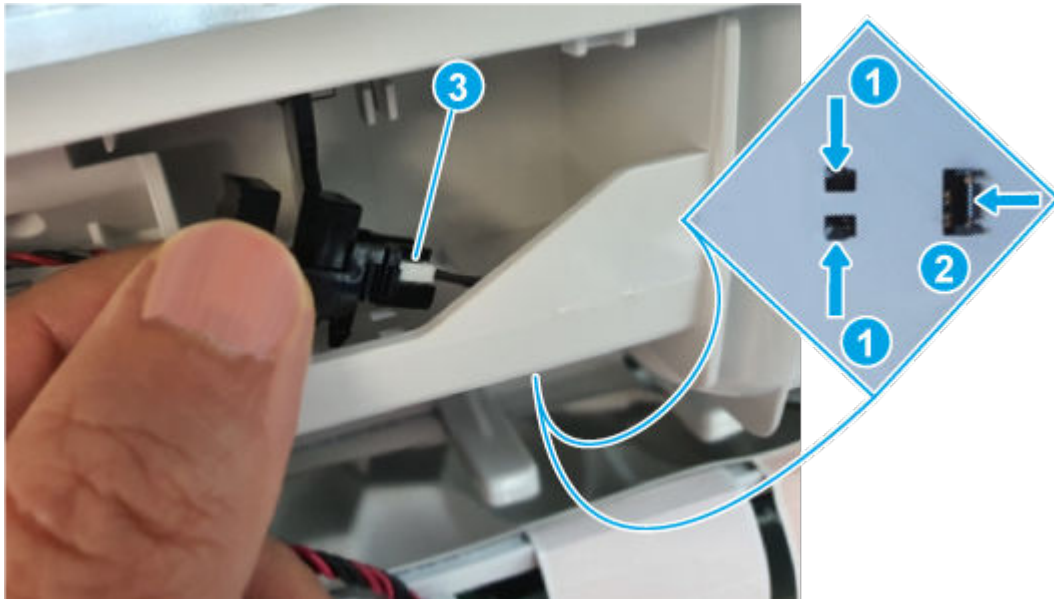
2. Remove the flatbed power cable

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the flatbed power cable.

- Do the following:
 - Release the hooks (callout 1).
 - Separate the sensor from the flatbed (callout 2).

- Disconnect one connector (callout 3), and then remove the flatbed open sensor.


Figure 6-1093 Remove the sensor



3. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Flatbed Scanner (CIS)

Learn about flatbed scanner parts removal and replacement.

Whole unit

Learn about the flatbed scanner whole unit replacement.

Removal and replacement: Flatbed scanner whole unit

Learn about removing and replacing the flatbed whole unit.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-141 Part information

Part number	Part description
3SJ00-60103	Flatbed scanner (CIS)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

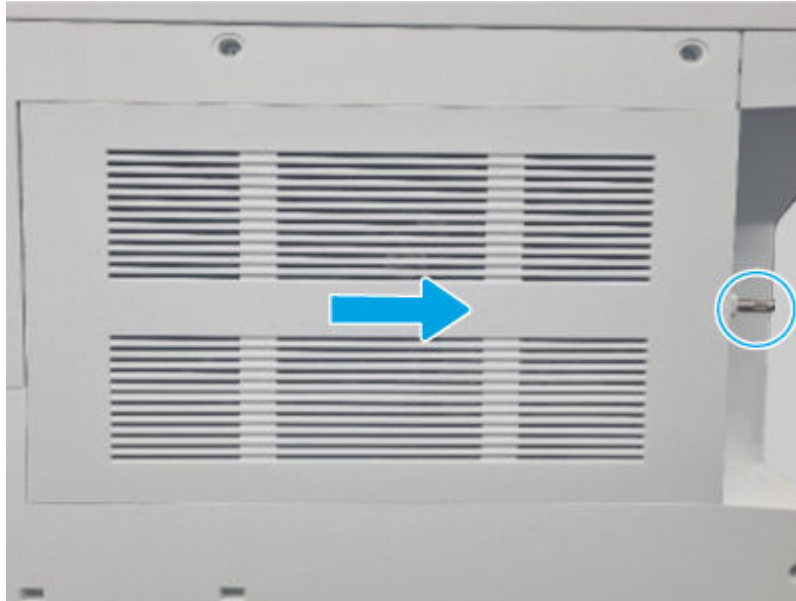
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-1094 Remove the cover



2. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

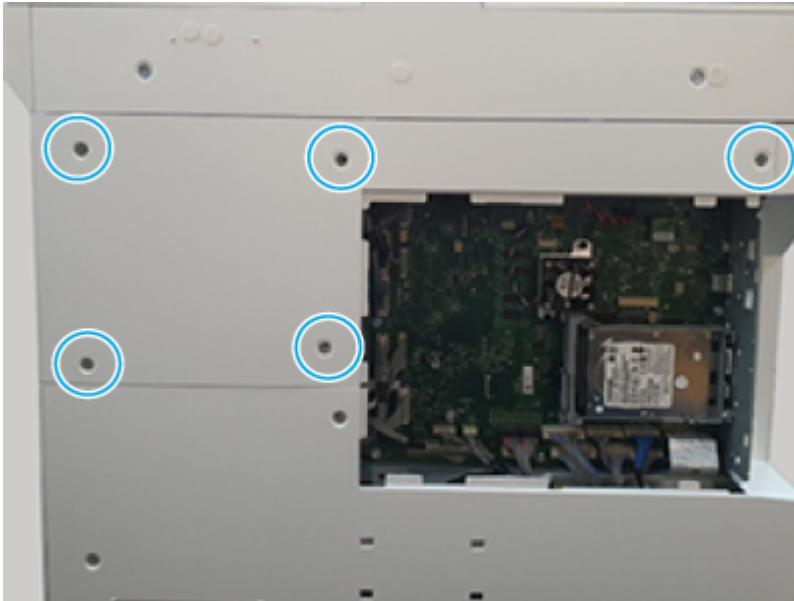
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-1095 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1096 Remove the cover

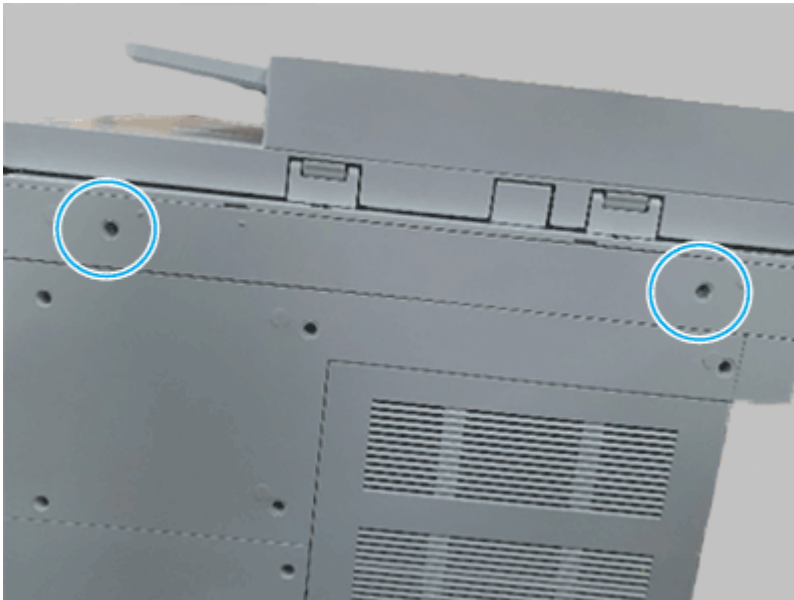


3. Remove the flatbed scanner rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the scan cover.


- Remove two screw caps, remove two screws, and then remove the scan cover.

Figure 6-1097 Remove two screws and the cover



4. Remove the document feeder

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the document feeder.

 **NOTE:** This procedure removes the document feeder whole unit including the white backing.

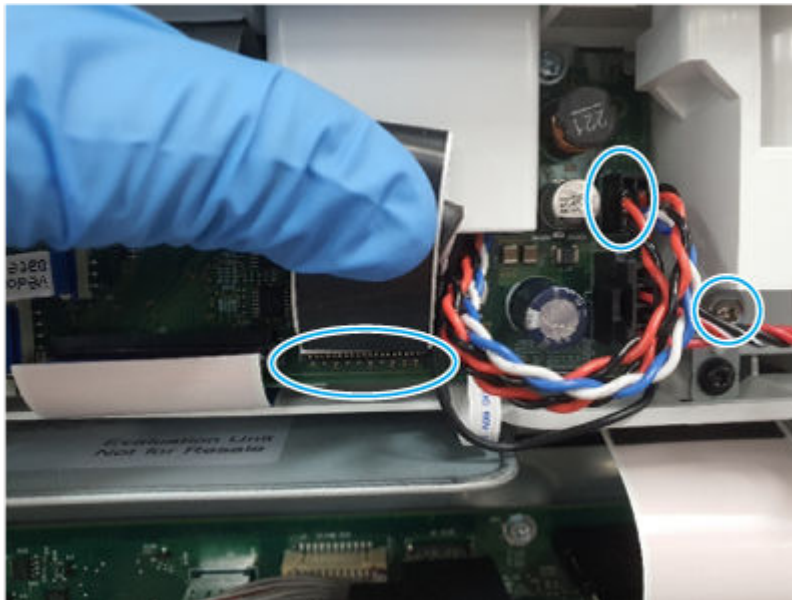
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1098 Remove two screws



2. Disconnect two connectors, remove one screw, and then remove the document feeder.

Figure 6-1099 Remove the document feeder

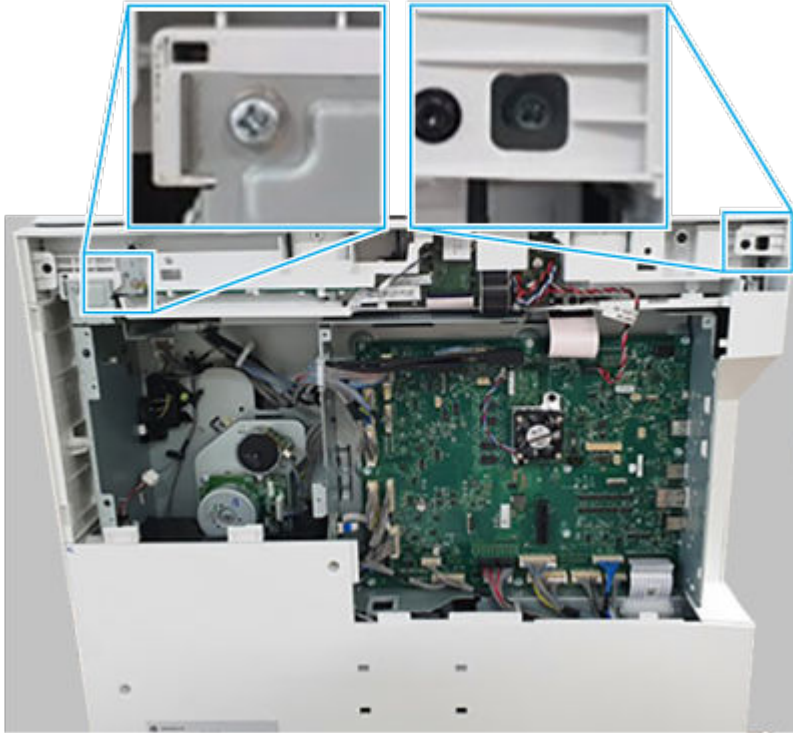


5. Remove the flatbed scanner whole unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the flatbed scanner.

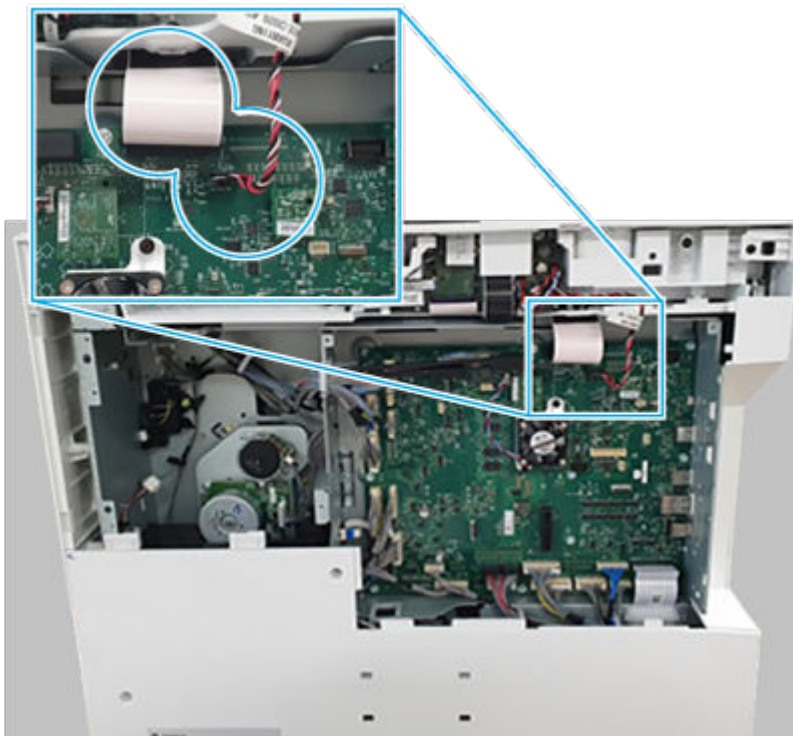
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1100 Remove two screws



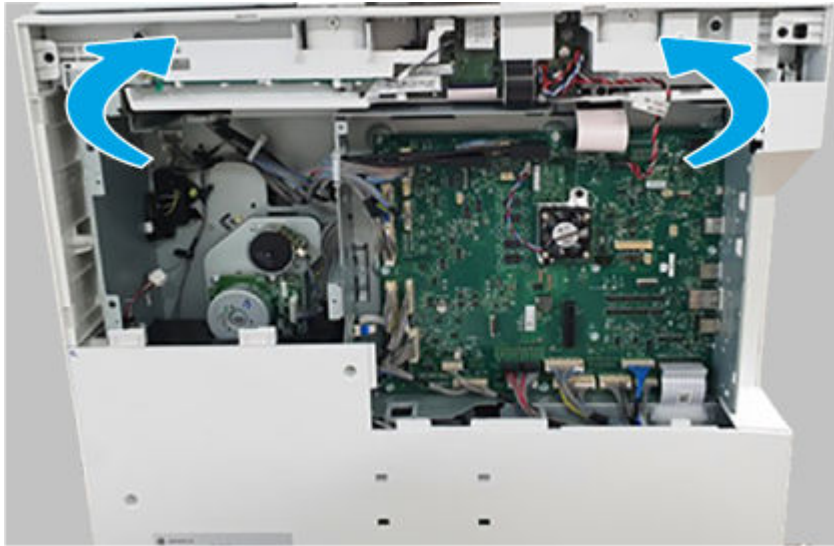
2. Disconnect two connectors.

Figure 6-1101 Disconnect two connectors



3. Push the flatbed towards the front of the printer to release it, and then remove the flatbed scanner whole unit.

Figure 6-1102 Remove the whole unit



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Covers

Learn about the flatbed scanner covers replacement.

Removal and replacement: Flatbed scanner rear cover

Learn about removing and replacing the flatbed rear cover.

Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-142 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ83-40020	Rear cover (Flatbed CIS)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

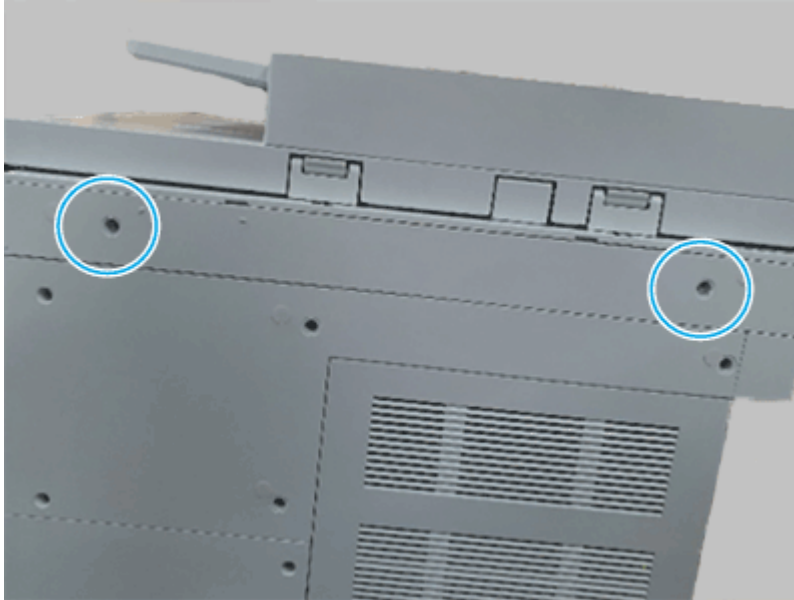
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the flatbed scanner rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the scan cover.

- Remove two screw caps, remove two screws, and then remove the scan cover.

Figure 6-1103 Remove two screws and the cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

PCA, harness, and sensor

Learn about the flatbed scanner PCA, harness, and sensor replacement.

Removal and replacement: Flatbed scanner PCA assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the flatbed PCA.

Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-143 Part information

Part number	Part description
3SJ00-60109	Flatbed PCA (CIS)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

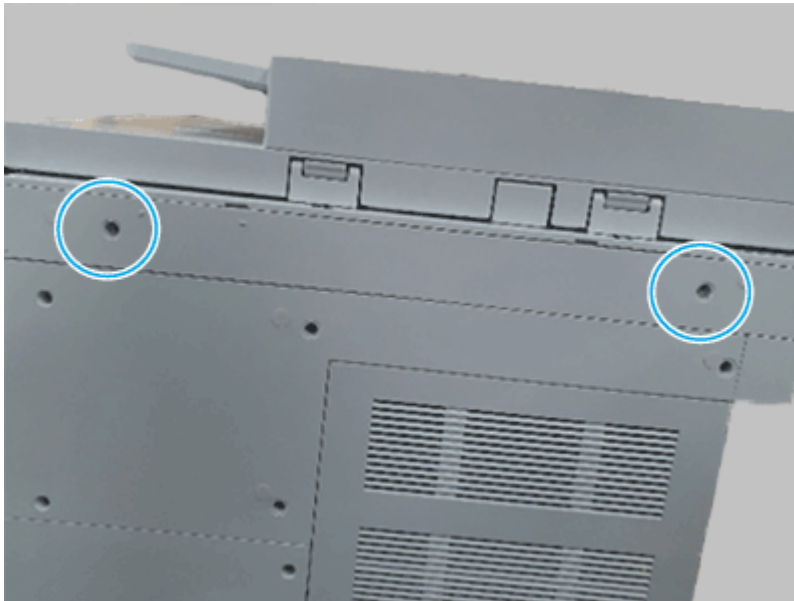
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the flatbed scanner rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the scan cover.

- Remove two screw caps, remove two screws, and then remove the scan cover.

Figure 6-1104 Remove two screws and the cover

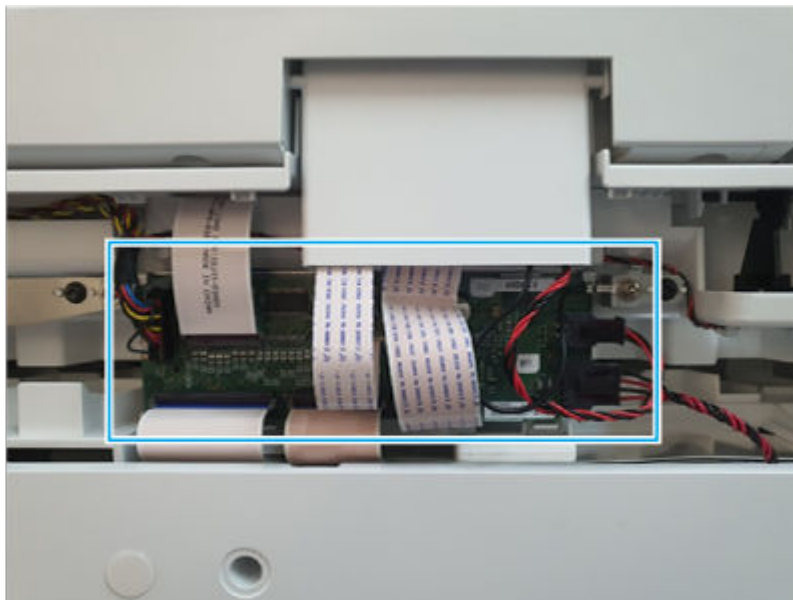


2. Remove the flatbed PCA

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the flatbed PCA.

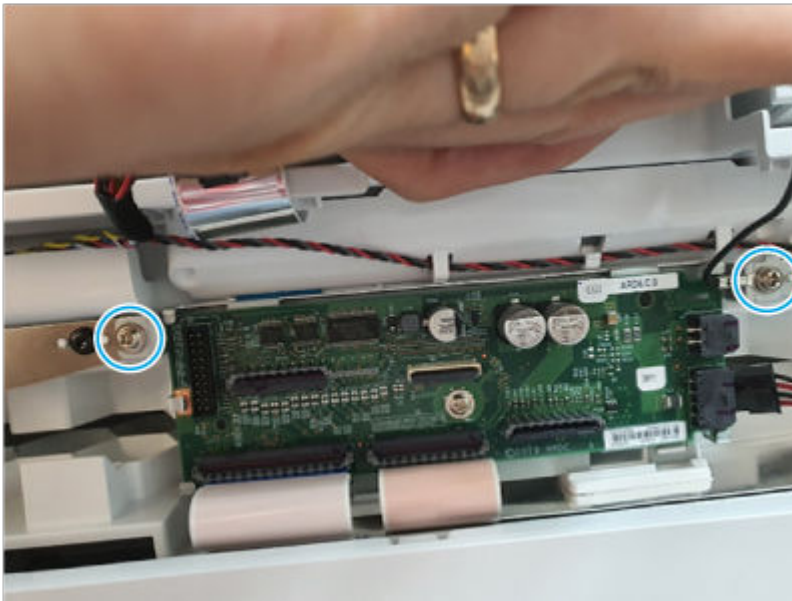
1. Disconnect all of the connectors.

Figure 6-1105 Disconnect all connectors



2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1106 Remove two screws



3. Remove the flatbed scanner PCA and bracket assembly.

Figure 6-1107 Remove the PCA



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Flatbed scanner discrete power cable

Learn about removing and replacing the flatbed power cable.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-144 Part information

Part number	Part description
3SJ1-50006	Flatbed discrete power cable (CIS)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

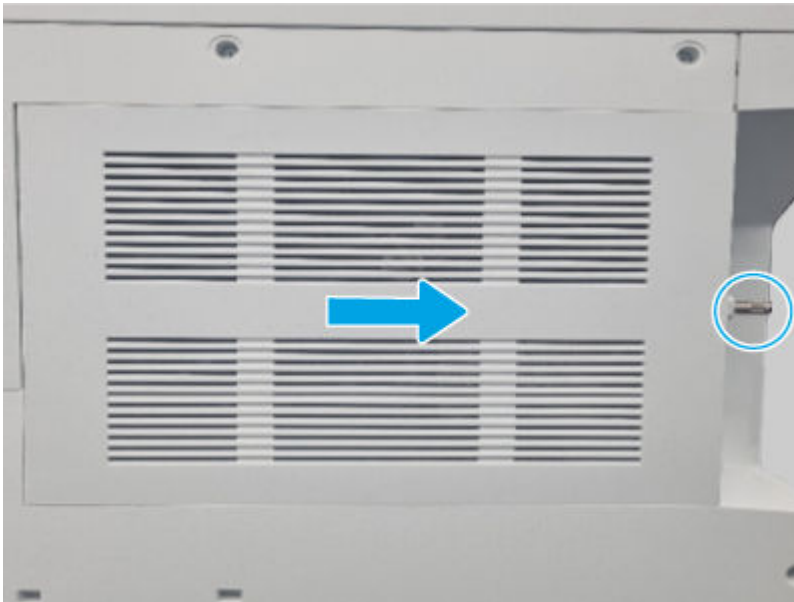
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-1108 Remove the cover



2. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

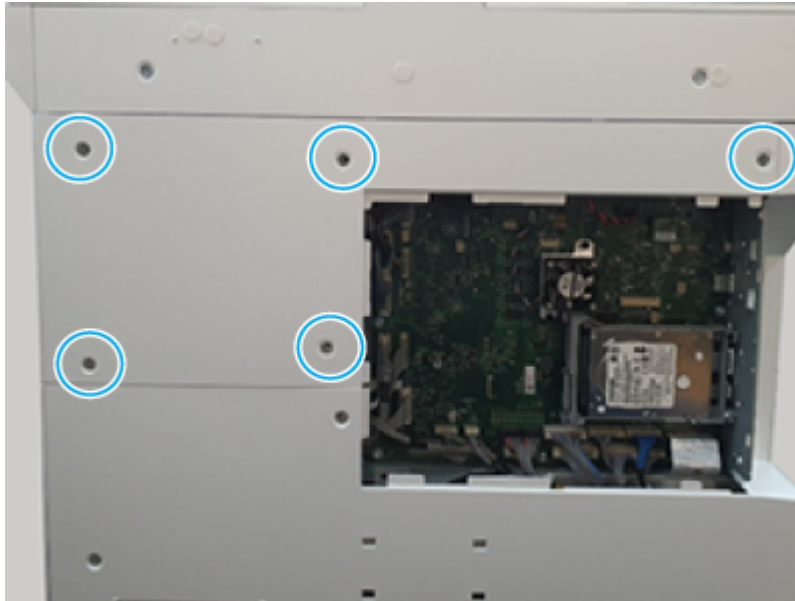
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-1109 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1110 Remove the cover

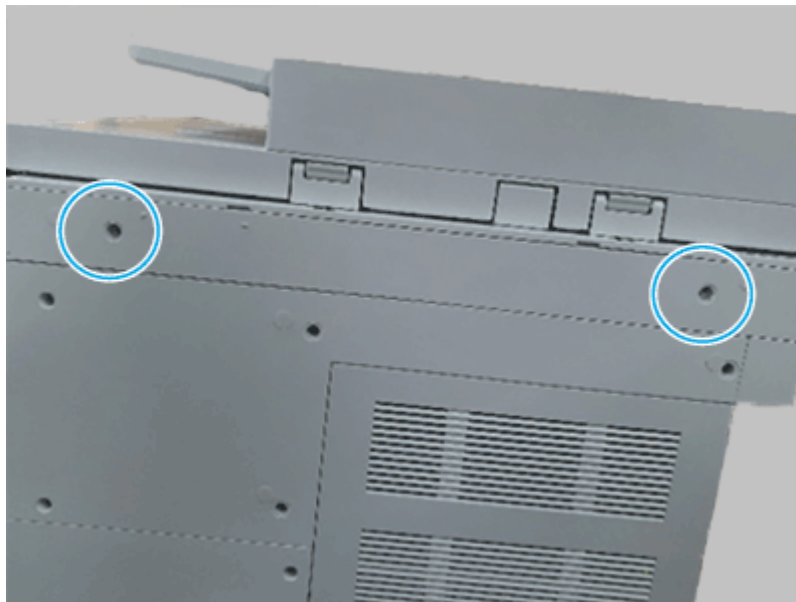


3. Remove the flatbed scanner rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the scan cover.

- Remove two screw caps, remove two screws, and then remove the scan cover.

Figure 6-1111 Remove two screws and the cover

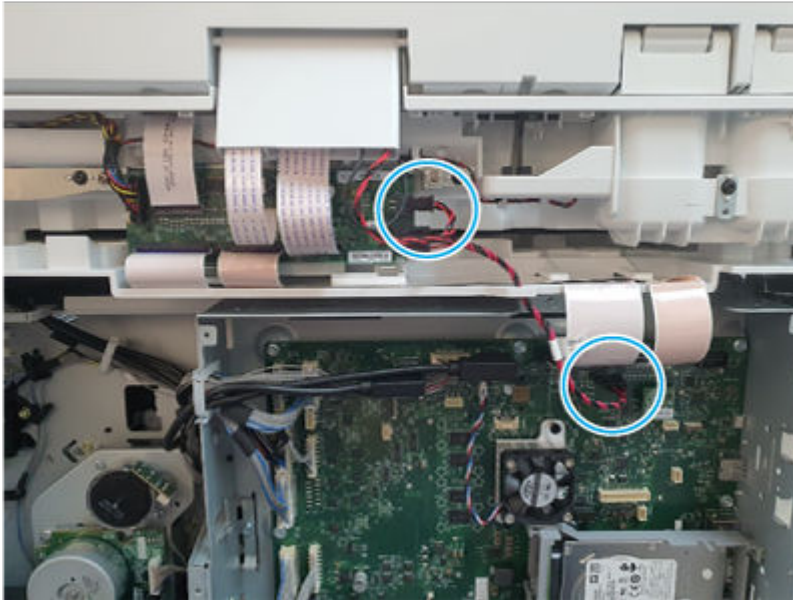


4. Remove the flatbed power cable

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the flatbed power cable.

- Disconnect two connectors, and then remove the flatbed power cable.

Figure 6-1112 Remove the cable



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Flatbed scanner FFC 68 pin

Learn about removing and replacing the flatbed FFC 68 pin.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-145 Part information

Part number	Part description
3SJ00-50010	Flatbed FFC 68 pin (CIS)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

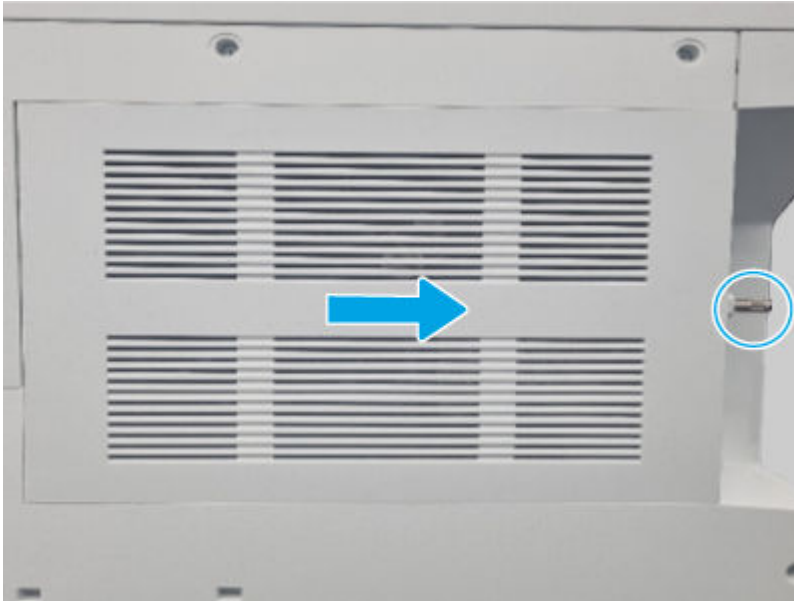
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the controller cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the controller cover.

- Loosen, but do not remove the thumbscrew at the right side of the cover, and then slide the cover as shown to remove it.

Figure 6-1113 Remove the cover



2. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

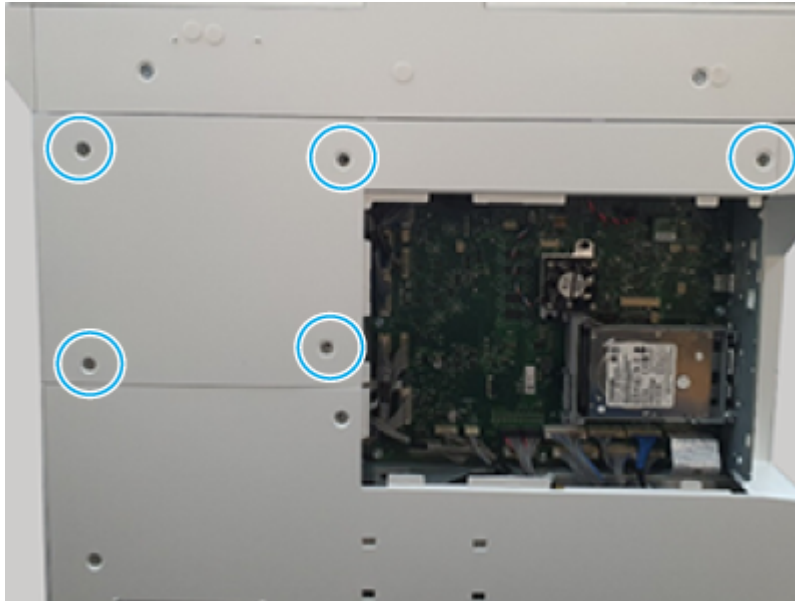
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-1114 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1115 Remove the cover

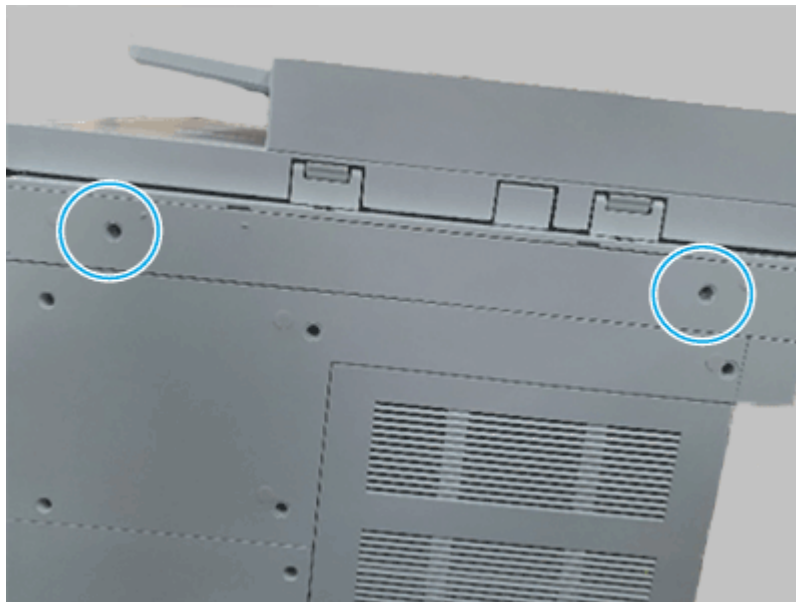


3. Remove the flatbed scanner rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the scan cover.

- Remove two screw caps, remove two screws, and then remove the scan cover.

Figure 6-1116 Remove two screws and the cover

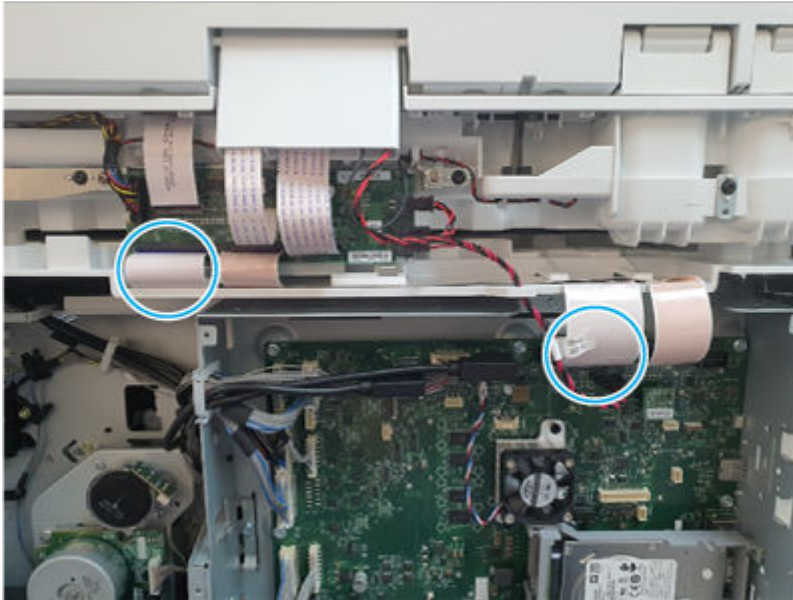


4. Remove the flatbed FFC 68 pin

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the flatbed FFC 68 pin.

- Disconnect two connectors, and then remove the flatbed FFC 68 pin.

Figure 6-1117 Remove the FFC



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Input device (workgroup)

Learn about input device (workgroup) parts removal and replacement.

DCF device (workgroup)

Learn about dual cassette feeder (workgroup) parts removal and replacement.

Covers

Review the DCF cover removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: DCF (Tray 4, 5) right cover

Learn about removing and replacing the dual cassette feeder (DCF) right cover.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-146 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ98-40015	DCF (Tray 4, 5) right cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right cover.

1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screws, and then remove the right cover.

Figure 6-1118 Remove the cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover

Learn about removing and replacing the dual cassette feeder (DCF) rear cover.

Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-147 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ98-40014	DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover.

- Remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1119 Remove the cover



Reverse the removal steps to install the part.

Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: DCF (Tray 4, 5) left cover

Learn about removing and replacing the dual cassette feeder (DCF) left cover.

Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-148 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ98-40017	DCF (Tray 4, 5) left cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) left cover.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1120 Remove the cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: DCF (Tray 4, 5) right door

Learn about removing and replacing the dual cassette feeder (DCF) right door.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-149 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ98-61006	DCF (Tray 4, 5) right door

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right cover.

1. Open the right door.

2. Remove four screws, and then remove the right cover.

Figure 6-1121 Remove the cover

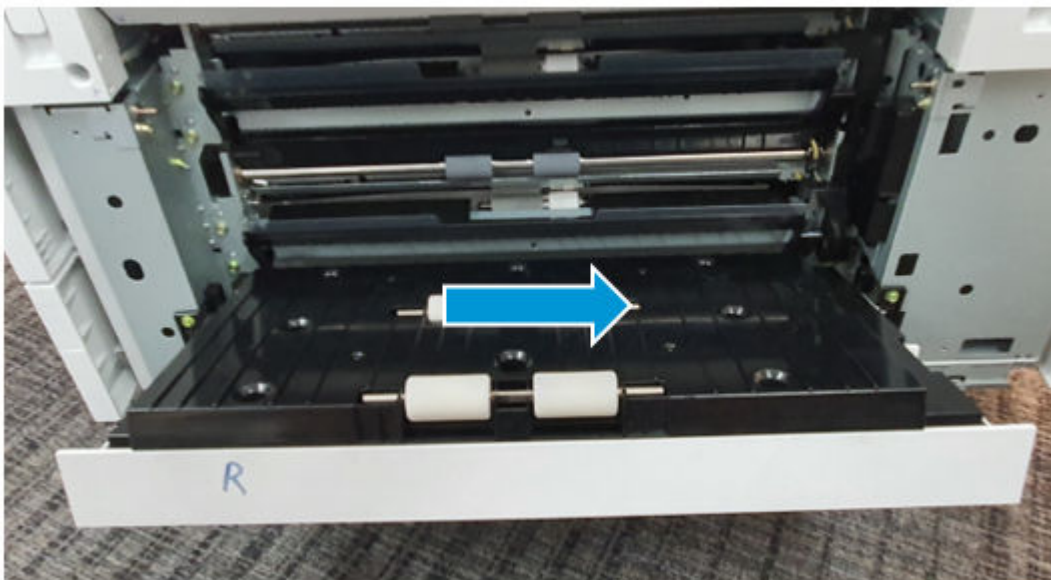


2. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right door.

- Slide the door as shown below, and then remove the right door.

Figure 6-1122 Remove the door



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 4, 5 CMF panels

Learn about removing and replacing the dual cassette feeder (DCF) Tray 4, 5 color panel.

Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-150 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK03-40033	Tray 4 CMF panel
5QK03-40035	Tray 5 CMF panel

Required tools

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

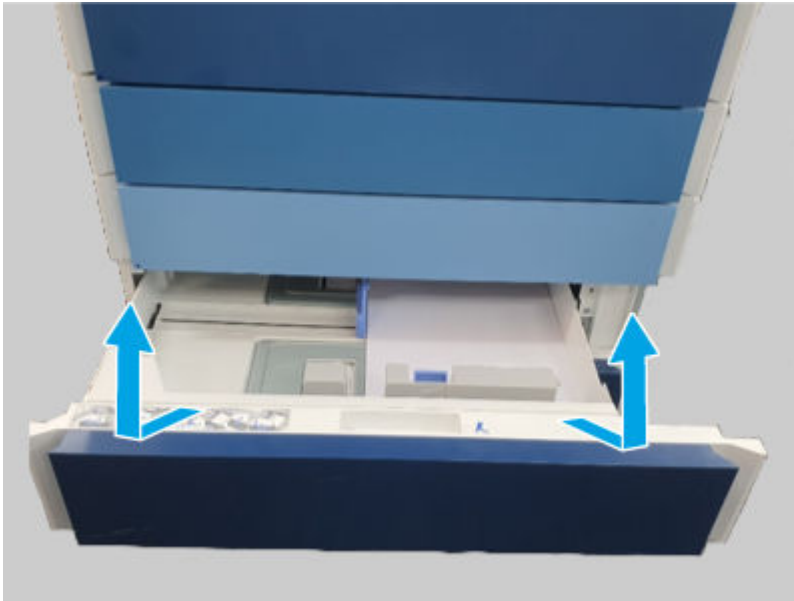
Remove the Tray 4, 5 cassette

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF tray cassette.

 **NOTE:** The procedure for removing a cassette is the same for Tray 4 or Tray 5.

- Partially pull the tray cassette out of the DCF, lift the front edge up, and then remove the cassette.

Figure 6-1123 Remove the cassette



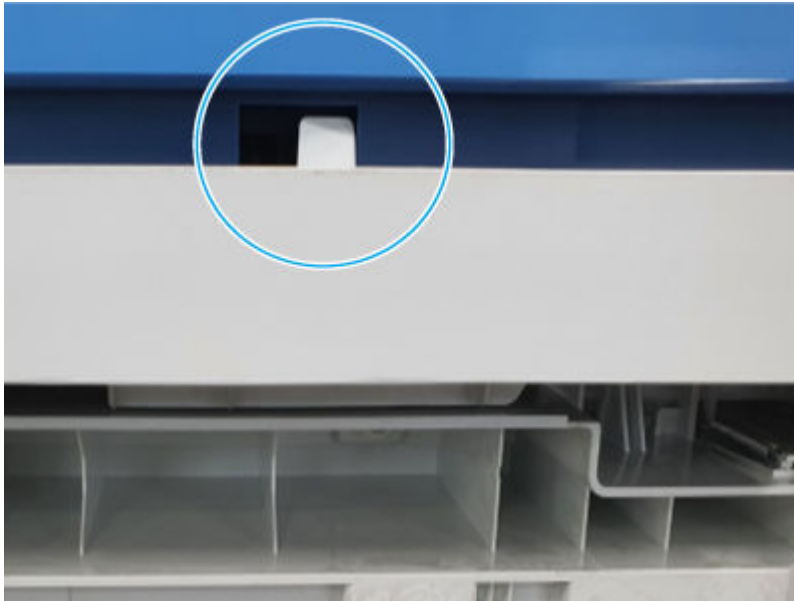
Remove the Tray 4, 5 CMF panel

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF Tray 4, 5 CMF panel.

1. Remove the Tray 4, 5 cassettes.

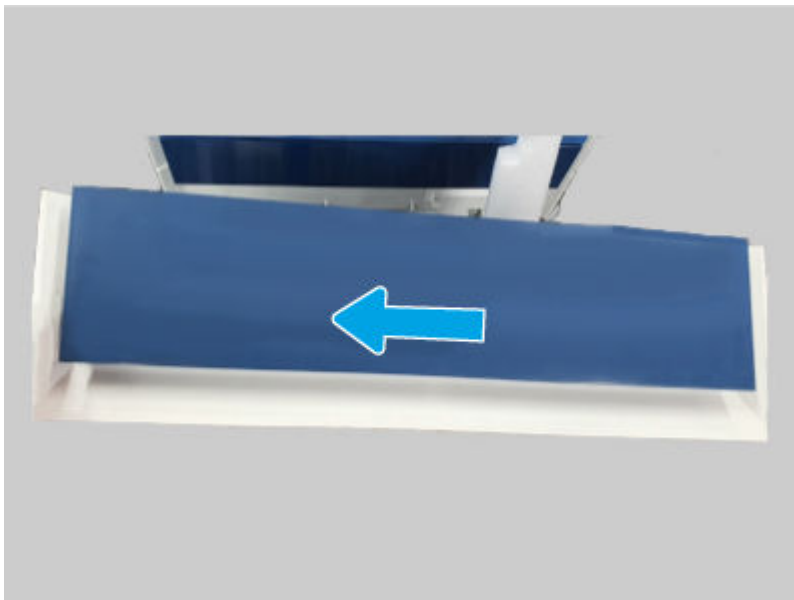
2. Push the hook to release it.

Figure 6-1124 Release the hook



3. Slide the panel to the left to remove the tray CMF panel.

Figure 6-1125 Remove the panel



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Caster wheel

Learn about removing and replacing the dual cassette feeder (DCF) caster wheel.

 **NOTE:** Remove the DCF from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-151 Part information

Part number	Part description
6109-001138	Caster wheel

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

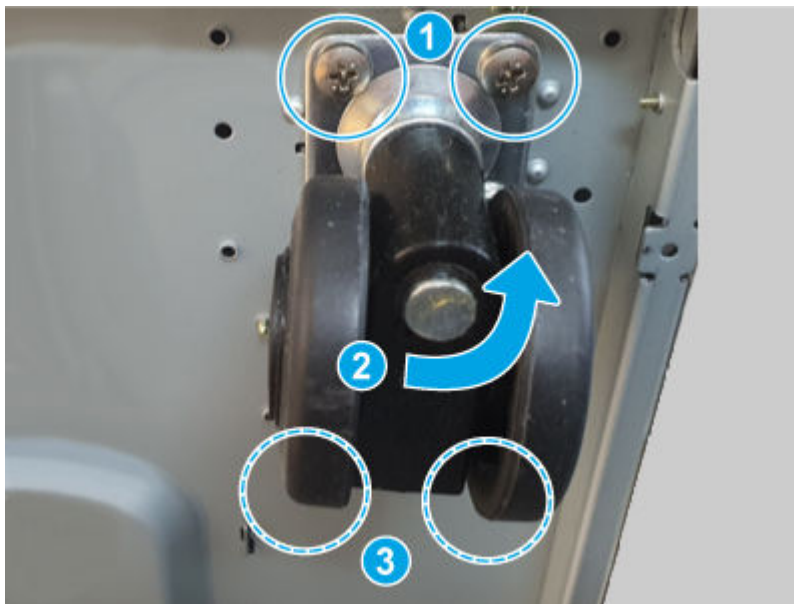
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the caster wheel

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF caster wheel.

1. Remove the DCF from the printer.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove two screws (callout 1).
 - b. Rotate the caster wheel (callout 2) out of the way, and then remove two screws (callout 3).
 - c. Remove the caster wheel.

Figure 6-1126 Remove the caster



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Holder wheel kit

Learn about removing and replacing the dual cassette feeder (DCF) holder wheel kit.


Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-152 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC61-04871A	Guide - adjust DCF

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

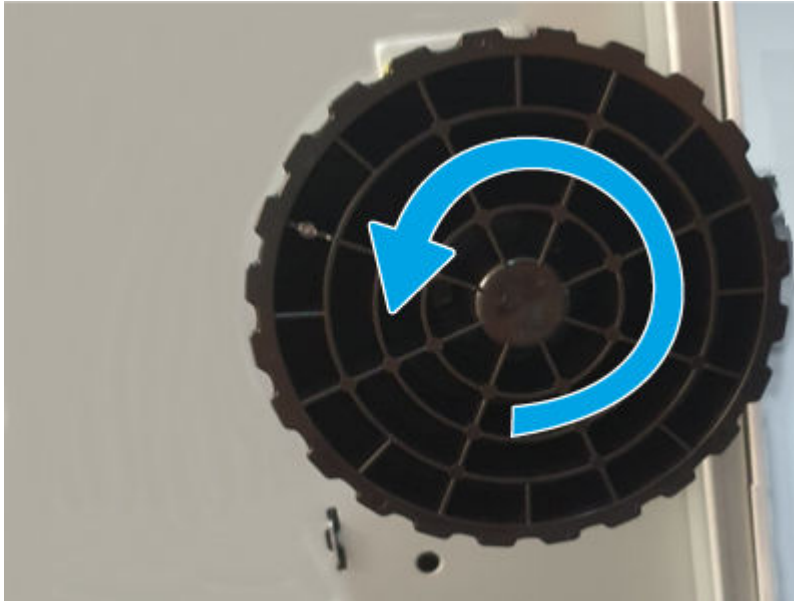
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the holder wheel kit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF holder wheel kit.

1. Remove the DCF from the printer.
2. Turn the holder wheel counterclockwise to remove it.

Figure 6-1127 Remove the holder wheel



3. Remove four screws, and then remove the holder wheel mounting bracket.

Figure 6-1128 Remove the bracket



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Unit

Review the DCF unit parts removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Tray 4, 5 cassettes

Learn about removing and replacing the dual cassette feeder (DCF) Tray 4, 5 cassette.


Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-153 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ98-61009	Tray 4 cassette
5QJ98-61007	Tray 5 cassette

Required tools

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the Tray 4, 5 cassette

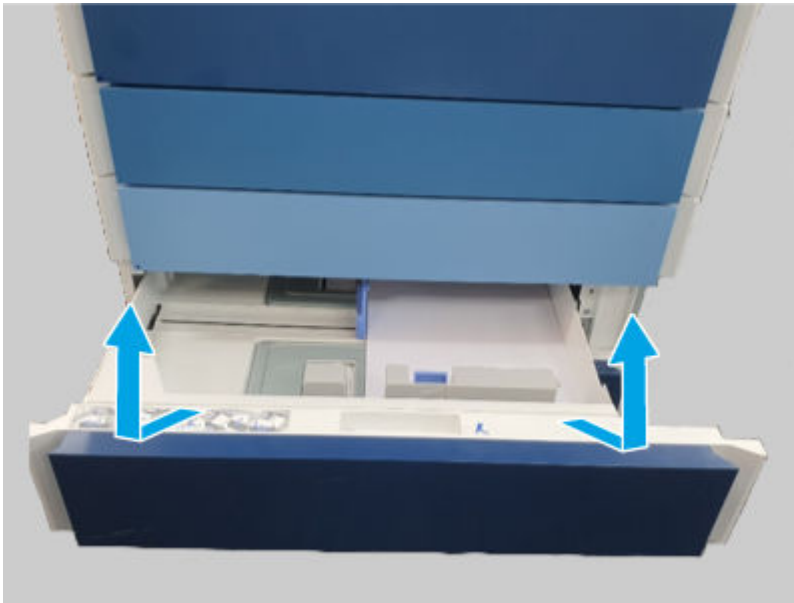
Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF tray cassette.



NOTE: The procedure for removing a cassette is the same for Tray 4 or Tray 5.

- Partially pull the tray cassette out of the DCF, lift the front edge up, and then remove the cassette.

Figure 6-1129 Remove the cassette



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Roller

Review the DCF roller removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: DCF roller kit

Learn about removing and replacing the dual cassette feeder (DCF) Tray 4, 5 rollers.


Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-154 Part information

Part number	Part description
5PN66-67001	DCF roller kit Tray 4
5PN66-67001	DCF roller kit Tray 5

Required tools

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the Tray 4, 5 cassette

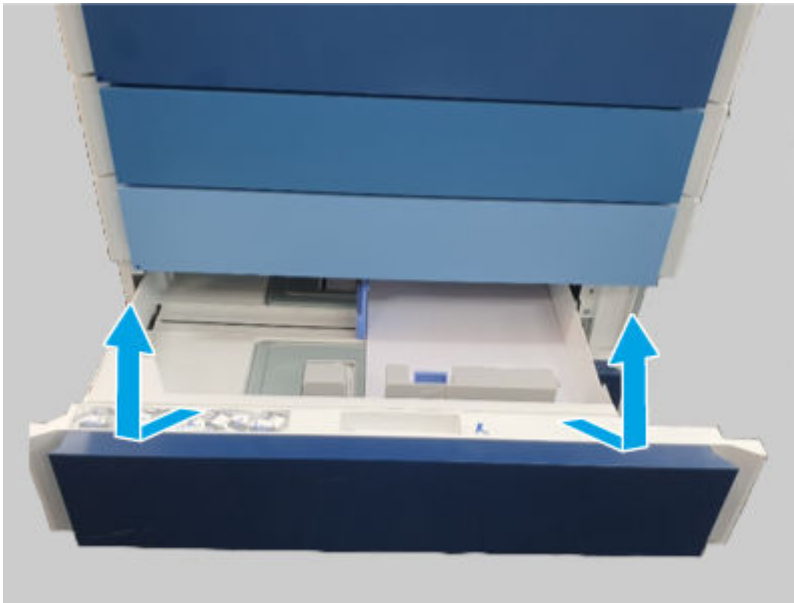
Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF tray cassette.



NOTE: The procedure for removing a cassette is the same for Tray 4 or Tray 5.


- Partially pull the tray cassette out of the DCF, lift the front edge up, and then remove the cassette.

Figure 6-1130 Remove the cassette



2. Remove the Tray 4, 5 rollers

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF tray rollers.

 **NOTE:** The procedure for removing the rollers is the same for Tray 4 or Tray 5.

1. Inside the tray cavity, slide the return guide toward the front of the printer until it stops.


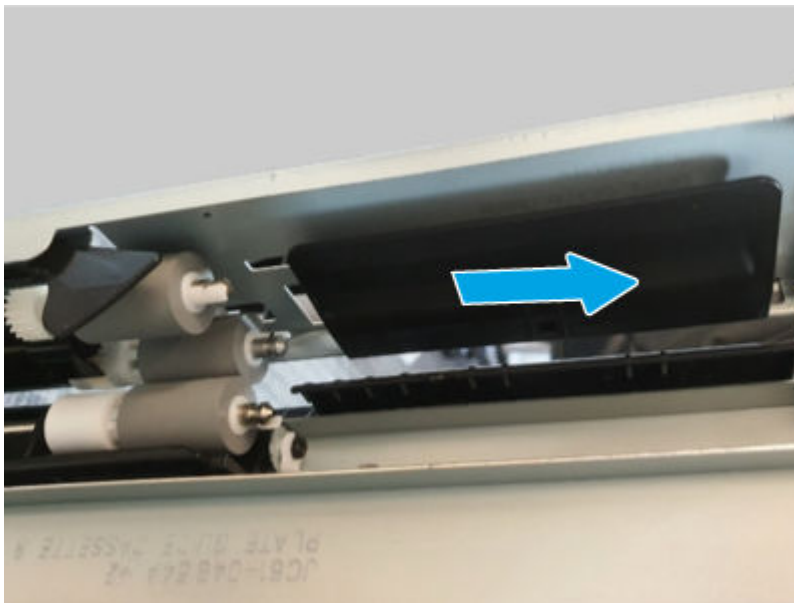
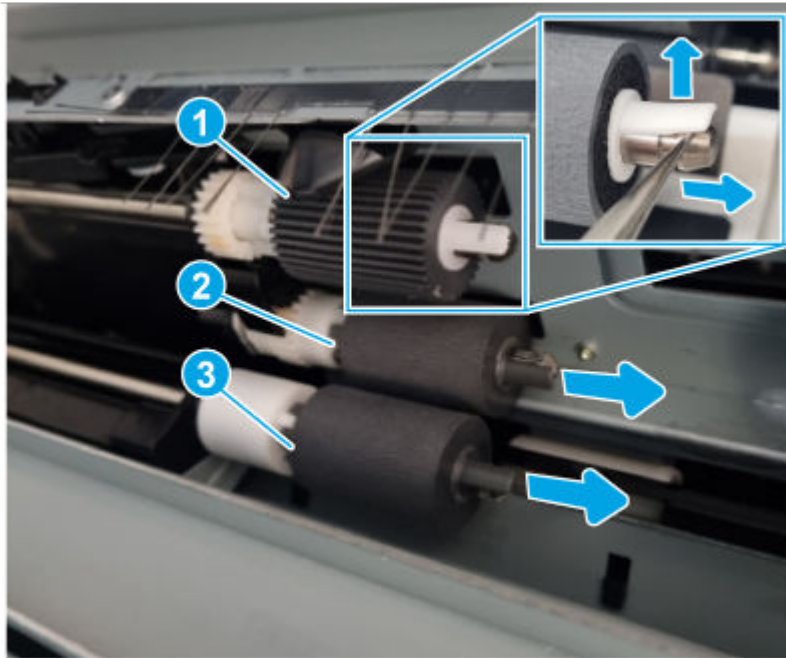
 **Reinstallation tip:** To prevent jams, make sure to slide the guide toward the rear of the printer after installing replacement rollers.

Figure 6-1131 Move the guide



2. Use a pair of tweezers to release the locking tab, and then slide the roller off the shaft to remove it.
 - **Pickup roller:** callout 1
 - **Forward roller:** callout 2
 - **Reverse roller:** callout 3

Figure 6-1132 Remove the rollers



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Sensor

Review the DCF sensor removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Tray 4, 5 paper size sensors

Learn about removing and replacing the dual cassette feeder (DCF) Tray 4, 5 paper size sensors.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-155 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-00018B	Autosize sensor (Paper size Tray 4)
JC93-00018B	Autosize sensor (Paper size Tray 5)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the Tray 4, 5 cassette

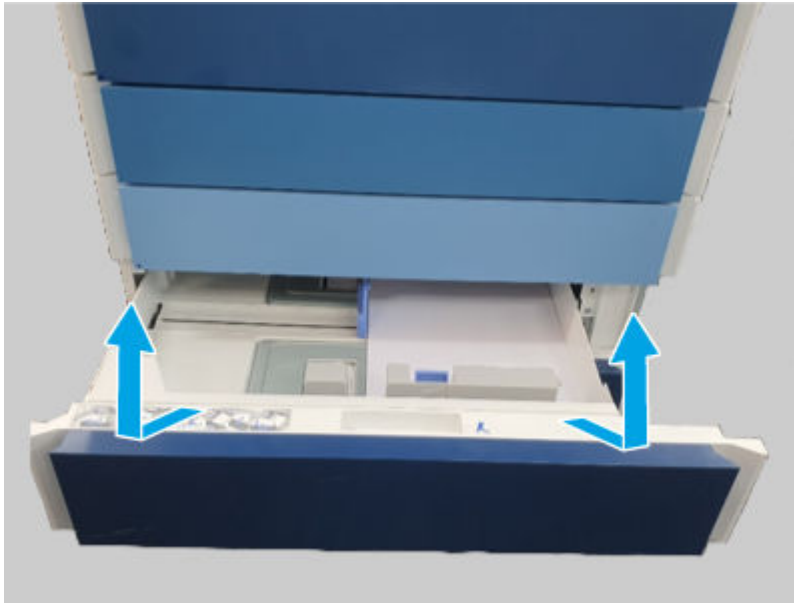
Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF tray cassette.



NOTE: The procedure for removing a cassette is the same for Tray 4 or Tray 5.

- Partially pull the tray cassette out of the DCF, lift the front edge up, and then remove the cassette.

Figure 6-1133 Remove the cassette



2. Remove the Tray 4, 5 paper size sensors

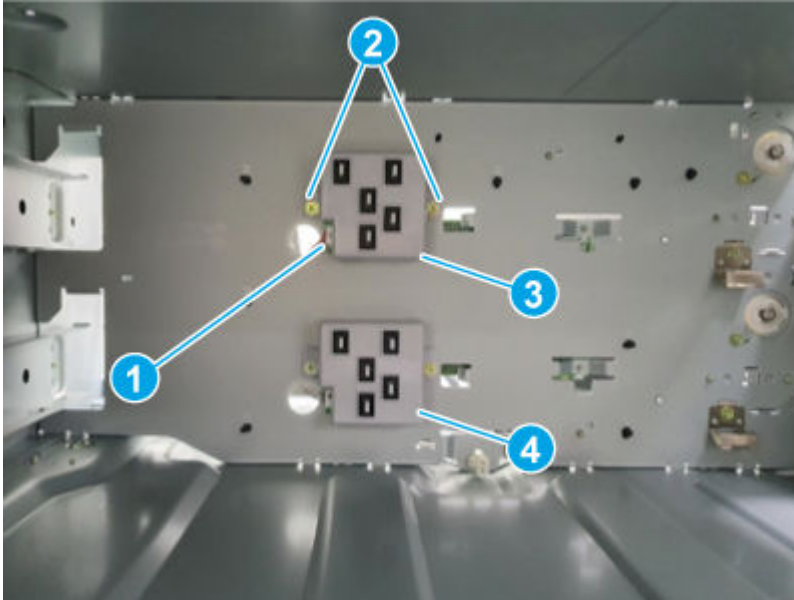
Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF tray paper size sensors.



NOTE: The procedure for removing the paper size sensors is the same for Tray 4 or Tray 5.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the paper size sensor.
 - **Callout 3:** Tray 4 paper size sensor
 - **Callout 4:** Tray 5 paper size sensor

Figure 6-1134 Remove the sensor



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 4 pickup assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the dual cassette feeder (DCF) Tray 4 pickup assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the DCF from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-156 Part Information

Part number	Part description
8GR90-60007	Tray 4 pickup assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

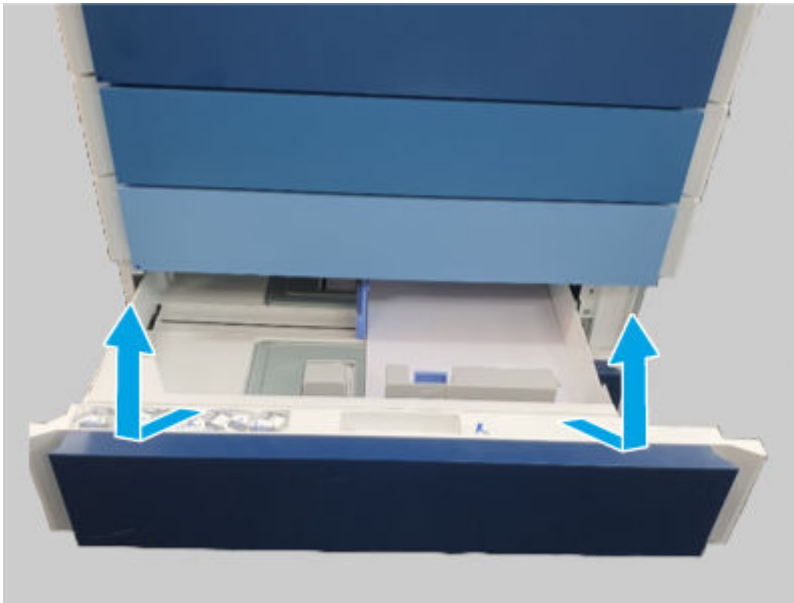
1. Remove the Tray 4, 5 cassette

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF tray cassette.

 **NOTE:** The procedure for removing a cassette is the same for Tray 4 or Tray 5.

- Partially pull the tray cassette out of the DCF, lift the front edge up, and then remove the cassette.

Figure 6-1135 Remove the cassette



2. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right cover.

1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screws, and then remove the right cover.

Figure 6-1136 Remove the cover

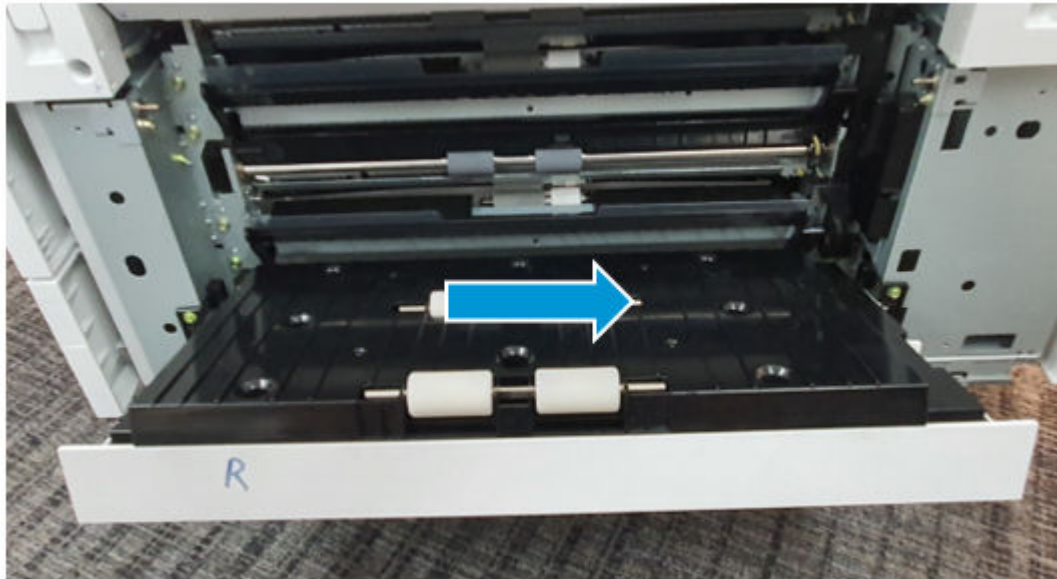


3. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right door.

- Slide the door as shown below, and then remove the right door.

Figure 6-1137 Remove the door



4. Remove the DCF right door open switch holder

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF right door open switch holder.

- Remove one screw and then pull the switch and holder out.

Figure 6-1138 Pull out the switch and holder

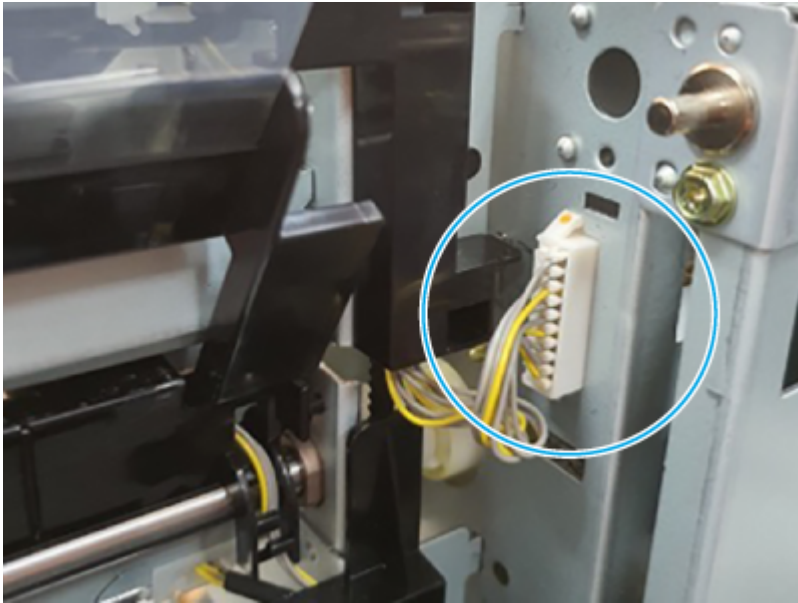


5. Remove the Tray 4 pickup assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF Tray 4 pickup assembly.

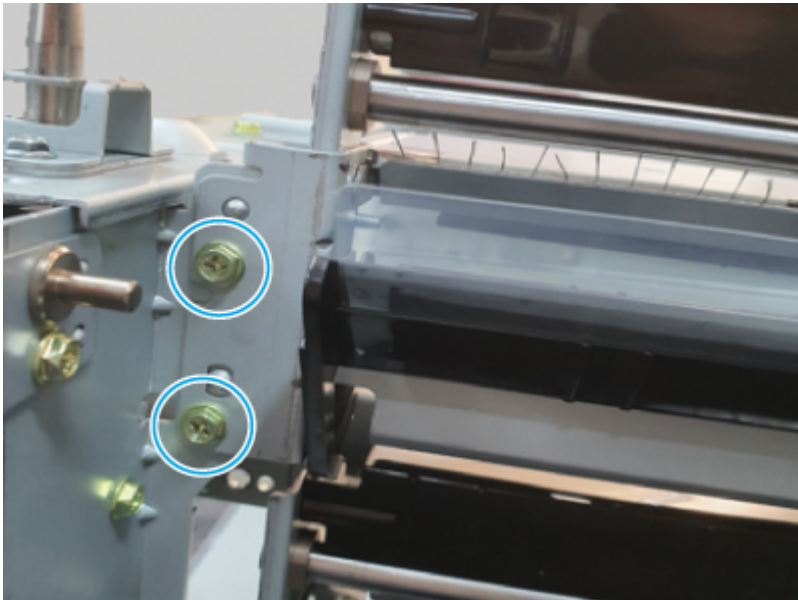
1. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-1139 Disconnect one connector



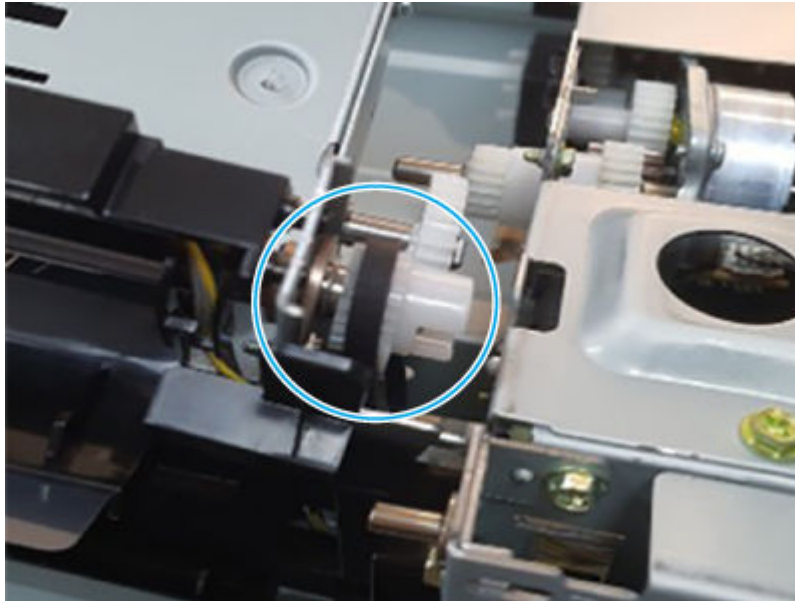
2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1140 Remove two screws



3. Release one belt, and then remove the Tray 4 pickup assembly.

Figure 6-1141 Remove the assembly



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 4 paper empty and stack height sensors

Learn about removing and replacing the dual cassette feeder (DCF) Tray 4 paper empty and stack height sensors.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-157 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Tray 4 paper empty sensor)
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Tray 4 paper stack height sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the Tray 4, 5 cassette

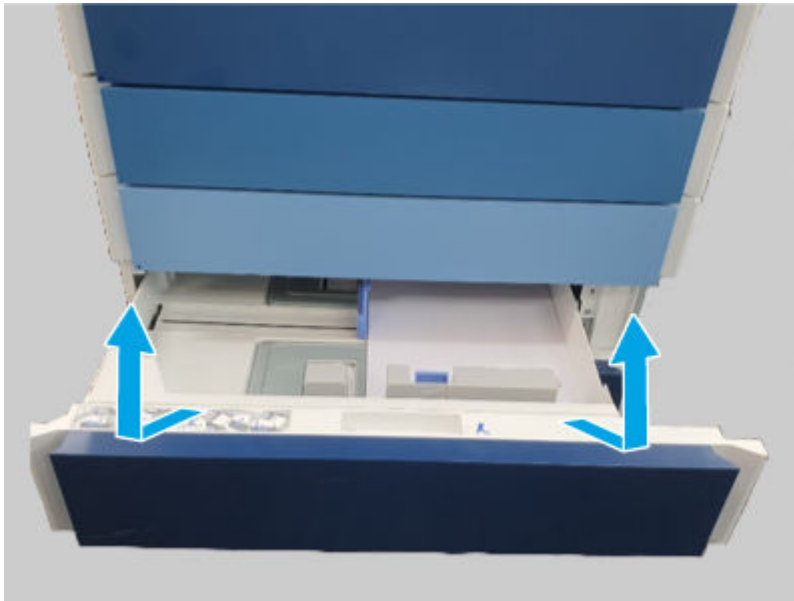
Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF tray cassette.



NOTE: The procedure for removing a cassette is the same for Tray 4 or Tray 5.


- Partially pull the tray cassette out of the DCF, lift the front edge up, and then remove the cassette.

Figure 6-1142 Remove the cassette



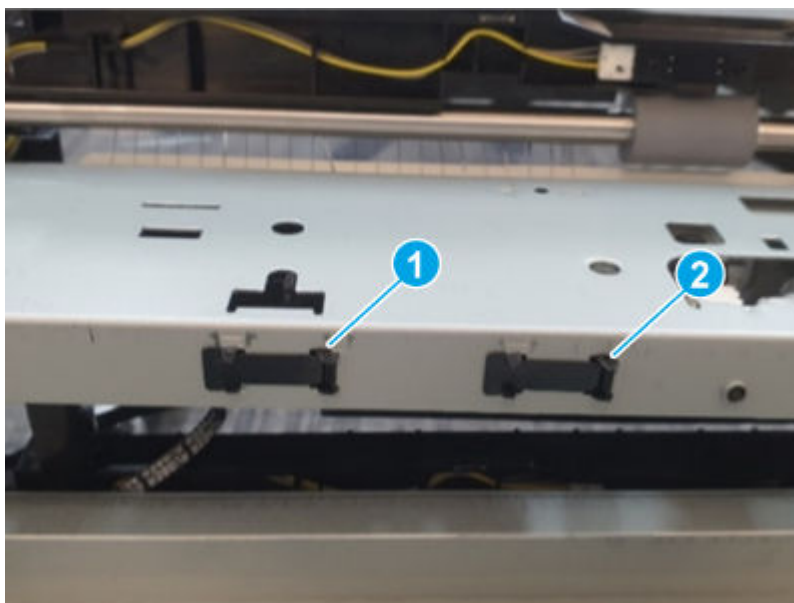
2. Remove the Tray 4, 5 paper empty and stack height sensors

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF tray paper empty and stack height sensors.

 **NOTE:** The procedure for removing the paper empty sensor or the paper stack height sensor is the same for both sensors.

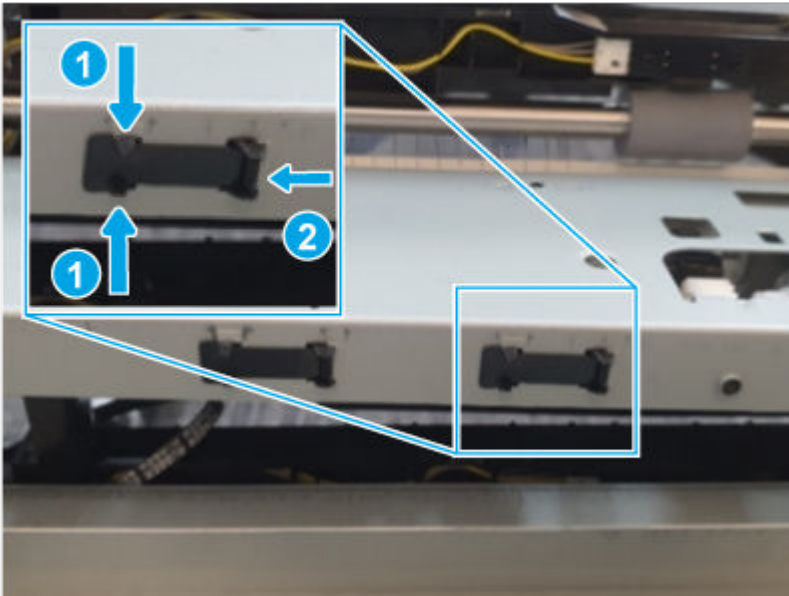
1. Locate the desired sensor to remove (on the Tray 4 pickup assembly).
 - **Callout 1:** Tray 4, 5 paper stack height sensor
 - **Callout 2:** Tray 4, 5 paper empty sensor

Figure 6-1143 Locate the sensor



2. Do the following:
 - Release the hooks (callout 1).
 - Slide the sensor assembly to the left (callout 2).
 - Release the sensor.

Figure 6-1144 Release the sensor



3. Disconnect one connector to remove the sensor.


Figure 6-1145 Remove the sensor



3. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: DCF feed 4, 5 sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the dual cassette feeder (DCF) feed sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the DCF from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-158 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001490	Photo interrupter (Feed 4,5 sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the Tray 4, 5 cassette

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF tray cassette.



NOTE: The procedure for removing a cassette is the same for Tray 4 or Tray 5.

- Partially pull the tray cassette out of the DCF, lift the front edge up, and then remove the cassette.

Figure 6-1146 Remove the cassette



2. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right cover.

1. Open the right door.

2. Remove four screws, and then remove the right cover.

Figure 6-1147 Remove the cover

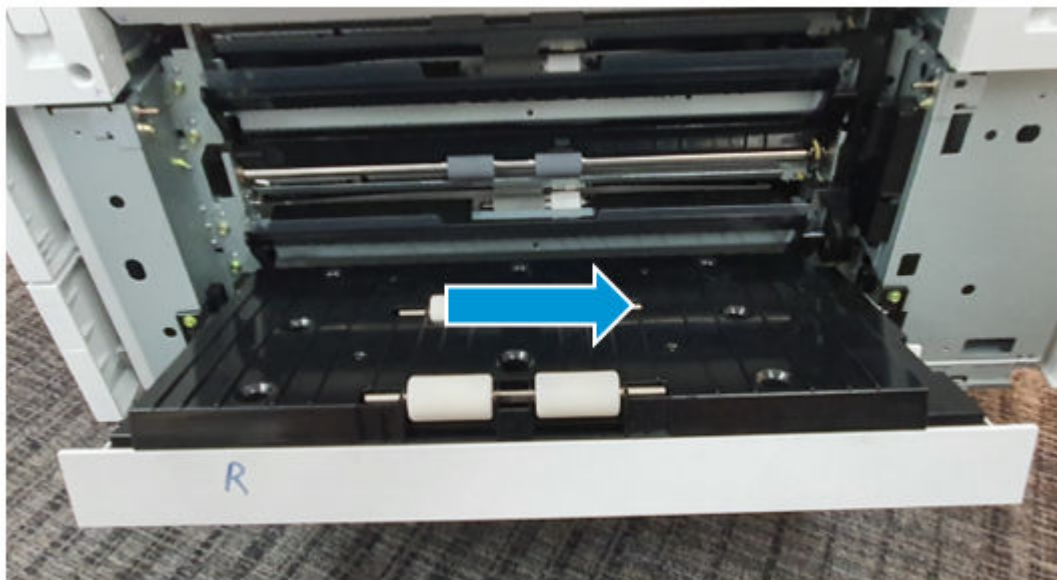


3. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right door.

- Slide the door as shown below, and then remove the right door.

Figure 6-1148 Remove the door



4. Remove the DCF right door open switch holder

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF right door open switch holder.

- Remove one screw and then pull the switch and holder out.

Figure 6-1149 Pull out the switch and holder

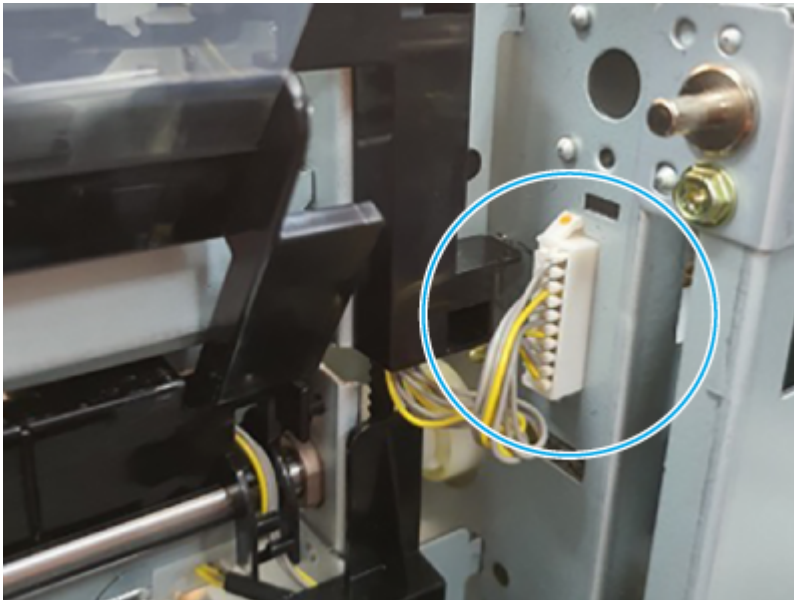


5. Remove the Tray 4 pickup assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF Tray 4 pickup assembly.

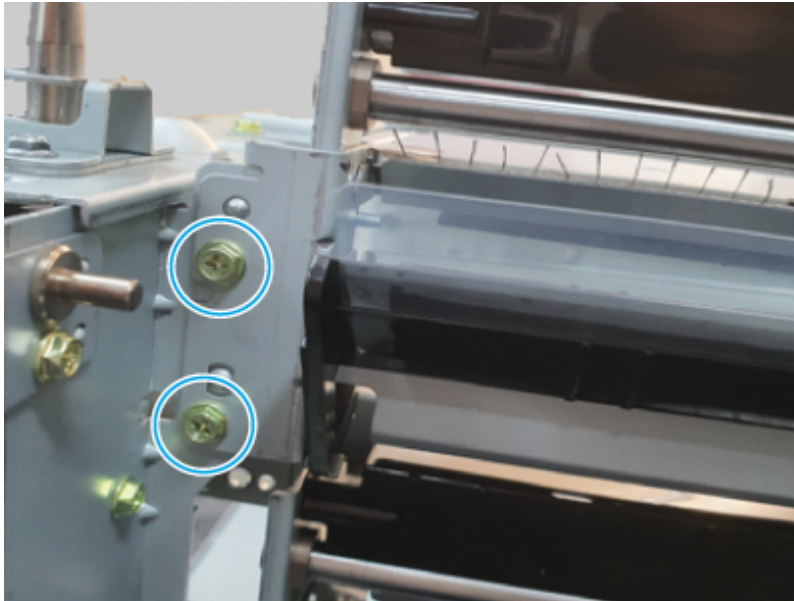
1. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-1150 Disconnect one connector



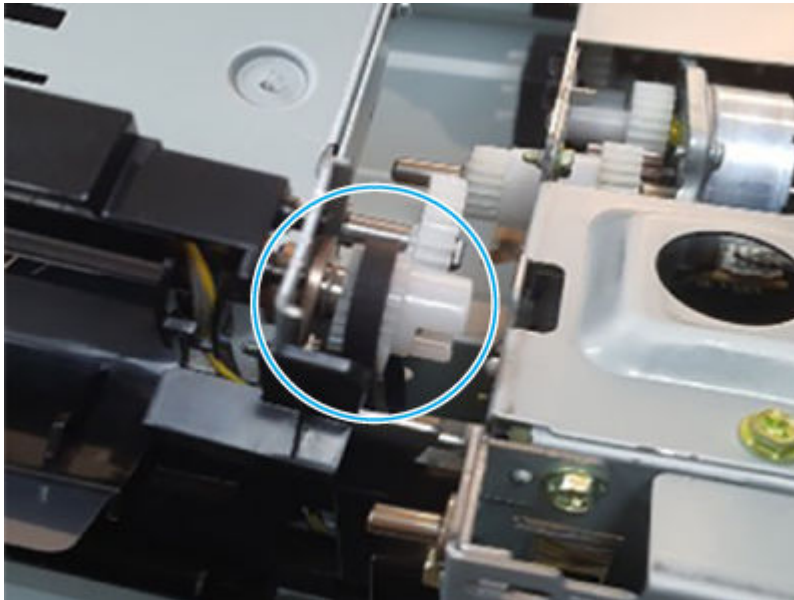
2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1151 Remove two screws



3. Release one belt, and then remove the Tray 4 pickup assembly.

Figure 6-1152 Remove the assembly



6. Remove the feed Tray 4, 5 sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF eed Tray 4, 5 sensor.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the feed sensor (callout 2).


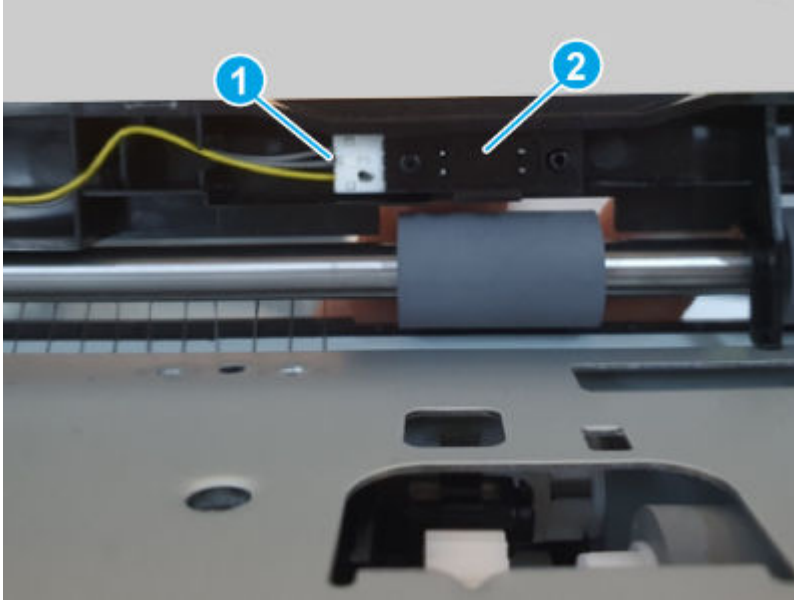
 **NOTE:** The sensor is located on the feed guide take away upper.

Figure 6-1153 Remove the sensor



7. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 5 pickup assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the dual cassette feeder (DCF) Tray 5 pickup assembly.



NOTE: Remove the DCF from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-159 Part Information

Part number	Part description
8GR90-60007	Tray 5 pickup assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the Tray 4, 5 cassette

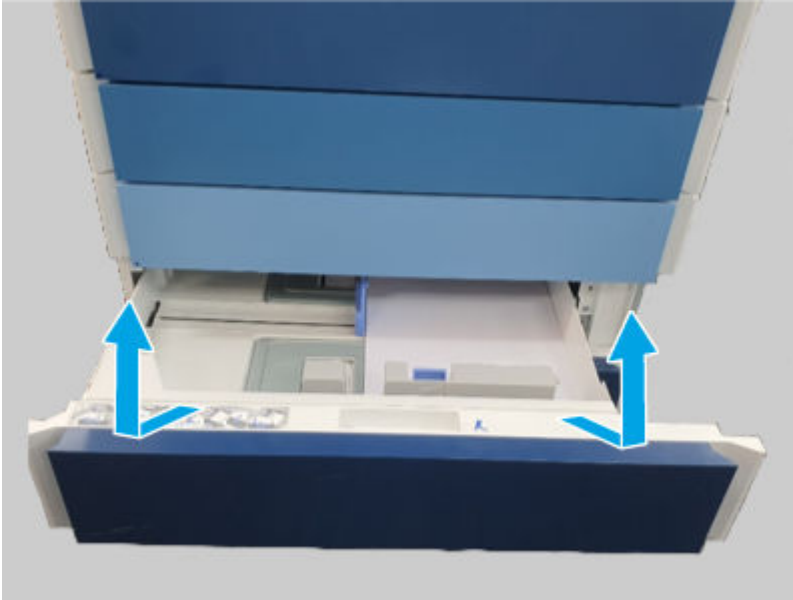
Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF tray cassette.



NOTE: The procedure for removing a cassette is the same for Tray 4 or Tray 5.

- Partially pull the tray cassette out of the DCF, lift the front edge up, and then remove the cassette.

Figure 6-1154 Remove the cassette



2. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right cover.

1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screws, and then remove the right cover.

Figure 6-1155 Remove the cover

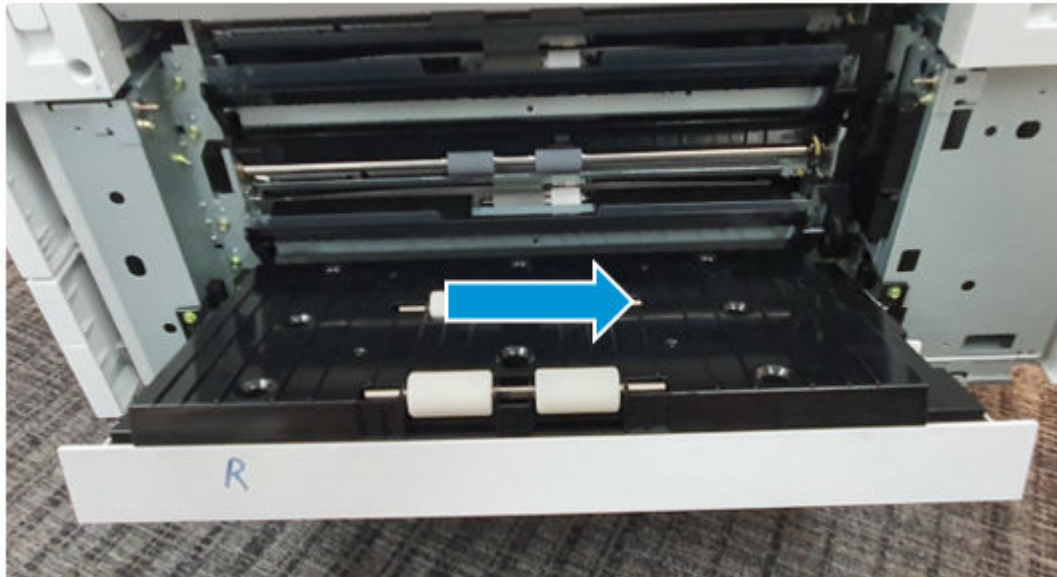


3. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right door.

- Slide the door as shown below, and then remove the right door.

Figure 6-1156 Remove the door



4. Remove the DCF right door open switch holder

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF right door open switch holder.

- Remove one screw and then pull the switch and holder out.

Figure 6-1157 Pull out the switch and holder

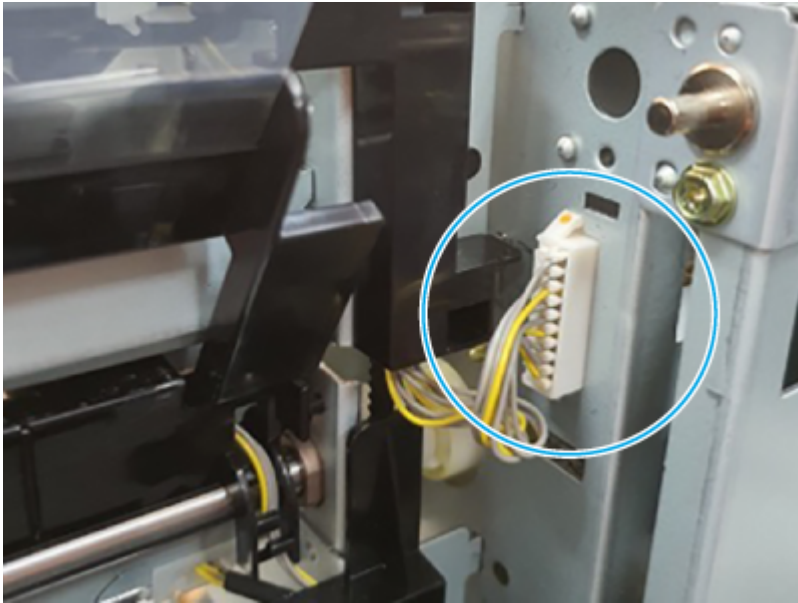


5. Remove the Tray 4 pickup assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF Tray 4 pickup assembly.

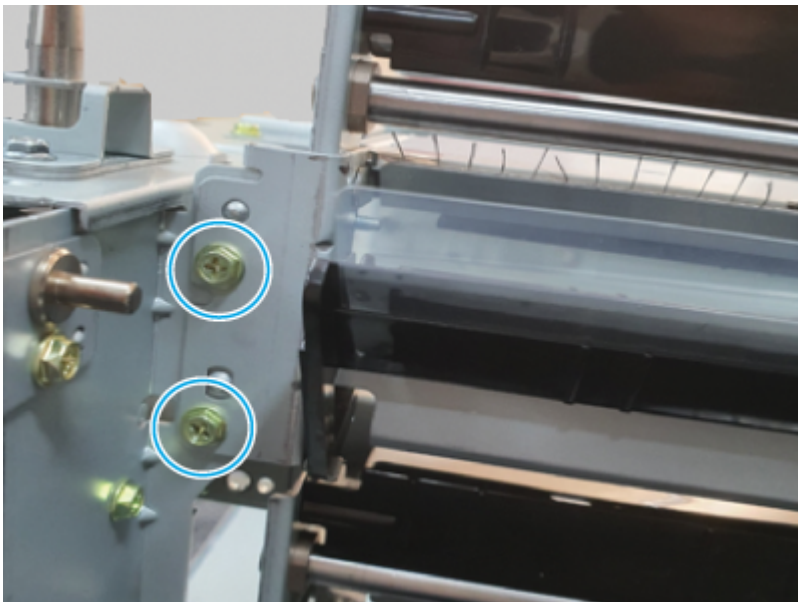
1. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-1158 Disconnect one connector



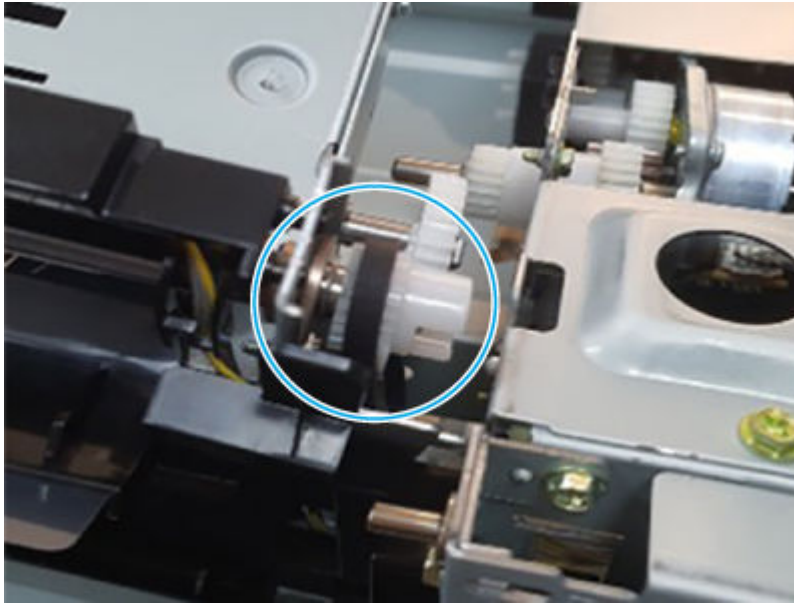
2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1159 Remove two screws



3. Release one belt, and then remove the Tray 4 pickup assembly.

Figure 6-1160 Remove the assembly

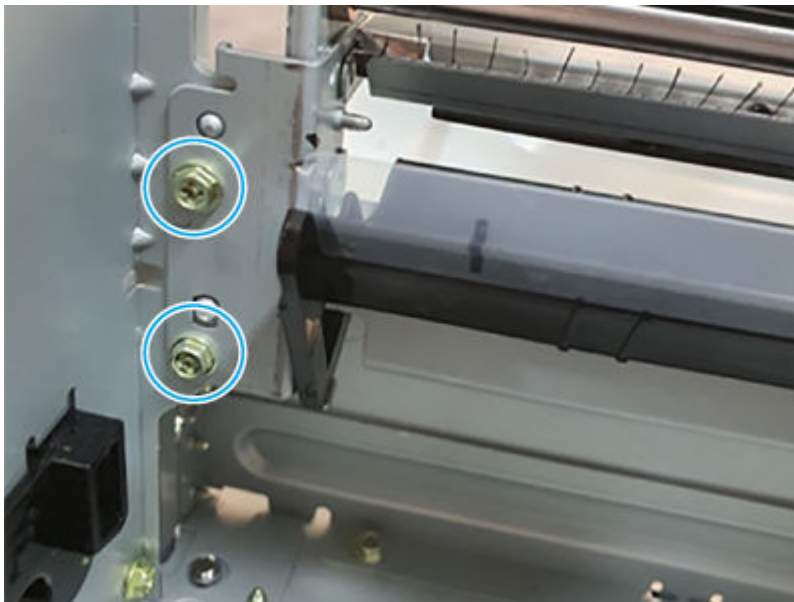


6. Remove the Tray 4 pickup assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF Tray 4 pickup assembly.

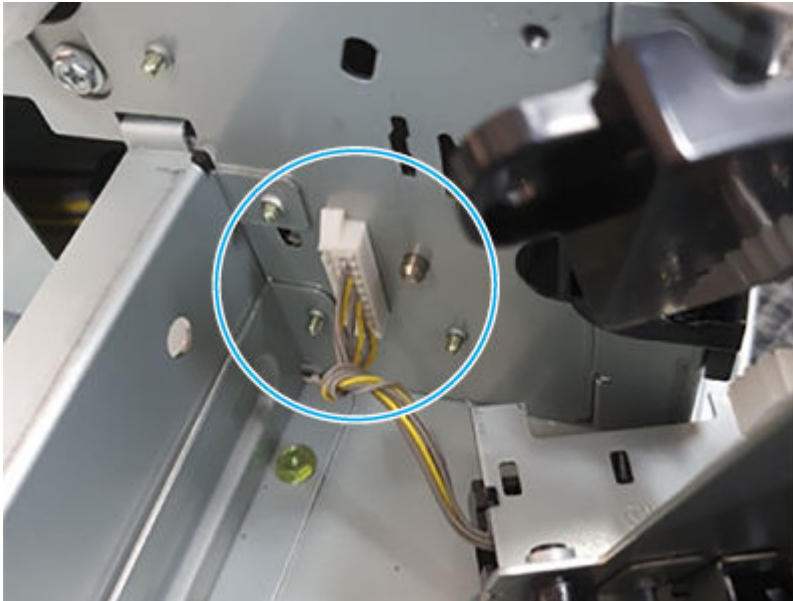
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1161 Remove two screws



2. Slightly separate the assembly from the DCF, disconnect one connector, and then remove the Tray 5 pickup assembly.


Figure 6-1162 Remove the assembly



7. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 5 paper empty and stack height sensors

Learn about removing and replacing the dual cassette feeder (DCF) Tray 5 paper empty and stack height sensors.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-160 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Tray 5 paper empty sensor)
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Tray 5 paper stack height sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

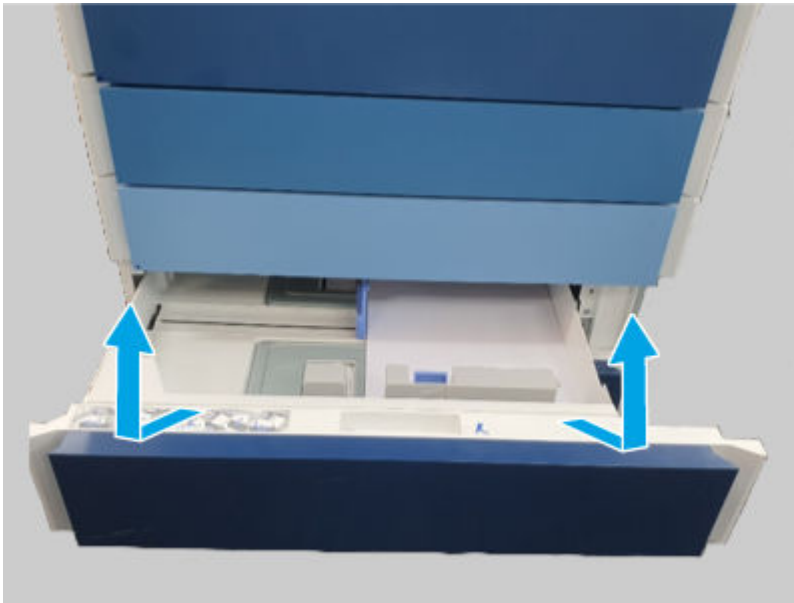
1. Remove the Tray 4, 5 cassette

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF tray cassette.

 **NOTE:** The procedure for removing a cassette is the same for Tray 4 or Tray 5.


- Partially pull the tray cassette out of the DCF, lift the front edge up, and then remove the cassette.

Figure 6-1163 Remove the cassette



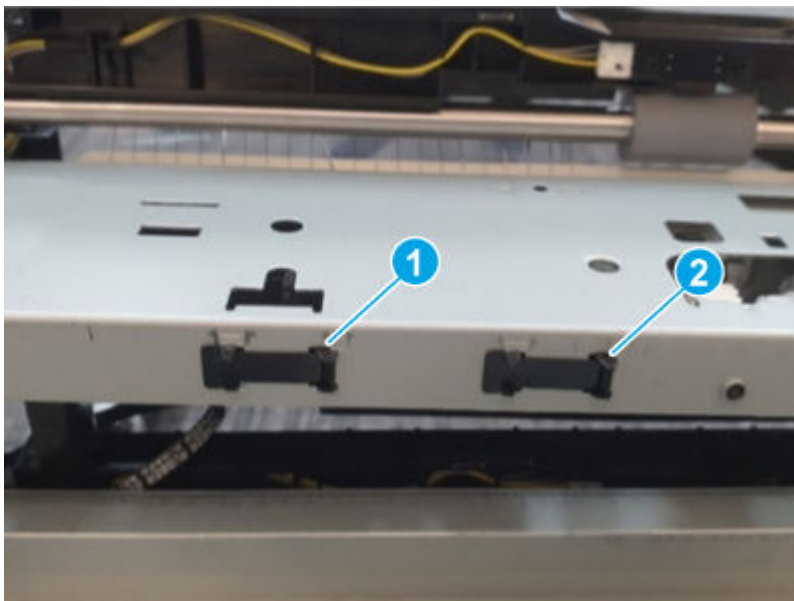
2. Remove the Tray 4, 5 paper empty and stack height sensors

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF tray paper empty and stack height sensors.

 **NOTE:** The procedure for removing the paper empty sensor or the paper stack height sensor is the same for both sensors.

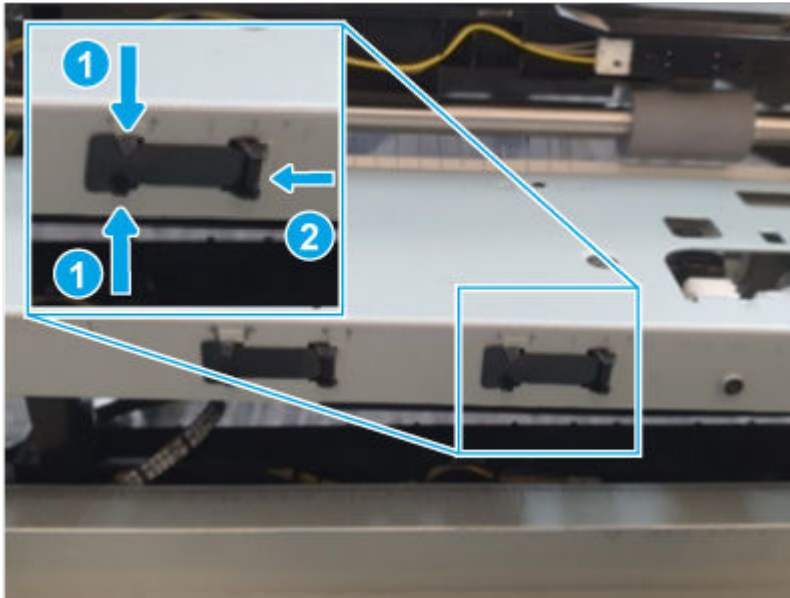
1. Locate the desired sensor to remove (on the Tray 4 pickup assembly).
 - **Callout 1:** Tray 4, 5 paper stack height sensor
 - **Callout 2:** Tray 4, 5 paper empty sensor

Figure 6-1164 Locate the sensor



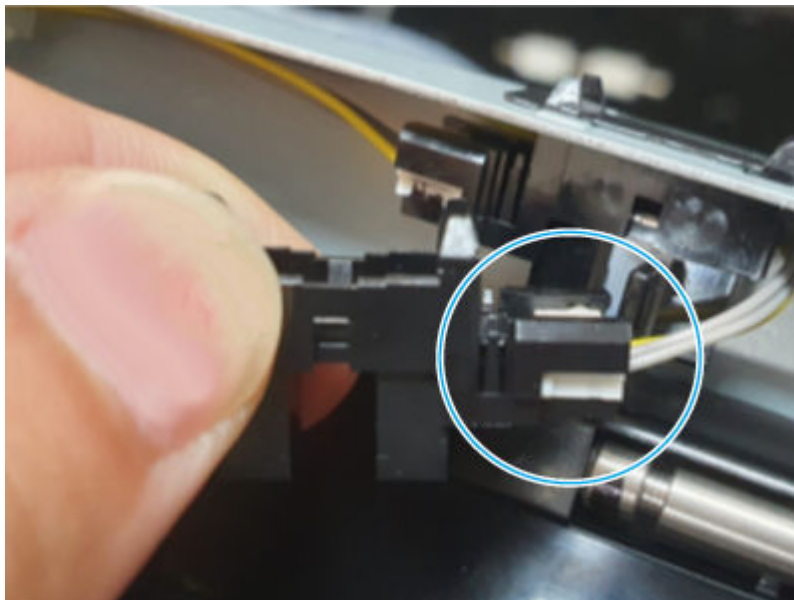
2. Do the following:
 - Release the hooks (callout 1).
 - Slide the sensor assembly to the left (callout 2).
 - Release the sensor.

Figure 6-1165 Release the sensor



3. Disconnect one connector to remove the sensor.


Figure 6-1166 Remove the sensor



3. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.


 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Motor

Review the DCF motor removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: DCF pickup drive assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the dual cassette feeder (DCF) pickup drive assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the DCF from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-161 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ90-64001	DCF pickup drive assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover.

- Remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1167 Remove the cover



Reverse the removal steps to install the part.

2. Remove the DCF pickup drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF pickup drive assembly.

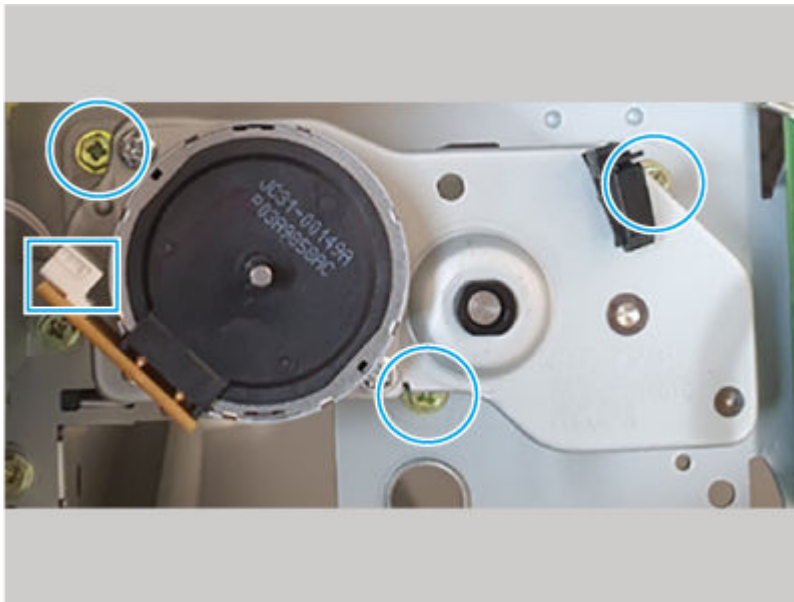
1. Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the Tray 4 pickup drive assembly.

Figure 6-1168 Remove the assembly (Tray 4)



2. Disconnect one connector, remove three screws, and then remove the Tray 5 pickup drive assembly.

Figure 6-1169 Remove the assembly (Tray 5)



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 4 pickup motor

Learn about removing and replacing the dual cassette feeder (DCF) Tray 4 pickup motor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the DCF from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-162 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ90-64002	Drive-motor step (Tray 4 pickup motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover.

- Remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1170 Remove the cover



2. Remove the DCF Tray 4 pickup motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF Tray 4 pickup motor.

- Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the Tray 4 pickup motor.


Figure 6-1171 Remove the motor



3. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 5 pickup motor

Learn about removing and replacing the dual cassette feeder (DCF) Tray 5 pickup motor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the DCF from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-163 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ90-64002	Drive-motor step (Tray 5 pickup motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover.

- Remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1172 Remove the cover



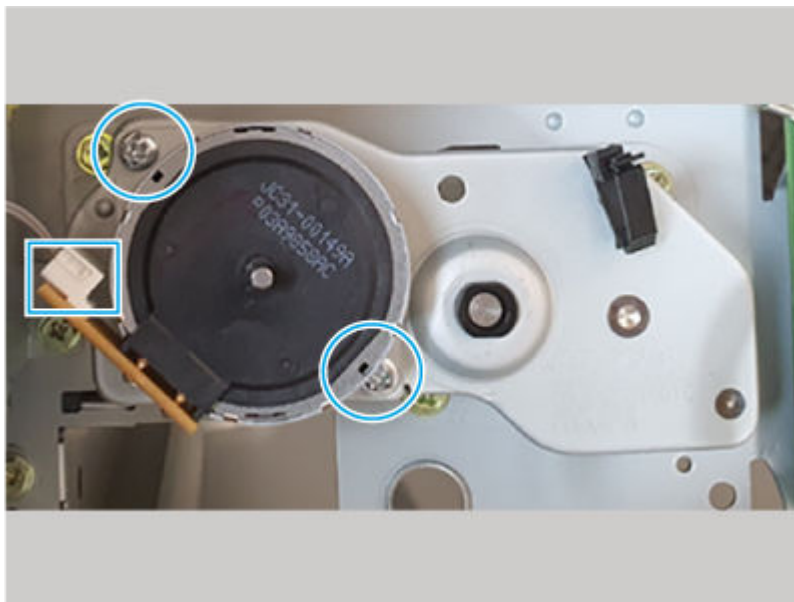
were the removal steps to install the part

2. Remove the DCF Tray 5 pickup motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF Tray 5 pickup motor.

- Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the Tray 5 pickup motor.

Figure 6-1173 Remove the motor



3. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: DCF feed drive assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the dual cassette feeder (DCF) feed drive assembly.


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-164 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01801A	DCF feed drive assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover.

- Remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1174 Remove the cover



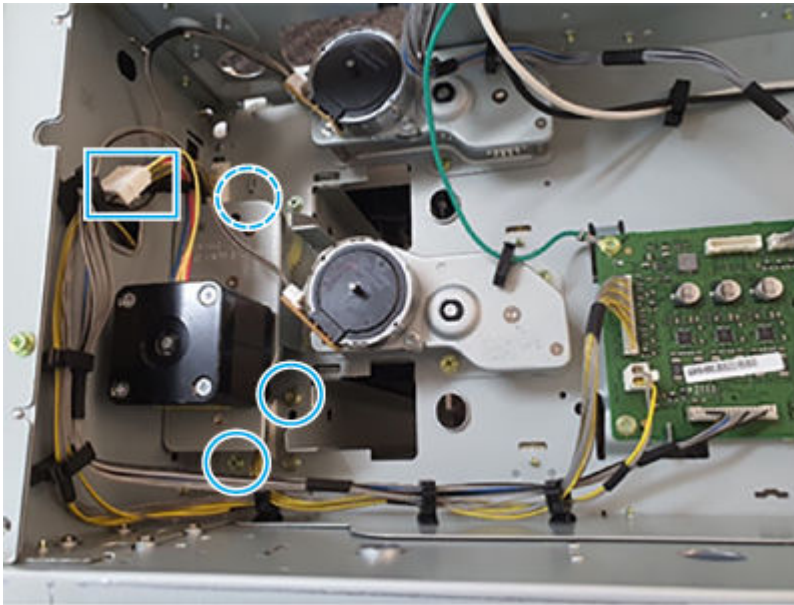
Use the following removal steps to install the next

2. Remove the DCF feed drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF feed drive assembly.

- Disconnect one connector, remove three screws, and then remove the feed drive assembly.

Figure 6-1175 Remove the assembly



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: DCF (Tray 4, 5) feed motor

Learn about removing and replacing the dual cassette feeder (DCF) feed motor.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-165 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ90-60023	DCF Tray 4, 5 feed motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover.

- Remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1176 Remove the cover



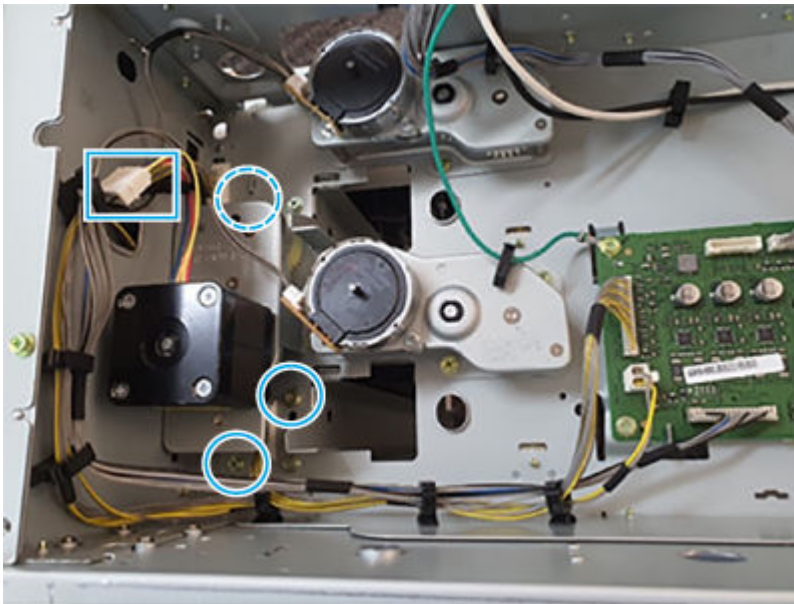
...were the removal steps to install the part

2. Remove the DCF feed drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF feed drive assembly.

- Disconnect one connector, remove three screws, and then remove the feed drive assembly.

Figure 6-1177 Remove the assembly



3. Remove the DCF feed motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF feed motor.

- Release the belt (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the feed motor.


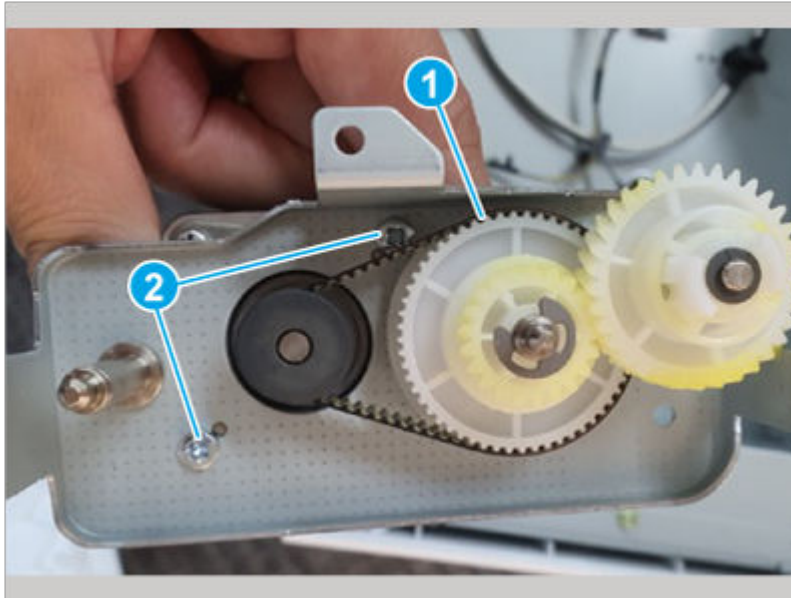
 **TIP:** It might be easier to release the belt if the screws are loosened or removed first.

Figure 6-1178 Remove the motor



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

PCA and harness

Review the DCF PCA and harness removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Tray heater

Learn about removing and replacing the DCF tray heaters.


Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-166 Part information

Part number	Part description
Y1G22-67901	Tray heater 110V
Y1G22-67902	Tray heater 220V

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the Tray 4, 5 cassette

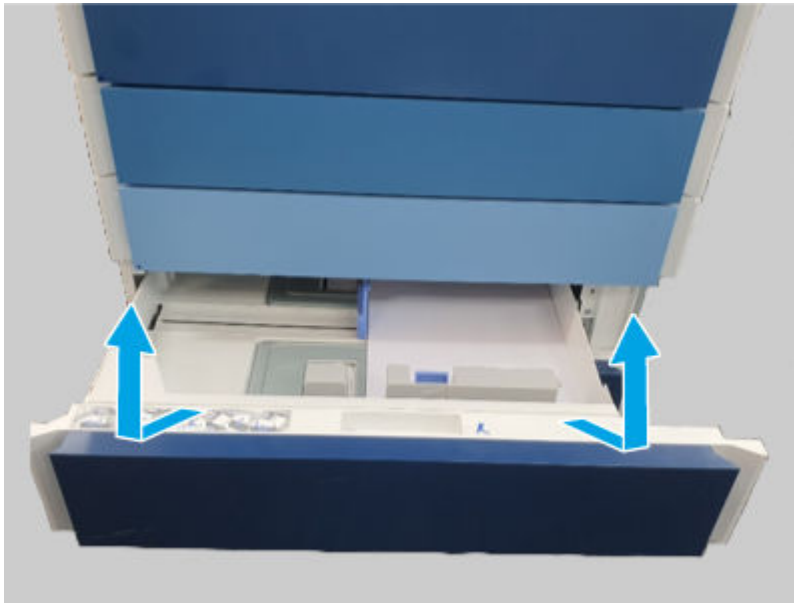
Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF tray cassette.



NOTE: The procedure for removing a cassette is the same for Tray 4 or Tray 5.


- Partially pull the tray cassette out of the DCF, lift the front edge up, and then remove the cassette.

Figure 6-1179 Remove the cassette



Remove Tray 2 or Tray 3

Use the following procedure to remove and replace Tray 2 or Tray 3.

 **NOTE:** Tray 2 is shown in the figure below. However, removing Tray 3 is identical to Tray 2.

1. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-1180 Remove one screw



2. Do the following:

- Slightly lift up on the front of the heater, and pull it toward the front of the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the heater. It is still attached to the printer by a wire-harness connector.

- Disconnect one connector, and then remove the heater.

Figure 6-1181 Remove the heater



2. Remove Tray 2 or Tray 3

Use the following procedure to remove and replace Tray 2 or Tray 3.

📝 NOTE: Tray 2 is shown in the figure below. However, removing Tray 3 is identical to Tray 2.

1. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-1182 Remove one screw



2. Do the following:

- Slightly lift up on the front of the heater, and pull it toward the front of the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the heater. It is still attached to the printer by a wire-harness connector.

- Disconnect one connector, and then remove the heater.

Figure 6-1183 Remove the heater



3. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: DCF (Tray 4, 5) PCA

Learn about removing and replacing the DCF PCA.


Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-167 Part information

Part number	Part description
6GW46-60001	DCF (Tray4, 5) PCA

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover.

- Remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1184 Remove the cover



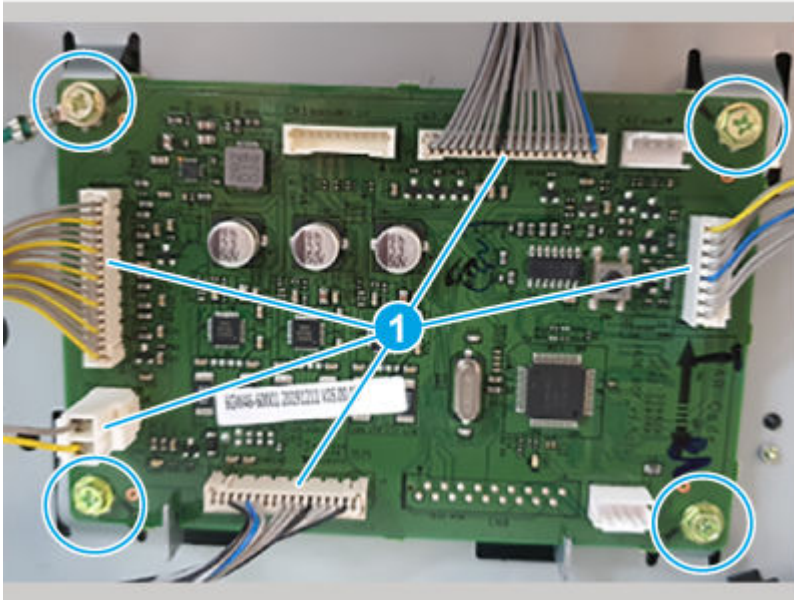
Use the following removal steps to install the next

2. Remove the DCF PCA

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF PCA.

- Disconnect all of the connectors (callout 1), remove four screws, and then remove the DCF PCA.

Figure 6-1185 Remove the PCA



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: DCF (Tray 4, 5) right door open switch holder assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the DCF right door open switch holder.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-168 Part information

Part number	Part description
6GW46-40010	DCF (Tray4, 5) right door open switch holder
JC39-01696A	DCF WG Door open switch sensor harness

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover.

- Remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1186 Remove the cover



Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right cover.

2. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right cover.

1. Open the right door.
2. Remove four screws, and then remove the right cover.

Figure 6-1187 Remove the cover



3. Remove the DCF right door open switch holder

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF right door open switch holder.

- Remove one screw and then pull the switch and holder out.


Figure 6-1188 Pull out the switch and holder



4. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: DCF IF harness

Learn about removing and replacing the DCF IF harness.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-169 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC39-01690A	DCF IF harness

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover.

- Remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1189 Remove the cover



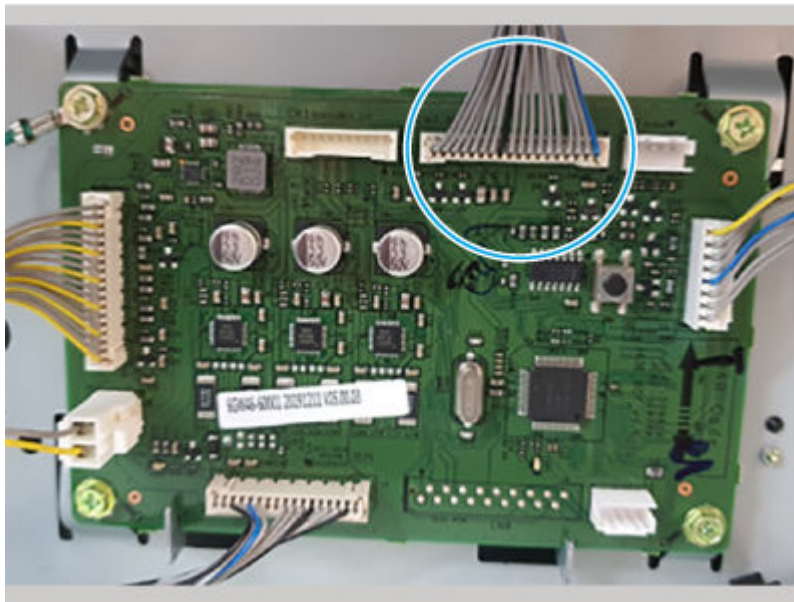
...were the removal steps to install the next

2. Remove the DCF IF harness

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF IF harness.

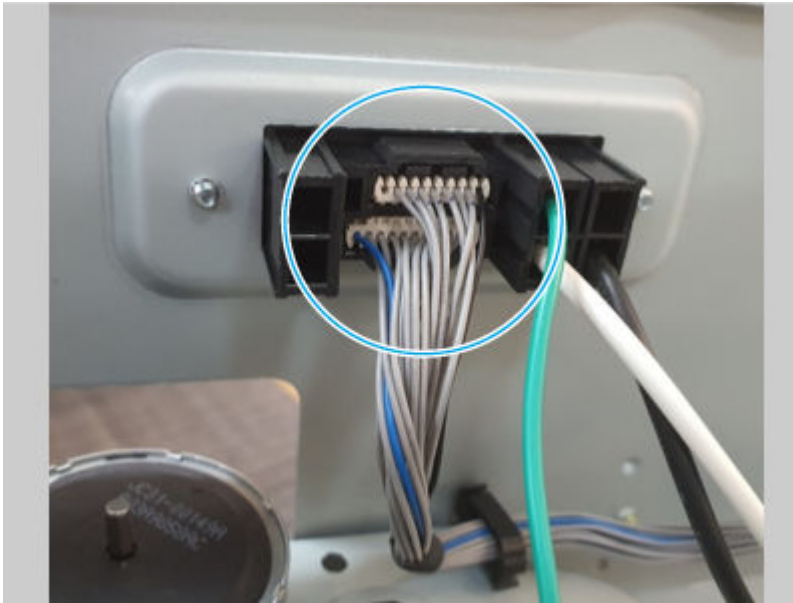
1. Disconnect one connector on the DCF PCA.

Figure 6-1190 Disconnect one connector



2. Disconnect two connectors, release retainers as needed, and then remove the DCF IF harness.

Figure 6-1191 Remove the harness



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: DCF motor harness

Learn about removing and replacing the DCF motor harness

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-170 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC39-01691A	DCF motor harness

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover.

- Remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1192 Remove the cover



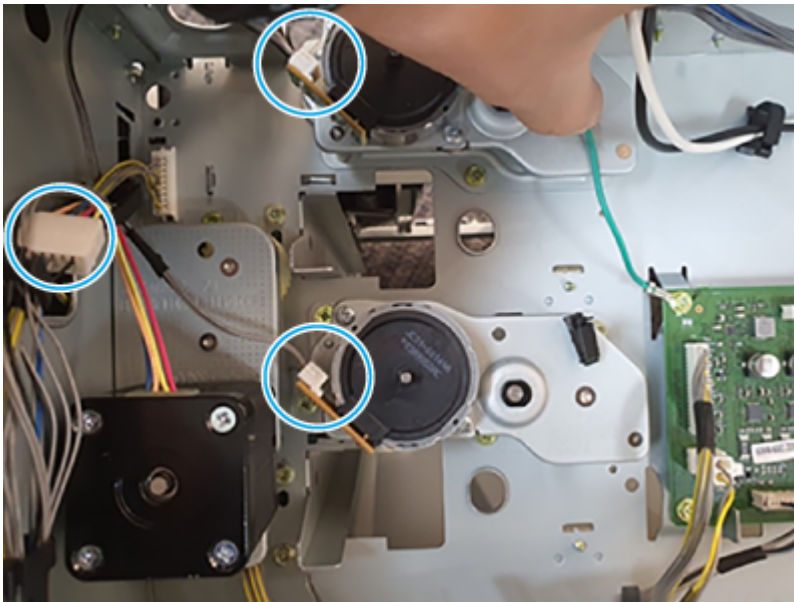
Use the following steps to install the part.

2. Remove the motor harness

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF motor harness.

- Disconnect three connectors, release retainers as needed, and then remove the DCF motor harness.


Figure 6-1193 Remove the harness





3. Unpack the replacement assembly


Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: DCF sensor harness

Learn about removing and replacing the DCF sensor harness

 **NOTE:** Remove the DCF from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-171 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC39-01692A	DCF sensor harness

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the Tray 4, 5 cassette

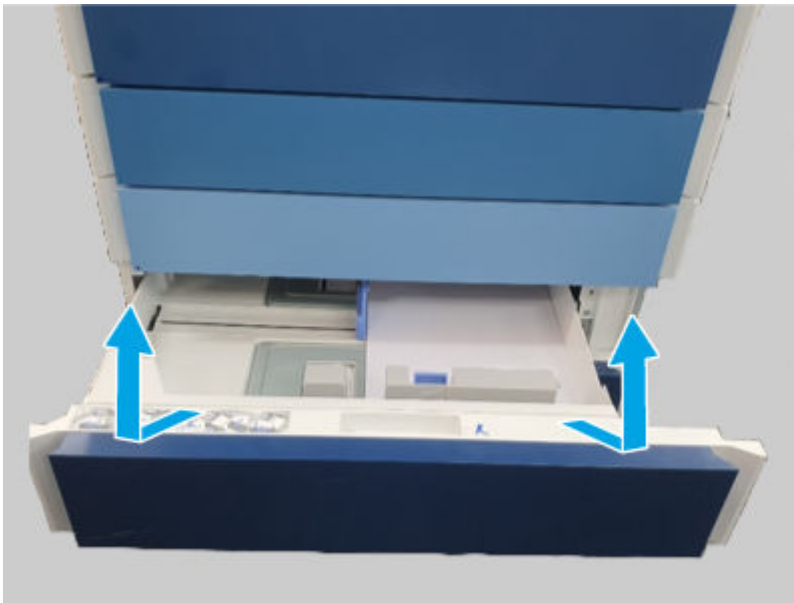
Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF tray cassette.



NOTE: The procedure for removing a cassette is the same for Tray 4 or Tray 5.

- Partially pull the tray cassette out of the DCF, lift the front edge up, and then remove the cassette.

Figure 6-1194 Remove the cassette



2. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right cover.

1. Open the right door.

2. Remove four screws, and then remove the right cover.

Figure 6-1195 Remove the cover

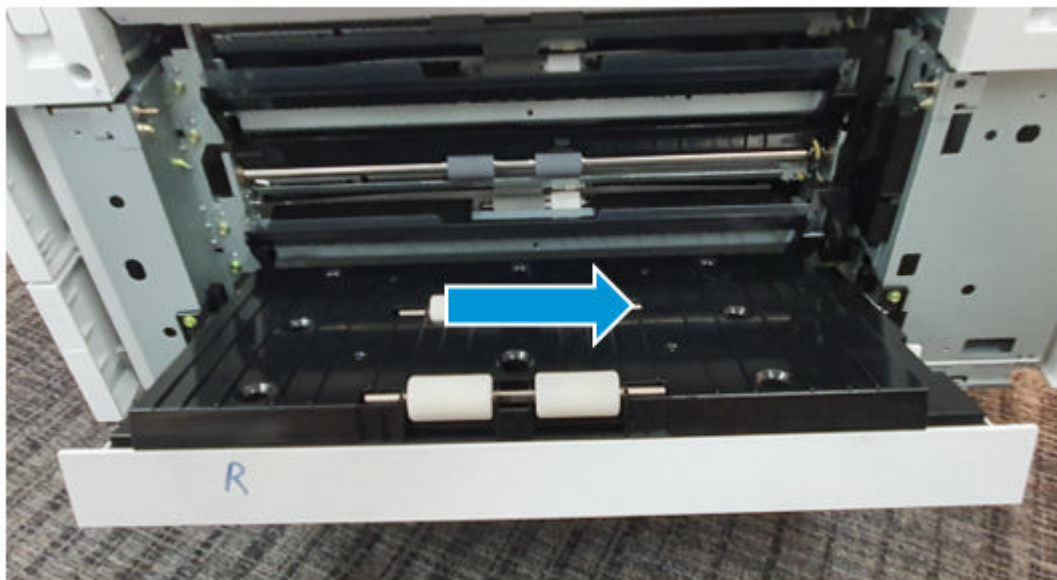


3. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) right door.

- Slide the door as shown below, and then remove the right door.

Figure 6-1196 Remove the door



4. Remove the DCF right door open switch holder

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF right door open switch holder.

- Remove one screw and then pull the switch and holder out.

Figure 6-1197 Pull out the switch and holder

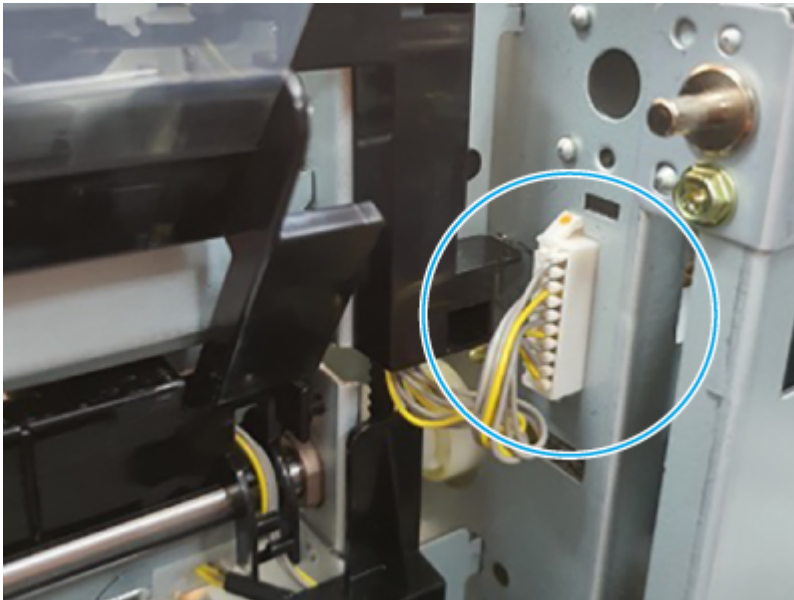


5. Remove the Tray 4 pickup assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF Tray 4 pickup assembly.

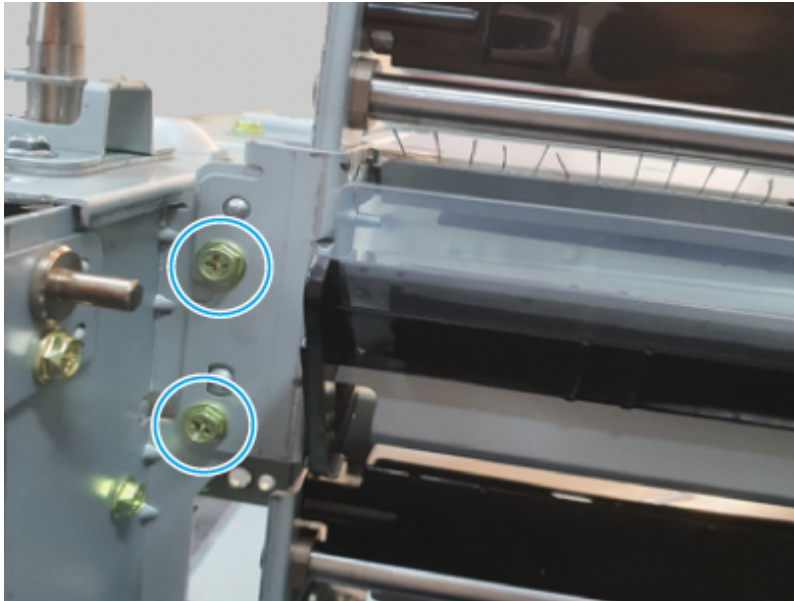
1. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-1198 Disconnect one connector



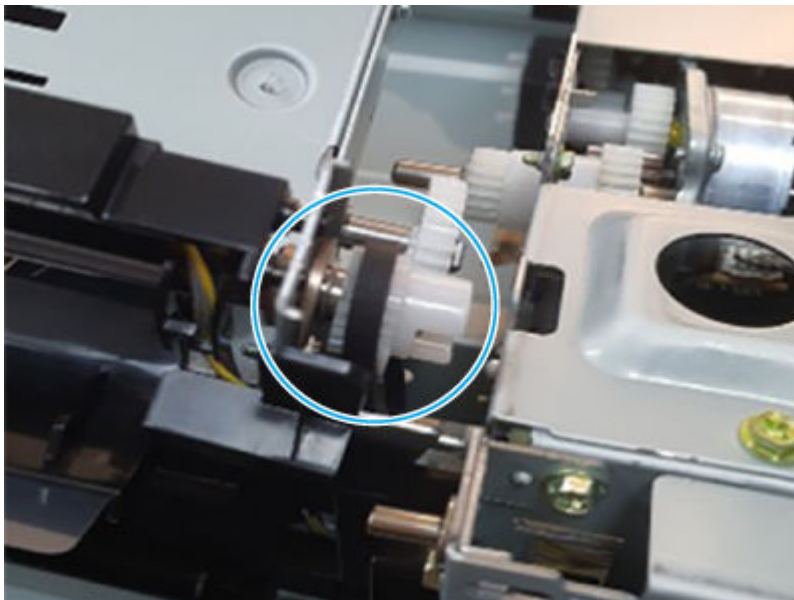
2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1199 Remove two screws



3. Release one belt, and then remove the Tray 4 pickup assembly.

Figure 6-1200 Remove the assembly



6. Remove the Tray 4 pickup assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF Tray 4 pickup assembly.

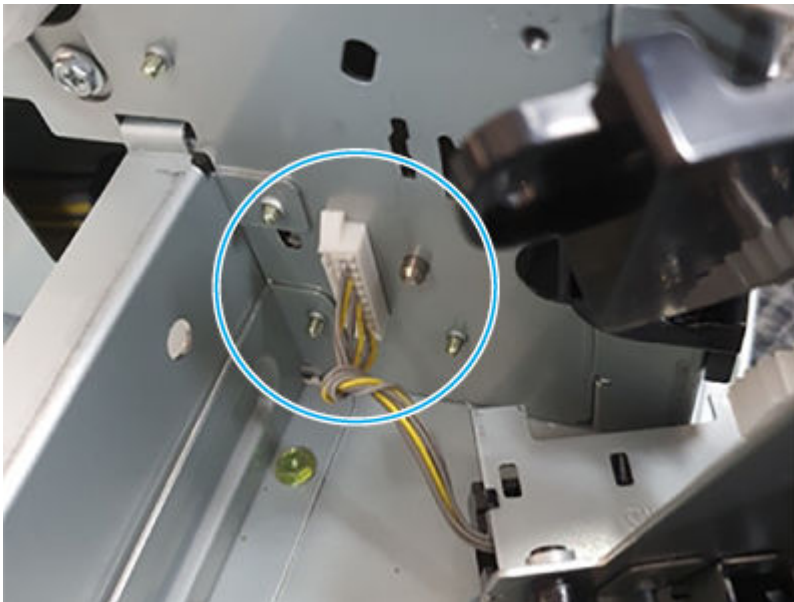
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1201 Remove two screws



2. Slightly separate the assembly from the DCF. disconnect one connector, and then remove the Tray 5 pickup assembly.

Figure 6-1202 Remove the assembly

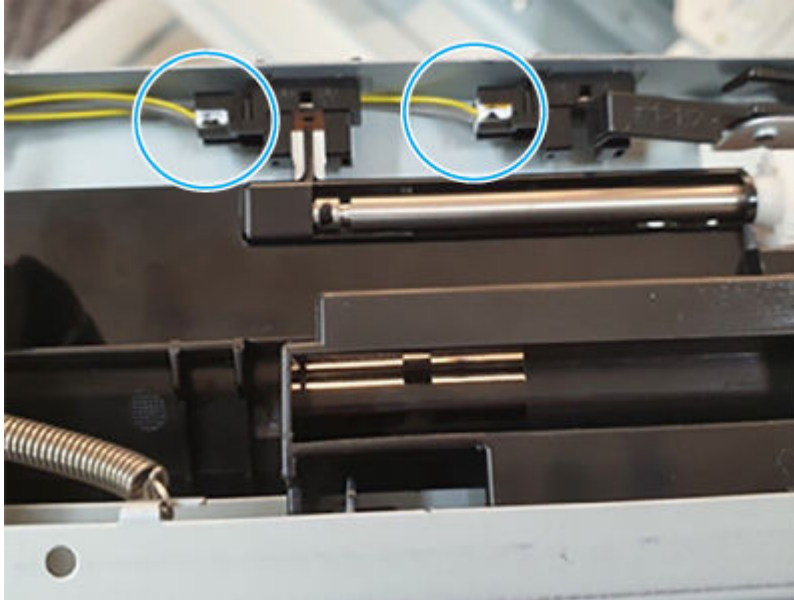


7. Remove the sensor harness

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF sensor harness.

- Disconnect two connectors, release retainers as needed, and then remove the DCF sensor harness.


Figure 6-1203 Remove the harness



8. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: DCF size harness

Learn about removing and replacing the DCF size harness.


Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-172 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC39-01695A	DCF size harness

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

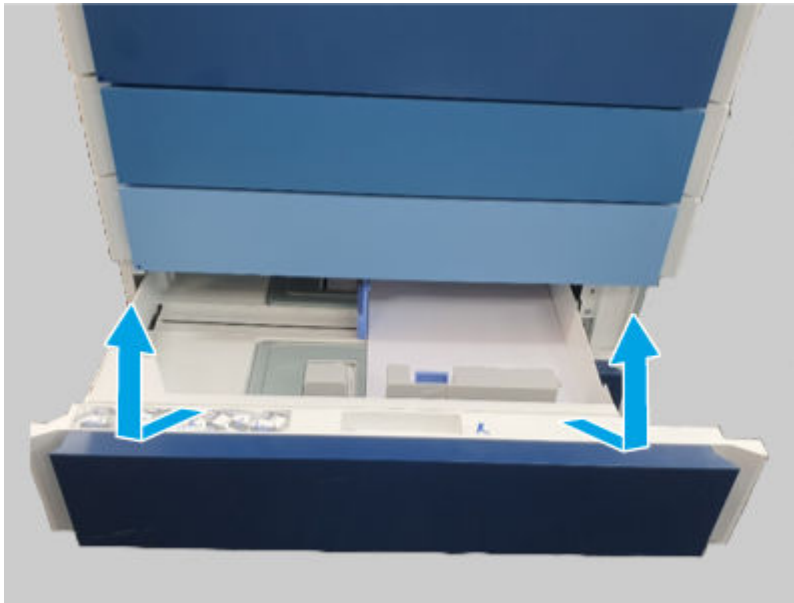
1. Remove the Tray 4, 5 cassette

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF tray cassette.

 **NOTE:** The procedure for removing a cassette is the same for Tray 4 or Tray 5.

- Partially pull the tray cassette out of the DCF, lift the front edge up, and then remove the cassette.

Figure 6-1204 Remove the cassette



2. Remove the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF (Tray 4, 5) rear cover.

- Remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1205 Remove the cover



3. Remove the size harness

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF size harness.

1. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-1206 Disconnect one connector



2. Disconnect two connectors (inside the tray cavity), release retainers as needed, and then remove the DCF size harness (from the rear of the DCF).

Figure 6-1207 Remove the harness



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

HCI (workgroup)

Learn about high capacity input (workgroup) parts removal and replacement.

Covers

Review the HCI cover removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) right cover

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) right cover.


Mean time to repair: 3 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-173 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ98-40024	HCI (Tray 4) right cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI (Tray 4) right cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI right cover.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the right cover.

Figure 6-1208 Remove the cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.


<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.




CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly.

Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) rear cover

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) rear cover.


Mean time to repair: 3 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-174 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ98-40014	HCI (Tray 4) rear cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI (Tray 4) rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI rear cover.

- Remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1209 Remove the cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) left cover

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) left cover.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-175 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ98-40025	HCI (Tray 4) left cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

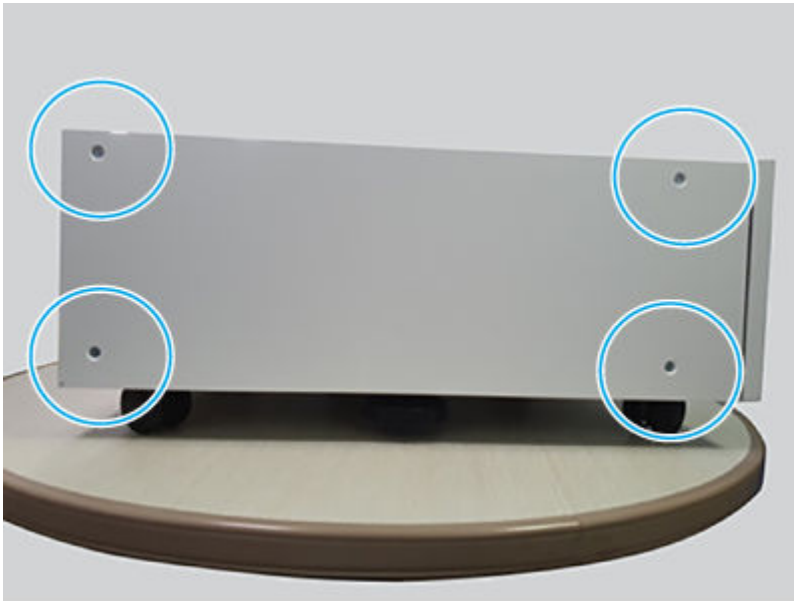
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI (Tray 4) left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI left cover.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the left cover.

Figure 6-1210 Remove the cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) right door

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) right door.

Mean time to repair: 3 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-176 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ98-61014	HCI (Tray 4) right door

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI (Tray 4) right cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI right cover.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the right cover.

Figure 6-1211 Remove the cover

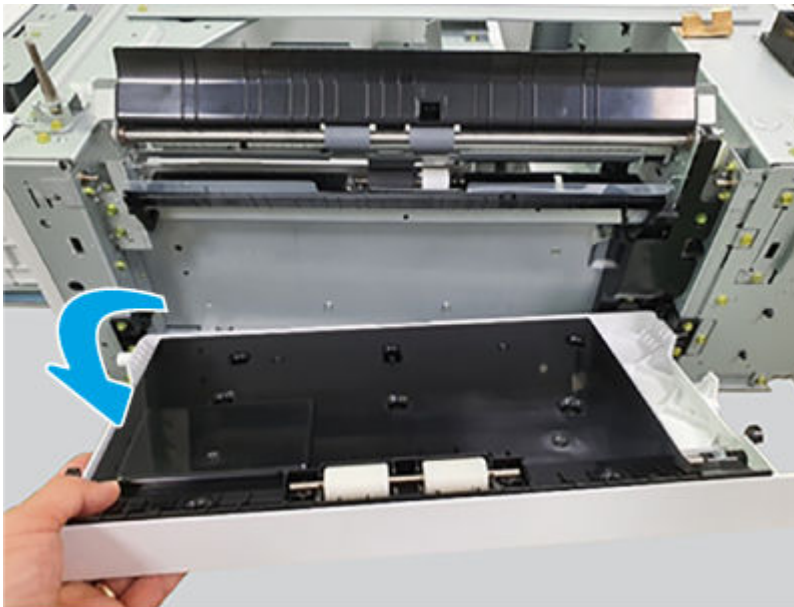


2. Remove the HCI (Tray 4) right door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI right door.

- Rotate the left end of the door away from the HCI, and then remove the right door.

Figure 6-1212 Remove the door



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) front CMF panel

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) front CMF panel.

Mean time to repair: 3 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-177 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-40024	HCI (Tray 4) front CMF panel

Required tools

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

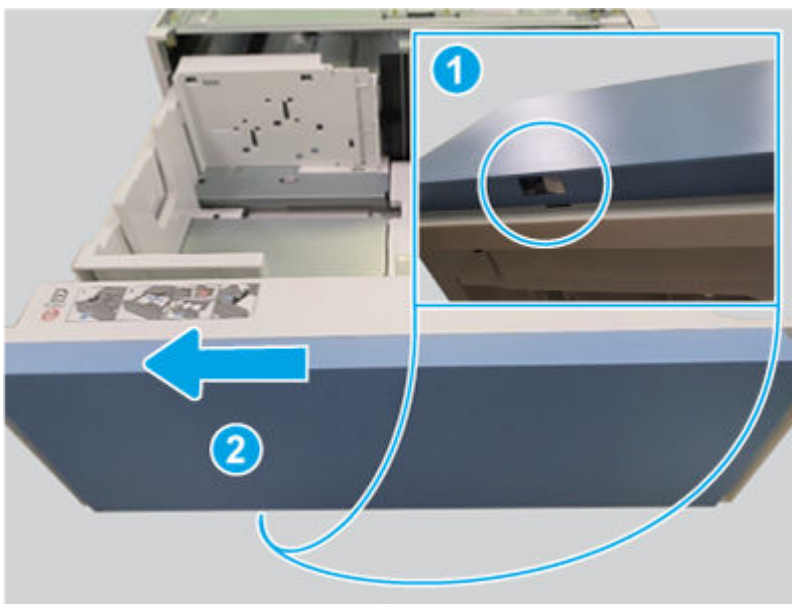
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI (Tray 4) front CMF panel

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI CMF panel.

- Release one tab (callout 1), slide the panel to the left (callout 2), and then remove the front CMF panel

Figure 6-1213 Remove the panel



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.


<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.




CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Caster wheel

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) caster wheel.

 **NOTE:** Remove the HCI from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 3 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-178 Part information

Part number	Part description
6109-001138	Caster wheel

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

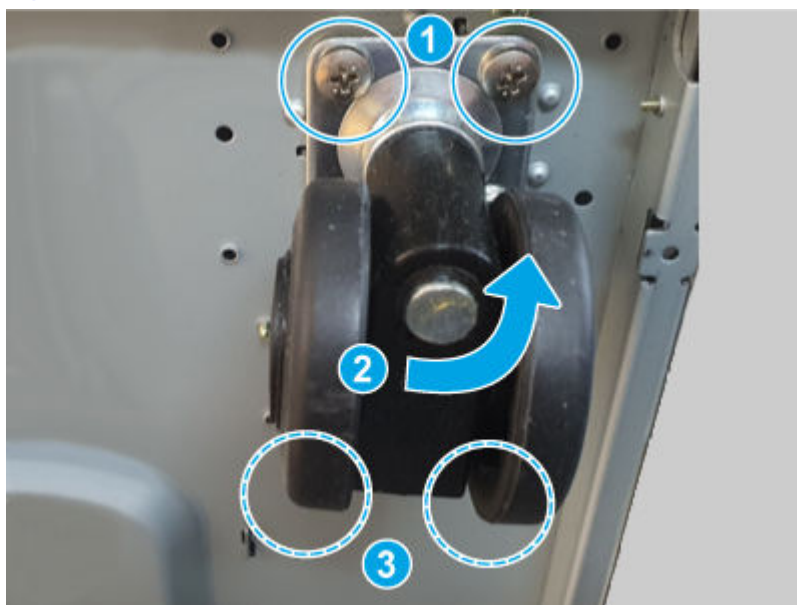
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the caster wheel

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI caster wheel.

1. Remove the HCI from the printer.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Remove two screws (callout 1).
 - b. Rotate the caster wheel (callout 2) out of the way, and then remove two screws (callout 3).
 - c. Remove the caster wheel.

Figure 6-1214 Remove the caster



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.




CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Holder wheel kit

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) holder wheel kit.


Mean time to repair: 3 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-179 Part Information

Part number	Part description
JC61-04871A	Guide - adjust HCI

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

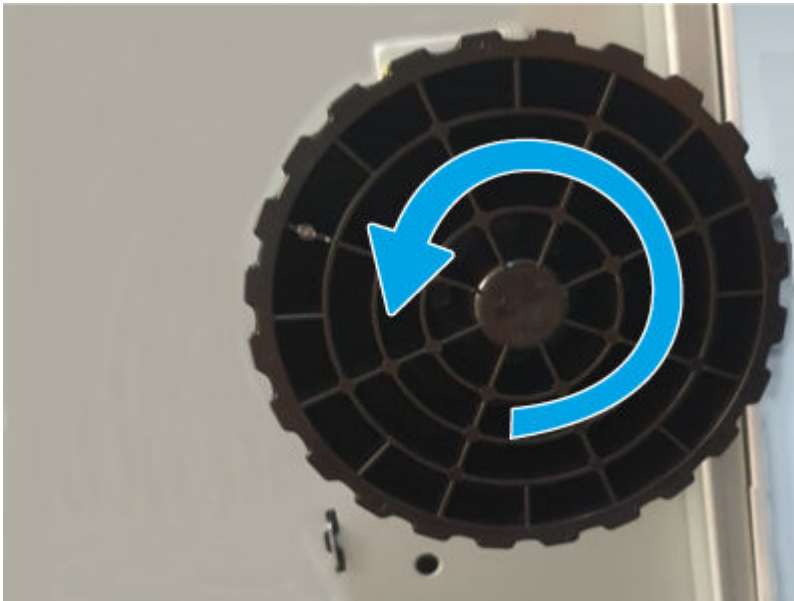
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the holder wheel kit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI holder wheel kit.

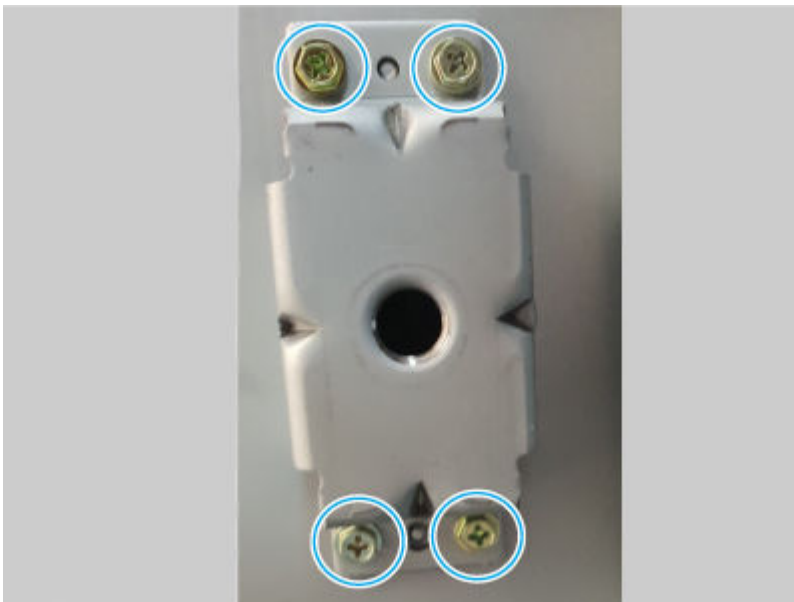
1. Remove the HCI from the printer.
2. Turn the holder wheel counterclockwise to remove it.

Figure 6-1215 Remove the holder wheel



3. Remove four screws, and then remove the holder wheel mounting bracket.

Figure 6-1216 Remove the bracket



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Unit

Review the HCI unit parts removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) unit

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) unit.


Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-180 Part information

Part number	Part description
6GW48-67001	HCI (Tray 4) unit

NOTE: This is the whole unit replacement (WUR) part number.

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove Tray 2 or Tray 3

Use the following procedure to remove and replace Tray 2 or Tray 3.

 **NOTE:** Tray 2 is shown in the figure below. However, removing Tray 3 is identical to Tray 2.

- Pull the tray almost all of the way out of the printer, and then lift it up to remove it.

Figure 6-1217 Remove the tray

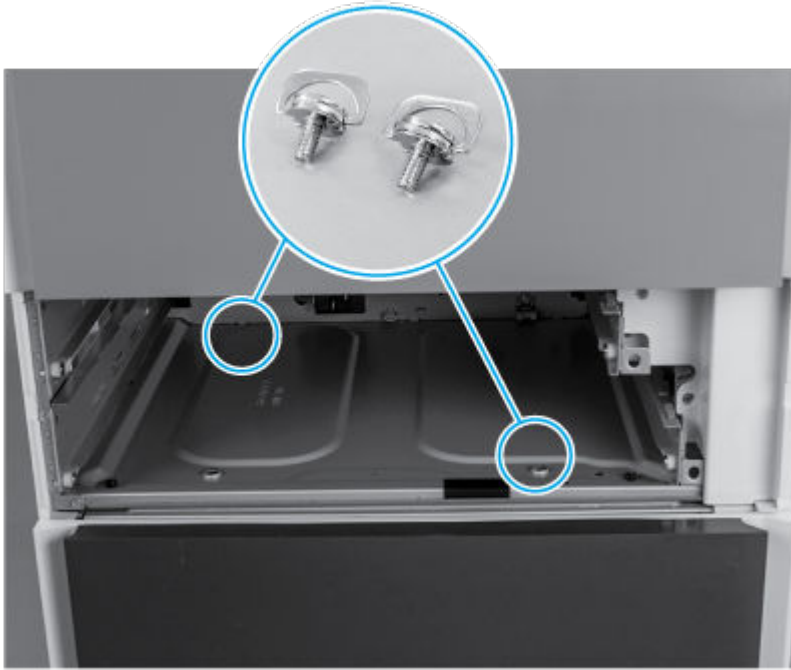


2. Remove the HCI (Tray 4) unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI Tray 4 unit.

1. Remove two thumbscrews.

Figure 6-1218 Remove two thumbscrews



2. Lift the printer off of the HCI unit, and then use the install guide included with the replacement HCI to install it.

⚠ WARNING! The printer is heavy. HP recommends that four people lift the printer off of the HCI.

Figure 6-1219 Remove the HCI



3. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) cassette

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) cassette.


Mean time to repair: 3 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-181 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ98-61015	HCI (Tray 4) cassette

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

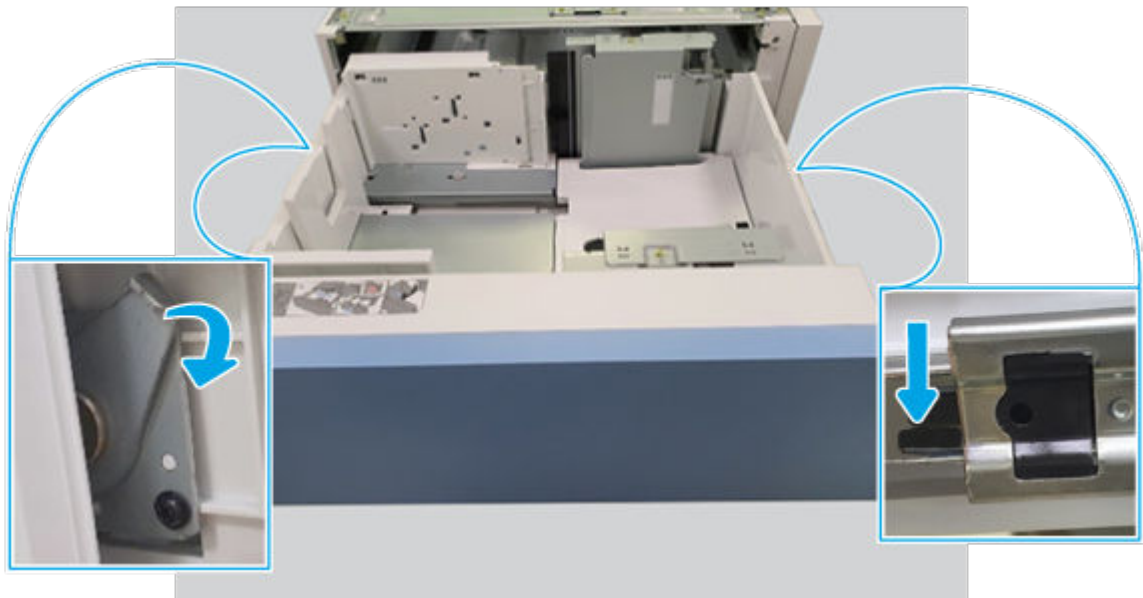
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI cassette

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI cassette.

- Do the following: Pull the cassette out until it stops, and then locate the locking mechanisms on each side.
 - Pull the cassette out until it stops.
 - Push down on the right- and left-side locking mechanisms.
 - Pull the cassette straight out of the HCI to remove it.

Figure 6-1220 Remove the cassette



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) pickup assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) pickup assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the HCI from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-182 Part information

Part number	Part description
8GR90-60001	HCI (Tray 4) pickup assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI (Tray 4) right cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI right cover.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the right cover.

Figure 6-1221 Remove the cover



2. Remove the HCI (Tray 4) right door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI right door.

- Rotate the left end of the door away from the HCI, and then remove the right door.

Figure 6-1222 Remove the door

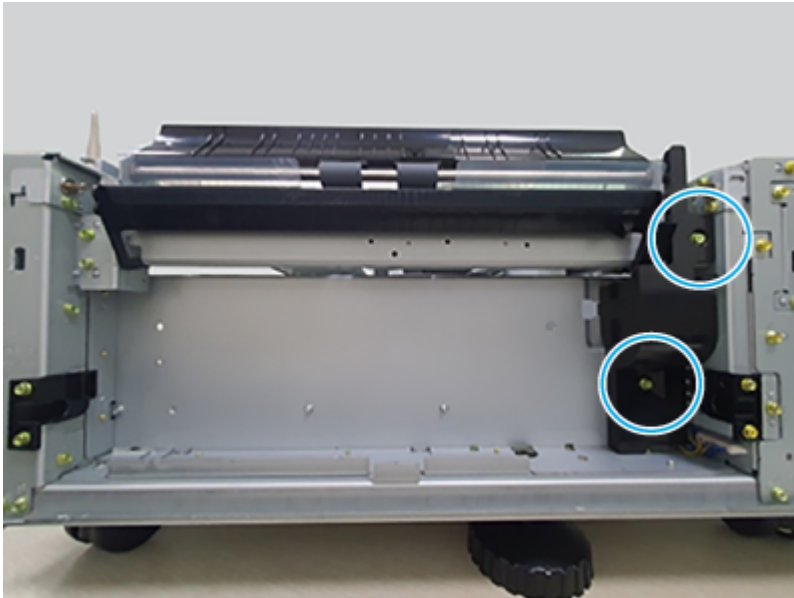


3. Remove the HCI (Tray 4) pickup assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI Tray 4 pickup assembly.

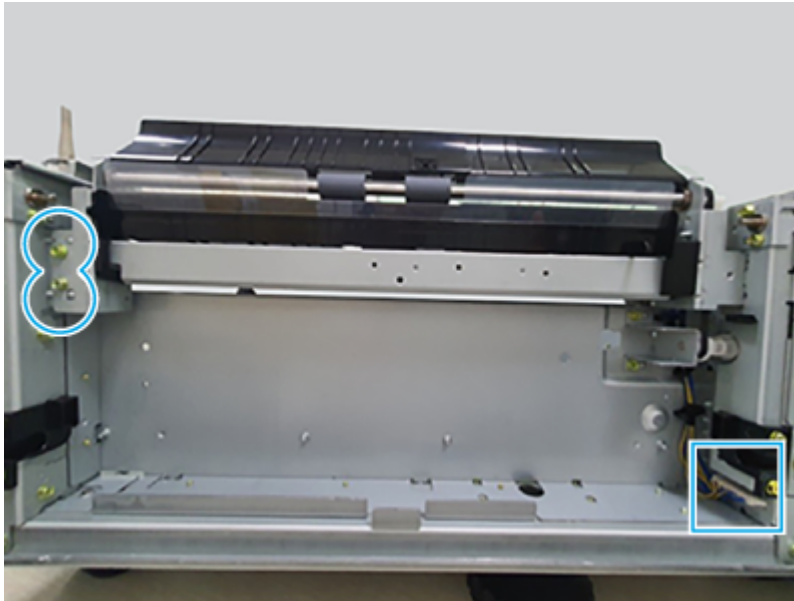
1. Open the HCI cassette.
2. Remove two screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1223 Remove two screws



3. Remove two screws, disconnect one connector, and then remove the Tray 4 pickup assembly.

Figure 6-1224 Remove the assembly



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Roller

Review the HCI roller removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) roller kit

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) Tray 4 rollers.

Mean time to repair: 3 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-183 Part information

Part number	Part description
5PN66-67001	HCI Tray 4 roller kit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

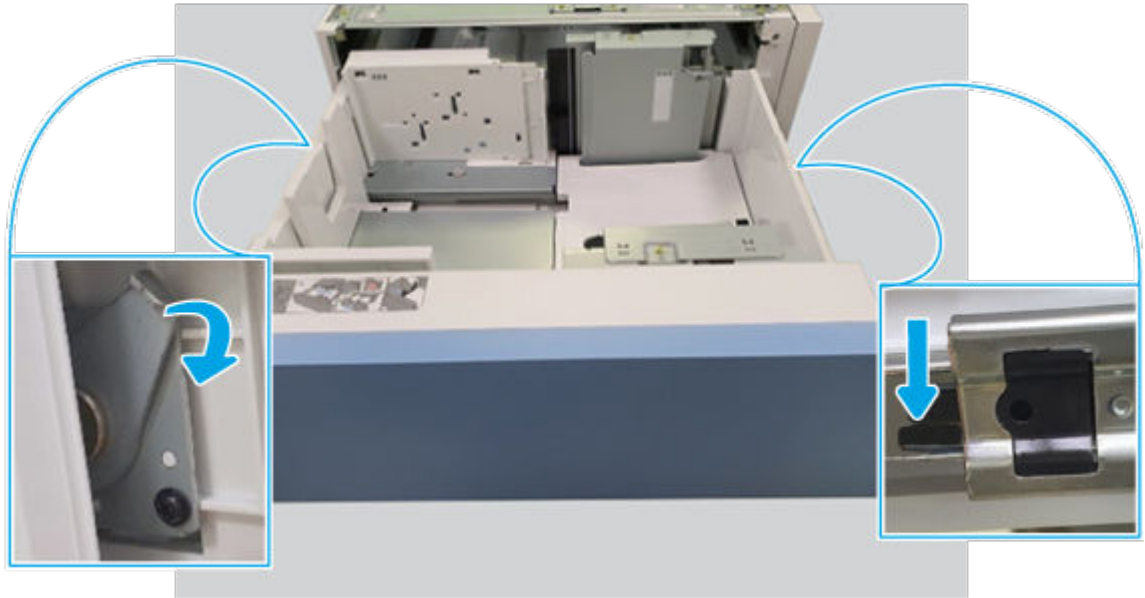
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the HCI cassette

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI cassette.


- Do the following: Pull the cassette out until it stops, and then locate the locking mechanisms on each side.
 - Pull the cassette out until it stops.
 - Push down on the right- and left-side locking mechanisms.
 - Pull the cassette straight out of the HCI to remove it.

Figure 6-1225 Remove the cassette



Remove the Tray 4, 5 rollers

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the DCF tray rollers.

 **NOTE:** The procedure for removing the rollers is the same for Tray 4 or Tray 5.

1. Inside the tray cavity, slide the return guide toward the front of the printer until it stops.


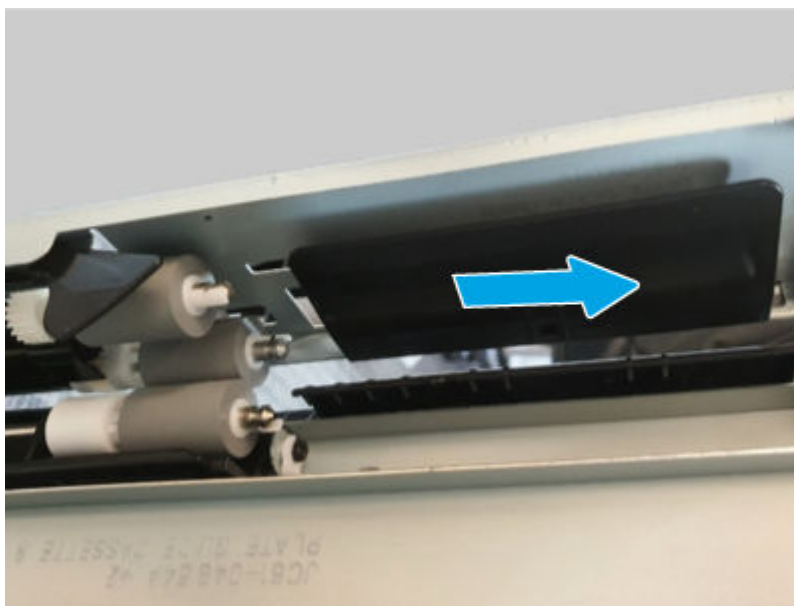
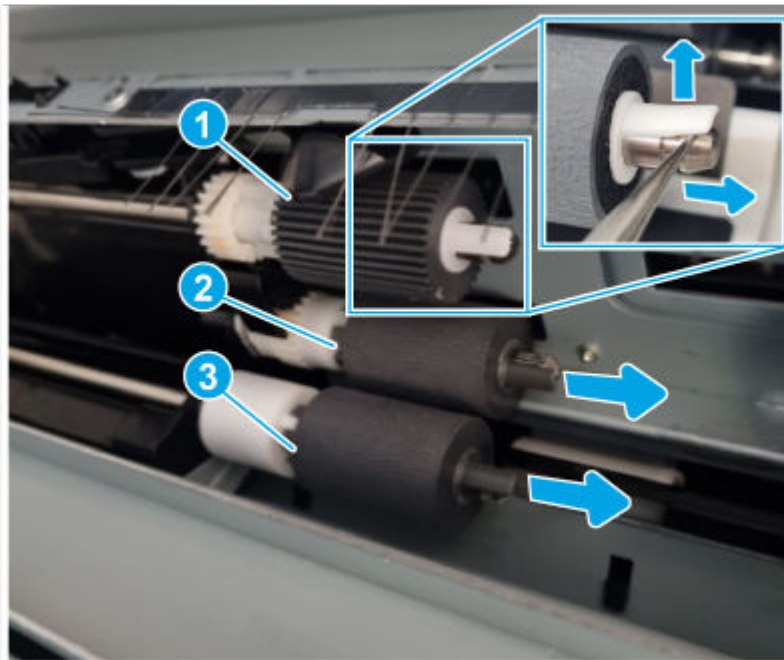
 **Reinstallation tip:** To prevent jams, make sure to slide the guide toward the rear of the printer after installing replacement rollers.

Figure 6-1226 Move the guide



2. Use a pair of tweezers to release the locking tab, and then slide the roller off the shaft to remove it.
 - **Pickup roller:** callout 1
 - **Forward roller:** callout 2
 - **Reverse roller:** callout 3

Figure 6-1227 Remove the rollers



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.




IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.


 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Sensor

Review the HCI sensor removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) feed sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) feed sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the HCI from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-184 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001490	Photo interrupter (HCI (Tray4) feed sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the HCI (Tray 4) right cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI right cover.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the right cover.

Figure 6-1228 Remove the cover

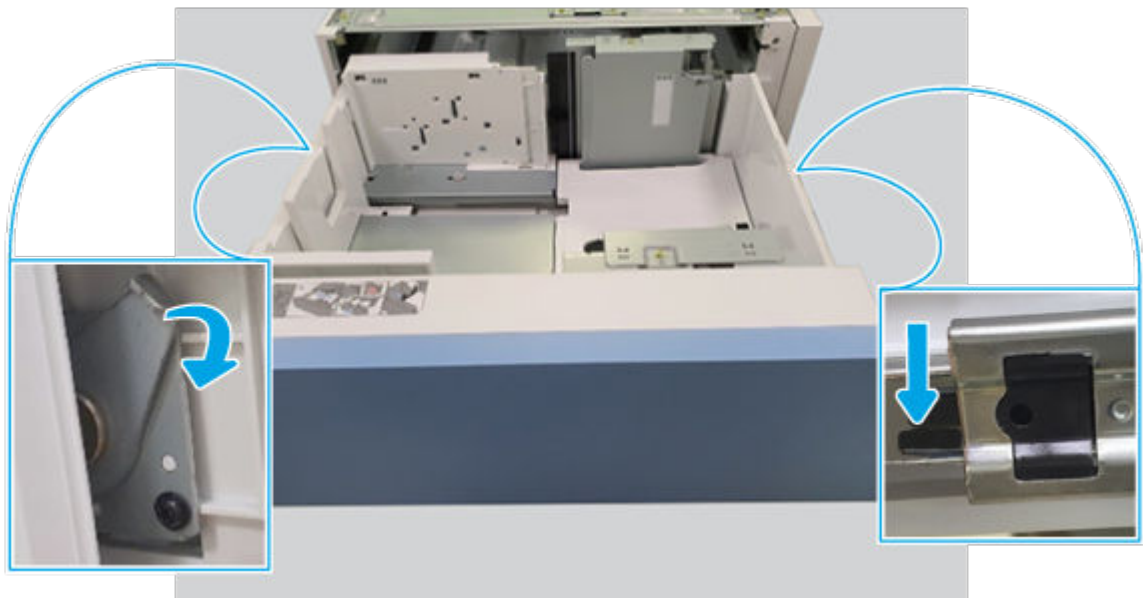


Remove the HCI cassette

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI cassette.

- Do the following: Pull the cassette out until it stops, and then locate the locking mechanisms on each side.
 - Pull the cassette out until it stops.
 - Push down on the right- and left-side locking mechanisms.
 - Pull the cassette straight out of the HCI to remove it.

Figure 6-1229 Remove the cassette

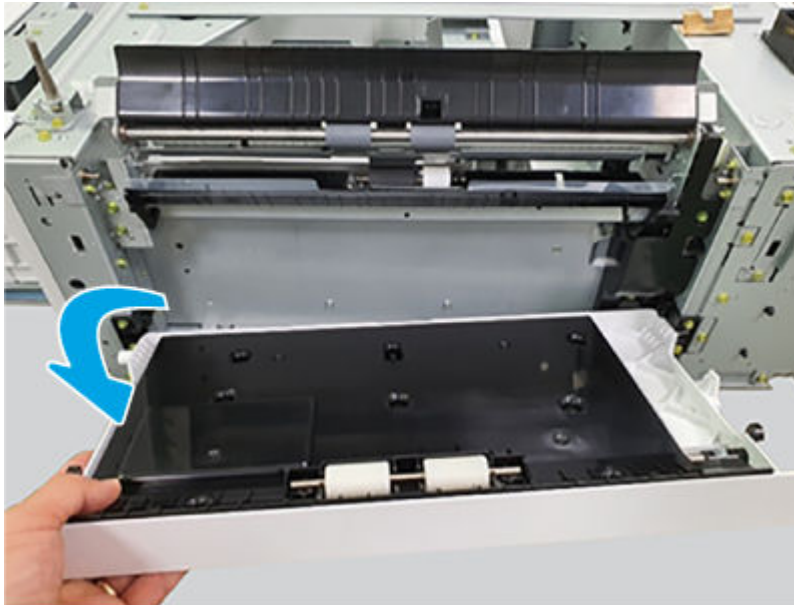


Remove the HCI (Tray 4) right door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI right door.

- Rotate the left end of the door away from the HCI, and then remove the right door.

Figure 6-1230 Remove the door

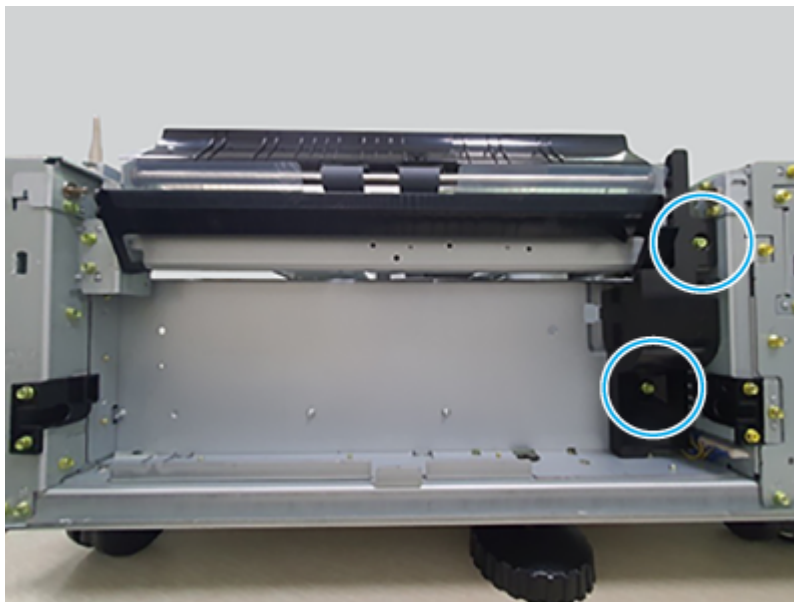


Remove the HCI (Tray 4) pickup assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI Tray 4 pickup assembly.

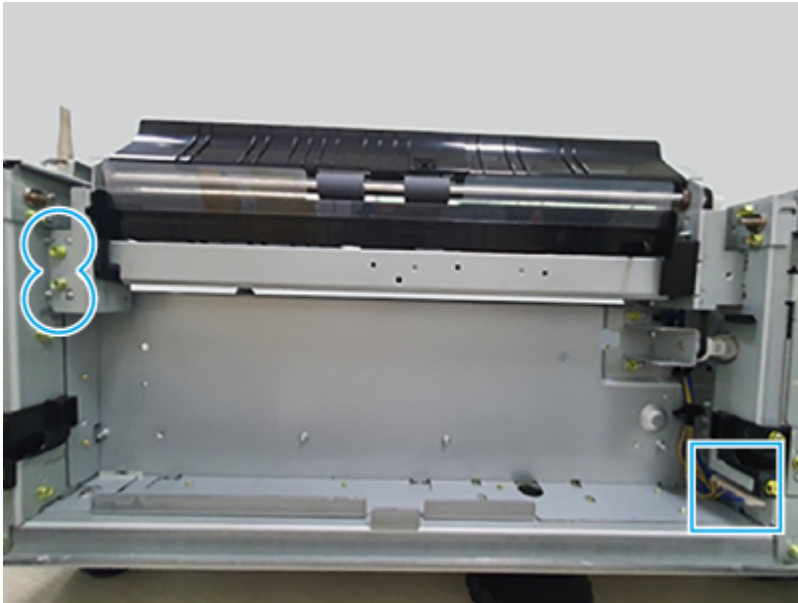
1. Open the HCI cassette.
2. Remove two screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1231 Remove two screws



3. Remove two screws, disconnect one connector, and then remove the Tray 4 pickup assembly.

Figure 6-1232 Remove the assembly

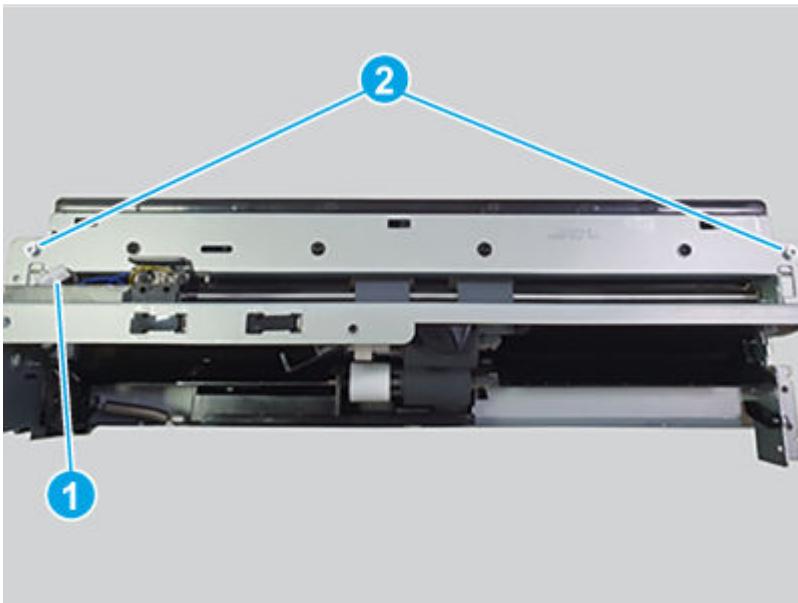


Remove the HCI feed sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI feed sensor.

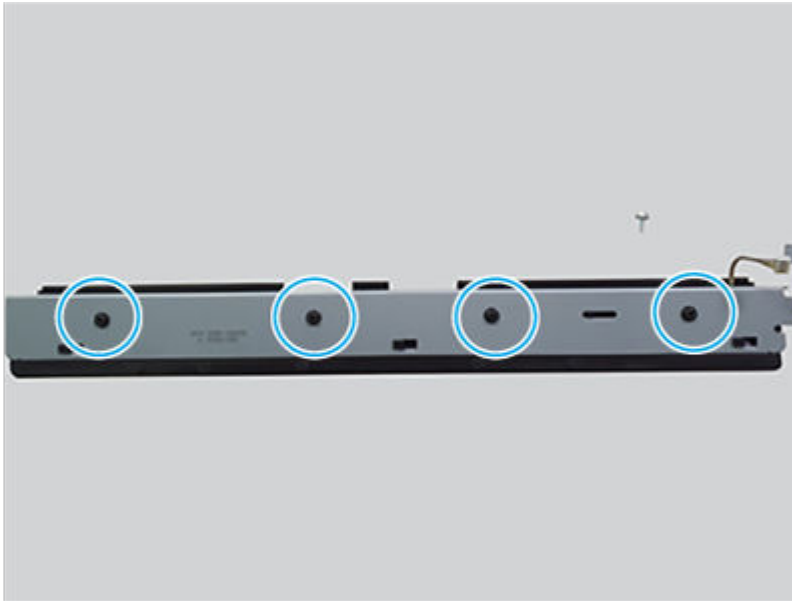
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws (callout 2).

Figure 6-1233 Disconnect connector and remove screws



2. Remove the assembly, and the remove four screws.

Figure 6-1234 Remove four screws



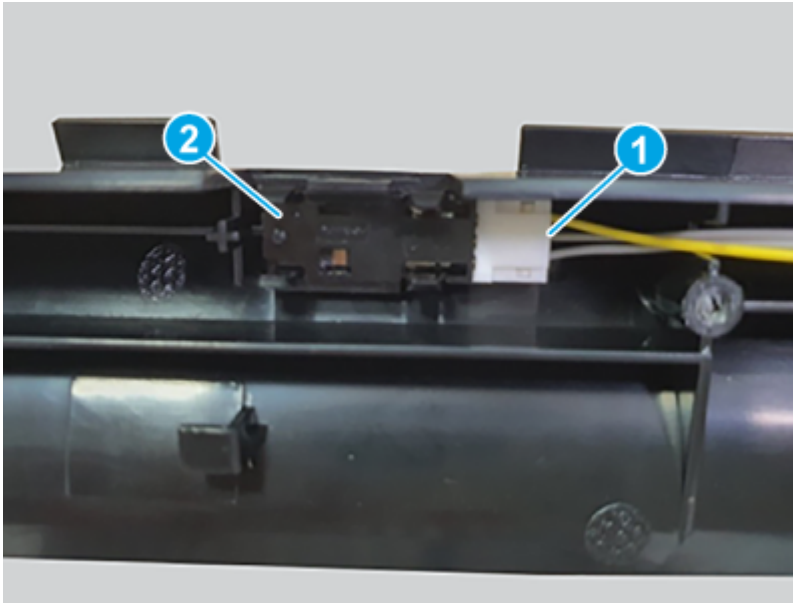
3. Slide the assemble as shown below.

Figure 6-1235 Slide the assembly



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the HCI feed sensor (callout 2).

Figure 6-1236 Remove the sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) paper empty and stack height sensors

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) Tray 4 paper empty and stack height sensors.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-185 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (HCI Tray 4 paper empty sensor)
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (HCI Tray 4 paper stack height sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI (Tray 4) right cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI right cover.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the right cover.

Figure 6-1237 Remove the cover

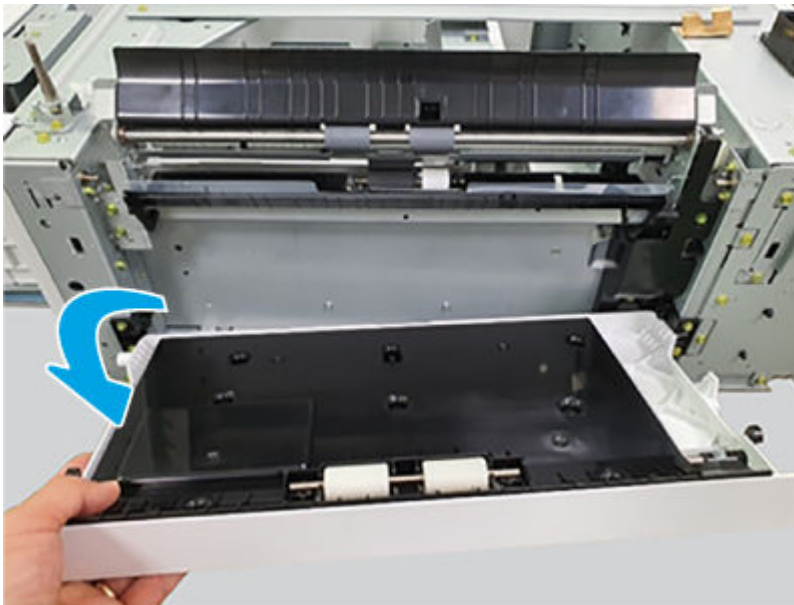


2. Remove the HCI (Tray 4) right door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI right door.

- Rotate the left end of the door away from the HCI, and then remove the right door.

Figure 6-1238 Remove the door



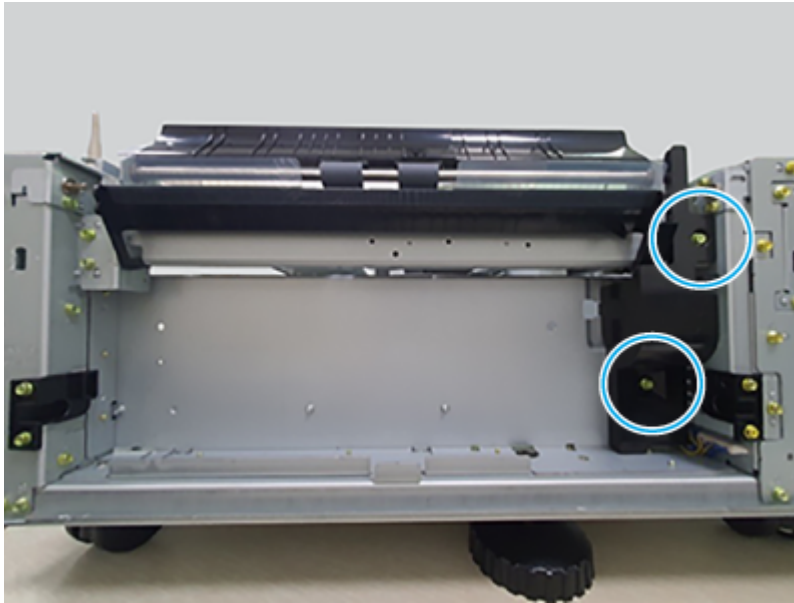
3. Remove the HCI (Tray 4) pickup assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI Tray 4 pickup assembly.

1. Open the HCI cassette.

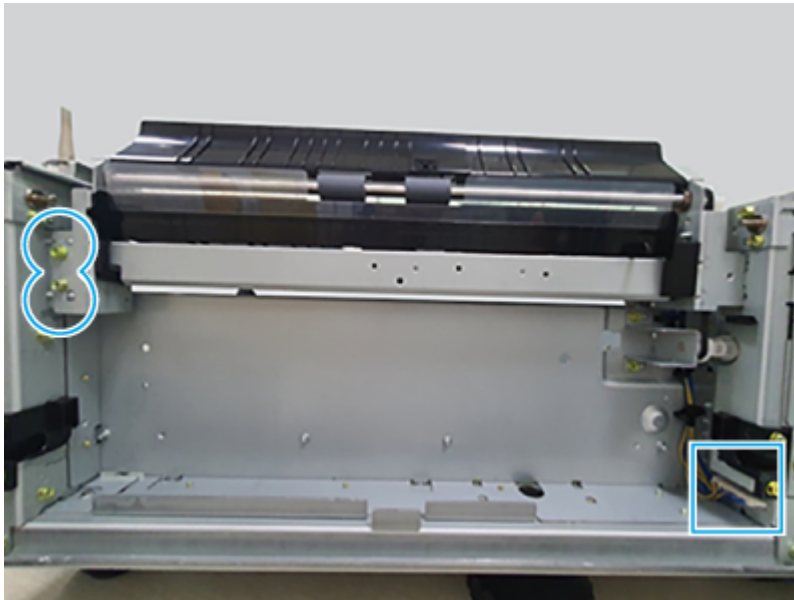
2. Remove two screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1239 Remove two screws




3. Remove two screws, disconnect one connector, and then remove the Tray 4 pickup assembly.

Figure 6-1240 Remove the assembly



4. Remove the Tray 4 paper empty and stack height sensors

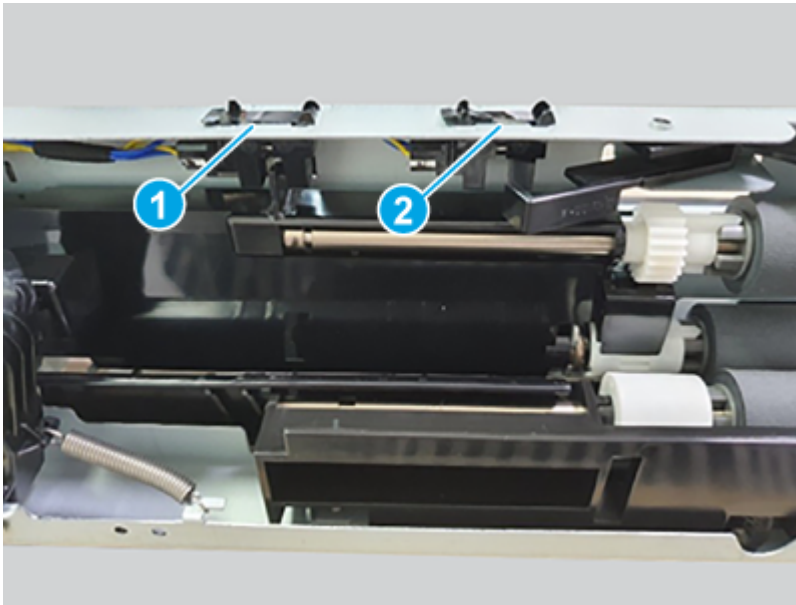
Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI tray paper empty and stack height sensors.

 **NOTE:** The procedure for removing the paper empty sensor or the paper stack height sensor is the same for both sensors.

1. Locate the desired sensor to remove (on the Tray 4 pickup assembly).
 - **Callout 1:** Tray 4 paper stack height sensor

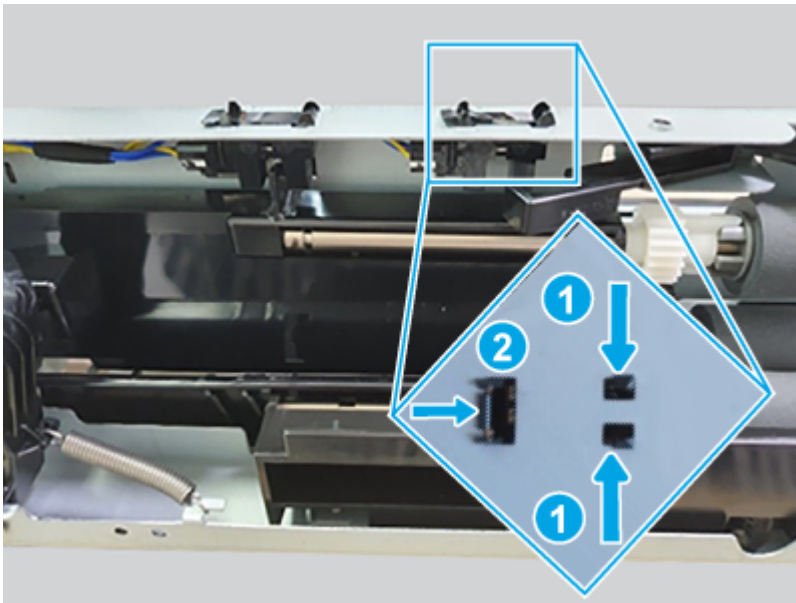
- **Callout 2:** Tray 4 paper empty sensor

Figure 6-1241 Locate the sensor



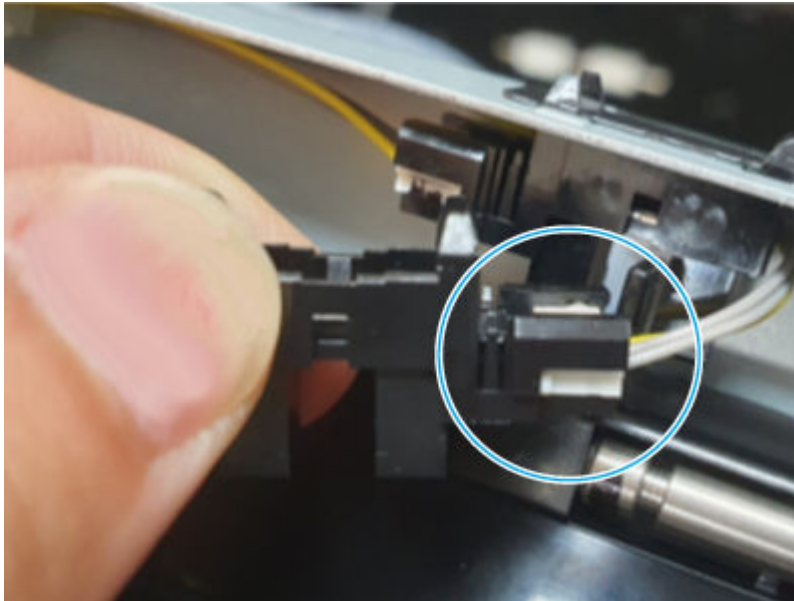
2. Do the following:
 - Release the hooks (callout 1).
 - Slide the sensor assembly to the left (callout 2).
 - Release the sensor.

Figure 6-1242 Release the sensor



3. Disconnect one connector to remove the sensor.


Figure 6-1243 Remove the sensor



5. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) knockup home and shift tray end sensors

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) knockup home sensor.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-186 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (HCI (Tray4) knockup home sensor)
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (HCI (Tray4) shift tray end sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

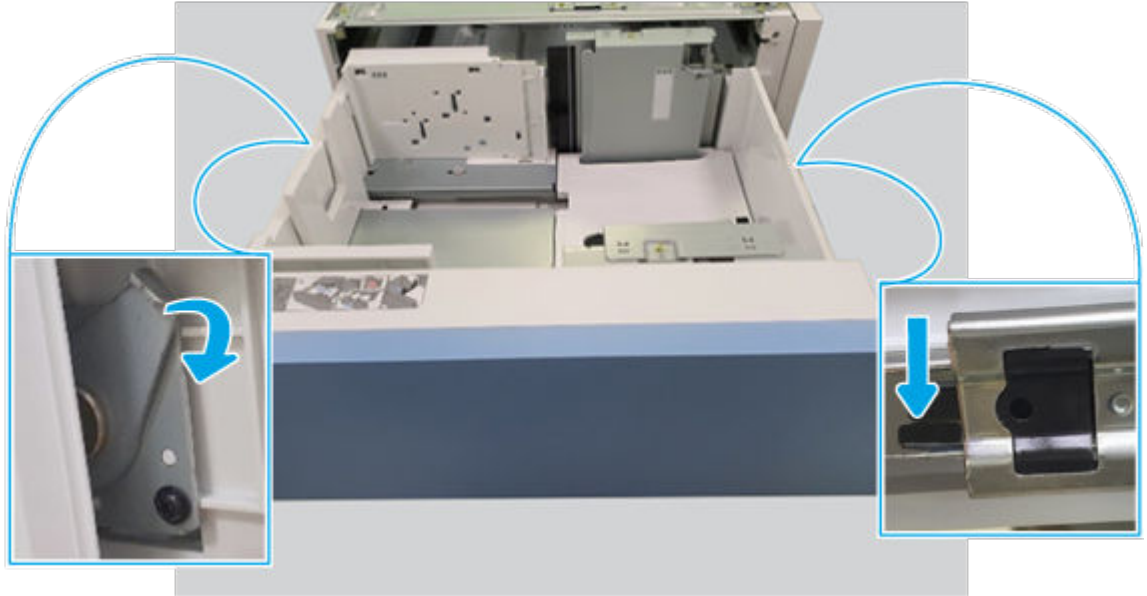
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI cassette

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI cassette.

- Do the following: Pull the cassette out until it stops, and then locate the locking mechanisms on each side.
 - Pull the cassette out until it stops.
 - Push down on the right- and left-side locking mechanisms.
 - Pull the cassette straight out of the HCI to remove it.

Figure 6-1244 Remove the cassette

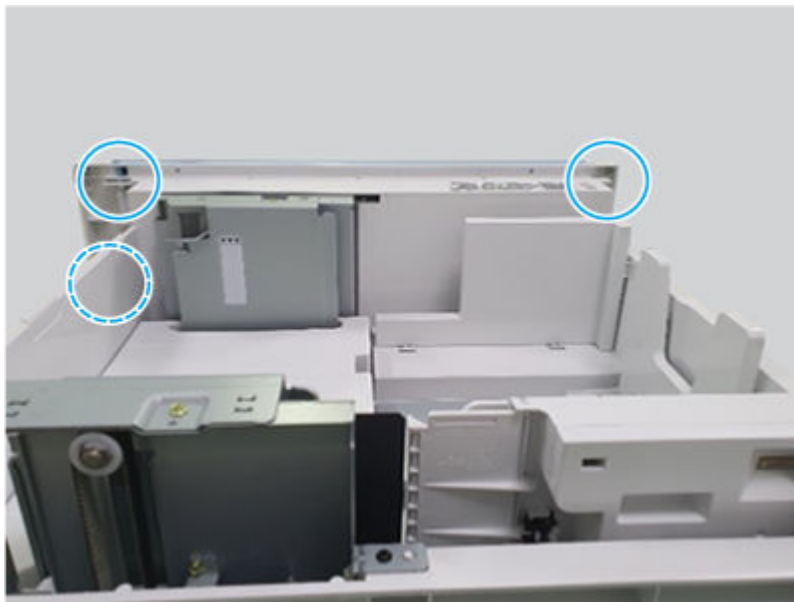


2. Remove the HCI knockup home and shift tray end sensors

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI knockup home and shift tray end sensors.

1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1245 Remove three screws



2. Turn the tray over, remove two screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1246 Remove two screws



3. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-1247 Remove four screws



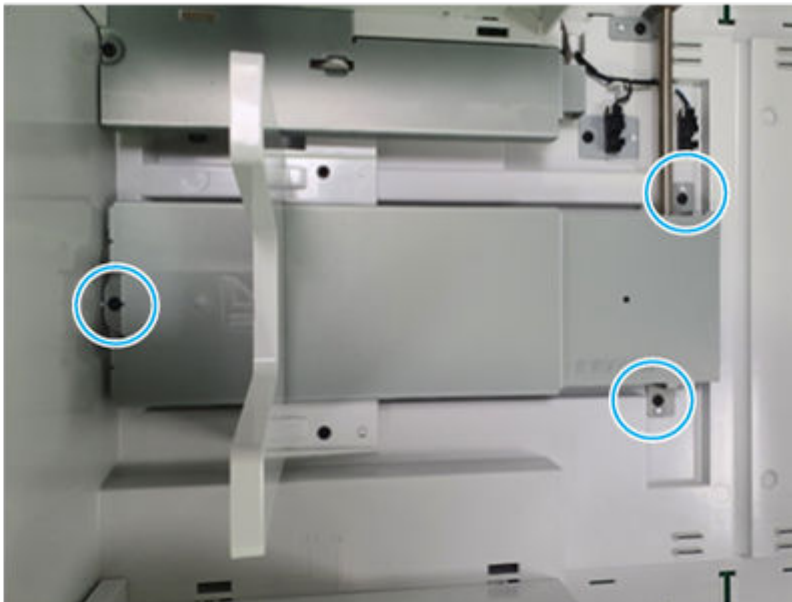
4. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the knockup plate.

Figure 6-1248 Remove the plate



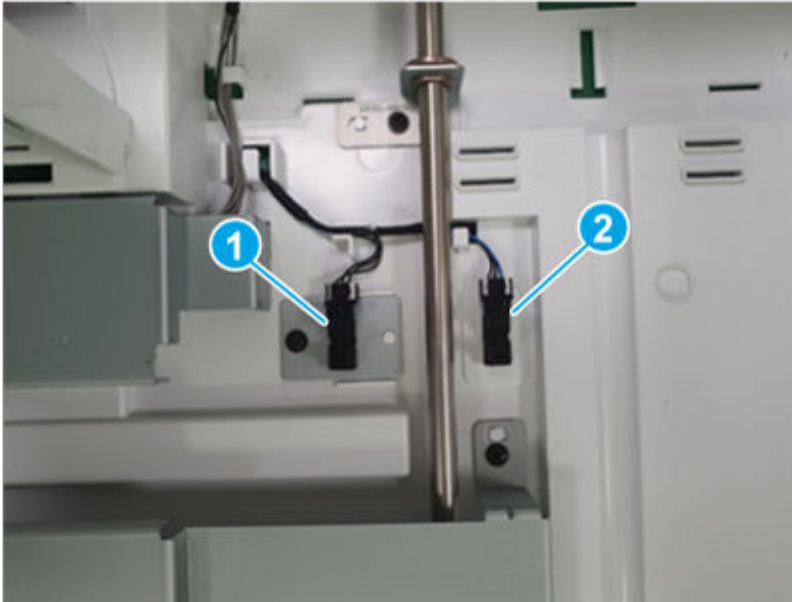
5. Remove three screws, and then remove the shift tray.

Figure 6-1249 Remove the shift tray



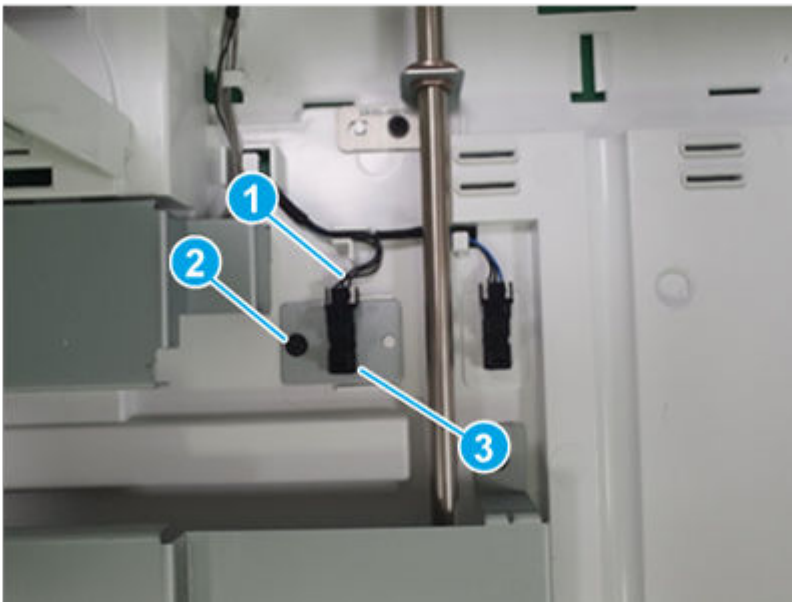
6. Locate the desired sensor to remove.
 - **Callout 1:** HCI shift tray end sensor
 - **Callout 2:** HCI knockup home sensor

Figure 6-1250 Locate the sensor



7. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove one screw (callout 2), and then remove the sensor (callout 3).

Figure 6-1251 Remove the sensor



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) shift tray empty and home sensors

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) shift tray empty sensor.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-187 Part Information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (HCI (Tray4) shift tray empty sensor)
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (HCI (Tray4) shift tray home sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

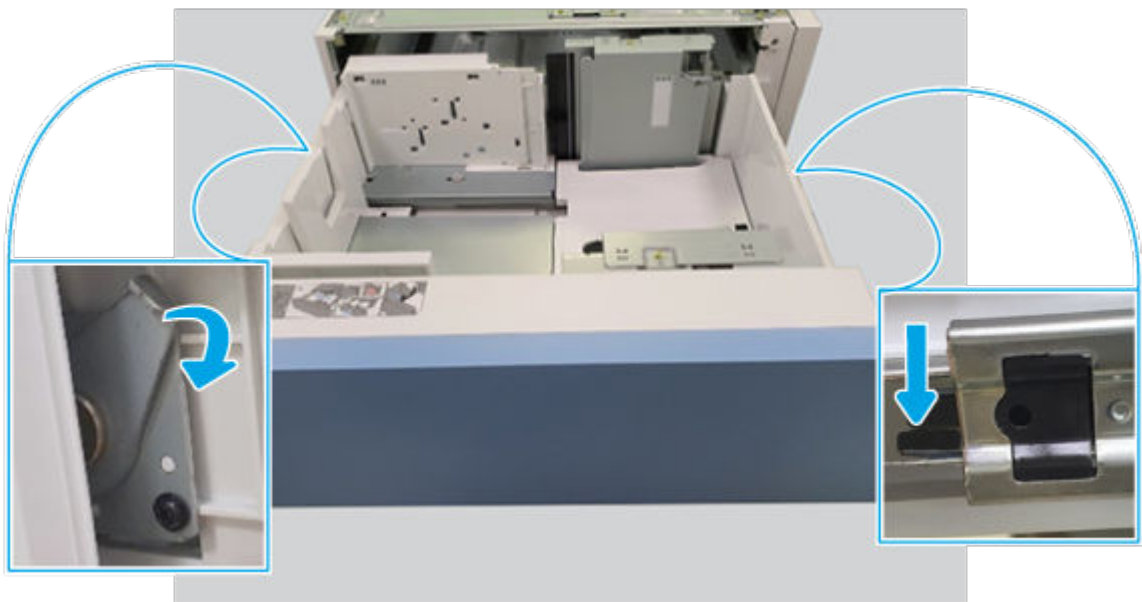
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI cassette

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI cassette.

- Do the following: Pull the cassette out until it stops, and then locate the locking mechanisms on each side.
 - Pull the cassette out until it stops.
 - Push down on the right- and left-side locking mechanisms.
 - Pull the cassette straight out of the HCI to remove it.

Figure 6-1252 Remove the cassette

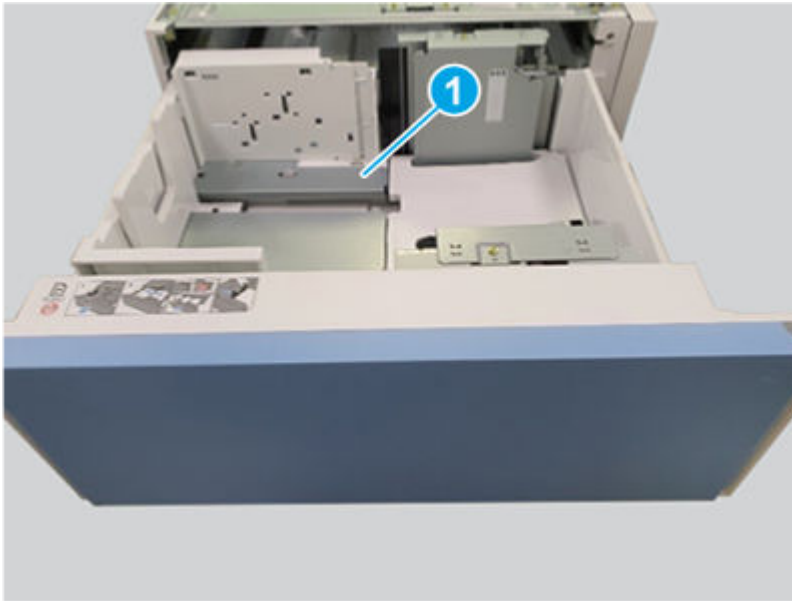


2. Remove the HCI shift tray empty and home sensors

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI shift tray empty and home sensors.

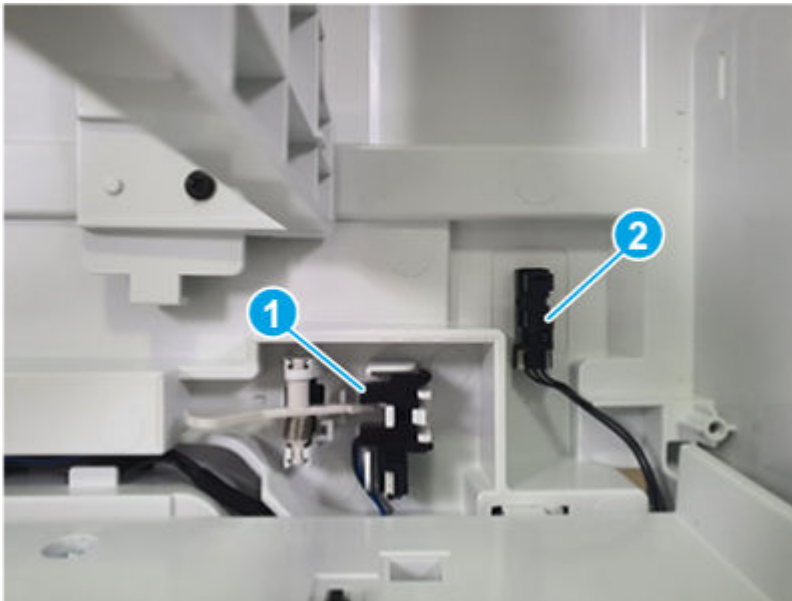
1. Remove one sheet-metal plate (callout 1).

Figure 6-1253 Remove the plate



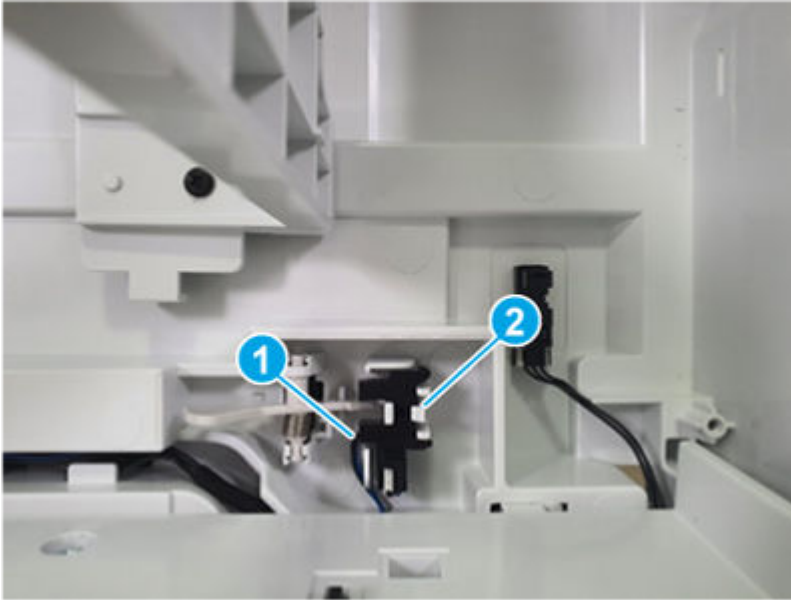
2. Locate the sensor.
 - **Callout 1:** Shift tray empty sensor
 - **Callout 2:** Shift tray home sensor

Figure 6-1254 Locate the sensor



3. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the shift tray empty sensor (callout 2).
Repeat this step for the shift tray home sensor if necessary.

Figure 6-1255 Remove the sensor



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) shift tray level sensor 1 and 2

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) shift tray level sensor 1 and 2.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-188 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (HCI (Tray4) shift tray level sensor 1)
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (HCI (Tray4) shift tray level sensor 2)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

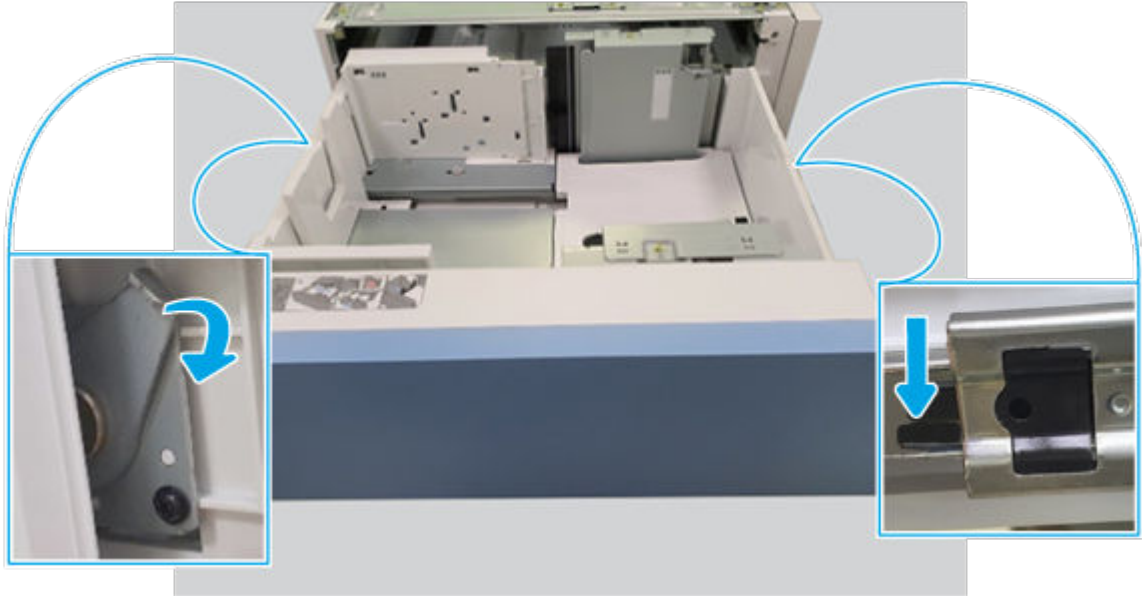
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI cassette

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI cassette.

- Do the following: Pull the cassette out until it stops, and then locate the locking mechanisms on each side.
 - Pull the cassette out until it stops.
 - Push down on the right- and left-side locking mechanisms.
 - Pull the cassette straight out of the HCI to remove it.

Figure 6-1256 Remove the cassette

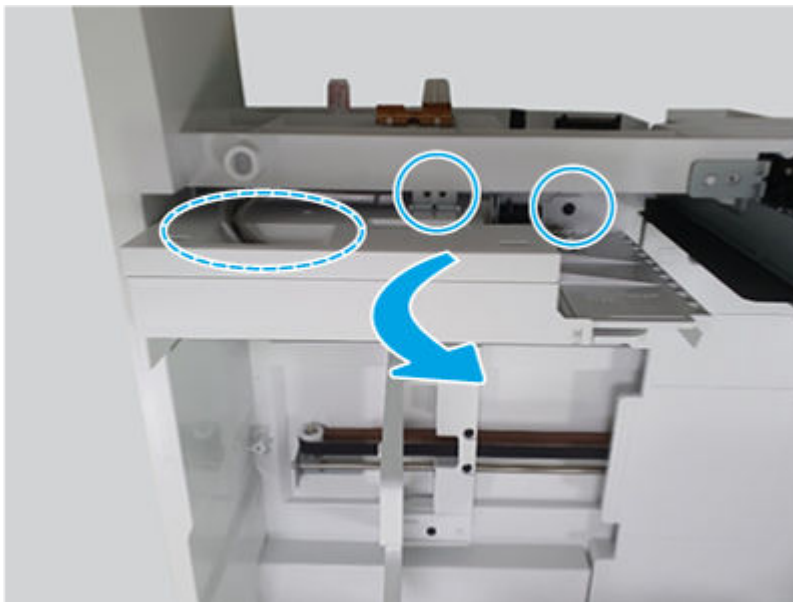


2. Remove the HCI shift tray level sensor 1 and 2

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI shift tray level sensor 1 and 2.

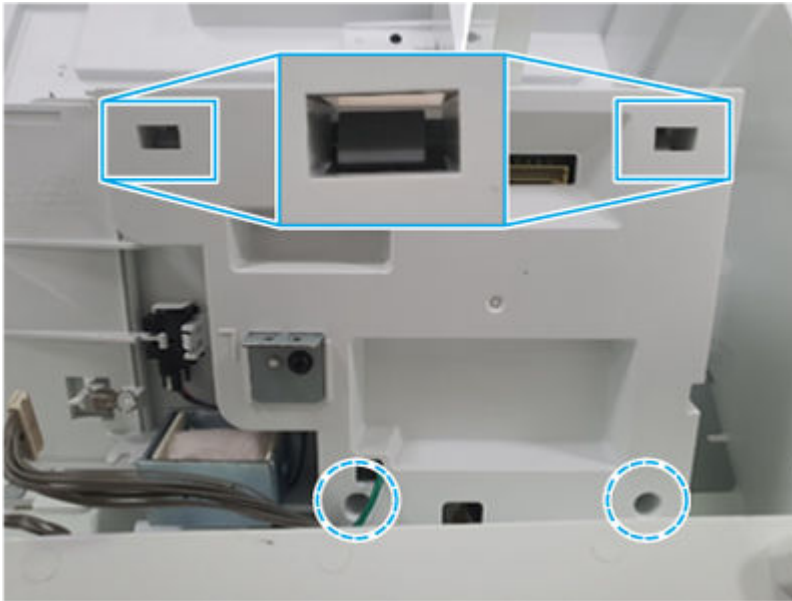
1. Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then pull the assembly up to gain access to it..

Figure 6-1257 Access the assembly



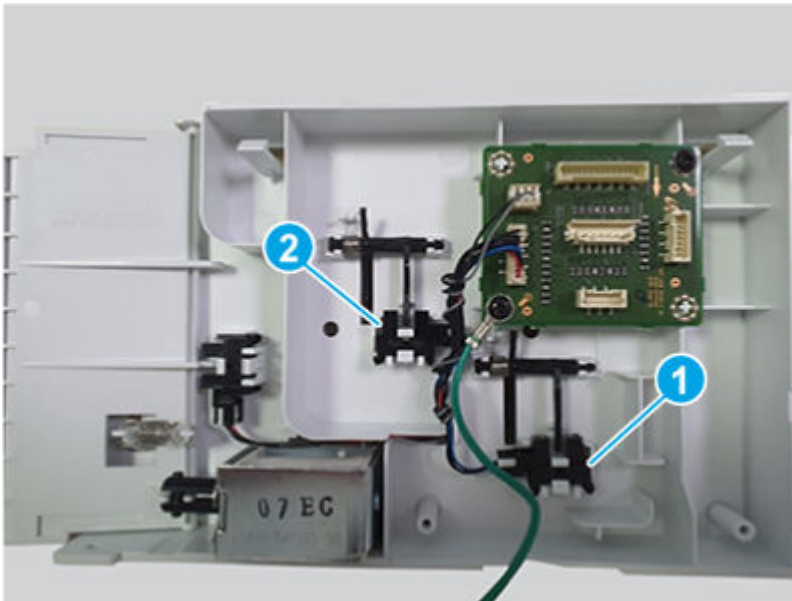
2. Remove two screws, release two hooks, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1258 Remove the cover



3. Locate the desired sensor to remove.
 - **Callout 1:** HCI (Tray 4) shift tray level sensor 1
 - **Callout 2:** HCI (Tray 4) shift tray level sensor 1r

Figure 6-1259 Locate the sensor



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the shift tray level sensor (callout 2).


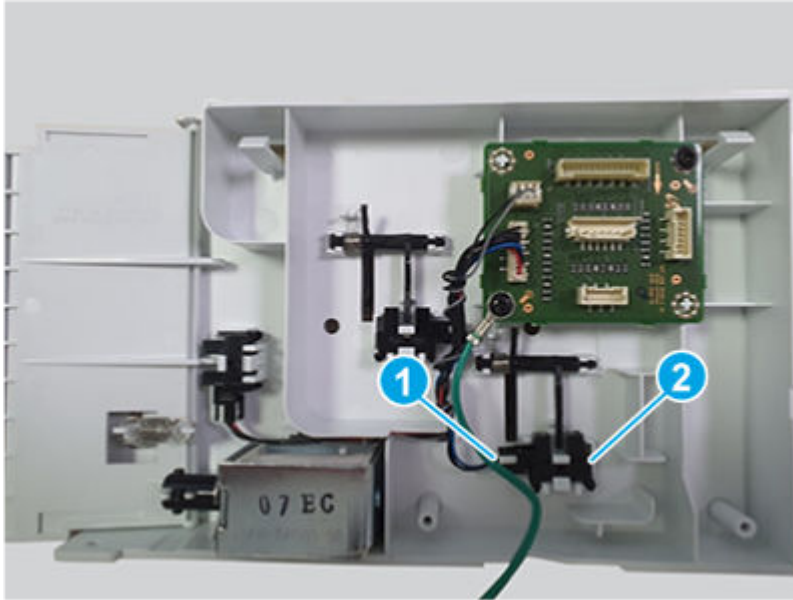
 **NOTE:** Removing the shift tray level sensor 1 is shown below.

Figure 6-1260 Remove the sensor



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) tray open sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) tray open sensor.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-189 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (HCI (Tray4) tray open sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI (Tray 4) rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI rear cover.

- Remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1261 Remove the cover

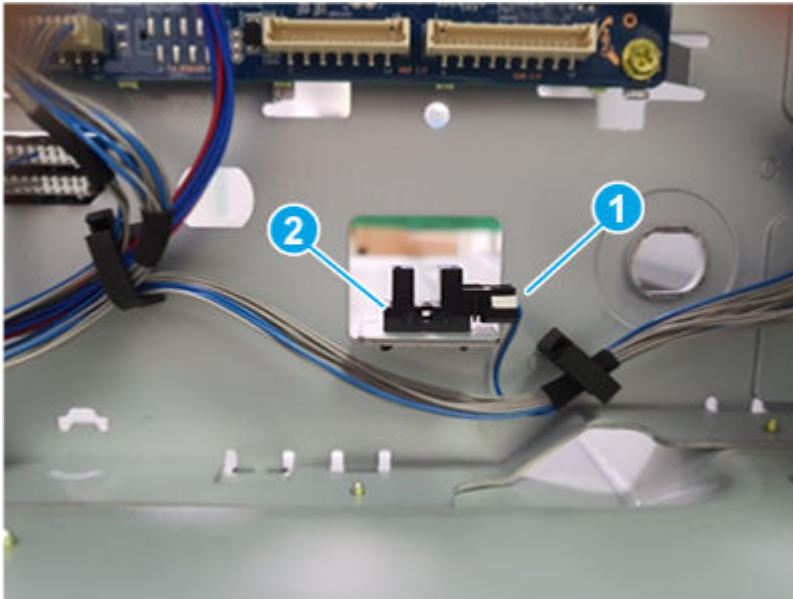


2. Remove the HCI tray open sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI tray open sensor.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the tray open sensor (callout 2).

Figure 6-1262 Remove the sensor



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) gate solenoid home sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) gate solenoid home sensor.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-190 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (HCI (Tray4) gate solenoid home sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

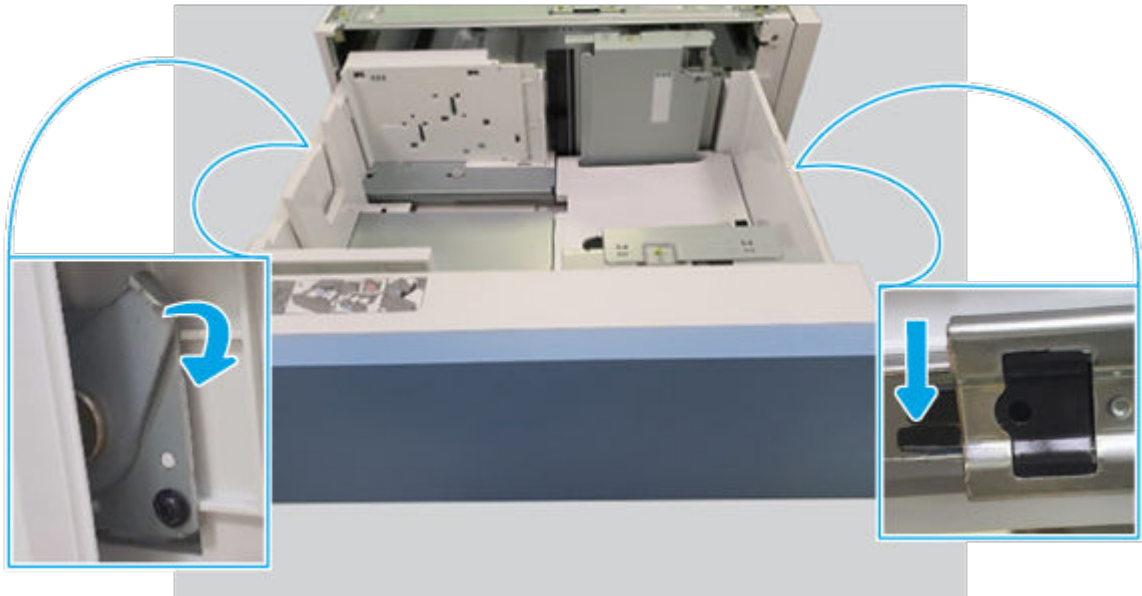
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI cassette

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI cassette.

- Do the following: Pull the cassette out until it stops, and then locate the locking mechanisms on each side.
 - Pull the cassette out until it stops.
 - Push down on the right- and left-side locking mechanisms.
 - Pull the cassette straight out of the HCI to remove it.

Figure 6-1263 Remove the cassette

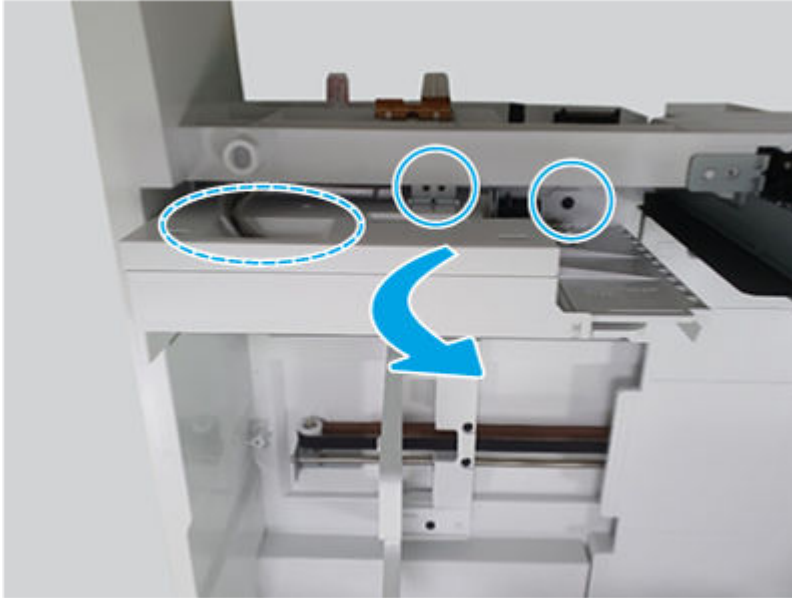


2. Remove the HCI gate solenoid home sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI gate solenoid home sensor.

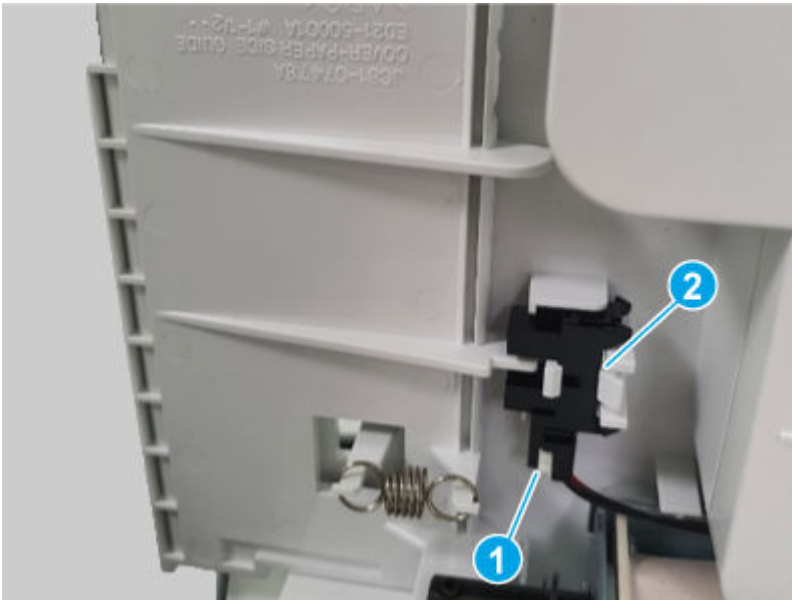
1. Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then pull the assembly up to gain access to it.

Figure 6-1264 Access the assembly



2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the gate solenoid home sensor (callout 2).


Figure 6-1265 Remove the sensor



3. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: HCI right door open switch holder assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the HCI right door open switch holder.


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-191 Part Information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01385A	HCI right door open switch holder
JC39-02601A	HCI WG Door open switch sensor harness

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI (Tray 4) rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI rear cover.

- Remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1266 Remove the cover

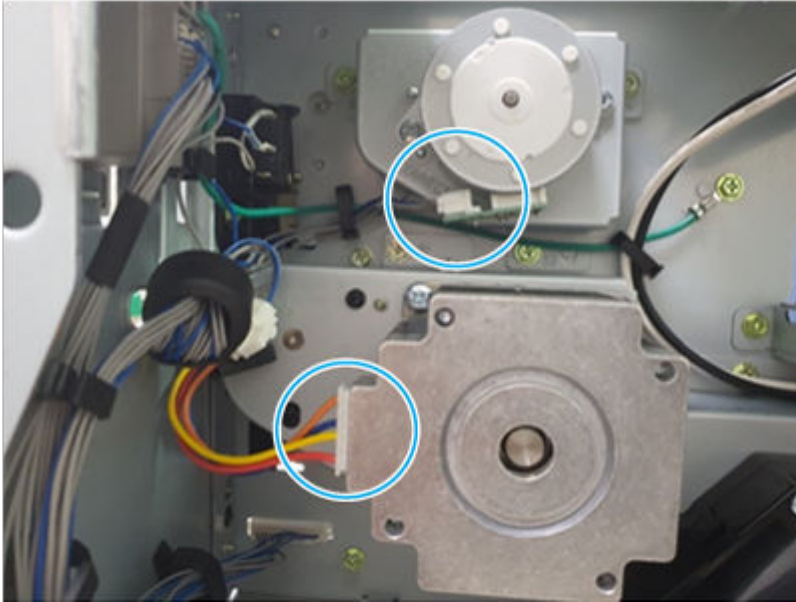


2. Remove the HCI right door open switch holder

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI right door open switch holder.

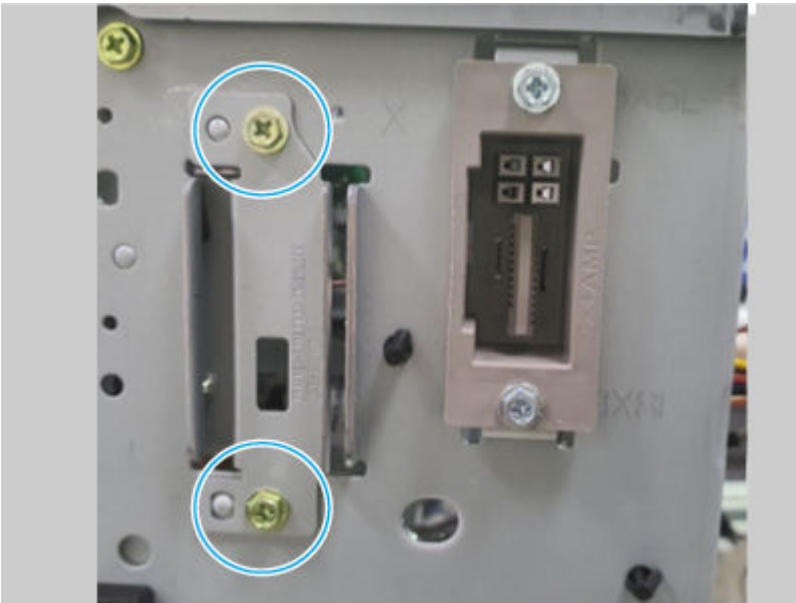
1. Disconnect two connectors.

Figure 6-1267 Remove two screws



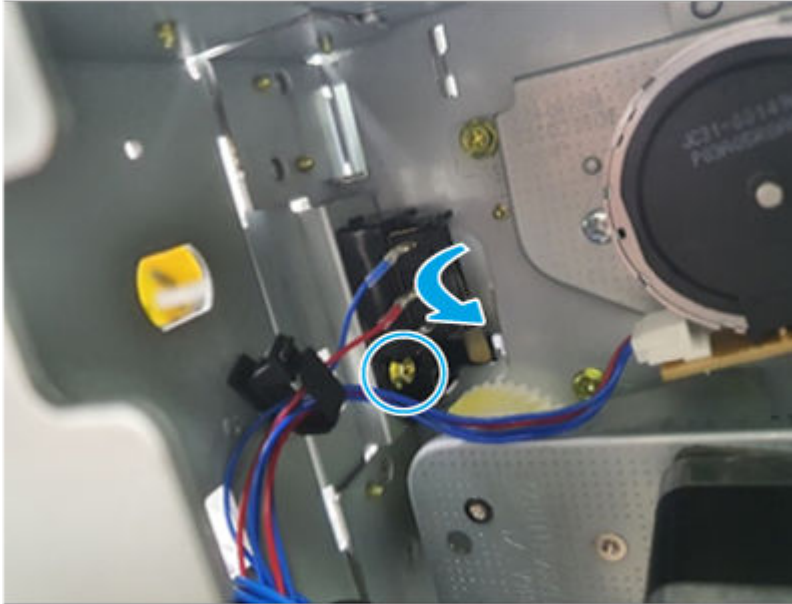
2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1268 Remove two screws



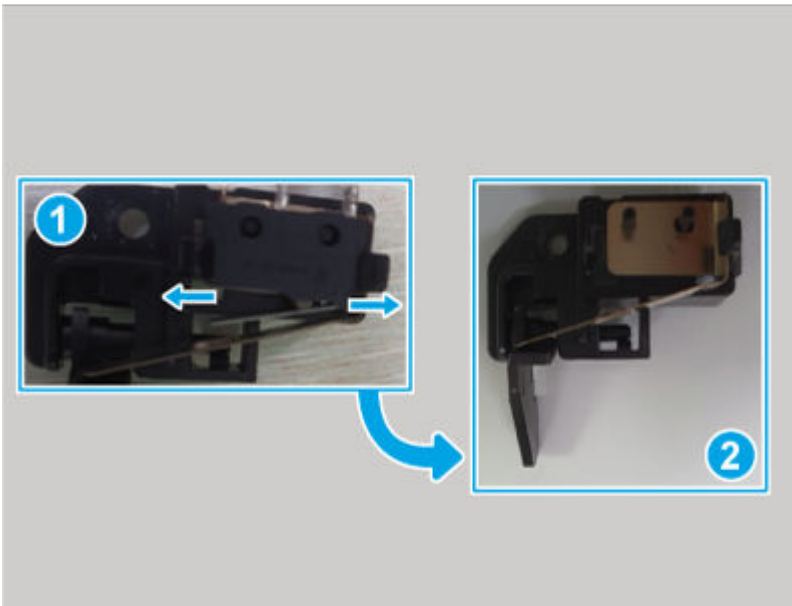
3. Remove one screw and then pull the switch and holder out.

Figure 6-1269 Pull out the switch and holder



4. Release two tabs (callout 1) and then remove the switch from the holder to remove it (callout 2).

Figure 6-1270 Remove the holder



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Motor

Review the HCI motor removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) shift and lift motors

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) shift lift motors.


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-192 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00125A	Motor, geared (HCI (Tray4) shift motor)
JC31-00109A	Motor, geared (HCI (Tray4) lift motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI (Tray 4) rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI rear cover.

- Remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1271 Remove the cover

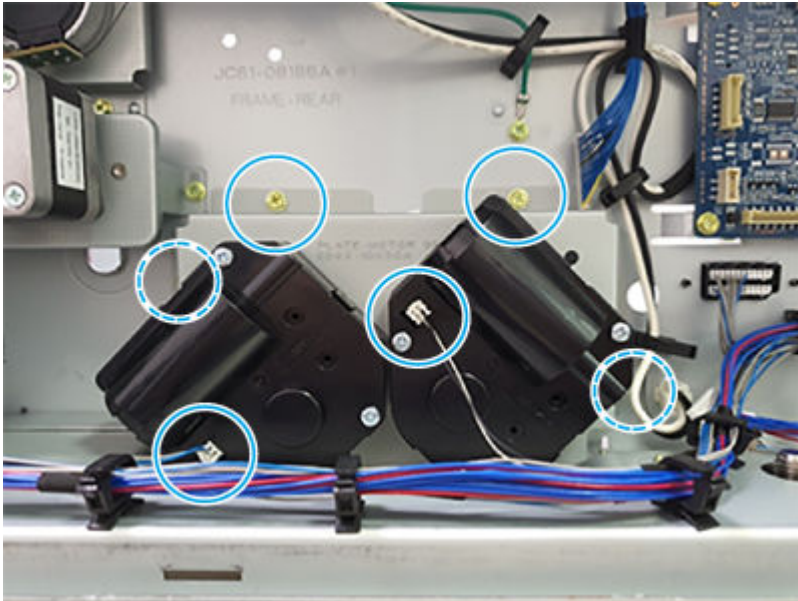


2. Remove the HCI shift and lift motors

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI shift and lift motor.

1. Disconnect two connectors, remove four screws, and then remove the motors and mounting plate.

Figure 6-1272 Remove the motors



2. Locate the desired motor.

- **Callout 1:** HCI (Tray 4) shift motor
- **Callout 2:** HCI (Tray 4) lift motor (Tray 4 elevating motor)

Figure 6-1273 Locate the motor



3. Remove three screws, and then remove the motor.

Figure 6-1274 Remove the motor



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Shift plate

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) shift plate.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-193 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC81-07481B	Shift plate

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

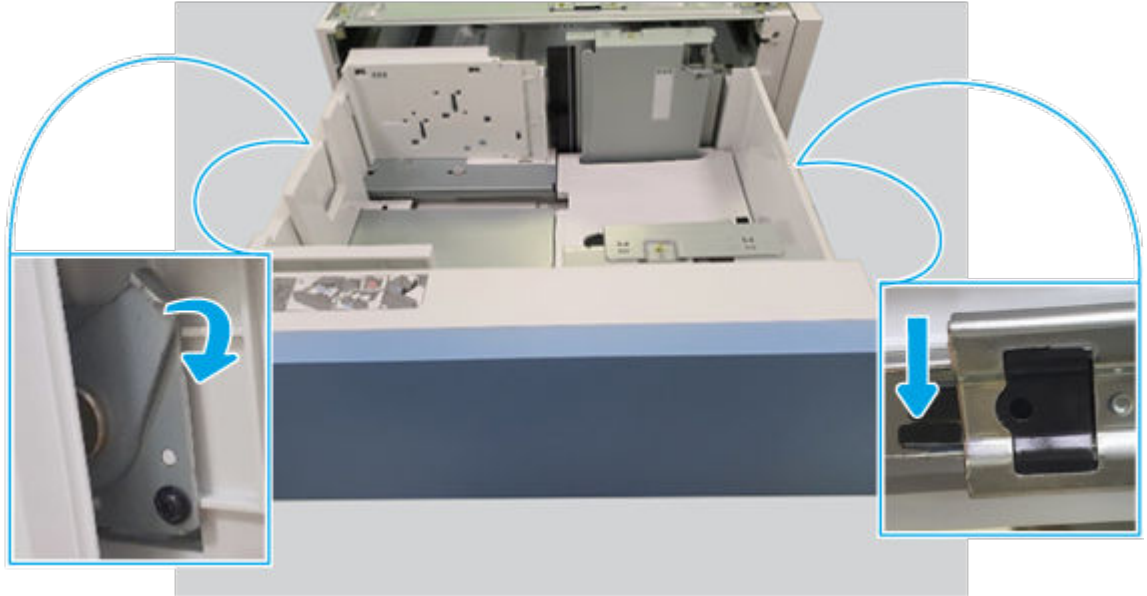
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI cassette

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI cassette.

- Do the following: Pull the cassette out until it stops, and then locate the locking mechanisms on each side.
 - Pull the cassette out until it stops.
 - Push down on the right- and left-side locking mechanisms.
 - Pull the cassette straight out of the HCI to remove it.

Figure 6-1275 Remove the cassette

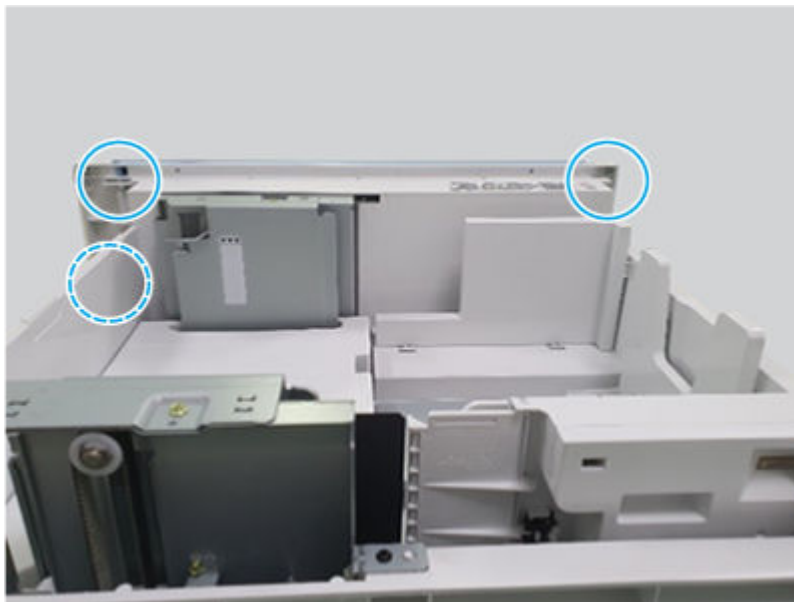


2. Remove the HCI shift plate

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI shift plate.

1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1276 Remove three screws



2. Turn the tray over, remove two screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1277 Remove two screws



3. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-1278 Remove four screws



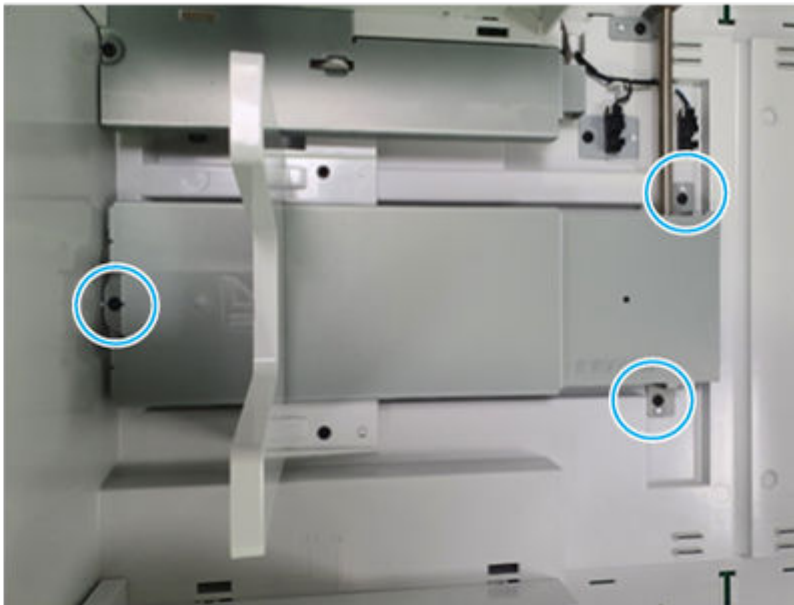
4. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the knockup plate.

Figure 6-1279 Remove the plate



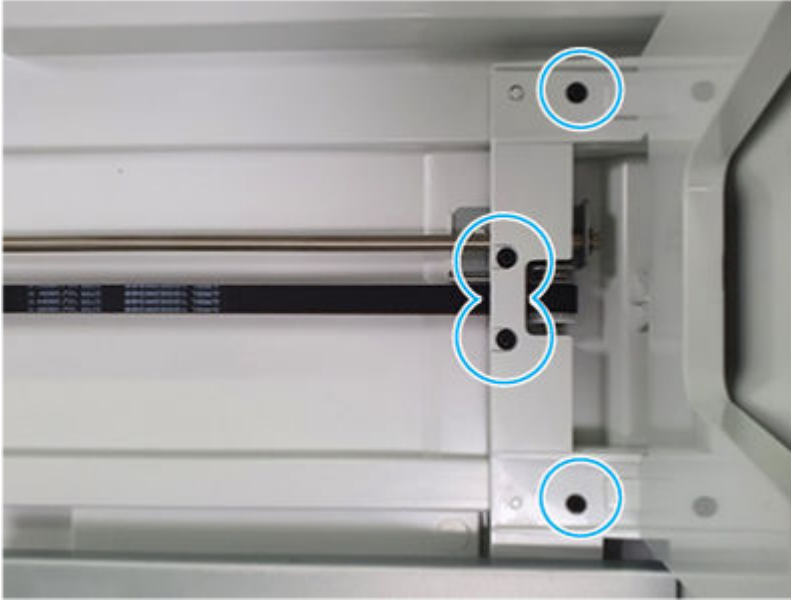
5. Remove three screws, and then remove the shift tray.

Figure 6-1280 Remove the shift tray



6. Remove four screws, and then remove the shift plate.

Figure 6-1281 Remove the plate



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Knockup plate assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) knockup plate.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-194 Part information

Part number	Part description
6GW48-60003	Knockup plate

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

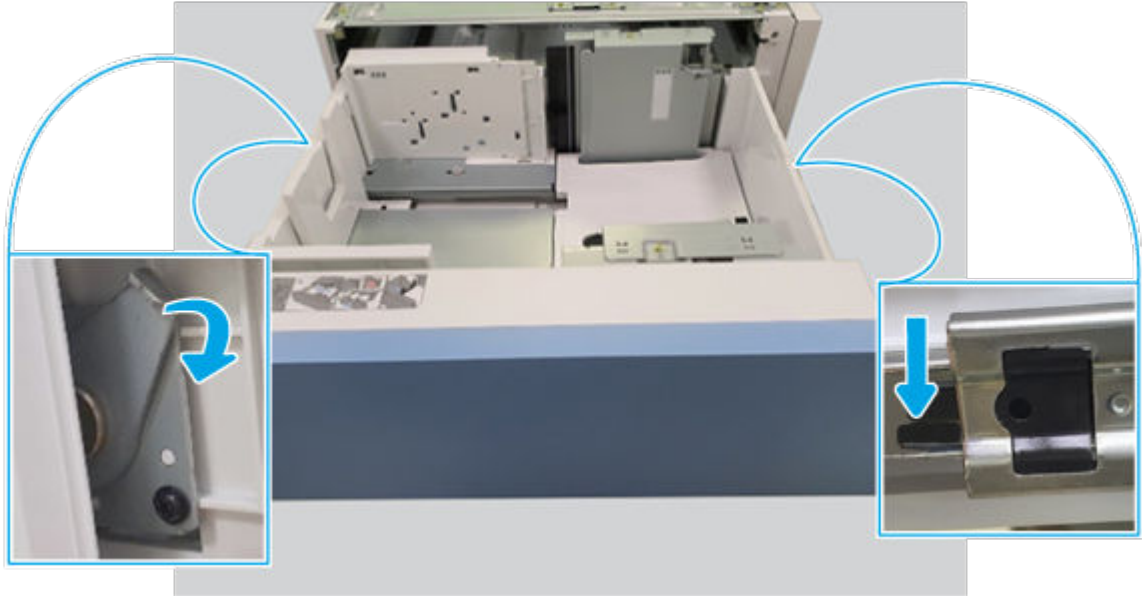
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI cassette

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI cassette.

- Do the following: Pull the cassette out until it stops, and then locate the locking mechanisms on each side.
 - Pull the cassette out until it stops.
 - Push down on the right- and left-side locking mechanisms.
 - Pull the cassette straight out of the HCI to remove it.

Figure 6-1282 Remove the cassette

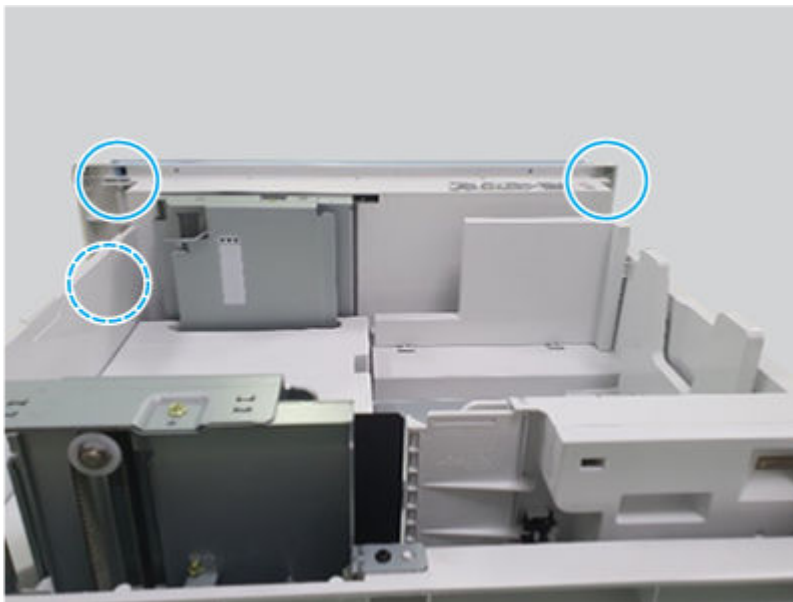


2. Remove the HCI knockup plate assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI knockup plate.

1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1283 Remove three screws



2. Turn the tray over, remove two screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1284 Remove two screws



3. Remove four screws, and then remove the knockup plate.

Figure 6-1285 Remove four screws



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Paper gate

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) paper gate.


Mean time to repair: 25 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-195 Part Information

Part number	Part description
JC81-07478B	Paper gate

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

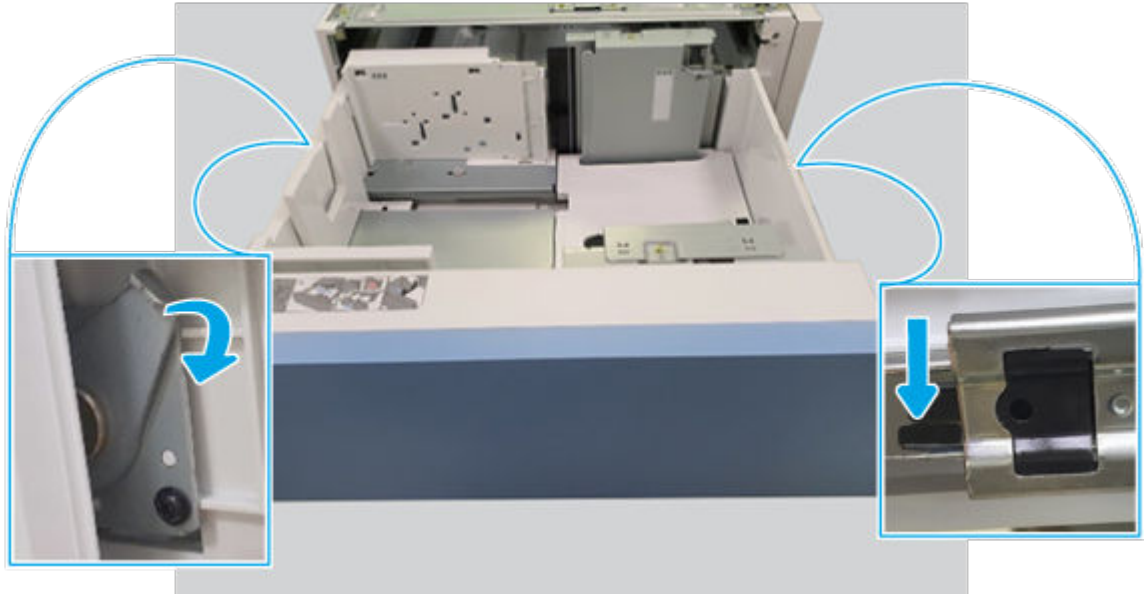
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCl cassette

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCl cassette.

- Do the following: Pull the cassette out until it stops, and then locate the locking mechanisms on each side.
 - Pull the cassette out until it stops.
 - Push down on the right- and left-side locking mechanisms.
 - Pull the cassette straight out of the HCl to remove it.

Figure 6-1286 Remove the cassette

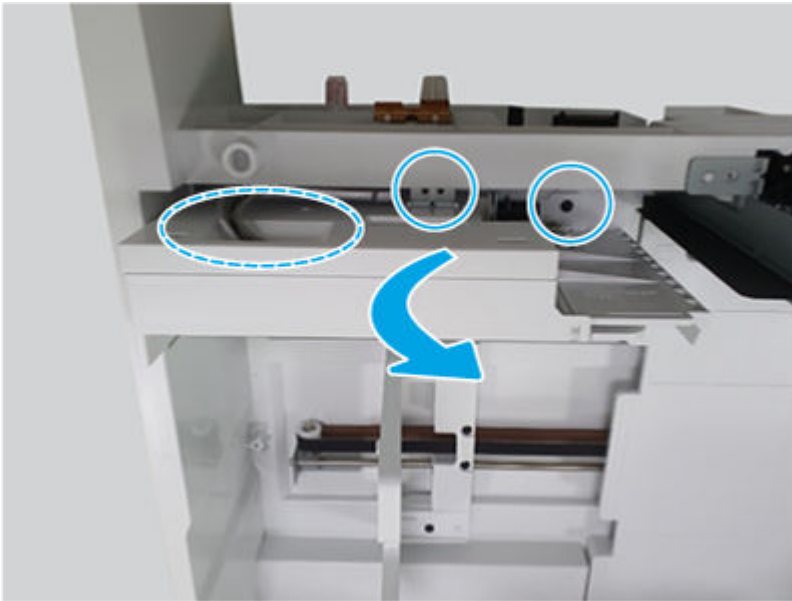


2. Remove the HCl paper gate

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCl paper gate.

1. Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then pull the assembly up to gain access to it.

Figure 6-1287 Access the assembly



2. Remove one spring, and then remove the paper gate.

Figure 6-1288 Remove the paper gate



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) feed motor drive assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) feed motor drive assembly.


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-196 Part Information

Part number	Part description
5QJ90-60023	HCI (Tray 4) feed motor drive assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI (Tray 4) rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI rear cover.

- Remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1289 Remove the cover

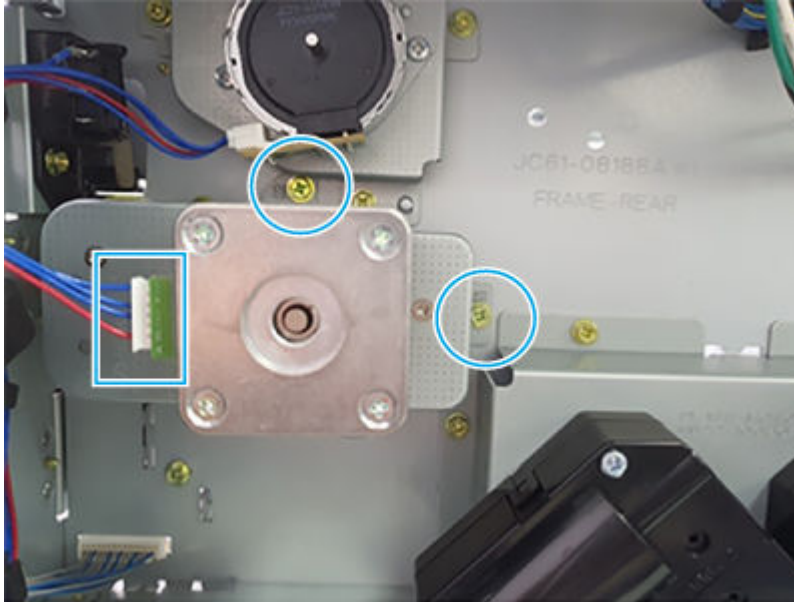


2. Remove the HCI feed motor drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI feed motor drive assembly.

- Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the feed motor drive assembly.

Figure 6-1290 Remove the assembly



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) pickup motor drive assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) pickup motor drive assembly.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-197 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ90-64002	HCI (Tray 4) pickup motor drive assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI (Tray 4) rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI rear cover.

- Remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1291 Remove the cover

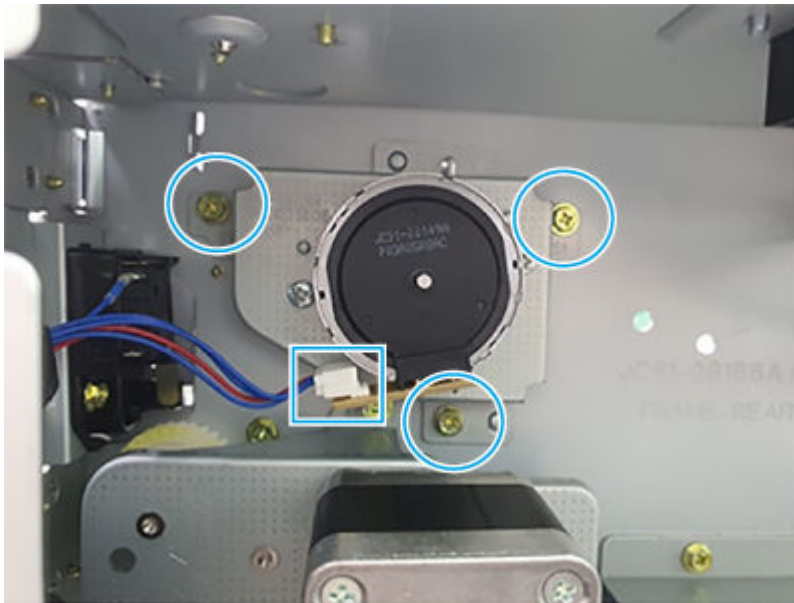


2. Remove the HCI pickup motor drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI pickup motor drive assembly.

- Disconnect one connector, remove three screws, and then remove the pickup motor drive assembly.


Figure 6-1292 Remove the assembly



3. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) shift gate solenoid

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) shift gate solenoid.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-198 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC33-00031B	Solenoid, lifting (HCI (Tray 4) shift gate solenoid)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

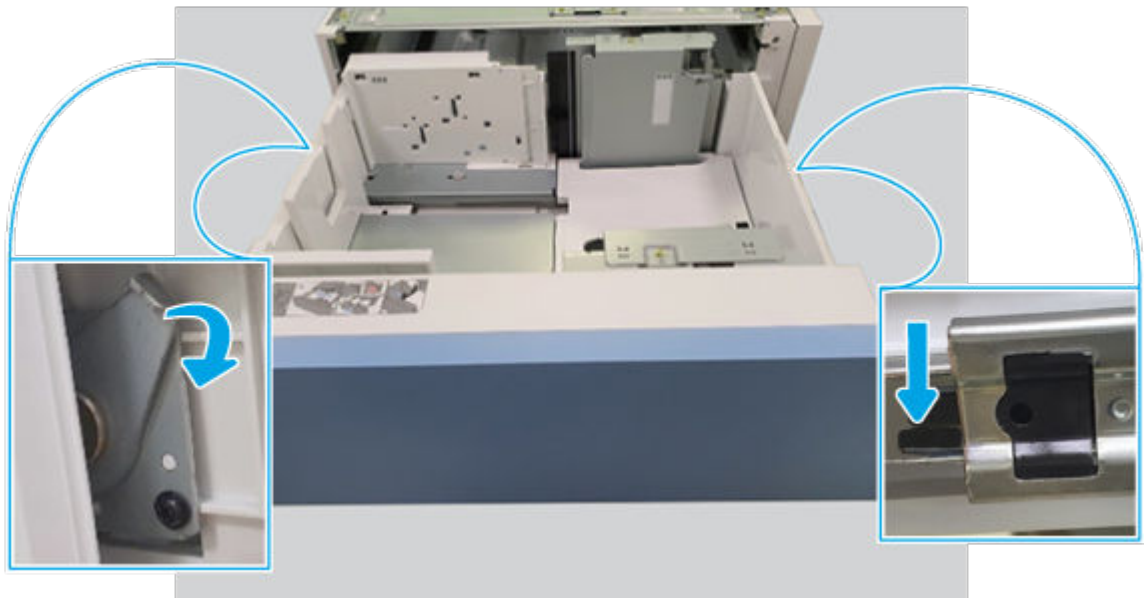
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI cassette

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI cassette.

- Do the following: Pull the cassette out until it stops, and then locate the locking mechanisms on each side.
 - Pull the cassette out until it stops.
 - Push down on the right- and left-side locking mechanisms.
 - Pull the cassette straight out of the HCI to remove it.

Figure 6-1293 Remove the cassette

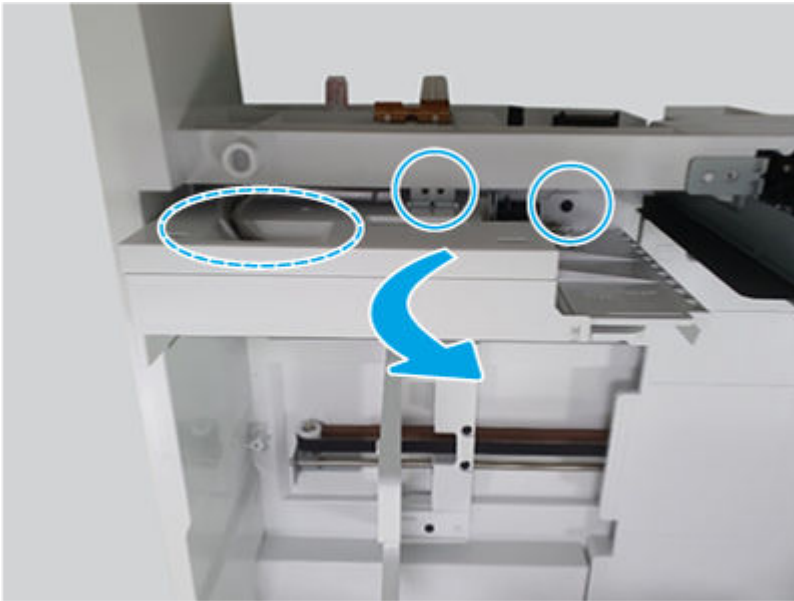


2. Remove the HCI shift gate solenoid

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI shift gate solenoid.

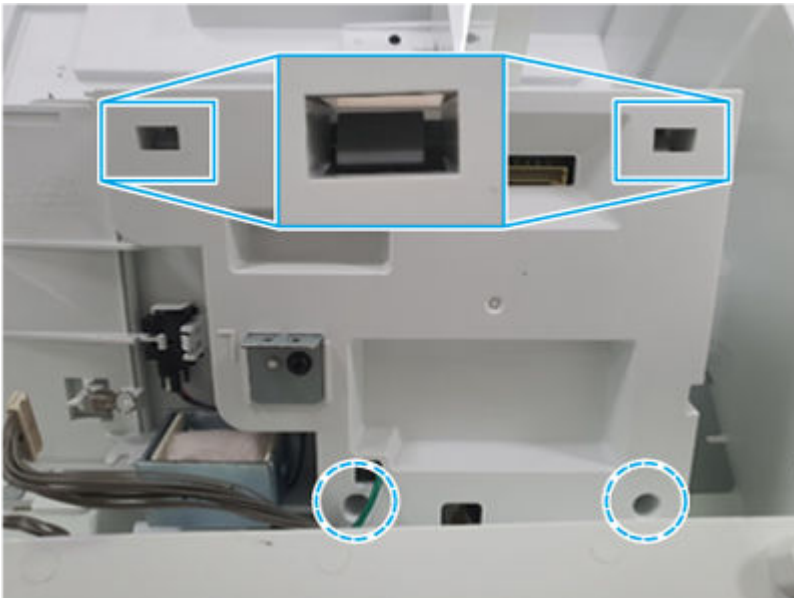
1. Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then pull the assembly up to gain access to it.

Figure 6-1294 Access the assembly



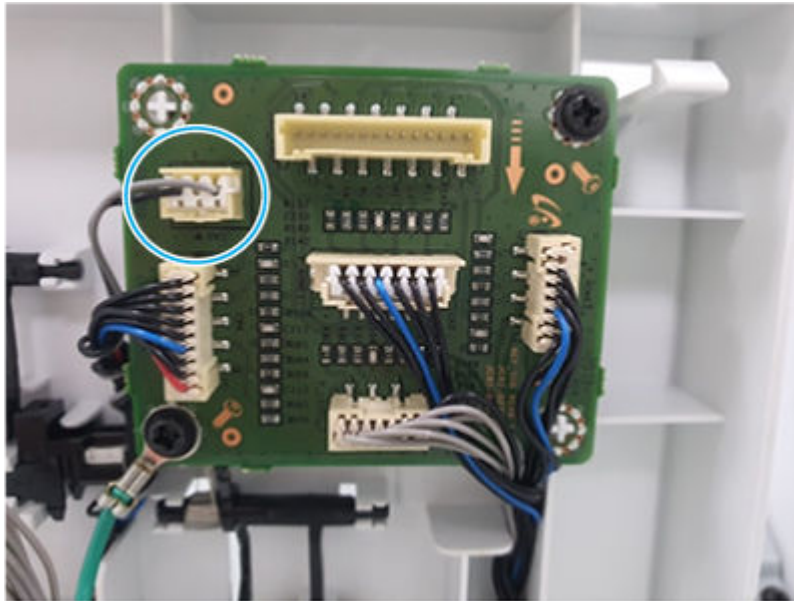
2. Remove two screws, release two hooks, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1295 Remove the cover



3. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-1296 Disconnect one connector



4. Remove two screws, and then remove the shift gate solenoid (behind the panel).


 **NOTE:** Release the solenoid wire harness as needed.


Figure 6-1297 Remove the solenoid





3. Unpack the replacement assembly


Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

PCA and harness

Review the HCI PCA and harness removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) PCA

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) PCA.


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-199 Part information

Part number	Part description
6GW48-60001	HCI (Tray 4) PCA

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI (Tray 4) rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI rear cover.

- Remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1298 Remove the cover

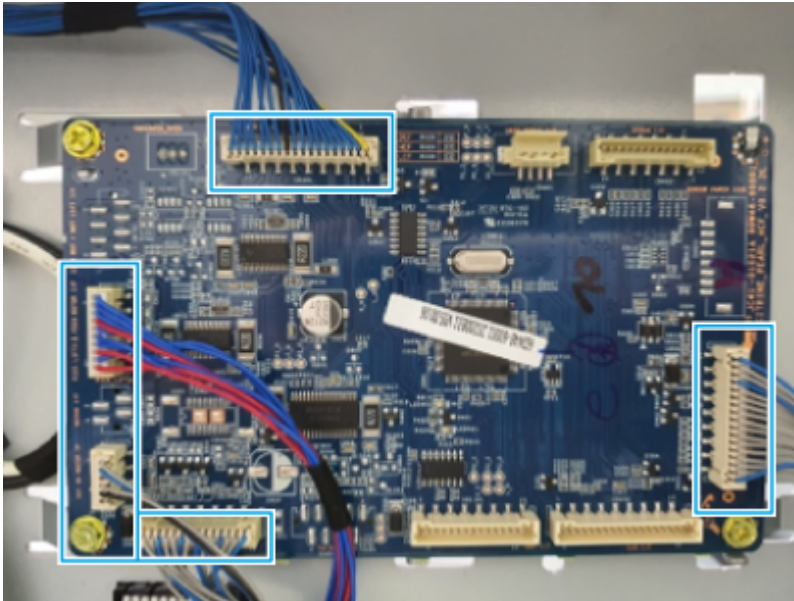


2. Remove the HCI PCA

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI PCA.

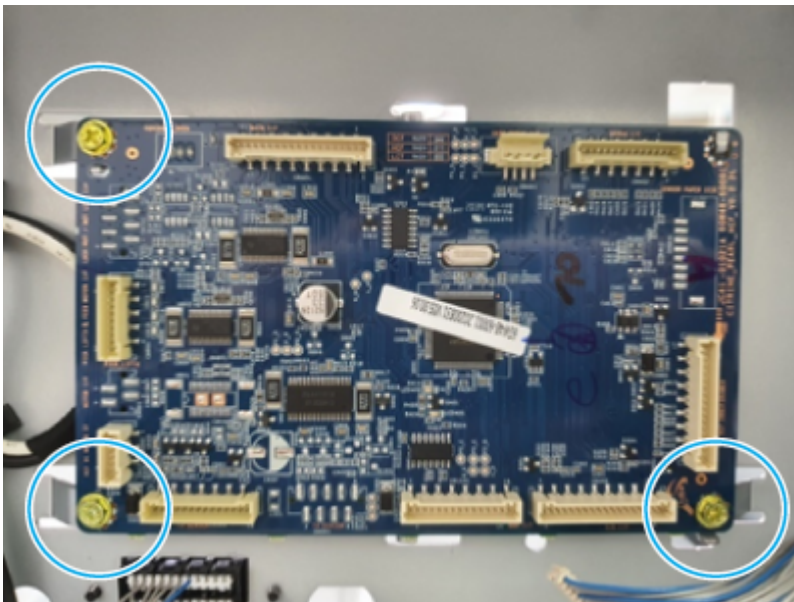
1. Disconnect all of the connectors.

Figure 6-1299 Disconnect all connectors



2. Remove three screws, and then remove the PCA.

Figure 6-1300 Remove the PCA



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: HCI (Tray 4) sub PCA

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) sub PCA.


Mean time to repair: 25 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-200 Part Information

Part number	Part description
JC92-02792A	HCI (Tray 4) sub PCA

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

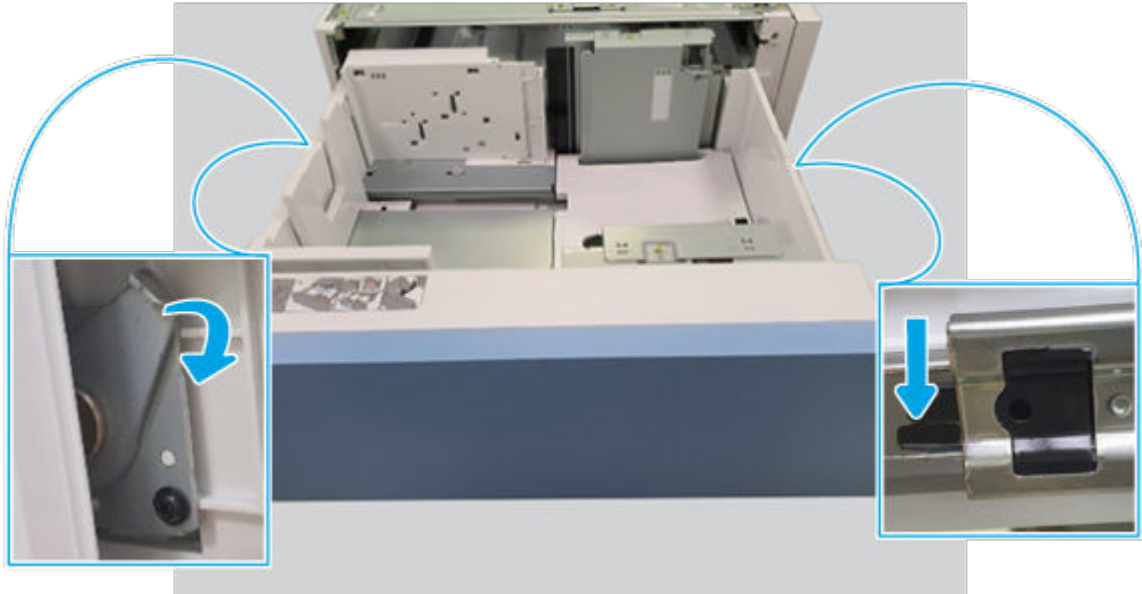
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI cassette

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI cassette.

- Do the following: Pull the cassette out until it stops, and then locate the locking mechanisms on each side.
 - Pull the cassette out until it stops.
 - Push down on the right- and left-side locking mechanisms.
 - Pull the cassette straight out of the HCI to remove it.

Figure 6-1301 Remove the cassette

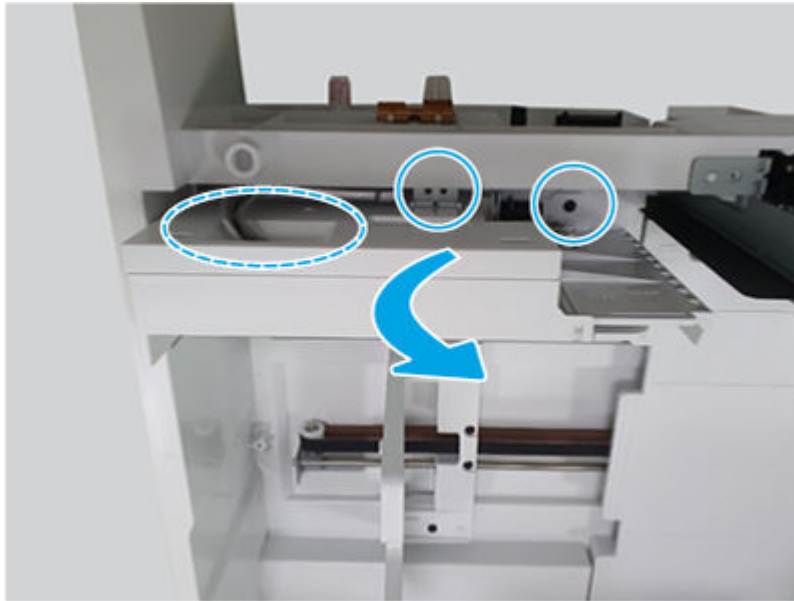


2. Remove the HCI sub PCA

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI sub PCA.

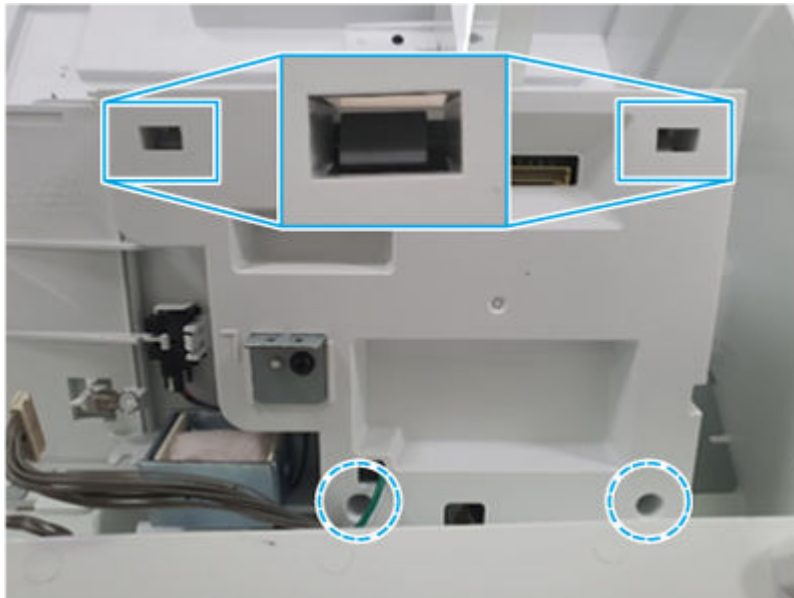
1. Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then pull the assembly up to gain access to it.

Figure 6-1302 Access the assembly



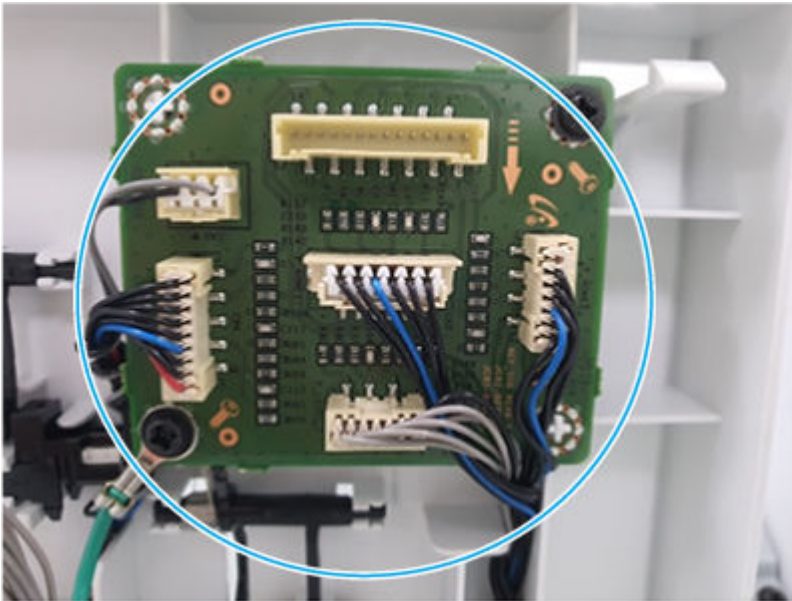
2. Remove two screws, release two hooks, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1303 Remove the cover



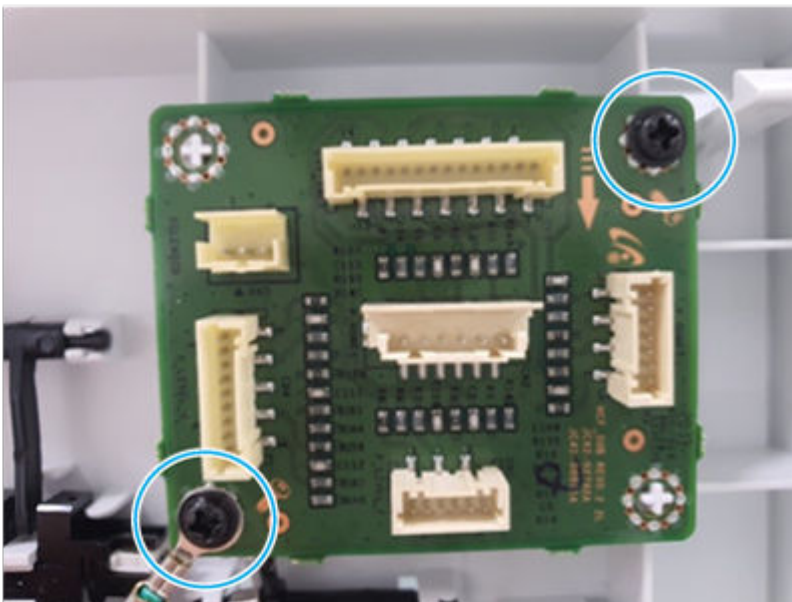
3. Disconnect all of the connectors.

Figure 6-1304 Disconnect all connectors



4. Remove two screws, and then remove the sub PCA.

Figure 6-1305 Remove the PCA



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: HCI main IF harness

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) main IF harness.


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-201 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC39-02600A	HCI main IF harness

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI (Tray 4) rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI rear cover.

- Remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1306 Remove the cover

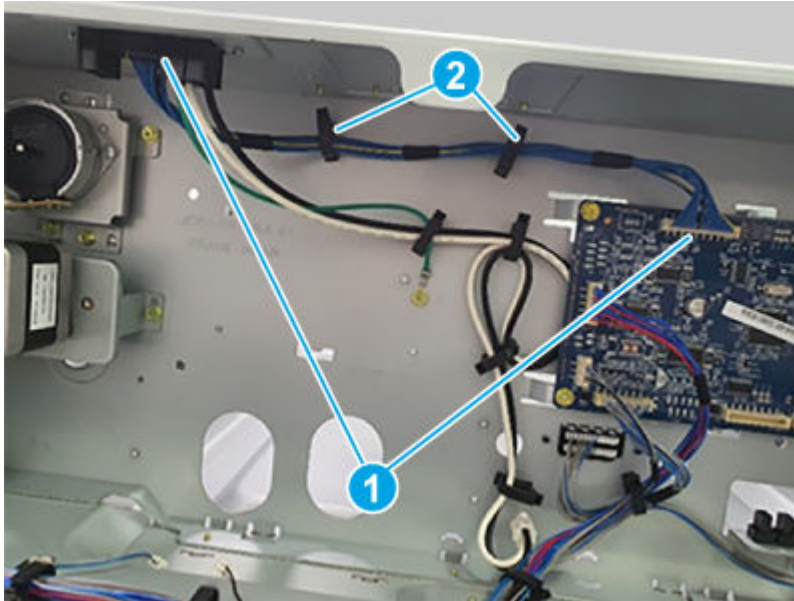


2. Remove the HCI main IF harness

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI main IF harness.

- Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), release the harness from the retainers (callout 2), and then remove the main IF harness.

Figure 6-1307 Remove the harness



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: HCI motor IF (pick and feed)

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) motor IF.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-202 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC39-02282A	HCI motor IF

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI (Tray 4) rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI rear cover.

- Remove five screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1308 Remove the cover

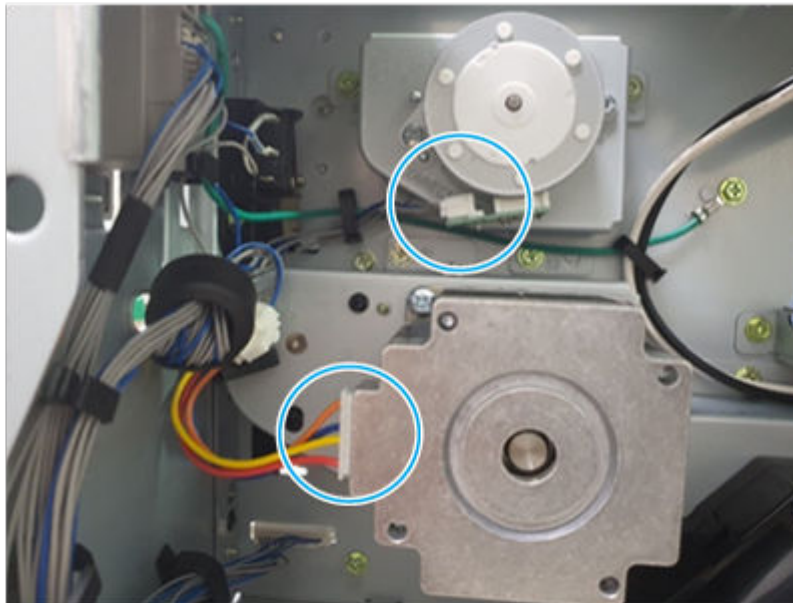


2. Remove the HCI right door open switch holder

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI right door open switch holder.

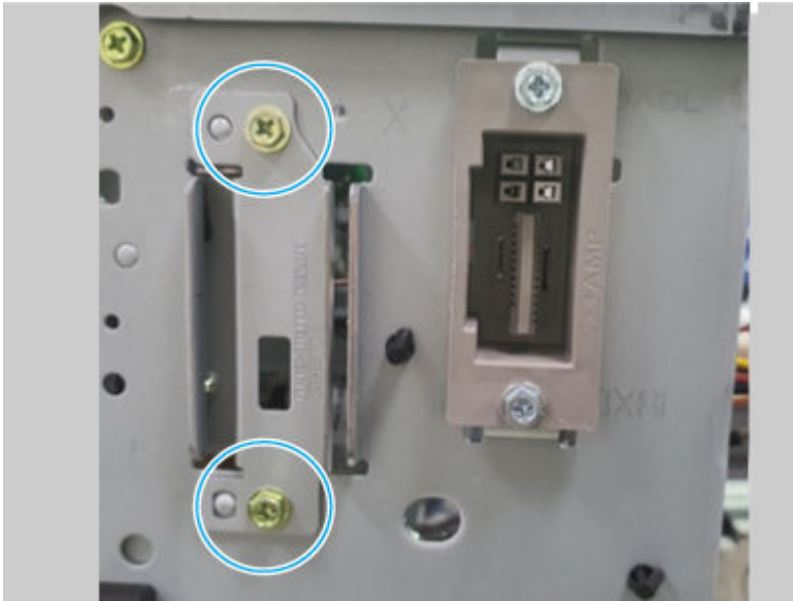
1. Disconnect two connectors.

Figure 6-1309 Remove two screws



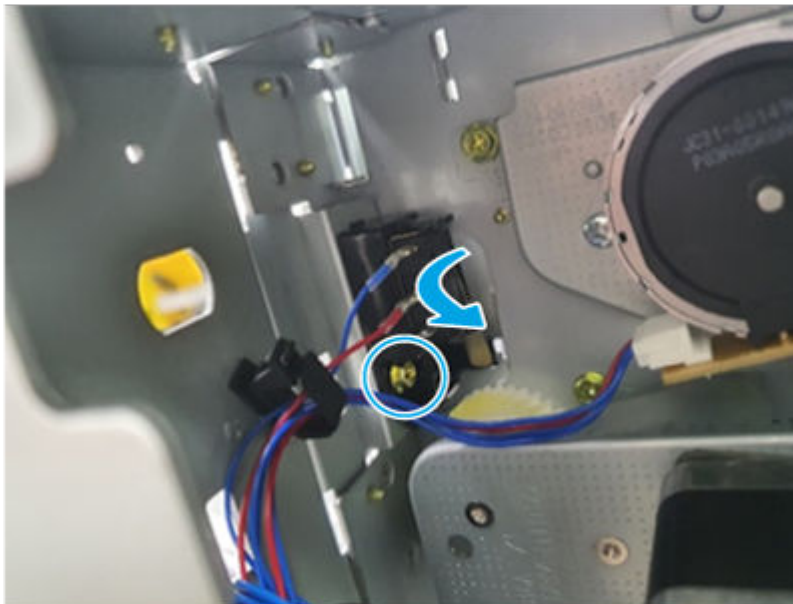
2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1310 Remove two screws



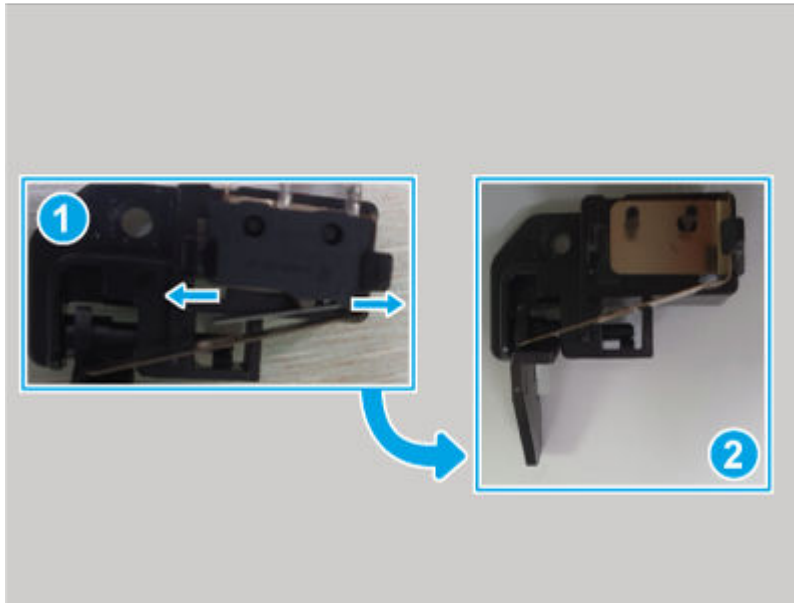
3. Remove one screw and then pull the switch and holder out.

Figure 6-1311 Pull out the switch and holder



4. Release two tabs (callout 1) and then remove the switch from the holder to remove it (callout 2).

Figure 6-1312 Remove the holder



3. Remove the HCI motor IF (pick and feed)

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI motor IF.

- Disconnect one connector, and then remove the motor IF.


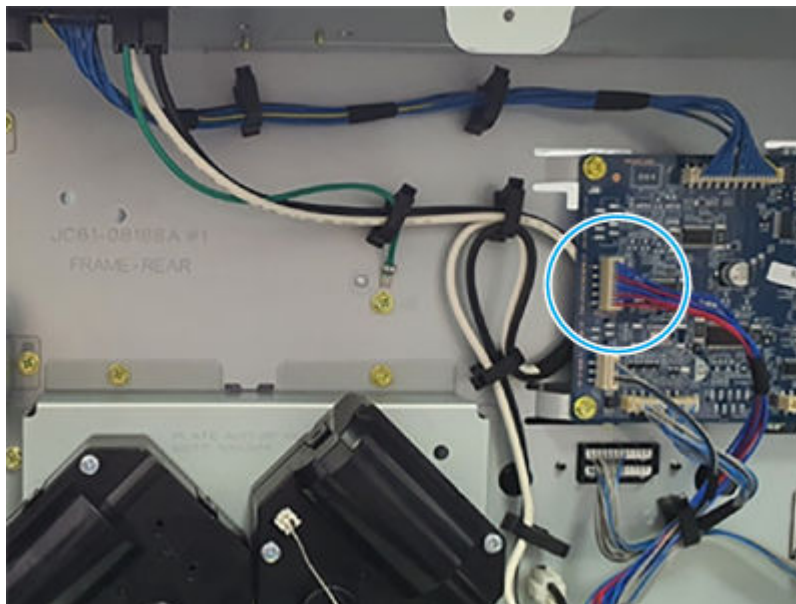
 **NOTE:** Release retainers as needed.

Figure 6-1313 Remove the motor IF



4. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: HCI inner drawer

Learn about removing and replacing the high capacity input (HCI) inner drawer IF.


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-203 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC39-02286A	HCI inner drawer IF

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

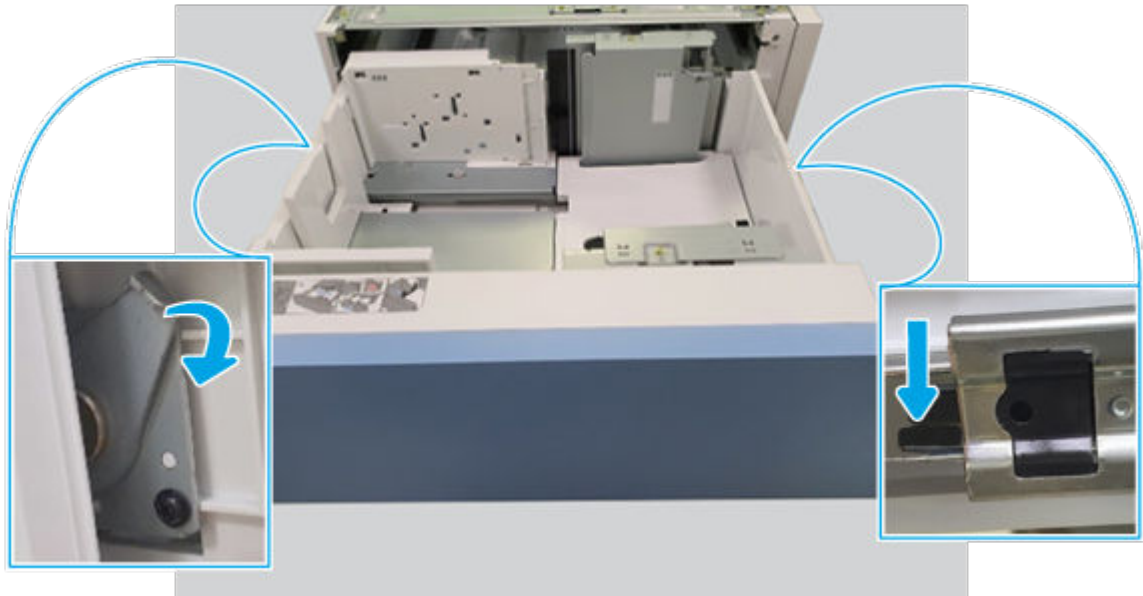
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HCI cassette

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI cassette.

- Do the following: Pull the cassette out until it stops, and then locate the locking mechanisms on each side.
 - Pull the cassette out until it stops.
 - Push down on the right- and left-side locking mechanisms.
 - Pull the cassette straight out of the HCI to remove it.

Figure 6-1314 Remove the cassette



2. Remove the HCI inner drawer IF

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the HCI inner drawer IF.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1315 Remove two screws



2. Disconnect two connectors, and then remove the HCI inner drawer IF.

Figure 6-1316 Remove the inner drawer IF



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Output device

Learn about output device parts removal and replacement.

Stapler/stacker and (or) Booklet finisher

Learn about external finisher stapler/stacker or booklet finishers parts removal and replacement.

Cover

Review the external finisher cover removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Front door

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher front door.


Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-204 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-60106	Front door

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

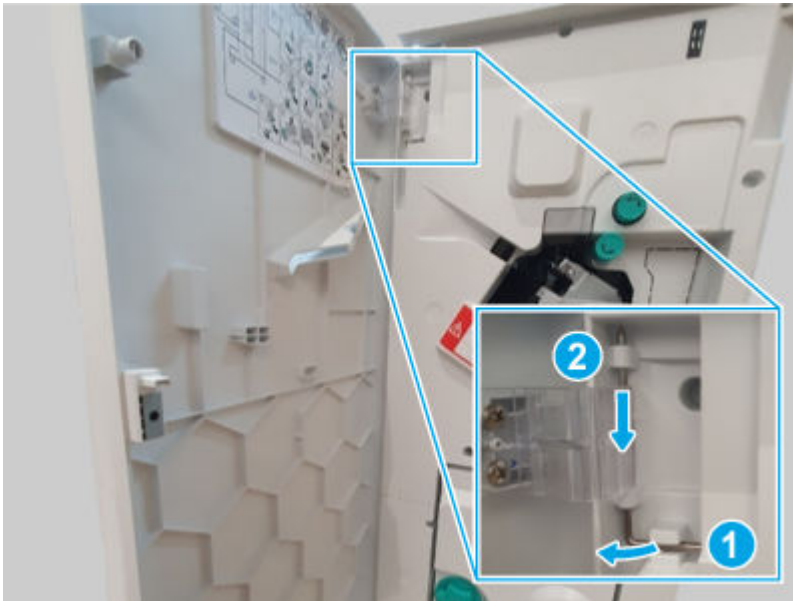
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

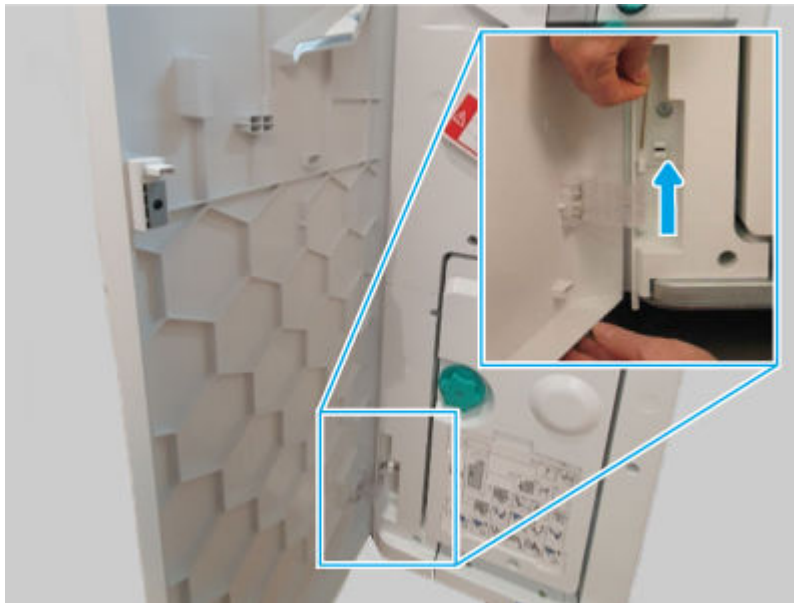
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1317 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door


Figure 6-1318 Remove the door



2. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Caster cover

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher caster cover.

Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-205 Part information

Part number	Part description
8GS05-40018	Caster cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

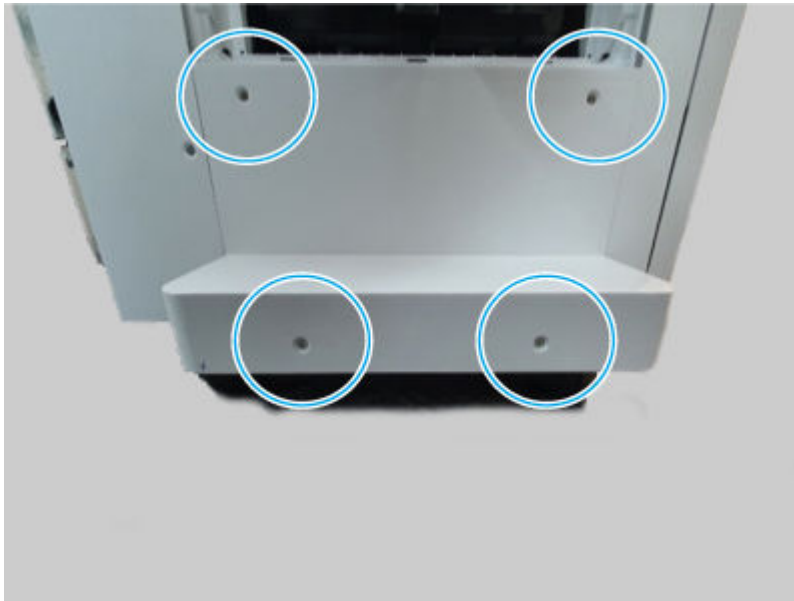
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher caster cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher caster cover.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the caster cover.

Figure 6-1319 Remove the cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Left lower cover

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher left lower cover.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-206 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-60106	Left lower cover (stacker)
8GS05-60124	Left lower cover (booklet)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

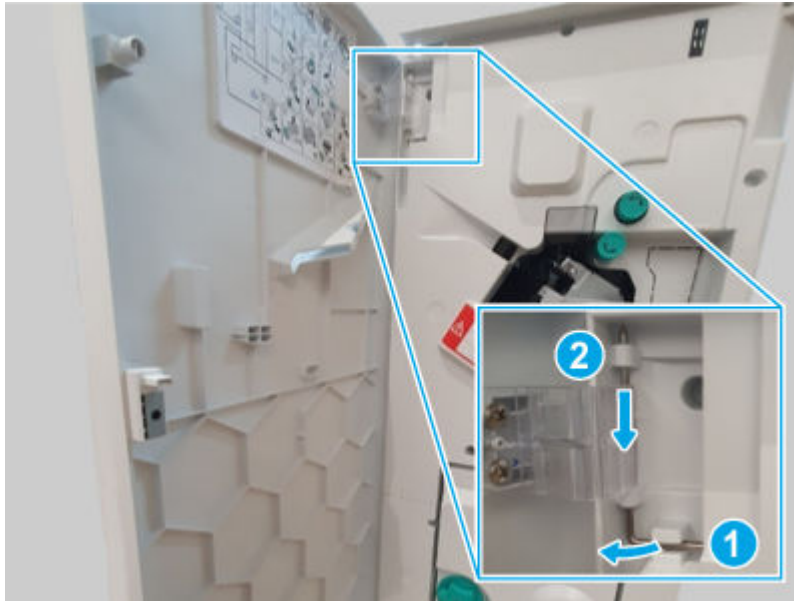
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

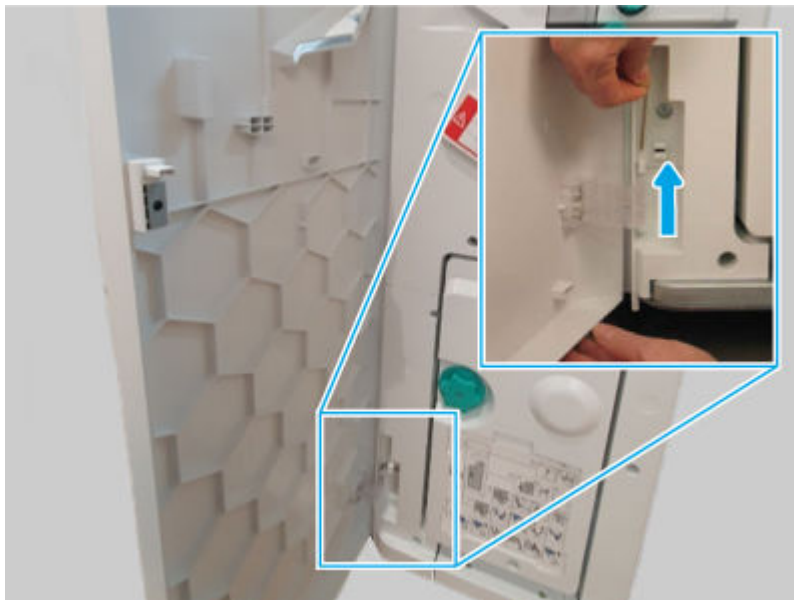
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1320 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1321 Remove the door



2. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

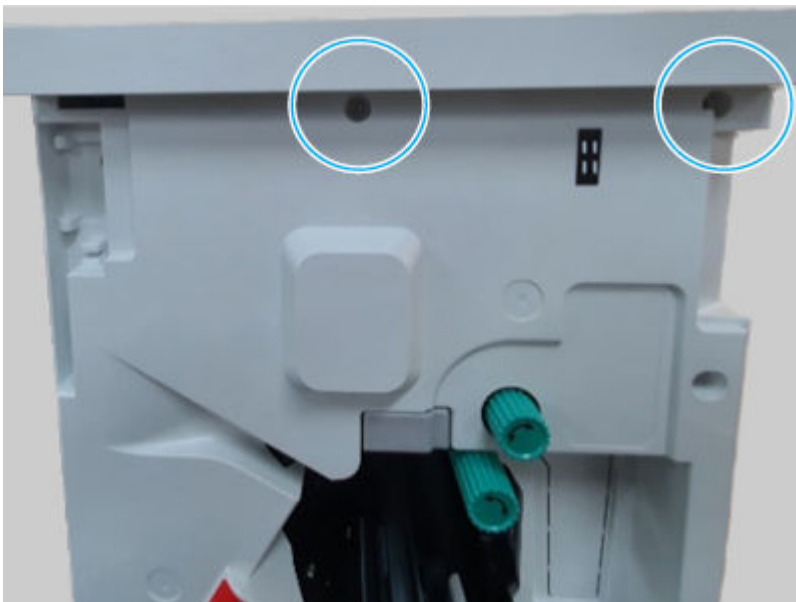
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1322 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1323 Remove the cover

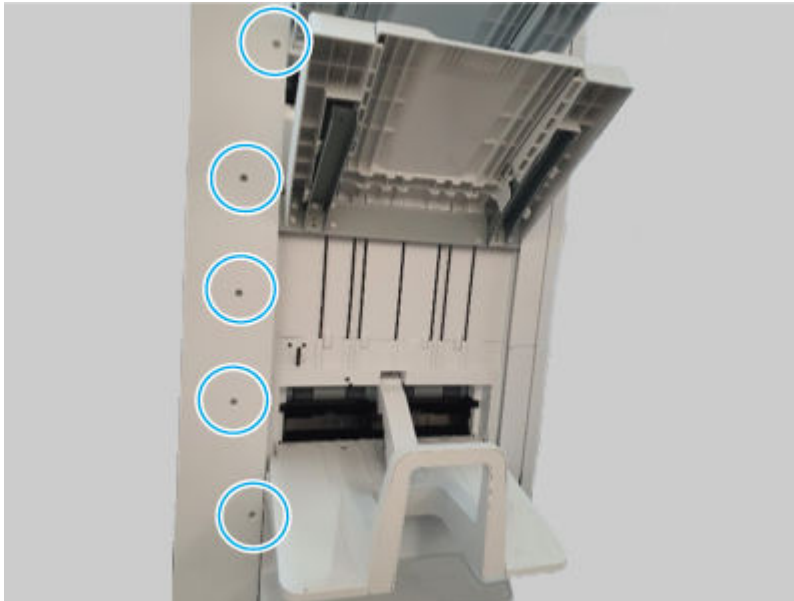


3. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1324 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


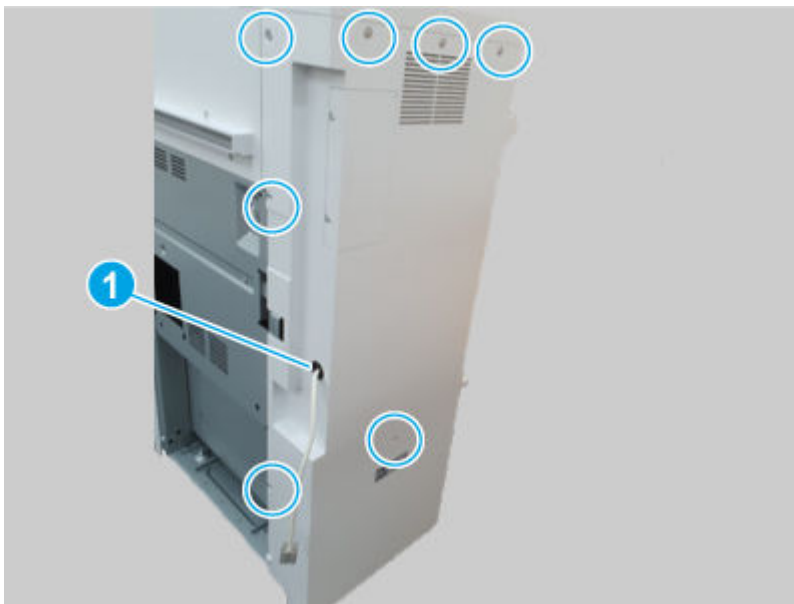
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1325 Remove the cover

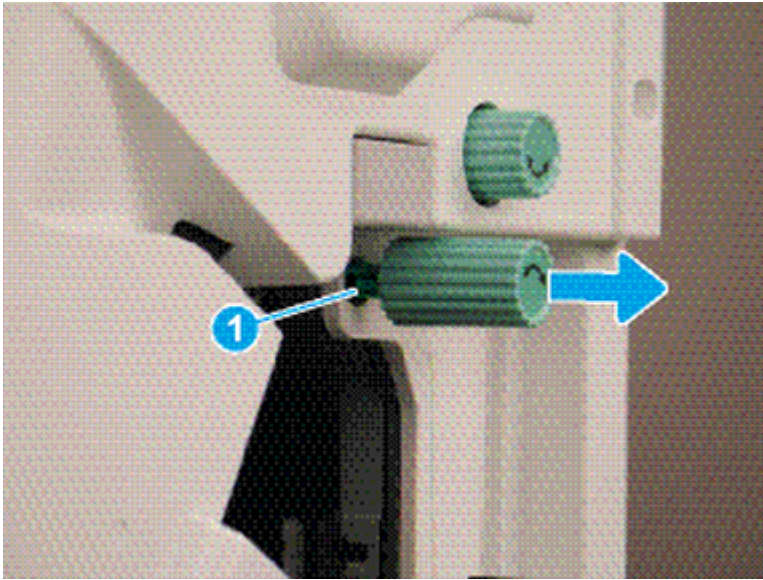


4. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1326 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1327 Remove the cover



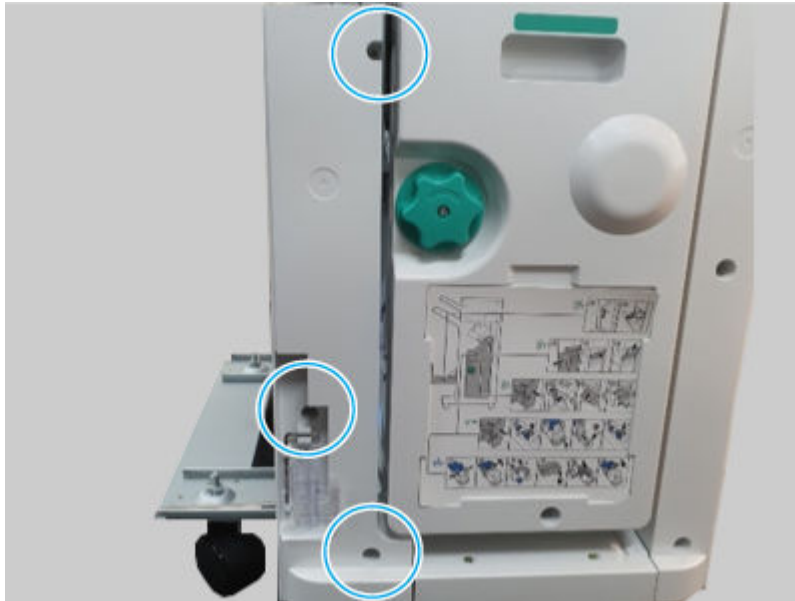
5. Remove the external finisher front lower left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front lower left cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.

2. Remove three screws, and then remove the front lower left cover.

Figure 6-1328 Remove the cover

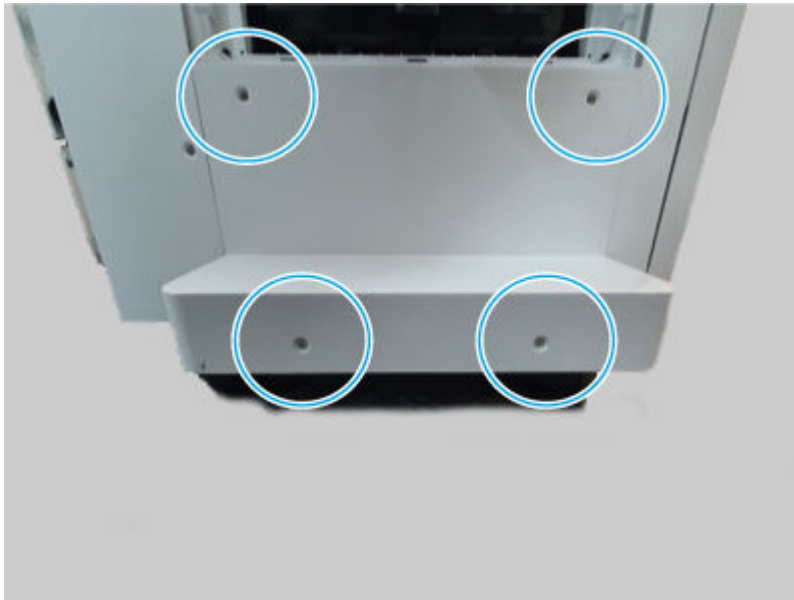


6. Remove the external finisher caster cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher caster cover.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the caster cover.

Figure 6-1329 Remove the cover

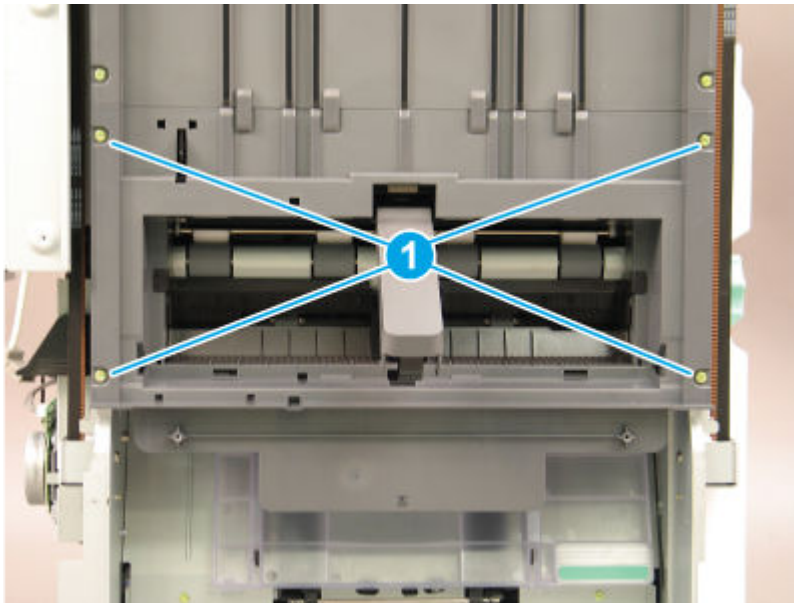


7. Remove the external finisher left lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left lower cover.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-1330 Remove four screws

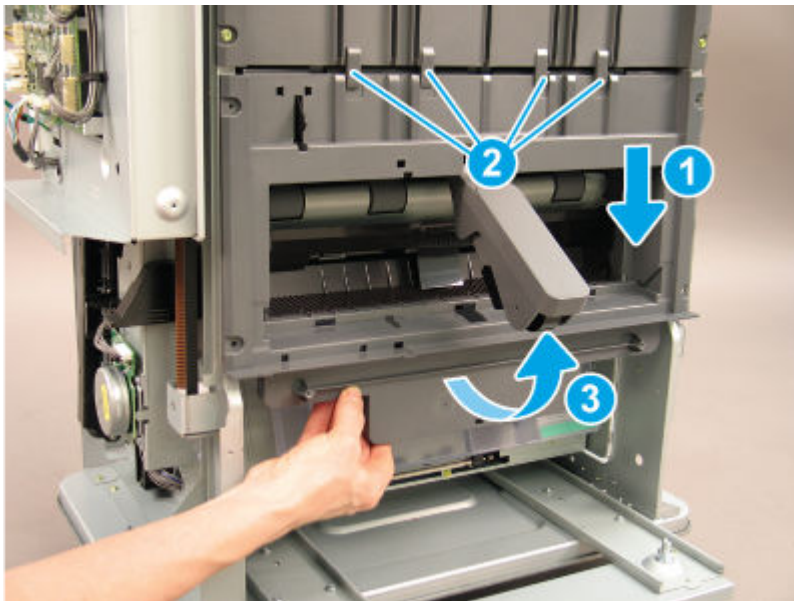


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

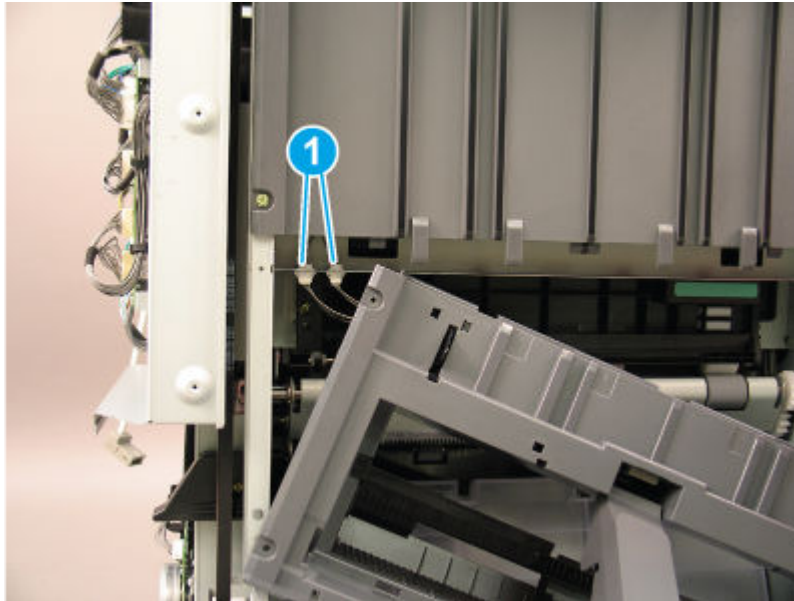
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-1331 Release the cover



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the left lower cover.

Figure 6-1332 Remove the cover



8. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Left upper cover

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher left upper cover.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-207 Part information

Part number	Part description
8GS05-60118	Left upper cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

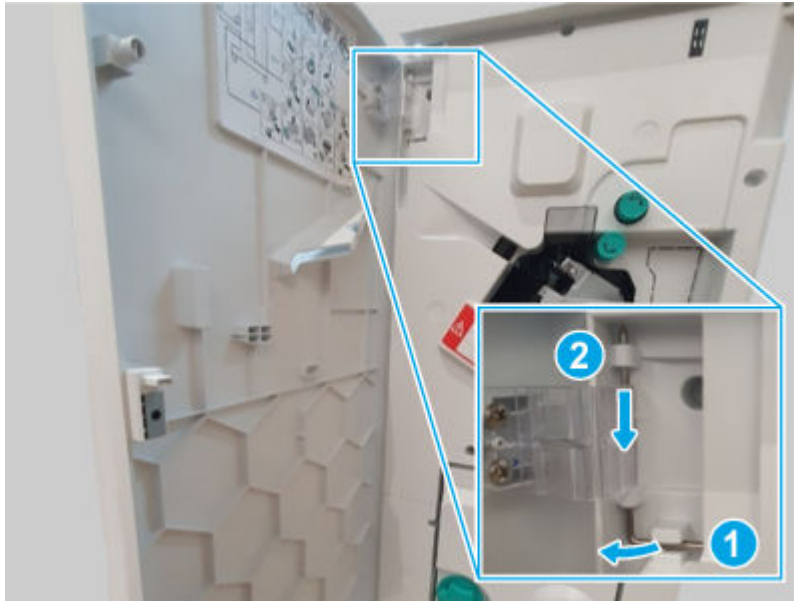
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

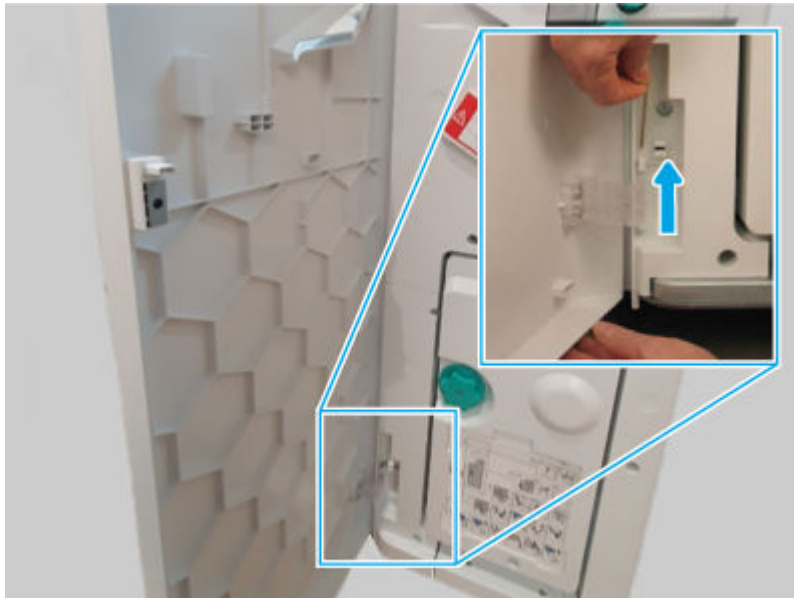
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1333 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1334 Remove the door



2. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

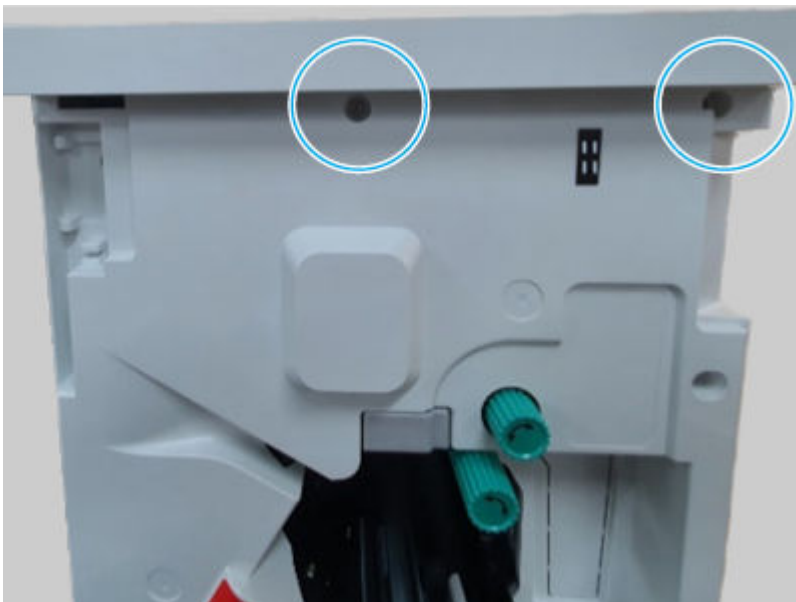
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1335 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1336 Remove the cover

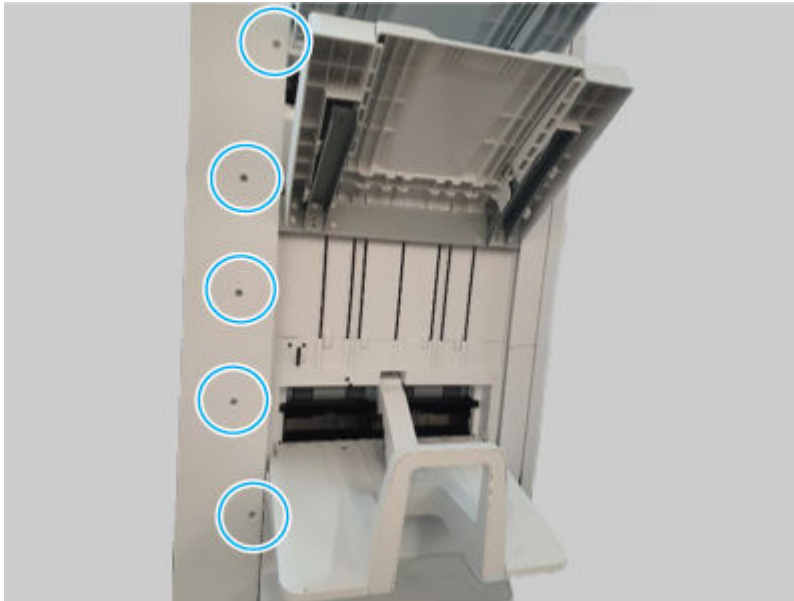


3. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1337 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


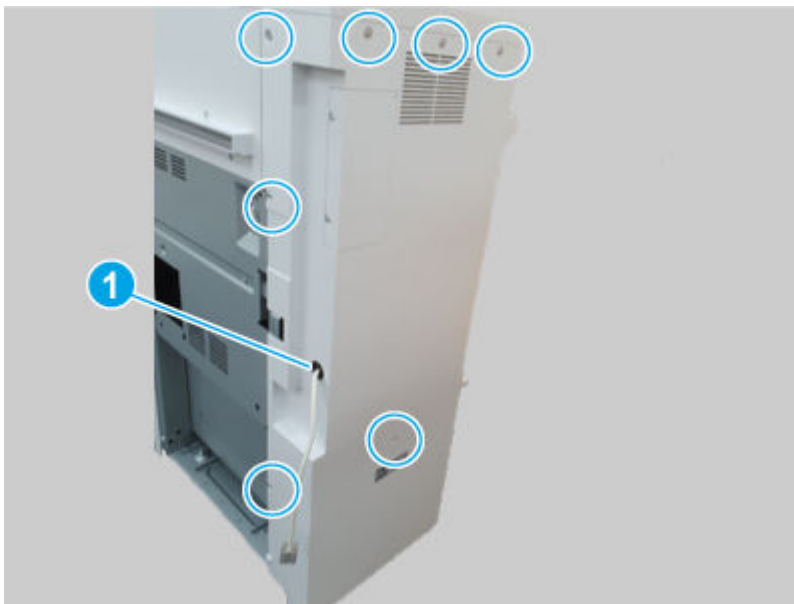
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1338 Remove the cover

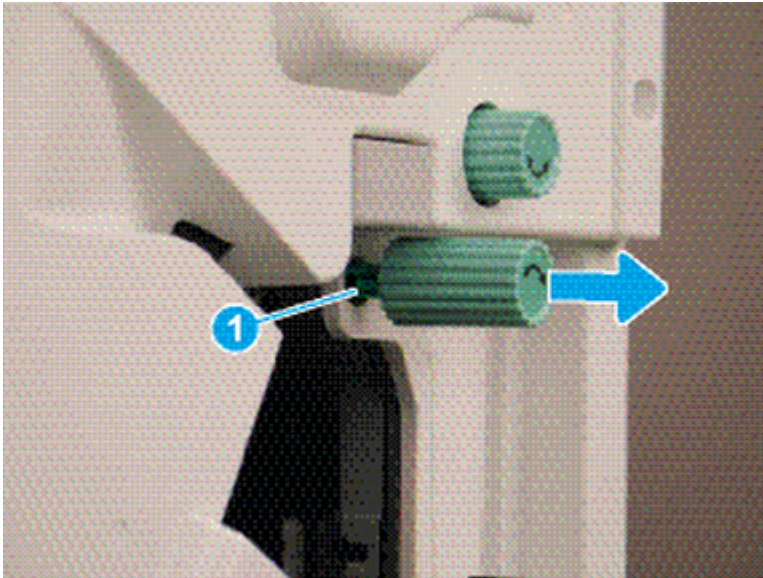


4. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1339 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1340 Remove the cover



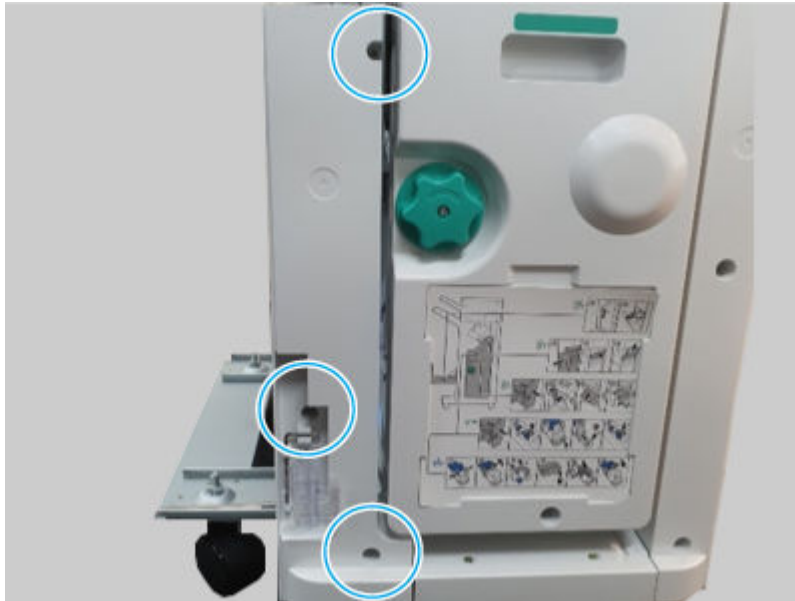
5. Remove the external finisher front lower left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front lower left cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.

2. Remove three screws, and then remove the front lower left cover.

Figure 6-1341 Remove the cover

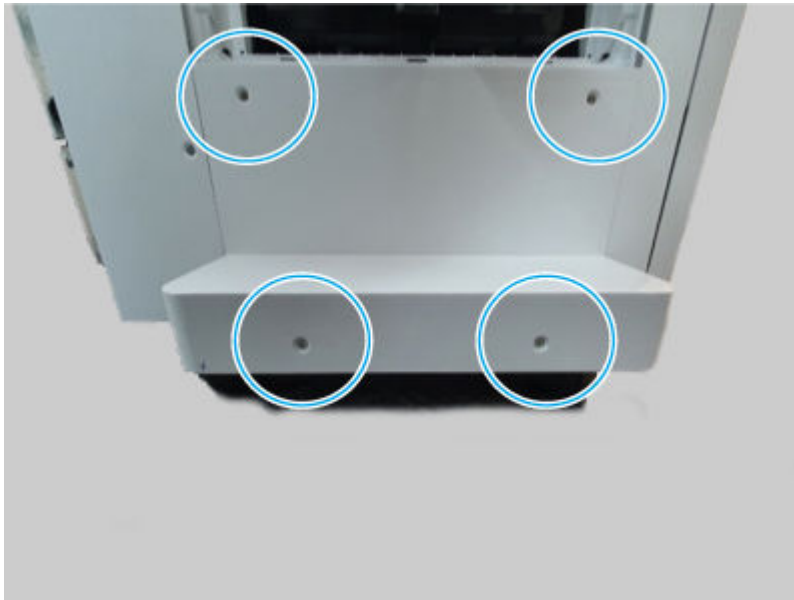


6. Remove the external finisher caster cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher caster cover.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the caster cover.

Figure 6-1342 Remove the cover

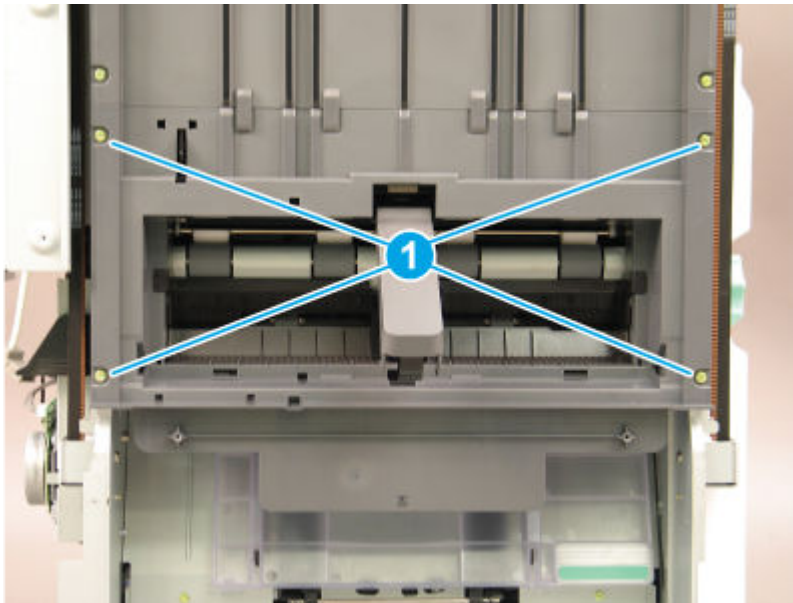


7. Remove the external finisher left lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left lower cover.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-1343 Remove four screws

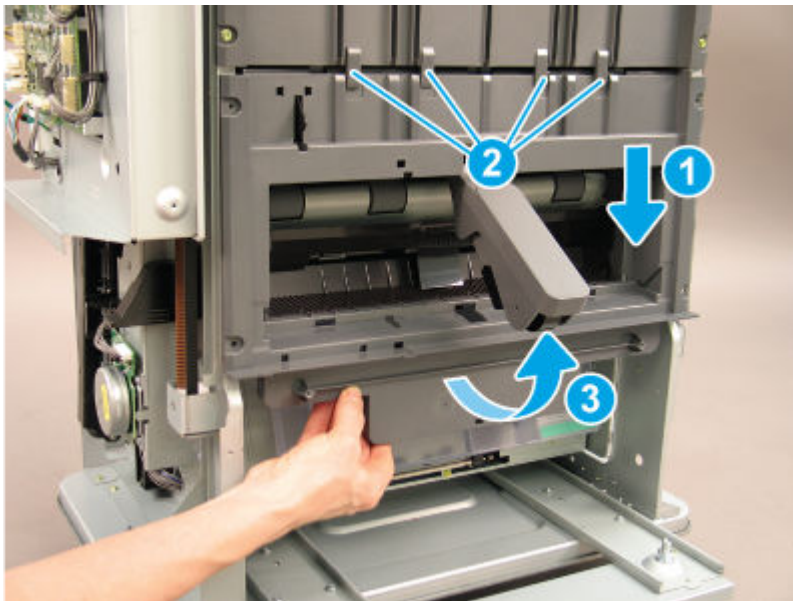


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

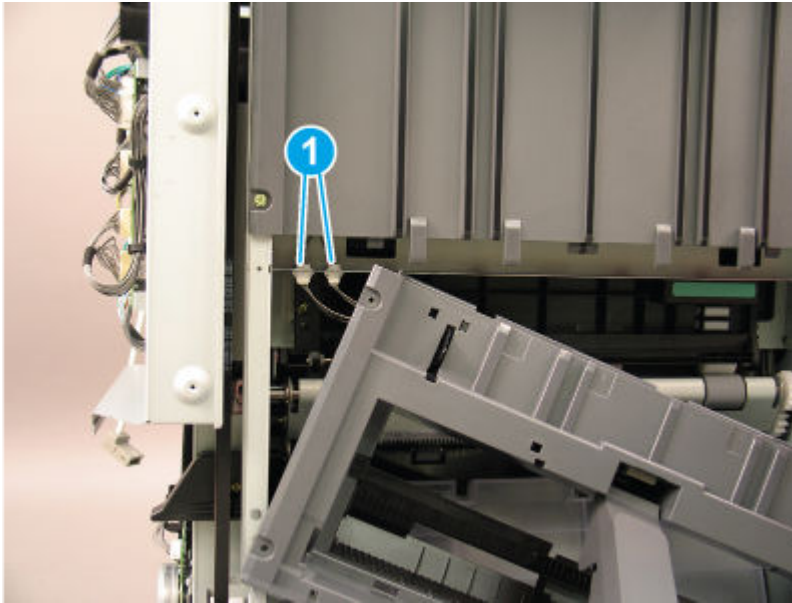
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-1344 Release the cover



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the left lower cover.

Figure 6-1345 Remove the cover

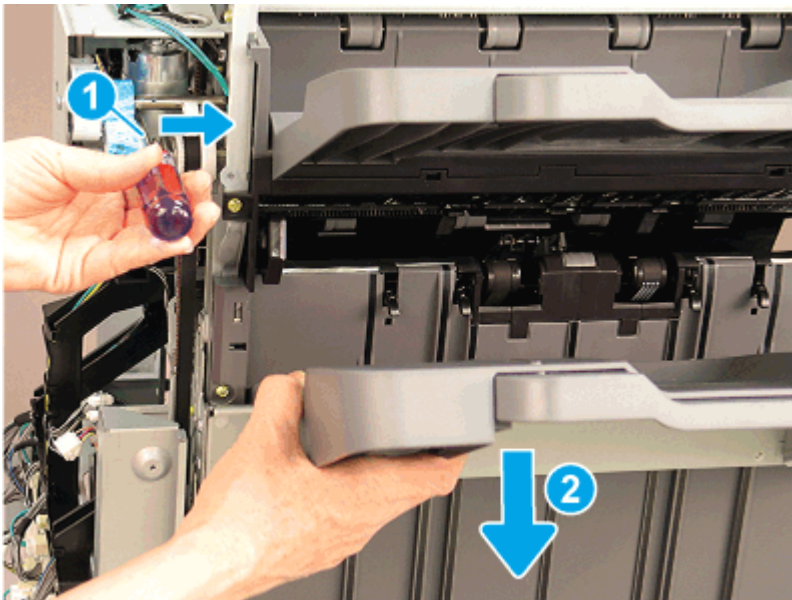


8. Remove the external finisher left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left upper cover.

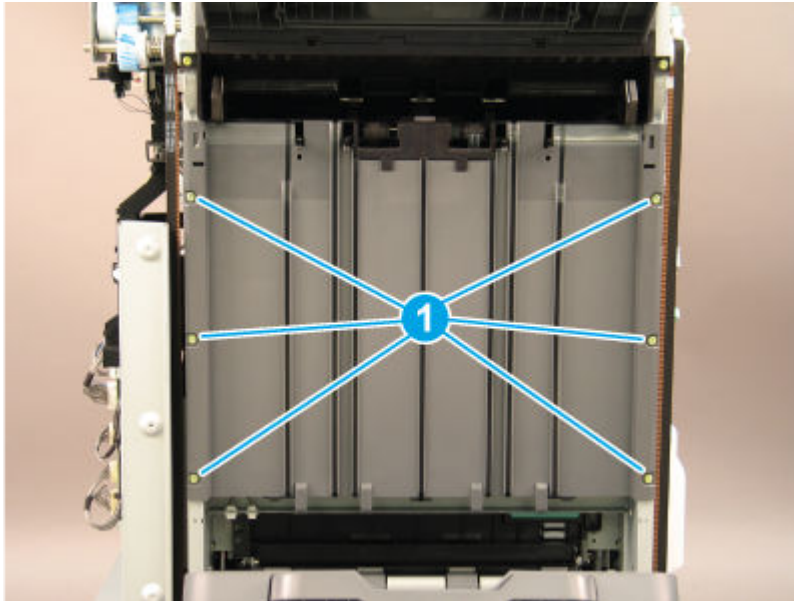
1. Bring the main output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 6-1346 Lower the tray



2. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-1347 Remove six screws

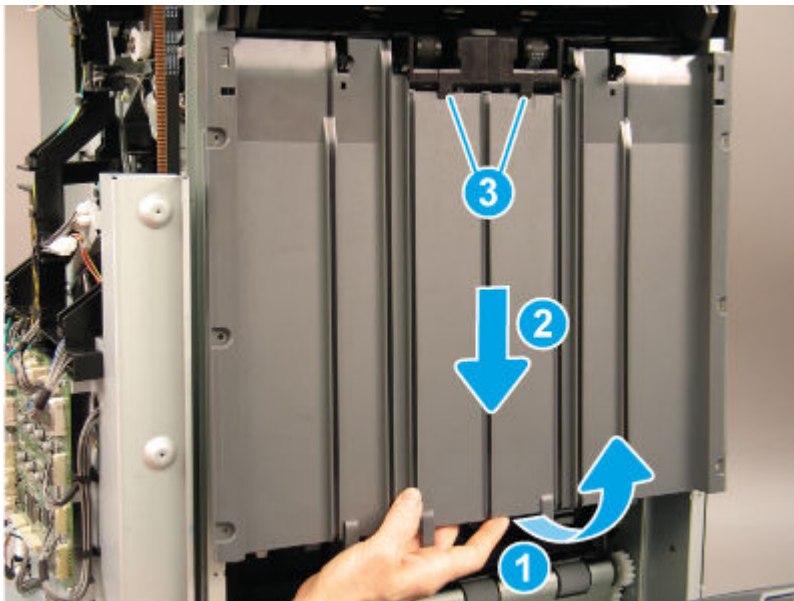


3. Rotate the lower edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

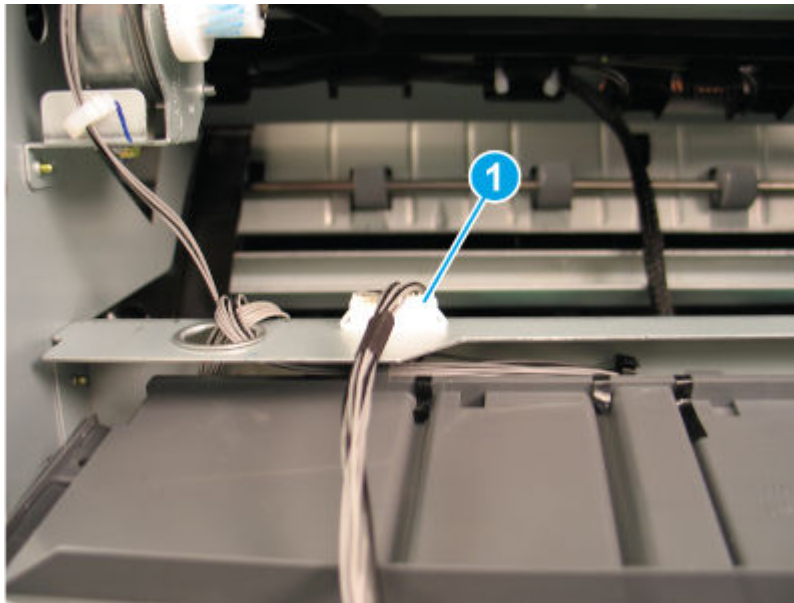
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-1348 Release the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the left upper cover.

Figure 6-1349 Remove the cover



9. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Booklet output tray

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher booklet output tray.

Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-208 Part information

Part number	Part description
8GS05-60126	Booklet output tray

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

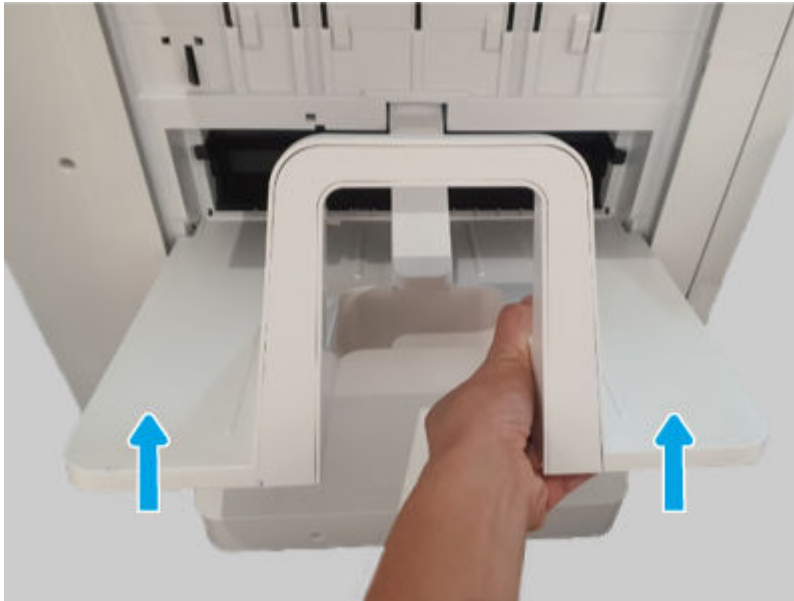
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher booklet output tray

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet output tray.

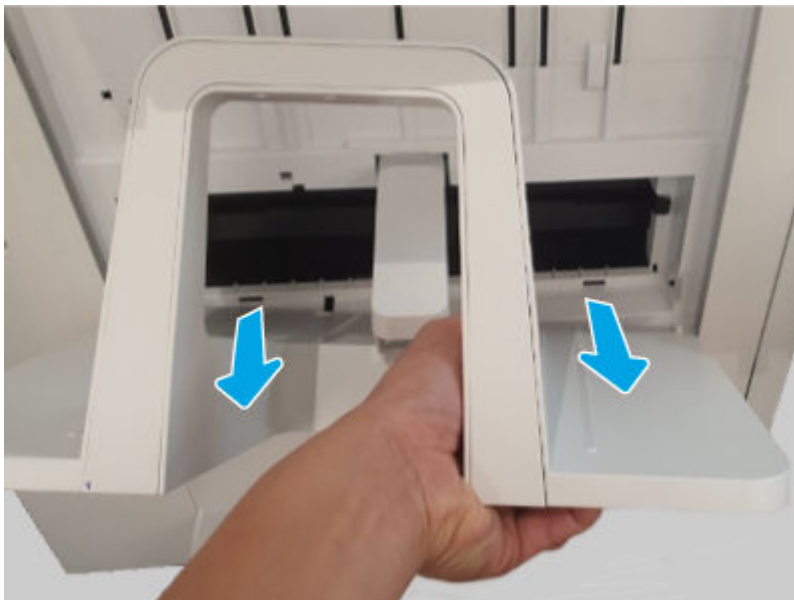
1. Rotate the tray up.

Figure 6-1350 Rotate the tray



2. Pull the booklet output tray out and away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1351 Remove the tray



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Top output tray

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher top output tray.


Mean time to repair: 1 minute

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-209 Part Information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-40027	Top output tray

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

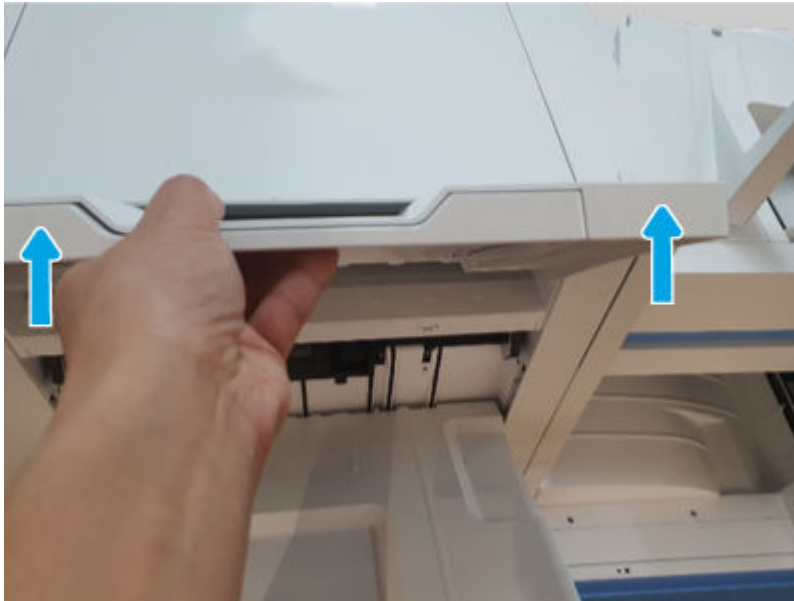
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher top output tray

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top output tray.

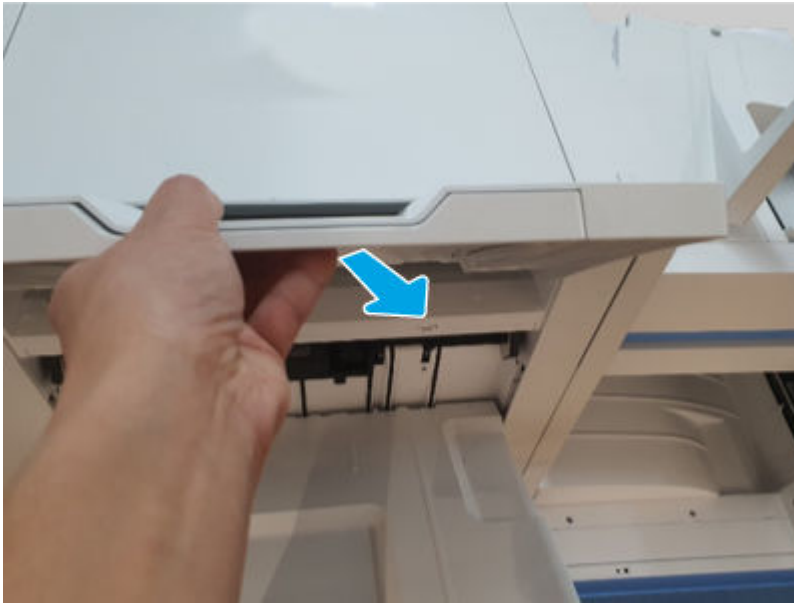
1. Rotate the tray up.

Figure 6-1352 Rotate the tray



2. Pull the top output tray out and away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1353 Remove the tray



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Main output tray

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher main output tray.

Mean time to repair: 3 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-210 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-40028	Main output tray

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

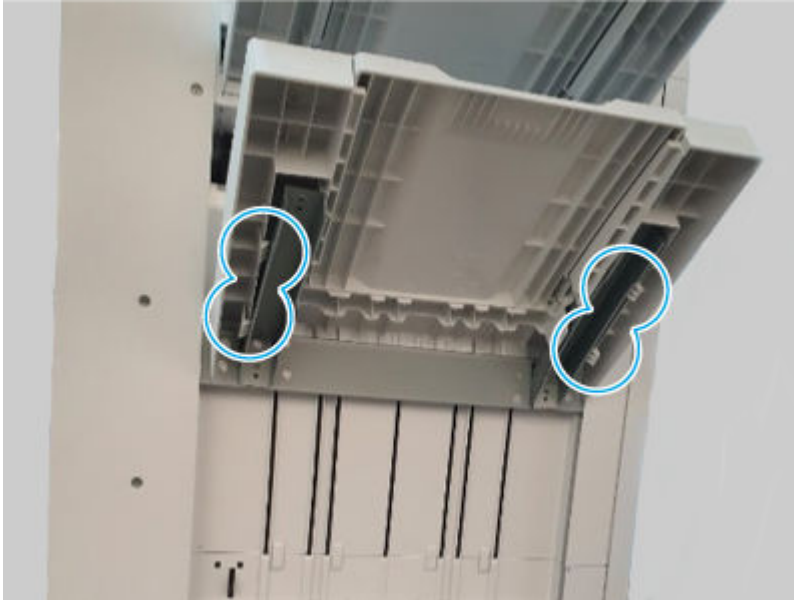
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher main output tray

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher main output tray.

- Release four tabs, and then remove the main output tray.

Figure 6-1354 Remove the tray



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Rear cover

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher rear cover.

Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-211 Part information

Part number	Part description
8GS05-60118	Rear cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

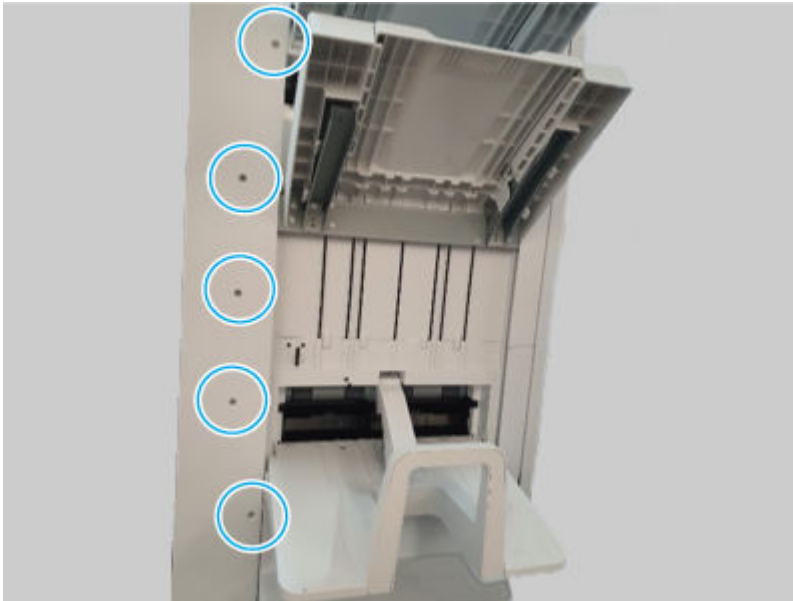
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1355 Remove five screws

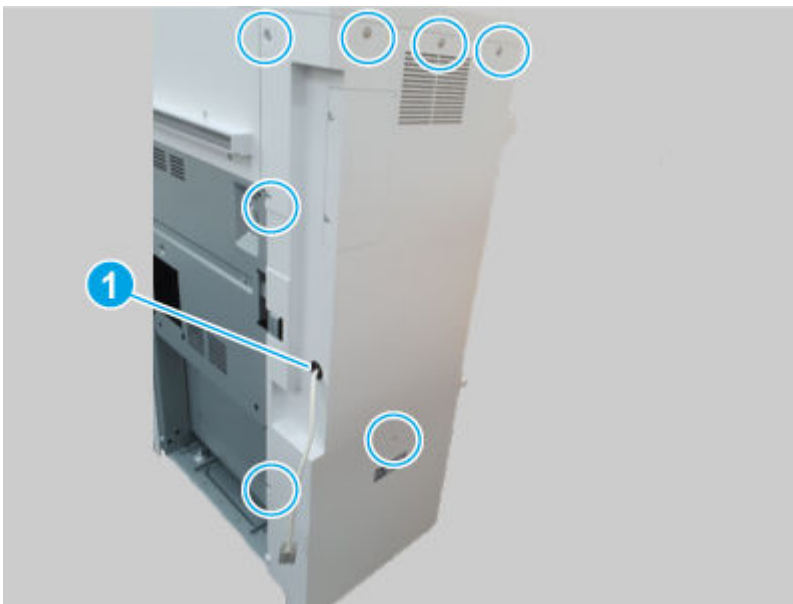


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1356 Remove the cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Front cover

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher front cover.


Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-212 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-40019	Front cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

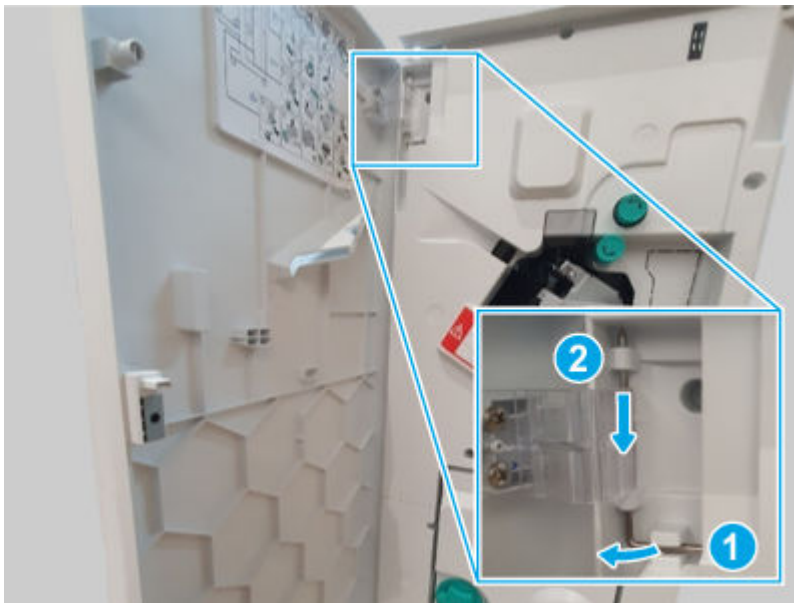
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

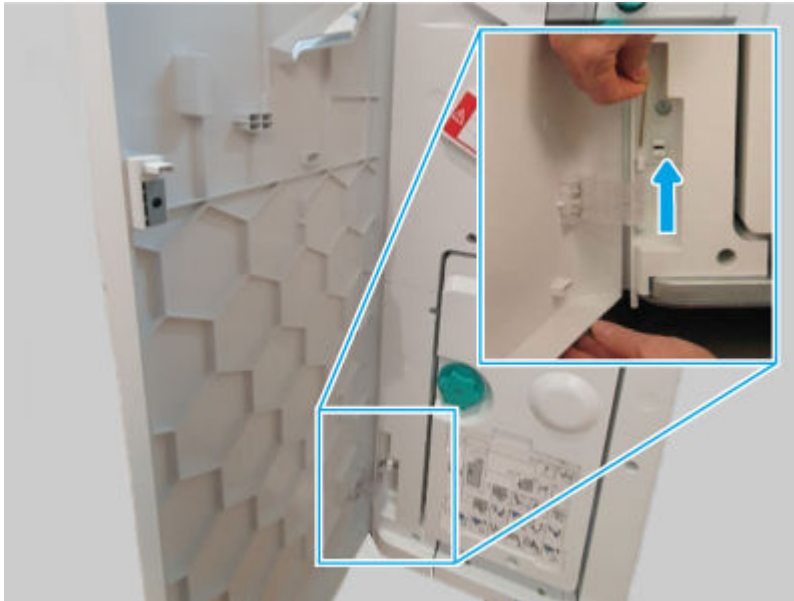
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1357 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1358 Remove the door



Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1359 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1360 Remove the cover

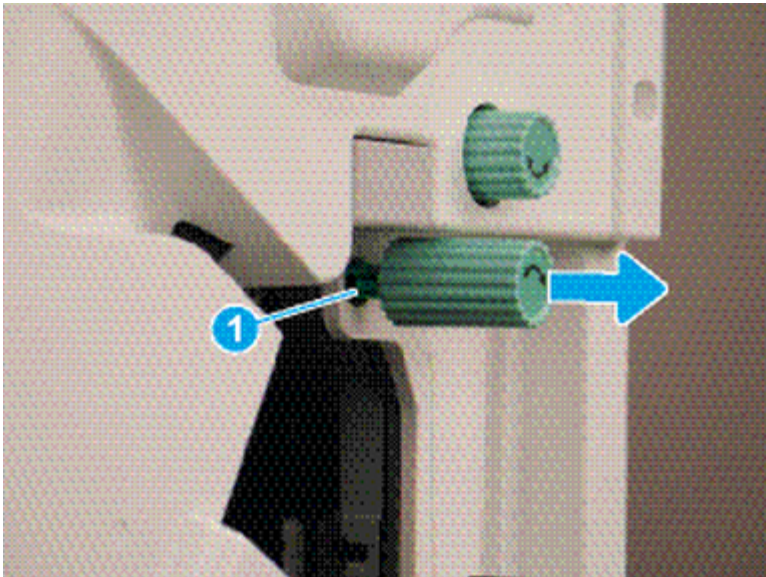


Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1361 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1362 Remove the cover



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Punch cover

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher punch cover.

Mean time to repair: 1 minute

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-213 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-40030	Punch cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

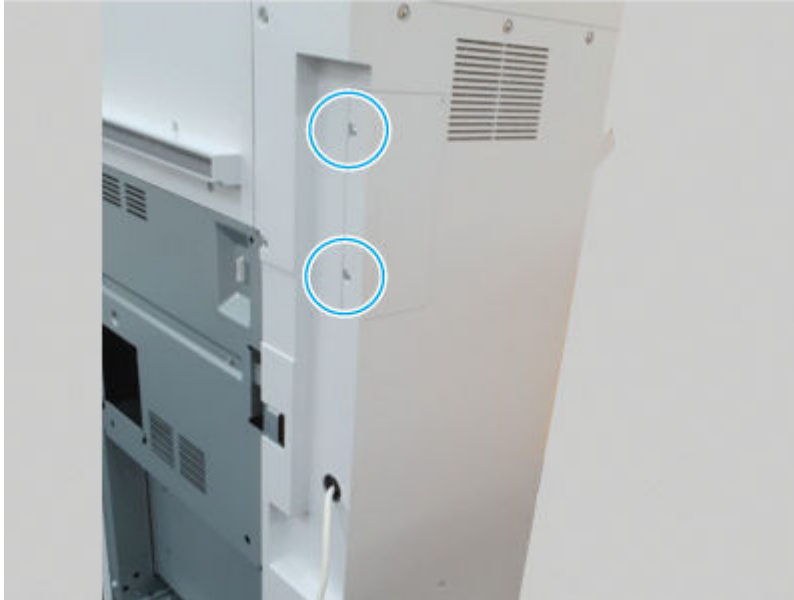
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then remove the punch cover.


Figure 6-1363 Remove the cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Top cover

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher top cover.

Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-214 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-60108	Top cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

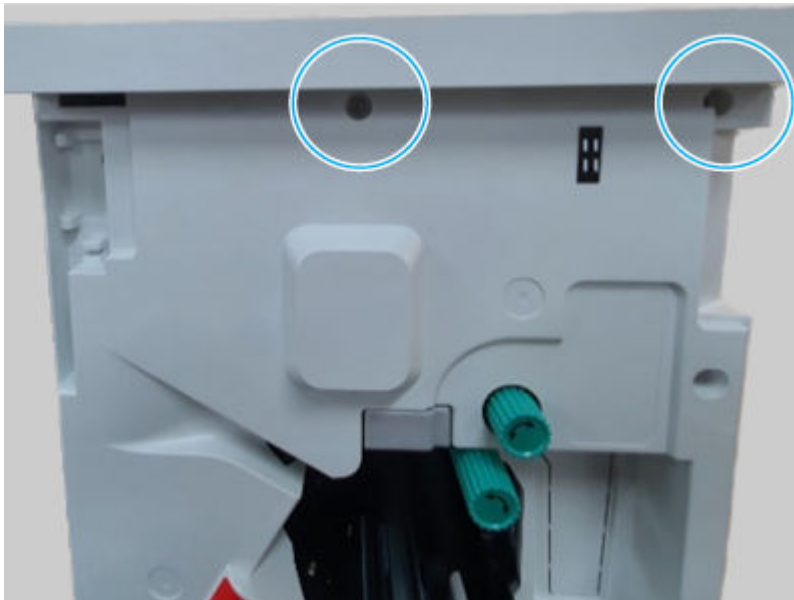
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1364 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1365 Remove the cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Top door

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher top door.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-215 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-60107	Top door

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

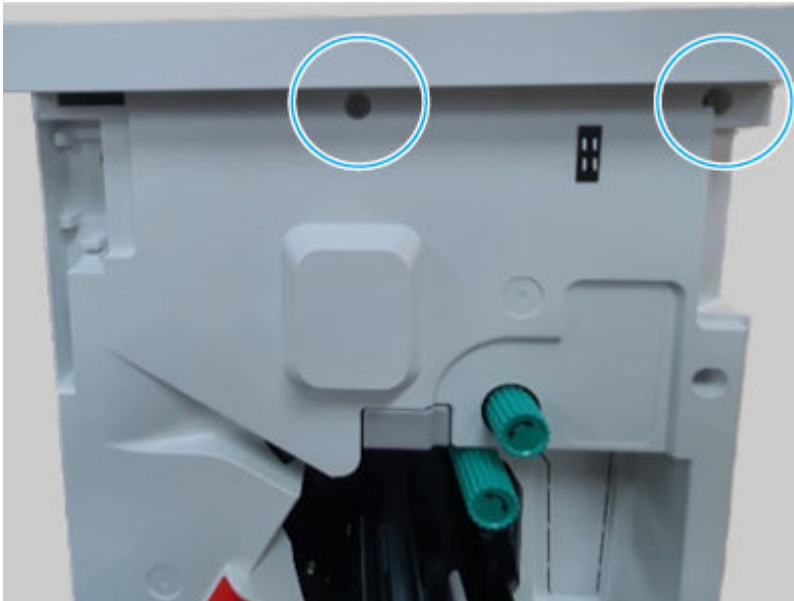
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1366 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1367 Remove the cover



2. Remove the external finisher top door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top door.

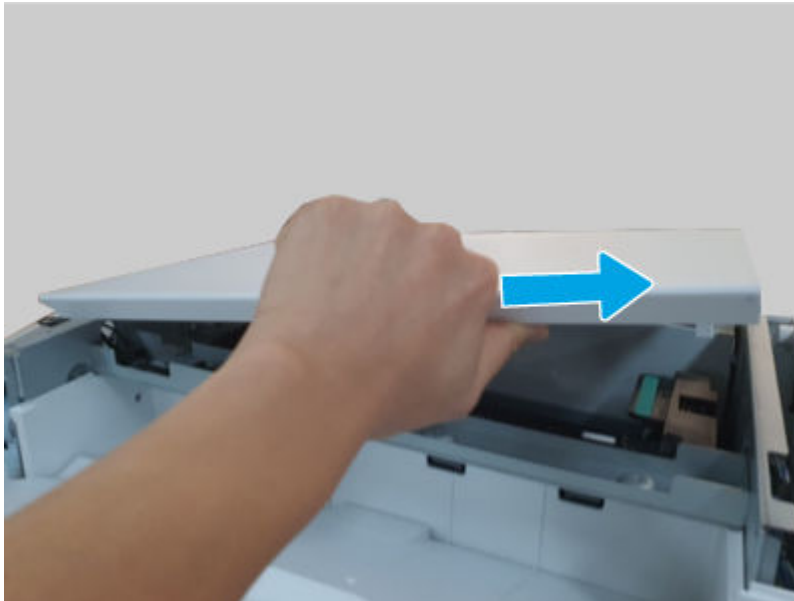
1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.
2. Remove one screw from the bracket.

Figure 6-1368 Remove one screw



3. Slide the top door as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-1369 Remove the door



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Right upper cover

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher right upper cover.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-216 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-60109	Right upper cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

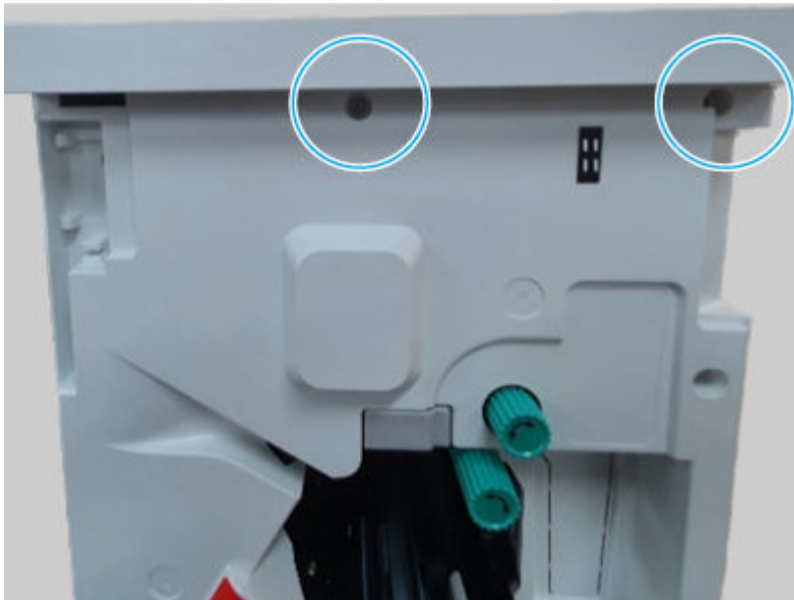
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1370 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1371 Remove the cover



2. Remove the external finisher right upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher right upper cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.

2. Remove six screws, and then remove the right upper cover.

Figure 6-1372 Remove the cover



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Front lower left cover

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher front lower left cover.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-217 Part Information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-40047	Front lower left cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

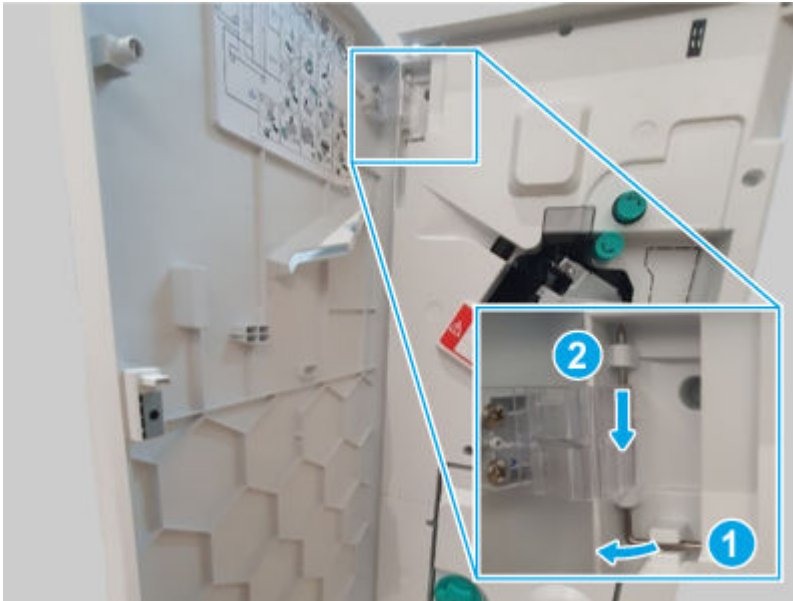
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

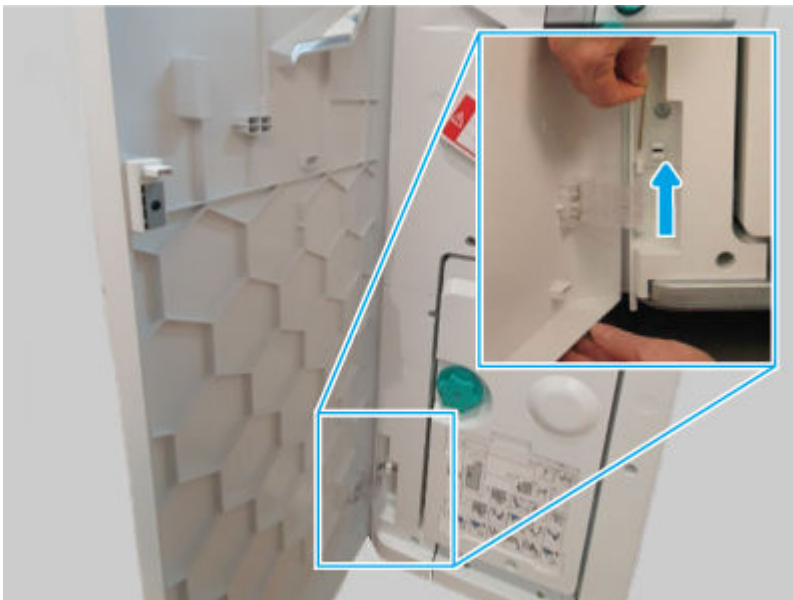
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1373 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1374 Remove the door



2. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

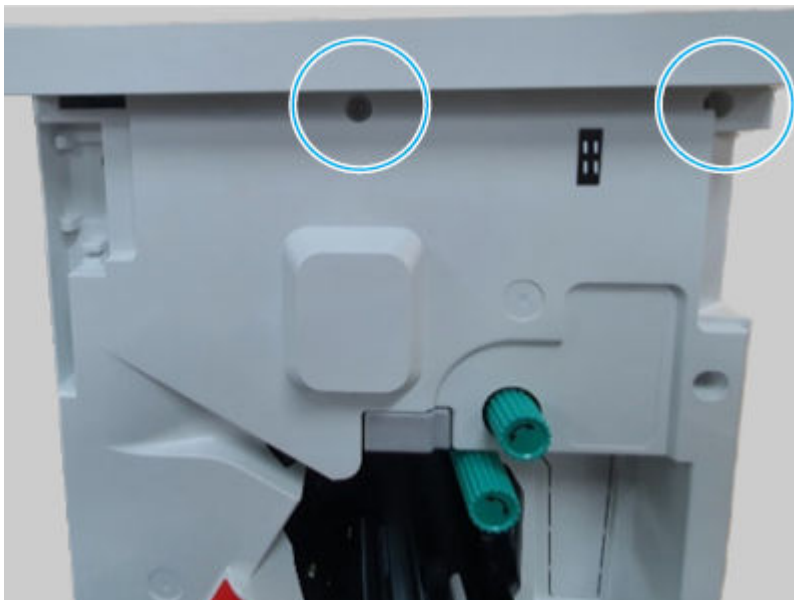
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1375 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1376 Remove the cover

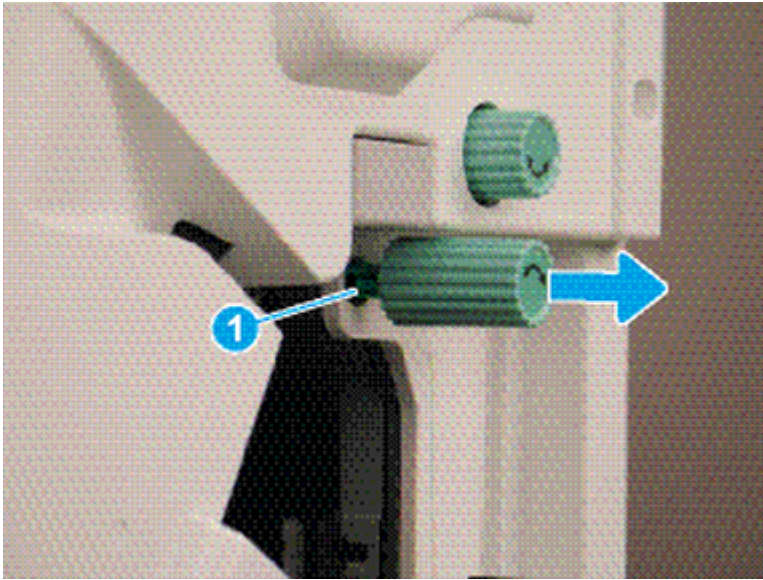


3. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1377 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1378 Remove the cover



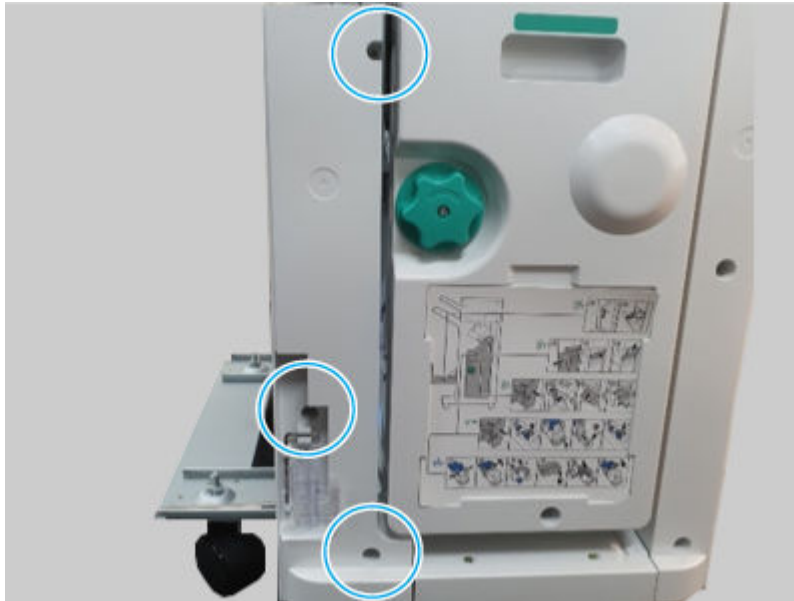
4. Remove the external finisher front lower left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front lower left cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.

2. Remove three screws, and then remove the front lower left cover.

Figure 6-1379 Remove the cover



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Front lower right cover

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher front lower right cover.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-218 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-40048	Front lower right cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher front lower right cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front lower right cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.

2. Remove three screws, and then remove the front lower right cover.

Figure 6-1380 Remove the cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Shaft hinge - door

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher shaft hinge - door.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-219 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-60107	Shaft hinge - door

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher shaft hinge - door

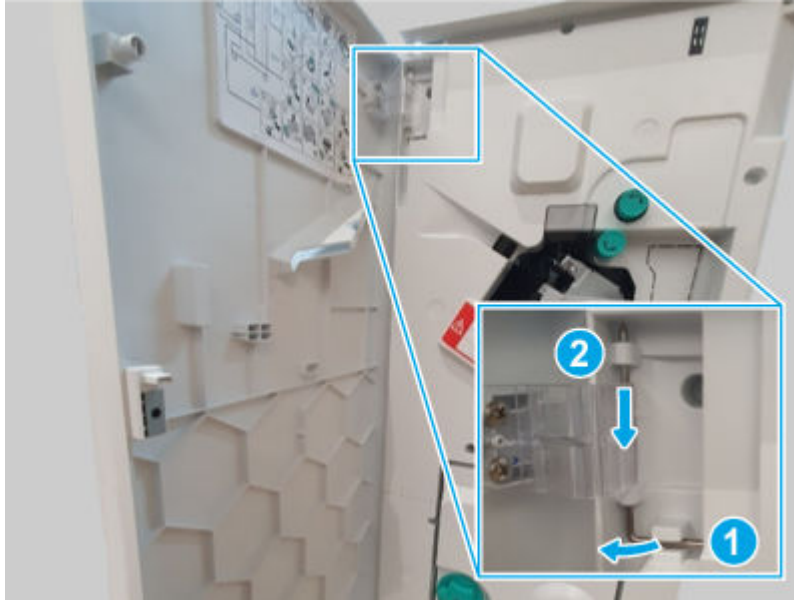
Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher shaft hinge - door.

⚠ CAUTION: If both the upper and lower shaft hinges are removed the front door will not be attached to the finisher.

1. **Upper shaft hinge - door removal:** Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

⚠ CAUTION: When the upper shaft hinge is removed the top of the front door is not attached to the finisher. To avoid damage to the door, **do not** let the top of the door separate from the finisher.

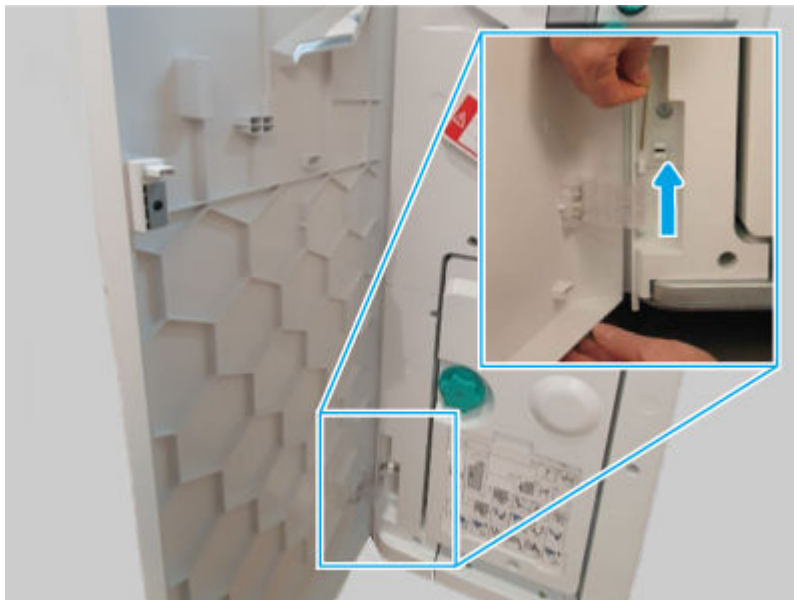
Figure 6-1381 Remove the hinge pin



2. **Lower shaft hinge - door removal** Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

⚠ **CAUTION:** When the lower shaft hinge is removed the bottom of the front door is not attached to the finisher. To avoid damage to the door, **do not** let the bottom of the door separate from the finisher.

Figure 6-1382 Remove the hinge pin



2. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Caster

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher caster.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher form the printer.


Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-220 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC61-07452A	Caster

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

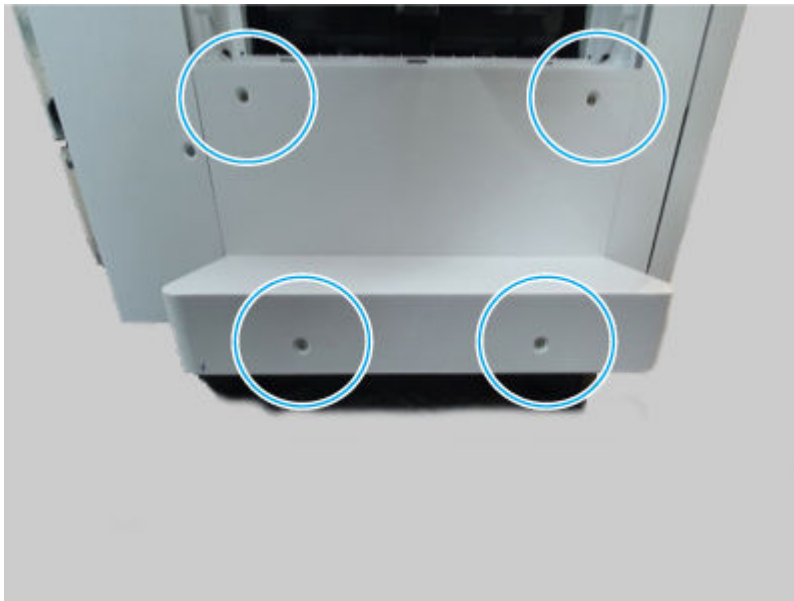
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher caster cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher caster cover.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the caster cover.

Figure 6-1383 Remove the cover



2. Remove the external finisher caster

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher caster.

⚠ WARNING! The external finisher is not stable when one or more casters are removed and can easily tip over. To avoid personal injury or damage to the finisher, make sure to fully support the finisher when removing a caster.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.
2. Remove one fix nut.

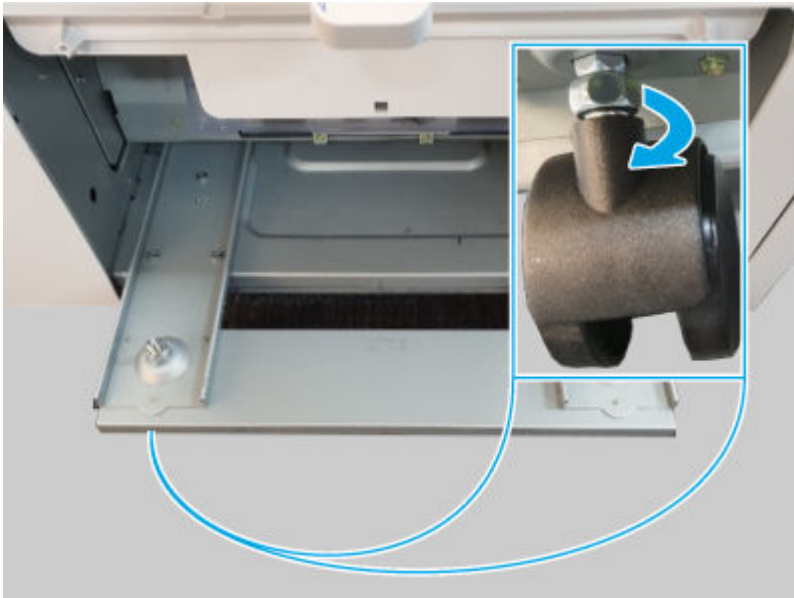
🔧 NOTE: Use a 12mm spanner wrench to remove the nut.

Figure 6-1384 Remove the nut



3. Rotate the caster as shown below to remove it. Repeat these steps for the remaining casters as needed.

Figure 6-1385 Remove the caster



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Caster fix nut

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher caster fix nut.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher form the printer.


Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-221 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC61-07444A	Caster fix nut

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

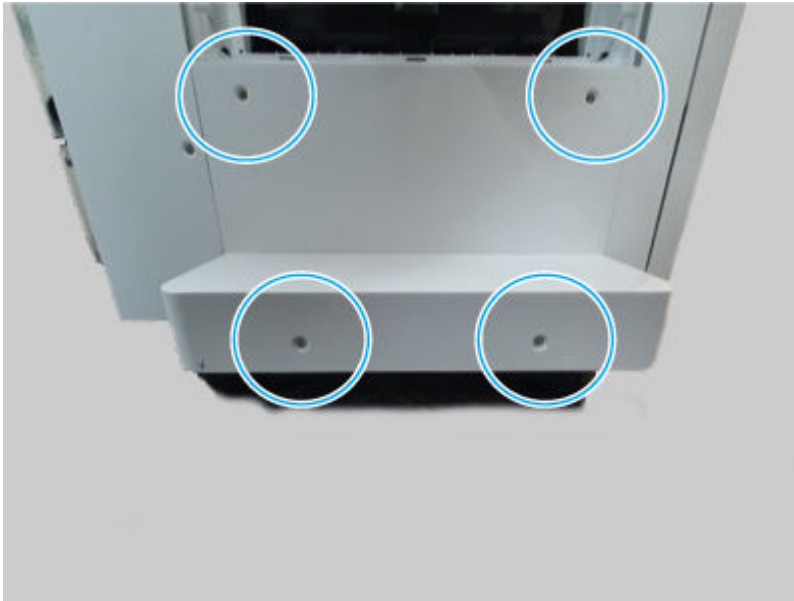
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher caster cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher caster cover.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the caster cover.

Figure 6-1386 Remove the cover



2. Remove the external finisher caster fix nut

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher caster fix nut.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.
2. Remove one fix nut. Repeat these steps for the remaining casters as needed.



NOTE: Use a 12mm spanner wrench to remove the nut.

Figure 6-1387 Remove the nut



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Booklet front cover

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher booklet front cover.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-222 Part Information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01478B	Booklet front cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

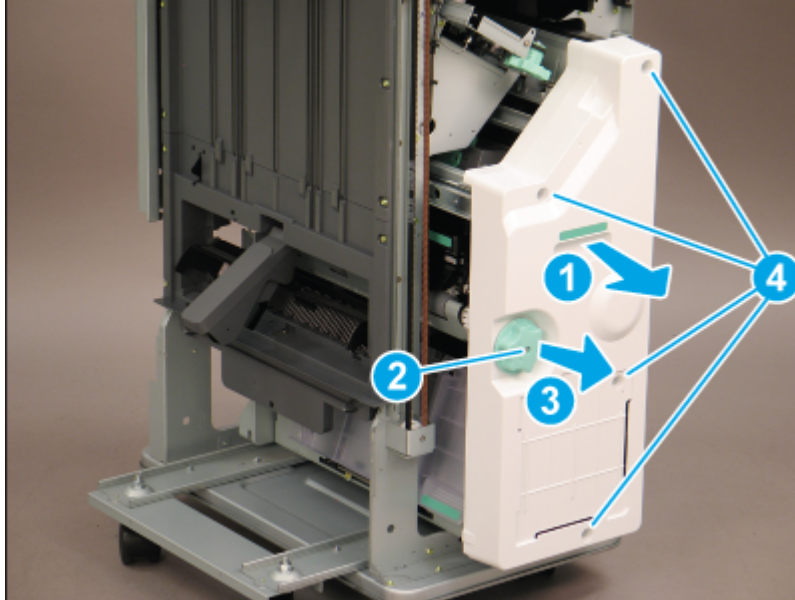
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).
 - b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
 - c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-1388 Remove the cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Bridge unit

Review the external finisher bridge unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Bridge unit

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher bridge unit.

Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-223 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-60110	Bridge unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher bridge unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher bridge unit.

1. Open the finisher front door.

Figure 6-1389 Open the door



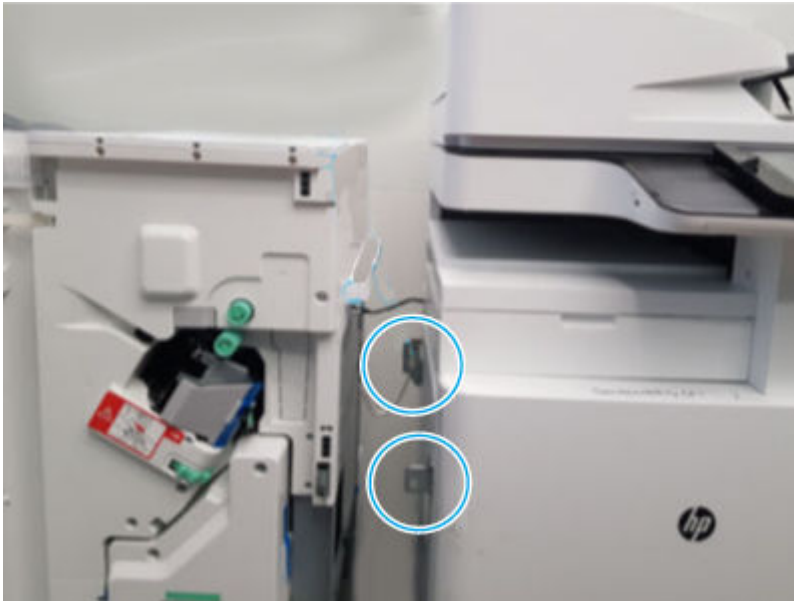
2. Pull the lock straight out of the finisher to release it.

Figure 6-1390 Release the lock



3. Slightly separate the finisher and printer, and then disconnect two connectors.

Figure 6-1391 Disconnect two connectors



4. Slide the bridge unit off of the printer to remove it.

Figure 6-1392 Remove the unit



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Bridge door sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher bridge door sensor.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-224 Part Information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Bridge door sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher bridge unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher bridge unit.

1. Open the finisher front door.

Figure 6-1393 Open the door



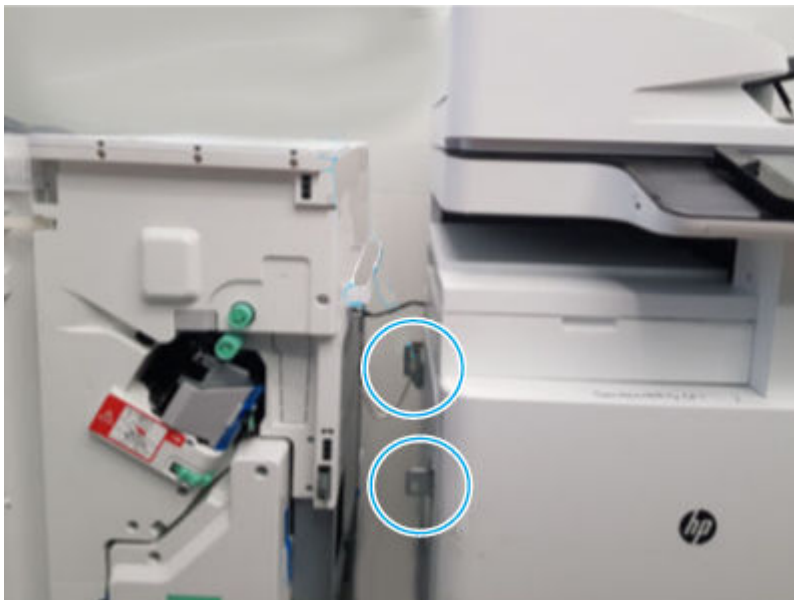
2. Pull the lock straight out of the finisher to release it.

Figure 6-1394 Release the lock



3. Slightly separate the finisher and printer, and then disconnect two connectors.

Figure 6-1395 Disconnect two connectors



4. Slide the bridge unit off of the printer to remove it.

Figure 6-1396 Remove the unit

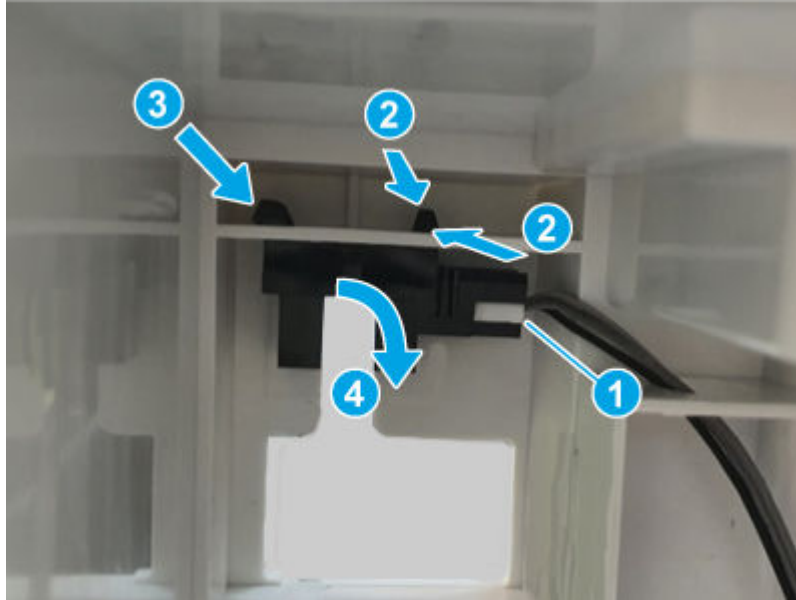


2. Remove the external finisher bridge door sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher bridge door sensor.

- Do the following:
 - Disconnect one connector (callout 1).
 - Release the hooks (callout 2).
 - Slide the sensor assembly as shown below (callout 3).
 - Push the sensor assembly as shown (callout 4) to remove it.

Figure 6-1397 Remove the sensor



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Bridge entrance sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher bridge entrance sensor.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-225 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC32-00020A	Sensor-RP (Bridge entrance sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher bridge unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher bridge unit.

1. Open the finisher front door.

Figure 6-1398 Open the door



2. Pull the lock straight out of the finisher to release it.

Figure 6-1399 Release the lock



3. Slightly separate the finisher and printer, and then disconnect two connectors.

Figure 6-1400 Disconnect two connectors



4. Slide the bridge unit off of the printer to remove it.

Figure 6-1401 Remove the unit



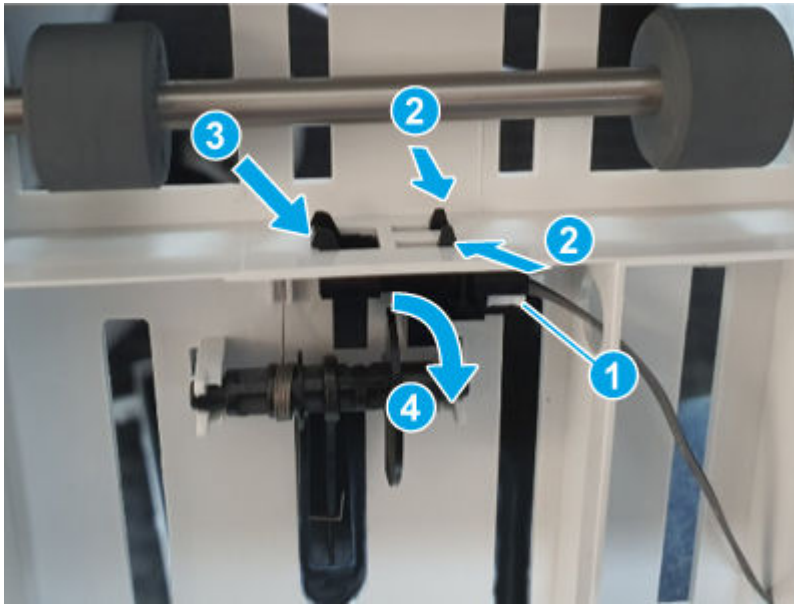
2. Remove the external finisher bridge entrance sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher bridge entrance sensor.

- Do the following:
 - Disconnect one connector (callout 1).
 - Release the hooks (callout 2).

- Slide the sensor assembly as shown below (callout 3).
- Push the sensor assembly as shown (callout 4) to remove it.

Figure 6-1402 Remove the sensor



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Bridge exit sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher bridge exit sensor.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-226 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Bridge exit sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher bridge unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher bridge unit.

1. Open the finisher front door.

Figure 6-1403 Open the door



2. Pull the lock straight out of the finisher to release it.

Figure 6-1404 Release the lock



3. Slightly separate the finisher and printer, and then disconnect two connectors.

Figure 6-1405 Disconnect two connectors



4. Slide the bridge unit off of the printer to remove it.

Figure 6-1406 Remove the unit

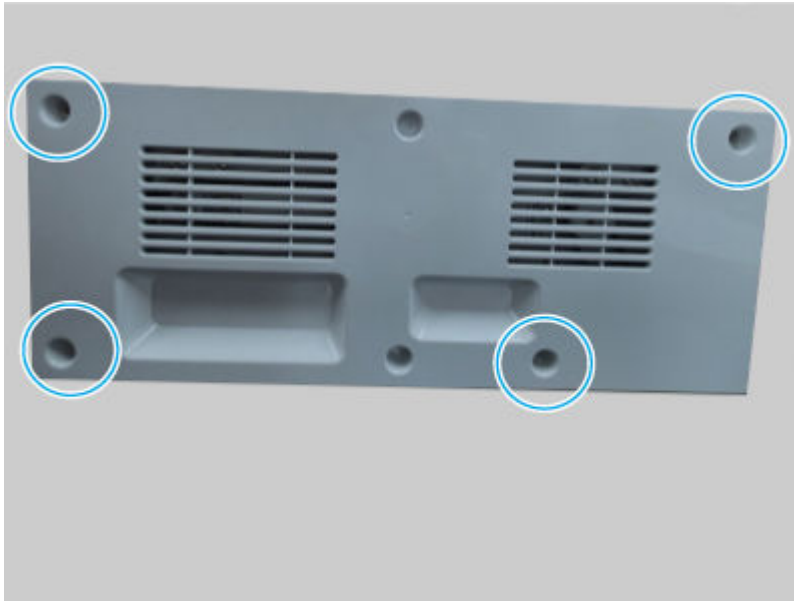


2. Remove the external finisher bridge exit sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher bridge exit sensor.

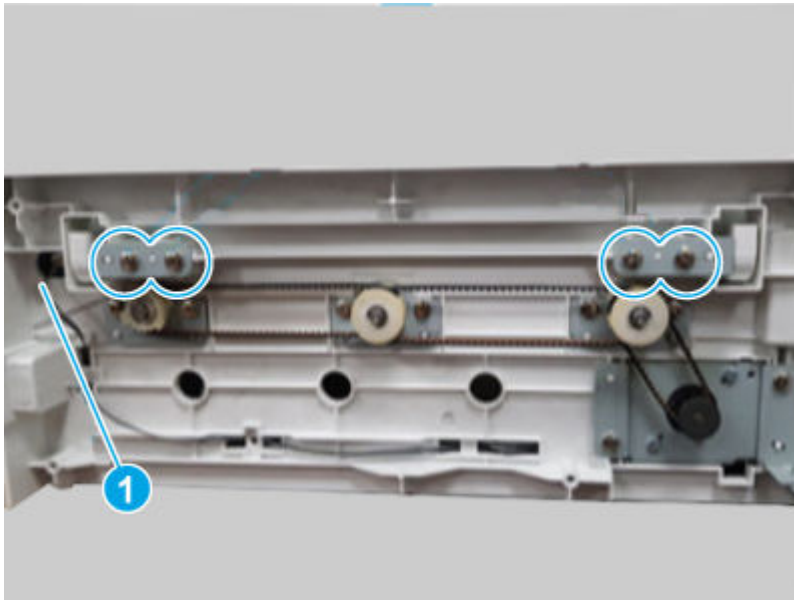
1. Remove four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1407 Remove the cover



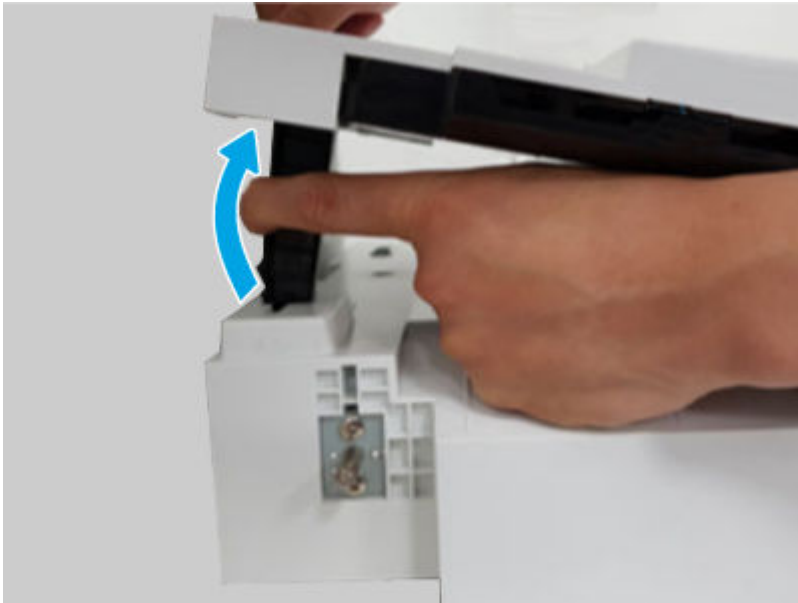
2. Remove four screws, and then remove the sheet-metal holder (callout 1).

Figure 6-1408 Remove the holder



3. Open the bridge door.

Figure 6-1409 Open the door



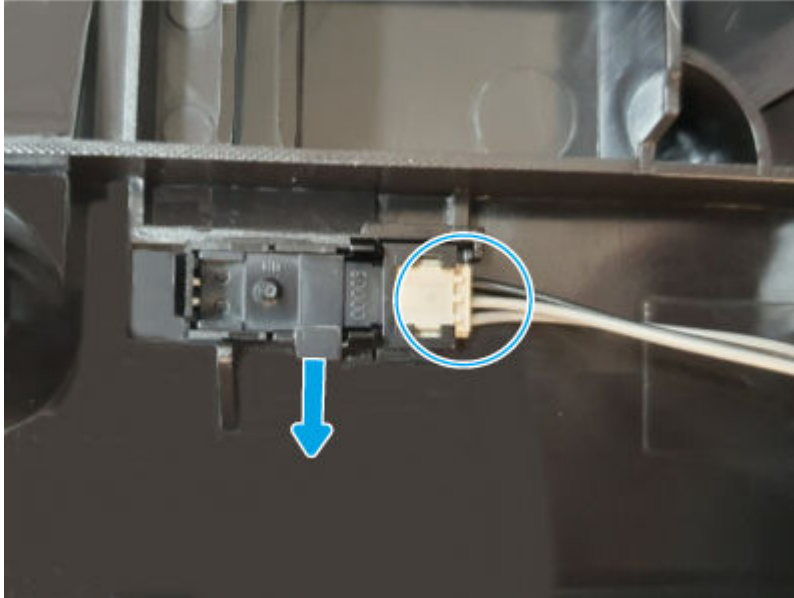
4. Remove thirteen screws, and then remove the inner cover.

Figure 6-1410 Remove the cover



5. Disconnect one connector, release one tab, and then remove the bridge exit sensor.

Figure 6-1411 Remove the sensor



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Bridge motor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher bridge motor.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-227 Part information

Part number	Part description
3SJ19-80501	Bridge motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher bridge unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher bridge unit.

1. Open the finisher front door.

Figure 6-1412 Open the door



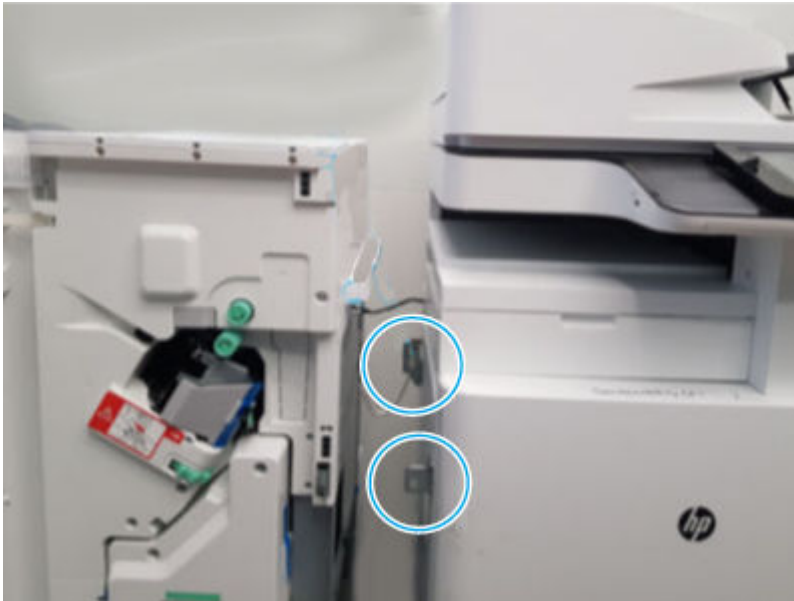
2. Pull the lock straight out of the finisher to release it.

Figure 6-1413 Release the lock



3. Slightly separate the finisher and printer, and then disconnect two connectors.

Figure 6-1414 Disconnect two connectors



4. Slide the bridge unit off of the printer to remove it.

Figure 6-1415 Remove the unit

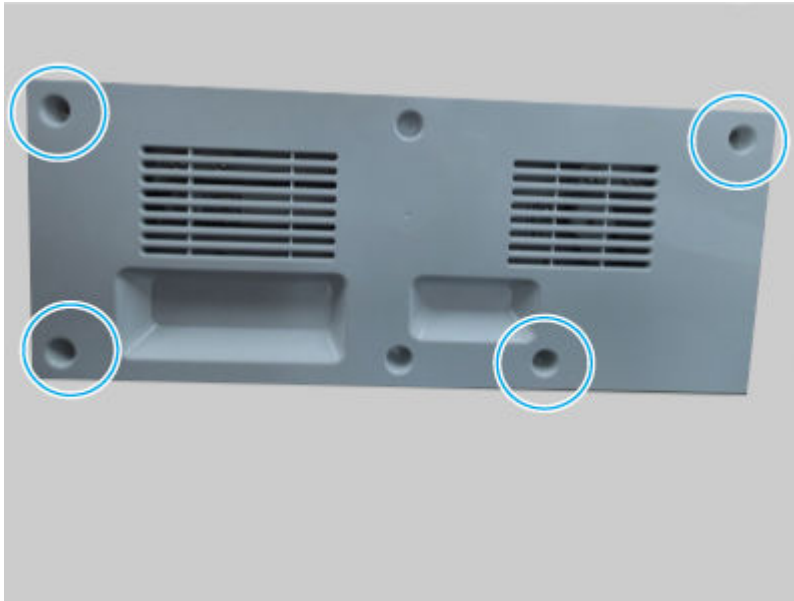


2. Remove the external finisher bridge motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher bridge motor.

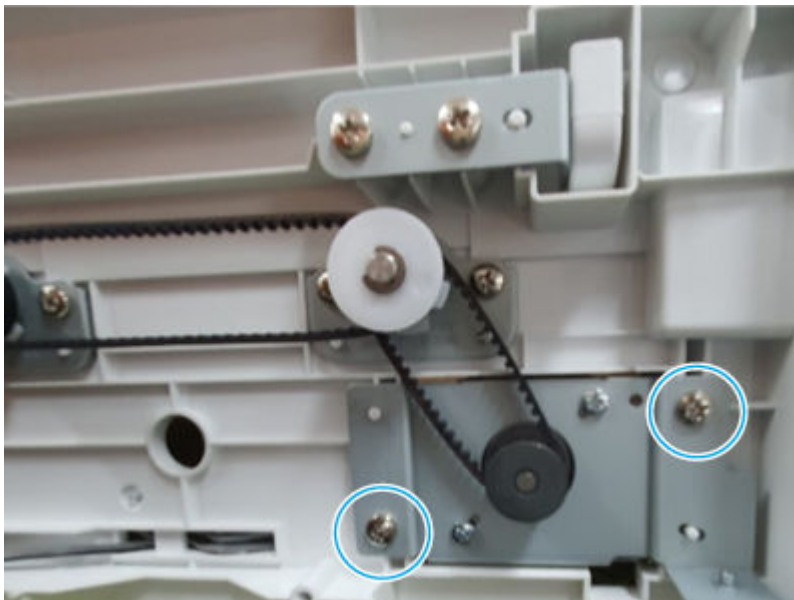
1. Remove four screws, and then remove the rear cover.

Figure 6-1416 Remove the cover



2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1417 Remove two screws



3. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the bridge motor..

Figure 6-1418 Remove the motor



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Entrance unit

Review the external finisher entrance unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Entrance sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher entrance sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-228 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC32-00020A	Sensor-RP (Entrance sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

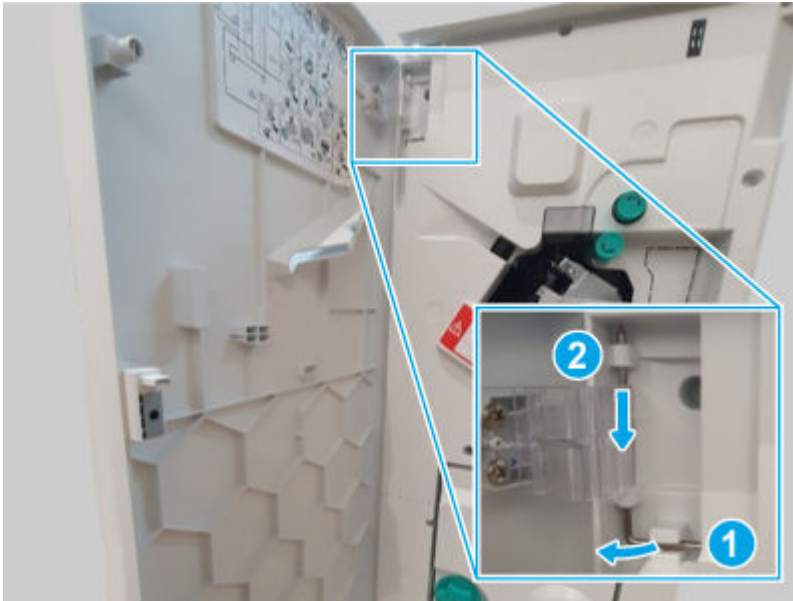
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

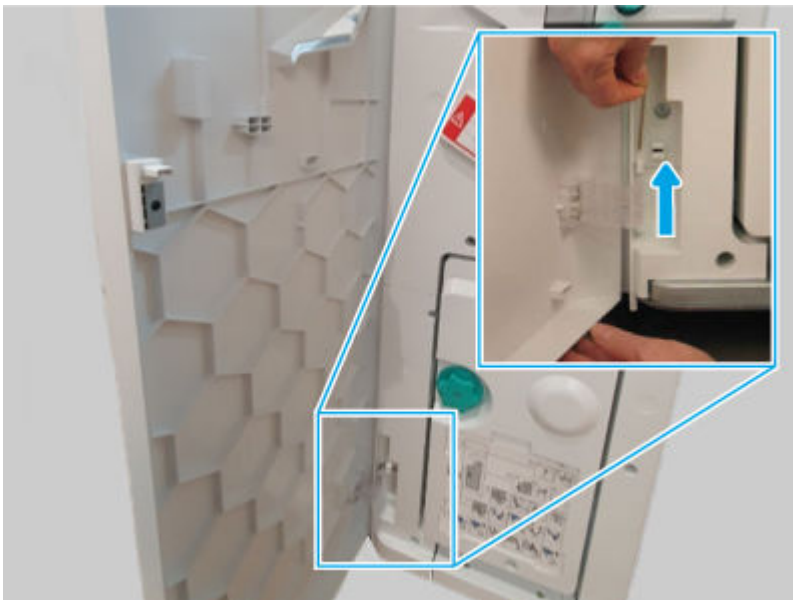
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1419 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1420 Remove the door



2. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

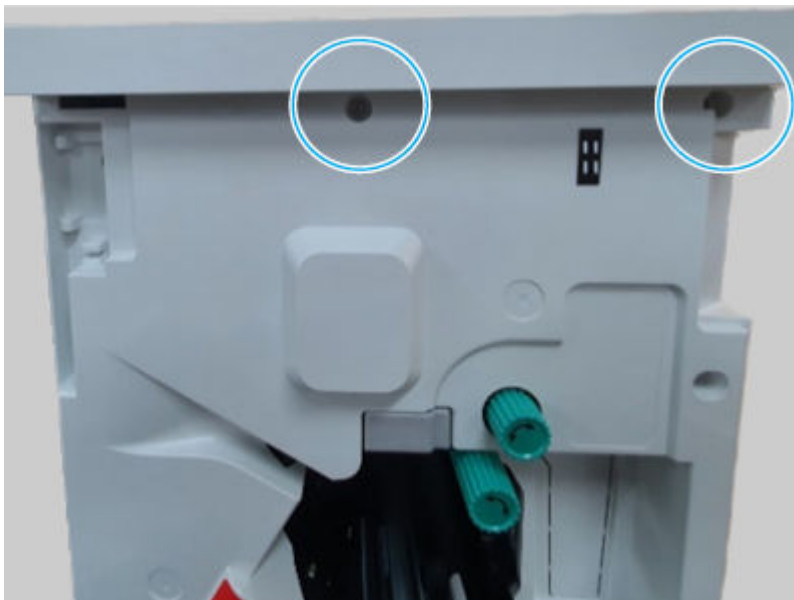
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1421 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1422 Remove the cover

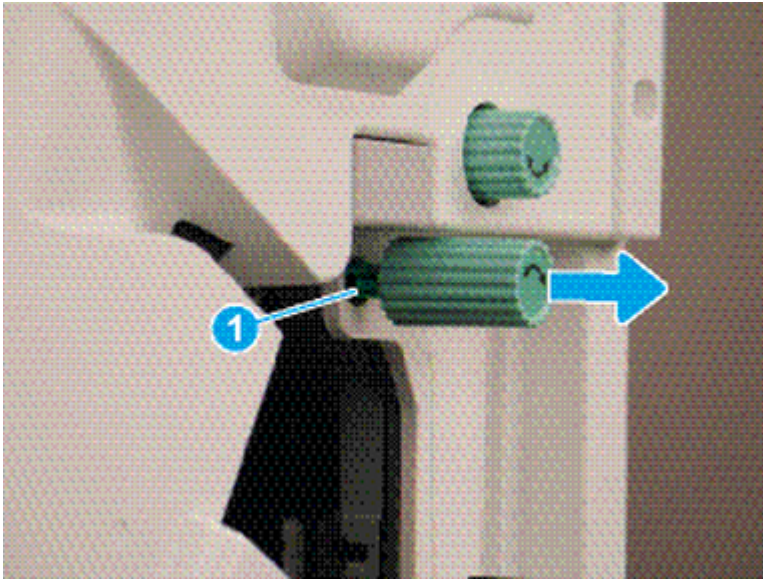


3. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1423 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1424 Remove the cover



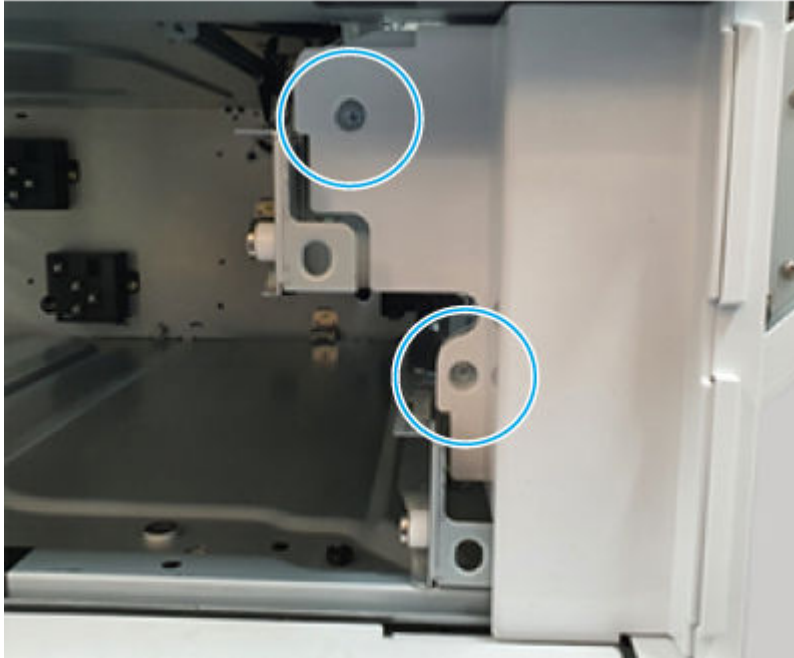
4. Remove the front lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the front lower cover.

1. If Tray 2 and Tray 3 are installed, remove them now.

2. Remove two screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1425 Remove the cover



5. Remove the rear upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear upper cover.

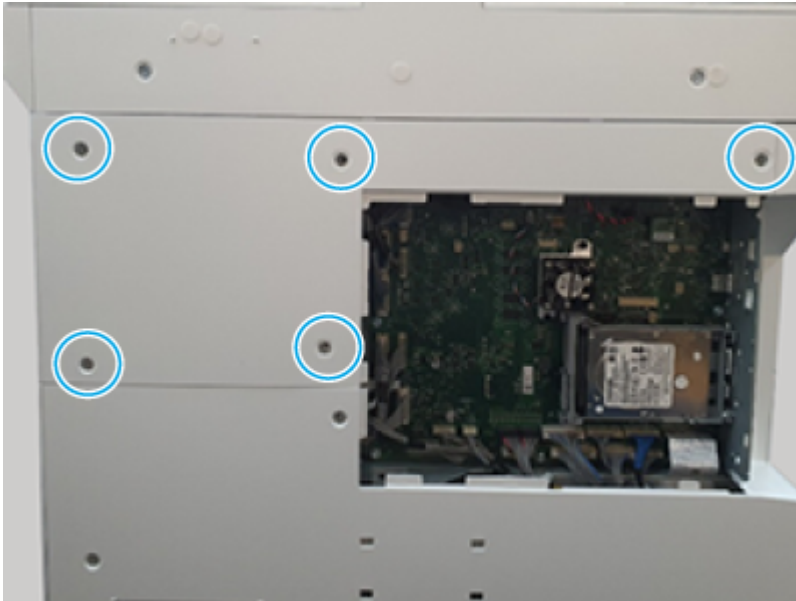
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove the screw caps.

Figure 6-1426 Remove the screw caps



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1427 Remove the cover



6. Remove the rear lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the rear lower cover.

- Remove six screws (callout 1), and then remove the cover.

Figure 6-1428 Remove the cover



7. Remove the external finisher caster

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher caster.

⚠ WARNING! The external finisher is not stable when one or more casters are removed and can easily tip over. To avoid personal injury or damage to the finisher, make sure to fully support the finisher when removing a caster.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.
2. Remove one fix nut.

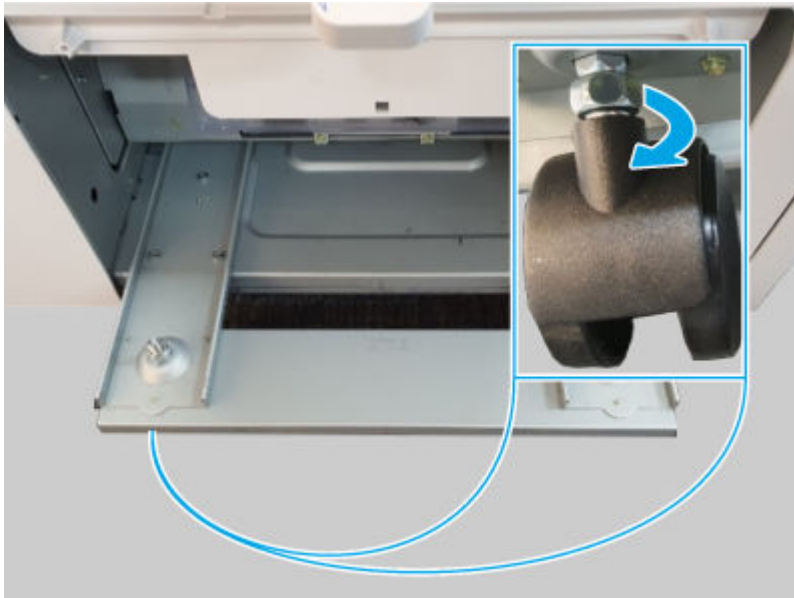
🔧 NOTE: Use a 12mm spanner wrench to remove the nut.

Figure 6-1429 Remove the nut



3. Rotate the caster as shown below to remove it. Repeat these steps for the remaining casters as needed.

Figure 6-1430 Remove the caster

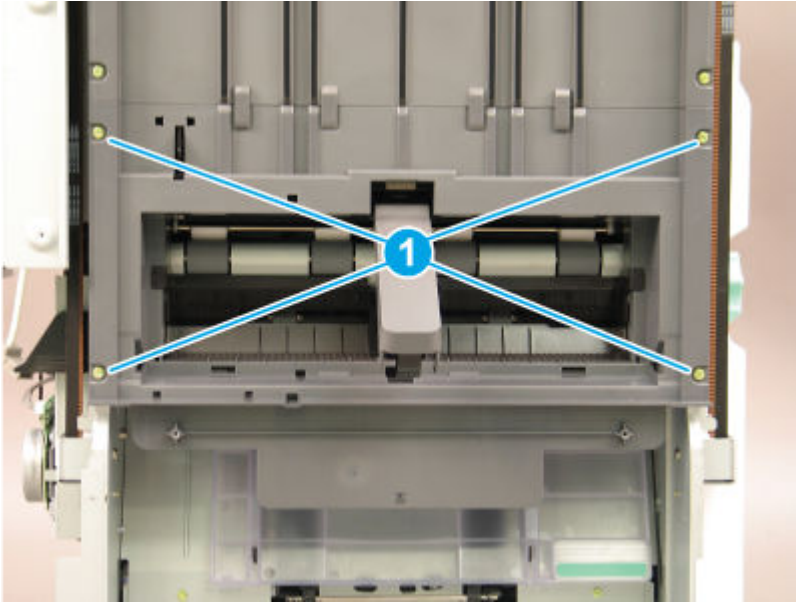


8. Remove the external finisher left lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left lower cover.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-1431 Remove four screws

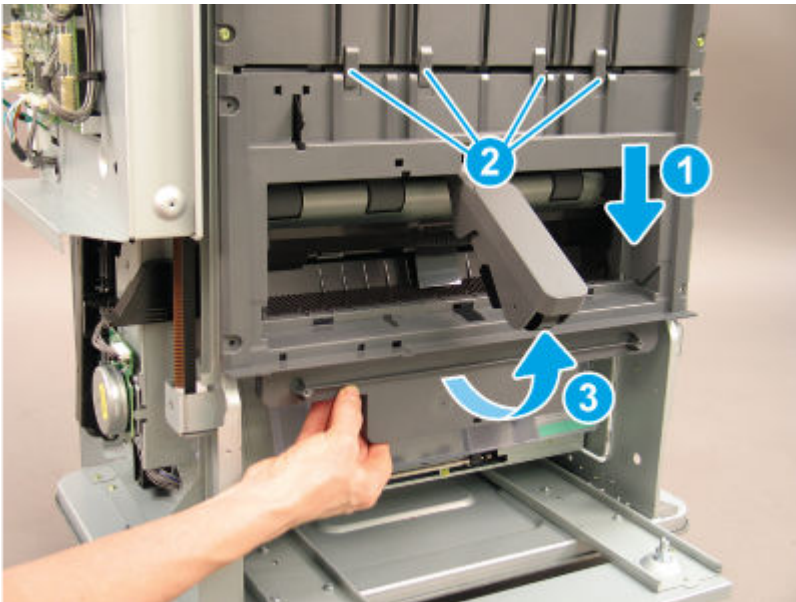


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

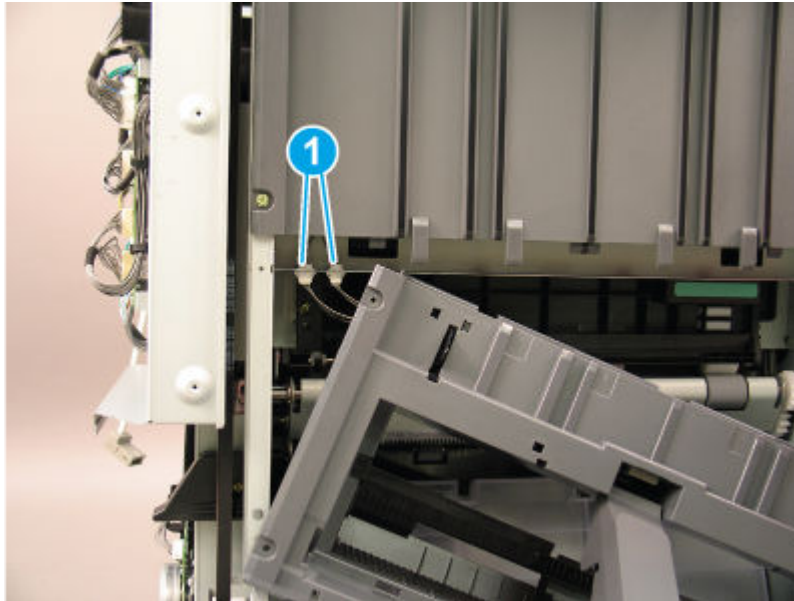
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-1432 Release the cover



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the left lower cover.

Figure 6-1433 Remove the cover

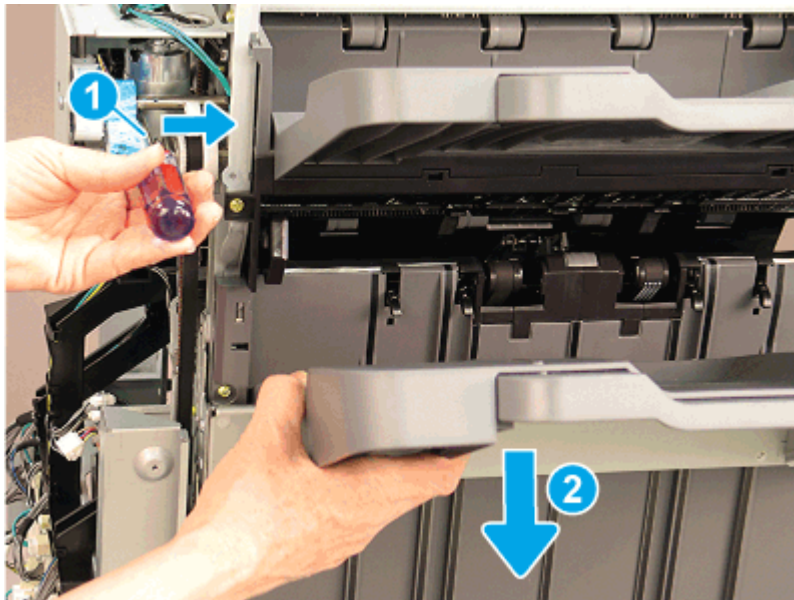


9. Remove the external finisher left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left upper cover.

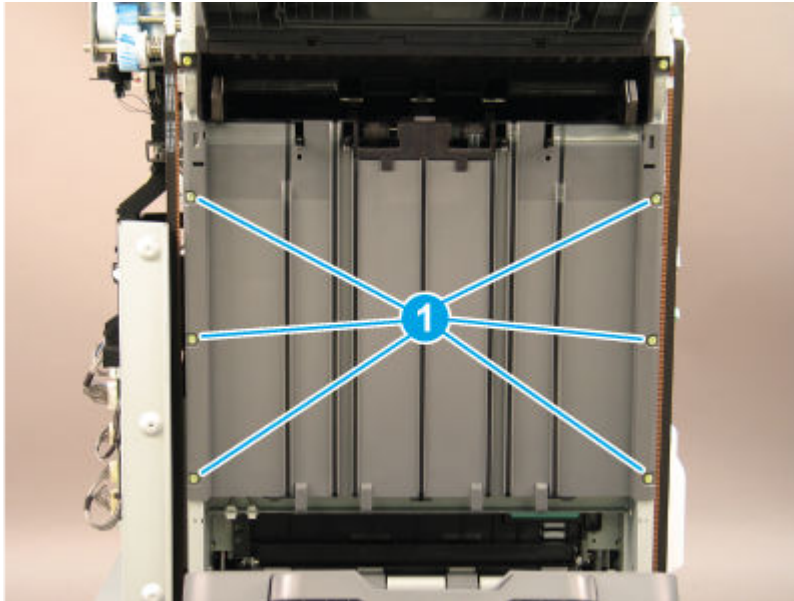
1. Bring the main output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 6-1434 Lower the tray



2. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-1435 Remove six screws

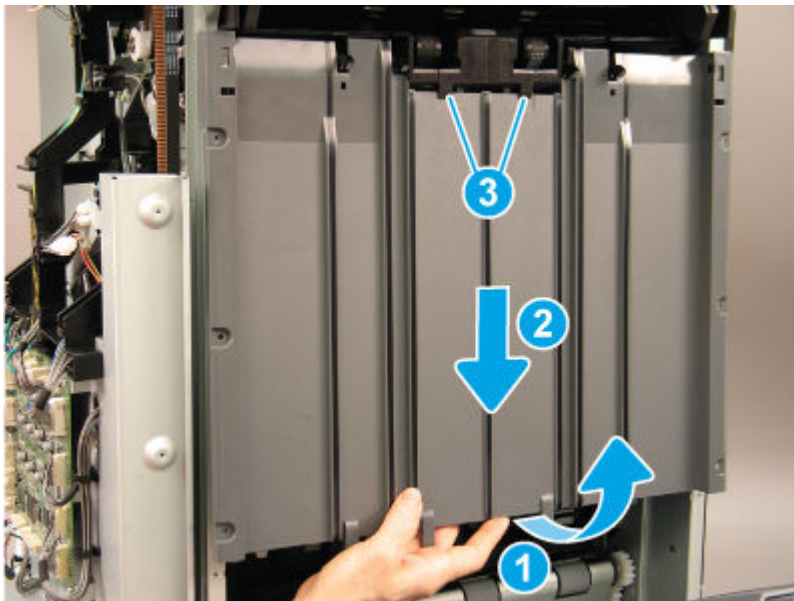


3. Rotate the lower edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

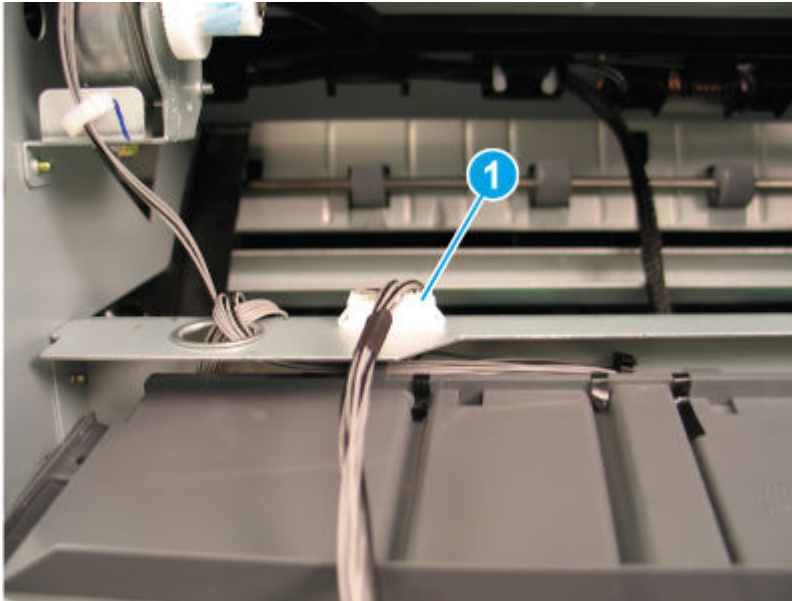
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-1436 Release the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the left upper cover.

Figure 6-1437 Remove the cover



10. Remove the external finisher ejector unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher ejector unit.

1. Remove three screws.


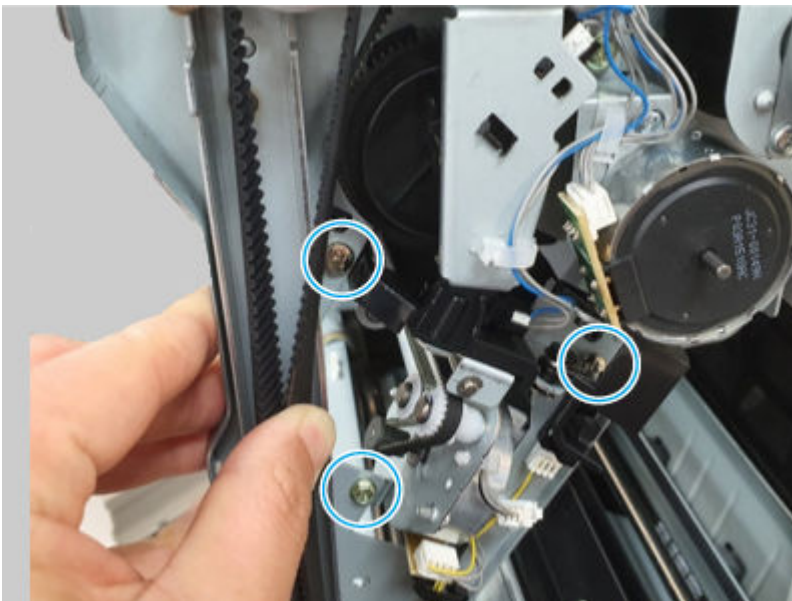
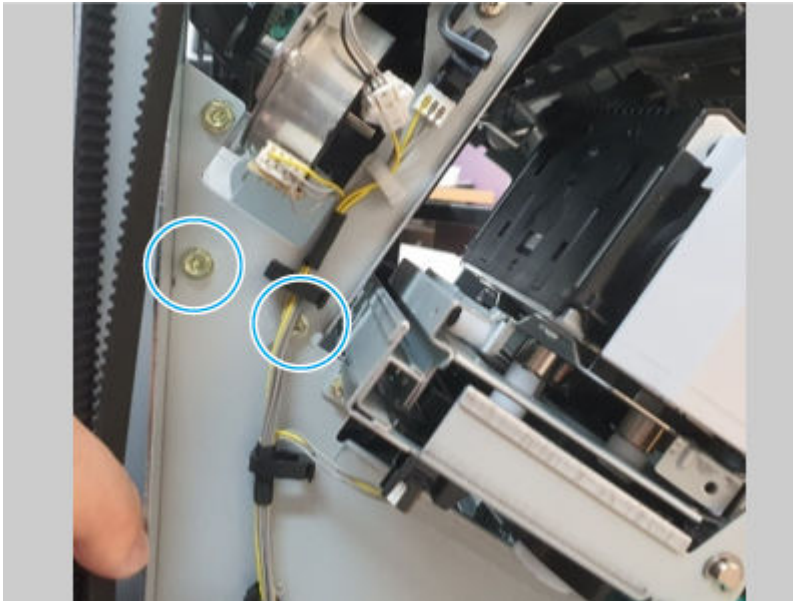
 **NOTE:** Removing these screws allows the front tamper to be moved out of the way when the ejector unit is removed.

Figure 6-1438 Release the tamper



2. Remove two screws (located below the front tamper).

Figure 6-1439 Remove two screws

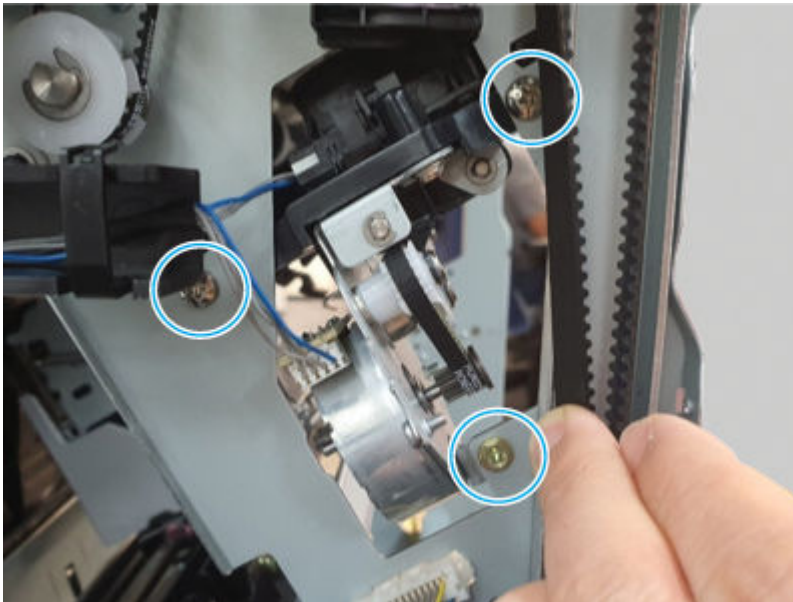


3. Remove three screws.



NOTE: Removing these screws allows the rear tamper to be moved out of the way when the ejector unit is removed.

Figure 6-1440 Release the tamper



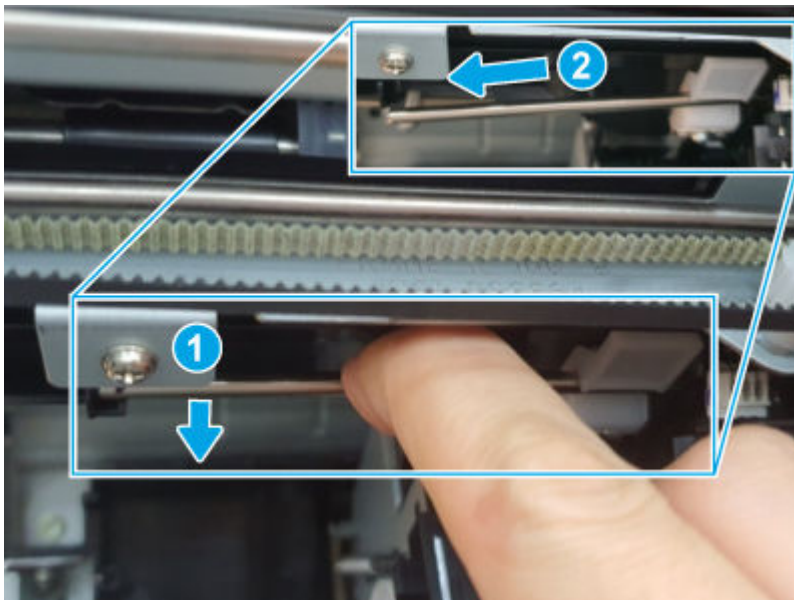
4. Remove two screws (located below the rear tamper).

Figure 6-1441 Remove two screws



5. Do the following:
 - a. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening.
 - b. Locate the shaft, pull down to release it (callout 1), and then slide it as shown below (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 6-1442 Remove the shaft



6. Remove two screws, and then remove the ejector unit.


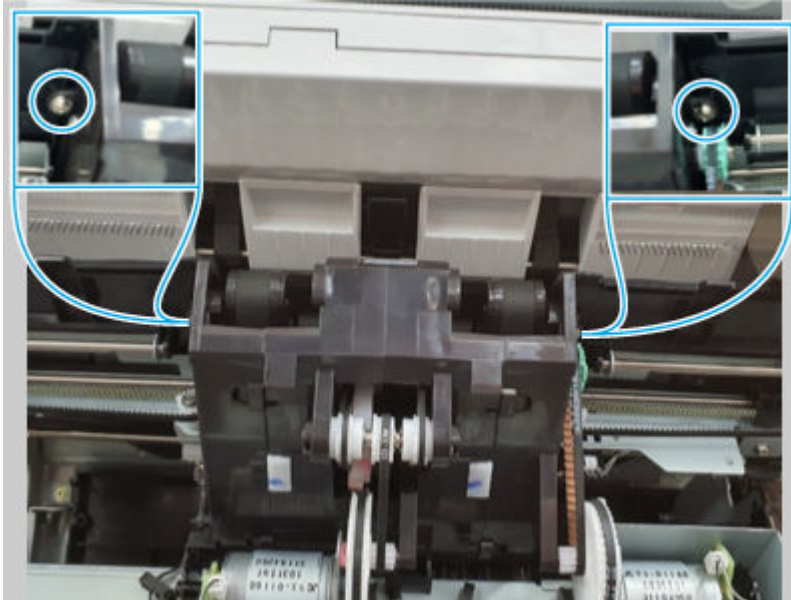
 **NOTE:** Slightly lift up on the tampers to give the ejector unit clearance when removing it..

Figure 6-1443 Remove the unit



11. Remove the external finisher front tamper

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front tamper.

- Disconnect three connectors, remove three screws, and then remove the front tamper.


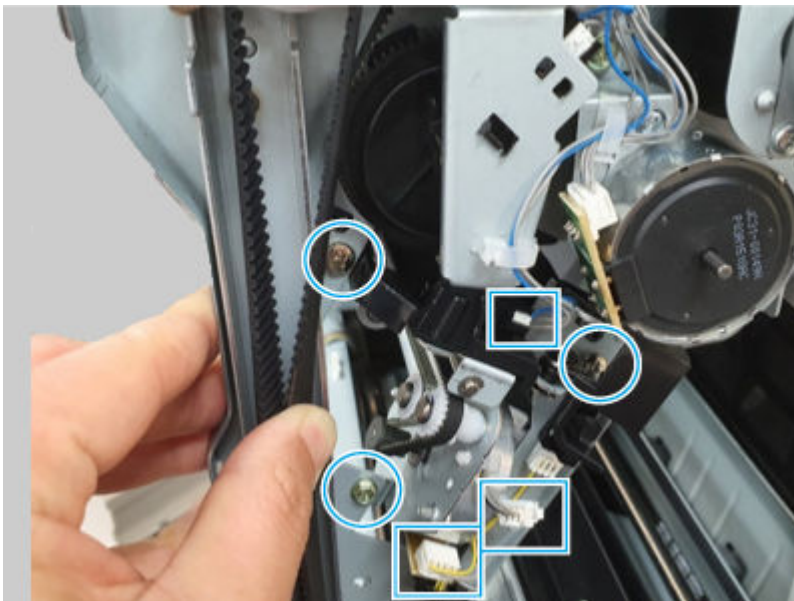
 **NOTE:** If the tamper unit is removed after the ejector unit to gain access to another assembly, the screws have already been removed.

Figure 6-1444 Remove the tamper

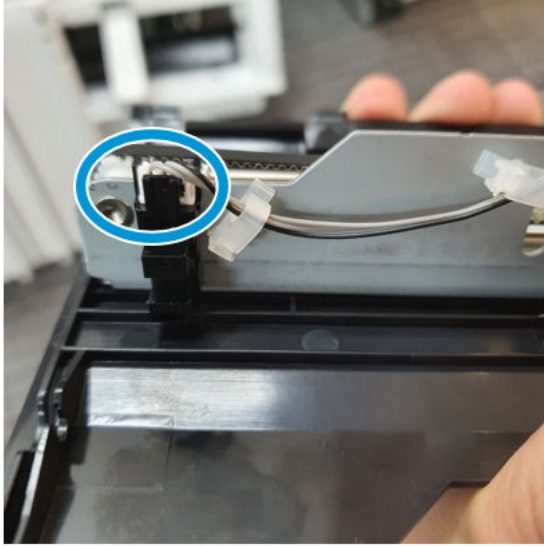


12. Remove the external finisher entrance sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher entrance sensor.

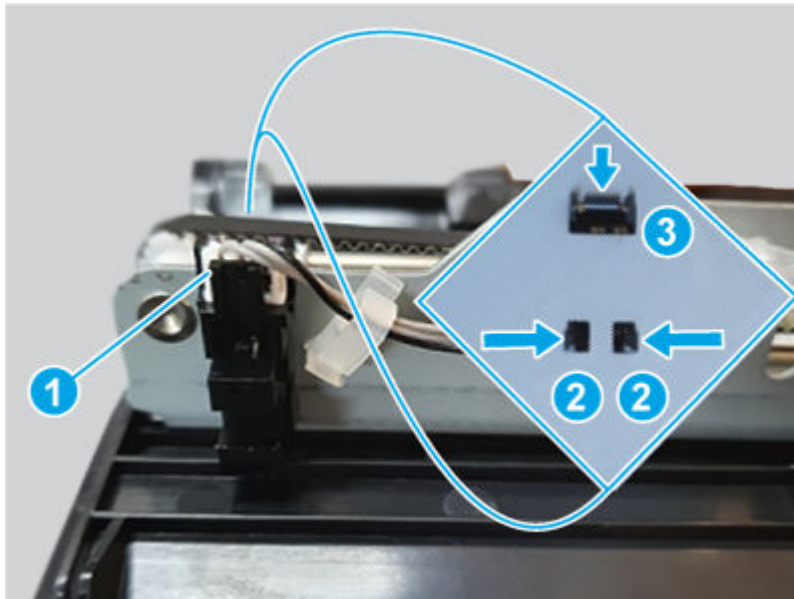
1. Disconnect the connector

Figure 6-1445 Disconnect the connector



2. Do the following:
 - Disconnect one connector (callout 1).
 - Release two hooks (callout 2).
 - Slide the sensor as shown below (callout 3).
 - Remove the entrance sensor.

Figure 6-1446 Remove the sensor



13. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Entrance motor assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher entrance motor assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-229 Part information

Part number	Part description
8GS05-60104	Entrance motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

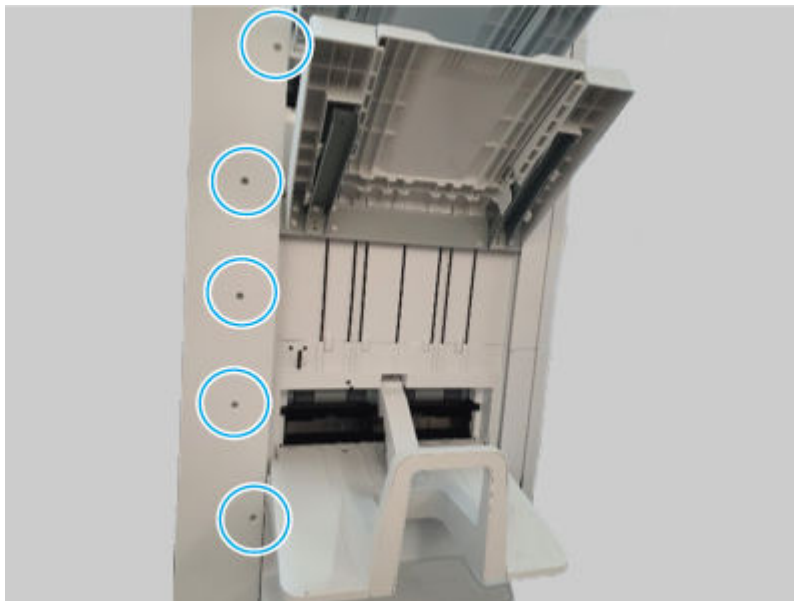
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1447 Remove five screws

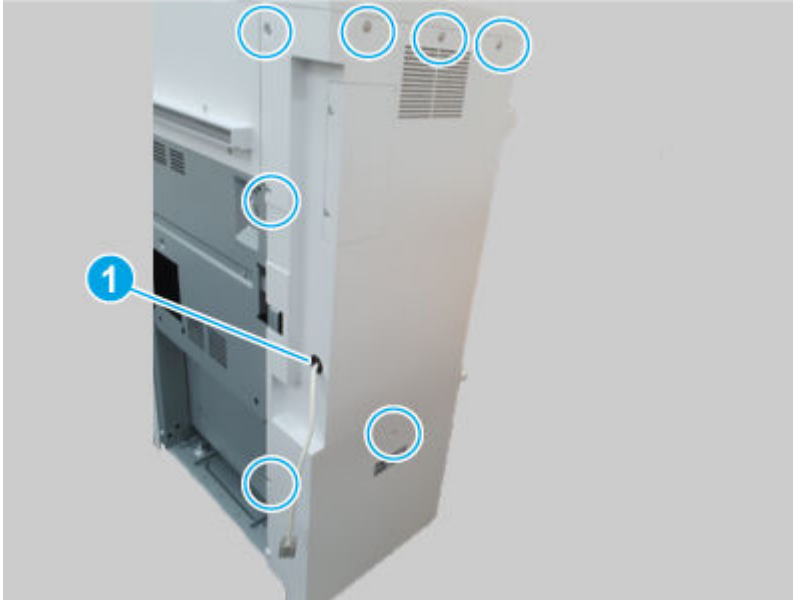


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1448 Remove the cover

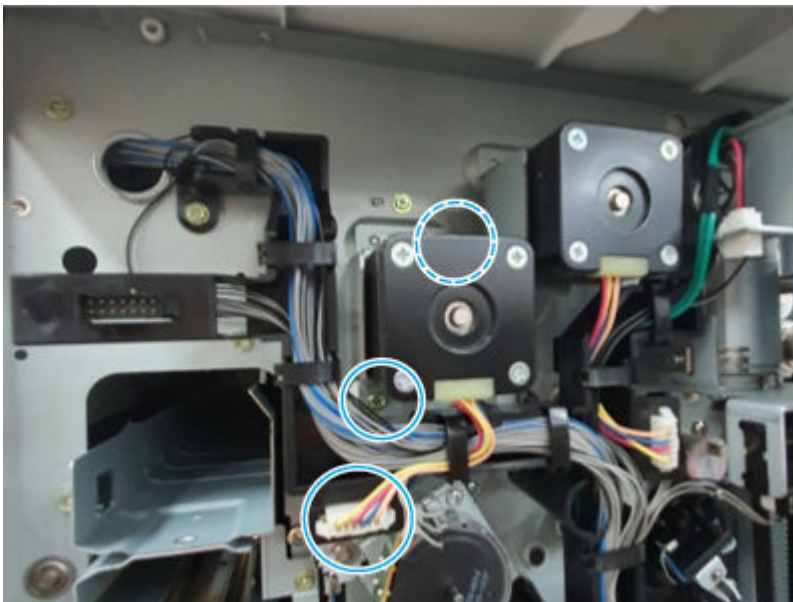


Remove the external finisher entrance motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher entrance motor assembly.

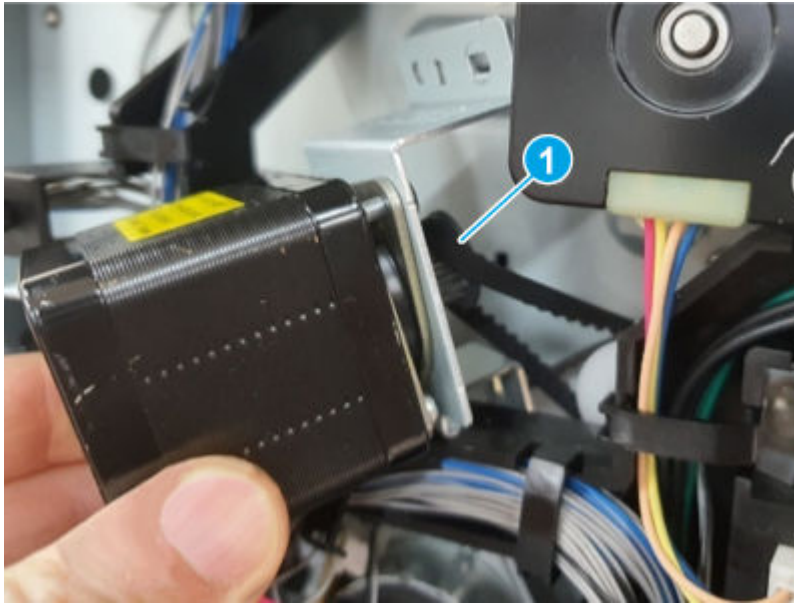
1. Disconnect one connector, and then remove two screws.

Figure 6-1449 Disconnect connector and remove screws



2. Slightly separate the entrance motor assembly from the finisher chassis, remove the belt (callout 1), and then remove the entrance motor assembly.

Figure 6-1450 Remove the assembly



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Entrance motor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher entrance motor.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-230 Part information

Part number	Part description
3SJ19-80501	Entrance motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

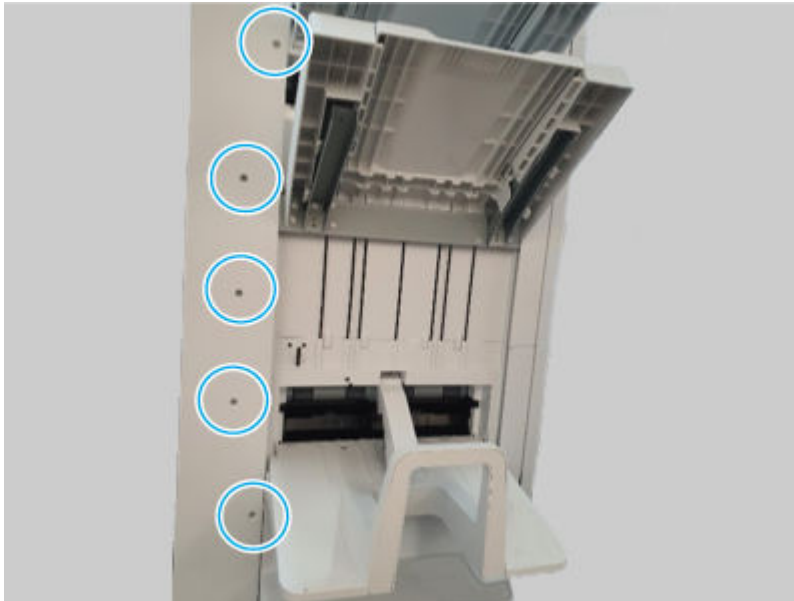
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1451 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


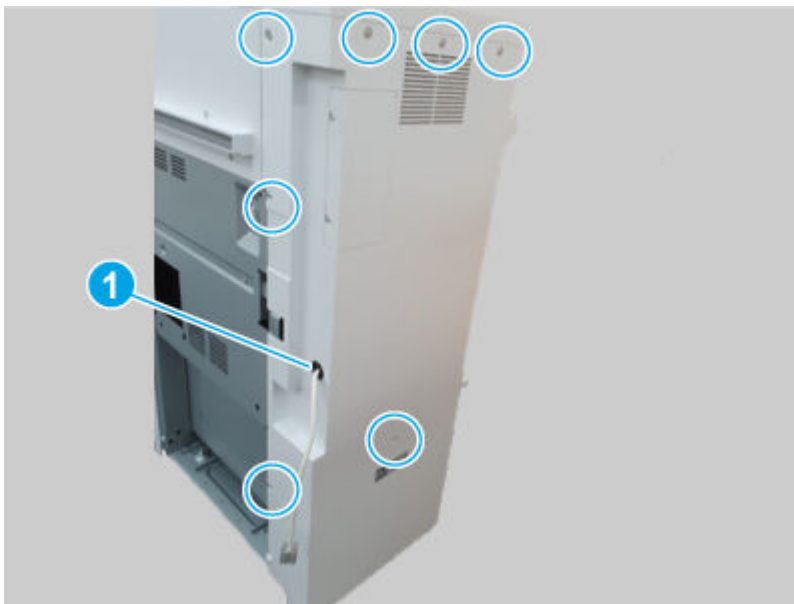
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1452 Remove the cover

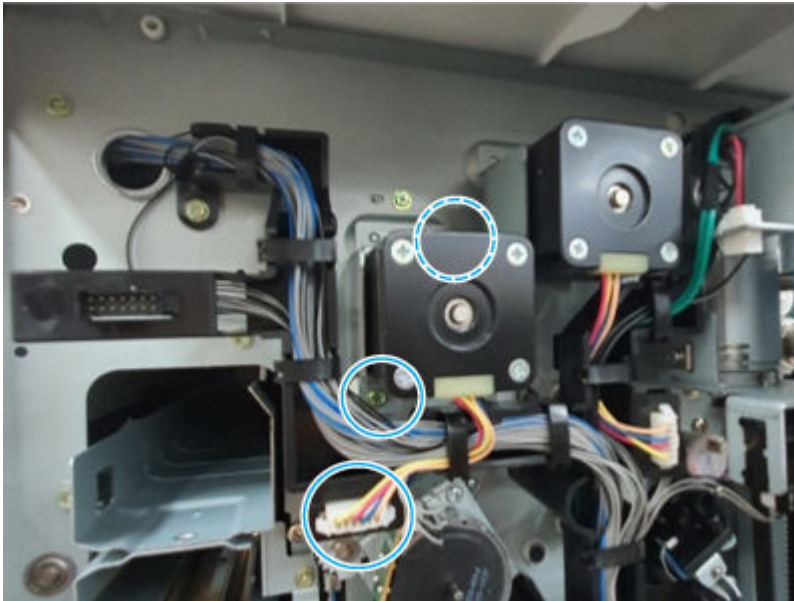


2. Remove the external finisher entrance motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher entrance motor assembly.

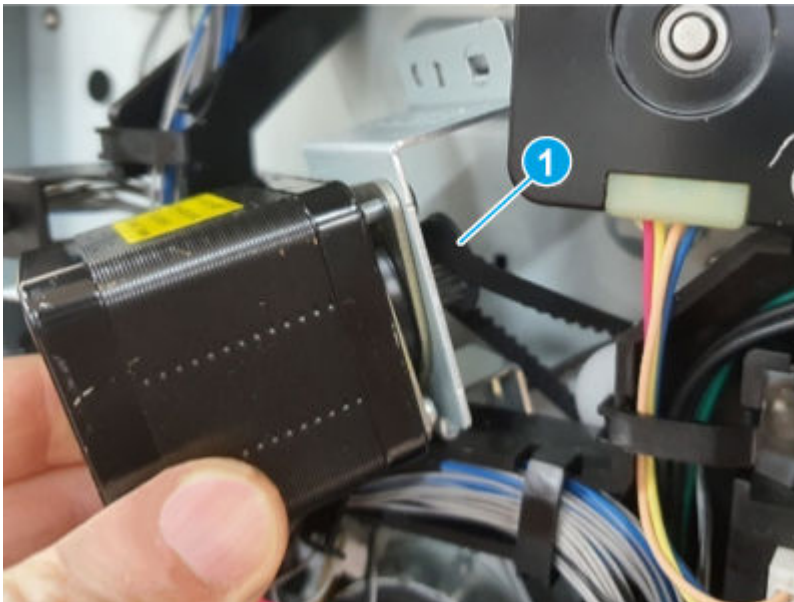
1. Disconnect one connector, and then remove two screws.

Figure 6-1453 Disconnect connector and remove screws



2. Slightly separate the entrance motor assembly from the finisher chassis, remove the belt (callout 1), and then remove the entrance motor assembly.

Figure 6-1454 Remove the assembly



3. Remove the external finisher entrance motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher entrance motor.

- Remove two screws, and then remove the entrance motor.

Figure 6-1455 Remove the motor



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Punch unit

Review the external finisher punch unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Punch unit

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher punch unit.

Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-231 Part information

Part number	Part description
Y1G10-67901	Punch unit (2-3 hole)
Y1G11-67901	Punch unit (2-4 hole)
Y1G12-67901	Punch unit (Swedish hole)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher punch unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher punch unit.

- Disconnect two connectors, remove one screw, and then remove the punch unit.

Figure 6-1456 Remove the unit



2. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Tray diverter unit

Review the external finisher tray diverter unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Top jam cover assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher top jam cover assembly.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-232 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01455A	Top jam cover assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

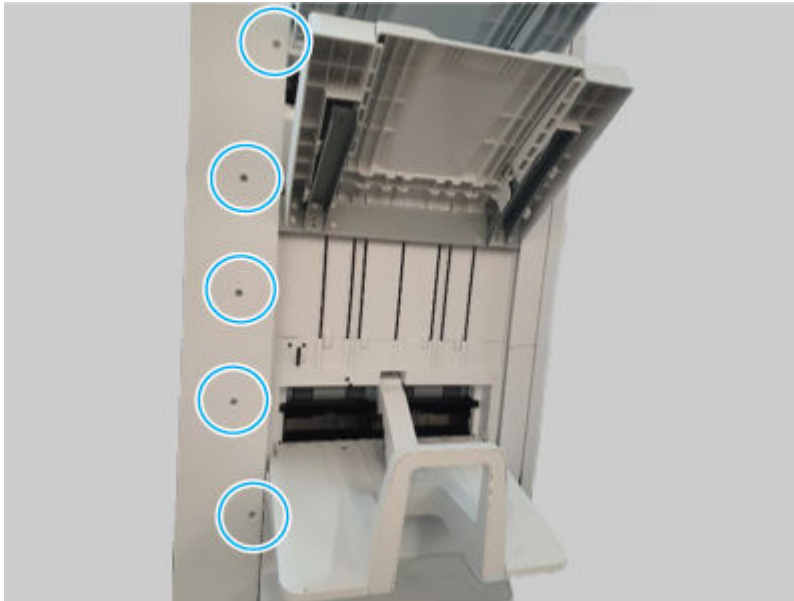
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1457 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


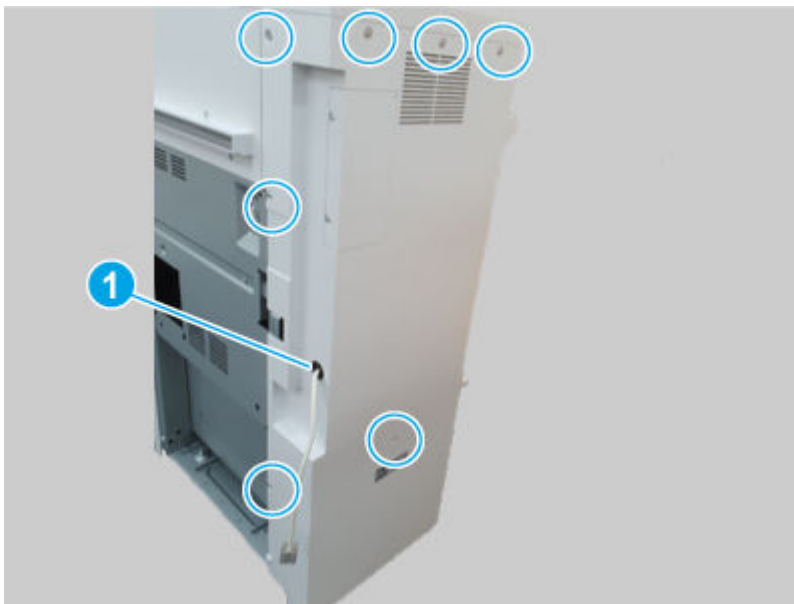
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1458 Remove the cover

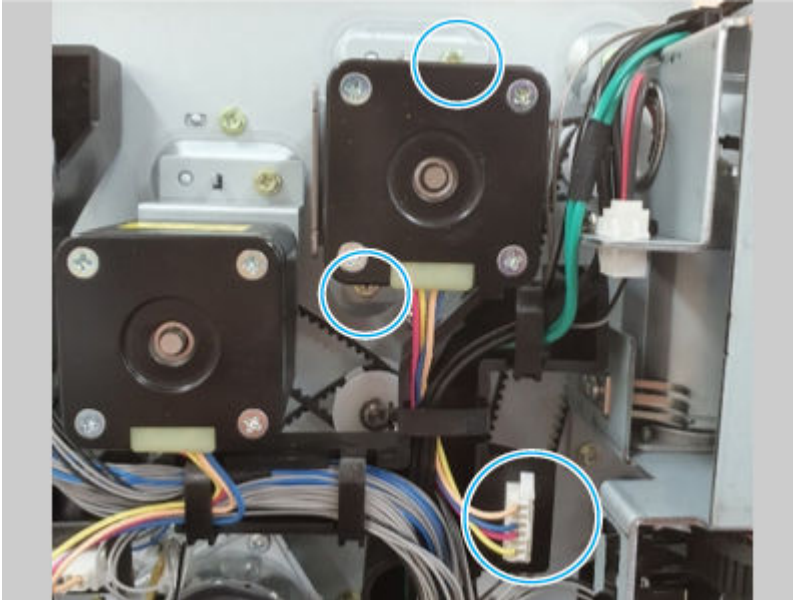


2. Remove the external finisher exit motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher exit motor assembly.

- Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the exit motor assembly.

Figure 6-1459 Remove the assembly

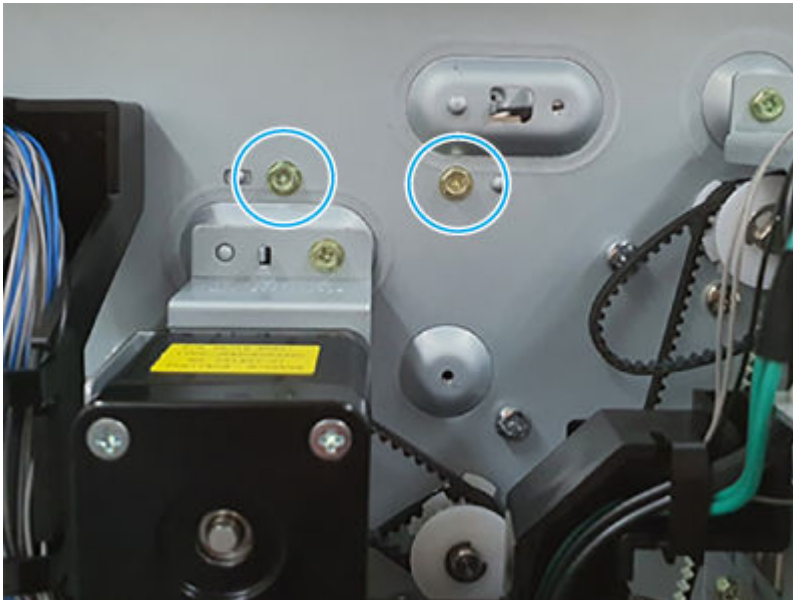


3. Remove the external finisher top jam cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top jam cover assembly.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1460 Remove two screws



2. Pull the top jam cover assembly out of the finisher.

Figure 6-1461 Remove the assembly



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray diverter

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher tray diverter.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-233 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC61-07205A	Tray diverter

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

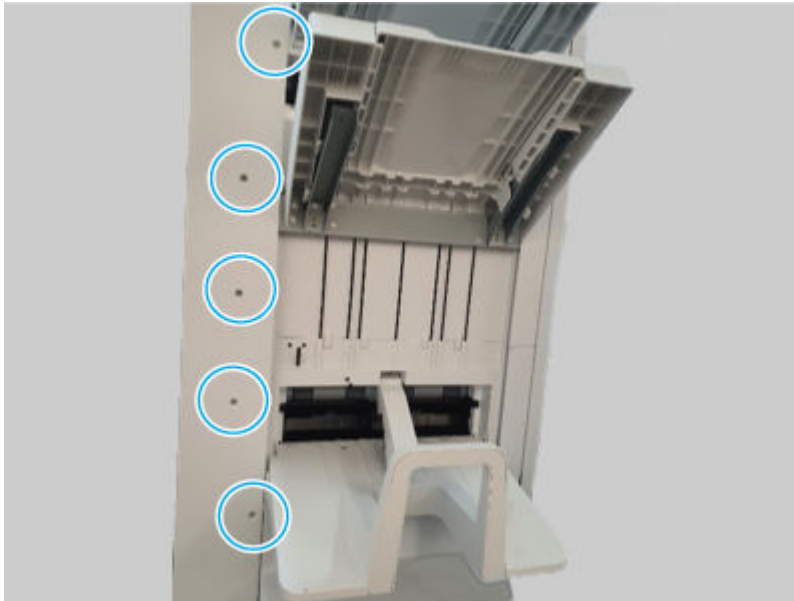
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1462 Remove five screws

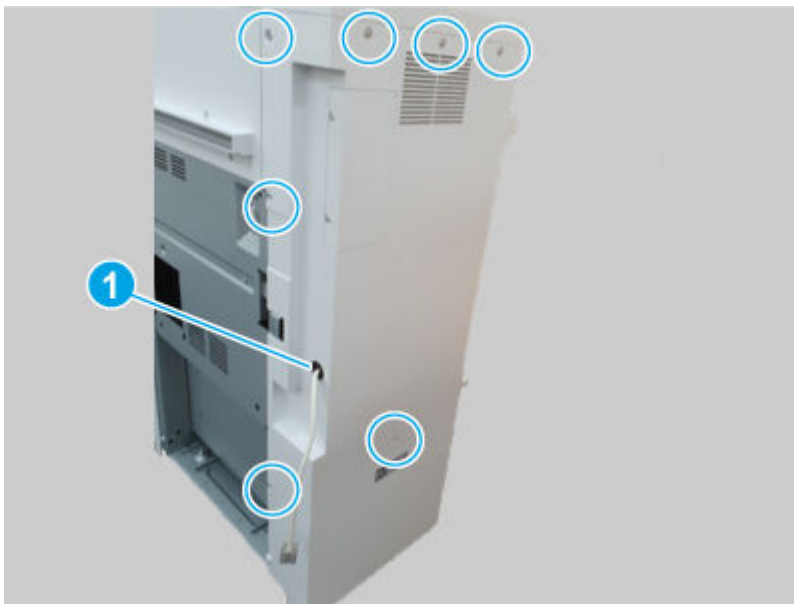


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1463 Remove the cover

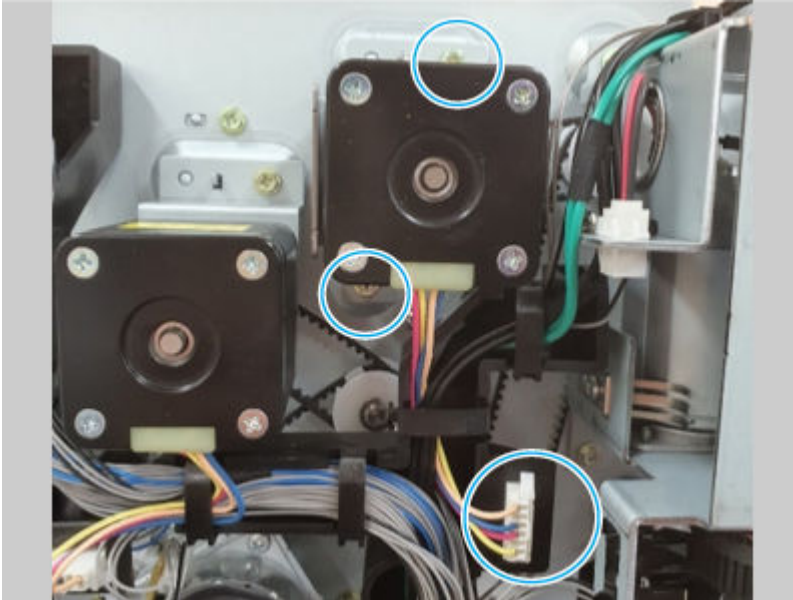


2. Remove the external finisher exit motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher exit motor assembly.

- Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the exit motor assembly.

Figure 6-1464 Remove the assembly

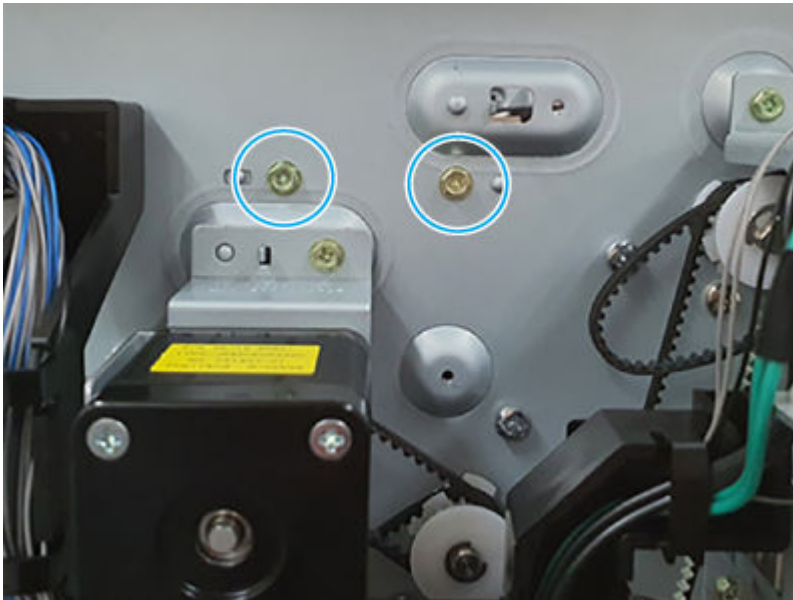


3. Remove the external finisher top jam cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top jam cover assembly.

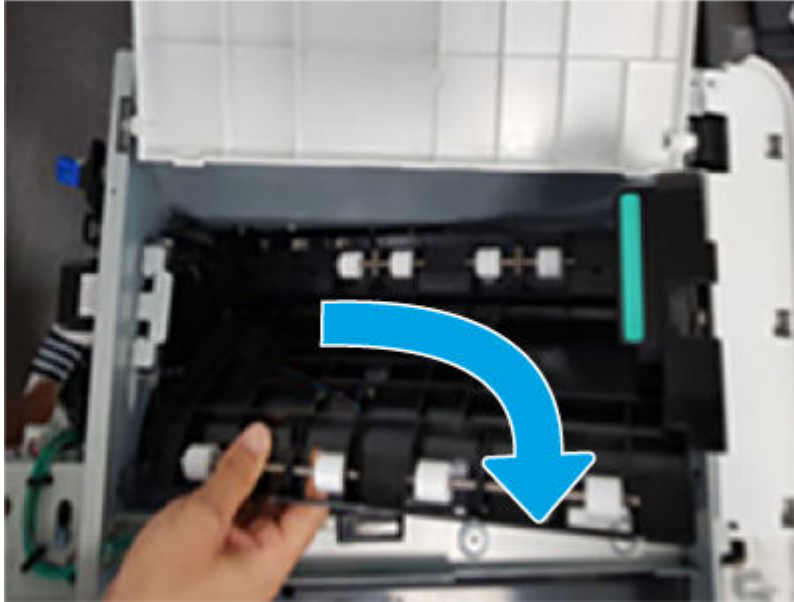
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1465 Remove two screws



2. Pull the top jam cover assembly out of the finisher.

Figure 6-1466 Remove the assembly



4. Remove the external finisher tray diverter

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher tray diverter.

- Carefully separate the tray diverter from the top jam cover assembly to remove it.

Figure 6-1467 Remove the diverter



5. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Top door open switch

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher top door open switch.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-234 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC39-02631A	Top door open switch

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1468 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1469 Remove the cover

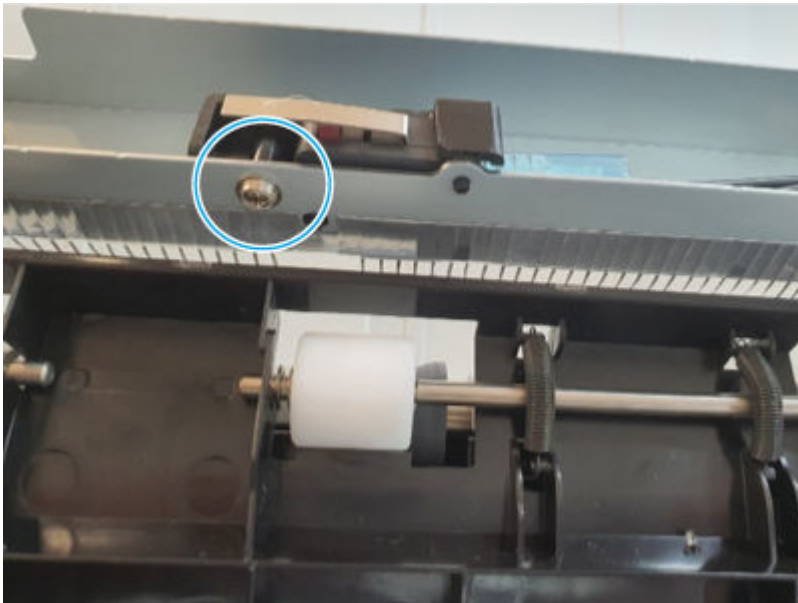


2. Remove the external finisher top door open switch

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top door open switch.

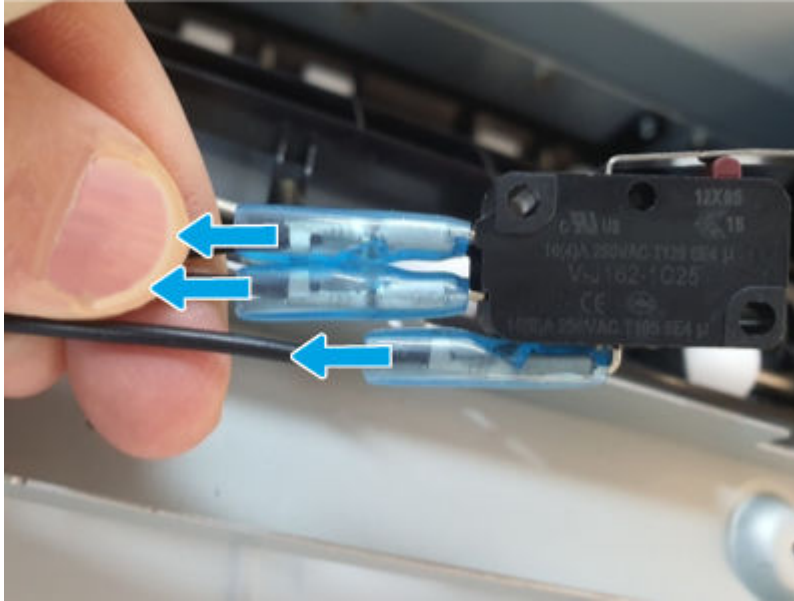
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-1470 Remove one screw



2. Separate the top door open switch from the finisher, and then disconnect three connectors to remove it.

Figure 6-1471 Remove the switch



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray diverter cam

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher tray diverter cam.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-235 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01458A	Tray diverter cam

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

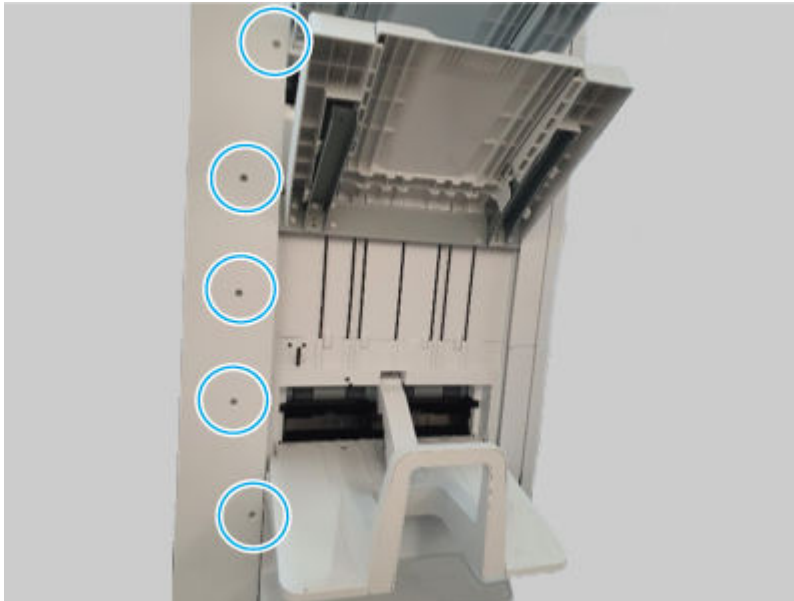
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1472 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


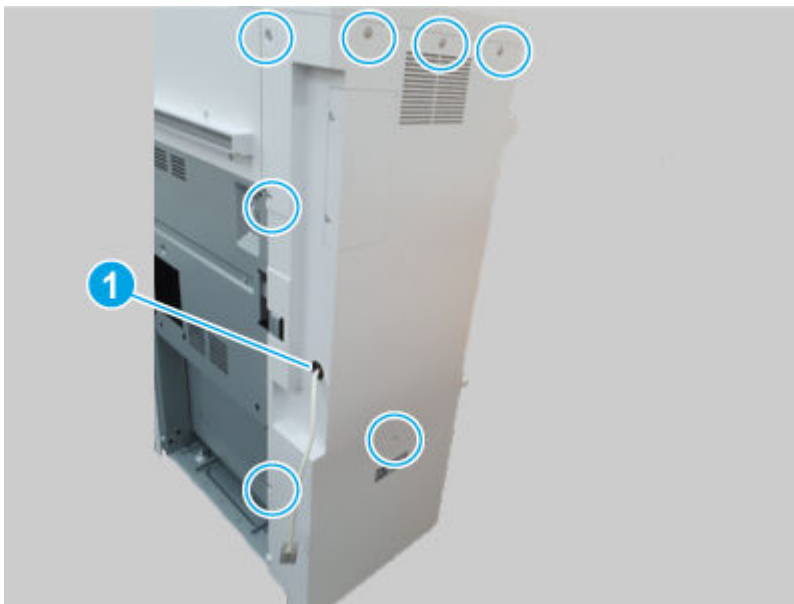
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1473 Remove the cover



2. Remove the external finisher entrance motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher entrance motor.

- Remove two screws, and then remove the entrance motor.

Figure 6-1474 Remove the motor

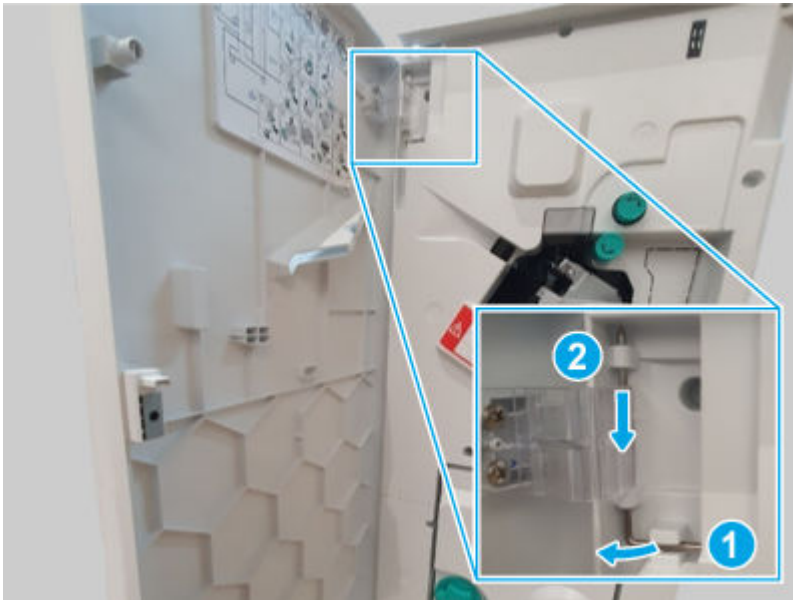


3. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

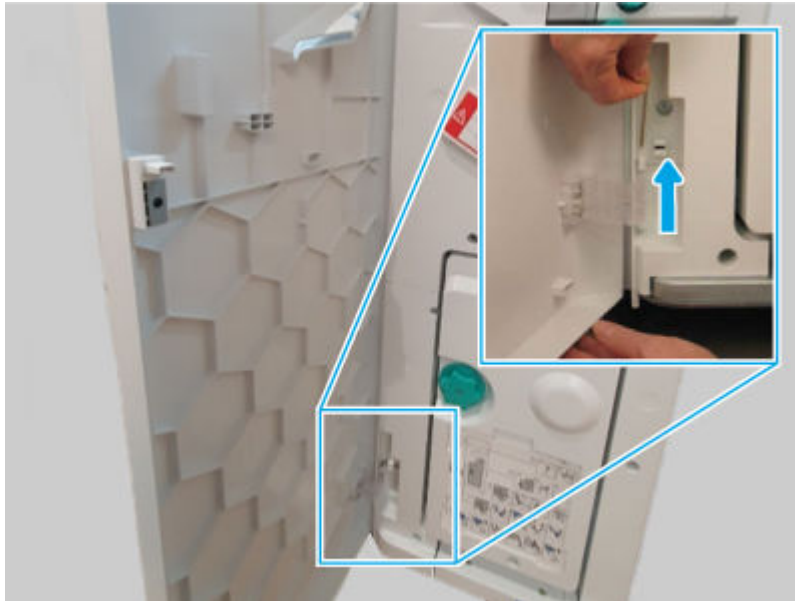
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1475 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1476 Remove the door



4. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

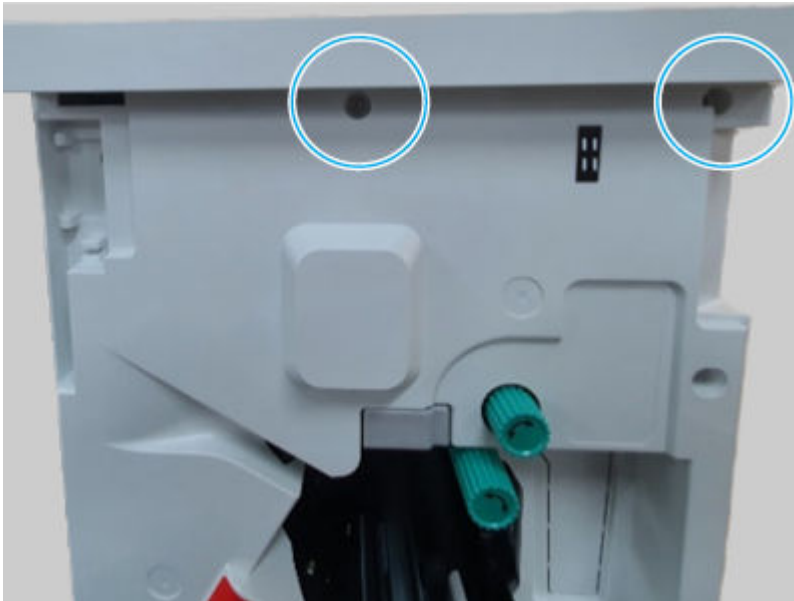
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1477 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1478 Remove the cover

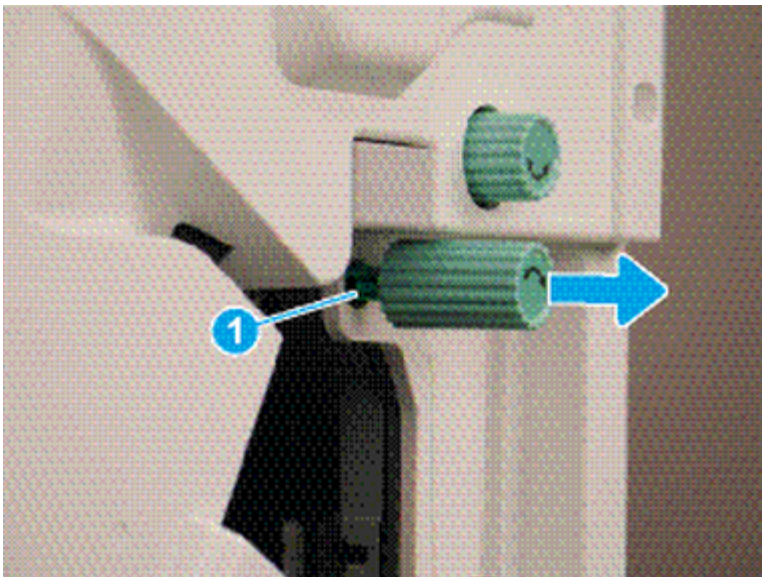


5. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1479 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1480 Remove the cover

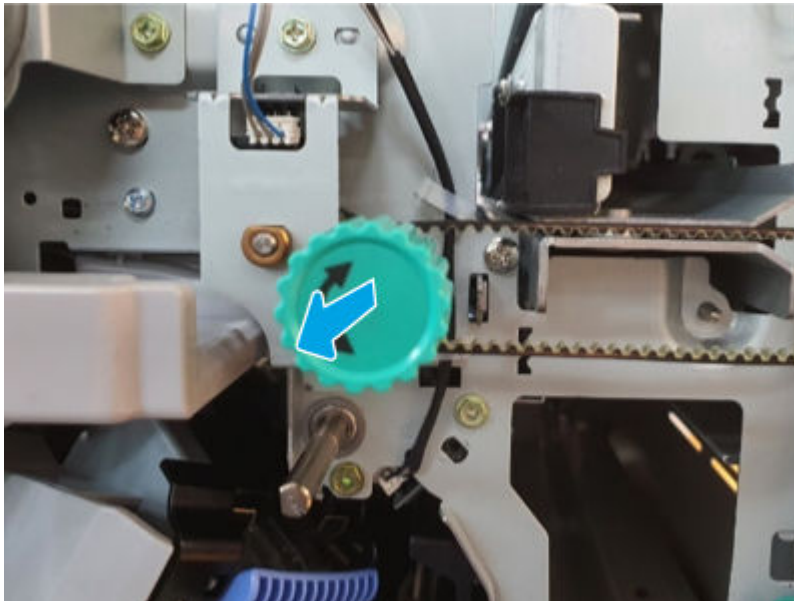


6. Remove the external finisher tray diverter home sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher tray diverter home sensor.

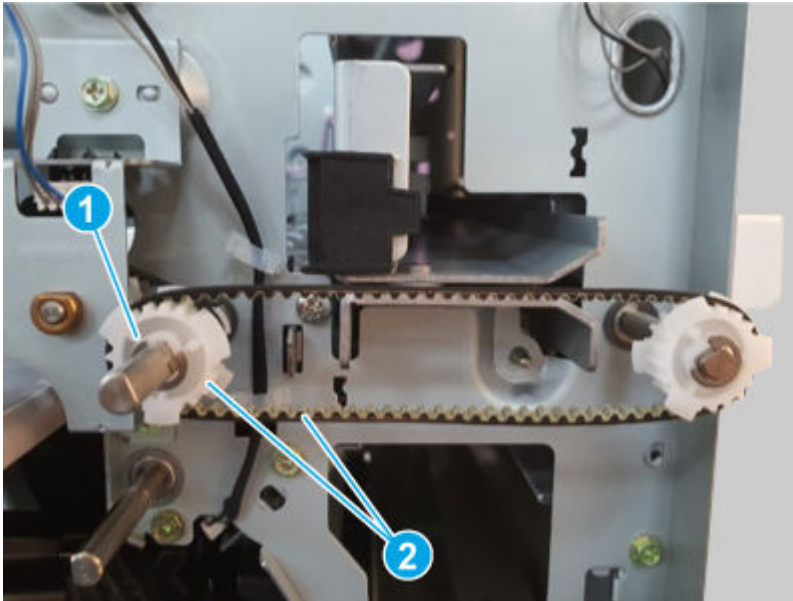
1. Remove the green handle.

Figure 6-1481 Remove the handle



2. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring (callout 1), and then remove the gear and belt (callout 2).

Figure 6-1482 Remove the gear and belt

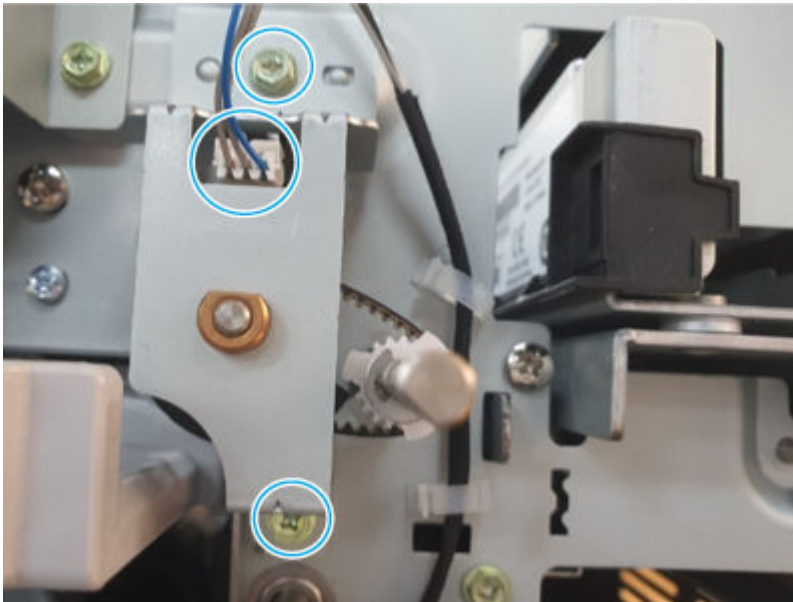


3. Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the sensor and bracket.



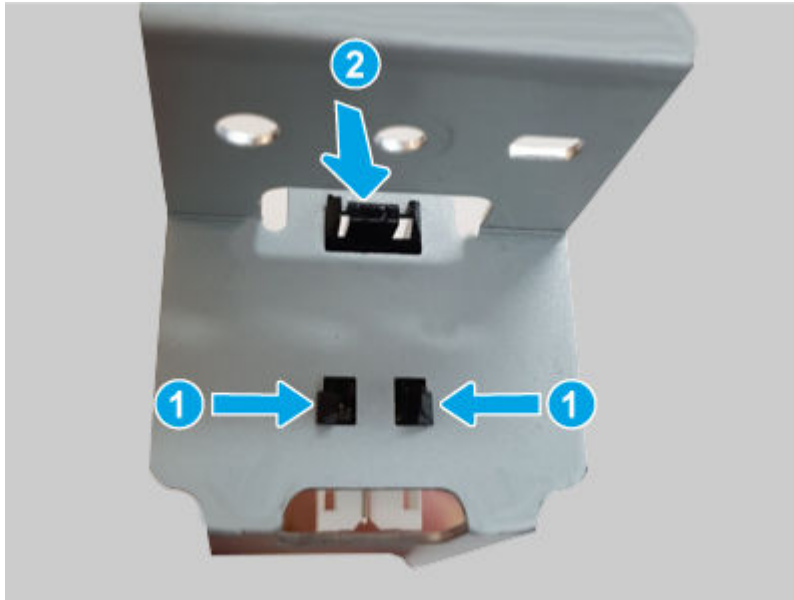
NOTE: If the tray diverter home sensor assembly is being removed to gain access to another part, stop now.

Figure 6-1483 Remove the sensor and bracket



4. Do the following:
 - Release the hooks (callout 1).
 - Slide the sensor assembly as shown below (callout 2).
 - Remove the tray diverter home position sensor from the bracket.

Figure 6-1484 Remove the sensor



7. Remove the external finisher tray diverter cam

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher tray diverter cam

- Carefully slide the tray diverter cam off of the shaft to remove it.


Figure 6-1485 Remove the cam





8. Unpack the replacement assembly


Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray diverter home sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher tray diverter home sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-236 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001415	Photo interrupter (Tray diverter home sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

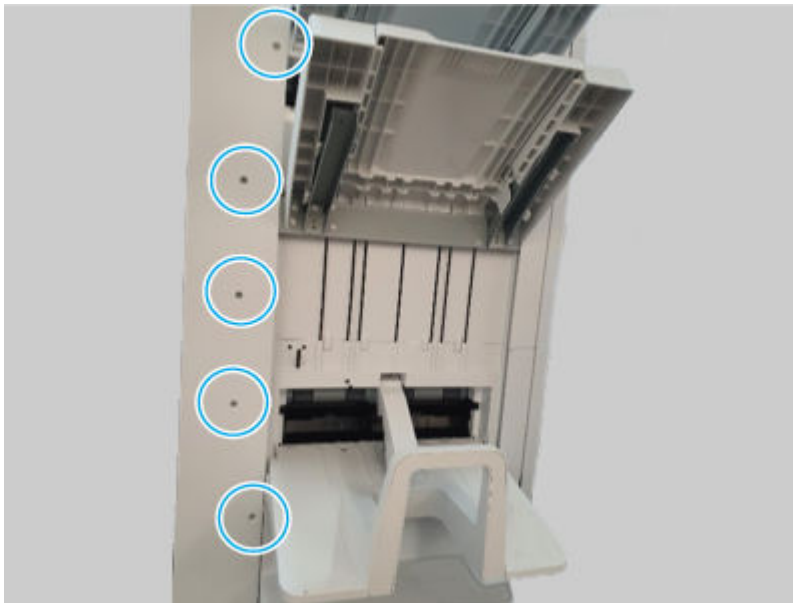
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1486 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1487 Remove the cover

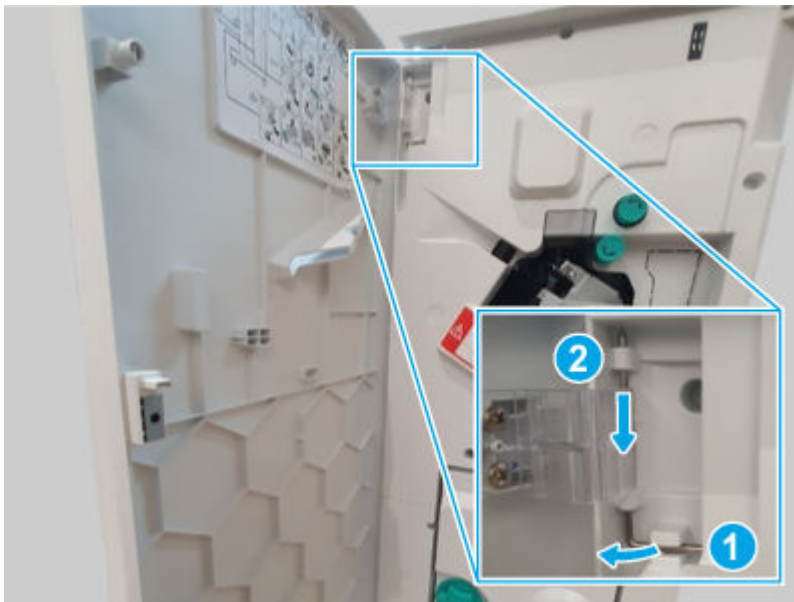


2. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

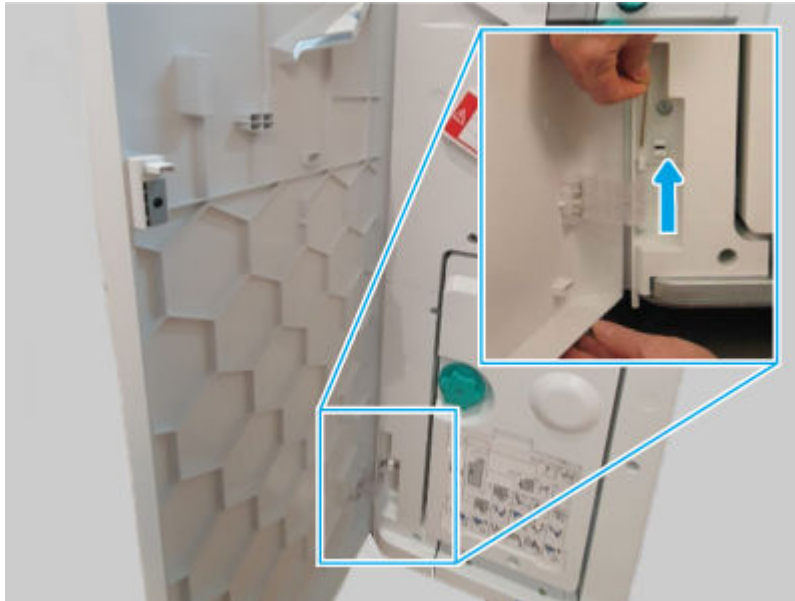
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1488 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1489 Remove the door



3. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

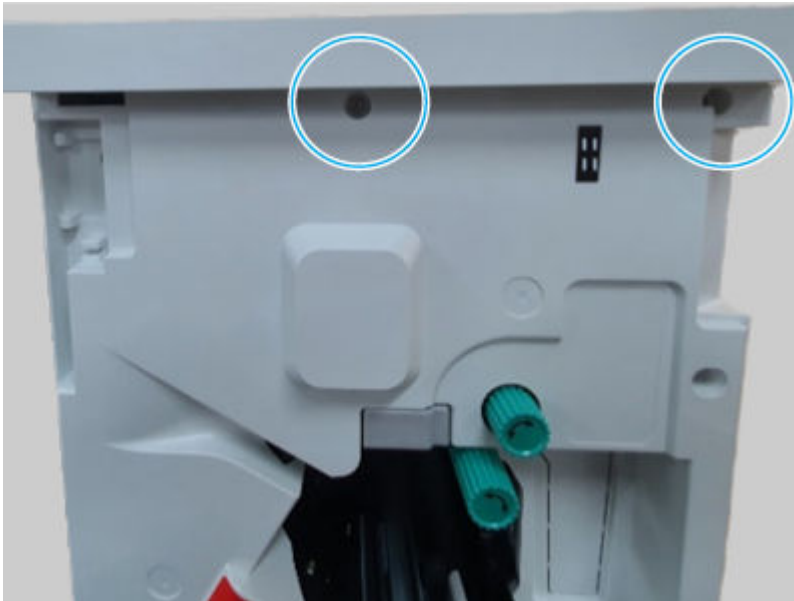
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1490 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1491 Remove the cover

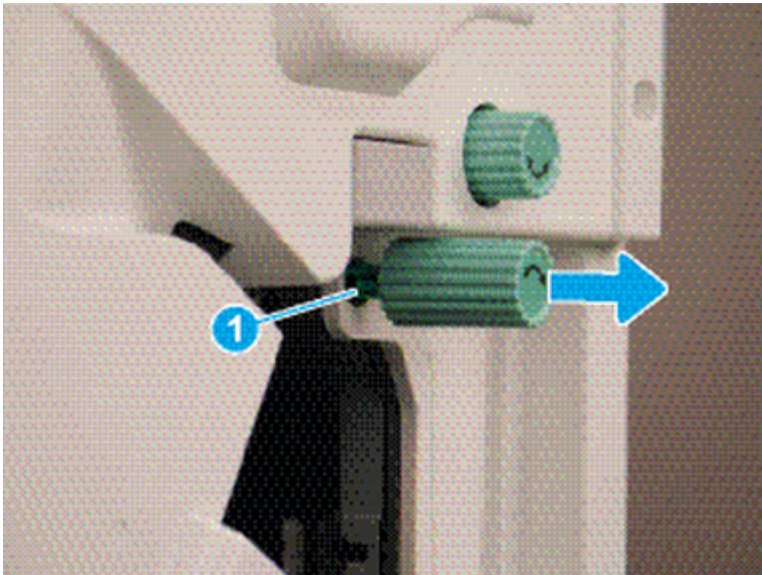


4. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1492 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1493 Remove the cover

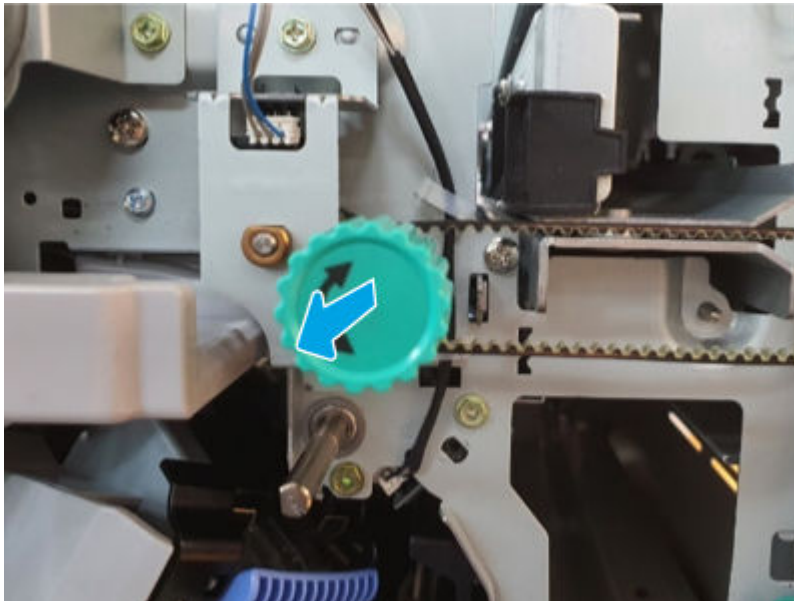


5. Remove the external finisher tray diverter home sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher tray diverter home sensor.

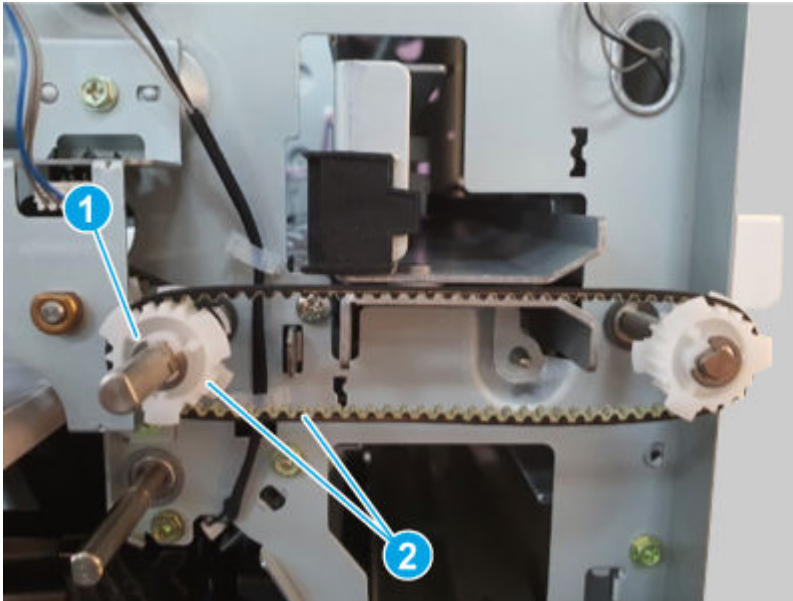
1. Remove the green handle.

Figure 6-1494 Remove the handle



2. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring (callout 1), and then remove the gear and belt (callout 2).

Figure 6-1495 Remove the gear and belt

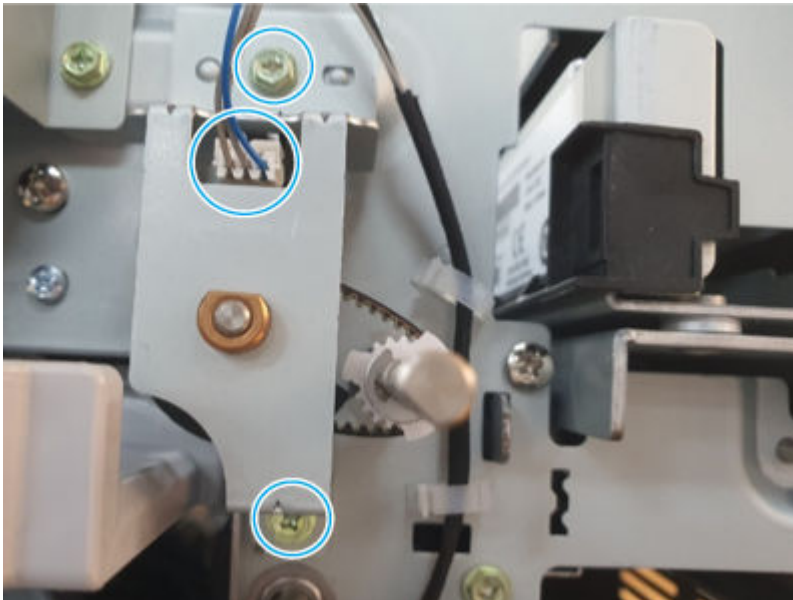


3. Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the sensor and bracket.



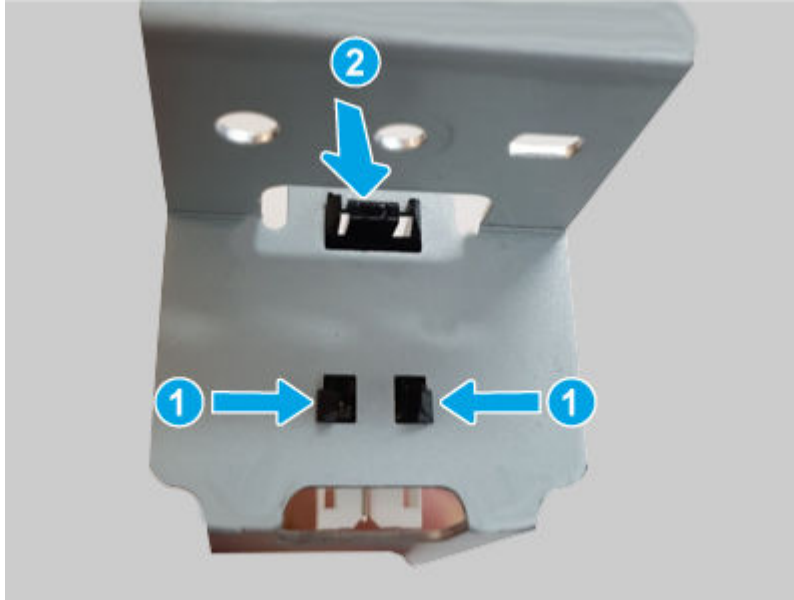
NOTE: If the tray diverter home sensor assembly is being removed to gain access to another part, stop now.

Figure 6-1496 Remove the sensor and bracket



4. Do the following:
 - Release the hooks (callout 1).
 - Slide the sensor assembly as shown below (callout 2).
 - Remove the tray diverter home position sensor from the bracket.

Figure 6-1497 Remove the sensor



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Top exit unit

Review the external finisher top exit unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Top exit sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher top exit sensor.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-237 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Top exit sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

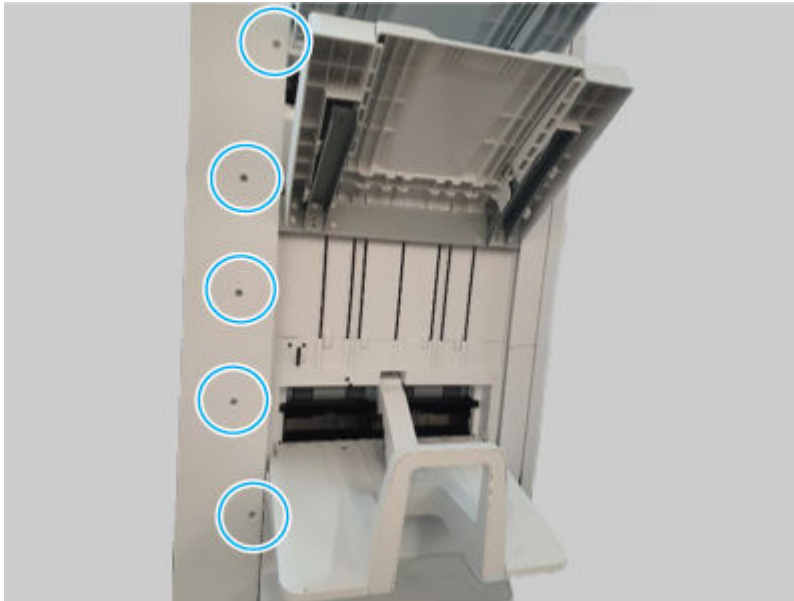
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1498 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


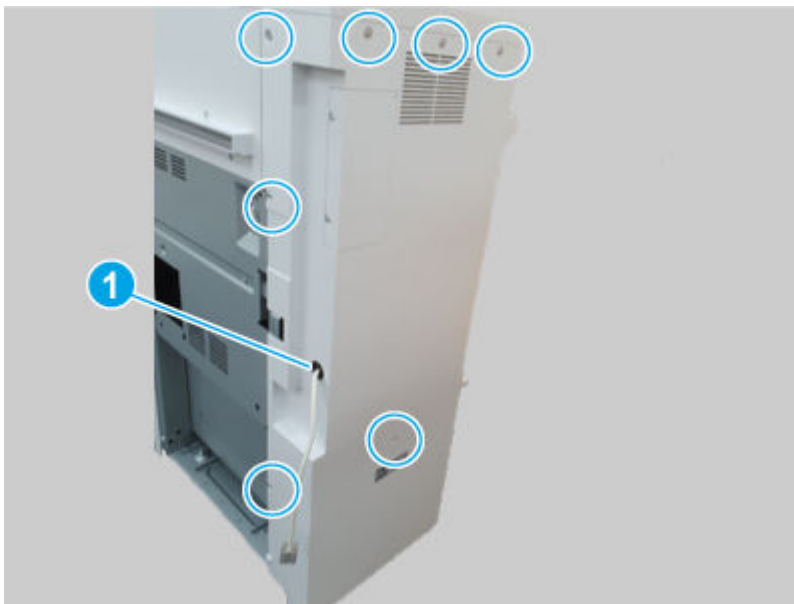
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1499 Remove the cover

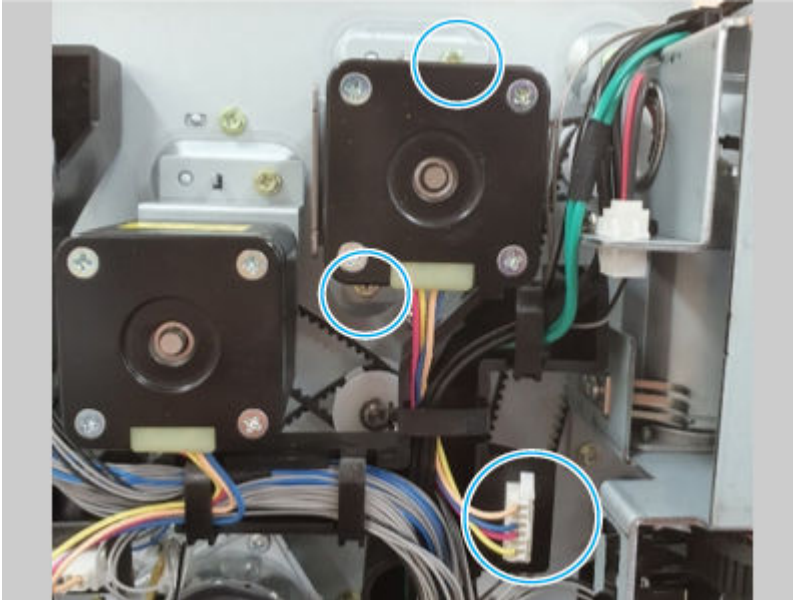


2. Remove the external finisher exit motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher exit motor assembly.

- Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the exit motor assembly.

Figure 6-1500 Remove the assembly

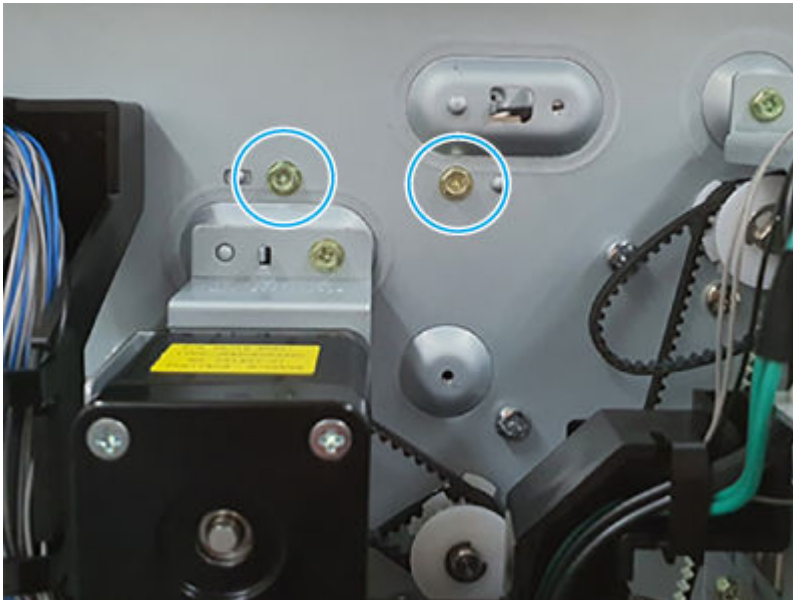


3. Remove the external finisher top jam cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top jam cover assembly.

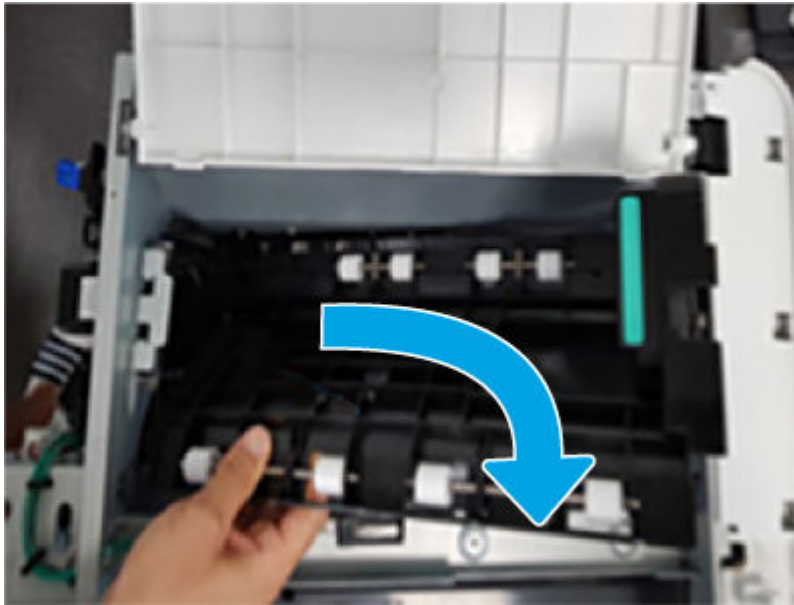
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1501 Remove two screws



2. Pull the top jam cover assembly out of the finisher.

Figure 6-1502 Remove the assembly

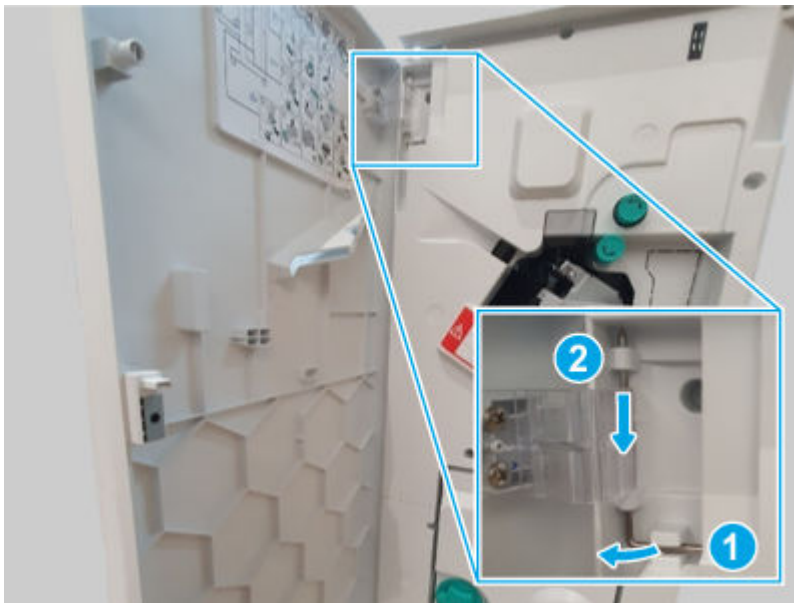


4. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

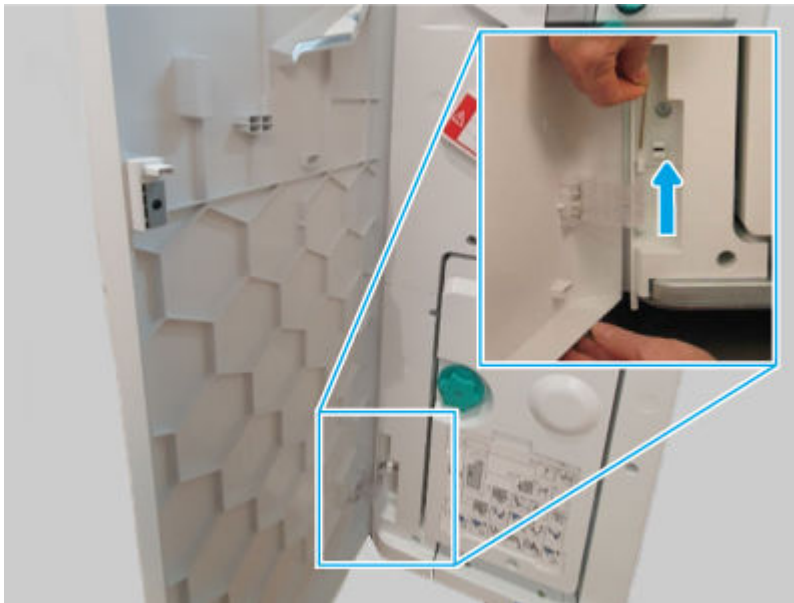
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1503 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1504 Remove the door



5. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

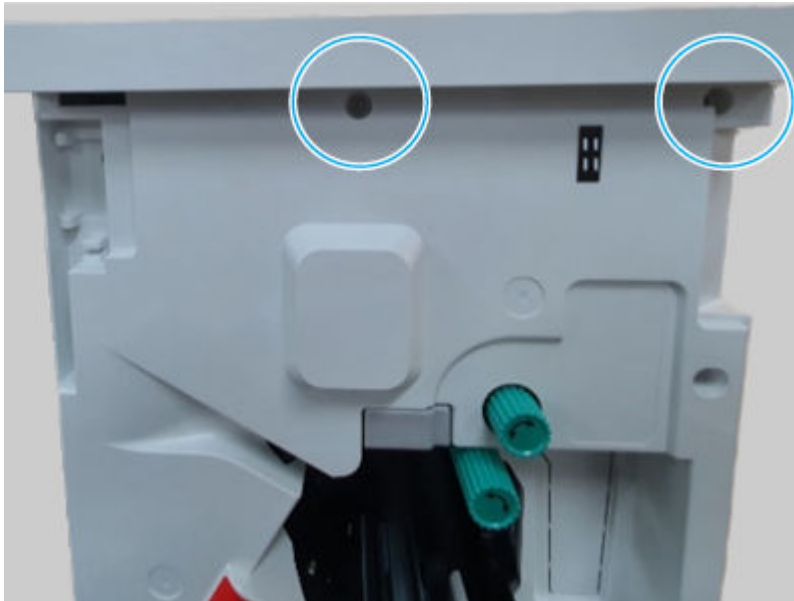
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1505 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1506 Remove the cover

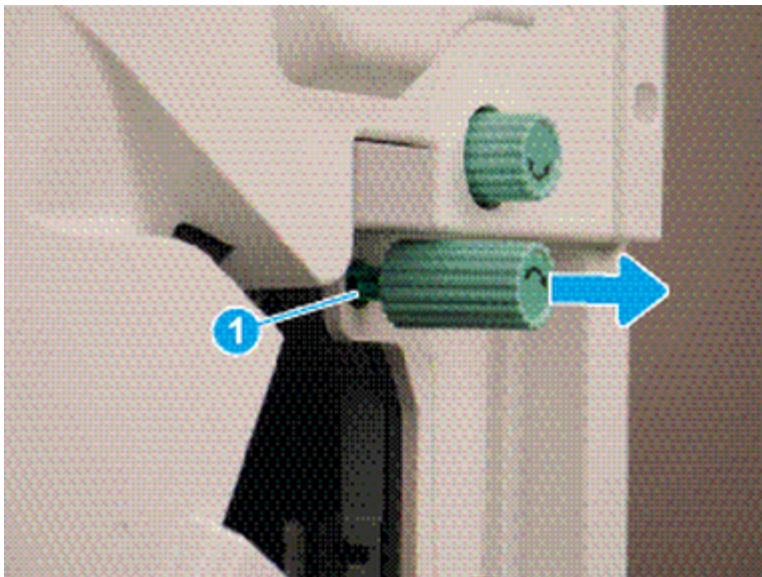


6. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1507 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1508 Remove the cover

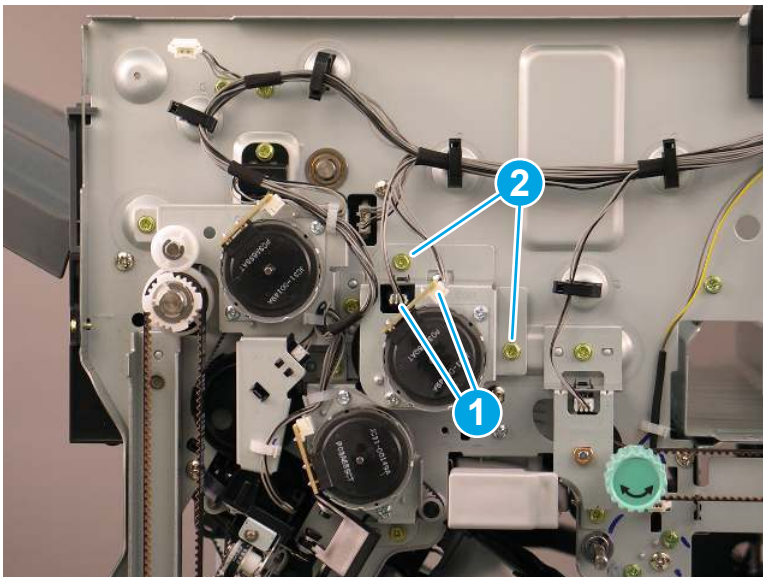


7. Remove the external finisher main exit cam motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher main exit cam motor assembly.

- Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the main exit cam motor assembly.

Figure 6-1509 Remove the assembly

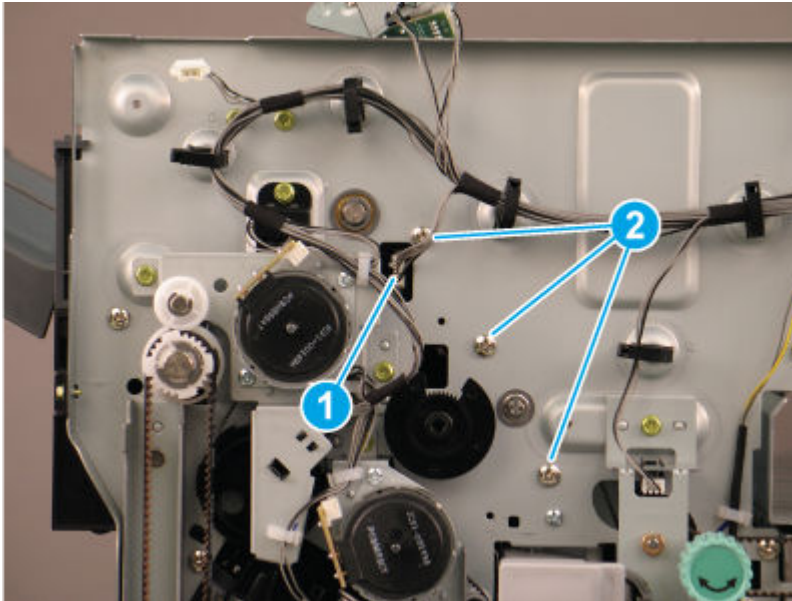


8. Remove the external finisher top lower feed assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top lower feed assembly.

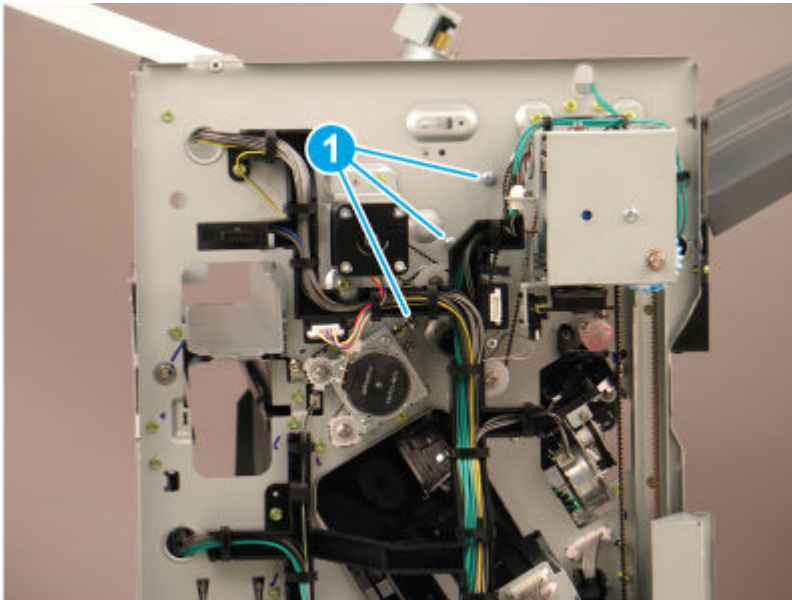
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 6-1510 Disconnect connector and remove screws



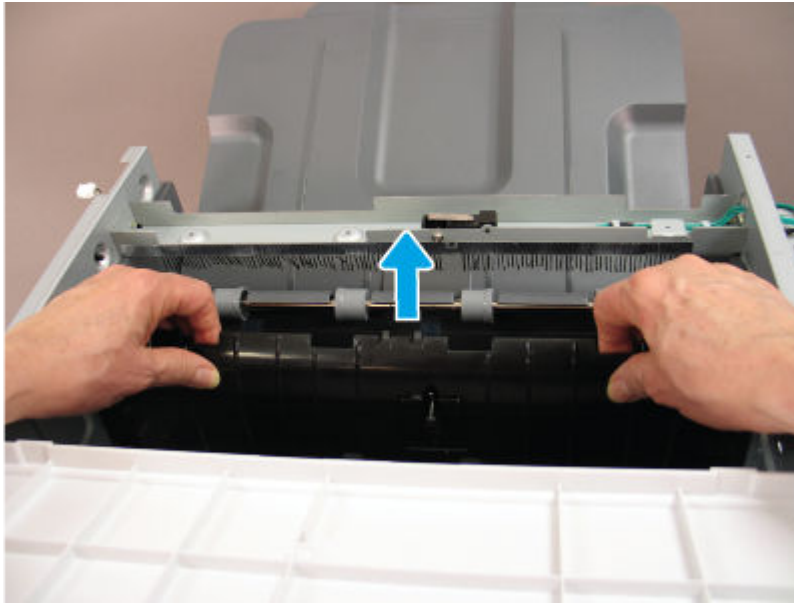
2. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-1511 Remove three screws



3. Pull the top lower feed assembly straight up and out of the finisher.

Figure 6-1512 Remove the assembly

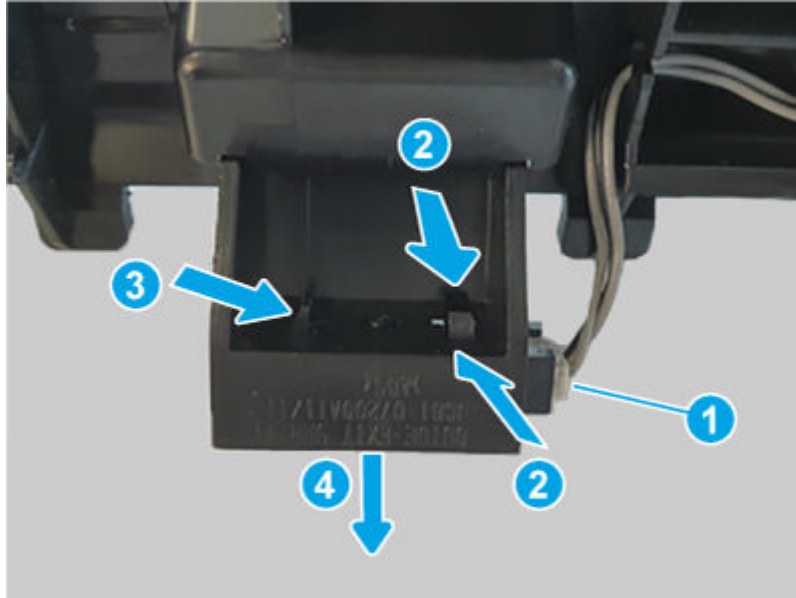


9. Remove the external finisher top exit sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top exit sensor.

- Do the following:
 - Disconnect one connector (callout 1).
 - Release the hooks (callout 2).
 - Slide the sensor assembly as shown below (callout 3).
 - Remove the top exit sensor (callout 4).

Figure 6-1513 Remove the sensor



10. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Exit motor assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher exit motor assembly.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-238 Part information

Part number	Part description
8GS05-60106	Exit motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

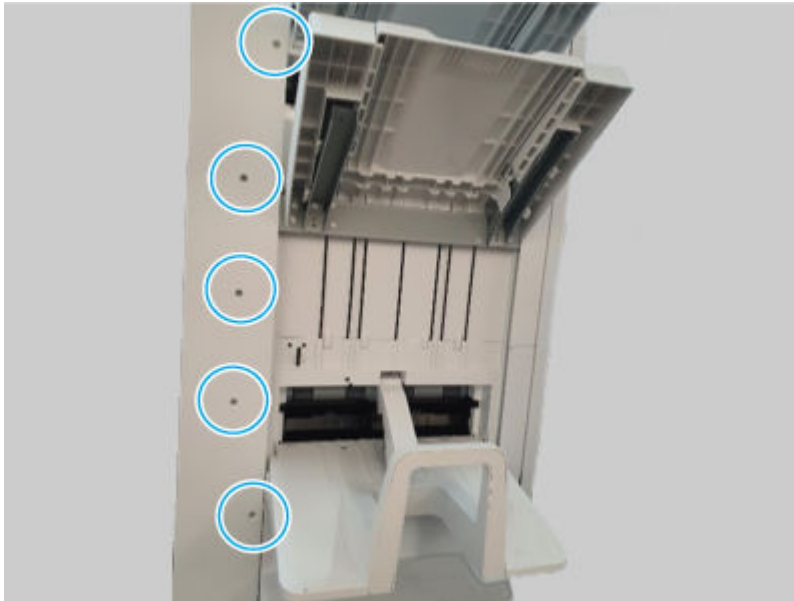
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1514 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


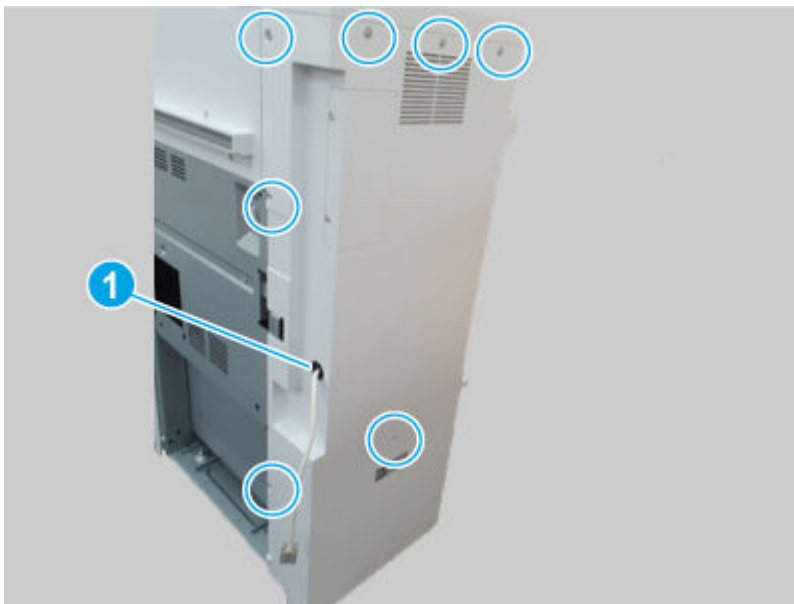
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1515 Remove the cover

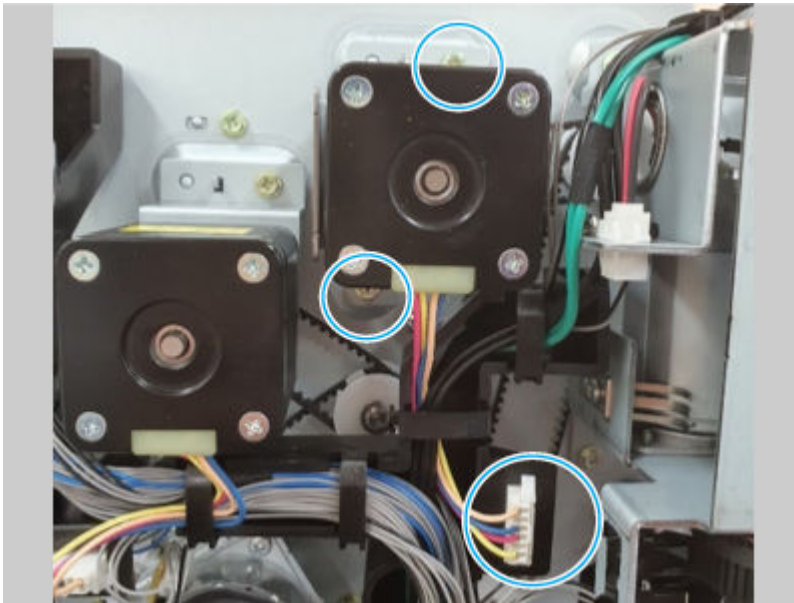


2. Remove the external finisher exit motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher exit motor assembly.

- Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the exit motor assembly.


Figure 6-1516 Remove the assembly



3. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Exit motor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher exit motor.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-239 Part information

Part number	Part description
3SJ9-80501	Exit motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

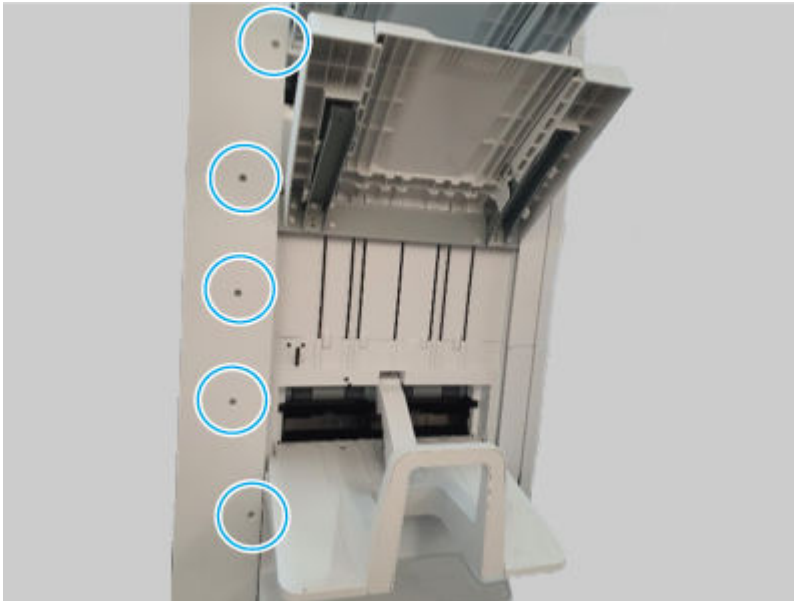
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1517 Remove five screws

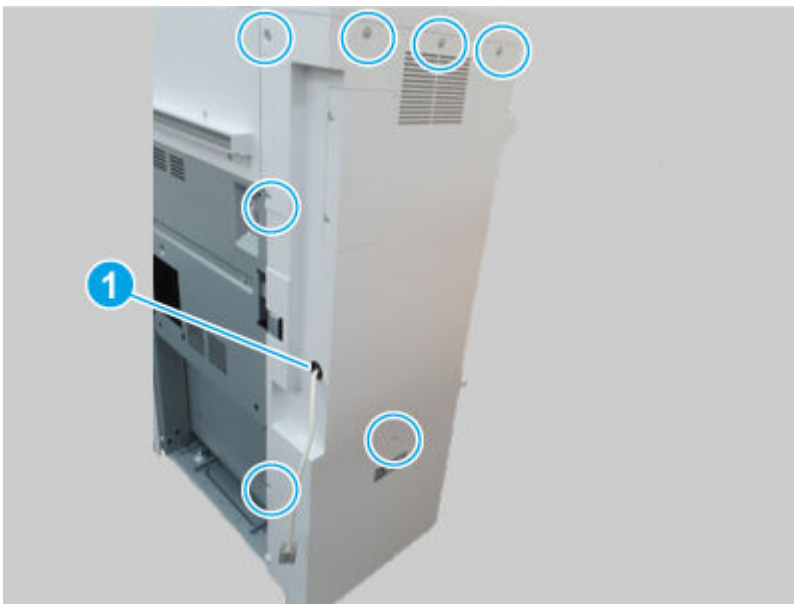


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1518 Remove the cover

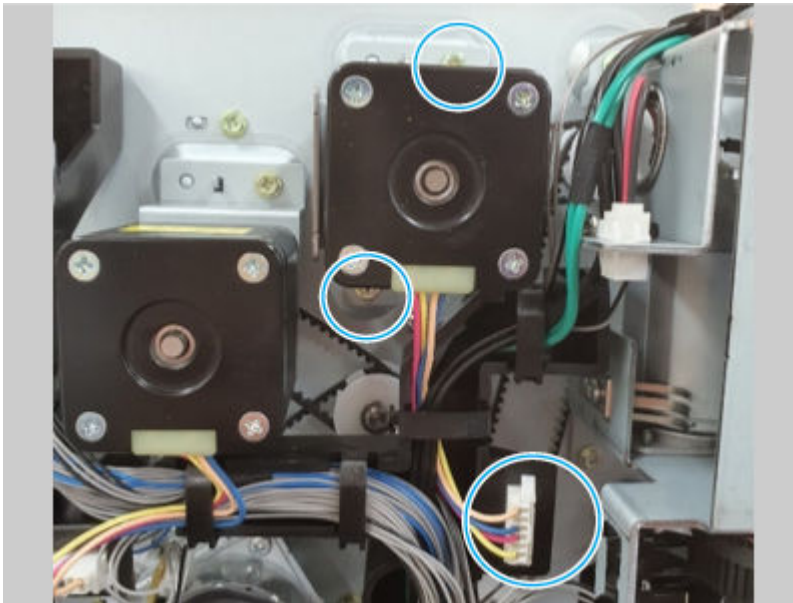


2. Remove the external finisher exit motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher exit motor assembly.

- Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the exit motor assembly.

Figure 6-1519 Remove the assembly



3. Remove the external finisher exit motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher exit motor.

- Remove two screws, and then remove the exit motor.


Figure 6-1520 Remove the motor



4. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Top output tray unit

Review the external finisher top output tray unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Top lower feed assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher top lower feed assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-240 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01454A	Top lower feed assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

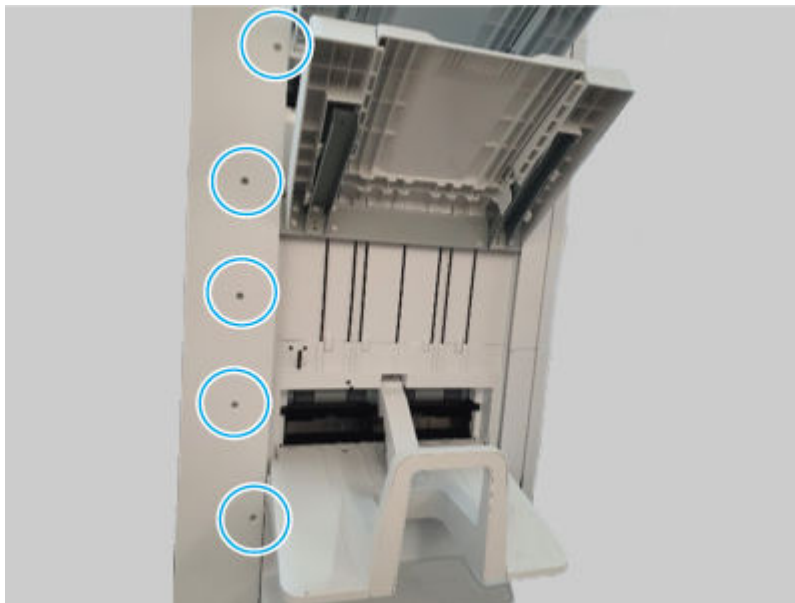
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1521 Remove five screws

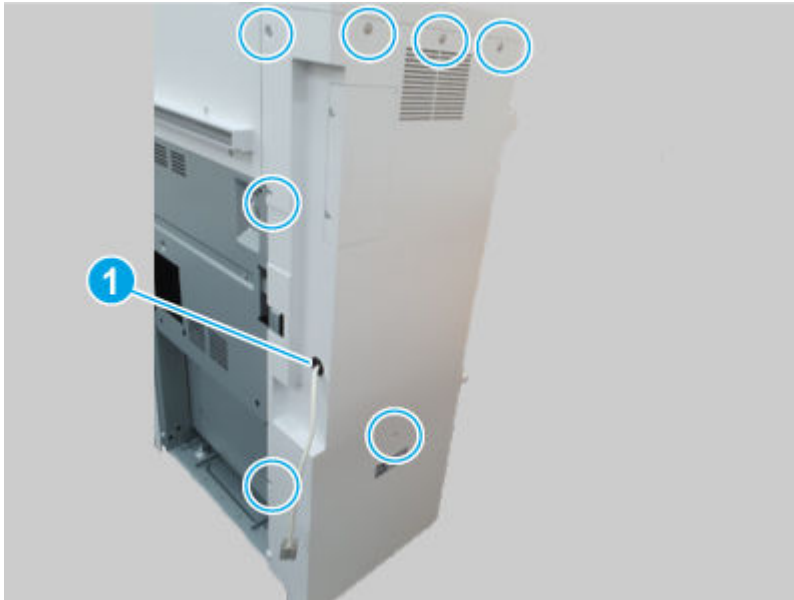


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1522 Remove the cover

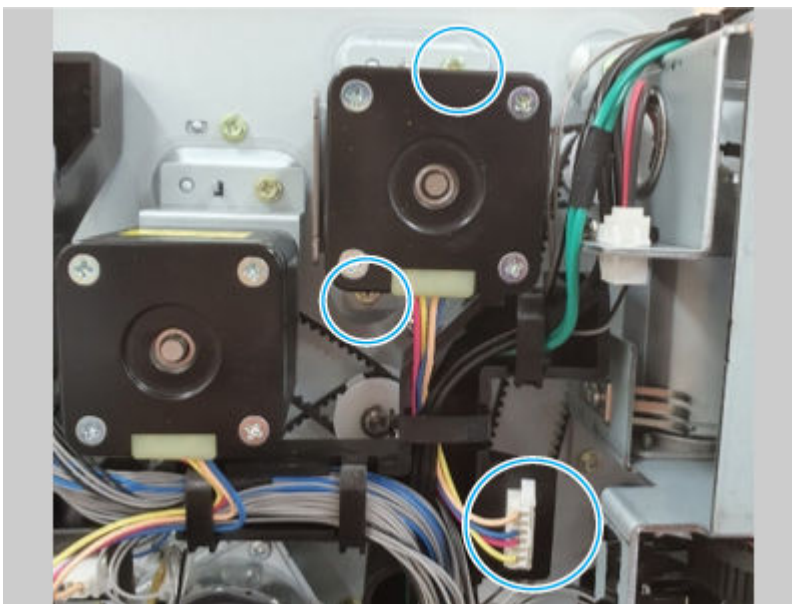


2. Remove the external finisher exit motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher exit motor assembly.

- Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the exit motor assembly.

Figure 6-1523 Remove the assembly

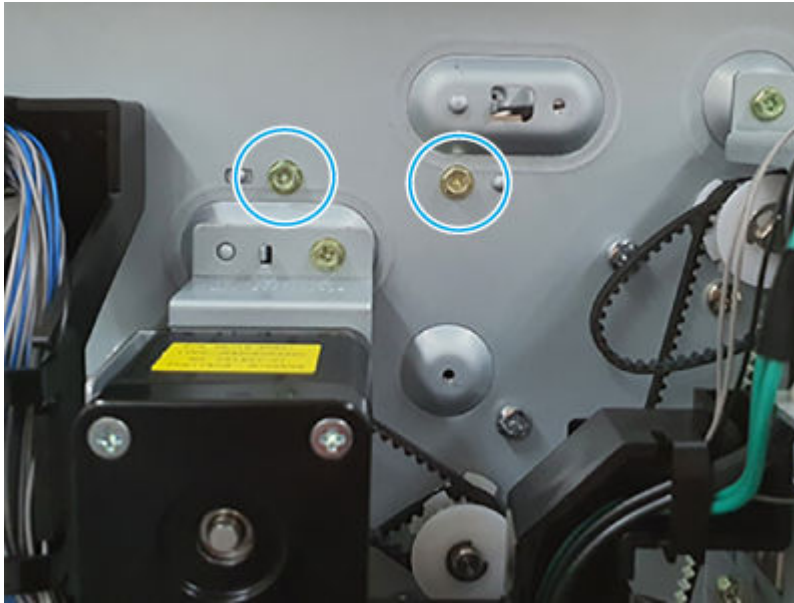


3. Remove the external finisher top jam cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top jam cover assembly.

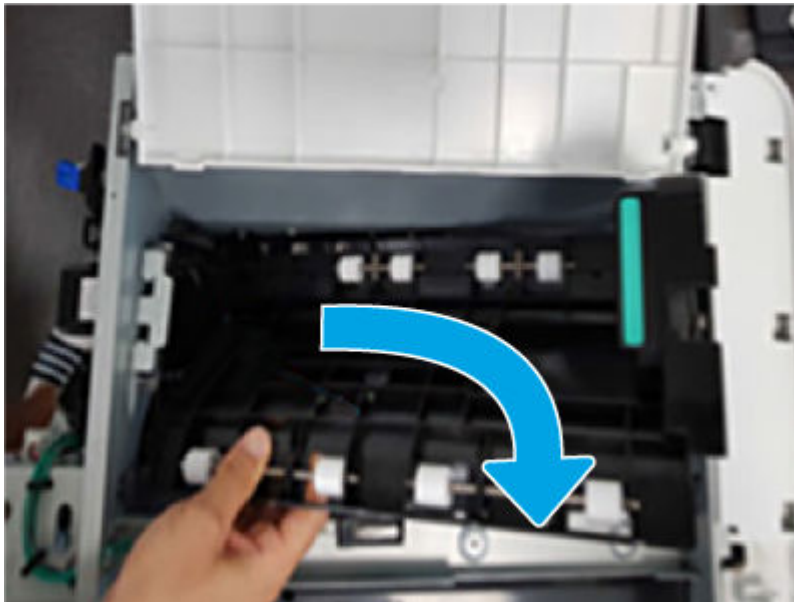
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1524 Remove two screws



2. Pull the top jam cover assembly out of the finisher.

Figure 6-1525 Remove the assembly

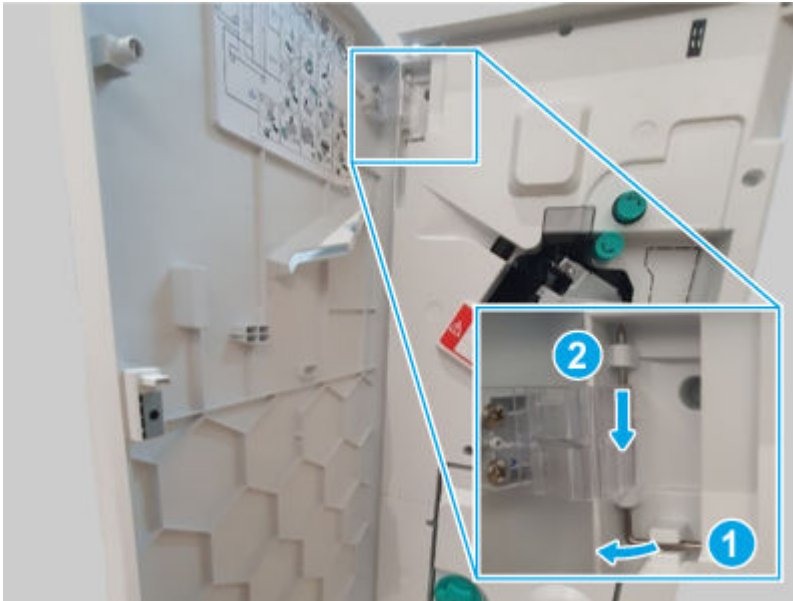


4. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

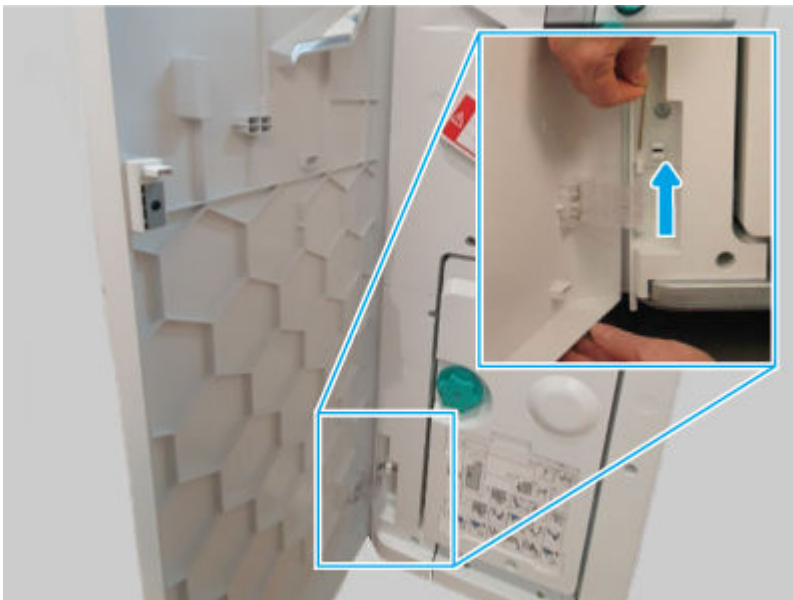
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1526 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1527 Remove the door



5. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

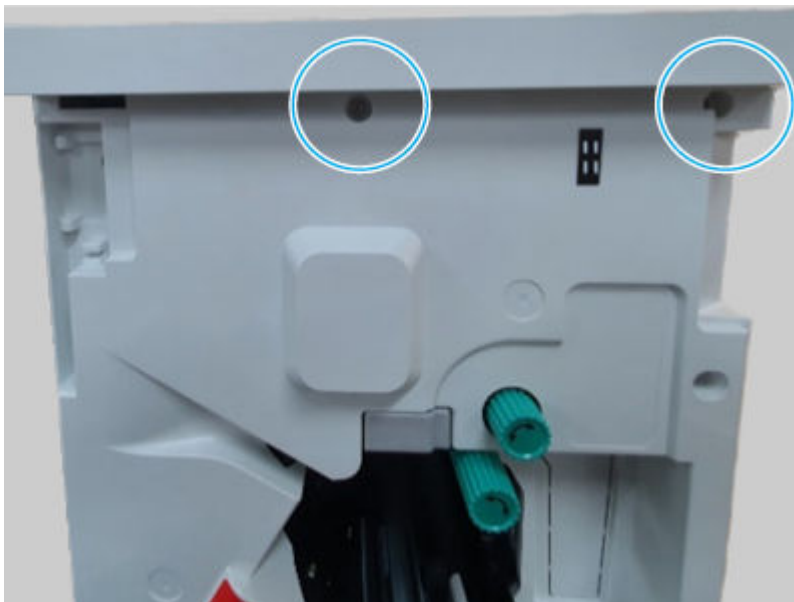
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1528 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1529 Remove the cover

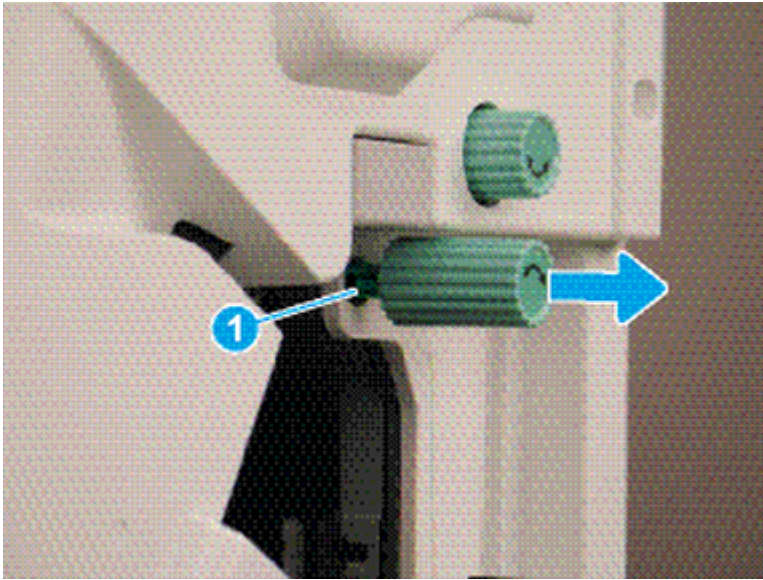


6. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1530 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1531 Remove the cover

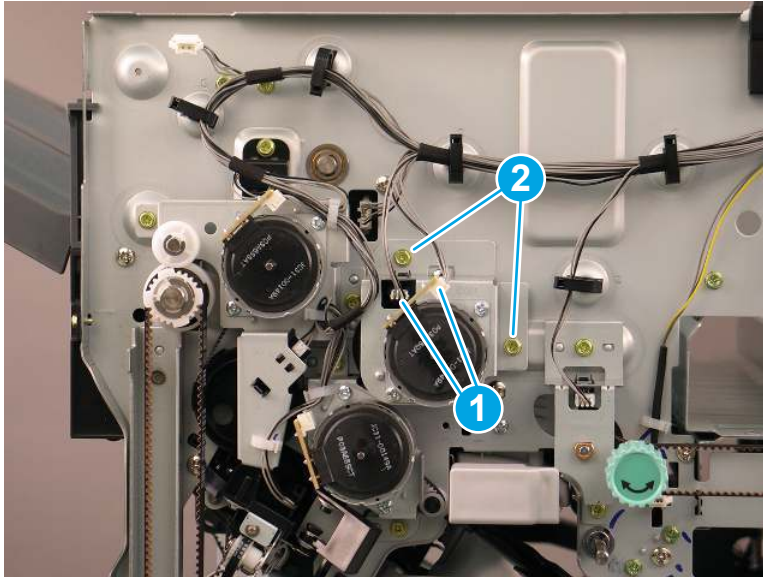


7. Remove the external finisher main exit cam motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher main exit cam motor assembly.

- Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the main exit cam motor assembly.

Figure 6-1532 Remove the assembly

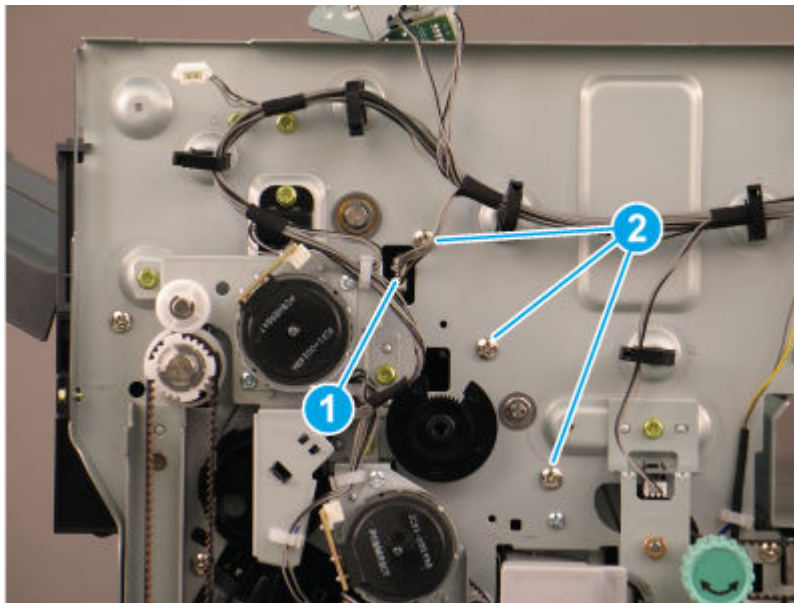


8. Remove the external finisher top lower feed assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top lower feed assembly.

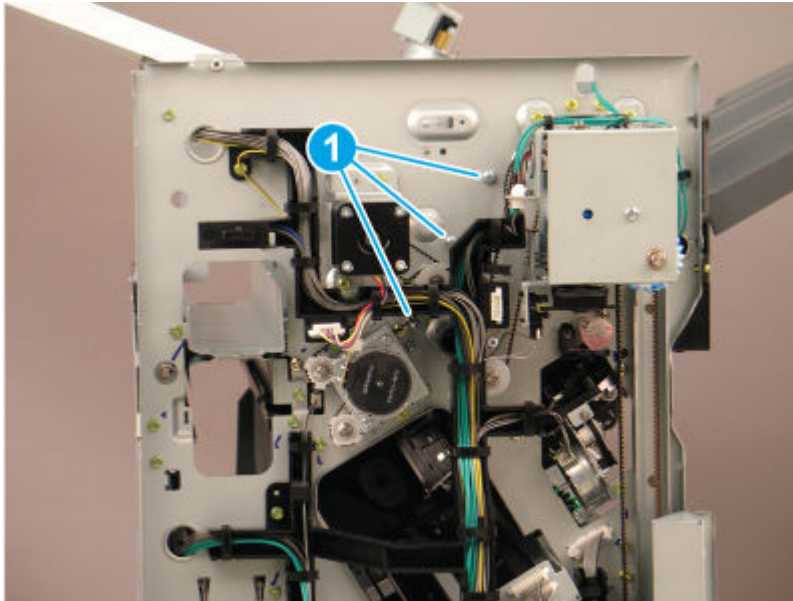
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 6-1533 Disconnect connector and remove screws



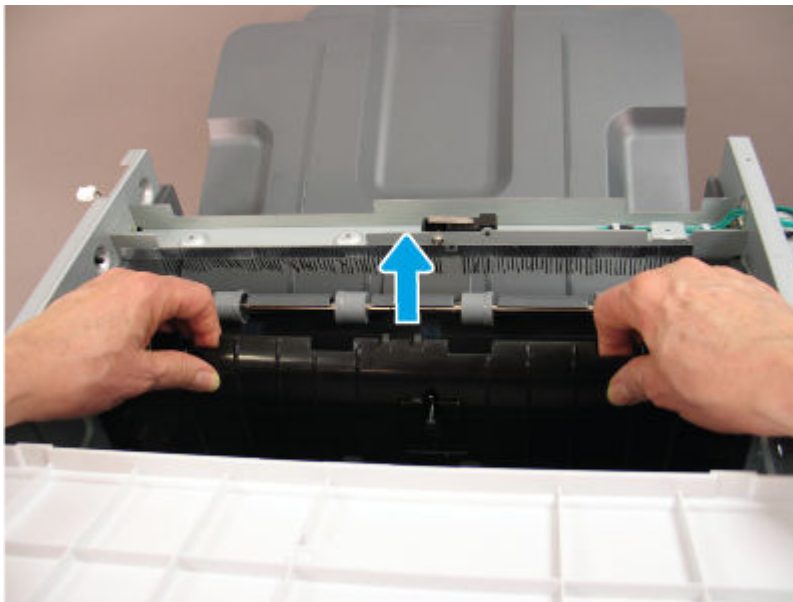
2. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-1534 Remove three screws



3. Pull the top lower feed assembly straight up and out of the finisher.


Figure 6-1535 Remove the assembly



9. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray extension

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher tray extension.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-241 Part Information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-40029	Tray extension

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

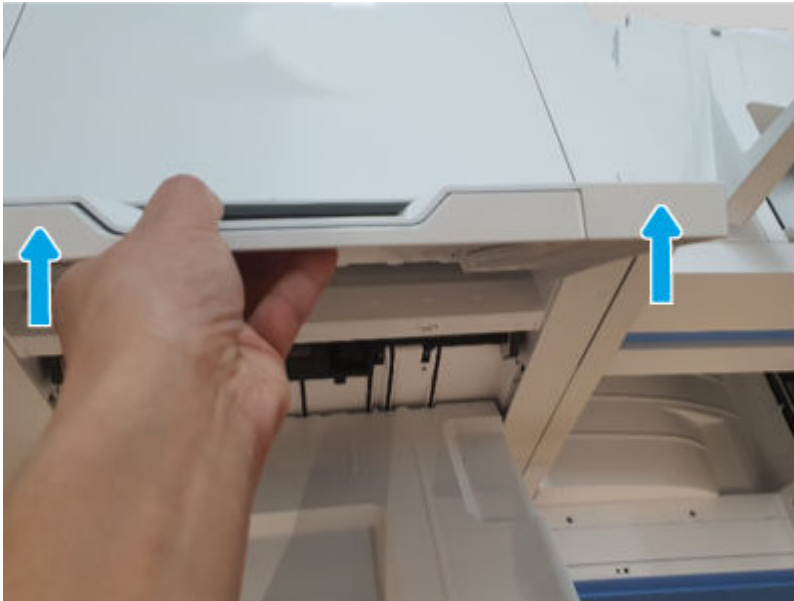
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher top output tray

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top output tray.

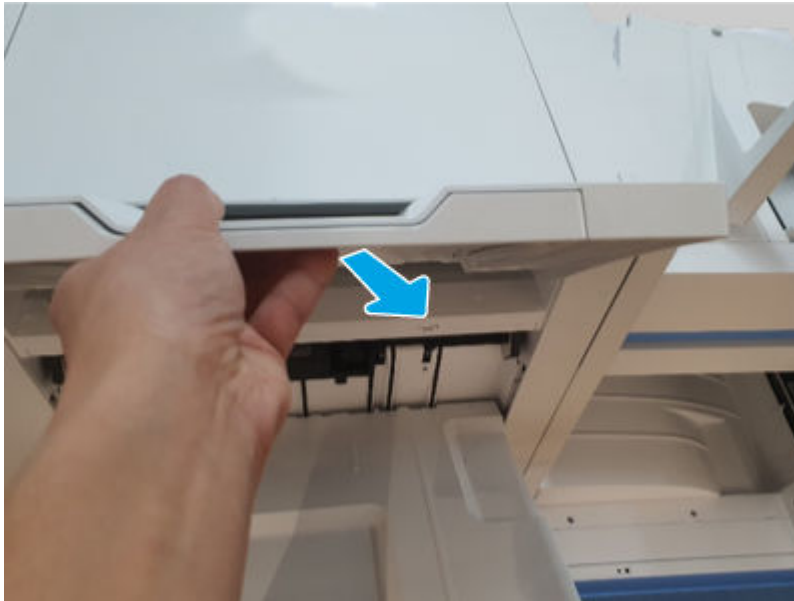
1. Rotate the tray up.

Figure 6-1536 Rotate the tray



2. Pull the top output tray out and away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1537 Remove the tray

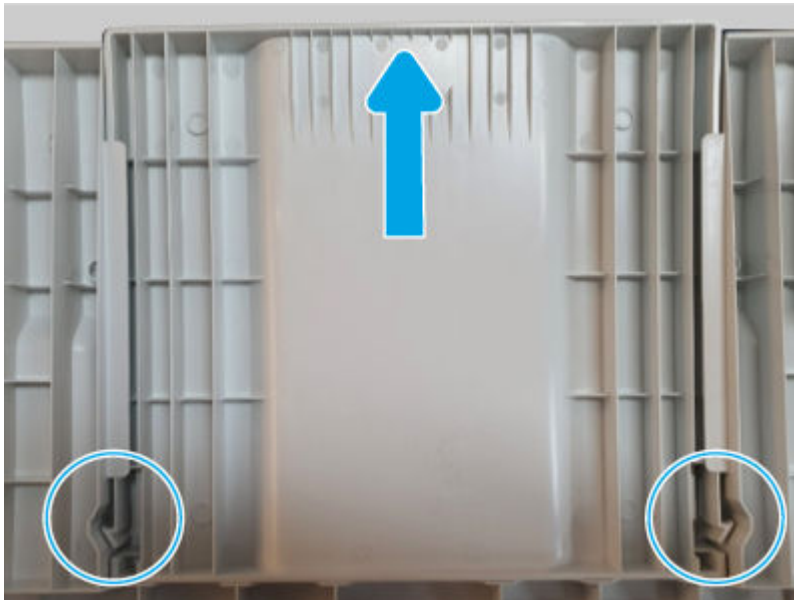


2. Remove the external finisher tray extension

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher tray extension.

- Release two hooks, and then slide the tray extension away from the top output tray to remove it.

Figure 6-1538 Remove the tray extension



3. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Top output tray paper full sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher top output tray paper full sensor.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-242 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC82-01039A	Tray sensor kit (Top output tray paper full sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

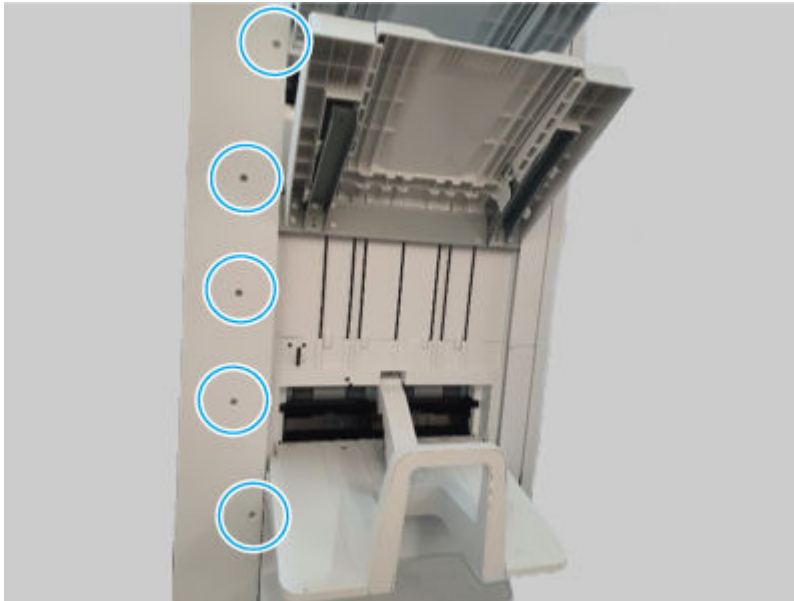
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1539 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1540 Remove the cover

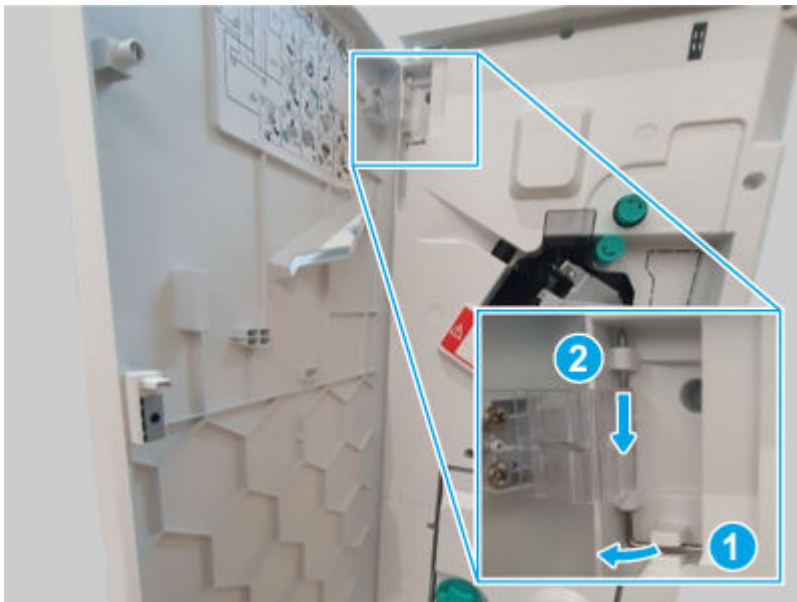


2. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

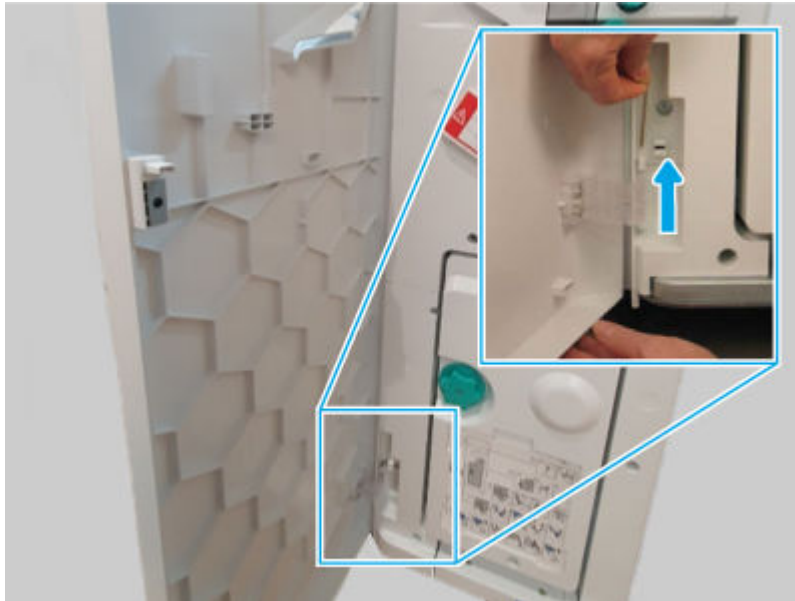
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1541 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1542 Remove the door



3. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1543 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1544 Remove the cover

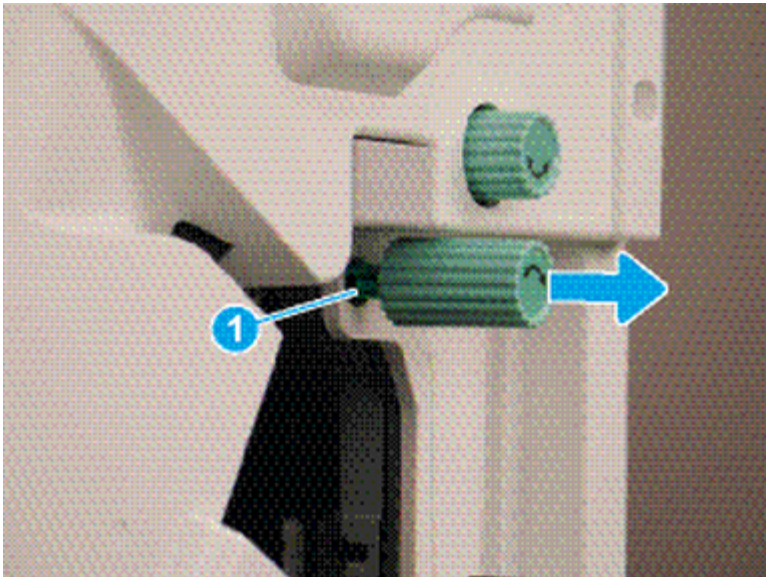


4. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1545 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1546 Remove the cover

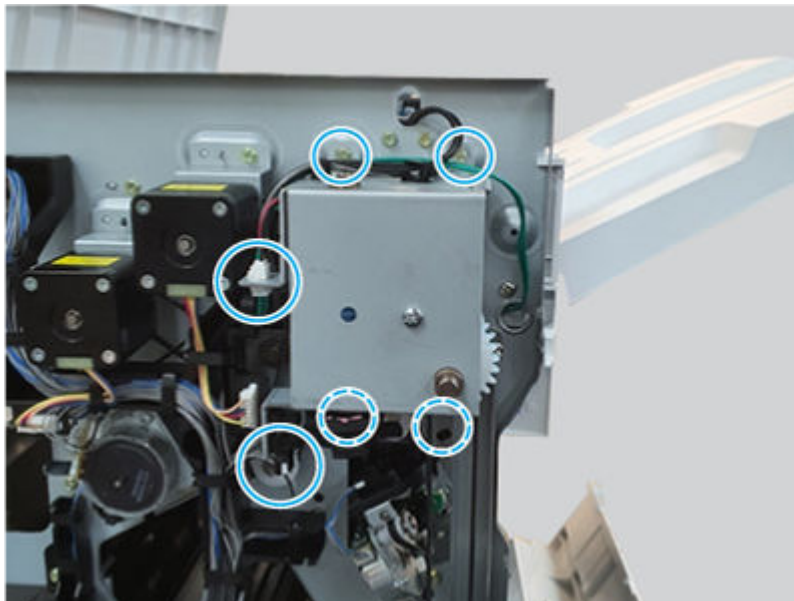


5. Remove the external finisher main output tray motor drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher main output tray motor drive assembly.

- Disconnect two connectors, remove four screws, and then remove the main output tray motor drive assembly.

Figure 6-1547 Remove the sensor

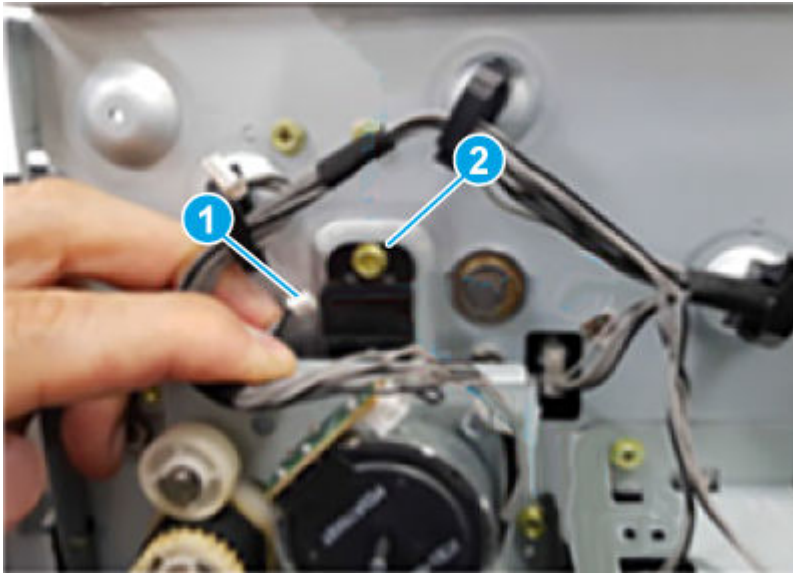


6. Remove the external finisher top output tray paper full sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top output tray paper full sensor.

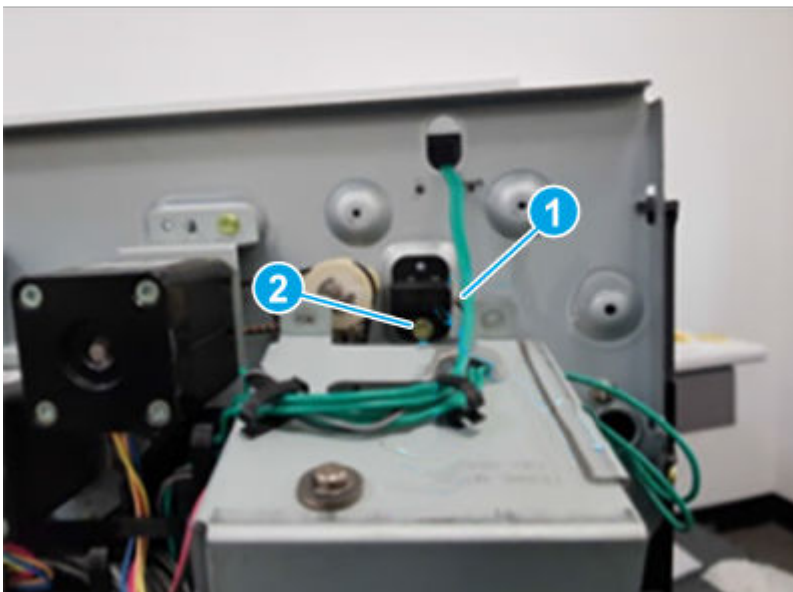
1. Disconnect one connector, and then remove one screw.

Figure 6-1548 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove one screw.

Figure 6-1549 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



7. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Main exit unit

Review the external finisher main exit unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Main exit sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher main exit sensor.


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-243 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC32-00020A	Sensor-RP (Main exit sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

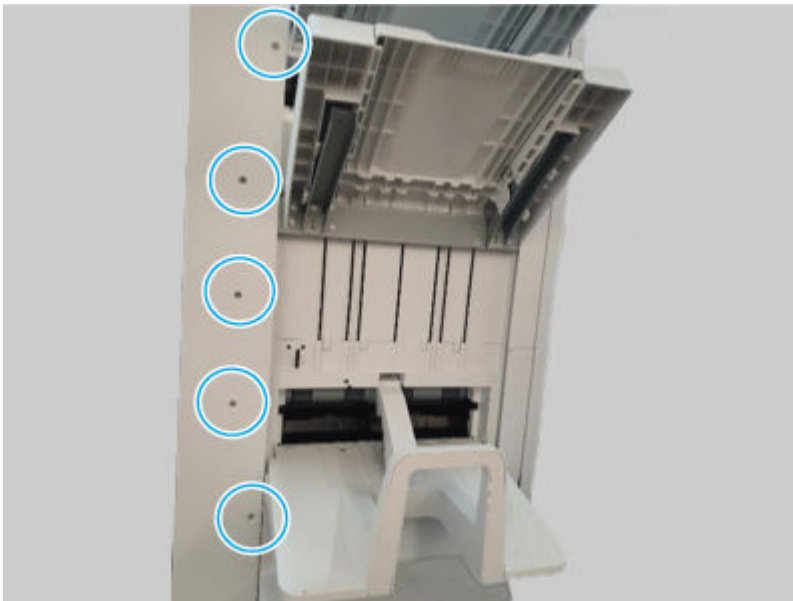
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1550 Remove five screws

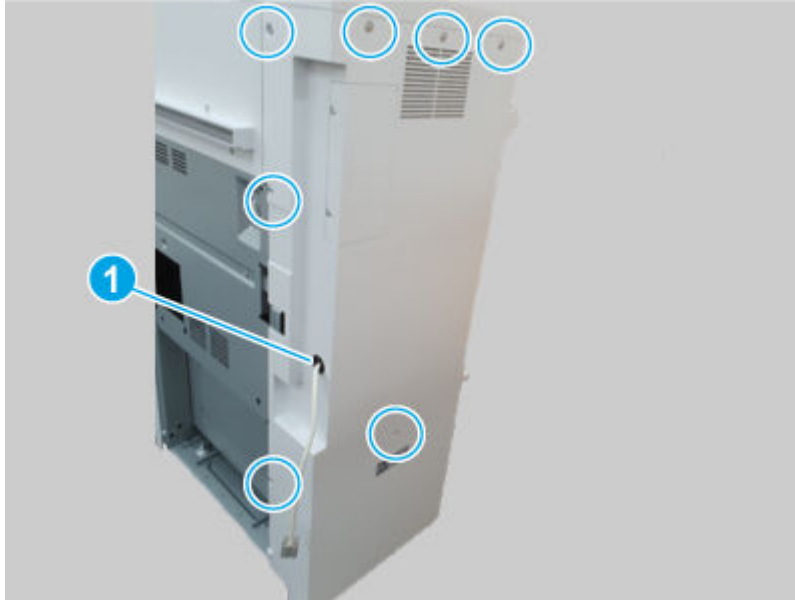


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1551 Remove the cover

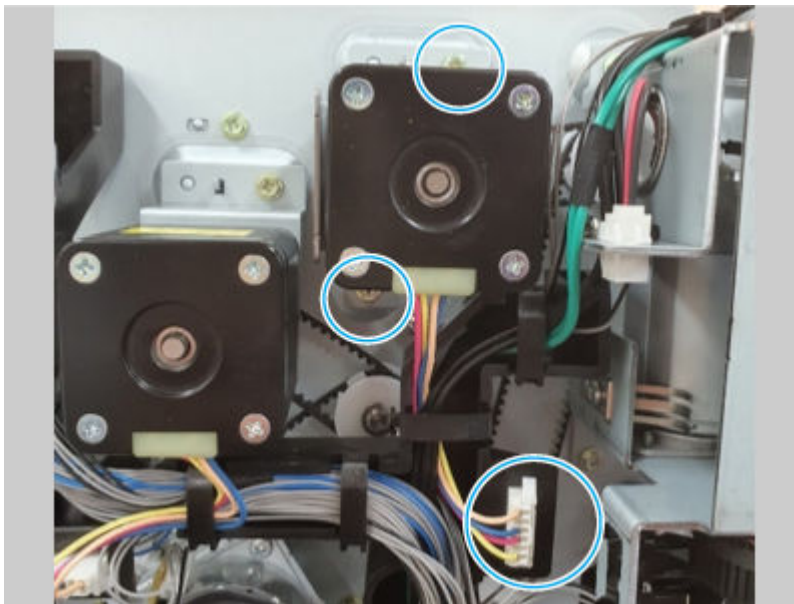


2. Remove the external finisher exit motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher exit motor assembly.

- Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the exit motor assembly.

Figure 6-1552 Remove the assembly

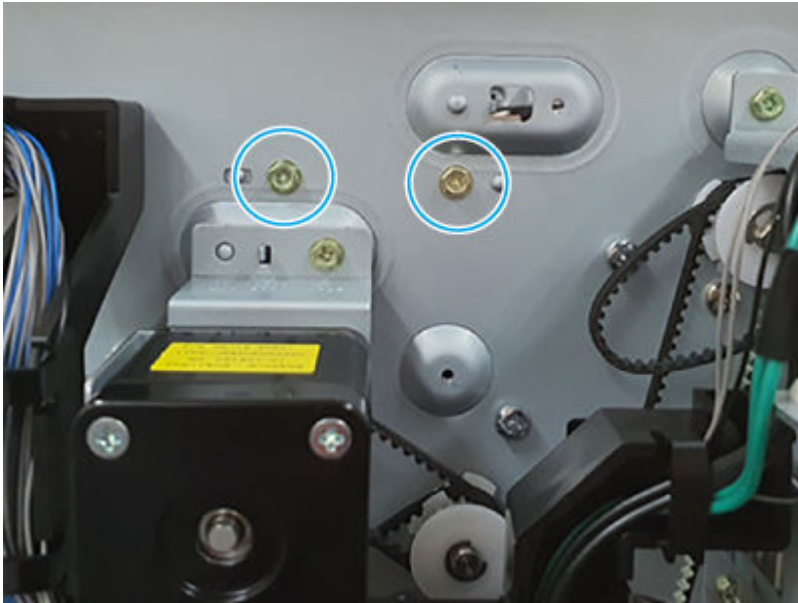


3. Remove the external finisher top jam cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top jam cover assembly.

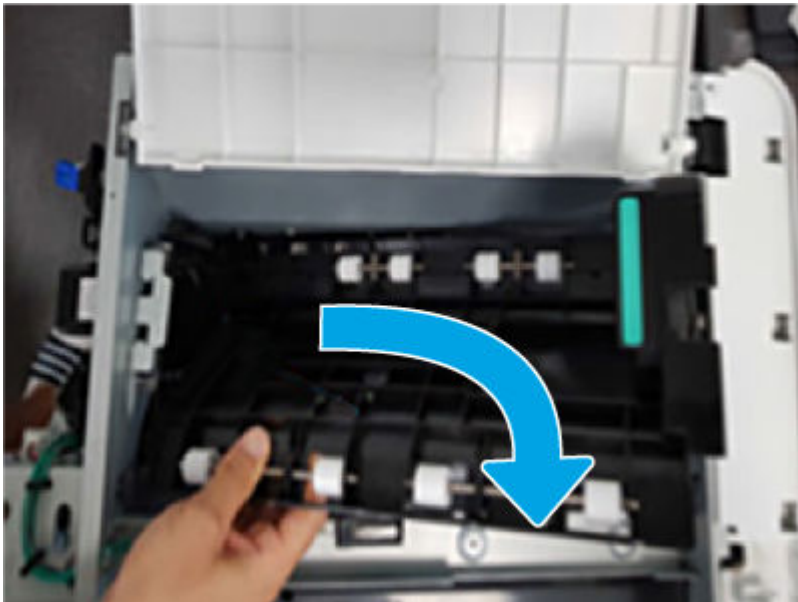
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-1553 Remove two screws



2. Pull the top jam cover assembly out of the finisher.

Figure 6-1554 Remove the assembly

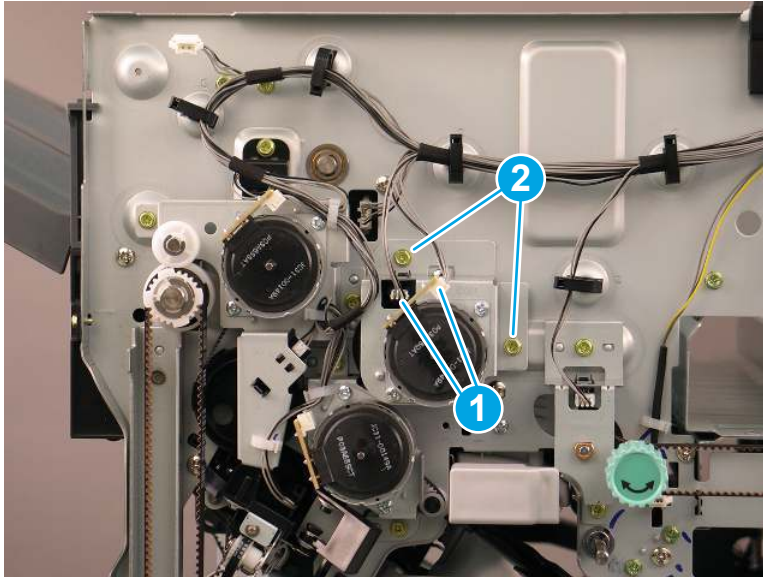


4. Remove the external finisher main exit cam motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher main exit cam motor assembly.

- Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the main exit cam motor assembly.

Figure 6-1555 Remove the assembly

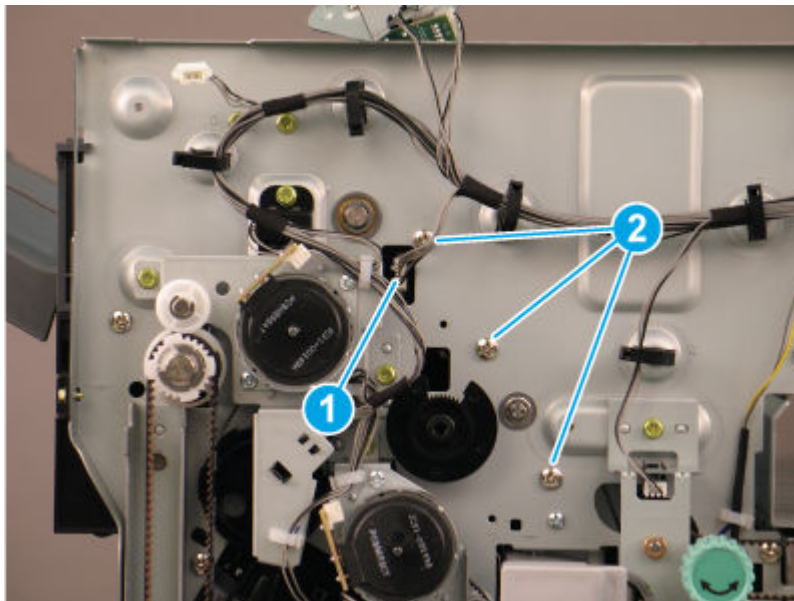


5. Remove the external finisher top lower feed assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top lower feed assembly.

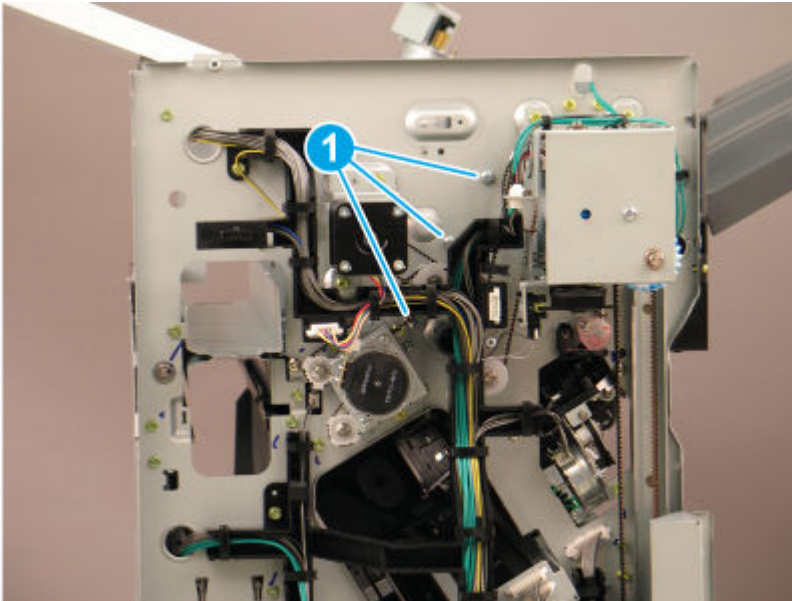
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 6-1556 Disconnect connector and remove screws



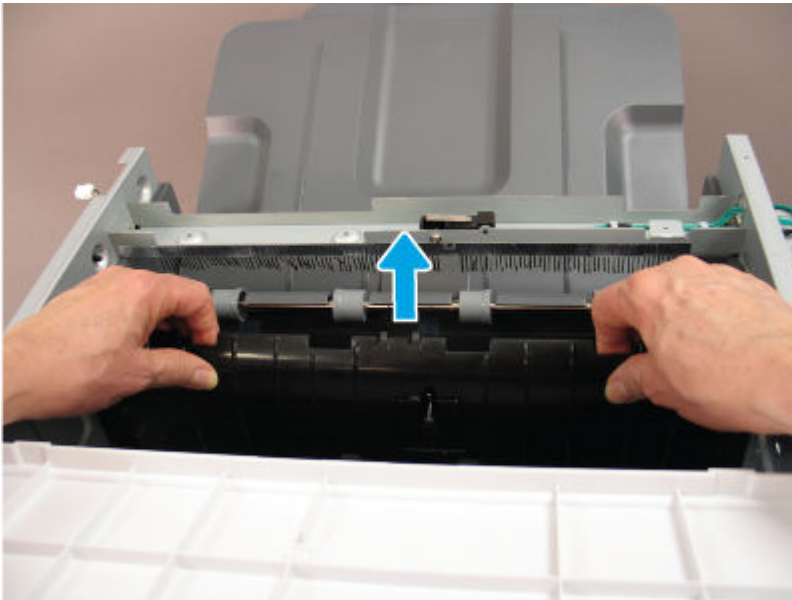
2. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-1557 Remove three screws



3. Pull the top lower feed assembly straight up and out of the finisher.

Figure 6-1558 Remove the assembly

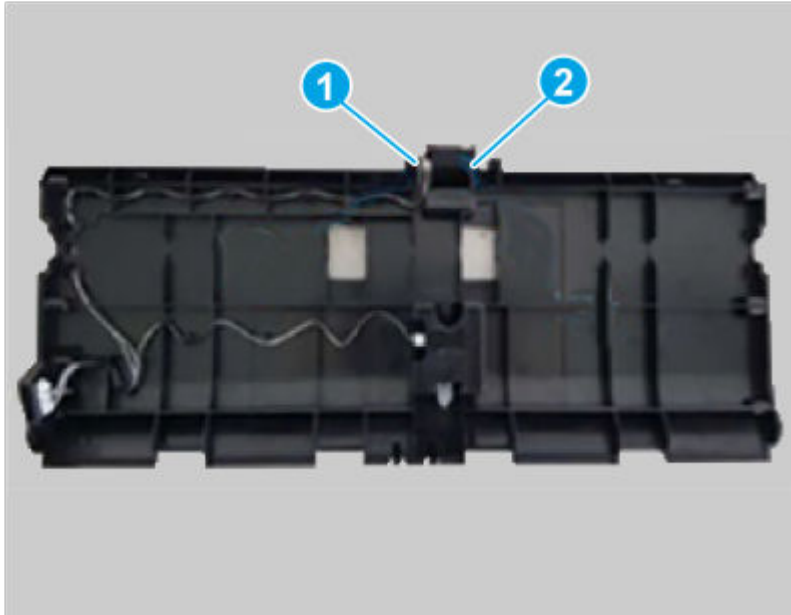


6. Remove the external finisher main exit sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher main exit sensor.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the main exit sensor (callout 2).

Figure 6-1559 Remove the sensor



7. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Main exit cam motor assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher main exit cam motor assembly.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-244 Part Information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01453A	Main exit cam motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

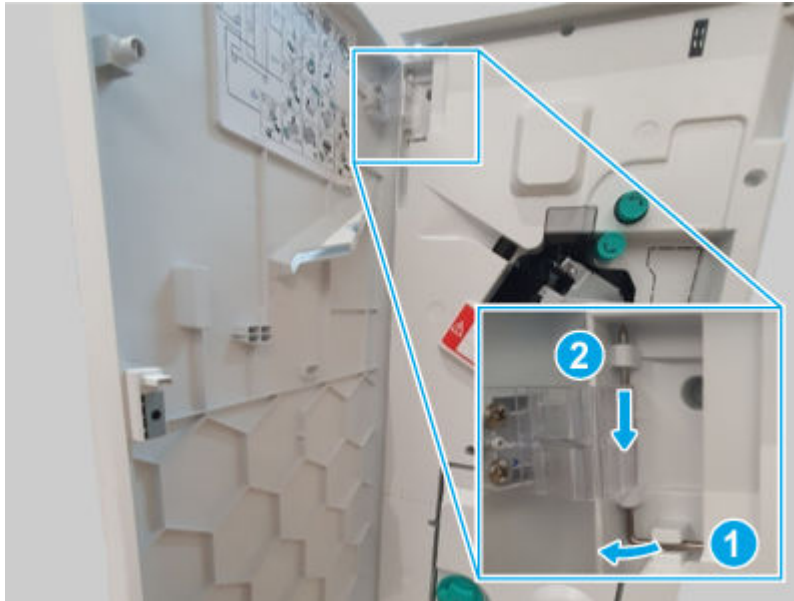
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

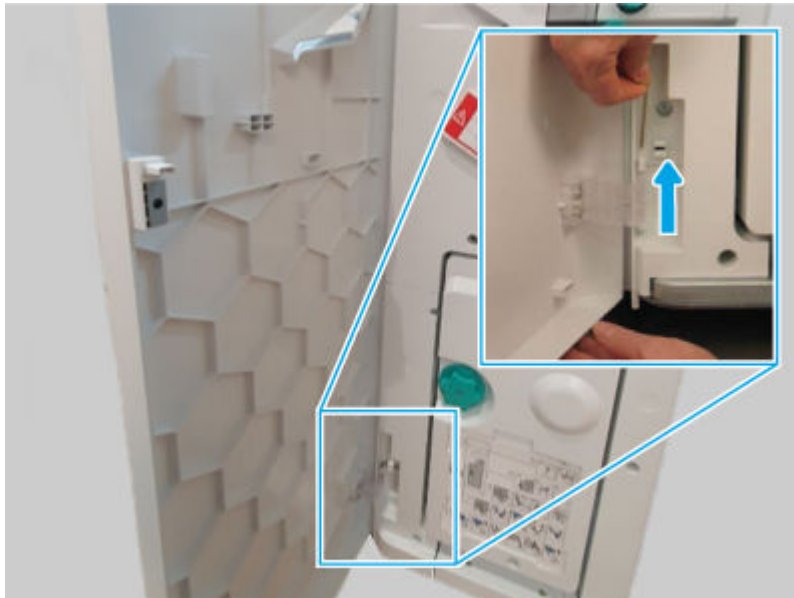
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1560 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1561 Remove the door



2. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1562 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1563 Remove the cover

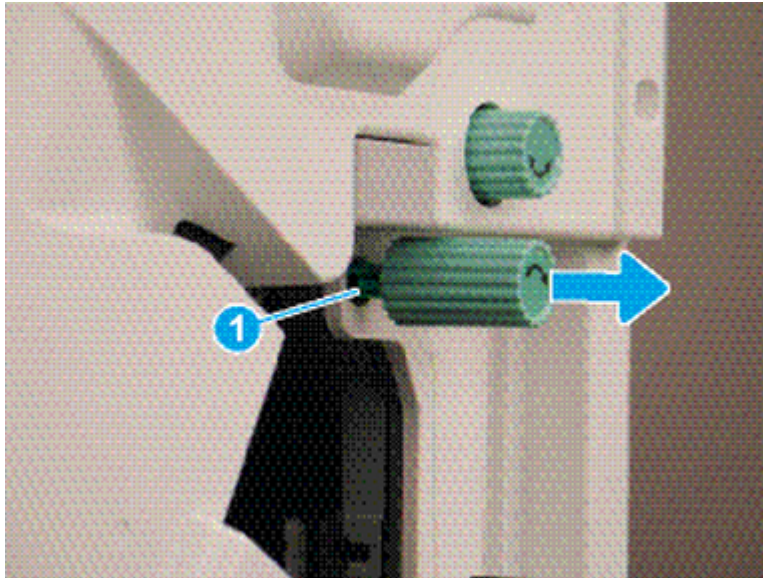


3. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1564 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1565 Remove the cover

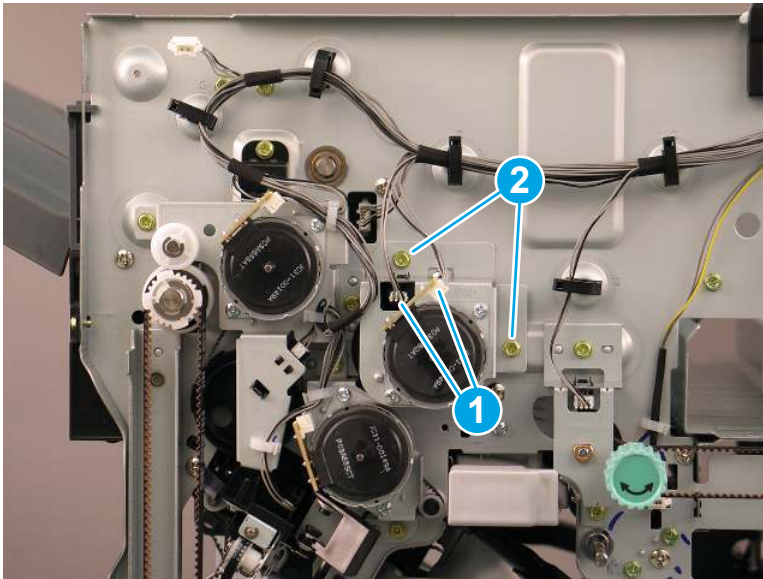


4. Remove the external finisher main exit cam motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher main exit cam motor assembly.

- Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the main exit cam motor assembly.

Figure 6-1566 Remove the assembly



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Main exit cam home sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher main exit cam home sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-245 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Main exit cam home sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

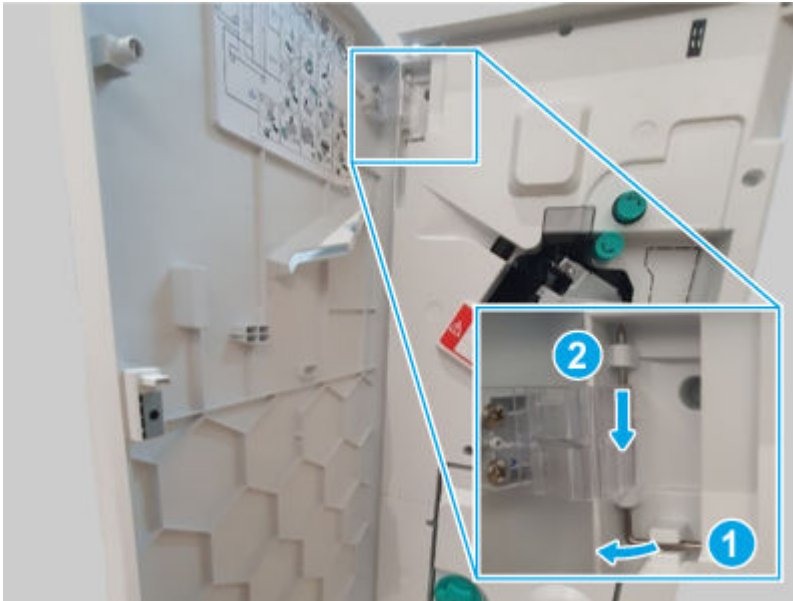
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

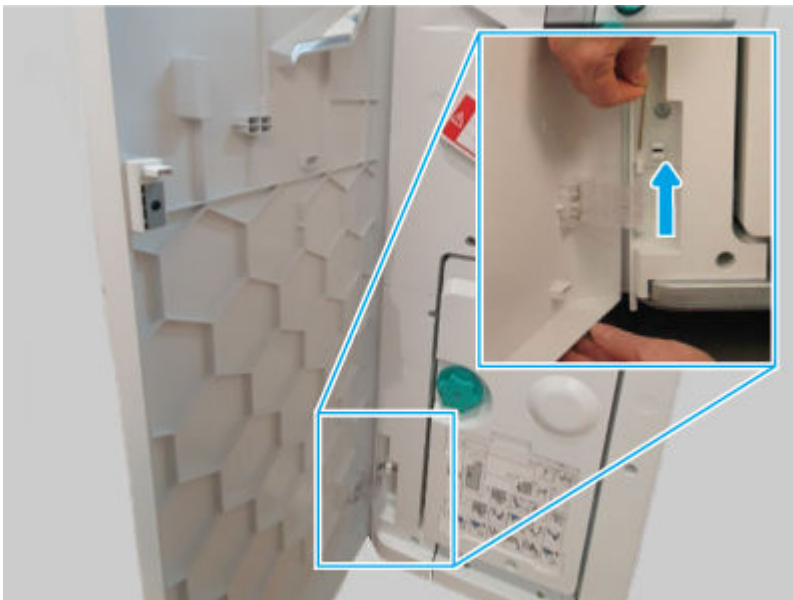
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1567 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1568 Remove the door



2. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

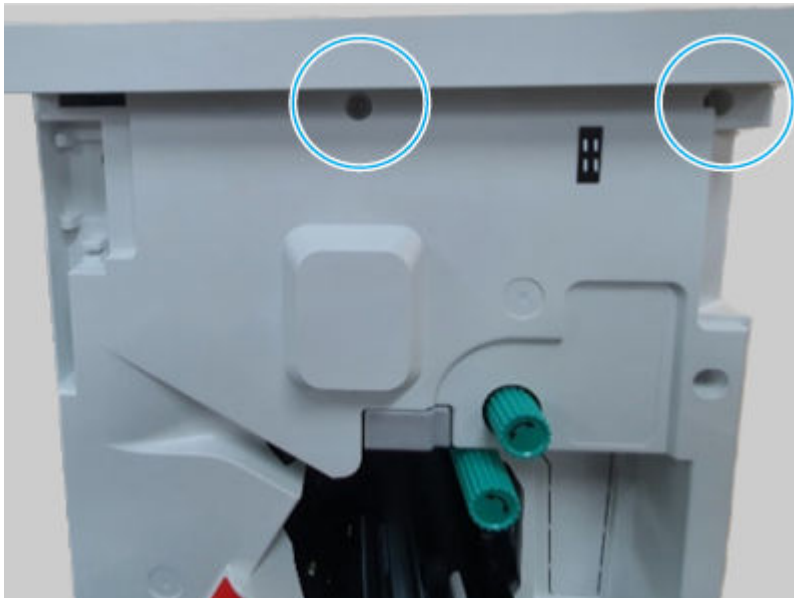
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1569 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1570 Remove the cover

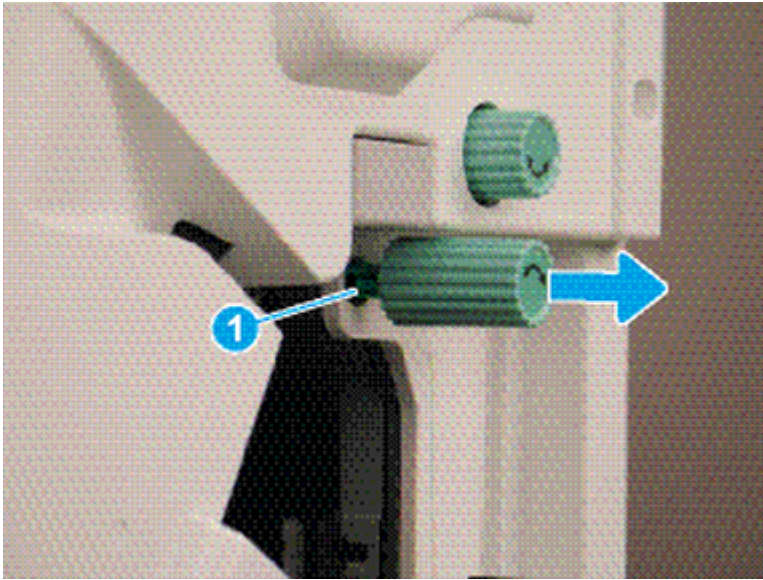


3. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1571 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1572 Remove the cover

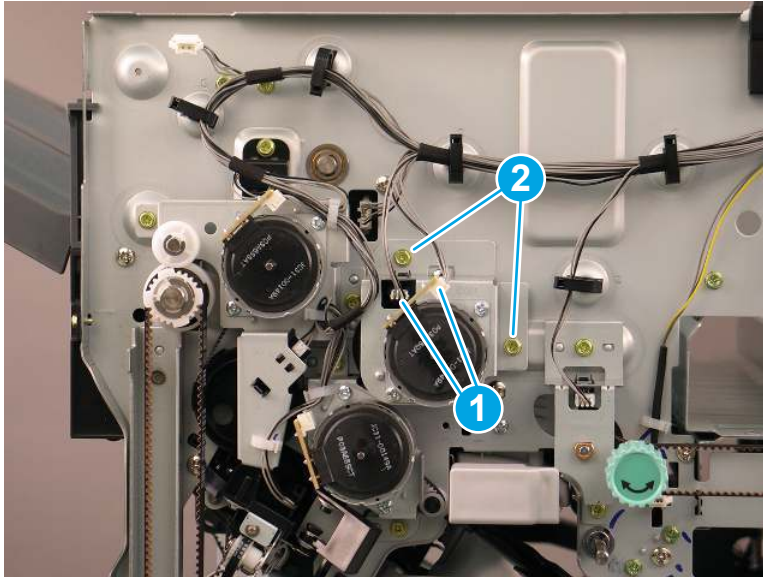


4. Remove the external finisher main exit cam motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher main exit cam motor assembly.

- Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the main exit cam motor assembly.

Figure 6-1573 Remove the assembly

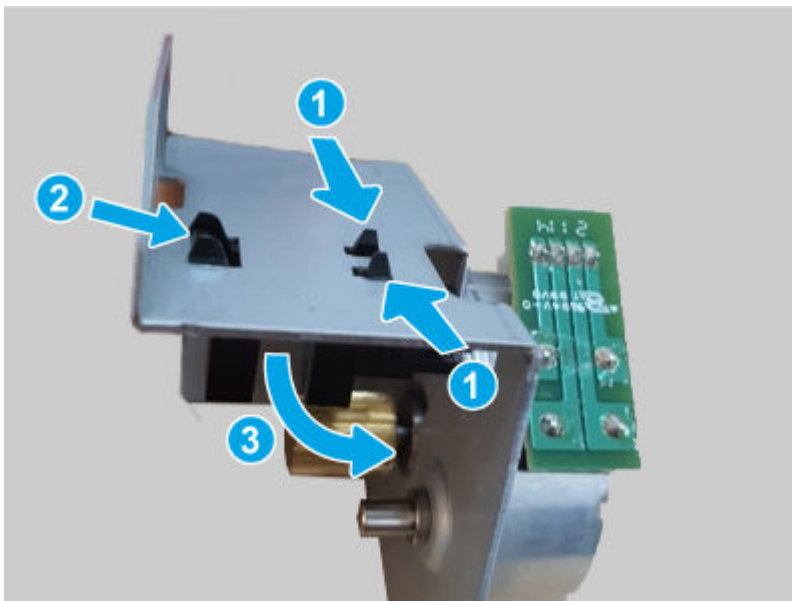


5. Remove the external finisher main exit cam home sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher main exit cam home sensor.

- Do the following:
 - Release the hooks (callout 1).
 - Slide the sensor assembly as shown below (callout 2).
 - Remove the main exit cam home sensor from the bracket (callout 3).

Figure 6-1574 Remove the sensor



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Main exit cam motor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher main exit cam motor.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-246 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ90-60117	Main exit cam motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

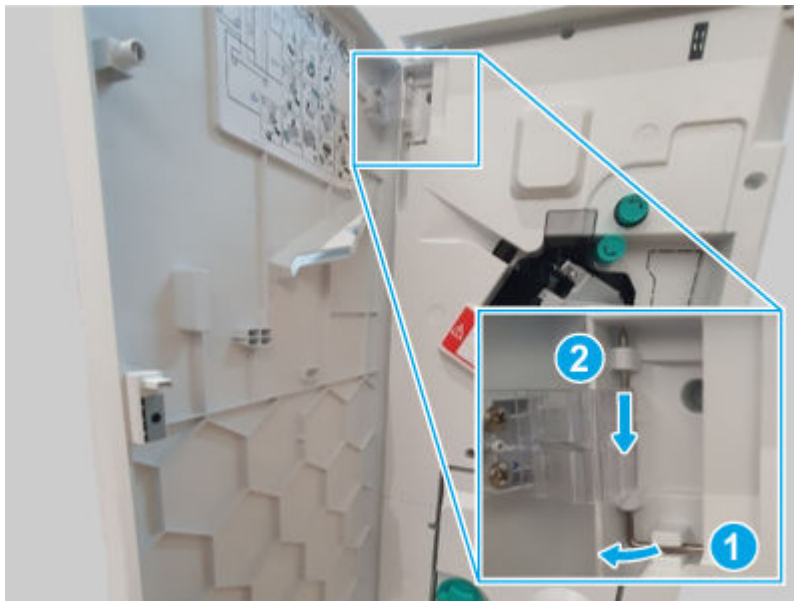
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

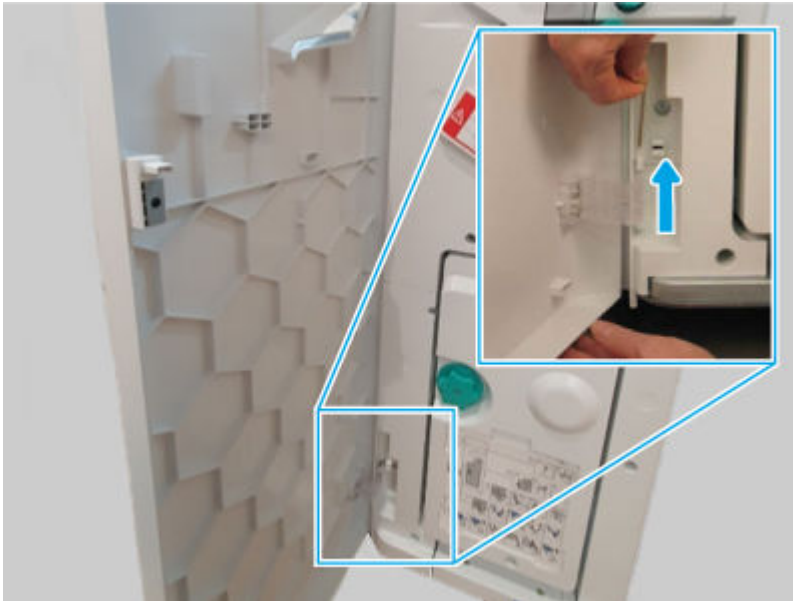
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1575 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1576 Remove the door



2. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

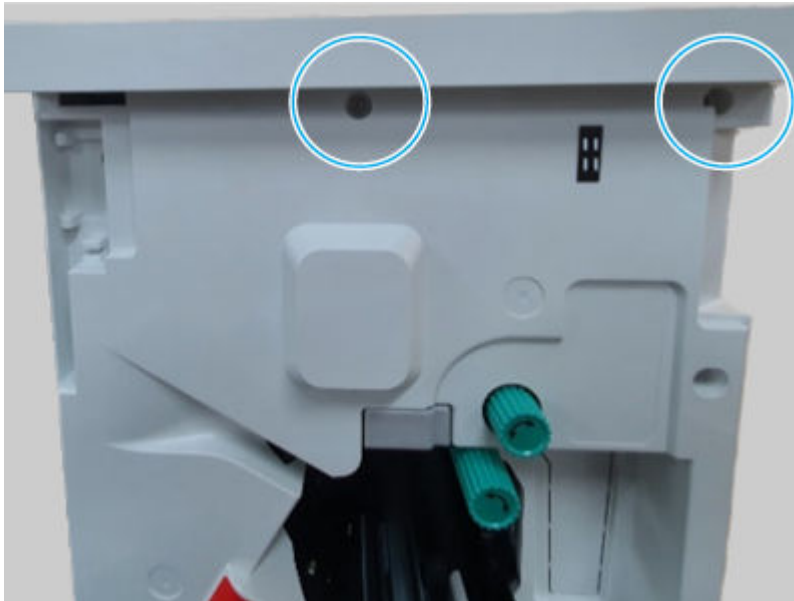
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1577 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1578 Remove the cover

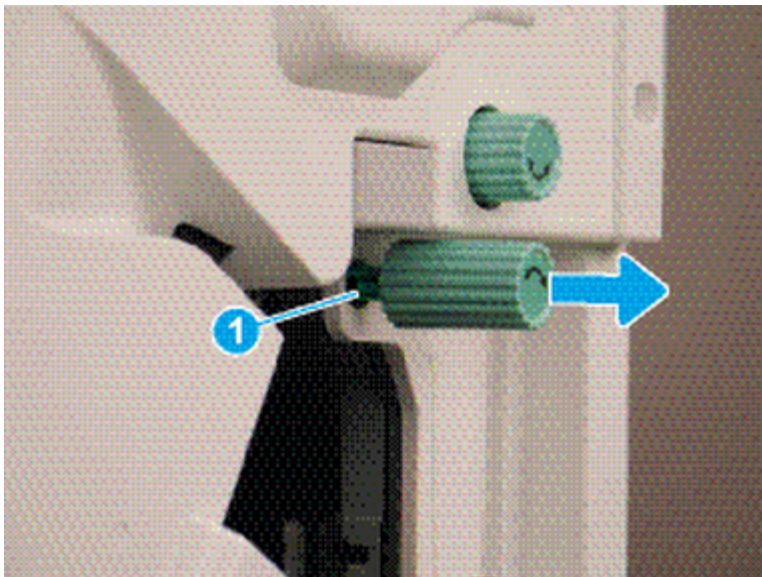


3. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1579 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1580 Remove the cover

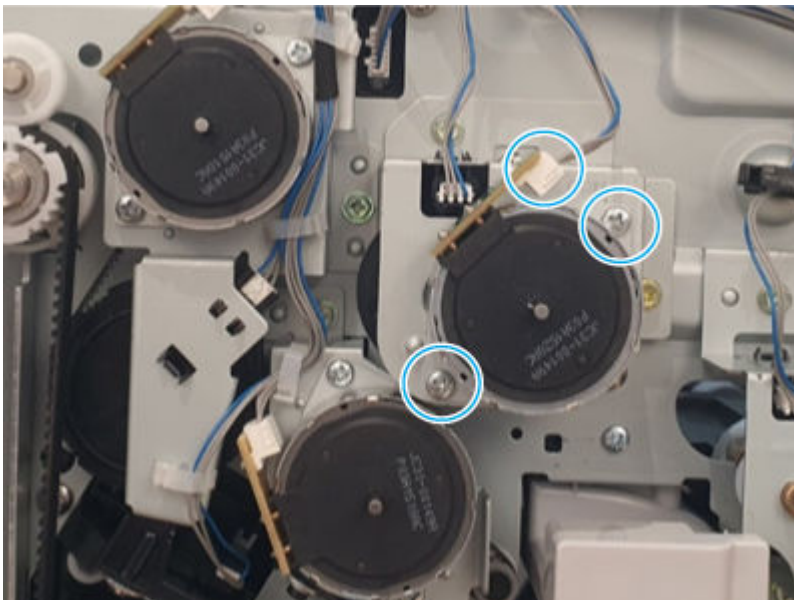


4. Remove the external finisher main exit cam motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher main exit cam motor.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the main exit cam motor.


Figure 6-1581 Remove the motor



5. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Front door switch

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher front door switch.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-247 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC39-02309A	Front door switch

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

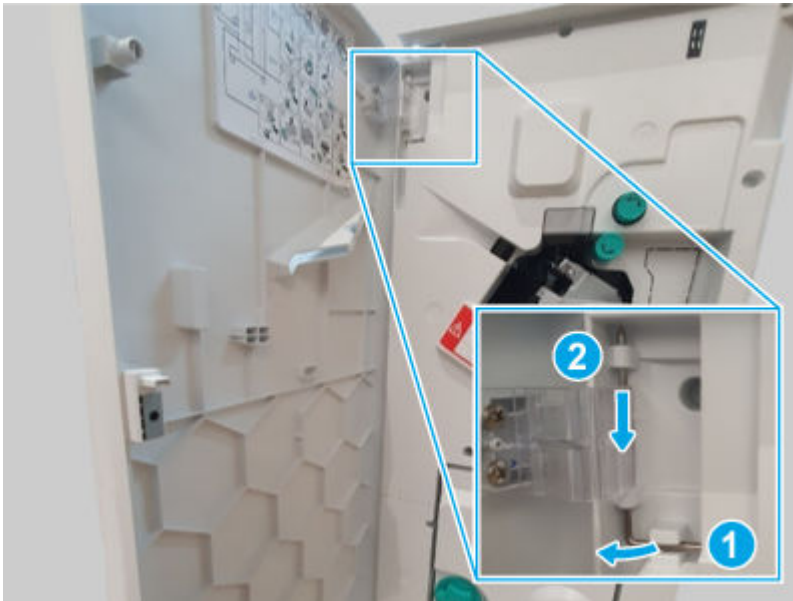
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

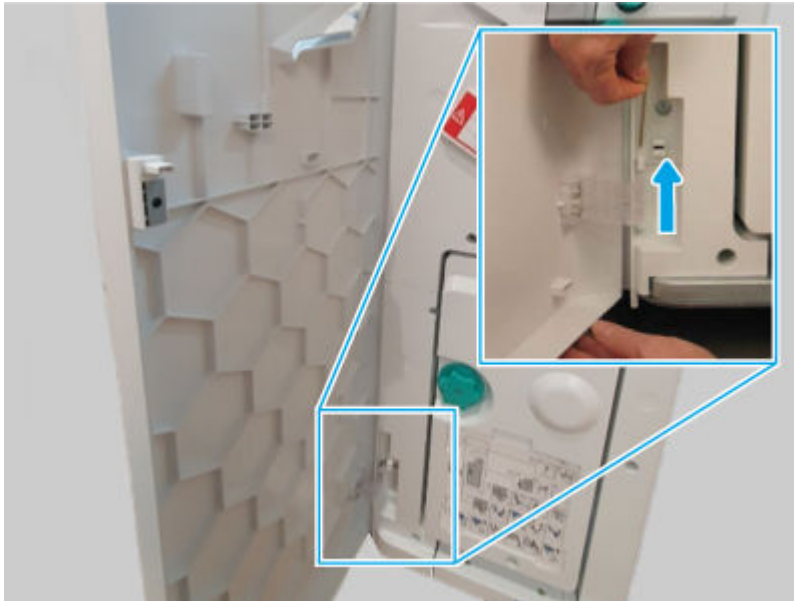
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1582 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1583 Remove the door



2. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

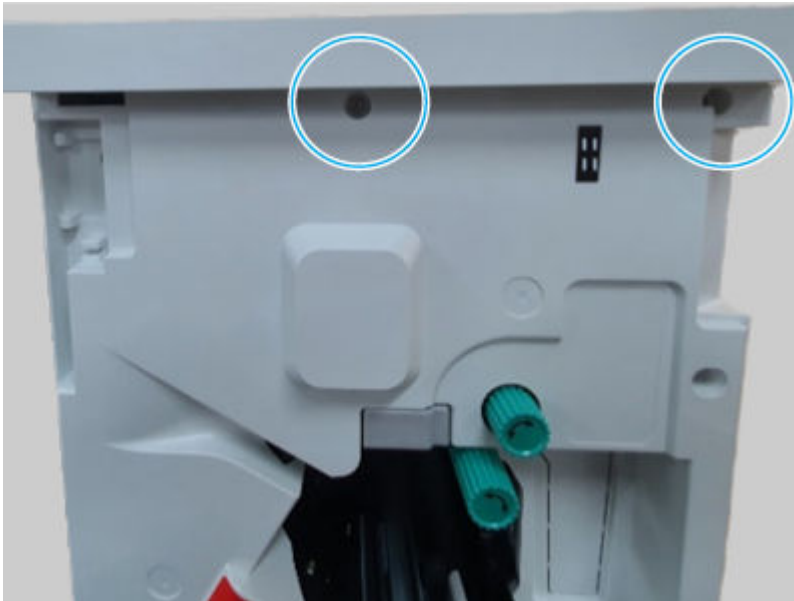
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1584 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1585 Remove the cover

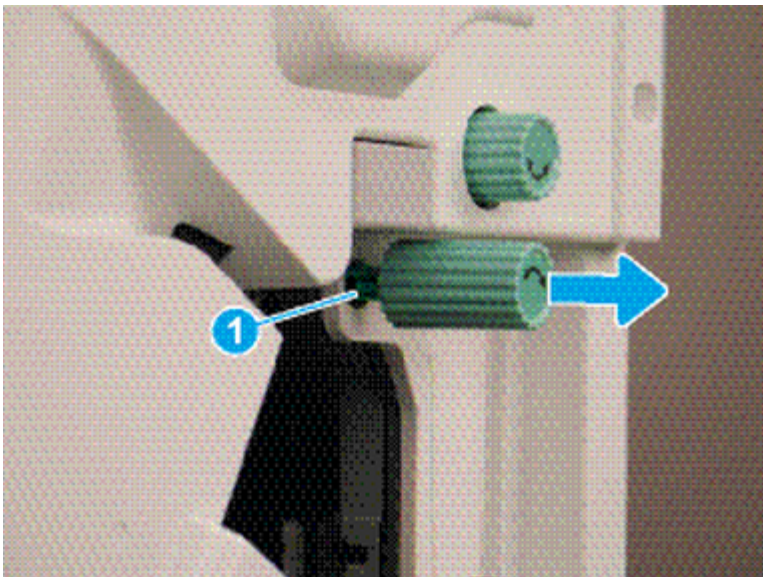


3. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1586 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1587 Remove the cover



4. Remove the external finisher front door switch

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door switch.

1. Remove one screw, and then separate the switch and holder from the finisher.

CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the switch. It is still attached by cables to the finisher.

Figure 6-1588 Separate the switch and holder from the finisher



2. Separate the switch from the holder, and then disconnect two connectors to remove the front door switch.

Figure 6-1589 Remove the switch



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Paddle unit

Review the external finisher paddle unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Paddle

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher paddle.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-248 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01480A	Paddle

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

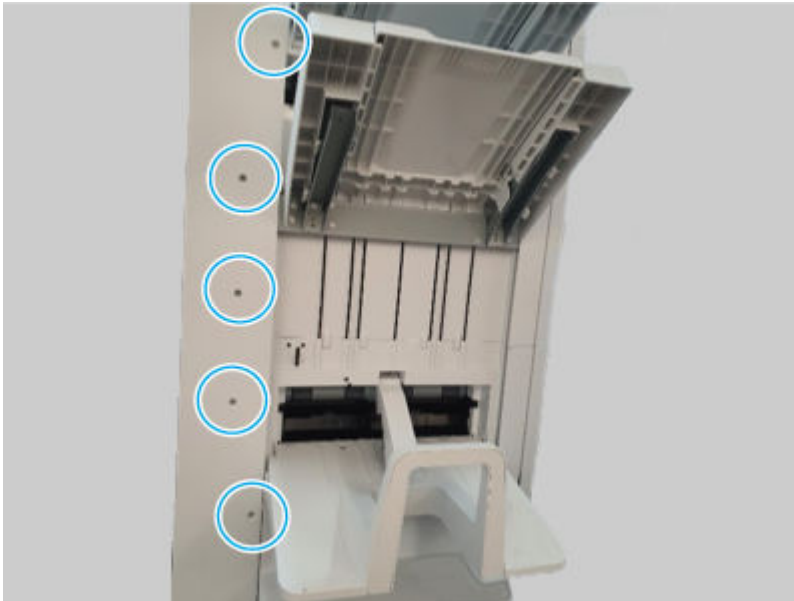
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1590 Remove five screws

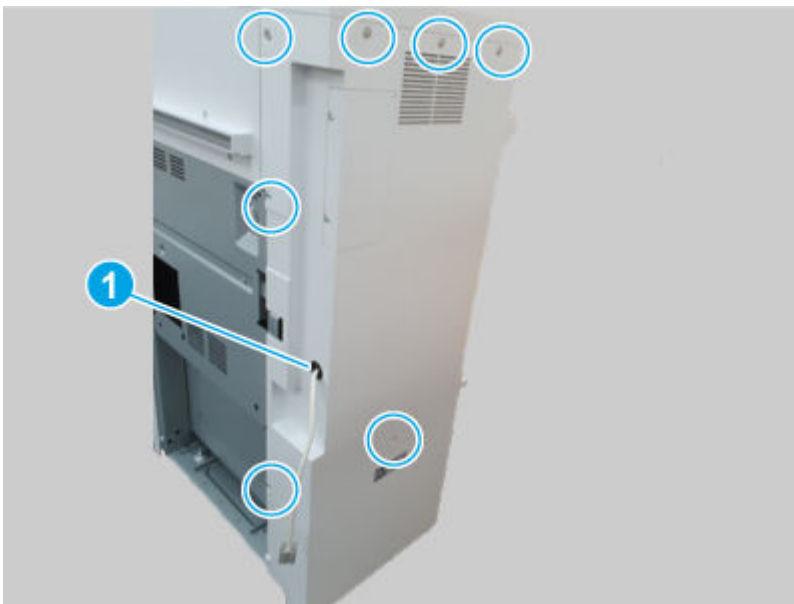


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1591 Remove the cover

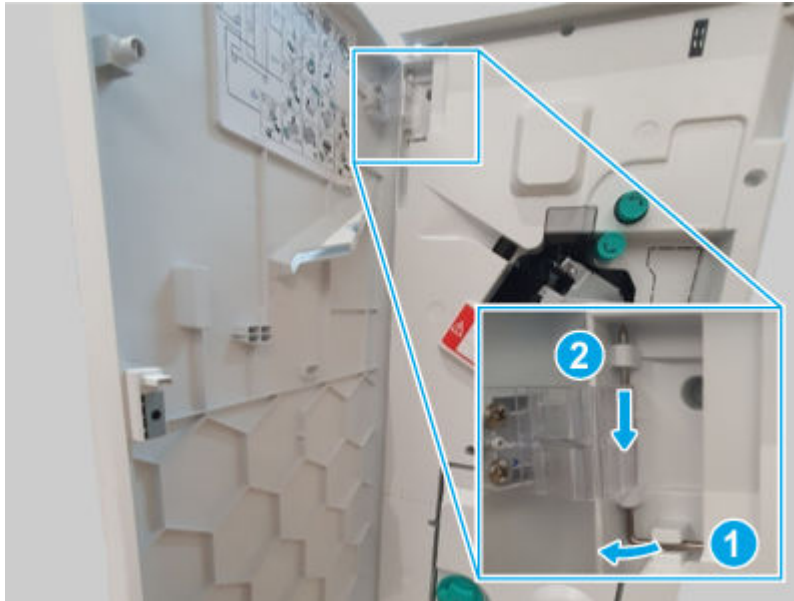


2. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

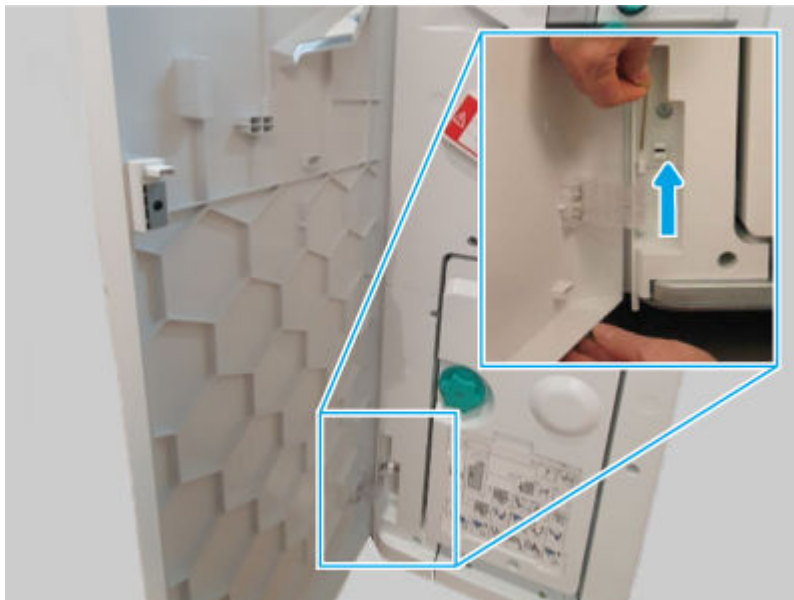
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1592 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1593 Remove the door



3. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

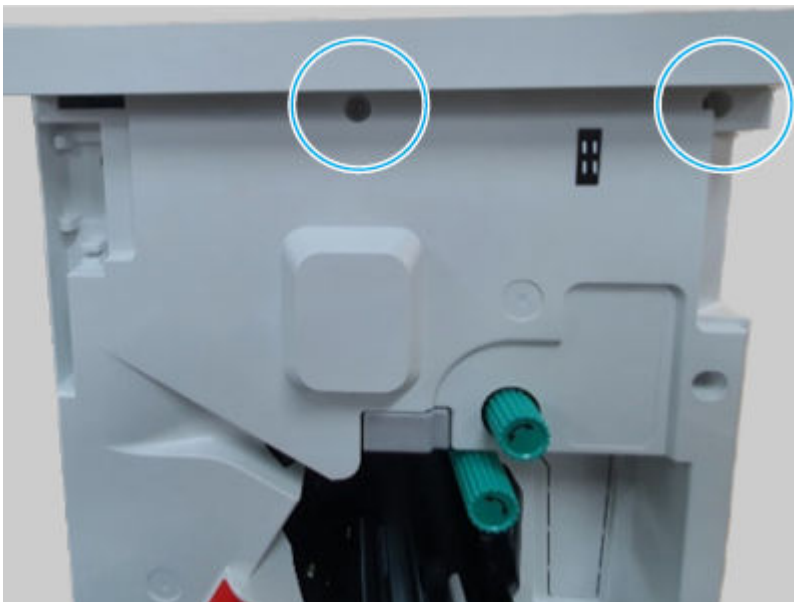
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1594 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1595 Remove the cover

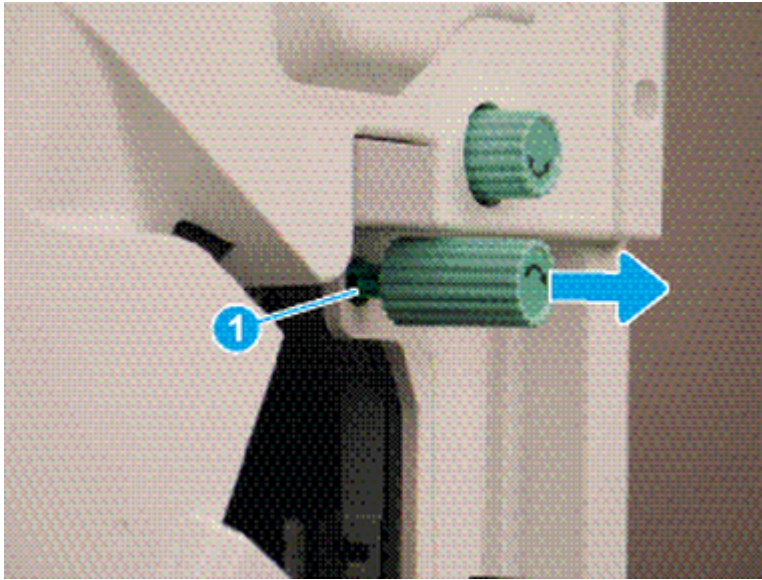


4. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1596 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1597 Remove the cover



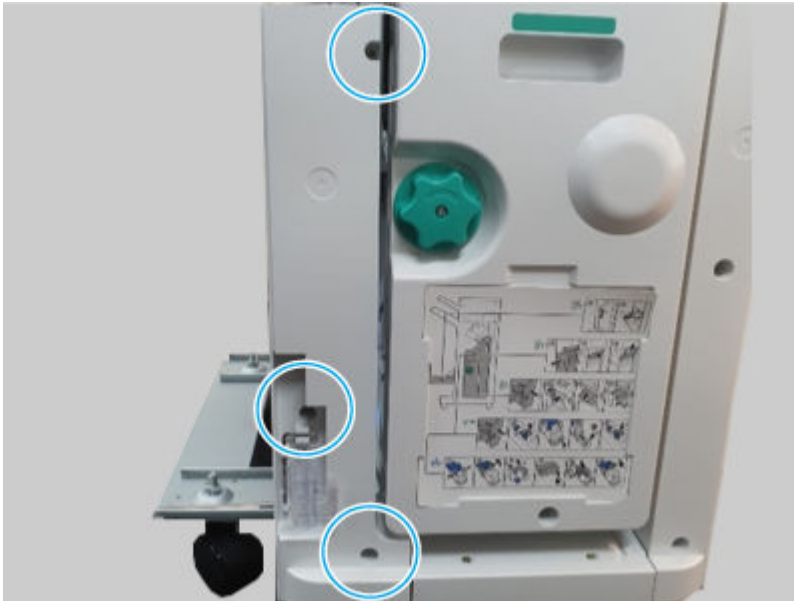
5. Remove the external finisher front lower left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front lower left cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.

2. Remove three screws, and then remove the front lower left cover.

Figure 6-1598 Remove the cover

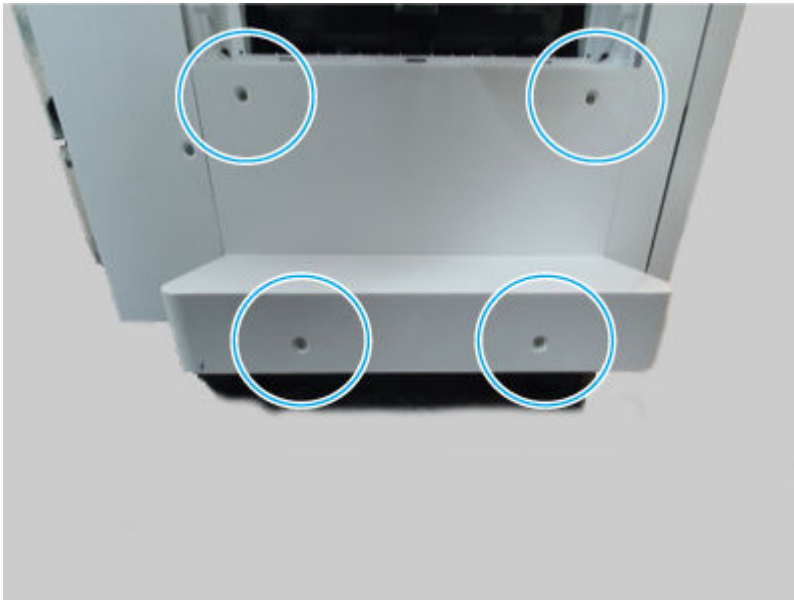


6. Remove the external finisher caster cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher caster cover.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the caster cover.

Figure 6-1599 Remove the cover

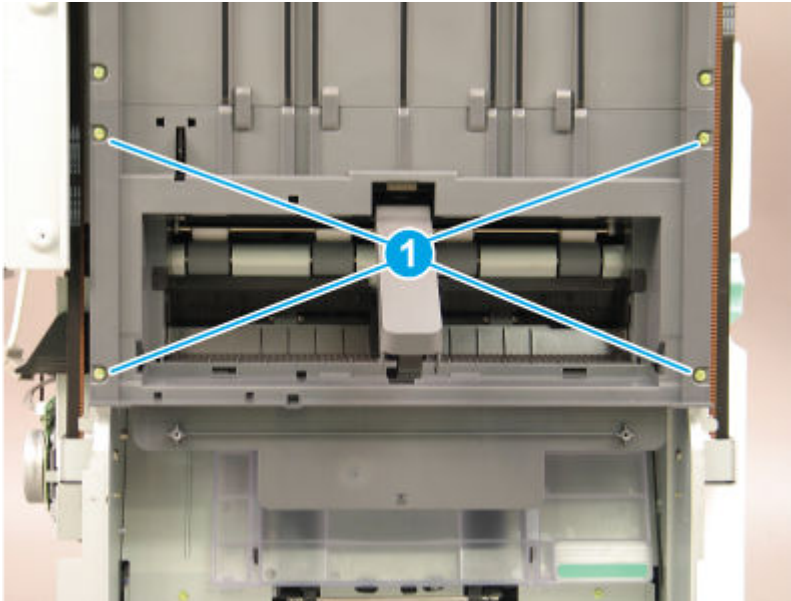


7. Remove the external finisher left lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left lower cover.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-1600 Remove four screws

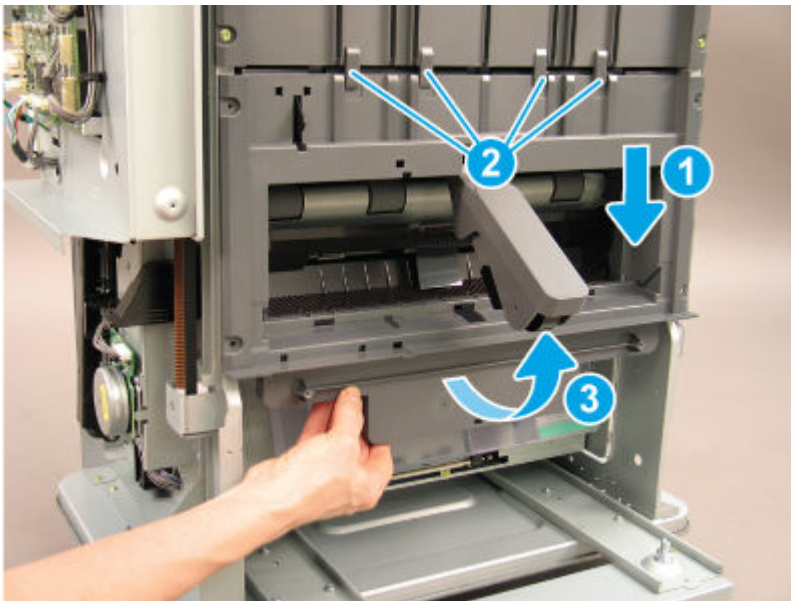


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

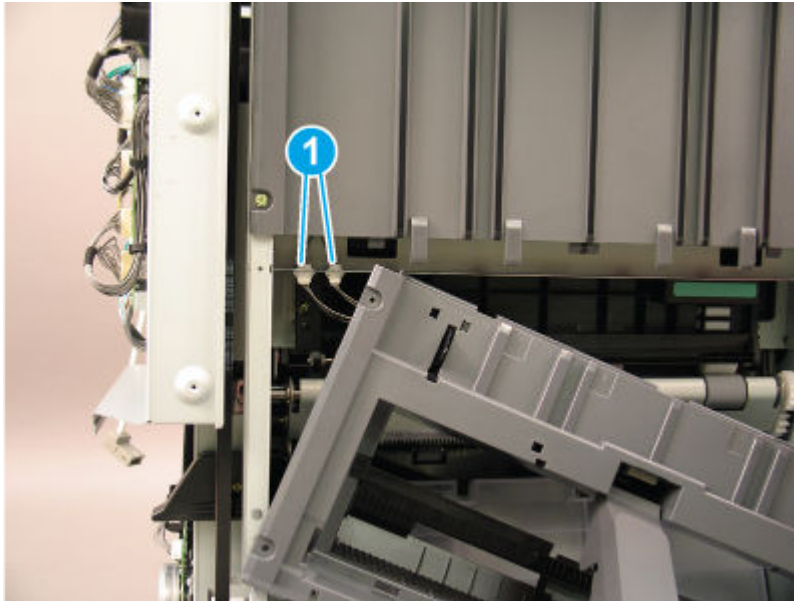
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-1601 Release the cover



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the left lower cover.

Figure 6-1602 Remove the cover

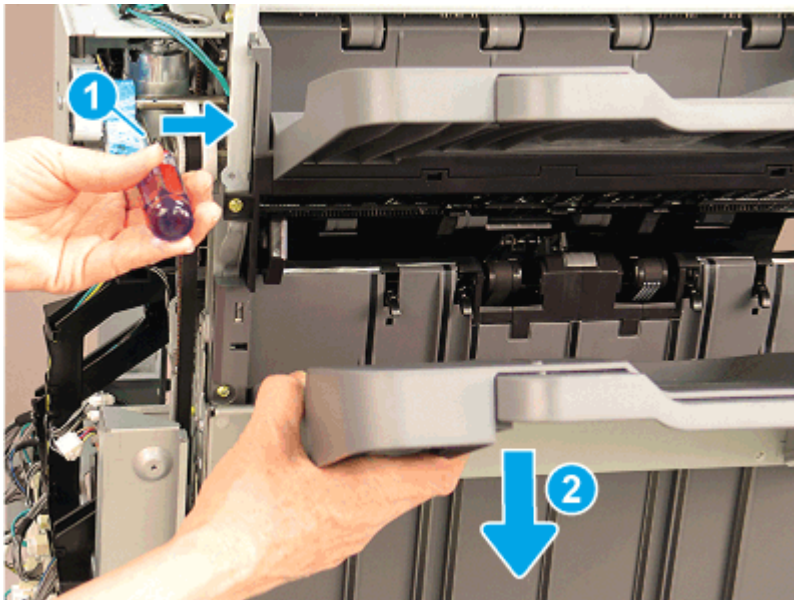


8. Remove the external finisher left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left upper cover.

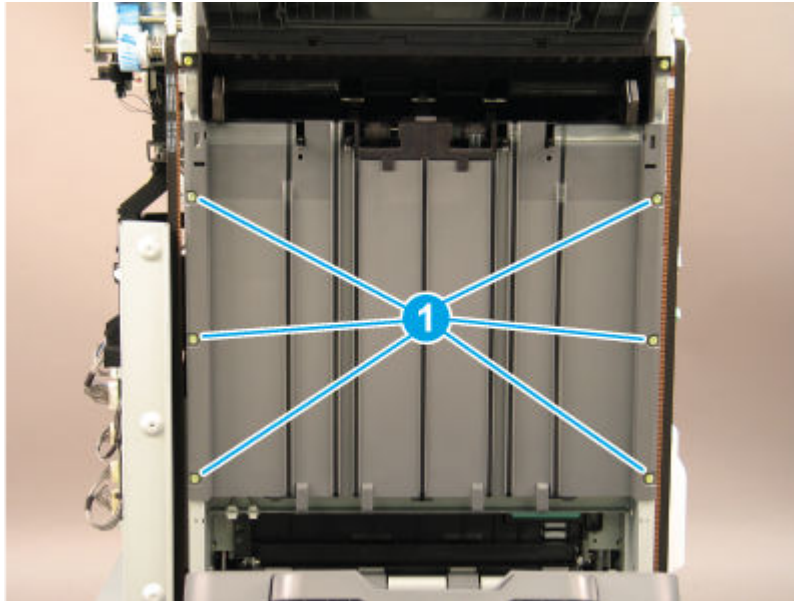
1. Bring the main output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 6-1603 Lower the tray



2. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-1604 Remove six screws

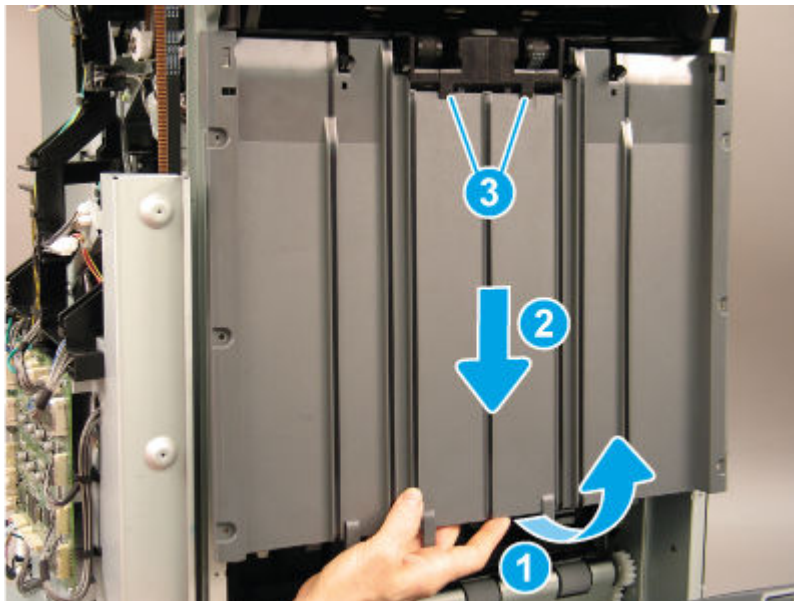


3. Rotate the lower edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

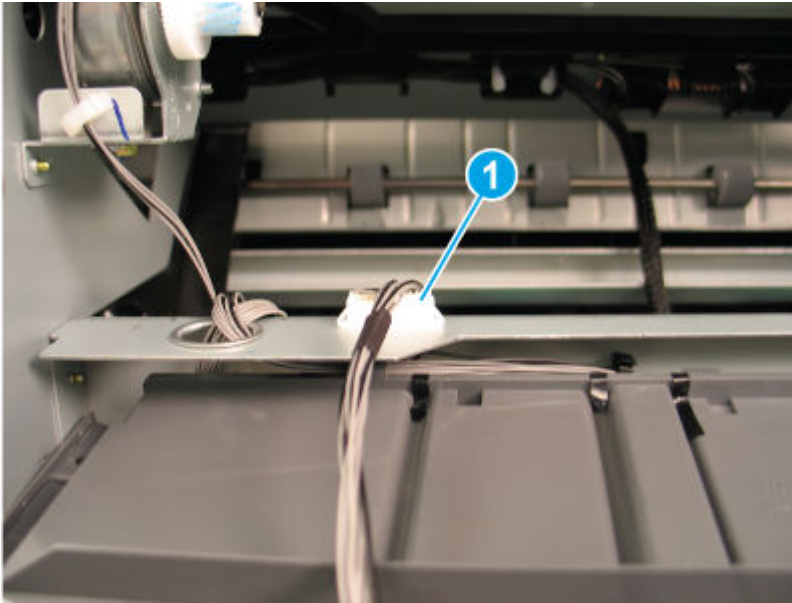
Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-1605 Release the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the left upper cover.

Figure 6-1606 Remove the cover

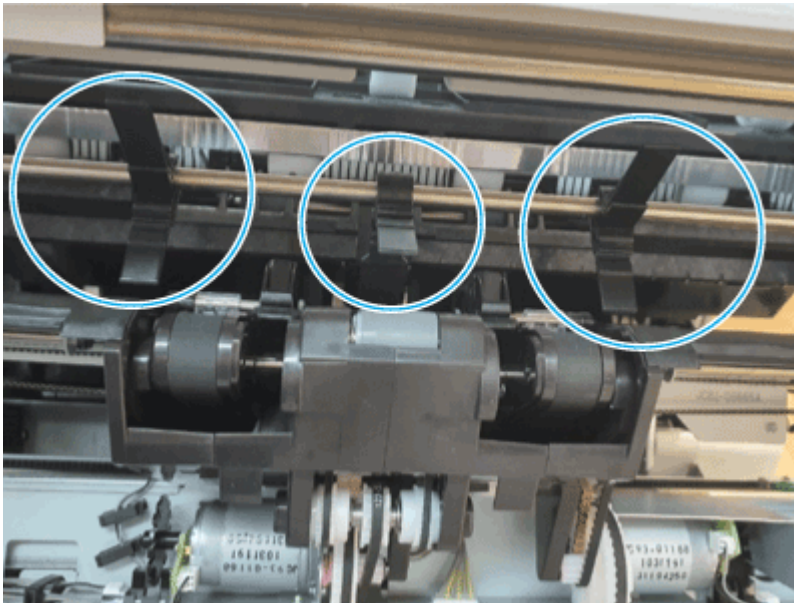


9. Remove the external finisher paddle

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher paddle.

- Pull the paddle straight out to remove it.


Figure 6-1607 Remove the paddle



10. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Paddle motor assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher paddle motor assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-249 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01461A	Paddle motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

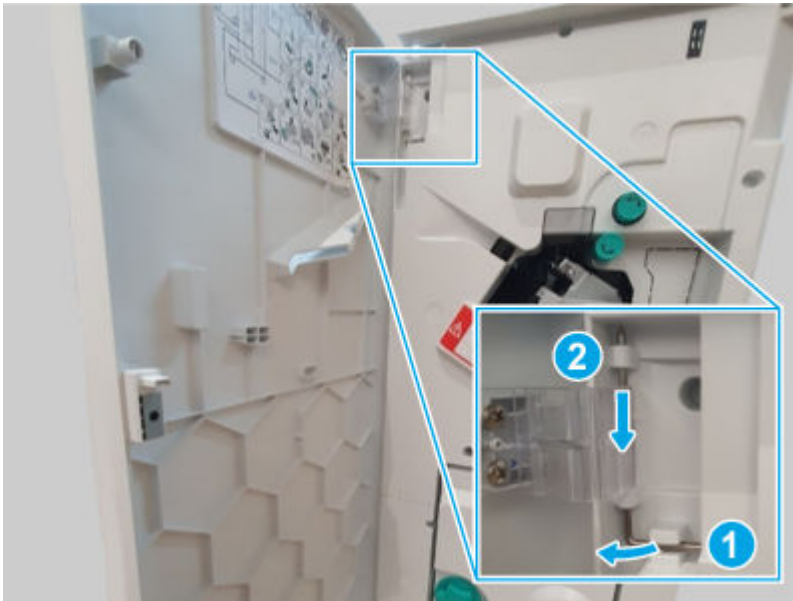
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

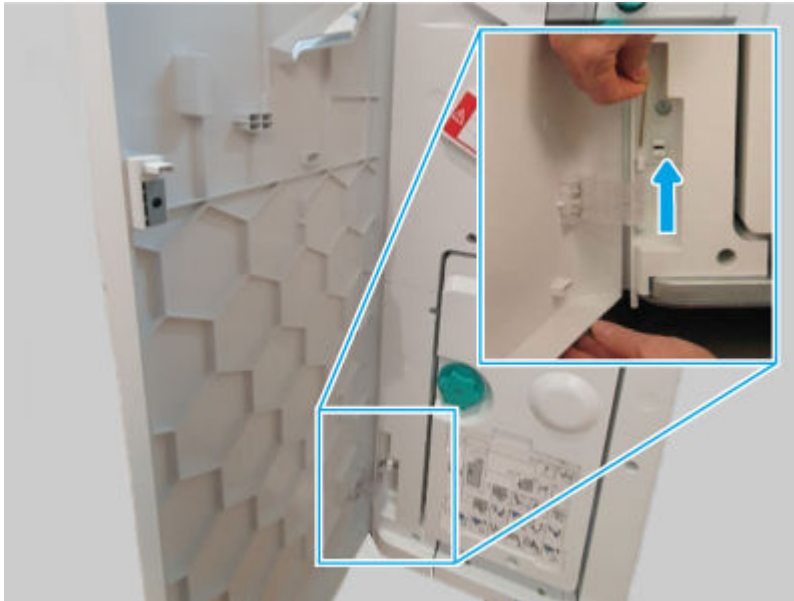
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1608 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1609 Remove the door



2. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1610 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1611 Remove the cover

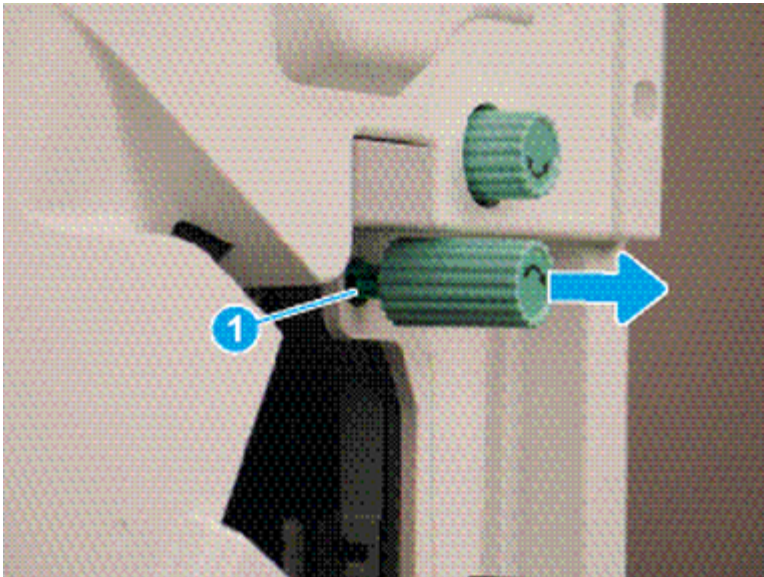


3. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1612 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1613 Remove the cover

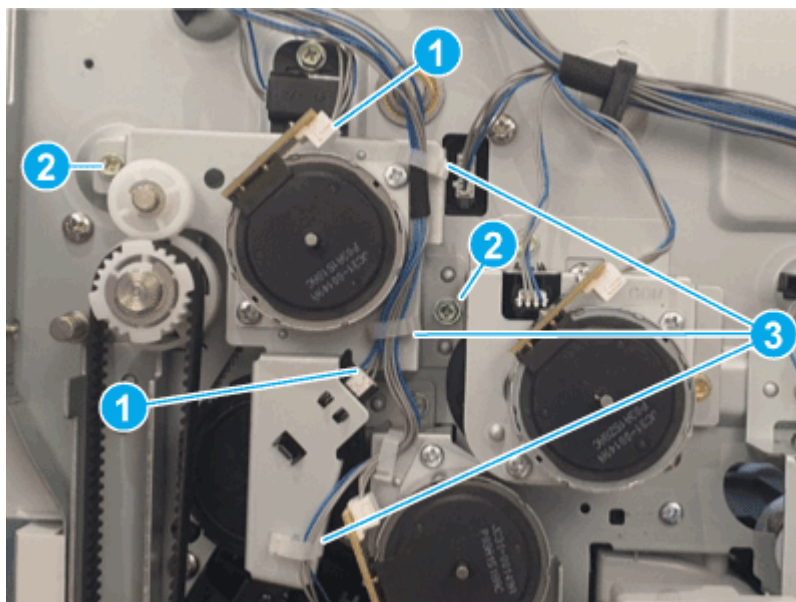


4. Remove the external finisher paddle motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher paddle motor assembly.

- Do the following:
 - a. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1).
 - b. Remove two screws (callout 2).
 - c. Release the wire harness from the retainers (callout 3), and then remove the paddle motor assembly.

Figure 6-1614 Remove the assembly



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Paddle home sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher paddle home sensor.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-250 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Paddle home sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

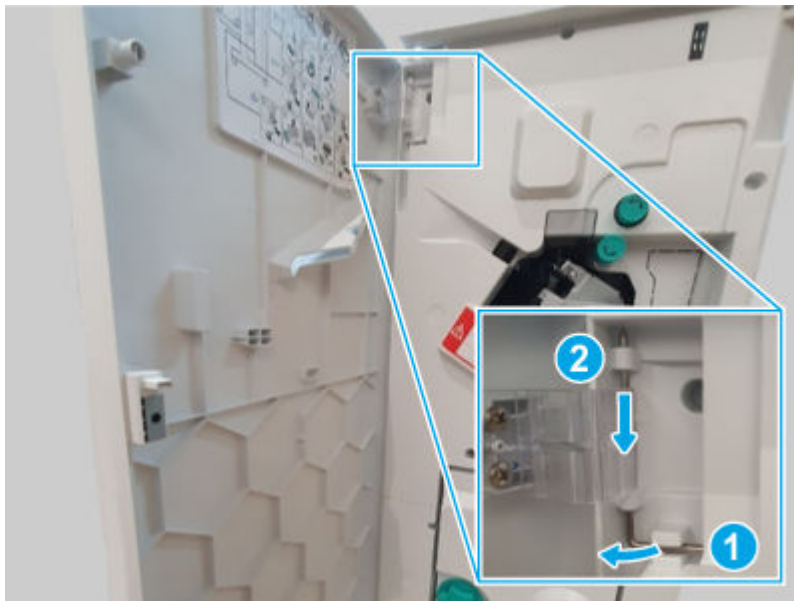
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

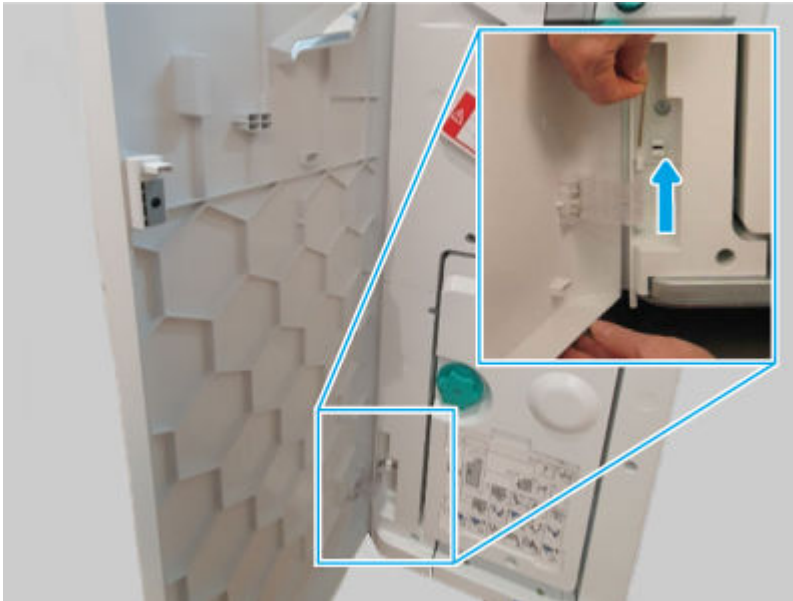
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1615 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1616 Remove the door



2. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

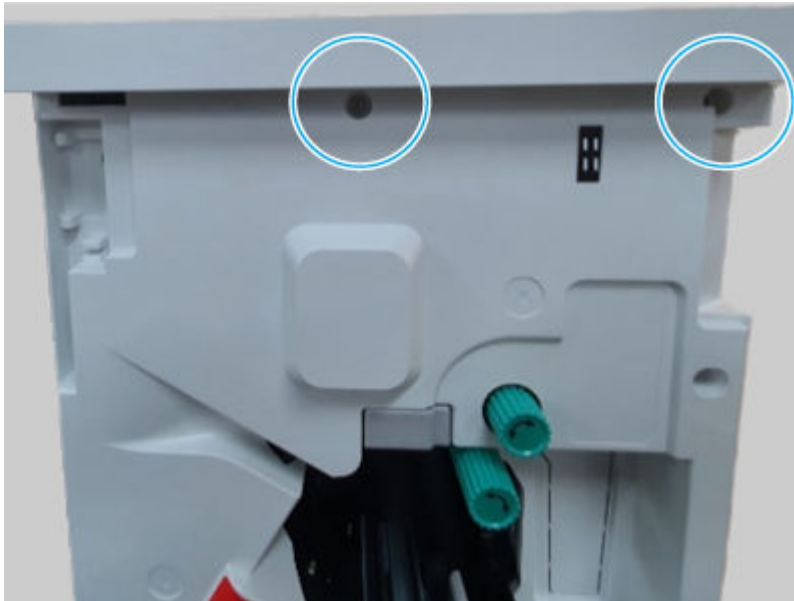
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1617 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1618 Remove the cover

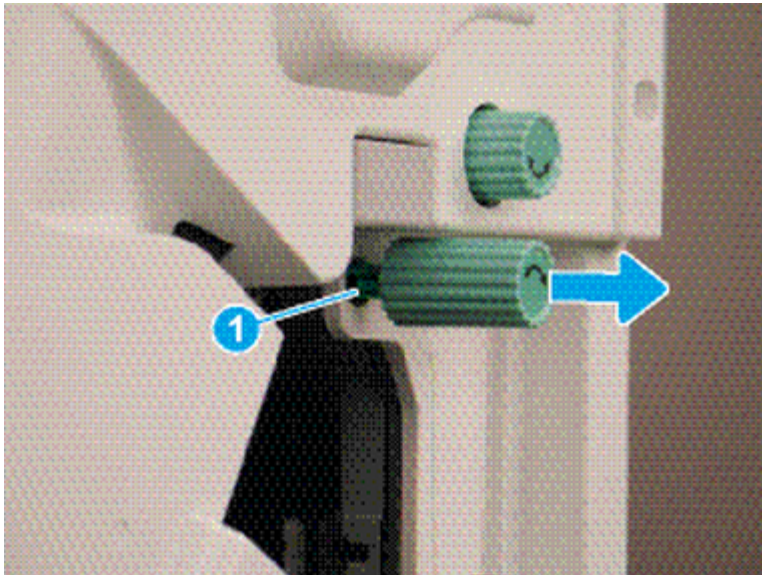


3. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1619 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1620 Remove the cover

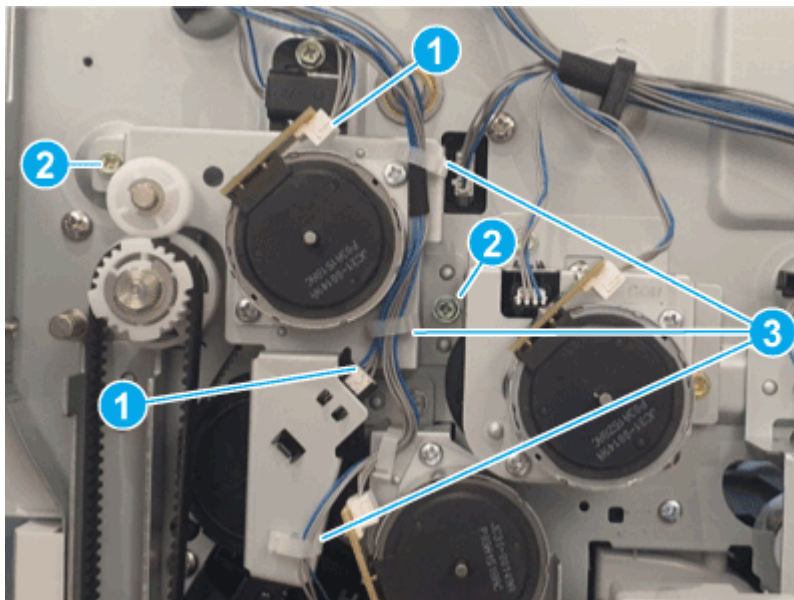


4. Remove the external finisher paddle motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher paddle motor assembly.

- Do the following:
 - a. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1).
 - b. Remove two screws (callout 2).
 - c. Release the wire harness from the retainers (callout 3), and then remove the paddle motor assembly.

Figure 6-1621 Remove the assembly

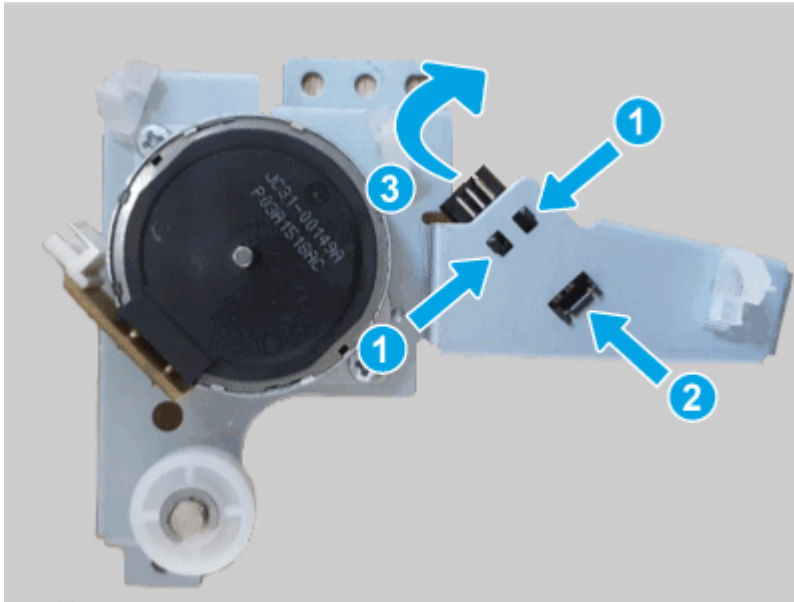


5. Remove the external finisher paddle home sensory

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher paddle home sensor.

- Do the following:
 - a. Release the hooks (callout 1).
 - b. Slide the sensor assembly as shown below (callout 2).
 - c. Remove the paddle home sensor from the bracket (callout 3).

Figure 6-1622 Remove the sensor



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.




IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using

disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Paddle motor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher paddle motor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-251 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01001A	Drive-motor step (Paddle motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

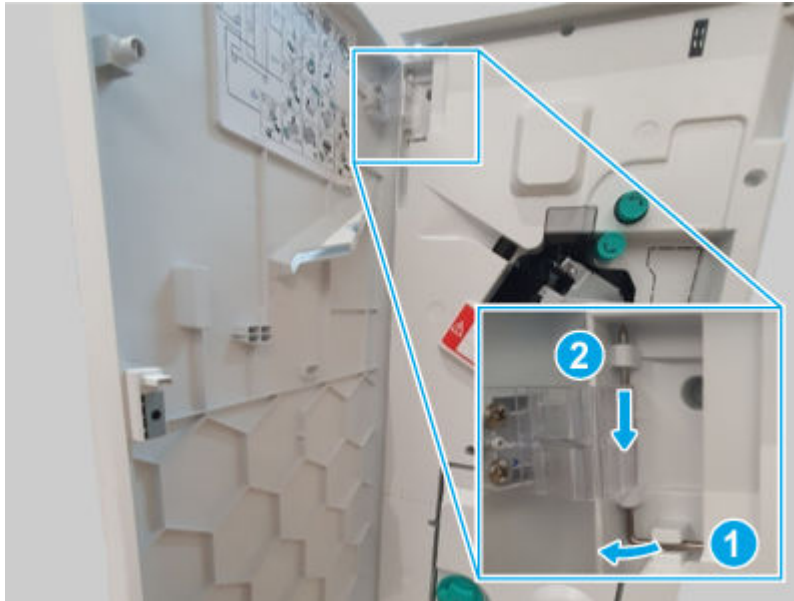
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

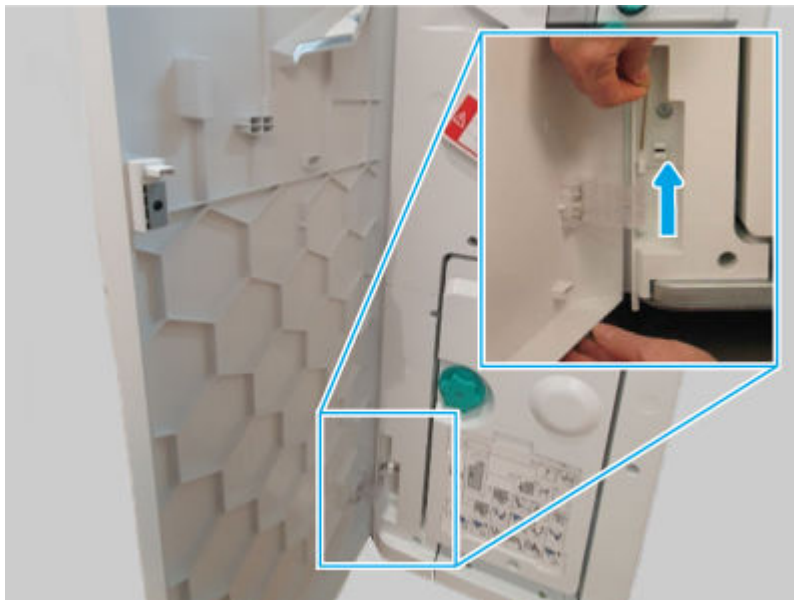
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1623 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1624 Remove the door



2. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

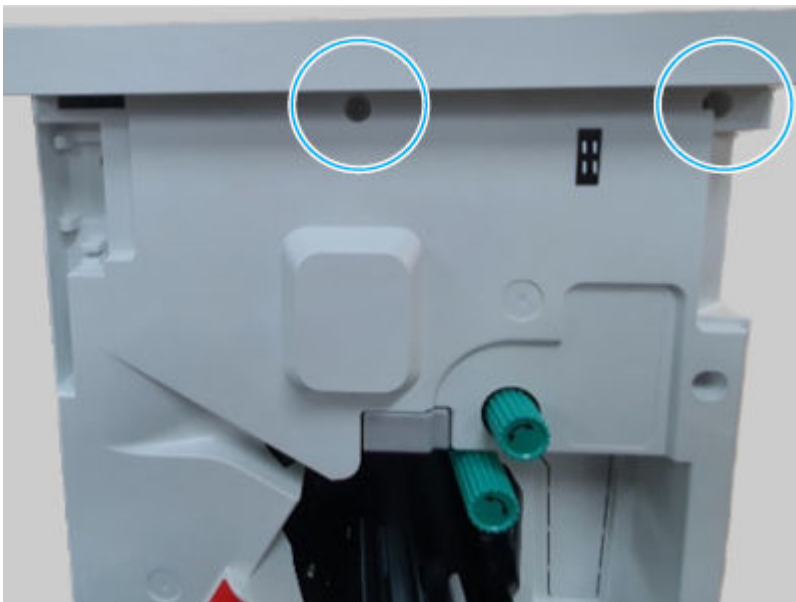
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1625 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1626 Remove the cover

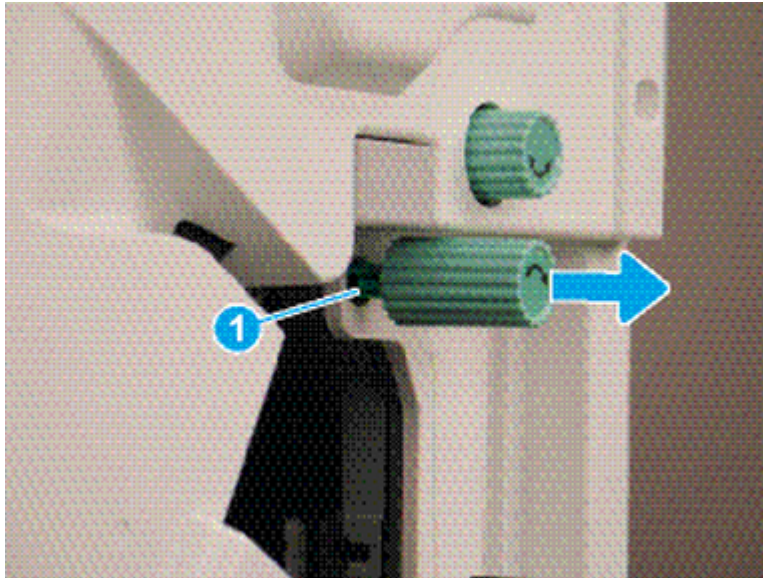


3. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1627 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1628 Remove the cover

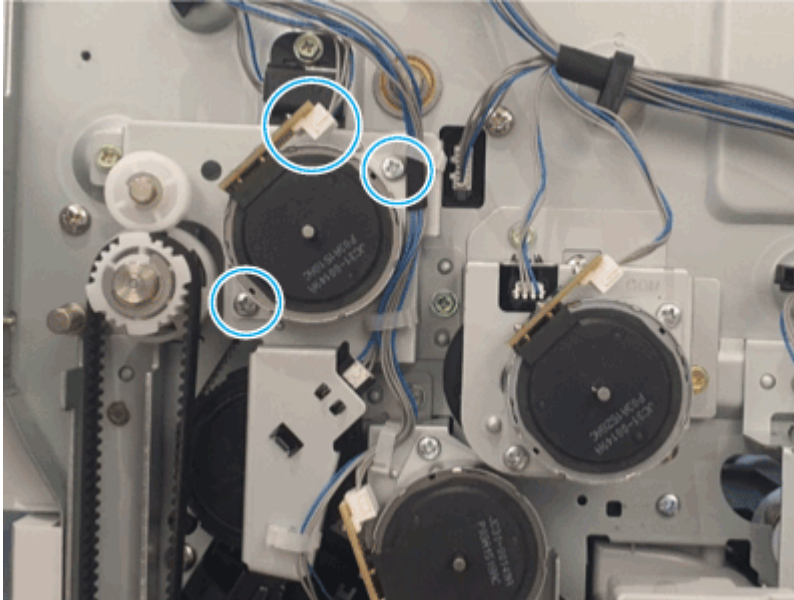


4. Remove the external finisher paddle motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher paddle motor.

- Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the paddle motor.

Figure 6-1629 Remove the motor



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.



NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

End fence unit

Review the external finisher end fence unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: End fence home sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher end fence home sensor.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-252 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (End fence sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

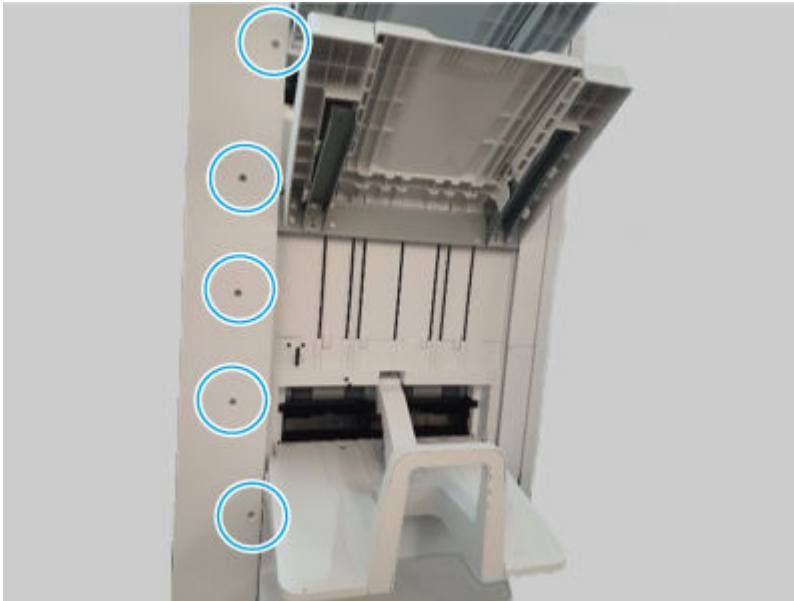
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1630 Remove five screws

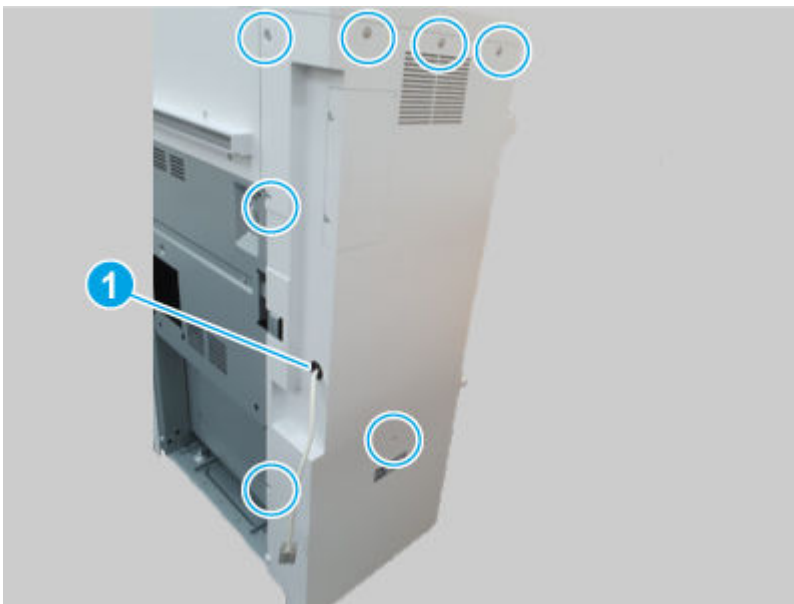


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1631 Remove the cover

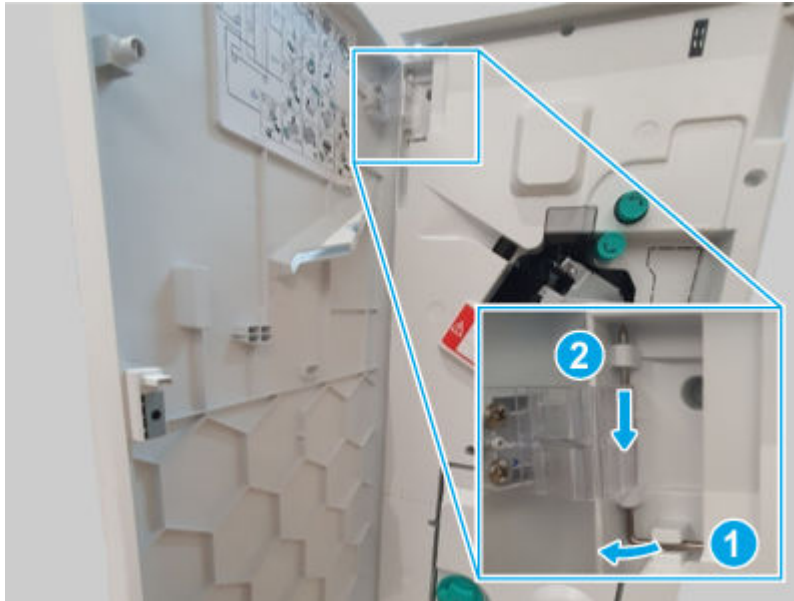


2. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

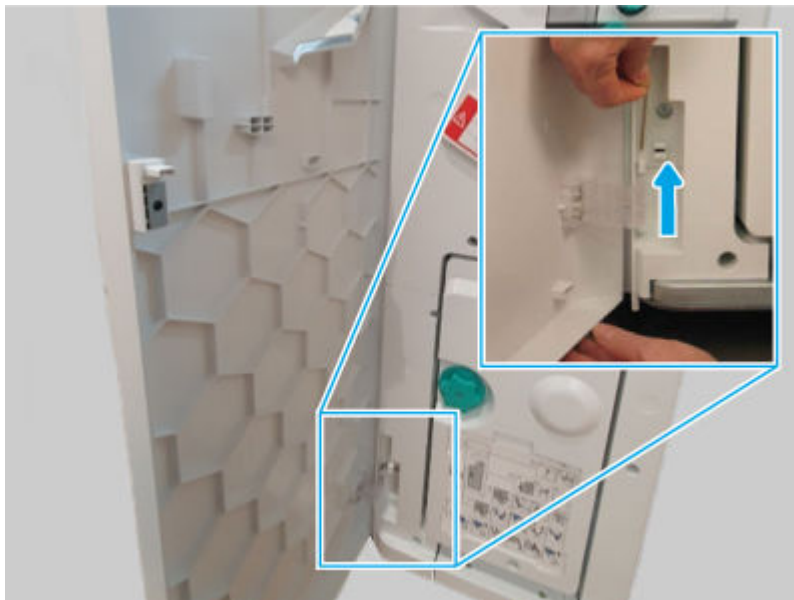
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1632 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1633 Remove the door



3. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

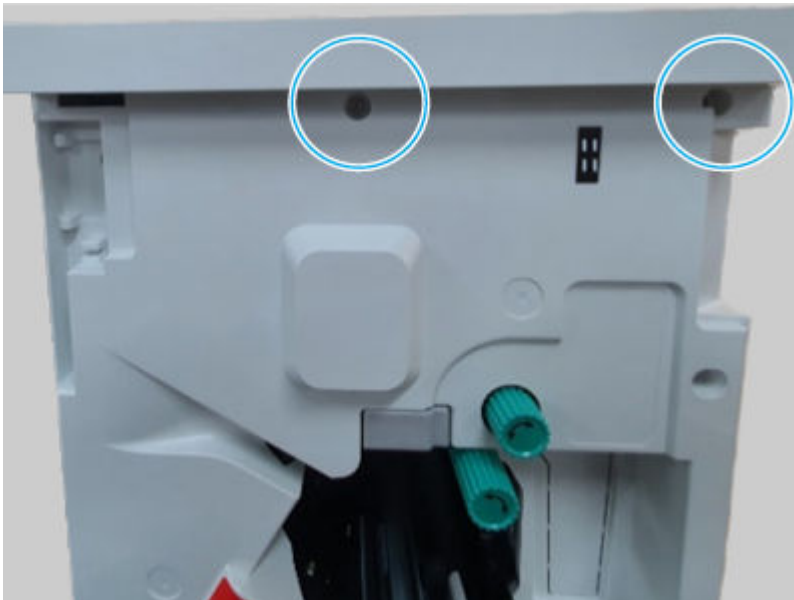
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1634 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1635 Remove the cover

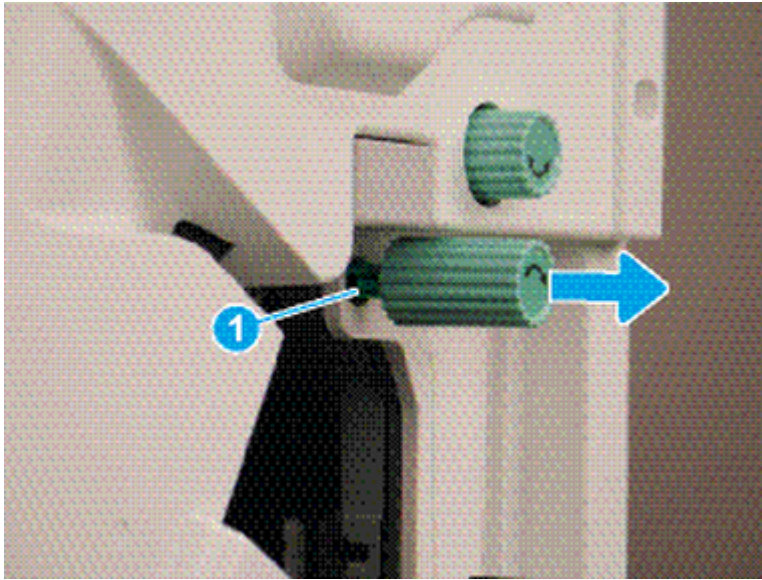


4. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1636 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1637 Remove the cover



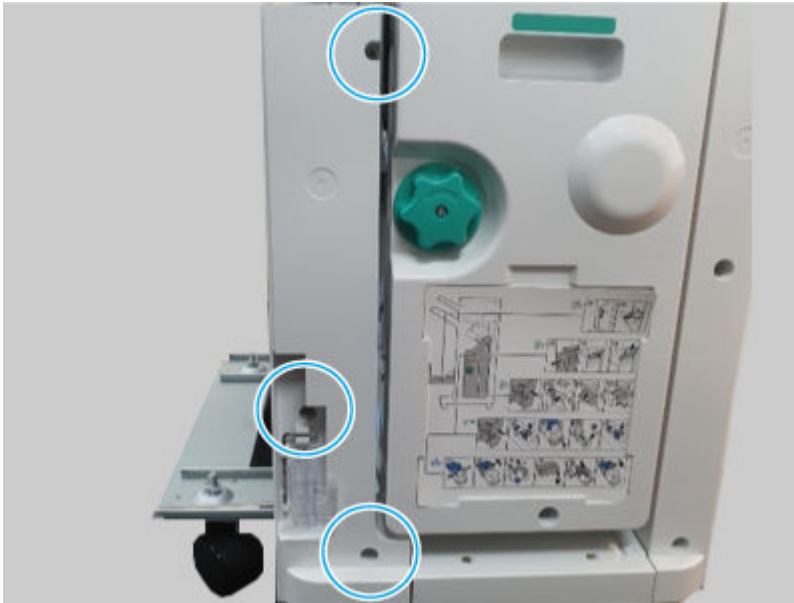
5. Remove the external finisher front lower left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front lower left cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.

2. Remove three screws, and then remove the front lower left cover.

Figure 6-1638 Remove the cover

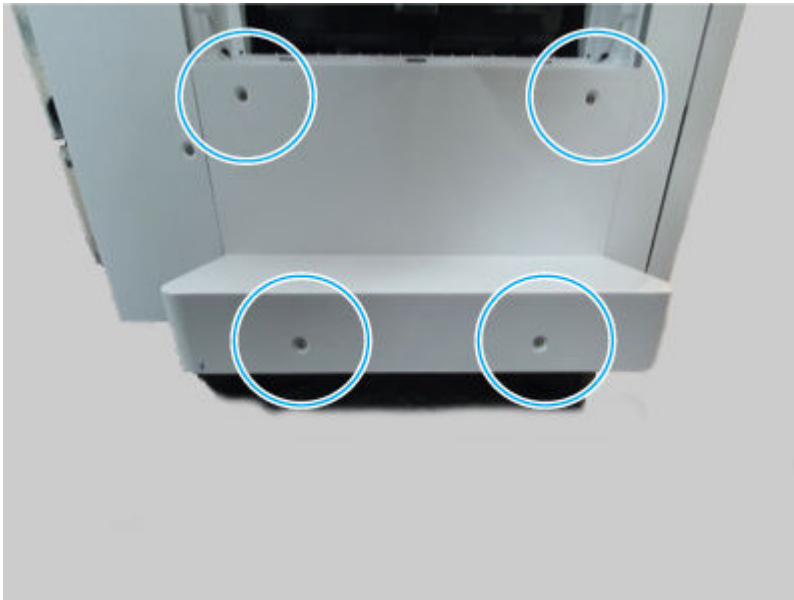


6. Remove the external finisher caster cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher caster cover.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the caster cover.

Figure 6-1639 Remove the cover

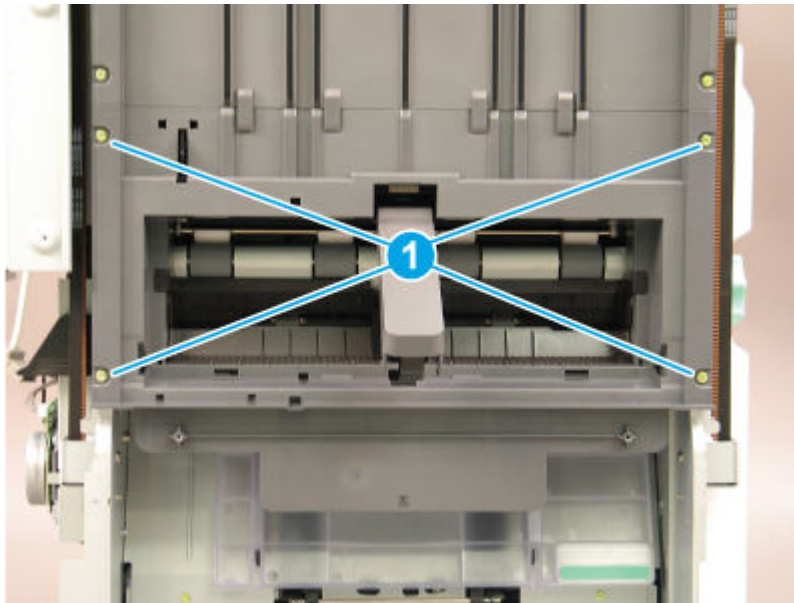


7. Remove the external finisher left lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left lower cover.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-1640 Remove four screws

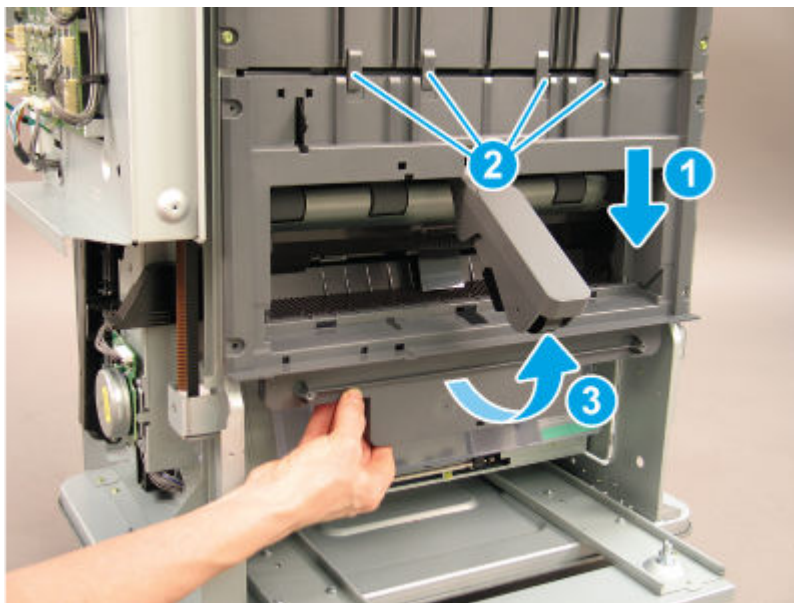


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

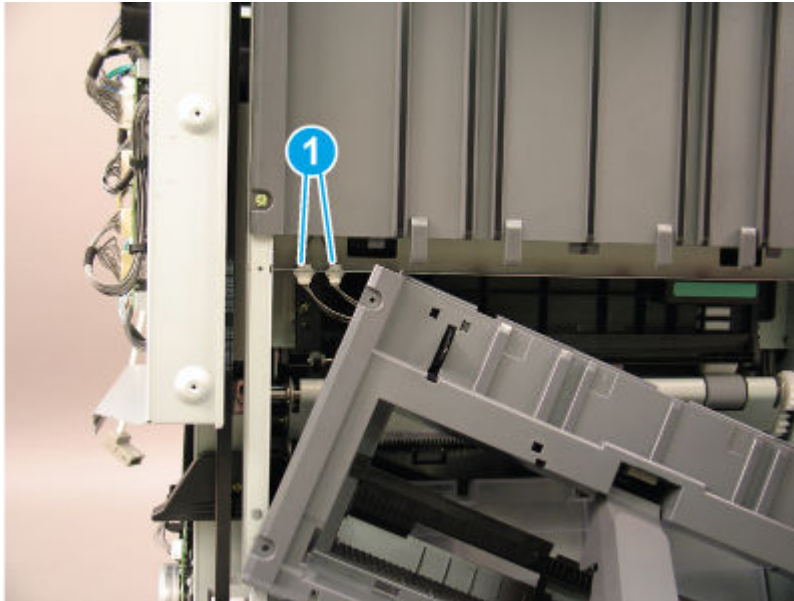
Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-1641 Release the cover



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the left lower cover.

Figure 6-1642 Remove the cover

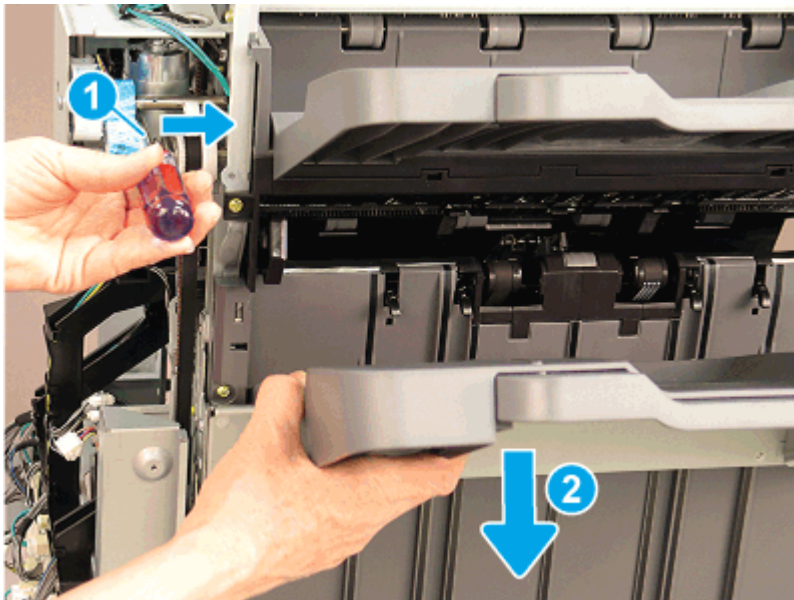


8. Remove the external finisher left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left upper cover.

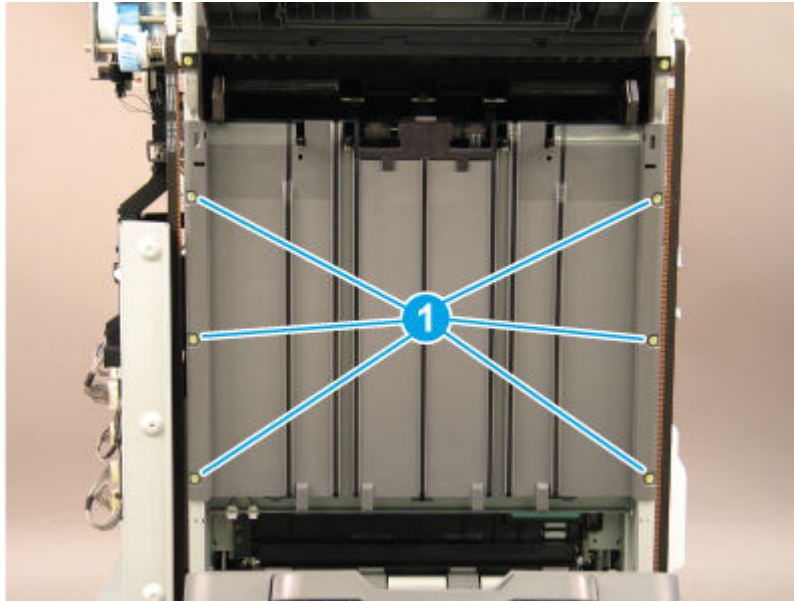
1. Bring the main output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 6-1643 Lower the tray



2. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-1644 Remove six screws

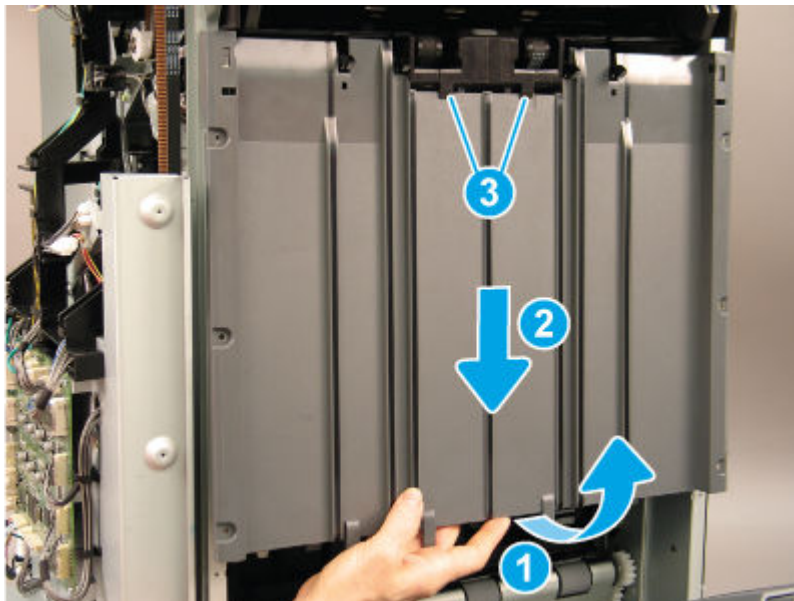


3. Rotate the lower edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

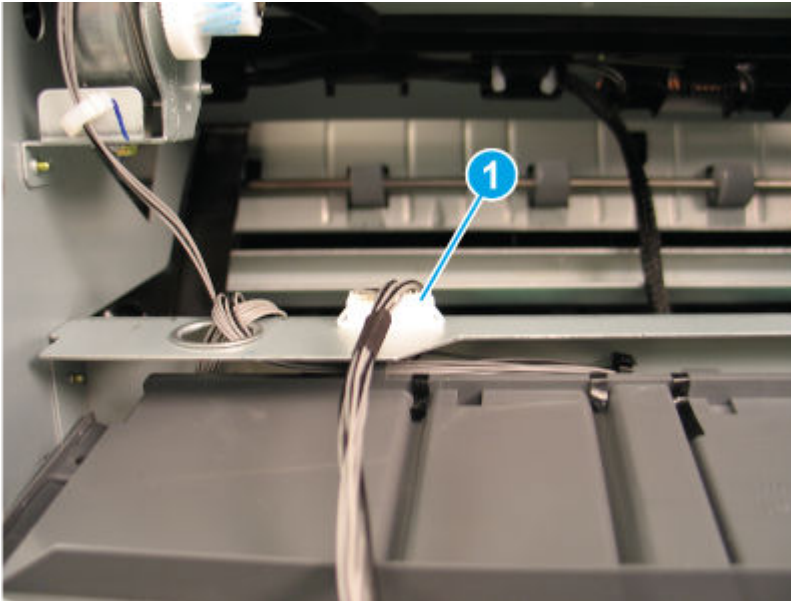
Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-1645 Release the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the left upper cover.

Figure 6-1646 Remove the cover



9. Remove the external finisher ejector unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher ejector unit.

1. Remove three screws.


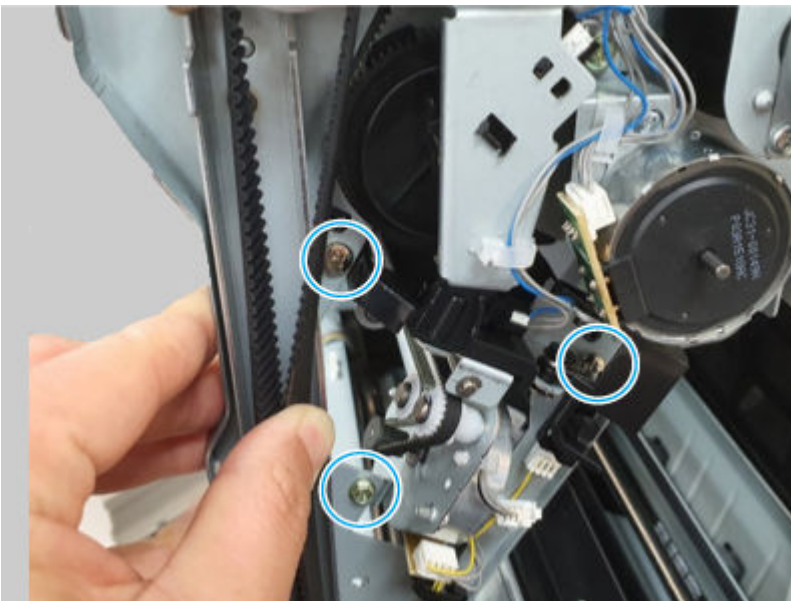
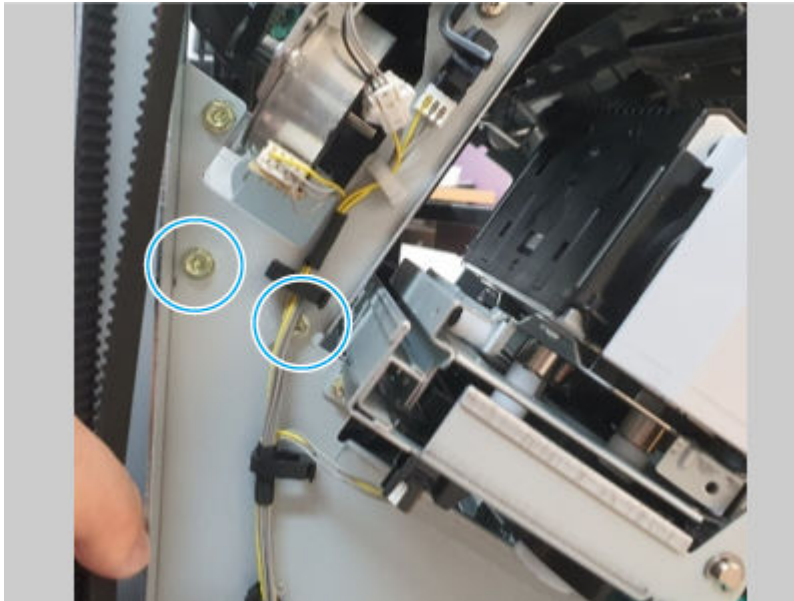
 **NOTE:** Removing these screws allows the front tamper to be moved out of the way when the ejector unit is removed.

Figure 6-1647 Release the tamper



2. Remove two screws (located below the front tamper).

Figure 6-1648 Remove two screws

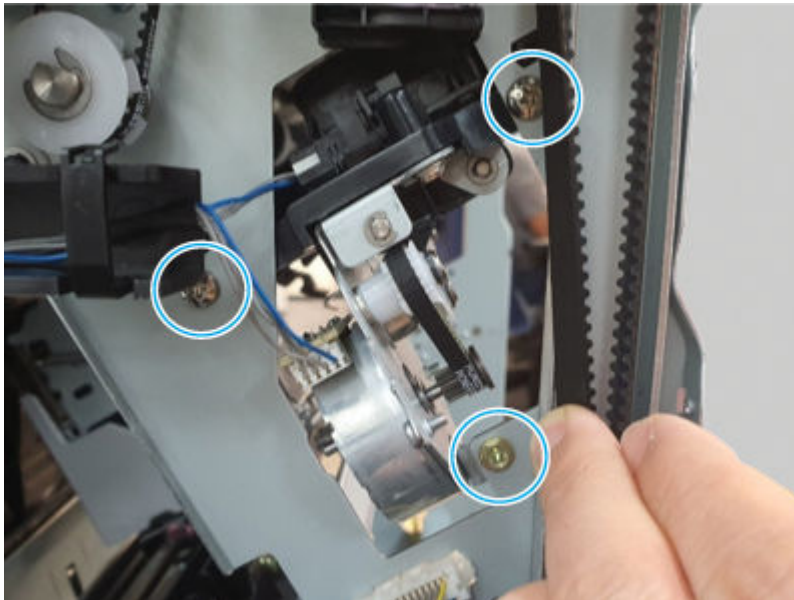


3. Remove three screws.



NOTE: Removing these screws allows the rear tamper to be moved out of the way when the ejector unit is removed.

Figure 6-1649 Release the tamper



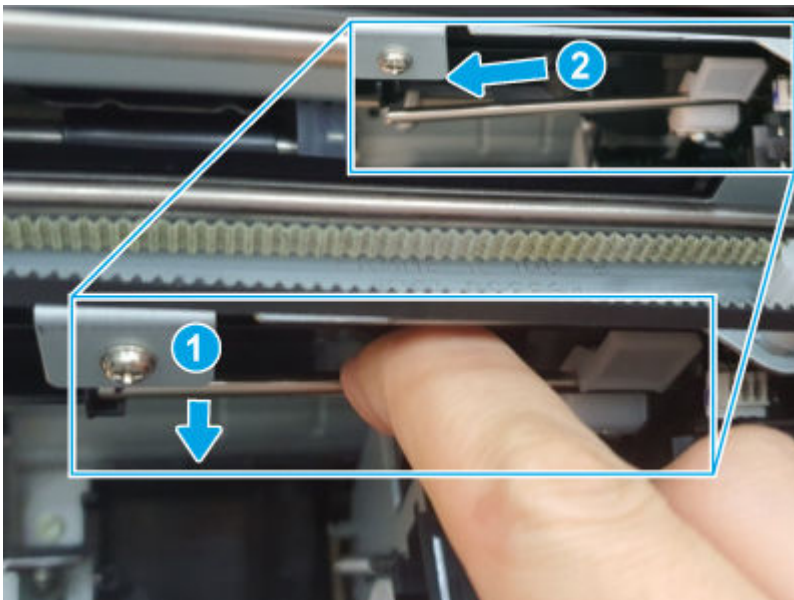
4. Remove two screws (located below the rear tamper).

Figure 6-1650 Remove two screws



5. Do the following:
 - a. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening.
 - b. Locate the shaft, pull down to release it (callout 1), and then slide it as shown below (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 6-1651 Remove the shaft

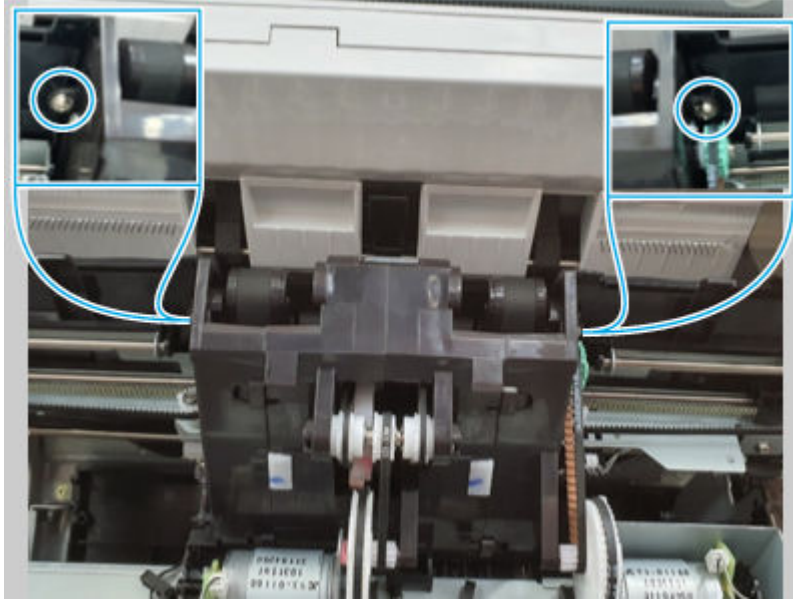


6. Remove two screws, and then remove the ejector unit.



NOTE: Slightly lift up on the tampers to give the ejector unit clearance when removing it..

Figure 6-1652 Remove the unit



10. Remove the external finisher front tamper

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front tamper.

- Disconnect three connectors, remove three screws, and then remove the front tamper.


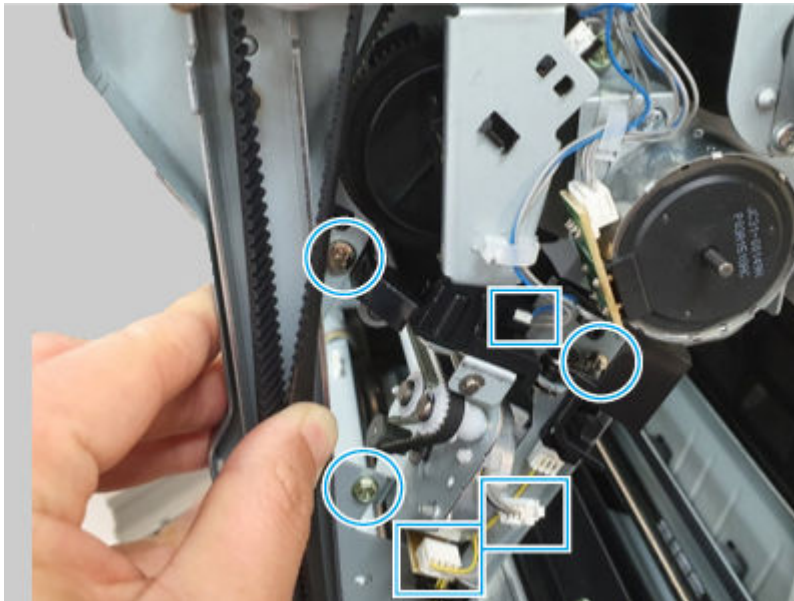
 **NOTE:** If the tamper unit is removed after the ejector unit to gain access to another assembly, the screws have already been removed.

Figure 6-1653 Remove the tamper

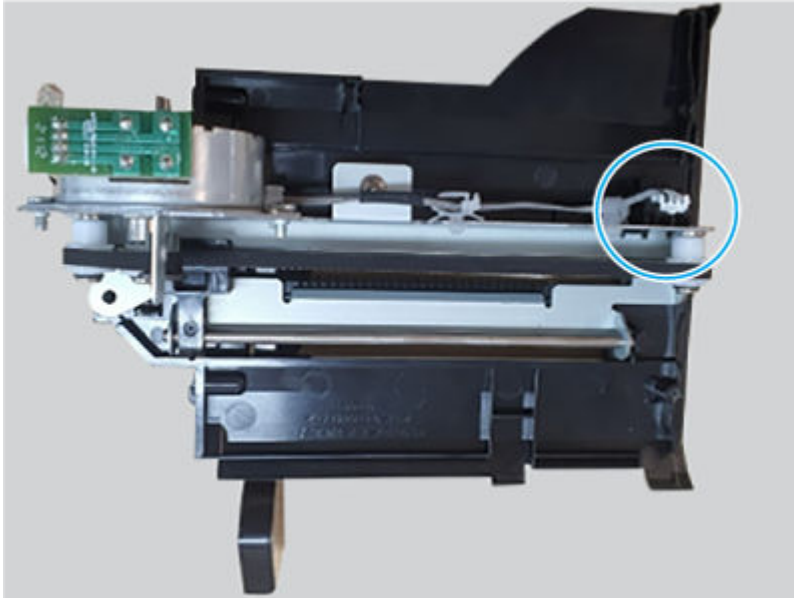


11. Remove the external finisher end fence home sensory

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher end fence home sensor.

- Disconnect one connector, and then remove the end fence home sensor.

Figure 6-1654 Remove the sensor



12. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: End fence motor assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher end fence motor assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-253 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01467A	End fence motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

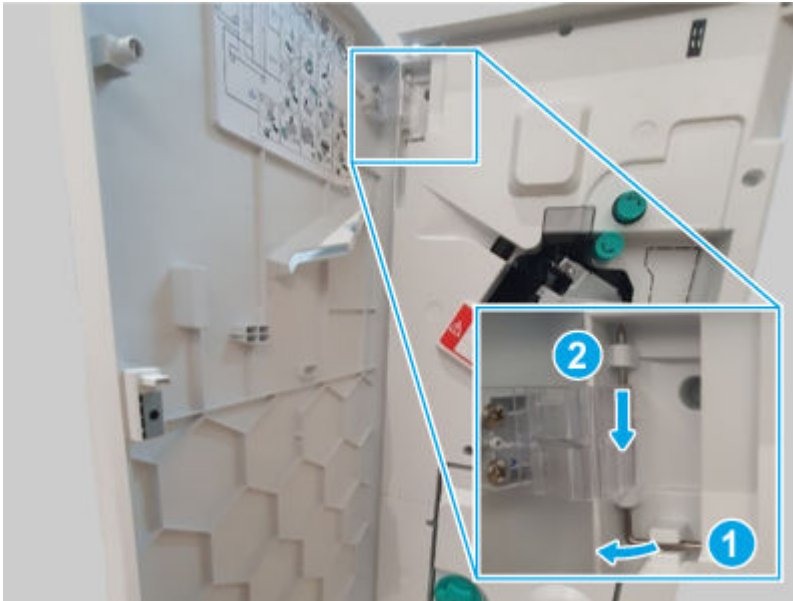
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

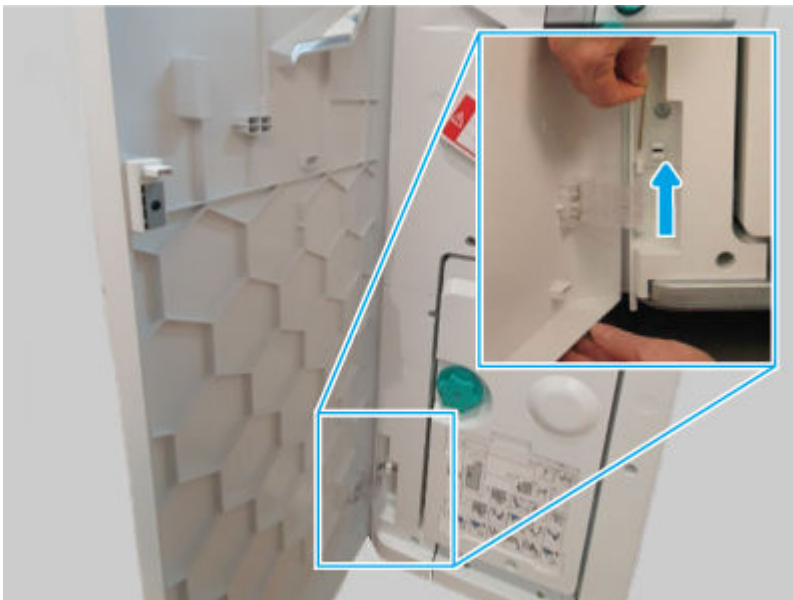
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1655 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1656 Remove the door



2. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

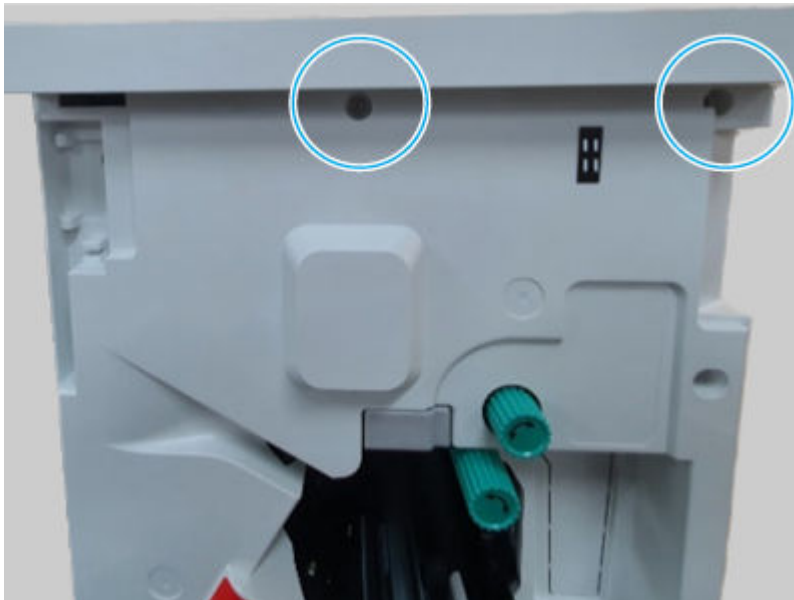
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1657 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1658 Remove the cover

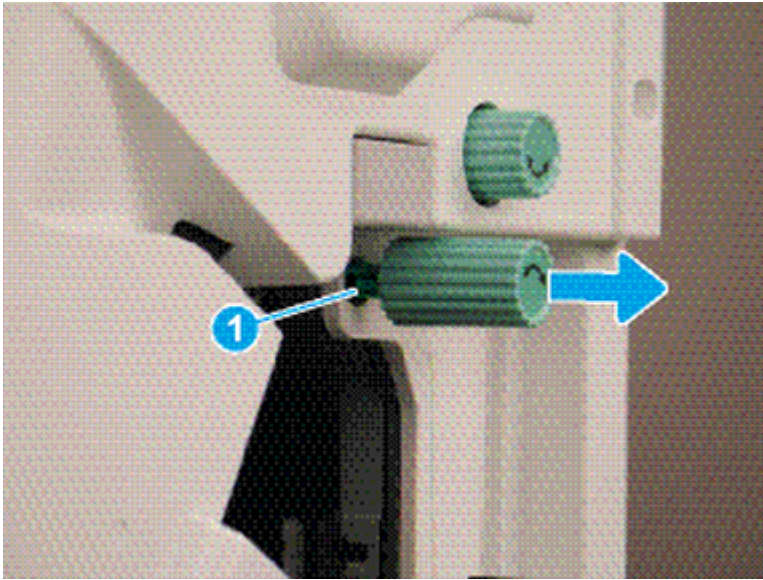


3. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1659 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1660 Remove the cover

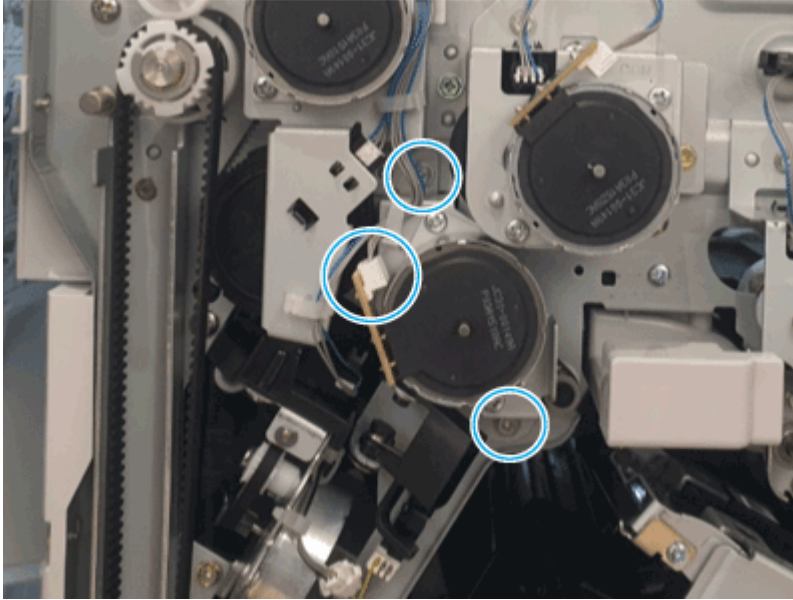


4. Remove the external finisher end fence motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher end fence motor assembly.

- Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the end fence motor assembly.


Figure 6-1661 Remove the assembly



5. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: End fence motor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher end fence motor.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-254 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01001A	Drive-motor step (End fence motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

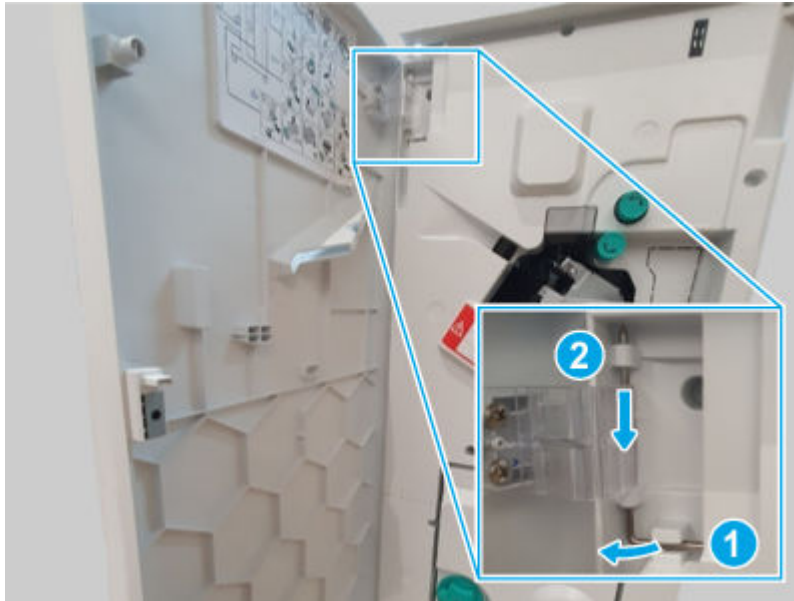
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

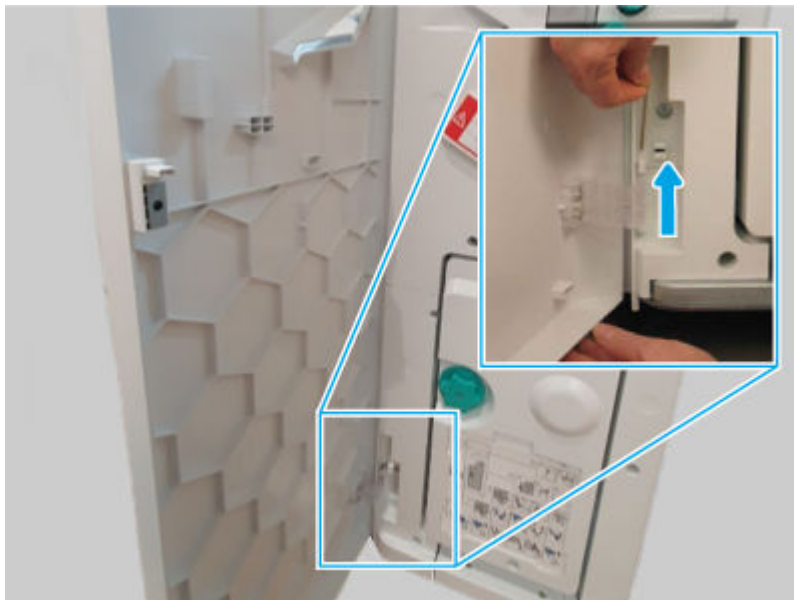
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1662 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1663 Remove the door



2. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

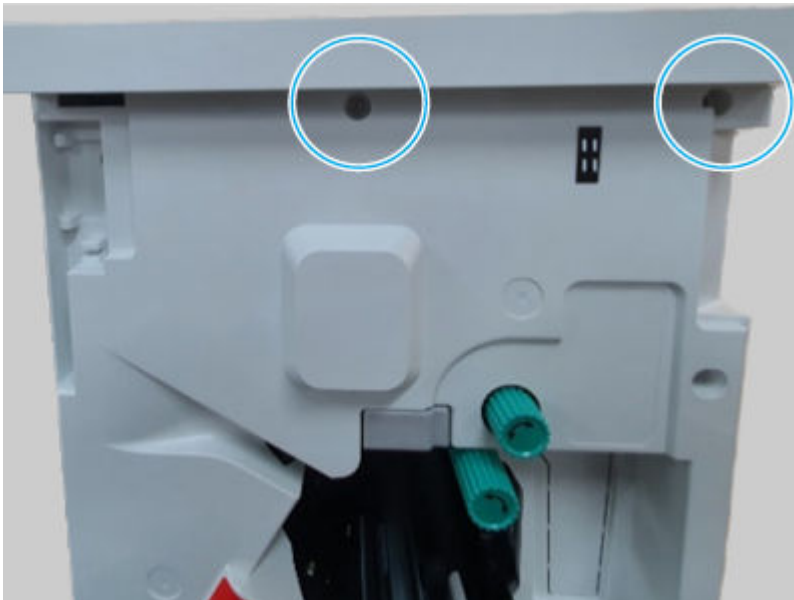
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1664 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1665 Remove the cover

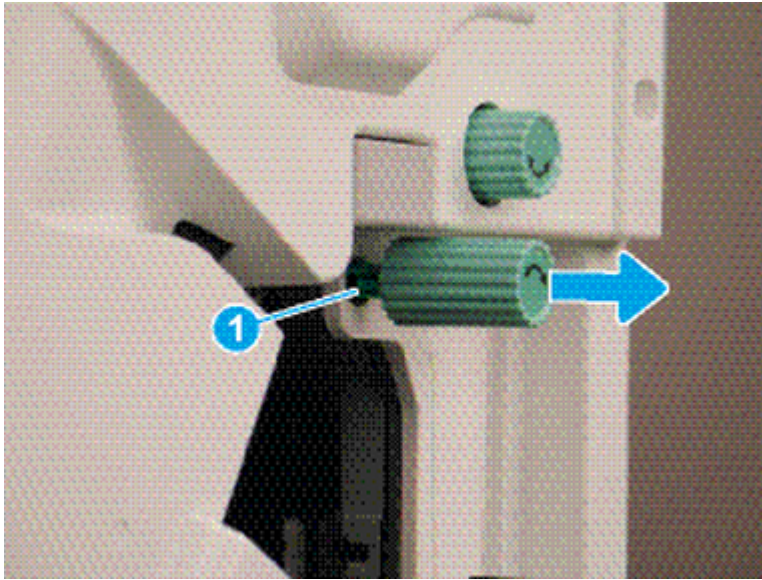


3. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1666 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1667 Remove the cover

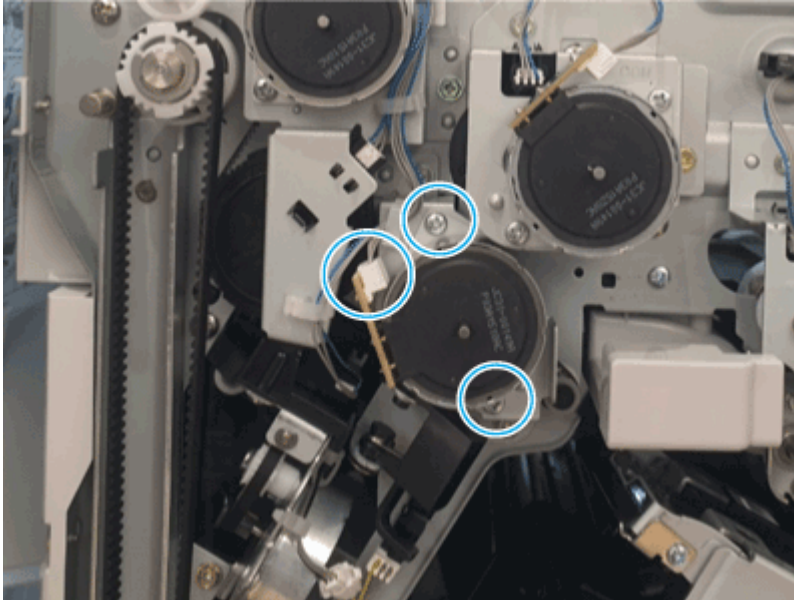


4. Remove the external finisher end fence motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher end fence motor.

- Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the end fence motor.


Figure 6-1668 Remove the motor



5. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Main output tray top of stack switch guide

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher main output tray top of stack switch guide.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-255 Part information

Part number	Part description
8GS05-40019	Main output tray top of stack switch guide

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

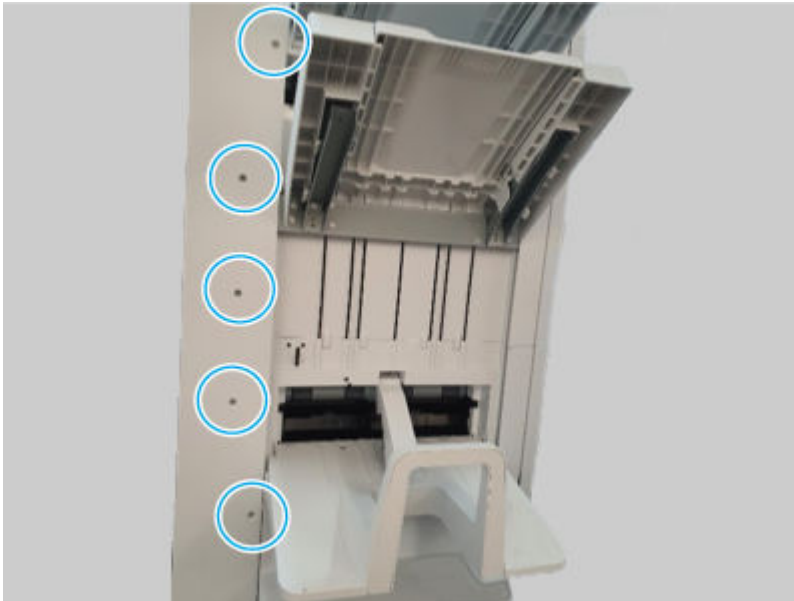
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1669 Remove five screws

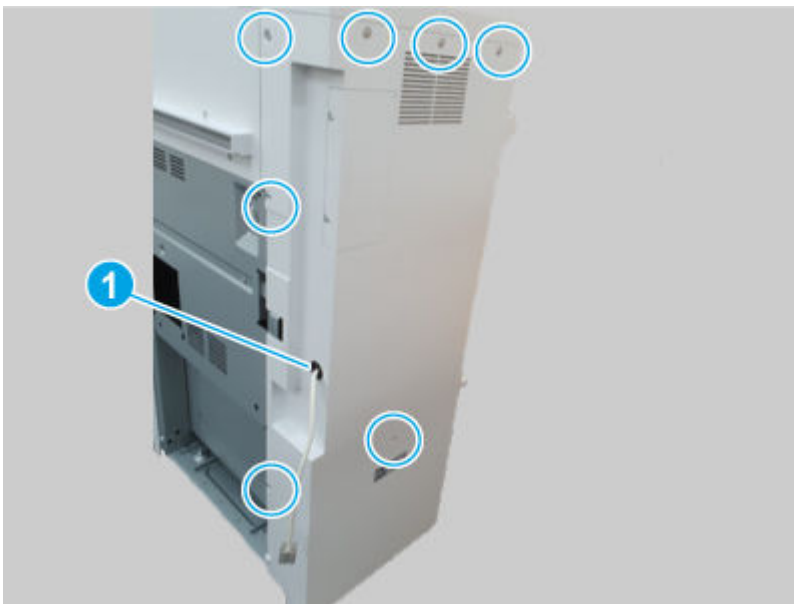


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1670 Remove the cover

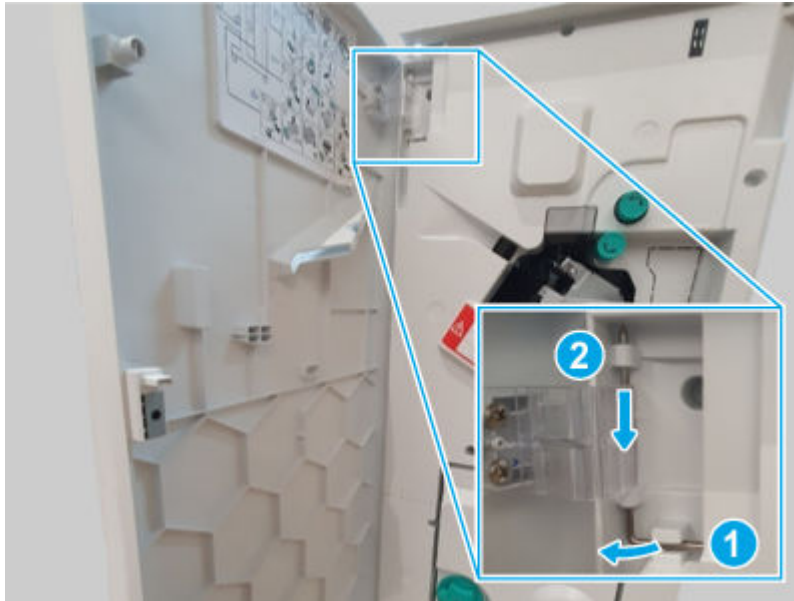


2 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

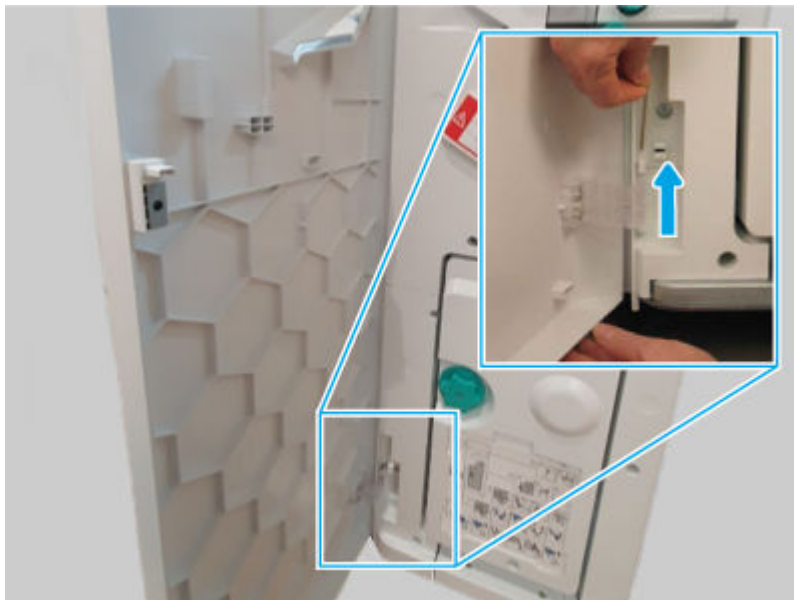
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1671 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1672 Remove the door



3 Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

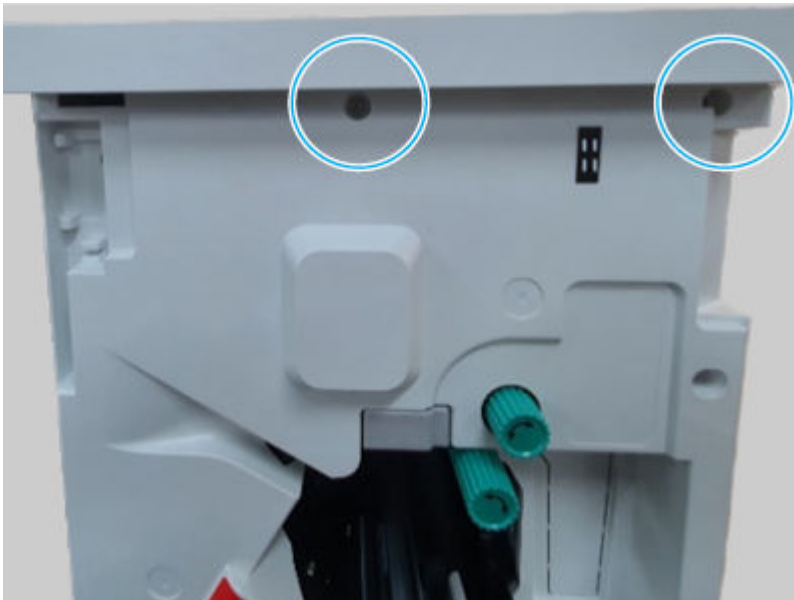
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1673 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1674 Remove the cover

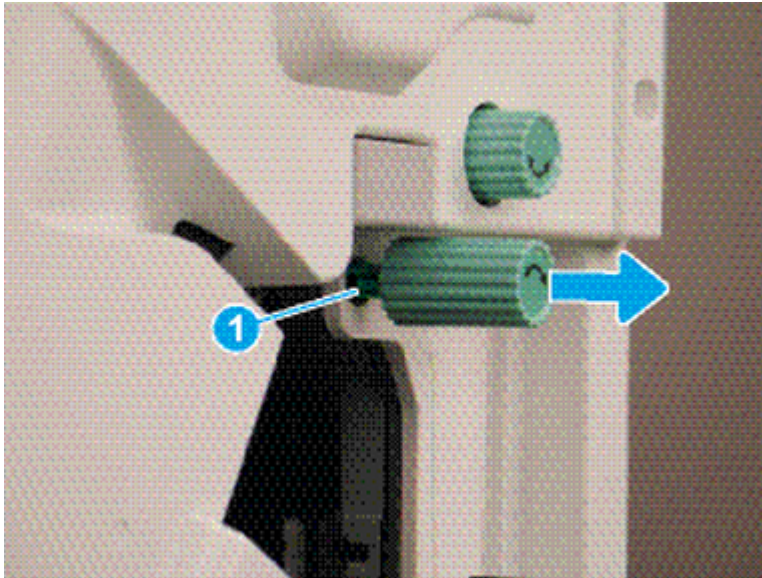


4 Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1675 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1676 Remove the cover

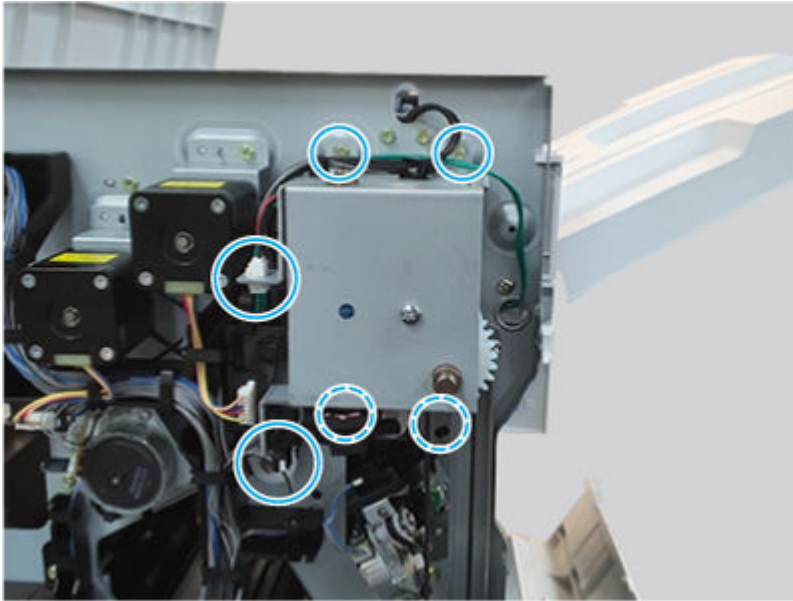


5 Remove the external finisher main output tray motor drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher main output tray motor drive assembly.

- Disconnect two connectors, remove four screws, and then remove the main output tray motor drive assembly.

Figure 6-1677 Remove the sensor

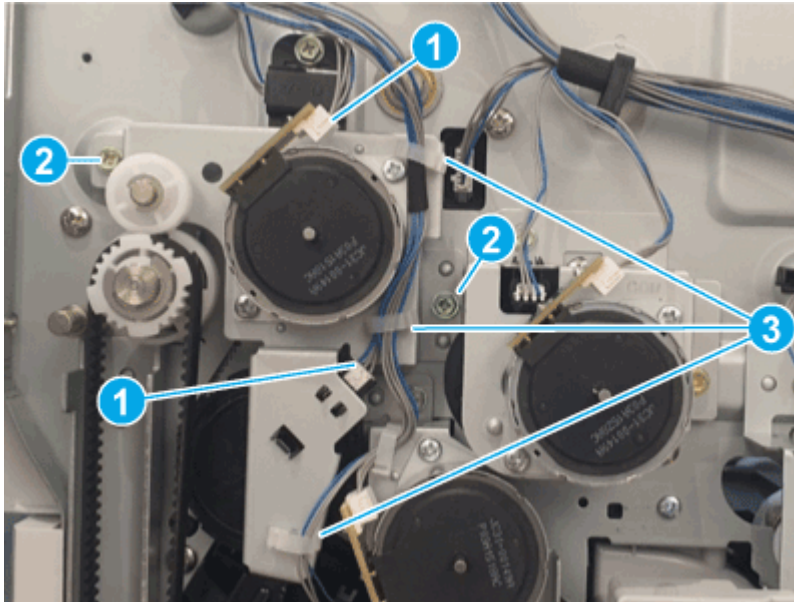


6 Remove the external finisher paddle motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher paddle motor assembly.

- Do the following:
 - a. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1).
 - b. Remove two screws (callout 2).
 - c. Release the wire harness from the retainers (callout 3), and then remove the paddle motor assembly.

Figure 6-1678 Remove the assembly

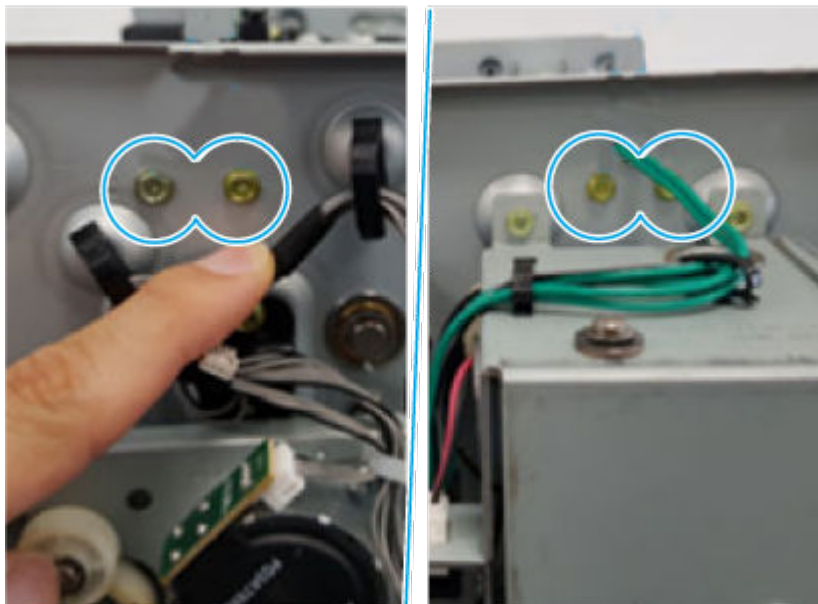


7 Remove the external finisher main output tray top of stack switch guide

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher main output tray top of stack switch guide.

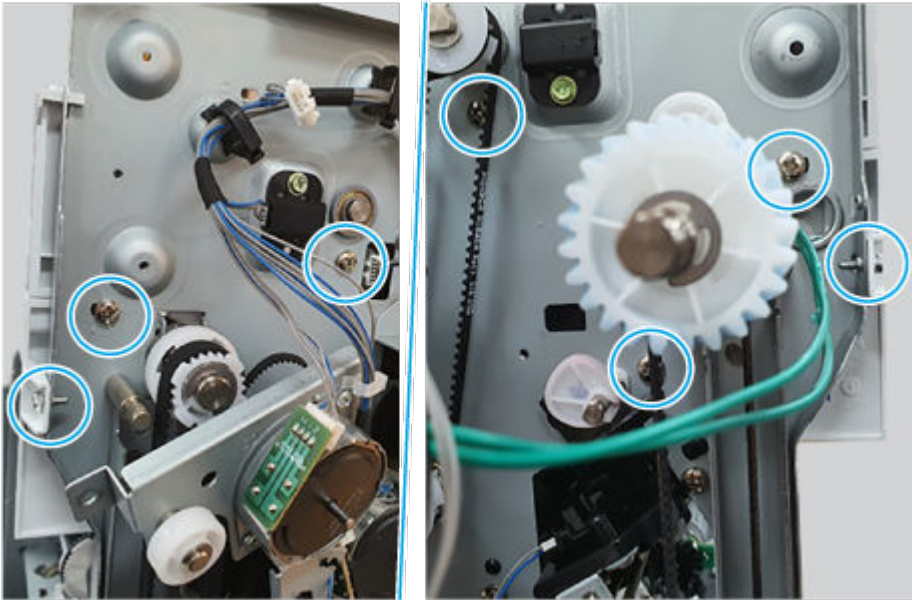
1. Remove four screws, and then remove the frame cover.

Figure 6-1679 Remove the cover



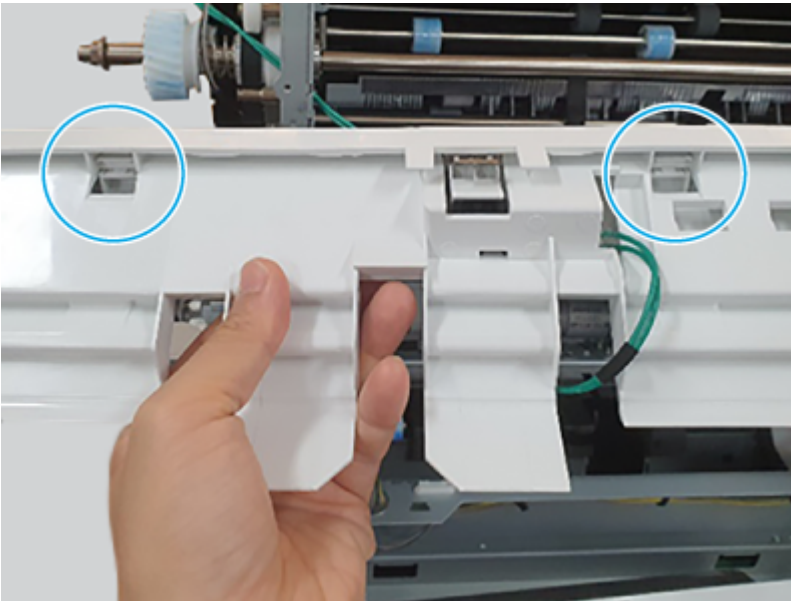
2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the top output tray.

Figure 6-1680 Remove the tray



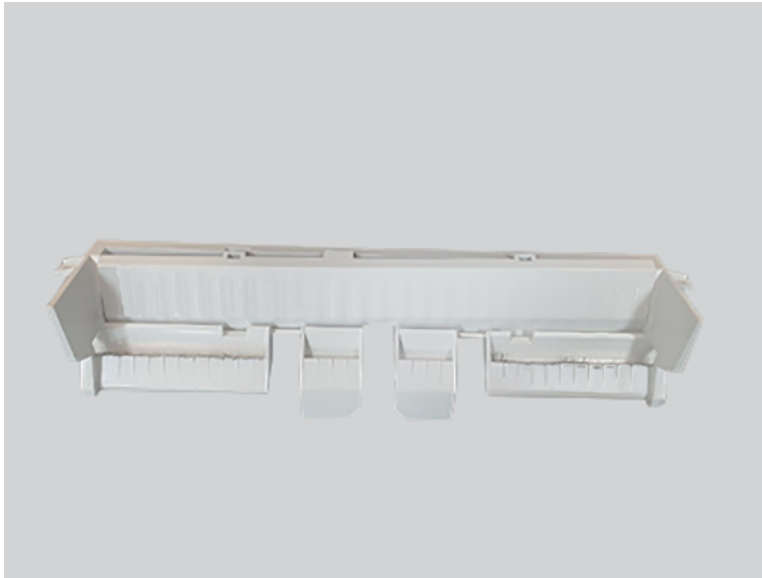
3. Release two hooks.

Figure 6-1681 Release two hooks



4. Remove the main output tray top of stack switch guide.

Figure 6-1682 Remove the guide



8 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Main output tray top of stack switch lower guide

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher main output tray top of stack switch lower guide.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-256 Part information

Part number	Part description
8GS05-40020	Main output tray top of stack switch lower guide

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

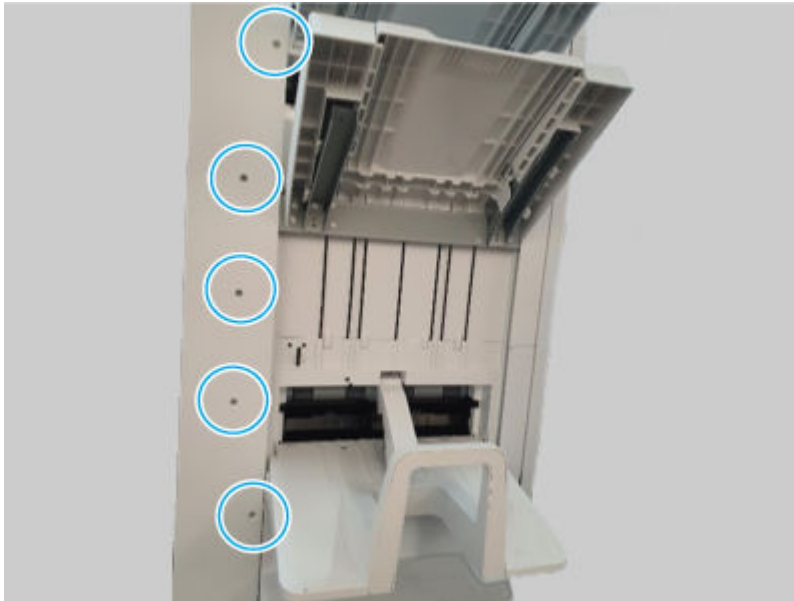
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1683 Remove five screws

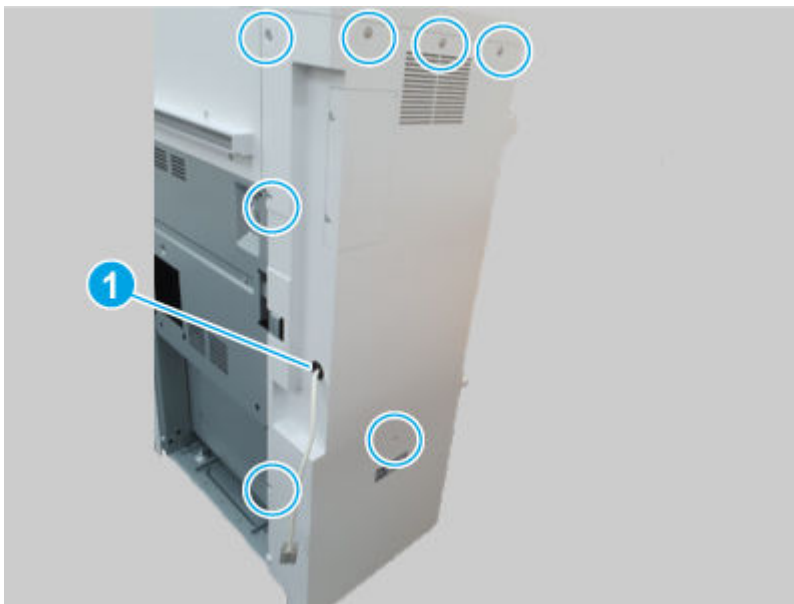


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1684 Remove the cover

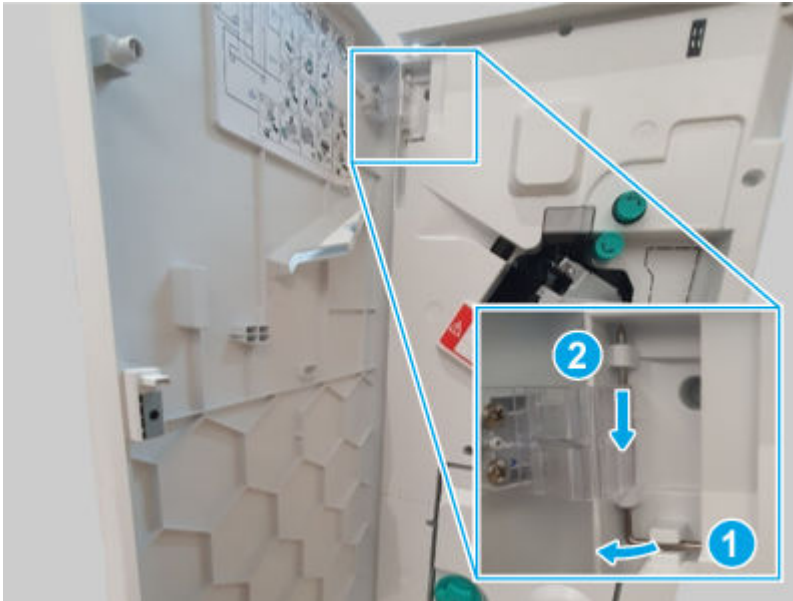


2 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

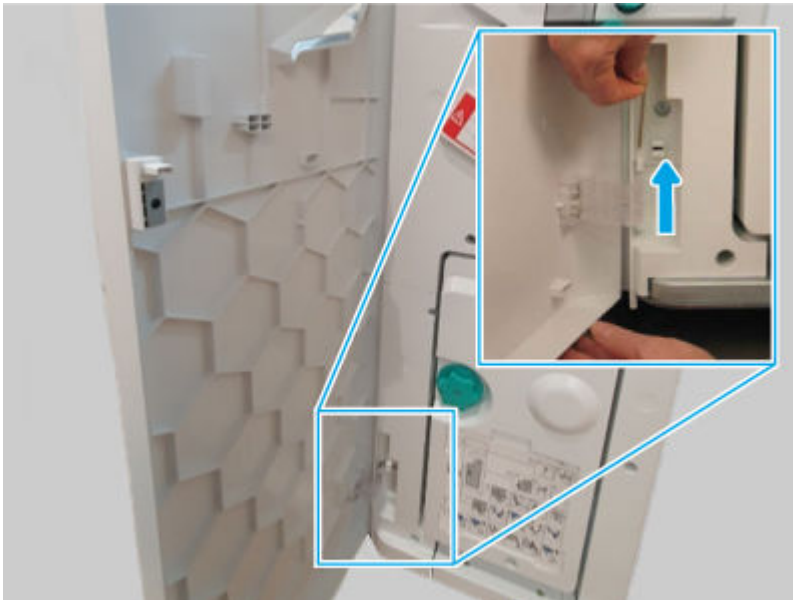
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1685 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1686 Remove the door



3 Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

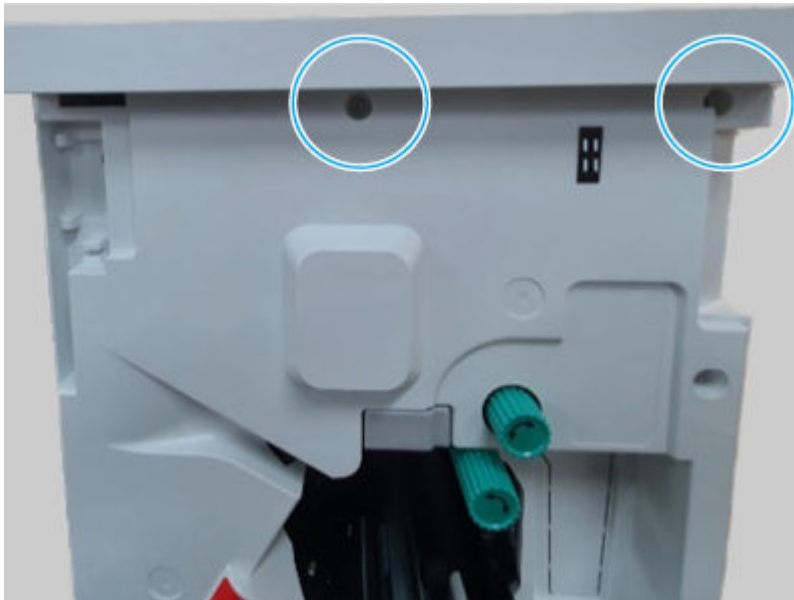
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1687 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1688 Remove the cover

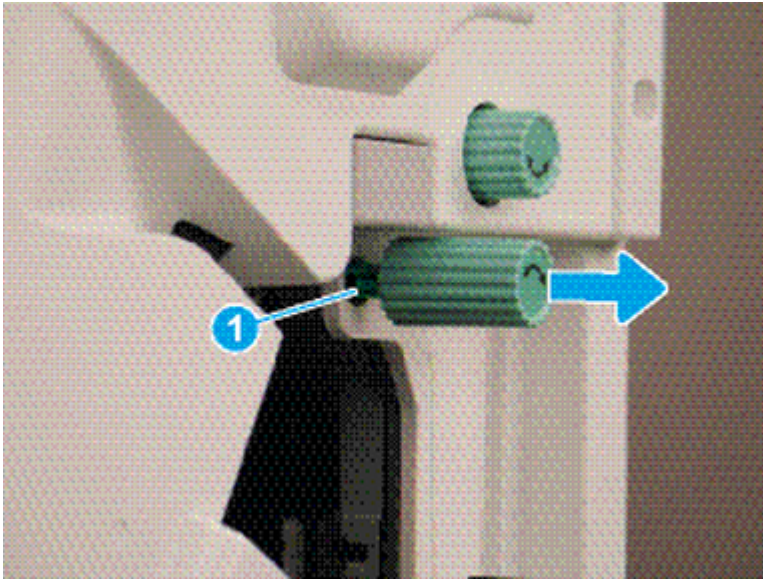


4 Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1689 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1690 Remove the cover

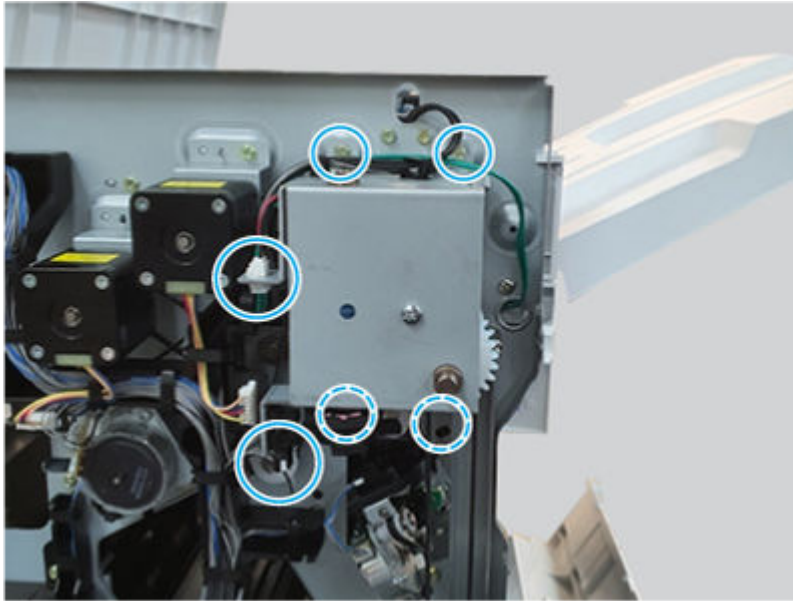


5 Remove the external finisher main output tray motor drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher main output tray motor drive assembly.

- Disconnect two connectors, remove four screws, and then remove the main output tray motor drive assembly.

Figure 6-1691 Remove the sensor

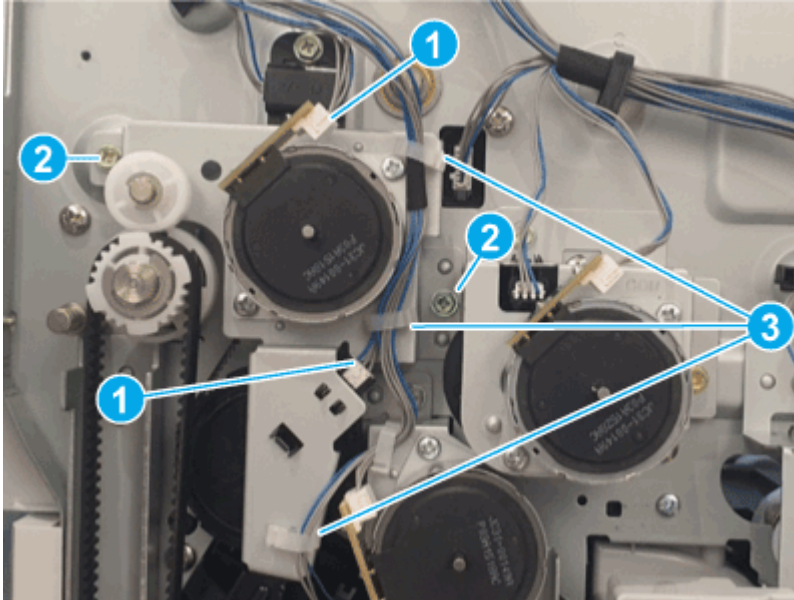


6 Remove the external finisher paddle motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher paddle motor assembly.

- Do the following:
 - a. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1).
 - b. Remove two screws (callout 2).
 - c. Release the wire harness from the retainers (callout 3), and then remove the paddle motor assembly.

Figure 6-1692 Remove the assembly

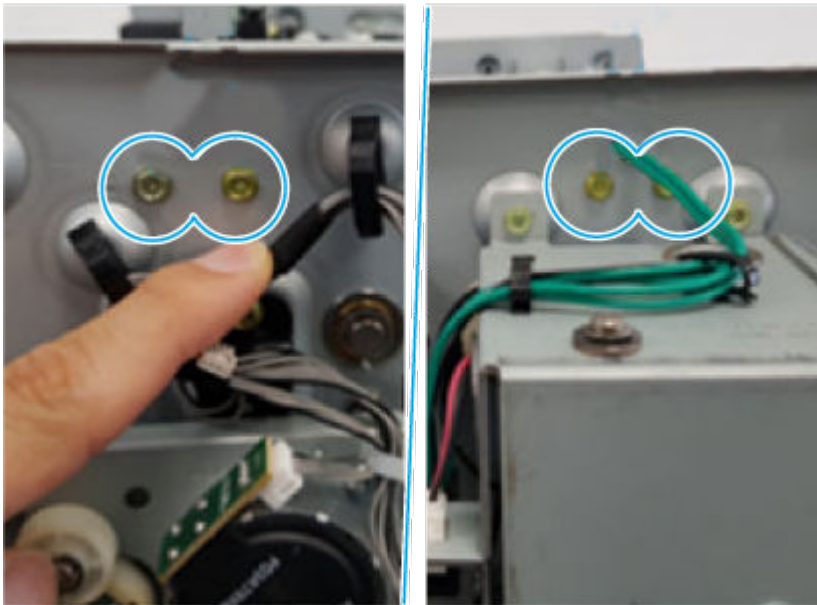


7 Remove the external finisher main output tray top of stack switch lower guide

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher main output tray top of stack switch lower guide.

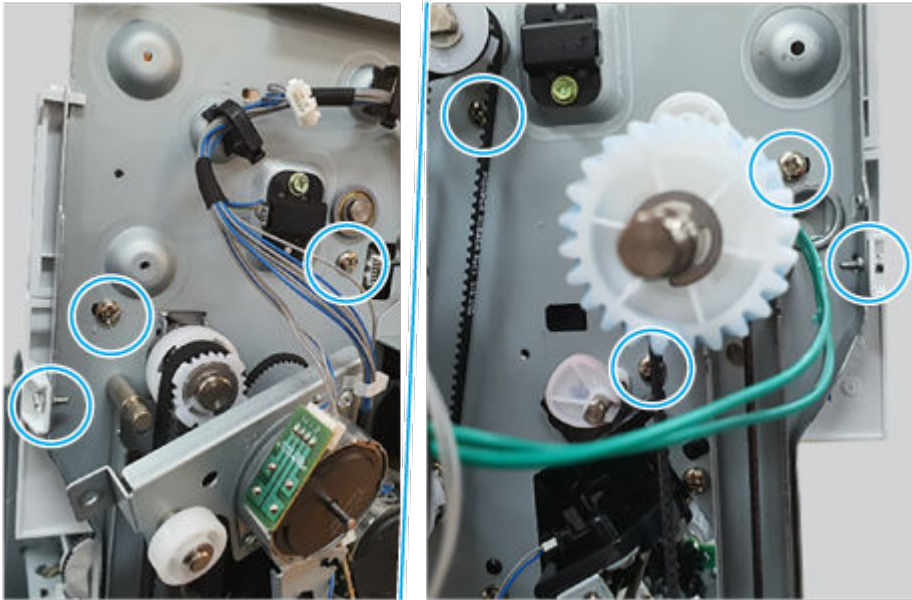
1. Remove four screws, and then remove the frame cover.

Figure 6-1693 Remove the cover



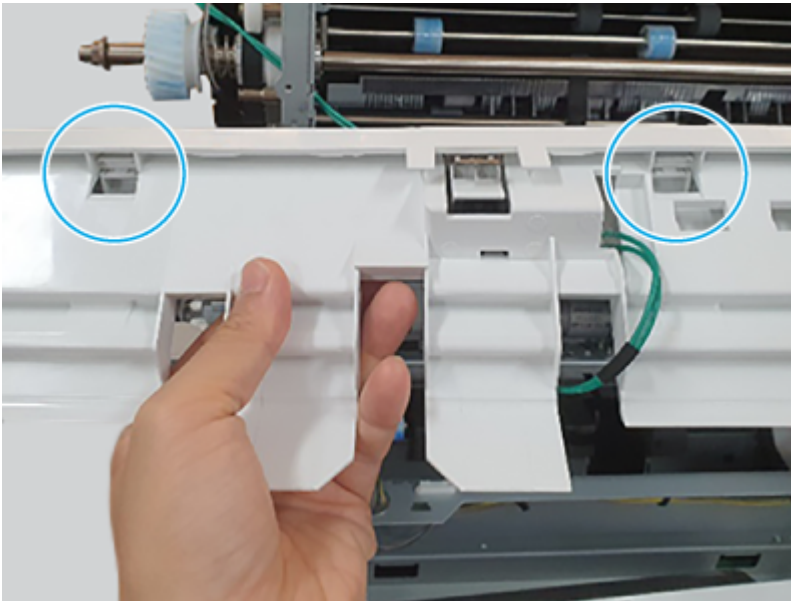
2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the top output tray.

Figure 6-1694 Remove the tray



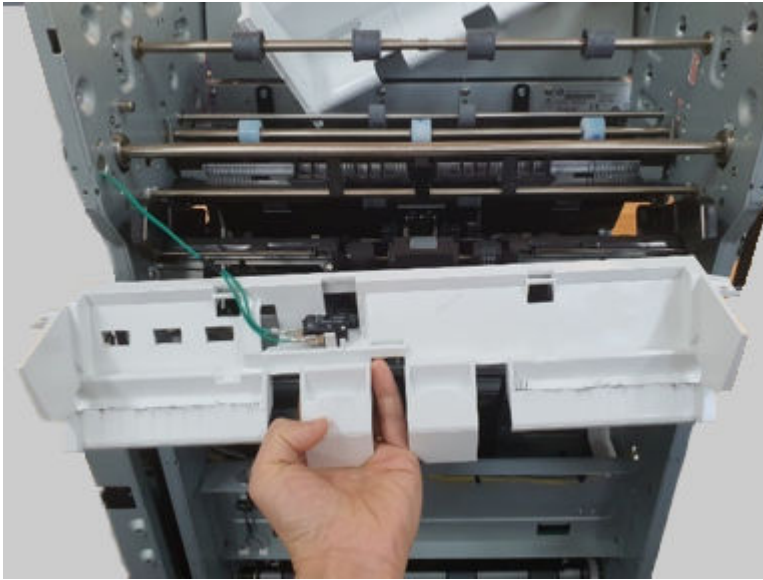
3. Release two hooks.

Figure 6-1695 Release two hooks



4. Remove the main output tray top of stack switch guide.

Figure 6-1696 Remove the guide



8 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Tamper unit

Review the external finisher tamper unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Front tamper

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher front tamper.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-257 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC82-00901A	Front tamper

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

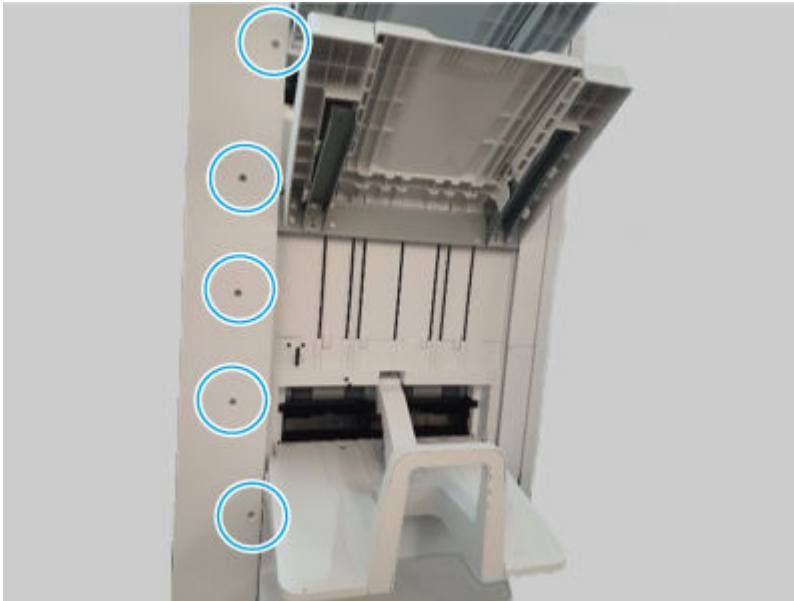
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1697 Remove five screws

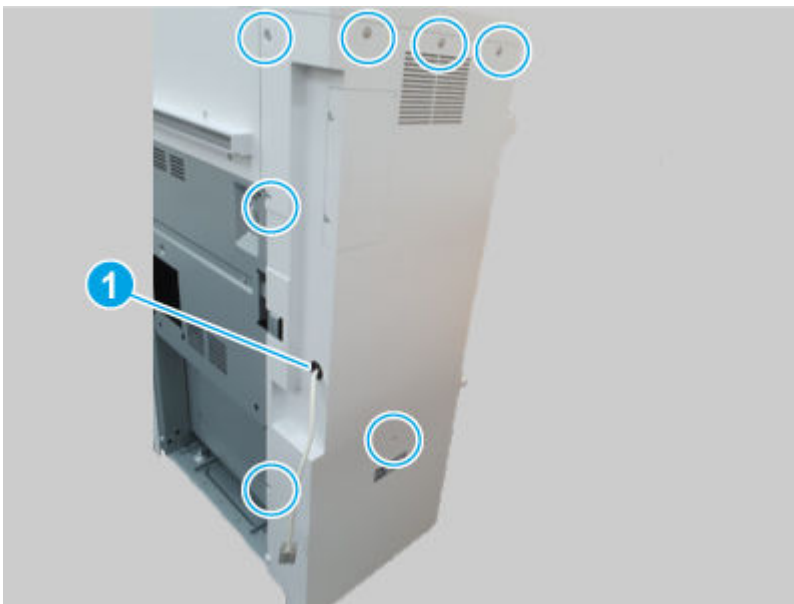


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1698 Remove the cover

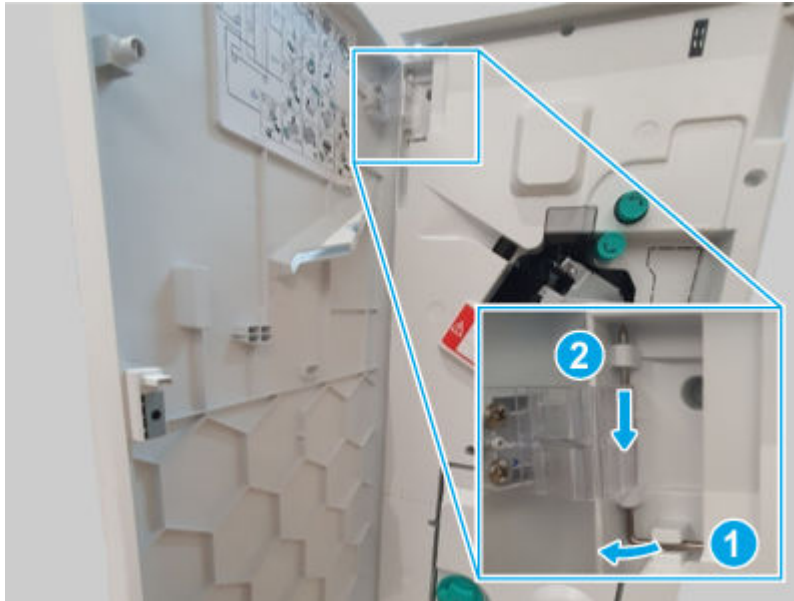


2. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

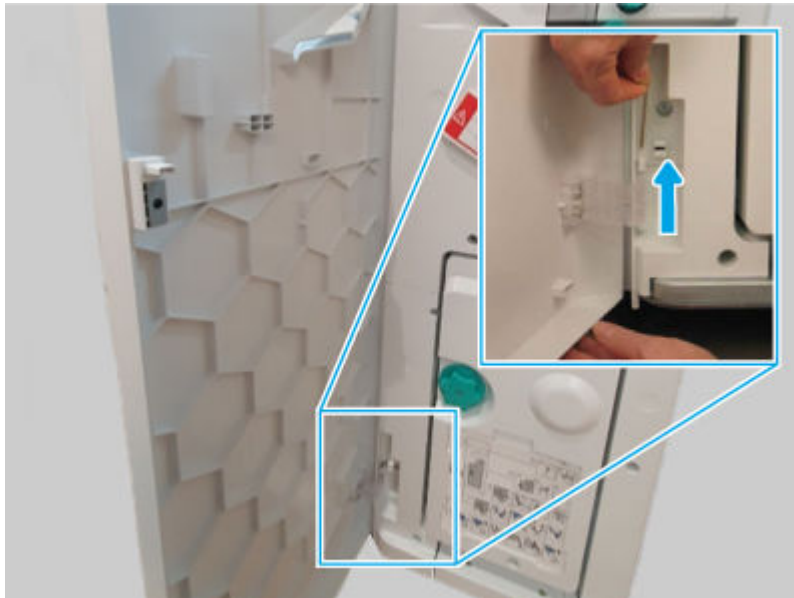
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1699 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1700 Remove the door



3. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

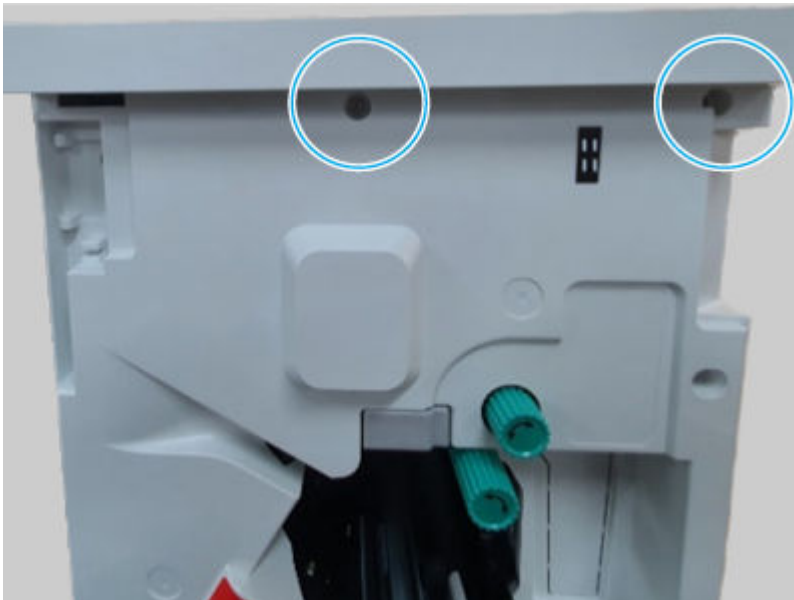
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1701 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1702 Remove the cover

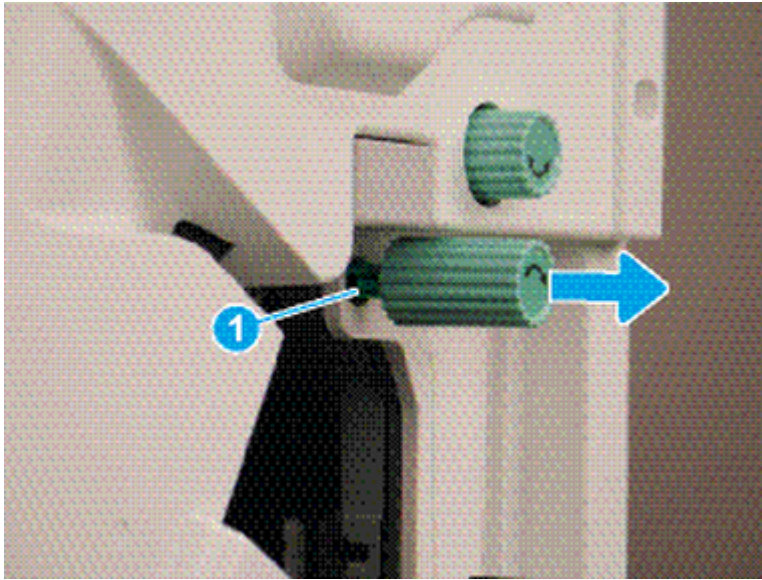


4. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1703 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1704 Remove the cover



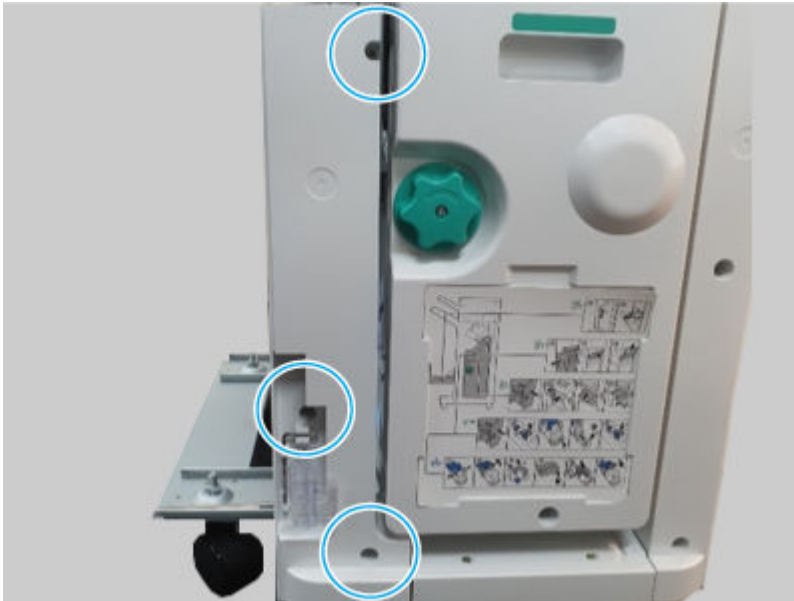
5. Remove the external finisher front lower left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front lower left cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.

2. Remove three screws, and then remove the front lower left cover.

Figure 6-1705 Remove the cover



6. Remove the external finisher caster

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher caster.

⚠ WARNING! The external finisher is not stable when one or more casters are removed and can easily tip over. To avoid personal injury or damage to the finisher, make sure to fully support the finisher when removing a caster.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.
2. Remove one fix nut.

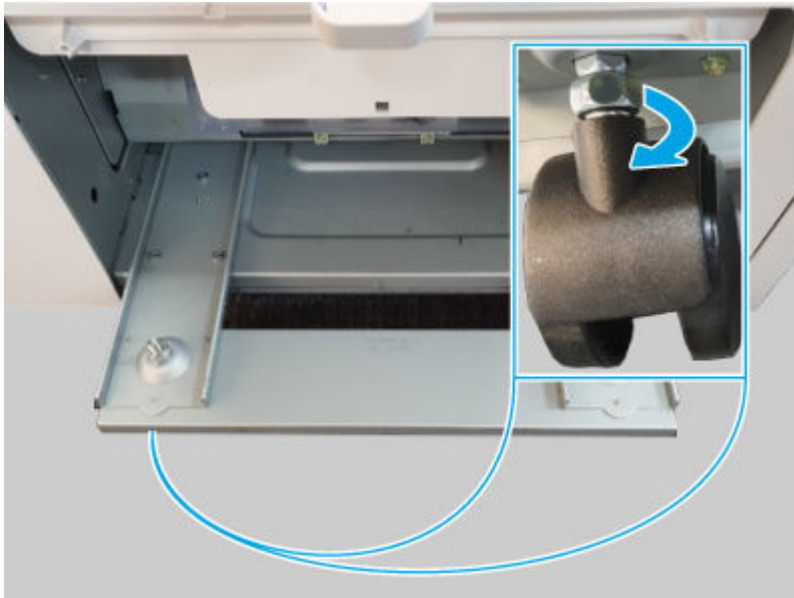
🔧 NOTE: Use a 12mm spanner wrench to remove the nut.

Figure 6-1706 Remove the nut



3. Rotate the caster as shown below to remove it. Repeat these steps for the remaining casters as needed.

Figure 6-1707 Remove the caster

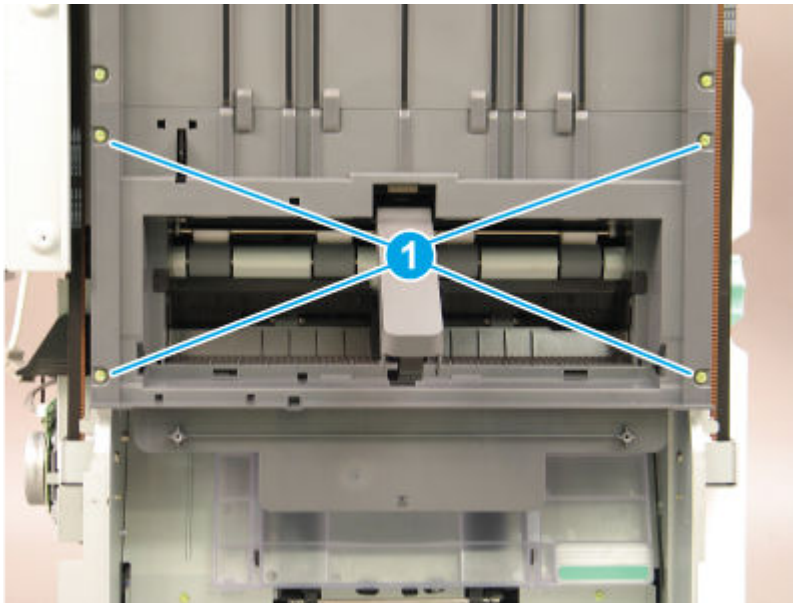


7. Remove the external finisher left lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left lower cover.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-1708 Remove four screws

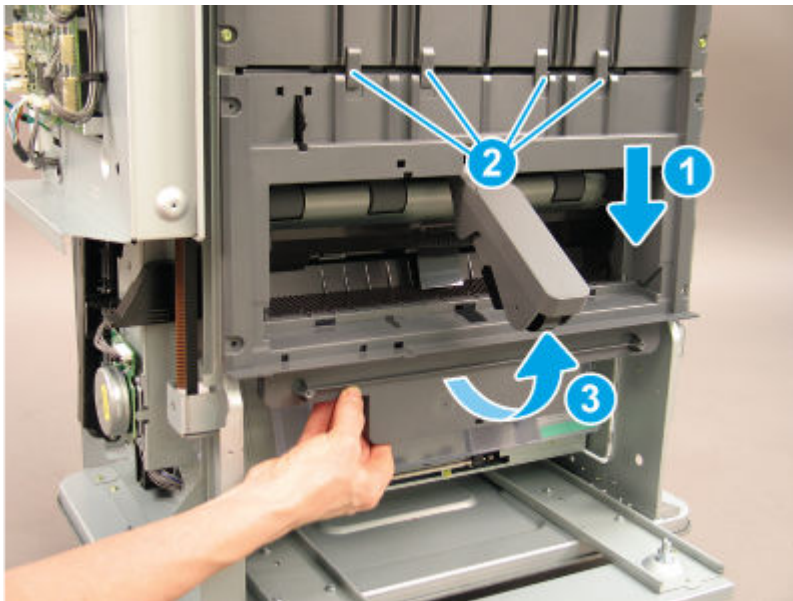


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

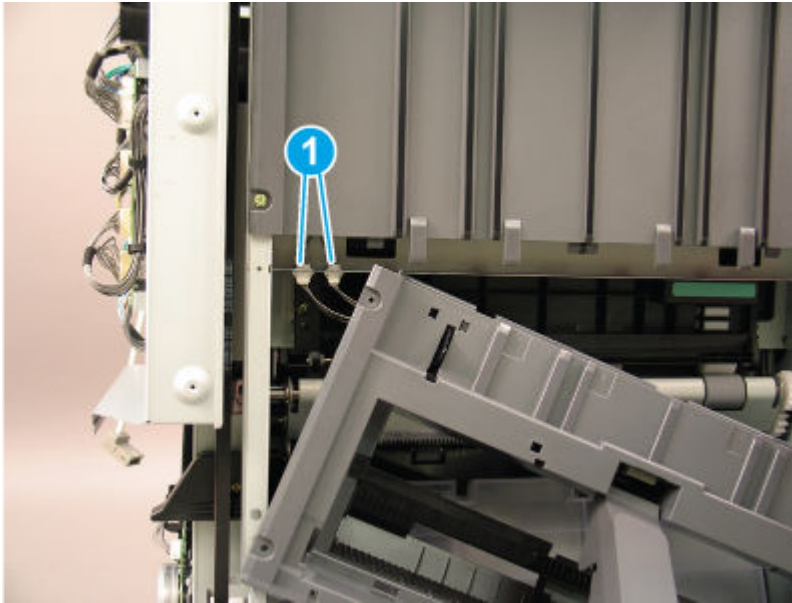
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-1709 Release the cover



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the left lower cover.

Figure 6-1710 Remove the cover

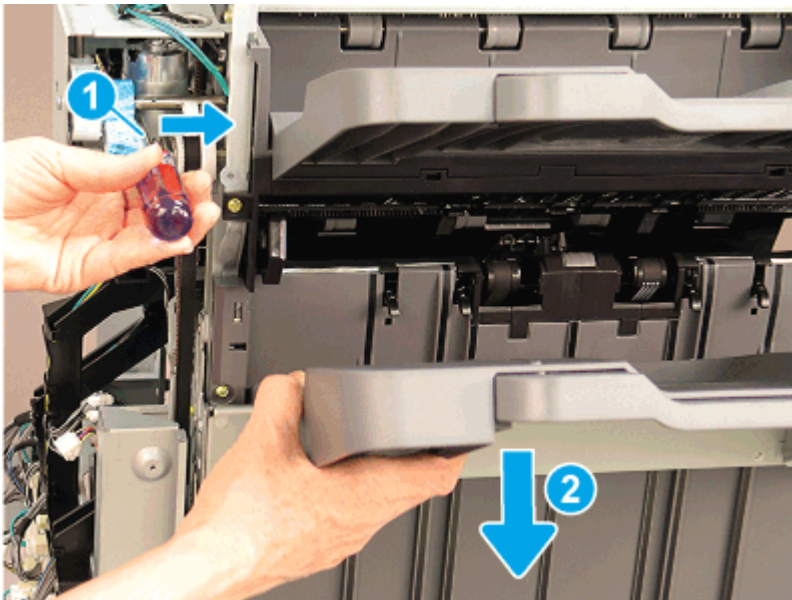


8. Remove the external finisher left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left upper cover.

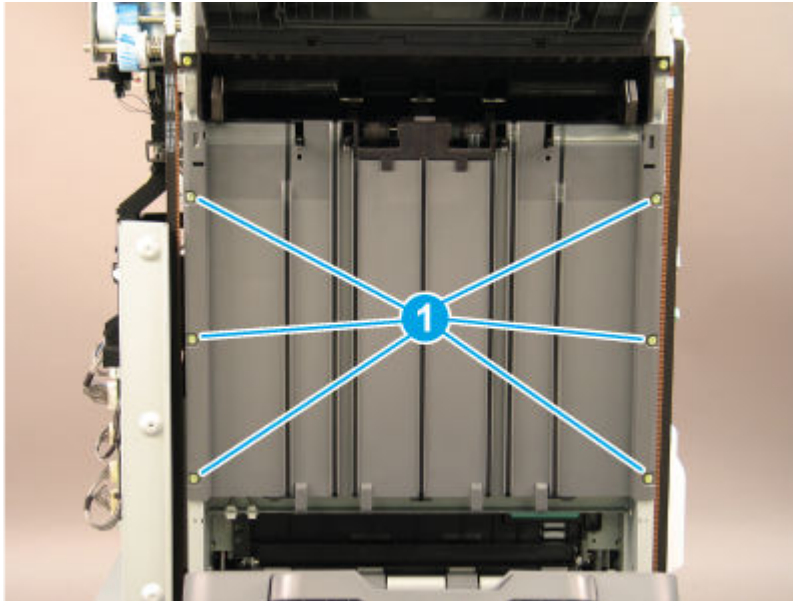
1. Bring the main output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 6-1711 Lower the tray



2. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-1712 Remove six screws

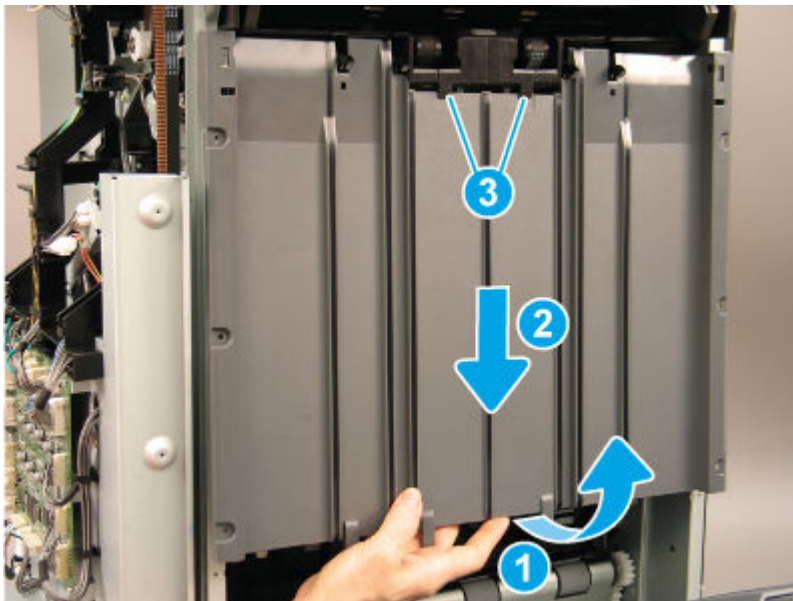


3. Rotate the lower edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

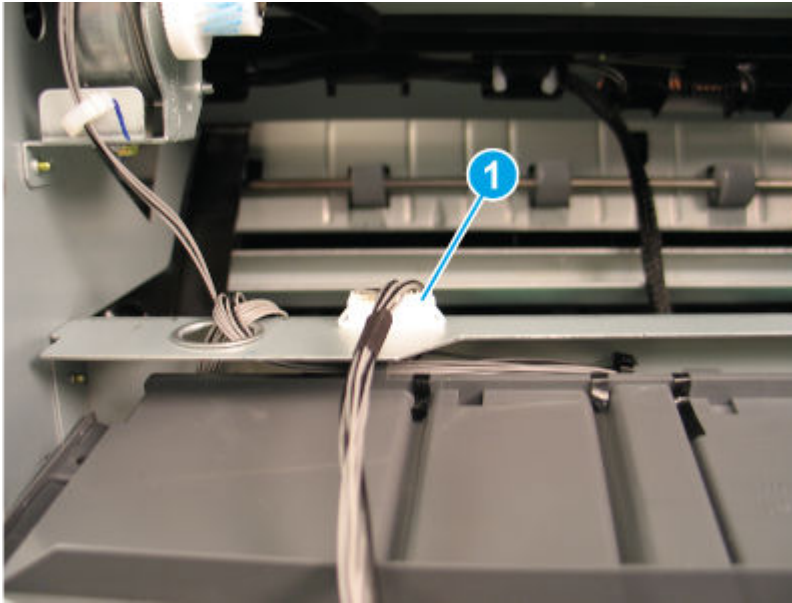
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-1713 Release the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the left upper cover.

Figure 6-1714 Remove the cover



9. Remove the external finisher front tamper

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front tamper.

- Disconnect three connectors, remove three screws, and then remove the front tamper.


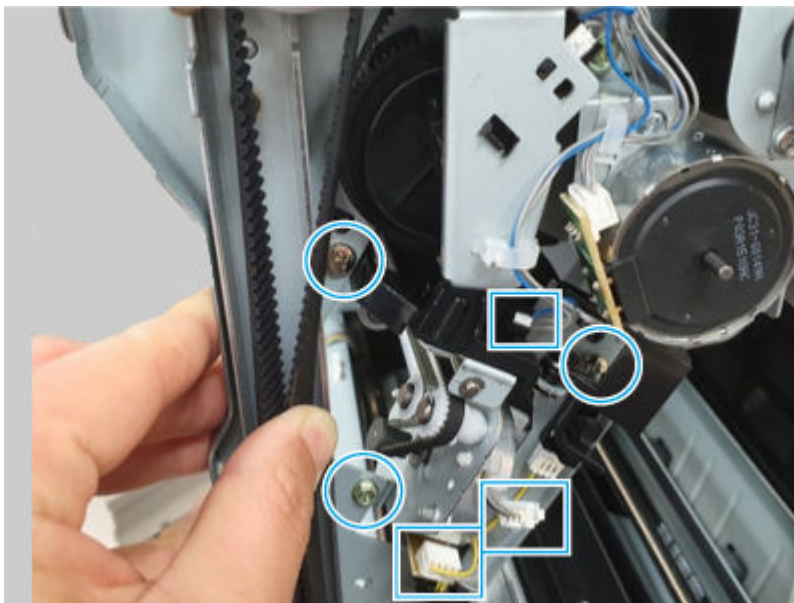
 **NOTE:** If the tamper unit is removed after the ejector unit to gain access to another assembly, the screws have already been removed.

Figure 6-1715 Remove the tamper



10. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Front tamper home sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher front tamper home sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-258 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Front tamper home sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

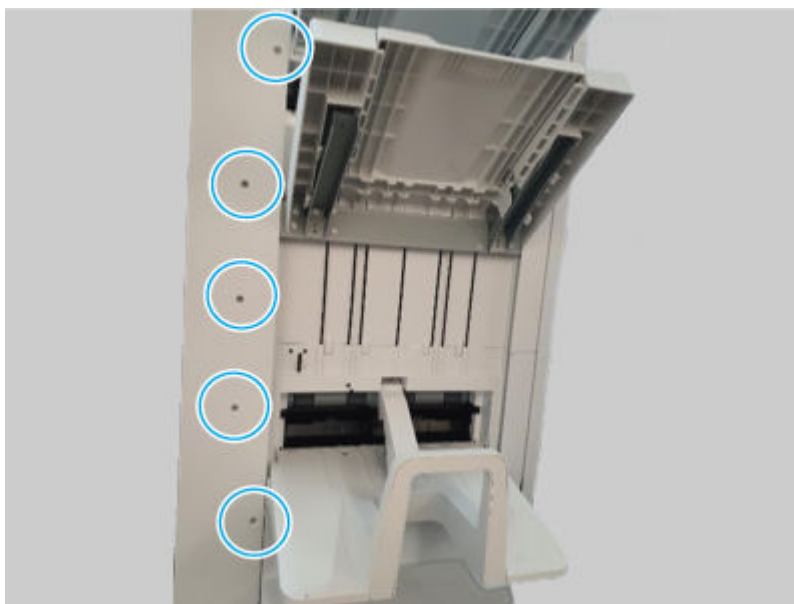
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1716 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1717 Remove the cover

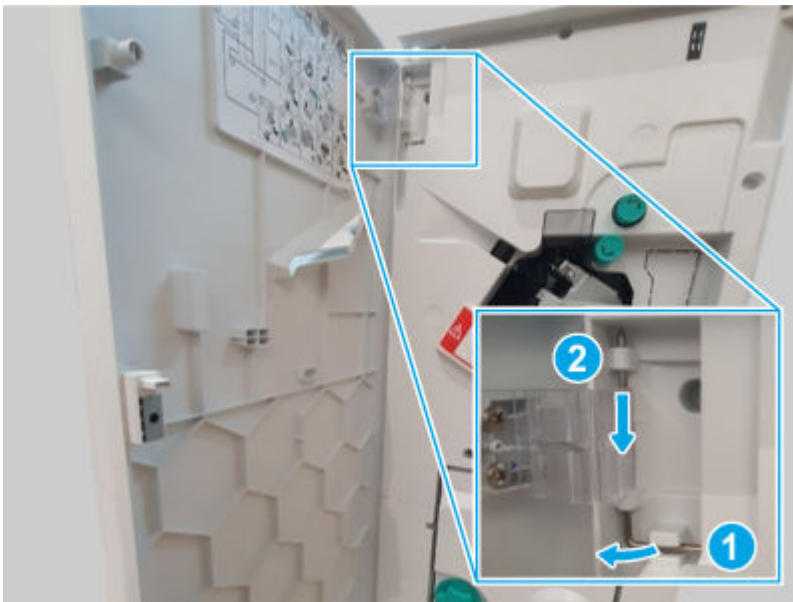


2. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

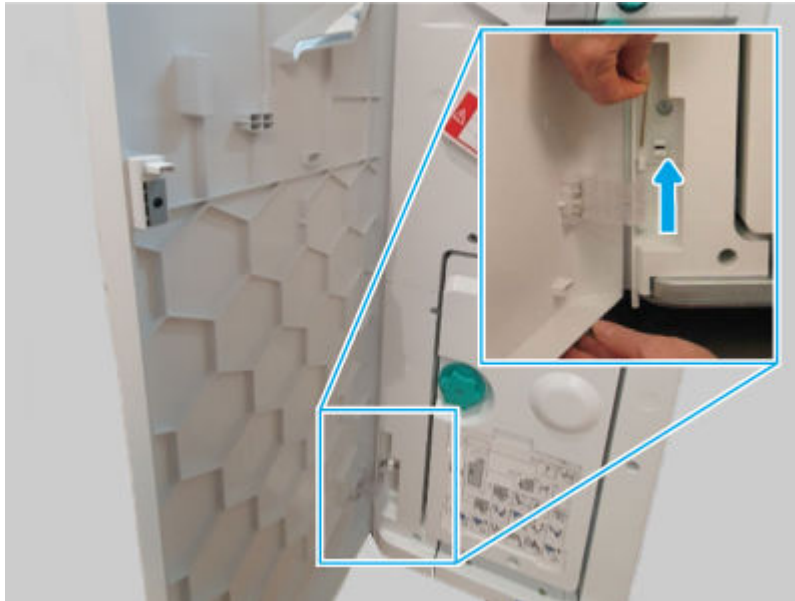
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1718 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1719 Remove the door



3. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1720 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1721 Remove the cover

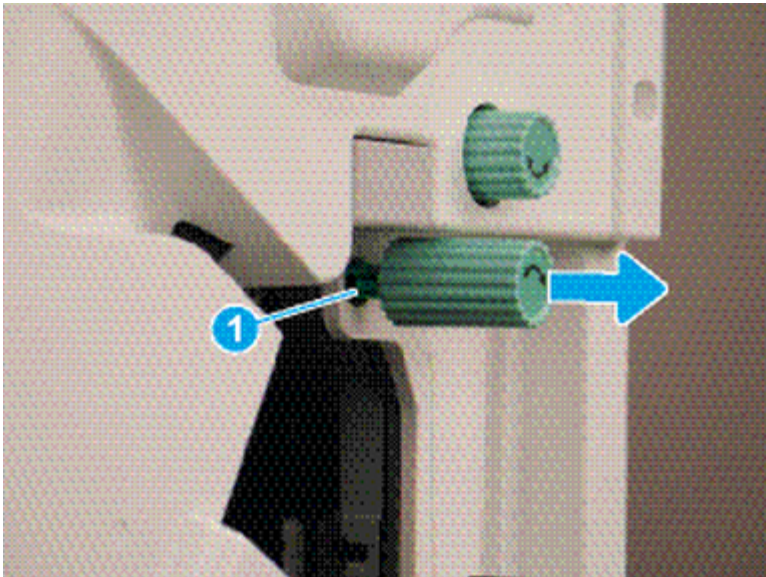


4. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1722 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1723 Remove the cover

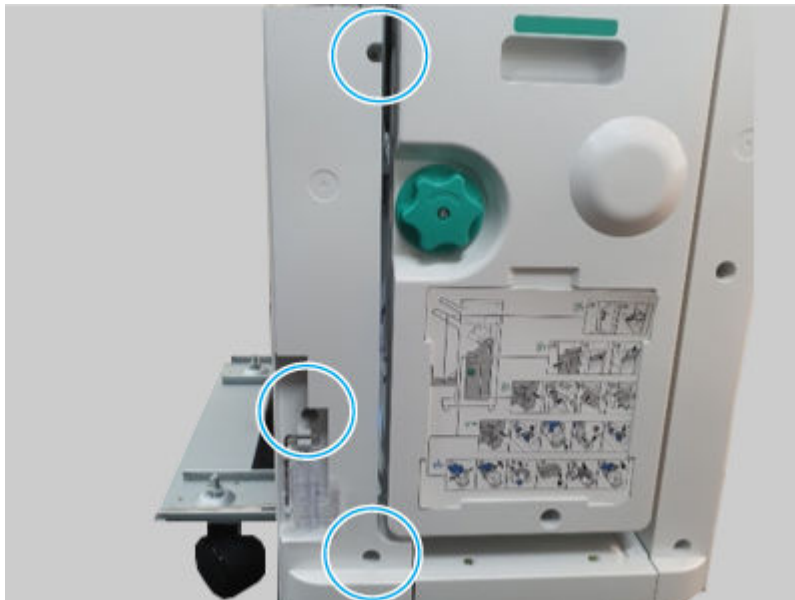


5. Remove the external finisher front lower left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front lower left cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.
2. Remove three screws, and then remove the front lower left cover.

Figure 6-1724 Remove the cover

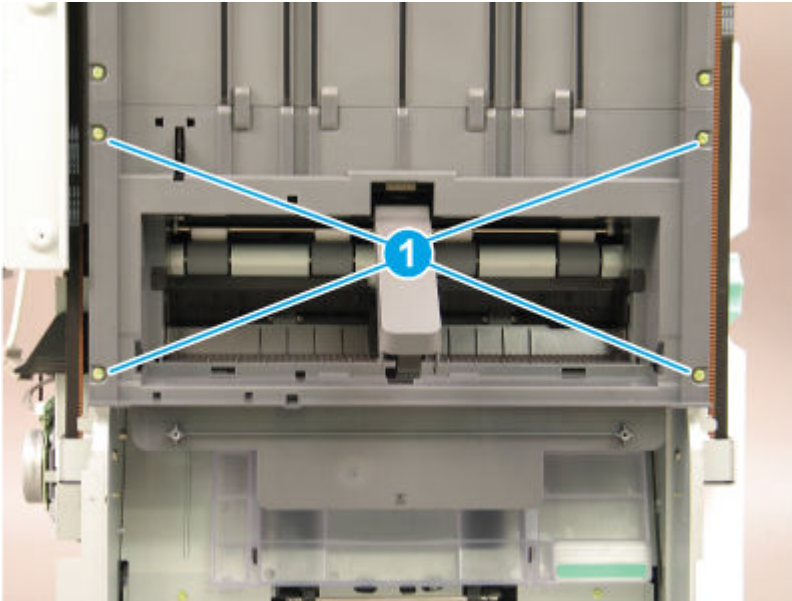


6. Remove the external finisher left lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left lower cover.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-1725 Remove four screws

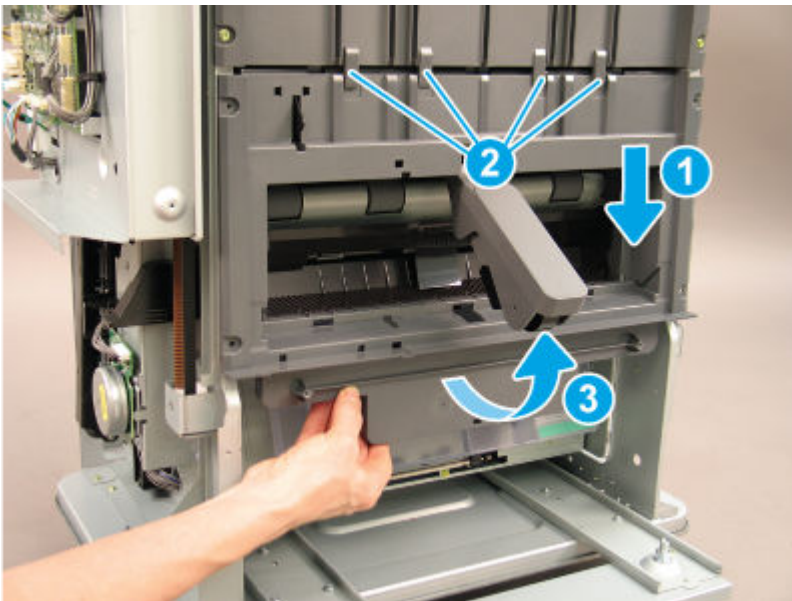


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

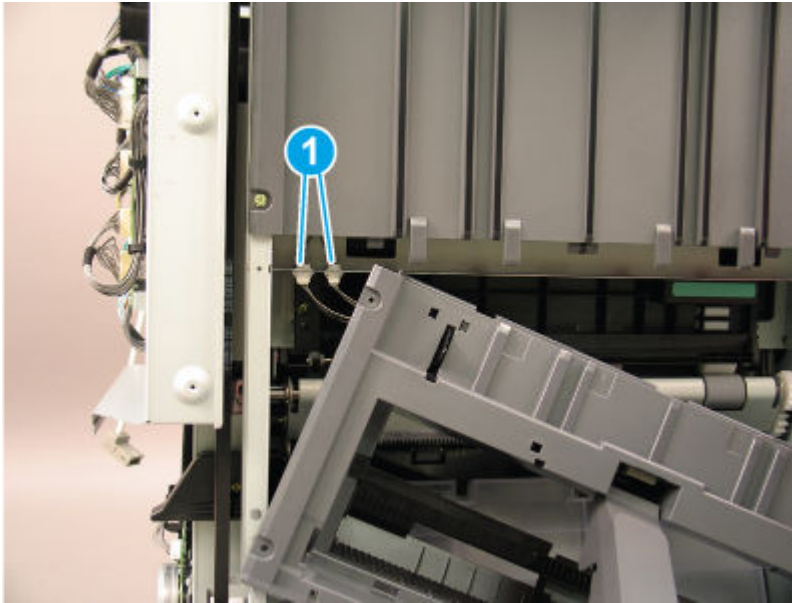
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-1726 Release the cover



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the left lower cover.

Figure 6-1727 Remove the cover

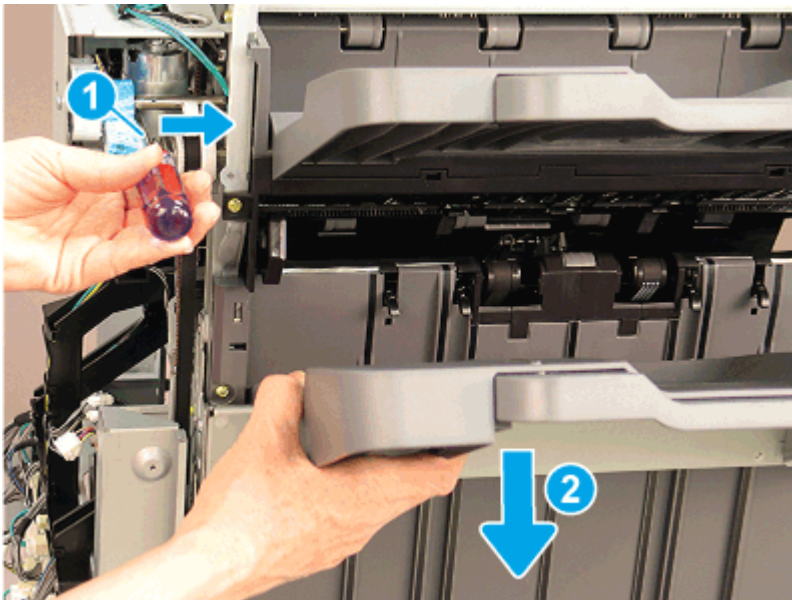


7. Remove the external finisher left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left upper cover.

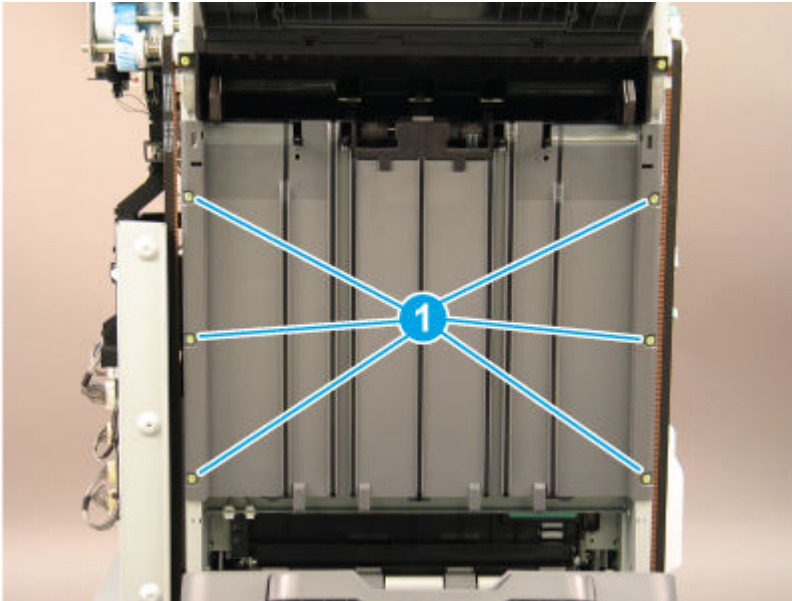
1. Bring the main output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 6-1728 Lower the tray



2. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-1729 Remove six screws

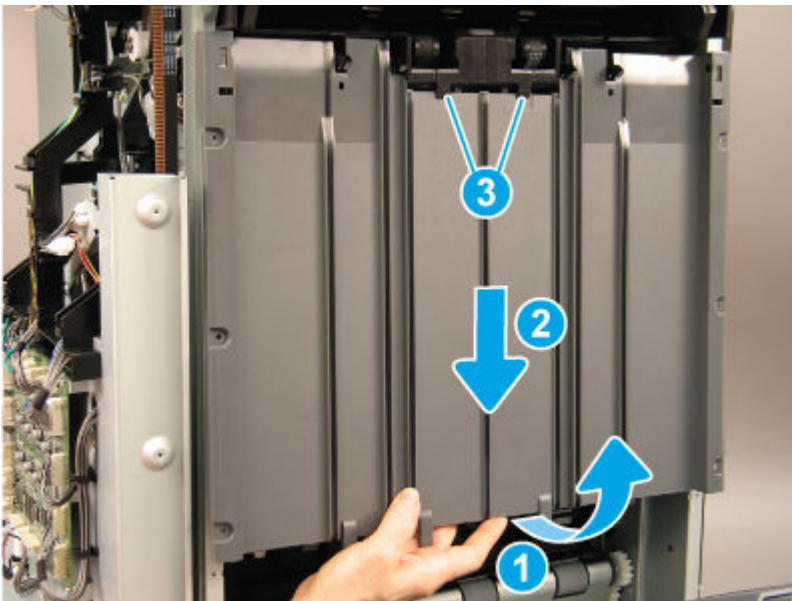


3. Rotate the lower edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

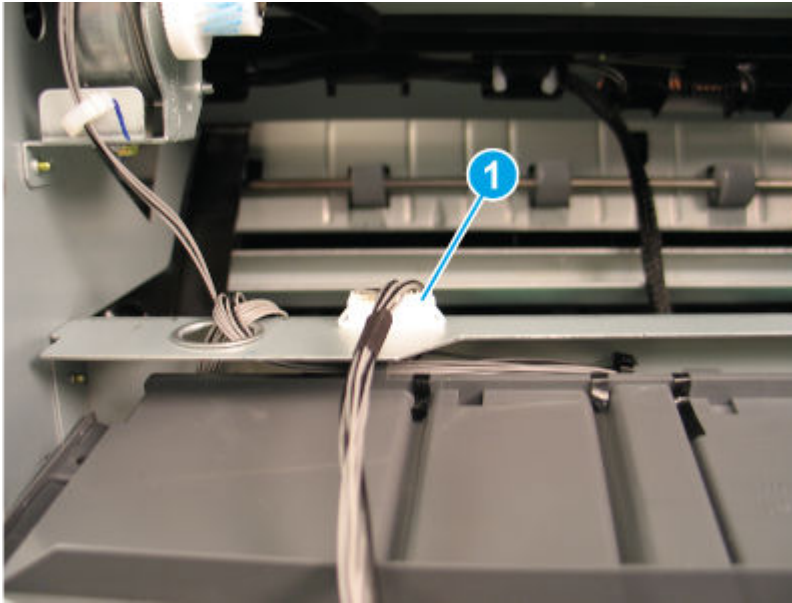
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-1730 Release the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the left upper cover.

Figure 6-1731 Remove the cover



8. Remove the external finisher front tamper

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front tamper.

- Disconnect three connectors, remove three screws, and then remove the front tamper.


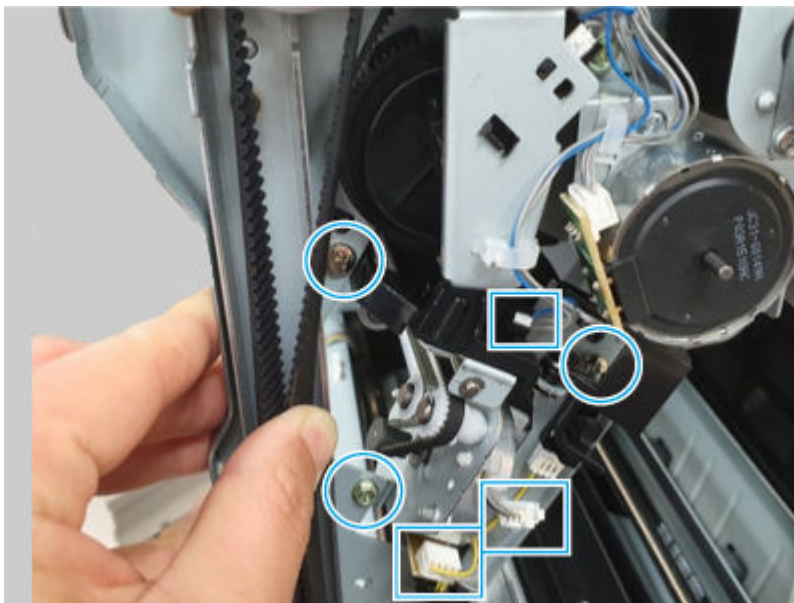
 **NOTE:** If the tamper unit is removed after the ejector unit to gain access to another assembly, the screws have already been removed.

Figure 6-1732 Remove the tamper

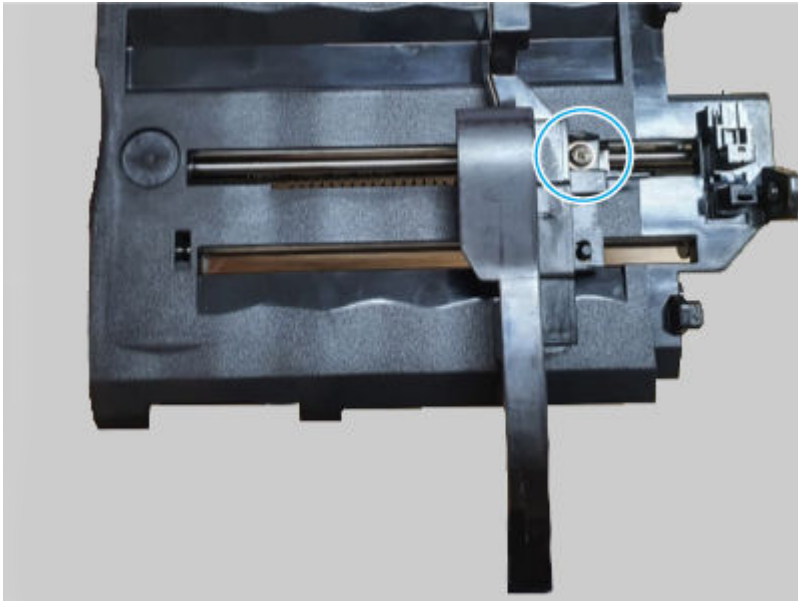


9. Remove the external finisher front tamper home sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front tamper home sensor.

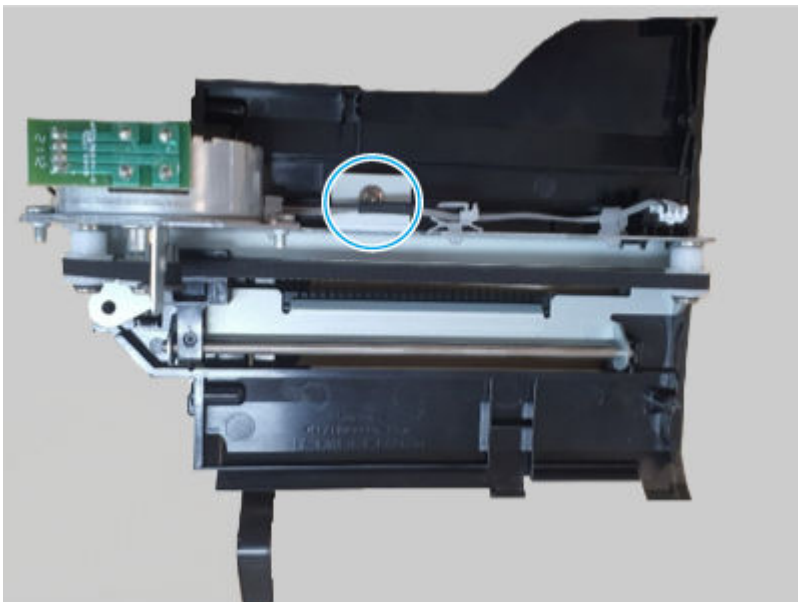
1. Remove one screw, and then remove the tamper.

Figure 6-1733 Remove the tamper



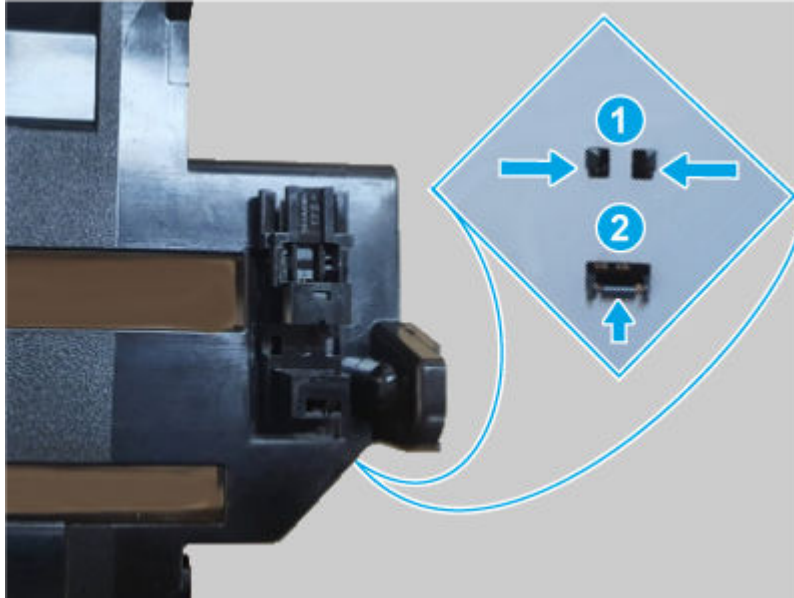
2. Remove one screw, and then remove the bracket.

Figure 6-1734 Remove the bracket



3. Do the following:
 - a. Release the hooks (callout 1).
 - b. Slide the sensor assembly as shown below (callout 2).
 - c. Remove the tamper home sensor from the bracket.

Figure 6-1735 Remove the sensor



10. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Front tamper motor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher front tamper motor.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-259 Part Information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01001A	Drive-motor step (Front tamper motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

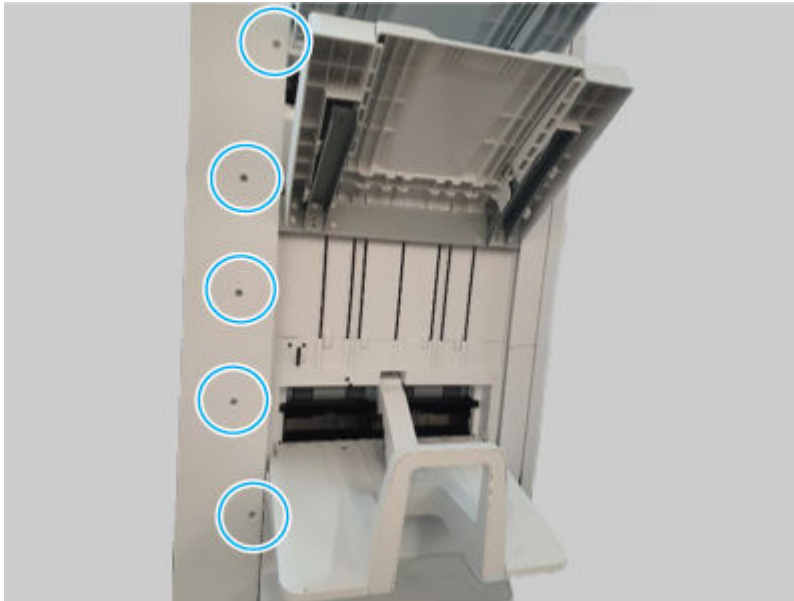
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1736 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


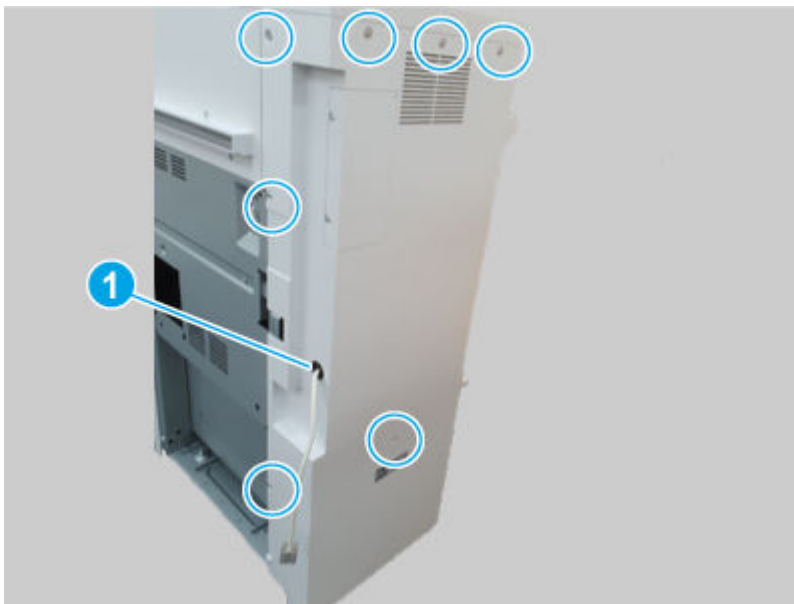
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1737 Remove the cover

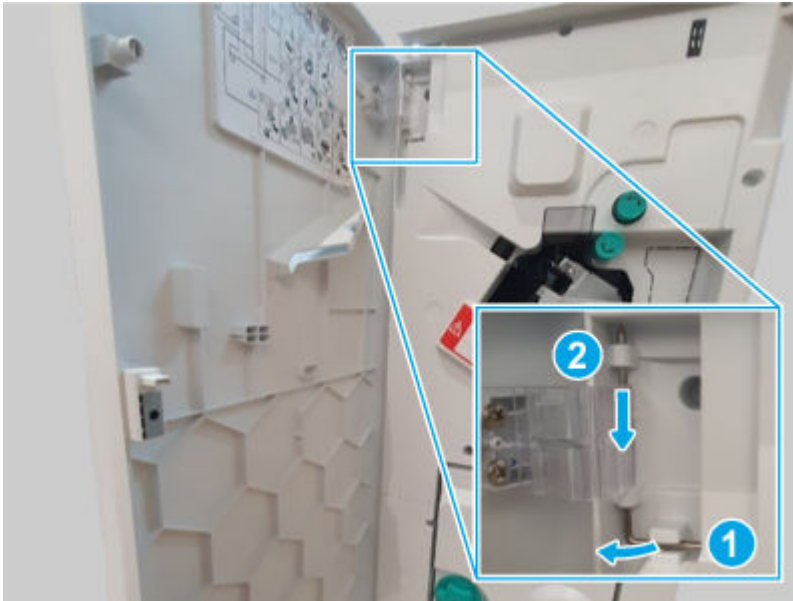


2. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

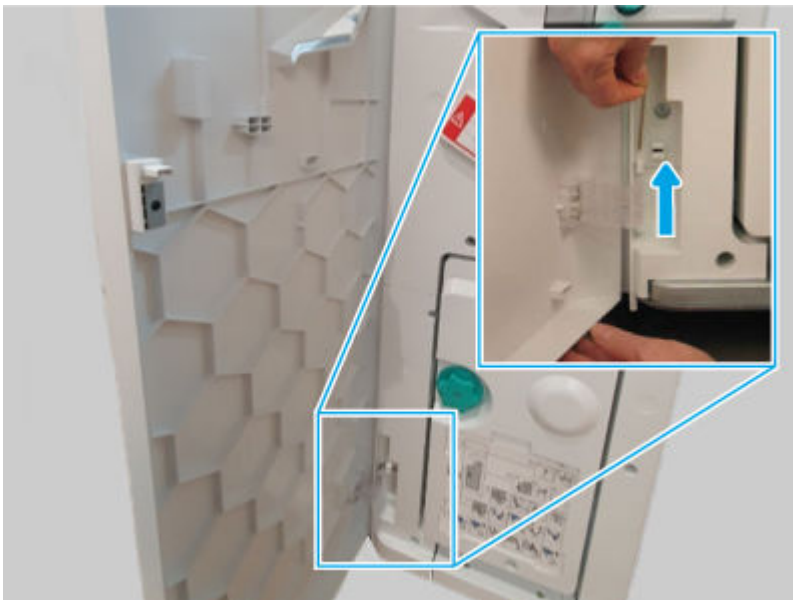
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1738 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1739 Remove the door



3. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1740 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1741 Remove the cover

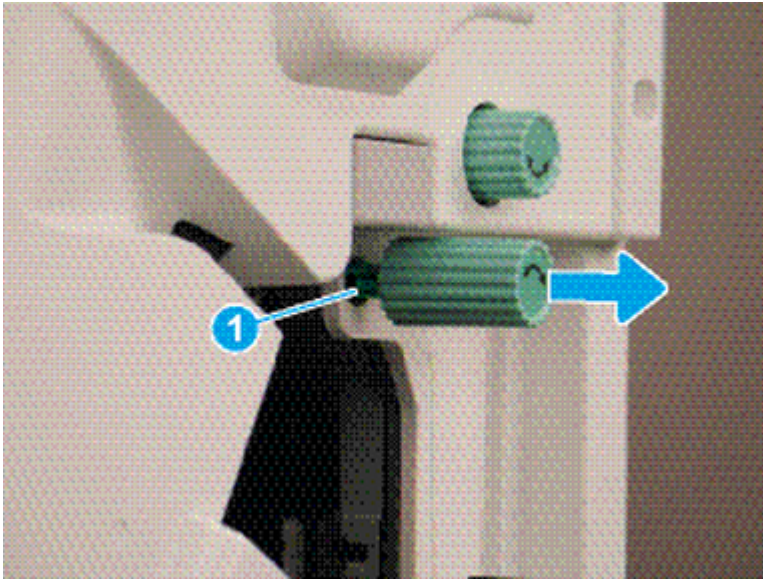


4. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1742 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1743 Remove the cover



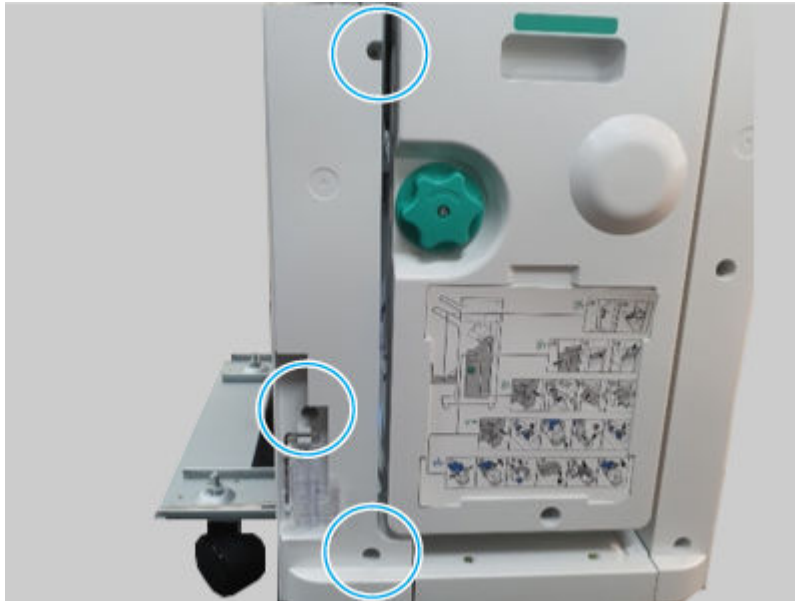
5. Remove the external finisher front lower left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front lower left cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.

2. Remove three screws, and then remove the front lower left cover.

Figure 6-1744 Remove the cover

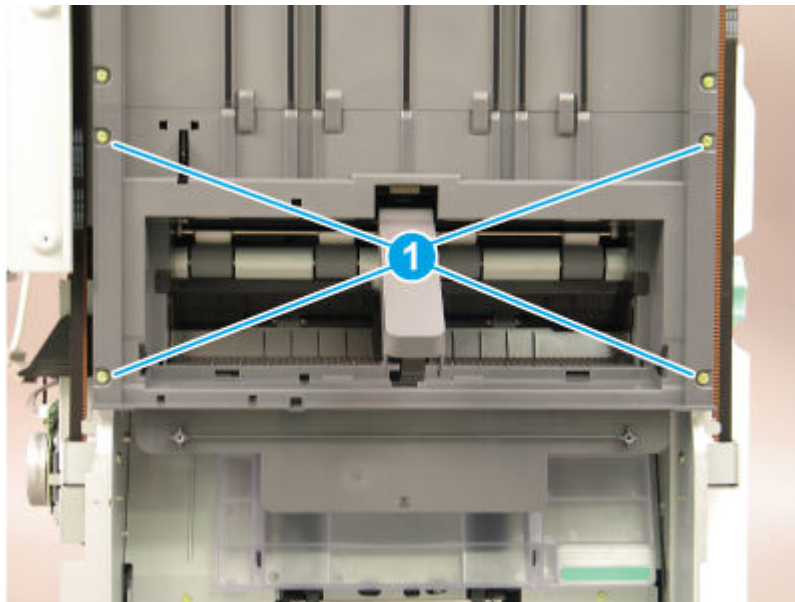


6. Remove the external finisher left lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left lower cover.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-1745 Remove four screws



2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.


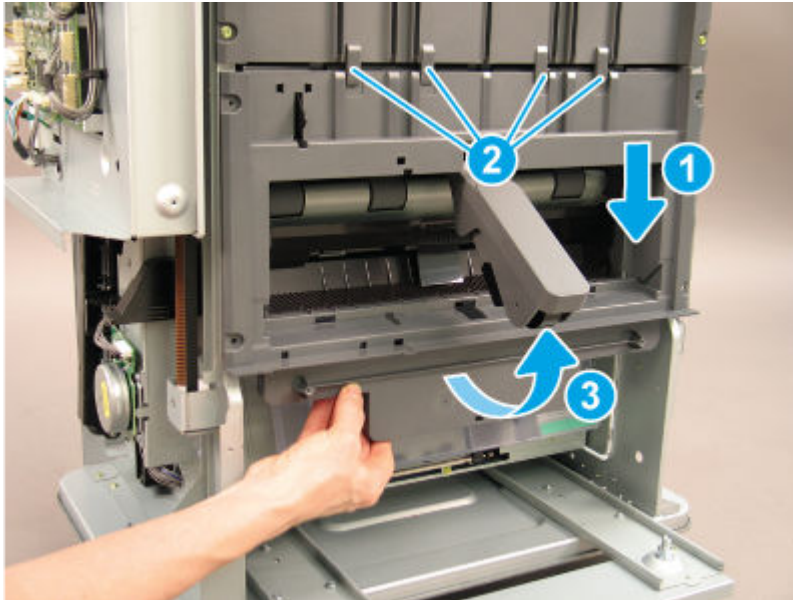
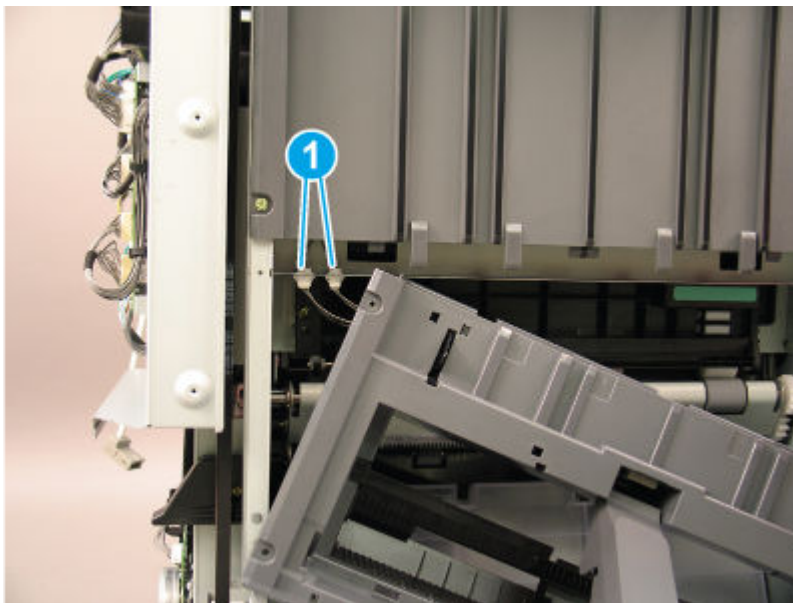
 **Reinstallation tip:** Position the cover under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-1746 Release the cover



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the left lower cover.

Figure 6-1747 Remove the cover

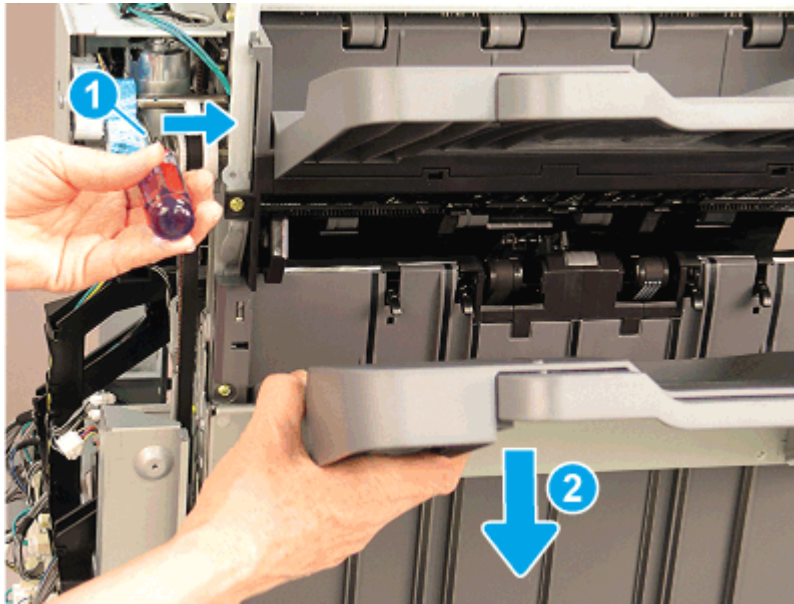


7. Remove the external finisher left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left upper cover.

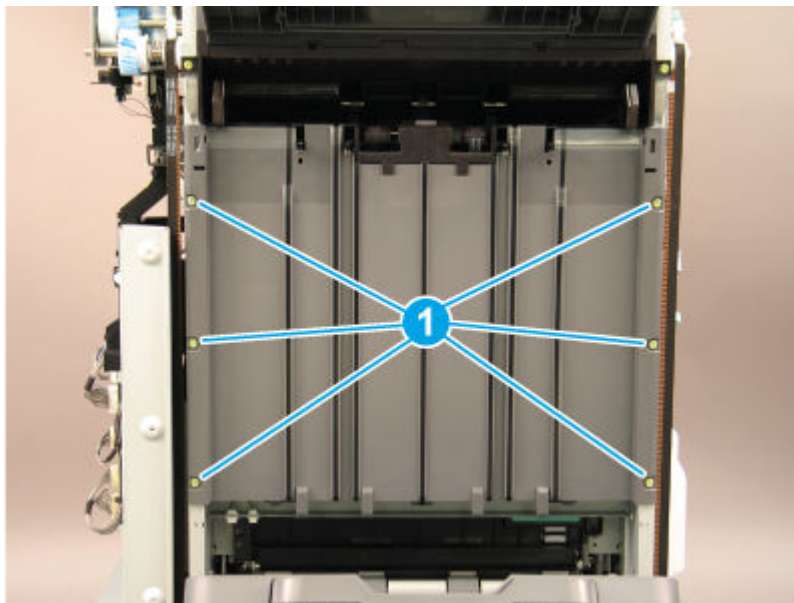
1. Bring the main output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 6-1748 Lower the tray



2. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-1749 Remove six screws

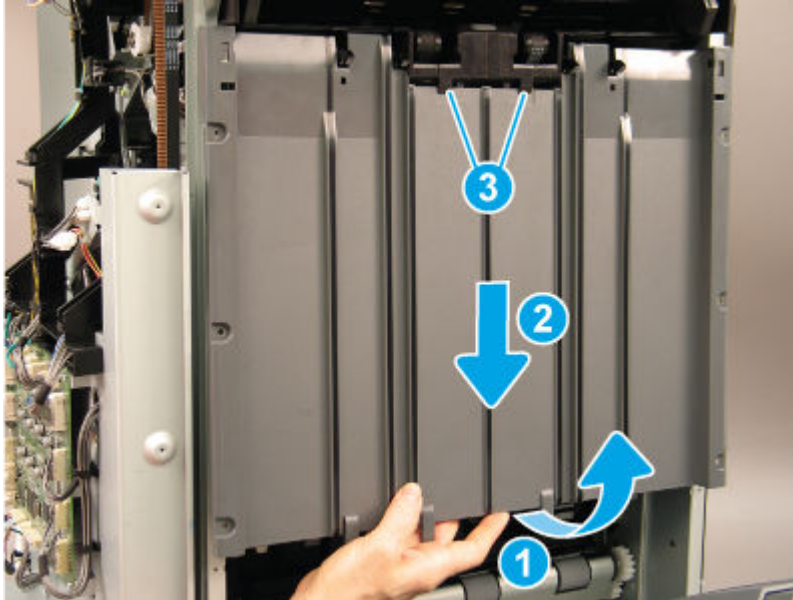


3. Rotate the lower edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

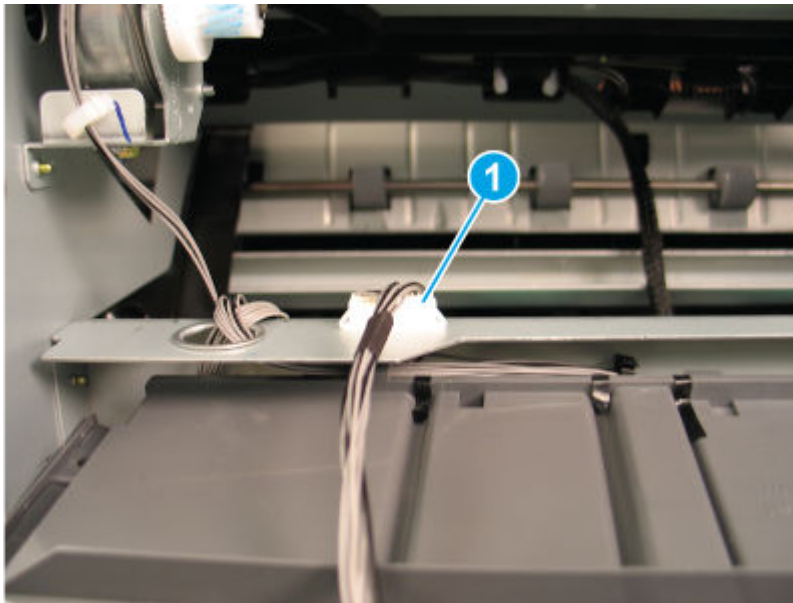
Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-1750 Release the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the left upper cover.

Figure 6-1751 Remove the cover



8. Remove the external finisher front tamper

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front tamper.

- Disconnect three connectors, remove three screws, and then remove the front tamper.


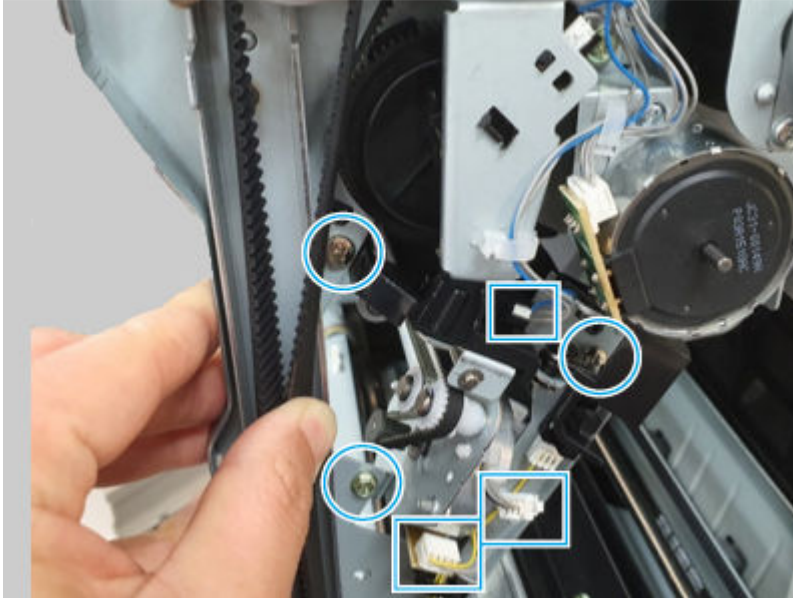
 **NOTE:** If the tamper unit is removed after the ejector unit to gain access to another assembly, the screws have already been removed.

Figure 6-1752 Remove the tamper

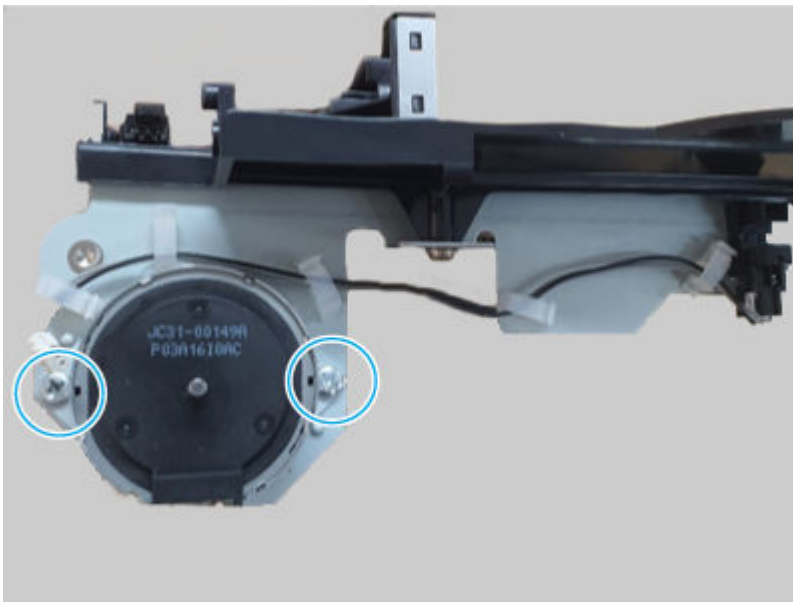


9. Remove the external finisher front tamper motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front tamper motor.

- Remove two screws, and then remove the front tamper motor.


Figure 6-1753 Remove the motor





10. Unpack the replacement assembly


Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Rear tamper

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher rear tamper.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-260 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC82-00898A	Rear tamper

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip

- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

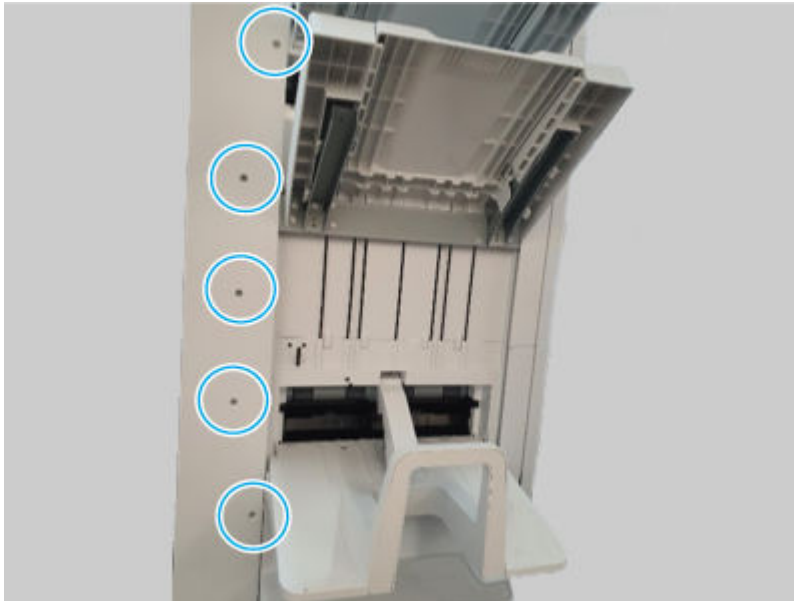
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1754 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1755 Remove the cover

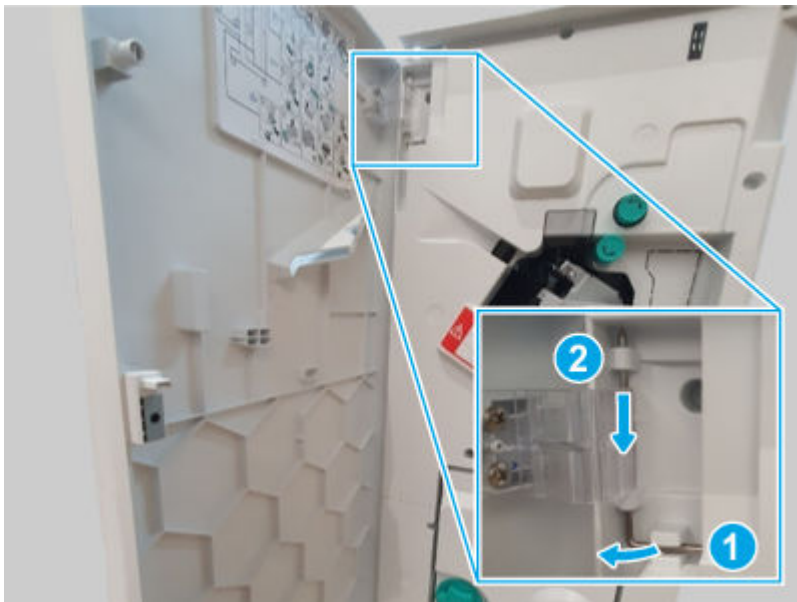


2. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

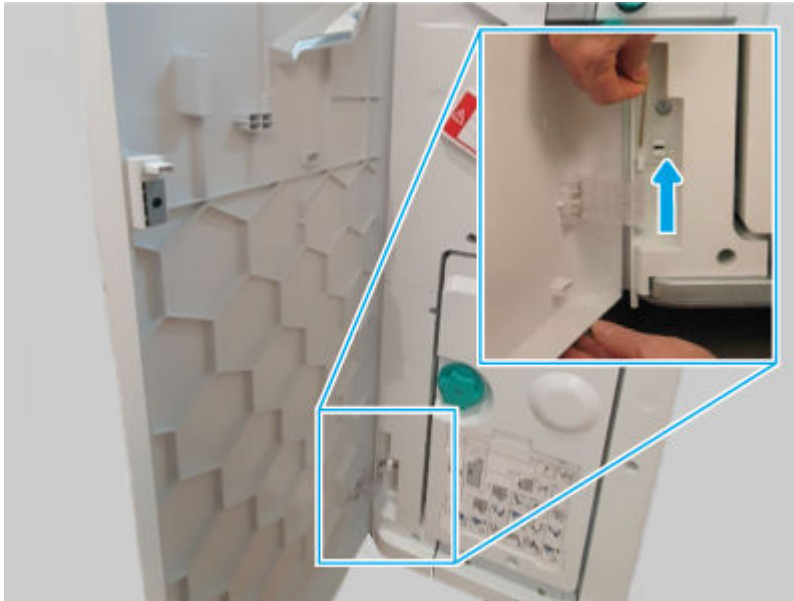
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1756 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1757 Remove the door



3. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

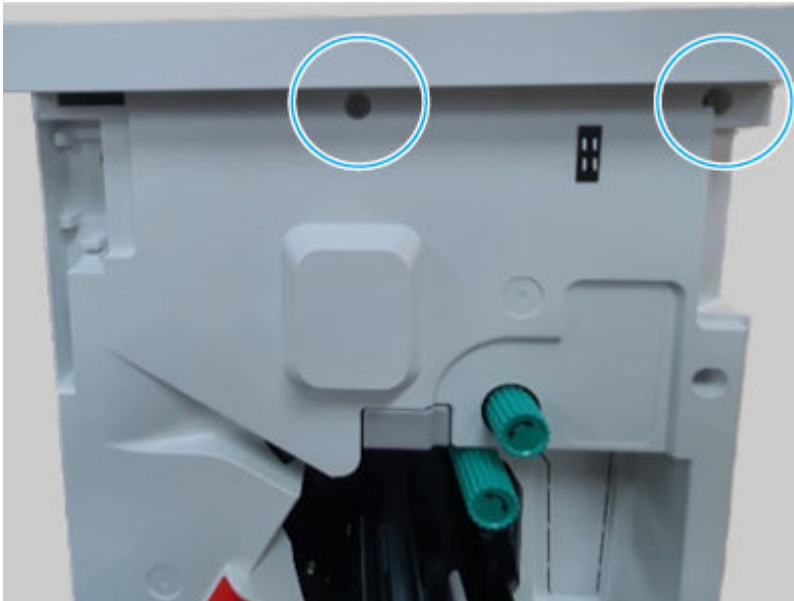
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1758 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1759 Remove the cover

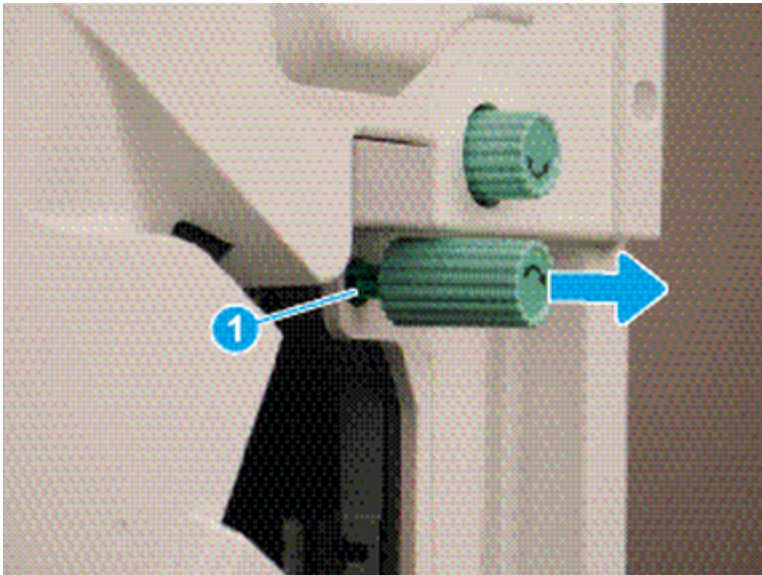


4. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1760 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1761 Remove the cover

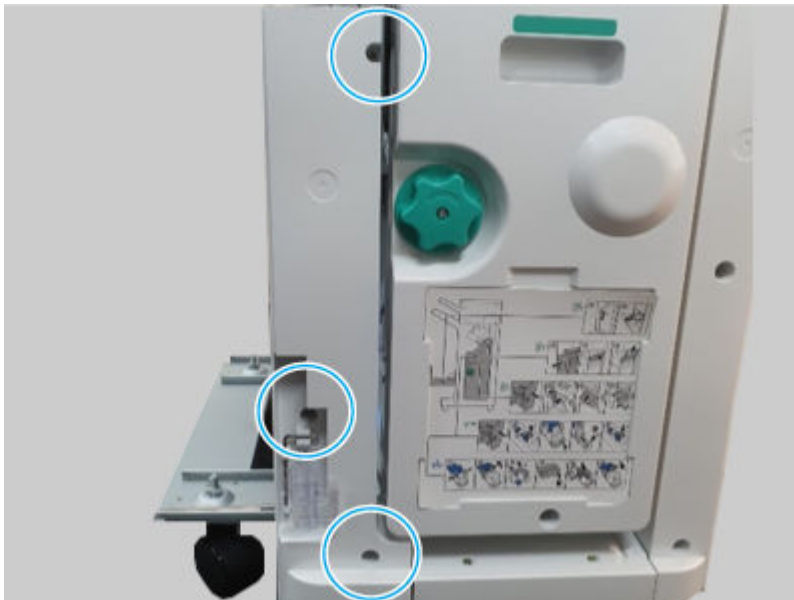


5. Remove the external finisher front lower left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front lower left cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.
2. Remove three screws, and then remove the front lower left cover.

Figure 6-1762 Remove the cover

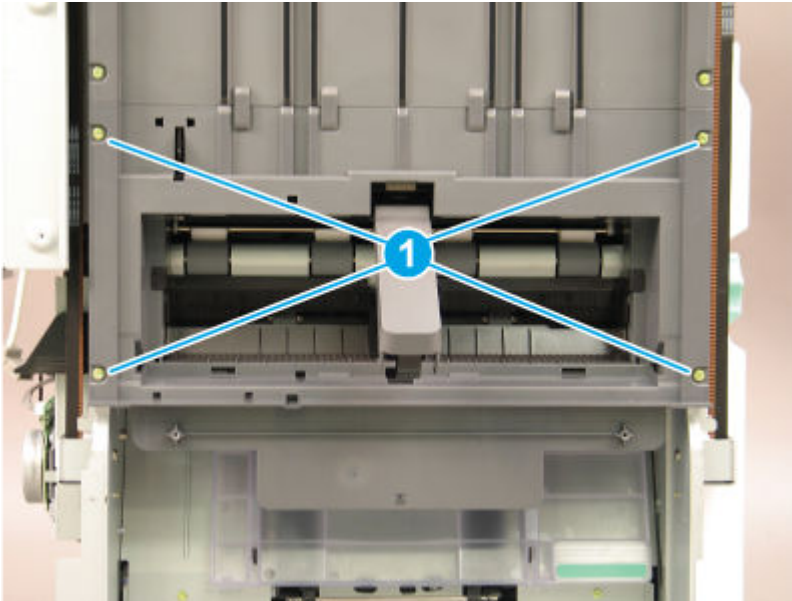


6. Remove the external finisher left lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left lower cover.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-1763 Remove four screws

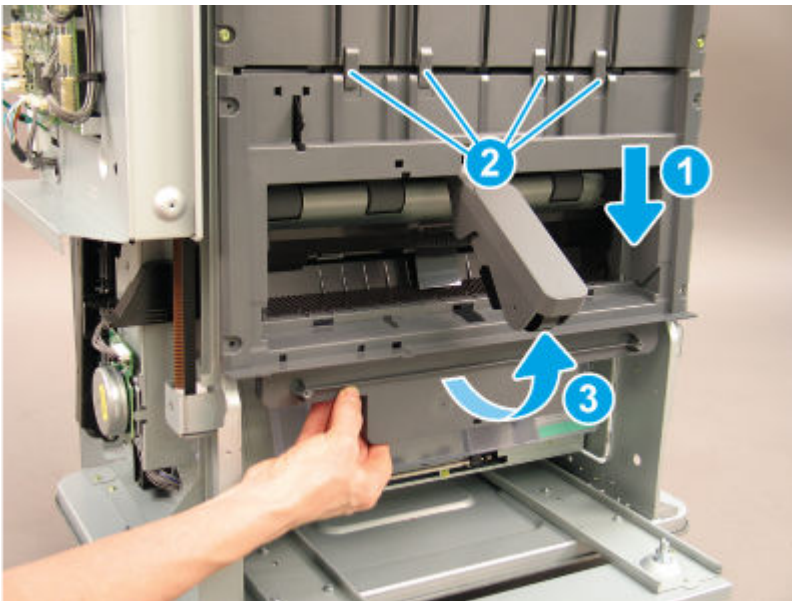


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

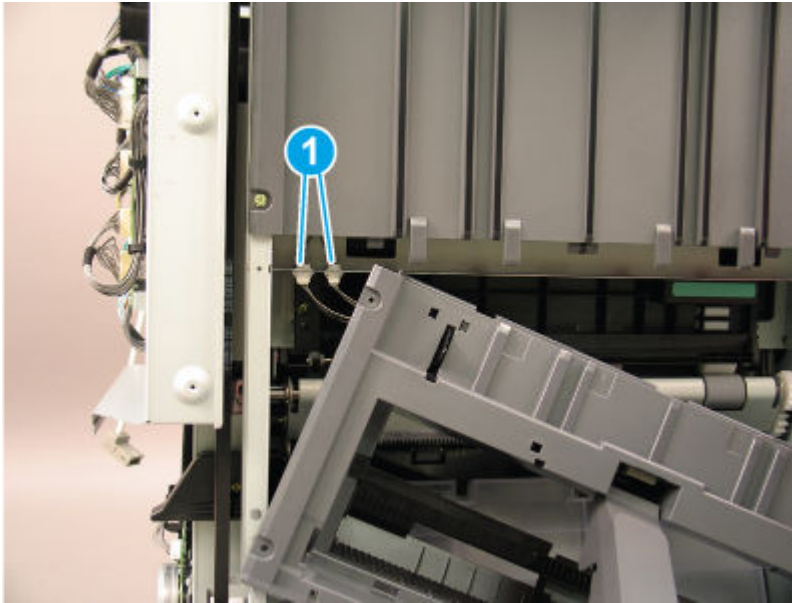
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-1764 Release the cover



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the left lower cover.

Figure 6-1765 Remove the cover

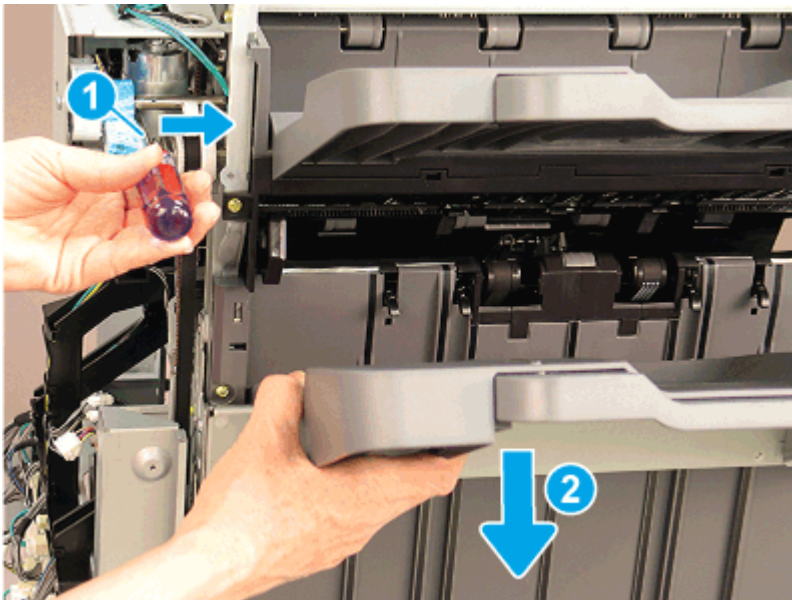


7. Remove the external finisher left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left upper cover.

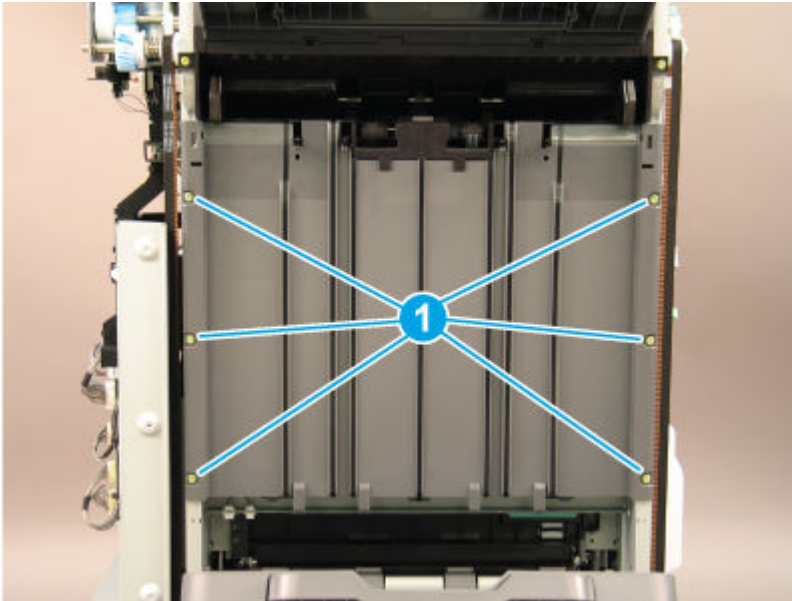
1. Bring the main output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 6-1766 Lower the tray



2. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-1767 Remove six screws

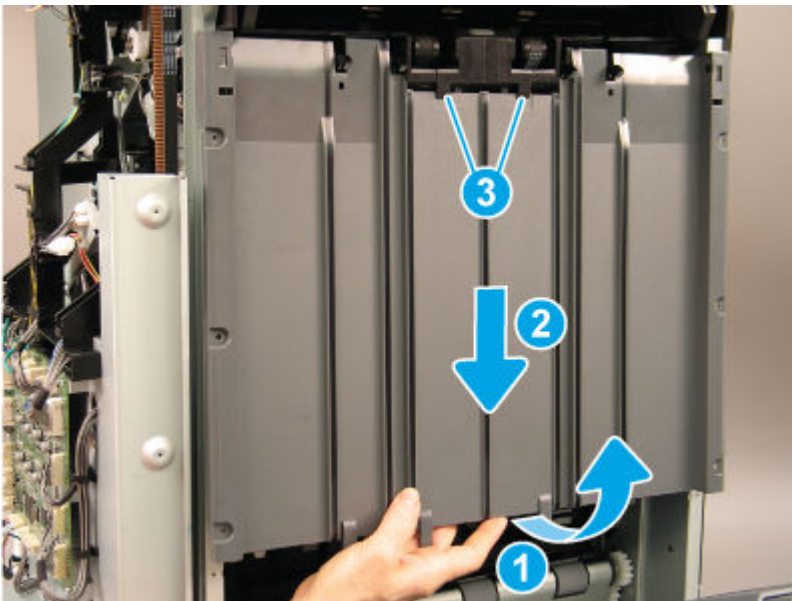


3. Rotate the lower edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

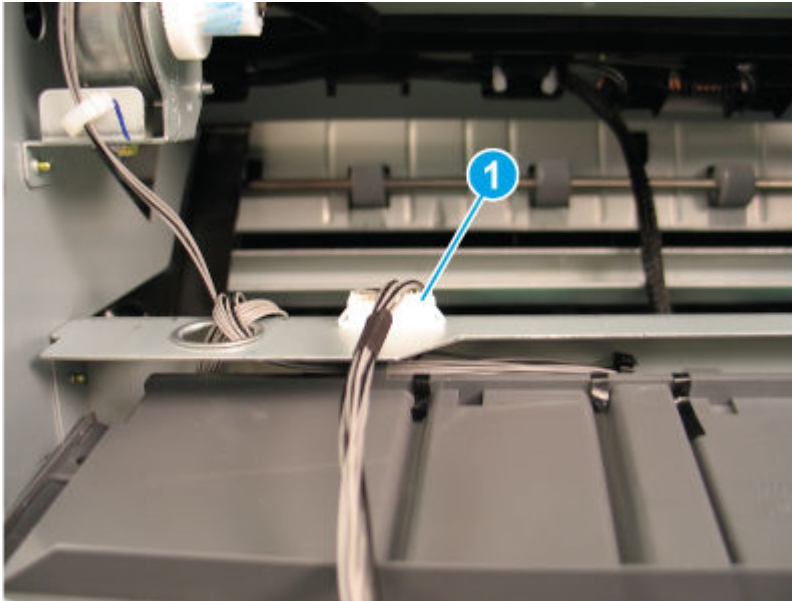
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-1768 Release the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the left upper cover.

Figure 6-1769 Remove the cover

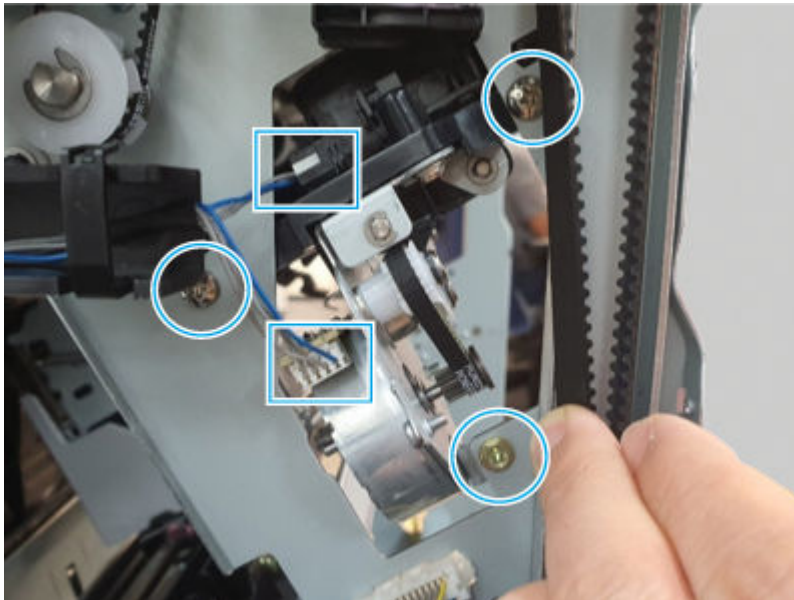


8. Remove the external finisher rear tamper

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear tamper.

- Disconnect two connectors, remove three screws, and then remove the rear tamper.

Figure 6-1770 Remove the tamper



9. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Rear tamper home sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher rear tamper home sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-261 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Rear tamper home sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

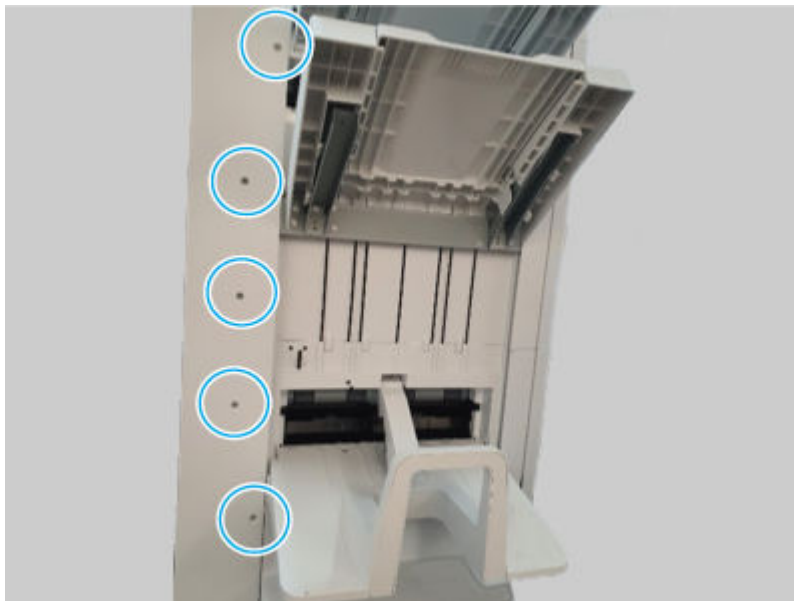
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1771 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1772 Remove the cover

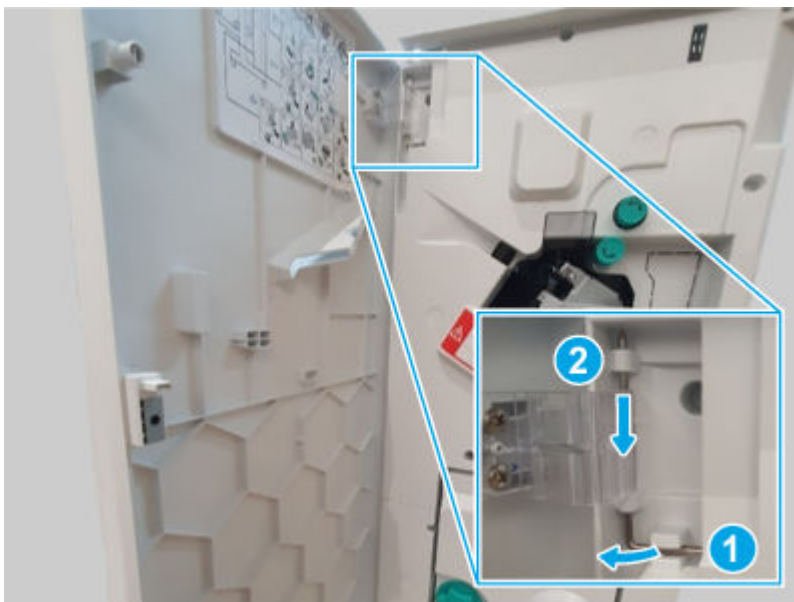


2. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

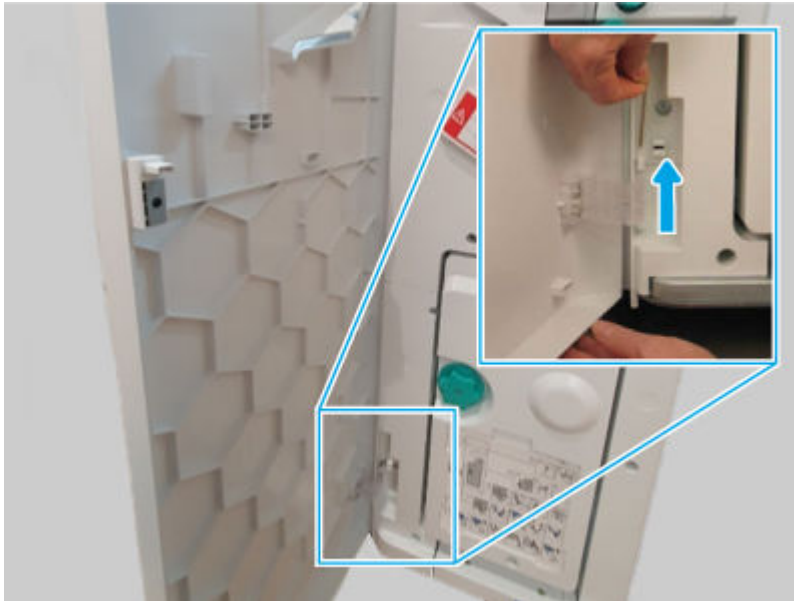
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1773 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1774 Remove the door

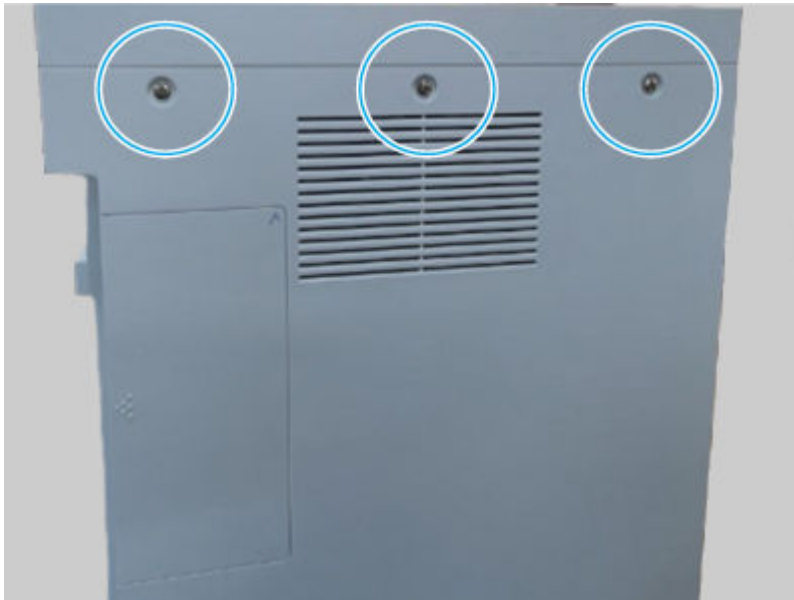


3. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1775 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1776 Remove the cover

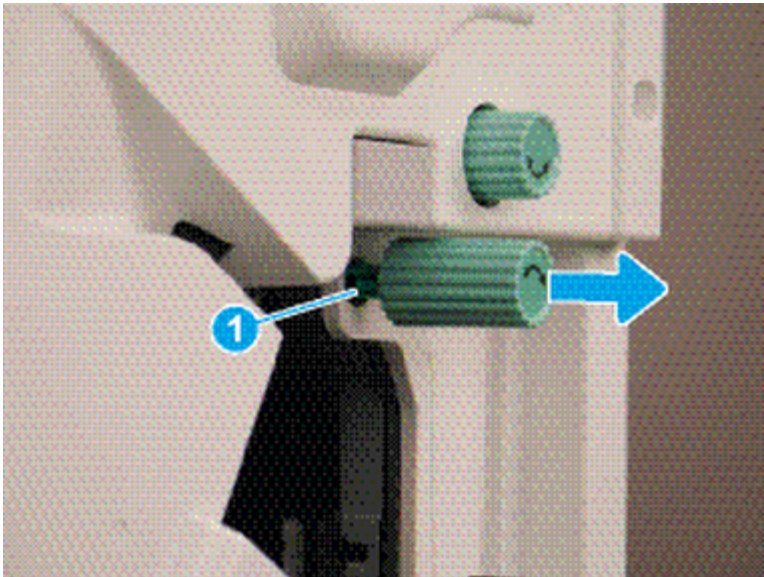


4. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1777 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1778 Remove the cover

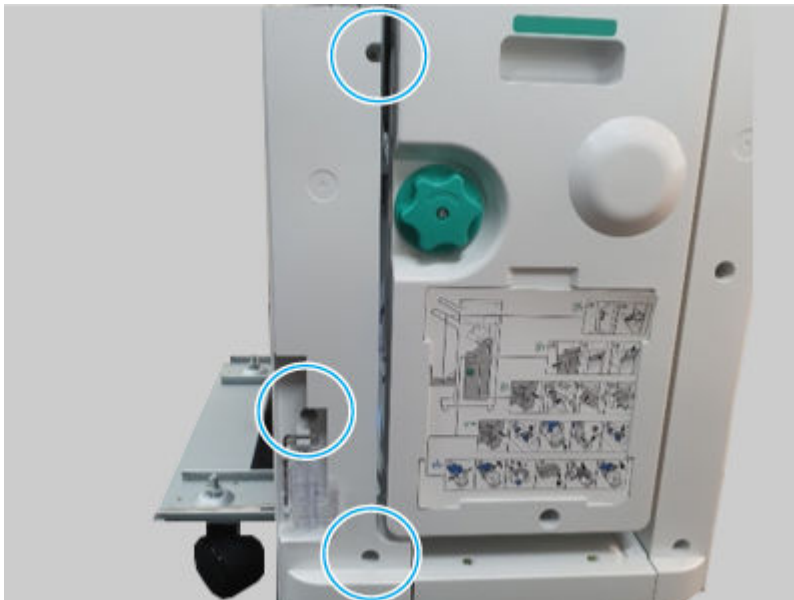


5. Remove the external finisher front lower left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front lower left cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.
2. Remove three screws, and then remove the front lower left cover.

Figure 6-1779 Remove the cover

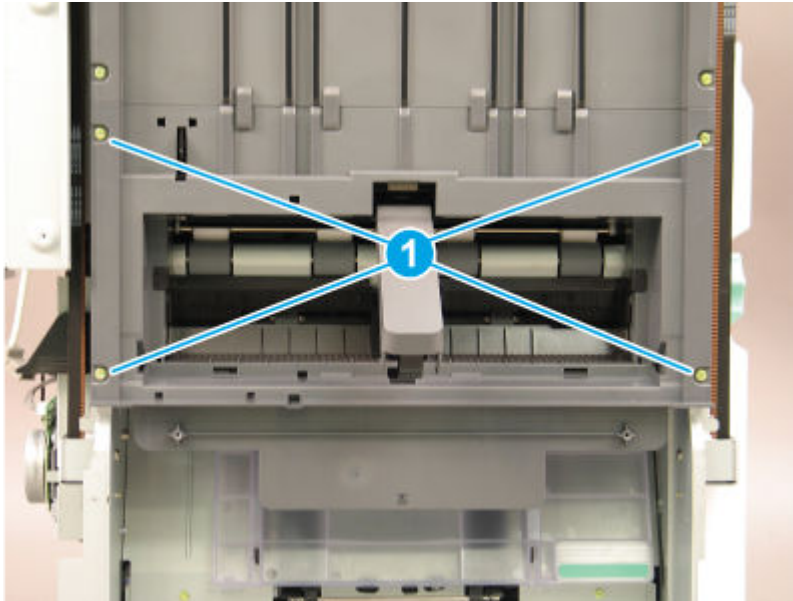


6. Remove the external finisher left lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left lower cover.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-1780 Remove four screws

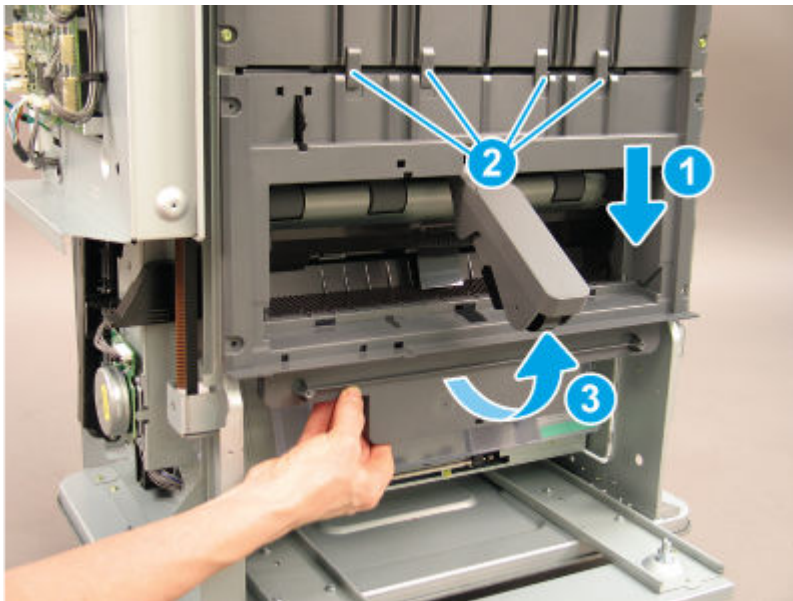


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

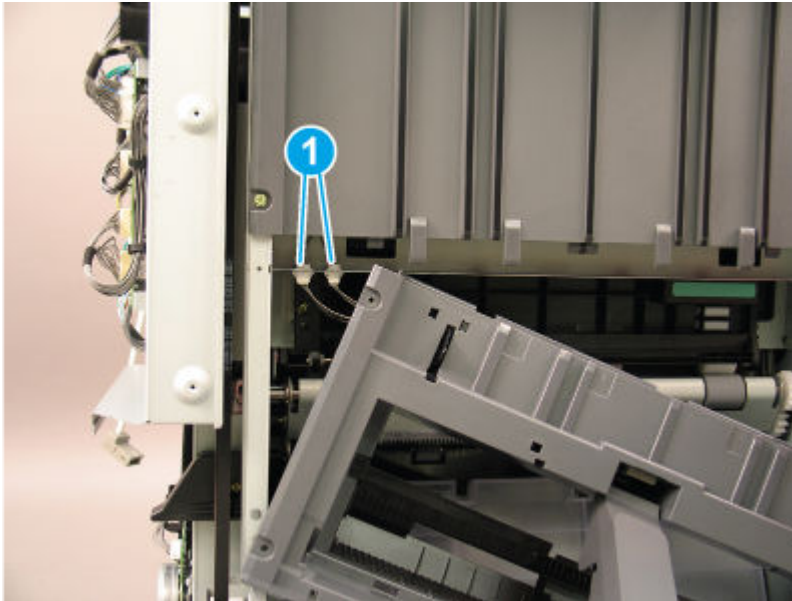
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-1781 Release the cover



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the left lower cover.

Figure 6-1782 Remove the cover

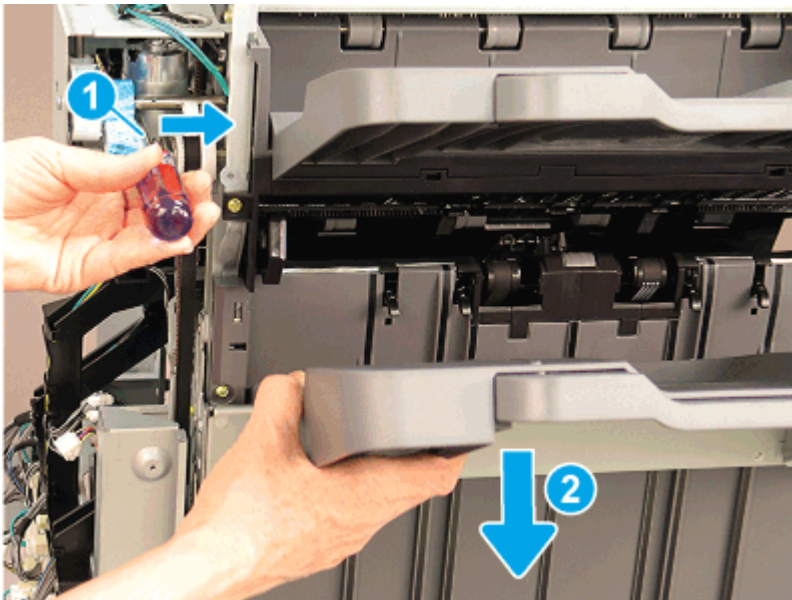


7. Remove the external finisher left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left upper cover.

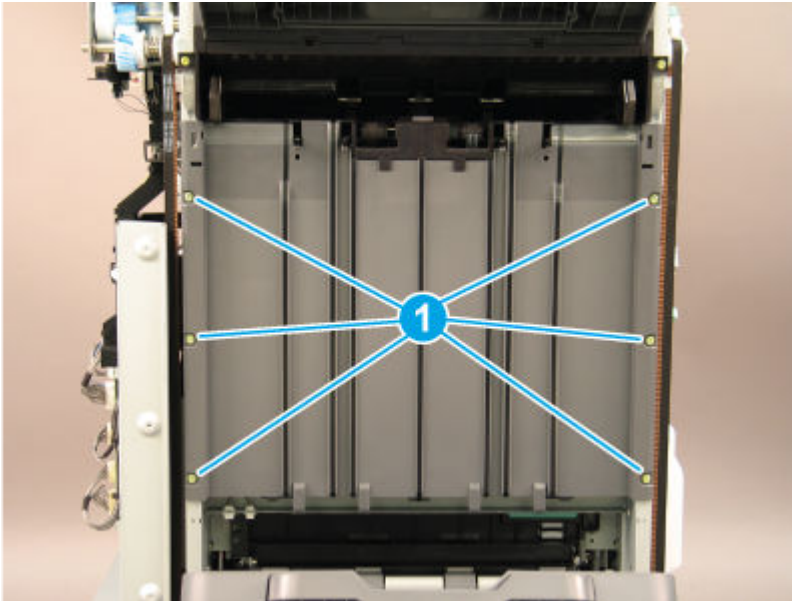
1. Bring the main output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 6-1783 Lower the tray



2. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-1784 Remove six screws

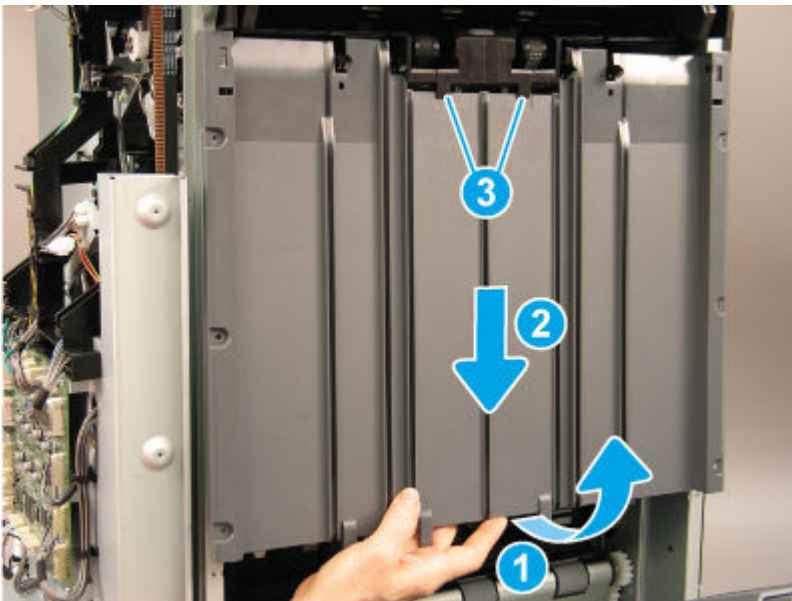


3. Rotate the lower edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

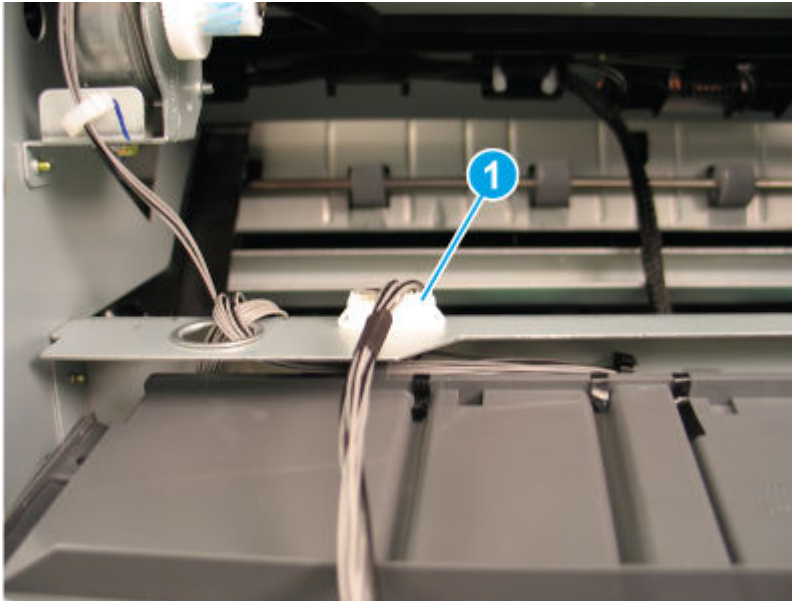
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-1785 Release the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the left upper cover.

Figure 6-1786 Remove the cover

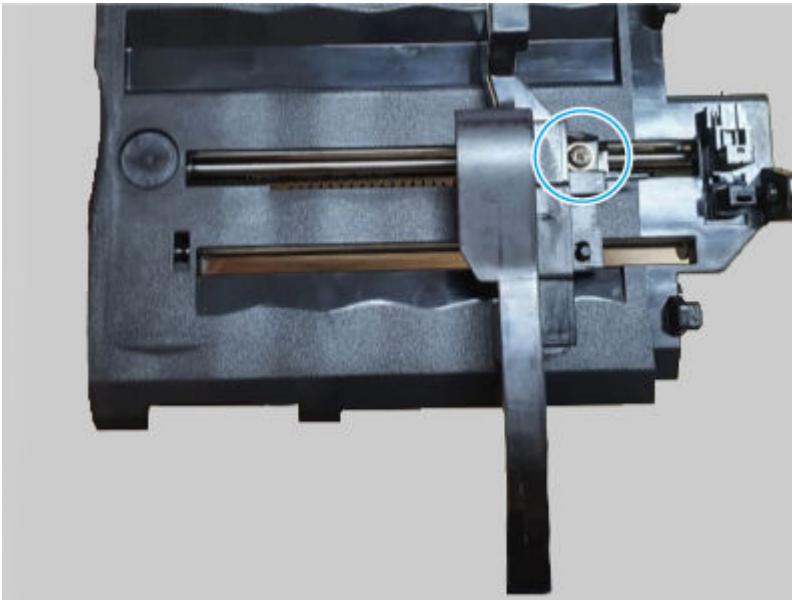


8. Remove the external finisher front tamper home sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front tamper home sensor.

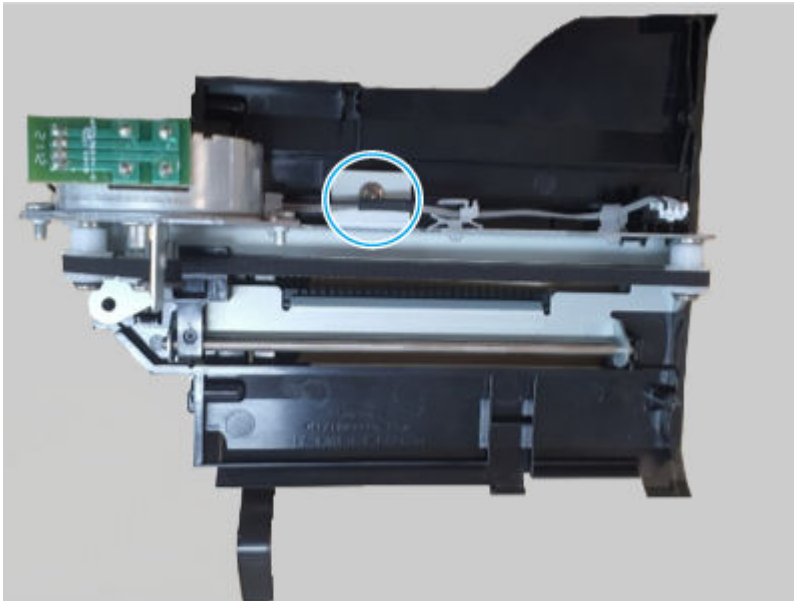
1. Remove one screw, and then remove the tamper.

Figure 6-1787 Remove the tamper



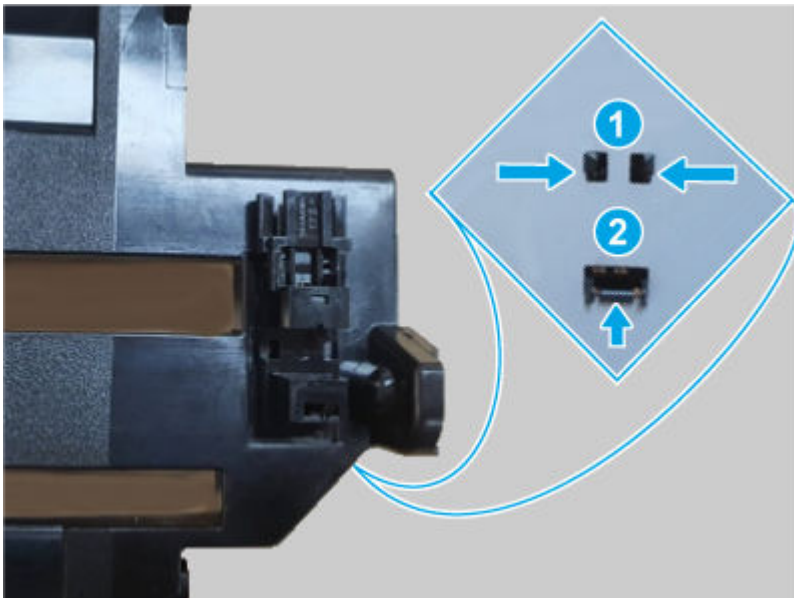
2. Remove one screw, and then remove the bracket.

Figure 6-1788 Remove the bracket



3. Do the following:
 - a. Release the hooks (callout 1).
 - b. Slide the sensor assembly as shown below (callout 2).
 - c. Remove the tamper home sensor from the bracket.


Figure 6-1789 Remove the sensor



9. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Rear tamper motor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher rear tamper motor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-262 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01001A	Drive-motor step (Rear tamper motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

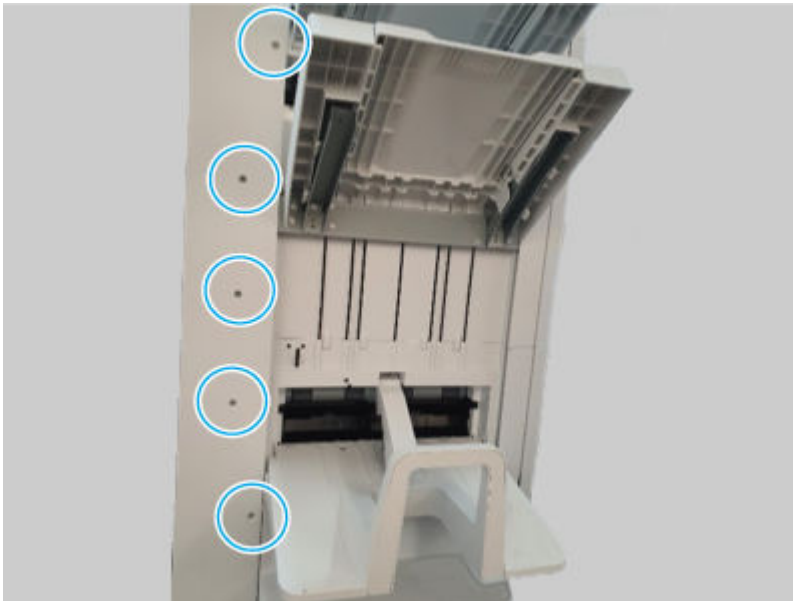
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1790 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1791 Remove the cover

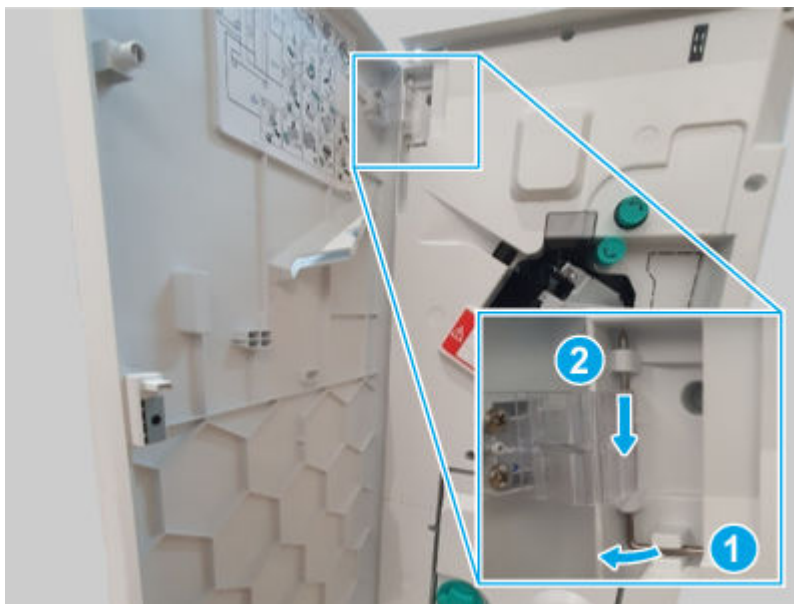


2. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

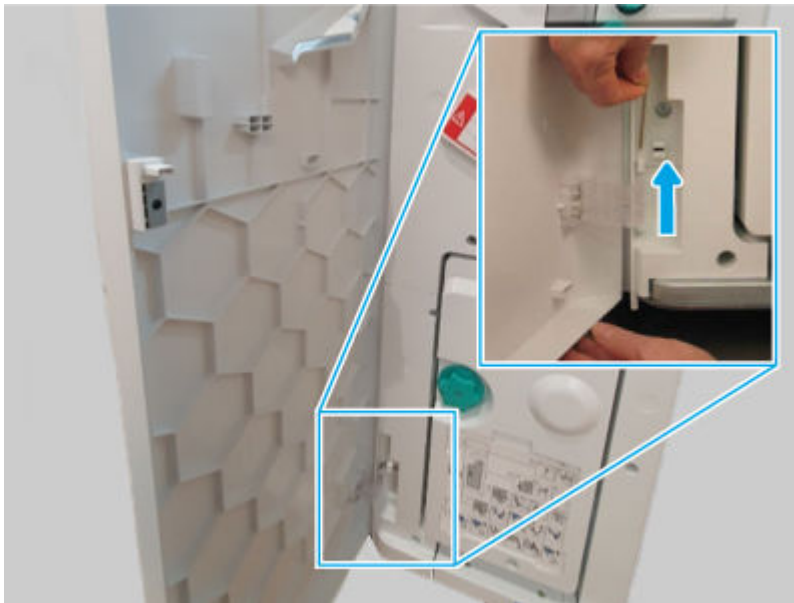
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1792 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1793 Remove the door



3. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

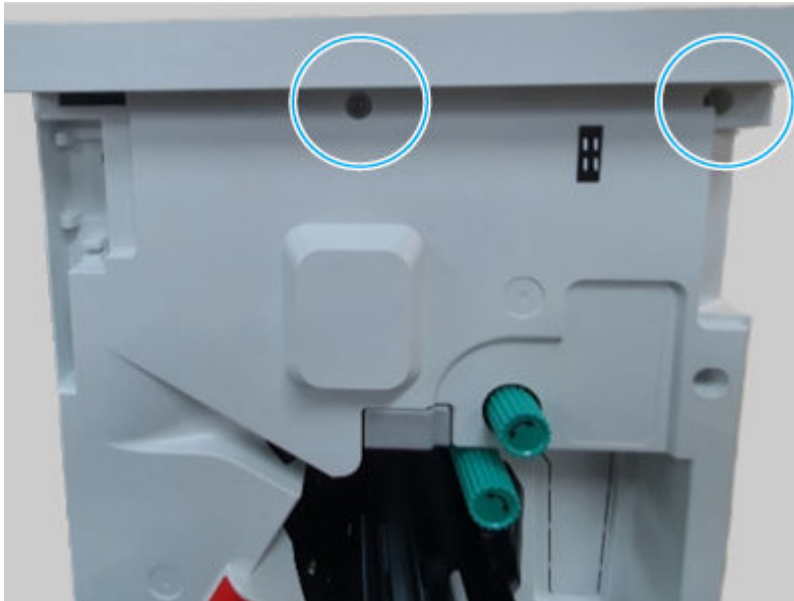
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1794 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1795 Remove the cover

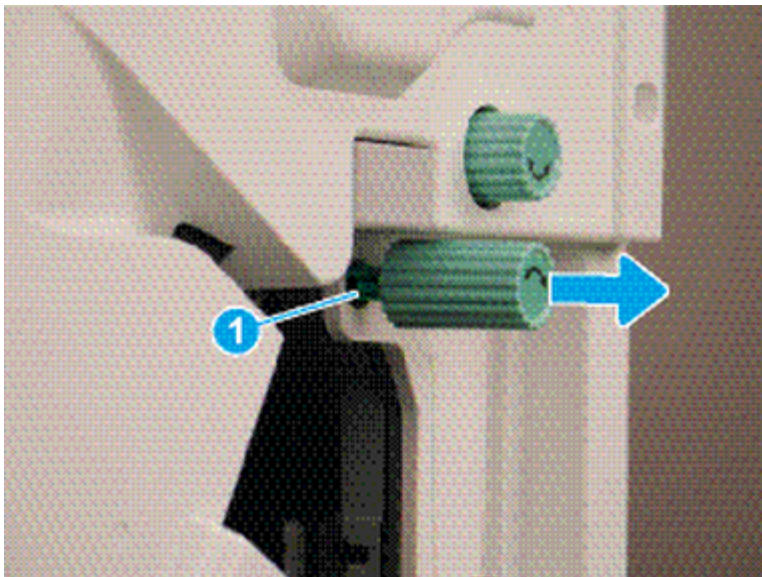


4. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1796 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1797 Remove the cover

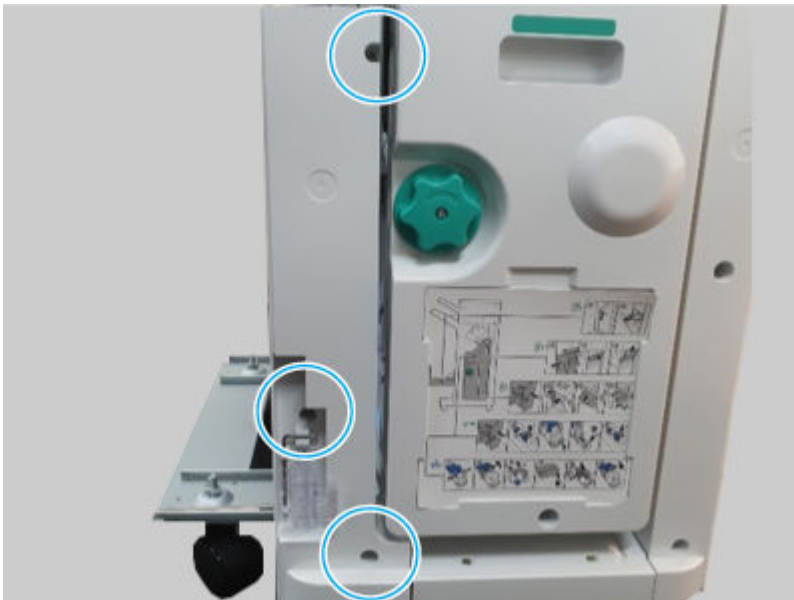


5. Remove the external finisher front lower left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front lower left cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.
2. Remove three screws, and then remove the front lower left cover.

Figure 6-1798 Remove the cover



6. Remove the external finisher caster

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher caster.

⚠ WARNING! The external finisher is not stable when one or more casters are removed and can easily tip over. To avoid personal injury or damage to the finisher, make sure to fully support the finisher when removing a caster.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.
2. Remove one fix nut.

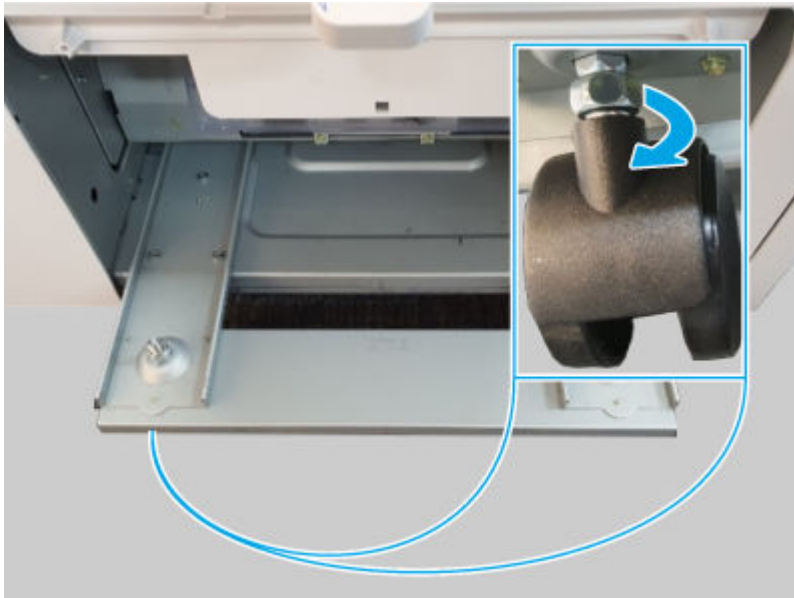
🔧 NOTE: Use a 12mm spanner wrench to remove the nut.

Figure 6-1799 Remove the nut



3. Rotate the caster as shown below to remove it. Repeat these steps for the remaining casters as needed.

Figure 6-1800 Remove the caster

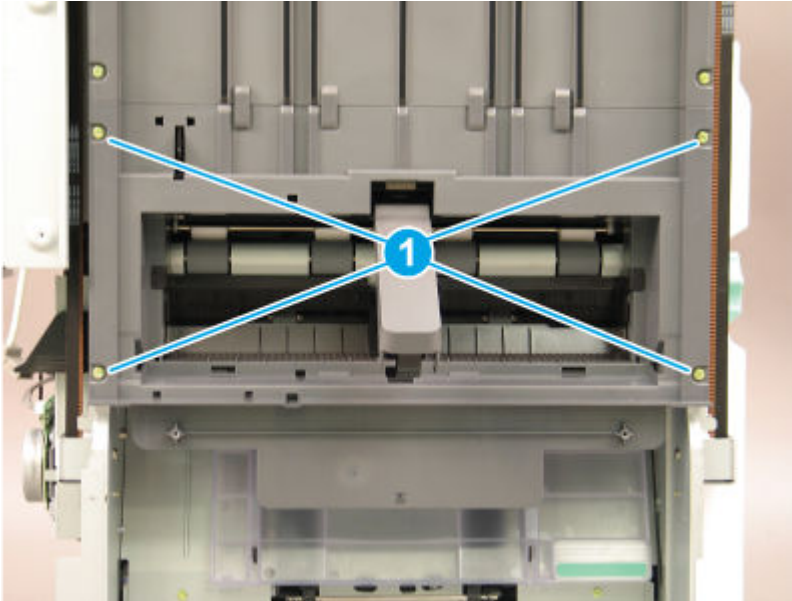


7. Remove the external finisher left lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left lower cover.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-1801 Remove four screws

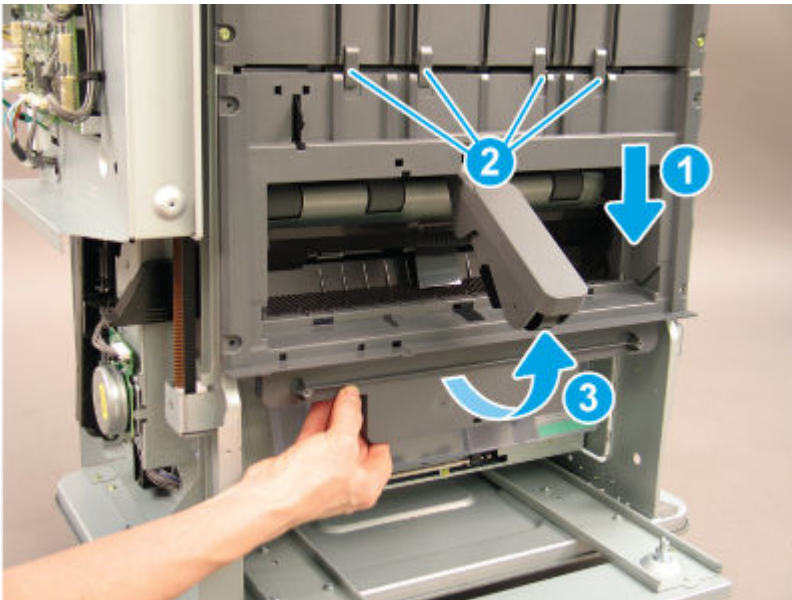


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

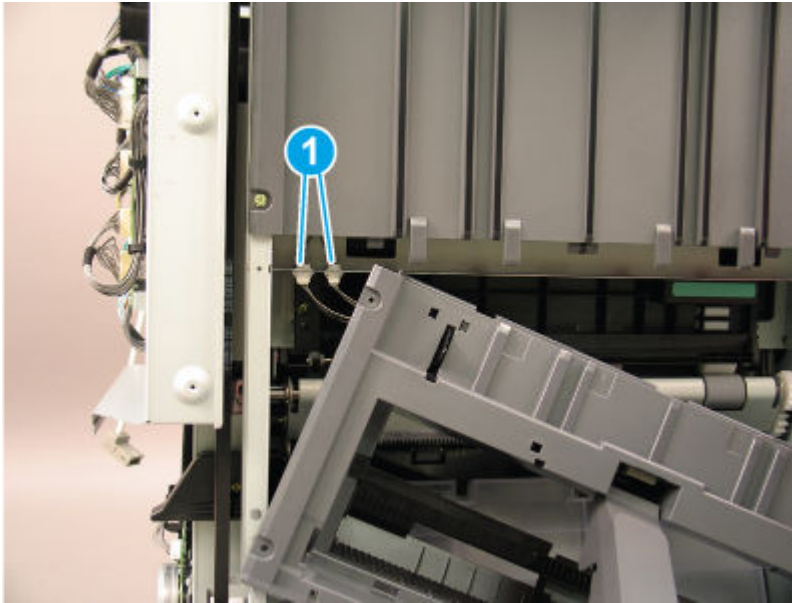
Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-1802 Release the cover



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the left lower cover.

Figure 6-1803 Remove the cover

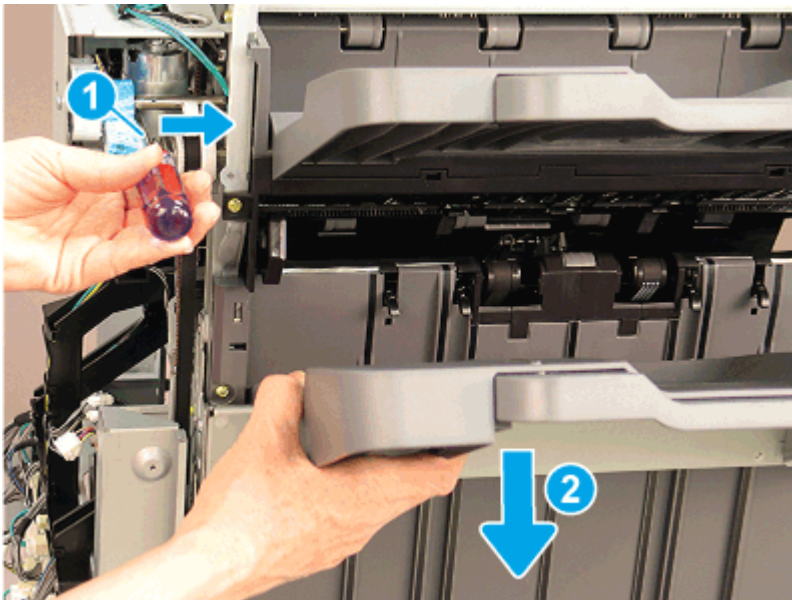


8. Remove the external finisher left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left upper cover.

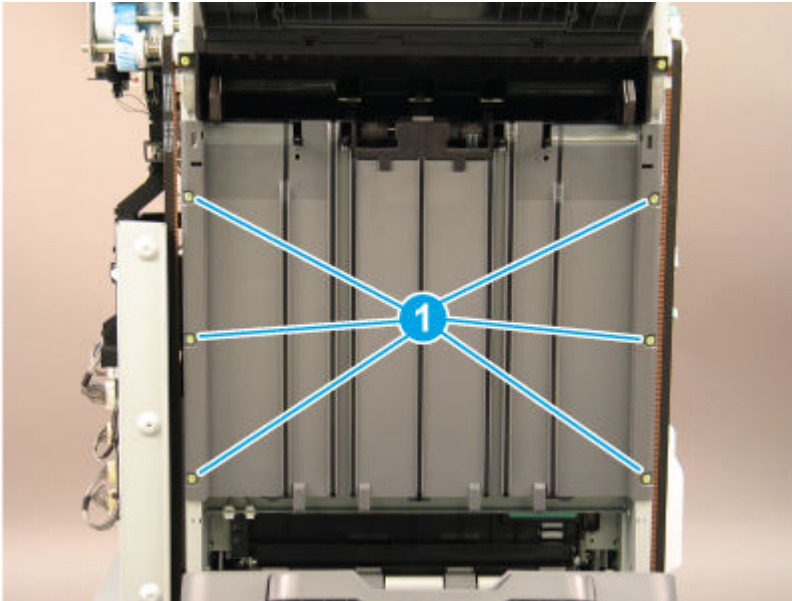
1. Bring the main output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 6-1804 Lower the tray



2. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-1805 Remove six screws

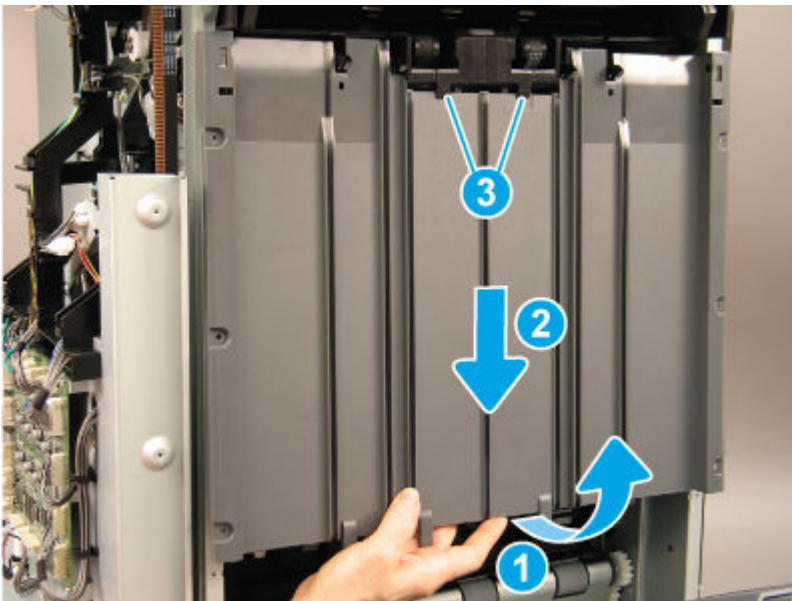


3. Rotate the lower edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

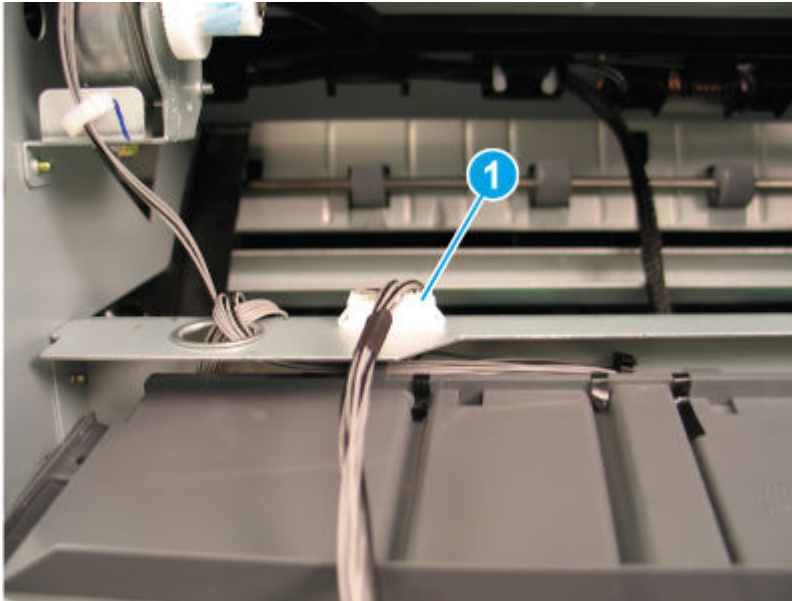
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-1806 Release the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the left upper cover.

Figure 6-1807 Remove the cover

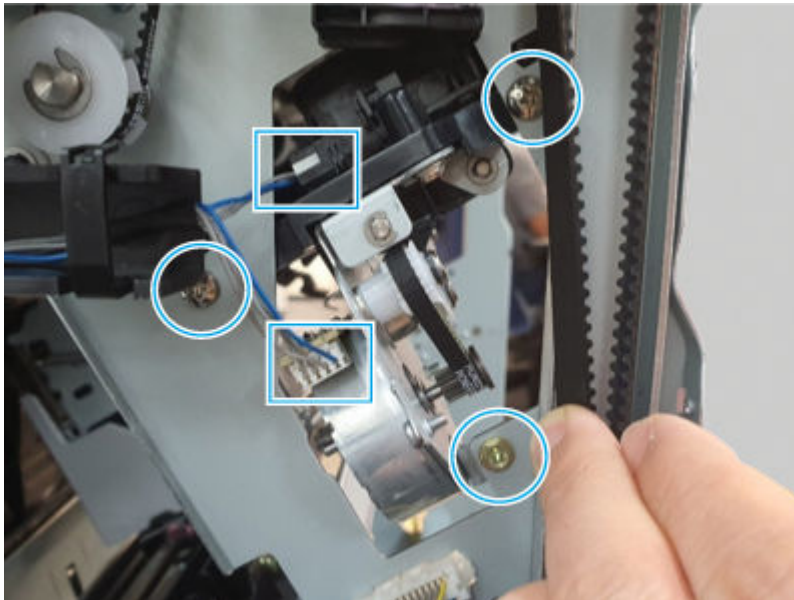


9. Remove the external finisher rear tamper

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear tamper.

- Disconnect two connectors, remove three screws, and then remove the rear tamper.

Figure 6-1808 Remove the tamper

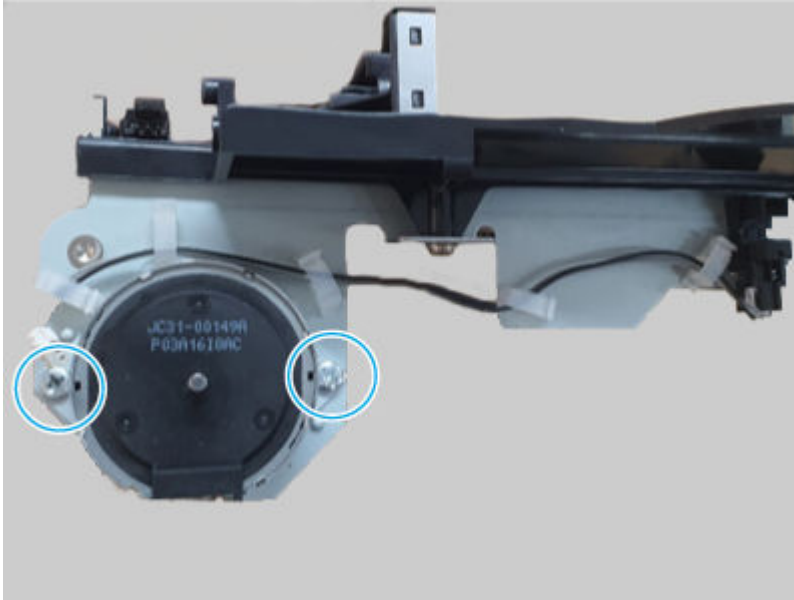


10. Remove the external finisher front tamper motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front tamper motor.

- Remove two screws, and then remove the front tamper motor.

Figure 6-1809 Remove the motor



11. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Stapler unit

Review the external finisher stapler unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Stapler unit

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher stapler unit.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-263 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC82-00894A	Stapler unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

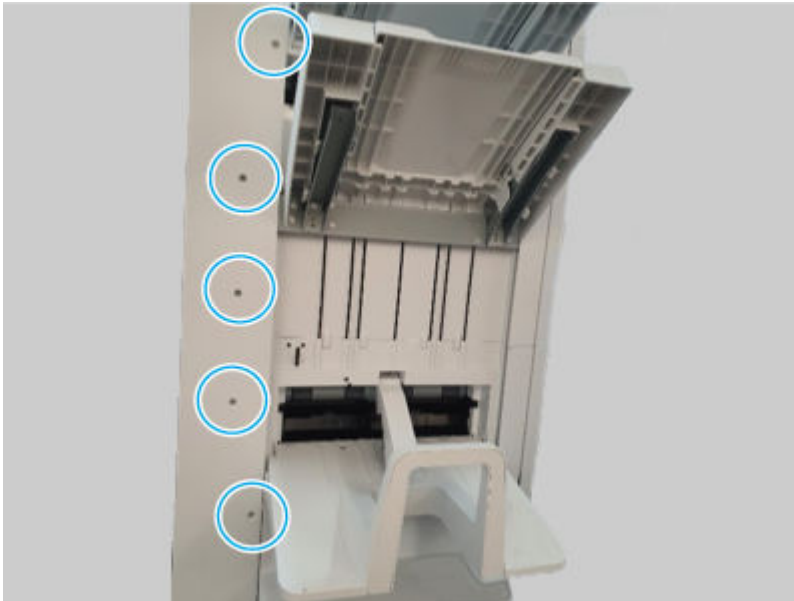
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1810 Remove five screws

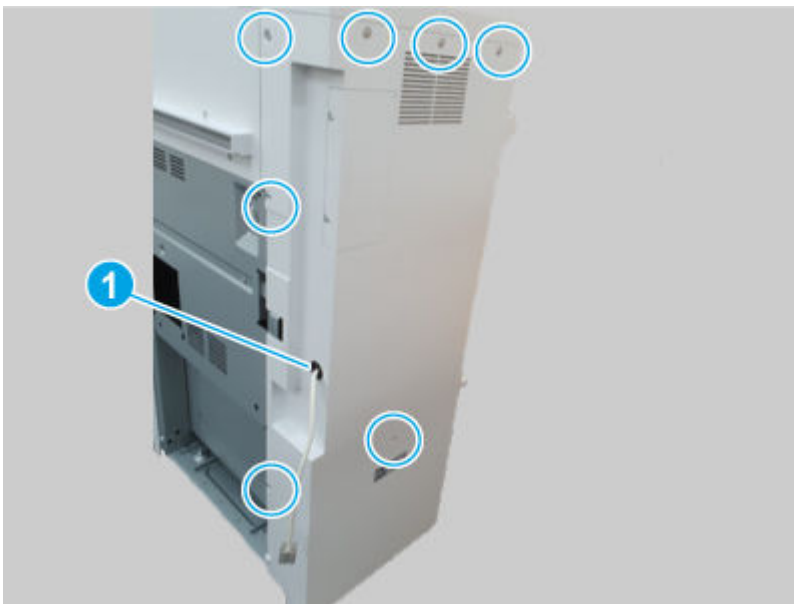


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1811 Remove the cover

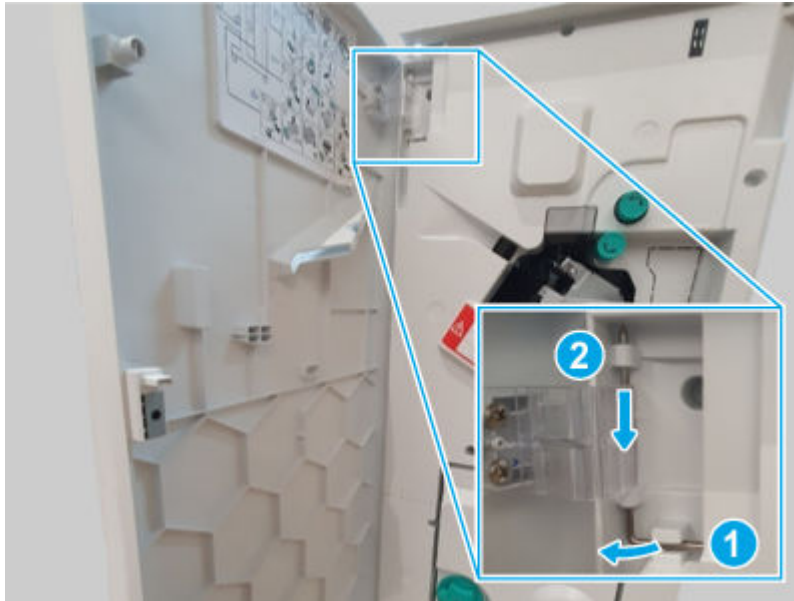


2. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

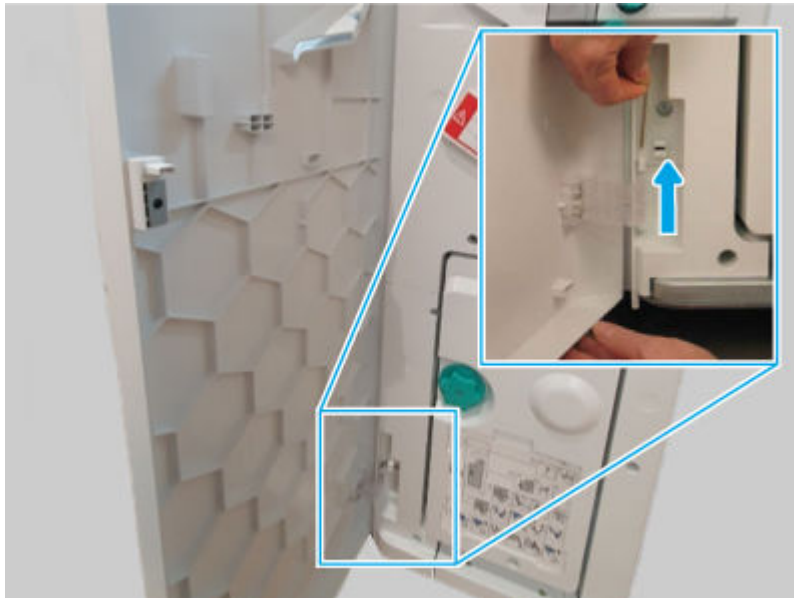
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1812 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1813 Remove the door



3. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

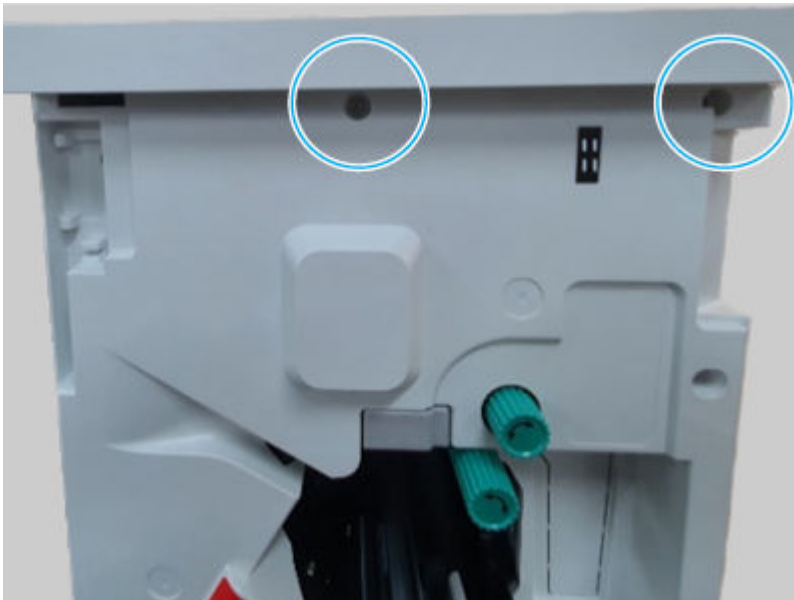
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1814 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1815 Remove the cover

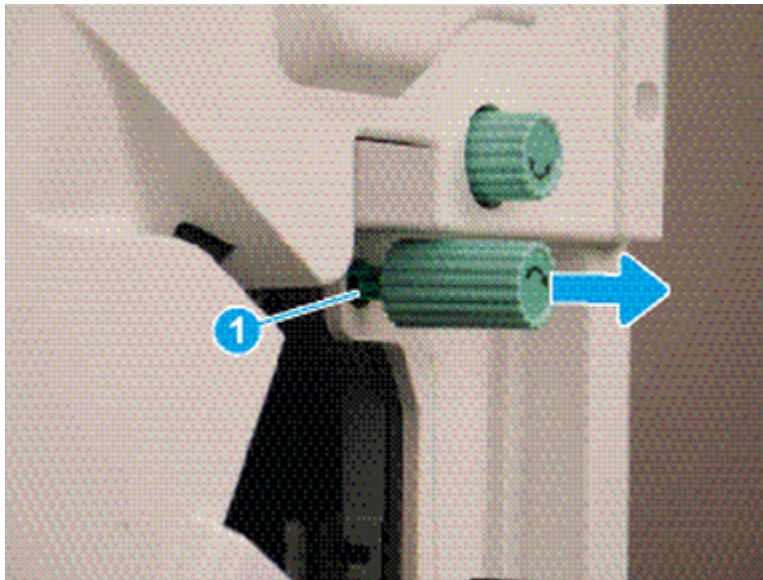


4. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1816 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1817 Remove the cover

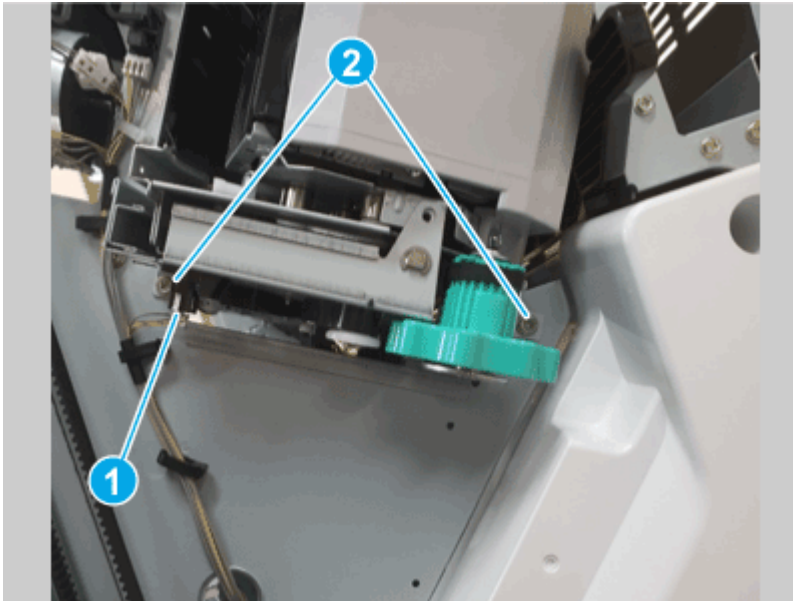


5. Remove the external finisher stapler unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher stapler unit.

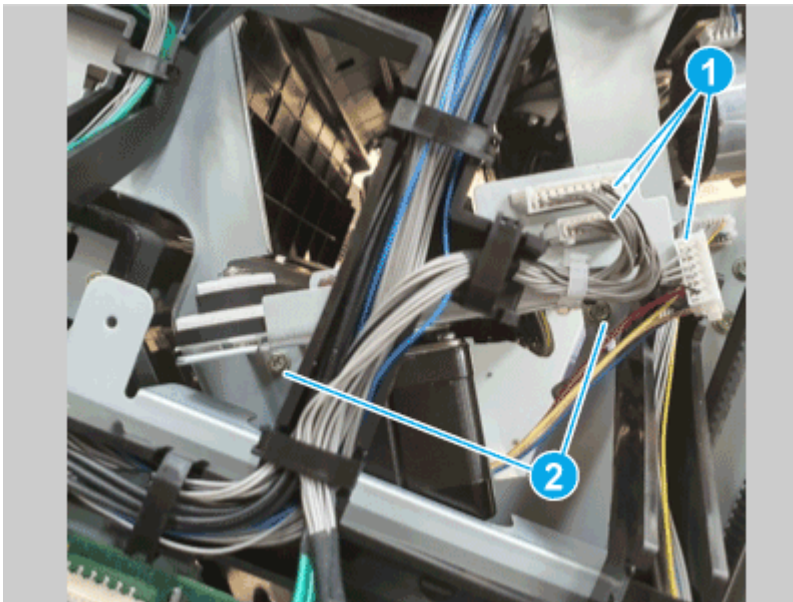
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws (callout 2).

Figure 6-1818 Disconnect connector and remove screws



2. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the stapler unit.

Figure 6-1819 Remove the unit



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Staple cartridge

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher staple cartridge.


Mean time to repair: 1 minute

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-264 Part Information

Part number	Part description
JC81-09882B	Staple cartridge

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher staple unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher staple unit.

- Grasp the blue handle, and then pull the staple cartridge straight out of the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1820 Remove the cartridge



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.




CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Stapler front sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher stapler front sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 25 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-265 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Stapler front sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

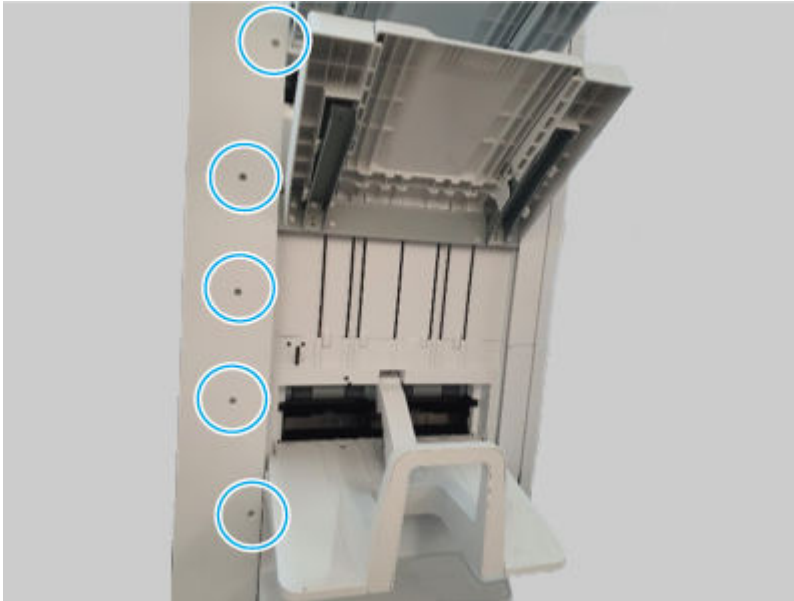
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1821 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


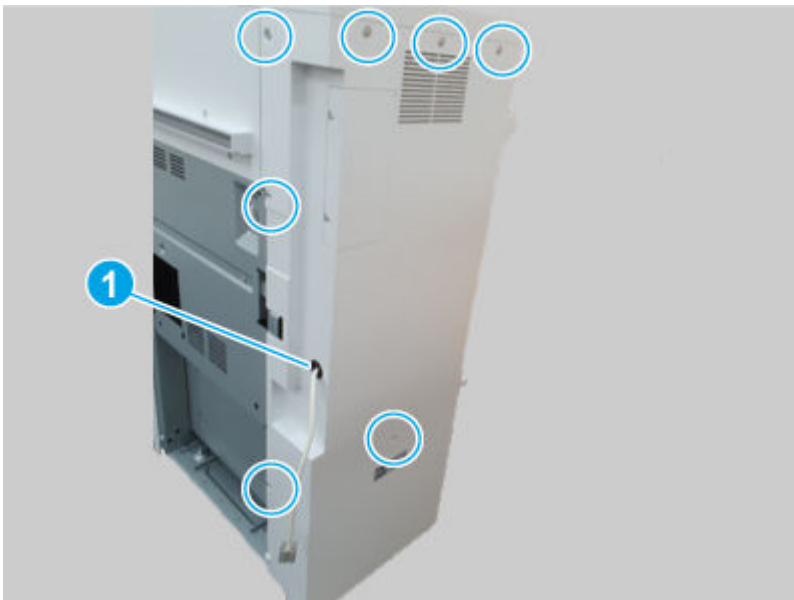
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1822 Remove the cover

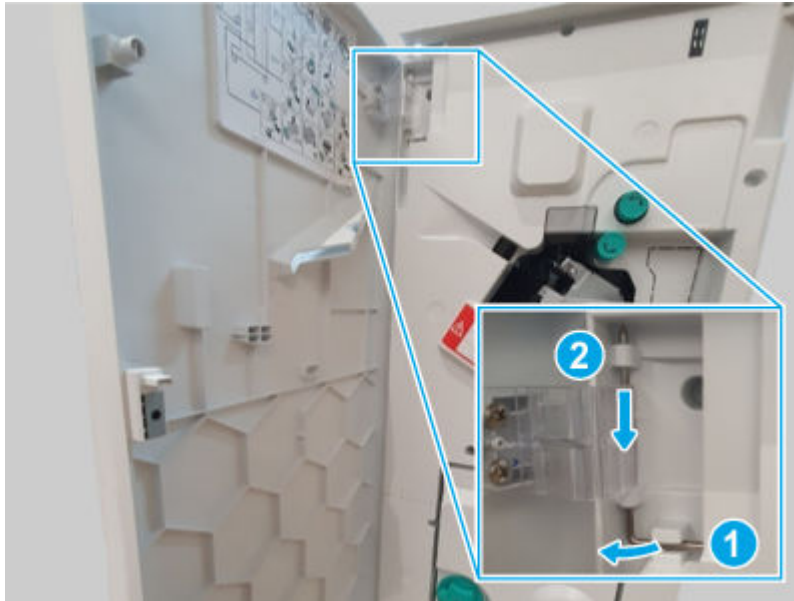


2. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

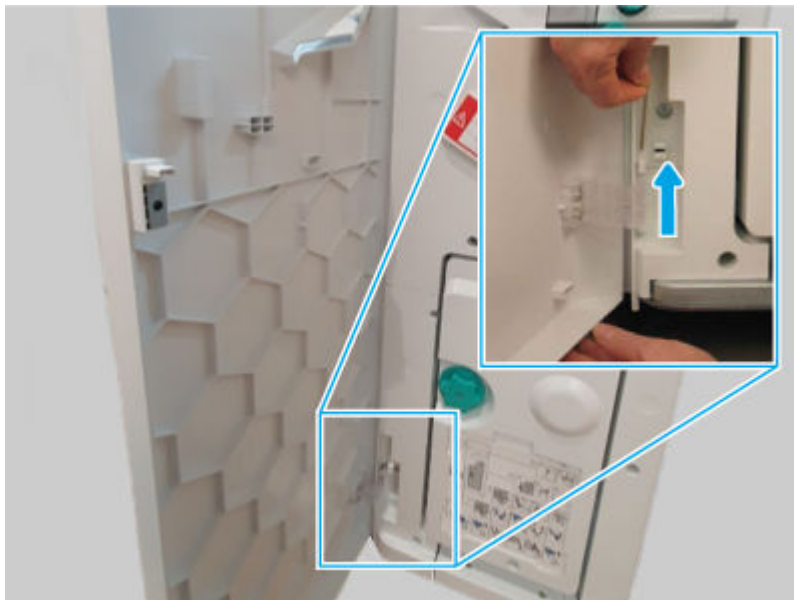
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1823 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1824 Remove the door



3. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

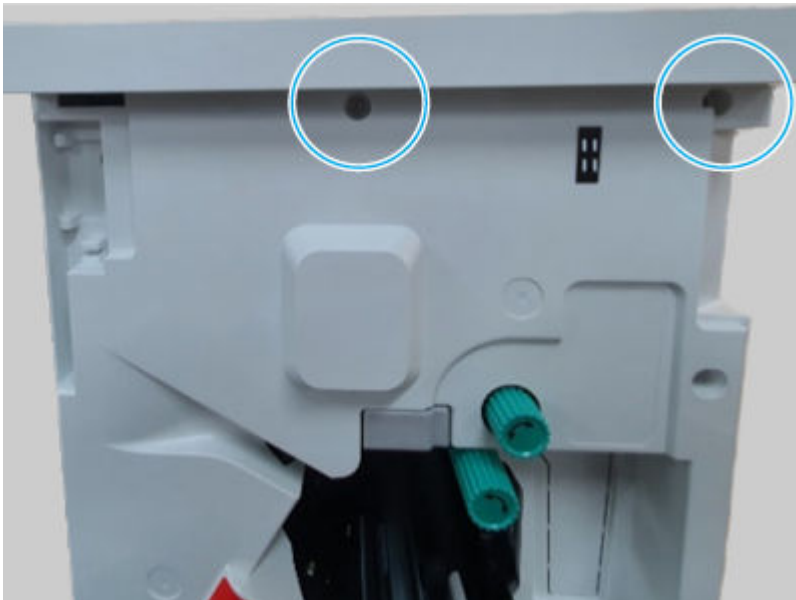
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1825 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1826 Remove the cover

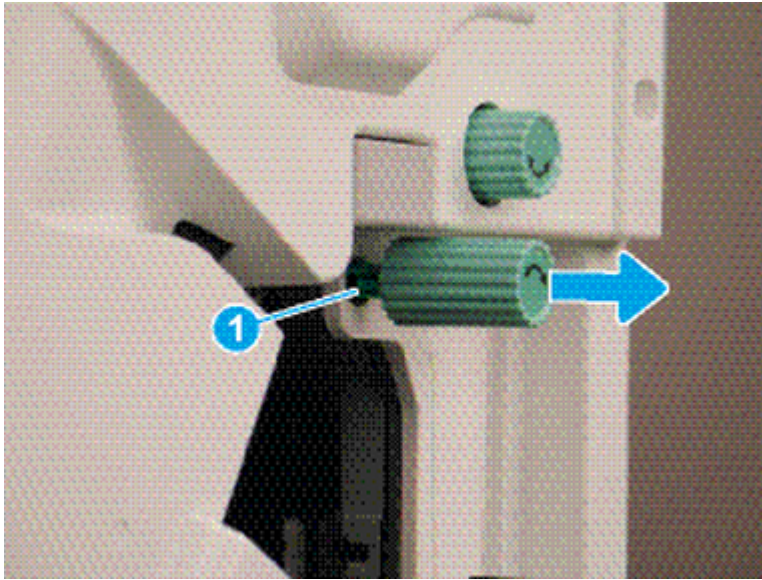


4. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1827 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1828 Remove the cover

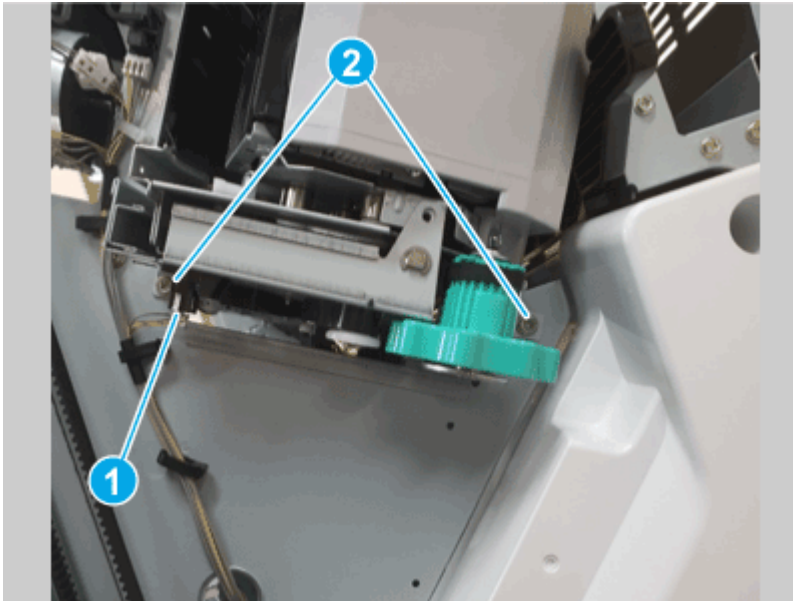


5. Remove the external finisher stapler unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher stapler unit.

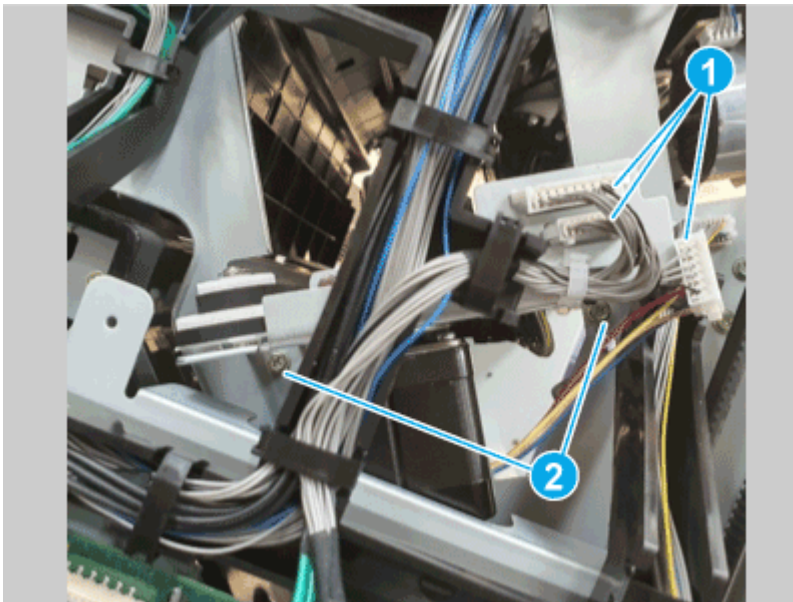
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws (callout 2).

Figure 6-1829 Disconnect connector and remove screws



2. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the stapler unit.

Figure 6-1830 Remove the unit



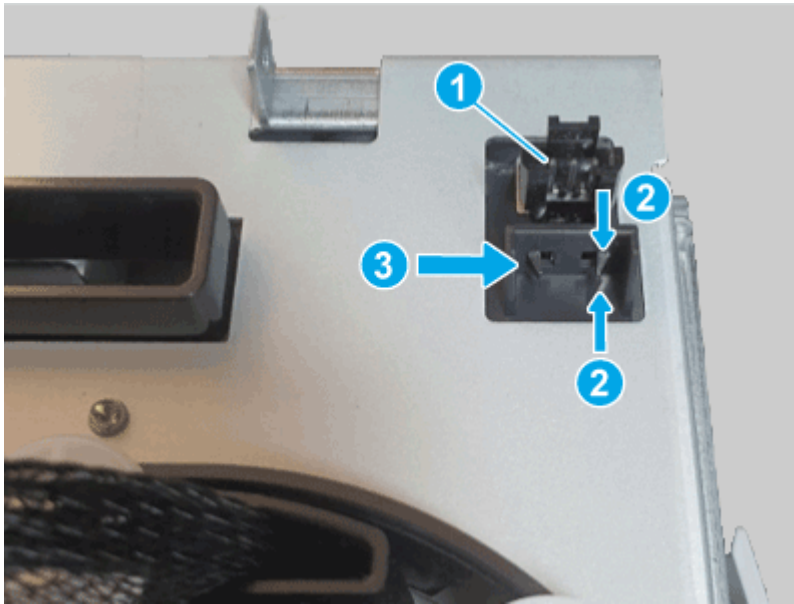
6. Remove the external finisher stapler front sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher stapler front sensor.

- Do the following:
 - Disconnect one connector (callout 1).
 - Release the hooks (callout 2).

- Slide the sensor assembly as shown below (callout 3).
- Remove the stapler front sensor.

Figure 6-1831 Remove the sensor



7. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Stapler mid-front and mid-rear sensors

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher stapler mid-front and mid-rear sensors.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-266 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Stapler mid-front sensor)
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Stapler mid-rear sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

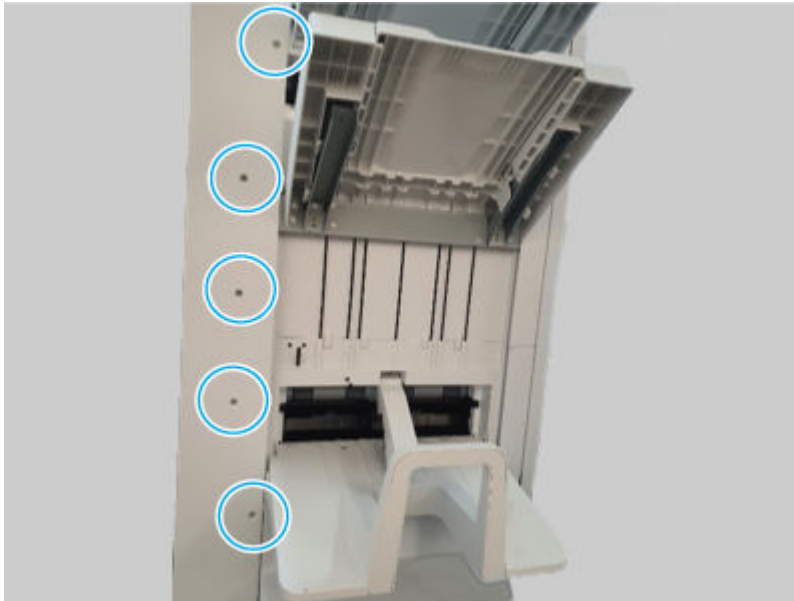
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1832 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


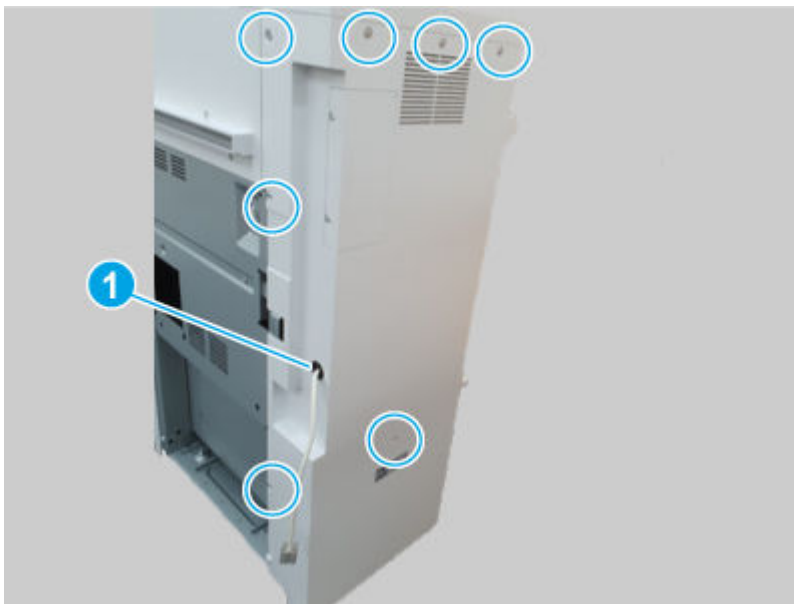
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1833 Remove the cover

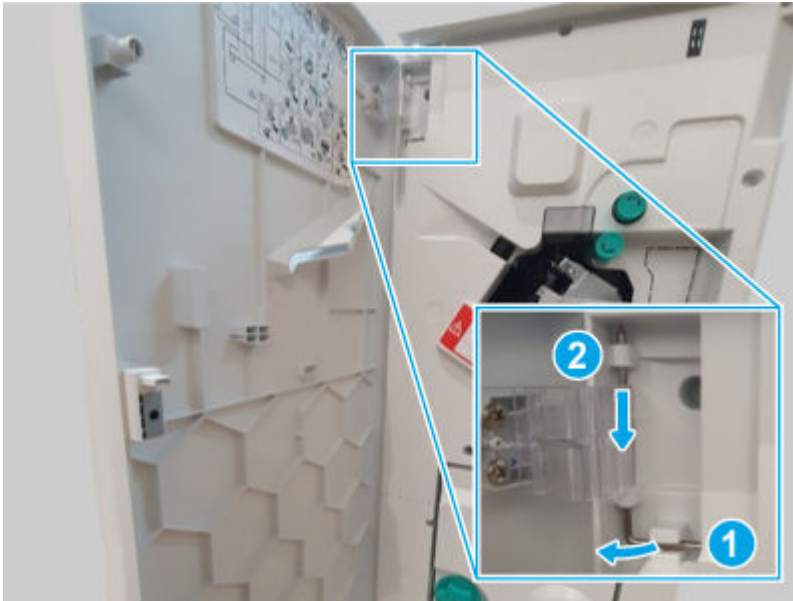


2. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

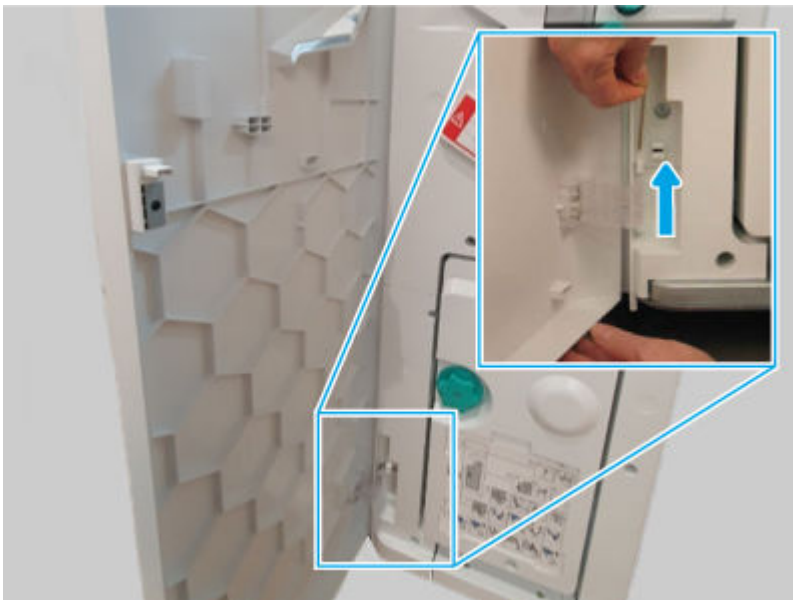
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1834 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1835 Remove the door



3. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

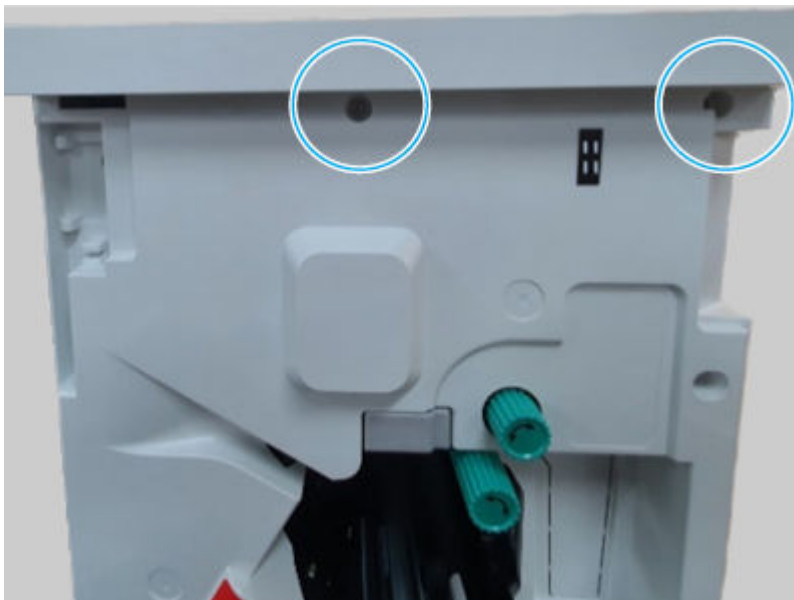
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1836 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1837 Remove the cover

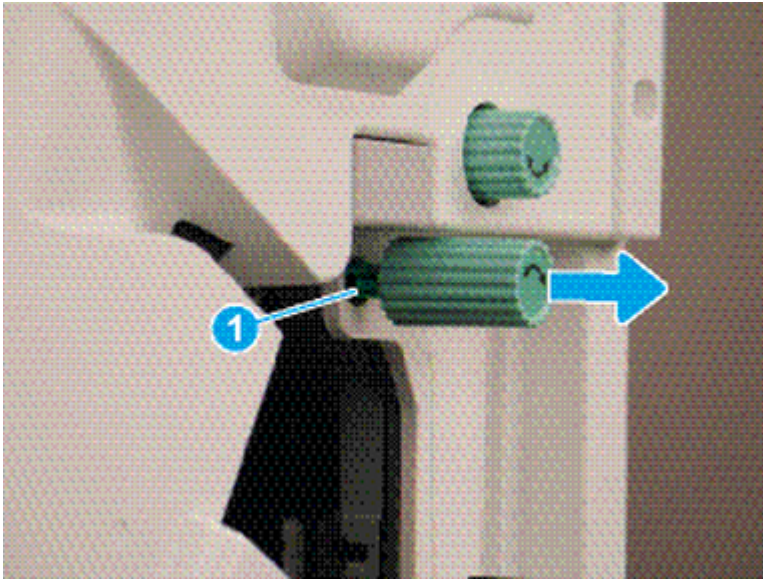


4. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1838 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1839 Remove the cover

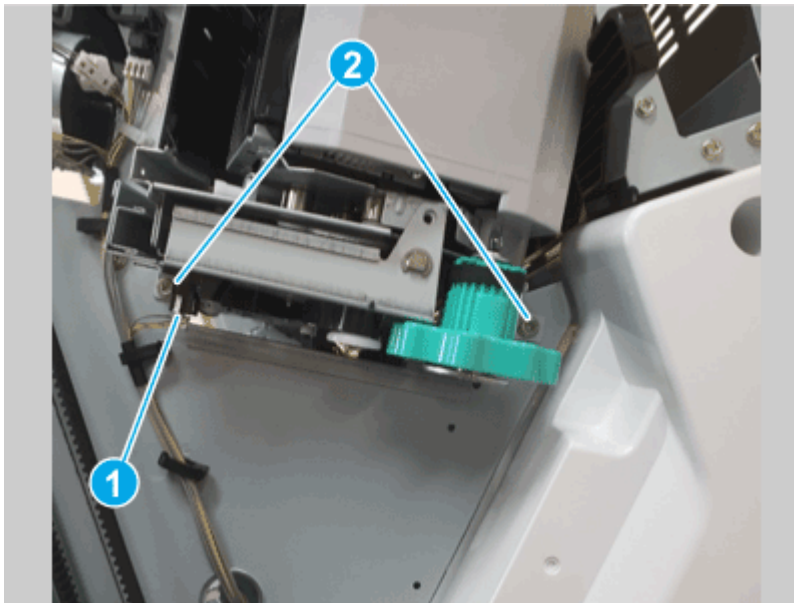


5. Remove the external finisher stapler unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher stapler unit.

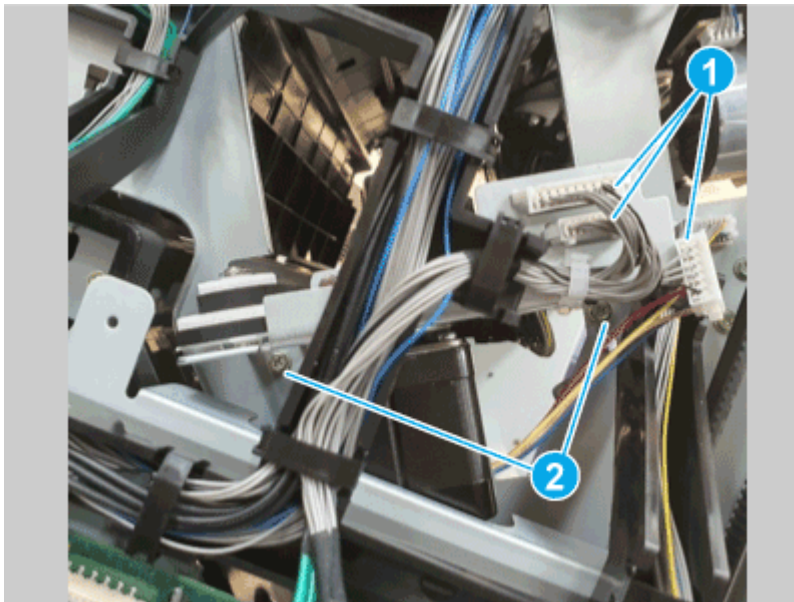
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws (callout 2).

Figure 6-1840 Disconnect connector and remove screws



2. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the stapler unit.

Figure 6-1841 Remove the unit



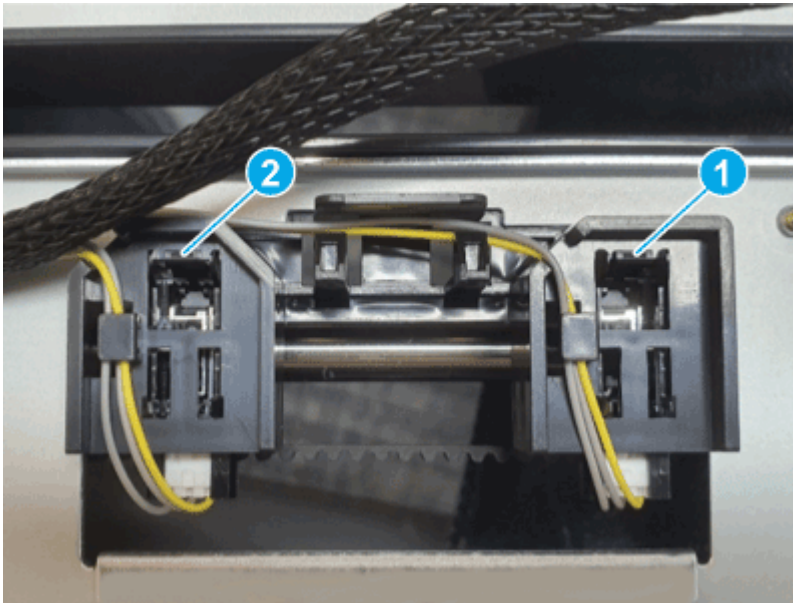
6. Remove the external finisher stapler mid-front and mid-rear sensors

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher stapler mid-front and mid-rear sensors.

1. Locate the desired sensor.
 - **Callout 1:** Mid-front sensor

- **Callout 2:** Mid-rear sensor

Figure 6-1842 Locate the sensors



2. Do the following:
 - Disconnect one connector (callout 1).
 - Release the hooks (callout 2).
 - Slide the sensor assembly as shown below (callout 3).
 - Remove the stapler mid-front sensor.


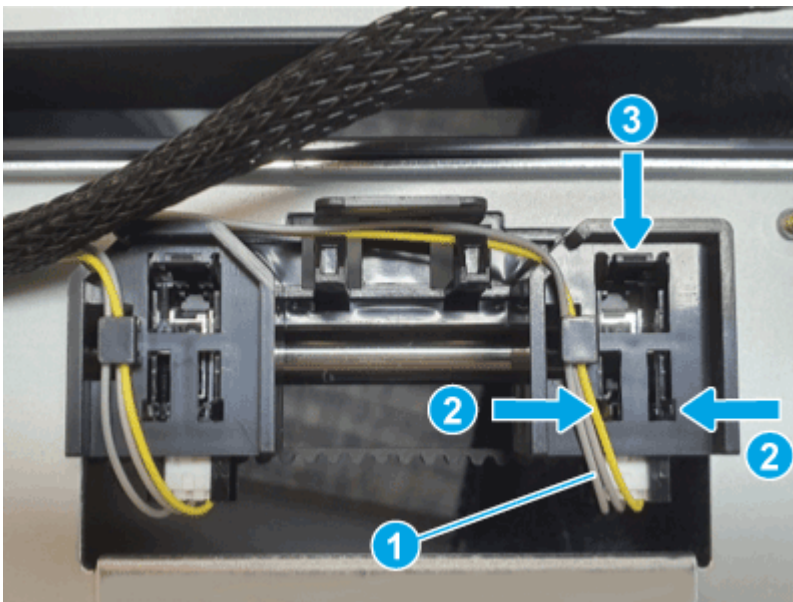
 **NOTE:** Repeat this step to remove the stapler mid-rear sensor if necessary.

Figure 6-1843 Remove the sensor



7. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Manual staple sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher manual staple sensor.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-267 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Stapler manual staple sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

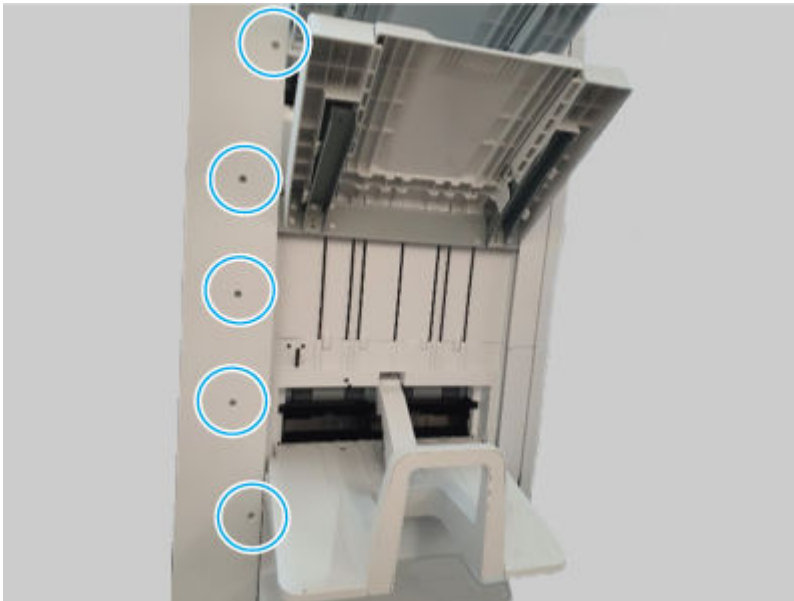
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1844 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1845 Remove the cover

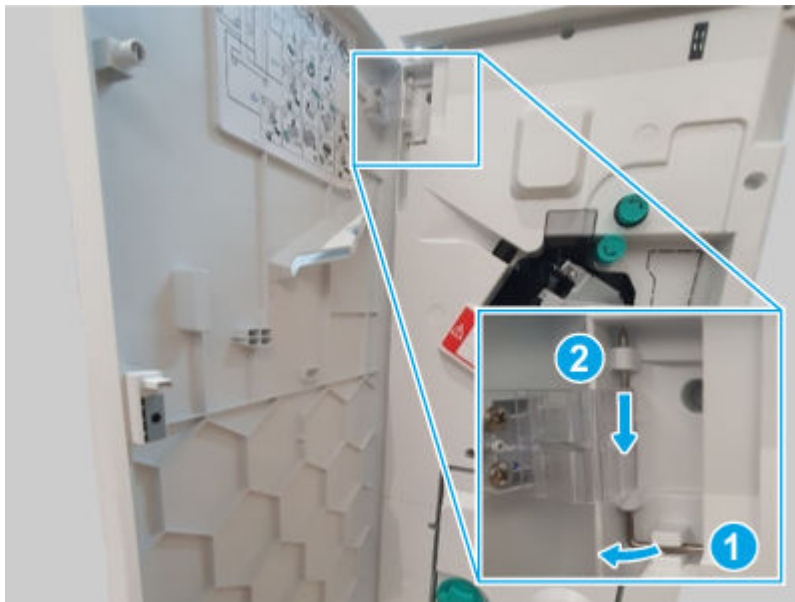


2. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

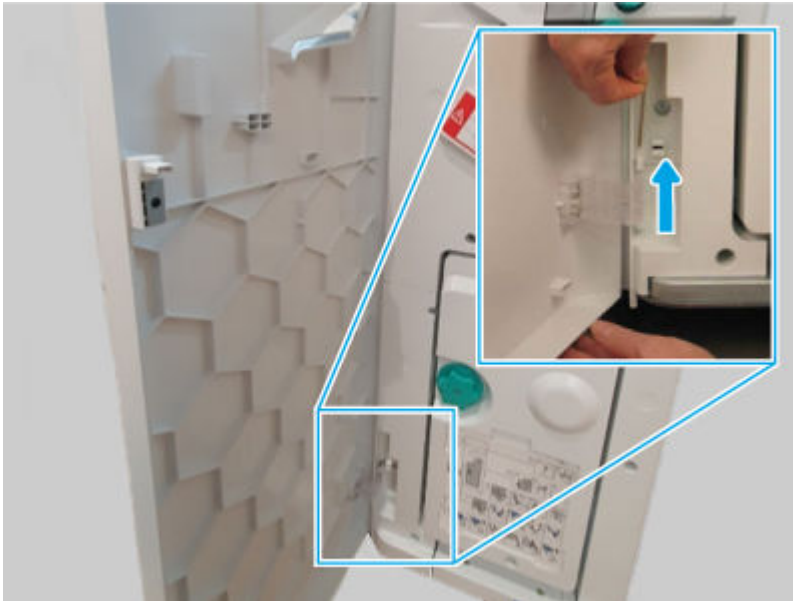
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1846 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1847 Remove the door



3. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

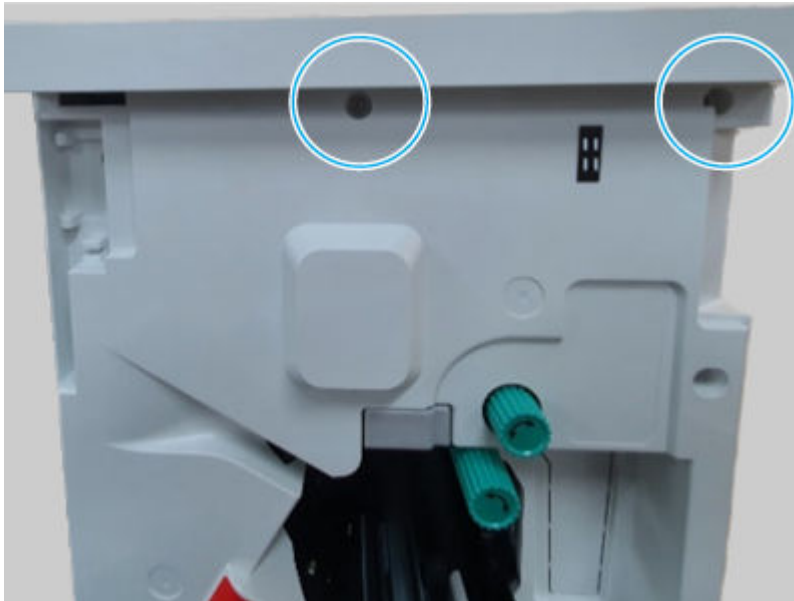
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1848 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1849 Remove the cover

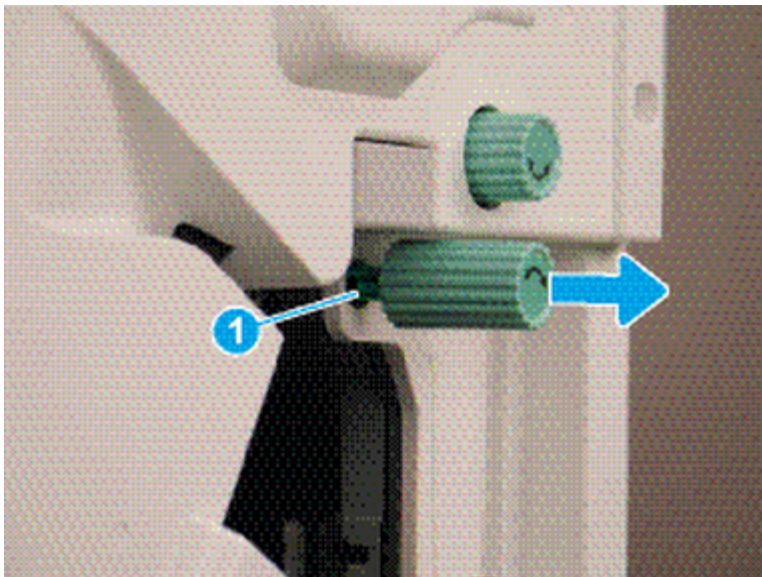


4. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1850 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1851 Remove the cover

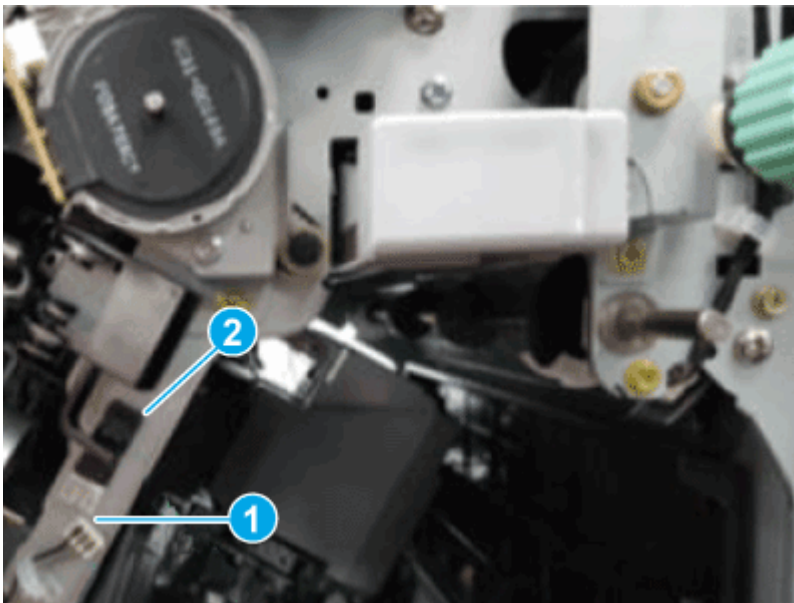


5. Remove the external finisher manual staple sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher manual staple sensor.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the manual staple sensor (callout 2).


Figure 6-1852 Remove the sensor



6. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Stapler position motor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher stapler position motor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 25 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-268 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00163A	Motor, step (Stapler position motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

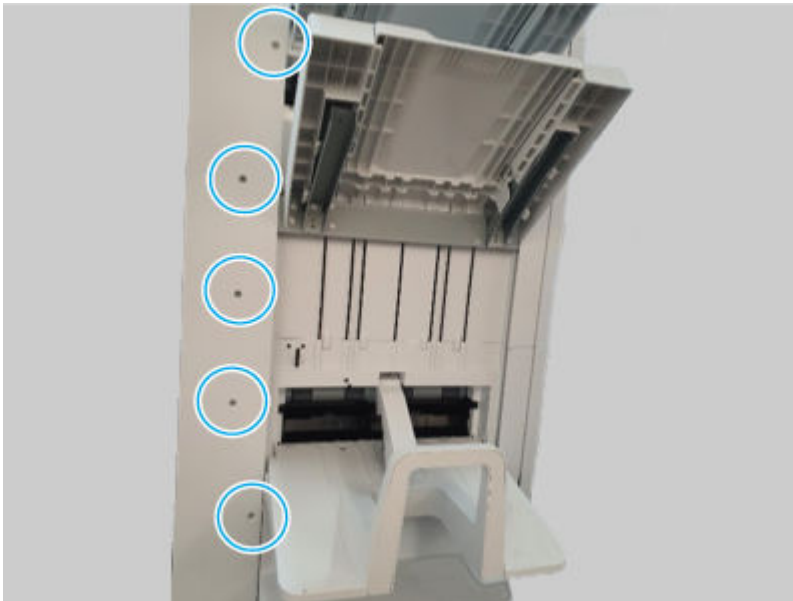
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1853 Remove five screws

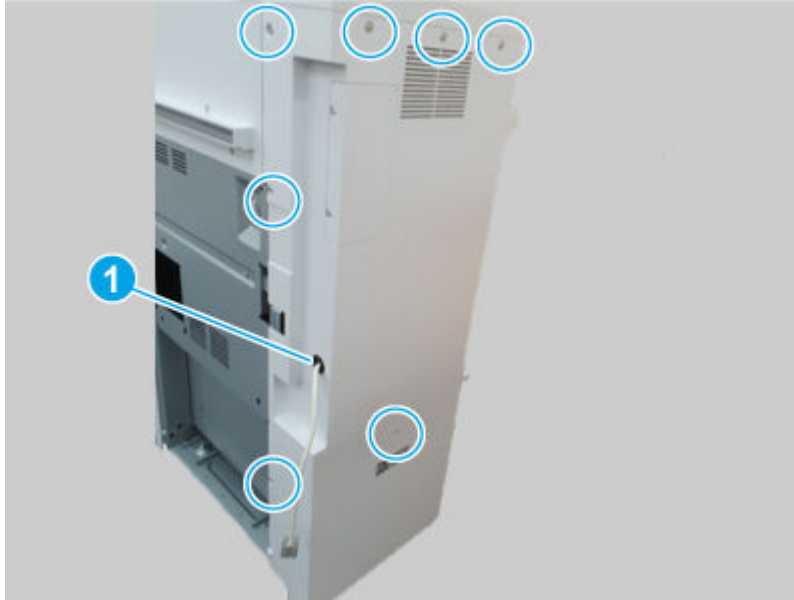


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1854 Remove the cover

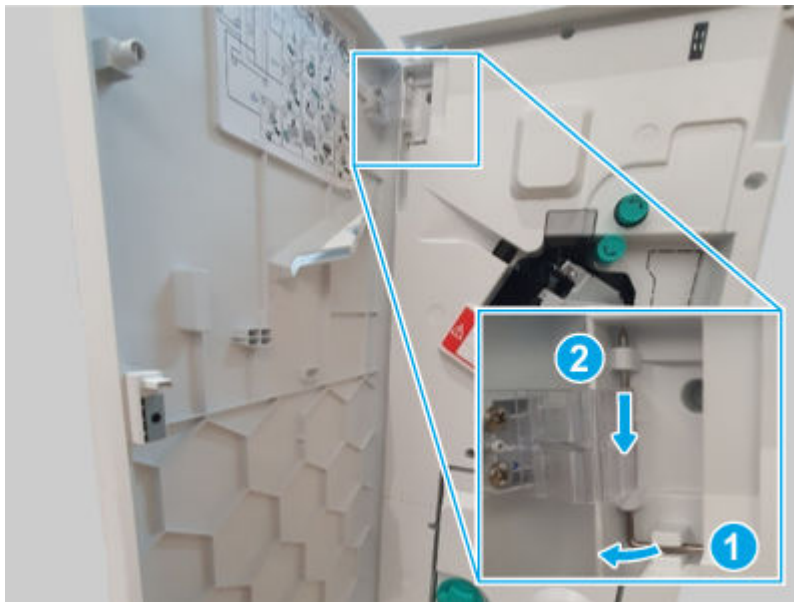


2. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

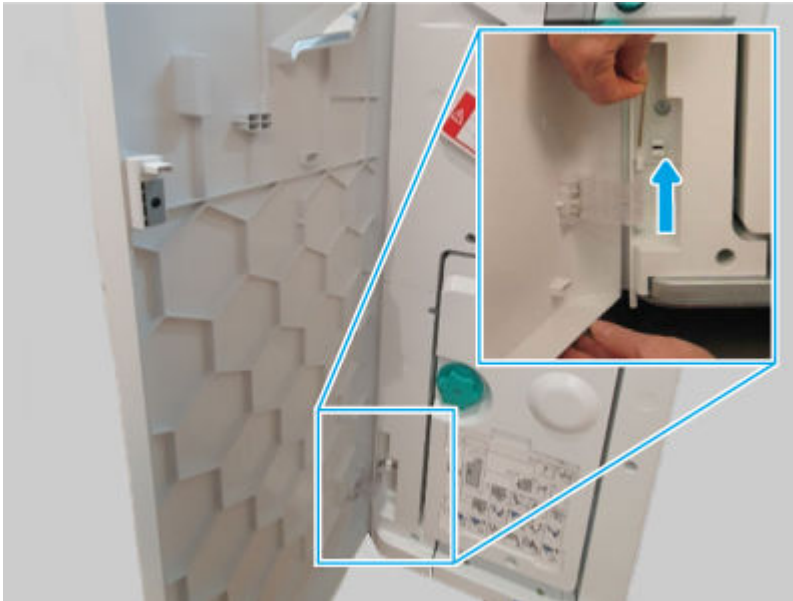
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1855 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1856 Remove the door



3. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

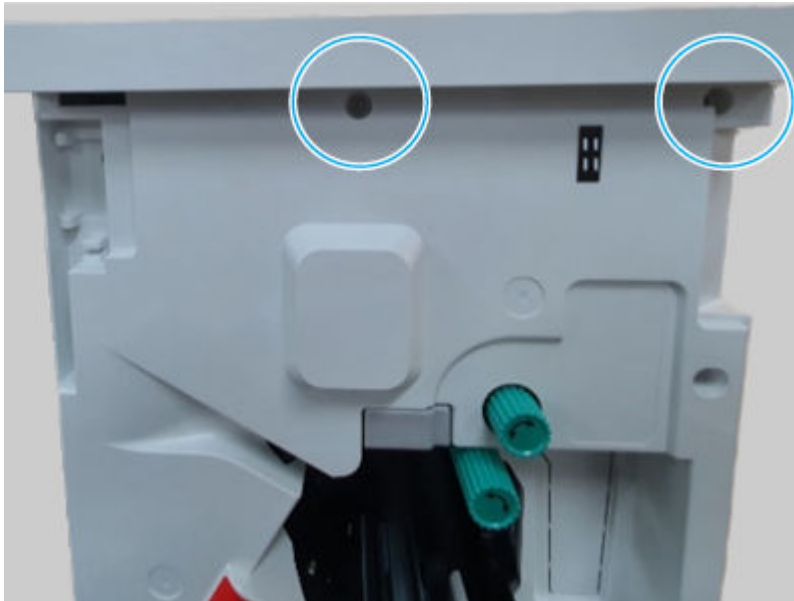
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1857 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1858 Remove the cover

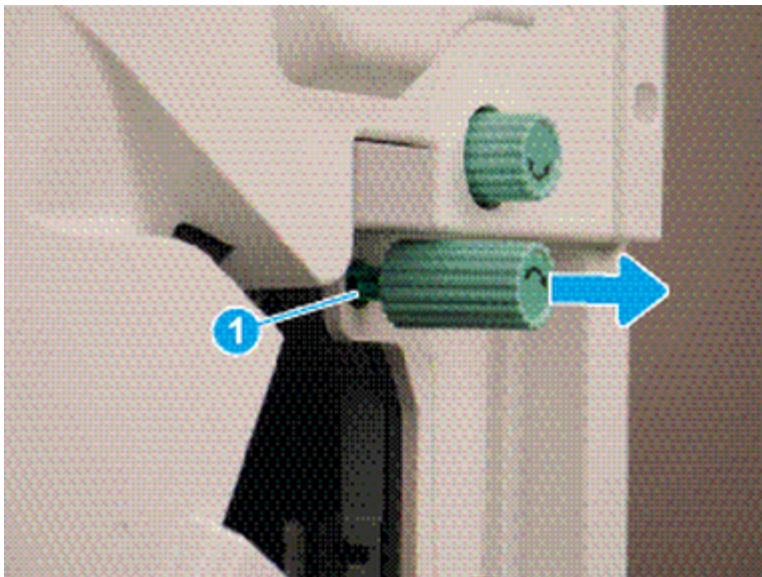


4. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1859 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1860 Remove the cover

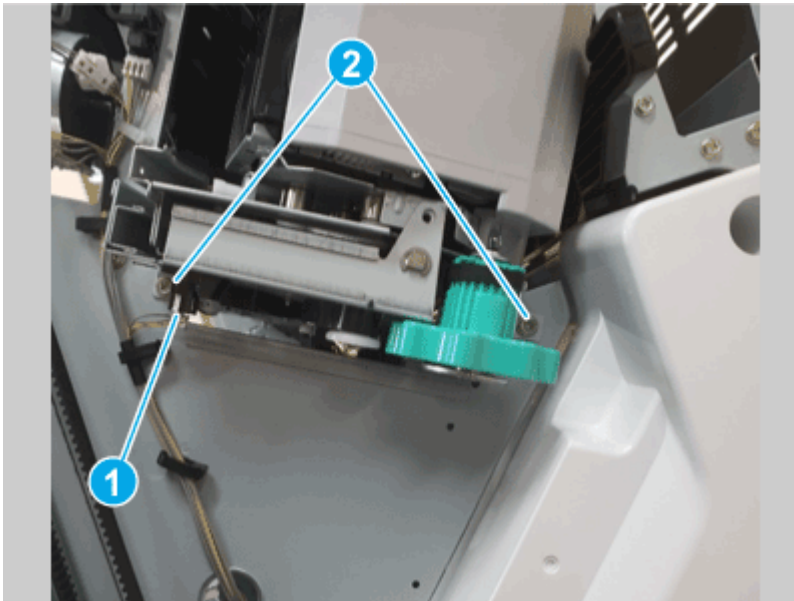


5. Remove the external finisher stapler unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher stapler unit.

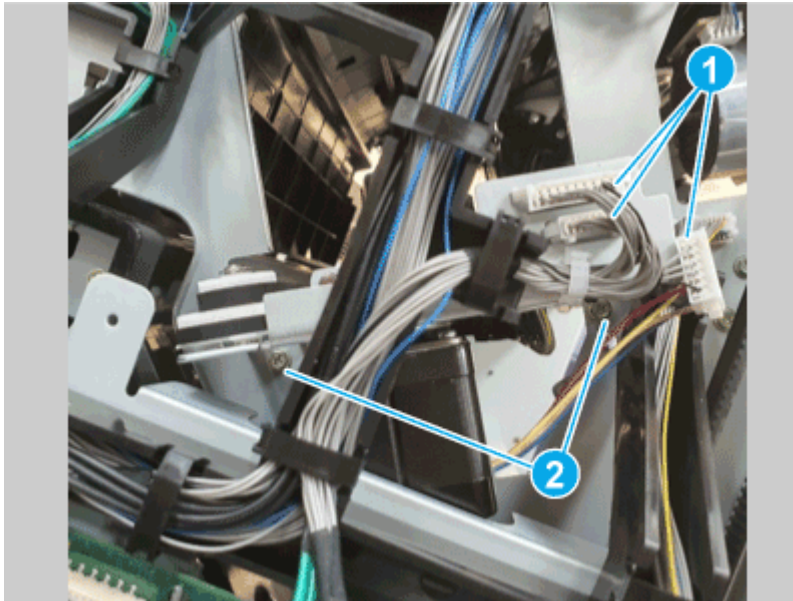
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws (callout 2).

Figure 6-1861 Disconnect connector and remove screws



2. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the stapler unit.

Figure 6-1862 Remove the unit

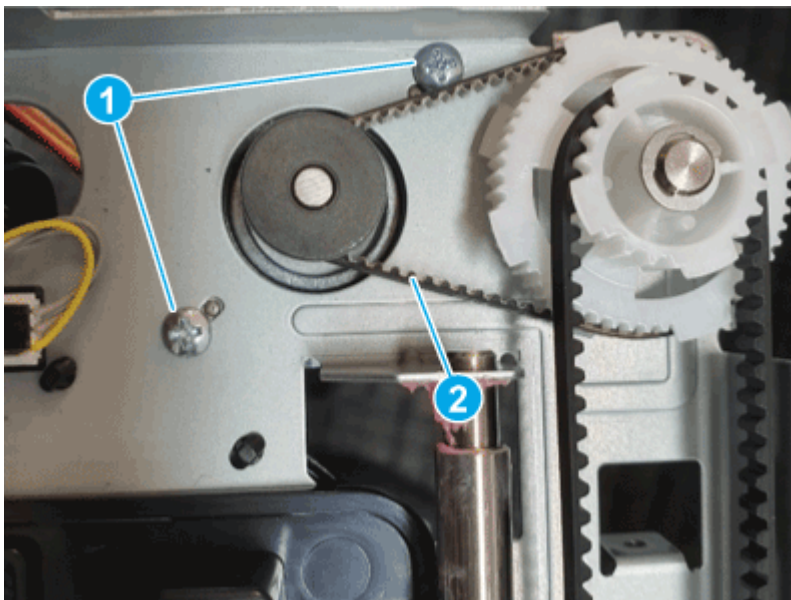


6. Remove the external finisher stapler position motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher stapler position motor.

- Remove two screws (callout 1), release the belt (callout 2), and then remove the stapler position motor.


Figure 6-1863 Remove the motor



7. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Ejector unit

Review the external finisher ejector unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Ejector unit

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher ejector unit.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-269 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01802A	Ejector unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

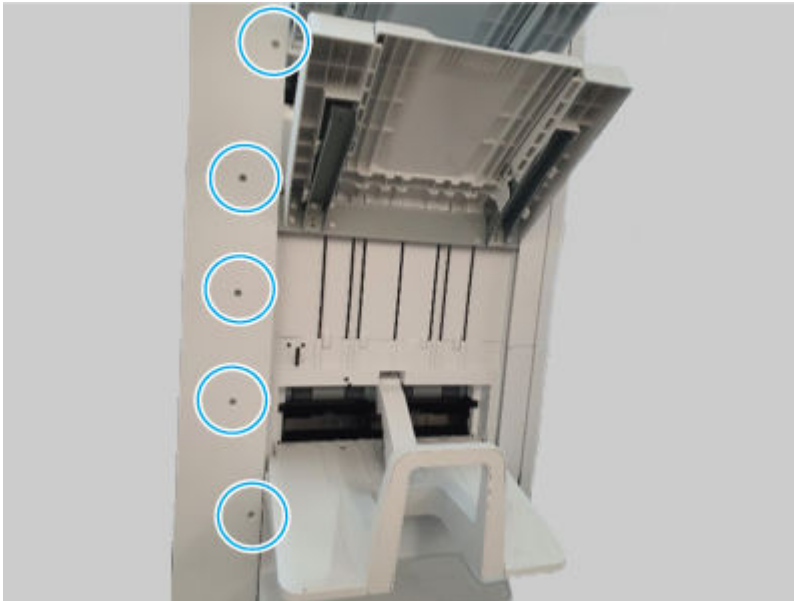
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1864 Remove five screws

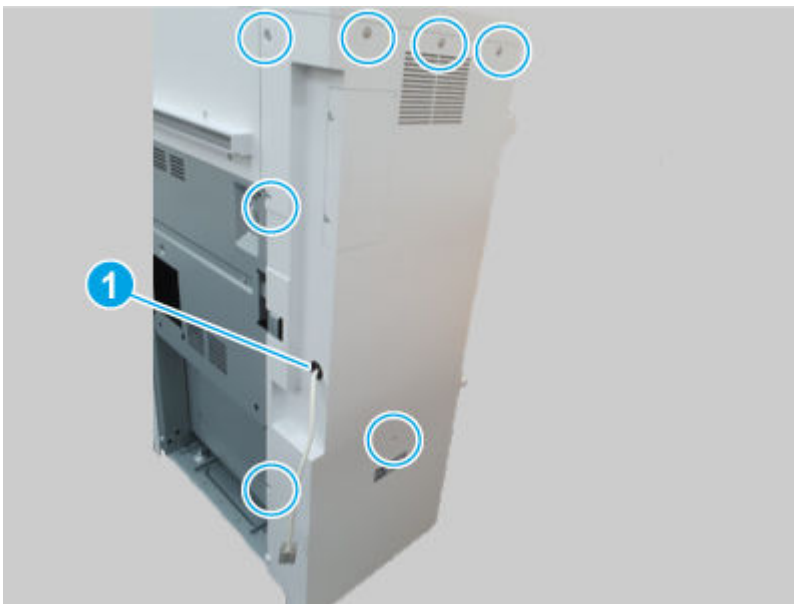


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1865 Remove the cover

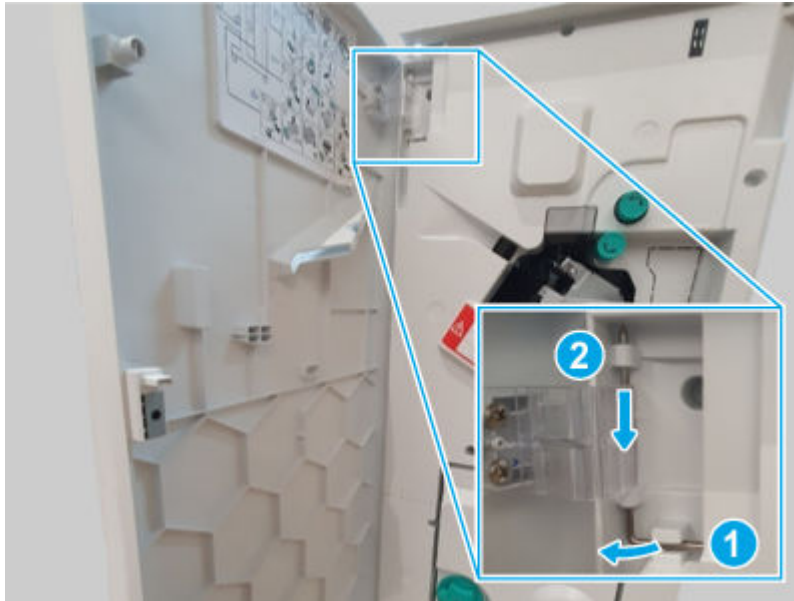


2. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

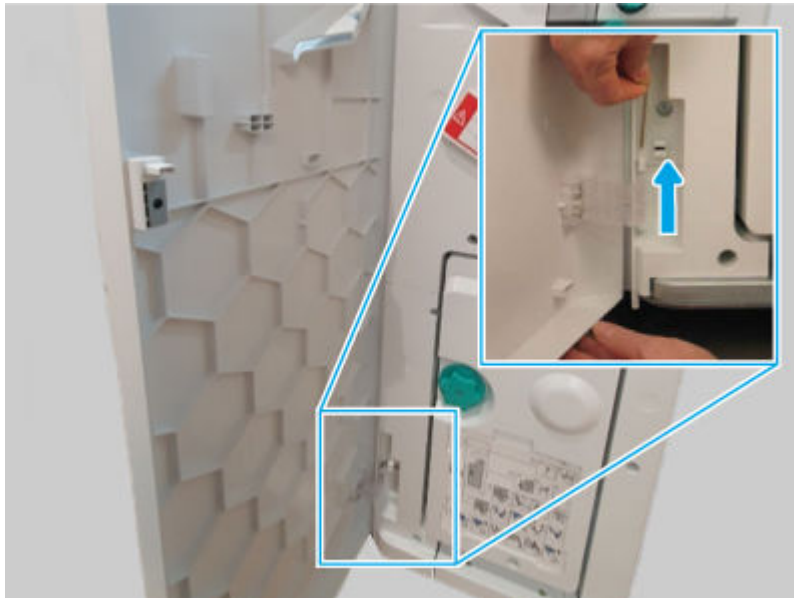
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1866 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1867 Remove the door



3. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1868 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1869 Remove the cover

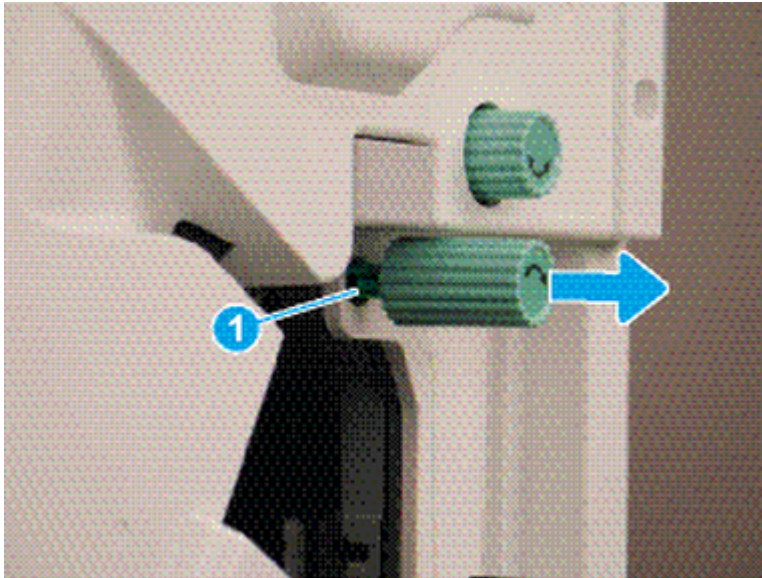


4. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1870 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1871 Remove the cover



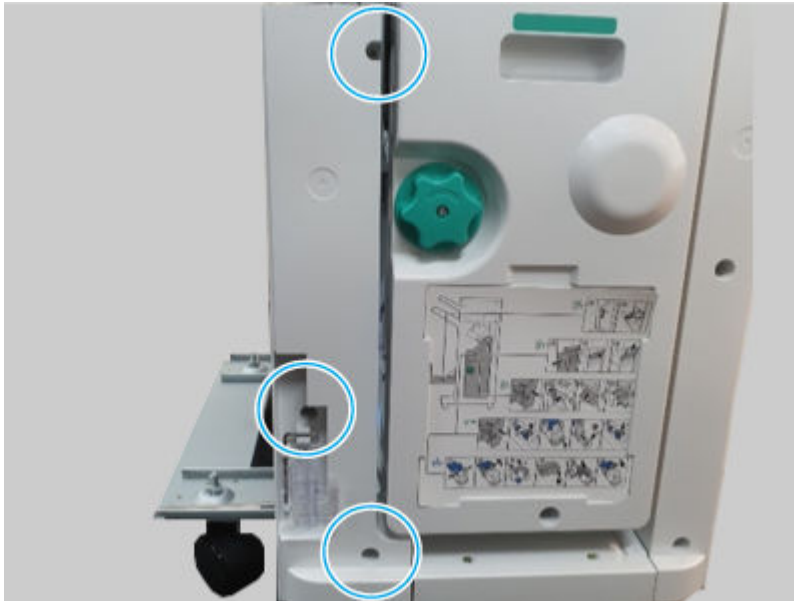
5. Remove the external finisher front lower left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front lower left cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.

2. Remove three screws, and then remove the front lower left cover.

Figure 6-1872 Remove the cover



6. Remove the external finisher caster

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher caster.

⚠ WARNING! The external finisher is not stable when one or more casters are removed and can easily tip over. To avoid personal injury or damage to the finisher, make sure to fully support the finisher when removing a caster.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.
2. Remove one fix nut.

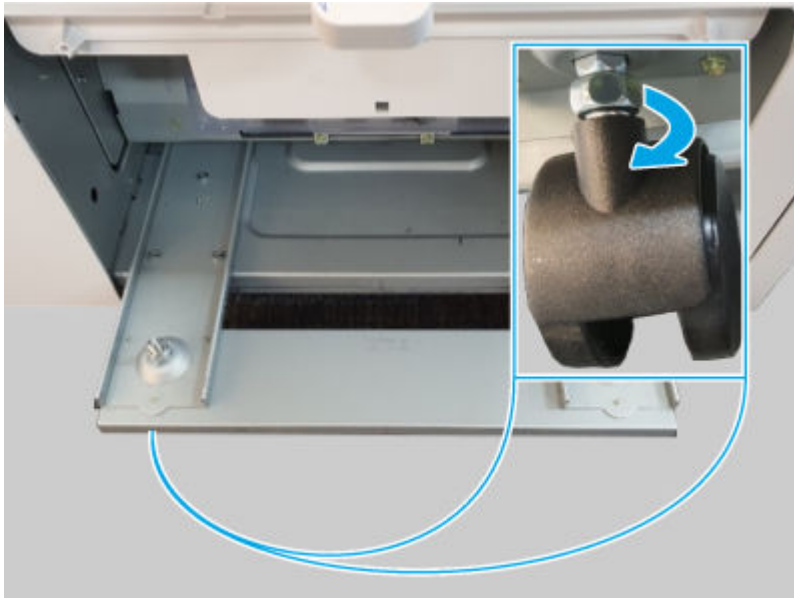
🔧 NOTE: Use a 12mm spanner wrench to remove the nut.

Figure 6-1873 Remove the nut



3. Rotate the caster as shown below to remove it. Repeat these steps for the remaining casters as needed.

Figure 6-1874 Remove the caster

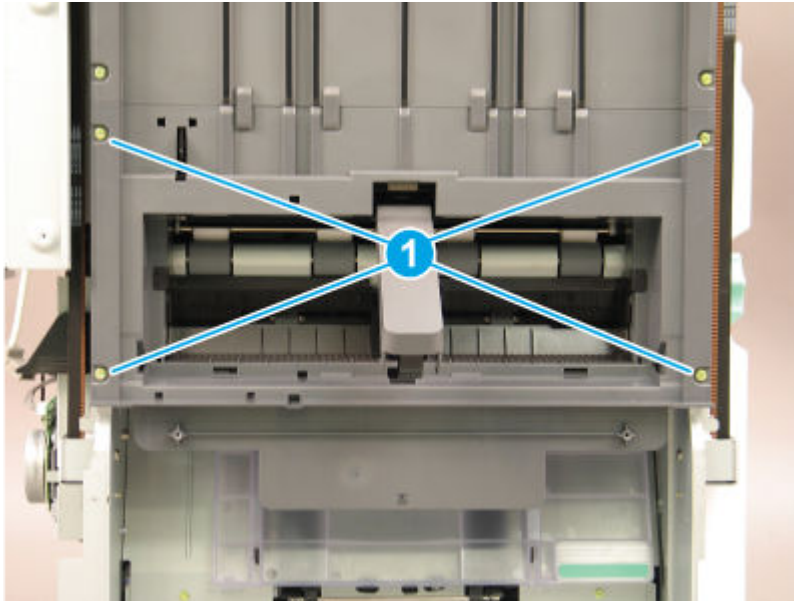


7. Remove the external finisher left lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left lower cover.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-1875 Remove four screws

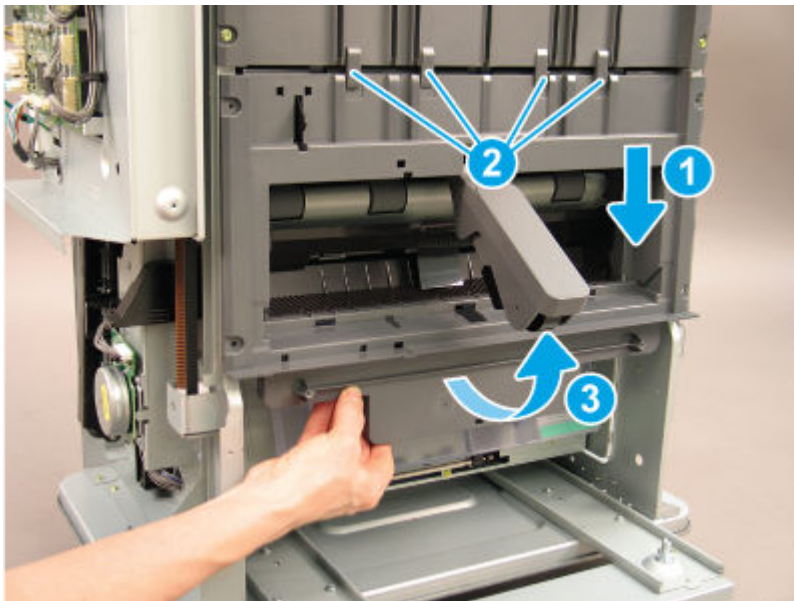


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

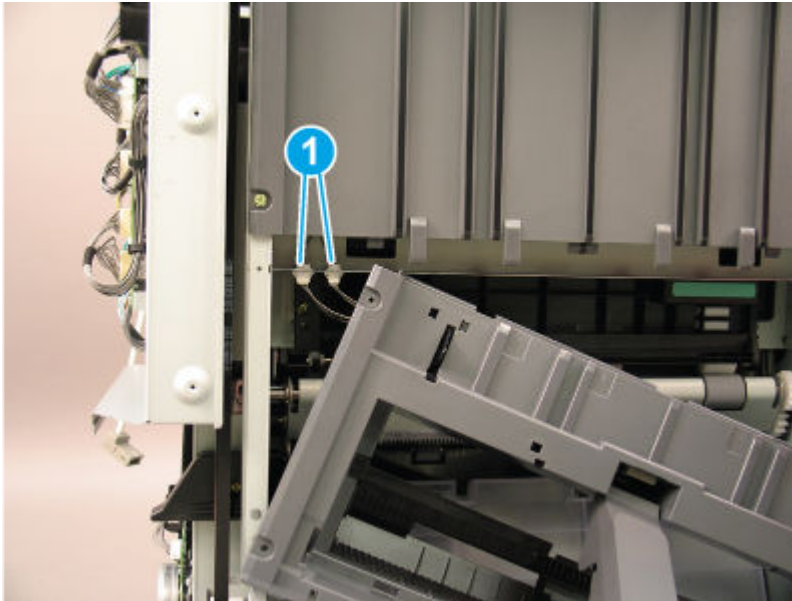
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-1876 Release the cover



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the left lower cover.

Figure 6-1877 Remove the cover

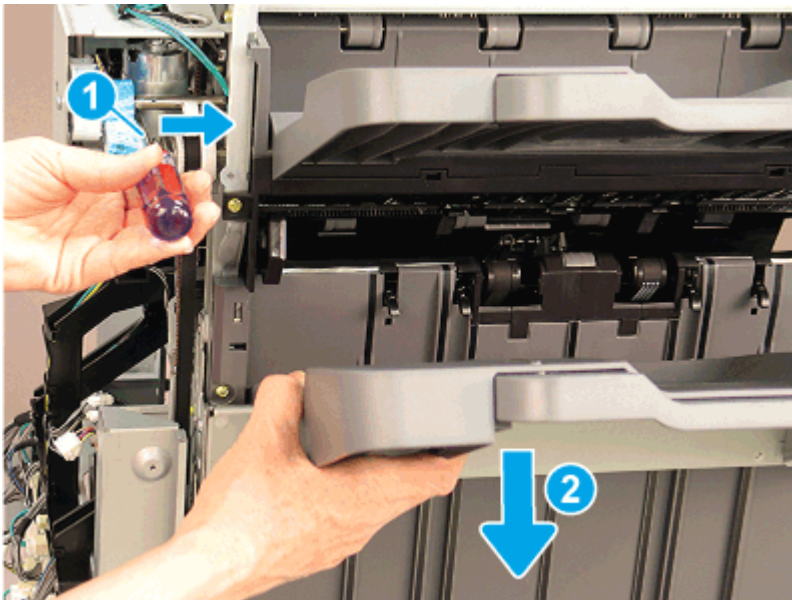


8. Remove the external finisher left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left upper cover.

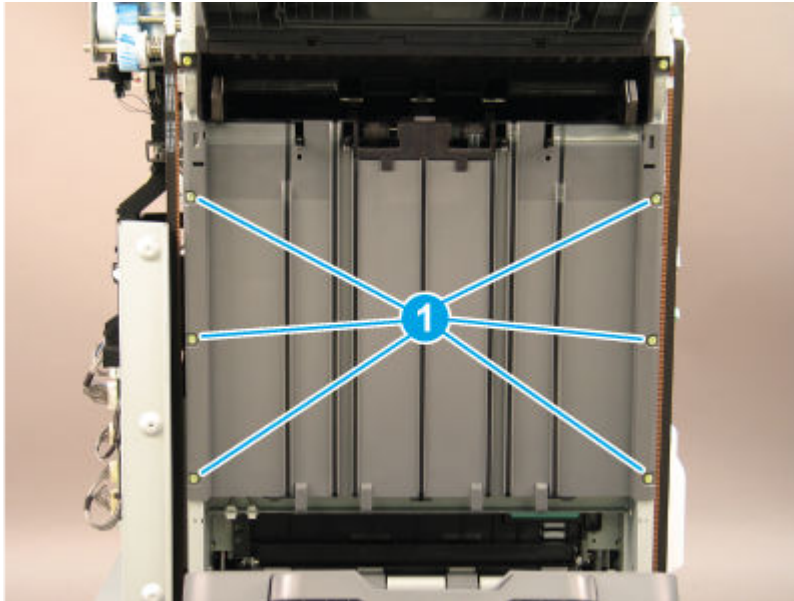
1. Bring the main output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 6-1878 Lower the tray



2. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-1879 Remove six screws

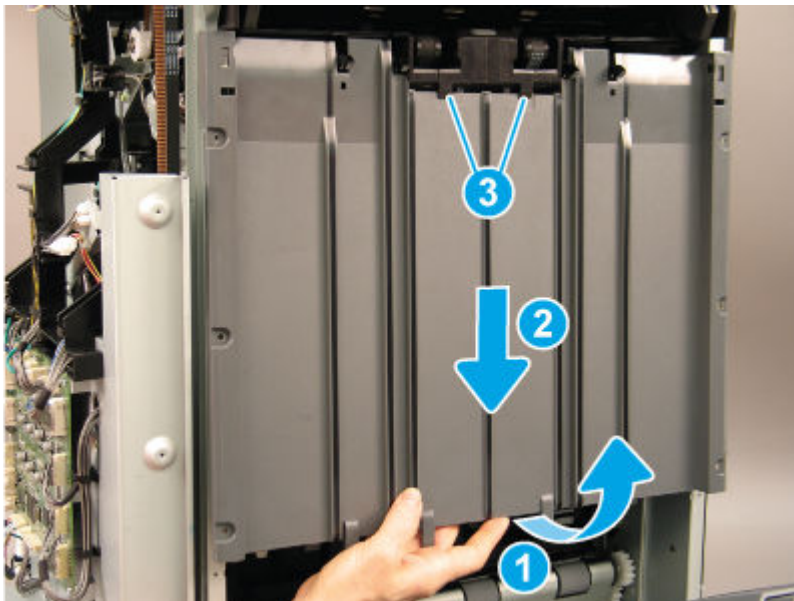


3. Rotate the lower edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

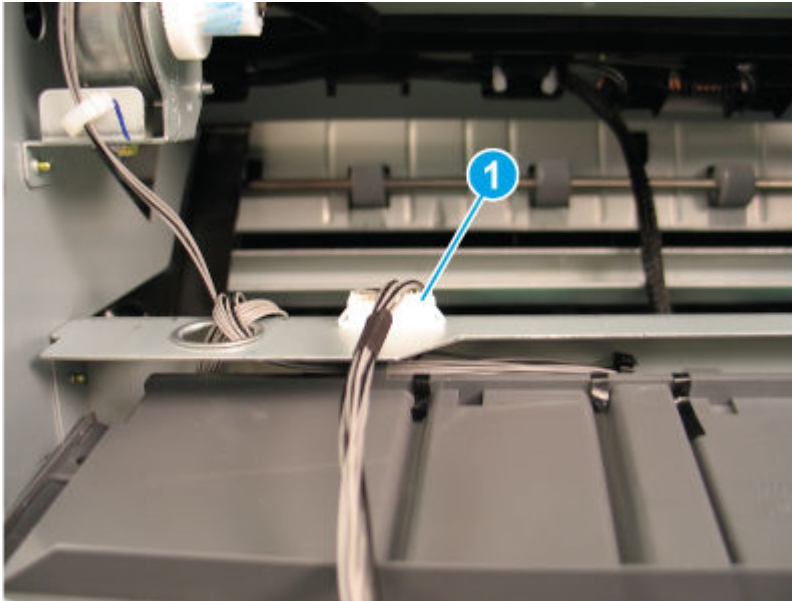
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-1880 Release the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the left upper cover.

Figure 6-1881 Remove the cover



9. Remove the external finisher ejector unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher ejector unit.

1. Remove three screws.


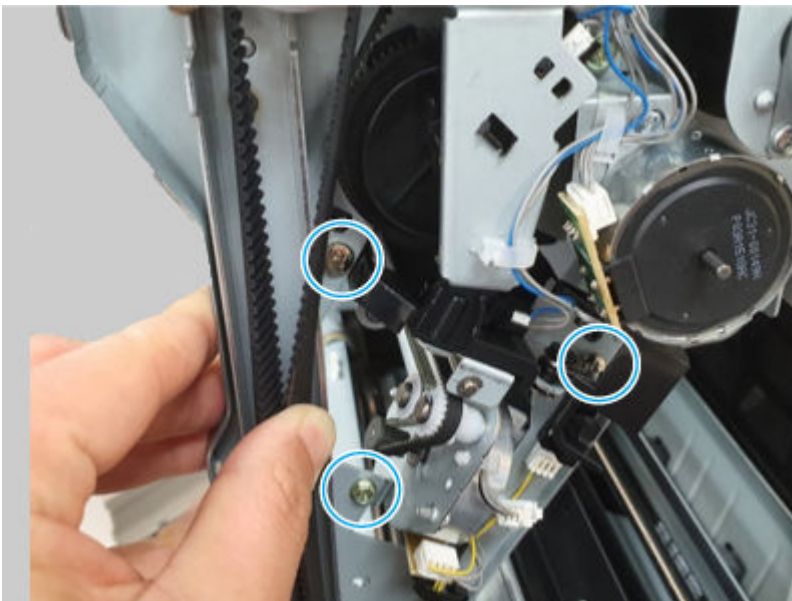
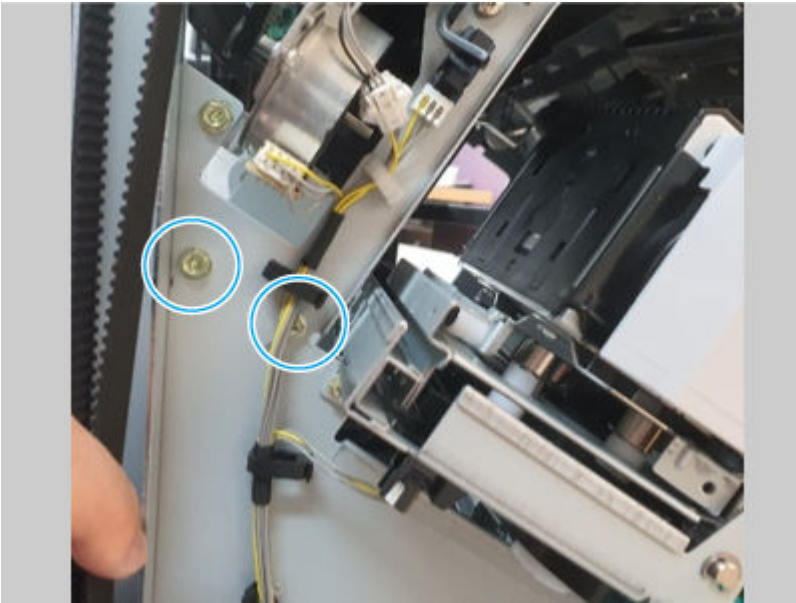
 **NOTE:** Removing these screws allows the front tamper to be moved out of the way when the ejector unit is removed.

Figure 6-1882 Release the tamper



2. Remove two screws (located below the front tamper).

Figure 6-1883 Remove two screws

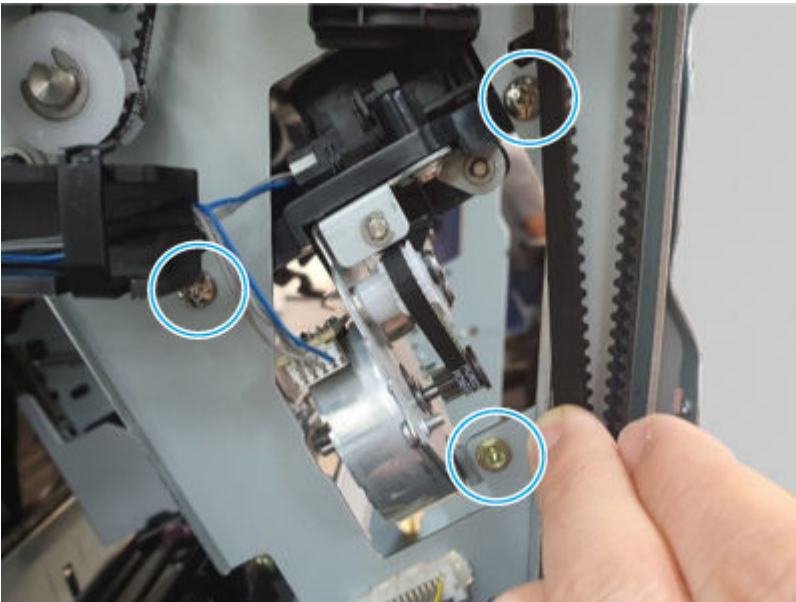


3. Remove three screws.



NOTE: Removing these screws allows the rear tamper to be moved out of the way when the ejector unit is removed.

Figure 6-1884 Release the tamper



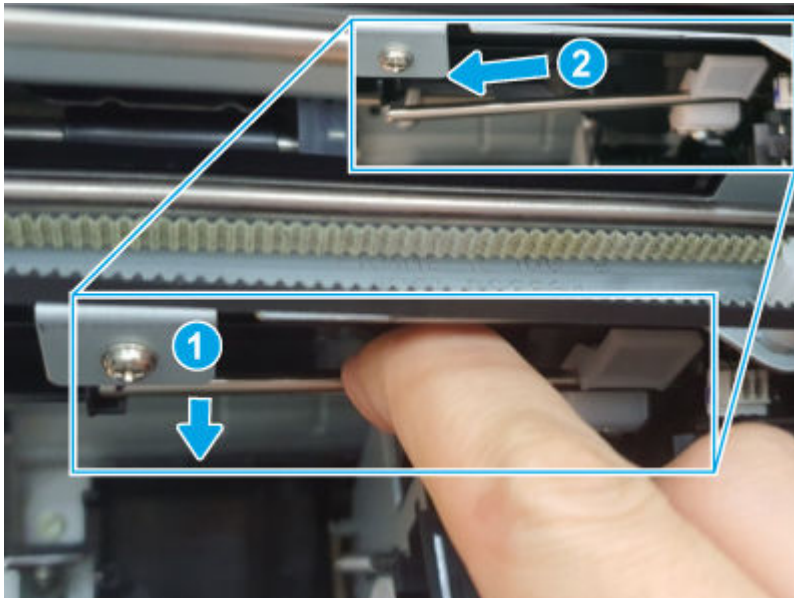
4. Remove two screws (located below the rear tamper).

Figure 6-1885 Remove two screws



5. Do the following:
 - a. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening.
 - b. Locate the shaft, pull down to release it (callout 1), and then slide it as shown below (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 6-1886 Remove the shaft



6. Remove two screws, and then remove the ejector unit.


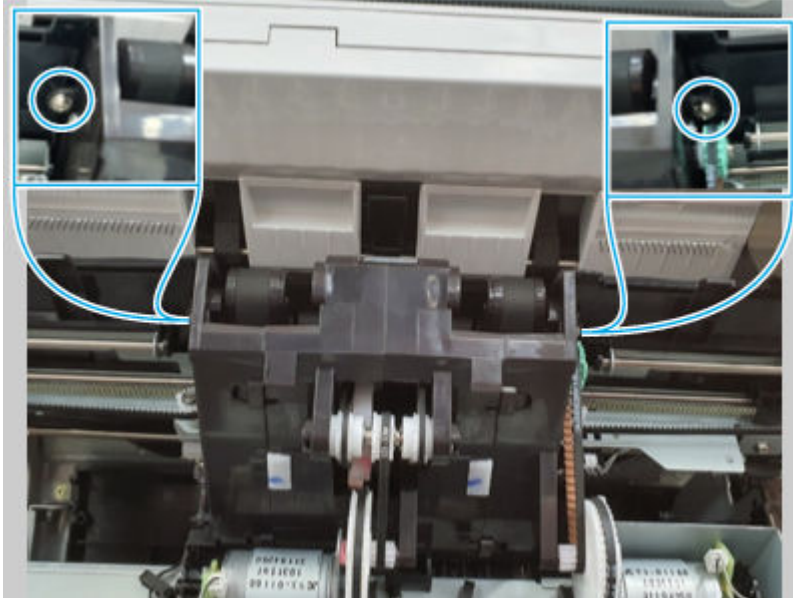
 **NOTE:** Slightly lift up on the tampers to give the ejector unit clearance when removing it..

Figure 6-1887 Remove the unit



10. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Ejector sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher ejector sensor.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-270 Part Information

Part number	Part description
JC32-00020A	Sensor-RP (Ejector sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

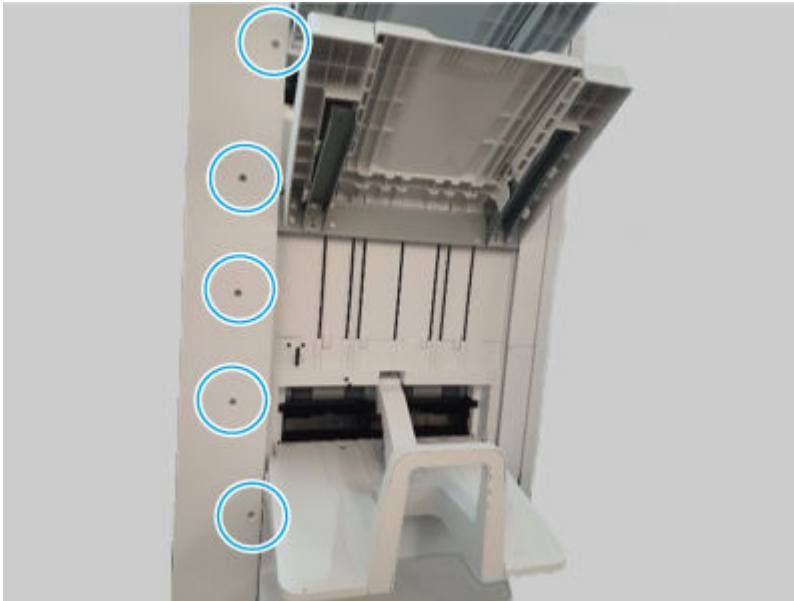
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1888 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


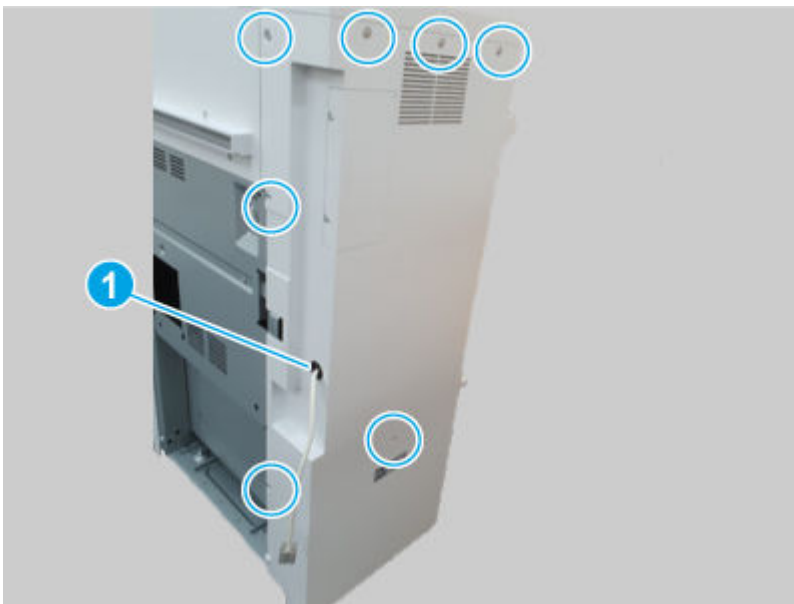
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1889 Remove the cover

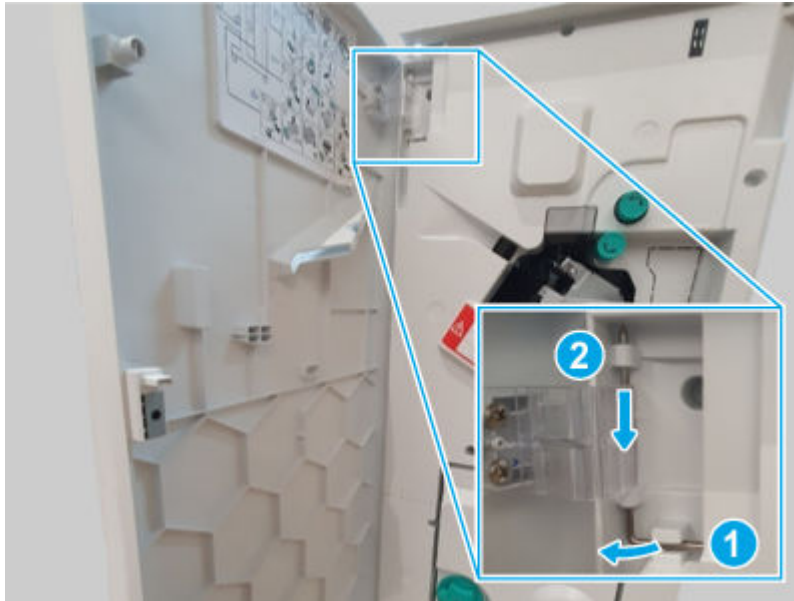


2. Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

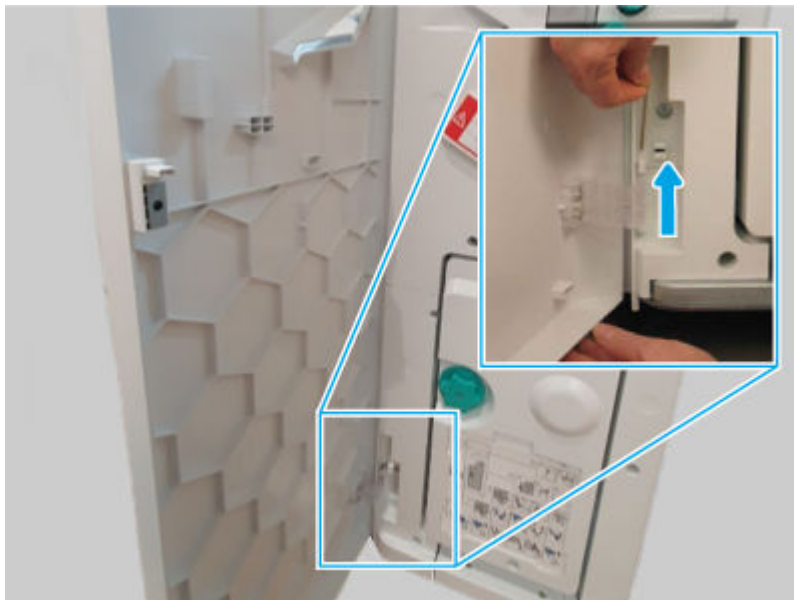
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1890 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1891 Remove the door



3. Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1892 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1893 Remove the cover

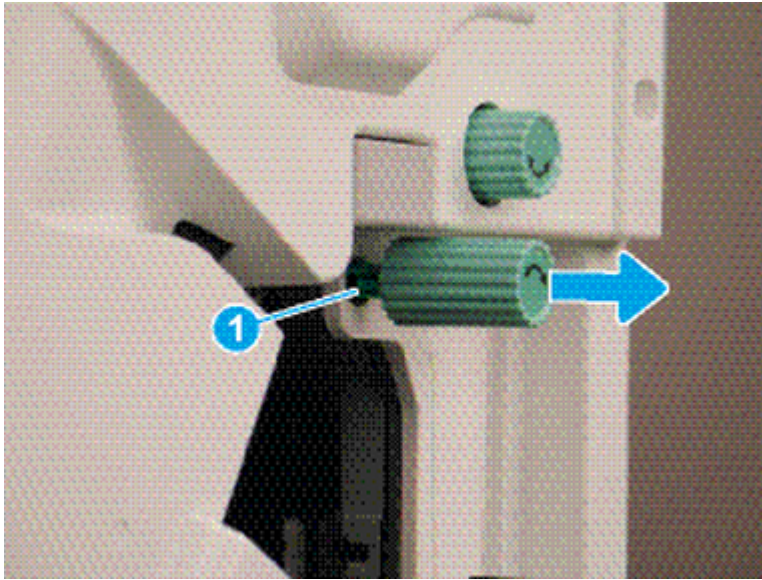


4. Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1894 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1895 Remove the cover



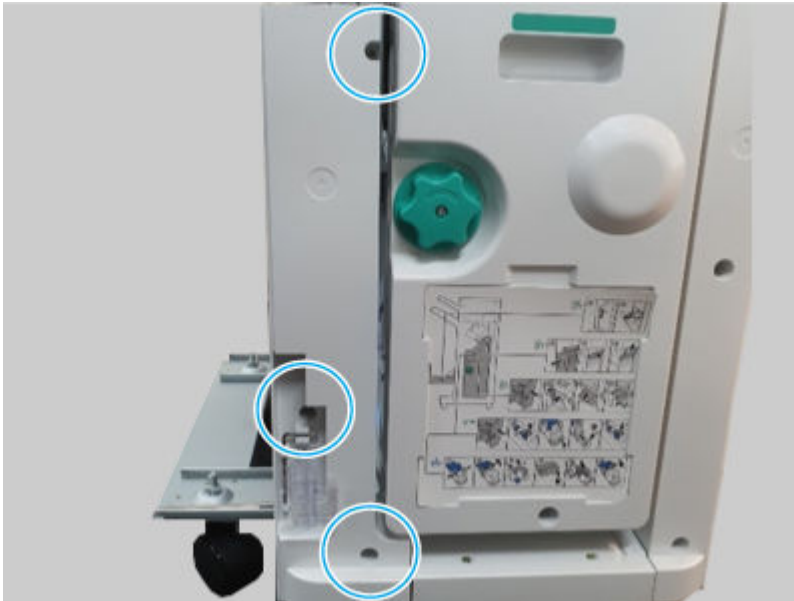
5. Remove the external finisher front lower left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front lower left cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.

2. Remove three screws, and then remove the front lower left cover.

Figure 6-1896 Remove the cover



6. Remove the external finisher caster

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher caster.

⚠ WARNING! The external finisher is not stable when one or more casters are removed and can easily tip over. To avoid personal injury or damage to the finisher, make sure to fully support the finisher when removing a caster.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.
2. Remove one fix nut.

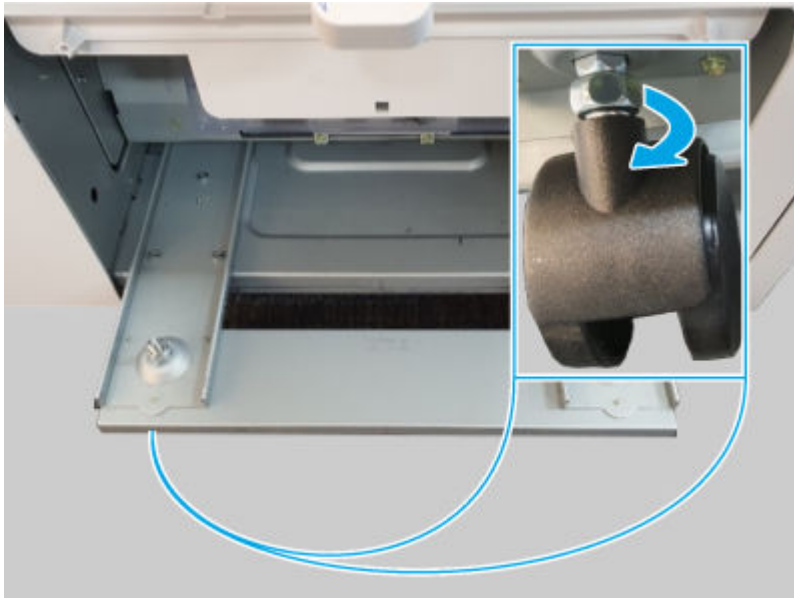
🔧 NOTE: Use a 12mm spanner wrench to remove the nut.

Figure 6-1897 Remove the nut



3. Rotate the caster as shown below to remove it. Repeat these steps for the remaining casters as needed.

Figure 6-1898 Remove the caster

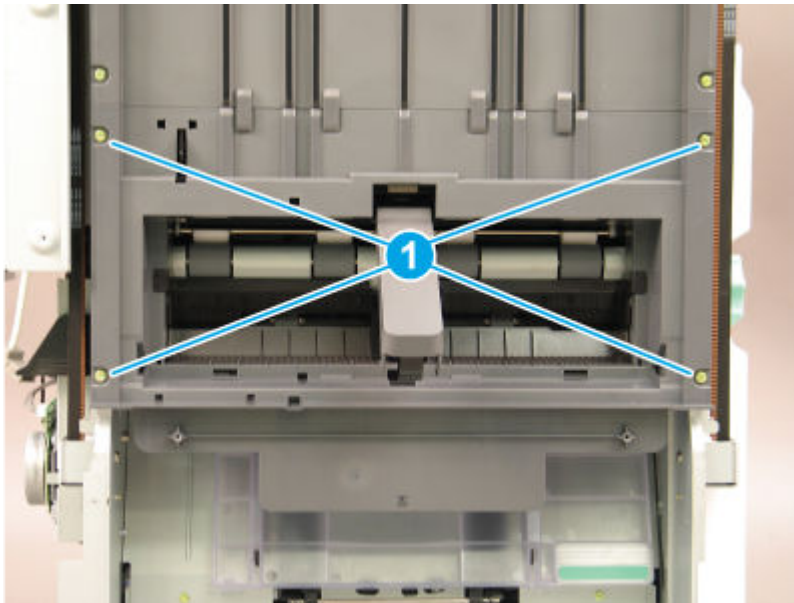


7. Remove the external finisher left lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left lower cover.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-1899 Remove four screws

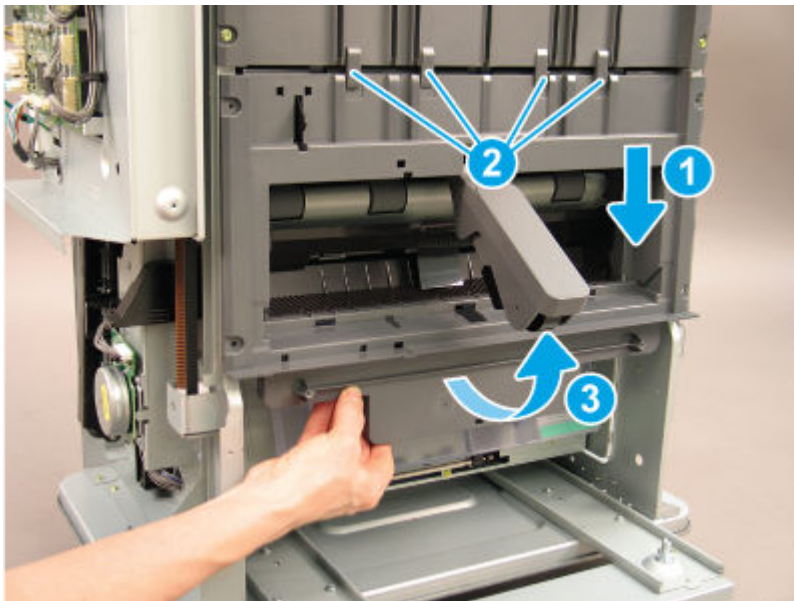


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

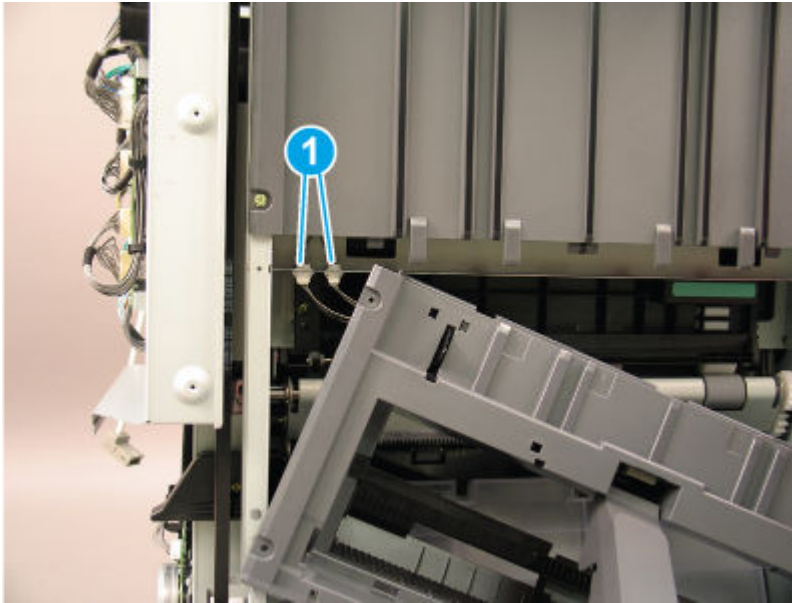
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-1900 Release the cover



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the left lower cover.

Figure 6-1901 Remove the cover

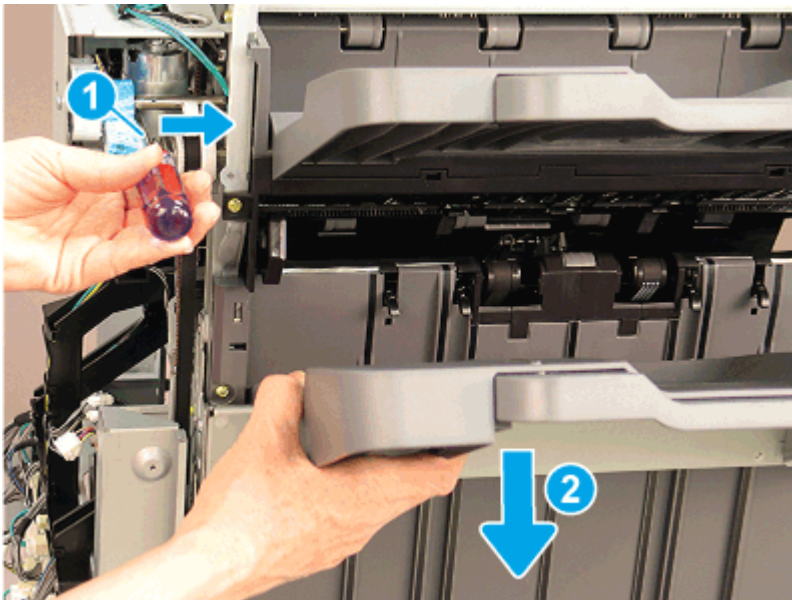


8. Remove the external finisher left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left upper cover.

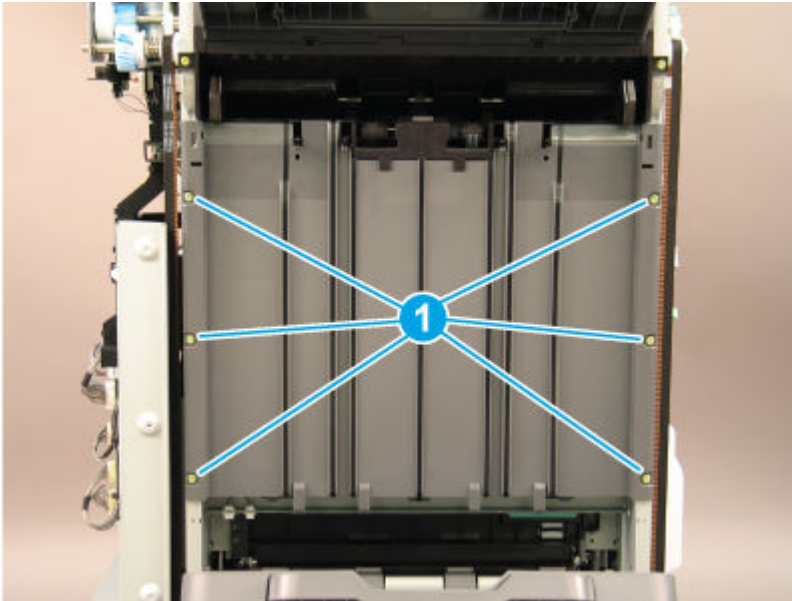
1. Bring the main output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 6-1902 Lower the tray



2. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-1903 Remove six screws

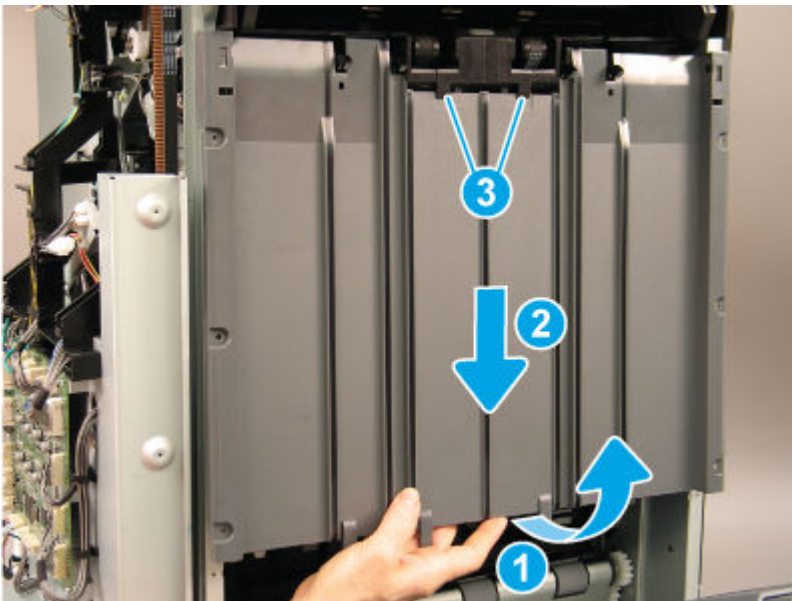


3. Rotate the lower edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

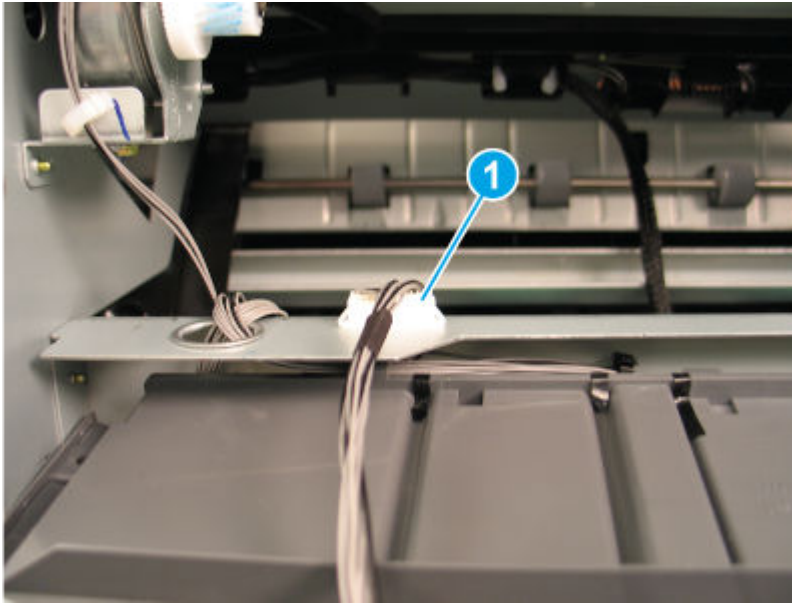
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-1904 Release the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the left upper cover.

Figure 6-1905 Remove the cover



9. Remove the external finisher ejector unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher ejector unit.

1. Remove three screws.


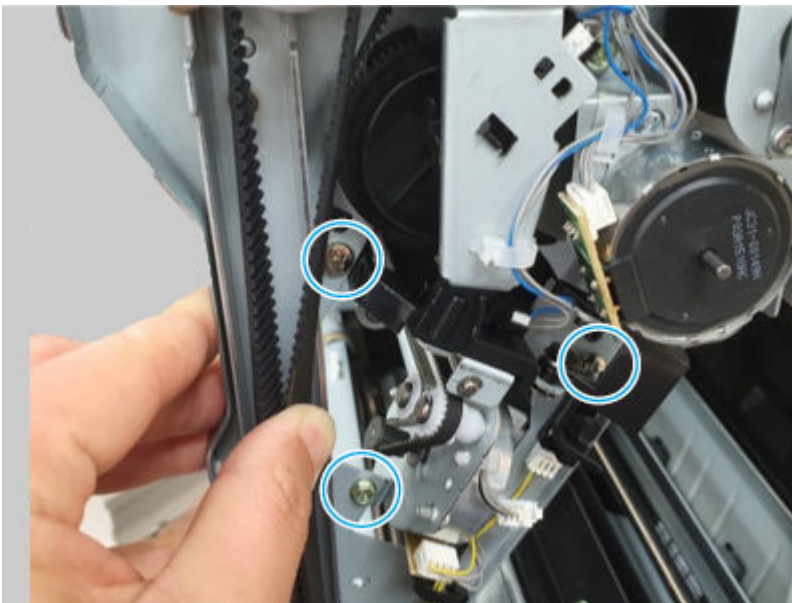
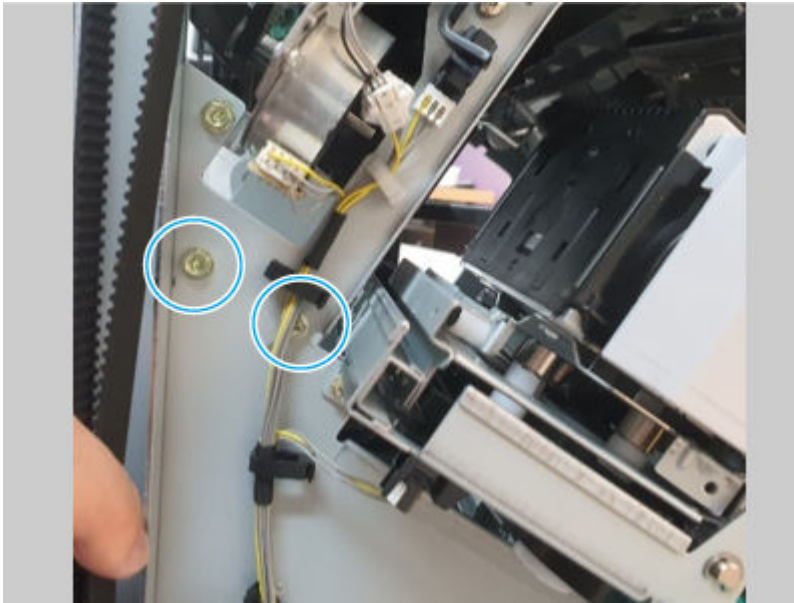
 **NOTE:** Removing these screws allows the front tamper to be moved out of the way when the ejector unit is removed.

Figure 6-1906 Release the tamper



2. Remove two screws (located below the front tamper).

Figure 6-1907 Remove two screws

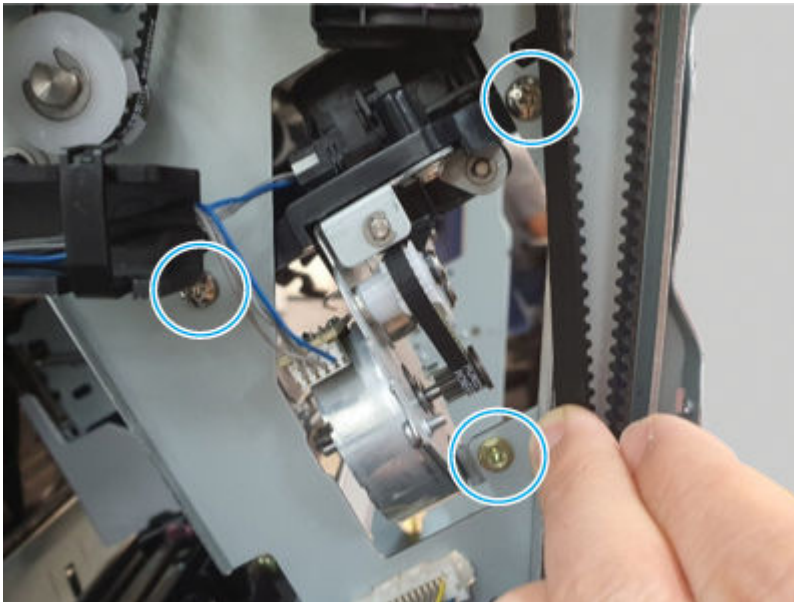


3. Remove three screws.



NOTE: Removing these screws allows the rear tamper to be moved out of the way when the ejector unit is removed.

Figure 6-1908 Release the tamper



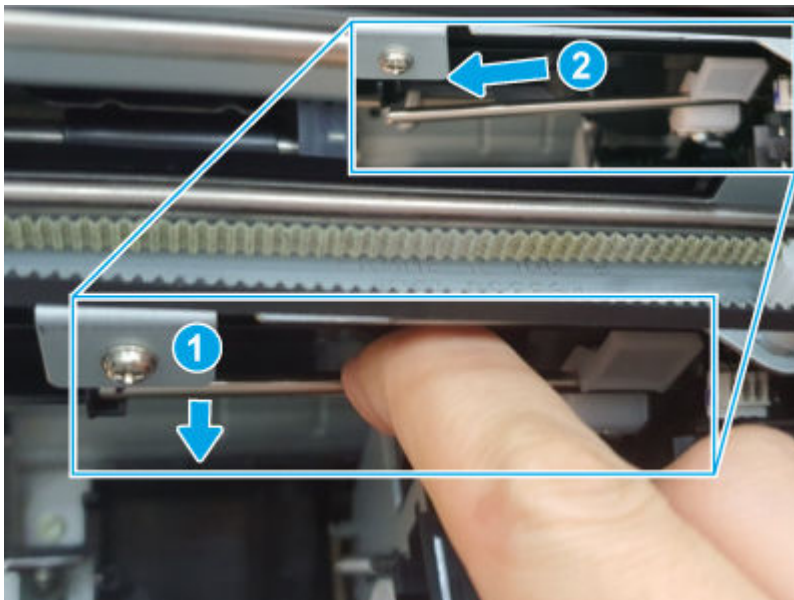
4. Remove two screws (located below the rear tamper).

Figure 6-1909 Remove two screws



5. Do the following:
 - a. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening.
 - b. Locate the shaft, pull down to release it (callout 1), and then slide it as shown below (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 6-1910 Remove the shaft



6. Remove two screws, and then remove the ejector unit.


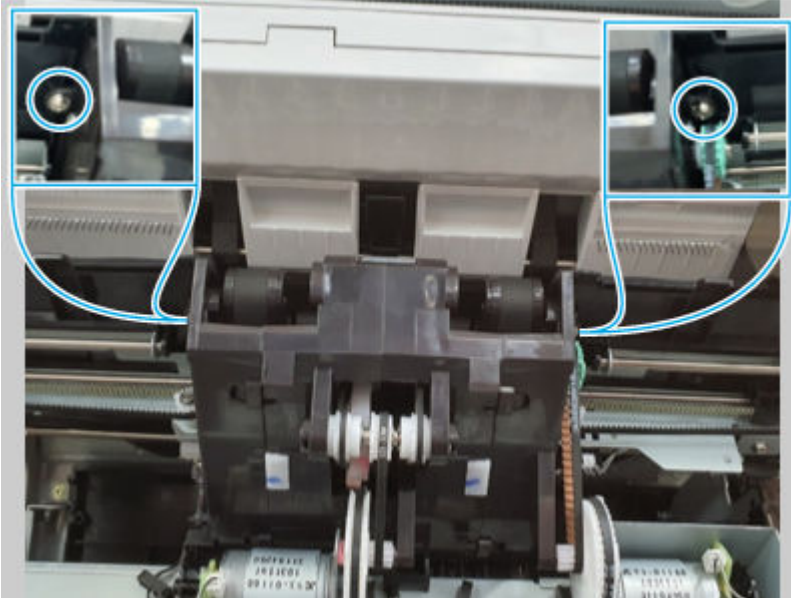
 **NOTE:** Slightly lift up on the tampers to give the ejector unit clearance when removing it..

Figure 6-1911 Remove the unit

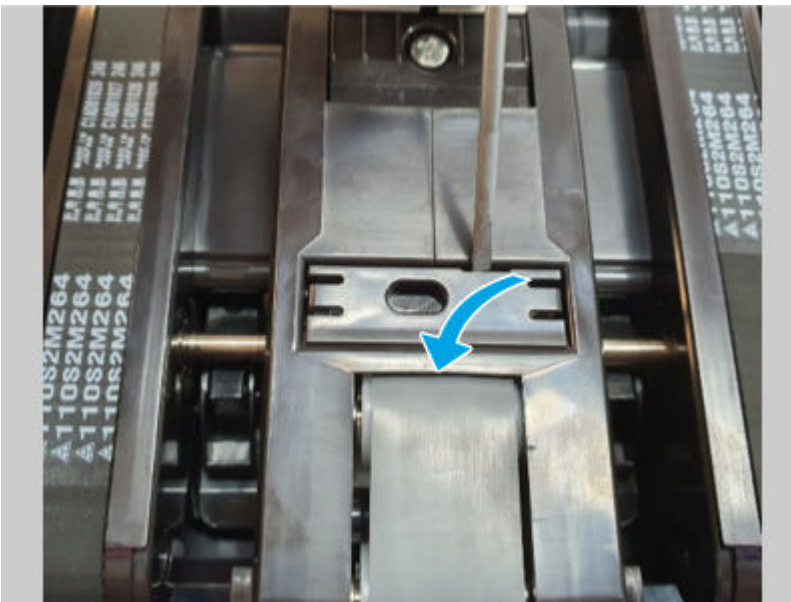


10. Remove the external finisher ejector sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher ejector sensor.

1. Remove the ejector sensor cover.

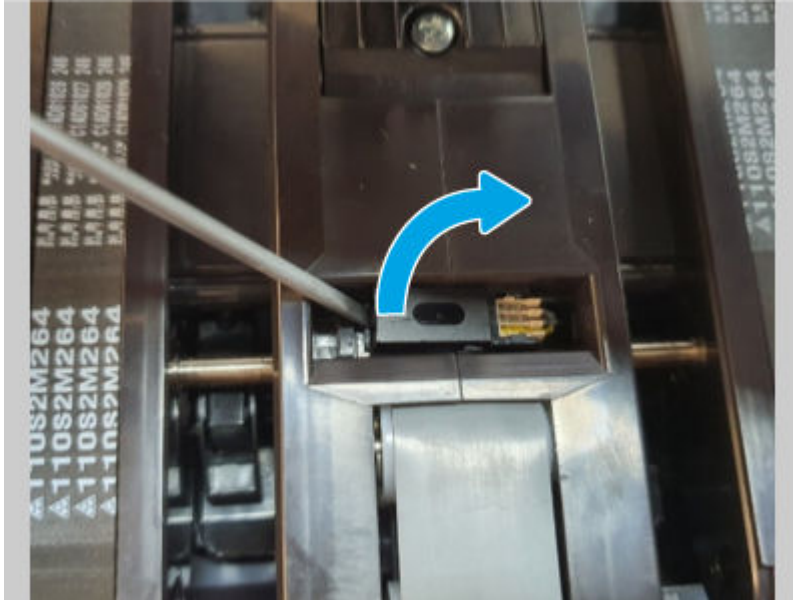
Figure 6-1912 Release the cover



2. Carefully separate the ejector sensor from the ejector unit.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the sensor. It is still attached to the ejector unit by a wire harness.

Figure 6-1913 Release the sensor



3. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the ejector sensor.

Figure 6-1914 Remove the sensor



11. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Ejector 1 home sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher ejector 1 home sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-271 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001415	Photo interrupter (Ejector 1 home sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

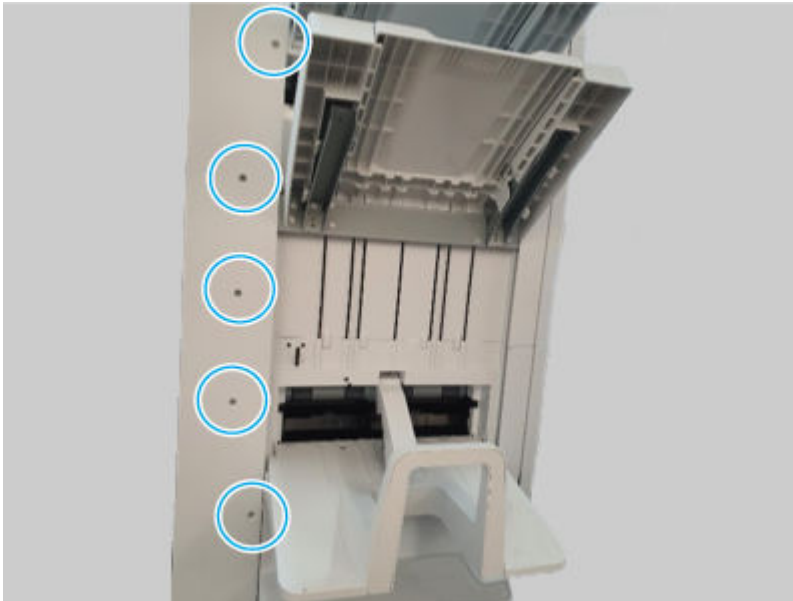
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1915 Remove five screws

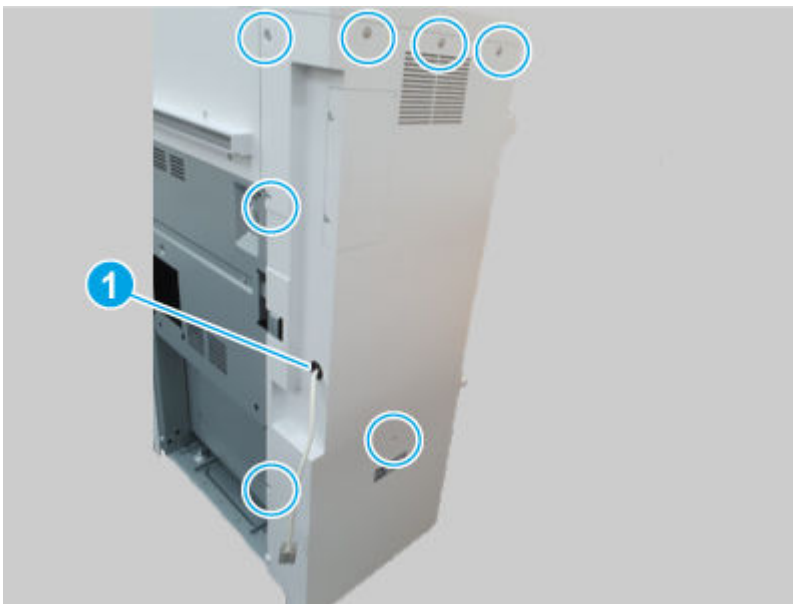


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1916 Remove the cover

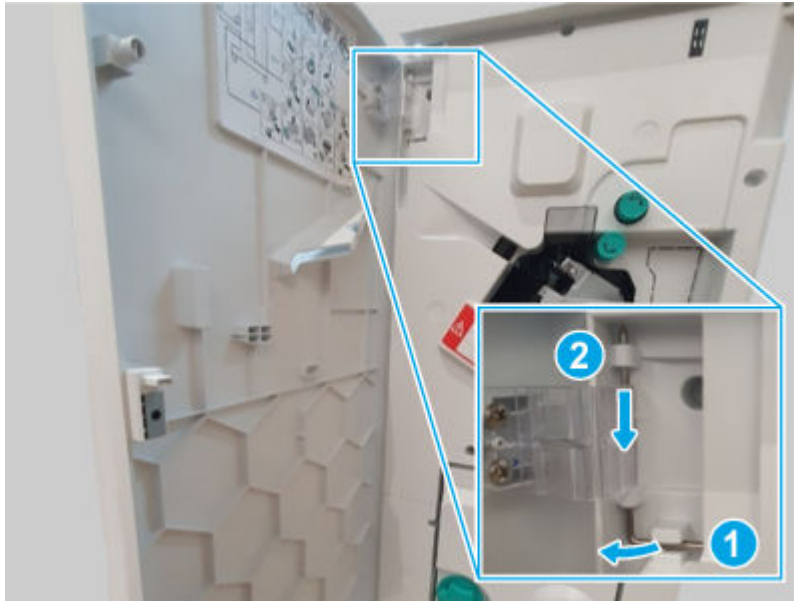


2 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

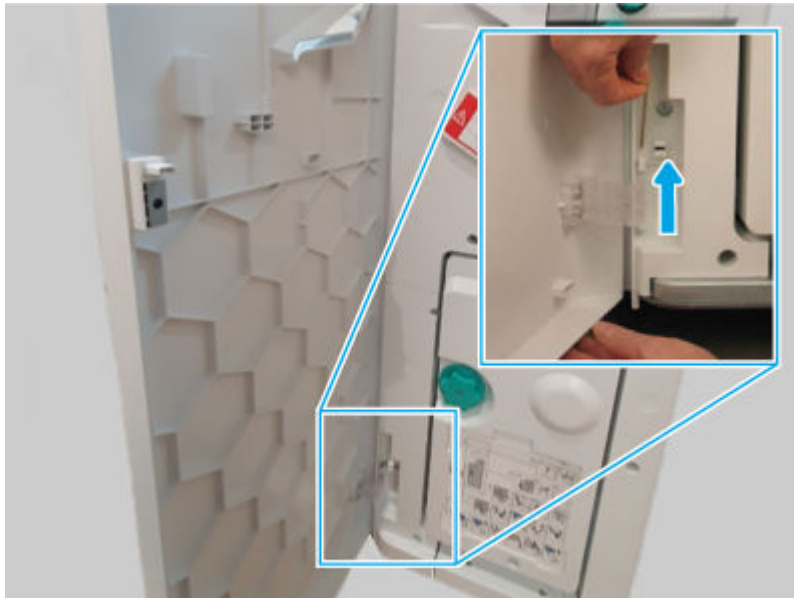
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1917 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1918 Remove the door



3 Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1919 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1920 Remove the cover

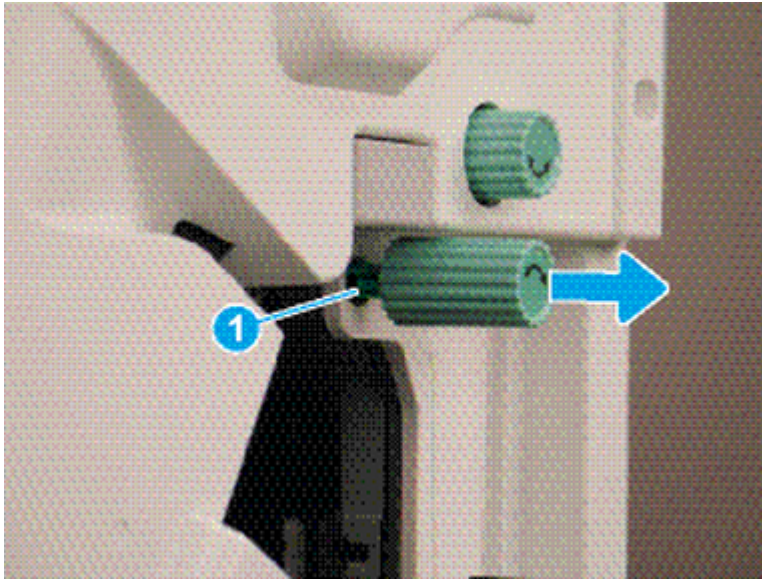


4 Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1921 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1922 Remove the cover



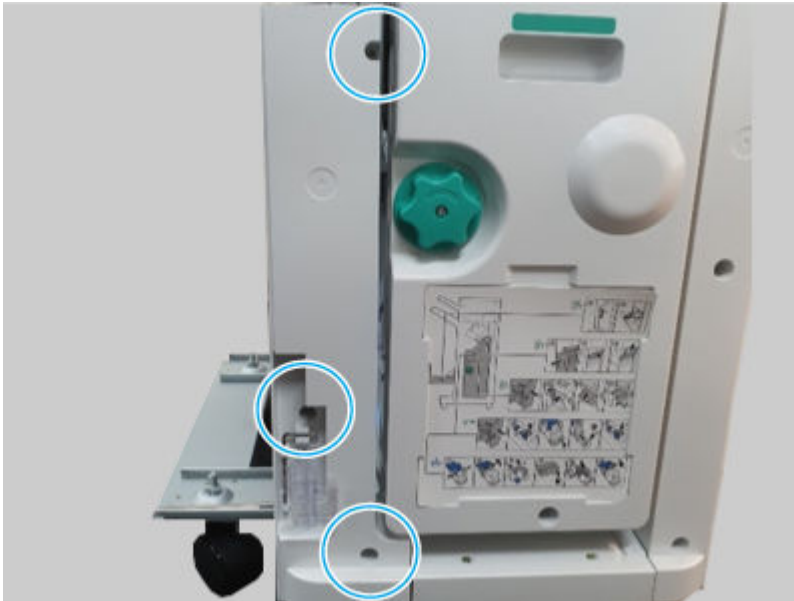
5 Remove the external finisher front lower left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front lower left cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.

2. Remove three screws, and then remove the front lower left cover.

Figure 6-1923 Remove the cover



6 Remove the external finisher caster

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher caster.

⚠ WARNING! The external finisher is not stable when one or more casters are removed and can easily tip over. To avoid personal injury or damage to the finisher, make sure to fully support the finisher when removing a caster.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.
2. Remove one fix nut.

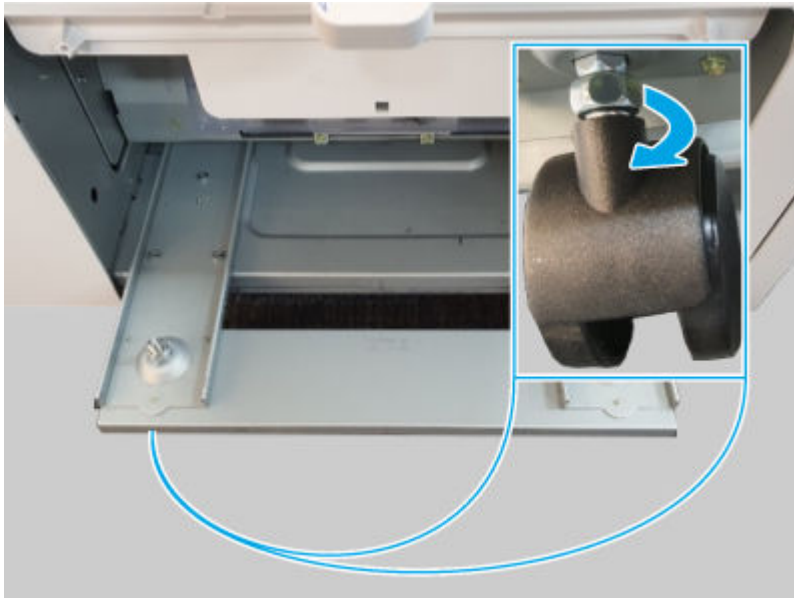
🔧 NOTE: Use a 12mm spanner wrench to remove the nut.

Figure 6-1924 Remove the nut



3. Rotate the caster as shown below to remove it. Repeat these steps for the remaining casters as needed.

Figure 6-1925 Remove the caster

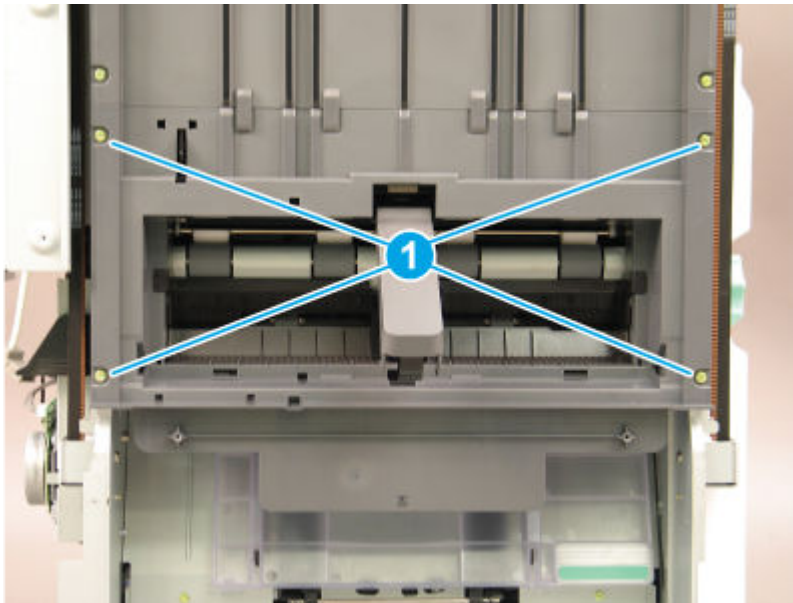


7 Remove the external finisher left lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left lower cover.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-1926 Remove four screws

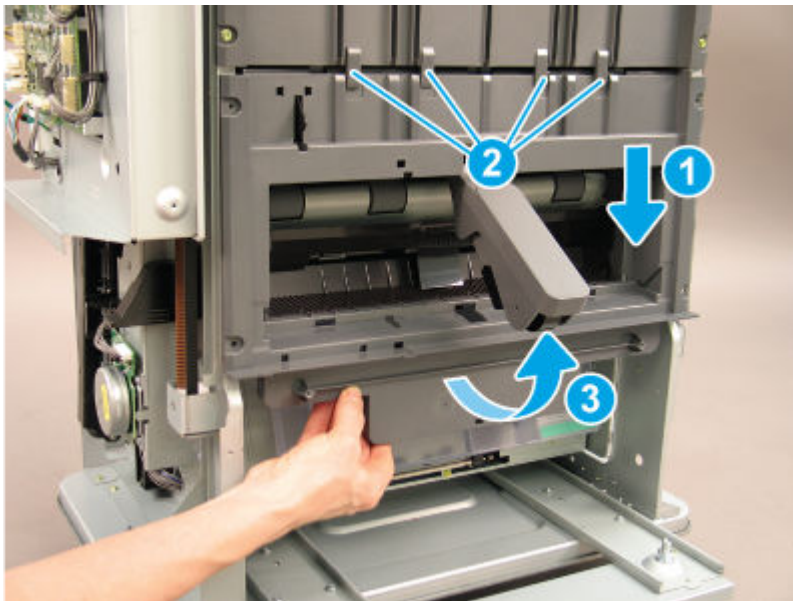


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

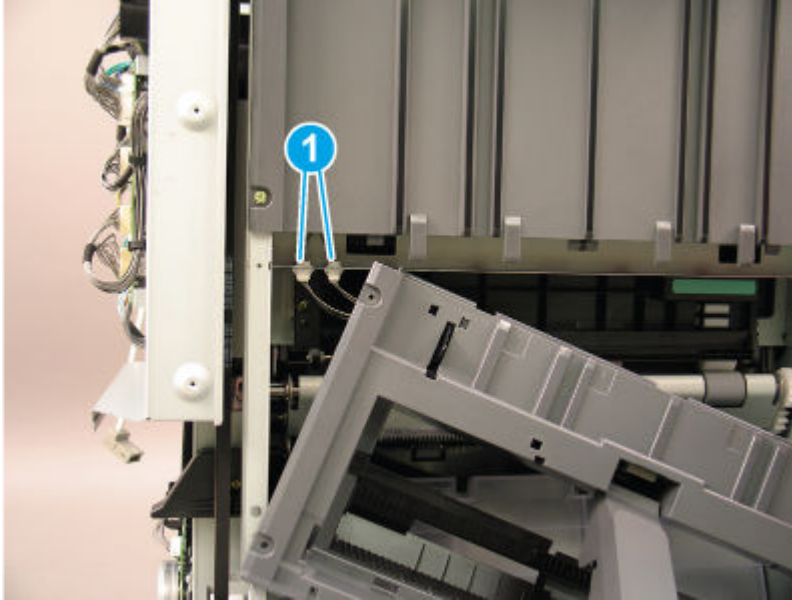
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-1927 Release the cover



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the left lower cover.

Figure 6-1928 Remove the cover

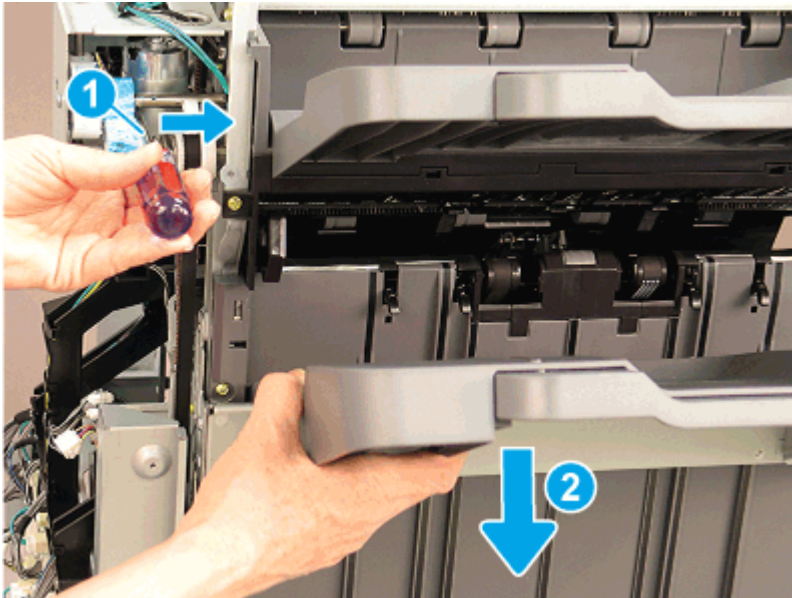


8 Remove the external finisher left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left upper cover.

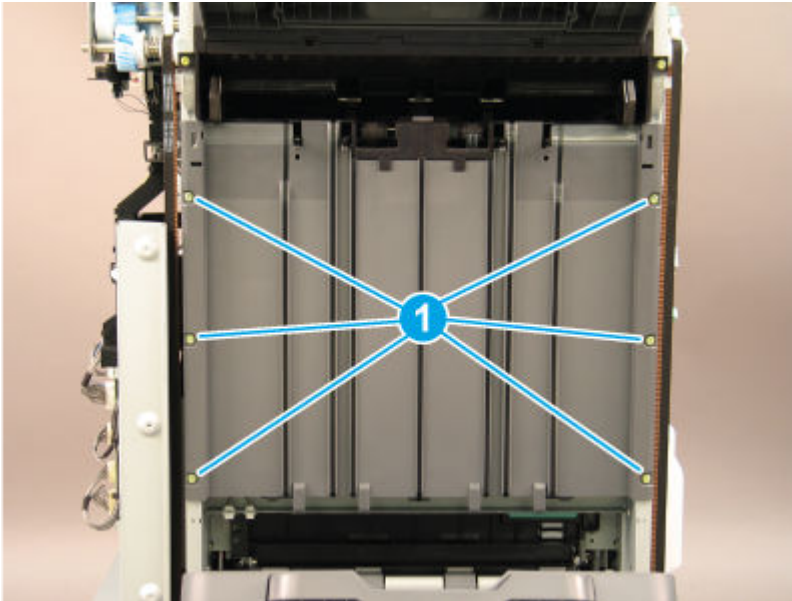
1. Bring the main output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 6-1929 Lower the tray



2. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-1930 Remove six screws

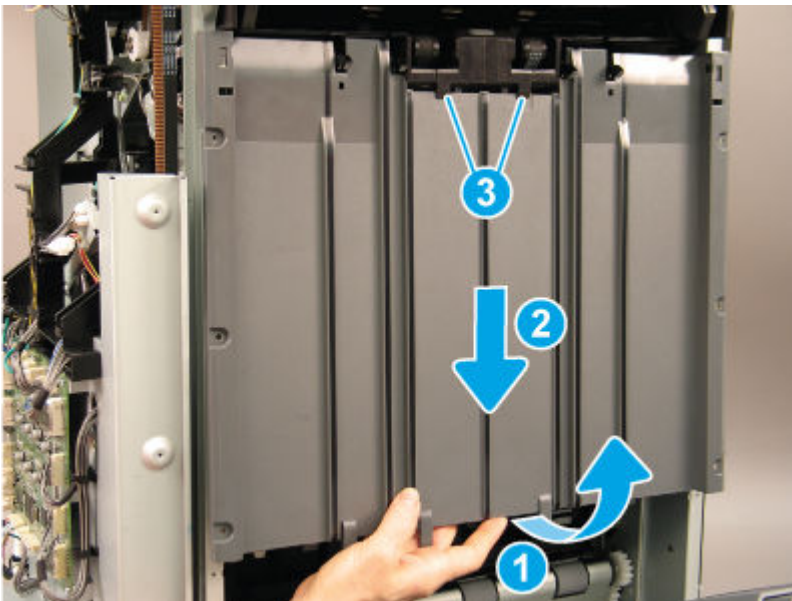


3. Rotate the lower edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

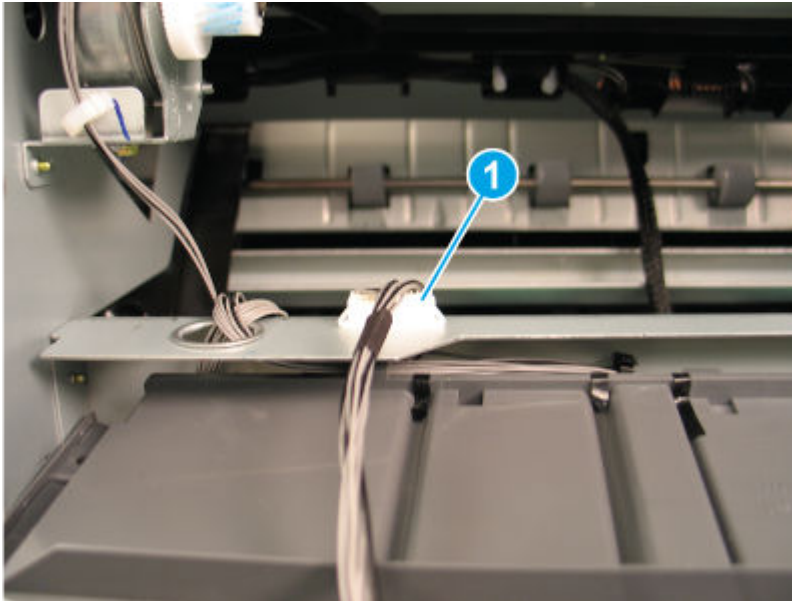
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-1931 Release the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the left upper cover.

Figure 6-1932 Remove the cover



9 Remove the external finisher ejector unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher ejector unit.

1. Remove three screws.


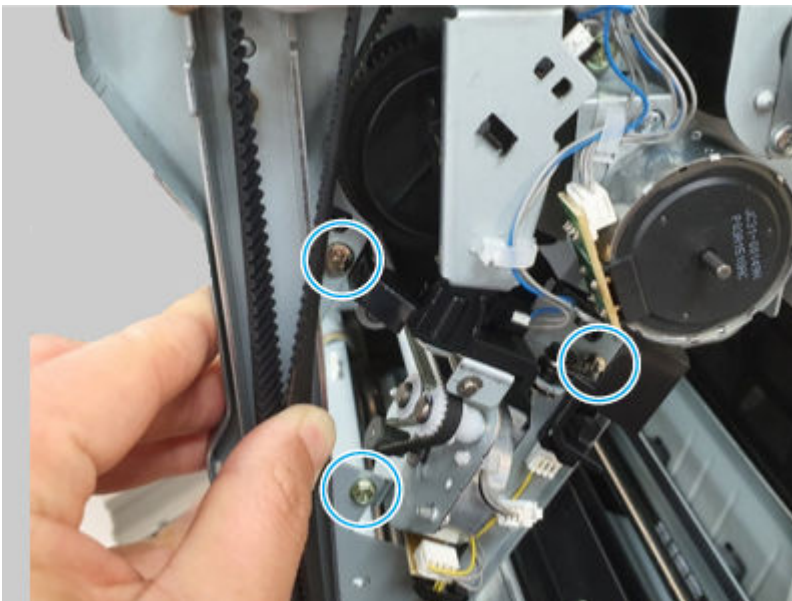
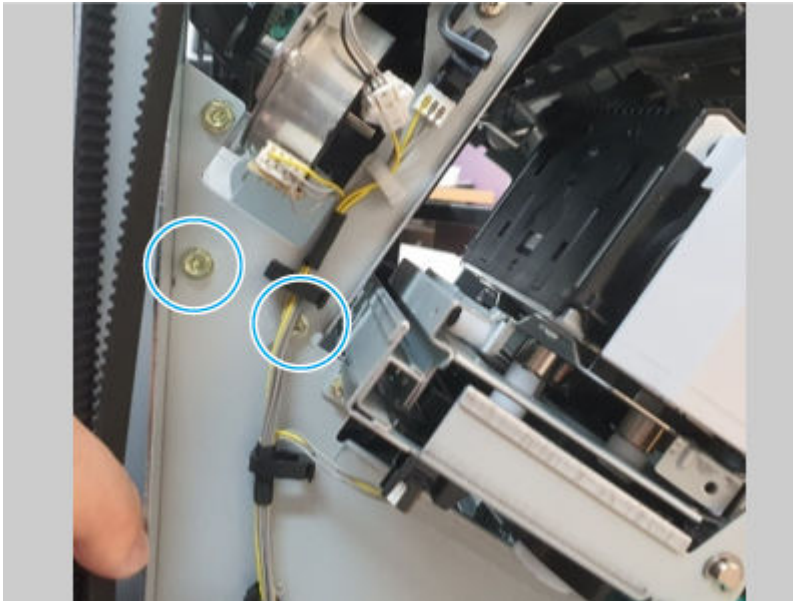
 **NOTE:** Removing these screws allows the front tamper to be moved out of the way when the ejector unit is removed.

Figure 6-1933 Release the tamper



2. Remove two screws (located below the front tamper).

Figure 6-1934 Remove two screws

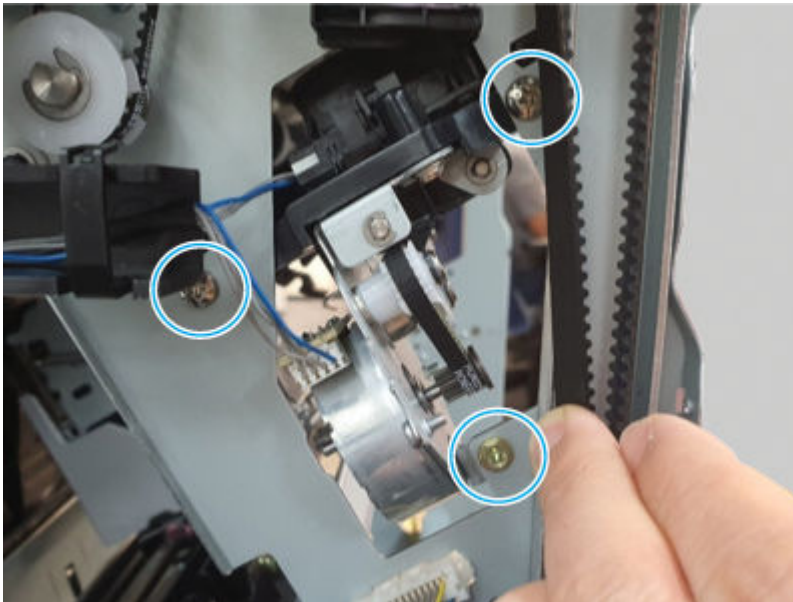


3. Remove three screws.



NOTE: Removing these screws allows the rear tamper to be moved out of the way when the ejector unit is removed.

Figure 6-1935 Release the tamper



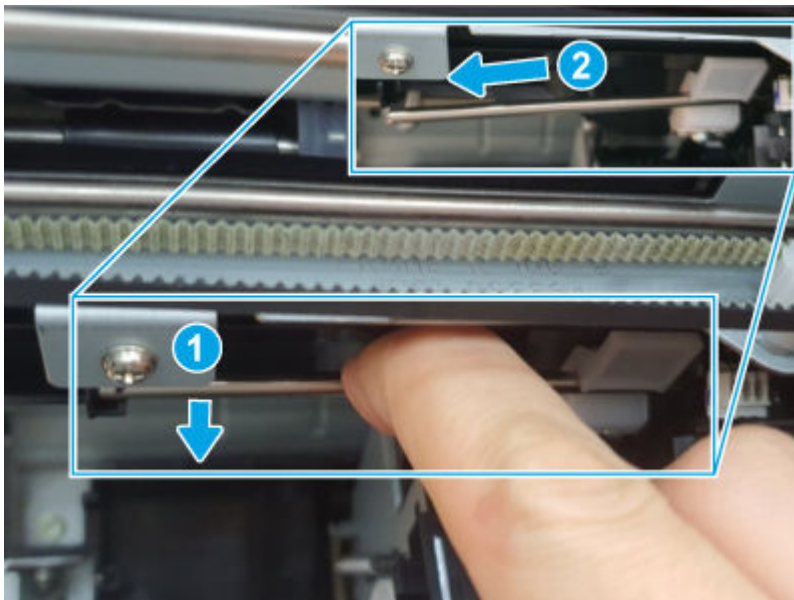
4. Remove two screws (located below the rear tamper).

Figure 6-1936 Remove two screws



5. Do the following:
 - a. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening.
 - b. Locate the shaft, pull down to release it (callout 1), and then slide it as shown below (callout 2) to remove it.

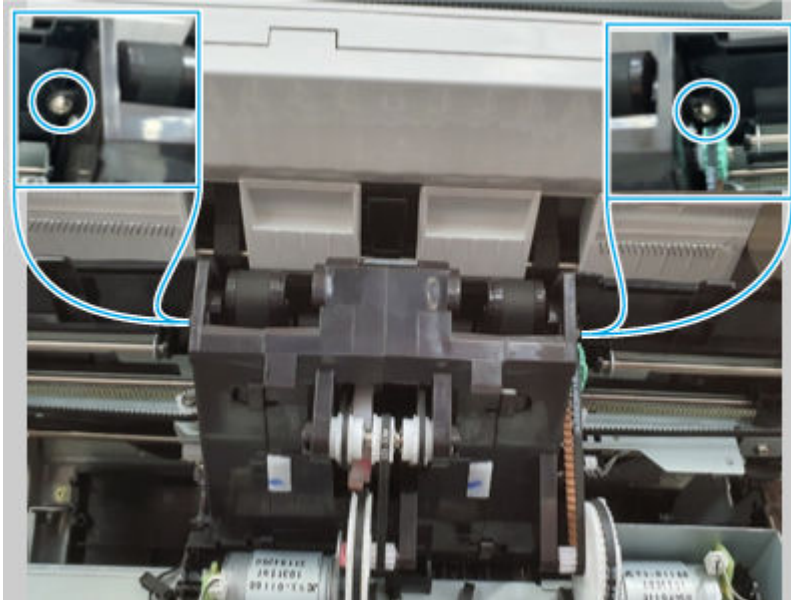
Figure 6-1937 Remove the shaft



6. Remove two screws, and then remove the ejector unit.

 **NOTE:** Slightly lift up on the tampers to give the ejector unit clearance when removing it..

Figure 6-1938 Remove the unit

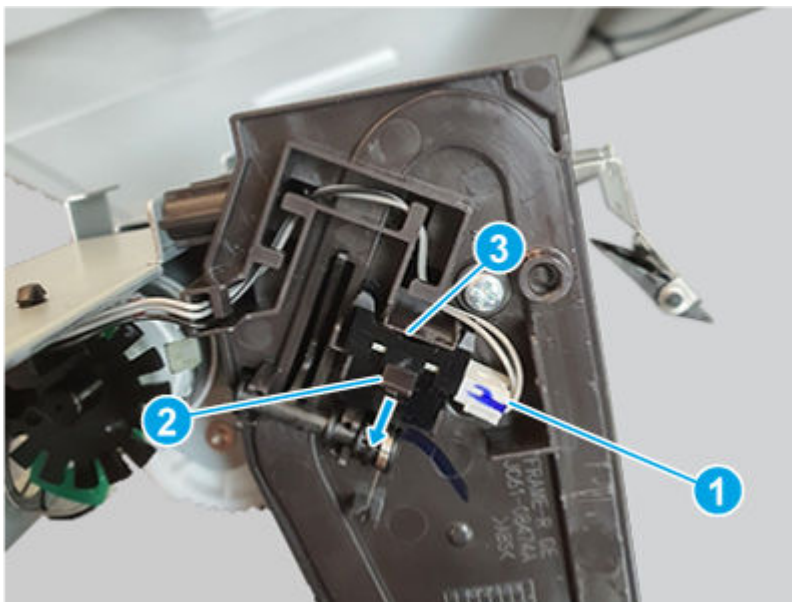


10 Remove the external finisher ejector 1 home sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher ejector 1 home sensor.

- Do the following:
 - a. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).
 - b. Release the hook (callout 2).
 - c. Remove the ejector 1 home sensor (callout 3).

Figure 6-1939 Remove the sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Ejector 1 motor sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher ejector 1 motor sensor.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-272 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001415	Photo interrupter (Ejector 1 motor sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

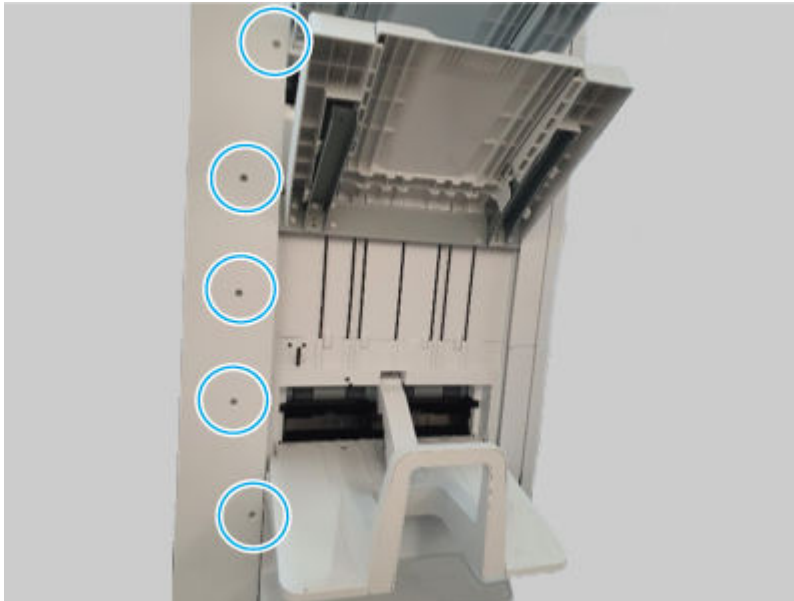
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1940 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


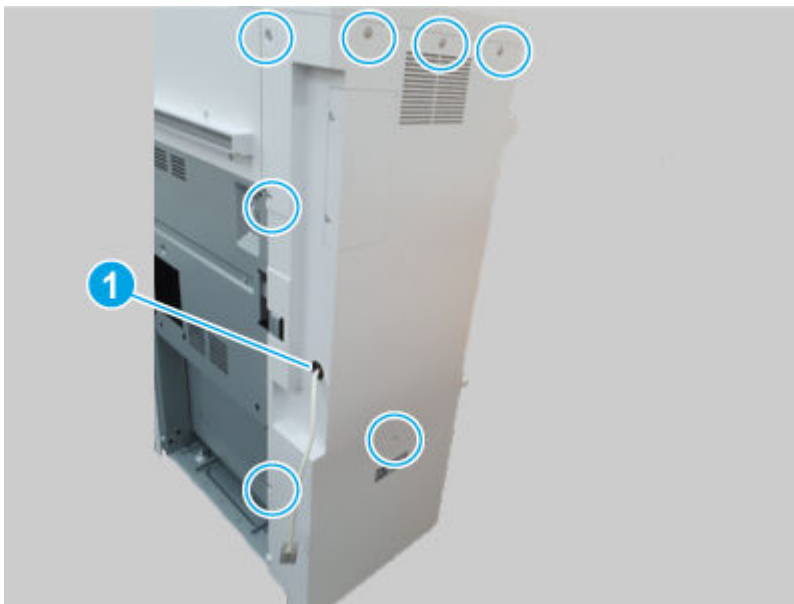
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1941 Remove the cover

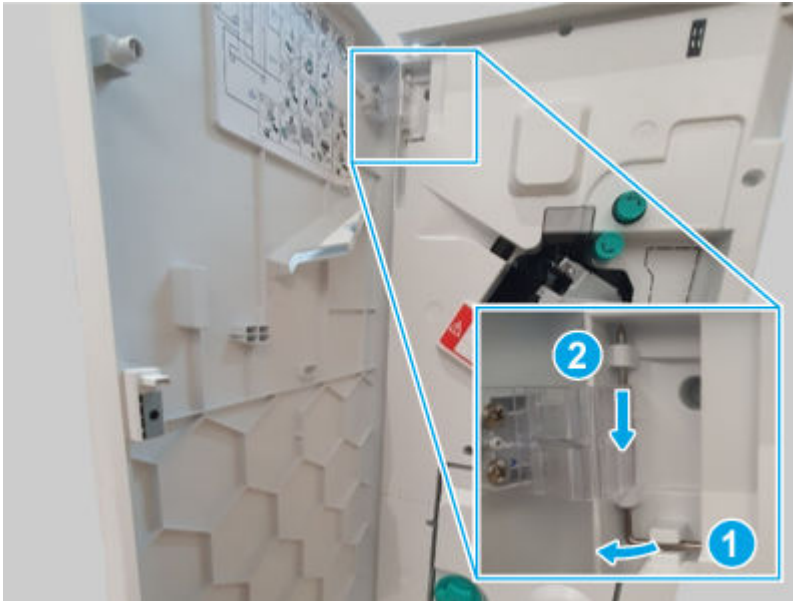


2 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

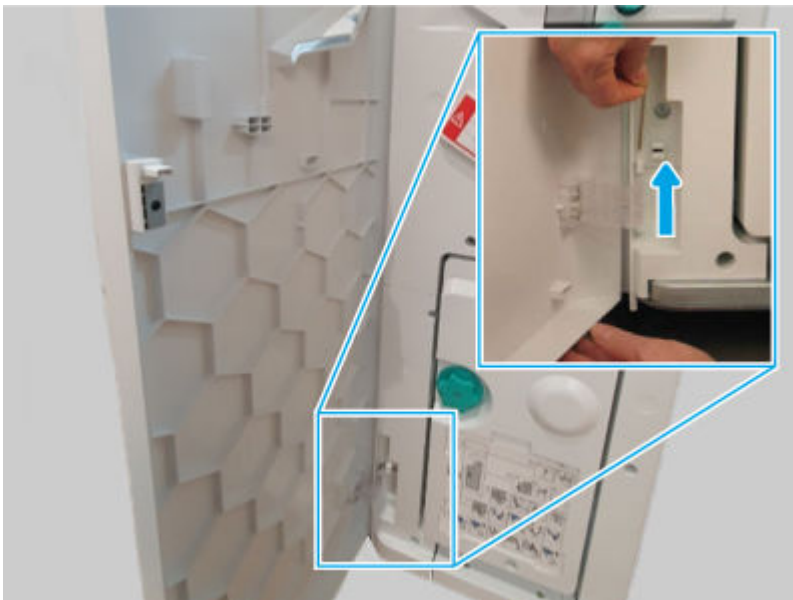
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1942 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1943 Remove the door



3 Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

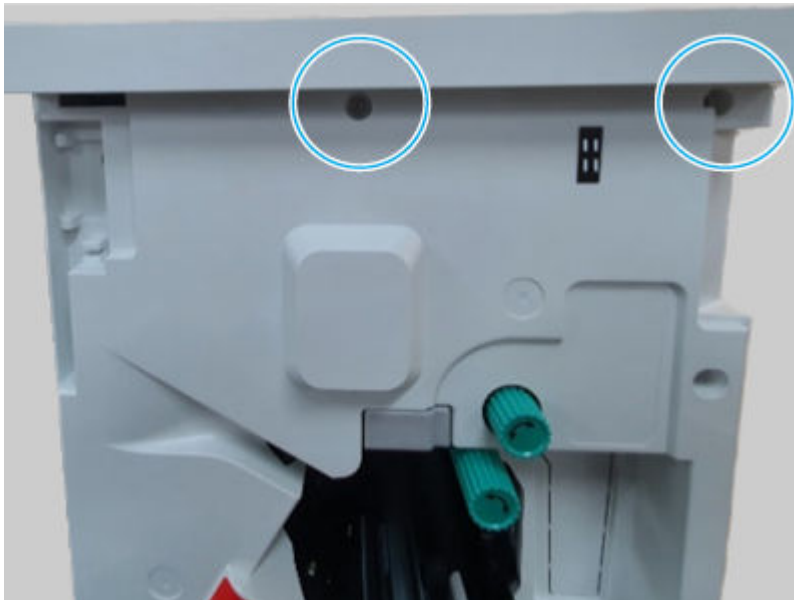
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1944 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1945 Remove the cover

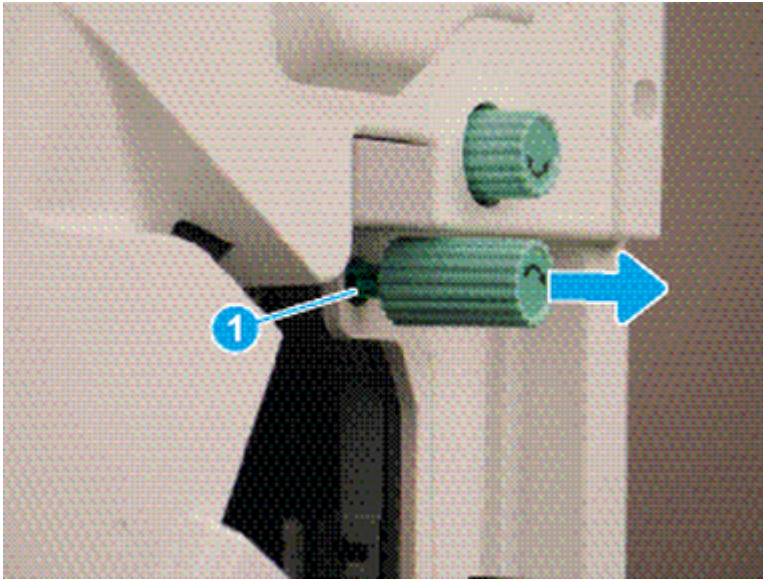


4 Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1946 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1947 Remove the cover



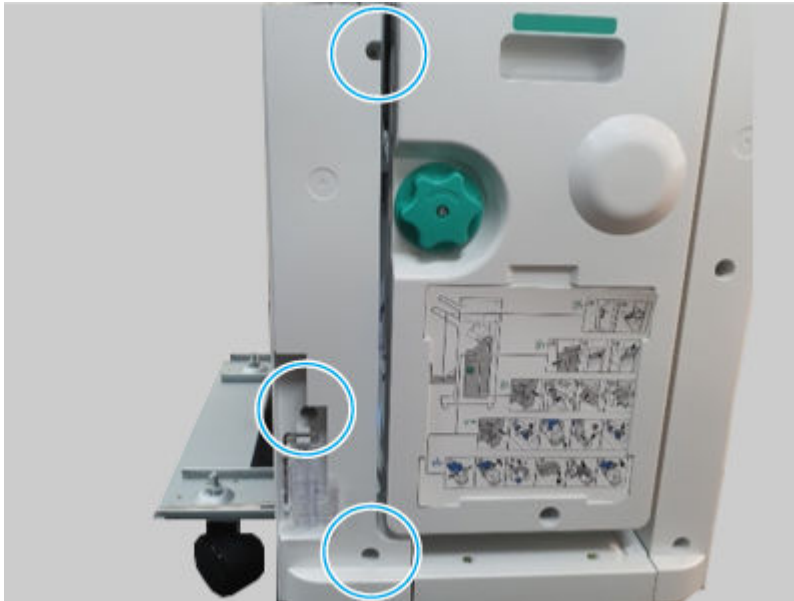
5 Remove the external finisher front lower left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front lower left cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.

2. Remove three screws, and then remove the front lower left cover.

Figure 6-1948 Remove the cover



6 Remove the external finisher caster

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher caster.

⚠ WARNING! The external finisher is not stable when one or more casters are removed and can easily tip over. To avoid personal injury or damage to the finisher, make sure to fully support the finisher when removing a caster.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.
2. Remove one fix nut.

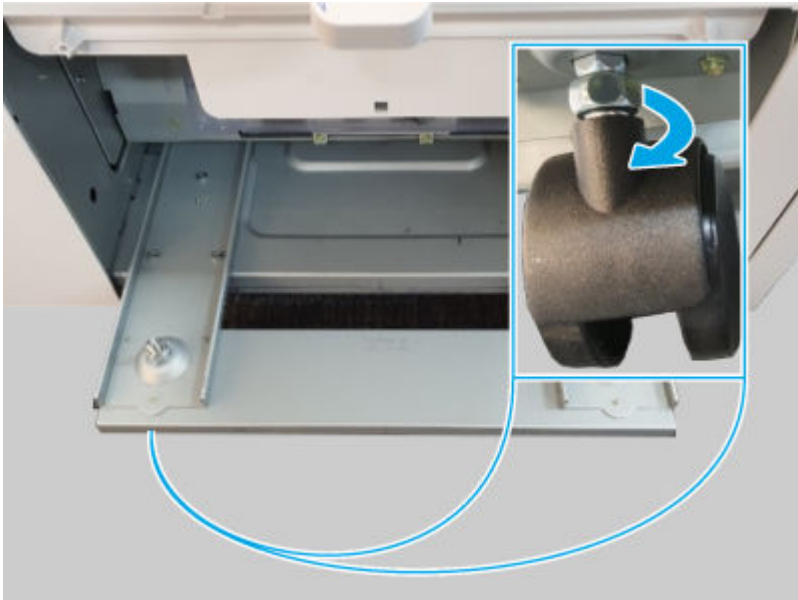
🔧 NOTE: Use a 12mm spanner wrench to remove the nut.

Figure 6-1949 Remove the nut



3. Rotate the caster as shown below to remove it. Repeat these steps for the remaining casters as needed.

Figure 6-1950 Remove the caster

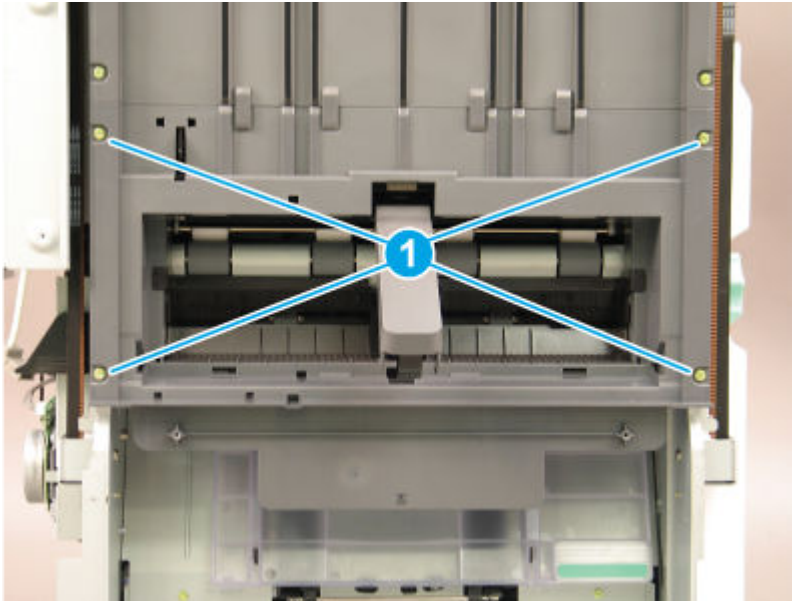


7 Remove the external finisher left lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left lower cover.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-1951 Remove four screws

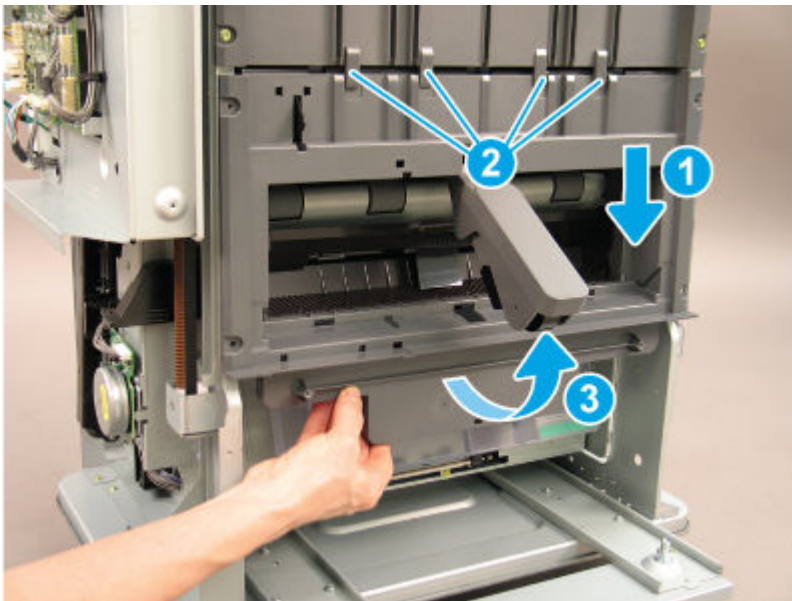


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

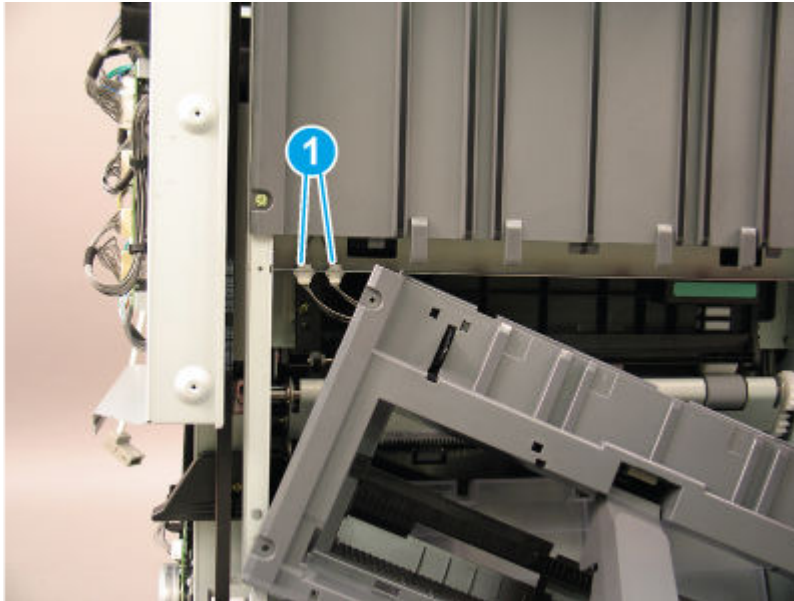
Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-1952 Release the cover



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the left lower cover.

Figure 6-1953 Remove the cover

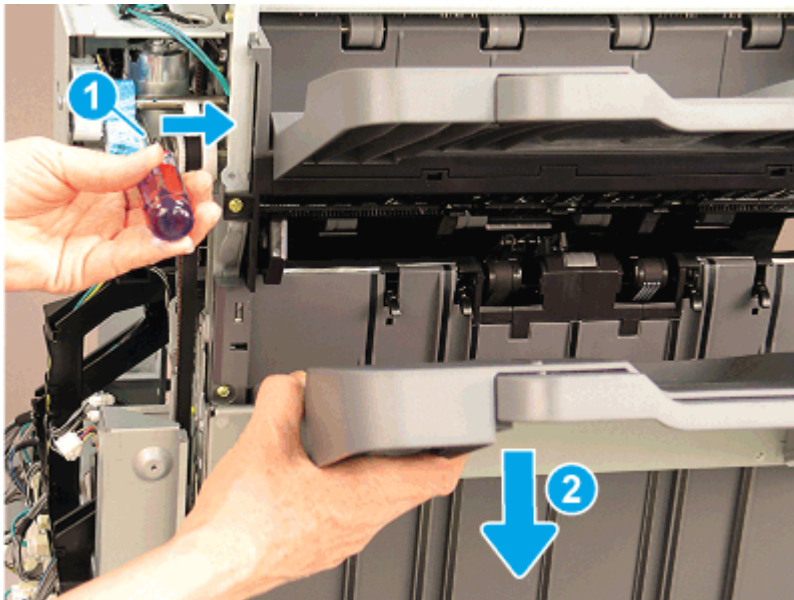


8 Remove the external finisher left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left upper cover.

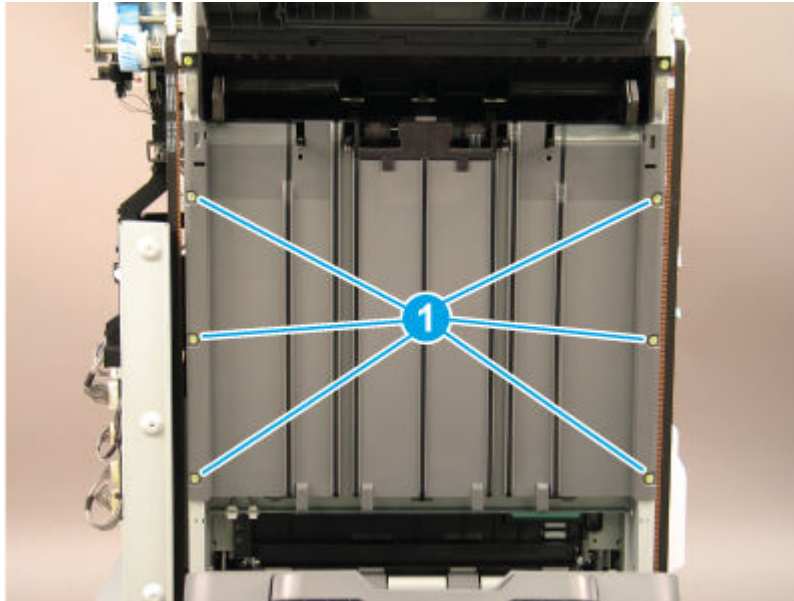
1. Bring the main output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 6-1954 Lower the tray



2. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-1955 Remove six screws

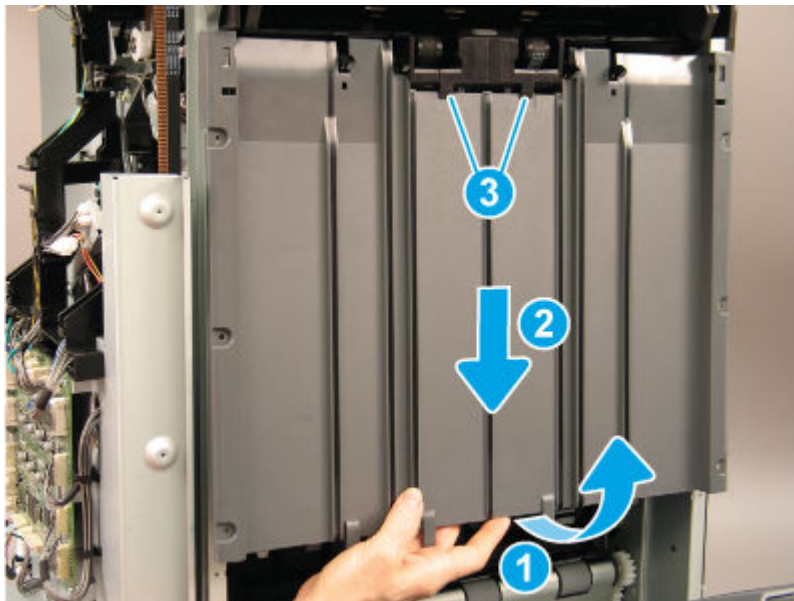


3. Rotate the lower edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

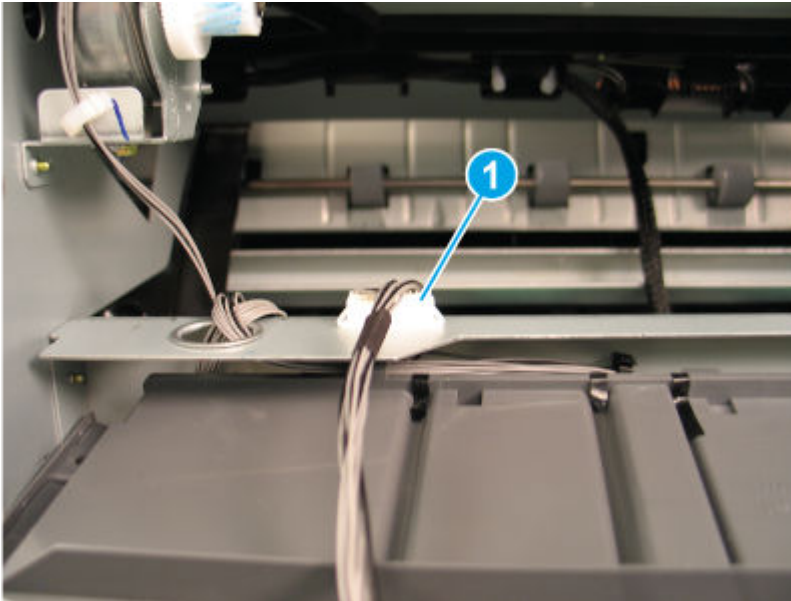
Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-1956 Release the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the left upper cover.

Figure 6-1957 Remove the cover



9 Remove the external finisher ejector unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher ejector unit.

1. Remove three screws.


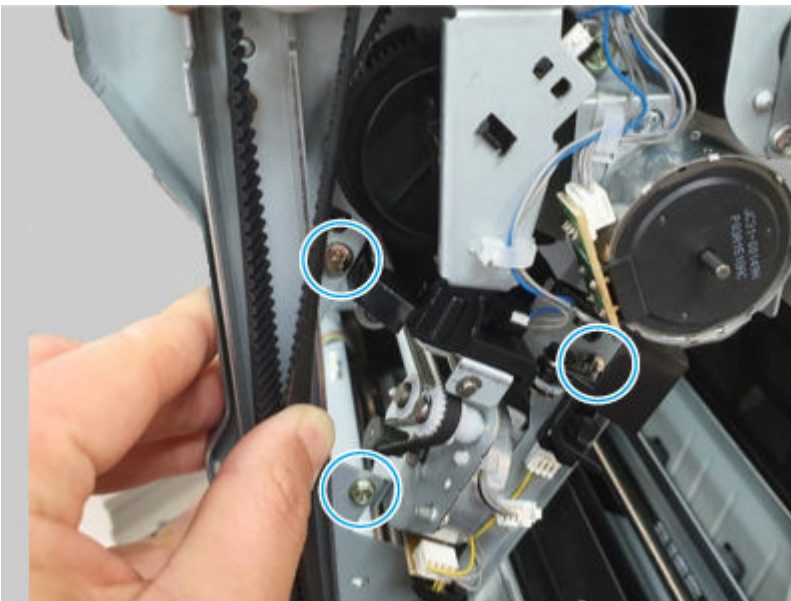
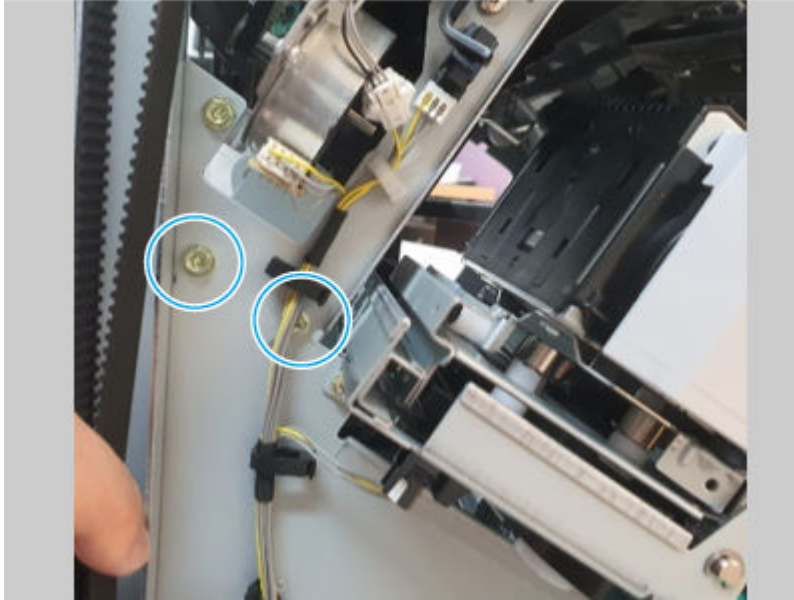
 **NOTE:** Removing these screws allows the front tamper to be moved out of the way when the ejector unit is removed.

Figure 6-1958 Release the tamper



2. Remove two screws (located below the front tamper).

Figure 6-1959 Remove two screws

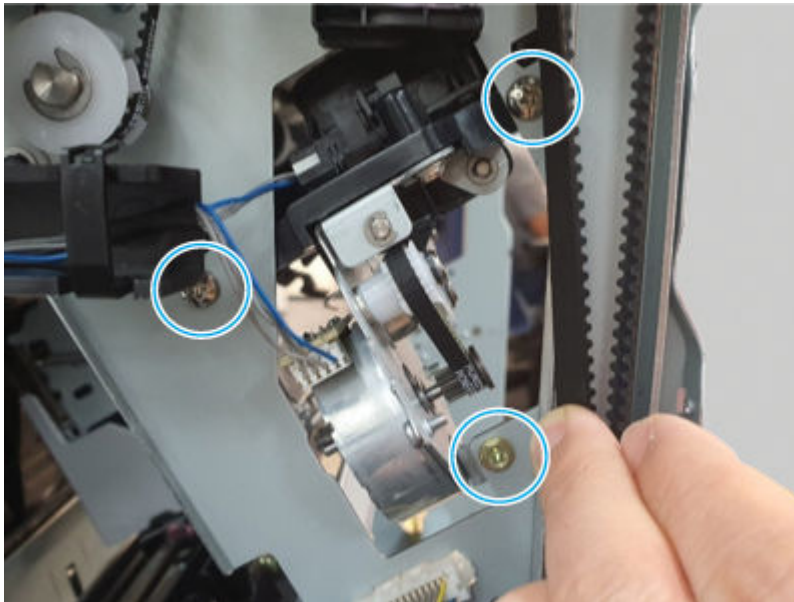


3. Remove three screws.



NOTE: Removing these screws allows the rear tamper to be moved out of the way when the ejector unit is removed.

Figure 6-1960 Release the tamper



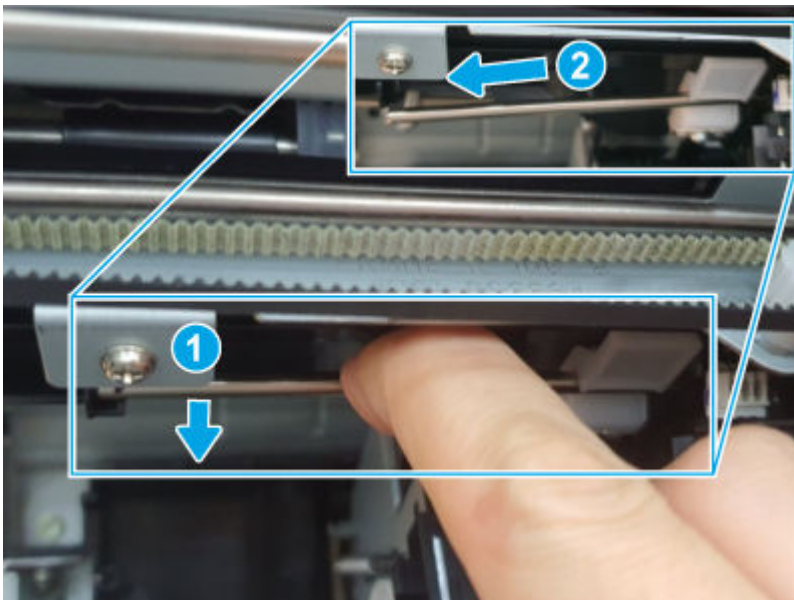
4. Remove two screws (located below the rear tamper).

Figure 6-1961 Remove two screws



5. Do the following:
 - a. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening.
 - b. Locate the shaft, pull down to release it (callout 1), and then slide it as shown below (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 6-1962 Remove the shaft

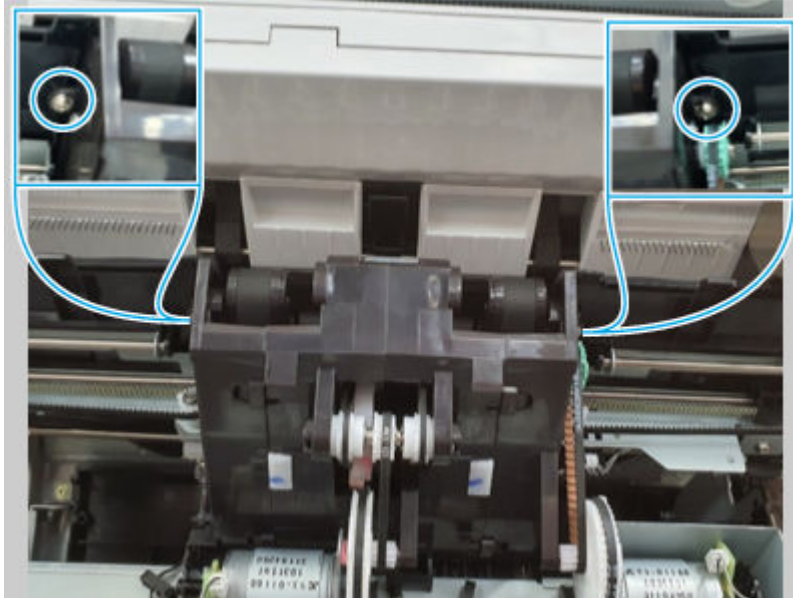


6. Remove two screws, and then remove the ejector unit.



NOTE: Slightly lift up on the tampers to give the ejector unit clearance when removing it..

Figure 6-1963 Remove the unit

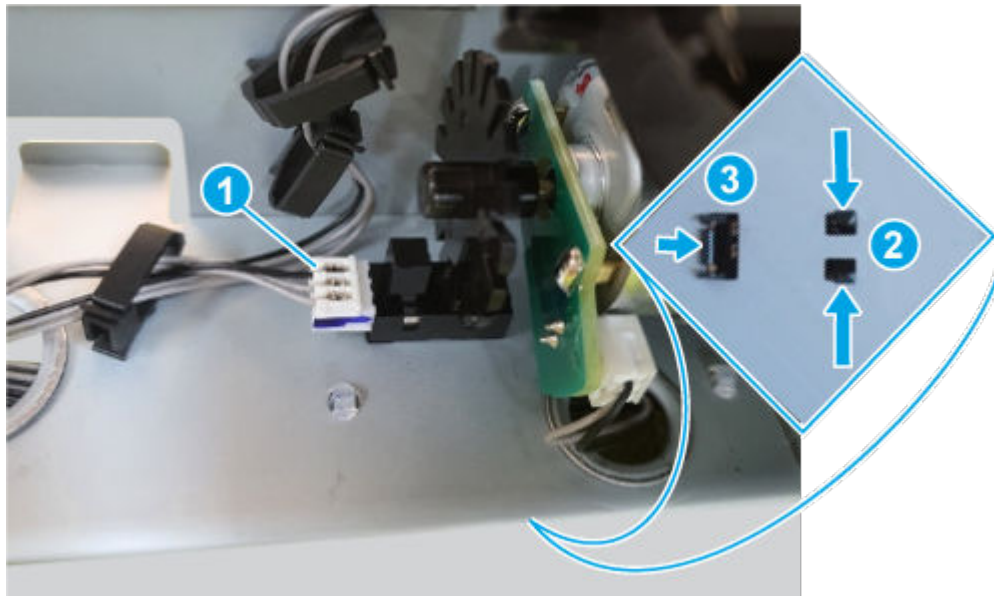


10 Remove the external finisher ejector 1 motor sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher ejector 1 motor sensor.

- Do the following:
 - a. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).
 - b. Release the hooks (callout 2).
 - c. Slide the sensor as shown below (callout 3)
 - d. Remove the ejector 1 motor sensor.

Figure 6-1964 Remove the sensor



11 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Ejector 2 motor sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher ejector 2 motor sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-273 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001415	Photo interrupter (Ejector 2 motor sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

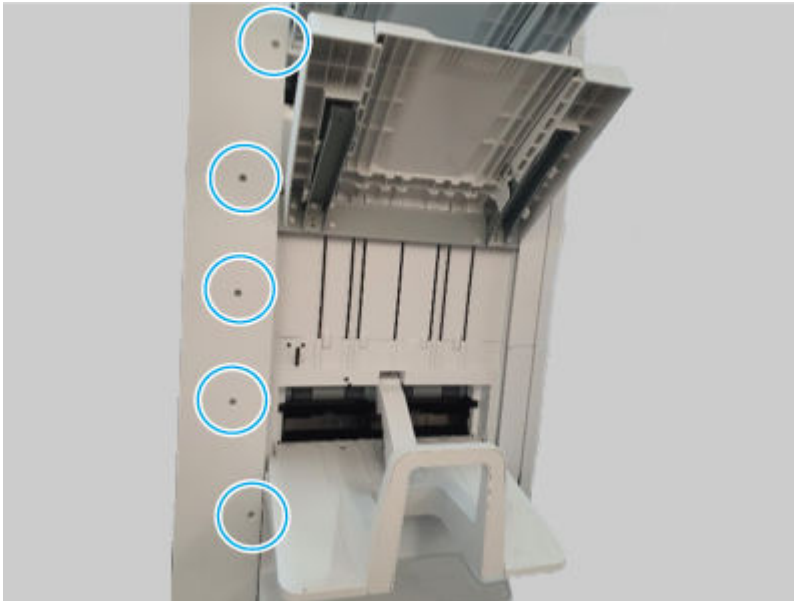
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1965 Remove five screws

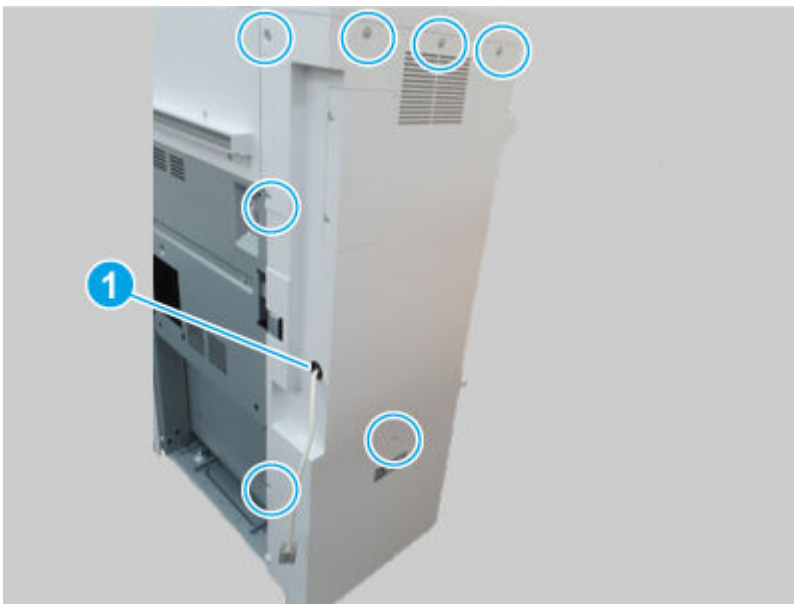


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1966 Remove the cover

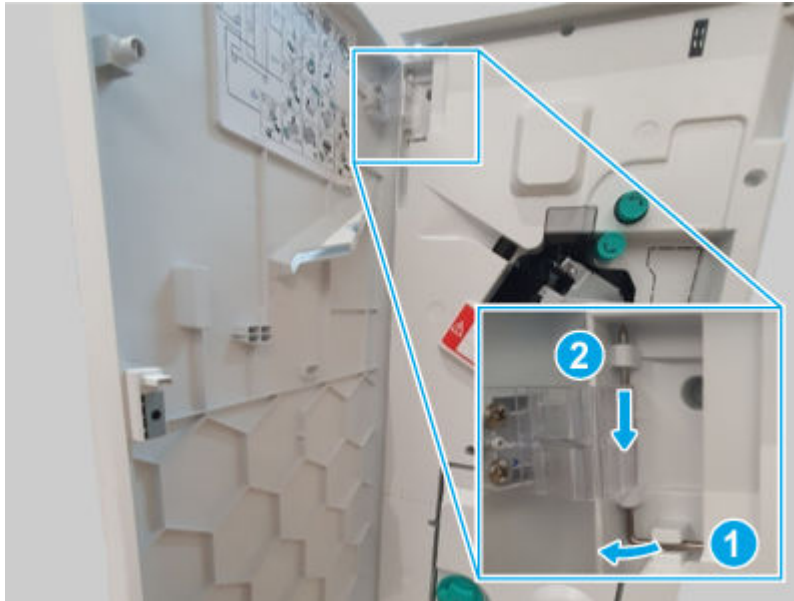


2 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

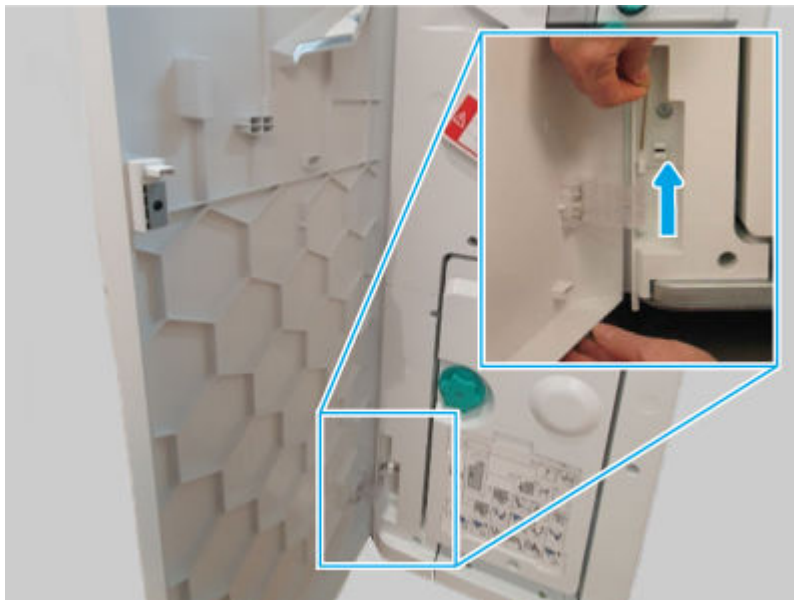
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1967 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1968 Remove the door



3 Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

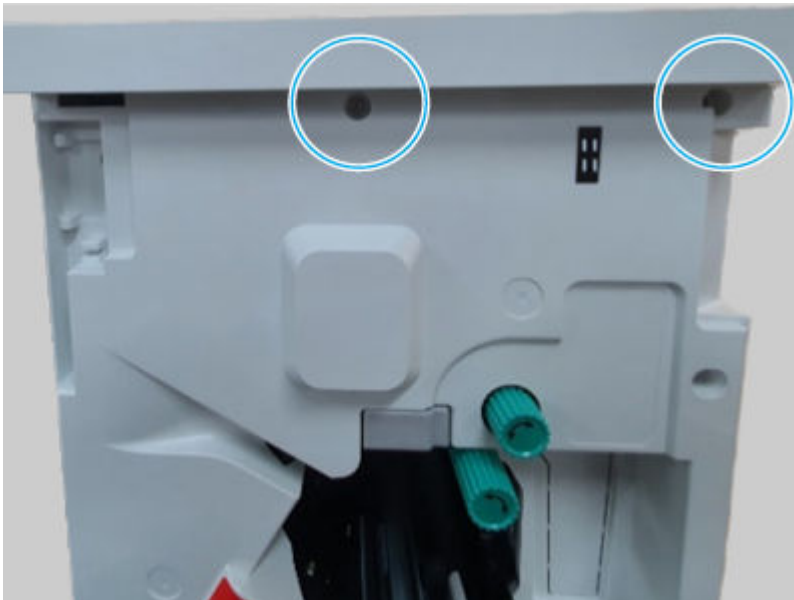
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1969 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1970 Remove the cover

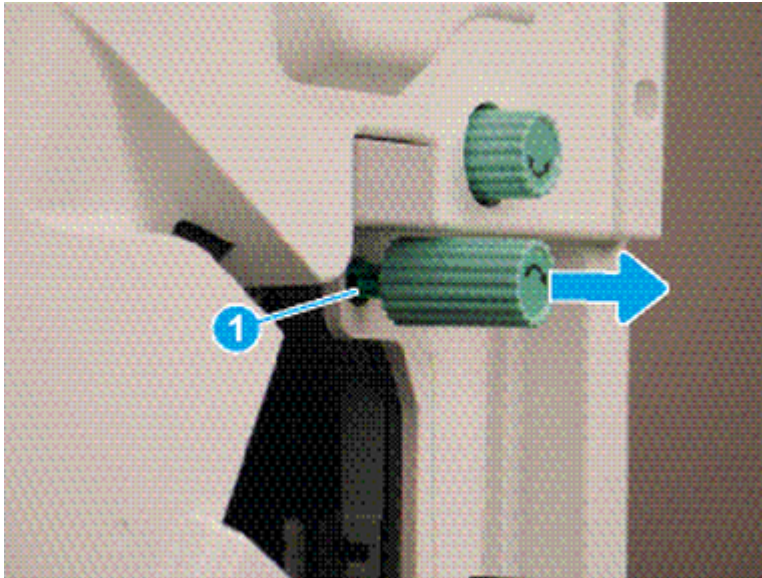


4 Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1971 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1972 Remove the cover



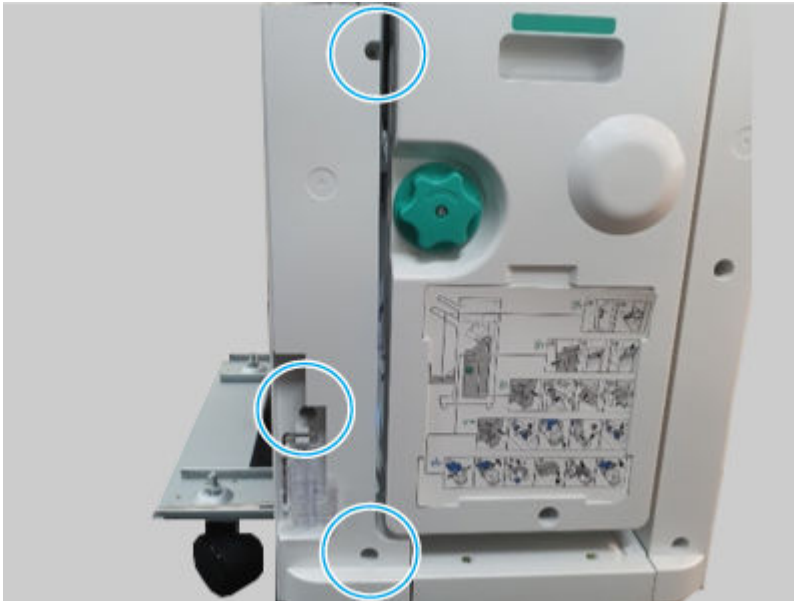
5 Remove the external finisher front lower left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front lower left cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.

2. Remove three screws, and then remove the front lower left cover.

Figure 6-1973 Remove the cover



6 Remove the external finisher caster

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher caster.

⚠ WARNING! The external finisher is not stable when one or more casters are removed and can easily tip over. To avoid personal injury or damage to the finisher, make sure to fully support the finisher when removing a caster.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.
2. Remove one fix nut.

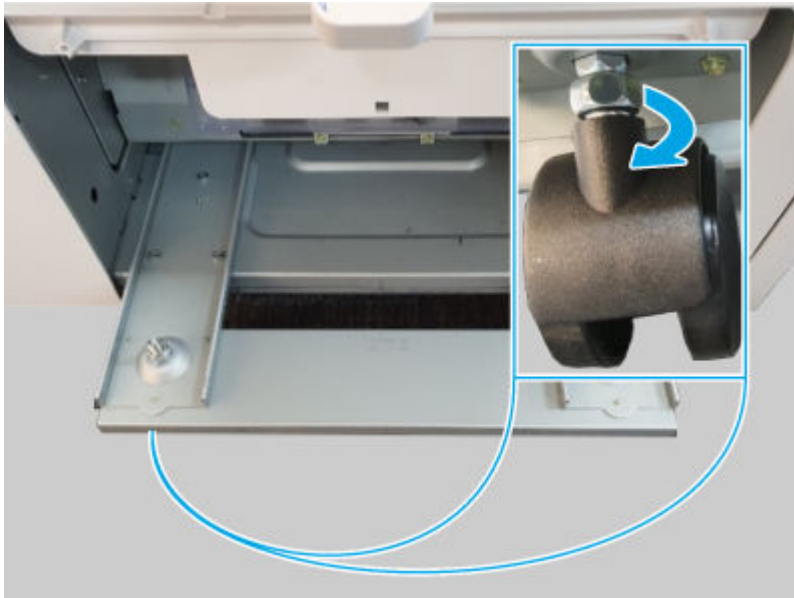
🔧 NOTE: Use a 12mm spanner wrench to remove the nut.

Figure 6-1974 Remove the nut



3. Rotate the caster as shown below to remove it. Repeat these steps for the remaining casters as needed.

Figure 6-1975 Remove the caster

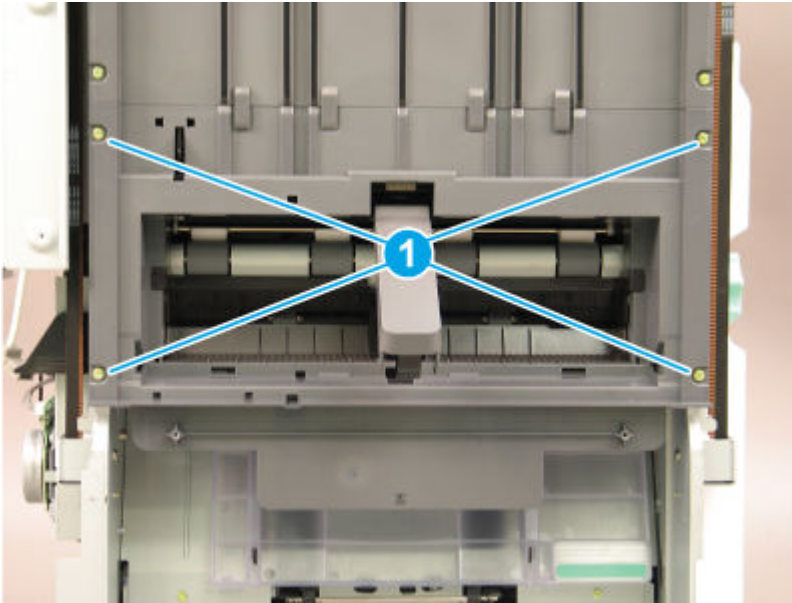


7 Remove the external finisher left lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left lower cover.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-1976 Remove four screws

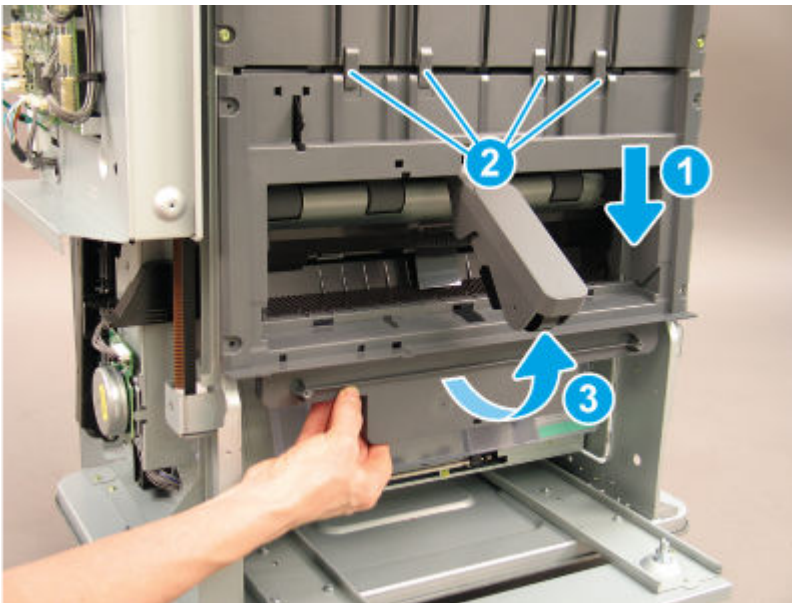


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

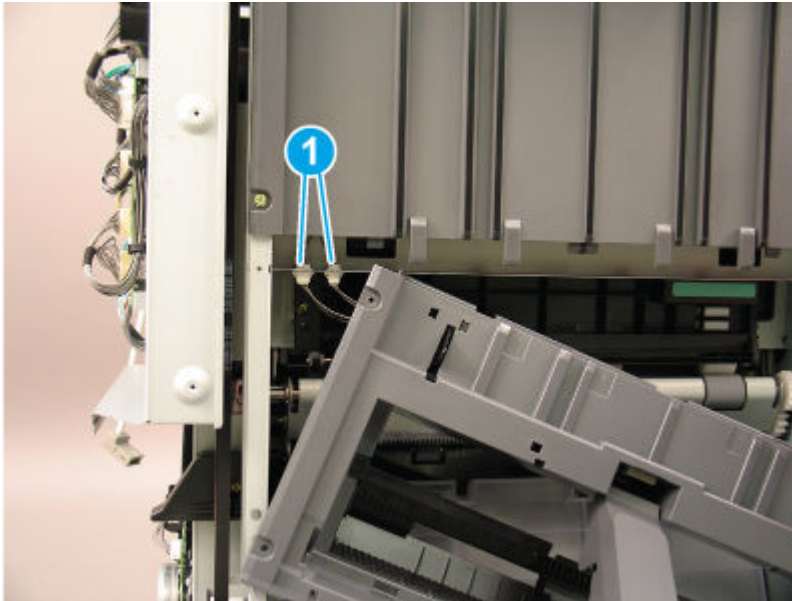
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-1977 Release the cover



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the left lower cover.

Figure 6-1978 Remove the cover

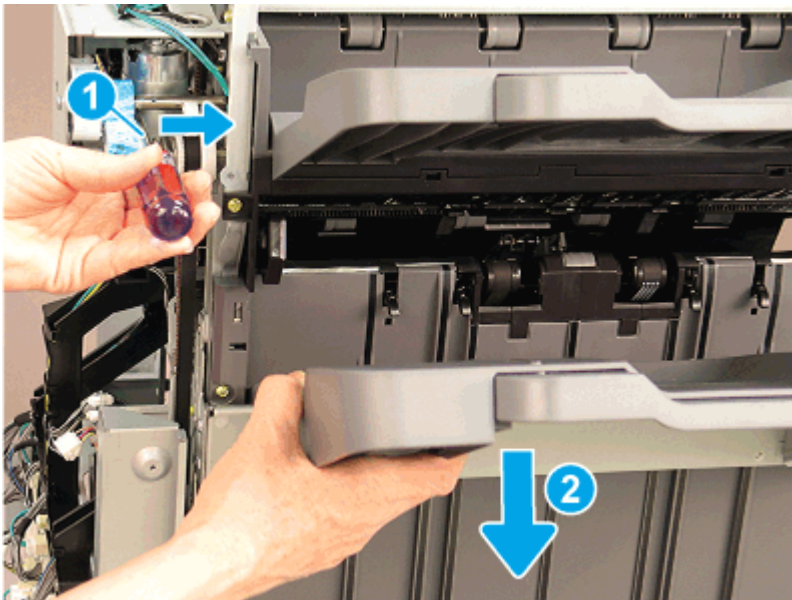


8 Remove the external finisher left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left upper cover.

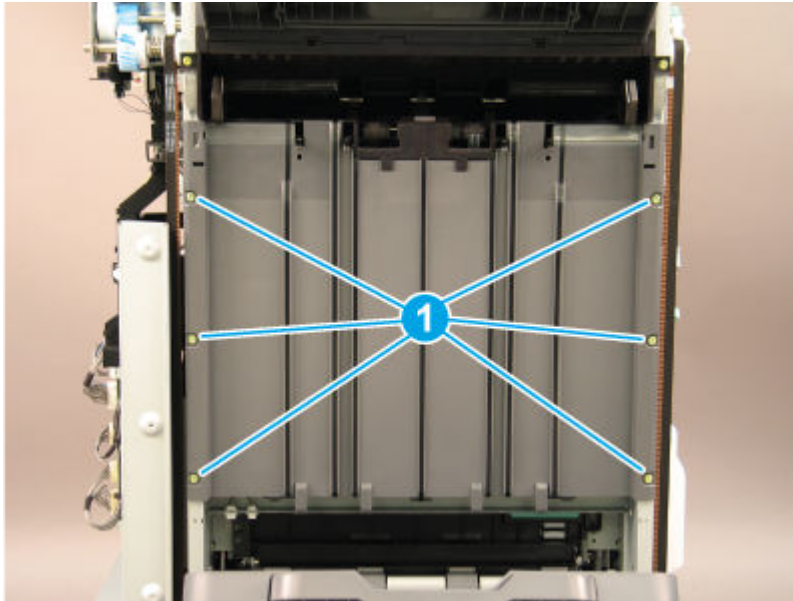
1. Bring the main output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 6-1979 Lower the tray



2. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-1980 Remove six screws

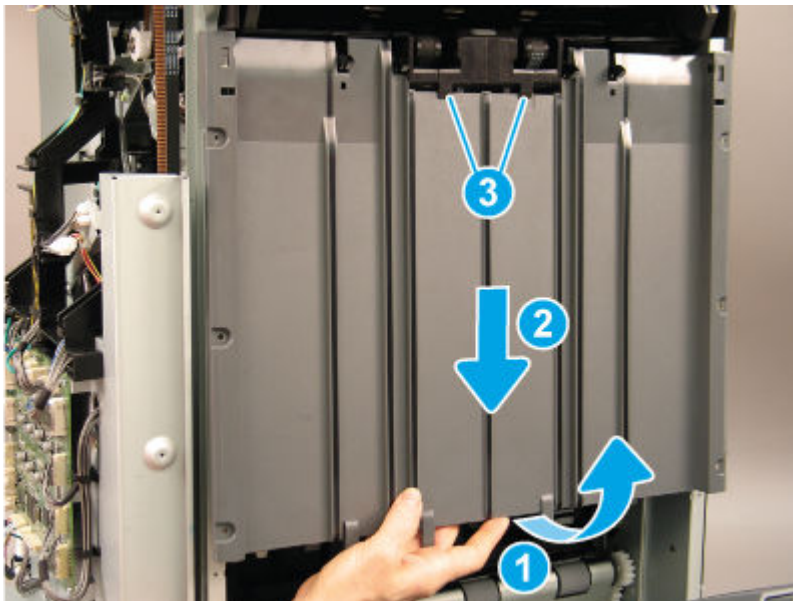


3. Rotate the lower edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

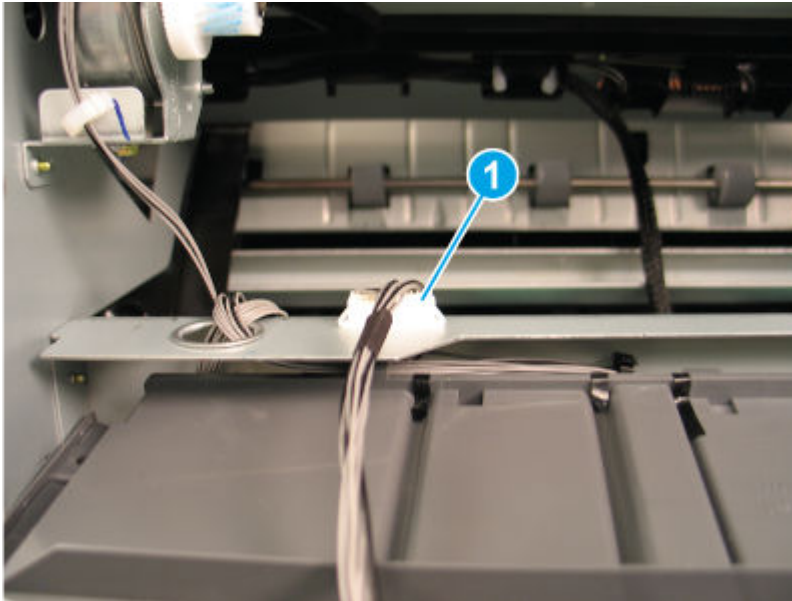
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-1981 Release the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the left upper cover.

Figure 6-1982 Remove the cover



9 Remove the external finisher ejector unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher ejector unit.

1. Remove three screws.


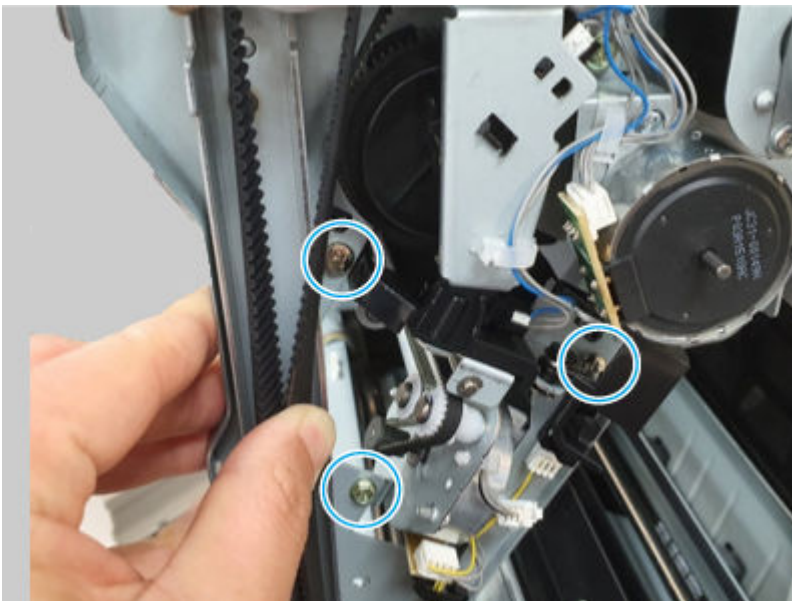
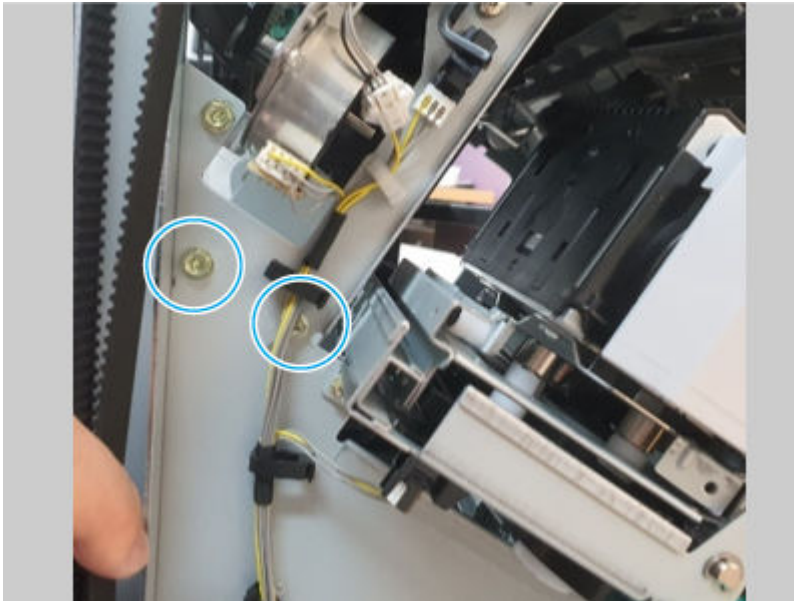
 **NOTE:** Removing these screws allows the front tamper to be moved out of the way when the ejector unit is removed.

Figure 6-1983 Release the tamper



2. Remove two screws (located below the front tamper).

Figure 6-1984 Remove two screws

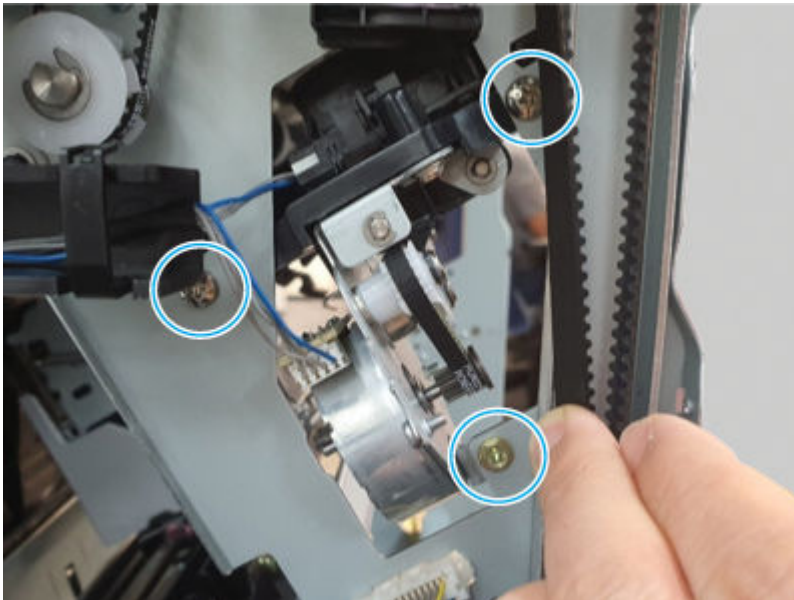


3. Remove three screws.



NOTE: Removing these screws allows the rear tamper to be moved out of the way when the ejector unit is removed.

Figure 6-1985 Release the tamper



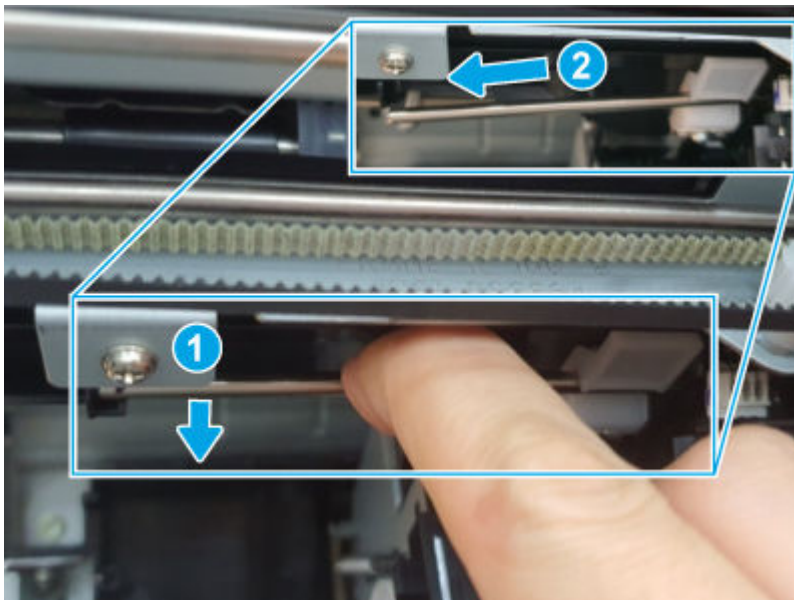
4. Remove two screws (located below the rear tamper).

Figure 6-1986 Remove two screws



5. Do the following:
 - a. Look inside the finisher through the stapler opening.
 - b. Locate the shaft, pull down to release it (callout 1), and then slide it as shown below (callout 2) to remove it.

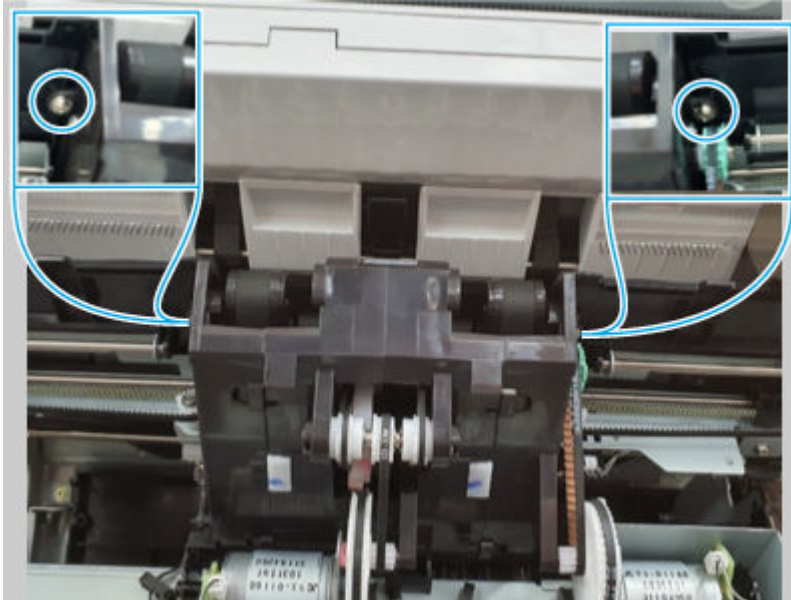
Figure 6-1987 Remove the shaft



6. Remove two screws, and then remove the ejector unit.

 **NOTE:** Slightly lift up on the tampers to give the ejector unit clearance when removing it..

Figure 6-1988 Remove the unit

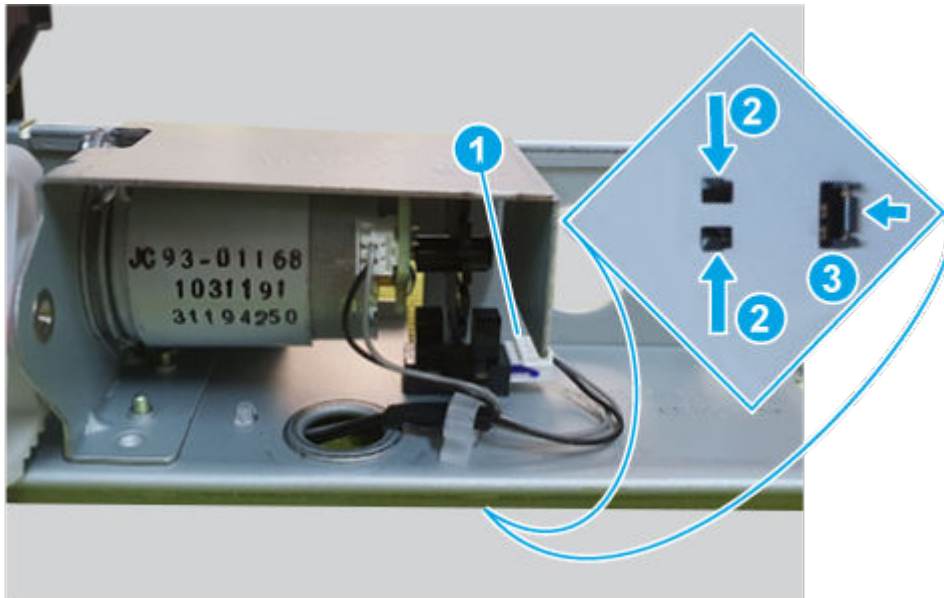


10 Remove the external finisher ejector 2 motor sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher ejector 2 motor sensor.

- Do the following:
 - a. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).
 - b. Release the hooks (callout 2).
 - c. Slide the sensor as shown below (callout 3)
 - d. Remove the ejector 2 motor sensor.

Figure 6-1989 Remove the sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Main output tray unit

Review the external finisher main output tray unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Main output tray

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher main output tray.

Mean time to repair: 3 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-274 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-40028	Main output tray

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

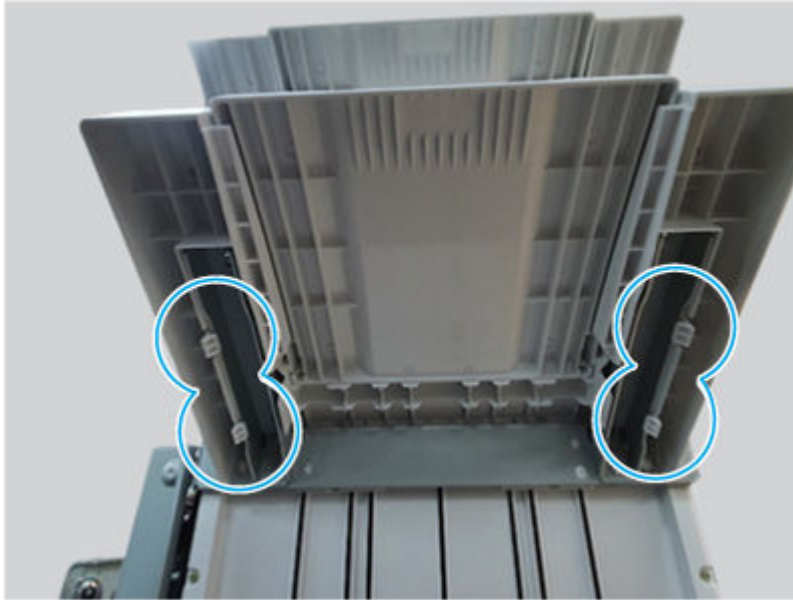
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher main output tray

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher main output tray.

- Release four hooks, and then remove the main output tray.

Figure 6-1990 Remove the tray



2 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Main output tray top of stack sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher main output tray top of stack sensor.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-275 Part information

Part number	Part description
1404-001417	Tray sensor kit (Main output tray top of stack sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

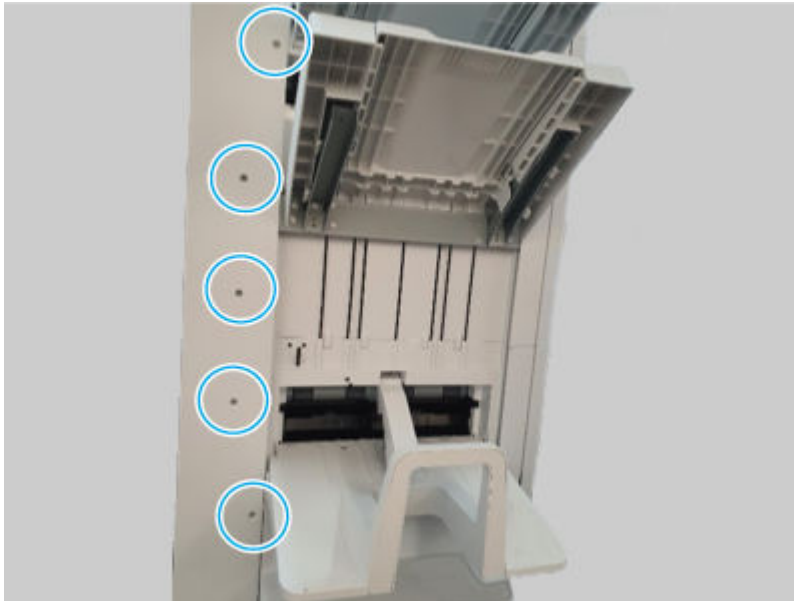
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-1991 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


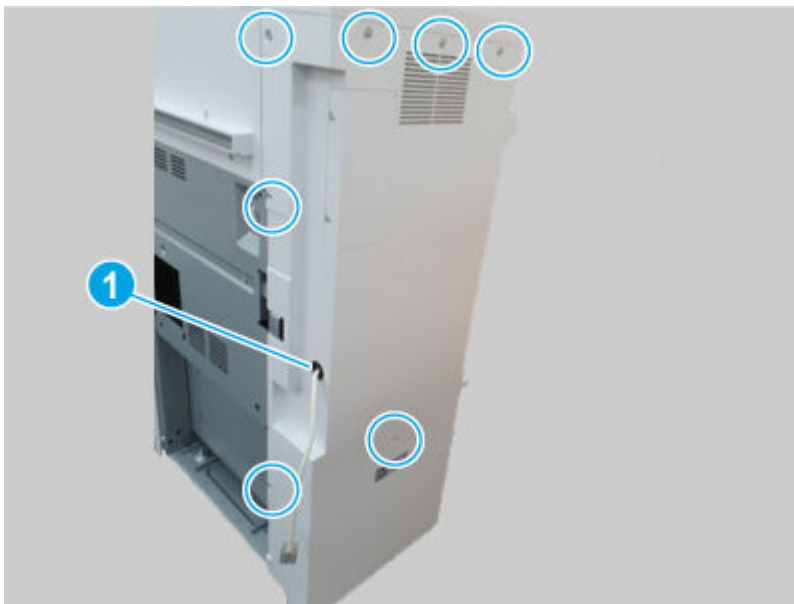
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-1992 Remove the cover

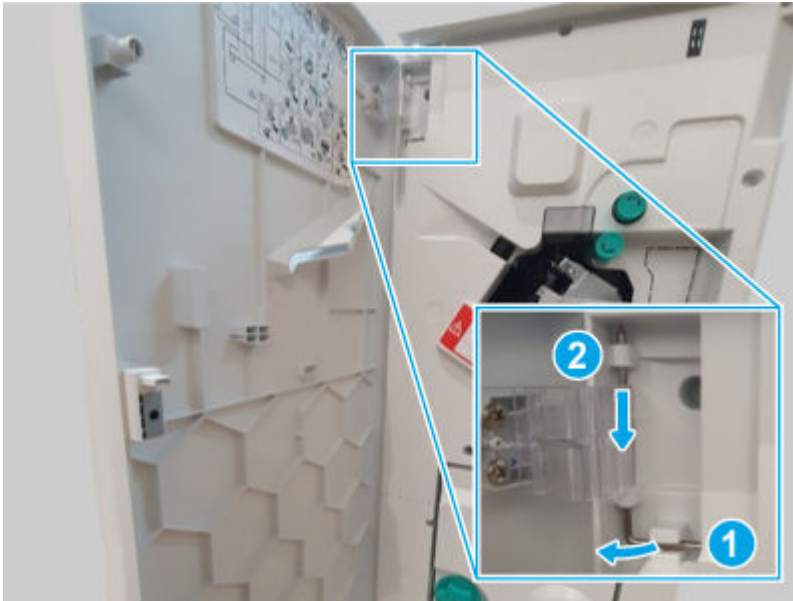


2 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

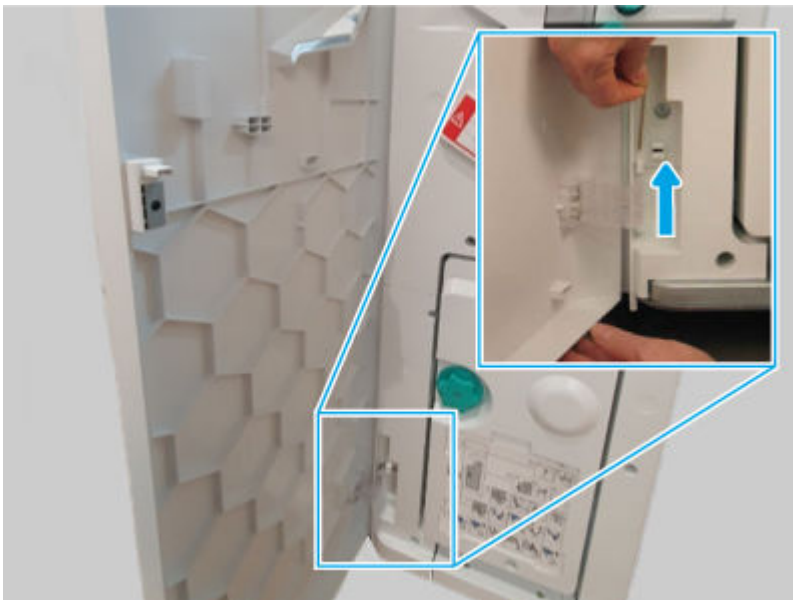
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-1993 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-1994 Remove the door



3 Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

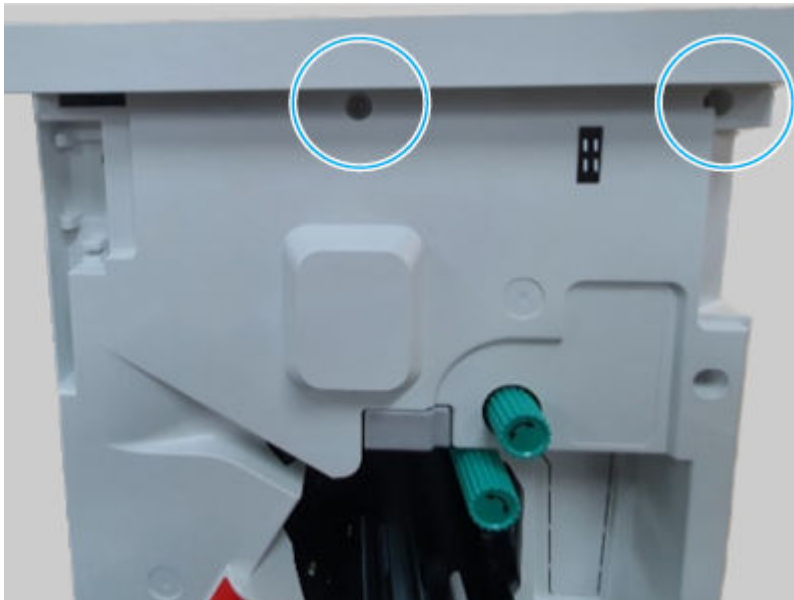
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-1995 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-1996 Remove the cover

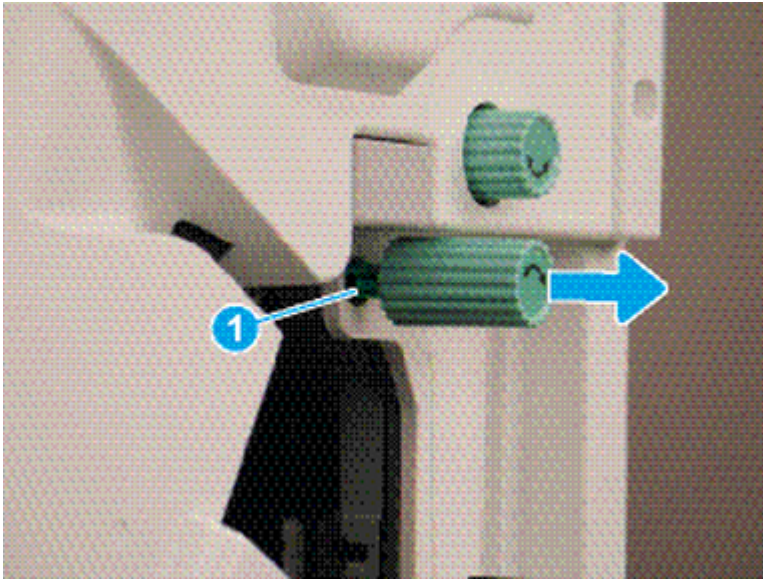


4 Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-1997 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-1998 Remove the cover



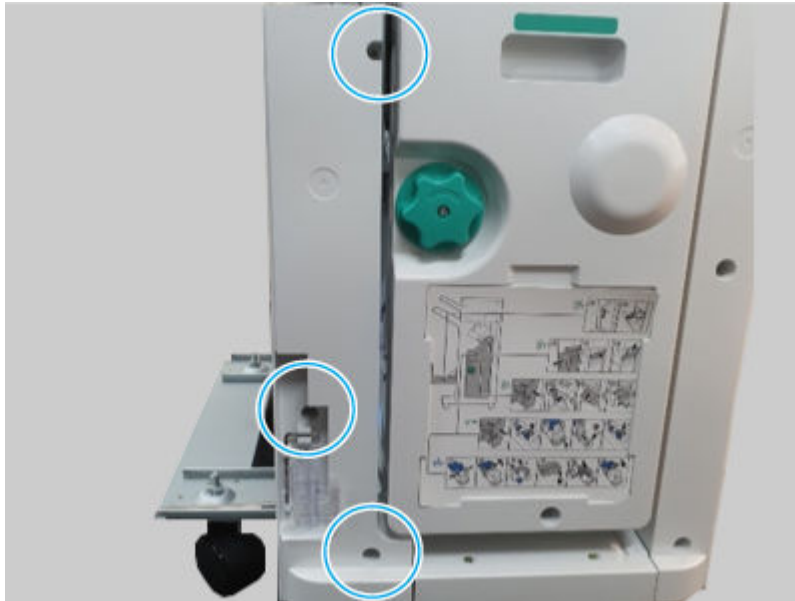
5 Remove the external finisher front lower left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front lower left cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.

2. Remove three screws, and then remove the front lower left cover.

Figure 6-1999 Remove the cover



6 Remove the external finisher caster

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher caster.

⚠ WARNING! The external finisher is not stable when one or more casters are removed and can easily tip over. To avoid personal injury or damage to the finisher, make sure to fully support the finisher when removing a caster.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.
2. Remove one fix nut.

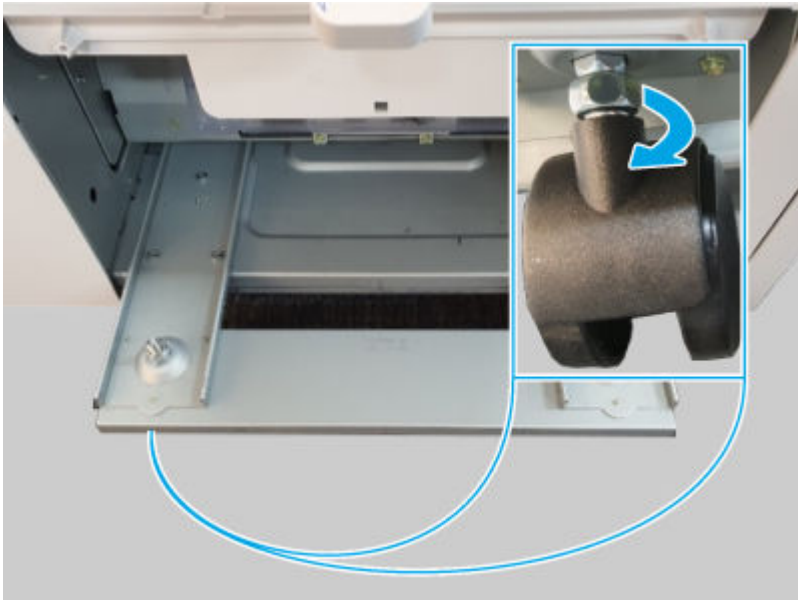
🔧 NOTE: Use a 12mm spanner wrench to remove the nut.

Figure 6-2000 Remove the nut



3. Rotate the caster as shown below to remove it. Repeat these steps for the remaining casters as needed.

Figure 6-2001 Remove the caster

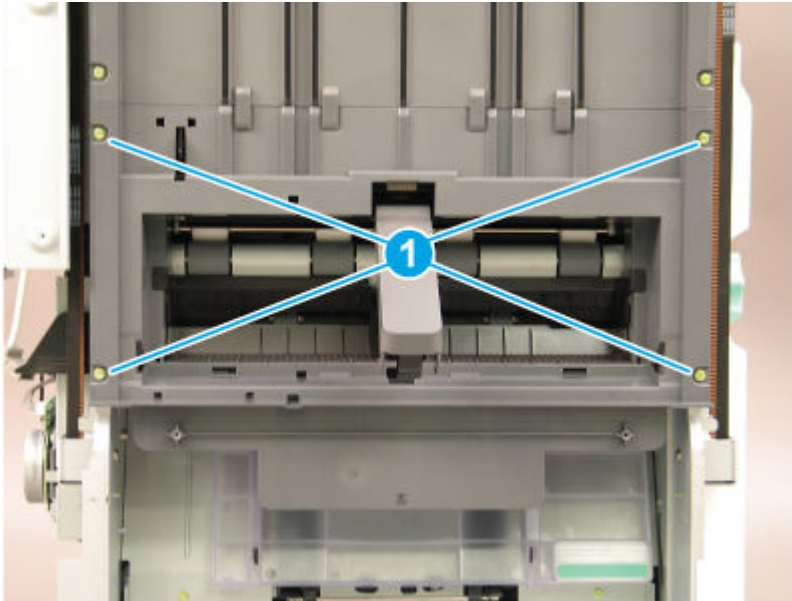


7 Remove the external finisher left lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left lower cover.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2002 Remove four screws

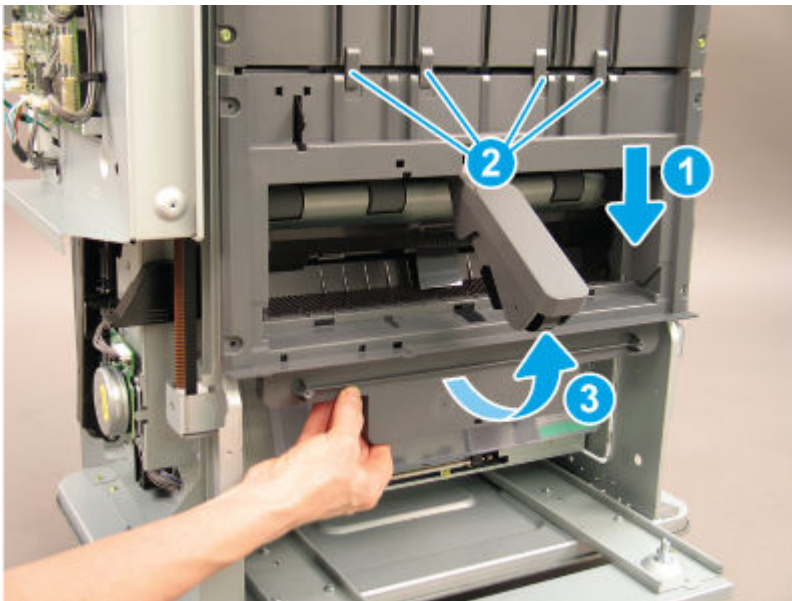


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

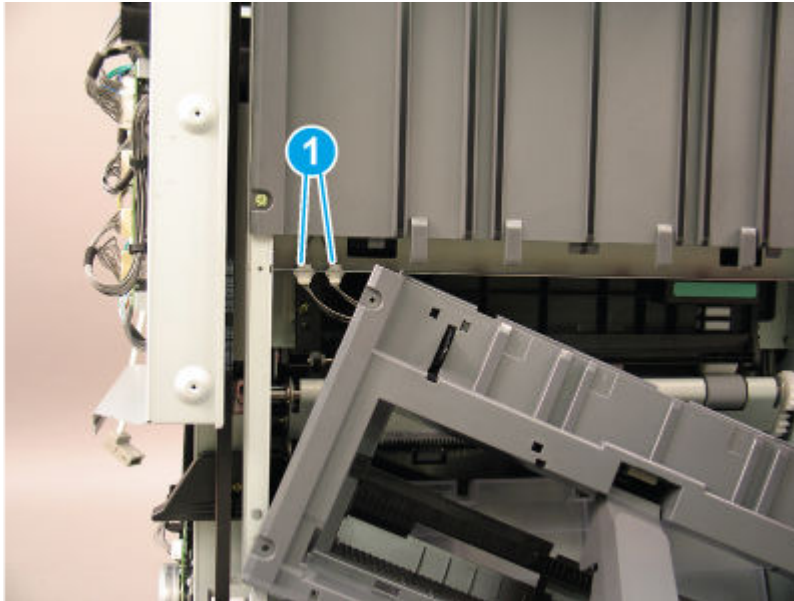
Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-2003 Release the cover



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the left lower cover.

Figure 6-2004 Remove the cover

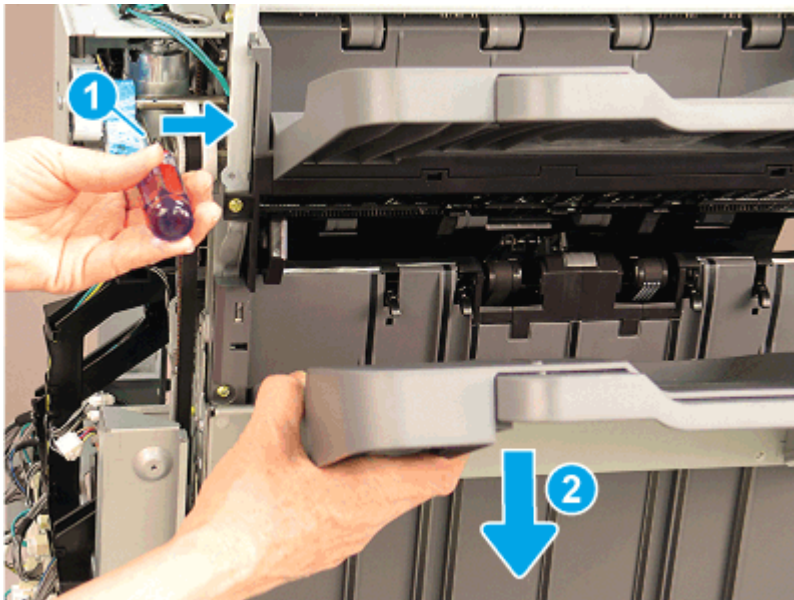


8 Remove the external finisher left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left upper cover.

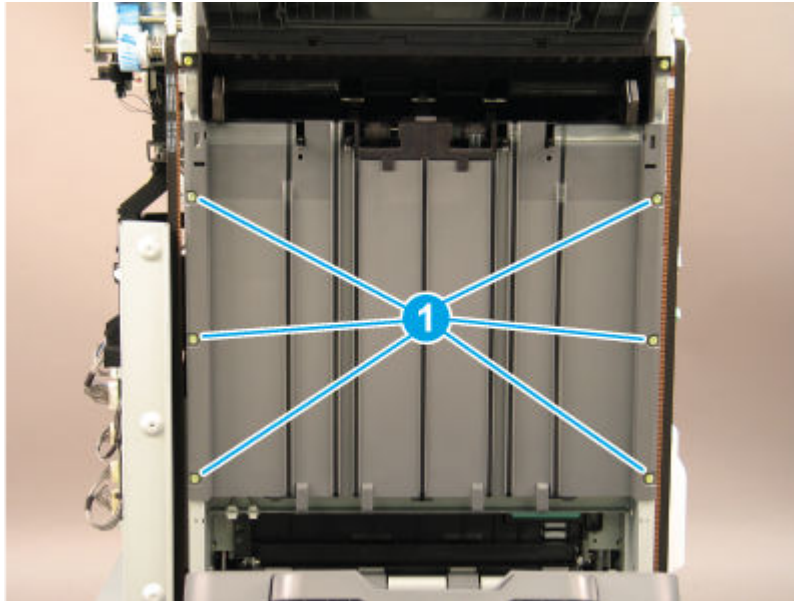
1. Bring the main output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 6-2005 Lower the tray



2. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2006 Remove six screws

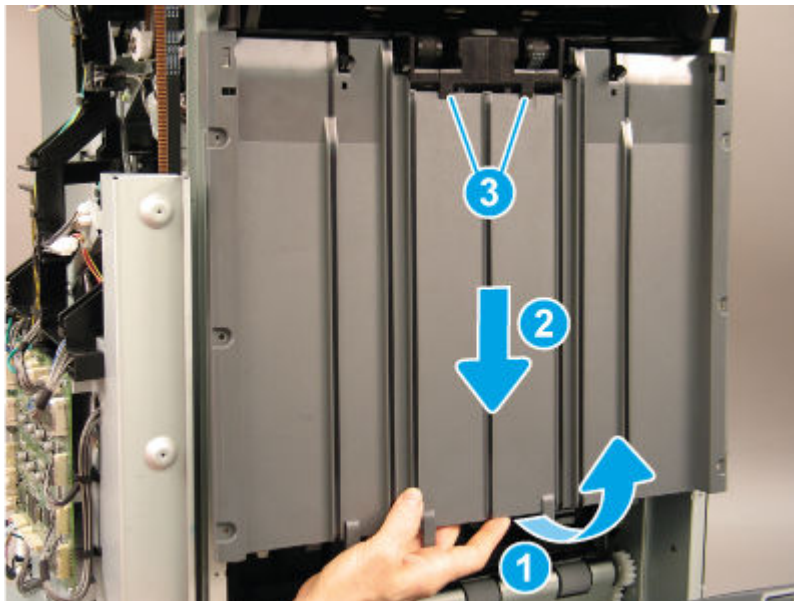


3. Rotate the lower edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

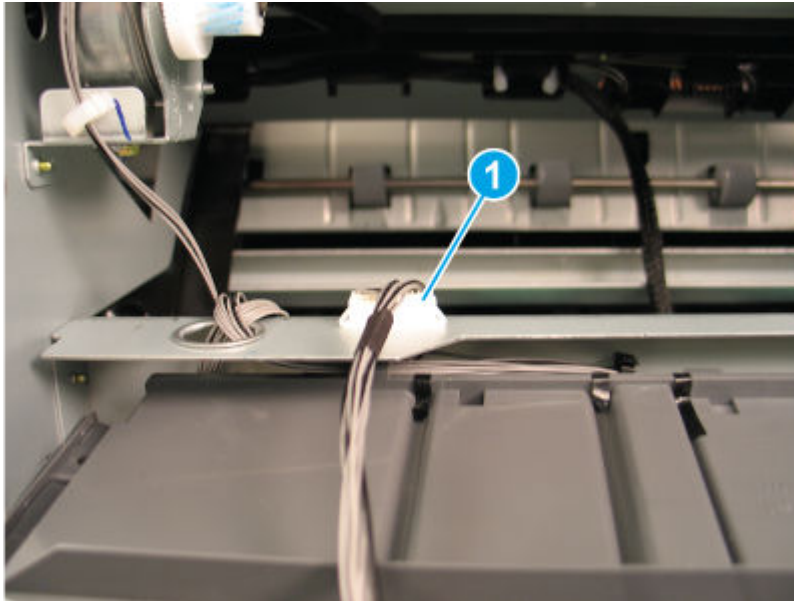
Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-2007 Release the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the left upper cover.

Figure 6-2008 Remove the cover

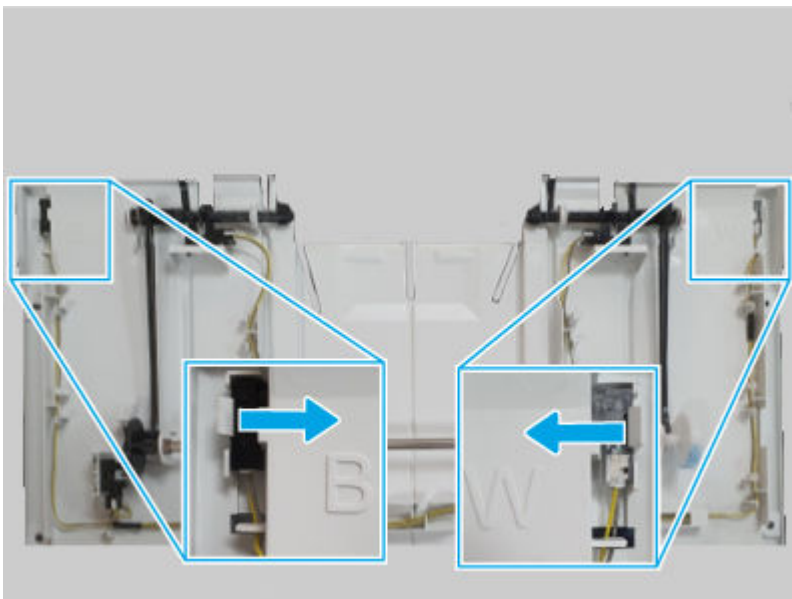


9 Remove the external finisher main output tray top of stack sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher main output tray top of stack sensor.

- Release two hooks, and then remove the main output tray top of stack sensor.

Figure 6-2009 Remove the sensor



10 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Main output tray lower limit sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher main output tray lower limit sensor.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-276 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001415	Photo interrupter (Main output tray lower limit sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

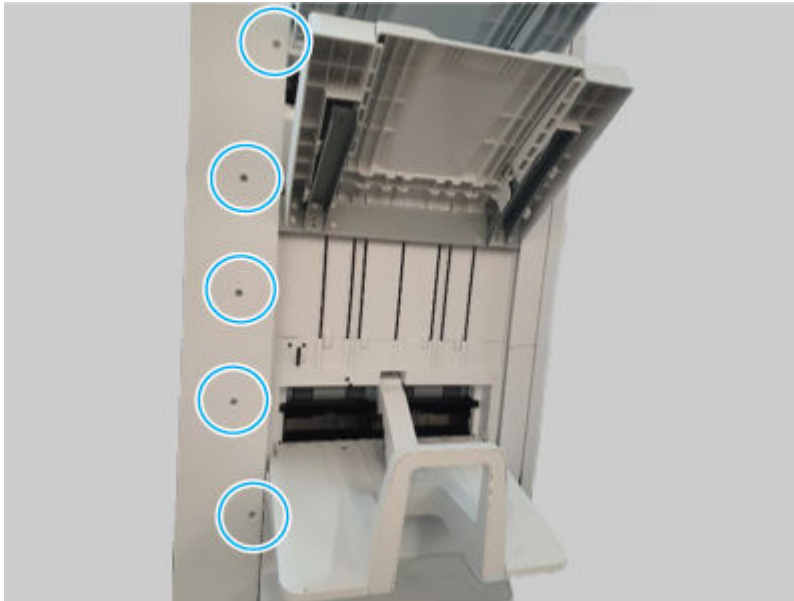
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2010 Remove five screws

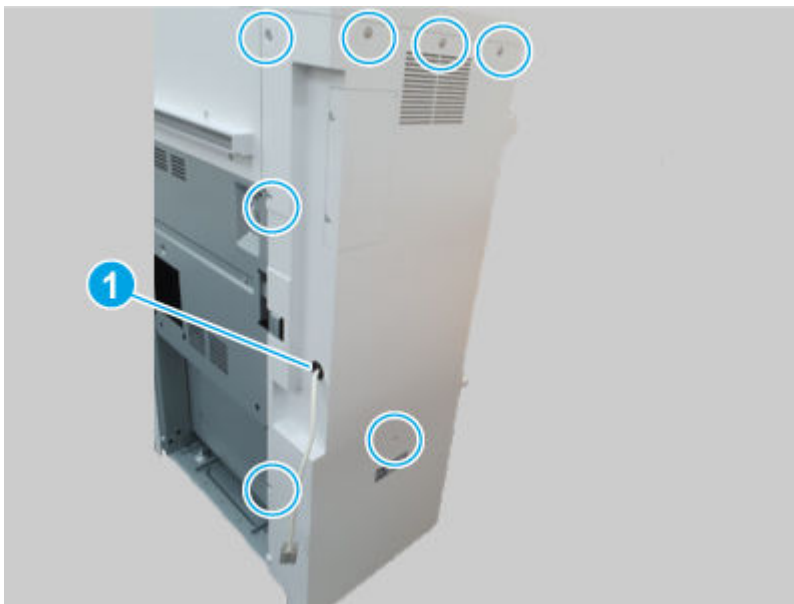


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2011 Remove the cover

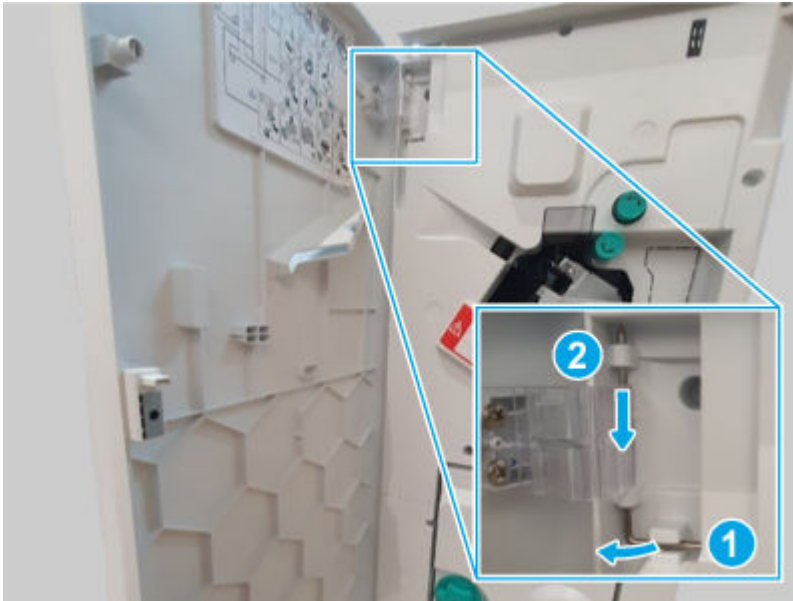


2 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

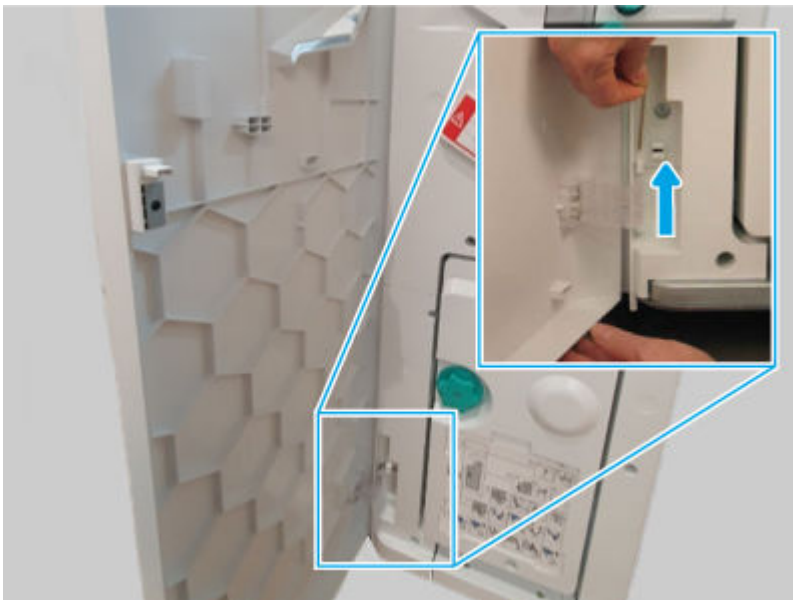
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2012 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2013 Remove the door



3 Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2014 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2015 Remove the cover

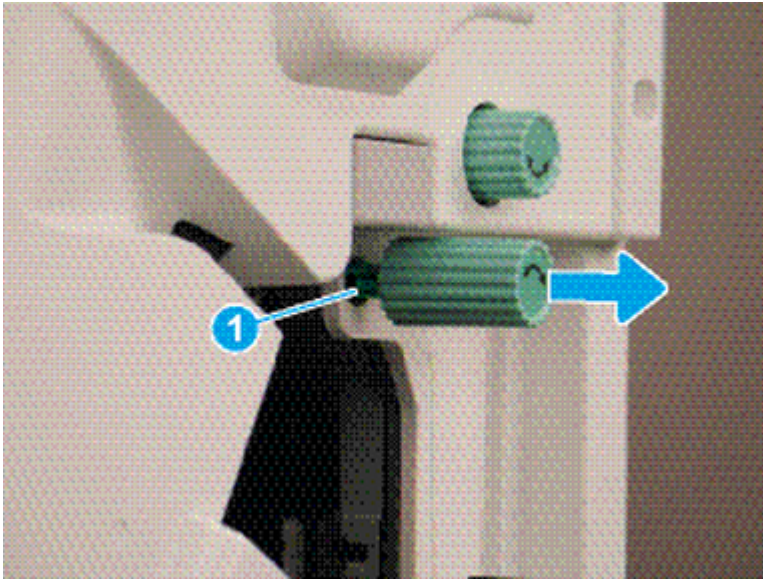


4 Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-2016 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-2017 Remove the cover



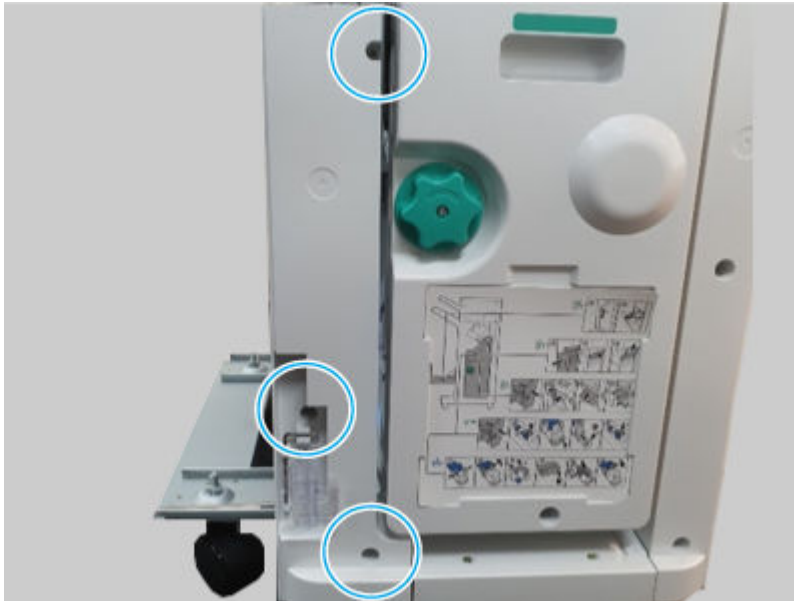
5 Remove the external finisher front lower left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front lower left cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.

2. Remove three screws, and then remove the front lower left cover.

Figure 6-2018 Remove the cover



6 Remove the external finisher caster

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher caster.

⚠ WARNING! The external finisher is not stable when one or more casters are removed and can easily tip over. To avoid personal injury or damage to the finisher, make sure to fully support the finisher when removing a caster.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.
2. Remove one fix nut.

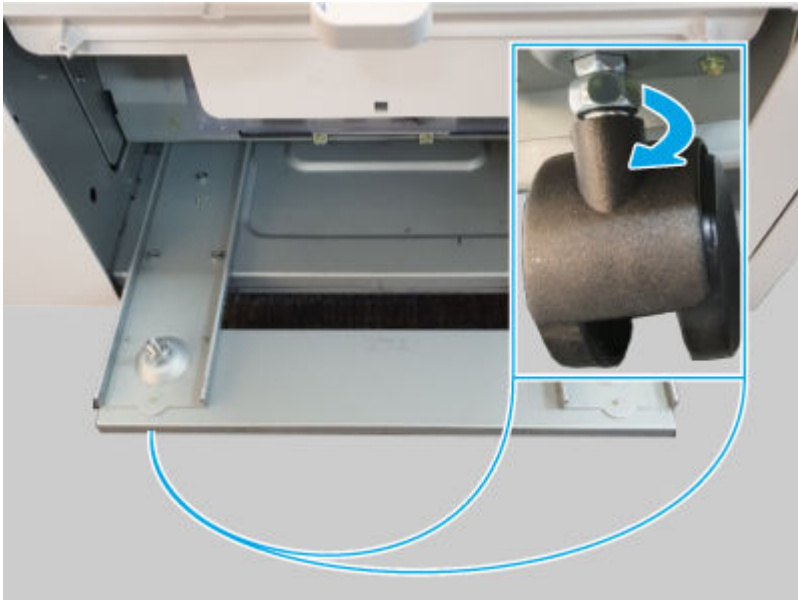
🔧 NOTE: Use a 12mm spanner wrench to remove the nut.

Figure 6-2019 Remove the nut



3. Rotate the caster as shown below to remove it. Repeat these steps for the remaining casters as needed.

Figure 6-2020 Remove the caster

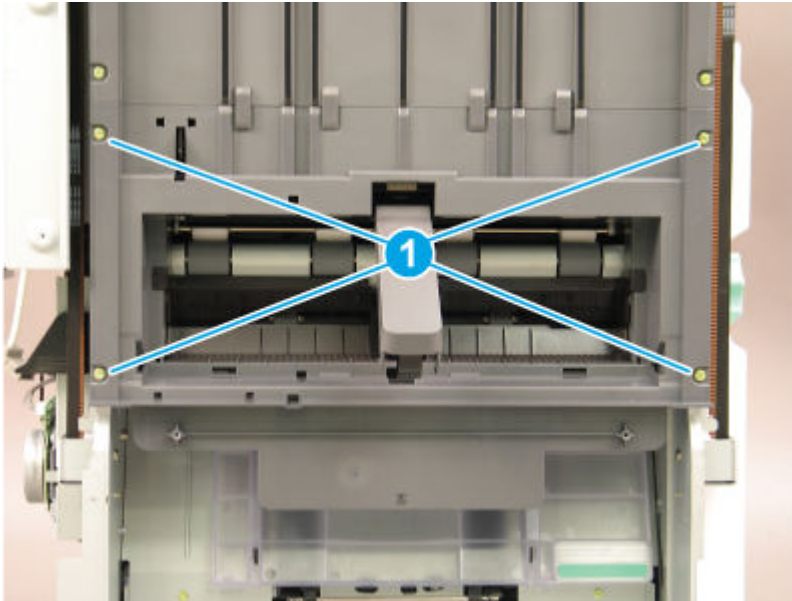


7 Remove the external finisher left lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left lower cover.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2021 Remove four screws

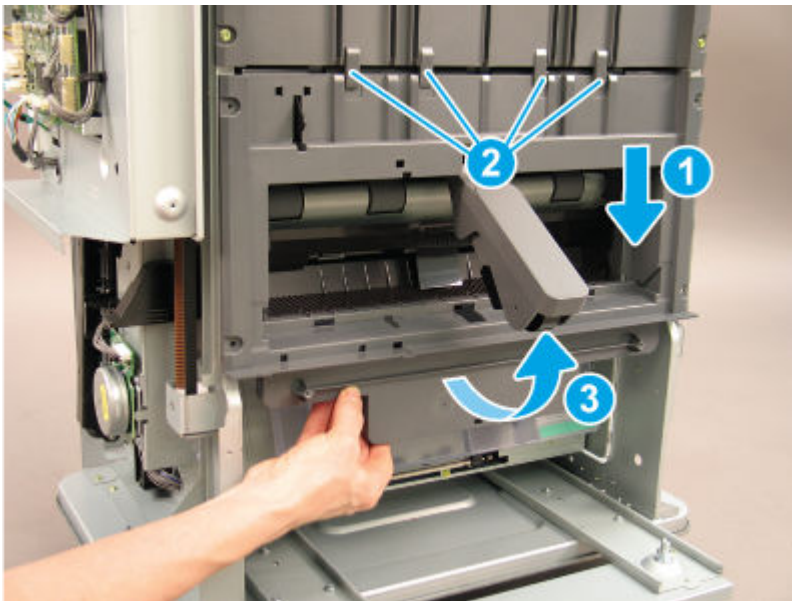


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

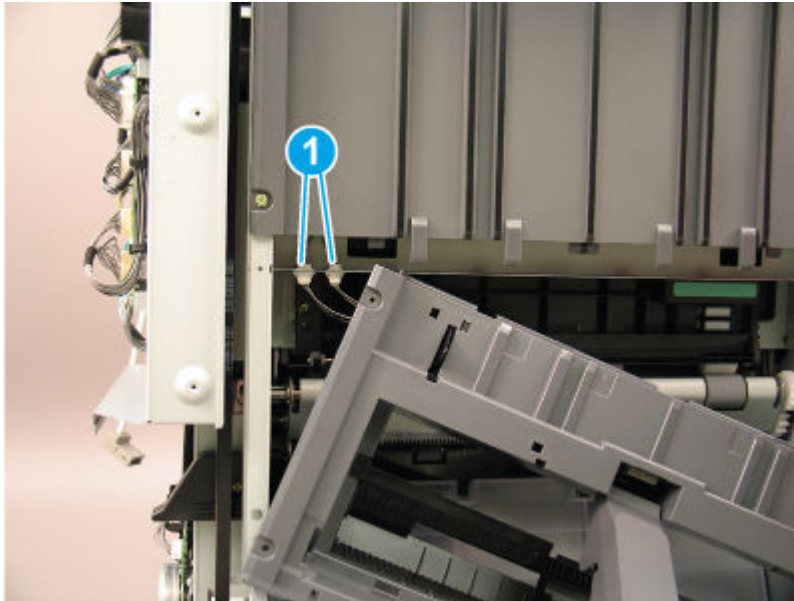
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-2022 Release the cover



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the left lower cover.

Figure 6-2023 Remove the cover

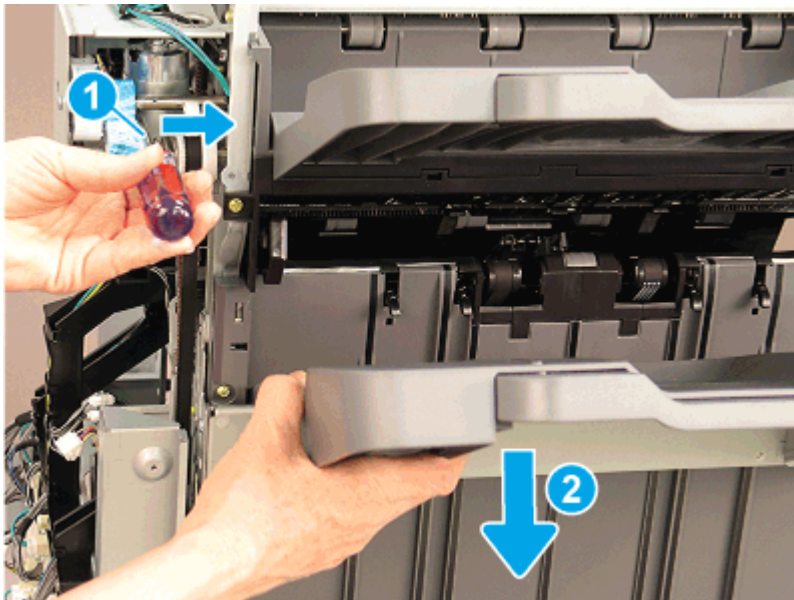


8 Remove the external finisher left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left upper cover.

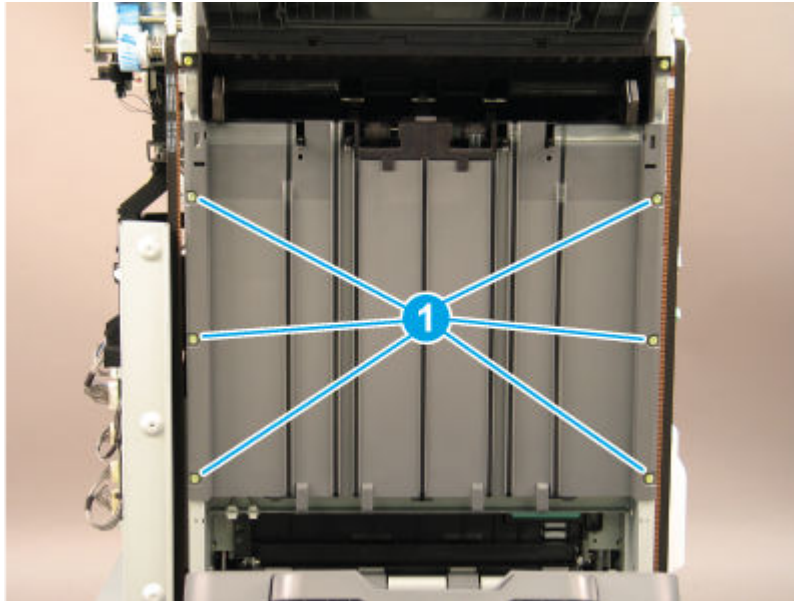
1. Bring the main output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 6-2024 Lower the tray



2. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2025 Remove six screws

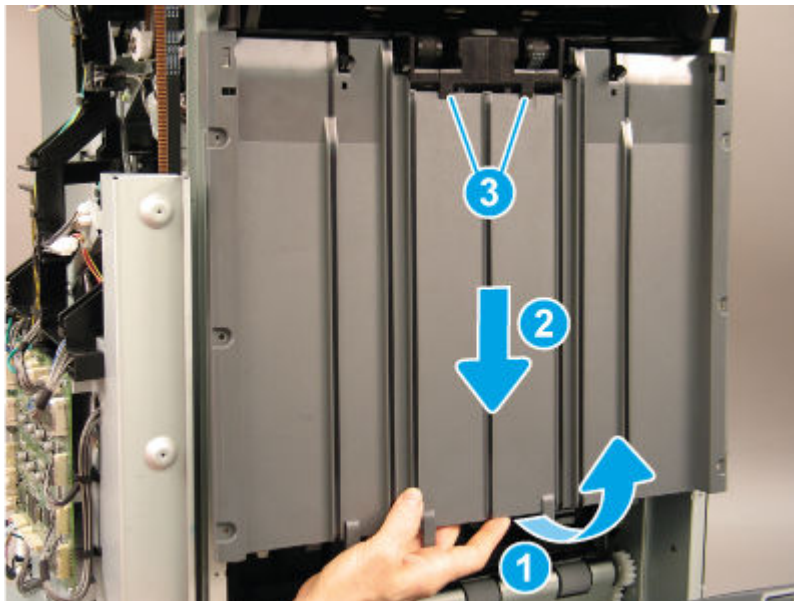


3. Rotate the lower edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

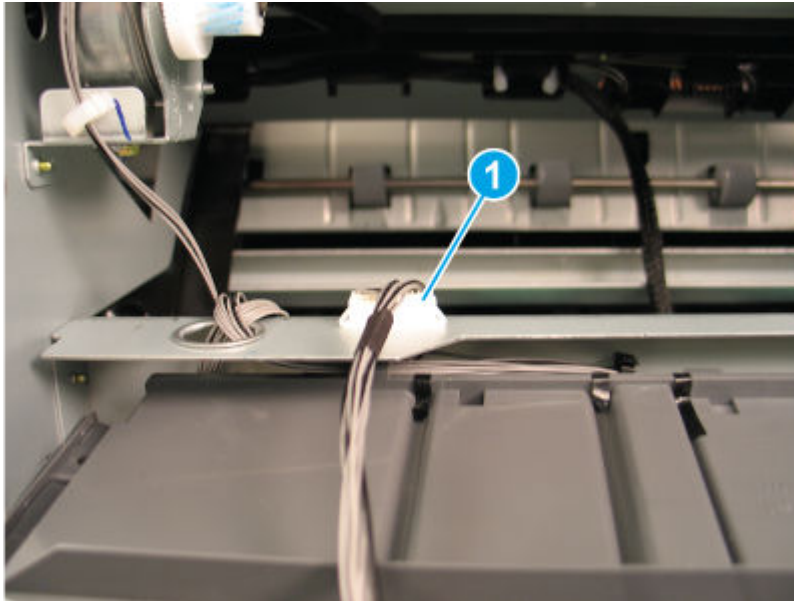
Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-2026 Release the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the left upper cover.

Figure 6-2027 Remove the cover

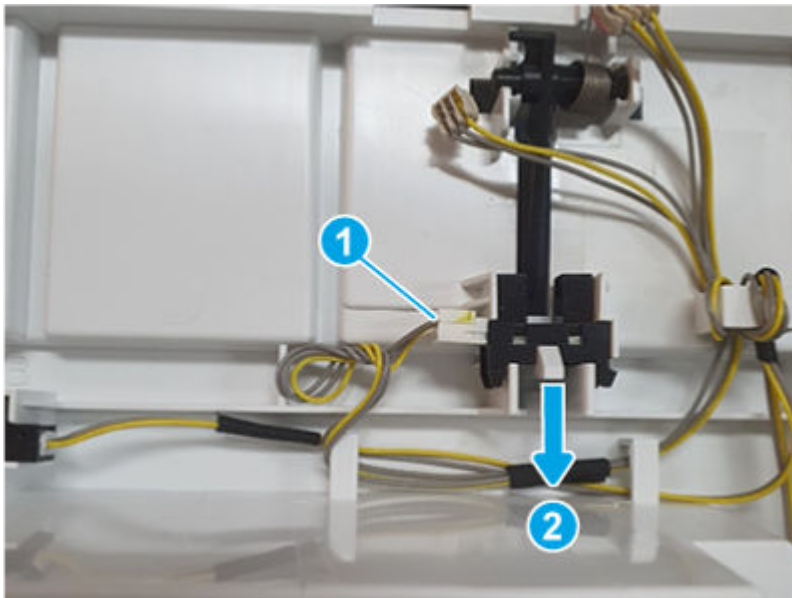


9 Remove the external finisher main output tray lower limit sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher main output tray lower limit sensor.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), release one hook, and then remove the main output tray lower limit sensor.

Figure 6-2028 Remove the sensor



10 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Main output tray motor sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher main output tray motor sensor.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-277 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Main output tray motor sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

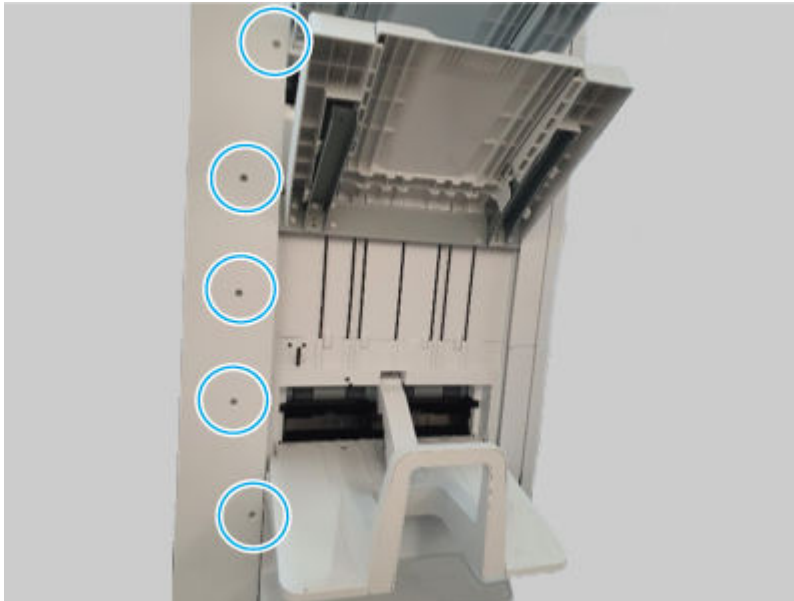
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2029 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


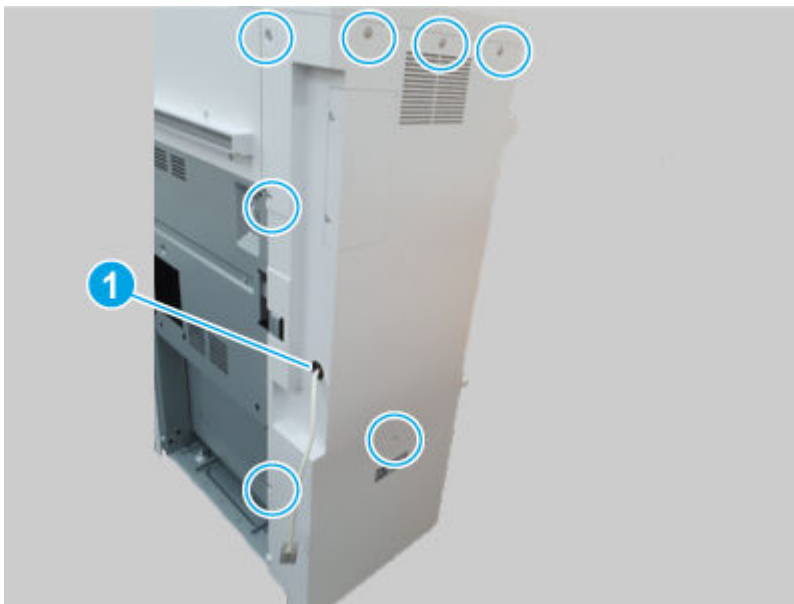
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2030 Remove the cover



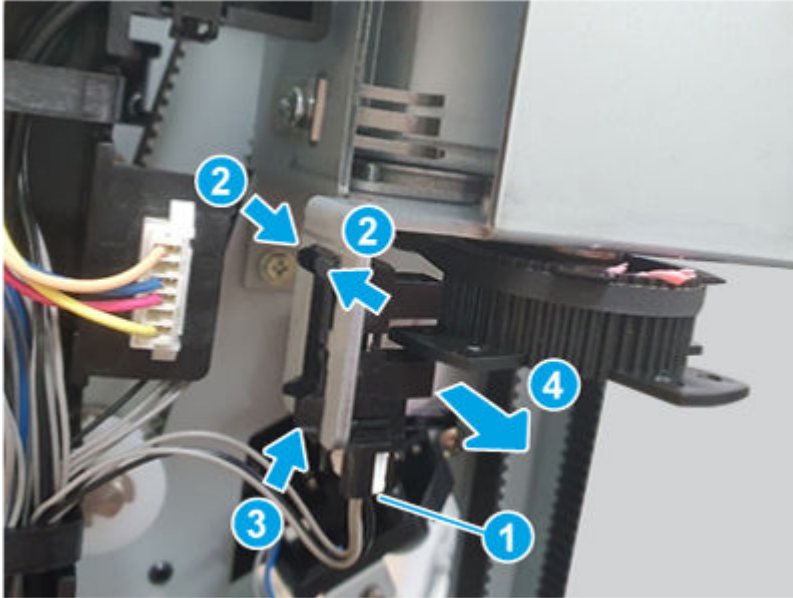
2 Remove the external finisher main output tray motor sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher main output tray motor sensor.

- Do the following:
 - a. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

- b. Release the hooks (callout 2).
- c. Slide the sensor as shown below (callout 3)
- d. Remove the main output tray motor sensor (callout 4).

Figure 6-2031 Remove the sensor



3 **Unpack the replacement assembly**

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Main output tray motor drive assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher main output tray motor drive assembly.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-278 Part Information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01415B	Main output tray motor drive assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

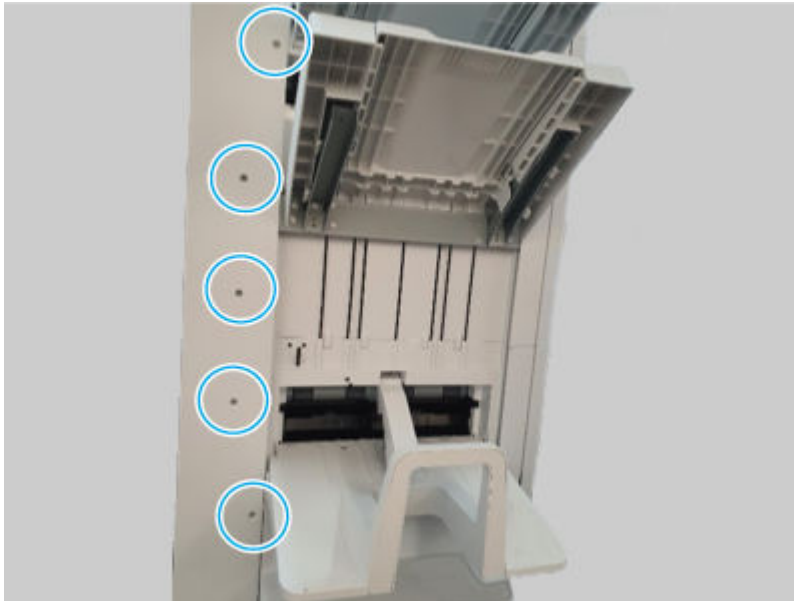
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2032 Remove five screws

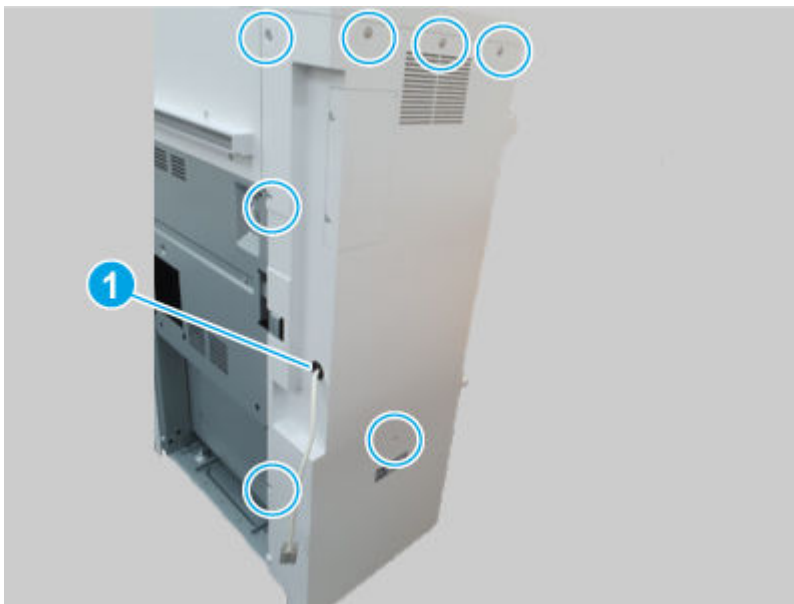


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2033 Remove the cover

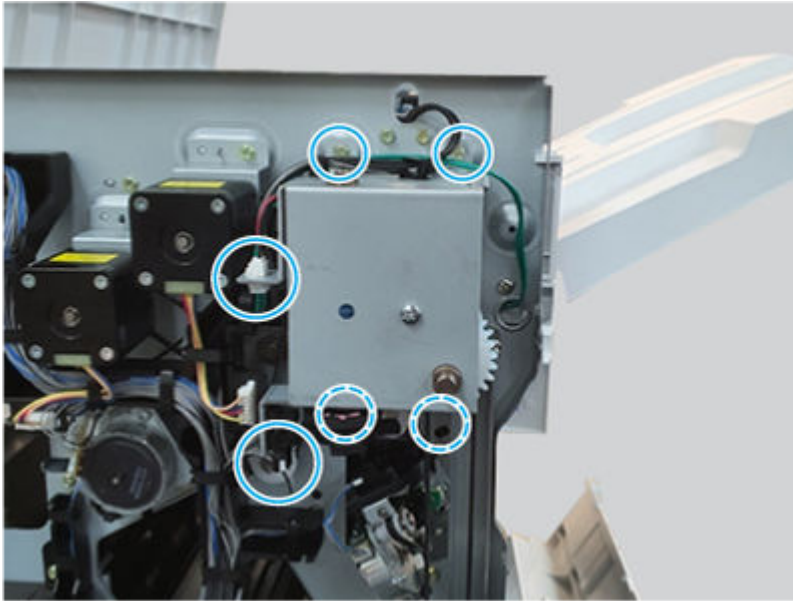


2 Remove the external finisher main output tray motor drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher main output tray motor drive assembly.

- Disconnect two connectors, remove four screws, and then remove the main output tray motor drive assembly.


Figure 6-2034 Remove the sensor



3 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Main output tray top of stack switch

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher main output tray top of stack switch.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-279 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC82-01039A	Tray sensor kit (Main output tray top of stack switch)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

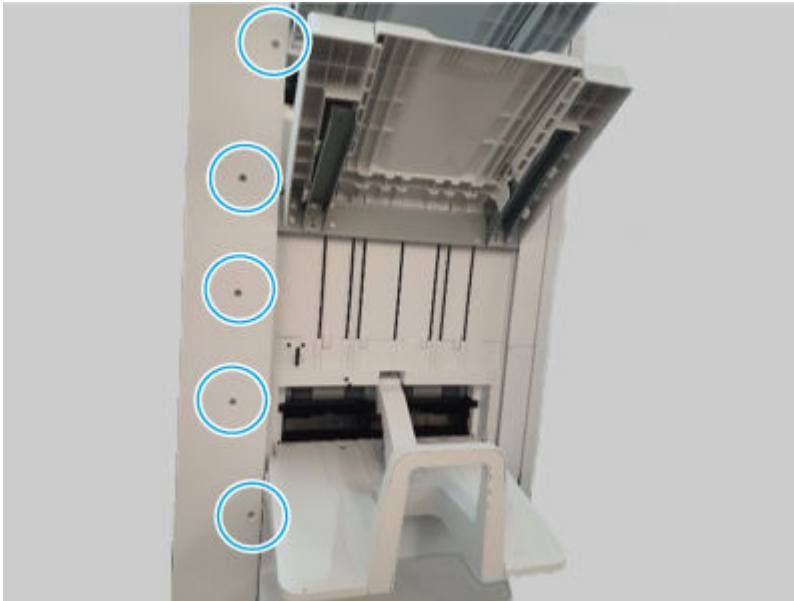
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2035 Remove five screws

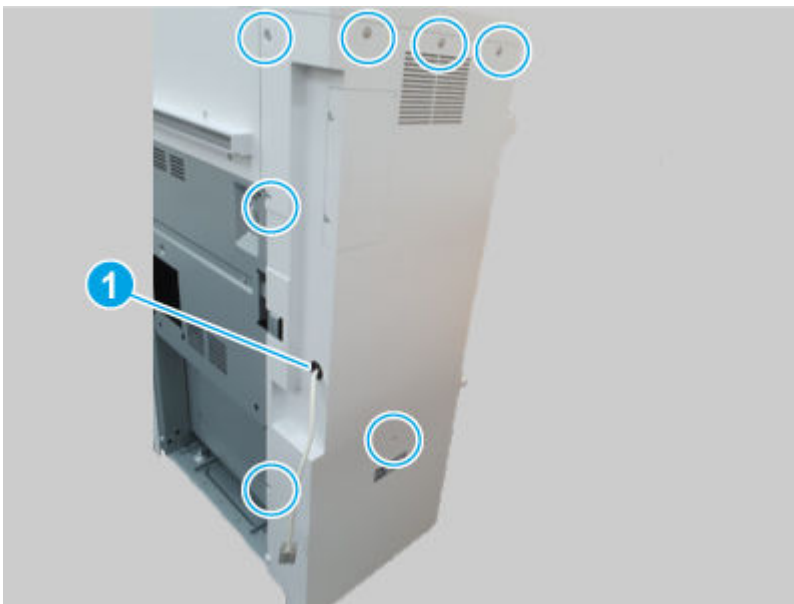


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2036 Remove the cover

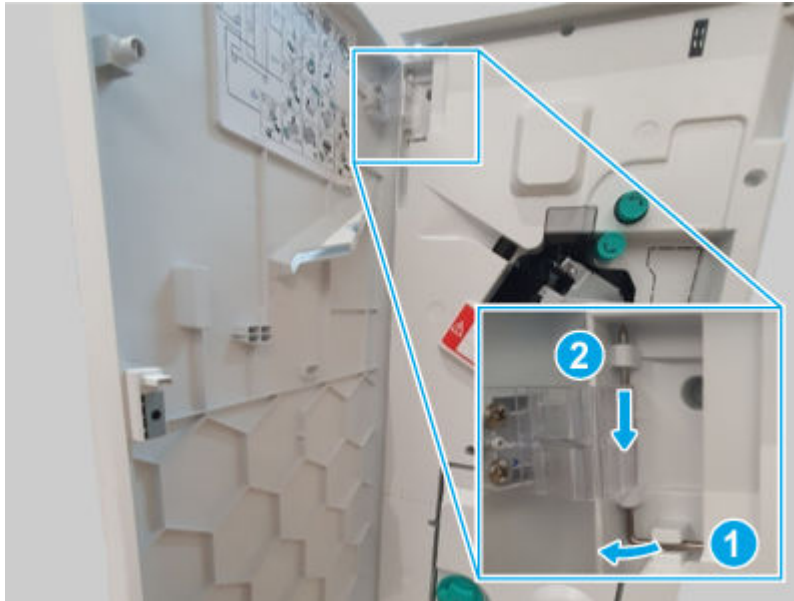


2 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

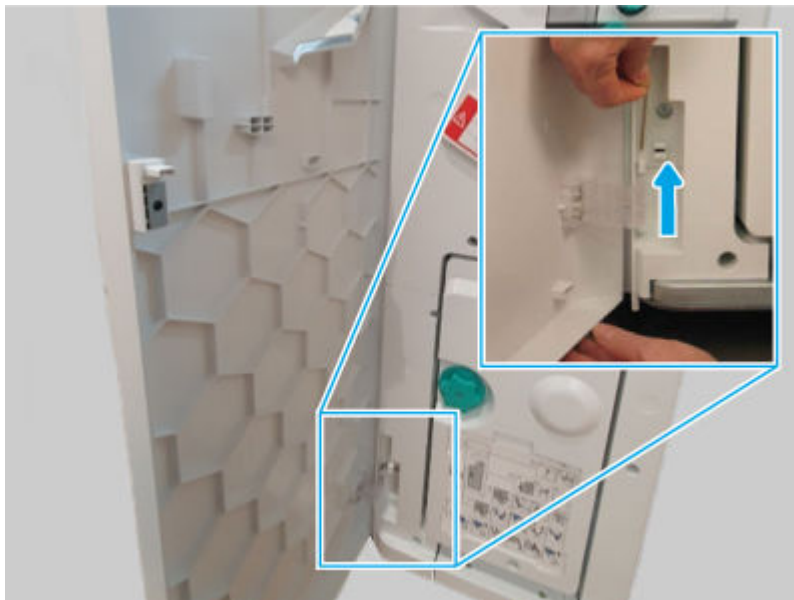
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2037 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2038 Remove the door



3 Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

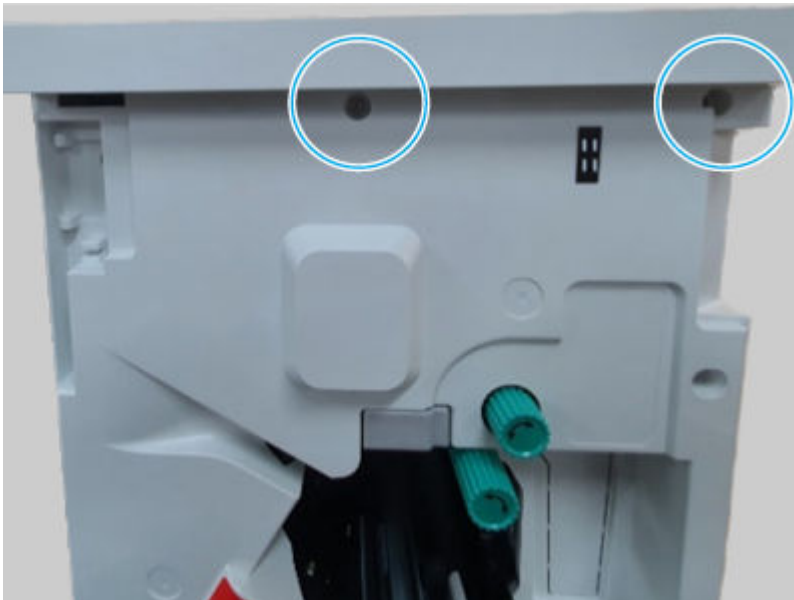
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2039 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2040 Remove the cover

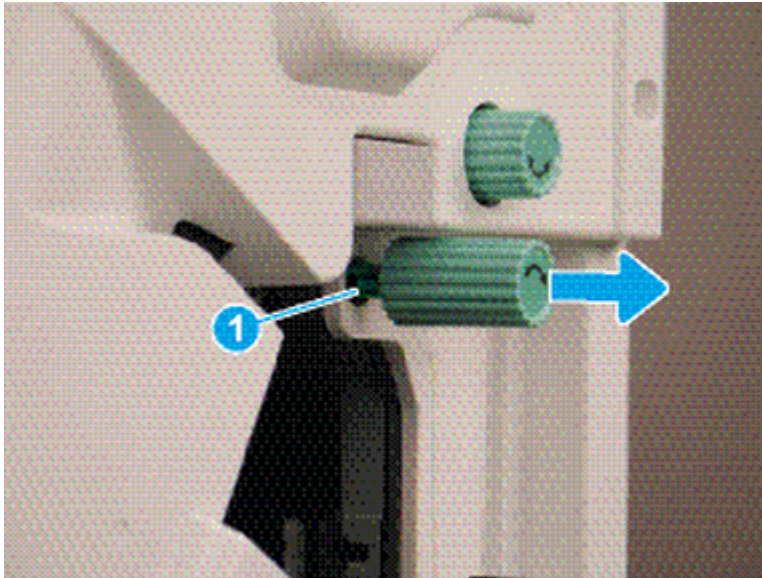


4 Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-2041 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-2042 Remove the cover

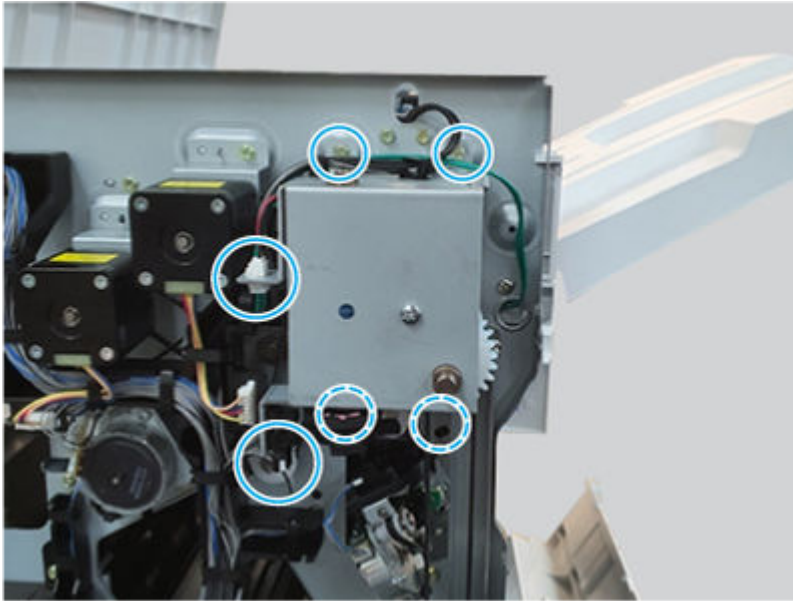


5 Remove the external finisher main output tray motor drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher main output tray motor drive assembly.

- Disconnect two connectors, remove four screws, and then remove the main output tray motor drive assembly.

Figure 6-2043 Remove the sensor

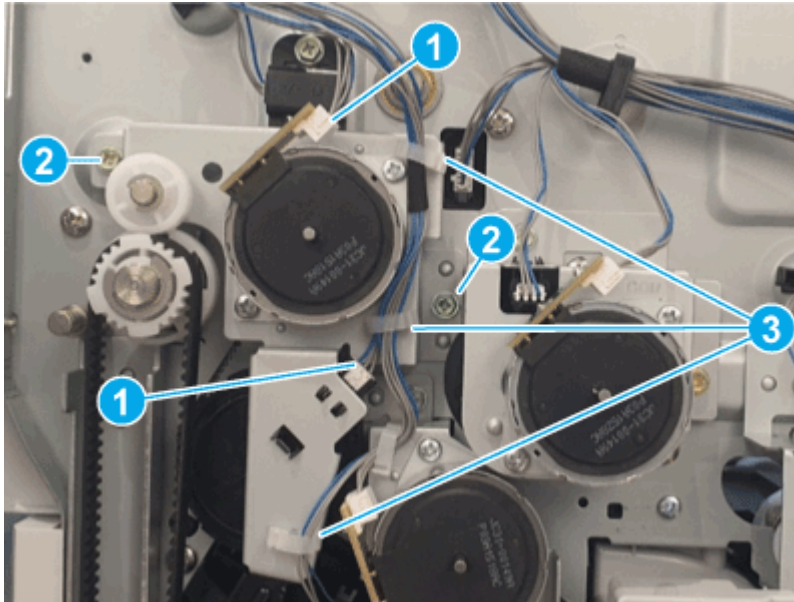


6 Remove the external finisher paddle motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher paddle motor assembly.

- Do the following:
 - a. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1).
 - b. Remove two screws (callout 2).
 - c. Release the wire harness from the retainers (callout 3), and then remove the paddle motor assembly.

Figure 6-2044 Remove the assembly

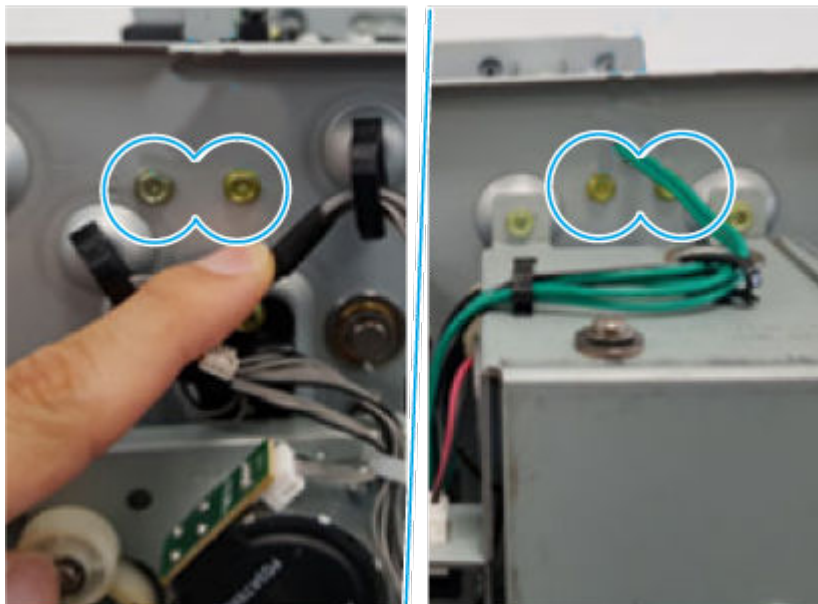


7 Remove the external finisher main output tray top of stack switch

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher main output tray top of stack switch.

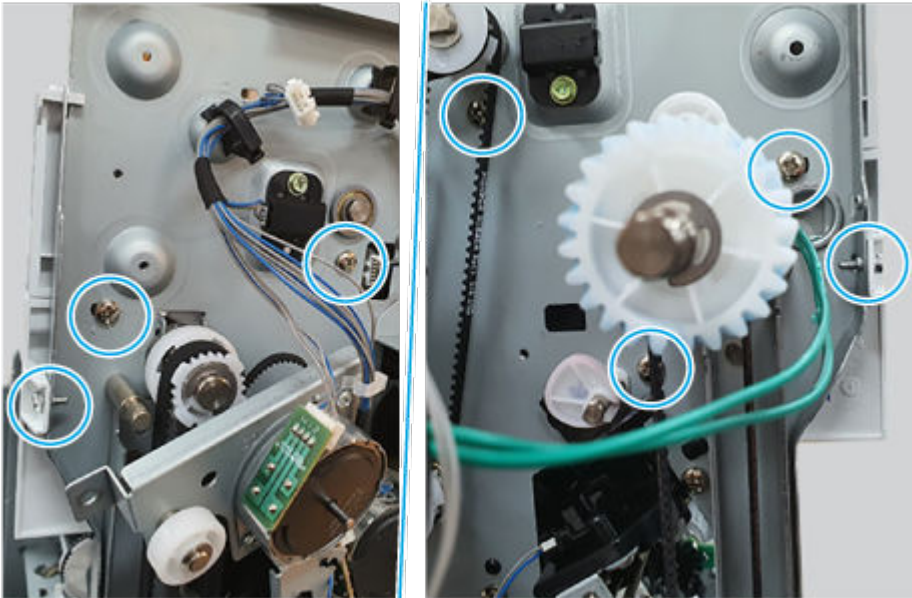
1. Remove four screws, and then remove the frame cover.

Figure 6-2045 Remove the cover



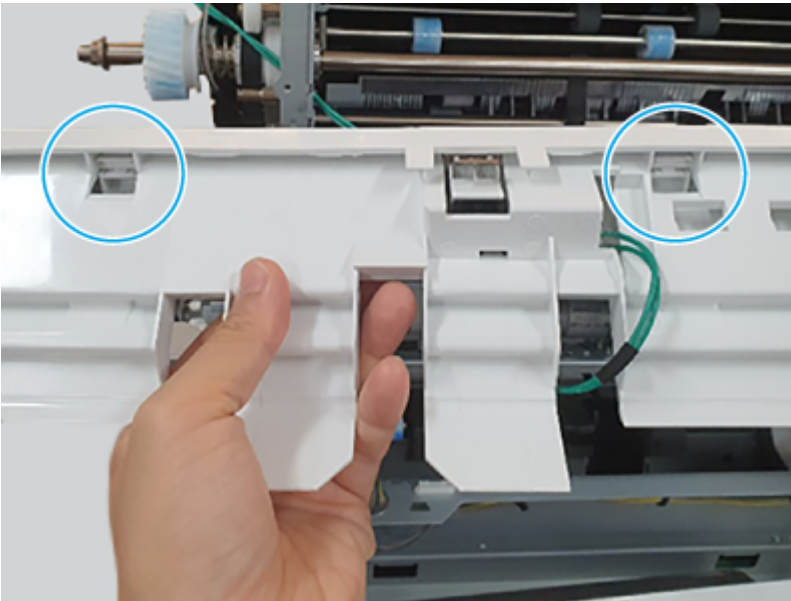
2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the top output tray.

Figure 6-2046 Remove the tray



3. Release two hooks.

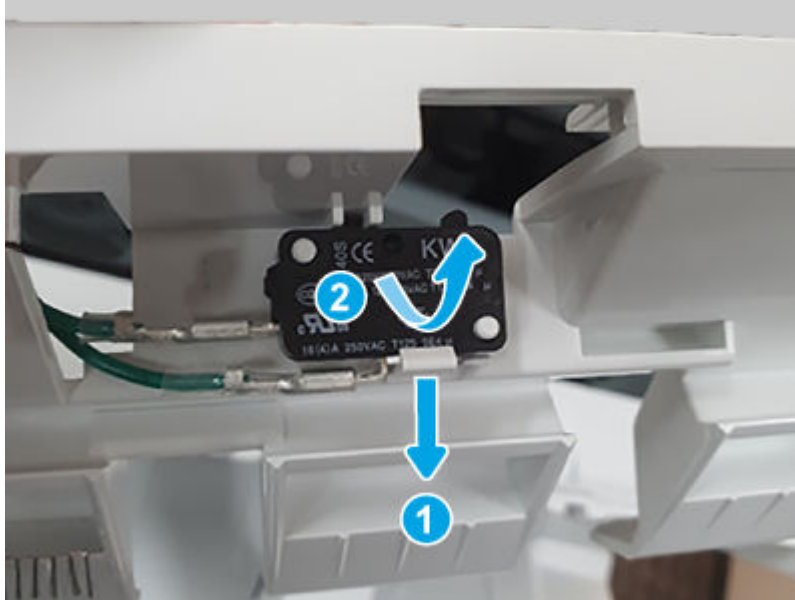
Figure 6-2047 Release two hooks



4. Release one hook, and then separate the sensor from the assembly.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the switch. It is still attached to the finisher by a wire harness and connector.

Figure 6-2048 Release the sensor

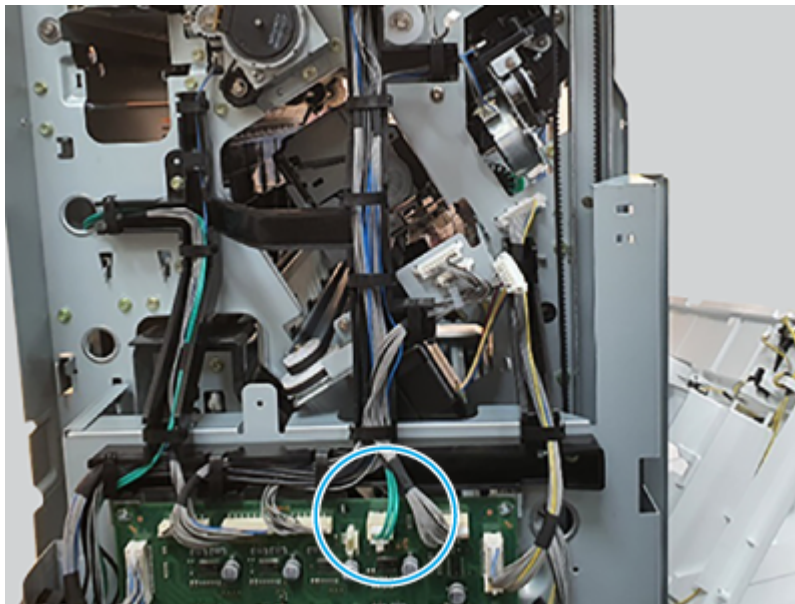


5. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the main output tray top of stack switch.



NOTE: Release the switch wire harness from the retainers as needed to remove the switch.

Figure 6-2049 Remove the switch



8 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.


 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Paper holding unit

Review the external finisher paper holding unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Front and rear paper holding sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher front and rear paper holding sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-280 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Front paper holding sensor)
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Rear paper holding sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

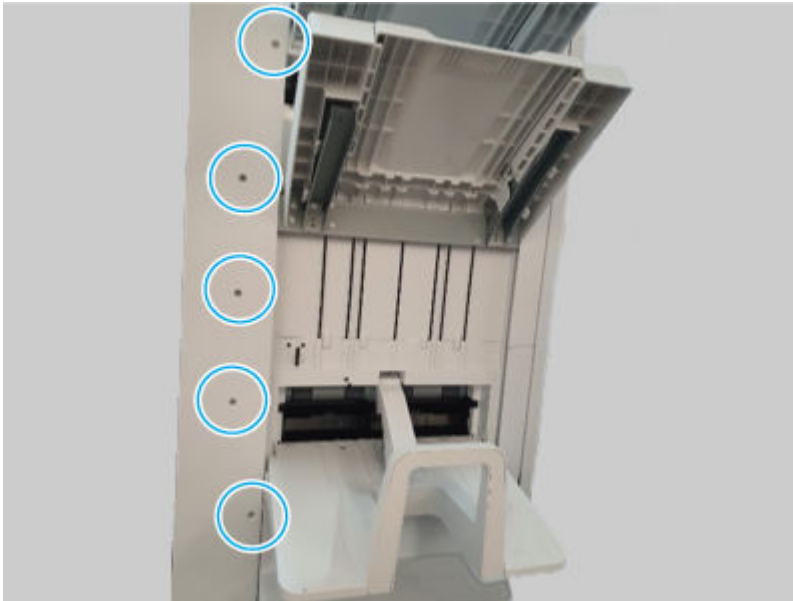
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2050 Remove five screws

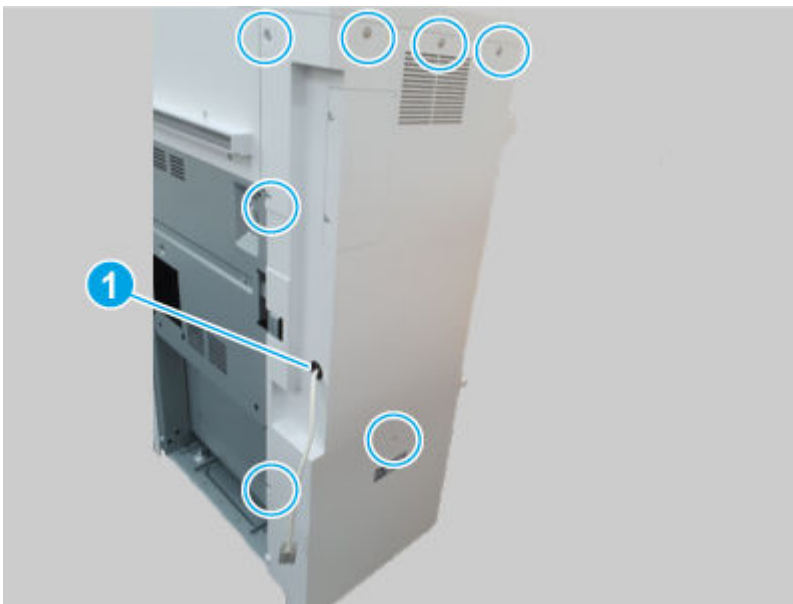


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2051 Remove the cover

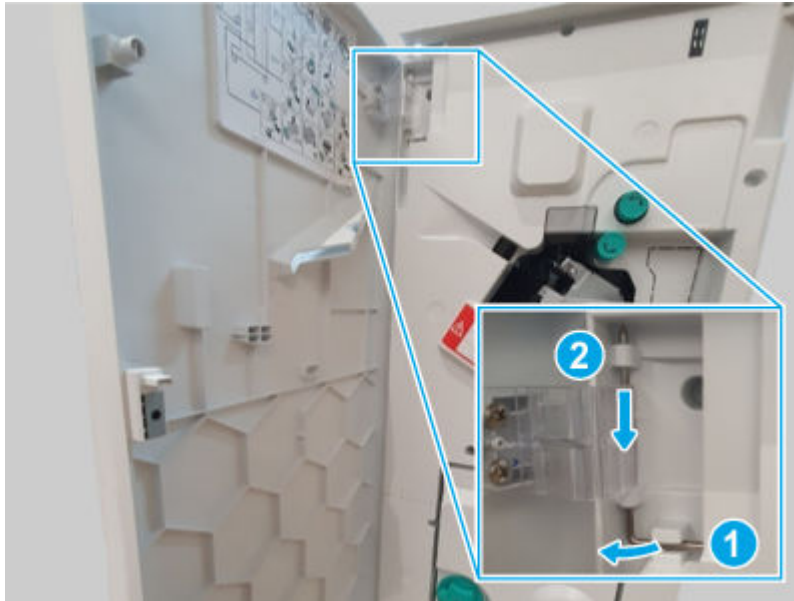


2 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

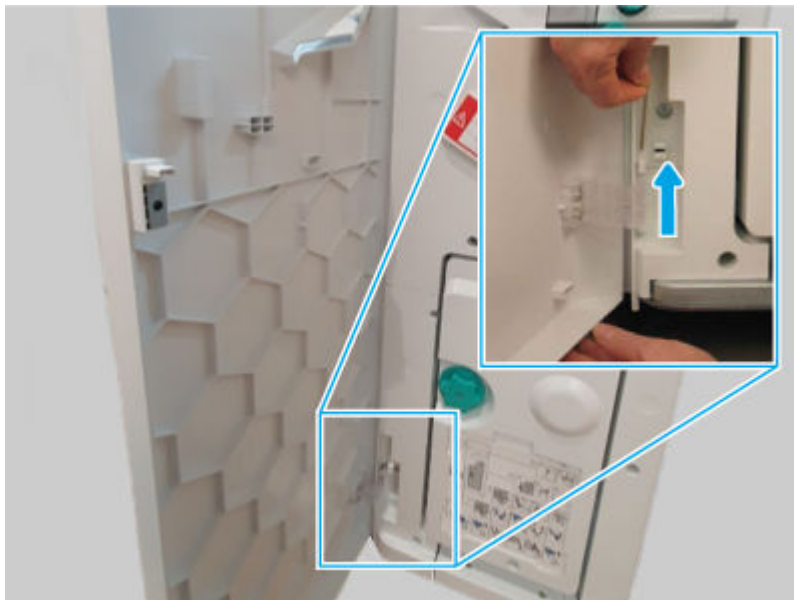
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2052 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2053 Remove the door



3 Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

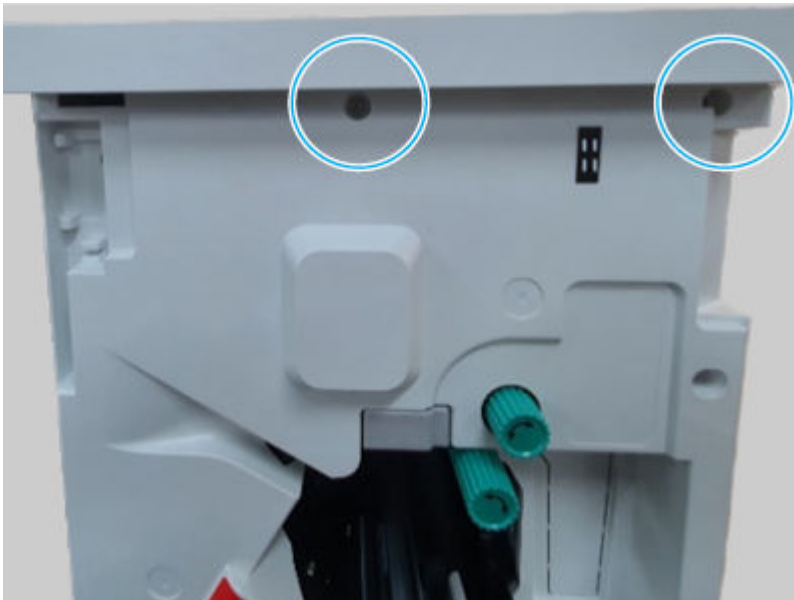
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2054 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2055 Remove the cover

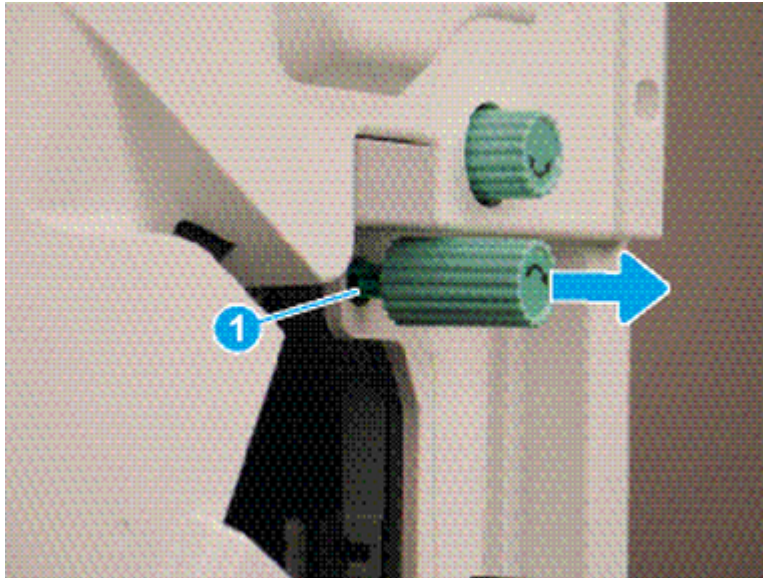


4 Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-2056 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-2057 Remove the cover



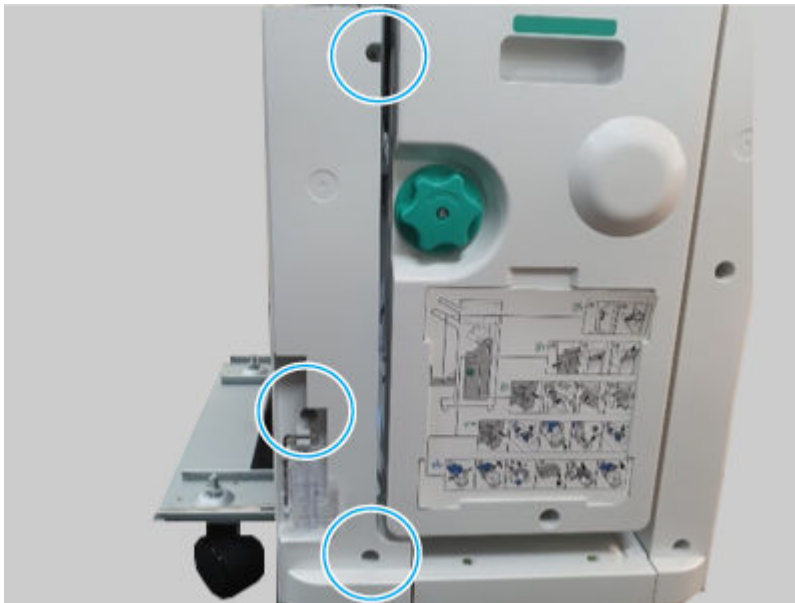
5 Remove the external finisher front lower left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front lower left cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.

2. Remove three screws, and then remove the front lower left cover.

Figure 6-2058 Remove the cover



6 Remove the external finisher caster

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher caster.

⚠ WARNING! The external finisher is not stable when one or more casters are removed and can easily tip over. To avoid personal injury or damage to the finisher, make sure to fully support the finisher when removing a caster.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.
2. Remove one fix nut.

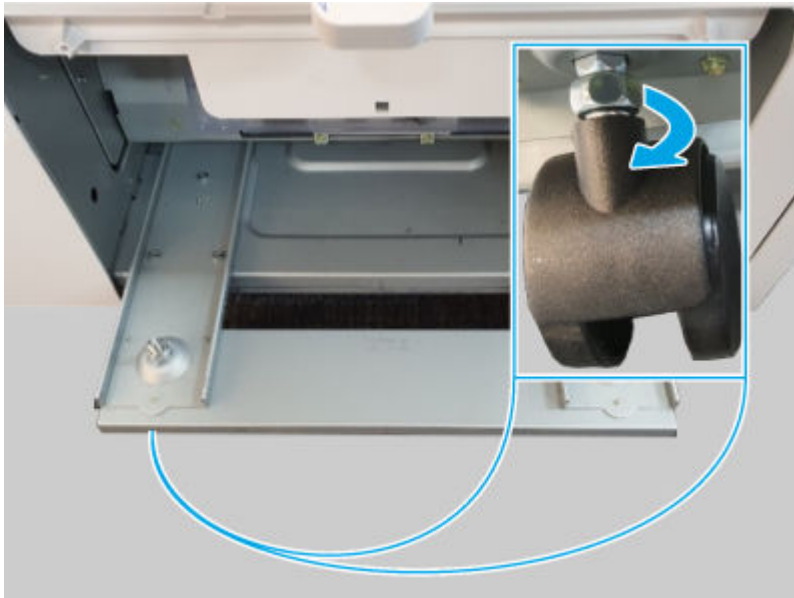
🔧 NOTE: Use a 12mm spanner wrench to remove the nut.

Figure 6-2059 Remove the nut



3. Rotate the caster as shown below to remove it. Repeat these steps for the remaining casters as needed.

Figure 6-2060 Remove the caster

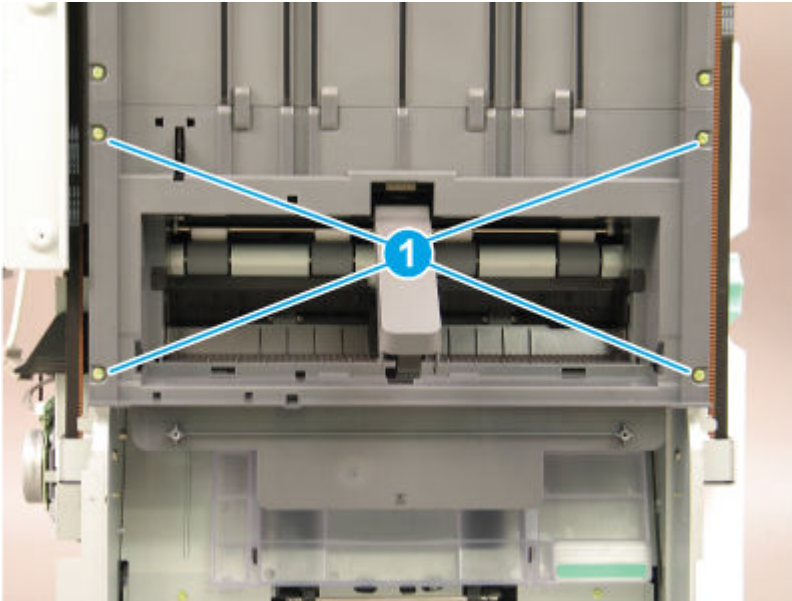


7 Remove the external finisher left lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left lower cover.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2061 Remove four screws

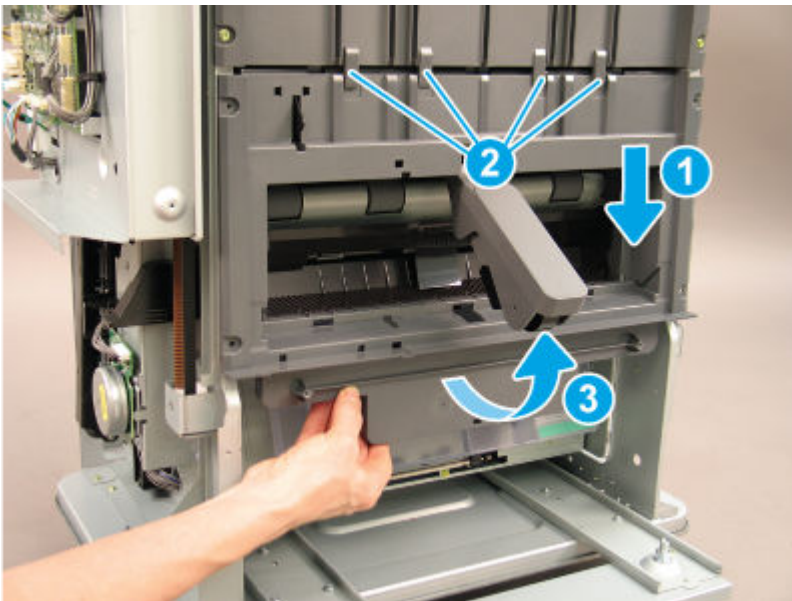


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

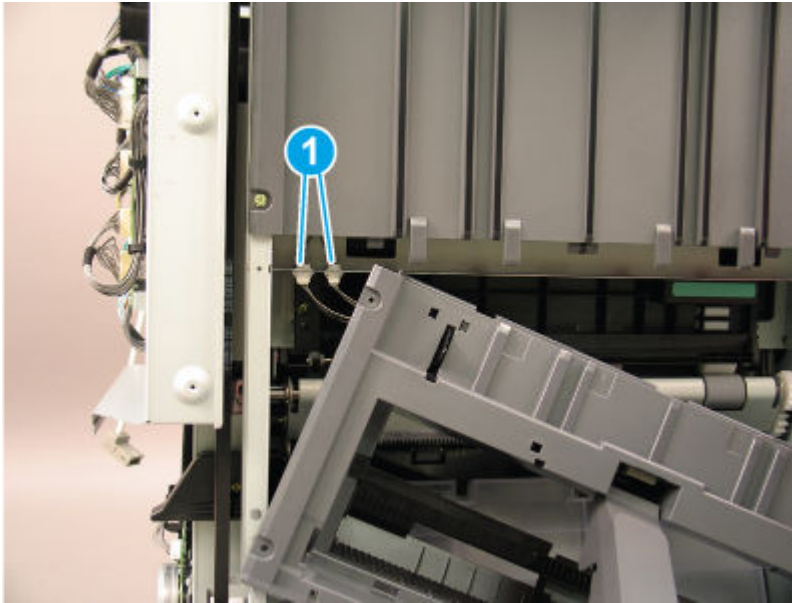
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-2062 Release the cover



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the left lower cover.

Figure 6-2063 Remove the cover

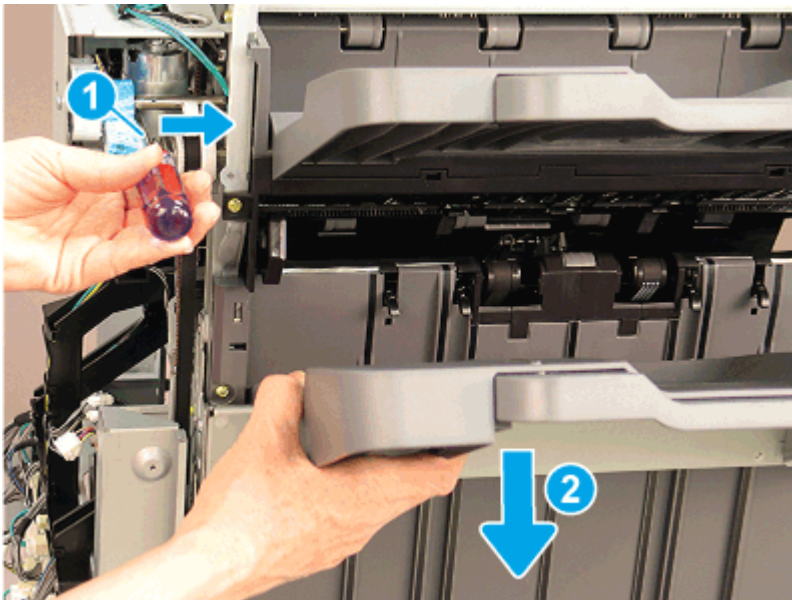


8 Remove the external finisher left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left upper cover.

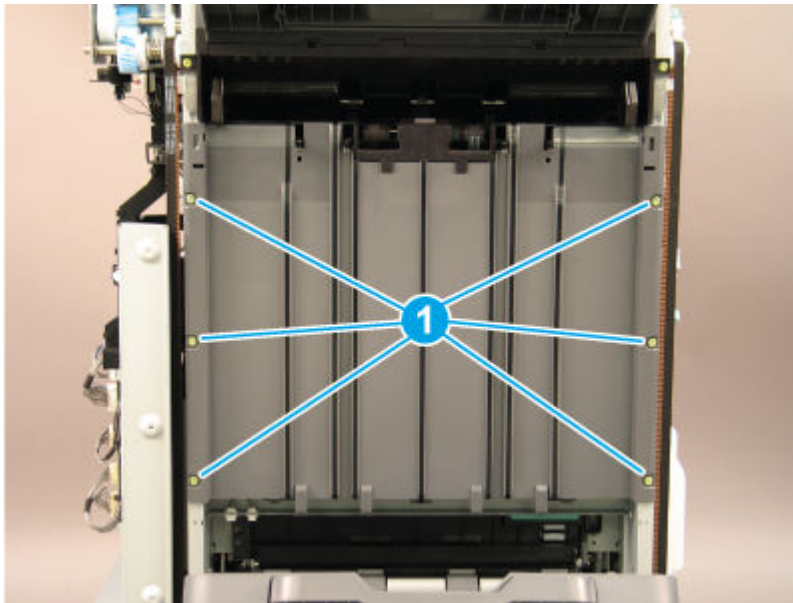
1. Bring the main output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 6-2064 Lower the tray



2. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2065 Remove six screws

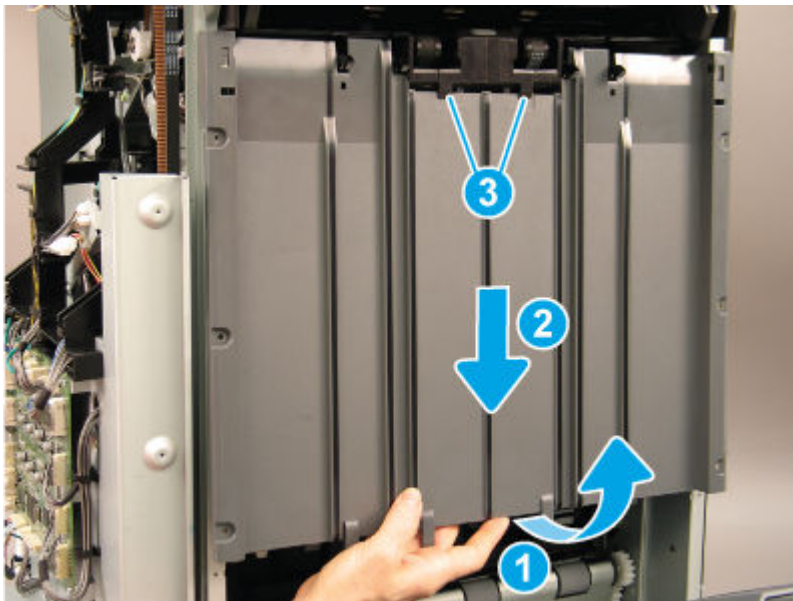


3. Rotate the lower edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

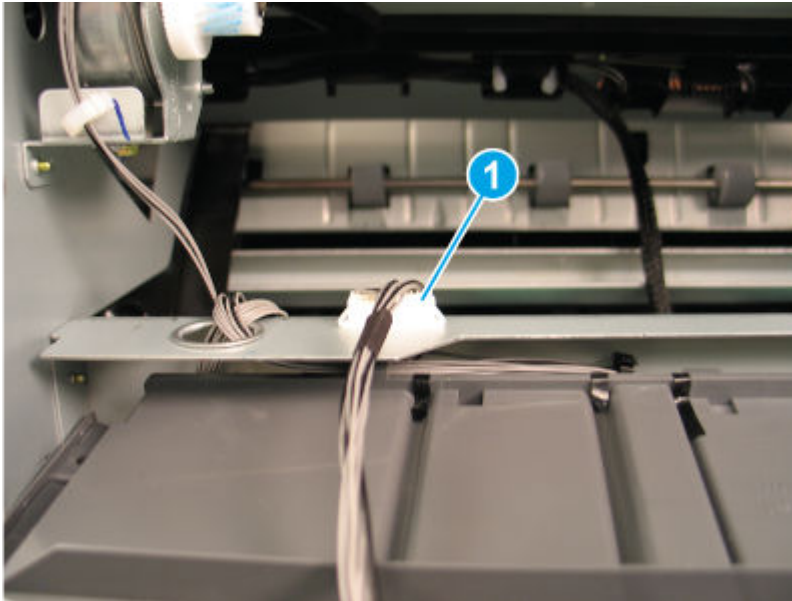
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-2066 Release the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the left upper cover.

Figure 6-2067 Remove the cover

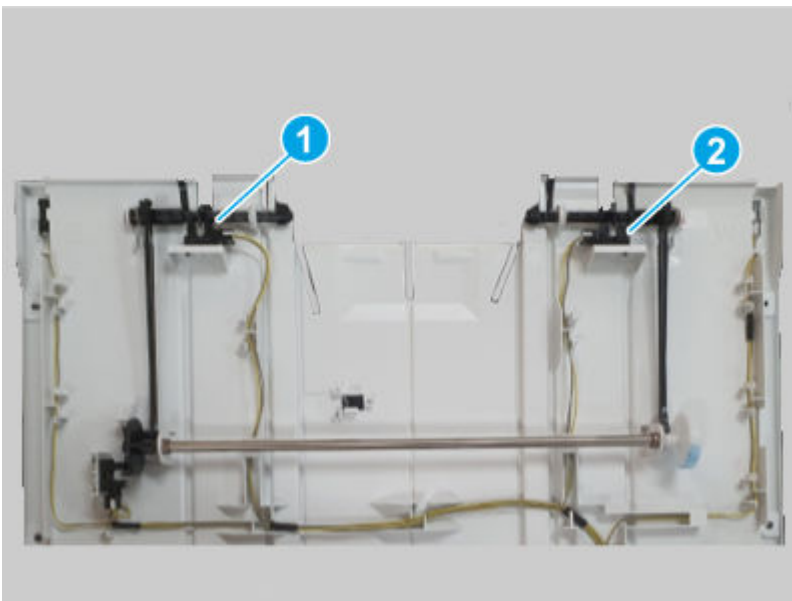


9 Remove the external finisher front and rear paper holding sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front and rear paper holding sensor.

1. Locate the desired sensor.
 - **Callout 1:** Front paper holding sensor
 - **Callout 1:** Rear paper holding sensor

Figure 6-2068 Locate the sensor



2. Do the following:
 - Disconnect one connector (callout 1).
 - Release two hooks (callout 2).
 - Slide the sensor as shown below (callout 3).
 - Remove the front paper holding sensor.


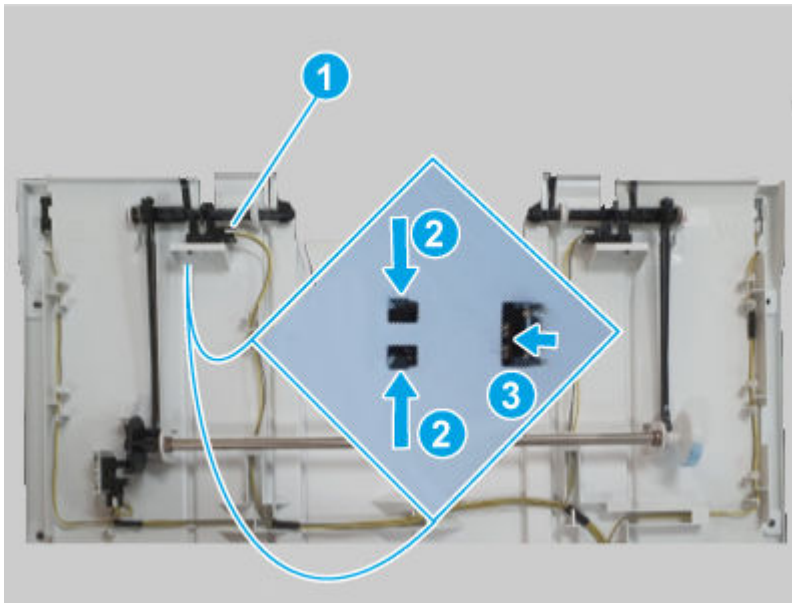
 **NOTE:** Repeat this step to remove the rear paper holding sensor if necessary


Figure 6-2069 Remove the sensor



10 **Unpack the replacement assembly**



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using

disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
-



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Paper holding home sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher paper holding home sensor.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-281 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Paper holding home sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

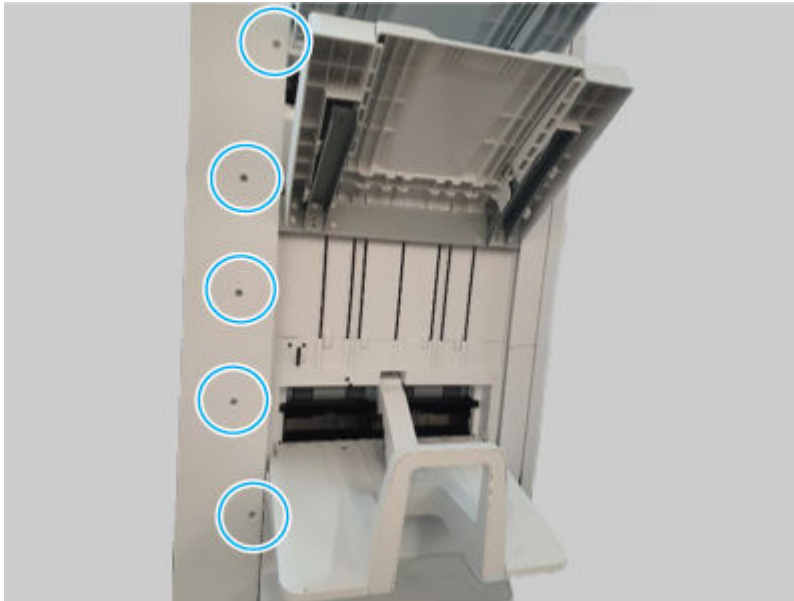
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2070 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


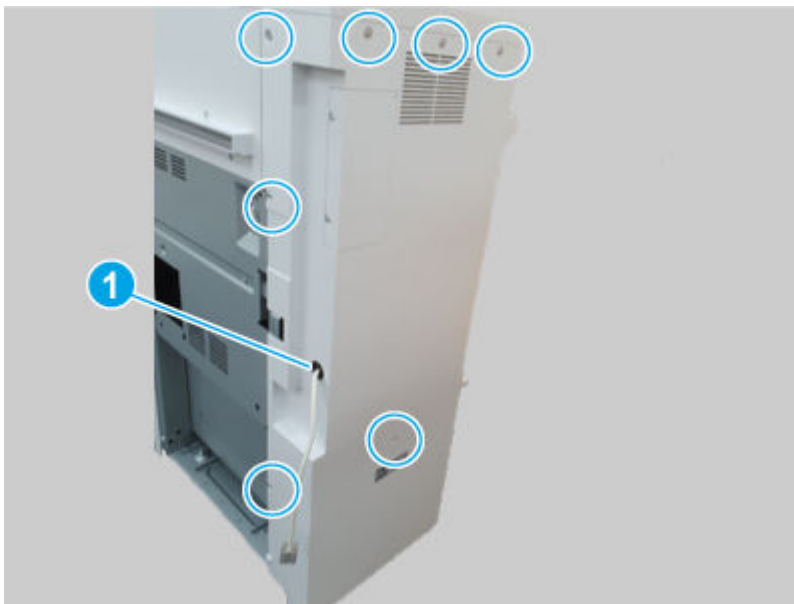
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2071 Remove the cover

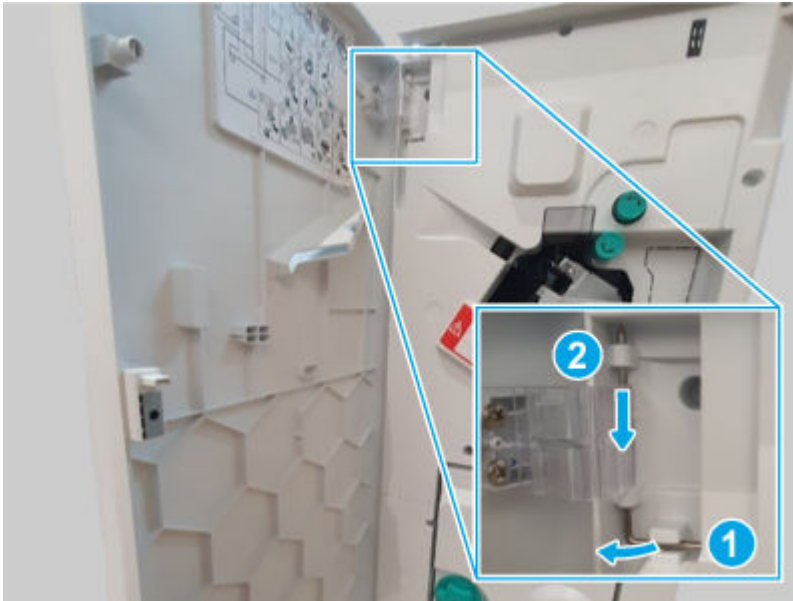


2 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

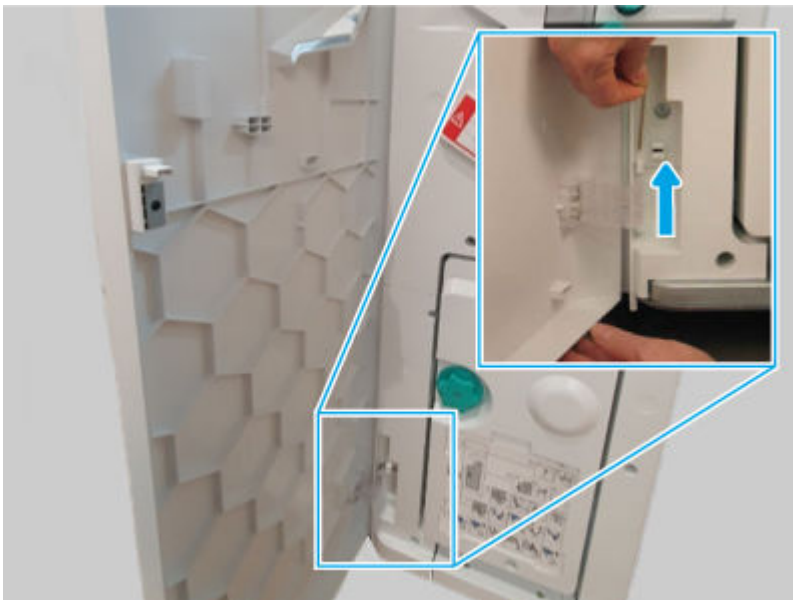
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2072 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2073 Remove the door



3 Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

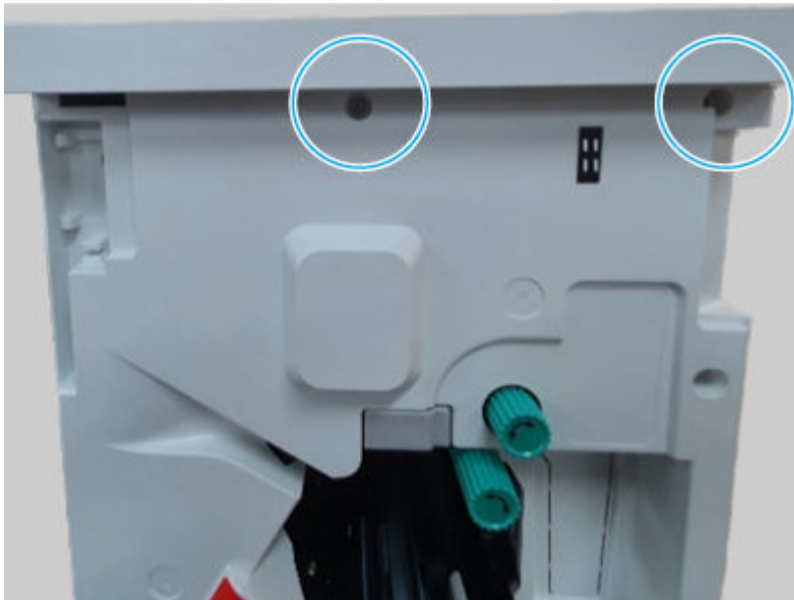
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2074 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2075 Remove the cover

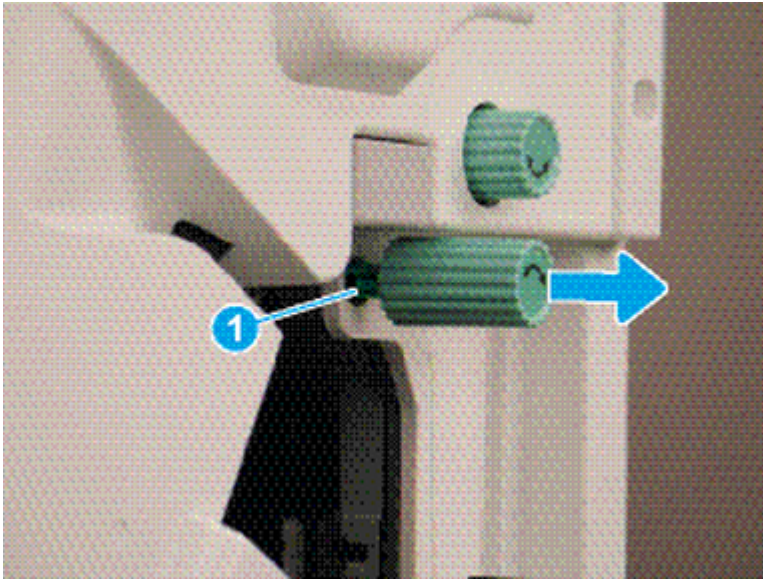


4 Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-2076 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-2077 Remove the cover



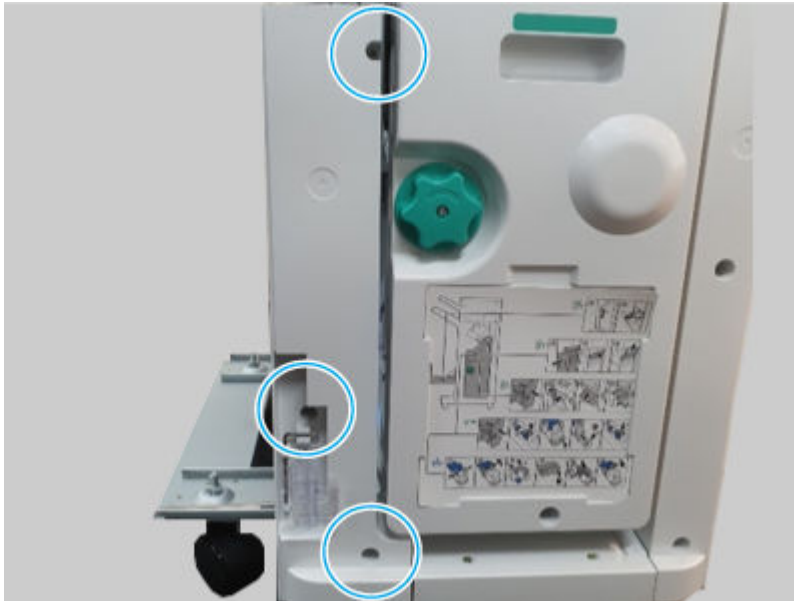
5 Remove the external finisher front lower left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front lower left cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.

2. Remove three screws, and then remove the front lower left cover.

Figure 6-2078 Remove the cover



6 Remove the external finisher caster

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher caster.

⚠ WARNING! The external finisher is not stable when one or more casters are removed and can easily tip over. To avoid personal injury or damage to the finisher, make sure to fully support the finisher when removing a caster.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.
2. Remove one fix nut.

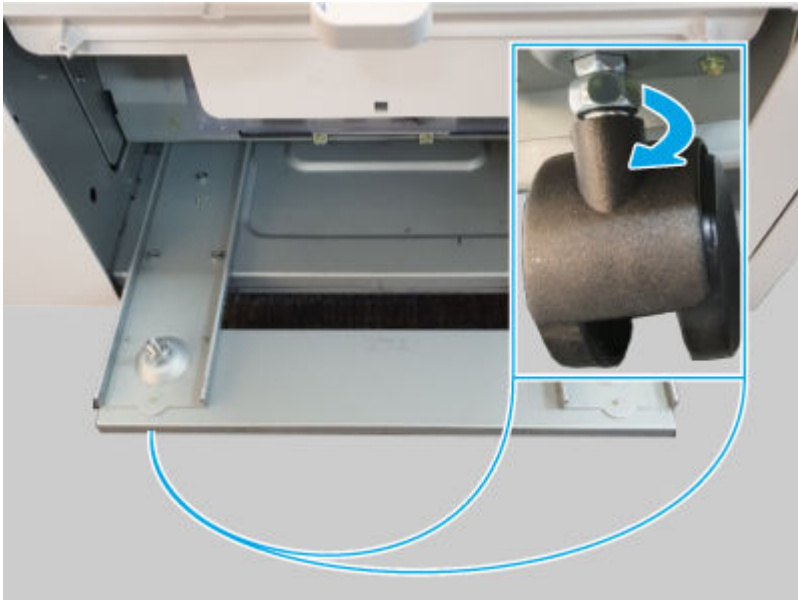
🔧 NOTE: Use a 12mm spanner wrench to remove the nut.

Figure 6-2079 Remove the nut



3. Rotate the caster as shown below to remove it. Repeat these steps for the remaining casters as needed.

Figure 6-2080 Remove the caster

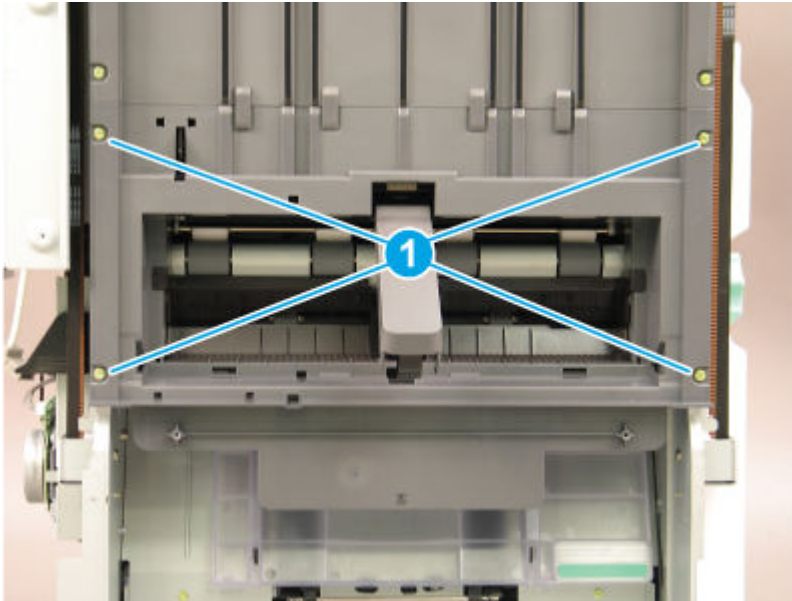


7 Remove the external finisher left lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left lower cover.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2081 Remove four screws

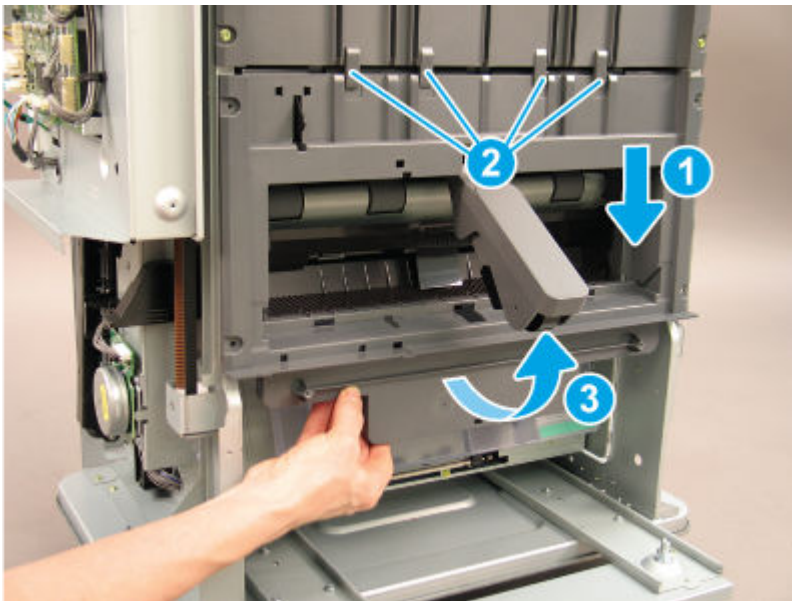


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

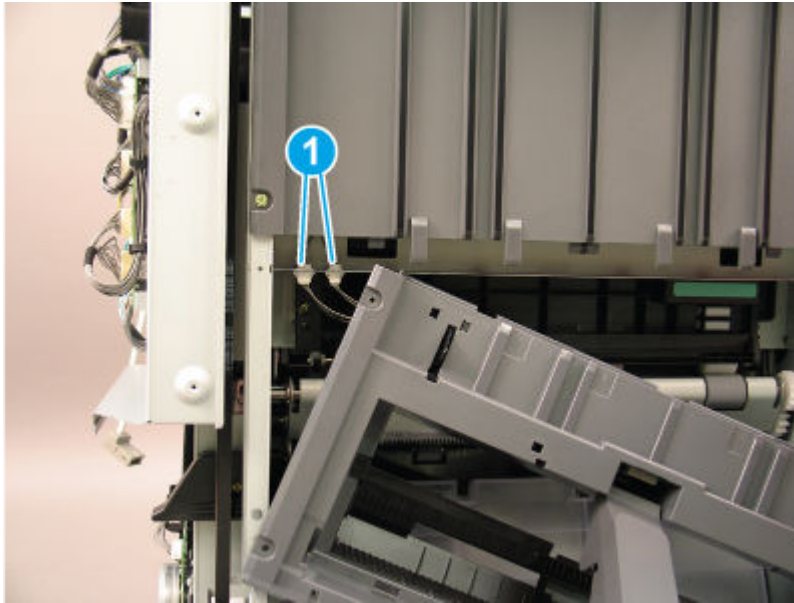
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-2082 Release the cover



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the left lower cover.

Figure 6-2083 Remove the cover

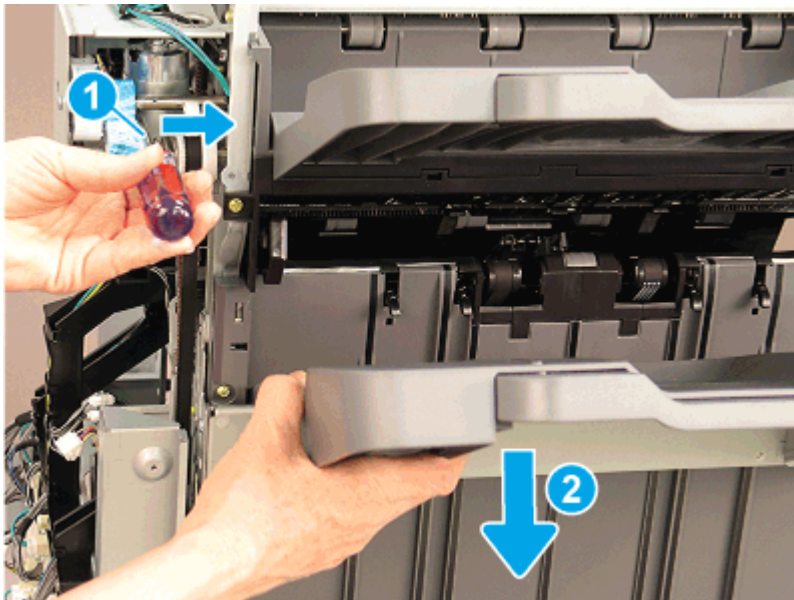


8 Remove the external finisher left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left upper cover.

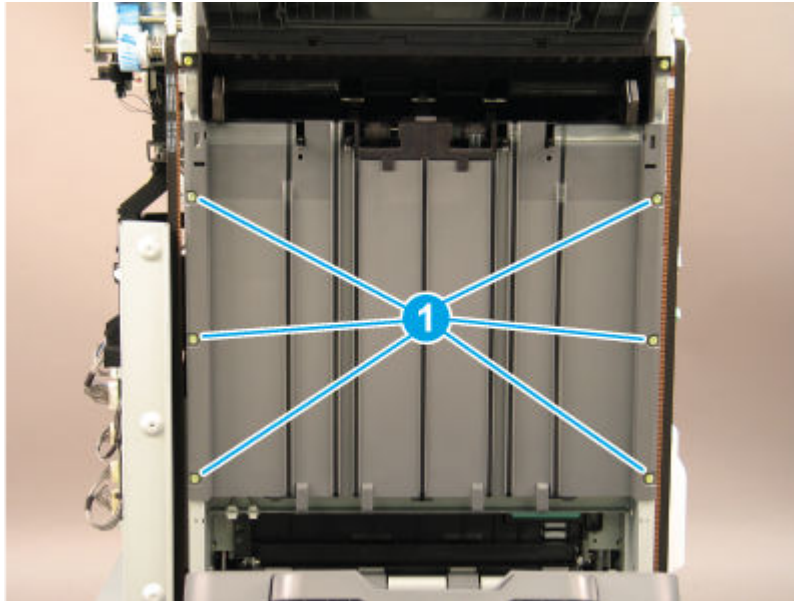
1. Bring the main output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 6-2084 Lower the tray



2. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2085 Remove six screws

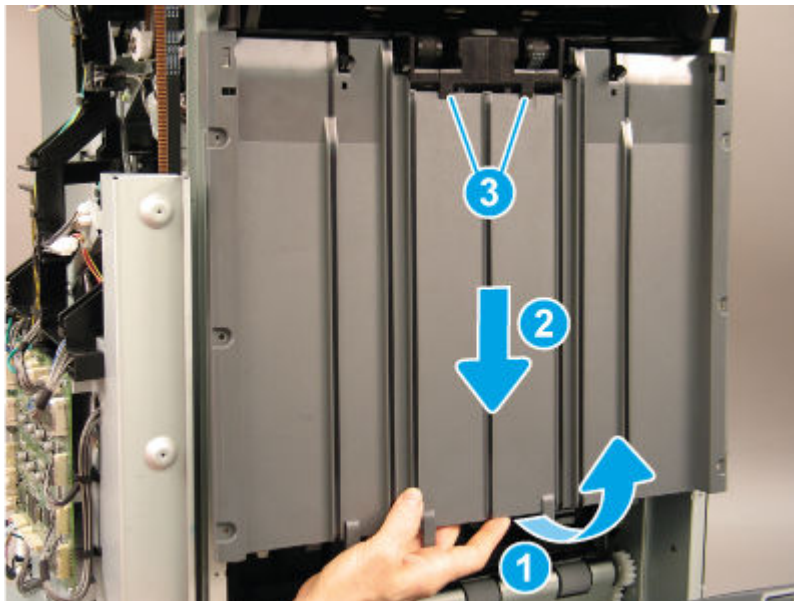


3. Rotate the lower edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

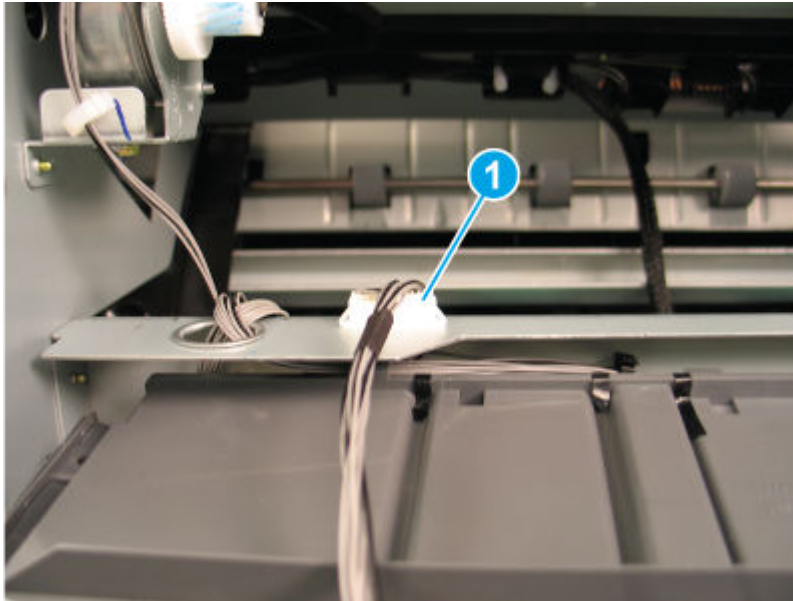
Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-2086 Release the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the left upper cover.

Figure 6-2087 Remove the cover

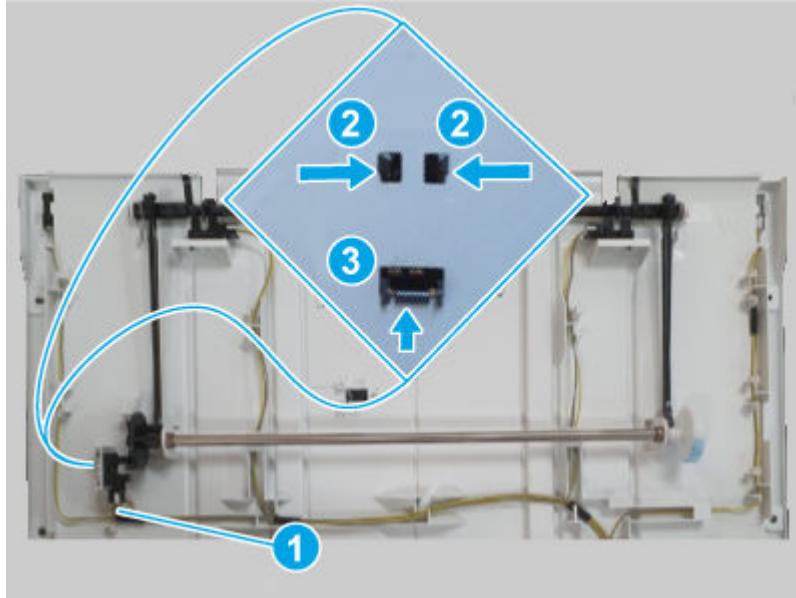


9 Remove the external finisher paper holding home sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher paper holding home sensor.

- Do the following:
 - Disconnect one connector (callout 1).
 - Release two hooks (callout 2).
 - Slide the sensor as shown below (callout 3).
 - Remove the paper holding home sensor.


Figure 6-2088 Remove the sensor



10 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Paper holding motor drive assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher paper holding motor drive assembly.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-282 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01414A	Paper holding motor drive assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

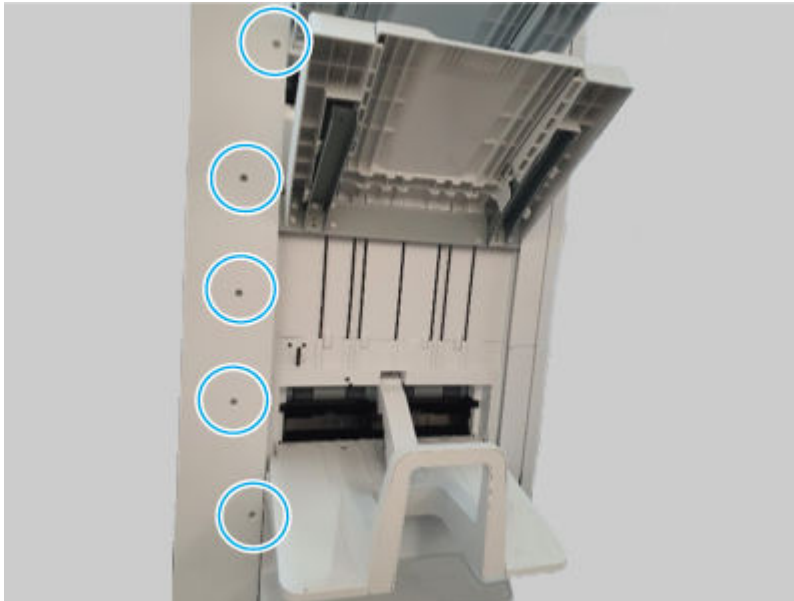
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2089 Remove five screws

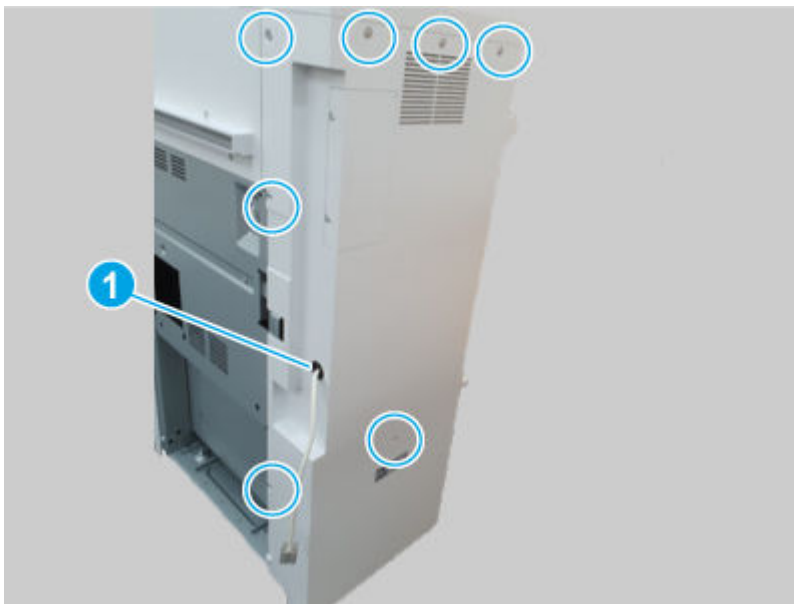


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2090 Remove the cover

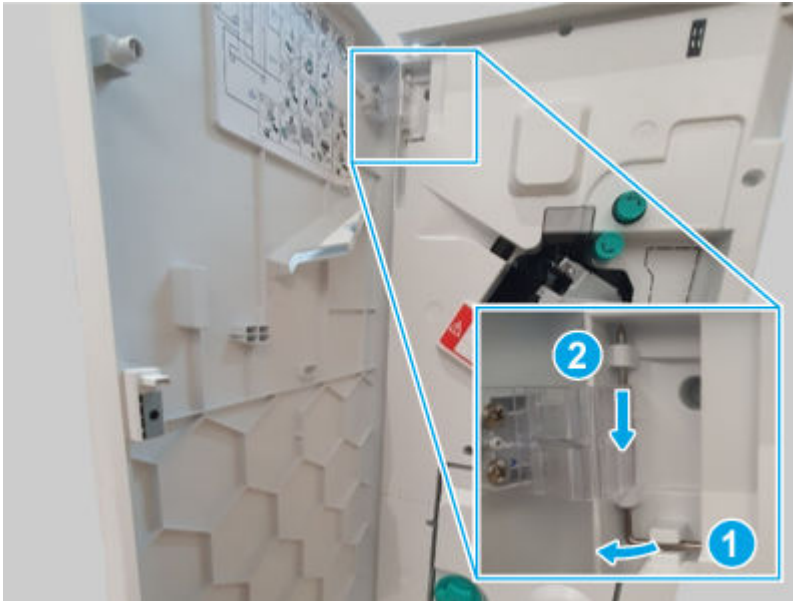


2 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

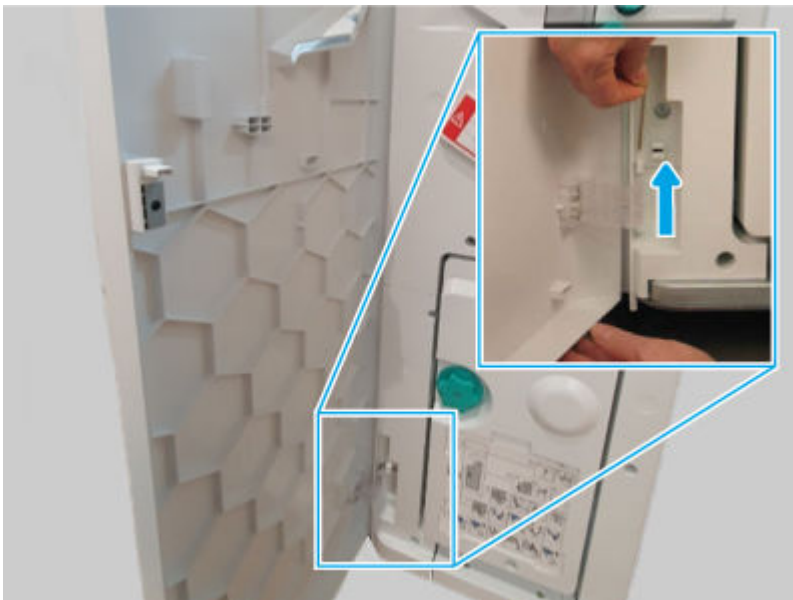
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2091 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2092 Remove the door



3 Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2093 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2094 Remove the cover

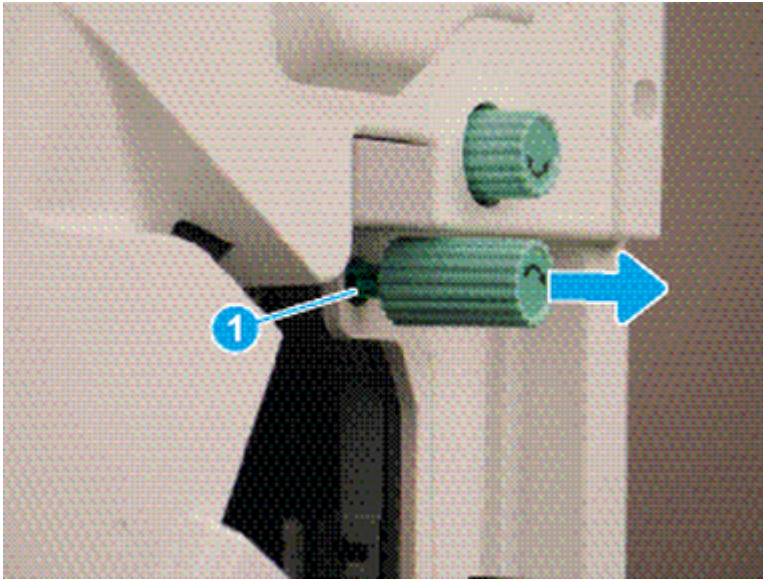


4 Remove the external finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front cover.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the jam-access knob away from the finisher to remove it.

Figure 6-2095 Remove the knob



2. Remove five screws, and then remove the front cover.

Figure 6-2096 Remove the cover



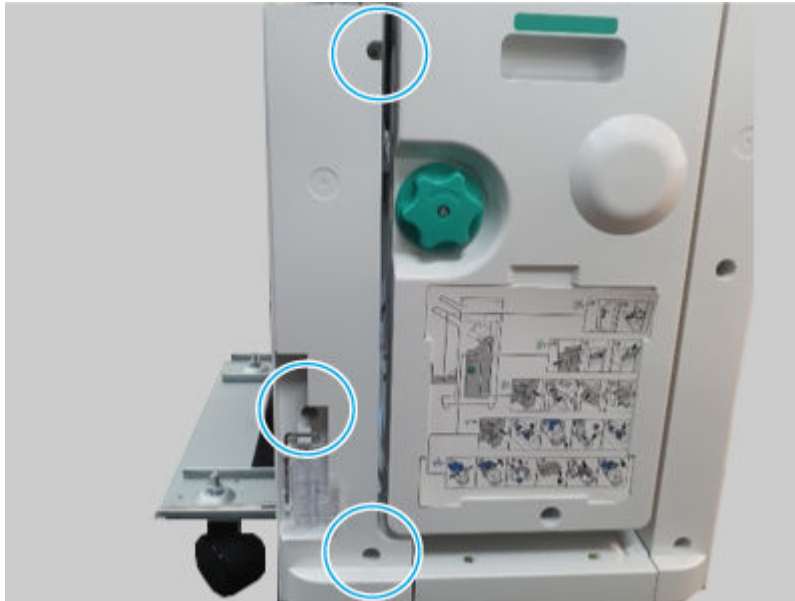
5 Remove the external finisher front lower left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front lower left cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.

2. Remove three screws, and then remove the front lower left cover.

Figure 6-2097 Remove the cover



6 Remove the external finisher caster

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher caster.

⚠ WARNING! The external finisher is not stable when one or more casters are removed and can easily tip over. To avoid personal injury or damage to the finisher, make sure to fully support the finisher when removing a caster.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.
2. Remove one fix nut.

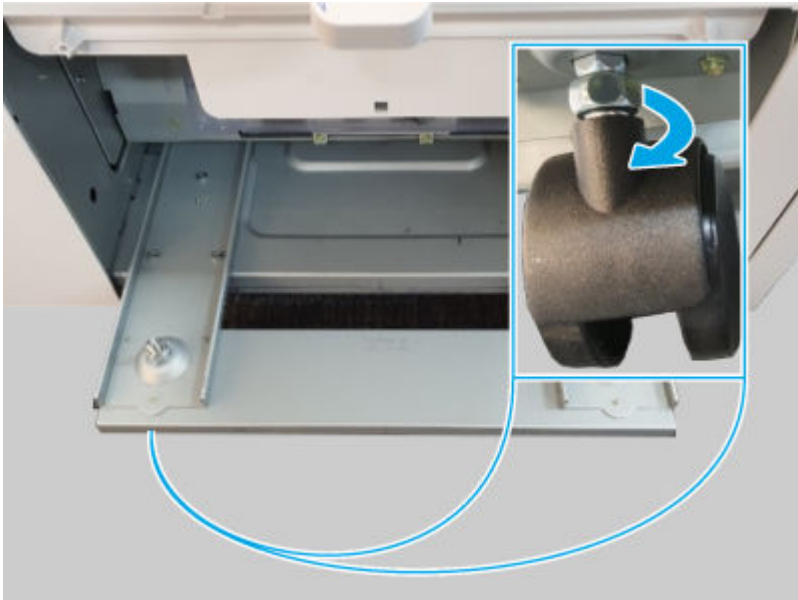
🔧 NOTE: Use a 12mm spanner wrench to remove the nut.

Figure 6-2098 Remove the nut



3. Rotate the caster as shown below to remove it. Repeat these steps for the remaining casters as needed.

Figure 6-2099 Remove the caster

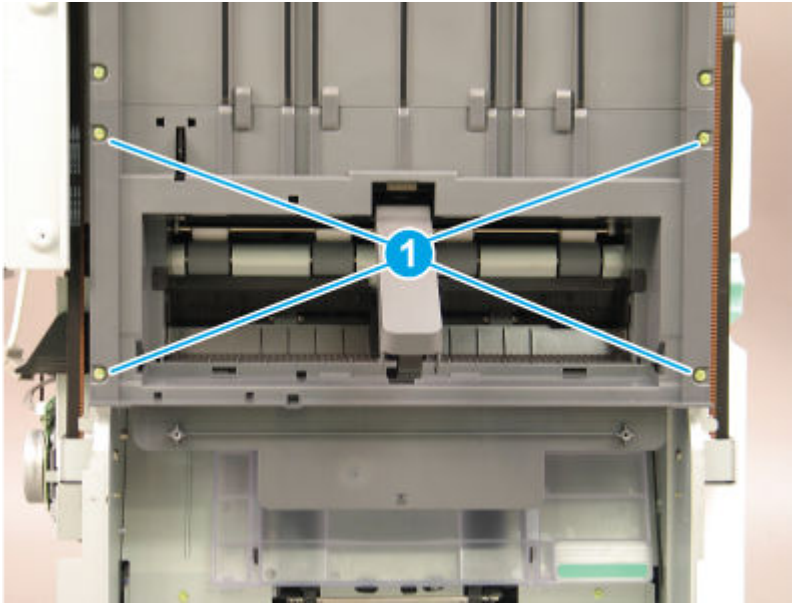


7 Remove the external finisher left lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left lower cover.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2100 Remove four screws

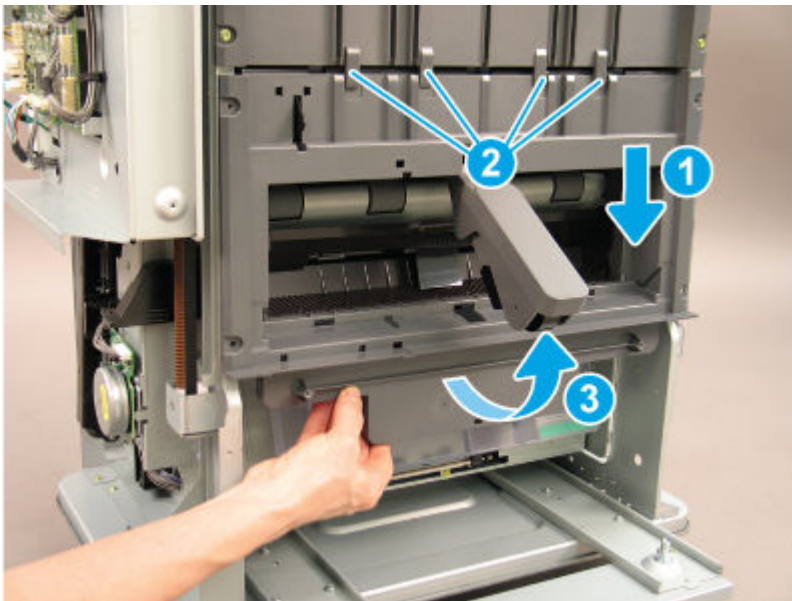


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

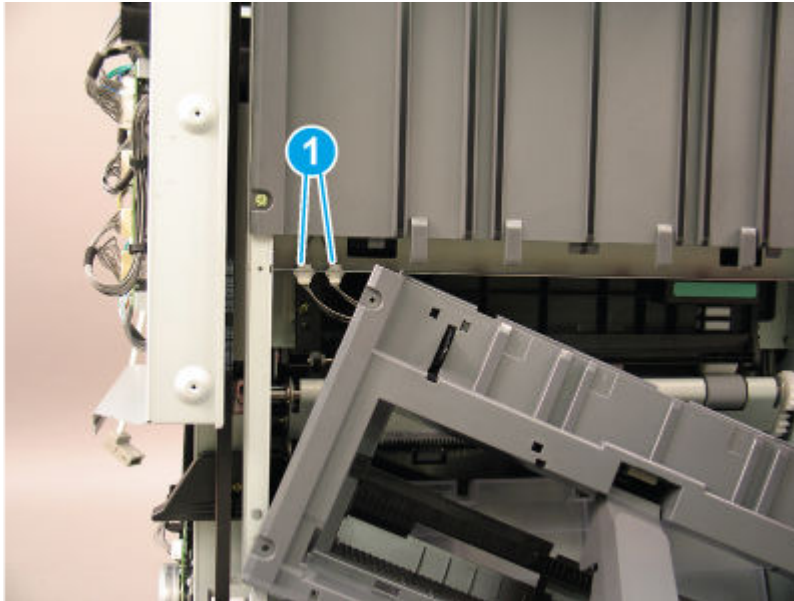
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-2101 Release the cover



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the left lower cover.

Figure 6-2102 Remove the cover

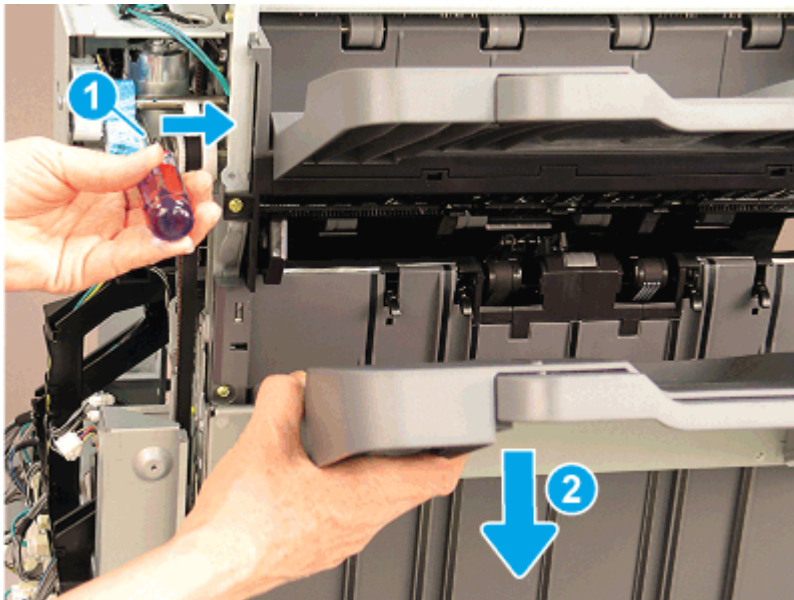


8 Remove the external finisher left upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left upper cover.

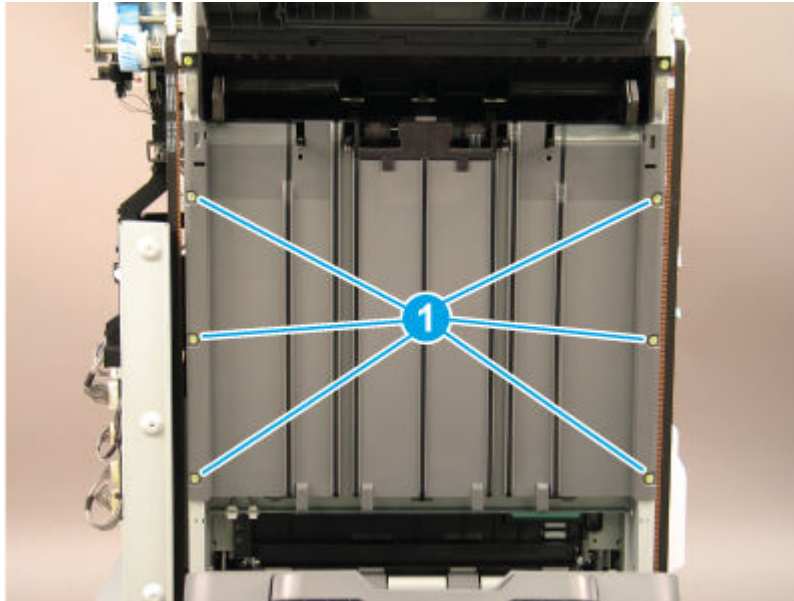
1. Bring the main output tray down by positioning the shaft of a screwdriver on the clutch (callout 1) and gently pressing to the right to release the clutch. Hold the clutch in the released position and lower the tray (callout 2) to the lowest position.

Figure 6-2103 Lower the tray



2. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2104 Remove six screws

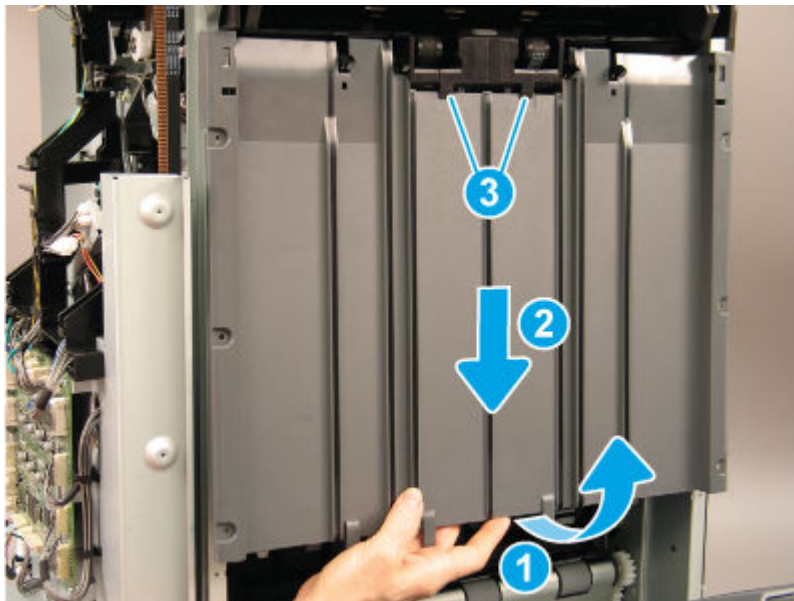


3. Rotate the lower edge of the cover away from the finisher (callout 1), and then slide the cover down (callout 2) to release it from two tabs (callout 3).

CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

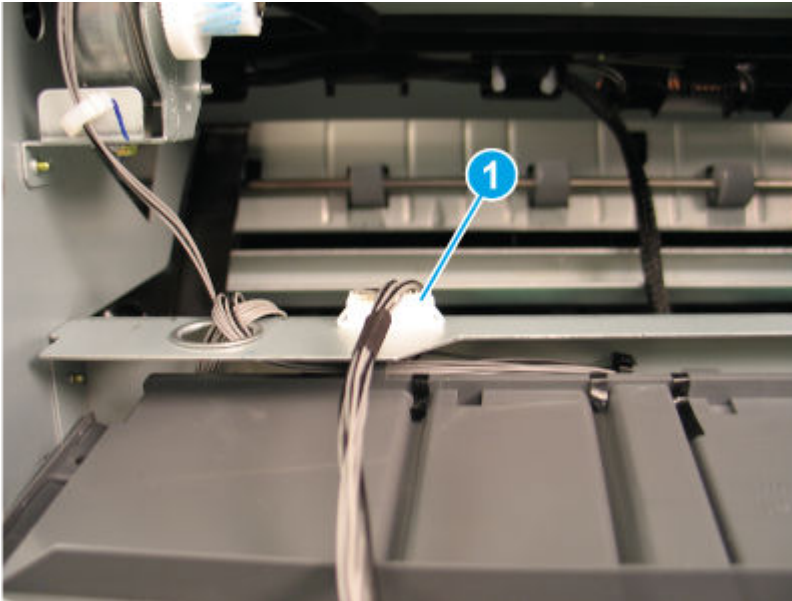
Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the two tabs (callout 3) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-2105 Release the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the left upper cover.

Figure 6-2106 Remove the cover

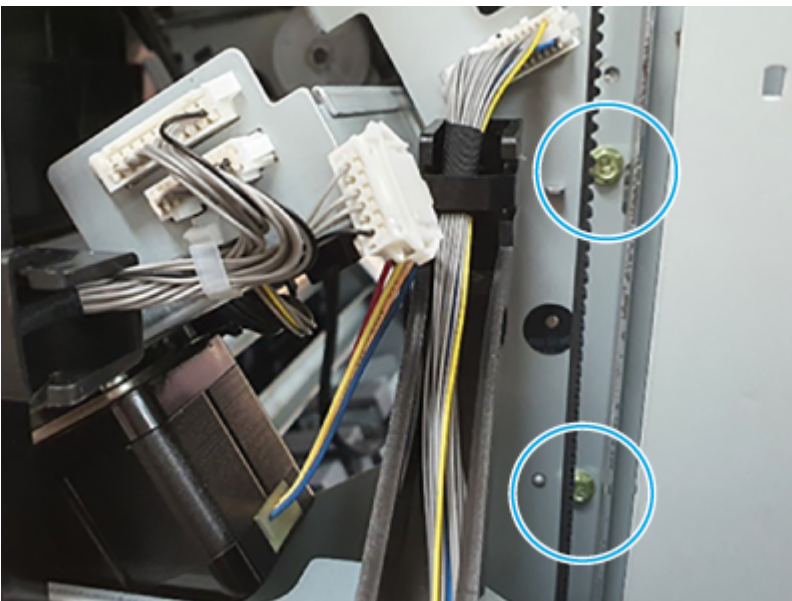


9 Remove the external finisher paper holding motor drive assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher paper holding motor drive assembly.

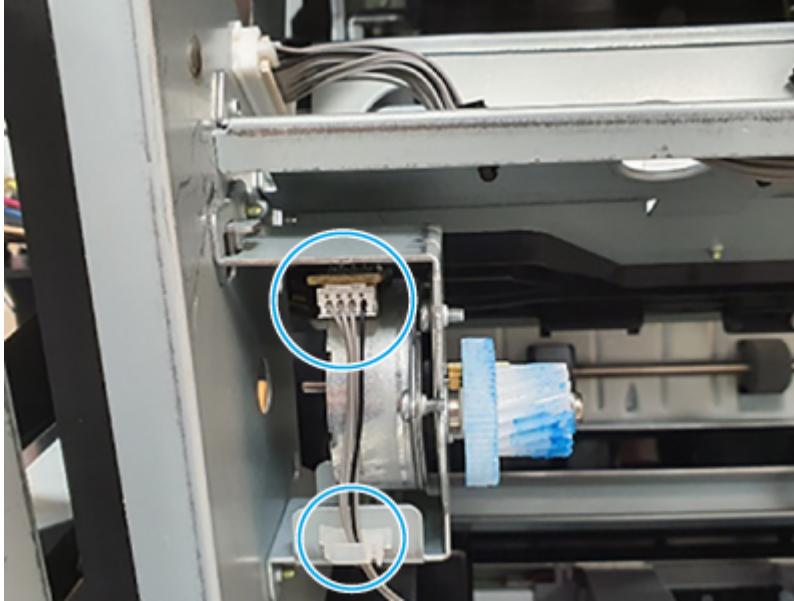
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2107 Remove two screws



2. Disconnect one connector, release the wire harness from the retainer, and then remove the paper holding motor drive assembly.

Figure 6-2108 Remove the assembly



10 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Buffer unit

Review the external finisher buffer unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Buffer solenoid assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher buffer solenoid assembly.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-283 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01675A	Buffer solenoid assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2109 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2110 Remove the cover



2 Remove the external finisher right upper cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher right upper cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.

2. Remove six screws, and then remove the right upper cover.

Figure 6-2111 Remove the cover

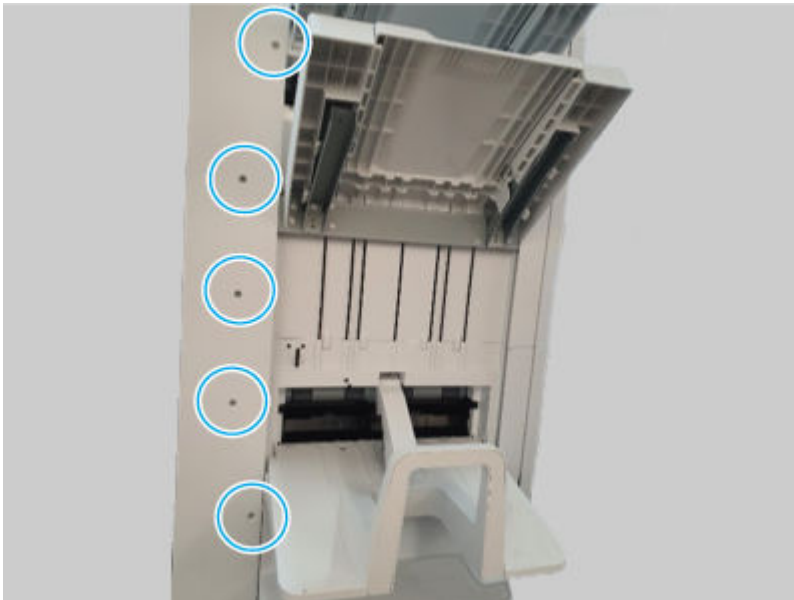


3 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2112 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2113 Remove the cover

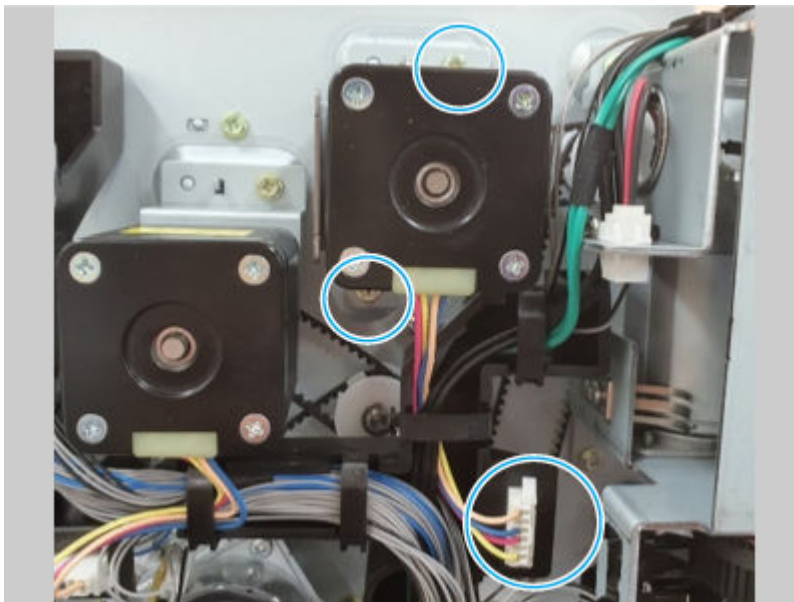


4 Remove the external finisher exit motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher exit motor assembly.

- Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the exit motor assembly.

Figure 6-2114 Remove the assembly

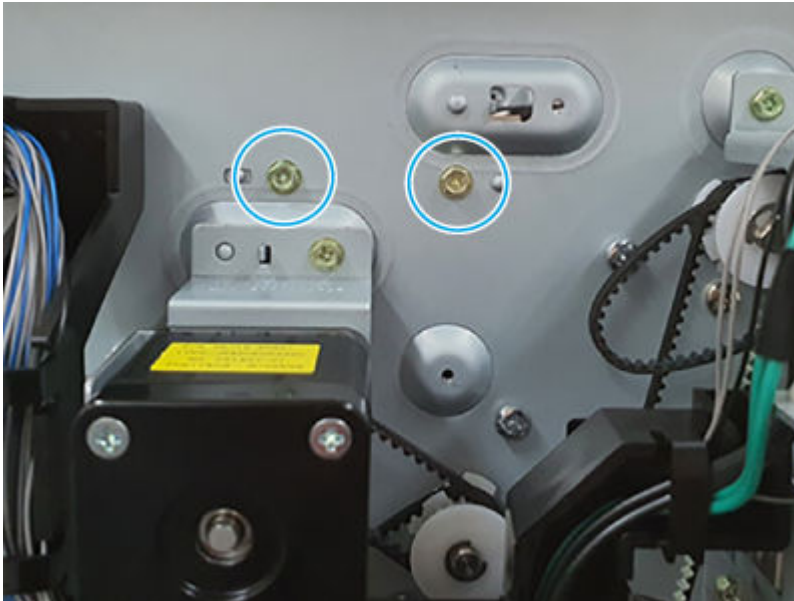


5 Remove the external finisher top jam cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top jam cover assembly.

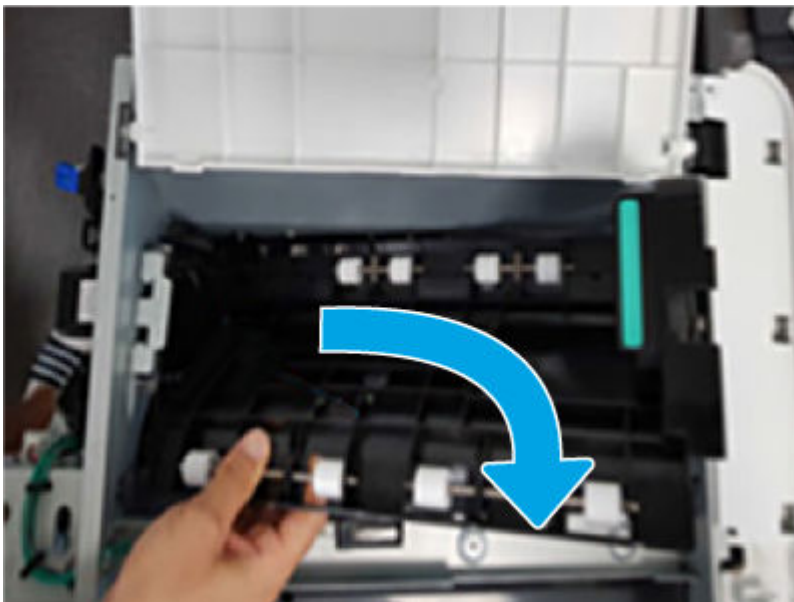
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2115 Remove two screws



2. Pull the top jam cover assembly out of the finisher.

Figure 6-2116 Remove the assembly

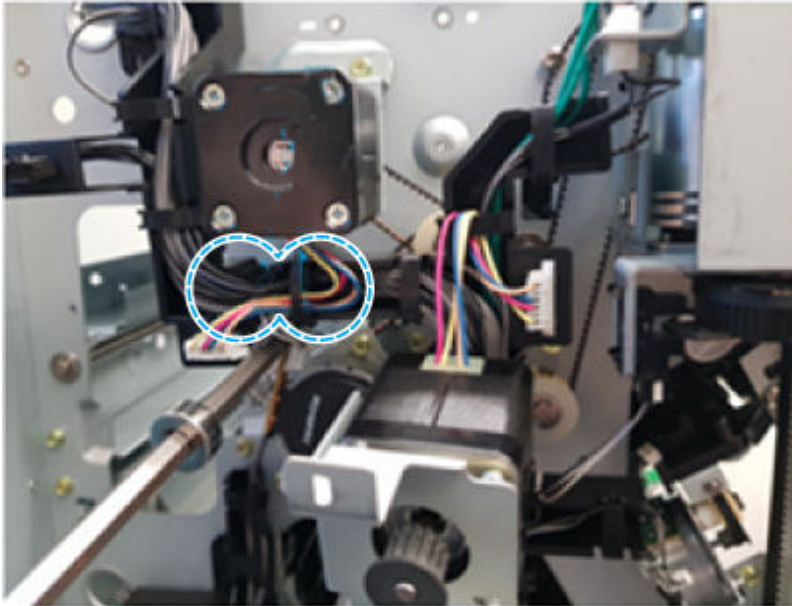


6 Remove the external finisher buffer solenoid assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher buffer solenoid assembly.

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2117 Remove two screws



2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the buffer solenoid assembly.


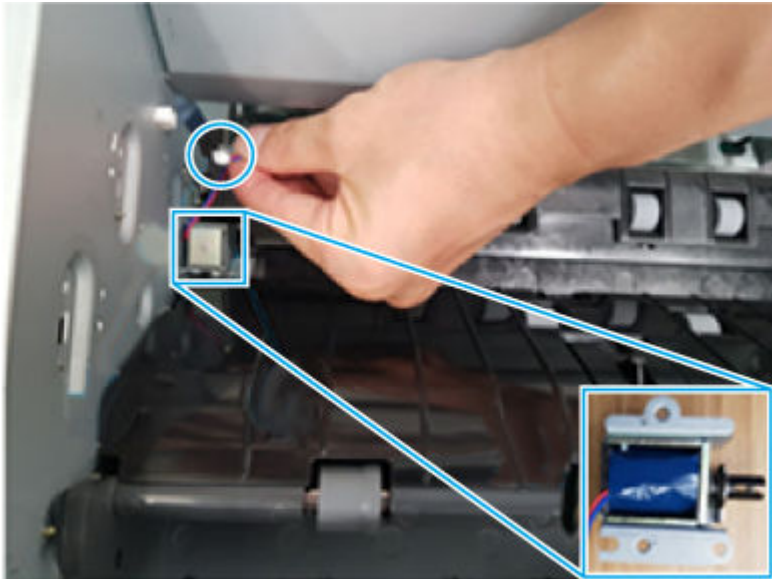
 **NOTE:** Release the wire harness as necessary to remove the solenoid assembly.


Figure 6-2118 Remove the assembly





7 **Unpack the replacement assembly**


Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Buffer motor

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher buffer motor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-284 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01152A	Drive-motor step (Buffer motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

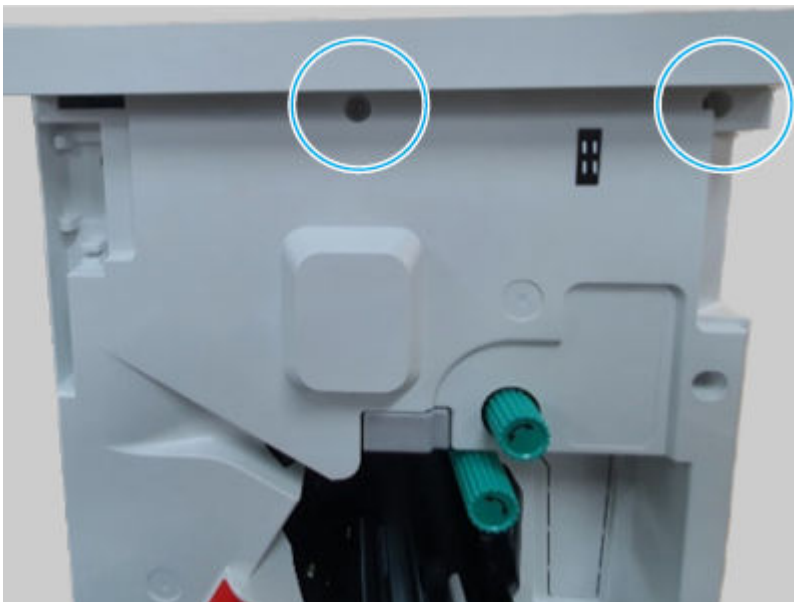
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2119 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2120 Remove the cover

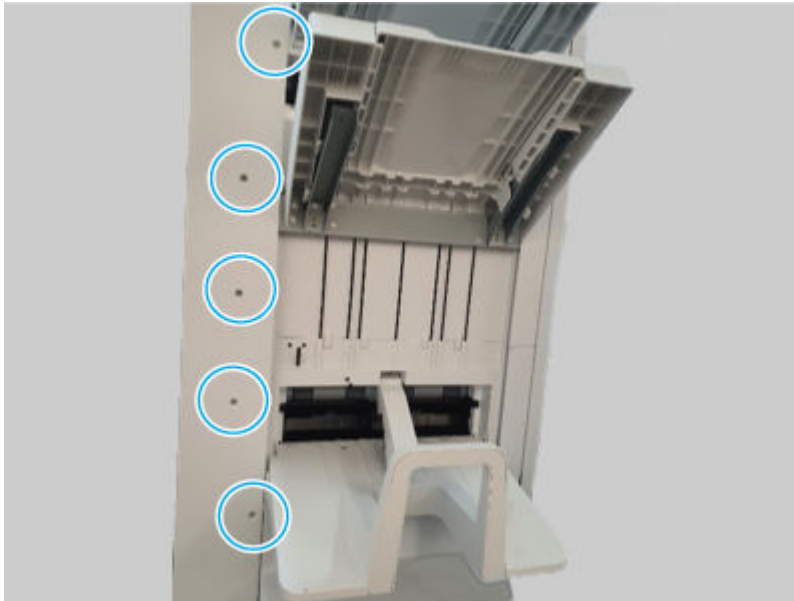


2 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2121 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


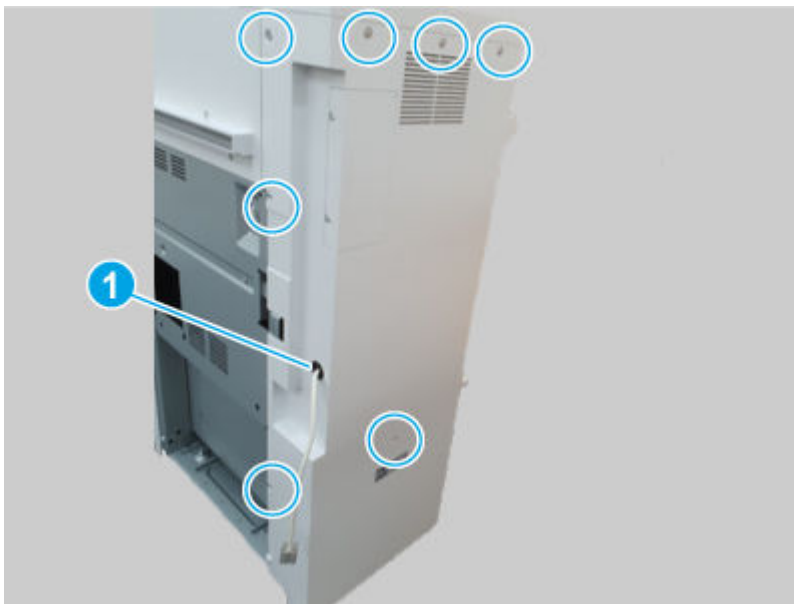
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2122 Remove the cover

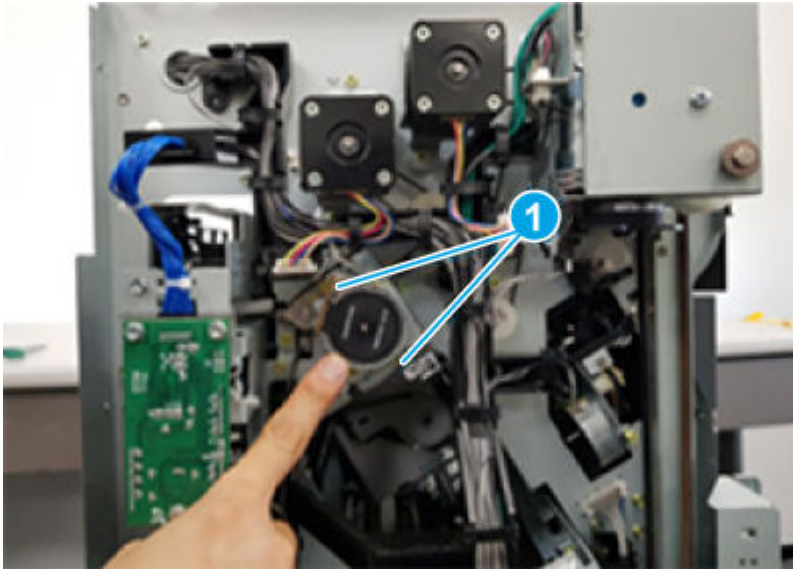


- 3 **Remove the external finisher buffer motor**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher buffer motor.

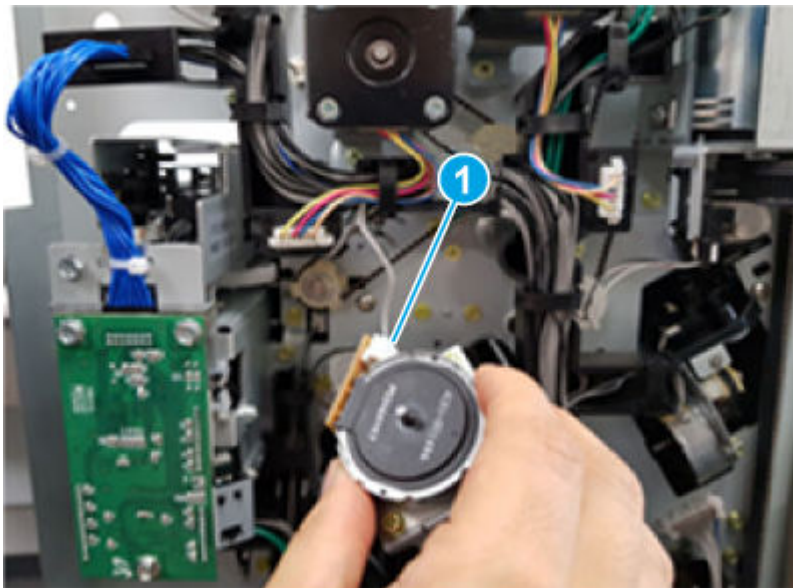
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2123 Remove two screws



2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the buffer motor.

Figure 6-2124 Remove the motor



4 **Unpack the replacement assembly**

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Booklet finisher (only)

Learn about booklet finisher (only) parts removal and replacement.

Booklet maker

Review the booklet finisher booklet maker removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Booklet maker

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher booklet maker.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-285 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC82-00905A	Booklet maker

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

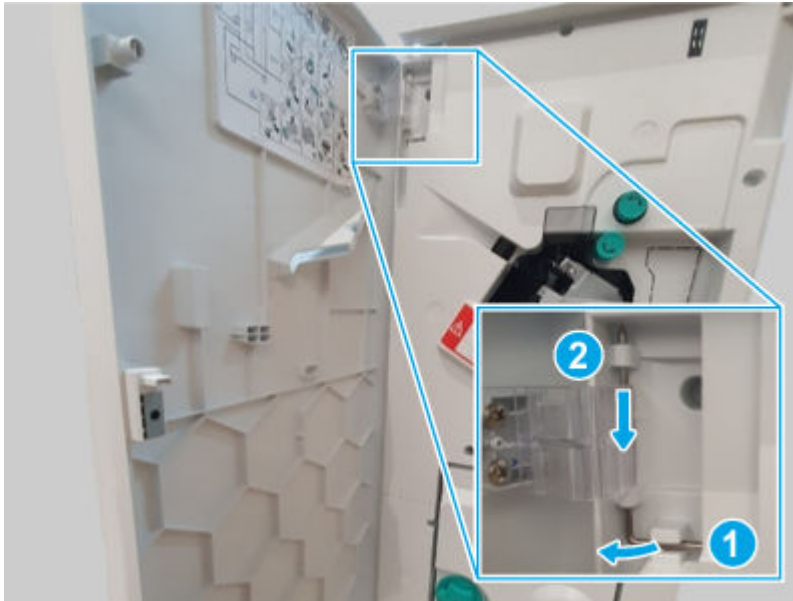
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

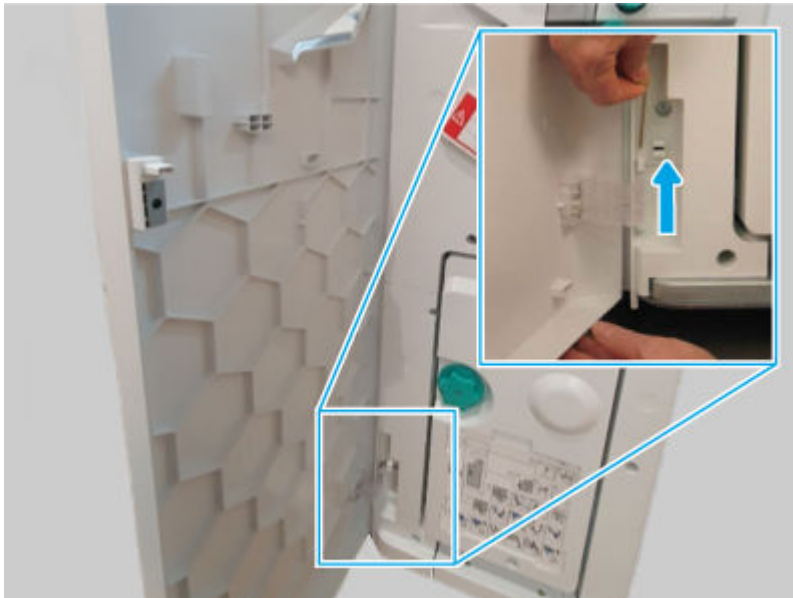
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2125 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2126 Remove the door

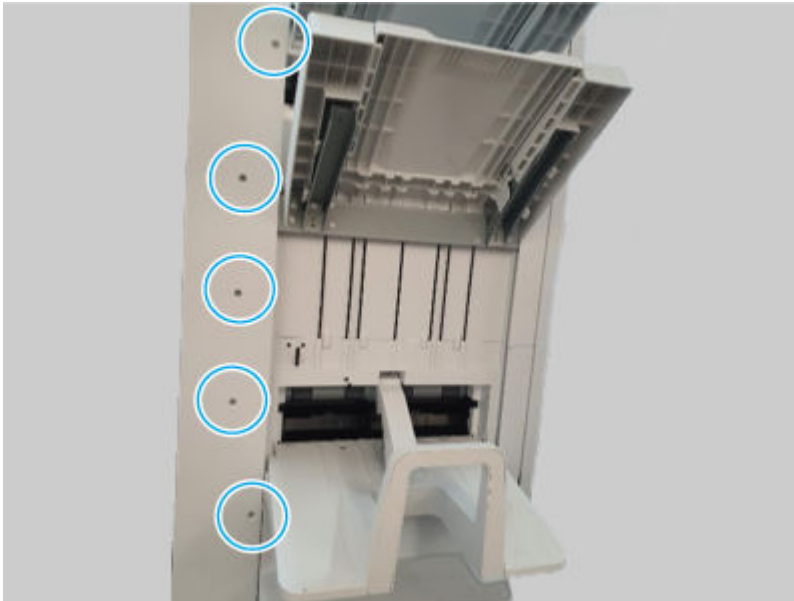


2 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2127 Remove five screws

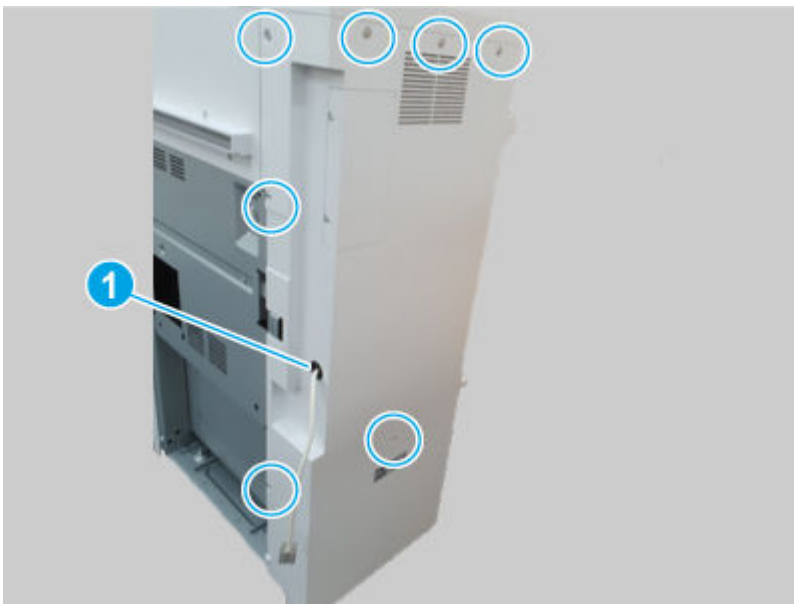


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2128 Remove the cover

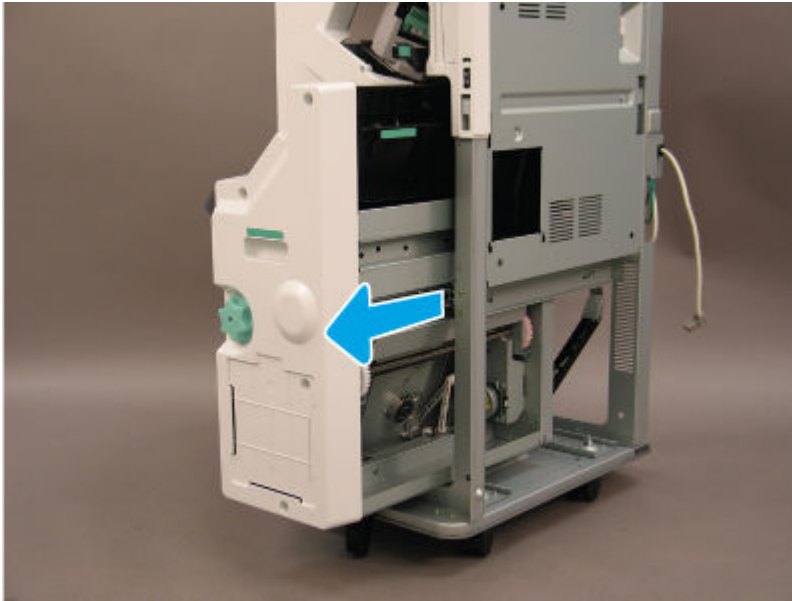


- 3 **Remove the booklet finisher booklet maker**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet maker.

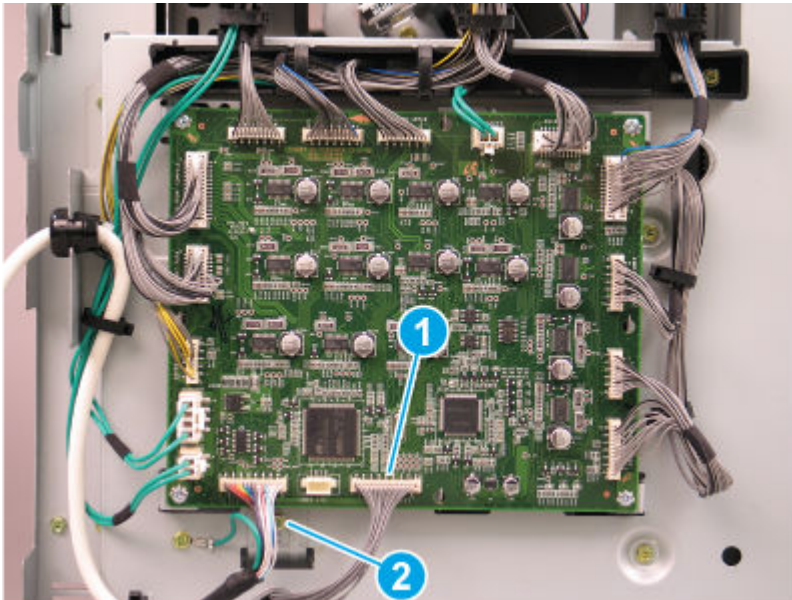
1. Slide the booklet maker out of the finisher.

Figure 6-2129 Slide the booklet maker out



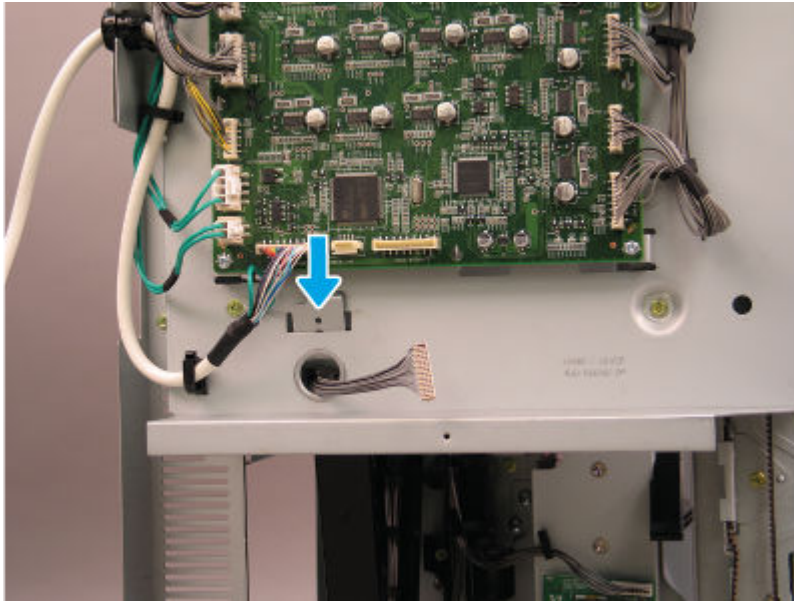
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 6-2130 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



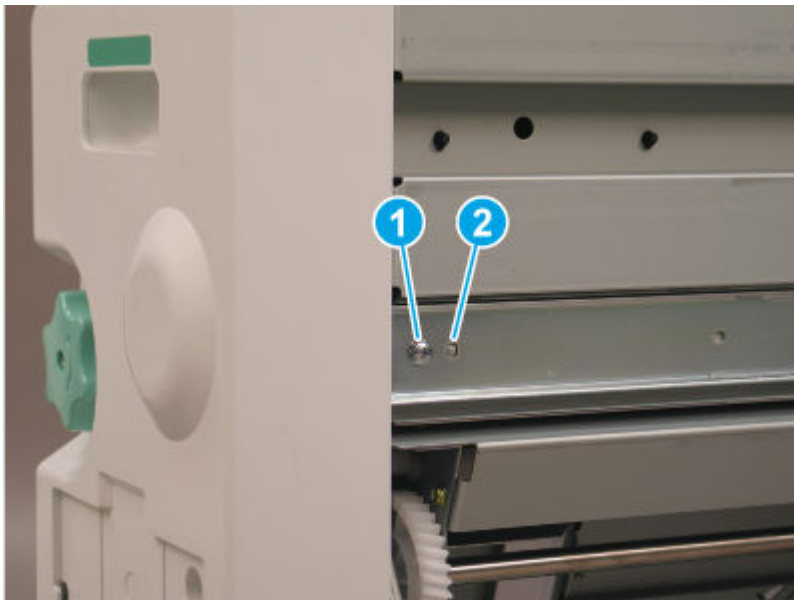
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet-metal.

Figure 6-2131 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



4. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2).

Figure 6-2132 Release the alignment pin



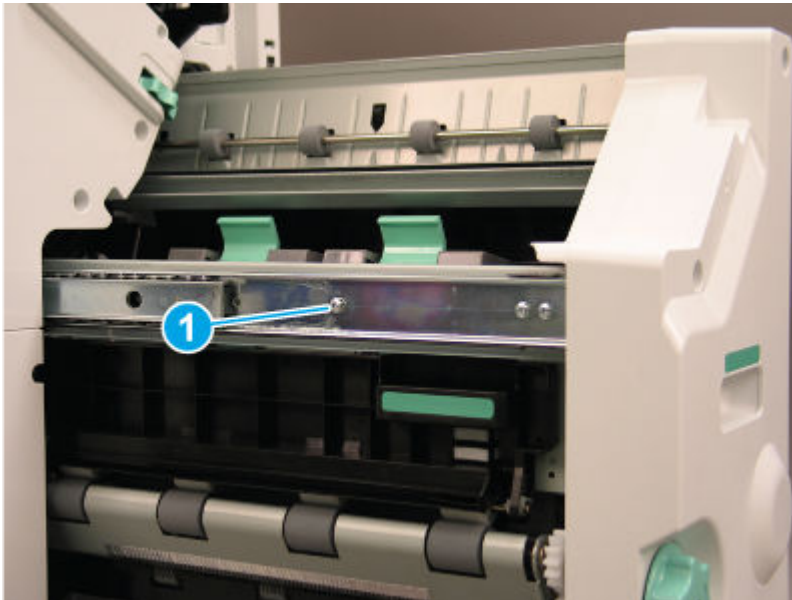
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 6-2133 Slide the rail in



6. Remove one screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2134 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet maker up on the left side while pulling the right rail away from the finisher chassis to clear the sheet-metal. Remove the booklet maker unit.


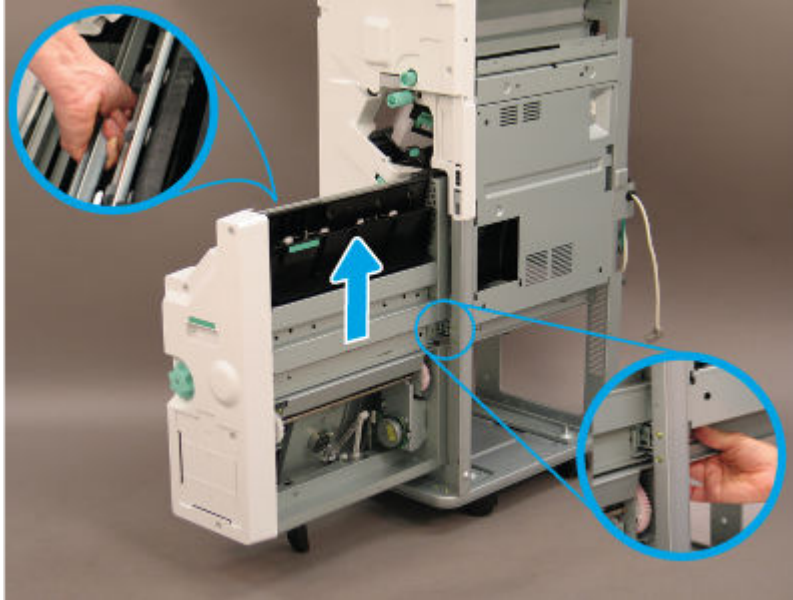
 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure to use the special installation instructions in this topic (located after the unpack and recycle step).

Figure 6-2135 Remove the booklet maker



4 **Unpack the replacement assembly**

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

5 **Special installation instructions: booklet finisher booklet maker**

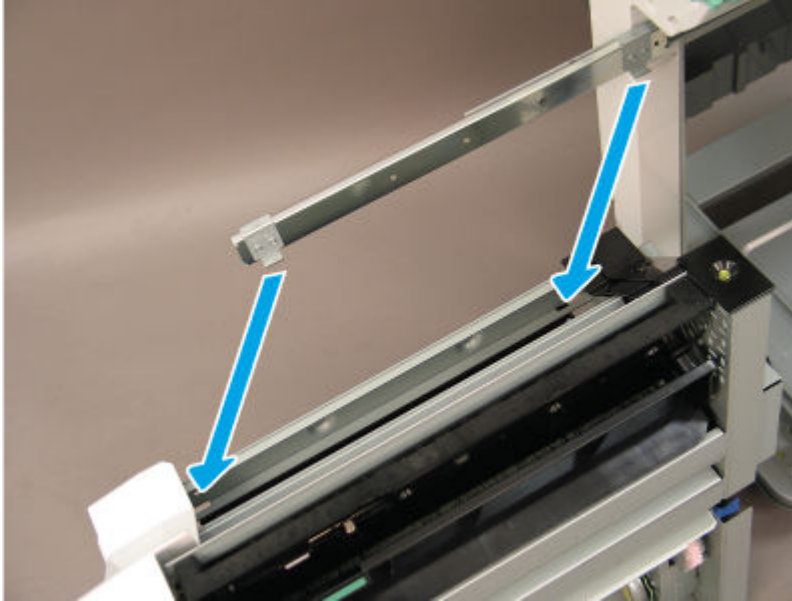
Use the following procedure to install the booklet finisher booklet maker.



NOTE: Use the special installation instructions to correctly install the booklet maker.

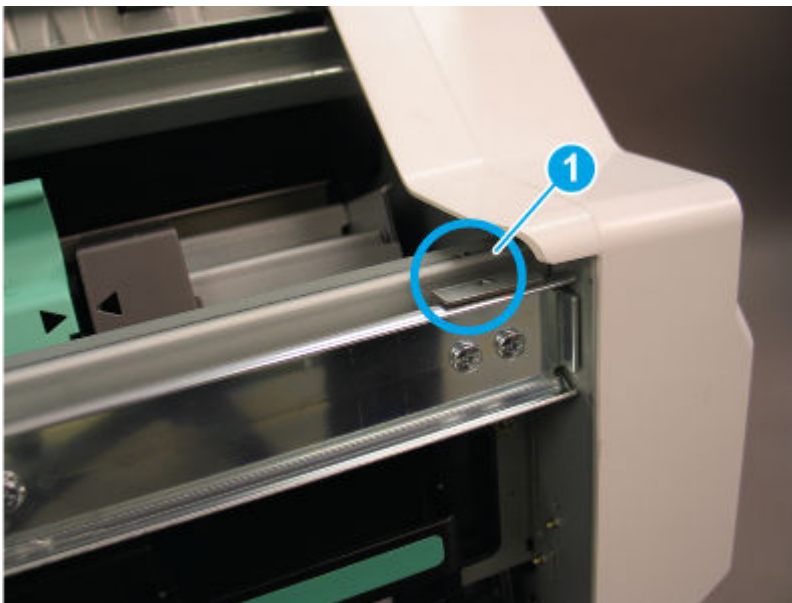
1. When installing the booklet finisher, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2136 Position the hooks on the rail



2. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2137 Check rail alignment (1 of 2)



3. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2138 Check rail alignment (2 of 2)



4. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet maker slot.



NOTE: Continue the installation by reversing the removal steps.

Figure 6-2139 Attach the rail



Removal and replacement: Harness guide

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher harness guide.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-286 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01477A	Harness guide

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

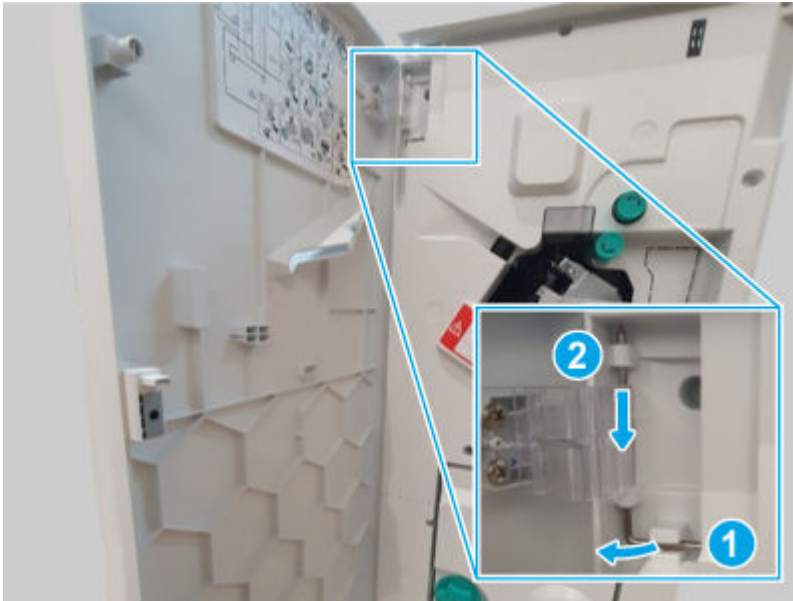
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

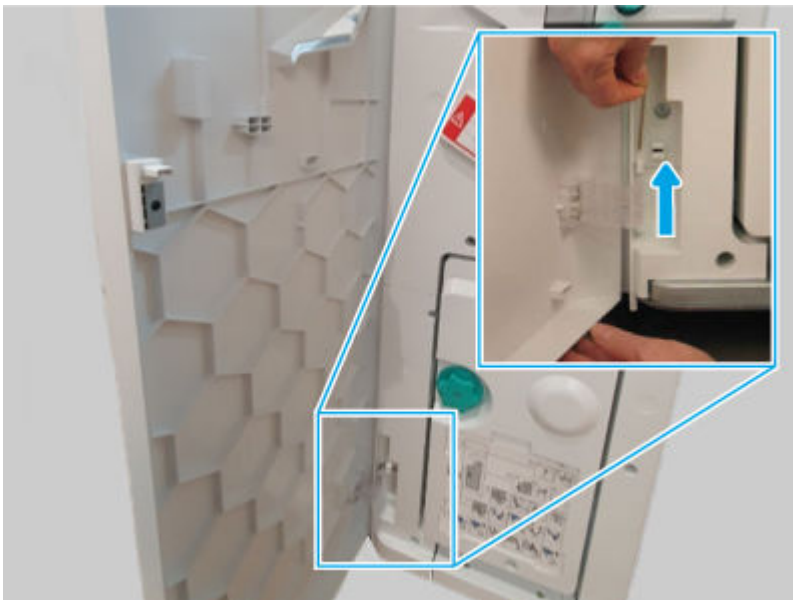
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2140 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2141 Remove the door

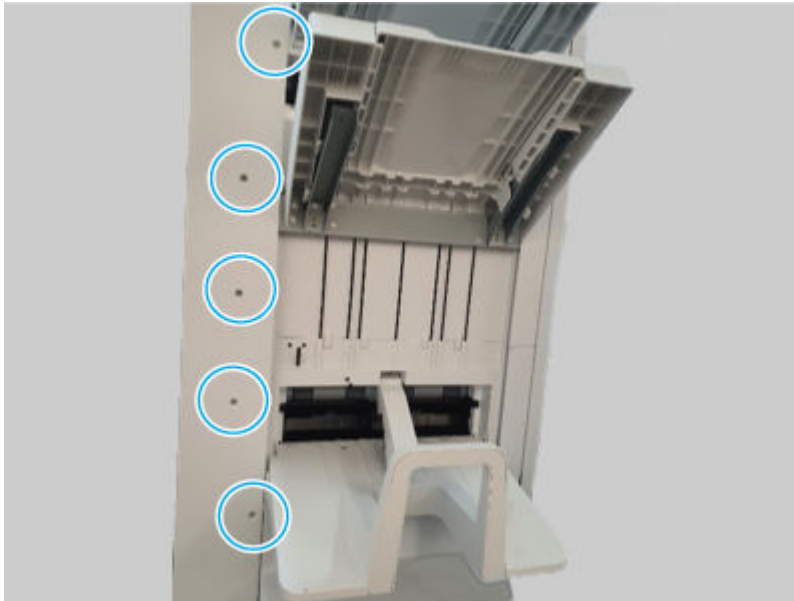


2 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2142 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


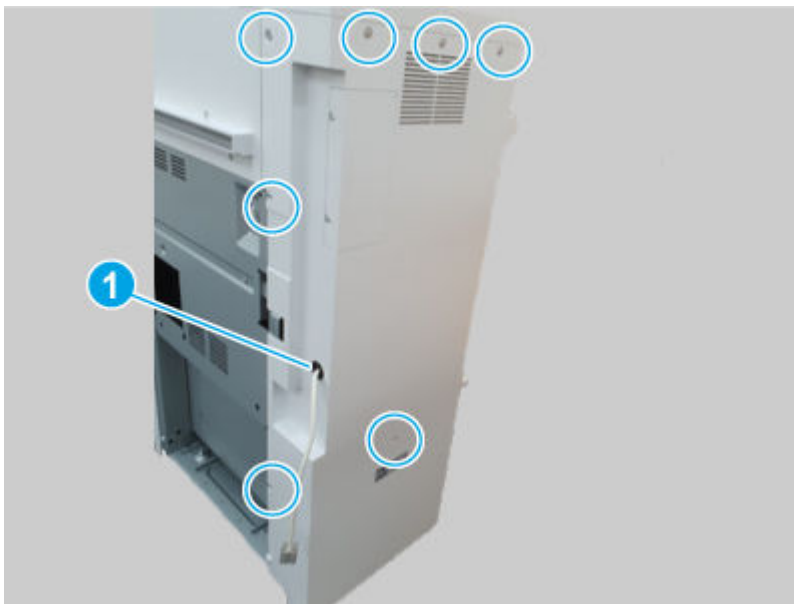
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2143 Remove the cover



- 3 **Remove the booklet finisher booklet maker**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet maker.

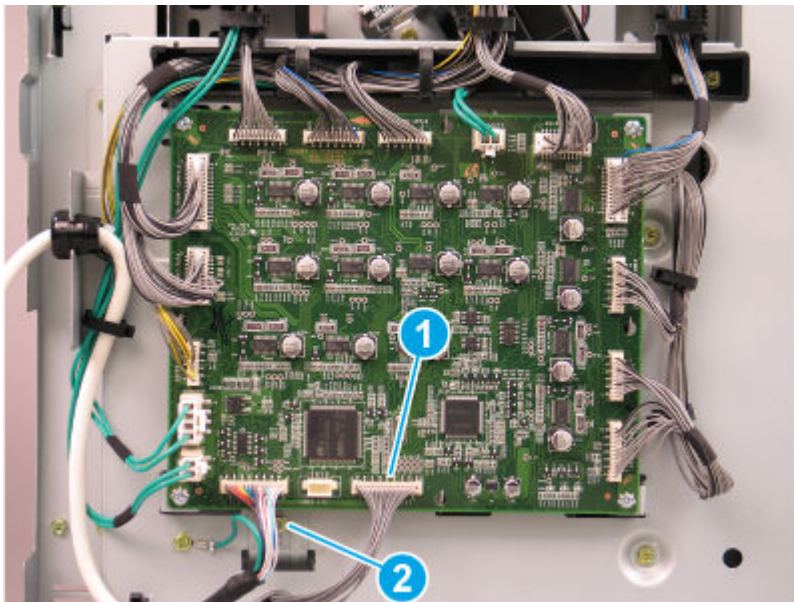
1. Slide the booklet maker out of the finisher.

Figure 6-2144 Slide the booklet maker out



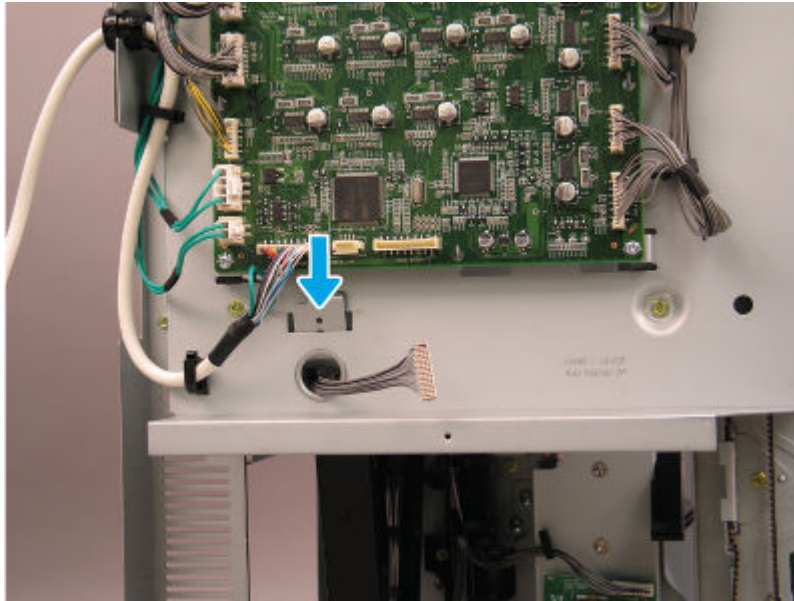
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 6-2145 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



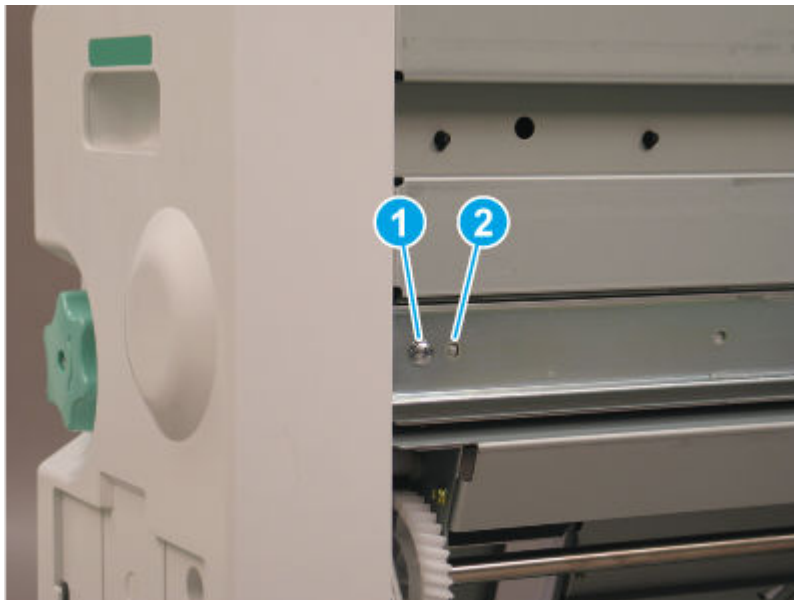
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet-metal.

Figure 6-2146 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



4. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2).

Figure 6-2147 Release the alignment pin



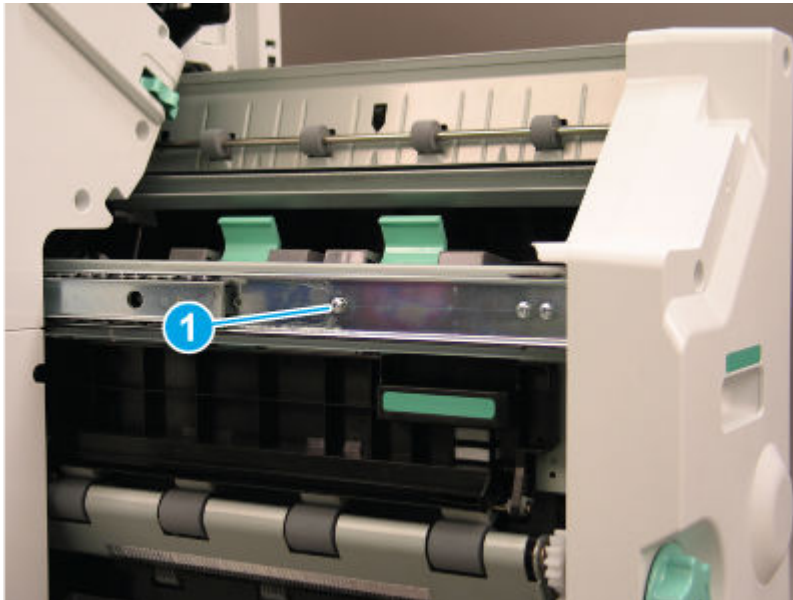
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 6-2148 Slide the rail in



6. Remove one screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2149 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet maker up on the left side while pulling the right rail away from the finisher chassis to clear the sheet-metal. Remove the booklet maker unit.


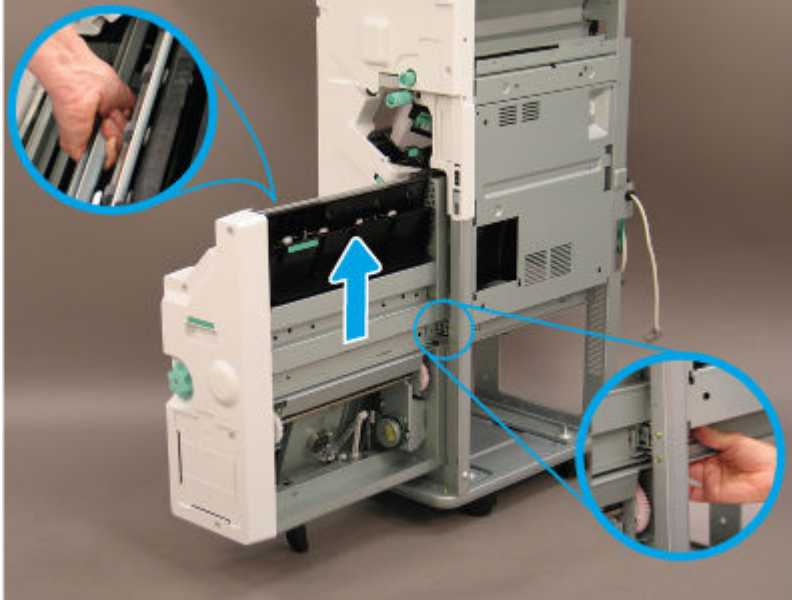
 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure to use the special installation instructions in this topic (located after the unpack and recycle step).

Figure 6-2150 Remove the booklet maker

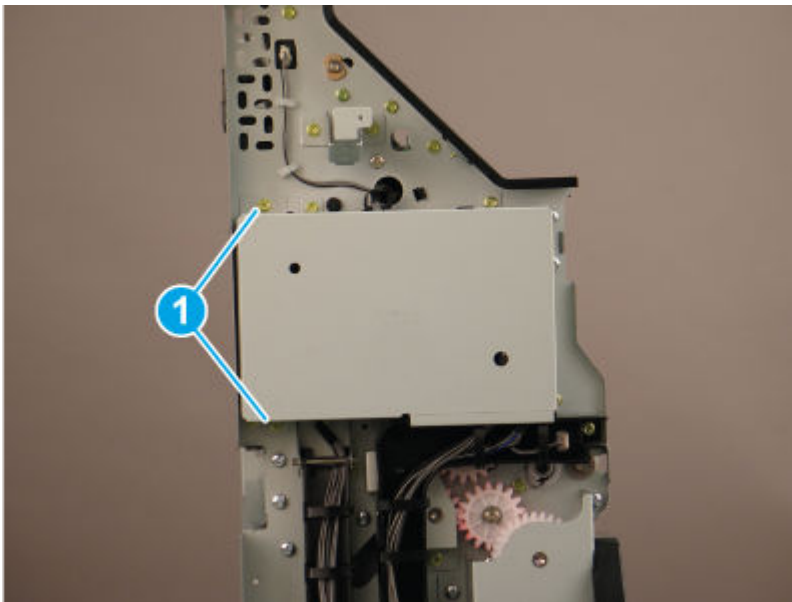


4 Remove the booklet finisher PCA

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher PCA.

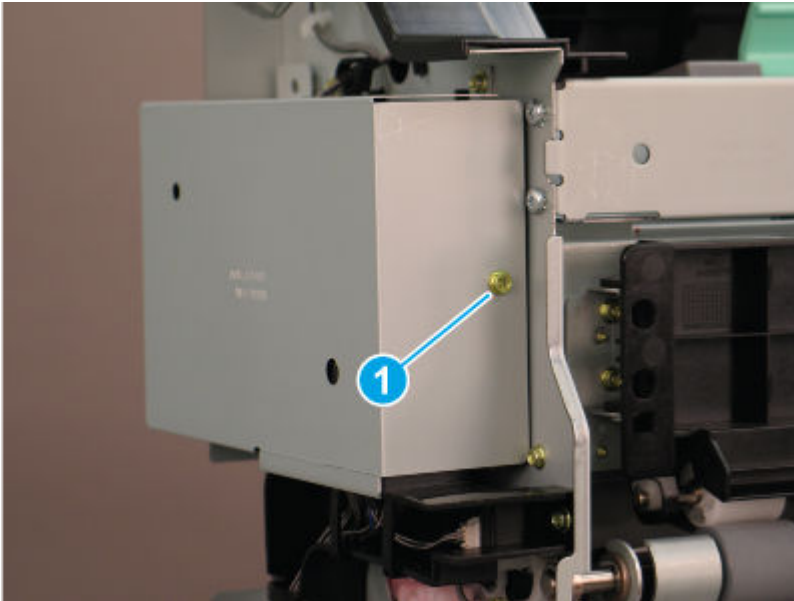
1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2151 Remove two screws



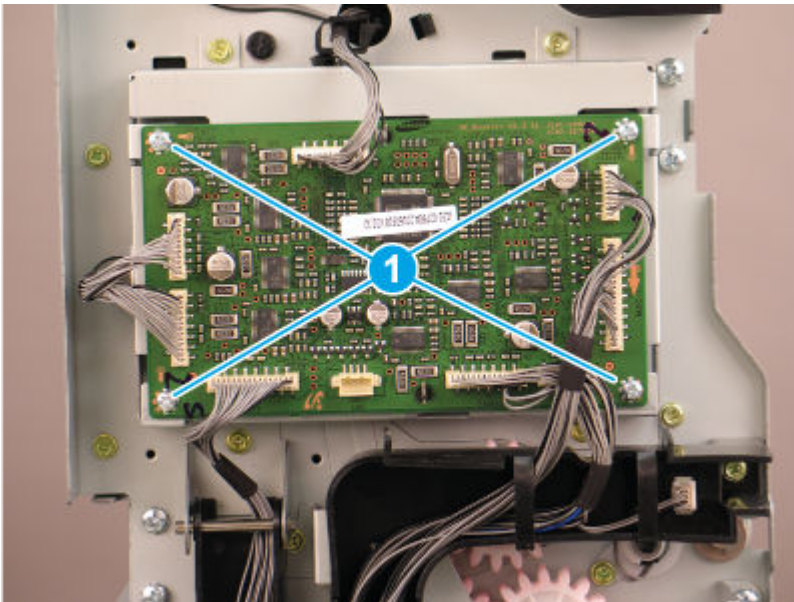
2. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 6-2152 Remove one screw



3. Disconnect all of the connectors, remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the booklet finisher PCA.

Figure 6-2153 Remove the PCA

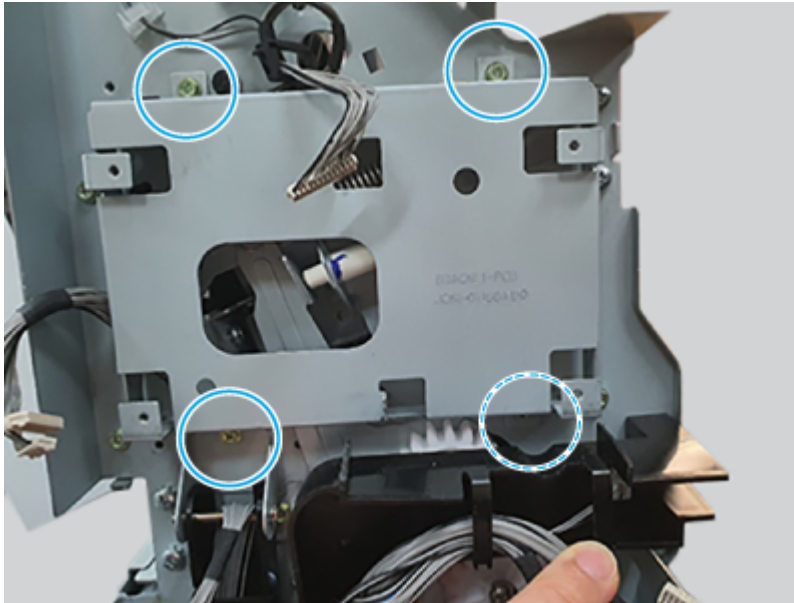


5 Remove the booklet finisher harness guide

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher harness guide.

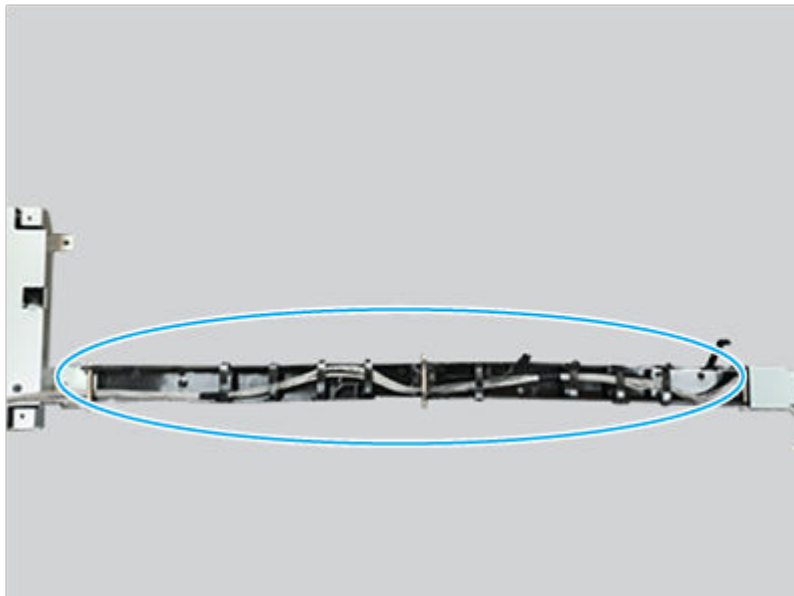
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-2154 Remove four screws



2. Release twelve retainers, and then remove the harness guide.


Figure 6-2155 Remove the guide



6 **Unpack the replacement assembly**


Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT:  Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


NOTE:  If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE:  When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

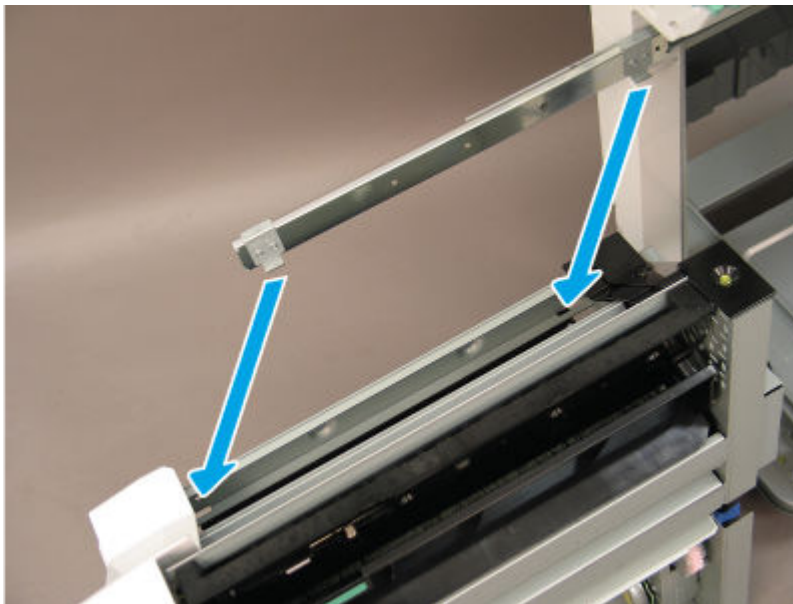
7 Special installation instructions: booklet finisher booklet maker

Use the following procedure to install the booklet finisher booklet maker.

NOTE:  Use the special installation instructions to correctly install the booklet maker.

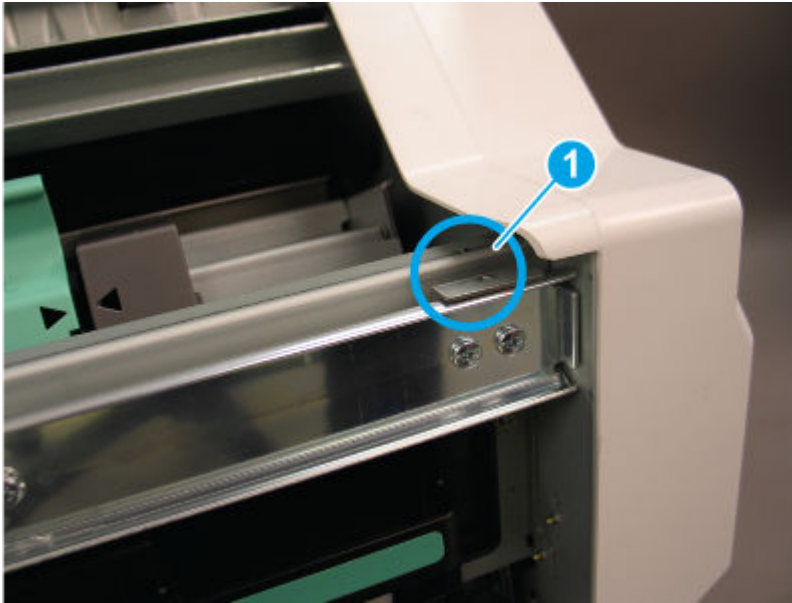
1. When installing the booklet finisher, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2156 Position the hooks on the rail



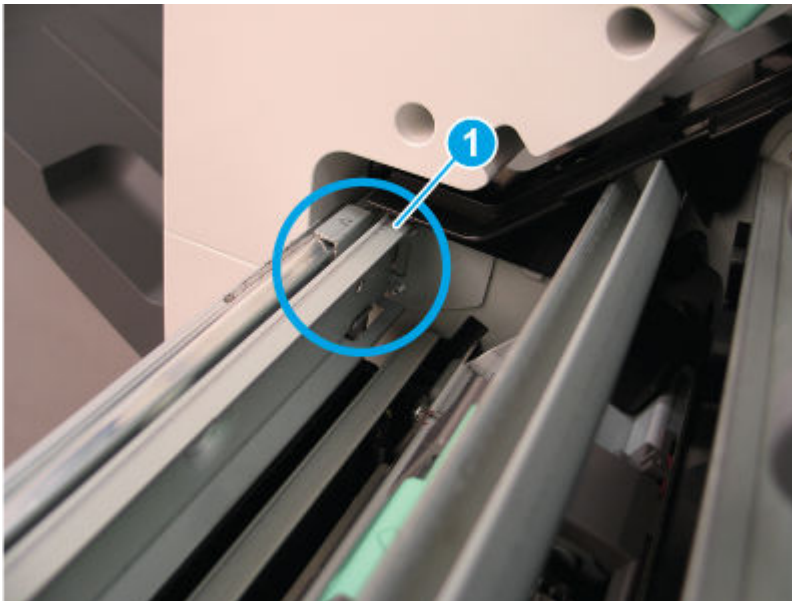
2. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2157 Check rail alignment (1 of 2)



3. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2158 Check rail alignment (2 of 2)



4. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet maker slot.



NOTE: Continue the installation by reversing the removal steps.

Figure 6-2159 Attach the rail



Booklet entrance unit

Review the booklet finisher booklet entrance unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Booklet entrance unit

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher entrance unit.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-287 Part Information

Part number	Part description
6GW51-60102	Booklet entrance unit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

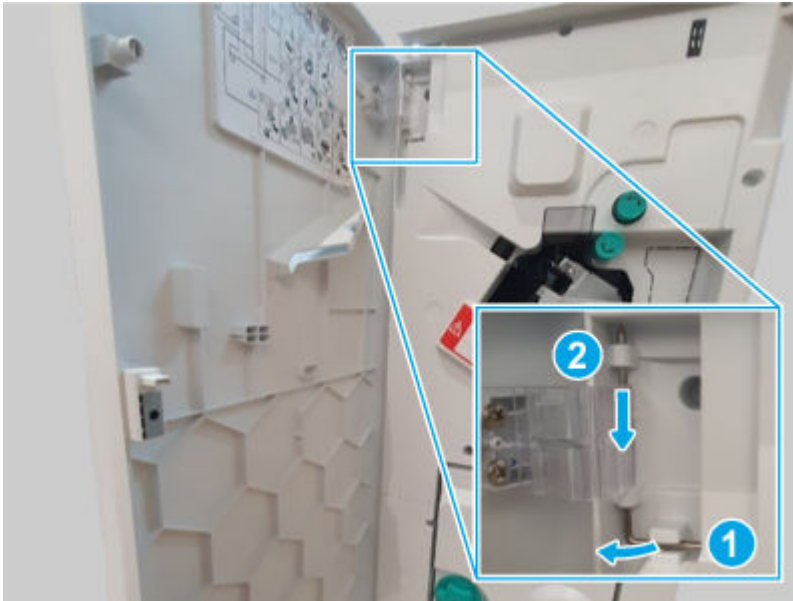
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

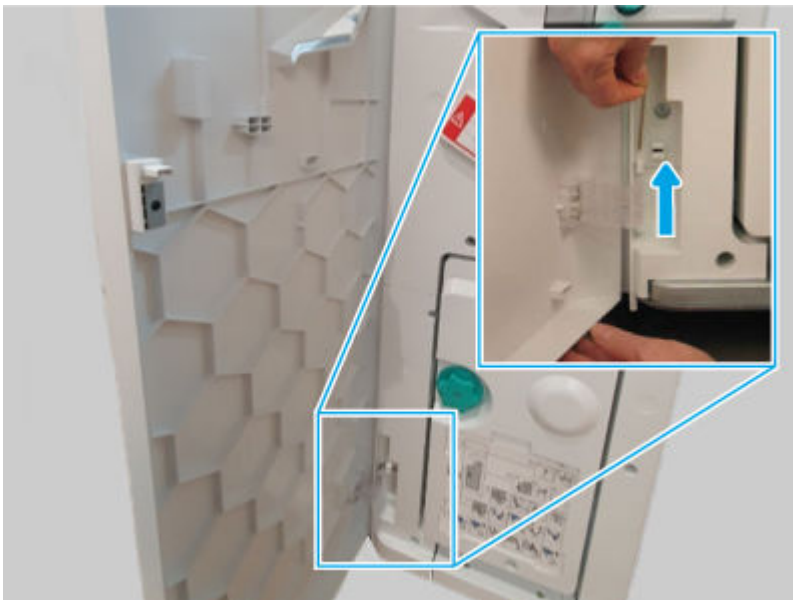
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2160 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2161 Remove the door

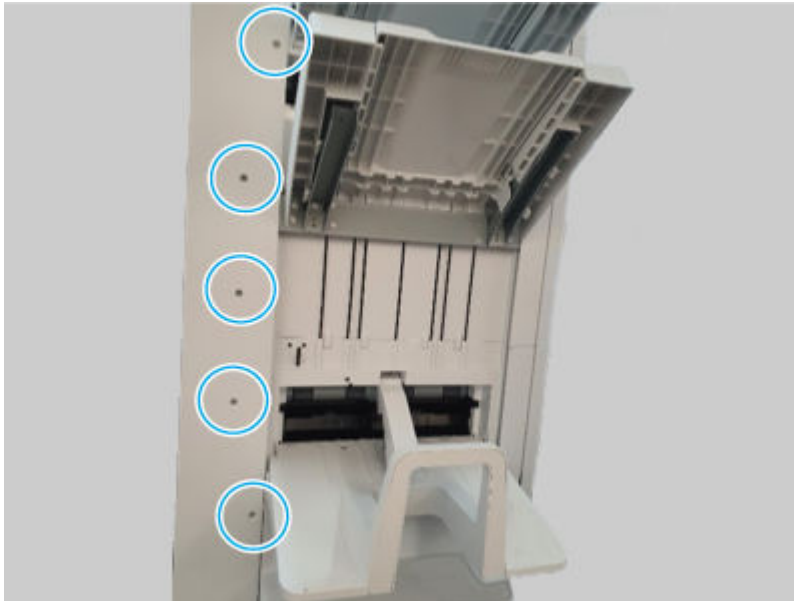


2 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2162 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


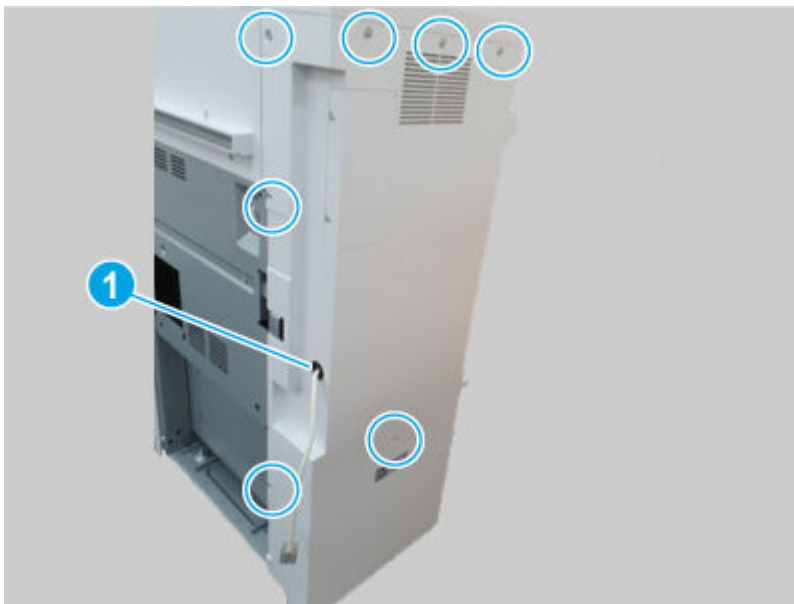
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2163 Remove the cover

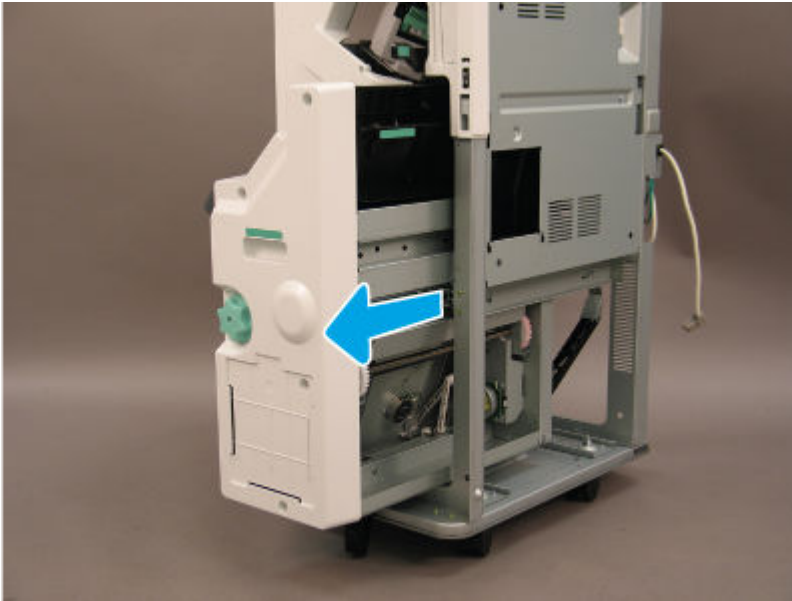


- 3 **Remove the booklet finisher booklet maker**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet maker.

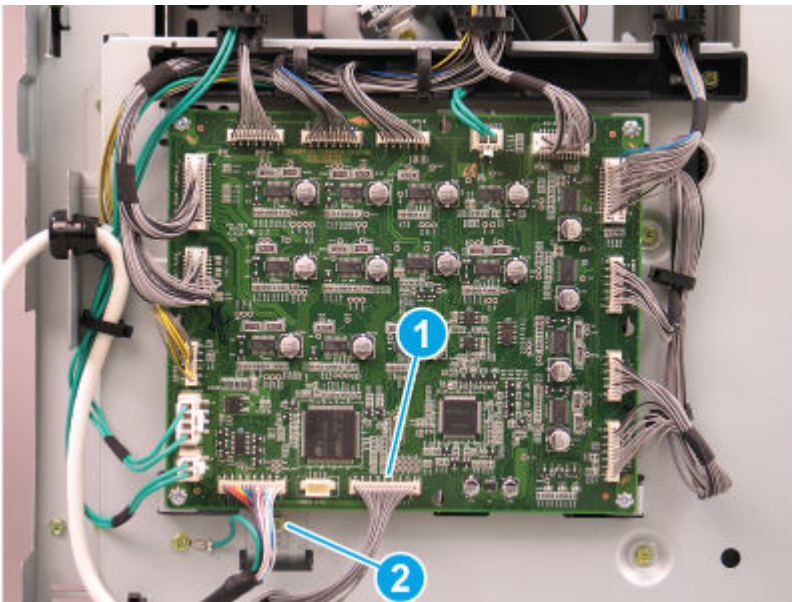
1. Slide the booklet maker out of the finisher.

Figure 6-2164 Slide the booklet maker out



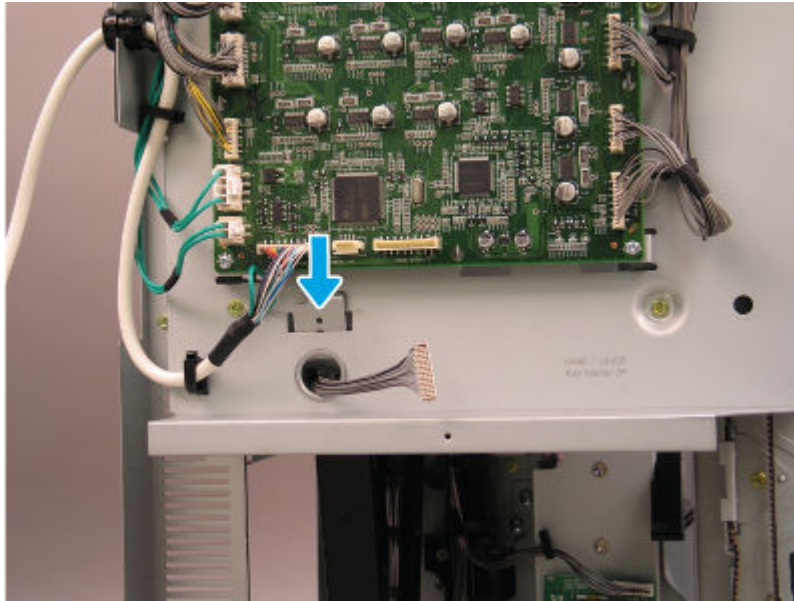
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 6-2165 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



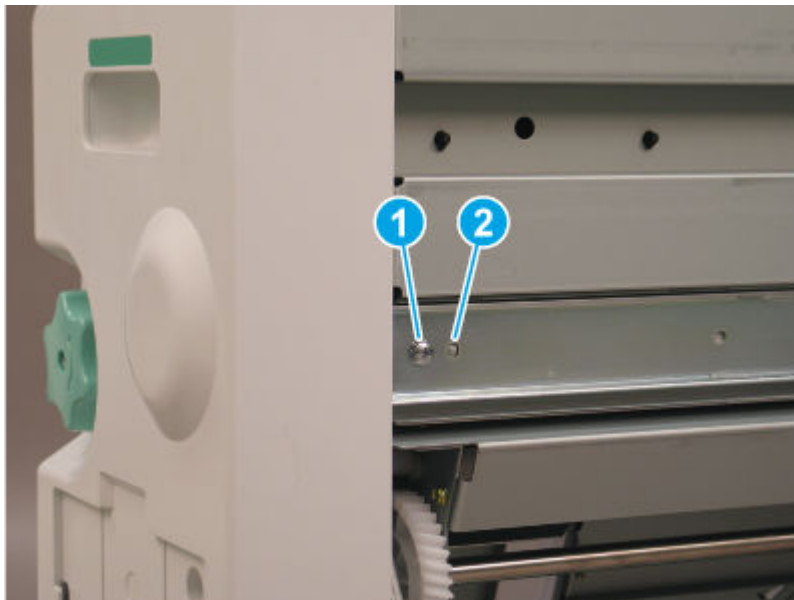
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet-metal.

Figure 6-2166 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



4. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2).

Figure 6-2167 Release the alignment pin



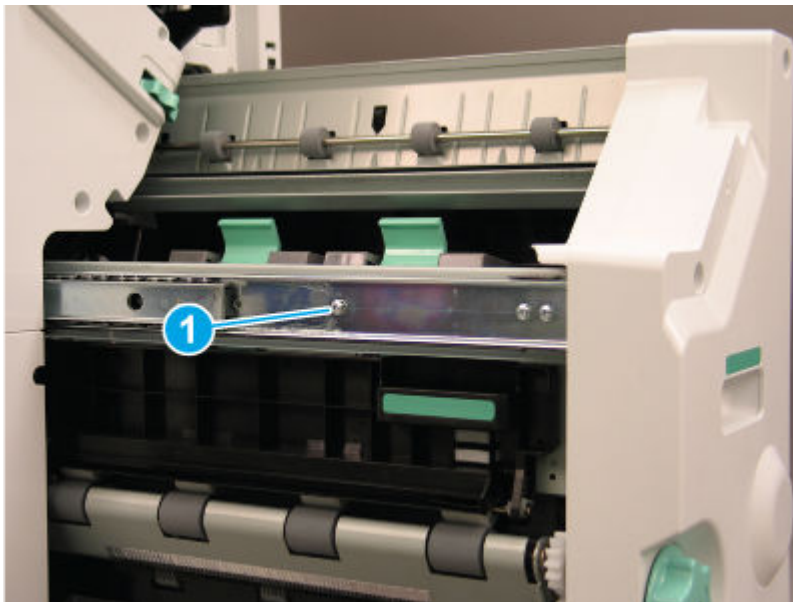
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 6-2168 Slide the rail in



6. Remove one screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2169 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet maker up on the left side while pulling the right rail away from the finisher chassis to clear the sheet-metal. Remove the booklet maker unit.


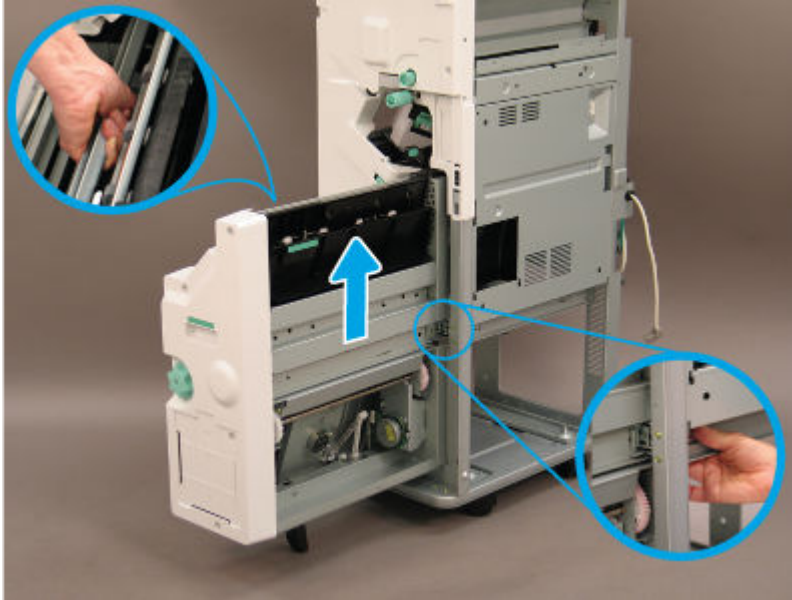
 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure to use the special installation instructions in this topic (located after the unpack and recycle step).

Figure 6-2170 Remove the booklet maker

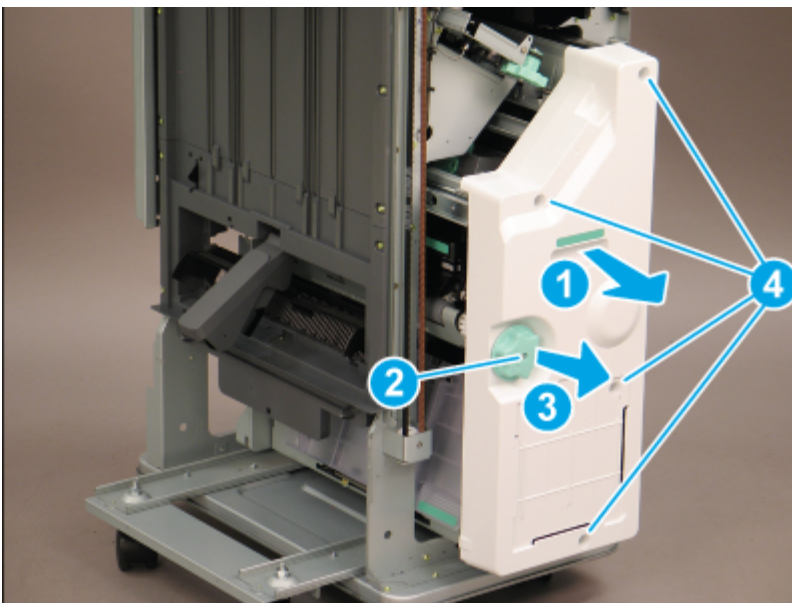


4 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).
 - b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
 - c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2171 Remove the cover

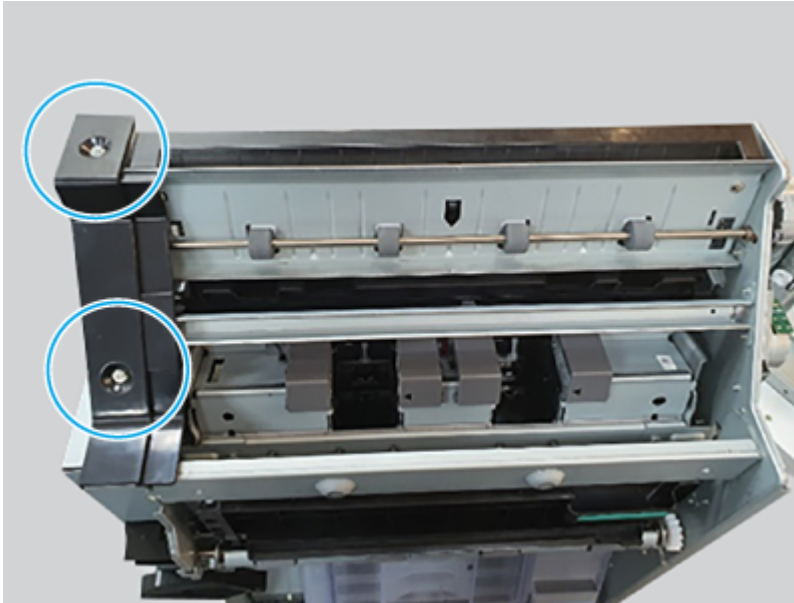


5 Remove the booklet finisher booklet entrance unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher entrance unit.

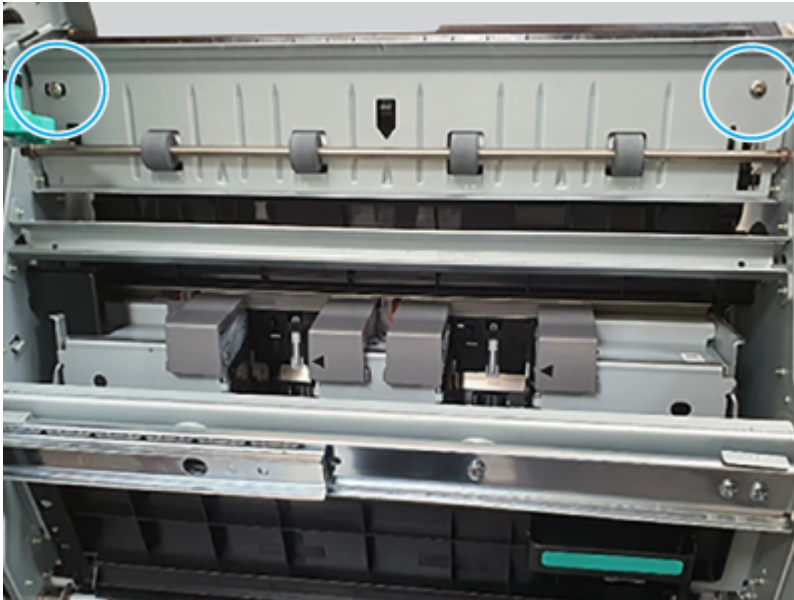
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2172 Remove two screws



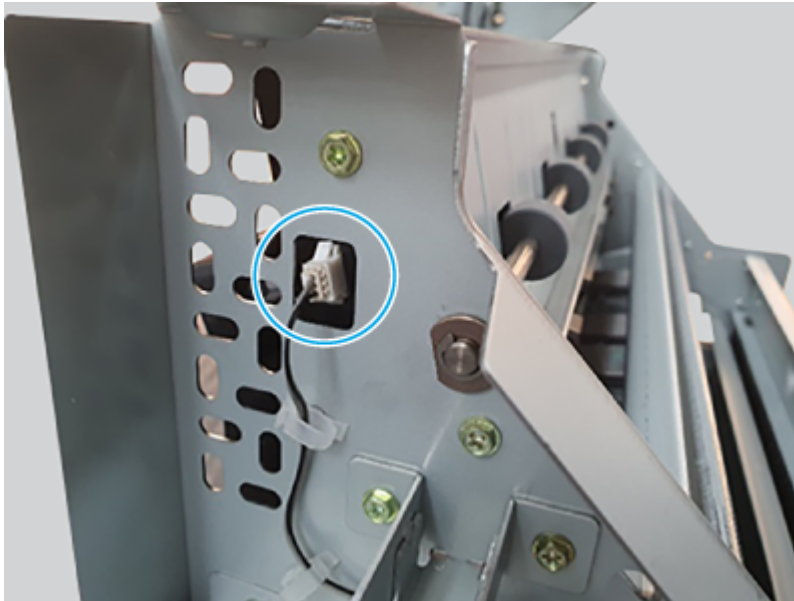
2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2173 Remove two screws



3. Disconnect one connector.

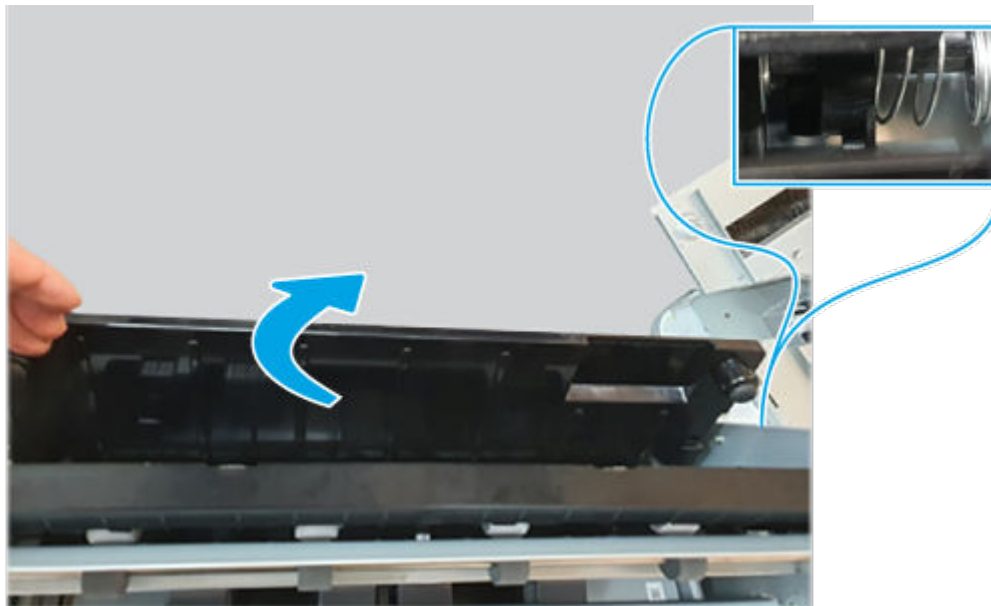
Figure 6-2174 Disconnect one connector



4. Remove the booklet entrance unit.

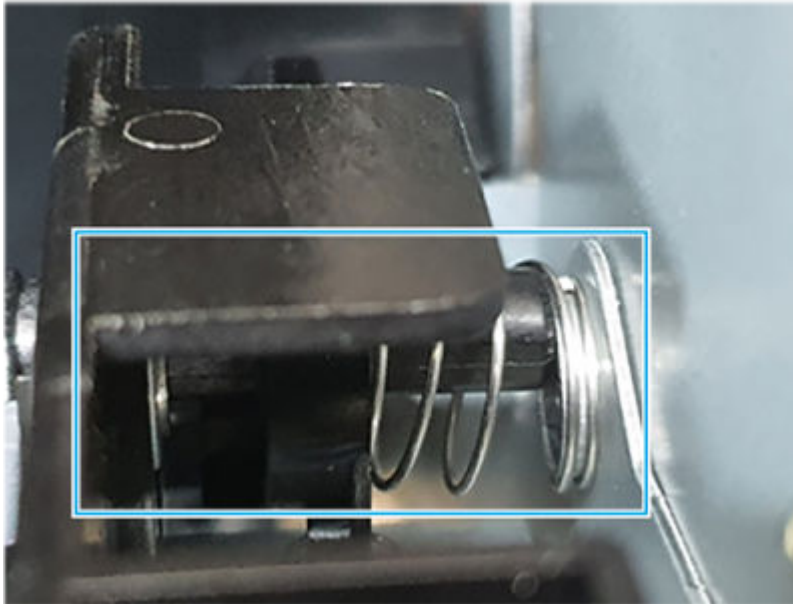
CAUTION: The spring and holder on the entrance unit are not captive. Do not lose them when handling the unit.

Figure 6-2175 Remove the unit



5. **Reinstall step:** Make sure that the spring on the unit is correctly positioned on the chassis of the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2176 Reinstall the unit



6 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

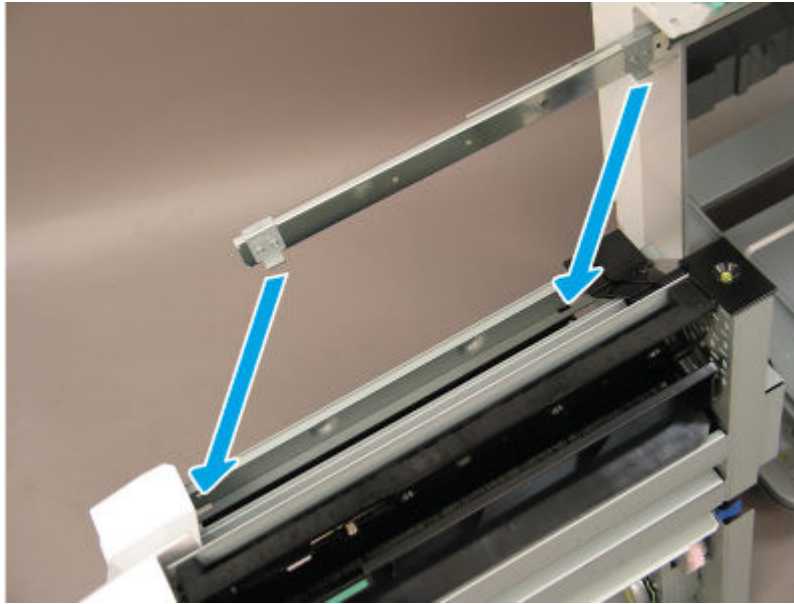
Special installation instructions: booklet finisher booklet maker

Use the following procedure to install the booklet finisher booklet maker.

 **NOTE:** Use the special installation instructions to correctly install the booklet maker.

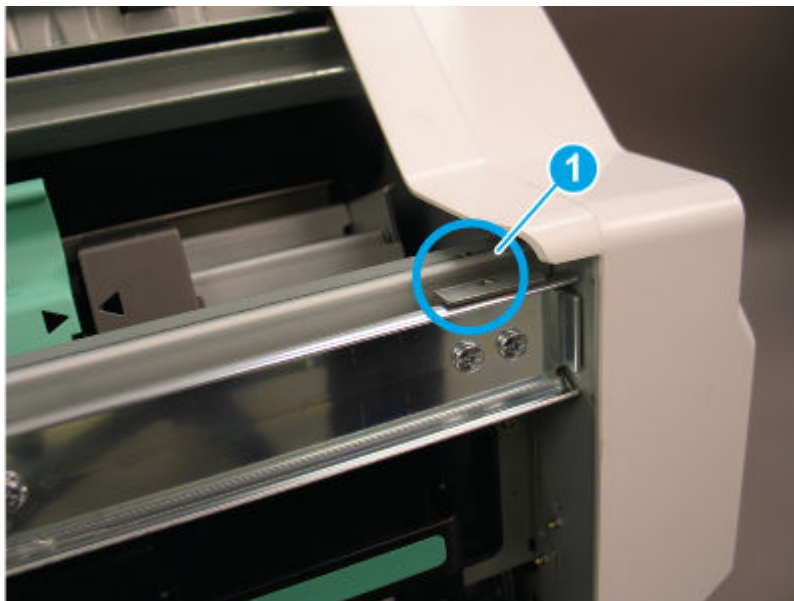
1. When installing the booklet finisher, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2177 Position the hooks on the rail



2. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2178 Check rail alignment (1 of 2)



3. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2179 Check rail alignment (2 of 2)



4. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet maker slot.




NOTE: Continue the installation by reversing the removal steps.

Figure 6-2180 Attach the rail



Removal and replacement: Booklet entrance sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher entrance sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-288 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001415	Photo interrupter (Booklet entrance sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

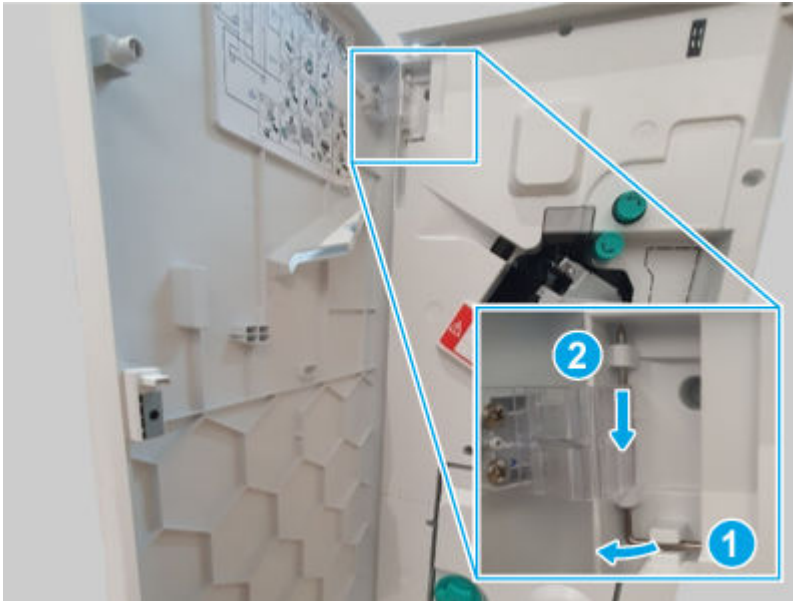
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

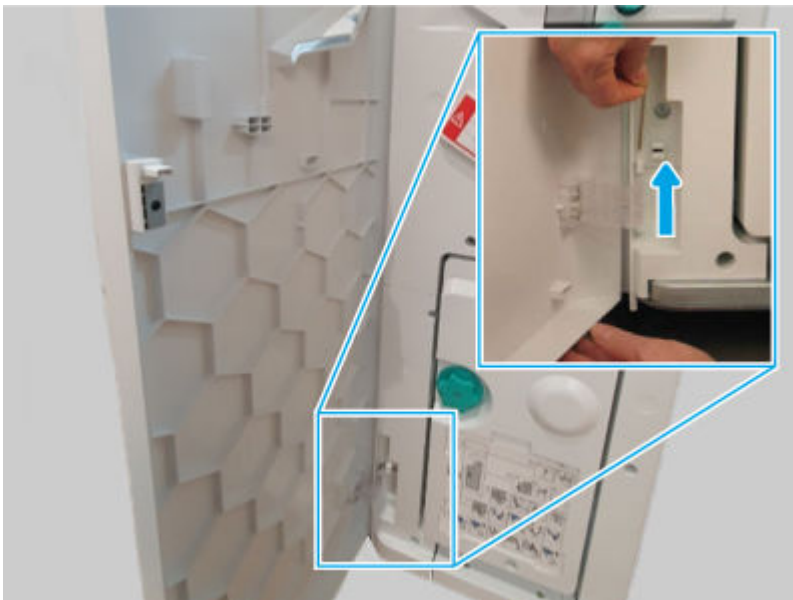
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2181 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2182 Remove the door

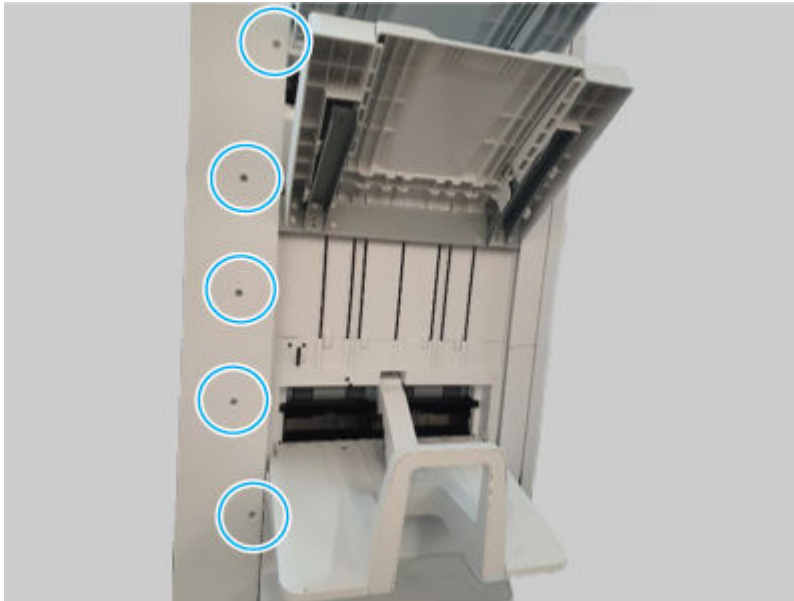


2 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2183 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


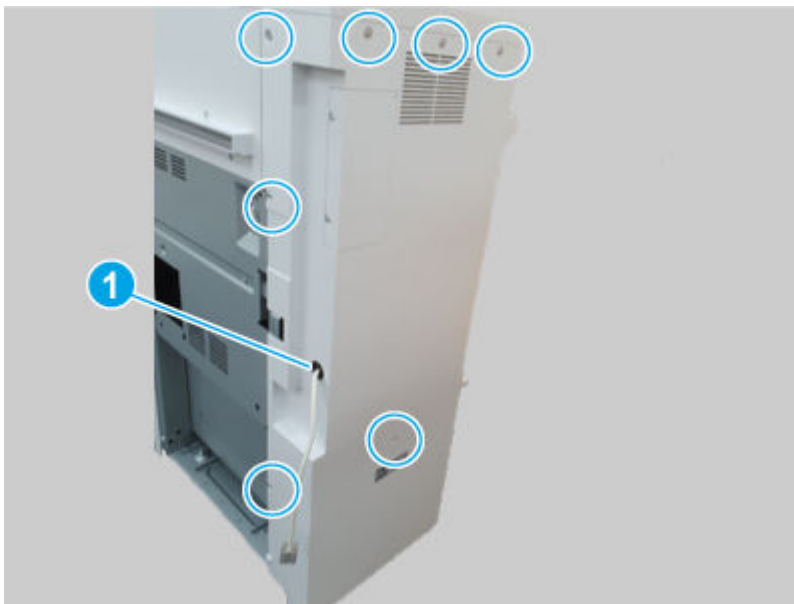
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2184 Remove the cover

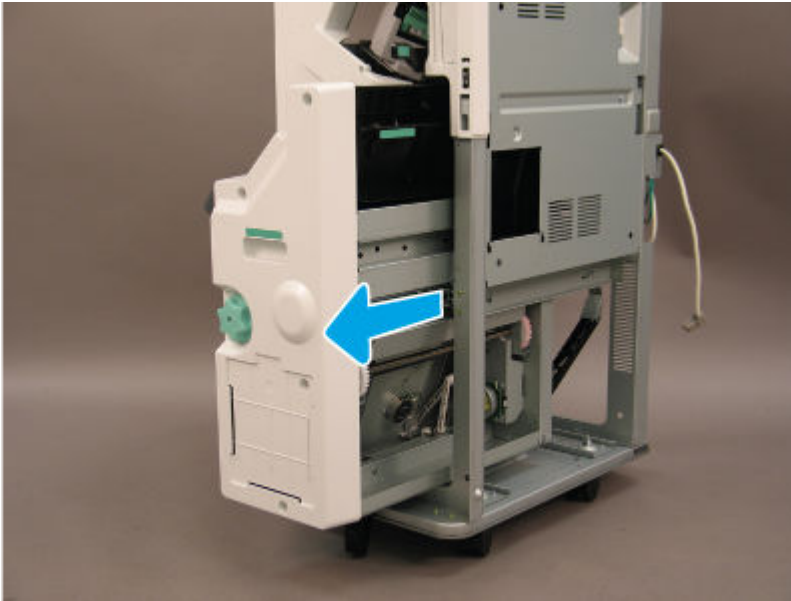


- 3 **Remove the booklet finisher booklet maker**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet maker.

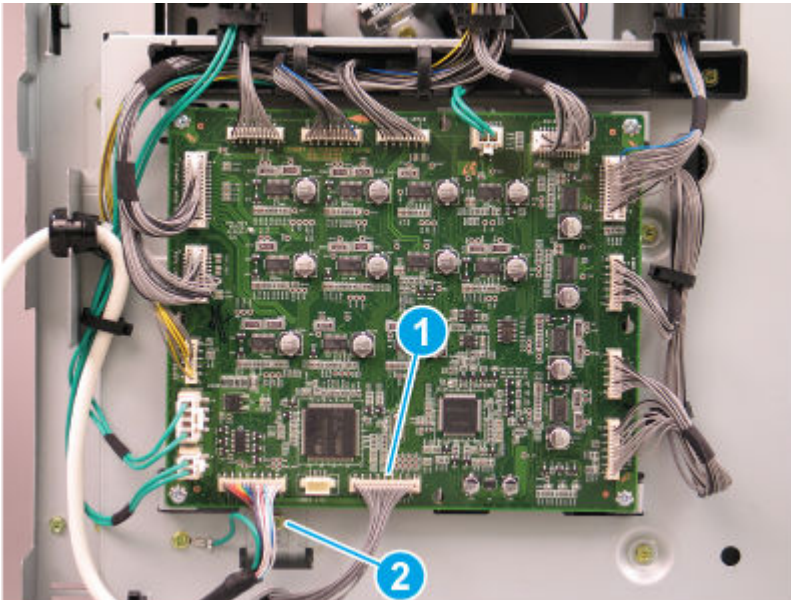
1. Slide the booklet maker out of the finisher.

Figure 6-2185 Slide the booklet maker out



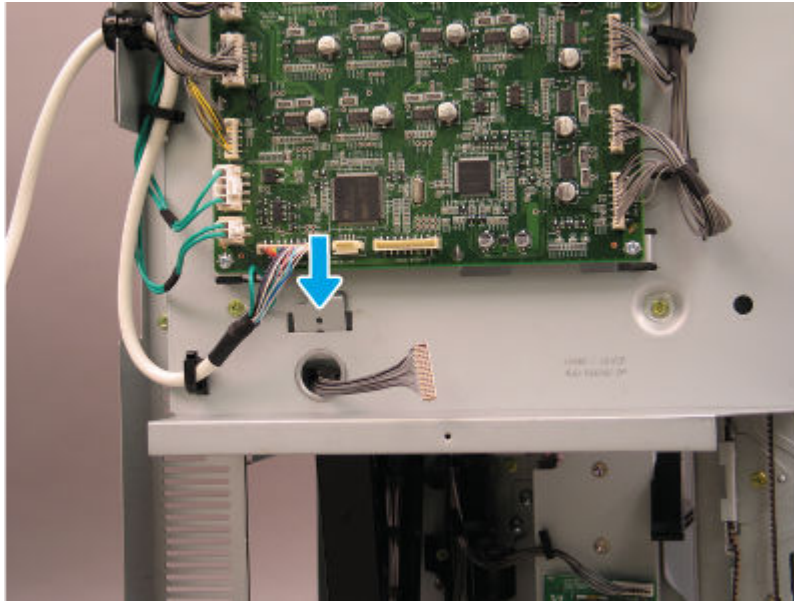
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 6-2186 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



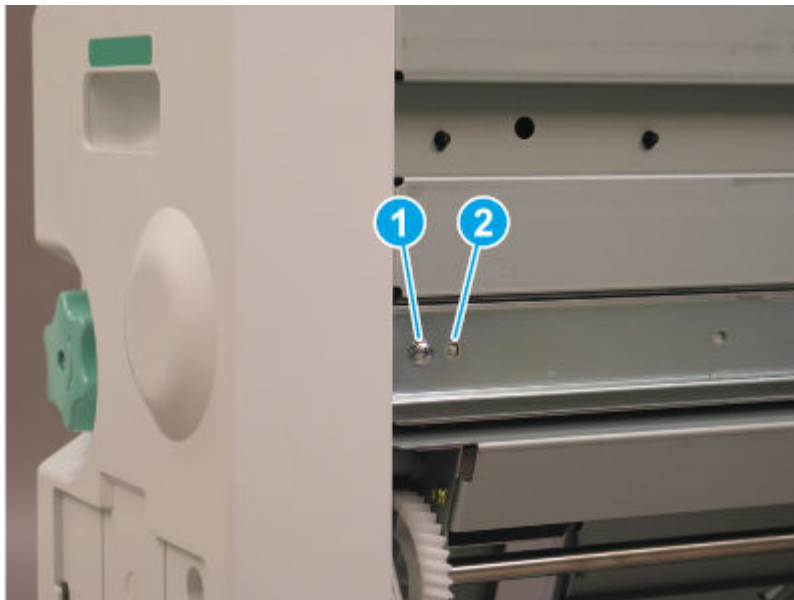
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet-metal.

Figure 6-2187 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



4. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2).

Figure 6-2188 Release the alignment pin



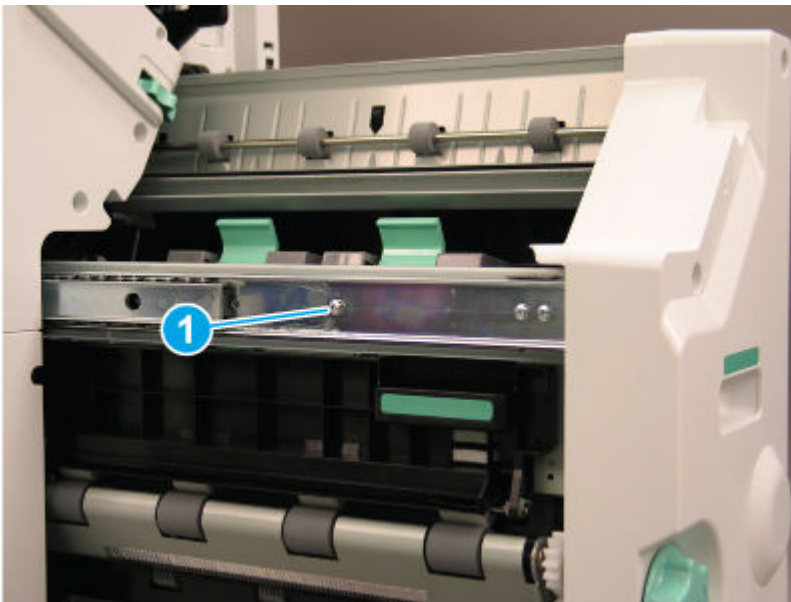
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 6-2189 Slide the rail in



6. Remove one screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2190 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet maker up on the left side while pulling the right rail away from the finisher chassis to clear the sheet-metal. Remove the booklet maker unit.


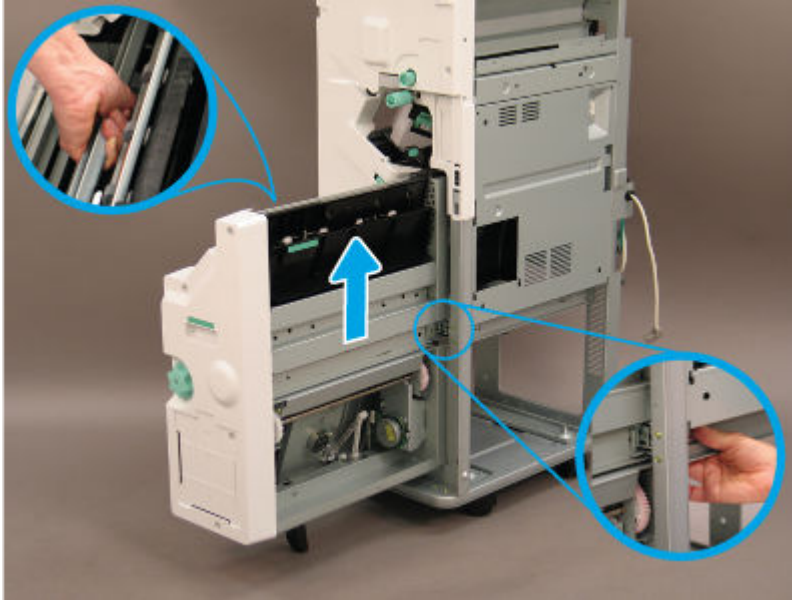
 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure to use the special installation instructions in this topic (located after the unpack and recycle step).

Figure 6-2191 Remove the booklet maker

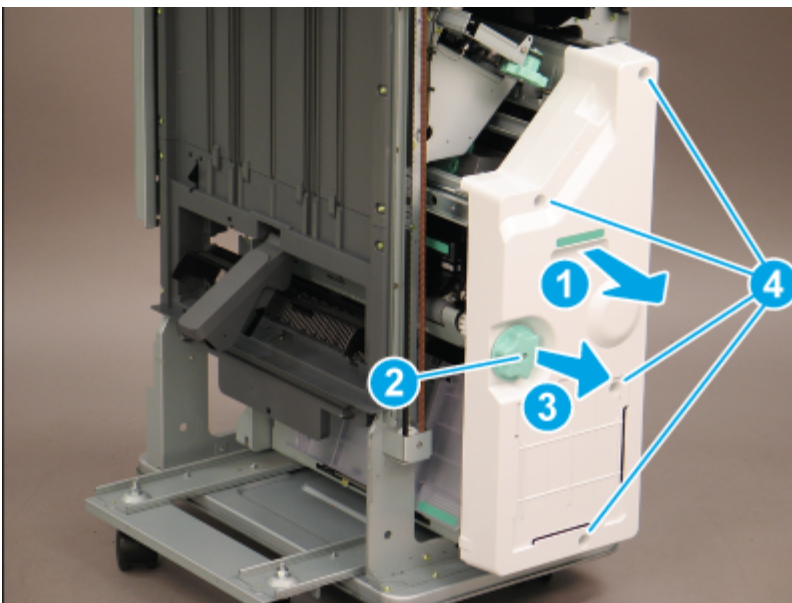


4 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).
 - b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
 - c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2192 Remove the cover

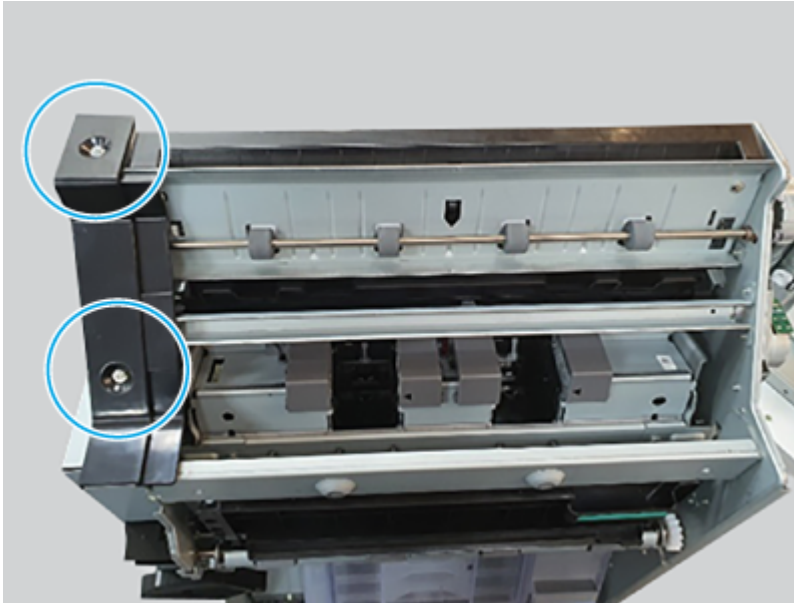


5 Remove the booklet finisher booklet entrance unit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher entrance unit.

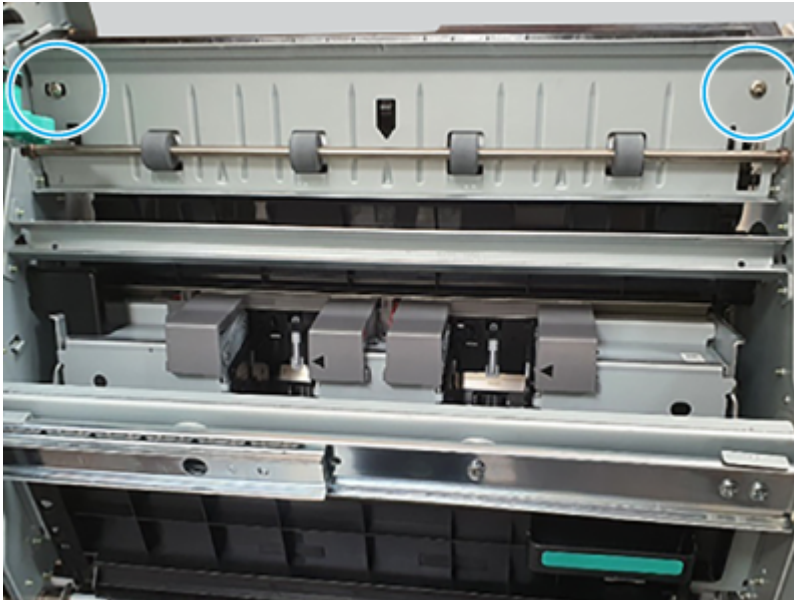
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2193 Remove two screws



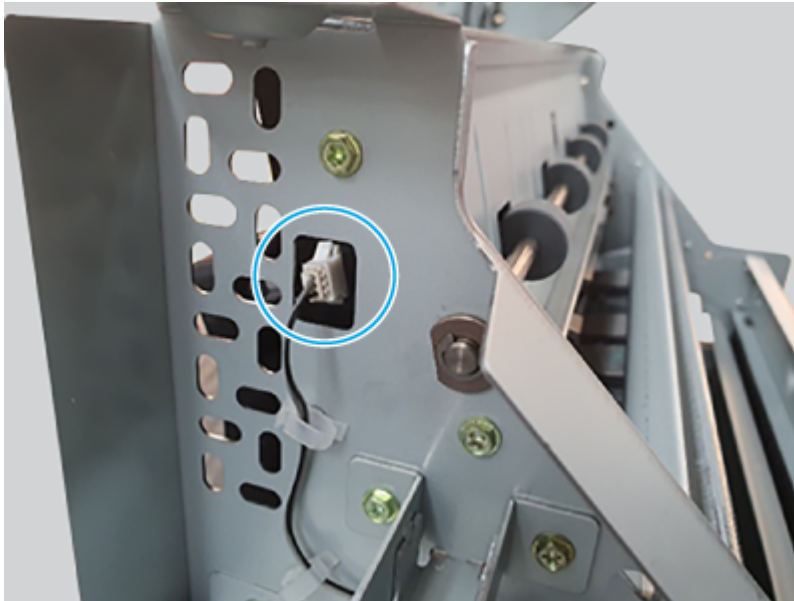
2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2194 Remove two screws



3. Disconnect one connector.

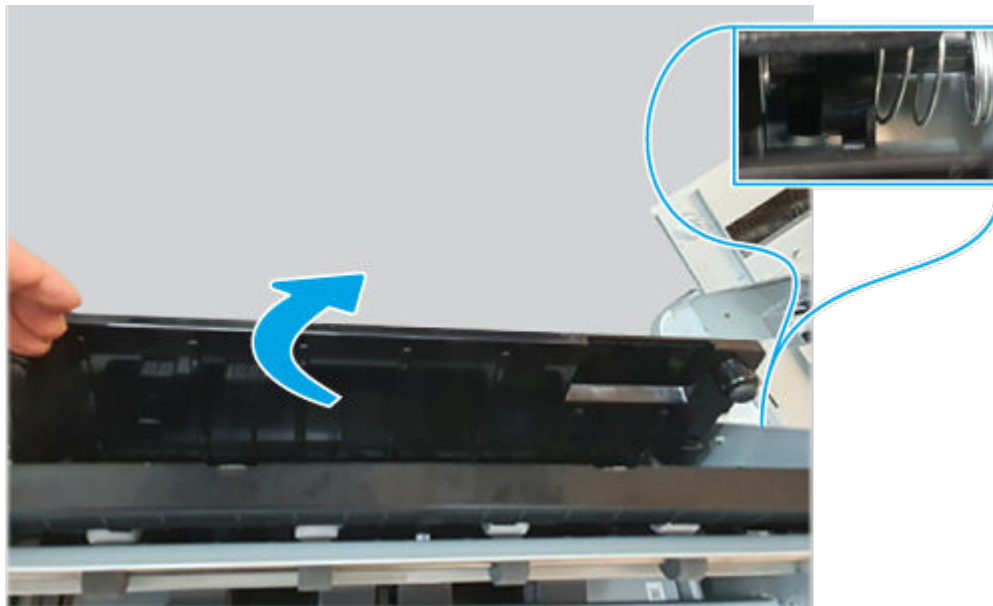
Figure 6-2195 Disconnect one connector



4. Remove the booklet entrance unit.

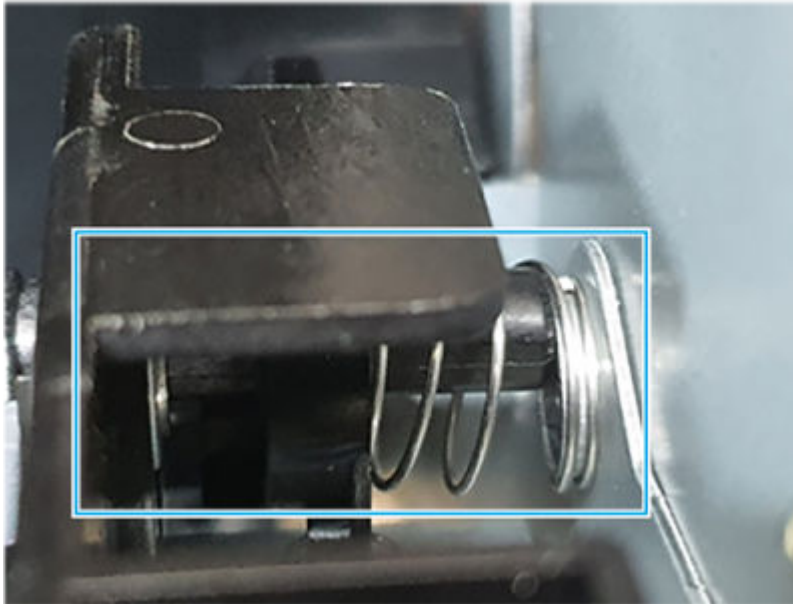
⚠ CAUTION: The spring and holder on the entrance unit are not captive. Do not lose them when handling the unit.

Figure 6-2196 Remove the unit



5. **Reinstall step:** Make sure that the spring on the unit is correctly positioned on the chassis of the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2197 Reinstall the unit



6 Remove the booklet finisher booklet entrance sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher entrance sensor.

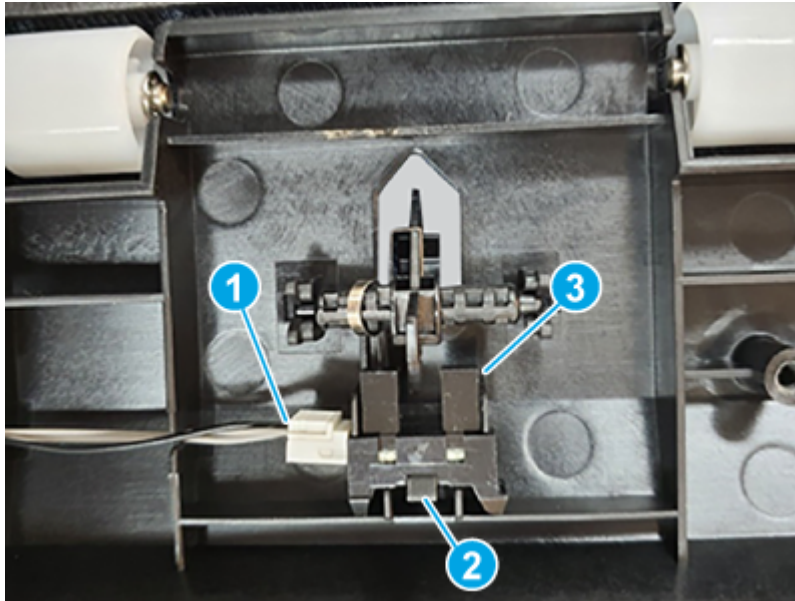
1. Remove three screws, and then remove the entrance actuator cover.

Figure 6-2198 Remove the cover



2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the booklet entrance sensor (callout 3).

Figure 6-2199 Remove the sensor



7 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

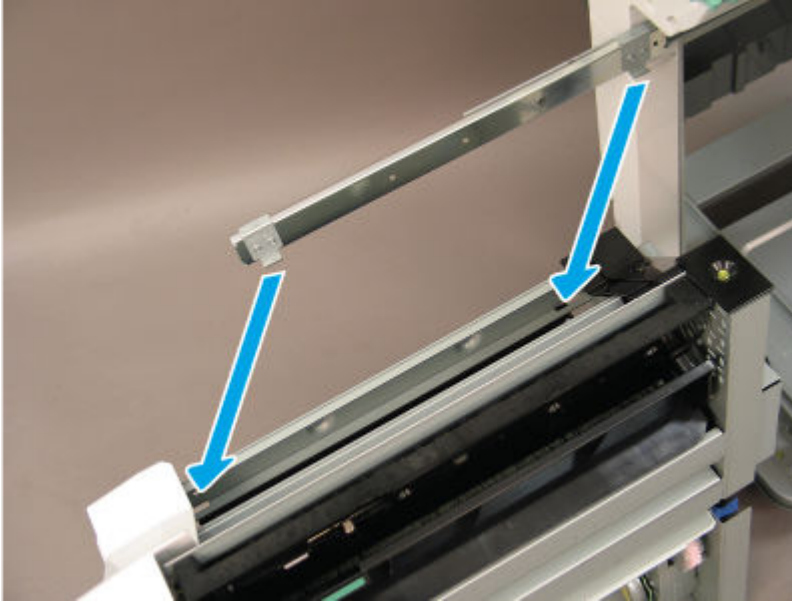
8 Special installation instructions: booklet finisher booklet maker

Use the following procedure to install the booklet finisher booklet maker.

 **NOTE:** Use the special installation instructions to correctly install the booklet maker.

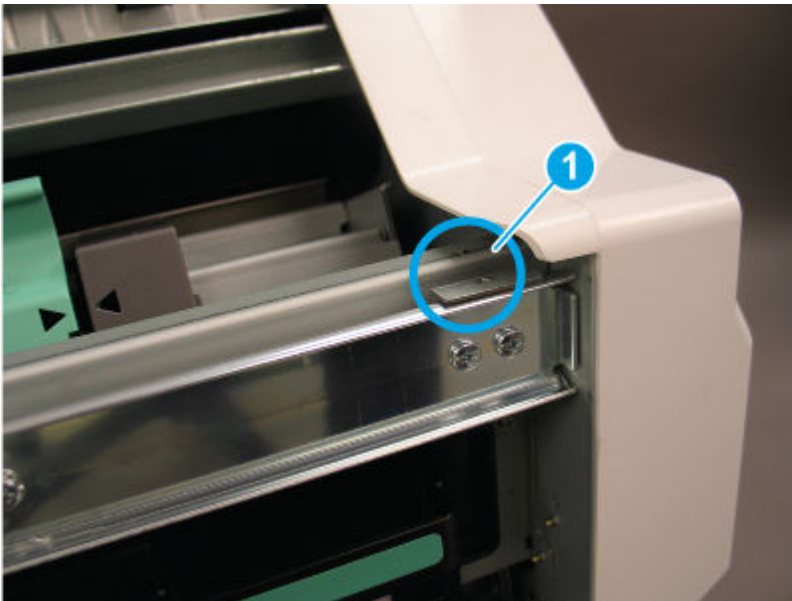
1. When installing the booklet finisher, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2200 Position the hooks on the rail



2. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2201 Check rail alignment (1 of 2)



3. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2202 Check rail alignment (2 of 2)



4. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet maker slot.


 **NOTE:** Continue the installation by reversing the removal steps.

Figure 6-2203 Attach the rail



Removal and replacement: Booklet entrance-presser motor assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher entrance-presser motor assembly.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-289 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01425A	Booklet entrance-presser motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

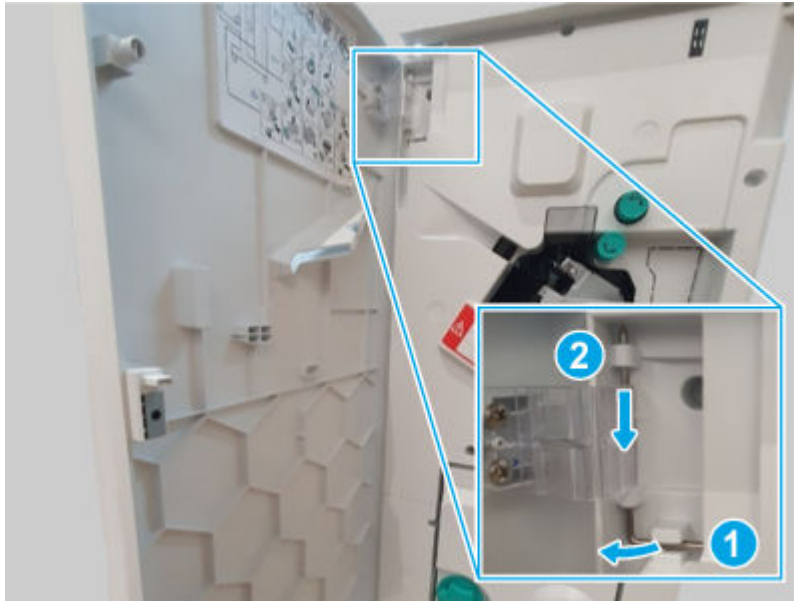
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

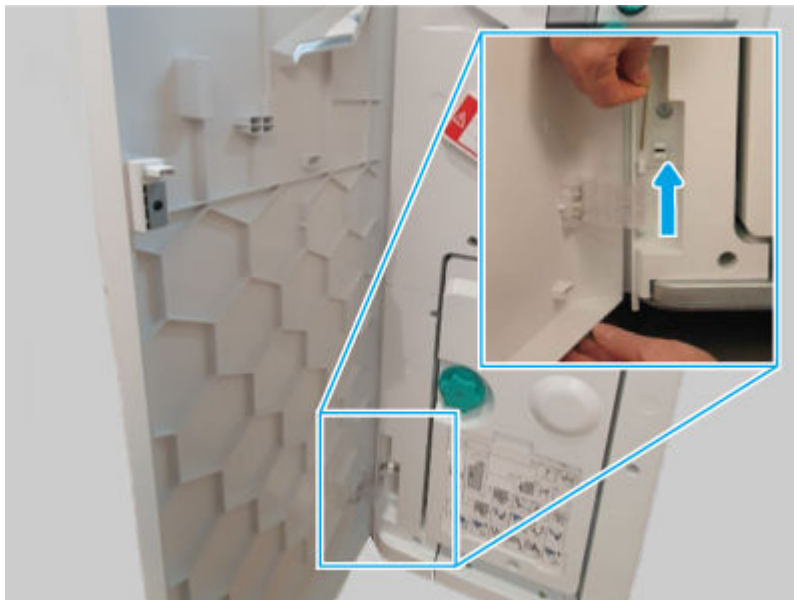
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2204 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2205 Remove the door



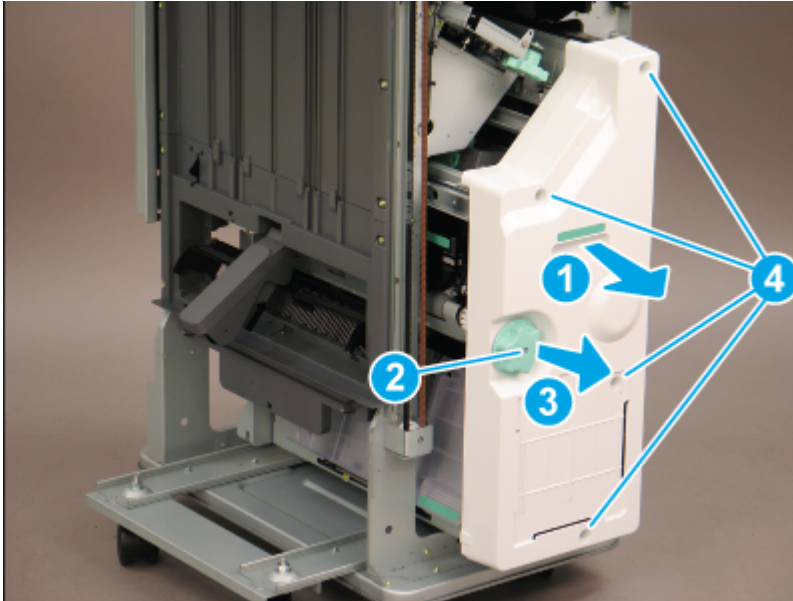
2 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).

- b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
- c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2206 Remove the cover

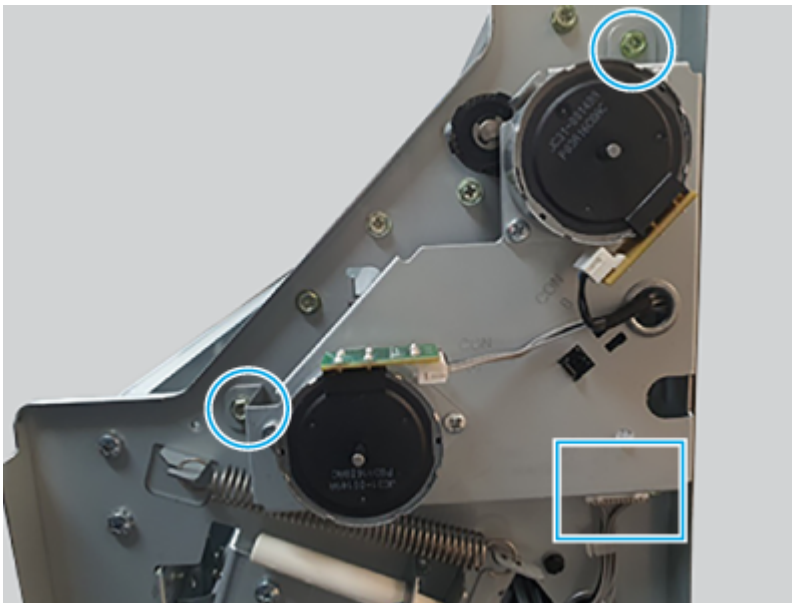


3 Remove the booklet finisher booklet entrance-presser motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher entrance-presser motor assembly.

- Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the booklet entrance-presser motor assembly.

Figure 6-2207 Remove the assembly



4 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Booklet entrance motor

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher entrance motor.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-290 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01152A	Drive-motor step (Booklet entrance motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

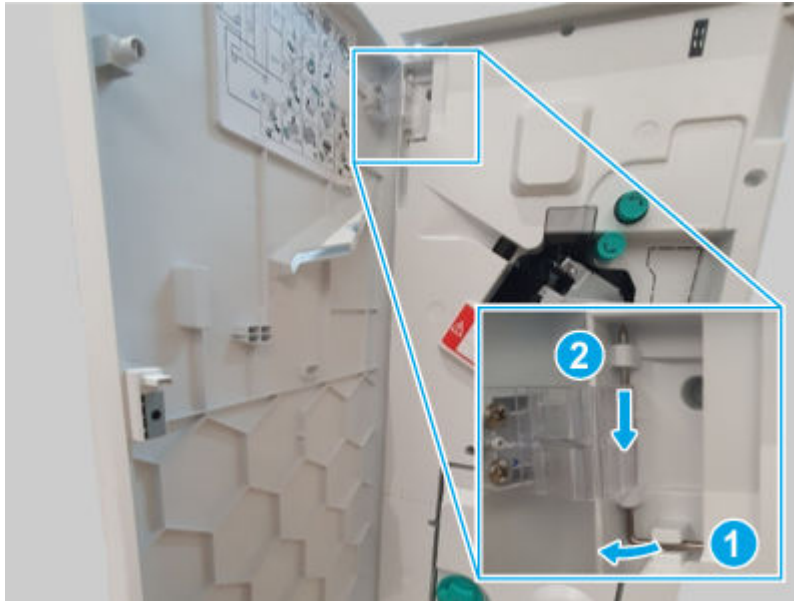
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

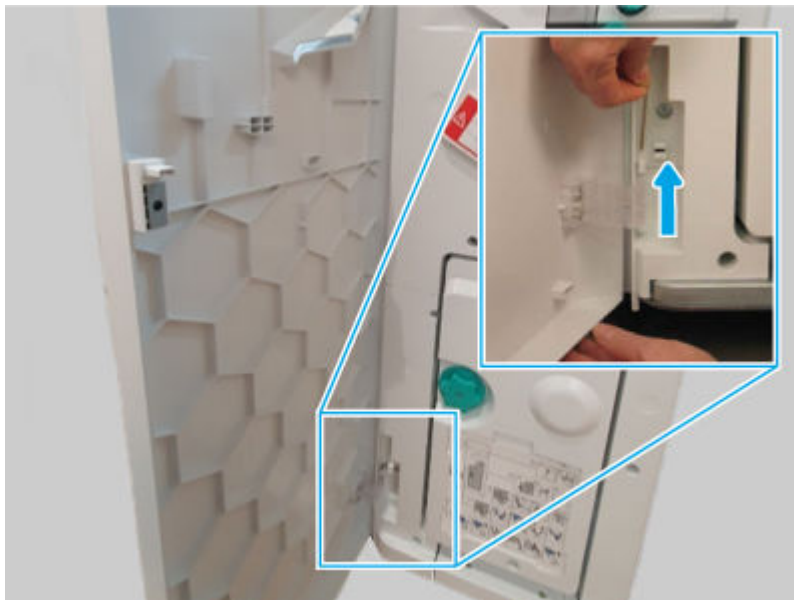
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2208 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2209 Remove the door

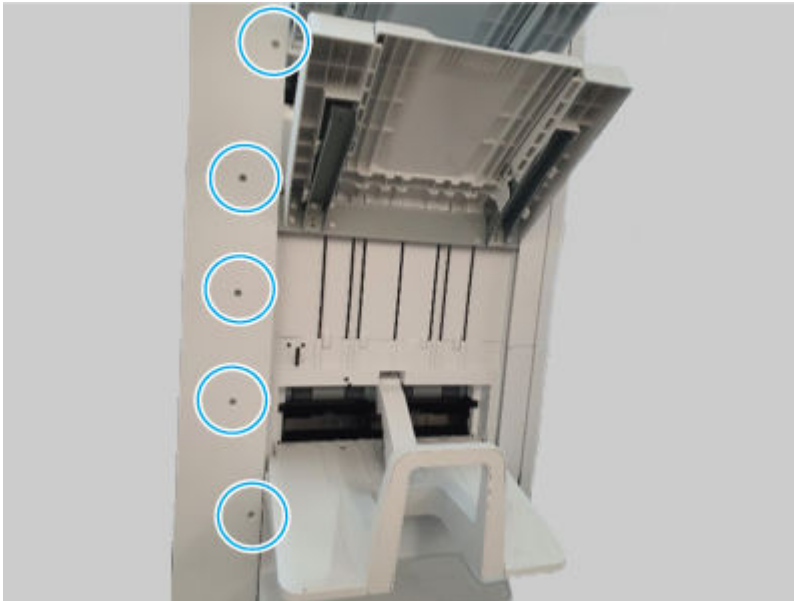


2 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2210 Remove five screws

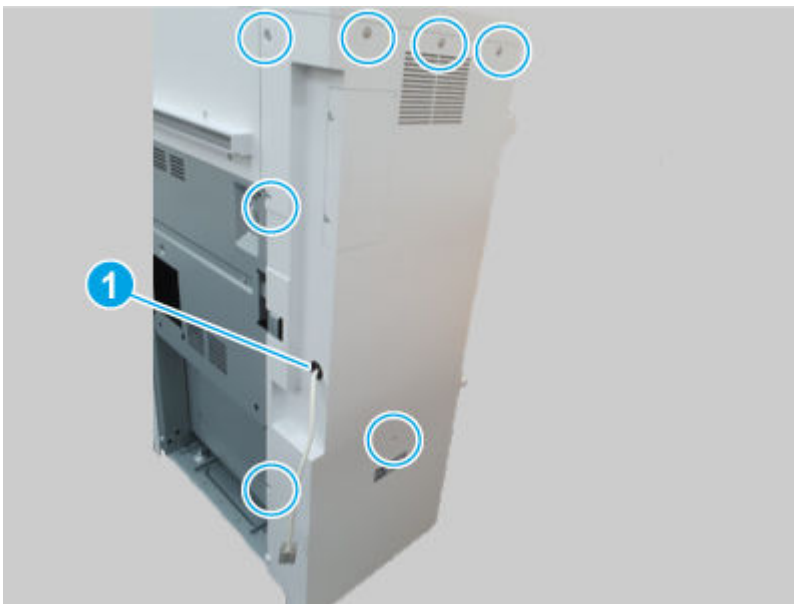


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2211 Remove the cover

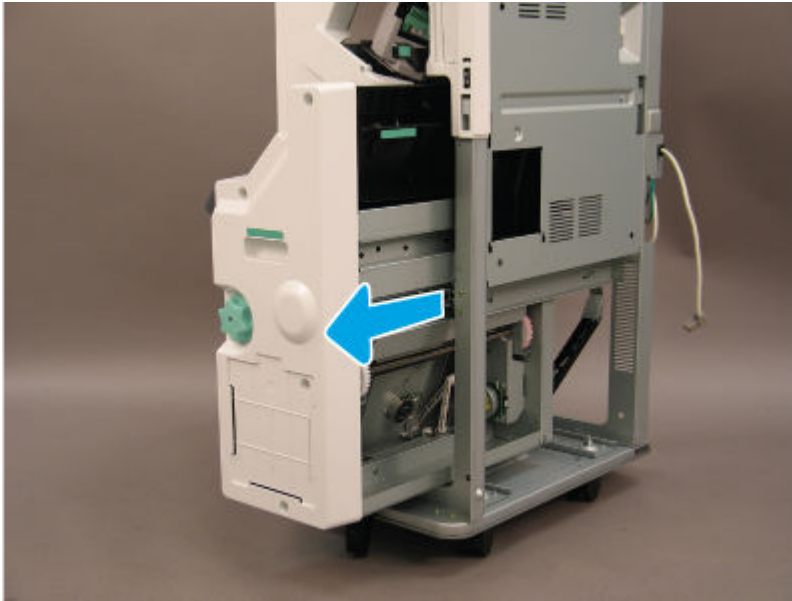


- 3 **Remove the booklet finisher booklet maker**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet maker.

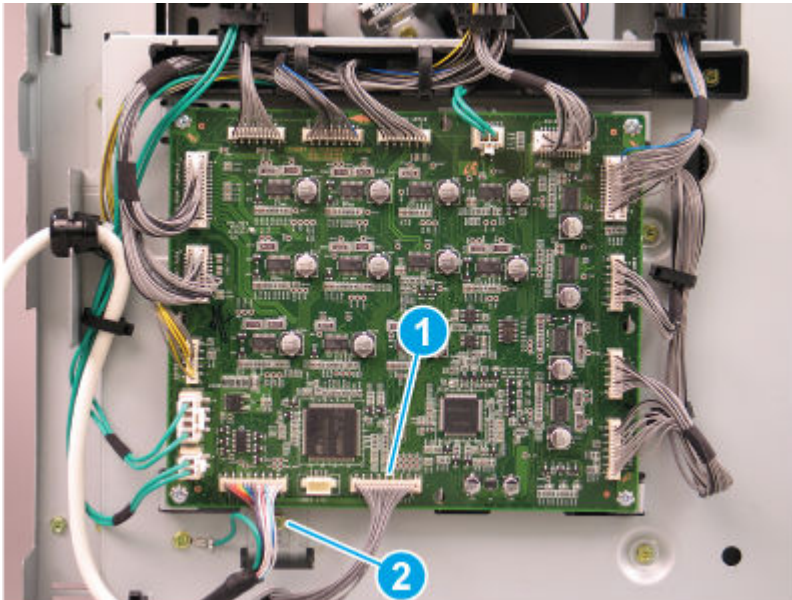
1. Slide the booklet maker out of the finisher.

Figure 6-2212 Slide the booklet maker out



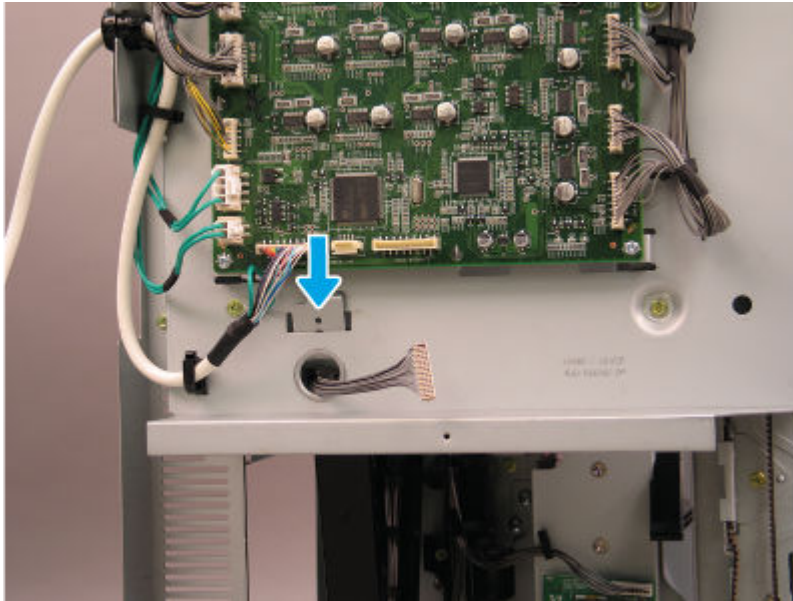
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 6-2213 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



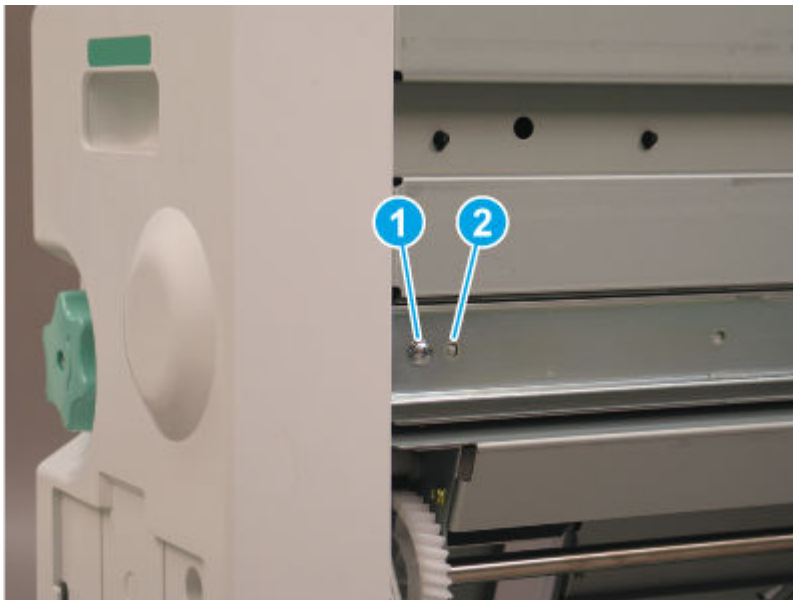
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet-metal.

Figure 6-2214 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



4. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2).

Figure 6-2215 Release the alignment pin



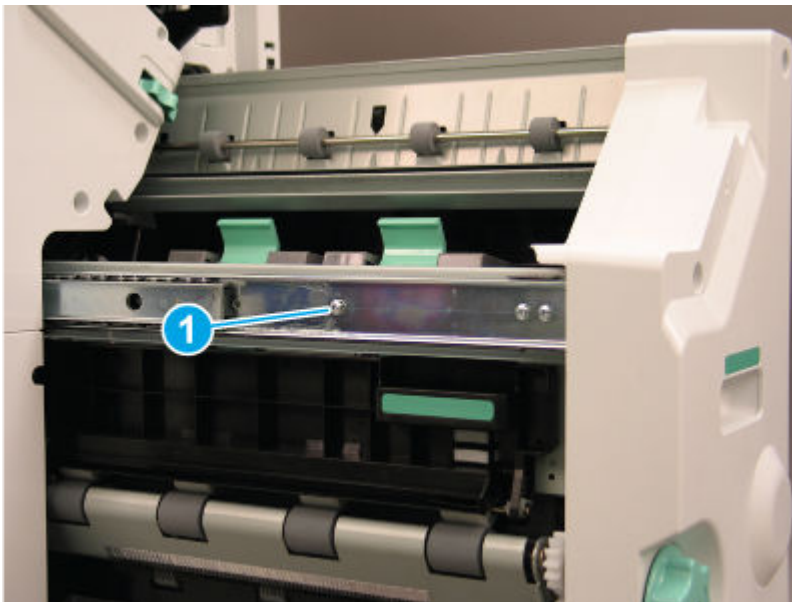
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 6-2216 Slide the rail in



6. Remove one screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2217 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet maker up on the left side while pulling the right rail away from the finisher chassis to clear the sheet-metal. Remove the booklet maker unit.


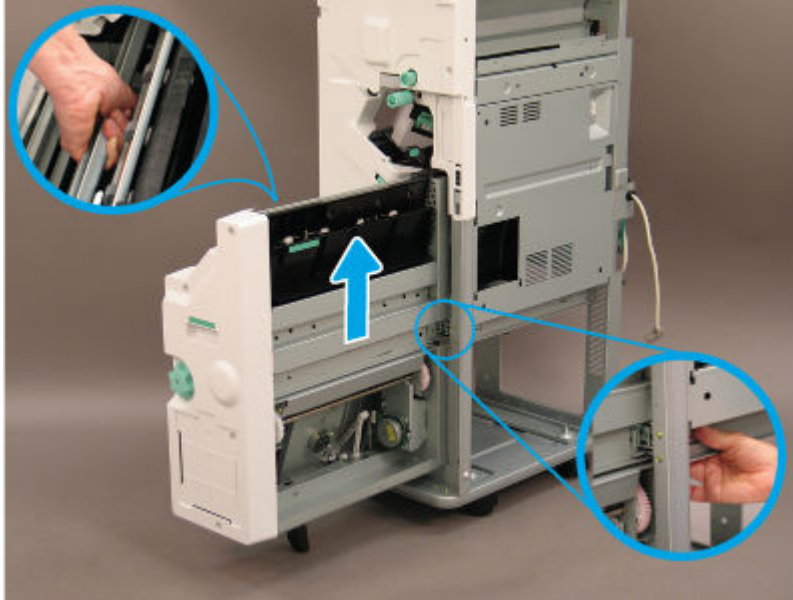
 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure to use the special installation instructions in this topic (located after the unpack and recycle step).

Figure 6-2218 Remove the booklet maker

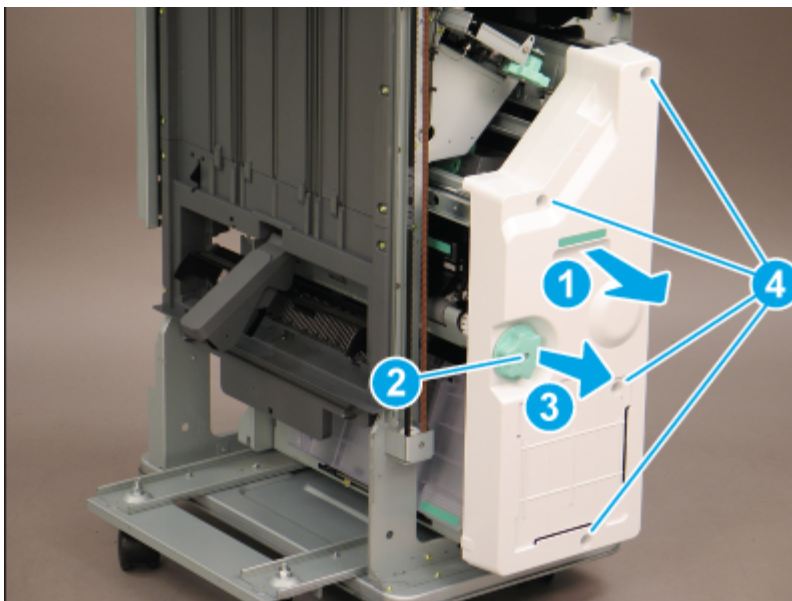


4 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).
 - b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
 - c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2219 Remove the cover



5 Remove the booklet finisher booklet entrance motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher entrance motor.

- Disconnect one connector. remove two screws, and then remove the entrance motor.

Figure 6-2220 Remove the motor



6 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.




IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.




NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

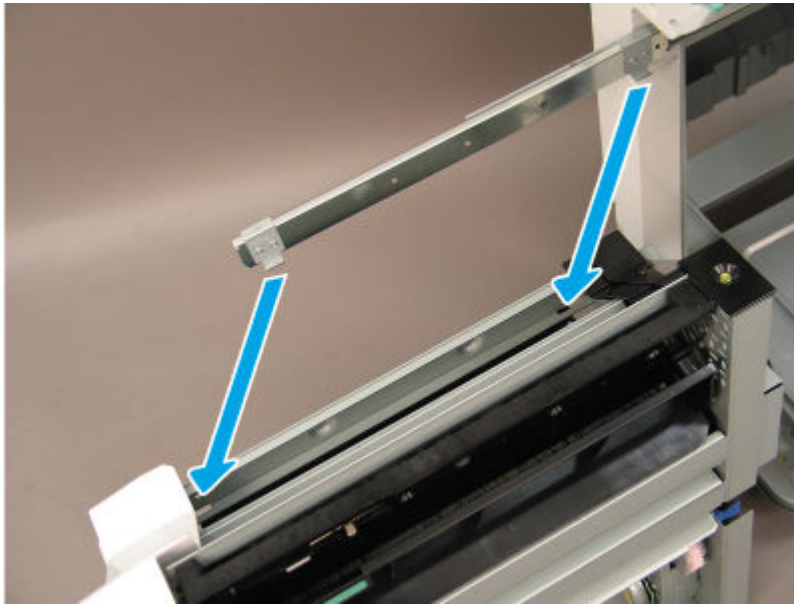
7 Special installation instructions: booklet finisher booklet maker

Use the following procedure to install the booklet finisher booklet maker.

 **NOTE:** Use the special installation instructions to correctly install the booklet maker.

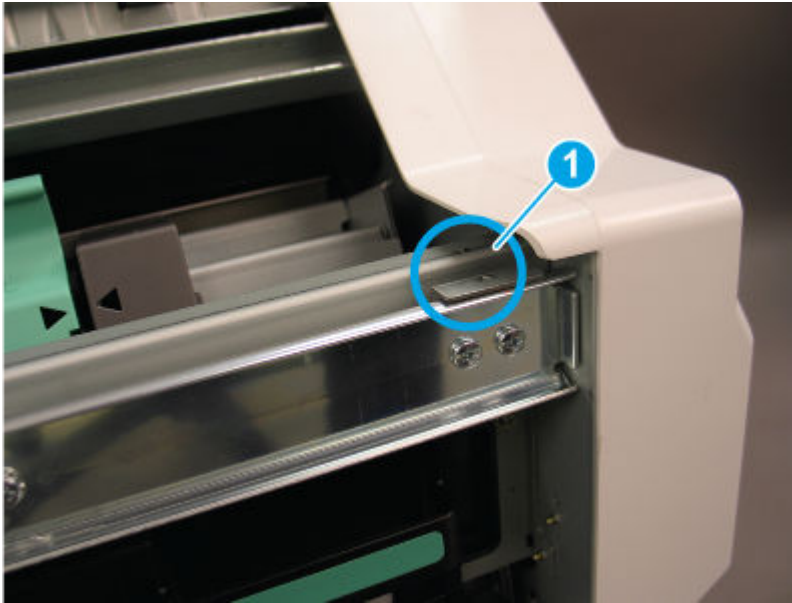
1. When installing the booklet finisher, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2221 Position the hooks on the rail



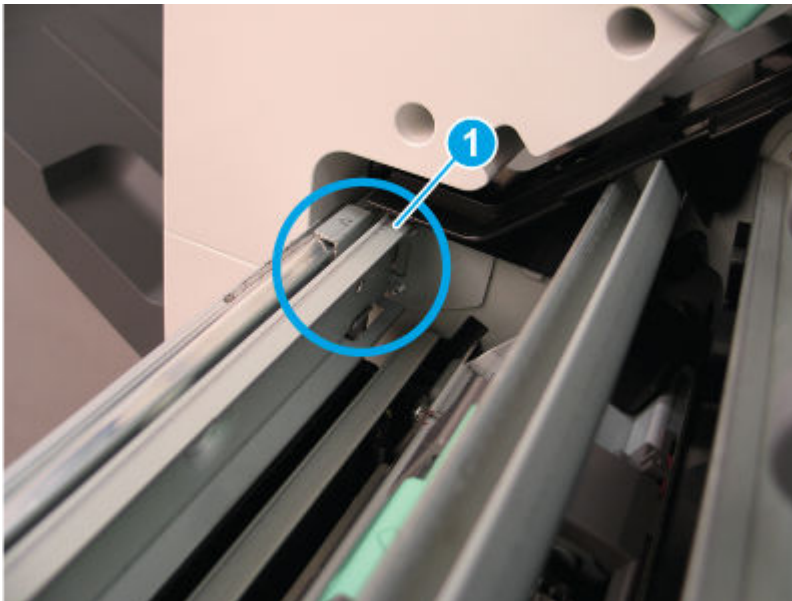
2. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2222 Check rail alignment (1 of 2)



3. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2223 Check rail alignment (2 of 2)

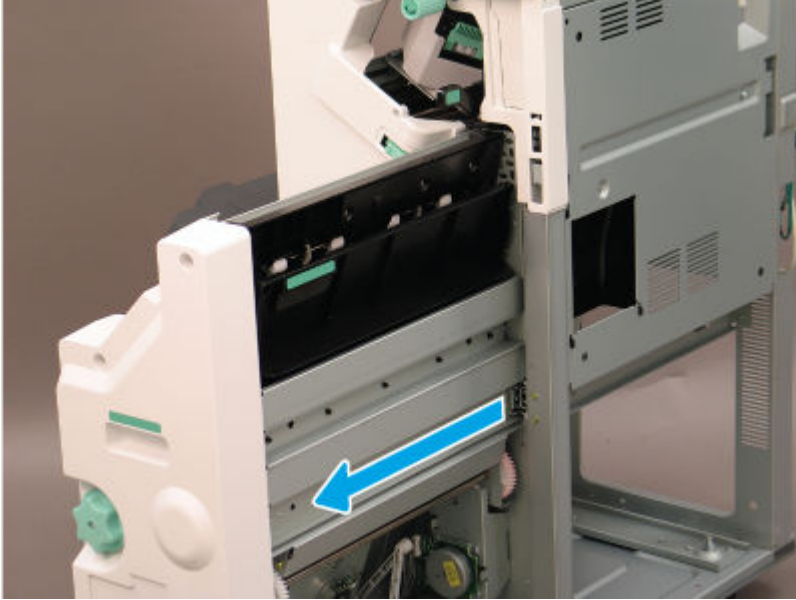


4. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet maker slot.



NOTE: Continue the installation by reversing the removal steps.

Figure 6-2224 Attach the rail



Booklet paddle unit

Review the booklet finisher booklet paddle unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Booklet paddle home sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher paddle home sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-291 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Booklet paddle home sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

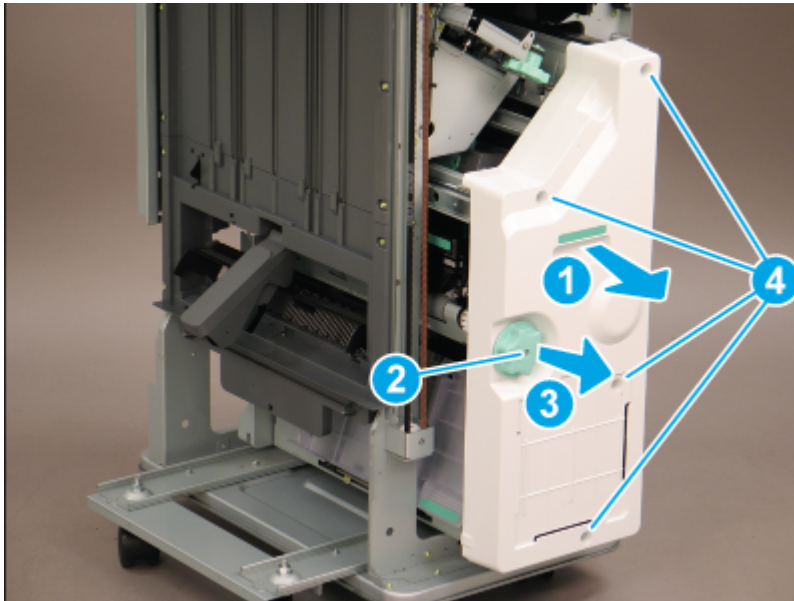
1 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).

- b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
- c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2225 Remove the cover

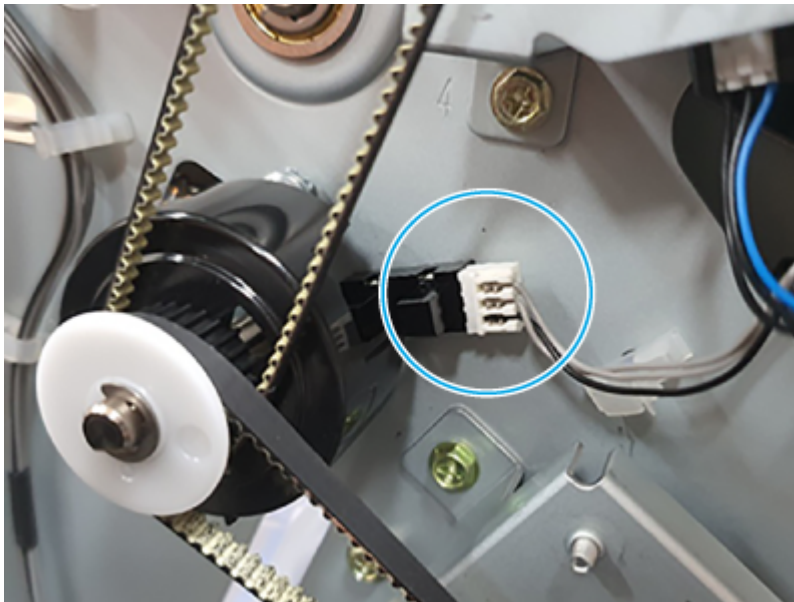


2 Remove the booklet finisher booklet paddle home sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher paddle home sensor.

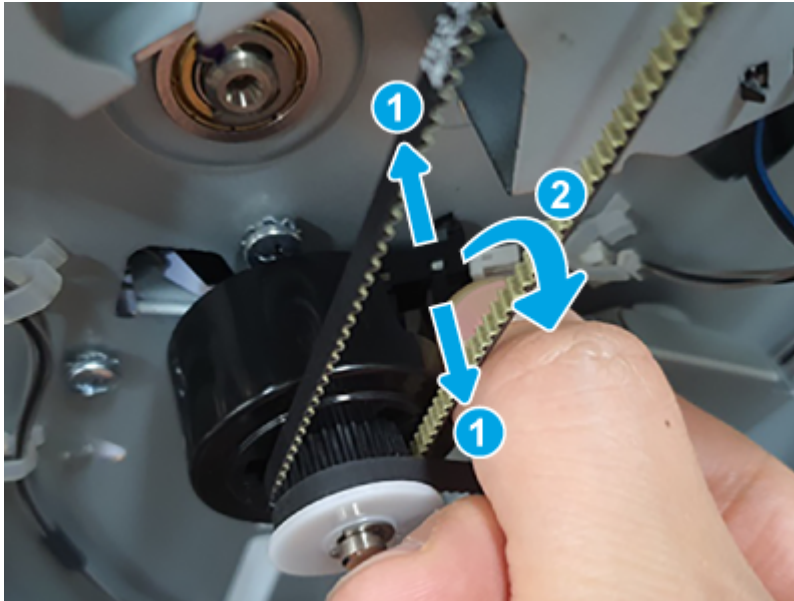
1. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2226 Disconnect one connector



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), and then remove the booklet paddle home sensor (callout 2).


Figure 6-2227 Remove the sensor



3 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Booklet paddle motor assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher paddle motor assembly.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-292 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01430A	Booklet paddle motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

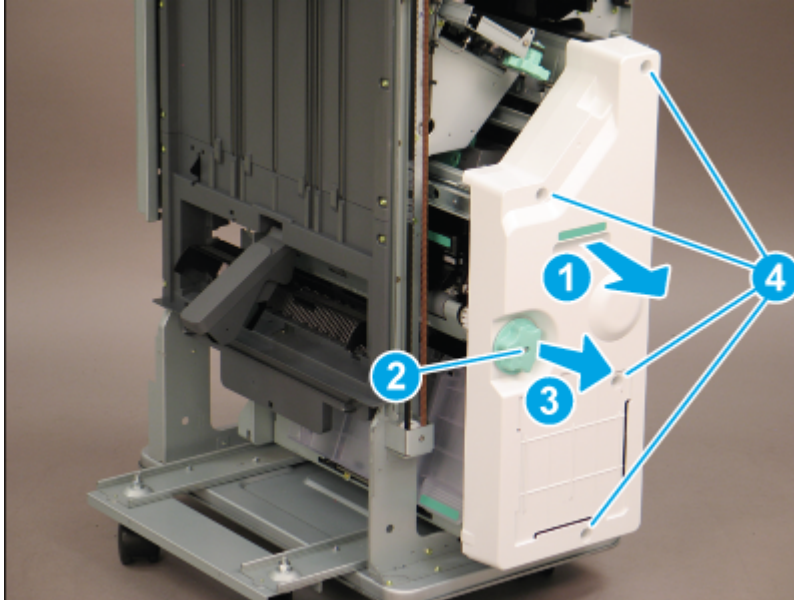
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).
 - b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
 - c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2228 Remove the cover



2 Remove the booklet finisher booklet paddle motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher paddle motor assembly.

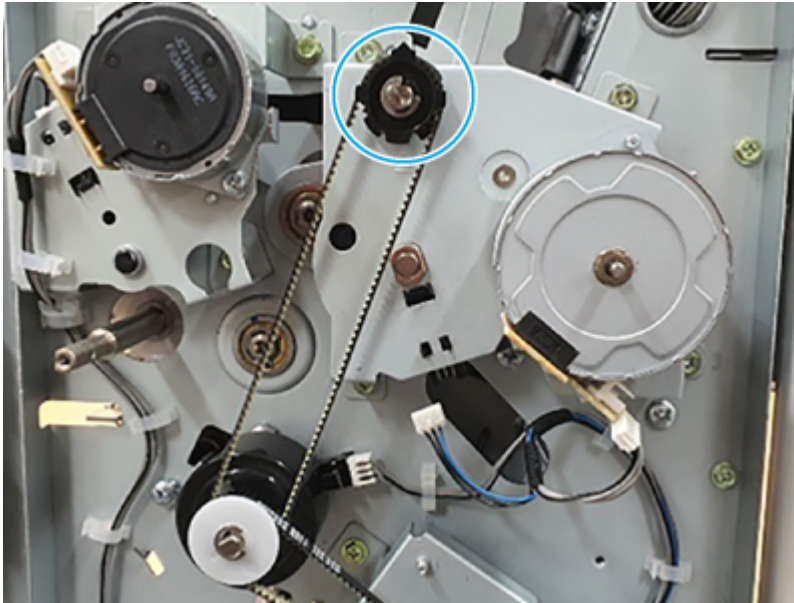
1. Disconnect two connectors.

Figure 6-2229 Disconnect two connectors



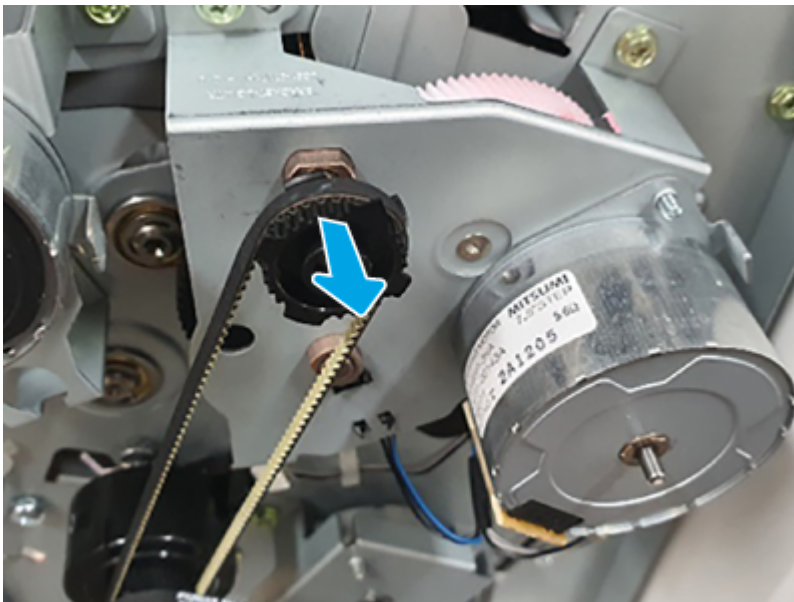
2. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring.

Figure 6-2230 Remove the e-ring



3. Remove the belt and gear.

Figure 6-2231 Remove the belt and gear



4. Remove four screws, and then remove the booklet paddle motor assembly.

Figure 6-2232 Remove the assembly



3 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Booklet paddle motor

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher paddle motor.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-293 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01001A	Drive-motor step (Booklet paddle motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

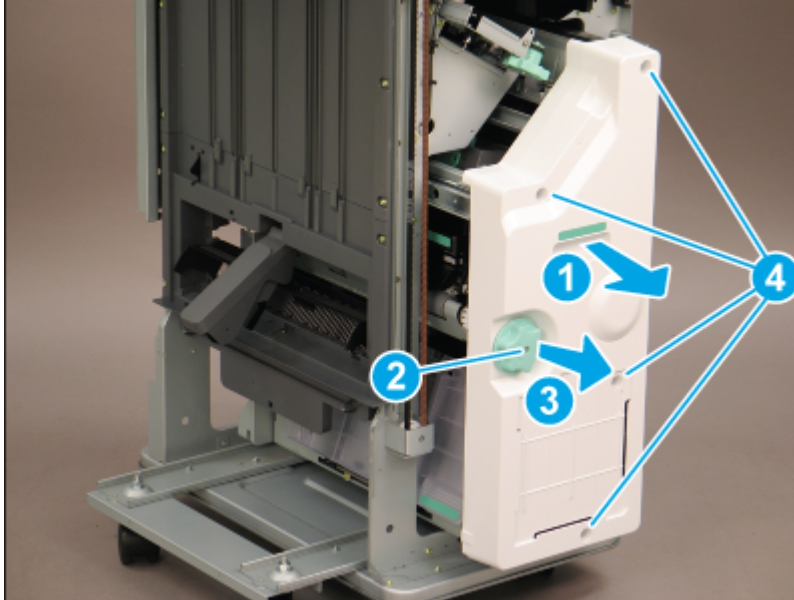
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).
 - b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
 - c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2233 Remove the cover



2 Remove the booklet finisher booklet paddle motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher paddle motor assembly.

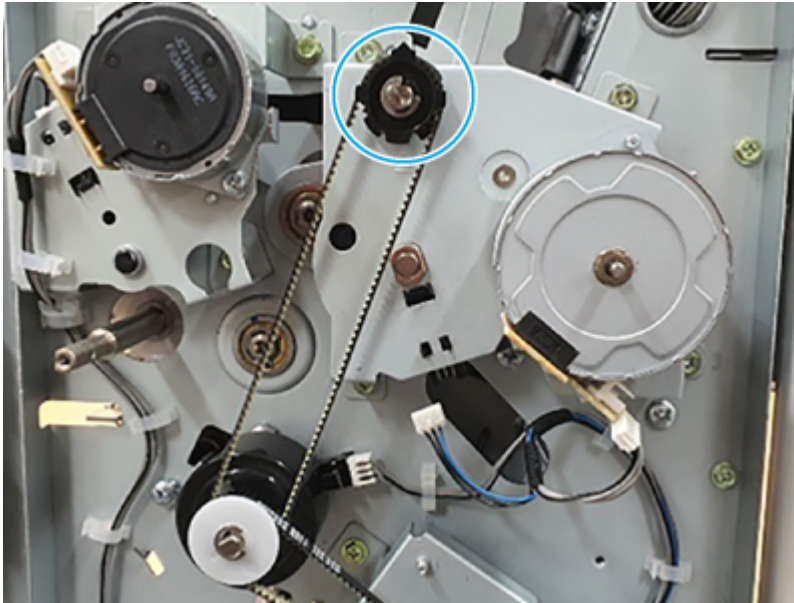
1. Disconnect two connectors.

Figure 6-2234 Disconnect two connectors



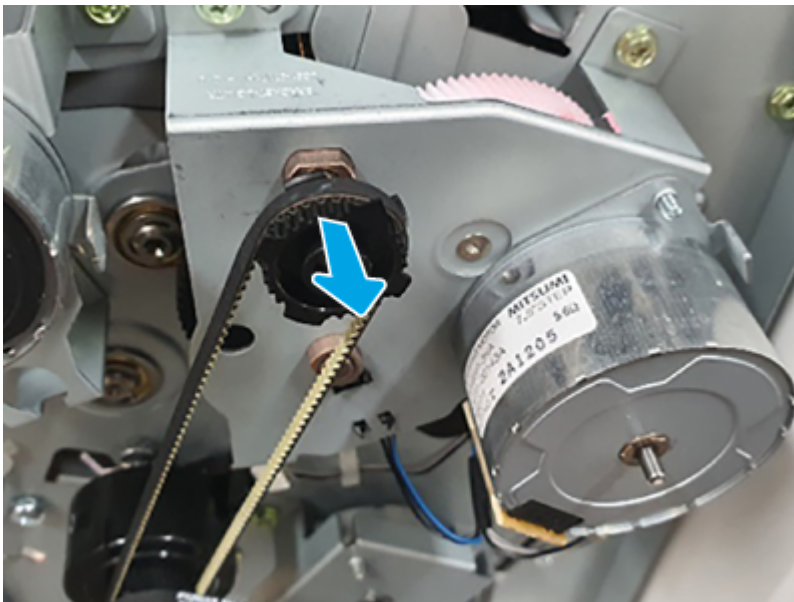
2. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring.

Figure 6-2235 Remove the e-ring



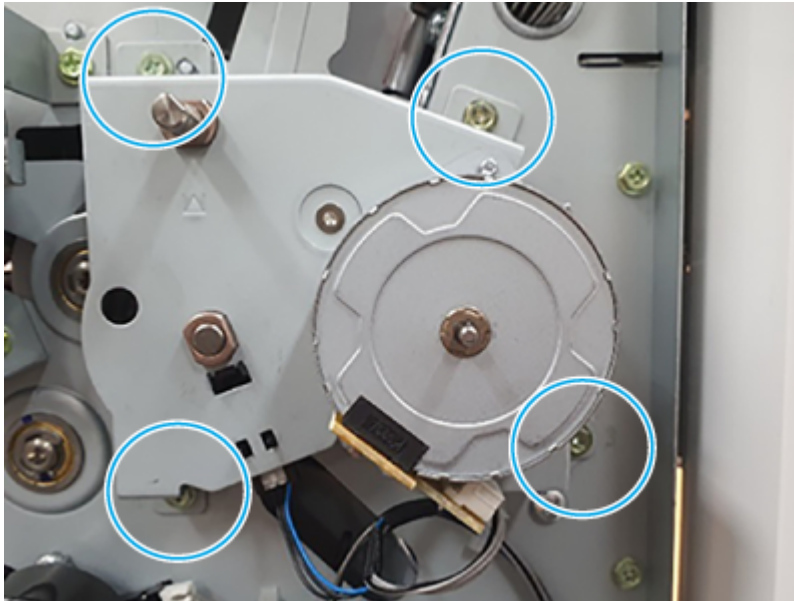
3. Remove the belt and gear.

Figure 6-2236 Remove the belt and gear



4. Remove four screws, and then remove the booklet paddle motor assembly.

Figure 6-2237 Remove the assembly

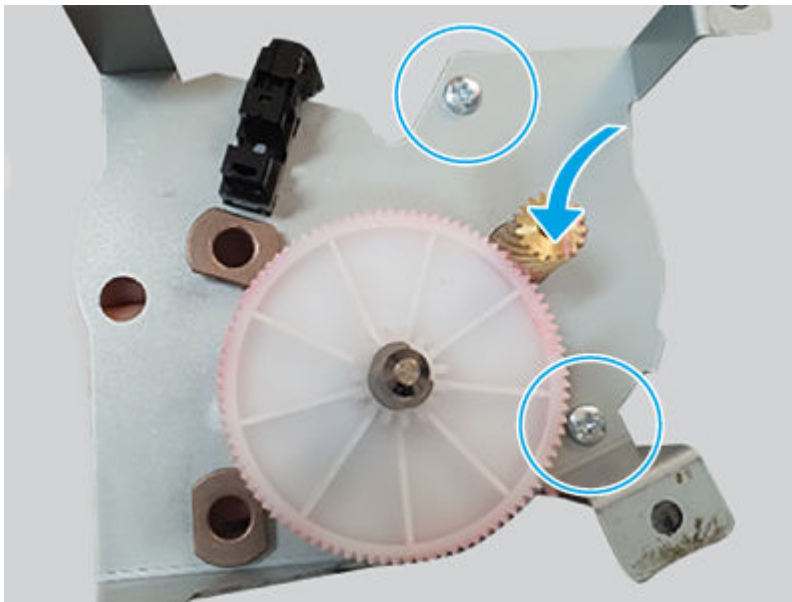


3 Remove the booklet finisher booklet paddle motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher paddle motor.

- Remove two screws, and then remove the booklet paddle motor.


Figure 6-2238 Remove the motor



4 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Booklet end fence unit

Review the booklet finisher booklet end fence unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Booklet end fence home sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher end fence home sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-294 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Booklet end fence home sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

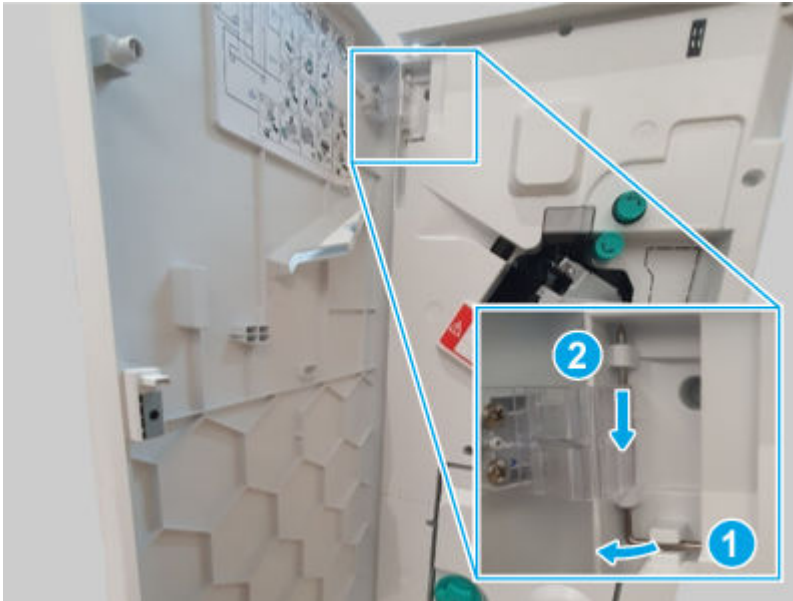
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

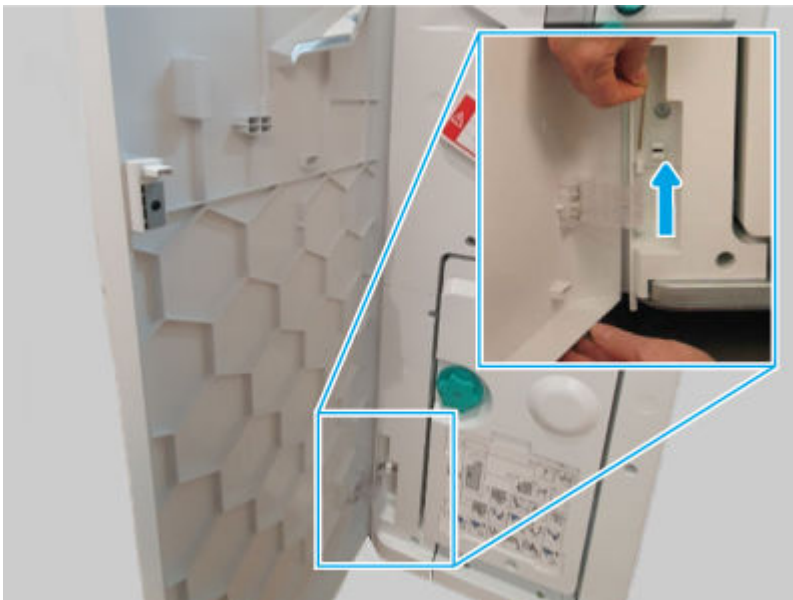
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2239 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2240 Remove the door

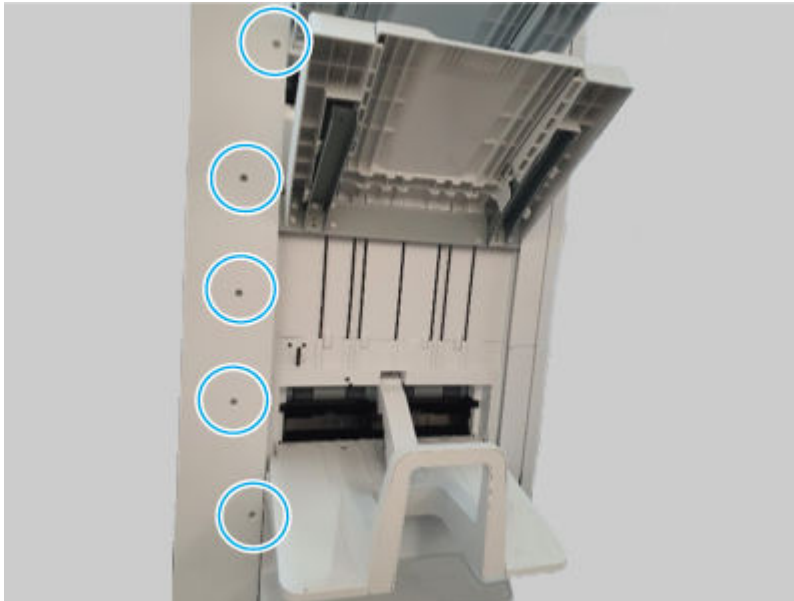


2 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2241 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


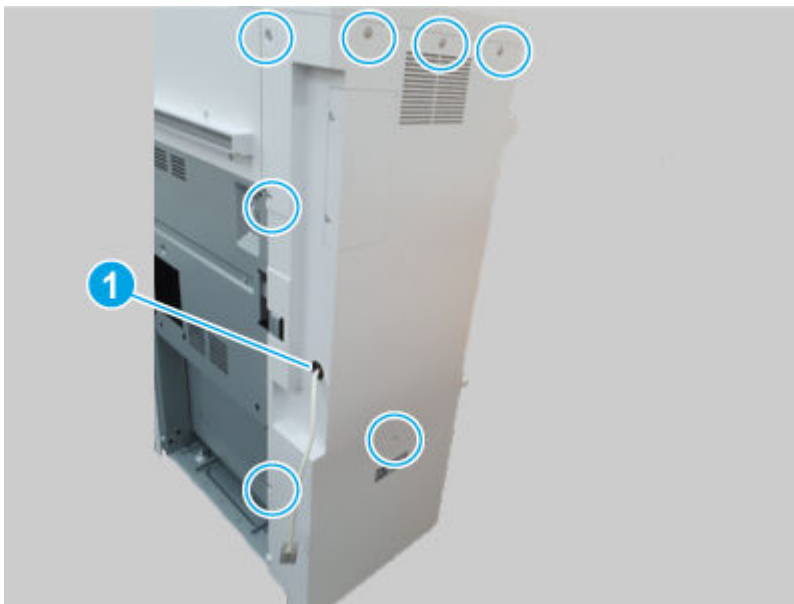
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2242 Remove the cover

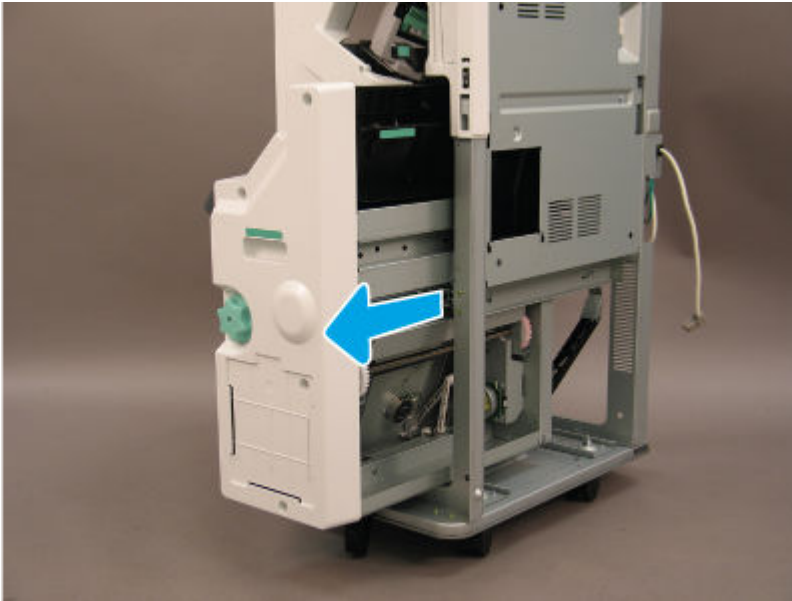


- 3 **Remove the booklet finisher booklet maker**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet maker.

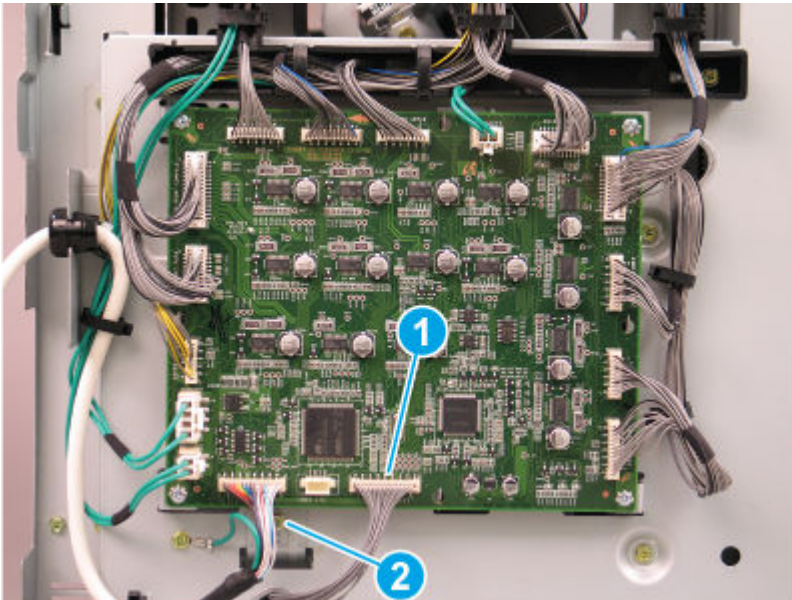
1. Slide the booklet maker out of the finisher.

Figure 6-2243 Slide the booklet maker out



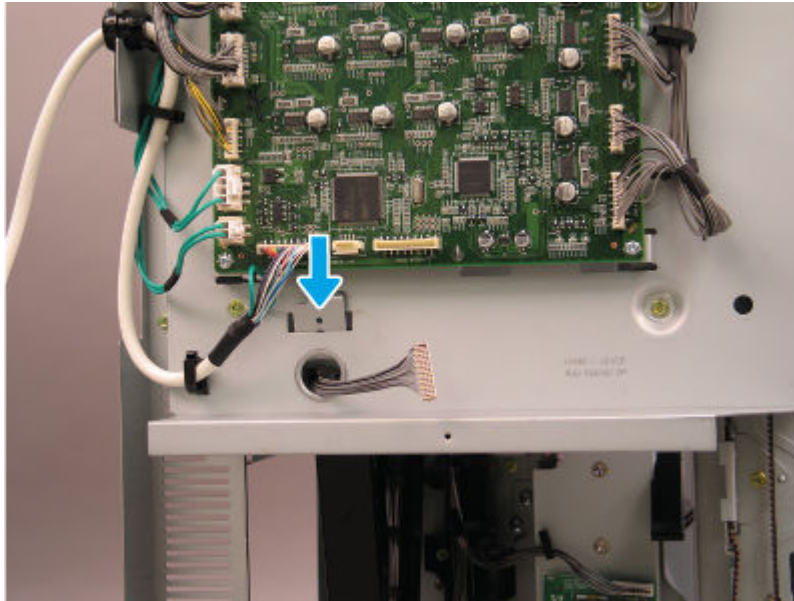
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 6-2244 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



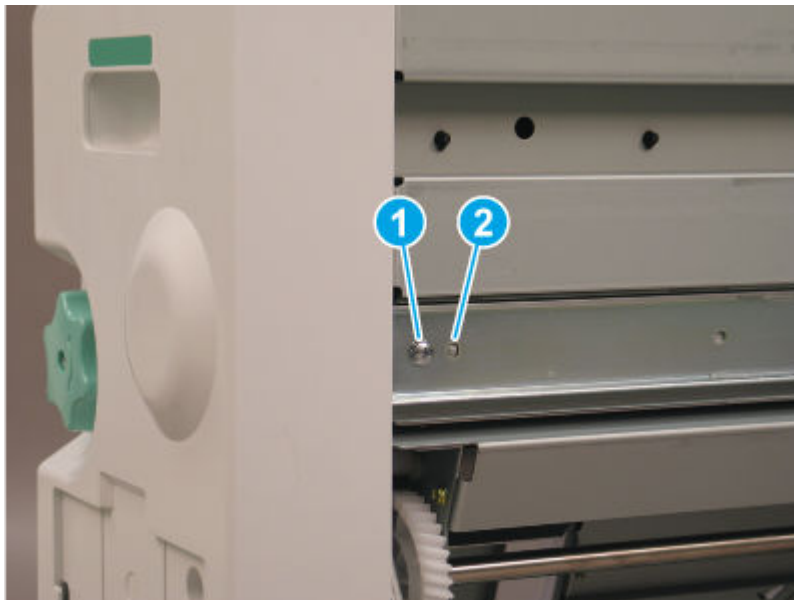
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet-metal.

Figure 6-2245 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



4. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2).

Figure 6-2246 Release the alignment pin



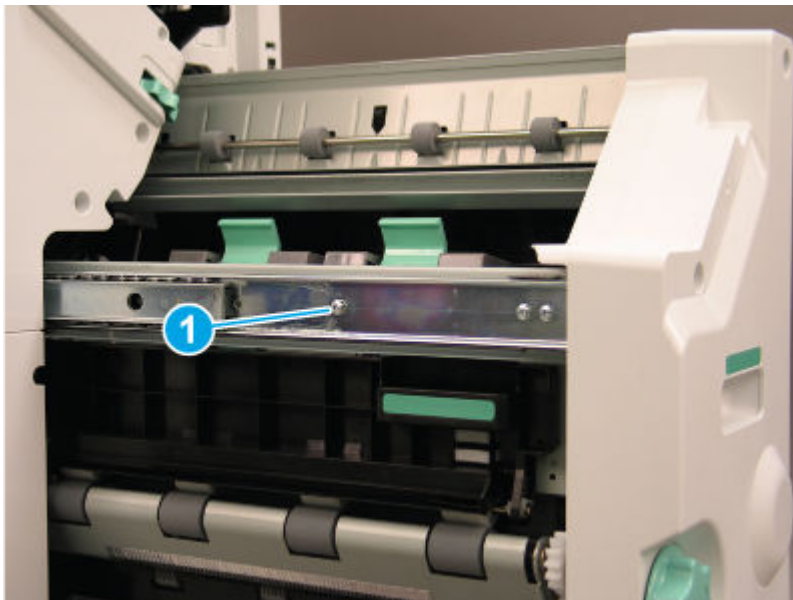
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 6-2247 Slide the rail in



6. Remove one screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2248 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet maker up on the left side while pulling the right rail away from the finisher chassis to clear the sheet-metal. Remove the booklet maker unit.


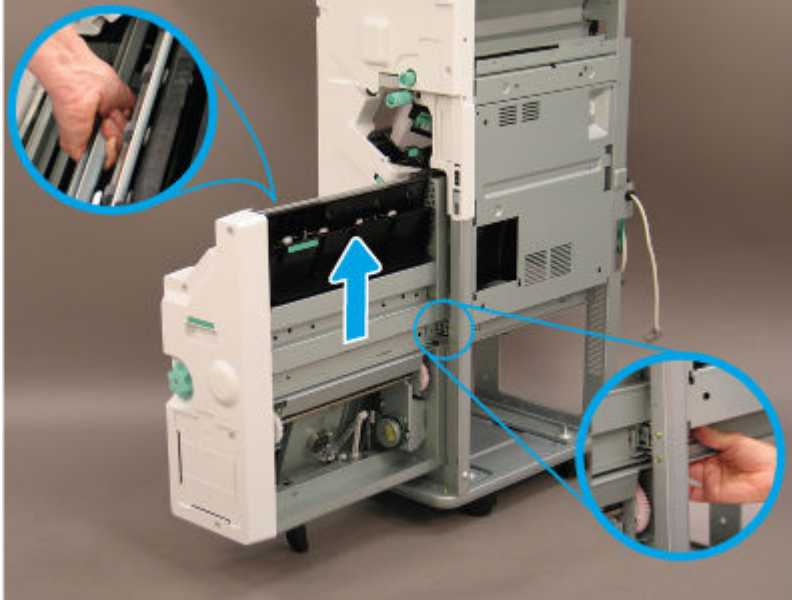
 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure to use the special installation instructions in this topic (located after the unpack and recycle step).

Figure 6-2249 Remove the booklet maker

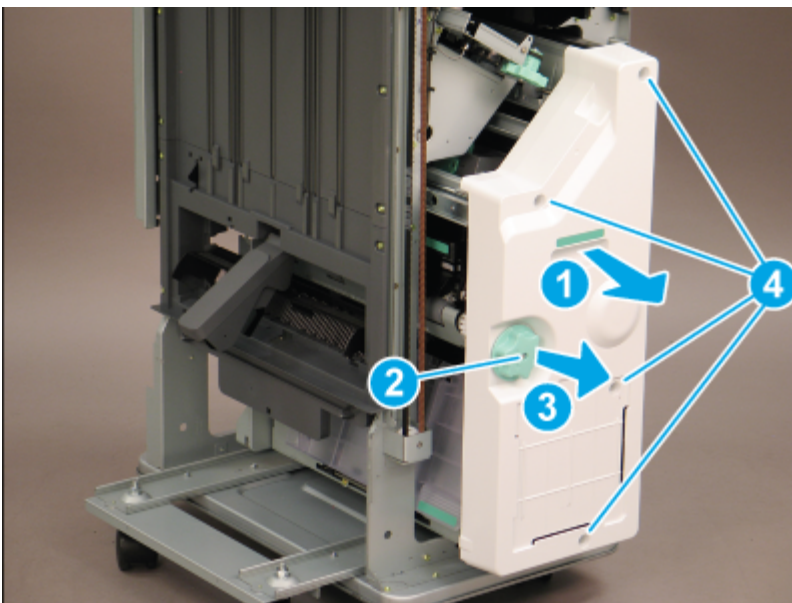


4 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).
 - b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
 - c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2250 Remove the cover

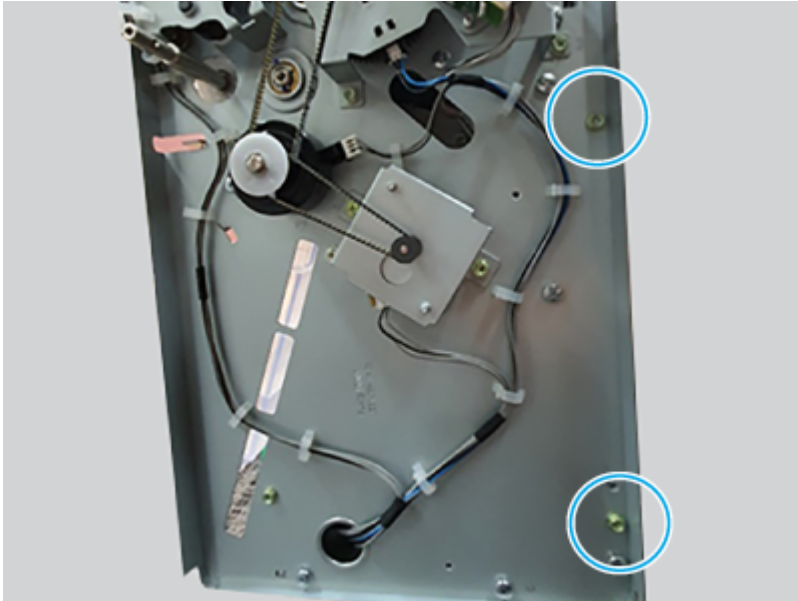


5 Remove the booklet finisher booklet end fence home sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher end fence home sensor.

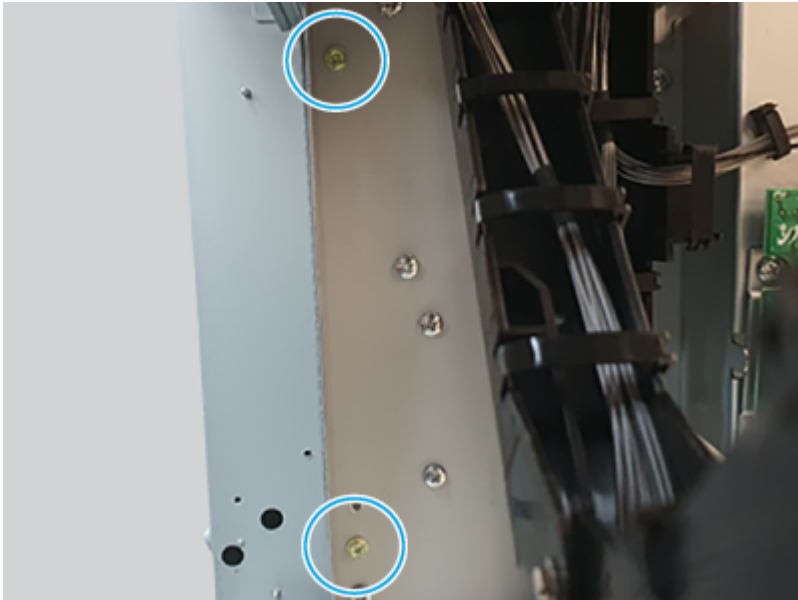
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2251 Remove two screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the shield-r lower.

Figure 6-2252 Remove the shield



3. Move the upper jam guide out of the way.

Figure 6-2253 Move the guide



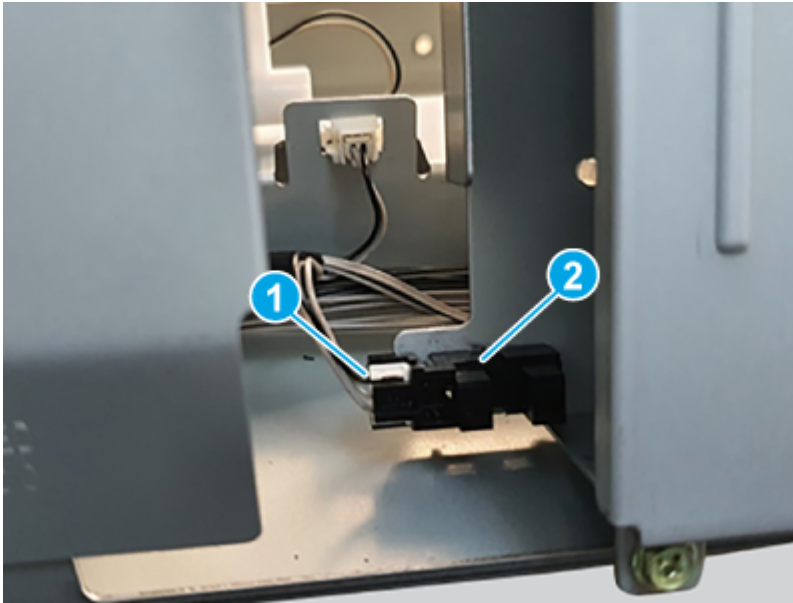
4. Lift up the booklet end fence.

Figure 6-2254 Lift the fence



5. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the booklet end fence home sensor (callout 2).

Figure 6-2255 Remove the sensor



6 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: booklet finisher booklet maker

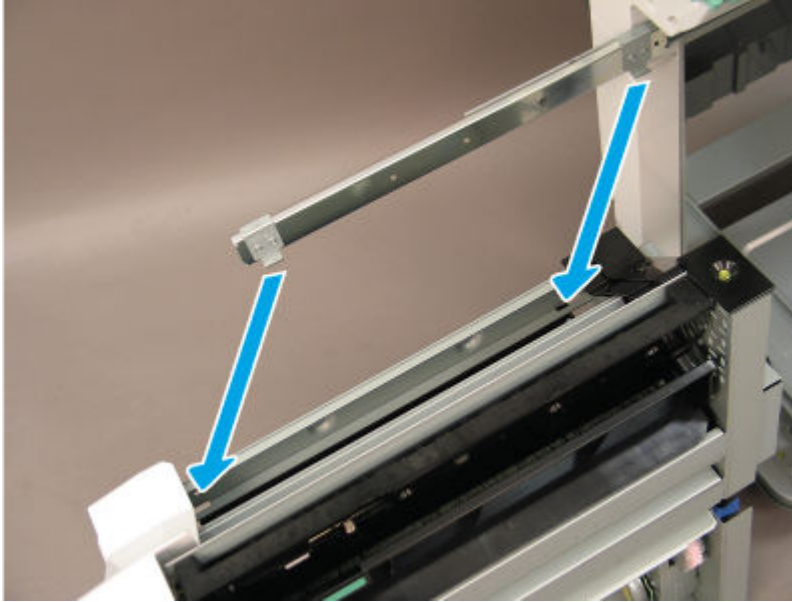
Use the following procedure to install the booklet finisher booklet maker.



NOTE: Use the special installation instructions to correctly install the booklet maker.

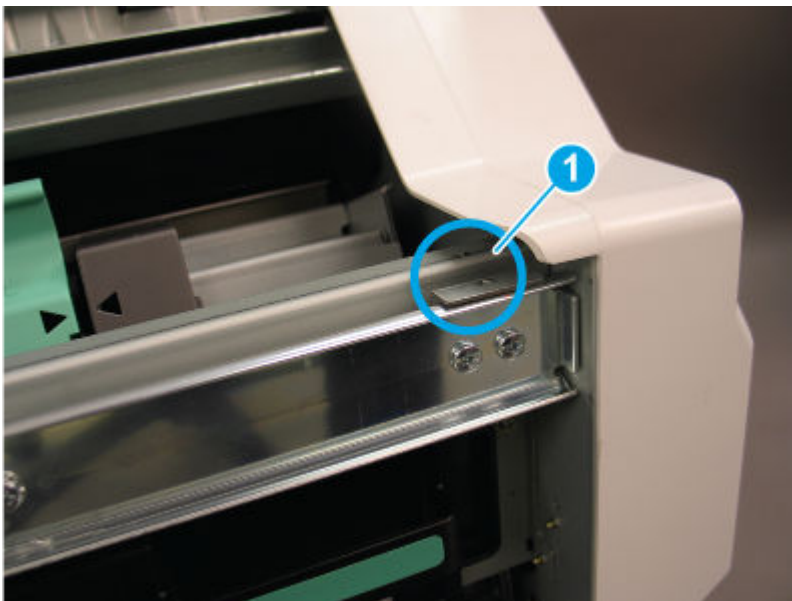
1. When installing the booklet finisher, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2256 Position the hooks on the rail



2. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2257 Check rail alignment (1 of 2)



3. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2258 Check rail alignment (2 of 2)



4. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet maker slot.




NOTE: Continue the installation by reversing the removal steps.

Figure 6-2259 Attach the rail



Removal and replacement: Booklet end fence motor

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher end fence motor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 25 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-295 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01155A	Drive-motor step (Booklet end fence motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

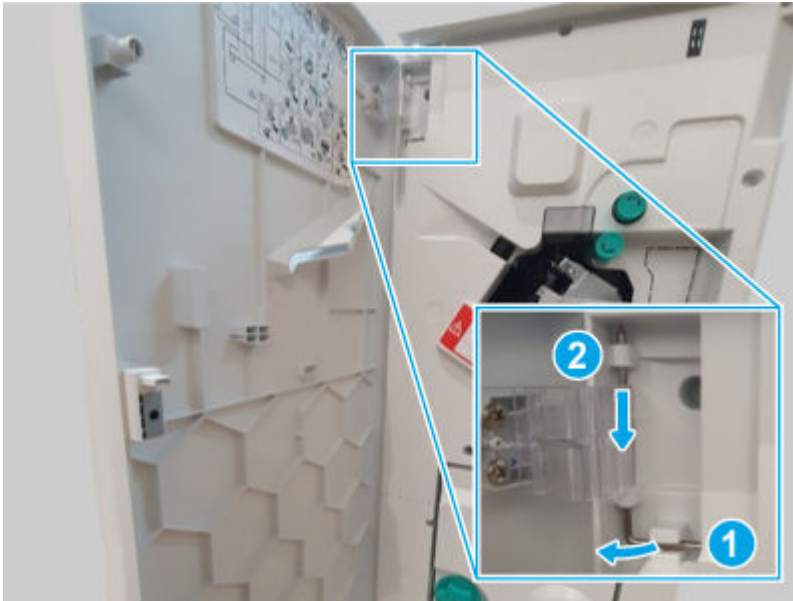
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

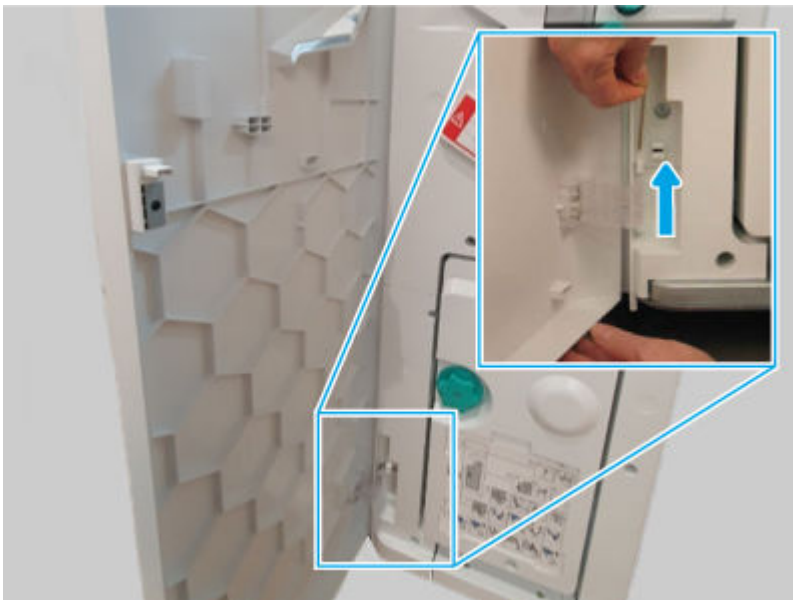
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2260 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2261 Remove the door

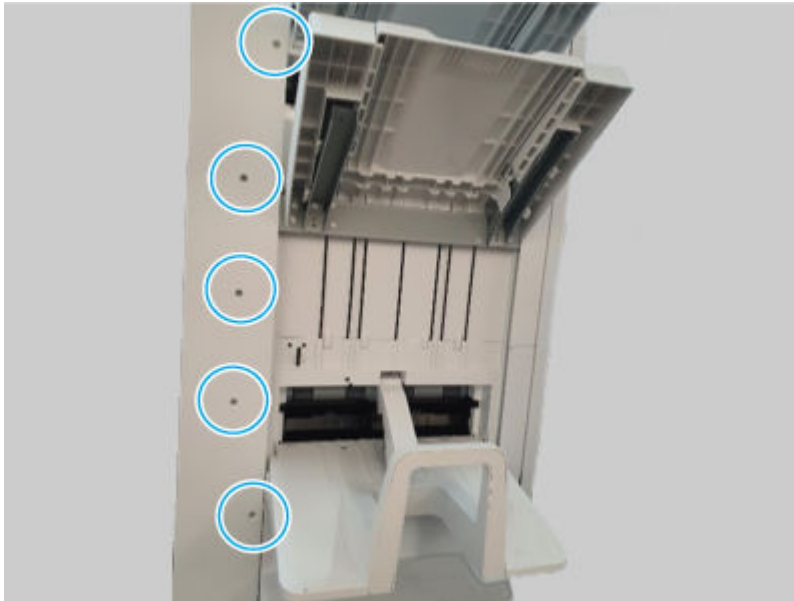


2 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2262 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


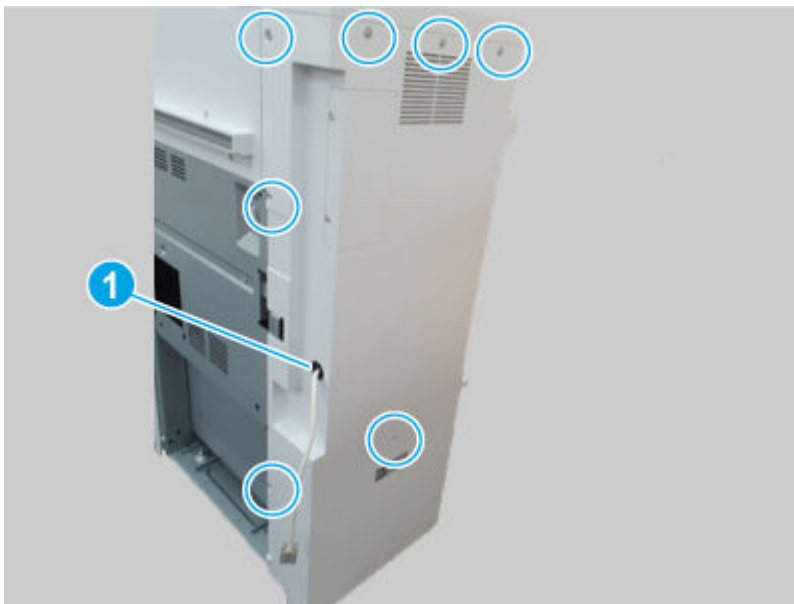
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2263 Remove the cover

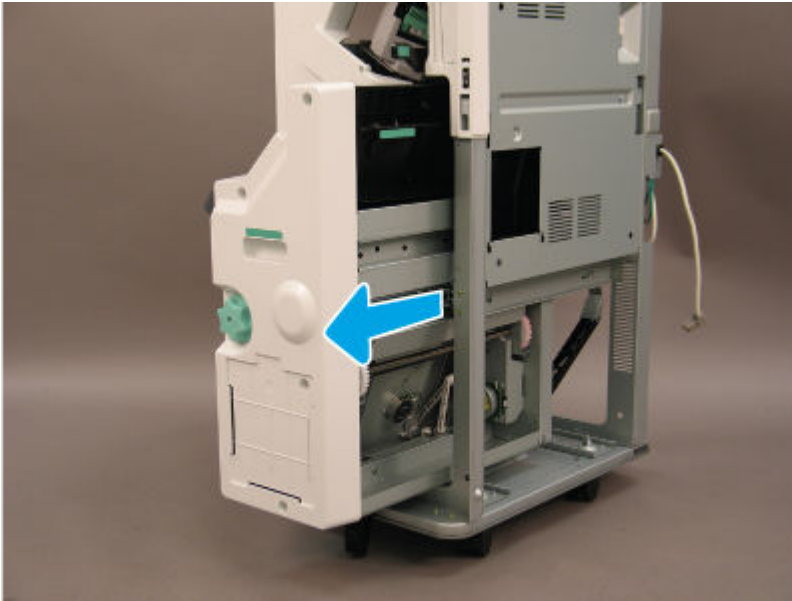


- 3 **Remove the booklet finisher booklet maker**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet maker.

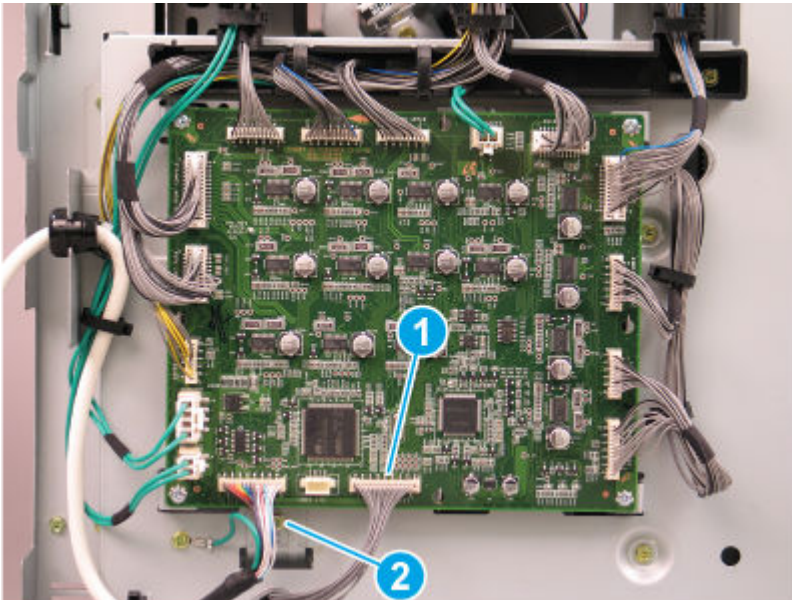
1. Slide the booklet maker out of the finisher.

Figure 6-2264 Slide the booklet maker out



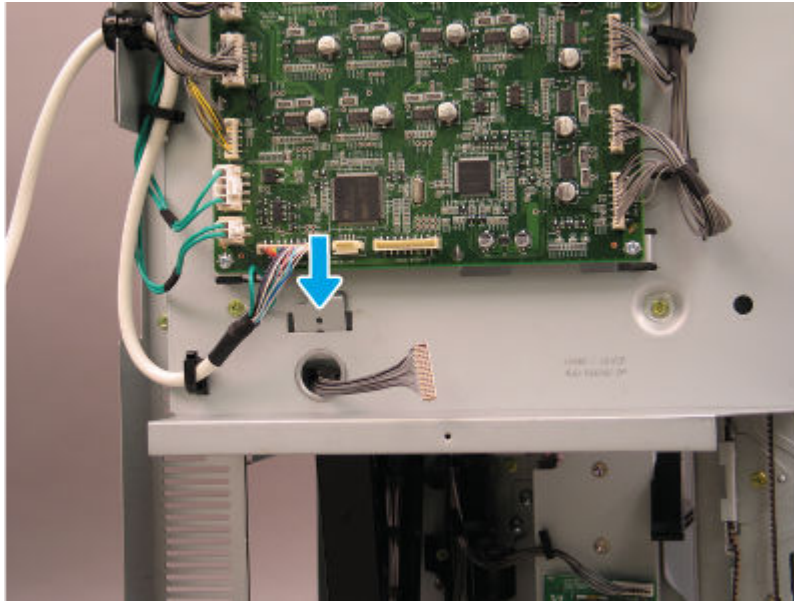
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 6-2265 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



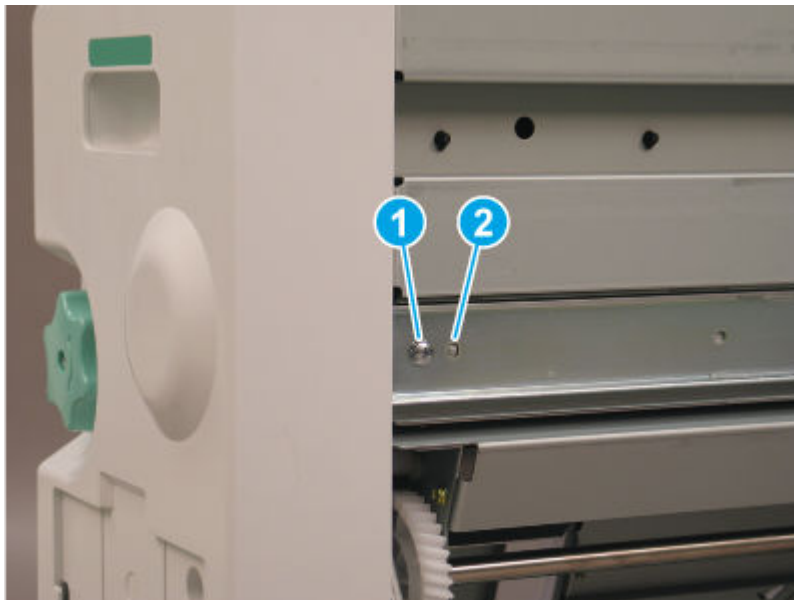
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet-metal.

Figure 6-2266 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



4. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2).

Figure 6-2267 Release the alignment pin



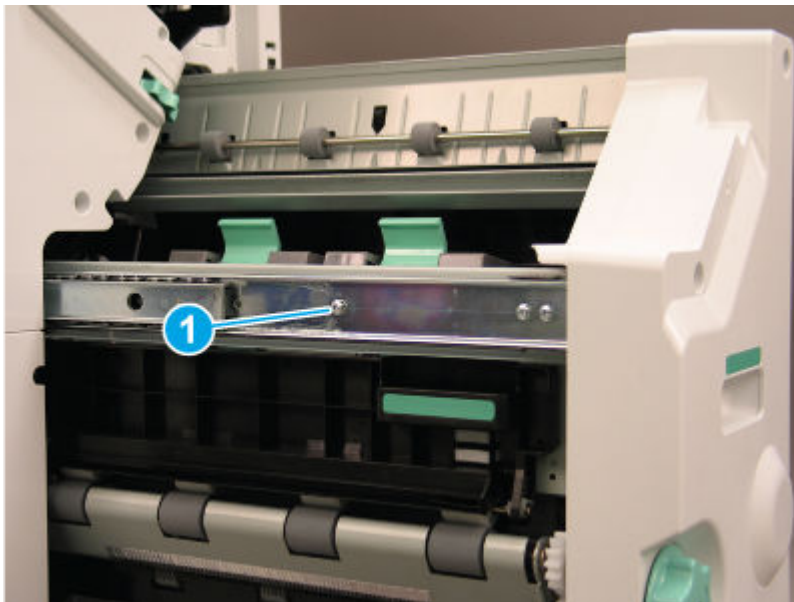
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 6-2268 Slide the rail in



6. Remove one screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2269 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet maker up on the left side while pulling the right rail away from the finisher chassis to clear the sheet-metal. Remove the booklet maker unit.


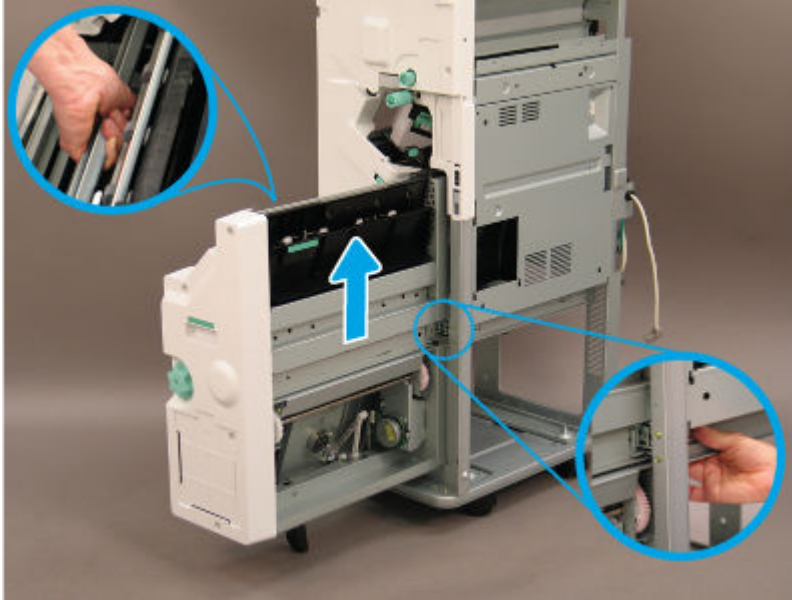
 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure to use the special installation instructions in this topic (located after the unpack and recycle step).

Figure 6-2270 Remove the booklet maker

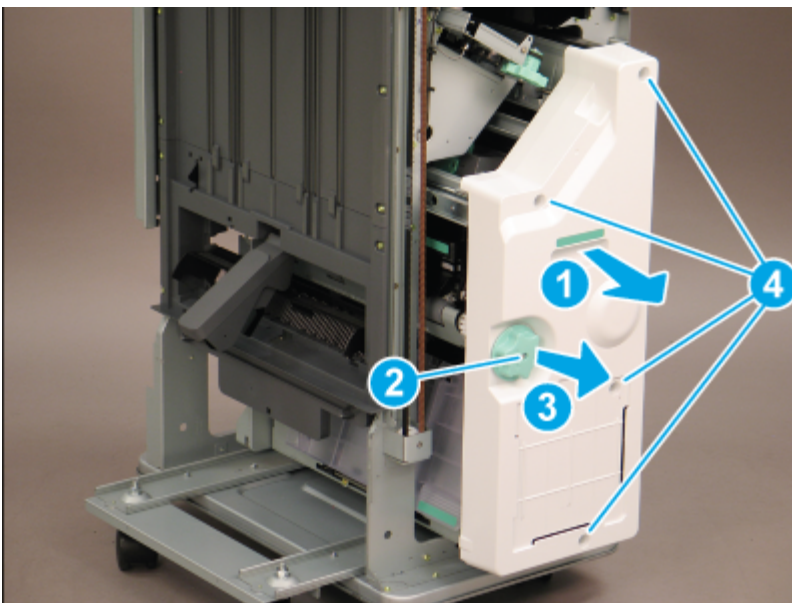


4 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).
 - b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
 - c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2271 Remove the cover

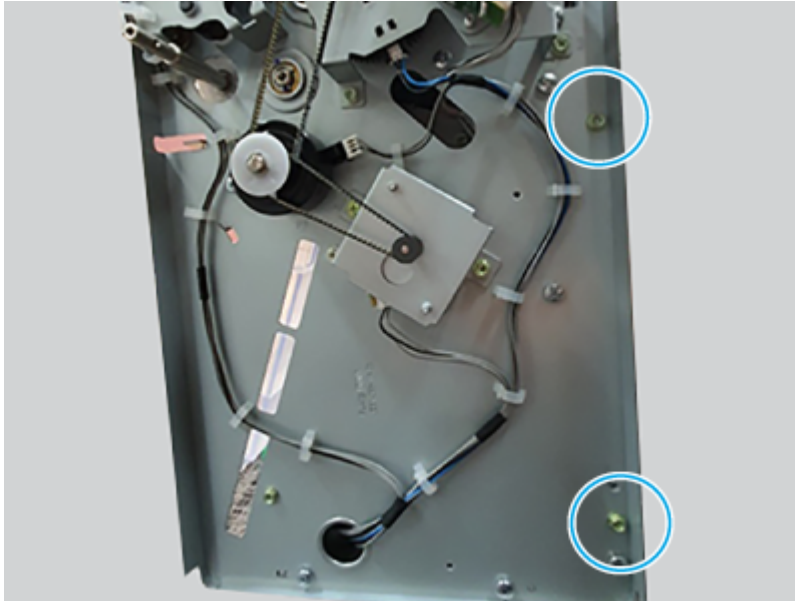


5 Remove the booklet finisher booklet end fence motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher end fence motor.

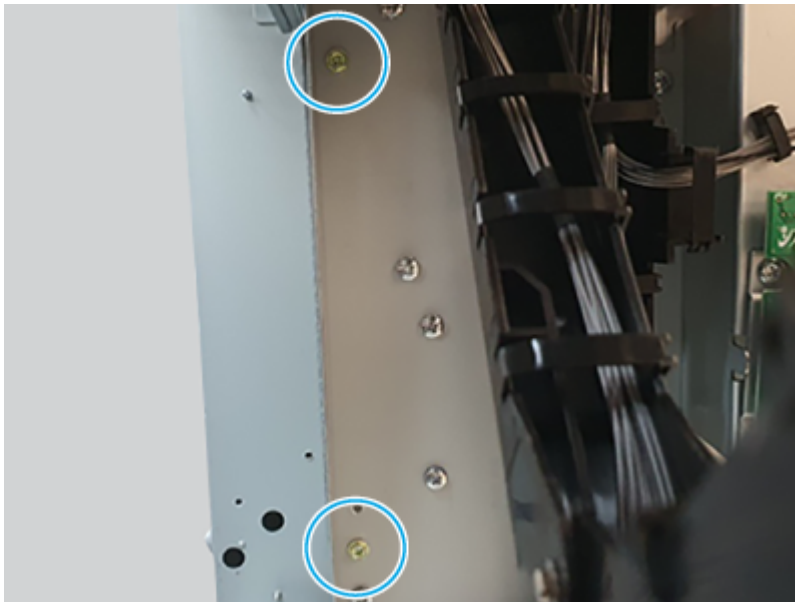
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2272 Remove two screws



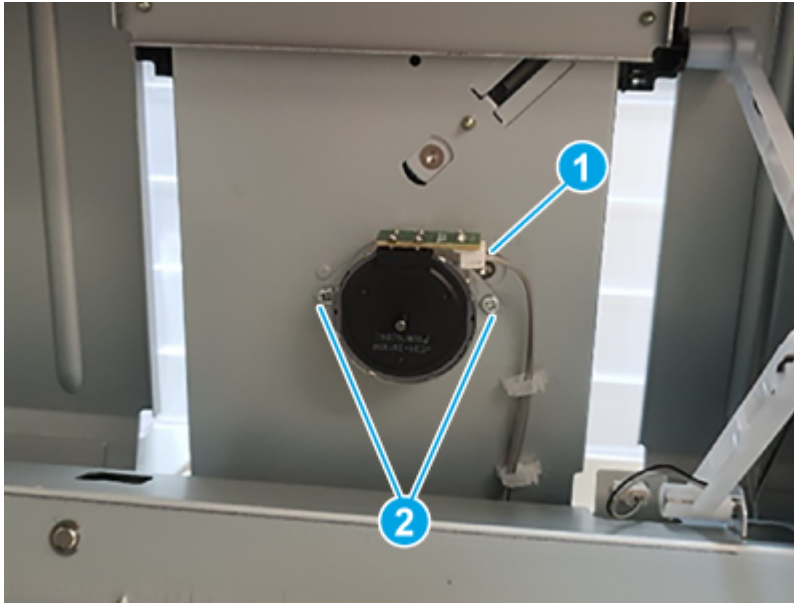
2. Remove two screws, and then remove the shield-r lower.

Figure 6-2273 Remove the shield



3. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the booklet end fence motor.

Figure 6-2274 Remove the motor



6 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

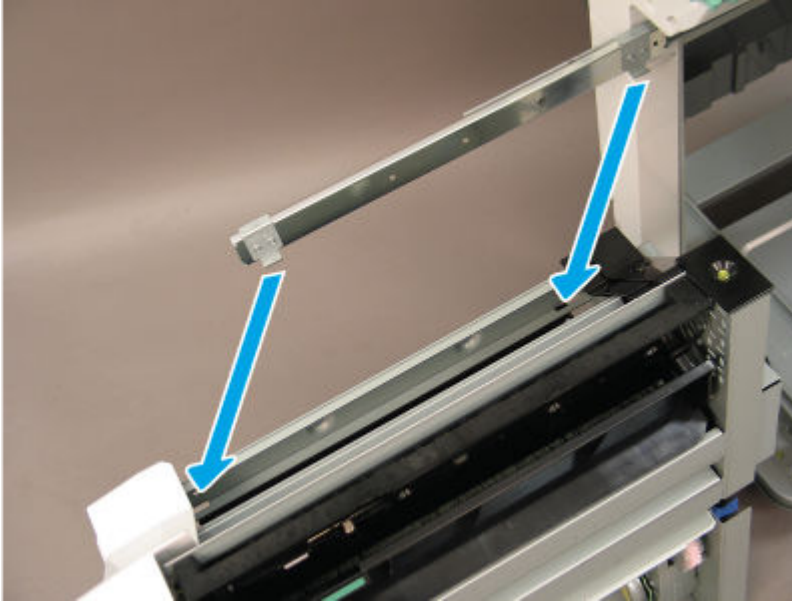
7 Special installation instructions: booklet finisher booklet maker

Use the following procedure to install the booklet finisher booklet maker.

 **NOTE:** Use the special installation instructions to correctly install the booklet maker.

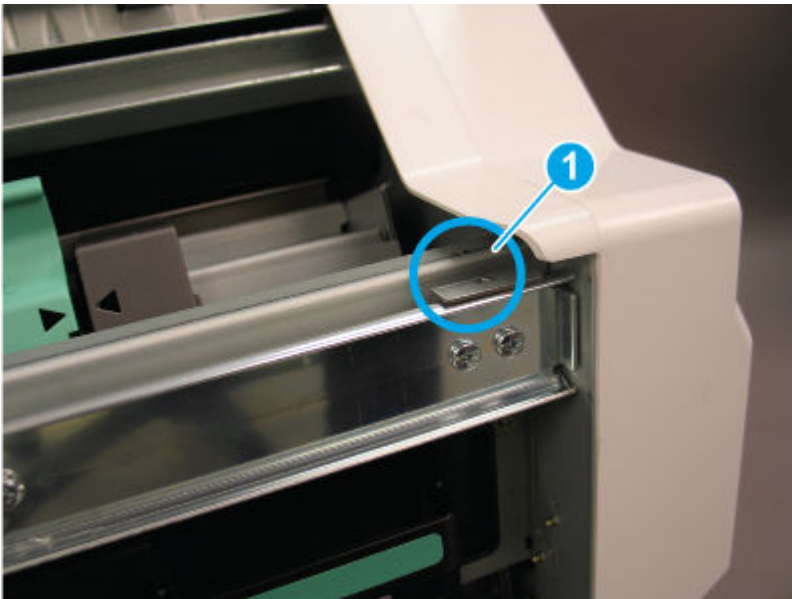
1. When installing the booklet finisher, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2275 Position the hooks on the rail



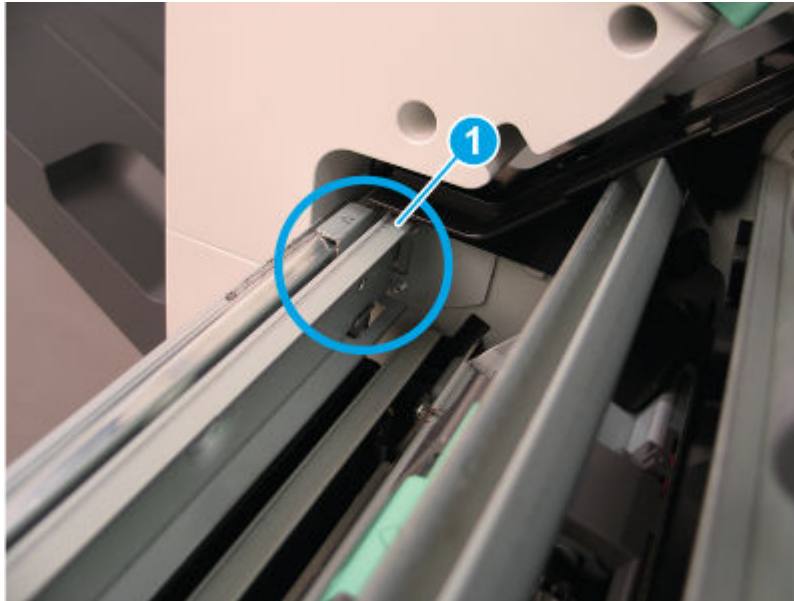
2. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2276 Check rail alignment (1 of 2)



3. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2277 Check rail alignment (2 of 2)



4. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet maker slot.


 **NOTE:** Continue the installation by reversing the removal steps.

Figure 6-2278 Attach the rail



Booklet presser unit

Review the booklet finisher booklet presser unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Booklet presser home sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher presser home sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 25 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-296 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Booklet presser home sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

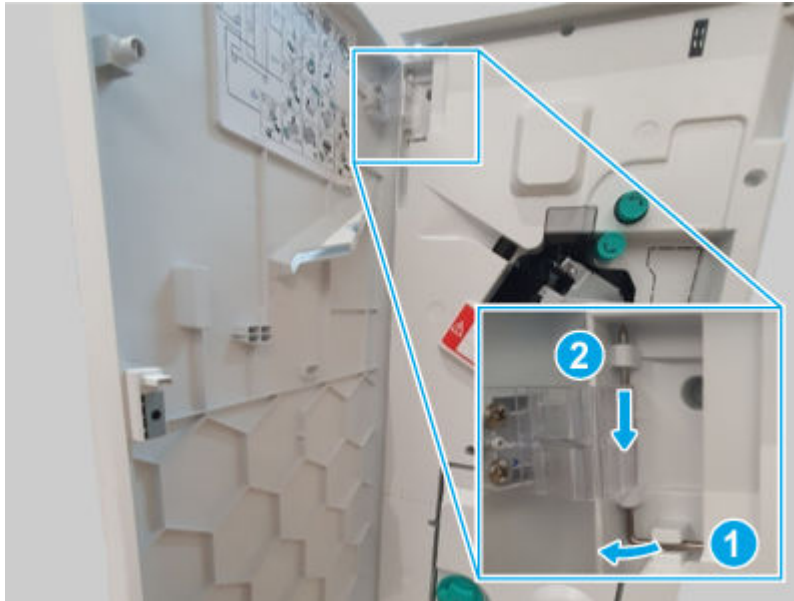
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

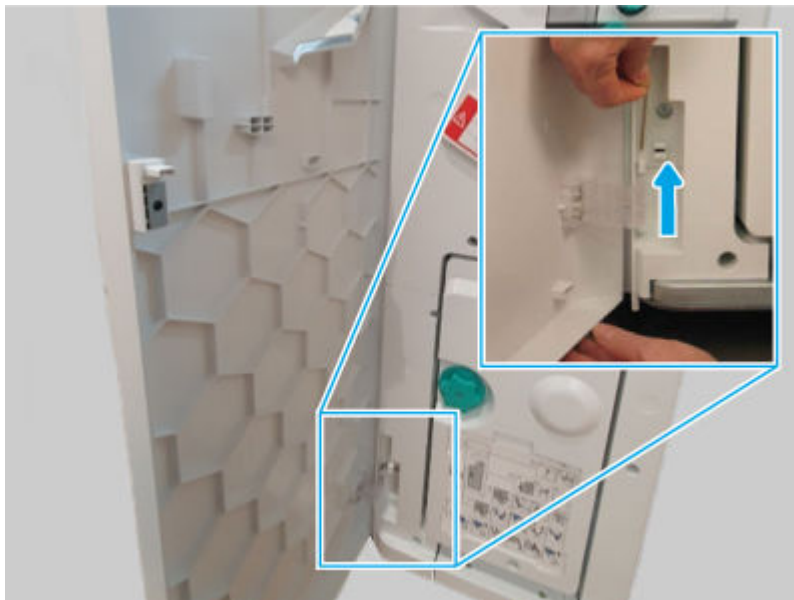
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2279 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2280 Remove the door



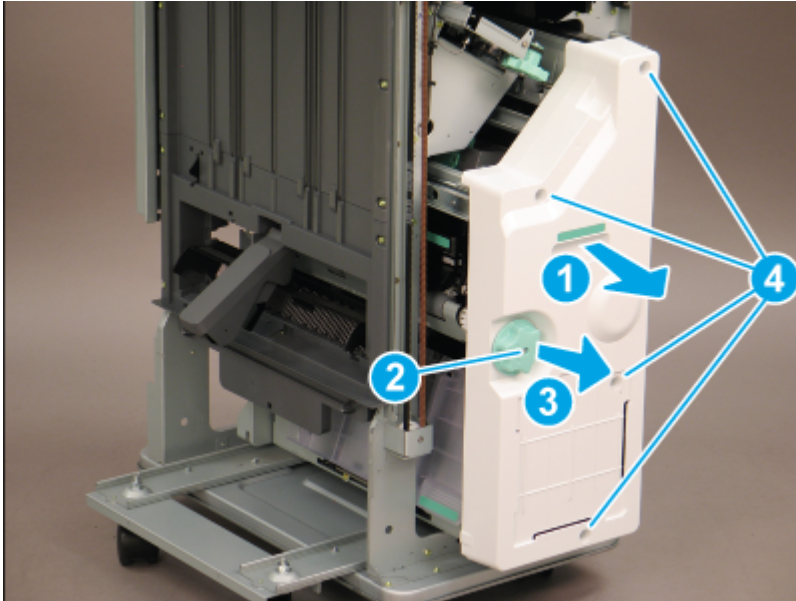
2 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).

- b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
- c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2281 Remove the cover

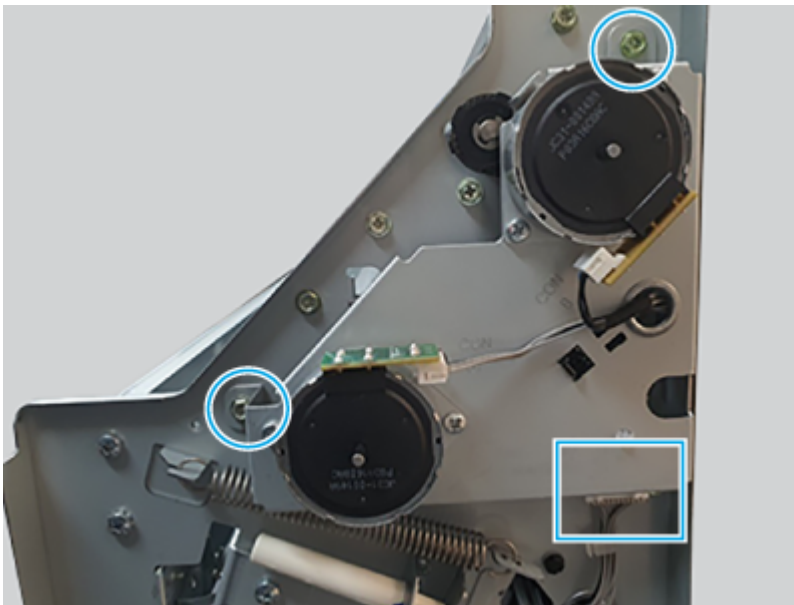


3 Remove the booklet finisher booklet entrance-presser motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher entrance-presser motor assembly.

- Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the booklet entrance-presser motor assembly.

Figure 6-2282 Remove the assembly

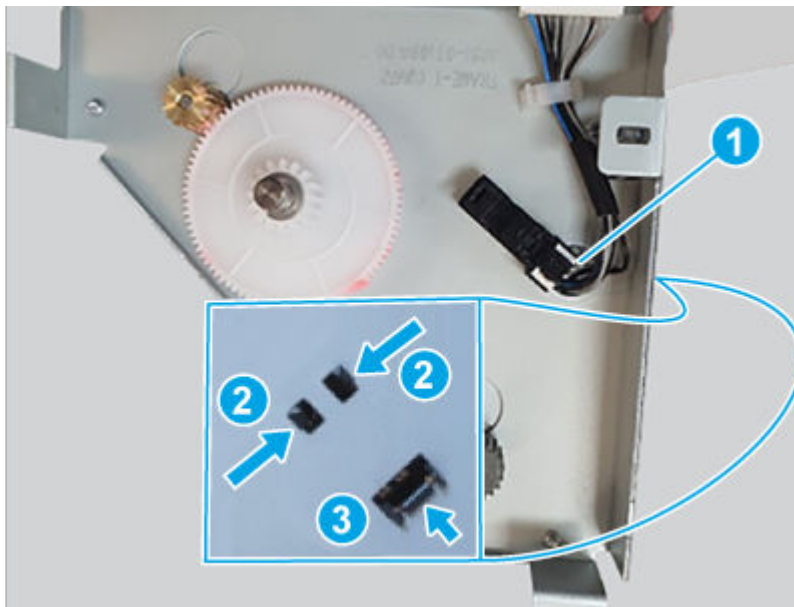


4 Remove the booklet finisher booklet presser home sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher presser home sensor.

- Do the following:
 - Disconnect one connector (callout 1).
 - Release the hooks (callout 2).
 - Slide the sensor assembly as shown below (callout 3).
 - Remove the booklet presser home sensor from the bracket.

Figure 6-2283 Remove the sensor



5 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.




CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Booklet tamper

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher tamper.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-297 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01431A	Booklet tamper

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

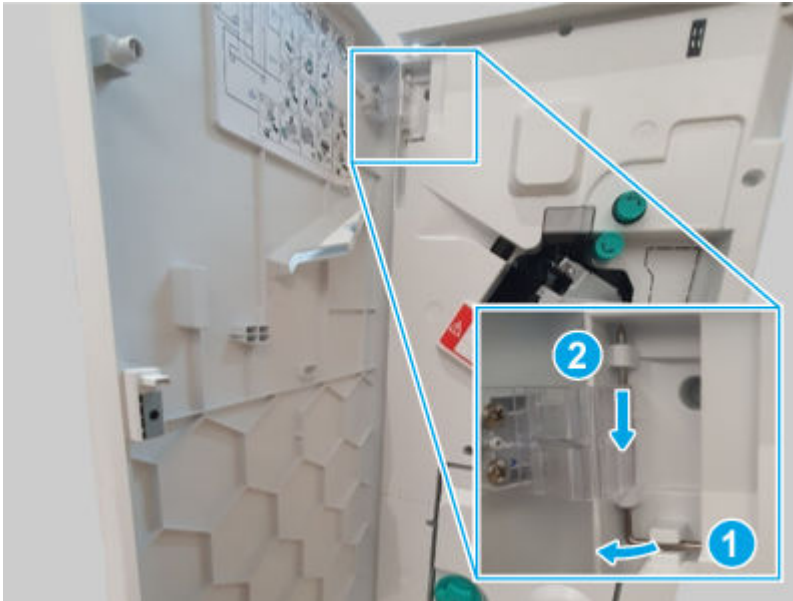
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

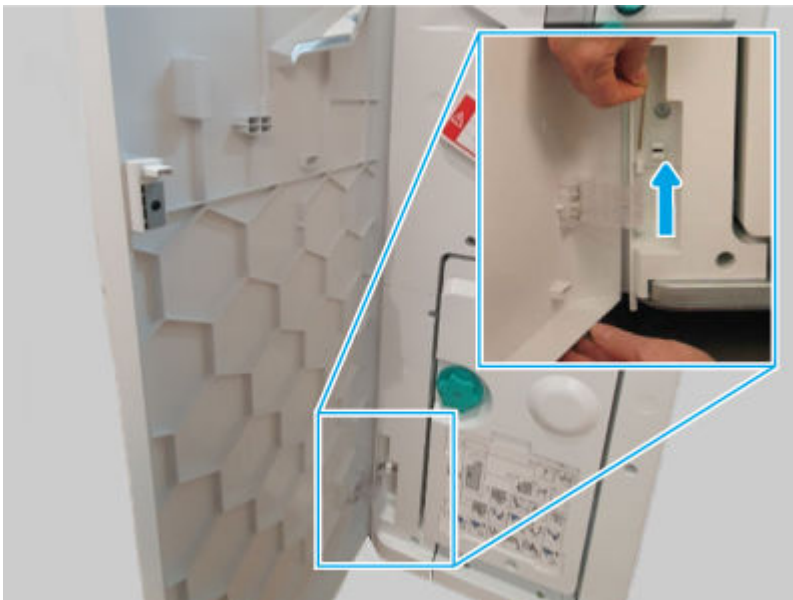
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2284 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2285 Remove the door

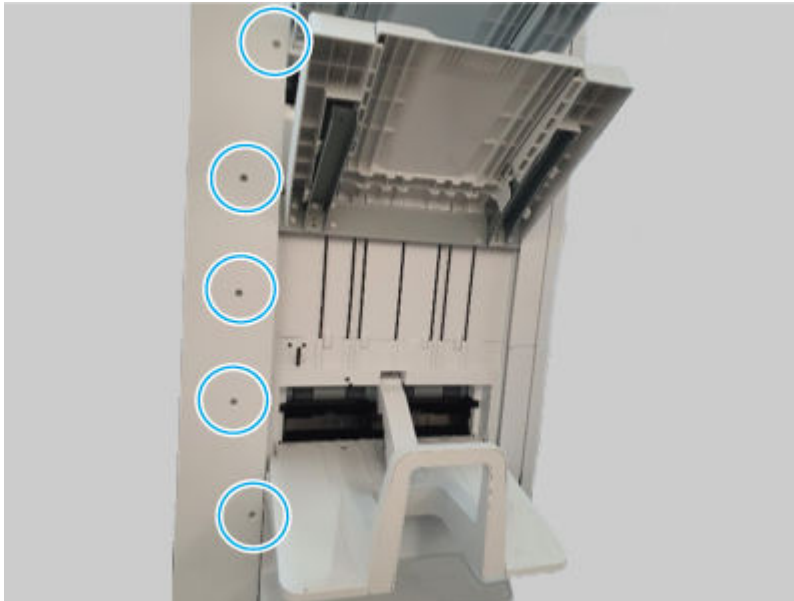


2 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2286 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


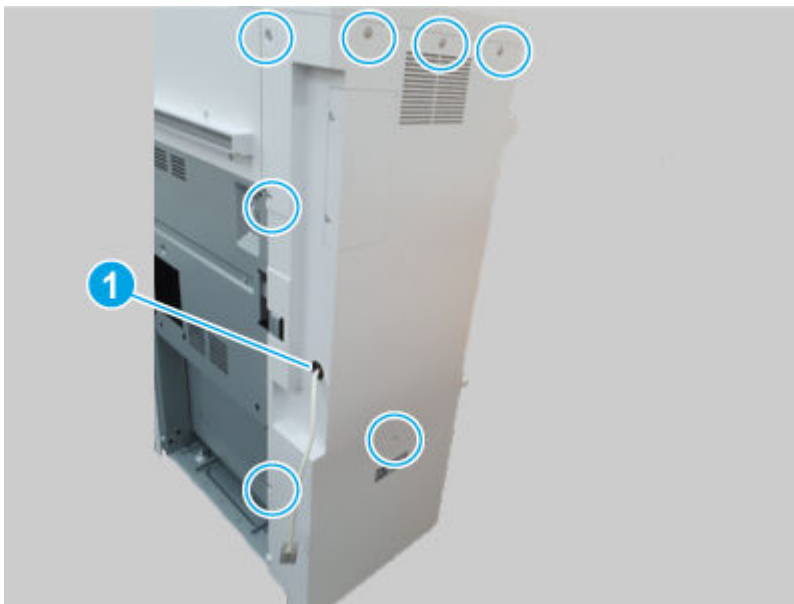
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2287 Remove the cover

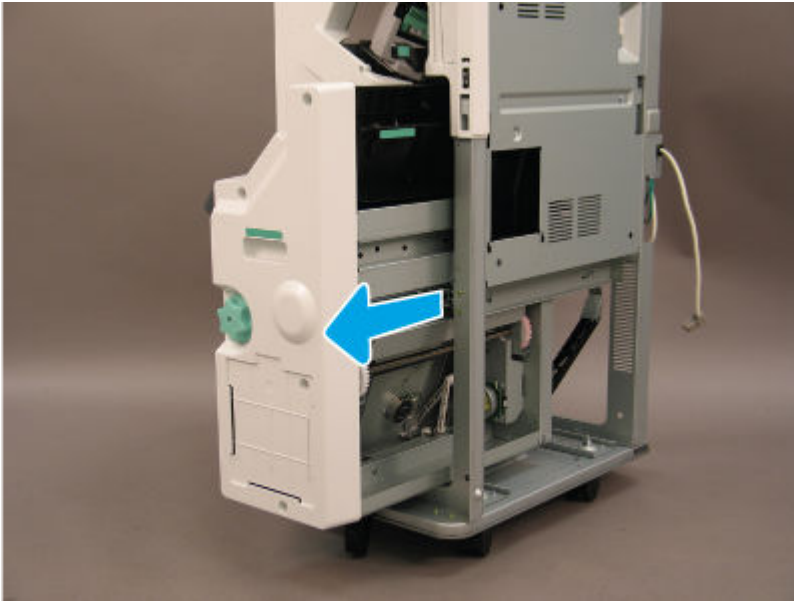


3. **Remove the booklet finisher booklet maker**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet maker.

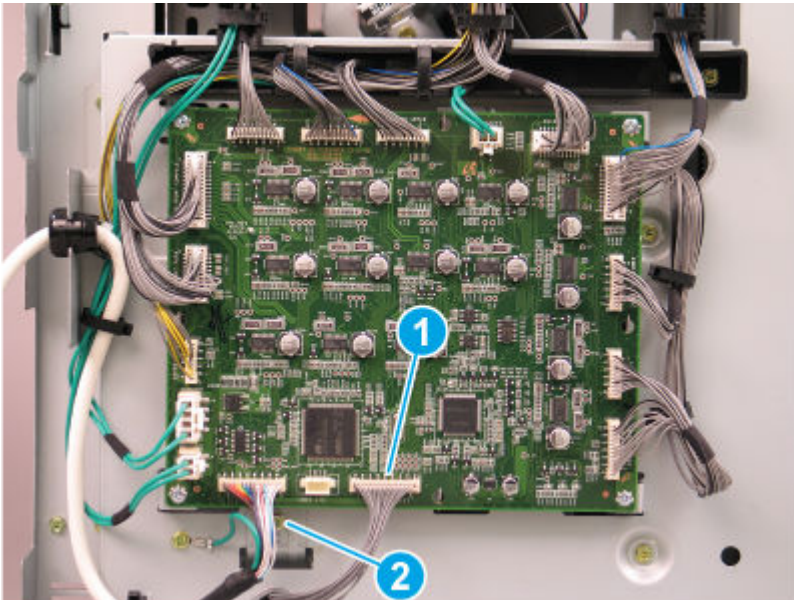
1. Slide the booklet maker out of the finisher.

Figure 6-2288 Slide the booklet maker out



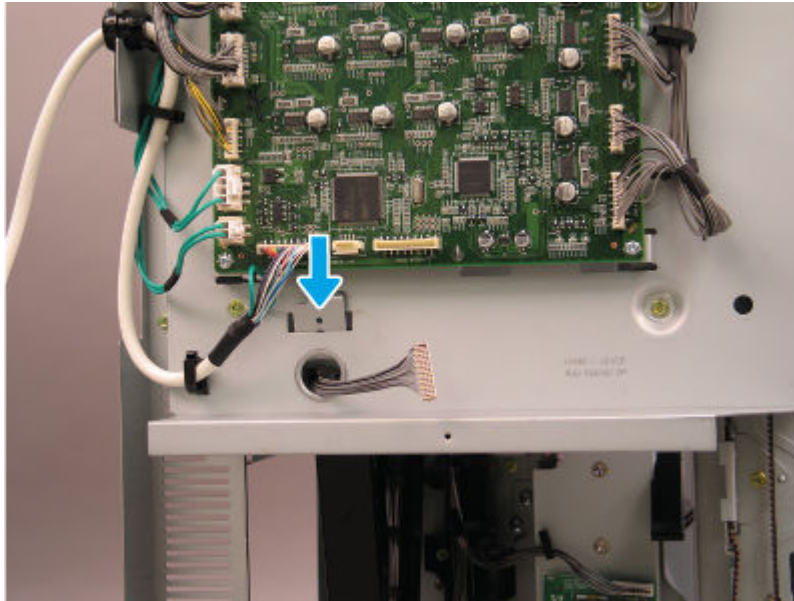
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 6-2289 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



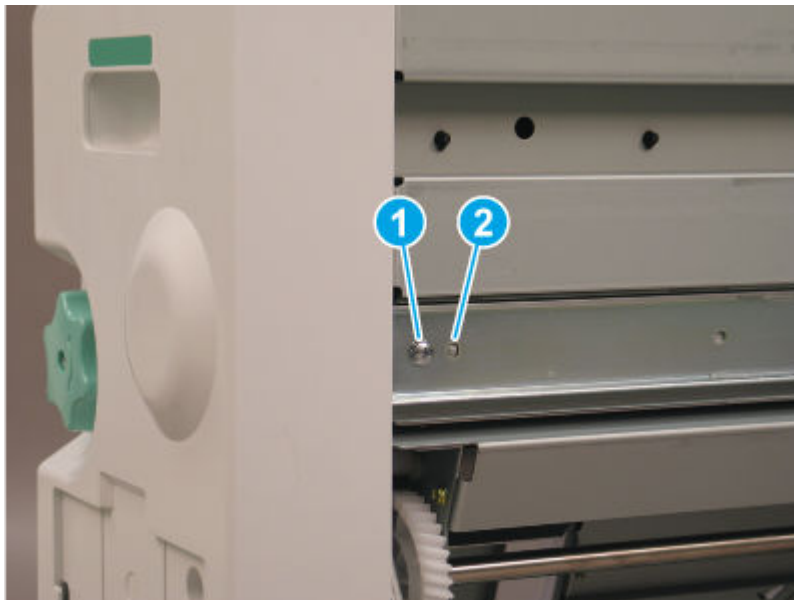
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet-metal.

Figure 6-2290 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



4. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2).

Figure 6-2291 Release the alignment pin



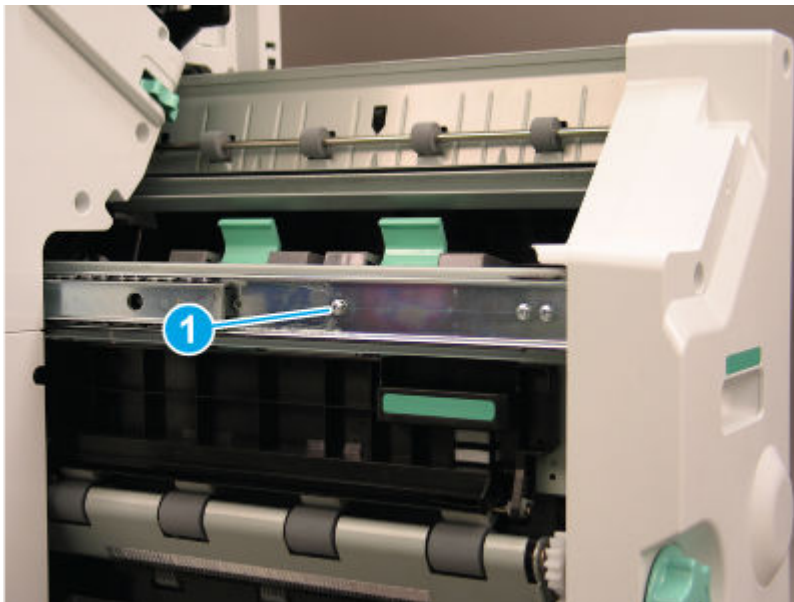
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 6-2292 Slide the rail in



6. Remove one screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2293 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet maker up on the left side while pulling the right rail away from the finisher chassis to clear the sheet-metal. Remove the booklet maker unit.


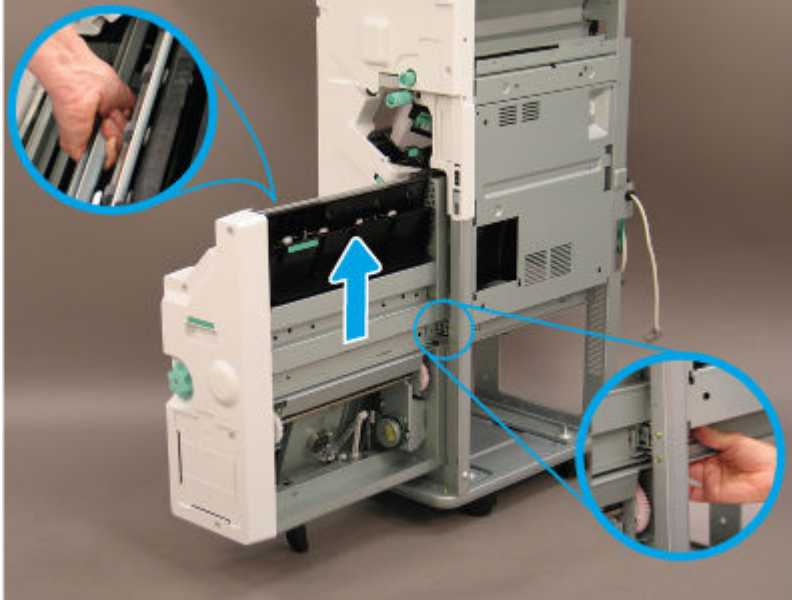
 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure to use the special installation instructions in this topic (located after the unpack and recycle step).

Figure 6-2294 Remove the booklet maker

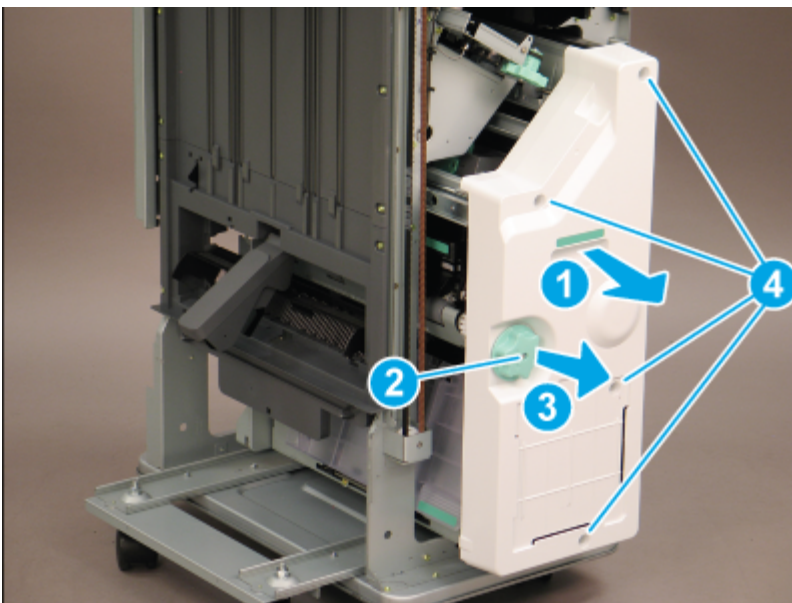


4 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).
 - b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
 - c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2295 Remove the cover

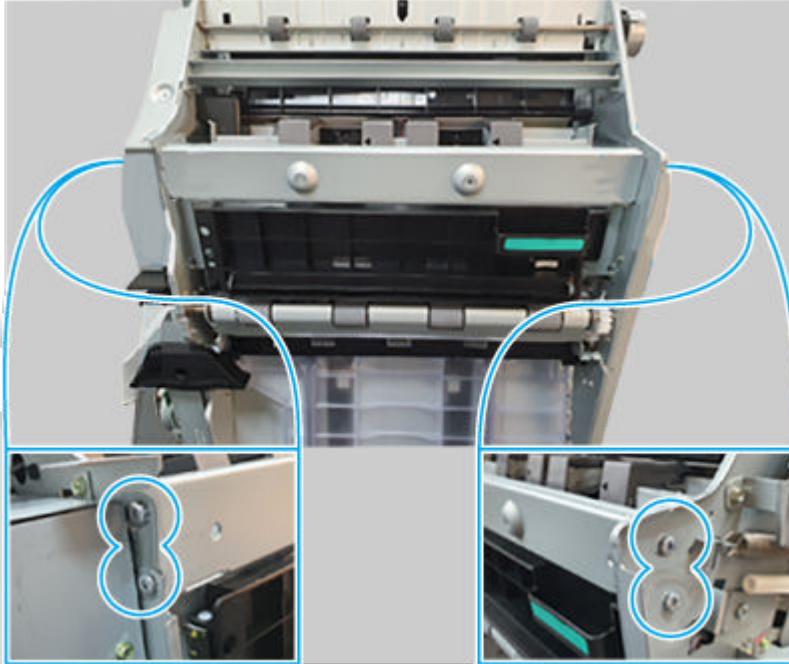


5 Remove the booklet finisher booklet tamper

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher tamper.

1. Remove four screws and the sheet-metal plate.

Figure 6-2296 Remove four screws



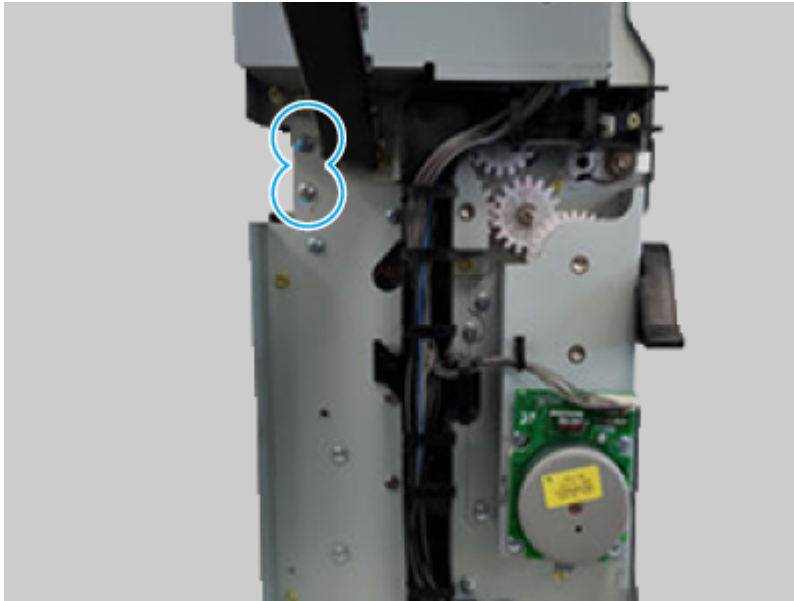
2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2297 Remove two screws



3. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2298 Remove two screws



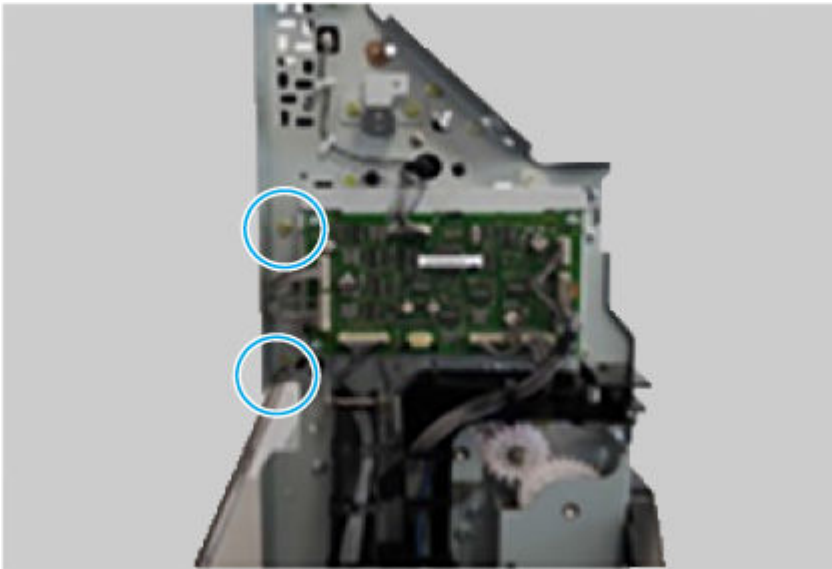
4. Remove three screws and the sheet-metal cover.

Figure 6-2299 Remove three screws



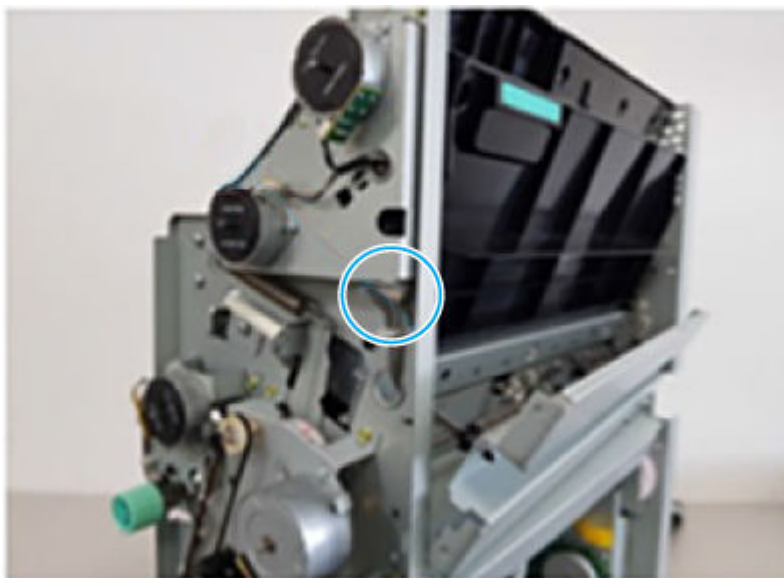
5. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2300 Remove two screws



6. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2301 Disconnect one connector



7. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2302 Disconnect one connector



8. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2303 Remove two screws



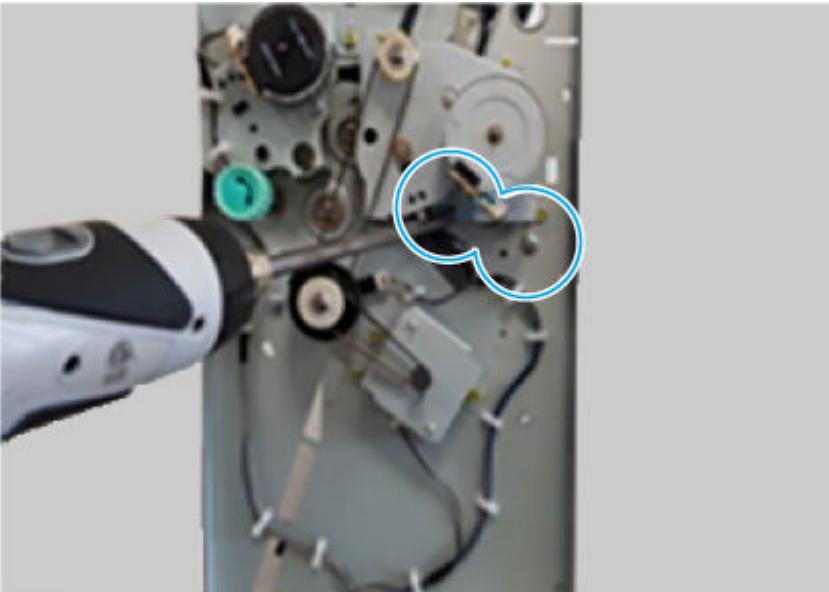
9. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2304 Remove three screws



10. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2305 Remove two screws



11. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2306 Remove two screws



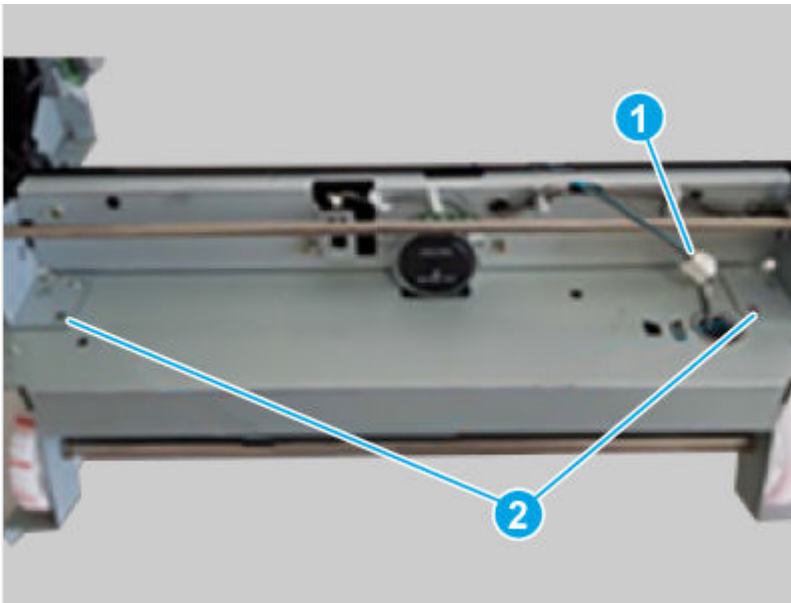
12. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2307 Disconnect one connector



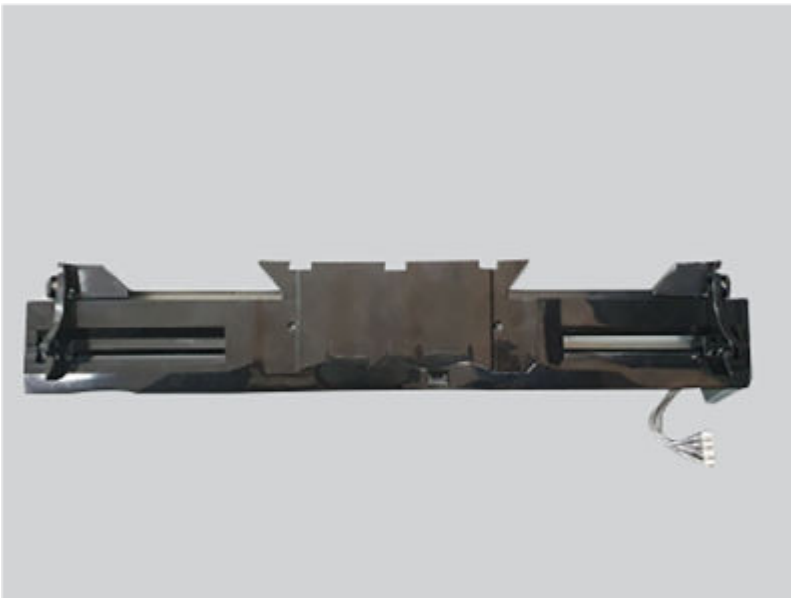
13. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws (callout 2).

Figure 6-2308 Disconnect connector and remove screws



14. Remove the booklet tamper.

Figure 6-2309 Remove the tamper



6 **Unpack the replacement assembly**

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT:  Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


NOTE:  If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE:  When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

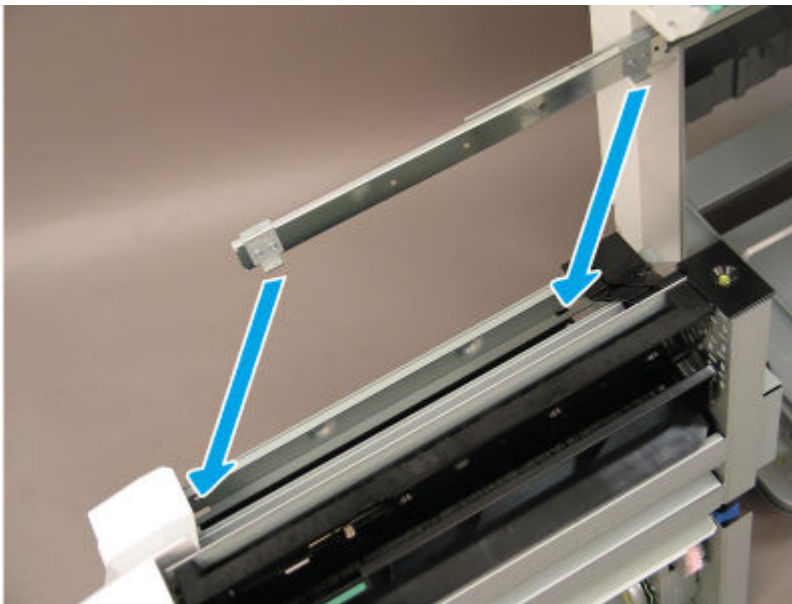
7 Special installation instructions: booklet finisher booklet maker

Use the following procedure to install the booklet finisher booklet maker.

NOTE:  Use the special installation instructions to correctly install the booklet maker.

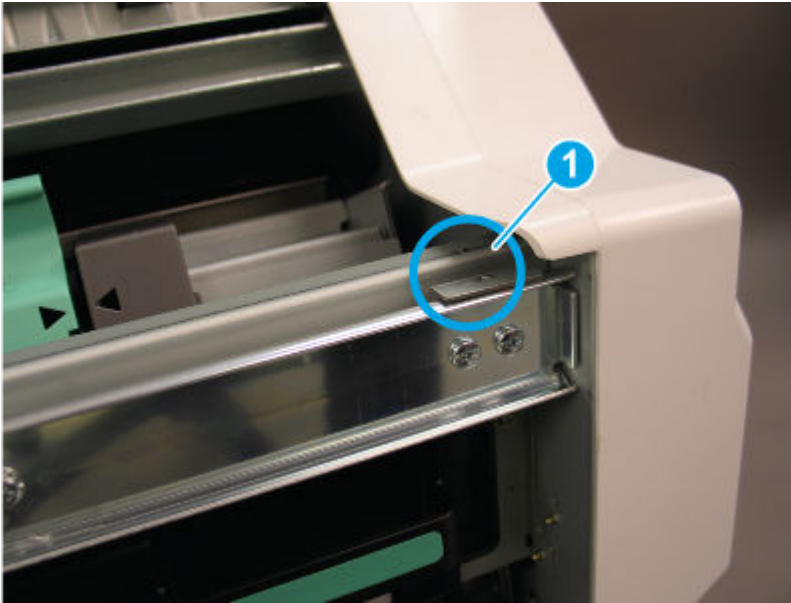
1. When installing the booklet finisher, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2310 Position the hooks on the rail



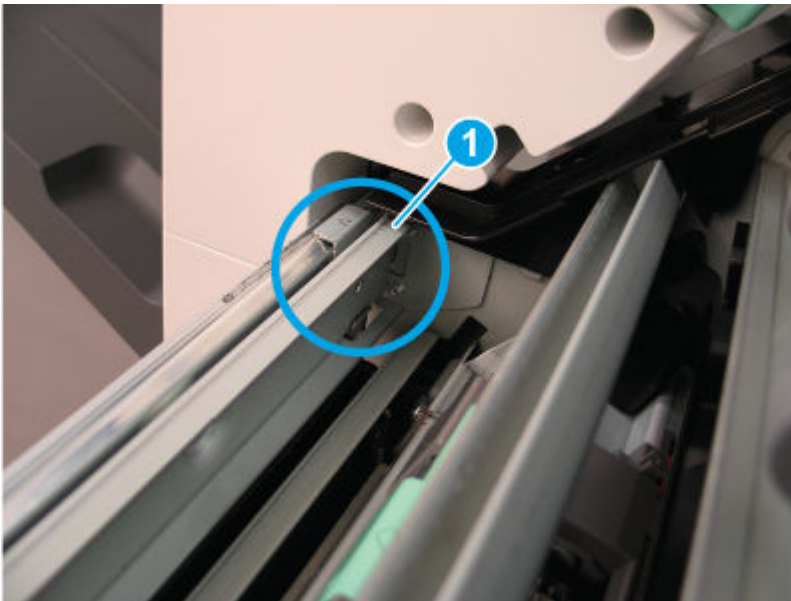
2. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2311 Check rail alignment (1 of 2)



3. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2312 Check rail alignment (2 of 2)



4. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet maker slot.



NOTE: Continue the installation by reversing the removal steps.

Figure 6-2313 Attach the rail



Removal and replacement: Booklet tamper home sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher tamper home sensor.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-298 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Booklet tamper home sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

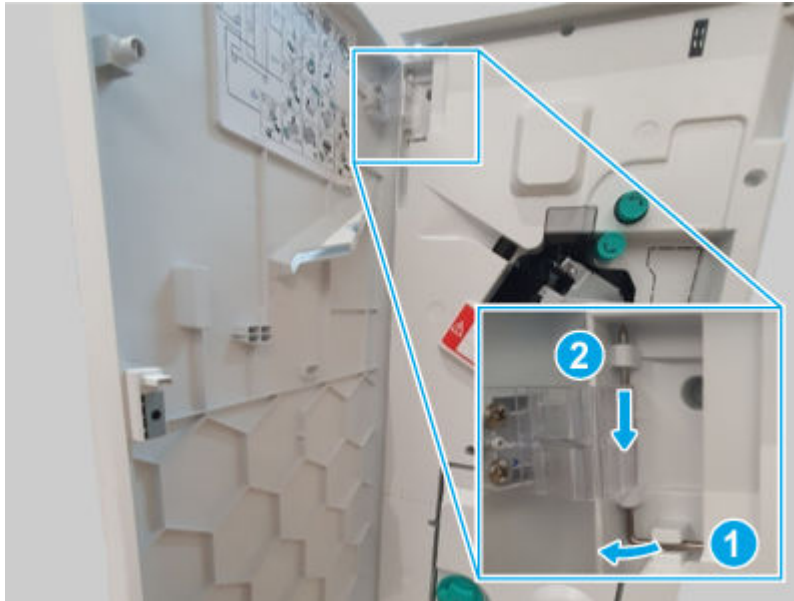
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

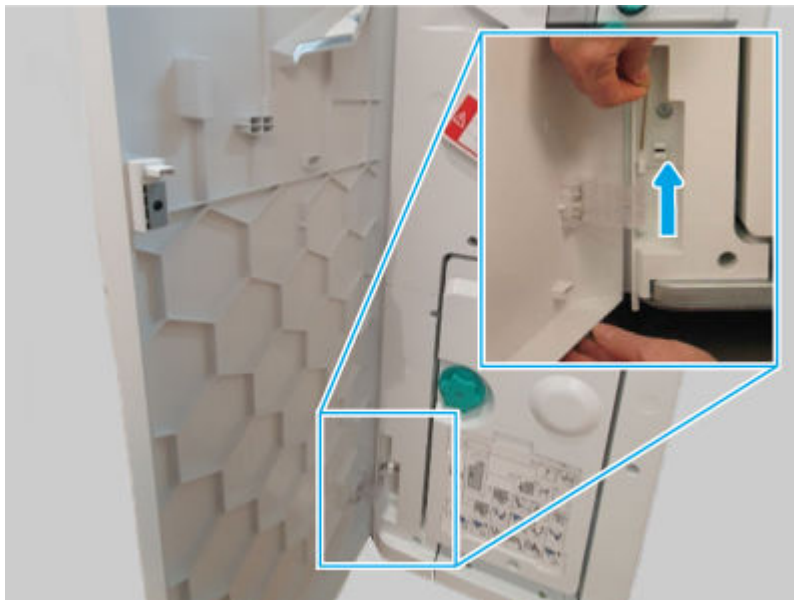
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2314 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2315 Remove the door

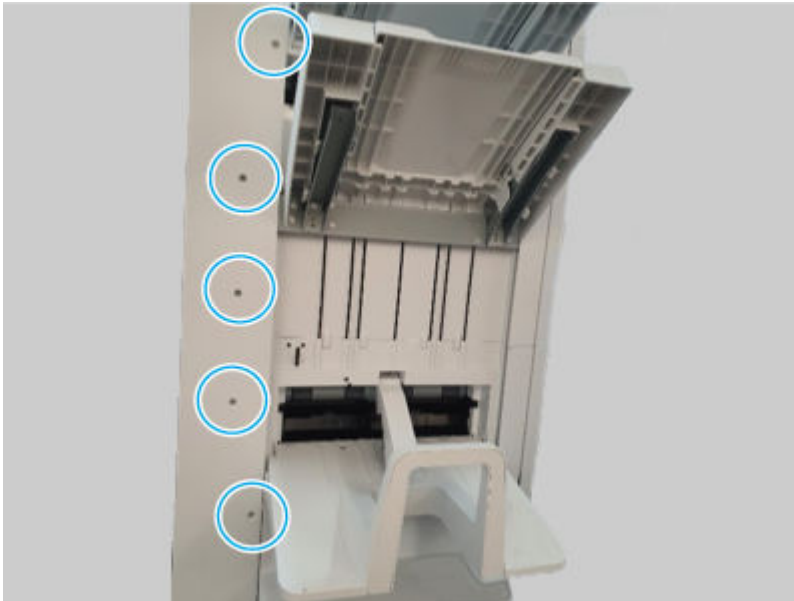


2 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2316 Remove five screws

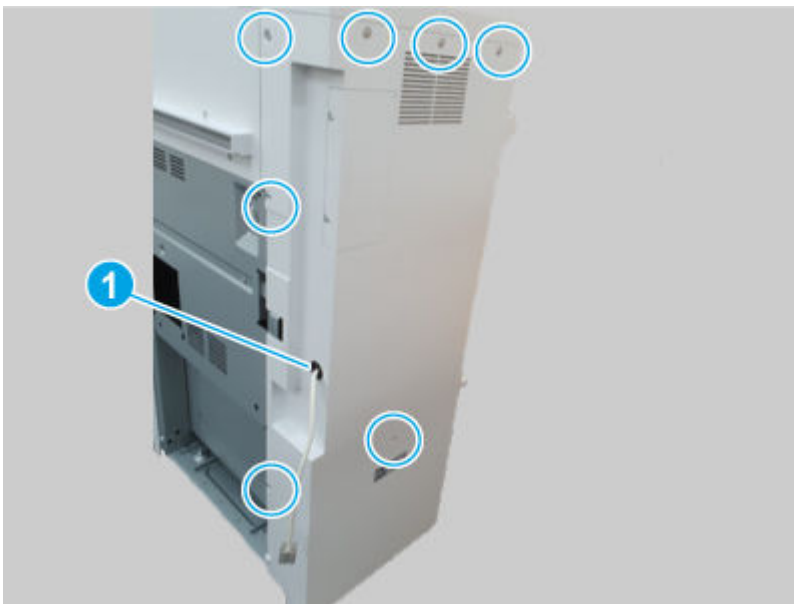


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2317 Remove the cover

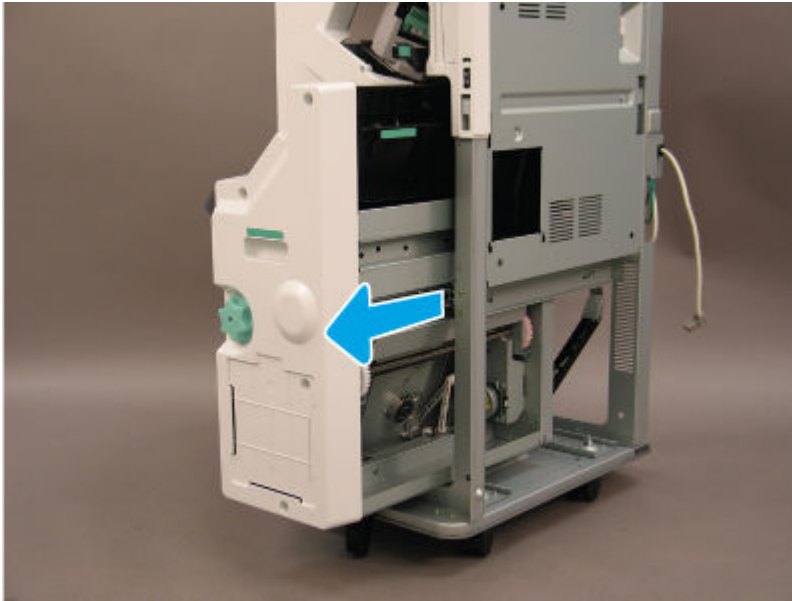


- 3 **Remove the booklet finisher booklet maker**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet maker.

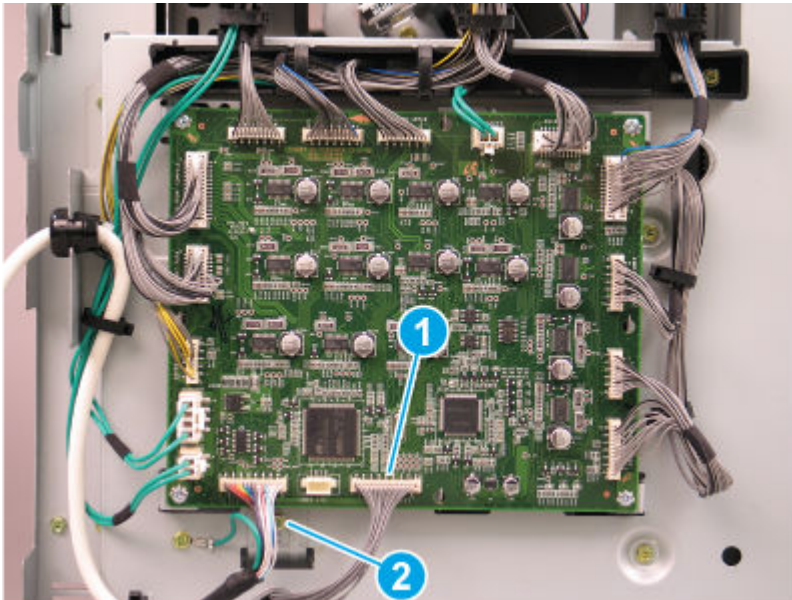
1. Slide the booklet maker out of the finisher.

Figure 6-2318 Slide the booklet maker out



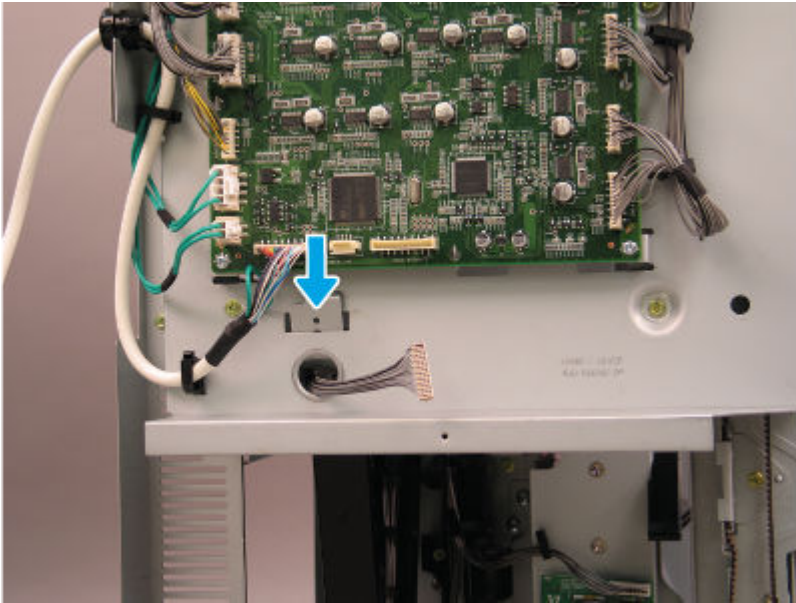
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 6-2319 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



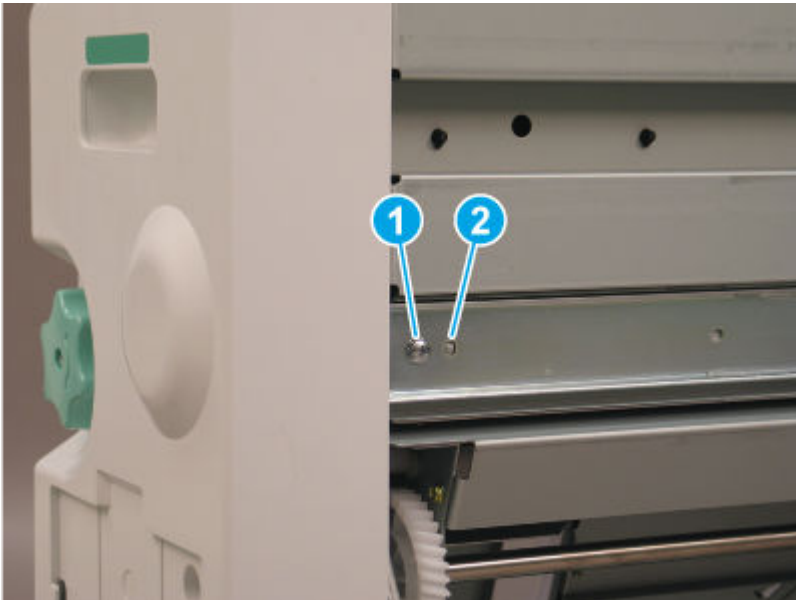
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet-metal.

Figure 6-2320 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



4. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2).

Figure 6-2321 Release the alignment pin



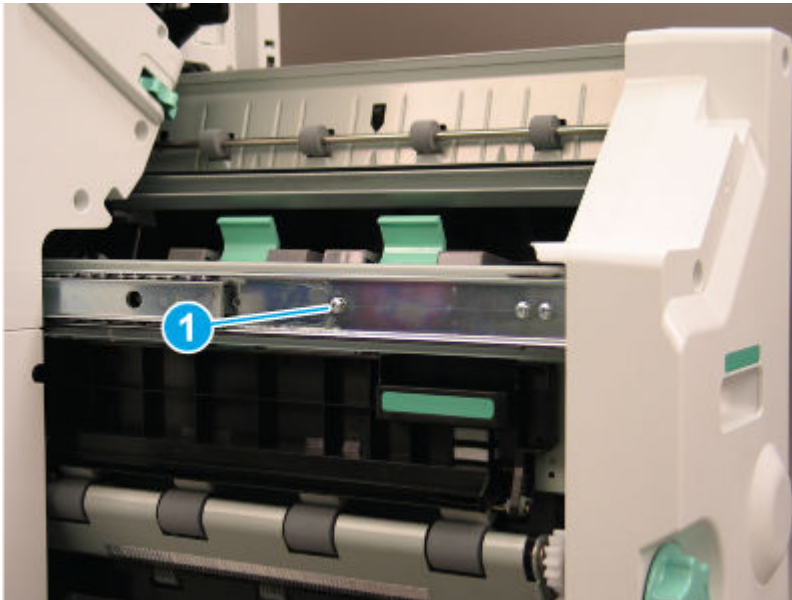
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 6-2322 Slide the rail in



6. Remove one screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2323 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet maker up on the left side while pulling the right rail away from the finisher chassis to clear the sheet-metal. Remove the booklet maker unit.


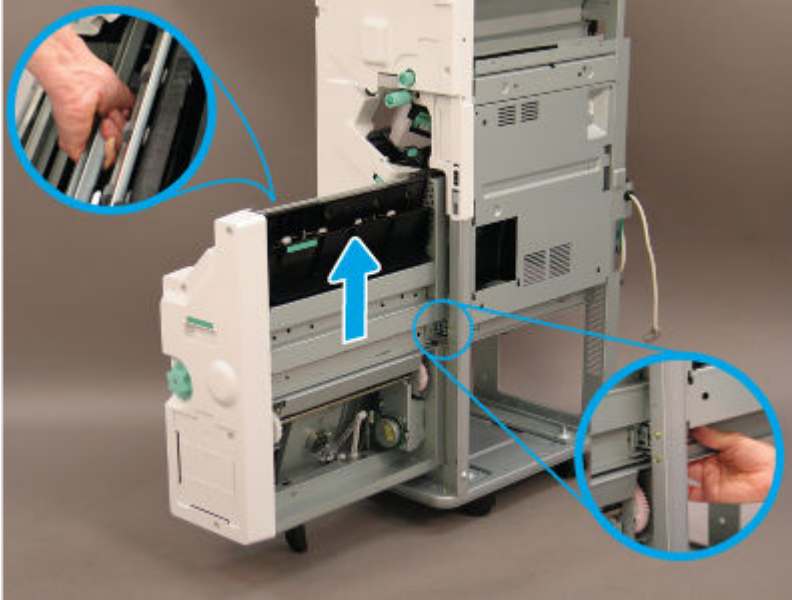
 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure to use the special installation instructions in this topic (located after the unpack and recycle step).

Figure 6-2324 Remove the booklet maker

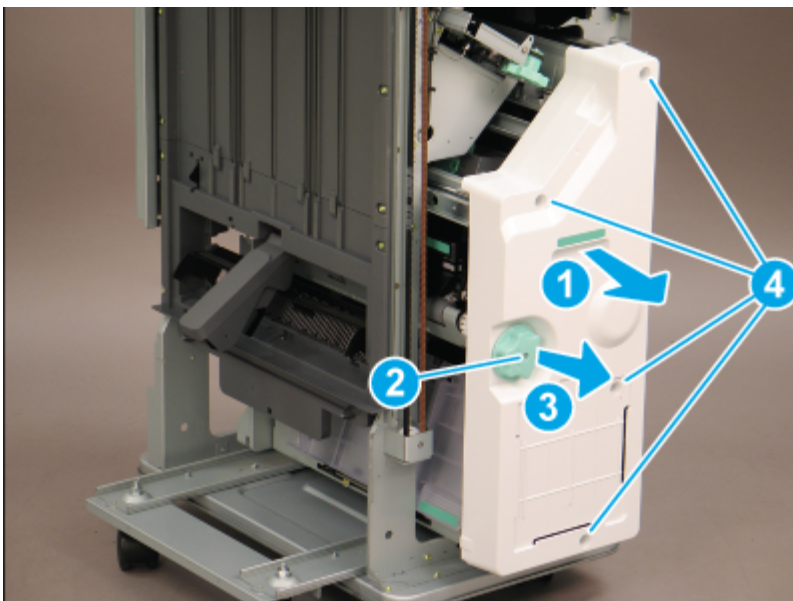


4 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).
 - b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
 - c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2325 Remove the cover

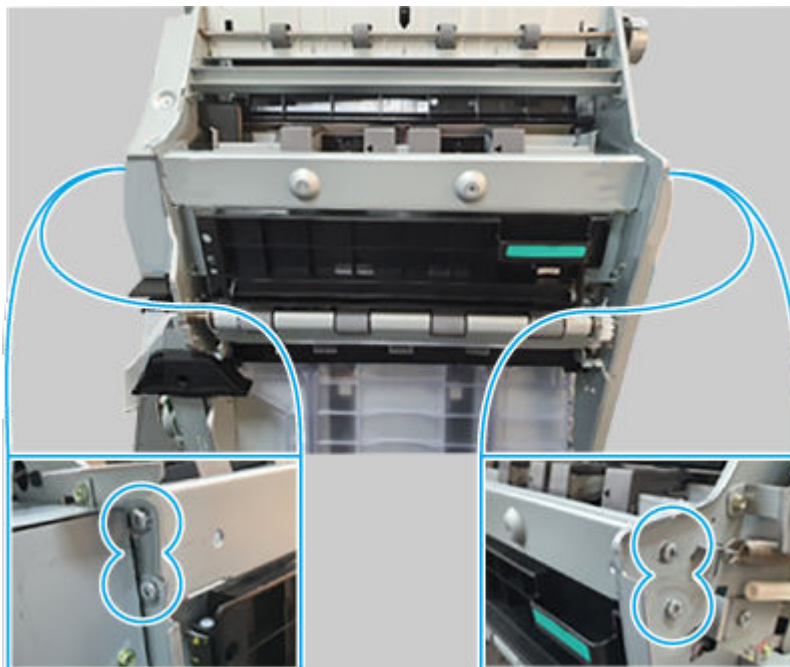


5 Remove the booklet finisher booklet tamper home sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher tamper home sensor.

1. Remove four screws and the sheet-metal plate.

Figure 6-2326 Remove four screws



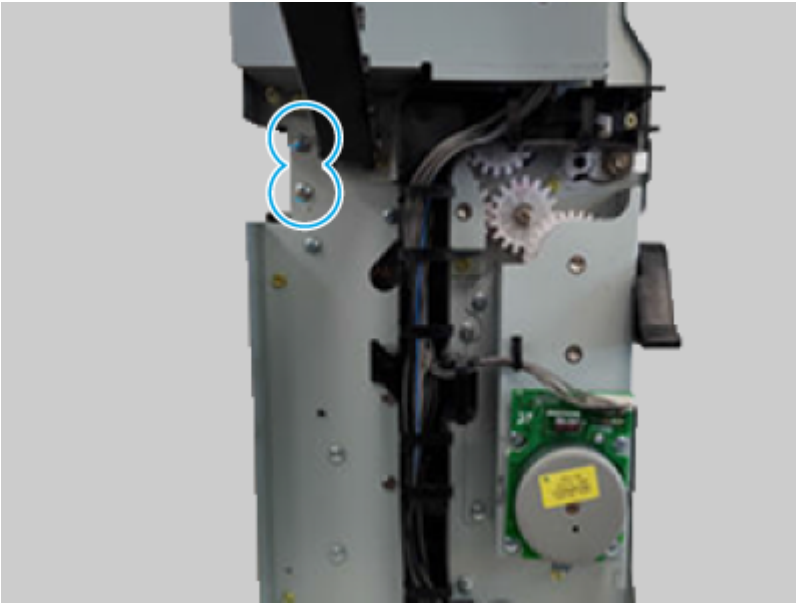
2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2327 Remove two screws



3. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2328 Remove two screws



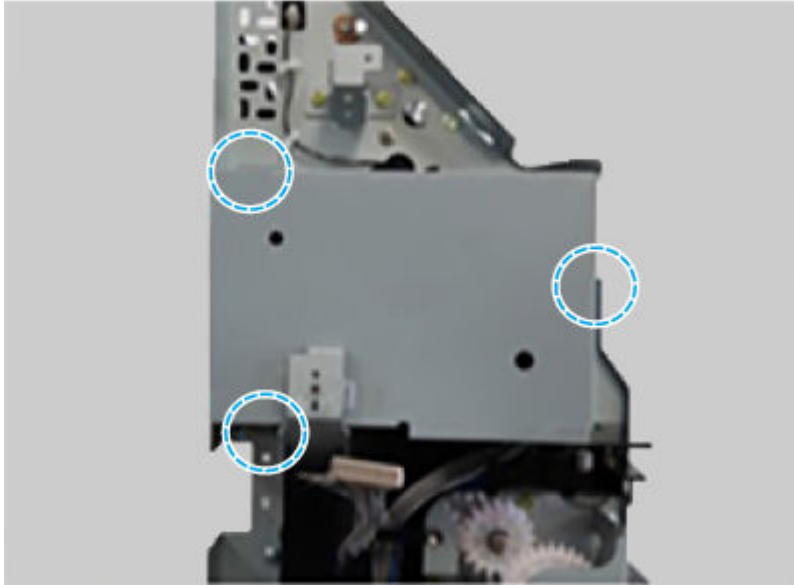
4. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2329 Remove two screws



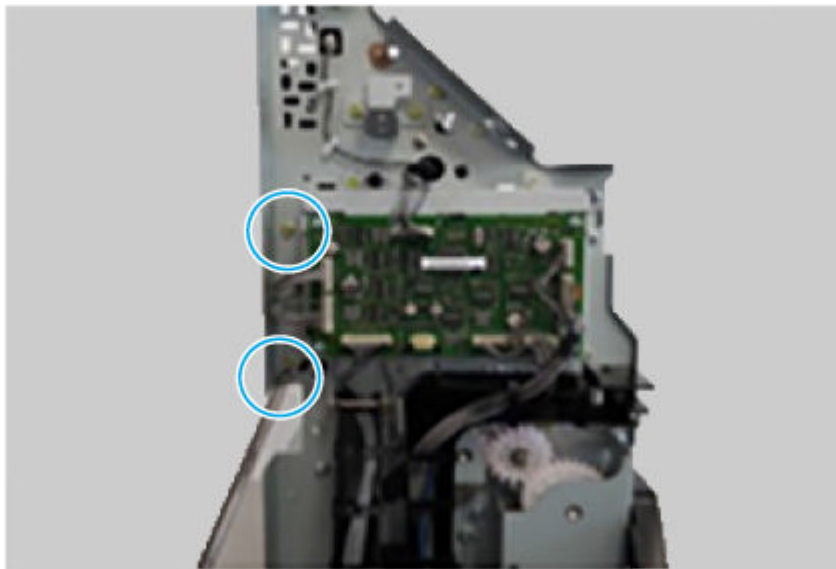
5. Remove three screws and the sheet-metal cover.

Figure 6-2330 Remove three screws



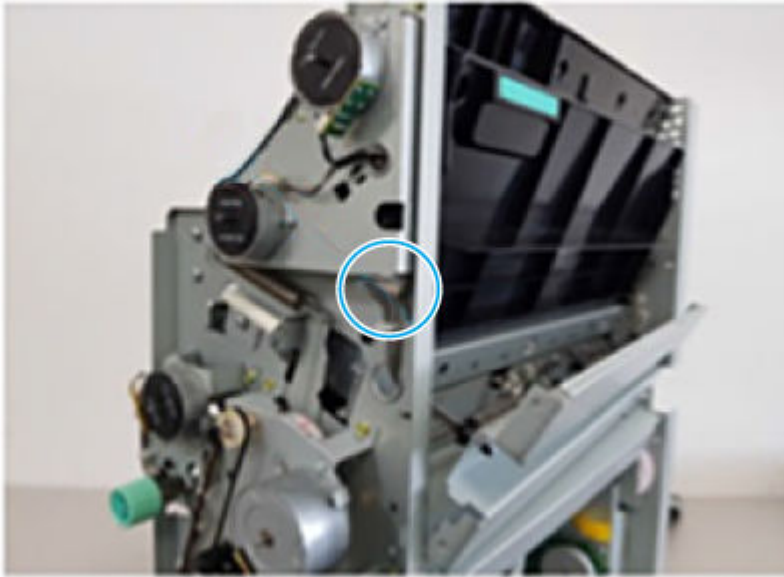
6. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2331 Remove two screws



7. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2332 Disconnect one connector



8. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2333 Disconnect one connector



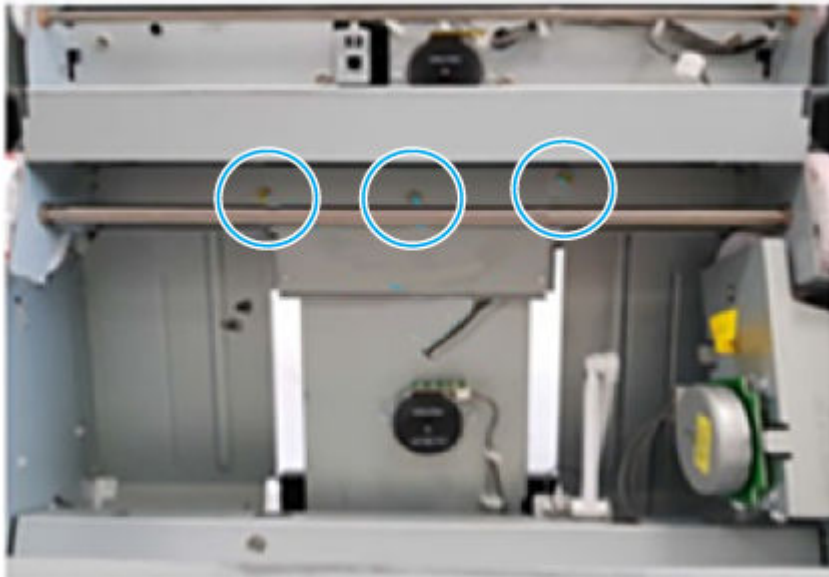
9. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2334 Remove two screws



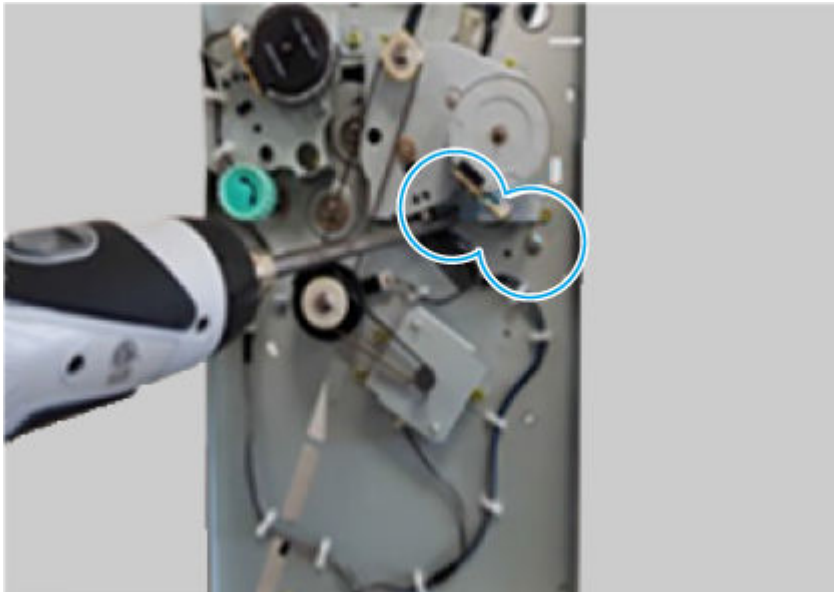
10. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2335 Remove three screws



11. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2336 Remove two screws



12. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2337 Remove two screws



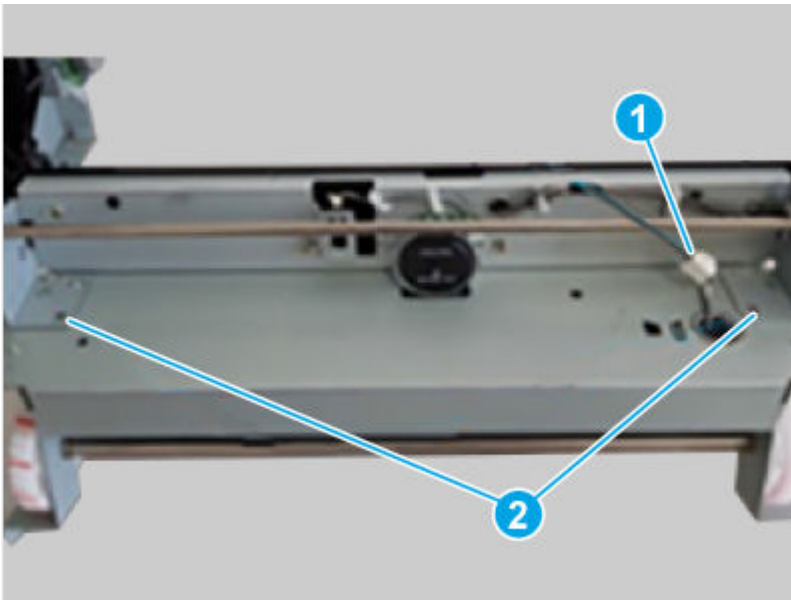
13. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2338 Disconnect one connector



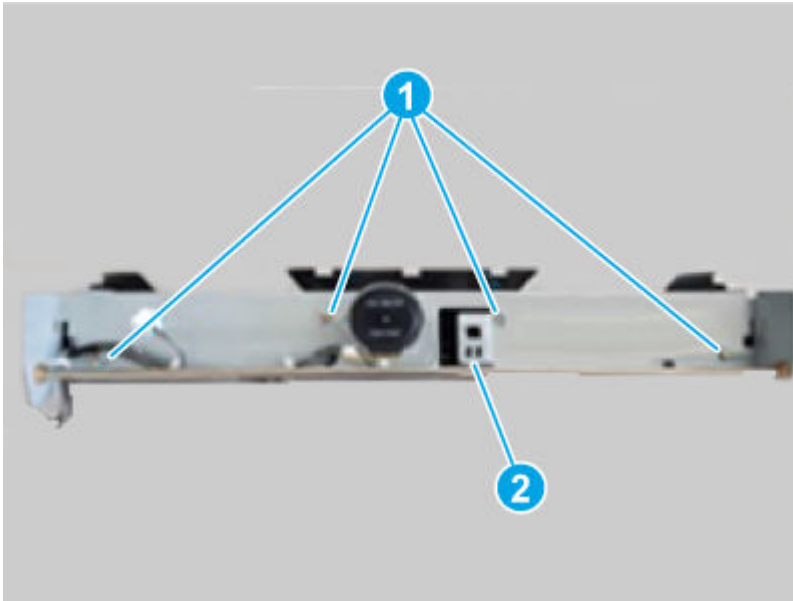
14. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws (callout 2).

Figure 6-2339 Disconnect connector and remove screws



15. Remove four screws (callout 1), remove the cover, and then remove the booklet tamper home sensor (callout 2).

Figure 6-2340 Remove the sensor



6 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

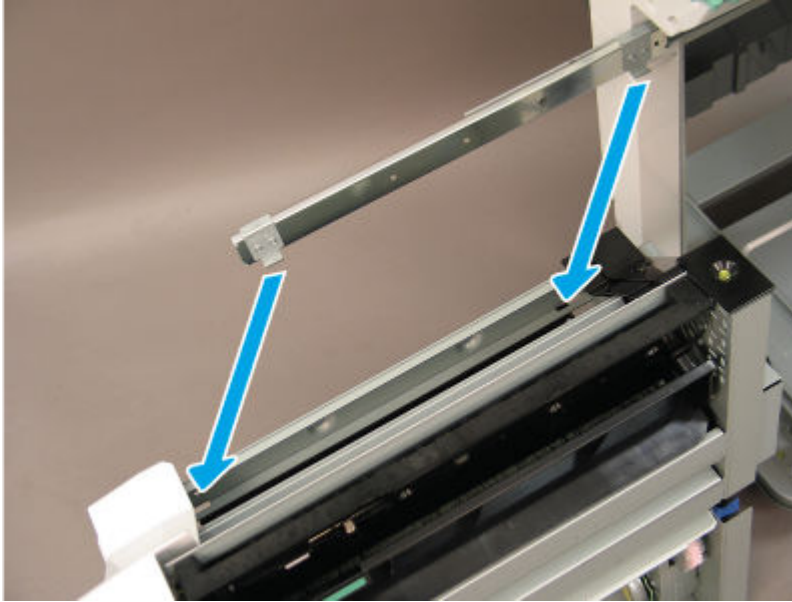
Special installation instructions: booklet finisher booklet maker

Use the following procedure to install the booklet finisher booklet maker.

 **NOTE:** Use the special installation instructions to correctly install the booklet maker.

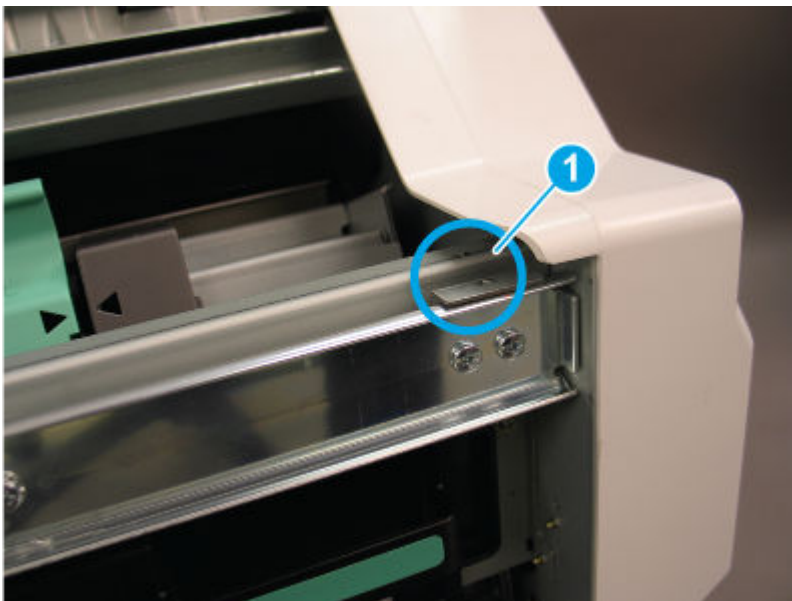
1. When installing the booklet finisher, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2341 Position the hooks on the rail



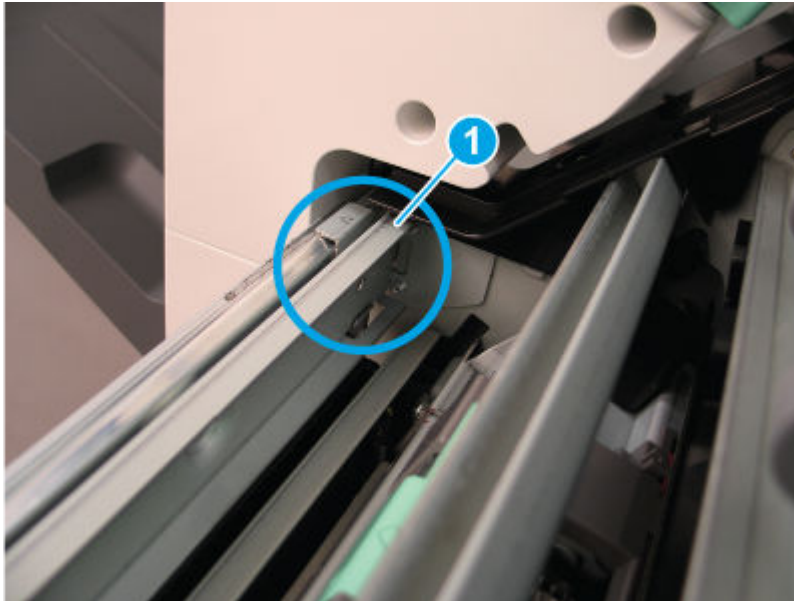
2. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2342 Check rail alignment (1 of 2)



3. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2343 Check rail alignment (2 of 2)



4. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet maker slot.


 **NOTE:** Continue the installation by reversing the removal steps.

Figure 6-2344 Attach the rail



Removal and replacement: Booklet tamper motor

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher tamper motor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-299 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QJ90-40126	Booklet tamper motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

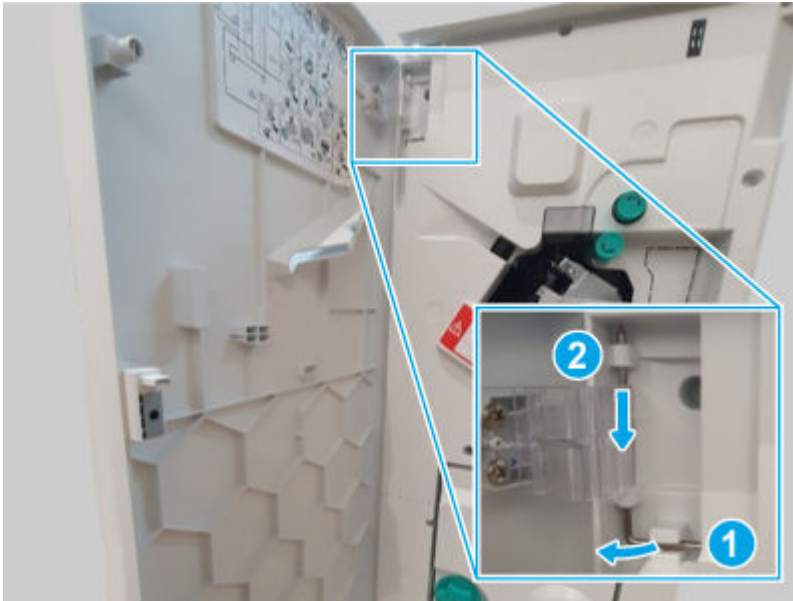
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

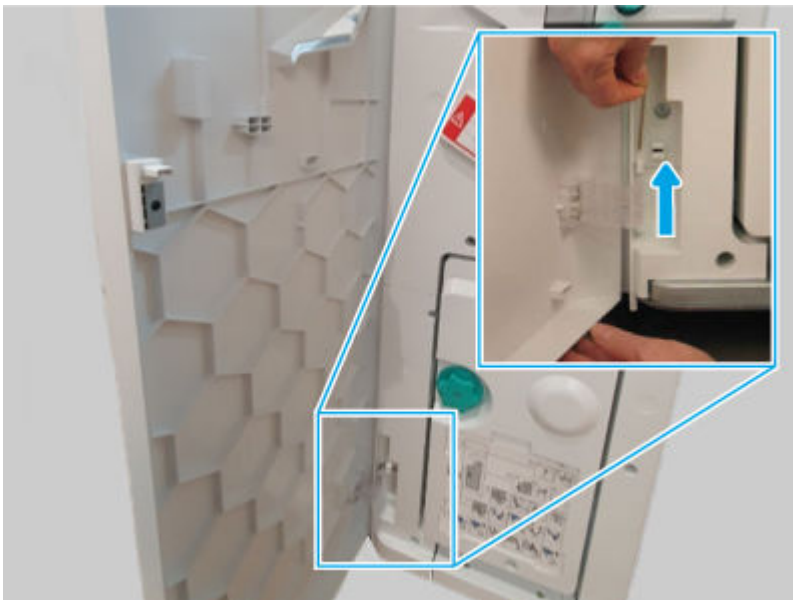
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2345 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2346 Remove the door

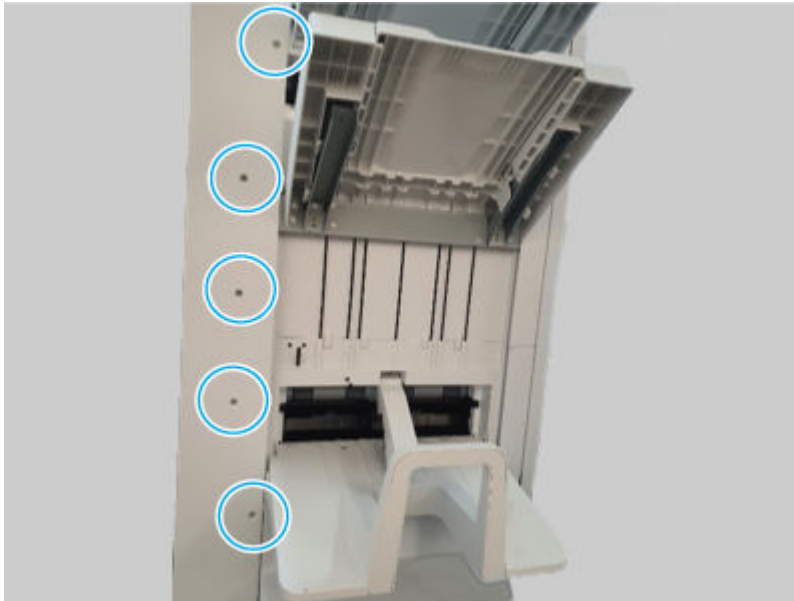


2 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2347 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


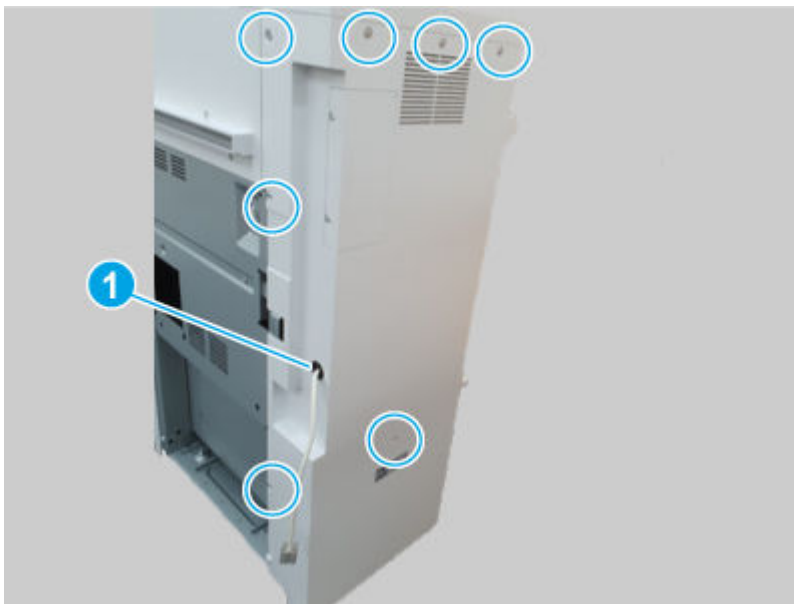
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2348 Remove the cover

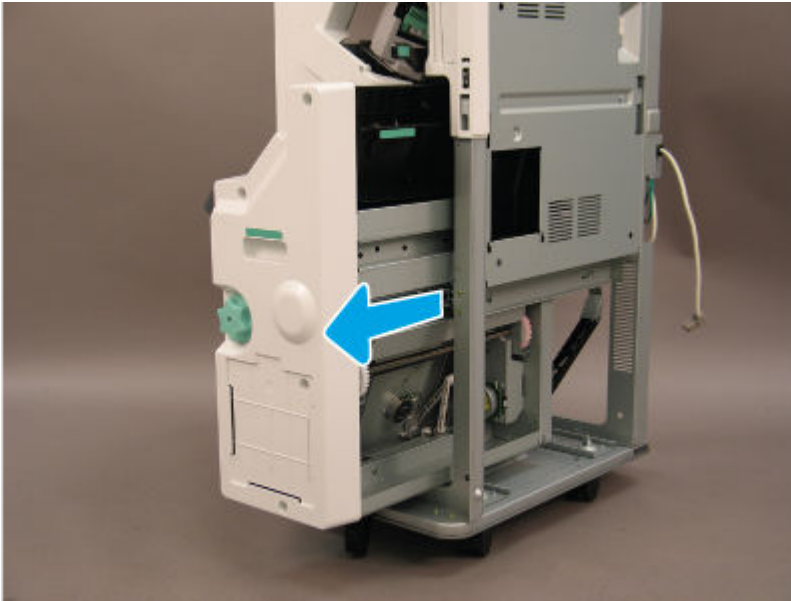


- 3 **Remove the booklet finisher booklet maker**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet maker.

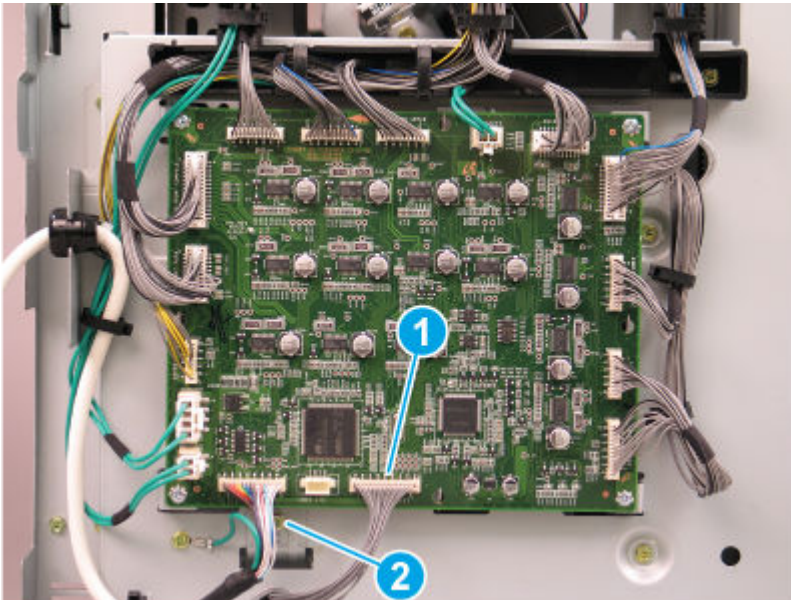
1. Slide the booklet maker out of the finisher.

Figure 6-2349 Slide the booklet maker out



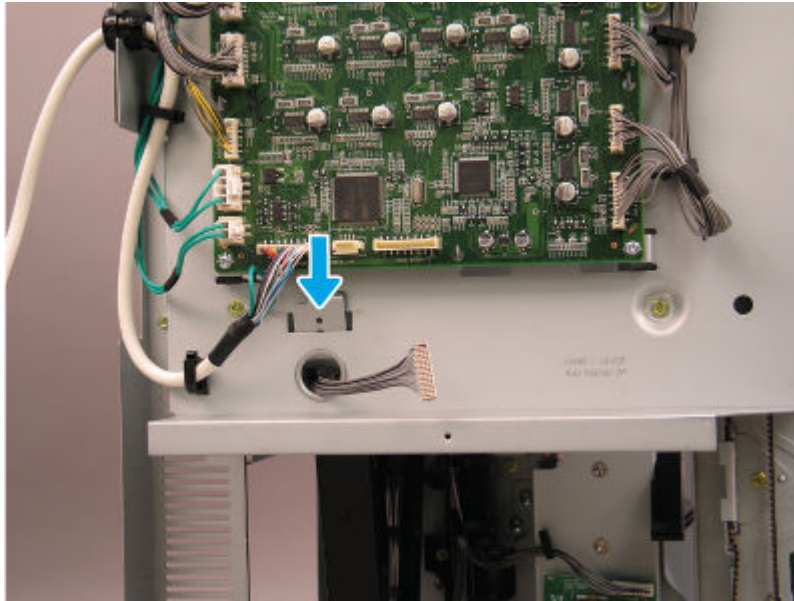
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 6-2350 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



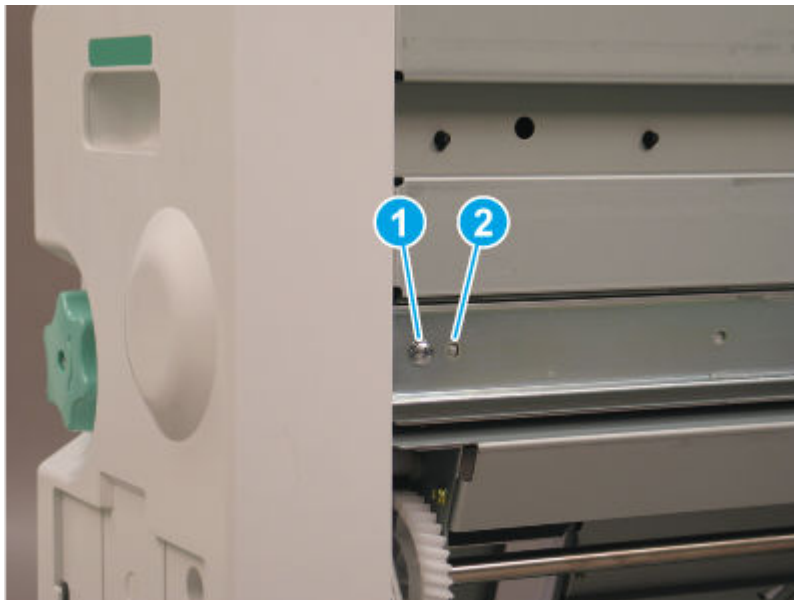
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet-metal.

Figure 6-2351 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



4. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2).

Figure 6-2352 Release the alignment pin



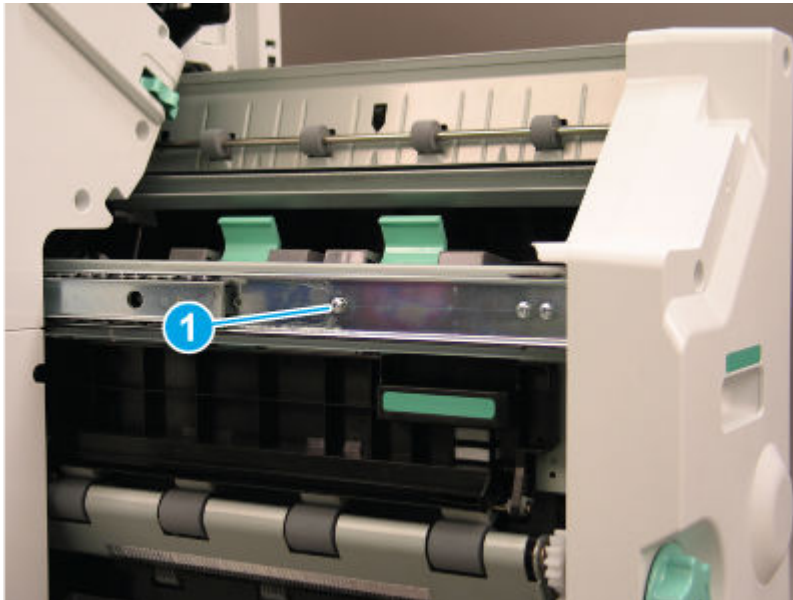
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 6-2353 Slide the rail in



6. Remove one screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2354 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet maker up on the left side while pulling the right rail away from the finisher chassis to clear the sheet-metal. Remove the booklet maker unit.


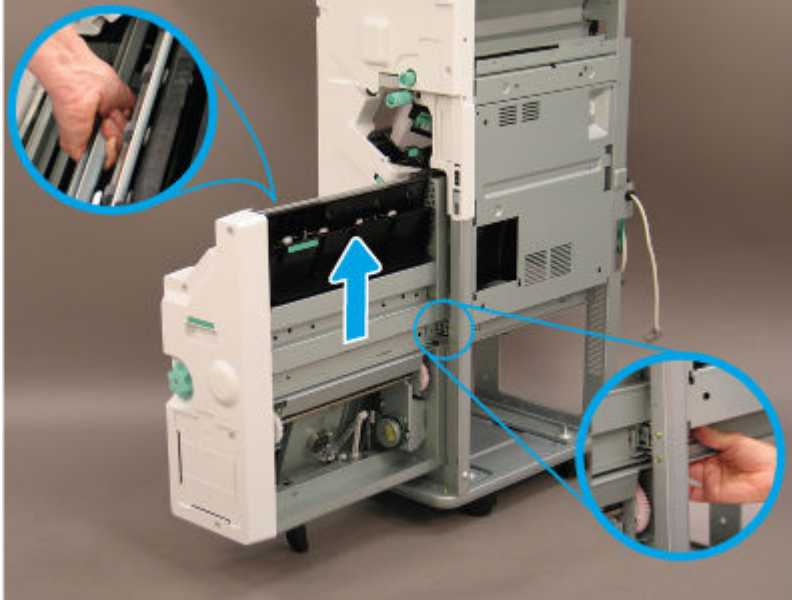
 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure to use the special installation instructions in this topic (located after the unpack and recycle step).

Figure 6-2355 Remove the booklet maker

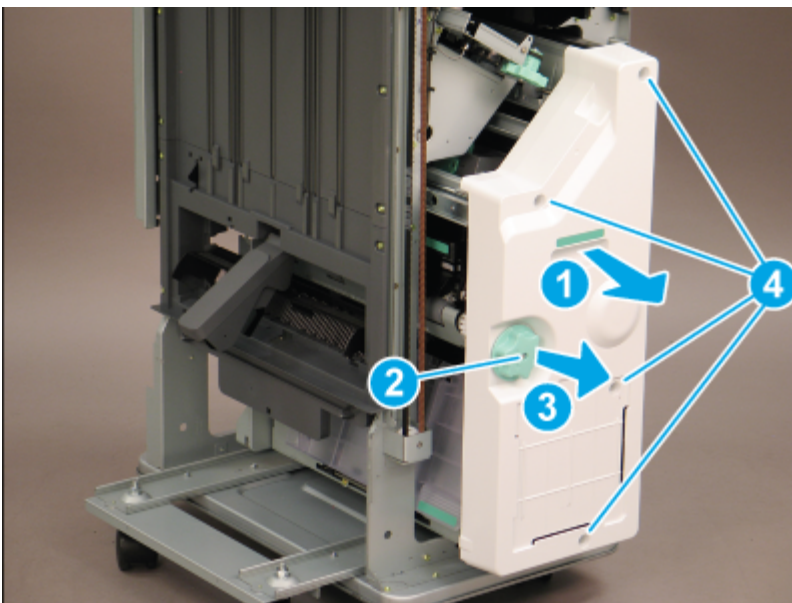


4 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).
 - b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
 - c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2356 Remove the cover

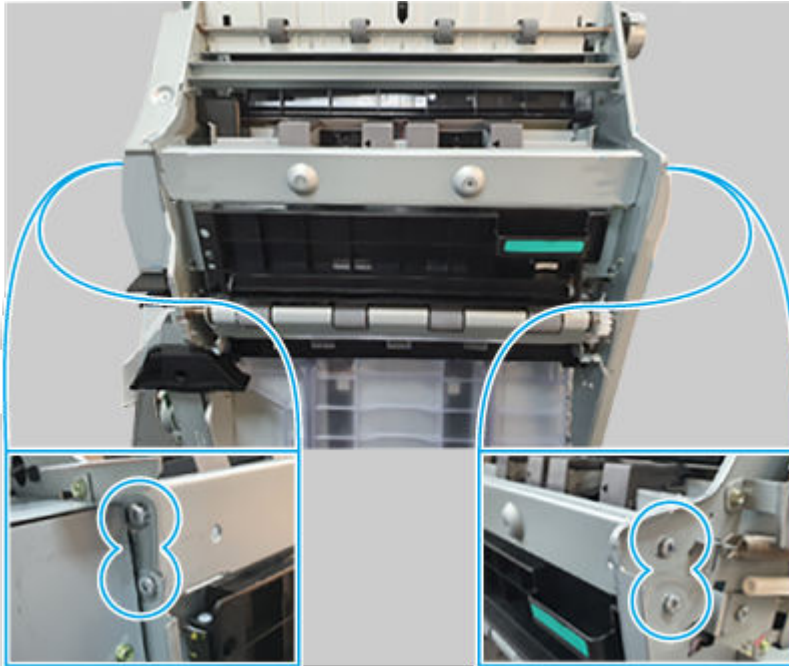


5 Remove the booklet finisher booklet tamper motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher tamper motor.

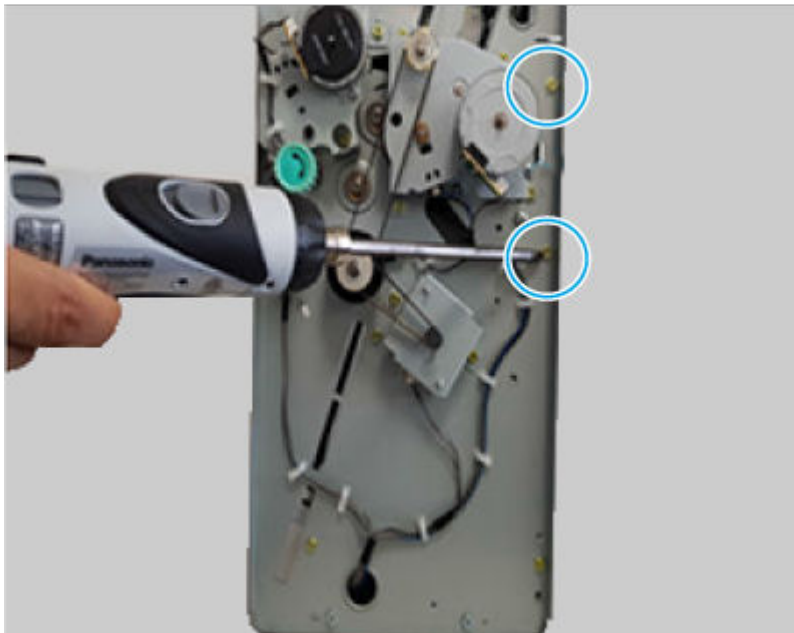
1. Remove four screws and the sheet-metal plate.

Figure 6-2357 Remove four screws



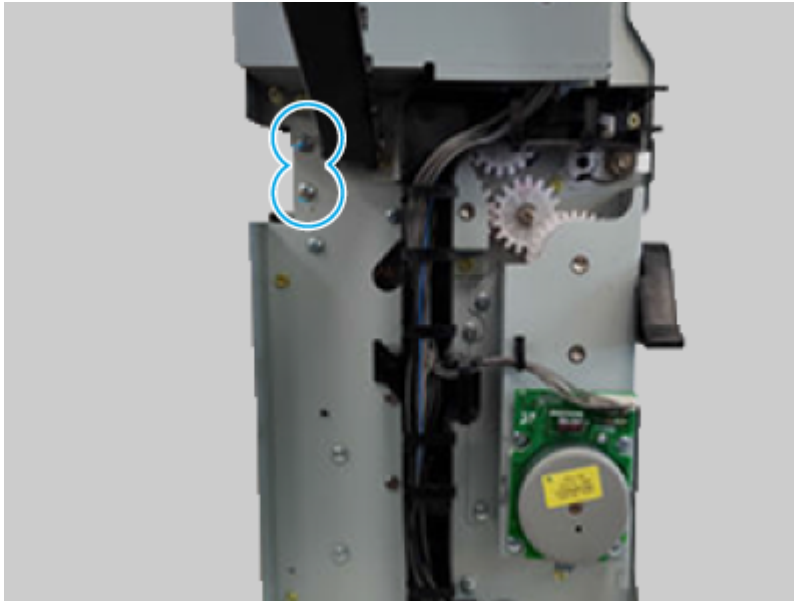
2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2358 Remove two screws



3. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2359 Remove two screws



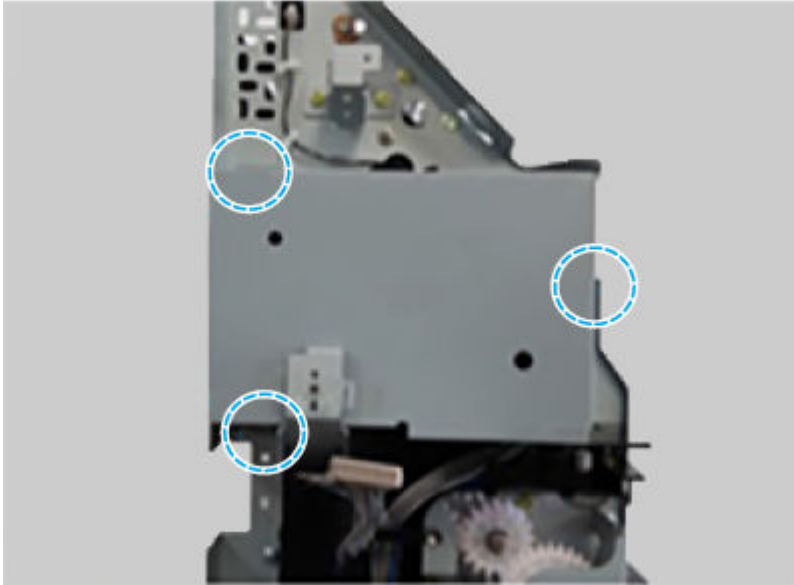
4. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2360 Remove two screws



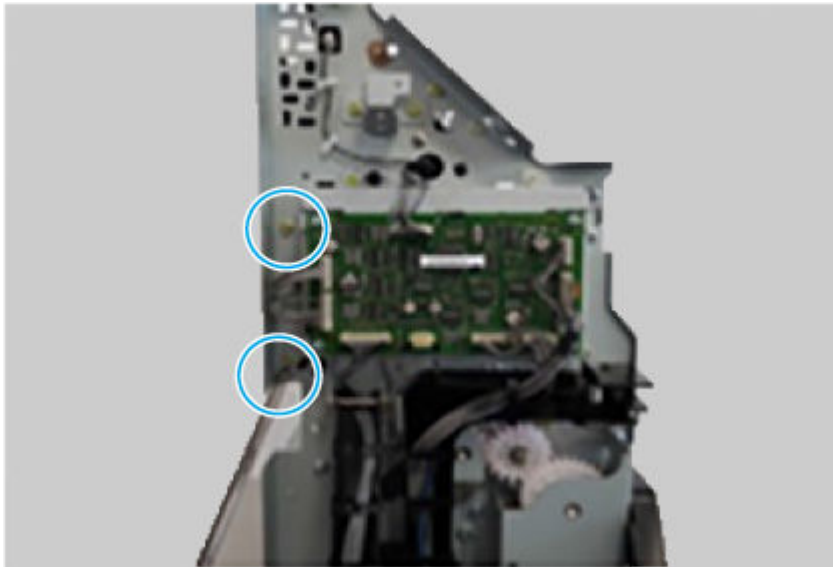
5. Remove three screws and the sheet-metal cover.

Figure 6-2361 Remove three screws



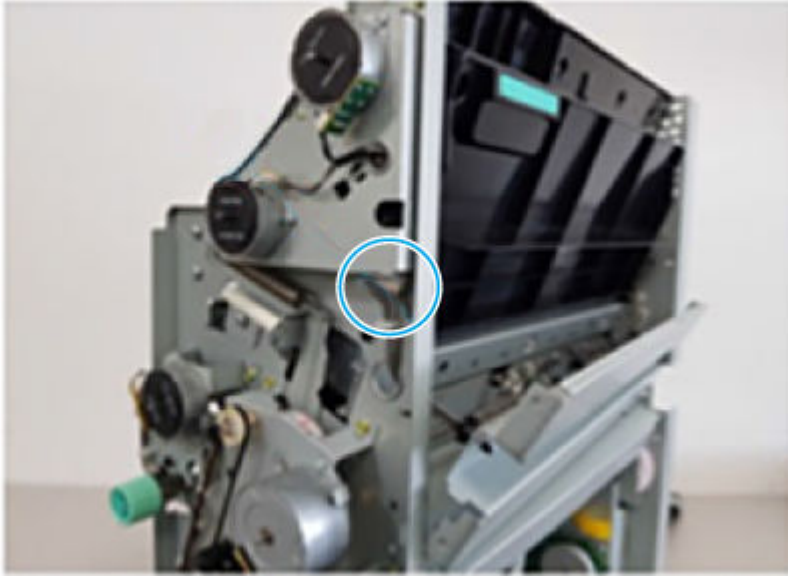
6. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2362 Remove two screws



7. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2363 Disconnect one connector



8. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2364 Disconnect one connector



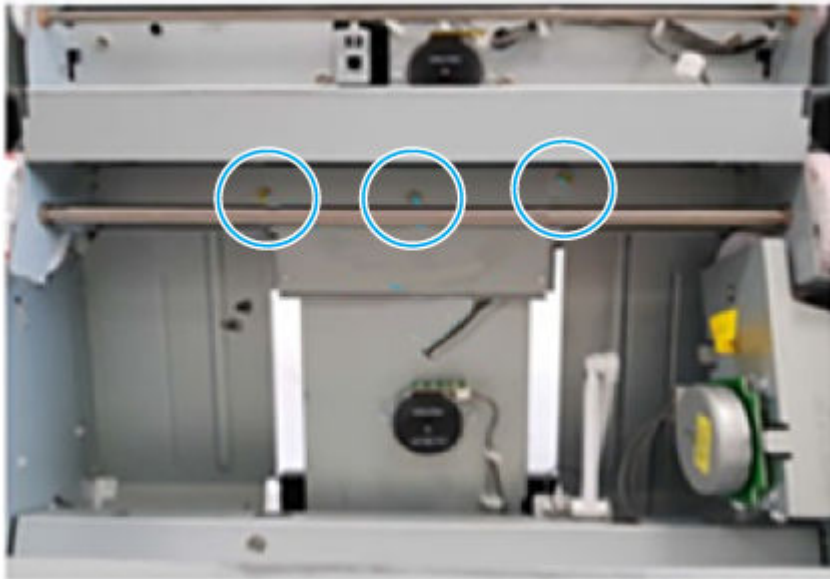
9. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2365 Remove two screws



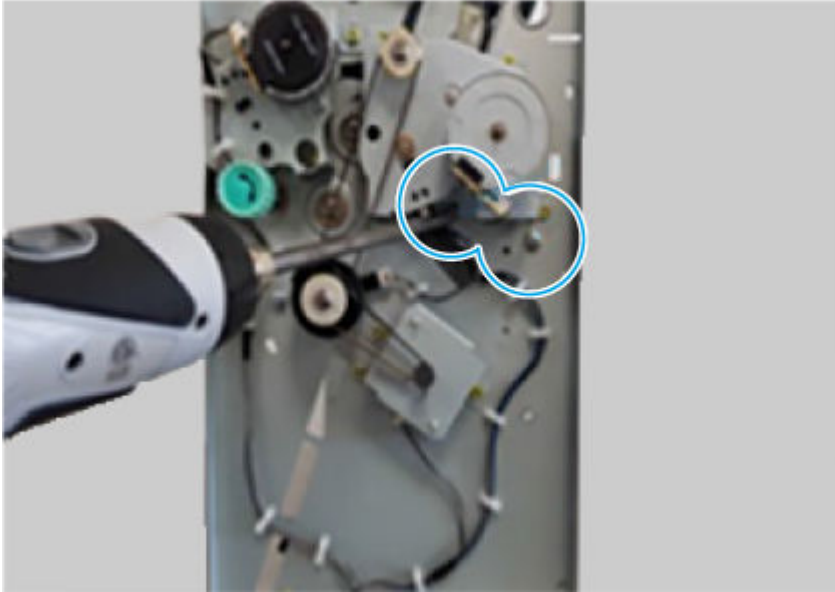
10. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2366 Remove three screws



11. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2367 Remove two screws



12. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2368 Remove two screws



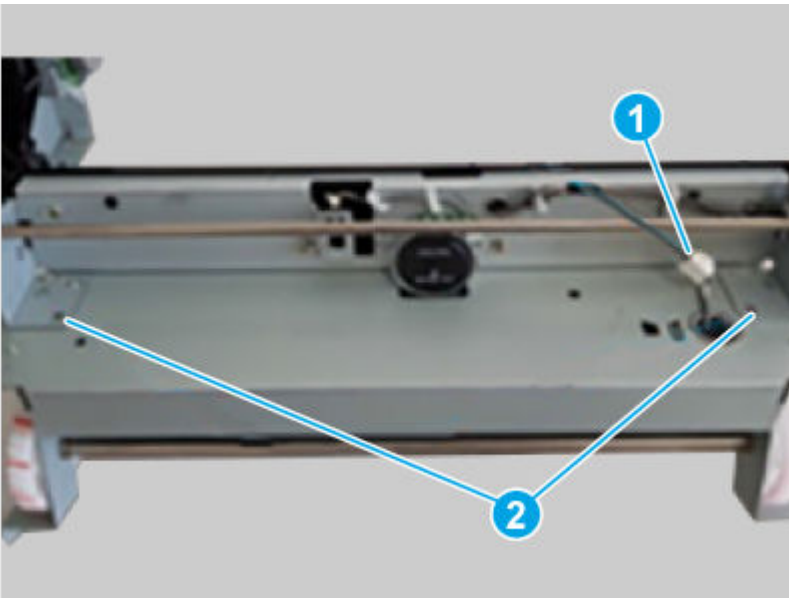
13. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2369 Disconnect one connector



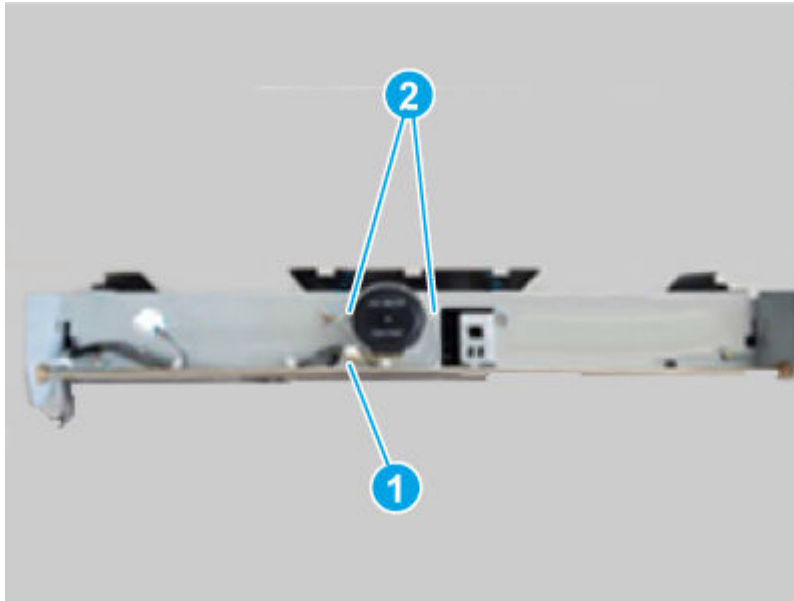
14. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws (callout 2).

Figure 6-2370 Disconnect connector and remove screws



15. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the booklet tamper motor.

Figure 6-2371 Remove the motor



6 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

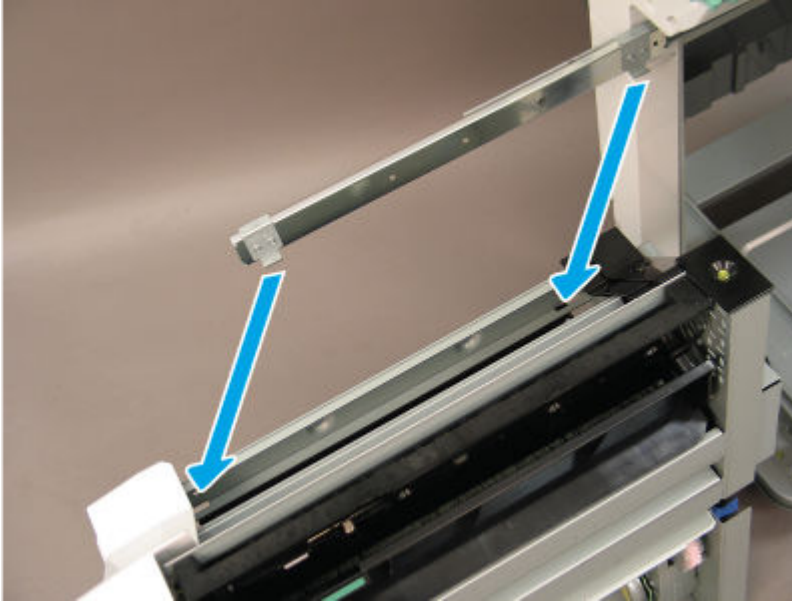
7 Special installation instructions: booklet finisher booklet maker

Use the following procedure to install the booklet finisher booklet maker.

 **NOTE:** Use the special installation instructions to correctly install the booklet maker.

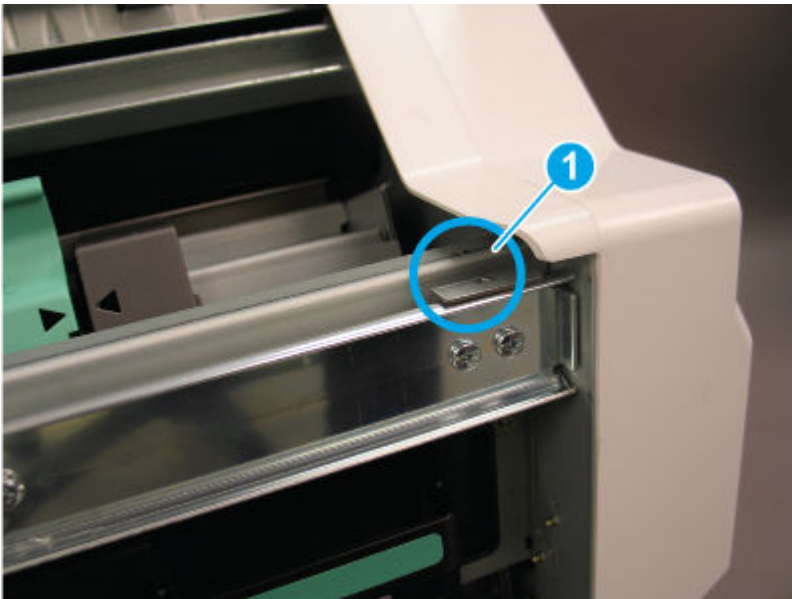
1. When installing the booklet finisher, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2372 Position the hooks on the rail



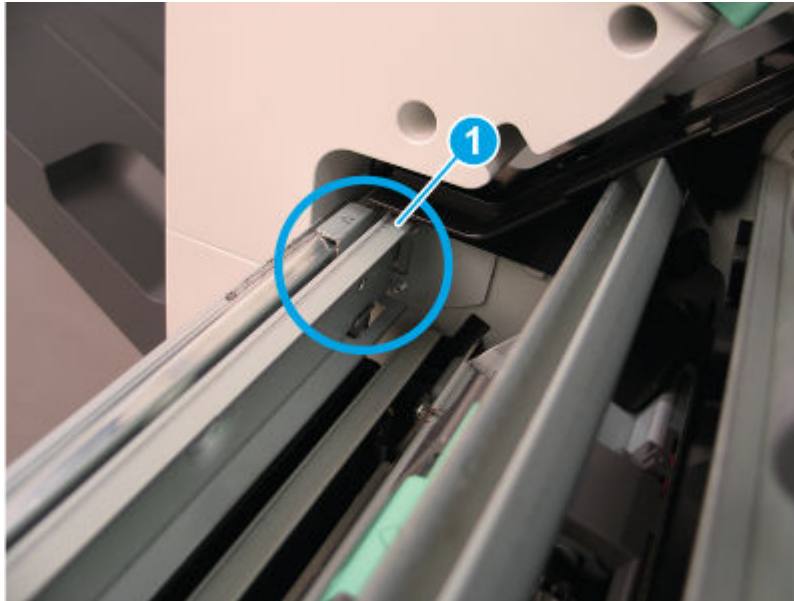
2. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2373 Check rail alignment (1 of 2)



3. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2374 Check rail alignment (2 of 2)



4. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet maker slot.


 **NOTE:** Continue the installation by reversing the removal steps.

Figure 6-2375 Attach the rail



Removal and replacement: Booklet tamper sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher tamper sensor.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-300 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC32-00020A	Sensor-RP (Booklet tamper sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

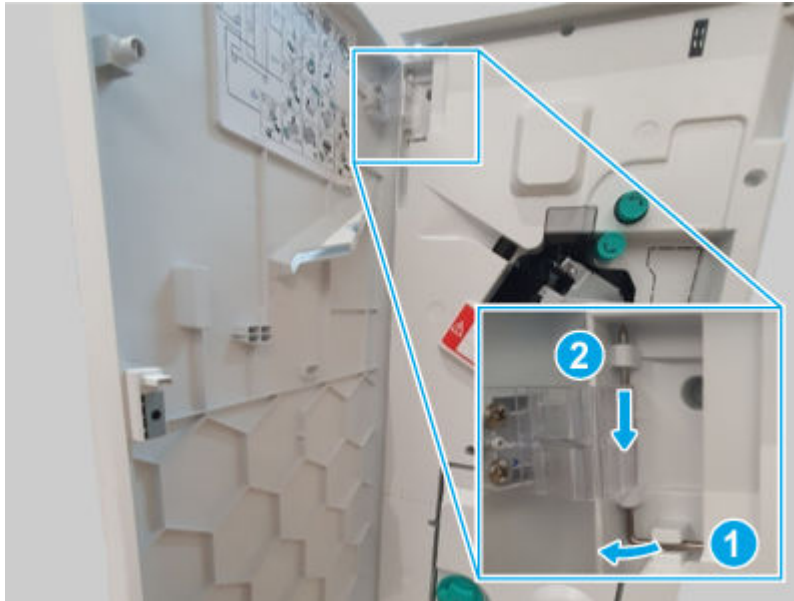
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

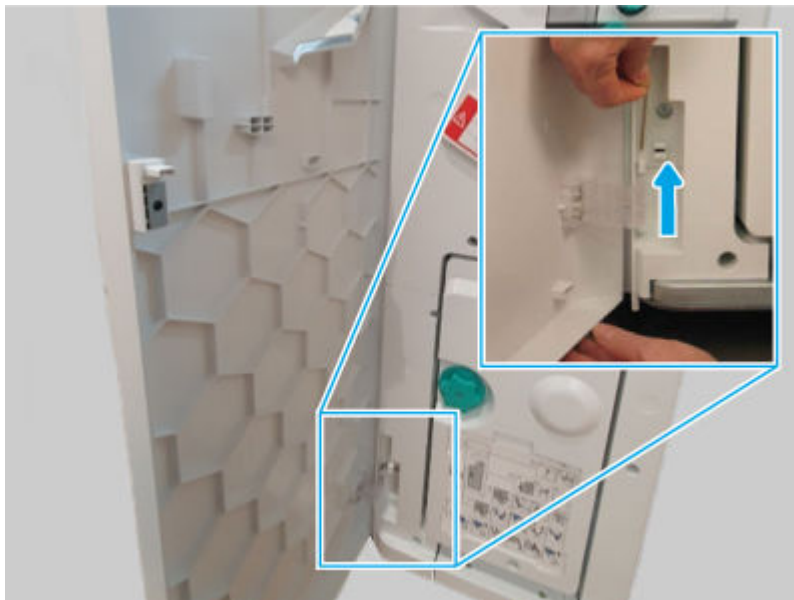
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2376 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2377 Remove the door

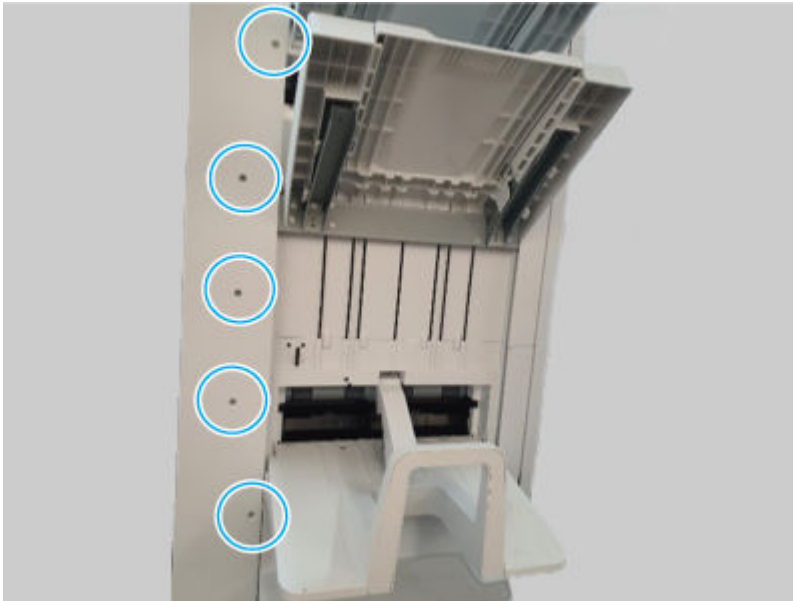


2 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2378 Remove five screws

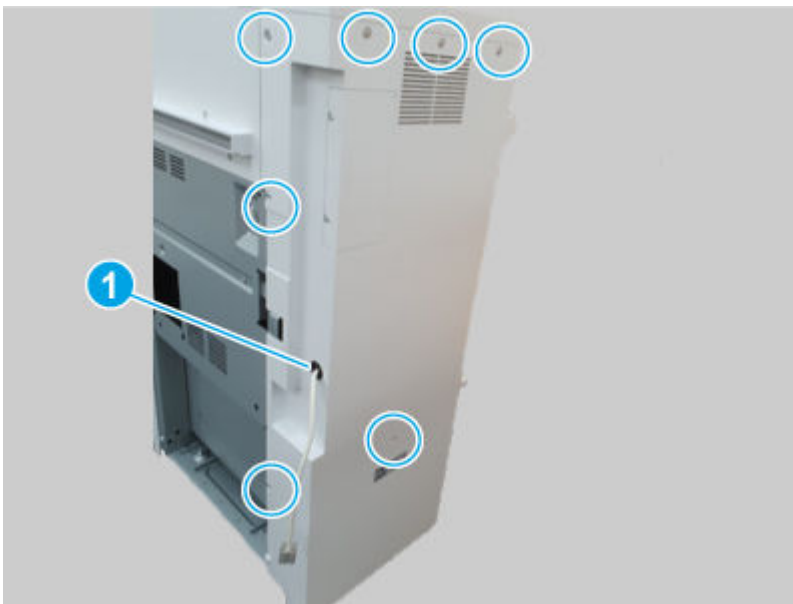


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2379 Remove the cover

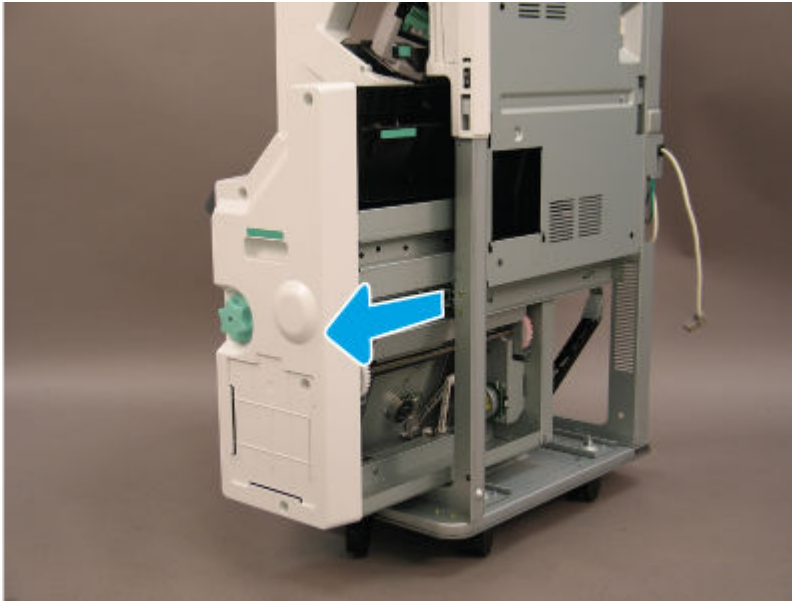


- 3 **Remove the booklet finisher booklet maker**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet maker.

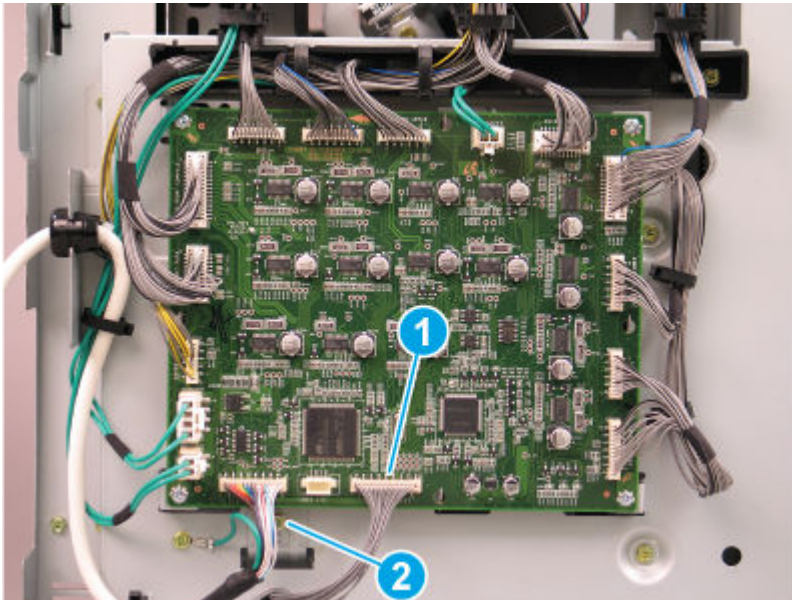
1. Slide the booklet maker out of the finisher.

Figure 6-2380 Slide the booklet maker out



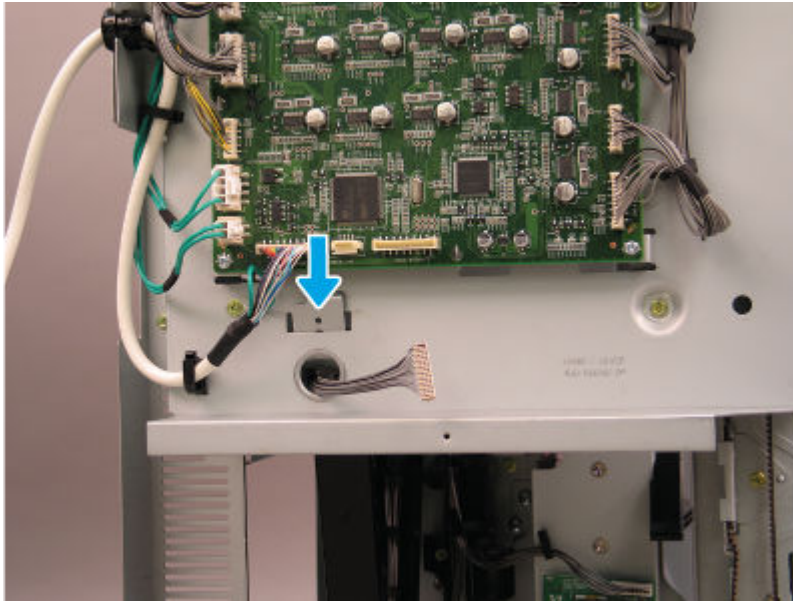
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 6-2381 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



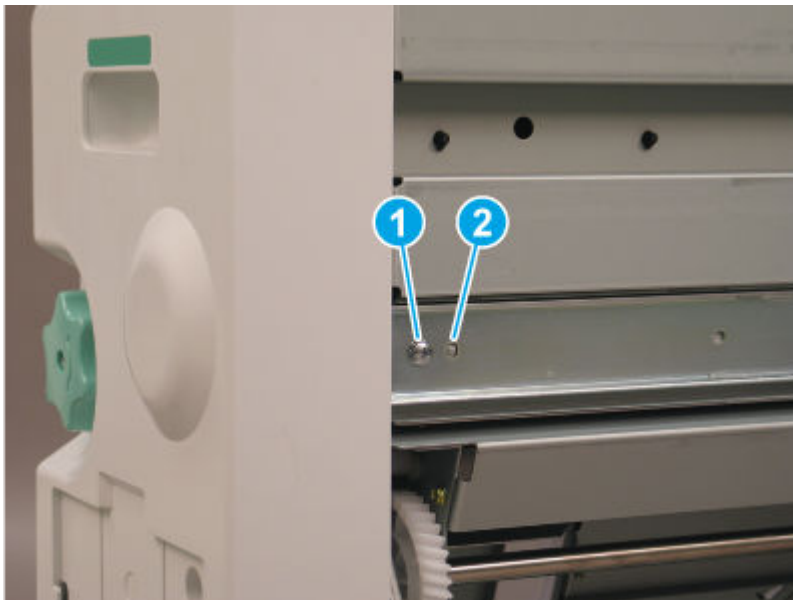
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet-metal.

Figure 6-2382 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



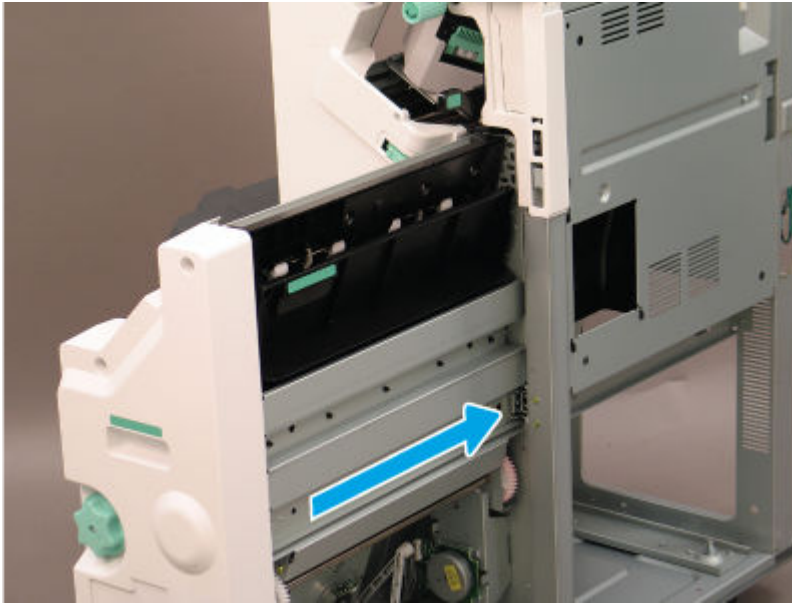
4. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2).

Figure 6-2383 Release the alignment pin



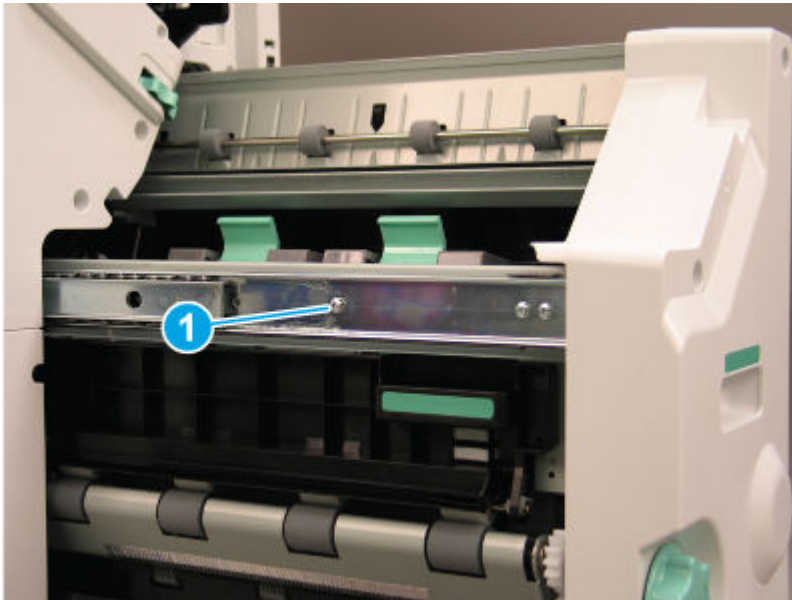
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 6-2384 Slide the rail in



6. Remove one screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2385 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet maker up on the left side while pulling the right rail away from the finisher chassis to clear the sheet-metal. Remove the booklet maker unit.


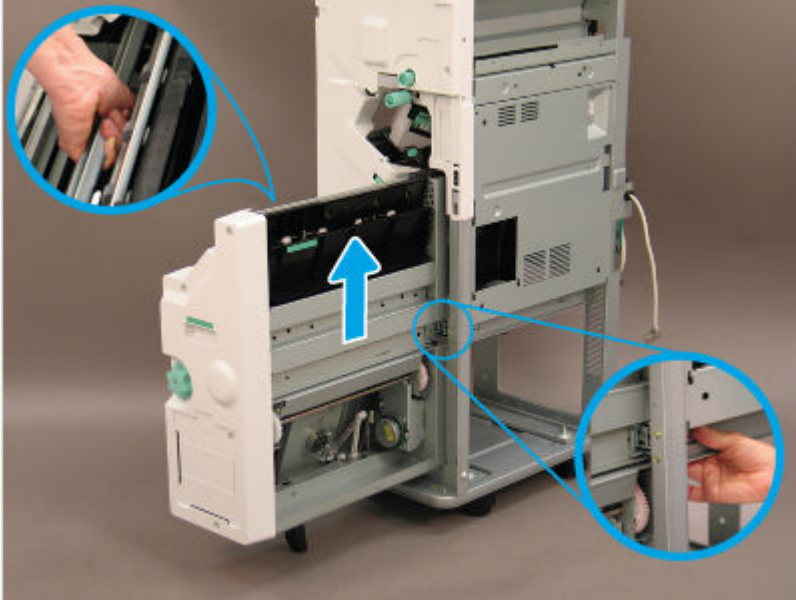
 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure to use the special installation instructions in this topic (located after the unpack and recycle step).

Figure 6-2386 Remove the booklet maker

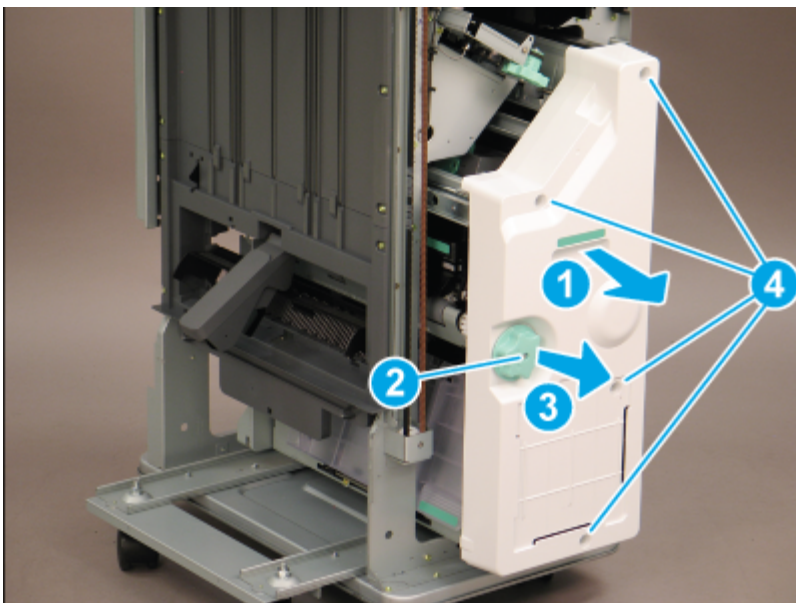


4 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).
 - b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
 - c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2387 Remove the cover

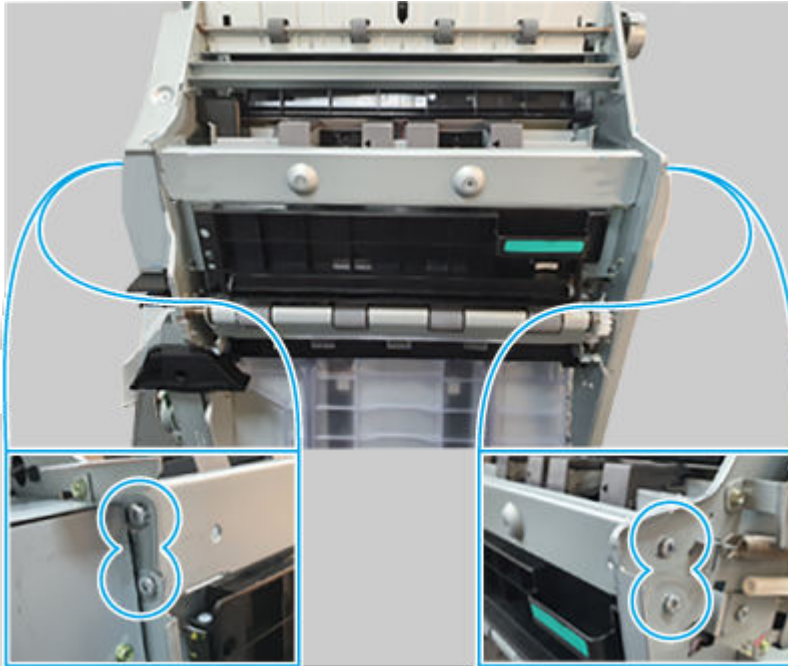


5 Remove the booklet finisher booklet tamper sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher tamper sensor.

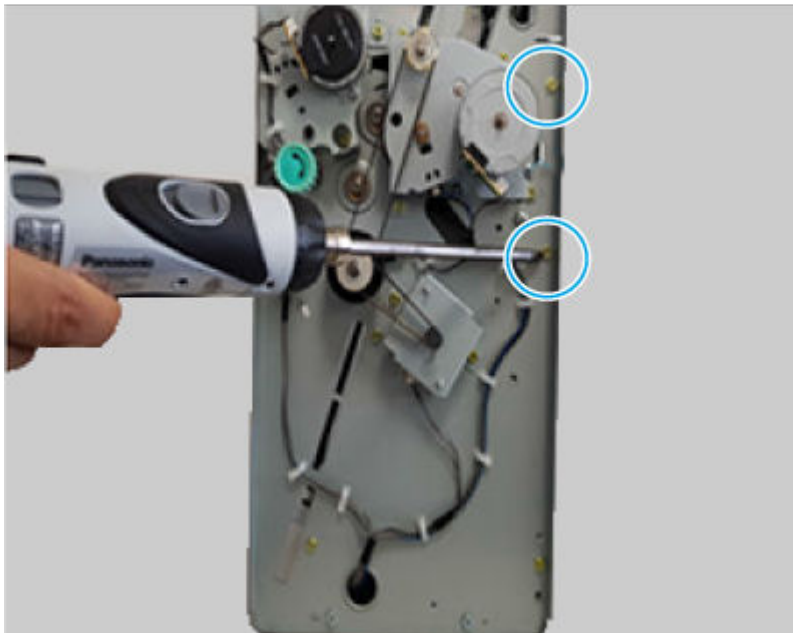
1. Remove four screws and the sheet-metal plate.

Figure 6-2388 Remove four screws



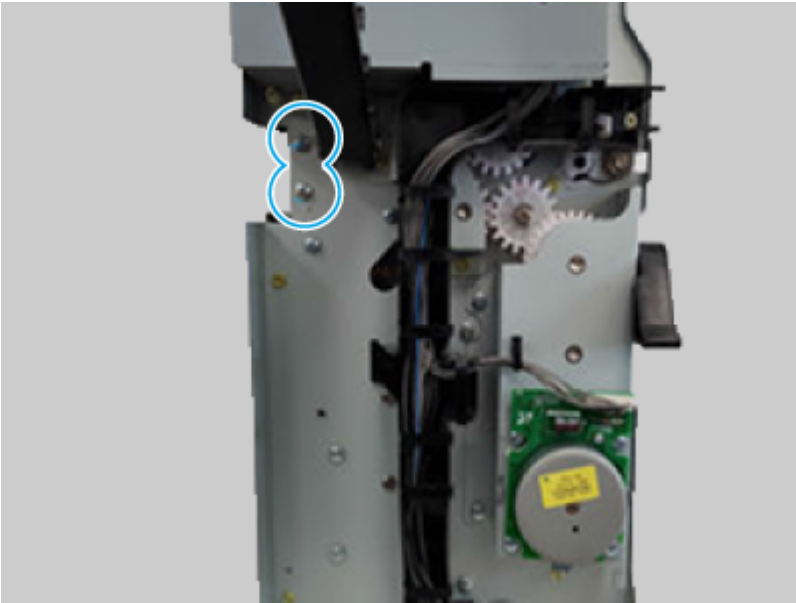
2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2389 Remove two screws



3. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2390 Remove two screws



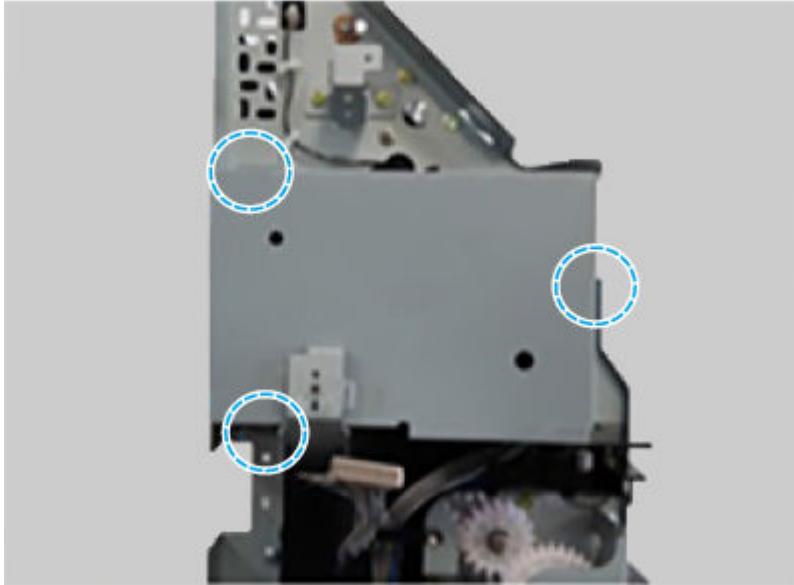
4. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2391 Remove two screws



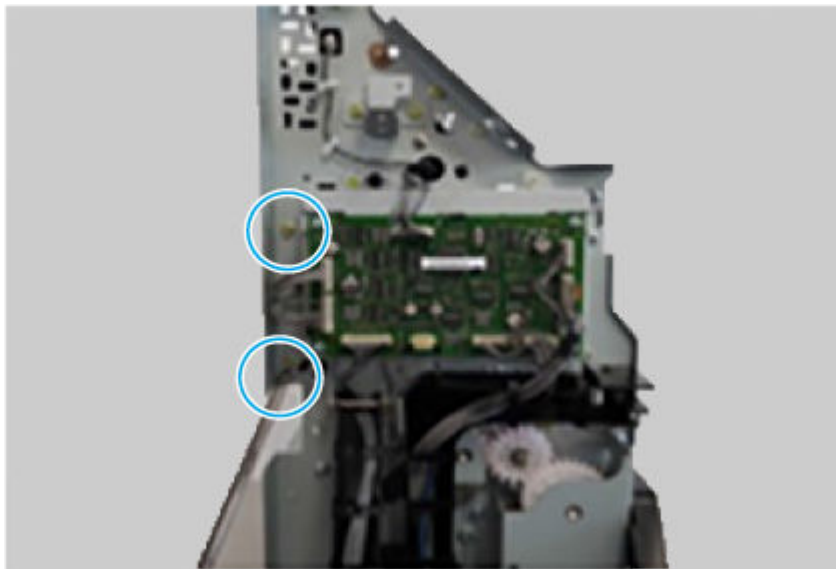
5. Remove three screws and the sheet-metal cover.

Figure 6-2392 Remove three screws



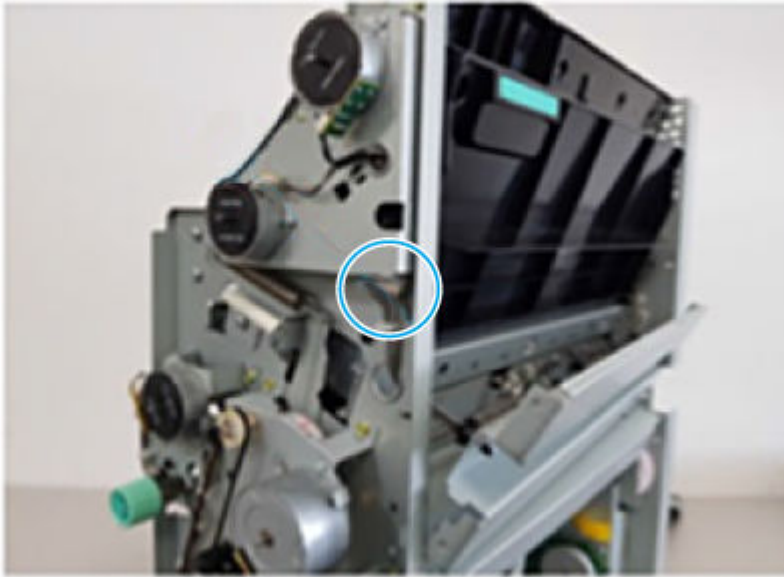
6. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2393 Remove two screws



7. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2394 Disconnect one connector



8. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2395 Disconnect one connector



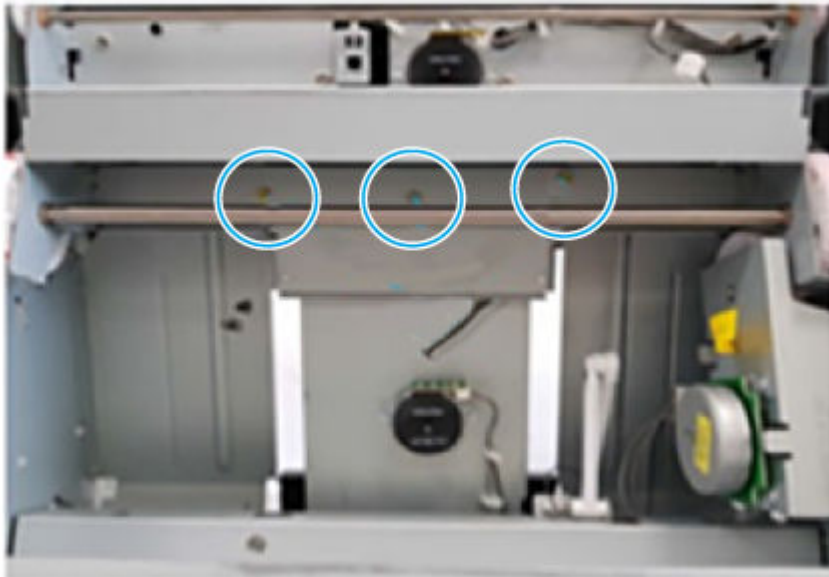
9. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2396 Remove two screws



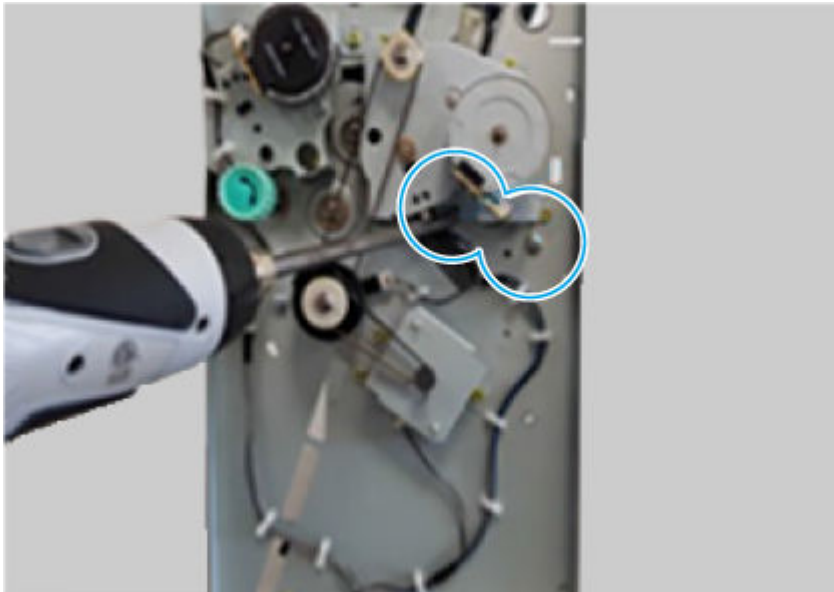
10. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2397 Remove three screws



11. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2398 Remove two screws



12. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2399 Remove two screws



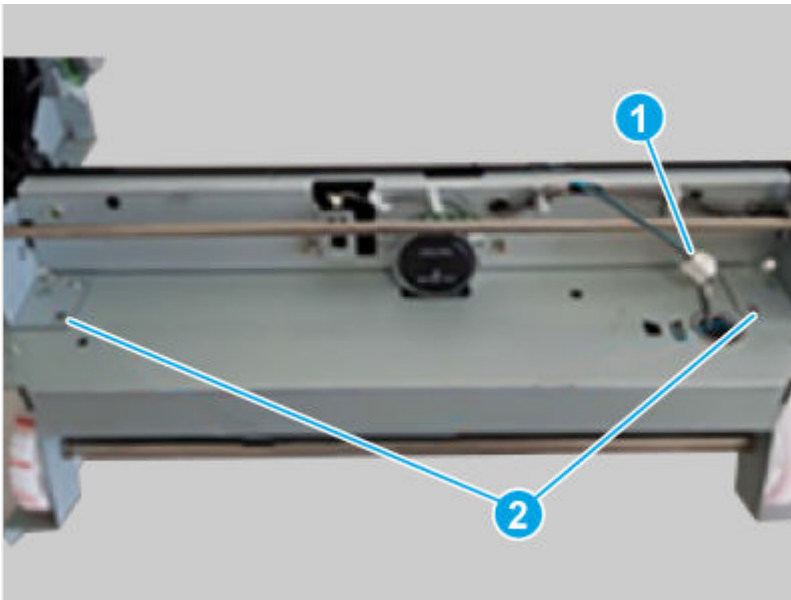
13. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2400 Disconnect one connector



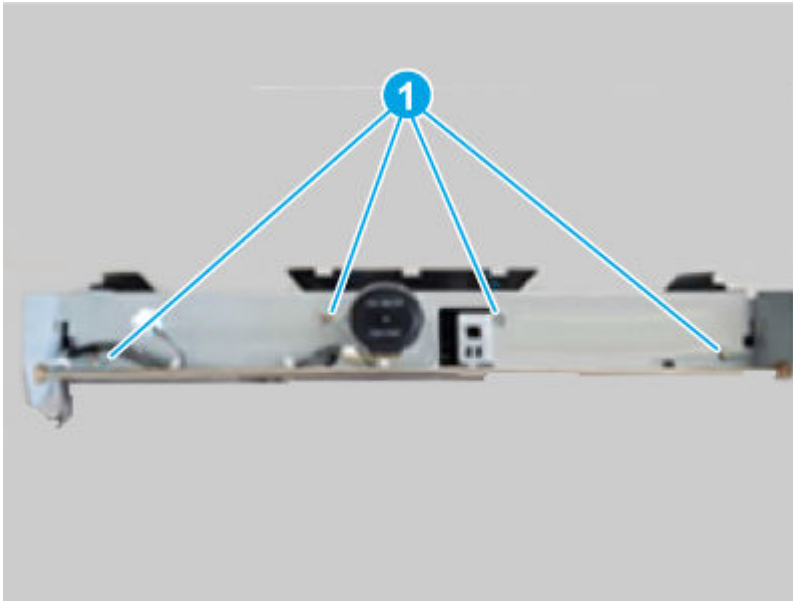
14. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws (callout 2).

Figure 6-2401 Disconnect connector and remove screws



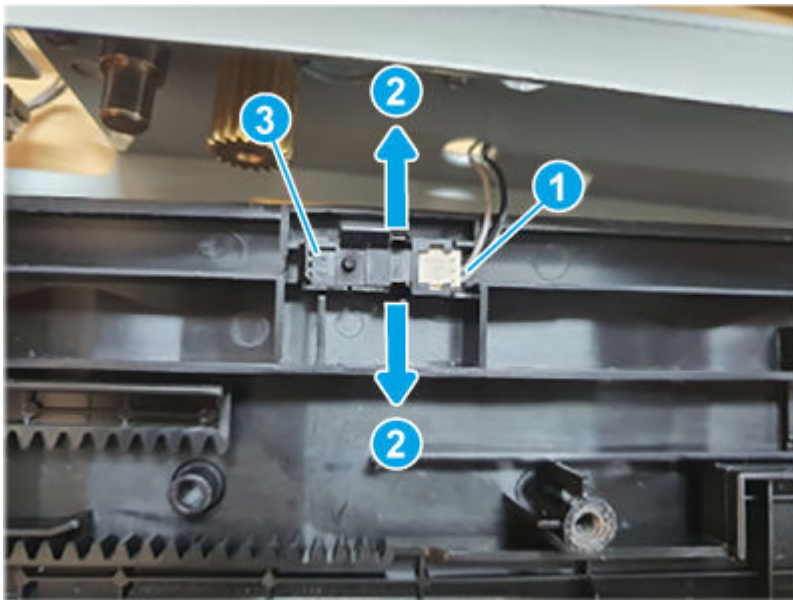
15. Remove four screws (callout 2), and then remove the sheet-metal cover.

Figure 6-2402 Remove the cover



16. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), release two tabs (callout 2), and then remove the booklet tamper sensor (callout 3).

Figure 6-2403 Remove the sensor



6 **Unpack the replacement assembly**

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT:  Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


NOTE:  If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE:  When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

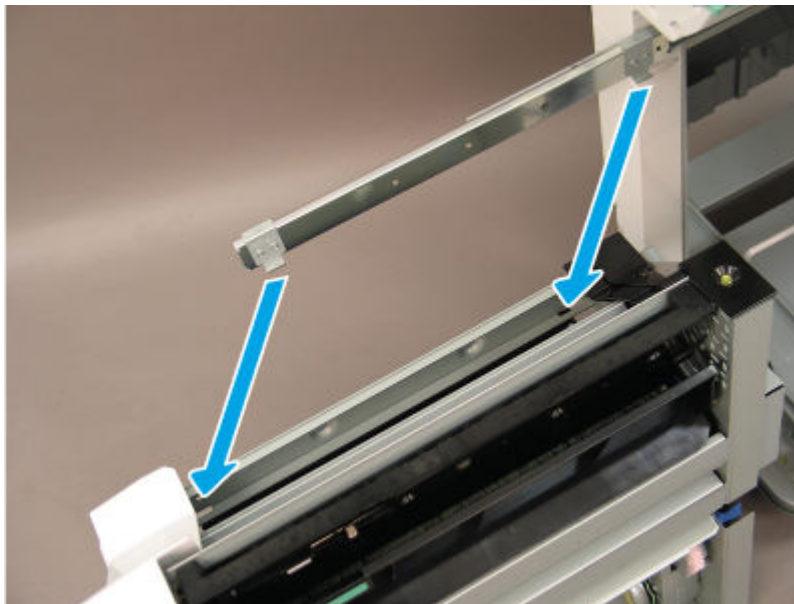
7 Special installation instructions: booklet finisher booklet maker

Use the following procedure to install the booklet finisher booklet maker.

NOTE:  Use the special installation instructions to correctly install the booklet maker.

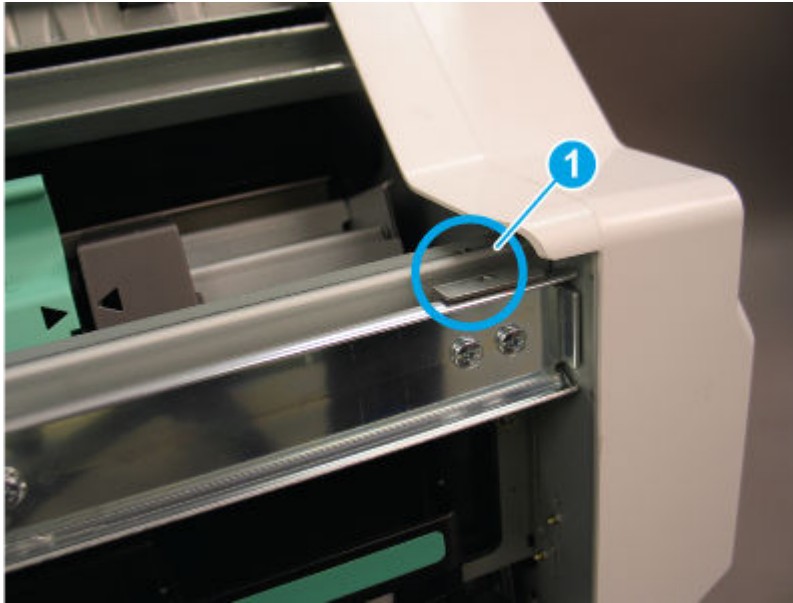
1. When installing the booklet finisher, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2404 Position the hooks on the rail



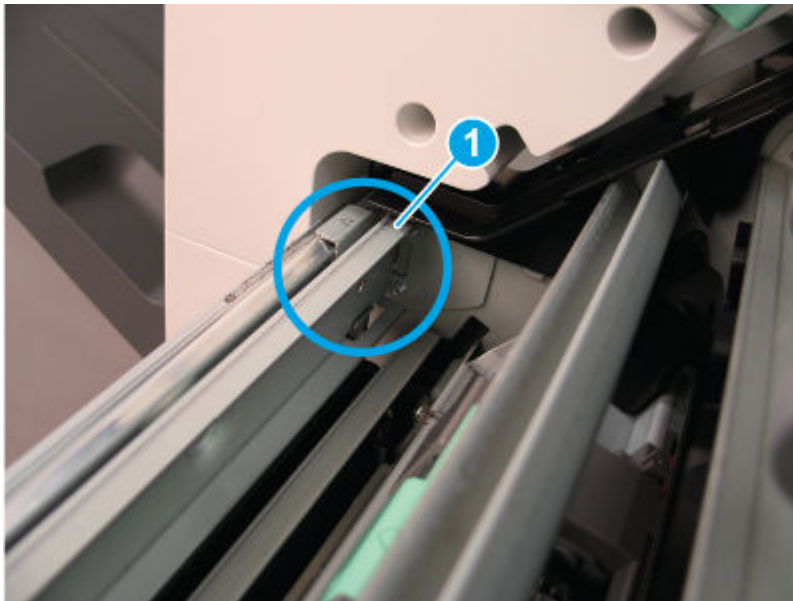
2. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2405 Check rail alignment (1 of 2)



3. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2406 Check rail alignment (2 of 2)



4. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet maker slot.



NOTE: Continue the installation by reversing the removal steps.

Figure 6-2407 Attach the rail



Booklet stapler unit

Review the booklet finisher booklet stapler unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Booklet stapler

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher stapler.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-301 Part information

Part number	Part description
6GW51-40001	Booklet stapler

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

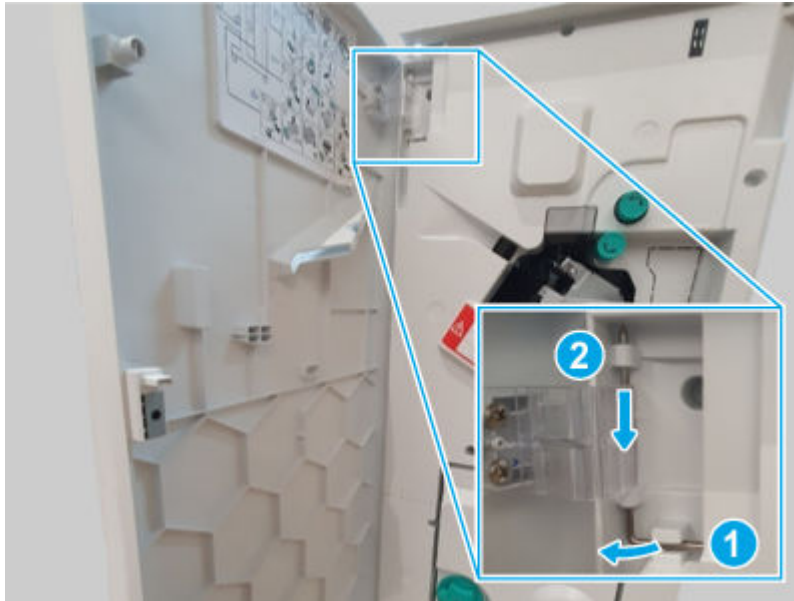
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

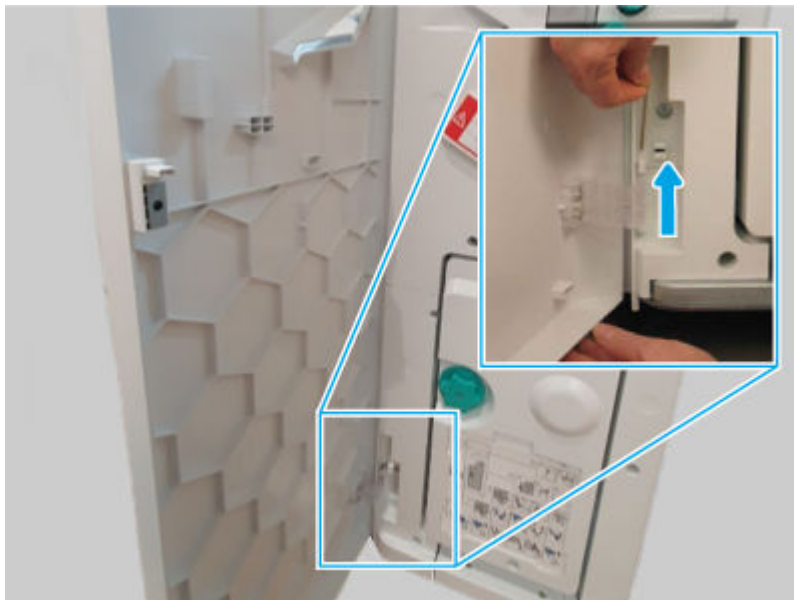
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2408 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2409 Remove the door

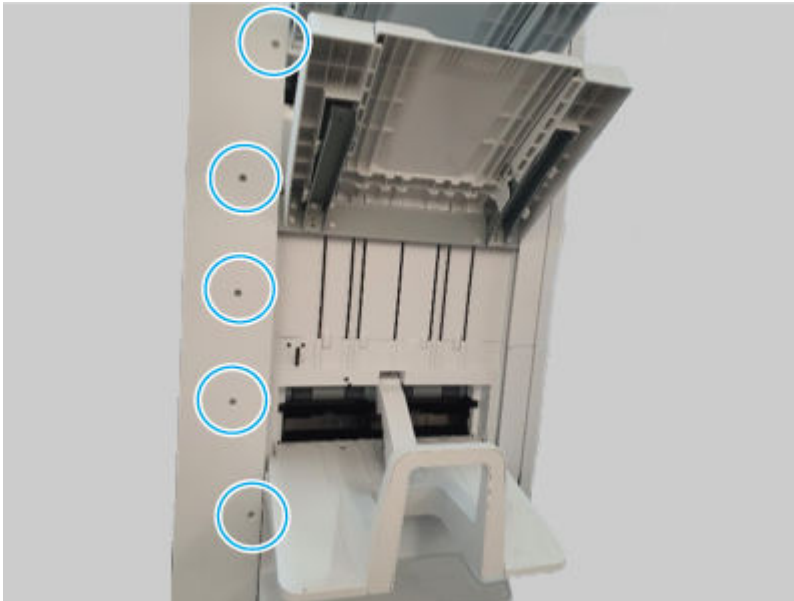


2 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2410 Remove five screws

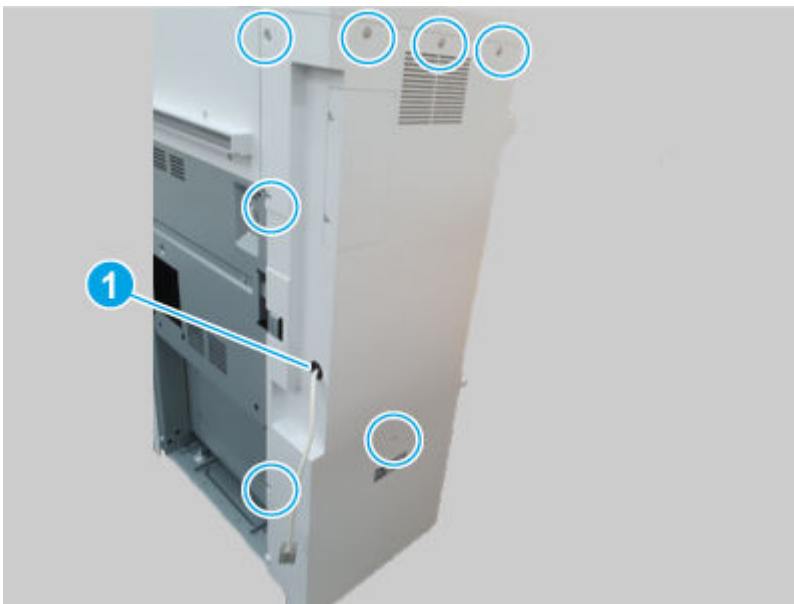


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2411 Remove the cover



- 3 **Remove the external finisher top cover**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

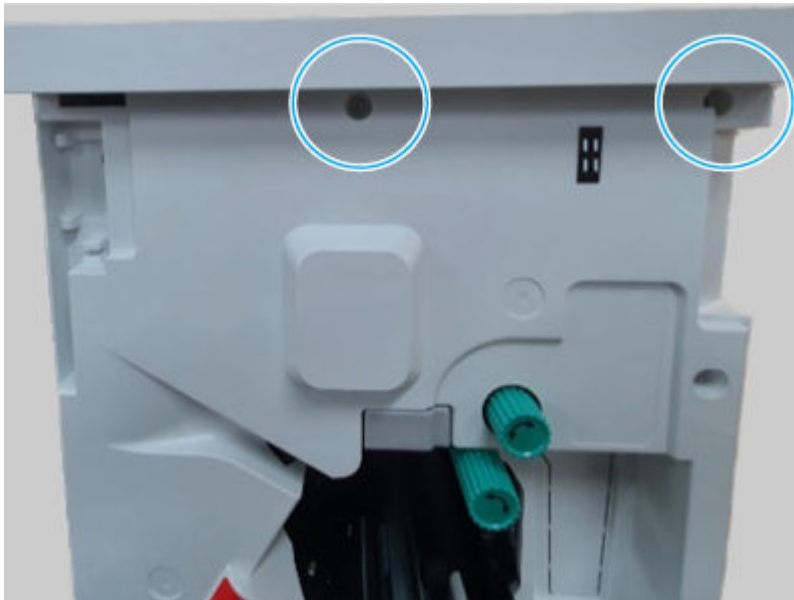
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2412 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2413 Remove the cover

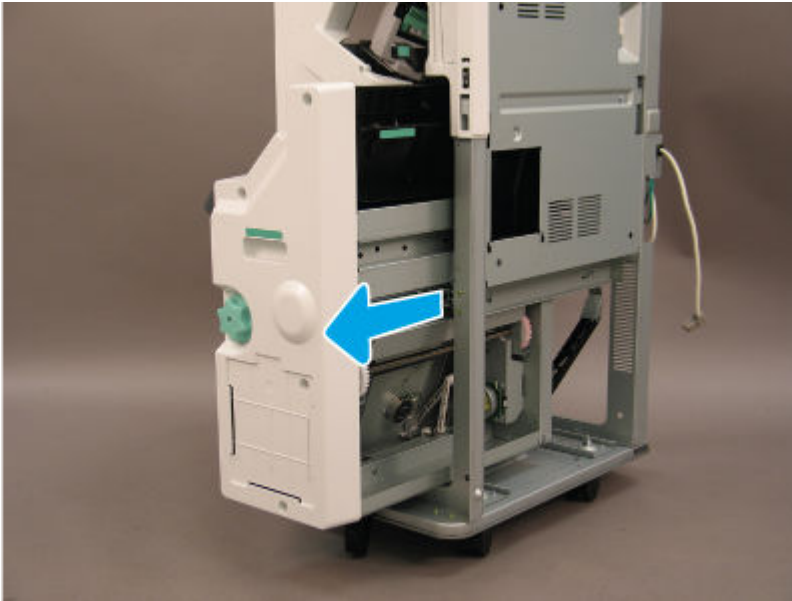


4 Remove the booklet finisher booklet maker

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet maker.

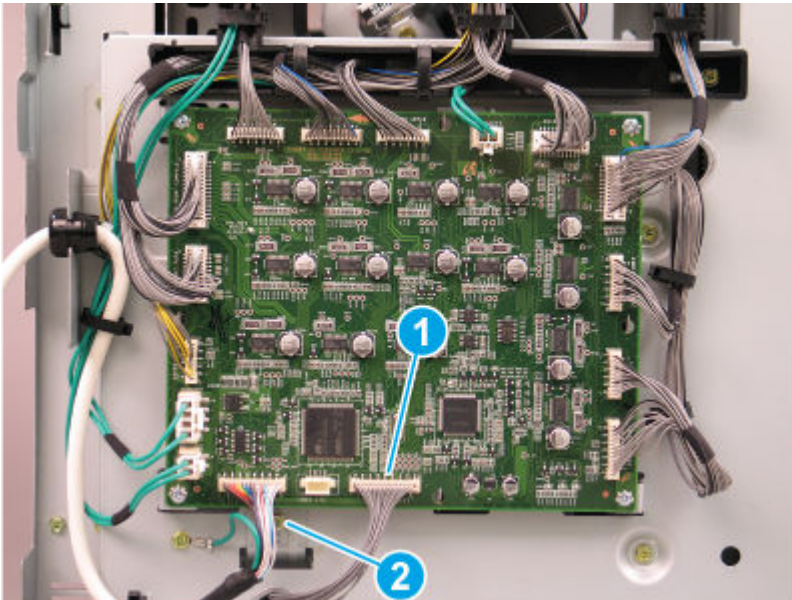
1. Slide the booklet maker out of the finisher.

Figure 6-2414 Slide the booklet maker out



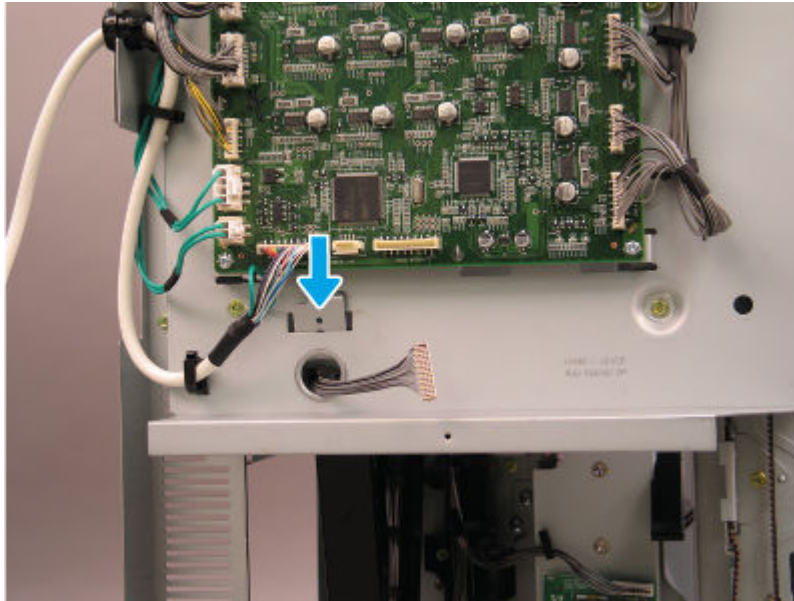
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 6-2415 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



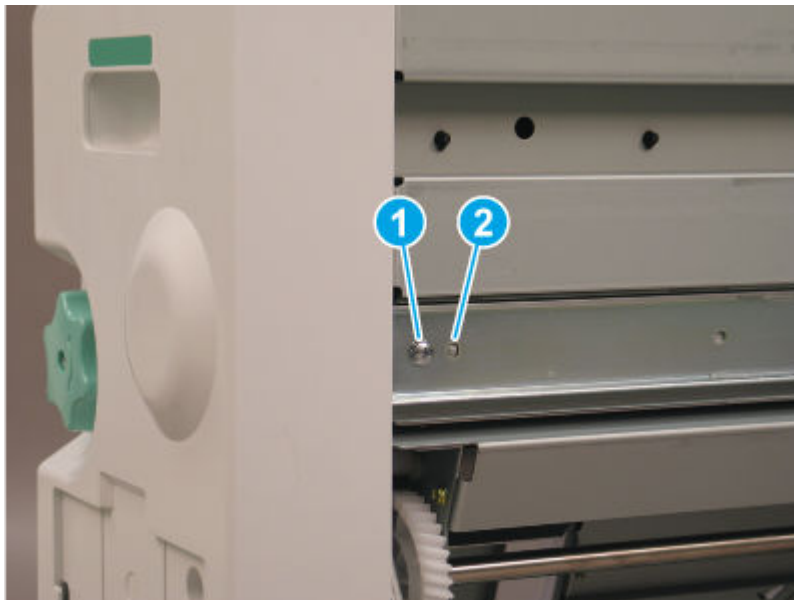
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet-metal.

Figure 6-2416 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



4. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2).

Figure 6-2417 Release the alignment pin



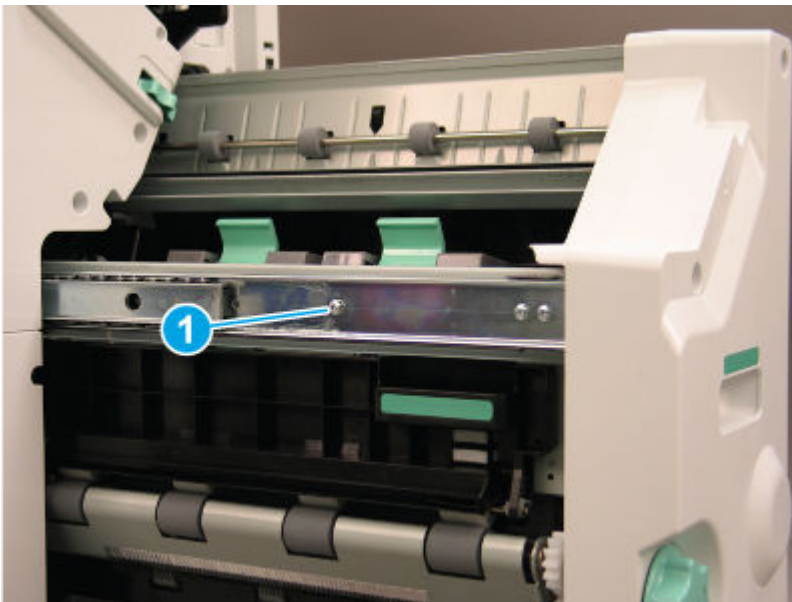
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 6-2418 Slide the rail in



6. Remove one screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2419 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet maker up on the left side while pulling the right rail away from the finisher chassis to clear the sheet-metal. Remove the booklet maker unit.


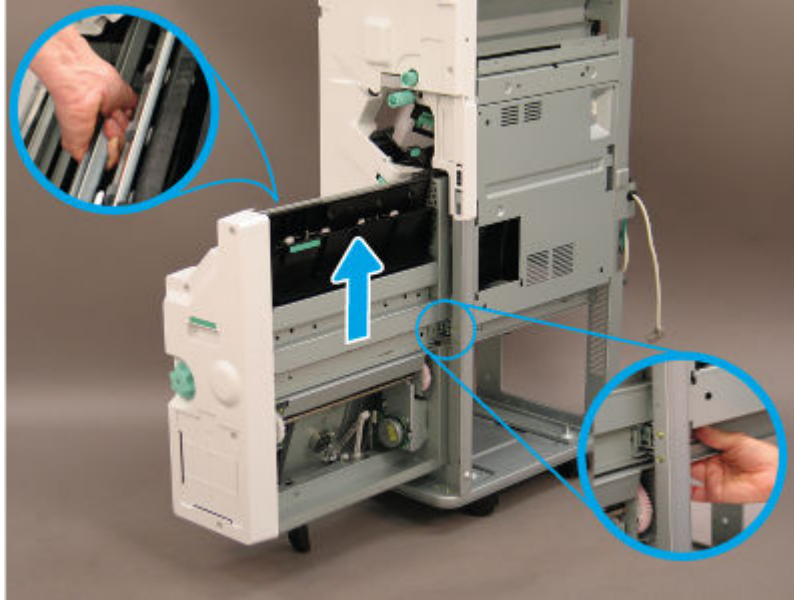
 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure to use the special installation instructions in this topic (located after the unpack and recycle step).

Figure 6-2420 Remove the booklet maker

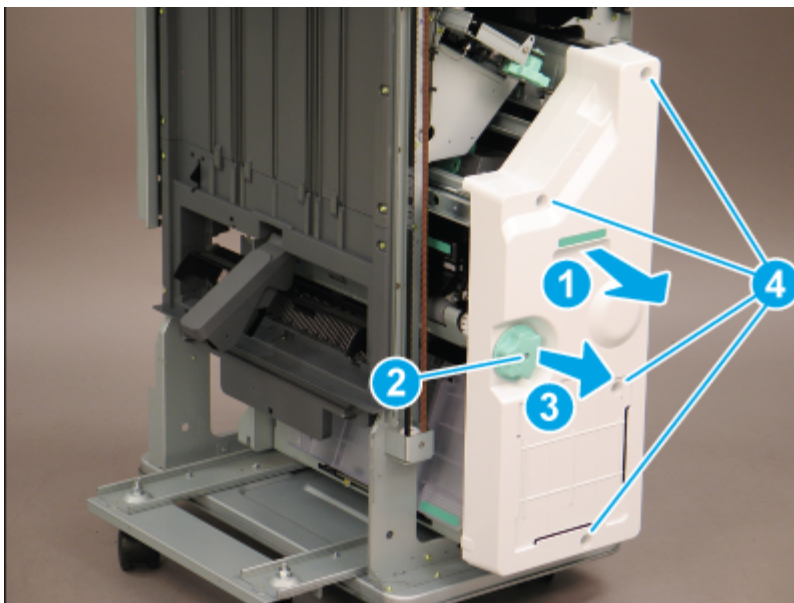


5 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).
 - b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
 - c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2421 Remove the cover



6 Remove the booklet finisher booklet staple cartridge

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet staple cartridge.

1. Open the front door, and then pull the booklet maker out.
2. Remove the booklet staple cartridge.


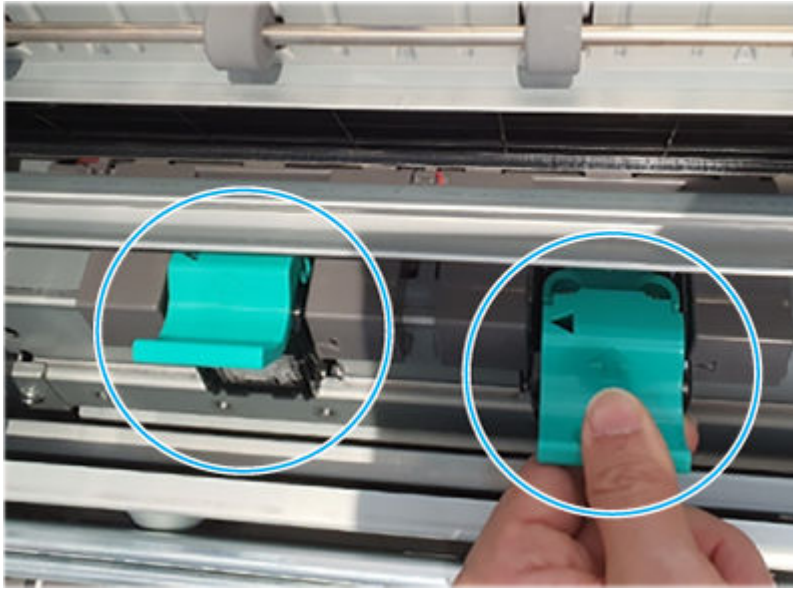
 **NOTE:** Repeat this step for the remaining cartridge.

Figure 6-2422 Remove the cartridge

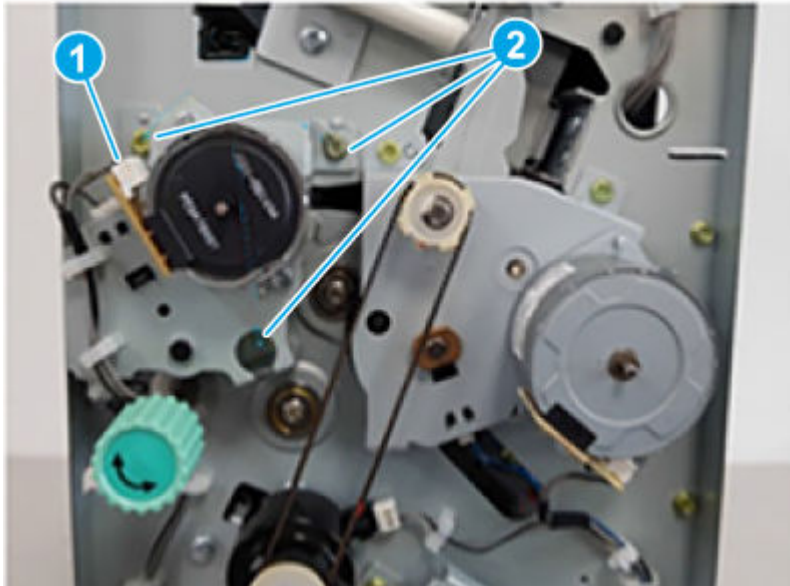


7 Remove the booklet finisher booklet diverter motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet diverter motor assembly.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then remove the booklet diverter motor assembly.

Figure 6-2423 Remove the assembly

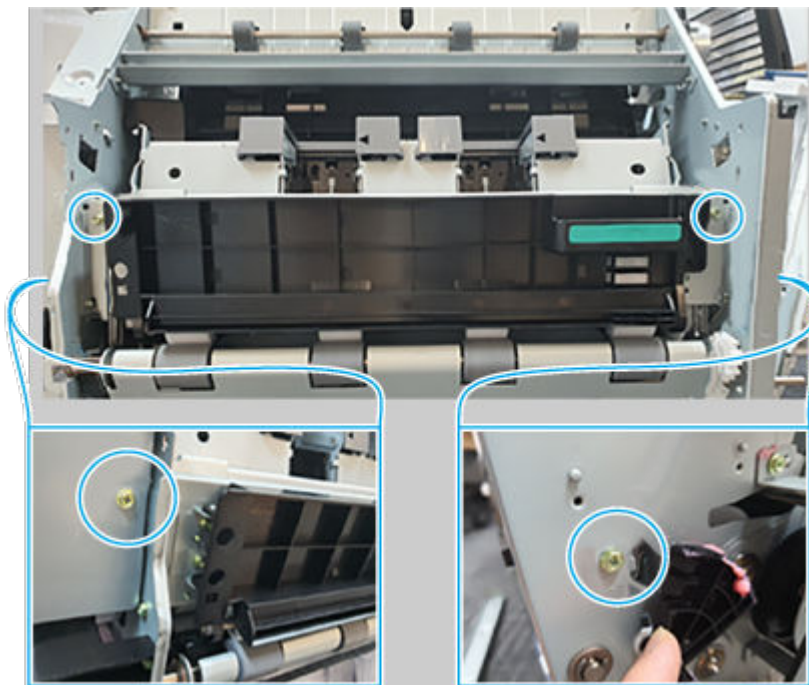


8 Remove the booklet finisher booklet c-fold blade assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher c-fold blade assembly.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the c-fold blade assembly.

Figure 6-2424 Remove the assembly



9 Remove the booklet finisher booklet tamper sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher tamper sensor.

1. Remove four screws and the sheet-metal plate.


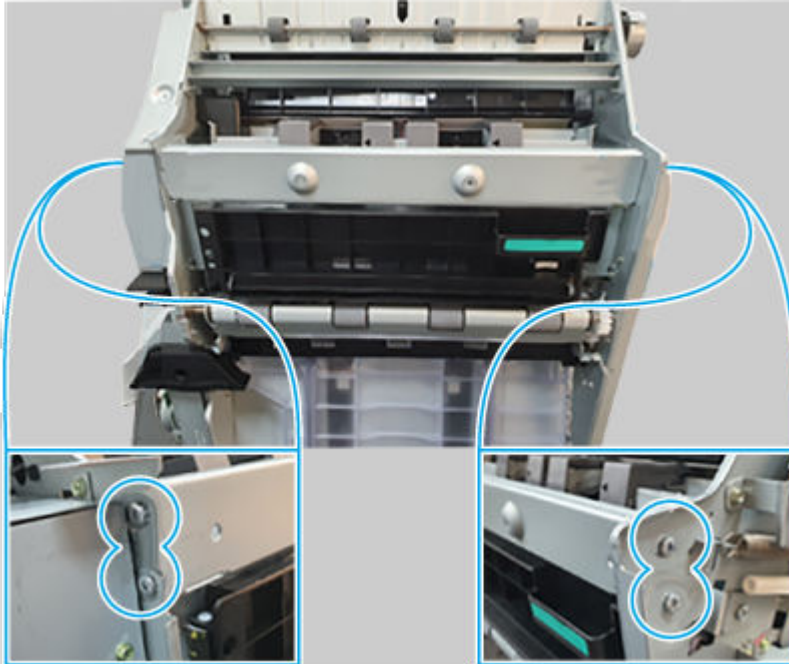
 **NOTE:** The c-fold blade assembly is shown installed in the figure below. However it was removed in the previous step.

Figure 6-2425 Remove four screws



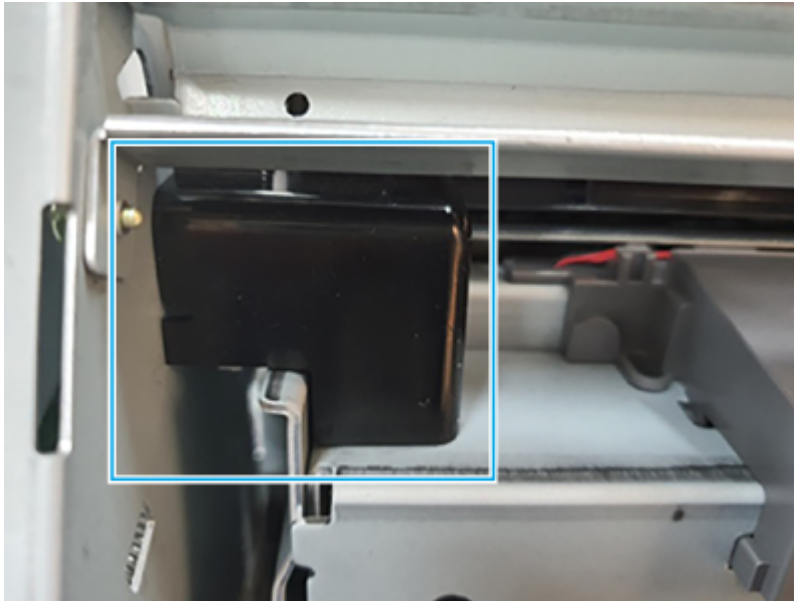
2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-2426 Remove one screw



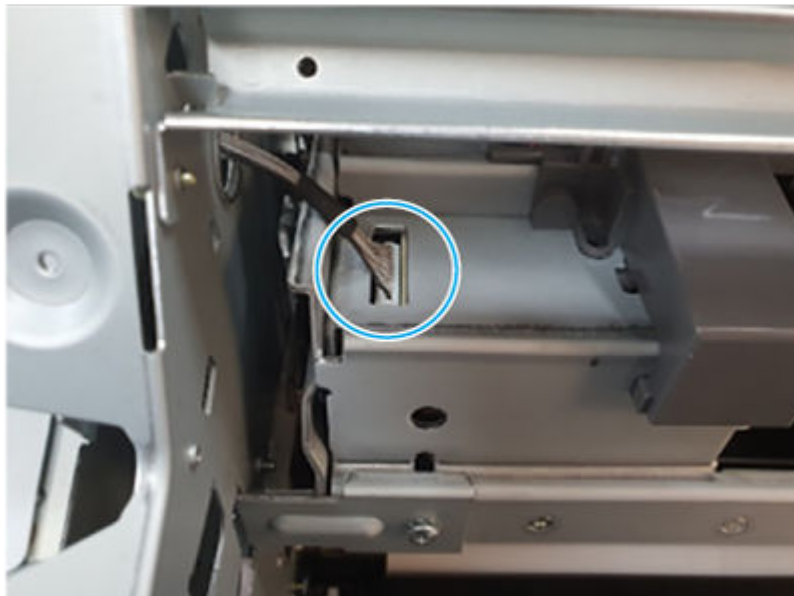
3. Remove the black-plastic cover.

Figure 6-2427 Remove the cover



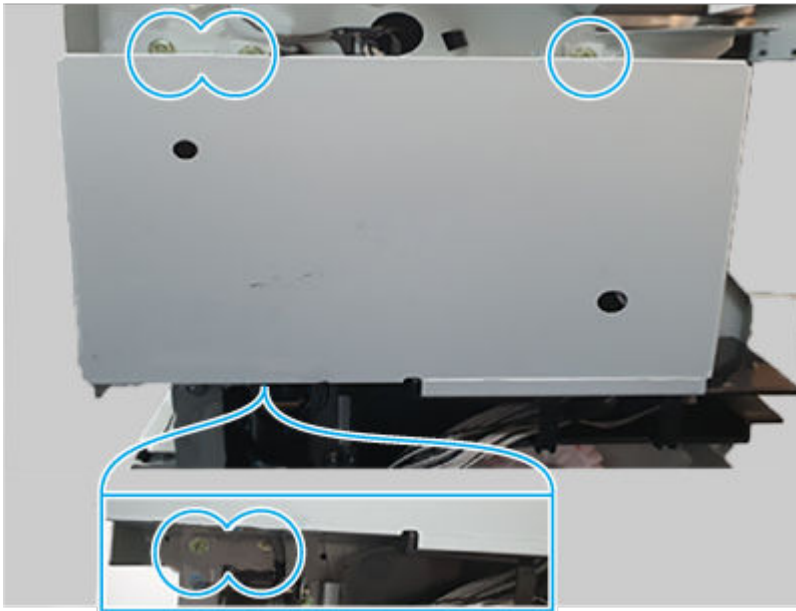
4. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2428 Disconnect one connector



5. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2429 Remove five screws



6. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2430 Disconnect one connector



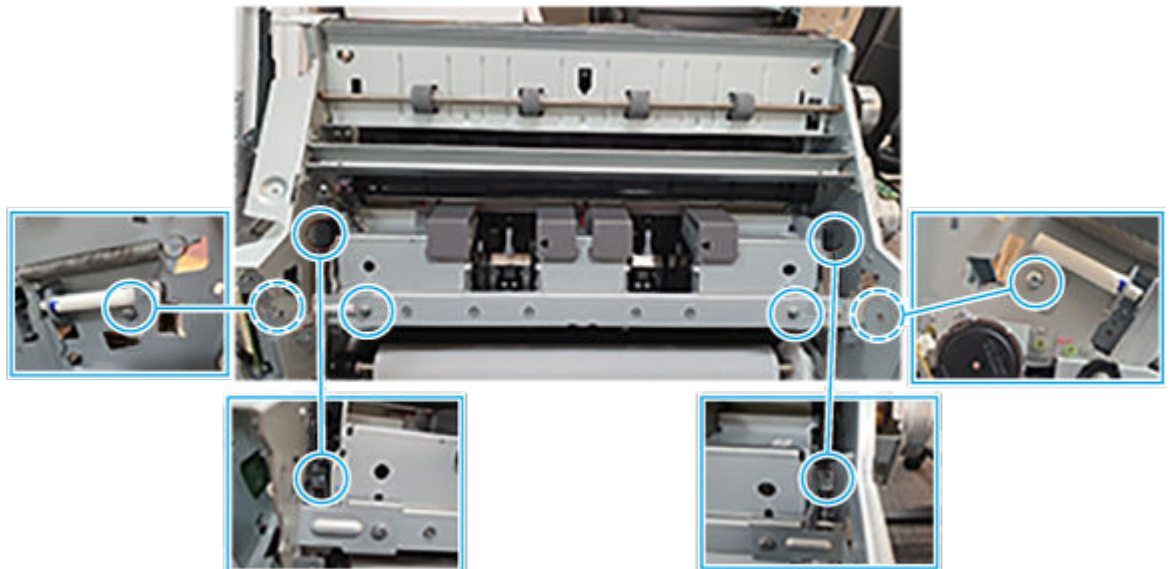
7. Disconnect two connectors.

Figure 6-2431 Disconnect two connectors



8. Remove six screws, and then remove the booklet stapler.

Figure 6-2432 Remove the stapler



10 **Unpack the replacement assembly**

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT:  Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


NOTE:  If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE:  When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

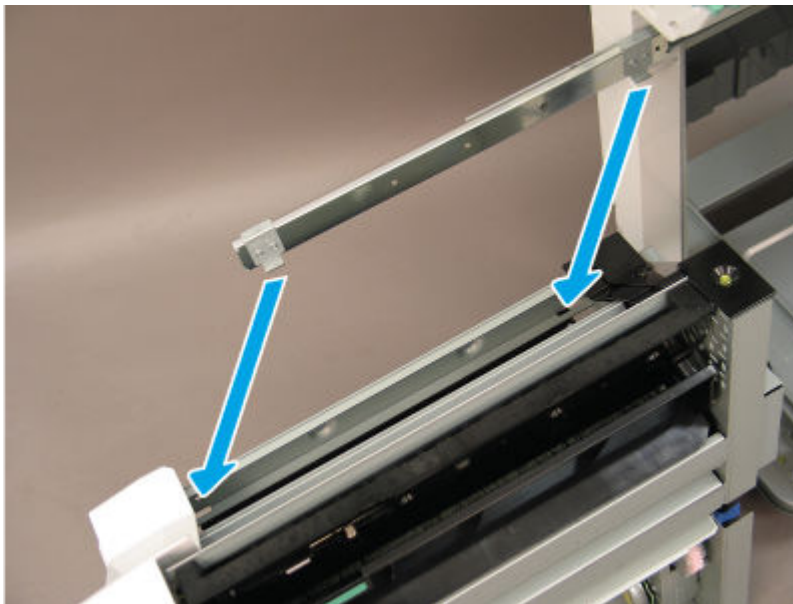
11 Special installation instructions: booklet finisher booklet maker

Use the following procedure to install the booklet finisher booklet maker.

NOTE:  Use the special installation instructions to correctly install the booklet maker.

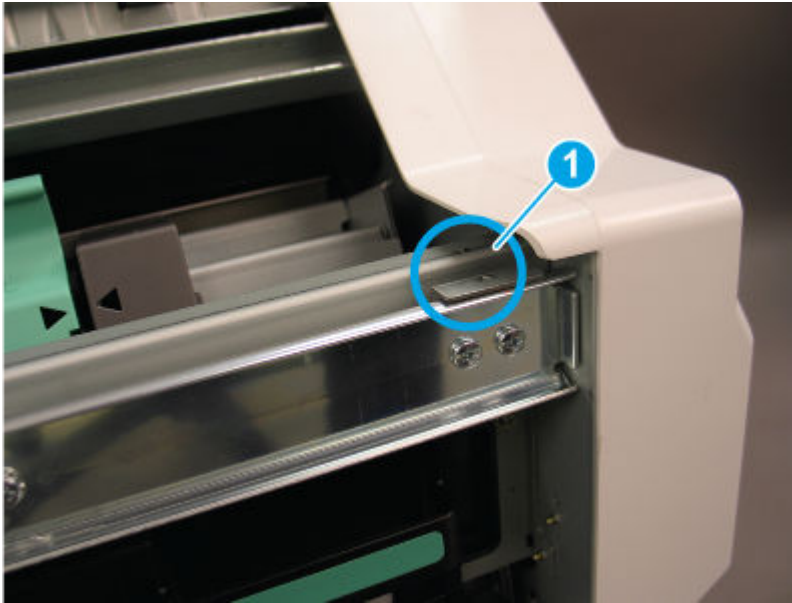
1. When installing the booklet finisher, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2433 Position the hooks on the rail



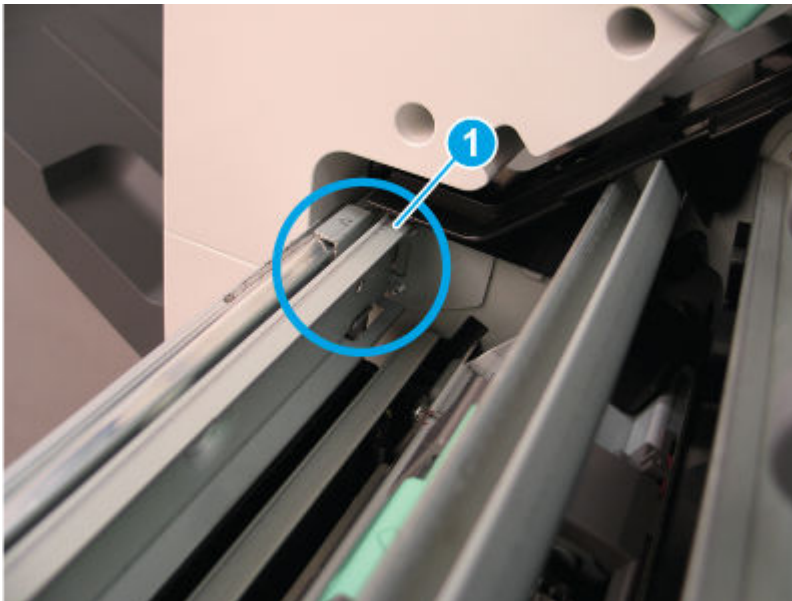
2. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2434 Check rail alignment (1 of 2)



3. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2435 Check rail alignment (2 of 2)

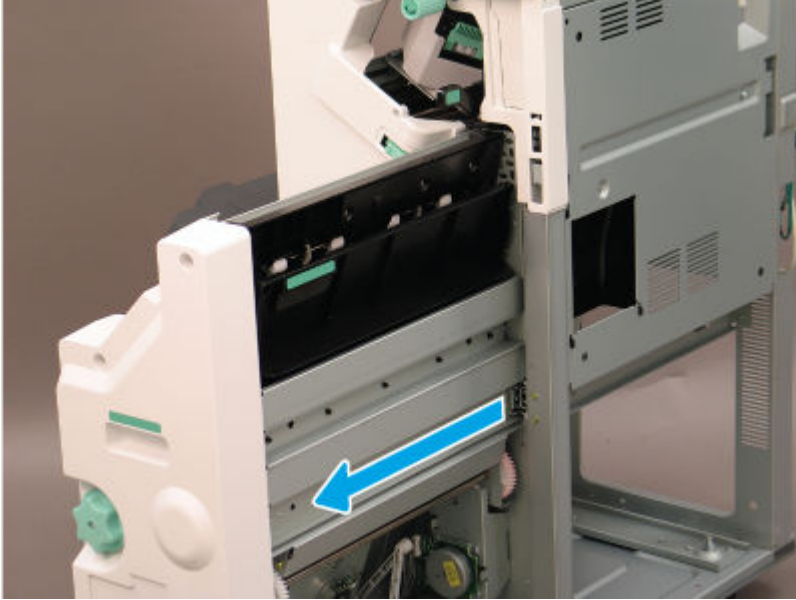


4. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet maker slot.



NOTE: Continue the installation by reversing the removal steps.

Figure 6-2436 Attach the rail



Removal and replacement: Booklet staple cartridge

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher staple cartridge.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-302 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC81-09881B	Booklet staple cartridge

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the booklet finisher booklet staple cartridge

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet staple cartridge.

1. Open the front door, and then pull the booklet maker out.
2. Remove the booklet staple cartridge.


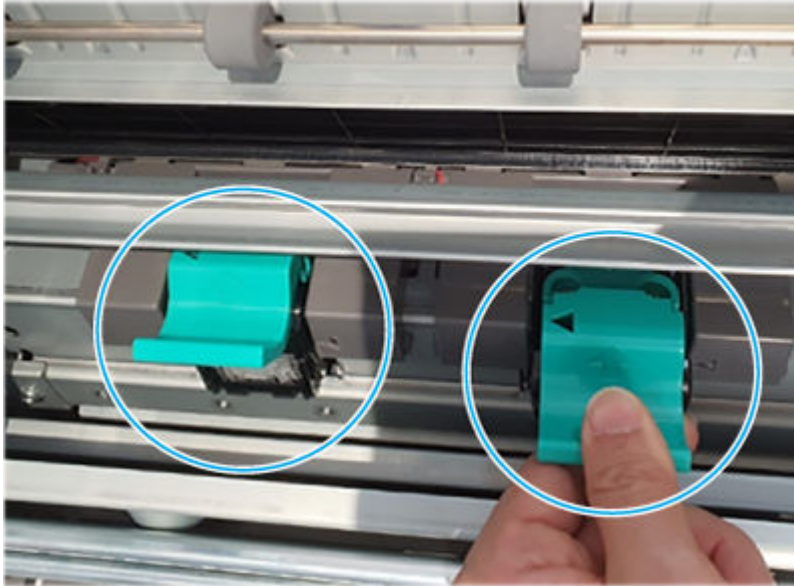
 **NOTE:** Repeat this step for the remaining cartridge.


Figure 6-2437 Remove the cartridge



2 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Booklet fold unit

Review the booklet finisher booklet fold unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Booklet c-fold blade assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher c-fold blade assembly.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-303 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01438A	Booklet c-fold blade assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

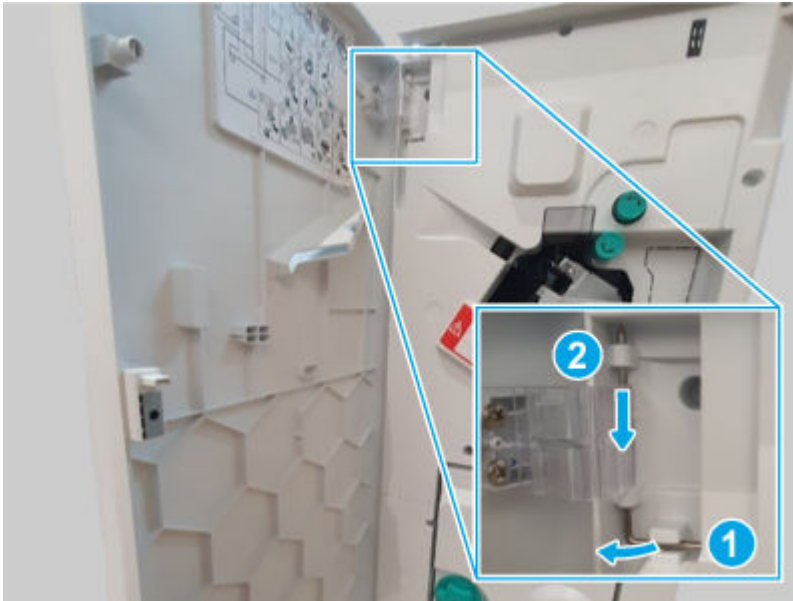
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

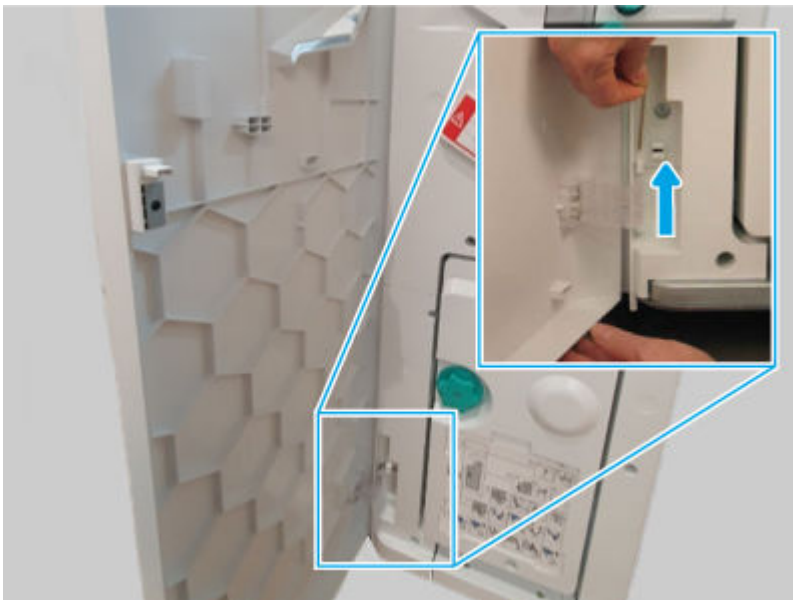
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2438 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2439 Remove the door

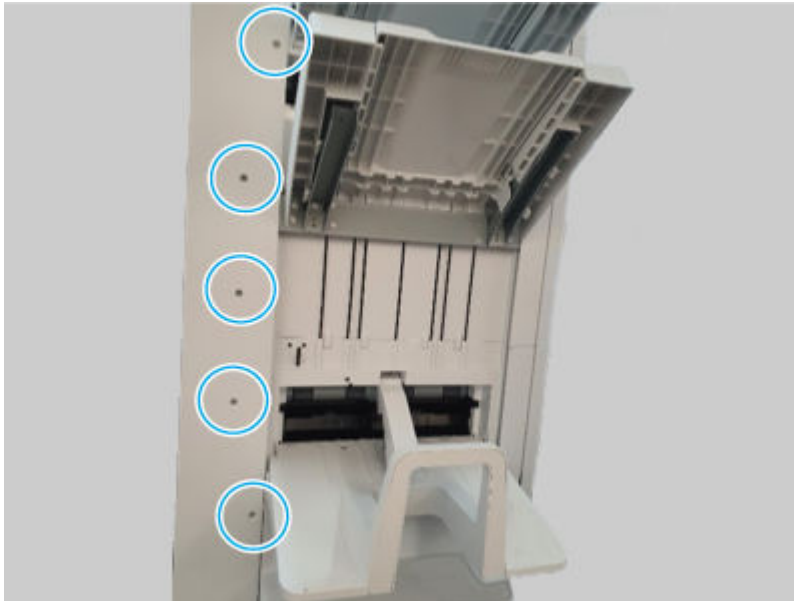


2 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2440 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


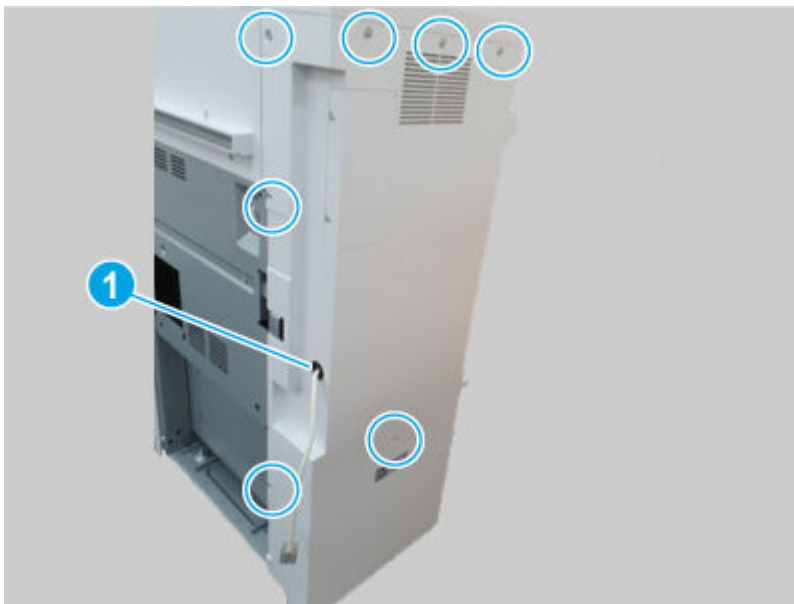
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2441 Remove the cover



3. **Remove the external finisher top cover**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

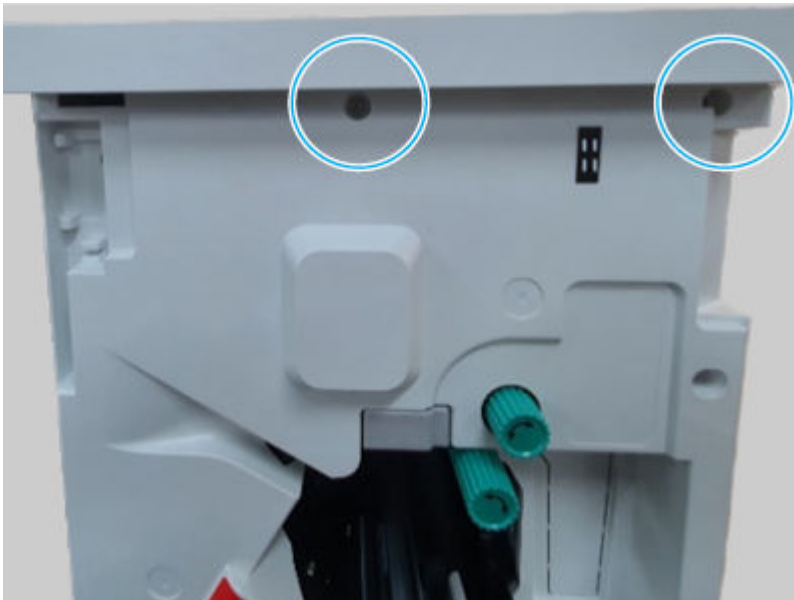
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2442 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2443 Remove the cover

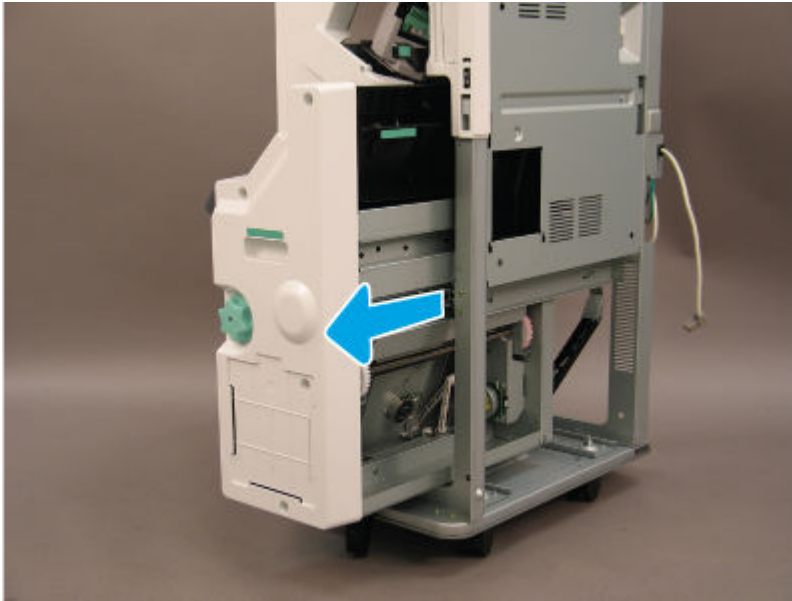


4 Remove the booklet finisher booklet maker

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet maker.

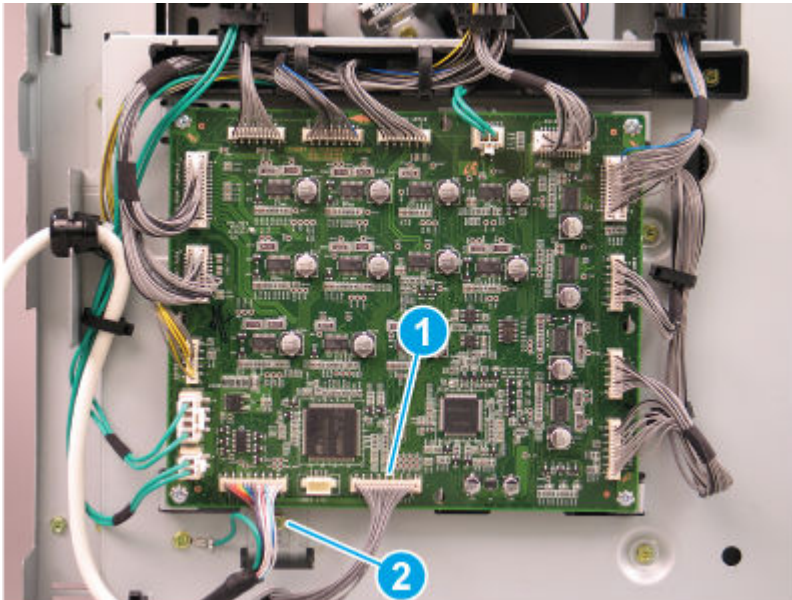
1. Slide the booklet maker out of the finisher.

Figure 6-2444 Slide the booklet maker out



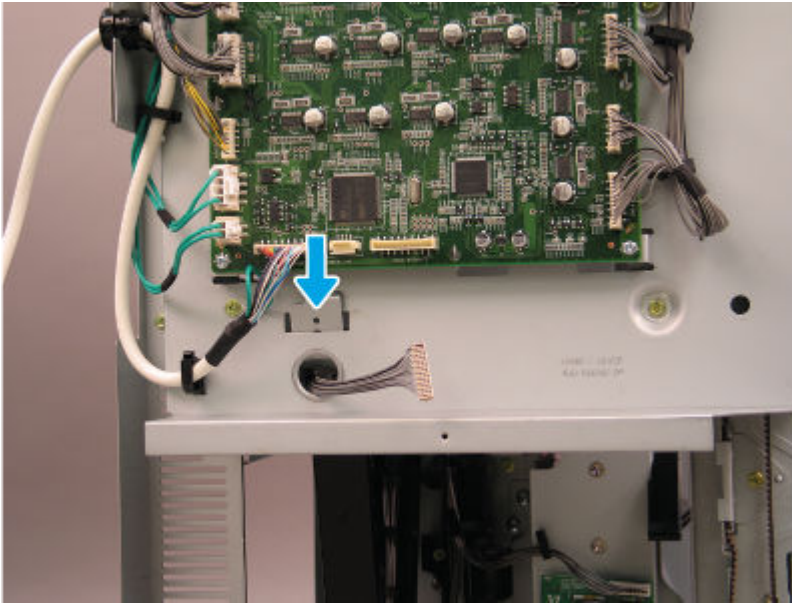
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 6-2445 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



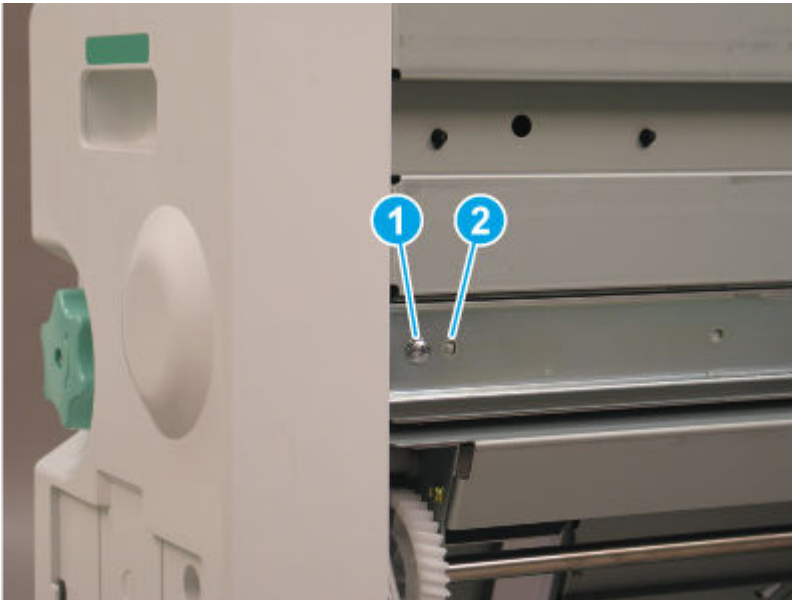
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet-metal.

Figure 6-2446 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



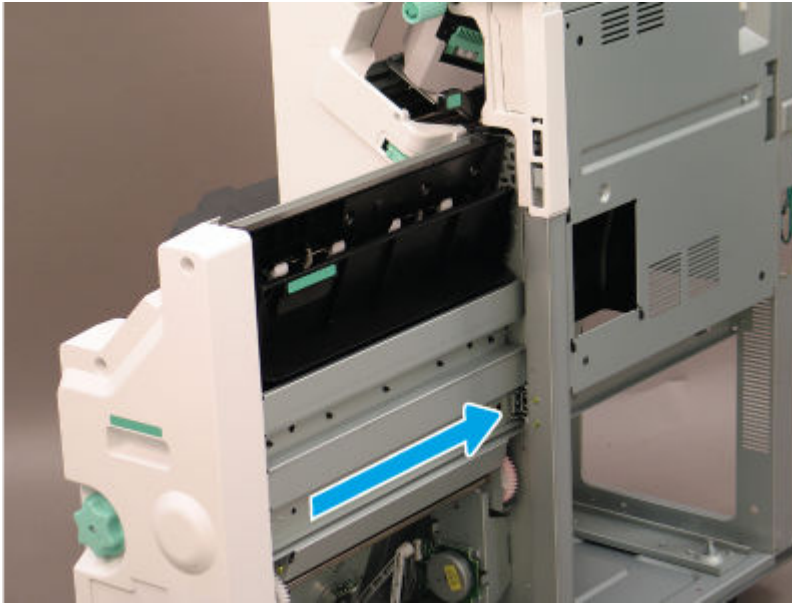
4. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2).

Figure 6-2447 Release the alignment pin



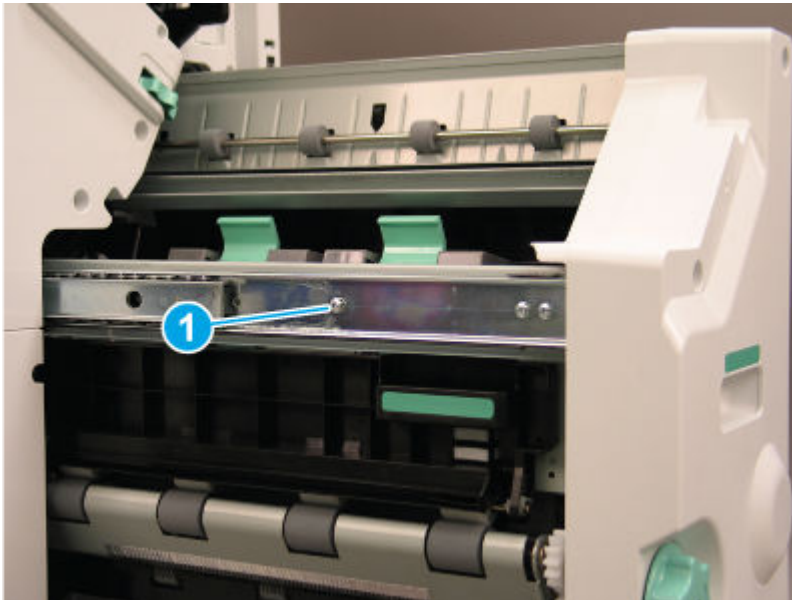
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 6-2448 Slide the rail in



6. Remove one screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2449 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet maker up on the left side while pulling the right rail away from the finisher chassis to clear the sheet-metal. Remove the booklet maker unit.


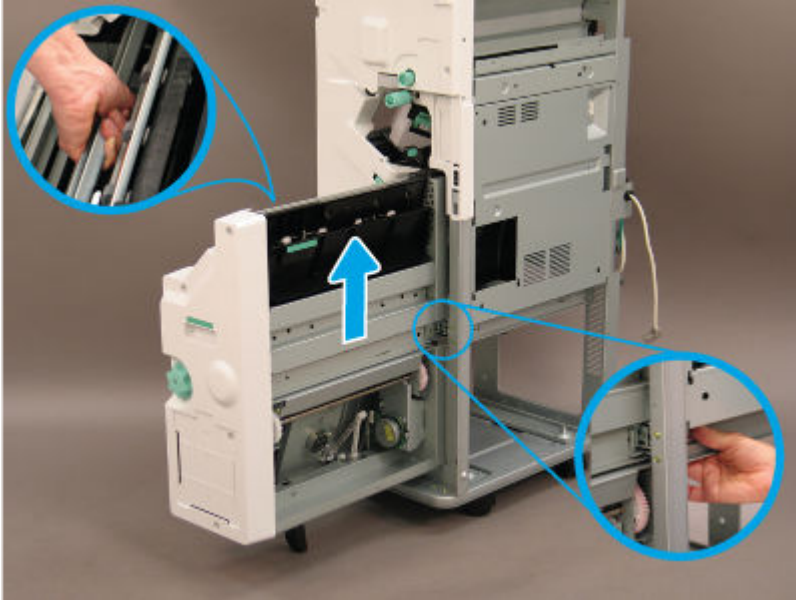
 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure to use the special installation instructions in this topic (located after the unpack and recycle step).

Figure 6-2450 Remove the booklet maker

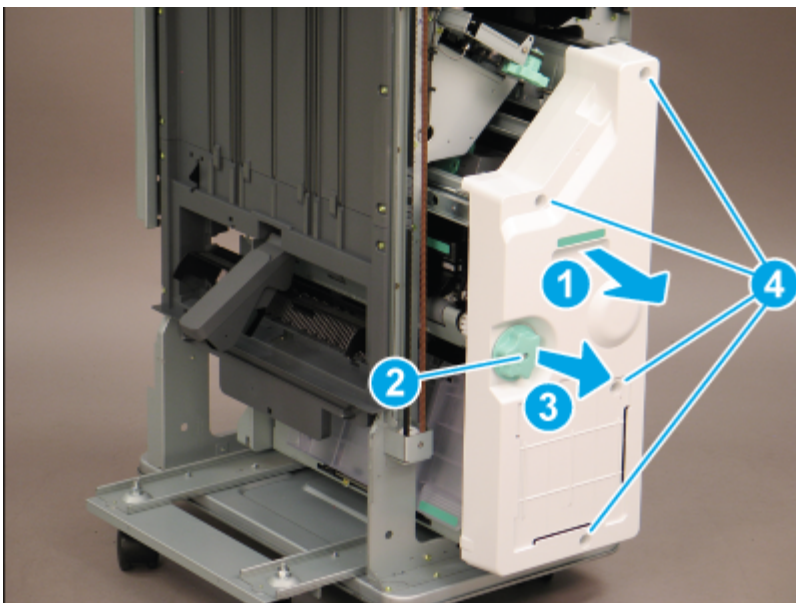


5 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).
 - b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
 - c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2451 Remove the cover

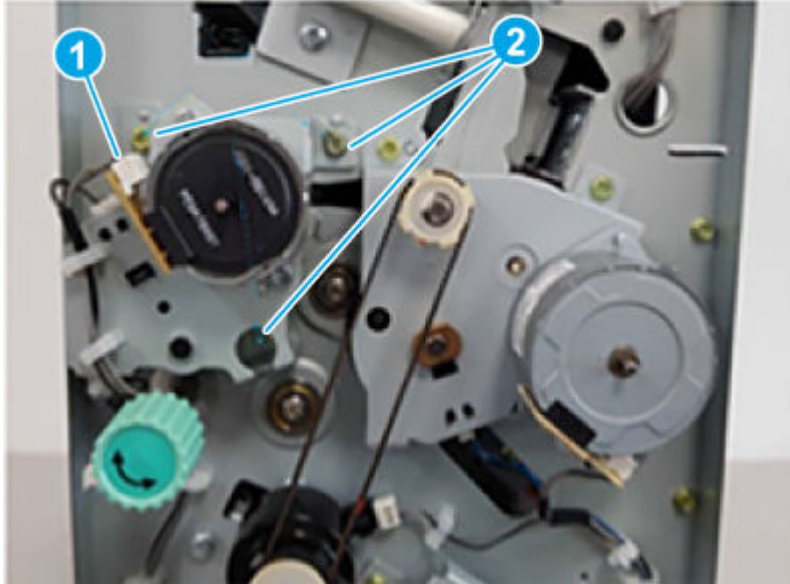


6 Remove the booklet finisher booklet diverter motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet diverter motor assembly.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then remove the booklet diverter motor assembly.

Figure 6-2452 Remove the assembly

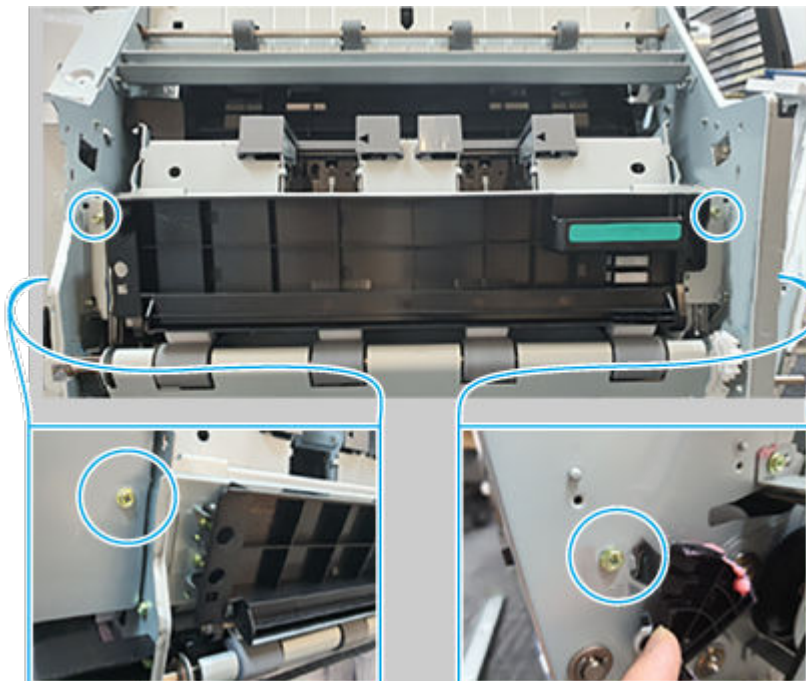


7 Remove the booklet finisher booklet c-fold blade assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher c-fold blade assembly.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the c-fold blade assembly.

Figure 6-2453 Remove the assembly



8 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

9 Special installation instructions: booklet finisher booklet maker

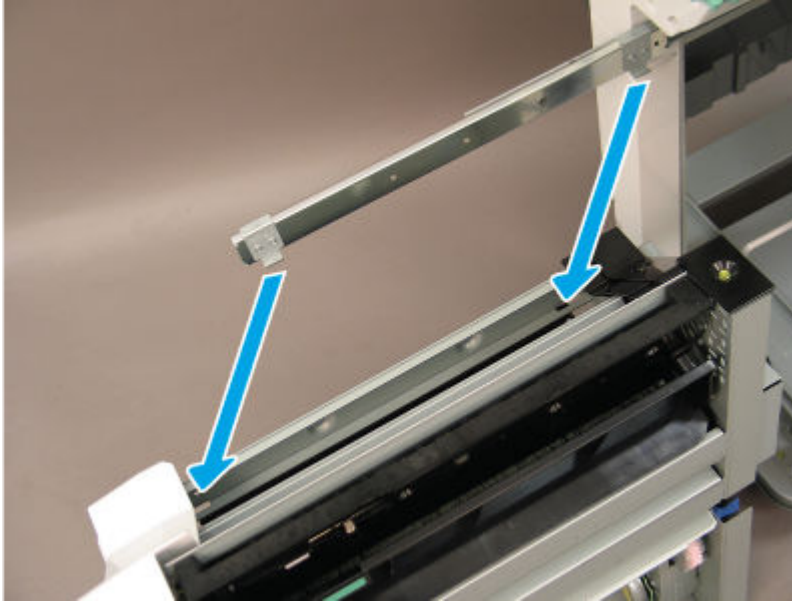
Use the following procedure to install the booklet finisher booklet maker.



NOTE: Use the special installation instructions to correctly install the booklet maker.

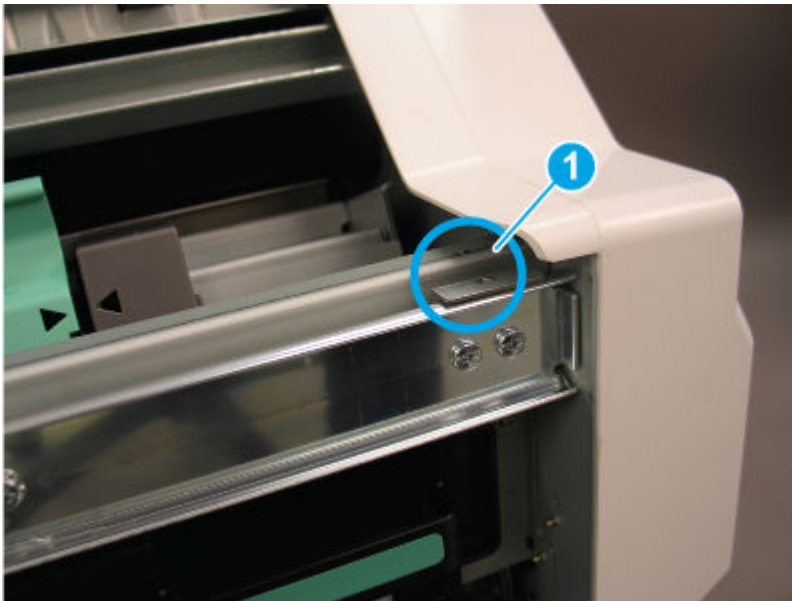
1. When installing the booklet finisher, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2454 Position the hooks on the rail



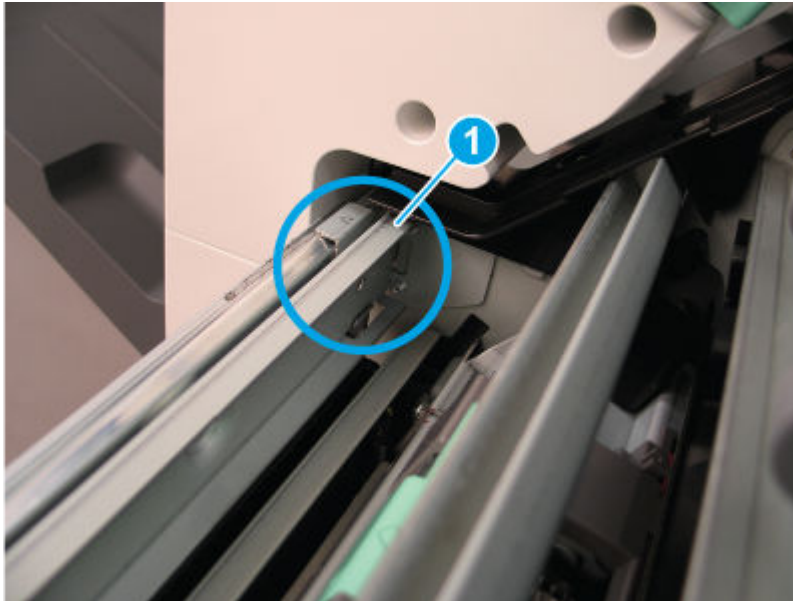
2. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2455 Check rail alignment (1 of 2)



3. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2456 Check rail alignment (2 of 2)



4. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet maker slot.



 **NOTE:** Continue the installation by reversing the removal steps.

Figure 6-2457 Attach the rail



Removal and replacement: Booklet c-fold blade home sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher c-fold blade home sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-304 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Booklet c-fold blade home sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

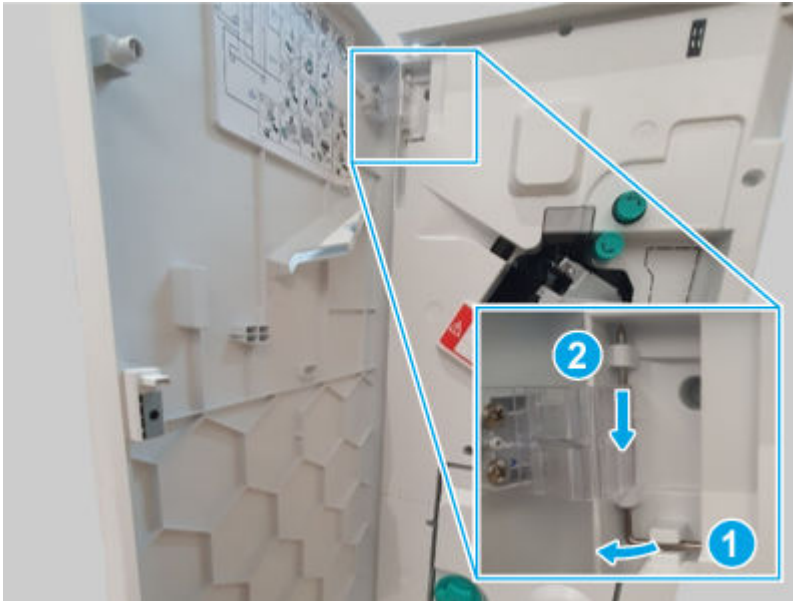
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

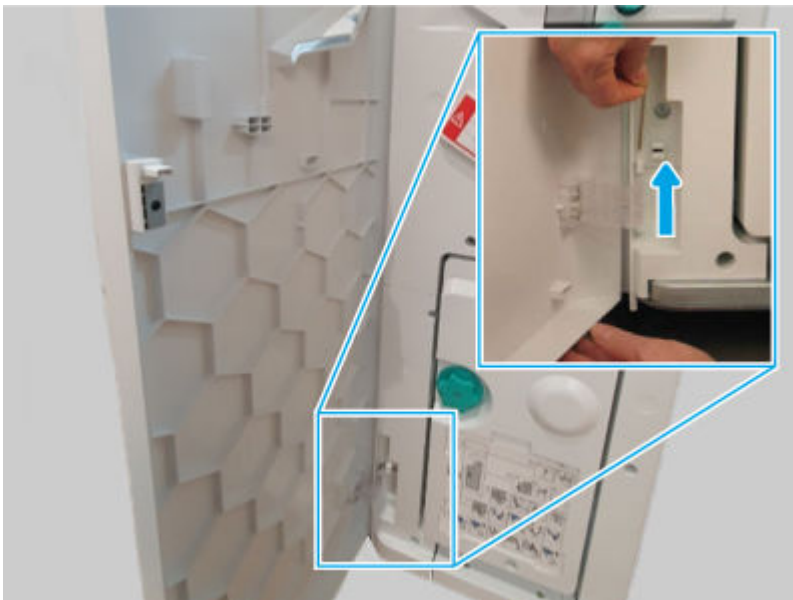
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2458 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2459 Remove the door



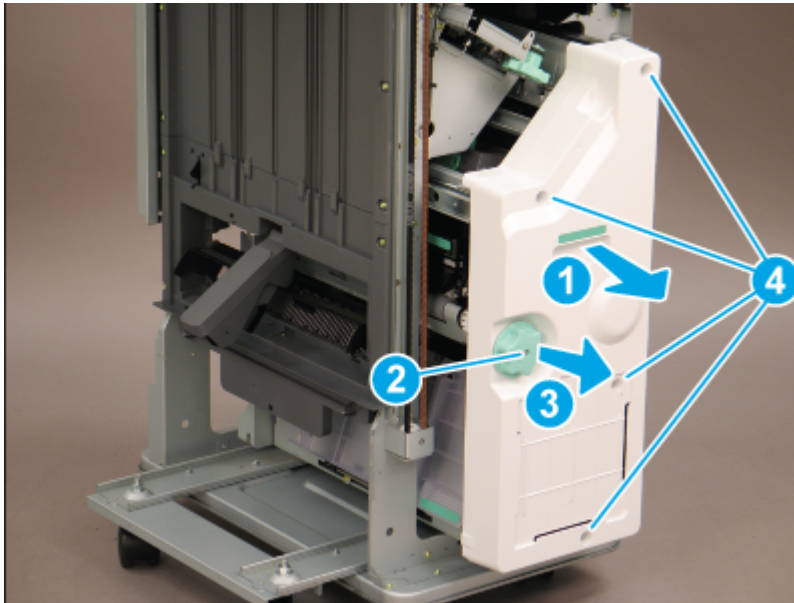
2 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).

- b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
- c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2460 Remove the cover

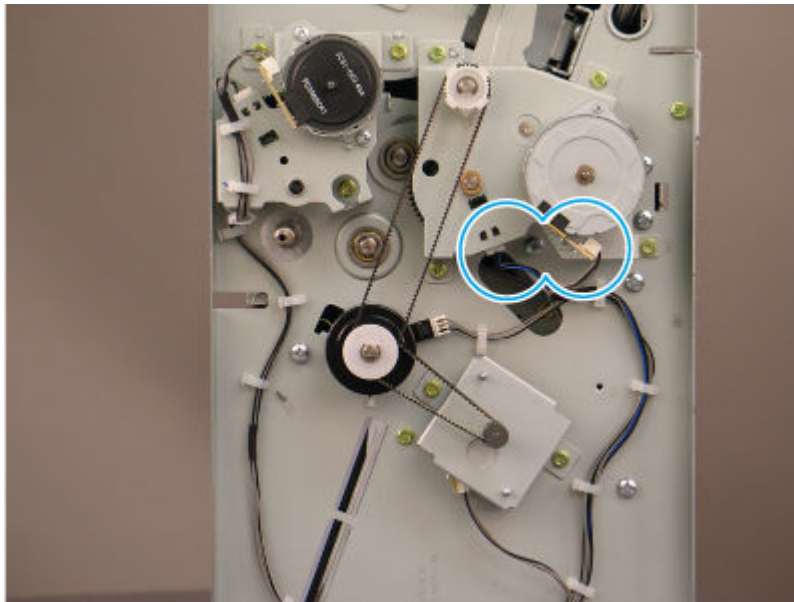


3 Remove the booklet finisher booklet c-fold blade motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher c-fold blade motor assembly.

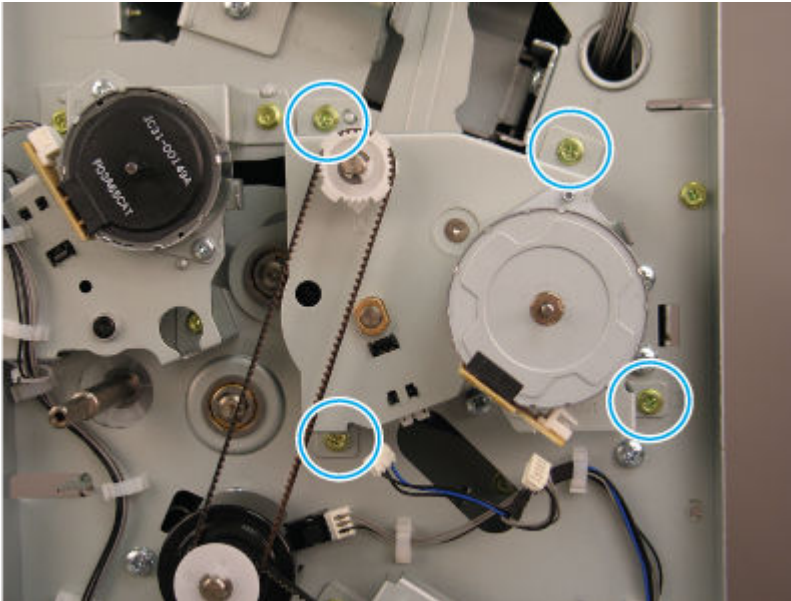
- 1. Disconnect two connectors.

Figure 6-2461 Disconnect two connectors



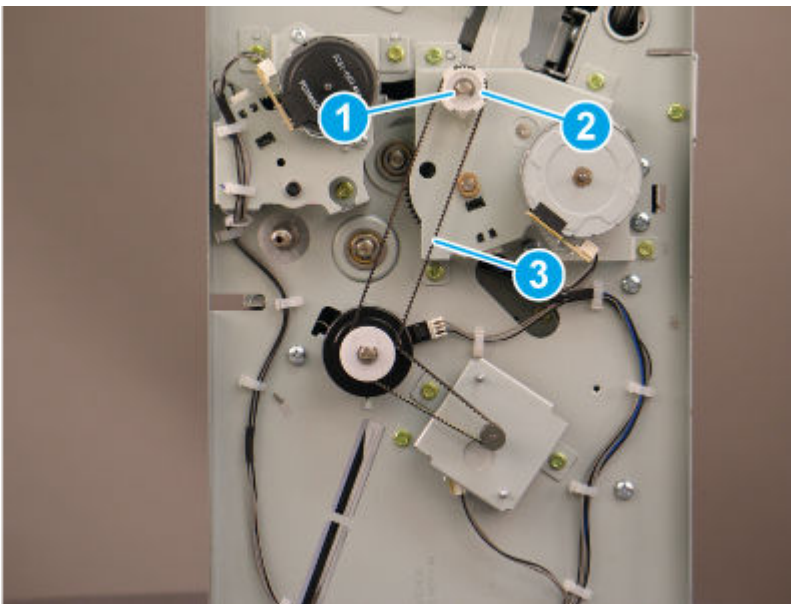
2. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-2462 Remove four screws



3. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring (callout 1), remove the gear (callout 2), and then release the belt (callout 3).

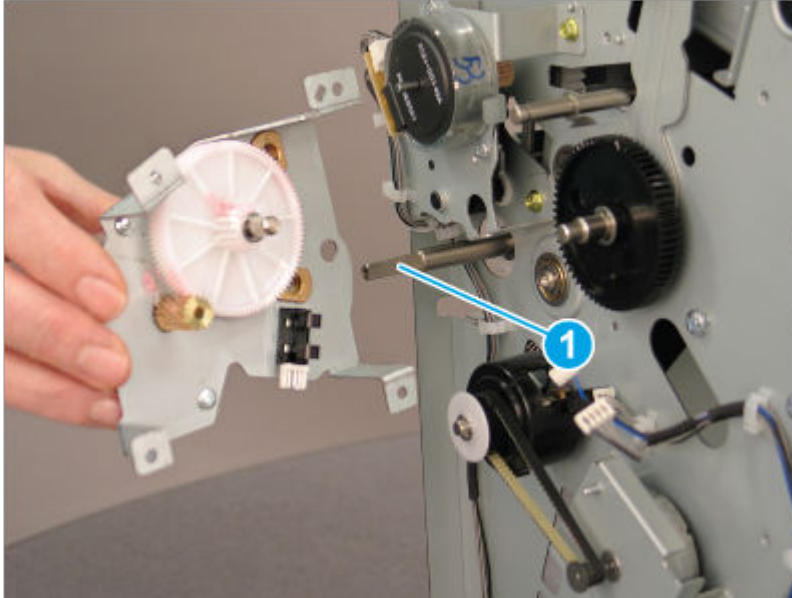
Figure 6-2463 Release the belt



4. Remove the booklet c-fold blade motor assembly.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not pull on the shaft (callout 1) while removing the bracket and motor. The shaft might become dislodged at the other end. If the shaft becomes dislodged, remove the booklet finisher PCA shield and PCA bracket to reinstall the shaft.

Figure 6-2464 Remove the assembly

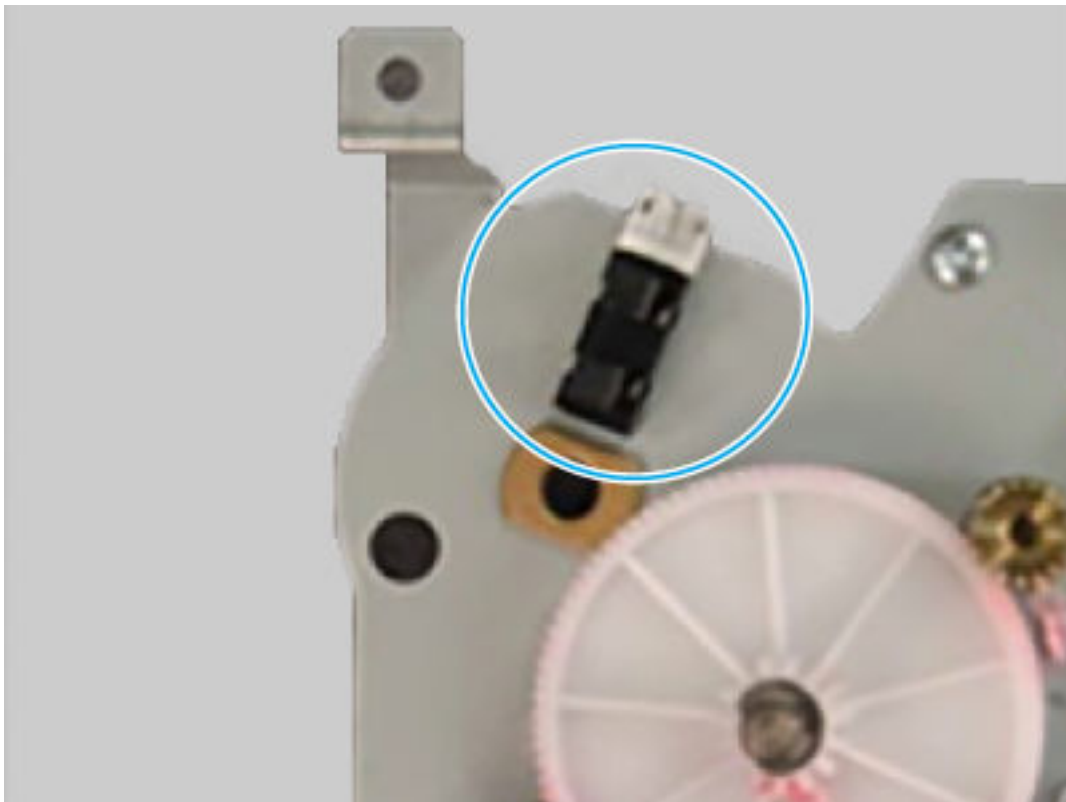


4 Remove the booklet finisher booklet c-fold blade home sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher c-fold blade home sensor.

- Disconnect one connector, and then remove the c-fold blade home sensor.

Figure 6-2465 Remove the sensor



5 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Booklet c-fold blade motor assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher c-fold blade motor assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-305 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01396A	Booklet c-fold blade motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

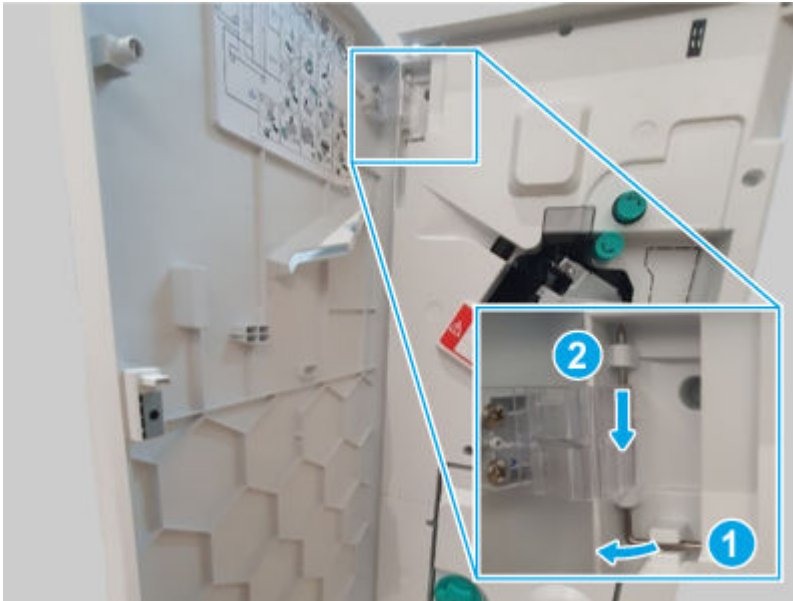
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

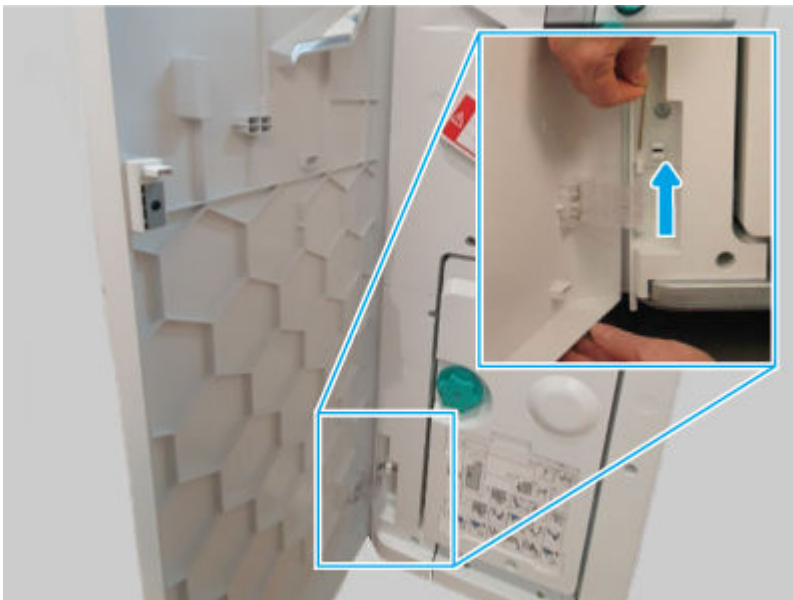
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2466 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2467 Remove the door



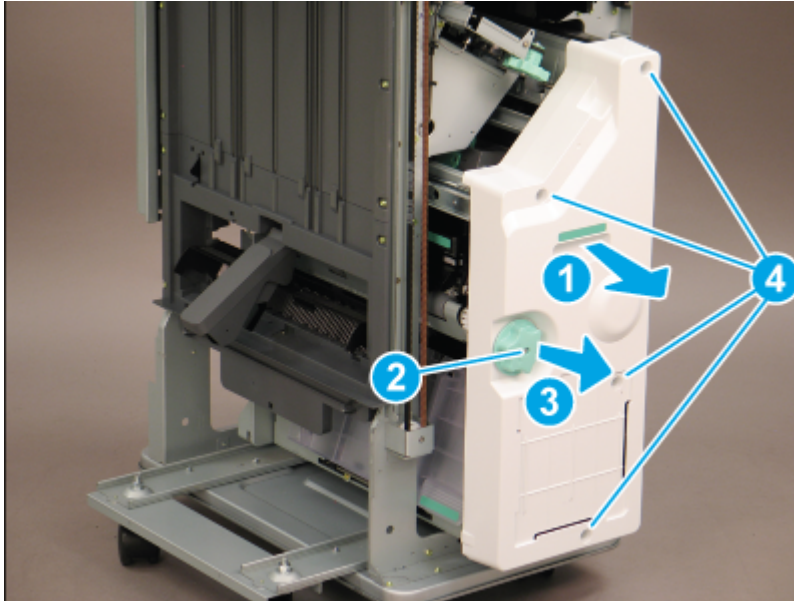
2 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).

- b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
- c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2468 Remove the cover

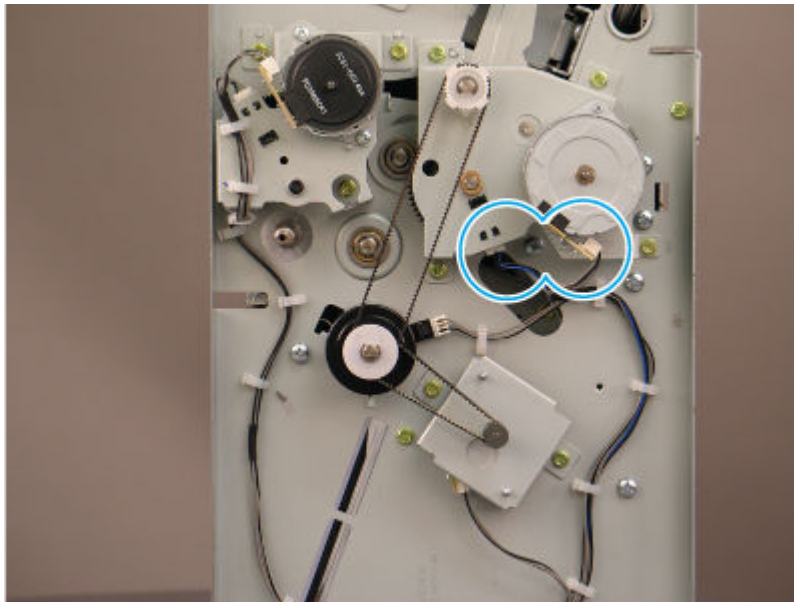


3 Remove the booklet finisher booklet c-fold blade motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher c-fold blade motor assembly.

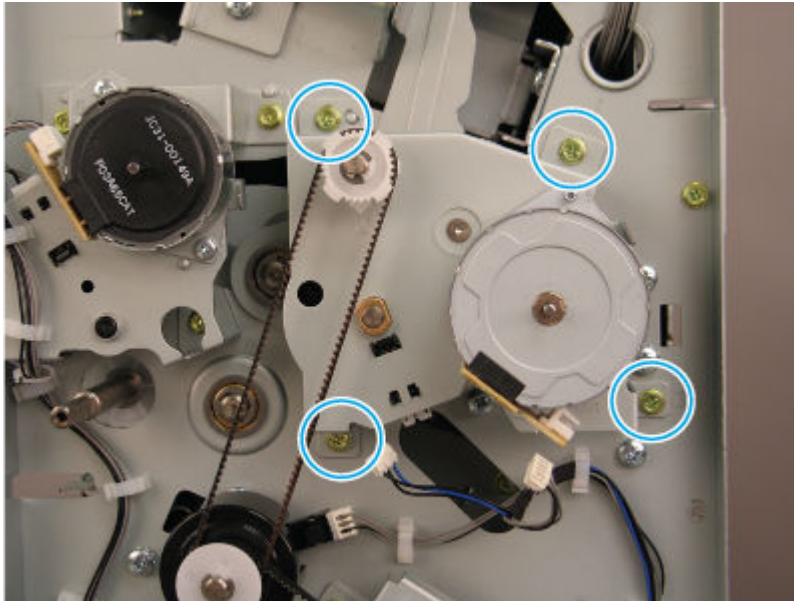
- 1. Disconnect two connectors.

Figure 6-2469 Disconnect two connectors



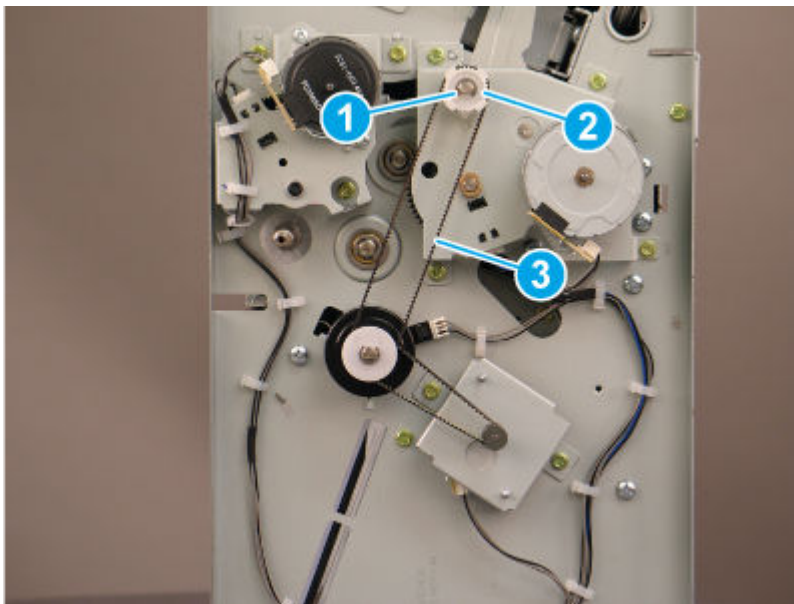
2. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-2470 Remove four screws



3. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring (callout 1), remove the gear (callout 2), and then release the belt (callout 3).

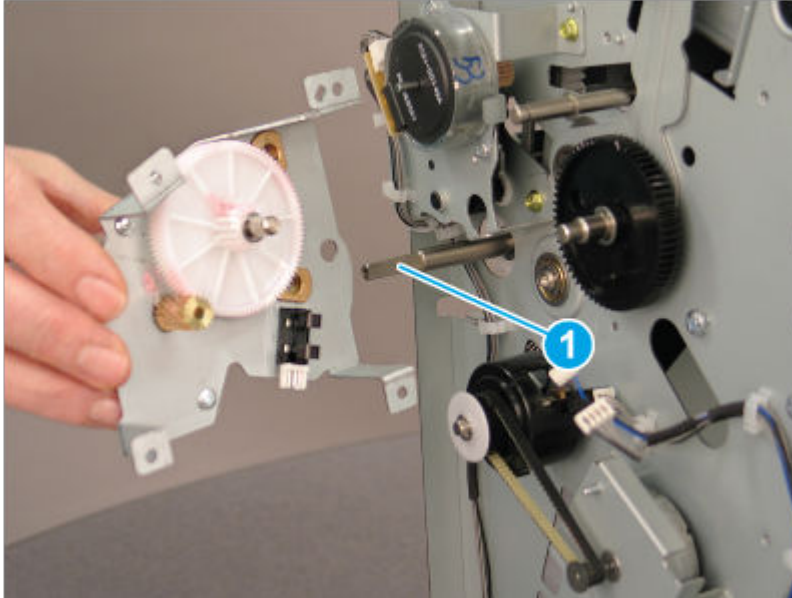
Figure 6-2471 Release the belt



4. Remove the booklet c-fold blade motor assembly.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not pull on the shaft (callout 1) while removing the bracket and motor. The shaft might become dislodged at the other end. If the shaft becomes dislodged, remove the booklet finisher PCA shield and PCA bracket to reinstall the shaft.


Figure 6-2472 Remove the assembly



4 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Booklet c-fold blade motor

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher c-fold blade motor.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-306 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01154A	Drive-motor step (Booklet c-fold blade motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

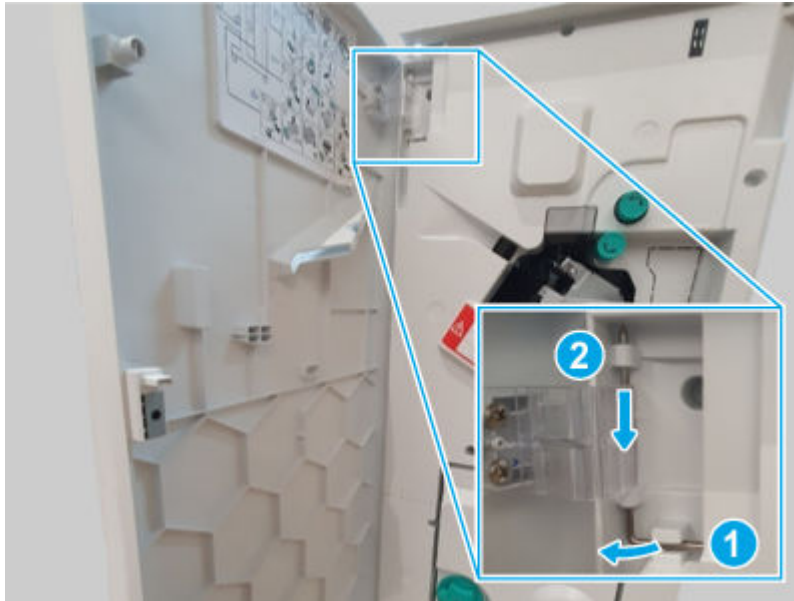
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

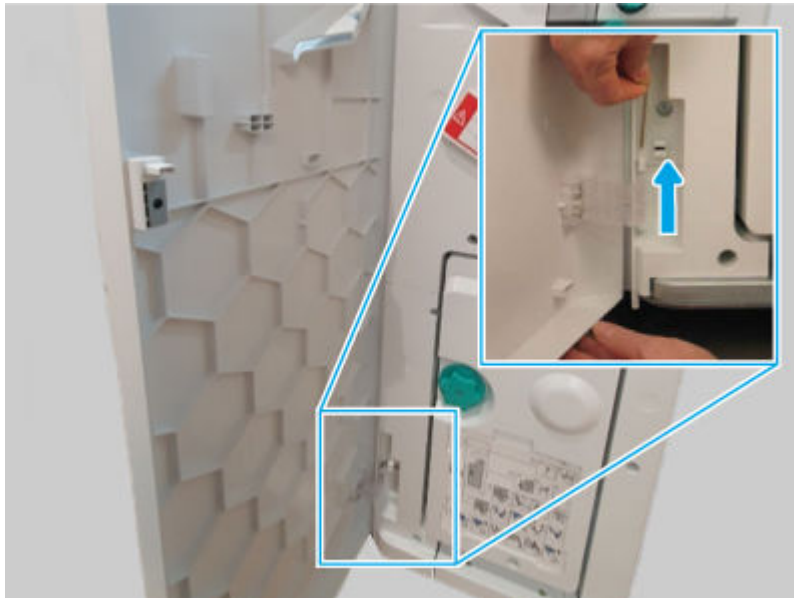
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2473 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2474 Remove the door



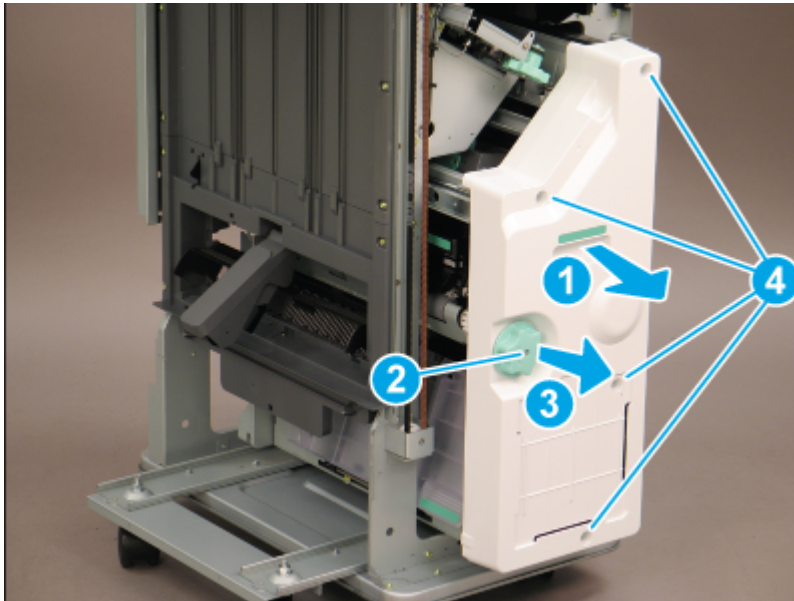
2 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).

- b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
- c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2475 Remove the cover

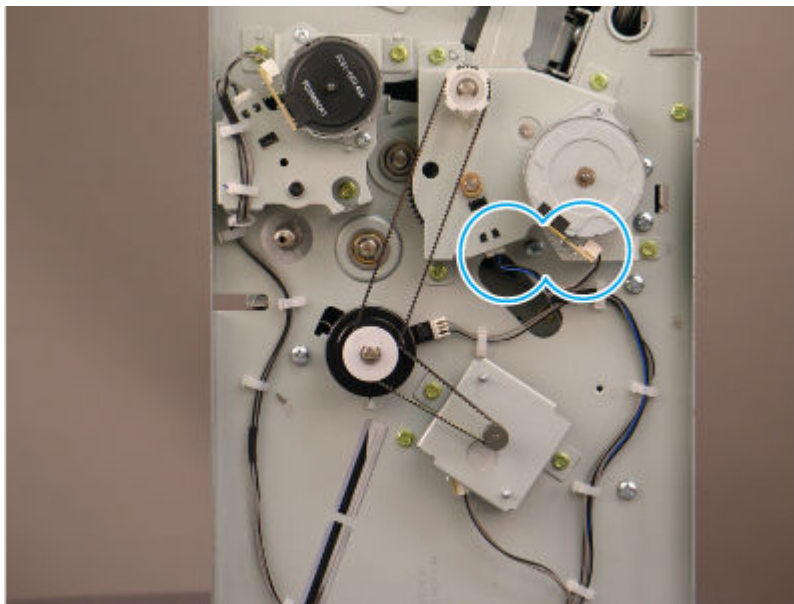


3 Remove the booklet finisher booklet c-fold blade motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher c-fold blade motor assembly.

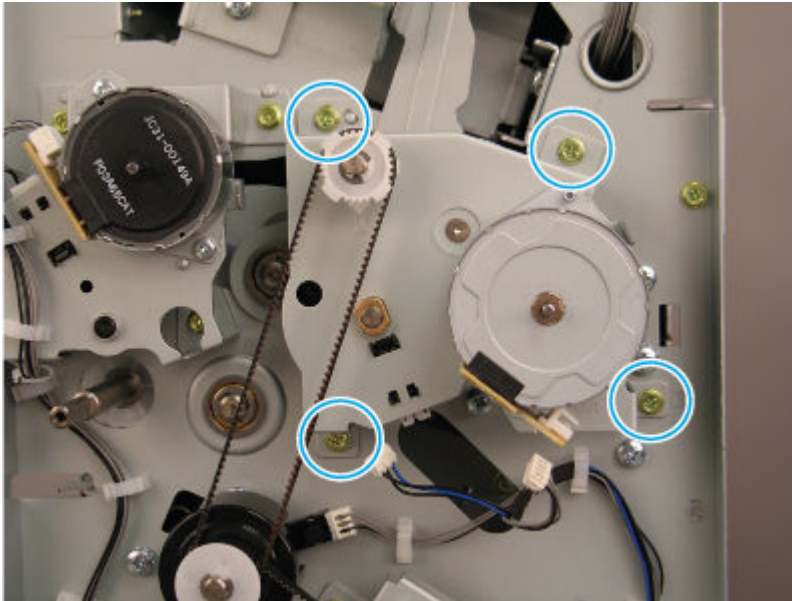
1. Disconnect two connectors.

Figure 6-2476 Disconnect two connectors



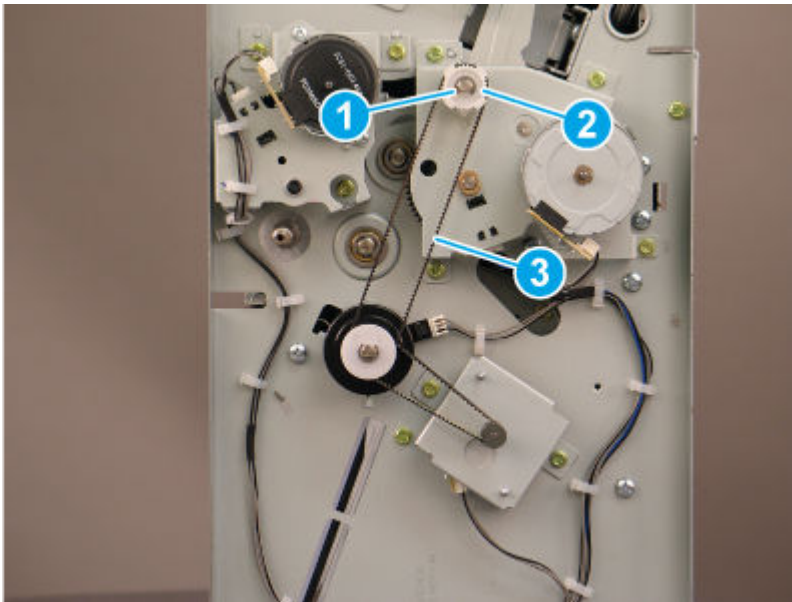
2. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-2477 Remove four screws



3. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring (callout 1), remove the gear (callout 2), and then release the belt (callout 3).

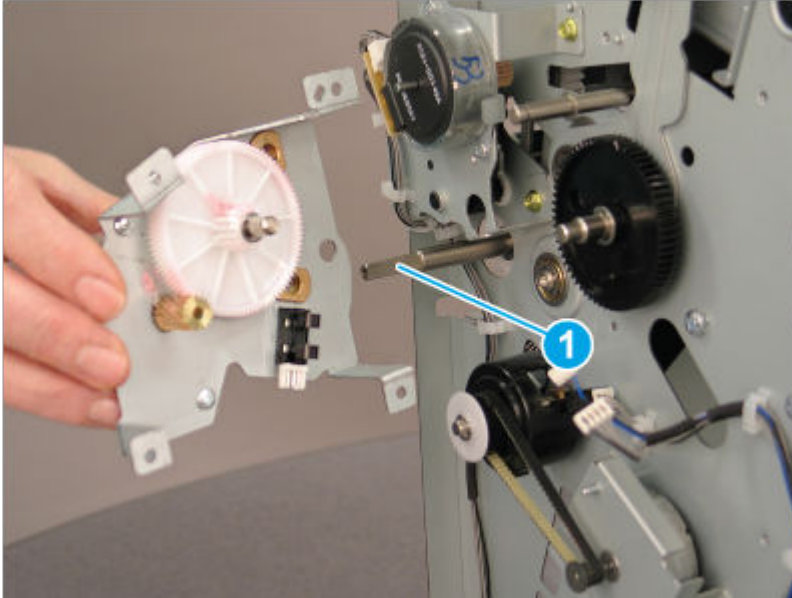
Figure 6-2478 Release the belt



4. Remove the booklet c-fold blade motor assembly.

CAUTION: Do not pull on the shaft (callout 1) while removing the bracket and motor. The shaft might become dislodged at the other end. If the shaft becomes dislodged, remove the booklet finisher PCA shield and PCA bracket to reinstall the shaft.

Figure 6-2479 Remove the assembly

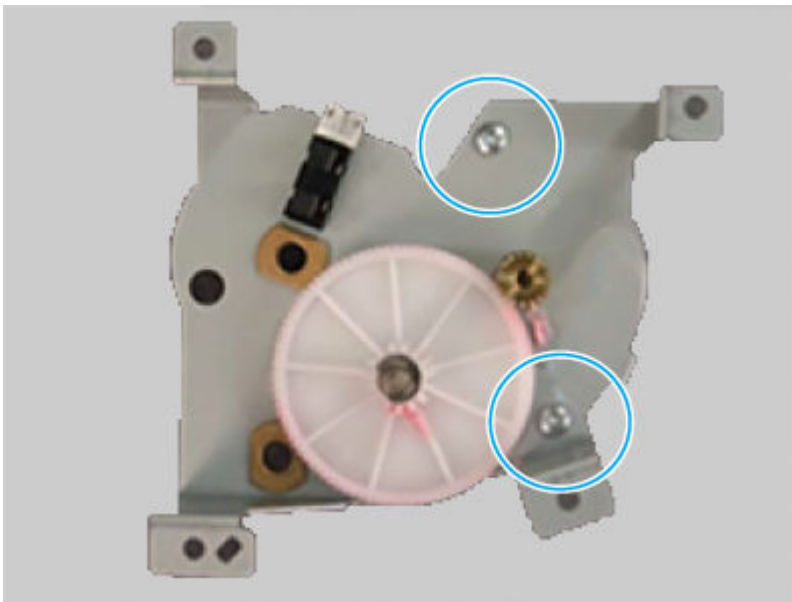


4 Remove the booklet finisher booklet c-fold blade motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher c-fold blade motor.

- Remove two screws, and then remove the booklet c-fold blade motor.


Figure 6-2480 Remove the motor





5 Unpack the replacement assembly


Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Booklet blade home sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher blade home sensor.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-307 Part Information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Booklet booklet blade home sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

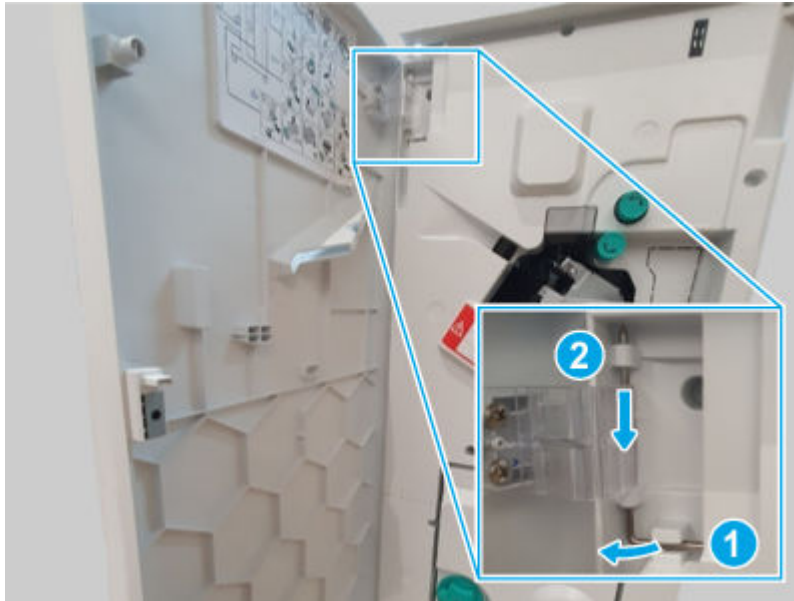
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

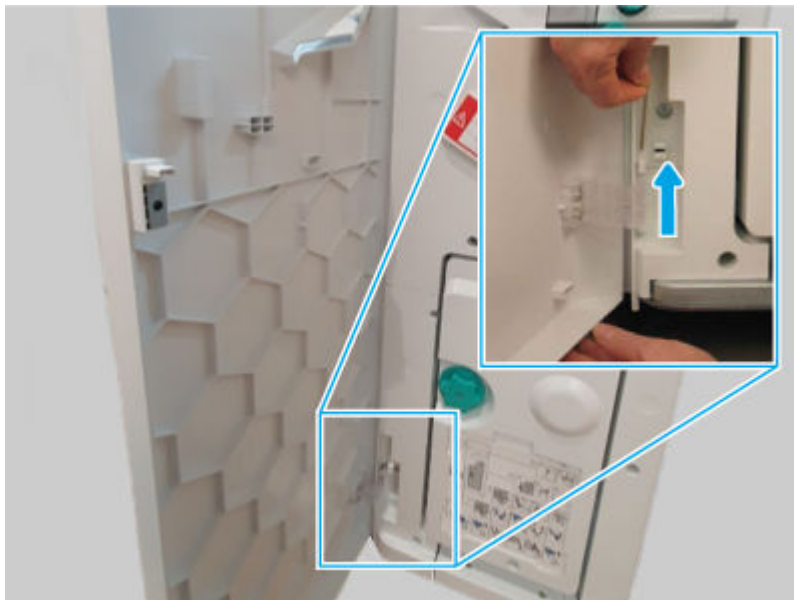
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2481 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2482 Remove the door

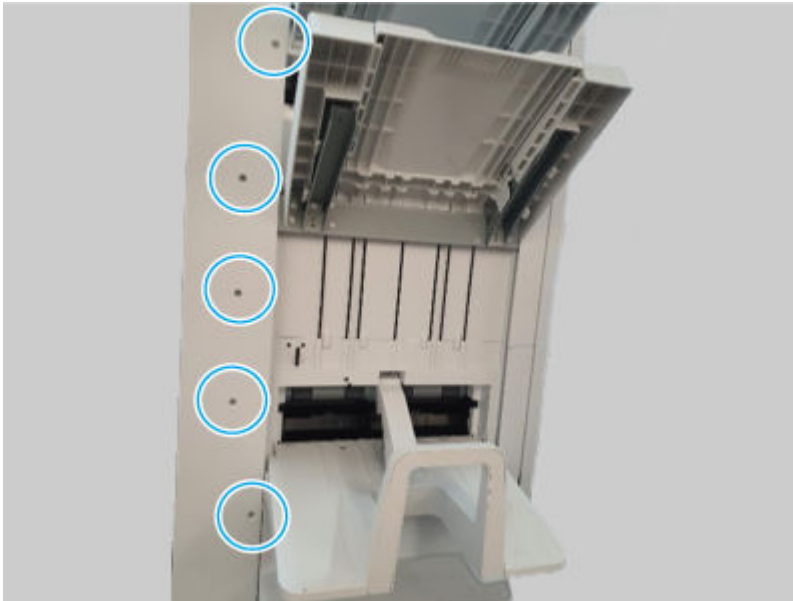


2 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2483 Remove five screws

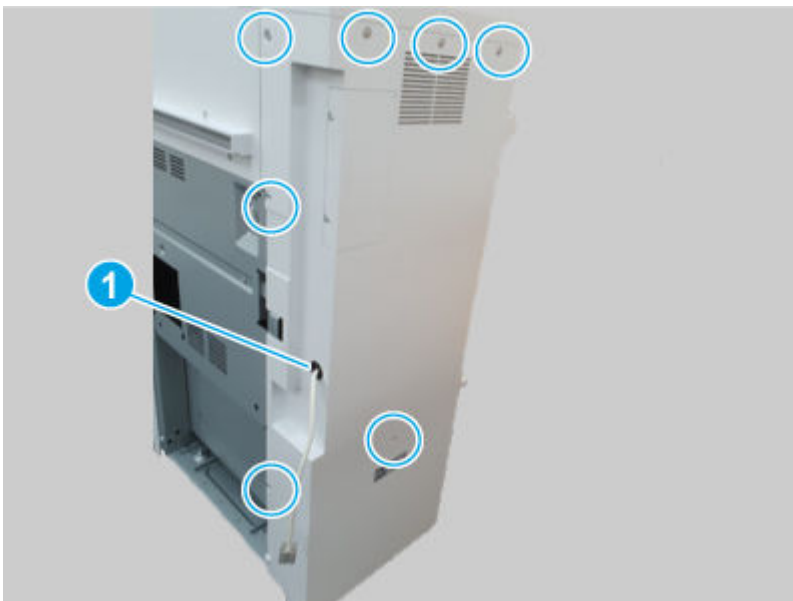


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2484 Remove the cover

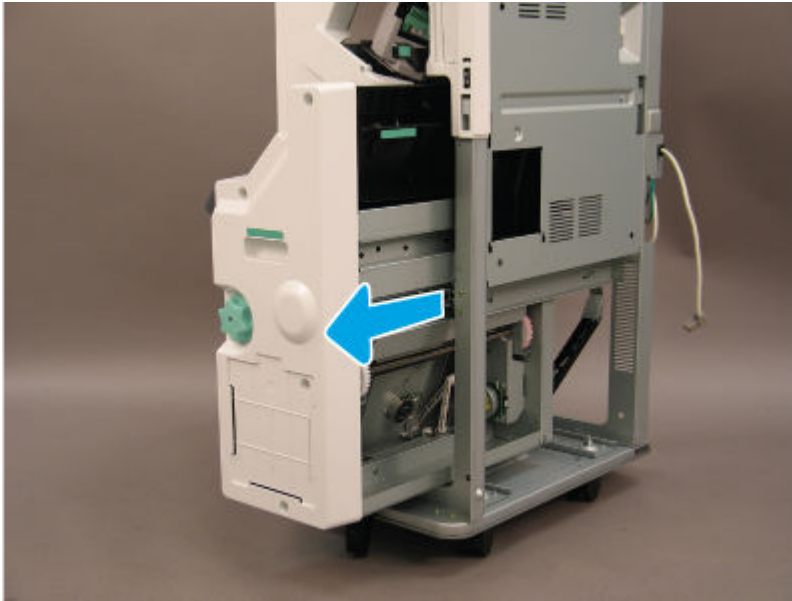


- 3 **Remove the booklet finisher booklet maker**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet maker.

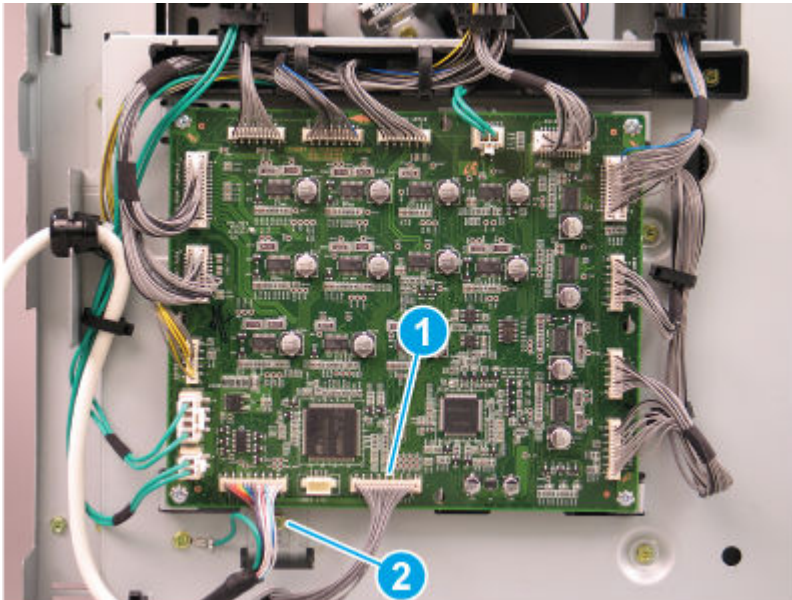
1. Slide the booklet maker out of the finisher.

Figure 6-2485 Slide the booklet maker out



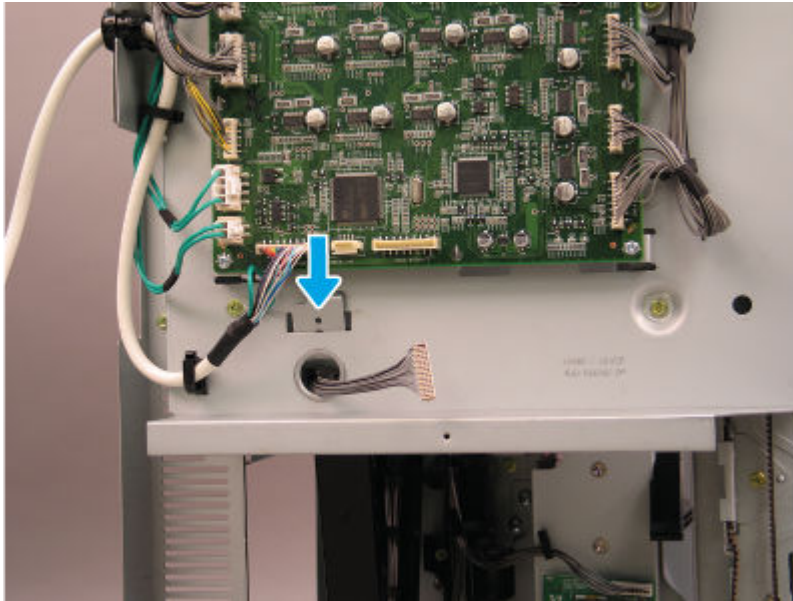
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 6-2486 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



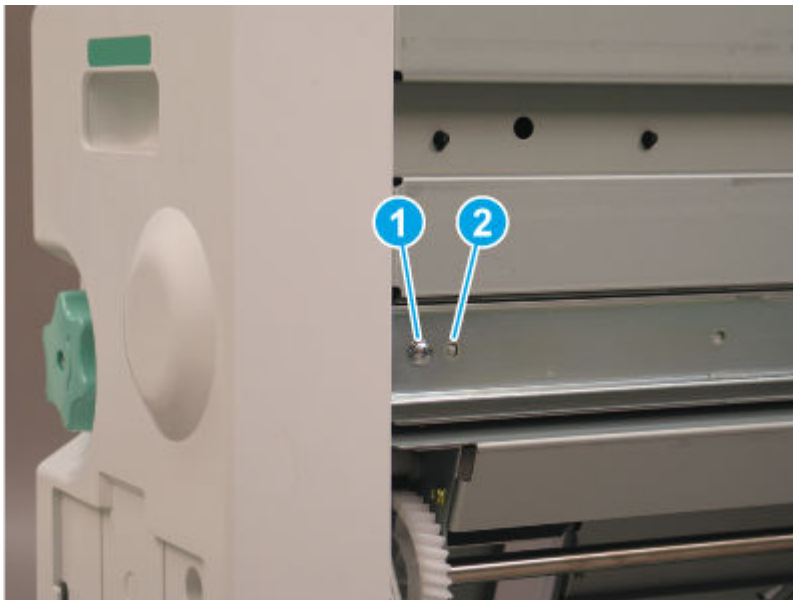
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet-metal.

Figure 6-2487 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



4. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2).

Figure 6-2488 Release the alignment pin



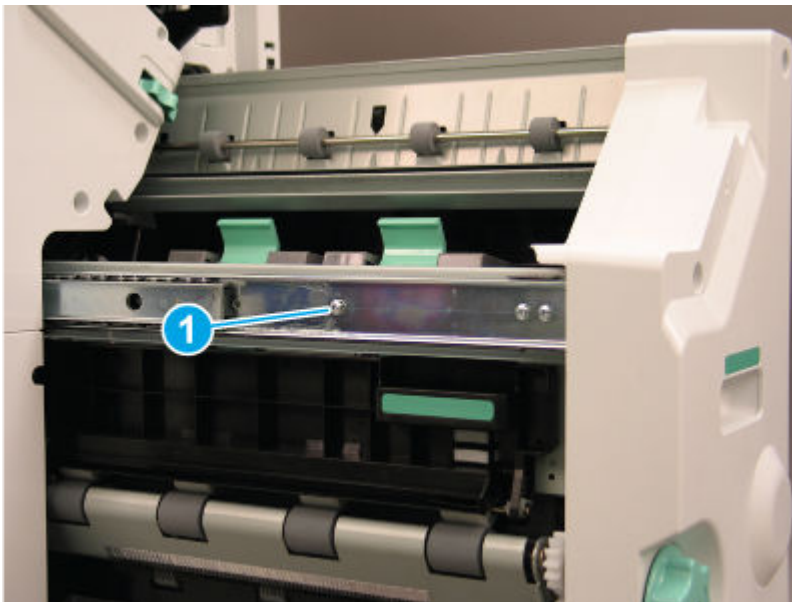
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 6-2489 Slide the rail in



6. Remove one screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2490 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet maker up on the left side while pulling the right rail away from the finisher chassis to clear the sheet-metal. Remove the booklet maker unit.


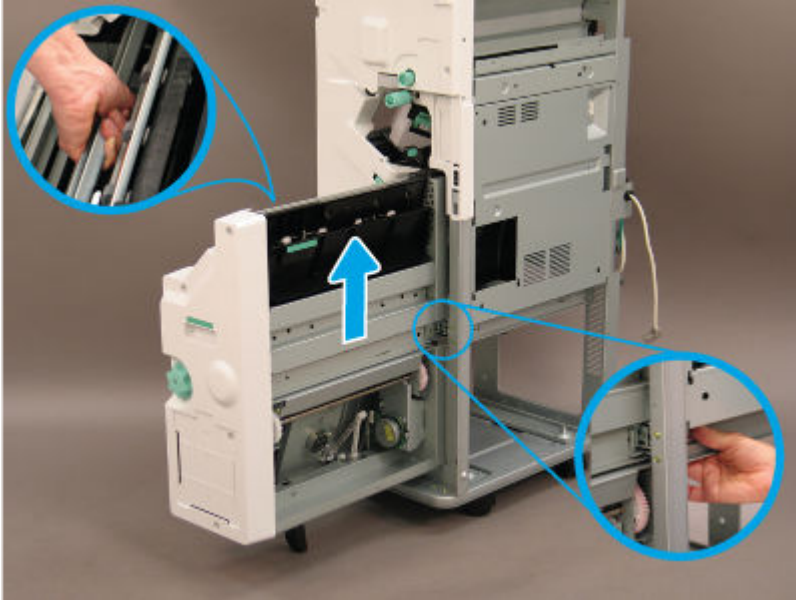
 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure to use the special installation instructions in this topic (located after the unpack and recycle step).

Figure 6-2491 Remove the booklet maker

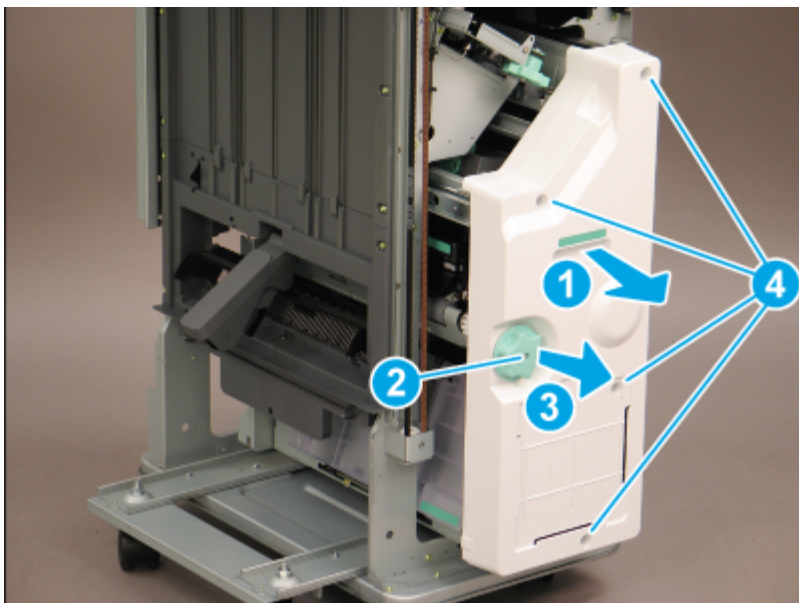


4 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).
 - b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
 - c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2492 Remove the cover

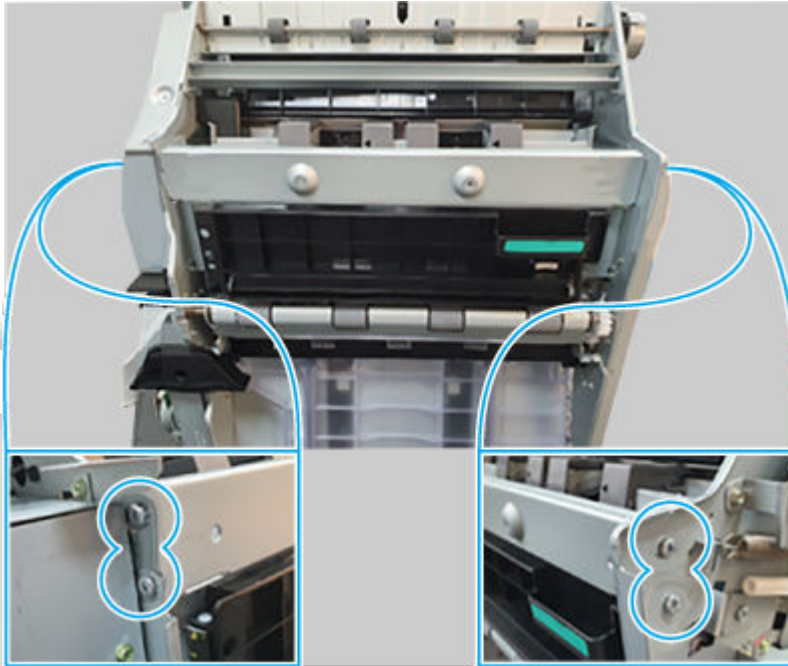


5 Remove the booklet finisher booklet blade home sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet blade home sensor.

1. Remove four screws and the sheet-metal plate.

Figure 6-2493 Remove four screws



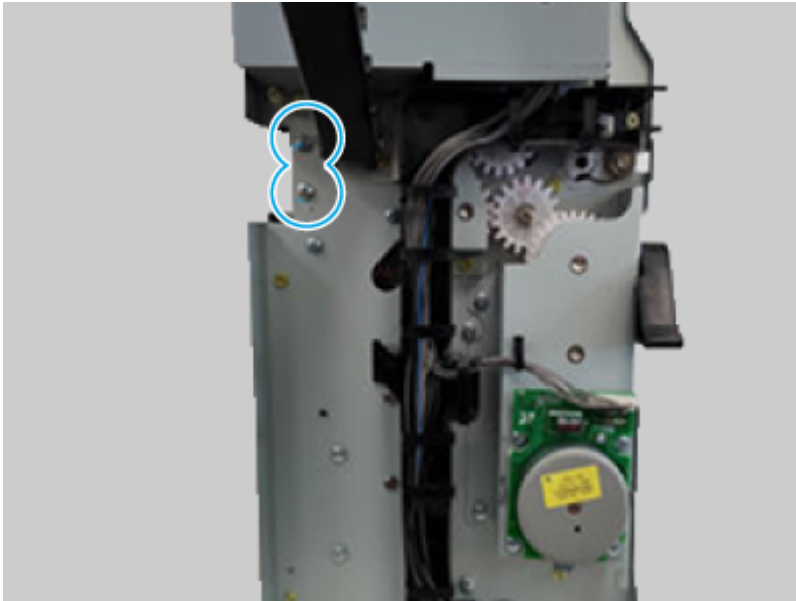
2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2494 Remove two screws



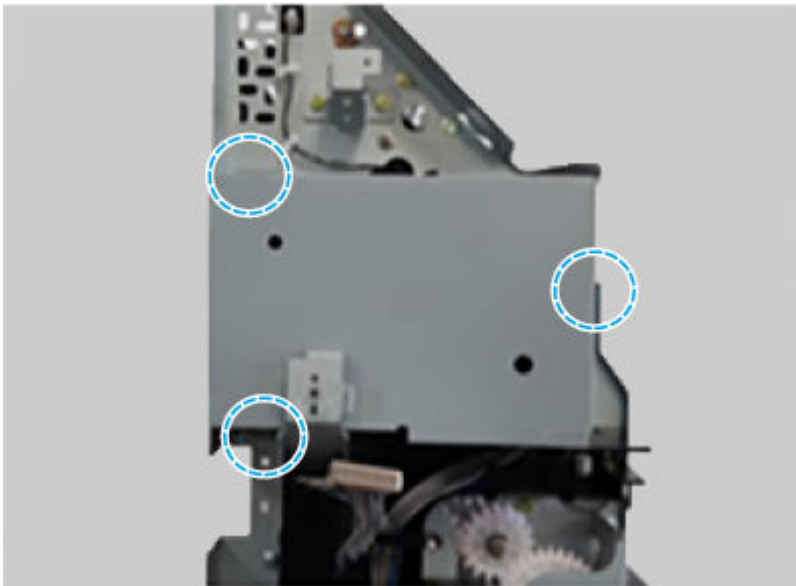
3. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2495 Remove two screws



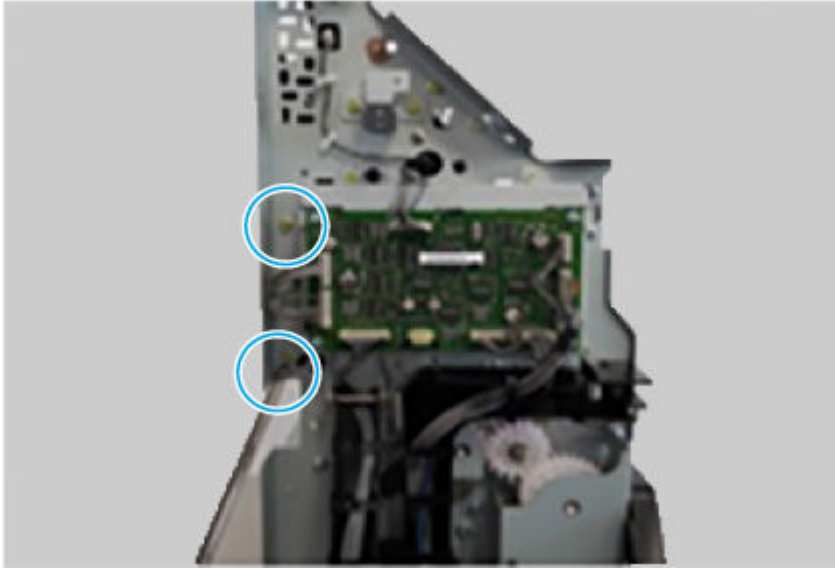
4. Remove three screws and the sheet-metal cover.

Figure 6-2496 Remove three screws



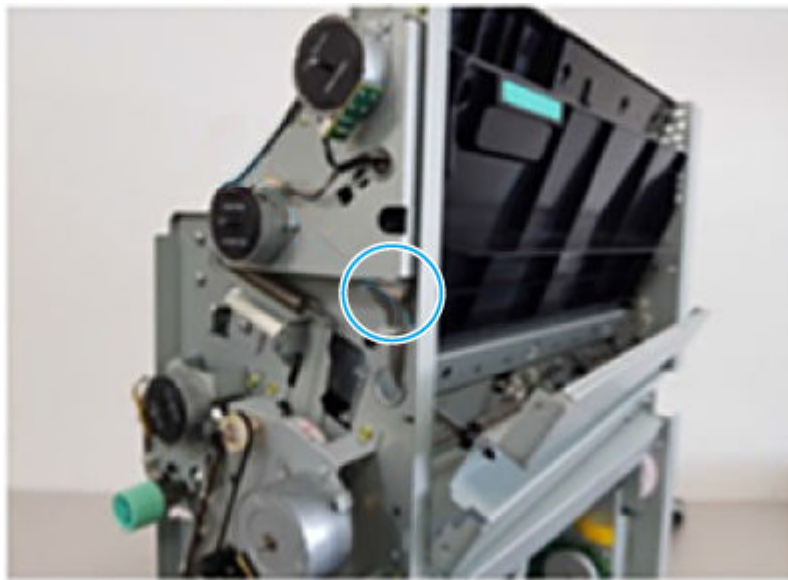
5. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2497 Remove two screws



6. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2498 Disconnect one connector



7. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2499 Disconnect one connector



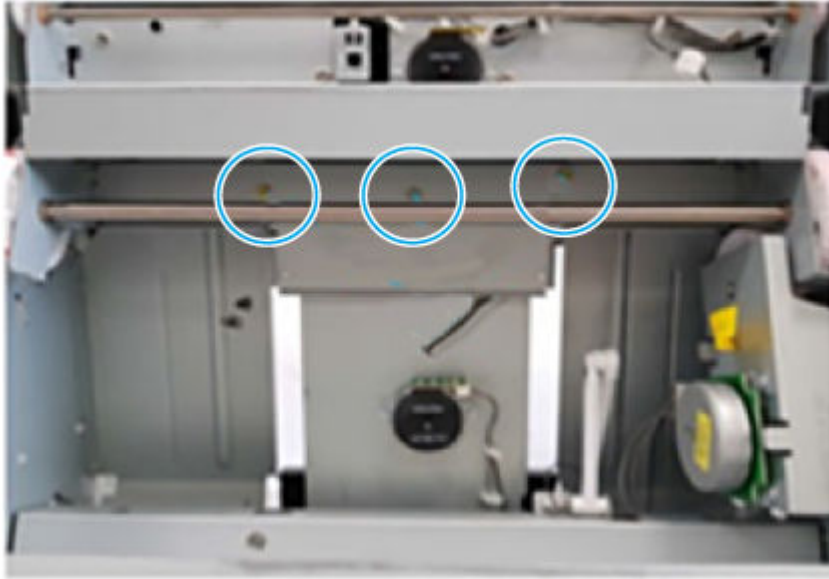
8. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2500 Remove two screws



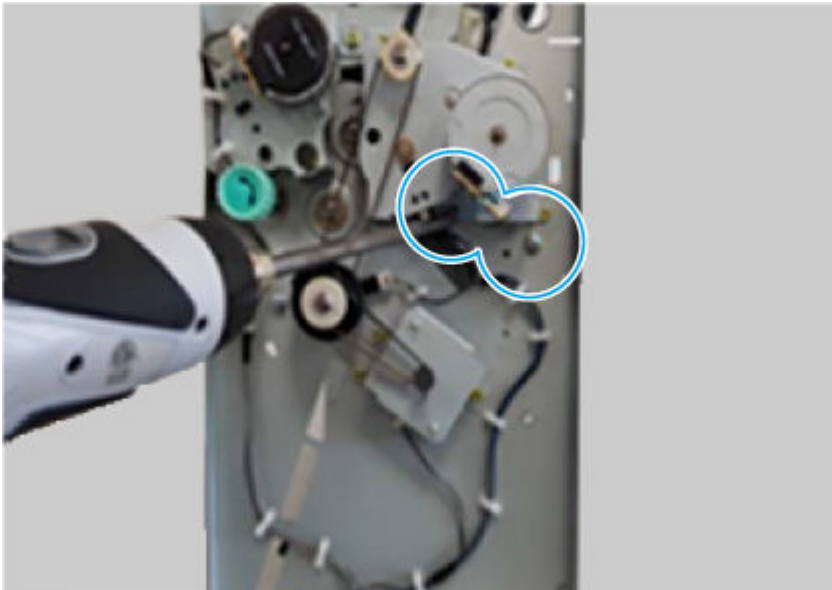
9. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2501 Remove three screws



10. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2502 Remove two screws



11. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2503 Remove two screws



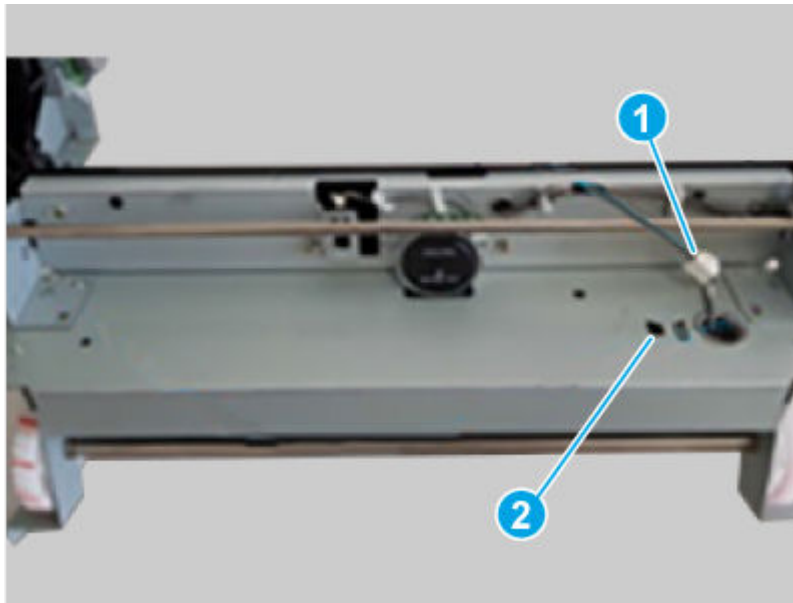
12. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2504 Disconnect one connector



13. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the booklet blade home sensor (callout 2).


Figure 6-2505 Remove the sensor



6 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

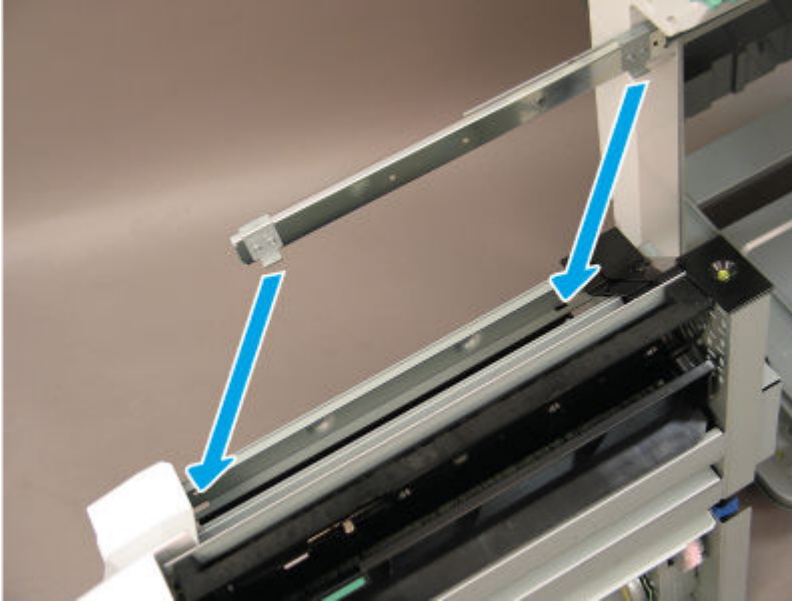
7 Special installation instructions: booklet finisher booklet maker

Use the following procedure to install the booklet finisher booklet maker.

 **NOTE:** Use the special installation instructions to correctly install the booklet maker.

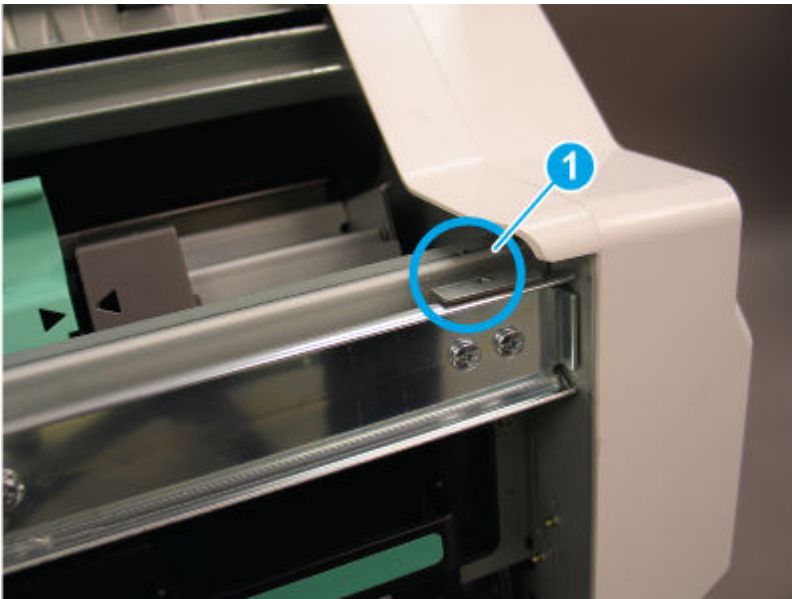
1. When installing the booklet finisher, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2506 Position the hooks on the rail



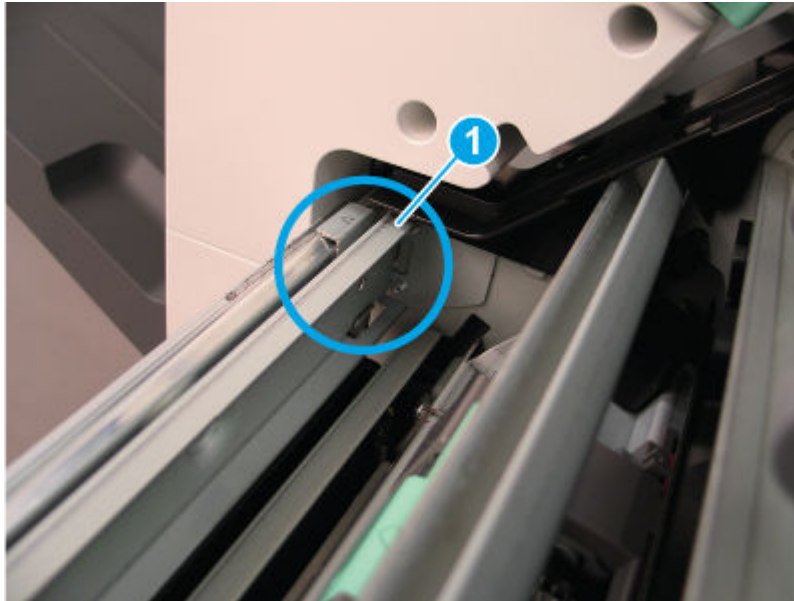
2. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2507 Check rail alignment (1 of 2)



3. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2508 Check rail alignment (2 of 2)



4. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet maker slot.


 **NOTE:** Continue the installation by reversing the removal steps.

Figure 6-2509 Attach the rail



Removal and replacement: Booklet blade motor

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher blade motor.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-308 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00144A	Motor BLDC (Booklet booklet blade motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

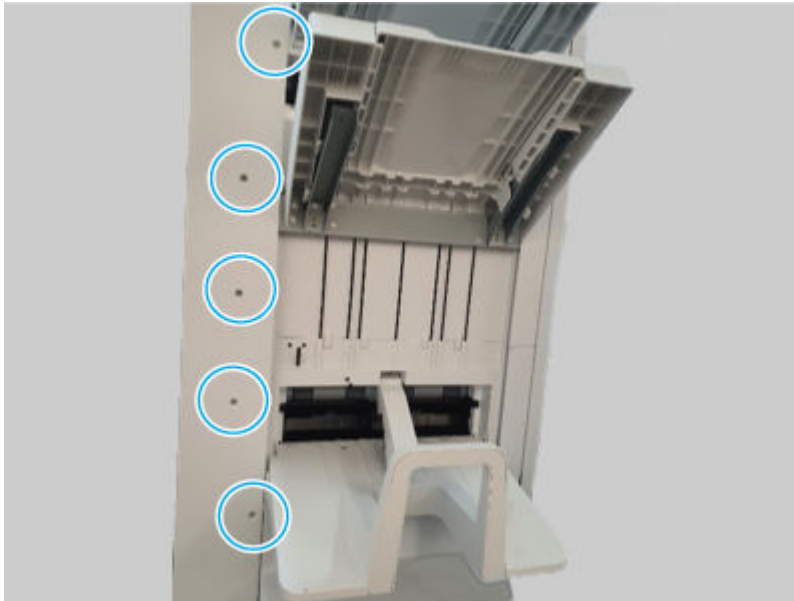
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2510 Remove five screws

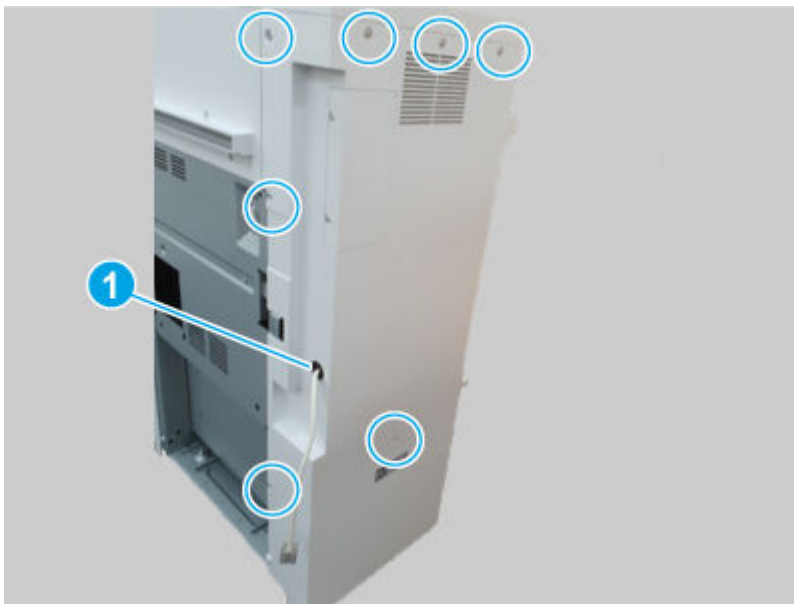


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2511 Remove the cover



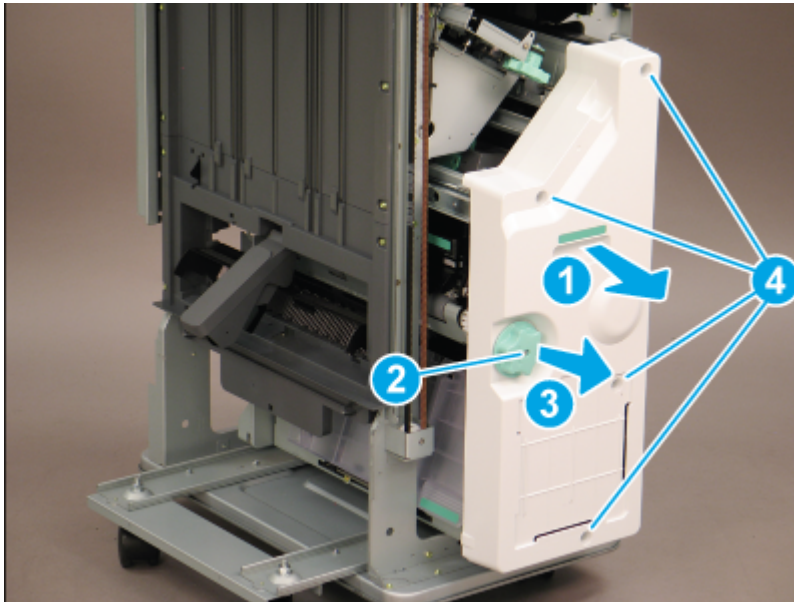
2 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.

2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).
 - b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
 - c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2512 Remove the cover

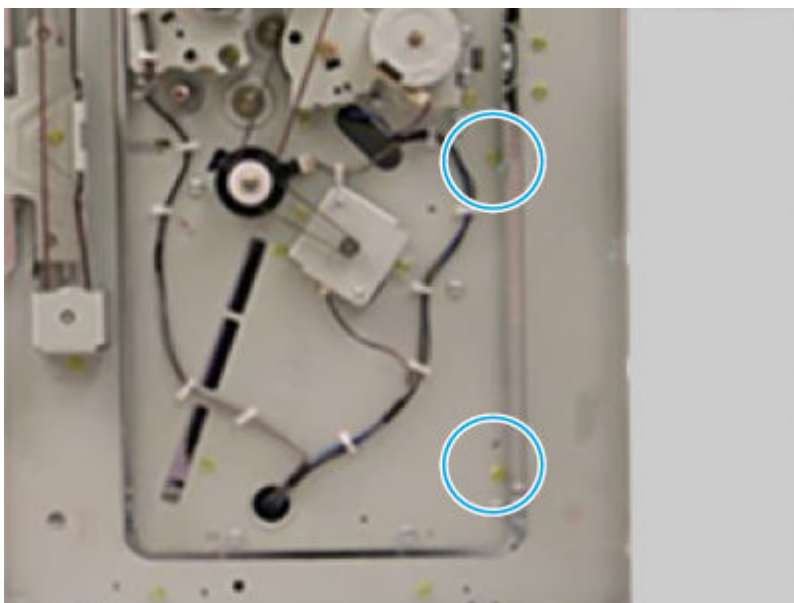


3 Remove the booklet finisher booklet blade motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher blade motor.

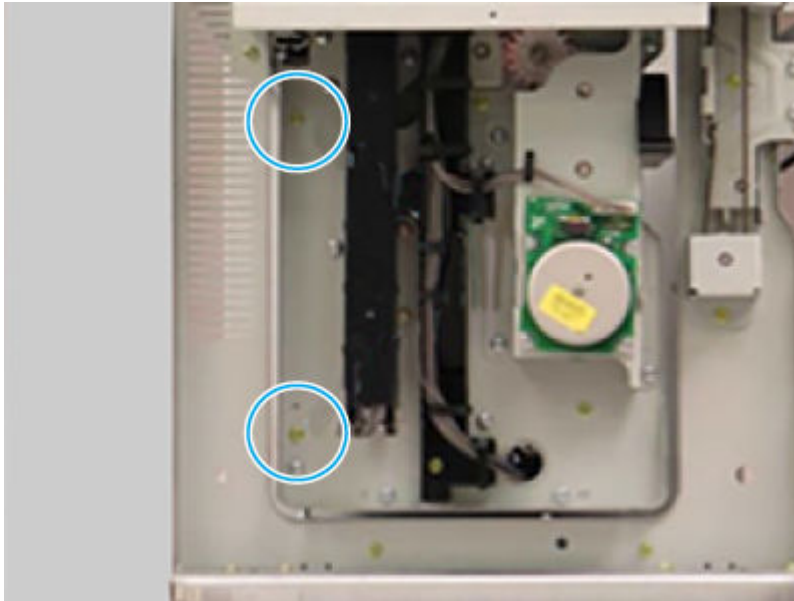
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2513 Remove two screws



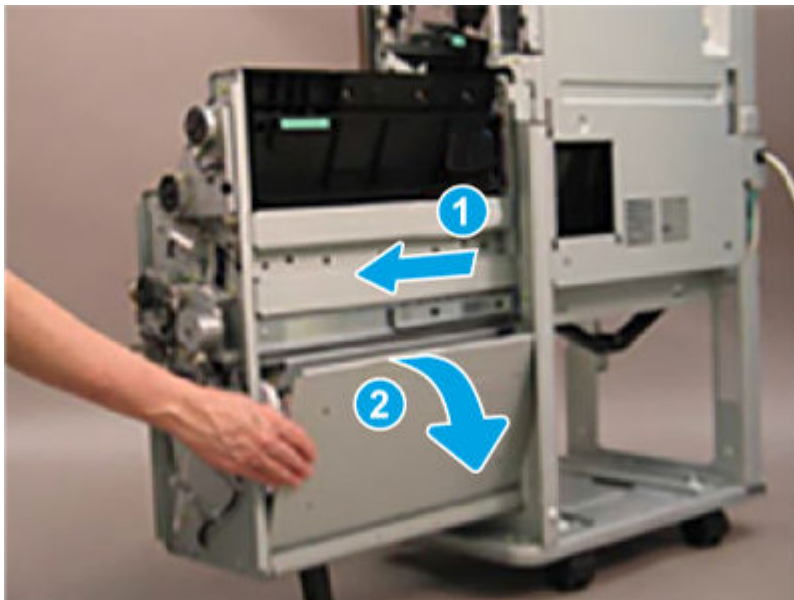
2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2514 Remove two screws



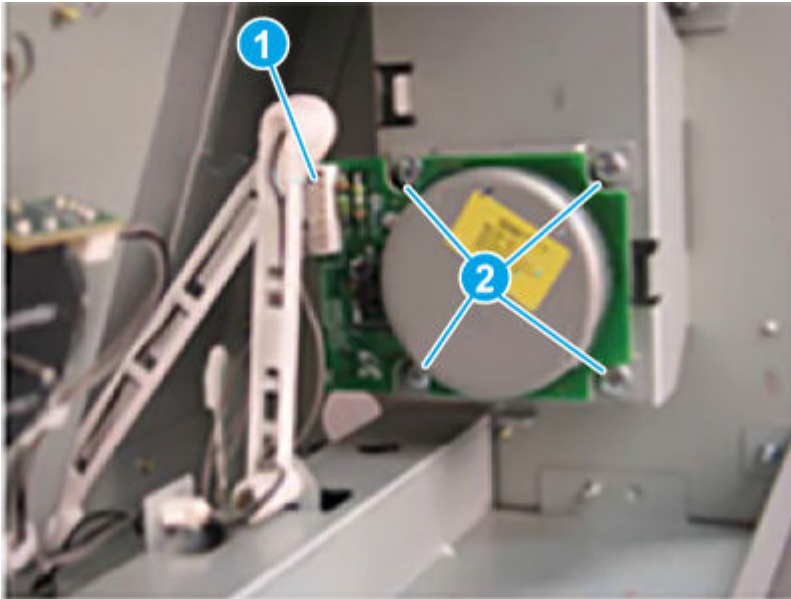
3. Remove the right lower plate.

Figure 6-2515 Remove the plate



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2), and then remove the booklet blade motor.


Figure 6-2516 Remove the motor



4 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Booklet fold motor assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher fold motor assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-309 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01436A	Booklet booklet fold motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

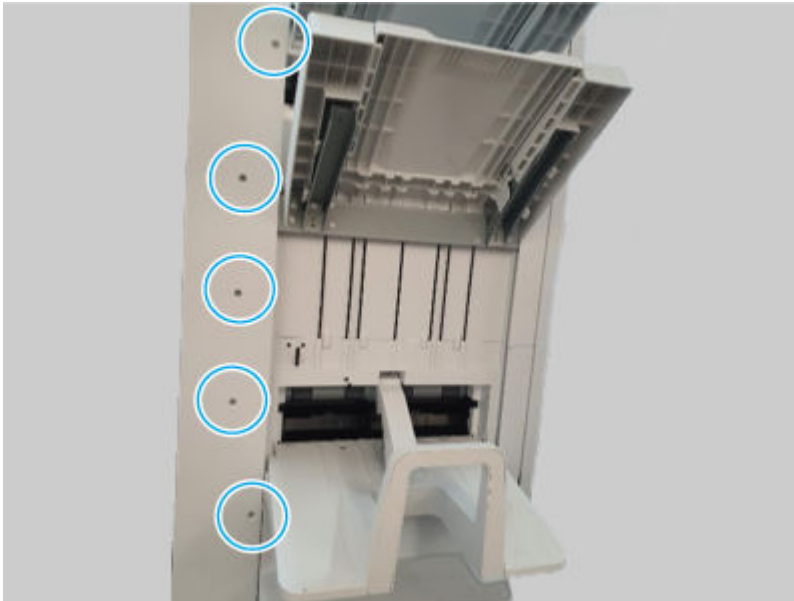
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2517 Remove five screws

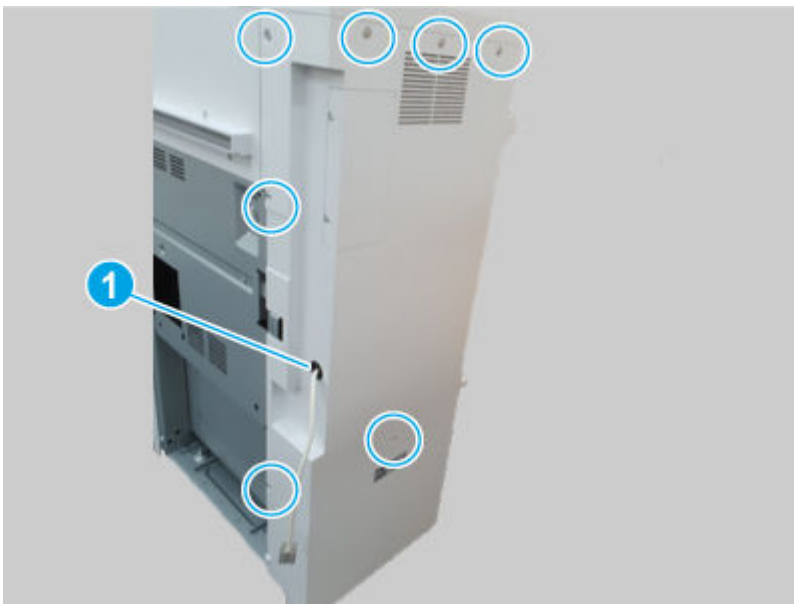


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2518 Remove the cover



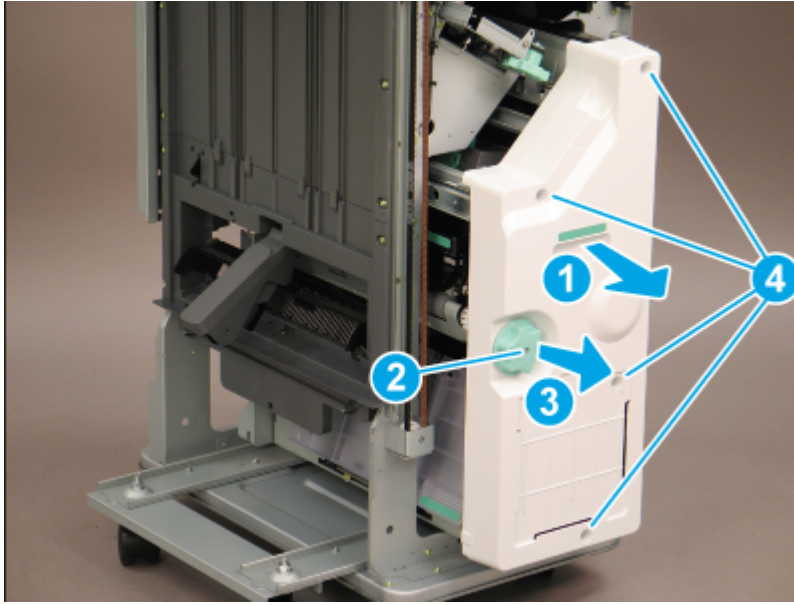
2 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.

2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).
 - b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
 - c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2519 Remove the cover

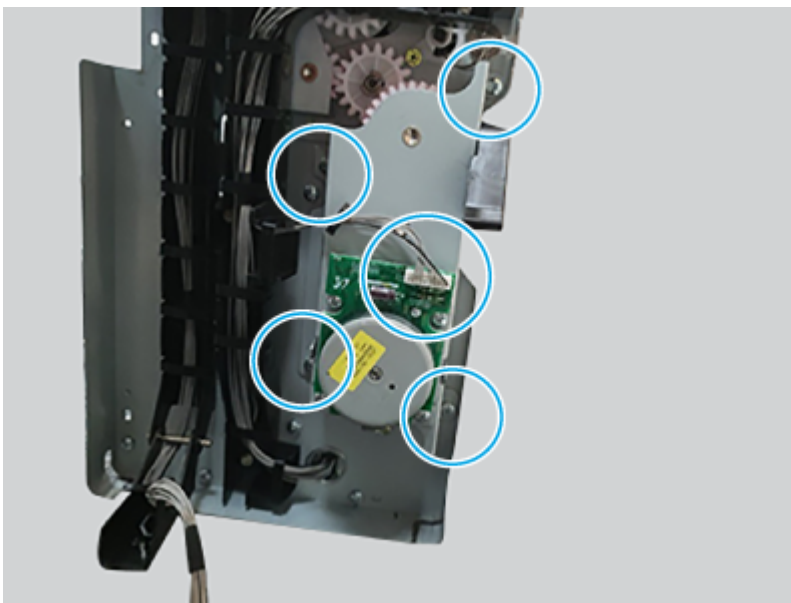


3 Remove the booklet finisher booklet fold motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher fold motor assembly.

- Disconnect one connector, remove four screws, and then remove the booklet fold motor assembly.

Figure 6-2520 Remove the assembly



4 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Booklet fold motor

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher fold motor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-310 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00144A	Motor BLDC (Booklet booklet fold motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

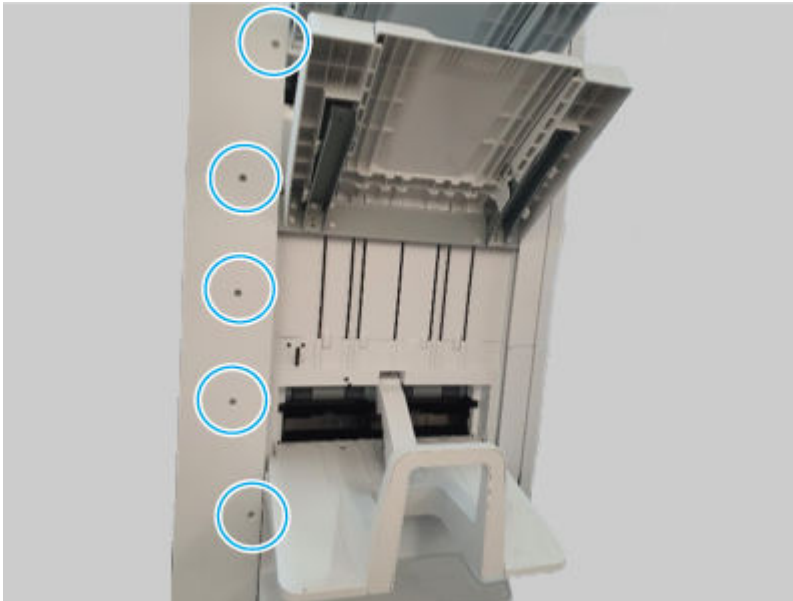
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2521 Remove five screws

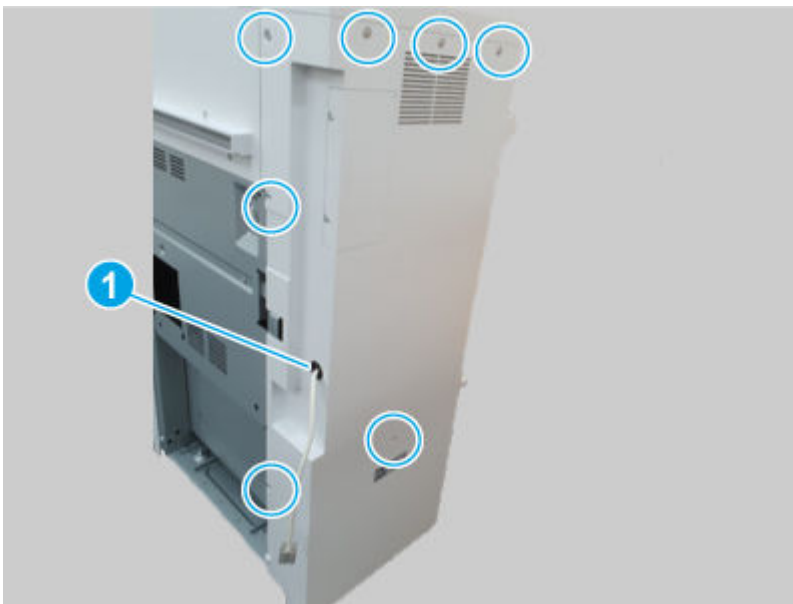


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2522 Remove the cover



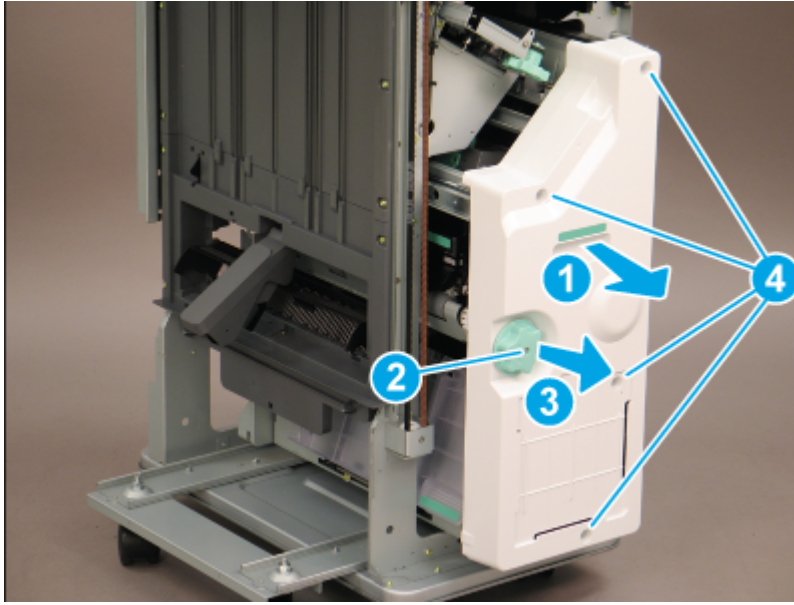
2 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.

2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).
 - b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
 - c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2523 Remove the cover

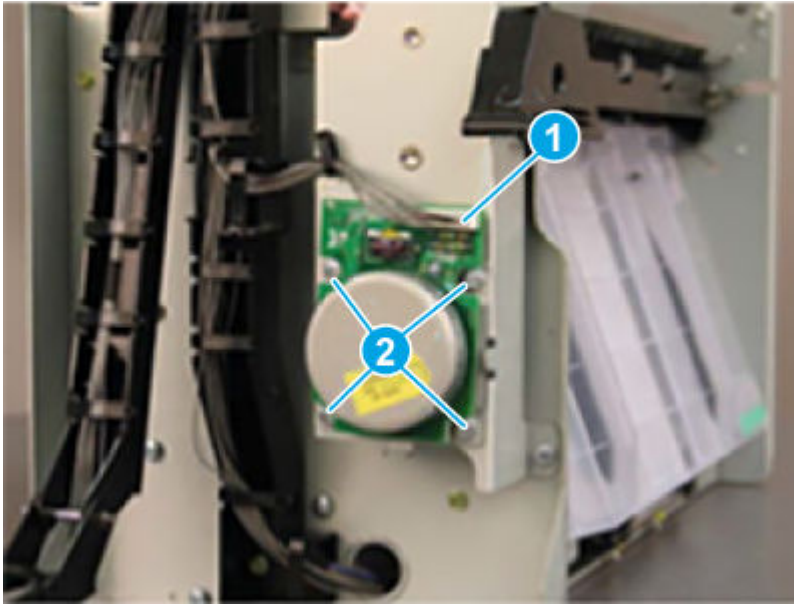


3 Remove the booklet finisher booklet fold motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher fold motor.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2), and then remove the booklet fold motor.

Figure 6-2524 Remove the motor



4 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Booklet diverter unit

Review the booklet finisher booklet diverter unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Booklet diverter

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher diverter.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-311 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01398A	Booklet diverter

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

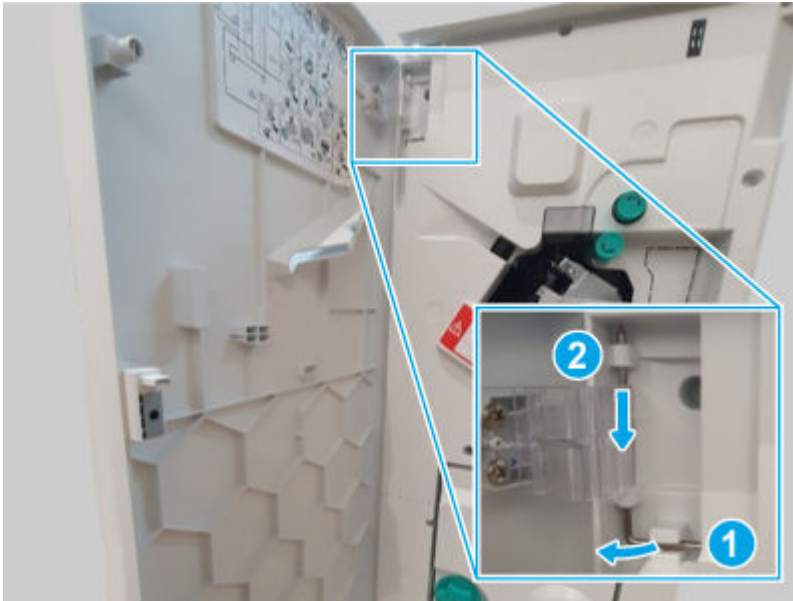
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

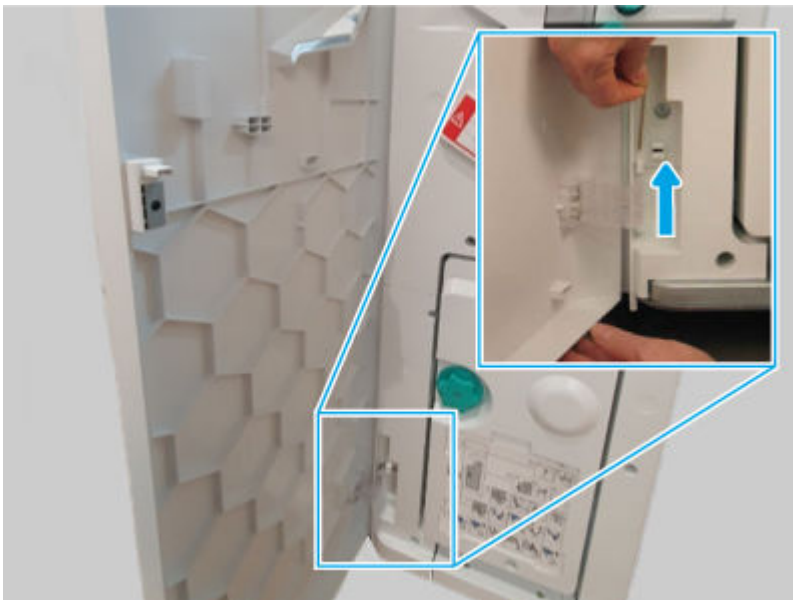
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2525 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2526 Remove the door

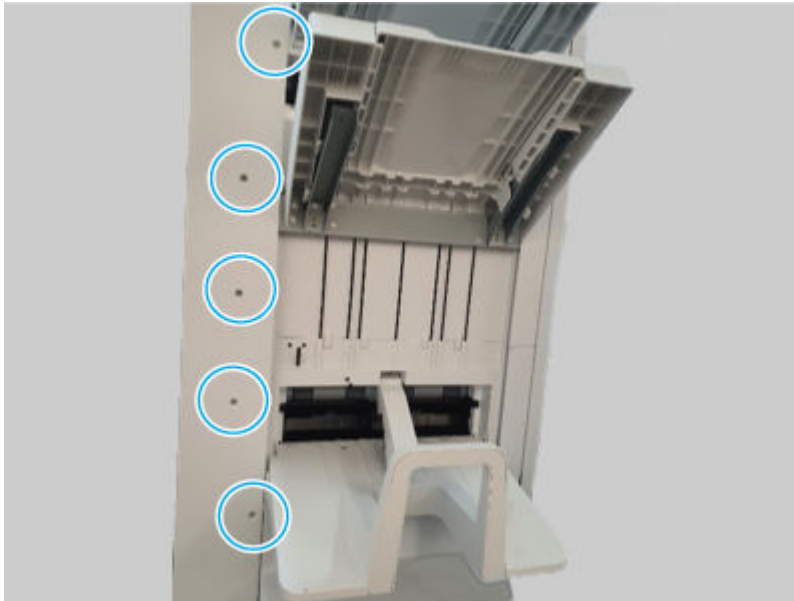


2 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2527 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


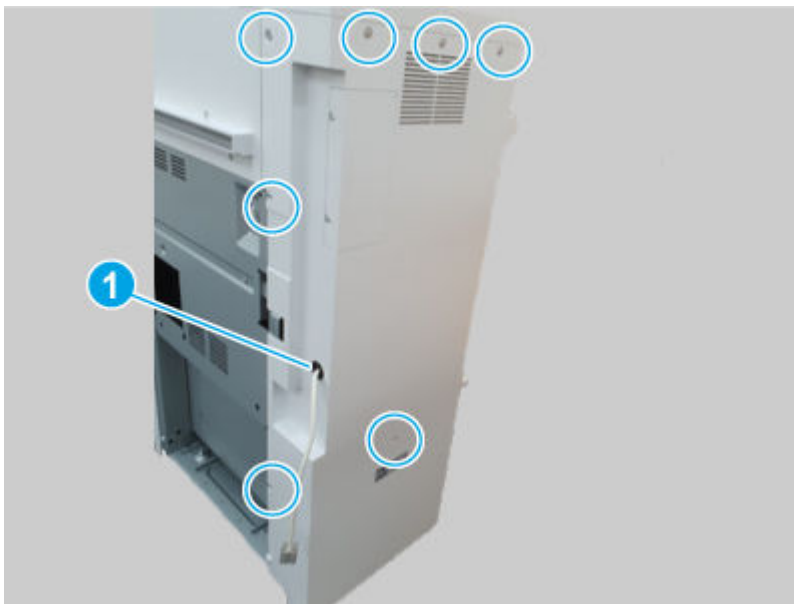
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2528 Remove the cover



3. **Remove the external finisher top cover**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

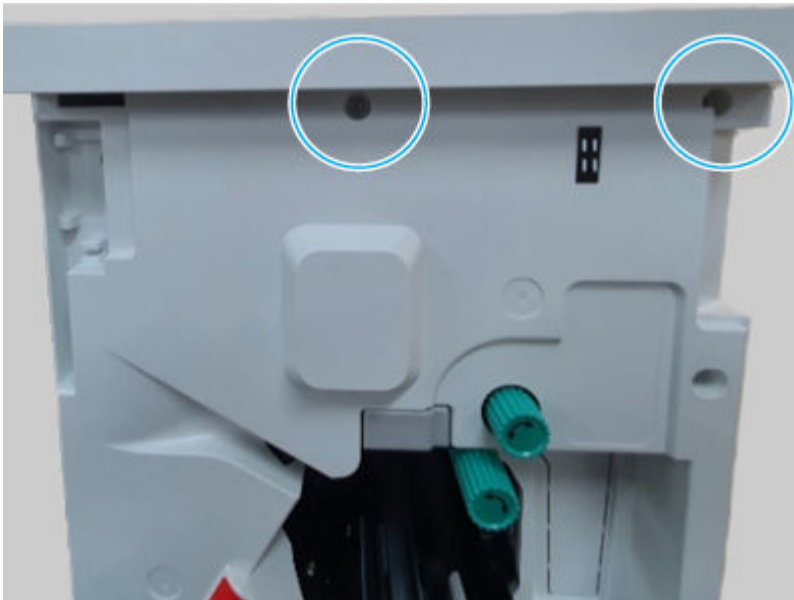
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2529 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2530 Remove the cover

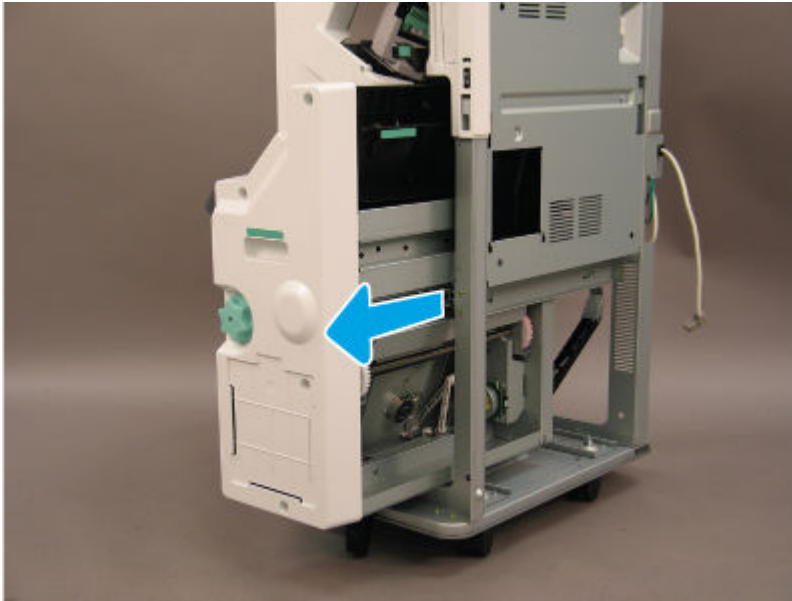


4 Remove the booklet finisher booklet maker

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet maker.

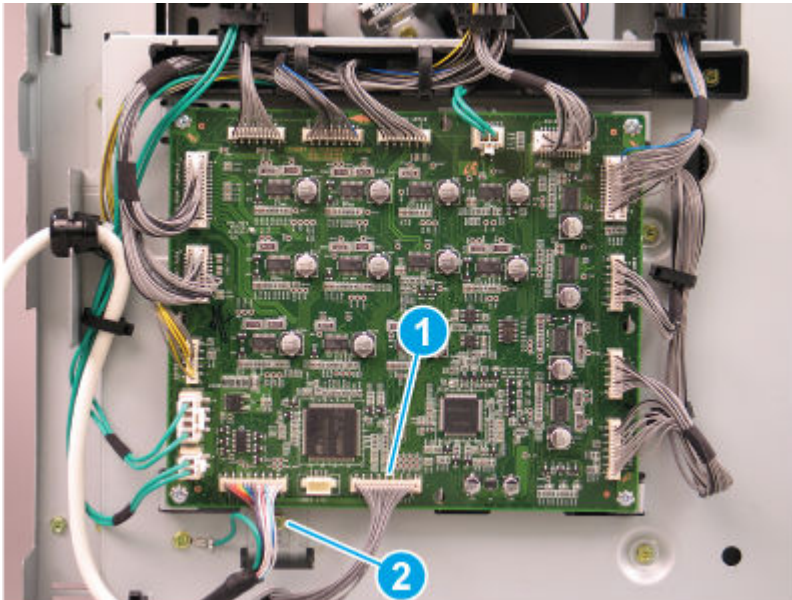
1. Slide the booklet maker out of the finisher.

Figure 6-2531 Slide the booklet maker out



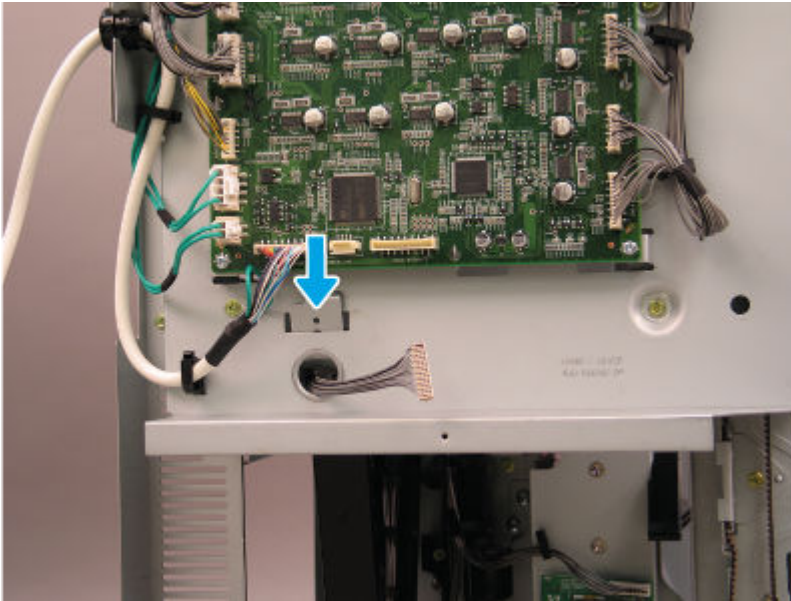
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 6-2532 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



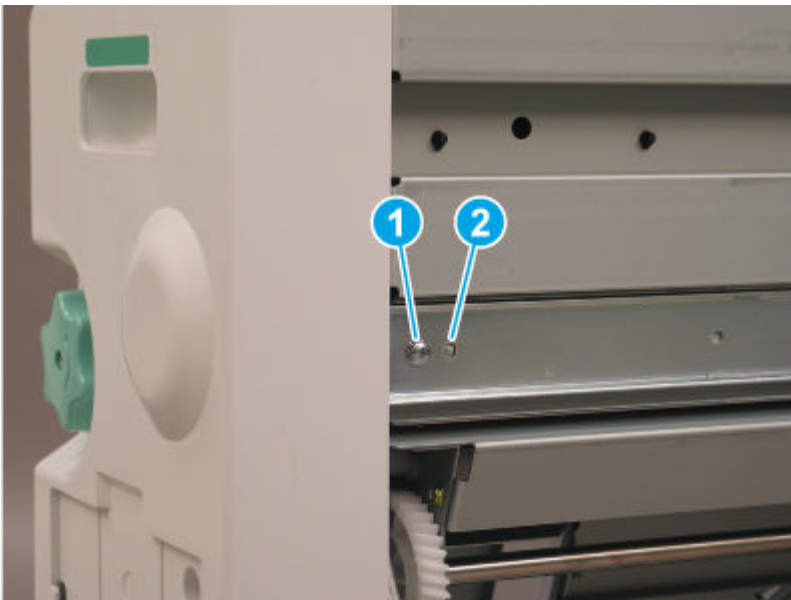
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet-metal.

Figure 6-2533 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



4. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2).

Figure 6-2534 Release the alignment pin



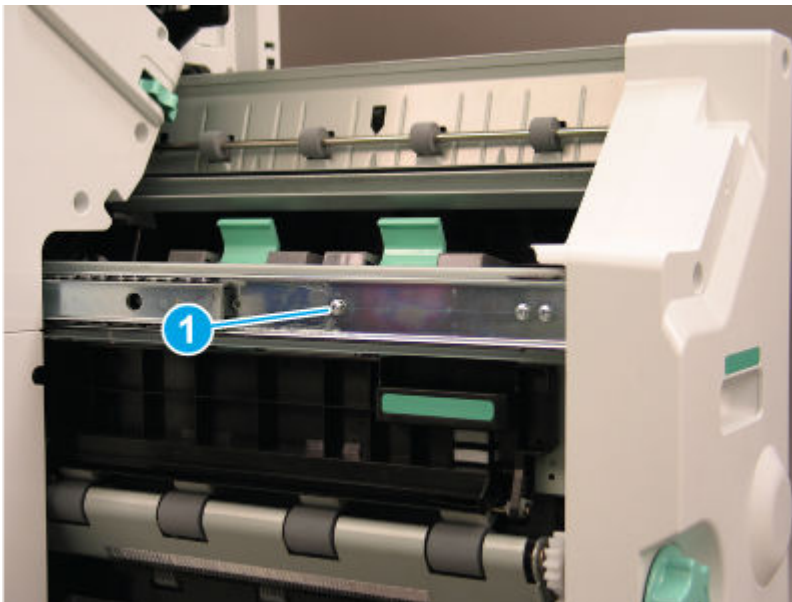
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 6-2535 Slide the rail in



6. Remove one screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2536 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet maker up on the left side while pulling the right rail away from the finisher chassis to clear the sheet-metal. Remove the booklet maker unit.


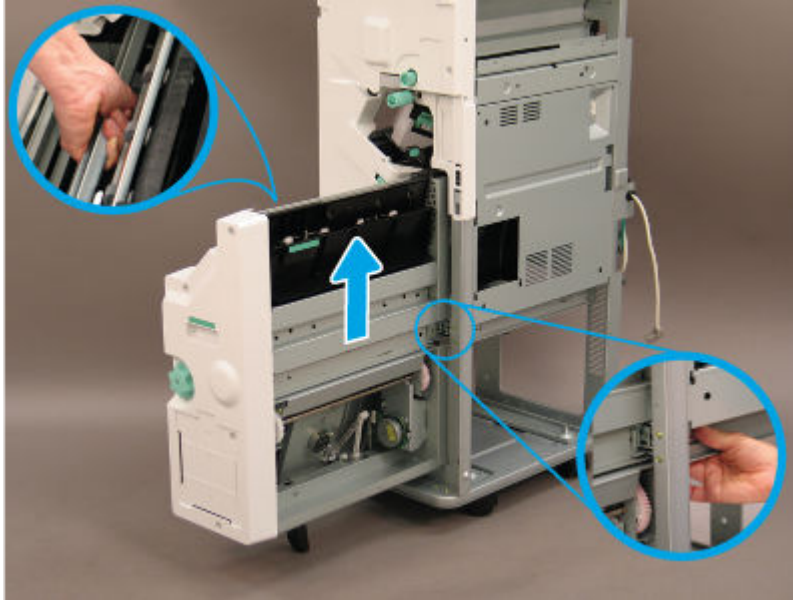
 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure to use the special installation instructions in this topic (located after the unpack and recycle step).

Figure 6-2537 Remove the booklet maker

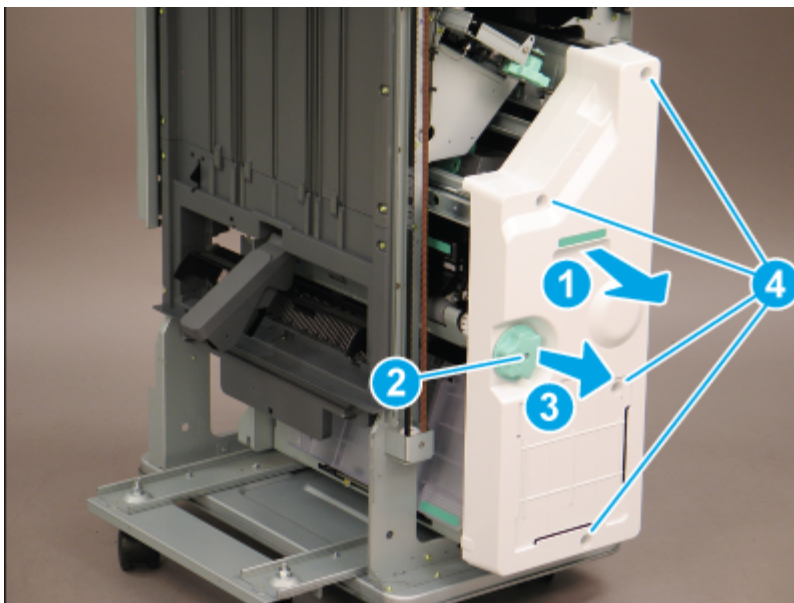


5 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).
 - b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
 - c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2538 Remove the cover

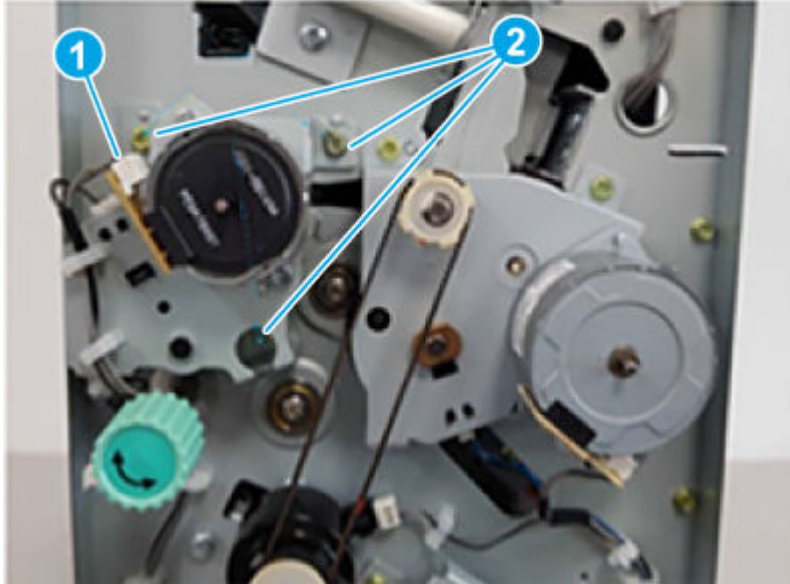


6 Remove the booklet finisher booklet diverter motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet diverter motor assembly.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then remove the booklet diverter motor assembly.

Figure 6-2539 Remove the assembly

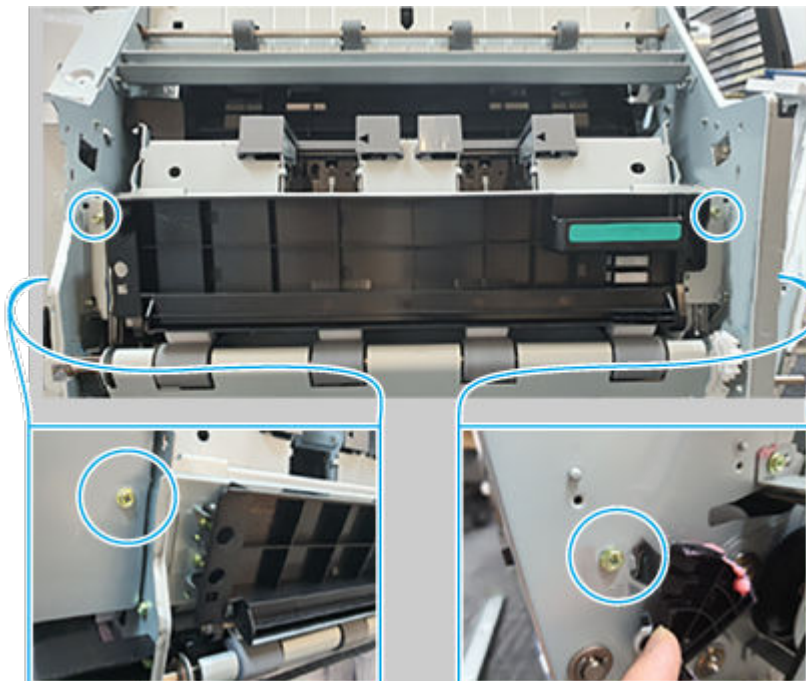


7 Remove the booklet finisher booklet c-fold blade assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher c-fold blade assembly.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the c-fold blade assembly.

Figure 6-2540 Remove the assembly

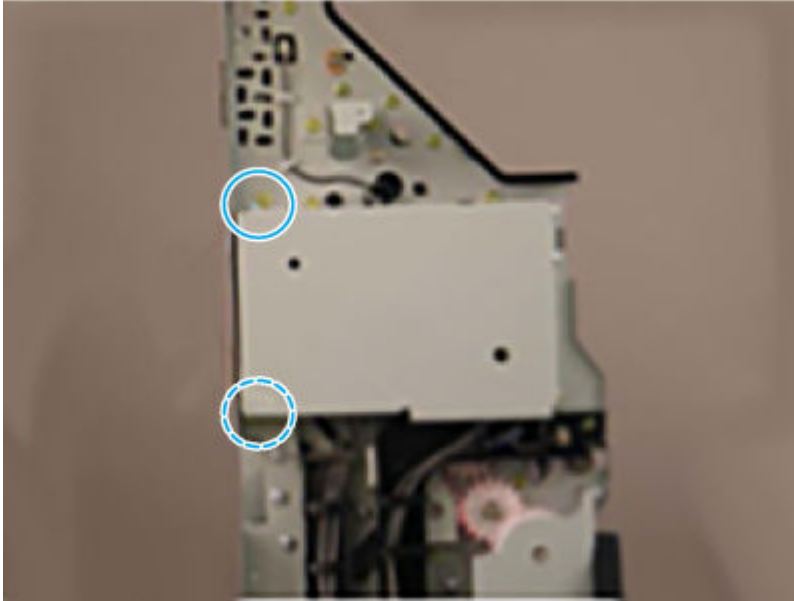


8 Remove the booklet finisher booklet diverter

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet diverter.

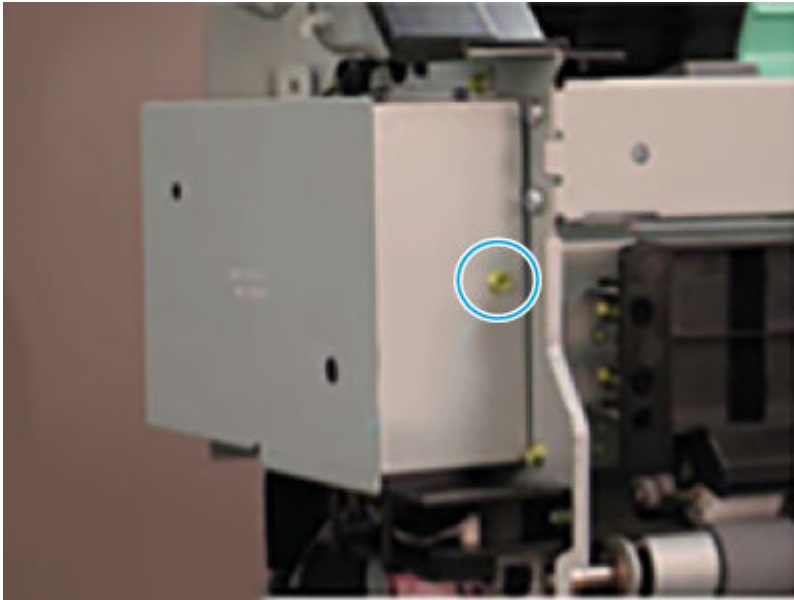
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2541 Remove two screws



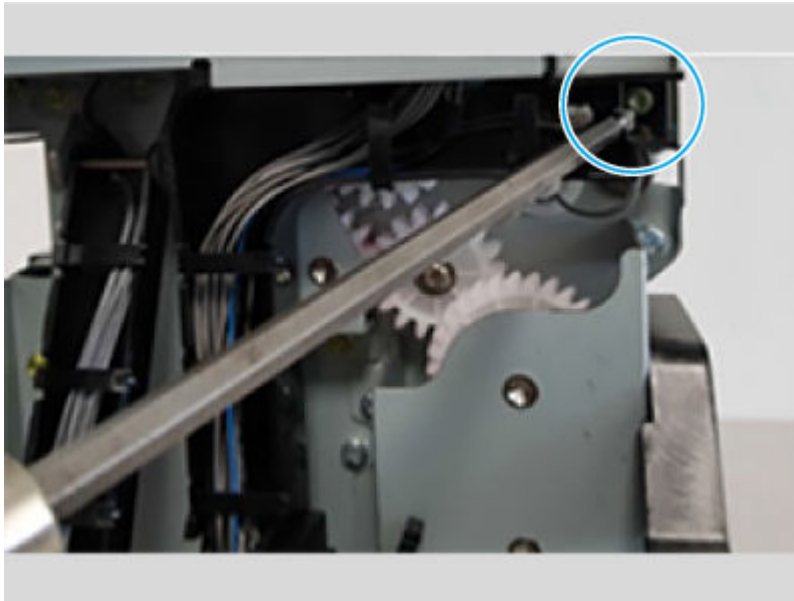
2. Remove one screw and the sheet-metal cover.

Figure 6-2542 Remove one screw



3. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-2543 Remove one screw



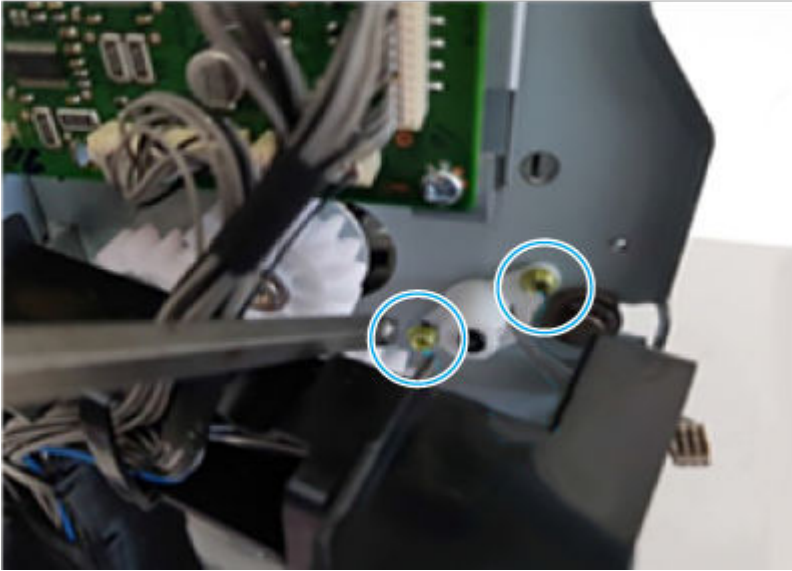
4. Remove the connector cover, and then disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2544 Disconnect one connector



5. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2545 Remove two screws



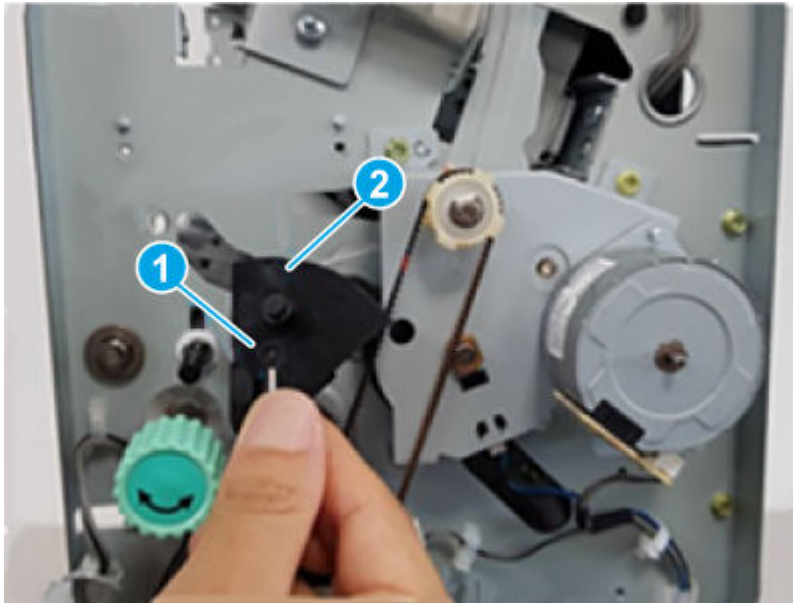
6. Remove the white-plastic bushing.

Figure 6-2546 Remove the bushing



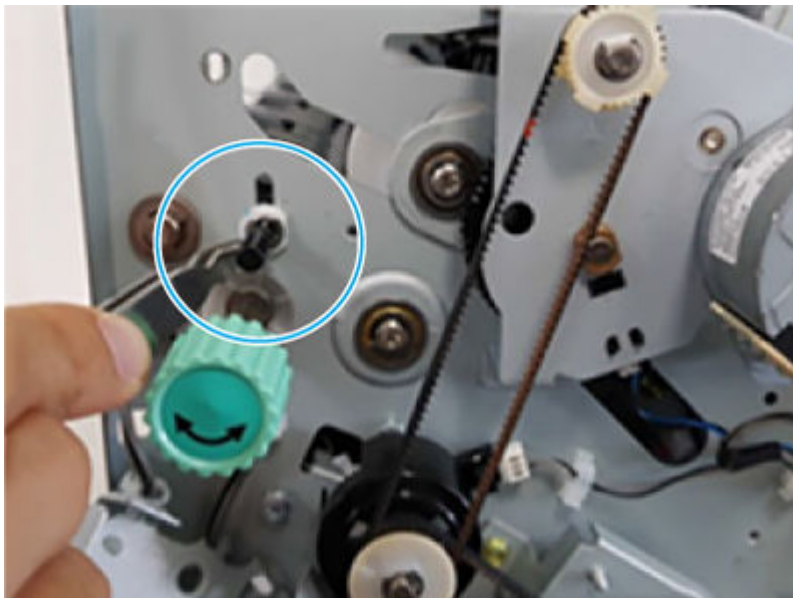
7. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring (callout 1), and then remove the actuator (callout 2).

Figure 6-2547 Remove the actuator



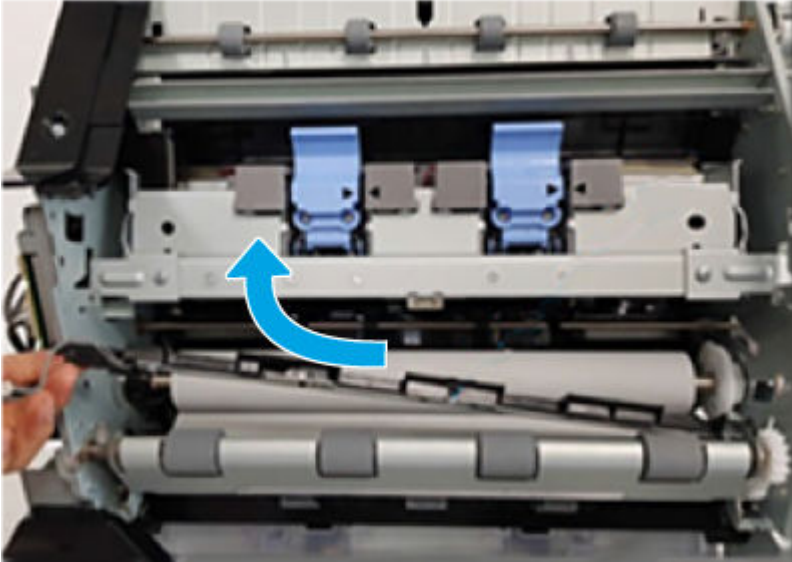
8. Remove the white-plastic bushing.

Figure 6-2548 Remove the bushing



9. Remove the booklet diverter.


Figure 6-2549 Remove the diverter



9 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Special installation instructions: booklet finisher booklet maker

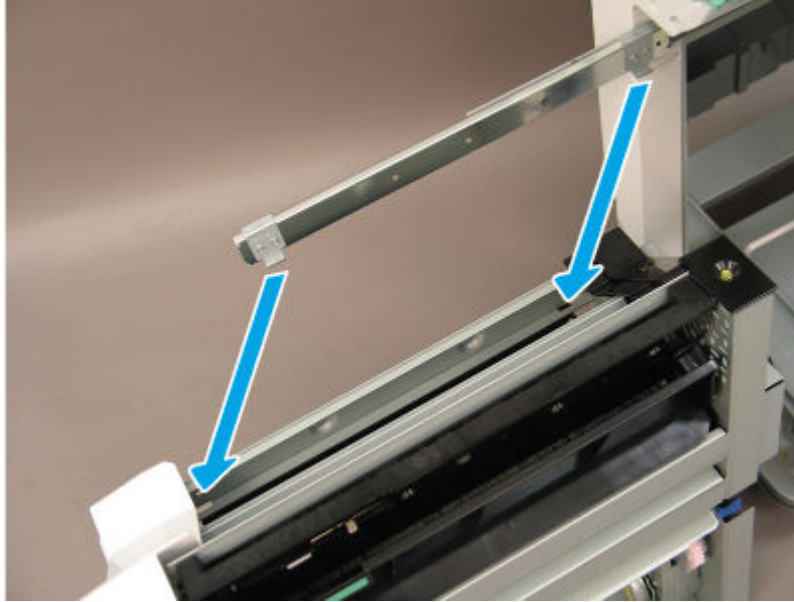
Use the following procedure to install the booklet finisher booklet maker.



NOTE: Use the special installation instructions to correctly install the booklet maker.

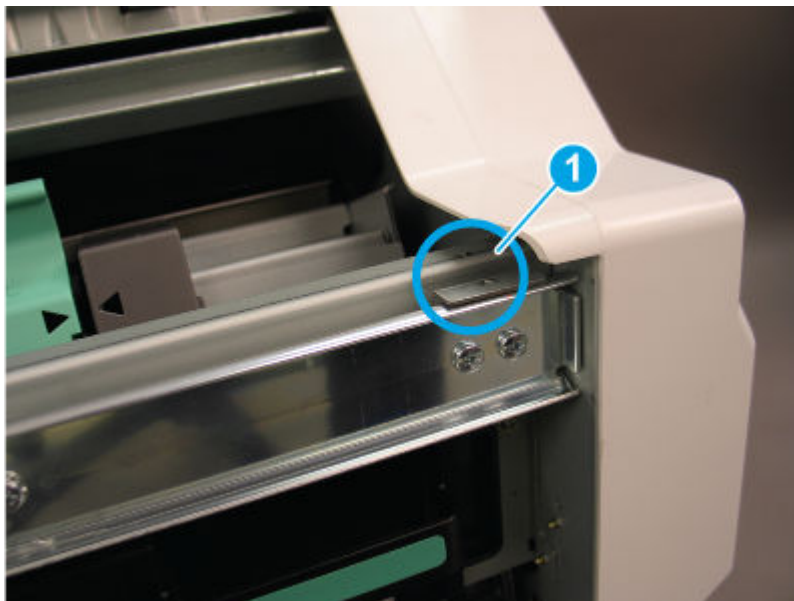
1. When installing the booklet finisher, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2550 Position the hooks on the rail



2. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2551 Check rail alignment (1 of 2)



3. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2552 Check rail alignment (2 of 2)



4. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet maker slot.




NOTE: Continue the installation by reversing the removal steps.

Figure 6-2553 Attach the rail



Removal and replacement: Booklet diverter home sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher diverter home sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-312 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001415	Photo interrupter (Booklet booklet diverter home sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

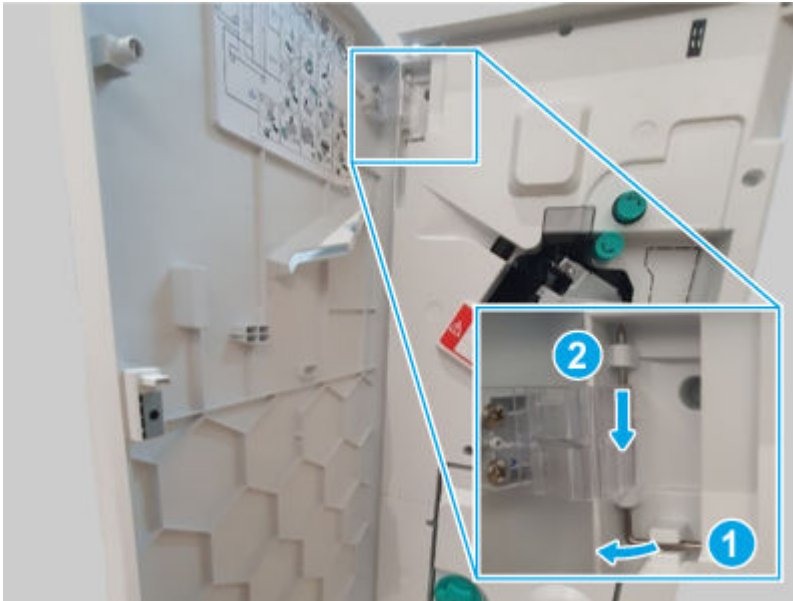
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

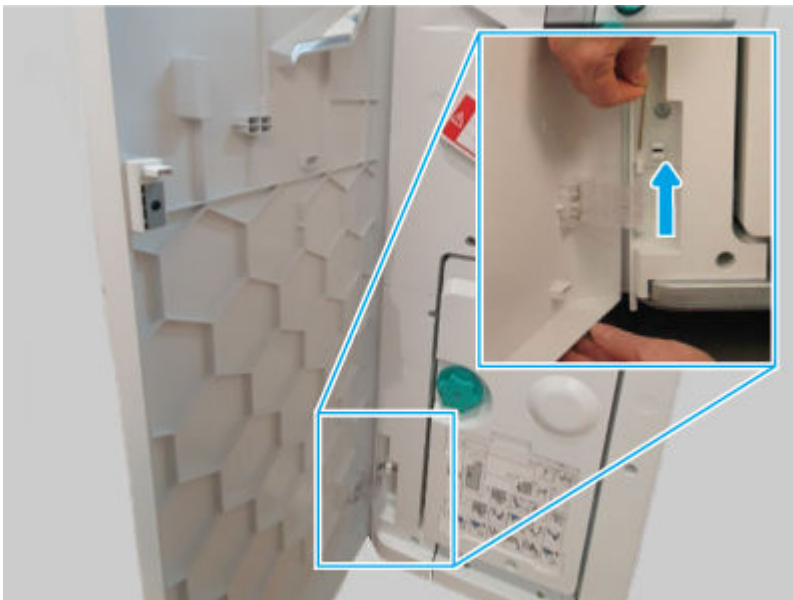
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2554 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2555 Remove the door

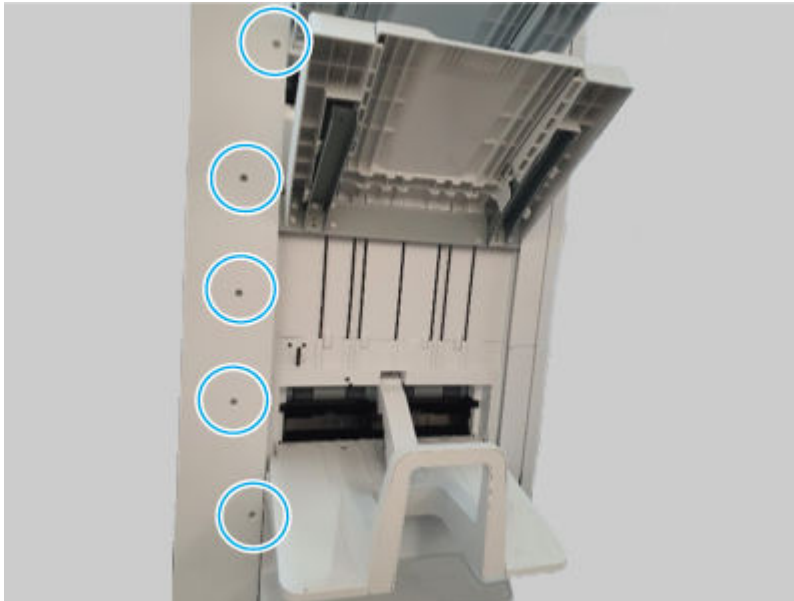


2 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2556 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


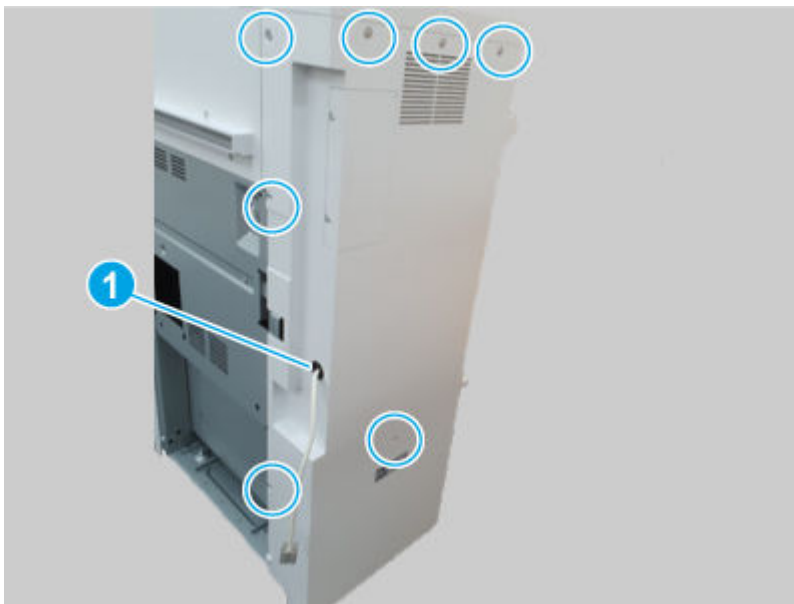
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2557 Remove the cover



- 3 **Remove the external finisher top cover**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

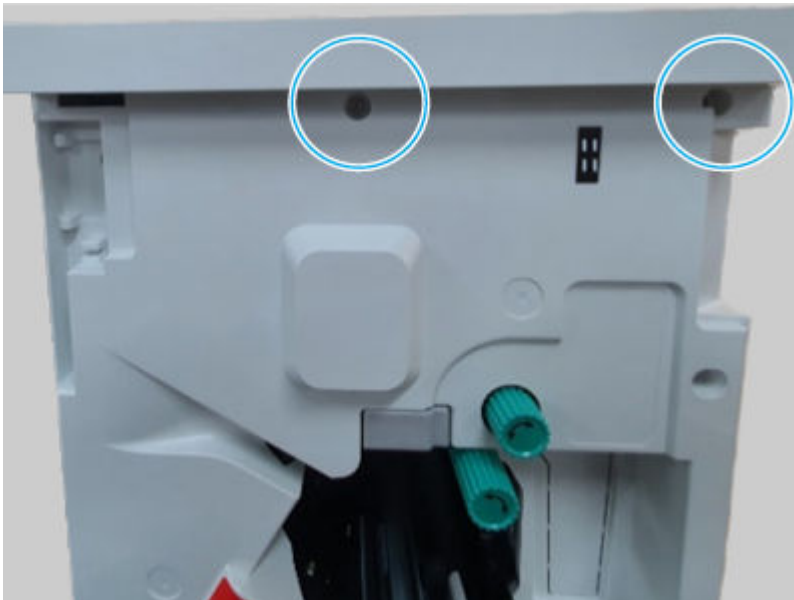
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2558 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2559 Remove the cover



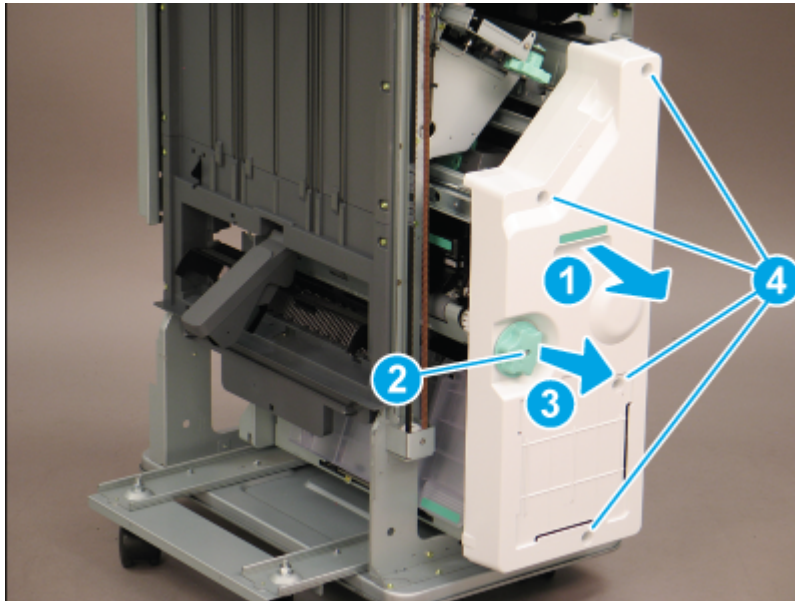
4 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).

- b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
- c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2560 Remove the cover

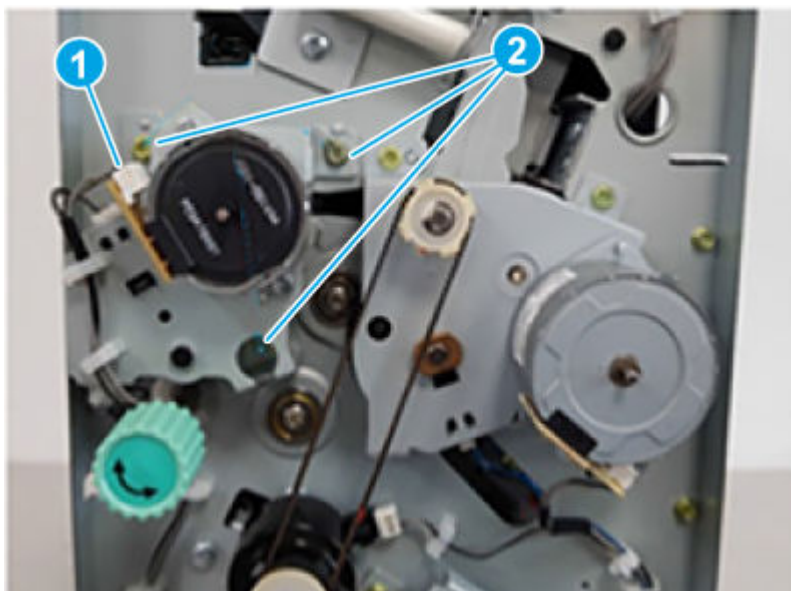


5 Remove the booklet finisher booklet diverter motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet diverter motor assembly.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then remove the booklet diverter motor assembly.

Figure 6-2561 Remove the assembly

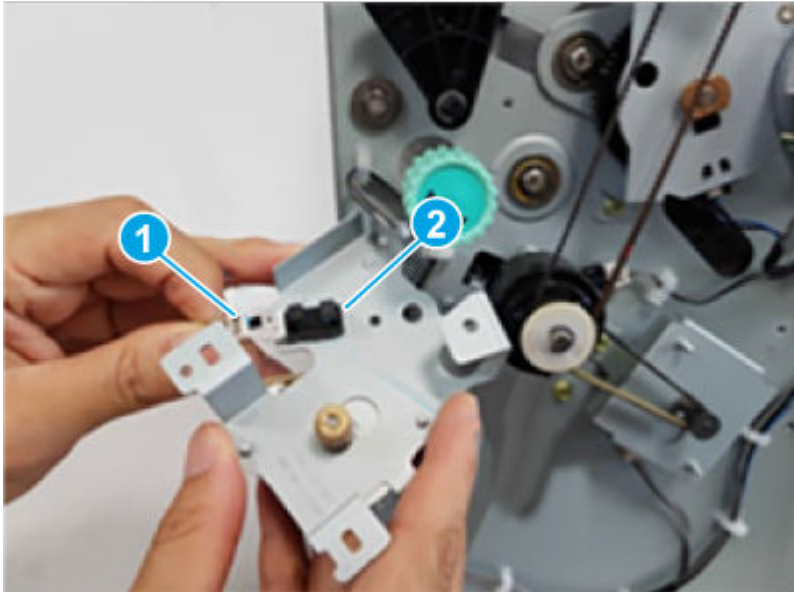


6 Remove the booklet finisher booklet diverter home sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet diverter home sensor.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the booklet diverter home sensor.


Figure 6-2562 Remove the sensor



7 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Booklet diverter motor assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher diverter motor assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-313 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01397A	Booklet diverter motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

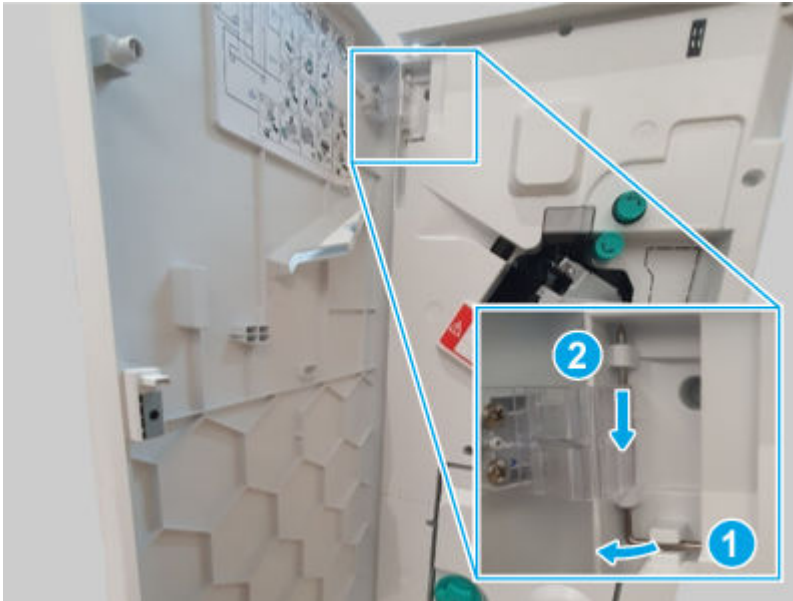
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

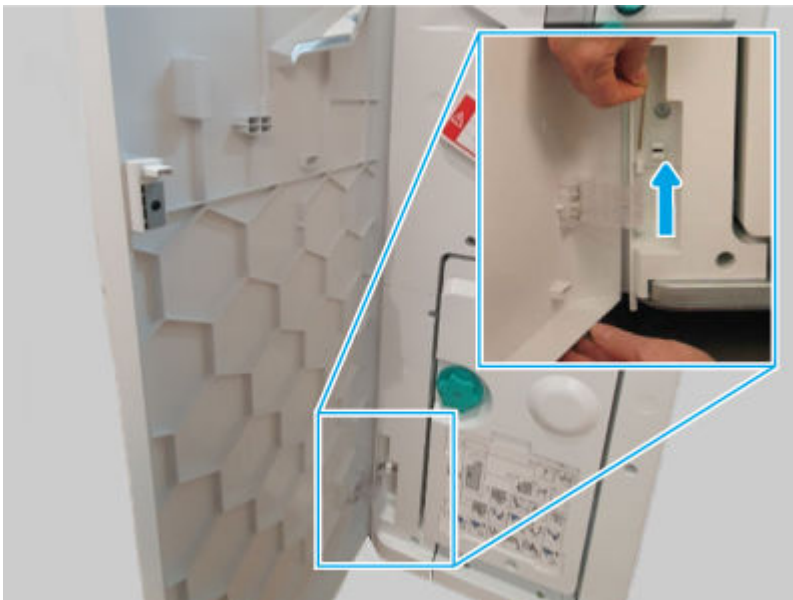
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2563 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2564 Remove the door

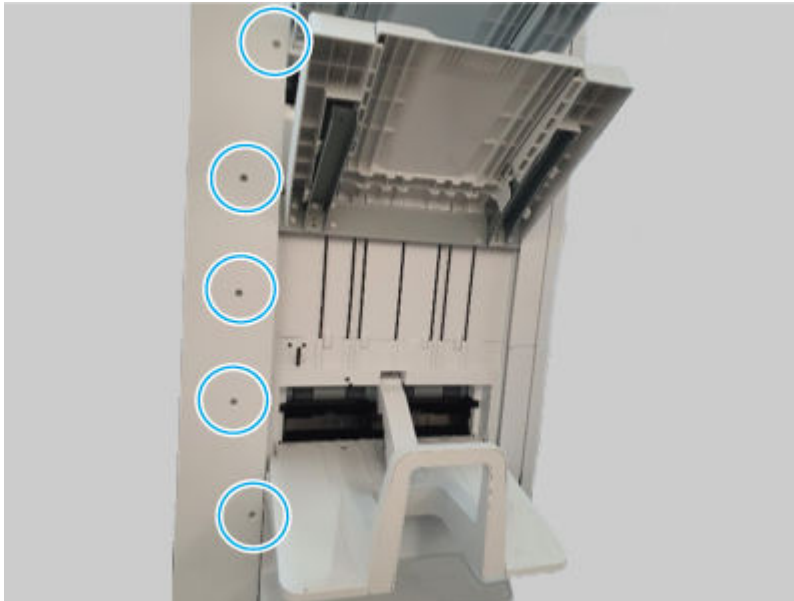


2 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2565 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


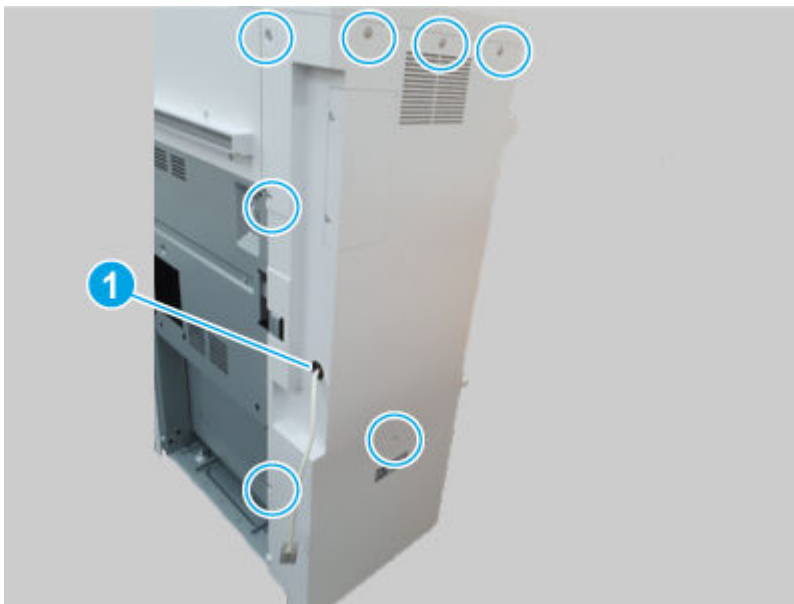
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2566 Remove the cover



- 3 **Remove the external finisher top cover**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

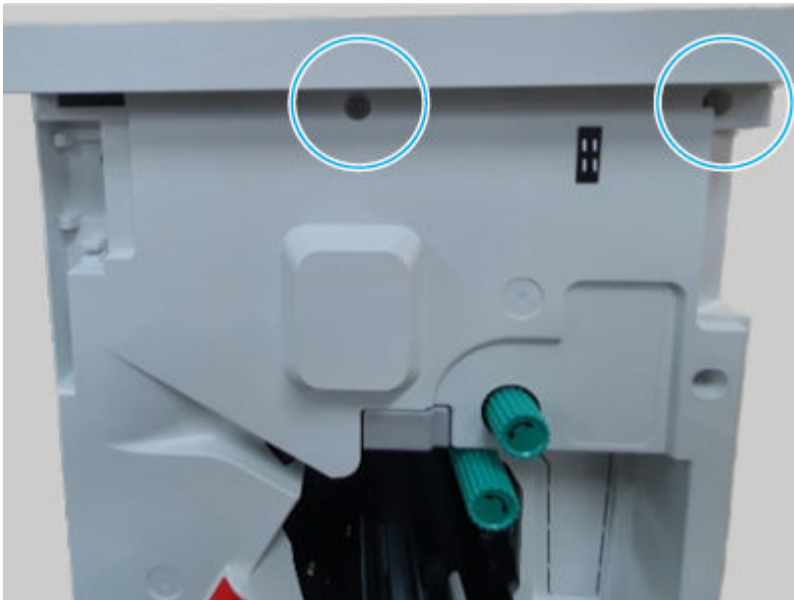
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2567 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2568 Remove the cover



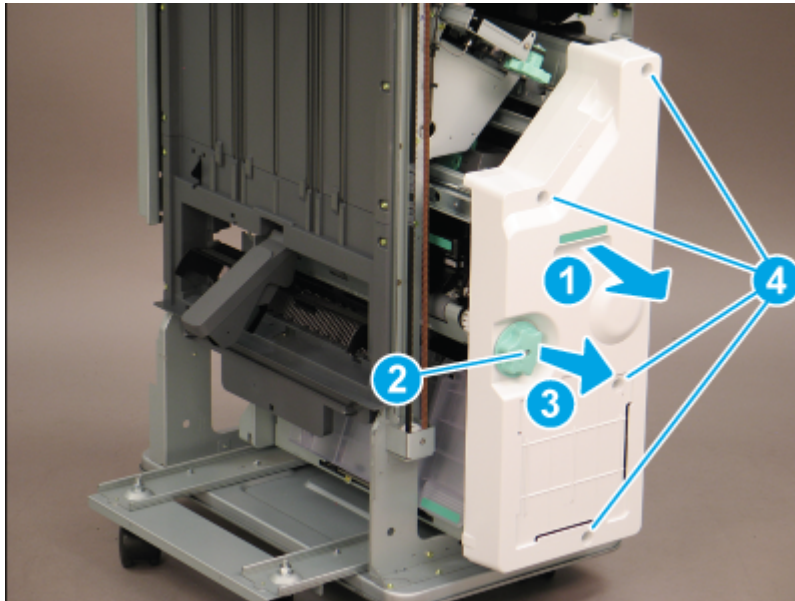
4 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).

- b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
- c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2569 Remove the cover

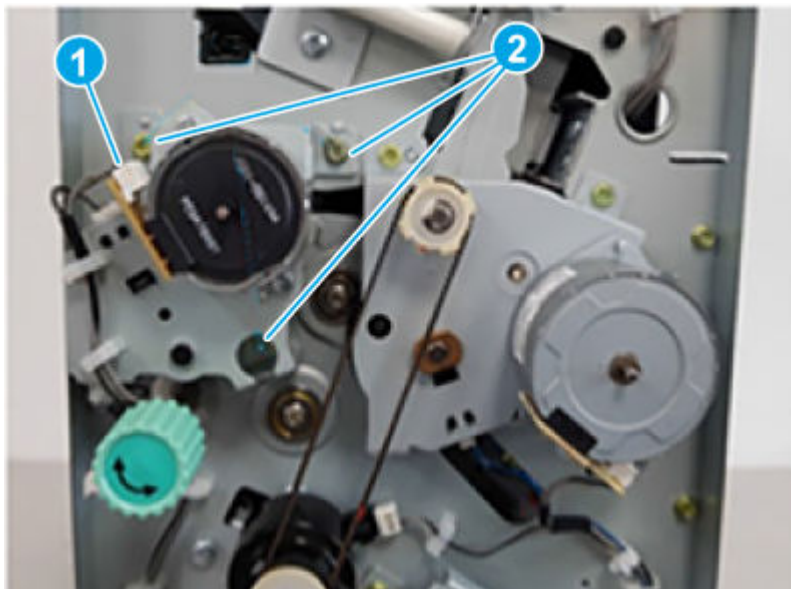


5 Remove the booklet finisher booklet diverter motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet diverter motor assembly.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then remove the booklet diverter motor assembly.


Figure 6-2570 Remove the assembly



6 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Booklet diverter motor

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher diverter motor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the external finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-314 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC81-09881B	Booklet diverter motor

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

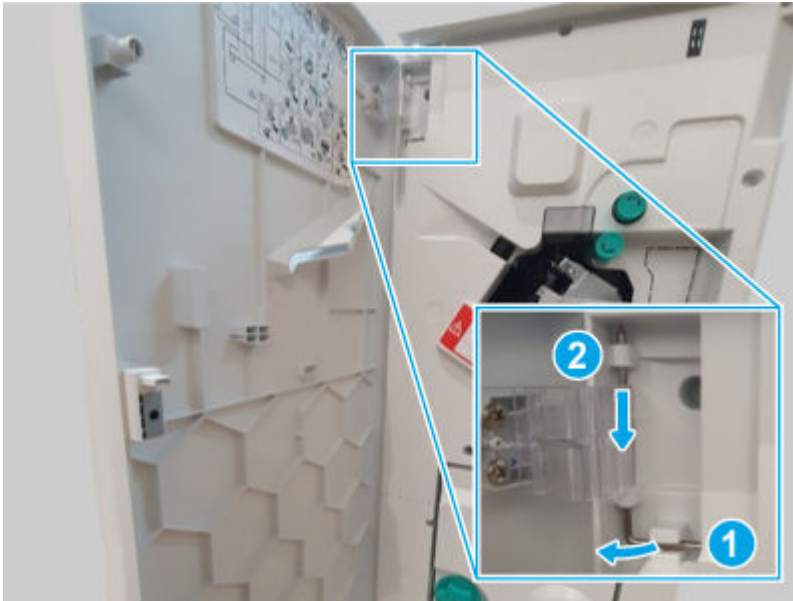
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

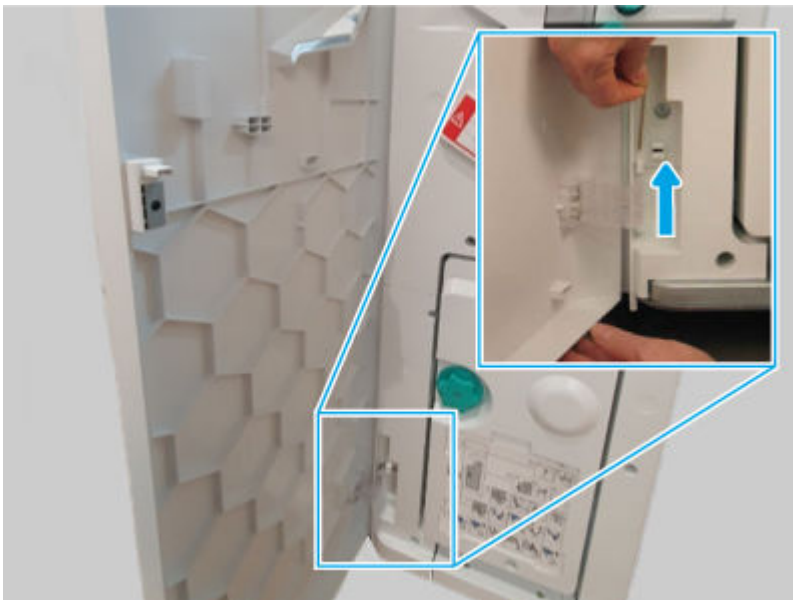
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2571 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2572 Remove the door

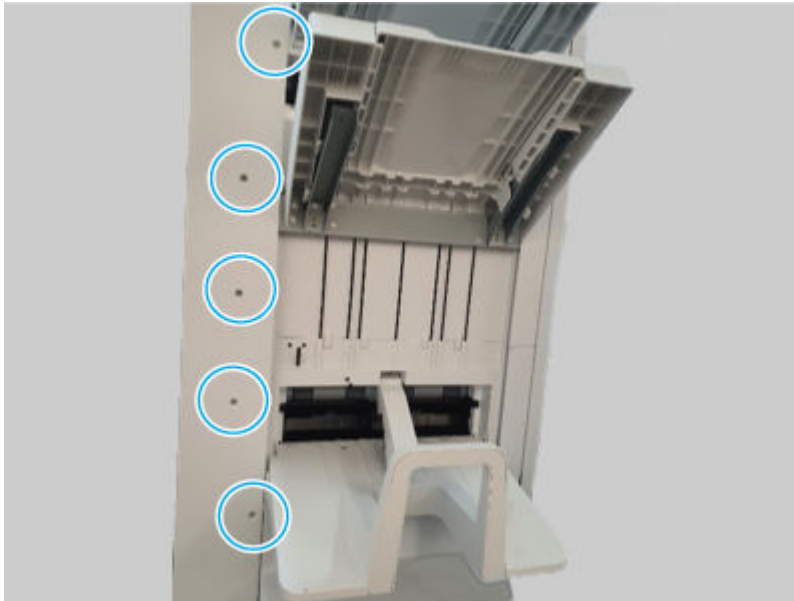


2 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2573 Remove five screws



2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.


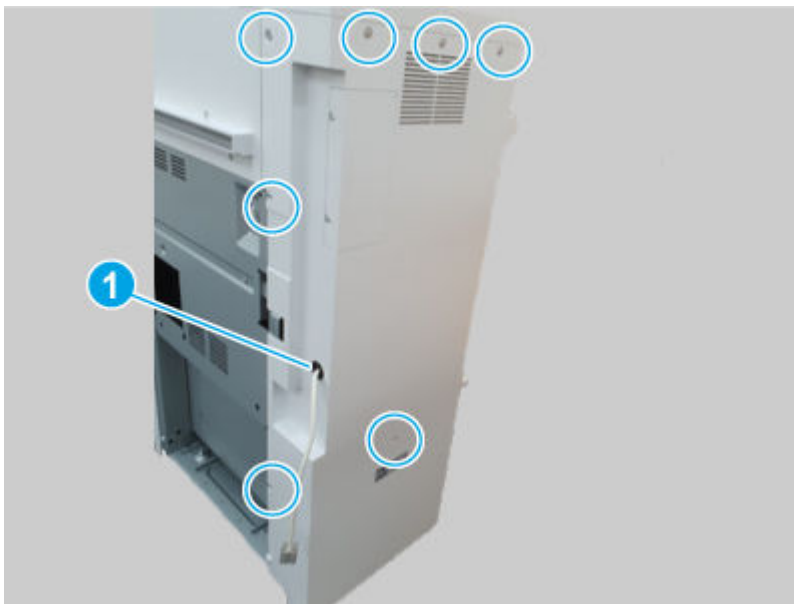
 **NOTE:** Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2574 Remove the cover



3. **Remove the external finisher top cover**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

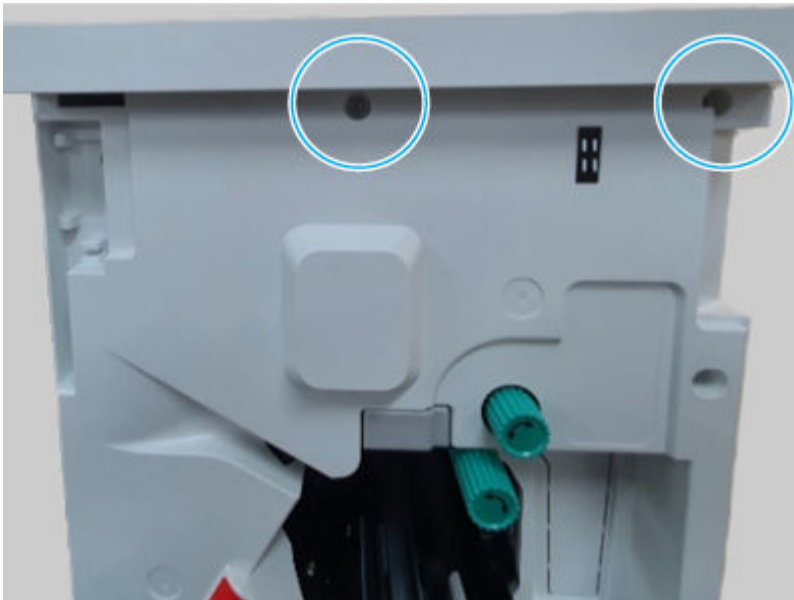
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2575 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2576 Remove the cover



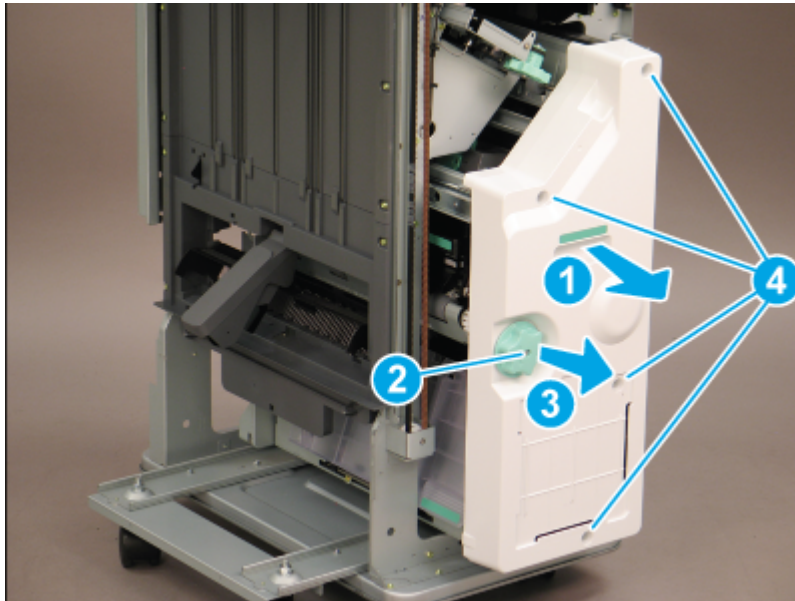
4 Remove the external finisher booklet finisher front cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher booklet finisher front cover.

1. Open the front door.
2. Do the following:
 - a. Slide the booklet finisher slightly away from the finisher (callout 1).

- b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then slide the green knob away from the booklet finisher to remove it (callout 3).
- c. Remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the booklet finisher front cover.

Figure 6-2577 Remove the cover

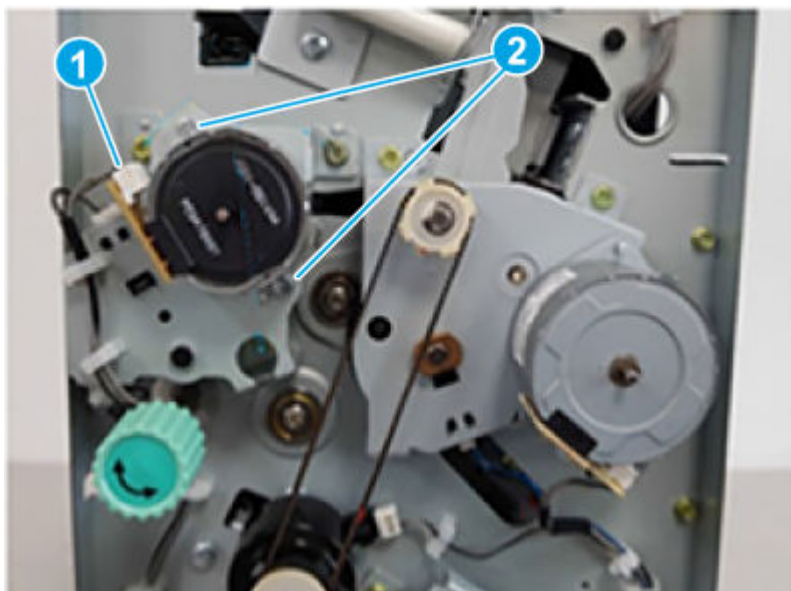


5 Remove the booklet finisher booklet diverter motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet diverter motor.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the booklet diverter motor.


Figure 6-2578 Remove the motor



6 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Booklet output tray unit

Review the booklet finisher booklet output tray unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Booklet output tray

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher output tray.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-315 Part information

Part number	Part description
8GS05-60126	Booklet output tray

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

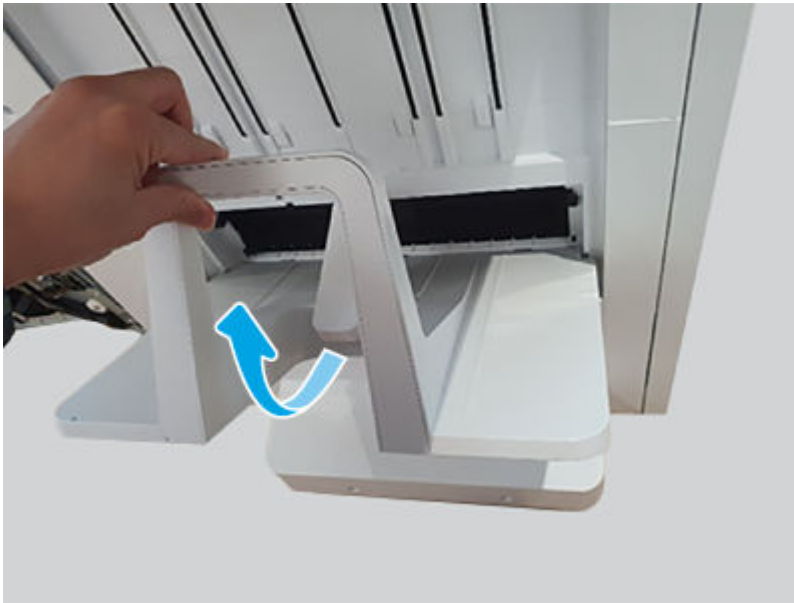
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the booklet finisher booklet output tray

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet output tray.

- Rotate the front of the tray up, and then pull it away from the finisher to remove it.


Figure 6-2579 Remove the tray



2 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Booklet output tray sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher output tray sensor.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-316 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC82-01039A	Tray sensor kit (Booklet output tray sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

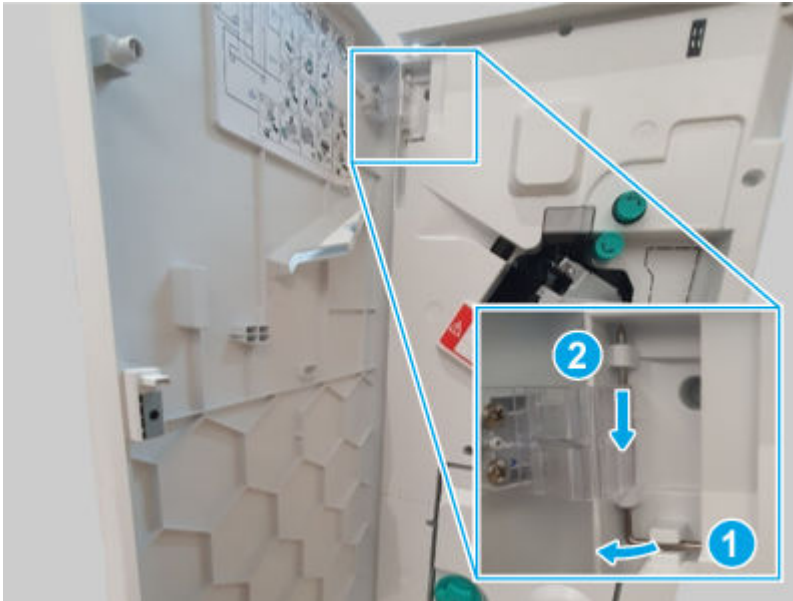
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

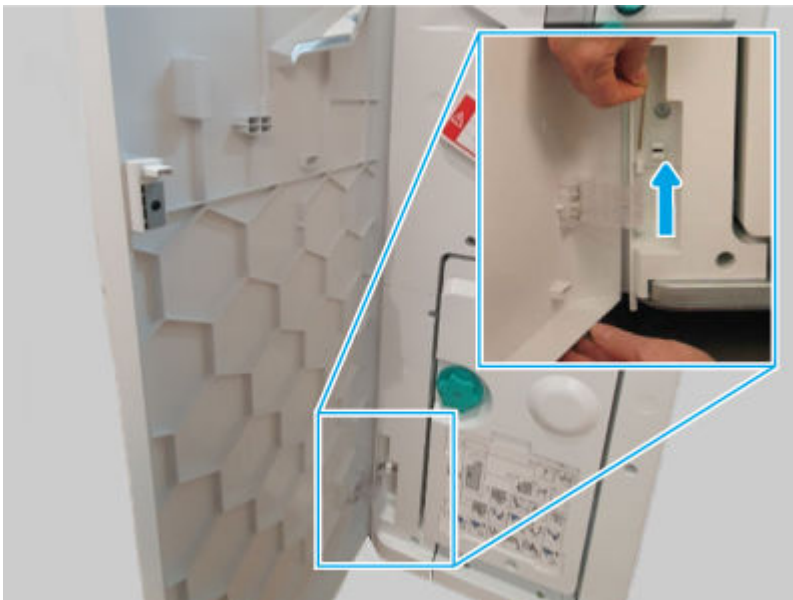
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2580 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2581 Remove the door



2 Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

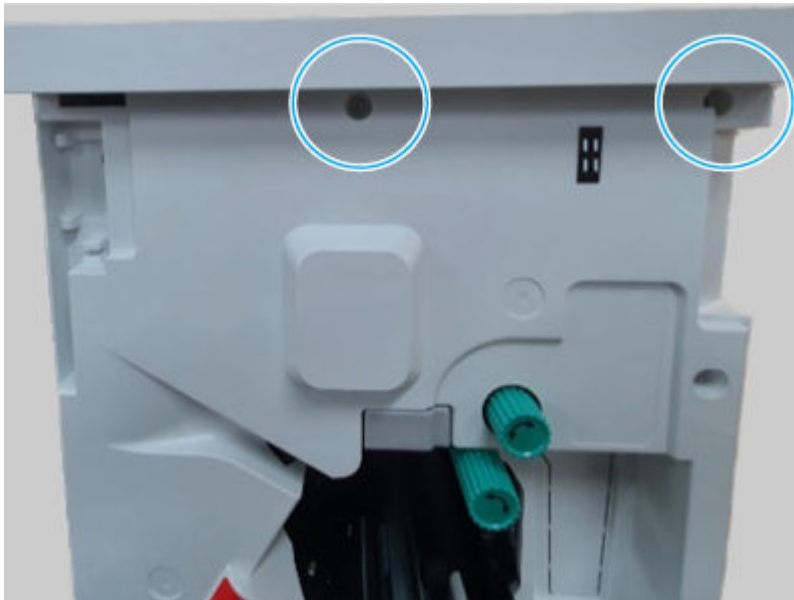
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2582 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2583 Remove the cover

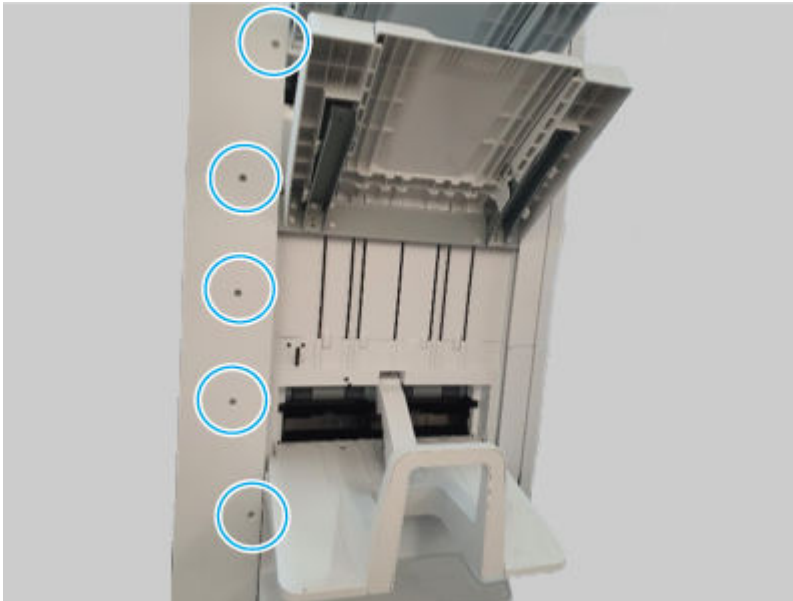


3 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2584 Remove five screws

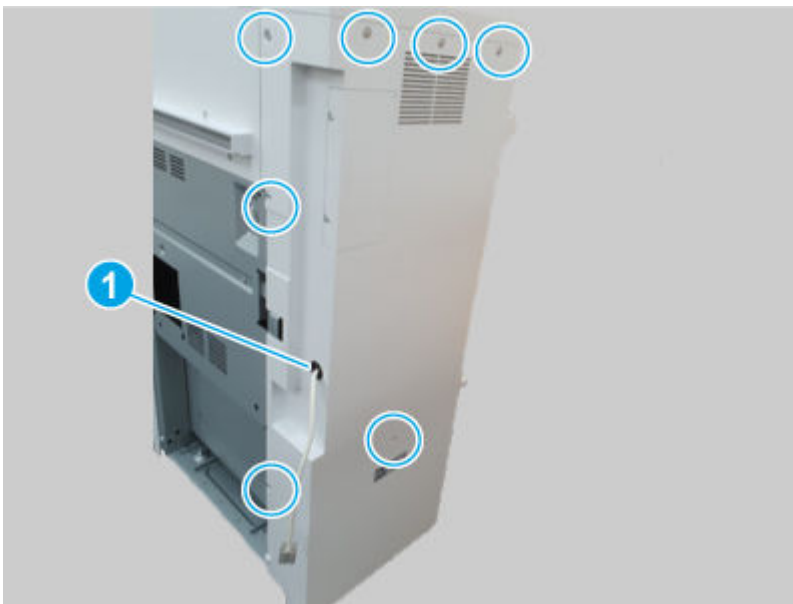


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2585 Remove the cover



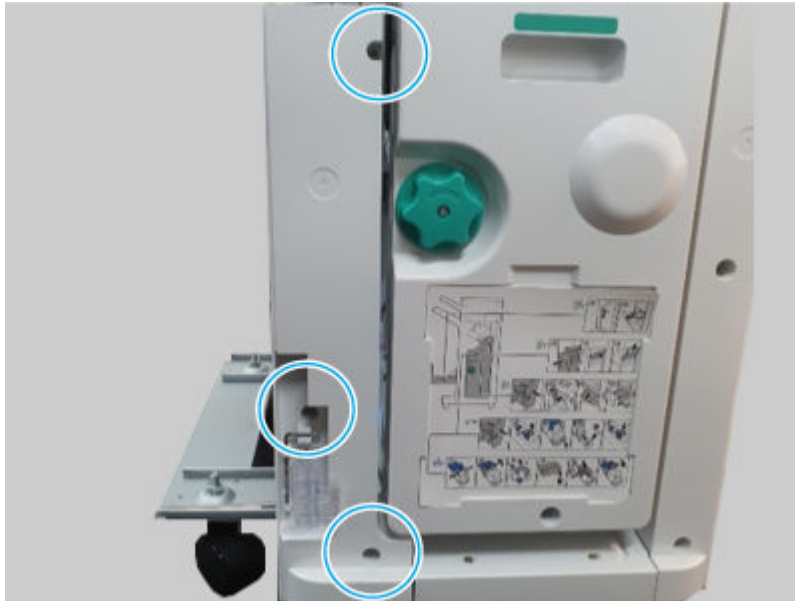
4 Remove the external finisher front lower left cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front lower left cover.

1. Remove the external finisher from the printer.

2. Remove three screws, and then remove the front lower left cover.

Figure 6-2586 Remove the cover

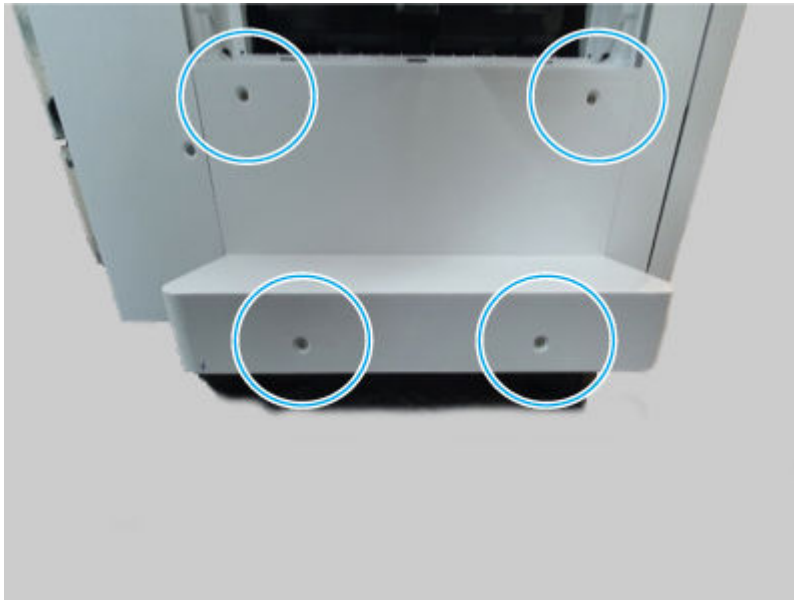


5. Remove the external finisher caster cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher caster cover.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the caster cover.

Figure 6-2587 Remove the cover

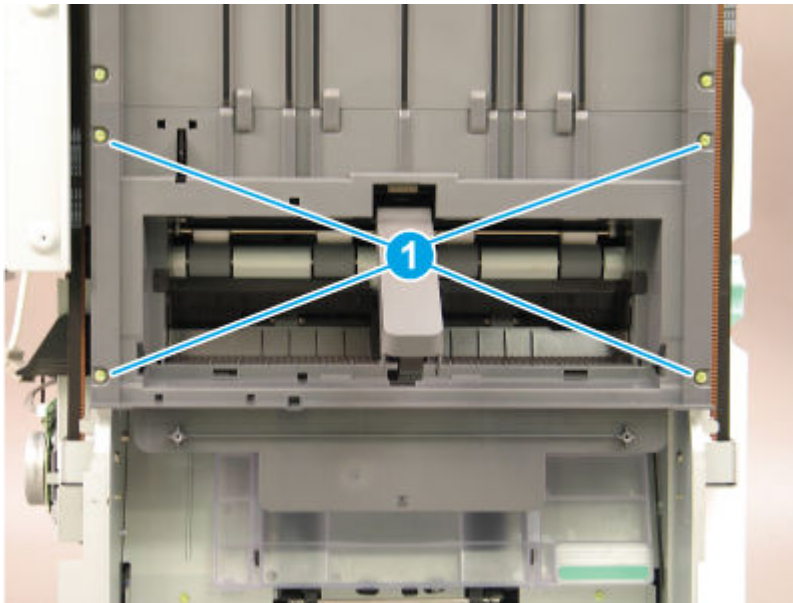


6. Remove the external finisher left lower cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher left lower cover.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2588 Remove four screws

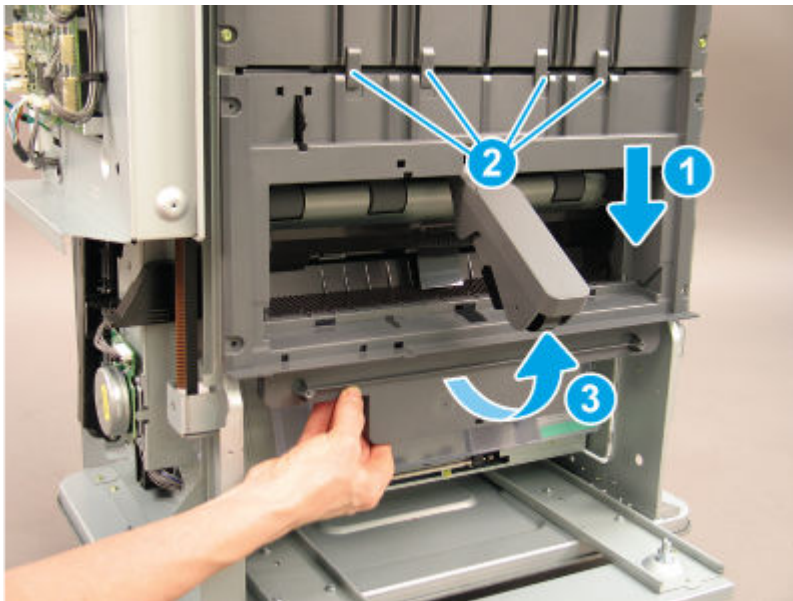


2. Slide the shield down (callout 1) to release it from four tabs (callout 2), and then rotate it away from the finisher (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: The cover is still attached to the finisher. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

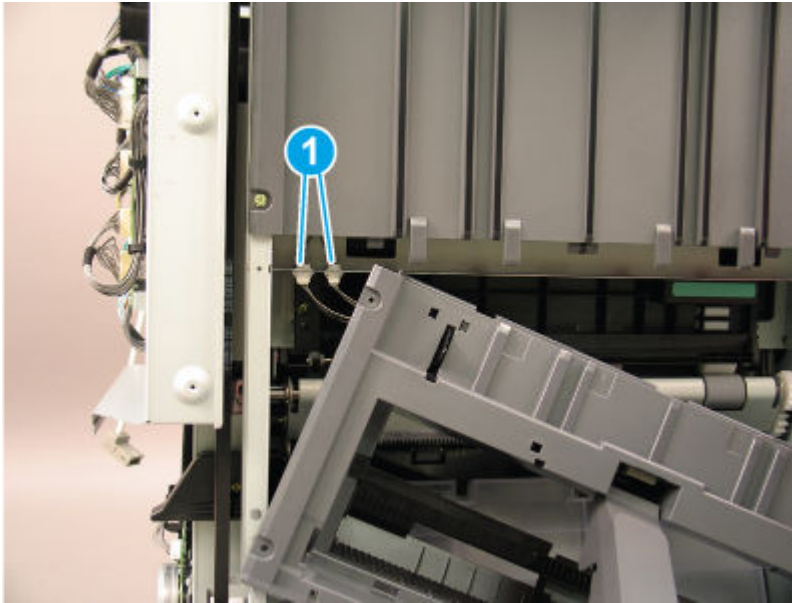
💡 Reinstallation tip: Position the cover under the four tabs (callout 2) when reinstalling it.

Figure 6-2589 Release the cover



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove the left lower cover.

Figure 6-2590 Remove the cover



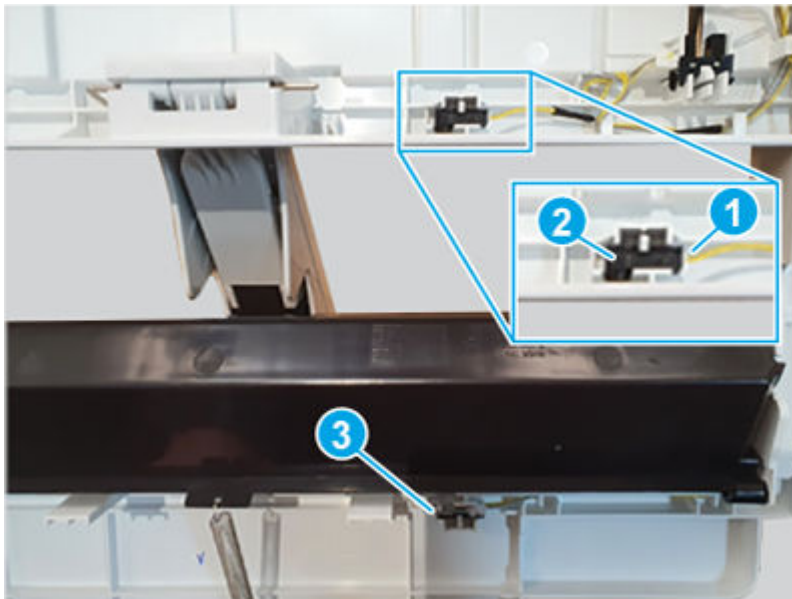
7 Remove the booklet finisher booklet output tray sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet output tray sensor.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the booklet output tray sensor (callout 2).

 **NOTE:** Repeat this step for the remaining sensor (callout 3) if necessary.


Figure 6-2591 Remove the sensor



8 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

PCA

Review the booklet finisher PCA removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Main PCA

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher main PCA.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-317 Part information

Part number	Part description
6GW55-60001	Booklet maker main PCA

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

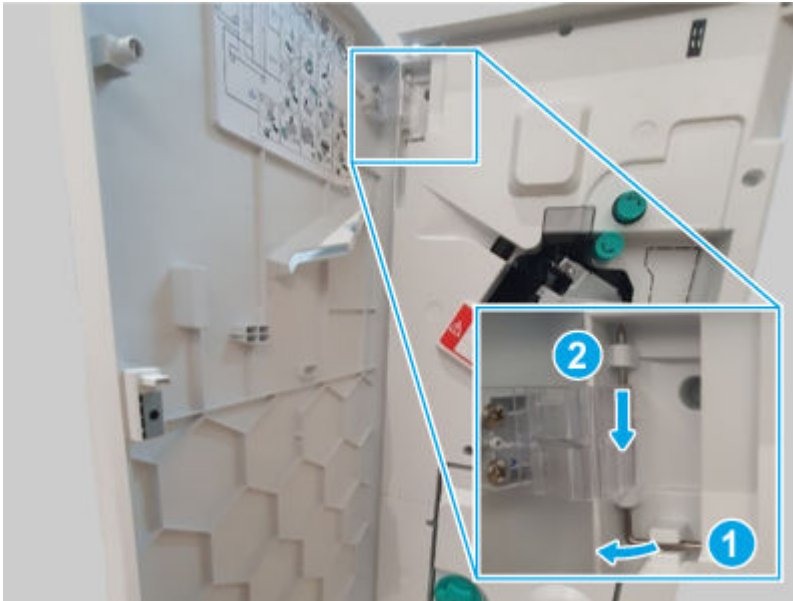
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

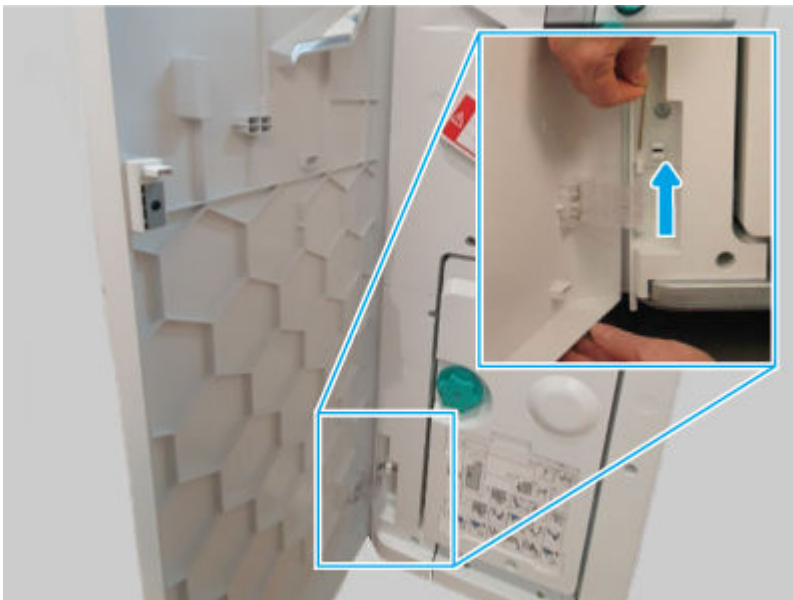
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2592 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2593 Remove the door



2 Remove the external finisher top cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher top cover.

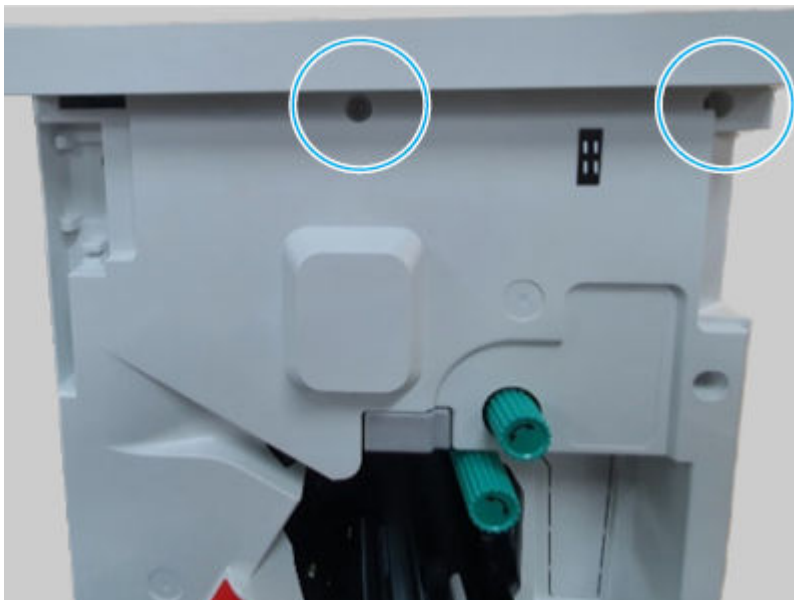
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2594 Remove three screws



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 6-2595 Remove the cover

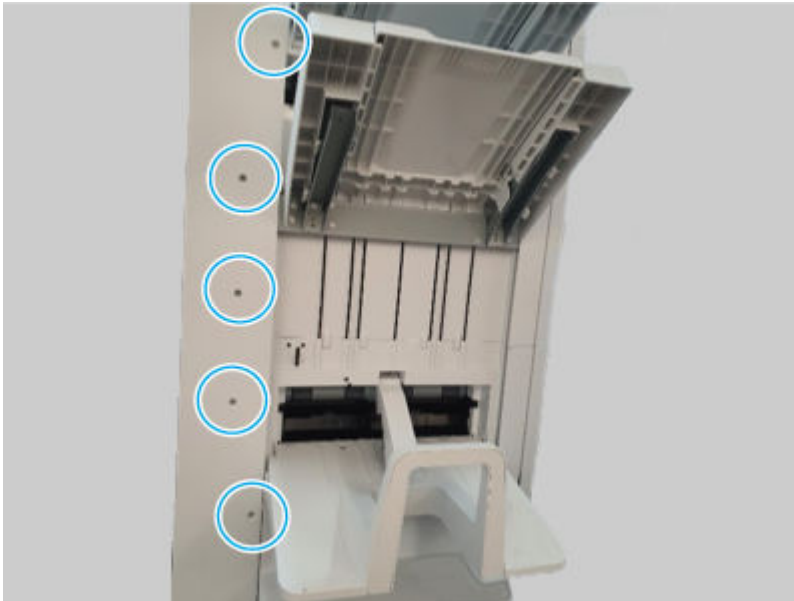


3 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2596 Remove five screws

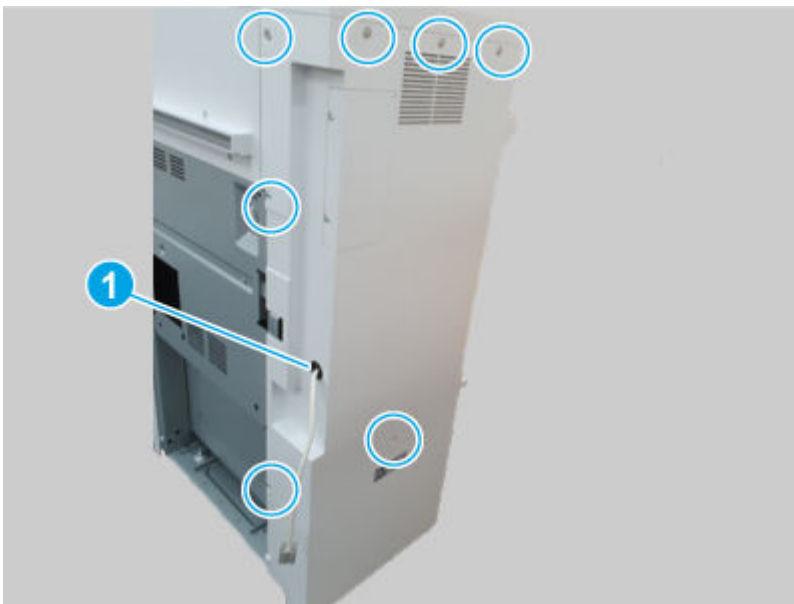


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2597 Remove the cover

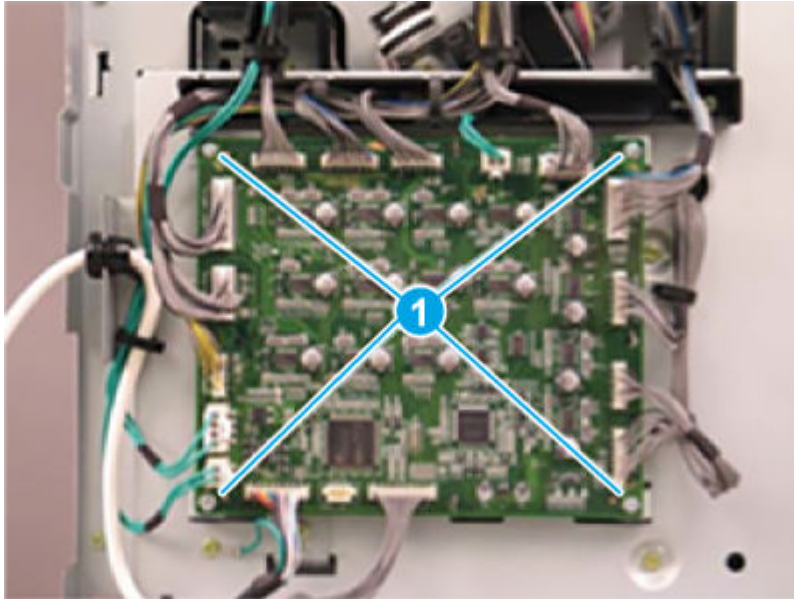


4 Remove the booklet finisher main PCA

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher main PCA.

- Disconnect all of the connectors, remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the booklet finisher PCA.

Figure 6-2598 Remove the PCA



5 **Unpack the replacement assembly**

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: PCA

Learn about removing and replacing the booklet finisher PCA.



NOTE: Remove the external finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-318 Part information

Part number	Part description
6GW51-60001	Booklet maker PCA

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

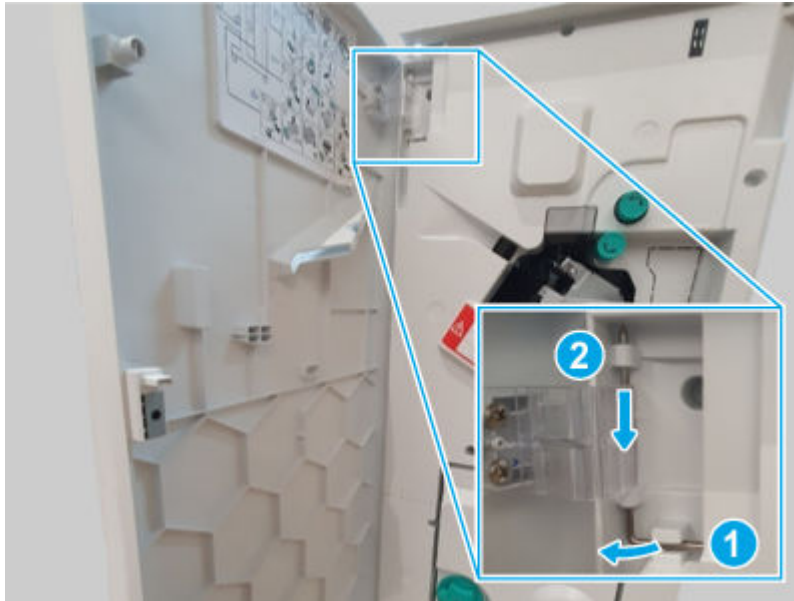
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher front door

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher front door.

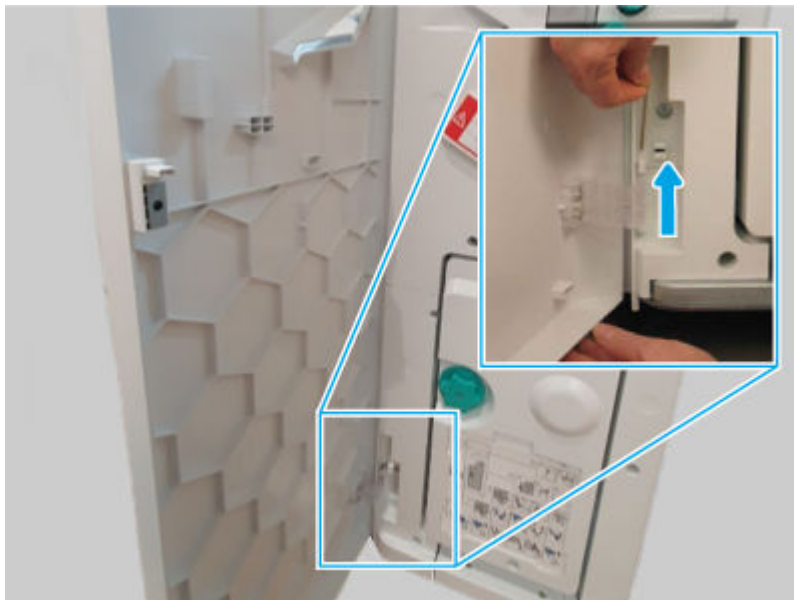
1. Release, and then remove the upper hinge pin.

Figure 6-2599 Remove the hinge pin



2. Support the door, release and remove the lower hinge pin, and then remove the front door

Figure 6-2600 Remove the door

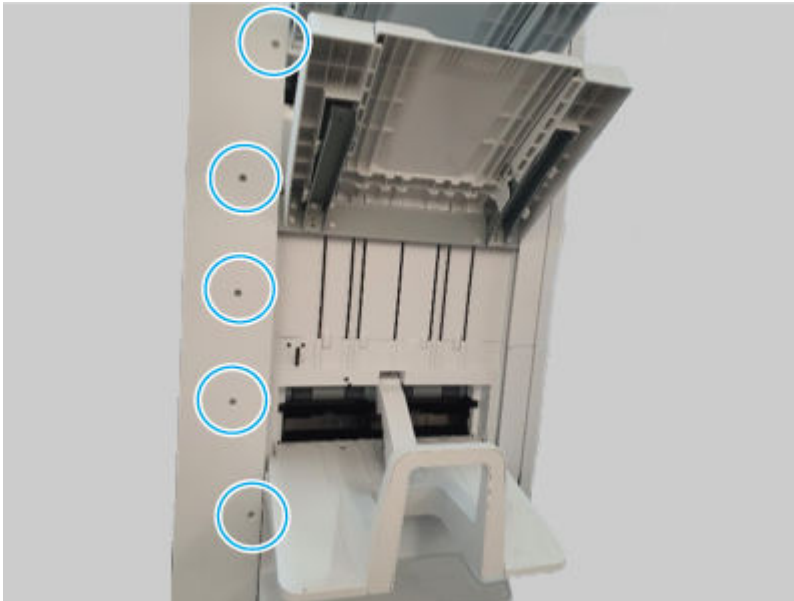


2 Remove the external finisher rear cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher rear cover.

1. Remove five screws.

Figure 6-2601 Remove five screws

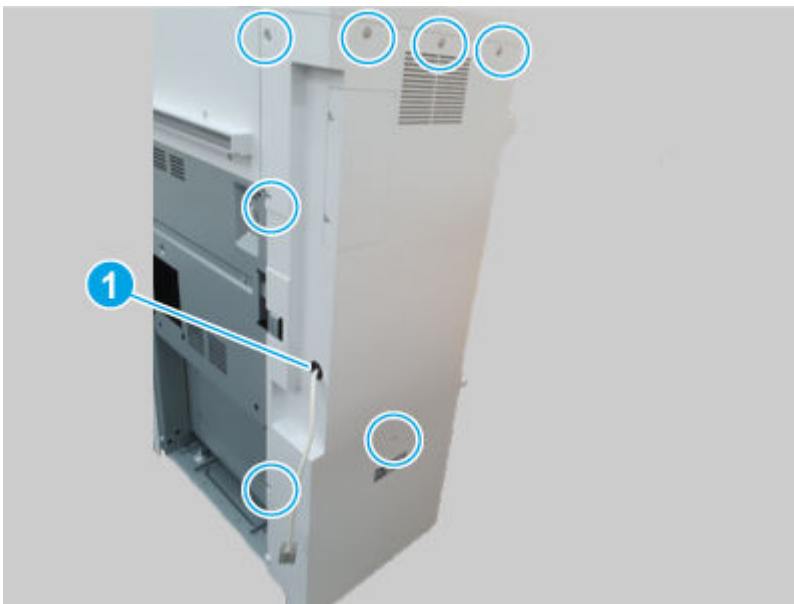


2. Remove seven screws, and then remove the rear cover.



NOTE: Thread the power cord through the hole in the cover as it is removed (callout 1).

Figure 6-2602 Remove the cover

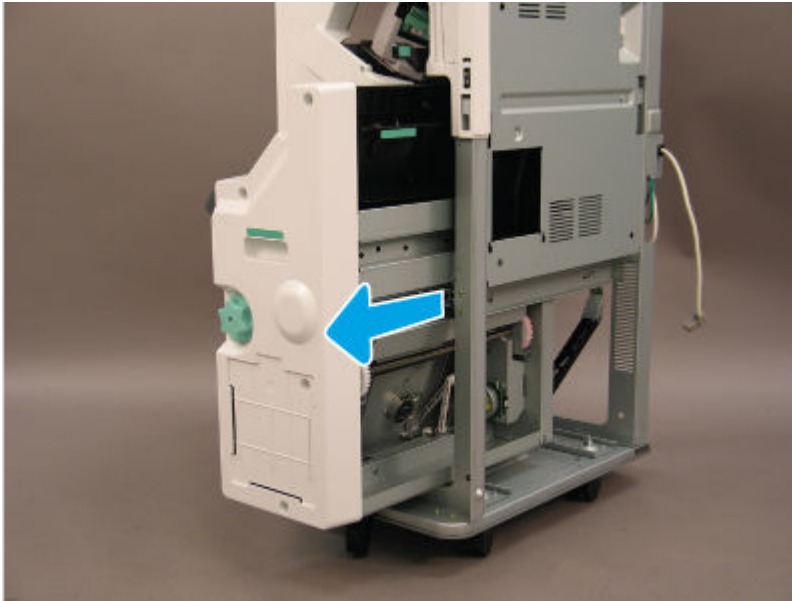


- 3 **Remove the booklet finisher booklet maker**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher booklet maker.

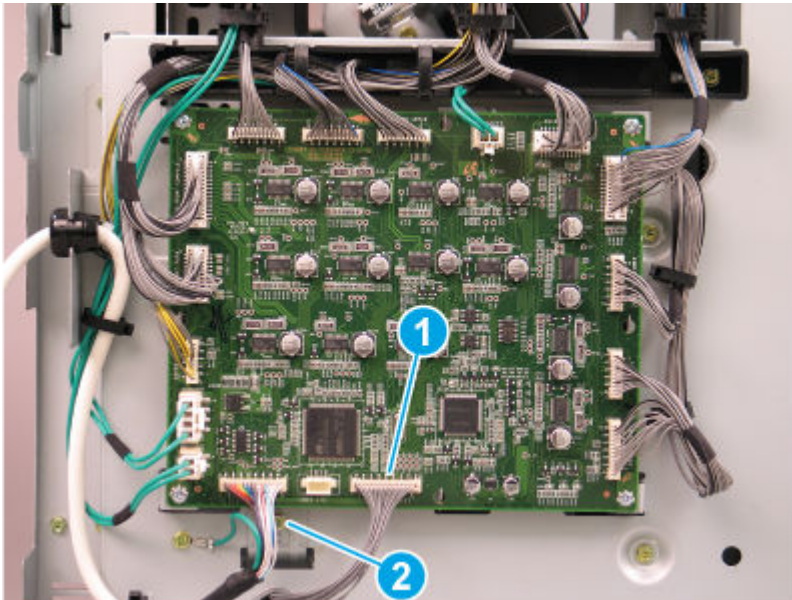
1. Slide the booklet maker out of the finisher.

Figure 6-2603 Slide the booklet maker out



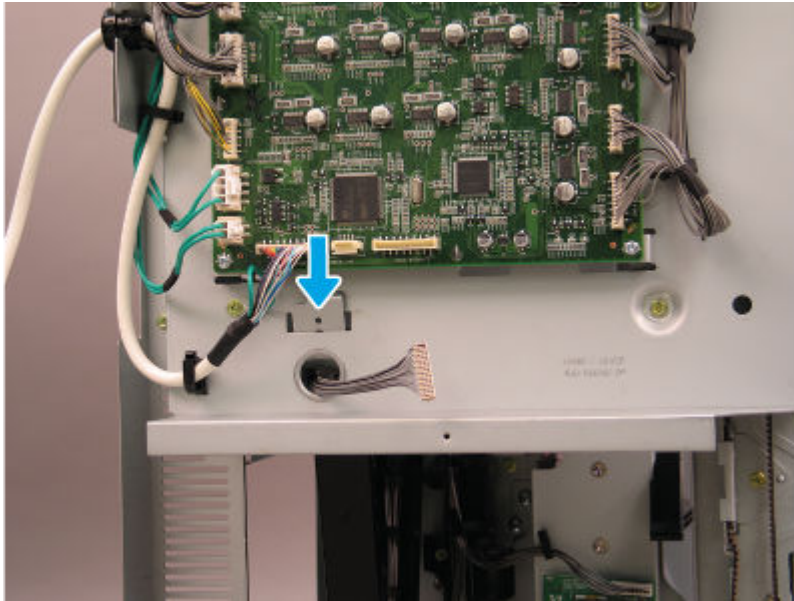
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 6-2604 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



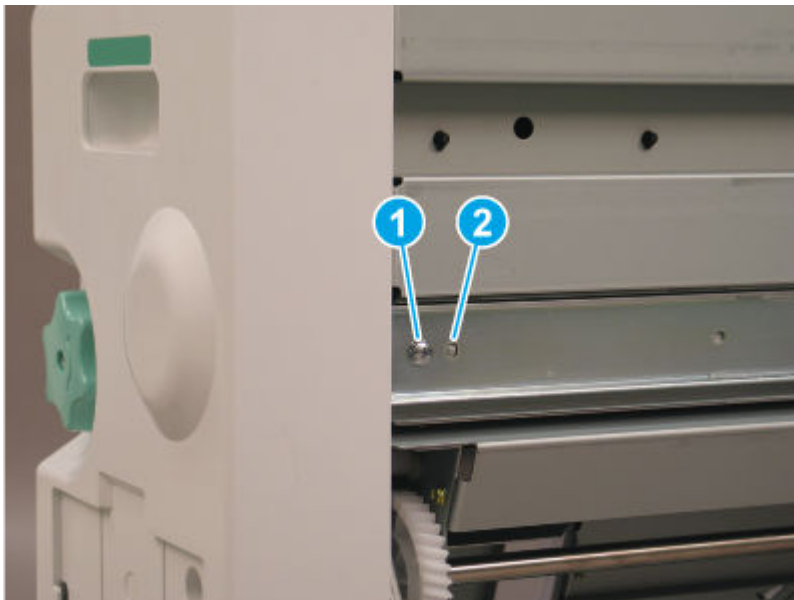
3. Release the metal bracket through the opening in the sheet-metal.

Figure 6-2605 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



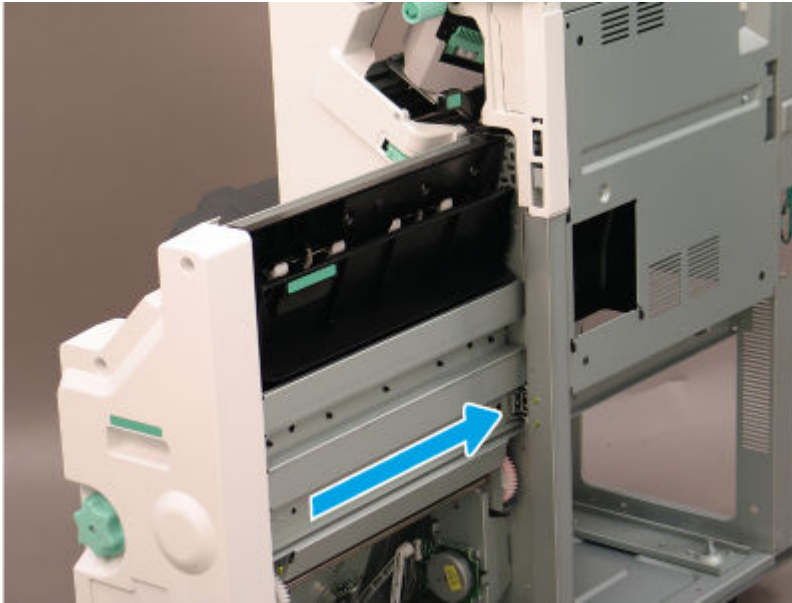
4. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release the alignment pin (callout 2).

Figure 6-2606 Release the alignment pin



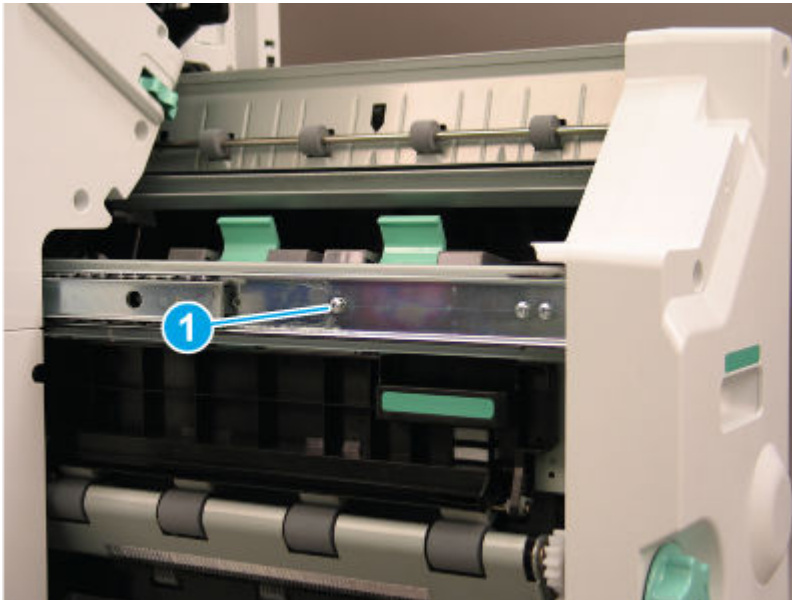
5. Slide the right rail toward the finisher.

Figure 6-2607 Slide the rail in



6. Remove one screw (callout 1) on the left side of the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2608 Remove one screw



7. Lift the booklet maker up on the left side while pulling the right rail away from the finisher chassis to clear the sheet-metal. Remove the booklet maker unit.


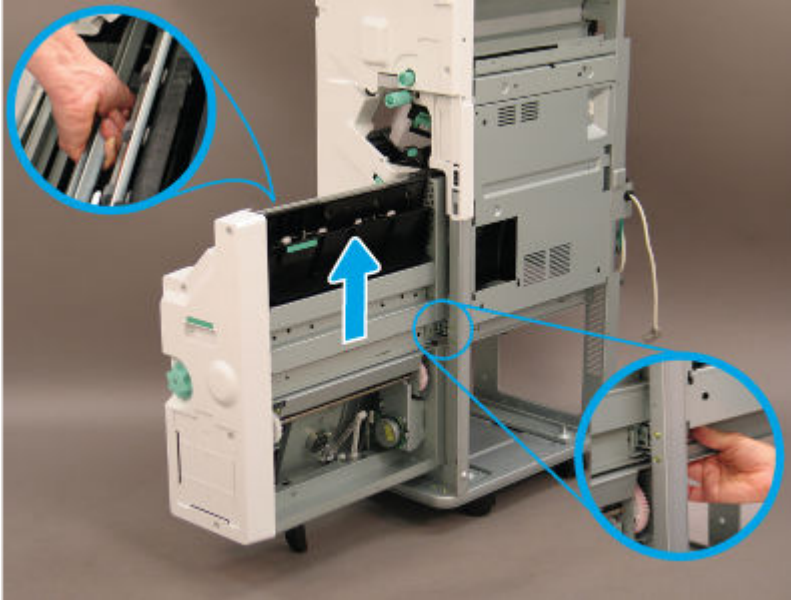
 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure to use the special installation instructions in this topic (located after the unpack and recycle step).

Figure 6-2609 Remove the booklet maker

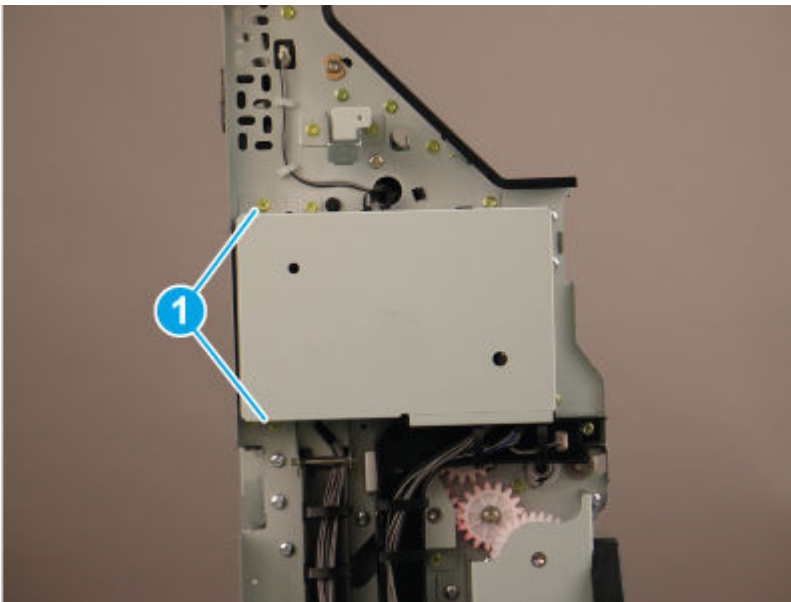


4 Remove the booklet finisher PCA

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the booklet finisher PCA.

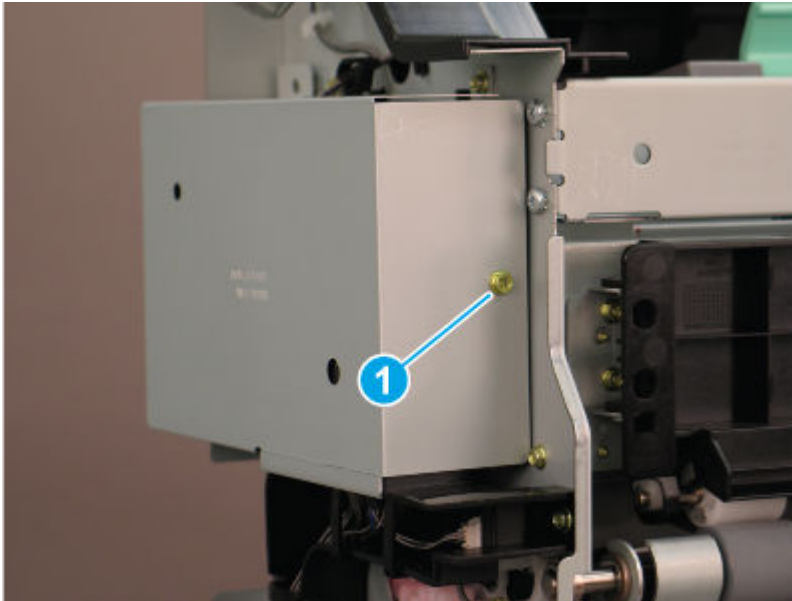
1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 6-2610 Remove two screws



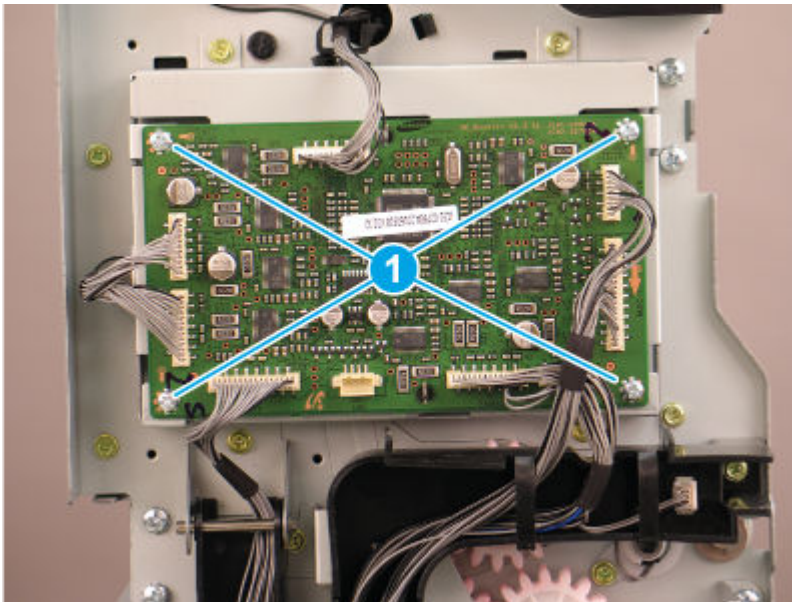
2. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 6-2611 Remove one screw



3. Disconnect all of the connectors, remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the booklet finisher PCA.

Figure 6-2612 Remove the PCA



5 **Unpack the replacement assembly**

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT:  Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


NOTE:  If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE:  When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

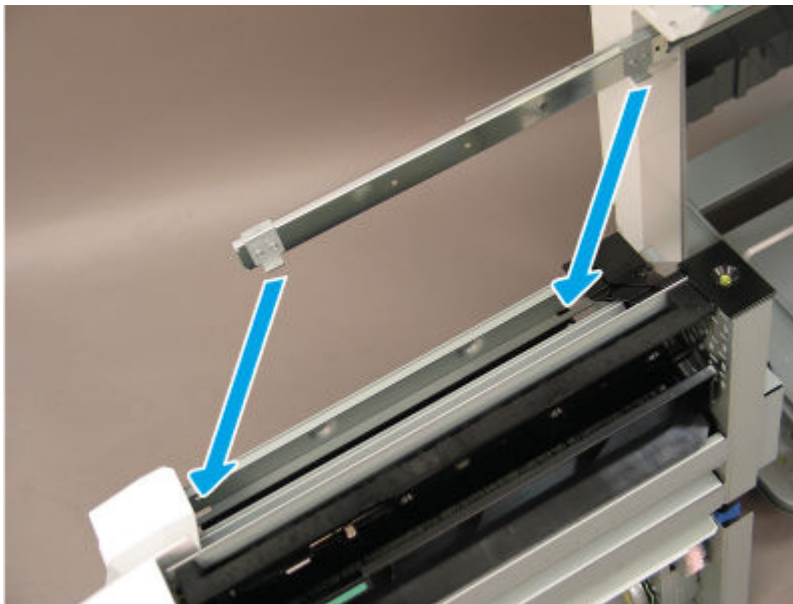
6 Special installation instructions: booklet finisher booklet maker

Use the following procedure to install the booklet finisher booklet maker.

NOTE:  Use the special installation instructions to correctly install the booklet maker.

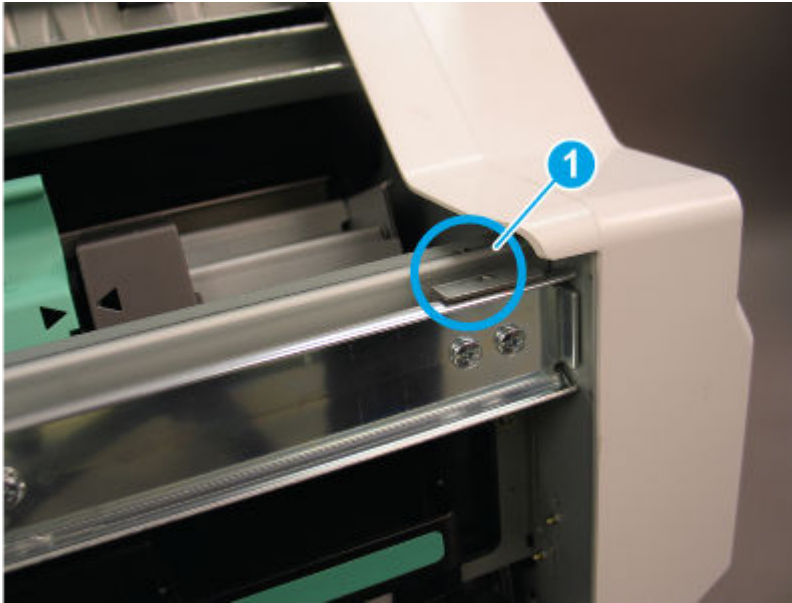
1. When installing the booklet finisher, position the hooks on the rail under the slots on the booklet maker.

Figure 6-2613 Position the hooks on the rail



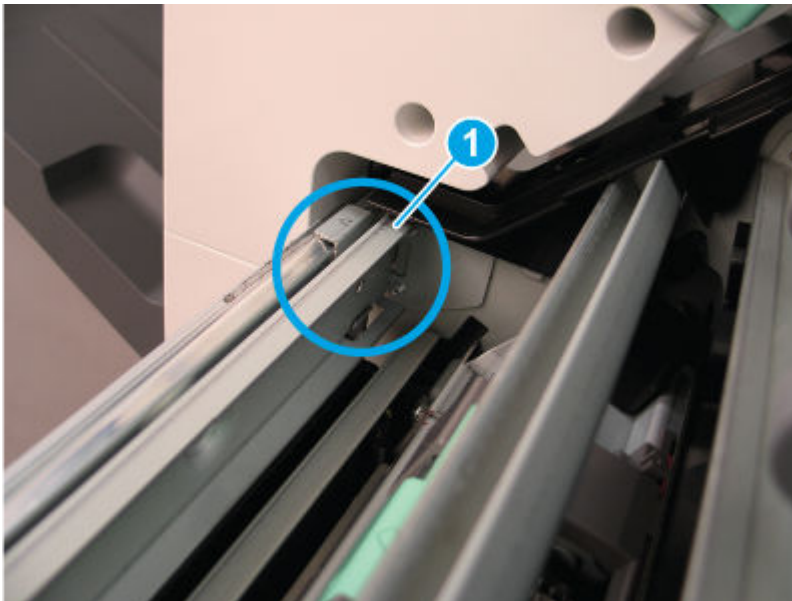
2. When installed correctly, the arrow on the front of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2614 Check rail alignment (1 of 2)



3. When installed correctly, the arrow on the back of the booklet maker aligns with the arrow on the finisher rail (callout 1).

Figure 6-2615 Check rail alignment (2 of 2)



4. Extend the right rail away from the finisher and position it in the booklet maker slot.



NOTE: Continue the installation by reversing the removal steps.

Figure 6-2616 Attach the rail



Miscellaneous parts

Review the booklet finisher miscellaneous parts removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Finisher mounting brackets

Learn about removing and replacing the external finisher mounting brackets.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-319 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01442A	Finisher mount bracket

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the external finisher mounting brackets

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the external finisher mounting brackets.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the external finisher mounting brackets.

Figure 6-2617 Remove the brackets



2 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.


<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.




CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Inner finisher

Learn about inner finisher parts removal and replacement.

Whole unit and rail

Review the inner finisher whole unit and rail removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Inner finisher

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-320 Part information

Part number	Part description
6GW49-67002	Inner finisher

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher.

1. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2618 Disconnect one connector



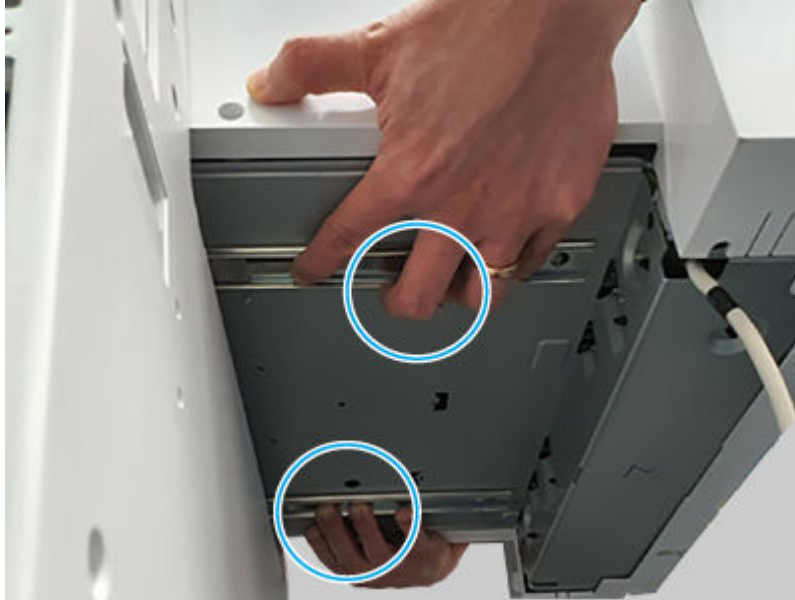
2. Open the front cover, and then pull the lock release handle.

Figure 6-2619 Pull the handle



3. Do the following:
 - Partially slide the inner finisher away from the printer.
 - Release two locks on the slide rails.
 - Slide the inner finisher completely off of the printer to remove it.

Figure 6-2620 Remove the unit



2 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Guide rails

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher guide rails.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-321 Part information

Part number	Part description
6102-003354	Guide rail

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher.

1. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2621 Disconnect one connector



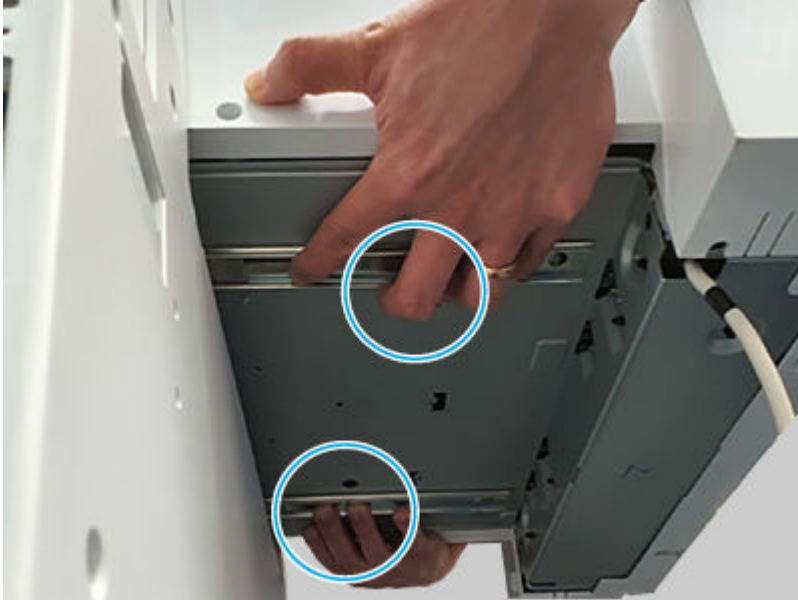
2. Open the front cover, and then pull the lock release handle.

Figure 6-2622 Pull the handle



3. Do the following:
 - Partially slide the inner finisher away from the printer.
 - Release two locks on the slide rails.
 - Slide the inner finisher completely off of the printer to remove it.

Figure 6-2623 Remove the unit

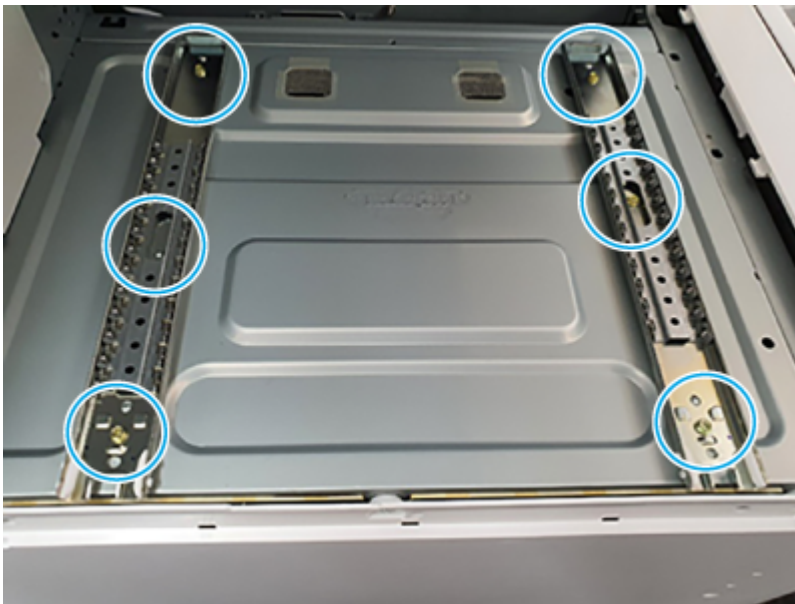


2 Remove the inner finisher guide rails

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher guide rails.

- Remove six screws, and then remove the inner finisher guide rails.


Figure 6-2624 Remove the guide rails





3 Unpack the replacement assembly


Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Cover

Review the inner finisher cover removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Front cover assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher front cover assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-322 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-60123	Front cover assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

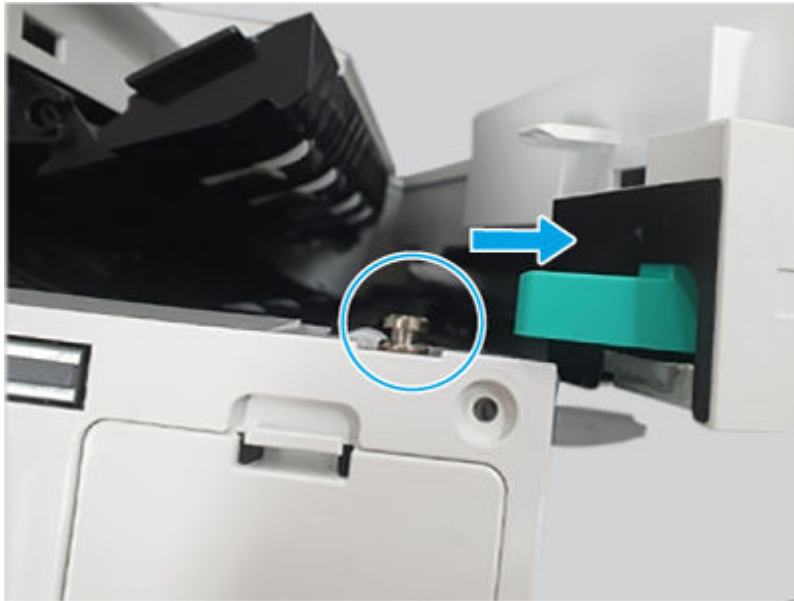
1 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-2625 Open the punch cover



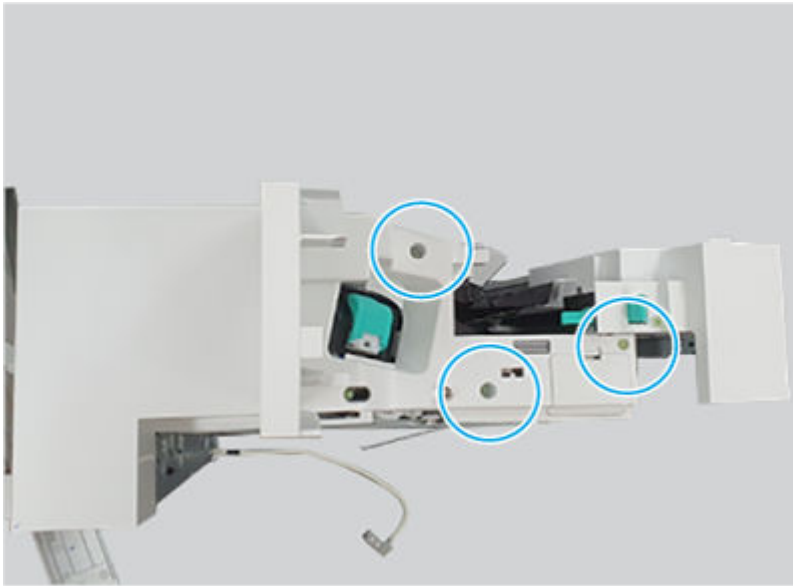
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-2626 Remove the handle



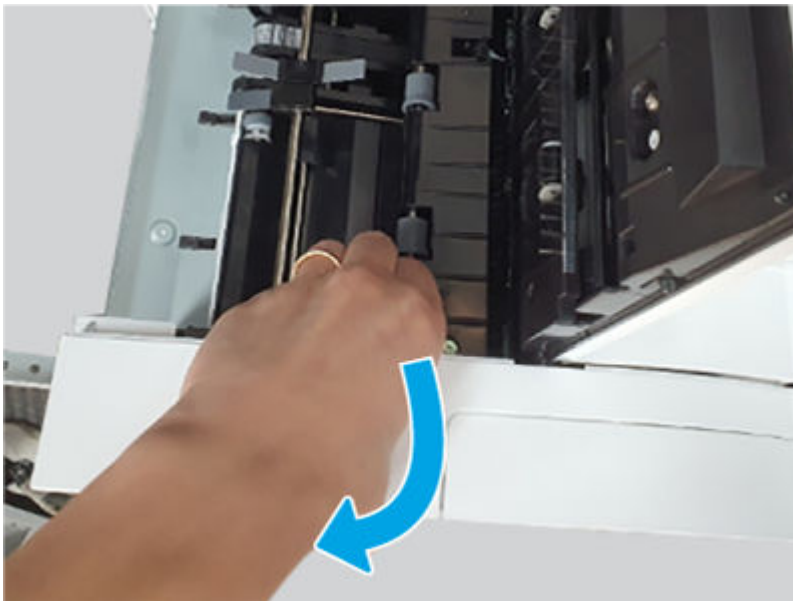
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2627 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-2628 Remove the cover



2 **Unpack the replacement assembly**

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Top cover assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher top cover assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-323 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-60125	Top cover assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

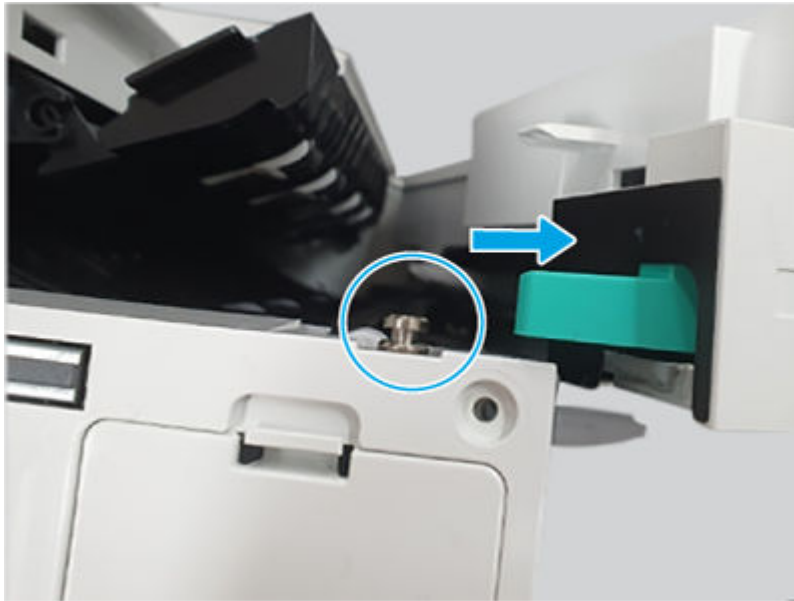
1 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-2629 Open the punch cover



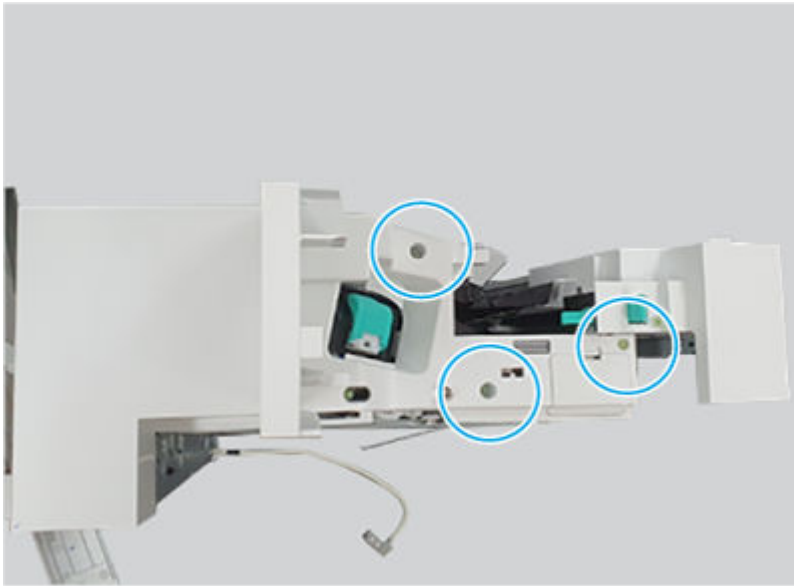
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-2630 Remove the handle



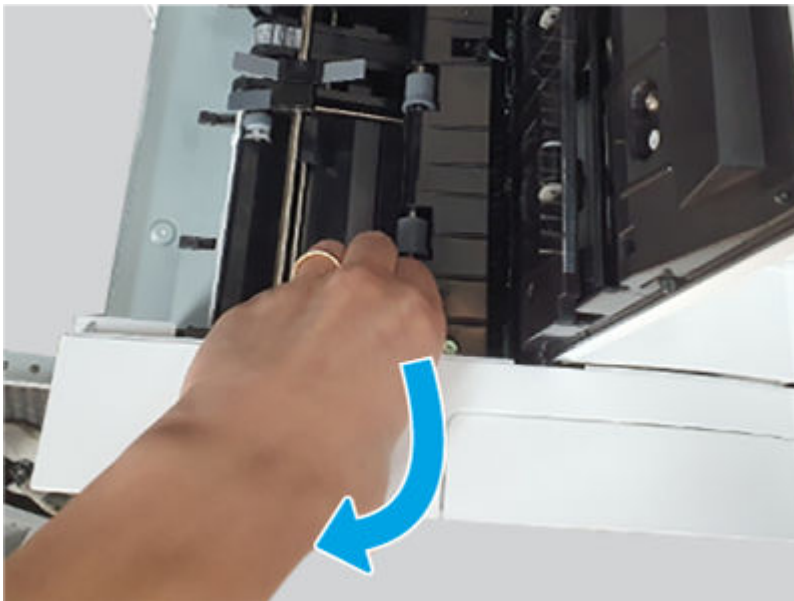
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2631 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-2632 Remove the cover

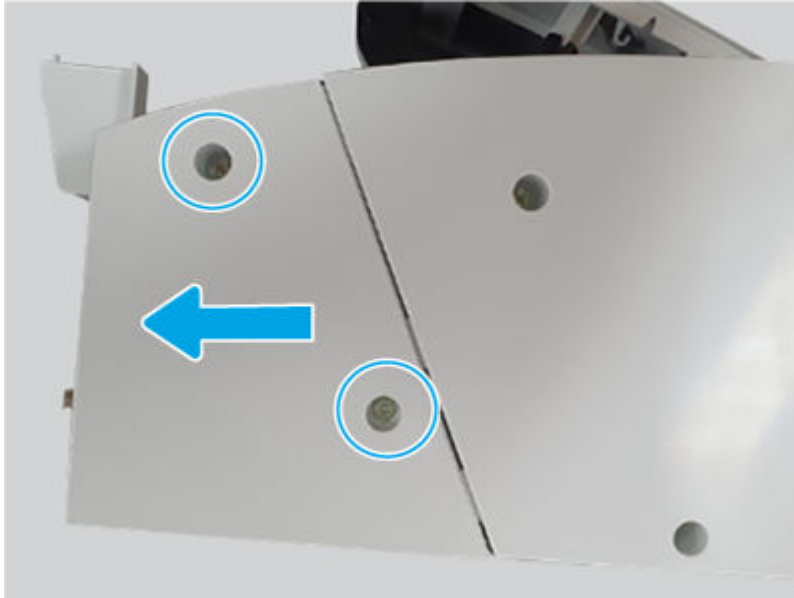


2 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-2633 Remove the cover



3 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

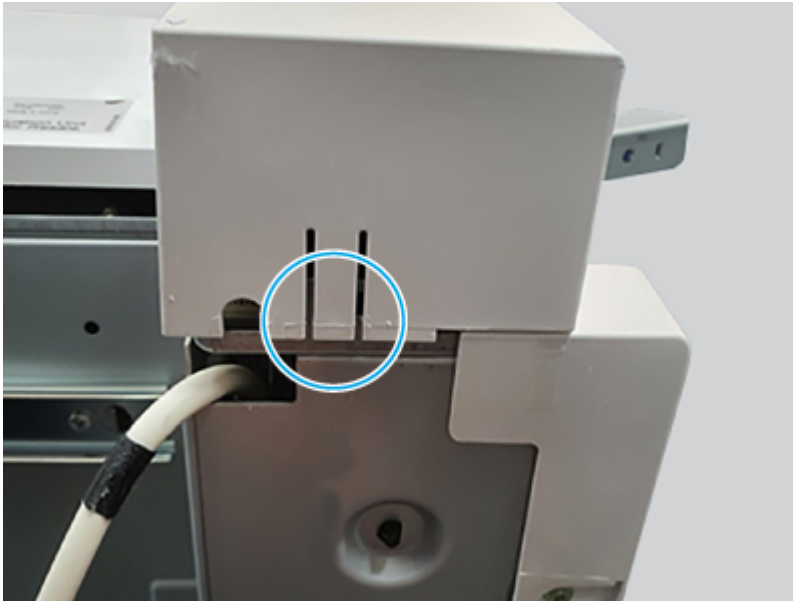
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2634 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-2635 Remove the cover

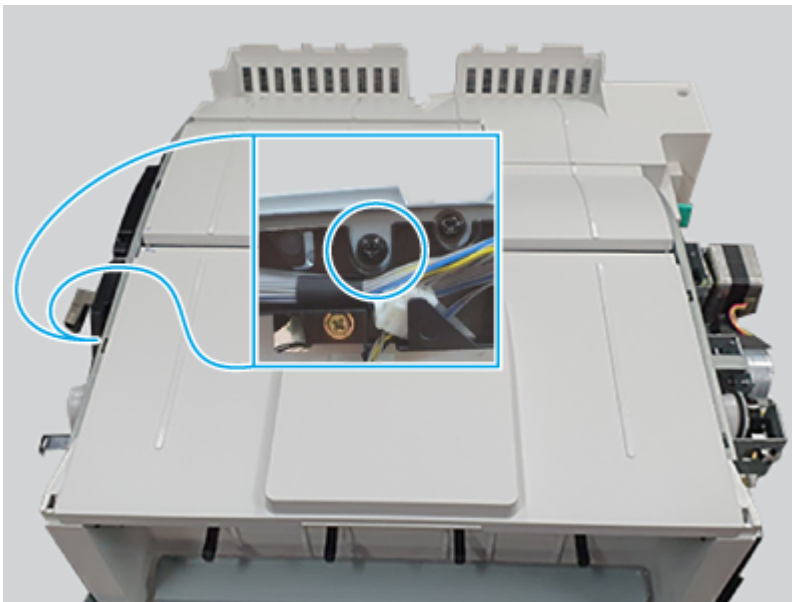


4. **Remove the inner finisher top cover assembly**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher top cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher top cover assembly.

Figure 6-2636 Remove the cover



5. **Unpack the replacement assembly**

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Middle cover assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher middle cover assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-324 Part Information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-60124	Middle cover assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

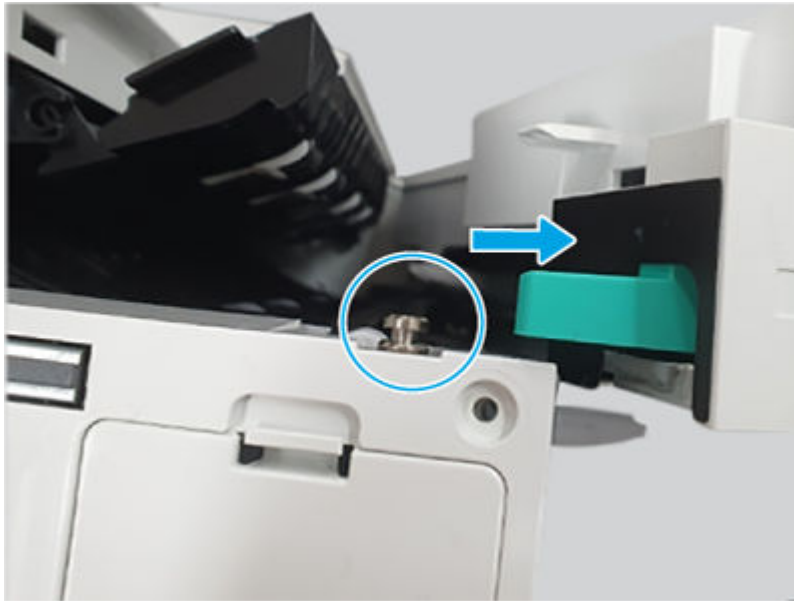
1 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-2637 Open the punch cover



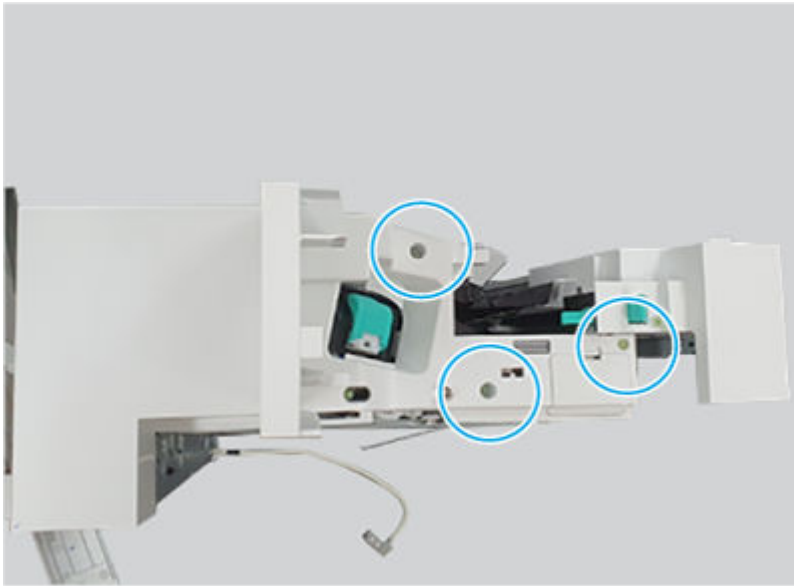
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-2638 Remove the handle



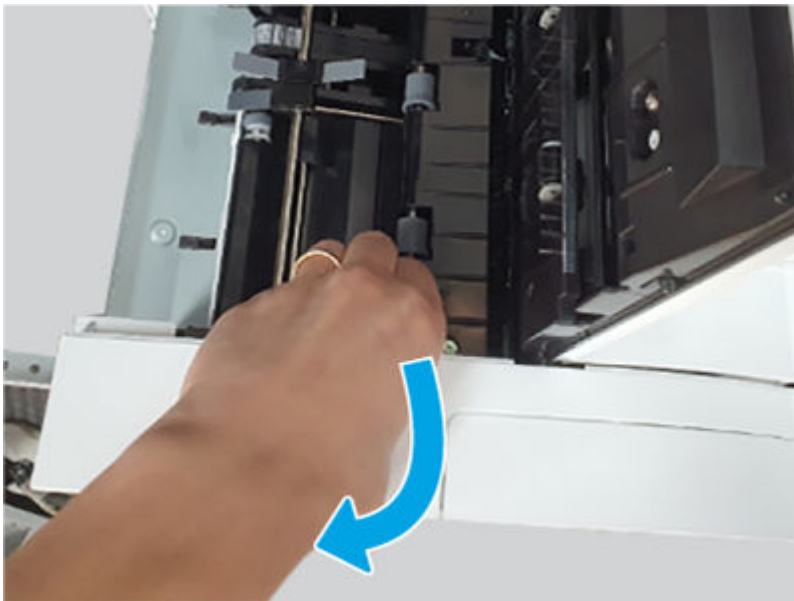
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2639 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-2640 Remove the cover

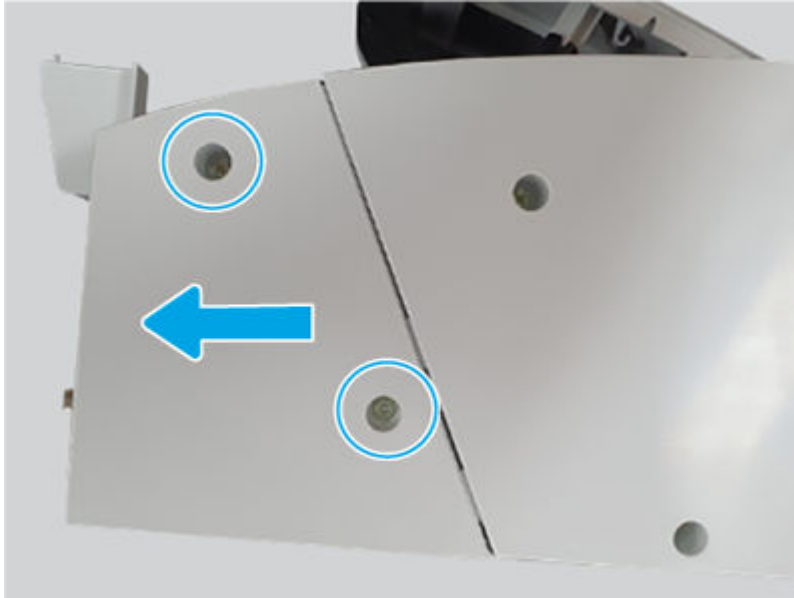


2 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-2641 Remove the cover



3 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

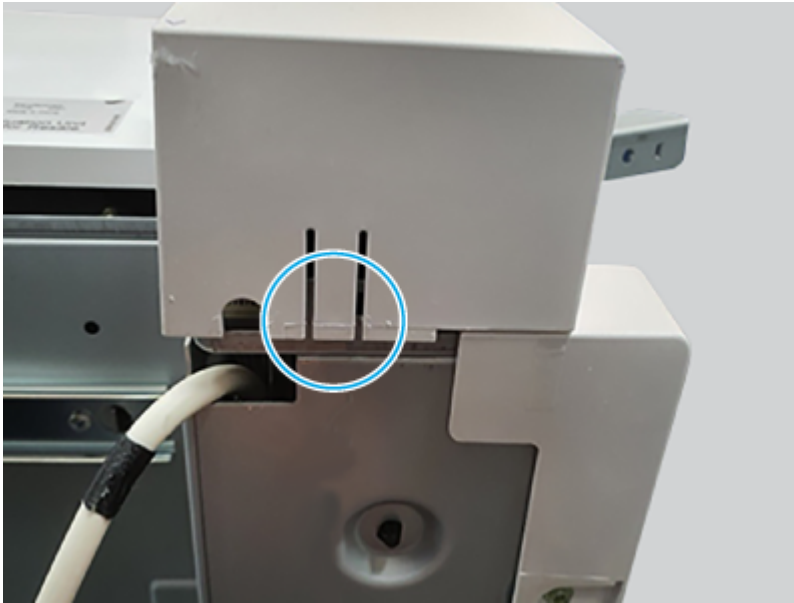
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2642 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-2643 Remove the cover

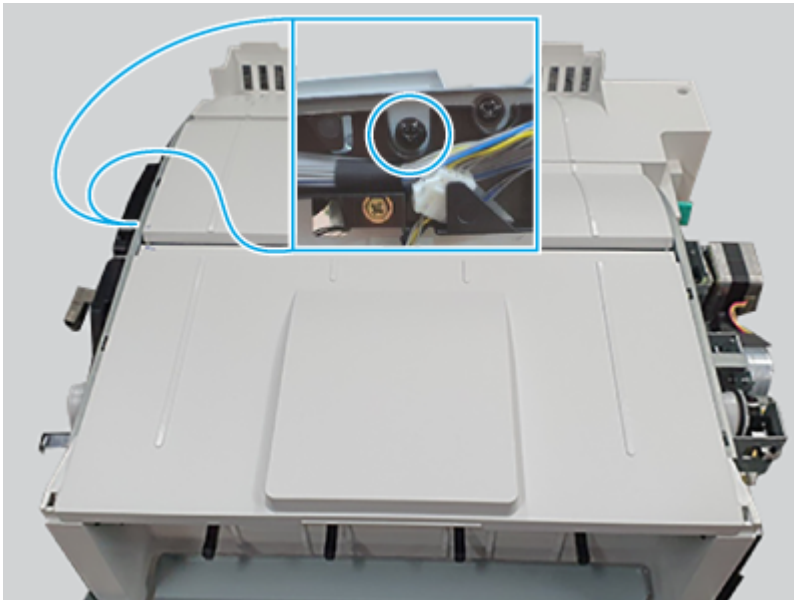


4. **Remove the inner finisher middle cover assembly**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-2644 Remove the cover



5. **Unpack the replacement assembly**

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Punch cover assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher punch cover assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-325 Part information

Part number	Part description
8GS05-60114	Punch cover assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

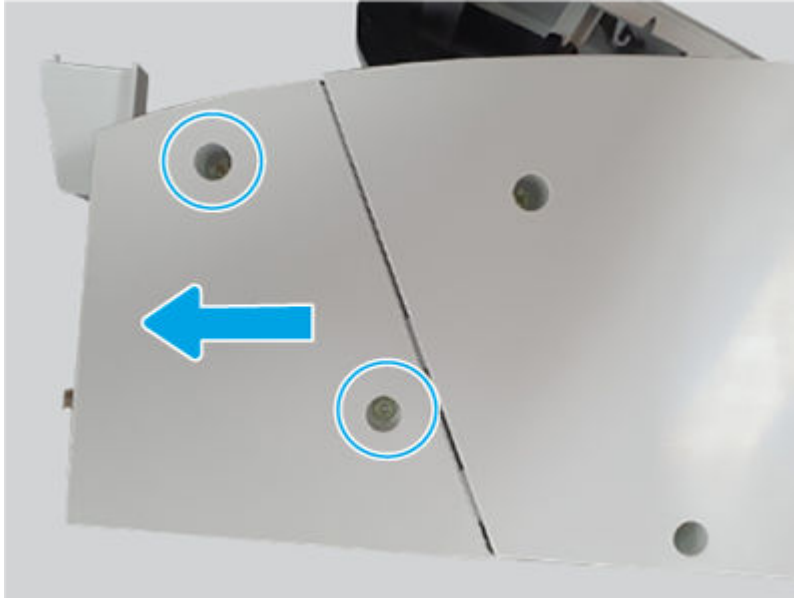
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-2645 Remove the cover

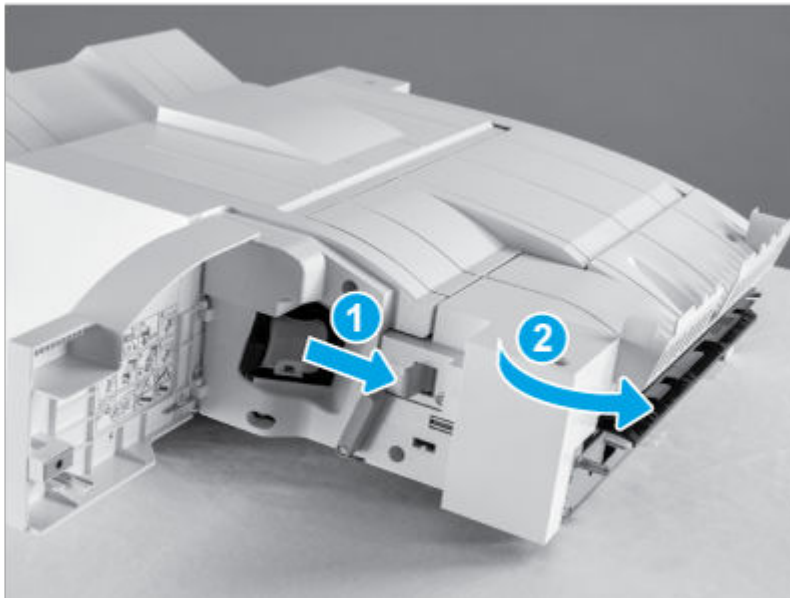


2 Remove the inner finisher punch cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher punch cover assembly.

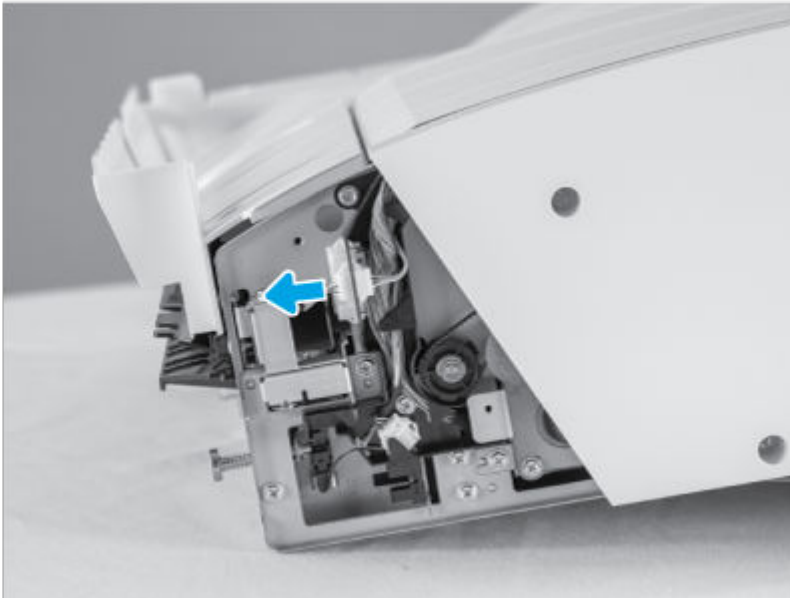
1. Release the lever (callout 1), and then rotate the punch away from the inner finisher (callout 2).

Figure 6-2646 Rotate the punch



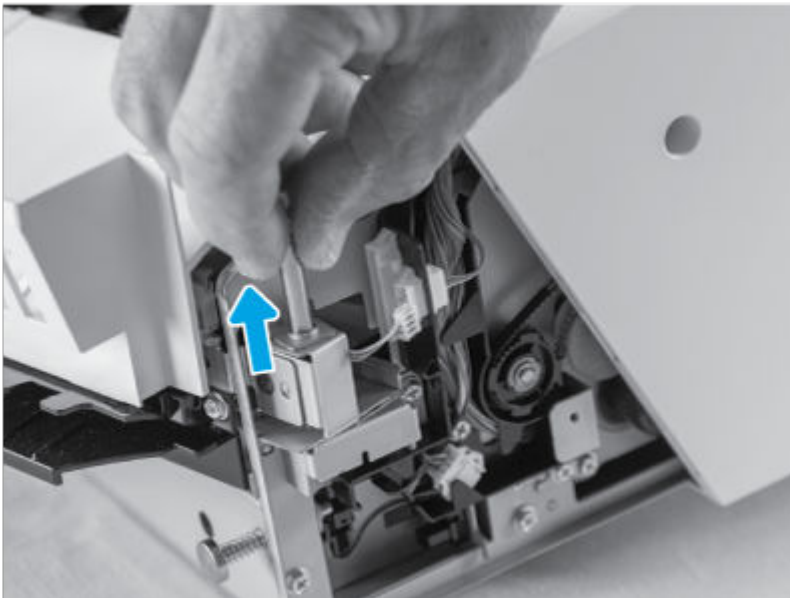
2. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2647 Disconnect one connector



3. Remove the hinge shaft, and then remove the punch cover assembly.


Figure 6-2648 Remove the assembly



3 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Output tray assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher output tray assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-326 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-60118	Output tray assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

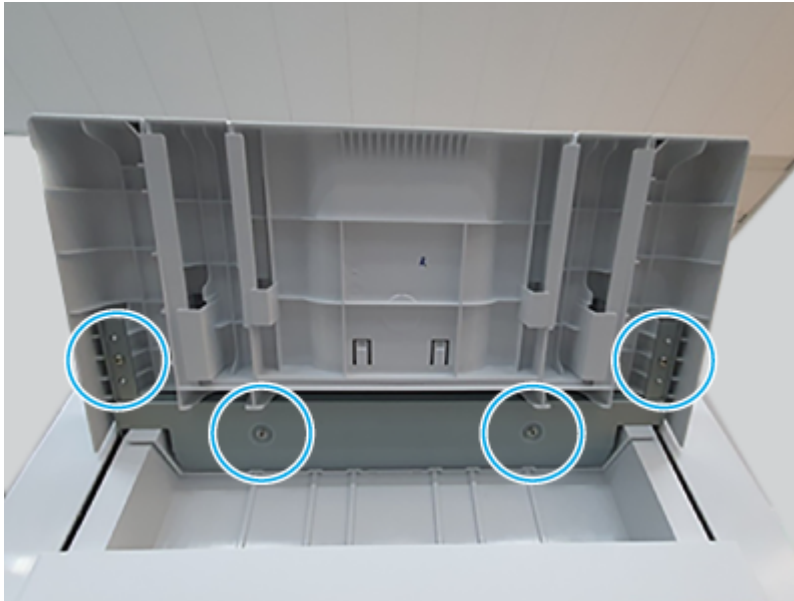
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher output tray assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher output tray assembly.

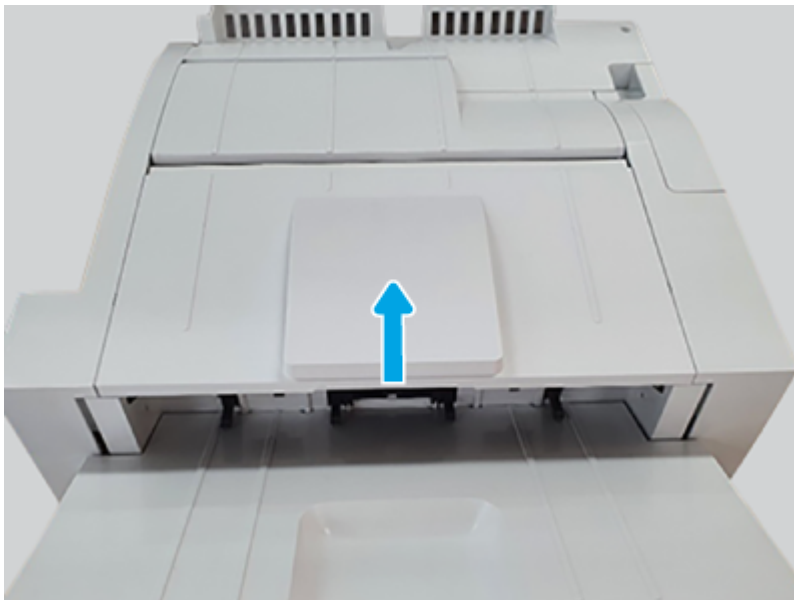
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-2649 Remove four screws



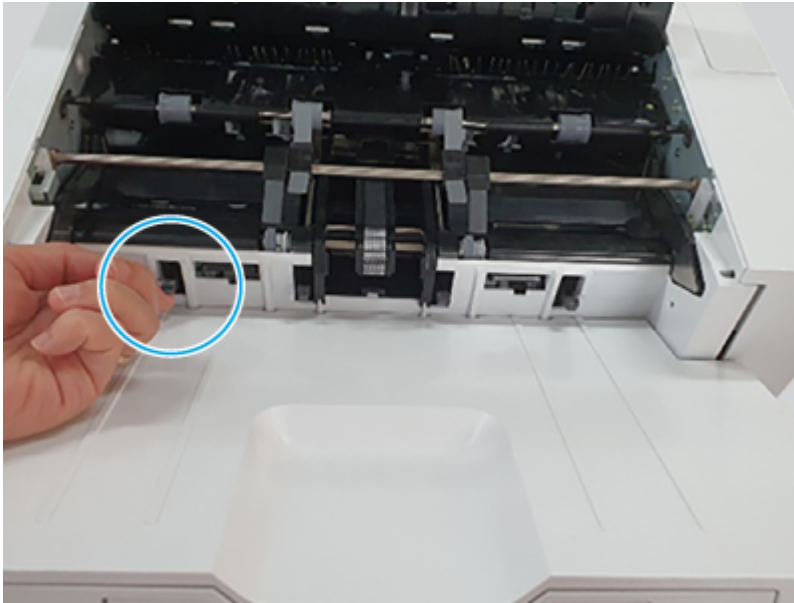
2. Open the top cover.

Figure 6-2650 Open the cover



3. Press the paper holding actuator.

Figure 6-2651 Press the actuator



4. Lift up on the inner finisher output tray to remove it.

Figure 6-2652 Remove the tray



2 **Unpack the replacement assembly**

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: PCA cover

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher PCA cover.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-327 Part Information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-40004	PCA cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

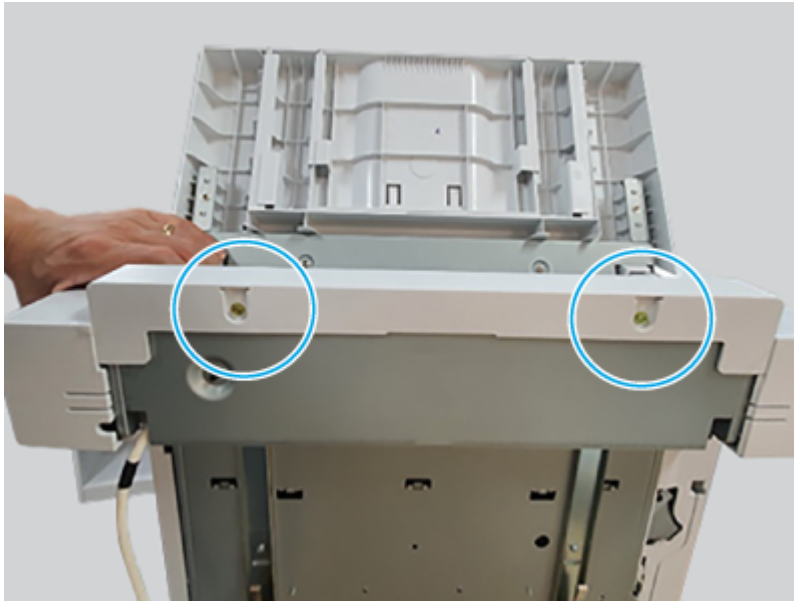
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher PCA cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher PCA cover.

1. Lift up the inner finisher, and then remove two screws.

Figure 6-2653 Remove two screws



2. Remove the inner finisher PCA cover.


Figure 6-2654 Remove the cover



2 **Unpack the replacement assembly**



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Finisher sub stay assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher sub stay assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-328 Part information

Part number	Part description
8GS05-60113	Finisher sub stay assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

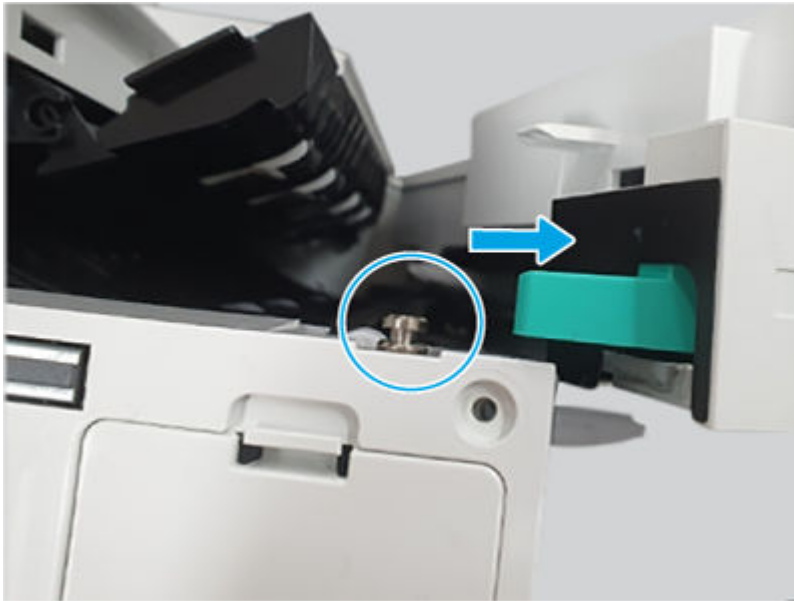
1 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-2655 Open the punch cover



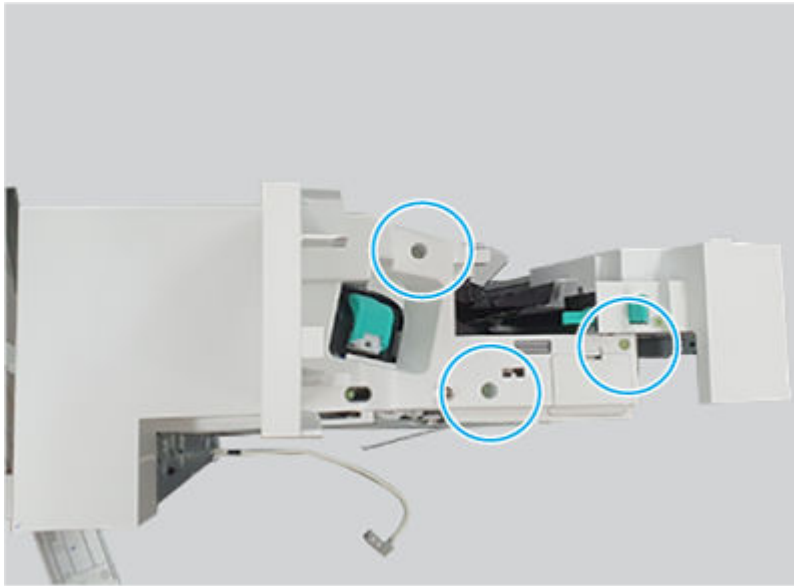
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-2656 Remove the handle



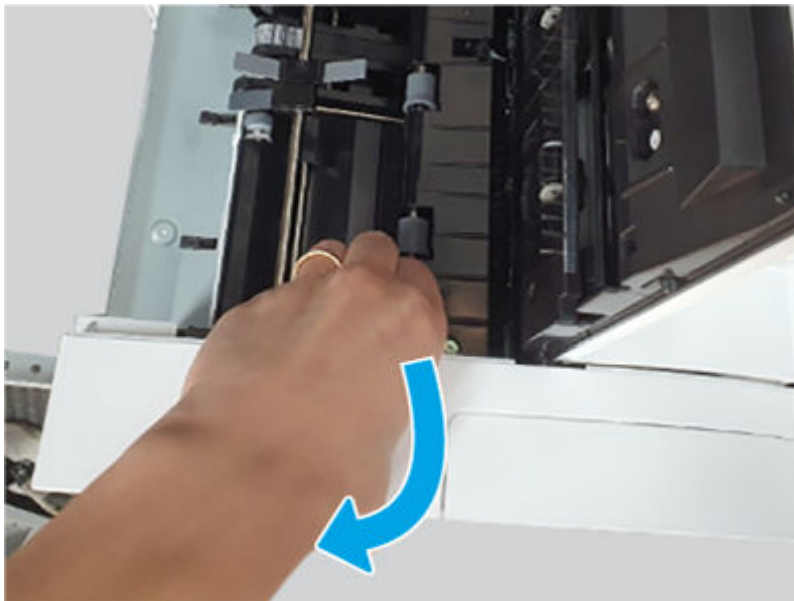
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2657 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-2658 Remove the cover

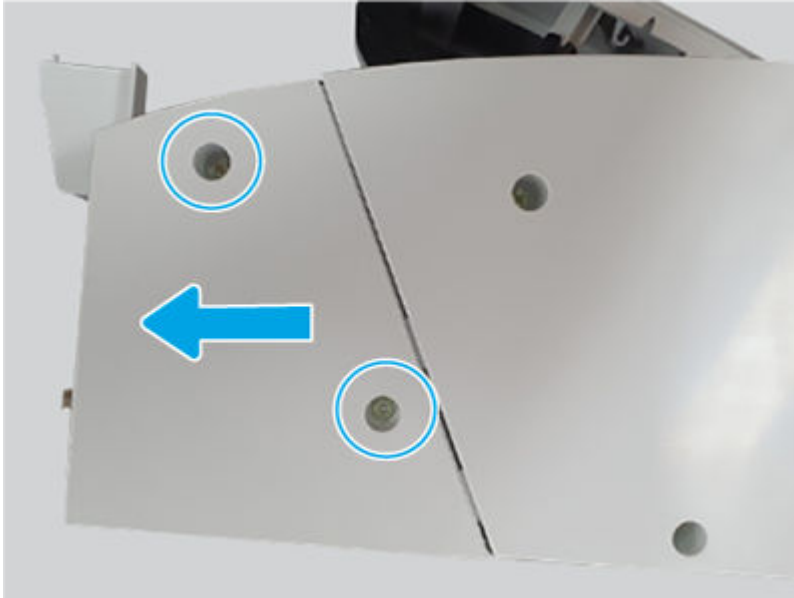


2 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-2659 Remove the cover



3 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

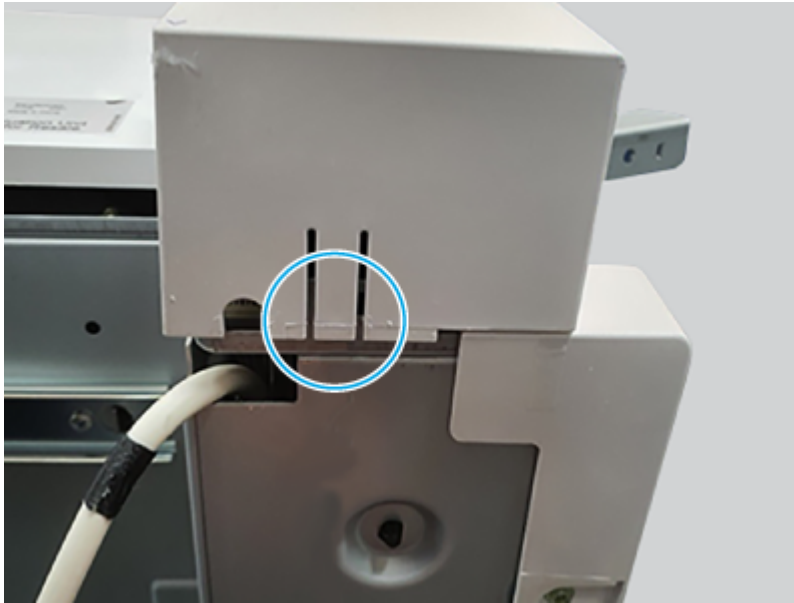
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2660 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-2661 Remove the cover

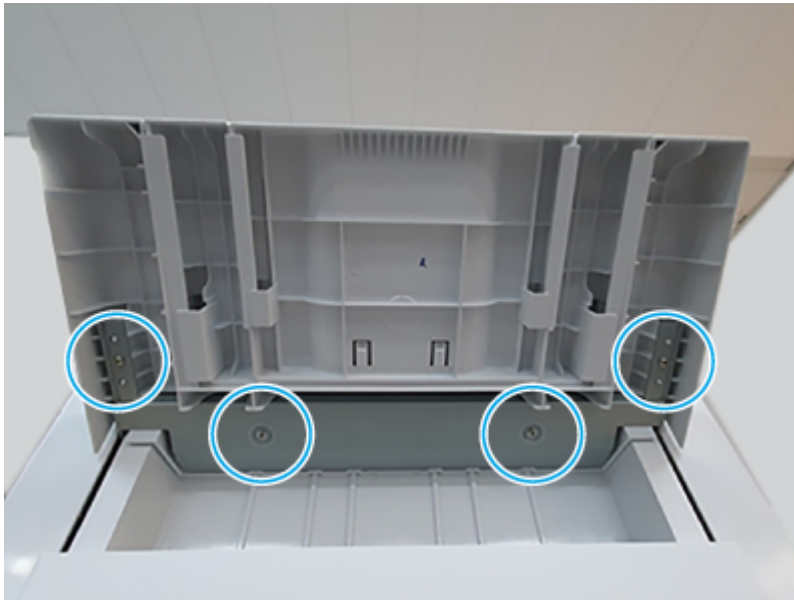


4 Remove the inner finisher output tray assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher output tray assembly.

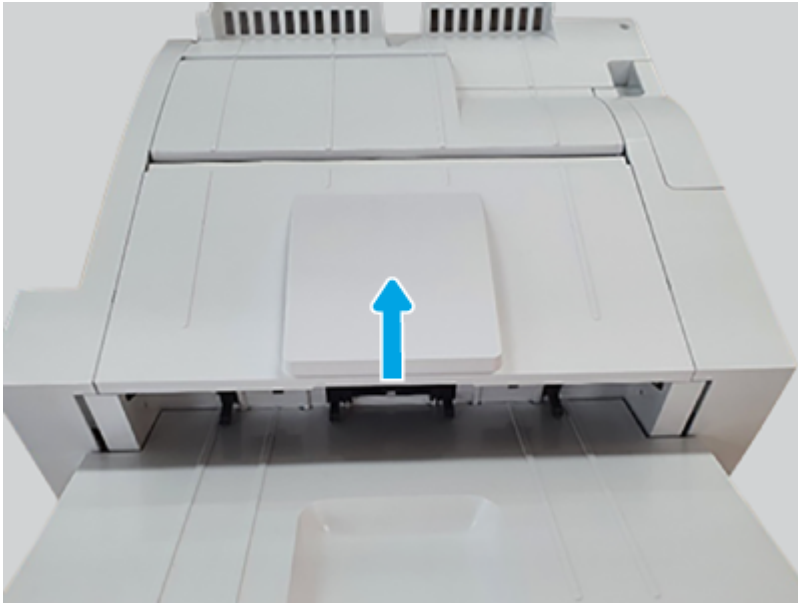
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-2662 Remove four screws



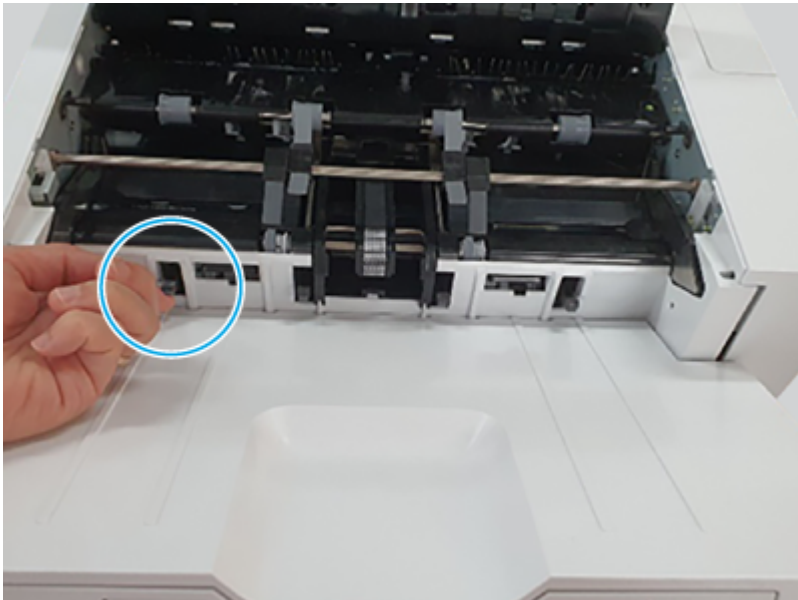
2. Open the top cover.

Figure 6-2663 Open the cover



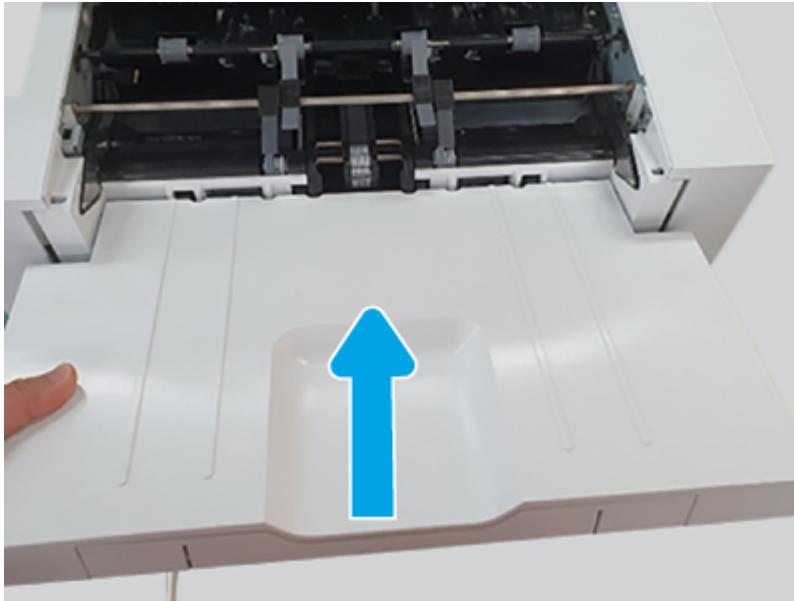
3. Press the paper holding actuator.

Figure 6-2664 Press the actuator



4. Lift up on the inner finisher output tray to remove it.

Figure 6-2665 Remove the tray

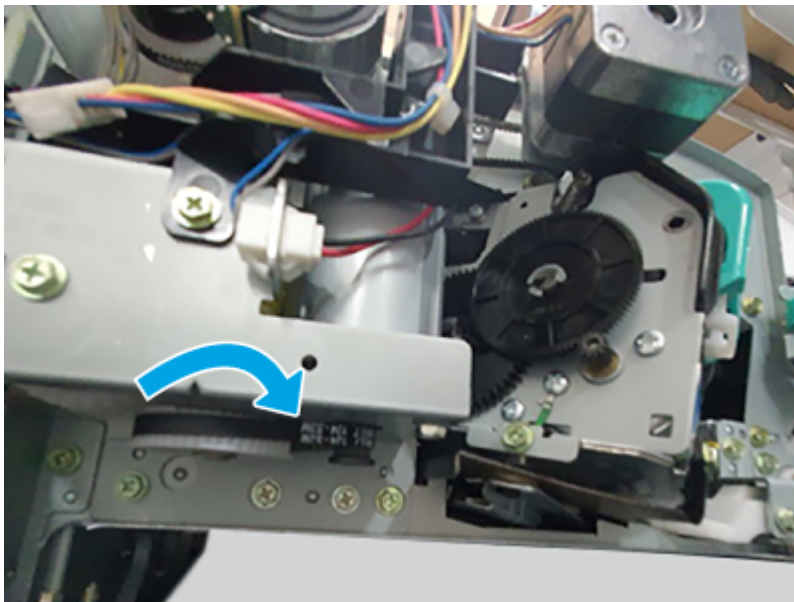


5 Remove the output tray frame

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher output tray frame.

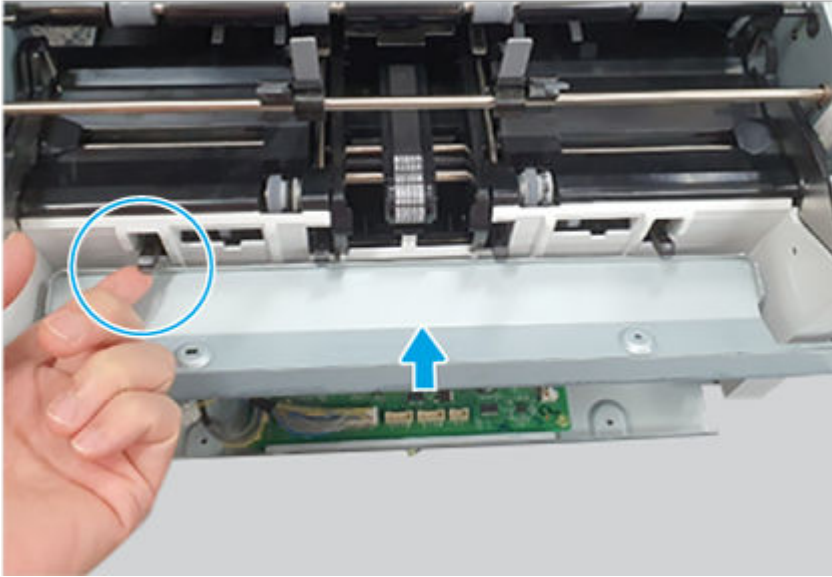
1. Rotate the output tray gear.

Figure 6-2666 Rotate the gear



2. Press the paper holding actuator, and then lift the inner finisher output tray frame up to remove it.

Figure 6-2667 Remove the frame

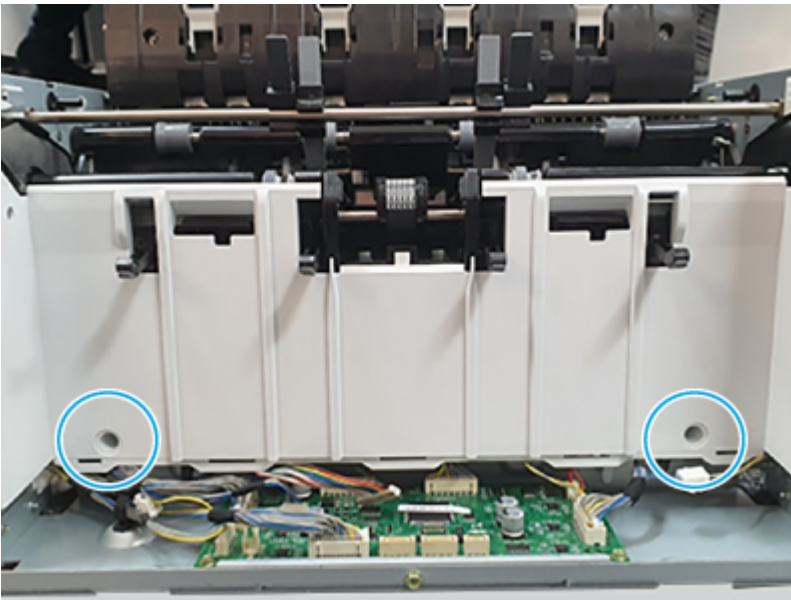


6 Remove the finisher sub stay assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher sub stay assembly.

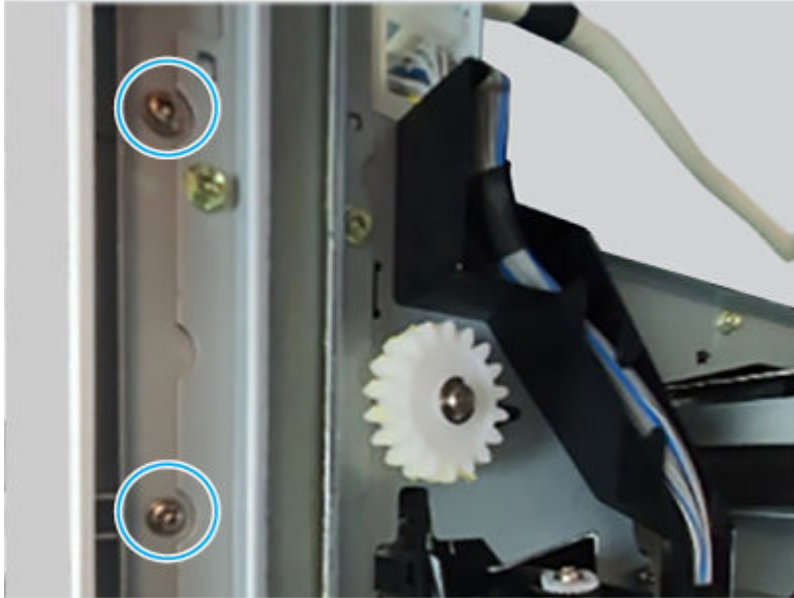
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2668 Remove two screws



2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2669 Remove two screws



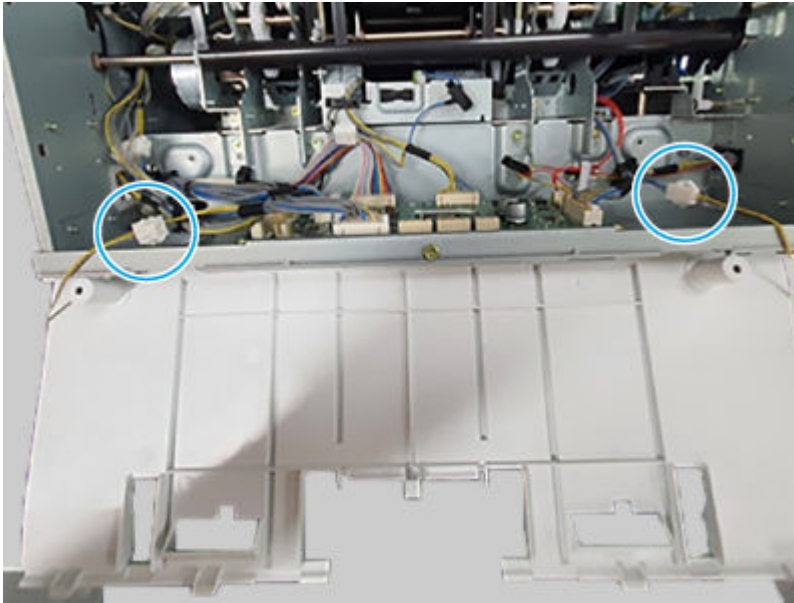
3. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2670 Remove two screws



4. Disconnect two connectors, and then remove the inner finisher sub stay assembly.

Figure 6-2671 Remove the assembly



7 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Rear cover - base

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher rear base cover.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-329 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-40018	Rear base cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

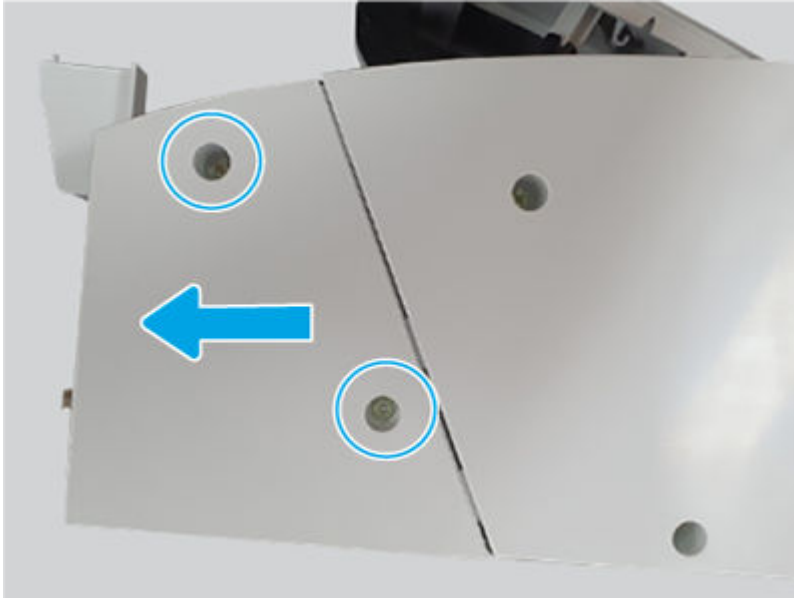
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-2672 Remove the cover



2 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

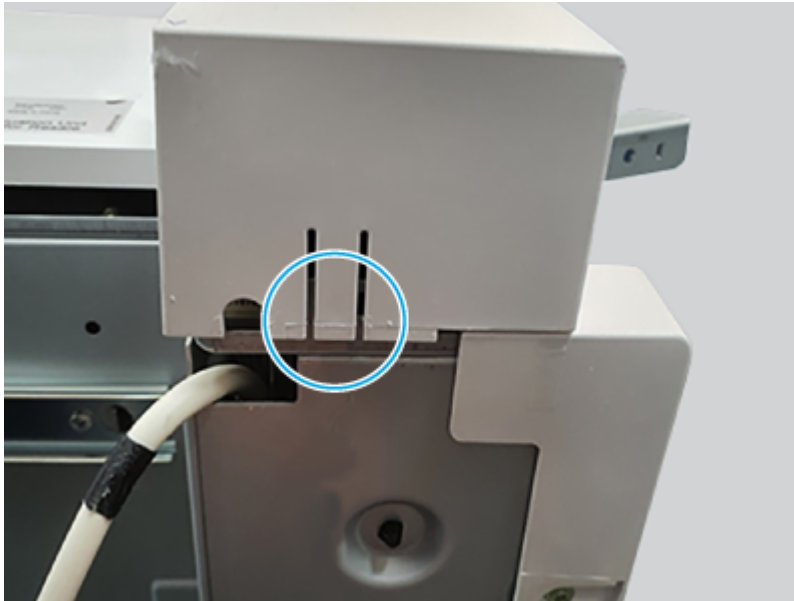
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2673 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-2674 Remove the cover



3 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Rear cover - punch

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher rear punch cover.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-330 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-40037	Rear punch cover

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

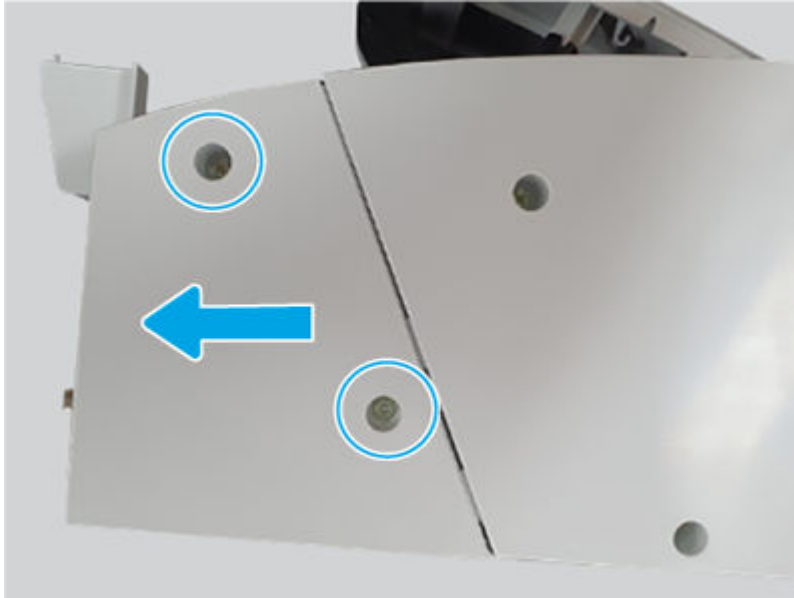
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.


Figure 6-2675 Remove the cover



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Lock release handle

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher lock release handle.

Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-331 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC66-04233A	Lock release handle

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

- Open the front door, remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-2676 Remove the handle



2 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Main interface harness

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher main interface harness.



NOTE: Remove the inner finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-332 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC39-02169A	Main interface harness

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

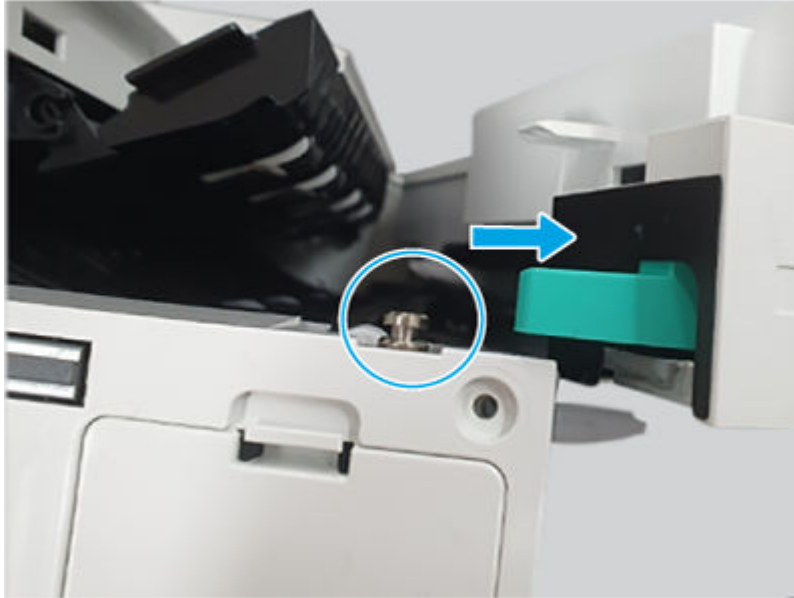
1 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-2677 Open the punch cover



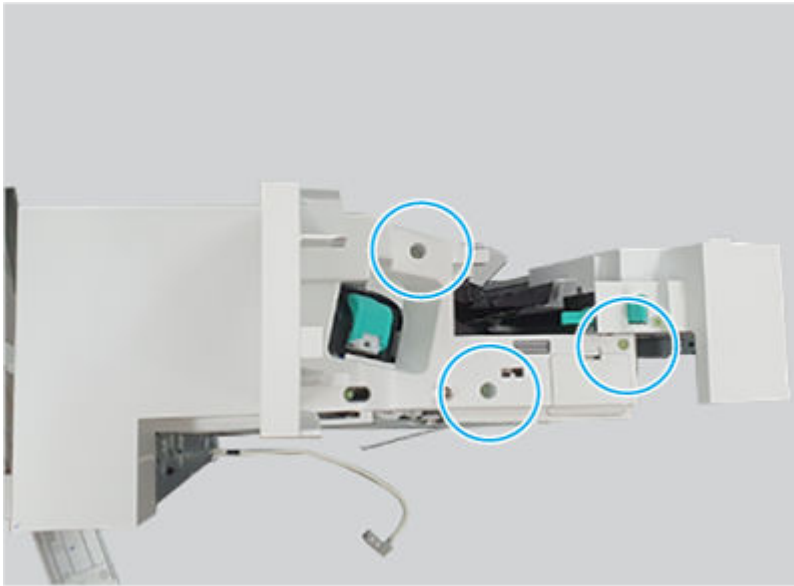
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-2678 Remove the handle



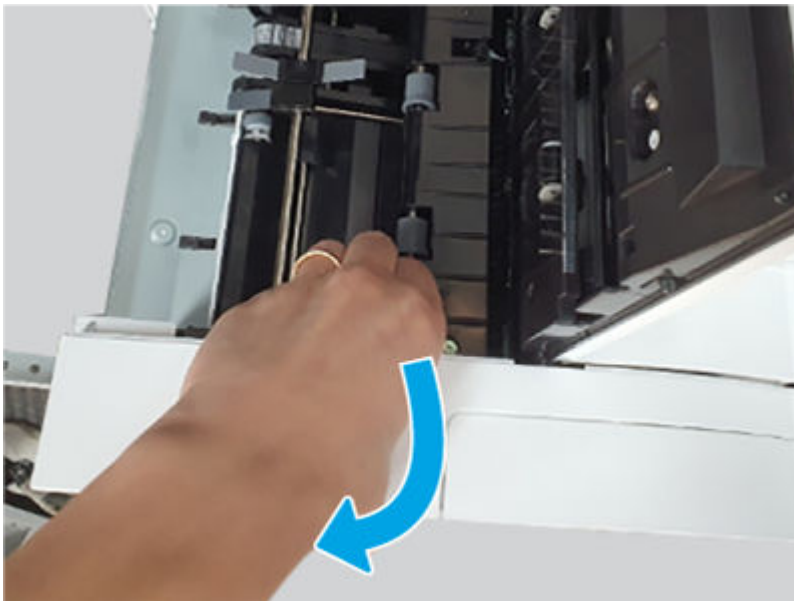
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2679 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-2680 Remove the cover

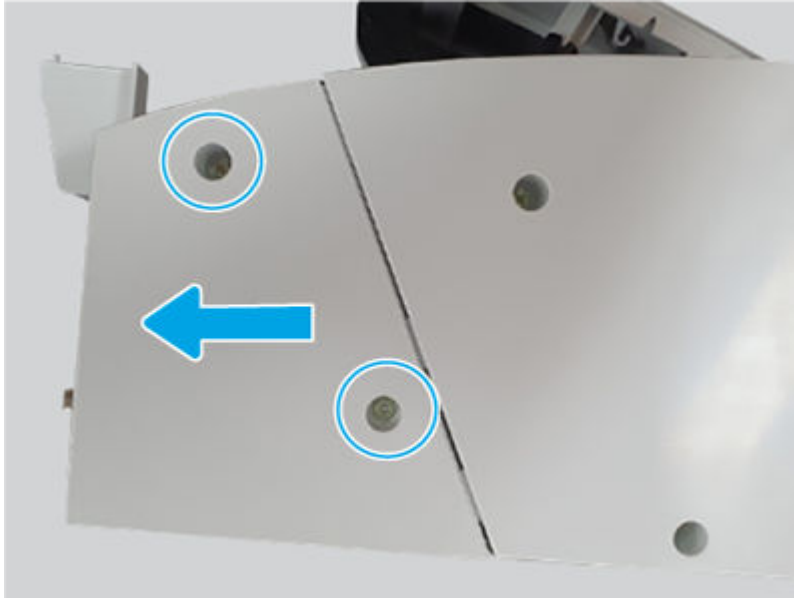


2 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-2681 Remove the cover



3 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

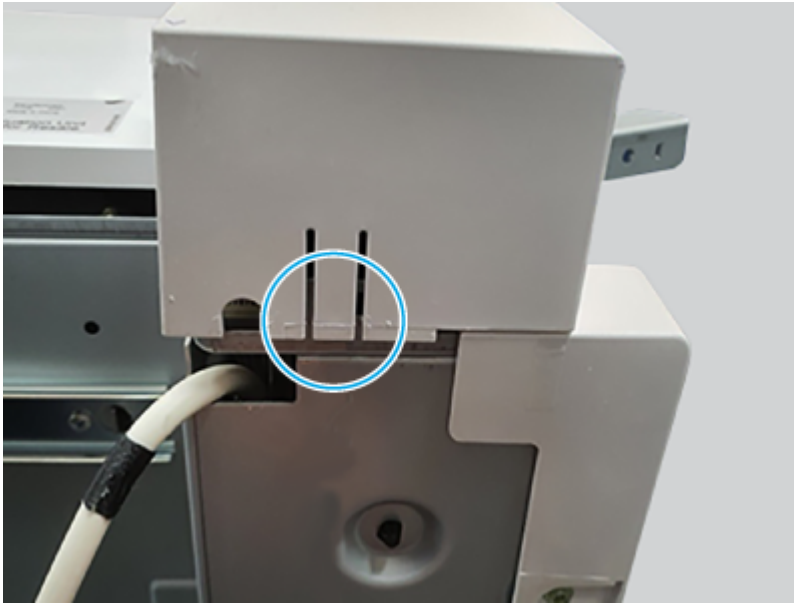
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2682 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-2683 Remove the cover

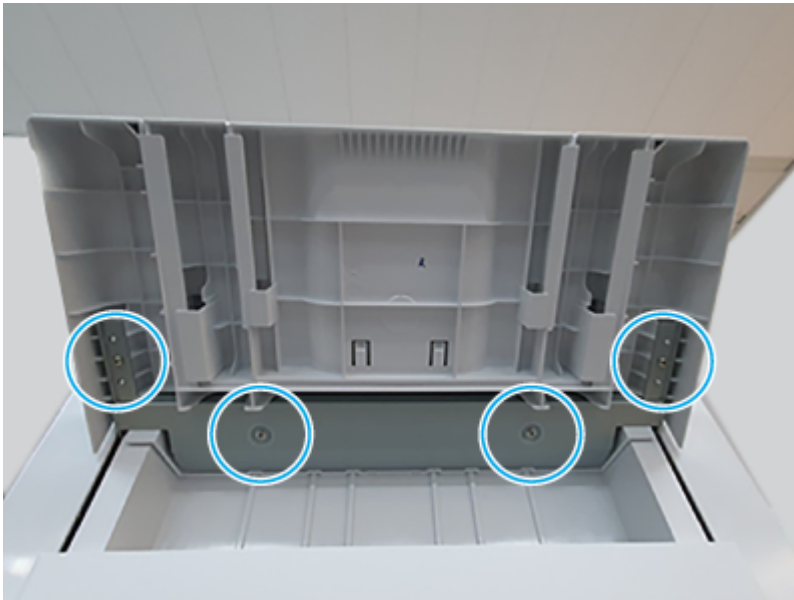


4 Remove the inner finisher output tray assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher output tray assembly.

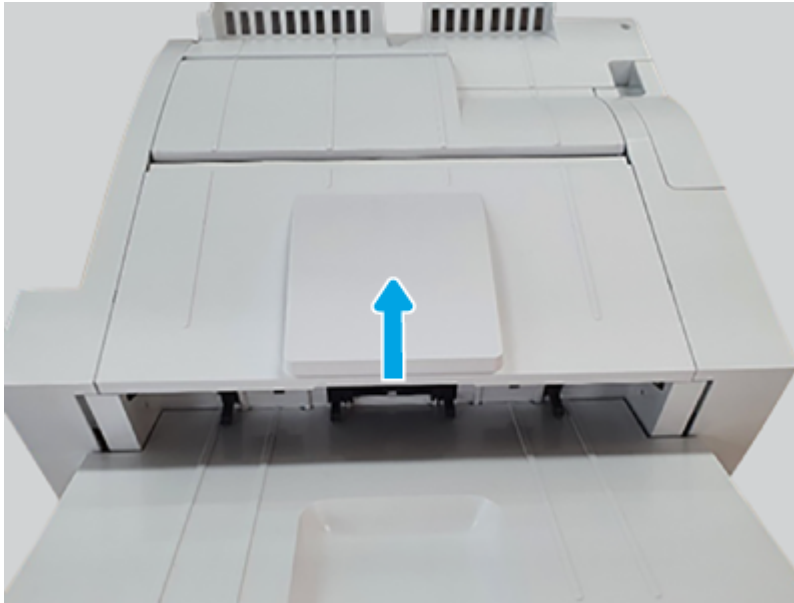
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-2684 Remove four screws



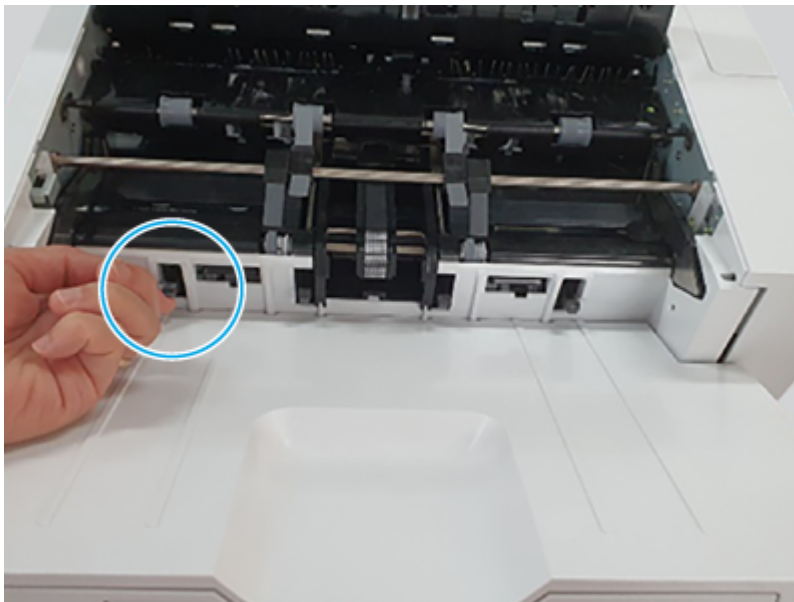
2. Open the top cover.

Figure 6-2685 Open the cover



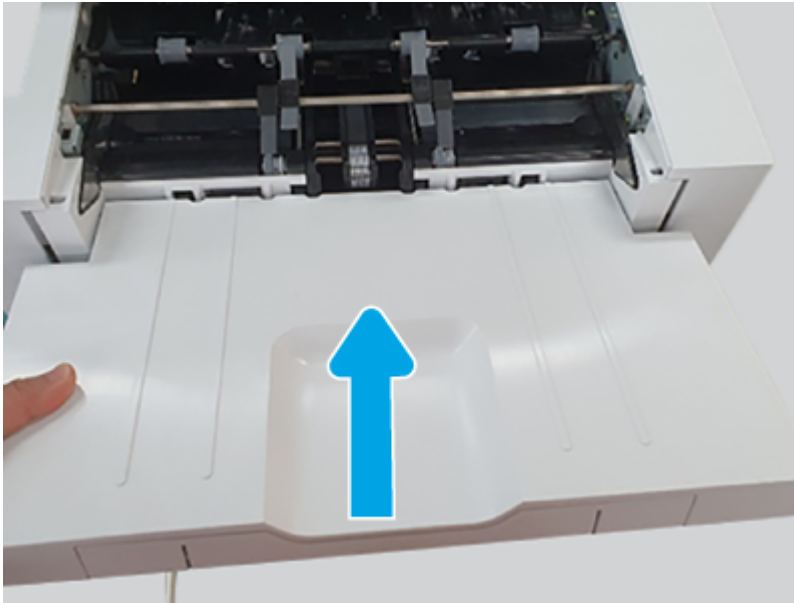
3. Press the paper holding actuator.

Figure 6-2686 Press the actuator



4. Lift up on the inner finisher output tray to remove it.

Figure 6-2687 Remove the tray

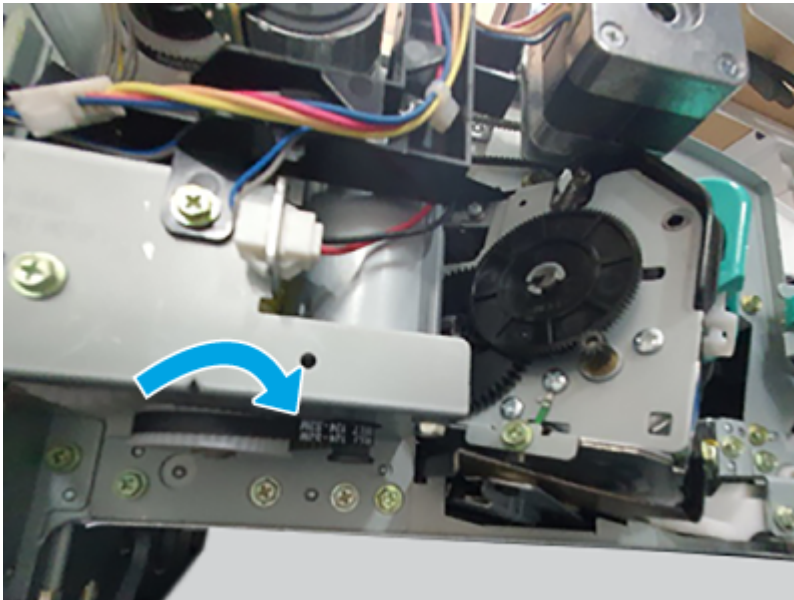


5 Remove the output tray frame

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher output tray frame.

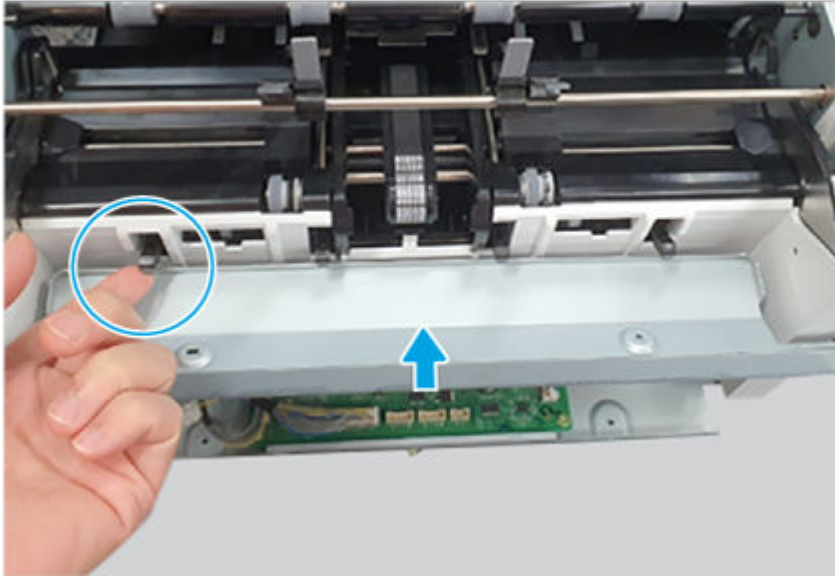
1. Rotate the output tray gear.

Figure 6-2688 Rotate the gear



2. Press the paper holding actuator, and then lift the inner finisher output tray frame up to remove it.

Figure 6-2689 Remove the frame

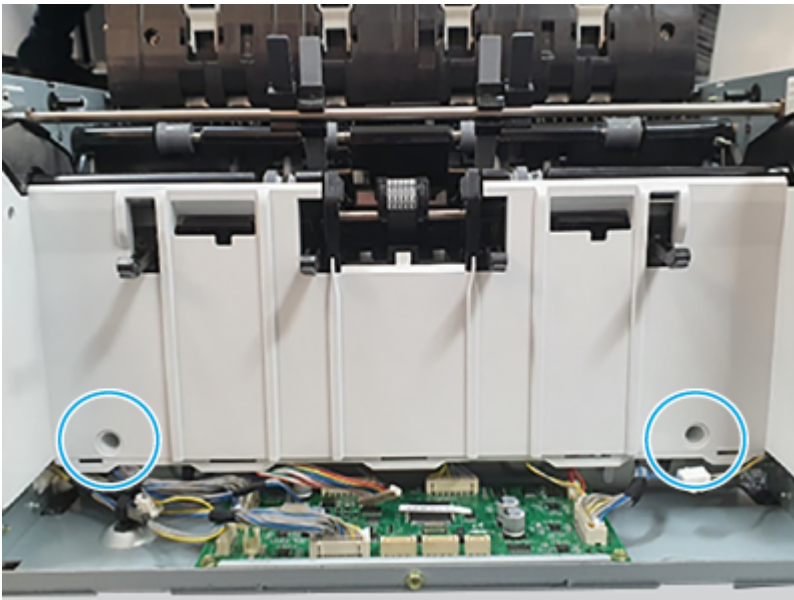


6 Remove the finisher sub stay assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher sub stay assembly.

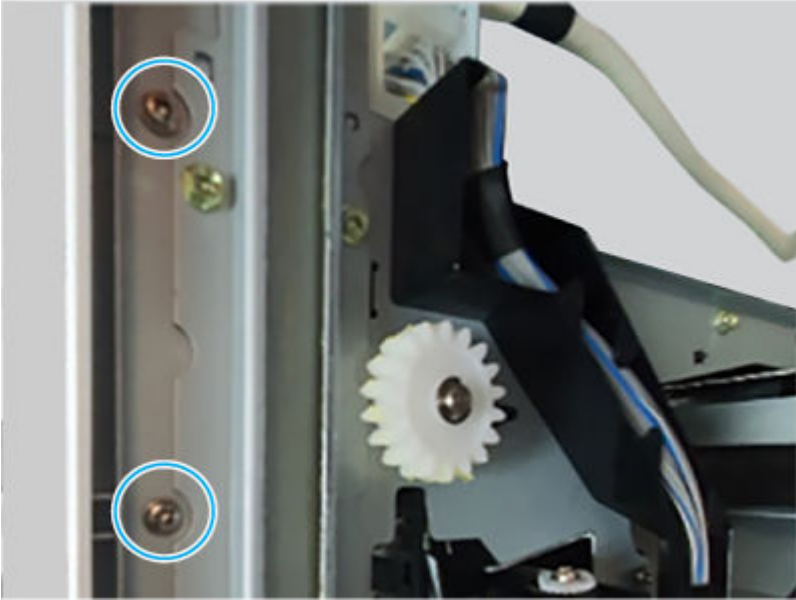
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2690 Remove two screws



2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2691 Remove two screws



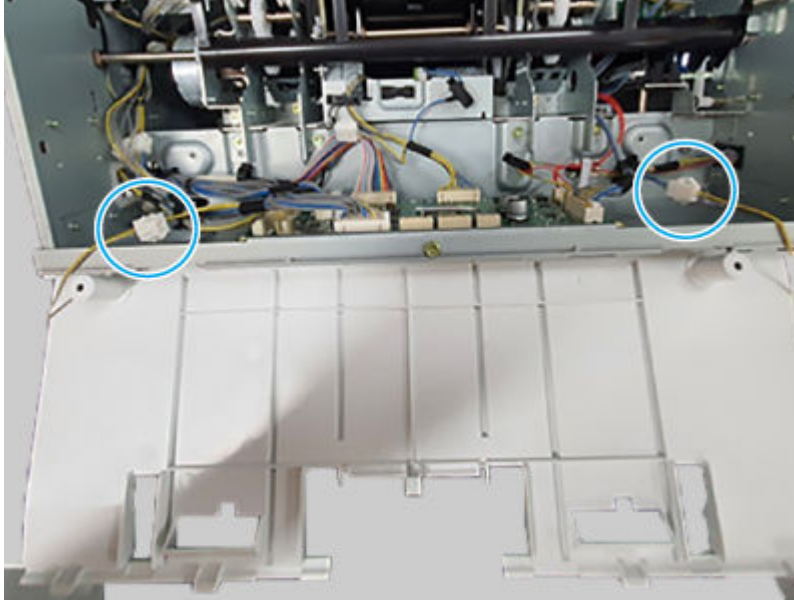
3. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2692 Remove two screws



4. Disconnect two connectors, and then remove the inner finisher sub stay assembly.

Figure 6-2693 Remove the assembly



7 Remove the main interface harness

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher main interface harness.

- Remove one screw, disconnect one connector, and then remove the inner finisher main interface harness.


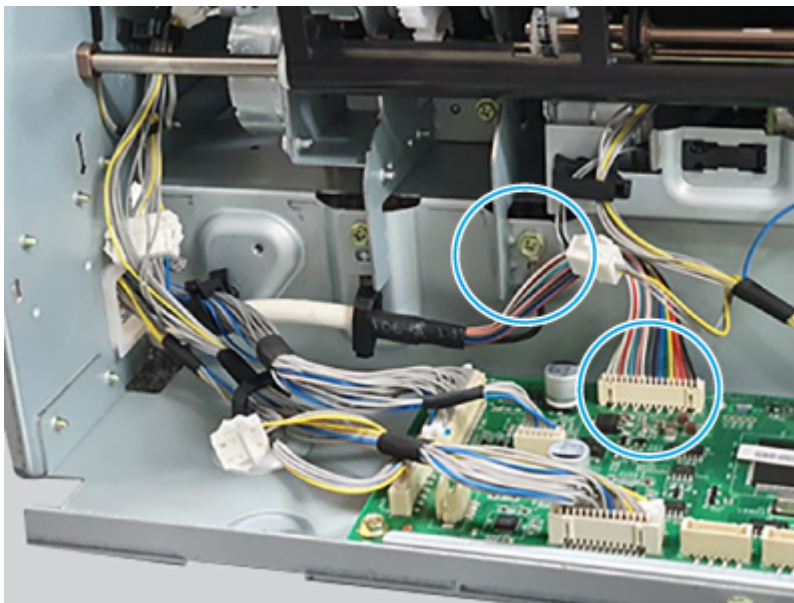
 **NOTE:** Release wire harness retainers as necessary.


Figure 6-2694 Remove the harness



8 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Exit bin full

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher exit bin full.

Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-333 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01546A	Exit bin full

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

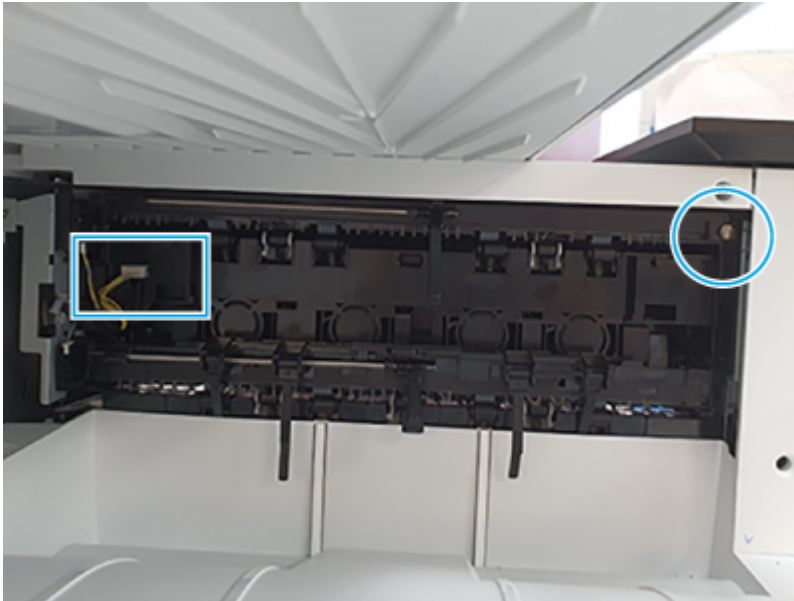
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher exit bin full

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher exit bin full.

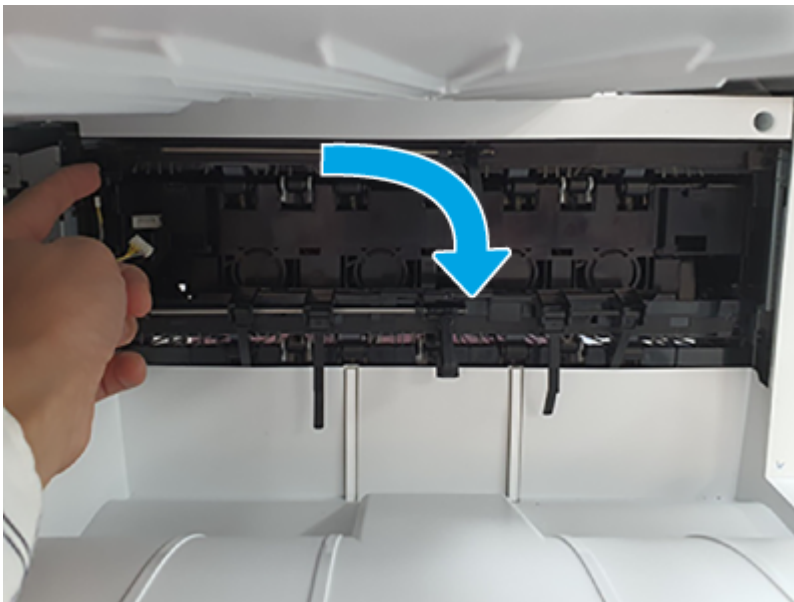
1. Disconnect one connector, and then remove one screw.

Figure 6-2695 Disconnect connector and remove the screw



2. Slide the inner finisher exit bin full as shown below to remove it.


Figure 6-2696 Remove the assembly



2 **Unpack the replacement assembly**



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Punch unit

Review the inner finisher punch unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Hole punch

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher hole punch.



NOTE: Remove the inner finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-334 Part information

Part number	Part description
155P7-67001	Hole 2/3 punch
8GS05-60133	Hole 2/4 punch
8GS05-60134	Swedish punch

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

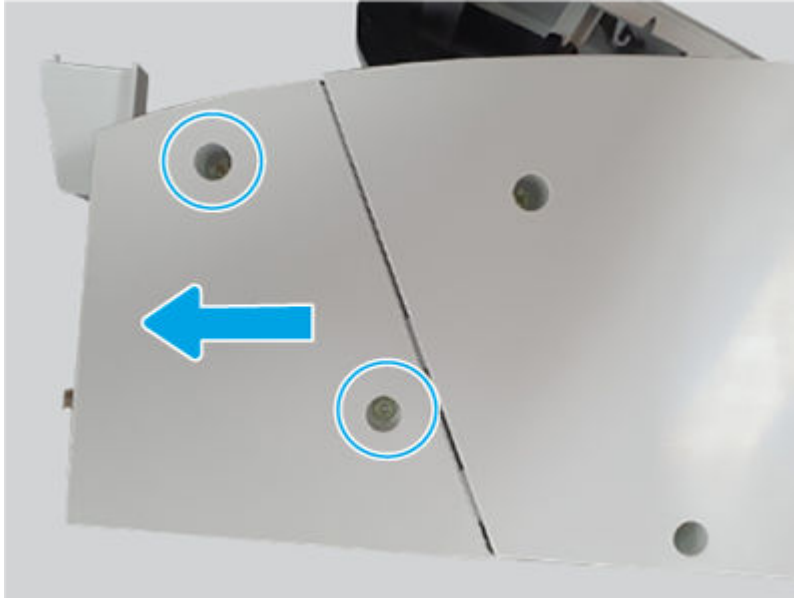
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-2697 Remove the cover

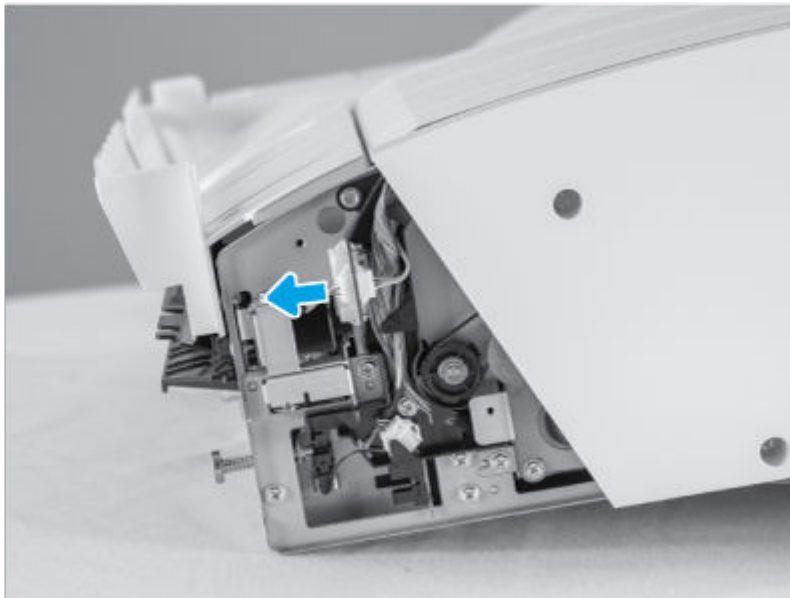


2 Remove the inner finisher hole punch

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher hole punch.

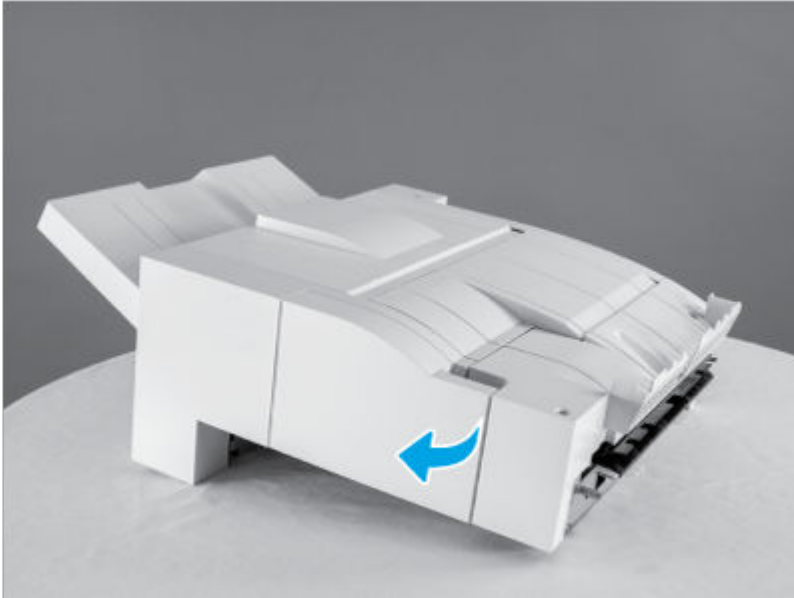
1. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2698 Disconnect one connector



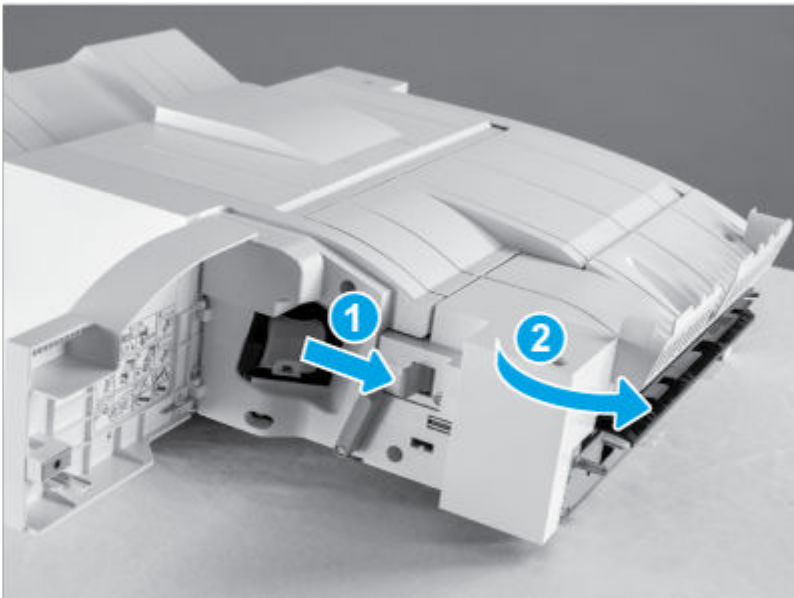
2. Open the door.

Figure 6-2699 Open the door



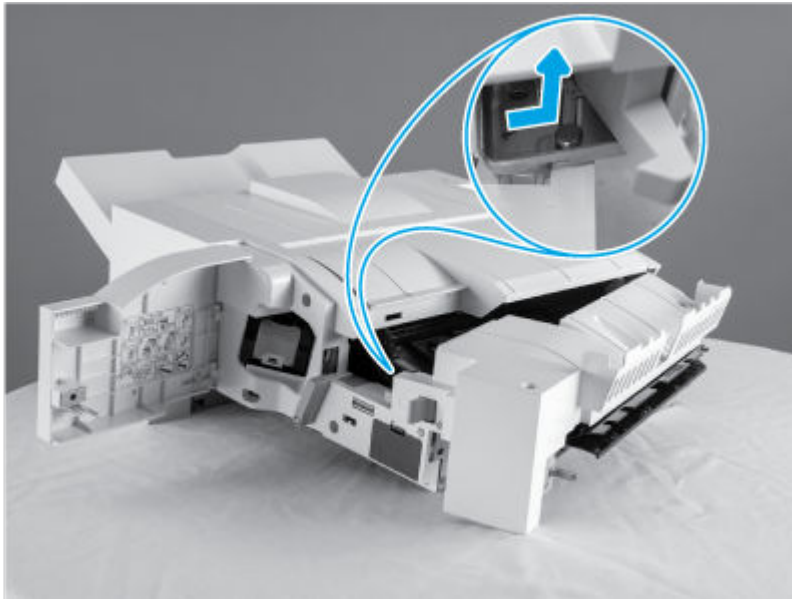
3. Release the lever (callout 1), and then rotate the punch away from the inner finisher (callout 2).

Figure 6-2700 Rotate the punch



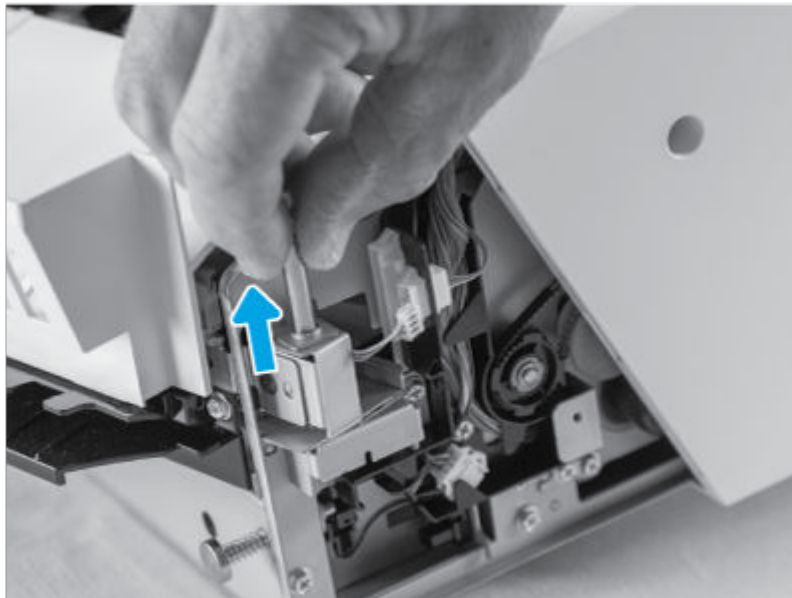
4. Release the retainer pin.

Figure 6-2701 Release the pin



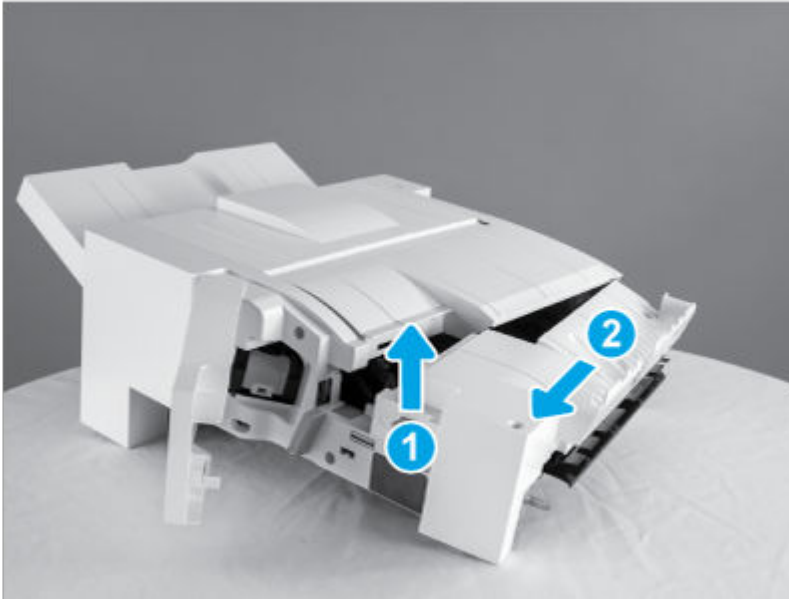
5. Remove the hinge shaft.

Figure 6-2702 Remove the shaft



- Lift up on the end of the inner finisher hole punch (callout 1), and then slide it as shown below (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 6-2703 Remove the punch



3 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

- Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

- Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


- To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Punch waste full sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher punch waste full.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-335 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001381	Photo interrupter (Punch waste full sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

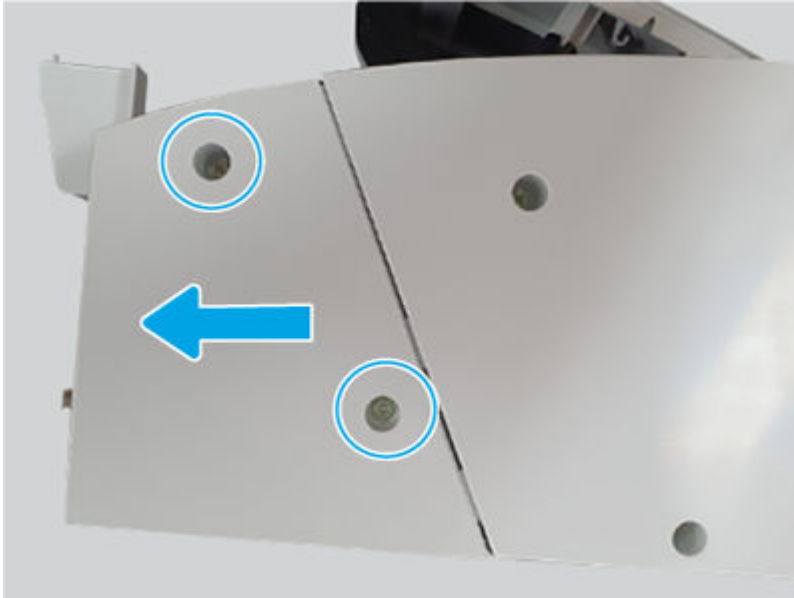
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-2704 Remove the cover



2 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2705 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-2706 Remove the cover

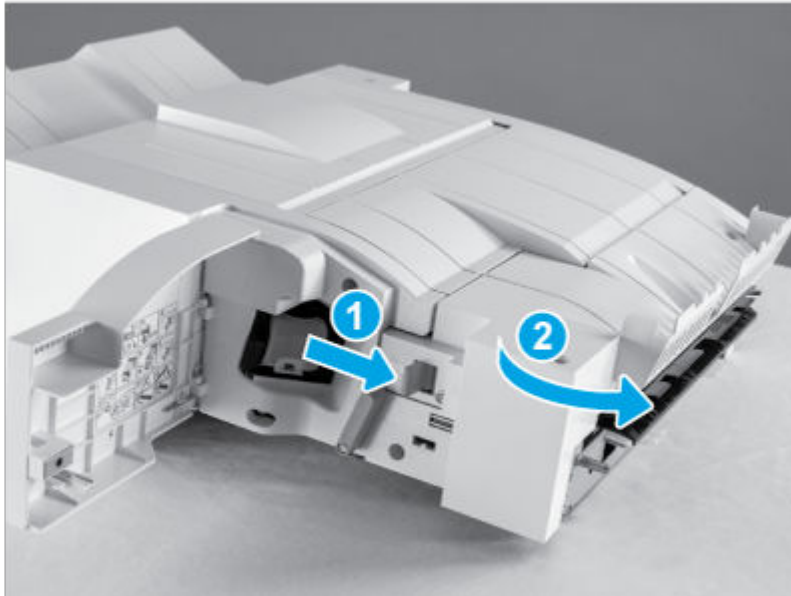


3 Remove the inner finisher punch cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher punch cover assembly.

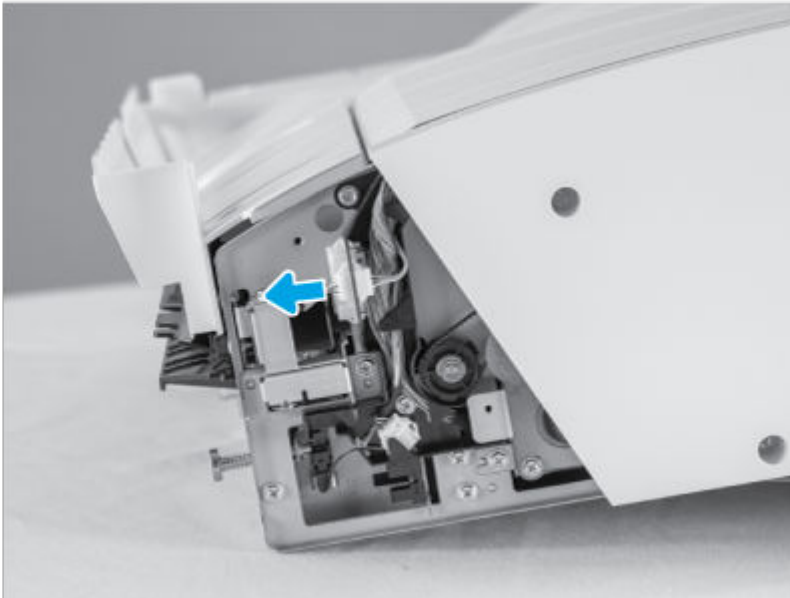
1. Release the lever (callout 1), and then rotate the punch away from the inner finisher (callout 2).

Figure 6-2707 Rotate the punch



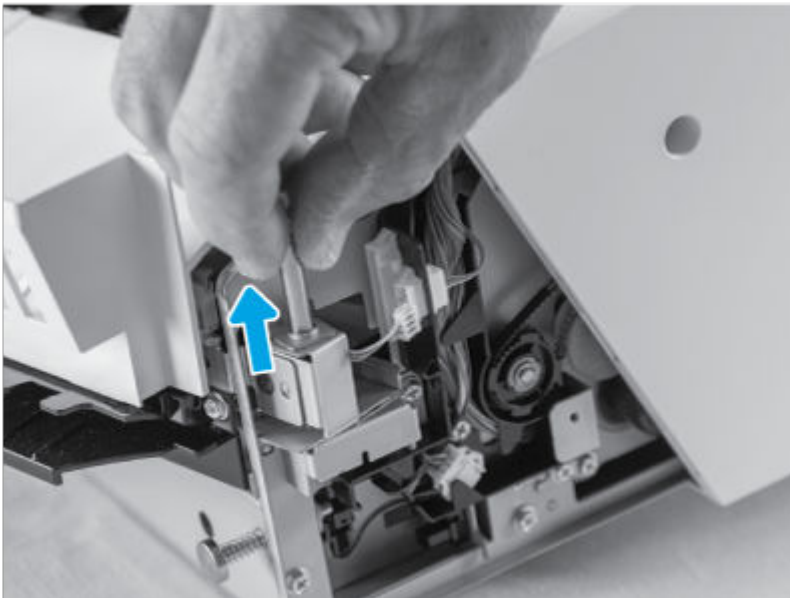
2. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2708 Disconnect one connector



3. Remove the hinge shaft, and then remove the punch cover assembly.

Figure 6-2709 Remove the assembly



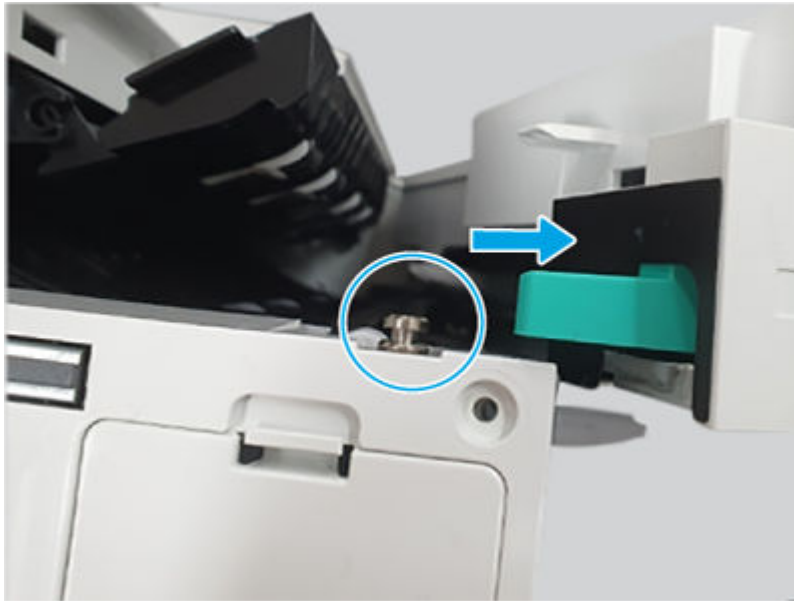
4 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-2710 Open the punch cover



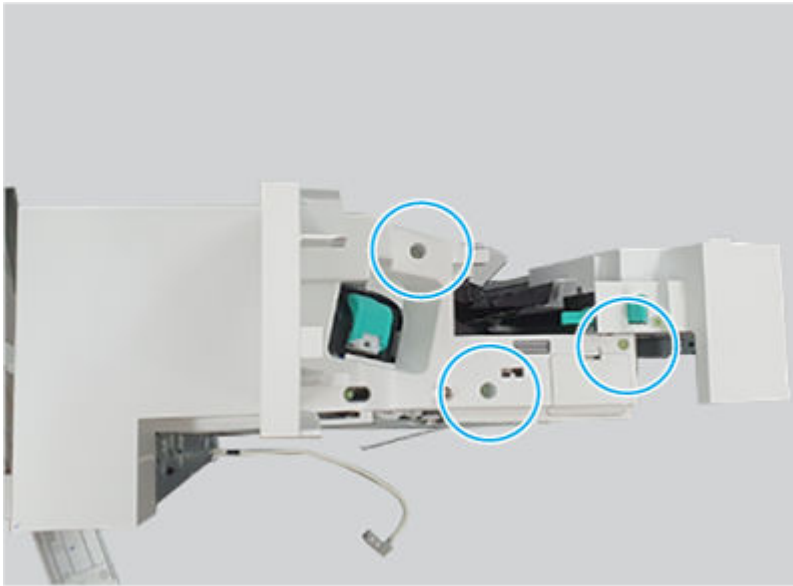
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-2711 Remove the handle



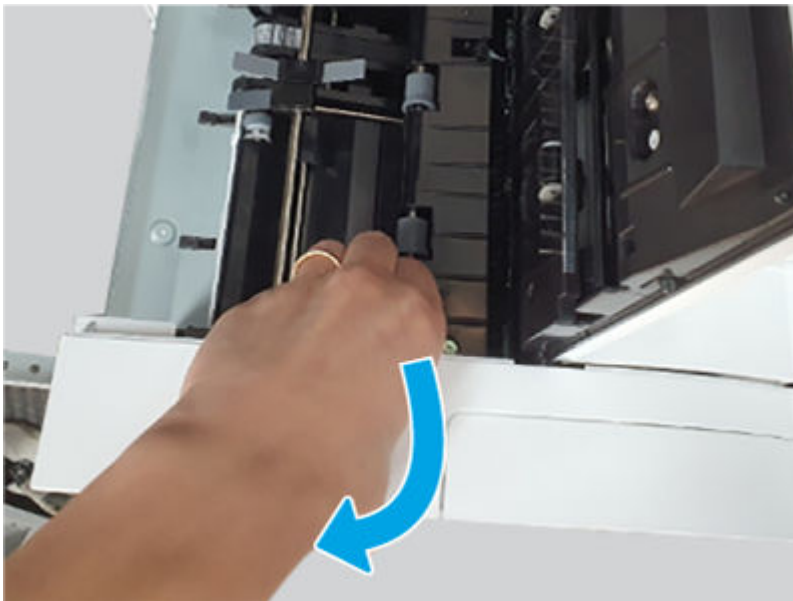
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2712 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-2713 Remove the cover

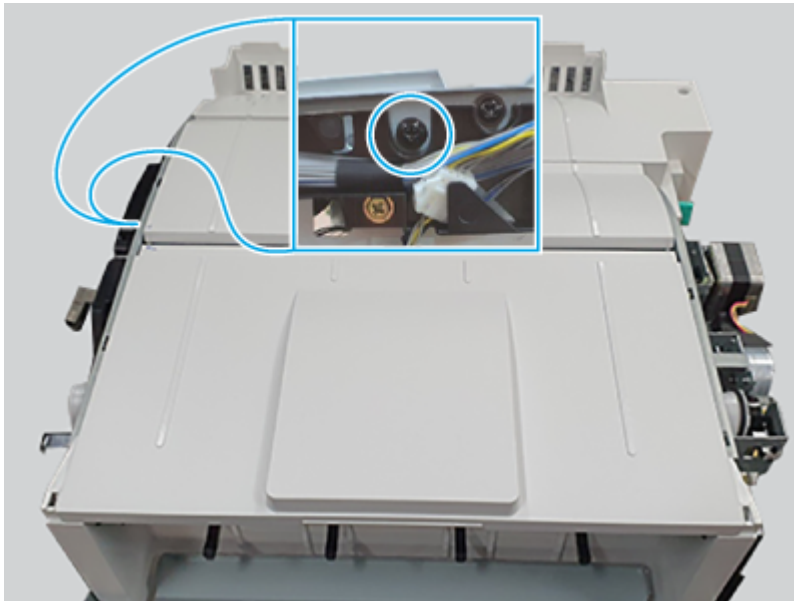


5 Remove the inner finisher middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-2714 Remove the cover

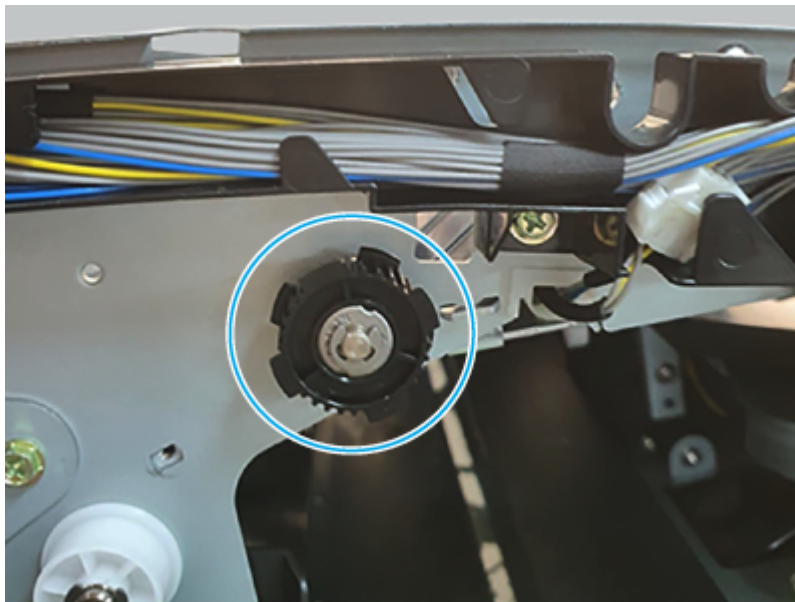


6 Remove the inner finisher middle roller

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle roller.

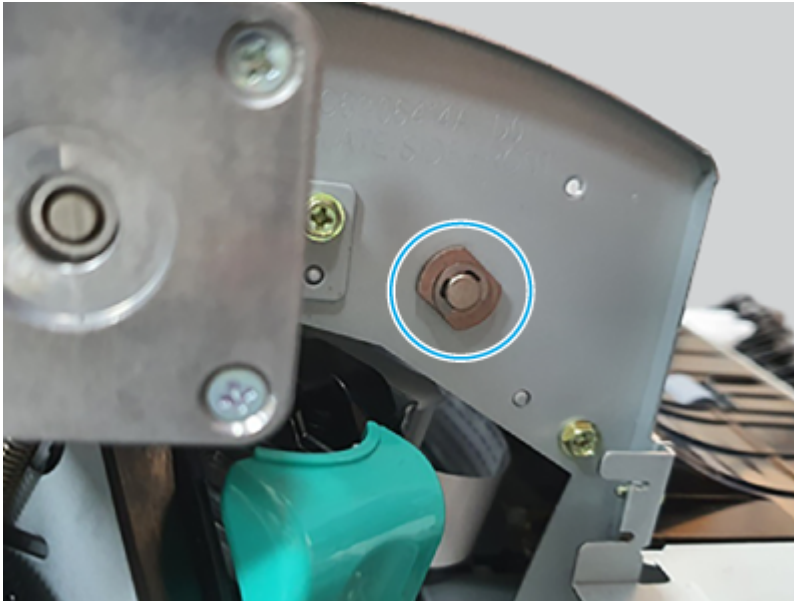
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, remove the pulley, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-2715 Remove the e-ring, pulley, and bushing



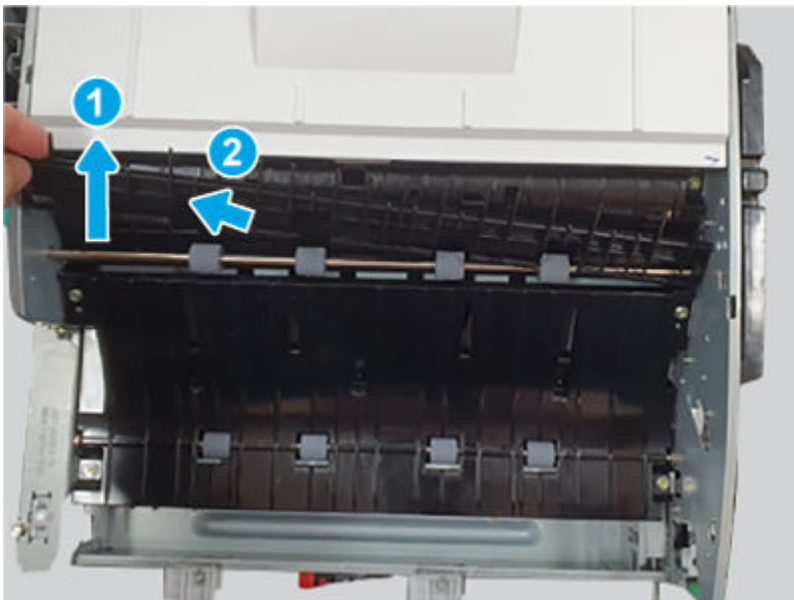
2. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-2716 Remove the e-ring and bushing



3. Remove the inner finisher middle roller.

Figure 6-2717 Remove the roller



7 Remove the inner finisher punch waste full sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher punch waste full sensor.

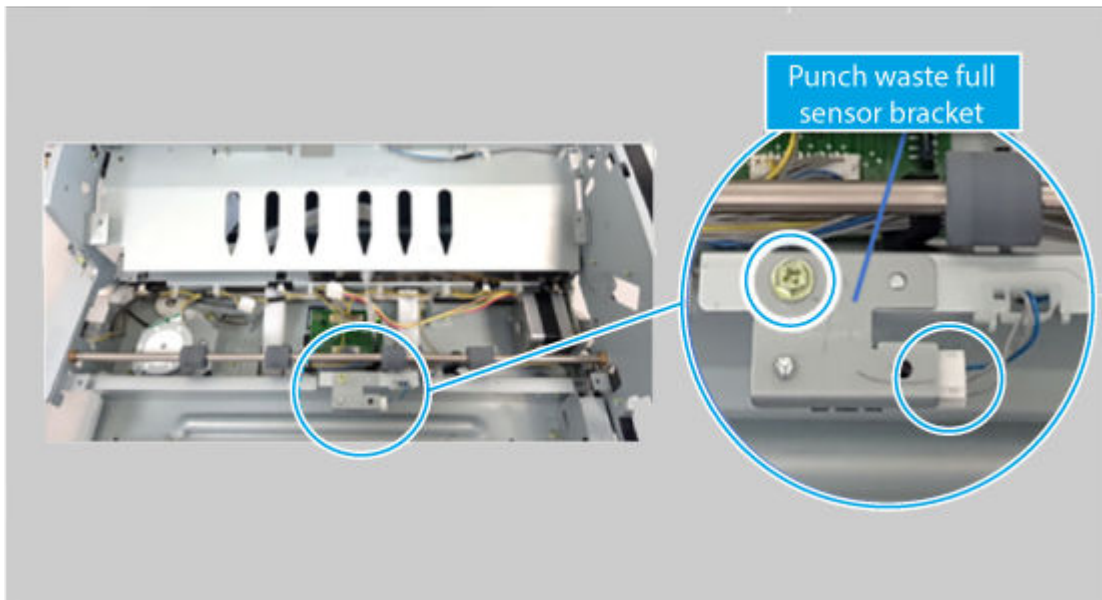
1. Remove six screws.

Figure 6-2718 Remove six screws



2. Disconnect one connector, remove one screw, and then remove the punch waste full sensor.


Figure 6-2719 Remove the sensor



8 **Unpack the replacement assembly**



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.


 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Entrance unit

Review the inner finisher entrance unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Entrance sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher entrance sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-336 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001381	Photo interrupter (Entrance sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

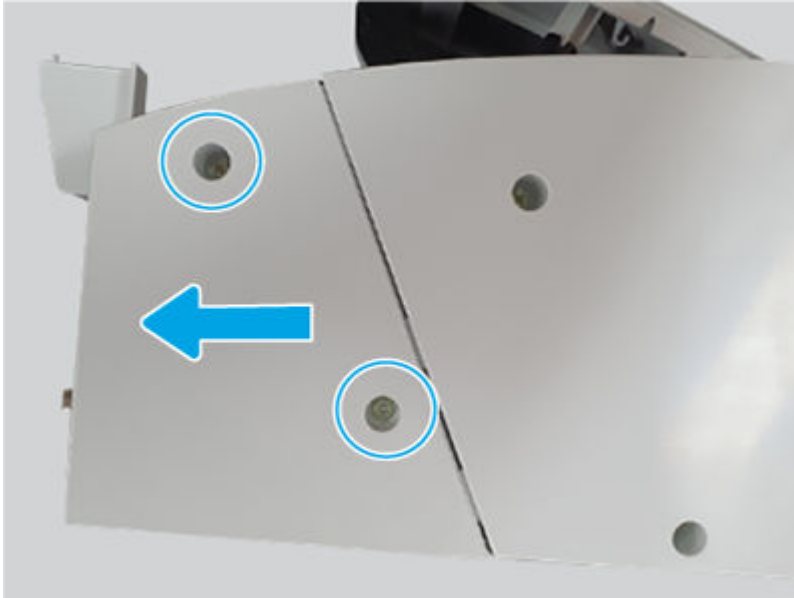
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-2720 Remove the cover

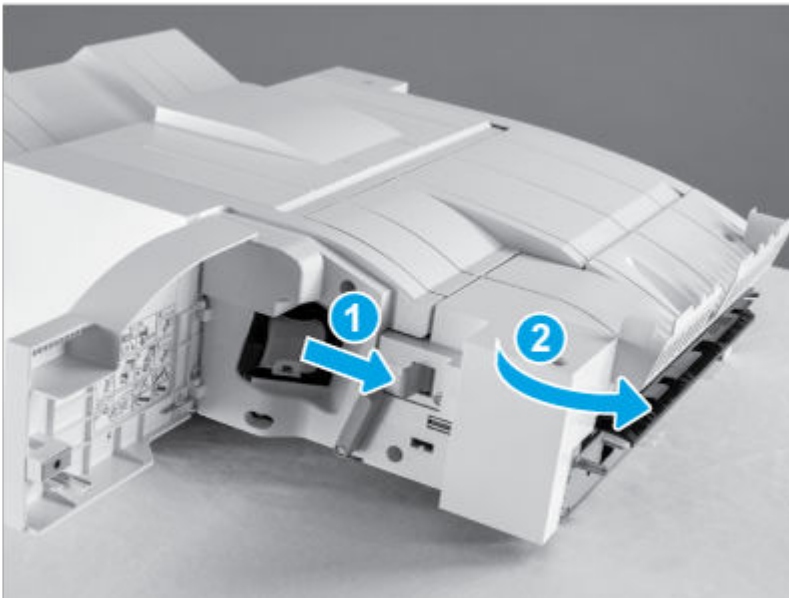


2 Remove the inner finisher punch cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher punch cover assembly.

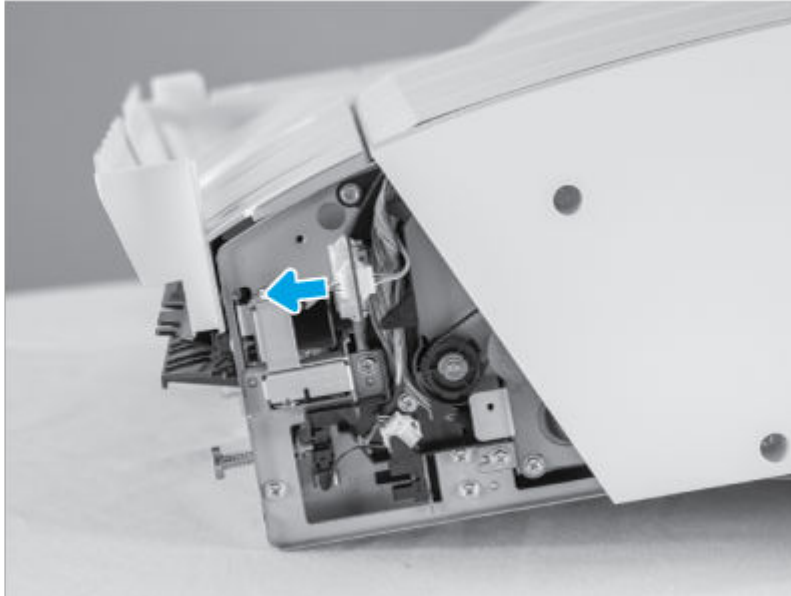
1. Release the lever (callout 1), and then rotate the punch away from the inner finisher (callout 2).

Figure 6-2721 Rotate the punch



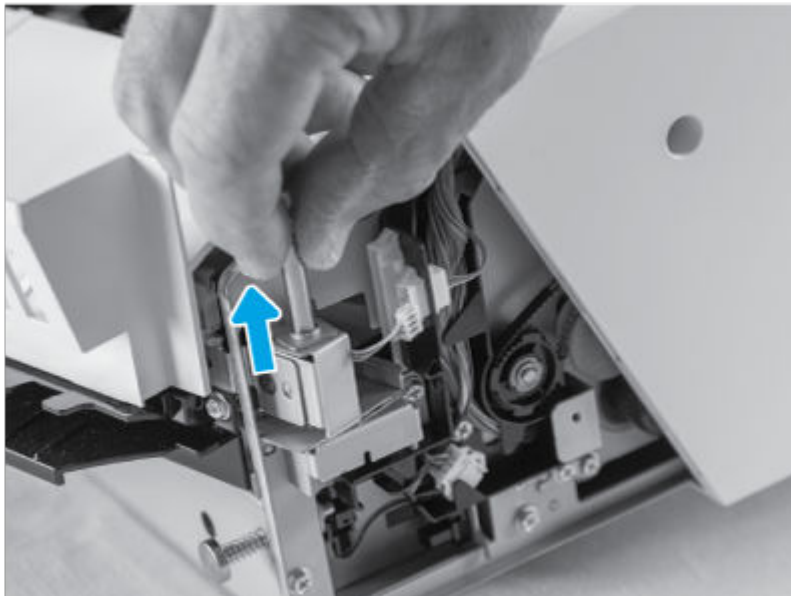
2. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2722 Disconnect one connector



3. Remove the hinge shaft, and then remove the punch cover assembly.

Figure 6-2723 Remove the assembly



3 Remove the inner finisher entrance sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher entrance sensor.

1. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-2724 Remove one screw



2. Disconnect one connector, remove one screw, and then separate the inner finisher entrance sensor from the mounting bracket to remove it.

Figure 6-2725 Remove the sensor



4 **Unpack the replacement assembly**

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Entrance motor assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher entrance motor assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-337 Part information

Part number	Part description
5QK09-60128	Entrance motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

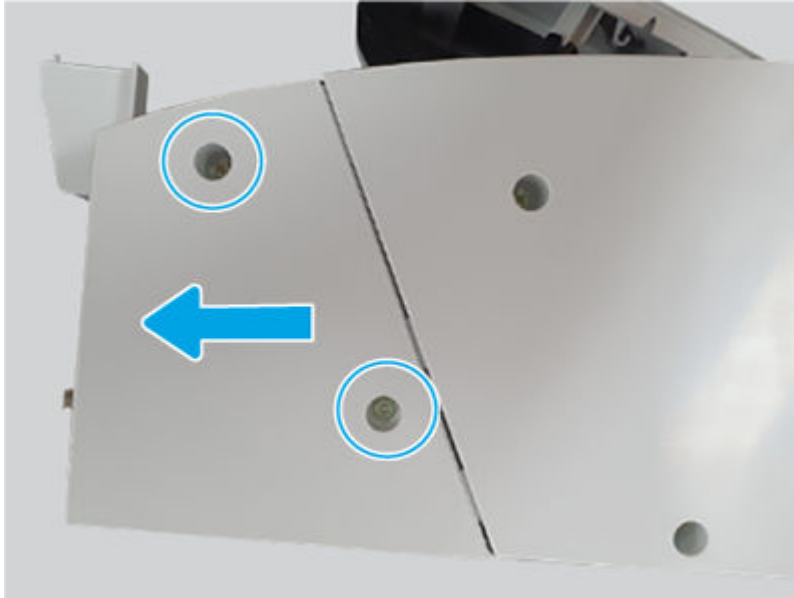
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-2726 Remove the cover

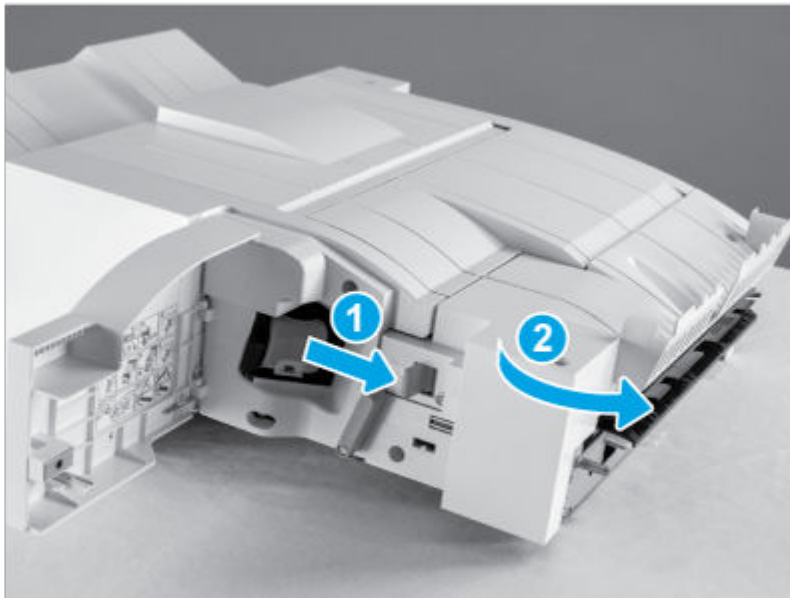


2 Remove the inner finisher punch cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher punch cover assembly.

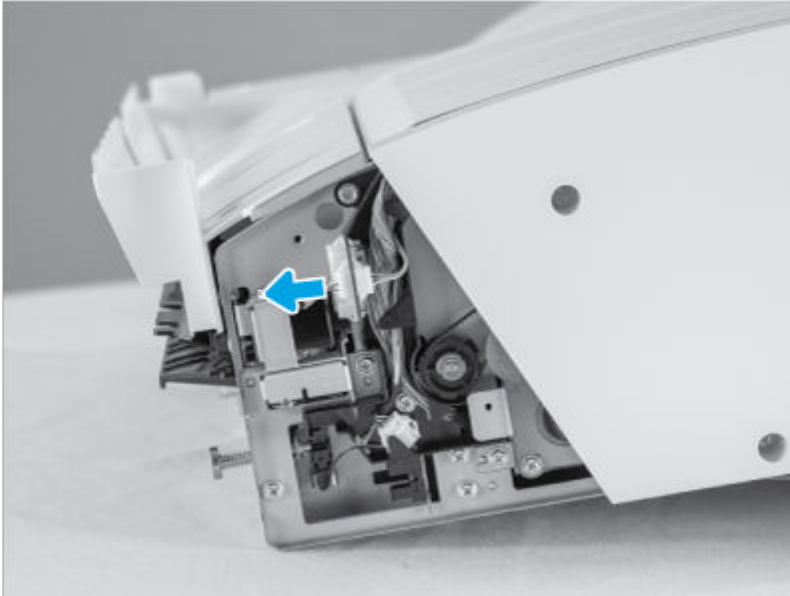
1. Release the lever (callout 1), and then rotate the punch away from the inner finisher (callout 2).

Figure 6-2727 Rotate the punch



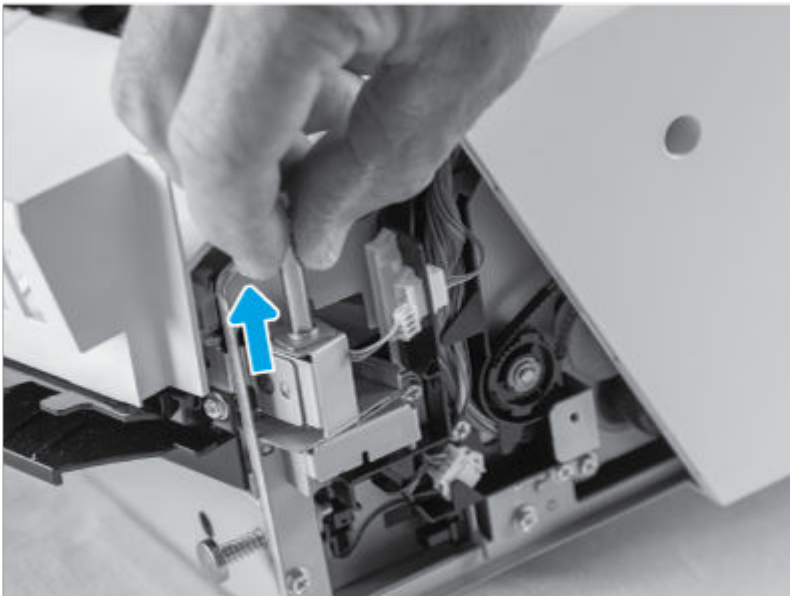
2. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2728 Disconnect one connector



3. Remove the hinge shaft, and then remove the punch cover assembly.

Figure 6-2729 Remove the assembly



3 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.

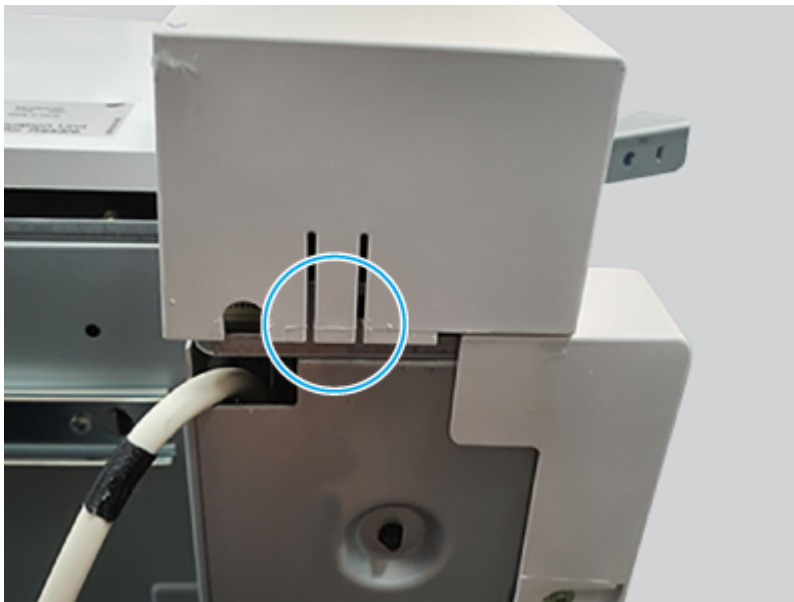
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2730 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-2731 Remove the cover



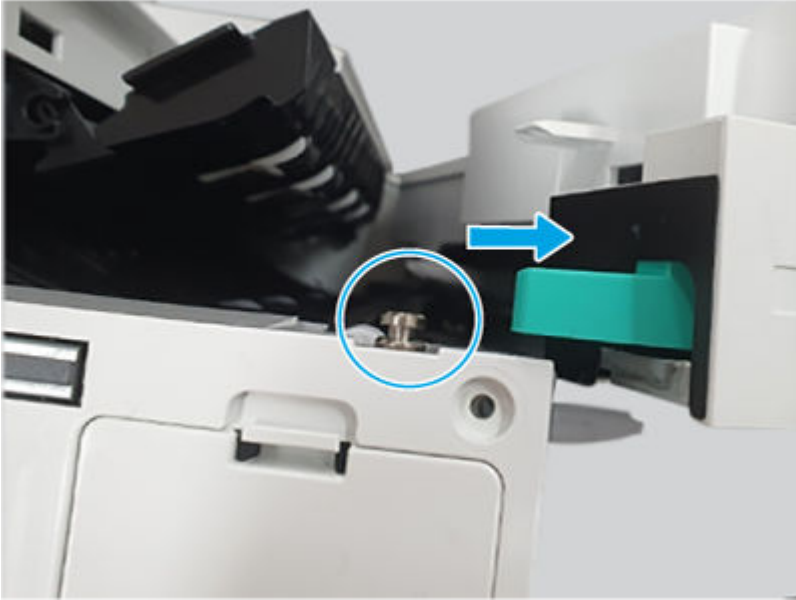
4 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-2732 Open the punch cover



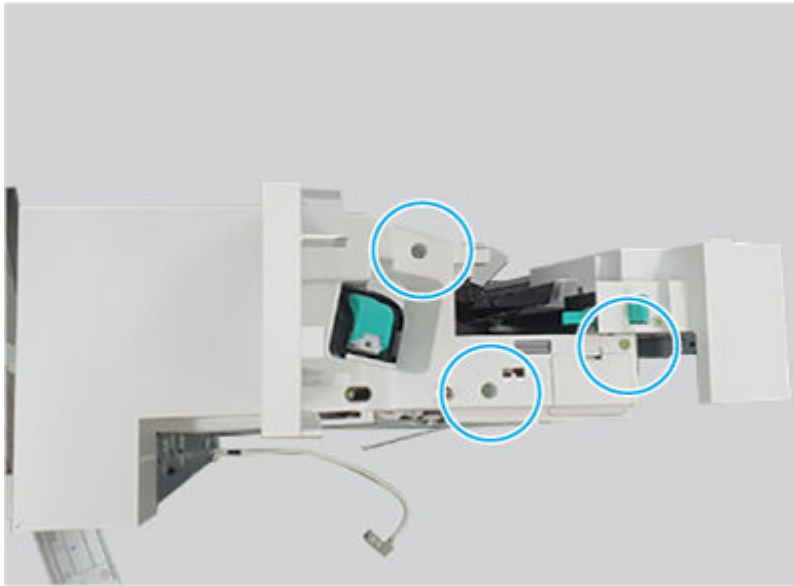
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-2733 Remove the handle



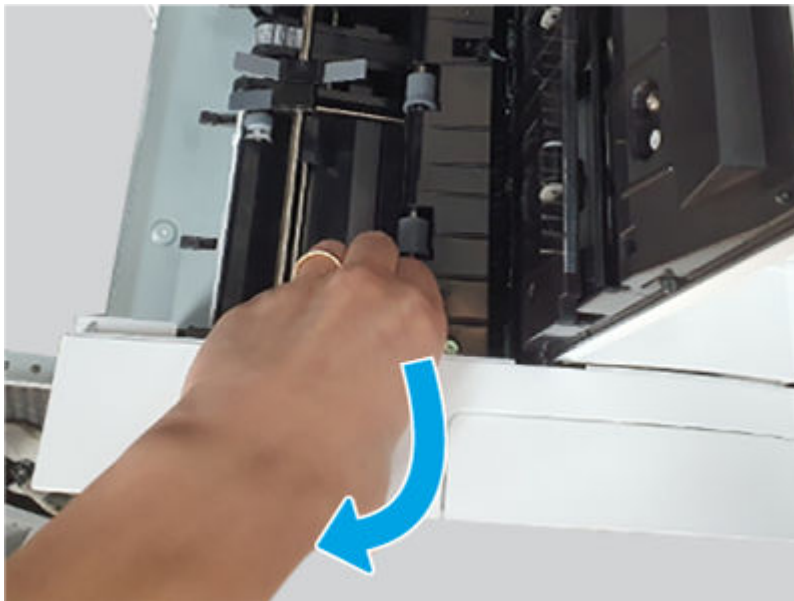
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2734 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-2735 Remove the cover

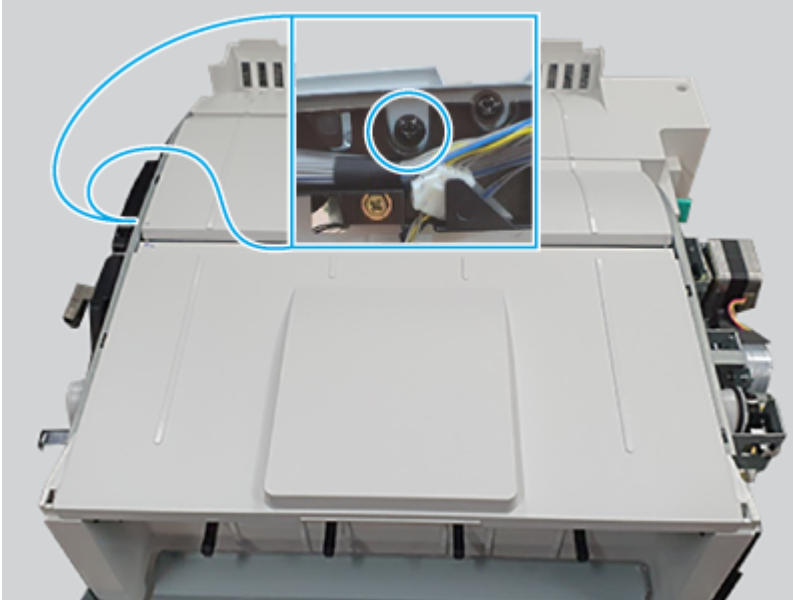


5 Remove the inner finisher middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-2736 Remove the cover

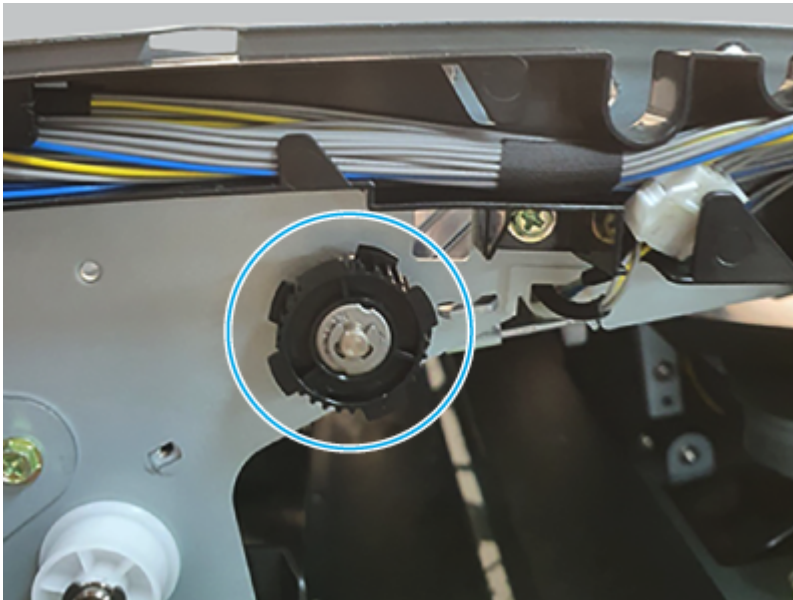


6 Remove the inner finisher middle roller

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle roller.

1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, remove the pulley, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-2737 Remove the e-ring, pulley, and bushing



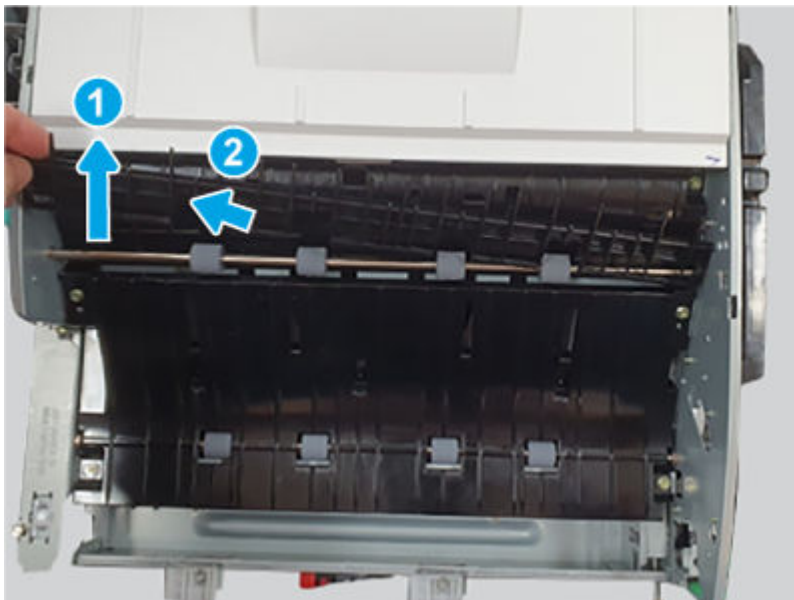
2. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-2738 Remove the e-ring and bushing



3. Remove the inner finisher middle roller.

Figure 6-2739 Remove the roller



7 Remove the inner finisher middle lower guide

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle lower guide.

- Remove six screws, and then remove the inner finisher middle lower guide.

Figure 6-2740 Remove the guide



8 Remove the inner finisher entrance motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher entrance motor assembly.

1. Disconnect one connector.


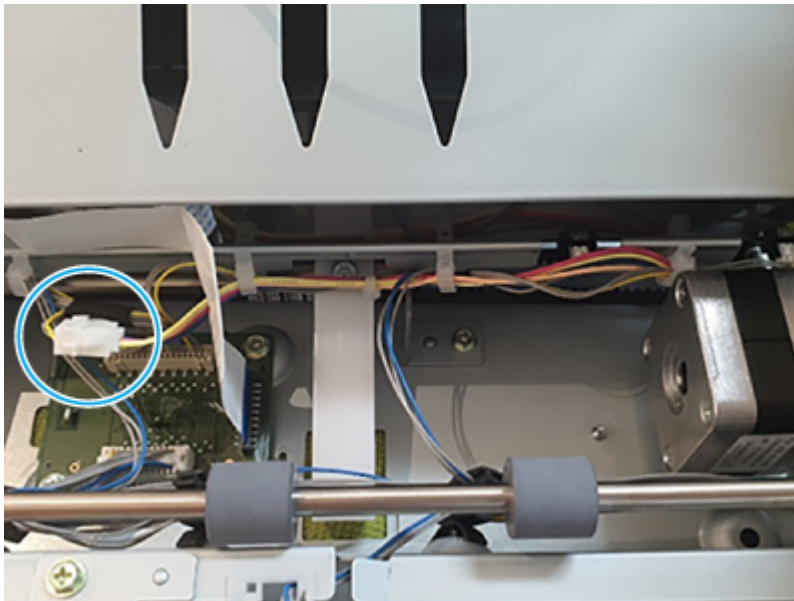
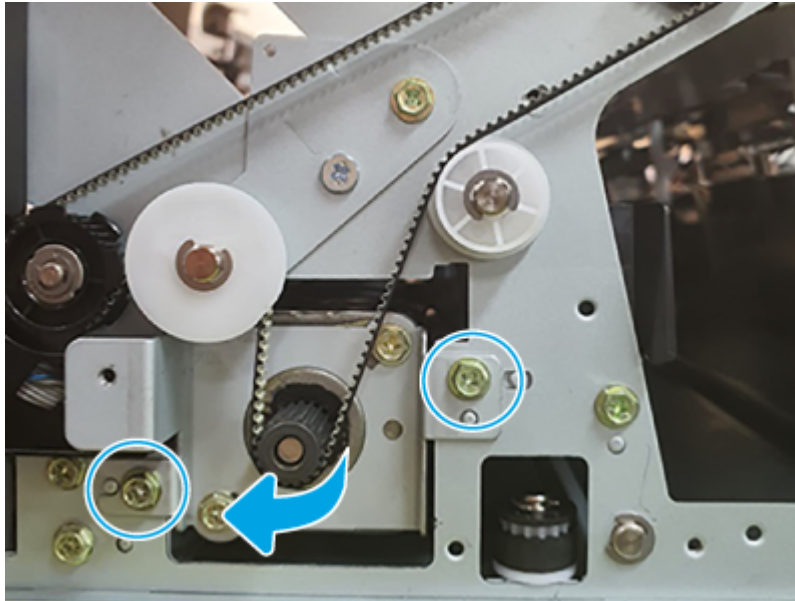
 **NOTE:** Release the wire harness from the retainers as necessary.

Figure 6-2741 Disconnect one connector



2. Remove the belt, remove two screws, and then remove the inner finisher entrance motor assembly.


Figure 6-2742 Remove the assembly



9 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Entrance motor

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher entrance motor.



NOTE: Remove the inner finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-338 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00169B	Motor, step (Entrance motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

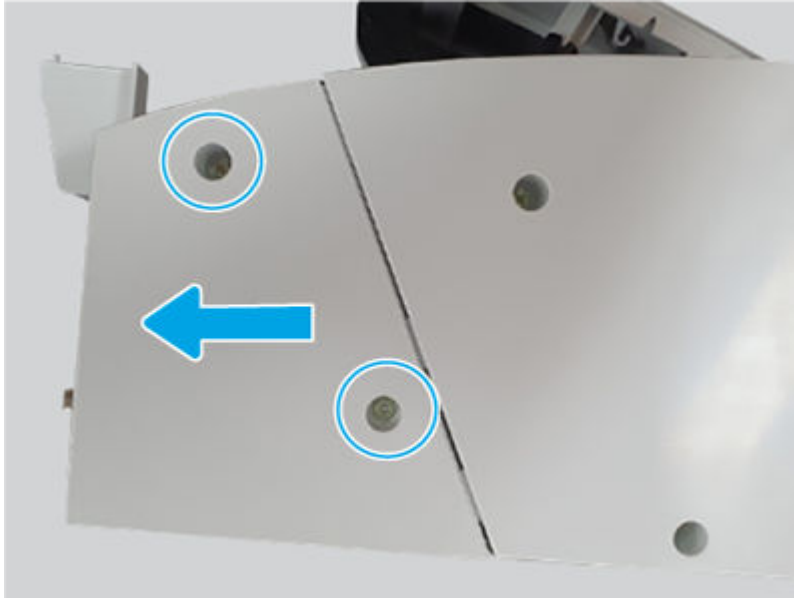
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-2743 Remove the cover

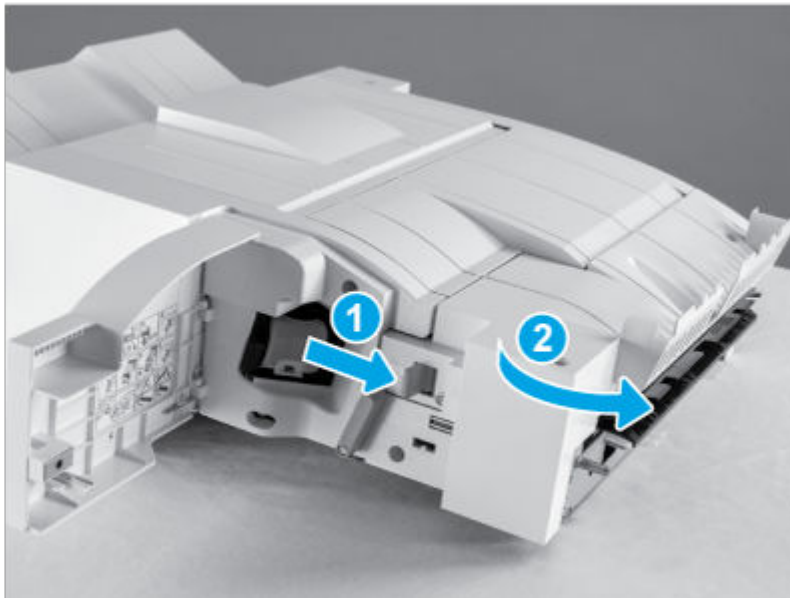


2 Remove the inner finisher punch cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher punch cover assembly.

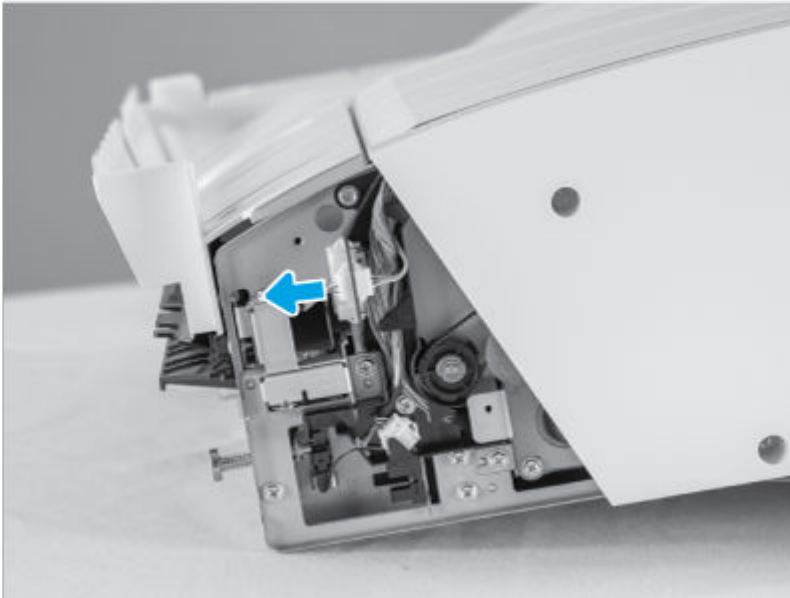
1. Release the lever (callout 1), and then rotate the punch away from the inner finisher (callout 2).

Figure 6-2744 Rotate the punch



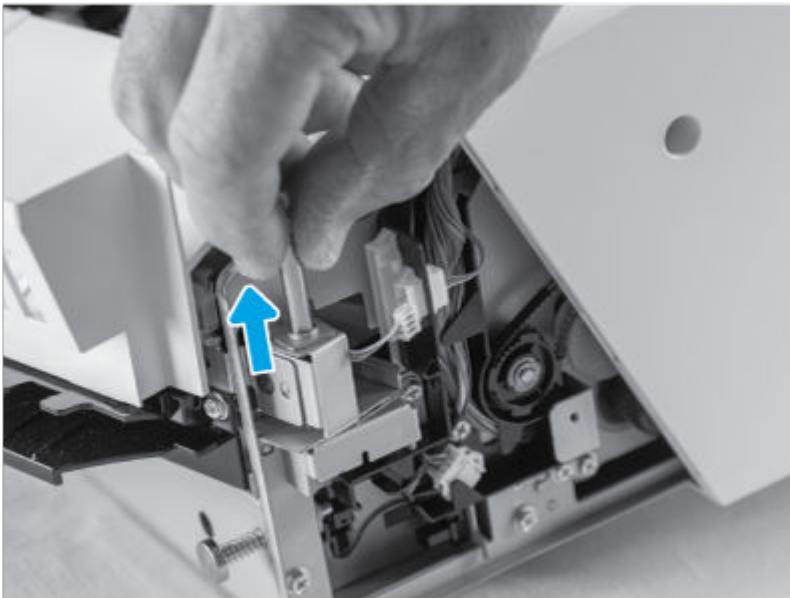
2. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2745 Disconnect one connector



3. Remove the hinge shaft, and then remove the punch cover assembly.

Figure 6-2746 Remove the assembly



3 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.

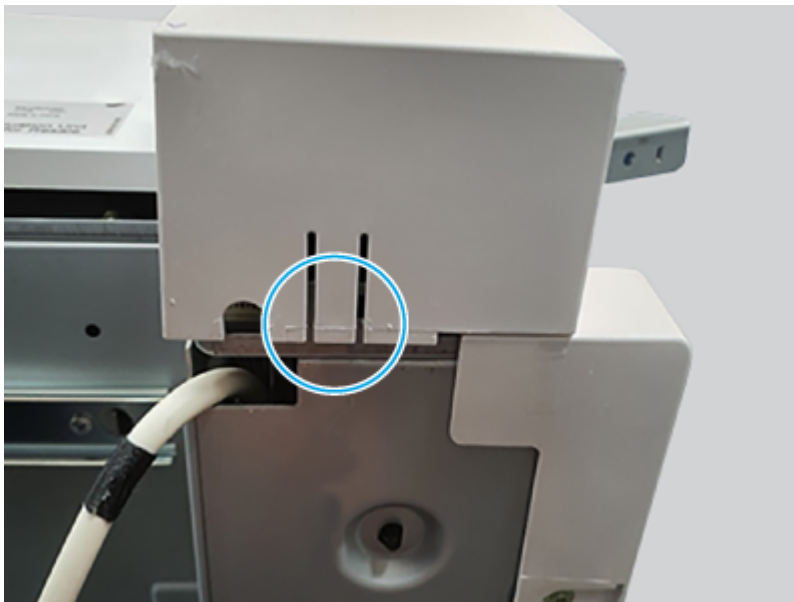
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2747 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-2748 Remove the cover



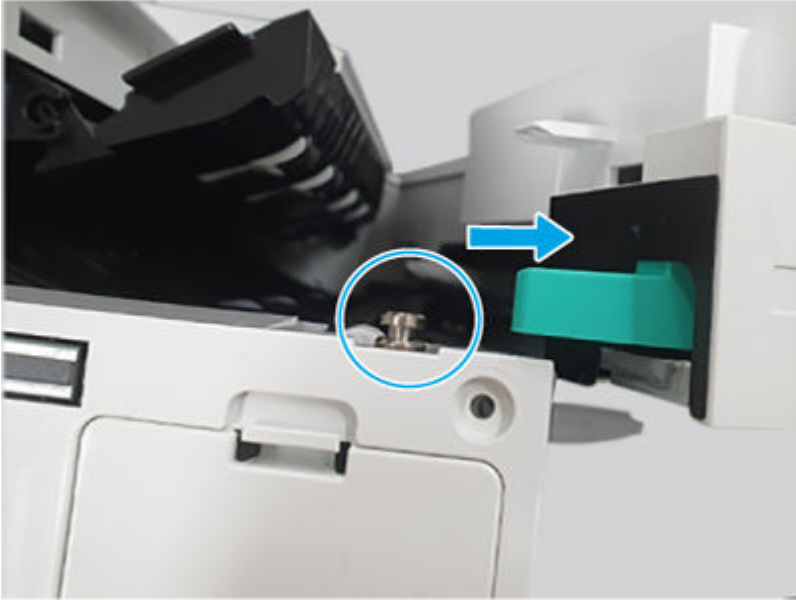
4 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-2749 Open the punch cover



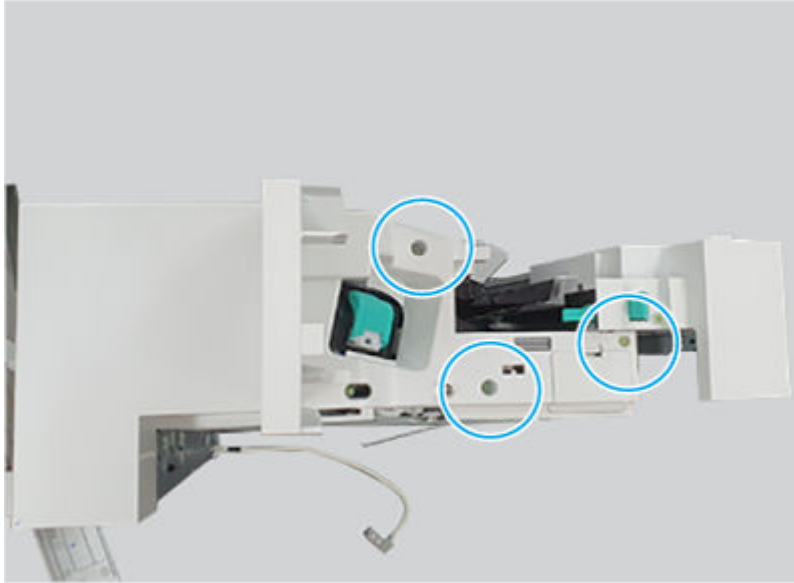
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-2750 Remove the handle



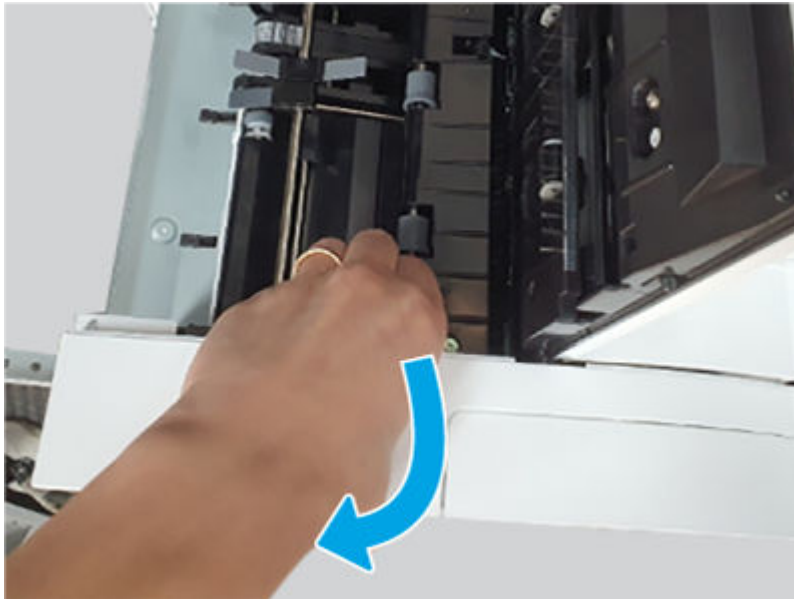
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2751 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-2752 Remove the cover

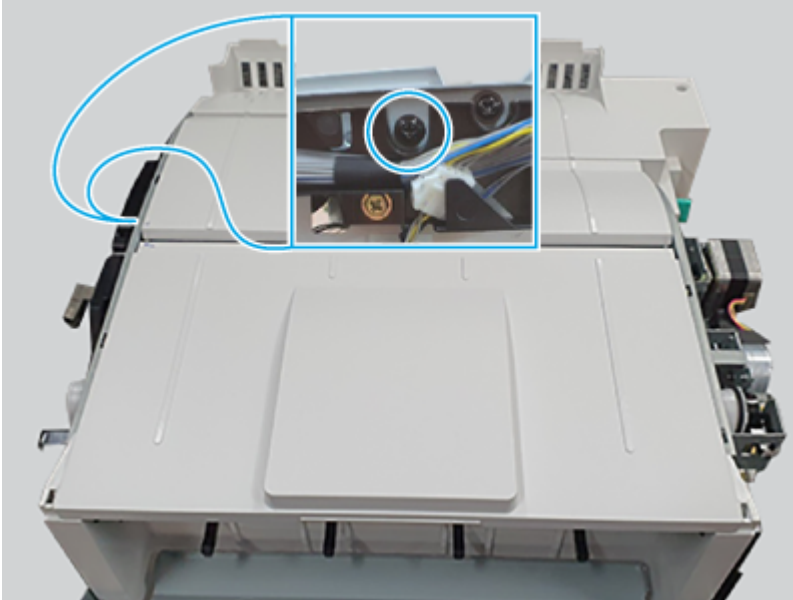


5 Remove the inner finisher middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-2753 Remove the cover

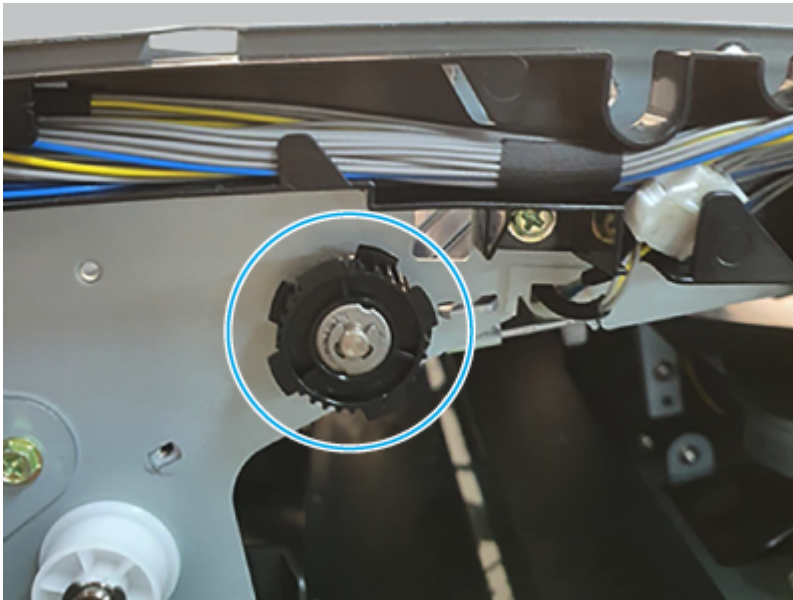


6 Remove the inner finisher middle roller

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle roller.

1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, remove the pulley, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-2754 Remove the e-ring, pulley, and bushing



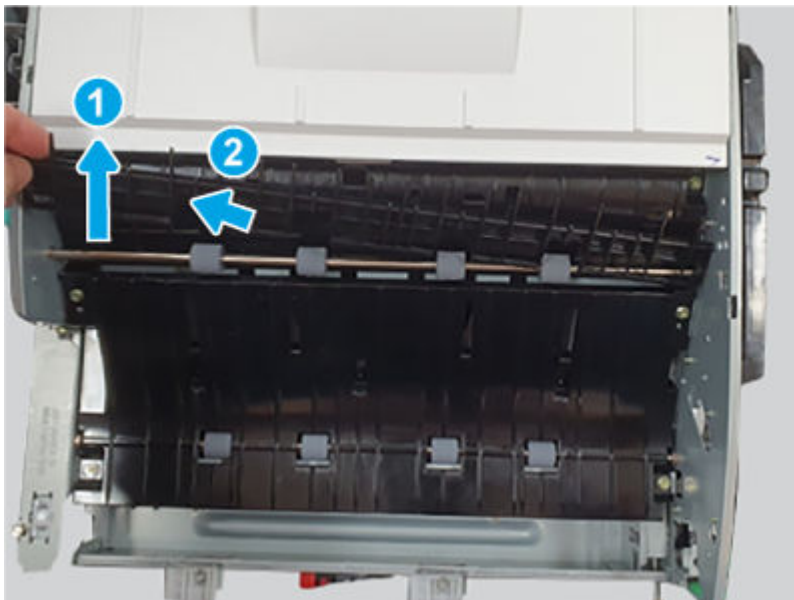
2. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-2755 Remove the e-ring and bushing



3. Remove the inner finisher middle roller.

Figure 6-2756 Remove the roller



7 Remove the inner finisher middle lower guide

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle lower guide.

- Remove six screws, and then remove the inner finisher middle lower guide.

Figure 6-2757 Remove the guide



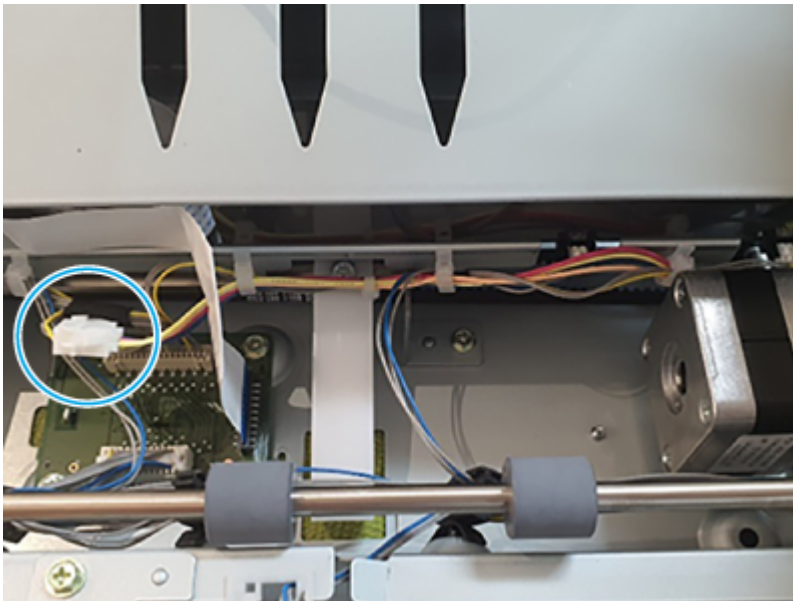
8 Remove the inner finisher entrance motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher entrance motor.

1. Disconnect one connector.

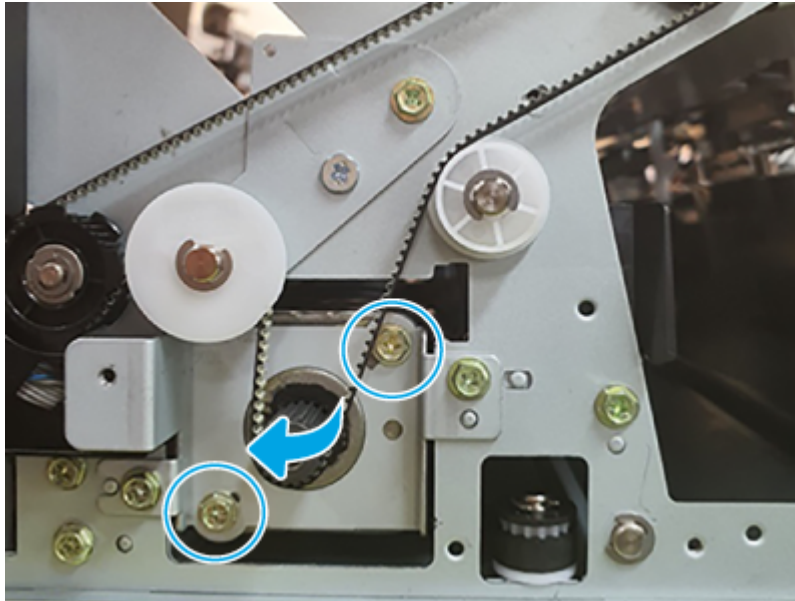
 **NOTE:** Release the wire harness from the retainers as necessary.

Figure 6-2758 Disconnect one connector



2. Remove the belt, remove two screws, and then remove the inner finisher entrance motor.

Figure 6-2759 Remove the motor



9 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Entrance motor timing belt

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher entrance motor timing belt.



NOTE: Remove the inner finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-339 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00169B	Entrance motor timing belt

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

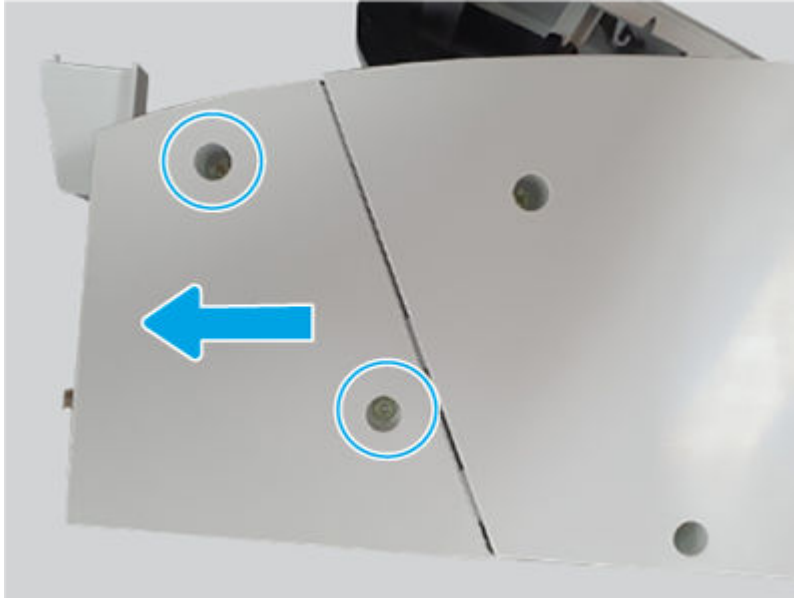
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-2760 Remove the cover

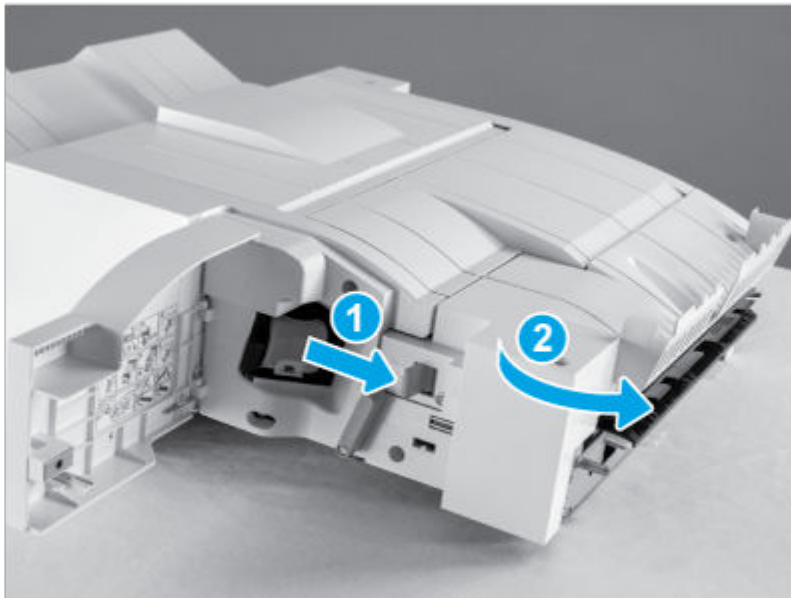


2 Remove the inner finisher punch cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher punch cover assembly.

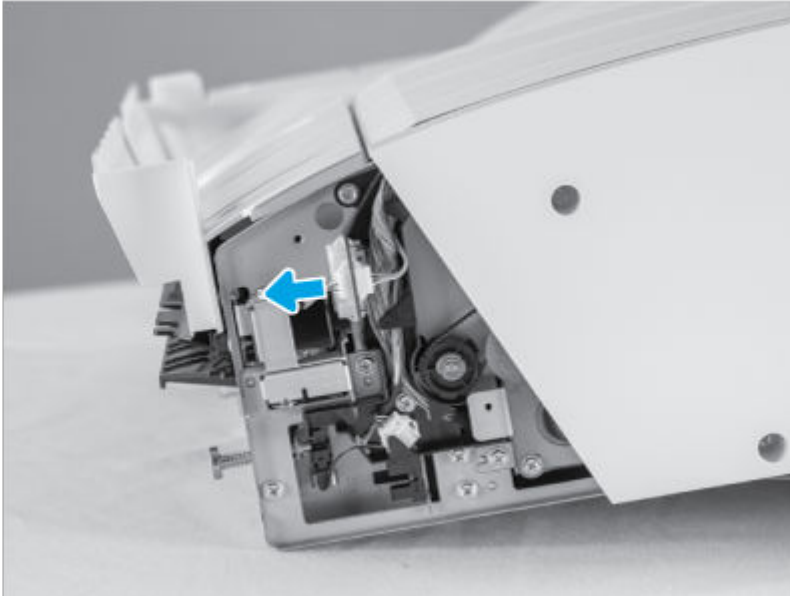
1. Release the lever (callout 1), and then rotate the punch away from the inner finisher (callout 2).

Figure 6-2761 Rotate the punch



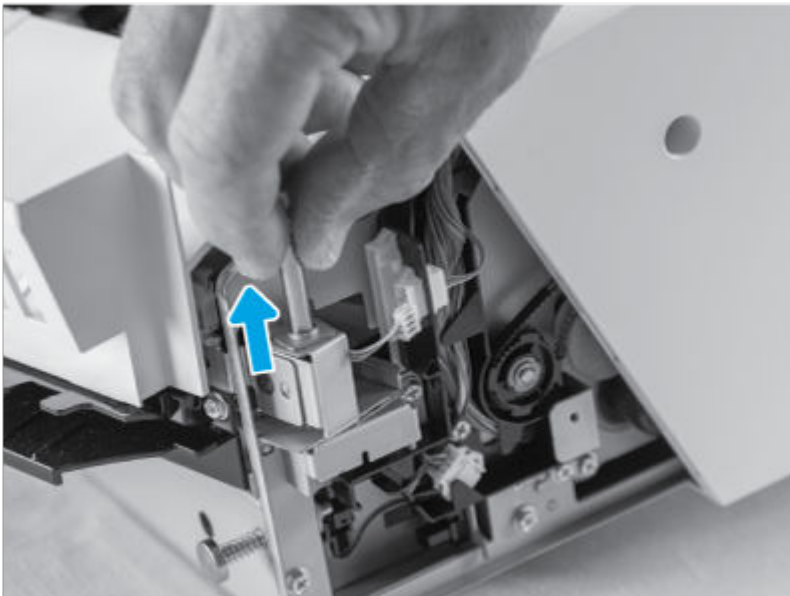
2. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2762 Disconnect one connector



3. Remove the hinge shaft, and then remove the punch cover assembly.

Figure 6-2763 Remove the assembly



3 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.

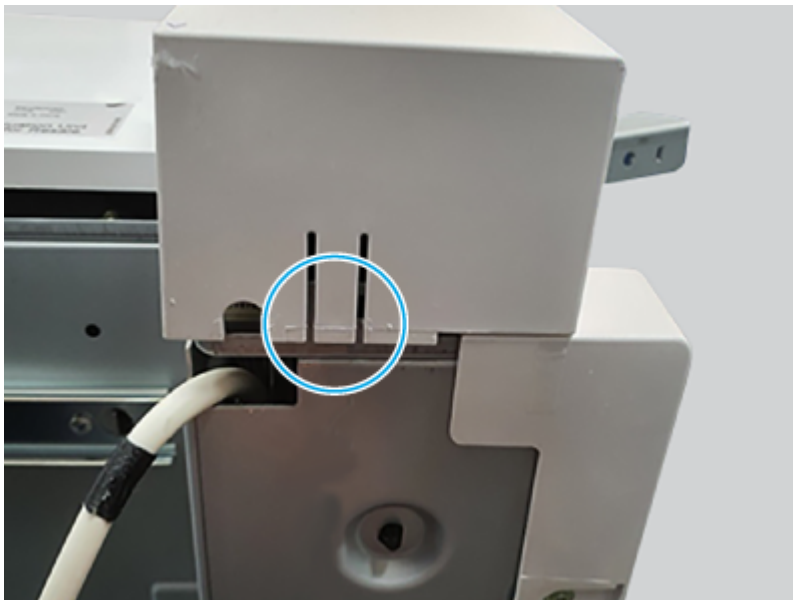
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2764 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-2765 Remove the cover



4 Remove the inner finisher entrance motor timing belt

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher entrance motor timing belt.

- Remove the inner finisher entrance motor timing belt.


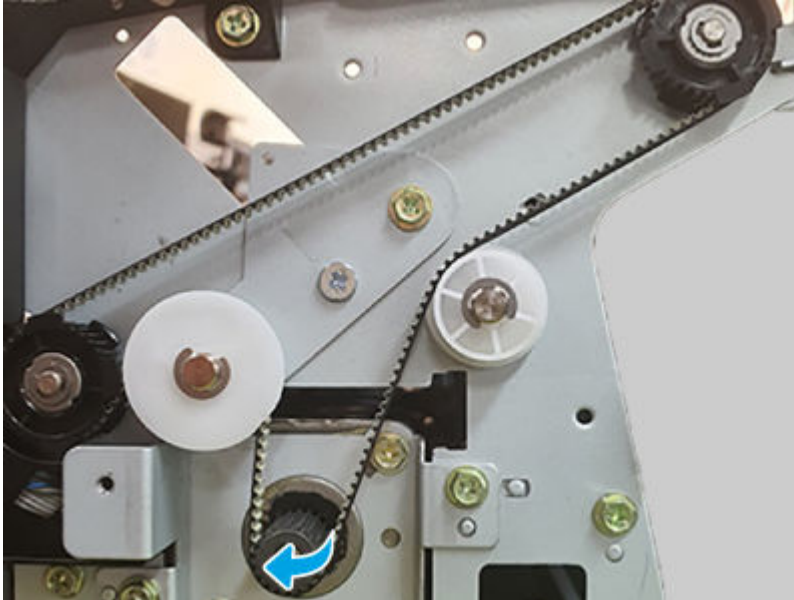
 **NOTE:** To begin, slip the belt off of the lower most gear when removing the belt.

Figure 6-2766 Remove the belt



5 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Entrance roller

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher entrance roller.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-340 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC66-04243A	Entrance roller

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

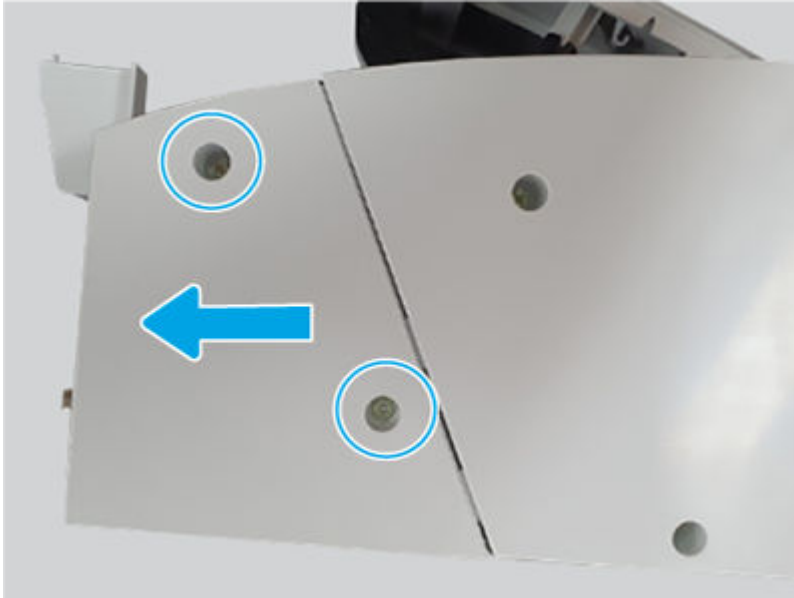
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-2767 Remove the cover

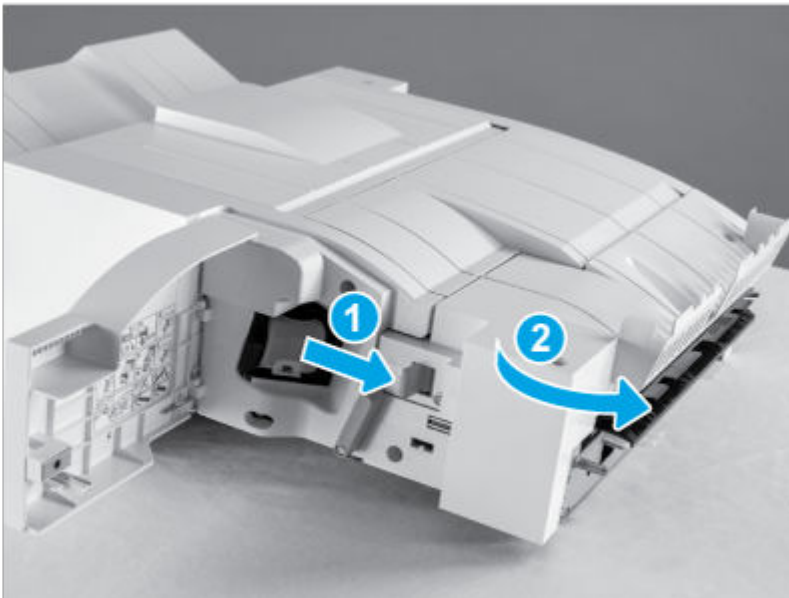


2 Remove the inner finisher punch cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher punch cover assembly.

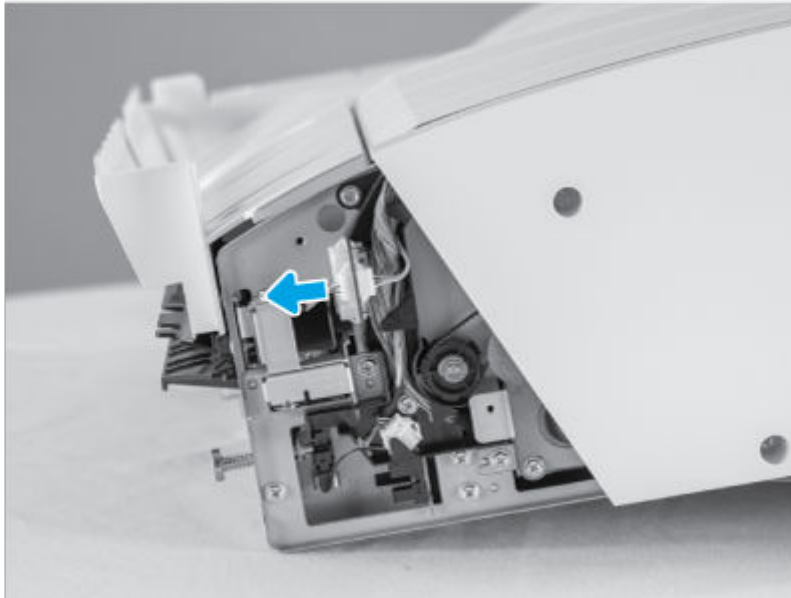
1. Release the lever (callout 1), and then rotate the punch away from the inner finisher (callout 2).

Figure 6-2768 Rotate the punch



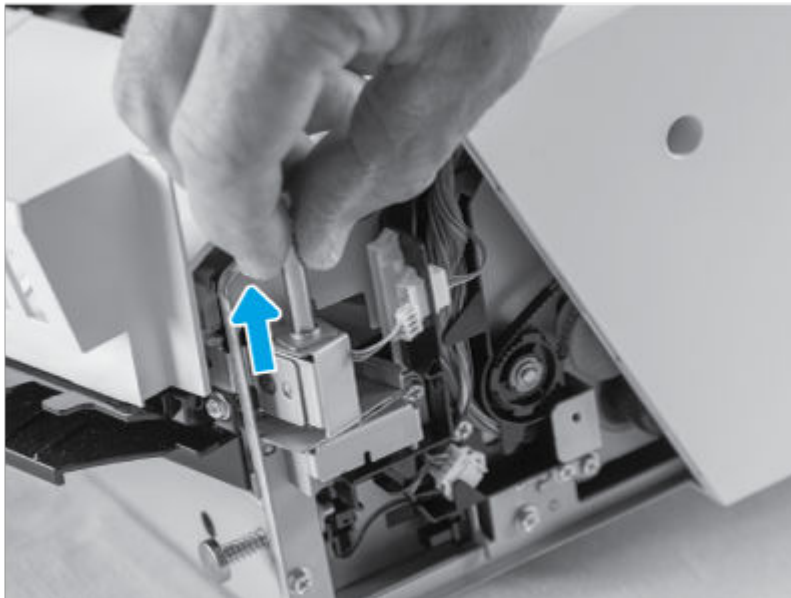
2. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2769 Disconnect one connector



3. Remove the hinge shaft, and then remove the punch cover assembly.

Figure 6-2770 Remove the assembly



3 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.

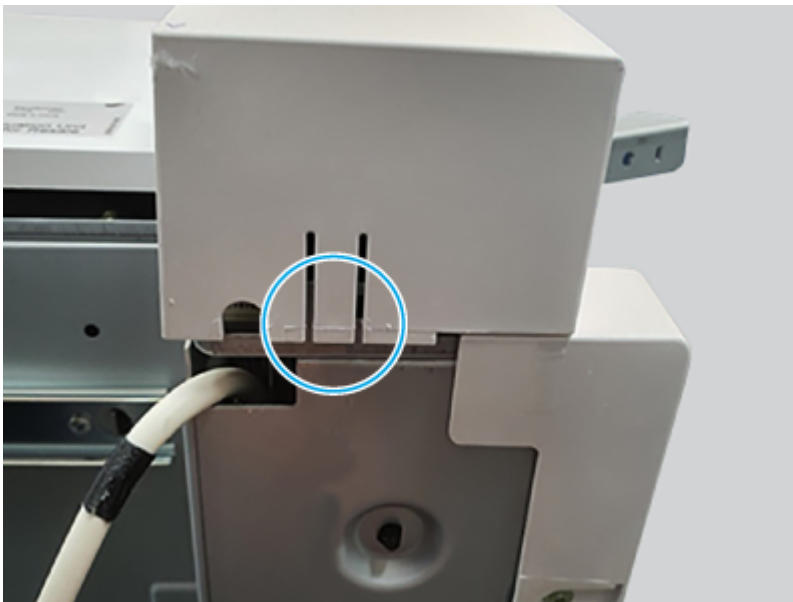
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2771 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-2772 Remove the cover



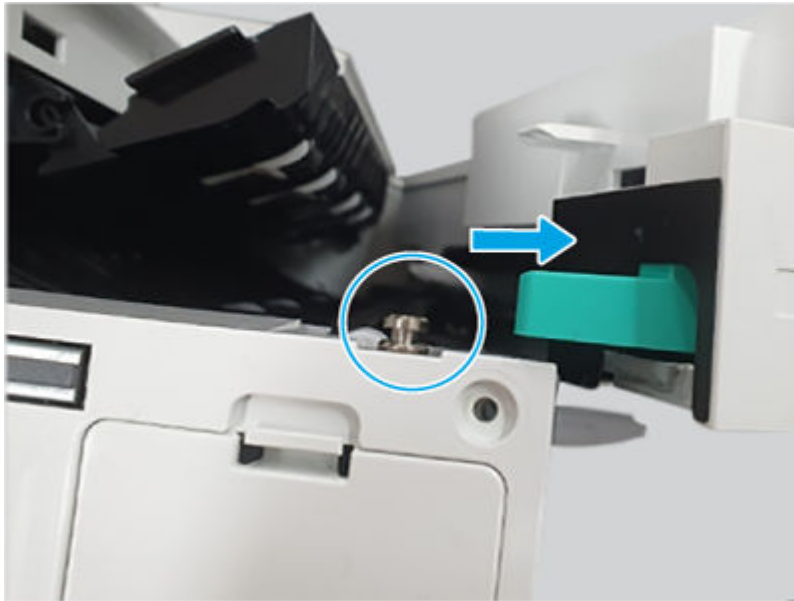
4 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-2773 Open the punch cover



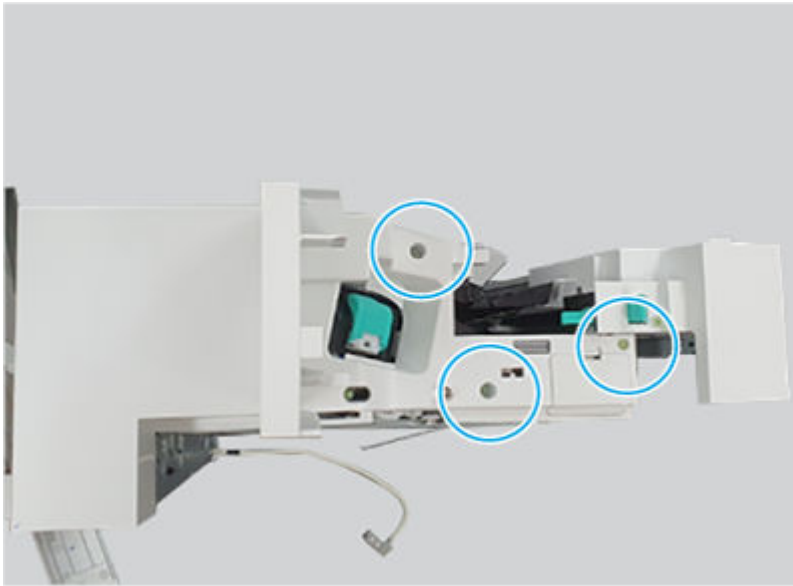
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-2774 Remove the handle



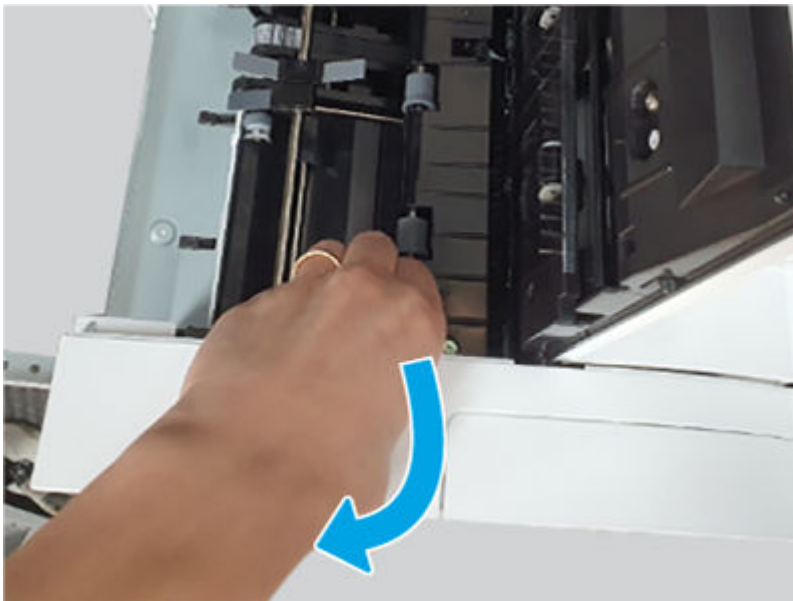
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2775 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-2776 Remove the cover

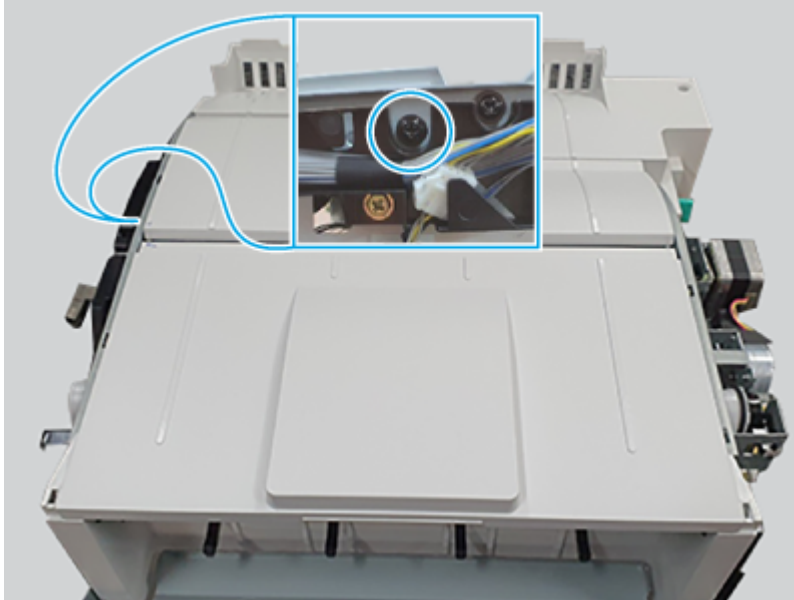


5 Remove the inner finisher middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-2777 Remove the cover

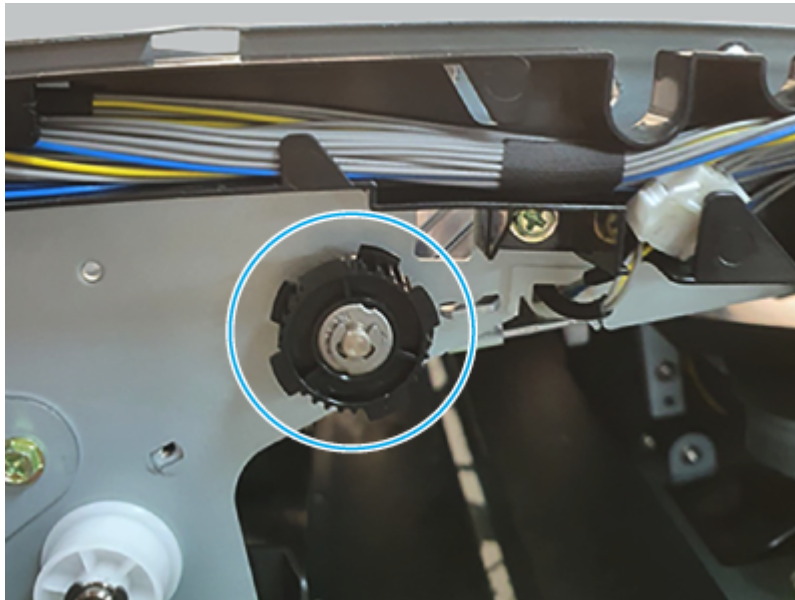


6 Remove the inner finisher middle roller

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle roller.

1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, remove the pulley, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-2778 Remove the e-ring, pulley, and bushing



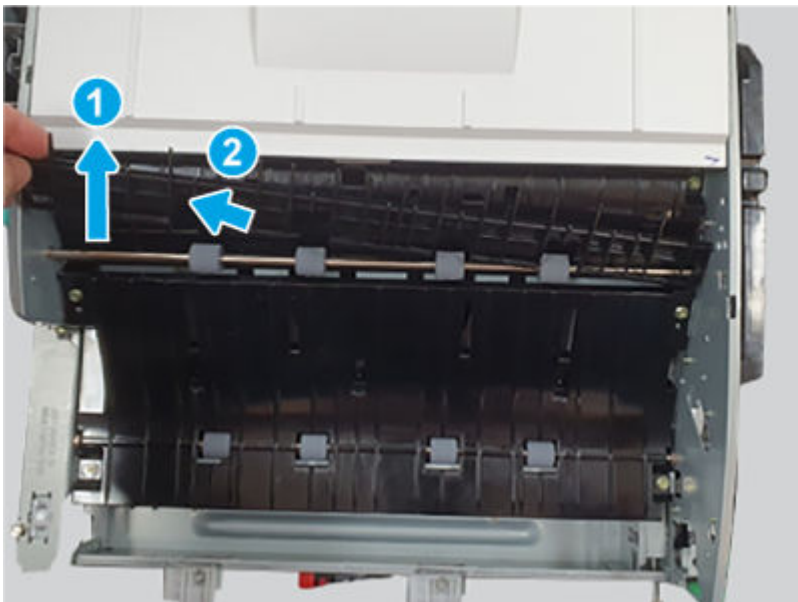
2. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-2779 Remove the e-ring and bushing



3. Remove the inner finisher middle roller.

Figure 6-2780 Remove the roller

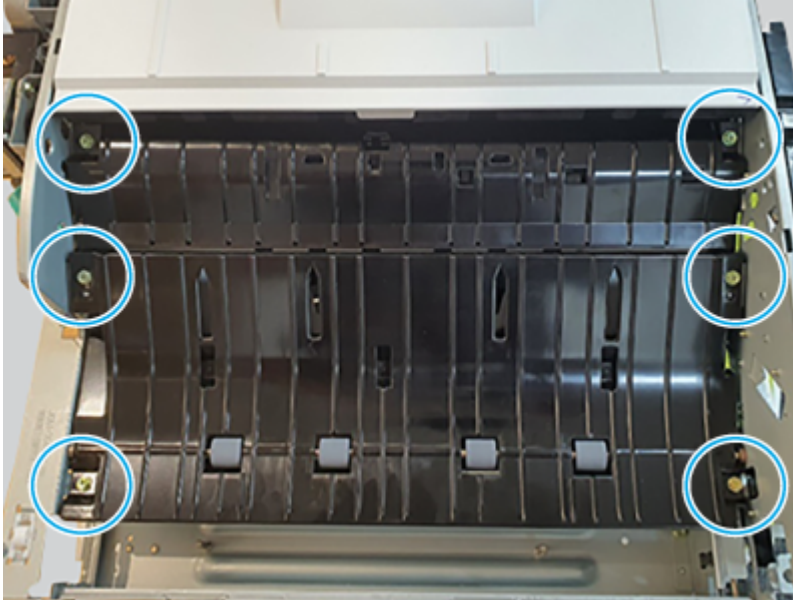


7 Remove the inner finisher middle lower guide

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle lower guide.

- Remove six screws, and then remove the inner finisher middle lower guide.

Figure 6-2781 Remove the guide

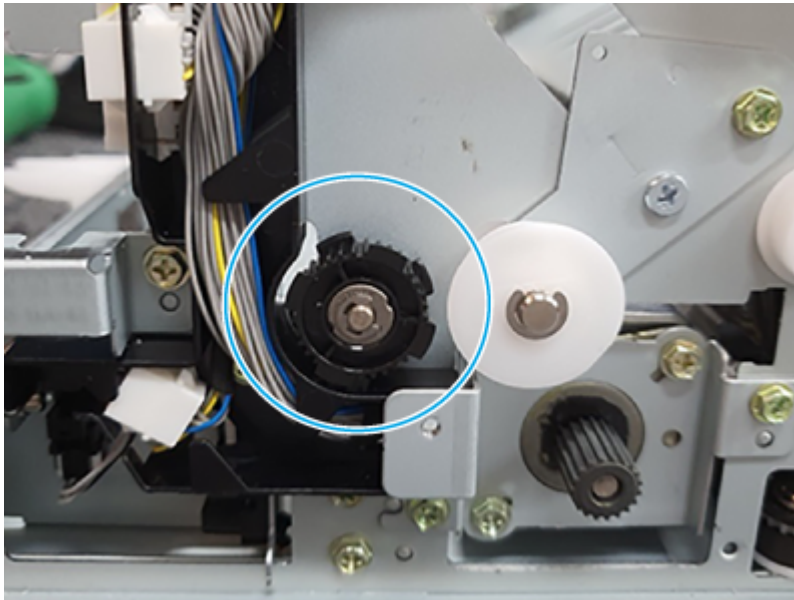


8 Remove the inner finisher entrance roller

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher entrance roller.

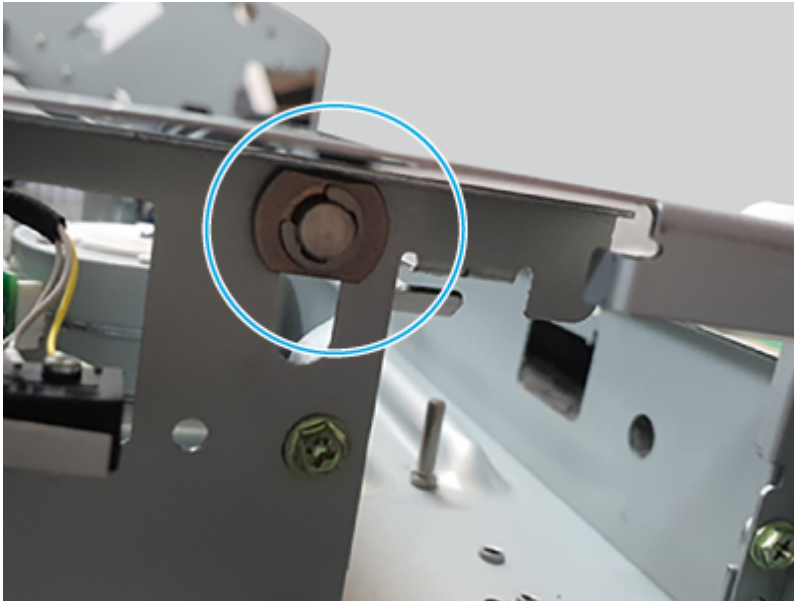
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, remove the gear, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-2782 Remove the e-ring, gear, and bushing



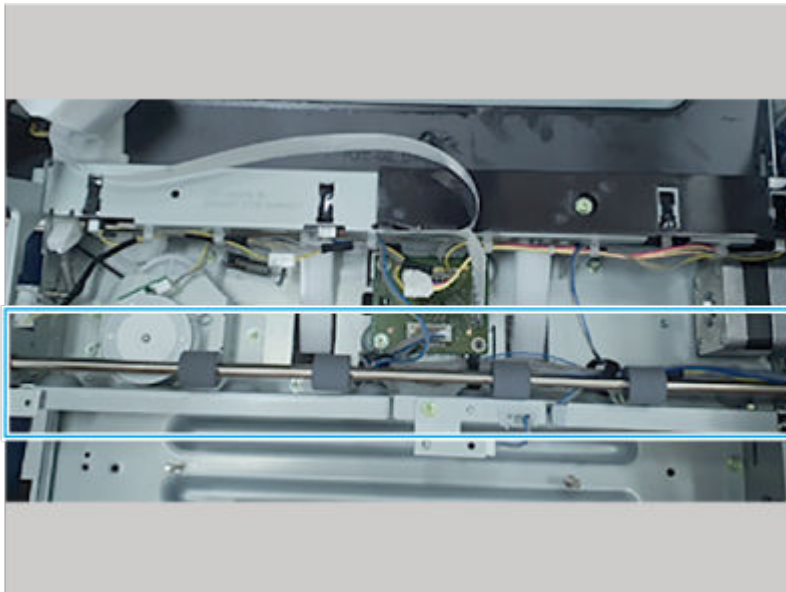
2. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-2783 Remove the e-ring and bushing



3. Remove the inner finisher entrance roller.

Figure 6-2784 Remove the roller



9 **Unpack the replacement assembly**

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Middle roller

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher middle roller.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-341 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC66-04243A	Middle roller

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

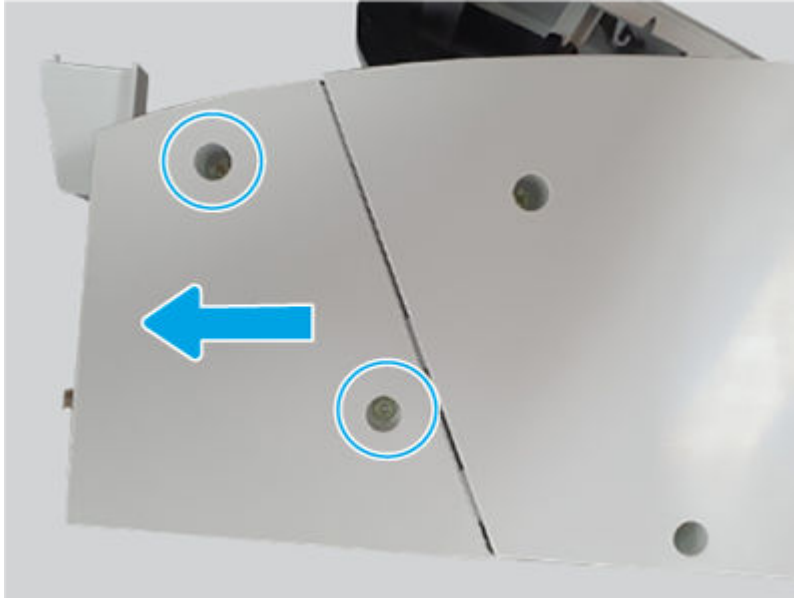
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-2785 Remove the cover



2 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

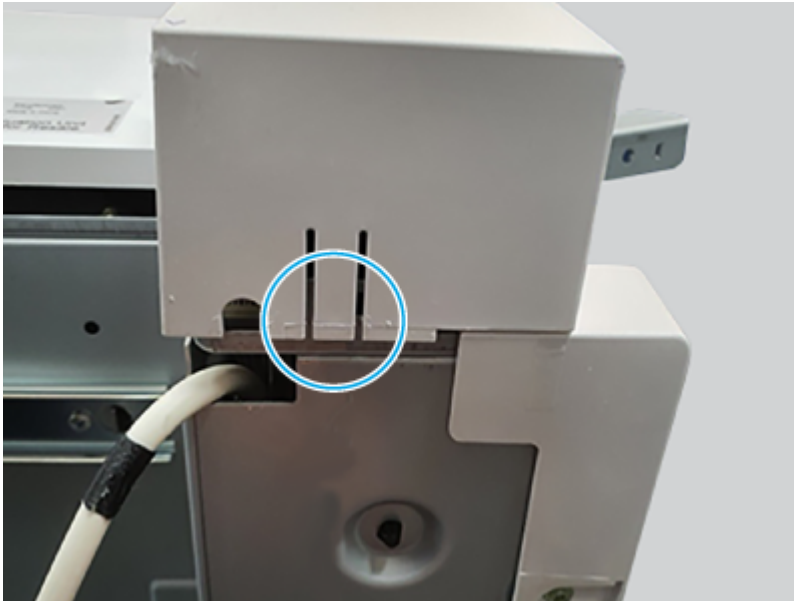
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2786 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-2787 Remove the cover

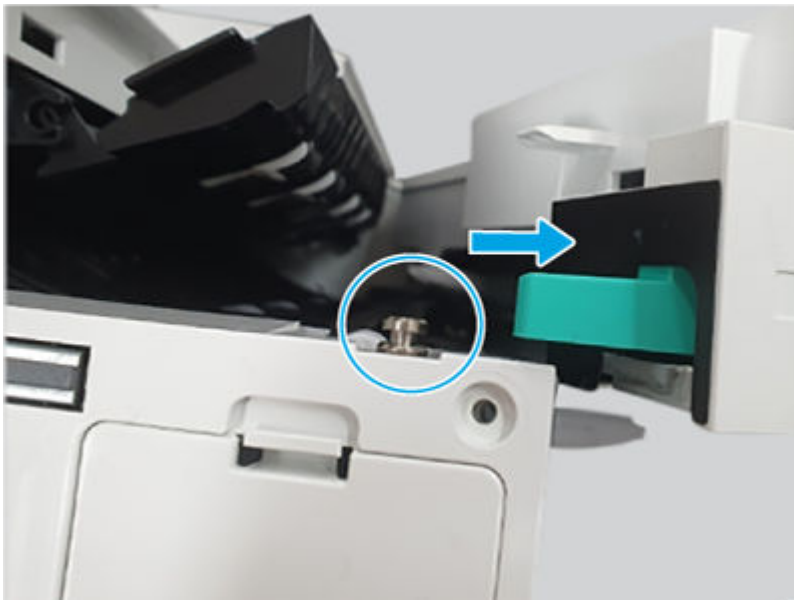


3 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-2788 Open the punch cover



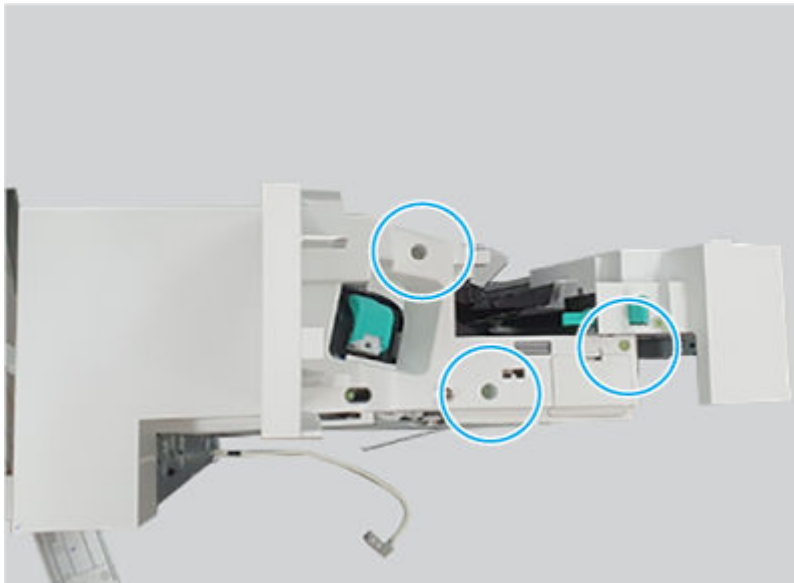
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-2789 Remove the handle



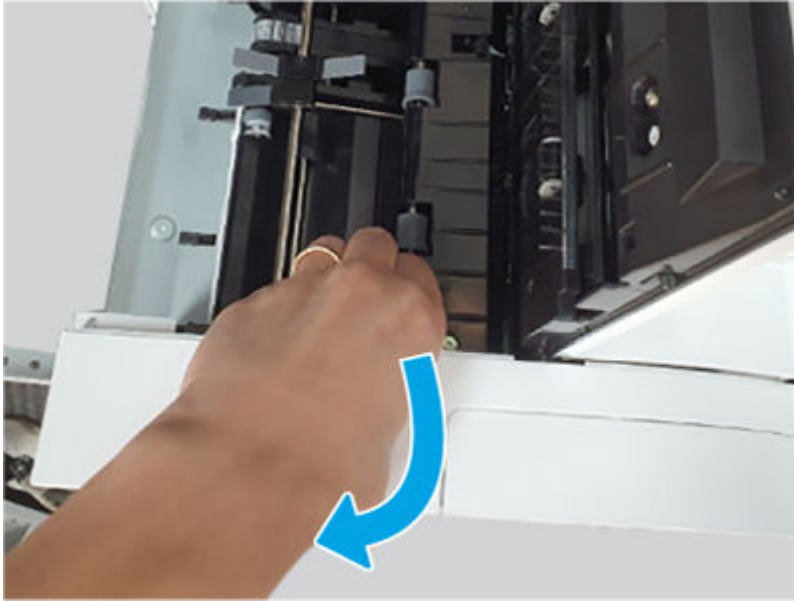
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2790 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-2791 Remove the cover

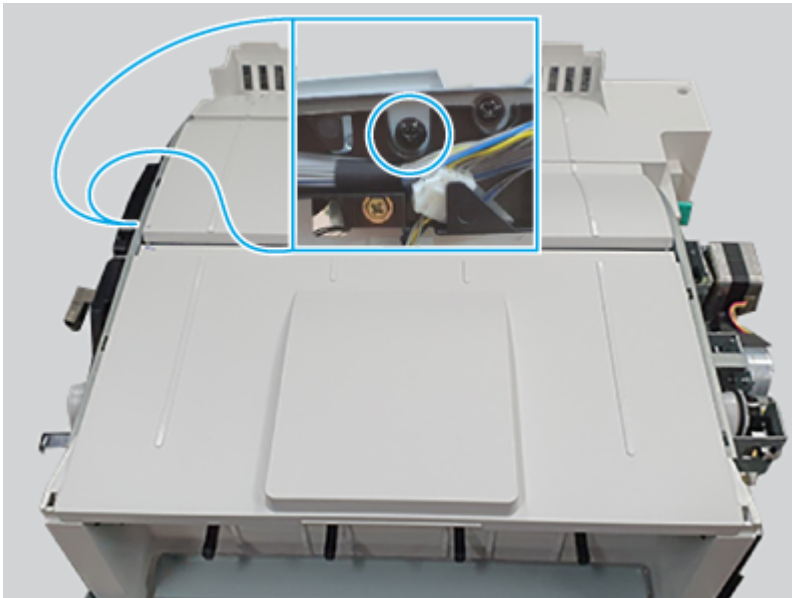


4 Remove the inner finisher middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-2792 Remove the cover

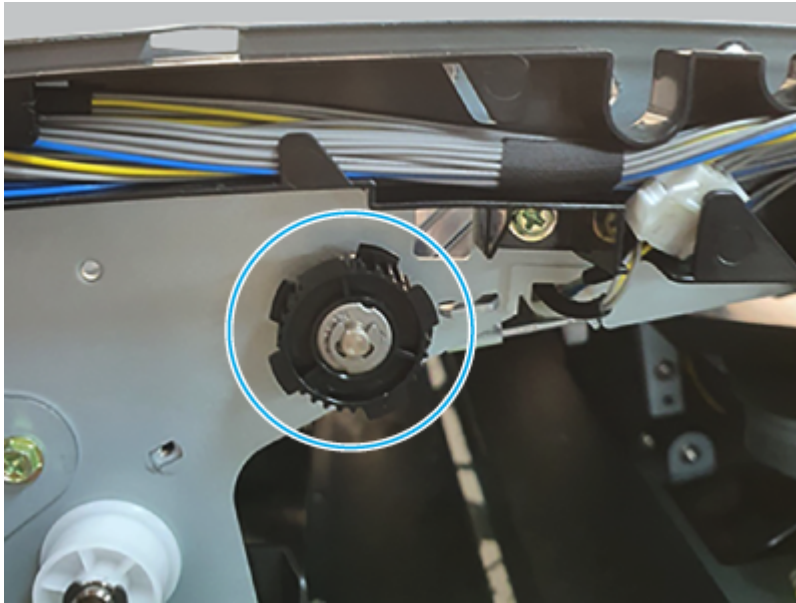


5 Remove the inner finisher middle roller

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle roller.

1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, remove the pulley, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-2793 Remove the e-ring, pulley, and bushing



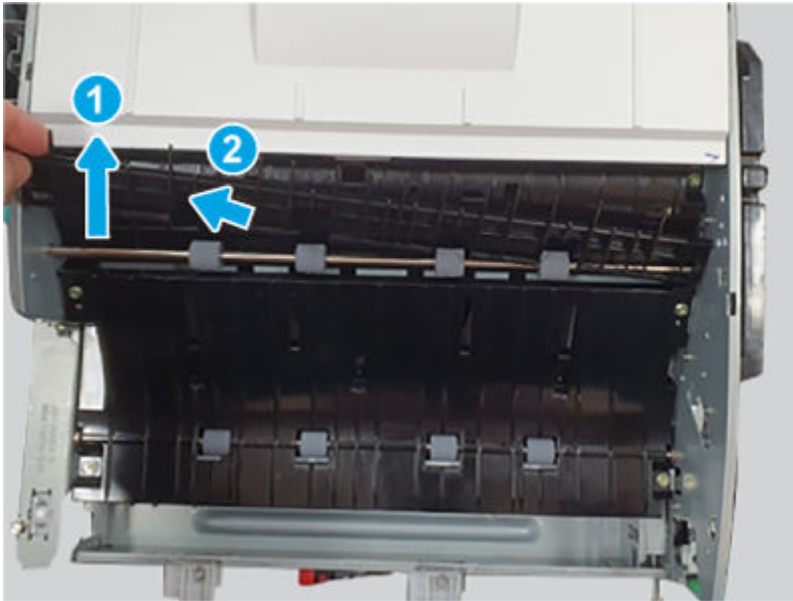
2. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-2794 Remove the e-ring and bushing



3. Remove the inner finisher middle roller.


Figure 6-2795 Remove the roller



6 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Exit unit

Review the inner finisher exit unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Exit roller assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher exit roller assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-342 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01330A	Exit roller assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

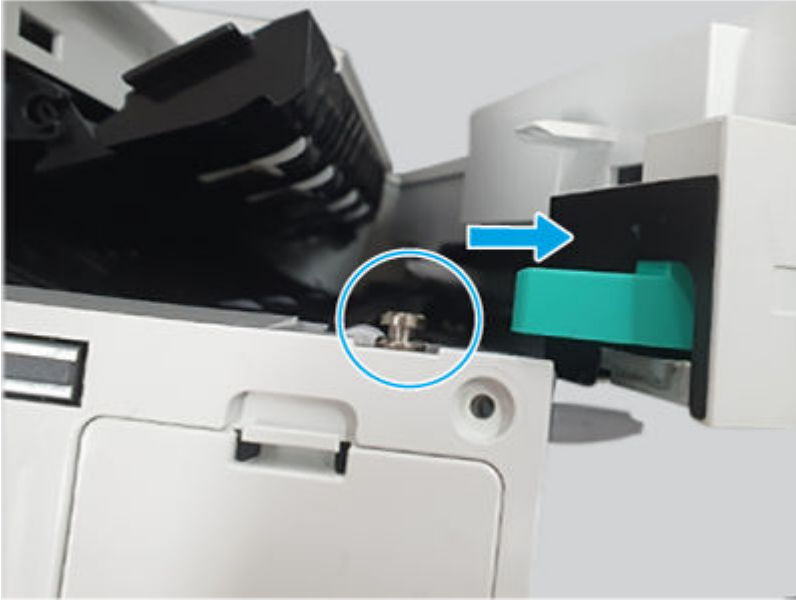
1 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-2796 Open the punch cover



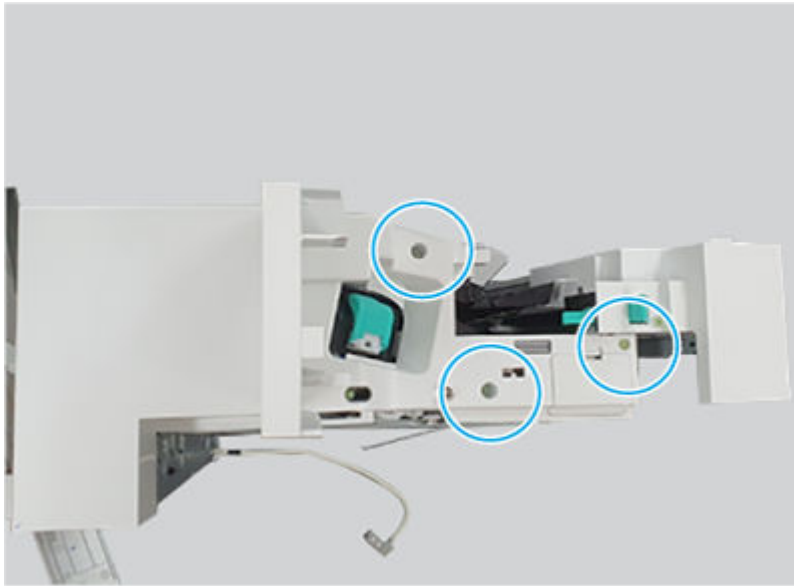
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-2797 Remove the handle



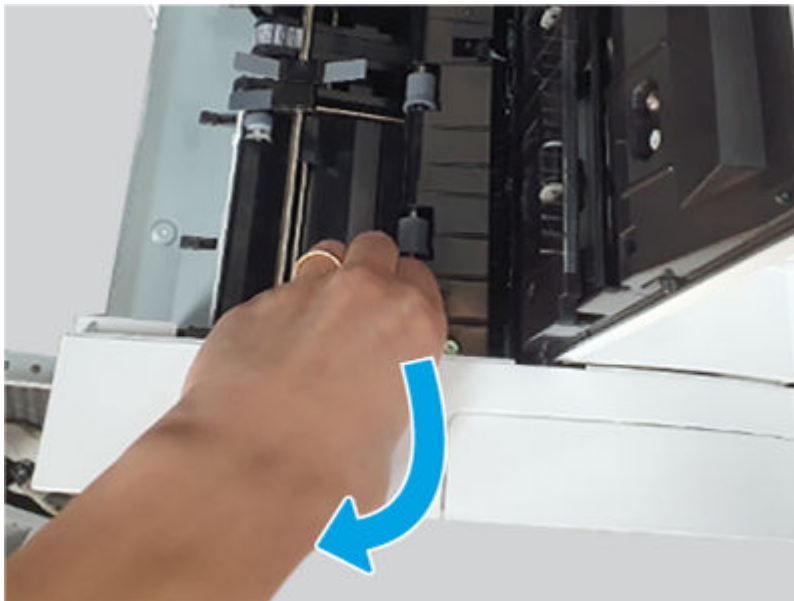
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2798 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-2799 Remove the cover

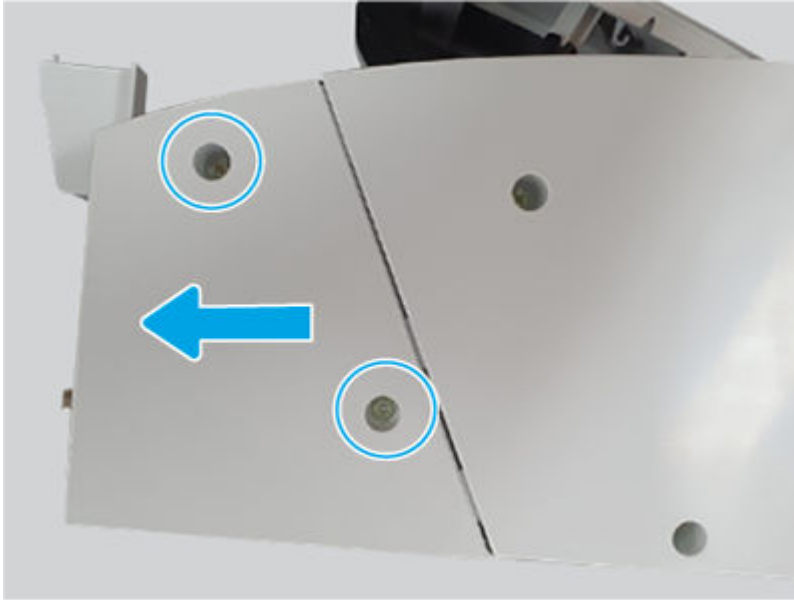


2 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-2800 Remove the cover



3 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

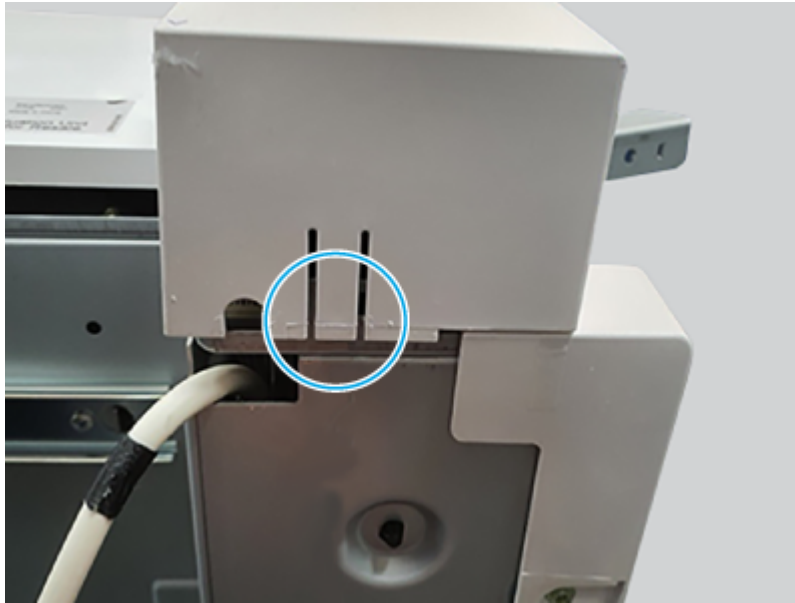
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2801 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-2802 Remove the cover

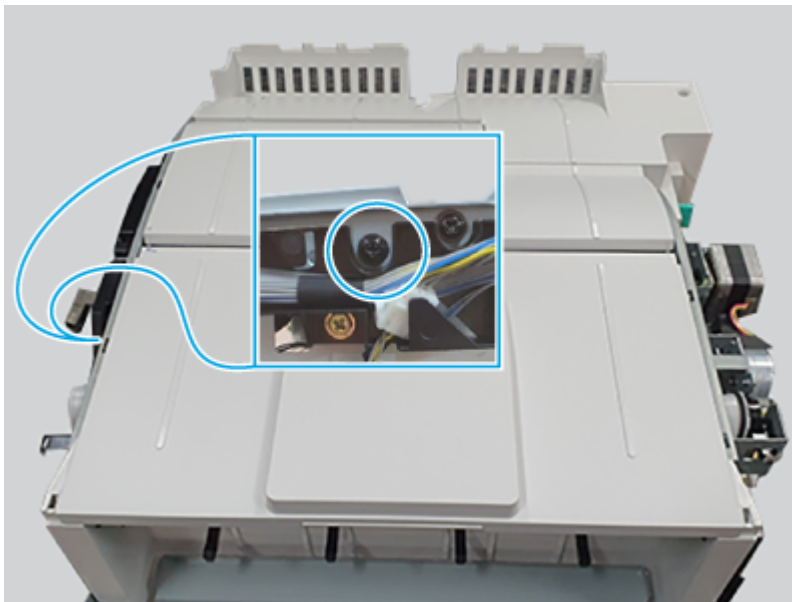


4. **Remove the inner finisher top cover assembly**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher top cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher top cover assembly.

Figure 6-2803 Remove the cover



5. **Remove the inner finisher sub paddle assembly**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher sub paddle assembly.

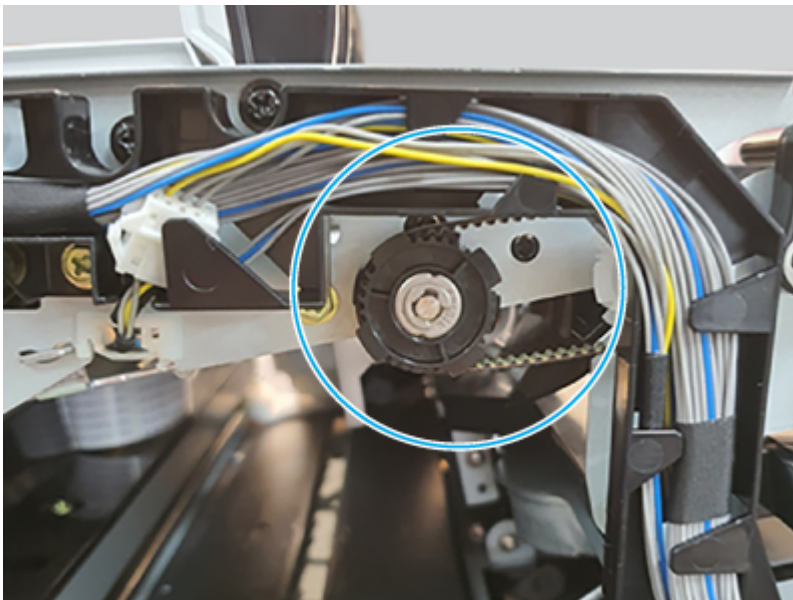
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-2804 Remove one screw



2. Do the following:
 - Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring.
 - Remove the gear, belt, and bushing.
 - Remove the sub paddle assembly.

Figure 6-2805 Remove the assembly

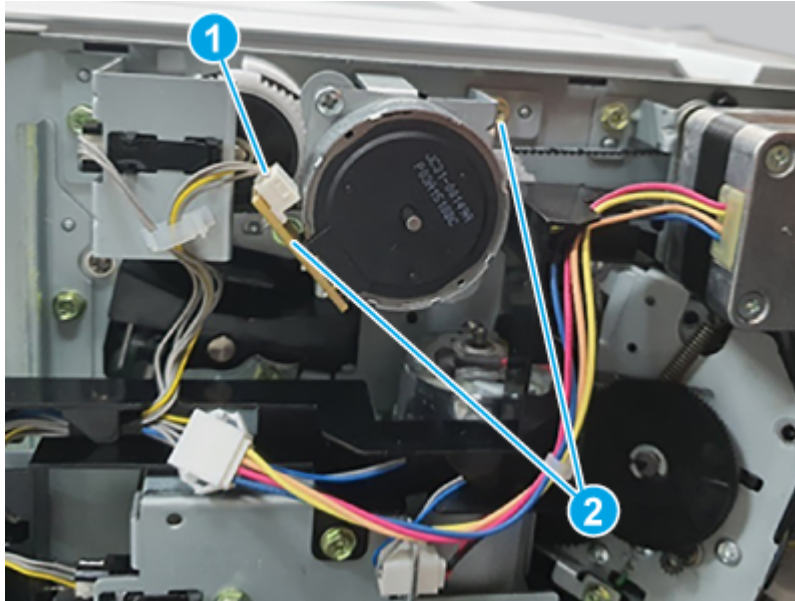


6 Remove the inner finisher main paddle motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher main paddle motor assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.
 - Open the punch cover.
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the inner finisher main paddle motor assembly.

Figure 6-2806 Remove the assembly

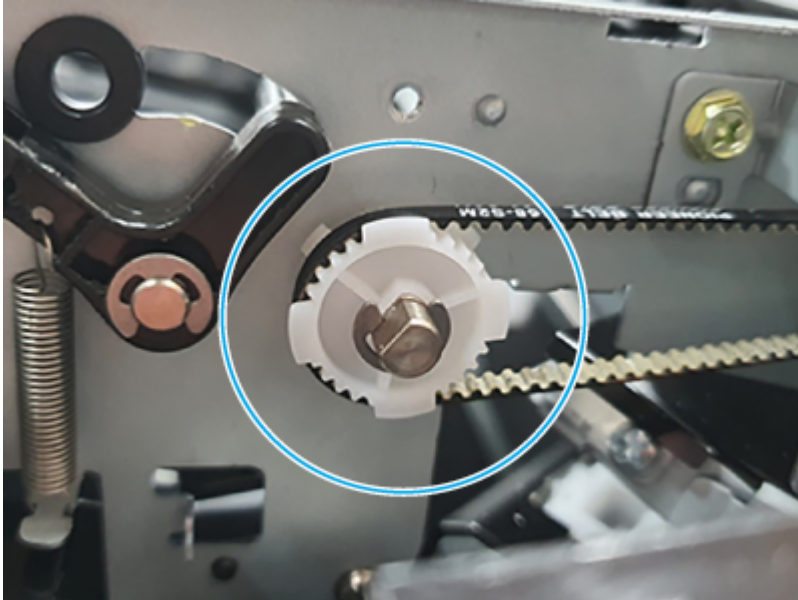


7 Remove the inner finisher exit roller assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher exit roller assembly.

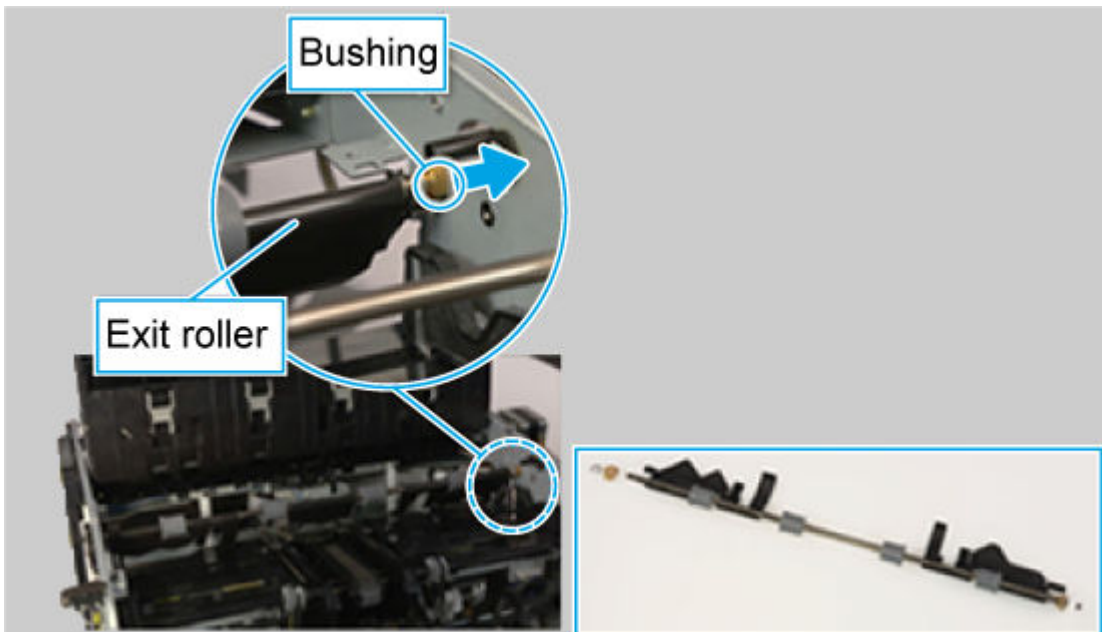
1. Do the following:
 - Release the belt.
 - Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring.
 - Remove the gear, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-2807 Remove the e-ring, gear, and bushing



2. Remove the inner finisher exit roller assembly.

Figure 6-2808 Remove the roller



8 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Exit sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher exit sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-343 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001415	Photo interrupter (Exit sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

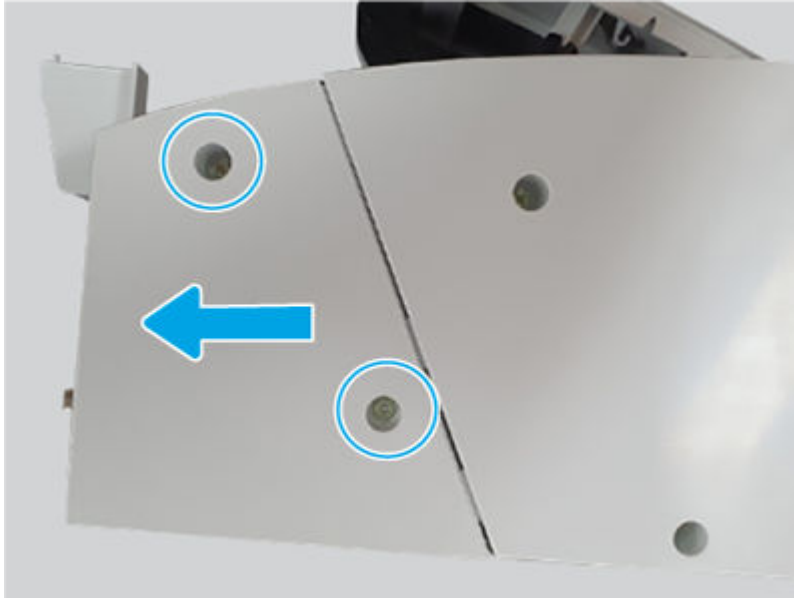
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-2809 Remove the cover

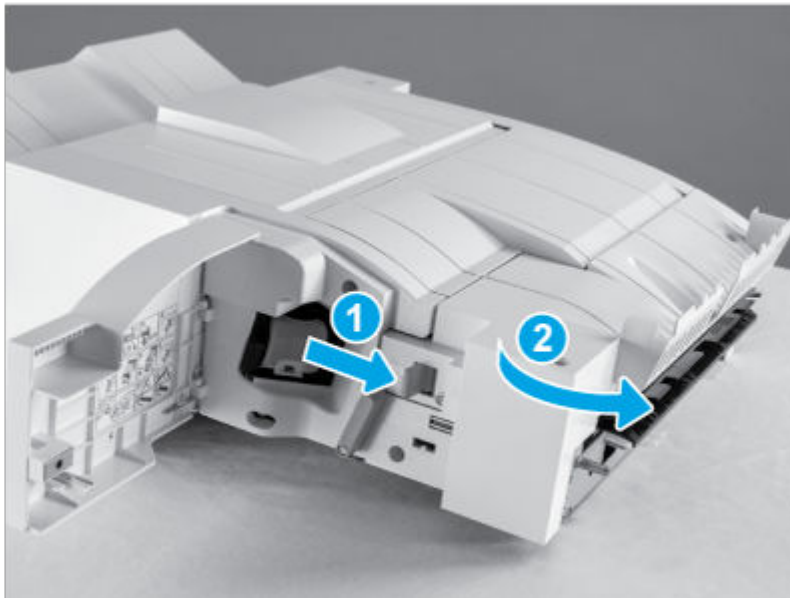


2 Remove the inner finisher punch cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher punch cover assembly.

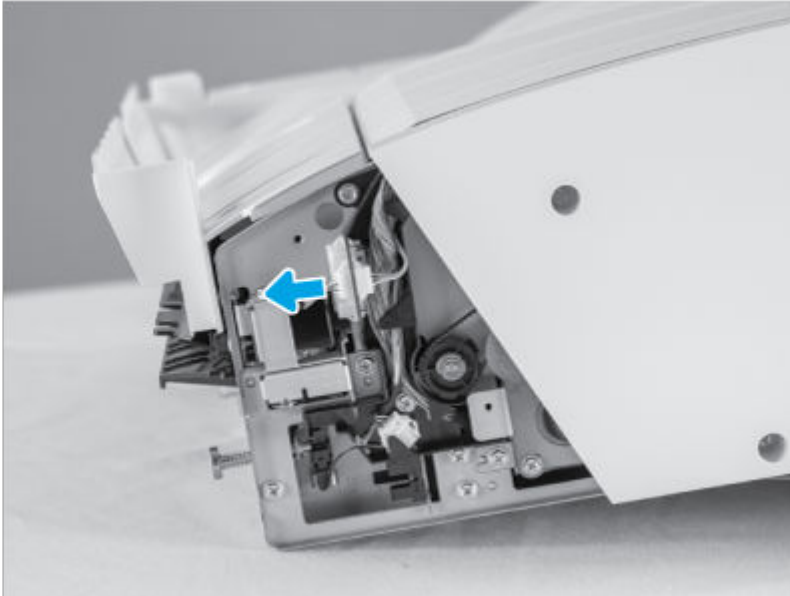
1. Release the lever (callout 1), and then rotate the punch away from the inner finisher (callout 2).

Figure 6-2810 Rotate the punch



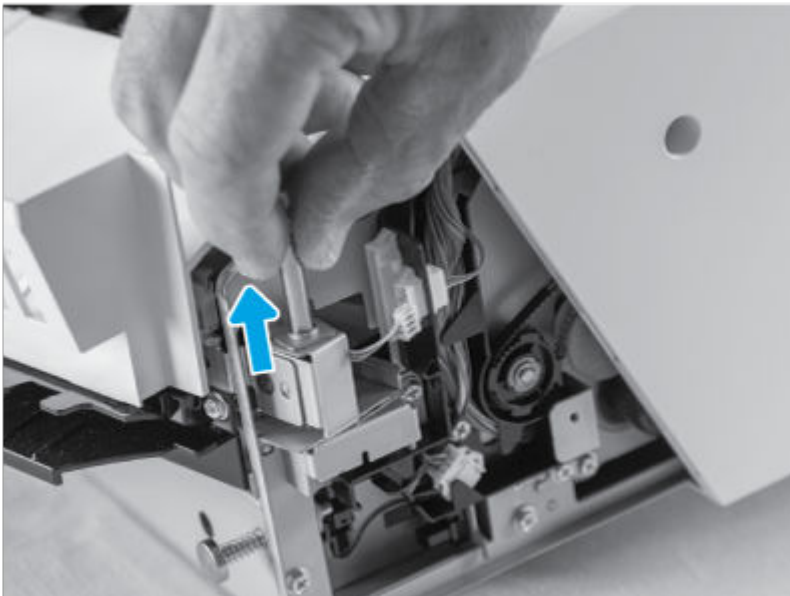
2. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2811 Disconnect one connector



3. Remove the hinge shaft, and then remove the punch cover assembly.

Figure 6-2812 Remove the assembly



3 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.

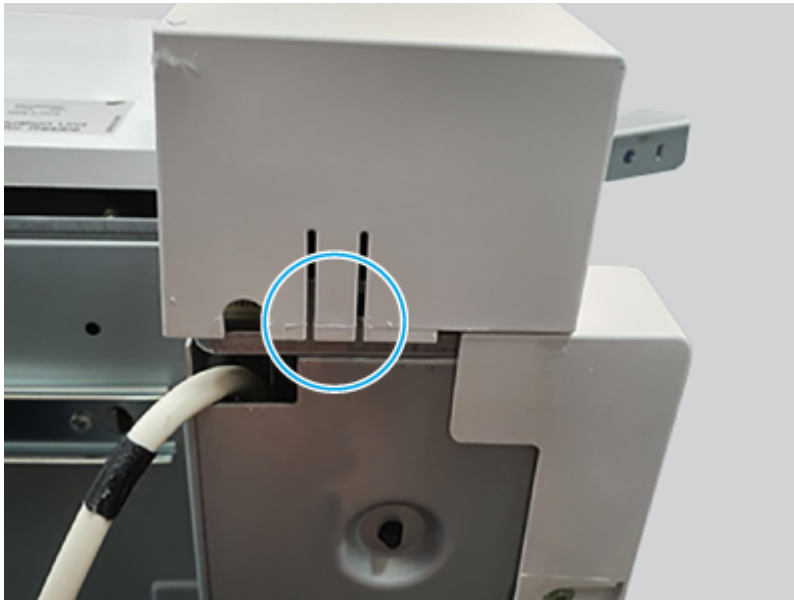
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2813 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-2814 Remove the cover



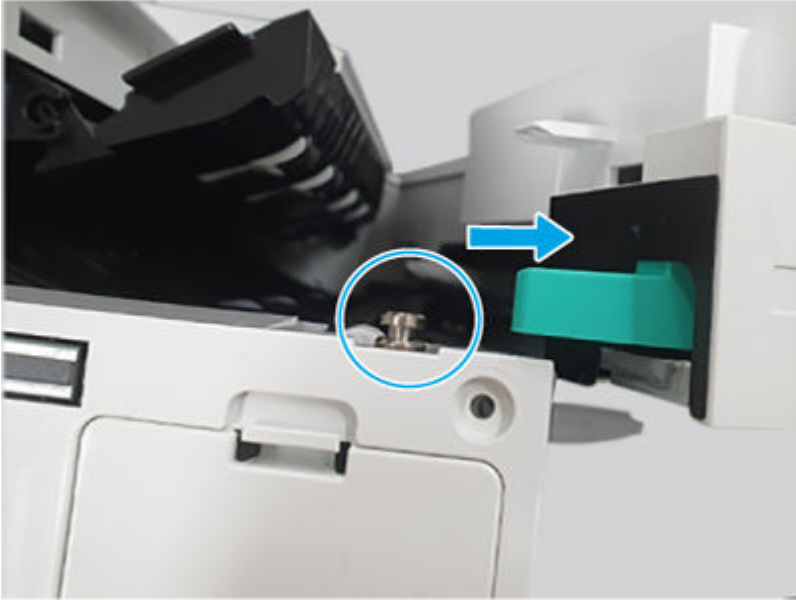
4 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-2815 Open the punch cover



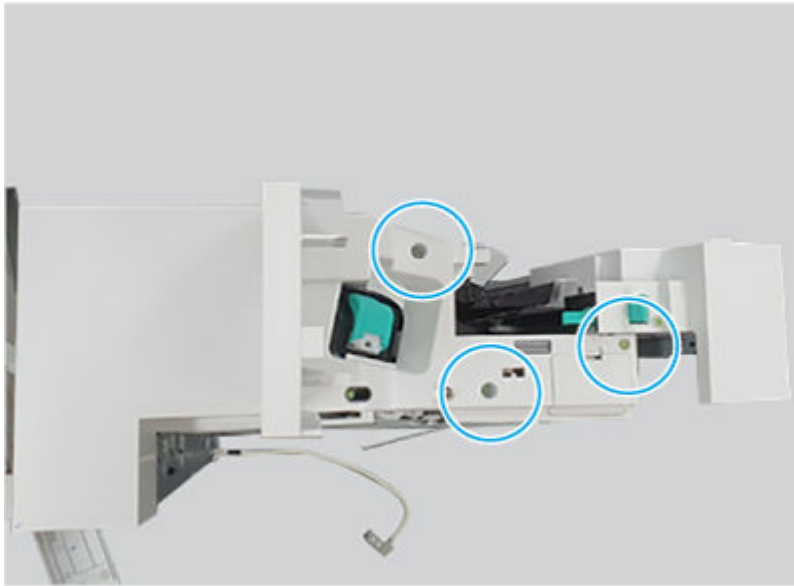
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-2816 Remove the handle



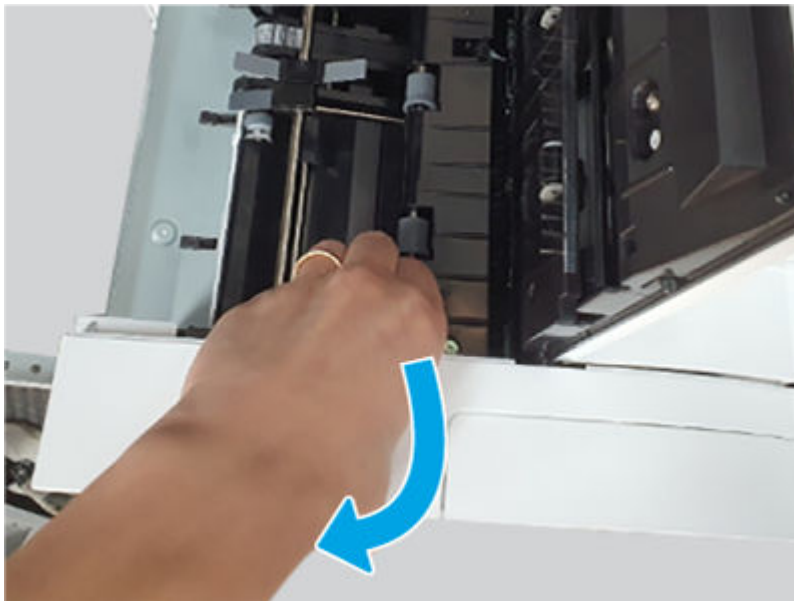
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2817 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-2818 Remove the cover

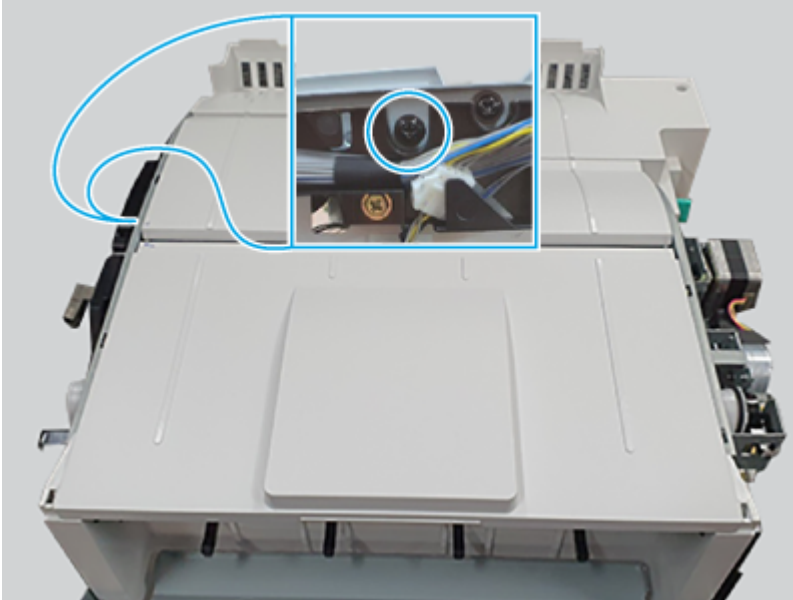


5 Remove the inner finisher middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-2819 Remove the cover

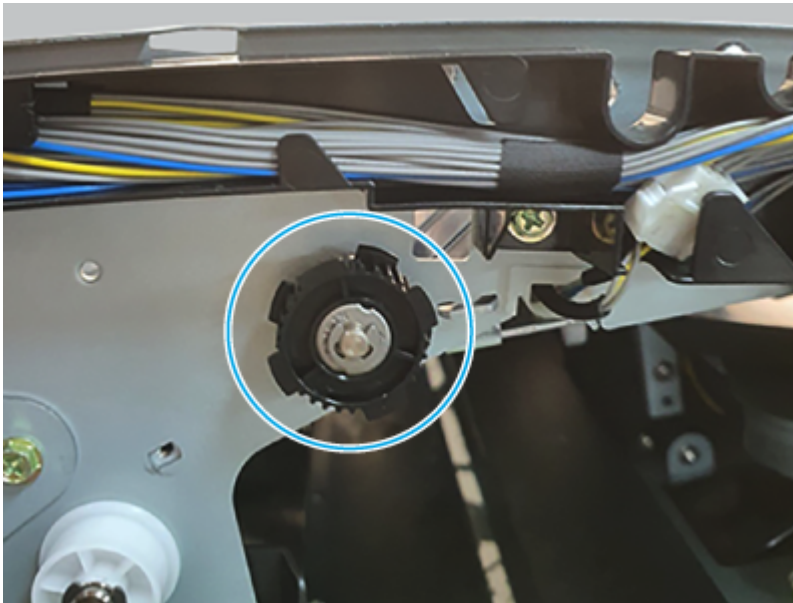


6 Remove the inner finisher middle roller

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle roller.

1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, remove the pulley, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-2820 Remove the e-ring, pulley, and bushing



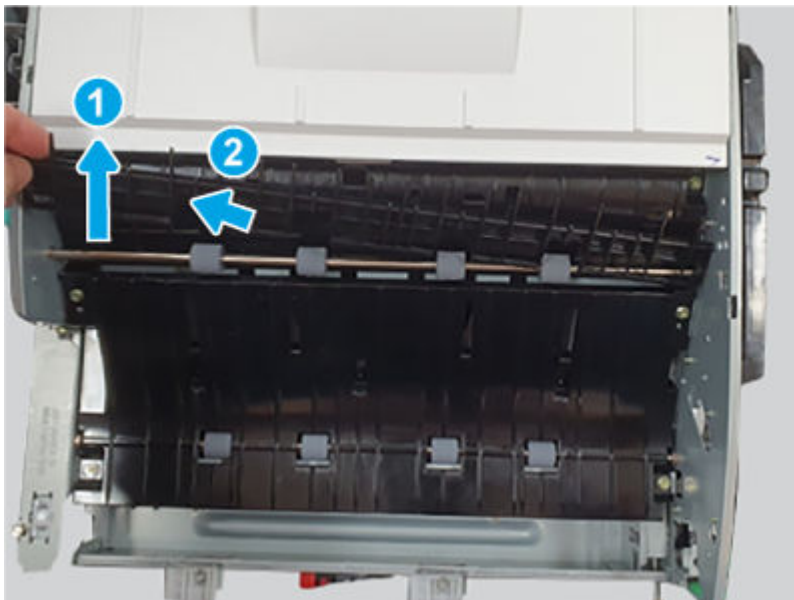
2. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-2821 Remove the e-ring and bushing



3. Remove the inner finisher middle roller.

Figure 6-2822 Remove the roller

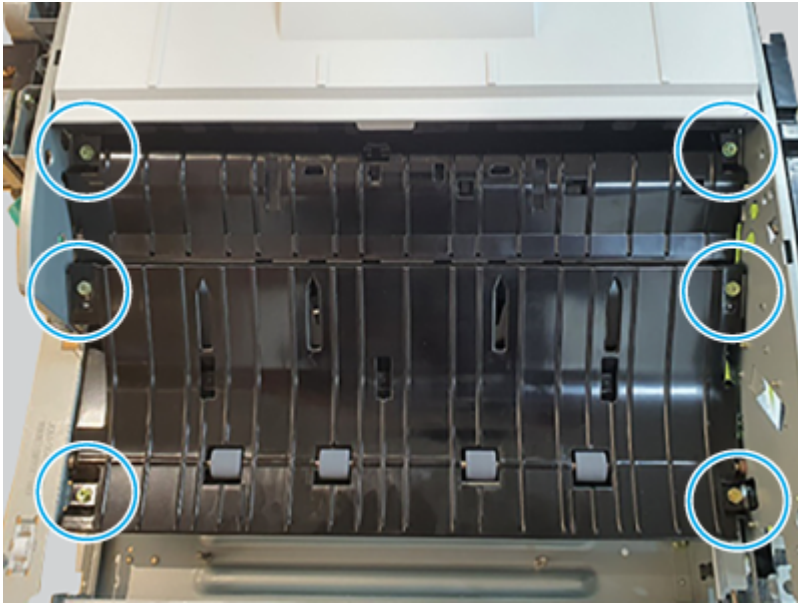


7 Remove the inner finisher exit sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher exit sensor.

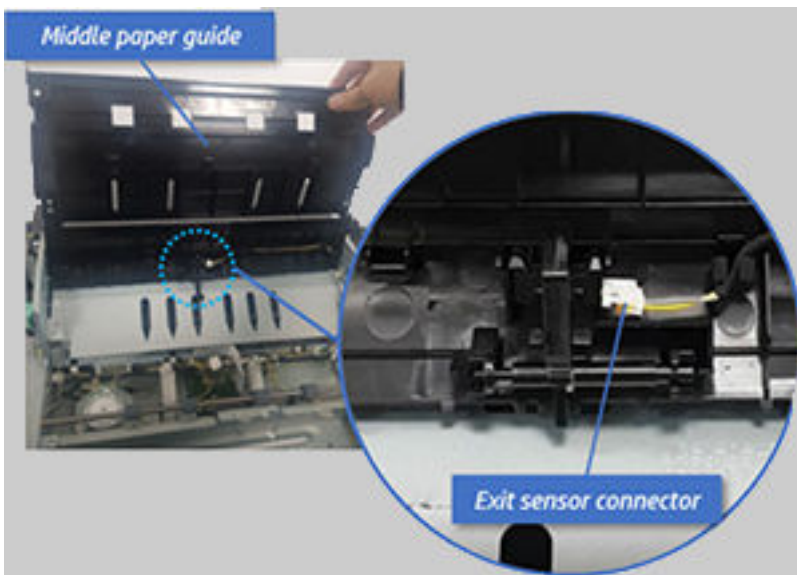
1. Remove six screws, and then raise the middle paper guide.

Figure 6-2823 Remove six screws



2. Do the following:
 - Remove one screw.
 - Disconnect one connector.
 - Remove the inner finisher ext sensor.

Figure 6-2824 Remove the sensor



8 **Unpack the replacement assembly**

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Exit sensor actuator

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher exit sensor actuator.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-344 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC66-04199A	Exit sensor actuator

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

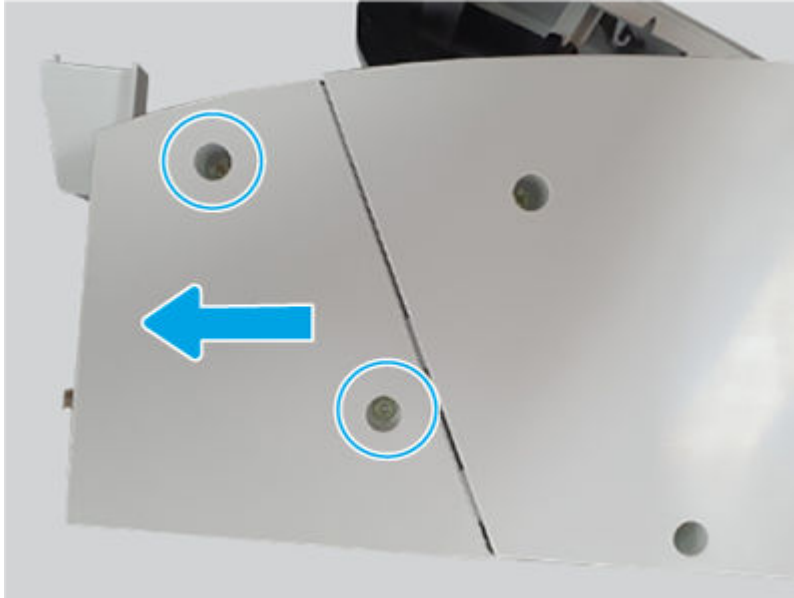
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-2825 Remove the cover

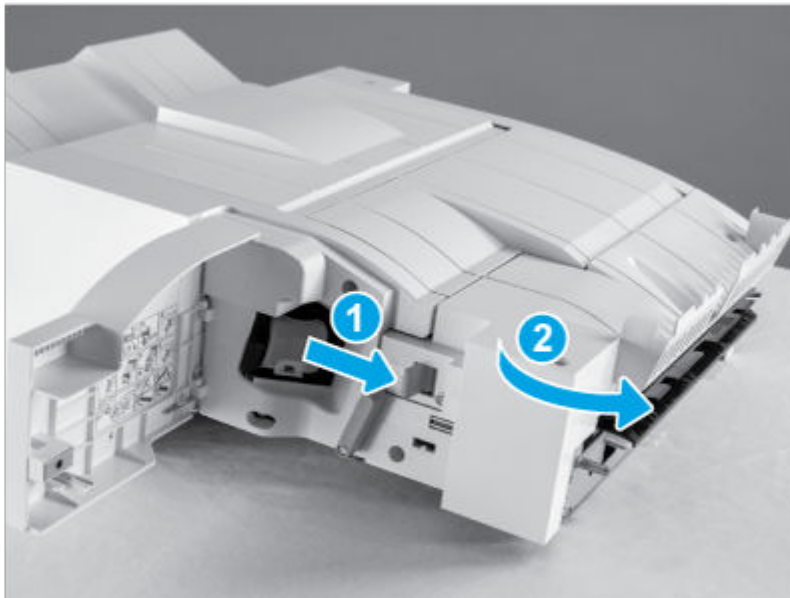


Remove the inner finisher punch cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher punch cover assembly.

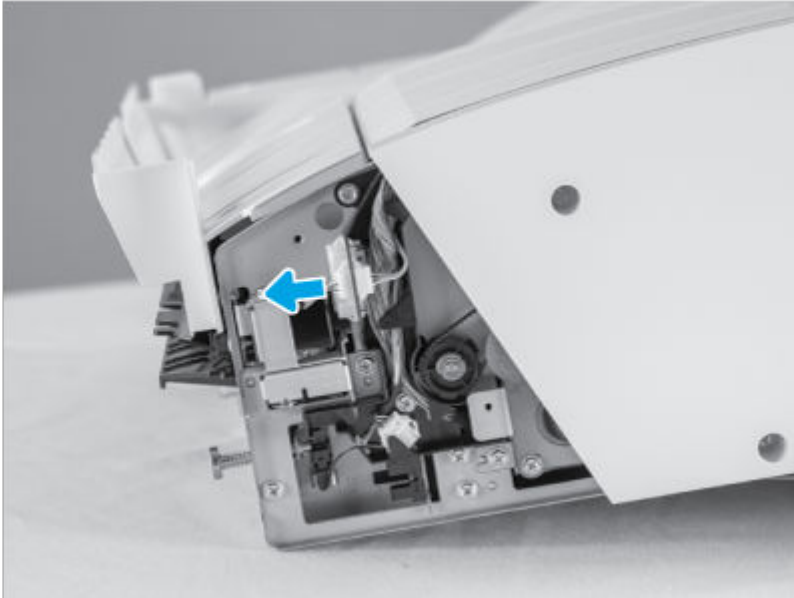
1. Release the lever (callout 1), and then rotate the punch away from the inner finisher (callout 2).

Figure 6-2826 Rotate the punch



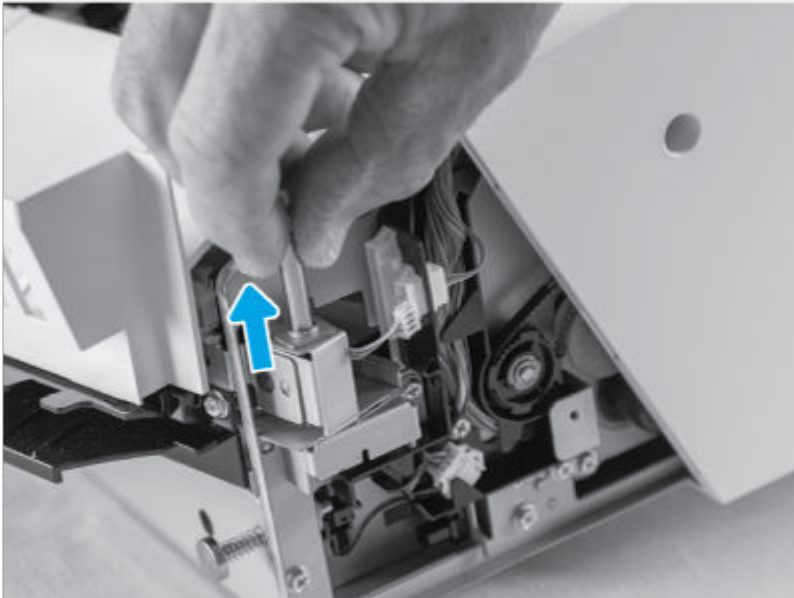
2. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2827 Disconnect one connector



3. Remove the hinge shaft, and then remove the punch cover assembly.

Figure 6-2828 Remove the assembly



Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.

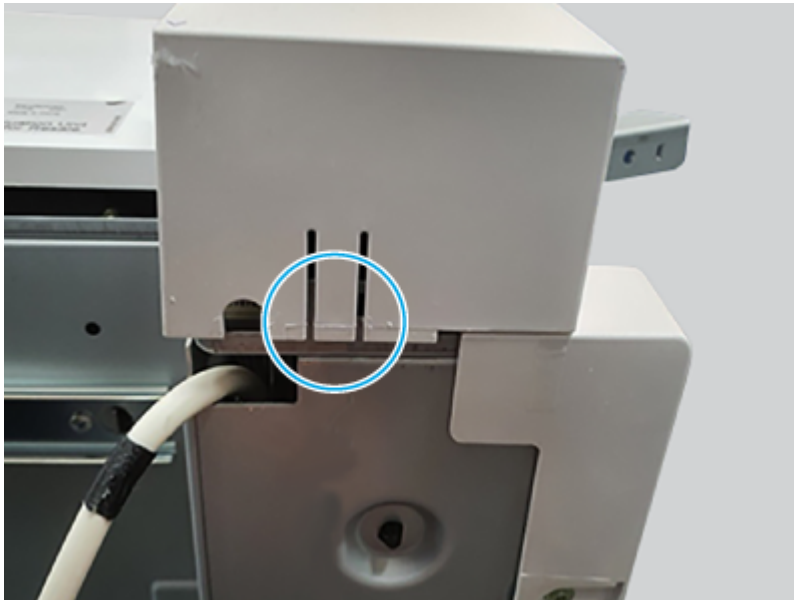
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2829 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-2830 Remove the cover



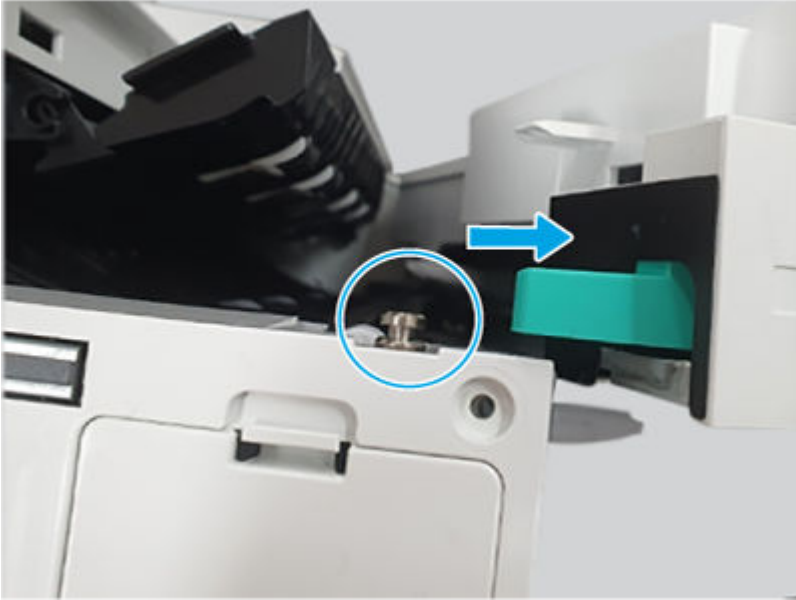
Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-2831 Open the punch cover



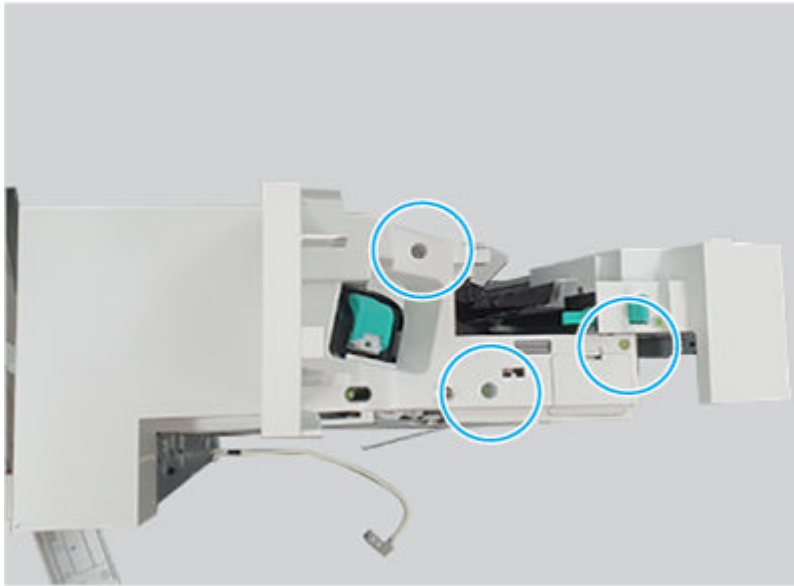
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-2832 Remove the handle



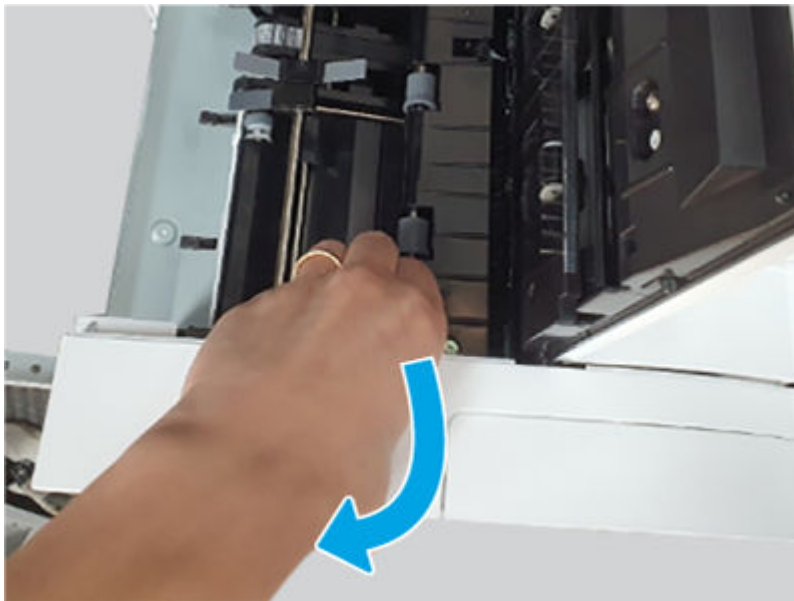
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2833 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-2834 Remove the cover

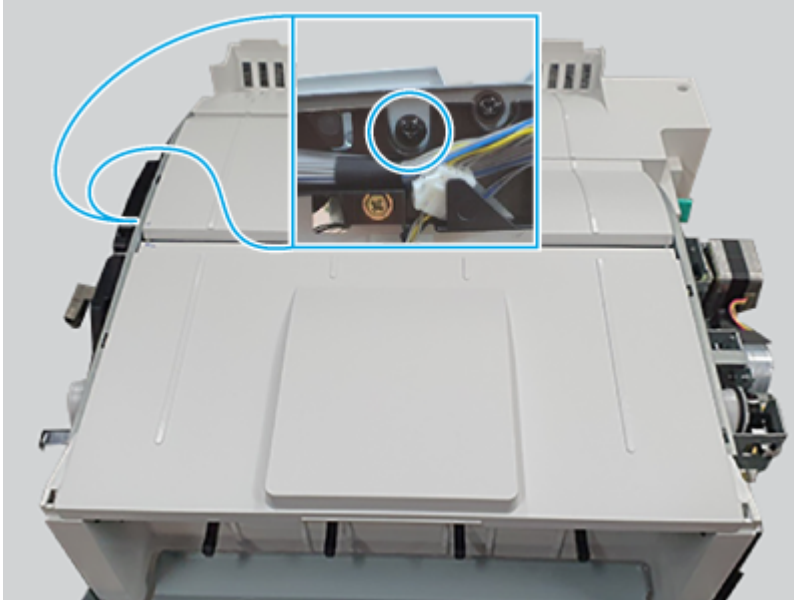


Remove the inner finisher middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-2835 Remove the cover

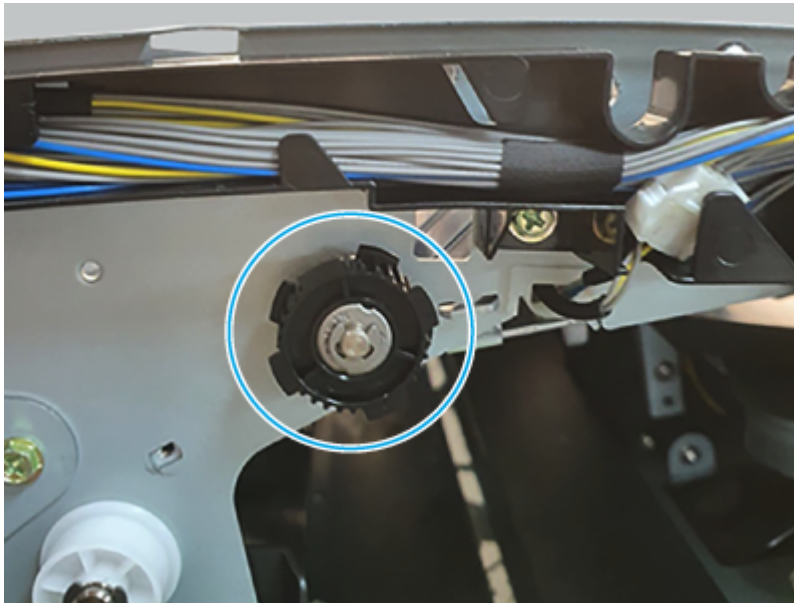


Remove the inner finisher middle roller

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle roller.

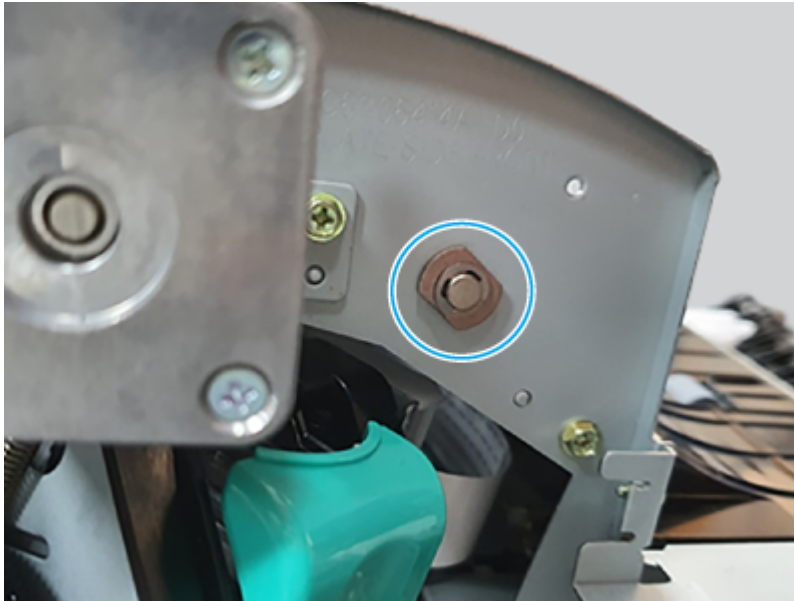
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, remove the pulley, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-2836 Remove the e-ring, pulley, and bushing



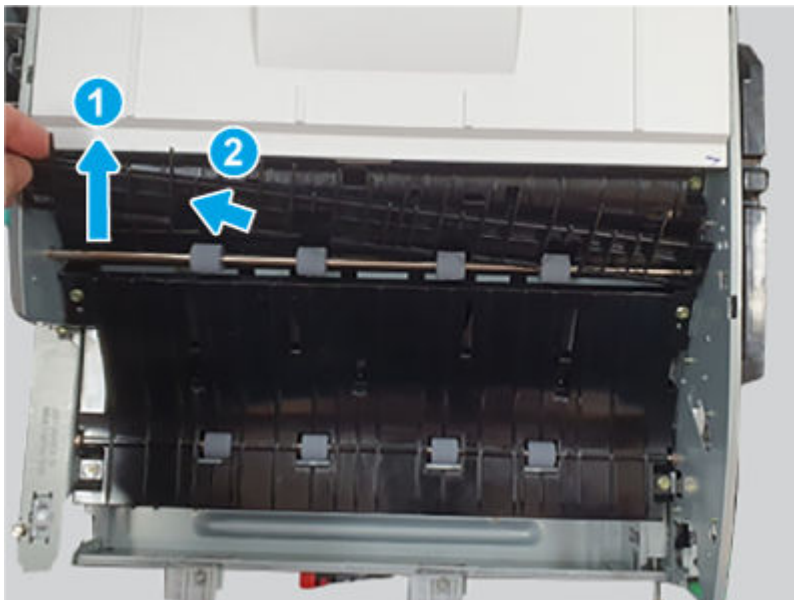
2. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-2837 Remove the e-ring and bushing



3. Remove the inner finisher middle roller.

Figure 6-2838 Remove the roller

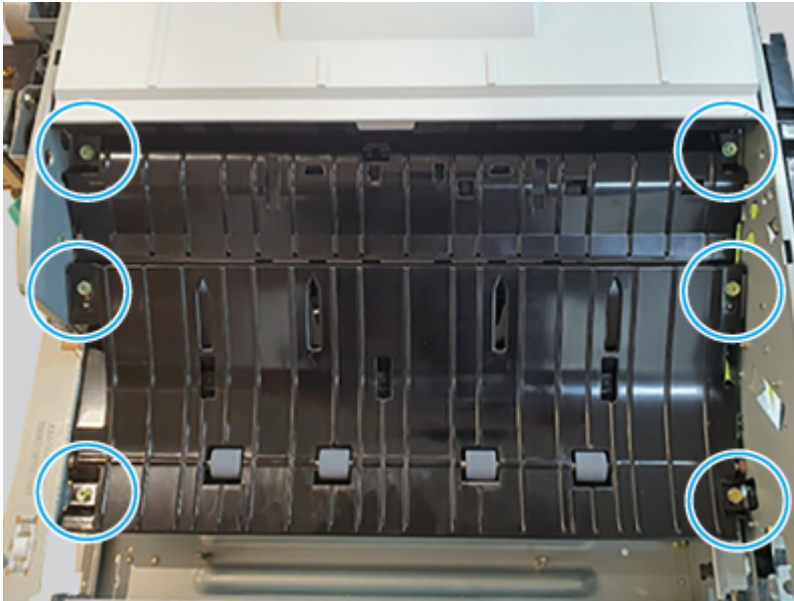


Remove the inner finisher exit sensor actuator

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher exit sensor actuator.

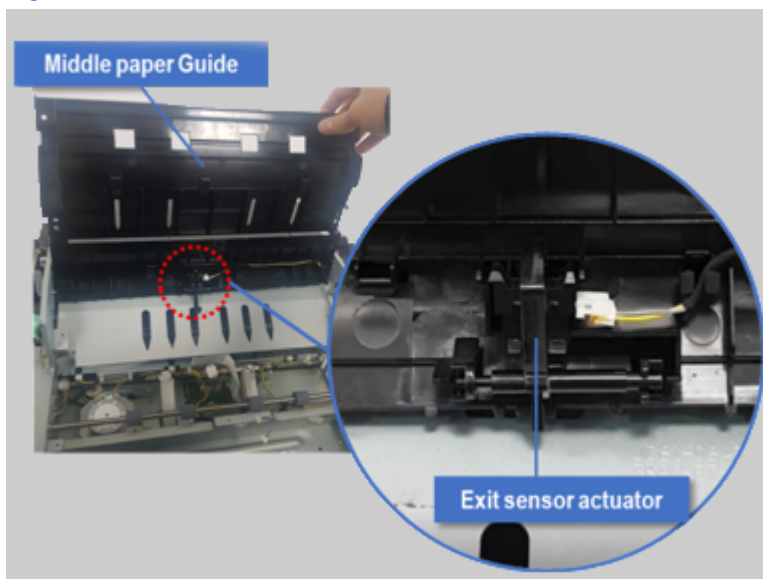
1. Remove six screws, and then raise the middle paper guide.

Figure 6-2839 Remove six screws



2. Remove the inner finisher exit sensor actuator.

Figure 6-2840 Remove the actuator



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Exit motor assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher exit motor assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-345 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01331A	Exit motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

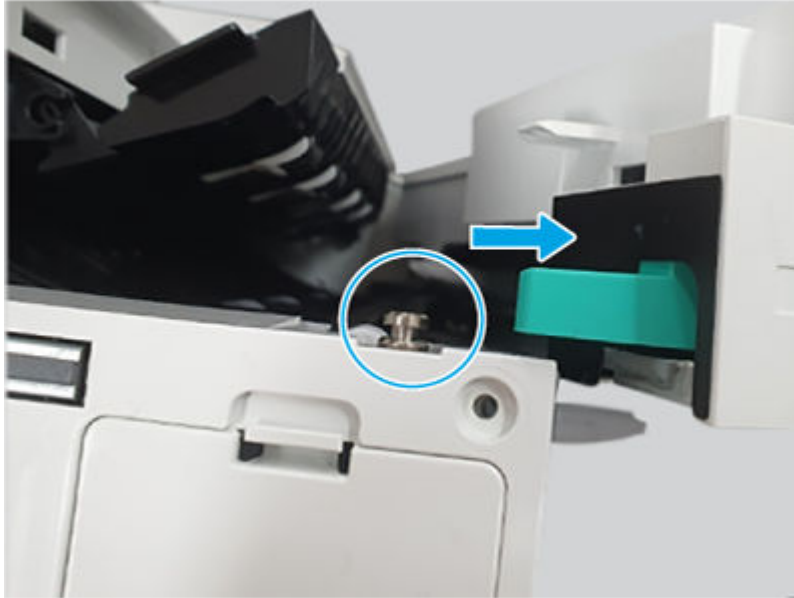
1 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-2841 Open the punch cover



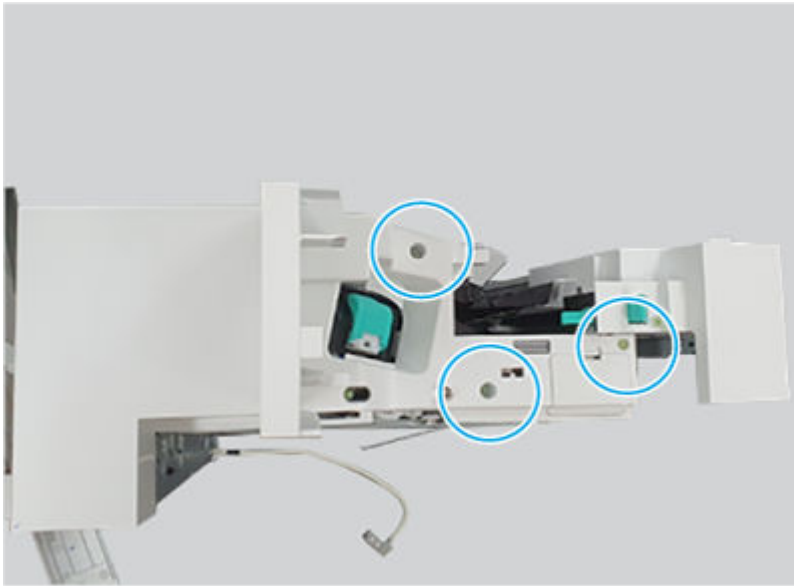
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-2842 Remove the handle



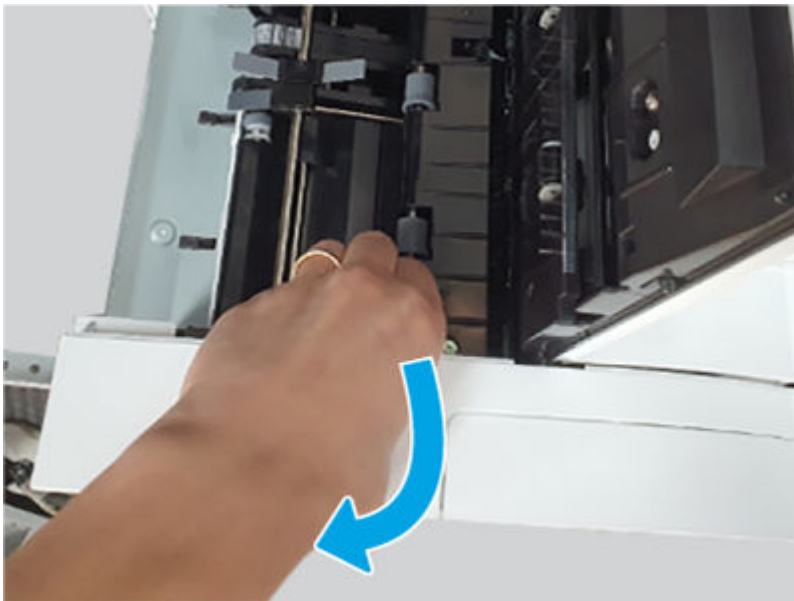
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2843 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-2844 Remove the cover



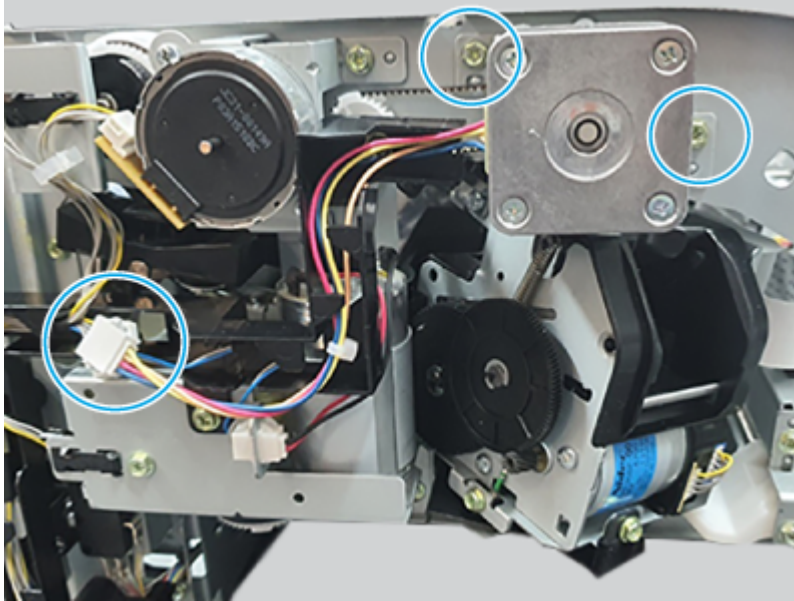
2 Remove the inner finisher exit motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher exit motor assembly.

1. Open the punch cover.

2. Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the inner finisher exit motor assembly.

Figure 6-2845 Remove the motor



3 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Exit motor

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher exit motor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-346 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00169B	Motor, step (Exit motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

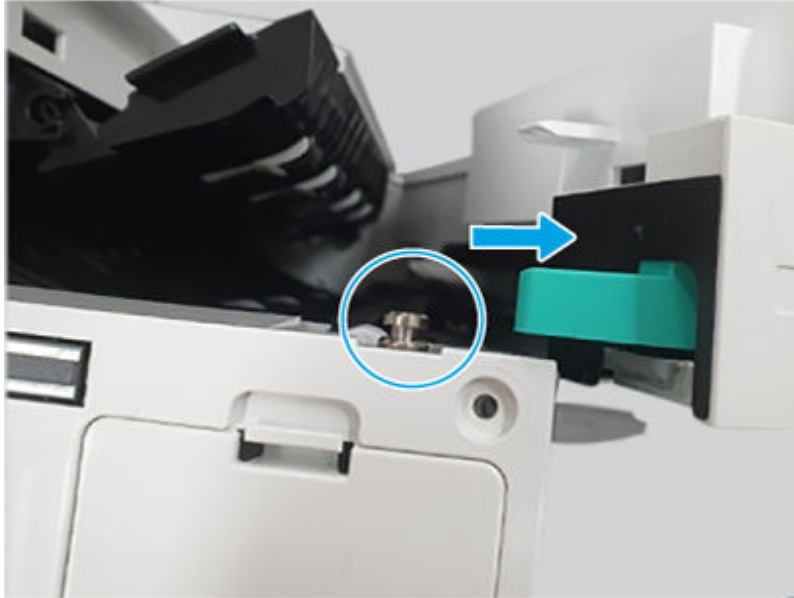
1 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-2846 Open the punch cover



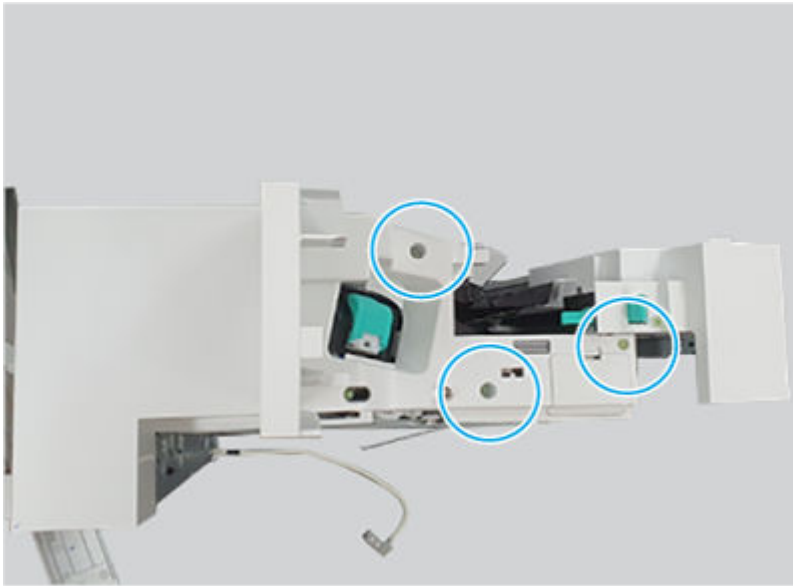
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-2847 Remove the handle



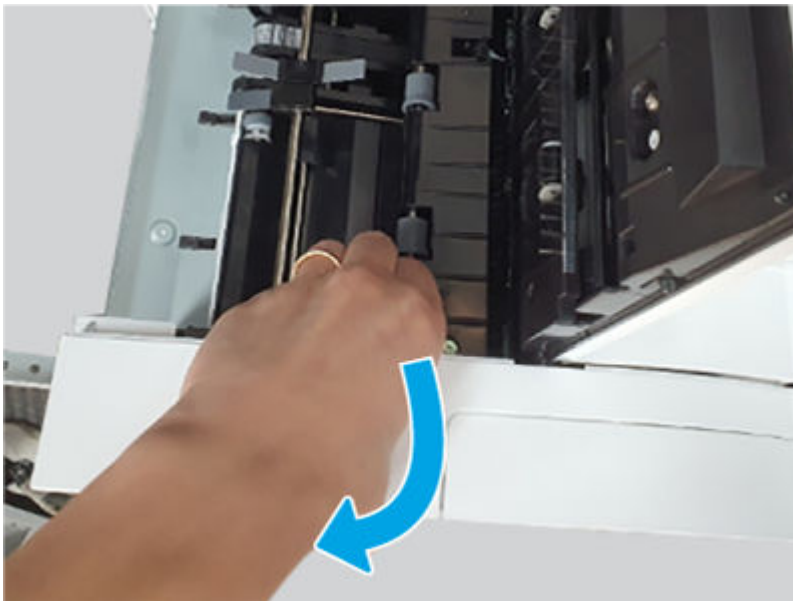
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2848 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-2849 Remove the cover



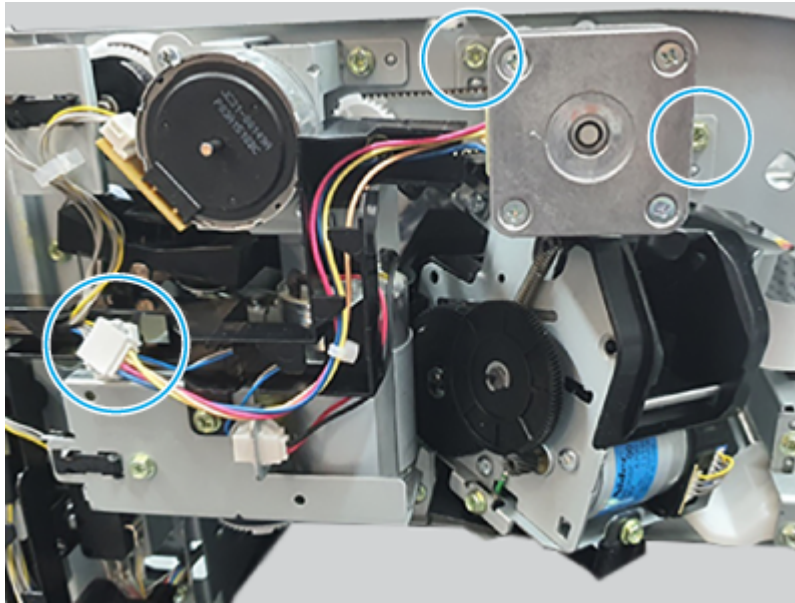
2 Remove the inner finisher exit motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher exit motor assembly.

1. Open the punch cover.

2. Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the inner finisher exit motor assembly.

Figure 6-2850 Remove the motor

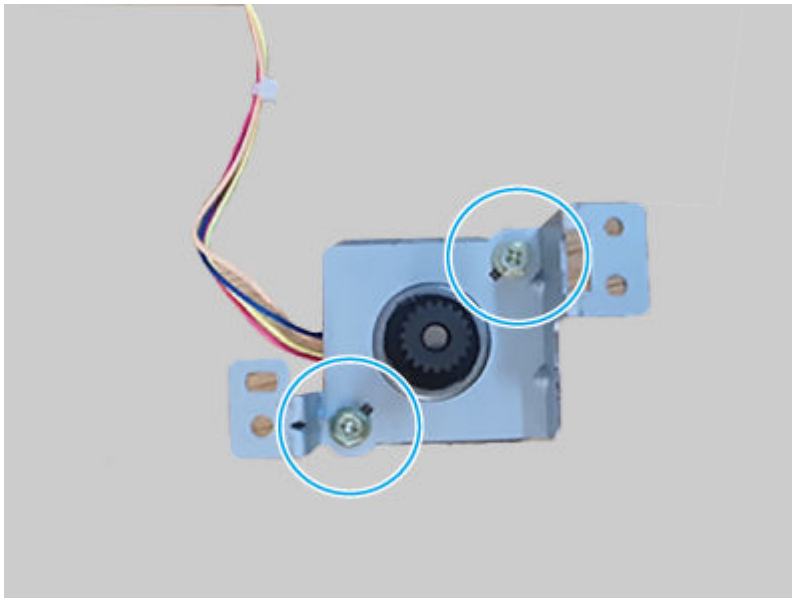


3 Remove the inner finisher exit motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher exit motor.

- Remove two screws, and then separate the inner finisher exit motor from the mounting bracket to remove it.


Figure 6-2851 Remove the motor



4 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Paper support unit

Review the inner finisher paper support unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Rear paper support

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher rear paper support.



NOTE: Remove the inner finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-347 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01310A	Rear paper support

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

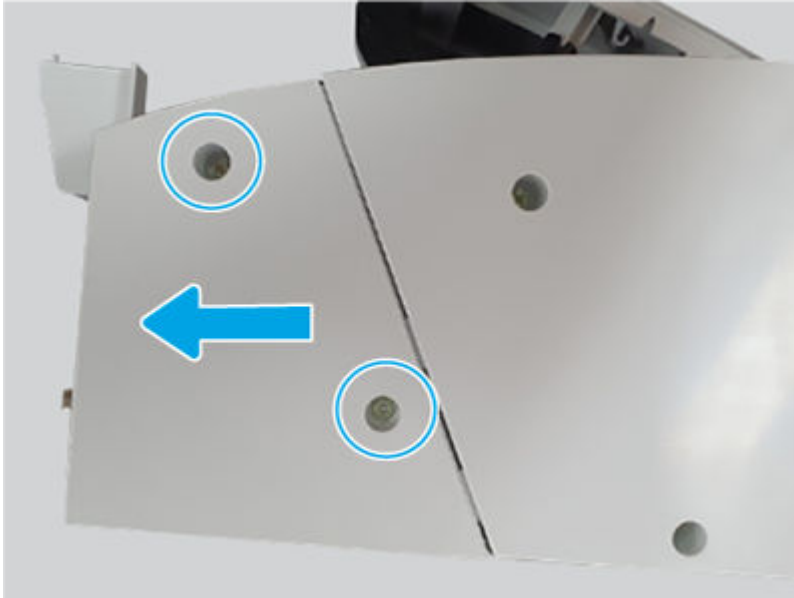
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-2852 Remove the cover



2 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

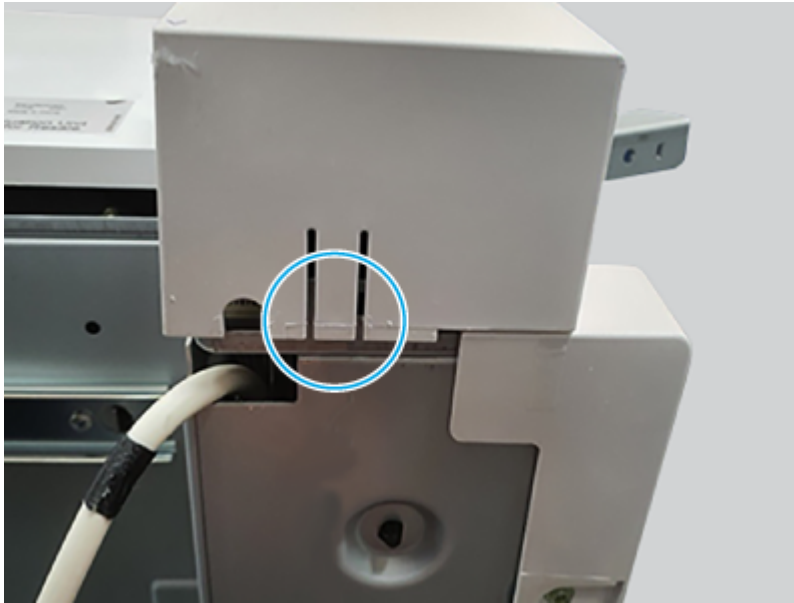
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2853 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-2854 Remove the cover

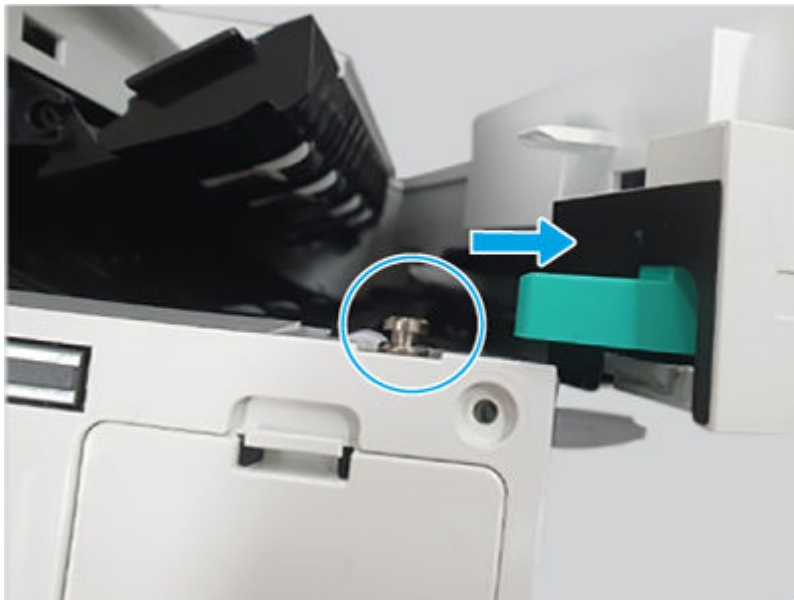


3 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-2855 Open the punch cover



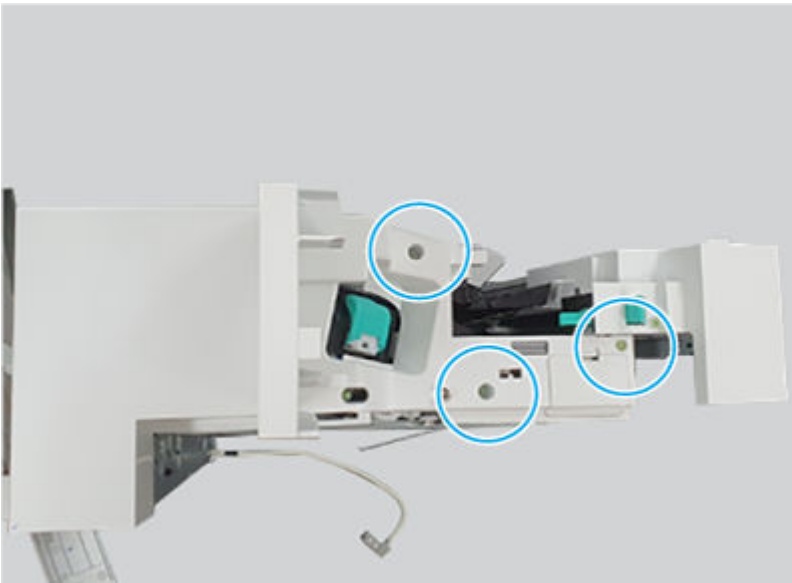
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-2856 Remove the handle



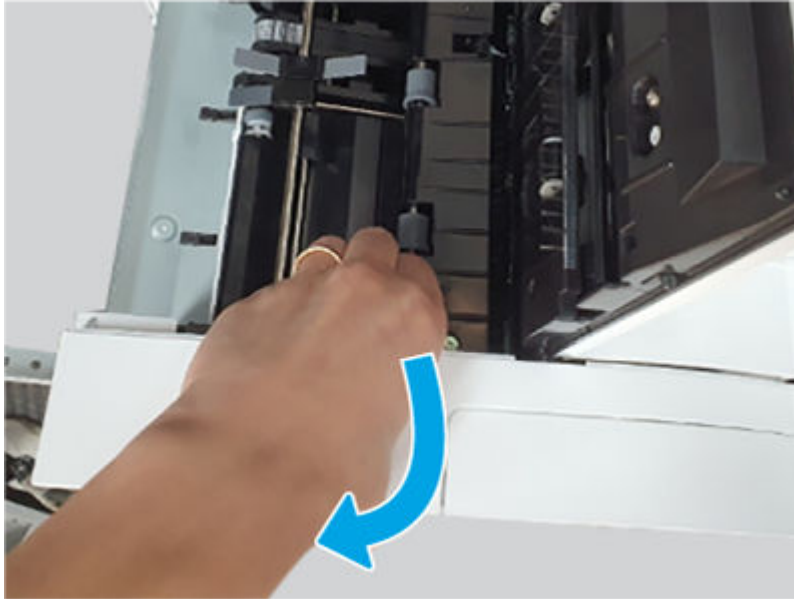
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2857 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-2858 Remove the cover

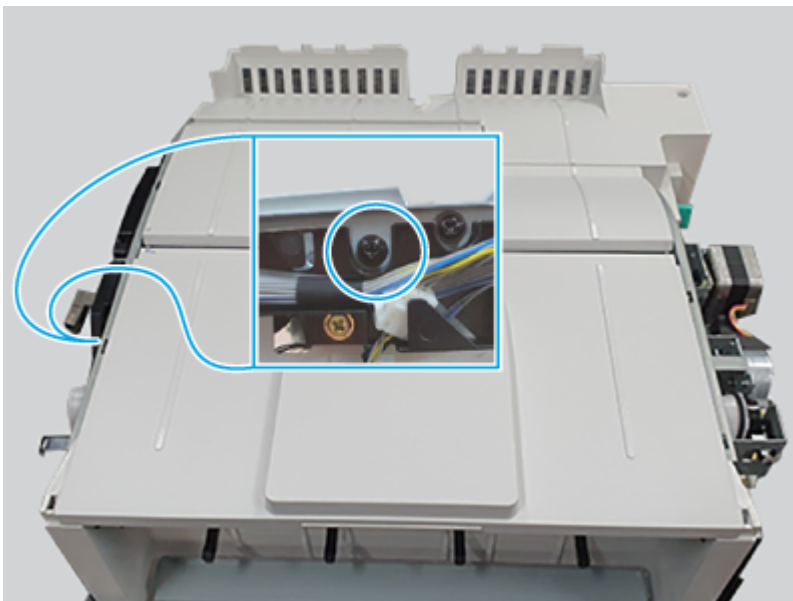


4 Remove the inner finisher top cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher top cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher top cover assembly.

Figure 6-2859 Remove the cover

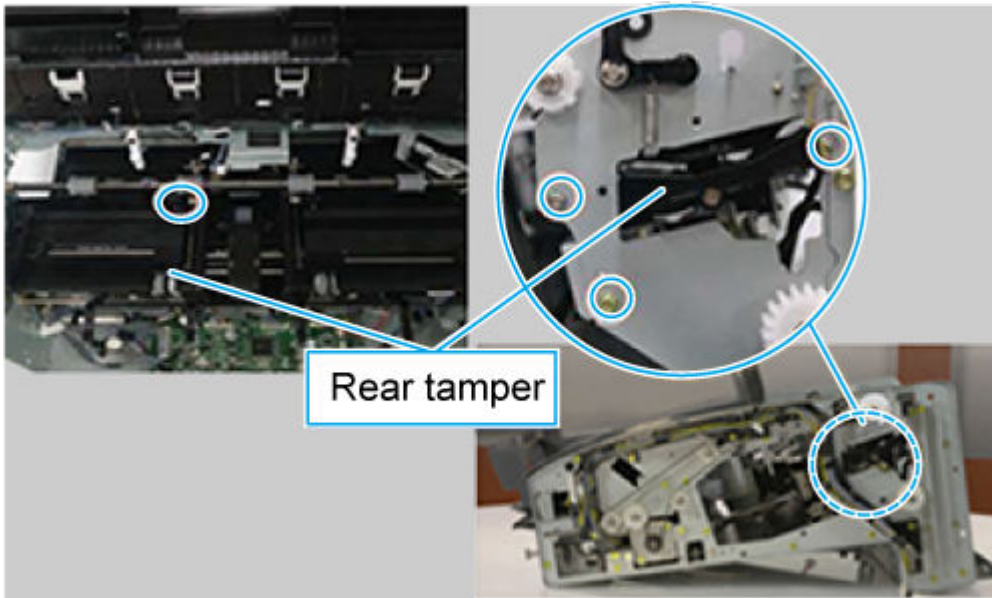


5 Remove the inner finisher rear tamper

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear tamper.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the inner finisher rear tamper.

Figure 6-2860 Remove the tamper

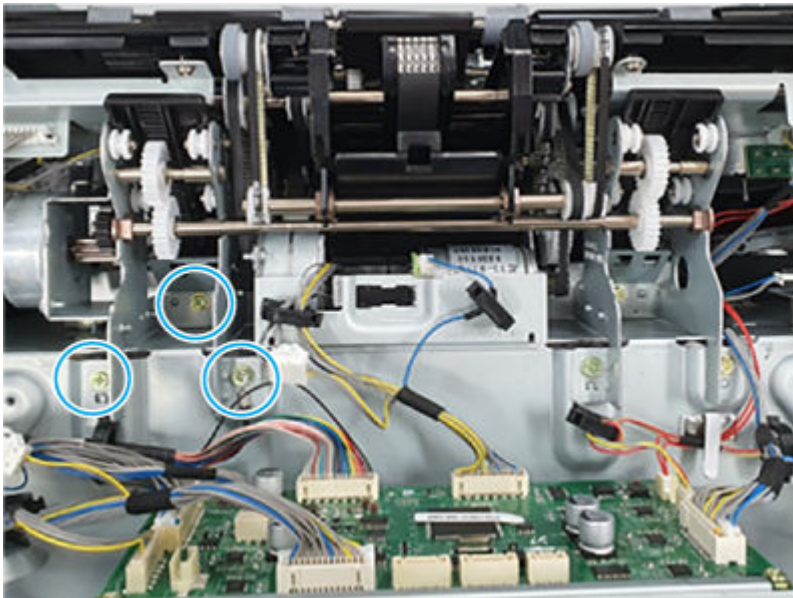


6 Remove the inner finisher rear paper support

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear paper support.

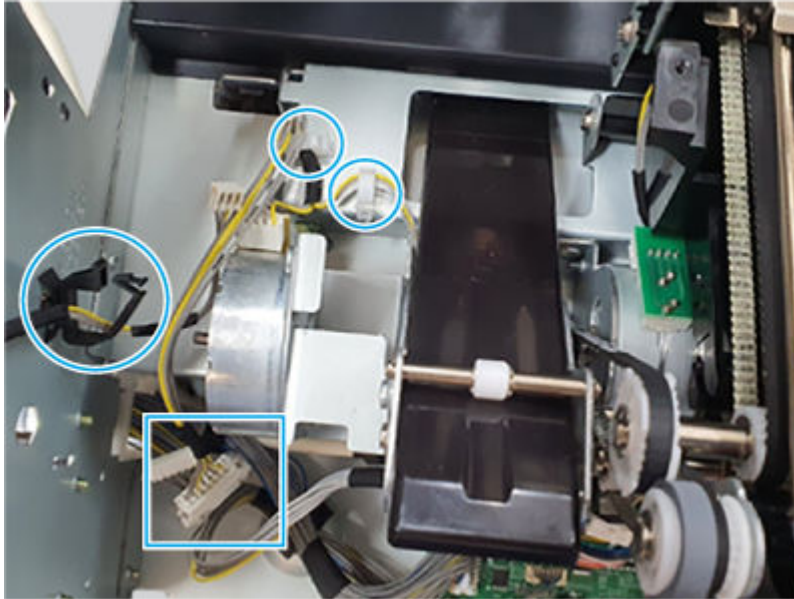
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2861 Remove three screws



2. Disconnect one connector, release three hooks, and then remove the inner finisher rear paper support.

Figure 6-2862 Remove the support



7 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Paper support home sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher paper support home sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-348 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Paper support home sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

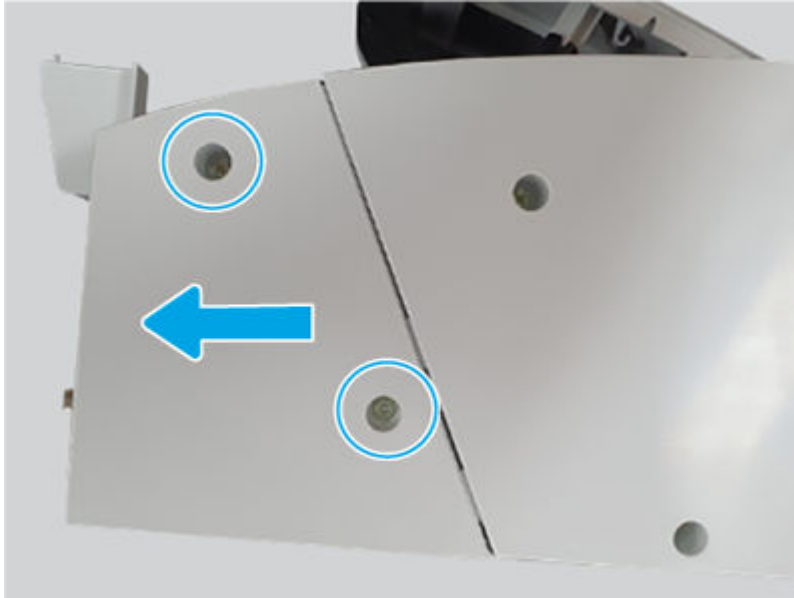
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-2863 Remove the cover



2 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

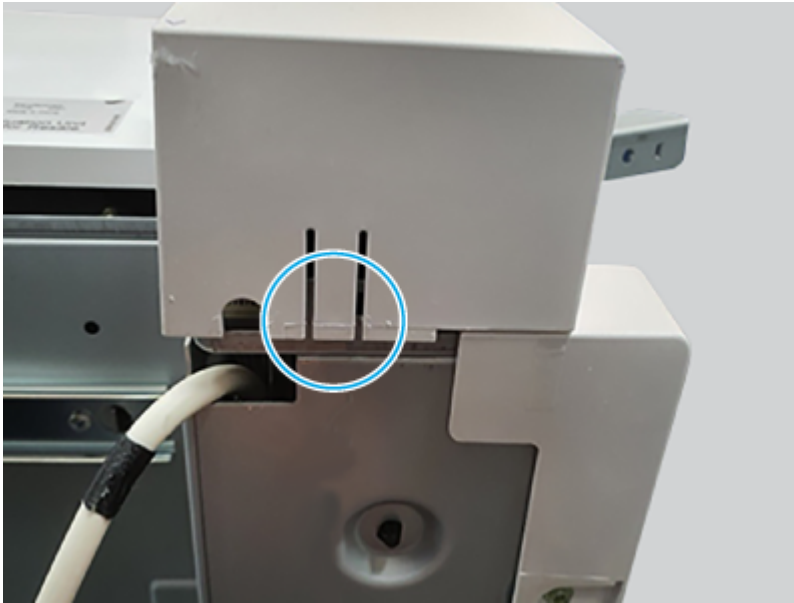
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2864 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-2865 Remove the cover

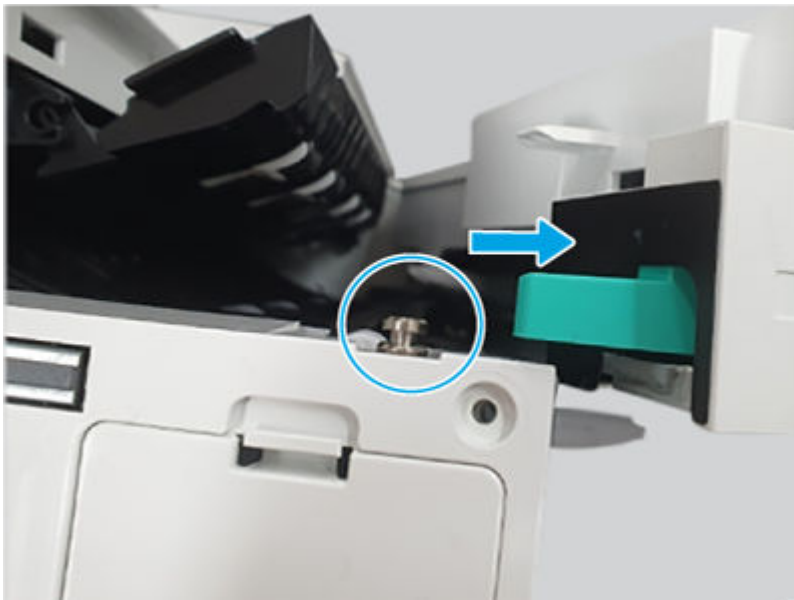


3 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-2866 Open the punch cover



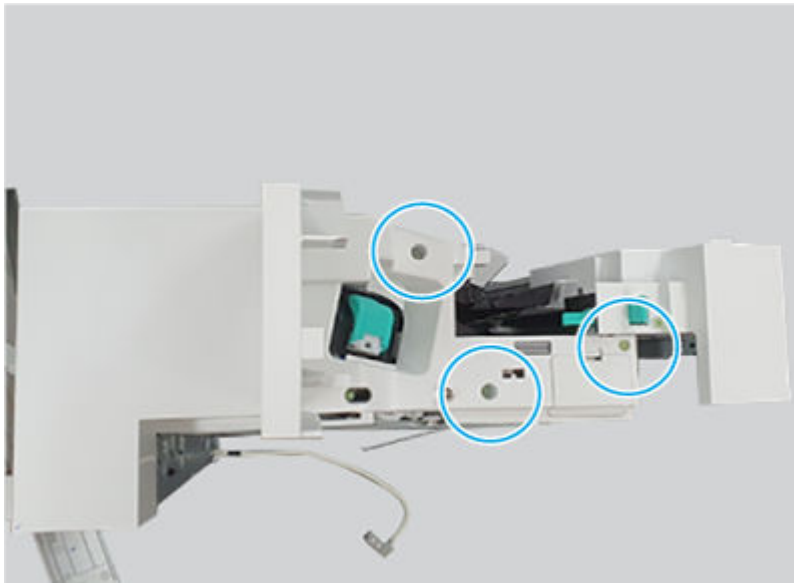
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-2867 Remove the handle



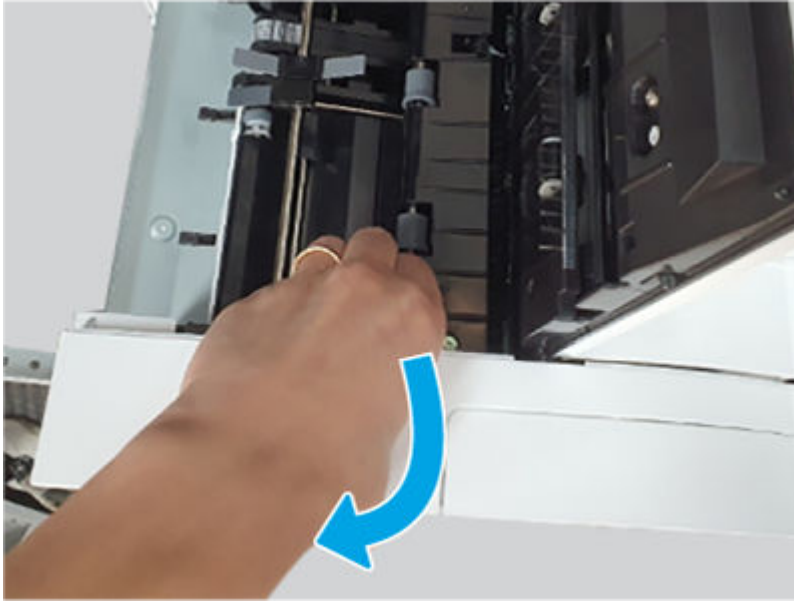
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2868 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-2869 Remove the cover

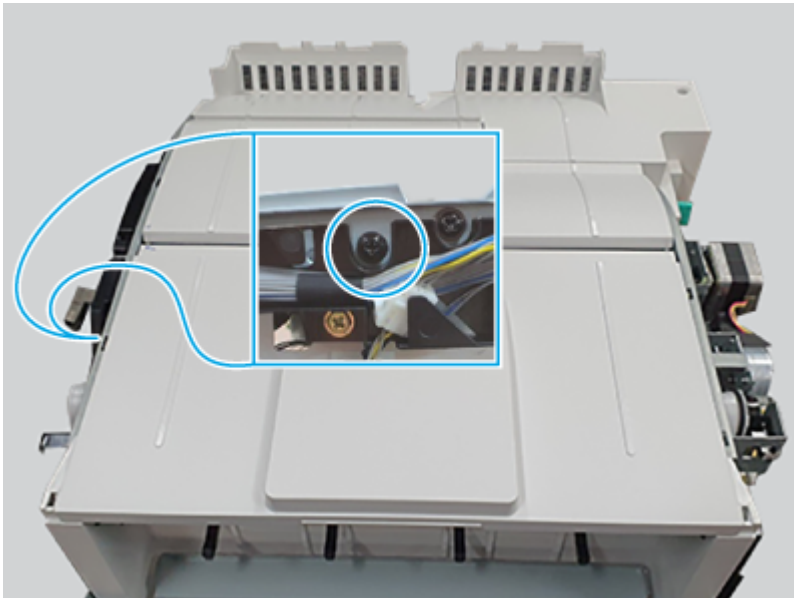


4 Remove the inner finisher top cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher top cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher top cover assembly.

Figure 6-2870 Remove the cover

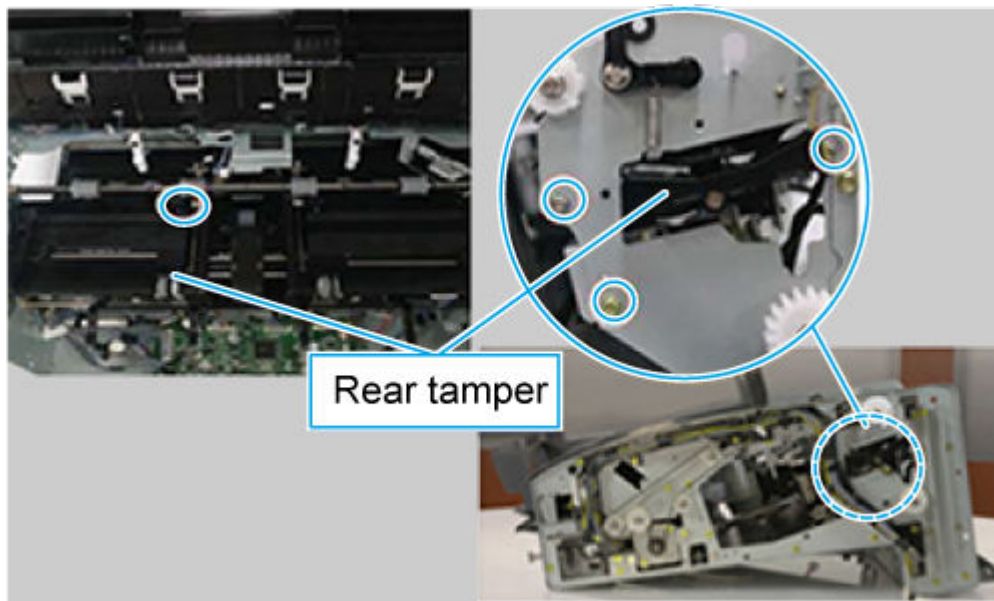


5 Remove the inner finisher rear tamper

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear tamper.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the inner finisher rear tamper.

Figure 6-2871 Remove the tamper

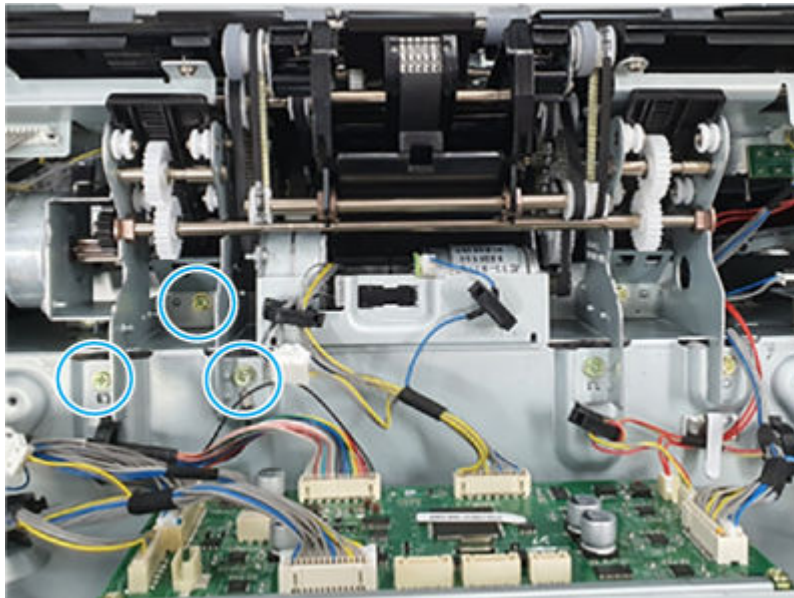


6 Remove the inner finisher rear paper support

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear paper support.

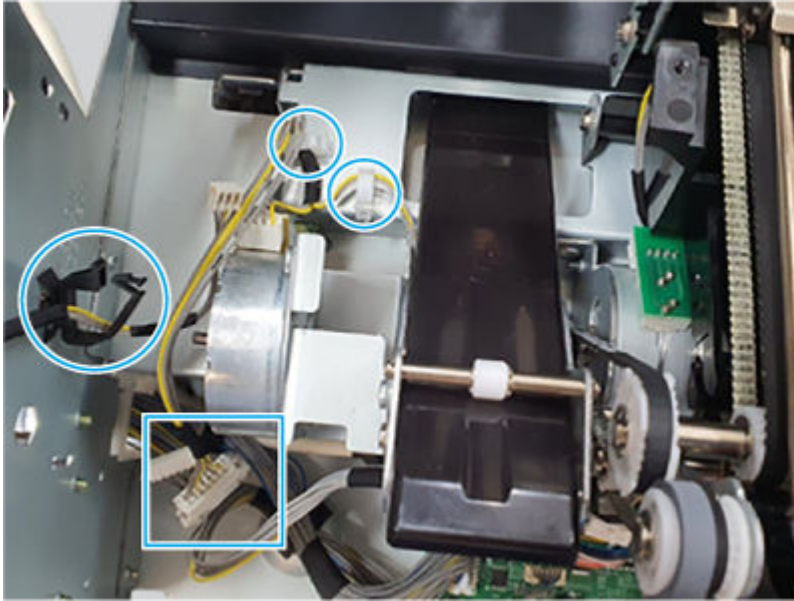
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2872 Remove three screws



2. Disconnect one connector, release three hooks, and then remove the inner finisher rear paper support.

Figure 6-2873 Remove the support

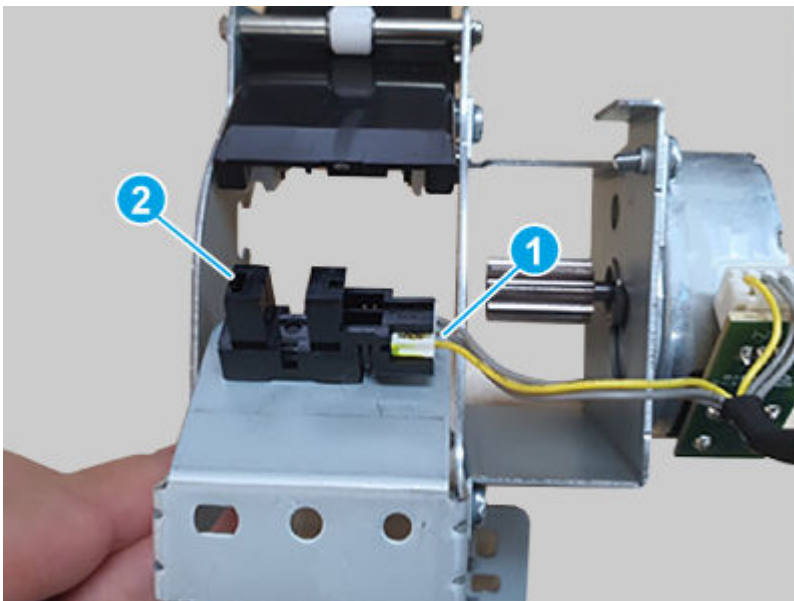


7 Remove the inner finisher paper support home sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher paper support home sensor.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the inner finisher paper support home sensor.

Figure 6-2874 Remove the sensor



8 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Paper support motor assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher paper support motor assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-349 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01312A	Paper support motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

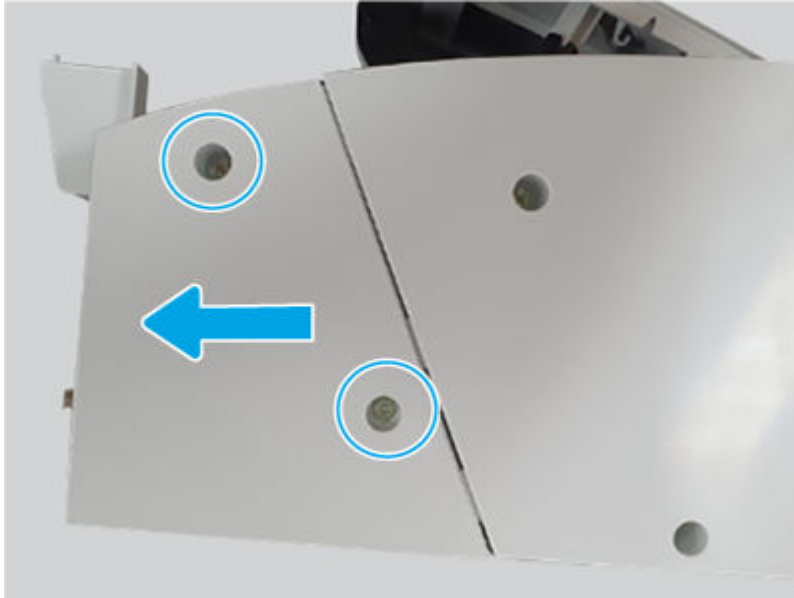
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-2875 Remove the cover



2 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

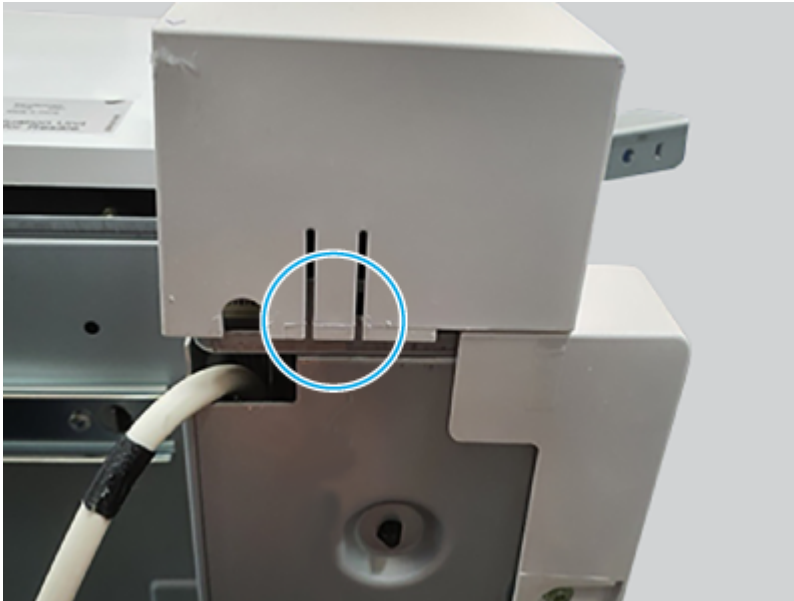
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2876 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-2877 Remove the cover

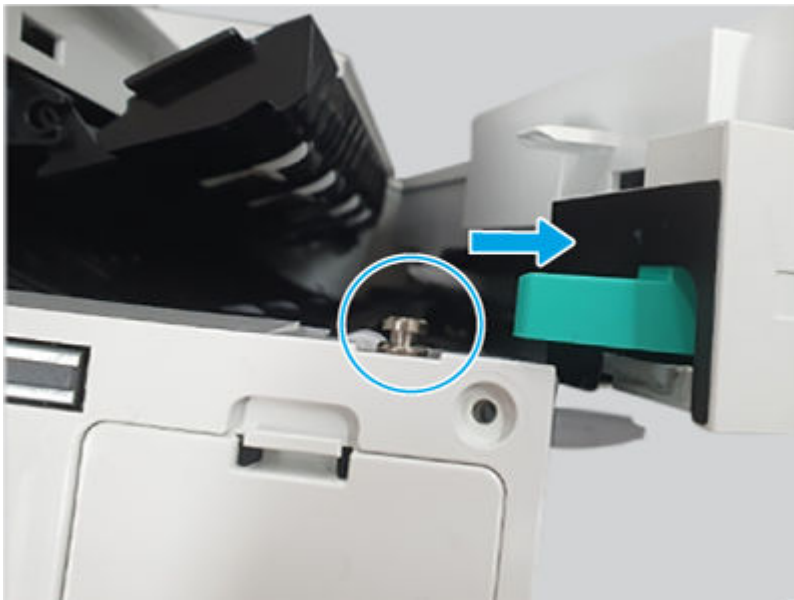


3 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-2878 Open the punch cover



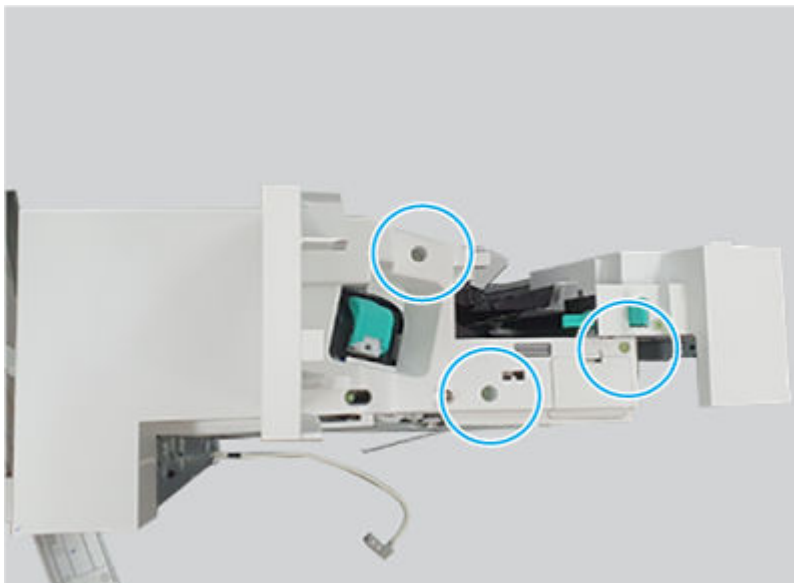
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-2879 Remove the handle



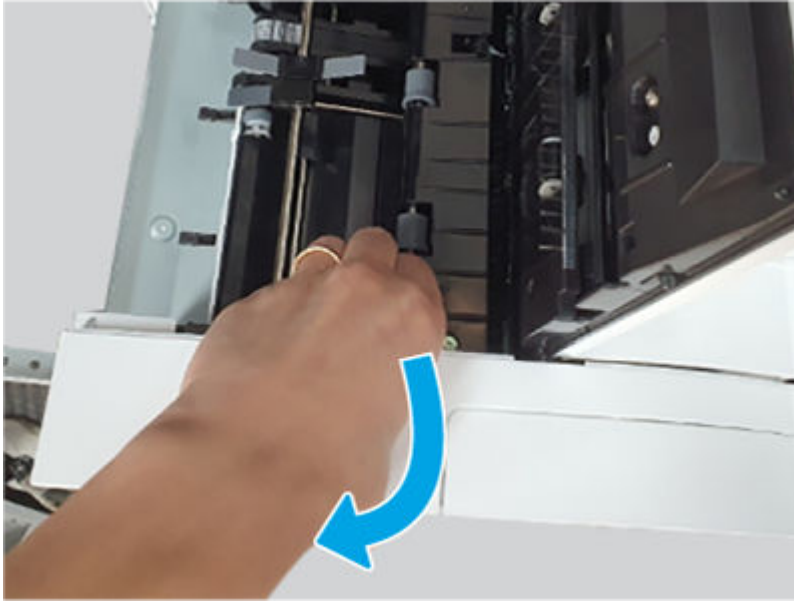
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2880 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-2881 Remove the cover

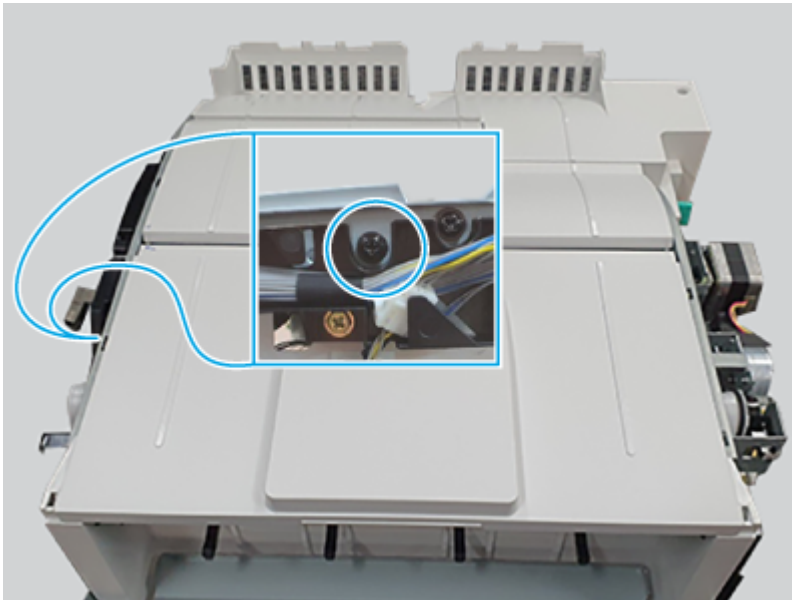


4 Remove the inner finisher top cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher top cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher top cover assembly.

Figure 6-2882 Remove the cover

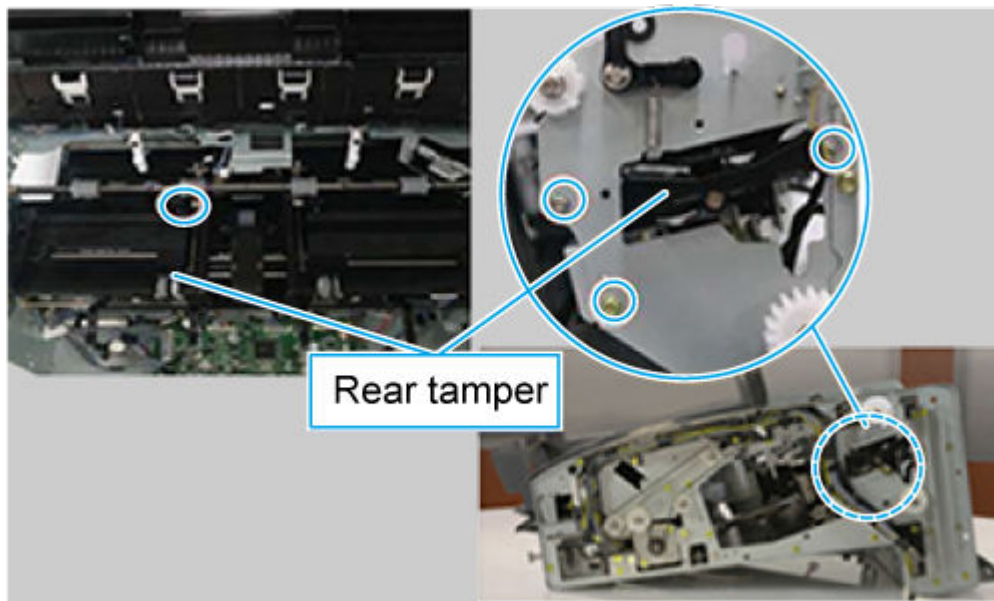


5 Remove the inner finisher rear tamper

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear tamper.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the inner finisher rear tamper.

Figure 6-2883 Remove the tamper

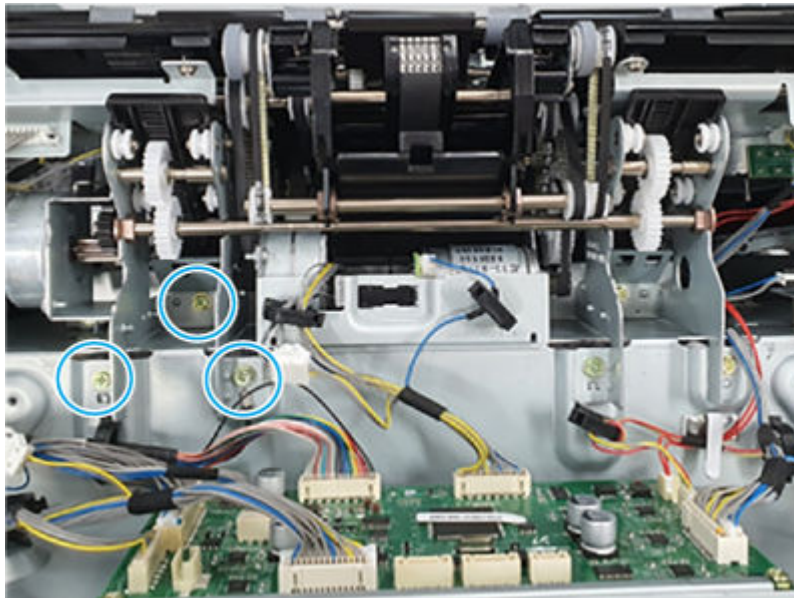


6 Remove the inner finisher rear paper support

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear paper support.

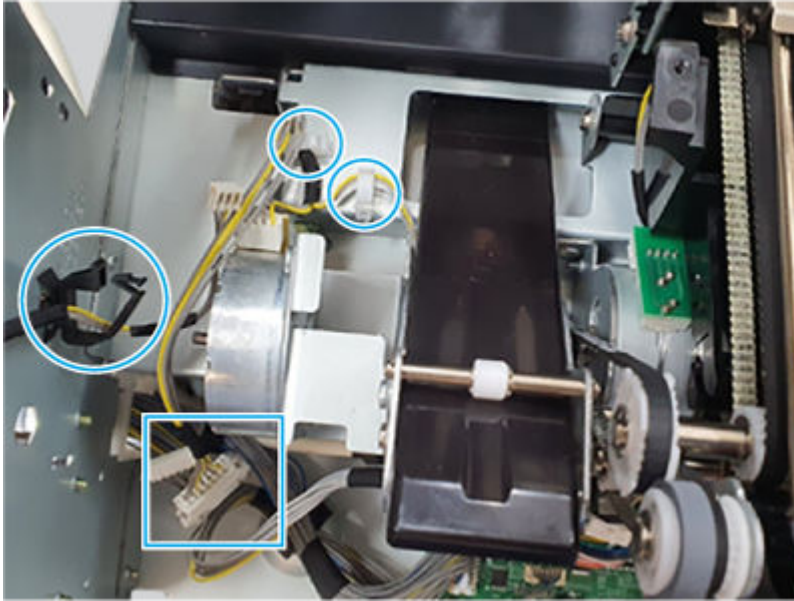
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2884 Remove three screws



2. Disconnect one connector, release three hooks, and then remove the inner finisher rear paper support.

Figure 6-2885 Remove the support

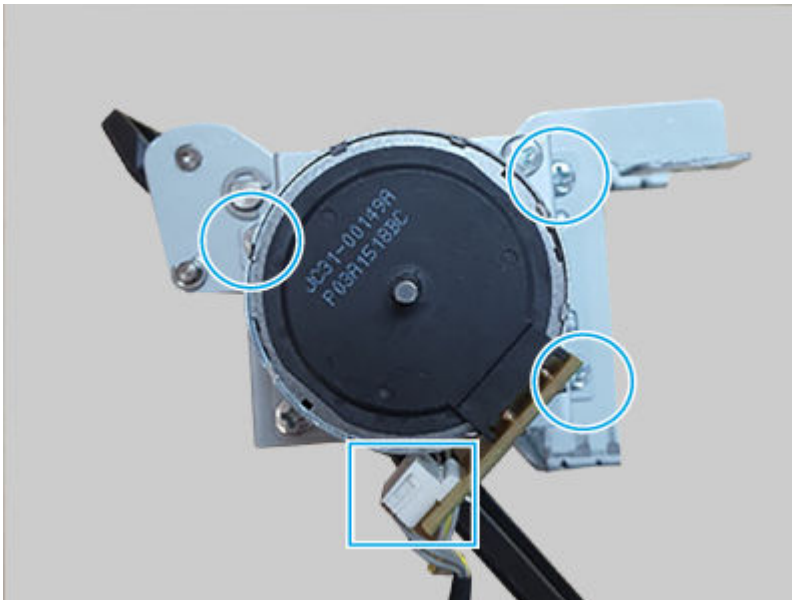


7 Remove the inner finisher paper support motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher paper support motor assembly.

- Disconnect one connector, remove three screws, and then remove the inner finisher paper support motor assembly.

Figure 6-2886 Remove the assembly



8 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Paper support motor

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher paper support motor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-350 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-00802B	Drive sub-motor step (Paper support motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

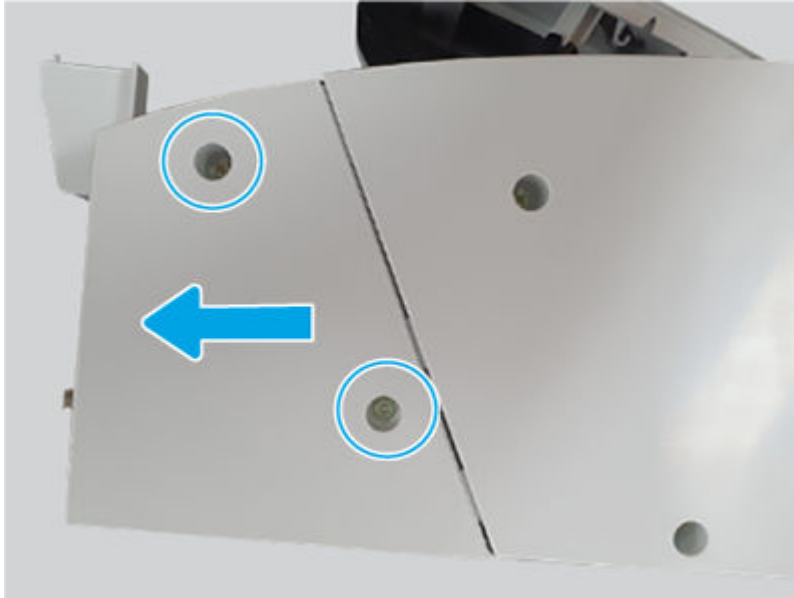
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-2887 Remove the cover



2 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

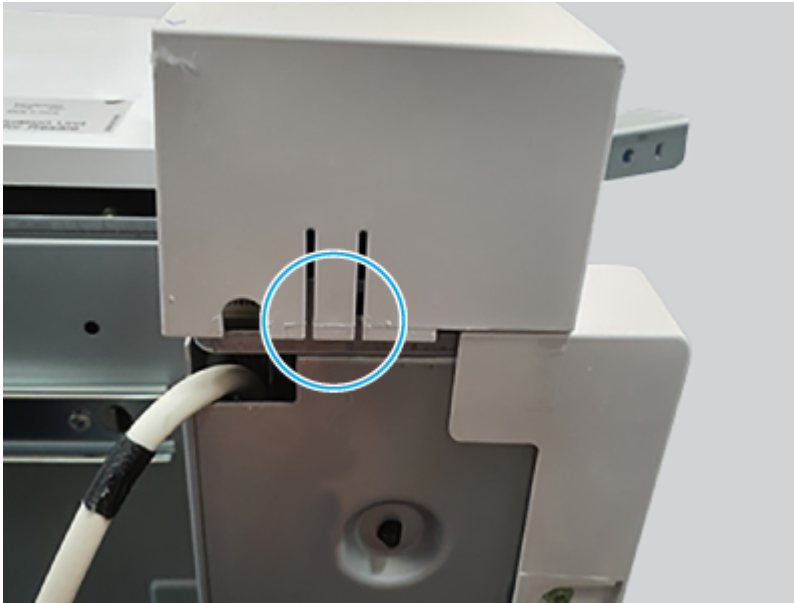
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2888 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-2889 Remove the cover

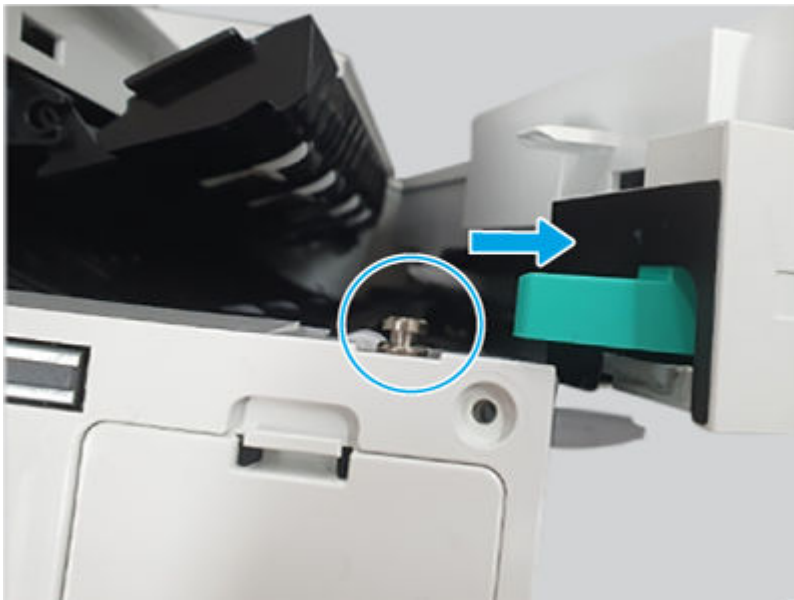


3 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-2890 Open the punch cover



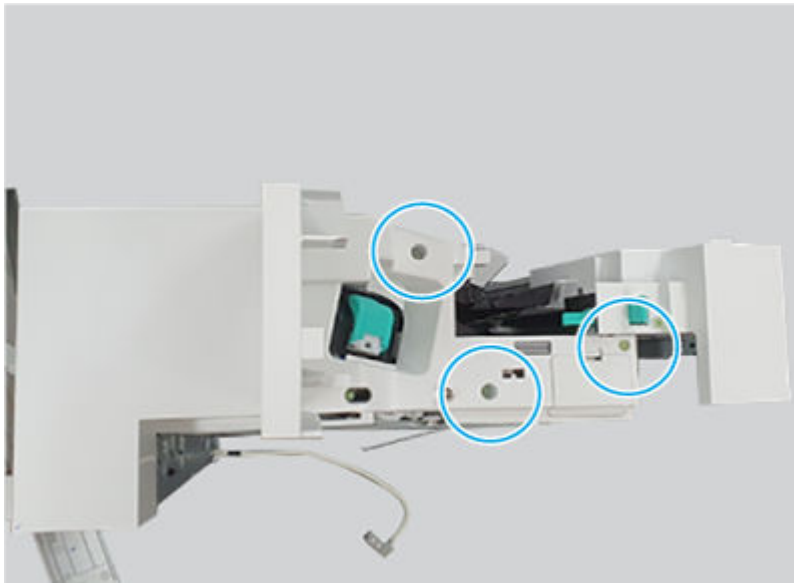
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-2891 Remove the handle



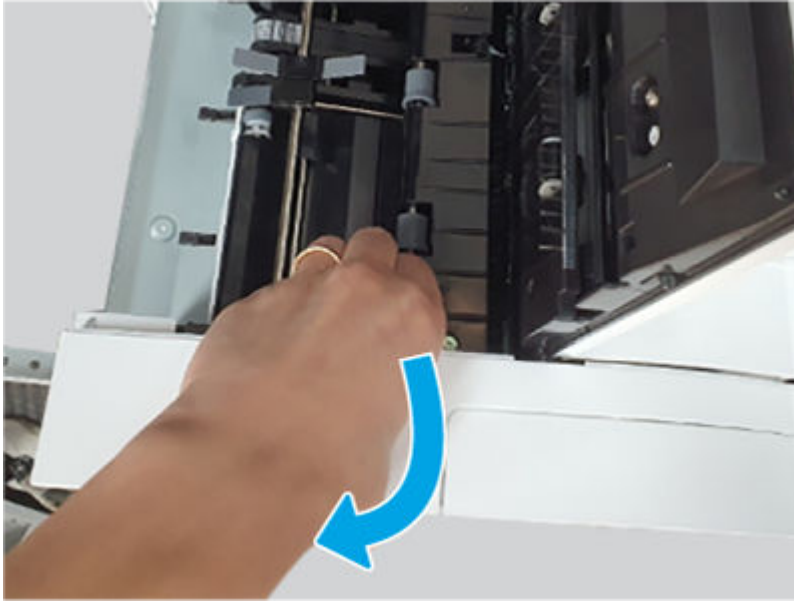
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2892 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-2893 Remove the cover

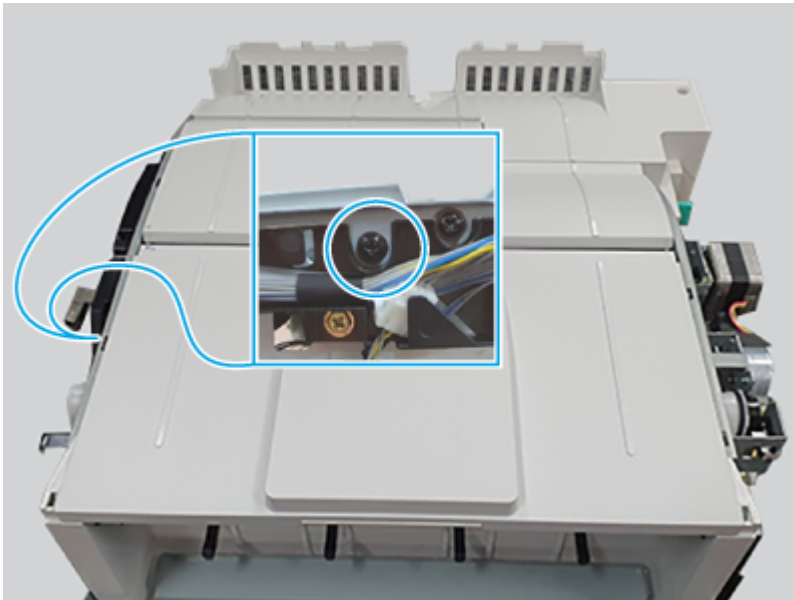


4 Remove the inner finisher top cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher top cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher top cover assembly.

Figure 6-2894 Remove the cover

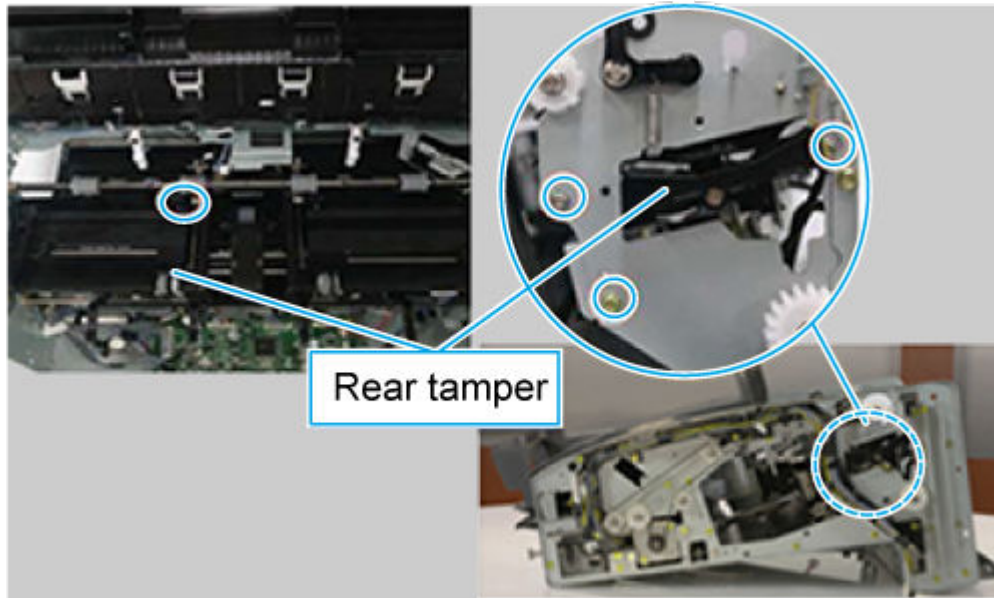


5 Remove the inner finisher rear tamper

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear tamper.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the inner finisher rear tamper.

Figure 6-2895 Remove the tamper

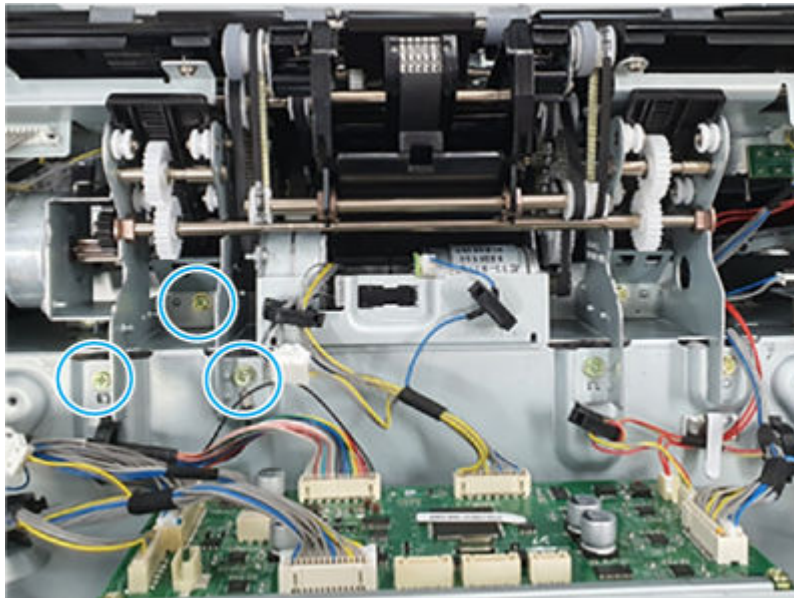


6 Remove the inner finisher rear paper support

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear paper support.

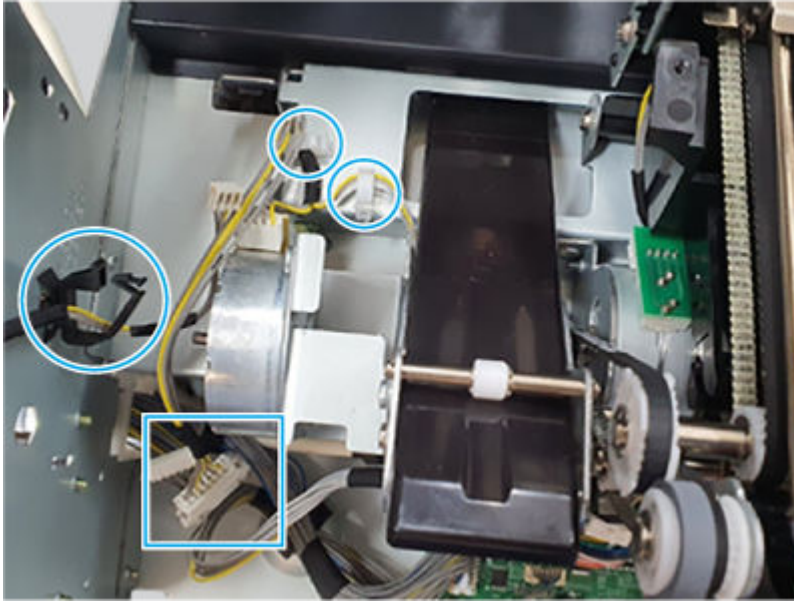
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2896 Remove three screws



2. Disconnect one connector, release three hooks, and then remove the inner finisher rear paper support.

Figure 6-2897 Remove the support

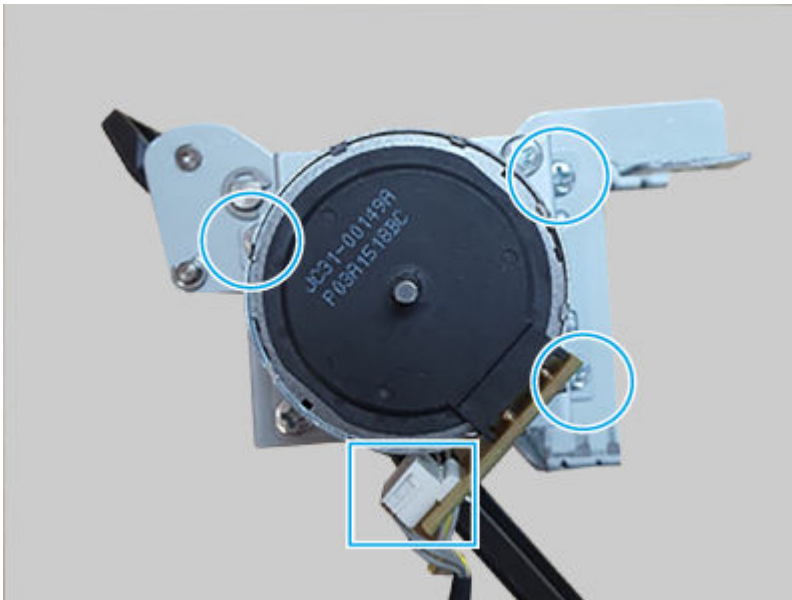


7 Remove the inner finisher paper support motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher paper support motor assembly.

- Disconnect one connector, remove three screws, and then remove the inner finisher paper support motor assembly.

Figure 6-2898 Remove the assembly

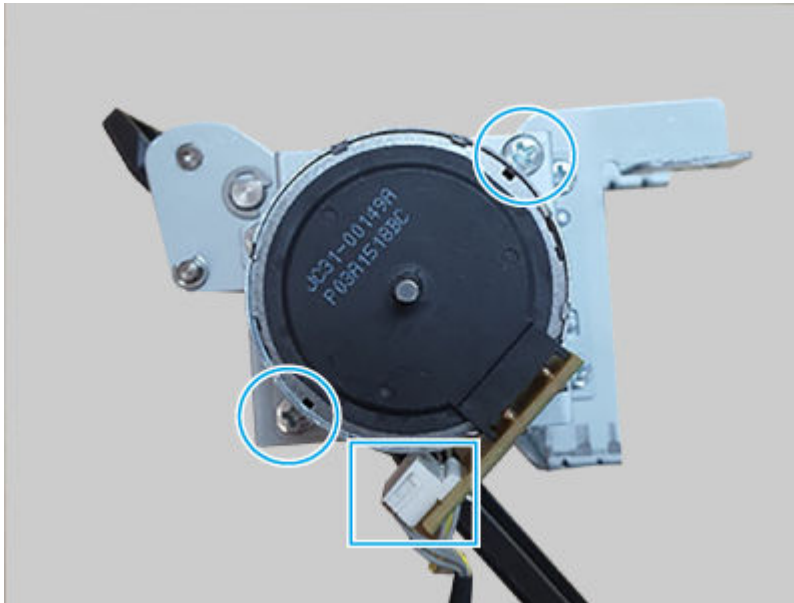


8 Remove the inner finisher paper support motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher paper support motor.

- Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the inner finisher paper support motor.

Figure 6-2899 Remove the motor



9 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Front paper support

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher front paper support.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-351 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01310A	Front paper support

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

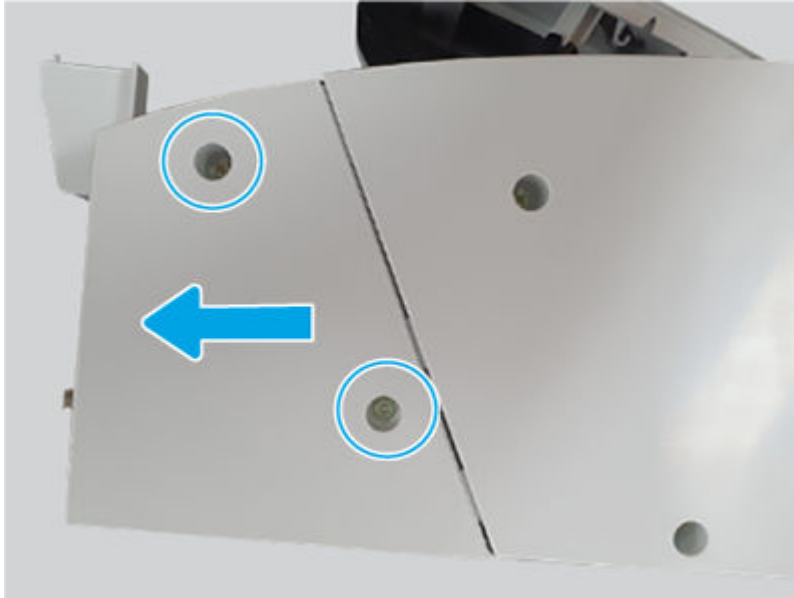
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-2900 Remove the cover



2 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

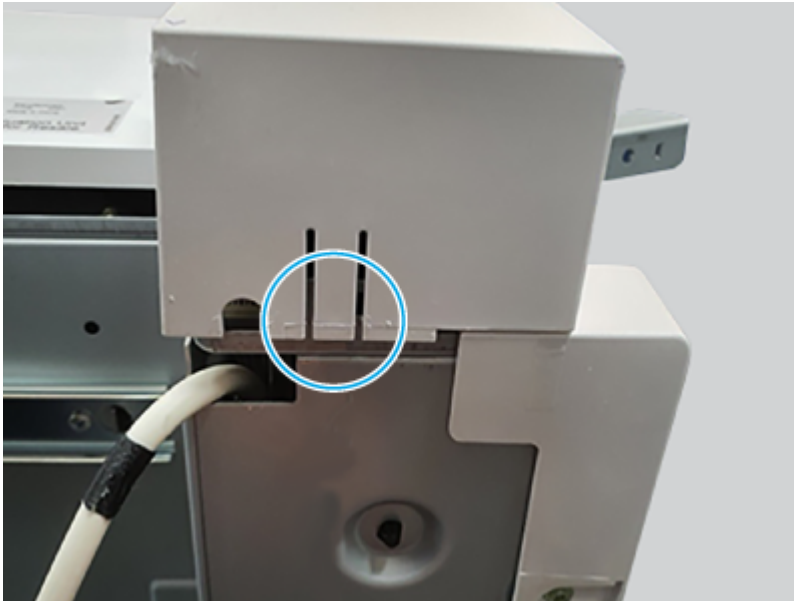
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2901 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-2902 Remove the cover

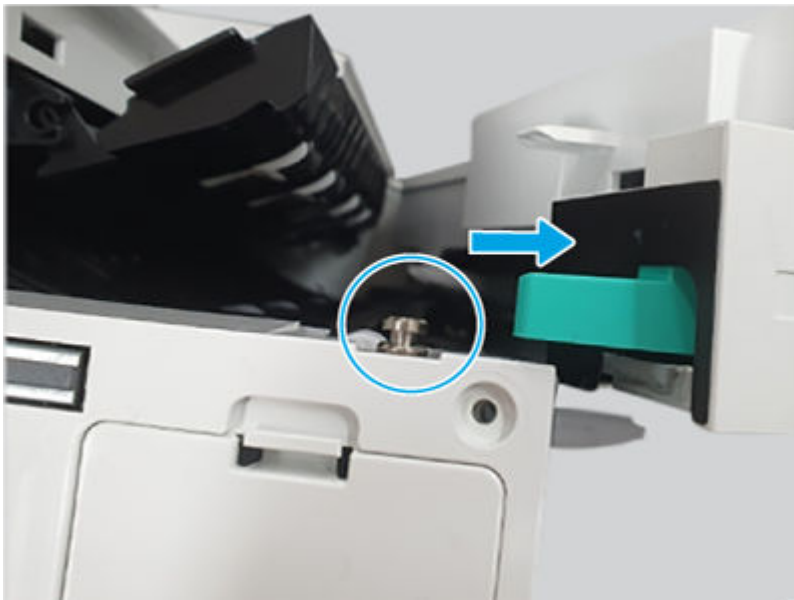


3 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-2903 Open the punch cover



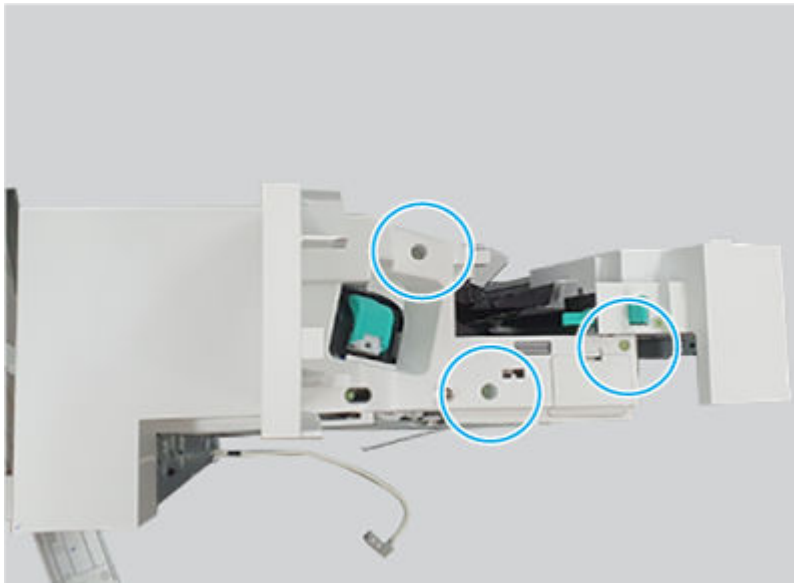
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-2904 Remove the handle



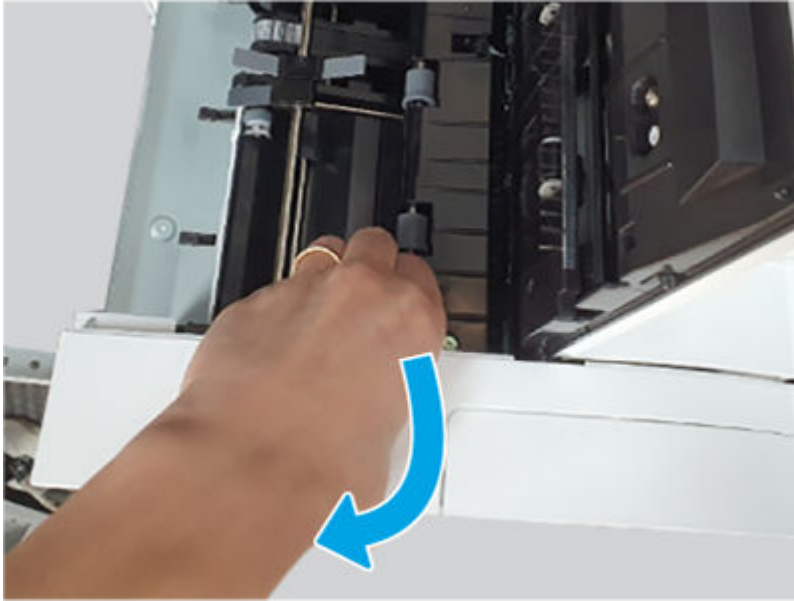
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2905 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-2906 Remove the cover

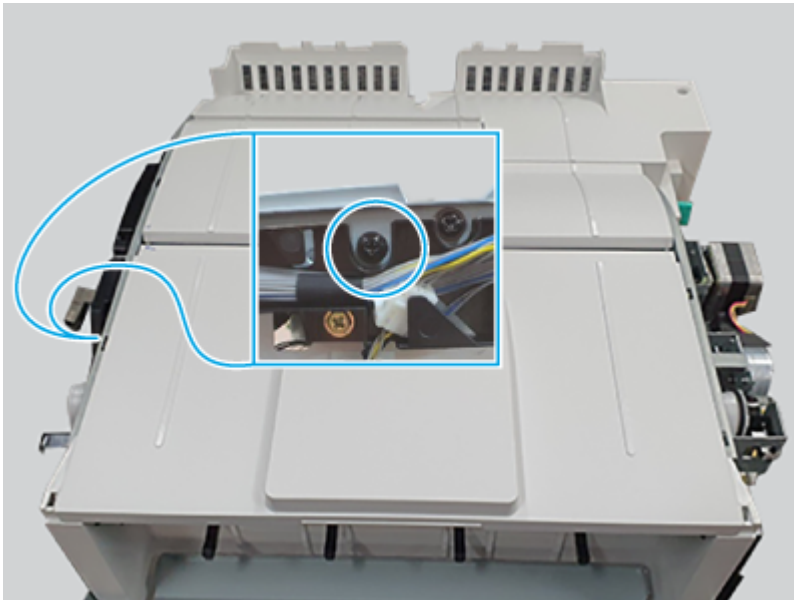


4 Remove the inner finisher top cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher top cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher top cover assembly.

Figure 6-2907 Remove the cover

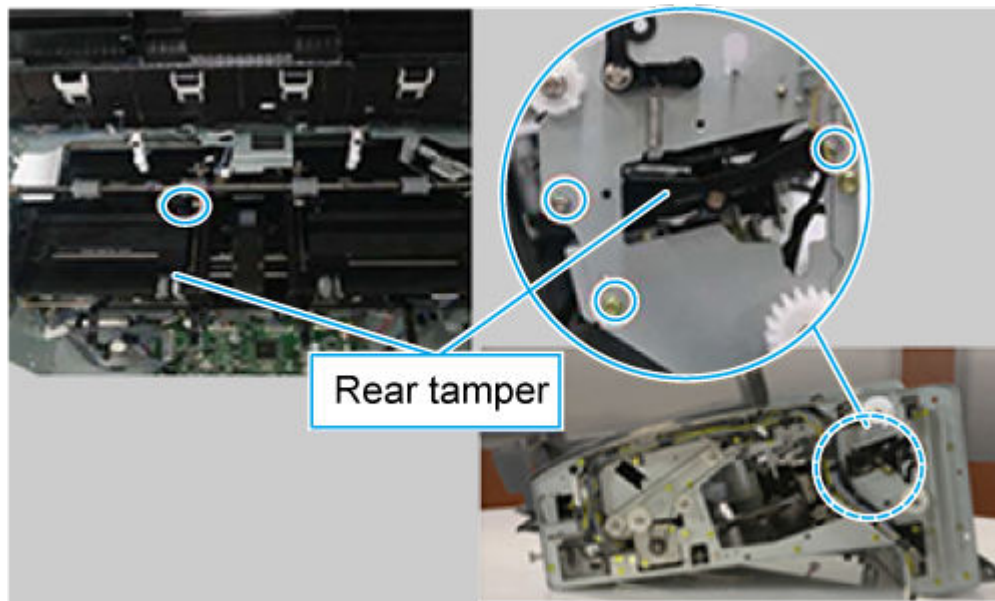


5 Remove the inner finisher rear tamper

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear tamper.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the inner finisher rear tamper.

Figure 6-2908 Remove the tamper

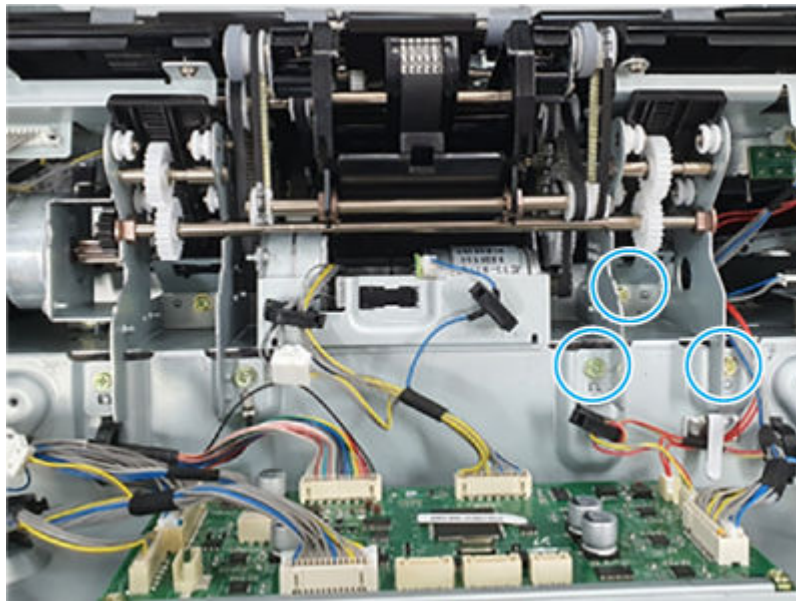


6 Remove the inner finisher front paper support

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front paper support.

- Remove three screws, and then remove the inner finisher front paper support..


Figure 6-2909 Remove the support



7 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Paddle unit

Review the inner finisher paddle unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Main paddle assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher main paddle assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-352 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01327A	Main paddle assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

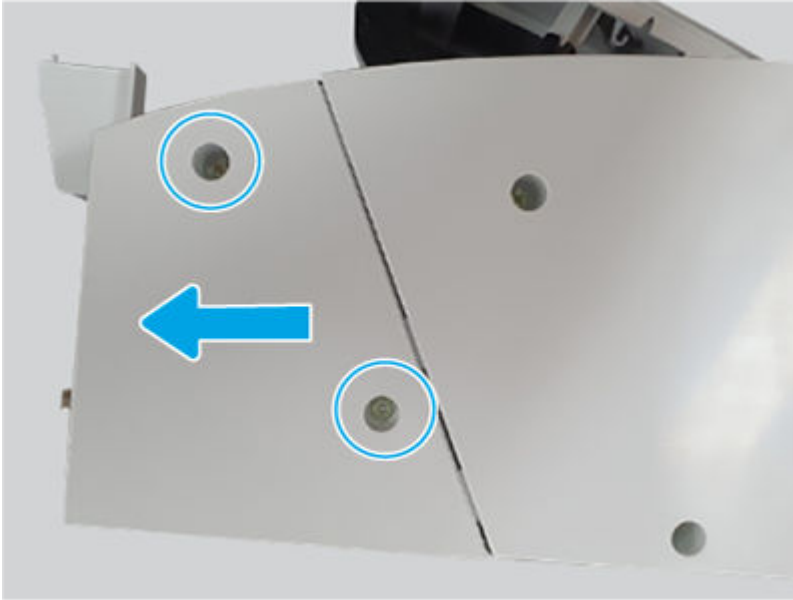
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-2910 Remove the cover



2 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

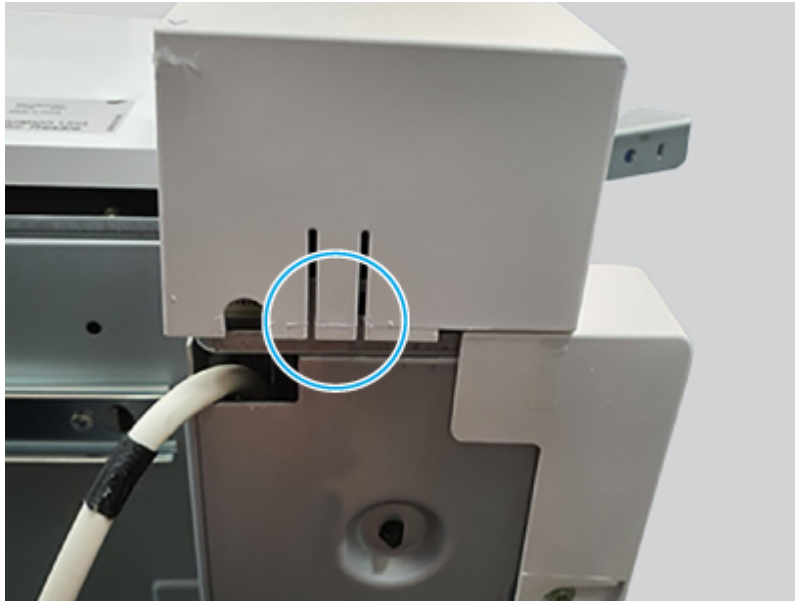
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2911 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-2912 Remove the cover

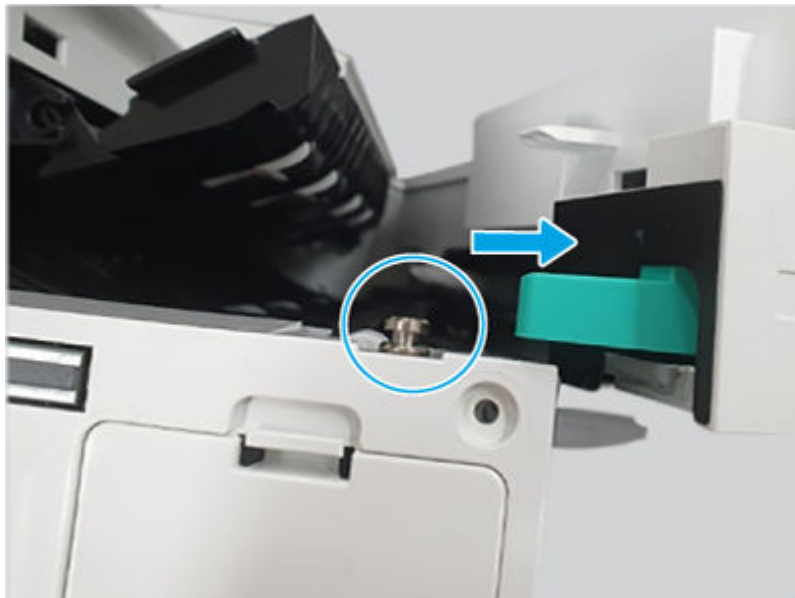


3 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-2913 Open the punch cover



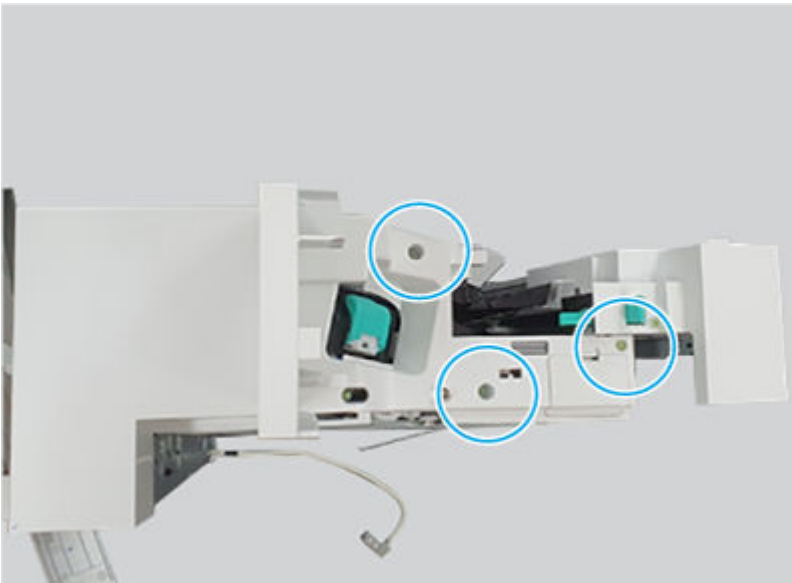
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-2914 Remove the handle



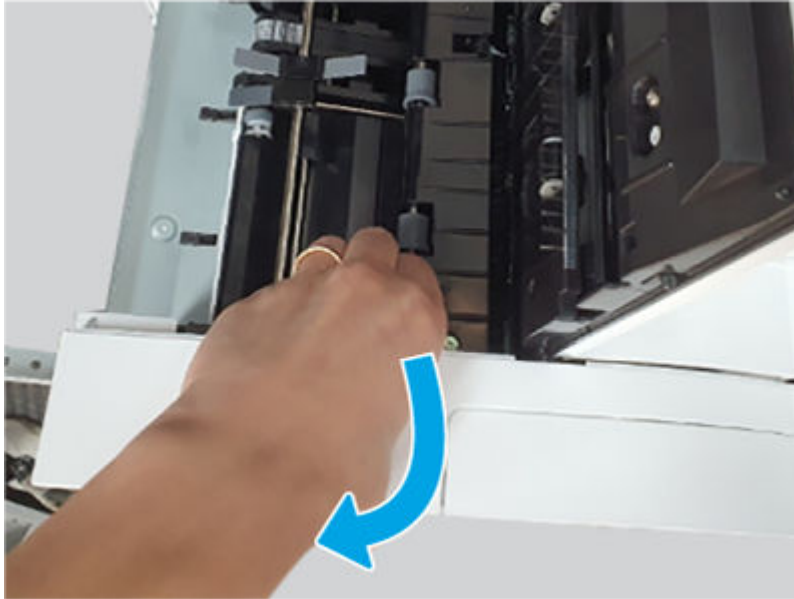
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2915 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-2916 Remove the cover



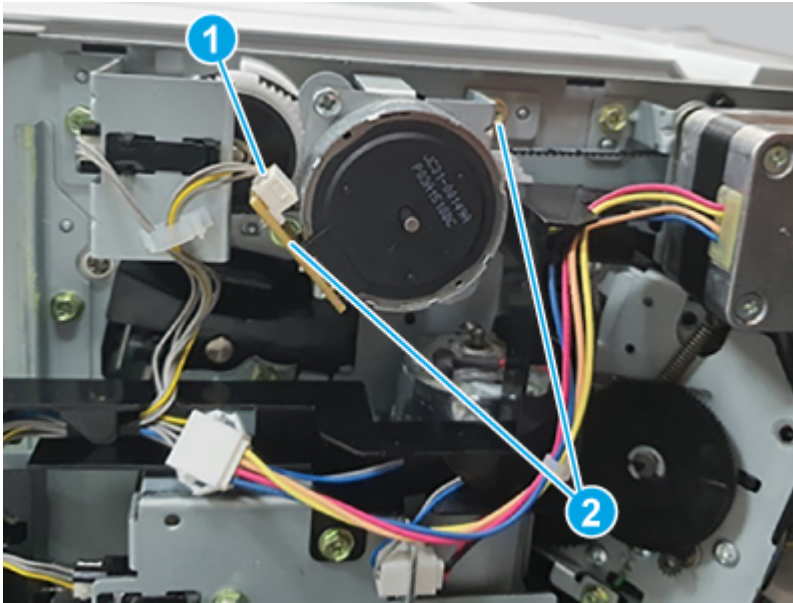
4 Remove the inner finisher main paddle motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher main paddle motor assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.
 - Open the punch cover.

2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the inner finisher main paddle motor assembly.

Figure 6-2917 Remove the assembly



5 Remove the inner finisher main paddle home sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher main paddle home sensor.

- Disconnect one connector, remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher main paddle home sensor.


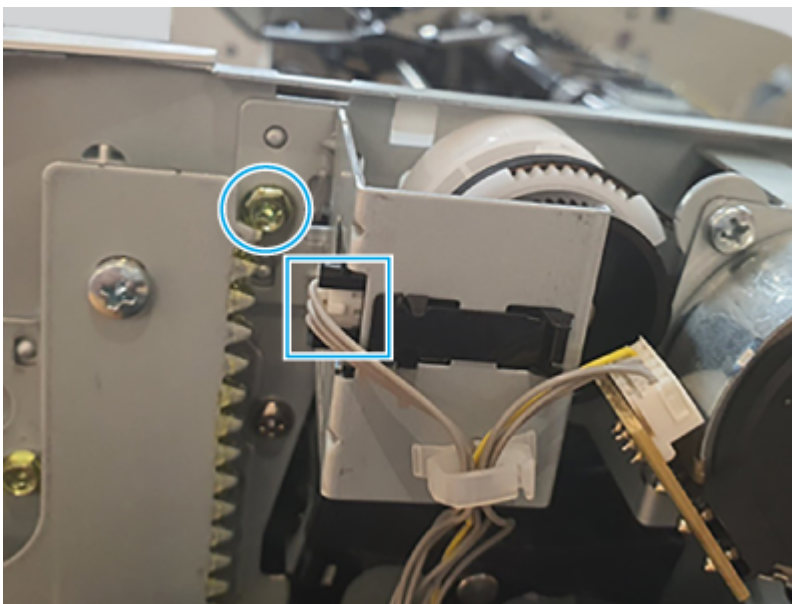
 **NOTE:** Release the wire harnesses from the retainer as necessary.

Figure 6-2918 Remove the sensor

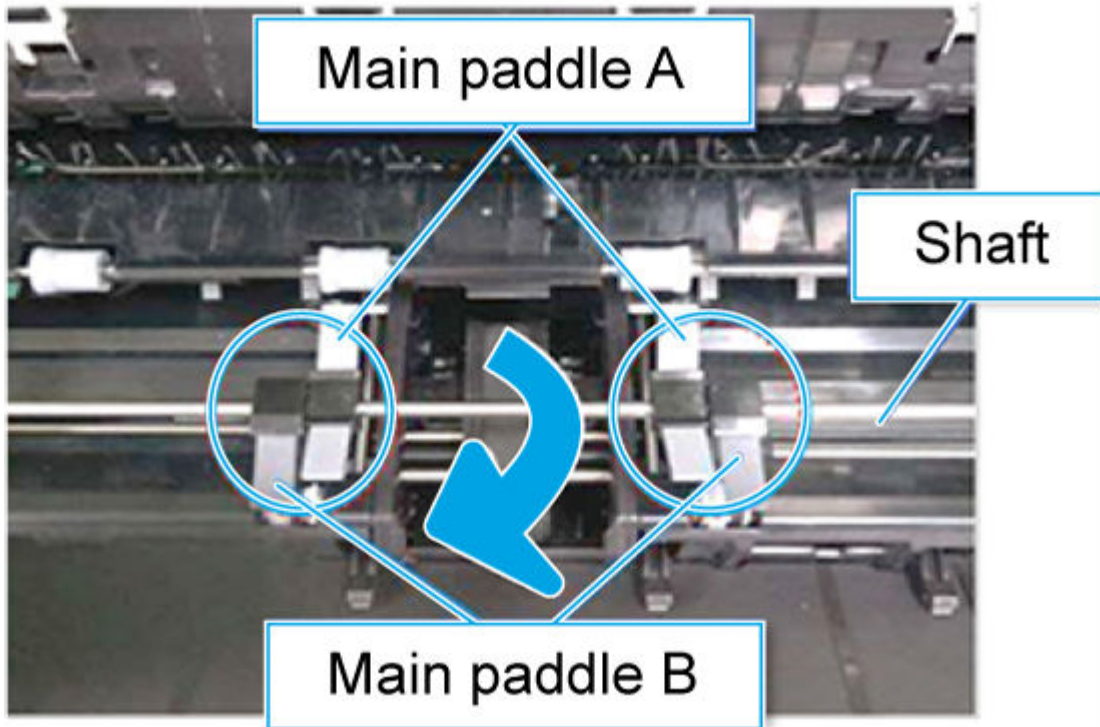


6 Remove the inner finisher main paddle assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher main paddle assembly.

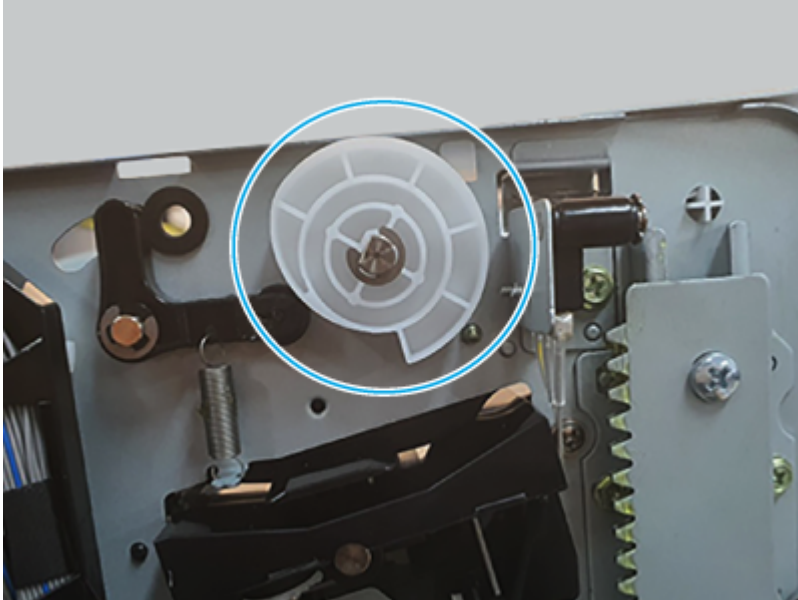
1. Remove four paddles.

Figure 6-2919 Remove four paddles



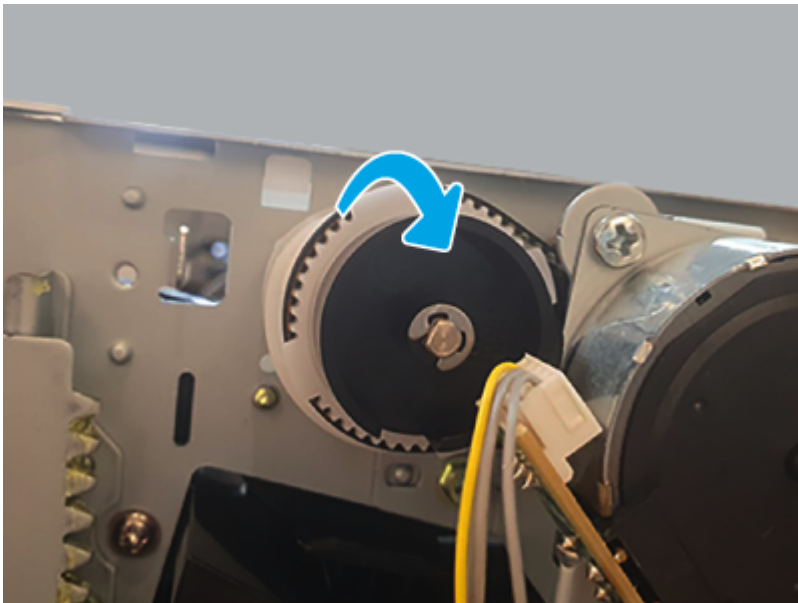
2. Do the following:
 - Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring.
 - Remove the main paddle cam and bushing.

Figure 6-2920 Remove the e-ring, cam, and bushing



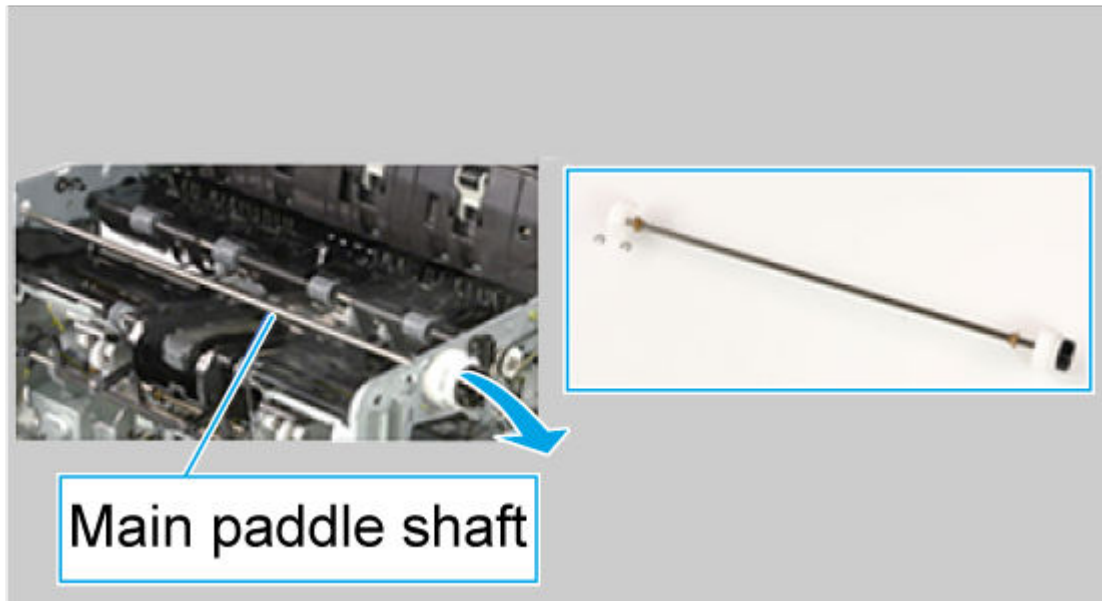
3. Release the belt.

Figure 6-2921 Release the belt



4. Remove the main paddle shaft.

Figure 6-2922 Remove the shaft



7 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Sub paddle assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher sub paddle assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-353 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01336A	Sub paddle assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

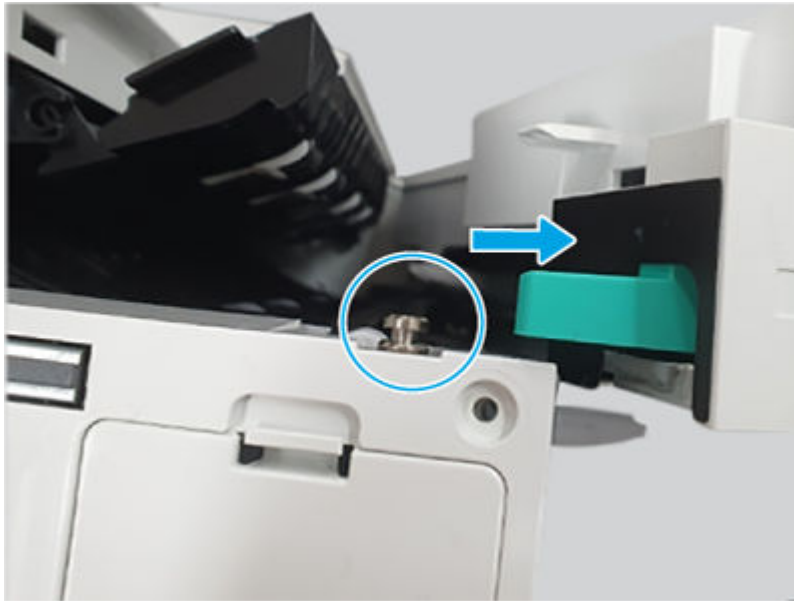
1 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-2923 Open the punch cover



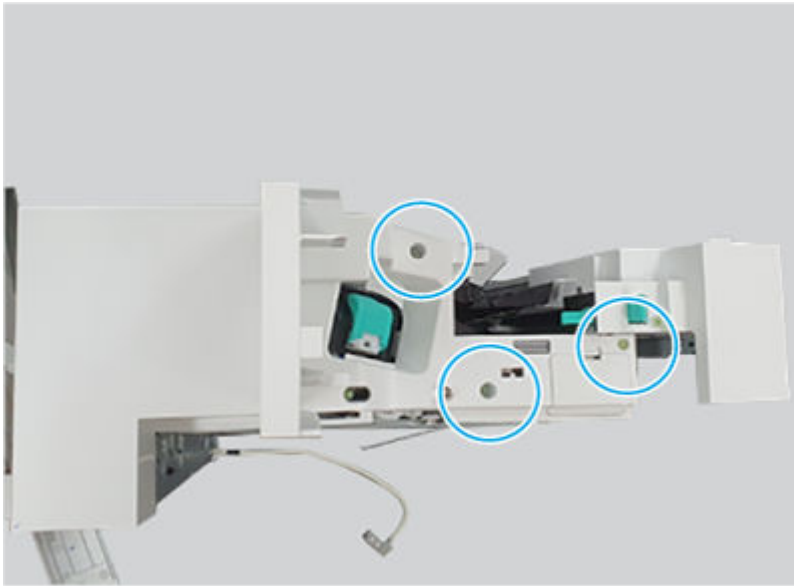
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-2924 Remove the handle



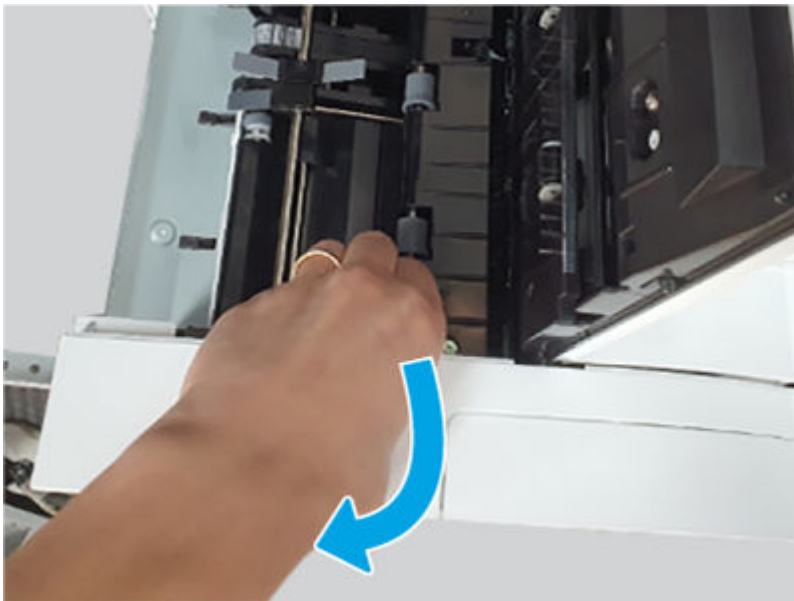
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2925 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-2926 Remove the cover

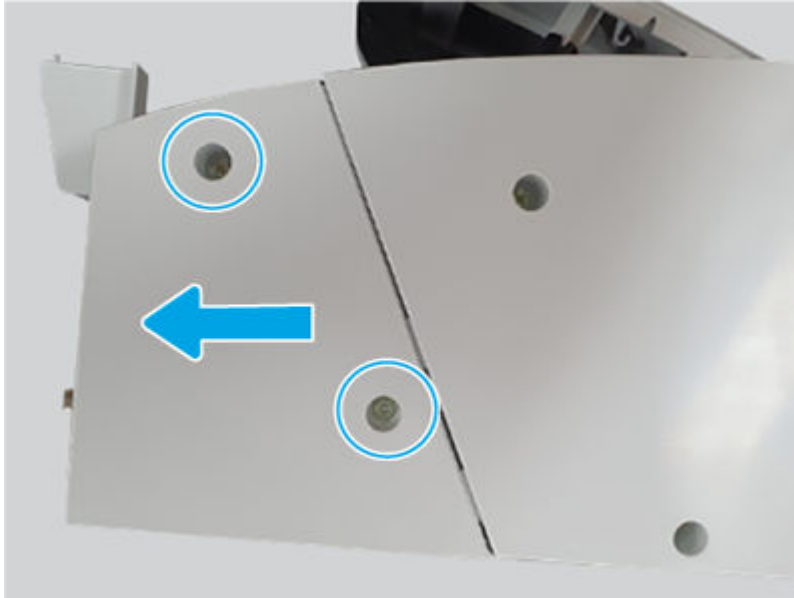


2 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-2927 Remove the cover



3 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

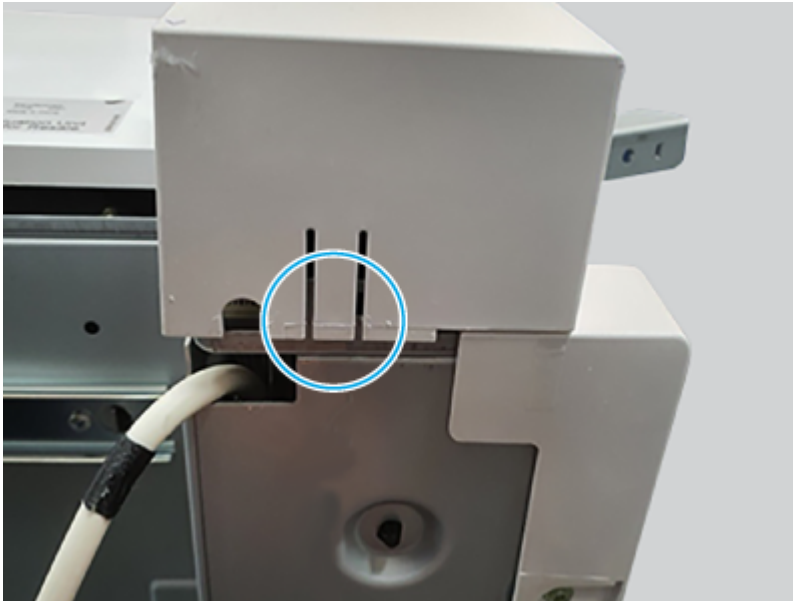
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2928 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-2929 Remove the cover

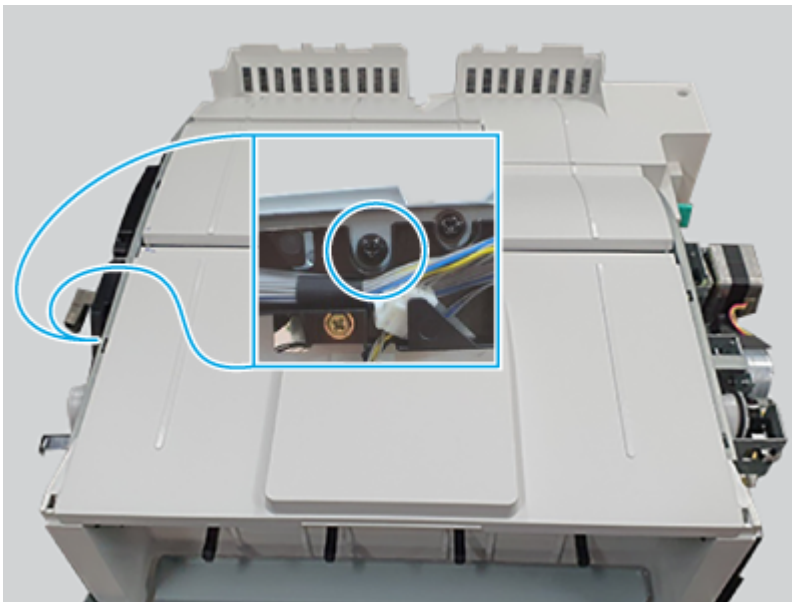


4. **Remove the inner finisher top cover assembly**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher top cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher top cover assembly.

Figure 6-2930 Remove the cover



5. **Remove the inner finisher sub paddle assembly**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher sub paddle assembly.

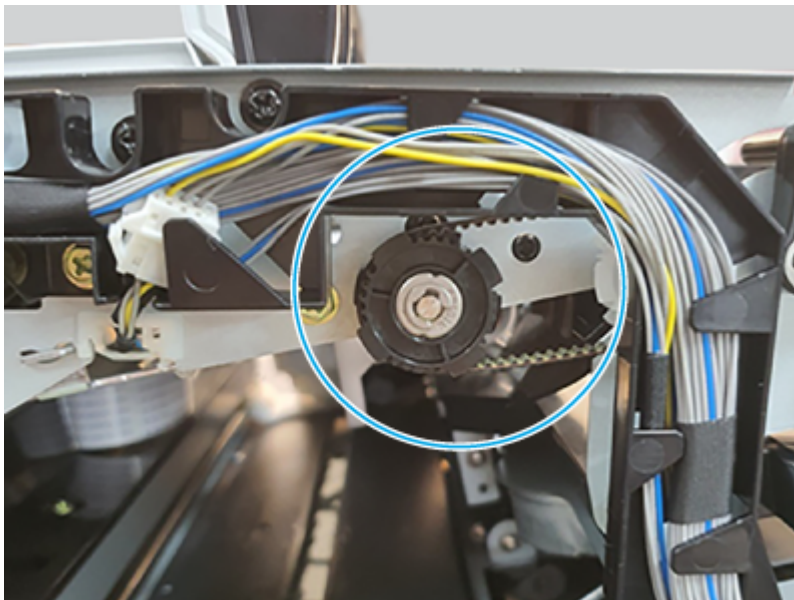
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-2931 Remove one screw



2. Do the following:
 - Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring.
 - Remove the gear, belt, and bushing.
 - Remove the sub paddle assembly.


Figure 6-2932 Remove the assembly



6 **Unpack the replacement assembly**



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Main paddle home sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher main paddle home sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-354 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Main paddle home sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

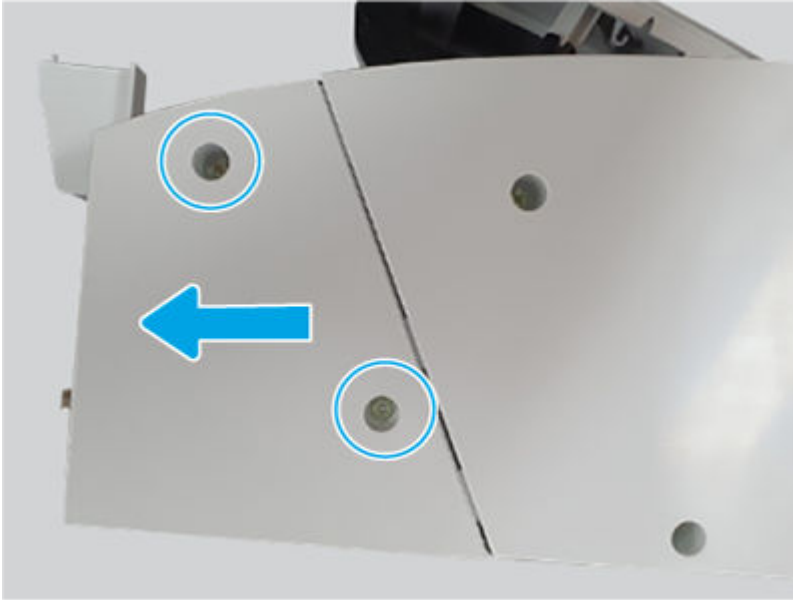
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-2933 Remove the cover



2 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

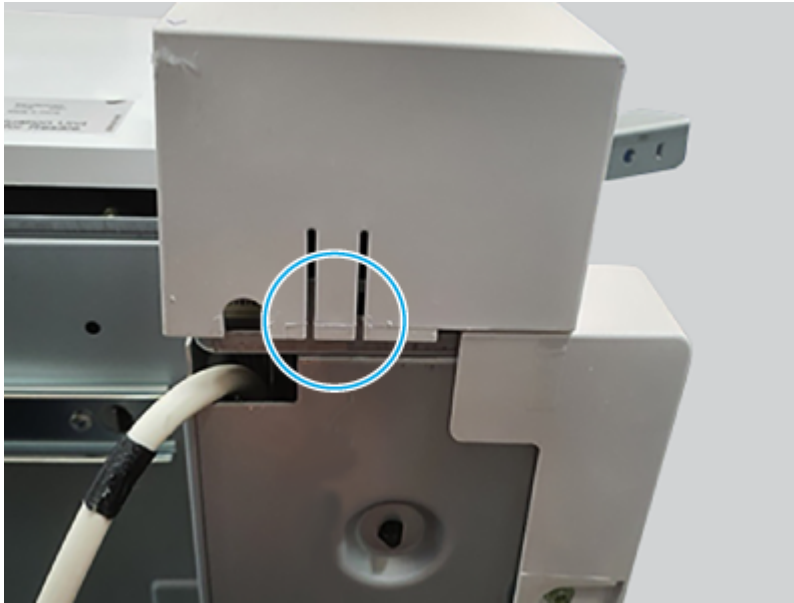
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2934 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-2935 Remove the cover

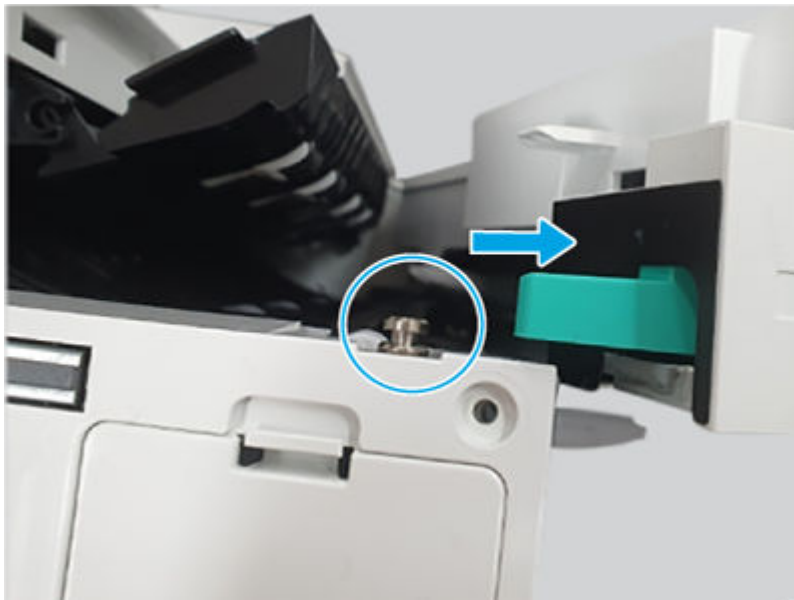


3 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-2936 Open the punch cover



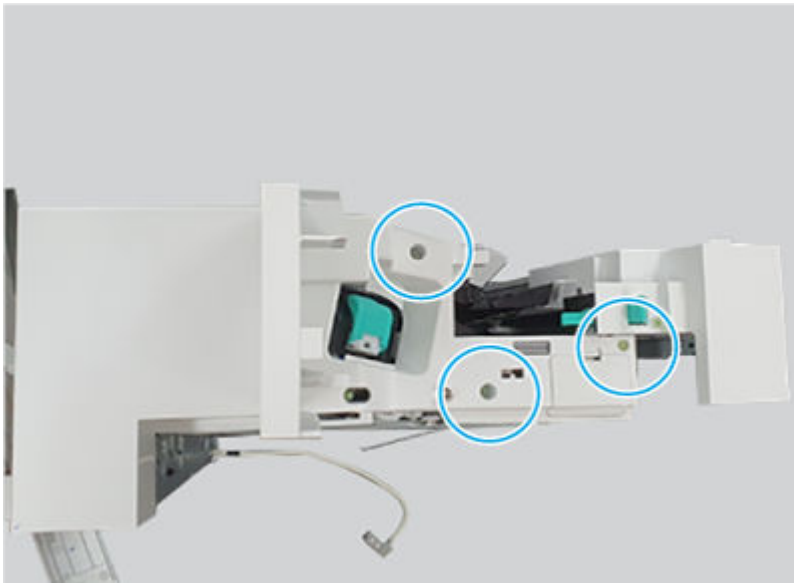
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-2937 Remove the handle



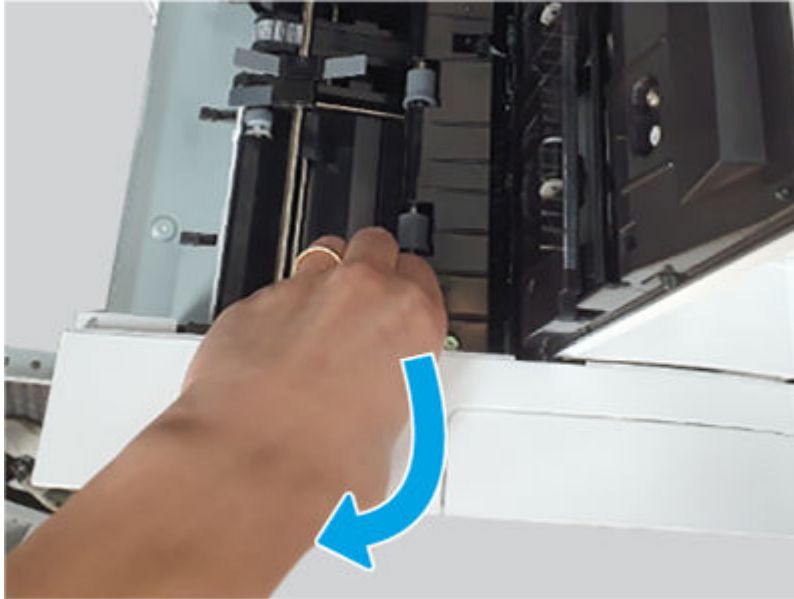
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2938 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-2939 Remove the cover



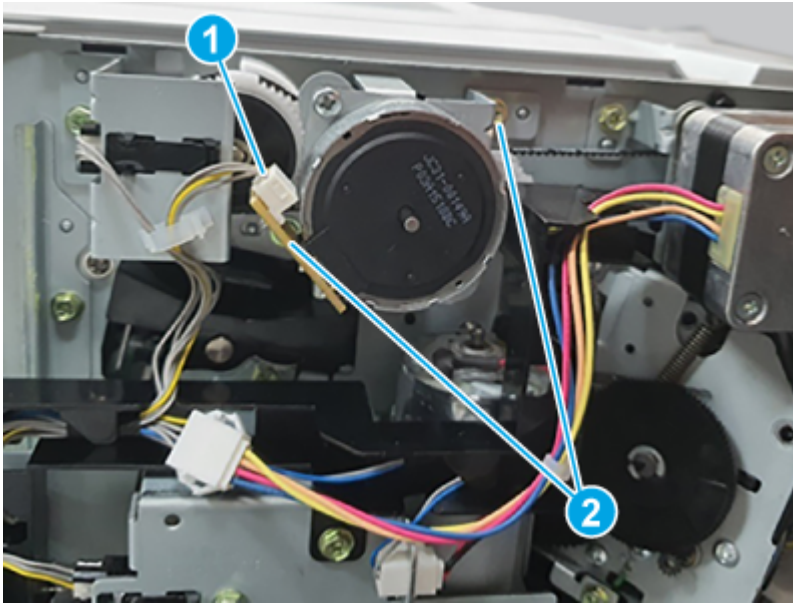
4 Remove the inner finisher main paddle motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher main paddle motor assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.
 - Open the punch cover.

2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the inner finisher main paddle motor assembly.

Figure 6-2940 Remove the assembly



5 Remove the inner finisher main paddle home sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher main paddle home sensor.

- Disconnect one connector, remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher main paddle home sensor.


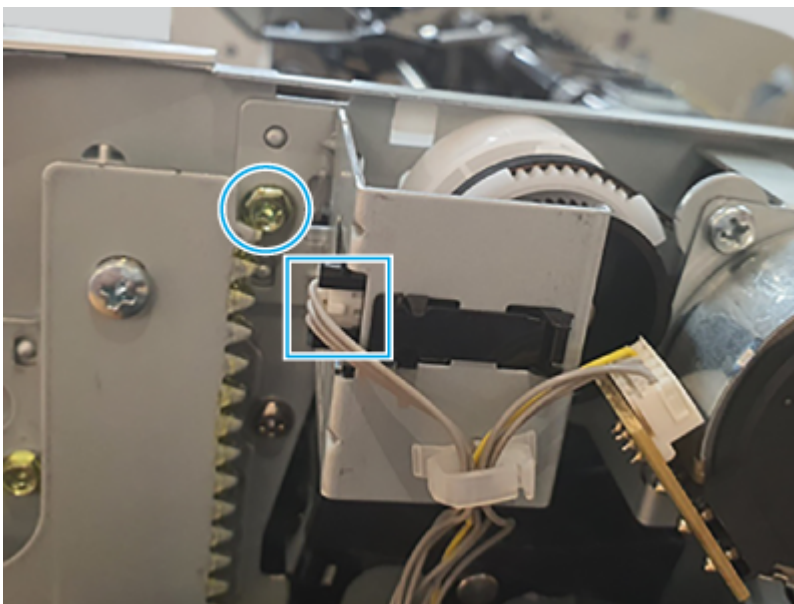
 **NOTE:** Release the wire harnesses from the retainer as necessary.

Figure 6-2941 Remove the sensor



6 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Main paddle motor assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher main paddle motor assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-355 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01331A	Main paddle motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

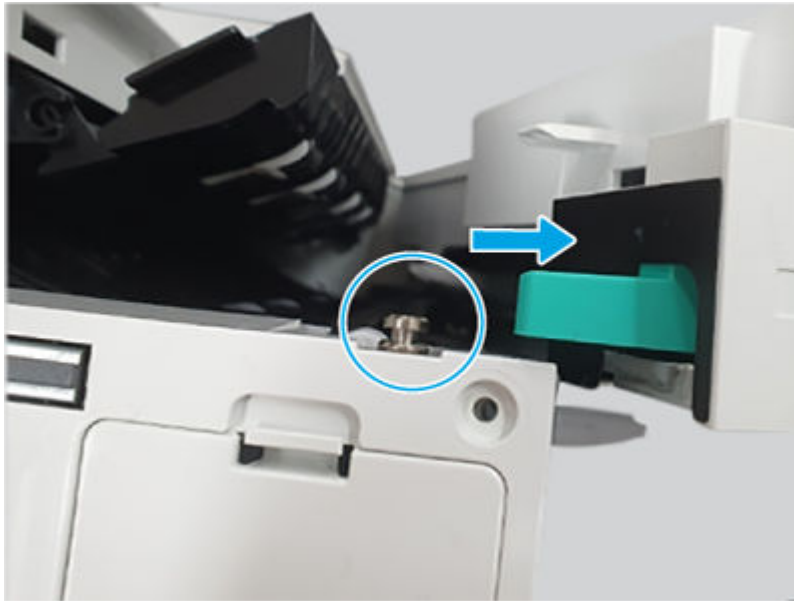
1 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-2942 Open the punch cover



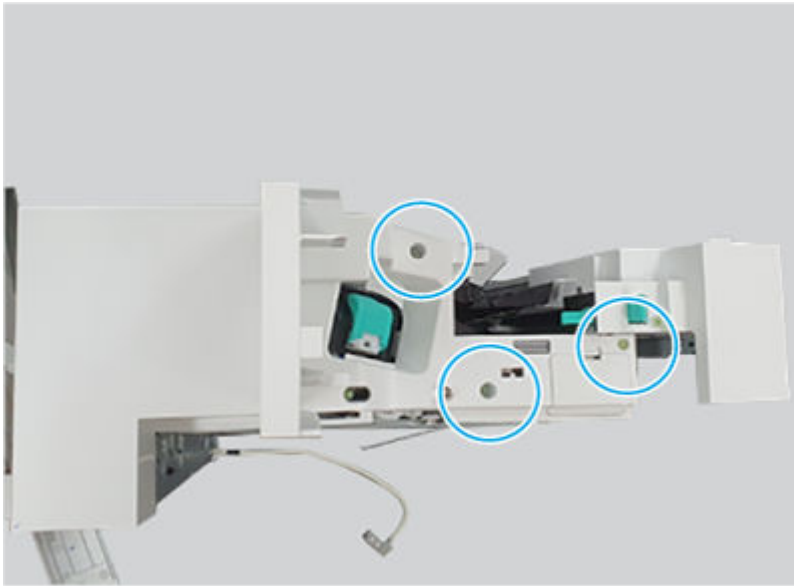
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-2943 Remove the handle



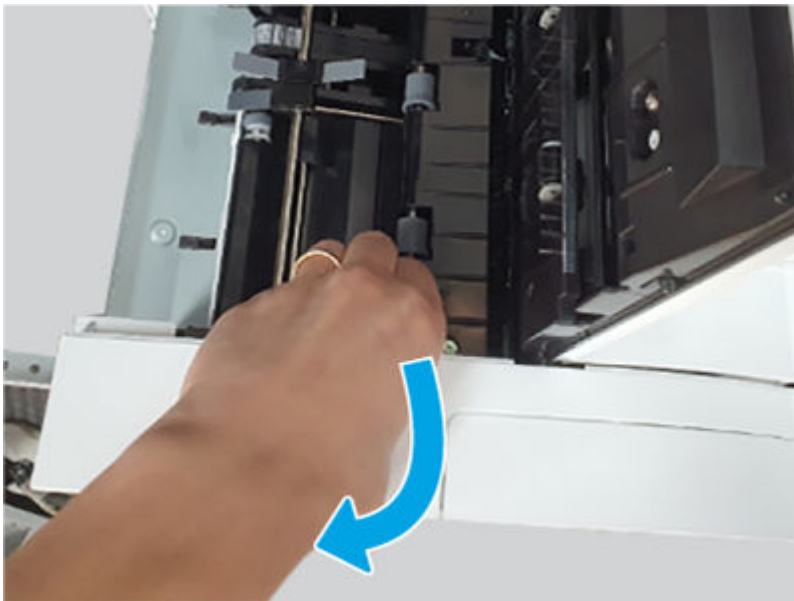
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2944 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-2945 Remove the cover



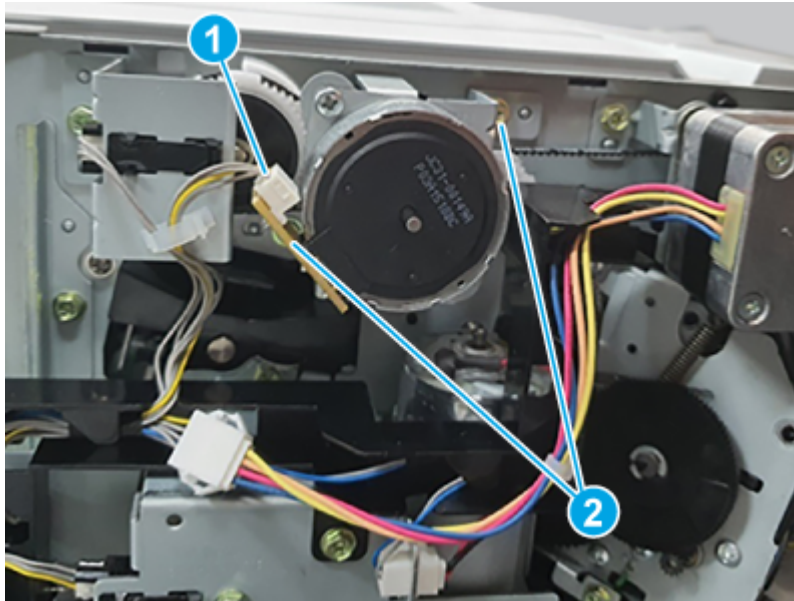
2 Remove the inner finisher main paddle motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher main paddle motor assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

- Open the punch cover.
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the inner finisher main paddle motor assembly.

Figure 6-2946 Remove the assembly



3 **Unpack the replacement assembly**

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

End fence unit

Review the inner finisher end fence unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: End fence sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher end fence sensor.



NOTE: Remove the inner finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-356 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001381	Photo interrupter (End fence sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

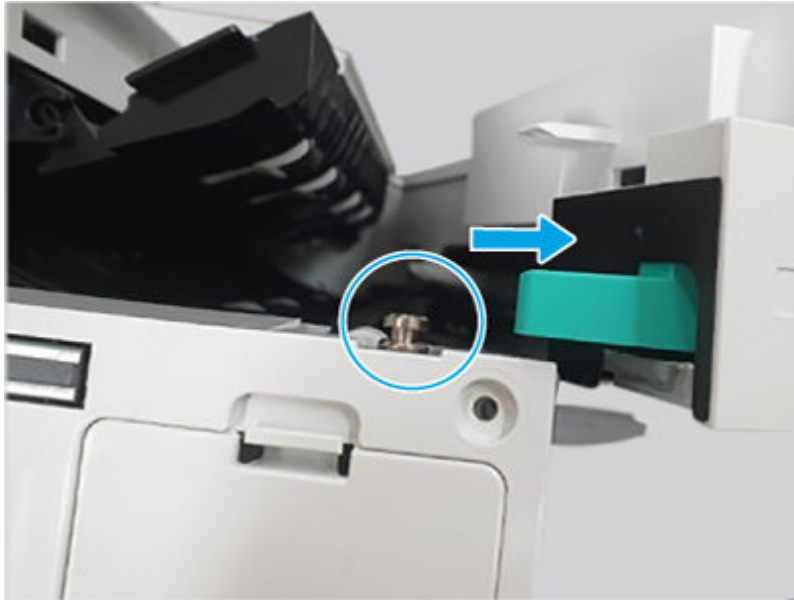
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-2947 Open the punch cover



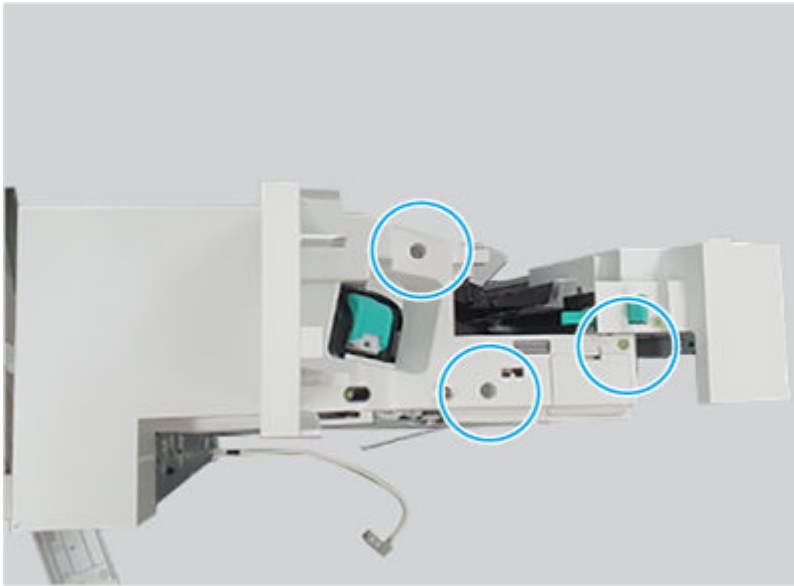
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-2948 Remove the handle



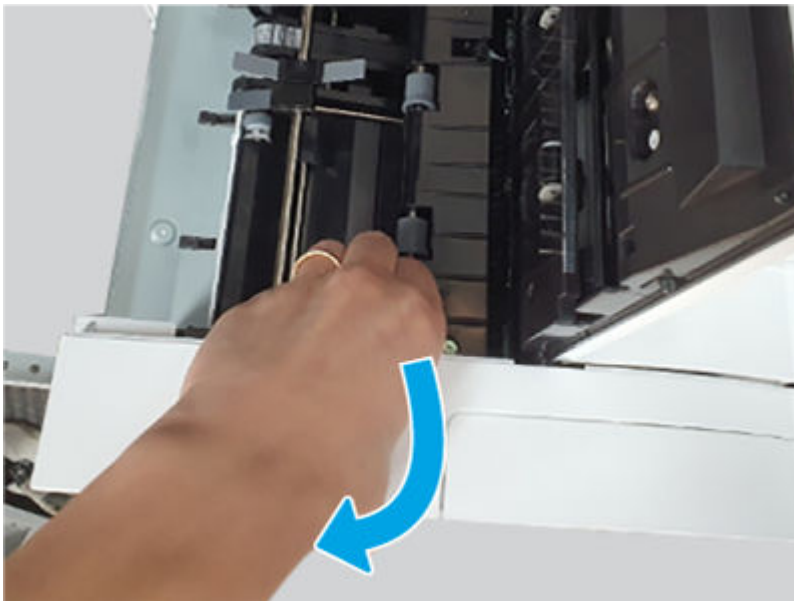
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2949 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-2950 Remove the cover

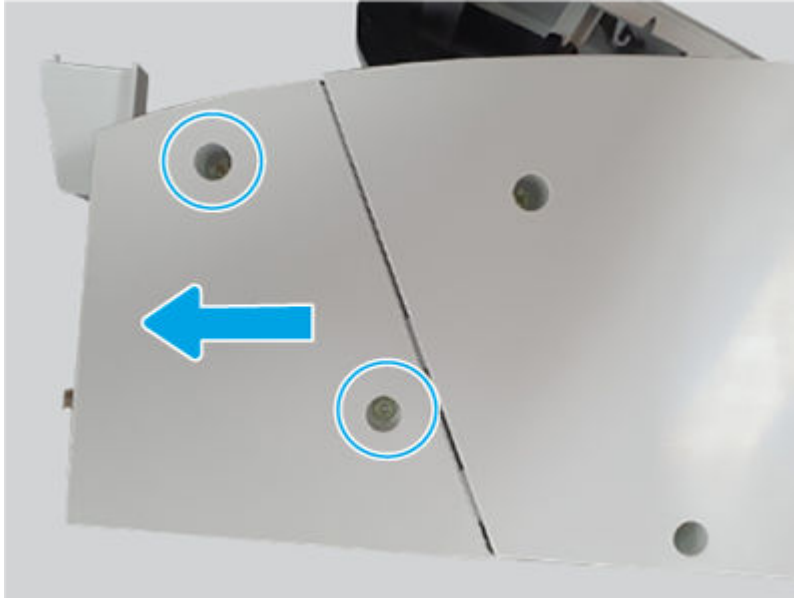


2 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-2951 Remove the cover

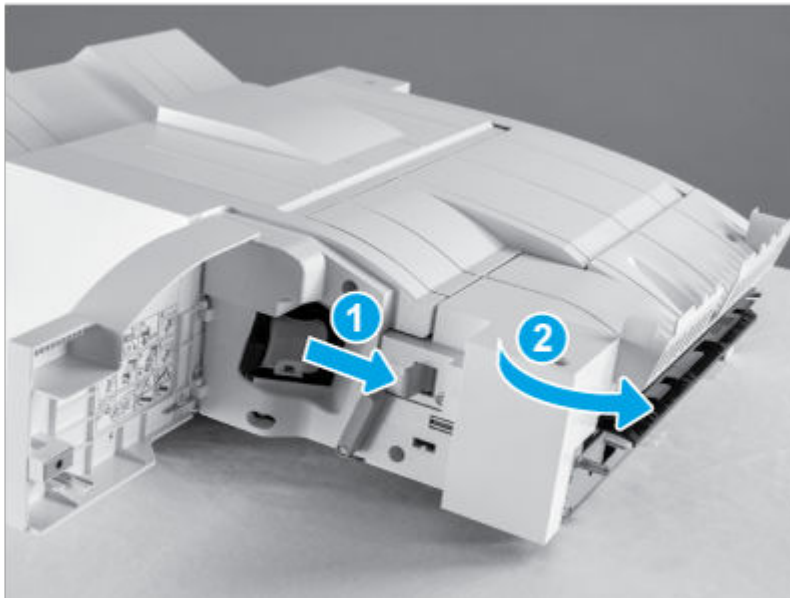


3 Remove the inner finisher punch cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher punch cover assembly.

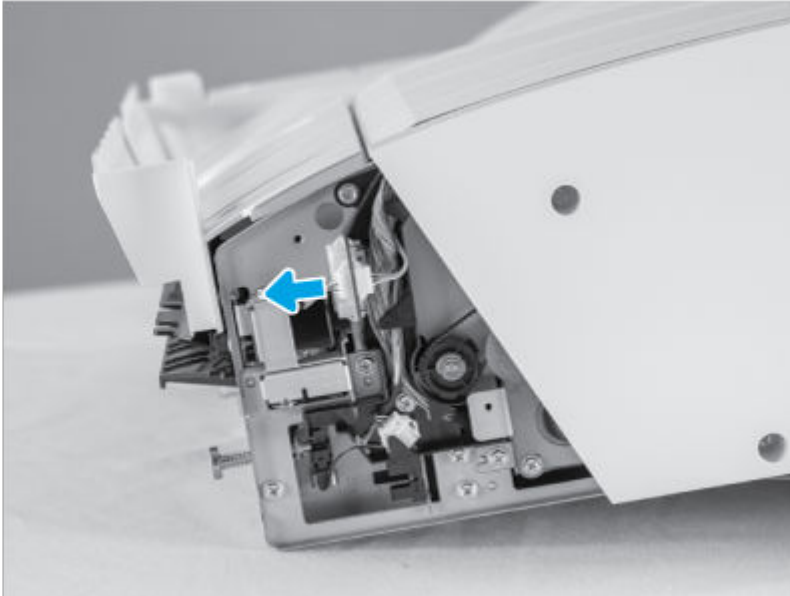
1. Release the lever (callout 1), and then rotate the punch away from the inner finisher (callout 2).

Figure 6-2952 Rotate the punch



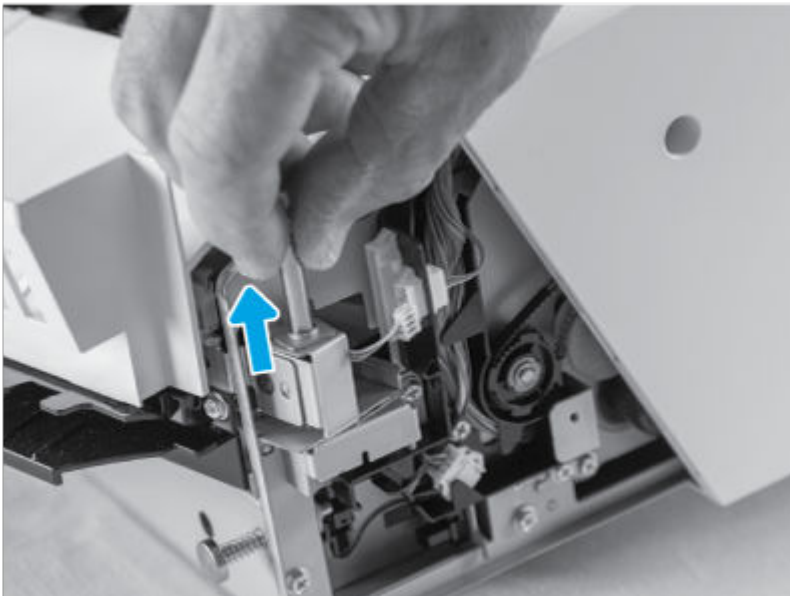
2. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-2953 Disconnect one connector



3. Remove the hinge shaft, and then remove the punch cover assembly.

Figure 6-2954 Remove the assembly



4 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.

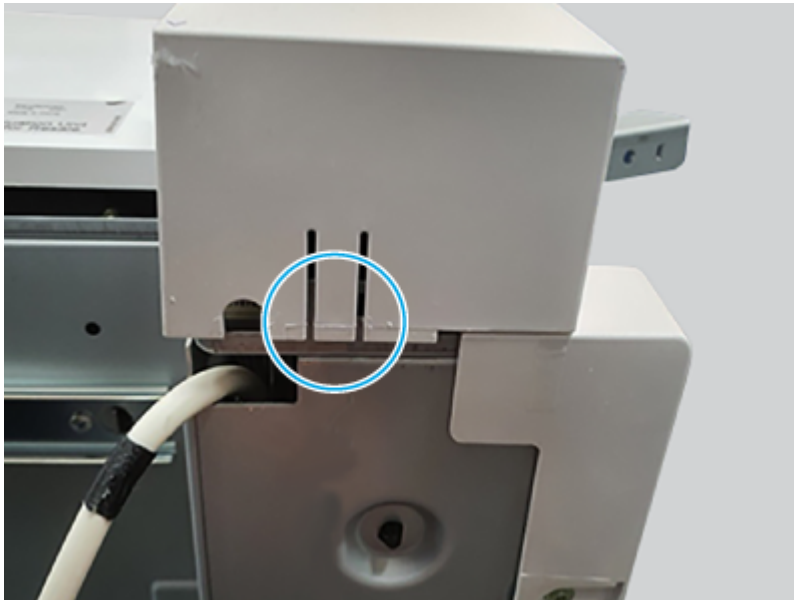
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2955 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-2956 Remove the cover

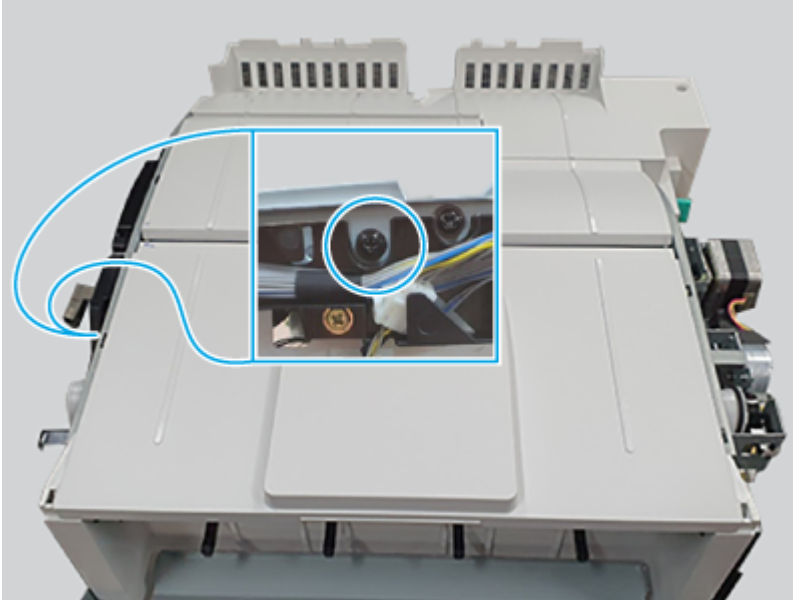


5 Remove the inner finisher top cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher top cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher top cover assembly.

Figure 6-2957 Remove the cover



6 Remove the inner finisher sub paddle assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher sub paddle assembly.

1. Remove one screw.

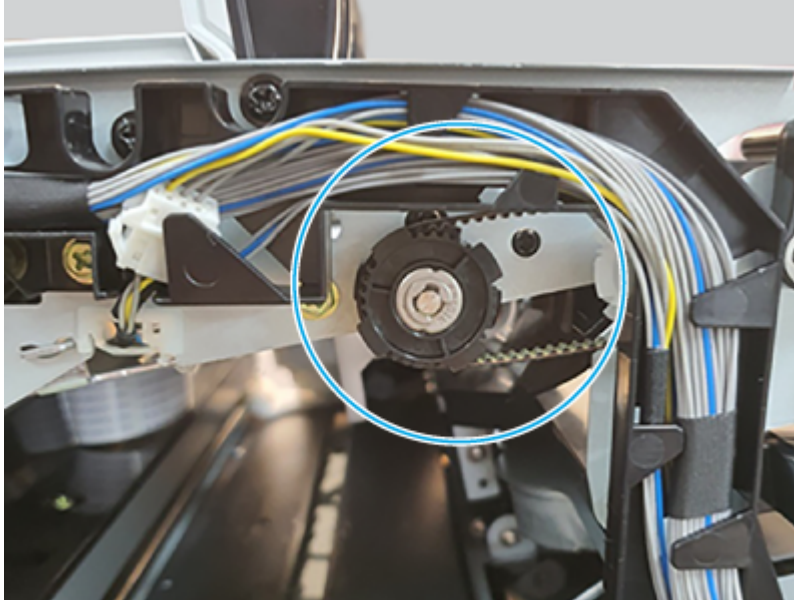
Figure 6-2958 Remove one screw



2. Do the following:
 - Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring.
 - Remove the gear, belt, and bushing.

- Remove the sub paddle assembly.

Figure 6-2959 Remove the assembly

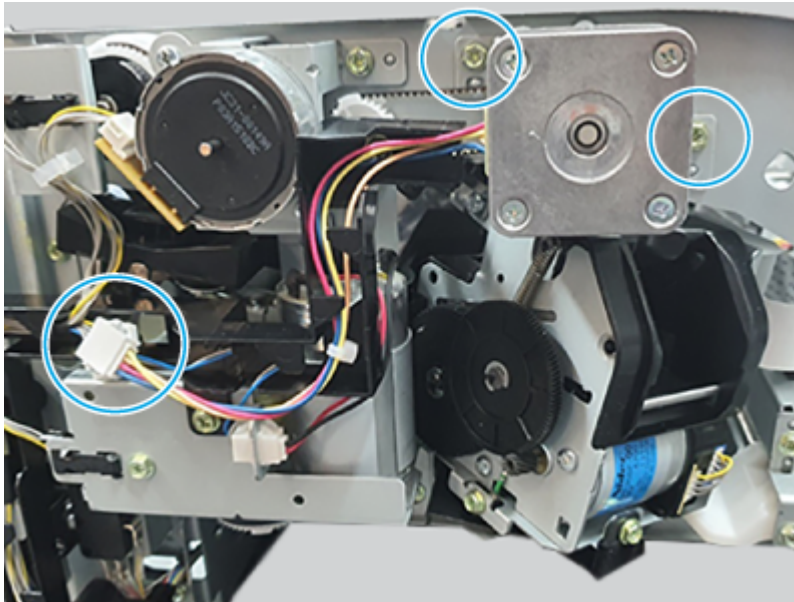


7 Remove the inner finisher exit motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher exit motor assembly.

1. Open the punch cover.
2. Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the inner finisher exit motor assembly.

Figure 6-2960 Remove the motor

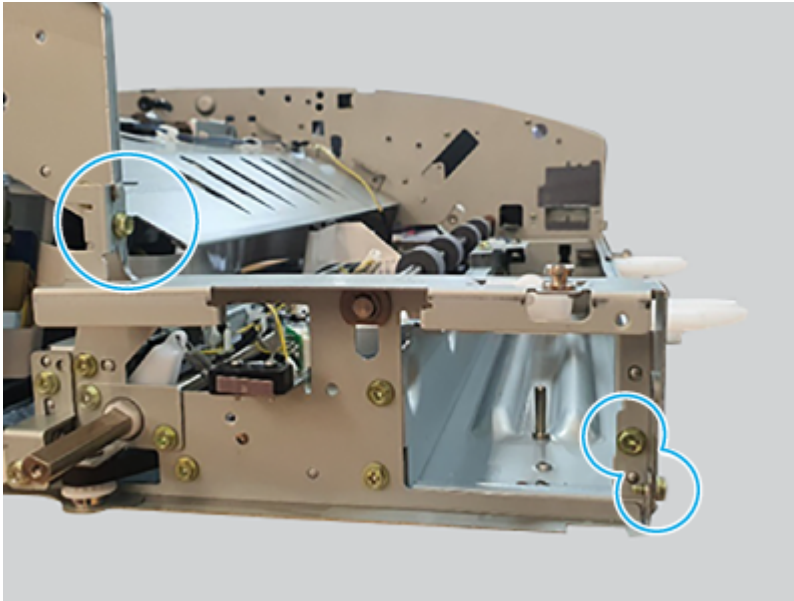


8 Remove the inner finisher bracket support guide and stay

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher bracket support guide and stay.

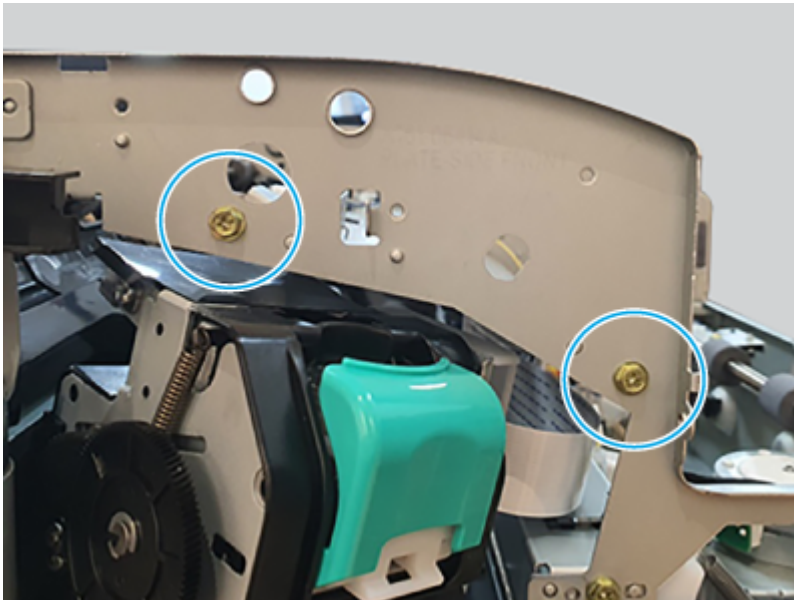
1. Remove three screws, and then remove the bracket support guide.

Figure 6-2961 Remove the guide



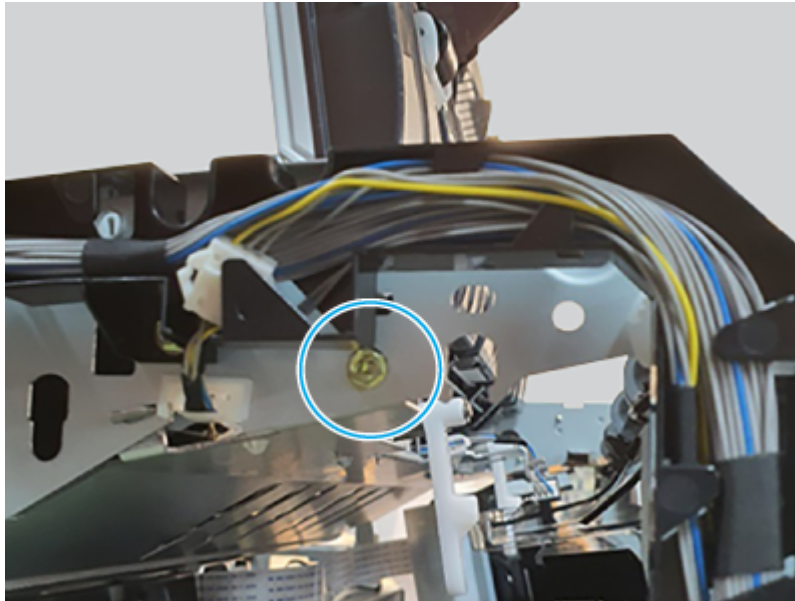
2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-2962 Remove two screws



3. Remove one screw, and then remove the bracket stay.

Figure 6-2963 Remove the stay

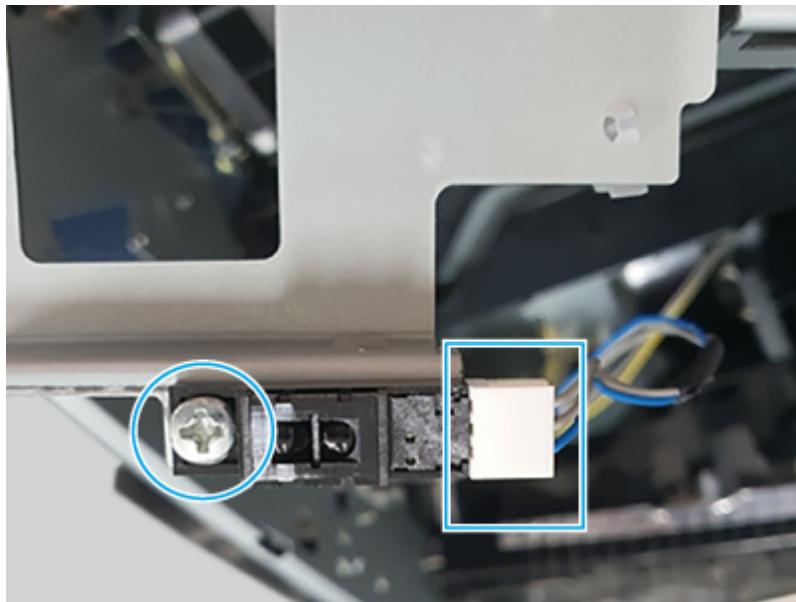


9 Remove the inner finisher end fence sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher end fence sensor.

- Disconnect one connector, remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher end fence sensor.


Figure 6-2964 Remove the sensor



10 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Tamper unit

Review the inner finisher tamper unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Front tamper

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher front tamper.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-357 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC82-00899A	Front tamper

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

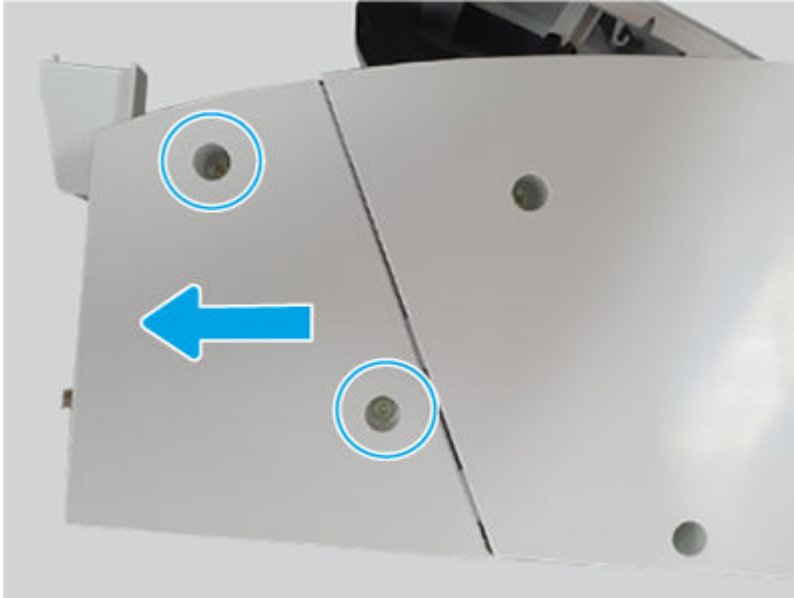
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-2965 Remove the cover



2 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

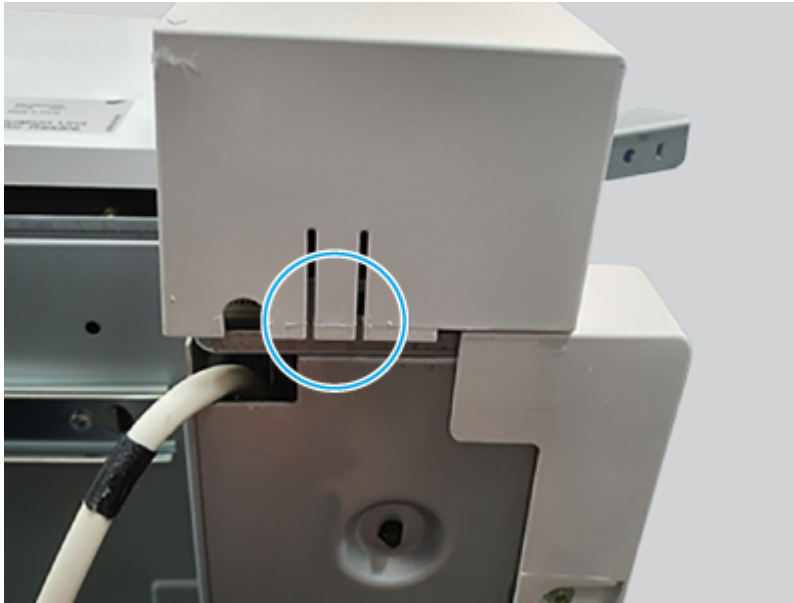
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2966 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-2967 Remove the cover

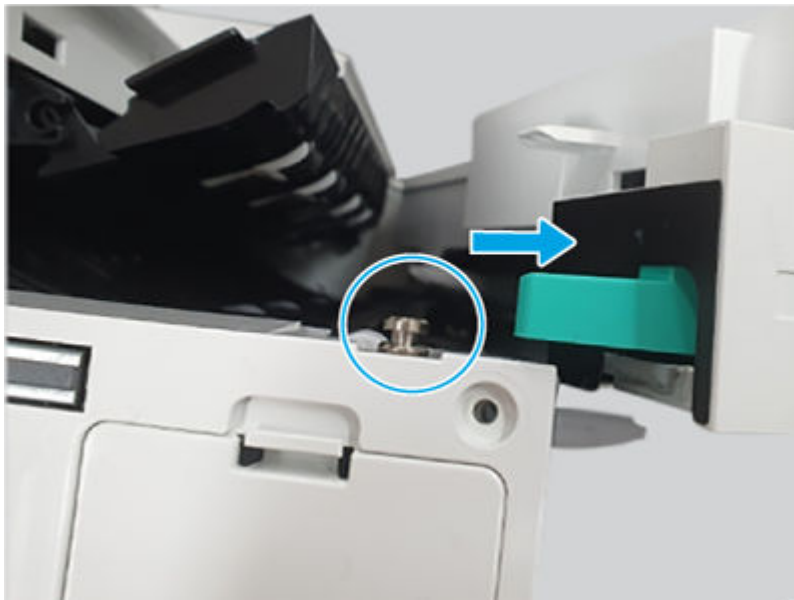


3 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-2968 Open the punch cover



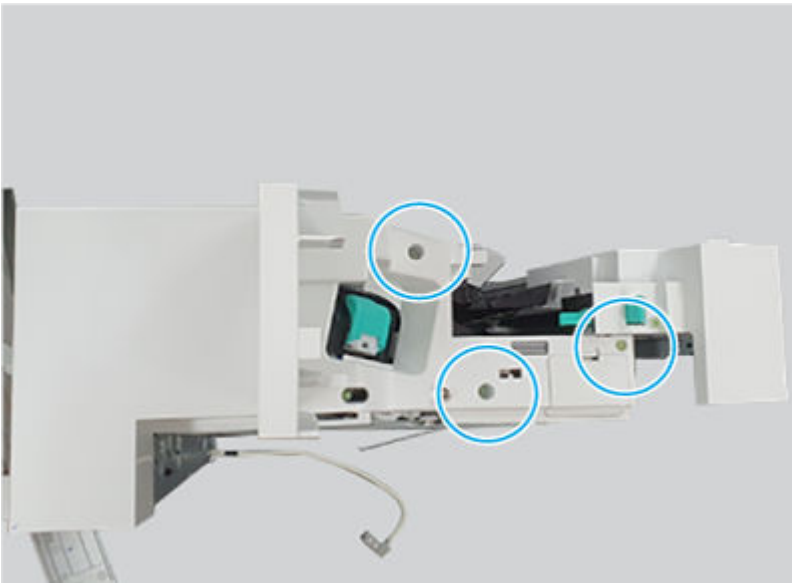
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-2969 Remove the handle



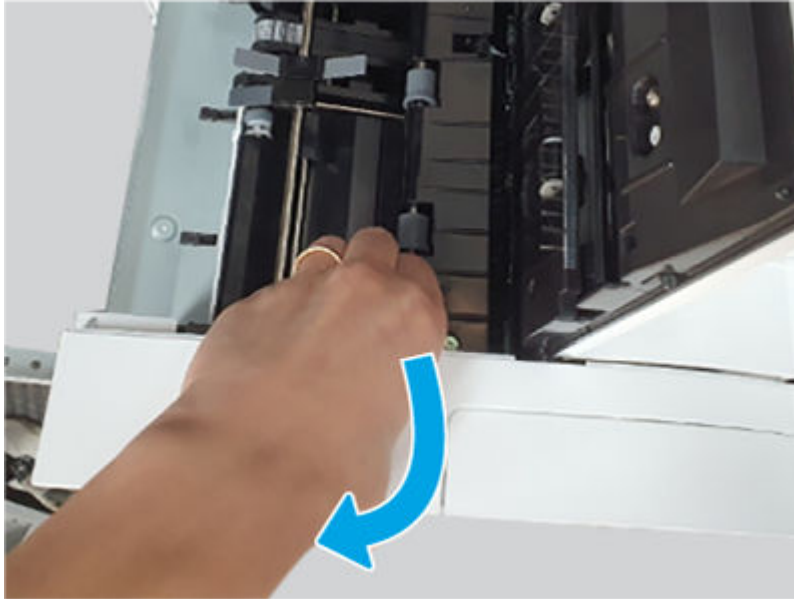
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2970 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-2971 Remove the cover

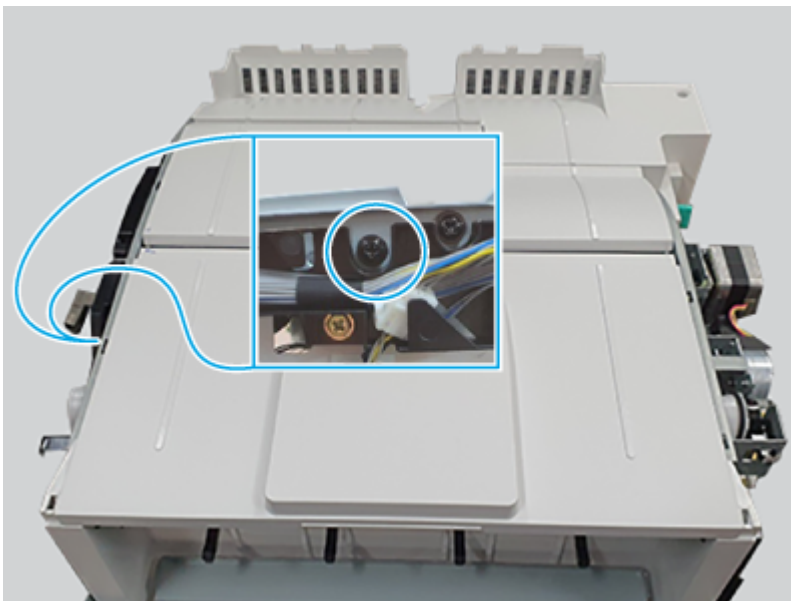


4 Remove the inner finisher top cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher top cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher top cover assembly.

Figure 6-2972 Remove the cover

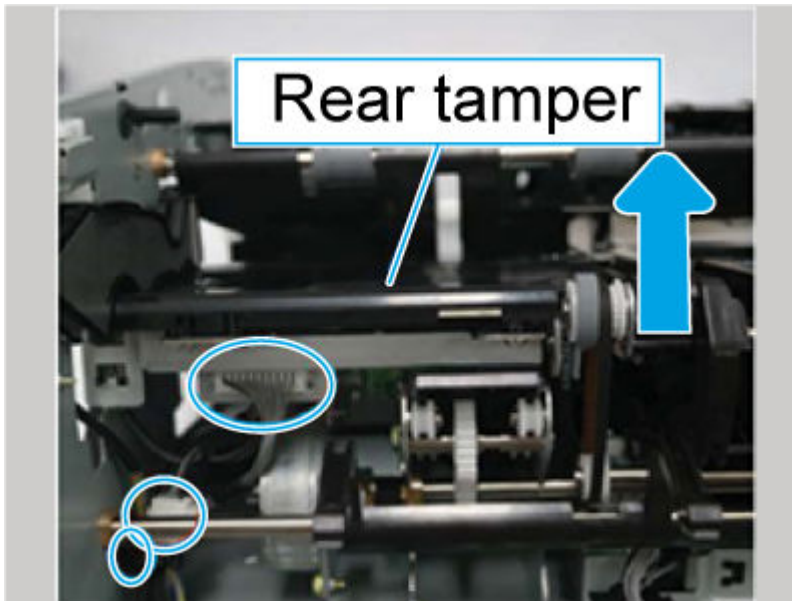


5 Remove the inner finisher front tamper

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front tamper.

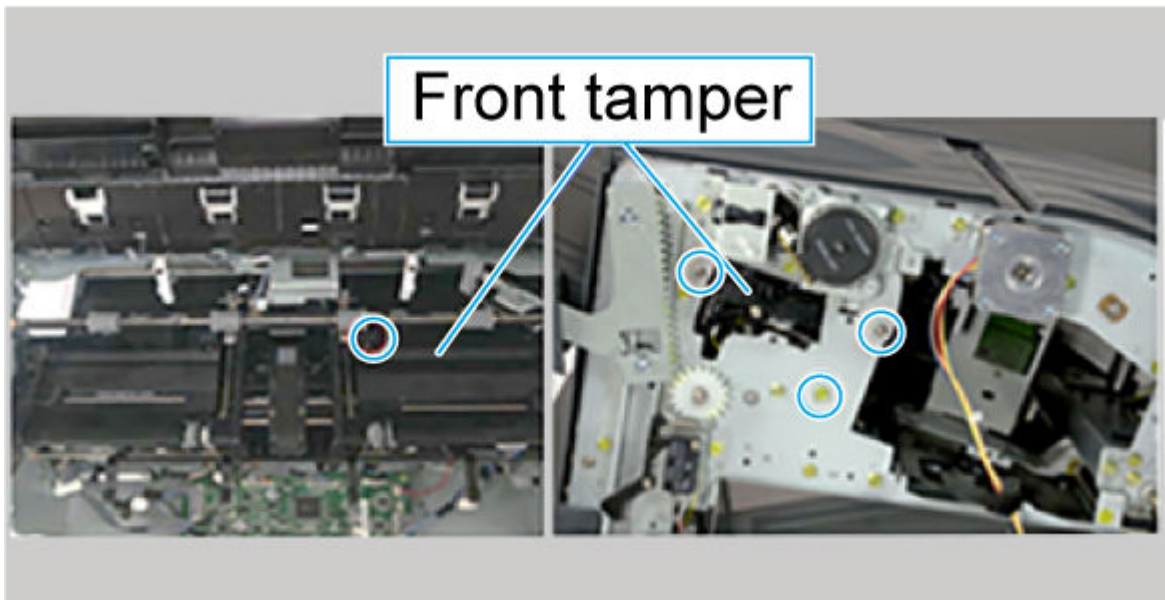
1. Disconnect two connectors, and then release two hooks.

Figure 6-2973 Disconnect connectors and release hooks



2. Remove four screws, and then remove the inner finisher front tamper.


Figure 6-2974 Remove the tamper



6 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Front tamper motor

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher front tamper motor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-358 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01001A	Drive-motor step (Front tamper motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

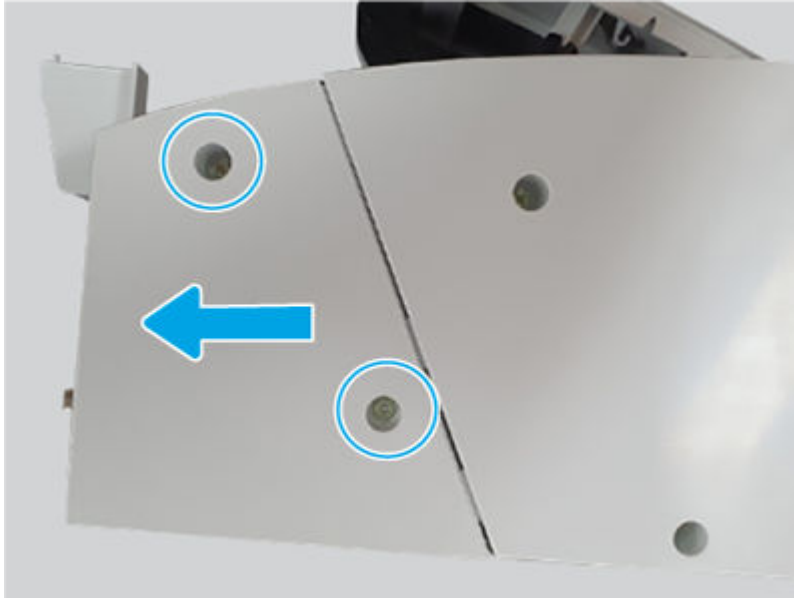
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-2975 Remove the cover



2 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

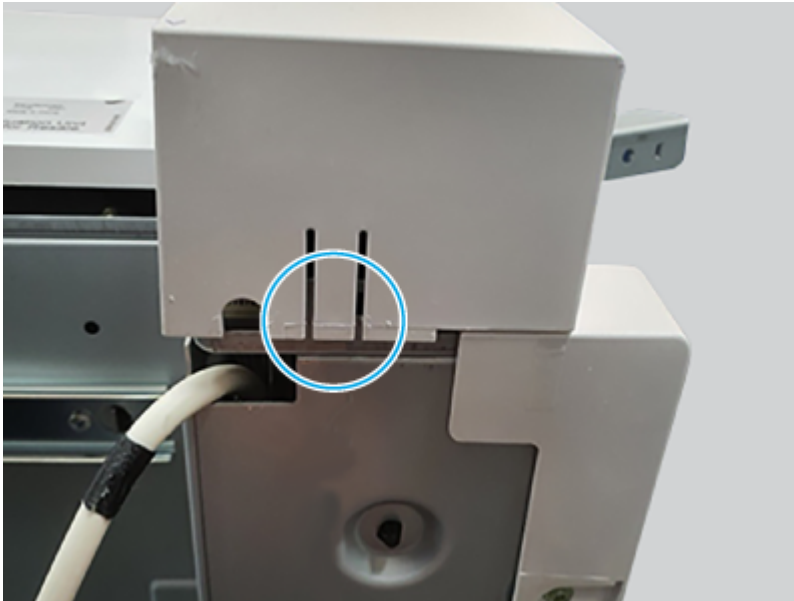
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2976 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-2977 Remove the cover

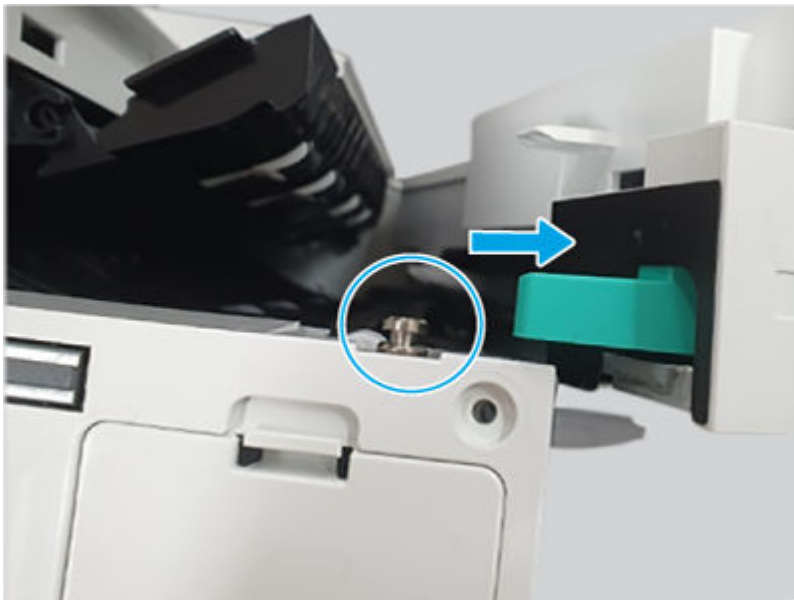


3 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-2978 Open the punch cover



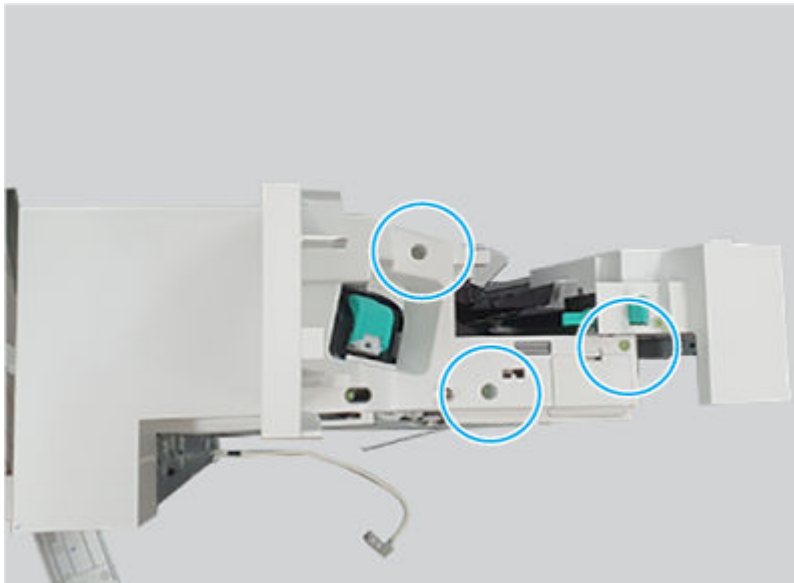
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-2979 Remove the handle



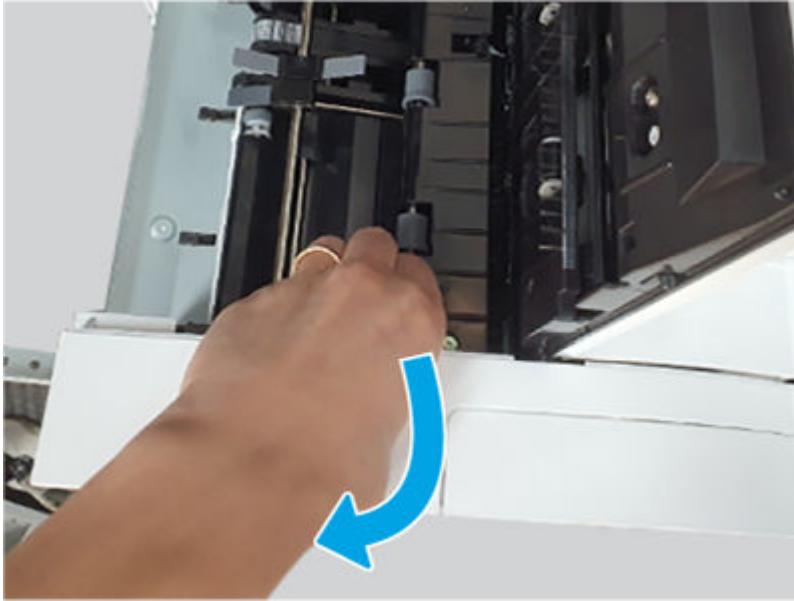
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2980 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-2981 Remove the cover

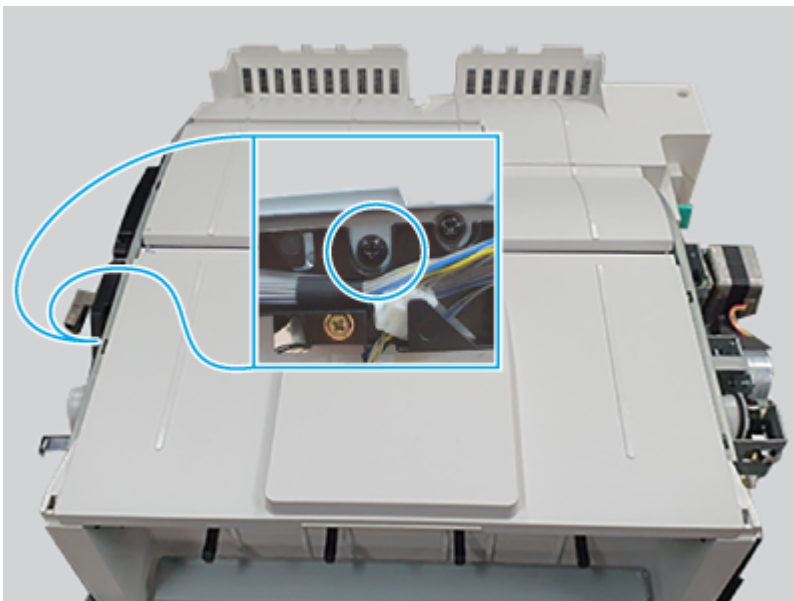


4 Remove the inner finisher top cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher top cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher top cover assembly.

Figure 6-2982 Remove the cover

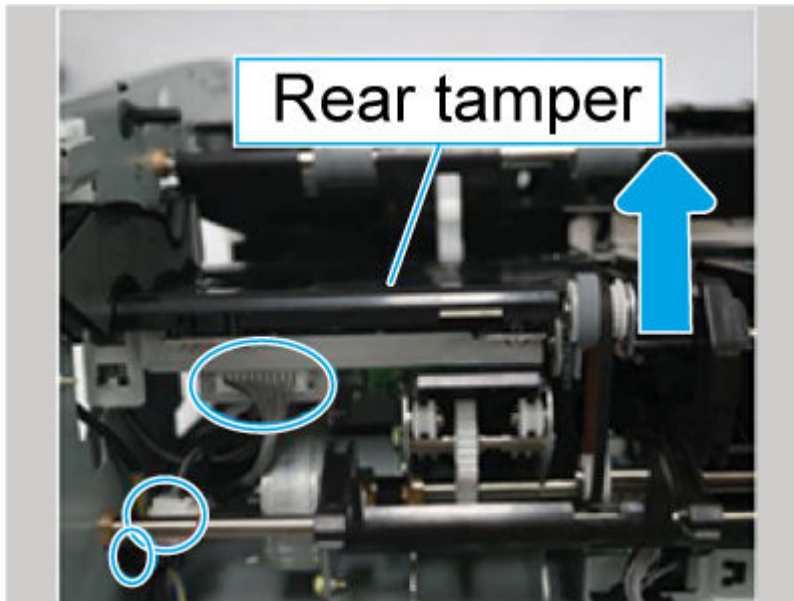


5 Remove the inner finisher front tamper

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front tamper.

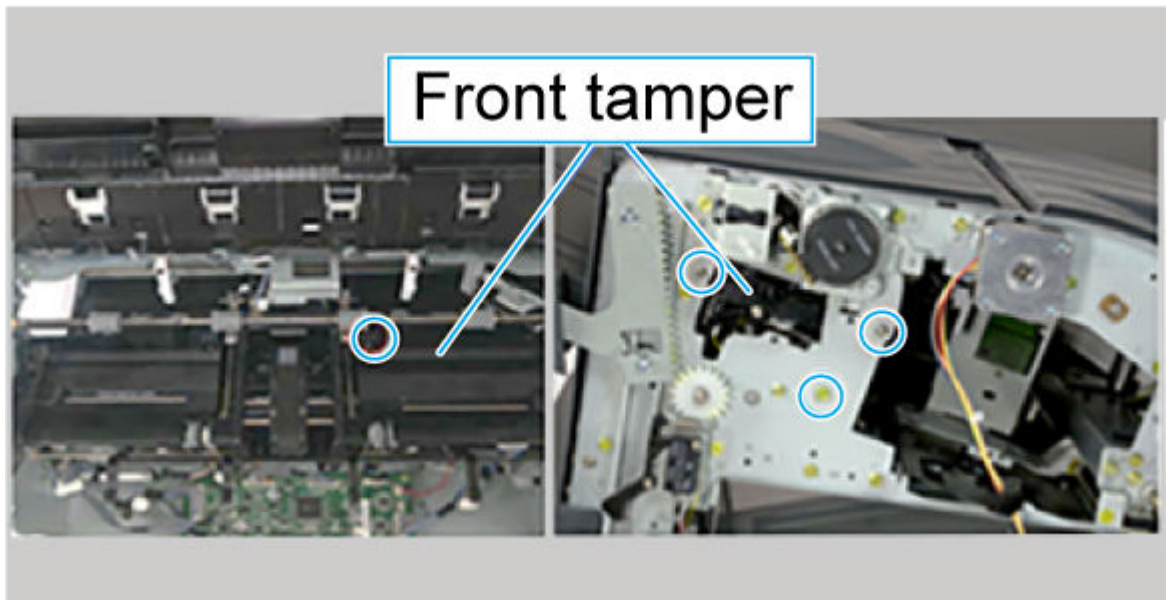
1. Disconnect two connectors, and then release two hooks.

Figure 6-2983 Disconnect connectors and release hooks



2. Remove four screws, and then remove the inner finisher front tamper.

Figure 6-2984 Remove the tamper

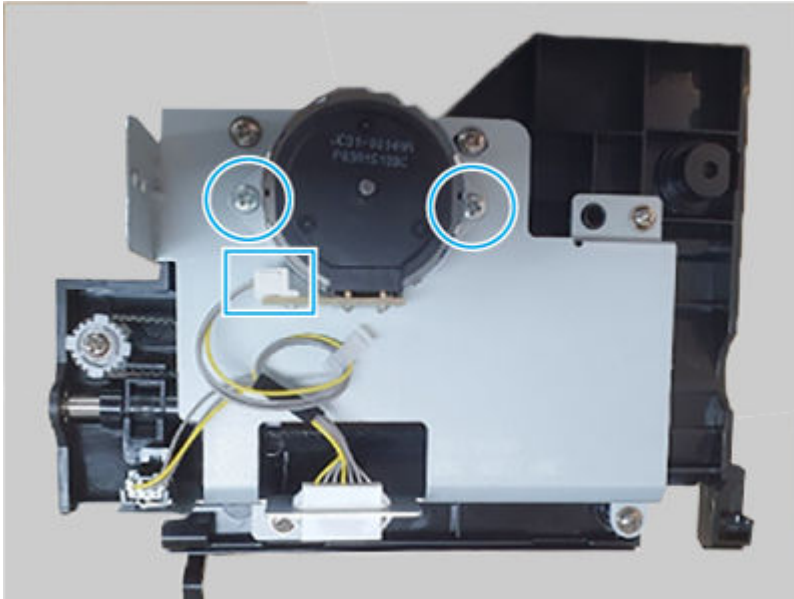


6 Remove the inner finisher front tamper motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front tamper motor.

- Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the inner finisher front tamper motor.


Figure 6-2985 Remove the motor



7 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Front tamper home sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher front tamper home sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-359 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Front tamper home sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

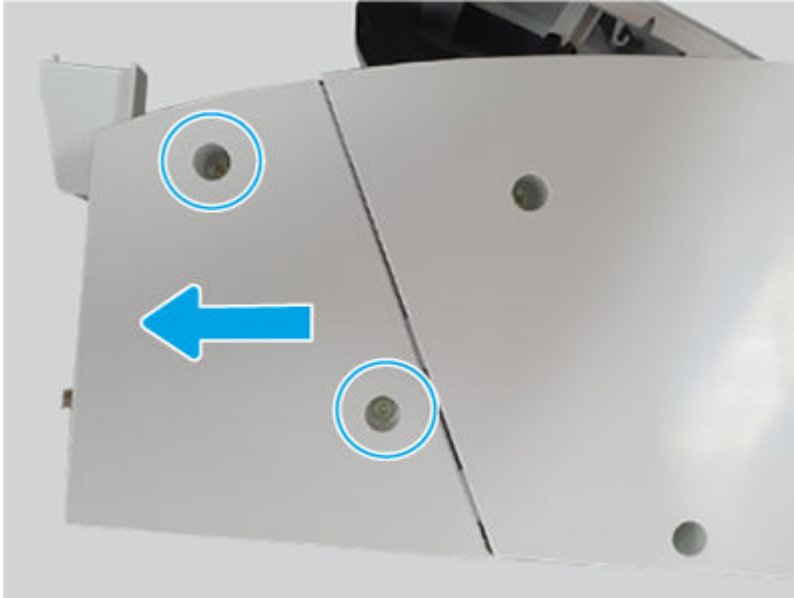
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-2986 Remove the cover



2 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

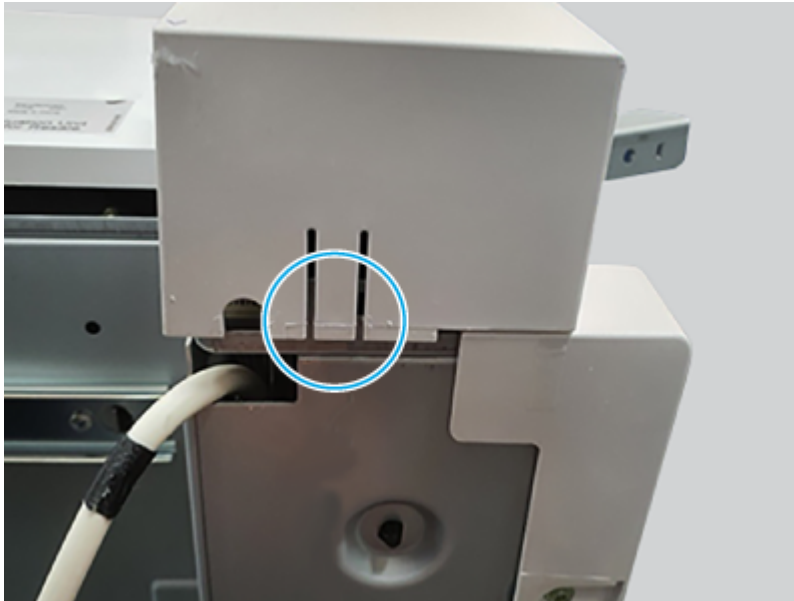
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2987 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-2988 Remove the cover

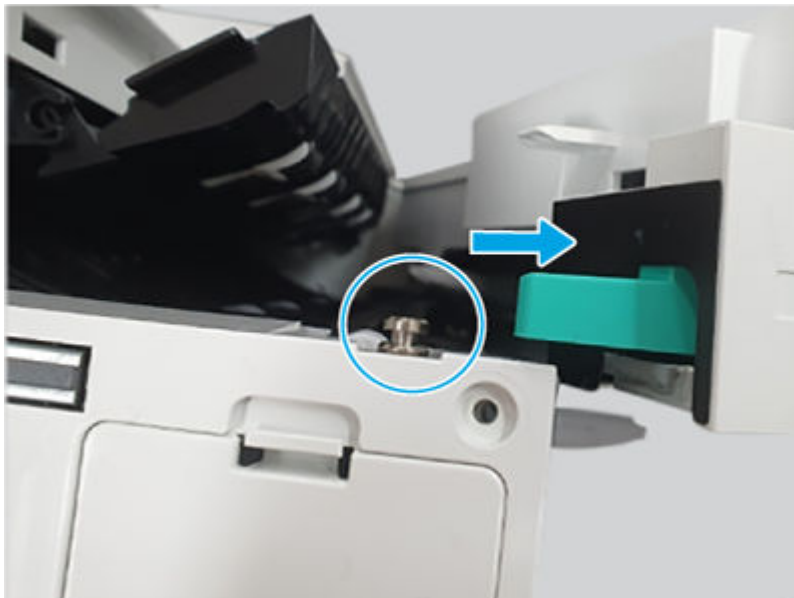


3 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-2989 Open the punch cover



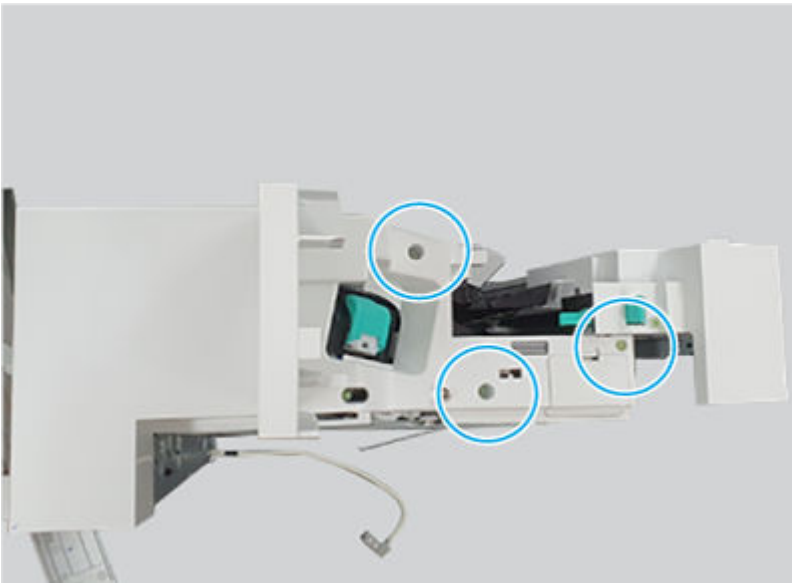
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-2990 Remove the handle



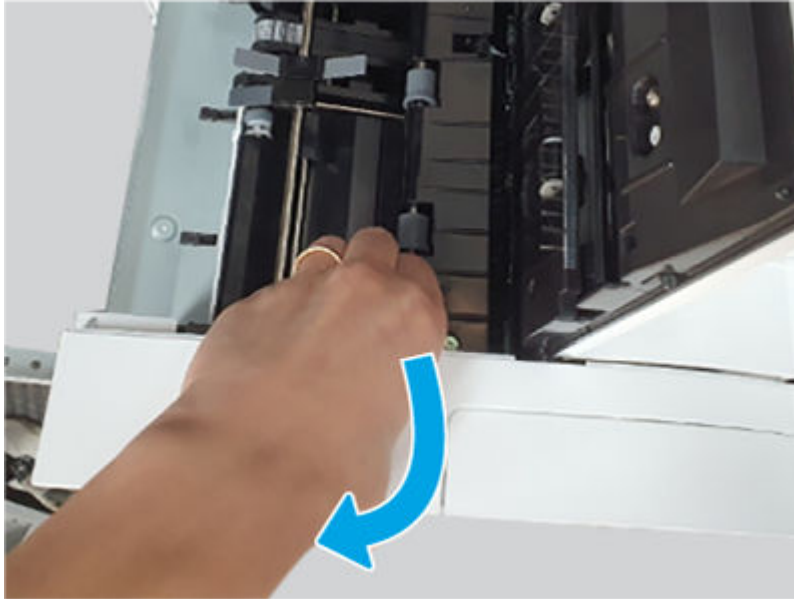
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2991 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-2992 Remove the cover

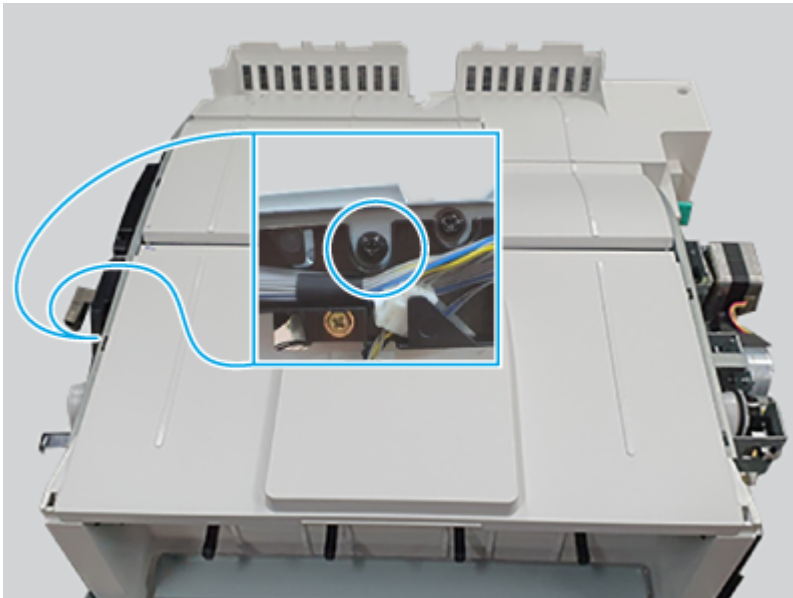


4 Remove the inner finisher top cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher top cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher top cover assembly.

Figure 6-2993 Remove the cover

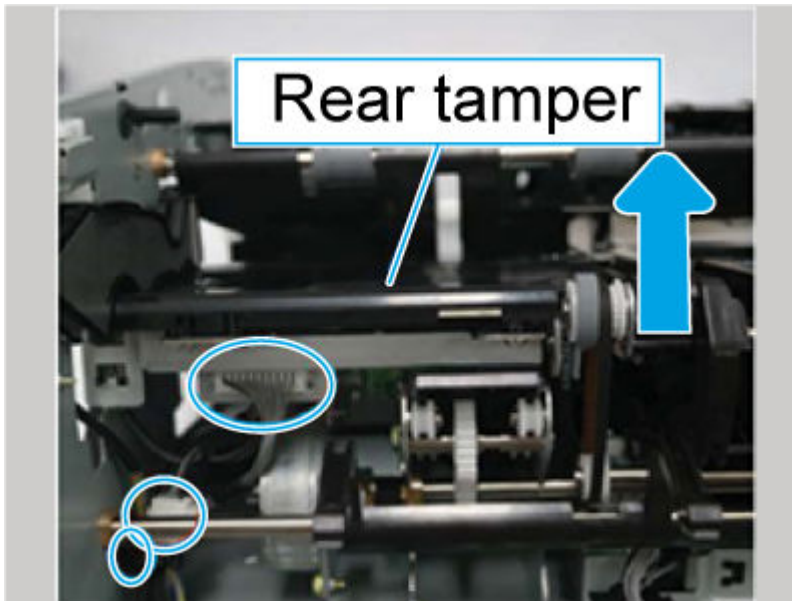


5 Remove the inner finisher front tamper

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front tamper.

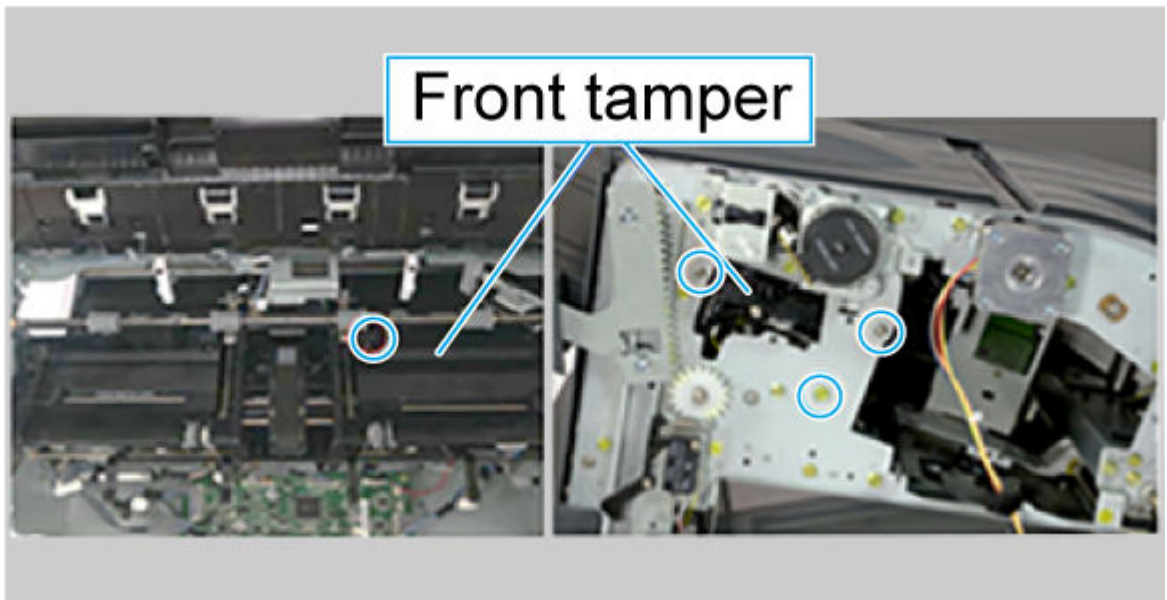
1. Disconnect two connectors, and then release two hooks.

Figure 6-2994 Disconnect connectors and release hooks



2. Remove four screws, and then remove the inner finisher front tamper.

Figure 6-2995 Remove the tamper

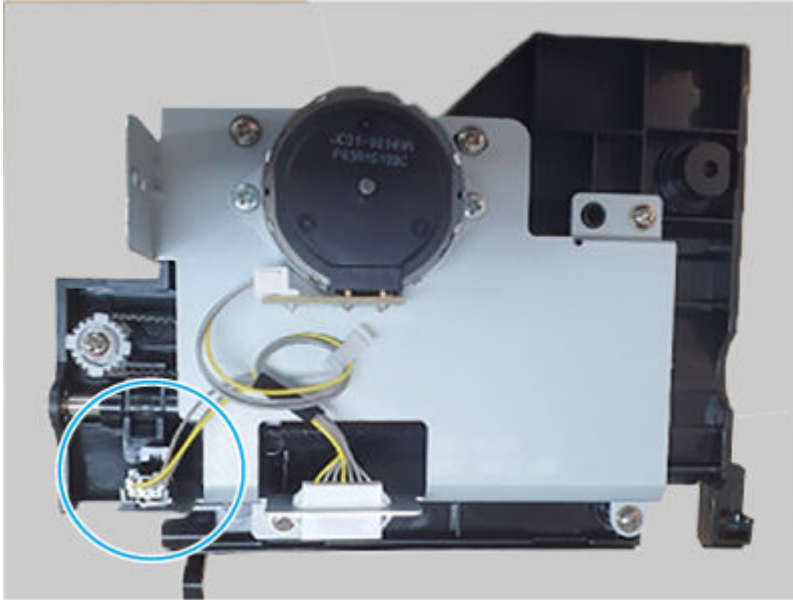


6 Remove the inner finisher front tamper home sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front tamper home sensor.

- Disconnect one connector, and then remove the inner finisher front tamper home sensor.


Figure 6-2996 Remove the sensor



7 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Rear tamper

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher rear tamper.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-360 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC82-00900A	Rear tamper

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

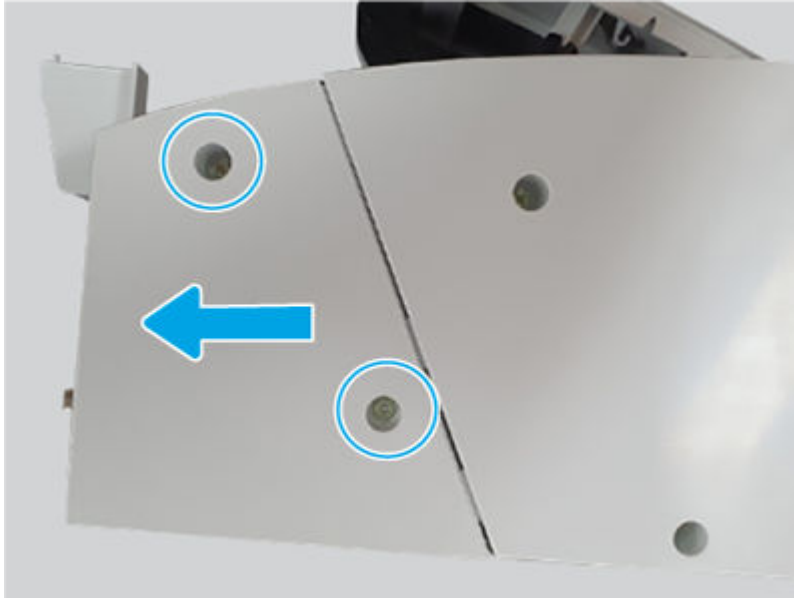
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-2997 Remove the cover



2 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

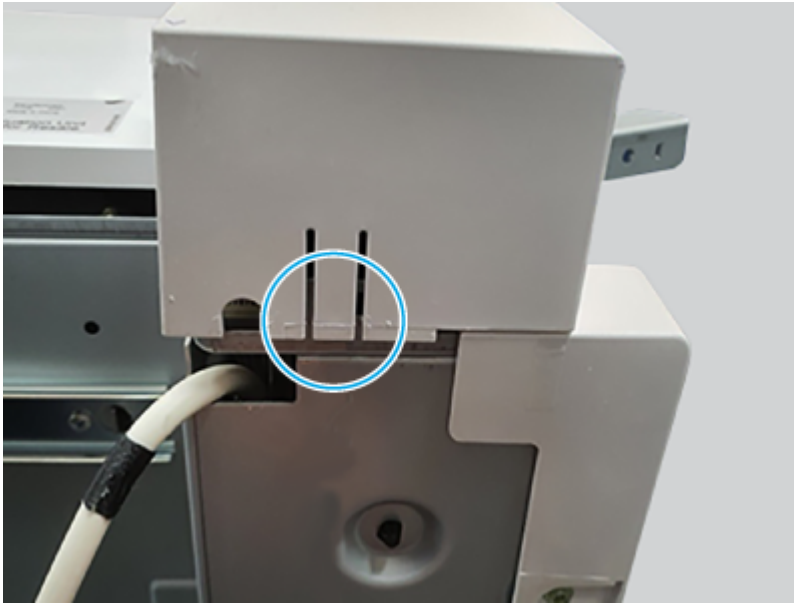
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-2998 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-2999 Remove the cover

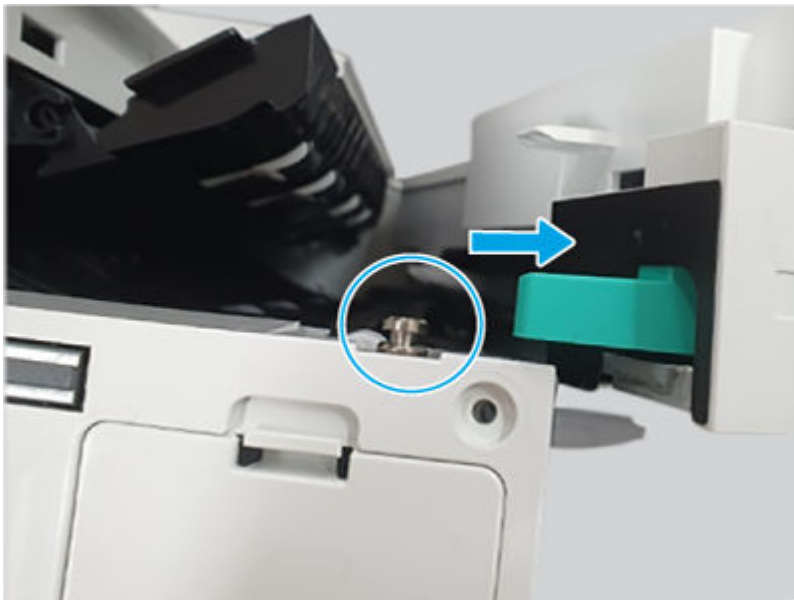


3 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3000 Open the punch cover



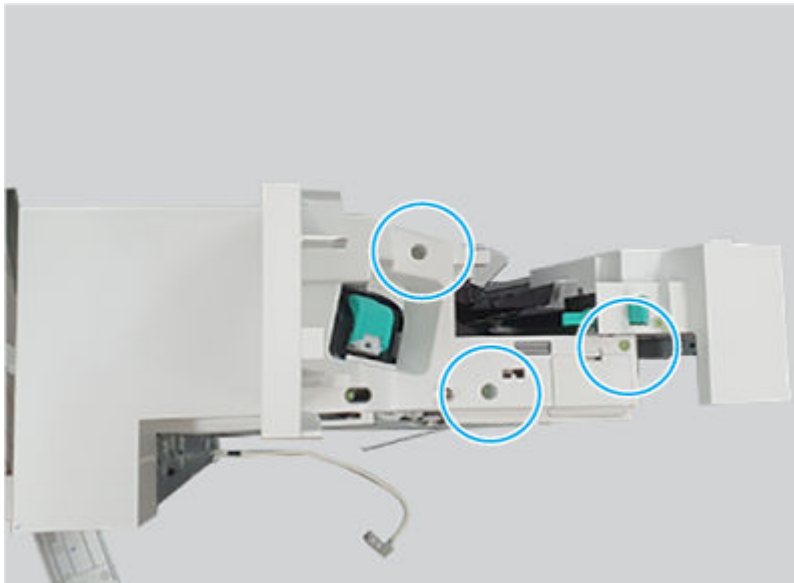
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3001 Remove the handle



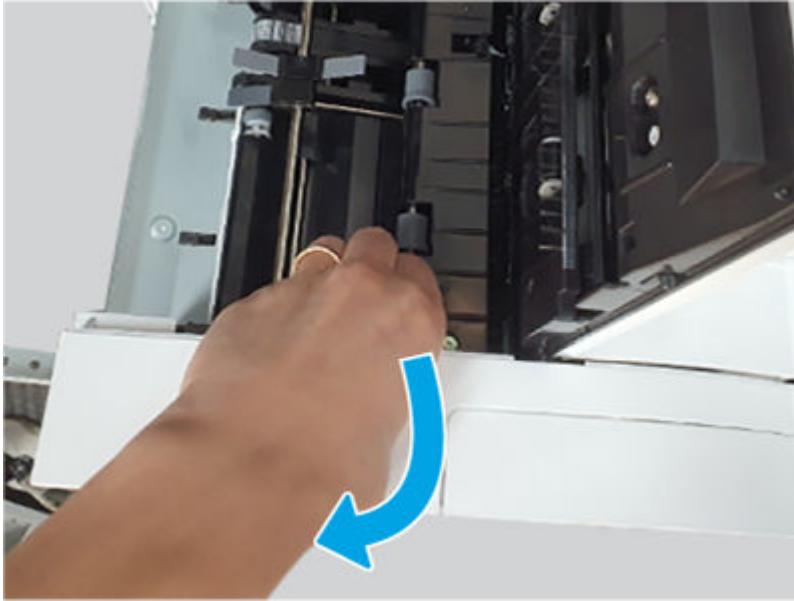
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3002 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3003 Remove the cover

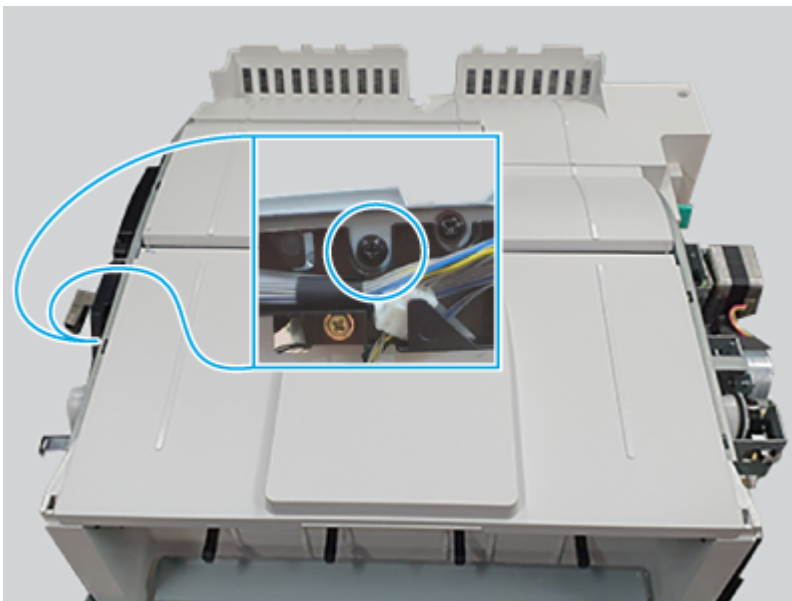


4 Remove the inner finisher top cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher top cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher top cover assembly.

Figure 6-3004 Remove the cover

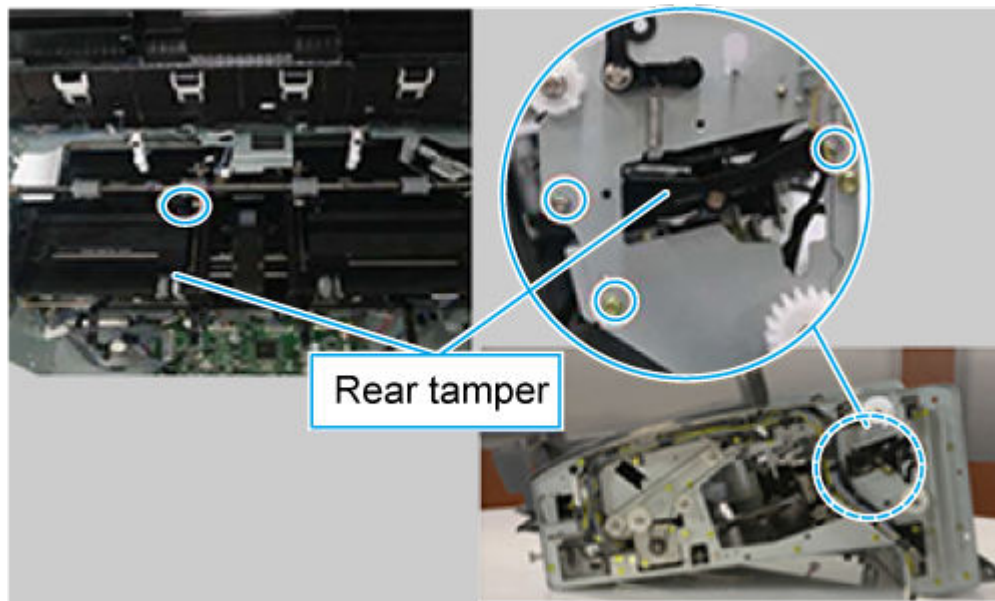


5 Remove the inner finisher rear tamper

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear tamper.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the inner finisher rear tamper.

Figure 6-3005 Remove the tamper



6 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Rear tamper motor

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher rear tamper motor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-361 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-01001A	Drive-motor step (Rear tamper motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

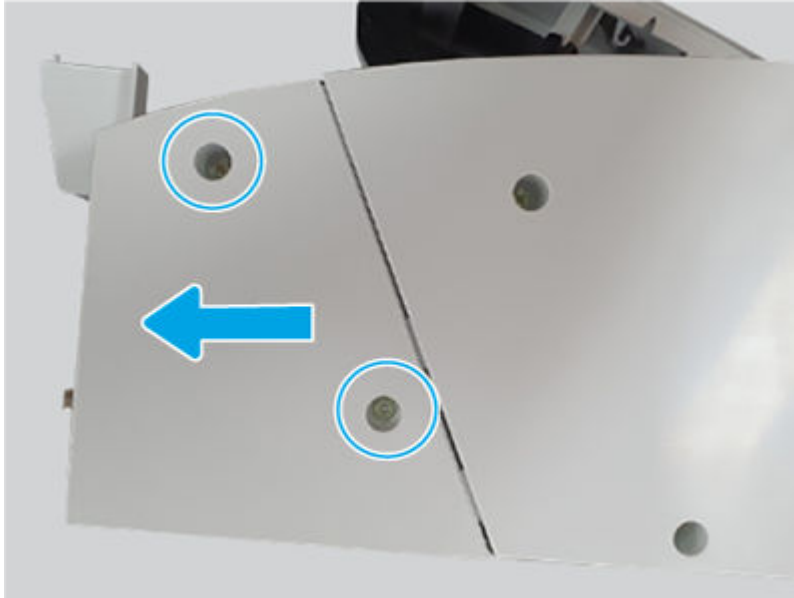
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3006 Remove the cover



2 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

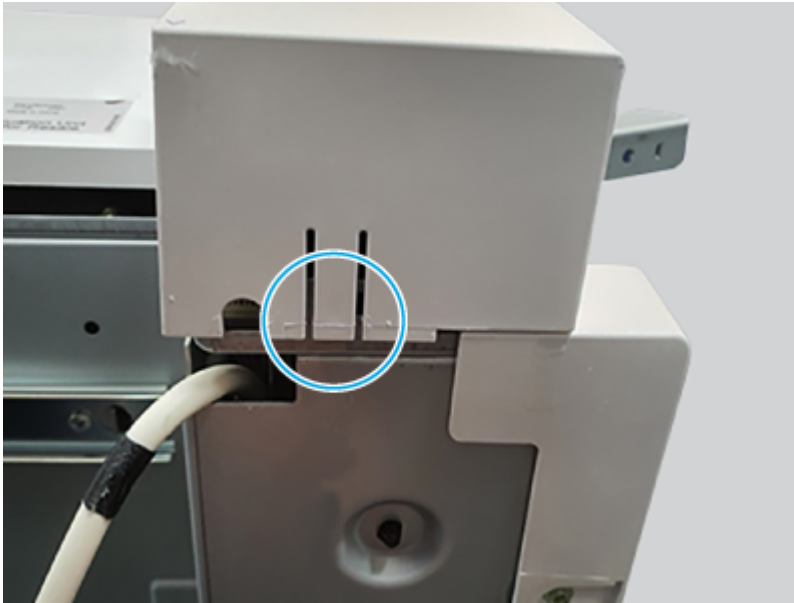
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3007 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3008 Remove the cover

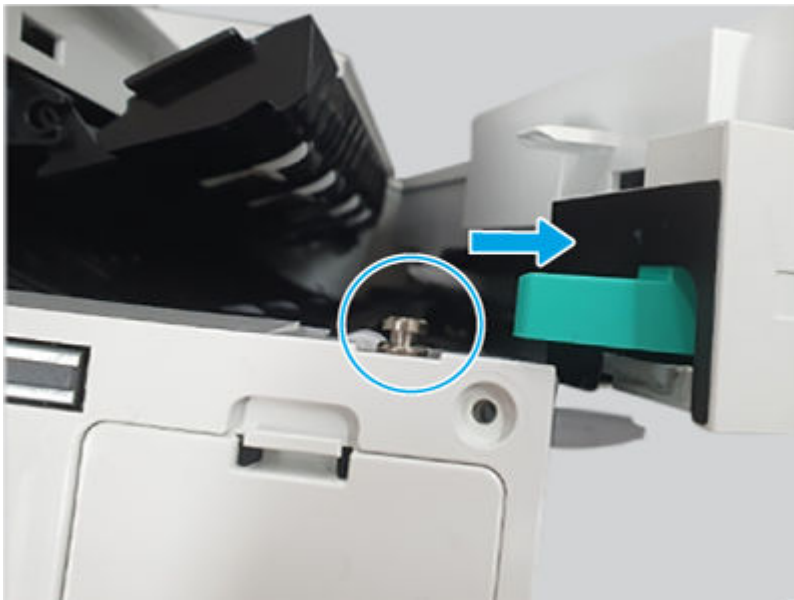


3 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3009 Open the punch cover



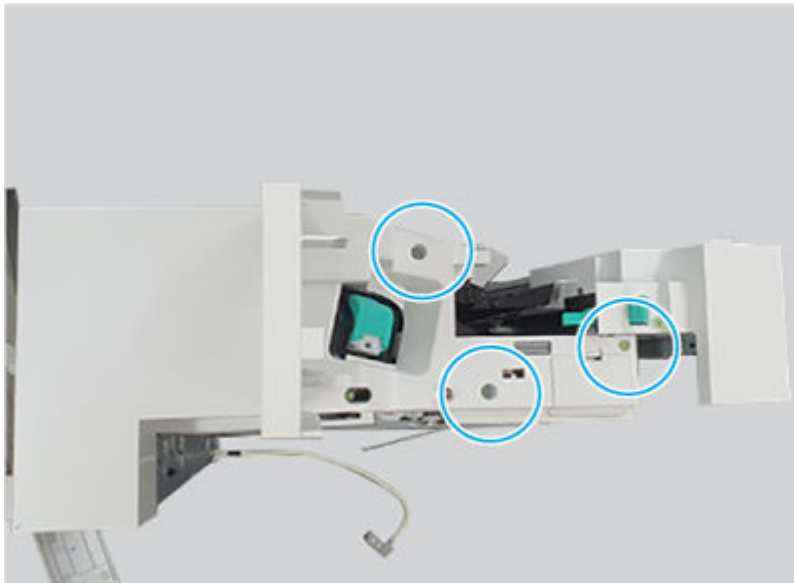
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3010 Remove the handle



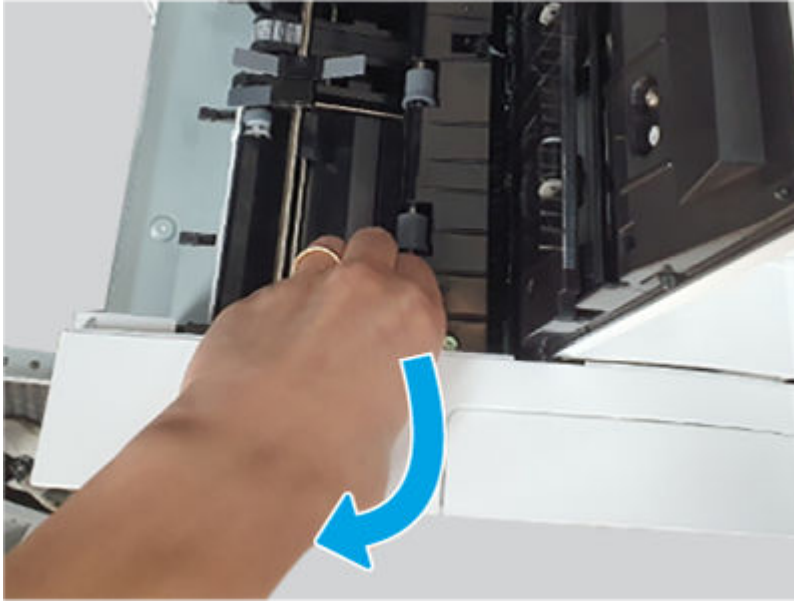
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3011 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3012 Remove the cover

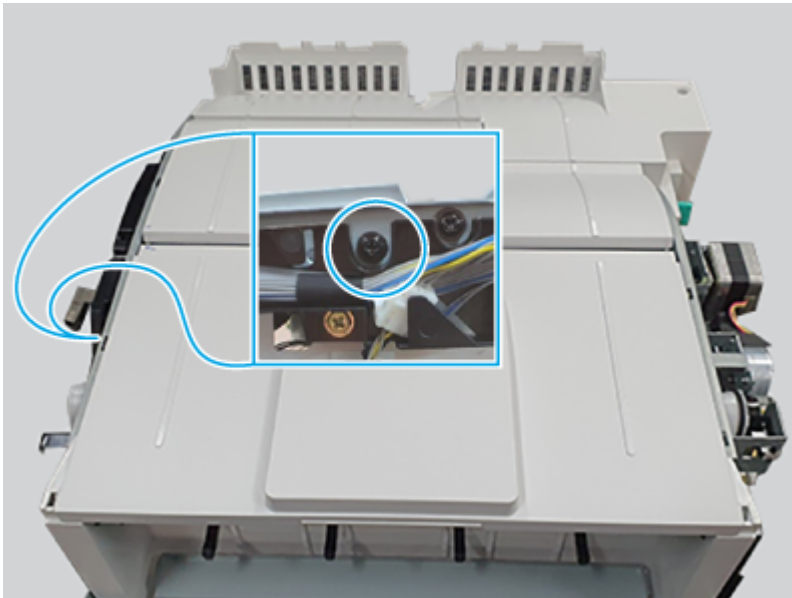


4 Remove the inner finisher top cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher top cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher top cover assembly.

Figure 6-3013 Remove the cover

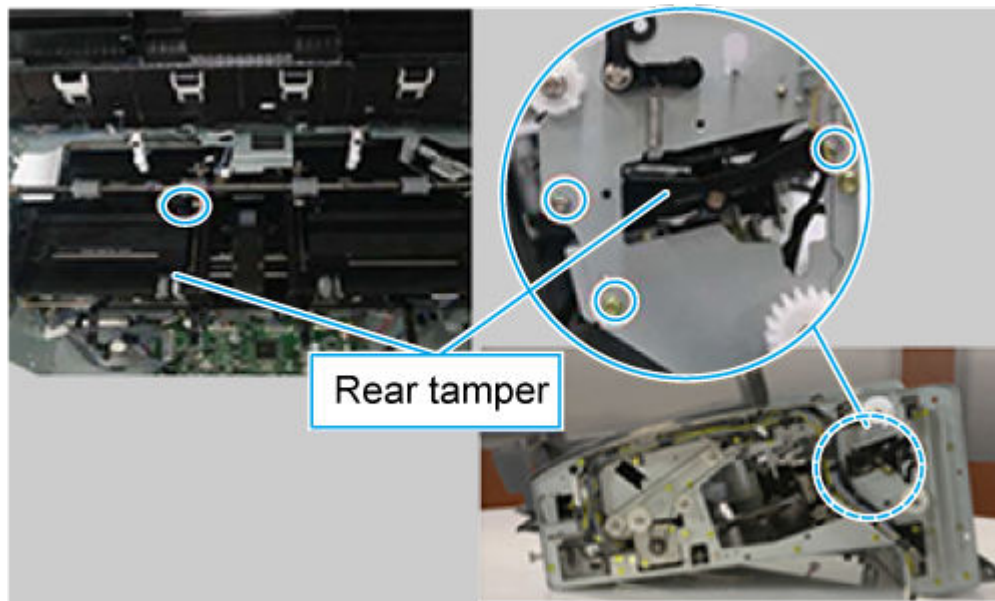


5 Remove the inner finisher rear tamper

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear tamper.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the inner finisher rear tamper.

Figure 6-3014 Remove the tamper

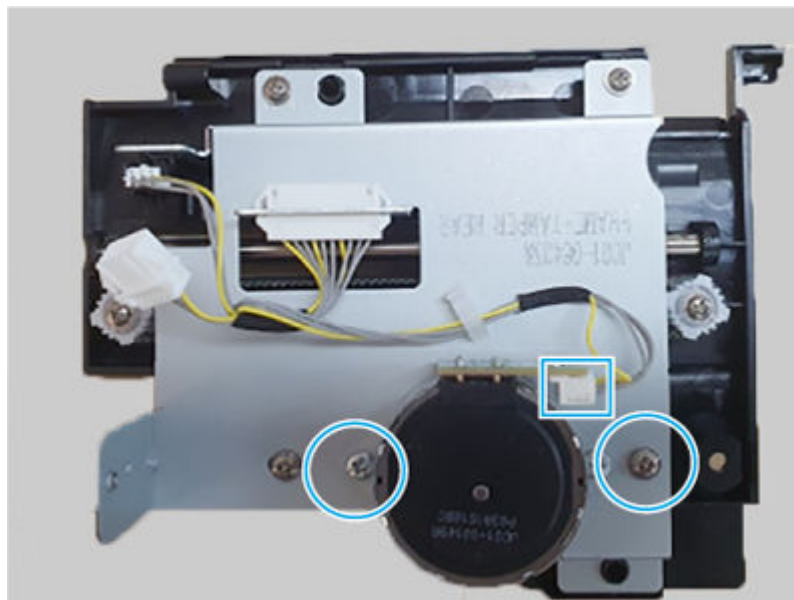


6 Remove the inner finisher rear tamper motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear tamper motor.

- Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the inner finisher rear tamper motor.


Figure 6-3015 Remove the motor



7 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Rear tamper home sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher rear tamper home sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-362 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Rear tamper home sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

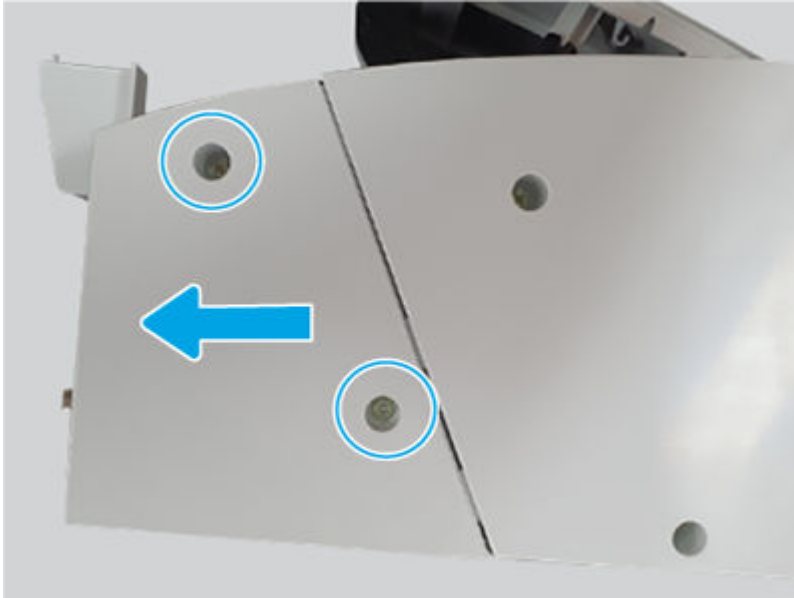
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3016 Remove the cover



2 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

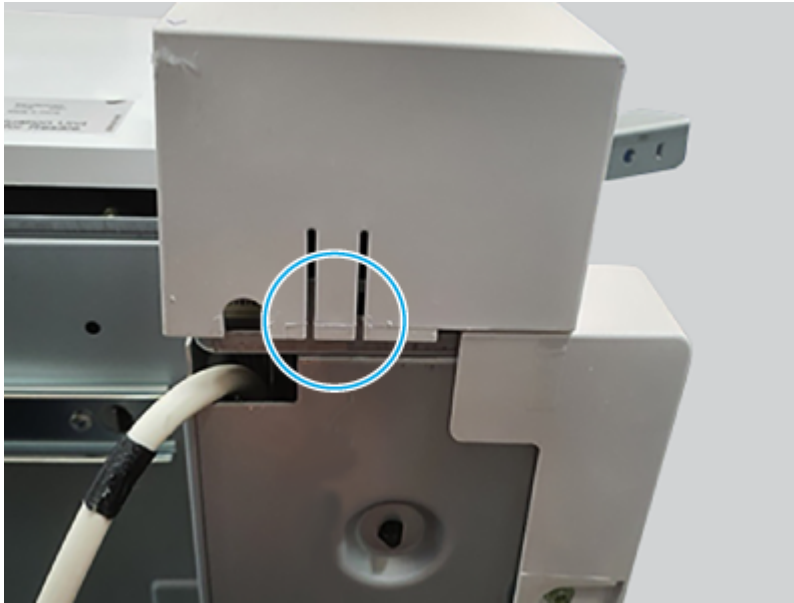
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3017 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3018 Remove the cover

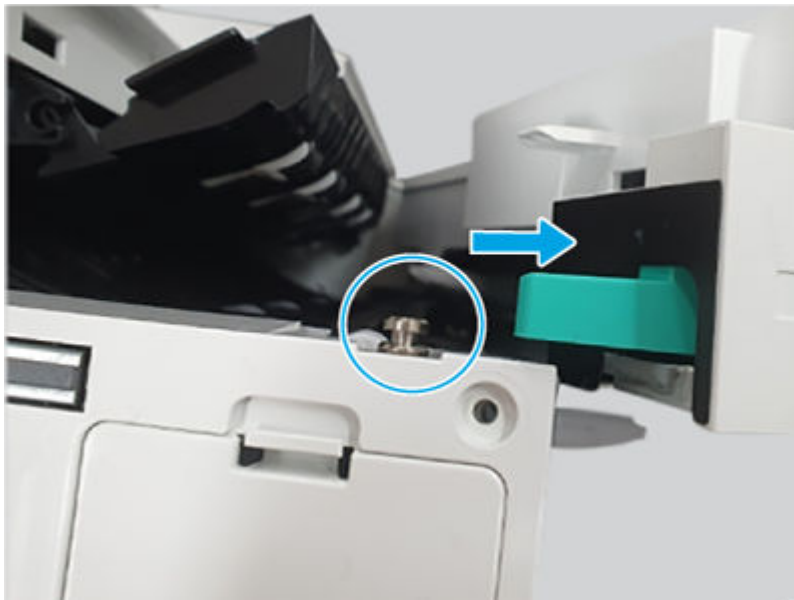


3 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3019 Open the punch cover



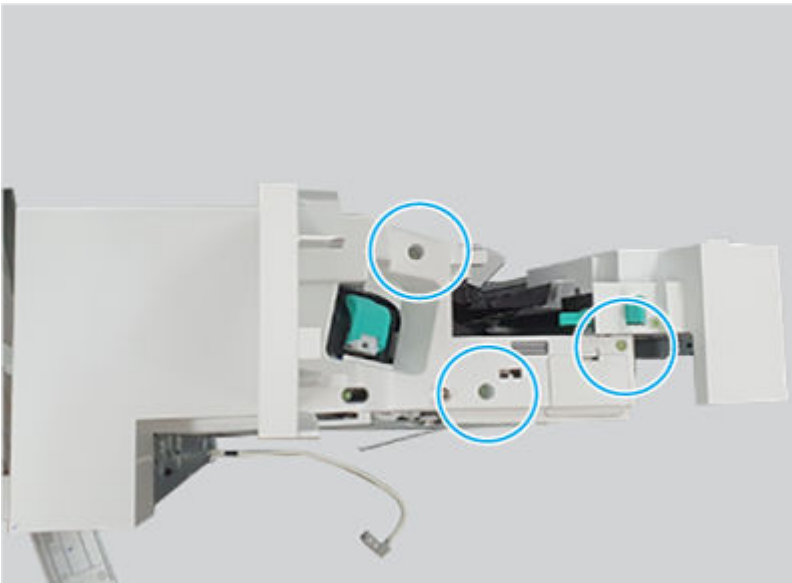
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3020 Remove the handle



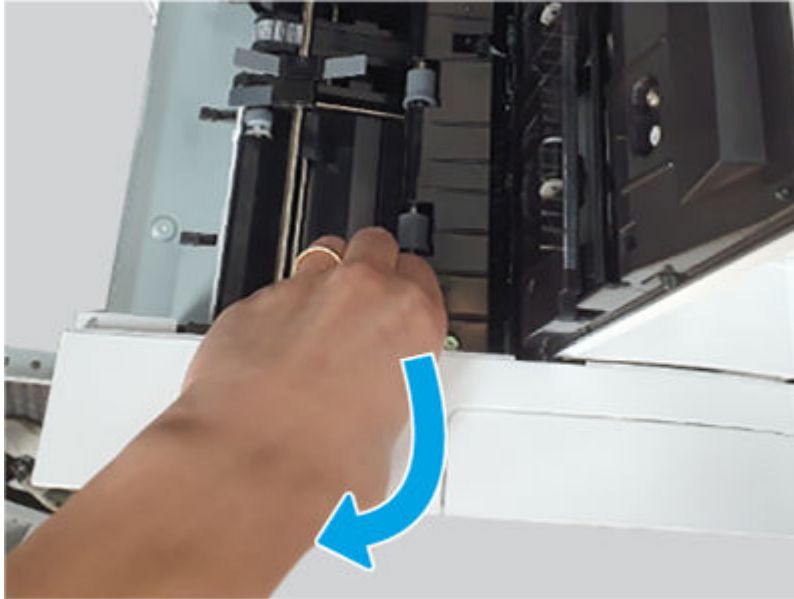
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3021 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3022 Remove the cover

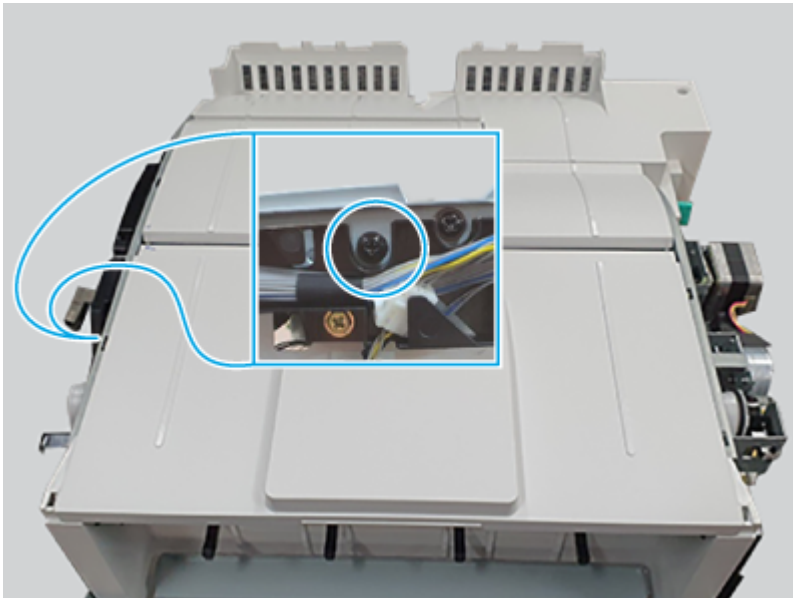


4 Remove the inner finisher top cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher top cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher top cover assembly.

Figure 6-3023 Remove the cover

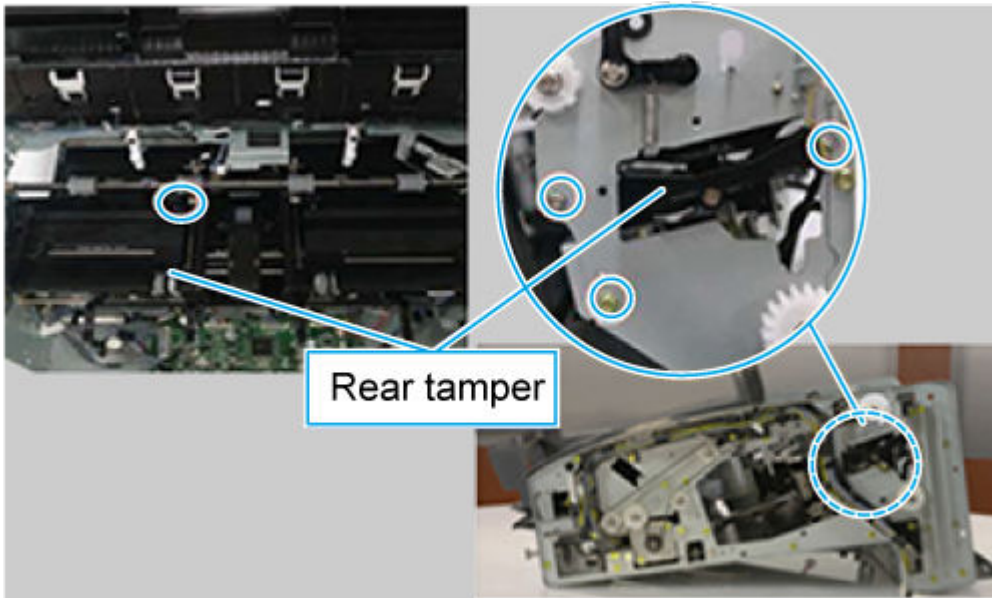


5 Remove the inner finisher rear tamper

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear tamper.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the inner finisher rear tamper.

Figure 6-3024 Remove the tamper

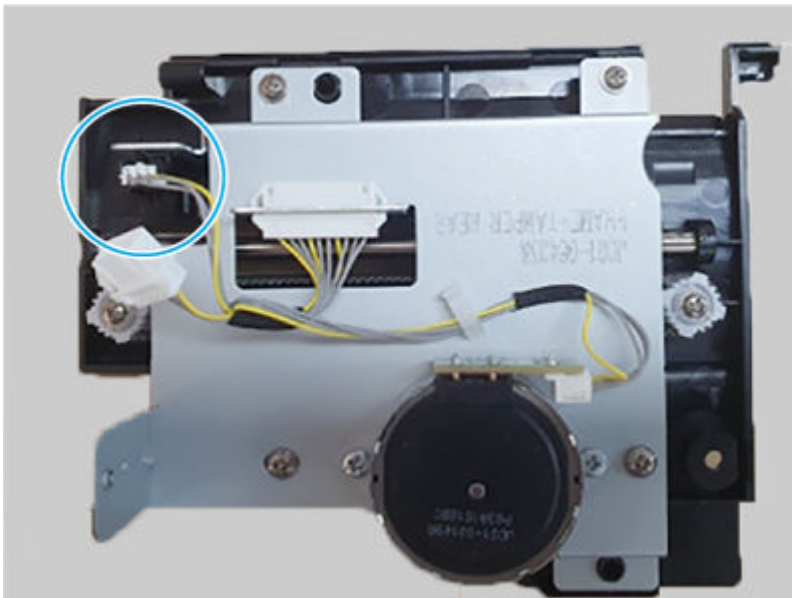


6 Remove the inner finisher rear tamper home sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear tamper home sensor.

- Disconnect one connector, and then remove the inner finisher rear tamper home sensor.

Figure 6-3025 Remove the sensor



7 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Stapler unit

Review the inner finisher stapler unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Stapler assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher stapler assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-363 Part information

Part number	Part description
6GW49-60003	Stapler assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

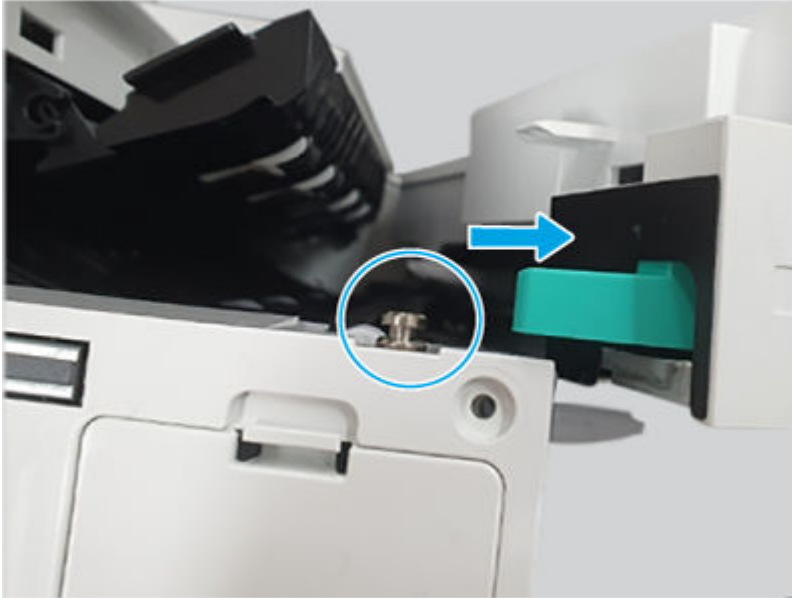
1 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3026 Open the punch cover



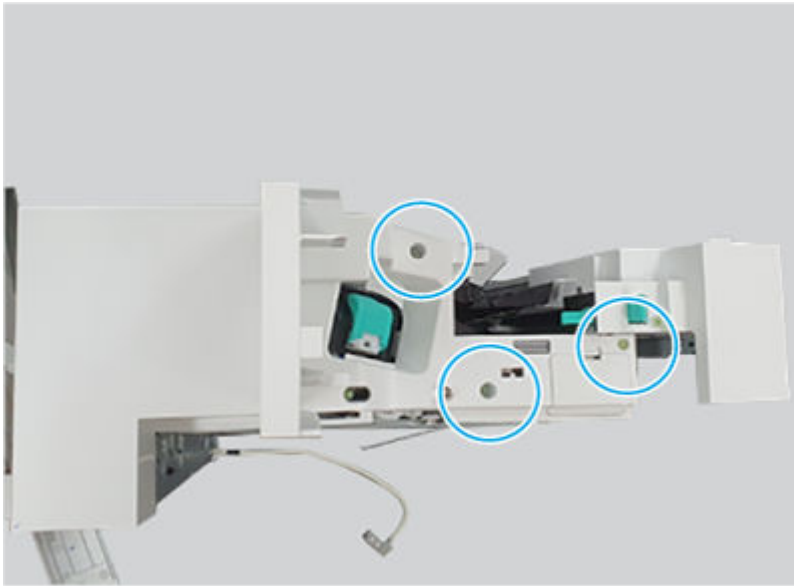
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3027 Remove the handle



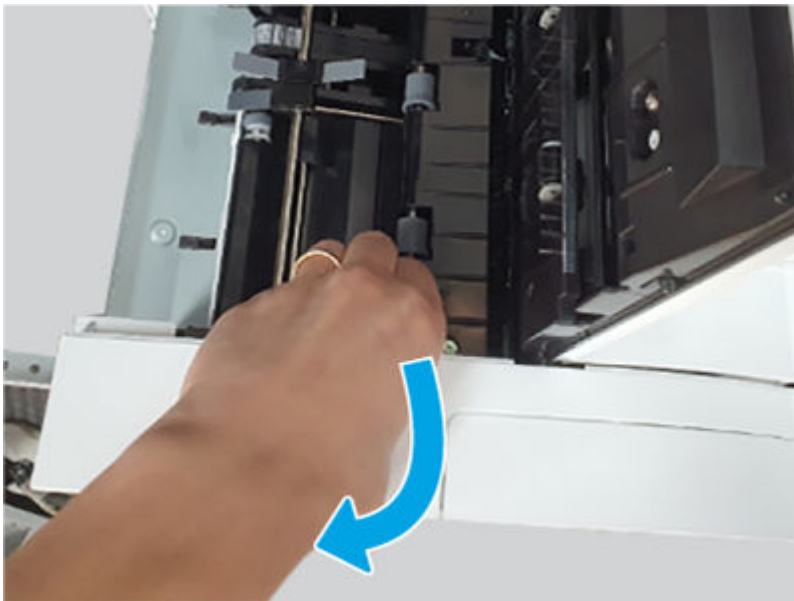
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3028 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3029 Remove the cover

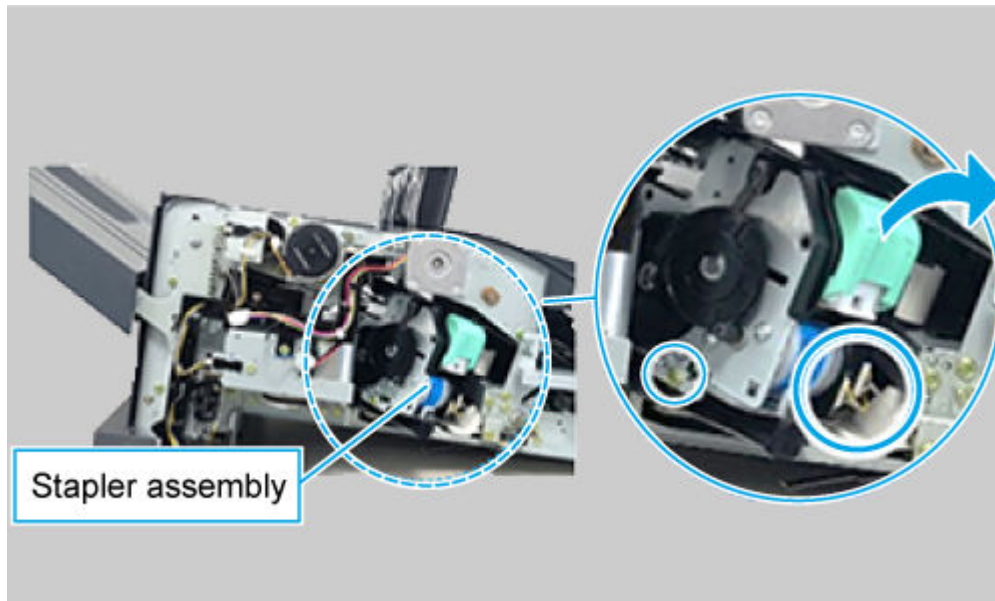


2 Remove the inner finisher stapler assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher stapler assembly.

- Disconnect two connectors, remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher stapler assembly.


Figure 6-3030 Remove the assembly



3 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Staple cartridge

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher staple cartridge.

Mean time to repair: 2 minutes

Service level: Easy

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-364 Part information

Part number	Part description
6GW49-40001	Staple cartridge

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

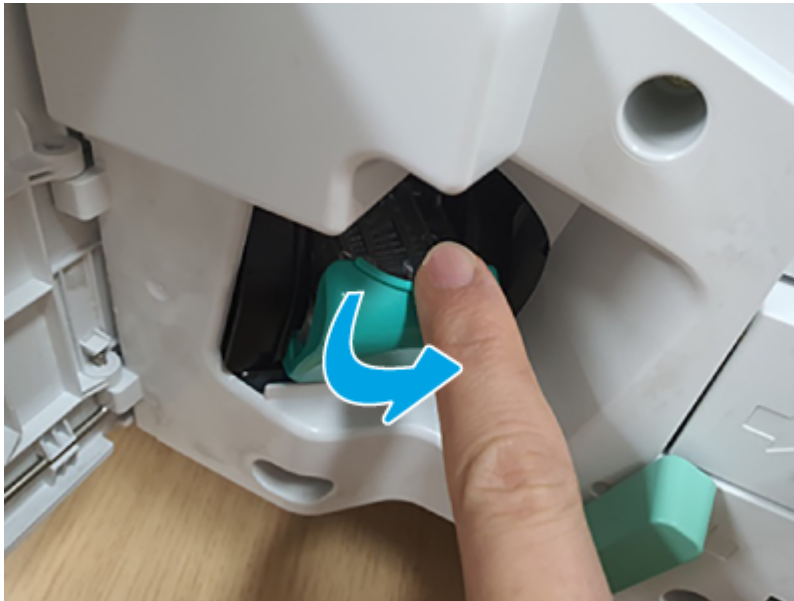
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher staple cartridge

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher staple cartridge.

- Open the front cover, and then pull the inner finisher staple cartridge out to remove it.

Figure 6-3031 Remove the cartridge



2 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Stapler position sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher stapler position sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-365 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Stapler position sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

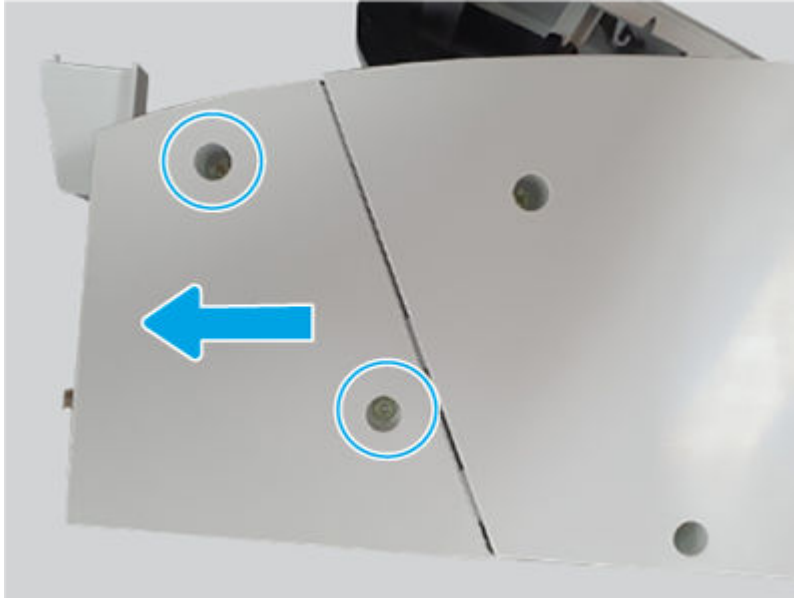
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3032 Remove the cover

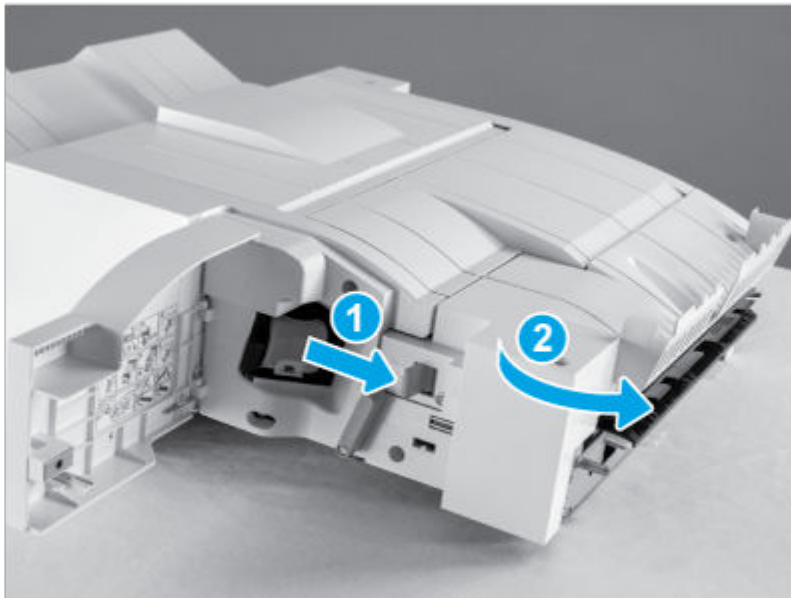


2 Remove the inner finisher punch cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher punch cover assembly.

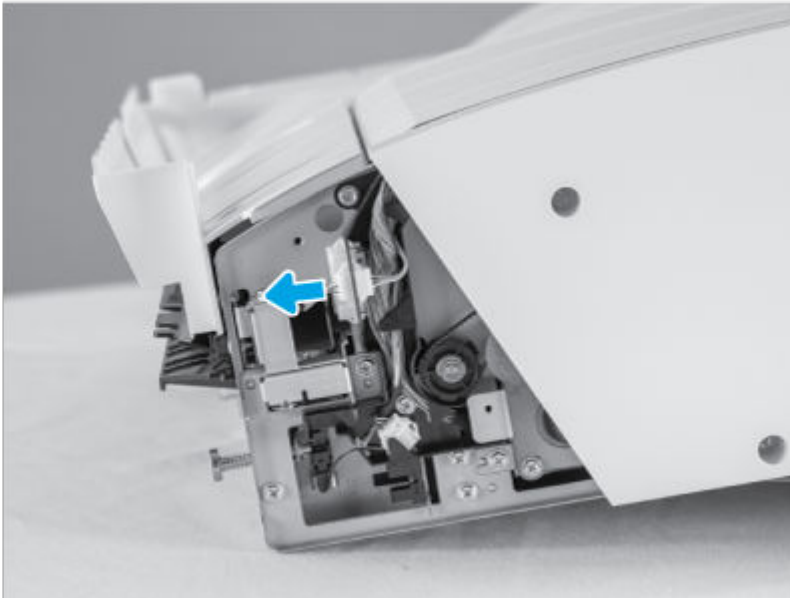
1. Release the lever (callout 1), and then rotate the punch away from the inner finisher (callout 2).

Figure 6-3033 Rotate the punch



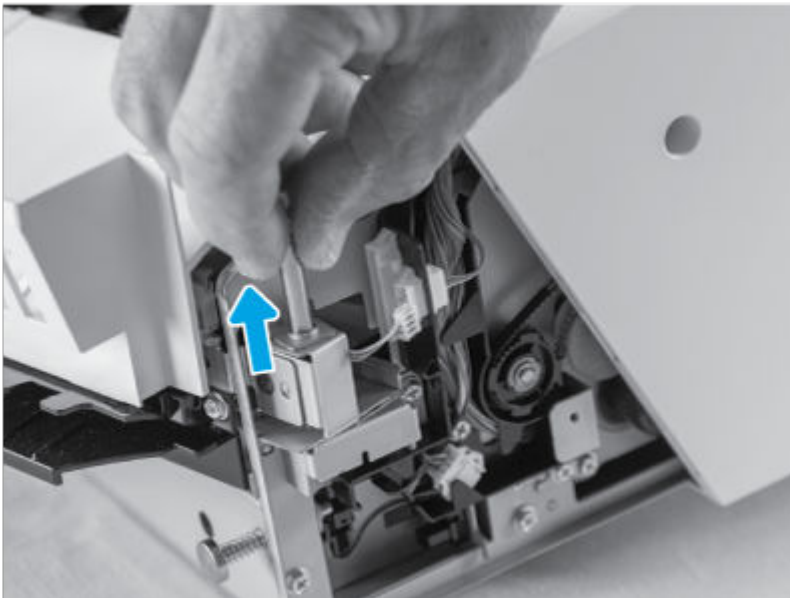
2. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-3034 Disconnect one connector



3. Remove the hinge shaft, and then remove the punch cover assembly.

Figure 6-3035 Remove the assembly



3 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.

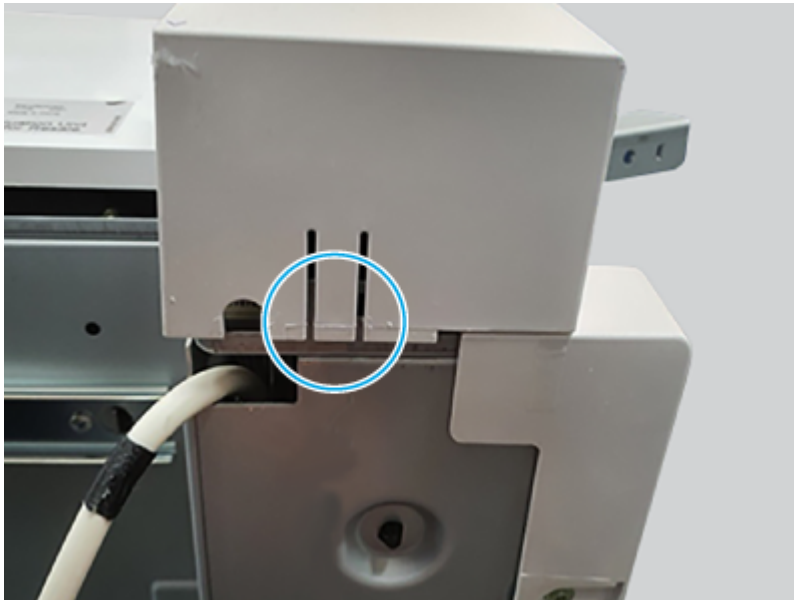
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3036 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3037 Remove the cover



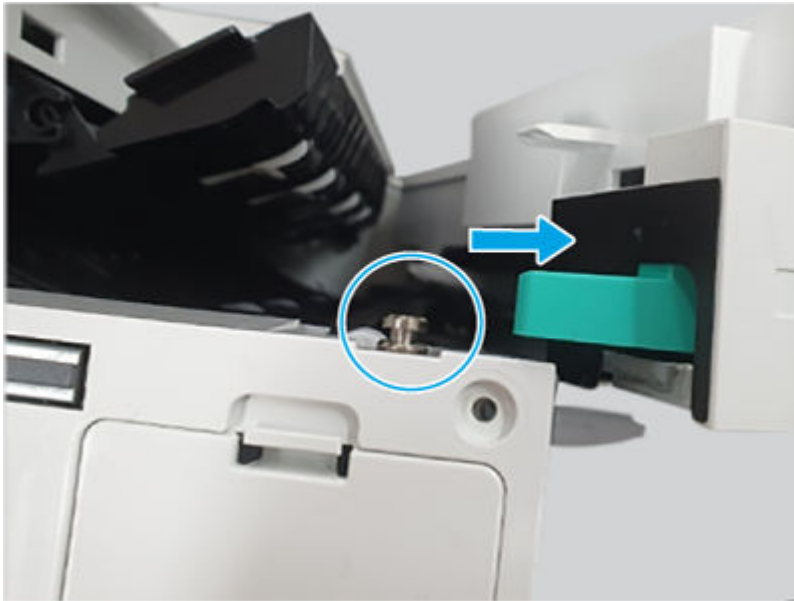
4 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3038 Open the punch cover



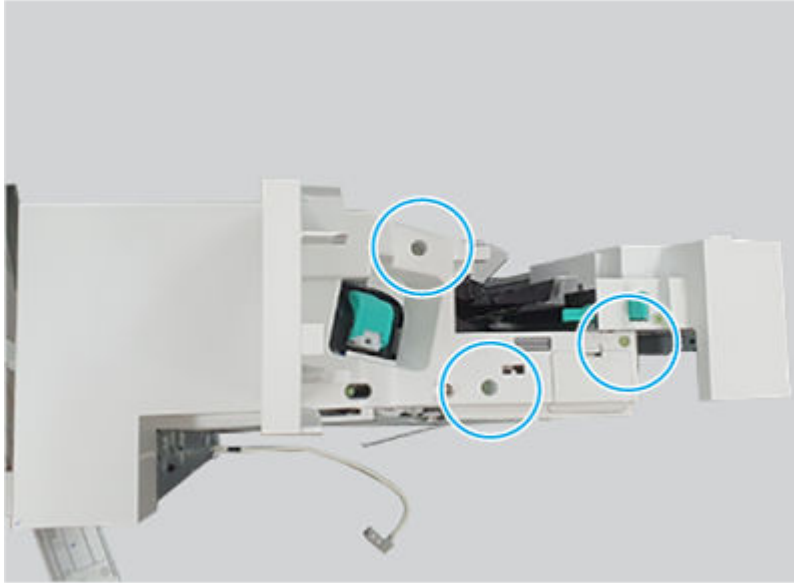
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3039 Remove the handle



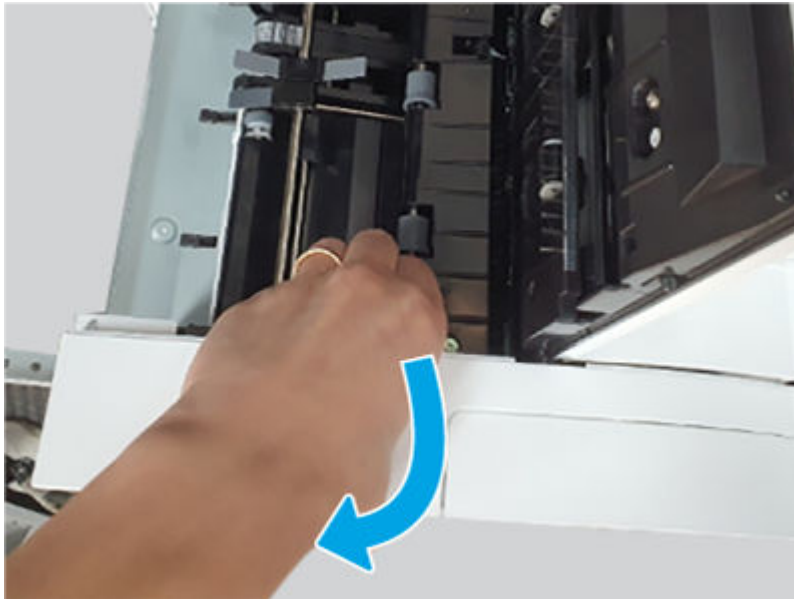
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3040 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3041 Remove the cover

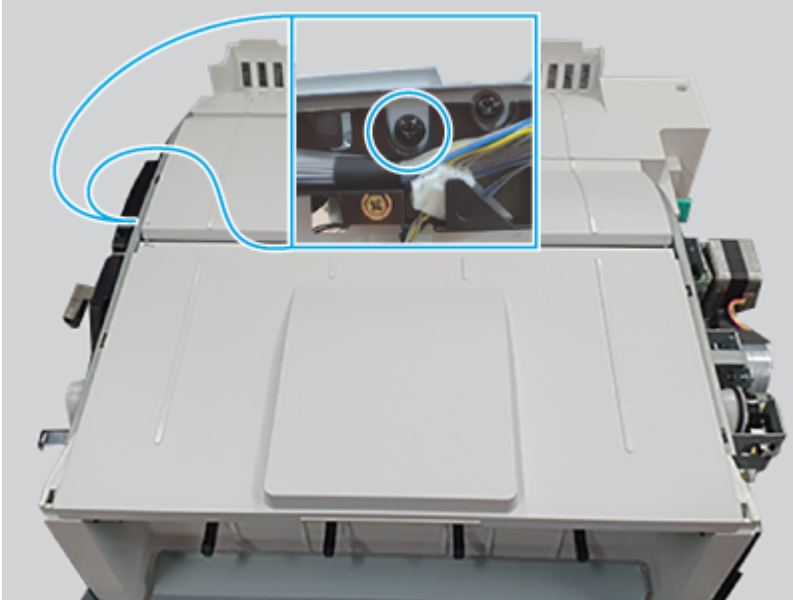


5 Remove the inner finisher middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-3042 Remove the cover

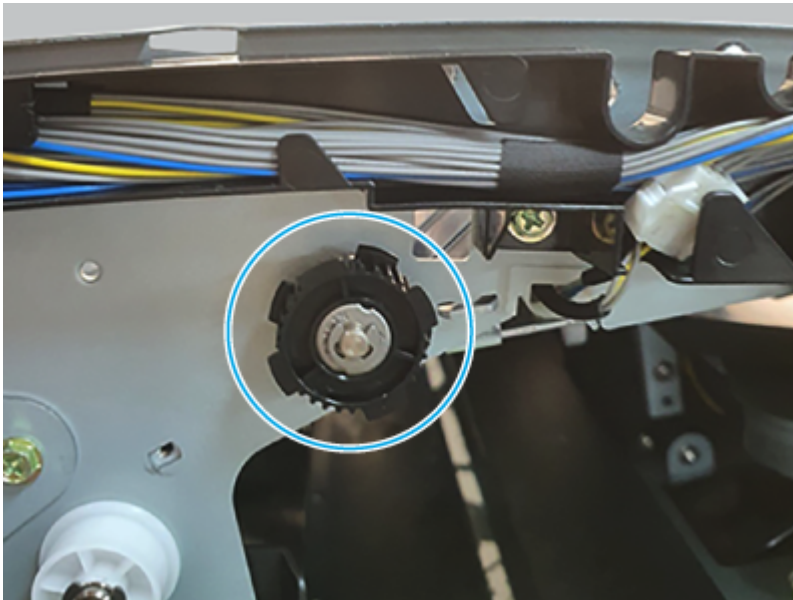


6 Remove the inner finisher middle roller

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle roller.

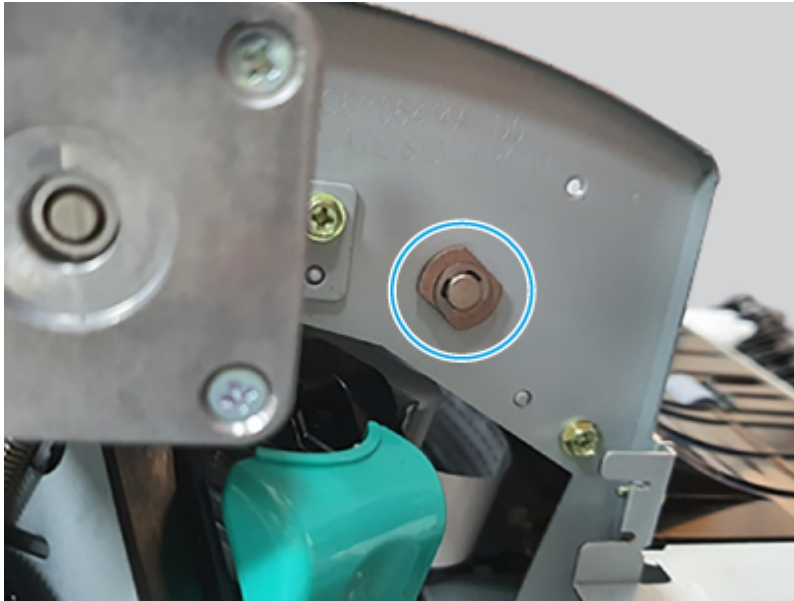
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, remove the pulley, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-3043 Remove the e-ring, pulley, and bushing



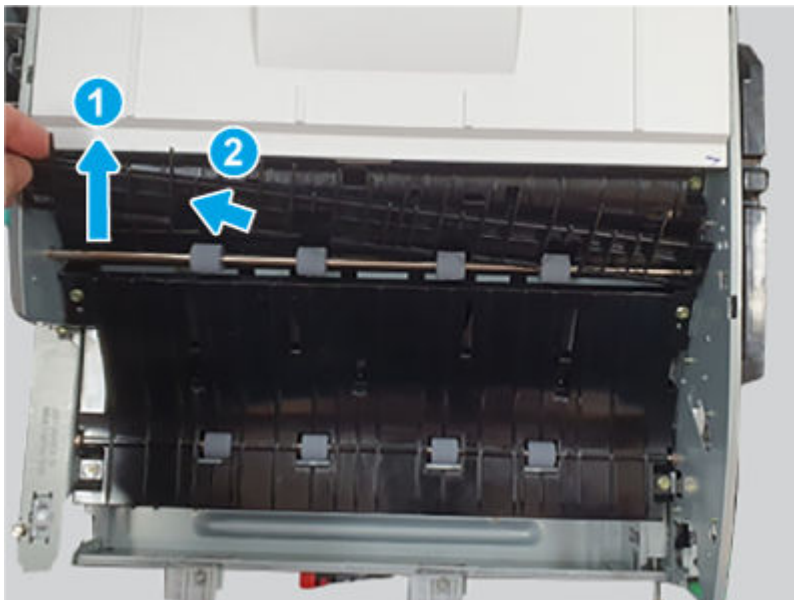
2. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-3044 Remove the e-ring and bushing



3. Remove the inner finisher middle roller.

Figure 6-3045 Remove the roller

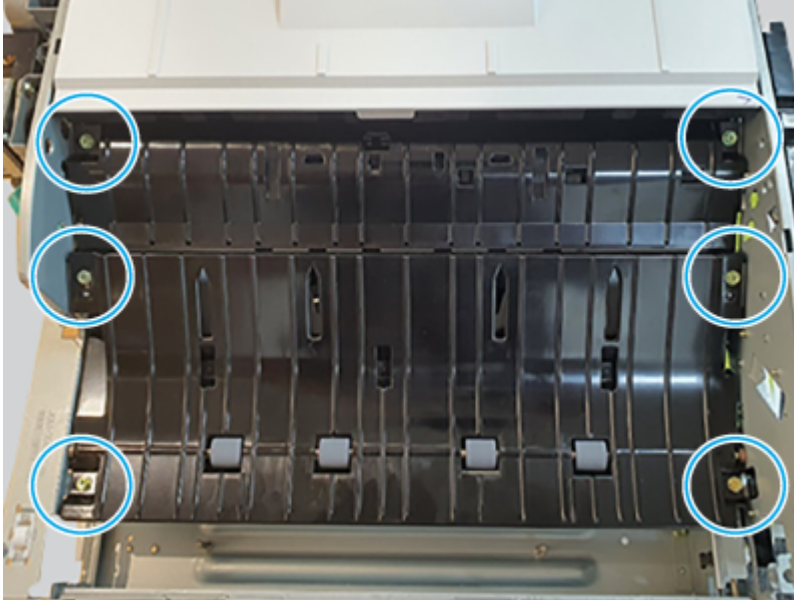


7 Remove the inner finisher middle lower guide

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle lower guide.

- Remove six screws, and then remove the inner finisher middle lower guide.

Figure 6-3046 Remove the guide

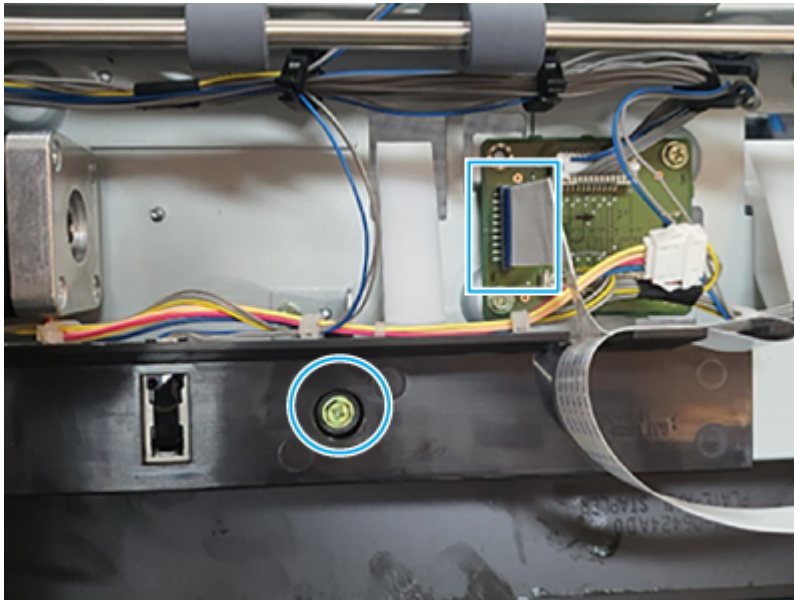


8 Remove the inner finisher stapler position sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher stapler position sensor.

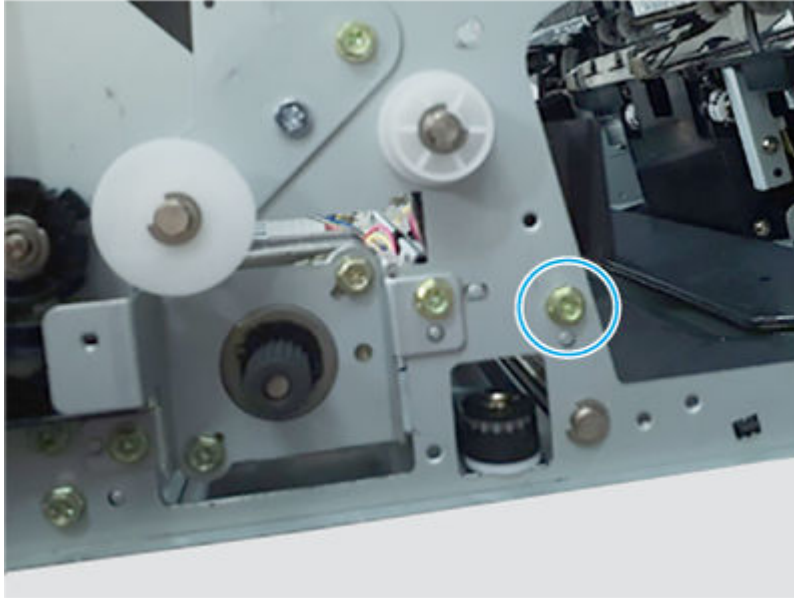
1. Disconnect one connector, remove one screw, and then remove the guide.

Figure 6-3047 Remove the guide



2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-3048 Remove one screw



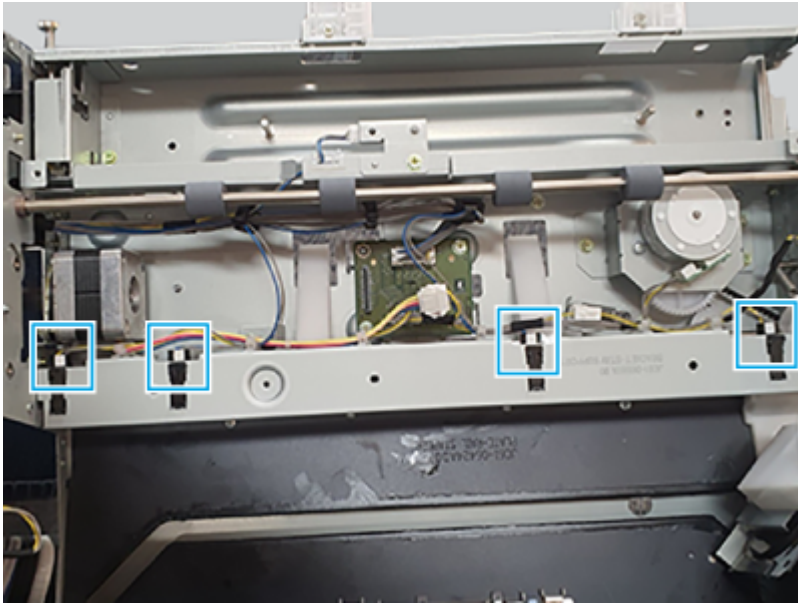
3. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-3049 Remove one screw



4. Disconnect four connectors.

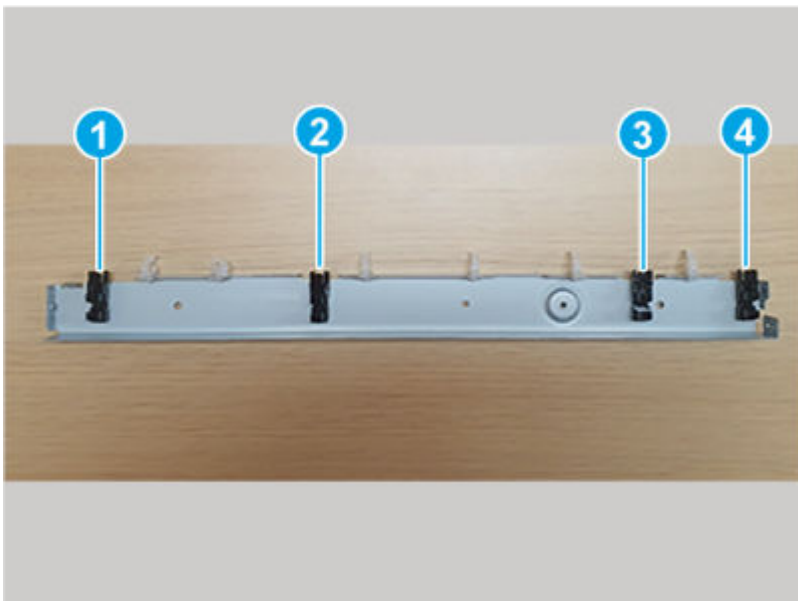
Figure 6-3050 Disconnect four connectors



5. Remove the inner finisher staple position sensor.

- **Callout 1:** Front stapler position sensor
- **Callout 2:** Middle stapler position sensor
- **Callout 3:** Middle stapler position sensor
- **Callout 4:** Rear stapler position sensor

Figure 6-3051 Remove the sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Stapler position motor

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher stapler position motor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-366 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC93-00999A	Drive-motor step (Stapler position motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

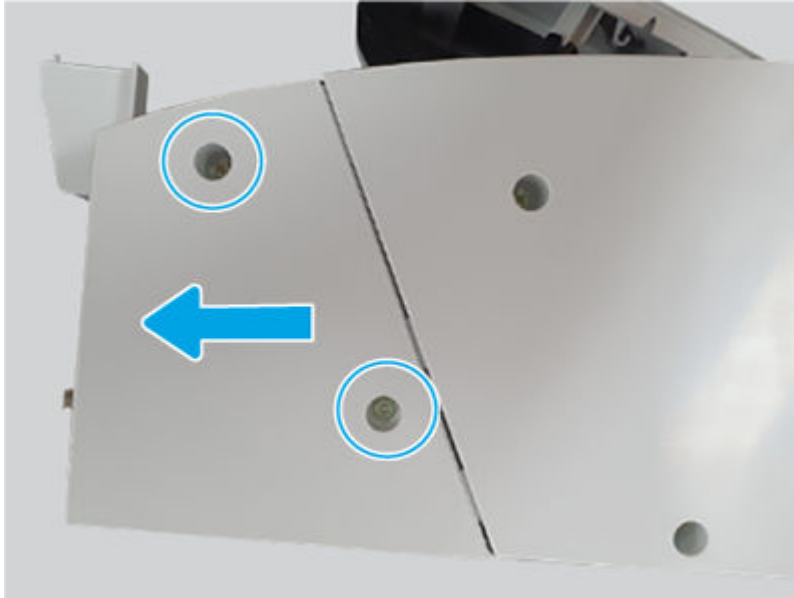
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3052 Remove the cover

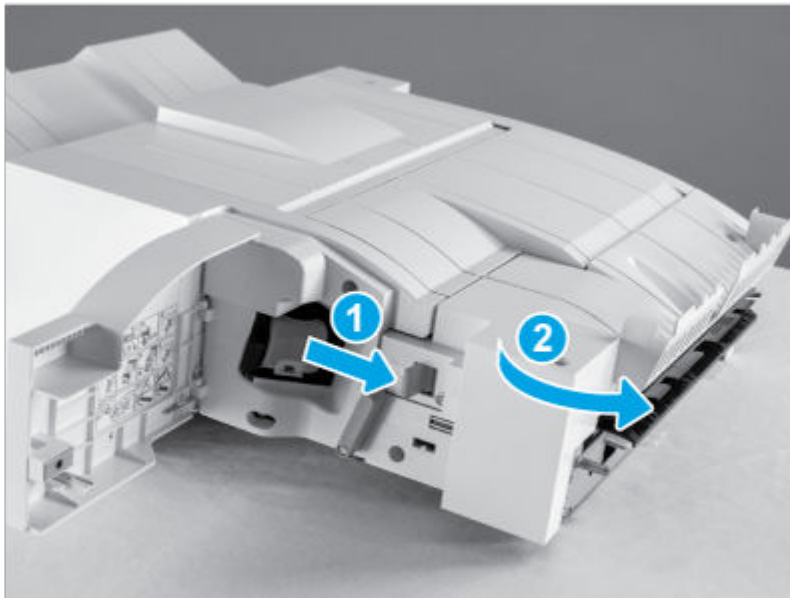


2 Remove the inner finisher punch cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher punch cover assembly.

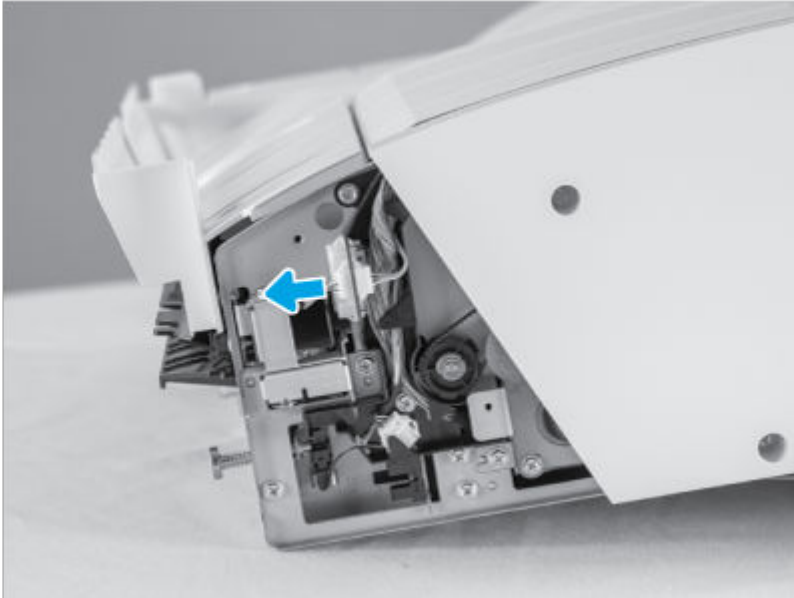
1. Release the lever (callout 1), and then rotate the punch away from the inner finisher (callout 2).

Figure 6-3053 Rotate the punch



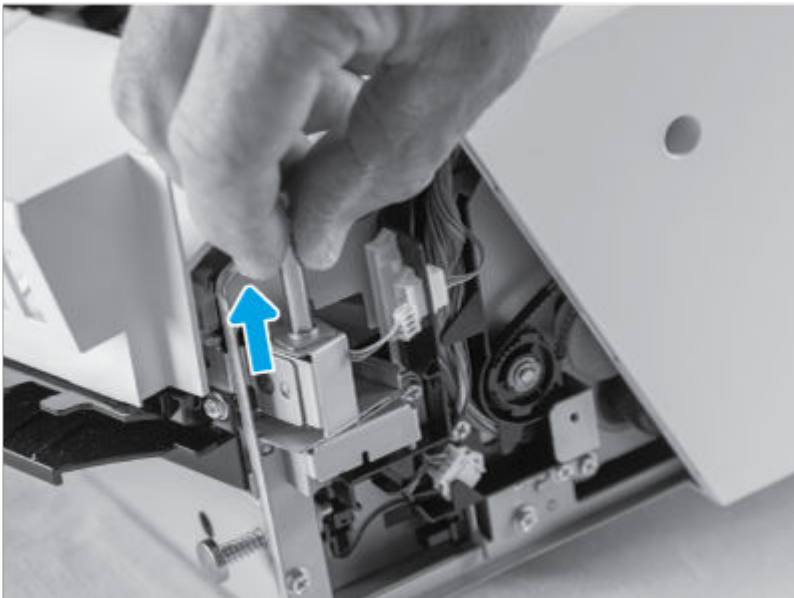
2. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-3054 Disconnect one connector



3. Remove the hinge shaft, and then remove the punch cover assembly.

Figure 6-3055 Remove the assembly



3 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.

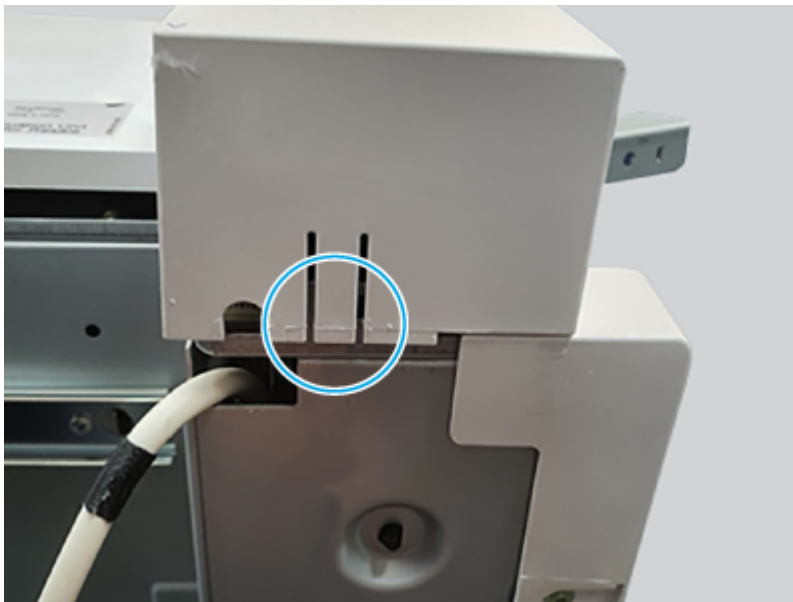
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3056 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3057 Remove the cover



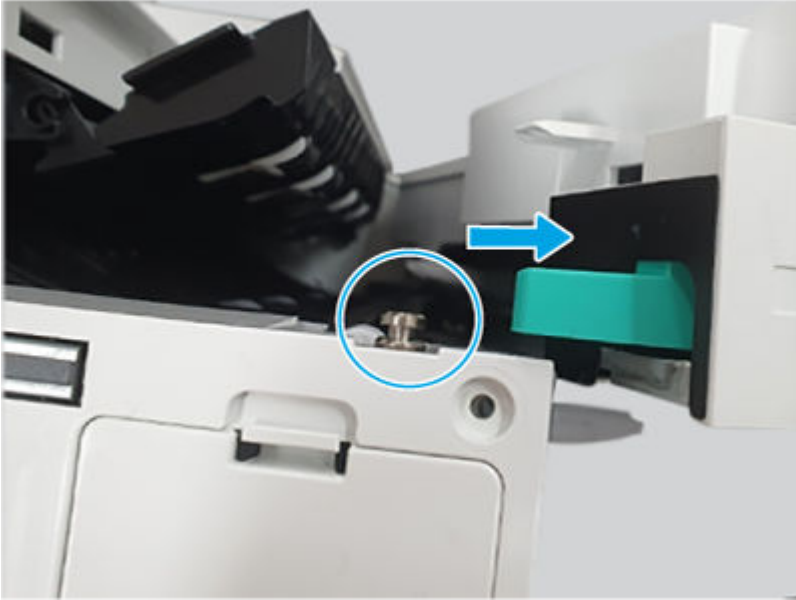
4 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3058 Open the punch cover



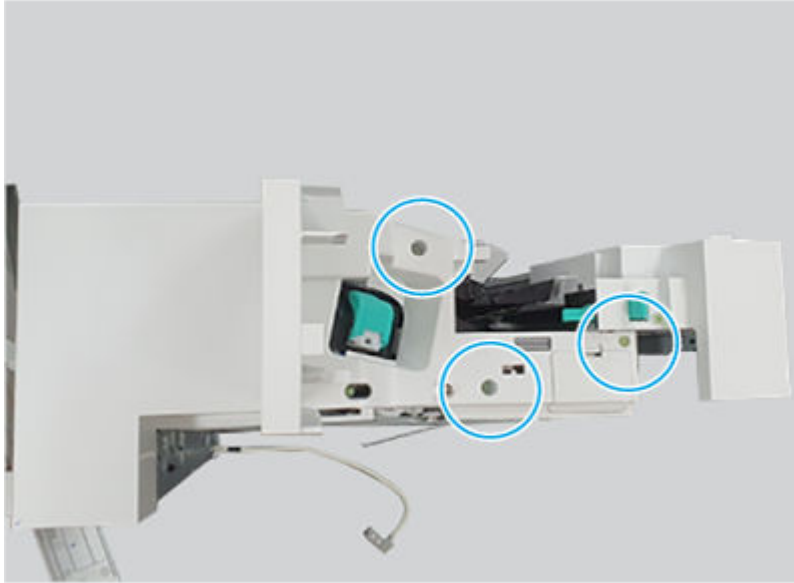
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3059 Remove the handle



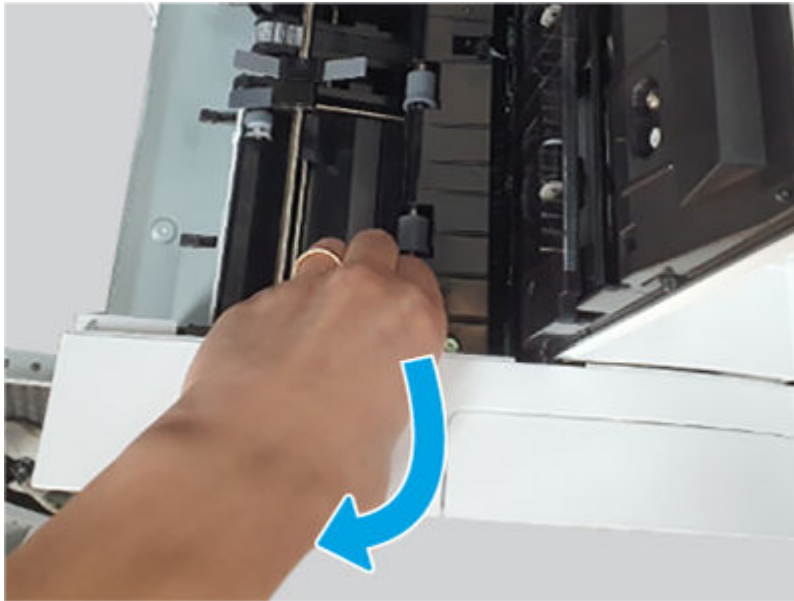
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3060 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3061 Remove the cover

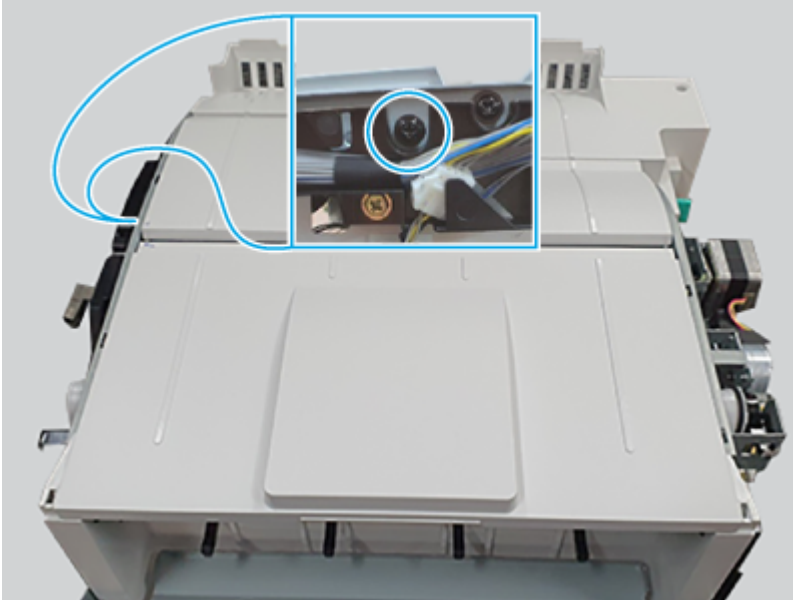


5 Remove the inner finisher middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-3062 Remove the cover

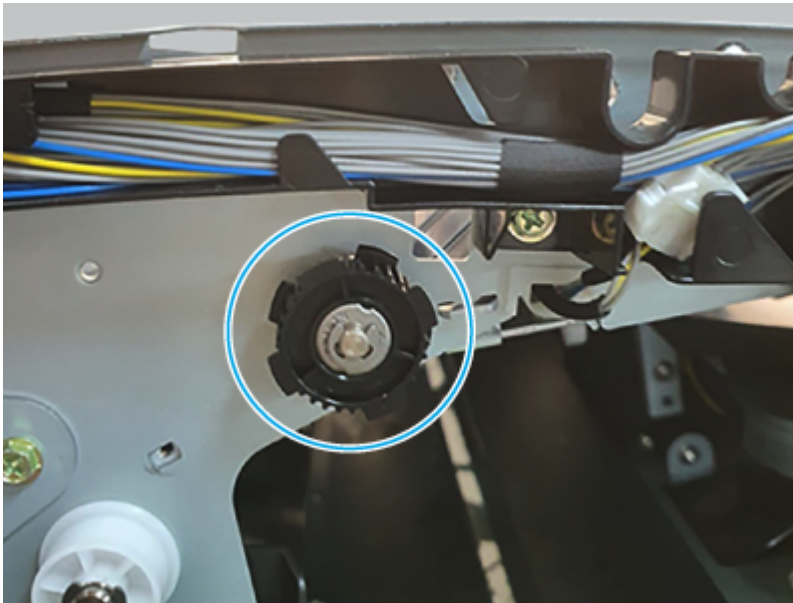


6 Remove the inner finisher middle roller

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle roller.

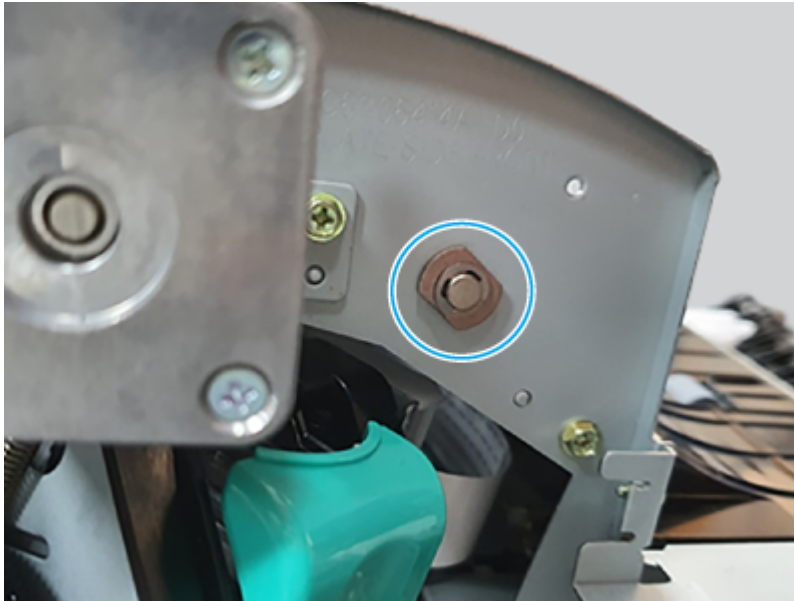
1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, remove the pulley, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-3063 Remove the e-ring, pulley, and bushing



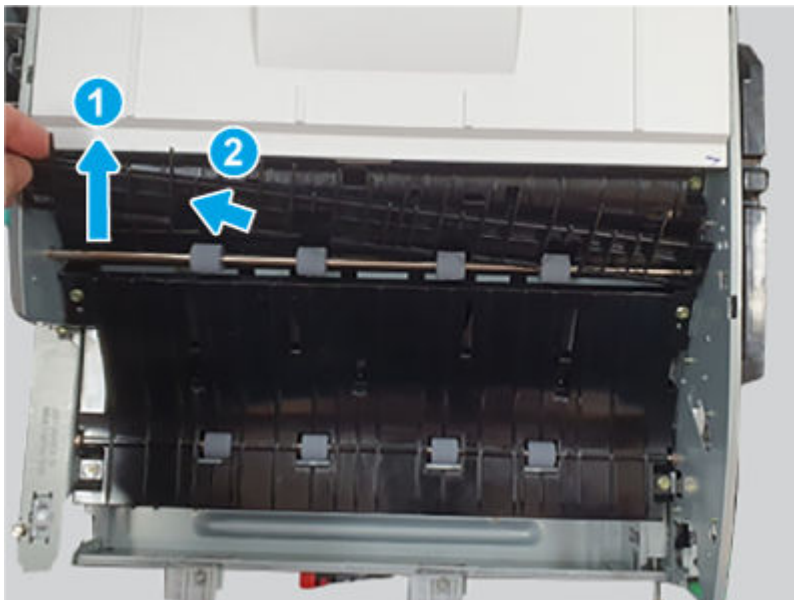
2. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-3064 Remove the e-ring and bushing



3. Remove the inner finisher middle roller.

Figure 6-3065 Remove the roller



7 Remove the inner finisher middle lower guide

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle lower guide.

- Remove six screws, and then remove the inner finisher middle lower guide.

Figure 6-3066 Remove the guide

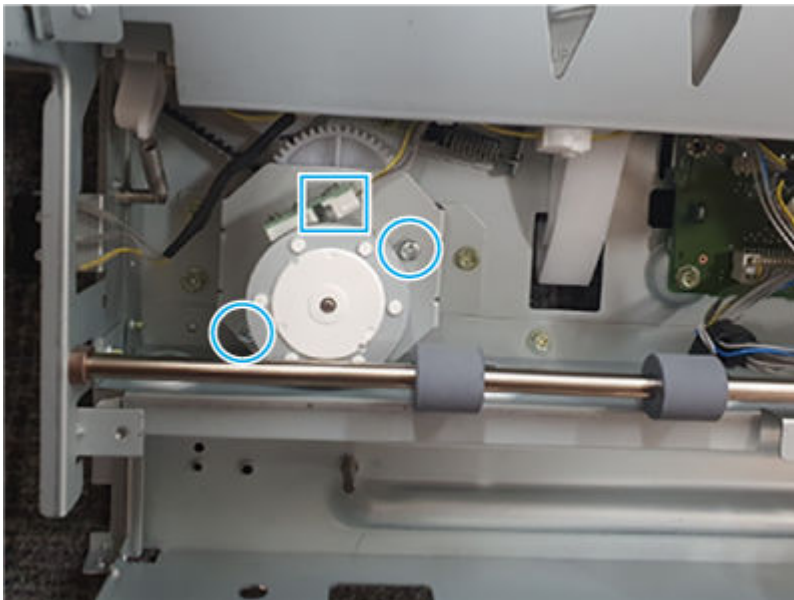


8 Remove the inner finisher stapler position motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher stapler position motor.

- Disconnect one connector, remove two screws, and then remove the inner finisher stapler position motor.

Figure 6-3067 Remove the motor



9 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Ejector unit

Review the inner finisher ejector unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Ejector

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher ejector.



NOTE: Remove the inner finisher form the printer.

Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Difficult

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-367 Part information

Part number	Part description
SS456-61001	Ejector

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

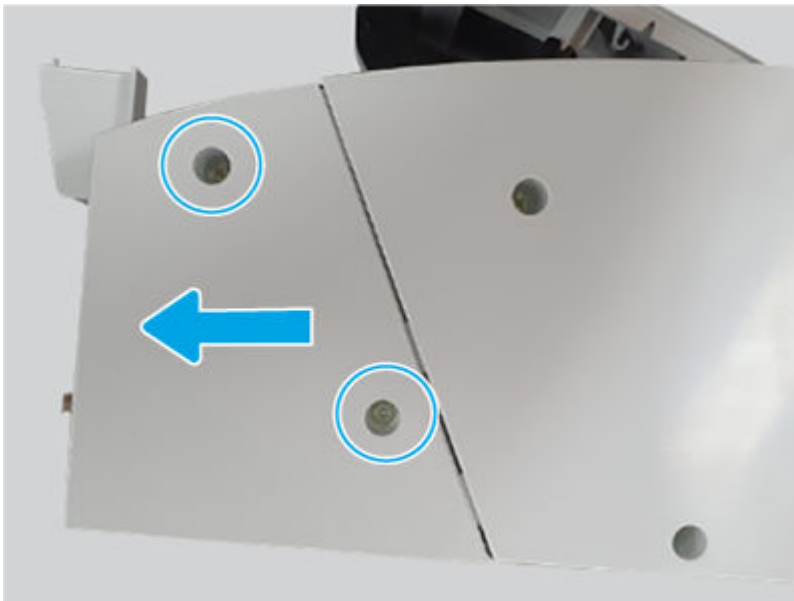
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3068 Remove the cover



2 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.

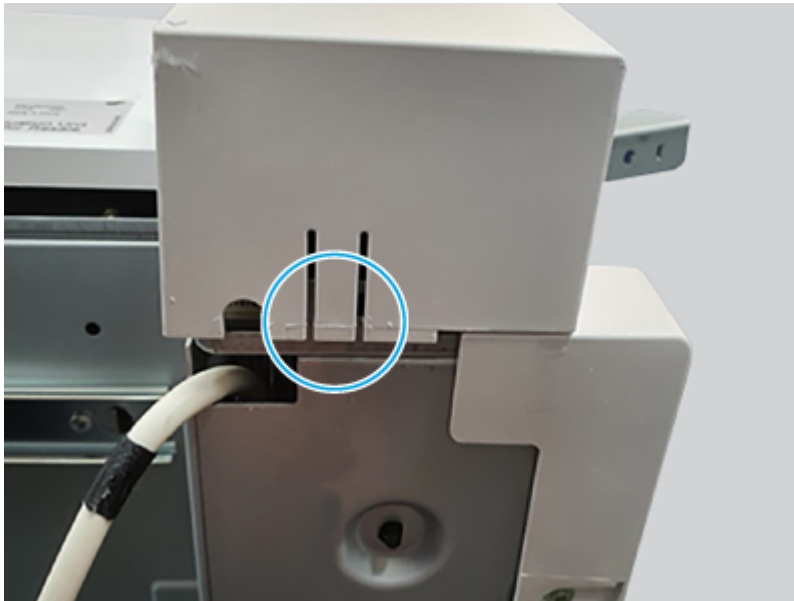
- Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3069 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3070 Remove the cover



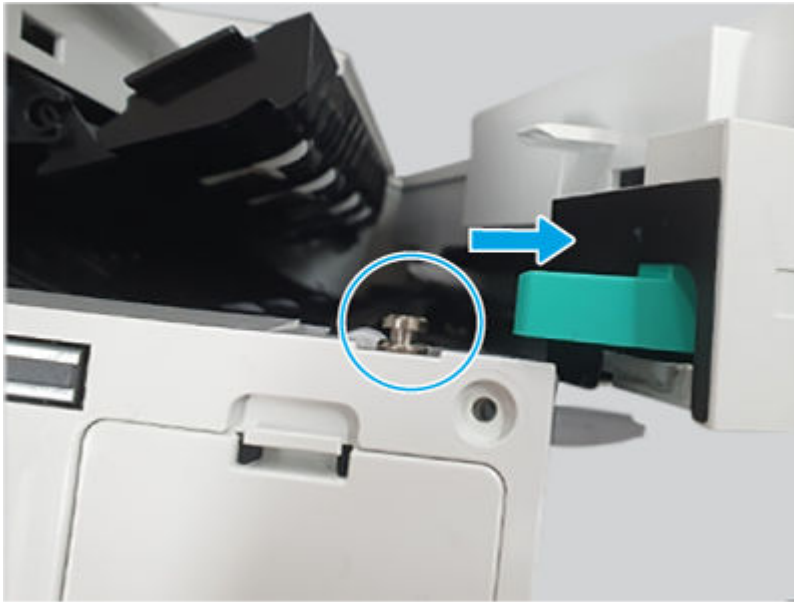
3 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.

- Open the middle cover.
2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3071 Open the punch cover



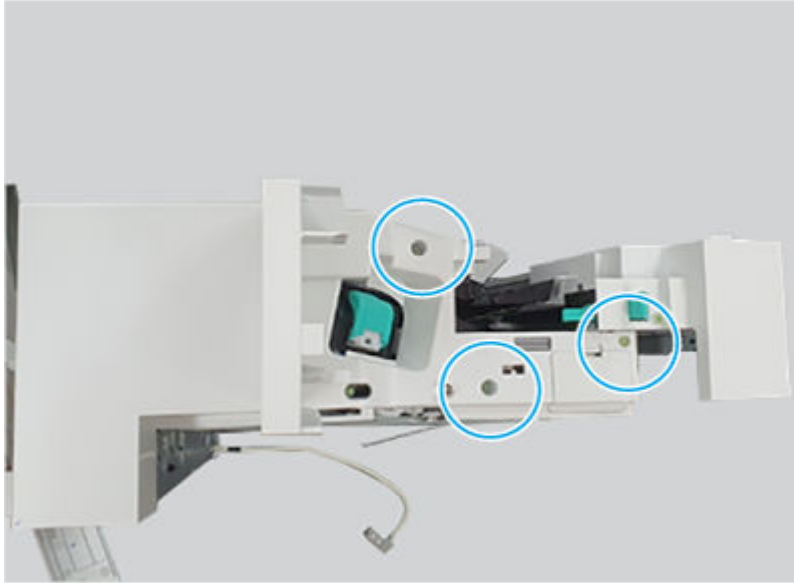
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3072 Remove the handle



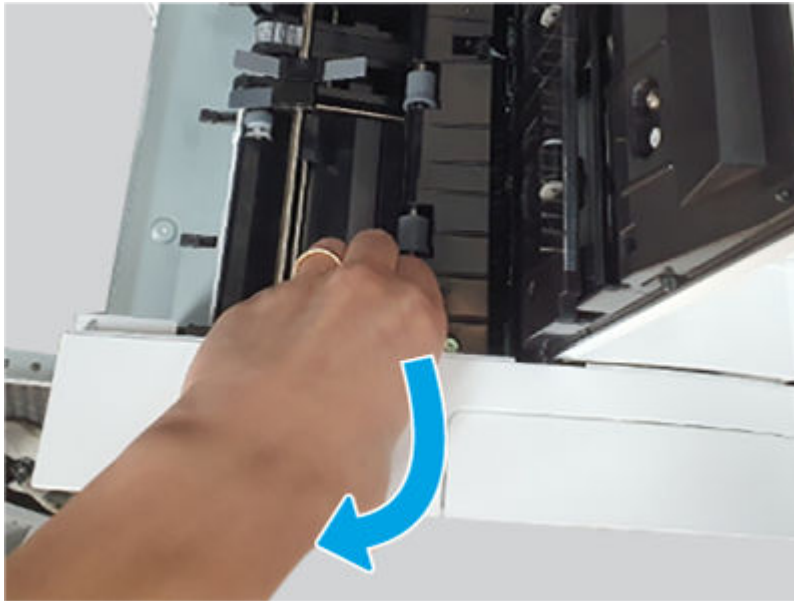
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3073 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3074 Remove the cover

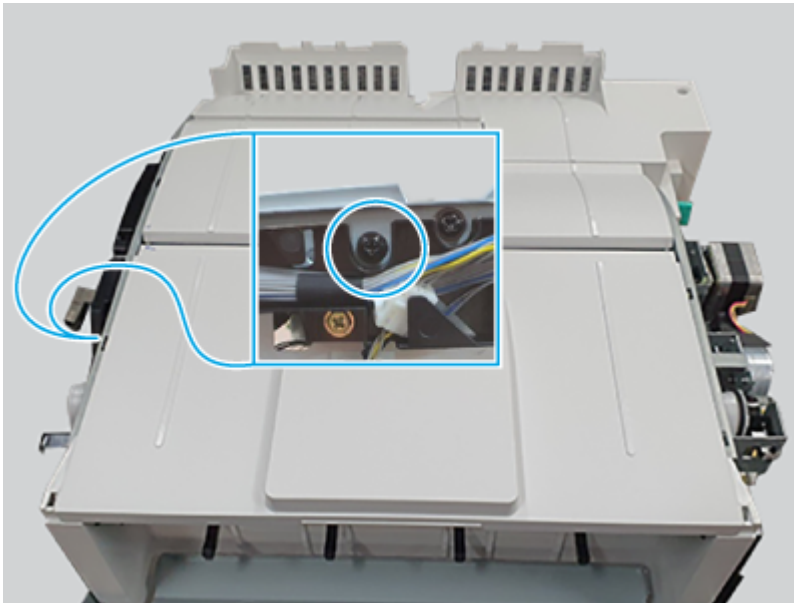


4 Remove the inner finisher top cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher top cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher top cover assembly.

Figure 6-3075 Remove the cover

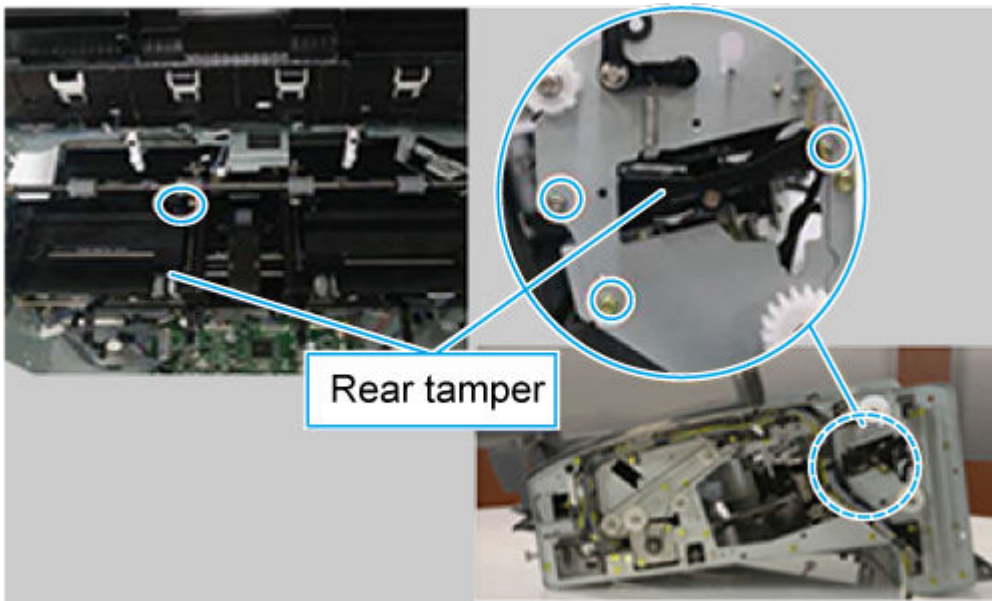


5 Remove the inner finisher rear tamper

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear tamper.

- Remove four screws, and then remove the inner finisher rear tamper.

Figure 6-3076 Remove the tamper

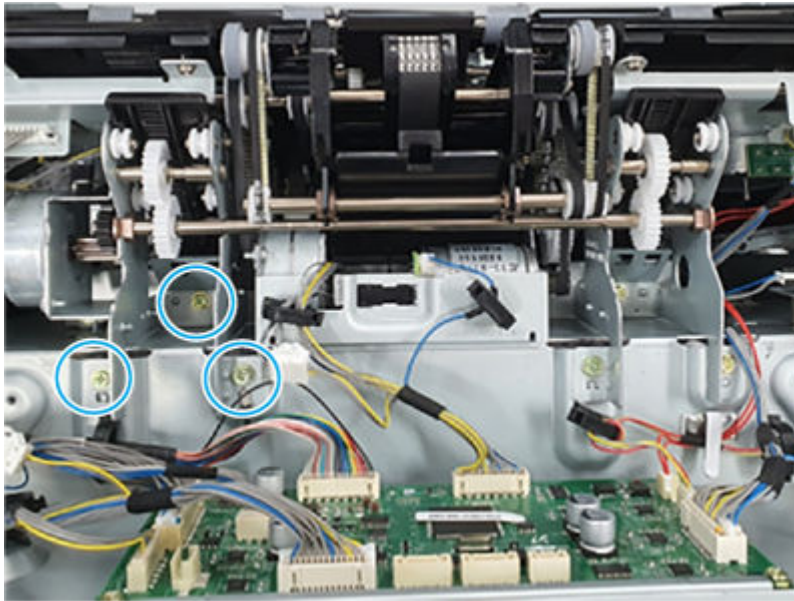


6 Remove the inner finisher rear paper support

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear paper support.

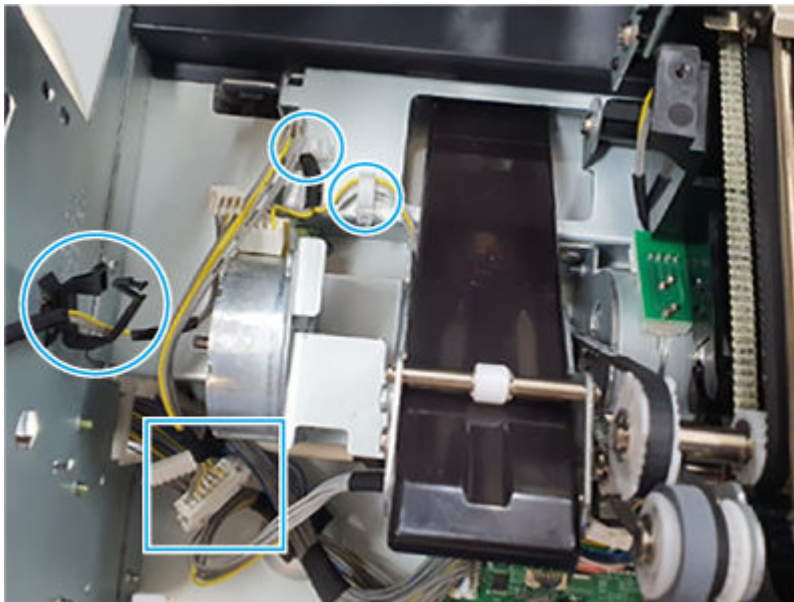
1. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3077 Remove three screws



2. Disconnect one connector, release three hooks, and then remove the inner finisher rear paper support.

Figure 6-3078 Remove the support

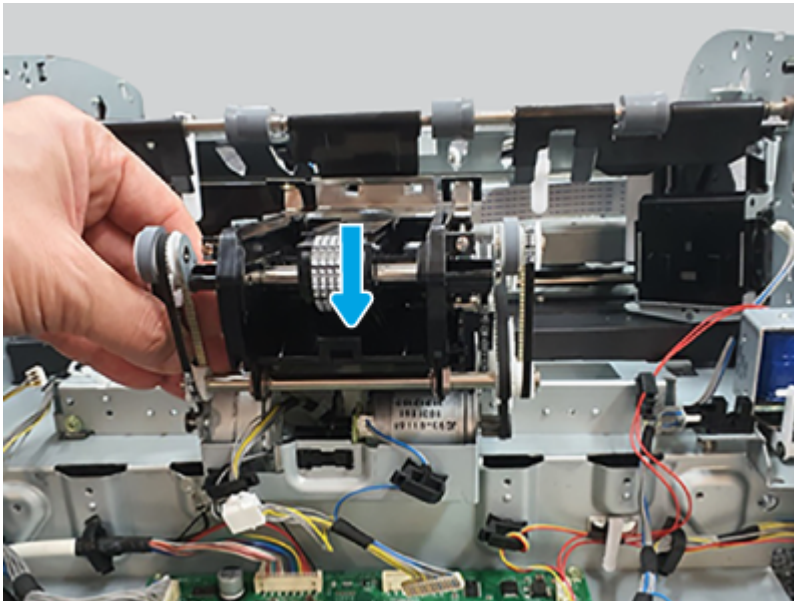


7 Remove the inner finisher ejector

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher ejector.

- Remove the inner finisher ejector.

Figure 6-3079 Remove the ejector



8 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.




NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Output tray and paper holding unit

Review the inner finisher output tray and paper holding unit removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: Output tray motor assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher output tray motor assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 25 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-368 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01334B	Output tray motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

- Open the front door, remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3080 Remove the handle

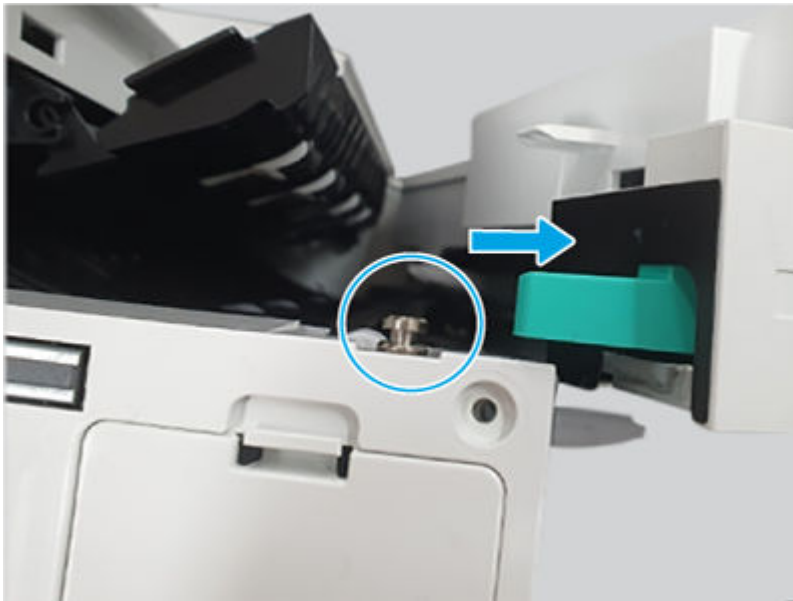


2 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3081 Open the punch cover



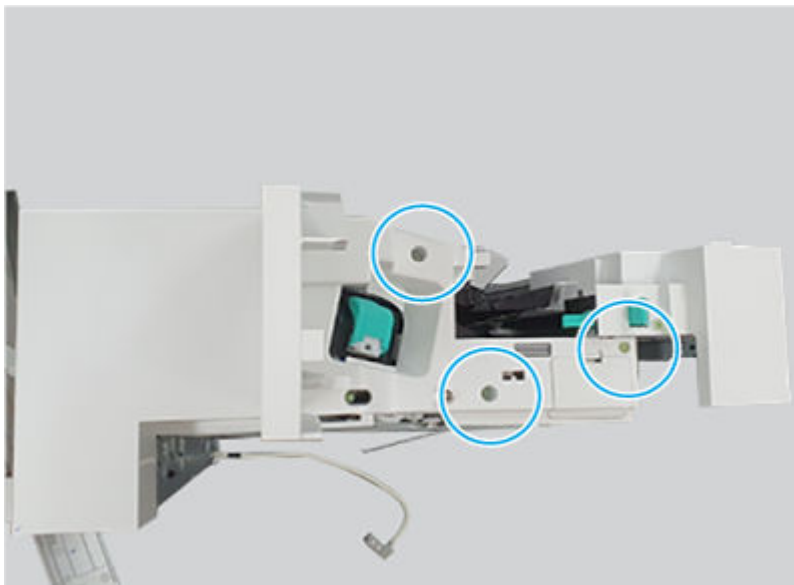
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3082 Remove the handle



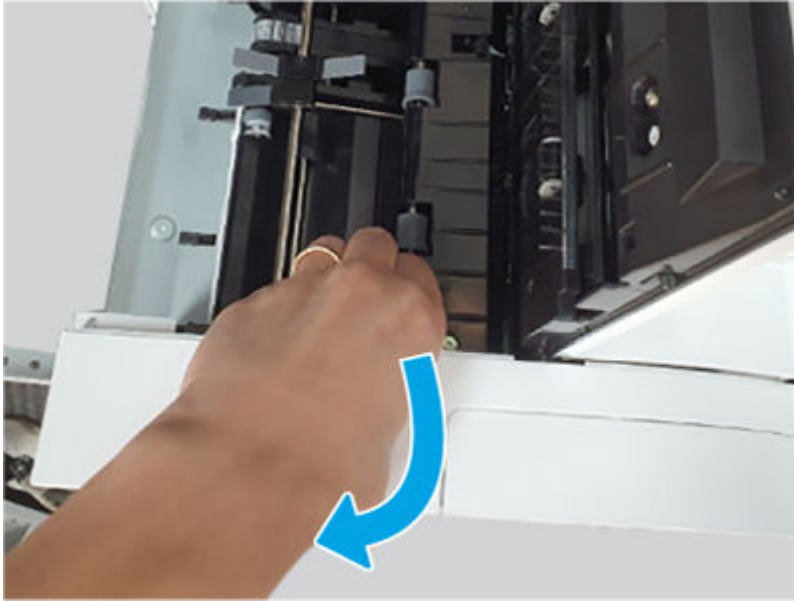
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3083 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3084 Remove the cover



3 Remove the inner finisher cable guide

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher cable guide.

- Remove three screws, and remove the inner finisher cable guide.


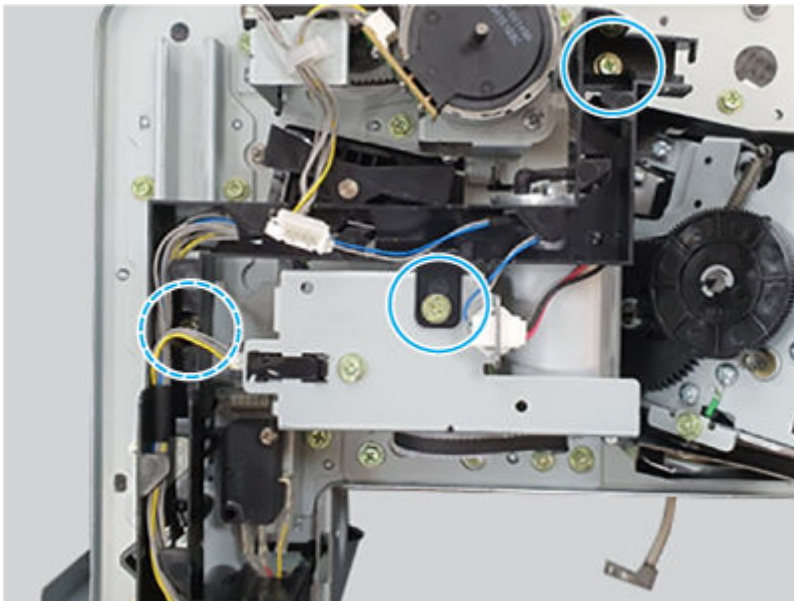
 **NOTE:** Remove the wire harness as necessary.

Figure 6-3085 Remove the guide

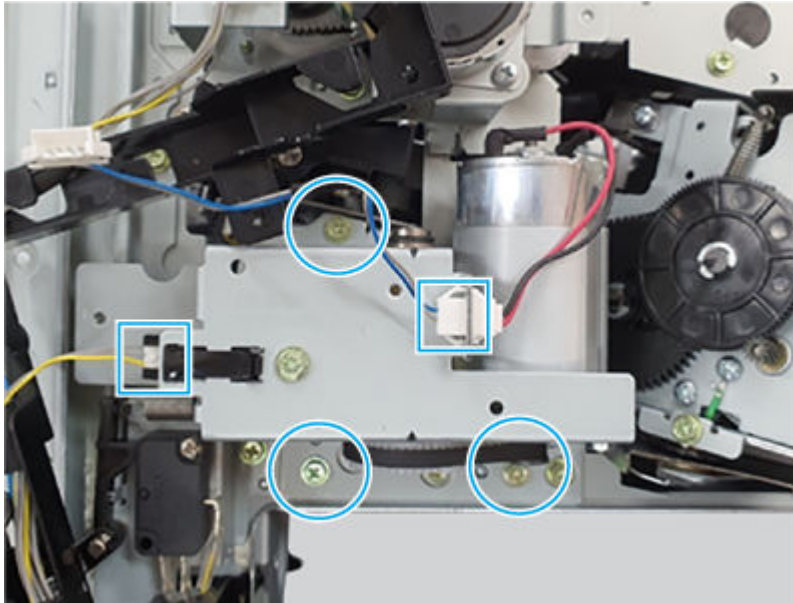


4 Remove the inner finisher output tray motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher output tray motor assembly.

1. Open the punch cover.
2. Disconnect two connectors, remove three screws, and then remove the inner finisher output tray motor assembly.


Figure 6-3086 Remove the assembly



5 **Unpack the replacement assembly**



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Output tray motor

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher output tray motor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-369 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC31-00178B	JC31-00144G (Output tray motor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

- Open the front door, remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3087 Remove the handle

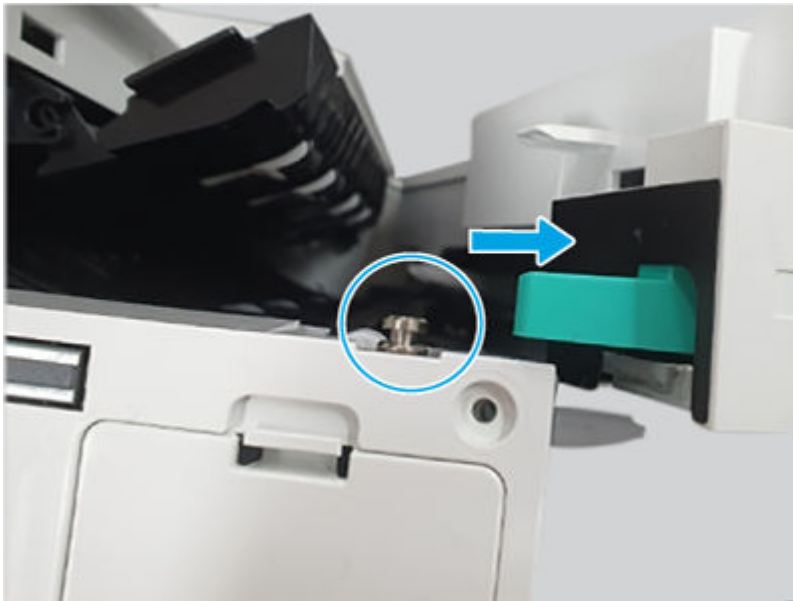


2 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3088 Open the punch cover



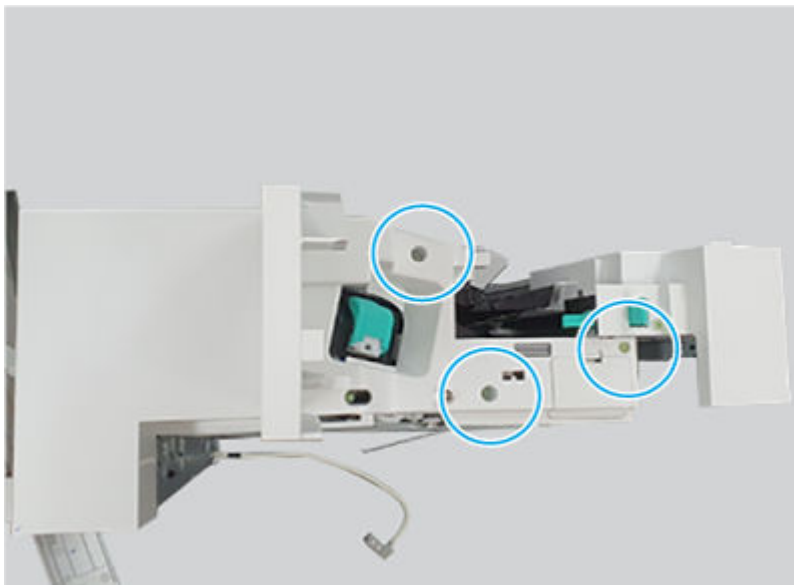
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3089 Remove the handle



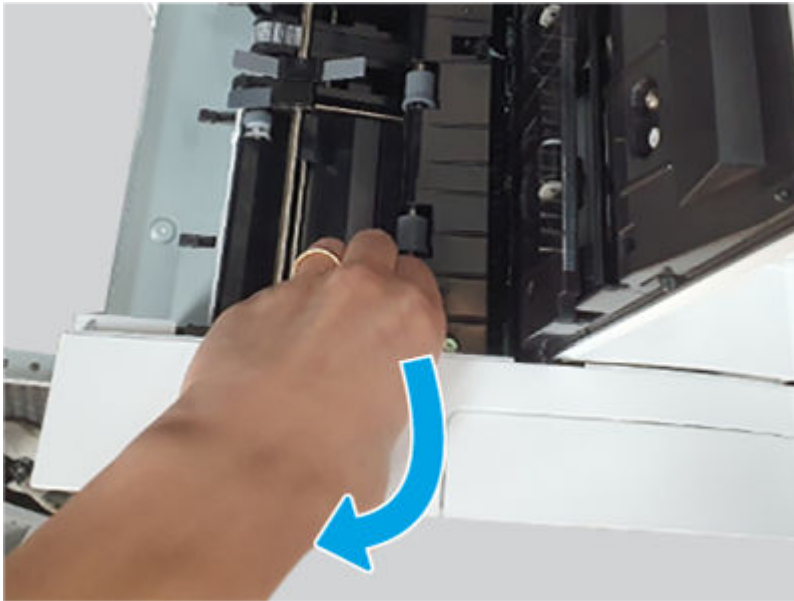
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3090 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3091 Remove the cover



3 Remove the inner finisher cable guide

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher cable guide.

- Remove three screws, and remove the inner finisher cable guide.


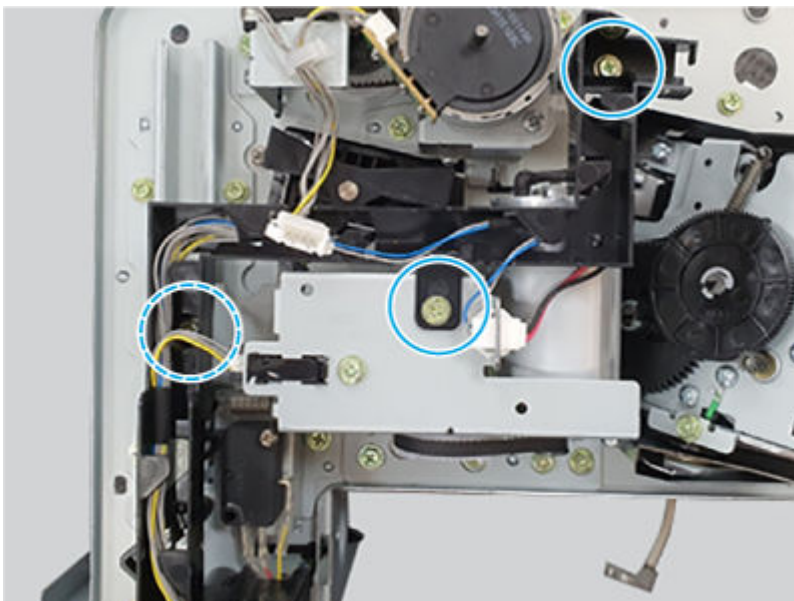
 **NOTE:** Remove the wire harness as necessary.

Figure 6-3092 Remove the guide

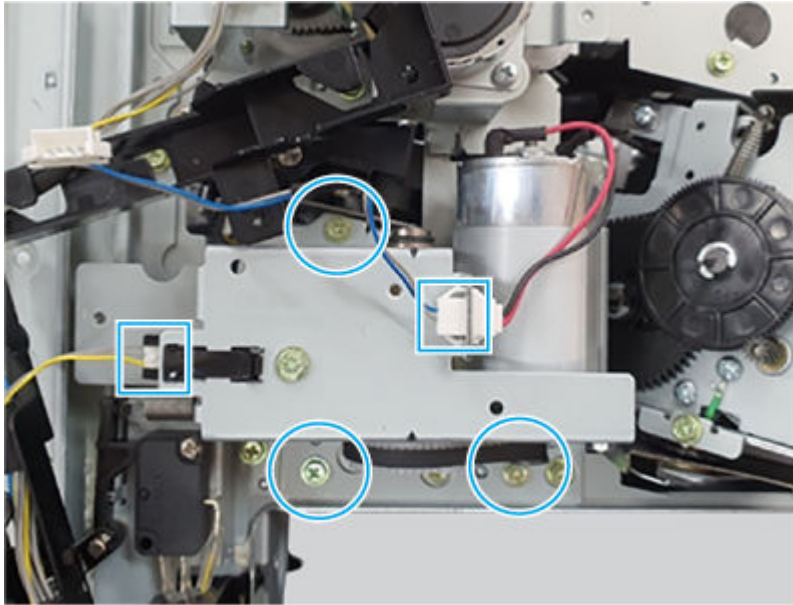


4 Remove the inner finisher output tray motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher output tray motor assembly.

1. Open the punch cover.
2. Disconnect two connectors, remove three screws, and then remove the inner finisher output tray motor assembly.

Figure 6-3093 Remove the assembly

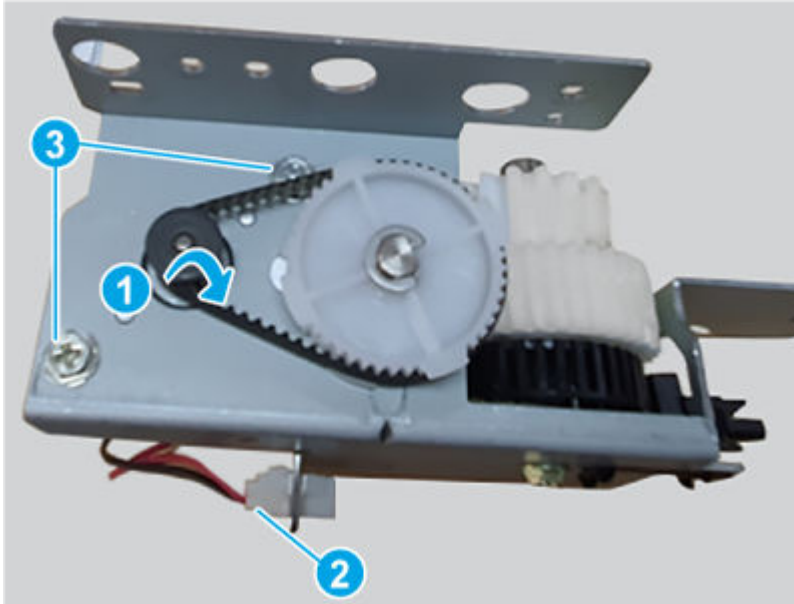


5 Remove the inner finisher output tray motor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher output tray motor.

- Do the following:
 - Release the belt (callout 1).
 - Disconnect one connector (callout 2).
 - Remove two screws (callout 3)
 - Remove the inner finisher output tray motor.

Figure 6-3094 Remove the motor



6 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Output tray motor sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher output tray motor sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-370 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Output tray motor sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

- Open the front door, remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3095 Remove the handle

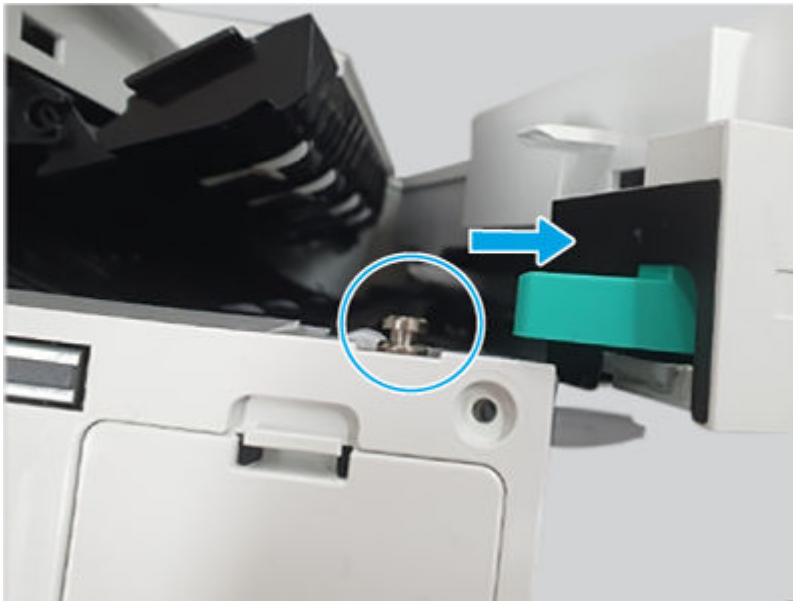


2 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3096 Open the punch cover



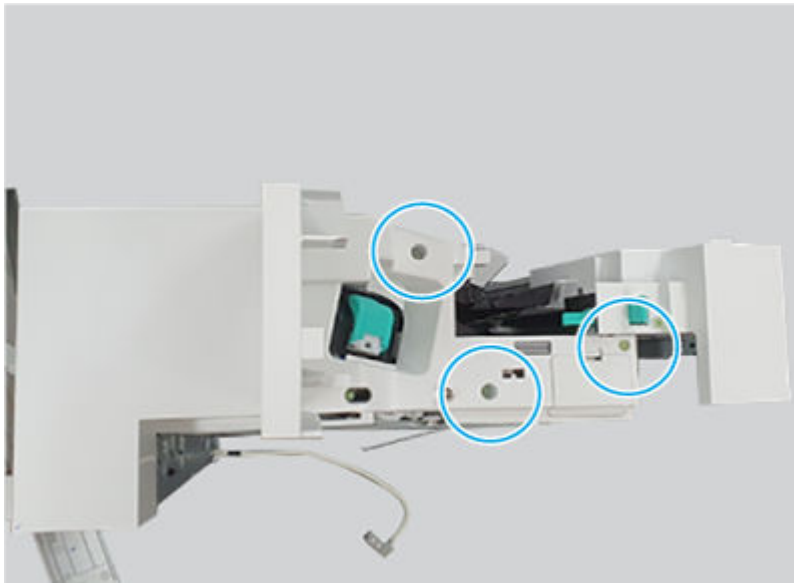
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3097 Remove the handle



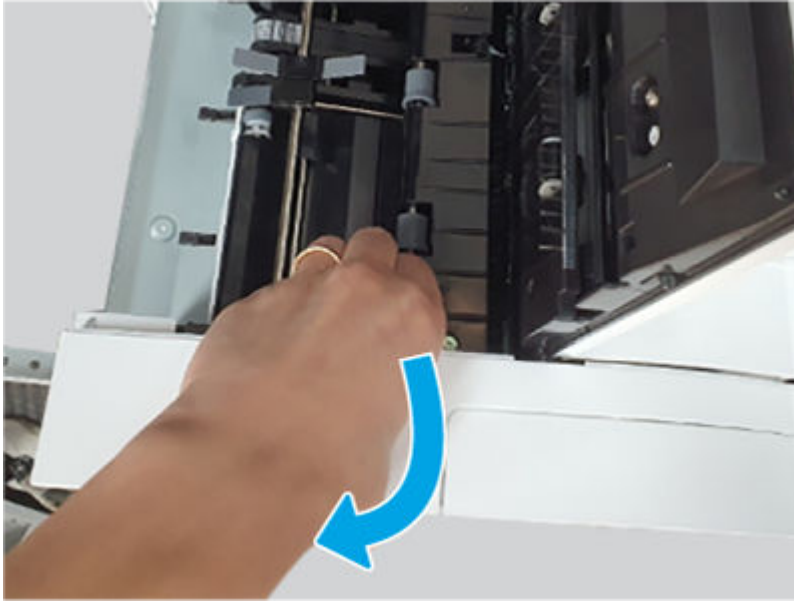
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3098 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3099 Remove the cover



3 Remove the inner finisher cable guide

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher cable guide.

- Remove three screws, and remove the inner finisher cable guide.


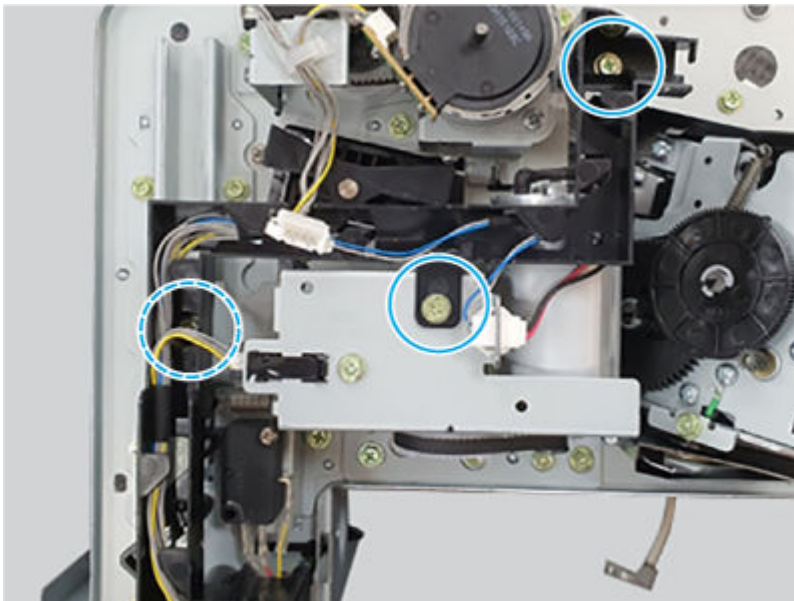
 **NOTE:** Remove the wire harness as necessary.

Figure 6-3100 Remove the guide

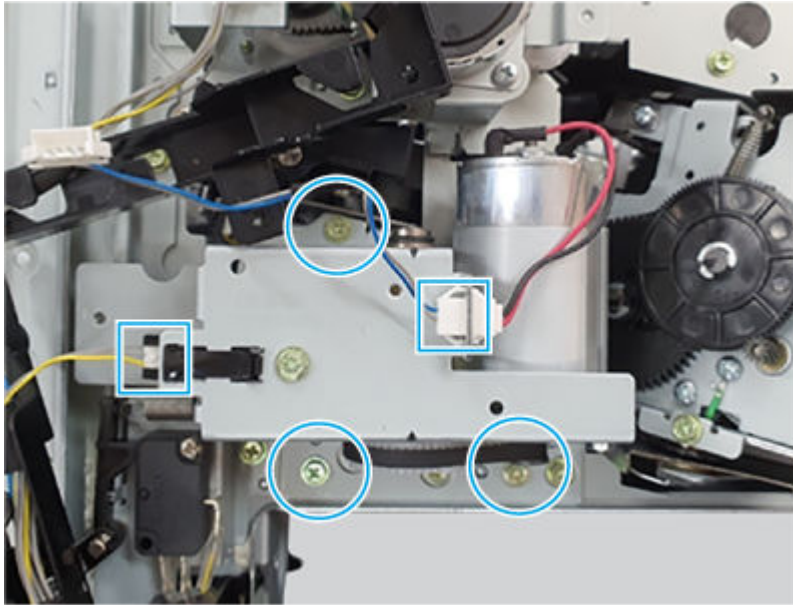


4 Remove the inner finisher output tray motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher output tray motor assembly.

1. Open the punch cover.
2. Disconnect two connectors, remove three screws, and then remove the inner finisher output tray motor assembly.

Figure 6-3101 Remove the assembly

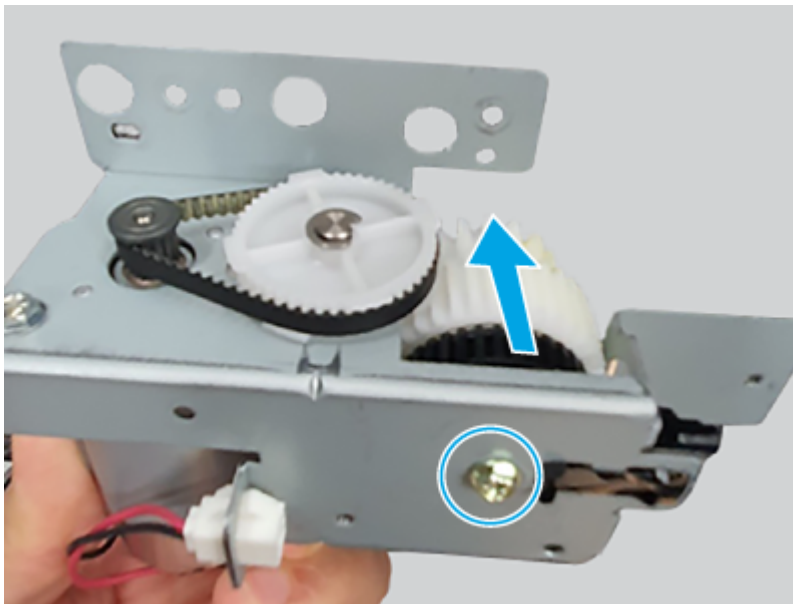


5 Remove the inner finisher output tray motor sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher output tray motor sensor.

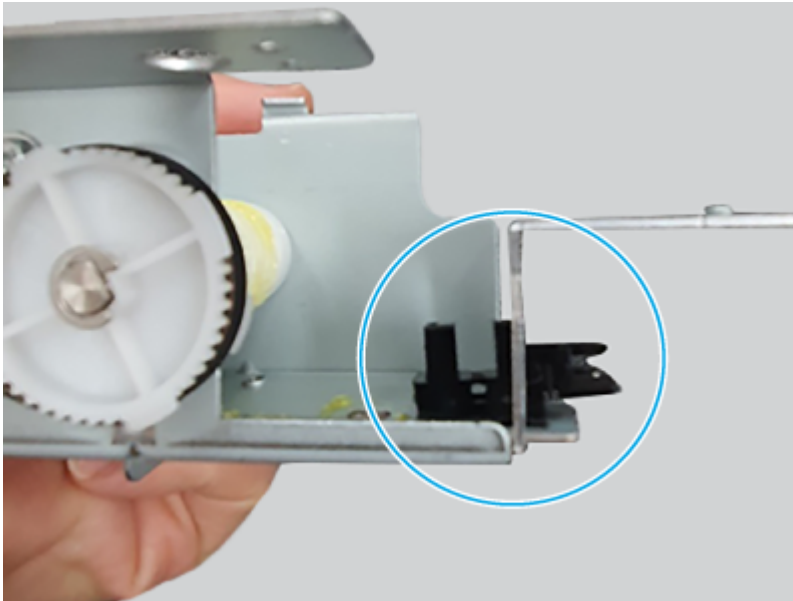
1. Remove one screw, and then remove the gear.

Figure 6-3102 Remove the gear



2. Remove the inner finisher output tray motor sensor.


Figure 6-3103 Remove the sensor



6 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Output tray lower limit switch assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher output tray lower limit switch assembly.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-371 Part Information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01320A	Finisher sub-tray, lower limit (Output tray lower limit switch assembly)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

- Open the front door, remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3104 Remove the handle

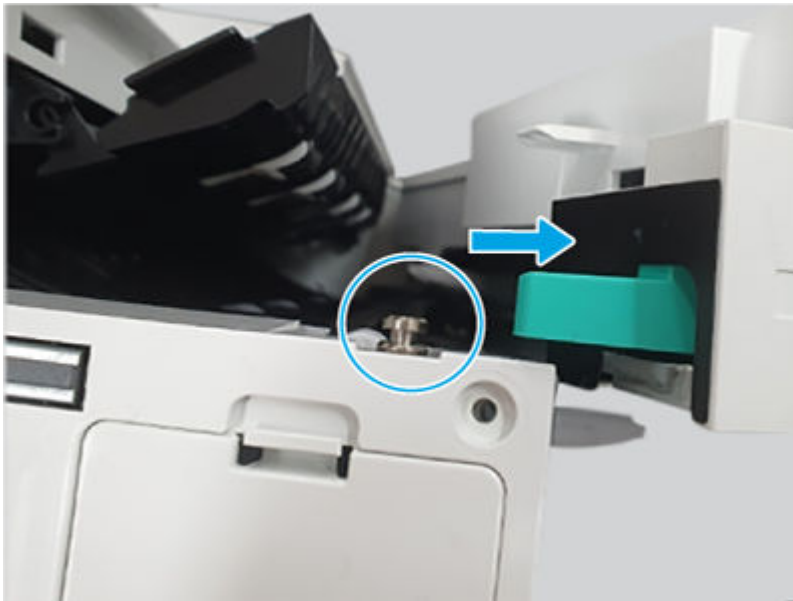


2 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3105 Open the punch cover



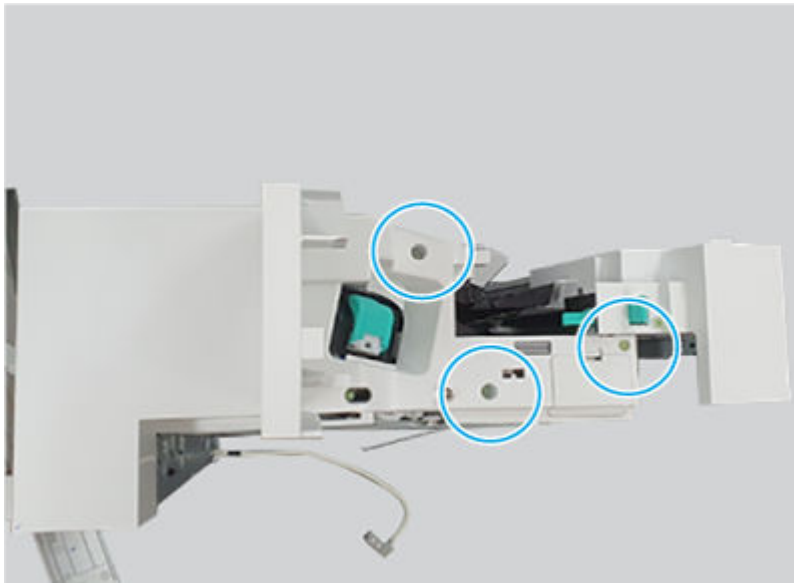
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3106 Remove the handle



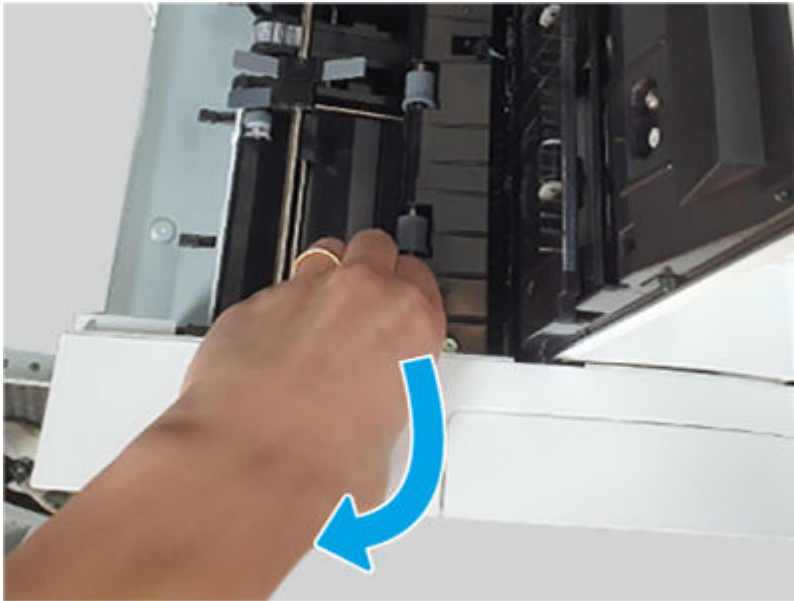
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3107 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3108 Remove the cover

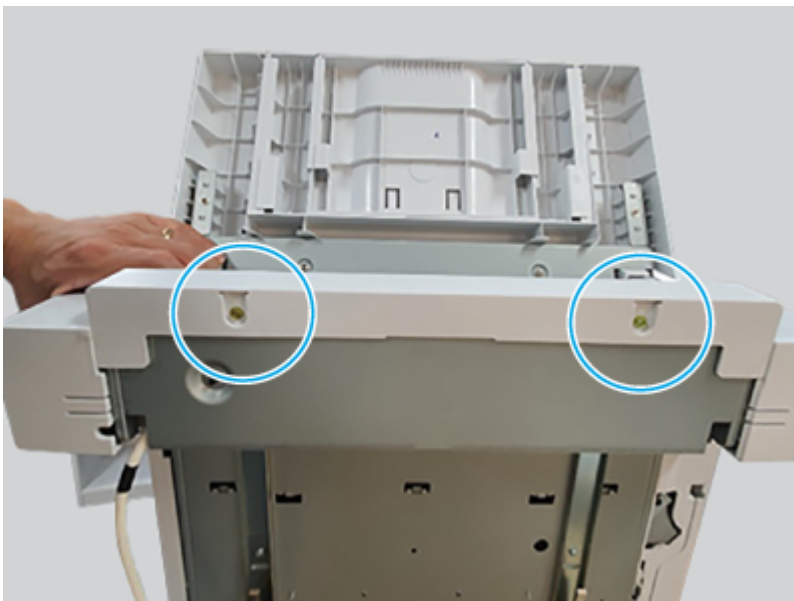


3 Remove the inner finisher PCA cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher PCA cover.

1. Lift up the inner finisher, and then remove two screws.

Figure 6-3109 Remove two screws



2. Remove the inner finisher PCA cover.

Figure 6-3110 Remove the cover



4. Remove the inner finisher output tray lower limit switch assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher output tray lower limit switch assembly.

1. Disconnect one connector.


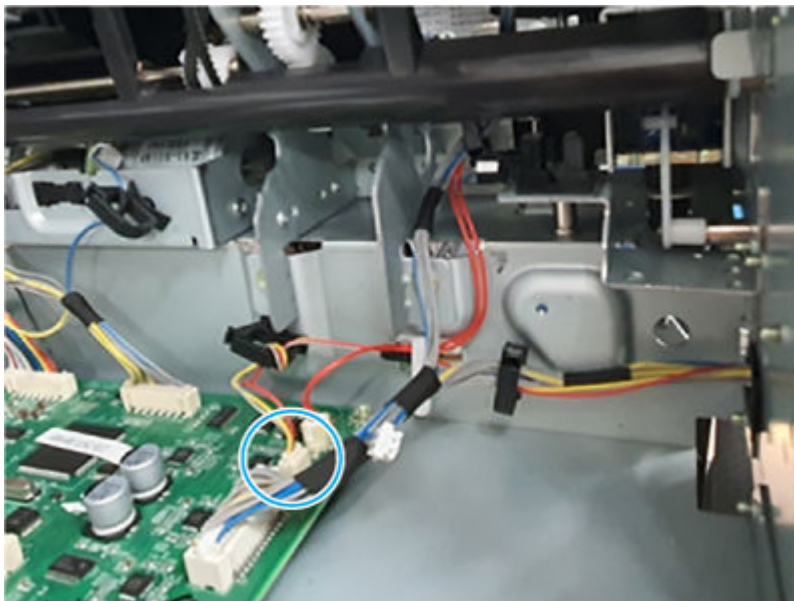
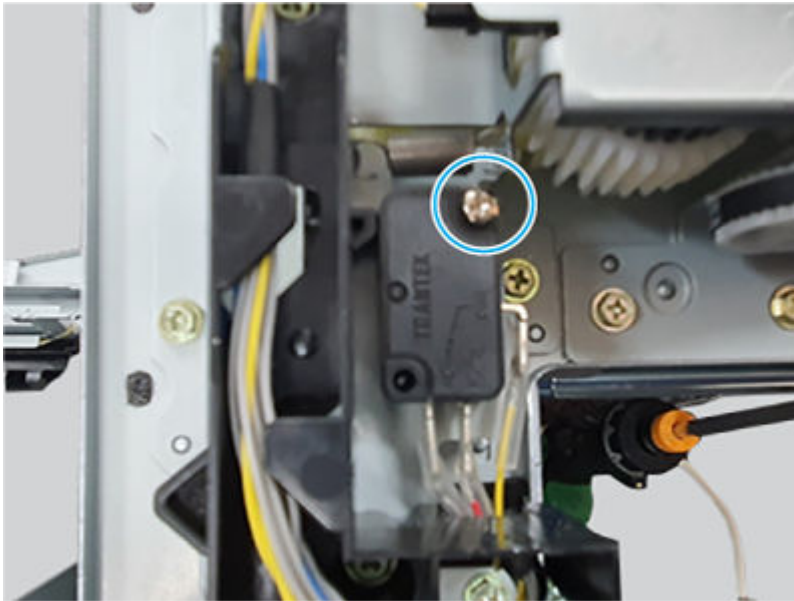
 **NOTE:** Release the wire harness from the retainers as necessary.

Figure 6-3111 Disconnect one connector



2. Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher output tray lower limit switch assembly.


Figure 6-3112 Remove the switch



5 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Output tray top of stack sensor kit

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher output tray top of stack sensor kit.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-372 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC82-01039A	Tray sensor kit (Output tray top of stack sensor kit)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

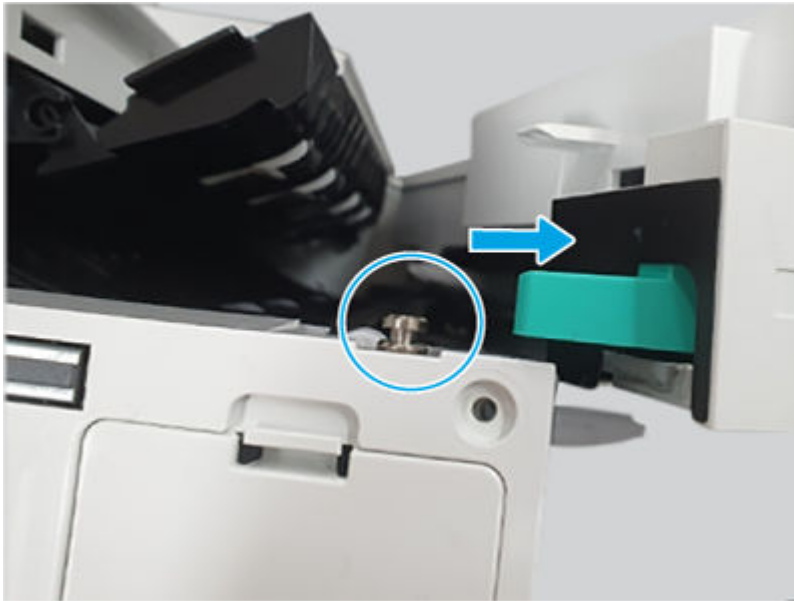
1 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3113 Open the punch cover



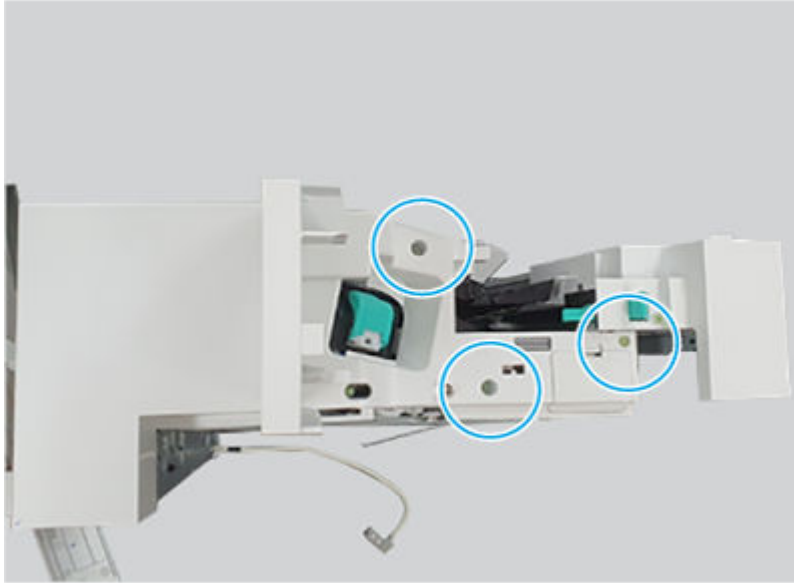
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3114 Remove the handle



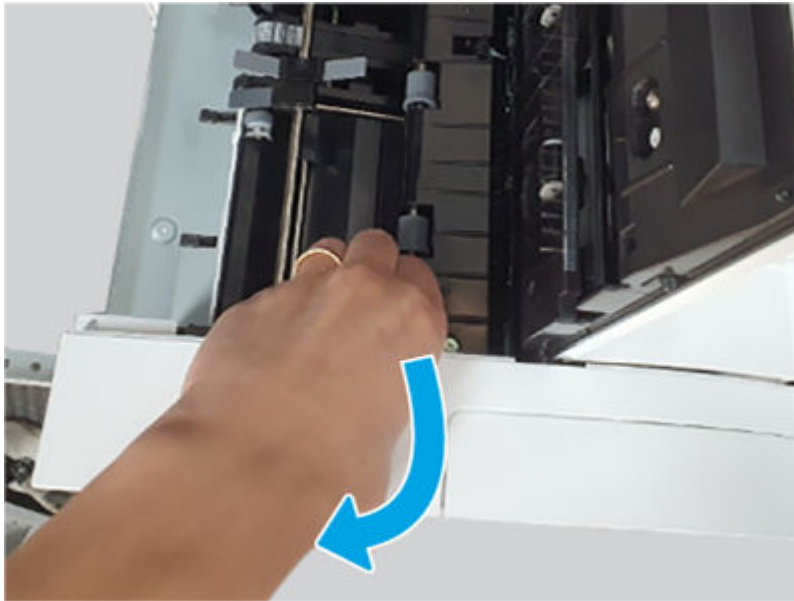
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3115 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3116 Remove the cover

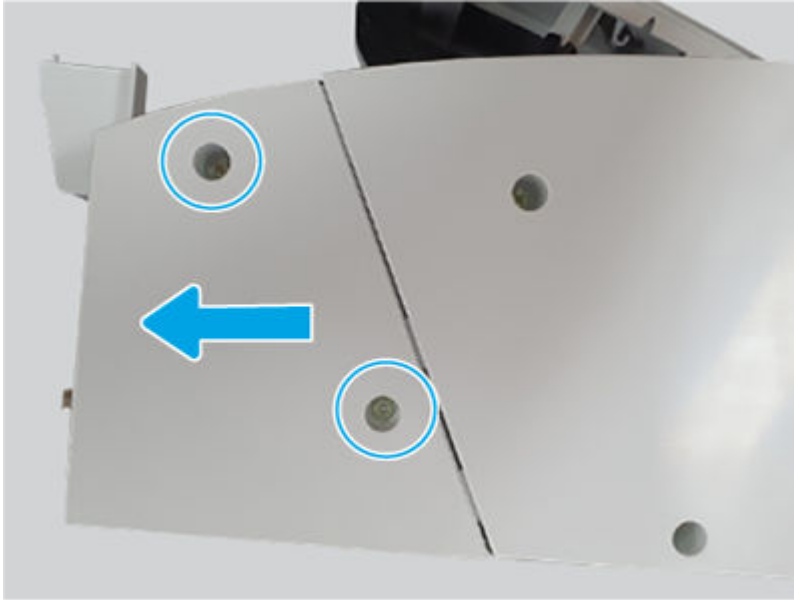


2 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3117 Remove the cover



3 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

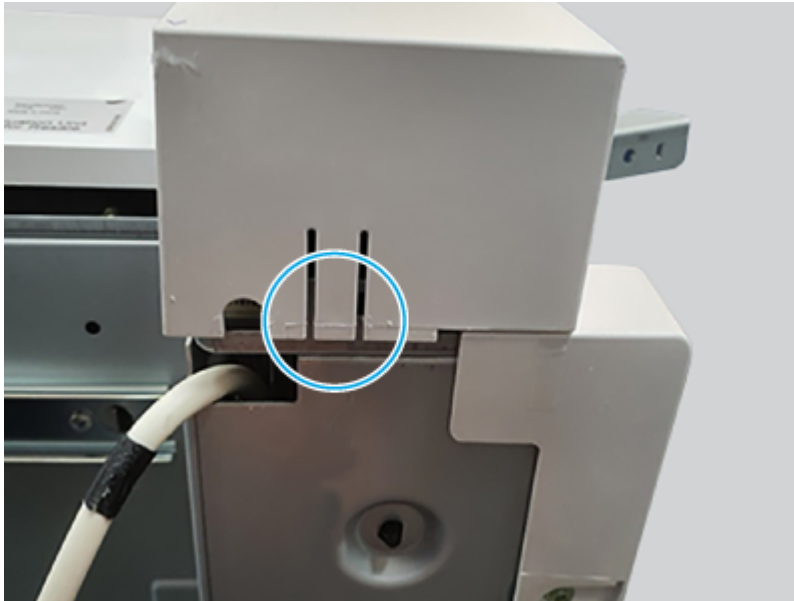
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3118 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3119 Remove the cover

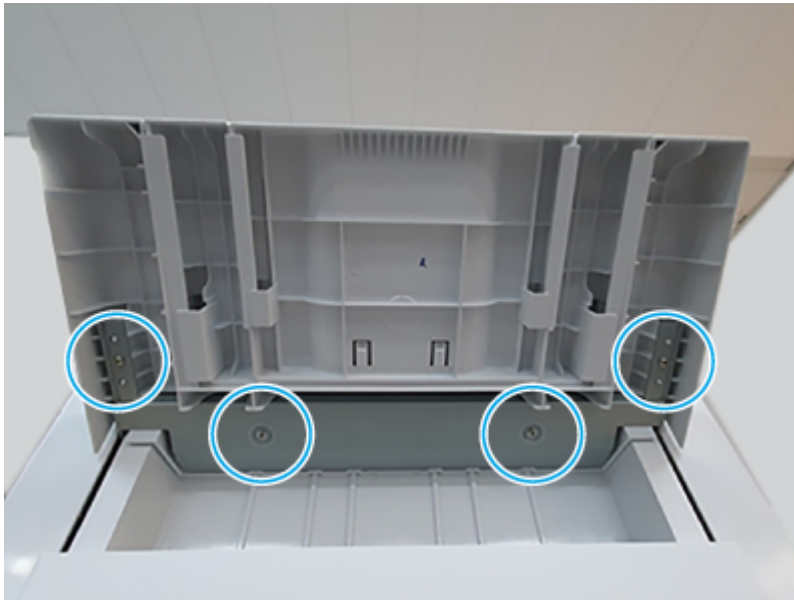


4 Remove the inner finisher output tray assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher output tray assembly.

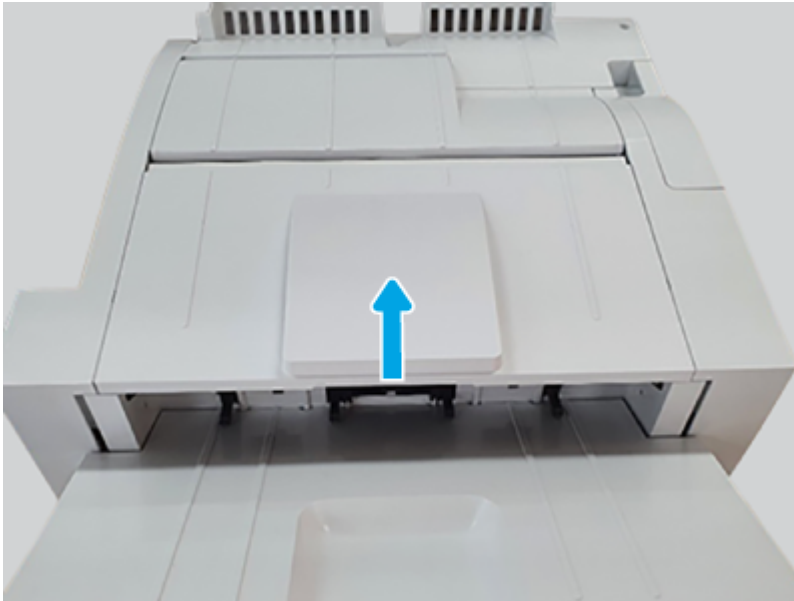
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-3120 Remove four screws



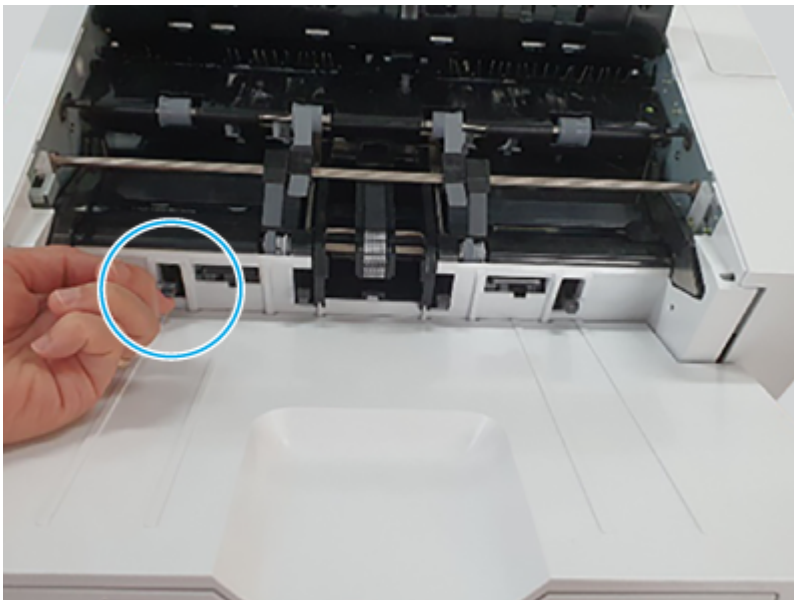
2. Open the top cover.

Figure 6-3121 Open the cover



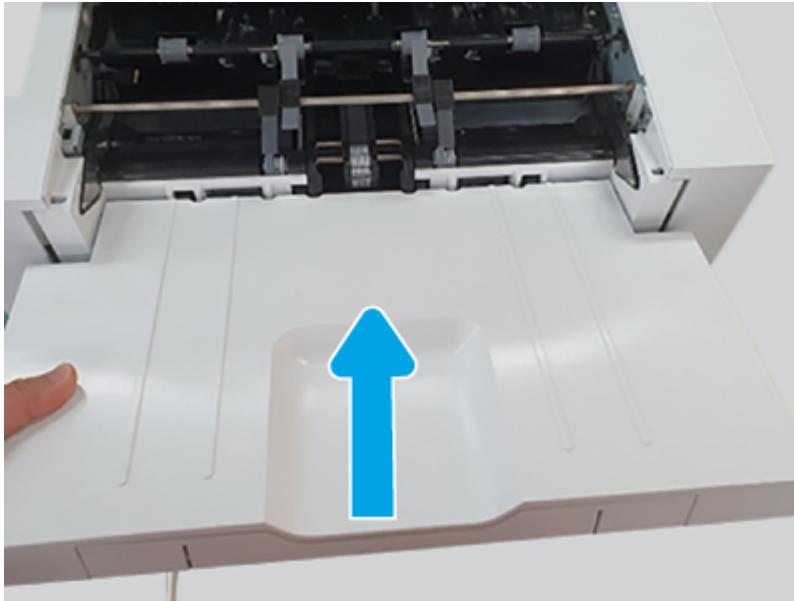
3. Press the paper holding actuator.

Figure 6-3122 Press the actuator



4. Lift up on the inner finisher output tray to remove it.

Figure 6-3123 Remove the tray

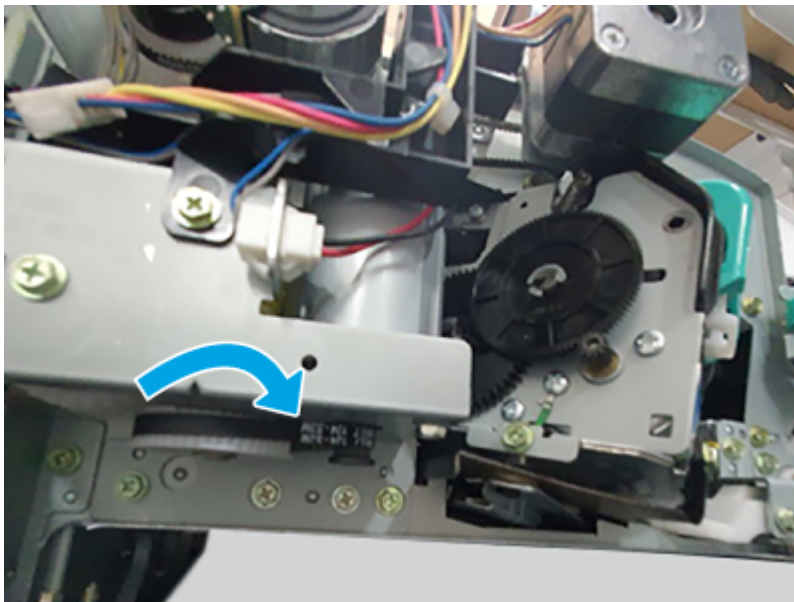


5 Remove the output tray frame

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher output tray frame.

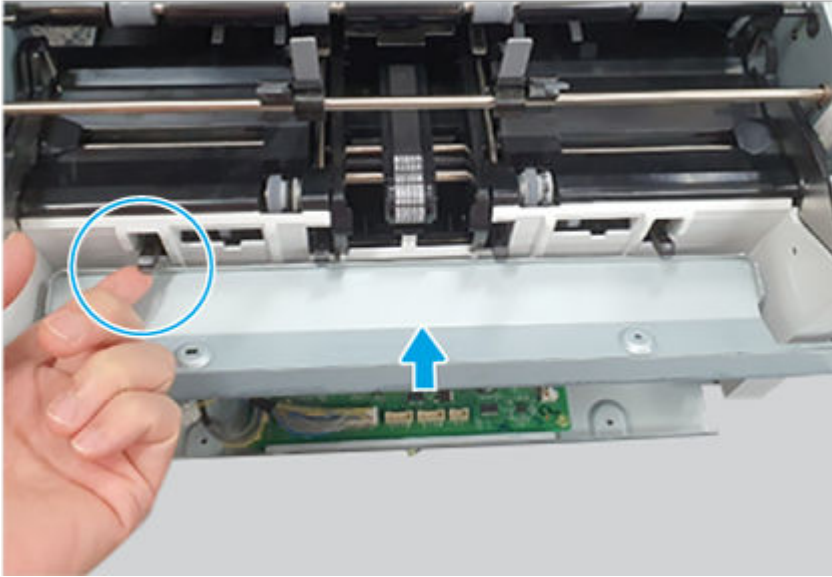
1. Rotate the output tray gear.

Figure 6-3124 Rotate the gear



2. Press the paper holding actuator, and then lift the inner finisher output tray frame up to remove it.

Figure 6-3125 Remove the frame

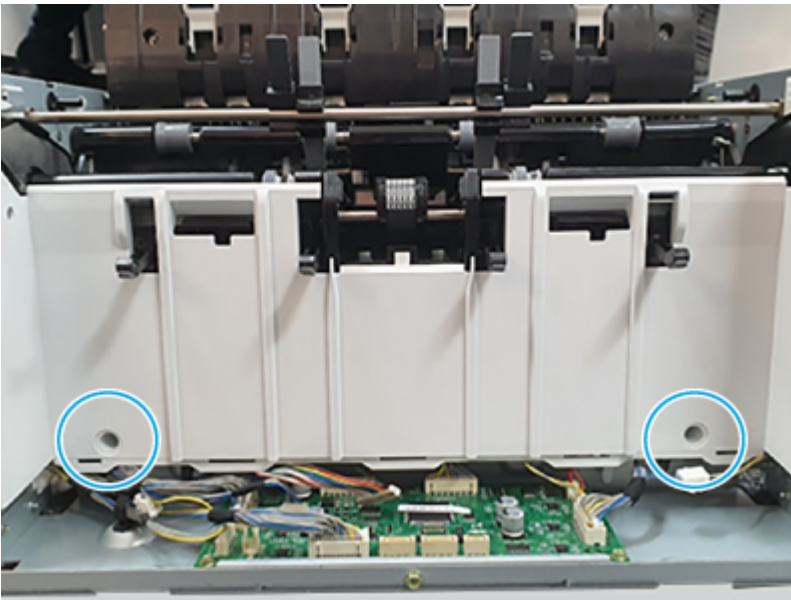


6 Remove the finisher sub stay assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher sub stay assembly.

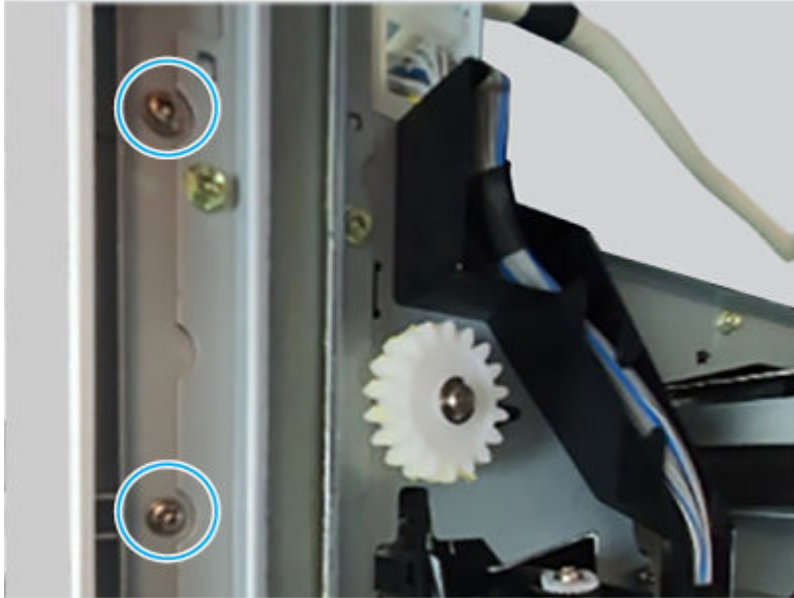
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-3126 Remove two screws



2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-3127 Remove two screws



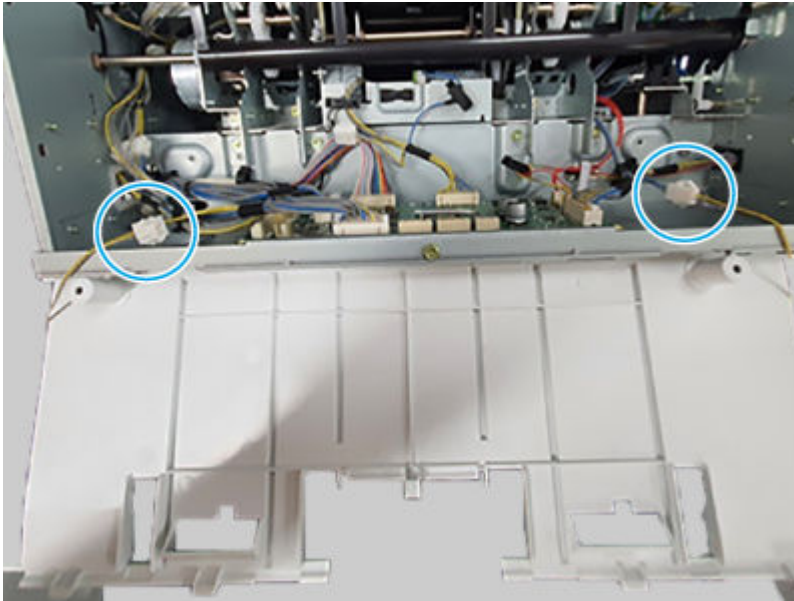
3. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-3128 Remove two screws



4. Disconnect two connectors, and then remove the inner finisher sub stay assembly.

Figure 6-3129 Remove the assembly

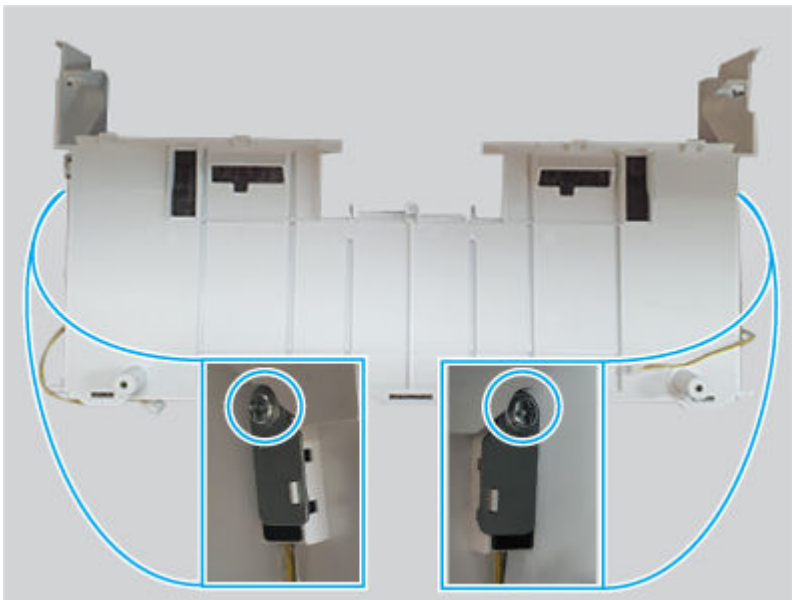


7 Remove the inner finisher output tray top of tray sensor kit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher output tray top of tray sensor kit.

- Remove two screws, and then remove the inner finisher output tray top of stack sensors.

Figure 6-3130 Remove the sensors



8 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Paper holding actuator

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher paper holding actuator.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 25 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-373 Part Information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01313A	Paper holding actuator

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

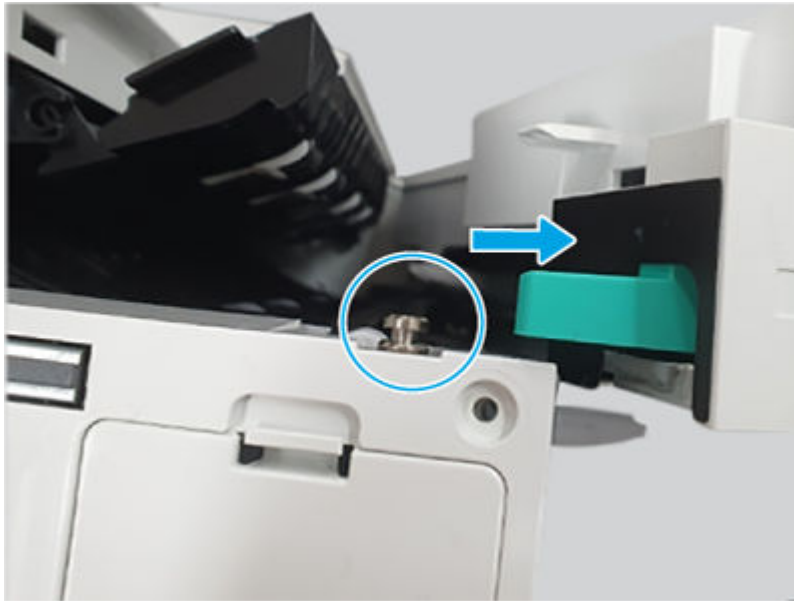
1 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3131 Open the punch cover



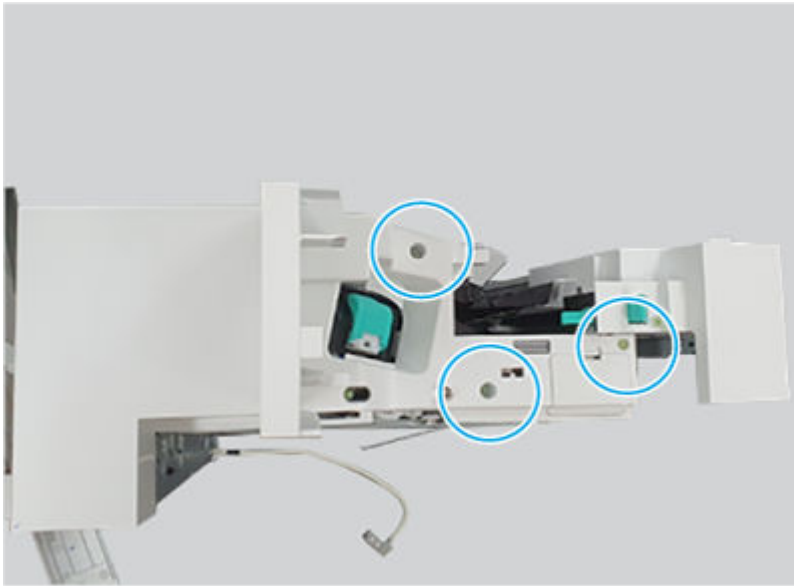
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3132 Remove the handle



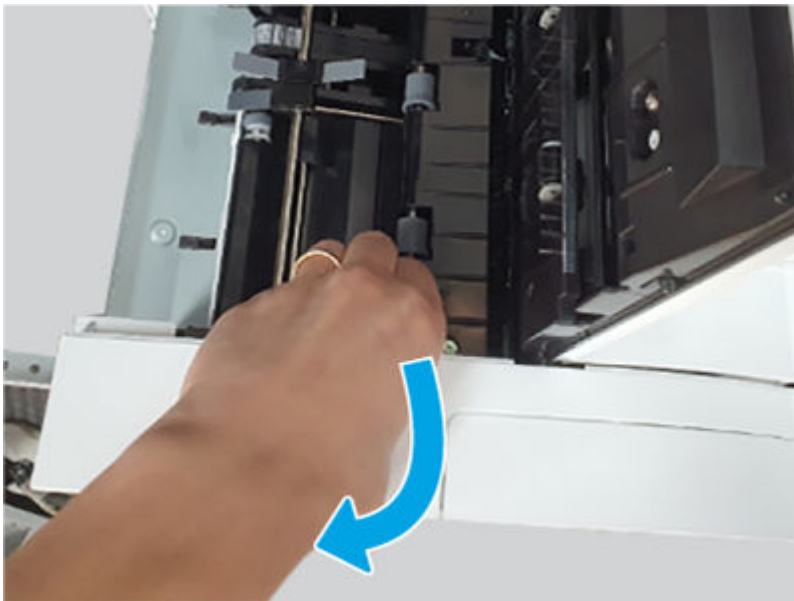
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3133 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3134 Remove the cover

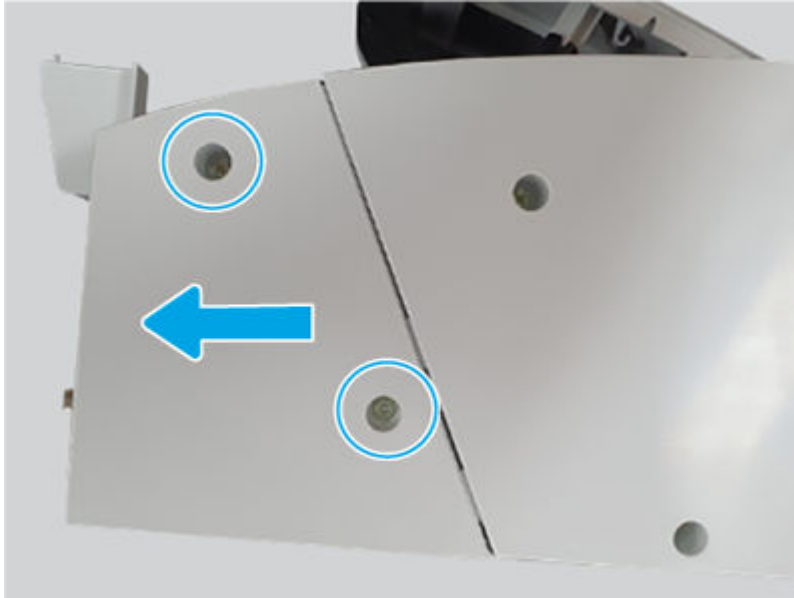


2 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3135 Remove the cover



3 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

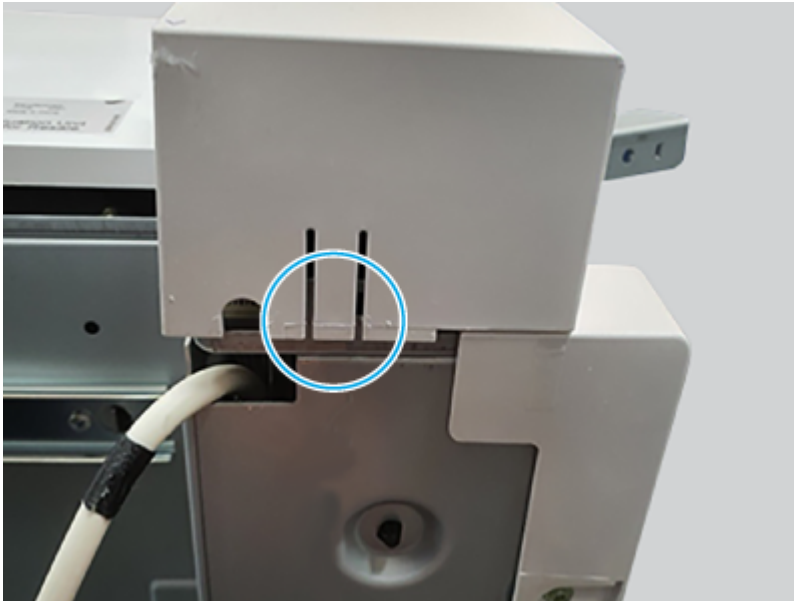
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3136 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3137 Remove the cover

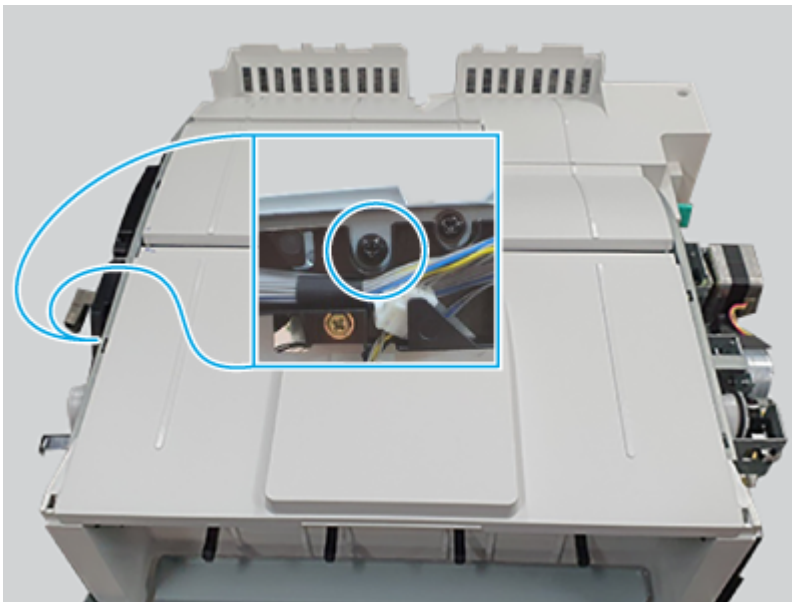


4 Remove the inner finisher top cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher top cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher top cover assembly.

Figure 6-3138 Remove the cover



5 Remove the inner finisher cable guide

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher cable guide.

- Remove three screws, and remove the inner finisher cable guide.


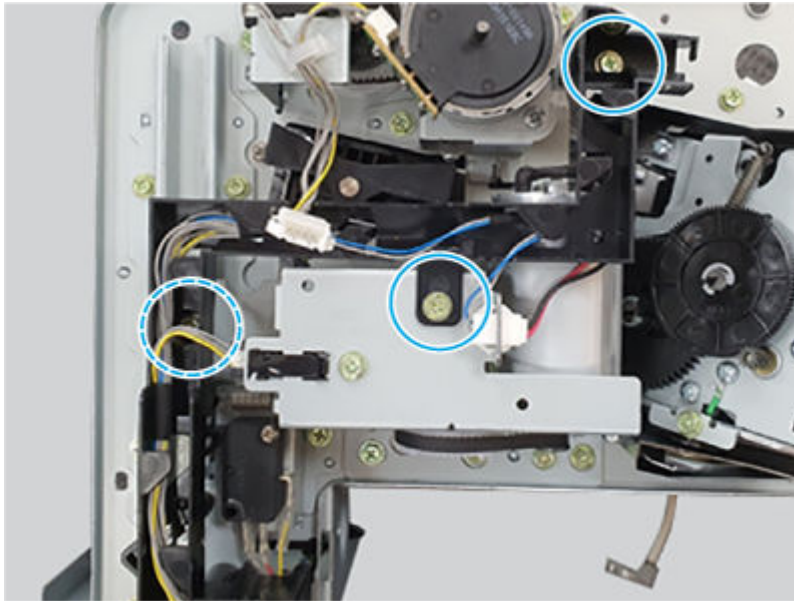
 **NOTE:** Remove the wire harness as necessary.

Figure 6-3139 Remove the guide

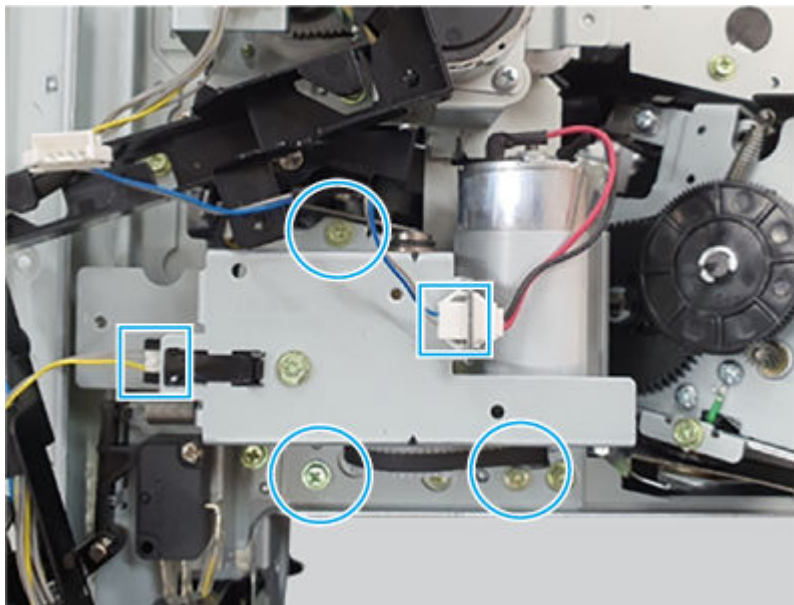


6 Remove the inner finisher output tray motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher output tray motor assembly.

1. Open the punch cover.
2. Disconnect two connectors, remove three screws, and then remove the inner finisher output tray motor assembly.

Figure 6-3140 Remove the assembly

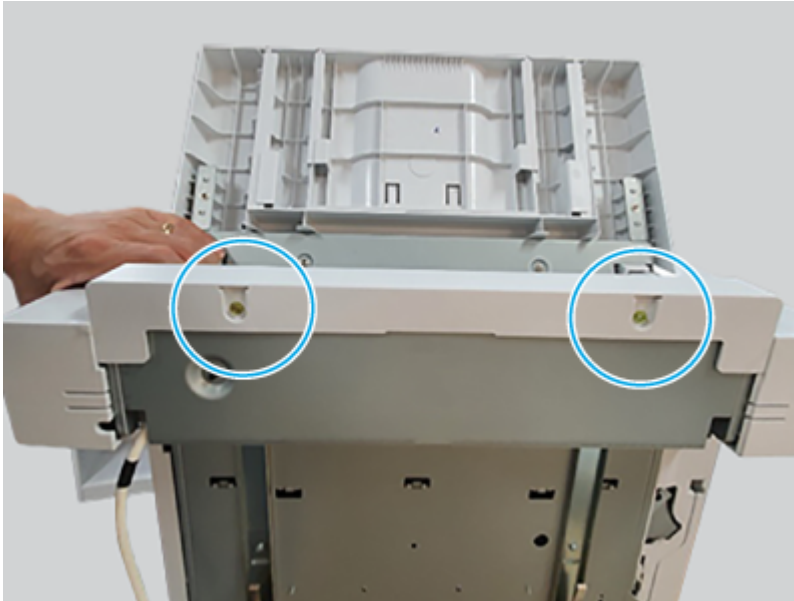


7 Remove the inner finisher PCA cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher PCA cover.

1. Lift up the inner finisher, and then remove two screws.

Figure 6-3141 Remove two screws



2. Remove the inner finisher PCA cover.

Figure 6-3142 Remove the cover



8 Remove the inner finisher output tray lower limit switch assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher output tray lower limit switch assembly.

1. Disconnect one connector.


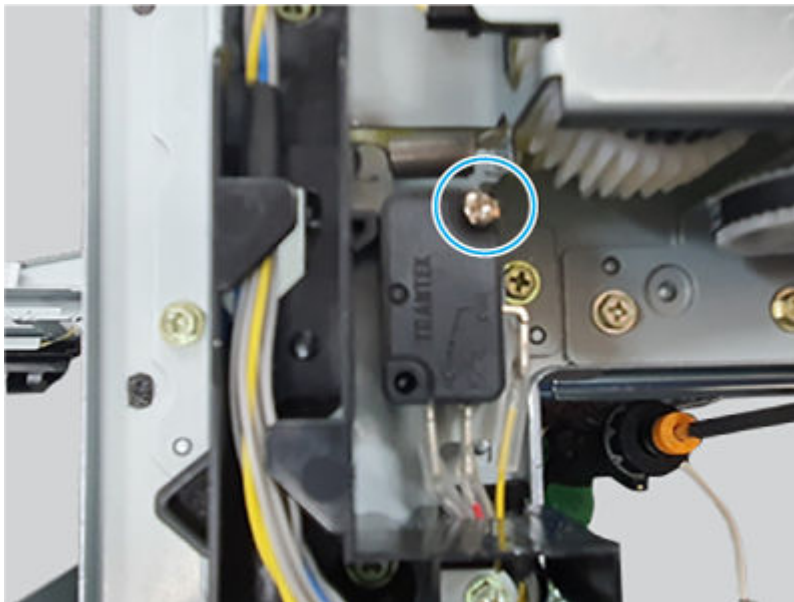
 **NOTE:** Release the wire harness from the retainers as necessary.

Figure 6-3143 Disconnect one connector



2. Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher output tray lower limit switch assembly.

Figure 6-3144 Remove the switch

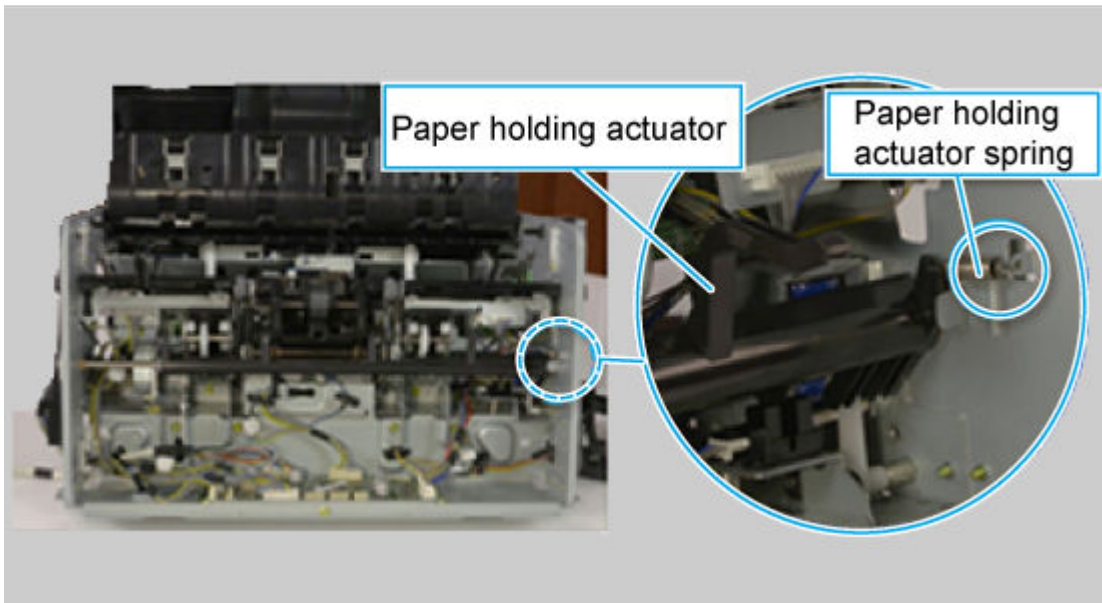


9 Remove the inner finisher paper holding actuator

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher paper holding actuator.

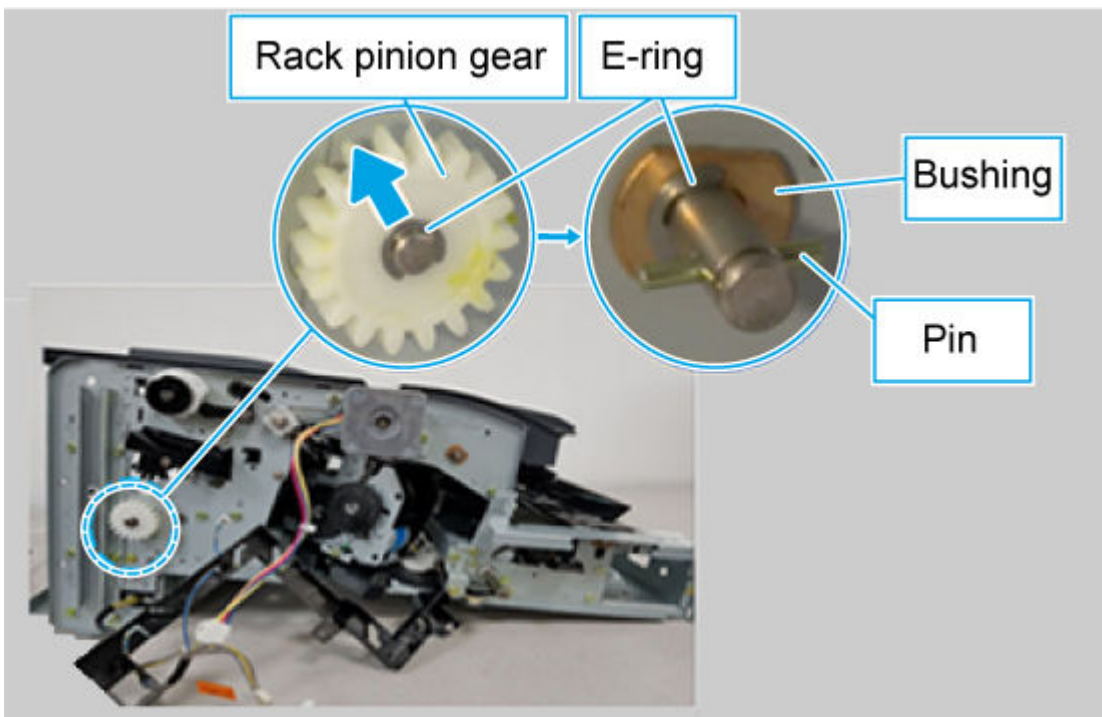
1. Remove one spring.

Figure 6-3145 Remove one spring



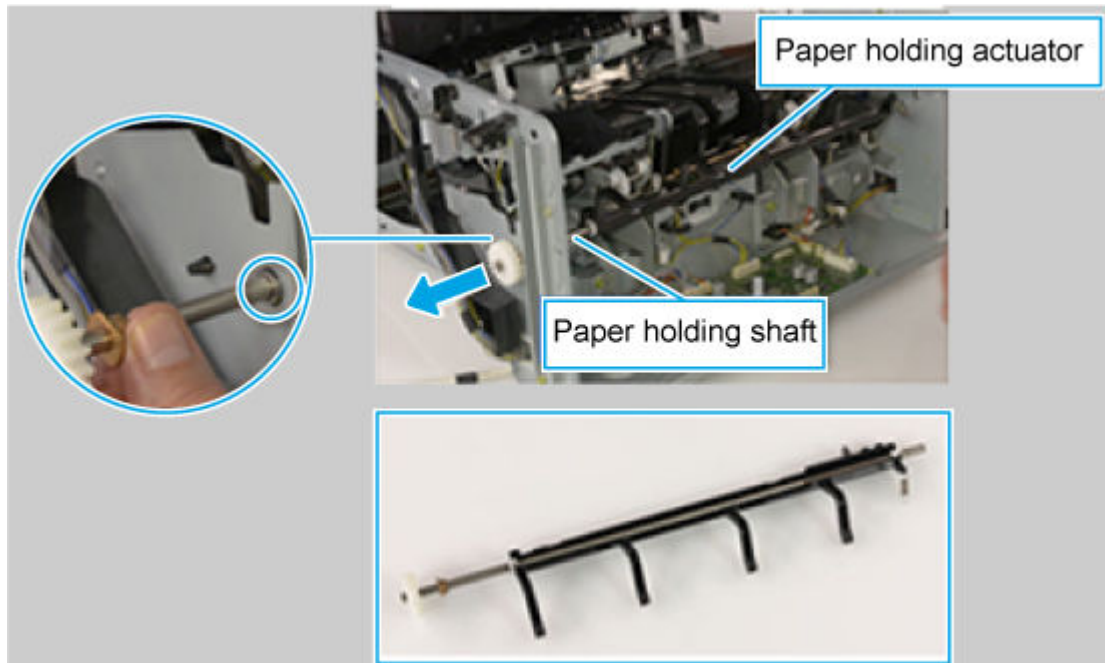
2. Use a pair of tweezers to remove two e-rings, and then remove the pin and bushing.

Figure 6-3146 Remove the e-rings, pin, and bushing



3. Remove the inner finisher paper holding actuator.

Figure 6-3147 Remove the actuator



10 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Paper holding kit

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher paper holding kit.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-374 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC90-01314A	Paper holding kit

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3148 Open the punch cover



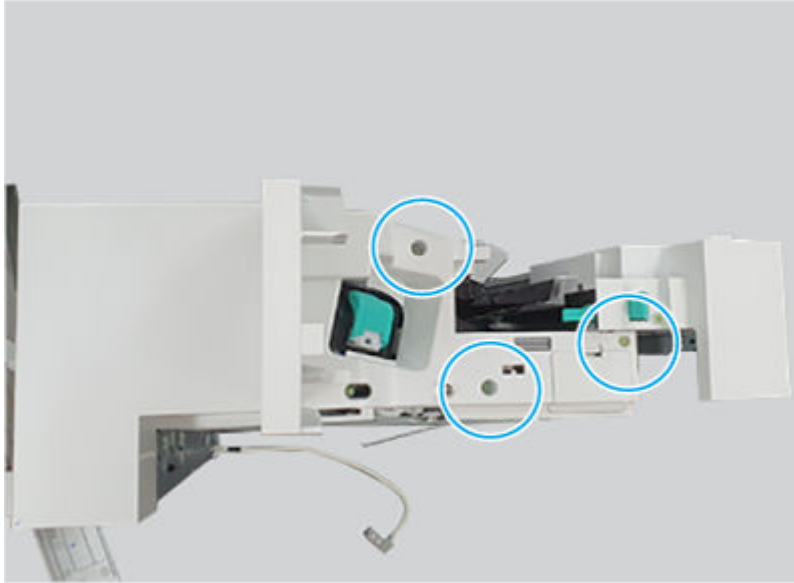
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3149 Remove the handle



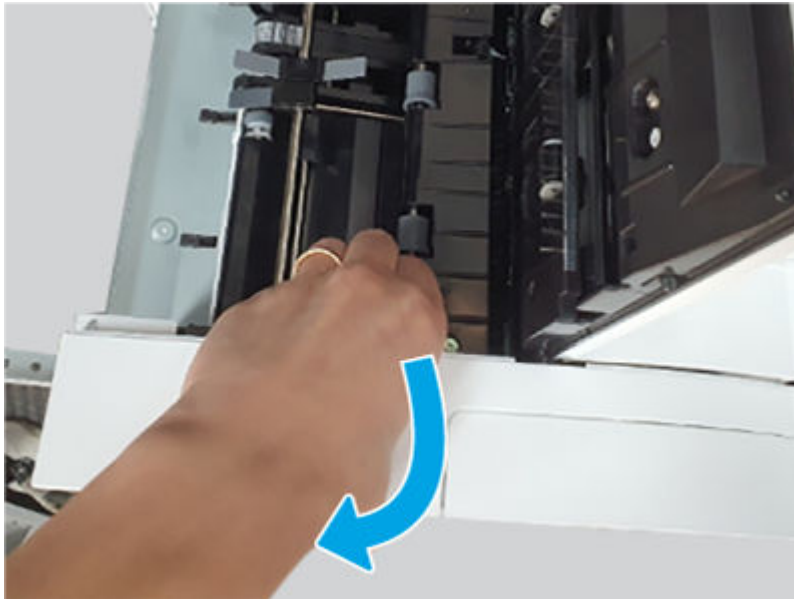
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3150 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3151 Remove the cover

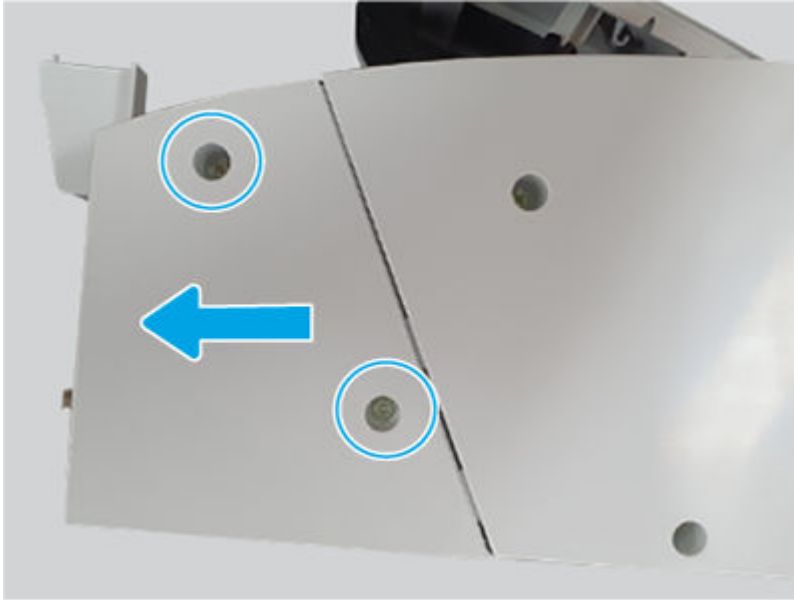


2 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3152 Remove the cover



3 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

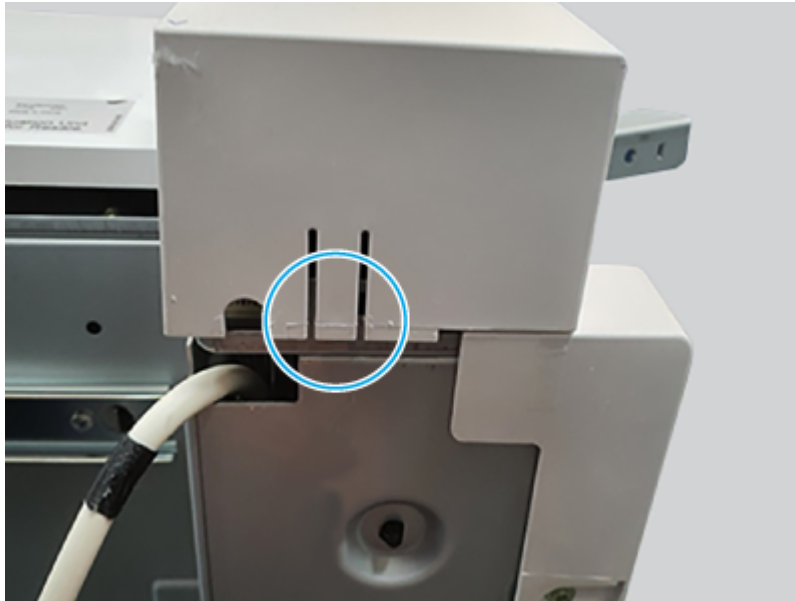
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3153 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3154 Remove the cover

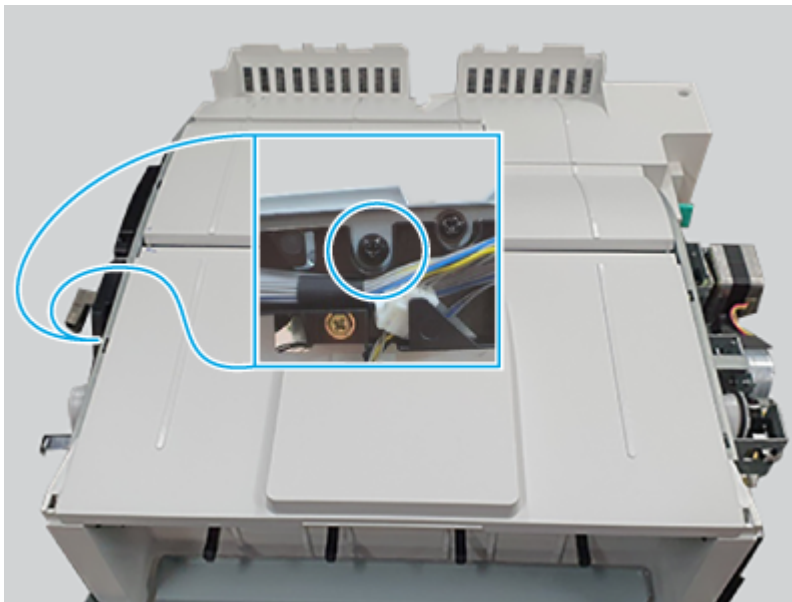


4 Remove the inner finisher top cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher top cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher top cover assembly.

Figure 6-3155 Remove the cover



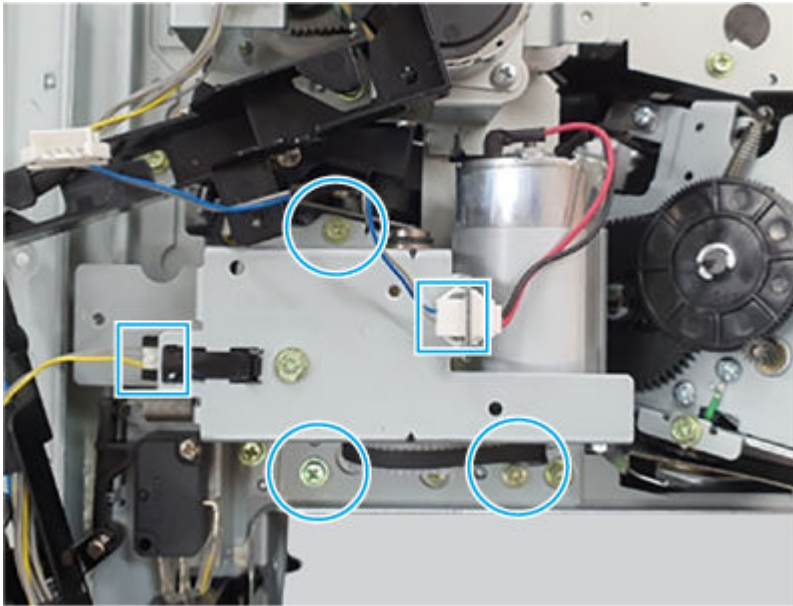
5 Remove the inner finisher output tray motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher output tray motor assembly.

1. Open the punch cover.

2. Disconnect two connectors, remove three screws, and then remove the inner finisher output tray motor assembly.

Figure 6-3156 Remove the assembly



6 Remove the inner finisher output tray lower limit switch assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher output tray lower limit switch assembly.

1. Disconnect one connector.


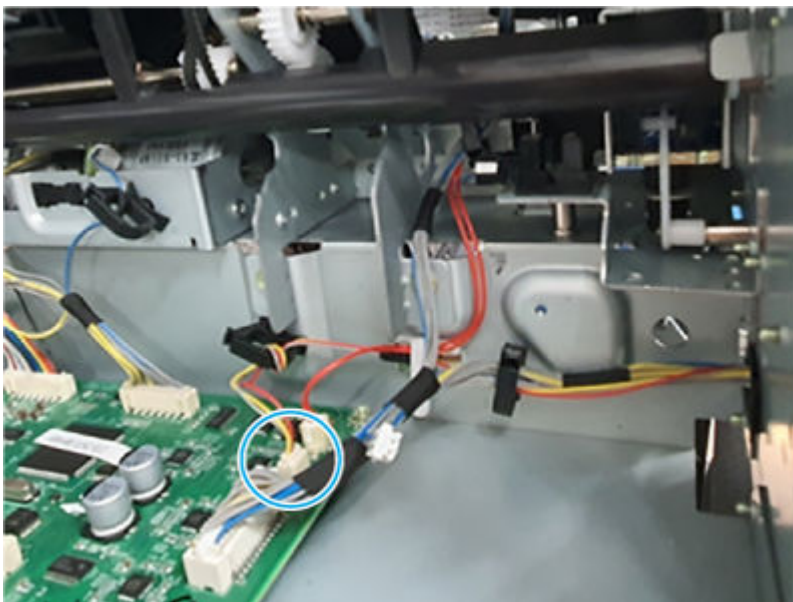
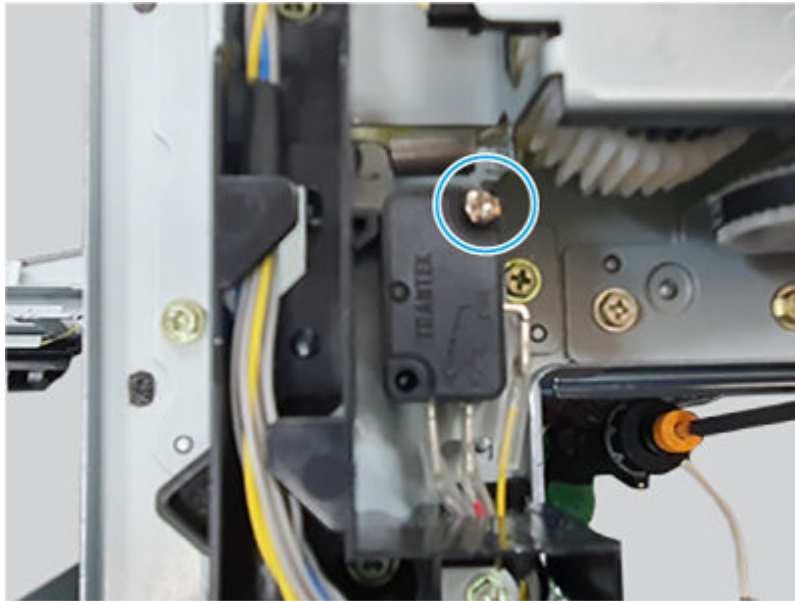
 **NOTE:** Release the wire harness from the retainers as necessary.

Figure 6-3157 Disconnect one connector



2. Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher output tray lower limit switch assembly.

Figure 6-3158 Remove the switch

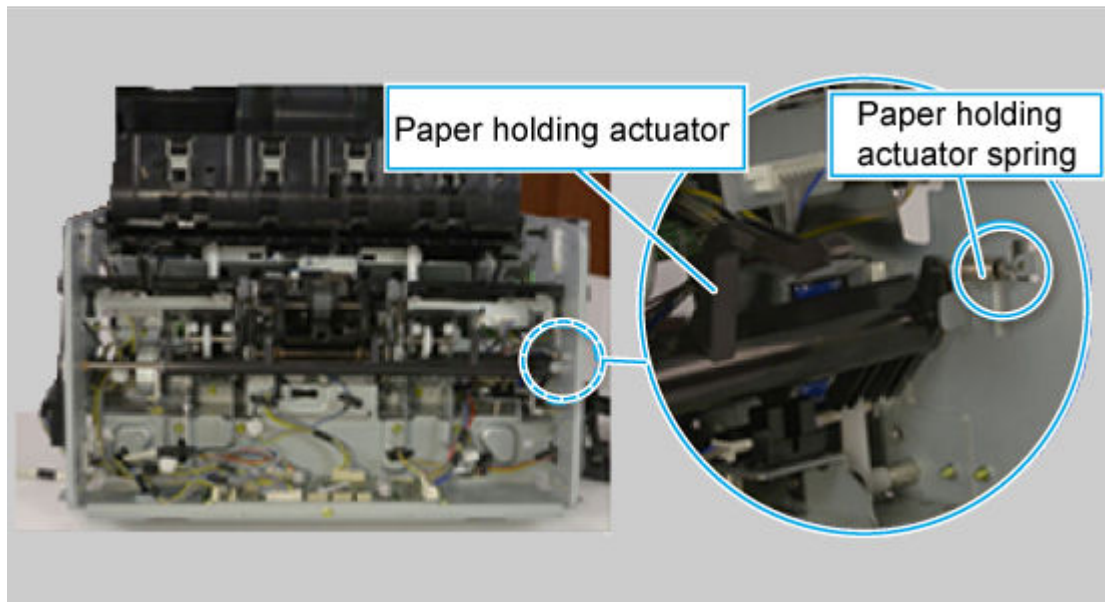


7 Remove the inner finisher paper holding actuator

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher paper holding actuator.

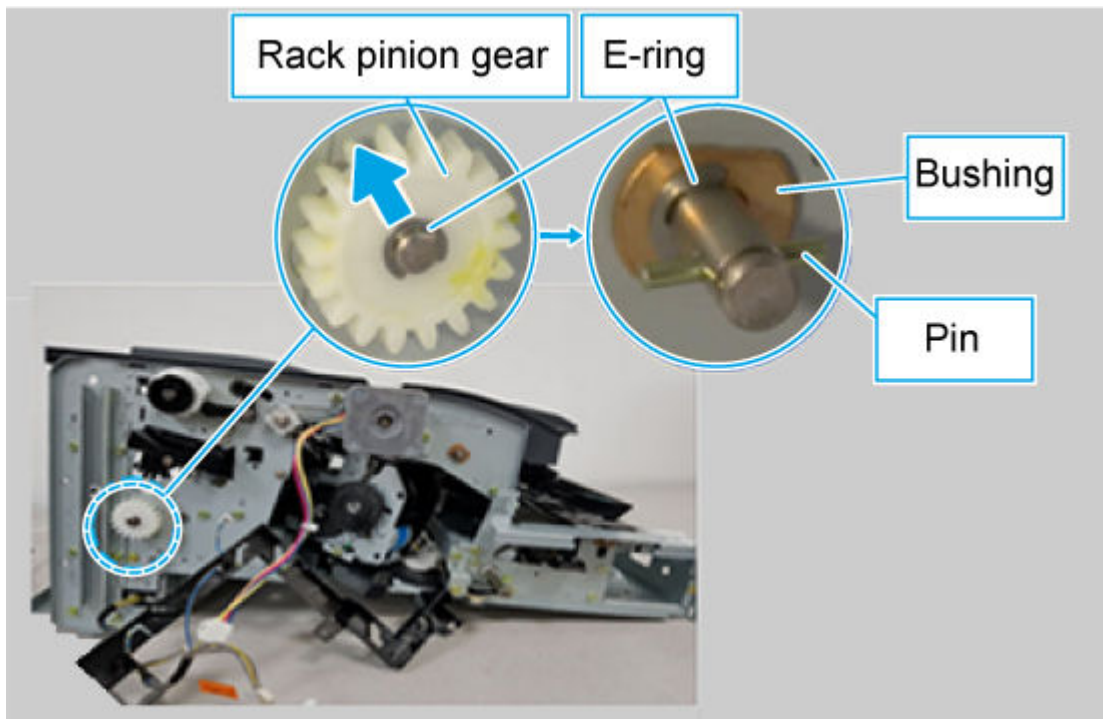
1. Remove one spring.

Figure 6-3159 Remove one spring



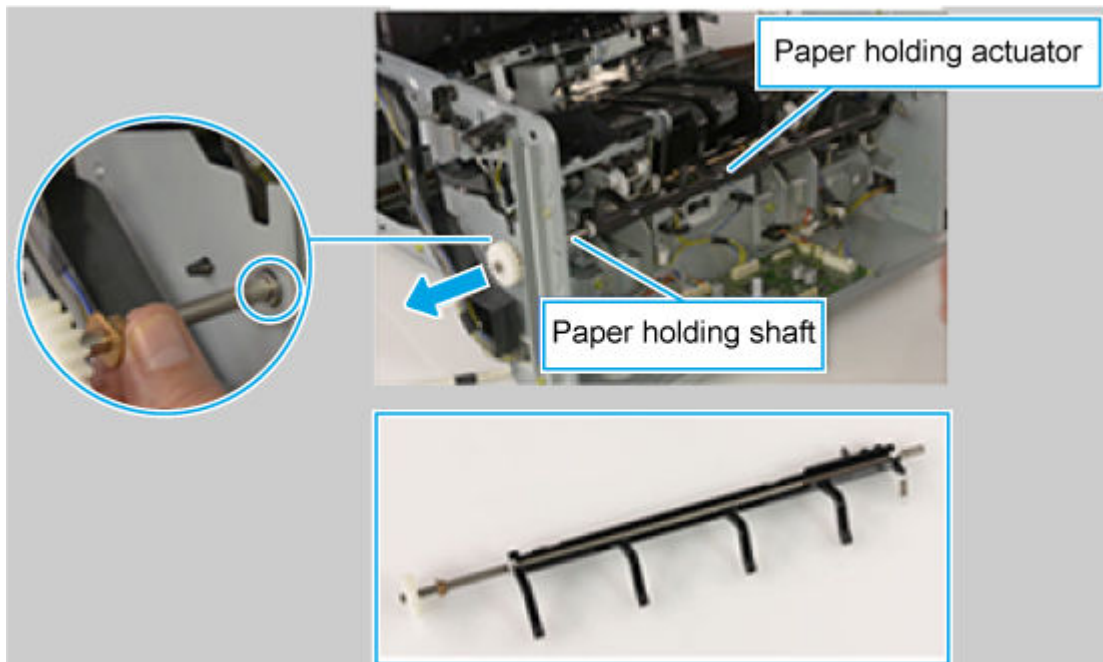
2. Use a pair of tweezers to remove two e-rings, and then remove the pin and bushing.

Figure 6-3160 Remove the e-rings, pin, and bushing



3. Remove the inner finisher paper holding actuator.

Figure 6-3161 Remove the actuator

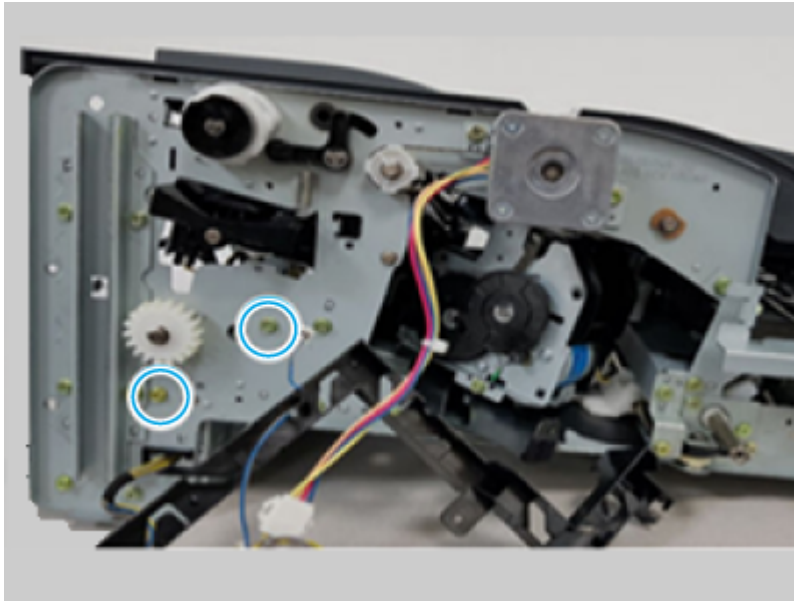


8 Remove the inner finisher paper holding kit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher paper holding kit.

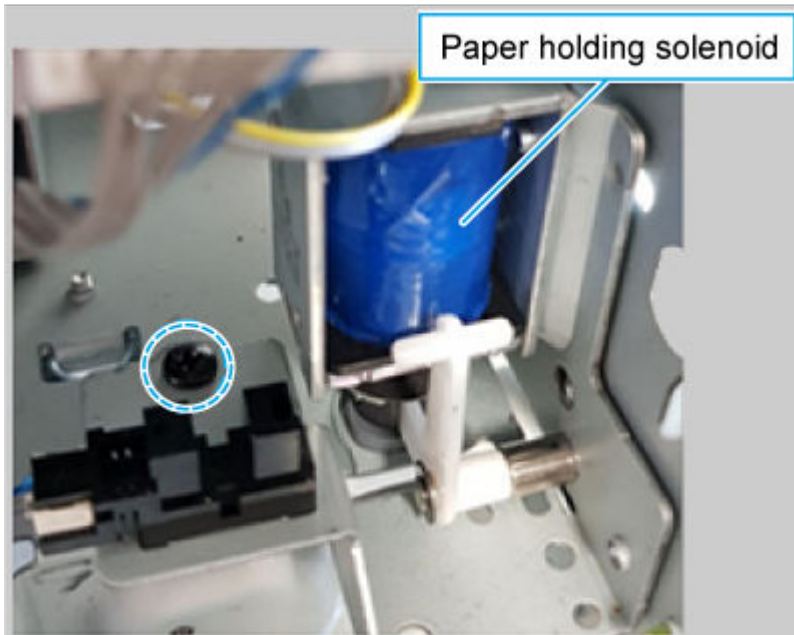
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-3162 Remove two screws



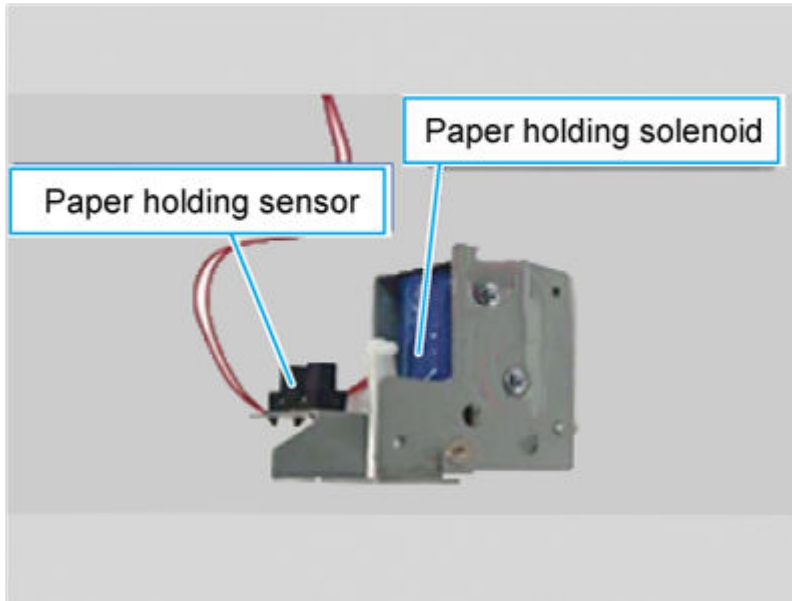
2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-3163 Remove one screw



3. Remove the inner finisher paper holding kit.

Figure 6-3164 Remove the kit



9 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Paper holding solenoid

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher paper holding solenoid.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 25 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-375 Part Information

Part number	Part description
JC33-00037A	Solenoid, TDS (Paper holding solenoid)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

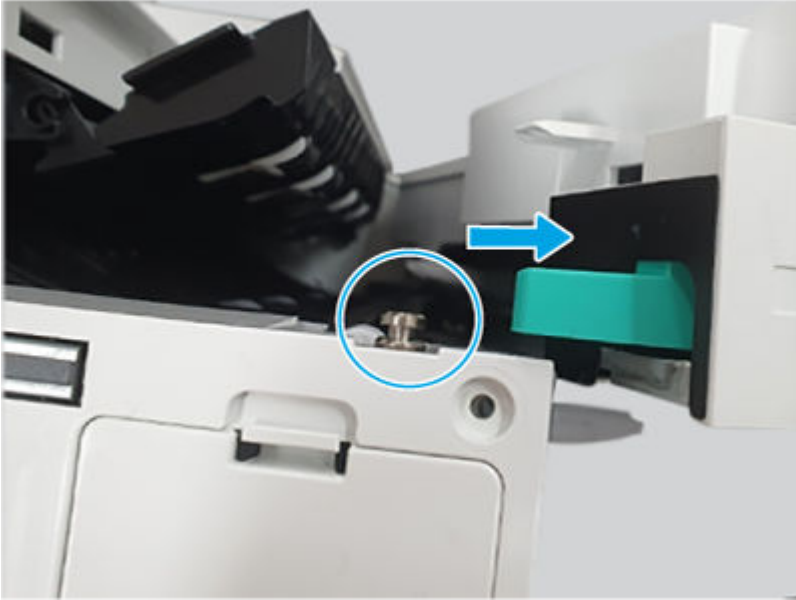
1 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3165 Open the punch cover



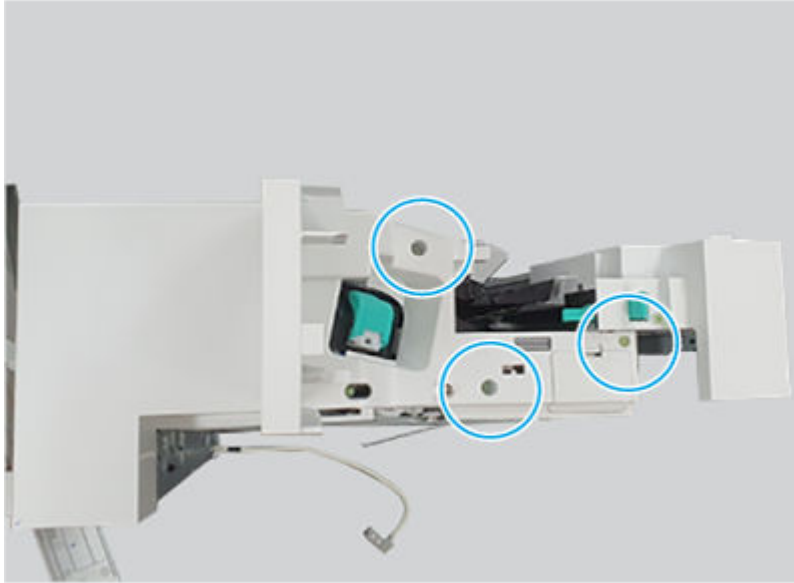
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3166 Remove the handle



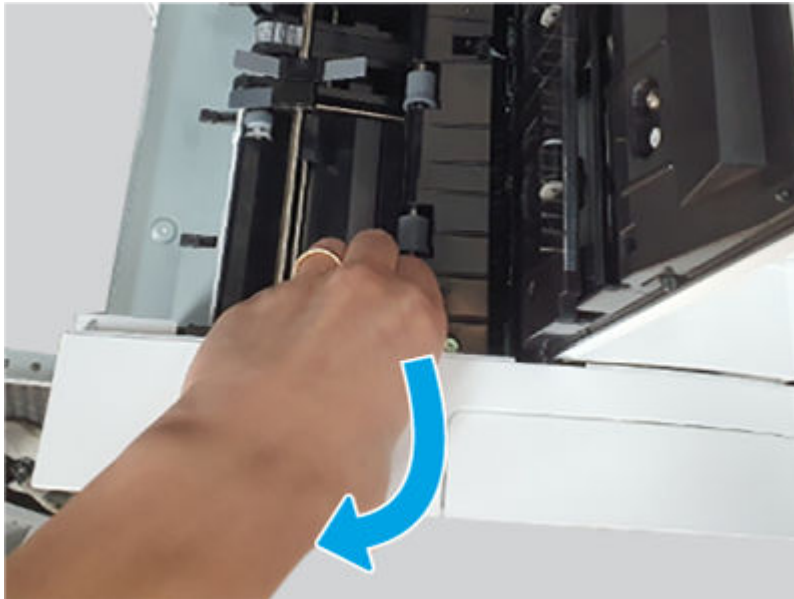
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3167 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3168 Remove the cover

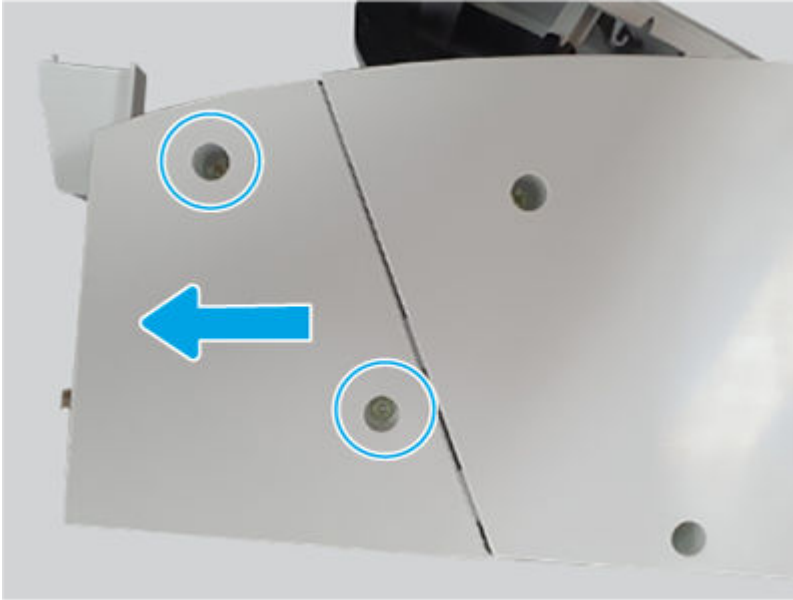


2 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3169 Remove the cover



3 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

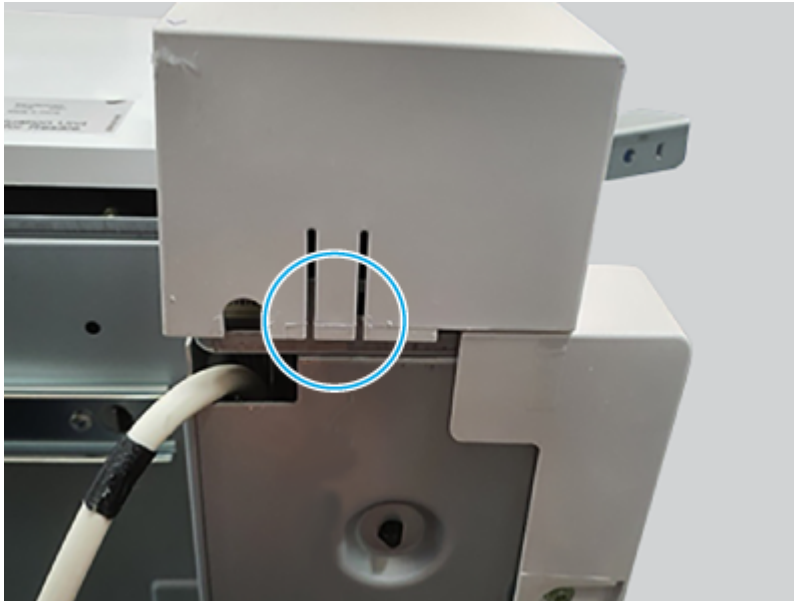
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3170 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3171 Remove the cover

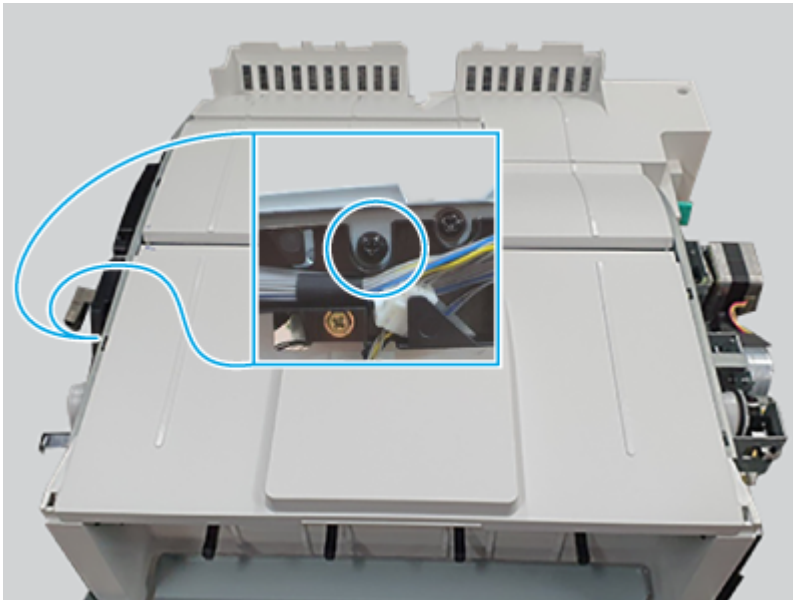


4 Remove the inner finisher top cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher top cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher top cover assembly.

Figure 6-3172 Remove the cover



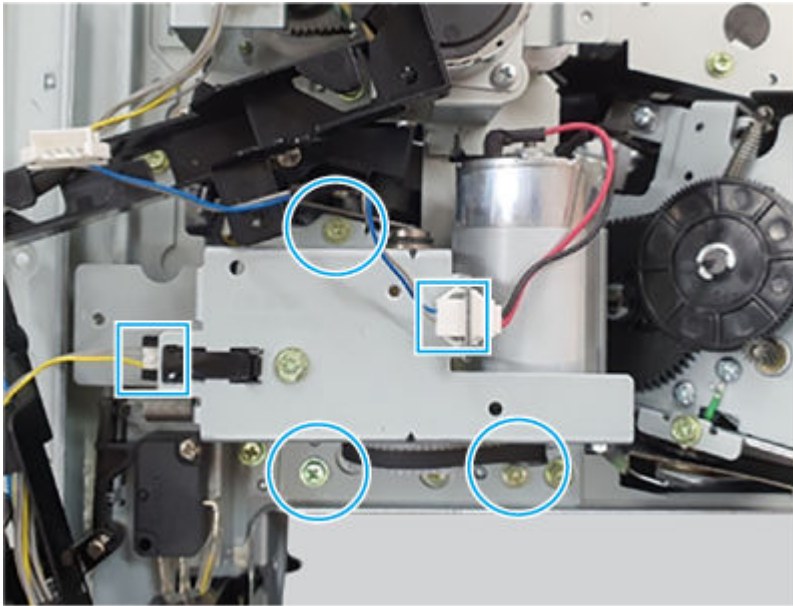
5 Remove the inner finisher output tray motor assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher output tray motor assembly.

1. Open the punch cover.

2. Disconnect two connectors, remove three screws, and then remove the inner finisher output tray motor assembly.

Figure 6-3173 Remove the assembly



6 Remove the inner finisher output tray lower limit switch assembly

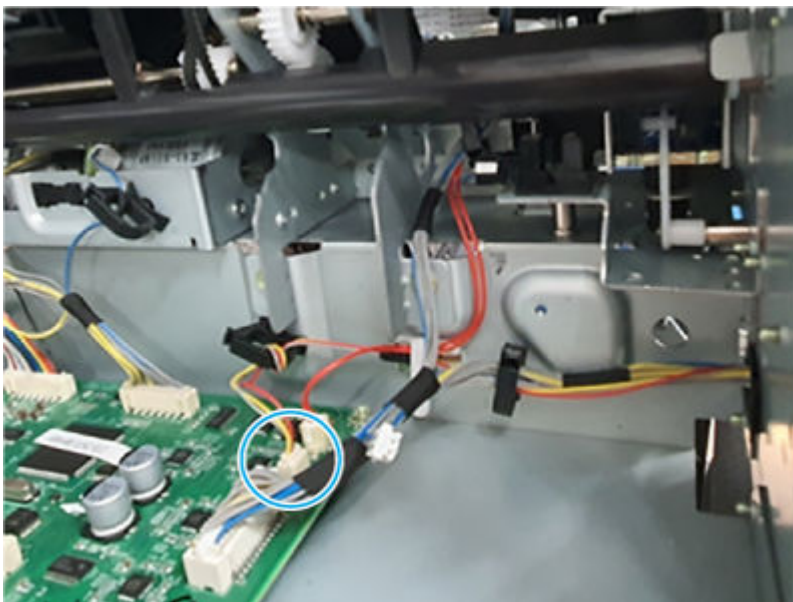
Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher output tray lower limit switch assembly.

1. Disconnect one connector.



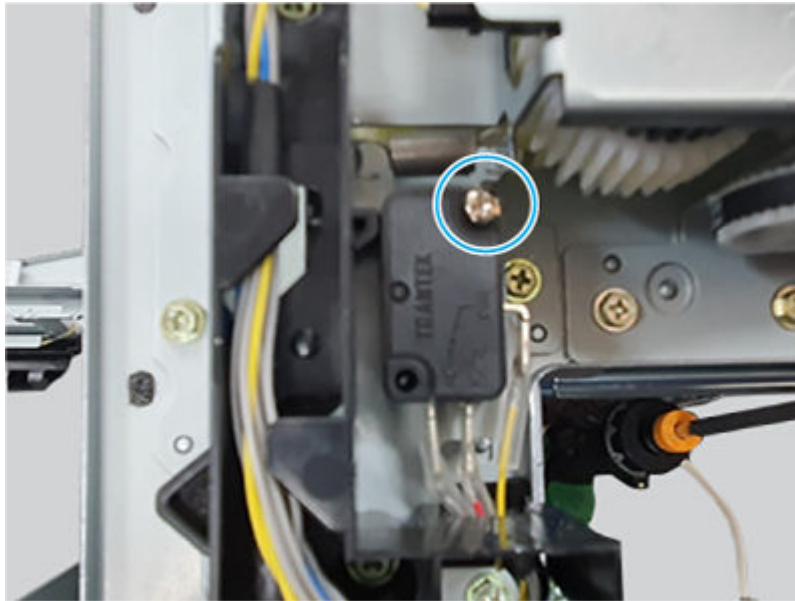
NOTE: Release the wire harness from the retainers as necessary.

Figure 6-3174 Disconnect one connector



2. Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher output tray lower limit switch assembly.

Figure 6-3175 Remove the switch

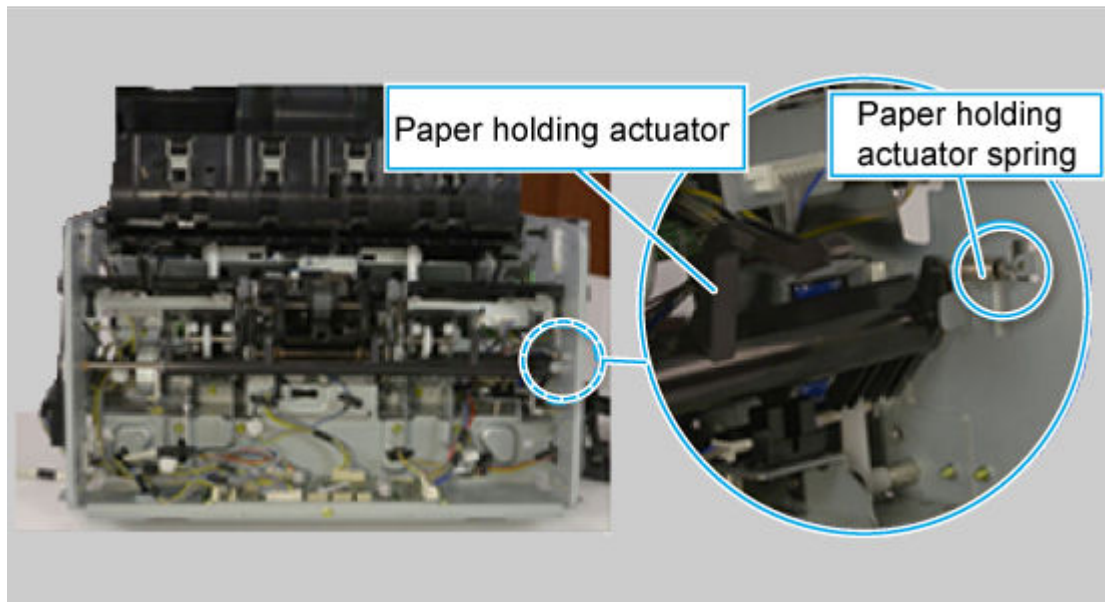


7 Remove the inner finisher paper holding actuator

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher paper holding actuator.

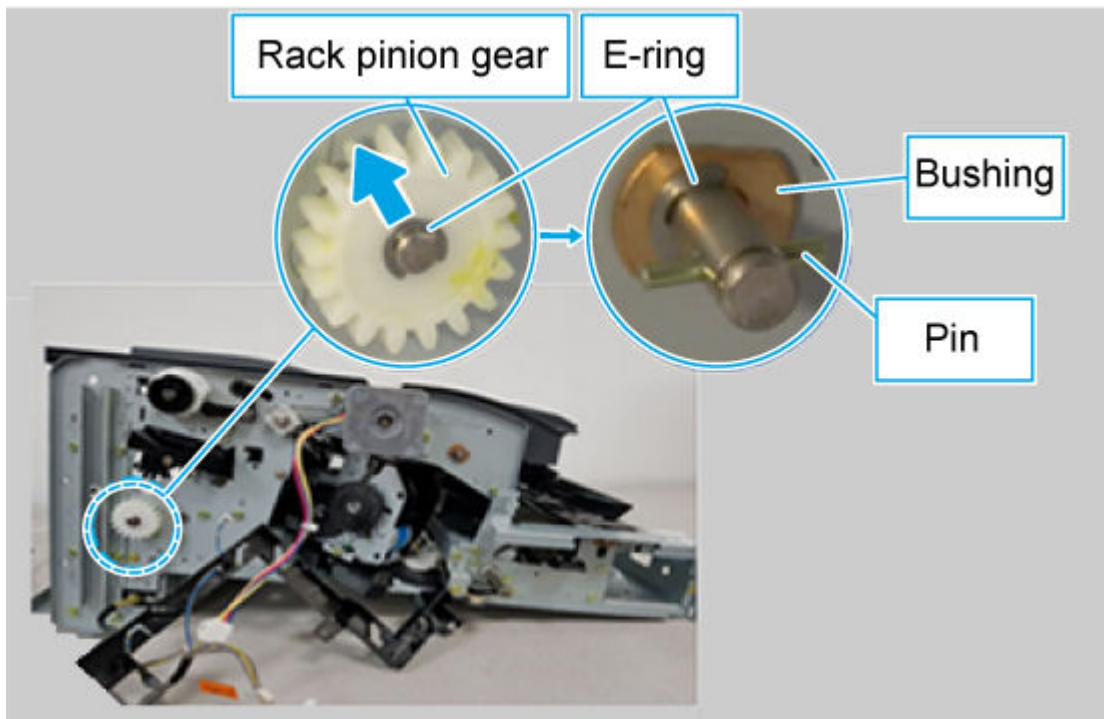
1. Remove one spring.

Figure 6-3176 Remove one spring



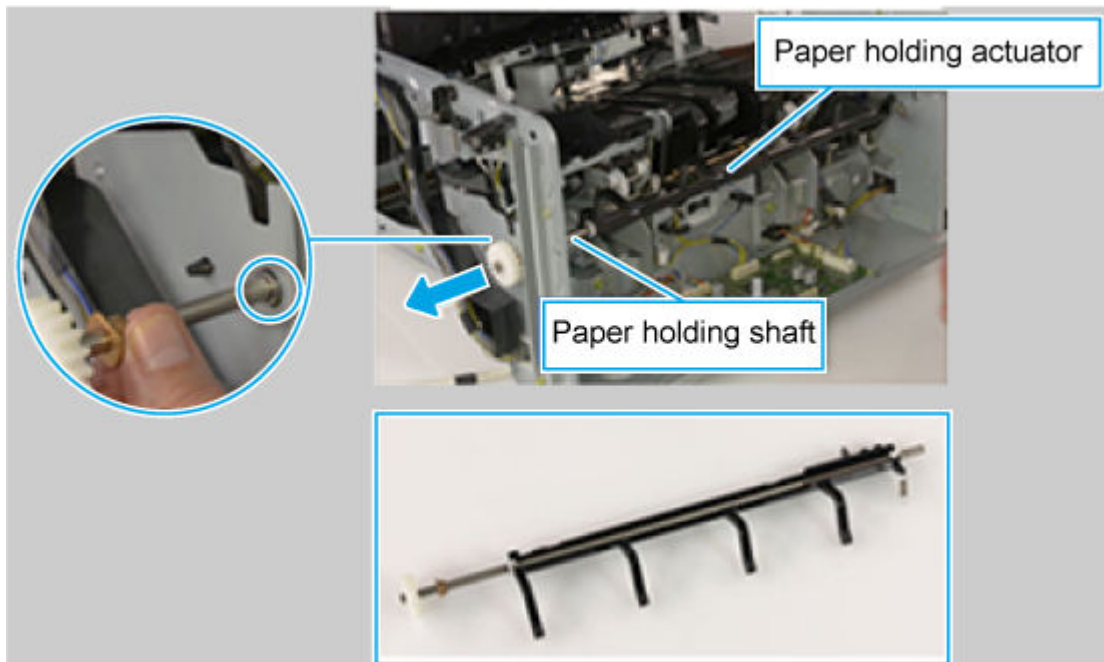
2. Use a pair of tweezers to remove two e-rings, and then remove the pin and bushing.

Figure 6-3177 Remove the e-rings, pin, and bushing



3. Remove the inner finisher paper holding actuator.

Figure 6-3178 Remove the actuator

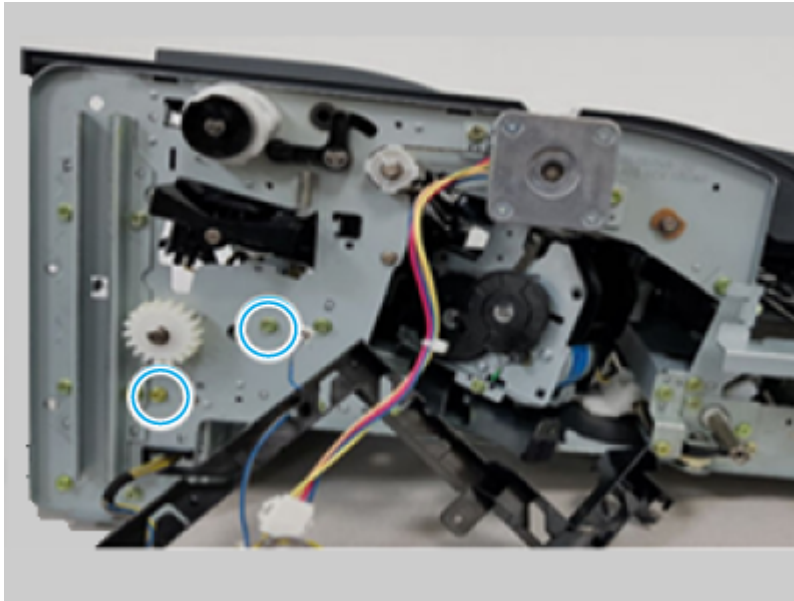


8 Remove the inner finisher paper holding kit

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher paper holding kit.

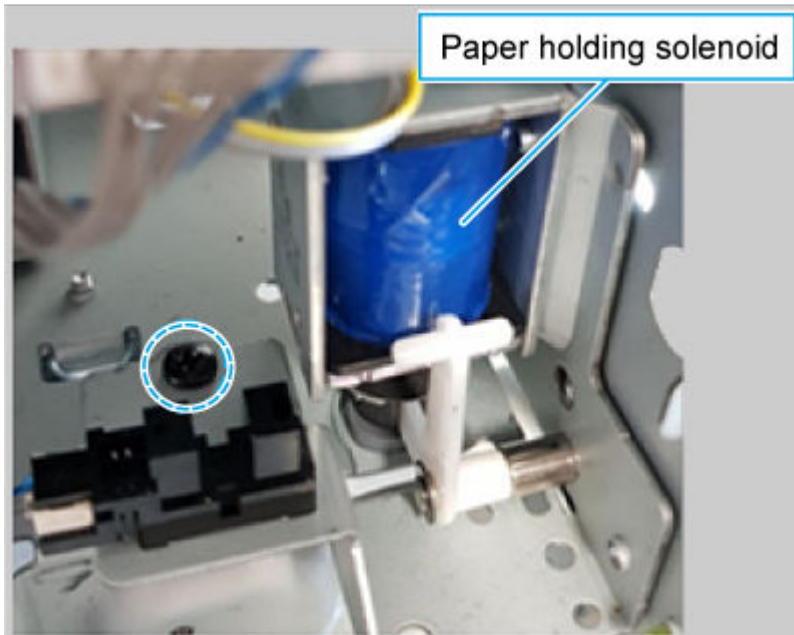
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-3179 Remove two screws



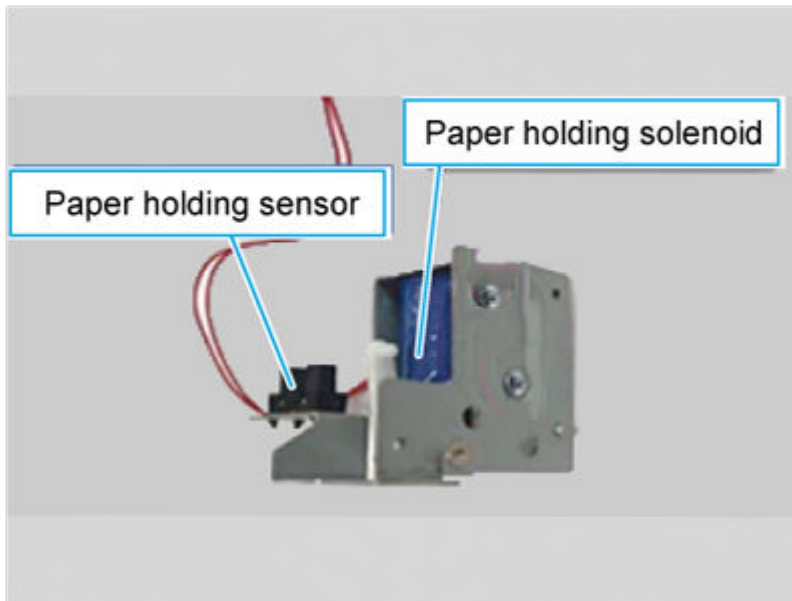
2. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-3180 Remove one screw



3. Remove the inner finisher paper holding kit.

Figure 6-3181 Remove the kit

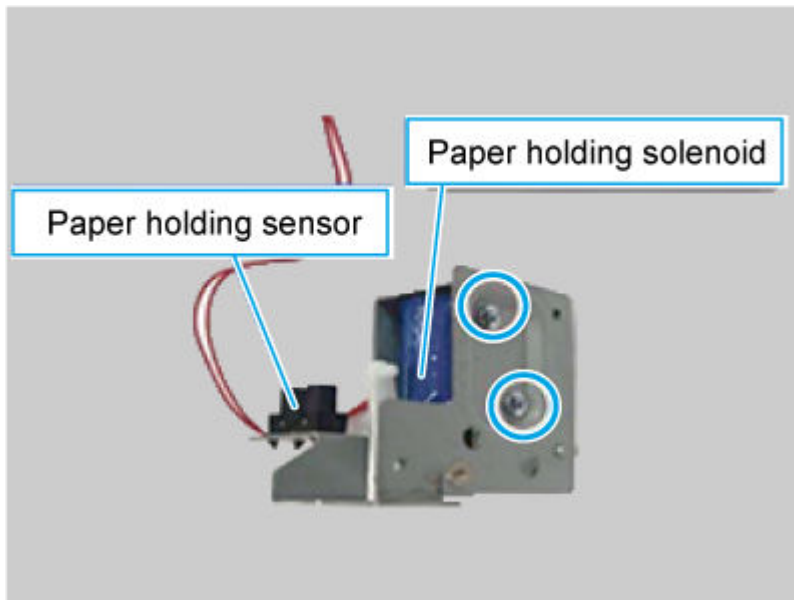


9 Remove the inner finisher paper holding solenoid

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher paper holding solenoid.

- Remove two screws, and then remove the inner finisher paper holding solenoid.

Figure 6-3182 Remove the solenoid



10 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Paper holding sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher paper holding sensor.



NOTE: Remove the inner finisher from the printer.

Mean time to repair: 25 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-376 Part information

Part number	Part description
0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Paper holding sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

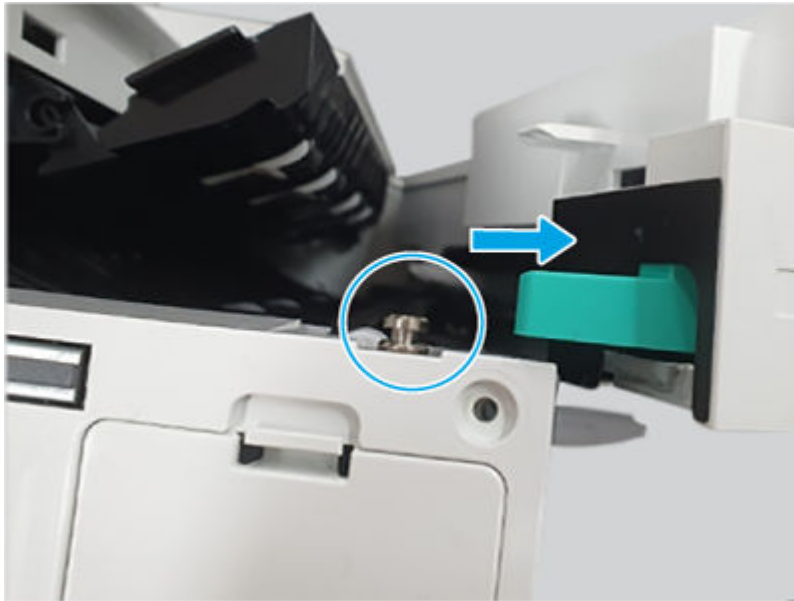
1 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3183 Open the punch cover



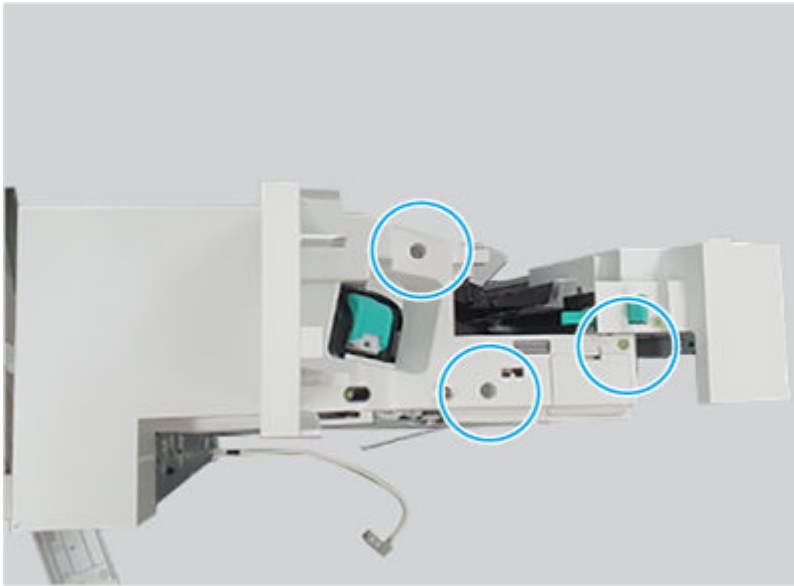
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3184 Remove the handle



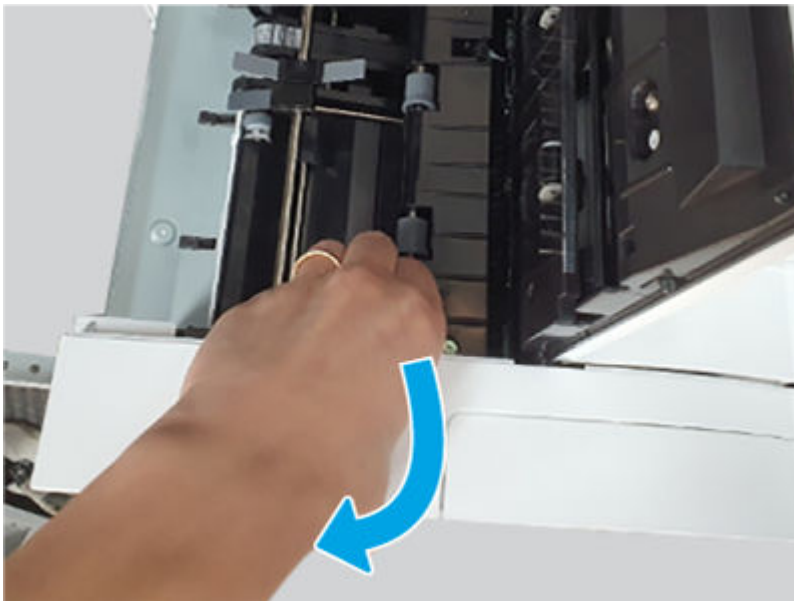
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3185 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3186 Remove the cover

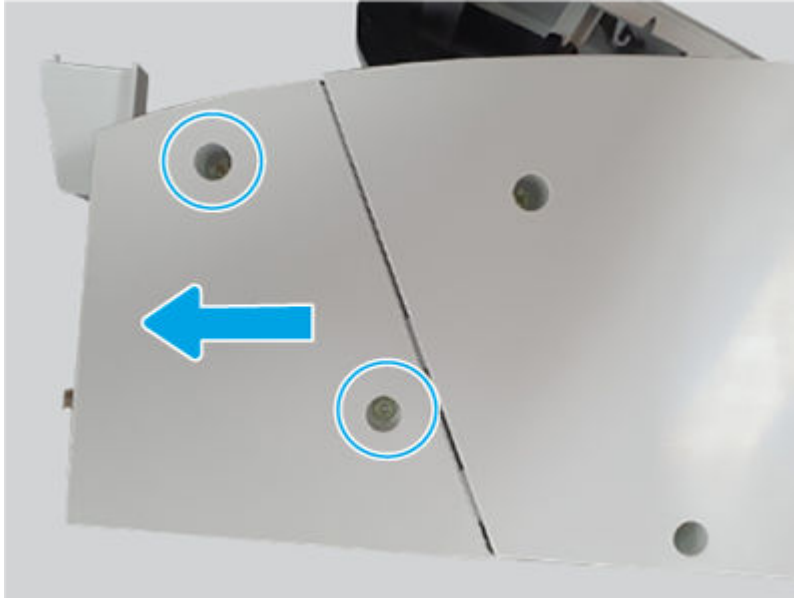


2 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3187 Remove the cover



3 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

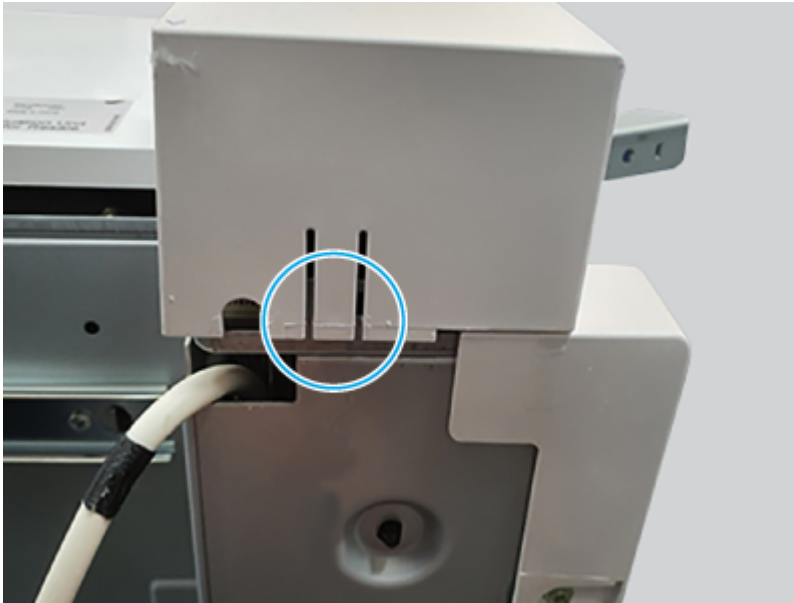
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3188 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3189 Remove the cover

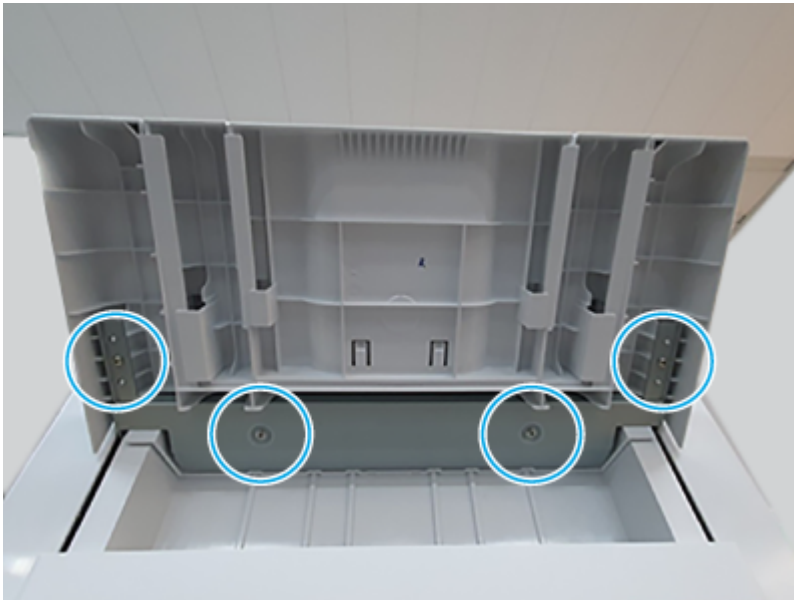


4. **Remove the inner finisher output tray assembly**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher output tray assembly.

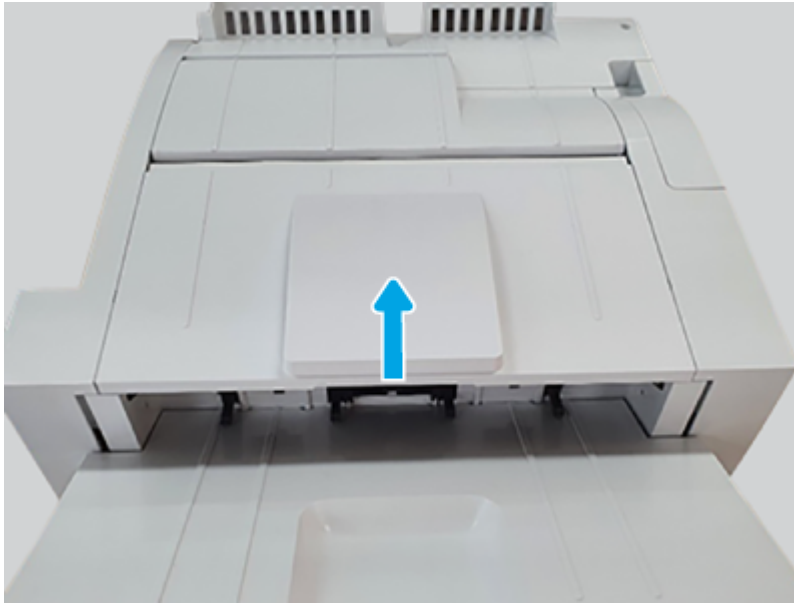
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-3190 Remove four screws



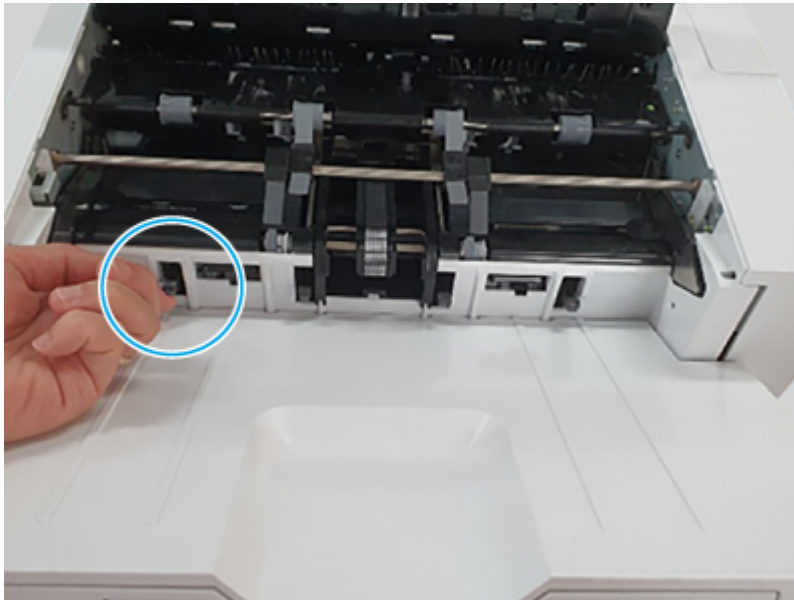
2. Open the top cover.

Figure 6-3191 Open the cover



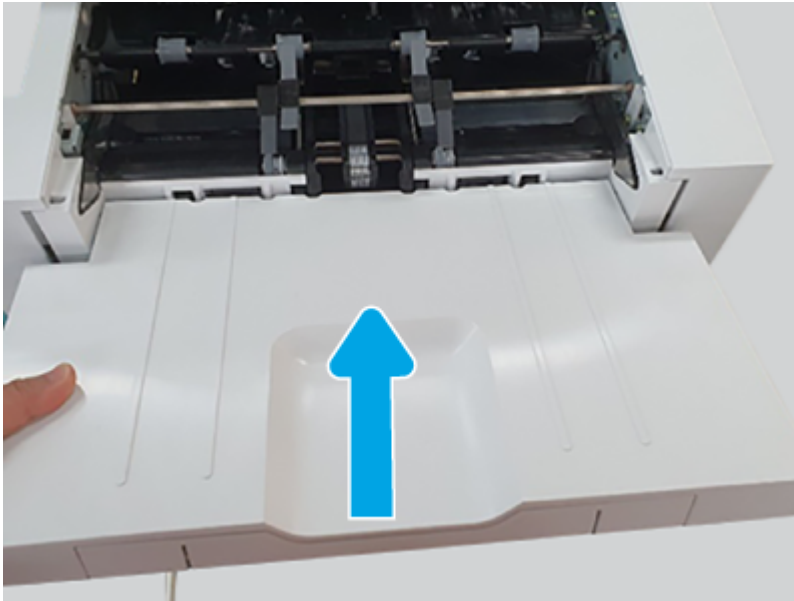
3. Press the paper holding actuator.

Figure 6-3192 Press the actuator



4. Lift up on the inner finisher output tray to remove it.

Figure 6-3193 Remove the tray

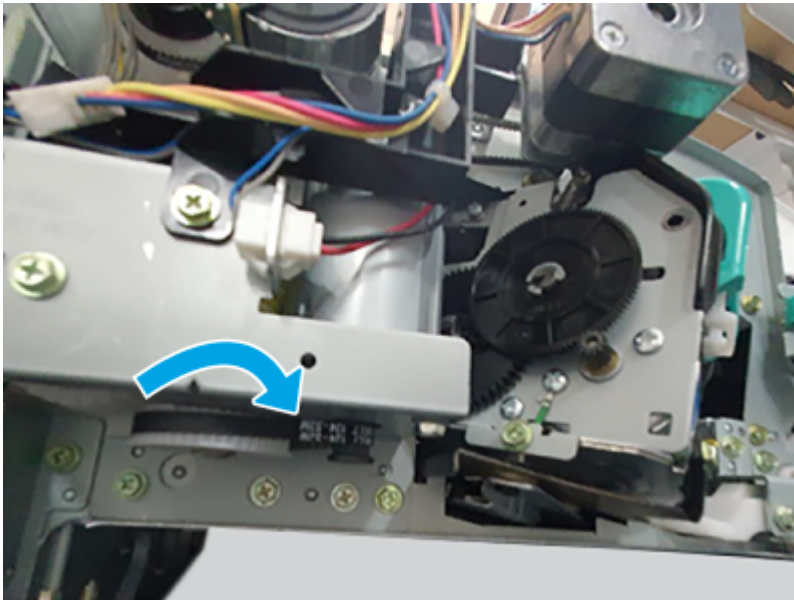


5 Remove the output tray frame

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher output tray frame.

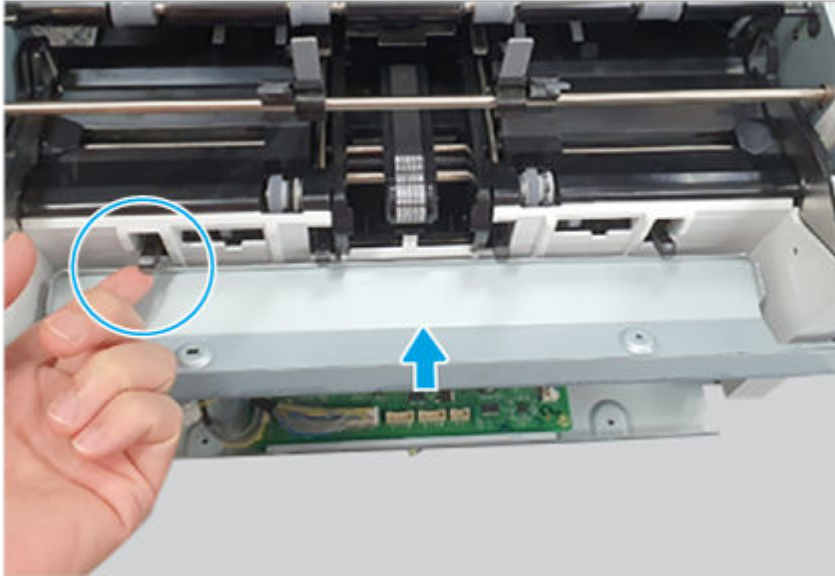
1. Rotate the output tray gear.

Figure 6-3194 Rotate the gear



2. Press the paper holding actuator, and then lift the inner finisher output tray frame up to remove it.

Figure 6-3195 Remove the frame

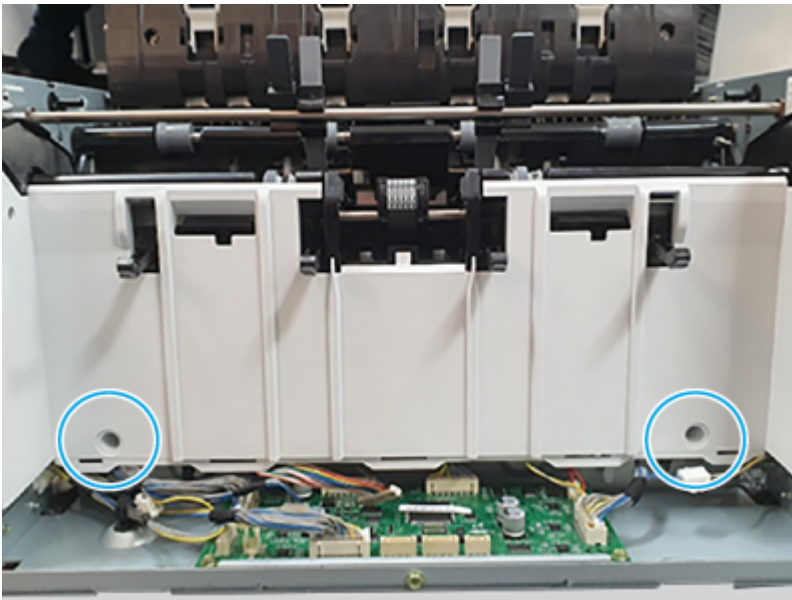


6 Remove the finisher sub stay assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher sub stay assembly.

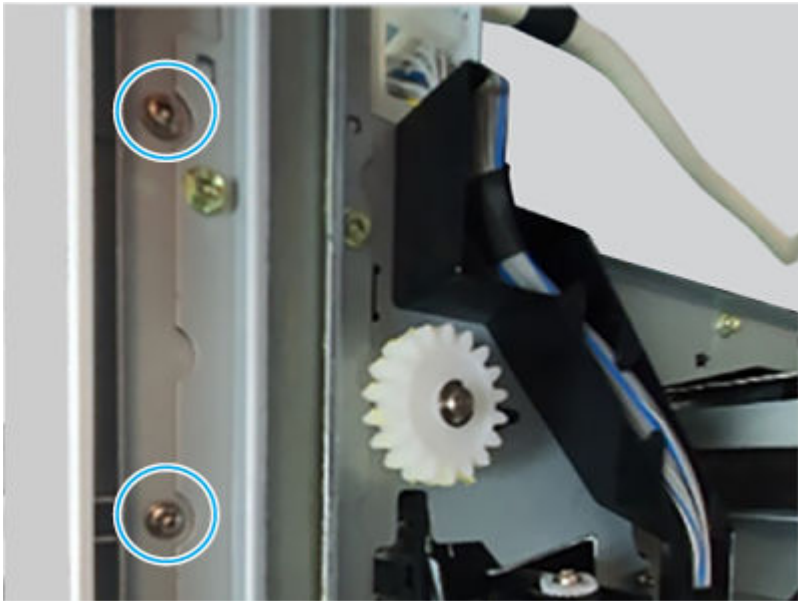
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-3196 Remove two screws



2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-3197 Remove two screws



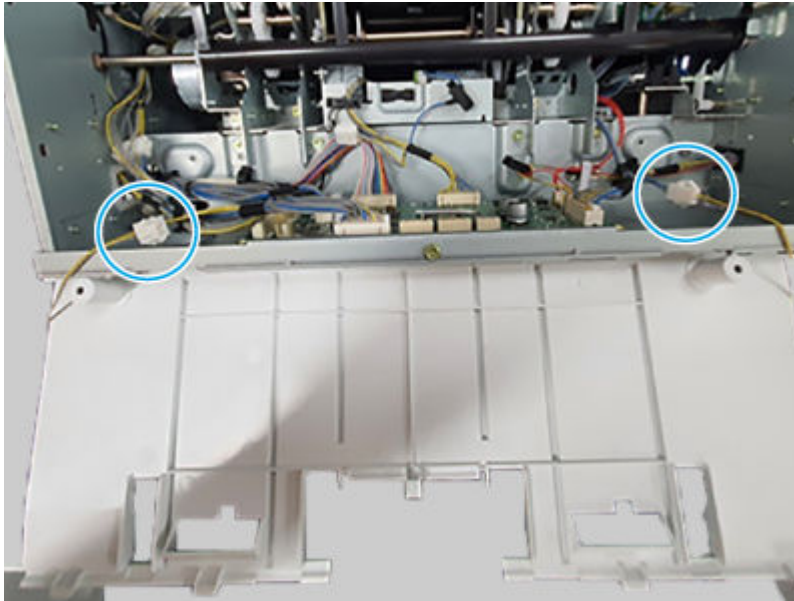
3. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-3198 Remove two screws



4. Disconnect two connectors, and then remove the inner finisher sub stay assembly.

Figure 6-3199 Remove the assembly

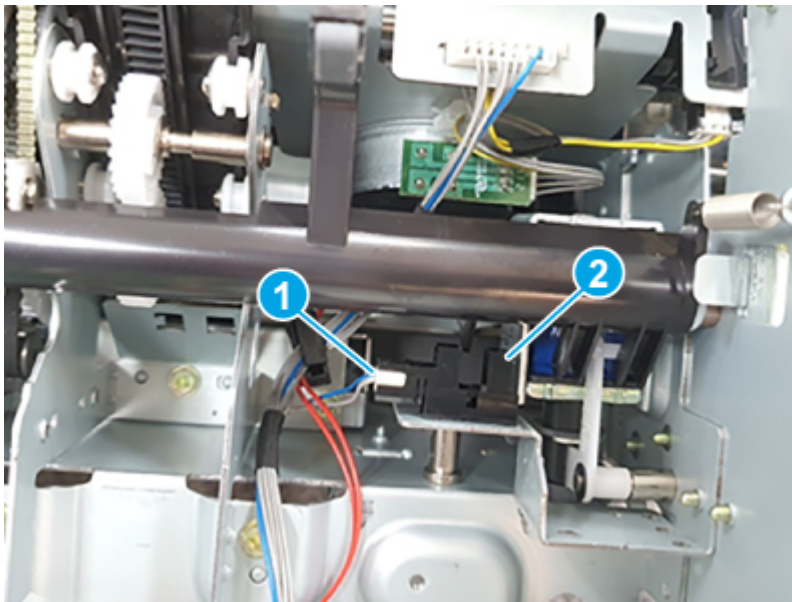


7 Remove the inner finisher paper holding sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher paper holding sensor.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the inner finisher paper holding sensor.


Figure 6-3200 Remove the sensor



8 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

PCA and switch

Review the inner finisher PCA and switch removal procedures.

Removal and replacement: PCA

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher PCA.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 25 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-377 Part Information

Part number	Part description
6GW49-60001	Inner finisher PCA

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

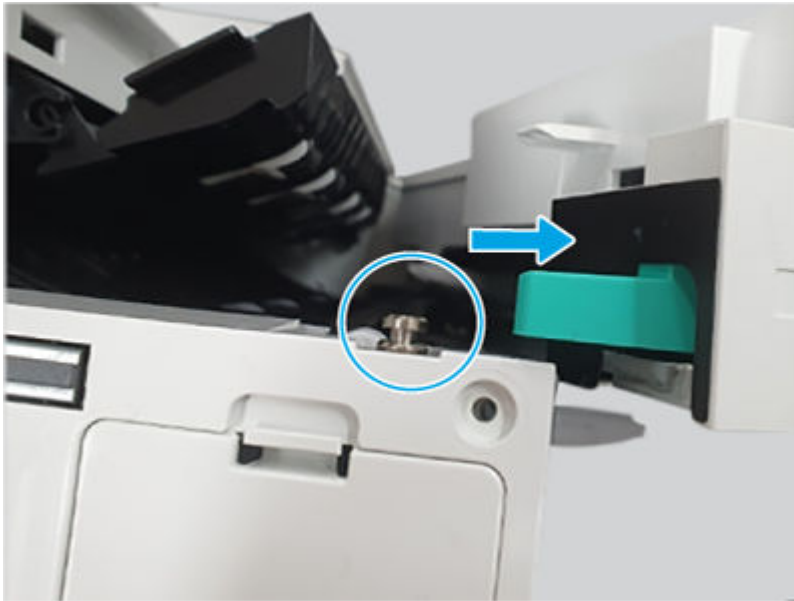
1 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3201 Open the punch cover



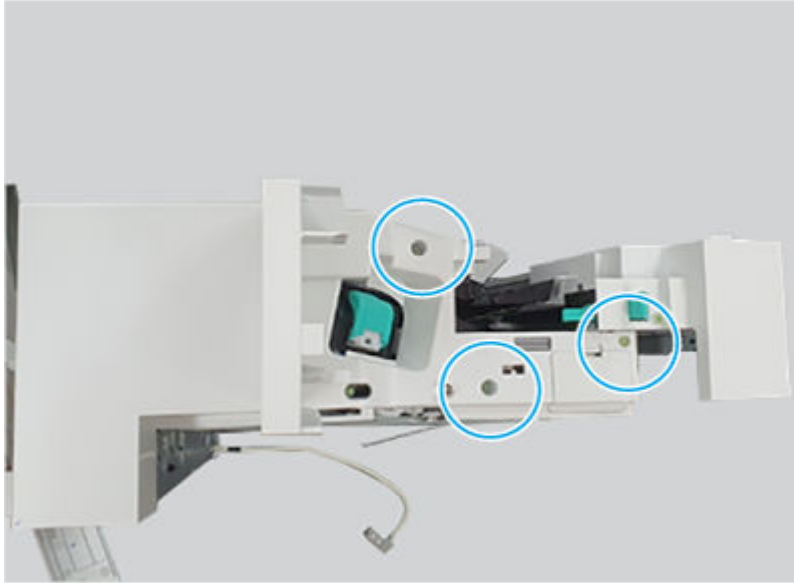
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3202 Remove the handle



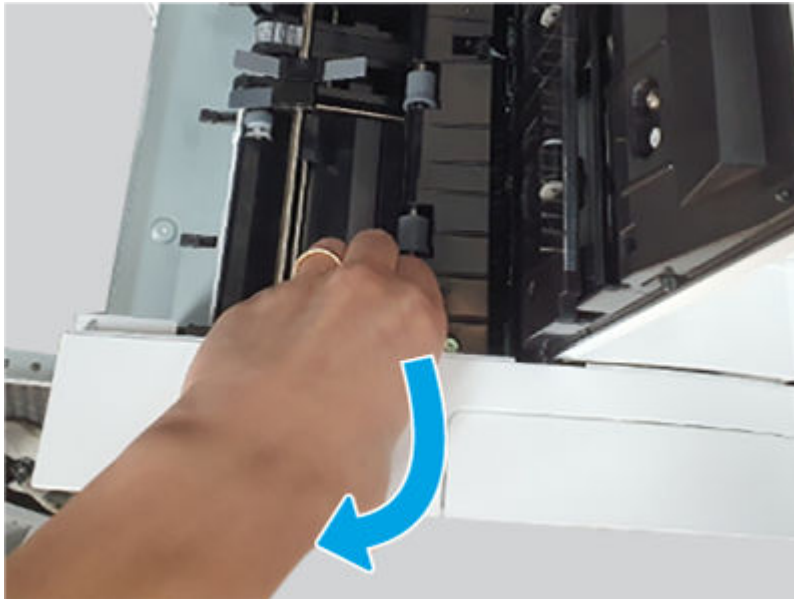
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3203 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3204 Remove the cover

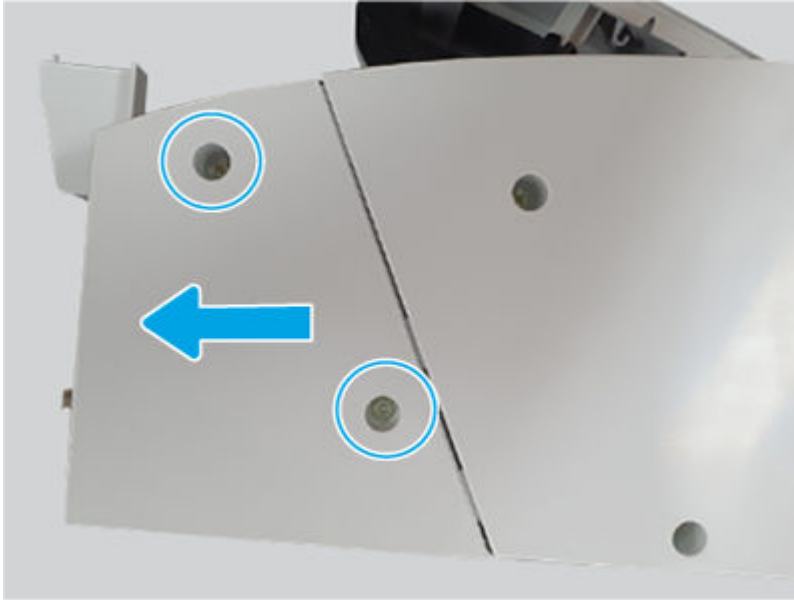


2 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3205 Remove the cover



3 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

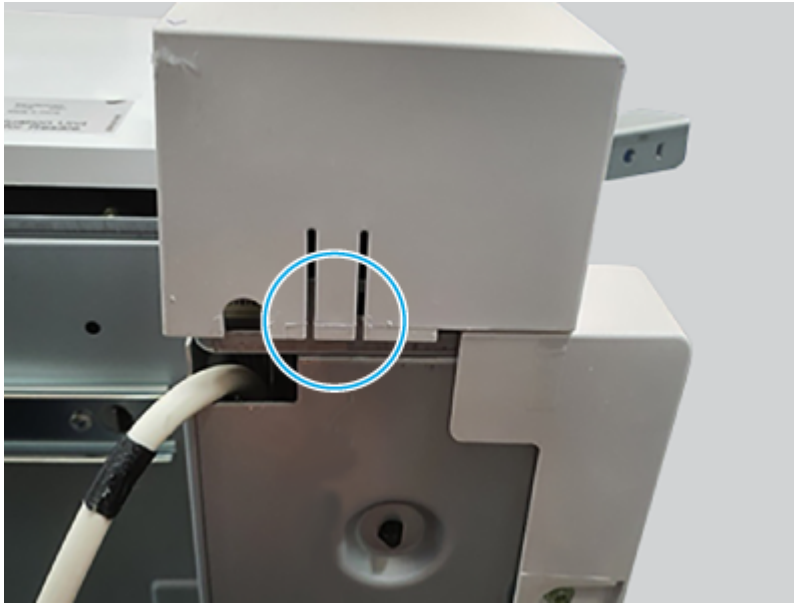
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3206 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3207 Remove the cover

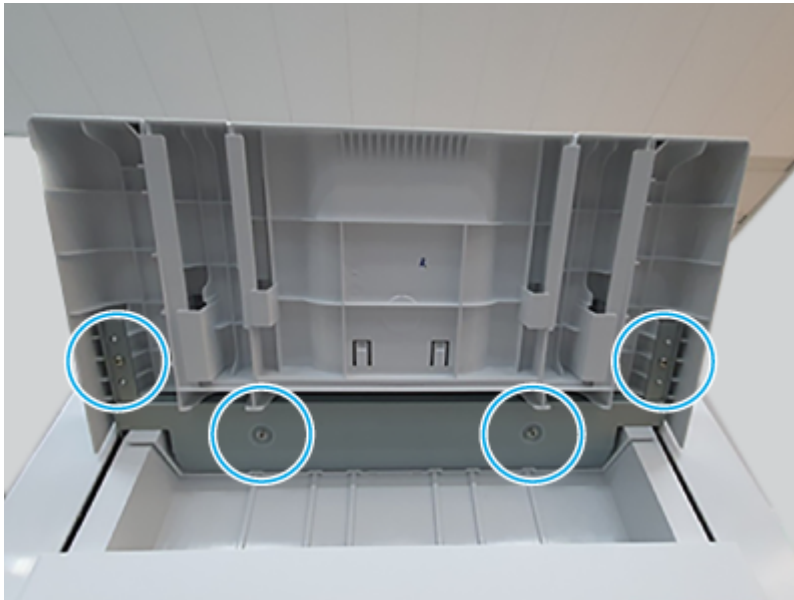


4 Remove the inner finisher output tray assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher output tray assembly.

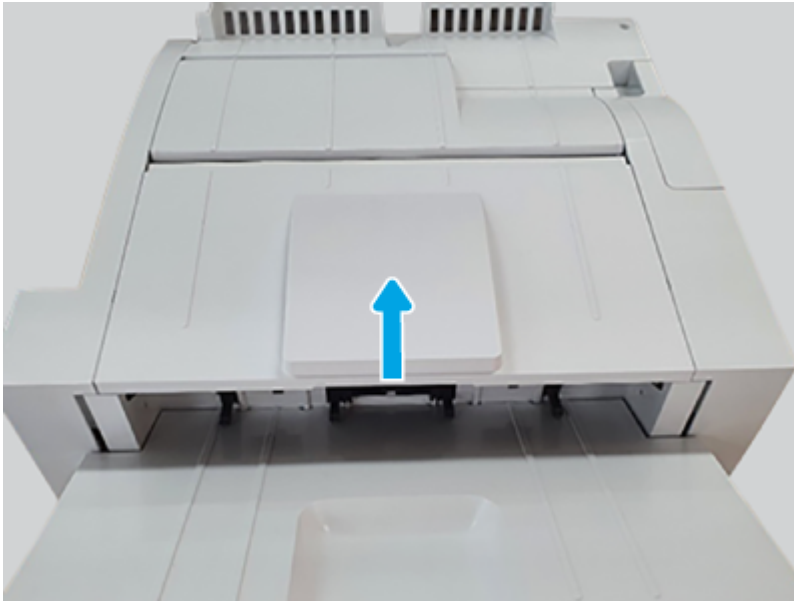
1. Remove four screws.

Figure 6-3208 Remove four screws



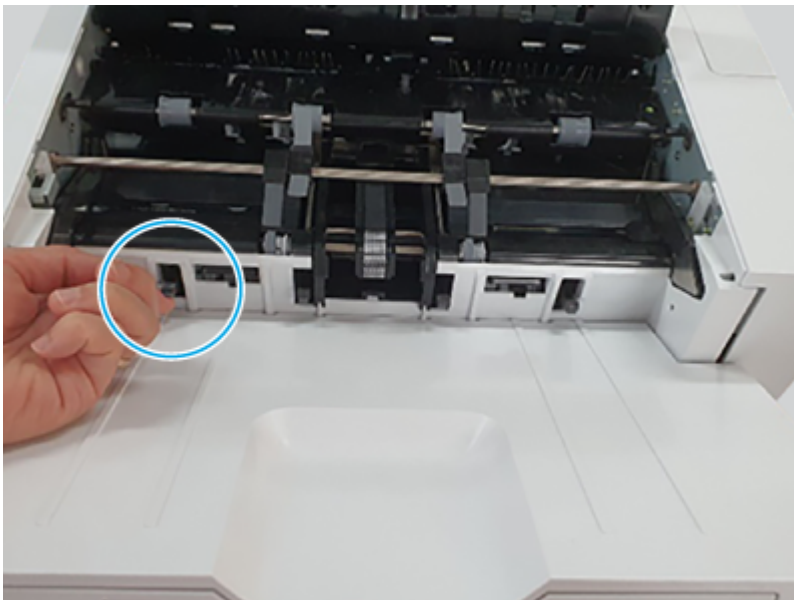
2. Open the top cover.

Figure 6-3209 Open the cover



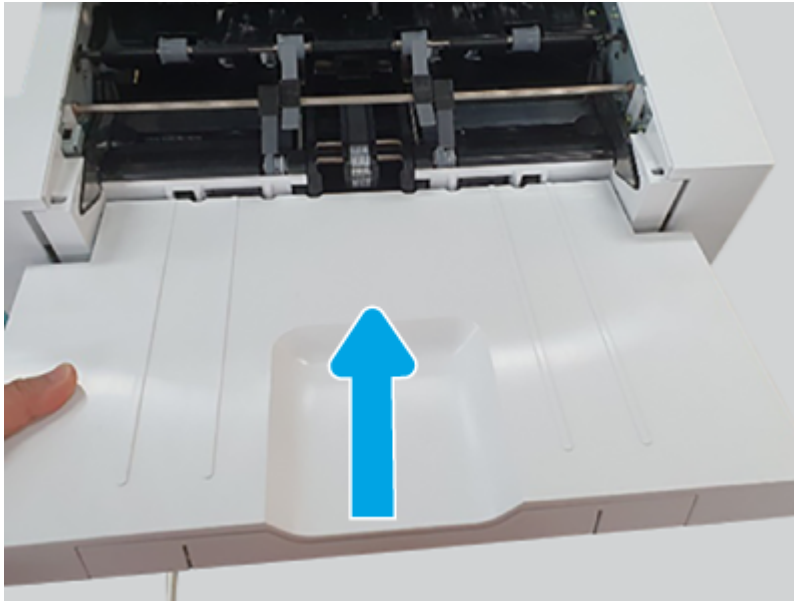
3. Press the paper holding actuator.

Figure 6-3210 Press the actuator



4. Lift up on the inner finisher output tray to remove it.

Figure 6-3211 Remove the tray

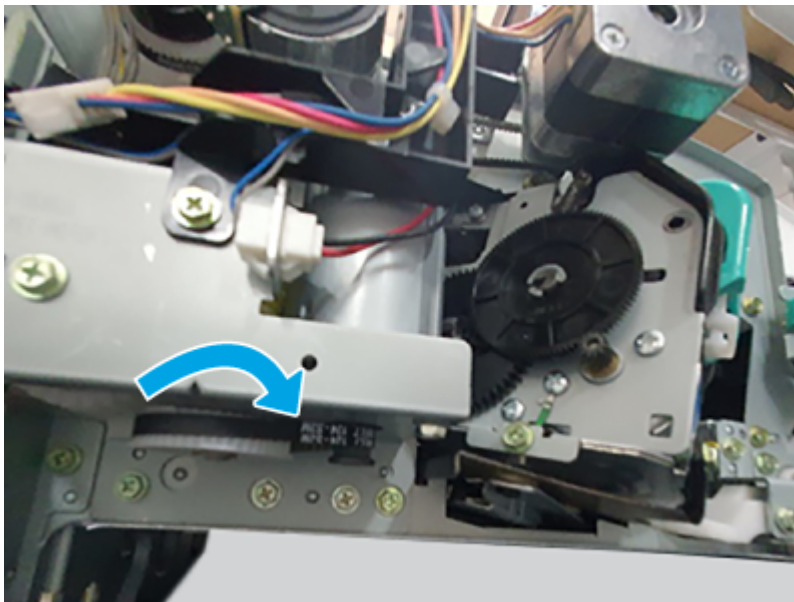


5. **Remove the output tray frame**

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher output tray frame.

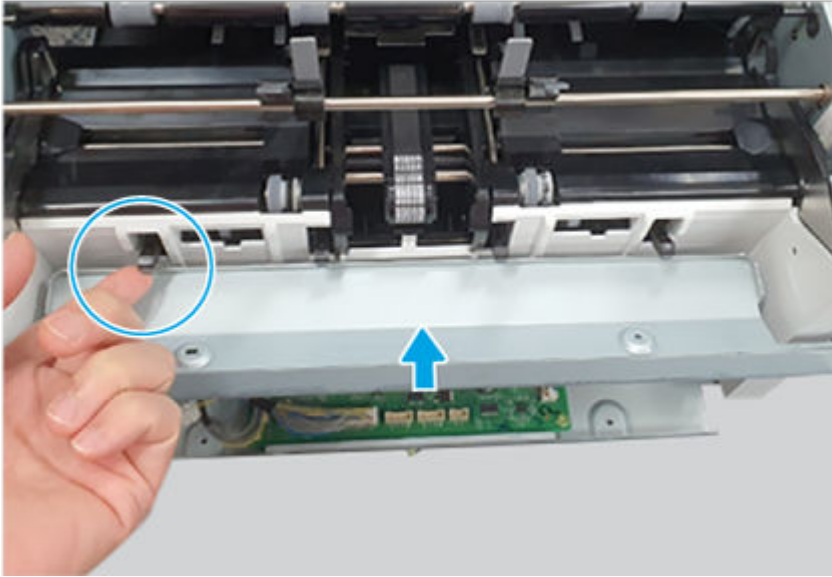
1. Rotate the output tray gear.

Figure 6-3212 Rotate the gear



2. Press the paper holding actuator, and then lift the inner finisher output tray frame up to remove it.

Figure 6-3213 Remove the frame

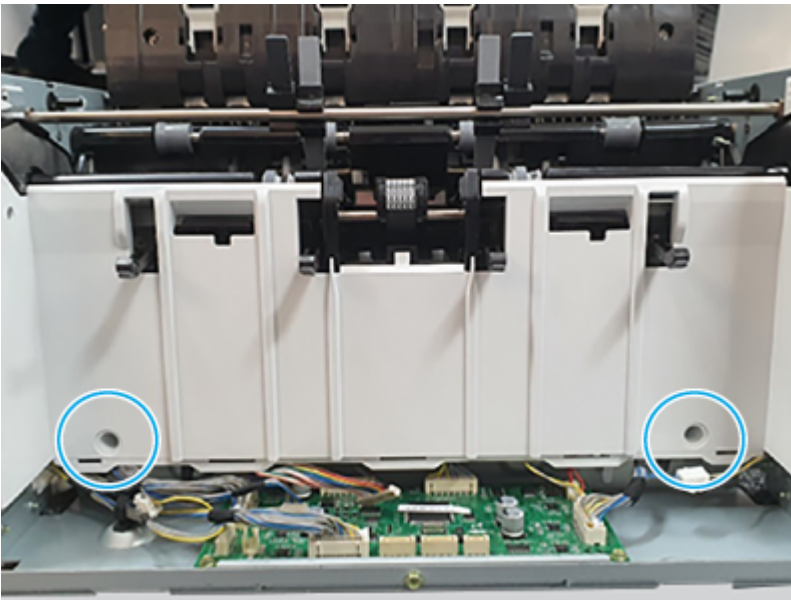


6 Remove the finisher sub stay assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher sub stay assembly.

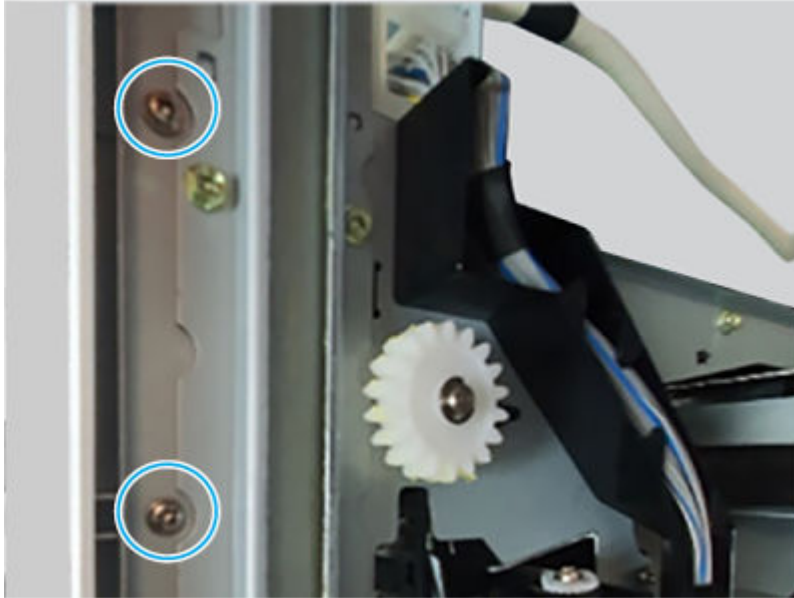
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-3214 Remove two screws



2. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-3215 Remove two screws



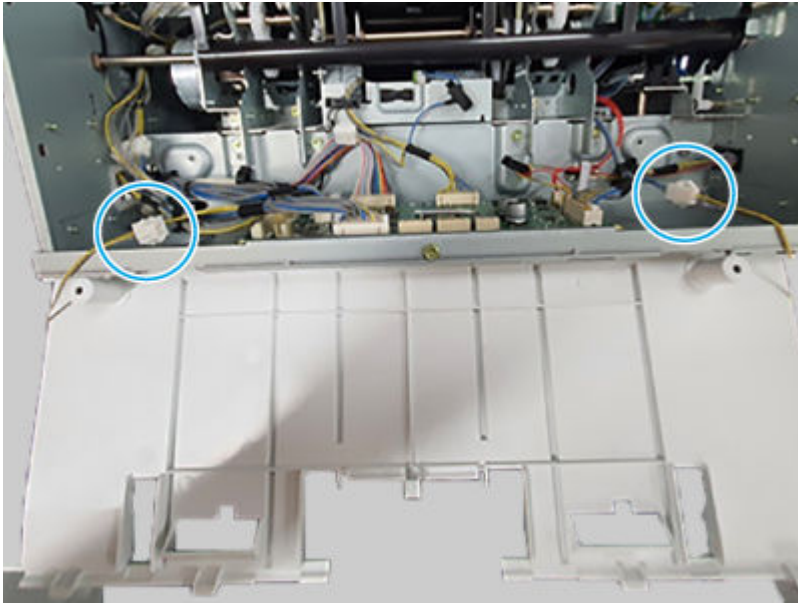
3. Remove two screws.

Figure 6-3216 Remove two screws



4. Disconnect two connectors, and then remove the inner finisher sub stay assembly.

Figure 6-3217 Remove the assembly

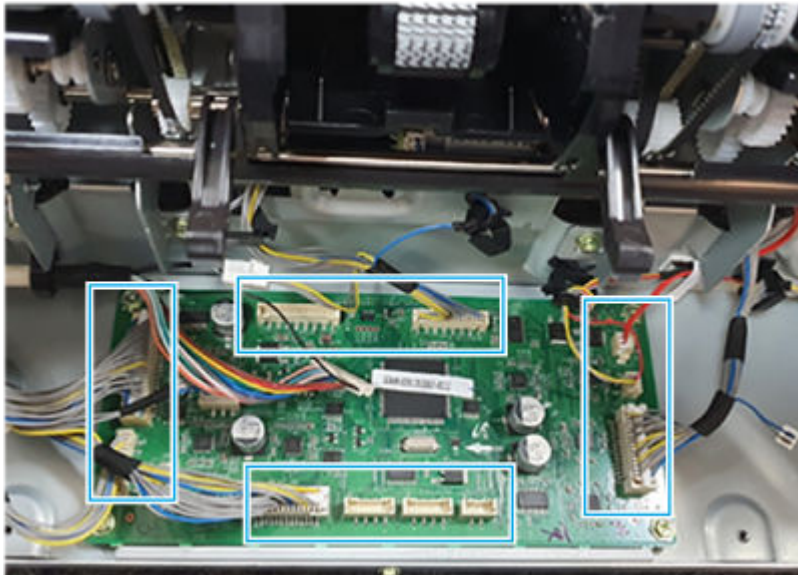


7 Remove the inner finisher PCA

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher PCA.

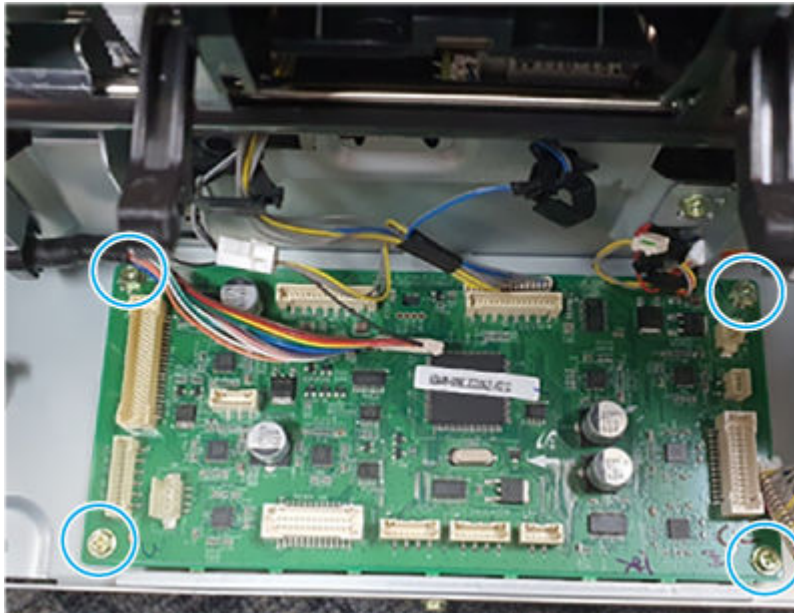
1. Disconnect all of the connectors.

Figure 6-3218 Disconnect all connectors



2. Remove four screws, and then remove the inner finisher PCA.

Figure 6-3219 Remove the PCA



8 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Rear joint PCA

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher rear joint PCA.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-378 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC92-02780A	Inner finisher rear joint PCA

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

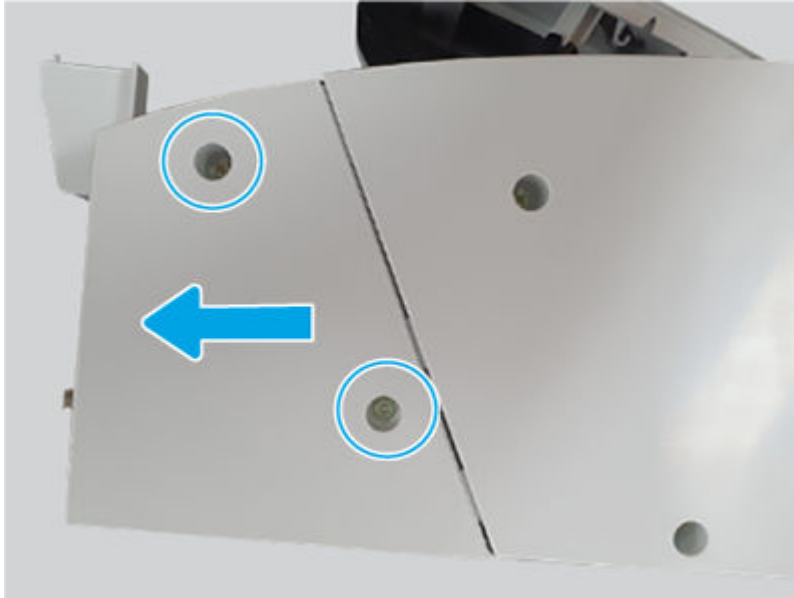
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3220 Remove the cover

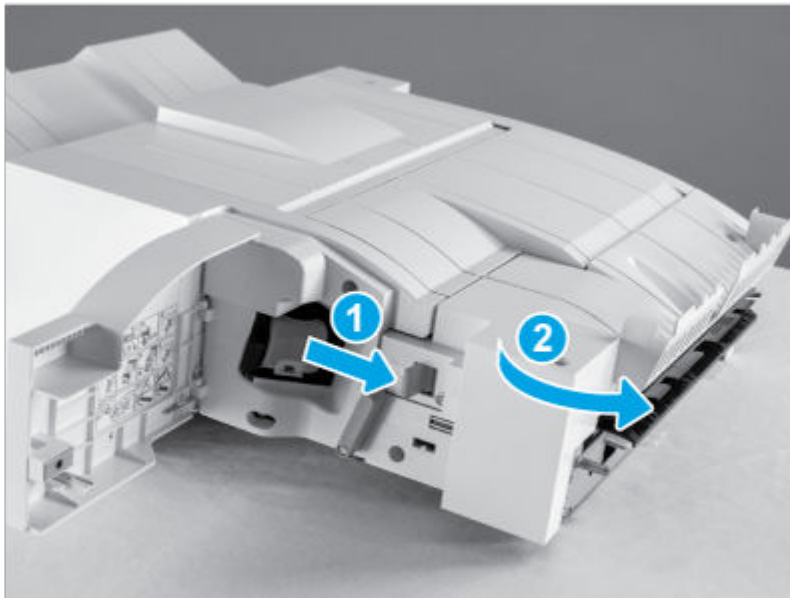


2 Remove the inner finisher punch cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher punch cover assembly.

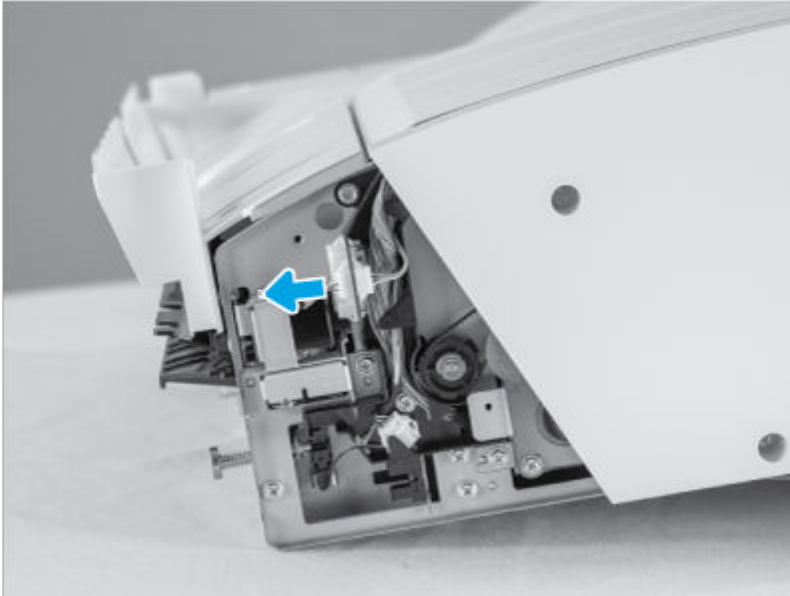
1. Release the lever (callout 1), and then rotate the punch away from the inner finisher (callout 2).

Figure 6-3221 Rotate the punch



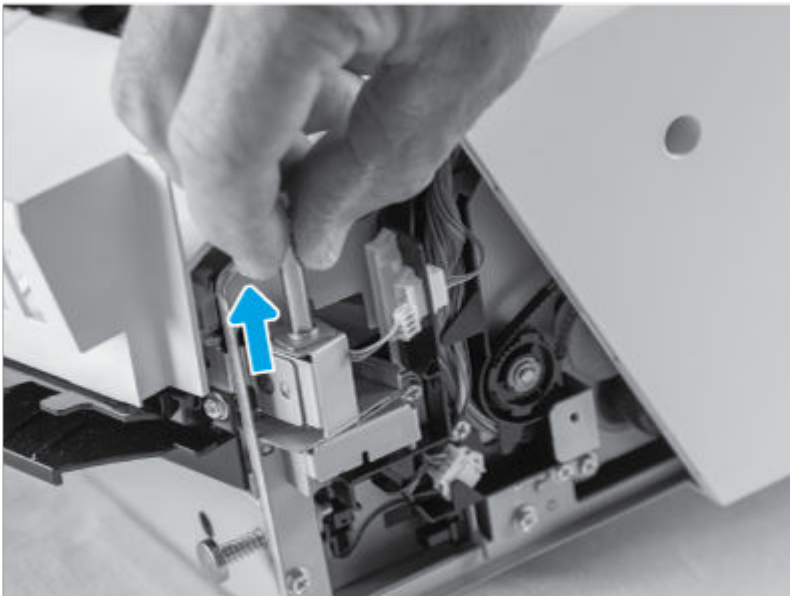
2. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-3222 Disconnect one connector



3. Remove the hinge shaft, and then remove the punch cover assembly.

Figure 6-3223 Remove the assembly



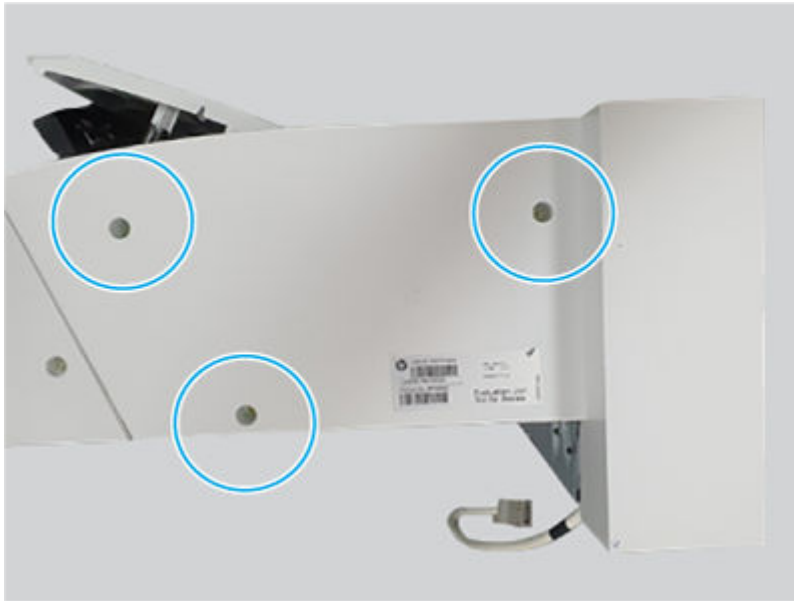
3 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.

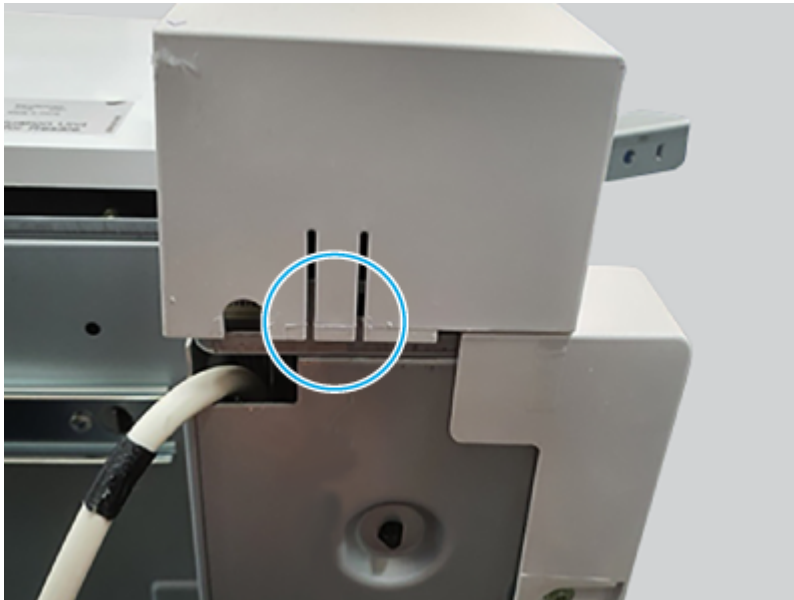
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3224 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3225 Remove the cover



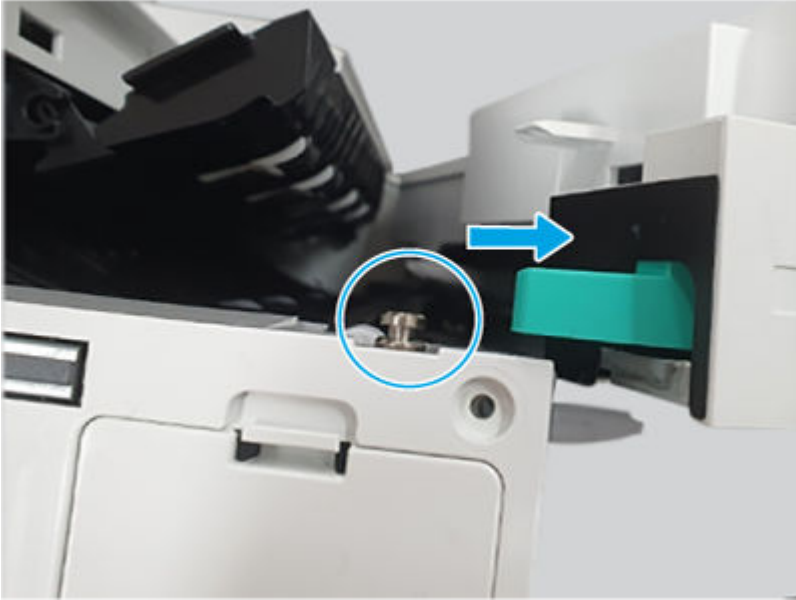
4 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3226 Open the punch cover



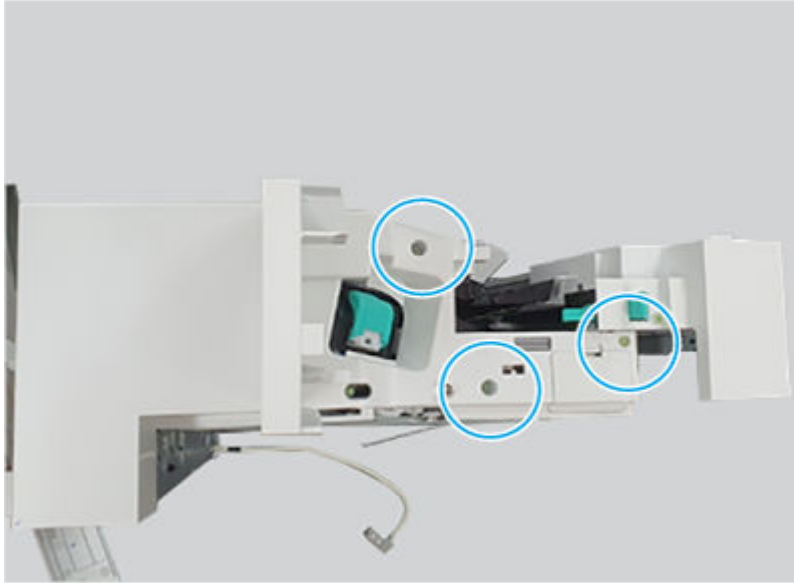
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3227 Remove the handle



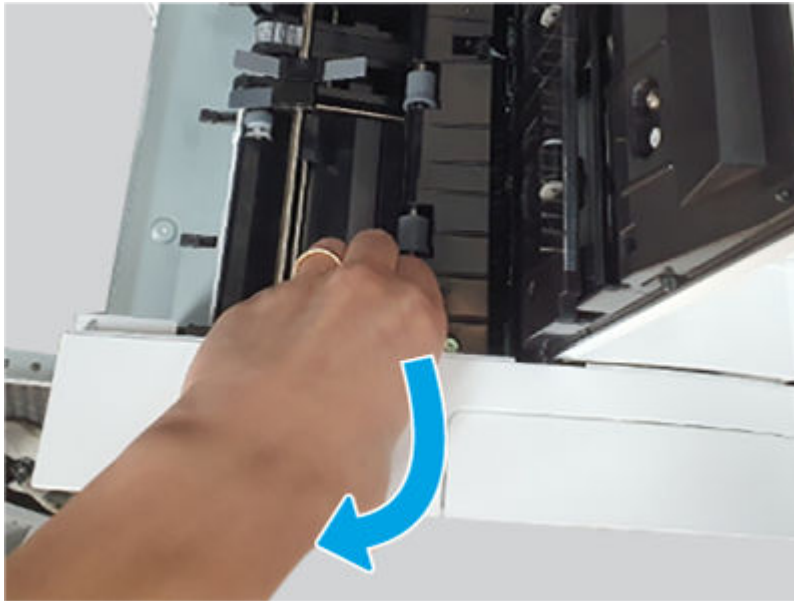
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3228 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3229 Remove the cover

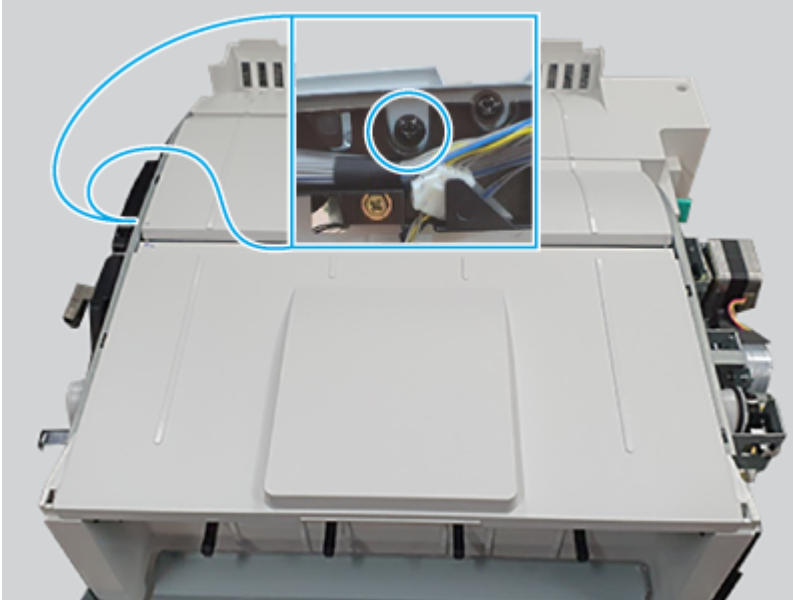


5 Remove the inner finisher middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-3230 Remove the cover

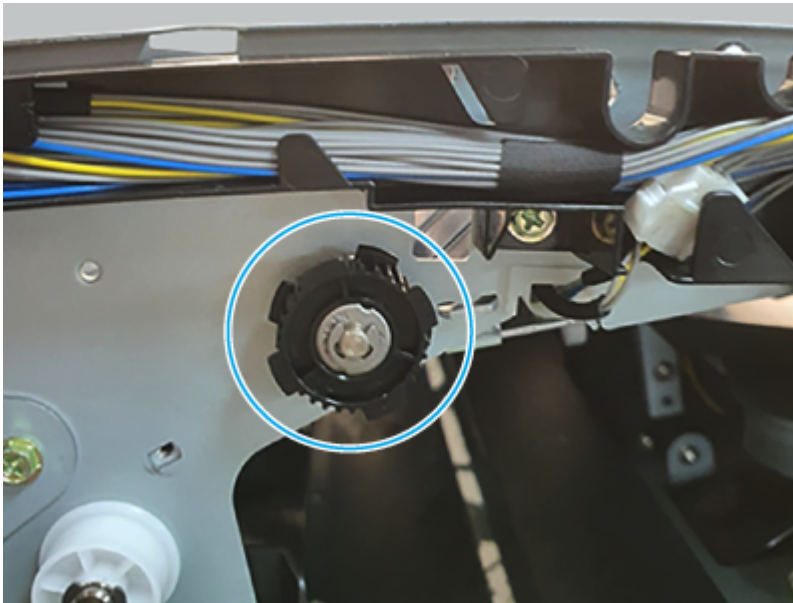


6 Remove the inner finisher middle roller

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle roller.

1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, remove the pulley, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-3231 Remove the e-ring, pulley, and bushing



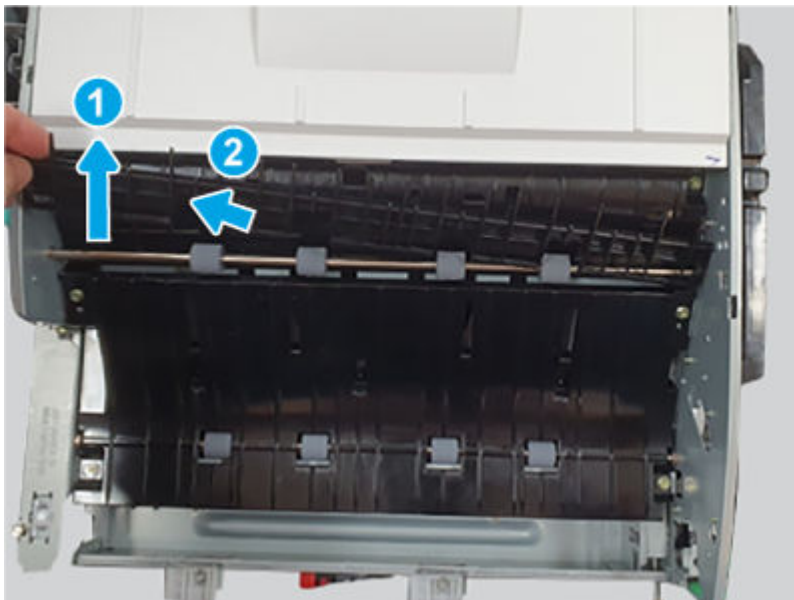
2. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-3232 Remove the e-ring and bushing



3. Remove the inner finisher middle roller.

Figure 6-3233 Remove the roller



7 Remove the inner finisher middle lower guide

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle lower guide.

- Remove six screws, and then remove the inner finisher middle lower guide.

Figure 6-3234 Remove the guide

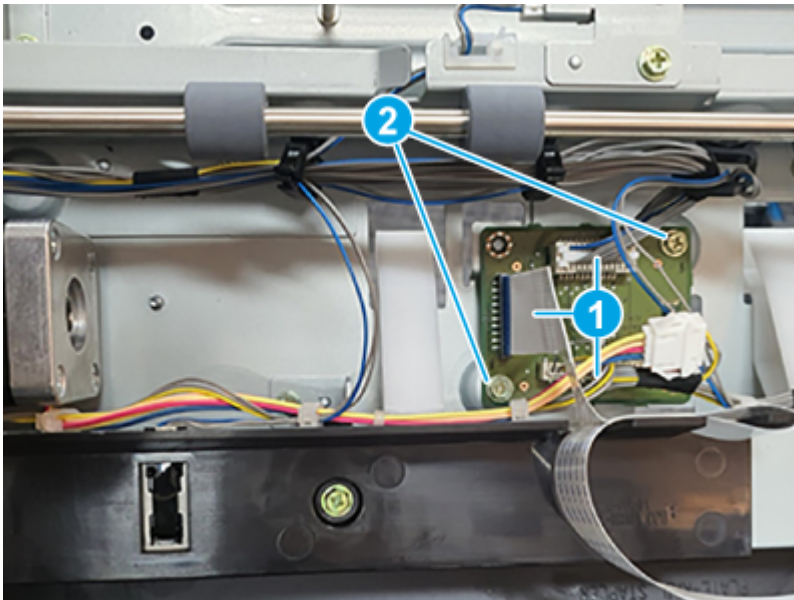


8 Remove the inner finisher rear joint PCA

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear joint PCA.

- Disconnect three connectors (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the inner finisher rear joint PCA.

Figure 6-3235 Remove the PCA



9 Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Front cover switch

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher front cover switch.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-379 Part Information

Part number	Part description
JC39-01610A	Harness - cover open (Front cover switch)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

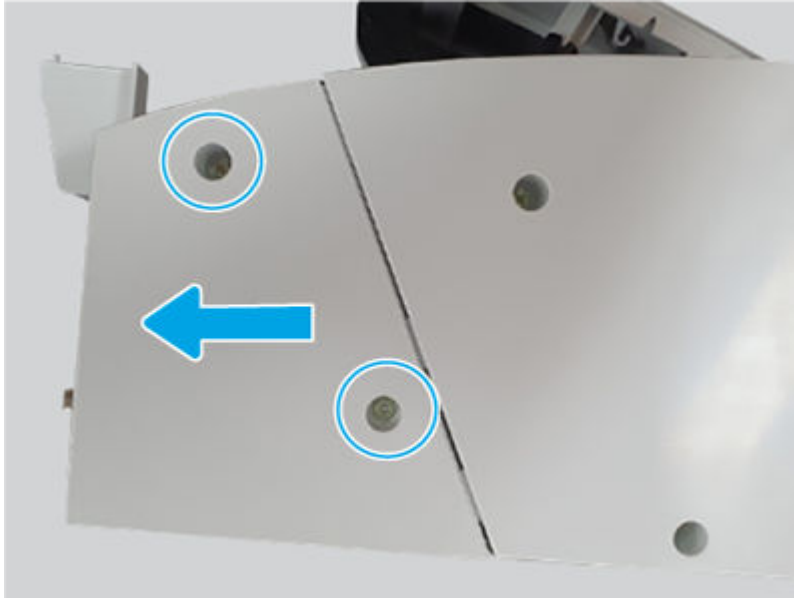
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3236 Remove the cover



2 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

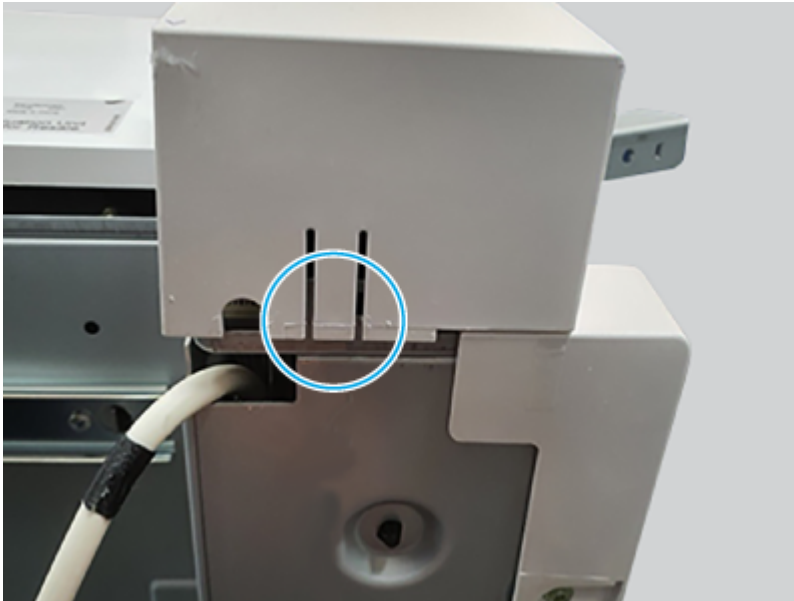
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3237 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3238 Remove the cover

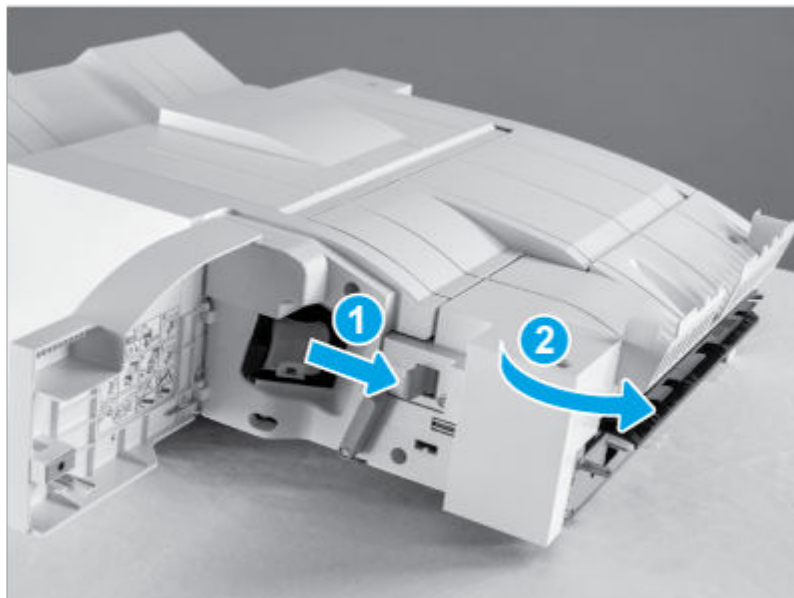


3 Remove the inner finisher punch cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher punch cover assembly.

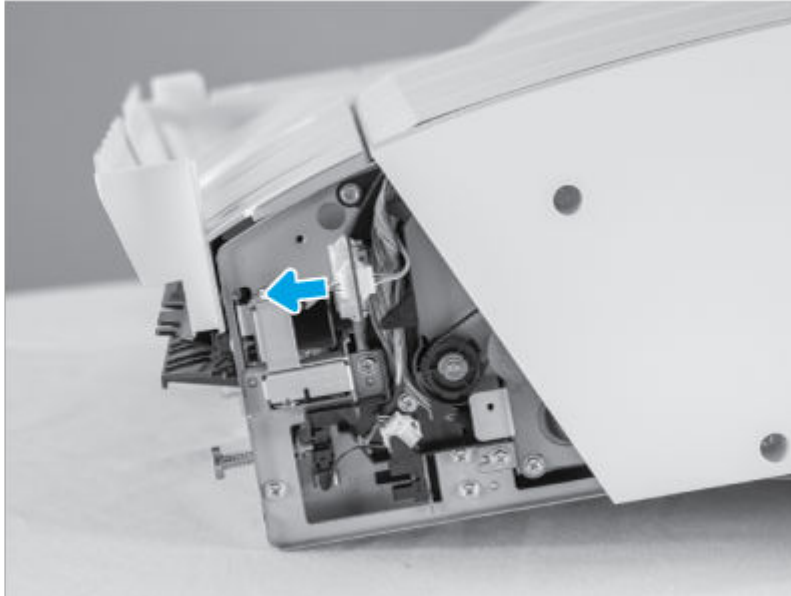
1. Release the lever (callout 1), and then rotate the punch away from the inner finisher (callout 2).

Figure 6-3239 Rotate the punch



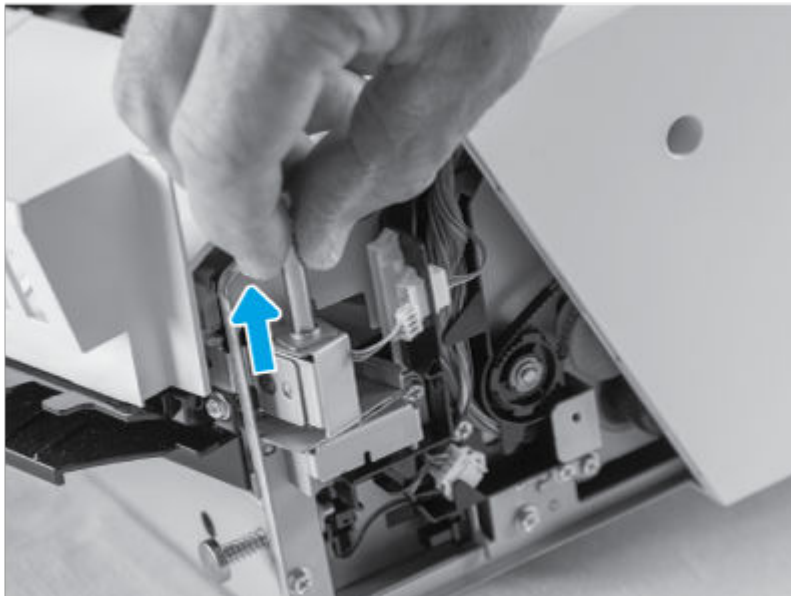
2. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-3240 Disconnect one connector



3. Remove the hinge shaft, and then remove the punch cover assembly.

Figure 6-3241 Remove the assembly



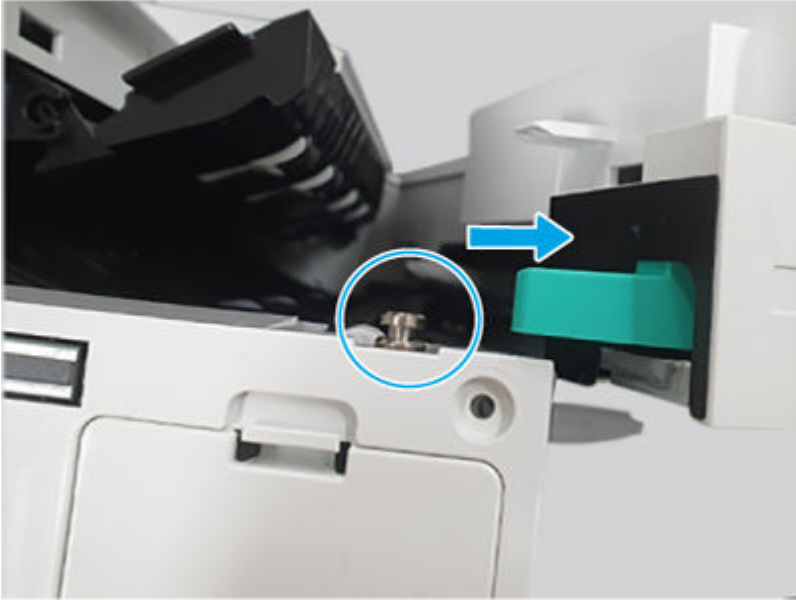
4 Remove the inner finisher front cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover assembly.

1. Do the following:
 - Open the front door.
 - Open the middle cover.

2. Open the punch cover (pull it out).

Figure 6-3242 Open the punch cover



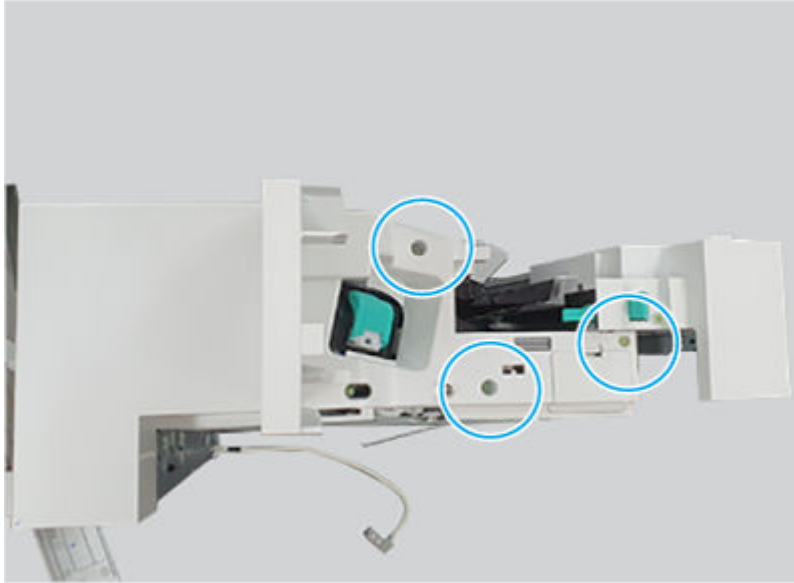
3. Remove one screw, and then remove the lock release handle.

Figure 6-3243 Remove the handle



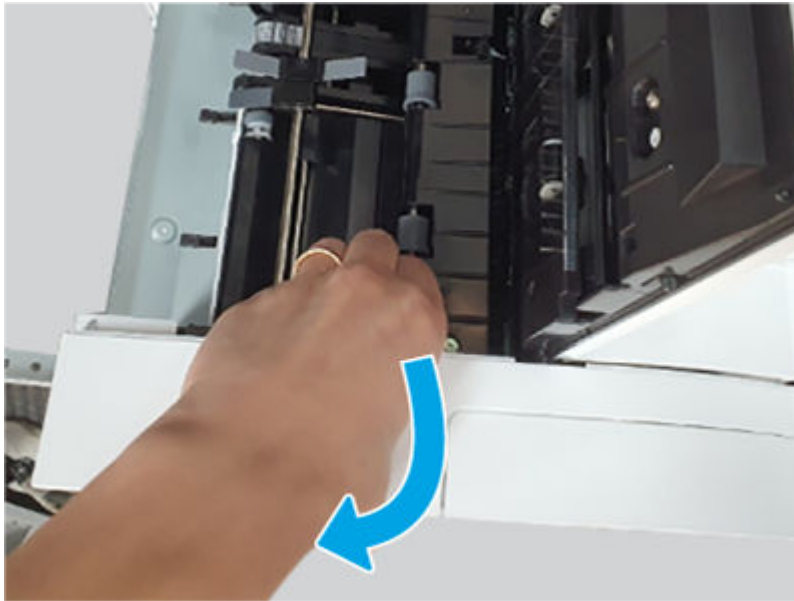
4. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3244 Remove three screws



5. Open the top and middle covers, release one hook, and then remove the inner finisher front cover assembly.

Figure 6-3245 Remove the cover

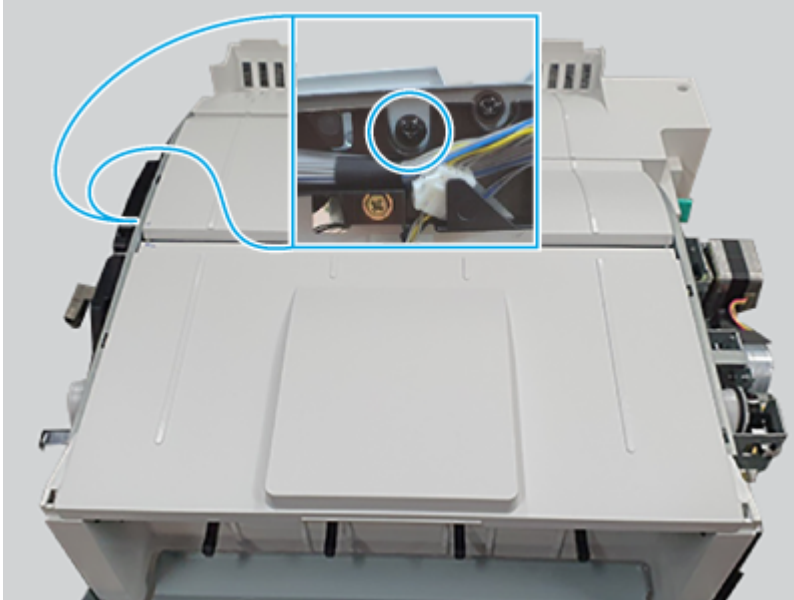


5 Remove the inner finisher middle cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle cover assembly.

- Remove one screw, and then remove the inner finisher middle cover assembly.

Figure 6-3246 Remove the cover

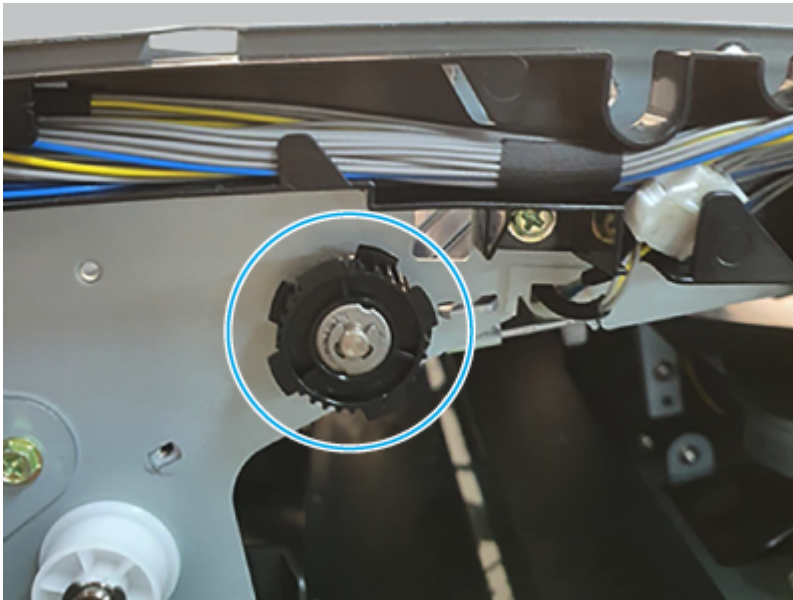


6 Remove the inner finisher middle roller

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle roller.

1. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, remove the pulley, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-3247 Remove the e-ring, pulley, and bushing



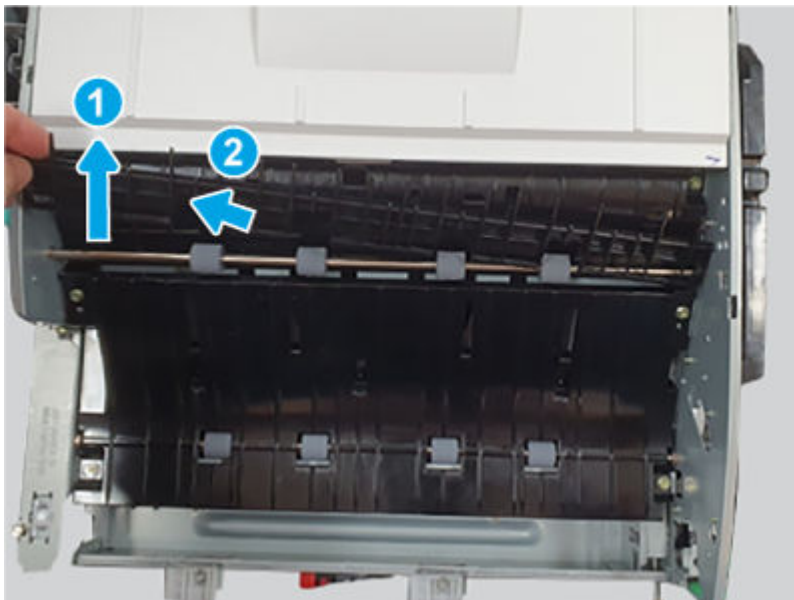
2. Use a pair of tweezers to remove one e-ring, and then remove the bushing.

Figure 6-3248 Remove the e-ring and bushing



3. Remove the inner finisher middle roller.

Figure 6-3249 Remove the roller



7 Remove the inner finisher middle lower guide

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher middle lower guide.

- Remove six screws, and then remove the inner finisher middle lower guide.

Figure 6-3250 Remove the guide

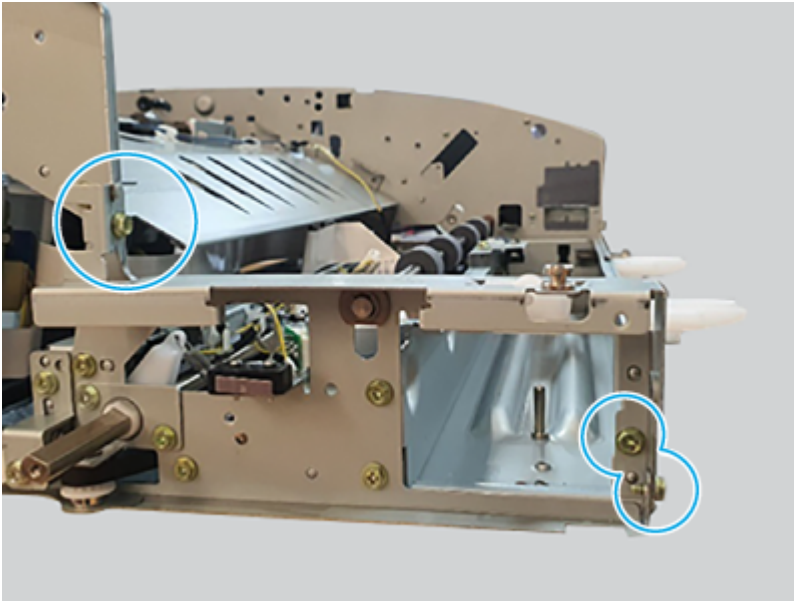


8 Remove the inner finisher bracket support guide

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher bracket support guide.

- Remove three screws, and then remove the bracket support guide.

Figure 6-3251 Remove the guide



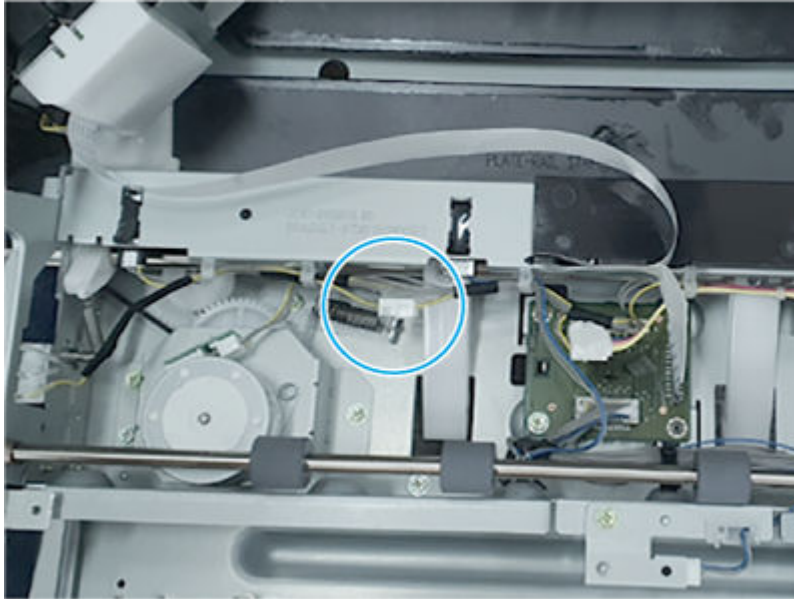
9 Remove the inner finisher front cover switch

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher front cover switch.

1. Disconnect one connector.

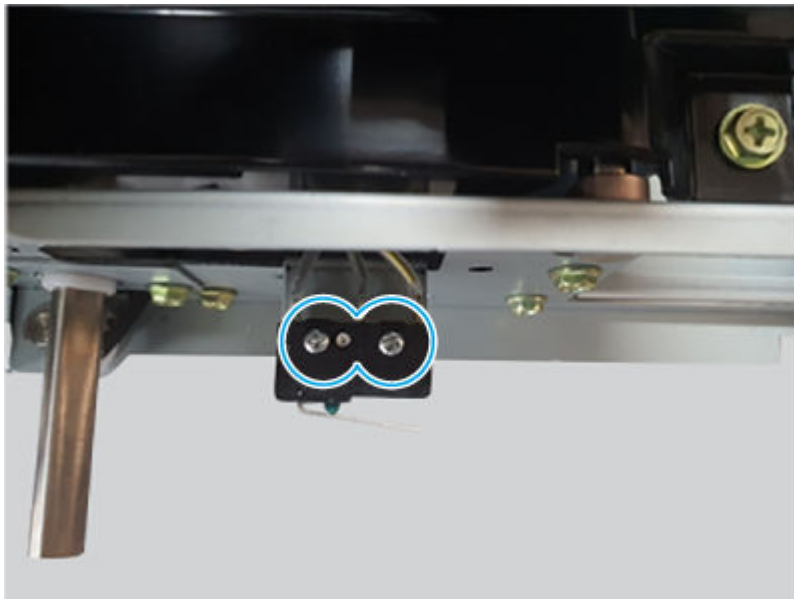
 **NOTE:** Release the wire harness from the retainers as necessary.

Figure 6-3252 Disconnect one connector



2. Remove two screws, and then remove the inner finisher front cover switch.


Figure 6-3253 Remove the switch





10 **Unpack the replacement assembly**


Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Top cover switch

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher top cover switch.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-380 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC39-01610A	Harness - cover open (Top cover switch)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

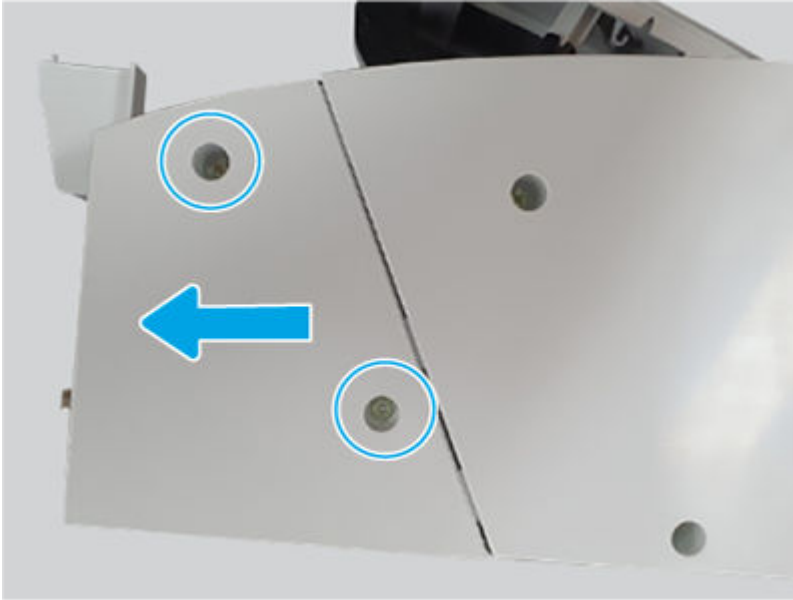
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3254 Remove the cover



2 Remove the inner finisher rear base cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear base cover.

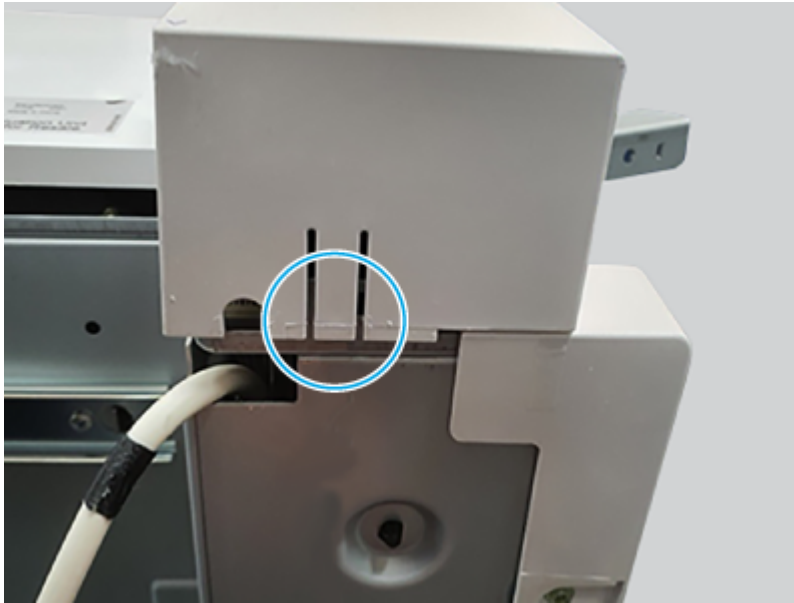
1. Do the following:
 - Open the top door.
 - Open the middle cover.
2. Remove three screws.

Figure 6-3255 Remove three screws



3. Release on hook, and then remove the inner finisher rear base cover.

Figure 6-3256 Remove the cover



3 Remove the inner finisher top cover switch

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher top cover switch.

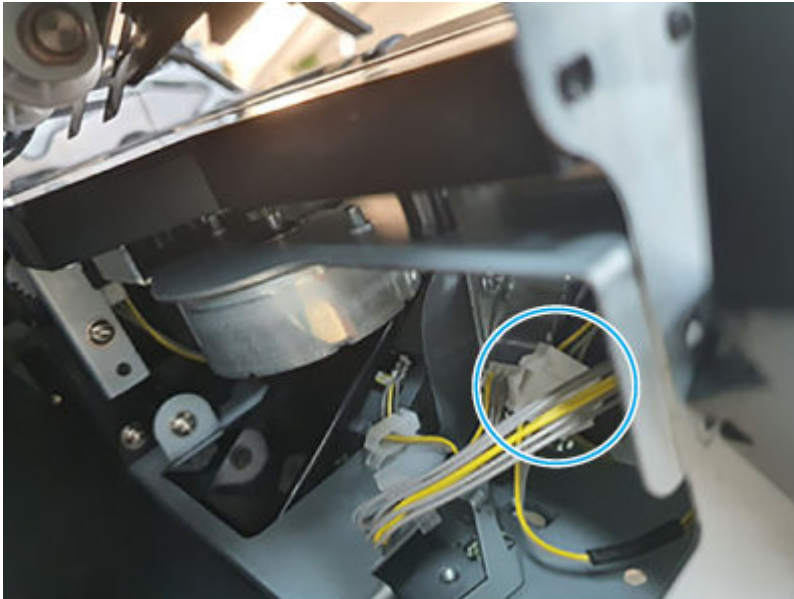
1. Remove one screw.

Figure 6-3257 Remove one screw



2. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the inner finisher top cover switch.

Figure 6-3258 Remove the switch



4 **Unpack the replacement assembly**

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Docking sensor

Learn about removing and replacing the inner finisher docking sensor.

 **NOTE:** Remove the inner finisher from the printer.


Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 6-381 Part information

Part number	Part description
JC39-01610A	Harness - cover open (Docking sensor)

Required tools

- #2 JIS screwdriver with a magnetic tip
- Tweezers

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

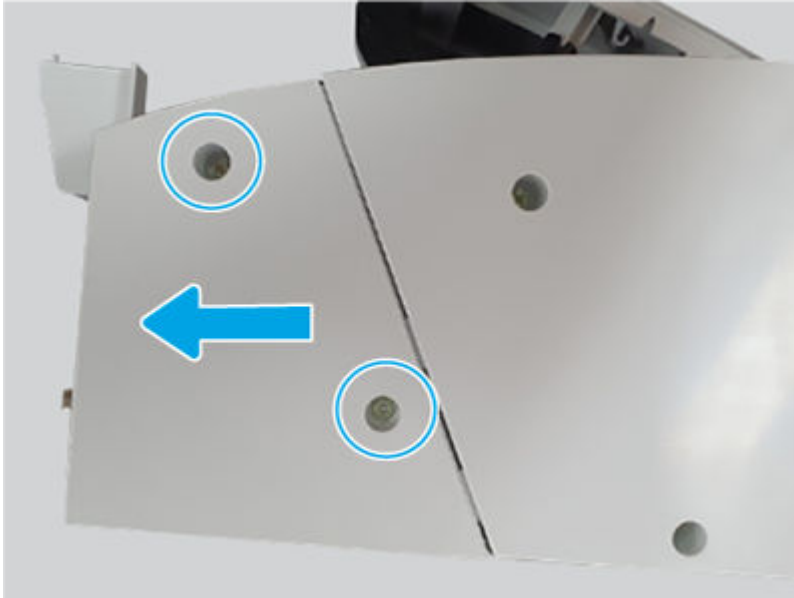
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1 Remove the inner finisher rear punch cover

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher rear punch cover.

- Remove two screws, and then slide the inner finisher rear punch cover as shown below to remove it.

Figure 6-3259 Remove the cover

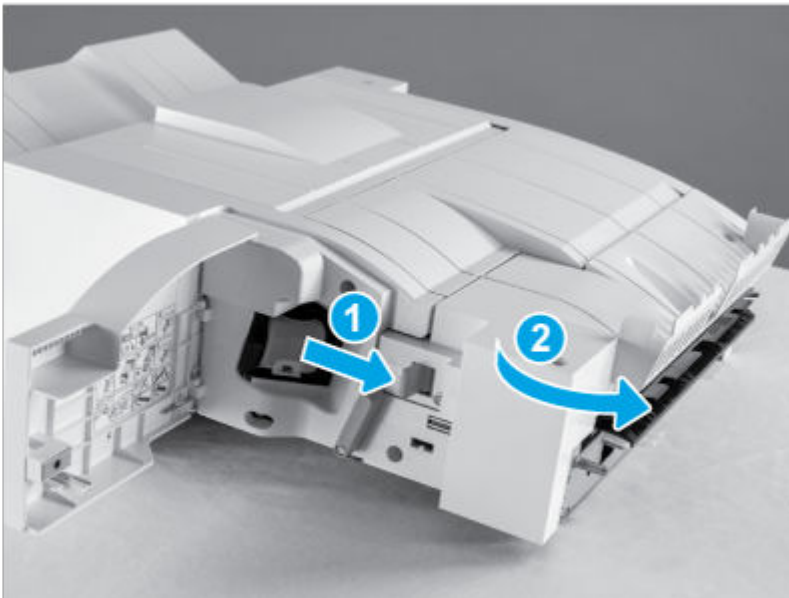


2 Remove the inner finisher punch cover assembly

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher punch cover assembly.

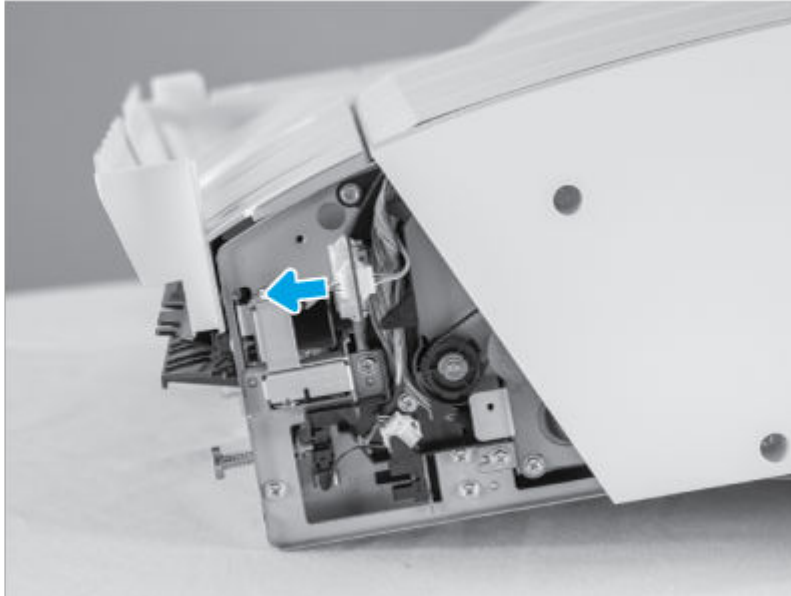
1. Release the lever (callout 1), and then rotate the punch away from the inner finisher (callout 2).

Figure 6-3260 Rotate the punch



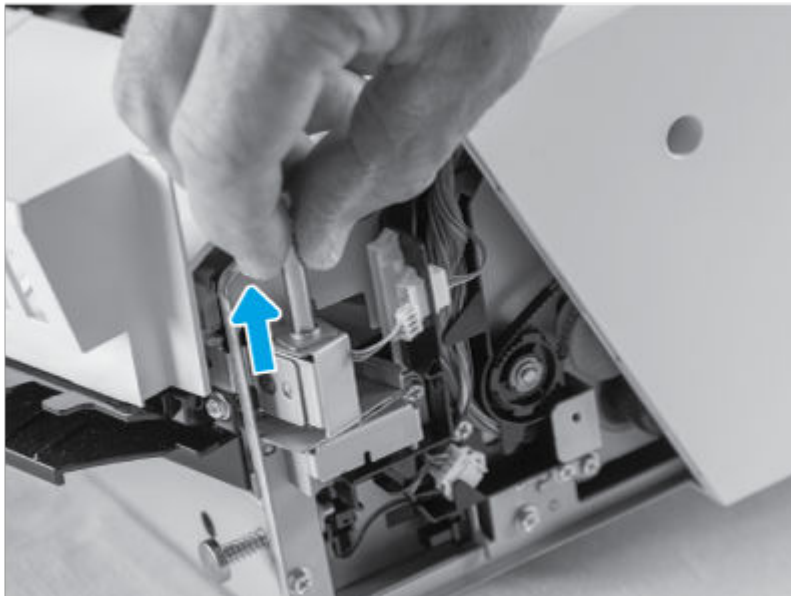
2. Disconnect one connector.

Figure 6-3261 Disconnect one connector



3. Remove the hinge shaft, and then remove the punch cover assembly.

Figure 6-3262 Remove the assembly

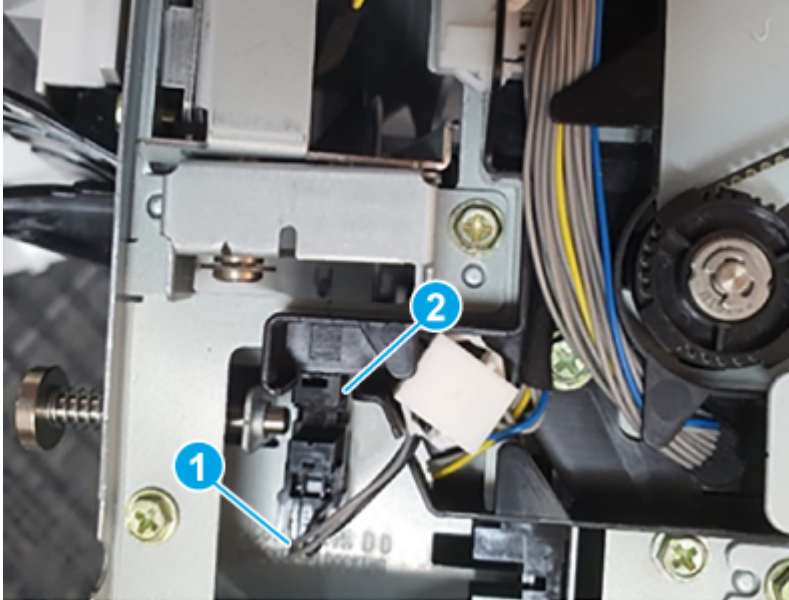


3 Remove the inner finisher docking sensor

Use the following procedure to remove and replace the inner finisher docking sensor.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the inner finisher docking sensor (callout 2).


Figure 6-3263 Remove the sensor



4 Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

7 Parts and diagrams

Printer parts information including exploded assembly diagrams and part number lists.

Base printer

Learn about the printer engine parts and assemblies.

Covers

Learn about base printer cover service parts.

Parts and diagrams: Covers

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer covers.

Figure 7-1 Covers

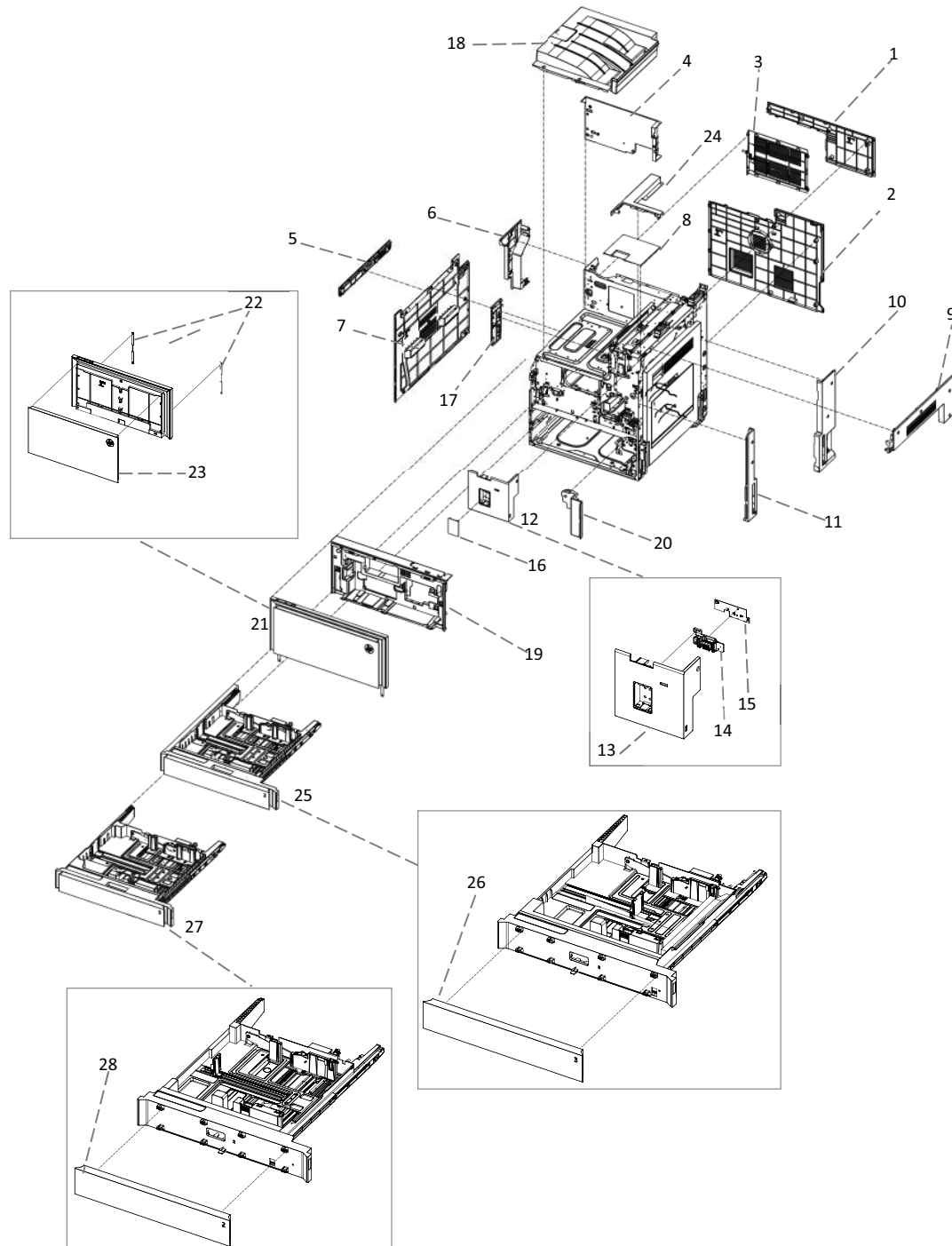


Table 7-1 Covers

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	6EQ94-40014	Rear upper cover	1
2	6EQ94-40004	Rear lower cover	1
3	6ER04-61005	Controller cover	1

Table 7-1 Covers (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
4	6EQ94-40009	Exit rear cover	1
5	JC63-04534B	Left top cover	1
6	6EQ94-40012	Left upper cover	1
7	5QJ98-60104	Left cover	1
8	6EQ94-40017	Middle upper cover	1
9	6EQ94-40015	Right upper cover	1
10	6EQ94-40023	Right rear cover	1
11	6EQ94-40022	Right front cover	1
12	5QJ90-60114	Right middle cover assembly	1
13	6EQ94-40013	Right middle cover	1
14	6EQ94-40029	Power key	1
15	3SJ33-60007	PCA -power key	1
16	6EQ94-40032	HIP cover	1
17	6EQ94-40031	Middle left cover	1
18	5QJ90-60116	Exit cover stacker	1
19	5QJ98-60105	Inner cover	1
20	6EQ94-40011	Front lower cover	1
21	5QJ98-60106	Front cover assembly	1
22	JC61-04626A	Tie stopper	1
23	6EQ94-40018	Front cover - Blue CMF Panel	1
23	5QJ98-40042	Front cover - Gray CMF Panel	1
23	5QJ98-40043	Front cover - Red CMF Panel	1
23	5QJ98-40044	Front cover - Green CMF Panel	1
23	5QJ98-40045	Front cover - Yellow CMF Panel	1
23	5QJ98-40046	Front cover - Purple CMF Panel	1
24	6EQ94-40010	Exit stacker upper cover	1
25	5QJ90-60111	Tray 2 cassette	1
26	5QJ90-40022	Tray 2 cover - Blue CMF panel	1
26	5QJ90-40087	Tray 2 cover - Gray CMF panel	1
26	5QJ90-40088	Tray 2 cover - Red CMF panel	1
26	5QJ90-40089	Tray 2 cover - Green CMF panel	1
26	5QJ90-40090	Tray 2 cover - Yellow CMF panel	1
26	5QJ90-40091	Tray 2 cover - Purple CMF panel	1

Table 7-1 Covers (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
27	5QJ90-60119	Tray 3 cassette	1
28	5QJ94-40016	Tray 3 cover - Blue CMF panel	1
28	5QJ94-40024	Tray 3 cover - Gray CMF panel	1
28	5QJ94-40025	Tray 3 cover - Red CMF panel	1
28	5QJ94-40026	Tray 3 cover - Green CMF panel	1
28	5QJ94-40027	Tray 3 cover - Yellow CMF panel	1
28	5QJ94-40028	Tray 3 cover - Purple CMF panel	1

Tray 1

Learn about base printer Tray 1 service parts.

Parts and diagrams: Tray 1

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer Tray 1.

Figure 7-2 Tray 1

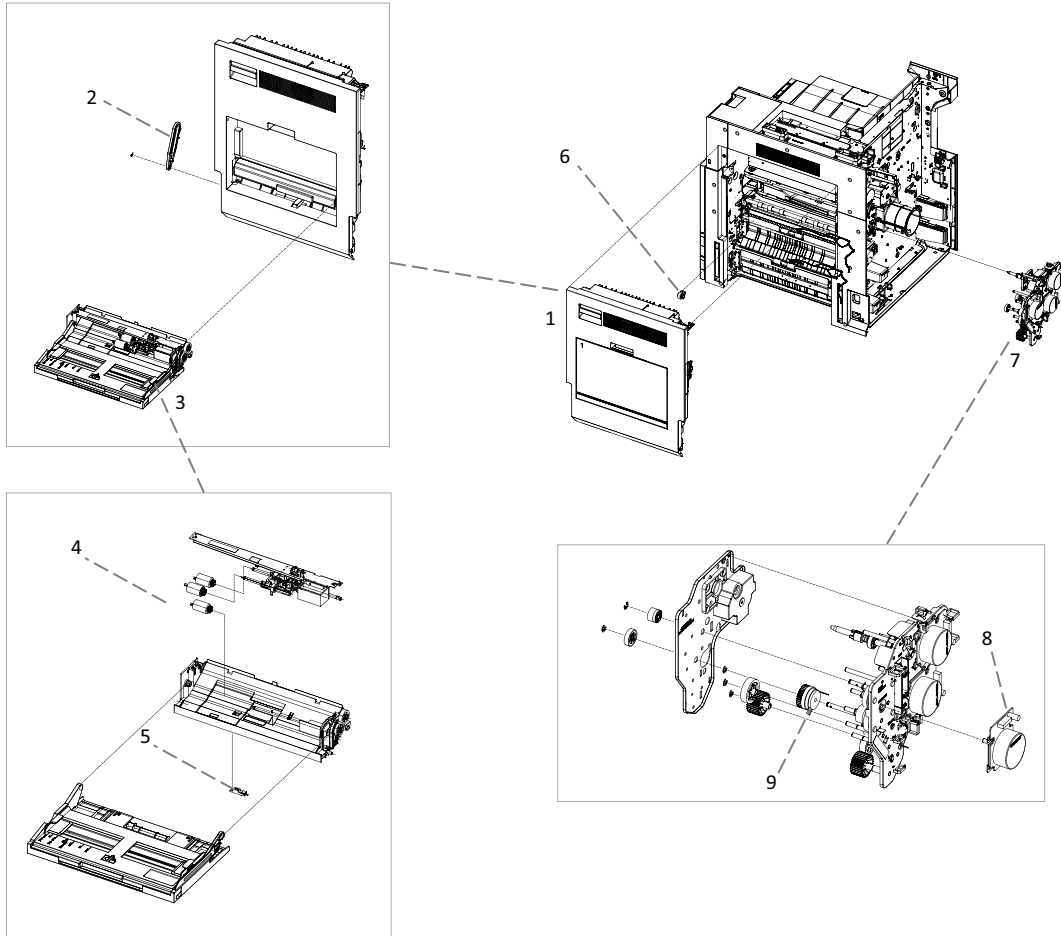


Table 7-2 Tray 1

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	JC95-02260A	Right door assembly	1
2	JC66-03235A	Right door front link	1
3	JC90-01869A	Tray 1 unit	1
4	5RC02-67001	SVC_HP LaserJet tray1 MP Roller Kit	1
5	0604-001381	Tray 1 paper empty sensor	1
6	JC66-01425A	Right door front damper	1
7	JC93-01676A	Main drive assembly	1
8	JC31-00123B	Feed Regi MP motor	1
9	JC47-00037A	Electric clutch (Tray 1 electric clutch)	1

Tray 2, 3

Learn about base printer Tray 2, 3 service parts.

Parts and diagrams: Tray 2, 3

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer Tray 2, 3.

Figure 7-3 Tray 2, 3

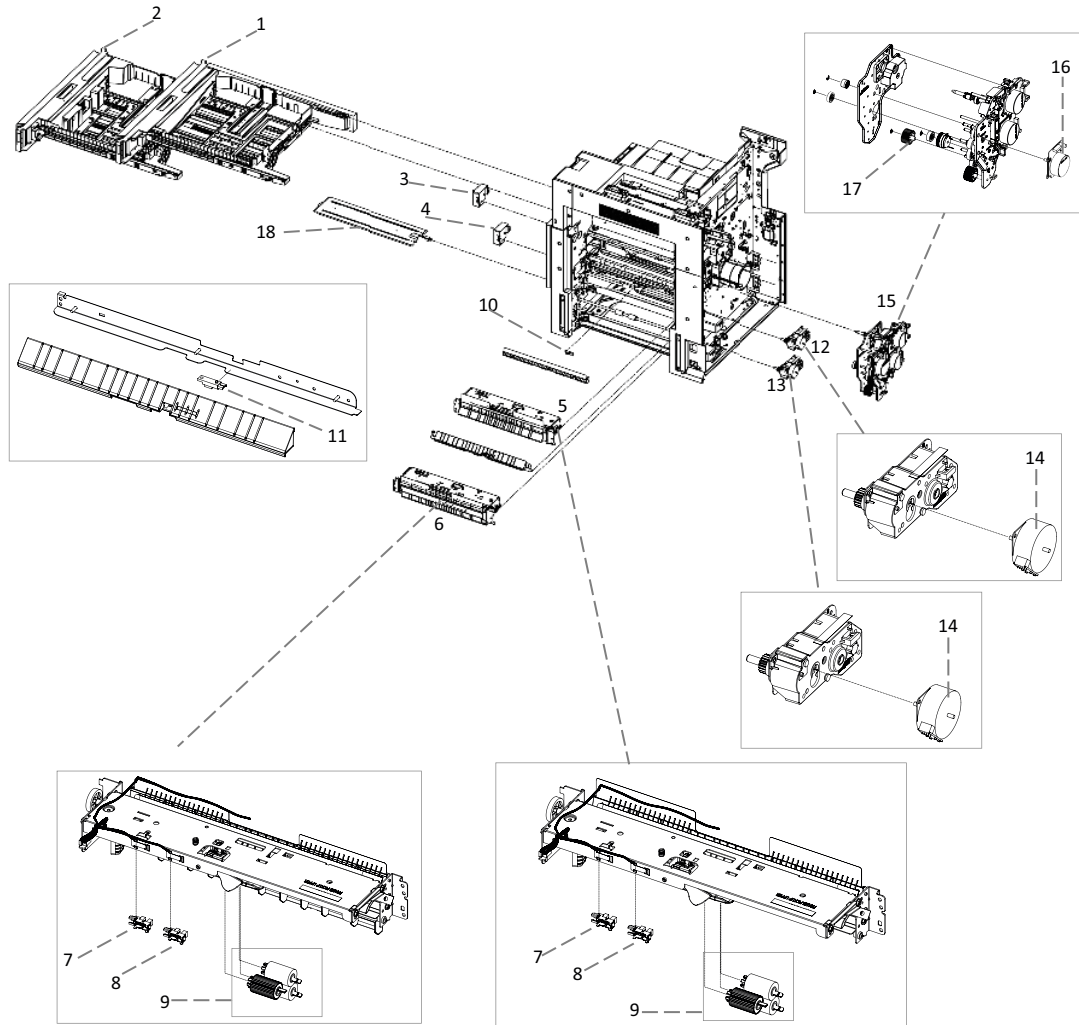


Table 7-3 Tray 2, 3

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	5QJ90-60111	Tray 2 cassette	1
2	5QJ90-60119	Tray 3 cassette	1
3	JC93-00018B	Tray 2 open, paper size sensor assembly	1
4	JC93-00018B	Tray 3 open, paper size sensor assembly	1
5	JC93-01728A	Tray 2 pickup assembly	1
6	JC93-01729A	Tray 3 pickup assembly	1
7	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Tray stack height sensor)	1
8	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Tray empty sensor)	1
9	5PN66-67001	SVC_HP LaserJet Trays 2-x Roller Kit	1

Table 7-3 Tray 2, 3 (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
10	0604-001381	Photo interrupter (Tray 2 feed sensor)	1
11	0604-001490	Photo interrupter (Tray 3 feed sensor)	1
12	5QJ90-64001	Tray 2 pickup drive assembly	1
13	5QJ90-64001	Tray 3 pickup drive assembly	1
14	5QJ90-64001	Pickup motor	1
15	JC93-01676A	Main drive assembly	1
16	JC31-00123B	Feed Regi MP motor	1
17	JC47-00037A	Feed electric clutch	1
18	Y1G22-67901	Tray heater 110V	1
187	Y1G22-67902	Tray heater 220V	1

Registration and loop sensors

Learn about base printer registration and loop sensors service parts.

Parts and diagrams: Registration and Tray 2 unit

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer registration and Tray 2 unit.

Figure 7-4 Registration and Tray 2 unit

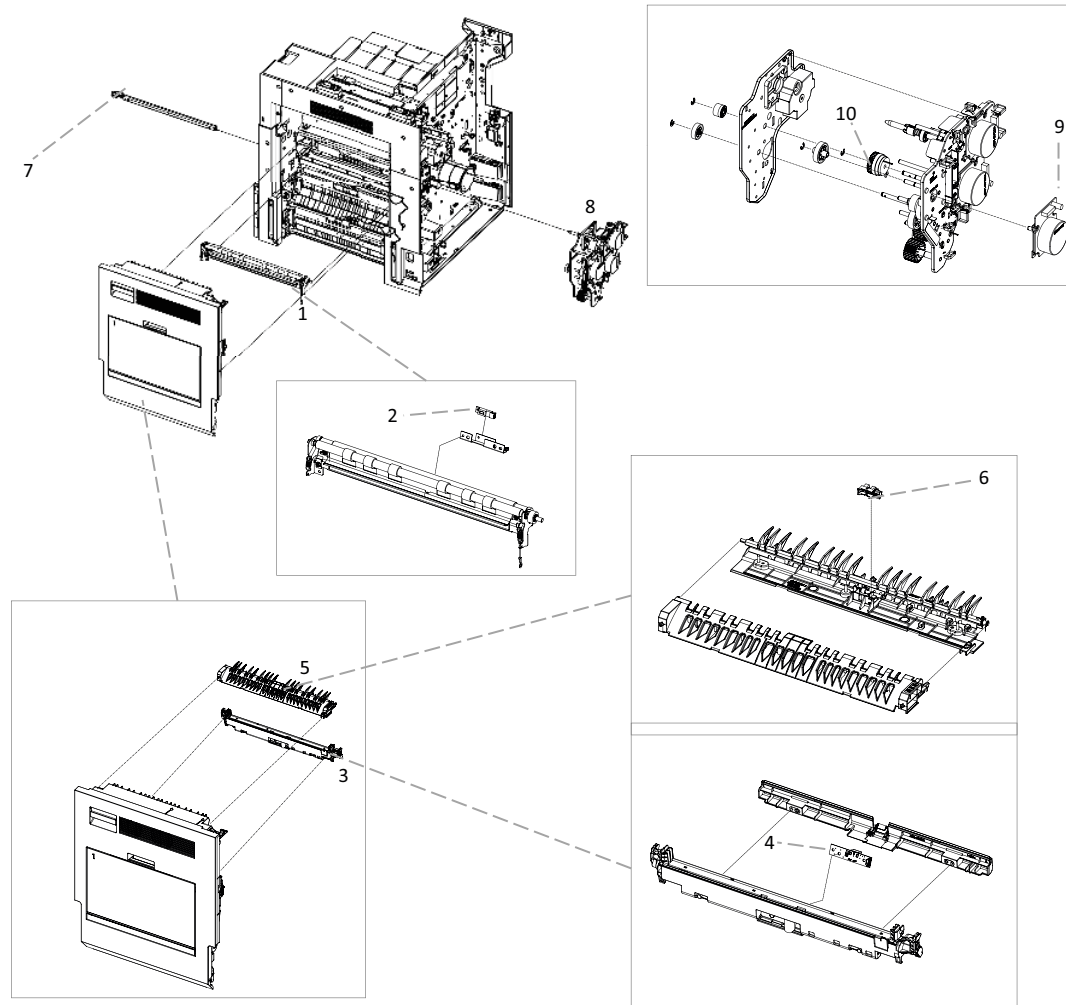


Table 7-4 Registration and Tray 2 unit

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	5QJ90-60129	Registration unit assembly	1
2	0604-001381	Photo interrupter (Registration sensor)	1
3	5PN70-67001	SVC_T2 transfer assembly	1
4	JC32-00025A	CTD sensor	1
5	JC90-01877A	Right door exit assembly	1
6	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Fuser out sensor)	1
7	5QJ98-40056	Paper dust holder assembly	1
8	JC93-01676A	Main drive assembly	1
9	JC31-00123B	Feed Regi MP motor	1
10	JC47-00037A	Registration clutch	1

Exit unit

Learn about base printer exit unit service parts.

Parts and diagrams: Exit unit (1 of 2)

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer exit unit (1 of 2).

Figure 7-5 Exit unit (1 of 2)

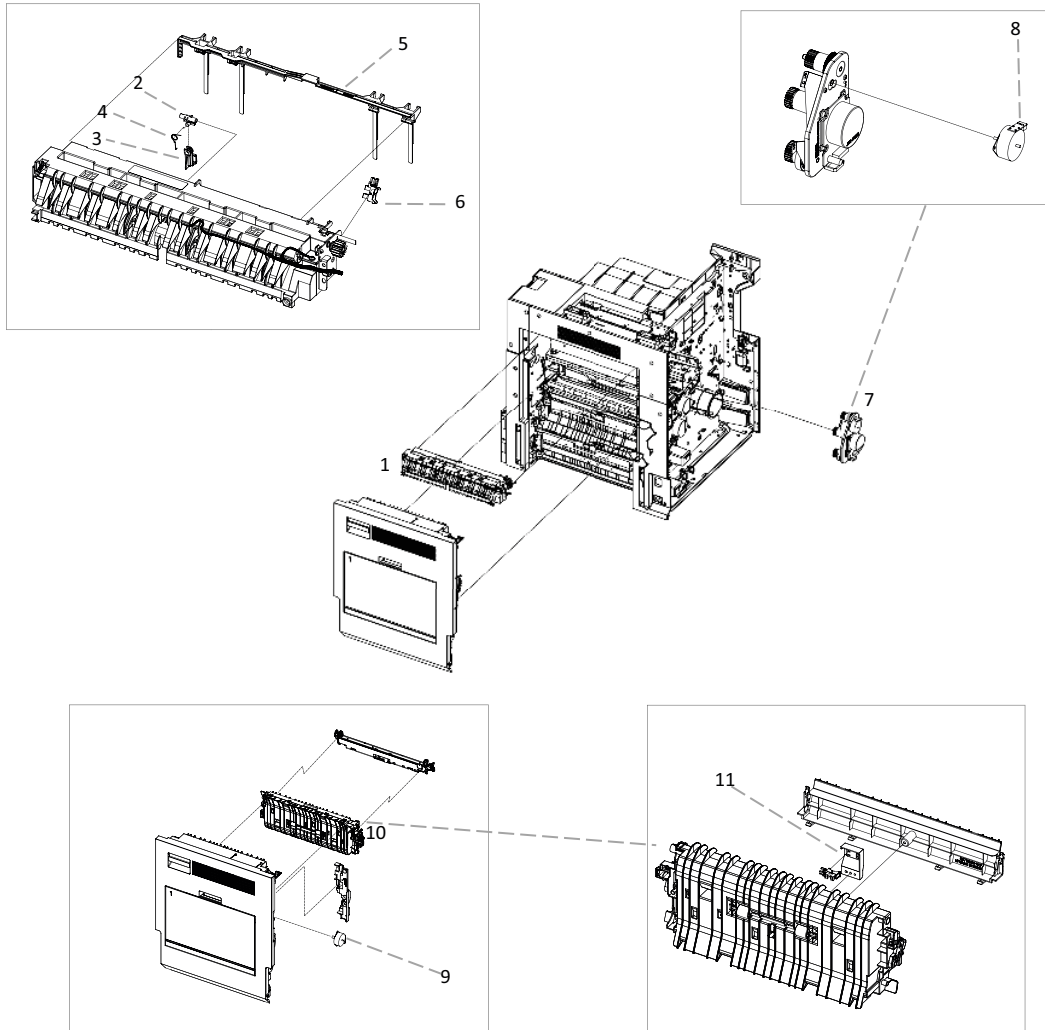


Table 7-5 Exit unit (1 of 2)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	JC90-01876A	Exit unit	1
2	JC66-04339A	Actuator bin full exit	1
3	JC66-02278A	Lever ACT full exit	1
4	JC61-07185A	Spring-TS	1
5	JC90-01874A	Exit stack guide	1

Table 7-5 Exit unit (1 of 2) (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
6	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Out bin 1 full sensor)	1
7	JC93-01679A	Fuser, exit drive assembly	1
8	JC93-01686A	Exit motor	1
9	JC93-01687A	Duplex motor	1
10	JC95-02261A	Duplex assembly	1
11	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Duplex jam sensor)	1

Parts and diagrams: Exit unit (2 of 2)

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer exit unit (2 of 2).

Figure 7-6 Exit unit (2 of 2)

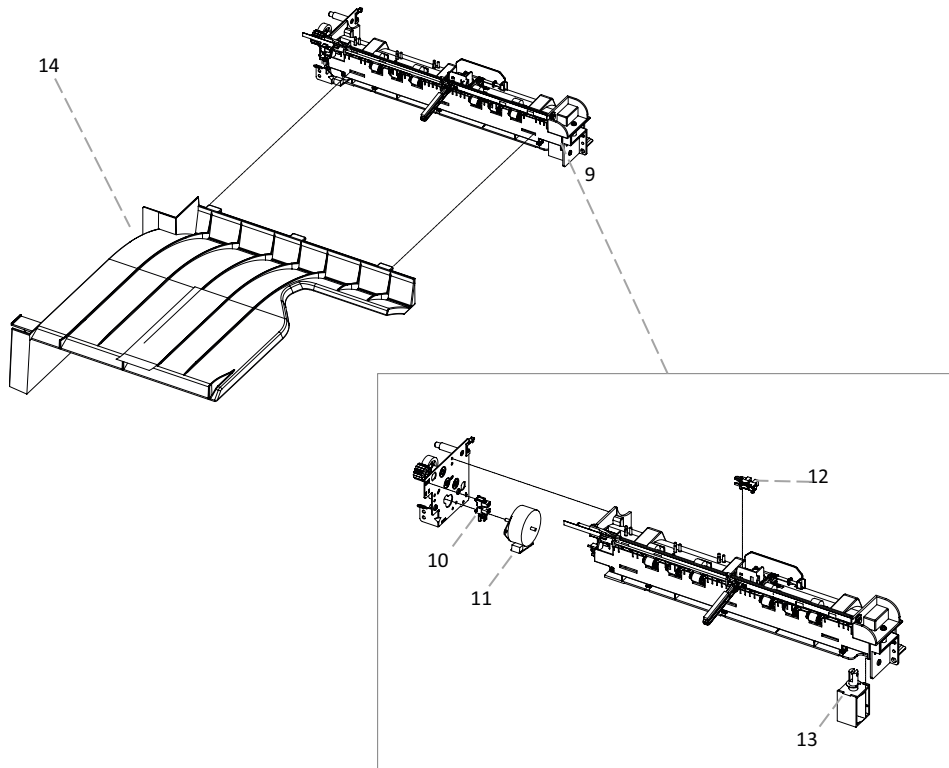


Table 7-6 Exit unit (2 of 2)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
9	Y1G23-67901	Second exit (Optional)	1
10	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Out bin full 2 sensor [Optional])	1
11	JC93-00802A	Exit 2 motor (Optional)	1
12	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Duplex jam 1 sensor [Optional])	1
13	JC33-00031B	Solenoid, lifting (Return gate solenoid)	1
14	6GW52-67901	HP LaserJet WG Job Separator (Optional)	1

Toner cartridge

Learn about base printer toner cartridge service parts.

Parts and diagrams: Toner

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer toner.

Figure 7-7 Toner

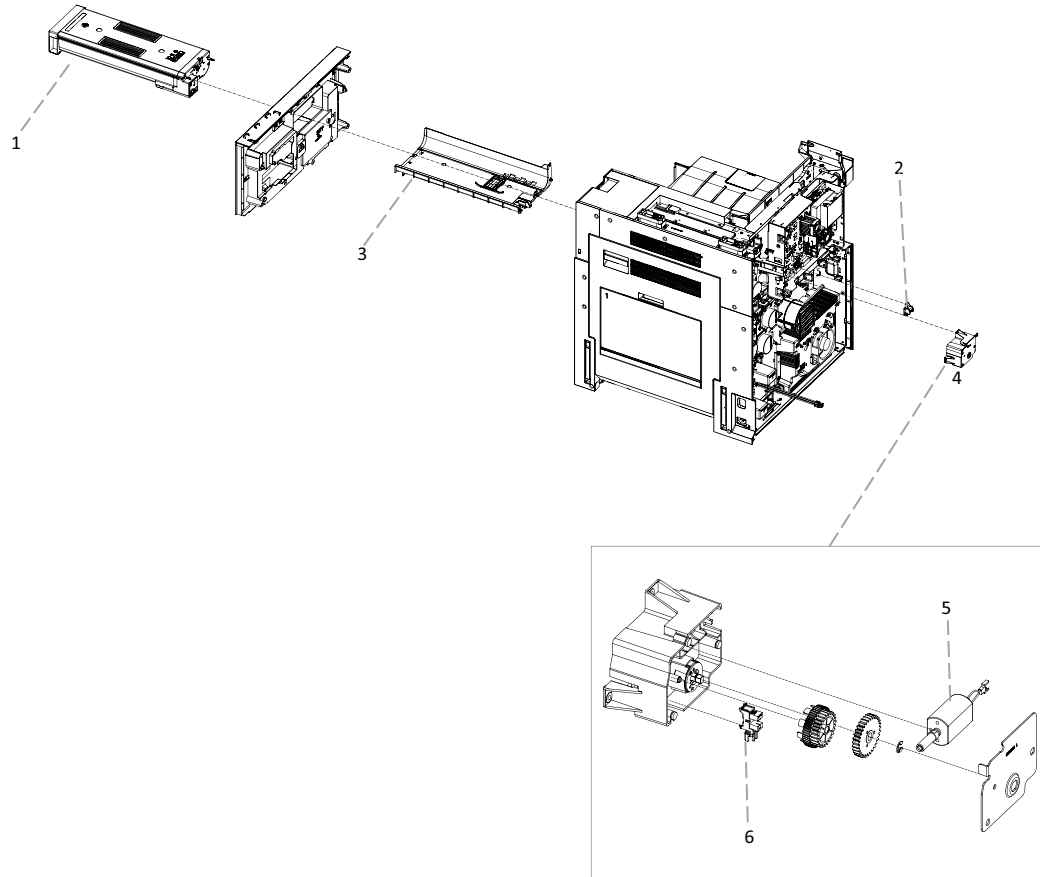


Table 7-7 Toner

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	W9064-67004	SVC-HP LJ Blk Mngd Toner Crtg Std Yield	1
1	W9065-67007	SVC-HP LJ Blk Mngd Toner Crtg High Yield	1
2	5QJ94-50001	Toner CRUM module assembly	1
3	5QJ98-60034	Toner guide unit K	1
4	JC93-01681A	Toner dispense motor assembly	1
5	JC31-00094A	Toner dispense motor	1
6	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Toner dispense motor sensor)	1

Duct assembly

Learn about base duct assembly service parts.

Parts and diagrams: Duct assembly

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer duct assembly.

Figure 7-8 Duct assembly

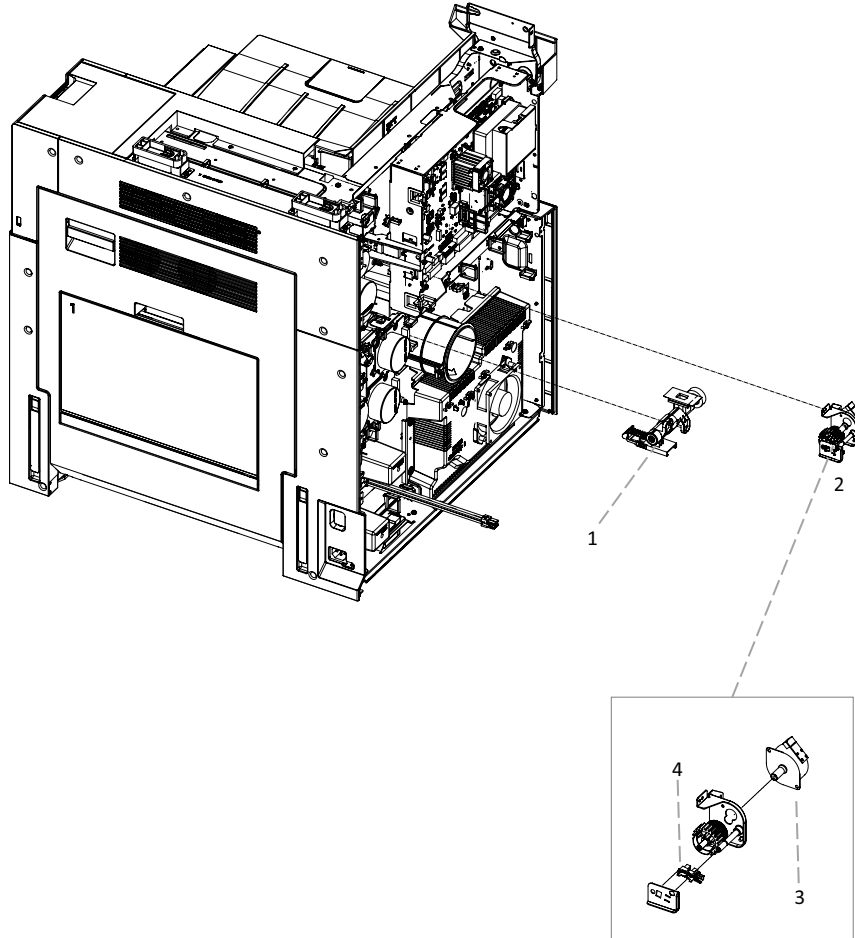


Table 7-8 Duct assembly

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	JC93-00917A	Duct unit K	1
2	JC93-01685A	Toner duct motor assembly	1
3	JC93-01686A	Toner duct motor	1
4	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Toner duct sensor)	1

Toner collection unit (TCU)

Learn about base printer TCU service parts.

Parts and diagrams: Toner Collection Unit

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer Toner Collection Unit.

Figure 7-9 Toner Collection Unit

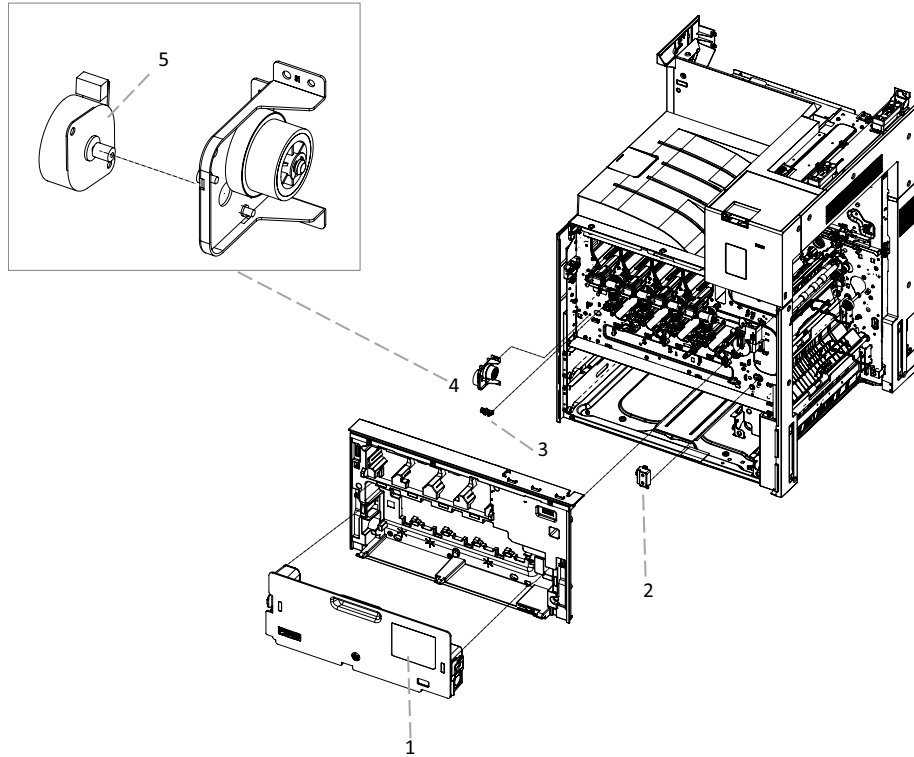


Table 7-9 Toner Collection Unit

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	6SB84-67001	SVC_HP LaserJet Toner Collection Unit	1
2	JC93-00492A	Toner collection unit full sensor assembly	1
3	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Toner collection unit detection sensor)	1
4	JC93-00445A	TCU drive assembly	1
5	JC31-00166A	TCU drive motor	1

Laser scanner unit (LSU)

Learn about base printer LSU service parts.

Parts and diagrams: Laser Scanner Unit

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer laser scanner unit.

Figure 7-10 Laser Scanner Unit

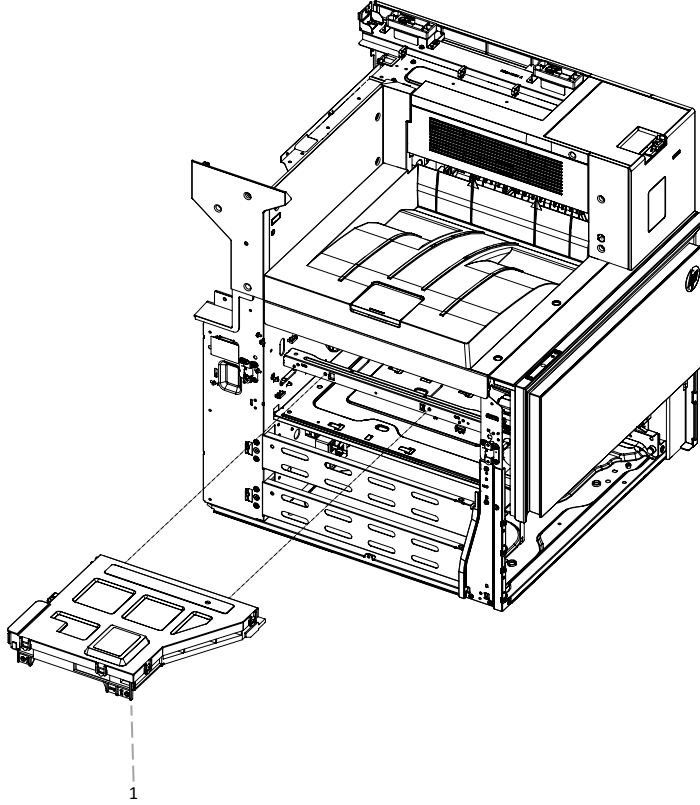


Table 7-10 Laser Scanner Unit

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	5QK18-60001	Laser Scanner Unit (LSU)	1

Imaging unit (drum and developer)

Learn about base printer imaging unit (drum and developer) service parts.

Parts and diagrams: Imaging unit (drum and developer)

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer imaging unit (drum and developer).

Figure 7-11 Imaging unit (drum and developer)

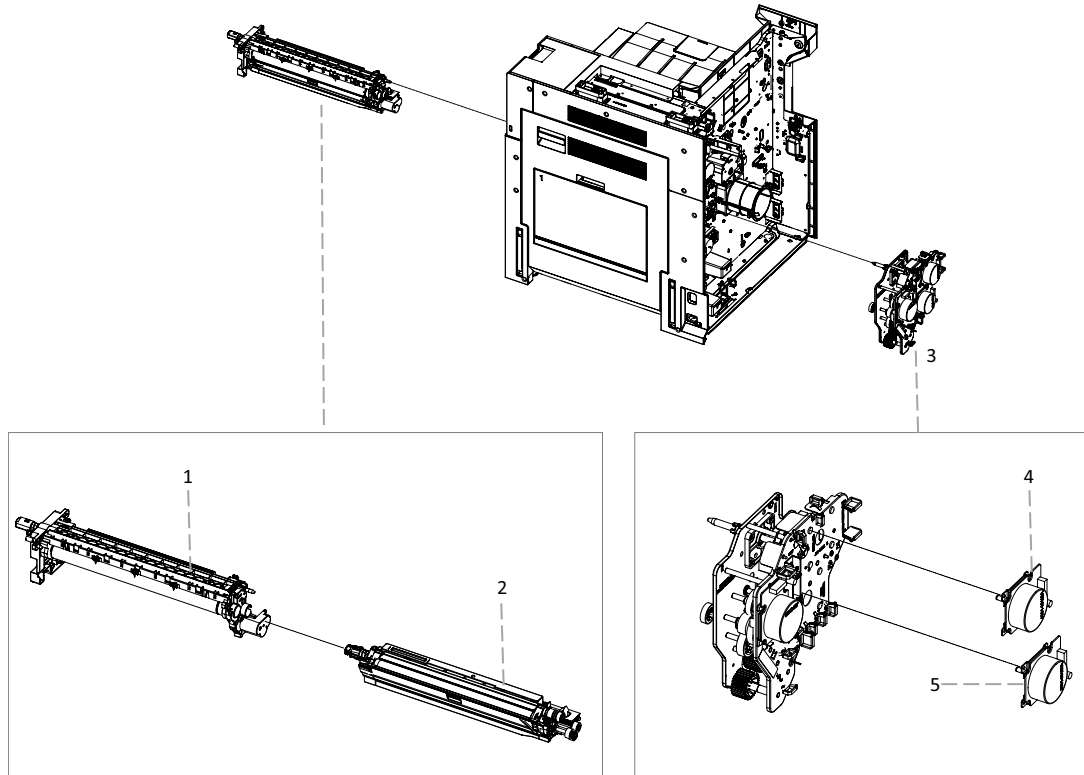


Table 7-11 Imaging unit (drum and developer)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	W9066-67001	SVC_HP LaserJet Black Managed Imaging Drum	1
2	5PN67-67001	SVC_HP LaserJet Black Developer Unit	1
Not shown	5QJ90-60106	Black developer powder kit	1
3	JC93-01676A	Main drive assembly	1
4	JC31-00123A	Drum motor	1
5	JC31-00123A	Developer motor	1

Fuser

Learn about base printer fuser service parts.

Parts and diagrams: Fuser

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer fuser.

Figure 7-12 Fuser

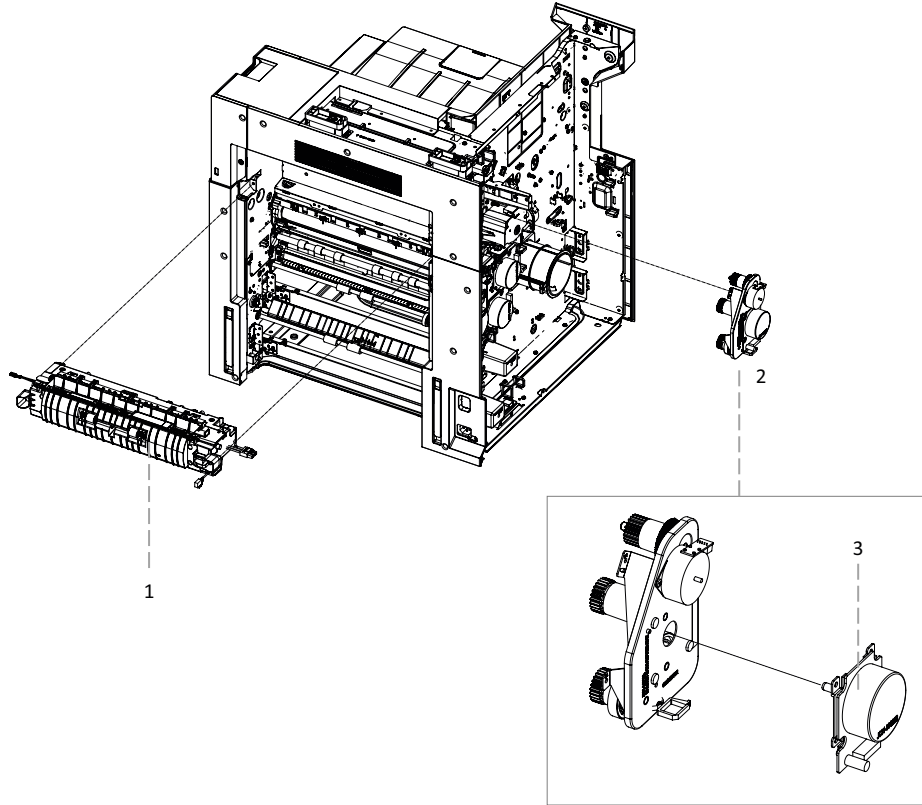


Table 7-12 Fuser

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	5PN51-67001	SVC_HP LaserJet Fuser 100V Kit	1
1	5PN68-67001	SVC_HP LaserJet Fuser 110V Kit	1
1	5PN69-67001	SVC_HP LaserJet Fuser 220V Kit	1
2	JC93-01679A	Fuser and exit drive assembly	1
3	JC31-00123B	Fuser motor	1

Sensor and fan

Learn about base printer sensor and fan service parts.

Parts and diagrams: Sensor and fan

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer sensor and fan.

Figure 7-13 Sensor and fan

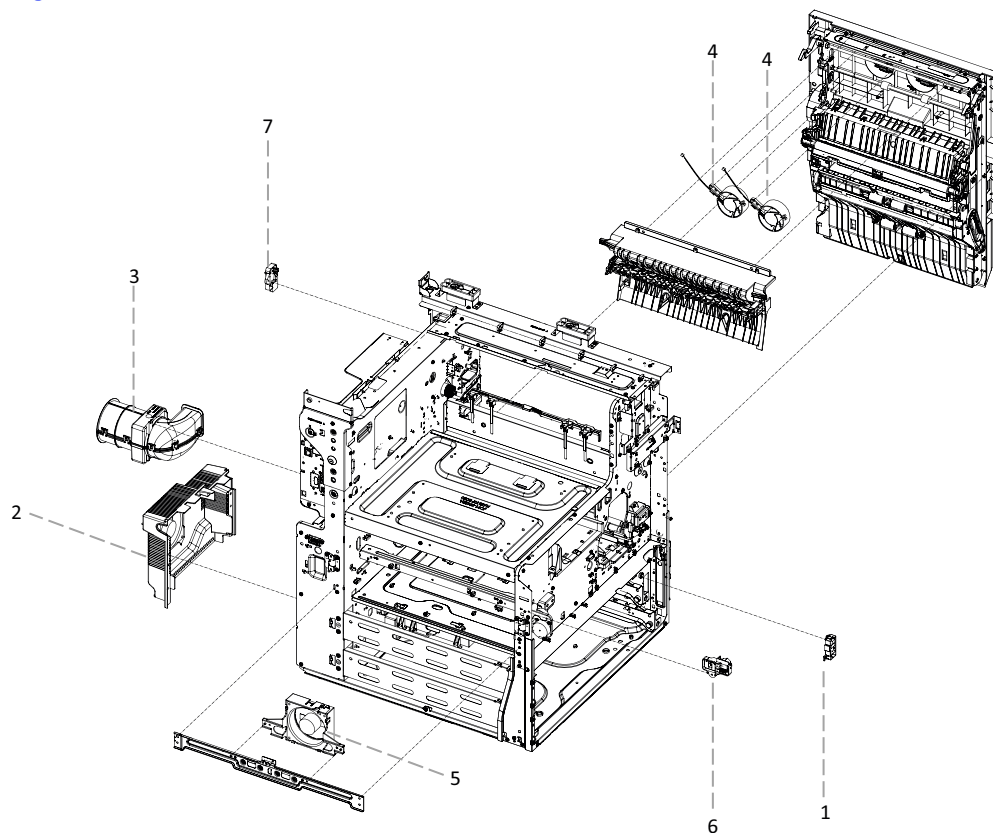


Table 7-13 Sensor and fan

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	5QJ90-40002	Outer temperature, humidity sensor assembly	1
2	JC93-01786A	LVPS FDB fan assembly	1
3	5QJ98-40052	Dev fan assembly	1
4	JC31-00160C	Right door fan	1
5	8GR90-40008	LSU fan assembly	1
6	JC93-00466A	Front door open switch (Front door switch assembly)	1
7	JC93-01467A	Switch (Right door switch assembly)	1

PCA

Learn about base printer PCA service parts.

Parts and diagrams: PCA

Parts diagram and parts list for the PCA.

Figure 7-14 PCA

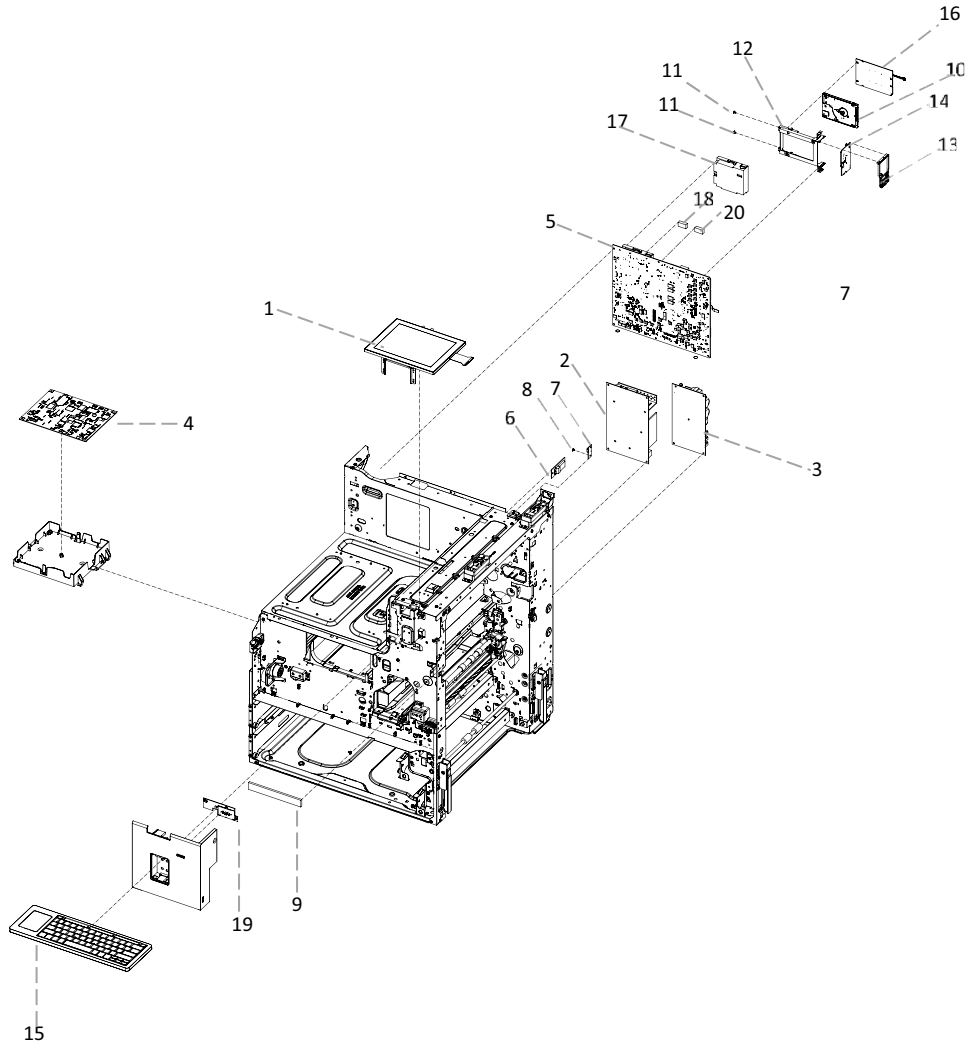


Table 7-14 PCA

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	3SJ15-60101	Control panel (8 inch)	1
1	5QK42-60101	Control panel (10.1 inch)	1
2	5QJ90-60015	Low Voltage Power Supply (LVPS), 220V	1
2	5QJ90-60014	Low Voltage Power Supply (LVPS), 110V	1
3	JC44-00211F	Fuser drive board (FDB), 220V	1
3	JC44-00210F	Fuser drive board (FDB), 110V	1
4	JC44-00237D	High Voltage Power Supply (HVPS)	1
5	6CF14-67004	Main PCA (Formatter)	1
6	3SJ06-60001	Island of Data (IOD) PCA	1
7	T3U64-60001	Echo PCA	1

Table 7-14 PCA (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
8	6ER04-40034	Rivet-Echo PCA	1
9	3SJ04-60001	USB Hub PCA	1
10	933853-010	Hard disk 500GB SED	1
11	6ER04-40035	Rivet-HDD	1
12	5851-7753	Cradle-HDD	1
13	5851-7754	Cradle-Riser Card	1
14	3SJ01-60001	Riser for HDD	1
14	4XN67-60001	Riser for HDD, USB ports	1
14	3SJ02-60001	Riser for HDD, USB ports, Accelerator	1
15	JC93-01742A	Keyboard Assy-US English	1
15	JC93-01743A	Keyboard Assy-UK English	1
Not shown	5851-6019	Keyboard overlay kit (FR, IT, RU, DE,ES,UK Kybd)	1
Not shown	5851-6020	Keyboard overlay kit (FR-CN, ES-LA, ES,US Kybd)	1
Not shown	5851-6021	Keyboard overlay kit (FR-SW, DE-SW, DA,UK Kybd)	1
Not shown	5851-6022	Keyboard overlay kit (ZHTW, ZHCN)	1
Not shown	5851-6023	Keyboard overlay kit (ES, PT)	1
Not shown	5851-6024	Keyboard overlay kit (JA-KG, JA-KT)	1
16	6HN30-67001	Accelerator (Optional)	1
17	7ZA08-67001	Single Fax Card (WW) (Optional)	1
17	7ZA09-67001	Single Fax Card (BBU) (Optional)	1
17	5QK14-67001	Dual Fax Card (WW) (Optional)	1
17	7ZA07-67001	Dual Fax Card (BBU) (Optional)	1
18	3SJ03-60001 (Not Orderable)	TPM	1
19	3SJ33-60007	PCA - power key	1
20	B5L32-60004	eMMC 32G	1

ADF / Image scanner assembly

Learn about the ADF and sub-scanner parts and assemblies.

Image scanner assembly (ISA)

Learn about the integrated-scanner assembly parts and assemblies.

Parts and diagrams: ISA

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer ISA.

Figure 7-15 ISA

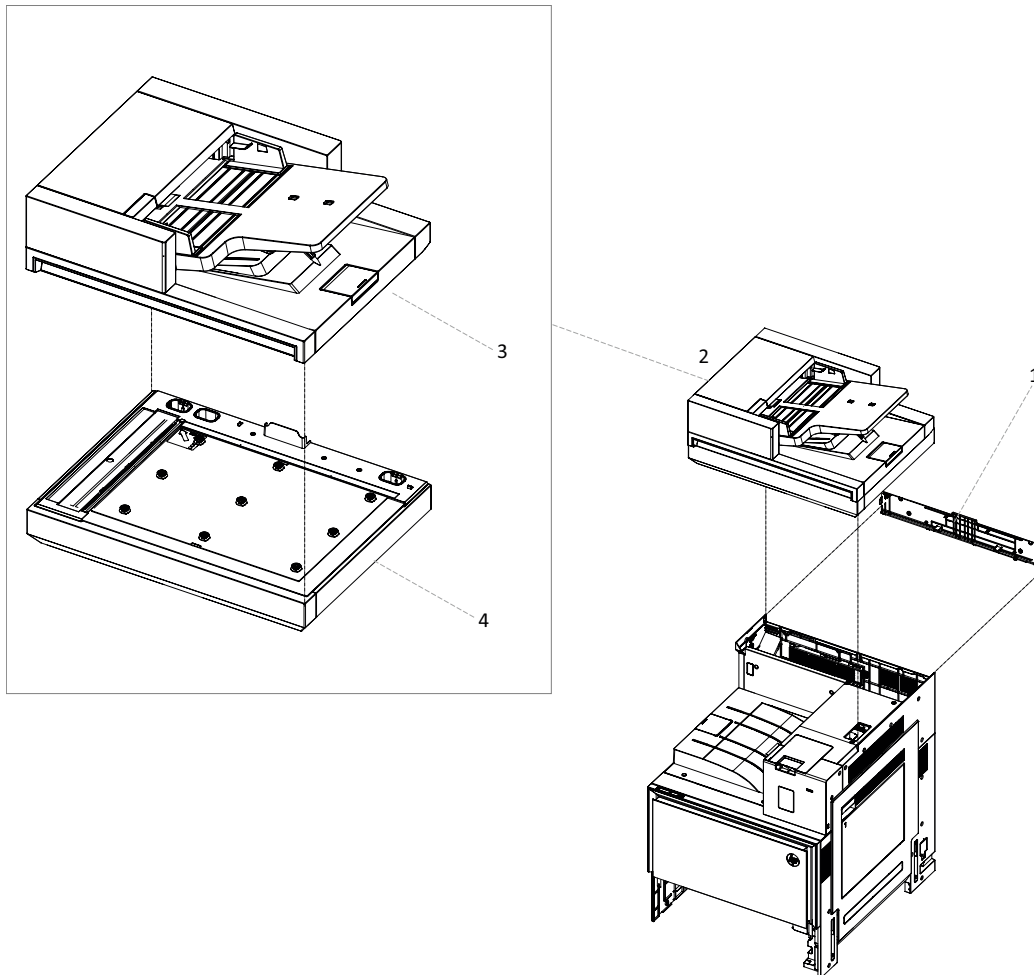


Table 7-15 ISA

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	3SJ11-40008	Cover Rear	1
2	5QK36-67001	HP LaserJet 240ipm 200 sheet Flow DADF Scanner (200sh Flow ADF + Tarot platen)	1
2	5QK35-67001	HP LaserJet 180ipm 200 sheet DADF Scanner (200sh ADF + Tarot platen)	1
2	5QK34-67001	HP LaserJet 120ipm 100 sheet DADF Scanner (100sh ADF + CIS platen)	1
3	5QJ90-67012	200sh flow ADF	1
3	5QJ90-67011	200sh ADF	1
3	5QJ83-67007	100sh ADF	1
4	3SJ11-60103	Tarot platen	1

Table 7-15 ISA (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
4	3SJ00-60103	CIS platen	1

200sh ADF

Learn about the 200sh ADF parts and assemblies.

Parts and diagrams: 200sh ADF (1 of 2)

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer ADF.

Figure 7-16 200sh ADF (1 of 2)

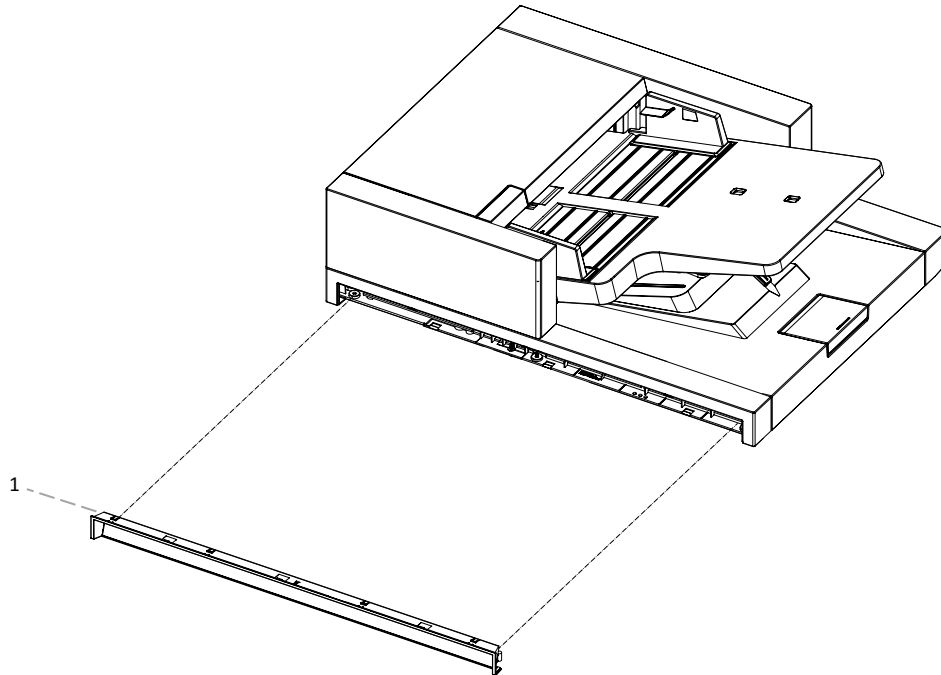


Table 7-16 200sh ADF (1 of 2)

Ref No, Callout	Part number	Description	Qty
1, C605	5QJ90-40056	ADF Blue CMF panel	1
1, C605	5QJ90-40108	ADF Gray CMF panel	1
1, C605	5QJ90-40109	ADF Red CMF panel	1
1, C605	5QJ90-40110	ADF Green CMF panel	1
1, C605	5QJ90-40111	ADF Yellow CMF panel	1
1, C605	5QJ90-40112	ADF Purple CMF panel	1

Parts and diagrams: 200sh ADF (2 of 2)

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer ADF.

Figure 7-17 200sh ADF (2 of 2)

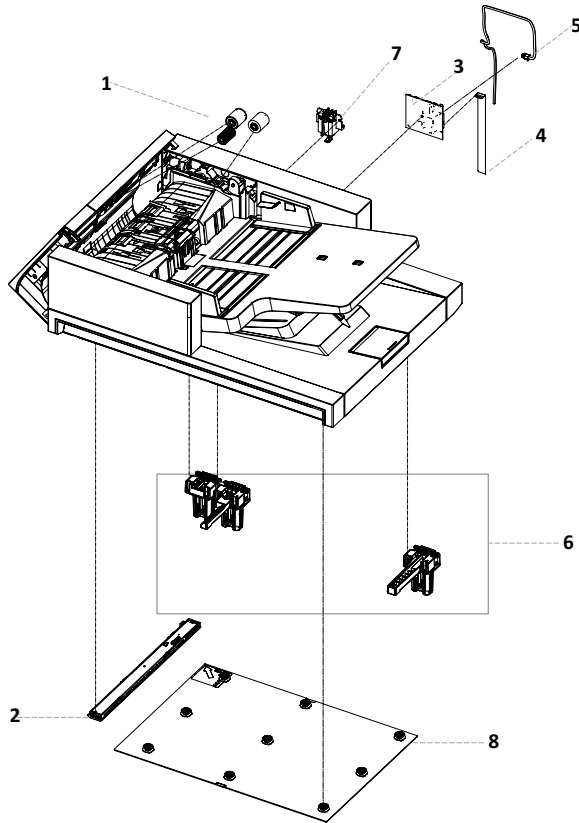


Table 7-17 200sh ADF (2 of 2)

Ref No, Callout	Part number	Description	Qty
1, K601	5851-7202	ADF roller kit	1
2, S609	Z9Y05-60047	ADF image sensor	1
3, P601-1	5QJ90-67013	200sh ENT ADF PCA	1
3, P601-2	5QJ90-67008	200sh ADF WF PCA (flow)	1
4	5QJ90-67009	ADF FFC cable to SSA	1
5	5QJ90-67010	ADF Power cable	1
6, K602	5QJ90-67004	Hinge Kit	1
7	5QJ90-67006	Damper module	1
8, K603	5QJ90-67005	A3 White Backing Kit	1

100sh ADF

Learn about the 100sh ADF parts and assemblies.

Parts and diagrams: 100sh ADF (1 of 2)

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer ADF.

Figure 7-18 100sh ADF (1 of 2)

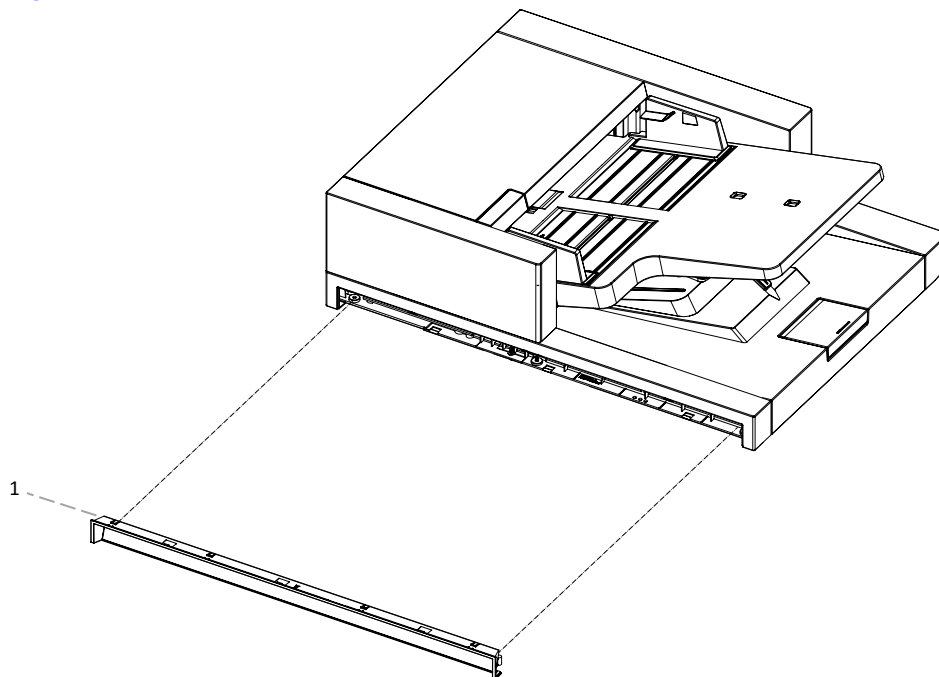


Table 7-18 100sh ADF (1 of 2)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	5QJ90-40056	ADF CMF panel	1

Parts and diagrams: 100sh ADF (2 of 2)

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer ADF.

Figure 7-19 100sh ADF (2 of 2)

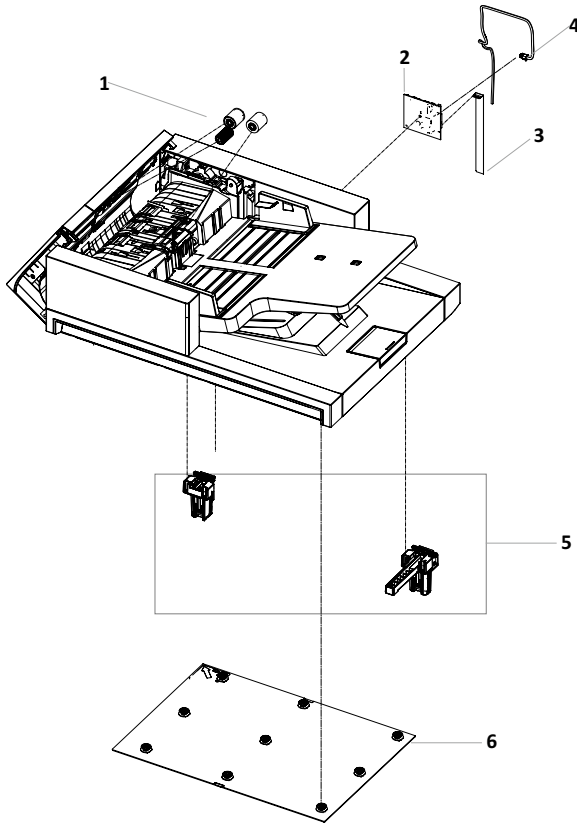


Table 7-19 100sh ADF (2 of 2)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	5QJ83-67002	ADF roller kit	1
2	5QJ83-67004	100sh ADF PCA	1
3	5QJ83-67005	ADF FFC cable to platen	1
4	5QJ83-67006	ADF power cable	1
5	5QJ83-67003	ADF hinge kit	1
6	5QJ90-67005	White backing kit	1

Tarot platen

Learn about the tarot platen parts and assemblies.

Parts and diagrams: Tarot platen

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer tarot platen.

Figure 7-20 Tarot platen

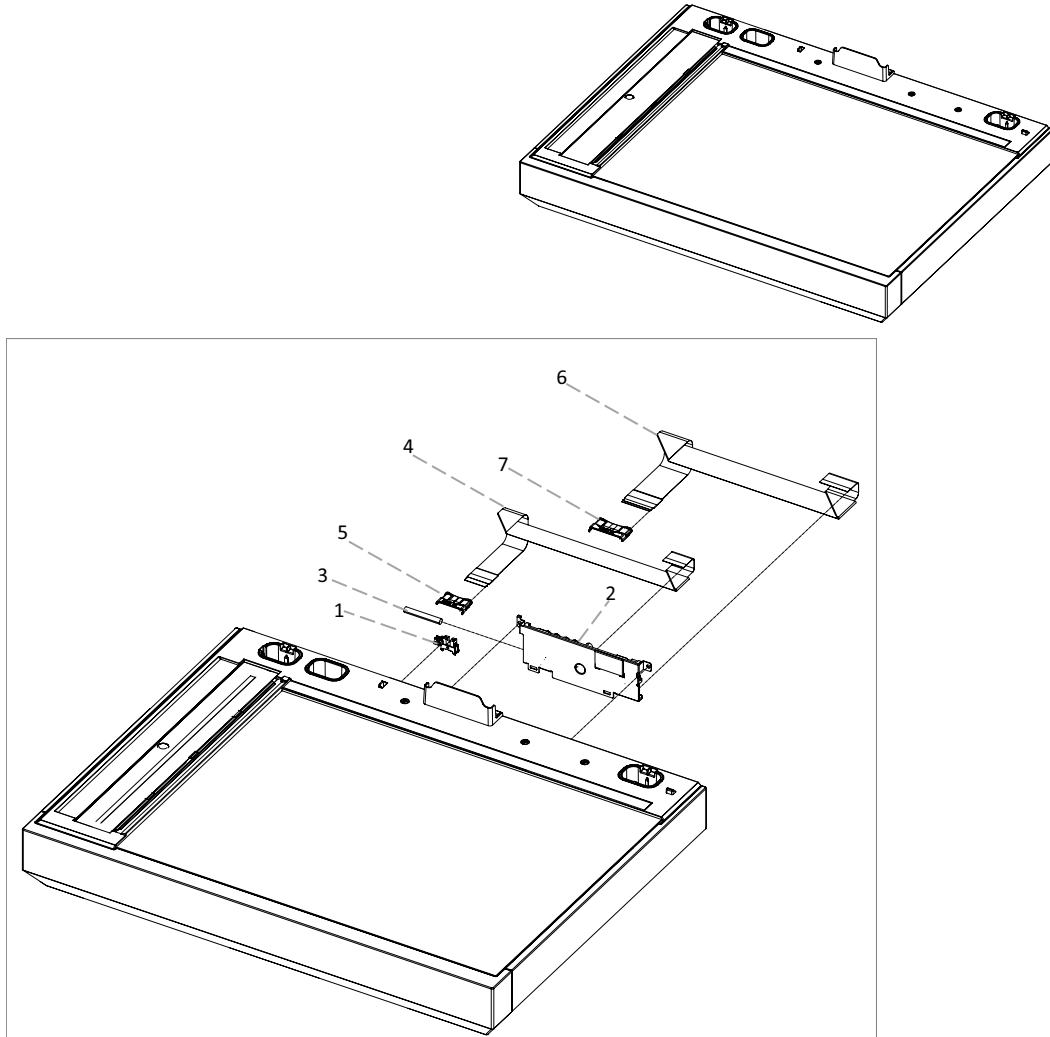


Table 7-20 Tarot platen

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1, S803	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (ADF open sensor)	1
2, P811	Y6V12-60035	Tarot platen PCA	1
3	3SJ11-50006	Discrete power cable	1
4	3SJ11-50021	Platen FFC 50 pin	1
5	5QJ83-40035	Guide FFC	1
6	3SJ11-50022	Platen FFC 68 pin	1
7	5QJ83-40036	Guide FFC	1

CIS platen

Learn about the CIS platen parts and assemblies.

Parts and diagrams: CIS platen

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer CIS platen.

Figure 7-21 CIS platen

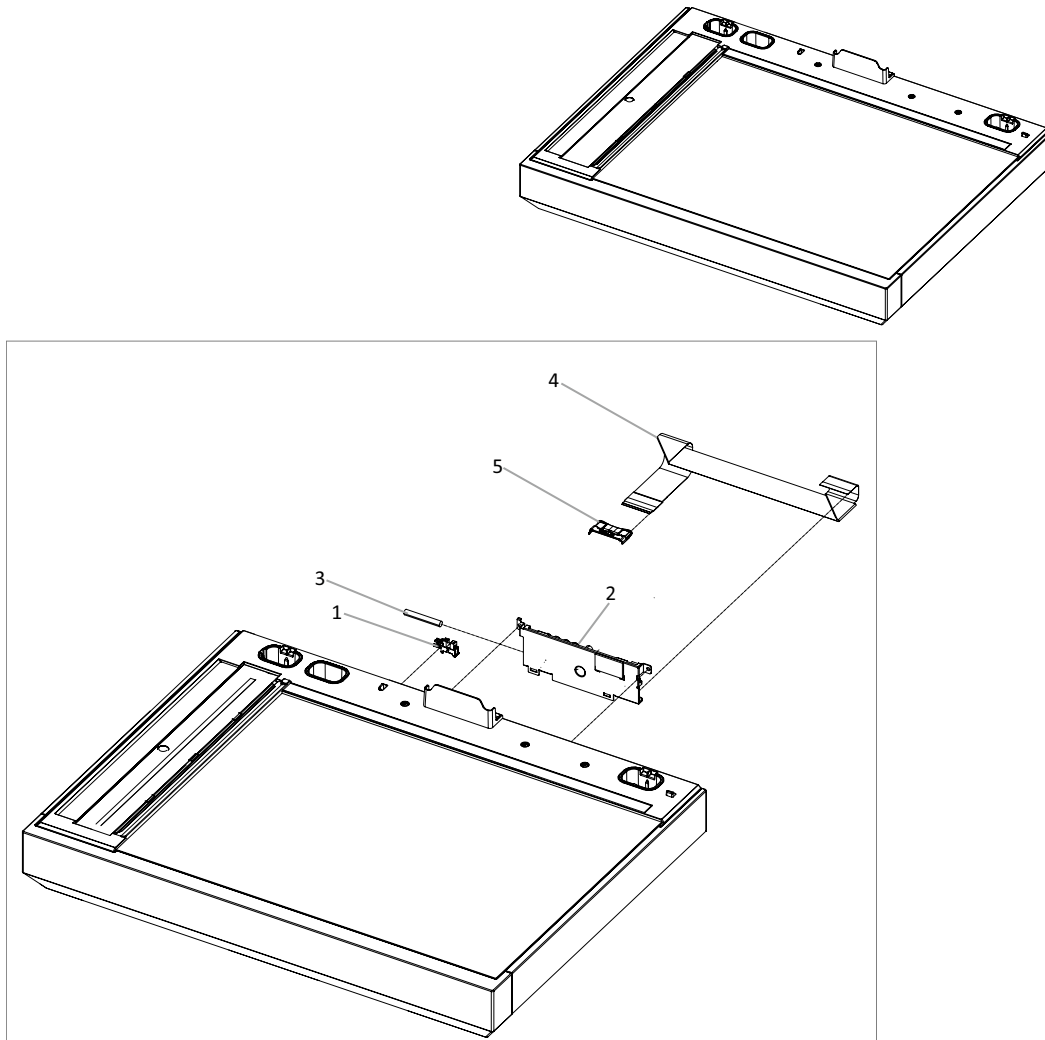


Table 7-21 CIS platen

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (ADF open sensor)	1
2	3SJ00-60109	CIS platen PCA	1
3	3SJ11-50006	Discrete power cable	1
4	3SJ00-50010	Platen FFC 68 pin	1
5	5QJ83-40036	Guide FFC	1

Input devices

Learn about input device parts and assemblies.

Workgroup Dual cassette feeder (DCF, Tray 4, 5)

Learn about the DCF parts and assemblies.

Parts and diagrams: DCF (1 of 2)

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer DCF.

Figure 7-22 DCF (1 of 2)

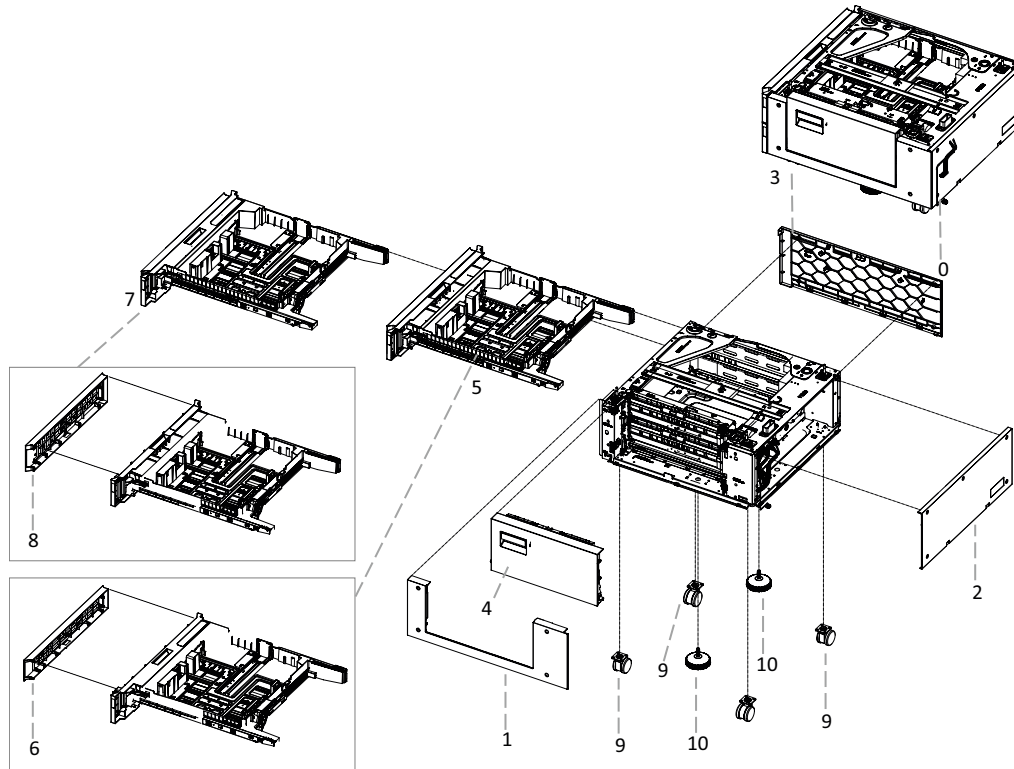


Table 7-22 DCF (1 of 2)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
0	6GW46-67001	DCF	1
1	5QJ98-40015	DCF right cover	1
2	5QJ98-40014	DCF rear cover	1
3	5QJ98-40017	DCF left cover	1
4	5QJ98-61006	DCF right door	1
5	5QJ98-61009	Tray 4 cassette	1
6	5QK03-40033	Tray 4 Blue CMF panel	1
6	8GR90-40026	Tray 4 Gray CMF panel	1
6	8GR90-40042	Tray 4 Red CMF panel	1
6	8GR90-40043	Tray 4 Green CMF panel	1
6	8GR90-40044	Tray 4 Yellow CMF panel	1

Table 7-22 DCF (1 of 2) (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
6	8GR90-40045	Tray 4 Purple CMF panel	1
7	5QJ98-61007	Tray 5 cassette	1
8	5QK03-40035	Tray 5 Blue CMF panel	1
8	8GR90-40025	Tray 5 Gray CMF panel	1
8	8GR90-40046	Tray 5 Red CMF panel	1
8	8GR90-40047	Tray 5 Green CMF panel	1
8	8GR90-40048	Tray 5 Yellow CMF panel	1
8	8GR90-40049	Tray 5 Purple CMF panel	1
9	6109-001138	Caster wheel	1
10	JC61-04871A	Guide Adjust	1

Parts and diagrams: DCF (2 of 2)

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer DCF.

Figure 7-23 DCF (2 of 2)

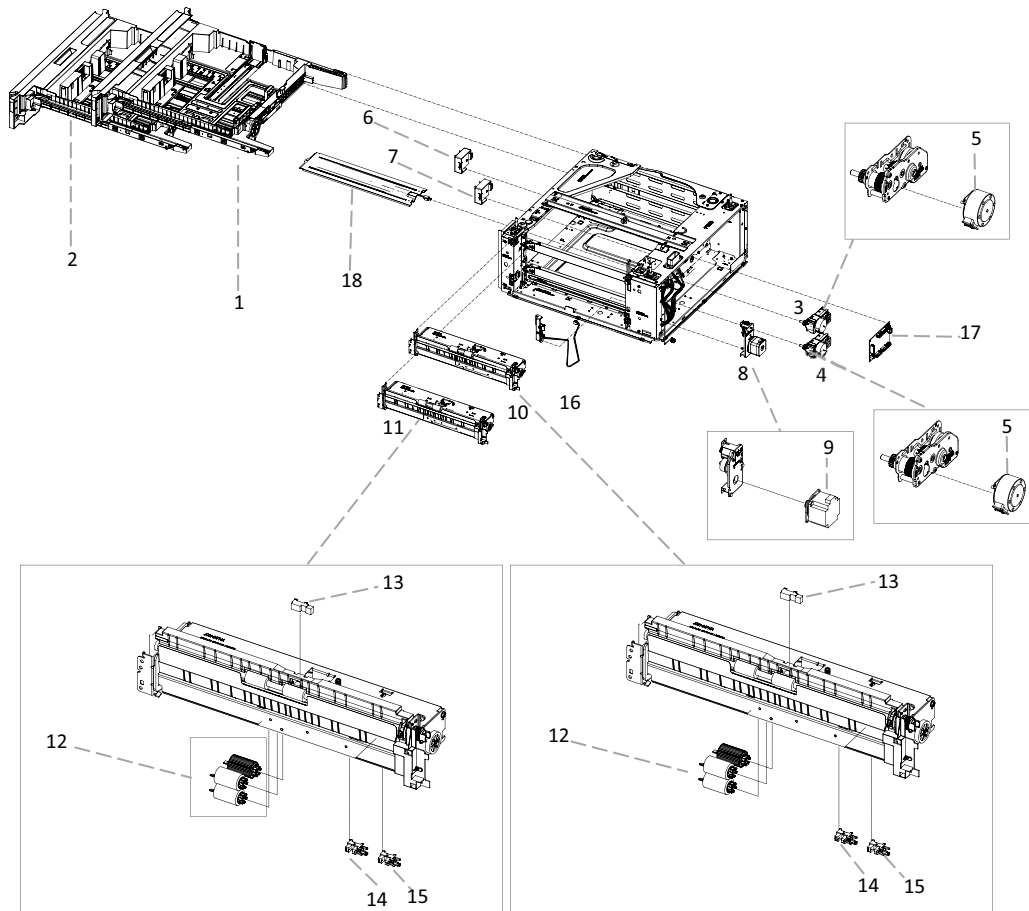


Table 7-23 DCF (2 of 2)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	5QJ98-61009	Tray 4 cassette	1
2	5QJ98-61007	Tray 5 cassette	1
3	5QJ90-64001	Tray 4 pickup drive assembly	1
4	5QJ90-64001	Tray 5 pickup drive assembly	1
5	5QJ90-64002	Tray 4, 5 pickup motor	1
6	JC93-00018B	Tray 4 tray open, paper size sensor	1
7	JC93-00018B	Tray 5 tray open, paper size sensor	1
8	JC93-01801A	DCF feed drive assembly	1
9	5QJ90-60023	DCF feed motor	1
10	8GR90-60007	Tray 4 pickup assembly	1
11	8GR90-60007	Tray 5 pickup assembly	1

Table 7-23 DCF (2 of 2) (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
12	5PN66-67001	Tray 4, 5 roller kit	1
13	0604-001490	Prefeed 4, 5 sensor	1
14	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (DCF paper empty sensor)	1
15	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (DCF stack height sensor)	1
16	6GW46-40010	DCF WG_Right door open switch holder assy	1
16	JC39-01696A	DCF WG_Door open switch sensor and harness	1
17	6GW46-60001	PCA-DCF Workgroup	1
18	Y1G22-67901	Tray heater 110V (not shown)	1
18	Y1G22-67902	Tray heater 220V (not shown)	1

Workgroup High Capacity Input tray (HCI, Tray 4)

Learn about the HCI parts and assemblies.

Parts and diagrams: HCI (1 of 2)

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer HCI.

Figure 7-24 HCI (1 of 2)

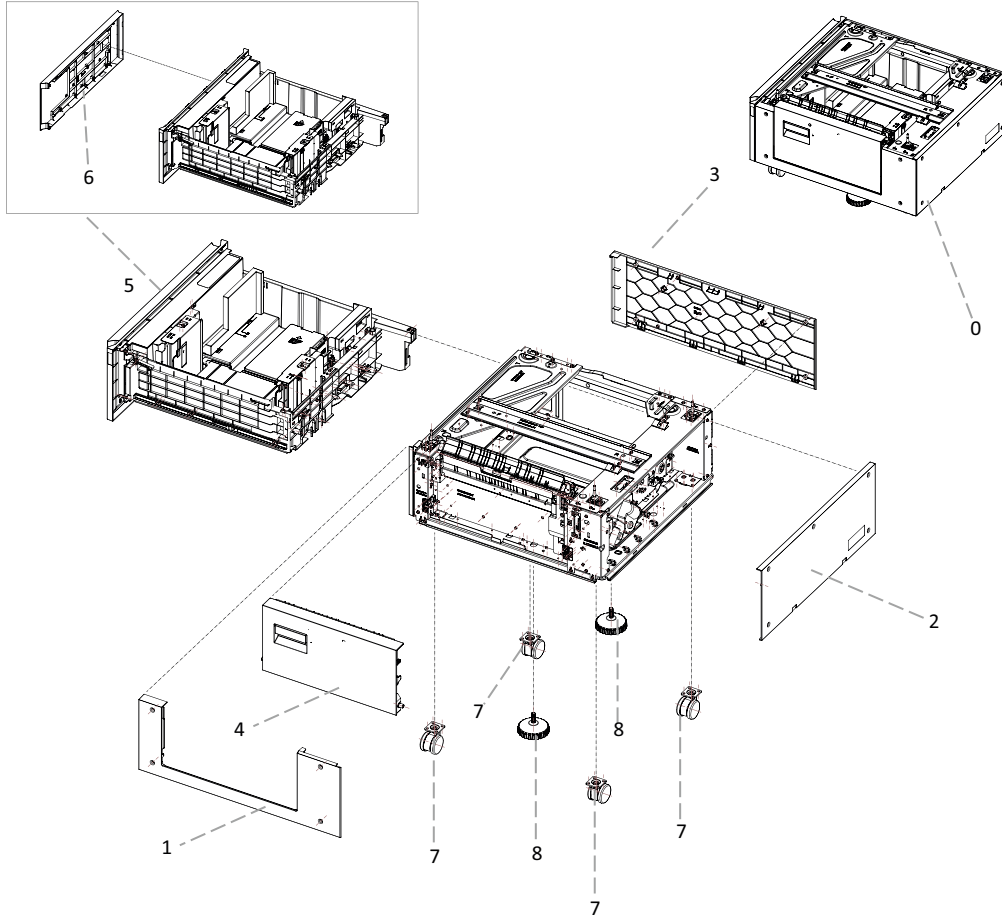


Table 7-24 HCI (1 of 2)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
0	6GW48-67001	HCI	1
1	5QJ98-40024	HCI right cover	1
2	5QJ98-40014	HCI rear cover	1
3	5QJ98-40025	HCI left cover	1
4	5QJ98-61014	HCI right door	1
5	5QJ98-61012	Tray 4	1
6	5QK09-40024	Tray 4 Blue CMF panel	1
6	8GR90-40024	Tray 4 Gray CMF panel	1

Table 7-24 HCI (1 of 2) (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
6	8GR90-40050	Tray 4 Red CMF panel	1
6	8GR90-40051	Tray 4 Green CMF panel	1
6	8GR90-40052	Tray 4 Yellow CMF panel	1
6	8GR90-40053	Tray 4 Purple CMF panel	1
7	6109-001138	Caster wheel	1
8	JC61-04871A	Guide adjust	1

Parts and diagrams: HCI (2 of 2)

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer HCI.

Figure 7-25 HCI (2 of 2)

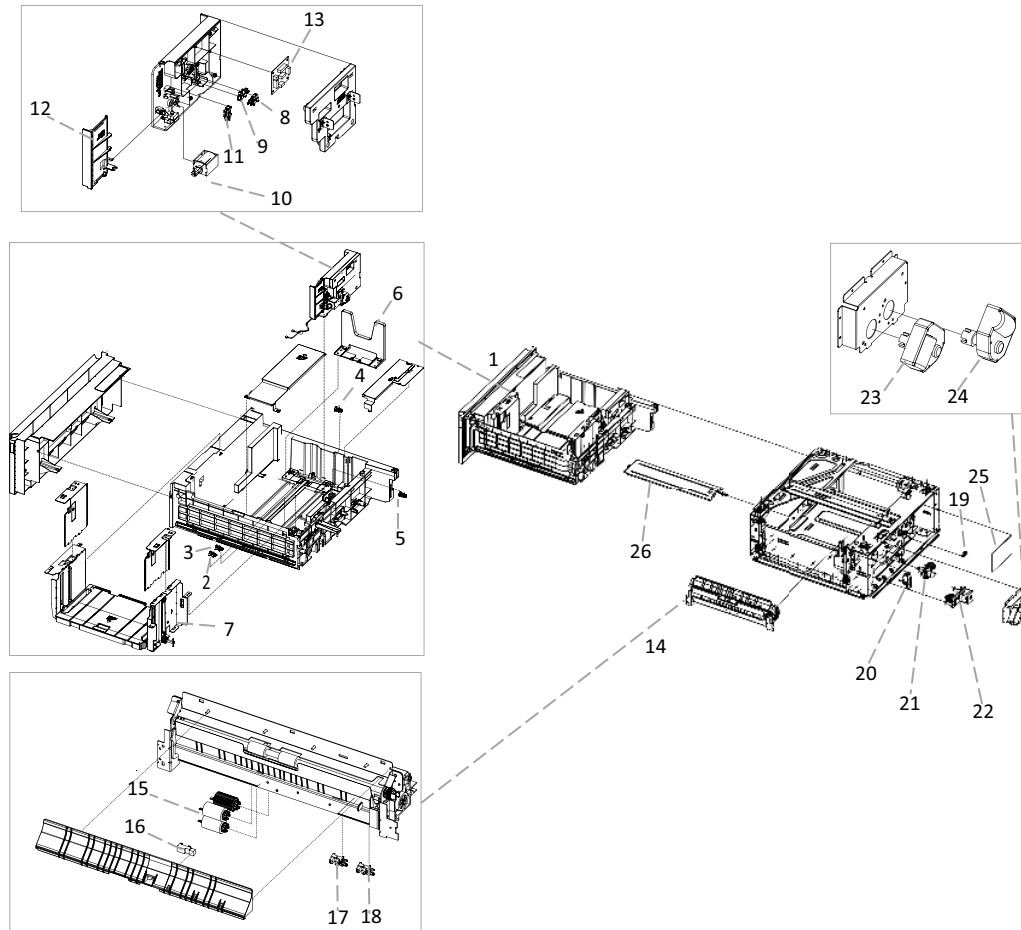


Table 7-25 HCI (2 of 2)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	5QJ98-61012	Tray 4	1
2	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (HCI knock-up home sensor)	1
3	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (HCI shift tray end sensor)	1
4	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (HCI shift tray home sensor)	1
5	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (HCI shift tray empty sensor)	1
6	JC81-07481B	HCI shift plate	1
7	6GW48-60003	Knock-up plate assembly	1
8	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (HCI shift tray level sensor 1)	1
9	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (HCI shift tray level sensor 2)	1
10	JC33-00031B	Solenoid, lifting (HCI shift gate solenoid)	1

Table 7-25 HCl (2 of 2) (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
11	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (HCl shift gate solenoid home sensor)	1
12	JC81-07478B	Paper shift gate	1
13	JC92-02792A	PBA-Shift tray level	1
14	8GR90-60001	HCl pickup assembly	1
15	5PN66-67001	HCl roller kit	1
16	0604-001490	Photo interrupter (HCl feed sensor)	1
17	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (HCl paper empty sensor)	1
18	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (HCl stack height sensor)	1
19	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (HCl tray open sensor)	1
20	JC90-01385A	Right door open switch holder assy	1
	JC39-02601A	DCF Dpt_Door open switch sensor and harness	1
21	5QJ90-60130	HCl pickup motor drive assembly	1
22	JC93-01801A	HCl feed motor drive assembly	1
23	JC31-00109A	Motor, geared (HCl tray lift motor)	1
24	JC31-00125A	Motor, geared (HCl paper shift motor)	1
25	6GW48-60001	PCA-HCl Workgroup	1
26	Y1G22-67901	Tray heater 110V (not shown)	1
27	Y1G22-67902	Tray heater 220V (not shown)	1

Output device

Learn about output device parts and assemblies.

Inner finisher

Learn about the inner finisher parts and assemblies.

Parts and diagrams: Inner finisher (1 of 5)

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer inner finisher.

Figure 7-26 Inner finisher (1 of 5)

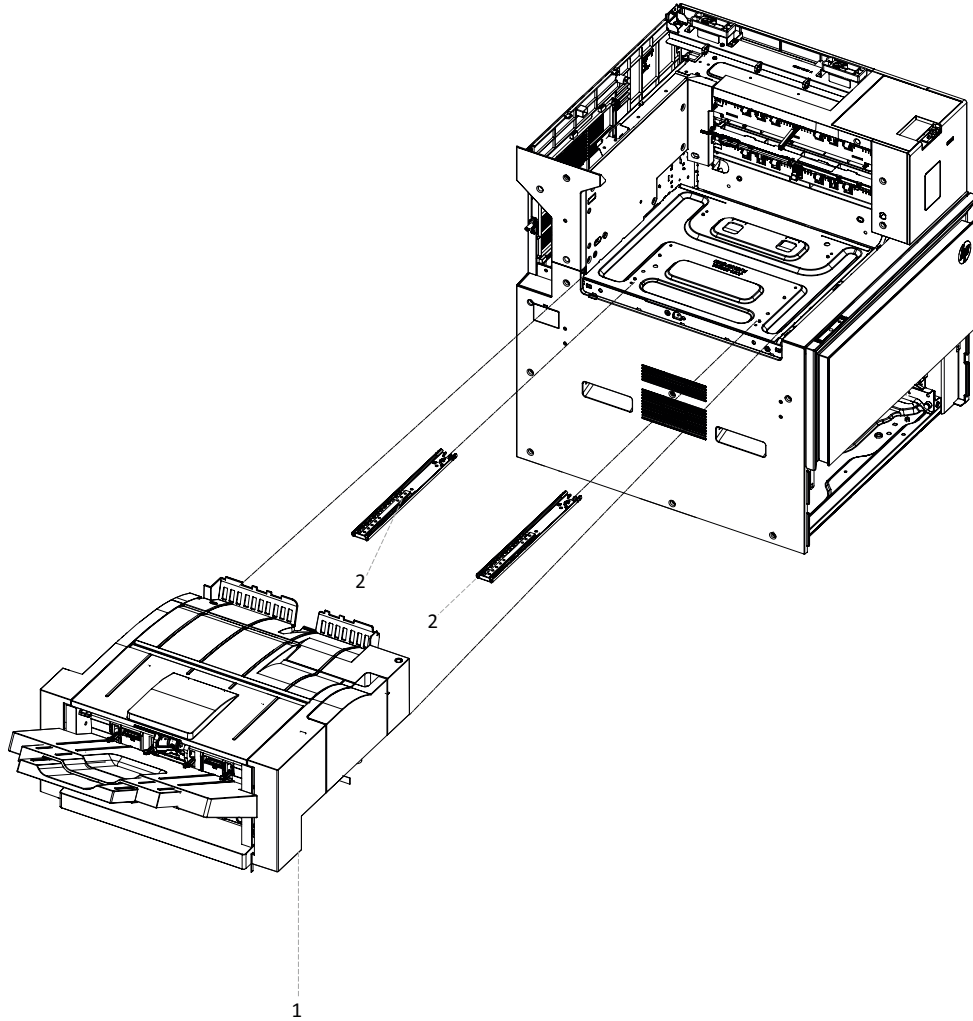


Table 7-26 Inner finisher (1 of 5)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	6GW49-67002	Inner Finisher	1
2	6102-003354	Guide rail	1

Parts and diagrams: Inner finisher (2 of 5)

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer inner finisher.

Figure 7-27 Inner finisher (2 of 5)

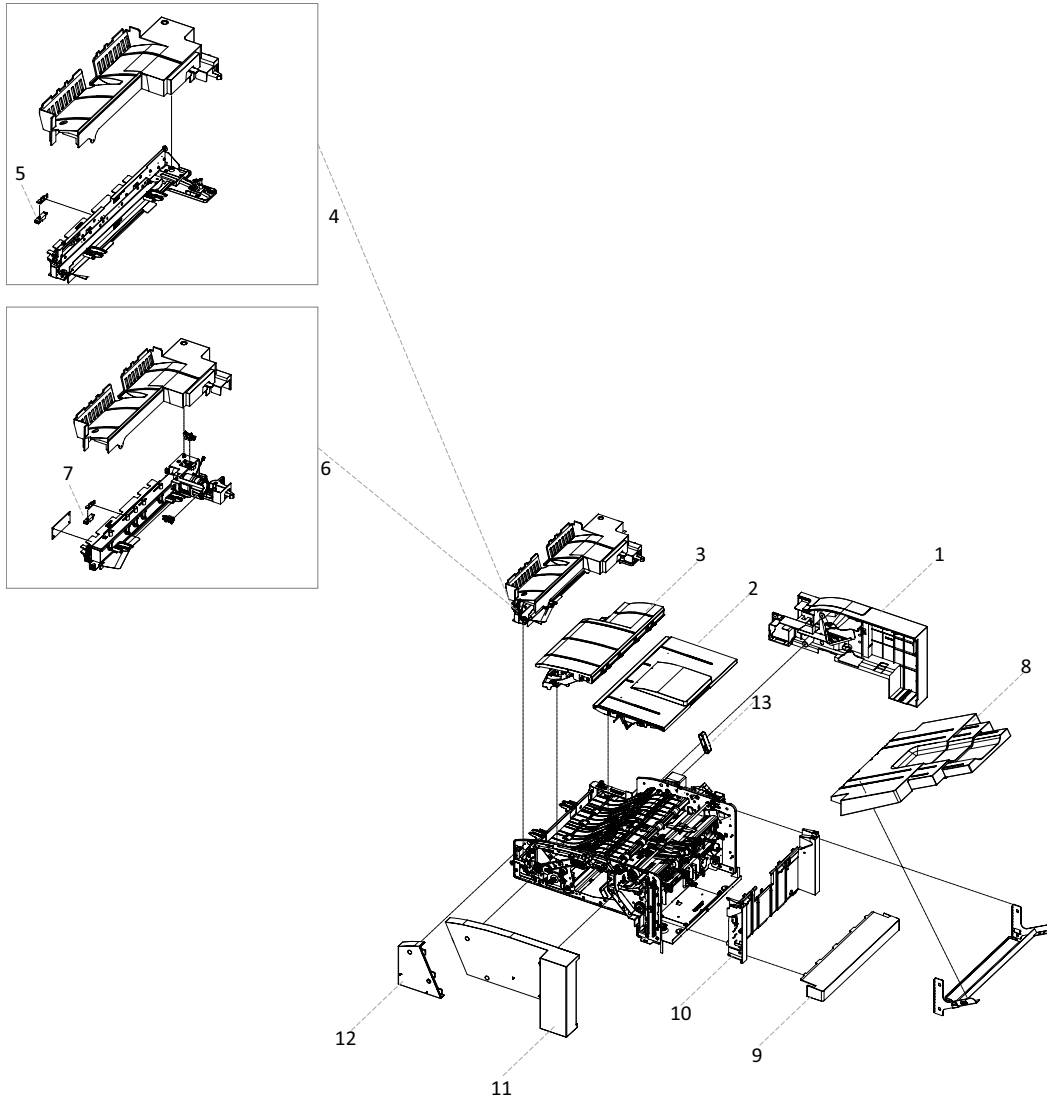


Table 7-27 Inner finisher (2 of 5)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	5QK09-60123	Front cover assy	1
2	5QK09-60125	Top cover assy	1
3	5QK09-60124	Middle cover assy	1
4	8GS05-60114	Punch cover assembly	1
5	0604-001381	Photo interrupter (Entrance sensor)	1
6	155P7-67001	Hole 2/3 punch (optional)	1
6	155P8-67001	Hole 2/4 punch (optional)	1

Table 7-27 Inner finisher (2 of 5) (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
6	155P9-67001	Swedish punch (optional)	1
7	0604-001381	Photo interrupter (Entrance sensor)	1
8	5QK09-60118	Output tray assy	1
9	5QK09-40004	PCA cover	1
10	8GS05-60113	Left cover assy	1
11	5QK09-40018	Rear cover -base	1
12	5QK09-40037	Rear cover -punch	1
13	JC66-04233A	Lock release handle	1

Parts and diagrams: Inner finisher (3 of 5)

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer inner finisher.

Figure 7-28 Inner finisher (3 of 5)

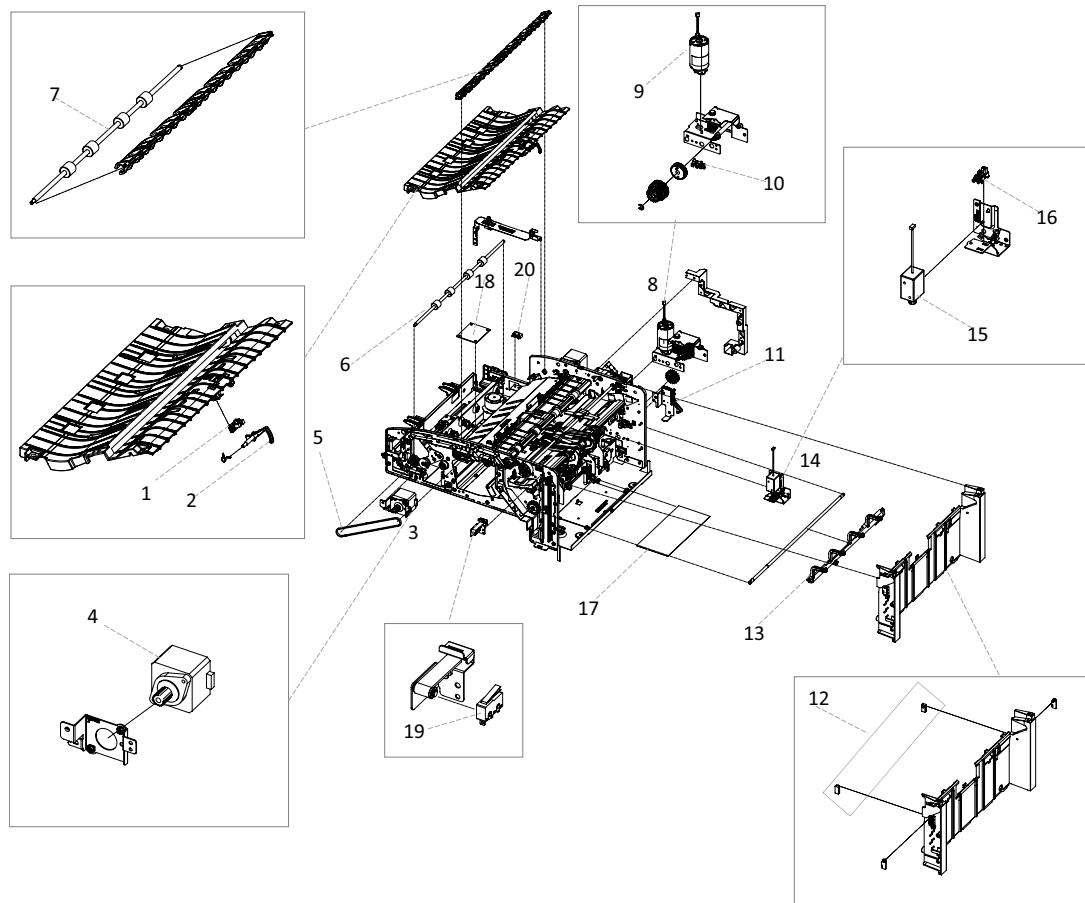


Table 7-28 Inner finisher (3 of 5)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	0604-001415	Photo interrupter (Exit sensor)	1
2	JC66-04199A	Exit sensor actuator	1
3	5QK09-60128	Entrance motor assy	1
4	JC31-00169B	Motor, step (Entrance motor)	1
5	6602-003644	Entrance motor timing belt	1
6	JC66-04243A	Entrance roller	1
7	JC66-04243A	Middle roller	1
8	JC90-01334B	Output tray motor assy	1
9	JC31-00178B	Motor DC (Output tray motor)	1
10	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Output tray motor sensor)	1
11	JC90-01320A	Output tray lower limit switch assy	1

Table 7-28 Inner finisher (3 of 5) (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
12	JC82-01039A	Output tray top of stack sensor kit	1
13	JC90-01313A	Paper holding actuator	1
14	JC90-01314A	Paper holding kit	1
15	JC33-00037A	Electric clutch (Paper holding solenoid)	1
16	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Paper holding sensor)	1
17	6GW49-60001	Inner finisher PCA	1
18	JC92-02780A	Rear joint PCA	1
19	JC39-01610A	Harness - cover open (Front cover switch)	1
20	JC39-01610A	Harness - cover open (Top cover switch)	1

Parts and diagrams: Inner finisher (4 of 5)

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer inner finisher.

Figure 7-29 Inner finisher (4 of 5)

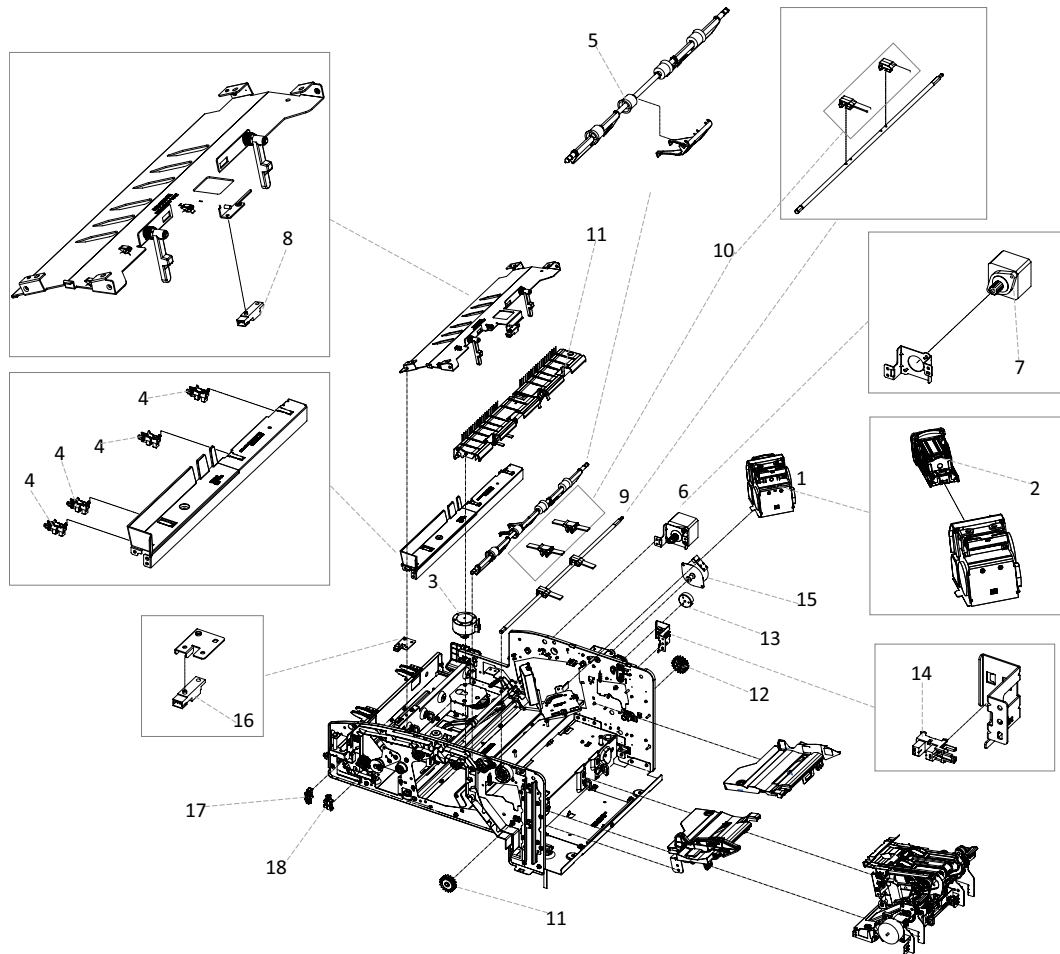


Table 7-29 Inner finisher (4 of 5)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	6GW49-60003	Stapler assembly	1
2	6GW49-40001	Staple cartridge	1
3	JC93-00999A	Drive-motor step (Stapler position motor)	1
4	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Stapler position sensor)	1
5	JC90-01330A	Exit roller assy	1
6	JC90-01331A	Exit motor assy	1
7	JC31-00169B	Motor, step (Exit motor)	1
8	0604-001381	Photo interrupter (End fence sensor)	1
9	JC90-01327A	Main paddle	1
10	JC82-01038A	Main paddle kit	1

Table 7-29 Inner finisher (4 of 5) (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
11	JC90-01336A	Sub paddle assy	1
12	JC66-04218A	Gear rack pinion	1
13	JC66-04201A	Actuator home paddle	1
14	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Main paddle home sensor)	1
15	JC93-01001A	Drive-motor step (Main paddle motor)	1
16	0604-001381	Photo interrupter (Punch waste full sensor)	1
17	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (finisher docking sensor)	1
18	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (punch waste box sensor)	1

Parts and diagrams: Inner finisher (5 of 5)

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer inner finisher.

Figure 7-30 Inner finisher (5 of 5)

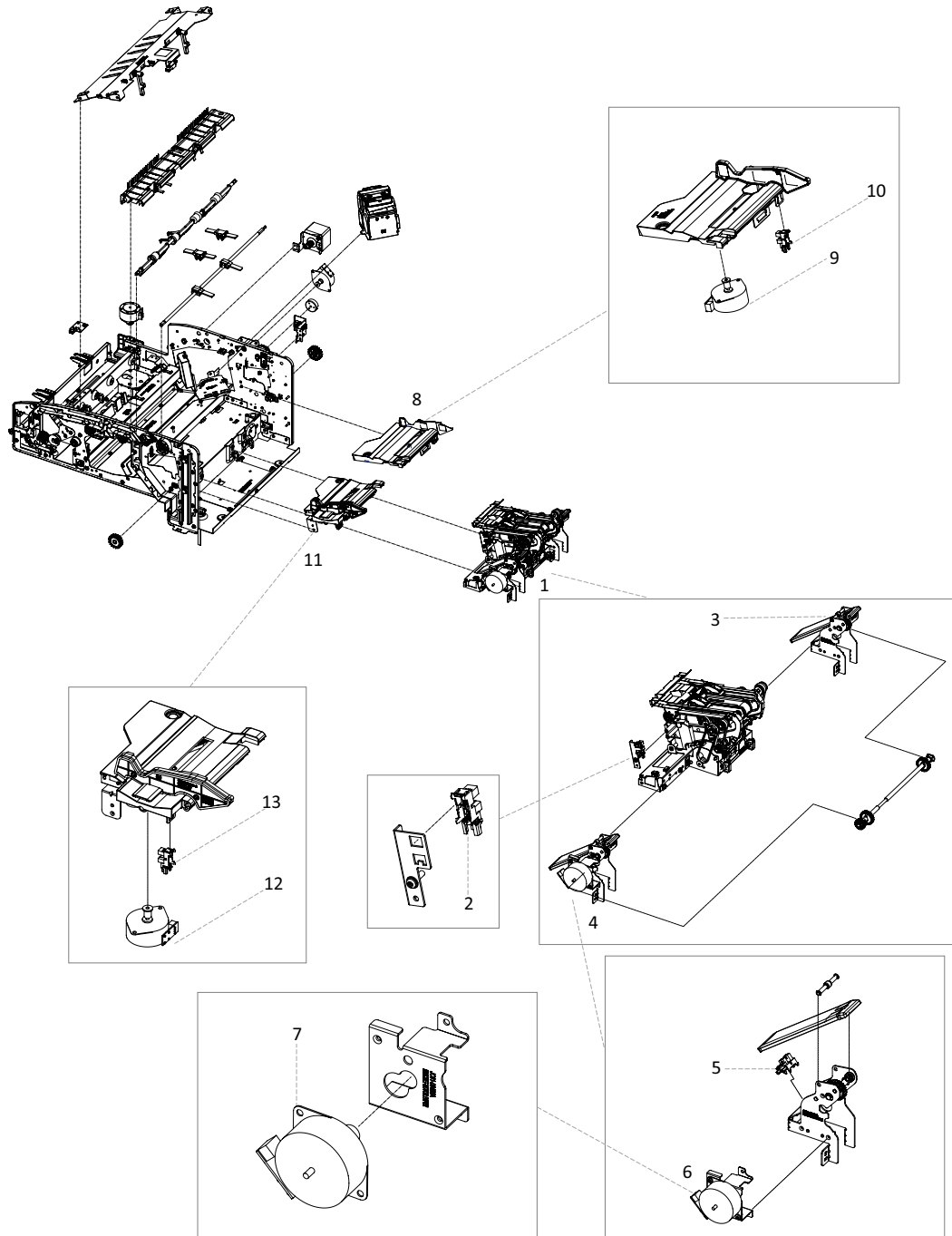


Table 7-30 Inner finisher (5 of 5)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	SS456-61001	Ejector	1
2	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Ejector1 home sensor)	1

Table 7-30 Inner finisher (5 of 5) (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
3	JC90-01310A	Front paper support	1
4	JC90-01311A	Rear paper support	1
5	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Paper support home sensor)	1
6	JC90-01312A	Paper support motor assy	1
7	JC93-00802B	Drive sub-motor step (Paper support motor)	1
8	JC82-00899A	Front tamper	1
9	JC93-01001A	Drive-motor step (Front tamper motor)	1
10	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Front tamper home sensor)	1
11	JC82-00900A	Rear tamper	1
12	JC93-01001A	Drive-motor step (Rear tamper motor)	1
13	0604-001393	Photo interrupter (Rear tamper home sensor)	1

Stapler/Stacker finisher

Learn about the stapler/stacker parts and assemblies.

Parts and diagrams: Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4)

Parts diagram and parts list for the stapler/stacker finisher.

Figure 7-31 Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4)

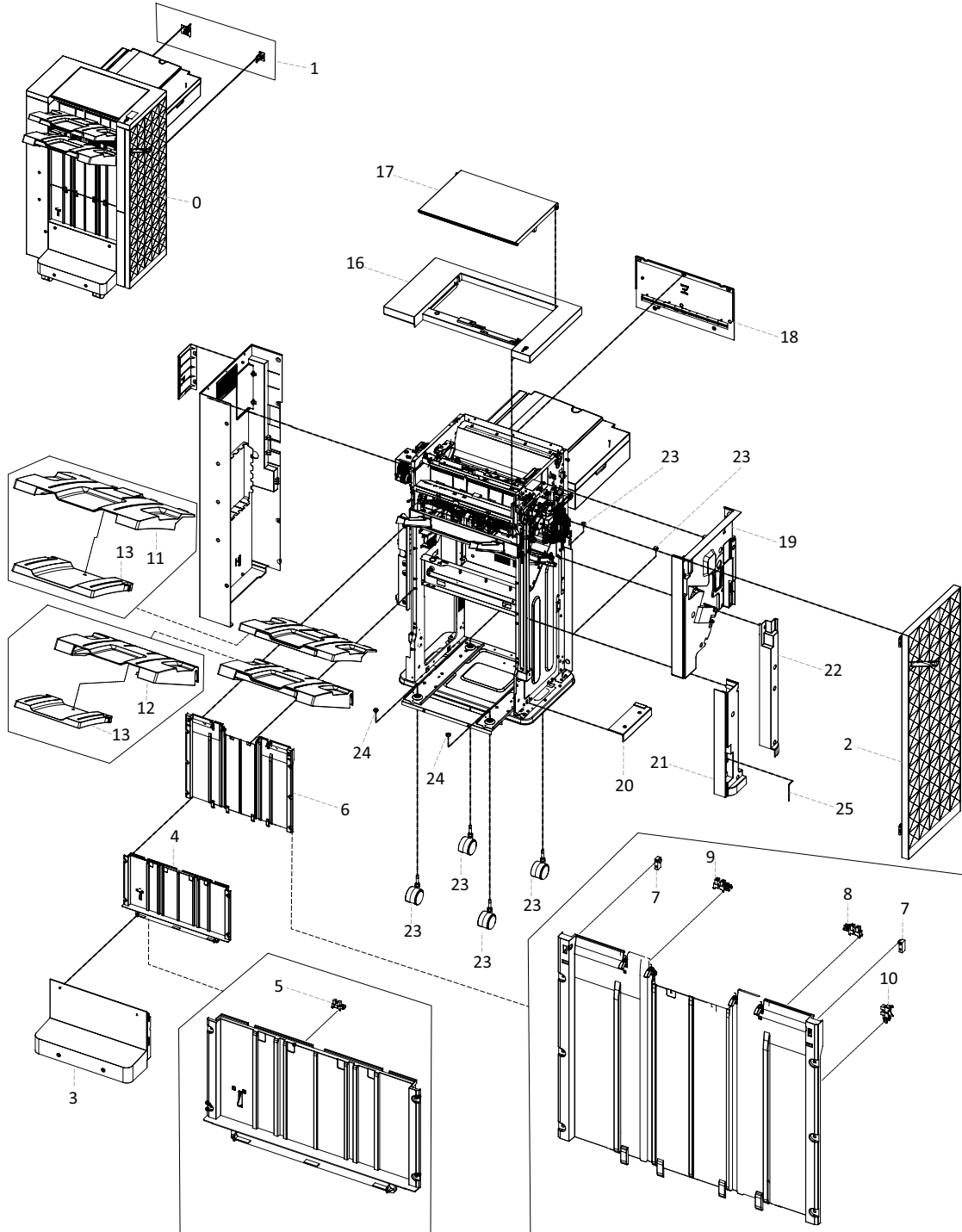


Table 7-31 Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
0	6GW55-67001	Stapler/Stacker finisher	1
1	JC90-01442A	Finisher mount bracket	1
2	5QK09-60106	Front door	1
3	8GS05-40018	Caster cover	1
4	8GS05-60122	Left lower cover	1
5	0604-001415	Main output tray lower limit sensor	1
6	8GS05-60118	Left upper cover	1
7	JC82-01039A	Main output tray top of stack sensor	1
8	0604-001393	Front paper holding sensor	1
9	0604-001393	Rear paper holding sensor	1
10	0604-001393	Paper holding home sensor	1
11	5QK09-40027	Top output tray	1
12	5QK09-40028	Main output tray	1
14	5QK09-40029	Tray extension	1
14	5QK09-40021	Rear cover	1
15	5QK09-40030	Punch cover	1
16	5QK09-60108	Top cover	1
17	5QK09-60107	Top door	1
18	5QK09-60109	Right upper cover	1
19	5QK09-40019	Front cover	1
20	5QK09-40020	Front lower cover	1
21	5QK09-40047	Front lower left cover	1
22	5QK09-40048	Front lower right cover	1
23	JC61-07452A	Caster	1
24	JC61-07444A	Caster fix nut	1
25	JC66-04767A	Shaft hinge - door	1

Parts and diagrams: Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4)

Parts diagram and parts list for the stapler/stacker finisher.

Figure 7-32 Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4)

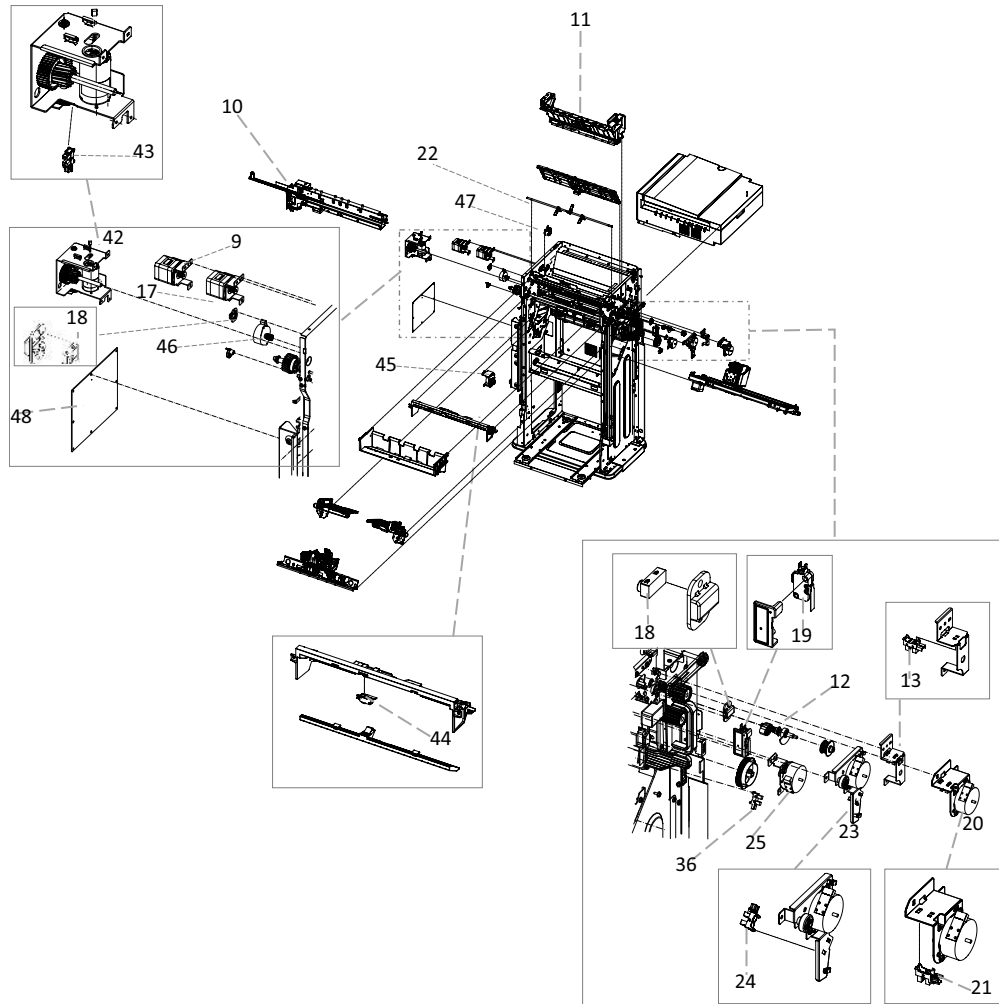


Table 7-32 Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
9	8GS05-60104	Entrance motor assembly	1
10	Y1G10-67901	Punch unit 2-3 hole	1
10	Y1G11-67901	Punch unit 2-4 hole	1
10	Y1G12-67901	Punch unit Swedish hole	1
11	JC90-01455A	Top jam cover assembly	1
12	JC90-01458A	Tray diverter cam	1
13	0604-001415	Tray diverter home sensor	1
17	8GS05-60106	Exit motor assembly	1
18	JC82-01039A	Top output tray paper full sensor	1

Table 7-32 Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
19	JC39-02309A	Front door switch	1
20	JC90-01453A	Main exit cam motor assembly	1
21	0604-001393	Main exit cam home sensor	1
22	JC90-01480A	Paddle	1
23	JC90-01461A	Paddle motor assembly	1
24	0604-001393	Paddle home sensor	1
25	JC90-01467A	End fence motor assembly	1
36	0604-001415	Manual staple sensor	1
42	JC90-01415B	Main output tray motor drive assembly	1
43	0604-001393	Main output tray motor sensor	1
44	JC39-02316A	Main output tray top of stack switch	1
45	JC90-01414A	Paper holding motor drive assembly	1
46	JC93-01152A	Buffer motor	1
47	JC90-01675A	Buffer solenoid assembly	1
48	6GW55-60001	Main PCA	1

Parts and diagrams: Stapler/Stacker finisher (3 of 4)

Parts diagram and parts list for the stapler/stacker finisher.

Figure 7-33 Stapler/Stacker finisher (3 of 4)

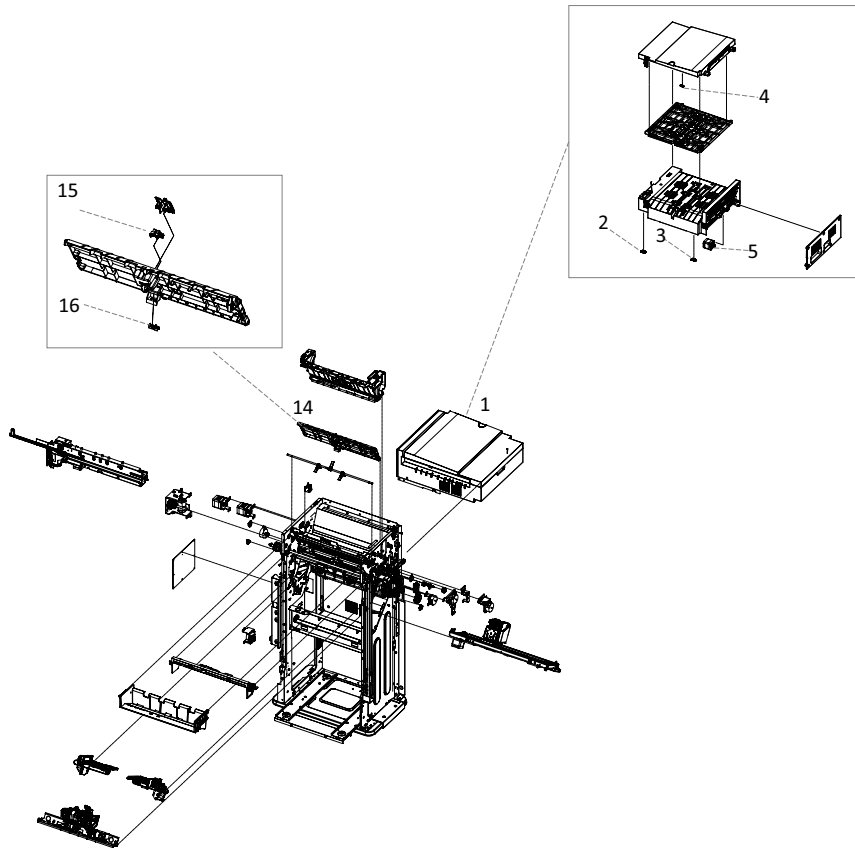


Table 7-33 Stapler/Stacker finisher (3 of 4)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	5QK09-60110	Bridge unit	1
2	0604-001393	Bridge door sensor	1
3	JC32-00020A	Bridge entrance sensor	1
4	0604-001393	Bridge exit sensor	1
5	3SJ19-80501	Bridge motor	1
14	JC90-01454A	Top lower feed assembly	1
15	JC32-00020A	Main exit sensor	1
16	0604-001393	Top exit sensor	1
17	8GS05-60106	Exit motor assembly	1

Parts and diagrams: Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4)

Parts diagram and parts list for the stapler/stacker finisher.

Figure 7-34 Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4)

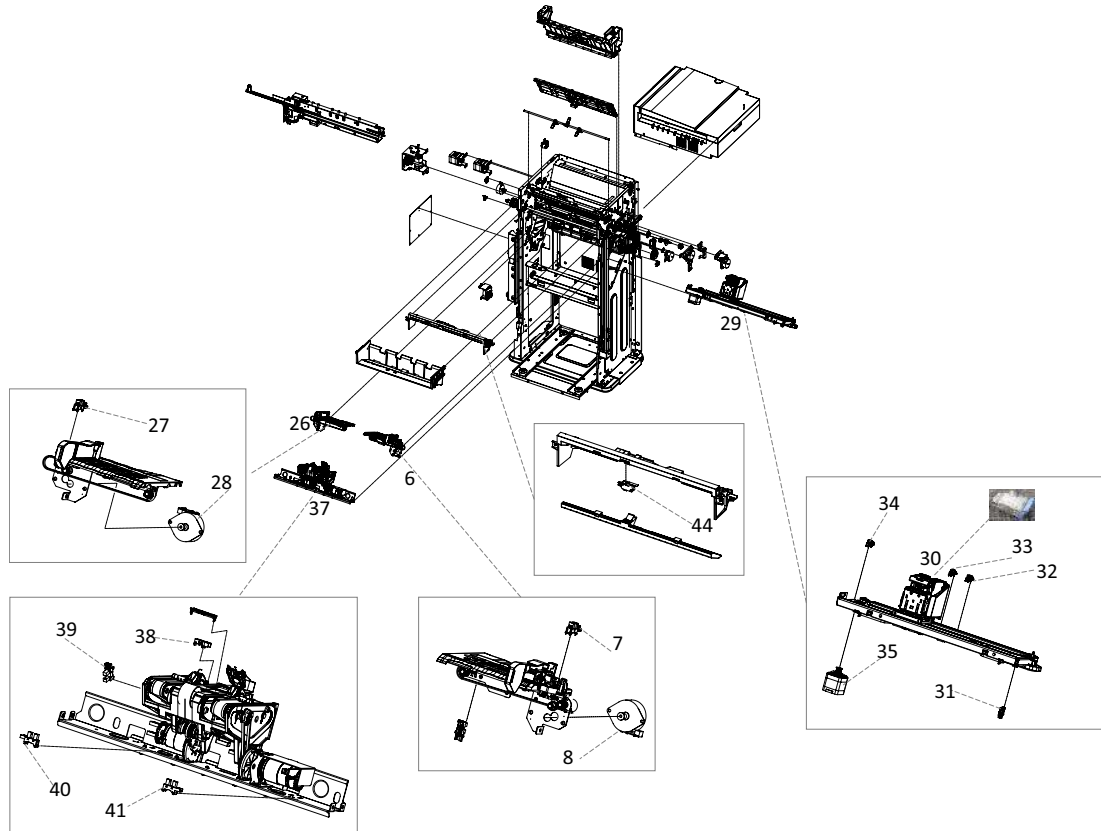


Table 7-34 Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
6	JC82-00901A	Front tamper	1
7	0604-001393	Front tamper home sensor	1
8	JC93-01001A	Front tamper motor	1
26	JC82-00898A	Rear tamper	1
27	0604-001393	Rear tamper home sensor	1
28	JC93-01001A	Rear tamper motor	1
29	JC82-00894A	Staple unit	1
30	JC81-09882B	Staple cartridge	1
31	0604-001393	Staple front sensor	1
32	0604-001393	Staple mid-front sensor	1
33	0604-001393	Staple mid-rear sensor	1
34	0604-001393	Staple rear sensor	1
35	JC31-00163A	Staple position motor	1

Table 7-34 Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
37	JC90-01802A	Ejector unit	1
38	JC32-00020A	Ejector sensor	1
39	0604-001415	Ejector1 home sensor	1
40	0604-001415	Ejector1 motor sensor	1
41	0604-001415	Ejector2 motor sensor	1

Booklet finisher

Learn about the booklet finisher parts and assemblies.

Parts and diagrams: Booklet finisher (1 of 5)

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer booklet finisher.

Figure 7-35 Booklet finisher (1 of 5)

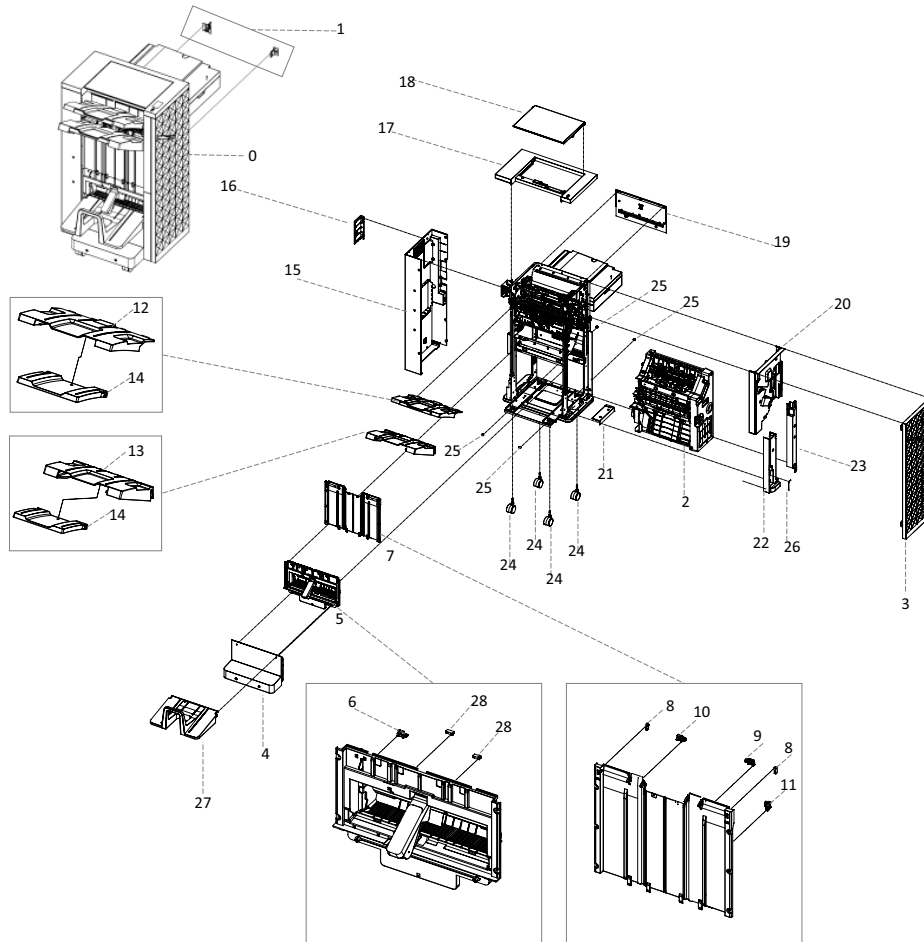


Table 7-35 Booklet finisher (1 of 5)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
0	6GW51-67001	Booklet finisher	1
1	JC90-01442A	Finisher mount bracket	1
2	5QK09-60104	Booklet maker unit	1
3	5QK09-60106	Front door	1
4	8GS05-40018	Caster cover	1
5	8GS05-60124	Left lower cover (Booklet)	1
6	0604-001415	Main output tray lower limit sensor	1

Table 7-35 Booklet finisher (1 of 5) (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
7	8GS05-60118	Left upper cover	1
8	JC82-01039A	Main output tray top of stack sensor	1
9	0604-001393	Front paper holding sensor	1
10	0604-001393	Rear paper holding sensor	1
11	0604-001393	Paper holding home sensor	1
12	5QK09-40027	Top output tray	1
13	5QK09-40028	Main output tray	1
14	5QK09-40029	Tray extension	1
15	5QK09-40021	Rear cover	1
16	5QK09-40030	Punch cover	1
17	5QK09-60108	Top cover	1
18	5QK09-60107	Top door	1
19	5QK09-60109	Right upper cover	1
20	5QK09-40019	Front cover	1
21	5QK09-40020	Front lower cover	1
22	5QK09-40047	Front lower left cover	1
23	5QK09-40048	Front lower right cover	1
24	JC61-07452A	Caster	1
25	JC61-07444A	Caster fix nut	1
26	JC66-04767A	Shaft hinge - door	1
27	8GS05-60126	Booklet output tray	1
28	JC82-01039A	Booklet output tray sensor	1

Parts and diagrams: Booklet finisher (2 of 5)

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer booklet finisher.

Figure 7-36 Booklet finisher (2 of 5)

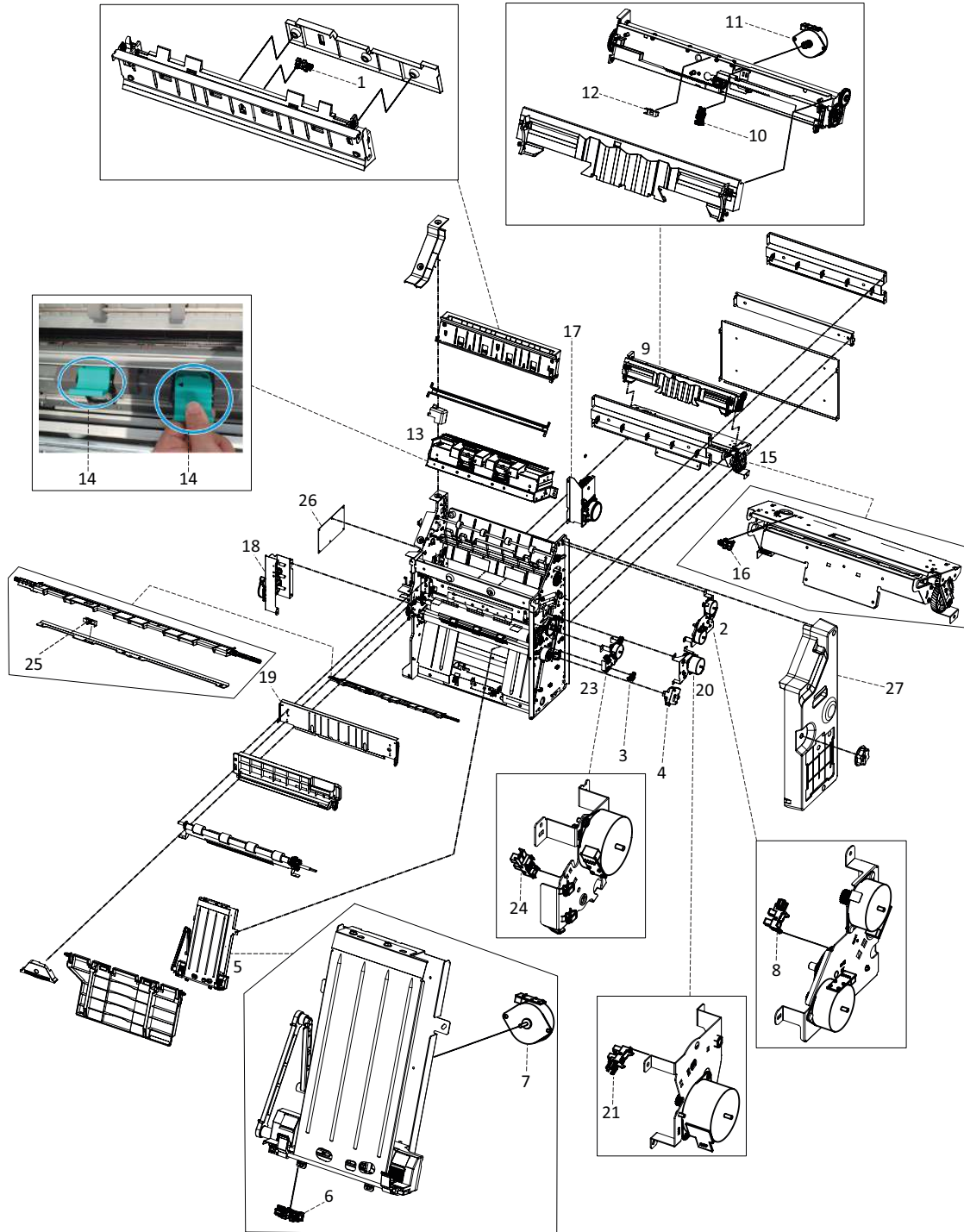


Table 7-36 Booklet finisher (2 of 5)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	0604-001415	Booklet entrance sensor	1
2	JC90-01425A	Booklet entrance-presser motor assembly	1
3	0604-001393	Booklet paddle home sensor	1
4	JC90-01430A	Booklet paddle motor assembly	1
5	JC90-01432A	Booklet end fence	1
6	0604-001393	Booklet end fence home sensor	1
7	JC93-01155A	Booklet end fence motor	1
8	0604-001393	Booklet presser home sensor	1
9	JC90-01431A	Booklet tamper	1
10	0604-001393	Booklet tamper home sensor	1
11	JC93-01155A	Booklet tamper motor	1
12	JC32-00020A	Booklet tamper sensor	1
13	8GS05-60126	Booklet stapler	1
14	JC81-08274A	Booklet stapler cartridge	1
15	JC93-01163A	Booklet blade	1
16	0604-001393	Booklet blade home sensor	1
17	JC90-01435A	Booklet blade motor assembly	1
18	JC90-01436A	Booklet fold motor assembly	1
19	JC61-07366A	Booklet c-fold blade	1
20	JC90-01396A	Booklet c-fold blade motor assembly	1
21	0604-001393	Booklet c-fold blade home sensor	1
22	JC90-01398A	Booklet diverter	1
23	JC90-01397A	Booklet diverter motor assembly	1
24	0604-001415	Booklet diverter home sensor	1
25	JC32-00020A	Booklet exit sensor	1
26	6GW51-60001	Booklet maker PCA	1
27	JC90-01478B	Booklet front cover	1

Parts and diagrams: Booklet finisher (3 of 5)

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer booklet finisher.

Figure 7-37 Booklet finisher (3 of 5)

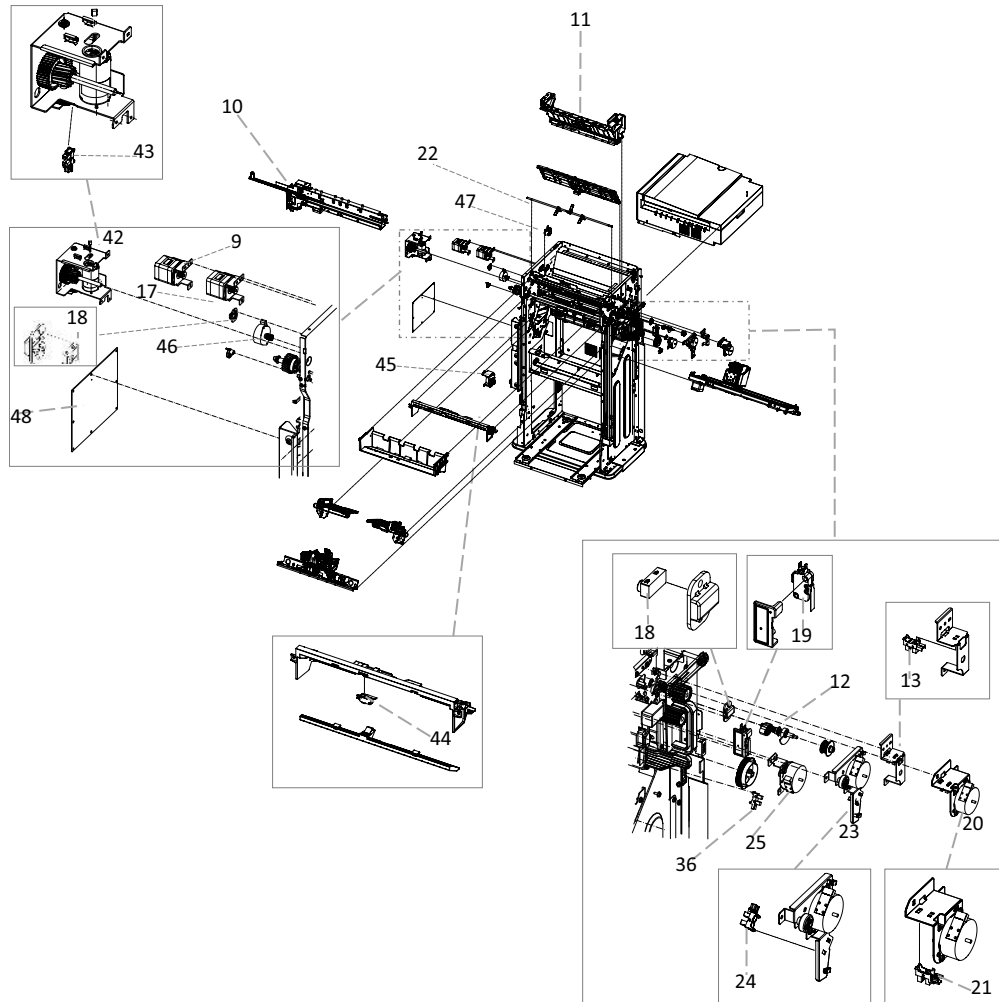


Table 7-37 Booklet finisher (3 of 5)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
9	8GS05-60104	Entrance motor assembly	1
10	Y1G10-67901	Punch unit 2-3 hole	1
10	Y1G11-67901	Punch unit 2-4 hole	1
10	Y1G12-67901	Punch unit Swedish hole	1
11	JC90-01455A	Top jam cover assembly	1
12	JC90-01458A	Tray diverter cam	1
13	0604-001415	Tray diverter home sensor	1
17	8GS05-60106	Exit motor assembly	1
18	JC82-01039A	Top output tray paper full sensor	1

Table 7-37 Booklet finisher (3 of 5) (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
19	JC39-02309A	Front door switch	1
20	JC90-01453A	Main exit cam motor assembly	1
21	0604-001393	Main exit cam home sensor	1
22	JC90-01480A	Paddle	1
23	JC90-01461A	Paddle motor assembly	1
24	0604-001393	Paddle home sensor	1
25	JC90-01467A	End fence motor assembly	1
36	0604-001415	Manual staple sensor	1
42	JC90-01415B	Main output tray motor drive assembly	1
43	0604-001393	Main output tray motor sensor	1
44	JC39-02316A	Main output tray top of stack switch	1
45	JC90-01414A	Paper holding motor drive assembly	1
46	JC93-01152A	Buffer motor	1
47	JC90-01675A	Buffer solenoid assembly	1
48	6GW55-60001	Main PCA	1

Parts and diagrams: Booklet finisher (4 of 5)

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer booklet finisher.

Figure 7-38 Booklet finisher (4 of 5)

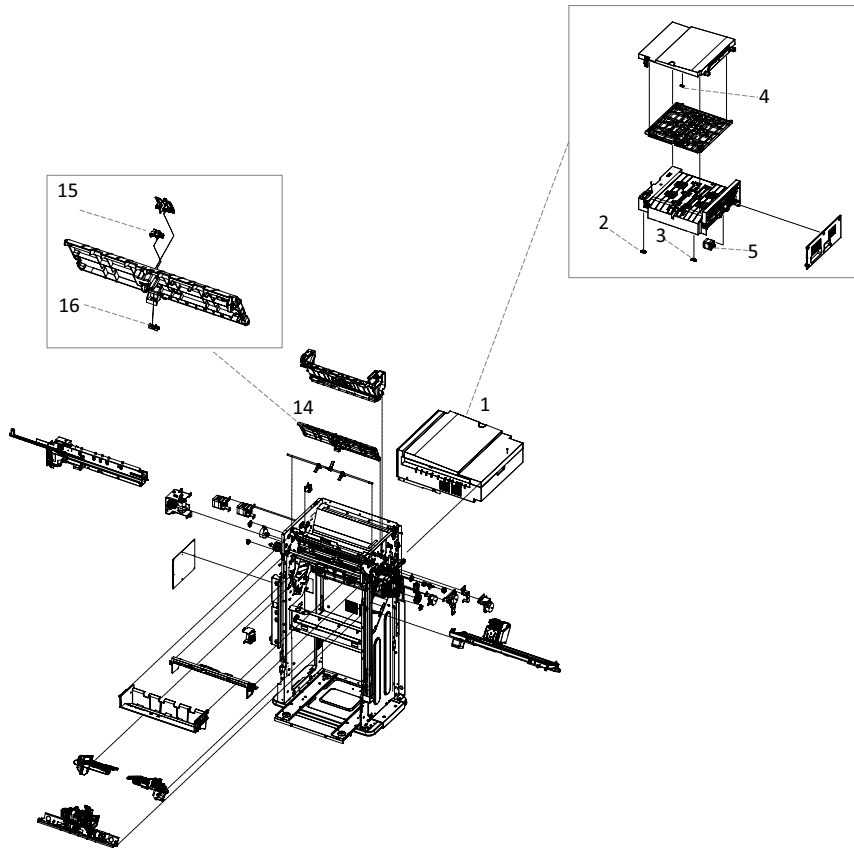


Table 7-38 Booklet finisher (4 of 4)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	5QK09-60110	Bridge unit	1
2	0604-001393	Bridge door sensor	1
3	JC32-00020A	Bridge entrance sensor	1
4	0604-001393	Bridge exit sensor	1
5	3SJ19-80501	Bridge motor	1
14	JC90-01454A	Top lower feed assembly	1
15	JC32-00020A	Main exit sensor	1
16	0604-001393	Top exit sensor	1
17	8GS05-60106	Exit motor assembly	1

Parts and diagrams: Booklet finisher (5 of 5)

Parts diagram and parts list for the printer booklet finisher.

Figure 7-39 Booklet finisher (5 of 5)

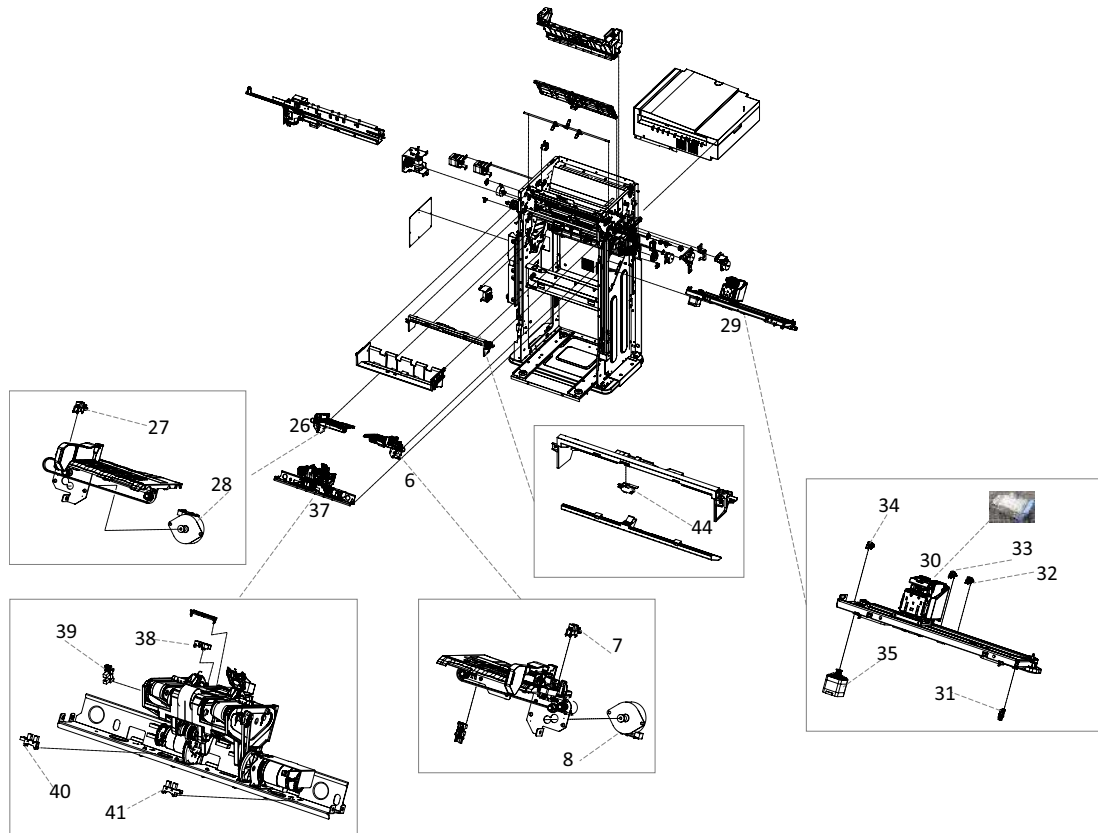


Table 7-39 Booklet finisher (5 of 5)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
6	JC82-00901A	Front tamper	1
7	0604-001393	Front tamper home sensor	1
8	JC93-01001A	Front tamper motor	1
26	JC82-00898A	Rear tamper	1
27	0604-001393	Rear tamper home sensor	1
28	JC93-01001A	Rear tamper motor	1
29	JC82-00894A	Staple unit	1
30	JC81-09882B	Staple cartridge	1
31	0604-001393	Staple front sensor	1
32	0604-001393	Staple mid-front sensor	1
33	0604-001393	Staple mid-rear sensor	1
34	0604-001393	Staple rear sensor	1
35	JC31-00163A	Staple position motor	1

Table 7-39 Booklet finisher (5 of 5) (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
37	JC90-01802A	Ejector unit	1
38	JC32-00020A	Ejector sensor	1
39	0604-001415	Ejector1 home sensor	1
40	0604-001415	Ejector1 motor sensor	1
41	0604-001415	Ejector2 motor sensor	1

Alphabetical parts list

Table 7-40 Alphabetical parts list

Description	Part number	Table and page
200sh ADF WF PCA (flow)	5QJ90-67008	200sh ADF (2 of 2) on page 2778
200sh ENT ADF PCA	5QJ90-67013	200sh ADF (2 of 2) on page 2778
A3 White Backing Kit	5QJ90-67005	200sh ADF (2 of 2) on page 2778
ADF Blue CMF panel	5QJ90-40056	200sh ADF (1 of 2) on page 2777
ADF CMF panel	5QJ90-40056	100sh ADF (1 of 2) on page 2779
ADF FFC cable to SSA	5QJ90-67009	200sh ADF (2 of 2) on page 2778
ADF Gray CMF panel	5QJ90-40108	200sh ADF (1 of 2) on page 2777
ADF Green CMF panel	5QJ90-40110	200sh ADF (1 of 2) on page 2777
ADF Power cable	5QJ90-67010	200sh ADF (2 of 2) on page 2778
ADF Purple CMF panel	5QJ90-40112	200sh ADF (1 of 2) on page 2777
ADF Red CMF panel	5QJ90-40109	200sh ADF (1 of 2) on page 2777
ADF Yellow CMF panel	5QJ90-40111	200sh ADF (1 of 2) on page 2777
ADF image sensor	Z9Y05-60047	200sh ADF (2 of 2) on page 2778
ADF roller kit	5851-7202	200sh ADF (2 of 2) on page 2778
ADF roller kit	5QJ83-67002	100sh ADF (2 of 2) on page 2780
Accelerator (Optional)	6HN30-67001	PCA on page 2773
Actuator bin full exit	JC66-04339A	Exit unit (1 of 2) on page 2763
Actuator home paddle	JC66-04201A	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 2797
Black developer powder kit	5QJ90-60106	Imaging unit (drum and developer) on page 2770
Booklet blade	JC93-01163A	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
Booklet blade home sensor	0604-001393	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
Booklet blade motor assembly	JC90-01435A	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
Booklet c-fold blade	JC61-07366A	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
Booklet c-fold blade home sensor	0604-001393	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
Booklet c-fold blade motor assembly	JC90-01396A	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811

Table 7-40 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Booklet diverter	JC90-01398A	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
Booklet diverter home sensor	0604-001415	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
Booklet diverter motor assembly	JC90-01397A	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
Booklet end fence	JC90-01432A	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
Booklet end fence home sensor	0604-001393	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
Booklet end fence motor	JC93-01155A	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
Booklet entrance sensor	0604-001415	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
Booklet entrance-presser motor assembly	JC90-01425A	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
Booklet exit sensor	JC32-00020A	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
Booklet finisher	6GW51-67001	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
Booklet fold motor assembly	JC90-01436A	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
Booklet front cover	JC90-01478B	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
Booklet maker PCA	6GW51-60001	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
Booklet maker unit	5QK09-60104	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
Booklet output tray	8GS05-60126	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
Booklet output tray sensor	JC82-01039A	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
Booklet paddle home sensor	0604-001393	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
Booklet paddle motor assembly	JC90-01430A	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
Booklet presser home sensor	0604-001393	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
Booklet stapler	8GS05-60126	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
Booklet stapler cartridge	JC81-08274A	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
Booklet tamper	JC90-01431A	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811

Table 7-40 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Booklet tamper home sensor	0604-001393	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
Booklet tamper motor	JC93-01155A	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
Booklet tamper sensor	JC32-00020A	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
Bridge door sensor	0604-001393	Stapler/Stacker finisher (3 of 4) on page 2805
Bridge door sensor	0604-001393	Booklet finisher (4 of 4) on page 2814
Bridge entrance sensor	JC32-00020A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (3 of 4) on page 2805
Bridge entrance sensor	JC32-00020A	Booklet finisher (4 of 4) on page 2814
Bridge exit sensor	0604-001393	Stapler/Stacker finisher (3 of 4) on page 2805
Bridge exit sensor	0604-001393	Booklet finisher (4 of 4) on page 2814
Bridge motor	3SJ19-80501	Stapler/Stacker finisher (3 of 4) on page 2805
Bridge motor	3SJ19-80501	Booklet finisher (4 of 4) on page 2814
Bridge unit	5QK09-60110	Stapler/Stacker finisher (3 of 4) on page 2805
Bridge unit	5QK09-60110	Booklet finisher (4 of 4) on page 2814
Buffer motor	JC93-01152A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 2803
Buffer motor	JC93-01152A	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 2812
Buffer solenoid assembly	JC90-01675A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 2803
Buffer solenoid assembly	JC90-01675A	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 2812
CIS platen PCA		CIS platen on page 2782
CTD sensor	JC32-00025A	Registration and Tray 2 unit on page 2762
Caster	JC61-07452A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
Caster	JC61-07452A	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
Caster cover	8GS05-40018	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802

Table 7-40 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Caster cover	8GS05-40018	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
Caster fix nut	JC61-07444A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
Caster fix nut	JC61-07444A	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
Caster wheel	6109-001138	DCF (1 of 2) on page 2784
Caster wheel	6109-001138	HCI (1 of 2) on page 2788
Control panel (10.1 inch)	5QK42-60101	PCA on page 2773
Control panel (8 inch)	3SJ15-60101	PCA on page 2773
Controller cover	6ER04-61005	Covers on page 2756
Cover Rear	3SJ11-40008	ISA on page 2775
Cradle-HDD	5851-7753	PCA on page 2773
Cradle-Riser Card	5851-7754	PCA on page 2773
DCF	6GW46-67001	DCF (1 of 2) on page 2784
DCF Dpt_Door open switch sensor and harness		HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
DCF left cover	5QJ98-40017	DCF (1 of 2) on page 2784
DCF rear cover	5QJ98-40014	DCF (1 of 2) on page 2784
DCF right cover	5QJ98-40015	DCF (1 of 2) on page 2784
DCF right door	5QJ98-61006	DCF (1 of 2) on page 2784
Damper module	5QJ90-67006	200sh ADF (2 of 2) on page 2778
Dev fan assembly	5QJ98-40052	Sensor and fan on page 2772
Developer motor	JC31-00123A	Imaging unit (drum and developer) on page 2770
Discrete power cable		CIS platen on page 2782
Discrete power cable	3SJ11-50006	Tarot platen on page 2781
Drive sub-motor step	JC93-00802B	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 2799
Drive-motor step	JC93-00999A	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 2797
Drive-motor step	JC93-01001A	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 2797
Drive-motor step	JC93-01001A	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 2799
Drive-motor step	JC93-01001A	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 2799
Drum motor	JC31-00123A	Imaging unit (drum and developer) on page 2770

Table 7-40 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Dual Fax Card (BBU) (Optional)	7ZA07-67001	PCA on page 2773
Dual Fax Card (WW) (Optional)	5QK14-67001	PCA on page 2773
Duct unit K	JC93-00917A	Duct assembly on page 2767
Duplex assembly		Exit unit (1 of 2) on page 2763
Duplex motor	JC93-01687A	Exit unit (1 of 2) on page 2763
Echo PCA	T3U64-60001	PCA on page 2773
Ejector	SS456-61001	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 2799
Ejector sensor	JC32-00020A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 2806
Ejector sensor	JC32-00020A	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 2815
Ejector unit	JC90-01802A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 2806
Ejector unit	JC90-01802A	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 2815
Ejector1 home sensor	0604-001415	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 2806
Ejector1 home sensor	0604-001415	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 2815
Ejector1 motor sensor	0604-001415	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 2806
Ejector1 motor sensor	0604-001415	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 2815
Ejector2 motor sensor	0604-001415	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 2806
Ejector2 motor sensor	0604-001415	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 2815
Electric clutch	JC33-00037A	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 2795
Electric clutch	JC47-00037A	Tray 1 on page 2759
End fence motor assembly	JC90-01467A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 2803
End fence motor assembly	JC90-01467A	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 2812
Entrance motor assembly	8GS05-60104	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 2803
Entrance motor assembly	8GS05-60104	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 2812
Entrance motor assy	5QK09-60128	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 2795
Entrance motor timing belt	6602-003644	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 2795

Table 7-40 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Entrance roller	JC66-04243A	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 2795
Exit 2 motor (Optional)	JC93-00802A	Exit unit (2 of 2) on page 2765
Exit cover stacker	5QJ90-60116	Covers on page 2756
Exit motor	JC93-01686A	Exit unit (1 of 2) on page 2763
Exit motor assembly	8GS05-60106	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 2803
Exit motor assembly	8GS05-60106	Stapler/Stacker finisher (3 of 4) on page 2805
Exit motor assembly	8GS05-60106	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 2812
Exit motor assembly	8GS05-60106	Booklet finisher (4 of 4) on page 2814
Exit motor assy	JC90-01331A	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 2797
Exit rear cover	6EQ94-40009	Covers on page 2756
Exit roller assy	JC90-01330A	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 2797
Exit sensor actuator	JC66-04199A	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 2795
Exit stack guide	JC90-01874A	Exit unit (1 of 2) on page 2763
Exit stacker upper cover	6EQ94-40010	Covers on page 2756
Exit unit	JC90-01876A	Exit unit (1 of 2) on page 2763
Feed Regi MP motor	JC31-00123B	Tray 1 on page 2759
Feed Regi MP motor	JC31-00123B	Tray 2, 3 on page 2760
Feed Regi MP motor	JC31-00123B	Registration and Tray 2 unit on page 2762
Feed electric clutch	JC47-00037A	Tray 2, 3 on page 2760
Finisher mount bracket	JC90-01442A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
Finisher mount bracket	JC90-01442A	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
Front cover	5QK09-40019	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
Front cover	5QK09-40019	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
Front cover - Blue CMF Panel	6EQ94-40018	Covers on page 2756
Front cover - Gray CMF Panel	5QJ98-40042	Covers on page 2756
Front cover - Green CMF Panel	5QJ98-40044	Covers on page 2756
Front cover - Purple CMF Panel	5QJ98-40046	Covers on page 2756

Table 7-40 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Front cover - Red CMF Panel	5QJ98-40043	Covers on page 2756
Front cover - Yellow CMF Panel	5QJ98-40045	Covers on page 2756
Front cover assembly	5QJ98-60106	Covers on page 2756
Front cover assy	5QK09-60123	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 2793
Front door	5QK09-60106	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
Front door	5QK09-60106	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
Front door open switch	JC93-00466A	Sensor and fan on page 2772
Front door switch	JC39-02309A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 2803
Front door switch	JC39-02309A	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 2812
Front lower cover	5QK09-40020	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
Front lower cover	5QK09-40020	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
Front lower cover	6EQ94-40011	Covers on page 2756
Front lower left cover	5QK09-40047	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
Front lower left cover	5QK09-40047	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
Front lower right cover	5QK09-40048	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
Front lower right cover	5QK09-40048	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
Front paper holding sensor	0604-001393	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
Front paper holding sensor	0604-001393	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
Front paper support	JC90-01310A	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 2799
Front tamper	JC82-00899A	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 2799
Front tamper	JC82-00901A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 2806
Front tamper	JC82-00901A	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 2815
Front tamper home sensor	0604-001393	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 2806
Front tamper home sensor	0604-001393	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 2815

Table 7-40 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Front tamper motor	JC93-01001A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 2806
Front tamper motor	JC93-01001A	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 2815
Fuser and exit drive assembly	JC93-01679A	Fuser on page 2771
Fuser drive board (FDB), 110V	JC44-00210F	PCA on page 2773
Fuser drive board (FDB), 220V	JC44-00211F	PCA on page 2773
Fuser motor	JC31-00123B	Fuser on page 2771
Fuser, exit drive assembly	JC93-01679A	Exit unit (1 of 2) on page 2763
Gear rack pinion	JC66-04218A	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 2797
Guide Adjust	JC61-04871A	DCF (1 of 2) on page 2784
Guide FFC		CIS platen on page 2782
Guide FFC	5QJ83-40035	Tarot platen on page 2781
Guide FFC	5QJ83-40036	Tarot platen on page 2781
Guide adjust	JC61-04871A	HCI (1 of 2) on page 2788
Guide rail	6102-003354	Inner finisher (1 of 5) on page 2792
HCI	6GW48-67001	HCI (1 of 2) on page 2788
HCI feed motor drive assembly	JC93-01801A	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
HCI left cover	5QJ98-40025	HCI (1 of 2) on page 2788
HCI pickup assembly	8GR90-60001	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
HCI pickup motor drive assembly	5QJ90-60130	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
HCI rear cover	5QJ98-40014	HCI (1 of 2) on page 2788
HCI right cover	5QJ98-40024	HCI (1 of 2) on page 2788
HCI right door	5QJ98-61014	HCI (1 of 2) on page 2788
HCI roller kit	5PN66-67001	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
HCI shift plate	JC81-07481B	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
HIP cover	6EQ94-40032	Covers on page 2756
HP LaserJet 180ipm 200 sheet DADF Scanner (200sh ADF + Tarot platen)	5QK35-67001	ISA on page 2775
HP LaserJet WG Job Separator (Optional)	6GW52-67901	Exit unit (2 of 2) on page 2765
Hard disk 500GB SED	933853-010	PCA on page 2773
Harness - cover open	JC39-01610A	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 2795
Harness - cover open	JC39-01610A	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 2795

Table 7-40 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
High Voltage Power Supply (HVPS)	JC44-00237D	PCA on page 2773
Hinge Kit	5QJ90-67004	200sh ADF (2 of 2) on page 2778
Hole 2/3 punch (optional)	155P7-67001	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 2793
Hole 2/4 punch (optional)	155P8-67001	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 2793
Inner Finisher	6GW49-67002	Inner finisher (1 of 5) on page 2792
Inner cover	5QJ98-60105	Covers on page 2756
Inner finisher PCA	6GW49-60001	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 2795
Island of Data (IOD) PCA	3SJ06-60001	PCA on page 2773
Keyboard Assy-UK English	JC93-01743A	PCA on page 2773
Keyboard Assy-US English	JC93-01742A	PCA on page 2773
Keyboard overlay kit (ES, PT)	5851-6023	PCA on page 2773
Keyboard overlay kit (FR, IT, RU, DE,ES,UK Kybd)	5851-6019	PCA on page 2773
Keyboard overlay kit (FR-CN, ES-LA, ES,US Kybd)	5851-6020	PCA on page 2773
Keyboard overlay kit (FR-SW, DE-SW, DA,UK Kybd)	5851-6021	PCA on page 2773
Keyboard overlay kit (JA-KG, JA-KT)	5851-6024	PCA on page 2773
Keyboard overlay kit (ZHTW, ZHCN)	5851-6022	PCA on page 2773
Knock-up plate assembly	6GW48-60003	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
LSU fan assembly	8GR90-40008	Sensor and fan on page 2772
LVPS FDB fan assembly	JC93-01786A	Sensor and fan on page 2772
Laser Scanner Unit (LSU)	5QK18-60001	Laser Scanner Unit on page 2769
Left cover	5QJ98-60104	Covers on page 2756
Left cover assy	8GS05-60113	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 2793
Left lower cover	8GS05-60122	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
Left lower cover (Booklet)	8GS05-60124	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
Left top cover	JC63-04534B	Covers on page 2756
Left upper cover	8GS05-60118	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
Left upper cover	8GS05-60118	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
Left upper cover	6EQ94-40012	Covers on page 2756

Table 7-40 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Lever ACT full exit	JC66-02278A	Exit unit (1 of 2) on page 2763
Lock release handle	JC66-04233A	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 2793
Low Voltage Power Supply (LVPS), 110V	5QJ90-60014	PCA on page 2773
Low Voltage Power Supply (LVPS), 220V	5QJ90-60015	PCA on page 2773
Main PCA	6GW55-60001	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 2803
Main PCA	6GW55-60001	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 2812
Main PCA (Formatter)	6CF14-67004	PCA on page 2773
Main drive assembly	JC93-01676A	Tray 1 on page 2759
Main drive assembly	JC93-01676A	Tray 2, 3 on page 2760
Main drive assembly	JC93-01676A	Registration and Tray 2 unit on page 2762
Main drive assembly	JC93-01676A	Imaging unit (drum and developer) on page 2770
Main exit cam home sensor	0604-001393	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 2803
Main exit cam home sensor	0604-001393	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 2812
Main exit cam motor assembly	JC90-01453A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 2803
Main exit cam motor assembly	JC90-01453A	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 2812
Main exit sensor	JC32-00020A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (3 of 4) on page 2805
Main exit sensor	JC32-00020A	Booklet finisher (4 of 4) on page 2814
Main output tray	5QK09-40028	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
Main output tray	5QK09-40028	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
Main output tray lower limit sensor	0604-001415	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
Main output tray lower limit sensor	0604-001415	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
Main output tray motor drive assembly	JC90-01415B	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 2803
Main output tray motor drive assembly	JC90-01415B	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 2812
Main output tray motor sensor	0604-001393	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 2803

Table 7-40 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Main output tray motor sensor	0604-001393	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 2812
Main output tray top of stack sensor	JC82-01039A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
Main output tray top of stack sensor	JC82-01039A	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
Main output tray top of stack switch	JC39-02316A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 2803
Main output tray top of stack switch	JC39-02316A	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 2812
Main paddle	JC90-01327A	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 2797
Main paddle kit	JC82-01038A	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 2797
Manual staple sensor	0604-001415	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 2803
Manual staple sensor	0604-001415	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 2812
Middle cover assy	5QK09-60124	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 2793
Middle left cover	6EQ94-40031	Covers on page 2756
Middle roller	JC66-04243A	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 2795
Middle upper cover	6EQ94-40017	Covers on page 2756
Motor DC	JC31-00178B	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 2795
Motor, geared	JC31-00109A	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
Motor, geared	JC31-00125A	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
Motor, step	JC31-00169B	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 2795
Motor, step	JC31-00169B	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 2797
Outer temperature, humidity sensor assembly	5QJ90-40002	Sensor and fan on page 2772
Output tray assy	5QK09-60118	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 2793
Output tray lower limit switch assy	JC90-01320A	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 2795
Output tray motor assy	JC90-01334B	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 2795
Output tray top of stack sensor kit	JC82-01039A	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 2795
PBA-Shift tray level	JC92-02792A	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
PCA - power key	3SJ33-60007	PCA on page 2773

Table 7-40 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
PCA -power key	3SJ33-60007	Covers on page 2756
PCA cover	5QK09-40004	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 2793
PCA-HCI Workgroup	6GW48-60001	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
Paddle	JC90-01480A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 2803
Paddle	JC90-01480A	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 2812
Paddle home sensor	0604-001393	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 2803
Paddle home sensor	0604-001393	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 2812
Paddle motor assembly	JC90-01461A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 2803
Paddle motor assembly	JC90-01461A	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 2812
Paper dust holder assembly	5QJ98-40056	Registration and Tray 2 unit on page 2762
Paper holding actuator	JC90-01313A	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 2795
Paper holding home sensor	0604-001393	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
Paper holding home sensor	0604-001393	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
Paper holding kit	JC90-01314A	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 2795
Paper holding motor drive assembly	JC90-01414A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 2803
Paper holding motor drive assembly	JC90-01414A	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 2812
Paper shift gate	JC81-07478B	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
Paper support motor assy	JC90-01312A	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 2799
Photo interrupter	0604-001381	Tray 2, 3 on page 2760
Photo interrupter	0604-001381	Registration and Tray 2 unit on page 2762
Photo interrupter	0604-001381	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 2793
Photo interrupter	0604-001381	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 2793
Photo interrupter	0604-001381	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 2797

Table 7-40 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Photo interrupter	0604-001381	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 2797
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	Tray 2, 3 on page 2760
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	Tray 2, 3 on page 2760
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	Registration and Tray 2 unit on page 2762
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	Exit unit (1 of 2) on page 2763
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	Exit unit (1 of 2) on page 2763
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	Exit unit (2 of 2) on page 2765
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	Exit unit (2 of 2) on page 2765
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	Toner on page 2766
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	Duct assembly on page 2767
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	Toner Collection Unit on page 2768
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	Tarot platen on page 2781
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	CIS platen on page 2782
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	DCF (2 of 2) on page 2786
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	DCF (2 of 2) on page 2786
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 2795
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 2795
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 2797
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 2797
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 2797

Table 7-40 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 2797
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 2799
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 2799
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 2799
Photo interrupter	0604-001393	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 2799
Photo interrupter	0604-001415	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 2795
Photo interrupter	0604-001490	Tray 2, 3 on page 2760
Photo interrupter	0604-001490	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
Pickup motor	5QJ90-64001	Tray 2, 3 on page 2760
Platen FFC 50 pin	3SJ11-50021	Tarot platen on page 2781
Platen FFC 68 pin		CIS platen on page 2782
Platen FFC 68 pin	3SJ11-50022	Tarot platen on page 2781
Power key	6EQ94-40029	Covers on page 2756
Punch cover	5QK09-40030	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
Punch cover	5QK09-40030	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
Punch cover assembly	8GS05-60114	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 2793
Punch unit 2-3 hole	Y1G10-67901	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 2803
Punch unit 2-3 hole	Y1G10-67901	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 2812
Punch unit 2-4 hole	Y1G11-67901	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 2803
Punch unit 2-4 hole	Y1G11-67901	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 2812
Punch unit Swedish hole	Y1G12-67901	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 2803
Punch unit Swedish hole	Y1G12-67901	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 2812
Rear cover	5QK09-40021	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
Rear cover	5QK09-40021	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
Rear cover -base	5QK09-40018	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 2793

Table 7-40 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Rear cover -punch	5QK09-40037	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 2793
Rear joint PCA	JC92-02780A	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 2795
Rear lower cover	6EQ94-40004	Covers on page 2756
Rear paper holding sensor	0604-001393	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
Rear paper holding sensor	0604-001393	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
Rear paper support	JC90-01311A	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 2799
Rear tamper	JC82-00898A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 2806
Rear tamper	JC82-00898A	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 2815
Rear tamper	JC82-00900A	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 2799
Rear tamper home sensor	0604-001393	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 2806
Rear tamper home sensor	0604-001393	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 2815
Rear tamper motor	JC93-01001A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 2806
Rear tamper motor	JC93-01001A	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 2815
Rear upper cover	6EQ94-40014	Covers on page 2756
Registration clutch	JC47-00037A	Registration and Tray 2 unit on page 2762
Registration unit assembly	5QJ90-60129	Registration and Tray 2 unit on page 2762
Right door assembly	JC95-02260A	Tray 1 on page 2759
Right door exit assembly	JC90-01877A	Registration and Tray 2 unit on page 2762
Right door fan	JC31-00160C	Sensor and fan on page 2772
Right door front damper	JC66-01425A	Tray 1 on page 2759
Right door front link	JC66-03235A	Tray 1 on page 2759
Right door open switch holder assy	JC90-01385A	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
Right front cover	6EQ94-40022	Covers on page 2756
Right middle cover	6EQ94-40013	Covers on page 2756
Right middle cover assembly	5QJ90-60114	Covers on page 2756
Right rear cover	6EQ94-40023	Covers on page 2756

Table 7-40 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Right upper cover	5QK09-60109	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
Right upper cover	5QK09-60109	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
Right upper cover	6EQ94-40015	Covers on page 2756
Riser for HDD	3SJ01-60001	PCA on page 2773
Riser for HDD, USB ports	4XN67-60001	PCA on page 2773
Riser for HDD, USB ports, Accelerator	3SJ02-60001	PCA on page 2773
Rivet-Echo PCA	6ER04-40034	PCA on page 2773
Rivet-HDD	6ER04-40035	PCA on page 2773
SVC-HP LJ Blk Mngd Toner Crtg High Yield	W9065-67007	Toner on page 2766
SVC-HP LJ Blk Mngd Toner Crtg Std Yield	W9064-67004	Toner on page 2766
SVC_HP LaserJet Black Developer Unit	5PN67-67001	Imaging unit (drum and developer) on page 2770
SVC_HP LaserJet Black Managed Imaging Drum	W9066-67001	Imaging unit (drum and developer) on page 2770
SVC_HP LaserJet Fuser 100V Kit	5PN51-67001	Fuser on page 2771
SVC_HP LaserJet Fuser 110V Kit	5PN68-67001	Fuser on page 2771
SVC_HP LaserJet Fuser 220V Kit	5PN69-67001	Fuser on page 2771
SVC_HP LaserJet Toner Collection Unit	6SB84-67001	Toner Collection Unit on page 2768
SVC_HP LaserJet Trays 2-x Roller Kit	5PN66-67001	Tray 2, 3 on page 2760
SVC_HP LaserJet tray1 MP Roller Kit	5RC02-67001	Tray 1 on page 2759
SVC_T2 transfer assembly	5PN70-67001	Registration and Tray 2 unit on page 2762
Second exit (Optional)	Y1G23-67901	Exit unit (2 of 2) on page 2765
Shaft hinge - door	JC66-04767A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
Shaft hinge - door	JC66-04767A	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
Single Fax Card (BBU) (Optional)	7ZA09-67001	PCA on page 2773
Single Fax Card (WW) (Optional)	7ZA08-67001	PCA on page 2773
Solenoid, lifting	JC33-00031B	Exit unit (2 of 2) on page 2765
Solenoid, lifting	JC33-00031B	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
Spring-TS	JC61-07185A	Exit unit (1 of 2) on page 2763
Staple cartridge	6GW49-40001	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 2797
Staple cartridge	JC81-09882B	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 2806

Table 7-40 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Staple cartridge	JC81-09882B	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 2815
Staple front sensor	0604-001393	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 2806
Staple front sensor	0604-001393	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 2815
Staple mid-front sensor	0604-001393	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 2806
Staple mid-front sensor	0604-001393	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 2815
Staple mid-rear sensor	0604-001393	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 2806
Staple mid-rear sensor	0604-001393	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 2815
Staple position motor	JC31-00163A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 2806
Staple position motor	JC31-00163A	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 2815
Staple rear sensor	0604-001393	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 2806
Staple rear sensor	0604-001393	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 2815
Staple unit	JC82-00894A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 2806
Staple unit	JC82-00894A	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 2815
Stapler assembly	6GW49-60003	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 2797
Stapler/Stacker finisher	6GW55-67001	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
Sub paddle assy	JC90-01336A	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 2797
Swedish punch (optional)	155P9-67001	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 2793
Switch	JC93-01467A	Sensor and fan on page 2772
TCU drive assembly	JC93-00445A	Toner Collection Unit on page 2768
TCU drive motor	JC31-00166A	Toner Collection Unit on page 2768
TPM	3SJ03-60001 (Not Orderable)	PCA on page 2773
Tarot platen PCA	Y6V12-60035	Tarot platen on page 2781
Tie stopper	JC61-04626A	Covers on page 2756

Table 7-40 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Toner CRUM module assembly	5QJ94-50001	Toner on page 2766
Toner collection unit full sensor assembly	JC93-00492A	Toner Collection Unit on page 2768
Toner dispense motor	JC31-00094A	Toner on page 2766
Toner dispense motor assembly	JC93-01681A	Toner on page 2766
Toner duct motor	JC93-01686A	Duct assembly on page 2767
Toner guide unit K	5QJ98-60034	Toner on page 2766
Top cover	5QK09-60108	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
Top cover	5QK09-60108	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
Top cover assy	5QK09-60125	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 2793
Top door	5QK09-60107	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
Top door	5QK09-60107	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
Top exit sensor	0604-001393	Stapler/Stacker finisher (3 of 4) on page 2805
Top exit sensor	0604-001393	Booklet finisher (4 of 4) on page 2814
Top jam cover assembly	JC90-01455A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 2803
Top jam cover assembly	JC90-01455A	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 2812
Top lower feed assembly	JC90-01454A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (3 of 4) on page 2805
Top lower feed assembly	JC90-01454A	Booklet finisher (4 of 4) on page 2814
Top output tray	5QK09-40027	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
Top output tray	5QK09-40027	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
Top output tray paper full sensor	JC82-01039A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 2803
Top output tray paper full sensor	JC82-01039A	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 2812
Tray 1 paper empty sensor	0604-001381	Tray 1 on page 2759
Tray 1 unit	JC90-01869A	Tray 1 on page 2759
Tray 2 cassette	5QJ90-60111	Covers on page 2756
Tray 2 cassette	5QJ90-60111	Tray 2, 3 on page 2760
Tray 2 cover - Blue CMF panel	5QJ90-40022	Covers on page 2756

Table 7-40 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Tray 2 cover - Gray CMF panel	5QJ90-40087	Covers on page 2756
Tray 2 cover - Green CMF panel	5QJ90-40089	Covers on page 2756
Tray 2 cover - Purple CMF panel	5QJ90-40091	Covers on page 2756
Tray 2 cover - Red CMF panel	5QJ90-40088	Covers on page 2756
Tray 2 cover - Yellow CMF panel	5QJ90-40090	Covers on page 2756
Tray 2 open, paper size sensor assembly	JC93-00018B	Tray 2, 3 on page 2760
Tray 2 pickup assembly	JC93-01728A	Tray 2, 3 on page 2760
Tray 2 pickup drive assembly	5QJ90-64001	Tray 2, 3 on page 2760
Tray 3 cassette	5QJ90-60119	Covers on page 2756
Tray 3 cassette	5QJ90-60119	Tray 2, 3 on page 2760
Tray 3 cover - Blue CMF panel	5QJ94-40016	Covers on page 2756
Tray 3 cover - Gray CMF panel	5QJ94-40024	Covers on page 2756
Tray 3 cover - Green CMF panel	5QJ94-40026	Covers on page 2756
Tray 3 cover - Purple CMF panel	5QJ94-40028	Covers on page 2756
Tray 3 cover - Red CMF panel	5QJ94-40025	Covers on page 2756
Tray 3 cover - Yellow CMF panel	5QJ94-40027	Covers on page 2756
Tray 3 open, paper size sensor assembly	JC93-00018B	Tray 2, 3 on page 2760
Tray 3 pickup assembly	JC93-01729A	Tray 2, 3 on page 2760
Tray 3 pickup drive assembly	5QJ90-64001	Tray 2, 3 on page 2760
Tray 4	5QJ98-61012	HCI (1 of 2) on page 2788
Tray 4	5QJ98-61012	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
Tray 4 Blue CMF panel	5QK03-40033	DCF (1 of 2) on page 2784
Tray 4 Blue CMF panel	5QK09-40024	HCI (1 of 2) on page 2788
Tray 4 Gray CMF panel	8GR90-40024	HCI (1 of 2) on page 2788
Tray 4 Gray CMF panel	8GR90-40026	DCF (1 of 2) on page 2784
Tray 4 Green CMF panel	8GR90-40043	DCF (1 of 2) on page 2784
Tray 4 Green CMF panel	8GR90-40051	HCI (1 of 2) on page 2788
Tray 4 Purple CMF panel	8GR90-40045	DCF (1 of 2) on page 2784
Tray 4 Purple CMF panel	8GR90-40053	HCI (1 of 2) on page 2788
Tray 4 Red CMF panel	8GR90-40042	DCF (1 of 2) on page 2784
Tray 4 Red CMF panel	8GR90-40050	HCI (1 of 2) on page 2788
Tray 4 Yellow CMF panel	8GR90-40044	DCF (1 of 2) on page 2784
Tray 4 Yellow CMF panel	8GR90-40052	HCI (1 of 2) on page 2788
Tray 4 cassette	5QJ98-61009	DCF (1 of 2) on page 2784

Table 7-40 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Tray 4 cassette	5QJ98-61009	DCF (2 of 2) on page 2786
Tray 4 pickup assembly	8GR90-60007	DCF (2 of 2) on page 2786
Tray 4 pickup drive assembly	5QJ90-64001	DCF (2 of 2) on page 2786
Tray 4, 5 roller kit	5PN66-67001	DCF (2 of 2) on page 2786
Tray 5 Blue CMF panel	5QK03-40035	DCF (1 of 2) on page 2784
Tray 5 Gray CMF panel	8GR90-40025	DCF (1 of 2) on page 2784
Tray 5 Green CMF panel	8GR90-40047	DCF (1 of 2) on page 2784
Tray 5 Purple CMF panel	8GR90-40049	DCF (1 of 2) on page 2784
Tray 5 Red CMF panel	8GR90-40046	DCF (1 of 2) on page 2784
Tray 5 Yellow CMF panel	8GR90-40048	DCF (1 of 2) on page 2784
Tray 5 cassette	5QJ98-61007	DCF (1 of 2) on page 2784
Tray 5 cassette	5QJ98-61007	DCF (2 of 2) on page 2786
Tray 5 pickup assembly	8GR90-60007	DCF (2 of 2) on page 2786
Tray 5 pickup drive assembly	5QJ90-64001	DCF (2 of 2) on page 2786
Tray diverter cam	JC90-01458A	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 2803
Tray diverter cam	JC90-01458A	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 2812
Tray diverter home sensor	0604-001415	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 2803
Tray diverter home sensor	0604-001415	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 2812
Tray extension	5QK09-40029	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
Tray extension	5QK09-40029	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
Tray heater 110V	Y1G22-67901	Tray 2, 3 on page 2760
Tray heater 110V (not shown)	Y1G22-67901	DCF (2 of 2) on page 2786
Tray heater 110V (not shown)	Y1G22-67901	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
Tray heater 220V	Y1G22-67902	Tray 2, 3 on page 2760
Tray heater 220V (not shown)	Y1G22-67902	DCF (2 of 2) on page 2786
Tray heater 220V (not shown)	Y1G22-67902	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
USB Hub PCA	3SJ04-60001	PCA on page 2773

Numerical parts list

Table 7-41 Numerical parts list

Part number	Description	Table and page
	CIS platen PCA	CIS platen on page 2782
	DCF Dpt_Door open switch sensor and harness	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
	Discrete power cable	CIS platen on page 2782
	Duplex assembly	Exit unit (1 of 2) on page 2763
	Guide FFC	CIS platen on page 2782
	Platen FFC 68 pin	CIS platen on page 2782
JC93-00018B	Tray 3 open, paper size sensor assembly	Tray 2, 3 on page 2760
0604-001381	Photo interrupter	Tray 2, 3 on page 2760
0604-001381	Photo interrupter	Registration and Tray 2 unit on page 2762
0604-001381	Photo interrupter	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 2793
0604-001381	Photo interrupter	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 2793
0604-001381	Photo interrupter	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 2797
0604-001381	Photo interrupter	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 2797
0604-001381	Tray 1 paper empty sensor	Tray 1 on page 2759
0604-001393	Booklet blade home sensor	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
0604-001393	Booklet c-fold blade home sensor	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
0604-001393	Booklet end fence home sensor	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
0604-001393	Booklet paddle home sensor	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
0604-001393	Booklet presser home sensor	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
0604-001393	Booklet tamper home sensor	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
0604-001393	Bridge door sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (3 of 4) on page 2805
0604-001393	Bridge door sensor	Booklet finisher (4 of 4) on page 2814
0604-001393	Bridge exit sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (3 of 4) on page 2805
0604-001393	Bridge exit sensor	Booklet finisher (4 of 4) on page 2814

Table 7-41 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
0604-001393	Front paper holding sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
0604-001393	Front paper holding sensor	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
0604-001393	Front tamper home sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 2806
0604-001393	Front tamper home sensor	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 2815
0604-001393	Main exit cam home sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 2803
0604-001393	Main exit cam home sensor	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 2812
0604-001393	Main output tray motor sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 2803
0604-001393	Main output tray motor sensor	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 2812
0604-001393	Paddle home sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 2803
0604-001393	Paddle home sensor	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 2812
0604-001393	Paper holding home sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
0604-001393	Paper holding home sensor	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Tray 2, 3 on page 2760
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Tray 2, 3 on page 2760
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Registration and Tray 2 unit on page 2762
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Exit unit (1 of 2) on page 2763
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Exit unit (1 of 2) on page 2763
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Exit unit (2 of 2) on page 2765
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Exit unit (2 of 2) on page 2765
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Toner on page 2766
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Duct assembly on page 2767
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Toner Collection Unit on page 2768
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Tarot platen on page 2781
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	CIS platen on page 2782
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	DCF (2 of 2) on page 2786
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	DCF (2 of 2) on page 2786
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790

Table 7-41 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 2795
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 2795
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 2797
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 2797
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 2797
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 2797
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 2799
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 2799
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 2799
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 2799
0604-001393	Photo interrupter	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 2799
0604-001393	Rear paper holding sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
0604-001393	Rear paper holding sensor	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
0604-001393	Rear tamper home sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 2806
0604-001393	Rear tamper home sensor	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 2815
0604-001393	Staple front sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 2806
0604-001393	Staple front sensor	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 2815

Table 7-41 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
0604-001393	Staple mid-front sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 2806
0604-001393	Staple mid-front sensor	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 2815
0604-001393	Staple mid-rear sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 2806
0604-001393	Staple mid-rear sensor	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 2815
0604-001393	Staple rear sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 2806
0604-001393	Staple rear sensor	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 2815
0604-001393	Top exit sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (3 of 4) on page 2805
0604-001393	Top exit sensor	Booklet finisher (4 of 4) on page 2814
0604-001415	Booklet diverter home sensor	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
0604-001415	Booklet entrance sensor	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
0604-001415	Ejector1 home sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 2806
0604-001415	Ejector1 home sensor	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 2815
0604-001415	Ejector1 motor sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 2806
0604-001415	Ejector1 motor sensor	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 2815
0604-001415	Ejector2 motor sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 2806
0604-001415	Ejector2 motor sensor	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 2815
0604-001415	Main output tray lower limit sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
0604-001415	Main output tray lower limit sensor	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
0604-001415	Manual staple sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 2803
0604-001415	Manual staple sensor	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 2812
0604-001415	Photo interrupter	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 2795
0604-001415	Tray diverter home sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 2803

Table 7-41 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
0604-001415	Tray diverter home sensor	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 2812
0604-001490	Photo interrupter	Tray 2, 3 on page 2760
0604-001490	Photo interrupter	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
155P7-67001	Hole 2/3 punch (optional)	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 2793
155P8-67001	Hole 2/4 punch (optional)	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 2793
155P9-67001	Swedish punch (optional)	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 2793
3SJ01-60001	Riser for HDD	PCA on page 2773
3SJ02-60001	Riser for HDD, USB ports, Accelerator	PCA on page 2773
3SJ03-60001 (Not Orderable)	TPM	PCA on page 2773
3SJ04-60001	USB Hub PCA	PCA on page 2773
3SJ06-60001	Island of Data (IOD) PCA	PCA on page 2773
3SJ11-40008	Cover Rear	ISA on page 2775
3SJ11-50006	Discrete power cable	Tarot platen on page 2781
3SJ11-50021	Platen FFC 50 pin	Tarot platen on page 2781
3SJ11-50022	Platen FFC 68 pin	Tarot platen on page 2781
3SJ15-60101	Control panel (8 inch)	PCA on page 2773
3SJ19-80501	Bridge motor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (3 of 4) on page 2805
3SJ19-80501	Bridge motor	Booklet finisher (4 of 4) on page 2814
3SJ33-60007	PCA - power key	PCA on page 2773
3SJ33-60007	PCA -power key	Covers on page 2756
4XN67-60001	Riser for HDD, USB ports	PCA on page 2773
5851-6019	Keyboard overlay kit (FR, IT, RU, DE,ES,UK Kybd)	PCA on page 2773
5851-6020	Keyboard overlay kit (FR-CN, ES-LA, ES,US Kybd)	PCA on page 2773
5851-6021	Keyboard overlay kit (FR-SW, DE-SW, DA,UK Kybd)	PCA on page 2773
5851-6022	Keyboard overlay kit (ZHTW, ZHCN)	PCA on page 2773
5851-6023	Keyboard overlay kit (ES, PT)	PCA on page 2773
5851-6024	Keyboard overlay kit (JA-KG, JA-KT)	PCA on page 2773
5851-7202	ADF roller kit	200sh ADF (2 of 2) on page 2778
5851-7753	Cradle-HDD	PCA on page 2773
5851-7754	Cradle-Riser Card	PCA on page 2773

Table 7-41 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
5PN51-67001	SVC_HP LaserJet Fuser 100V Kit	Fuser on page 2771
5PN66-67001	HCI roller kit	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
5PN66-67001	SVC_HP LaserJet Trays 2-x Roller Kit	Tray 2, 3 on page 2760
5PN66-67001	Tray 4, 5 roller kit	DCF (2 of 2) on page 2786
5PN67-67001	SVC_HP LaserJet Black Developer Unit	Imaging unit (drum and developer) on page 2770
5PN68-67001	SVC_HP LaserJet Fuser 110V Kit	Fuser on page 2771
5PN69-67001	SVC_HP LaserJet Fuser 220V Kit	Fuser on page 2771
5PN70-67001	SVC_T2 transfer assembly	Registration and Tray 2 unit on page 2762
5QJ83-40035	Guide FFC	Tarot platen on page 2781
5QJ83-40036	Guide FFC	Tarot platen on page 2781
5QJ83-67002	ADF roller kit	100sh ADF (2 of 2) on page 2780
5QJ90-40002	Outer temperature, humidity sensor assembly	Sensor and fan on page 2772
5QJ90-40022	Tray 2 cover - Blue CMF panel	Covers on page 2756
5QJ90-40056	ADF Blue CMF panel	200sh ADF (1 of 2) on page 2777
5QJ90-40056	ADF CMF panel	100sh ADF (1 of 2) on page 2779
5QJ90-40087	Tray 2 cover - Gray CMF panel	Covers on page 2756
5QJ90-40088	Tray 2 cover - Red CMF panel	Covers on page 2756
5QJ90-40089	Tray 2 cover - Green CMF panel	Covers on page 2756
5QJ90-40090	Tray 2 cover - Yellow CMF panel	Covers on page 2756
5QJ90-40091	Tray 2 cover - Purple CMF panel	Covers on page 2756
5QJ90-40108	ADF Gray CMF panel	200sh ADF (1 of 2) on page 2777
5QJ90-40109	ADF Red CMF panel	200sh ADF (1 of 2) on page 2777
5QJ90-40110	ADF Green CMF panel	200sh ADF (1 of 2) on page 2777
5QJ90-40111	ADF Yellow CMF panel	200sh ADF (1 of 2) on page 2777
5QJ90-40112	ADF Purple CMF panel	200sh ADF (1 of 2) on page 2777
5QJ90-60014	Low Voltage Power Supply (LVPS), 110V	PCA on page 2773
5QJ90-60015	Low Voltage Power Supply (LVPS), 220V	PCA on page 2773
5QJ90-60106	Black developer powder kit	Imaging unit (drum and developer) on page 2770
5QJ90-60111	Tray 2 cassette	Covers on page 2756
5QJ90-60111	Tray 2 cassette	Tray 2, 3 on page 2760
5QJ90-60114	Right middle cover assembly	Covers on page 2756
5QJ90-60116	Exit cover stacker	Covers on page 2756

Table 7-41 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
5QJ90-60119	Tray 3 cassette	Covers on page 2756
5QJ90-60119	Tray 3 cassette	Tray 2, 3 on page 2760
5QJ90-60129	Registration unit assembly	Registration and Tray 2 unit on page 2762
5QJ90-60130	HCI pickup motor drive assembly	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
5QJ90-64001	Pickup motor	Tray 2, 3 on page 2760
5QJ90-64001	Tray 2 pickup drive assembly	Tray 2, 3 on page 2760
5QJ90-64001	Tray 3 pickup drive assembly	Tray 2, 3 on page 2760
5QJ90-64001	Tray 4 pickup drive assembly	DCF (2 of 2) on page 2786
5QJ90-64001	Tray 5 pickup drive assembly	DCF (2 of 2) on page 2786
5QJ90-67004	Hinge Kit	200sh ADF (2 of 2) on page 2778
5QJ90-67005	A3 White Backing Kit	200sh ADF (2 of 2) on page 2778
5QJ90-67006	Damper module	200sh ADF (2 of 2) on page 2778
5QJ90-67008	200sh ADF WF PCA (flow)	200sh ADF (2 of 2) on page 2778
5QJ90-67009	ADF FFC cable to SSA	200sh ADF (2 of 2) on page 2778
5QJ90-67010	ADF Power cable	200sh ADF (2 of 2) on page 2778
5QJ90-67013	200sh ENT ADF PCA	200sh ADF (2 of 2) on page 2778
5QJ94-40016	Tray 3 cover - Blue CMF panel	Covers on page 2756
5QJ94-40024	Tray 3 cover - Gray CMF panel	Covers on page 2756
5QJ94-40025	Tray 3 cover - Red CMF panel	Covers on page 2756
5QJ94-40026	Tray 3 cover - Green CMF panel	Covers on page 2756
5QJ94-40027	Tray 3 cover - Yellow CMF panel	Covers on page 2756
5QJ94-40028	Tray 3 cover - Purple CMF panel	Covers on page 2756
5QJ94-50001	Toner CRUM module assembly	Toner on page 2766
5QJ98-40014	DCF rear cover	DCF (1 of 2) on page 2784
5QJ98-40014	HCI rear cover	HCI (1 of 2) on page 2788
5QJ98-40015	DCF right cover	DCF (1 of 2) on page 2784
5QJ98-40017	DCF left cover	DCF (1 of 2) on page 2784
5QJ98-40024	HCI right cover	HCI (1 of 2) on page 2788
5QJ98-40025	HCI left cover	HCI (1 of 2) on page 2788
5QJ98-40042	Front cover - Gray CMF Panel	Covers on page 2756

Table 7-41 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
5QJ98-40043	Front cover - Red CMF Panel	Covers on page 2756
5QJ98-40044	Front cover - Green CMF Panel	Covers on page 2756
5QJ98-40045	Front cover - Yellow CMF Panel	Covers on page 2756
5QJ98-40046	Front cover - Purple CMF Panel	Covers on page 2756
5QJ98-40052	Dev fan assembly	Sensor and fan on page 2772
5QJ98-40056	Paper dust holder assembly	Registration and Tray 2 unit on page 2762
5QJ98-60034	Toner guide unit K	Toner on page 2766
5QJ98-60104	Left cover	Covers on page 2756
5QJ98-60105	Inner cover	Covers on page 2756
5QJ98-60106	Front cover assembly	Covers on page 2756
5QJ98-61006	DCF right door	DCF (1 of 2) on page 2784
5QJ98-61007	Tray 5 cassette	DCF (1 of 2) on page 2784
5QJ98-61007	Tray 5 cassette	DCF (2 of 2) on page 2786
5QJ98-61009	Tray 4 cassette	DCF (1 of 2) on page 2784
5QJ98-61009	Tray 4 cassette	DCF (2 of 2) on page 2786
5QJ98-61012	Tray 4	HCI (1 of 2) on page 2788
5QJ98-61012	Tray 4	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
5QJ98-61014	HCI right door	HCI (1 of 2) on page 2788
5QK03-40033	Tray 4 Blue CMF panel	DCF (1 of 2) on page 2784
5QK03-40035	Tray 5 Blue CMF panel	DCF (1 of 2) on page 2784
5QK09-40004	PCA cover	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 2793
5QK09-40018	Rear cover -base	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 2793
5QK09-40019	Front cover	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
5QK09-40019	Front cover	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
5QK09-40020	Front lower cover	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
5QK09-40020	Front lower cover	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
5QK09-40021	Rear cover	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
5QK09-40021	Rear cover	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
5QK09-40024	Tray 4 Blue CMF panel	HCI (1 of 2) on page 2788

Table 7-41 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
5QK09-40027	Top output tray	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
5QK09-40027	Top output tray	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
5QK09-40028	Main output tray	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
5QK09-40028	Main output tray	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
5QK09-40029	Tray extension	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
5QK09-40029	Tray extension	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
5QK09-40030	Punch cover	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
5QK09-40030	Punch cover	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
5QK09-40037	Rear cover -punch	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 2793
5QK09-40047	Front lower left cover	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
5QK09-40047	Front lower left cover	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
5QK09-40048	Front lower right cover	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
5QK09-40048	Front lower right cover	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
5QK09-60104	Booklet maker unit	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
5QK09-60106	Front door	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
5QK09-60106	Front door	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
5QK09-60107	Top door	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
5QK09-60107	Top door	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
5QK09-60108	Top cover	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
5QK09-60108	Top cover	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
5QK09-60109	Right upper cover	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
5QK09-60109	Right upper cover	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808

Table 7-41 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
5QK09-60110	Bridge unit	Stapler/Stacker finisher (3 of 4) on page 2805
5QK09-60110	Bridge unit	Booklet finisher (4 of 4) on page 2814
5QK09-60118	Output tray assy	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 2793
5QK09-60123	Front cover assy	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 2793
5QK09-60124	Middle cover assy	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 2793
5QK09-60125	Top cover assy	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 2793
5QK09-60128	Entrance motor assy	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 2795
5QK14-67001	Dual Fax Card (WW) (Optional)	PCA on page 2773
5QK18-60001	Laser Scanner Unit (LSU)	Laser Scanner Unit on page 2769
5QK35-67001	HP LaserJet 180ipm 200 sheet DADF Scanner (200sh ADF + Tarot platen)	ISA on page 2775
5QK42-60101	Control panel (10.1 inch)	PCA on page 2773
5RC02-67001	SVC_HP LaserJet tray1 MP Roller Kit	Tray 1 on page 2759
6102-003354	Guide rail	Inner finisher (1 of 5) on page 2792
6109-001138	Caster wheel	DCF (1 of 2) on page 2784
6109-001138	Caster wheel	HCI (1 of 2) on page 2788
6602-003644	Entrance motor timing belt	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 2795
6CF14-67004	Main PCA (Formatter)	PCA on page 2773
6EQ94-40004	Rear lower cover	Covers on page 2756
6EQ94-40009	Exit rear cover	Covers on page 2756
6EQ94-40010	Exit stacker upper cover	Covers on page 2756
6EQ94-40011	Front lower cover	Covers on page 2756
6EQ94-40012	Left upper cover	Covers on page 2756
6EQ94-40013	Right middle cover	Covers on page 2756
6EQ94-40014	Rear upper cover	Covers on page 2756
6EQ94-40015	Right upper cover	Covers on page 2756
6EQ94-40017	Middle upper cover	Covers on page 2756
6EQ94-40018	Front cover - Blue CMF Panel	Covers on page 2756
6EQ94-40022	Right front cover	Covers on page 2756

Table 7-41 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
6EQ94-40023	Right rear cover	Covers on page 2756
6EQ94-40029	Power key	Covers on page 2756
6EQ94-40031	Middle left cover	Covers on page 2756
6EQ94-40032	HIP cover	Covers on page 2756
6ER04-40034	Rivet-Echo PCA	PCA on page 2773
6ER04-40035	Rivet-HDD	PCA on page 2773
6ER04-61005	Controller cover	Covers on page 2756
6GW46-67001	DCF	DCF (1 of 2) on page 2784
6GW48-60001	PCA-HCI Workgroup	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
6GW48-60003	Knock-up plate assembly	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
6GW48-67001	HCI	HCI (1 of 2) on page 2788
6GW49-40001	Staple cartridge	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 2797
6GW49-60001	Inner finisher PCA	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 2795
6GW49-60003	Stapler assembly	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 2797
6GW49-67002	Inner Finisher	Inner finisher (1 of 5) on page 2792
6GW51-60001	Booklet maker PCA	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
6GW51-67001	Booklet finisher	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
6GW52-67901	HP LaserJet WG Job Separator (Optional)	Exit unit (2 of 2) on page 2765
6GW55-60001	Main PCA	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 2803
6GW55-60001	Main PCA	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 2812
6GW55-67001	Stapler/Stacker finisher	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
6HN30-67001	Accelerator (Optional)	PCA on page 2773
6SB84-67001	SVC_HP LaserJet Toner Collection Unit	Toner Collection Unit on page 2768
7ZA07-67001	Dual Fax Card (BBU) (Optional)	PCA on page 2773
7ZA08-67001	Single Fax Card (WW) (Optional)	PCA on page 2773
7ZA09-67001	Single Fax Card (BBU) (Optional)	PCA on page 2773
8GR90-40008	LSU fan assembly	Sensor and fan on page 2772
8GR90-40024	Tray 4 Gray CMF panel	HCI (1 of 2) on page 2788
8GR90-40025	Tray 5 Gray CMF panel	DCF (1 of 2) on page 2784

Table 7-41 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
8GR90-40026	Tray 4 Gray CMF panel	DCF (1 of 2) on page 2784
8GR90-40042	Tray 4 Red CMF panel	DCF (1 of 2) on page 2784
8GR90-40043	Tray 4 Green CMF panel	DCF (1 of 2) on page 2784
8GR90-40044	Tray 4 Yellow CMF panel	DCF (1 of 2) on page 2784
8GR90-40045	Tray 4 Purple CMF panel	DCF (1 of 2) on page 2784
8GR90-40046	Tray 5 Red CMF panel	DCF (1 of 2) on page 2784
8GR90-40047	Tray 5 Green CMF panel	DCF (1 of 2) on page 2784
8GR90-40048	Tray 5 Yellow CMF panel	DCF (1 of 2) on page 2784
8GR90-40049	Tray 5 Purple CMF panel	DCF (1 of 2) on page 2784
8GR90-40050	Tray 4 Red CMF panel	HCI (1 of 2) on page 2788
8GR90-40051	Tray 4 Green CMF panel	HCI (1 of 2) on page 2788
8GR90-40052	Tray 4 Yellow CMF panel	HCI (1 of 2) on page 2788
8GR90-40053	Tray 4 Purple CMF panel	HCI (1 of 2) on page 2788
8GR90-60001	HCI pickup assembly	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
8GR90-60007	Tray 4 pickup assembly	DCF (2 of 2) on page 2786
8GR90-60007	Tray 5 pickup assembly	DCF (2 of 2) on page 2786
8GS05-40018	Caster cover	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
8GS05-40018	Caster cover	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
8GS05-60104	Entrance motor assembly	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 2803
8GS05-60104	Entrance motor assembly	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 2812
8GS05-60106	Exit motor assembly	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 2803
8GS05-60106	Exit motor assembly	Stapler/Stacker finisher (3 of 4) on page 2805
8GS05-60106	Exit motor assembly	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 2812
8GS05-60106	Exit motor assembly	Booklet finisher (4 of 4) on page 2814
8GS05-60113	Left cover assy	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 2793
8GS05-60114	Punch cover assembly	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 2793
8GS05-60118	Left upper cover	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
8GS05-60118	Left upper cover	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808

Table 7-41 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
8GS05-60122	Left lower cover	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
8GS05-60124	Left lower cover (Booklet)	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
8GS05-60126	Booklet output tray	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
8GS05-60126	Booklet stapler	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
933853-010	Hard disk 500GB SED	PCA on page 2773
JC31-00094A	Toner dispense motor	Toner on page 2766
JC31-00109A	Motor, geared	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
JC31-00123A	Developer motor	Imaging unit (drum and developer) on page 2770
JC31-00123A	Drum motor	Imaging unit (drum and developer) on page 2770
JC31-00123B	Feed Regi MP motor	Tray 1 on page 2759
JC31-00123B	Feed Regi MP motor	Tray 2, 3 on page 2760
JC31-00123B	Feed Regi MP motor	Registration and Tray 2 unit on page 2762
JC31-00123B	Fuser motor	Fuser on page 2771
JC31-00125A	Motor, geared	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
JC31-00160C	Right door fan	Sensor and fan on page 2772
JC31-00163A	Staple position motor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 2806
JC31-00163A	Staple position motor	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 2815
JC31-00166A	TCU drive motor	Toner Collection Unit on page 2768
JC31-00169B	Motor, step	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 2795
JC31-00169B	Motor, step	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 2797
JC31-00178B	Motor DC	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 2795
JC32-00020A	Booklet exit sensor	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
JC32-00020A	Booklet tamper sensor	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
JC32-00020A	Bridge entrance sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (3 of 4) on page 2805
JC32-00020A	Bridge entrance sensor	Booklet finisher (4 of 4) on page 2814

Table 7-41 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
JC32-00020A	Ejector sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 2806
JC32-00020A	Ejector sensor	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 2815
JC32-00020A	Main exit sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (3 of 4) on page 2805
JC32-00020A	Main exit sensor	Booklet finisher (4 of 4) on page 2814
JC32-00025A	CTD sensor	Registration and Tray 2 unit on page 2762
JC33-00031B	Solenoid, lifting	Exit unit (2 of 2) on page 2765
JC33-00031B	Solenoid, lifting	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
JC33-00037A	Electric clutch	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 2795
JC39-01610A	Harness - cover open	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 2795
JC39-01610A	Harness - cover open	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 2795
JC39-02309A	Front door switch	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 2803
JC39-02309A	Front door switch	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 2812
JC39-02316A	Main output tray top of stack switch	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 2803
JC39-02316A	Main output tray top of stack switch	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 2812
JC44-00210F	Fuser drive board (FDB), 110V	PCA on page 2773
JC44-00211F	Fuser drive board (FDB), 220V	PCA on page 2773
JC44-00237D	High Voltage Power Supply (HVPS)	PCA on page 2773
JC47-00037A	Electric clutch	Tray 1 on page 2759
JC47-00037A	Feed electric clutch	Tray 2, 3 on page 2760
JC47-00037A	Registration clutch	Registration and Tray 2 unit on page 2762
JC61-04626A	Tie stopper	Covers on page 2756
JC61-04871A	Guide Adjust	DCF (1 of 2) on page 2784
JC61-04871A	Guide adjust	HCI (1 of 2) on page 2788
JC61-07185A	Spring-TS	Exit unit (1 of 2) on page 2763
JC61-07366A	Booklet c-fold blade	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
JC61-07444A	Caster fix nut	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802

Table 7-41 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
JC61-07444A	Caster fix nut	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
JC61-07452A	Caster	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
JC61-07452A	Caster	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
JC63-04534B	Left top cover	Covers on page 2756
JC66-01425A	Right door front damper	Tray 1 on page 2759
JC66-02278A	Lever ACT full exit	Exit unit (1 of 2) on page 2763
JC66-03235A	Right door front link	Tray 1 on page 2759
JC66-04199A	Exit sensor actuator	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 2795
JC66-04201A	Actuator home paddle	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 2797
JC66-04218A	Gear rack pinion	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 2797
JC66-04233A	Lock release handle	Inner finisher (2 of 5) on page 2793
JC66-04243A	Entrance roller	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 2795
JC66-04243A	Middle roller	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 2795
JC66-04339A	Actuator bin full exit	Exit unit (1 of 2) on page 2763
JC66-04767A	Shaft hinge - door	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
JC66-04767A	Shaft hinge - door	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
JC81-07478B	Paper shift gate	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
JC81-07481B	HCI shift plate	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
JC81-08274A	Booklet stapler cartridge	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
JC81-09882B	Staple cartridge	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 2806
JC81-09882B	Staple cartridge	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 2815
JC82-00894A	Staple unit	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 2806
JC82-00894A	Staple unit	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 2815
JC82-00898A	Rear tamper	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 2806
JC82-00898A	Rear tamper	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 2815

Table 7-41 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
JC82-00899A	Front tamper	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 2799
JC82-00900A	Rear tamper	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 2799
JC82-00901A	Front tamper	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 2806
JC82-00901A	Front tamper	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 2815
JC82-01038A	Main paddle kit	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 2797
JC82-01039A	Booklet output tray sensor	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
JC82-01039A	Main output tray top of stack sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
JC82-01039A	Main output tray top of stack sensor	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
JC82-01039A	Output tray top of stack sensor kit	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 2795
JC82-01039A	Top output tray paper full sensor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 2803
JC82-01039A	Top output tray paper full sensor	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 2812
JC90-01310A	Front paper support	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 2799
JC90-01311A	Rear paper support	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 2799
JC90-01312A	Paper support motor assy	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 2799
JC90-01313A	Paper holding actuator	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 2795
JC90-01314A	Paper holding kit	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 2795
JC90-01320A	Output tray lower limit switch assy	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 2795
JC90-01327A	Main paddle	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 2797
JC90-01330A	Exit roller assy	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 2797
JC90-01331A	Exit motor assy	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 2797
JC90-01334B	Output tray motor assy	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 2795
JC90-01336A	Sub paddle assy	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 2797

Table 7-41 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
JC90-01385A	Right door open switch holder assy	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
JC90-01396A	Booklet c-fold blade motor assembly	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
JC90-01397A	Booklet diverter motor assembly	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
JC90-01398A	Booklet diverter	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
JC90-01414A	Paper holding motor drive assembly	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 2803
JC90-01414A	Paper holding motor drive assembly	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 2812
JC90-01415B	Main output tray motor drive assembly	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 2803
JC90-01415B	Main output tray motor drive assembly	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 2812
JC90-01425A	Booklet entrance-presser motor assembly	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
JC90-01430A	Booklet paddle motor assembly	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
JC90-01431A	Booklet tamper	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
JC90-01432A	Booklet end fence	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
JC90-01435A	Booklet blade motor assembly	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
JC90-01436A	Booklet fold motor assembly	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
JC90-01442A	Finisher mount bracket	Stapler/Stacker finisher (1 of 4) on page 2802
JC90-01442A	Finisher mount bracket	Booklet finisher (1 of 5) on page 2808
JC90-01453A	Main exit cam motor assembly	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 2803
JC90-01453A	Main exit cam motor assembly	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 2812
JC90-01454A	Top lower feed assembly	Stapler/Stacker finisher (3 of 4) on page 2805
JC90-01454A	Top lower feed assembly	Booklet finisher (4 of 4) on page 2814
JC90-01455A	Top jam cover assembly	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 2803
JC90-01455A	Top jam cover assembly	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 2812

Table 7-41 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
JC90-01458A	Tray diverter cam	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 2803
JC90-01458A	Tray diverter cam	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 2812
JC90-01461A	Paddle motor assembly	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 2803
JC90-01461A	Paddle motor assembly	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 2812
JC90-01467A	End fence motor assembly	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 2803
JC90-01467A	End fence motor assembly	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 2812
JC90-01478B	Booklet front cover	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
JC90-01480A	Paddle	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 2803
JC90-01480A	Paddle	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 2812
JC90-01675A	Buffer solenoid assembly	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 2803
JC90-01675A	Buffer solenoid assembly	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 2812
JC90-01802A	Ejector unit	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 2806
JC90-01802A	Ejector unit	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 2815
JC90-01869A	Tray 1 unit	Tray 1 on page 2759
JC90-01874A	Exit stack guide	Exit unit (1 of 2) on page 2763
JC90-01876A	Exit unit	Exit unit (1 of 2) on page 2763
JC90-01877A	Right door exit assembly	Registration and Tray 2 unit on page 2762
JC92-02780A	Rear joint PCA	Inner finisher (3 of 5) on page 2795
JC92-02792A	PBA-Shift tray level	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
JC93-00018B	Tray 2 open, paper size sensor assembly	Tray 2, 3 on page 2760
JC93-00445A	TCU drive assembly	Toner Collection Unit on page 2768
JC93-00466A	Front door open switch	Sensor and fan on page 2772
JC93-00492A	Toner collection unit full sensor assembly	Toner Collection Unit on page 2768
JC93-00802A	Exit 2 motor (Optional)	Exit unit (2 of 2) on page 2765
JC93-00802B	Drive sub-motor step	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 2799

Table 7-41 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
JC93-00917A	Duct unit K	Duct assembly on page 2767
JC93-00999A	Drive-motor step	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 2797
JC93-01001A	Drive-motor step	Inner finisher (4 of 5) on page 2797
JC93-01001A	Drive-motor step	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 2799
JC93-01001A	Drive-motor step	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 2799
JC93-01001A	Front tamper motor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 2806
JC93-01001A	Front tamper motor	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 2815
JC93-01001A	Rear tamper motor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (4 of 4) on page 2806
JC93-01001A	Rear tamper motor	Booklet finisher (5 of 5) on page 2815
JC93-01152A	Buffer motor	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 2803
JC93-01152A	Buffer motor	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 2812
JC93-01155A	Booklet end fence motor	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
JC93-01155A	Booklet tamper motor	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
JC93-01163A	Booklet blade	Booklet finisher (2 of 5) on page 2811
JC93-01467A	Switch	Sensor and fan on page 2772
JC93-01676A	Main drive assembly	Tray 1 on page 2759
JC93-01676A	Main drive assembly	Tray 2, 3 on page 2760
JC93-01676A	Main drive assembly	Registration and Tray 2 unit on page 2762
JC93-01676A	Main drive assembly	Imaging unit (drum and developer) on page 2770
JC93-01679A	Fuser and exit drive assembly	Fuser on page 2771
JC93-01679A	Fuser, exit drive assembly	Exit unit (1 of 2) on page 2763
JC93-01681A	Toner dispense motor assembly	Toner on page 2766
JC93-01686A	Exit motor	Exit unit (1 of 2) on page 2763
JC93-01686A	Toner duct motor	Duct assembly on page 2767
JC93-01687A	Duplex motor	Exit unit (1 of 2) on page 2763
JC93-01728A	Tray 2 pickup assembly	Tray 2, 3 on page 2760

Table 7-41 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
JC93-01729A	Tray 3 pickup assembly	Tray 2, 3 on page 2760
JC93-01742A	Keyboard Assy-US English	PCA on page 2773
JC93-01743A	Keyboard Assy-UK English	PCA on page 2773
JC93-01786A	LVPS FDB fan assembly	Sensor and fan on page 2772
JC93-01801A	HCI feed motor drive assembly	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
JC95-02260A	Right door assembly	Tray 1 on page 2759
SS456-61001	Ejector	Inner finisher (5 of 5) on page 2799
T3U64-60001	Echo PCA	PCA on page 2773
W9064-67004	SVC-HP LJ Blk Mngd Toner Crtg Std Yield	Toner on page 2766
W9065-67007	SVC-HP LJ Blk Mngd Toner Crtg High Yield	Toner on page 2766
W9066-67001	SVC_HP LaserJet Black Managed Imaging Drum	Imaging unit (drum and developer) on page 2770
Y1G10-67901	Punch unit 2-3 hole	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 2803
Y1G10-67901	Punch unit 2-3 hole	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 2812
Y1G11-67901	Punch unit 2-4 hole	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 2803
Y1G11-67901	Punch unit 2-4 hole	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 2812
Y1G12-67901	Punch unit Swedish hole	Stapler/Stacker finisher (2 of 4) on page 2803
Y1G12-67901	Punch unit Swedish hole	Booklet finisher (3 of 5) on page 2812
Y1G22-67901	Tray heater 110V	Tray 2, 3 on page 2760
Y1G22-67901	Tray heater 110V (not shown)	DCF (2 of 2) on page 2786
Y1G22-67901	Tray heater 110V (not shown)	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
Y1G22-67902	Tray heater 220V	Tray 2, 3 on page 2760
Y1G22-67902	Tray heater 220V (not shown)	DCF (2 of 2) on page 2786
Y1G22-67902	Tray heater 220V (not shown)	HCI (2 of 2) on page 2790
Y1G23-67901	Second exit (Optional)	Exit unit (2 of 2) on page 2765
Y6V12-60035	Tarot platen PCA	Tarot platen on page 2781
Z9Y05-60047	ADF image sensor	200sh ADF (2 of 2) on page 2778

8 Electrical mechanical relationships (EMR) diagrams

Learn more about electrical mechanical relationships diagrams.

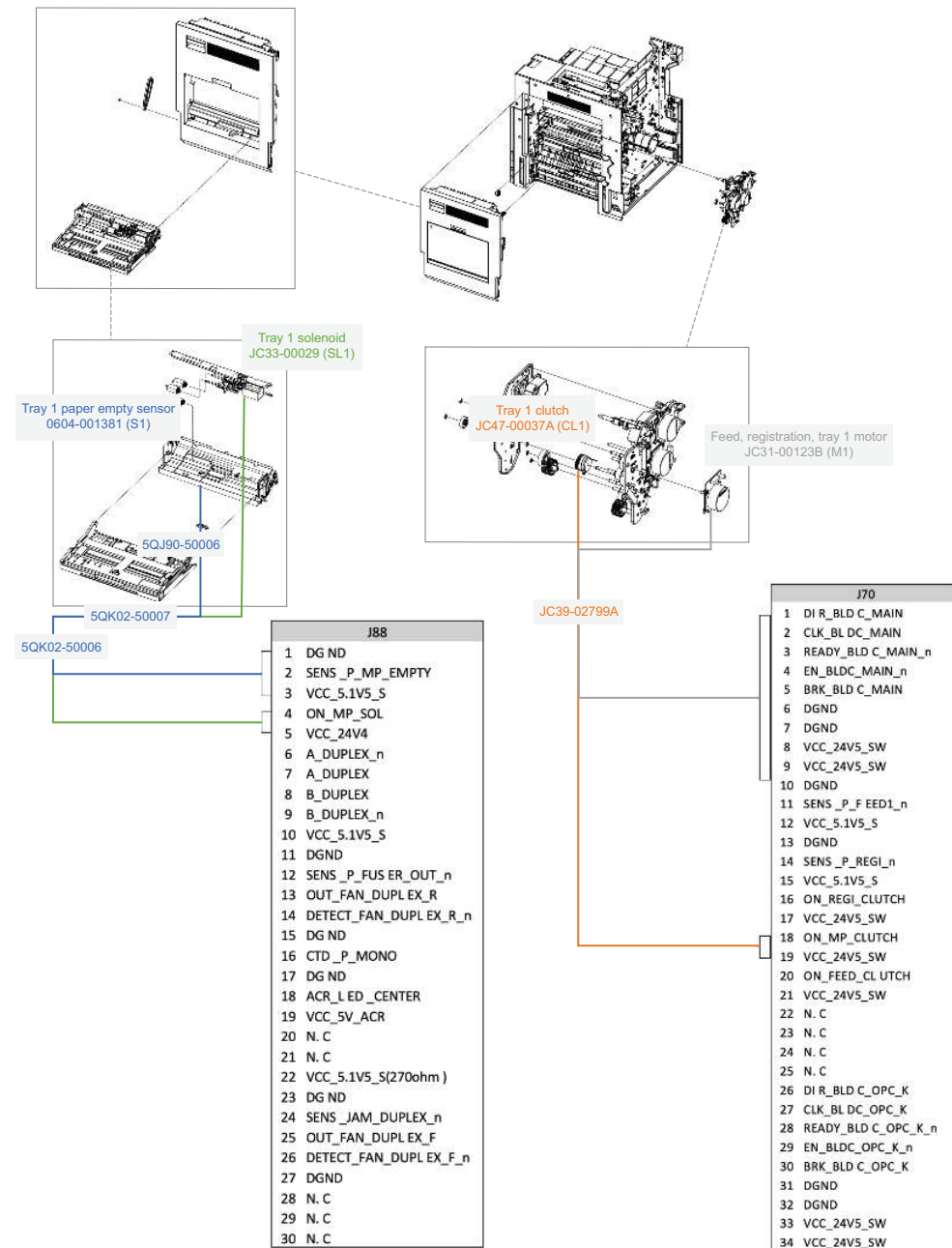
Base printer

Learn about base printer electrical mechanical relationships.

EMR diagrams: Tray 1

Learn about the Tray 1 electrical mechanical relationships.

Figure 8-1 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram Tray 1



EMR diagrams: Tray 2/3

Learn about the Tray 2/3 electrical mechanical relationships.

Figure 8-2 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram Tray 2/3 (1 of 2)

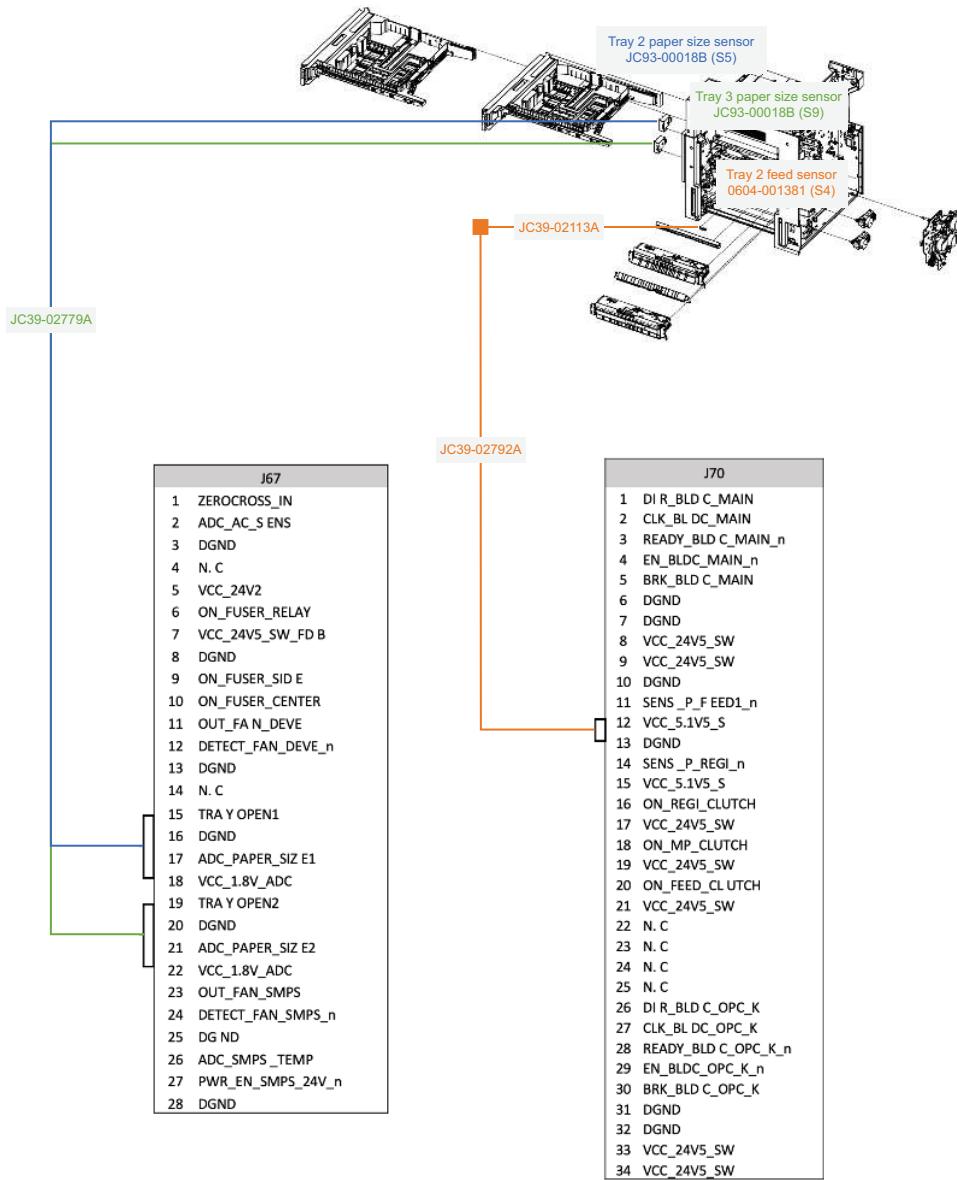
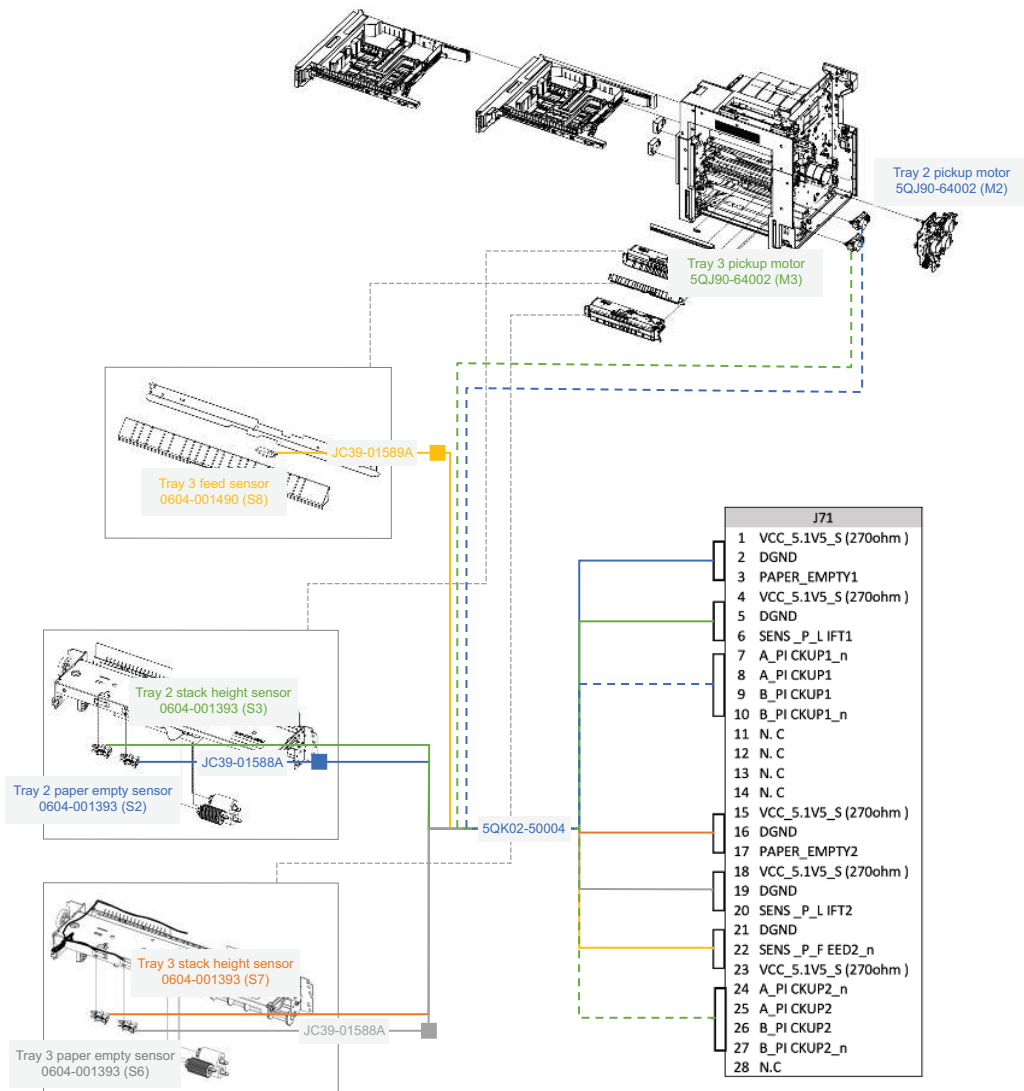


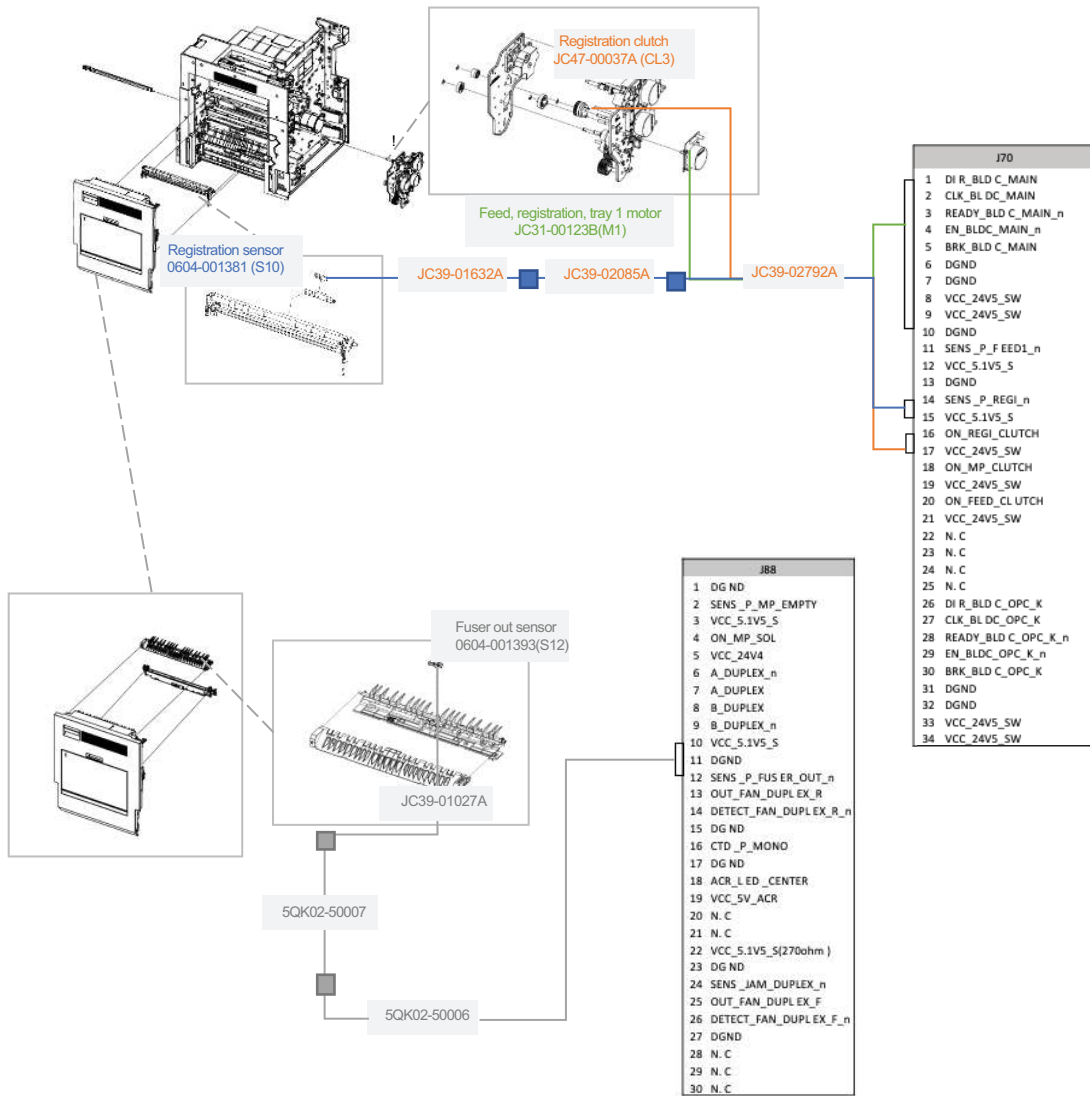
Figure 8-3 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram Tray 2/3 (2 of 2)



EMR diagrams: Registration and T2 Unit

Learn about the registration and T2 unit electrical mechanical relationships.

Figure 8-4 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram registration and T2 unit



EMR diagrams: Exit unit

Learn about the exit unit electrical mechanical relationships.

Figure 8-5 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram exit unit (1 of 2)

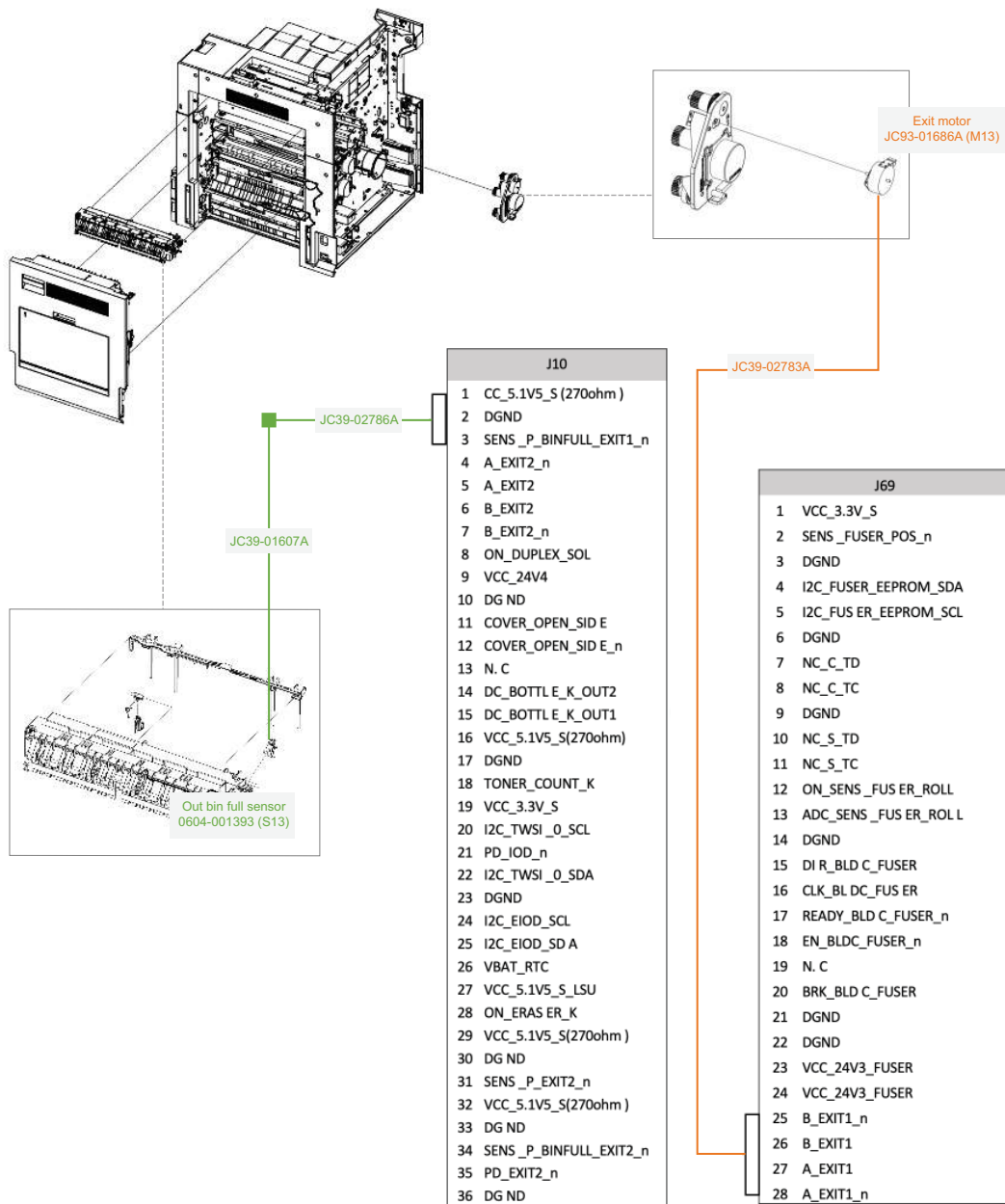
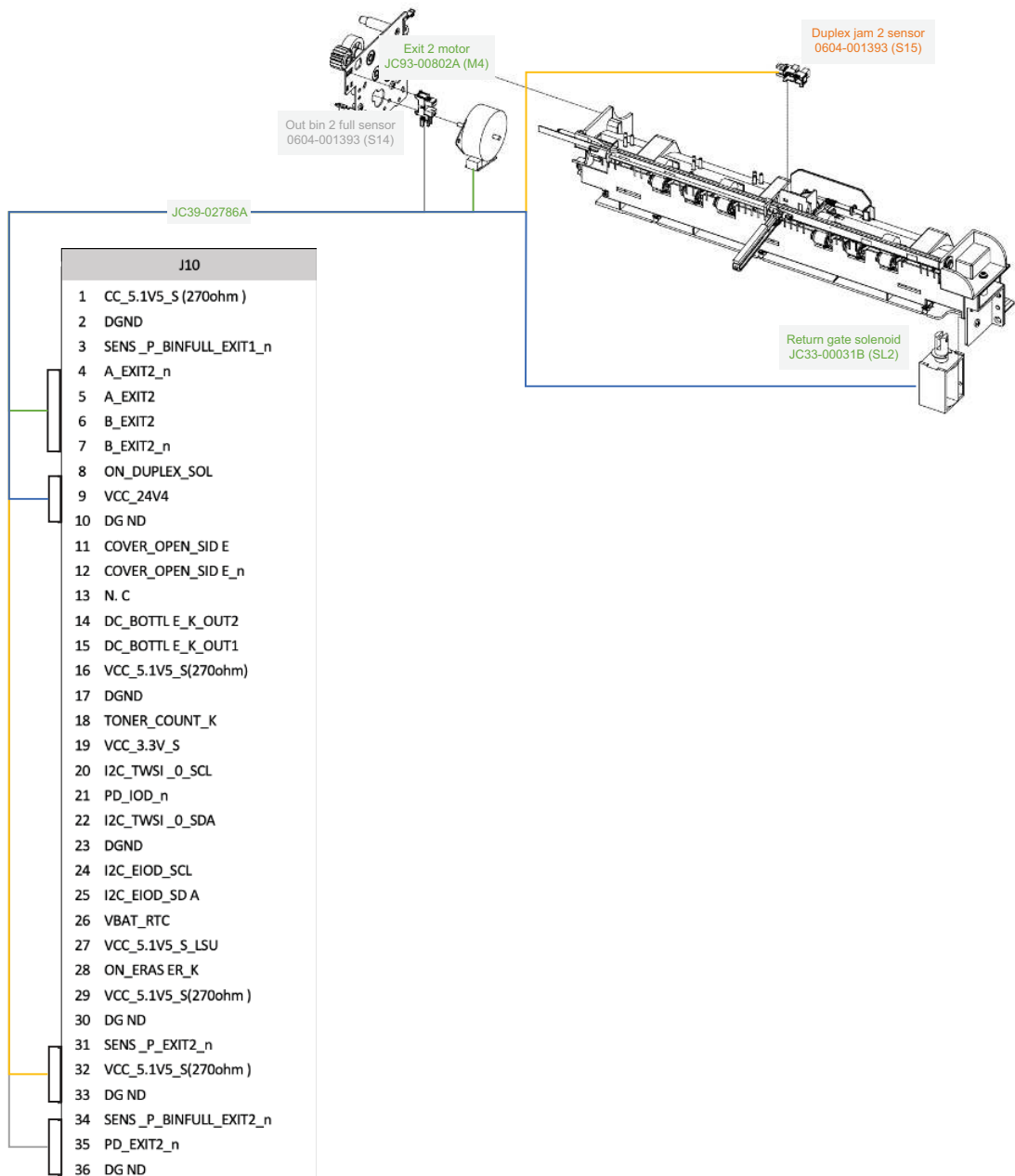


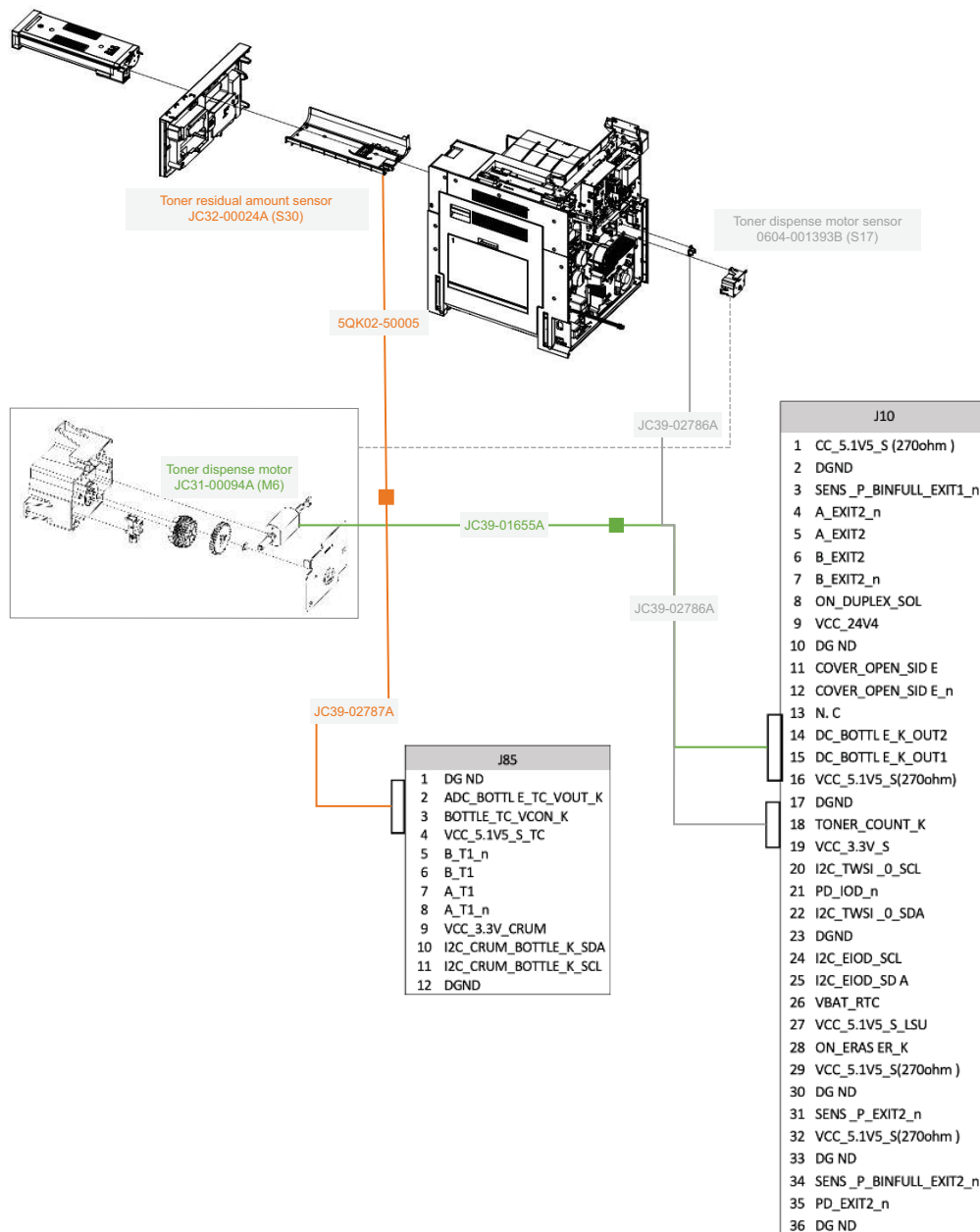
Figure 8-6 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram exit unit (2 of 2)



EMR diagrams: Toner cartridge

Learn about the toner cartridge electrical mechanical relationships.

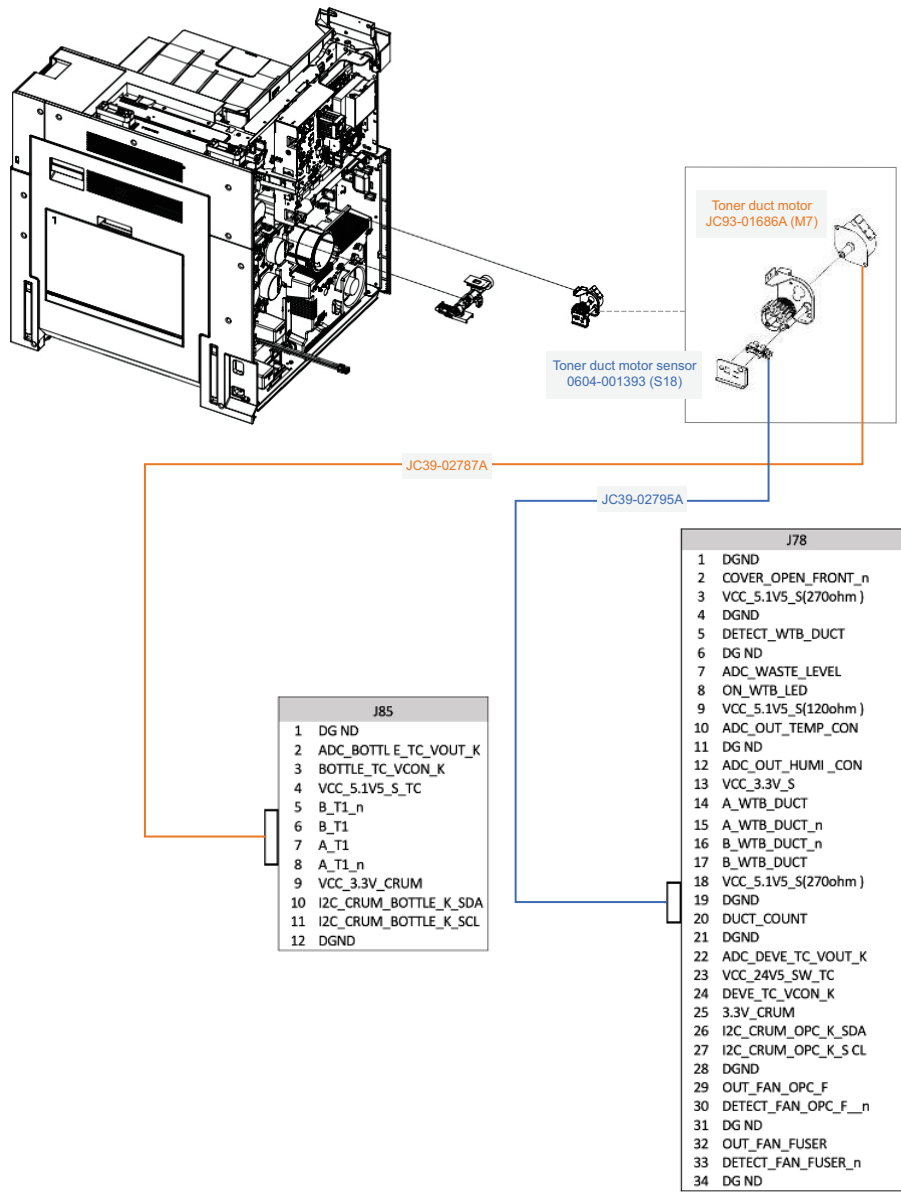
Figure 8-7 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram toner cartridge



EMR diagrams: Toner Duct

Learn about the toner duct electrical mechanical relationships.

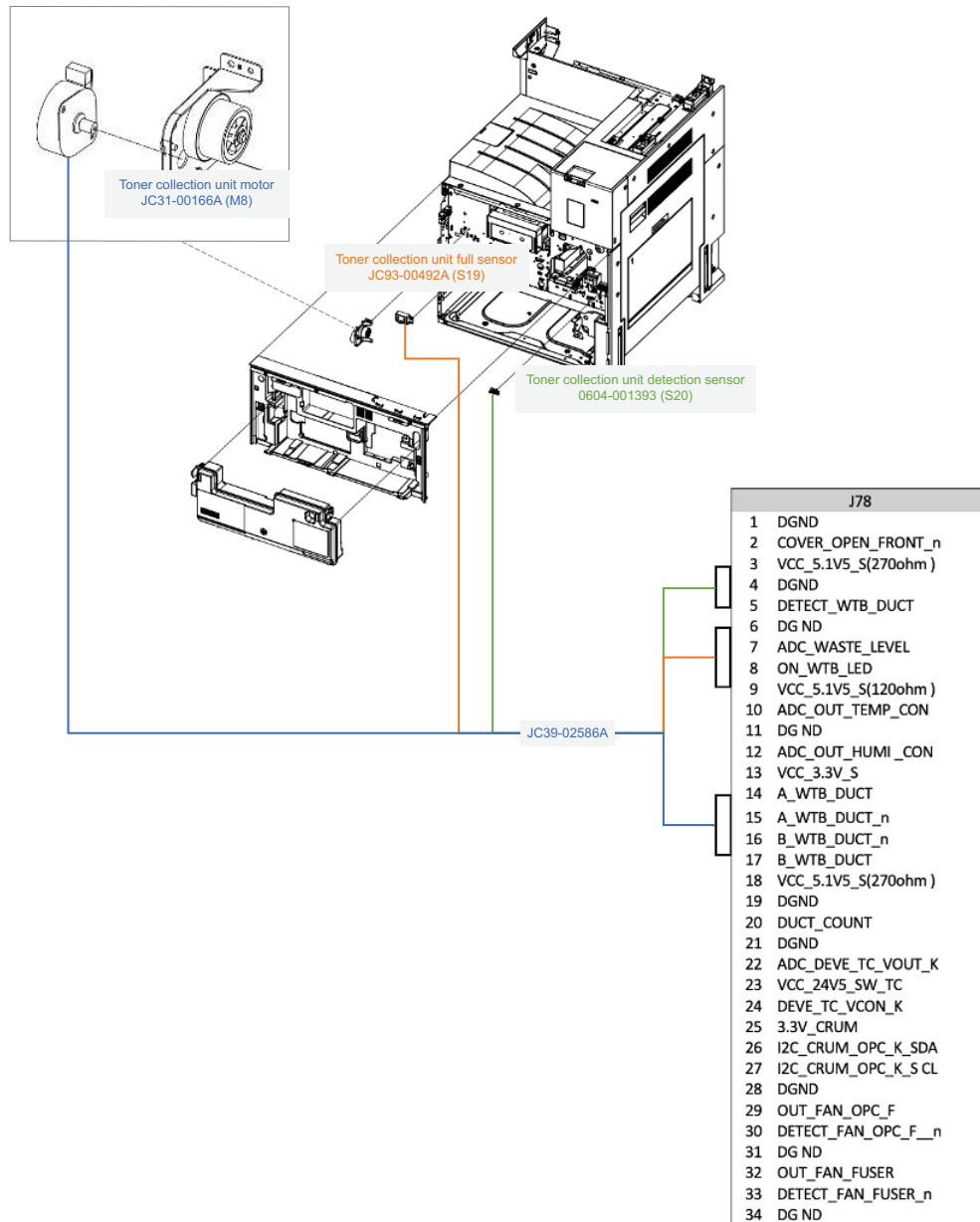
Figure 8-8 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram toner duct



EMR diagrams: Toner collection unit

Learn about the toner collection unit electrical mechanical relationships.

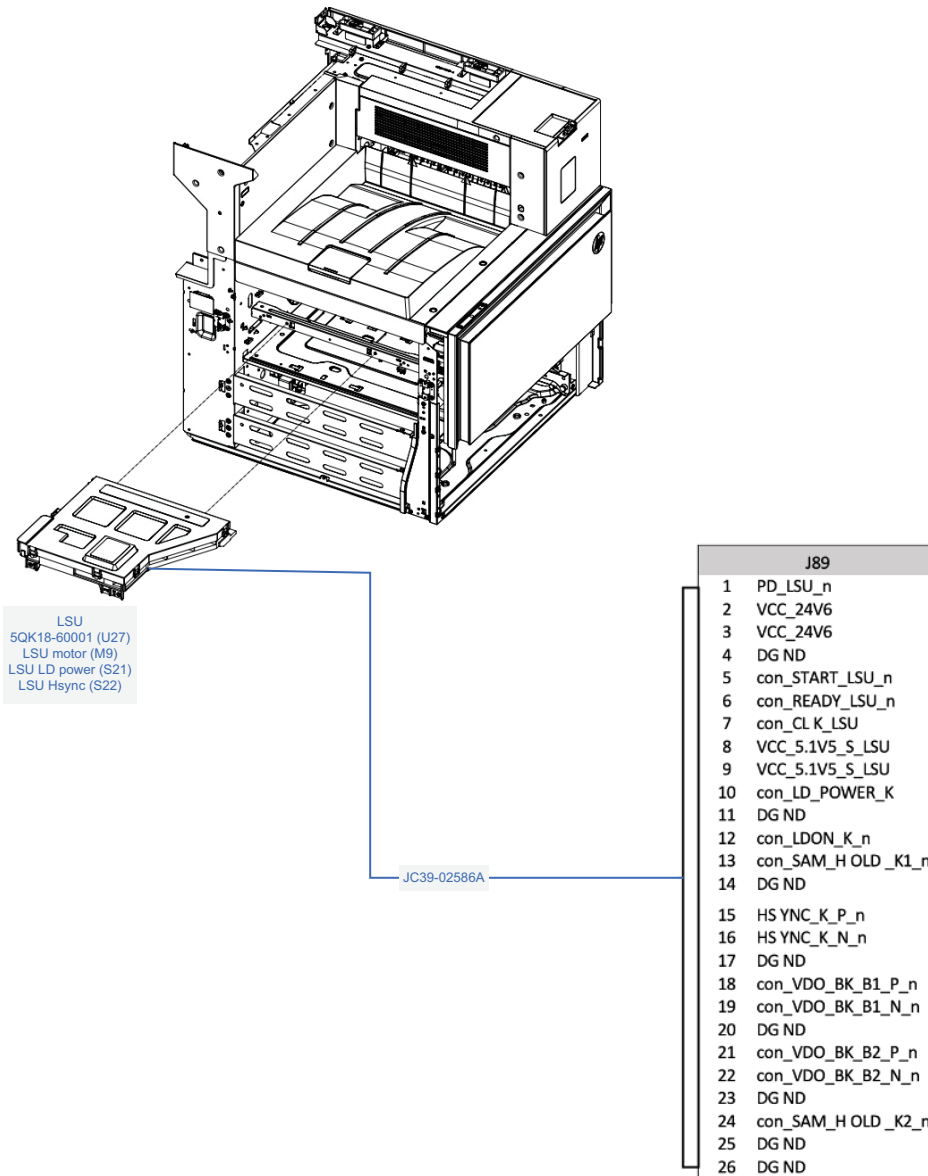
Figure 8-9 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram toner collection unit



EMR diagrams: LSU

Learn about the lsu electrical mechanical relationships.

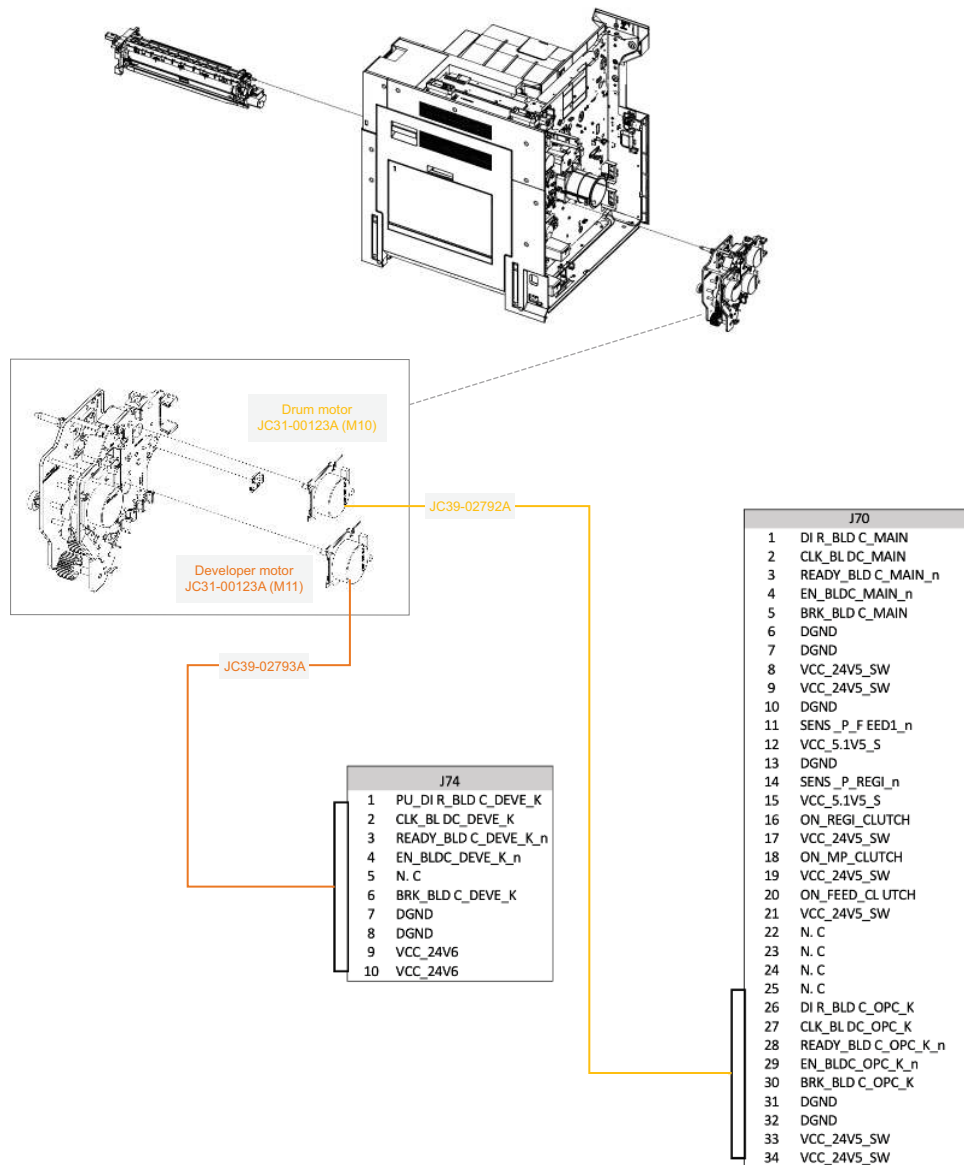
Figure 8-10 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram LSU



EMR diagrams: Drum and Developer

Learn about the drum and developer electrical mechanical relationships.

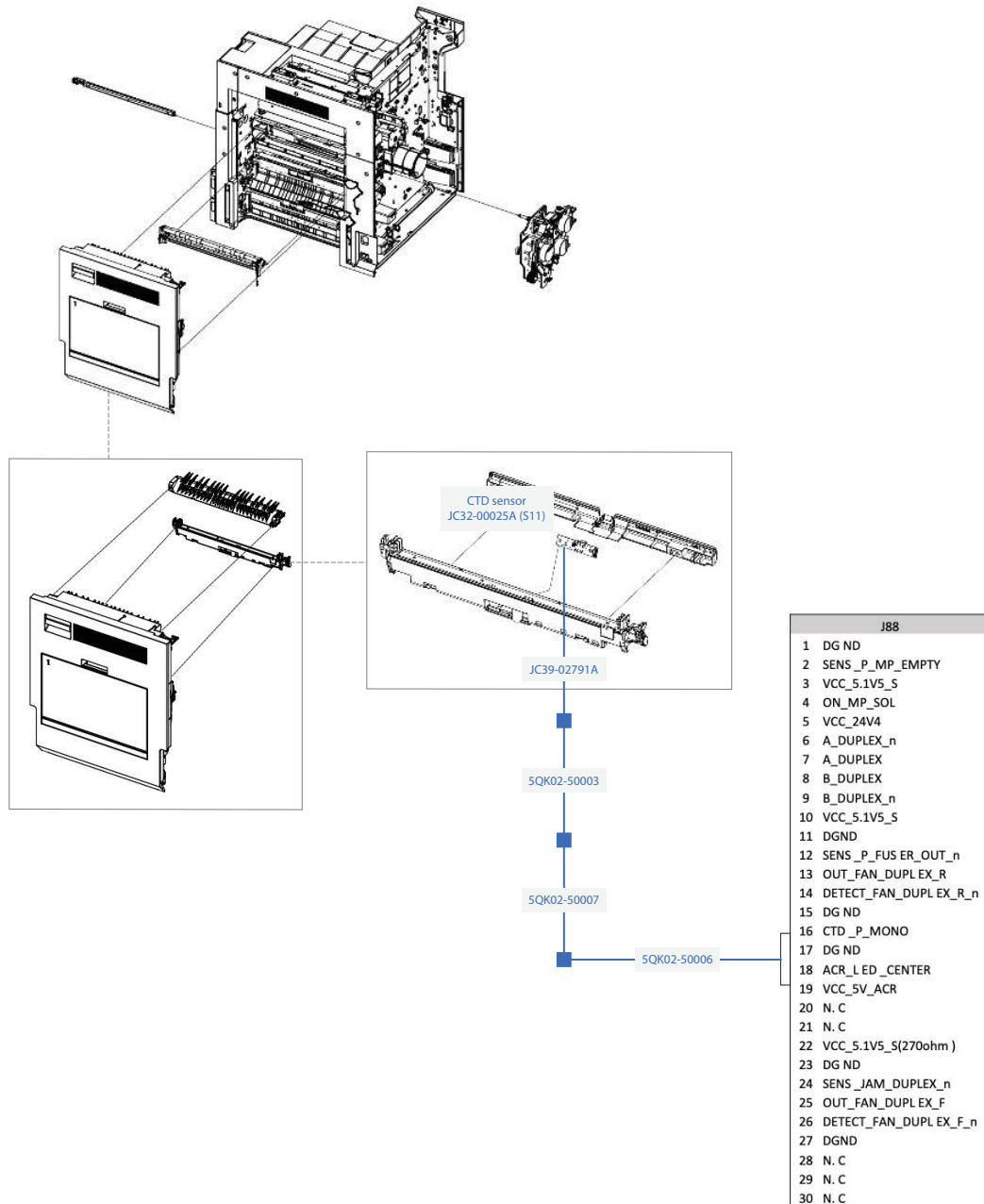
Figure 8-11 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram drum and developer



EMR diagrams: CTD

Learn about the CTD electrical mechanical relationships.

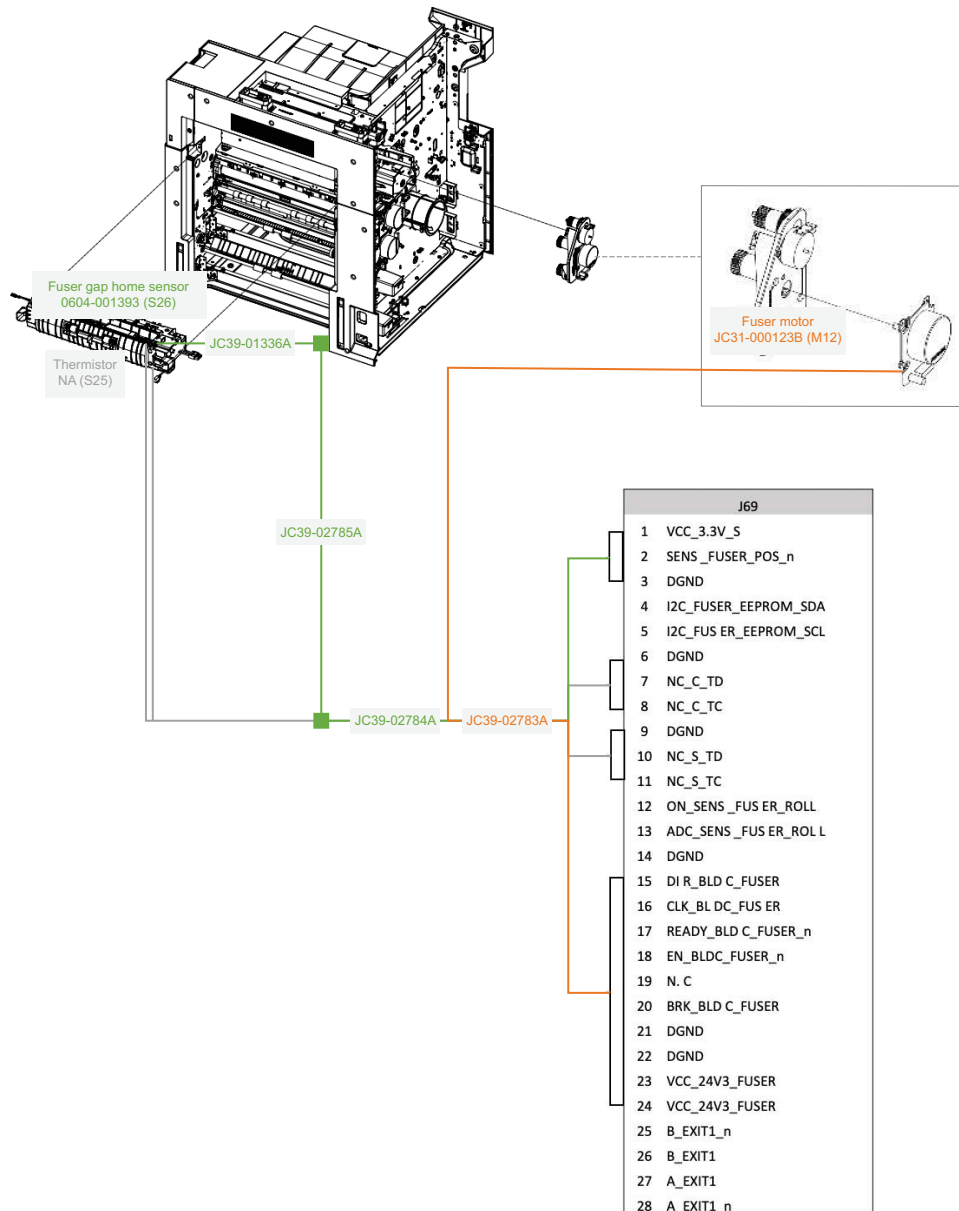
Figure 8-12 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram CTD



EMR diagrams: Fuser

Learn about the fuser electrical mechanical relationships.

Figure 8-13 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram fuser



EMR diagrams: Sensor and fan

Learn about the sensor and fan electrical mechanical relationships.

Figure 8-14 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram sensor and fan (1 of 2)

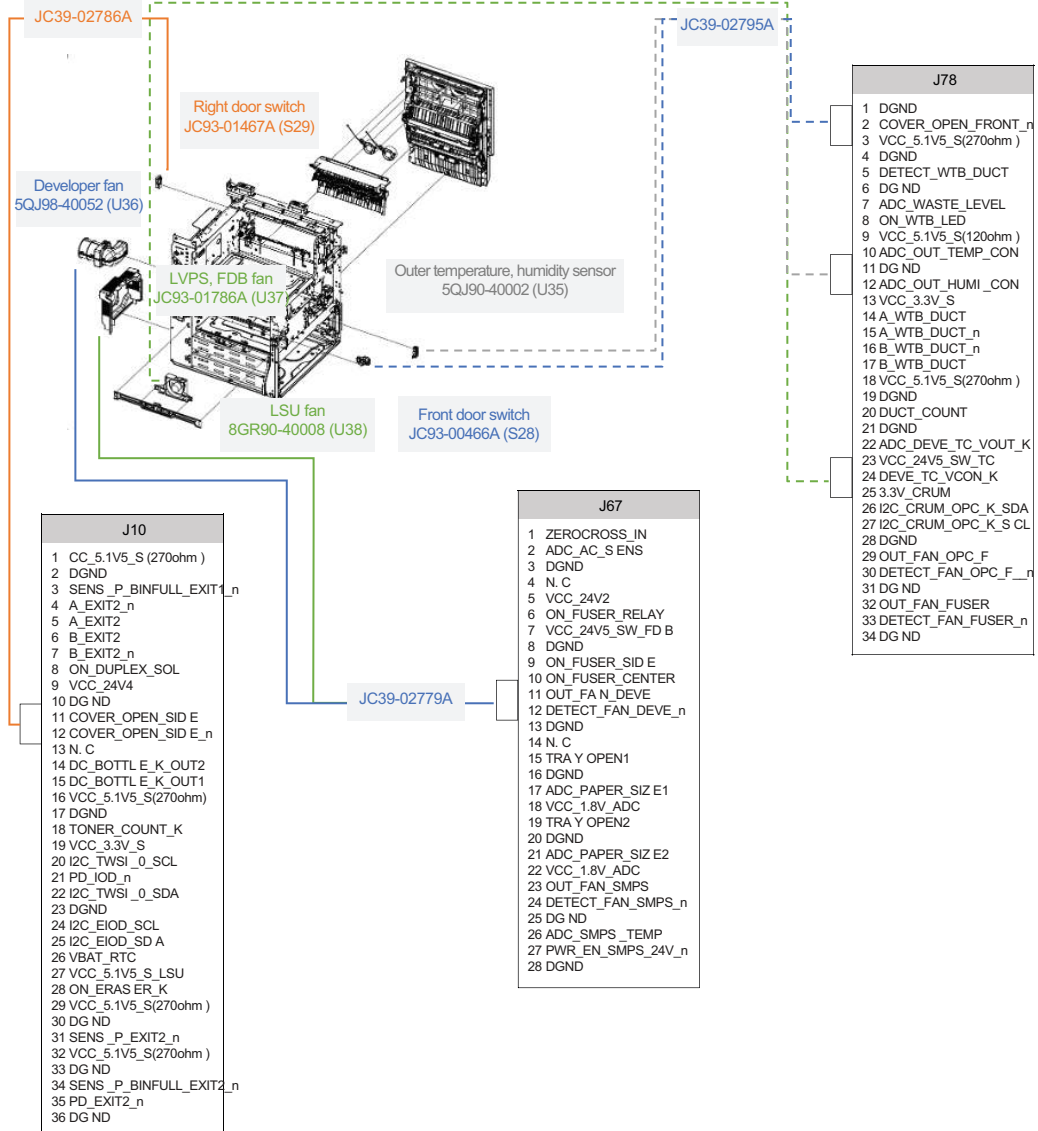
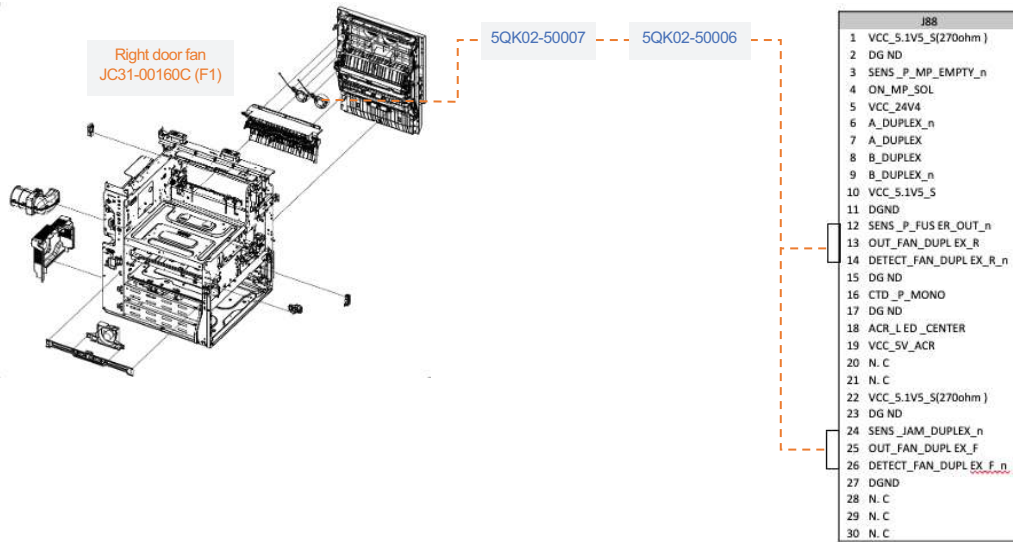


Figure 8-15 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram sensor and fan (2 of 2)



EMR diagrams: PCA

Learn about the PCA electrical mechanical relationships.

Figure 8-16 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram PCA (1 of 8)

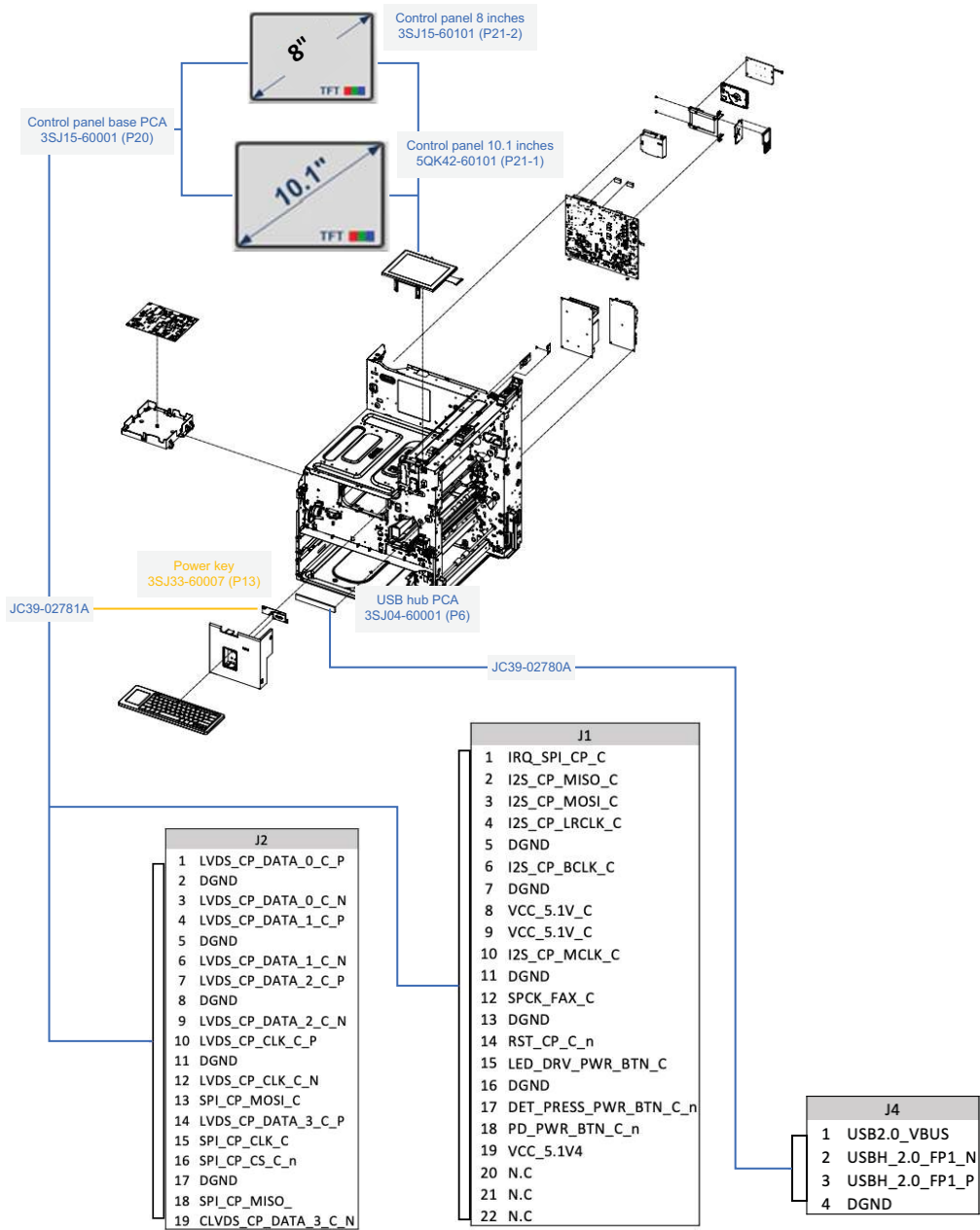


Figure 8-17 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram PCA (2 of 8)

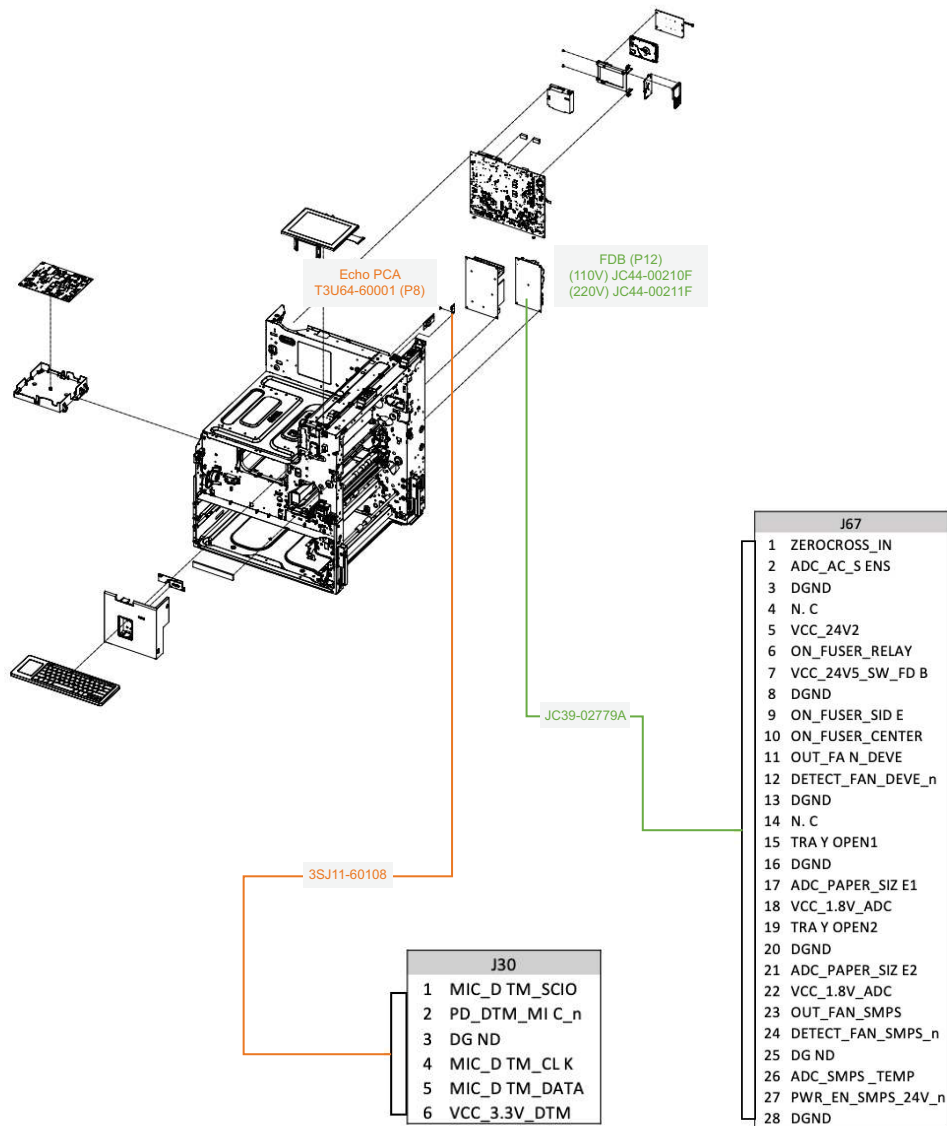


Figure 8-18 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram PCA (3 of 8)

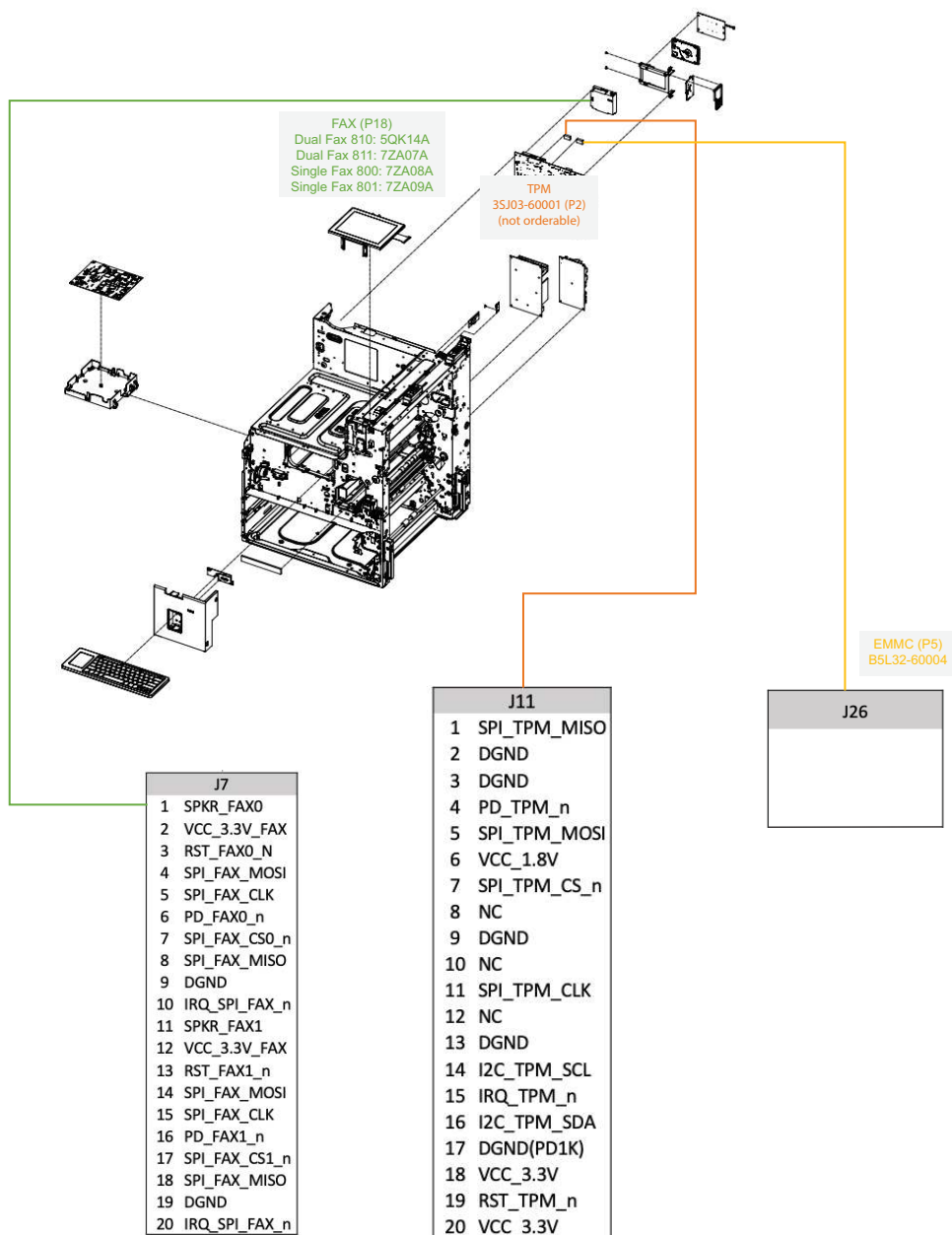


Figure 8-19 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram PCA (4 of 8)

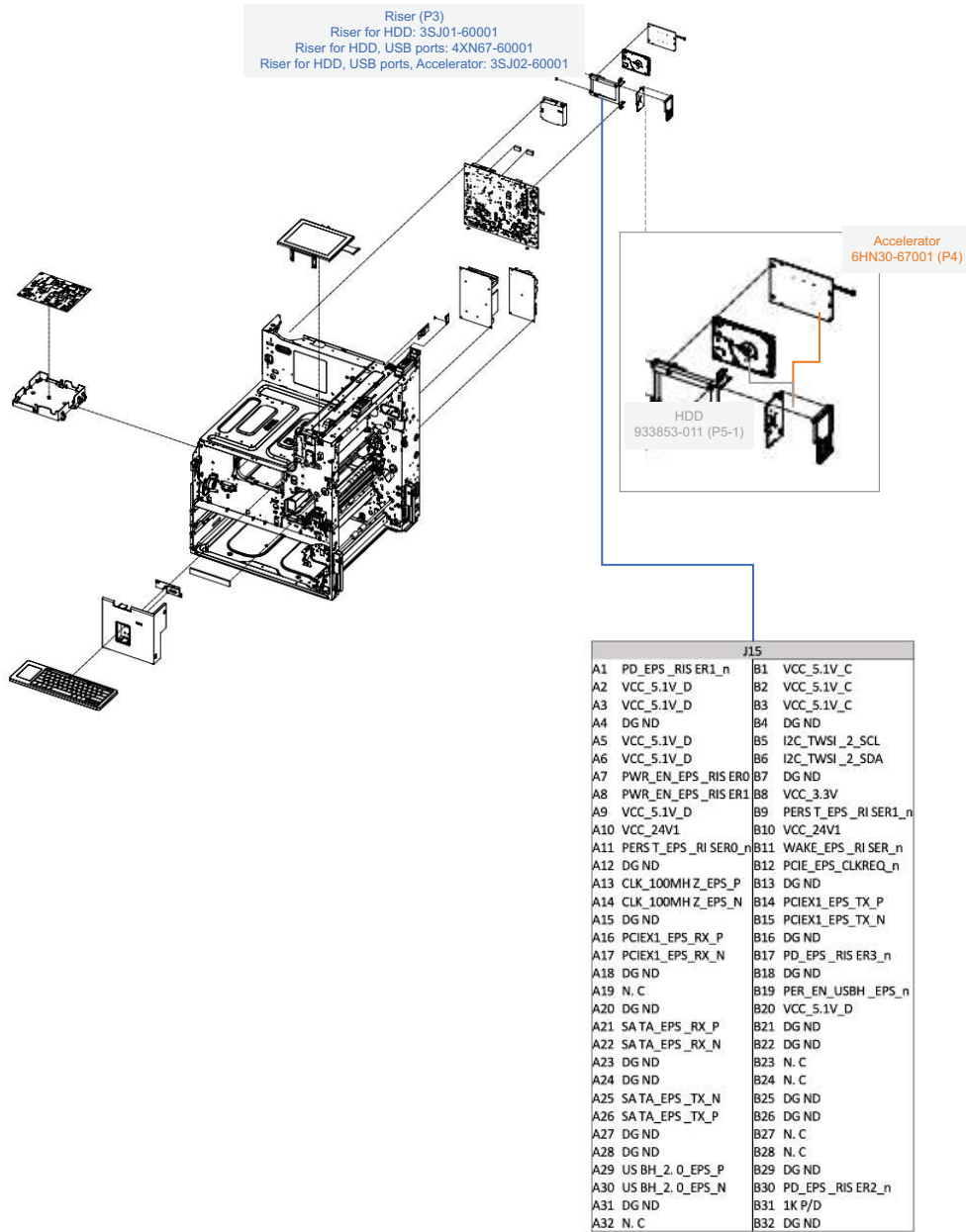


Figure 8-20 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram PCA (5 of 8)

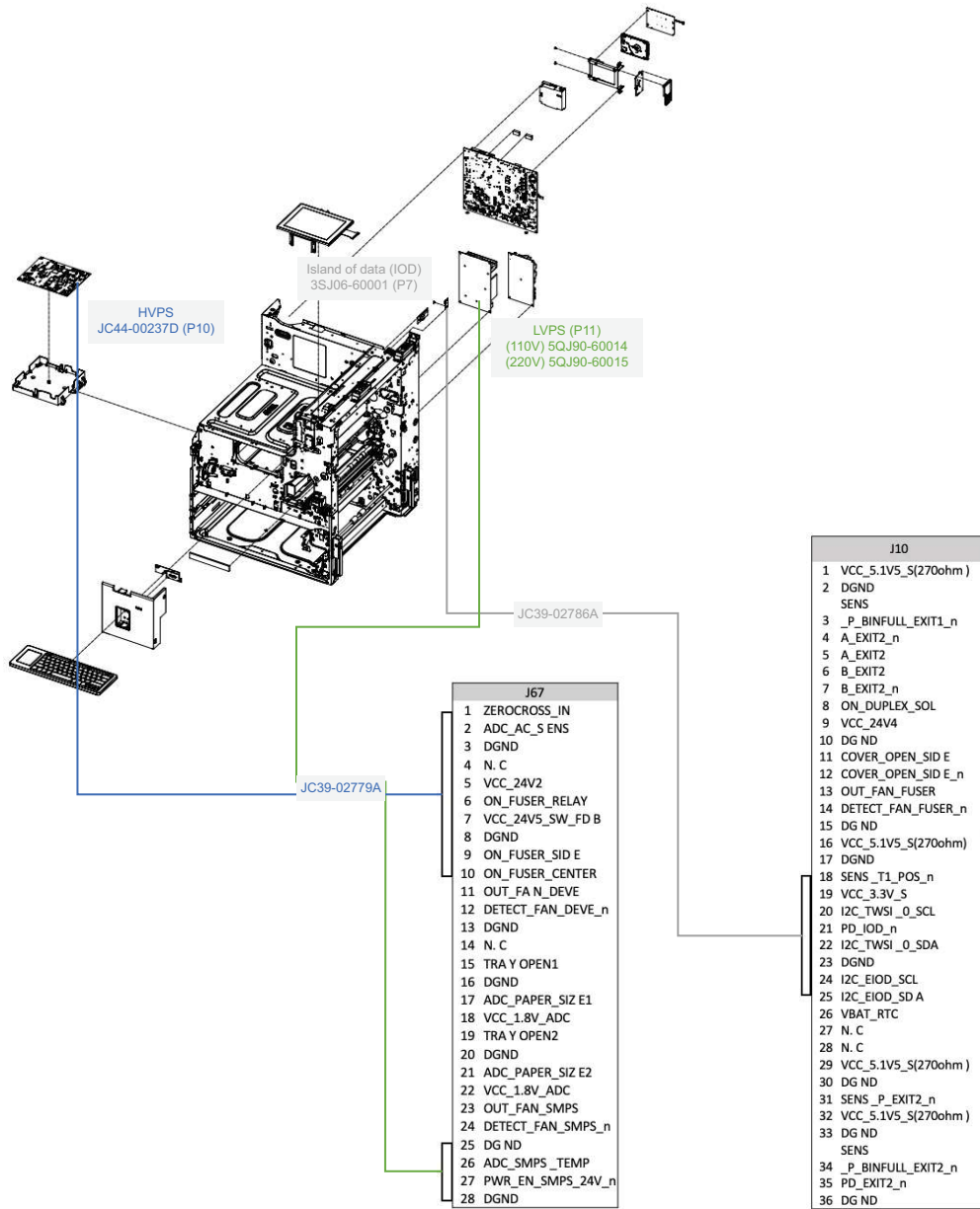


Figure 8-21 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram PCA (6 of 8)

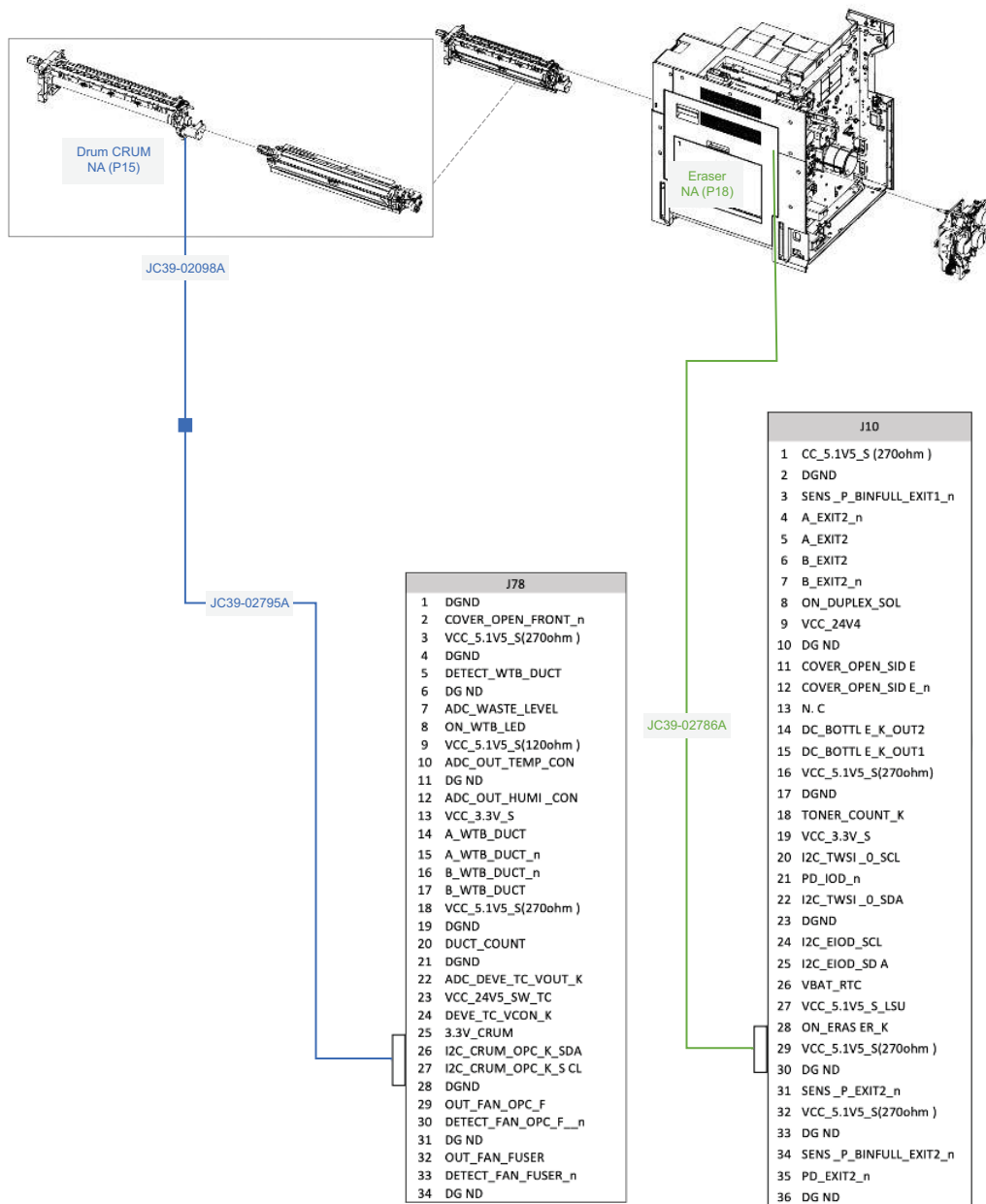


Figure 8-22 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram PCA (7 of 8)

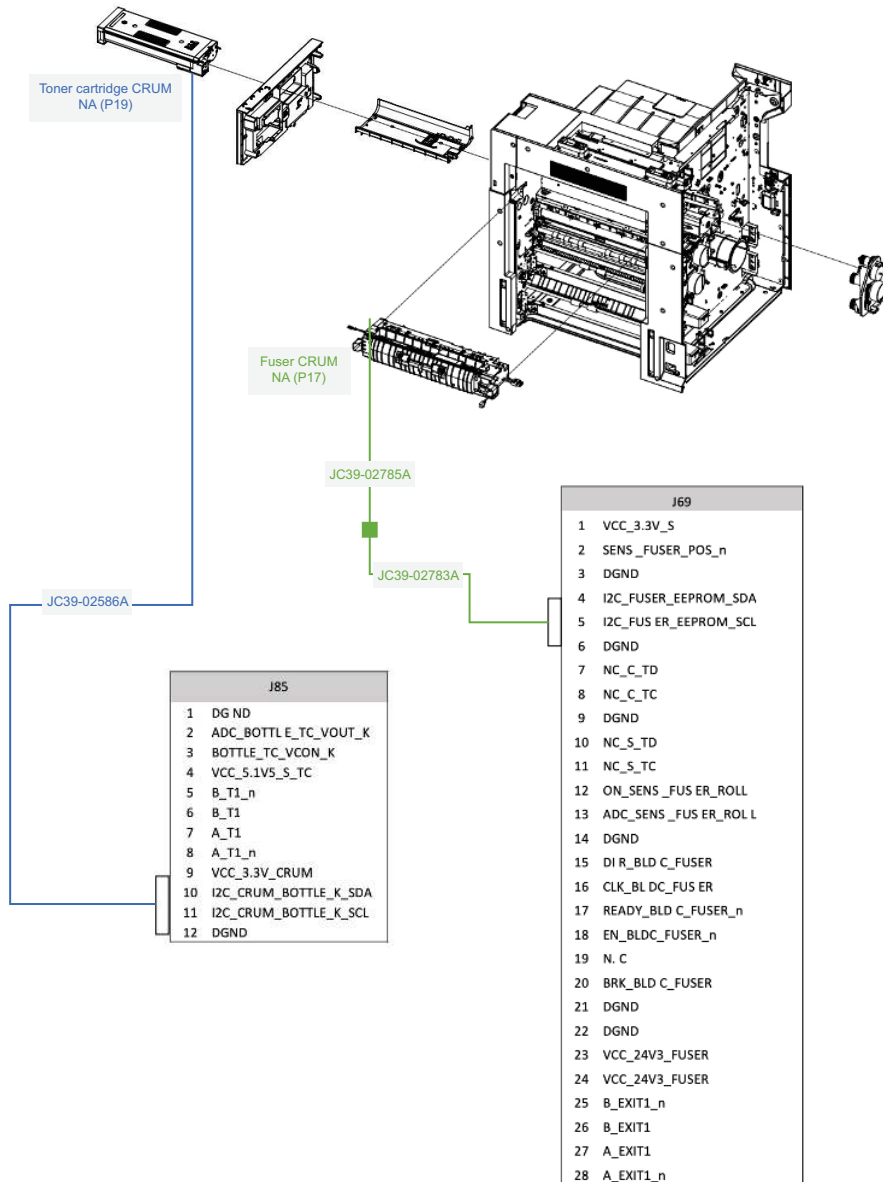
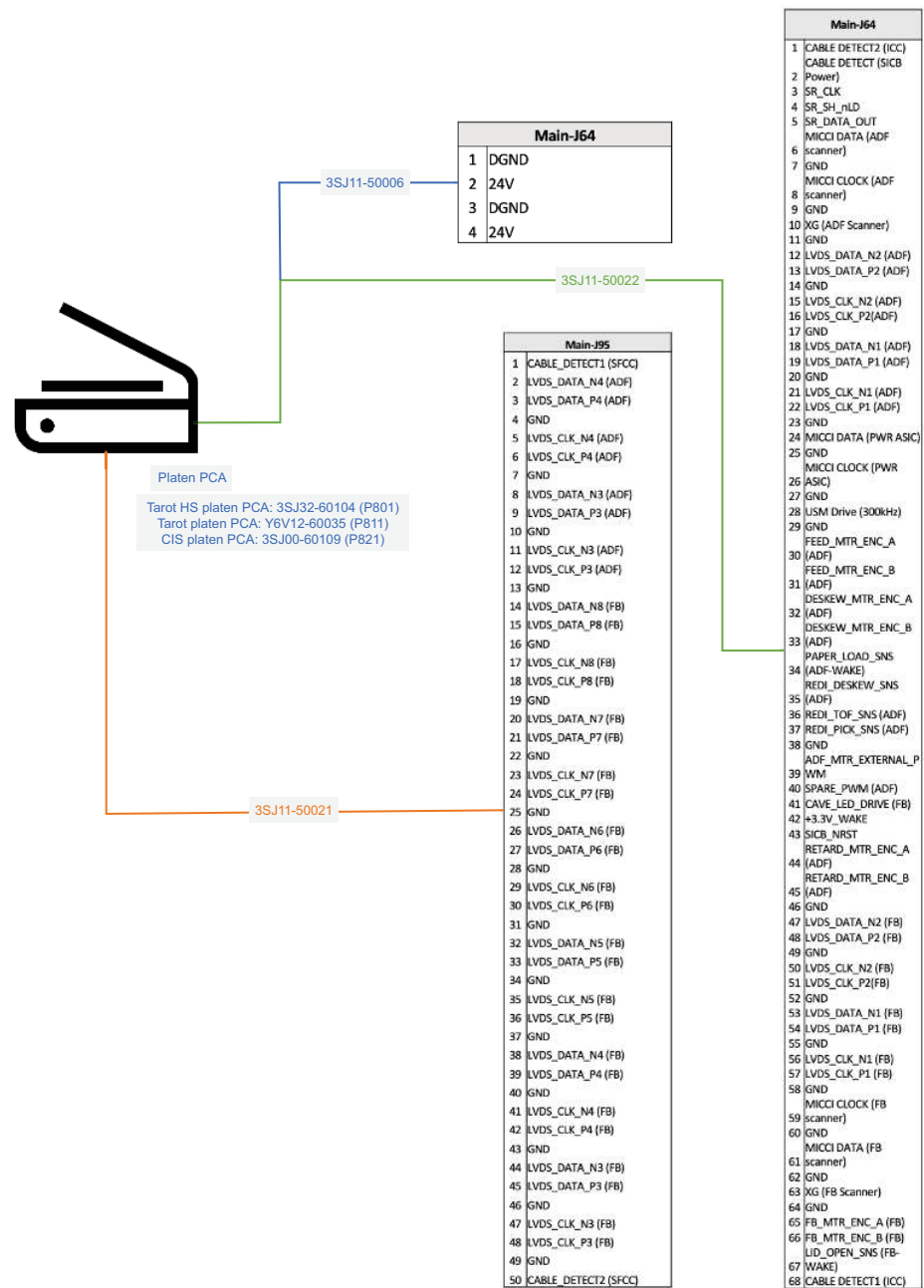


Figure 8-23 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram PCA (8 of 8)



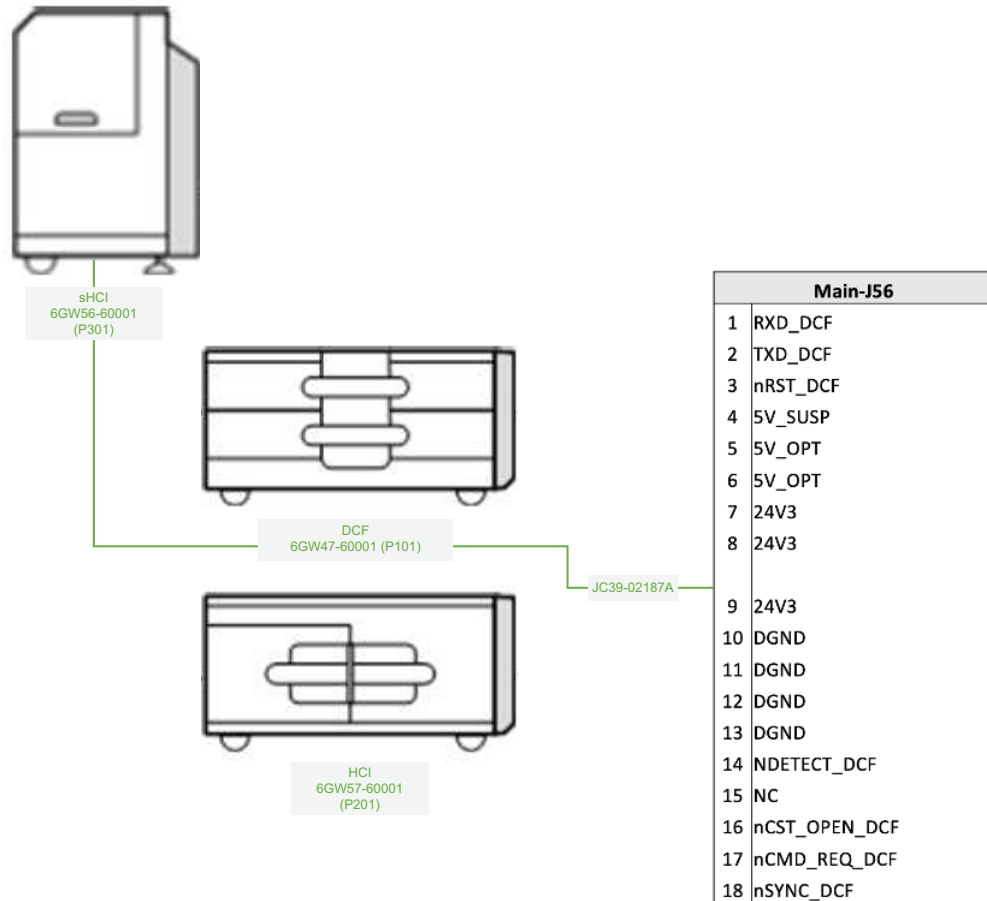
Input devices

Learn about input devices for electrical mechanical relationships.

EMR diagrams: Input devices

Learn about the input devices electrical mechanical relationships.

Figure 8-24 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram input devices



Output devices

Learn about output devices for electrical mechanical relationships.

EMR diagrams: Inner finisher

Learn about the inner finisher electrical mechanical relationships.

Figure 8-25 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram inner finisher (1 of 10)

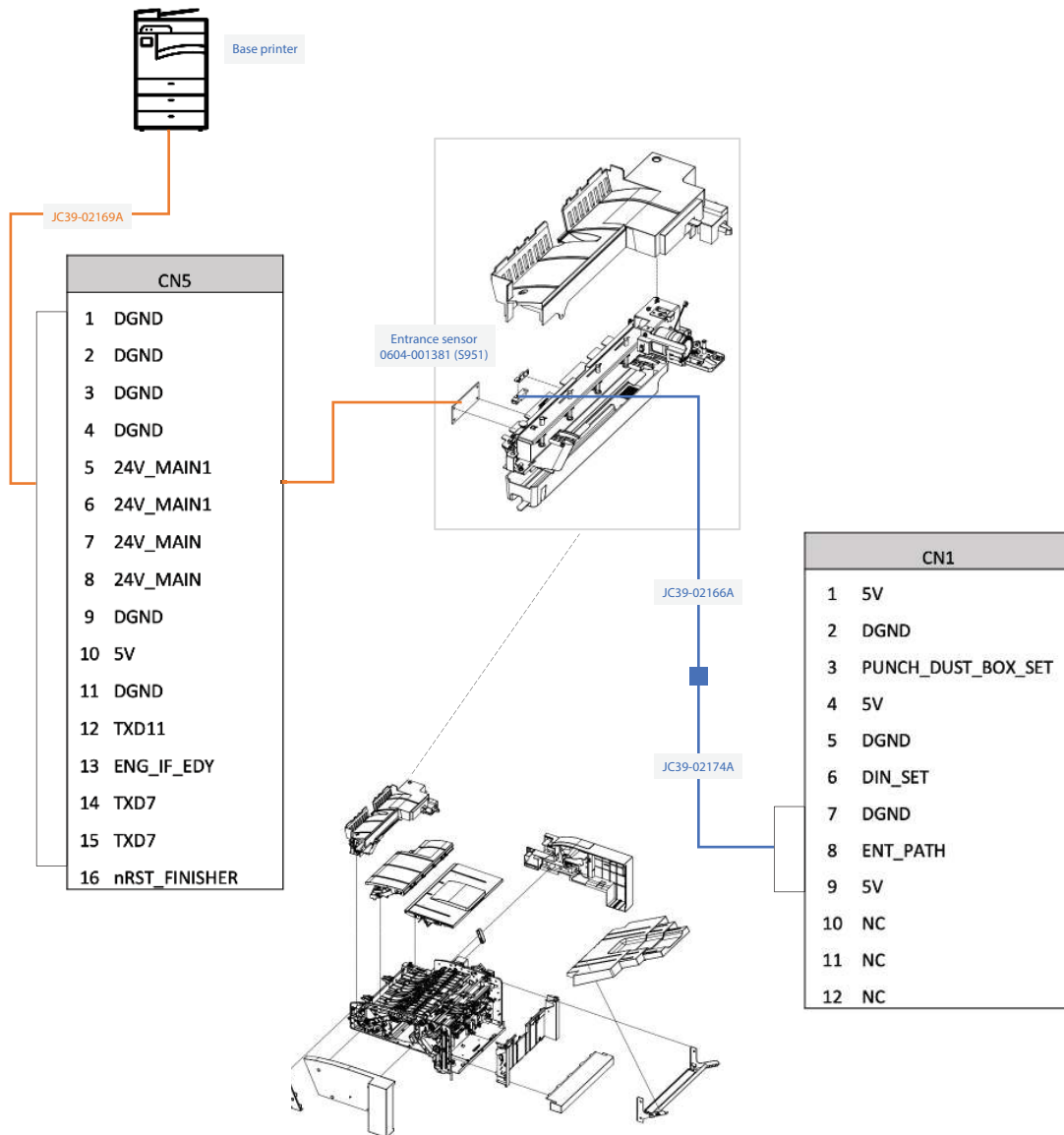


Figure 8-26 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram inner finisher (2 of 10)

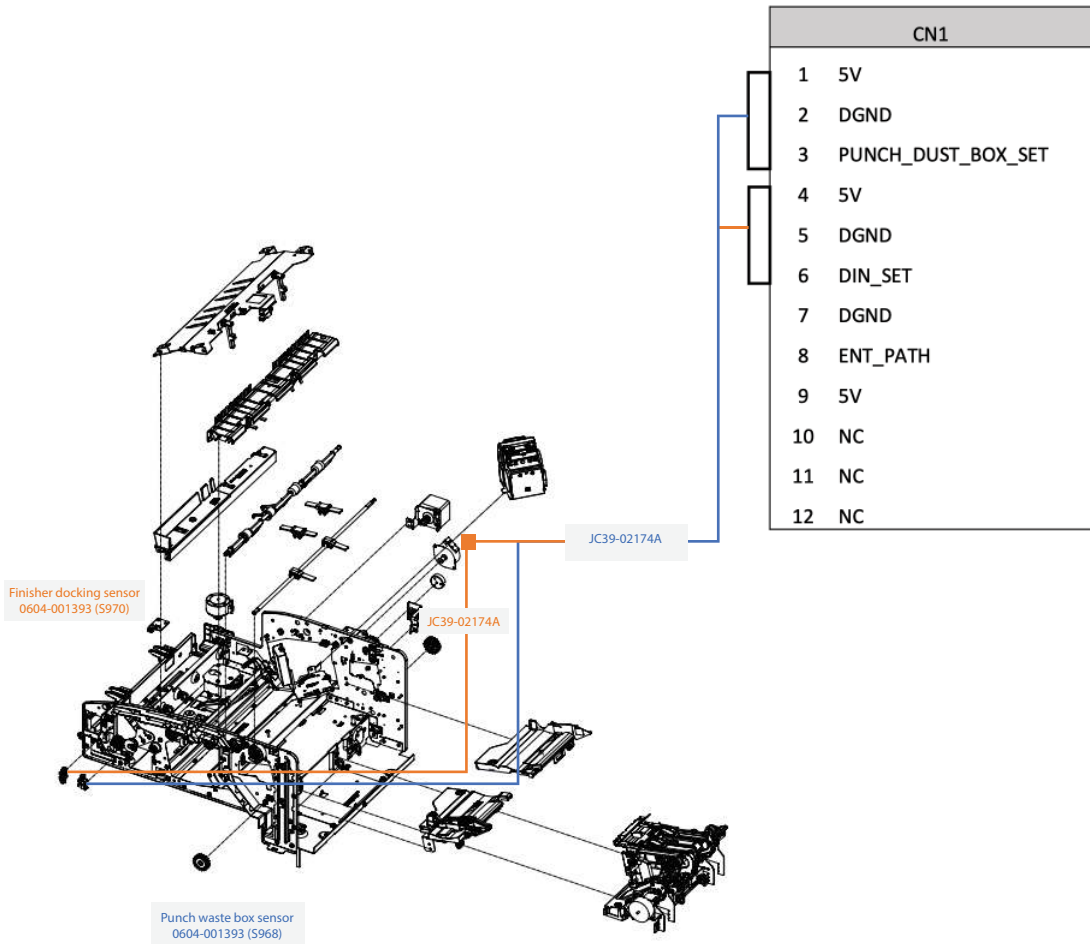


Figure 8-27 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram inner finisher (3 of 10)

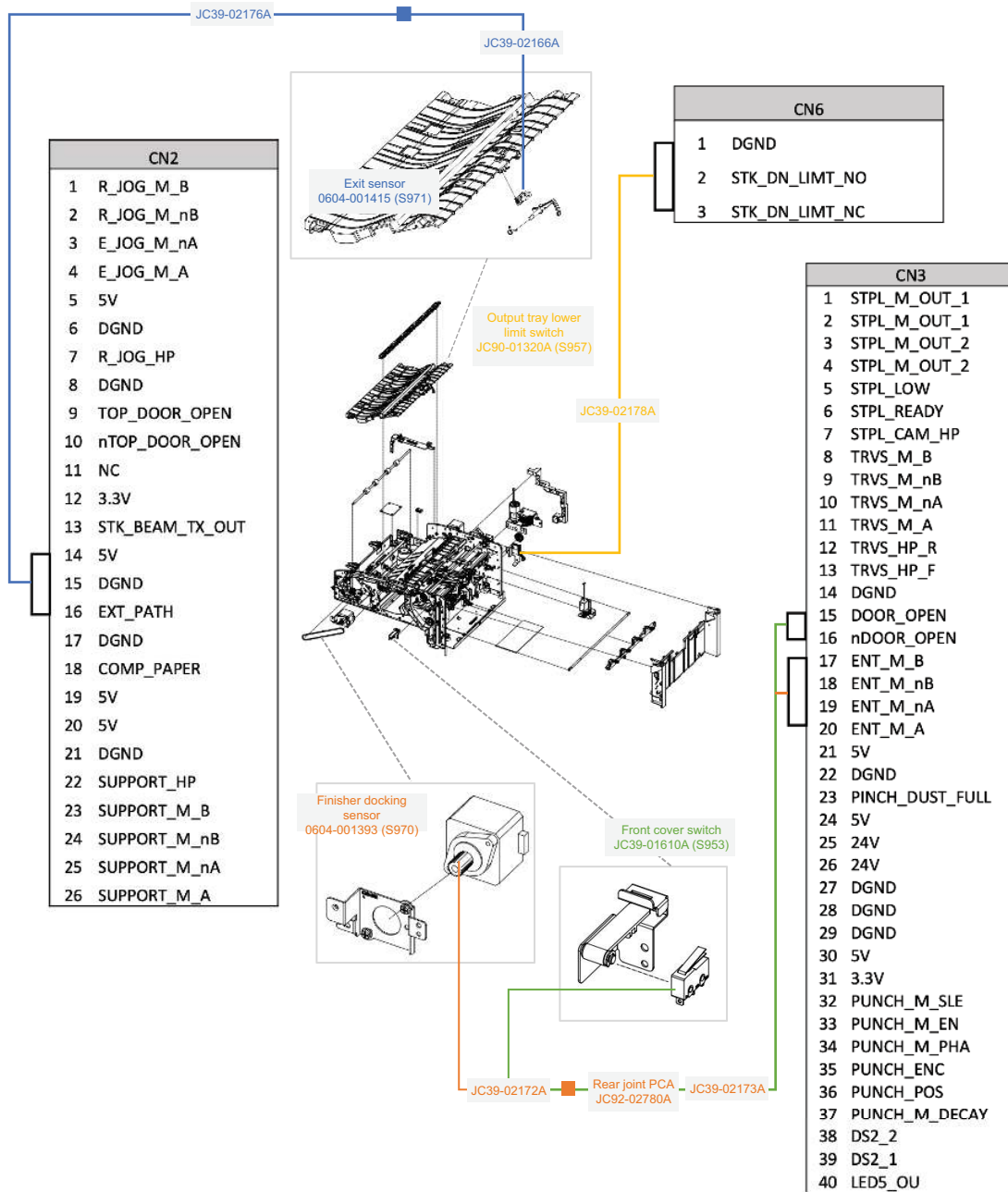


Figure 8-28 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram inner finisher (4 of 10)

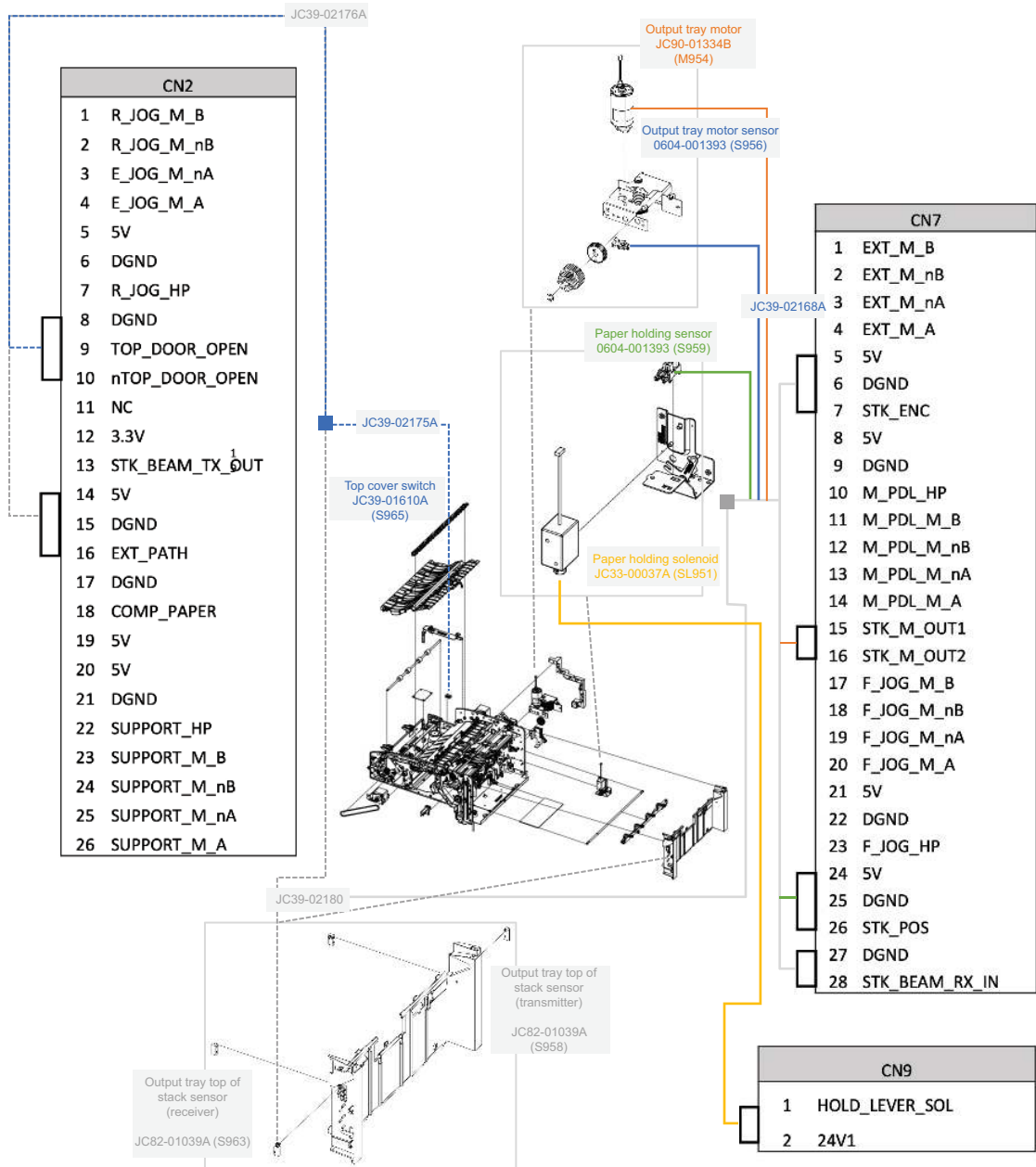


Figure 8-29 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram inner finisher (5 of 10)

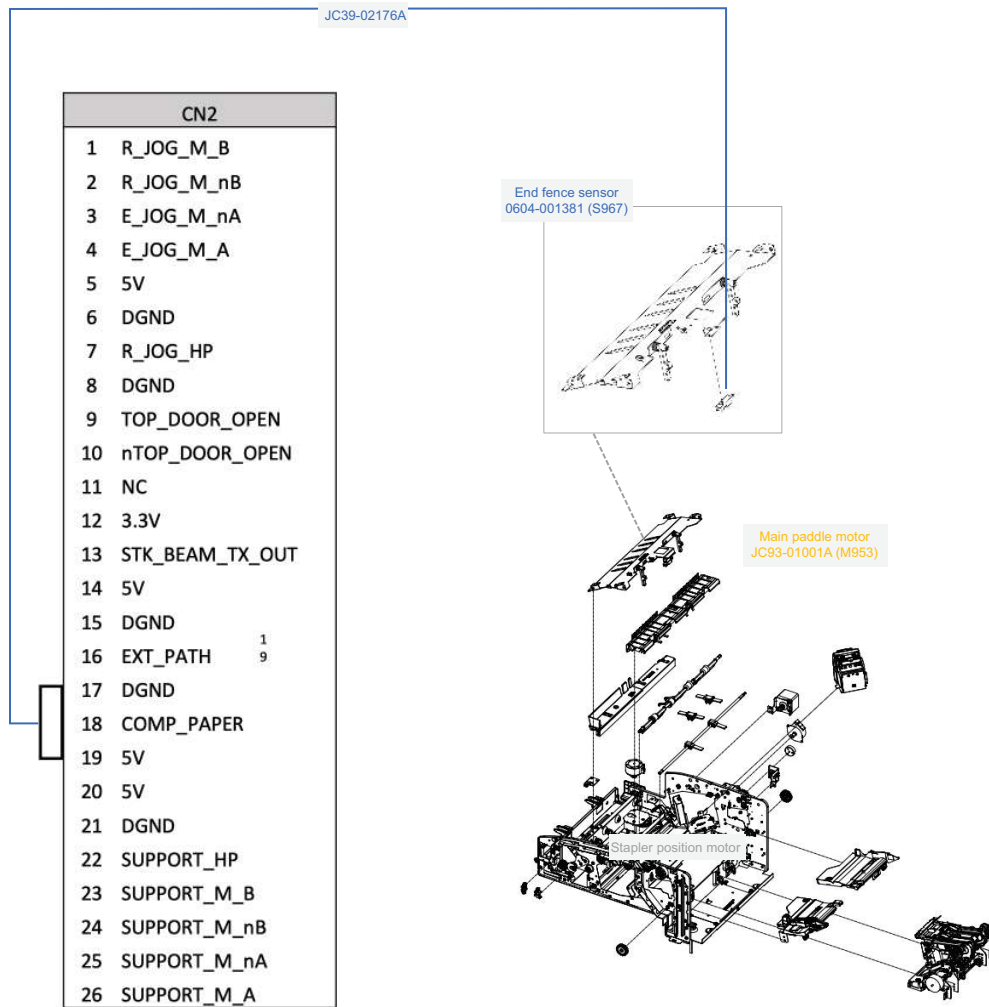


Figure 8-30 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram inner finisher (6 of 10)

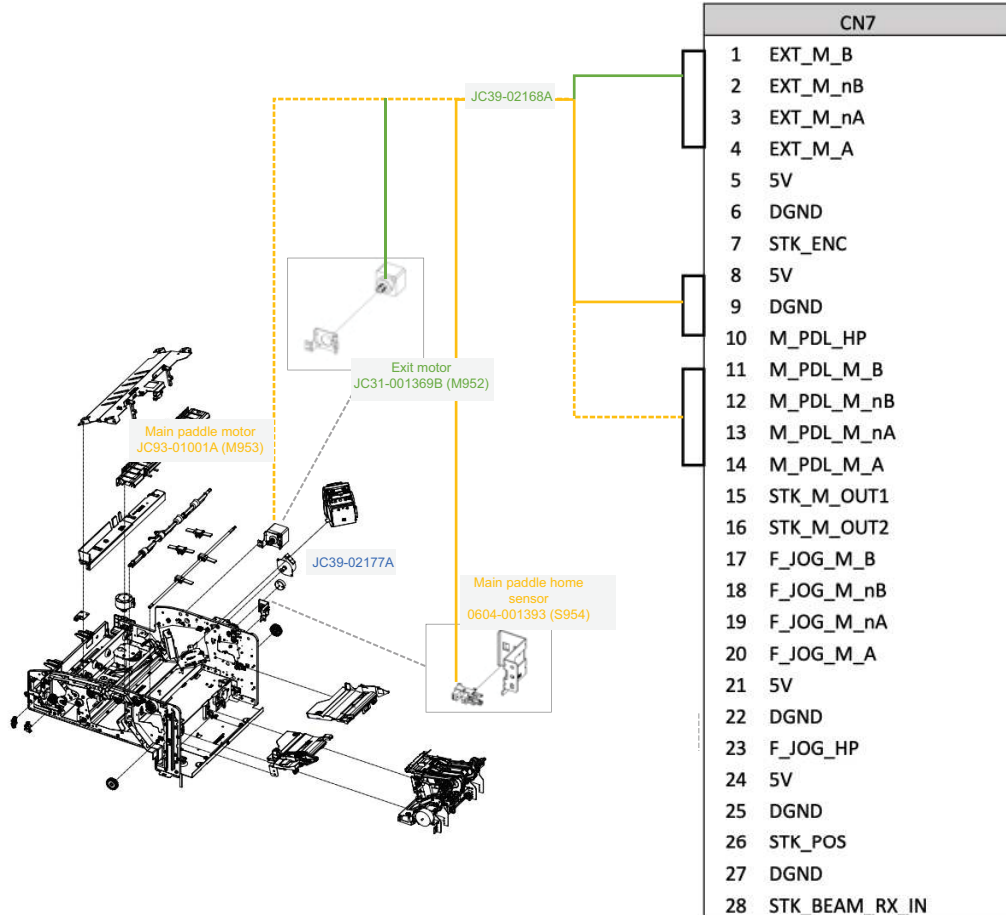


Figure 8-31 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram inner finisher (7 of 10)

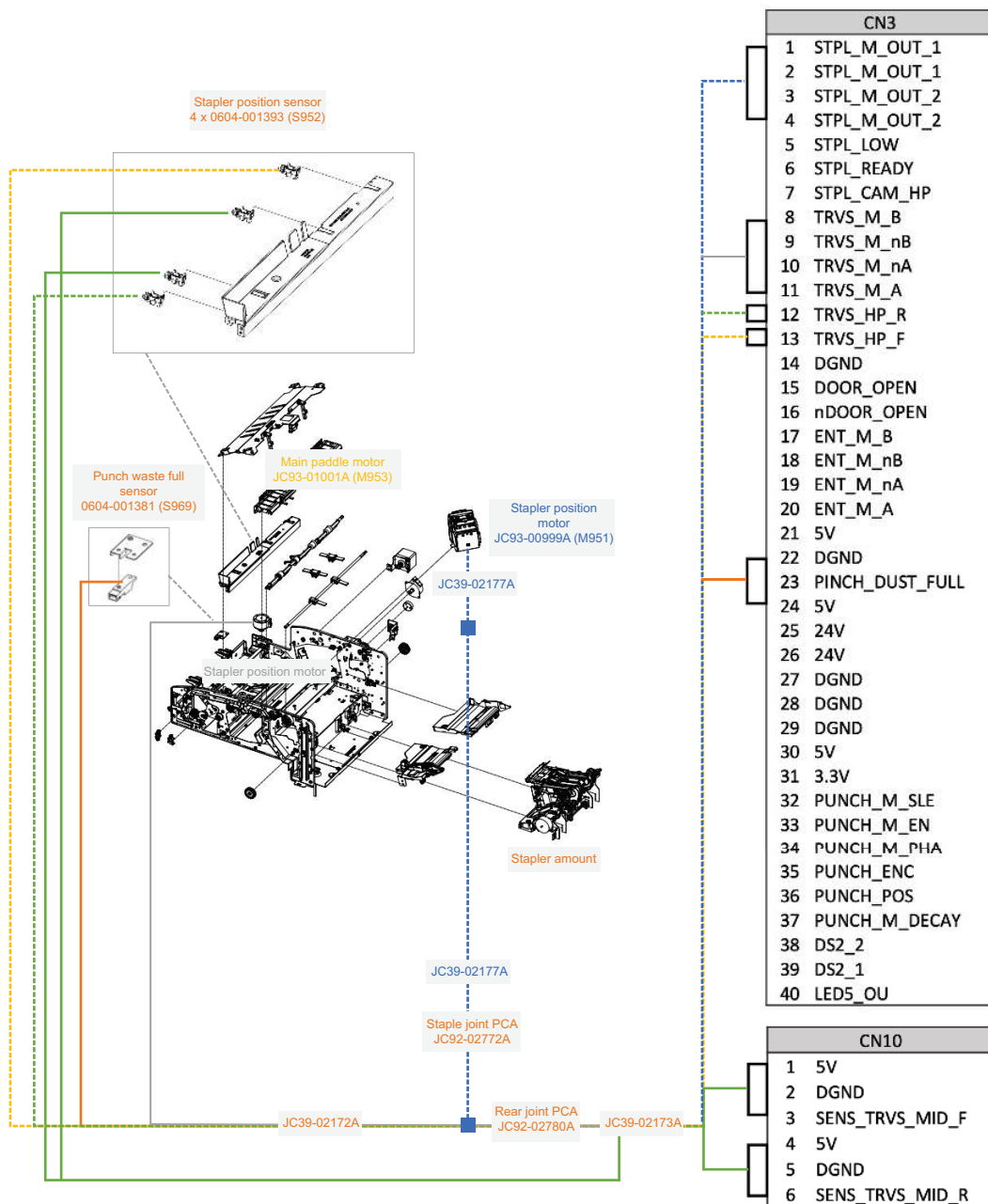


Figure 8-32 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram inner finisher (8 of 10)

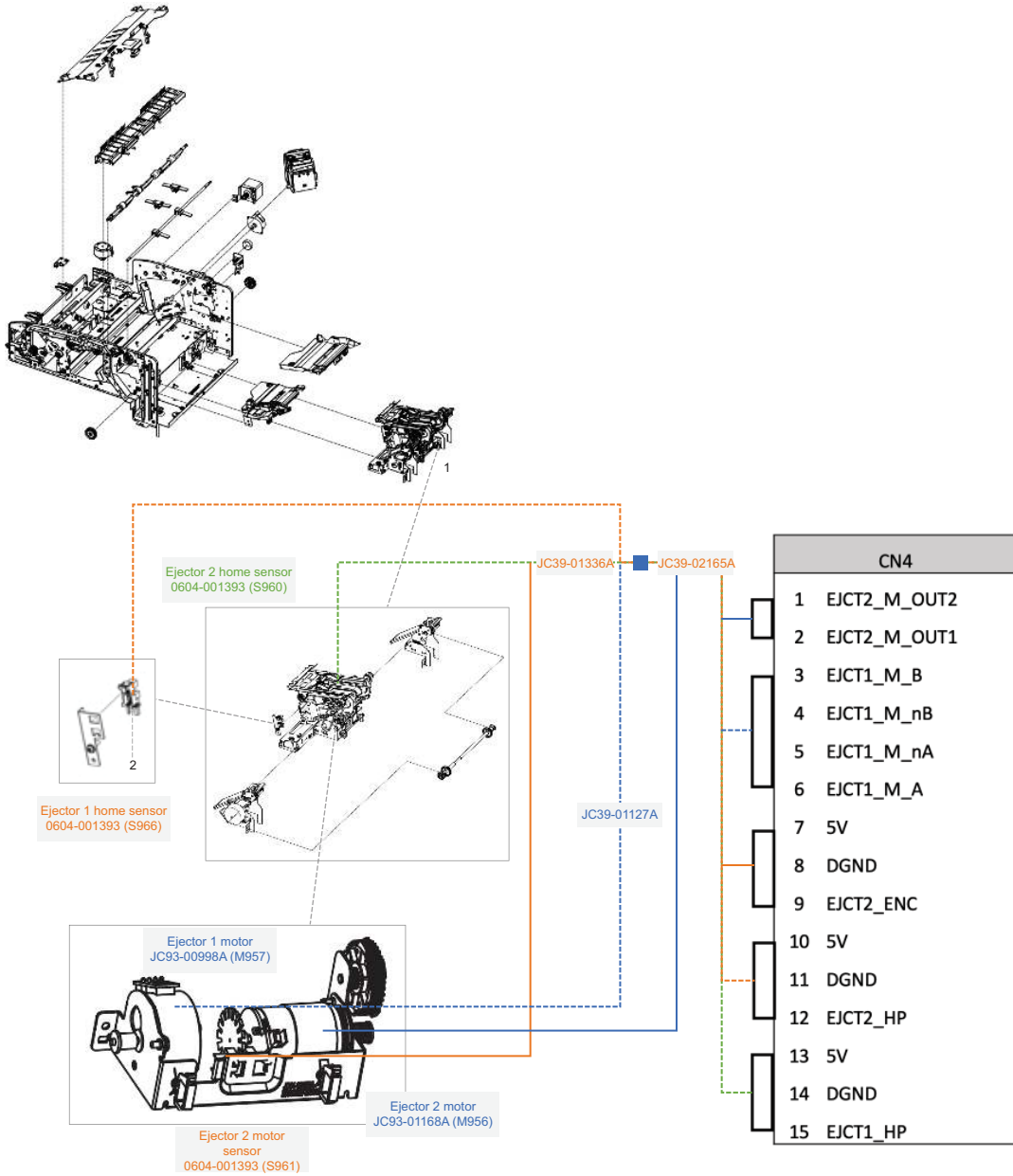


Figure 8-33 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram inner finisher (9 of 10)

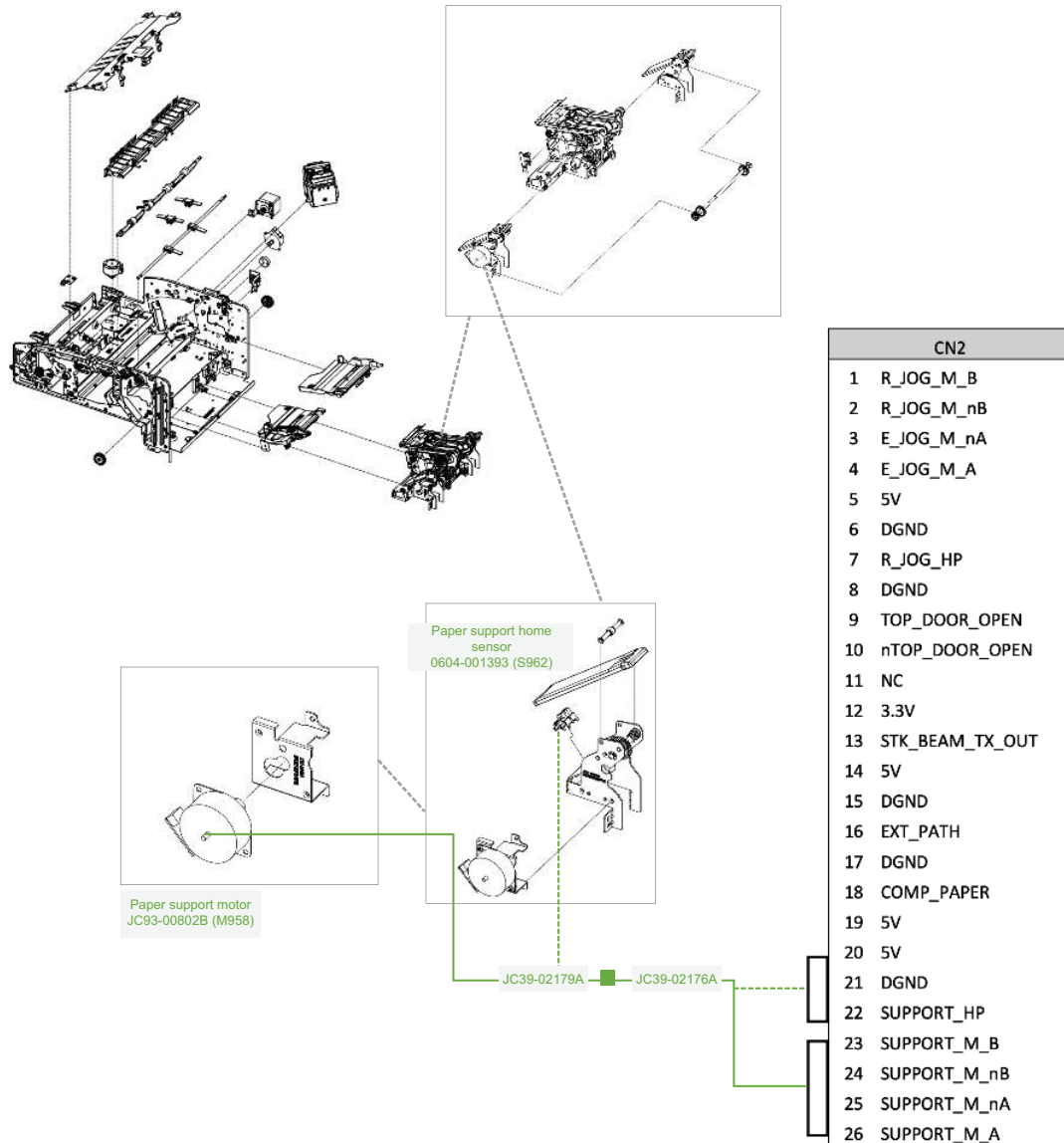
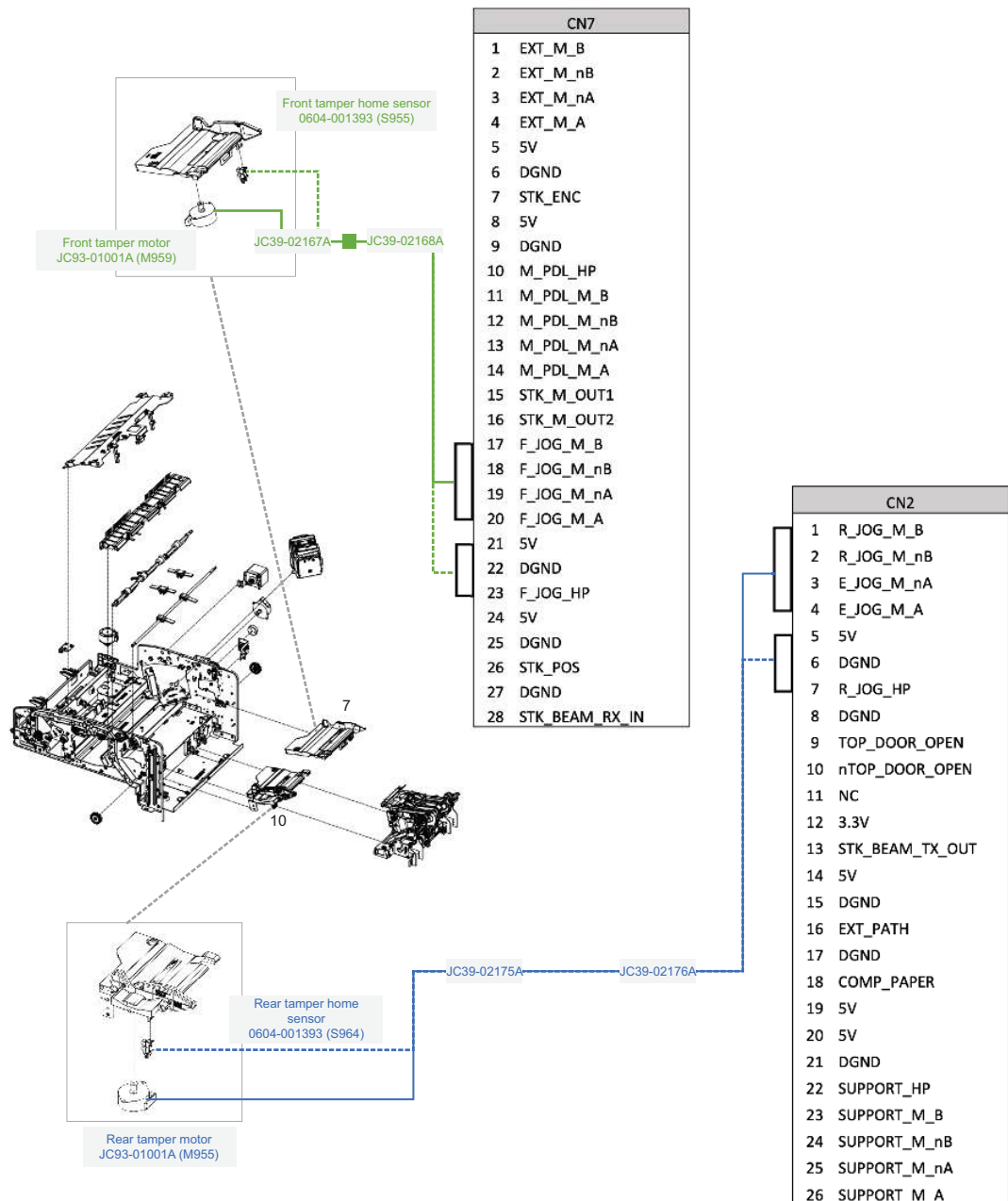


Figure 8-34 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram inner finisher (10 of 10)



EMR diagrams: Stapler-stacker finisher and booklet finisher

Learn about the stapler-stacker finisher and booklet finisher electrical mechanical relationships.

Figure 8-35 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram bridge unit

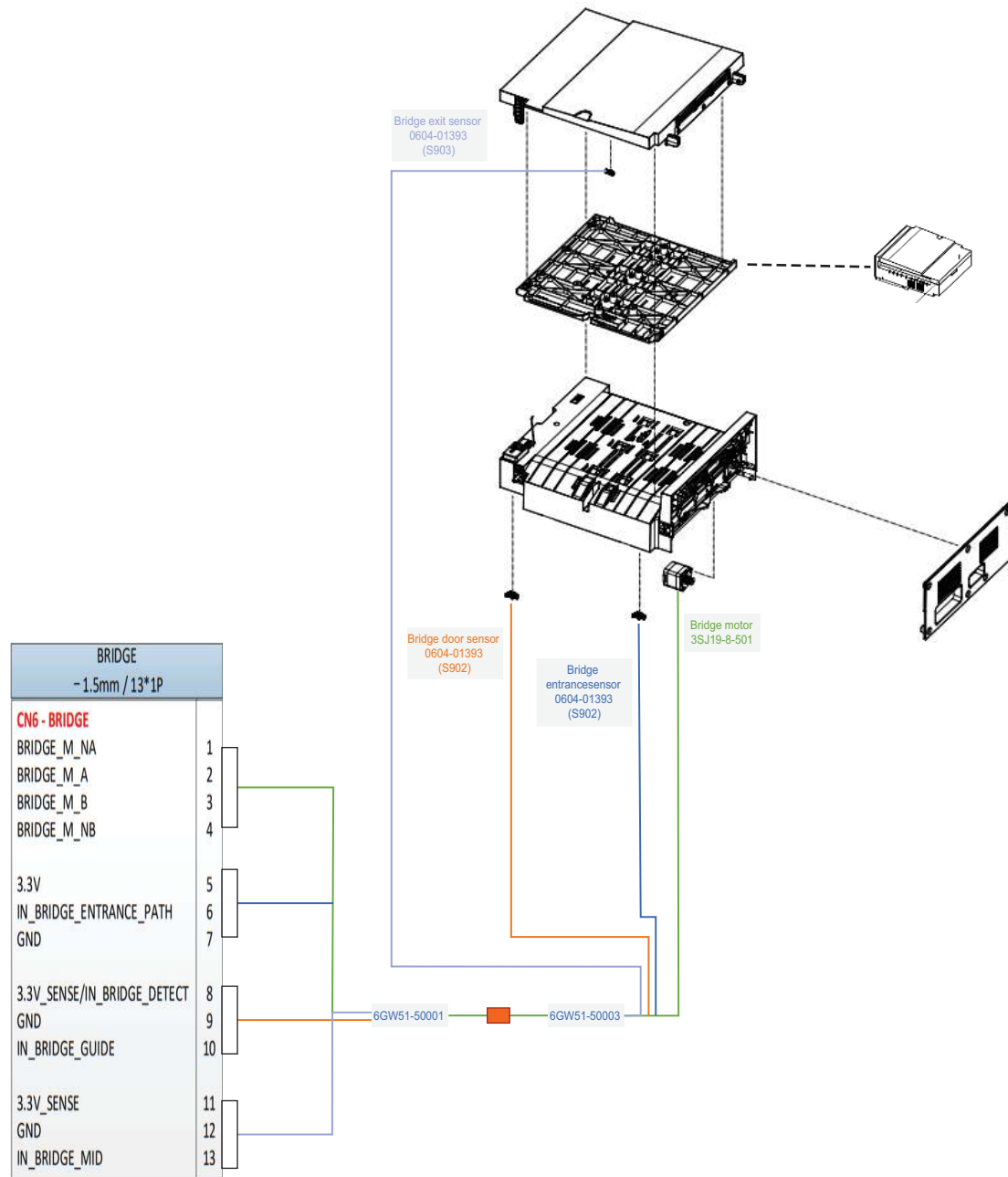


Figure 8-36 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram punch unit

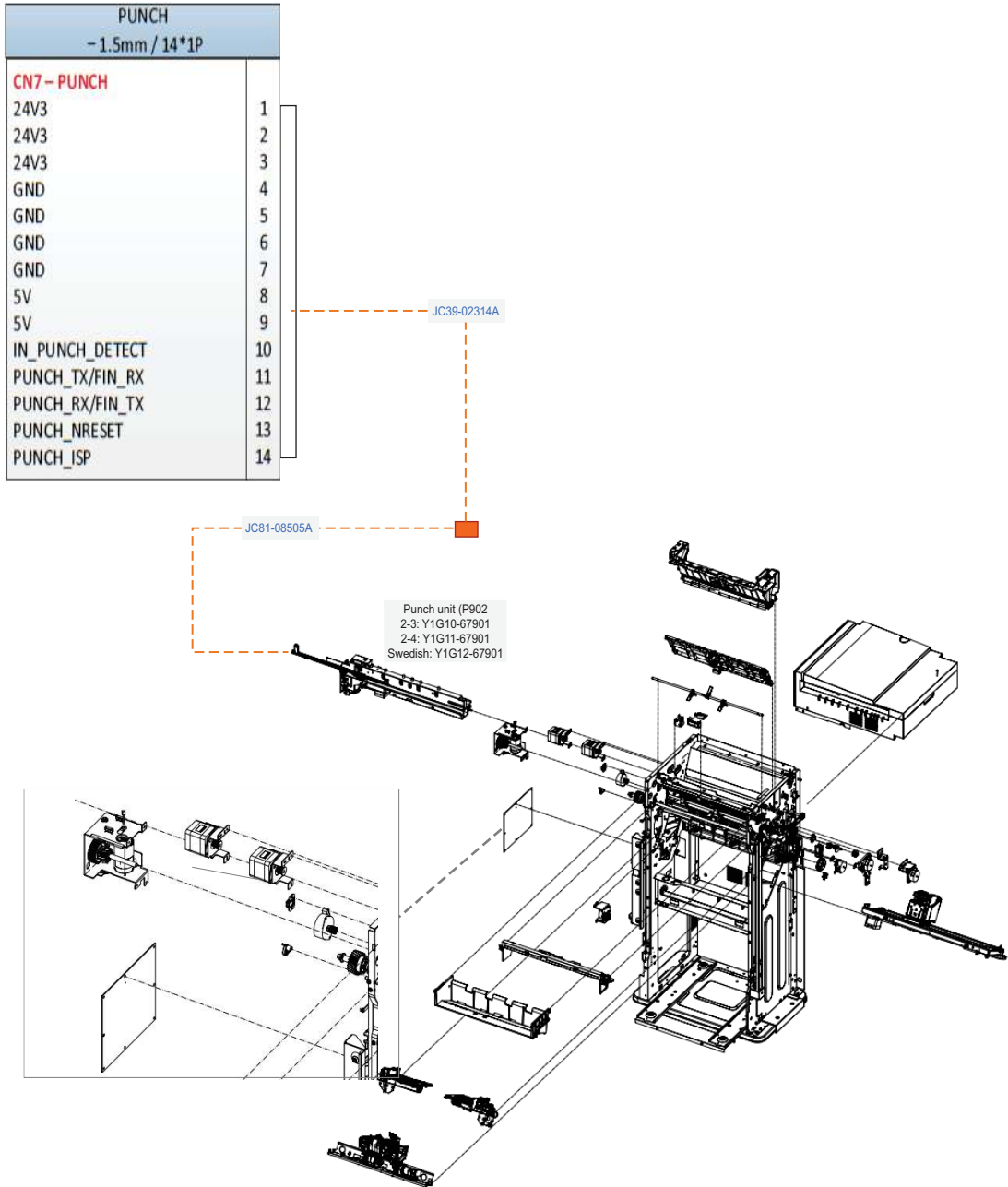


Figure 8-37 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram entrance unit

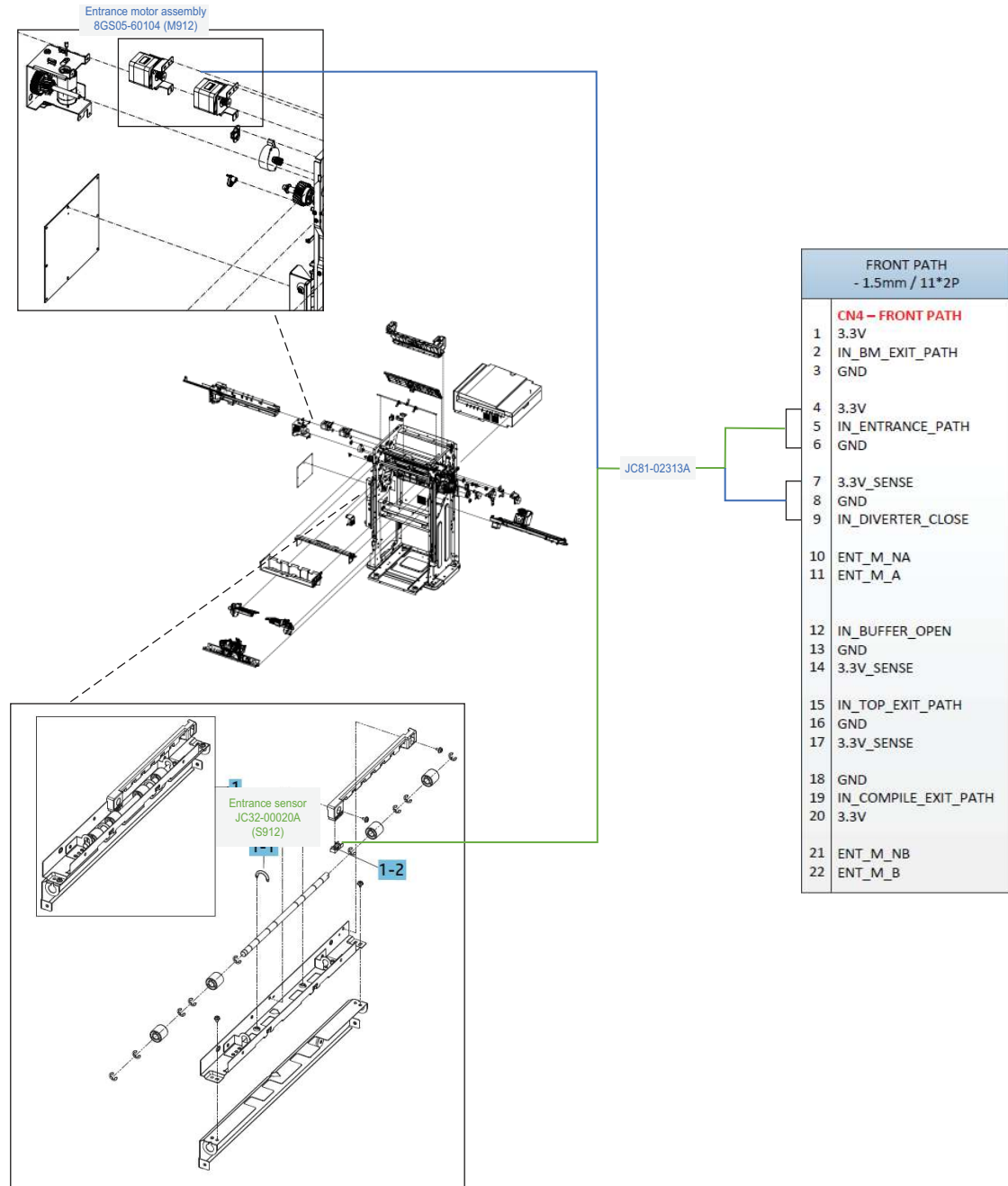


Figure 8-38 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram tray diverter unit

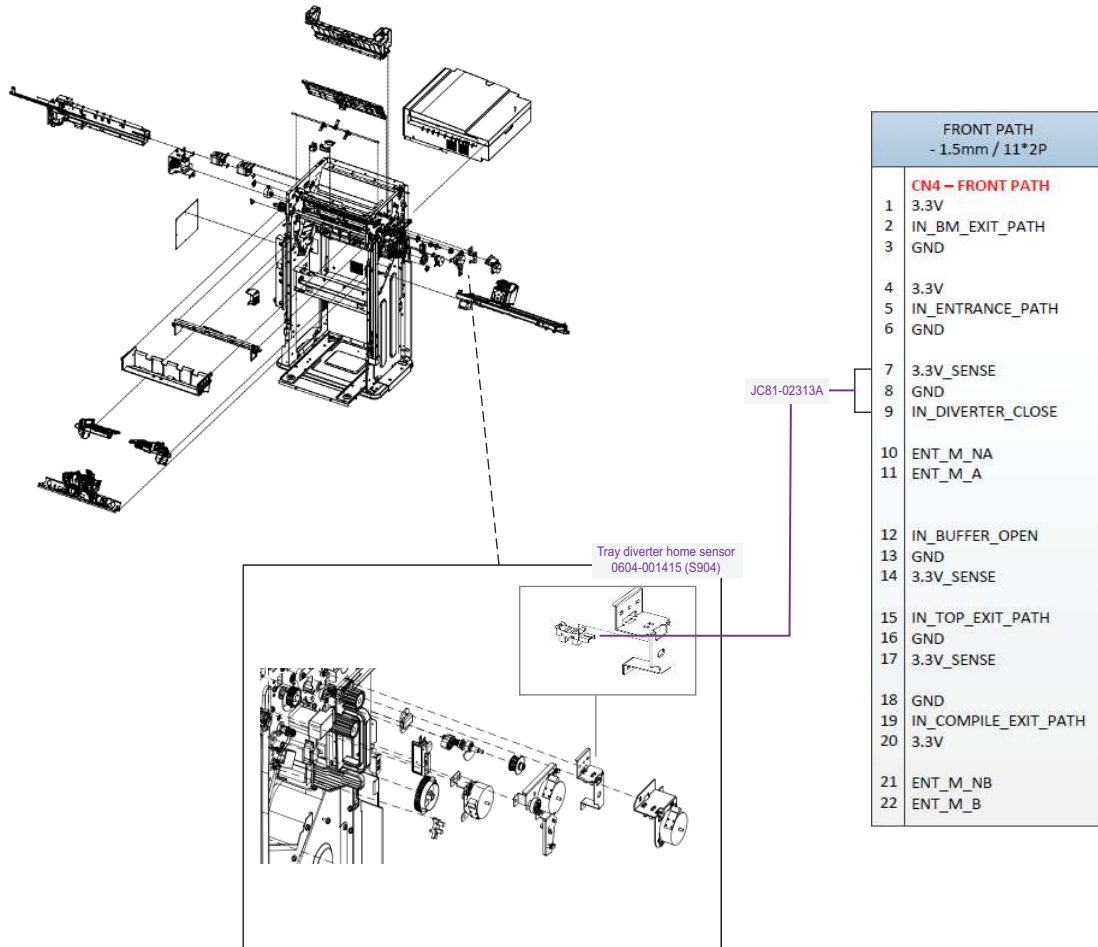


Figure 8-39 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram top exit

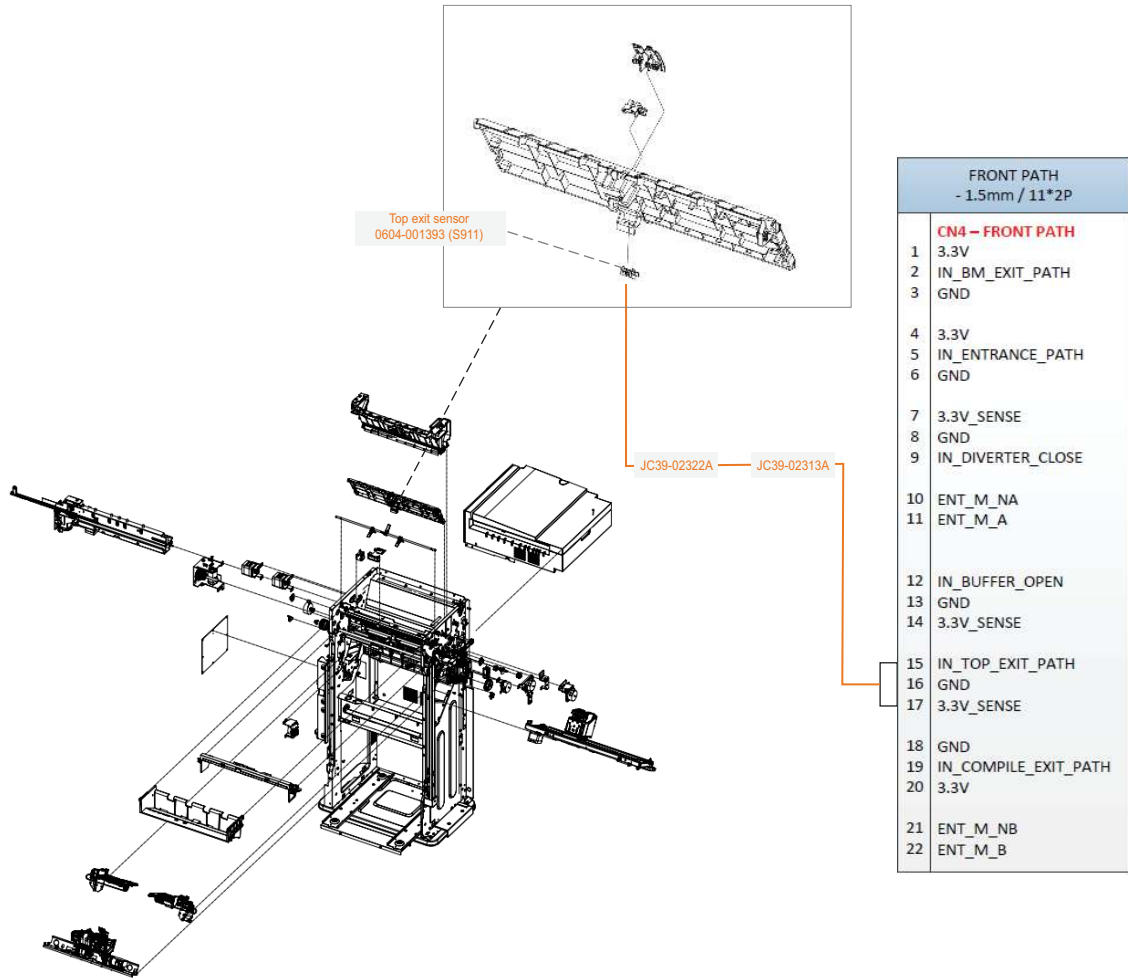


Figure 8-40 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram top output tray unit

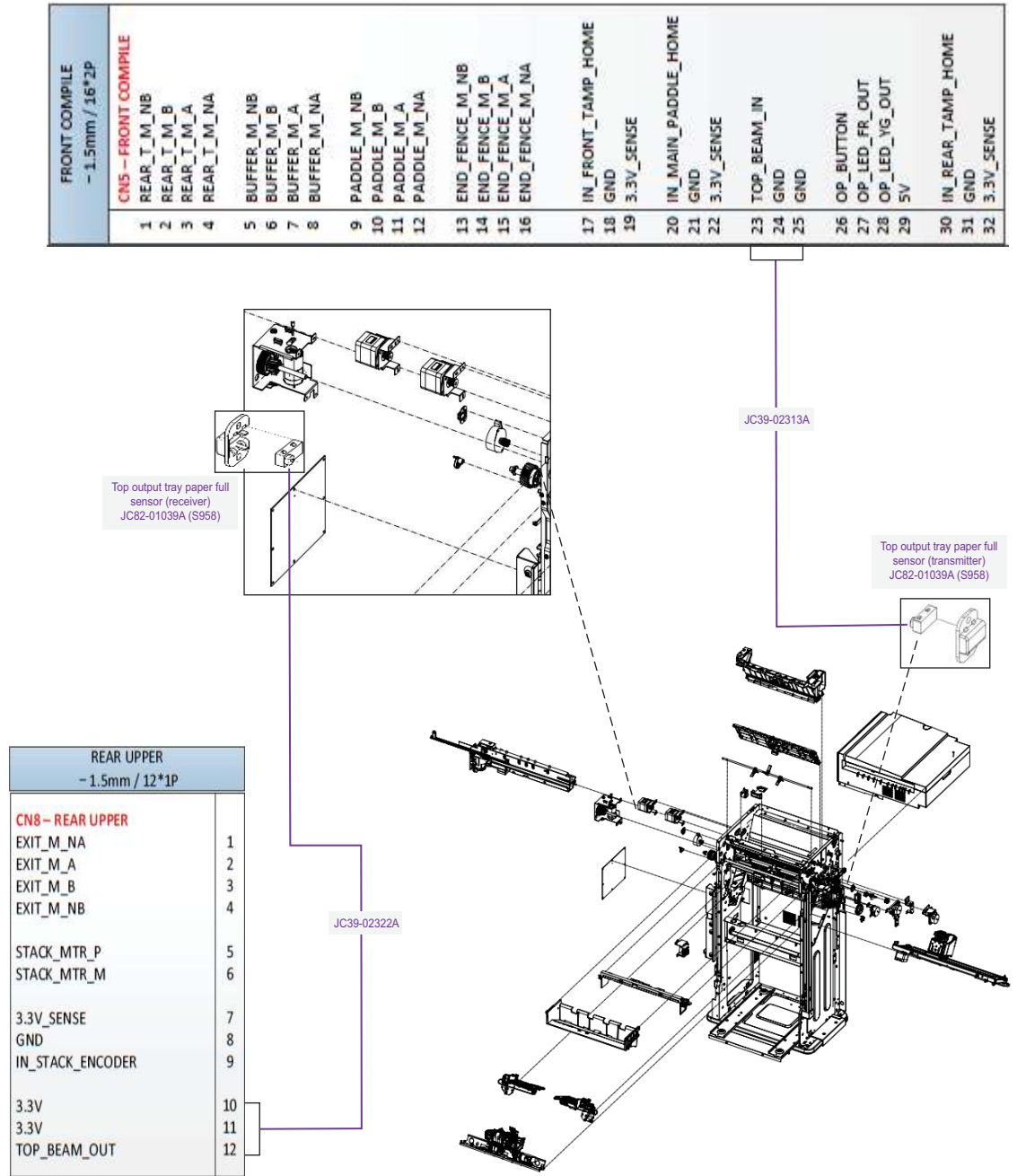


Figure 8-41 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram main exit (1 of 2)

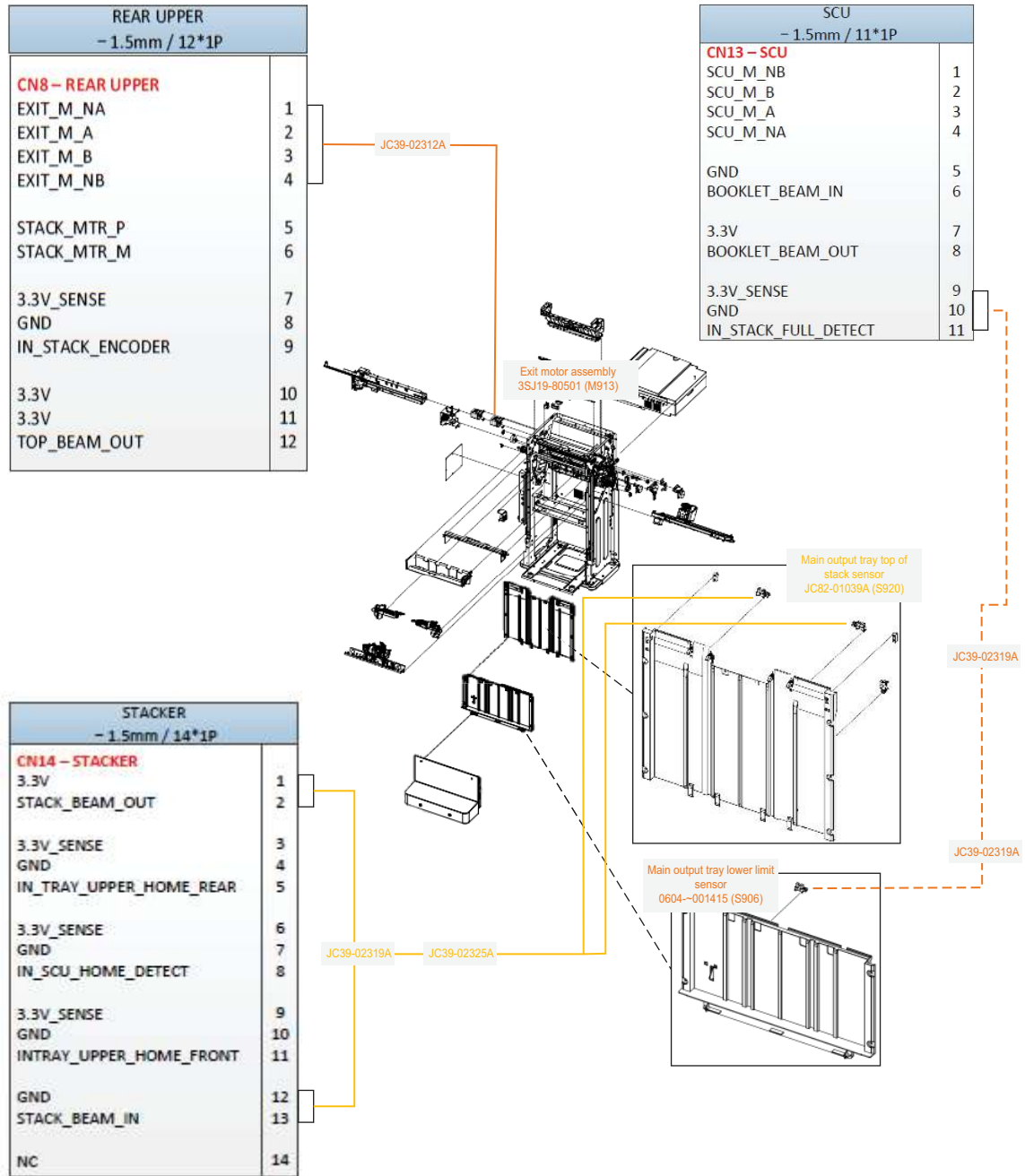


Figure 8-42 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram main exit (2 of 2)

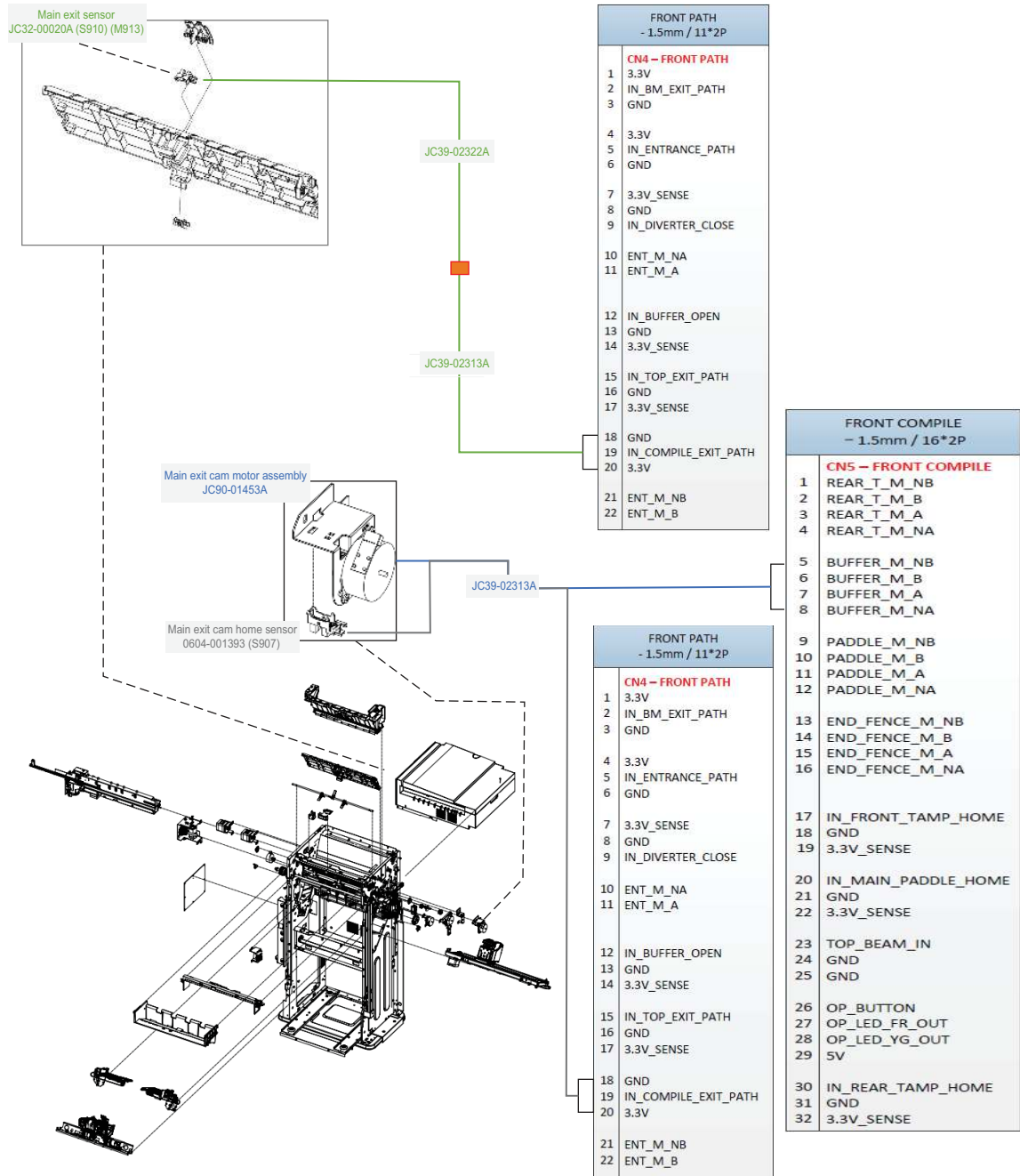


Figure 8-43 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram paddle unit

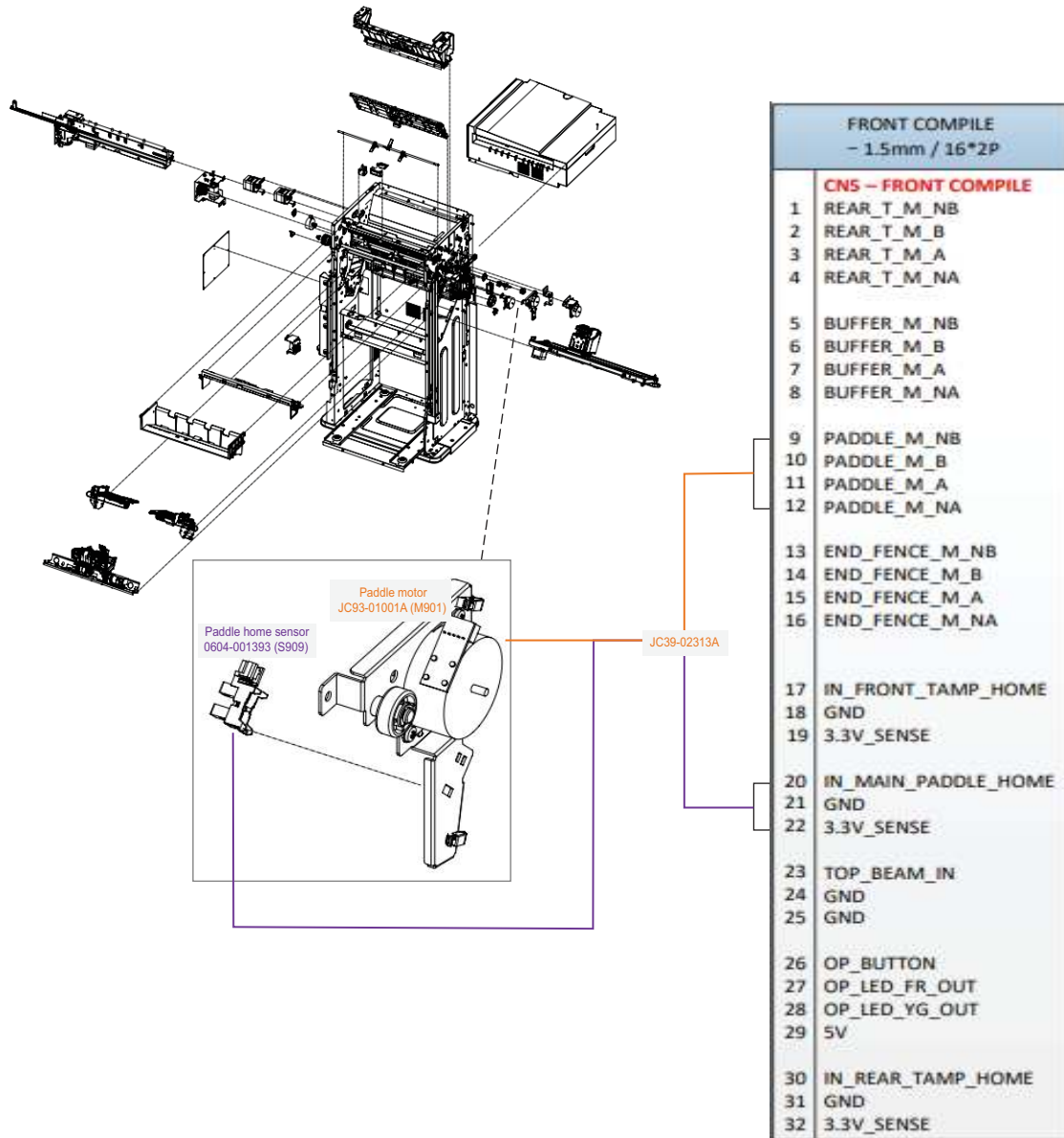


Figure 8-44 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram end fence unit

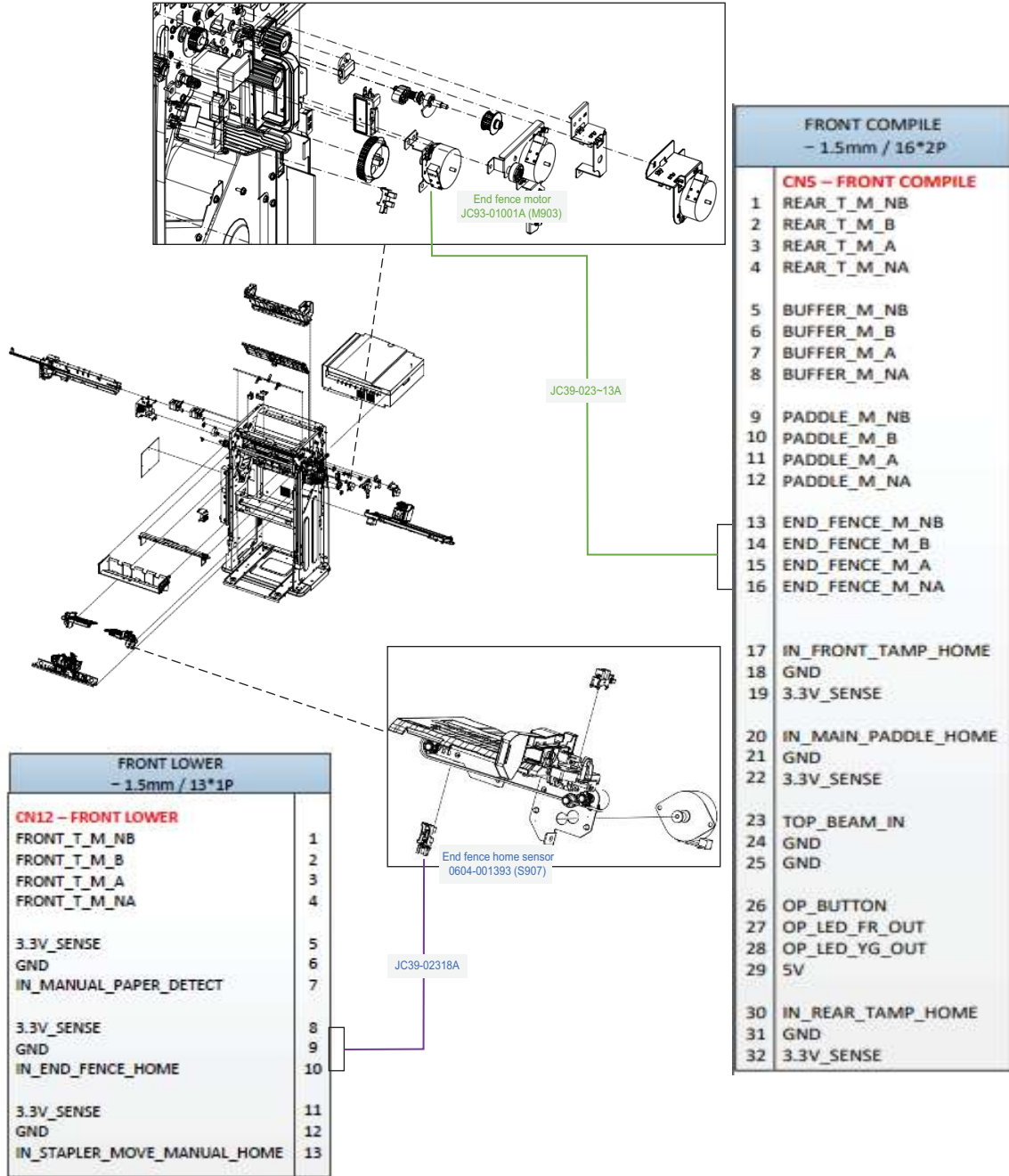


Figure 8-45 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram tamper unit

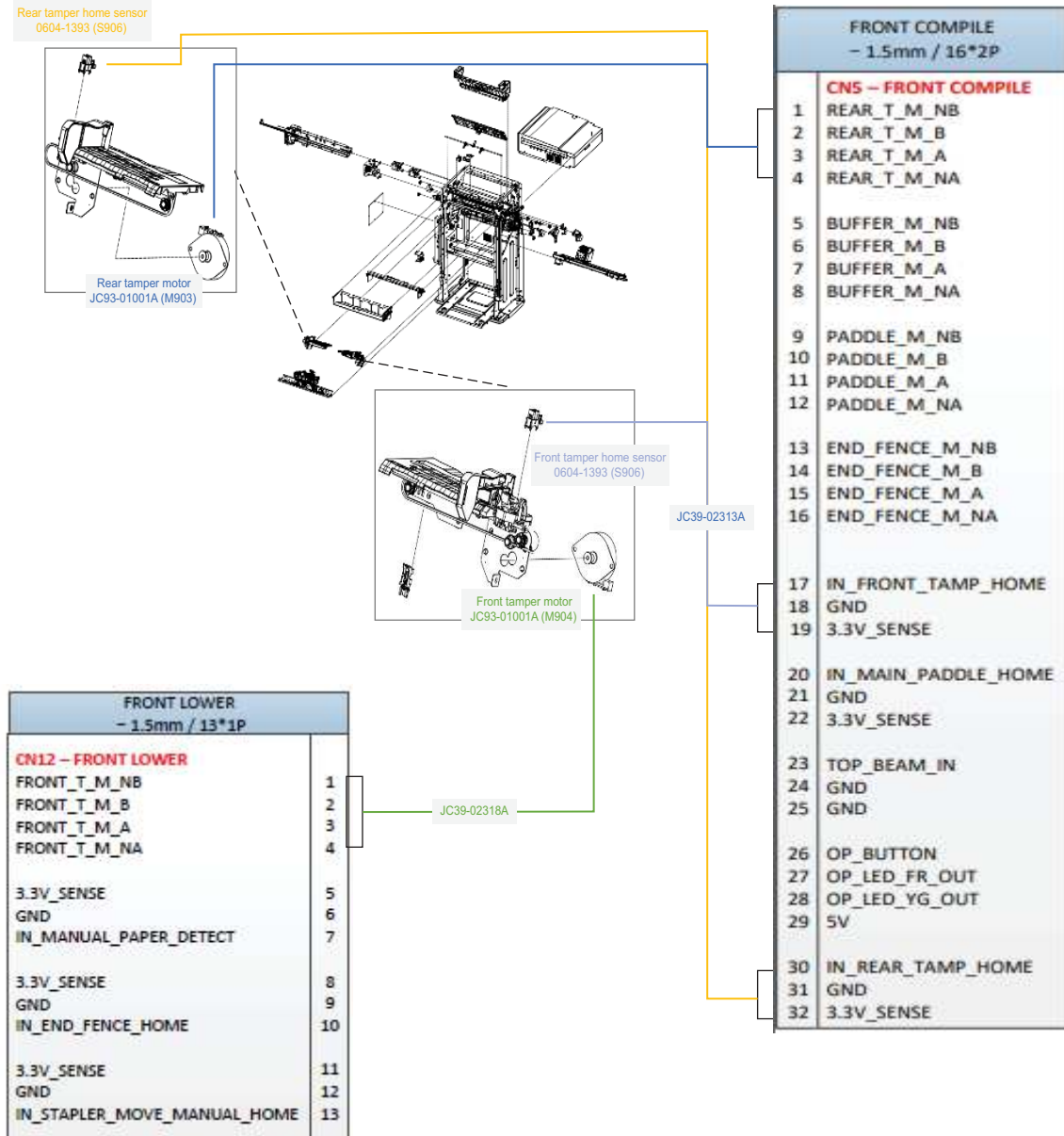


Figure 8-46 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram stapler unit

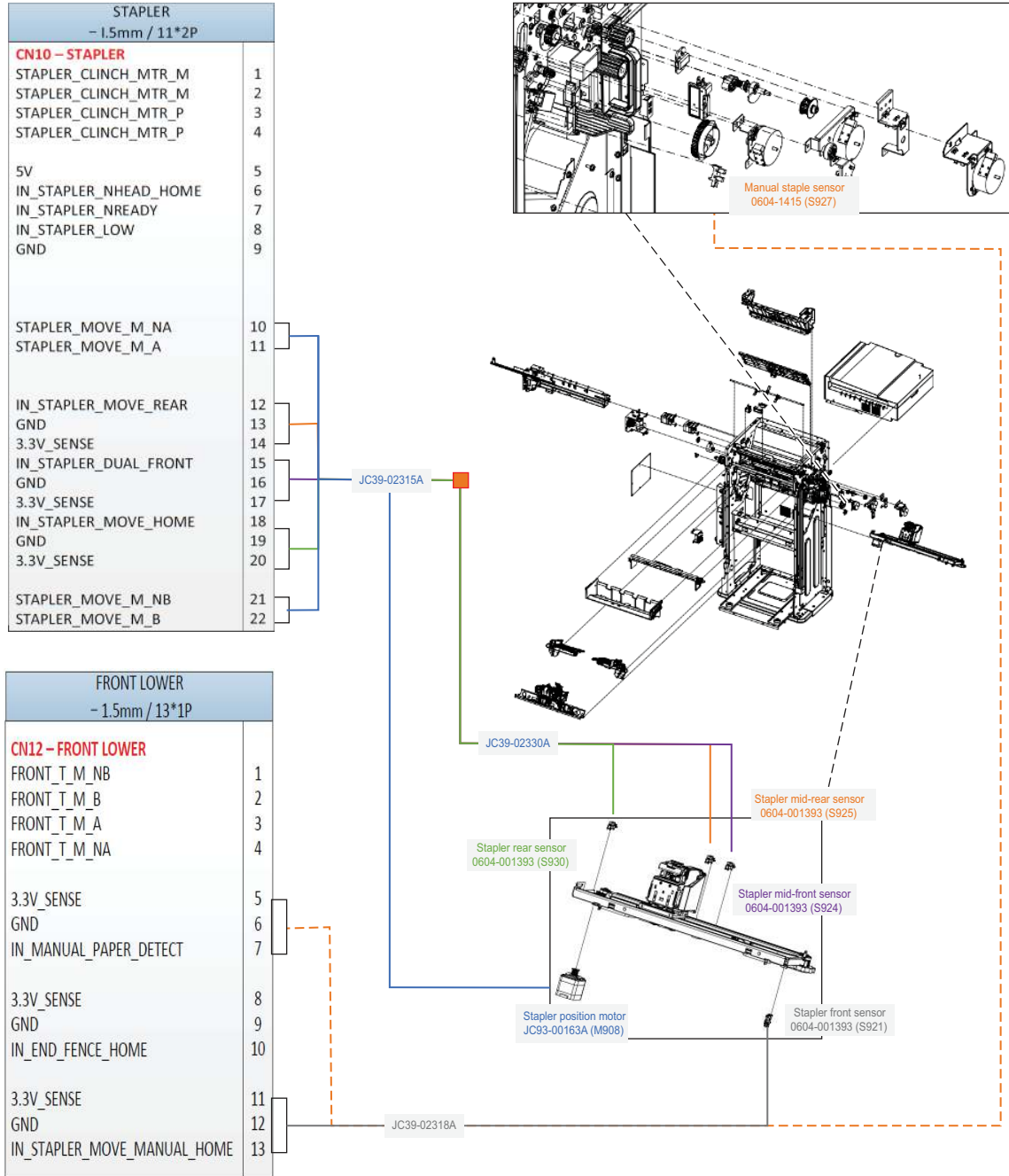


Figure 8-47 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram ejector unit

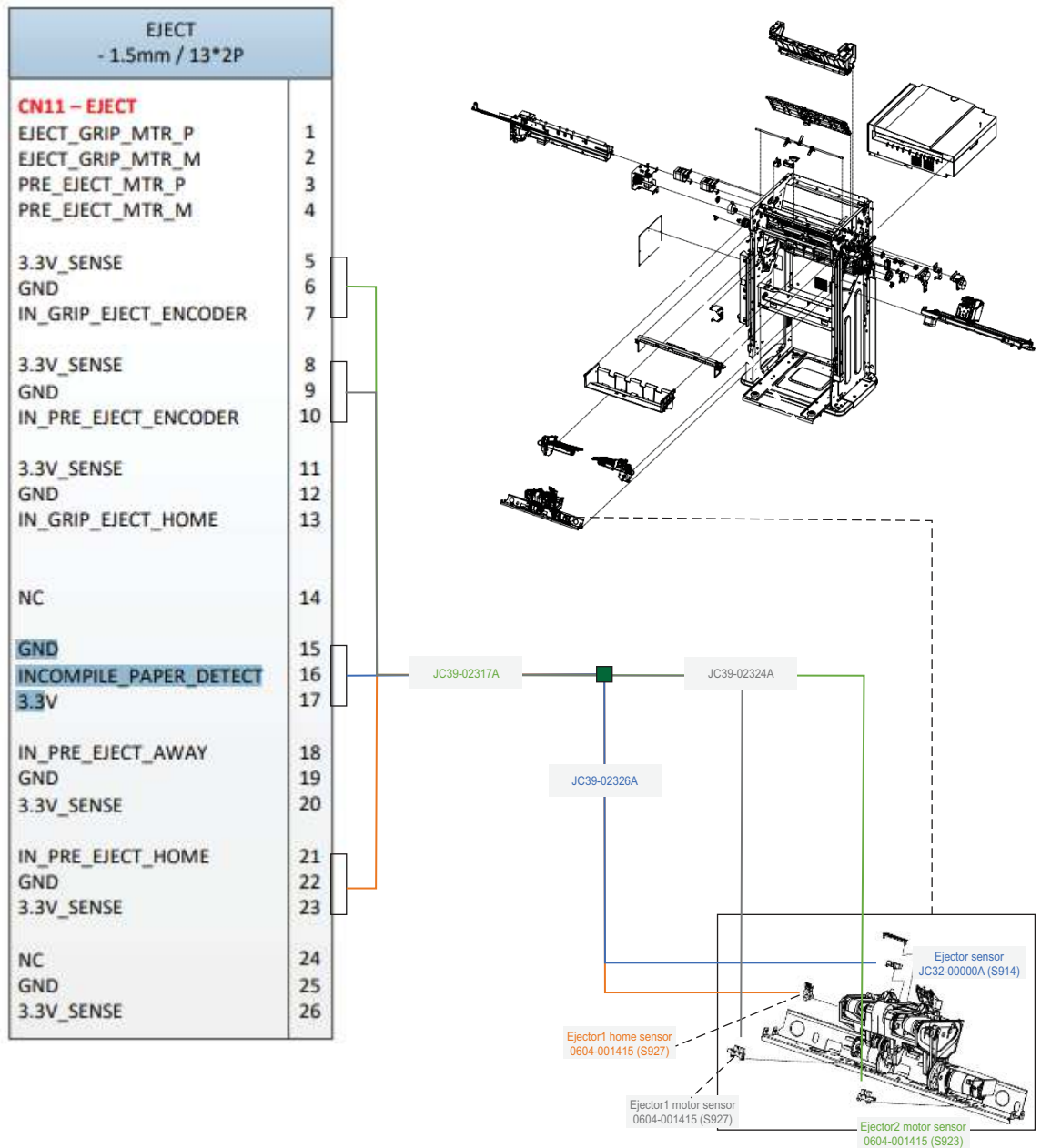


Figure 8-48 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram main output tray unit

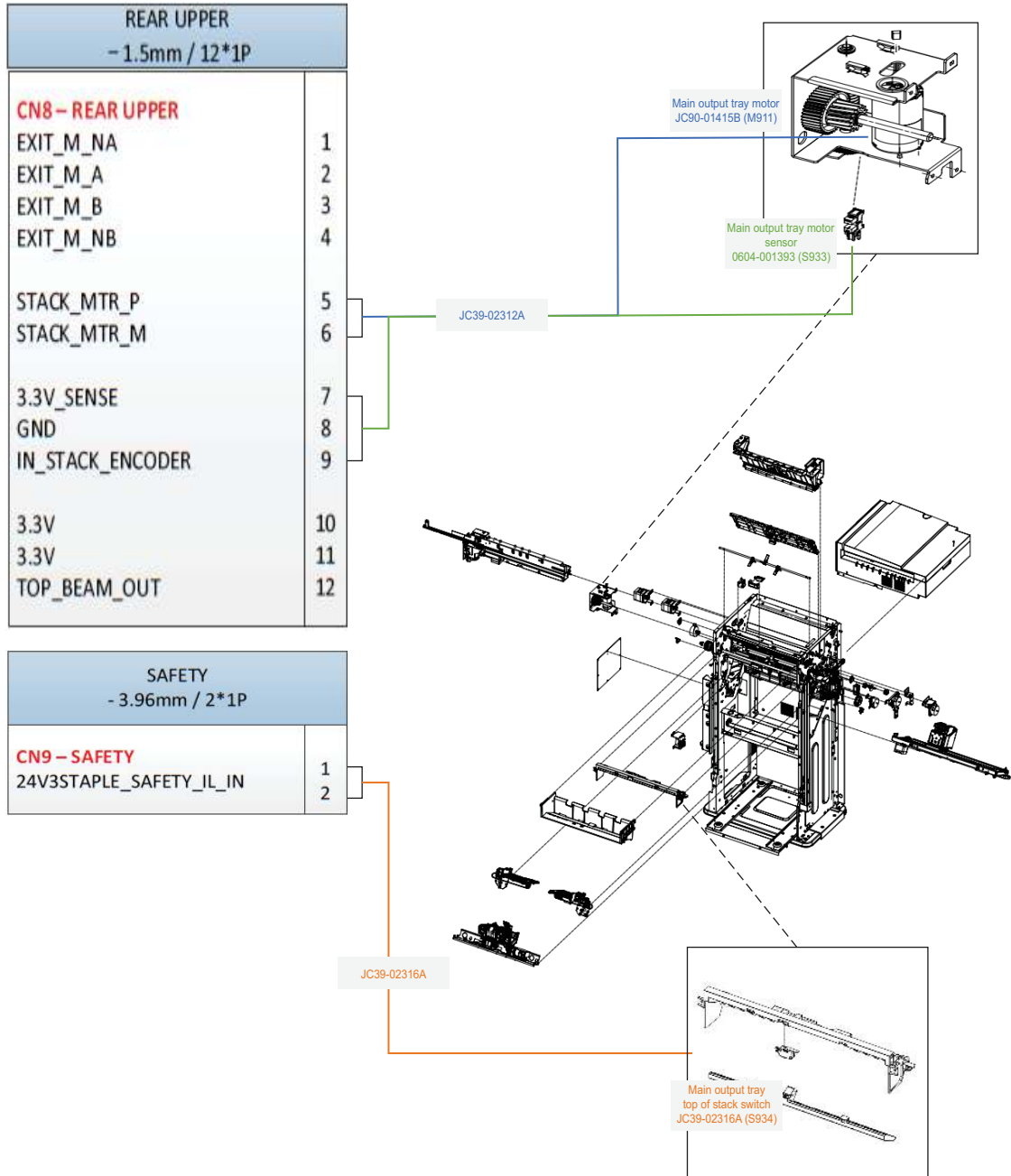


Figure 8-49 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram paper holding unit

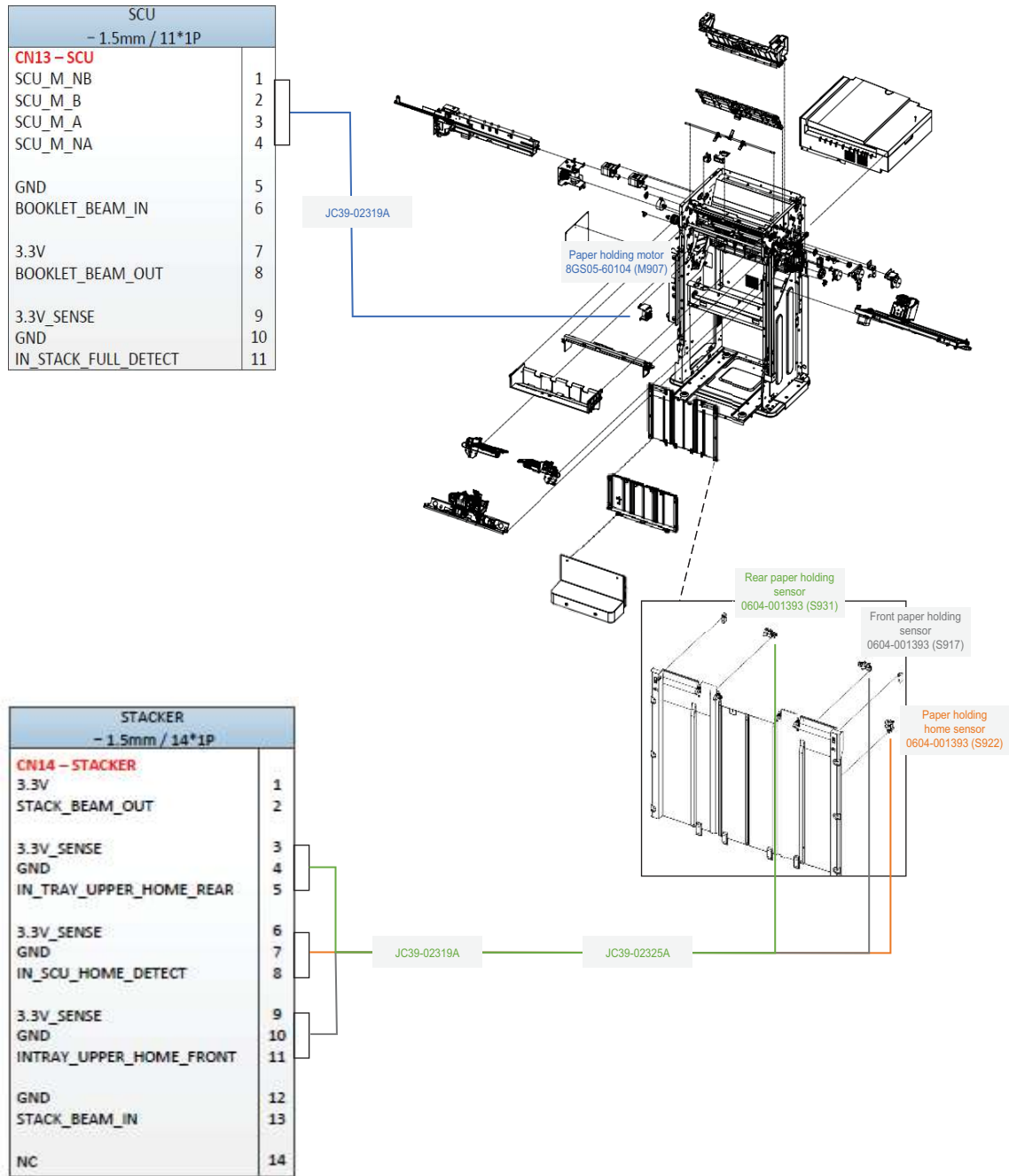


Figure 8-50 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram buffer unit

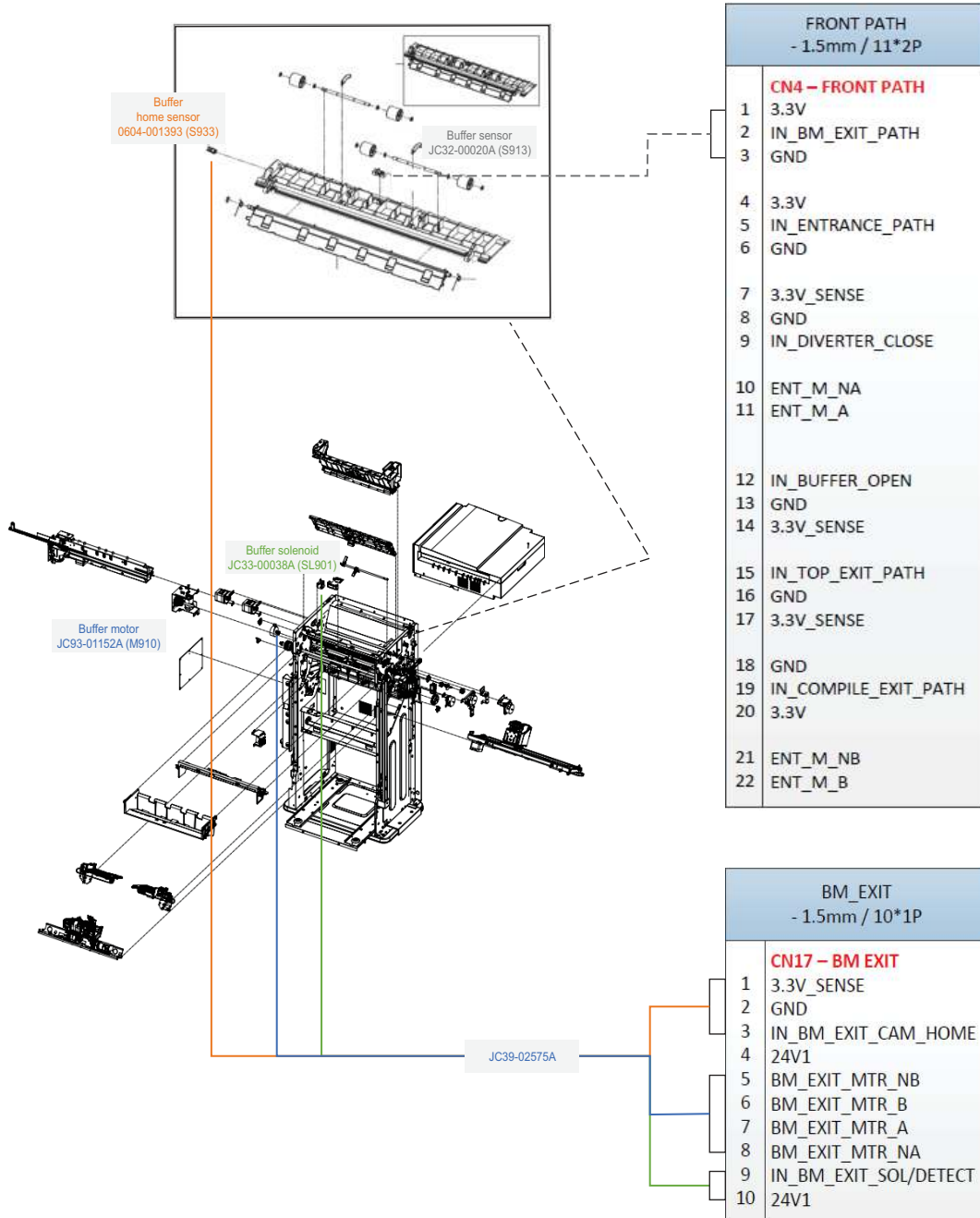


Figure 8-51 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram door switch

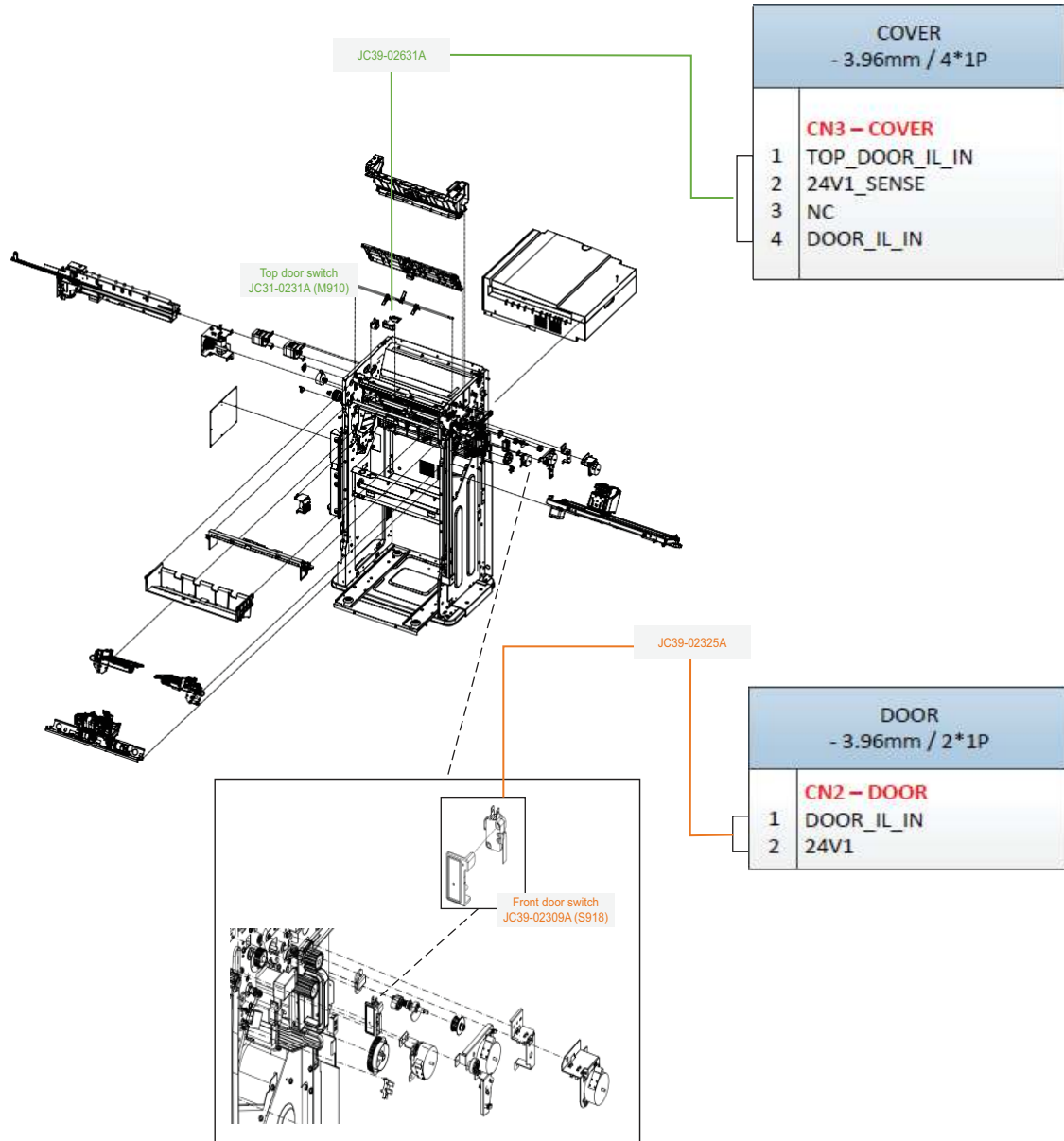
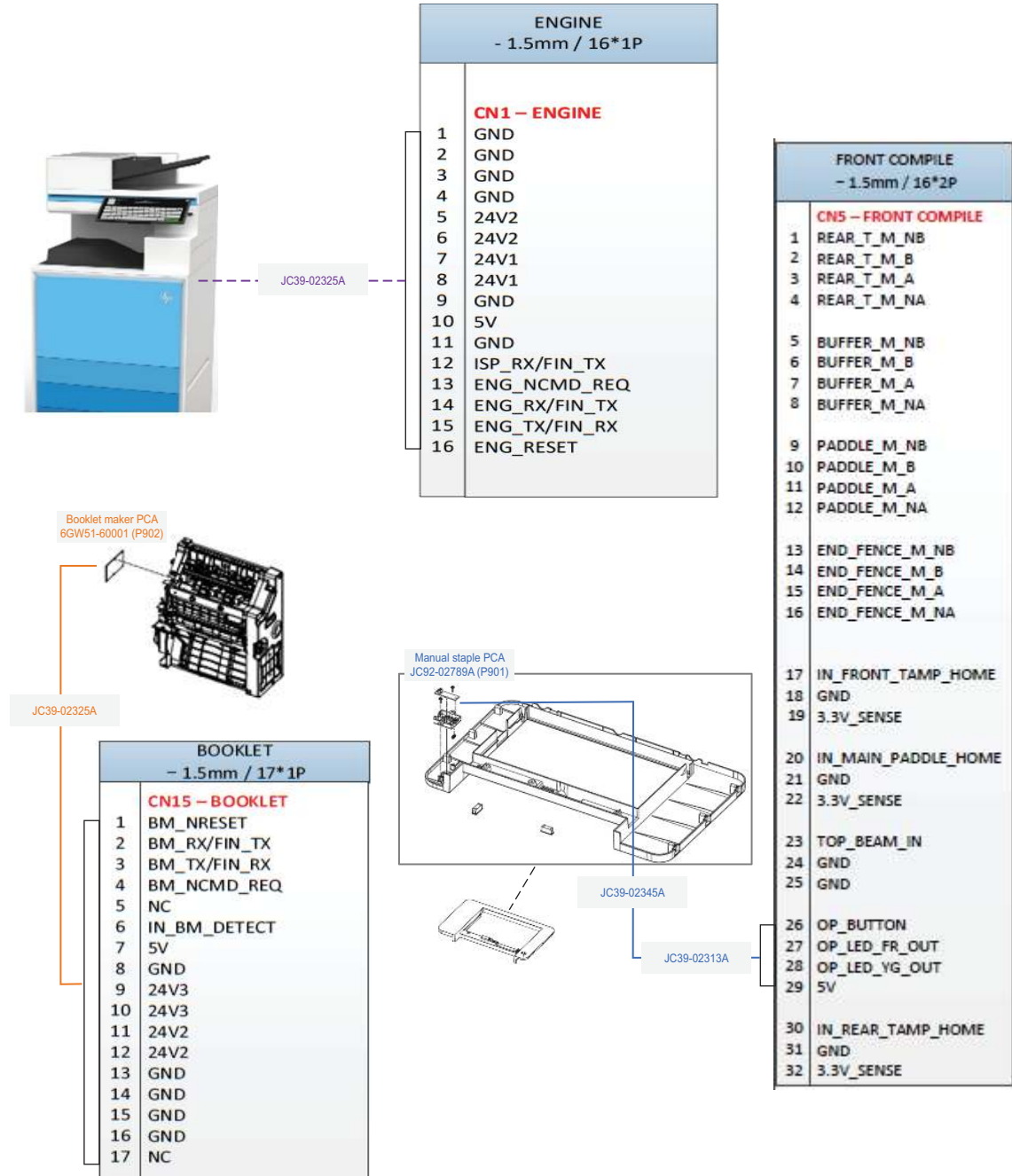


Figure 8-52 Electrical mechanical relationship diagram PCA



A Certificate of Volatility

Review the certificates of volatility for the printer.

Certificate of Volatility

Learn about the product certificate of volatility.

Figure A-1 Certificate of Volatility (1 of 3)

Hewlett-Packard Certificate of Volatility				
Model: HP Color LaserJet Managed MFP E731dn HP Color LaserJet Managed Flow MFP E731z	Part Number: Managed 5QJ98A= E731dn 5QK02A= E731z		Address: Hewlett Packard Company 11311 Chinden Blvd Boise, ID 83714	
Volatile Memory				
Does the device contain volatile memory (Memory whose contents are lost when power is removed)? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe the type, size, function, and steps to clear the memory below				
Type (SRAM, DRAM, etc): DDR4 DRAM	Size: 6GB	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No	Function: Used for temporary storage during the process of jobs, and for applications that are running on the OS. (Note: Total memory on formatter consists of 6GB.)	Steps to clear memory: When the printer is powered off the memory is erased.

Figure A-2 Certificate of Volatility (2 of 3)

Non-Volatile Memory				
Does the device contain non-volatile memory (Memory whose contents are retained when power is removed)? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe the type, size, function, and steps to clear the memory below				
Type (Flash, EEPROM, etc): IOD EEPROM	Size: 32 KB	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No	Function: Backup device for critical system counters and product configuration information.	Steps to clear memory: There are no steps to clear this data.
Type (Flash, EEPROM, etc): SPI Flash	Size: 8MB	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No	Function: Contains the boot code and factory product configuration data required for the device to function. User modifications are limited to downloading digitally signed HP firmware images.	Steps to clear memory: There are no steps to clear this data.
Type (Flash, EEPROM, etc): TPM 2.0 NVRAM Flash	Size: 7206 bytes	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No	Function: Stores HP-signed immutable ID certificate and associated RSA key pair in locked memory, engine speed configuration data, SED (self-encrypting drive) drive lock password.	Steps to clear memory: Drive lock password can be changed through the device embedded web server interface and/or Preboot Menu of the Control Panel. No other data stored on the TPM 2.0 Flash can be cleared.
Type (Flash, EEPROM, etc): IOD Engine EEPROM	Size: 32 KB	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No	Function: Stores device lifecycle data (e.g. device page counts), consumables information, device specific printing handler data (e.g. fusing, EP, paper handler), toner supply control data, device configuration data (e.g. margin info), device maintenance information (e.g. calibration data)	Steps to clear memory: There are no steps to clear this data.
Mass Storage				
Does the device contain mass storage memory (Hard Disk Drive, Tape Backup)? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe the type, size, function, and steps to clear the memory below				
Type (HDD, Tape, etc.): HDD	Size: 500GB	User Modifiable: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	Function: Store customer data, OS, applications, digitally signed firmware images, persistent data, and temporary data used for processing and system functions.	Steps to clear memory: There are several ways to erase this: 1. Secure Storage Erase - Erases temporary files and job data by overwriting information one or three times 2. Secure Disk Erase - Industry standard ATA Secure Erase. Overwrites all data on the hard drive. 3. Secure File Erase - Erases files when jobs finish processing by overwriting them one or three times.

Figure A-3 Certificate of Volatility (3 of 3)

USB			
Does the item accept USB input and if so, for what purpose (i.e. Print Jobs, device firmware updates, scan upload)? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below			
Print jobs, HP digitally signed firmware upgrades, 3rd party application loading. USB ports can be disabled.			
Can any data other than scan upload be sent to the USB device? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below			
Diagnostic service logs can be uploaded. Print files can be printed via a USB thumb drive.			
RF/RFID			
Does the item use RF or RFID for receive or transmit of any data including remote diagnostics? (e.g. Cellular phone, Bluetooth) <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below			
Purpose:			
Frequency:		Bandwidth:	
Modulation:		Effective Radiate Power (ERP):	
Specifications:			
Other Transmission Capabilities			
Does the device employ any other methods of non-wired access to transmit or receive any data whatsoever (e.g. anything other than standard hard wired TCP/IP, direct USB, or parallel connections)? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below:			
Purpose: Product contains an integrated Wi-Fi/NFC accessory modules consisting of a Wi-Fi 802.11n and Near Field Communication (NFC) radio. The Wi-Fi portion acts in Access Point mode ONLY and provides AP client connection capability. NFC is used to pass NDEF tag data (Wi-Fi SSID, WPA configuration data). The latter is used to enable wireless direct print for mobile devices.			
Frequency: 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz		Bandwidth:	
Modulation:		Effective Radiate Power (ERP):	
Specifications: 802.11 b/g/n (Wi-Fi) NFC Tag Type 4 ISO14443B Compliant (NFC)			
Other Capabilities			
Does the device employ any other method of communications such as a Modem to transmit or receive any data whatsoever? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below:			
Purpose: Fax			
Specifications: Fax modem max speed 33.6kbps			
Author Information			
Name	Title	Email	Business Unit
Hewlett Packard Company	Technical Marketing Eng	Technical.Marketing@hp.com	Print Hardware Systems (PHS)
Date Prepared: March 8, 2022			

Glossary of terms

802.11

802.11 is a set of standards for wireless local area network (WLAN) communication, developed by the IEEE LAN/MAN Standards Committee (IEEE 802).

802.11b/g/n

802.11b/g/n can share the same hardware and use the 2.4 GHz band. 802.11b supports bandwidth up to 11 Mbps, 802.11n supports bandwidth up to 150 Mbps. 802.11b/g/n devices might occasionally suffer interferences from microwave ovens, cordless telephones, and Bluetooth devices.

AC

An electric current that reverses its direction many times a second at regular intervals. For example, the 110V line current found in a typical US electrical wall receptacle.

AC Control Module (PageWide)

The AC Control Module controls the heating elements in the airflow assembly. Functions include voltage monitoring (ensuring correct operation in a low-quality-power environment), isolation (low voltage heater control signals are isolated from the high voltage AC power for safety), AC switching (power is switched on/off to the heater), and heating element configuration (heating element configuration is changed between series and parallel for temperature predictability).

ADF

An Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) is a device that automatically feeds an original sheet (or multiple sheets) of paper into the image scanner. The document feeder is a component of the integrated scanner assembly (ADF and image scanner).

Airflow System (PageWide)

The airflow system conditions the printed pages to avoid page curling due to the ink on the page. The airflow system functionally consists of a fan and heating elements. The pressurized air is blown on the page through the nozzles that are placed on the paper path of the airflow system between print and eject zone.

BOOTP

Bootstrap Protocol. A network protocol used by a network client to obtain its IP address automatically. This is usually done in the bootstrap process of computers or operating systems running on them. The BOOTP servers assigns an IP address from a pool of addresses to each client. BOOTP enables "diskless workstation" computers to obtain an IP address prior to loading any advanced operating system.

CCD

A Charged Coupled Device (CCD) is the scanner module which enables a scan job. A CCD locking mechanism is used to hold the CCD module to prevent any damage when the printer is moved.

CIS

A Contact Image Sensor (CIS) scanner captures an image using the printer's optical path. Red, green, and blue LEDs sequentially illuminate a small strip of the document (often called a raster line), and the optical system captures each color in a single row of Charged Coupled Device (CCD) sensors that cover the entire page width.

Collation

Collation is a process of printing a multiple-copy job in sets. When collation is selected, the device prints an entire set before printing additional copies.

Control Panel

The control panel is a flat, typically vertical panel or screen where the user can control and/or monitor the printer. The control panel is found on the front of the printer.

Coverage

Coverage is the printing term used for a toner usage measurement on printing. For example, 5% coverage means that an A4 sided paper has about 5% image or text on it. If the paper or original has complicated images or a large amount of text, the coverage will be higher and at the same time, a toner usage will be as much as the coverage.

DC

An electric current flowing in one direction only. Typically, a low voltage load current supplied to an electrical assembly.

DCC

The DC controller (DCC) controls the operation of the printer sub-systems and electrical components. The DCC sends out various signals to operate motors, solenoids, and other printer components based on the print command and image data that the host computer sends the formatter.

Default

The value or setting that is in effect when a printer is unboxed, reset, or initialized.

DHCP

Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) is a client-server networking protocol. A DHCP server provides configuration parameters specific to the DHCP client host requesting, generally, information required by the client host to participate on an IP network. The DHCP also provides a mechanism for allocation of IP addresses to client hosts.

Digital Send Software

Digital send software allows a multi-function printer (MFP) to scan and send information quickly and securely to email, network folders, other printers, and fax services.

DIMM

A Dual Inline Memory Module (DIMM) is a small circuit board that holds memory. The DIMM stores all data within the printer, such as printing data and received fax data.

DPI

Dots Per Inch (DPI) is a measurement of resolution that is used for scanning and printing. Generally, higher DPI results in a higher resolution (more visible detail in the image and a larger file size).

Duplex

A mechanism that automatically turns over a sheet of paper so that the printer can print (or scan) on both sides of the paper. A printer equipped with a duplex unit can print on both sides of the paper during one print cycle.

Duty Cycle

Duty cycle is the page quantity which does not affect printer performance for a month. Generally, the printer has the lifespan limitation such as pages per year. The lifespan means the average capacity of print-outs, usually within the warranty period. For example, if the duty cycle is 48,000 pages per month the printer limit is 2,400 pages a day (assuming 20 working days/month).

Dynamic Security

Dynamic Security is a toner cartridge design and process for authenticating genuine HP supplies. HP printers use toner cartridges that have security chips or electronic circuitry. Cartridges using a non-HP chip, or modified chip, or non-HP circuitry might not work (now or in the future).

e-Duplex

Single-pass electronic duplex (e-Duplex) printer use two separate scan modules to scan the front-side and back-side of an e-duplex copy job page in a single pass through the document feeder.

EMC

EMC is a measure of a device's ability to operate as intended in its shared operating environment while, at the same time, not affecting the ability of other equipment within the same environment to operate as intended.

EMI

EMI is the electromagnetic energy which affects the functioning of an electronic device. Electronic devices (like printers) are a source of EMI. Because it is rare for electronics to operate in isolation, products are generally engineered to function in the presence of some amount of EMI.

eMMC

An embedded Multi-Media Card is a compact memory device consisting of NAND flash memory and a simple storage controller.

Emulation

Emulation is a technique of one machine obtaining the same results as another. An emulator duplicates the functions of one system with a different system, so that the second system behaves like the first system. Emulation focuses on exact reproduction of external behavior. This is different from simulation, which concerns an abstract model of the system being simulated, often considering its internal state.

EPS

Encapsulated PostScript (EPS) is a PostScript (PS) code file which is used for storing font and vector graphic image information.

ESD

An electrostatic discharge (ESD) is a sudden flow of electricity between two electrically charged objects caused by contact, an electrical short, or dielectric breakdown. Discharge of built up static electricity.

Ethernet

Ethernet is a frame-based computer networking technology for local area networks (LANs). It defines wiring and signaling for the physical layer, and frame formats and protocols for the media access control (MAC)/data link layer of the OSI model. Ethernet is mostly standardized as IEEE 802.3. Ethernet has become the most widespread LAN technology in use during the 1990s to present.

Ferrite

A ferrite is used to reduce the amount of radio frequency noise (or interference) in a wire or cable. A ferrite enables proper EMC/EMI performance for regulatory purposes.

FFC

Flat Flexible Cables (FFCs) are designed for Printed Circuit Assembly (PCA) to PCA connections (for example, connecting a fax PCA to the formatter).

FIH

A Foreign Interface Harness (FIH) is a port that enables HP multifunction printers (MFPs) to use third-party devices to extend the capabilities of the MFP.

Firmware

The formatter stores the printer firmware. A remote firmware upgrade process is used to overwrite and upgrade the firmware.

Flash memory

Flash memory is non-volatile, meaning it retains stored data even when the power is turned off.

Flow integrated scanner assembly

A printer scanner assembly that includes a slide-out external physical keyboard.

Formatter (LaserJet)

The formatter controls printer functions like receiving and processes print data, developing and coordinating data placement and timing with the DC controller PCA, storing font and customer configuration information, communicating with the host computer, and monitoring control panel functions and relaying printer status information through the control panel.

FTP

FTP stands for File Transfer Protocol. FTP is a protocol designed for transferring files over the Internet. Files stored on an FTP server can be accessed using an FTP client, such as a web browser, FTP software program, or a command line interface.

Fuser Unit

The fuser unit is part of a laser printer that adheres the toner onto the printed page. It consists of a heat roller and a pressure roller. After toner is transferred onto the paper, the fuser unit applies heat and pressure to make sure that the toner stays on the paper permanently (which is why paper is warm when it comes out of a laser printer).

Gateway

A connection between computer networks, or between a computer network and a telephone line. A gateway is used to connect two different computer networks, especially a connection to the Internet.

Grayscale

Shades of gray that represent light and dark portions of a color image printed in monochrome. Colors are represented by a range of gray shades from white to black.

Halftone

Halftone is a way of reproducing a photograph or other image in which the various tones of gray or color are produced by variously sized dots of ink or toner. Halftone simulates grayscale by varying the number of dots. Highly colored areas consist of a large number of dots, while lighter areas consist of a smaller number of dots.

HDD

A Hard-Disk Drive (HDD) (commonly referred to as a hard drive or hard disk) is a non-volatile storage device which stores digitally-encoded data on rapidly rotating platters with magnetic surfaces.

IEEE

The Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE) is an international non-profit, professional organization for the advancement of technology related to electricity.

Image scanner

The image scanner (or Sub Scanner Assembly) contains the components to digitally scan an original source document. The image scanner is a component of the integrated scanner assembly (ADF and image scanner).

IP address

An Internet Protocol (IP) address is a unique number that a device uses in order to identify and communicate with other devices on a network utilizing the Internet Protocol standard.

IPM

The Images Per Minute (IPM) is a method of measuring the speed of a printer. An IPM rate indicates the number of single-sided sheets a printer can complete in one minute.

IPP

The Internet Printing Protocol (IPP) defines a standard protocol for printing and managing print jobs, media size, resolution, etc. IPP can be used locally, or over the internet to reach hundreds of printers. IPP also supports access control, authentication, and encryption, making it a capable and secure printing solution.

ISA

The Integrated Scanner Assembly (ISA) includes the document feeder and image scanner.

ISO

The International Organization for Standardization (ISO) is an international standard-setting body composed of representatives from national standards bodies. It produces world-wide industrial and commercial standards.

JBIG

Joint Bi-level Image Experts Group (JBIG) is an image compression standard with no loss of accuracy or quality. It was designed for compression of binary images, particularly for faxes, but can also be used for other images.

JPEG

Joint Photographic Experts Group (JPEG) is a commonly used standard method of loss compression for photographic images. It is the format used for storing and transmitting photographs on the World Wide Web.

LDAP

The Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) is a networking protocol for querying and modifying directory services running over TCP/IP.

LED

A Light-Emitting Diode (LED) is a semiconductor device that can indicate the status of a printer (formatter LEDs) or a component in a contact image sensor (CIS) scanner that helps capture an image.

LEDM

Low end data model (LEDM) provides one consistent data representation method and defines the dynamic and capabilities tickets shared between clients and devices, as well as the access protocol, event, security, and discovery methods.

LPDC

Late point differentiation configuration (LPDC) allows the channel partner to configure the speed to the printer depending on the customer's order. LPDC configuration is stored on the Trusted Platform Module (TPM).

LVPS - SMPS

Low Voltage Power Supplies (LVPS) and Switching Mode Power Supplies (SMPS) supply direct current (DC) voltages to various printer components and assemblies.

MAC address

Media Access Control (MAC) address is a unique identifier associated with a network adapter. MAC address is a unique 48-bit identifier usually written as 12 hexadecimal characters grouped in pairs (for example, 00-00-0c-34-11-4e). This address is usually hard-coded into a Network Interface Card (NIC) by the manufacturer and used as an aid for routers trying to locate machines on a large network.

MEt

HP Memory Enhancement technology (MEt) effectively doubles the standard memory through a variety of font- and data-compression methods. MEt is available only in Printer Command Language (PCL) mode; it is not functional when printing in PostScript (PS) mode.

MFP

A Multi Function Printer (MFP) is a printer that incorporates multiple functionalities in a single physical body. For example, an MFP printer can scan, digitally send, fax, copy, and print.

MHV

Miniature High Voltage (MHV) is designed for high voltage applications of BNC connectors (DC voltage between 500 V and 5 kV).

Modem

A device that modulates a carrier signal to encode digital information, and also demodulates such a carrier signal to decode transmitted information.

MPCA (PageWide)

The MPCA integrates both formatter (LaserJet) and engine control electronics (DC controller) into a single assembly. The Main PCA (MPCA) controls printer functions like receiving and processes print data, developing and coordinating data placement, storing font and customer configuration information, communicating with the host computer, and monitoring control panel functions and relaying printer status information through the control panel.

NAND

NAND is not an acronym (the term is short for **NOT AND** a Boolean operator and logic gate). NAND (flash) memory is non-volatile, meaning it retains stored data even when the power is turned off.

NVRAM

Nonvolatile random access memory (NVRAM) is used to store I/O and information about the print environment configuration (stored data even when the power is turned off).

OPC

Organic Photo Conductor (OPC) is a mechanism that makes a virtual image for print using a laser beam emitted from a laser printer. It is usually green or rust colored and has a cylinder shape. An imaging unit containing a drum slowly wears the drum surface during its usage in the printer, and it should be replaced appropriately due to wear from contact with the cartridge development brush, cleaning mechanism, and paper.

Originals

The first example of something, such as a document, photograph, or text which is copied, reproduced, or translated to produce additional copies. The original itself is not copied or derived from something else.

PCA

Printed Circuit Assembly (PCA). Once the printed circuit board (PCB) is complete, electronic components must be assembled to form a functional printed circuit assembly or PCA.

PCL

Printer Command Language (PCL) is a Page Description Language (PDL) developed by HP as a printer protocol. PCL has become an industry standard. Originally developed for early Inkjet printers, PCL has been released in varying levels for thermal, dot matrix printers and laser printers.

PDF

Portable Document Format (PDF) is a proprietary file format developed by Adobe Systems. A PDF represents two dimension documents in a device independent and resolution independent format.

PJL

Printer job language (PJL) is an integral part of printer configuration, in addition to the standard PCL and PostScript (PS). With standard cabling, the printer can use PJL to perform a variety of functions like dynamic I/O switching, context-sensitive switching, and isolation of print environment settings from one print job to the next.

PML

Printer management language (PML) allows remote configuration of the printer and status read-back from the printer through the I/O ports.

PostScript (PS)

PostScript (PS) is a Page Description Language (PDL) and programming language used primarily in electronic and desktop publishing. PostScript is run in an interpreter to generate an image.

PPM

Pages Per Minute (PPM) is a method of measurement for determining how fast a printer works, meaning the number of pages a printer can produce in one minute.

Print Media

Media like paper, envelopes, labels, and transparencies which can be used in a printer, scanner, fax, or copier.

Printer Driver

A program used to send commands and transfer data from the computer to the printer.

Printhead (PageWide)

The printhead converts the digital firing instructions from the printer electronics into properly formed and timed microscopic drops of the four ink colors.

Printhead Wiper (PageWide)

The printhead wiper system keeps the printhead nozzles firing correctly throughout the life of the printer as it performs the wiping and capping functions. The wiping function cleans the nozzles of ink residue and particulates. The capping function keeps the nozzles moist during storage and when the printer is idle.

Protocol

A convention or standard that controls or enables the connection, communication, and data transfer between two computing endpoints.

RAM

Random Access Memory (RAM) is the printer memory device where the data in current use is kept so it can be quickly retrieved by the device's processor. This memory is an important factor in avoiding errors and printing documents properly. Printer memory is used to store, and process print jobs as they are sent to the printer from a computer. After printing, the job is cleared from the memory to make room for more print jobs. Printer memory is directly linked to two print characteristics: speed and print quality. More memory allows you to print faster and print larger, high-quality graphics.

REDI sensor

An optical reflective edge detection interrupter (REDI) sensor. Usually used in conjunction with mirrors to sense the presence or absence of paper in the paper path. These sensors are carefully aligned and calibrated at the factory, so care must be taken when servicing these sensors.

Resolution

The sharpness of an image is measured in Dots Per Inch (DPI). The higher the DPI, the greater the resolution.

SCB

The Scanner Control Board (SCB) controls the functions of the image scanner components in the Sub Scanner Assembly (SSA).

Service fluid and aerosol management systems (PageWide)

There are two types of service fluid, shipping fluid and ink. The service fluid management system is contained entirely within the duplex module. Service fluid is discharged as droplets from the printhead, and then collected in a container inside the duplex module. Some of the droplets are called aerosol because they are lighter than air. Aerosol can float inside the printer and collect on the lens of optical sensors, producing false failures. The aerosol management system transports the aerosol and collects it in a safe place. Aerosol management consists of an aerosol fan, mounted on the rear wall of the air flow assembly, which creates air flow that pulls the aerosol through the holes in the platen and into the aerosol filter inside the duplex module.

SFP

A single-function printer only processes print jobs sent from a host computer or from an USB port on the printer.

SMB

Server Message Block (SMB) is a network protocol mainly applied to share files, printers, serial ports, and miscellaneous communications between nodes on a network. SMB also provides an authenticated inter-process communication mechanism.

SMTP

Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) is the standard for email transmissions across the internet. SMTP is a relatively simple, text-based protocol, where one or more recipient of a message is specified, and the message text is transferred. It is a client server protocol where the client transmits an email message to the server.

SODIMM

Small outline dual in-line memory module (SODIMM) is a thin profile memory storage device (a smaller alternative to a standard DIMM device).

SSA

The Sub-Scanner Assembly is the image scanner component of the Integrated Scanner Assembly (ISA, which includes the document feeder and the image scanner).

Subnet Mask

The subnet mask is used in conjunction with the network address to determine which part of the address is the network address and which part is the host address.

TCP/IP

The Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) and the Internet Protocol (IP) are the set of communications protocols that implement the protocol stack on which the internet and most commercial networks run.

TIFF

Tagged Image File Format (TIFF) is a variable-resolution bit mapped image format. TIFF describes image data that typically come from scanners. TIFF images use tags, keywords defining the characteristics of the image that is included in the file. This flexible and platform-independent format can be used for pictures that have been made by various image processing applications.

Toner Cartridge

A bottle or container that holds toner, which is used in a machine like a printer. Toner is a powder used in laser printers and photocopiers. The toner forms the text and images on printed paper. Toner can be fused by a combination of heat/pressure from the fuser, causing it to bind the fibers in the paper.

TPM

The HP Trusted Platform Module (TPM) is a security accessory for printers. The TPM strengthens protection of encrypted credentials and data stored on your printer. Certificate private keys are both generated by and protected by the TPM. Once installed, the printer and the TPM are sealed, and the printer owns the TPM. The TPM may not be moved to another device without losing its ownership from the original printer. Installing a TPM accessory might necessitate a firmware upgrade. The TPM prevents the printer from starting if the TPM is missing. If the TPM is removed from the printer, a control-panel error message appears indicating that the TPM is missing.



NOTE: The TPM is not a service part for some printer models. Check the printer service manual to determine if the TPM is a replaceable service part.

TWAIN

An industry standard for scanners and software. By using a TWAIN compliant scanner with TWAIN-compliant software, a scan can be initiated from the program. TWAIN is an image capture API for Microsoft Windows and Apple Macintosh operating systems.

URL

Uniform Resource Locator (URL) is the global address of documents and resources on the internet. The first part of the address indicates what protocol to use. The second part specifies the IP address or the domain name where the resource is located.

USB

Universal Serial Bus (USB) is a standard that was developed by the USB Implementers Forum, Inc., to connect computers and peripherals. Unlike the parallel port, USB is designed to concurrently connect a single computer USB port to multiple peripherals.

Walk-up USB

Some printers support direct printing from a USB flash drive (the walk-up USB port is usually near the control panel).

Watermark

A watermark is a recognizable image or pattern in paper that appears lighter when viewed by transmitted light. Watermarks were first introduced in Bologna, Italy in 1282. Watermarks have been used by paper makers to identify their product, and also on postage stamps, currency, and other government documents to discourage counterfeiting.

XPS

XML Paper Specification (XPS) is a specification for a Page Description Language (PDL) and a new document format developed by Microsoft. This has benefits for portable document and electronic documents. It is an XML-based specification based on a new print path and vector-based, device-independent document format.

ZIF Connector

Zero insertion force (ZIF) connectors use a mechanical locking method to secure Flat Flexible Cables (FFCs) to a Printed Circuit Assembly (PCA).

Index

Symbols/Numerics

100sh ADF
parts and diagrams 2779
100sh ADF 1 of 2
parts 2779
100sh ADF 2 of 2
parts 2780
200sh ADF
parts and diagrams 2777
200sh ADF 1 of 2
parts 2777
200sh ADF 2 of 2
parts 2778
520-sheet trays
jams 329
76.00.24 341

A

accelerator 105
accelerator card
removal and
replacement 1095
accessories
dimensions 1, 6
weight 1, 6
acoustic specifications 1, 6
actuator-bin full exit
removal and replacement 784
ADF
100-sheet 1201
removal and replacement 1147
ADF - 00sh Flow
ADF roller 124
ADF - 100-sheet
ADF unit 136
ADF workflow 137
ADF - 100-sheet Flow
ADF unit 136
ADF workflow 137
ADF - 100sh 135
ADF cover 135
ADF PCA 144
ADF sensors 137
document feeder simplex
operation 141
lift plate unit 139
pickup unit 140

scan and exit unit 140
ADF - 100sh Flow 135
ADF cover 135
ADF PCA 144
ADF roller 138
ADF sensors 137
ADF solenoid 138
ADF system motor 138
document feeder simplex
operation 141
lift plate unit 139
pickup unit 140
scan and exit unit 140
ADF - 200-sheet
ADF unit 121
ADF - 200-sheet Flow
ADF unit 121
ADF - 200sh 120
ADF cover 121
ADF image scanner
cleaning 134, 144
ADF PCA 134
ADF sensors 123
ADF system overview 122, 137
ADF workflow 122
deskew operation 132, 142
deskew unit 128
document feeder hinges
operation 133, 143
document feeder simplex
operation 130
lift plate unit 125
pickup unit 126
scan and exit unit 129
ADF - 200sh Flow 120
ADF cover 121
ADF image scanner
cleaning 134, 144
ADF PCA 134
ADF sensors 123
ADF solenoid 124
ADF system motor 124
ADF system overview 122, 137
ADF workflow 122
deskew operation 132, 142
deskew unit 128
document feeder hinges
operation 133, 143

document feeder simplex
operation 130
lift plate unit 125
pickup unit 126
scan and exit unit 129
ADF cover - 100sh 135
ADF cover - 100sh Flow 135
ADF cover - 200sh 121
ADF cover - 200sh Flow 121
ADF FFC
automatic document
feeder 1174
ADF image scanner cleaning -
200sh 134, 144
ADF image scanner cleaning -
200sh Flow 134, 144
ADF PCA - 100sh 144
ADF PCA - 100sh Flow 144
ADF PCA - 200sh 134
ADF PCA - 200sh Flow 134
ADF roller - 100sh Flow 138
ADF roller - 200sh Flow 124
ADF sensor FFC
automatic document
feeder 1213
ADF sensors - 100sh 137
ADF sensors - 100sh Flow 137
ADF sensors - 200sh 123
ADF sensors - 200sh Flow 123
ADF solenoid - 100sh Flow 138
ADF solenoid - 200sh Flow 124
ADF system motor - 100sh
Flow 138
ADF system motor - 200sh
Flow 124
ADF system overview -
200sh 122, 137
ADF system overview - 200sh
Flow 122, 137
ADF unit - 100-sheet 136
ADF unit - 100-sheet Flow 136
ADF unit - 200-sheet 121
ADF unit - 200-sheet Flow 121
ADF workflow - 100-sheet 137
ADF workflow - 100-sheet
Flow 137
ADF workflow - 200sh 122
ADF workflow - 200sh Flow 122

ADF, 100sh
 parts and diagrams 2779
 ADF, 100sh 1 of 2
 parts 2779
 ADF, 100sh 2 of 2
 parts 2780
 ADF, 200-sheet
 dn bundle 1147
 ADF, 200sh
 parts and diagrams 2777
 ADF, 200sh 1 of 2
 parts 2777
 ADF, 200sh 2 of 2
 parts 2778
 ADF, CIS platen
 parts and diagrams 2781
 ADF, tarot platen
 parts and diagrams 2780
 after-service checklist 488, 489
 authorized service providers,
 parts 487
 automatic document feeder
 100-sheet 1201
 200-sheet dn bundle 1147
 removal and replacement 1147
 removal and replacement,
 5QJ90-67011,
 5QJ90-67012 1147
 automatic document feeder color
 panel
 removal and
 replacement 1154, 1201
 automatic document feeder
 damper module
 removal and replacement,
 5QJ90-67011,
 5QJ90-67012 1194
 automatic document feeder FFC
 removal and replacement 1174
 automatic document feeder hinge
 kit
 removal and replacement, 100-
 sheet ADF 1223
 removal and replacement,
 5QJ90-67011,
 5QJ90-67012 1186
 automatic document feeder image
 scanner
 removal and
 replacement 1166
 automatic document feeder
 pickup roller kit
 removal and replacement, 100-
 sheet ADF 1203
 removal and replacement,
 5QJ90-67011,
 5QJ90-67012 1162
 automatic document feeder power
 cable
 removal and
 replacement 1180
 removal and replacement, 100-
 sheet ADF 1218
 automatic document feeder
 printed circuit assembly
 removal and replacement, 100-
 sheet ADF 1206
 removal and replacement,
 5QJ90-67011,
 5QJ90-67012 1168
 automatic document feeder
 sensor FFC
 removal and
 replacement 1213
 automatic document feeder white
 backing
 removal and
 replacement 1157, 1228

B
 backup error
 32.WXYZ error 302, 339
 reset error 302, 339
 restore error 302, 339
 base printer
 covers, remove and
 replace 490
 covers, service parts 2755
 developer, service parts 2769
 drum, service parts 2769
 duct assembly, service
 parts 2766
 electrical mechanical
 relationships 2857
 exit unit, service parts 2763
 fan, service parts 2771
 fuser, service parts 2770
 imaging unit, service
 parts 2769
 laser scanner unit, service
 parts 2768
 parts and diagrams 2755
 PCA, service parts 2772
 registration and loop sensors,
 service parts 2761
 remove and replace parts 490
 sensor, service parts 2771
 toner cartridge, service
 parts 2765
 toner collection unit, service
 parts 2767
 tray 1, service parts 2758
 tray 2, 3, service parts 2759
 Base printer 35
 before servicing
 ESD precautions 487
 how to use part lists 487
 ordering parts 487
 remove and replace 487
 service approach 487
 bin, output
 locating 1
 black developer unit.
 removal and replacement 971
 booklet diverter unit 247
 operation 248
 overview 247
 booklet end fence unit 233
 operation 235
 overview 233
 booklet entrance unit 230
 overview 230
 booklet exit unit 249
 overview 249
 booklet finisher
 booklet maker, remove and
 replace 2010
 diverter unit, remove and
 replace 2257
 electrical mechanical
 relationships
 diagrams 2891
 end fence unit, remove and
 replace 2083
 entrance unit, remove and
 replace 2031
 fold unit, remove and
 replace 2199
 miscellaneous parts, remove
 and replace 2316
 output tray unit, remove and
 replace 2291
 paddle unit, remove and
 replace 2071
 parts and diagrams 2808
 PCA, remove and replace 2301
 presser unit, remove and
 replace 2106
 stapler unit, remove and
 replace 2180
 booklet finisher 1 of 5
 parts 2808

booklet finisher 3 of 5
 parts 2812
 booklet finisher 4 of 5
 parts 2814
 booklet finisher 5 of 5
 parts 2815
 booklet finisher booklet blade
 home sensor
 removal and
 replacement 2228
 booklet finisher booklet blade
 motor
 removal and
 replacement 2244
 booklet finisher booklet diverter
 home sensor
 removal and
 replacement 2273
 booklet finisher booklet fold motor
 removal and
 replacement 2253
 booklet finisher booklet fold motor
 assembly
 removal and
 replacement 2249
 booklet finisher booklet maker
 removal and
 replacement 2010
 booklet finisher booklet maker
 PCA
 removal and
 replacement 2306
 booklet finisher c-fold blade
 assembly
 removal and
 replacement 2199
 booklet finisher c-fold blade home
 sensor
 removal and replacement 2211
 booklet finisher c-fold blade motor
 removal and
 replacement 2222
 booklet finisher c-fold blade motor
 assembly
 removal and
 replacement 2217
 booklet finisher diverter
 removal and
 replacement 2257
 booklet finisher diverter motor
 removal and
 replacement 2285
 booklet finisher diverter motor
 assembly
 removal and
 replacement 2279
 booklet finisher end fence home
 sensor
 removal and
 replacement 2083
 booklet finisher end fence motor
 removal and
 replacement 2095
 booklet finisher entrance motor
 removal and
 replacement 2060
 booklet finisher entrance sensor
 removal and
 replacement 2043
 booklet finisher entrance unit
 removal and
 replacement 2031
 booklet finisher entrance-presser
 motor assembly
 removal and
 replacement 2056
 booklet finisher harness guide
 removal and
 replacement 2019
 booklet finisher main PCA
 removal and
 replacement 2301
 booklet finisher output tray
 removal and
 replacement 2291
 booklet finisher output tray sensor
 removal and
 replacement 2293
 booklet finisher paddle home
 sensor
 removal and
 replacement 2071
 booklet finisher paddle motor
 removal and
 replacement 2078
 booklet finisher paddle motor
 assembly
 removal and
 replacement 2074
 booklet finisher presser home
 sensor
 removal and
 replacement 2106
 booklet finisher staple cartridge
 removal and
 replacement 2197
 booklet finisher stapler
 removal and
 replacement 2180
 booklet finisher tamper
 removal and replacement 2111
 booklet finisher tamper home
 sensor
 removal and
 replacement 2128
 booklet finisher tamper motor
 removal and
 replacement 2145
 booklet finisher tamper sensor
 removal and
 replacement 2162
 booklet finisher, only
 removal and
 replacement 2009
 booklet fold unit 242
 operation 245
 overview 242
 booklet maker 171, 230
 booklet diverter unit 247
 booklet end fence unit 233
 booklet entrance unit 230
 booklet exit unit 249
 booklet finisher, remove and
 replace 2010
 booklet fold unit 242
 booklet output tray unit 250
 booklet paddle unit 232
 booklet presser unit 235
 booklet stapler unit 239
 booklet tamper unit 237
 bridge unit 190
 covers 177
 detailed specifications 171
 overview 179
 stapler-stacker finisher 191
 booklet maker PCA 256
 booklet or stapler/stacker finishers
 removal and
 replacement 1469
 booklet output tray unit 250
 operation 252
 overview 250
 booklet paddle unit 232
 overview 232
 booklet presser unit 235
 operation 237
 overview 235
 booklet staple unit
 staple and staple
 cartridge 240
 booklet stapler unit 239

- operation 241
 - overview 239
 - booklet tamper unit 237
 - operation 239
 - overview 237
 - bridge unit 190
 - external finisher, remove and replace 1533
 - overview 190
 - buffer unit 225
 - external finisher, remove and replace 1998
 - operation 228
 - overview 225
- C**
- cables
 - automatic document feeder, power 1180
 - automatic document feeder, power, 100-sheet ADF 1218
 - Calibrate/Cleaning menu, control panel 302, 313, 342
 - cassette 38
 - caution iv
 - certificate of volatility 2910
 - Channel partners
 - WISE 332
 - checklists
 - after-service 488, 489
 - preservice 488, 489
 - CIS platen
 - cover 148
 - motor 149
 - parts 2782
 - parts and diagrams 2781
 - PCA 150
 - sensor 149
 - CIS Platen 148
 - CIS platen cover 148
 - CIS platen motor 149
 - CIS platen PCA 150
 - CIS platen sensor 149
 - cleaning page 302, 313, 342
 - cleaning the paper dust stick 26
 - cleaning the scan glass 26
 - clutches
 - feed clutch 713
 - registration clutch 741
 - Tray 1 clutch 605
 - Color Toner Density (CTD) Second Transfer (T2) unit overview 87
 - Color Toner Density (CTD) sensor operation 88
 - component test
 - special mode test 302, 310, 312
 - components
 - diagnostic tests 302, 310, 312
 - connector error
 - 65.WX.YZ error 302, 340
 - control panel 94, 96
 - 10.1 inch 94
 - 8 inch 94, 96
 - Advanced Print Quality Pages 485
 - Altitude Adjustment 472
 - Auto Tone Adjustment 476
 - Backup/Restore 476
 - Backup/Restore menu 302, 313, 342
 - Buckle Adjustment 447
 - Calibrate Scanner 477
 - Calibrate/Cleaning menu 302, 313, 342
 - Cold Reset Paper 444
 - Component tests 466
 - Configuration/Status Pages 480
 - Consumables Access Control 445
 - Copy menu (MFP only) 302, 313, 342, 397
 - Counts 441
 - CPMD 302
 - CTD Sensor Cleaning 477
 - Custom Color 476
 - Engine NVM Read/Write 457
 - Event Log 440, 485
 - Fax menu (fax models only) 302, 313, 342, 434
 - Fax Reports 481
 - Fax Service Log 482
 - Fax Speaker Mode 482
 - Fax T.30 Trace Report 481
 - Fax V.29 Speed 475
 - Fax V.34 482
 - Finisher Adjustment 448
 - Footer 474
 - Humidity 473
 - Import/Export 476
 - JBIG Compression 482
 - License Management 477
 - locating 1
 - locating features 4
 - Low Alerts 444
 - Low-temperature Idling Mode 472
 - Maintenance menu 475
 - Manual Tone Adjustment 477
 - Other Pages 481
 - overview 94, 96
 - Paper Path Page 485
 - Part Replacement Count 474
 - PQ Troubleshooting Pages 482
 - Print Adjustment 446
 - Print menu 302, 313, 342, 438
 - PTT Test Mode 474
 - remove and replace parts 1062
 - Reports menu 302, 313, 342, 359
 - Reset Engine NVM 456
 - Reset Supplies 475
 - Reset Supplies Level 444
 - Retrieve Diagnostic Data 485
 - Retrieve Fax Diagnostic Data 486
 - Run Fax Test 485
 - Scan menu 406
 - Scan menu (MFP only) 302, 313, 342
 - Scanner Settings 442
 - Sensors 458
 - Serial Number 443
 - Service ID 443
 - Service menu 439
 - Service Reports 446
 - Settings menu 302, 313, 342, 361
 - Software Version 445
 - Supplies menu 302, 313, 342, 438
 - Test Support 474
 - TR Control Mode 471
 - Trays menu 302, 313, 342, 439
 - troubleshooting menu 302, 313, 342
 - Troubleshooting menu 480
 - USB Firmware Upgrade 477
 - USB Firmware Upgrade menu 302, 313, 342
 - control panel base PCA 115
 - control panel diagnostic flowcharts 302, 305
 - control panel menus 302, 313, 342
 - control panel messages 339
 - control panel PCA 115
 - control panel base PCA 115
 - control panel PCA - 10.1 inch 116
 - control panel PCA - 8 inch 116

control panel PCA - 10.1 inch 116
control panel PCA - 8 inch 116
control panel, 10.1 inch
removal and
replacement 1062
controller cover
removal and replacement 497
conventions used iv
Copy menu (MFP only), control
panel 302, 313, 342, 397
copy specifications 1, 6
CoV
certificate of volatility 2910
cover
inner finisher 262
covers
base printer, remove and
replace 490
base printer, service
parts 2755
controller 497
DCF left cover 1286
DCF rear cover 1285
DCF right cover 1283
DCF right door 1288
DCF Tray 4, 5 color panel 1291
DCF, remove and replace 1283
document feeder color
panel 1154, 1201
dual cassette feeder left
cover 1286
dual cassette feeder rear
cover 1285
dual cassette feeder right
cover 1283
dual cassette feeder right
door 1288
dual cassette feeder Tray 4, 5
color panel 1291
exit cover stacker 541
exit rear cover 499
exit stacker upper cover 563
external finisher, remove and
replace 1469
flatbed scanner 1241, 1270
front cover 554
front cover CMF panel 558
front lower cover 551
hardware integration pocket
[HIP] 537
HCI, remove and replace 1369
high capacity input front CMF
panel 1377
high capacity input left
cover 1373
high capacity input rear
cover 1371
high capacity input right
cover 1369
high capacity input right
door 1375
HIP 537
inner cover 543
inner finisher, remove and
replace 2326
left cover 508
left top cover 503
left upper cover 504
middle left 539
middle upper cover 512
parts 2755
power key 532
rear lower 494
rear upper 490
removal and replacement,
external finisher booklet
front cover 1531
removal and replacement,
external finisher booklet
output tray 1492
removal and replacement,
external finisher
caster 1526
removal and replacement,
external finisher caster
cover 1472
removal and replacement,
external finisher caster fix
nut 1529
removal and replacement,
external finisher front
cover 1501
removal and replacement,
external finisher front
door 1469
removal and replacement,
external finisher front lower
left cover 1517
removal and replacement,
external finisher front lower
right cover 1522
removal and replacement,
external finisher left lower
cover 1474
removal and replacement,
external finisher left upper
cover 1482
removal and replacement,
external finisher main output
tray 1497
removal and replacement,
external finisher punch
cover 1506
removal and replacement,
external finisher rear
cover 1499
removal and replacement,
external finisher right upper
cover 1514
removal and replacement,
external finisher shaft hinge -
door 1524
removal and replacement,
external finisher top
cover 1508
removal and replacement,
external finisher top
door 1510
removal and replacement,
external finisher top jam
cover assembly 1582
removal and replacement,
external finisher top output
tray 1494
removal and replacement, HCI
front CMF panel 1377
removal and replacement, HCI
left cover 1373
removal and replacement, HCI
rear cover 1371
removal and replacement, HCI
right cover 1369
removal and replacement, HCI
right door 1375
removal and replacement, inner
finisher front cover
assembly 2326
removal and replacement, inner
finisher middle cover
assembly 2336
removal and replacement, inner
finisher output tray
assembly 2346
removal and replacement, inner
finisher PCA cover 2350
removal and replacement, inner
finisher punch cover
assembly 2342
removal and replacement, inner
finisher rear base
cover 2363
removal and replacement, inner
finisher rear punch
cover 2366

- removal and replacement, inner finisher sub stayassembly 2353
- removal and replacement, inner finisher top cover assembly 2330
- right door assembly 567
- right door front damper 576
- right door front link 571
- right front cover 521
- right middle 528
- right middle assembly 524
- right rear cover 519
- right upper 513
- stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker 177
- theory of operation 35, 36
- tie stoppers 556
- tray 1 unit 582
- tray 2 color panel 561
- tray 3 color panel 561
- CPMD 339
- CTD
 - electrical mechanical relationships diagrams 2868
- ctd sensor removal and replacement 758
- current settings pages 302, 313

D

- DC controller communication error 55.WX.YZ error 302, 340
- DC controller firmware error 70.WX.YZ error 302, 340
- DCF 35
 - covers, remove and replace 1283
 - harness, remove and replace 1343
 - motor, remove and replace 1330
 - PCA, remove and replace 1343
 - roller, remove and replace 1301
 - sensor, remove and replace 1304
 - unit parts, remove and replace 1299
- DCF (workgroup) removal and replacement 1283

- DCF 1 of 2 parts 2784
- DCF 2 of 2 parts 2786
- DCF caster wheel removal and replacement 1294
- DCF feed drive assembly removal and replacement 1338
- DCF feed motor removal and replacement 1341
- DCF feed sensor removal and replacement 1315
- DCF holder wheel kit removal and replacement 1296
- DCF IF harness removal and replacement 1354
- DCF left cover removal and replacement 1286
- DCF motor harness removal and replacement 1357
- DCF PCA removal and replacement 1348
- DCF pickup drive assembly removal and replacement 1330
- DCF rear cover removal and replacement 1285
- DCF right cover removal and replacement 1283
- DCF right door removal and replacement 1288
- DCF right door open switch holder removal and replacement 1351
- DCF sensor harness removal and replacement 1359
- DCF size harness removal and replacement 1366
- DCF Tray 4 paper empty sensor removal and replacement 1312

- DCF Tray 4 paper stack height sensor removal and replacement 1312
- DCF Tray 4 pickup assembly removal and replacement 1306
- DCF Tray 4 pickup motor removal and replacement 1333
- DCF Tray 4, 5 cassette removal and replacement 1299
- DCF Tray 4, 5 color panel removal and replacement 1291
- DCF Tray 4, 5 paper size sensors removal and replacement 1304
- DCF Tray 4, 5 rollers removal and replacement 1301
- DCF Tray 5 paper empty sensor removal and replacement 1327
- DCF Tray 5 paper stack height sensor removal and replacement 1327
- DCF Tray 5 pickup assembly removal and replacement 1320
- DCF Tray 5 pickup motor removal and replacement 1336
- DCF tray heaters removal and replacement 1344
- DCF, Tray 4, 5 152
 - cover 152
 - feeding system workflow 153
 - motor operation 159
 - motors 157
 - operation 158
 - PCA 160
 - roller 154
 - sensors 155
 - unit 154
- decoding message 302
- defeating interlocks 302, 310, 311
- definitions and terms glossary 2913

Department Dual Cassette Feeder (DCF, Tray 4, 5)
 cover 152
 roller 154
 unit 154
 Department High Capacity Input tray (HCI, Tray 4)
 cover 160
 motor 165
 motor operation 168
 operation 167
 PCA 169
 roller 163
 sensors 164
 unit 162
 deskew operation - 200sh 132, 142
 deskew operation - 200sh Flow 132, 142
 deskew unit - 200sh 128
 deskew unit - 200sh Flow 128
 determine problem source 302
 developer
 parts 2769
 developer and drum
 remove and replace parts 966
 developer and drum unit
 driving 87
 developer and drum unit
 operation 86
 developer and drum unit
 overview 84
 developer fan assembly
 removal and
 replacement 1032
 developer motor
 removal and replacement 994
 developer powder.
 removal and replacement 976
 developer unit 84
 developer unit.
 removal and replacement 971
 diagnostics
 adjustment 302
 component 302, 310, 312
 engine 302, 310, 311
 fax 302
 image management 302
 LED 302, 310
 print test patterns 302
 scanner 302
 diagrams
 use parts lists and
 diagrams 487
 digital sending error (firmware)
 44.WX.YZ error 302, 340
 dimensions
 accessories 1, 6
 printer 1, 6
 diverter unit 274
 booklet finisher, remove and
 replace 2257
 operation 275
 overview 274
 diverter unit operation 275
 diverter unit overview 274
 document feeder
 jams 326
 locating 1
 document feeder / image scanner
 assembly
 parts and diagrams 2774
 document feeder error
 31.WX.YZ error 302, 339
 document feeder hinges operation
 - 200sh 133, 143
 document feeder hinges operation
 - 200sh Flow 133, 143
 document feeder simplex
 operation - 100sh 141
 document feeder simplex
 operation - 100sh Flow 141
 document feeder simplex
 operation - 200sh 130
 document feeder simplex
 operation - 200sh Flow 130
 document feeder skew (LX du
 models) 302
 drive system 35
 drivers, supported 1, 6
 drives
 main drive assembly 685
 tray 2 pickup drive
 assembly 646
 tray 3 pickup drive
 assembly 654
 drum
 parts 2769
 drum CRUM PCA 113
 drum developer
 electrical mechanical
 relationships
 diagrams 2867
 drum motor
 removal and replacement 986
 drum unit 84
 removal and replacement 966
 dual cassette feeder 35
 covers, remove and
 replace 1283
 harness, remove and
 replace 1343
 motor, remove and
 replace 1330
 parts and diagrams 2784
 PCA, remove and
 replace 1343
 roller, remove and
 replace 1301
 sensor, remove and
 replace 1304
 unit parts, remove and
 replace 1299
 dual cassette feeder (workgroup)
 removal and
 replacement 1283
 dual cassette feeder 1 of 2
 parts 2784
 dual cassette feeder 2 of 2
 parts 2786
 dual cassette feeder caster wheel
 removal and
 replacement 1294
 dual cassette feeder feed drive
 assembly
 removal and
 replacement 1338
 dual cassette feeder feed motor
 removal and
 replacement 1341
 dual cassette feeder feed sensor
 removal and
 replacement 1315
 dual cassette feeder holder wheel
 kit
 removal and
 replacement 1296
 dual cassette feeder IF harness
 removal and
 replacement 1354
 dual cassette feeder left cover
 removal and
 replacement 1286
 dual cassette feeder motor
 harness
 removal and
 replacement 1357
 dual cassette feeder PCA
 removal and
 replacement 1348

- dual cassette feeder pickup drive assembly removal and replacement 1330
 - dual cassette feeder rear cover removal and replacement 1285
 - dual cassette feeder right cover removal and replacement 1283
 - dual cassette feeder right door removal and replacement 1288
 - dual cassette feeder right door open switch holder removal and replacement 1351
 - dual cassette feeder sensor harness removal and replacement 1359
 - dual cassette feeder size harness removal and replacement 1366
 - dual cassette feeder Tray 4 paper empty sensor removal and replacement 1312
 - dual cassette feeder Tray 4 paper stack height sensor removal and replacement 1312
 - dual cassette feeder Tray 4 pickup assembly removal and replacement 1306
 - dual cassette feeder Tray 4 pickup motor removal and replacement 1333
 - dual cassette feeder Tray 4, 5 cassette removal and replacement 1299
 - dual cassette feeder Tray 4, 5 color panel removal and replacement 1291
 - dual cassette feeder Tray 4, 5 paper size sensors removal and replacement 1304
 - dual cassette feeder Tray 4, 5 rollers removal and replacement 1301
 - dual cassette feeder Tray 5 paper empty sensor removal and replacement 1327
 - dual cassette feeder Tray 5 paper stack height sensor removal and replacement 1327
 - dual cassette feeder Tray 5 pickup assembly removal and replacement 1320
 - dual cassette feeder Tray 5 pickup motor removal and replacement 1336
 - dual cassette feeder tray heaters removal and replacement 1344
 - duct assembly parts 2766
 - duct unit remove and replace parts 884
 - duct unit K removal and replacement 884
 - duplex assembly removal and replacement 794
 - duplex jam sensor removal and replacement 800
 - duplex motor removal and replacement 809
 - duplex unit 66
 - driving 69
 - operation 68
 - overview 66
 - remove and replace parts 794
 - duplex unit driving 69
 - duplex unit operation 68
 - duplex unit overview 66
 - duplexer error 69.WX.YZ error 302, 340
- E**
- easy-access USB port locating 1
 - echo PCA 109 removal and replacement 1107
 - ejector unit 216, 291
 - external finisher, remove and replace 1843
 - inner finisher, remove and replace 2629
 - operation 218, 293
 - overview 216, 291
 - ejector unit operation 293
 - ejector unit overview 291
 - electrical mechanical relationships
 - base printer 2857
 - electrical mechanical relationships diagrams 2857
 - booklet finisher 2891
 - CTD 2868
 - drum developer 2867
 - exit unit 2861
 - fuser 2869
 - inner finisher 2881
 - input devices 2880
 - lsu 2866
 - output devices 2881
 - PCA 2872
 - registration and loop sensors 2860
 - sensor and fan 2870
 - stapler-stacker finisher 2891
 - toner cartridge 2863
 - toner collection unit 2865
 - toner duct 2864
 - tray 1 2857
 - tray 2/3 2858
 - electrical specifications 1, 6
 - electrostatic discharge (ESD) 488
 - Embedded Jetdirect error 80.WX.YZ error 302, 341
 - eMMC 107
 - end fence unit 207, 283
 - booklet finisher, remove and replace 2083
 - external finisher, remove and replace 1699
 - inner finisher, remove and replace 2550
 - operation 208, 284
 - overview 207, 283
 - end fence unit operation 284
 - end fence unit overview 283
 - engine
 - control panel, remove and replace parts 1062
 - covers, remove and replace 490
 - covers, service parts 2755
 - developer and drum, remove and replace parts 966
 - developer, service parts 2769
 - diagnostics 302, 310, 311
 - drum, service parts 2769
 - duct assembly, service parts 2766

duct unit, remove and replace parts 884
 duplex unit, remove and replace parts 794
 environmental sensor, switch, and fan 1021
 exit unit, service parts 2763
 exit unit, remove and replace parts 779
 fan, service parts 2771
 feeding system, remove and replace parts 567
 feeding system, right door assemblies remove and replace parts 567
 feeding system, Tray 1 unit remove and replace parts 582
 feeding system, Tray 2-3 units remove and replace parts 620
 fuser unit, remove and replace parts 1002
 fuser, service parts 2770
 image creation, remove and replace parts 961
 imaging unit, service parts 2769
 laser scanner unit, remove and replace parts 961
 laser scanner unit, service parts 2768
 loop sensing unit, remove and replace parts 725
 LSU, remove and replace parts 961
 main PCAs, remove and replace parts 1065
 main printed circuit assembly, remove and replace parts 1065
 PCA, service parts 2772
 PCAs, remove and replace parts 1065
 power supply PCAs, remove and replace parts 1124
 power supply printed circuit assembly, remove and replace parts 1124
 printed circuit assembly, remove and replace parts 1065
 registration and loop sensors, service parts 2761
 registration unit, remove and replace parts 725
 remove and replace parts 490
 sensor, service parts 2771
 sub PCAs, remove and replace parts 1095
 sub printed circuit assembly, remove and replace parts 1095
 toner cartridge, remove and replace parts 815
 toner cartridge, service parts 2765
 toner collection unit, remove and replace parts 924
 toner collection unit, service parts 2767
 toner flow, remove and replace parts 815
 tray 1, service parts 2758
 tray 2, 3, service parts 2759
 engine error (LaserJet)
 46.WX.YZ error 302, 340
 63.WX.YZ error 302, 340
 engine error (PageWide)
 61.WX.YZ error 302, 340
 engine, printer parts and diagrams 2755
 entrance unit 191, 272
 booklet finisher, remove and replace 2031
 external finisher, remove and replace 1557
 inner finisher, remove and replace 2399
 overview 192, 272
 entrance unit overview 272
 environmental sensor 91
 environmental sensor, fan, switch overview 92
 environmental sensor, switch, and fan remove and replace parts 1021
 eraser PCA 114
 error
 fault 302
 ESD electrostatic discharge (ESD) 488
 Ethernet (RJ-45) locating 3
 event log 302, 313
 clear using touchscreen control panel 302, 313
 find links to information 316
 event log error (firmware)
 42.WX.YZ error 302, 340
 exit cover stacker removal and replacement 541
 exit motor removal and replacement 1017
 exit rear cover removal and replacement 499
 exit stack guide removal and replacement 792
 exit stacker upper cover removal and replacement 563
 exit unit 60, 276
 electrical mechanical relationships diagrams 2861
 inner finisher, remove and replace 2447
 overview 60, 276
 removal and replacement 779
 remove and replace parts 779
 exit unit 1 of 2 parts 2763
 exit unit 2 of 2 parts 2765
 exit unit driving 65
 exit unit operation 64
 exit unit overview 60, 276
 exploded parts views, use parts lists and diagrams 487
 external booklet 2 of 5 parts 2810
 external finisher
 bridge unit, remove and replace 1533
 buffer unit, remove and replace 1998
 covers, remove and replace 1469
 ejector unit, remove and replace 1843
 end fence unit, remove and replace 1699
 entrance unit, remove and replace 1557
 main exit unit, remove and replace 1645
 main output tray unit, remove and replace 1918
 paddle unit, remove and replace 1673
 paper holding unit, remove and replace 1961
 punch unit, remove and replace 1580

stapler unit, remove and
 replace 1807
 tamper unit, remove and
 replace 1741
 top exit unit, remove and
 replace 1609
 top output tray unit, remove and
 replace 1626
 tray diverter unit, remove and
 replace 1582
 external finisher booklet front
 cover
 removal and
 replacement 1531
 external finisher booklet output
 tray
 removal and
 replacement 1492
 external finisher bridge door
 sensor
 removal and
 replacement 1537
 external finisher bridge entrance
 sensor
 removal and
 replacement 1541
 external finisher bridge exit sensor
 removal and
 replacement 1546
 external finisher bridge motor
 removal and
 replacement 1552
 external finisher bridge unit
 removal and
 replacement 1534
 external finisher buffer motor
 removal and
 replacement 2005
 external finisher buffer solenoid
 assembly
 removal and
 replacement 1998
 external finisher caster
 removal and
 replacement 1526
 external finisher caster cover
 removal and
 replacement 1472
 external finisher caster fix nut
 removal and
 replacement 1529
 external finisher ejector 1 home
 sensor
 removal and
 replacement 1873
 external finisher ejector 1 motor
 sensor
 removal and
 replacement 1888
 external finisher ejector 2 motor
 sensor
 removal and
 replacement 1903
 external finisher ejector sensor
 removal and
 replacement 1856
 external finisher ejector unit
 removal and
 replacement 1843
 external finisher end fence home
 sensor
 removal and
 replacement 1699
 external finisher end fence motor
 removal and replacement 1718
 external finisher end fence motor
 assembly
 removal and replacement 1713
 external finisher entrance motor
 removal and
 replacement 1576
 external finisher entrance motor
 assembly
 removal and
 replacement 1572
 external finisher entrance sensor
 removal and
 replacement 1557
 external finisher exit motor
 removal and
 replacement 1623
 external finisher exit motor
 assembly
 removal and
 replacement 1619
 external finisher front cover
 removal and
 replacement 1501
 external finisher front door
 removal and
 replacement 1469
 external finisher front door switch
 removal and
 replacement 1667
 external finisher front lower left
 cover
 removal and replacement 1517
 external finisher front lower right
 cover
 removal and
 replacement 1522
 external finisher front paper
 holding sensor
 removal and
 replacement 1961
 external finisher front tamper
 removal and replacement 1741
 external finisher front tamper
 home sensor
 removal and
 replacement 1752
 external finisher front tamper
 motor
 removal and
 replacement 1763
 external finisher left lower cover
 removal and
 replacement 1474
 external finisher left upper cover
 removal and
 replacement 1482
 external finisher main exit cam
 home sensor
 removal and
 replacement 1657
 external finisher main exit cam
 motor
 removal and
 replacement 1662
 external finisher main exit cam
 motor assembly
 removal and
 replacement 1652
 external finisher main exit sensor
 removal and
 replacement 1645
 external finisher main output tray
 removal and
 replacement 1497,1918
 external finisher main output tray
 lower limit sensor
 removal and
 replacement 1932
 external finisher main output tray
 motor drive assembly
 removal and
 replacement 1948
 external finisher main output tray
 motor sensor
 removal and
 replacement 1944

external finisher main output tray
top of stack sensor
removal and
replacement 1920

external finisher main output tray
top of stack switch
removal and
replacement 1951

external finisher main output tray
top of stack switch guide
removal and
replacement 1723

external finisher main output tray
top of stack switch lower guide
removal and
replacement 1732

external finisher mounting
brackets
removal and
replacement 2316

external finisher paddle
removal and
replacement 1673

external finisher paddle home
sensor
removal and
replacement 1688

external finisher paddle motor
removal and
replacement 1694

external finisher paddle motor
assembly
removal and
replacement 1683

external finisher paper holding
home sensor
removal and
replacement 1974

external finisher paper holding
motor drive assembly
removal and
replacement 1986

external finisher punch cover
removal and
replacement 1506

external finisher punch unit
removal and
replacement 1580

external finisher rear cover
removal and
replacement 1499

external finisher rear paper
holding sensor
removal and
replacement 1961

external finisher rear tamper
removal and
replacement 1774

external finisher rear tamper home
sensor
removal and
replacement 1784

external finisher rear tamper
motor
removal and
replacement 1795

external finisher right upper cover
removal and replacement 1514

external finisher shaft hinge - door
removal and
replacement 1524

external finisher staple cartridge
removal and
replacement 1813

external finisher stapler front
sensor
removal and
replacement 1815

external finisher stapler manual
staple sensor
removal and
replacement 1829

external finisher stapler mid-front
sensor
removal and
replacement 1822

external finisher stapler mid-rear
sensor
removal and
replacement 1822

external finisher stapler position
motor
removal and
replacement 1835

external finisher stapler unit
removal and
replacement 1807

external finisher stapler/stacker or
booklet finishers
removal and
replacement 1469

external finisher top cover
removal and
replacement 1508

external finisher top door
removal and
replacement 1510

external finisher top door open
switch
removal and
replacement 1590

external finisher top exit sensor
removal and
replacement 1610

external finisher top jam cover
assembly
removal and
replacement 1582

external finisher top lower feed
assembly
removal and
replacement 1626

external finisher top output tray
removal and
replacement 1494

external finisher top output tray
paper full sensor
removal and
replacement 1638

external finisher tray diverter
removal and
replacement 1586

external finisher tray diverter cam
removal and
replacement 1594

external finisher tray diverter
home sensor
removal and
replacement 1602

external finisher tray extension
removal and
replacement 1635

external finisher, booklet maker
parts and diagrams 2808

external finisher, stapler/stacker
parts and diagrams 2801

F

fan error
58.WX.YZ error 302, 340

fans 91
FDB fan, removal and
replacement 1028
laser scanner unit fan 1044
LVPS fan 1028
parts 2771

fax card
removal and replacement 1121

Fax menu (fax models only), control
panel 302, 313, 342, 434

FDB
 removal and replacement 1134
 FDB fan
 removal and replacement 1028
 feed clutch
 removal and replacement 713
 feed motor
 Tray 2 53
 Tray 3 53
 feed regi MP motor
 removal and replacement 694
 feed roller
 Tray 2 53
 Tray 3 53
 feed sensor
 Tray 2 53
 Tray 3 53
 feeding system 35, 38
 cassette 38
 duplex unit driving 69
 duplex unit operation 68
 duplex unit overview 66
 exit unit driving 65
 exit unit operation 64
 exit unit overview 60
 job separator 63
 loop sensing overview 57
 main components and functions 38
 motors 41
 MP feeder assembly 38
 overview 38
 pickup unit 38
 registration unit 38, 59
 registration unit driving 60
 registration unit overview 57
 remove and replace parts 567
 right door assemblies, remove and replace parts 567
 roller 39
 rollers 38
 second exit unit driving 66
 second unit overview 62
 sensor, motor, and solenoid 38
 sensors 40
 solenoids 41
 Tray 1 42
 Tray 1 unit, remove and replace parts 582
 Tray 2 cassette 47
 Tray 2 pickup assembly 49
 Tray 2-3 units, remove and replace parts 620
 Tray 3 cassette 47
 Tray 3 pickup assembly 49
 workflow 38
 feeding system information 38, 47
 duplex unit 66
 exit unit 60
 loop sensing 57
 registration unit 57
 Tray 1 unit 42
 Tray 2 unit 47
 Tray 3 unit 47
 feeding system overview 38
 feeding system workflow 38
 finisher main PCA - shared 253
 firmware communication error 49.WX.YZ error 302, 340
 firmware install error 99.WX.YZ error 302, 341
 hard disk error 302, 341
 remote firmware upgrade error 302, 341
 flatbed CIS, FFC 68 pin
 removal and replacement 1279
 flatbed CIS, PCA
 removal and replacement 1272
 flatbed CIS, power cable
 removal and replacement 1275
 flatbed CIS, rear cover
 removal and replacement 1270
 flatbed CIS, whole unit
 removal and replacement 1264
 flatbed scanner
 covers 1241, 1270
 harness 1243, 1272
 PCA 1243, 1272
 sensor 1243, 1272
 whole unit replacement 1233, 1264
 flatbed scanner (CIS)
 removal and replacement 1264
 flatbed scanner (Tarot)
 removal and replacement 1233
 flatbed scanner system 35
 flatbed, FFC 50 pin
 removal and replacement 1247
 flatbed, FFC 68 pin
 removal and replacement 1252
 flatbed, open sensor
 removal and replacement 1261
 flatbed, PCA
 removal and replacement 1243
 flatbed, power cable
 removal and replacement 1256
 flatbed, rear cover
 removal and replacement 1241
 flatbed, whole unit
 removal and replacement 1234
 flow ADF skew (LX du models) 302
 fold unit
 booklet finisher, remove and replace 2199
 formatter 99
 locating 1, 2
 removal and replacement 1065
 formatter lights 302, 310
 front cover
 removal and replacement 554
 front cover CMF panel
 removal and replacement 558
 front door
 locating 1
 front door switch
 removal and replacement 1049
 front lower cover
 removal and replacement 551
 fuser
 electrical mechanical relationships diagrams 2869
 jams 331
 parts 2770
 fuser and exit drive assembly
 removal and replacement 1008
 fuser CRUM PCA 114
 fuser drive assembly 35
 fuser drive board
 removal and replacement 1134

- Fuser Drive Board (FDB) 119
 - fuser drive board fan
 - removal and replacement 1028
 - fuser driving 91
 - fuser error
 - 41.WX.YZ error 302, 340
 - laser scanner error 302, 340
 - paper path error 302, 340
 - fuser error (LaserJet)
 - 50.WX.YZ error 302, 340
 - fuser gap sensor 91
 - fuser motor
 - removal and replacement 1013
 - fuser out sensor
 - removal and replacement 769
 - fuser unit 88
 - driving 91
 - gap sensor 91
 - overview 88
 - removal and replacement 1002
 - remove and replace parts 1002
 - temperature control 90
 - fuser unit temperature control 90
- G**
- General Settings menu, control panel 302, 313, 342, 361
 - general specifications 1, 6
 - glass cleaning
 - image scanner and flat-bed glass 147, 149
 - glossary
 - terms and definitions 2913
- H**
- hard disk
 - removal and replacement 1091
 - hard disk cradle
 - removal and replacement 1079
 - hard disk drive 106
 - hard disk partition error
 - 98.WX.YZ error 302, 341
 - hard-disk drive rivet
 - removal and replacement 1077
 - hardware configuration 35, 97
 - accelerator 105
 - control panel base PCA 115
 - control panel PCA 115
 - control panel PCA - 8 inch 116
 - drum CRUM PCA 113
 - echo PCA 109
 - eMMC 107
 - eraser PCA 114
 - formatter 99
 - fuser CRUM PCA 114
 - Fuser Drive Board (FDB) 119
 - hard disk drive 106
 - High Voltage Power Supply (HVPS) 117
 - Island Of Data (IOD) 108
 - keyboard PCA 110
 - Lower Voltage Power Supply (LVPS) 118
 - overview 97
 - paper size sensor PCA 112
 - PCA overview 97
 - power key PCA 109
 - riser card 103
 - riser card for HDD 104
 - riser card for HDD and USB ports 104
 - riser card for HDD, USB ports, and accelerator board 105
 - storage 106
 - toner cartridge CRUM PCA 113
 - Toner Collection Unit full sensor PCA 112
 - Trusted Platform Module (TPM) 103
 - USB hub PCA 107
 - hardware configuration
 - information 97
 - hardware configuration control panel PCA - 10.1 inch 116
 - hardware integration pocket (HIP)
 - locating 1
 - hardware integration pocket (HIP)
 - is not functioning 302, 305, 309
 - hardware integration pocket [HIP]
 - removal and replacement 537
 - harnesses
 - DCF, remove and replace 1343
 - flatbed scanner 1243, 1272
 - HCI, remove and replace 1452
 - removal and replacement, DCF IF harness 1354
 - removal and replacement, dual cassette feeder IF harness 1354
 - removal and replacement, dual cassette feeder motor harness 1357
 - removal and replacement, dual cassette feeder sensor harness 1359
 - removal and replacement, dual cassette feeder size harness 1366
 - removal and replacement, high capacity input inner drawer IF 1466
 - removal and replacement, high capacity input main IF harness 1459
 - removal and replacement, high capacity input motor IF 1462
- HCI** 35
- covers, remove and replace 1369
 - harness, remove and replace 1452
 - motor, remove and replace 1428
 - PCA, remove and replace 1452
 - roller, remove and replace 1392
 - sensor, remove and replace 1395
 - unit parts, remove and replace 1383
- HCI (workgroup)**
- removal and replacement 1369
- HCI 1 of 2**
- parts 2788
- HCI 2 of 2**
- parts 2790
- HCI cassette**
- removal and replacement 1386
- HCI caster wheel**
- removal and replacement 1379
- HCI feed motor drive**
- removal and replacement 1443
- HCI feed sensor**
- removal and replacement 1395
- HCI front CMF panel**
- removal and replacement 1377

HCI gate solenoid home sensor
 removal and replacement 1421
 HCI holder wheel kit
 removal and replacement 1381
 HCI inner drawer IF
 removal and replacement 1466
 HCI knockup home sensor
 removal and replacement 1406
 HCI knockup plate
 removal and replacement 1437
 HCI left rear
 removal and replacement 1373
 HCI lift motor
 removal and replacement 1428
 HCI main IF harness
 removal and replacement 1459
 HCI motor IF
 removal and replacement 1462
 HCI paper gate
 removal and replacement 1440
 HCI PCA
 removal and replacement 1452
 HCI pickup assembly
 removal and replacement 1388
 HCI pickup motor drive
 removal and replacement 1446
 HCI right cover
 removal and replacement 1369
 HCI right door
 removal and replacement 1375
 HCI right door open switch holder
 removal and replacement 1424
 HCI right rear
 removal and replacement 1371
 HCI rollers
 removal and replacement 1392
 HCI shift gate solenoid
 removal and replacement 1448
 HCI shift motor
 removal and replacement 1428
 HCI shift plate
 removal and replacement 1432
 HCI shift tray empty sensor
 removal and replacement 1411
 HCI shift tray end sensor
 removal and replacement 1406
 HCI shift tray home sensor
 removal and replacement 1411
 HCI shift tray level sensor 1 and 2
 removal and replacement 1414
 HCI sub PCA
 removal and replacement 1455
 HCI Tray 4 paper empty sensor
 removal and replacement 1401
 HCI Tray 4 paper stack height sensor
 removal and replacement 1401
 HCI tray open sensor
 removal and replacement 1418
 HCI unit
 removal and replacement 1383
 HCI, Tray 4 160
 cover 160
 motor 165
 motor operation 168
 operation 167
 PCA 169
 roller 163
 sensors 164
 sub PCA 170
 unit 162
 workflow 161
 HDD
 removal and replacement 1091
 HDD, cradle
 removal and replacement 1079
 HDD, riser card and cradle
 removal and replacement 1071, 1085
 Help button
 locating 4
 Hi-Speed USB 2.0 printing port
 locating 3
 high capacity input
 covers, remove and replace 1369
 harness, remove and replace 1452
 motor, remove and replace 1428
 parts and diagrams 2788
 PCA, remove and replace 1452
 roller, remove and replace 1392
 sensor, remove and replace 1395
 unit parts, remove and replace 1383
 high capacity input (workgroup)
 removal and replacement 1369
 high capacity input 1 of 2
 parts 2788
 high capacity input 2 of 2
 parts 2790
 high capacity input cassette
 removal and replacement 1386
 high capacity input caster wheel
 removal and replacement 1379
 high capacity input feed motor drive
 removal and replacement 1443
 high capacity input feed sensor
 removal and replacement 1395
 high capacity input front CMF panel
 removal and replacement 1377
 high capacity input gate solenoid
 home sensor removal and replacement 1421
 holder wheel kit removal and replacement 1381
 inner drawer IF removal and replacement 1466

high capacity input knockup home sensor
 removal and replacement 1406
 high capacity input knockup plate
 removal and replacement 1437
 high capacity input left cover
 removal and replacement 1373
 high capacity input lift motor
 removal and replacement 1428
 high capacity input main IF harness
 removal and replacement 1459
 high capacity input motor IF
 removal and replacement 1462
 high capacity input paper gate
 removal and replacement 1440
 high capacity input PCA
 removal and replacement 1452
 high capacity input pickup assembly
 removal and replacement 1388
 high capacity input pickup motor drive
 removal and replacement 1446
 high capacity input rear cover
 removal and replacement 1371
 high capacity input right cover
 removal and replacement 1369
 high capacity input right door
 removal and replacement 1375
 high capacity input right door open switch holder
 removal and replacement 1424
 high capacity input rollers
 removal and replacement 1392
 high capacity input shift gate solenoid
 removal and replacement 1448
 high capacity input shift motor
 removal and replacement 1428
 high capacity input shift plate
 removal and replacement 1432
 high capacity input shift tray empty sensor
 removal and replacement 1411
 high capacity input shift tray end sensor
 removal and replacement 1406
 high capacity input shift tray home sensor
 removal and replacement 1411
 high capacity input shift tray level sensor 1 and 2
 removal and replacement 1414
 high capacity input sub PCA
 removal and replacement 1455
 high capacity input tray 35
 high capacity input Tray 4 paper empty sensor
 removal and replacement 1401
 high capacity input Tray 4 paper stack height sensor
 removal and replacement 1401
 high capacity input tray open sensor
 removal and replacement 1418
 high capacity input unit
 removal and replacement 1383
 High Voltage Power Supply (HVPS) 117
 high voltage power supply PCA 35
 high-voltage power supply removal and replacement 1124
 hinge kit
 automatic document feeder, 100-sheet ADF 1223
 automatic document feeder, 5QJ90-67011, 5QJ90-67012 1186
 Home button
 locating 4
 home button is unresponsive 302, 305, 308
 HP internal users
 WISE 332
 HP Jetdirect print server lights 302, 310
 HVPS
 removal and replacement 1124
I
 image creation 35, 79
 Color Toner Density (CTD)
 Second Transfer (T2) unit overview 87
 Color Toner Density(CTD) sensor operation 88
 developer and drum unit 84
 developer and drum unit driving 87
 developer and drum unit operation 86
 developer and drum unit overview 84
 fuser driving 91
 fuser gap sensor 91
 fuser unit 88
 fuser unit overview 88
 fuser unit temperature control 90
 Laser Scanning Unit (LSU) 82
 Laser Scanning Unit (LSU) operation 83
 Laser Scanning Unit (LSU) overview 82
 motor 81
 overview 79
 remove and replace parts 961
 Second Transfer (T2) Unit 87
 sensors 80
 workflow 79
 image creation information 79, 82, 84, 87, 88
 image quality 341
 black lines, vertical 302
 blurred image 302
 flow ADF or ADF skew (LX du models) 302
 foggy image 302
 jitter image 302
 light image 302
 light lines, vertical 302
 periodic black dots, horizontal 302
 periodic black lines, horizontal 302

periodic light/dark dots,
 horizontal 302
 periodic light/dark lines,
 horizontal 302
 poor fusing 302
 skewed image 302
 stain on back side 302
 standard tone, setting 302
 uneven pitch 302
 white lines, vertical 302
 image scanner
 covers, flatbed 1241, 1270
 harness, flatbed 1243, 1272
 PCA, flatbed 1243, 1272
 sensor, flatbed 1243, 1272
 whole unit replacement 1233,
 1264
 image scanner and flat-bed glass
 cleaning 147, 149
 image scanner assembly
 parts and diagrams 2774
 Image Scanner Assembly (ISA)
 ADF - 100sh 135
 ADF - 100sh Flow 135
 ADF - 200sh 120
 ADF - 200sh Flow 120
 CIS Platen 148
 Tarot Platen 145
 image scanner assembly/
 document feeder
 parts and diagrams 2774
 imaging unit
 parts 2769
 individual component
 diagnostics 302, 310
 information
 general 302
 print reports 302
 software version 302
 supply status 302
 inner cover
 removal and replacement 543
 inner finisher 258
 cover 262
 covers, remove and
 replace 2326
 detailed specifications 258
 diverter unit 274
 ejector unit 291
 ejector unit, remove and
 replace 2629
 electrical mechanical
 relationships
 diagrams 2881
 end fence unit 283
 end fence unit, remove and
 replace 2550
 entrance unit 272
 entrance unit, remove and
 replace 2399
 exit unit 276
 exit unit, remove and
 replace 2447
 main PCA 298
 output tray 294
 output tray, remove and
 replace 2637
 overview 264
 paddle unit 280
 paddle unit, remove and
 replace 2523
 paper holding unit 294
 paper holding unit, remove and
 replace 2637
 paper support unit 278
 paper support unit, remove and
 replace 2485
 parts and diagrams 2792
 PCA 298
 PCA, remove and replace 2715
 punch unit 269
 punch unit, remove and
 replace 2384
 rail, remove and replace 2319
 rear joint PCA 300
 removal and
 replacement 2318, 2319
 staple and staple
 cartridge 289
 stapler unit 287
 stapler unit, remove and
 replace 2602
 switch, remove and
 replace 2715
 tamper unit 285
 tamper unit, remove and
 replace 2561
 whole unit, remove and
 replace 2319
 inner finisher 1 of 5
 parts 2792
 inner finisher 2 of 5
 parts 2793
 inner finisher 3 of 5
 parts 2795
 inner finisher 4 of 5
 parts 2797
 inner finisher 5 of 5
 parts 2799
 inner finisher detailed
 specifications 258
 inner finisher docking sensor
 removal and
 replacement 2751
 inner finisher ejector
 removal and
 replacement 2629
 inner finisher end fence sensor
 removal and
 replacement 2550
 inner finisher entrance motor
 removal and
 replacement 2414
 inner finisher entrance motor
 assembly
 removal and
 replacement 2404
 inner finisher entrance motor
 timing belt
 removal and
 replacement 2424
 inner finisher entrance roller
 removal and
 replacement 2429
 inner finisher entrance sensor
 removal and
 replacement 2399
 inner finisher exit bin full
 removal and
 replacement 2381
 inner finisher exit motor
 removal and
 replacement 2480
 inner finisher exit motor assembly
 removal and
 replacement 2476
 inner finisher exit roller assembly
 removal and
 replacement 2447
 inner finisher exit sensor
 removal and
 replacement 2456
 inner finisher exit sensor actuator
 removal and
 replacement 2466
 inner finisher front cover assembly
 removal and
 replacement 2326
 inner finisher front cover switch
 removal and
 replacement 2736
 inner finisher front paper support
 removal and
 replacement 2516

inner finisher front tamper
 removal and
 replacement 2561
 inner finisher front tamper home
 sensor
 removal and
 replacement 2575
 inner finisher front tamper motor
 removal and
 replacement 2568
 inner finisher guide rails
 removal and
 replacement 2322
 inner finisher hole punch
 removal and
 replacement 2384
 inner finisher lock release handle
 removal and
 replacement 2368
 inner finisher main interface
 harness
 removal and
 replacement 2370
 inner finisher main paddle
 assembly
 removal and
 replacement 2523
 inner finisher main paddle home
 sensor
 removal and
 replacement 2539
 inner finisher main paddle motor
 assembly
 removal and
 replacement 2546
 inner finisher main PCA 298
 inner finisher middle cover
 assembly
 removal and
 replacement 2336
 inner finisher middle roller
 removal and
 replacement 2440
 inner finisher output tray assembly
 removal and
 replacement 2346
 inner finisher output tray lower
 limit switch assembly
 removal and
 replacement 2655
 inner finisher output tray motor
 removal and
 replacement 2643
 inner finisher output tray motor
 assembly
 removal and
 replacement 2637
 inner finisher output tray motor
 sensor
 removal and
 replacement 2649
 inner finisher output tray top of
 stack sensor kit
 removal and
 replacement 2661
 inner finisher overview 264
 inner finisher motor and solenoid 266
 PCA 268
 roller 267
 sensor 265
 workflow 264
 inner finisher paper holding
 actuator
 removal and
 replacement 2672
 inner finisher paper holding kit
 removal and
 replacement 2683
 inner finisher paper holding sensor
 removal and
 replacement 2704
 inner finisher paper holding
 solenoid
 removal and
 replacement 2693
 inner finisher paper support home
 sensor
 removal and
 replacement 2492
 inner finisher paper support motor
 removal and
 replacement 2508
 inner finisher paper support motor
 assembly
 removal and
 replacement 2500
 inner finisher PCA
 removal and
 replacement 2715
 inner finisher PCA cover
 removal and
 replacement 2350
 inner finisher punch cover
 assembly
 removal and
 replacement 2342
 inner finisher punch waste full
 sensor
 removal and
 replacement 2389
 inner finisher rear base cover
 removal and
 replacement 2363
 inner finisher rear joint PCA 300
 removal and
 replacement 2726
 inner finisher rear paper support
 removal and
 replacement 2485
 inner finisher rear punch cover
 removal and
 replacement 2366
 inner finisher rear tamper
 removal and
 replacement 2582
 inner finisher rear tamper home
 sensor
 removal and
 replacement 2595
 inner finisher rear tamper motor
 removal and
 replacement 2588
 inner finisher staple cartridge
 removal and
 replacement 2606
 inner finisher stapler assembly
 removal and
 replacement 2602
 inner finisher stapler position
 motor
 removal and
 replacement 2620
 inner finisher stapler position
 sensor
 removal and
 replacement 2608
 inner finisher sub paddle assembly
 removal and
 replacement 2532
 inner finisher sub stay assembly
 removal and
 replacement 2353
 inner finisher top cover assembly
 removal and
 replacement 2330
 inner finisher top cover switch
 removal and
 replacement 2747
 input accessory error
 67.WX.YZ error 302, 340

- input device (workgroup)
 - removal and replacement 1283
- input devices
 - DCF, Tray 4, 5 152
 - electrical mechanical relationships diagrams 2880
 - HCI, Tray 4 160
 - parts and diagrams 2782
 - workgroup stand 151
- Input devices 151
- input/output error
 - 40.WX.YZ error 302, 340
- Integrated Scan Asset (ISA) 120
- integrated scanner assembly
 - flatbed (CIS), removal and replacement 1264
 - flatbed (Tarot), removal and replacement 1233
 - removal and replacement 1139
- integrated scanner asset
 - 100-sheet, whole unit replacement 1143
 - 200-sheet z and dn bundles, whole unit replacement 1139
 - removal and replacement 5QK34 1144
 - removal and replacement 5QK36, 5QK35 1139
 - whole unit replacement 1139
- integrated-scanner assembly
 - parts 2775
- interface ports
 - locating 2, 3
- interlocks
 - defeating 302, 310, 311
- internal diagnostics error
 - 90.WX.YZ error 302, 341
 - video display error 302, 341
- IOD 108
 - removal and replacement 1103
- ISA
 - parts 2775
 - parts and diagrams 2774
 - removal and replacement 1139
 - removal and replacement 5QK34 1144
 - removal and replacement 5QK36, 5QK35 1139
- removal and replacement
 - flatbed, rear cover 1270
- removal and replacement
 - flatbed CIS, FFC 68 pin 1279
- removal and replacement
 - flatbed CIS, PCA 1272
- removal and replacement
 - flatbed CIS, power cable 1275
- removal and replacement
 - flatbed CIS, whole unit 1264
- removal and replacement
 - flatbed, FFC 50 pin 1247
- removal and replacement
 - flatbed, FFC 68 pin 1252
- removal and replacement
 - flatbed, open sensor 1261
- removal and replacement
 - flatbed, PCA 1243
- removal and replacement
 - flatbed, power cable 1256
- removal and replacement
 - flatbed, rear cover 1241
- removal and replacement
 - flatbed, whole unit 1234
 - whole unit replacement 1139
- ISA, 100-sheet
 - whole unit replacement 1143
- ISA, 200-sheet
 - z and dn bundles, whole unit replacement 1139
- island of data
 - removal and replacement 1103
- Island Of Data (IOD) 108
- J**
- jam error (LaserJet)
 - 13.WX.YZ error 302, 339
- jam error (PageWide)
 - 13.WX.YZ error 302, 339
- jams
 - 520-sheet trays 329
 - auto-navigation 325
 - causes of 326
 - document feeder 326
 - fuser 331
 - locations 302, 324
 - output bin 331
 - right door 331
 - Tray 1 328
 - Tray 2 329
- Tray 3 329
- Jetdirect print server
 - lights 302, 310
- job accounting error (firmware)
 - 48.WX.YZ error 302, 340
- job management error (firmware)
 - 302, 340
- job pipeline error (firmware)
 - 302, 340
- job parser error (firmware)
 - 47.WX.YZ error 302, 340
- printer calibration error 302, 340
- job separator 63
- K**
- keyboard
 - removal and replacement 1116
- keyboard PCA 110
- kits
 - tray 1 roller 617
 - tray 2/3 rollers 630
- L**
- LAN port
 - locating 3
- laser scanner assembly 35
- laser scanner error (LaserJet)
 - 51.WX.YZ error 302, 340
 - 52.WX.YZ error 302, 340
- laser scanner unit
 - parts 2768
 - removal and replacement 961
 - remove and replace parts 961
- laser scanner unit fan
 - removal and replacement 1044
- Laser Scanning Unit (LSU) 82
- Laser Scanning Unit (LSU)
 - operation 83
- Laser Scanning Unit (LSU)
 - overview 82
- LEDs
 - See lights
- left cover
 - removal and replacement 508
- left top cover
 - removal and replacement 503
- left upper cover
 - removal and replacement 504
- lever-actuator bin full exit
 - removal and replacement 788
- lift plate unit - 100sh 139
- lift plate unit - 100sh Flow 139

lift plate unit – 200sh 125
 lift plate unit – 200sh Flow 125
 lights
 formatter 302, 310
 troubleshooting with 302, 310
 local area network (LAN)
 locating 3
 loop sensing 57
 overview 57
 loop sensing unit
 remove and replace parts 725
 low voltage power supply 35
 low-voltage power supply
 removal and
 replacement 1129
 low-voltage power supply fan
 removal and
 replacement 1028
 Lower Voltage Power Supply
 (LVPS) 118
 Isu
 electrical mechanical
 relationships
 diagrams 2866
 LSU
 parts 2768
 removal and replacement 961
 remove and replace parts 961
 LSU fan
 removal and
 replacement 1044
 LVPS
 removal and
 replacement 1129
 LVPS fan
 removal and
 replacement 1028

M

machine cleaning for
 maintenance 26
 cleaning the ADF) 26
 cleaning the paper dust
 stick 26
 cleaning the scan glass 26
 main drive assembly
 removal and replacement 685
 main exit unit 202
 external finisher, remove and
 replace 1645
 operation 203
 overview 202
 main output tray unit 219
 external finisher, remove and
 replace 1918
 overview 219
 main printed circuit assembly
 remove and replace
 parts 1065
 maintenance 26
 machine cleaning for
 maintenance 26
 preventive maintenance 26
 maintenance counts
 part replacement count 302
 Maintenance menu, control
 panel 475
 maintenance parts 1, 6, 14
 manual staple PCA 257
 memory error
 82.WX.YZ error 302, 341
 EMMC error 302, 341
 hard disk error 302, 341
 menu
 Support Tools menu 439
 menu map 302, 313
 menus, control panel
 Advanced Print Quality
 Pages 485
 Altitude Adjustment 472
 Auto Tone adjustment 476
 Backup/Restore 476
 Buckle Adjustment 447
 Calibrate Scanner 477
 Calibrate/Cleaning 302, 313,
 342
 Cold Reset Paper 444
 Component tests 466
 Configuration/Status
 Pages 480
 Consumables Access
 Control 445
 Copy (MFP only) 302, 313, 342,
 397
 Counts 441
 CTD Sensor Cleaning 477
 Custom Color 476
 Engine NVM Read/Write 457
 Event Log 440, 485
 Fax (fax models only) 302, 313,
 342, 434
 Fax Reports 481
 Fax Service Log 482
 Fax Speaker Mode 482
 Fax T.30 Trace Report 481
 Fax V.29 Speed 475
 Fax V.34 482
 Finisher Adjustment 448

Footer 474
 General Settings 302, 313,
 342, 361
 Humidity 473
 Import/Export 476
 JBIG Compression 482
 License Management 477
 Low Alerts 444
 Low-temperature Idling
 Mode 472
 Maintenance 475
 Manage Trays 302, 313, 342,
 439
 Manual Tone Adjustment 477
 Other Pages 481
 Paper Path Page 485
 Part Replacement Count 474
 PQ Troubleshooting
 Pages 482
 Print 302, 313, 342, 438
 Print Adjustment 446
 PTT Test Mode 474
 Reports 302, 313, 342, 359
 Reset Engine NVM 456
 Reset Supplies 475
 Reset Supplies Level 444
 Retrieve Diagnostic Data 485
 Retrieve Fax Diagnostic
 Data 486
 Run Fax Test 485
 Scan 406
 Scan (MFP only) 302, 313, 342
 Scanner Settings 442
 Sensors 458
 Serial Number 443
 Service 439
 Service ID 443
 Service Reports 446
 Software Version 445
 Supplies 302, 313, 342, 438
 Test Support 474
 TR Control Mode 471
 Troubleshooting 480
 USB Firmware Upgrade 477
 middle left cover
 removal and replacement 539
 middle upper cover
 removal and replacement 512
 miscellaneous parts
 booklet finisher, remove and
 replace 2316
 motor error (LaserJet)
 59.WX.YZ error 302, 340

motors

- DCF, remove and replace 1330
- developer motor 994
- drum motor 986
- duplex motor 809
- exit motor 1017
- feed regi MP motor 694
- fuser motor 1013
- HCI, remove and replace 1428
- removal and replacement, booklet finisher booklet blade motor 2244
- removal and replacement, booklet finisher booklet fold motor 2253
- removal and replacement, booklet finisher booklet fold motor assembly 2249
- removal and replacement, booklet finisher c-fold blade motor 2222
- removal and replacement, booklet finisher c-fold blade motor assembly 2217
- removal and replacement, booklet finisher diverter motor 2285
- removal and replacement, booklet finisher diverter motor assembly 2279
- removal and replacement, booklet finisher end fence motor 2095
- removal and replacement, booklet finisher entrance motor 2060
- removal and replacement, booklet finisher entrance-presser motor assembly 2056
- removal and replacement, booklet finisher paddle motor 2078
- removal and replacement, booklet finisher paddle motor assembly 2074
- removal and replacement, booklet finisher tamper motor 2145
- removal and replacement, DCF feed motor 1341
- removal and replacement, DCF Tray 4 pickup motor 1333
- removal and replacement, DCF Tray 5 pickup motor 1336
- removal and replacement, dual cassette feeder feed motor 1341
- removal and replacement, dual cassette feeder Tray 4 pickup motor 1333
- removal and replacement, dual cassette feeder Tray 5 pickup motor 1336
- removal and replacement, external finisher bridge motor 1552
- removal and replacement, external finisher buffer motor 2005
- removal and replacement, external finisher end fence motor 1718
- removal and replacement, external finisher end fence motor assembly 1713
- removal and replacement, external finisher entrance motor 1576
- removal and replacement, external finisher entrance motor assembly 1572
- removal and replacement, external finisher exit motor 1623
- removal and replacement, external finisher exit motor assembly 1619
- removal and replacement, external finisher front tamper motor 1763
- removal and replacement, external finisher main exit cam motor 1662
- removal and replacement, external finisher main exit cam motor assembly 1652
- removal and replacement, external finisher main output tray motor drive assembly 1948
- removal and replacement, external finisher paddle motor 1694
- removal and replacement, external finisher paddle motor assembly 1683
- removal and replacement, external finisher paper holding motor drive assembly 1986
- removal and replacement, external finisher rear tamper motor 1795
- removal and replacement, external finisher stapler mid-front and mid-rear sensors 1835
- removal and replacement, HCI lift motor 1428
- removal and replacement, HCI shift motor 1428
- removal and replacement, inner finisher entrance motor 2414
- removal and replacement, inner finisher entrance motor assembly 2404
- removal and replacement, inner finisher entrance motor timing belt 2424
- removal and replacement, inner finisher exit motor 2480
- removal and replacement, inner finisher exit motor assembly 2476
- removal and replacement, inner finisher front tamper motor 2568
- removal and replacement, inner finisher main paddle motor assembly 2546
- removal and replacement, inner finisher output tray motor 2643
- removal and replacement, inner finisher output tray motor assembly 2637
- removal and replacement, inner finisher paper support motor 2508
- removal and replacement, inner finisher paper support motor assembly 2500
- removal and replacement, inner finisher rear tamper motor 2588
- removal and replacement, inner finisher stapler position motor 2620
- toner collection unit motor 952

- toner dispense motor 828
- toner dispense motor assembly 815
- tray 2 pickup motor 650
- tray 3 pickup motor 659
- multipurpose feeder assembly 38

N

- Near Field Communication error
 - 81.WX.YZ error 302, 341
 - Bluetooth error 302, 341
 - external I/O card error 302, 341
 - internal EIO error 302, 341
 - wireless error 302, 341
- network and software specifications 1, 6, 14
- network interface 1, 6, 14
- no control panel sound 302, 305, 307
- note iv

O

- on/off button locating 1
- operating systems, supported 1, 6
- operating-environment range printer 9
- option specifications 1, 6, 16, 19
- optional configurations 1, 6, 16
- options list 1, 6, 16
- orderable parts 487
- other errors
 - drive unit 302
 - electrical circuit 302
 - feeding system 302
 - flow ADF 302
 - fuser 302
 - image system 302
 - laser scanner assembly 302
 - scanner 302
- outer temperature humidity sensor assembly, sensor and holder removal and replacement 1021
- output accessory error 66.WX.YZ error 302, 340
- output bin
 - clear jams 331
 - locating 1
- output bin full sensor removal and replacement 781

- output device
 - parts and diagrams 2791
 - removal and replacement 1469
- output devices 171
 - booklet maker 171
 - electrical mechanical relationships diagrams 2881
 - inner finisher 258
 - stapler-stacker finisher 171
 - stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker 171
- output tray 294
 - inner finisher, remove and replace 2637
 - operation 297
 - overview 294
- output tray unit
 - booklet finisher, remove and replace 2291
- OXPD/Web kit error 45.WX.YZ error 302, 340

P

- paddle unit 204, 280
 - booklet finisher, remove and replace 2071
 - external finisher, remove and replace 1673
 - inner finisher, remove and replace 2523
 - operation 206, 282
 - overview 204, 280
- paddle unit operation 282
- paddle unit overview 280
- page error 21.WX.YZ error 302, 339
- paper
 - jams 326
- paper dust holder removal and replacement 777
- paper handling error (LaserJet) 56.WX.YZ error 302, 340
- paper handling specifications 1, 6
- paper holding unit 221, 294
 - external finisher, remove and replace 1961
 - inner finisher, remove and replace 2637
 - operation 223, 297
 - overview 221, 294
- paper jams
 - 520-sheet trays 329
 - document feeder 326
 - fuser 331
 - locations 302, 324
 - output bin 331
 - right door 331
 - Tray 1 328
 - Tray 2 329
 - Tray 3 329
- paper size sensor PCA 112
- paper support unit 278
 - inner finisher, remove and replace 2485
 - overview 278
- Paper support unit operation 279
- Paper support unit operation 279
- paper support unit overview 278
- paper transfer belt unit 35
- parts 487
 - 100sh ADF 1 of 2 2779
 - 100sh ADF 2 of 2 2780
 - 200sh ADF 1 of 2 2777
 - 200sh ADF 2 of 2 2778
 - booklet finisher 1 of 5 2808
 - booklet finisher 3 of 5 2812
 - booklet finisher 4 of 5 2814
 - booklet finisher 5 of 5 2815
 - CIS platen 2782
 - covers 2755
 - DCF 1 of 2 2784
 - DCF 2 of 2 2786
 - developer 2769
 - drum 2769
 - dual cassette feeder 1 of 2 2784
 - dual cassette feeder 2 of 2 2786
 - duct assembly 2766
 - exit unit 1 of 2 2763
 - exit unit 2 of 2 2765
 - external booklet 2 of 5 2810
 - fan 2771
 - fuser 2770
 - HCI 1 of 2 2788
 - HCI 2 of 2 2790
 - high capacity input 1 of 2 2788
 - high capacity input 2 of 2 2790
 - imaging unit 2769
 - inner finisher 1 of 5 2792
 - inner finisher 2 of 5 2793
 - inner finisher 3 of 5 2795
 - inner finisher 4 of 5 2797
 - inner finisher 5 of 5 2799

integrated-scanner
 assembly 2775
 ISA 2775
 laser scanner unit 2768
 LSU 2768
 PCA 2772
 registration and Tray 2
 unit 2761
 sensor 2771
 stapler/stacker finisher 1 of
 4 2801
 stapler/stacker finisher 2 of
 4 2803
 stapler/stacker finisher 3 of
 4 2805
 stapler/stacker finisher 4 of
 4 2806
 tarot platen 2780
 TCU 2767
 toner 2765
 toner collection unit 2767
 tray 1 2758
 tray 2, 3 2760
 use parts lists and
 diagrams 487
 parts and diagrams
 100sh ADF 2779
 200sh ADF 2777
 ADF / image scanner
 assembly 2774
 base printer 2755
 base printer, covers 2755
 base printer, developer 2769
 base printer, drum 2769
 base printer, duct
 assembly 2766
 base printer, exit unit 2763
 base printer, fan 2771
 base printer, fuser 2770
 base printer, imaging
 unit 2769
 base printer, laser scanner
 unit 2768
 base printer, PCA 2772
 base printer, registration and
 loop sensors 2761
 base printer, sensor 2771
 base printer, toner
 cartridge 2765
 base printer, toner collection
 unit 2767
 base printer, tray 1 2758
 base printer, tray 2, 3 2759
 booklet finisher 2808
 CIS platen 2781
 DCF 2784
 document feeder / image
 scanner assembly 2774
 dual cassette feeder 2784
 engine, printer 2755
 HCI 2788
 high capacity input 2788
 image scanner
 assembly 2774
 image scanner assembly /
 ADF 2774
 inner finisher 2792
 input devices 2782
 ISA 2774
 output device 2791
 stapler/stacker 2801
 tarot platen 2780
 parts and diagrams, using 487
 parts list and diagrams, how to
 use 487
 parts, miscellaneous
 booklet finisher, remove and
 replace 2316
 parts, order by authorized service
 providers 487
 parts, orderable 487
 parts, ordering 487
 PCA 253, 298
 automatic document feeder,
 100-sheet ADF 1206
 automatic document feeder,
 5QJ90-67011,
 5QJ90-67012 1168
 booklet maker 256
 electrical mechanical
 relationships
 diagrams 2872
 finisher main - shared 253
 inner finisher main 298
 inner finisher rear joint 300
 manual staple 257
 PCA overview 97
 PCAs
 accelerator card 1095
 booklet finisher, remove and
 replace 2301
 DCF, remove and replace 1343
 echo PCA 1107
 fax card 1121
 FDB 1134
 flatbed scanner 1243, 1272
 formatter 1065
 fuser drive board 1134
 HCI, remove and replace 1452
 high-voltage power
 supply 1124
 HVPS 1124
 inner finisher, remove and
 replace 2715
 IOD 1103
 island of data 1103
 low-voltage power supply 1129
 LVPS 1129
 parts 2772
 power key PCA 1111
 removal and replacement,
 booklet finisher booklet
 finisher main PCA 2301
 removal and replacement,
 booklet finisher booklet
 maker PCA 2306
 removal and replacement,
 DCF 1348
 removal and replacement, dual
 cassette feeder 1348
 removal and replacement, high
 capacity input PCA 1452
 removal and replacement, high
 capacity input sub
 PCA 1455
 removal and replacement, inner
 finisher PCA 2715
 removal and replacement, inner
 finisher rear joint PCA 2726
 remove and replace
 parts 1065
 USB hub PCA 1099
 PCAs, main
 remove and replace
 parts 1065
 PCAs, power supply
 remove and replace
 parts 1124
 PCAs, sub
 remove and replace
 parts 1095
 pickup assembly, second
 removal and replacement 663
 pickup assembly, tray 2
 removal and replacement 622
 pickup unit 38
 pickup unit - 100sh 140
 pickup unit - 100sh Flow 140
 pickup unit - 200sh 126
 pickup unit - 200sh Flow 126
 ports
 locating 3
 post-service tests 488, 490

power
 consumption 1, 6
 power key
 removal and replacement 532
 power key PCA 109
 removal and replacement 1111
 power subsystem 302
 power supply
 troubleshooting 302
 power supply printed circuit assembly
 remove and replace parts 1124
 power-on troubleshooting
 overview 302
 pre-boot menu options 302, 313, 342
 find links to information 316
 precautions
 replacing parts 488
 preservice checklist 488, 489
 presser unit
 booklet finisher, remove and replace 2106
 print bar error (PageWide)
 62.WX.YZ error 302, 340
 print drivers, supported 1, 6
 Print menu, control panel 302, 313, 342, 438
 print quality
 test 488, 490
 print quality troubleshooting 302
 flow ADF skew adjust 302
 image quality 302
 other errors 302
 print specifications 1, 6
 Print Test Page 302, 313, 342, 361
 printed circuit assembly
 automatic document feeder, 100-sheet ADF 1206
 automatic document feeder, 5QJ90-67011, 5QJ90-67012 1168
 remove and replace parts 1065
 printer
 dimensions 1, 6
 operating-environment range 9
 weight 1, 6
 printer engine
 parts and diagrams 2755
 printer memory error
 20.WX.YZ error 302, 339
 Process Cleaning Page 302, 313, 342
 Product installation 26
 Product maintenance 26
 product number
 locating 1
 location 2
 punch unit 193, 269
 external finisher, remove and replace 1580
 inner finisher, remove and replace 2384
 operation 195, 272
 overview 193, 269
 punch unit operation 272
 punch unit overview 269
Q
 quality, image 341
R
 rail
 inner finisher, remove and replace 2319
 real-time clock error
 11.WX.YZ error 302, 339
 rear lower cover
 removal and replacement 494
 rear upper cover
 removal and replacement 490
 registration and T2 unit
 electrical mechanical relationships diagrams 2860
 registration and Tray 2 unit
 parts 2761
 registration clutch
 removal and replacement 741
 registration sensor
 removal and replacement 732
 registration unit 38, 57, 59
 operation 59
 overview 57
 removal and replacement 725
 remove and replace parts 725
 registration unit driving 60
 operation 60
 removal and replacement
 accelerator card 1095
 actuator-bin full exit 784
 automatic document feeder color panel 1154, 1201
 automatic document feeder damper module, 5QJ90-67011, 5QJ90-67012 1194
 automatic document feeder
 FFC 1174
 automatic document feeder hinge kit, 100-sheet ADF 1223
 automatic document feeder hinge kit, 5QJ90-67011, 5QJ90-67012 1186
 automatic document feeder image scanner 1166
 automatic document feeder pickup roller kit, 100-sheet ADF 1203
 automatic document feeder pickup roller kit, 5QJ90-67011, 5QJ90-67012 1162
 automatic document feeder power cable 1180
 automatic document feeder power cable, 100-sheet ADF 1218
 automatic document feeder printed circuit assembly, 100-sheet ADF 1206
 automatic document feeder printed circuit assembly, 5QJ90-67011, 5QJ90-67012 1168
 automatic document feeder sensor FFC 1213
 automatic document feeder white backing 1157, 1228
 automatic document feeder, 5QJ90-67011, 5QJ90-67012 1147
 black developer unit 971
 booklet finisher booklet blade home sensor 2228
 booklet finisher booklet blade motor 2244
 booklet finisher booklet diverter home sensor 2273
 booklet finisher booklet fold motor 2253
 booklet finisher booklet fold motor assembly 2249
 booklet finisher booklet maker 2010
 booklet finisher booklet maker PCA 2306
 booklet finisher c-fold blade assembly 2199

booklet finisher c-fold blade
 home sensor 2211
 booklet finisher c-fold blade
 motor 2222
 booklet finisher c-fold blade
 motor assembly 2217
 booklet finisher diverter 2257
 booklet finisher diverter
 motor 2285
 booklet finisher diverter motor
 assembly 2279
 booklet finisher end fence
 home sensor 2083
 booklet finisher end fence
 motor 2095
 booklet finisher entrance
 motor 2060
 booklet finisher entrance
 sensor 2043
 booklet finisher entrance
 unit 2031
 booklet finisher entrance-
 presser motor
 assembly 2056
 booklet finisher harness
 guide 2019
 booklet finisher main
 PCA 2301
 booklet finisher output
 tray 2291
 booklet finisher output tray
 sensor 2293
 booklet finisher paddle home
 sensor 2071
 booklet finisher paddle
 motor 2078
 booklet finisher paddle motor
 assembly 2074
 booklet finisher presser home
 sensor 2106
 booklet finisher staple
 cartridge 2197
 booklet finisher stapler 2180
 booklet finisher tamper 2111
 booklet finisher tamper home
 sensor 2128
 booklet finisher tamper
 motor 2145
 booklet finisher tamper
 sensor 2162
 booklet finisher, only 2009
 control panel, 10.1 inch 1062
 controller cover 497
 ctd sensor 758
 DCF (workgroup) 1283
 DCF caster wheel 1294
 DCF feed drive
 assembly 1338
 DCF feed motor 1341
 DCF feed sensor 1315
 DCF holder wheel kit 1296
 DCF IF harness 1354
 DCF left cover 1286
 DCF motor harness 1357
 DCF PCA 1348
 DCF pickup drive
 assembly 1330
 DCF rear cover 1285
 DCF right cover 1283
 DCF right door 1288
 DCF right door open switch
 holder 1351
 DCF sensor harness 1359
 DCF size harness 1366
 DCF Tray 4 paper empty
 sensor 1312
 DCF Tray 4 paper stack height
 sensor 1312
 DCF Tray 4 pickup
 assembly 1306
 DCF Tray 4 pickup motor 1333
 DCF Tray 4, 5 cassette 1299
 DCF Tray 4, 5 color panel 1291
 DCF Tray 4, 5 paper size
 sensors 1304
 DCF Tray 4, 5 rollers 1301
 DCF Tray 5 paper empty
 sensor 1327
 DCF Tray 5 paper stack height
 sensor 1327
 DCF Tray 5 pickup
 assembly 1320
 DCF Tray 5 pickup motor 1336
 DCF tray heaters 1344
 developer fan assembly 1032
 developer motor 994
 developer powder 976
 developer unit 971
 drum motor 986
 drum unit 966
 dual cassette feeder
 (workgroup) 1283
 dual cassette feeder caster
 wheel 1294
 dual cassette feeder feed drive
 assembly 1338
 dual cassette feeder feed
 motor 1341
 dual cassette feeder feed
 sensor 1315
 dual cassette feeder holder
 wheel kit 1296
 dual cassette feeder IF
 harness 1354
 dual cassette feeder left
 cover 1286
 dual cassette feeder motor
 harness 1357
 dual cassette feeder
 PCA 1348
 dual cassette feeder pickup
 drive assembly 1330
 dual cassette feeder rear
 cover 1285
 dual cassette feeder right
 cover 1283
 dual cassette feeder right
 door 1288
 dual cassette feeder right door
 open switch holder 1351
 dual cassette feeder sensor
 harness 1359
 dual cassette feeder size
 harness 1366
 dual cassette feeder Tray 4
 paper empty sensor 1312
 dual cassette feeder Tray 4
 paper stack height
 sensor 1312
 dual cassette feeder Tray 4
 pickup assembly 1306
 dual cassette feeder Tray 4
 pickup motor 1333
 dual cassette feeder Tray 4, 5
 cassette 1299
 dual cassette feeder Tray 4, 5
 color panel 1291
 dual cassette feeder Tray 4, 5
 paper size sensors 1304
 dual cassette feeder Tray 4, 5
 rollers 1301
 dual cassette feeder Tray 5
 paper empty sensor 1327
 dual cassette feeder Tray 5
 paper stack height
 sensor 1327
 dual cassette feeder Tray 5
 pickup assembly 1320
 dual cassette feeder Tray 5
 pickup motor 1336
 dual cassette feeder tray
 heaters 1344
 duct unit K 884
 duplex assembly 794
 duplex jam sensor 800

duplex motor 809
 echo PCA 1107
 exit cover stacker 541
 exit motor 1017
 exit rear cover 499
 exit stack guide 792
 exit stacker upper cover 563
 exit unit 779
 external finisher booklet front cover 1531
 external finisher booklet output tray 1492
 external finisher bridge door sensor 1537
 external finisher bridge entrance sensor 1541
 external finisher bridge exit sensor 1546
 external finisher bridge motor 1552
 external finisher bridge unit 1534
 external finisher buffer motor 2005
 external finisher buffer solenoid assembly 1998
 external finisher caster 1526
 external finisher caster cover 1472
 external finisher caster fix nut 1529
 external finisher ejector 1 home sensor 1873
 external finisher ejector 1 motor sensor 1888
 external finisher ejector 2 motor sensor 1903
 external finisher ejector sensor 1856
 external finisher ejector unit 1843
 external finisher end fence home sensor 1699
 external finisher end fence motor 1718
 external finisher end fence motor assembly 1713
 external finisher entrance motor 1576
 external finisher entrance motor assembly 1572
 external finisher entrance sensor 1557
 external finisher exit motor 1623
 external finisher exit motor assembly 1619
 external finisher front cover 1501
 external finisher front door 1469
 external finisher front door switch 1667
 external finisher front lower left cover 1517
 external finisher front lower right cover 1522
 external finisher front paper holding sensor 1961
 external finisher front tamper 1741
 external finisher front tamper home sensor 1752
 external finisher front tamper motor 1763
 external finisher left lower cover 1474
 external finisher left upper cover 1482
 external finisher main exit cam home sensor 1657
 external finisher main exit cam motor 1662
 external finisher main exit cam motor assembly 1652
 external finisher main exit sensor 1645
 external finisher main output tray 1497, 1918
 external finisher main output tray lower limit sensor 1932
 external finisher main output tray motor drive assembly 1948
 external finisher main output tray motor sensor 1944
 external finisher main output tray top of stack sensor 1920
 external finisher main output tray top of stack switch 1951
 external finisher main output tray top of stack switch guide 1723
 external finisher main output tray top of stack switch lower guide 1732
 external finisher mounting brackets 2316
 external finisher paddle 1673
 external finisher paddle home sensor 1688
 external finisher paddle motor 1694
 external finisher paddle motor assembly 1683
 external finisher paper holding home sensor 1974
 external finisher paper holding motor drive assembly 1986
 external finisher punch cover 1506
 external finisher punch unit 1580
 external finisher rear cover 1499
 external finisher rear paper holding sensor 1961
 external finisher rear tamper 1774
 external finisher rear tamper home sensor 1784
 external finisher rear tamper motor 1795
 external finisher right upper cover 1514
 external finisher shaft hinge - door 1524
 external finisher staple cartridge 1813
 external finisher stapler front sensor 1815
 external finisher stapler manual staple sensor 1829
 external finisher stapler mid-front sensor 1822
 external finisher stapler mid-rear sensor 1822
 external finisher stapler position motor 1835
 external finisher stapler unit 1807
 external finisher stapler/stacker or booklet finishers 1469
 external finisher top cover 1508
 external finisher top door 1510
 external finisher top door open switch 1590
 external finisher top exit sensor 1610
 external finisher top jam cover assembly 1582

external finisher top lower feed assembly 1626
 external finisher top output tray 1494
 external finisher top output tray paper full sensor 1638
 external finisher tray diverter 1586
 external finisher tray diverter cam 1594
 external finisher tray diverter home sensor 1602
 external finisher tray extension 1635
 fax card 1121
 FDB 1134
 FDB fan 1028
 feed clutch 713
 feed regi MP motor 694
 flatbed , rear cover 1270
 flatbed CIS, FFC 68 pin 1279
 flatbed CIS, PCA 1272
 flatbed CIS, power cable 1275
 flatbed CIS, whole unit 1264
 flatbed, FFC 50 pin 1247
 flatbed, FFC 68 pin 1252
 flatbed, open sensor 1261
 flatbed, PCA 1243
 flatbed, power cable 1256
 flatbed, rear cover 1241
 flatbed, whole unit 1234
 formatter 1065
 front cover 554
 front cover CMF panel 558
 front door switch 1049
 front lower cover 551
 fuser and exit drive assembly 1008
 fuser drive board 1134
 fuser motor 1013
 fuser out sensor 769
 fuser unit 1002
 hard disk 1091
 hard disk cradle 1079
 hard-disk drive rivet 1077
 hardware integration pocket [HIP] 537
 HCI (workgroup) 1369
 HCI cassette 1386
 HCI feed motor drive 1443
 HCI feed sensor 1395
 HCI front CMF panel 1377
 HCI gate solenoid home sensor 1421
 HCI holder wheel kit 1381
 HCI inner drawer IF 1466
 HCI knockup home sensor 1406
 HCI knockup plate 1437
 HCI left cover 1373
 HCI lift motor 1428
 HCI main IF harness 1459
 HCI motor IF 1462
 HCI paper gate 1440
 HCI PCA 1452
 HCI pickup motor drive 1446
 HCI rear cover 1371
 HCI right cover 1369
 HCI right door 1375
 HCI right door open switch holder 1424
 HCI shift gate solenoid 1448
 HCI shift motor 1428
 HCI shift plate 1432
 HCI shift tray empty sensor 1411
 HCI shift tray end sensor 1406
 HCI shift tray home sensor 1411
 HCI shift tray level sensor 1 and 2 1414
 HCI sub PCA 1455
 HCI Tray 4 paper empty sensor 1401
 HCI Tray 4 paper stack height sensor 1401
 HCI tray open sensor 1418
 HCI Tray pickup assembly 1388
 HCI Tray rollers 1392
 HCI Tray unit 1383
 HCIF caster wheel 1379
 high capacity cassette 1386
 high capacity input (workgroup) 1369
 high capacity input caster wheel 1379
 high capacity input feed motor drive 1443
 high capacity input feed sensor 1395
 high capacity input front CMF panel 1377
 high capacity input gate solenoid home sensor 1421
 high capacity input holder wheel kit 1381
 high capacity input inner drawer IF 1466
 high capacity input knockup home sensor 1406
 high capacity input knockup plate 1437
 high capacity input left cover 1373
 high capacity input lift motor 1428
 high capacity input main IF harness 1459
 high capacity input motor IF 1462
 high capacity input paper gate 1440
 high capacity input PCA 1452
 high capacity input pickup assembly 1388
 high capacity input pickup motor drive 1446
 high capacity input rear cover 1371
 high capacity input right cover 1369
 high capacity input right door 1375
 high capacity input right door open switch holder 1424
 high capacity input rollers 1392
 high capacity input shift gate solenoid 1448
 high capacity input shift motor 1428
 high capacity input shift plate 1432
 high capacity input shift tray empty sensor 1411
 high capacity input shift tray end sensor 1406
 high capacity input shift tray home sensor 1411
 high capacity input shift tray level sensor 1 and 2 1414
 high capacity input sub PCA 1455
 high capacity input Tray 4 paper empty sensor 1401
 high capacity input Tray 4 paper stack height sensor 1401
 high capacity input tray open sensor 1418
 high capacity input unit 1383
 high-voltage power supply 1124
 HVPS 1124

inner cover 543
 inner finisher 2318, 2319
 inner finisher docking sensor 2751
 inner finisher ejector 2629
 inner finisher end fence sensor 2550
 inner finisher entrance motor 2414
 inner finisher entrance motor assembly 2404
 inner finisher entrance motor timing belt 2424
 inner finisher entrance roller 2429
 inner finisher entrance sensor 2399
 inner finisher exit bin full 2381
 inner finisher exit motor 2480
 inner finisher exit motor assembly 2476
 inner finisher exit roller assembly 2447
 inner finisher exit sensor 2456
 inner finisher exit sensor actuator 2466
 inner finisher front cover assembly 2326
 inner finisher front cover switch 2736
 inner finisher front paper support 2516
 inner finisher front tamper 2561
 inner finisher front tamper home sensor 2575
 inner finisher front tamper motor 2568
 inner finisher guide rails 2322
 inner finisher hole punch 2384
 inner finisher lock release handle 2368
 inner finisher main interface harness 2370
 inner finisher main paddle assembly 2523
 inner finisher main paddle home sensor 2539
 inner finisher main paddle motor assembly 2546
 inner finisher middle cover assembly 2336
 inner finisher middle roller 2440
 inner finisher output tray assembly 2346
 inner finisher output tray lower limit switch assembly 2655
 inner finisher output tray motor 2643
 inner finisher output tray motor assembly 2637
 inner finisher output tray motor sensor 2649
 inner finisher output tray top of stack sensor kit 2661
 inner finisher paper holding actuator 2672
 inner finisher paper holding kit 2683
 inner finisher paper holding sensor 2704
 inner finisher paper holding solenoid 2693
 inner finisher paper support home sensor 2492
 inner finisher paper support motor 2508
 inner finisher paper support motor assembly 2500
 inner finisher PCA 2715
 inner finisher PCA cover 2350
 inner finisher punch cover assembly 2342
 inner finisher punch waste full 2389
 inner finisher rear base cover 2363
 inner finisher rear joint PCA 2726
 inner finisher rear paper support 2485
 inner finisher rear punch cover 2366
 inner finisher rear tamper 2582
 inner finisher rear tamper home sensor 2595
 inner finisher rear tamper motor 2588
 inner finisher staple cartridge 2606
 inner finisher stapler assembly 2602
 inner finisher stapler position motor 2620
 inner finisher stapler position sensor 2608
 inner finisher sub paddle assembly 2532
 inner finisher sub stay assembly 2353
 inner finisher top cover assembly 2330
 inner finisher top cover switch 2747
 input device (workgroup) 1283
 integrated scanner asset 5QK34 1144
 integrated scanner asset 5QK36, 5QK35 1139
 IOD 1103
 island of data 1103
 keyboard 1116
 laser scanner unit 961
 laser scanner unit fan 1044
 left cover 508
 left top cover 503
 left upper cover 504
 lever-actuator bin full exit 788
 low-voltage power supply 1129
 LSU 961
 LVPS 1129
 LVPS fan 1028
 main drive assembly 685
 middle left cover 539
 middle upper cover 512
 outer temperature humidity sensor assembly, sensor and holder 1021
 output bin full sensor 781
 output device 1469
 paper dust holder 777
 pickup assembly, Tray 3 663
 power key 532
 power key PCA 1111
 rear lower cover 494
 rear upper cover 490
 registration clutch 741
 registration sensor 732
 registration unit 725
 right door assembly 567
 right door exit assembly 764
 right door fan 1036
 right door front damper 576
 right door front link 571
 right door switch 1058
 right front cover 521
 right middle cover 528
 right middle cover assembly 524
 right rear cover 519
 right upper cover 513

riser card and cradle 1071, 1085
 secondary transfer (T2) unit 753
 spring, lever-actuator bin full exit 788
 TCU 924
 tie stoppers 556
 toner cartridge, control panel 843
 toner cartridge, disassemble 844
 toner collection unit 924
 toner collection unit detection sensor 934
 toner collection unit drive assembly 943
 toner collection unit full sensor assembly 926
 toner collection unit motor 952
 toner CRUM modular jack harness 858
 toner dispense motor 828
 toner dispense motor assembly 815
 toner duct motor 911
 toner duct motor assembly 899
 toner duct unit K 884
 toner guide unit K 871
 Tray 1 clutch 605
 tray 1 paper empty sensor 593
 tray 1 roller kit 617
 tray 1 unit 582
 tray 2 color panel 561
 tray 2 empty sensor 633
 tray 2 feed sensor 704
 tray 2 open and paper size sensor 642
 tray 2 or tray 3 620
 tray 2 pickup assembly 622
 tray 2 pickup drive assembly 646
 tray 2 pickup motor 650
 tray 2 stack height sensor 633
 tray 2/3 roller kit 630
 tray 3 color panel 561
 tray 3 empty sensor 670
 tray 3 feed sensor 709
 tray 3 open and paper size sensor 678
 tray 3 pickup drive assembly 654
 tray 3 pickup motor 659
 tray 3 stack height sensor 670
 tray heaters 681
 USB hub PCA 1099
 removal order
 removing order 488, 490
 remove and replace before servicing 487
 Remove and replace 487
 remove and replace parts
 base printer 490
 control panel 1062
 developer and drum 966
 duct unit 884
 duplex unit 794
 environmental sensor, switch, and fan 1021
 exit unit 779
 feeding system 567
 feeding system, right door assemblies 567
 feeding system, Tray 1 unit 582
 feeding system, Tray 2-3 units 620
 fuser unit 1002
 image creation 961
 laser scanner unit 961
 loop sensing unit 725
 LSU 961
 main PCAs 1065
 main printed circuit assembly 1065
 PCAs 1065
 power supply PCAs 1124
 power supply printed circuit assembly 1124
 printed circuit assembly 1065
 registration unit 725
 sub PCAs 1095
 sub printed circuit assembly 1095
 toner cartridge 815
 toner collection unit 924
 toner flow 815
 removing parts checklists 488, 489
 replacing parts precautions 488
 Reports menu, control panel 302, 313, 342, 359
 revision history iii
 right door
 jams 331
 locating 1
 right door assembly removal and replacement 567
 right door exit assembly removal and replacement 764
 right door fan removal and replacement 1036
 right door front damper removal and replacement 576
 right door front link removal and replacement 571
 right door switch removal and replacement 1058
 right front cover removal and replacement 521
 right middle cover removal and replacement 528
 right middle cover assembly removal and replacement 524
 right rear cover removal and replacement 519
 right upper cover removal and replacement 513
 riser card 103
 riser card and cradle removal and replacement 1071, 1085
 riser card for HDD 104
 riser card for HDD and USB ports 104
 riser card for HDD, USB ports, and accelerator board 105
 rivet, hard-disk drive removal and replacement 1077
 RJ-45 port locating 3
 rollers
 automatic document feeder pickup roller kit, 100-sheet ADF 1203
 automatic document feeder pickup roller kit, 5QJ90-67011, 5QJ90-67012 1162
 DCF, remove and replace 1301
 HCI, remove and replace 1392
 removal and replacement, DCF 1301
 removal and replacement, HCI 1392
 removal and replacement, inner finisher entrance roller 2429

- removal and replacement, inner finisher exit roller assembly 2447
- removal and replacement, inner finisher middle roller 2440

S

- scan and exit unit - 100sh 140
- scan and exit unit - 100sh Flow 140
- scan and exit unit - 200sh 129
- scan and exit unit - 200sh Flow 129
- Scan menu (MFP only), control panel 302, 313, 342
- Scan menu, control panel 406
- scan specifications 1, 6
- scanner
 - automatic document feeder, image 1166
 - workflow 145
- scanner error
 - 30.WX.YZ error 302, 339
- scanning system
 - components 35
- second exit unit driving 66
- Second Transfer (T2) unit 87
- second unit
 - overview 62
- second unit overview 62
- secondary transfer (T2) unit
 - removal and replacement 753
- security error
 - 33.WX.YZ error 302, 339
- sensor
 - removal and replacement, inner finisher output tray top of stack sensor kit 2661
- sensor and fan
 - electrical mechanical relationships diagrams 2870
- sensor error
 - 54.WX.YZ error 302, 340
 - 58.WX.YZ error 302, 340
- sensors
 - actuator-bin full exit 784
 - automatic document feeder sensor FFC 1213
 - base printer service parts, registration and loop sensors 2761
 - ctd sensor 758
 - DCF, remove and replace 1304
 - duplex jam sensor 800
 - flatbed scanner 1243, 1272
 - fuser out sensor 769
 - HCI, remove and replace 1395
 - lever-actuator bin full exit 788
 - outer temperature humidity sensor 1021
 - outer temperature humidity sensor assembly 1021
 - outer temperature humidity sensor holder 1021
 - output bin full sensor 781
 - parts 2771
 - registration sensor 732
 - removal and replacement
 - flatbed, open sensor 1261
 - removal and replacement, booklet finisher booklet blade home sensor 2228
 - removal and replacement, booklet finisher booklet diverter home sensor 2273
 - removal and replacement, booklet finisher c-fold blade home sensor 2211
 - removal and replacement, booklet finisher end fence home sensor 2083
 - removal and replacement, booklet finisher entrance sensor 2043
 - removal and replacement, booklet finisher output tray sensor 2293
 - removal and replacement, booklet finisher paddle home sensor 2071
 - removal and replacement, booklet finisher presser home sensor 2106
 - removal and replacement, booklet finisher tamper sensor 2162
 - removal and replacement, DCF paper size 1304
 - removal and replacement, DCF Tray 4 paper empty sensor 1312, 1327
 - removal and replacement, DCF Tray 4 paper stack height sensor 1312
 - removal and replacement, DCF Tray 5 paper stack height sensor 1327
 - removal and replacement, dual cassette feeder feed sensor 1315
 - removal and replacement, external finisher bridge door sensor 1537
 - removal and replacement, external finisher bridge entrance sensor 1541
 - removal and replacement, external finisher bridge exit sensor 1546
 - removal and replacement, external finisher ejector 1 home sensor 1873
 - removal and replacement, external finisher ejector 1 motor sensor 1888
 - removal and replacement, external finisher ejector 2 motor sensor 1903
 - removal and replacement, external finisher ejector sensor 1856
 - removal and replacement, external finisher end fence home sensor 1699
 - removal and replacement, external finisher entrance sensor 1557
 - removal and replacement, external finisher front paper holding sensor 1961
 - removal and replacement, external finisher front tamper home sensor 1752
 - removal and replacement, external finisher main exit cam home sensor 1657
 - removal and replacement, external finisher main exit sensor 1645
 - removal and replacement, external finisher main output tray lower limit sensor 1932
 - removal and replacement, external finisher main output tray motor sensor 1944
 - removal and replacement, external finisher main output tray top of stack sensor 1920

- removal and replacement, external finisher paddle home sensor 1688
- removal and replacement, external finisher paper holding home sensor 1974
- removal and replacement, external finisher rear paper holding sensor 1961
- removal and replacement, external finisher rear tamper home sensor 1784
- removal and replacement, external finisher stapler front sensor 1815
- removal and replacement, external finisher stapler manual staple sensor 1829
- removal and replacement, external finisher stapler mid-front and mid-rear sensors 1822
- removal and replacement, external finisher top exit sensor 1610
- removal and replacement, external finisher top output tray paper full sensor 1638
- removal and replacement, external finisher tray diverter home sensor 1602
- removal and replacement, HCI feed sensor 1395
- removal and replacement, HCI gate solenoid home sensor 1421
- removal and replacement, HCI knockup home sensor 1406
- removal and replacement, HCI shift tray empty sensor 1411
- removal and replacement, HCI shift tray end sensor 1406
- removal and replacement, HCI shift tray home sensor 1411
- removal and replacement, HCI shift tray level sensor 1 and 2 1414
- removal and replacement, HCI Tray 4 paper empty sensor 1401
- removal and replacement, HCI Tray 4 paper stack height sensor 1401
- removal and replacement, HCI tray open sensor 1418
- removal and replacement, inner finisher docking sensor 2751
- removal and replacement, inner finisher end fence sensor 2550
- removal and replacement, inner finisher entrance sensor 2399
- removal and replacement, inner finisher exit sensor 2456
- removal and replacement, inner finisher exit sensor actuator 2466
- removal and replacement, inner finisher front tamper home sensor 2575
- removal and replacement, inner finisher main paddle home sensor 2539
- removal and replacement, inner finisher output tray motor sensor 2649
- removal and replacement, inner finisher paper holding sensor 2704
- removal and replacement, inner finisher paper support home sensor 2492
- removal and replacement, inner finisher rear tamper home sensor 2595
- removal and replacement, inner finisher stapler position sensor 2608
- spring, lever-actuator bin full exit 788
- toner collection unit detection sensor 934
- toner collection unit full sensor assembly 926
- tray 1 paper empty sensor 593
- tray 2 empty sensor, removal and replacement 633
- tray 2 feed sensor 704
- tray 2 open and paper size sensor, removal and replacement 642
- tray 2 stack height sensor, removal and replacement 633
- tray 3 empty sensor, removal and replacement 670
- tray 3 feed sensor 709
- tray 3 open and paper size sensor, removal and replacement 678
- tray 3 stack height sensor, removal and replacement 670
- serial number locating 1, 2
- service and support WISE 332
- service approach 488 precautions 488
- service functions capture log 302 debug log 302 envelope rotate 302 main memory clear 302 transfer assembly control 302
- Service menu, control panel 439
- service mode 302 diagnostics 302 entering service mode 302 information 302 maintenance counts 302 mode menu tree 302 service functions 302
- service parts base printer, covers 2755 base printer, developer 2769 base printer, drum 2769 base printer, duct assembly 2766 base printer, exit unit 2763 base printer, fan 2771 base printer, fuser 2770 base printer, imaging unit 2769 base printer, laser scanner unit 2768 base printer, PCA 2772 base printer, registration and loop sensors 2761 base printer, sensor 2771 base printer, toner cartridge 2765 base printer, toner collection unit 2767 base printer, tray 1 2758 base printer, tray 2, 3 2759
- sHCI 35
- side high capacity input tray 35

- Sign In button
 - locating 4
- Sign Out button
 - locating 4
- software and solutions 1, 6, 14
- solenoids
 - removal and replacement, external finisher buffer solenoid assembly 1998
 - removal and replacement, high capacity input shift gate solenoid 1448
 - removal and replacement, inner finisher paper holding solenoid 2693
- solve problems
 - control panel messages 339
 - CPMD 339
- specifications 1, 6
 - copy specifications 1, 6
 - electrical and acoustic 1, 6
 - general specifications 1, 6
 - maintenance parts 1, 6, 14
 - network interface 1, 6, 14
 - network specifications 1, 6, 14
 - options 1, 6, 16
 - options list 1, 6, 16
 - paper handling
 - specifications 1, 6
 - print specifications 1, 6
 - scan specifications 1, 6
 - software and solutions 1, 6, 14
 - software specifications 1, 6, 14
 - supplies 1, 6, 13
- spring, lever-actuator bin full exit
 - removal and replacement 788
- SSA
 - flatbed (CIS), removal and replacement 1264
 - flatbed (Tarot), removal and replacement 1233
- staple and staple cartridge 214, 240, 289
- stapler unit 212, 287
 - booklet finisher, remove and replace 2180
 - external finisher, remove and replace 1807
 - inner finisher, remove and replace 2602
 - operation 215, 290
 - overview 212, 287
 - staple and staple cartridge 214, 289
 - stapler unit operation 290
- stapler unit overview 287
- stapler-stacker and booklet maker
 - staple and staple cartridge 214
- stapler-stacker finisher 171, 191
 - bridge unit 190
 - buffer unit 225
 - covers 177
 - detailed specifications 171
 - ejector unit 216
 - electrical mechanical relationships
 - diagrams 2891
 - end fence unit 207
 - entrance unit 191
 - main exit unit 202
 - main output tray unit 219
 - overview 179
 - paddle unit 204
 - paper holding unit 221
 - punch unit 193
 - stapler unit 212
 - stapler-stacker finisher 191
 - tamper unit 209
 - top exit unit 199
 - top output tray unit 200
 - tray diverter unit 196
- stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker 171
 - booklet maker 230
 - bridge unit 190
 - covers 177
 - detailed specifications 171
 - overview 179
 - PCA 253
 - stapler-stacker finisher 191
- stapler-stacker finisher and booklet maker unit
 - overview 179
- motors and solenoids 185
- PCAs 189
- rollers 188
- sensor 180
- workflow 179
- stapler/stacker finisher
 - parts and diagrams 2801
- stapler/stacker finisher 1 of 4
 - parts 2801
- stapler/stacker finisher 2 of 4
 - parts 2803
- stapler/stacker finisher 3 of 4
 - parts 2805
- stapler/stacker finisher 4 of 4
 - parts 2806
- stapler/stacker or booklet finishers
 - removal and replacement 1469
- static, precautions for 488
- storage 106
 - eMMC 107
 - hard disk drive 106
- sub printed circuit assembly
 - remove and replace parts 1095
- supplies
 - toner cartridge, control panel 843
 - toner cartridge, disassemble 844
- supplies error (LaserJet)
 - 10.WX.YZ error 302, 339
- supplies error (PageWide)
 - 17.WX.YZ error 302, 339
- Supplies menu, control panel 302, 313, 342, 438
- switch
 - front door 91
 - right door 91
- switches
 - front door switch 1049
 - inner finisher, remove and replace 2715
 - removal and replacement, DCF right door open switch holder 1351
 - removal and replacement, dual cassette feeder right door open switch holder 1351
 - removal and replacement, external finisher front door switch 1667
 - removal and replacement, external finisher main output tray top of stack switch 1951
 - removal and replacement, external finisher main output tray top of stack switch guide 1723
 - removal and replacement, external finisher main output tray top of stack switch lower guide 1732
 - removal and replacement, external finisher top door open switch 1590
 - removal and replacement, HCI right door open switch holder 1424

- removal and replacement, high capacity input right door
 - open switch holder 1424
- removal and replacement, inner finisher front cover
 - switch 2736
- removal and replacement, inner finisher output tray lower
 - limit switch assembly 2655
- removal and replacement, inner finisher top cover
 - switch 2747
- right door switch 1058
- system error (LaserJet)
 - 62.WX.YZ error 302, 340
- system requirements
 - minimum 1, 6

T

- T2
 - removal and replacement 753
- tamper unit 209, 285
 - external finisher, remove and replace 1741
 - inner finisher, remove and replace 2561
 - operation 211, 286
 - overview 209, 285
- tamper unit operation 286
- tamper unit overview 285
- tarot platen
 - cover 146
 - motor 147
 - parts 2780
 - parts and diagrams 2780
 - PCA 148
 - sensor 147
 - workflow 145
- Tarot Platen 145
- tarot platen cover 146
- tarot platen motor 147
- tarot platen PCA 148
- tarot platen sensor 147
- tarot platen workflow 145
- TCU
 - parts 2767
 - removal and replacement 924
- temperature/humidity sensor 91
- terms and definitions
 - glossary 2913
- tests
 - post-service 488, 490
 - print-quality 488, 490
- theory of operation
 - accelerator 105
 - Color Toner Density (CTD)
 - Second Transfer (T2) unit overview 87
 - Color Toner Density(CTD)
 - sensor operation 88
 - control panel 94, 96
 - control panel base PCA 115
 - control panel PCA 115
 - control panel PCA - 10.1 inch 116
 - control panel PCA - 8 inch 116
 - covers 35, 36
 - developer and drum unit 84
 - developer and drum unit driving 87
 - developer and drum unit operation 86
 - developer and drum unit overview 84
 - drum CRUM PCA 113
 - duplex unit 66
 - echo PCA 109
 - eMMC 107
 - environmental sensor, fan, switch overview 91
 - eraser PCA 114
 - exit unit 60
 - feeding system motors 41
 - feeding system overview 38
 - feeding system roller 39
 - feeding system sensors 40
 - feeding system solenoids 41
 - formatter 99
 - fuser CRUM PCA 114
 - Fuser Drive Board (FDB) 119
 - fuser driving 91
 - fuser gap sensor 91
 - fuser unit 88
 - fuser unit overview 88
 - fuser unit temperature control 90
 - hard disk drive 106
 - hardware configuration 97
 - High Voltage Power Supply (HVPS) 117
 - image creation motors 81
 - image creation overview 79
 - image creation workflow 79
 - image creation sensors 80
 - Integrated Scan Asset (ISA) 120
 - Island Of Data (IOD) 108
 - keyboard PCA 110
- Laser Scanning Unit (LSU)
 - operation 83
- Laser Scanning Unit (LSU) overview 82
- Laser Scanning Unit (LSU)(82
 - loop sensing 57
- Lower Voltage Power Supply (LVPS) 118
- paper size sensor PCA 112
- PCA overview 97
- power key PCA 109
- registration unit 57
- riser card 103
- riser card for HDD 104
- riser card for HDD and USB ports 104
- riser card for HDD, USB ports, and accelerator board 105
- Second Transfer (T2) unit 87
- storage 106
- toner cartridge 71
- toner cartridge CRUM PCA 113
- toner cartridge operaton 73
- toner cartridge overview 71
- Toner Collection Unit (TCU) 76
- toner collection unit driving 79
- Toner Collection Unit full sensor PCA 112
- toner collection unit operation 78
- toner dispense driving 74
- toner duct 74
- toner duct driving 76
- toner duct operation 75
- toner duct overview 74
- toner flow motors 71
- toner flow overview 69
- toner flow sensors 70
- toner flow system 71
- toner flow workflow 69
- toner residual amount sensor operation 74
- Tray 1 unit 42
- Tray 2 unit 47
- Tray 2/3 unit overview 47
- Tray 3 unit 47
- Trusted Platform Module (TPM) 103
- USB hub PCA 107
- tie stoppers
 - removal and replacement 556
- tip iv
- toner
 - parts 2765

toner cartridge 71
 electrical mechanical relationships diagrams 2863
 remove and replace parts 815
 toner cartridge CRUM PCA 113
 toner cartridge operation 73
 toner cartridge overview 71
 toner cartridge, control panel removal and replacement 843
 toner cartridge, disassemble removal and replacement 844
 toner collection unit
 electrical mechanical relationships diagrams 2865
 parts 2767
 removal and replacement 924
 remove and replace parts 924
 Toner Collection Unit (TCU) 76
 Toner Collection Unit (TCU) overview 76
 toner collection unit detection sensor removal and replacement 934
 toner collection unit drive assembly removal and replacement 943
 toner collection unit driving 79
 toner collection unit full sensor assembly removal and replacement 926
 Toner Collection Unit full sensor PCA 112
 toner collection unit motor removal and replacement 952
 toner collection unit operation 78
 toner CRUM modular jack harness removal and replacement 858
 toner dispense driving 74
 toner dispense motor removal and replacement 828
 toner dispense motor assembly removal and replacement 815
 toner duct 74
 electrical mechanical relationships diagrams 2864
 toner duct driving 76
 toner duct motor removal and replacement 911
 toner duct motor assembly removal and replacement 899
 toner duct operation 75
 toner duct overview 74
 toner flow 69
 main components and functions 69
 motor 69
 motors 71
 overview 69
 remove and replace parts 815
 sensor 69
 sensors 70
 system 71
 workflow 69
 toner flow information 69, 71
 toner flow motor 69
 toner flow motors 71
 toner flow sensor 69
 toner flow sensors 70
 toner flow system
 toner cartridge operation 73
 toner cartridge overview 71
 Toner Collection Unit (TCU) overview 76
 toner collection unit driving 79
 toner collection unit operation 78
 toner dispense driving 74
 toner duct driving 76
 toner duct operation 75
 toner duct overview 74
 toner residual amount sensor operation 74
 toner flow system information 71, 74, 76
 toner flow unit
 toner cartridge 71
 Toner Collection Unit (TCU) 76
 toner duct 74
 toner flow workflow 69
 toner guide unit K removal and replacement 871
 toner residual amount sensor operation 74
 tools, additional troubleshooting 316
 top exit unit 199
 external finisher, remove and replace 1609
 overview 199
 top output tray unit 200
 external finisher, remove and replace 1626
 overview 200
 touchscreen
 locating features 4
 touchscreen blank, white, or dim (no image) 302, 305
 touchscreen has an unresponsive zone 302, 305, 306
 TPM 103
 tray 1
 base printer, service parts 2758
 electrical mechanical relationships diagrams 2857
 parts 2758
 Tray 1
 jams 328
 jams, clearing 302
 locating 1
 Tray 1 clutch removal and replacement 605
 Tray 1 empty sensor 44
 tray 1 paper empty sensor removal and replacement 593
 Tray 1 pickup roller 44
 tray 1 roller kit removal and replacement 617
 Tray 1 solenoid 44
 tray 1 unit
 removal and replacement 582
 Tray 1 unit 42
 driving 46
 operation 44
 overview 42
 Tray 1 unit driving 46
 Tray 1 unit operation 44
 tray 2
 removal and replacement 620
 Tray 2
 feed motor 53
 feed roller 53
 feed sensor 53
 jams 329
 jams, clearing 302
 locating 1
 paper size sensor 53
 tray heater 53
 Tray 2 cassette 47
 tray 2 color panel removal and replacement 561
 Tray 2 driving 56
 tray 2 empty sensor removal and replacement 633
 tray 2 feed sensor removal and replacement 704
 tray 2 open and paper size sensor removal and replacement 642
 Tray 2 operation 54
 Tray 2 paper size sensor 53

- tray 2 pickup assembly
 - removal and replacement 622
 - Tray 2 pickup assembly 49
 - tray 2 pickup drive assembly
 - removal and replacement 646
 - tray 2 pickup motor
 - removal and replacement 650
 - tray 2 stack height sensor
 - removal and replacement 633
 - Tray 2 tray heater 53
 - Tray 2 unit 47
 - driving 56
 - operation 54
 - tray 2, 3
 - base printer, service parts 2759
 - parts 2760
 - tray 2/3
 - electrical mechanical relationships diagrams 2858
 - tray 2/3 roller kit
 - removal and replacement 630
 - Tray 2/3 unit
 - overview 47
 - tray 3
 - removal and replacement 620
 - Tray 3
 - feed motor 53
 - feed roller 53
 - feed sensor 53
 - jams 329
 - jams, clearing 302
 - locating 1
 - paper size sensor 53
 - tray heater 53
 - Tray 3 cassette 47
 - tray 3 color panel
 - removal and replacement 561
 - Tray 3 driving 56
 - tray 3 empty sensor
 - removal and replacement 670
 - tray 3 feed sensor
 - removal and replacement 709
 - tray 3 open and paper size sensor
 - removal and replacement 678
 - Tray 3 operation 54
 - Tray 3 paper size sensor 53
 - tray 3 pickup assembly
 - removal and replacement 663
 - Tray 3 pickup assembly 49
 - tray 3 pickup drive assembly
 - removal and replacement 654
 - tray 3 pickup motor
 - removal and replacement 659
 - tray 3 stack height sensor
 - removal and replacement 670
 - Tray 3 tray heater 53
 - Tray 3 unit 47
 - driving 56
 - operation 54
 - tray diverter unit 196
 - external finisher, remove and replace 1582
 - operation 198
 - overview 196
 - tray heaters
 - removal and replacement 681
 - tray motor error (LaserJet) 60.WX.YZ error 302, 340
 - tray selection - use requested tray 302, 313, 342, 361
 - trays
 - jams, clearing 302
 - locating 1
 - removal and replacement, DCF 1299
 - tray 2 or tray 3, remove and replace 620
 - tray heaters, remove and replace 681
 - Trays menu, control panel 302, 313, 342, 439
 - troubleshooting 341
 - additional tools 316
 - checklist 302, 313
 - control panel checks 302, 305
 - jams 324, 326
 - lights, using 302, 310
 - power 302
 - process 302
 - Troubleshooting menu, control panel 480
 - troubleshooting tools
 - control panel messages 339
 - CPMD 339
 - Trusted Platform Module (TPM) 103
- U**
- understand lights on the formatter
 - formatter lights 302, 310
 - understand the lights on the formatter
 - HP Jetdirect LEDs 302, 310
 - unit parts
 - DCF, remove and replace 1299
 - HCI, remove and replace 1383
 - USB hub PCA 107
 - removal and replacement 1099
 - USB port
 - locating 3
 - Use Requested Tray 302, 313, 342, 361
- W**
- warning iv
 - Web-Interactive Search Engine (WISE)
 - HP internal users and Channel partners 332
 - weight
 - accessories 1, 6
 - printer 1, 6
 - white backing 1157, 1228
 - whole unit
 - inner finisher, remove and replace 2319
 - whole unit replacement
 - flatbed scanner 1233, 1264
 - integrated scanner asset 1139
 - WISE
 - HP internal users and Channel partners 332
 - Workgroup Dual Cassette Feeder (DCF, Tray 4, 5) 152
 - feeding system workflow 153
 - motor operation 159
 - motors 157
 - operation 158
 - PCA 160
 - sensors 155
 - Workgroup High Capacity Input tray (HCI, Tray 4) 160
 - sub PCA 170
 - workflow 161
 - workgroup stand 151